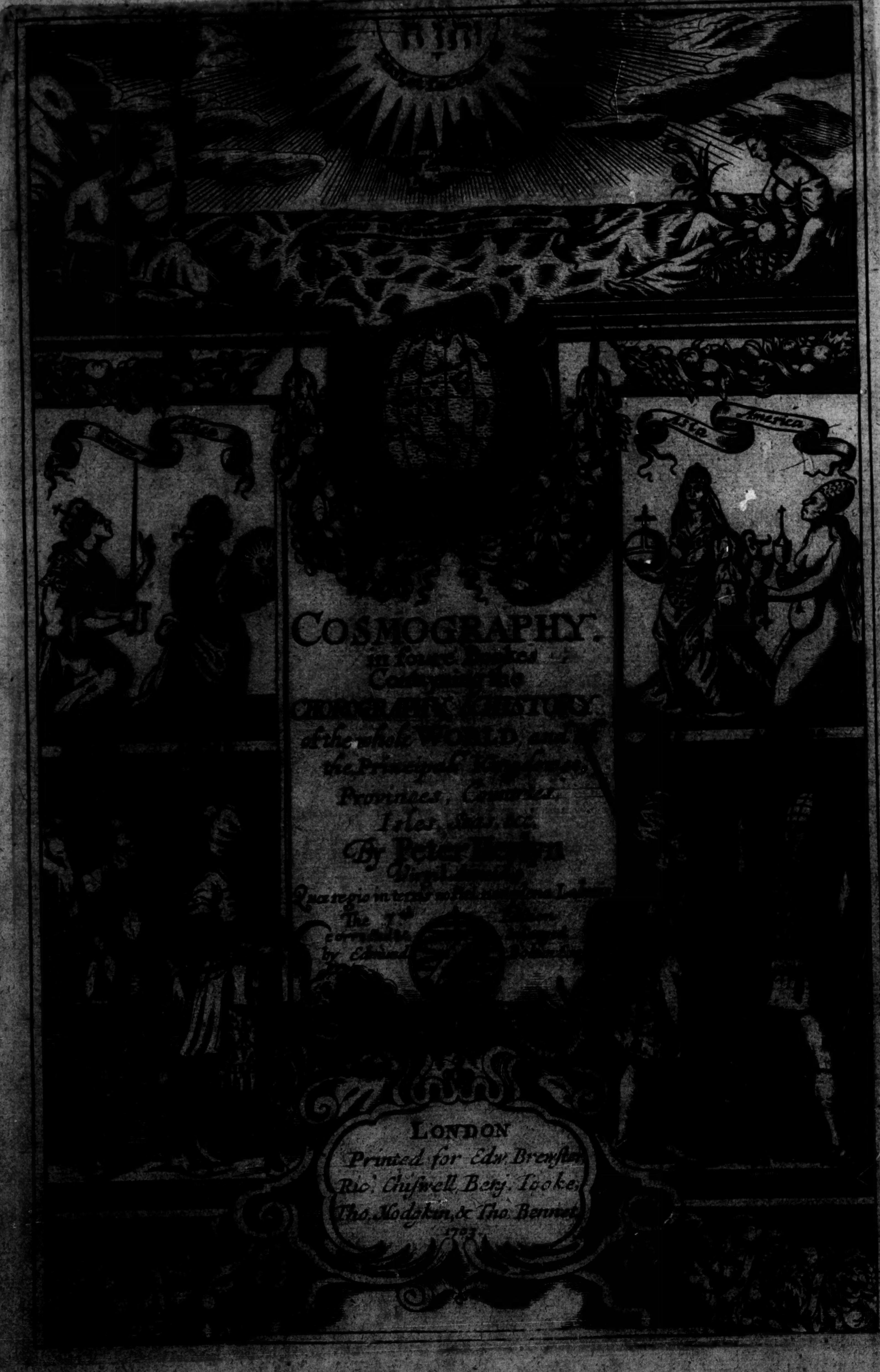


COSMOGRAPHY.

in foure Bookes
Containing the
CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY
of the whole WORLD, and all
the Principall Kingdomes,
Provinces, Countries,
Isles, Seas &c.

By Peter [illegible]
[illegible]
Quæ regio in terris no[illegible] La[illegible]
The 7th [illegible]
corrected [illegible]
by Edmund [illegible]

LONDON
Printed for Edw. Brewster
Ric. Chiswell, Benj. Tooke,
Tho. Hodgkin, & Tho. Bennet
1703.

4. H. h

COSMOGRAPHY
IN
FOUR BOOKS
CONTAINING THE
Chorography and Hiſtory
OF THE WHOLE
WORLD:
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and
the Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN*, D.D.

Improv'd with an Hiſtorical Continuation to the Preſent Times,
By *EDMUND BOHUN*, Eſq;

With a large and more Accurate INDEX, than was in any of the former Editions, of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, Peoples, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Iſlands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Foreſts, *&c.* of any Remarque in the whole World: Reviſed and cleared from a multitude of Miſtakes, which had crept into former Impreſſions.

AND

Five New-Engrav'd MAPS, according to the beſt and moſt exact Projection.

Act. xvii. 24, 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum & omnia quæ in eo ſunt;----- fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare ſuper univerſam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in Procem. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Inſulæ, inſignes Urbes, ad hunc modum ſe habent.

LONDON,
Printed for *Edw. Brewſter*, *Ric. Chiſwell*, *Benj. Tooke*, *Tho. Hodgkin*, and
Tho. Bennet. MDCCIII.

k

14

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

~~57 h~~

11

H.H.c

TO THE
READER.

The AUTHOR *rendreth this Account of his Undertaking and Performance in the following* WORK.

IT is a great complaint with many, That they want Time, either to undertake great Matters, or to accompliſh thoſe they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not ſo much want, as waſte it: *Non parum temporis habemus, ſed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well obſerveth, *Aut male agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or elſe things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want time convenient to perform thoſe Duties which are expected from us in our ſeveral places. Nor have we only time enough to ſpend, but ſome time to ſpare; ſome privacies and retreats from Buſineſs; ſome breathing fits from the Affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them (thoſe times of leiſure and receſs) we are to render an account, in *Cato*'s Judgment; *Otii reddendam rationem judicabat* Cato, as we read in *Tully*. In which accompt, as all Men generally are concerned, ſo am I intereſſed therein as much as any. For being, by the unhappineſs of my Deſtiny, or the infelicity of the Times, deprived of my Preferments, and diveſted of my Miniſterial Function, (as to the ordinary and publick exerciſe thereof) I cannot chuſe but ſay, I have leiſure enough; the opportunity of ſpending more idle Hours (if I were ſo minded) than I ever expected or deſir'd. And though, perhaps, I could have ſpent thoſe times of leiſure, which the change of my Affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my ſelf, and more to the advantage of my private Fortunes, yet that of *Cato* did ſo over-ballance me, that I was willing to do ſomewhat which might witneſs to enſuing Times, how I had paſſed away thoſe Hours, and employed that Leiſure. And when I was conſidering of ſome particulars within the compaſs of my Power, and anſwerable to that ſmall ſtock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me, and diſpoſed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requeſted by ſome Friends, of no common Quality, to review my *Geography*; to make it more compleat and uſeful to an *Engliſh Reader*; my vacancy from buſineſs uſed by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when firſt made, with neglect enough; my deſuetude from thoſe younger Studies, my great want of Books, the ſad complexion of the Times, and the unhandſome entertainment which my Endeavours for the Publick had lately met with, ſeeming ſufficient to diſſwade me from the Undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my ſelf in order to a *Publick Service*, when not alone my private Fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church, was deſtroyed and diſſipated. But afterwards, being preſſed unto it by ſome Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denied, and by ſome others of great Rank, but ſuch different *Intereſſes*, that I wondred how they could all center upon the ſame *Propoſal*: I thought it, at the laſt, a more *Chriſtian Duty*, to ſatisfie the honeſt deſires of ſo many Men, than to ſacrifice any longer to my own Privacy and Retiredneſs, to which I had intended to devote my ſelf. So I reſolved to venture on it, though well I ſaw that my condition in ſo doing might be reſembled unto that of the *Iſraelites* in the Land of *Egypt*, of whom the *Task-Maſters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denied them their accuſtomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My caſe, in this, not much unlike unto that of the Duke of *Alva*, who being under the diſpleaſure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a Priſoner, without the leaſt aſſurance of recovering the King's Favour, or his own Liberty; and yet employed, in that Conjuncture, for the Conqueſt of *Portugal*, was wont to ſay, *That he was ſent to Conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on*.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty Accident which befel me in the Month of *January*, *An.* 1640. at what time it had been my ill fortune to ſuffer under ſome miſapprehenſions which had been entertain'd againſt me, and to be brought before the *Committee for the Courts of Juſtice*, on the complaint of Mr. *Prynne*, then newly return'd from his Confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confeſs, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but moſt deſpightfully reviled and perſecuted with exceſſive both noiſe and violence, by ſuch as thronged about the Doors of that *Committee*, to expect the Iſſue: it being as natural to many weak and inconſiderate Men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at thoſe they do not know, and to accompany each other in thoſe kinds of Clamours. And though I had the happineſs to come off clear, without any cenſure, and to recover by degrees, amongſt knowing Men, that eſtimation which before had been much endangered, yet ſuch as took up Matters upon truſt and hear-ſay, looked on me as a Perſon forfeited and marked out for ruine. Amongſt others, I was then encountred, in my paſſage from *Weſtminſter* to *White-Hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thruſting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his Shoulder on me in a ſcornful manner, ſaid, in a hoarſe Voice, theſe words, *Geography is better than Divinity*; and ſo paſſed along. Whether his meaning were, That I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geograghy* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of Men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But ſure I am, I have ſince thought very often of it; and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on thoſe younger Studies, in which I was *reſolved to have dealt no more: and thereto in the* Preface *to my* Microcoſm, *had obliged my ſelf*.

And it is poſſible enough, that, in reſpect of that general Promiſe, I may lie under the cenſure of Inconſtancy, and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had ſolemnly declared in the aforeſaid *Preface*, that the Reader *ſhould not fear any further enlargements, which might make him repent his* (then) *preſent Markets; that it had receiv'd my laſt hand; and that from thenceforth I would look upon it as a Stranger only*. But it was meant withal, and expreſſed accordingly, unleſs it were for the *amending of ſuch Errors, of which, by the ſtrength of my own judgment, or any ingenious information, I ſhould be convicted*. And *Errors*, I muſt needs ſay, I have found ſo many on this laſt peruſal, and thoſe not only *verbal*, but *material* too, as did not only free me from that *Obligation*, but did *oblige* me to a further *Review* thereof. For being written in an Age on which the pride of Youth, and Self-opinion, might have ſome predominancies; I thought it freer from Miſtakes, than I ſince have found it. And thoſe Miſtakes, by running through eight Editions, (ſix of them without my peruſal or ſuperviſing) ſo increaſed and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in caſe the importunity of Friends had not inforced me, in a manner, upon this imployment, the neceſſity of conſulting my own Fame, and leaving the *Work* fair behind me, to ſucceeding Times, would have perſwaded me, in the end, to do ſomewhat in it. Which, though the laſt, was not the leaſt of thoſe inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this preſent Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuouſly laid down the Reaſons which did induce, though not encourage me unto this performance; it is now fit I ſhould declare what I have done in it, and what the *Reader* may expect from ſo great Enlargements. And firſt, the *Reader* is to know, that my deſign originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a *Review*, to purge it of the *Errors* which it had contracted; and not ſo much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more ſeriouſly conſidered of it, I found ſufficient reaſon to change that purpoſe, to make it new both in Form and Matter; and to preſent it to the World with all thoſe advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would be the benefit which might from thence redound to thoſe who ſhould pleaſe to read it. And I would willingly ſo fain comply with all expectations, that the ſhort Taper of my Life ſhould give light to others, in the conſuming of it ſelf. *Non nobis ſolum nati ſumus*, may well become a *Chriſtian*'s Mouth, though an Heathen ſpake it. But if all Expectations be not ſatisfied in the compleatneſs of the Work, (as I fear they will not) I deſire it may not be aſcribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to ſtruggle with. Books I had few to help my ſelf with, of my own; nor live I near ſo rich a *Clergy*, (moſt of the Benefices of theſe parts being poor and mean) as to ſupply my ſelf from them with ſuch Commodities. The greateſt helps I had, was from *Oxford-Library*; which, though but nine or ten Miles off from my preſent Dwelling; yet the charge and trouble of the Journey, with the loſs of time, made my viſits to that place leſs frequent; and conſequently the neighbourhood thereof leſs uſeful to me, than the generality of the Deſign might well comport with. So that when all things are conſidered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at, by an equal *Reader*, how I could come to write ſo much, with ſo little helps, upon a Subject of ſuch a large and diffuſed variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to ſay truth, the Work ſo proſpered in my Hand, and ſwelled ſo much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may, with modeſty enough, uſe thoſe words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut cito occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *Engliſh* reads it.

In the purſuance of this Work, as I have taken on my ſelf the parts of an *Hiſtorian* and *Geographer*, ſo have I not forgotten that I am an *Engliſh-man*; and, which is ſomewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *Engliſh-man*, I have been mindful, upon all occaſions, to commit to Memory

mory the noble Actions of my Country, exploited both by Sea and Land, in moſt parts of the World; and repreſented on the ſame *Theaters* upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the Example of the great *Annaliſt*, *Baronius*; who pretending, in that great and laborious Work, a ſincere Hiſtory of the Church, and no more than ſo; yet tells the Pope, in his Epiſtle, that he principally did intend the ſame, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate* Romanæ *Eccleſiæ*; to maniſeſt therein the Antiquity of ſuch Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this Day are taught and exerciſed in the Church of *Rome*. And ſo much I may alſo ſay of my ſelf in this performance, though without any by deſign to abuſe the Reader, That though the *Hiſtory* and *Chorography* of the World be my principal buſineſs, yet I have apprehended every modeſt occaſion of Recording the Heroick Acts of my Native Soil, and filing on the Regiſters of perpetual Fame, the Gallantry and brave Atchievements of the People of *England*; exemplified in their many Victories and ſignal Services in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*; in *Paleſtine*, *Cyprus*, *Africa* and *America*, and indeed, where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great Zeal and Piety, in converting to the Faith ſo many of the *German* and Northern Nations, *Franconians*, *Thuringians*, *Haſſians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Friſons*; as alſo amongſt the *Scots* and *Picts*; together with thoſe of *Lithuania*, and the People of *Norway*; by that means more enlarging Chriſt's Kingdom, than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to Record the Actions, ſo have I been as careful to aſſert the Rights of the *Engliſh* Nation, inherent perſonally in their Kings, by way of publick Intereſt in the Subject alſo; as the whole Body doth partake of that ſenſe and motion which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true ſtating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*; demonſtrating the Vaſſalage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Intereſt of the *Engliſh* Nation, in right of the firſt Diſcovery of *Primier Seizure*, to *Eſtotiland*, *Terra Corterialis*, *New-found-Land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countries near the *Cape of good Hope*, ſeveral of the *Indian* Iſlands, and ſome other places, againſt all Pretenders: inſinuating the precedency of the *Engliſh Kings* before thoſe of *Spain*; their Sovereignty and Dominion in the *Britiſh* Ocean; with the great benefit which might from thence ariſe unto us, invaded and almoſt ingroſſed by the *Hanſe* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which ſpeaks me more an *Engliſh-man*, than all theſe together; which I ſhall fall on ſoon enough, and indeed too ſoon, the ſadneſs of the Subject being well conſidered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more eſpecial notice of the ancient and preſent face of *Chriſtianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and Opinions of thoſe ſeveral Sects into which it doth now ſtand diſmembred. By which it will appear moſt clearly, amongſt other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church, were of equal ſtanding; that this Government was no other than that of *Biſhops*; and that whereſoever *Chriſtianity* did find any admittance, *Epiſcopacy* was admitted alſo as a part thereof; the Goſpel being in moſt places firſt Preached by Biſhops, or growing to eſteem and ſtrength under their Authority. And it is found on theſe *Reſearches*, that as *Epiſcopacy* was coæval with the Church it ſelf, ſo the *Subordination* of *Biſhops* to their ſeveral *Primates*, and the *Co-ordination* of thoſe *Primates* among themſelves in the common Government thereof, was of ſuch antiquity (as being ſetled and confirmed in St. *Cyprian's* time, who flouriſhed in the Year 250.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* Epiſcopos *in commune* Eccleſiam *regere*, is a noted *Maxim* in St. *Hierom*; but practically true in the *Communicatoriæ*, and *Formatæ*, of the Elder Ages: Which happy courſe, had it been preſerved, *Epiſcopacy* had been ſo far from being *made a Stirrup for* Antichriſt *to mount into his Throne*, as the *Smectymnuans* falſly charge it, that it had ſerved rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his Head too high above the reſt of his Brethren. And that this courſe was not preſerved, came not intentionally from the Popes, (for that by *Antichriſt* they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing paſt queſtion) but from the Inundations of the barbarous Nations; though I confeſs the Popes were apt enough to make the beſt advantage of thoſe various Accidents which the diſtreſſes of the Church did preſent unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations *Chriſtianity* was either quite extinguiſhed, or the Authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that Intelligence and Commerce which had been anciently amongſt them, interdicted on good reaſons of State, by ſuch *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then, how eaſie was it for the Pope, in the new planting of the Goſpel in theſe Weſtern parts, (done either by his Miniſters, or by his encouragement) to give unto the Biſhops of his own appointing, ſuch a limited Power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his Commands, and afterwards to leſſen their Authority, as he ſaw occaſion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monaſteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with *Juriſdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belonged unto them? So that it is moſt evident in the courſe of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superſtitions and Novations on the Church of *CHRIST*, till they had weakned, by degrees, the *Epiſcopal* Power. Followed, in that deſign, though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and ſome others in the Ages ſince, who have driven on their private Projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Epiſcopacy*, as it was coæval with the Church of *CHRIST*, ſo was it the beſt and ſtrongeſt Buttreſs in that Sacred Building. The weakning or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the Luſt and Tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimony thereof unto Spoil and Rapine; or finally, ſubject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiouſneſs of *Heterodoxies*, and confuſed Opinions. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact in giving unto every Province its peculiar Bounds, in laying out their ſeveral Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefeſt Towns, and did once think of beautifying the Work, with as many Maps as the ſeveral States and Kingdoms which are here deſcribed. But upon further conſideration, how much it would encreaſe the Book both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs publick uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World; by which the Reader may diſcern how each Country lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed; and on the other ſide, may meet with many Towns of inferior note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each ſeveral Country, as far as I could ſee by the light of Letters, or go by probable Conjectures in finding out the place of ſuch ancient Cities as are now decayed, not eaſily viſible in their Ruins; and adding to ſuch Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original Names. A thing as neceſſary to the underſtanding of the Hiſtories of thoſe Elder Times, as the knowledge of the preſent Names is to the more delightful reading of our modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be ſpecified and inſiſted on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for ſuch a punctual enumeration and deſcription of them, as he may meet withal in thoſe who have written the *Chorography* of ſome Country only; or think himſelf unſatisfied in his expectation, if he find not here the ſituation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering-place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are preſented to him in the Weekly News-Books. In all Countries there are many places which either by the advantage of their ſituation, or ſome preſent exigency of Affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwiſe remarkable for ſome ſignal Battel, in theſe late Buſtles and Commotions of the Chriſtian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and conſequently not within the compaſs of this Diſcourſe; and yet perhaps may grow as famous and conſiderable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that ſhall think the Work imperfect (though I confeſs it to be nothing but Imperfections) for ſome deficiencies in this kind, may be liken'd to the Country-fellow in *Ariſtophanes*, (if my Memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, becauſe he could not find where his own Farm ſtood. And ſuch a Country Cuſtomer I did meet with once, a Servant of my Elder Brother's, ſent by him with ſome Horſes to *Oxon*, to bring me and a Friend of mine unto his Houſe; who having loſt his way, as we paſſed through the Forreſt of *Witchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earneſtly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him paſt the Woods, to the open Fields. Which when I had refuſed to do, as I had good reaſon; alledging, that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's ſtrange*, ſaid he, *I have heard my Old Maſter, your Father ſay, That you made a Book of all the World; and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being ſpoken out of an honeſt ſimplicity, not out of any pretence to Wit, or the leaſt thought of putting a blunt Jeſt upon me, occaſioned a great deal of Merriment for a long time after; but I hope to meet with no ſuch *Readers*. The greatneſs of the Bulk, and conſequently of the Price, makes me ſomewhat confident, that none but Men of Judgment and Underſtanding will peruſe theſe Papers; and ſuch as they, will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Diſcourſe will fitly bear. Perfection and Exactneſs is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is obſerved by *Ariſtotle* in his Second Book of his Ethicks, ἐφ᾽ ὅσον ἡ πράγματος φύσις ἐπιδέχεται. as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And ſo much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reaſon be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and abſurd, (in the words of *Ariſtotle*) as for an *Artiſt* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonſtrations from an Orator.

Laſtly, As an Hiſtorian, I have traced the Affairs of each ſeveral Country, from the firſt Inhabitants thereof, (ſuch as the *Latins* call *Aborigines*; and the *Greeks* Αυτόχθονες) till theſe latter times. Which that I might be ſure to do on a good Foundation, I have took more than common Care to ſettle all the firſt Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations; and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with the leſs diſturbance. The reſt of their *Occurrences*, I have ſummed into ſo ſhort an *Abſtract*, as may be uſeful to the Learned, in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the leſs knowing Man in the way of a Tutor: Brevity, in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but ſo as to avoid all obſcurity alſo. Nor have I only kept my ſelf to the Story of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeuries*, Eſtates or Nations, which are or have been of the greateſt conſideration in the ſway of the World: But looked on the Eſtates of ſuch Dukes, Earls, and inferior Princes, as in their times have had the Government of thoſe parts which gave Title to them; whoſe Actions and Succeſſions are diſtinctly ſpecified, and all ſuch Alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruine of ſuch Eſtates, or the Tranſlating of them from one Houſe to another. The Catalogues and Succeſſions of which Royal and Illuſtrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to ſet my ſelf upon this Employment. And there I fix, as on the top of ſome dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of ſuch a nature, that either to ſpeak of them, or to hold our peace, is alike unſafe. In ſuch a caſe it is beſt to keep at a diſtance. For though truth be the beſt Miſtreſs which a Man can ſerve, (*Magis amica veritas*, ſaid the great Philoſopher) yet it is well obſerved withal, that if a Man follow her too cloſe at the heels, ſhe may chance to kick out his Teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as alſo out of that compaſſionate Affection which a true *Engliſh-man* ought to bear his Native Country, although in my approaches towards theſe preſent Times, I have took notice, in ſome other places, of ſuch Battels, Sieges, and Succeſſes in the Chances of War, as have hapned in theſe later days: I have forborn to take the leaſt notice of thoſe Tragedies of Blood and Death, which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confeſs, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars againſt our ſelves: in which there have been more pitched-Fields, more ſtrong places taken, more notable Traverſes of State, and Exploits of War, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *Engliſh* Bowels to pleaſe my ſelf in the recital, or to look back on thoſe unfortunate Adventures, which I ſhould rather chuſe to cover with the *Act of Oblivion*, or bury in the Grave of perpetual Silence. How gladly I could have Recorded theſe Exploits of War, had they been exerciſed on a Subject more proper for them, my willingneſs to take notice, upon all occaſions, of the Actions and Atchievements of the *Engliſh* Nation, will bear witneſs for me. But the employing of that Valour againſt our ſelves, as if not to be Conquered, but by one another, ſtrikes ſuch horror in me, that I cannot think thereof, without much affrightment; nor intimate thus much of it, without great *Reluctancies*. I fear it may be ſaid too truly of our late Embroilments, as the Hiſtorian of the Civil-Wars betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occaſioned by a ſurfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own Proſperities; and that Prayer and Paſſage in the publick Liturgy (*Give Peace in our time, O Lord*) did not reliſh with us: How happy had it been, if we have found ſome other Field to have tried our Valour in? And made ſome Foreign Country that *Aceldama*, which ſo fatally was made at home? The diſhonour which we ſuffered in the Iſle of *Rhee*, when beat thence ingloriouſly by the *French*, the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate*, by the Power of the *Spaniards*; the barbarous Butchery at *Amboyna*; and the beating up of the *Spaniſh* Fleet within the protection of our Caſtles, by thoſe of *Holland*; the Inſolencies of the *Scots*; and the Rebellions of the *Iriſh*, might well have ſtirred ſome Indignation in an *Engliſh* Breaſt. And had we fought upon thoſe ſcores, or on none but them, our Victories had deſerved the honour of a ſolemn *Triumph*, denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil War: But our infelicity (as it ſeems) was like that of *Rome*, in following thoſe unnatural Wars with ſuch Animoſities; when the unrevenged death of *Craſſus*, the blood of ſo many thouſand of their ſlaughtered Citizens, and the ſhameful loſs of ſo many of the *Roman* Enſigns, ſhould rather have invited them to the Conqueſt of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which, thus feelingly the Poet:

Cumque ſuperba foret Babylon *ſpolianda Trophæis,*
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos,

And when proud *Babylon* ſhould have been (conſtrain'd
To give us back our Enſigns lately gain'd:
We rather choſe ſuch Quarrels to purſue,
For which no *Triumph* could be juſtly due.

But ſuch is the condition and viciſſitude of humane Affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much leſs of certainty. The greateſt Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their *periods*, nothing remaining of them now, but the Name and Memory. And what is now become of thoſe mighty Cities of the Eaſt, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Echatana*, *Suſa*, with the reſt mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Claſſical* Authors? Are not their very Ruines now become Inviſible? Where are the puiſſant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Perſia*, the *Seleucidæ* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolomies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæſars* of *Italy*, the *Merovignians* and *Carolovignians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of *England*? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of Story, and ſome ancient Monuments? And if it be ſo, as it is, with the greateſt Monarchies, the moſt mighty Cities of the World, we muſt not think that ſmaller Kingdoms and Eſtates, can either be ſo evenly ballanced, or ſo ſurely founded, as not to be obnoxious alſo to the ſame viciſſitudes. And being that ſaying of *Optatus* is moſt undoubtedly true, *Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Commonwealth, we muſt not hope to find it in a better poſture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it ſubſiſts and flouriſheth. The Church muſt needs miſcarry in the ruine of the Civil State; and may miſcarry, many times, although the Civil State receive no ſuch alterations. Compared, for this reaſon, to the Moon, by the ancient Fathers who had obſerved her in her Prime, in her Encreaſes,

ſes, and her Full; and finally, had not only ſeen her in the *Wane* alſo, but ſometimes too under ſome horrible *Eclipſes*. Which various condition of the *Militant* Church, the Scriptures and ſucceeding Stories have ſet forth ſo fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonſtrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philiſtins*, the Temple deſtroyed by the *Chaldæans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apoſtacy of Ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a ſhort time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and eſtate of the *Jewiſh* Church. And find we not the ſame for the *Chriſtian* alſo, in the removing of the *Candleſtick* from the *Aſian* Churches; and making them, together with thoſe of *Greece* and *Ægypt*, and all the flouriſhing Churches in the Eaſt and South, to languiſh and decay remedileſly under the mercileſs Encroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He muſt be more than blind that ſees not, more ſavage than thoſe mercileſs Men, that grieves not at their ſad condition: but a dead Member, at the moſt, of *Chriſt*'s Myſtical Body, who feels not in himſelf the ſuffering of thoſe wretched *Chriſtians*.

If now we look into the cauſes of that Deſolation which hath hapned in the Civil State of thoſe mighty Empires; to what can we impute it, but their crying Sins? the Pride of the *Babylonians*, the Effeminacy of the *Perſians*, the Luxury of the *Greeks*: and ſuch an Aggragation of Vices amongſt the *Romans* (or Weſtern *Chriſtians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a ſcandal unto *Chriſtianity*. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium*, *in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus alſo in reference to the Church, did not the Idolaters of the Ten Tribes haſten in the *Aſſyrians*? The ſhedding of the Blood of ſo many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldæans* firſt, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianiſm* of the Eaſtern Churches, to uſher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatiſm* of the South, to have ſet open a wider Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianiſm*, as ſoon almoſt as entertained amongſt the *Britains*? If ſo, as moſt undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why ſhould we think but that the Superſtitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the Sacriledge and Faction of the Churches of the Reformation, ſhall at the laſt receive the like Retribution? Or that the Divine Juſtice is ſo faſt a ſleep, that our Sins muſt cry as loud as the Prieſts of *Baal* did under their God, before it be awakened by us? Aſſuredly, we are no leſs *Sinners*, than any of thoſe on whom the *Tower* of the Divine Vengeance hath ſo heavily fallen; whoſe Blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their ſolemn and Religious *Sacrifices*: and therefore have no cauſe to hope, but that *unleſs we do repent*, we ſhall likewiſe *periſh*.

The ſerious conſideration of all theſe particulars, hath made thoſe alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongſt our ſelves, the leſs ſtrange unto me. For is there any of theſe *things, whereof it may be ſaid*, Ecce hoc eſt novum, *Behold this is new*? *Eccl.* 1. 10. Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it poſitively affirm'd by the wiſeſt Man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now; and that which is to be, hath already been*? *Nihil enim novum eſt ſub ſole*, for there is no *new thing* under the Sun, *Eccleſ.* 3. 15. and 1. 11. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably ſay thus much of my ſelf, That the obſervation of the fall of ſo many great and puiſſant Empires, the Extirpation of ſo many mighty and Renowned Families, the Deſolation of ſo many flouriſhing *Chriſtian* Churches, as the compoſing of this Book did preſent me with, (though formerly no Strangers to me in the courſe of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the ſenſe of my own Misfortunes, or any other moral conſideration which had come before me. And I could wiſh, the Reader may receive ſo much benefit by it, (beſides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the Mighty Man may learn hereby, not to glory in his greateſt Strength, nor the Wiſe to glory in his Wiſdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great Deſigns. Let the great Leaders of theſe times in the Art of War, conſider the ſad ends of *Joab*, the General of *David*'s Forces; and of *Beliſarius*, the Commander of *Juſtinian*'s Armies: whereof the one was ſlain ingloriouſly at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his Services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates of the Temple*. Let the great Maſters of Wit, and *State-craft*, have before their eyes the unſucceſsful ends of *Achitophel*, the *Oracle* of the times he lived in; and of *Cæſar Borgias*, propoſed by *Machiavel*, for the Pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent Hands upon himſelf, becauſe his *Counſel was not followed*; the other, after the defailment of his Projects, and a long Impriſonment to boot, forced to fly his Country, and ſlain obſcurely in an Ambuſh. Let all Men lay unto their hearts the Ebbs and Floods, thoſe Alterations and Viciſſitudes, to which all Humane Power is ſubject; the ſlippery Foundations of that Might and Greatneſs which is not laid upon the Principles of Juſtice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of Chriſtian Piety; and, that even thoſe which have Dominion over others, have a God too, above themſelves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Not ſuch a God as that of *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*; of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet, in the form of a *Crucifix*: which, when he had cauſed any Man to be killed, whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiſs it, deſiring it to pardon him that one Murther more, and it ſhould be the laſt which he would commit. Such mockeries as theſe may be well put on a *Leaden-god*; but the God of Heaven and

Earth, will not be ſo *mocked*: who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can eaſily diſcern our Intents and Purpoſes, notwithſtanding thoſe Diſguiſes which are put upon them; and ſee the nakedneſs of Sin in its uglieſt Shape, though apparalled with the *Fig-leaves* of the beſt pretences, which the ſelf-deceiving Wit of Man can patch up together. God is the ſame God now, as in former times, *Primus ad extremum ſimilis ſibi*, yeſterday, and to day, and the ſame for ever; and will not put up thoſe Affronts which the Impieties of Men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience, and long-ſuffering, they may flatter their poor Souls, and ſay, *Tuſh, God doth not ſee it.*

Laſtly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* than himſelf, to whom to Dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have ſaid with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one Man was to me inſtead of all Men: the Powers of all the *People* being virtually united in him. But now, as the caſe ſtands, I muſt be fain to invert thoſe words, *Populus mihi eſt pro uno*; the body of the *Nation* is to me, in this reſpect as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I preſent it, and that not improperly: A General Survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Succeſſes of it, requiring a more general *Patron* than particular Tractates. But becauſe all the *People* in the Body *Collective*, have not Abilities to Read, much leſs to Judge; and that many of thoſe who can do both, may neither have the Liſt nor Leiſure to purſue theſe Papers: I look on the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, *Gentry*, as their *Repreſentatives* in this kind; to whoſe favourable and ingenious acceptance, I ſubmit the ſame. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no ſmall Comfort to me, in the midſt of ſo many Sorrows as are round about me, that I have been uſeful to the Publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the Honour and Content of the *Engliſh* Nation: whoſe Peace and Happineſs is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of theſe following Papers.

PETER HEYLIN.

An

An Advertiſement to the Reader concerning this large and exact Table, much wanted and deſired in the Firſt and Second, and now annexed to the Third and Fourth Impreſſion of this Book.

HOW well it is obſerved, *That Humane Induſtry cannot begin and finiſh any thing at one and the ſame time*, this famous Book may be an inſtance; whoſe *firſt Edition* was but the *Monagram*, and *rude Draught*, to a more exact Compoſure; the *ſecond* adding much Matter and Method to the *firſt*; and the *third* and *fourth* adding Matter, Method, and a moſt exact and full Table of both, to the *ſecond*, containing all the Provinces, Kingdoms, States, Principalities, Continents, Iſles, Promontories, Iſthmus's, Seas, Rivers, Havens, Mart-Towns, Cities, Strong-holds, with their Longitudes, Latitudes, Situations, Plantations, Inhabitants, Ancient and Modern Names; and the Book and Page where they are ſatisfactorily diſcourſed of.

A Table (that notwithſtanding every Methodical Book, ſuch as this is, is its own Index: Every great Memory, like that of *Cæſar*, carrieth a Table of all Books in his Brain; and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Claſſical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation. 1. To thoſe that have not time to read Books, but Indexes. 2. To thoſe that have not patience to go through the whole *Body*, and yet Curioſity to obſerve the Remarkable parts of Geography. 3. To thoſe that would recollect what they have forgotten of their Reading. 4. To thoſe that upon any emergent occaſion, would ſee the Situation, Rivers, Havens, Strong-holds, Garriſons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curioſities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition, and Hiſtory of any place in the World. 5. To thoſe that read any Ancient or Modern Hiſtories, or other Authors, and would be ſatisfied in the *Scene* of the Actions they read of, and the Situation of the Places there mentioned. 6. To thoſe that aiming at exactneſs this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7. To all the Peruſers of this Book, that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes; of which number the Learned Compiler of this Table, who drew it up for his own Satisfaction, and publiſheth it for the Publick, is one who wiſheth others as much benefit in the eaſie way of Peruſing it, as he had in the more toilſom way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impreſſion, is much; and all under the Author's own Hand, not long before he died; putting to it (as he ſaid truly to his Friend that was with him in the peruſal of it) his *laſt hand*.

To my BROTHER the

AUTHOR.

THY *firſt* preſt-Grapes *did yield approved* Wine,
ſuch as did praiſe it ſelf; yet to endear
Our Approbation thou doſt here refine
Thoſe former Fruits; *and, for our better* Cheer,
Preſent'ſt us with a pure and ſtronger Vine:
Leſt, elſe, ſome curious taſte might it diſtaſte,
If ſo, What needs my Second Buſh? *'Tis* Waſte.
Yet well thy choice Minerva *merits this*,
This Ivy Garland, *everlaſting Green*;
Which, like the Muſes Cup, *proportion'd is*,
Whereout thou drink'ſt, wherein their Liquors *been*.
Nor wouldſt thou ſcape the laſh of Nemeſis.
If, with Diogenes, *thou ſhouldſt refuſe*
To let the Thirſty *drink there-hence 'Twere* News.
Thy Book's an Ark, *which all the* World *contains*;
And well may bear a ſhort Encomion.
'Tis ſlender Meed; yet who ſuch Pay diſdains?
Good Wine *may have a* Buſh, *though it* need none.
Nor let theſe Lines of mine ſeem partial ſtrains.
Thy Work *ingenious is, and* Vertue's *Brood*,
Like it, increaſeth with due praiſe. 'Tis Good.

Much Pains it coſt, much Coſt, and Labour more:
Fames's *breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchaſe* Praiſe:
The Muſes Seat *aſcends an hundred ſcore:*
And Honour's *Journy lies not in plain ways.*
Who to Parnaſſus *high-crown'd top will ſore,*
Muſt with elaborate Quill climb up: and ſuch
Thy tender Genius *boaſteth thee. 'Tis* Much!
Too much indeed it were, but that in part,
The Guerdon *of well-doing, is the doing.*
Fame *and* Reward, *but wait upon thine Art*;
Which yet deſerves that in this Forward *going,*
Thy Fortunes *may even ballance thy* Deſert.
But Fortune's *baſe, and ſells the* Wages *due*
To Worth, *unto her* Favourites. *'Tis* True.
The Earth *thy Ground-plot is,* Geography'd;
Kings, *ſometimes, are thy Subjects, peopling it.*
Thy Story, Hiſtory *hath beautifi'd,*
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred *Wit:*
Whoſe Art hath travell'd all the World beſide,
And can of every Country *well declare*
Th' Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.

Thus, that the Earth, ſo young, thou compaſt haſt,
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News, *and my* Buſh Waſt.

Edw. Heylin. J. C.
è Sco. Int. Temp.

A
General Introduction
To the following
WORK.

CONTAINING,

The Creation *of the World by Almighty* GOD, *and the* Plantation *of the ſame by the Sons of Men; the neceſſary uſe of* Hiſtory *and* Geography, *as well for underſtanding the Affairs of the* Ages *paſt, as for Converſe and Correſpondence with the* Nations *preſent; together with a brief View of ſome* General Præcognita *which neceſſarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.*

WITH great both Piety and Prudence did the Apoſtles in their Summary of the *Chriſtian Faith*, joyn our Belief in *God the Father Almighty*, with that Clauſe or Article of making or *Creating* the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (*Is not he thy Father which hath made thee?* ſaith the Prophet *Moſes*, *Deut.* 32. 6.) ſo who but an Almighty Father could by his meer Word, without any pre-exiſtent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with ſo much Wonder and Applauſe? A Work ſo full of wonder to the ancient *Gentiles*, that ſome of them made the World a God. *Vis illum* (i. e. *Deum*) *mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the *World*, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the *World* a God, as God to be the Soul of the *World*, yet might they very well have ſaid as one ſince hath done, That the *World* is nothing elſe but God unfolded and manifeſted in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus univerſus, quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cuſanus*, a late Cardinal, hath it. For certainly the ſpecial Motives which did induce God unto this great Work, were a deſire and purpoſe to manifeſt his Power, to exerciſe his Providence, and declare his Goodneſs. Not that God needed to have made the *World* in regard of Himſelf; for the *World* we know was made in the beginning of Time, but God is Infinite and Eternal before all Times: but that it ſeemed good to Him to *Create* it laſt, as a thing moſt conducible to his Praiſe and Glory; *the Heavens declaring the Glory of God, and the Earth ſhewing his handy-work*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. Some meaſuring the God of Heaven by their own Affections, and finding nothing ſo agreeable to their own Diſpoſitions as to be in Company, conceive that God being at laſt weary of his own Solitude, did create the *World*, that he might have the company of the *Angels* in Heaven, and make a ſtart into the Earth (when he ſaw occaſion) to recreate himſelf with the Sons of Men. *Quæ beata eſſe ſolitudo queat?* What happineſs (ſaid *Hortenſius*) can there be in Solitude? To which *Lactantius*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 7. not being furniſhed with a better, doth return this Anſwer; That God cannot be ſaid to be alone; *habet enim Miniſtros quos vocamus Nuncios*, as having the Society of the *Angels*. But then *Lactantius* muſt ſuppoſe that the *Angels* were co-eternal with God himſelf, which were to make all Gods, and no God at all; or elſe his Anſwer is no Anſwer, as to that Objection. How much more oppoſitely might he have thus replied unto *Hortenſius*, That the Supream contentment poſſible to Almighty God is by reflecting on Himſelf, and in Himſelf contemplating in his own infinite Glories: which being co-eternal with Himſelf, even from all Eternity, he needed no more Company before the World was made, than he hath done ſince. *Lactantius* being himſelf a Man of a very great Reading (though indeed a better *Humanitian* than *Divine*) could not but know theſe ſweet delights which a Man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good ſociety he hath of his own dear Thoughts, when he is moſt retired from the ſight of Men. And if the wiſe *Gentile* could affirm ſo ſadly, *Nunquam minus ſolus quam cum ſolus eſſet*, that he was never leſs alone than when he was by himſelf, what need can any rational Man ſuppoſe in Almighty God, of having more company than Himſelf, to delight Himſelf in? If this ſuffice not for an Anſwer to that needleſs Queſtion, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Auguſtine* on the like occaſion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer; *Fabricaſſe inferos curioſis*, that he made Hell for all ſuch troubleſome and idle *Queſtioniſts*. Which reſolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late *Dutch* Poet, moulded into this handſome Epigram.

Dum Chriſtum Libycis *Pater* Auguſtinus *in oris*
   Aſſerit, & peragit munus in æde ſuum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi
   Eſſe docens verbo cuncta creata Dei:
Impius aſſurgit, verbiſq; procacibus, Afer;
   Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat? ait;
Aut, Quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
   Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?
Præſul ad hæc Libycus, *Fabricavit tartara, dixit;*
   His quos ſcrutari talia mente juvat.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

When Reverend *Auſtin* did in *Africk* preach,
And in Gods Houſe the ruder People teach,
As he the World's Creation prov'd and taught,
That God made all things by his Word, of nought;
A ſawcy Swain upſtarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time beſtow:
And what to ſpend his Thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made.

To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made *Hell* for thee, and ſuch audacious Men.

But not to ſpend more time in anſwering ſo vain a caption, ſuffice it us to know, that it pleaſed God at laſt when it ſeemed beſt unto his infinite and eternal wiſdom, to create the World, and all things viſible and inviſible in the ſame contained. A time it had, in which it firſt began to be, which before was not; This *Moſes* calls *Principium*, a beginning ſimply. *In the beginning God created the Heaven and the Earth*, in the firſt words of the Book of *Geneſis*: which is all one as if he had ſaid, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Maſs* or *Chaos* which he entituled there by the name of *Heaven and Earth*, was the *beginning* or firſt draught of thoſe ſeveral things which after were created in their proper times; that is to ſay, the firſt in order of time, becauſe made before them, not in order of cauſality, as the cauſes of them. *Cœlum & terra, in principio,* (i. e.) *ante omnia facta ſunt*, ſaith *Simon Pottius* in his *Scholies* on St. *John*'s Goſpel. So that whether we do expound thoſe words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that *Moſes* by theſe words did mean, that out of that Matter which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or firſt Matter, all things were created, it comes all to one; becauſe it is thereby acknowledged that the firſt Matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of neceſſity to have a *beginning*. And to this truth we have not only the Authority and conſent of Scripture, but of the greateſt part of the old *Philoſophers*; guided thereto by this impoſſibility in nature, that any viſible work, whether it be *natural* or *artificial*, ſhould either give it ſelf a being, or have that being which it hath from no cauſe precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his moſt excellent Book, *De natura Deorum*, that as a Man coming into a goodly Houſe, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive that either the Houſe had built it ſelf, or had no other Maker but thoſe Rats and Mice which were neſted in it; ſo neither can it be imagined, that either this World ſhould be eternal, or a ſelf-exiſtency; or was compoſed by any finite natural Agent of what ſort ſoever. And this is that which is more briefly and expreſly ſaid by the Apoſtle, *viz.* That *every houſe is built by ſome man, but he that built all things is God, Heb.* 3. 4. It is true, that *Ariſtotle* being a very great enquirer into the Works of Nature, conceiv'd the World to be eternal; and yet not always conſtant unto that Opinion. But then it is as true withal, that there was ſomething elſe that inclin'd him to it, than a meer admiration of the Works of Nature. *Democritus* and ſome others had been of Opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concurſionibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of thoſe ſeveral parcels, of which the Univerſe conſiſted; and that Man himſelf was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the Elements, as *Minutius* hath obſerved out of their Writings. To which abſurd Opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongſt many of the old Philoſophers, when *Ariſtotle* knew not how to ſubmit his moſt exquiſite Judgment; and yet was deſtitute of ſuch further light, as might more fully have inſtructed him in its true *Original*: He rather choſe to grant the World to be eternal, than to be made of ſuch ridiculous, and unſound, though eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno eſſe, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerſiſſe. Valeſius* in his Book *de Sacra Philoſophia* ſo pleads the caſe in his behalf; and I thank him for it: who am (I muſt confeſs) a great Friend of *Ariſtotle*'s, whom ſome account for the *Præcurſor* of our Saviour Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptiſt* was *in divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reaſon tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning; but, by the help of Scripture, and the Works of ſome Learned Men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin; or to compute how many Years it is preciſely from the firſt beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be moſt truly ſaid, *Citius inter Horologias quam Chronologias*; that *Clocks* may ſooner be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet moſt *Chronologers* in this point come ſo near one another, that the difference is ſcarce obſervable. From the beginning of the *World* to the Birth of *Chriſt*, in the accompt of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 Years, 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*, 3960 in the eſteem of *Luther*, and 3963 in the calculation of *Melancthon*: between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the leaſt and the greateſt) there is but 35 Years difference, which in ſo long a courſe of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the trueſt, we add 1648 ſince the Birth of *Chriſt*, the total of the time ſince the World's Creation, will be 5576 Years, neither more nor leſs. A thing which I the rather have inſiſted on, becauſe that from this *Epoche* or *Æra* of the *World's Creation*, we ſhall compute the times of ſuch Kings and Princes, as reigned and flouriſhed in the World before the *Incarnation* of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then reſolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that He made it in ſuch time as Himſelf pleaſed; let us next look upon the *matter* and the *method* which it pleaſed the Divine Majeſty to make uſe of, in this wondrous work.

Firſt, For the *matter*, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was ſaid, to be that which *Moſes* in the firſt words of *Geneſis* calls the *Heaven and the Earth*, becauſe they were ſo *in potentia*; but after telleth us more explicitely, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanes & vacua*, without form and void; and that which he calleth *Heaven* was but an over-caſt of darkneſs, or *tenebræ ſuper faciem Abyſſi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confuſed *Maſs* we thus read in *Ovid*, who queſtionleſs had herein conſulted with the Works of *Moſes*, being before his time communicated to the Learned Gentiles:

Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cœlum,
Unus erat tota naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, *rudis indigeſtaq; moles,*
Nec quicquam niſi pondus iners, congeſtaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum diſcordia ſemina rerum, &c.

Which I ſhall Engliſh from *G. S.* with ſome little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had Nature which they *Chaos* named;
An indigeſted lump, a barren load,
Where jarring Seeds of things ill-join'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the World adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waining Horns:
Nor hung the ſelf-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vaſt Shores embrac'd.
Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth unſtable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one aſſign'd;
This, that reſiſts; for in one body join'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The ſoft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or firſt Matter, did God raiſe the World, according to thoſe ſeveral parts and lineaments which we ſee in it, not as out of any pre-exiſtent Matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or firſt Maker of it; but as the firſt preparatory Matter which himſelf had made, including in the ſame *potentially* both the Form and Matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of Man only, which God breathed into him. And therefore it is truly ſaid, that God made all things out of *nothing*; not out of *nothing* as the Matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing* muſt be *ſomething*; but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving them a real and corporal being, which before they had not, and did then firſt begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philoſophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that *nothing* can be made of *nothing*; that every thing which hath a being doth require ſome matter which muſt be pre-exiſtent to it, yet this muſt either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or elſe be limited and reſtrained to *Natural Agents*, which cannot go beyond the Sphere of their own activity; *Inviſible* and *ſupernatural Agents* are not tyed to Rules, no not in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature, conſtituted and eſtabliſhed in a certain courſe, work every thing by line and meaſure as a certain Rule. And ſo it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the World, but he made it out of *nothing*, by his Word alone: *Dixit & facta ſunt.* He ſpake the Word and they were made, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*, *Pſal.* 33. 9. There went no greater Pains nor Matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*: And this not only ſaid by *Moſes*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati ſunt Cœli, & ſpiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, v. 6. i. e. By the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, and all the Hoſts thereof by the Breath of his Mouth. In which it is to be obſerved, that though the *Creation* of the *World* be generally aſcribed to God the *Father*, yet both the *Son* and the *Holy Ghoſt* had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, ſaith the Prophet *David*. *In the beginning was the Word; all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made*, ſaith St. *John* the Apoſtle. The *Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters*, ſaith *Moſes* in the Book of the Law: *Et ſpiritu oris ejus*, and by the Breath (or Spirit) of his Mouth were all the Hoſts of Heaven created, ſaith *David* in the Book of *Pſalms*, Made by his *Word*, and yet not made together in one inſtant of Time. In the firſt day he laid the Foundation and no more; in the five next, he raiſed the Building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions: and to ſet forth withal unto us, both his Power and Wiſdom. His *Power* he manifeſted in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what Effects he pleaſed, without the help of Natural Cauſes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth Plants, without the Influence or Motion of the Heavenly Bodies. And for his *Wiſdom* he expreſſed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beaſts of the Field before he had provided them of Fodder and ſufficient Herbage; nor *made Man after his own Image*, before he had finiſhed all the reſt of his Works, fitted his Houſe, and furniſhed it with all things neceſſary both for Life and Pleaſures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at laſt comes *Man* into the World: and he doth make his entrance with a greater Pomp than any of the reſt of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the Workmanſhip of *Man*, there was a Conſultation held by the bleſſed *Trinity*. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us make Man; each Perſon contributing ſomewhat (as it were) to his Compoſition. For God the *Father* as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him Form and Feature; in which he did imprint his own Heavenly Image. The *Son*, who is the Living and Eternal *Word*, gave him Voice of Speech, that ſo he might be able to ſet forth Gods Praiſes. The *Holy Ghoſt*, the *Lord* and *giver of Life*, (as the *Nicene* Fathers truly call him) *breathing into his Noſtrills the Breath of Life*, whereby he became a Living Spirit. In this one *Creature*, was amaſſed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or ſubſtance of Inanimate Creatures, the Life of Plants, the Senſe of Beaſts, and the Underſtanding of Angels. In this one Creature did God ſhew the excellency of his Power and Wiſdom, in printing on him his *own Image*, and giving him dominion over all the *Works of his Hands*, which *Image of God* they look for it in a very wrong place who hope to find it in Mans Body, though of a gallant Compoſition and erected Structure. The Heathen Orator was able in this Point to inform ſome Erroneous *Chriſtians*. *Ad Divinam imaginem propius accedit humana virtus quam figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the Endowments of his Mind, than in the Structure of his Body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that dominion which God gave him over the Works of his Hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the firſt of *Geneſis*. For God no ſooner ſaid, *Faciamus Hominem* Let us make Man after our own Image, but preſently he adds this *Charter* of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the Fiſh of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattle, and over all the Earth.* A more particular Explication of thoſe ſeveral Points, wherein that *Image* and this *Power* do conſiſt eſpecially, I ſhall not take upon me or endeavour now; as being not of this place and purpoſe: Which only is to ſhew, that as man in the very Act of his Creation participated more of the *Divine Image* than all other Creatures: So was he by Gods ſpecial Grant enfeoffed with a larger *Power* than any of the reſt could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his Servants, and to attend upon his Pleaſure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (ſetting aſide the dignity of his firſt Creation) doth come into the World in a worſe condition than any of the Creatures which were made to ſerve him, naked, and impotent, and ſpeechleſs, without uſe of Reaſon; neither of Power to help himſelf, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius*, in my mind, gives a very good Reaſon, who telleth us, that God ſends Man into the World, *nudum & inermem*, naked and weak, and undefenced againſt all Violences and Dangers; whereas all Creatures elſe, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata ſunt*, are naturally both armed and cloathed, and able to relieve themſelves. And this he doth unto this end, that Man being naturally deſtitute of thoſe outward helps, might make uſe of his inward faculties of Judgment, Wit and Underſtanding, in furniſhing himſelf with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the firſt original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is moſt plain and evident from the Book of God, in which we ſee, that preſently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himſelf to keeping Sheep, and *Cain* to Huſbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and ſuch Muſical Inſtruments; and *Tubal Cain* to work upon Braſs and Iron, two Metals very neceſſary to moſt kind of Trades. The like may be ſuppoſed in all other Myſteries and Arts of Living, though there be no expreſs mention of them in thoſe early days; except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no queſtion is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain*'s City, and *Noah*'s Ark is moſt clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things neceſſary for the Life of Man, leaving Man to provide himſelf of ſuch additions as rather ſerve for Comforts and Conveniences in the way of his living, than the Neceſſities of his Life.

Here then we have the Works of God, and the Works of Men to be conſidered, in purſuit of our preſent Argument. The Works of God in ſhadowing the Earth with *Trees* and *Foreſts*, interlacing it with Chryſtal *ſtreams*, and capacious *Rivers*; inriching it with fruitful and *delicious Vales*, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and ſtocking both the Hills and Vales with all ſorts of *Cattel.* But nothing more ſets forth the Power and Wiſdom of Almighty God, as it relates to theſe particulars, than that moſt admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: Some Countries being deſtitute of thoſe Commodities with which others abound; and being plentiful in thoſe which the others want. Inſomuch that as in the body of Man, that *Microcoſm*, or little World, the Head cannot ſay, that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other Members of the reſt: So neither in the Body of the World, can *Europe* ſay to *Aſia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities, or am not wanting in thoſe things whereof thou boaſteſt an abundance.Something there is in every Country which may be ſpared to ſupply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandiſe: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his Colonies,

Hence come our Sugars from Canary *Iſles*;
From Candie *Currans, Muſcadels, and Oyls.*
From the Moluccoes *Spices*; *Balſamum*
From Egypt; *Odours from* Arabia *come.*
From India *Gums, rich Drugs, and Ivory*;
From Syria *Mummy*; *black, red Ebony*
From burning Chus; *from* Peru, *Pearls and Gold*;
From Ruſſia *Furrs to keep the Rich from cold.*
From Florence *Silks*; *from* Spain *Fruit, Saffron, Sack*;
From Denmark *Amber, Cordage, Firrs and Flax.*
From France *and* Flanders *Linnen, Wood and Wine*;
From Holland *Hops*; *Horſe from the banks of* Rhine.
From England *Wool. All Lands, as God diſtributes,*
To the Worlds treaſure pay their ſundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* ſpeaks of the preſent times, ſo queſtionleſs the ſame, or the like Commerce held good in the firſt Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furniſhing all Countries from the firſt beginning with ſome *Staple Commodities*, for the benefit of themſelves and others; for the maintaining of that intercouſe between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the cloſer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end alſo ſerve thoſe ſeveral *Manufactures* wherewith ſome Countries do abound in reſpect of others; but looked on, in the preſent Book, as the Works of Men. And of this kind alſo are the ſeveral *Polities* and Forms of Government. For though all *Magiſtracy* in it ſelf be from God originally, and that the *Monarchical* Form comes neareſt to the Government uſed by God himſelf: Yet being that ſome *Polities* are meerly but humane inventions, all *Government* and Magiſtracy is called an *Ordinance of man* in holy Scripture, 1 *Pet.* 2. 13. But thoſe particular Works of Men, which are the moſt conſiderable part of our preſent Subject, are *Caſtles*, *Towns*, and *Cities* of moſt eminent note, which thrive and proſper in the World, according as they do partake of thoſe Conveniences which conduce moſt to their Magnificence and Greatneſs. Of theſe *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of thoſe many we ſhall touch upon the Principal only; paſſing by thoſe of leſſer note, as pleaſantneſs of Sight, fruitfulneſs of Soil, ſalubrity of Air, and ſuch like obvious Obſervations. Firſt then there is required to the Magnificence and Splendor of Cities a Navigable River, or ſome ſuch eaſie paſſage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourſe and trade of Merchants; as *Venice*, *London*, *Amſterdam.* Secondly, ſome Staple Manufactures or Commodities which will draw the like reſort of Merchants,though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nuremberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; for, *ubi Imperator*, *ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all ſorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long ſince a poor beggarly Village, is grown the moſt populous City in all *Spain.* Fourthly, the Reſidence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with ſtately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* ſo much excell ours in *England*, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the moſt part in their Country-houſes. Fifthly, the *Seats* or *Tribunals* of Juſtice, on which both *Advocates* and *Clients* are to give attendance; as in the *Parliamentary* Cities in *France*, and *Spires* in *Germany*. Sixthly, Univerſities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make reſort; which hath been long the chief cauſe of the flouriſhing of *Oxford*, *Cambridge*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; moſt men being moſt deſirous to inhabit there, where their Income will be greateſt, their Priviledges largeſt, and their Disburſments leaſt: So *Naples*, *Florence*, *Venice*, having been deſolated by Plagues, were again ſuddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And laſt of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the *Reliques* of *Saints*, or ſome noted Shrines, or the reſidence of ſome Famous Man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the leaſt *Adamant* which draws people to it, to the great enriching of ſome Cities. And of this *Rome* it ſelf can give us two moſt pregnant Evidences: The one in reference to the *Popes*, and theſe latter times; that famous Town not otherwiſe ſubſiſting now, than by the conſtant reſidence of the *Popes* and *Cardinals*; whoſe abſence while the Papal See was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almoſt in its own ſad Ruines. The other, in the perſon of *Titus Livius* the Hiſtorian; to ſee which man there came ſo many from the Coaſts of *France* and *Spain*, that St. *Hierome* elegantly ſaith, *Quos ad ſui contemplationem* Roma *non traxerat, unius hujus hominis fama perduxit*; *qui jam urbem tantam ingreſſi, aliud extra* Urbem *quærerent.*

Such are the Cauſes of the Greatneſs and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might poſſibly be looked at by the firſt Builders of Cities, I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and ſelf-preſervation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular Wealth of thoſe amongſt whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expreſly in the Book of God, That being poſſeſſed with this Fear, that *every one that found him would lay hands upon him and ſlay him*, in revenge of the blood of *Abel*, *He builded a City and called it by the name of his Son* Enoch, *Gen.* 4. 17. *Builded a City?* For what reaſon? To fortifie and ſecure himſelf againſt all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppreſs his Neighbours, as *Joſephus* witneſſeth. Neither was this the only City of the firſt Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture ſaith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of ſuch as dwell in Tents*, and of ſuch as have Cattel; that is to ſay, he was the firſt of thoſe that lived upon Paſturage, and followed their Cattel up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain Home or Habitations, as the wild *Arabes* now, and the ancient *Nomades*; is proof ſufficient, that the reſidue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of Life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in theſe things I think he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his Brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of Stone. But whether this be ſo, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the Weſt, whereupon *Joppa* ſtood, as the *Land of Nod* on the Eaſt ſide of *Paradiſe*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood; and ſo were moſt of the other parts of the *World* beſides: And if well peopled in all, or moſt parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for neceſſary Habitation, as for Strength and Safety. Now that the World was throughly peopled before the Flood, ſeems clear to me by that great and univerſal Deluge, which God was pleaſed to bring upon the *Face of all the Earth*: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of Waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppreſſion in the ſight of God? Beſides, it is expreſly ſaid in the Holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the Flood in the largeſt account, and not 300 in the ſhorteſt; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philiſtins*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *Ellaſar*, *Elam*, and of the *Nations* who queſtionleſs had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea* and *Meſopotamia* in the time of *Abraham* had their ſeveral Cities, as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damaſcus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded alſo:

Not to ſay any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneb* in the Land of *Shinaar*, (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Nineve*, *Reſen*, *Rebohoth*, and *Chalah* in the Land of *Aſſyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10*th* of *Geneſis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Aſſyrian* Monarch [*] (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having ſubdu'd the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, and 10600 armed Chariots; and was encountred by *Zoroaſter*, the King thereof, with an Army of 400000. The credibility whereof, if it were diſputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Cteſias* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of Men and upwards; and yet was over-match'd, and ſlain by an *Indian* King. If then within the ſpace of four hundred Years, we find the Eaſtern Parts to be ſo well planted, ſo many Kings poſſeſſed of their Regal Thrones, and many of them able to impreſs ſuch infinite Armies, why may we not conclude, that in the courſe of 1656 Years (for ſo long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; eſpecially conſidering the long Lives of Men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred Years; and conſequently the long time they had to apply themſelves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercator*'s Opinion, who placing the ſixteen Dynaſty of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Euſebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the firſt planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*, reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the firſt Creation. That, *Miſraim* the Son of *Ham* was poſſeſſed of *Egypt*, within two hundred Years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor ſee I any cauſe to doubt, but that in the like ſpace of time from the firſt Creation, it might be planted alſo by the Sons of *Adam*: conſidering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the Bodies of Men were moſt perfect and of greateſt [illegible]our, they obſerved no degree of Kindred or Conſanguinity; nor tied themſelves ſo ſtrictly to one Woman as they ſhould have done. And for the Names of all the Kings of thoſe ſeveral Dynaſties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, ſuch as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of Stone, as in thoſe of *Joppa*; or *Miſraim* might have them by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*, and ſo deliver them by Tale unto his Poſterity; the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and ſtanding very much on their own Antiquity [†]. And if this may be ſaid of *Egypt* (as for my part I ſee no reaſon but it may) then may the like be ſaid of all Countries elſe, that they had their ſeveral Kings and Rulers, and Set-Forms of Government: the Fathers of Families in thoſe times, having the Command and Sovereignty over all that deſcended of them. Nor make I any queſtion of it, but they had ſeveral Languages and Forms of Speech, at leaſt to the *Dialect* and Pronunciation; although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the ſame. But being there are no *Remainders* of this firſt *Plantation*, unleſs we will give credit to ſome *Jewiſh* Fablers, who tell us of ſome Giants who ſaved themſelves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Nicholas Damaſcenus*, who ſpeaks of ſome that ſaved themſelves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in ſome part of *Armenia*, I ſhall the leſs inſiſt upon it. Nor had I ſtood ſo long upon theſe firſt Ages, which *Moſes* paſſeth over with ſo ſhort a Narrative, but that it is affirmed by *Pererius*, a right learned *Jeſuit*, that neither *Egypt* nor *Aſſyria*, nor the reſt of the World, was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no ſtronger reaſon, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the laſt words of the tenth of *Geneſis*, That *by theſe* (that is to ſay, by the Poſterity of the Sons of *Noah*) *were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood.* Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo ſignificatur, talem diviſionem non fuiſſe ante Diluvium*; by which it doth appear (ſaith he) that in the times before the Flood was no ſuch diviſion.

'Tis true, that this diviſion of the World by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the beſt evidence in Scripture, becauſe there is expreſs Text for it, which is not for the firſt Plantations. But looking on the great encreaſe of Mankind before the Flood, that ſaying of *Beroſus* will prove *tantamount* to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas novas ſedes neceſſitatem compuliſſe*, that they were driven by neceſſity to ſeek new dwellings, the neceſſity of providing Victuals for themſelves and their Families, being as ſtrong a motive unto ſuch diſperſions, as the *Confuſion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which ſuch *neceſſity* would have done in long tract of time, the *Confuſion of Tongues* did in an Inſtant: not only making thoſe proud *Builders* to give over the finiſhing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themſelves with ſuch, whoſe Language came moſt near to that which themſelves were Maſters of. It was high time, no queſtion, to deſiſt from this proud Attempt, when the Labourer underſtood not what the Workmen called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But becauſe ſome Plantations had no reference to the *Confuſion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the ſending out of ſuch Colonies as were neareſt to the place where the *Ark* did reſt, I think it not amiſs to reſolve that Queſtion touching the reſting of the *Ark*, on which the Plantations of the *Eaſt* have ſo great dependance. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* reſteth on the *Mountains of Ararat*, but where thoſe Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Joſephus* and ſome other of more eminent Note, (but ſuch as ground themſelves upon his Authority) affirm, thoſe Mountains of *Ararat* to be the Hills of *Armenia*: which they do chiefly on theſe Reaſons: Firſt, becauſe *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confeſſedly; And ſecondly, Becauſe of an old Tradition countenanced by *Beroſus*, and ſome others of the ancient Writers cited by *Joſephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordiaean* Mountains in *Armenia major*, ſome of the reliques of the *Ark* were remaining in their times, and uſed as a preſervative againſt Inchantments. Which notwithſtanding, I incline rather to the Opinion of *Goropius Becanus* (who amongſt many ſtrange Whimſeys broached ſome notable Truths) by whom the *Ark* is ſaid to reſt on the top of Mount *Caucaſus* in the Confines of *Tartary*, *Perſia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greateſt conſequence: the firſt whereof is grounded upon evident reaſon; the ſecond on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon Reaſon, is the exceeding populoſity of thoſe Eaſtern Countries, into which none of thoſe by whom the World was planted after the *Confuſion* of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their ſeveral Colonies, by any who have took moſt pains in this diſcovery. Thoſe infinite numbers which *Staurobates*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians*, brought into the Field againſt *Semiramis*; and the vaſt Army of *Zoroaſter*, the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province againſt *Ninus*, are proof enough, that thoſe Countries were of an elder Plantation, than to be a ſecond or third *Caſting* of ſome other *Swarm* ſettled in *Perſia* or *Aſſyria* after the *Confuſion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I muſt needs look upon it, as a thing impoſſible, that thoſe vaſt Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raiſe out of all her Dominions, ſhould be encountered by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; if that one King, and thoſe his Subjects had been ſome late Colony of thoſe new Plantations, and not poſſeſſed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confuſion.* Nor was it but upon ſome good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucaſus*) were generally eſteemed the moſt ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitors with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima:* which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long ſince forgotten, was not ſtood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his Children near the place of the *Ark*, till numbers and neceſſity compelled them to enlarge their Border. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I ſhall make no queſtion, but that ſuch Parts as lay neareſt, were peopled and poſſeſſed before thoſe which lay furtheſt off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages ſince. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls ſhort of that which comes from the Text it ſelf, both in authority and weight; where it is ſaid of the Heads of thoſe ſeveral Families which afterwards joined together in the building of *Babel*, that *As they went from the* Eaſt, *they found a Plain in the Land of* Shinaar, *and there they abode*, Gen. 11. 2. If then they came from the *Eaſt* to the Land of *Shinaar*, as the Text ſaith plainly that they did, it might well be, that they came from thoſe Parts of *Aſia*, on the South of *Caucaſus*, which lie Eaſt of *Shinaar*, though ſomewhat bending to the North; impoſſible they ſhould come from the *Gordiæan* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (ſuppoſed to be the Hills which the *Ark* did reſt on) which lie not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the Weſt. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79 and 80. The *Latitude* of the *Gordiæan* Mountains in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which accompt thoſe Mountains are ſix Degrees more Northwards, and five Degrees more Weſtwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the Eaſt of that Valley, except we make *Moſes* (whoſe hand God guided in his Books) to ſpeak God knows what, or, in plain terms, to ſpeak plain nonſenſe. And though the Scripture be ſo clear, that it needs no Commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongſt thoſe of the other Opinion, in ſifting out of the authority of ſo plain a Text, do add, in my conceit, ſome moment and weight unto it. For ſome will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with ſome bending towards the Eaſt; which, were it true, as nothing is more truly falſe; *Moſes* had never told us that they came from the Eaſt; but from ſome Countries of the North, which lay towards the Eaſt. Others will have a double progreſs of the Heads of thoſe ſeveral Families: Firſt, from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Aſſyria* and *Suſiana*; And ſecondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this firſt Journey there is *ne gry qnidem*, not ſo much as any one ſyllable in all the Scripture; beſides the needleſneſs of making them go ſo far about, and to croſs over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, whereas they had a ſhorter and an eaſier paſſage. *Capellus*, ſingular by himſelf, quarrelleth with the Tranſlation (received without diſpute by all other *Criticks*) and will not have *Hebrew Kedem* to be rendred Eaſt, but to ſignifie that Region, whatſoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the Son of *Iſmael*, of whom we find mention, *Gen.* 25. 15. But then, beſides his quarrel with all other Tranſlations, he ſuppoſed a former progreſs from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that Land of *Kedem*, and conſequently falleth into a part of the Error before refelled. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Aſſyrians* called all thoſe parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eaſtern, and thoſe on this ſide of it the Weſtern, would thence conclude, that theſe Heads may be ſaid by *Moſes* to have come from the Eaſt, becauſe they came from one of the Eaſtern Provinces of the *Aſſyrian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For, beſides that the greateſt part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the leaſt part of it on the Weſt, and therefore not within the compaſs of the Eaſtern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this diviſion was in uſe in the time of *Moſes*, we may as rationally conclude, and with leſs abſurdity, that the firſt Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the Weſt (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly Eaſt of it) becauſe *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the Weſt parts of the Empire.

---

[*] *Sir* John Marſham *has clearly proved that* Ninus *lived many Ages after* Abraham, *and not many before* Xerxes. Chroncus Canon *pag.* 476.

[†] Marſham *has made all this clear as the Light, ſince the Death of* Dr. Heylin, *and proved theſe* Egyptian *Dynoſties to be Contemporary, three or more at a time, which now being printed one after another, make that ſpecious ſhew of Antiquity.*

Having thus fortified our Opinion both with Scripture and Reaſon, the Arguments produced againſt us will be eaſily anſwered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Country of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Country. That mighty ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Aſia* the *leſs*, run as far as *India* (by the Ancients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moſes* the Mountains of *Ararat*, becauſe that was the firſt Country of the greater *Aſia* by which they paſſed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly; juſt as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it waſhed many Shores beſides: Or as ſome Hills with us are called *Malvern* Hills, becauſe they are higheſt near that Village, though they extend themſelves into other Lordſhips. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Teſtimony of humane Writers, which (as before was ſaid) are brought in for an help, touching ſome Reliques of the *Ark* to be ſeen on the *Gordiæan* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For firſt *Beroſus* (followed herein by all the reſt) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-ſay; which is a weak Staff for ſo heavy a Cauſe to rely upon. *Secondly*, To balance the Authority of *Beroſus* (if of any credit in this caſe) we have the teſtimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as ancient almoſt as he, affirming poſitively, *In Scythia Saga renatum eſſe mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia*, which after was poſſeſſed by the *Sacans*: and they, we know, dwelt in thoſe parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucaſus*. And *Thirdly*, unto one *Tradition* to oppoſe another; thoſe of Mount *Caucaſus* do averr, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah*'s Plantation: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time I ſhould go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diſperſions; for whom it was high time to conſort themſelves with ſuch as they could underſtand; the neceſſity of Diſcourſe and Conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aſide their old Acquaintances, and join themſelves to others of their own new Language. I know that many Learned Men, according to the number of Names laid down in the tenth of *Geneſis*, being ſeventy, have made ſo many Languages to have been ſpoken upon that *Confuſion*: And that of thoſe, twenty ſix being the Poſterity of *Sem*, diſperſed themſelves about *Aſia the greater*; thirty others of the Loins of *Cham*, Peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the fourteen which remain, being the Iſſue of *Japhet*, withdrew themſelves towards *Europe*, and the leſſer *Aſia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vain conceit, though many more improbable, have paſſed for currant. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongſt them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*. And as for *Joctan* and his Sons, being thirteen in number, conſidering that he was the younger Brother of *Phaleg*, in whoſe time this *Confuſion* happen'd; it is moſt probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or, if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the deſign of the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and conſequently could not be within the curſe of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the Seventy to be taken off, as poſſibly might all the Sons of *Miſraim* be, if it were worth the while to inſiſt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the diſperſion into the ſaid three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but falſe enough, if underſtood of any preſent ſeparation of the Sons of *Noah*, into parts ſo far remote and diſtant from one another. For what needed any ſuch remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and ſo enjoy that civil intercourſe, and mutual Society which the nature of Mankind doth moſt delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joining themſelves to Men of the ſame Language with them, did firſt ſet down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and diſperſed themſelves into further Countries, as either the neceſſity of providing of Victuals, or ſeeking better and more fruitful Habitations for themſelves and theirs, or the deſire of being out of the reach of ſome potent Neighbours, whoſe Yoke they found too heavy for their Necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being ſo ſettled to their Minds, the addition of a few more Years brought the like neceſſity of ſending *Colonies* farther off, as they grew more or leſs populous in their Generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongſt whom one Swarm ſends out another, that begets a *Caſtling*, till the whole Ground or Garden grow too ſmall to hold them. For thus (to ſeek no further for an inſtance of it) the *Gauls* firſt planted *Britain*; the *Britains*, *Ireland*, and *Iriſh Scotland*, and the *Iſles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to ſuſtain, and too narrow to contain their Multitudes, *anguſtos ſe fines habere arbitrantes*, as in *Cæſar's Commentaries*, intended to plant themſelves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* flying the dreadful Sword of *Joſhuah* the Son of *Nun*, ſought them out dwellings further off from the preſent danger, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the firſt People after the Flood, diſtribute and diſperſe themſelves into ſeveral Parts, as their Poſterities have done ſince, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own Names, or ſome Names of their own impoſing, upon the Countries planted or diſcovered by them. And though the length, and conſuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the Names impoſed by the firſt *Adventurers*, I mean the firſt *Planters* after the Flood: yet all the Footſteps of Antiquity are not ſo defaced, but that ſome Nations and Cities have preſerved the Memory of their firſt Founders and true Parents. In the diſcovery whereof, as *Joſephus* in his Book of *Jewiſh Antiquities* did firſt lead the way, and gave good light to thoſe who have travelled in it, ſo a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the Tenth of *Geneſis*, Sir *Walter Rawleigh* in his excellent Hiſtory, and lately by *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. † Out of thoſe Learned Labours, and ſome Animadverſions of mine own, I ſhall here ſay ſomewhat concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual deſcription of it under the Hiſtory of thoſe ſeveral Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

† *See alſo* Dr. Stillingfleet *in his* Origines Sacræ.

Firſt therefore to begin with the Poſterity of *Sem*, as thoſe who fixed themſelves in *Aſia*, without wandring further; we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to ſay, *Elam*, *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud* and *Aram*; of whom there is no Iſſue on Record in Holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of theſe two there are four Sons given to *Aram*, viz. *Uz*, *Hull*, *Gether*, and *Meſech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Anceſtor of *Abraham*, and *Jocktan*, the Father of thoſe thirteen Sons, whoſe Names we ſhall rehearſe hereafter, if occaſion be. From *Elam*, who is firſt named, did deſcend the *Elamites*, a People bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times join'd together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O Elam, Beſiege*, O Media, *Eſa*. 21. 2. *And all the Kings of* Elam, *all the Kings of the* Medes, *Jer*. 25. 25. And in the Second of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in Rank and File, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this People was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond of *Maccab*. 6. 2. ſufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there conſecrated to *Diana*. A City ſeated on the Banks of the River *Euleus*, and neighbouring cloſe to *Suſiana*, which therefore is ſometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan*. 8. 2. *I was* (ſaith he) *in the Palace of* Suſa, *in the Province of* Elam: where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all thoſe Nations whom they after maſtered. The ſecond Son of *Sem* is *Aſſur*, of whom there is no queſtion made amongſt the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Aſſyrians*, called *Aſſyres* in ſome old *Greek* Writers: Not of the whole People of that great and unweildy Empire, who ſometimes generally paſs by the name of *Aſſyrians*, but of the People of *Aſſyria*, ſtrictly and properly ſo called, as it denotes the Country about *Nineve* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circuitum Adiabene*, Aſſyria *priſcis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Lib*. 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Aſſur*, and him *Joſephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldæans*, called anciently *Arphaxadæi*, if he tells us true. But others tell us, and that more probable perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Aſſyria* which was firſt called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. *Lud* the fourth Son is generally ſaid to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a People of *Aſia* the leſs; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or Λύδοι as the *Græcians* call them) being much alike. And it is poſſible enough that ſome of the Poſterity of this *Lud* might afterwards ſettle in thoſe Parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud*, their common Anceſtor; as the Poſterity of *Abraham* took unto themſelves the name of *Hebrews* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* ſhould in Perſon go ſo far from the reſt of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot eaſily imagine; for, *Aram* the fifth and laſt (as they ſtand in order of the Text) ſets himſelf down cloſe by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the ſeveral Provinces which were hence denominated, we ſhall hereafter ſpeak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this teſtimony and acknowledgment from the Pen of *Strabo*. *Quos nos* Syros *vocamus*, *ipſi Syri* Aramenios & Arameos *vocant*. Thoſe (ſaith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themſelves *Arameans*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the ſame Parts did the four Sons of *Aram* ſet themſelves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria* which is called *Syria Damaſcena*, or *Aram Dammeſek*: the building of the great City of *Damaſcus* being generally aſcribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damaſcus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hull*, or *Chull*, the next Son of *Aram*, whom both *Joſephus* and S. *Hierom* ſettle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: and that not improbably, conſidering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which ſtill preſerve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimnam*, *Colſa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. For *Gether*, the third Son of

Aram; it is not yet agreed on where to find his Dwelling. *Joſephus*, contrary to all reaſon, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer*, with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* ſets him down in the Province of *Caſſiotis*, and *Seleuſis*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nations called by *Pliny*, *Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the Banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the Controverſie were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolomy*, a City of *Albania* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the ſame Country called *Getras*; I ſee no cauſe why we ſhould ſeek further for the Seat of *Gether*; though the *Greek* Copies (more ſubject to corruption in the times of Ignorance, than the *Latin* were) inſtead of *Getara* read *Gagara* But if this be too far to ſet him, we ſhall find *Mas* or *Meſch*, the laſt Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern Parts of *Syria*, towards *Meſopotamia*, near the Hill called *Maſius*: at the Foot whereof there is a People, which *Stephanus* called *Maſieni*; and thereabouts a River which in *Xenophon* is named *Maſca*. Both which do evidently declare from what Root they come.

Come we next to the ſecond Branch of the Houſe of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*, whom we left ſetled in the Region of *Arapachitis*, in or near *Aſſyria*. Not far from which, in *Suſiana*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolomy*'s Tables, and the 23d Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. And unto this the Authority of *Euſtathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σάλα ἀφ' ȣ̃ Σȣσιανοι, The People of *Suſiana* came from *Sala*. But this, as I conceive, muſt be underſtood only of that Part of this People, which lived in and about the City of *Sala*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Suſians*, or *Suſiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another Root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the People of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebrews*, do derive their Name: And to him *Phaleg* his firſt-born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, ſituate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolomy* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the Banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles Waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, inſtead of *Phalga*.

But the great increaſe of *Sem*'s Poſterity came by *Joktan*, the ſecond Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whoſe Names are on Record in the tenth of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount in the Eaſt*. And here I muſt crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath wronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little Corner of *Arabia Fælix*, where I can find no room for them, and leſs reaſon to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his Poſterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himſelf confeſſeth, it muſt needs be, that they had ſpread themſelves over all the Country, before any of the Sons of *Joktan* were of Age ſufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly ſuppoſed not to have been born when ſuch of *Noah*'s Poſterity as are mention'd *Gen.* 10. diſperſed themſelves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his Children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two ſeveral places. Firſt, granting that neither *Phaleg* nor *Joktan* were preſent at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus* Joktanis *filii poſt aliquot annos geniti*; much leſs the Sons of *Joktan*, begot many years after, *Lib.* 1. *c.* 16. And ſecondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his Children came not within the Curſe of *Confounded Languages, quia nondum erant geniti*, becauſe then unborn, *C* 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improble that *Joktan* and his Children ſhould find room in the beſt parts of *Arabia Fælix*, which *Chus* and his Poſterity had inhabited ſo long before. And as it is improbable that the Sons of *Chus* would plant themſelves in the worſt part of the Country for ſo many Ages, and leave the beſt and richeſt of it for ſome new Adventurers: So it is impoſſible that the Sons of *Joktan* ſhould either be removed ſo far from the reſt of the Houſe of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the Eaſt of the River *Tygris*, as was before ſhewed: or that they ſhould be able, had they been ſo minded, to break through the whole Countries of the *Aſſyrians*, *Chuſites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmoſt Corners of *Arabia Fælix*. He that believes they did, or could, muſt have a ſtronger Faith than mine; but it ſhall never conduce any thing to his *Juſtification*. Nor am I moved at all at that which ſeems to me to be his weightieſt Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joſeph Ben Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers, affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and Servant of *Abraham*; becauſe that People ſo report it for their greater Glory.

And for the ſeveral Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whoſe Original he aſcribes to the Sons of *Joktan*, I ſee ſo many tranſpoſitions of Syllables, alterations even of *Radical* Letters, ſuch and ſo many wreſted *Originations*, as by the like liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatſoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the Derivations of the *Allumæote* from *Almodad*, of the *Manitæ* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobaritæ* from *Jobab*? How impoſſible is it that *Jarech* ſhould give name to the Iſle which *Ptolomy* calleth Νῆσος Ἱεράκων, *Inſula Jeracuma* or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latin* hath it; that is to ſay, the Iſle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were therein bred: There being another Iſland of the ſame Name near unto *Sardinia* (ſo called for the ſelf-ſame Reaſon) and a Town called *Jarax* in *Hammoniaca*, a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarech* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* ſhould give name to *Urphre*, a poor Iſle of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Æthiopia*, on the other ſide of that Gulf? Or that *Dicla* muſt be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reaſon, but becauſe the Word ſignifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Country yields good plenty, as if ſome other Countries did not yield as much? Theſe and ſome other Reaſons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned Man in this particular, whoſe Induſtry and Abilities I do otherwiſe honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his Sons in the Eaſt-part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderneſs, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Geneſis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet ſo far I muſt yield to that learned Man, that ſome of the Deſcendants of *Jocktan* in long tract of time, moved with the Rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themſelves upon the Sea-Coaſts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this Day, moved with the Wealth and Trade of *India*, have poſſeſs'd themſelves of many of the Ports and Pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount of the Eaſt*; ſo that by theſe two Boundaries, *Meſha* and *Sephar*, their Habitation muſt be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Meſha* to be *Muſa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-weſt of *Arabia Felix*, and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-eaſt of that Country; that City giving name to ſome Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Moſes* wrote, I cannot ſee how this Poſition can agree with the Word of Scripture; and therefore we muſt look for both in ſome other place. And firſt to find out *Meſha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himſelf, who maketh *Meſh*, the laſt of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general Opinion of moſt Writers elſe) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Meſopotamia*, from him called *Mons Maſius*, more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the Eaſt*; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imaus*, by *Ptolomy* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates* extending from Mount *Caucaſus*, to the Cape *Comari* in the hither *India*, as *Poſtellus* a right learned Man doth conceive it to be: We have, without more difficulty, found out the dwellings of the Sons of *Joktan*, according to the bounds laid down in Holy Scripture. But for fear this may not ſatisfie, for want of ſome Seconds to *Poſtellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly Eaſt from *Mons Maſius*, or the dwellings of *Meſh*; both in the Eaſt parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moſes* writ: *Mons Maſius* being placed by *Ptolomy* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the Eaſt, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* ſuper-added to it. And this agreeth to the poſition aſſigned to the Sons of *Joktan*, by *Joſephus*, *Euſebius*, and St. *Hierome*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Joſephus*, that the *Joktanites* poſſeſſed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωφῆνος ποταμοῦ Ἰνδικῆς, καὶ τῆς πρὸς αὐτοῦ Συρίας τινά, which lieth about *Kophenus*, a River of *India*, together with ſuch parts of *Syria* as did border near it. Theſe words being borrowed from *Joſephus*, both by *Euſebius* and S. *Hierom*; the firſt inſtead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no ſuch place in the World as *Jera*; and *Syria* and *Seria* (or the Country of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we ſhould there read *Aria*, and withal granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largeſt latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Parapomiſus* and *Arachoſia*, extendeth as far Eaſt-ward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Maſius* and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to ſome Mount adjoining, as *Saphar* by *Bochartus* is ſuppoſed to do to ſome of the *Arabian* Hills bordering near unto it. And as theſe ſituations do agree exactly with the meaning of thoſe ancient Writers, ſo is it alſo very ſutable to the other Plantations of the Sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all diſpute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when ſo many of the reſidue of *Noah*'s Poſterity removed towards *Shinaar*; kept themſelves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at leaſt wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*, till *Joktan*'s Sons being grown to be Fathers of Families, were forced to caſt about for new Habitations. And when neceſſity compelled them to ſeek new Seats, I would fain know why they ſhould think of making to themſelves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countries peopled and poſſeſſed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the Eaſt of *Tygris*, and the unpeopled Countries of ſome parts of *India* lay ſo near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence, and as little forced for ſome of their Plantations in the Eaſtern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the *Metropolis* of *Meſopotamia*, not far from *Meſia* or *Mons Maſius* the Weſtern Boundary: and *Jarah* of the Nation of the *Arachoſians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eaſtern limit, aſſigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an eaſie change might *Obal* or *Cobal* be ſuppoſed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamiſus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* People near unto the other? But theſe North-Eaſtern Parts being Peopled, or not very pleaſant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* ſhall we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himſelf confeſſeth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I diſpute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whoſe Name are found in *Sabalaſſa* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*: *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, a River in the ſame Tract named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: beſides the whole Nation of the *Sabæi* mentioned by *Dionyſius* in his *Periegeſis*. And though ſome late Criticks read it *Siba* inſtead of *Sabæi*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Sibæ* is confeſſed on all ſides:) yet ſeeing *Euſtathius* finds the *Sabæ* in this Country alſo, I cannot ſee but that there ſhould be room enough in *India* for both People to dwell in. For *Abimail*, another of the Sons of *Joktan*, we find more evident footſteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli*, an *Indian* People in *Maleta* and *Maliba*, two Towns of *India*, in *Maleus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malæi Colon*, a Promontory of *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, then in the *Manitæ* of *Bochartus*. For if *Abimail* ſignifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he ſaith it doth, he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally ſo called, whom we find in *India*, than that we ſhould be forced to look for them in the *Manitæ*, or look for the *Manitæ* in the Houſe of *Abimail*. If *Dicla* muſt be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reaſon than becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Country; I doubt not but to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongſt the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatitis* an *Arabian* Region have ſuch reſemblance to the name of *Chatſarmaveth*, as to take that Apellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did, we may conclude with equal, if not better reaſon, that the *Chadramatitæ* an *Indian* People, ſeated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whoſe ſtreams ſome of the reſidue of his Brethren had their Habitations, had their firſt *Original* from that *Chatſarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah*, the Ancients generally ſet him in the *Indies* alſo, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir* two of his Brethren: to whoſe authority I ſubmit, becauſe I find a Province in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, called the Kingdom of *Ava*, and thought to be ſo called from this very Man. And I conceive the like alſo of the reſt of the *Joktanites*, whoſe Habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Meſh* and *Sepha*, if one would take that liberty of *Criticiſing*, altering, and tranſpoſing Letters, as *Bochartus* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this ſhort Eſſay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own Opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium* Sephar *nomine, nec ulla poſterorum* Joktan *in* Aria *aut* India *veſtigia jam ſupereſſe*; that is to ſay, that there is no ſuch place as *Sephar*, nor any track or footſtep of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is ſo clearly evidenced.

Theſe were the Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Shem*, contracted in a narrower compaſs than either the Poſterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the firſt, beſides the great footing which he had in *Aſia*, did poſſeſs all *Africk*, and the other, beſides his ſhare in the greater *Aſia*, filled almoſt all the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof, with his fruitful Progeny. And firſt beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four Sons, that is to ſay, *Cuſh*, *Miſraim*, *Phut* and *Canaan*; of which, only *Phut* the third Son hath no iſſue aſſigned him. To *Cuſh* the Eldeſt Son were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Miſraim* the Second Son were born *Ludim*, and *Anamim*, *Lehabim*, *Nephtubim*, *Pathruſin*, *Capthorim*, and *Caſlubim*, who was the Father of *Philiſtim*. Of *Canaan* and his Iſſue we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. In the mean time we will diſpoſe of theſe firſt branches of the ſtock of *Cham*, beginning firſt with *Chus* the eldeſt, and ſo deſcending to the reſt of this firſt Line. And firſt for *Chus* though it be generally ſaid both by the *Greek* and *Jewiſh* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better ſearch he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, poſſeſſing himſelf of a good part of that which is called *Petræa*, and ſome part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the Wiſe of *Moſes*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Prieſt or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod.* 2. *v.* 16, *&c.* and yet is called an *Æthiopian Woman*, in the 12*th.* of *Numb. v.* 1. It muſt needs be, that by *Æthiopian* in the laſt place muſt be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtleſs was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Joſephus* for the *Jews*, *Ptolomy* for the *Grecians*, and S. *Hierom* for the *Latin* Writers. But we ſhall canvaſs this more throughly in its proper place: the ſtrength of Reaſon ſerving for a ſupplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the Name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills, or Rivers of all that Country, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Sheba*, the eldeſt Son of *Chus*, ſets himſelf down on the Shores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabæans*; and ſo much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the beſt Frankincenſe, being their *Metropolis* or head City. A Nation ſeated in the moſt Southern part of this *Peninſula*, ſubject in *Solomon*'s time to that famous Lady called in the Old Teſtament, from her Country, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Teſtament from the ſituation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable teſtimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah*, the ſecond of the Sons of *Chus*, moſt probable it is that he poſſeſſed himſelf of that part of *Arabia* which lay neareſt unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to encompaſs, *Gen.* 2. 21. Some footſteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotæi* of *Eratoſthenes*, the *Chaulaſti* of *Feſtus Anienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Pliny*; being all three but one People, though thus diverſly named; and all of them planted towards the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo to *Babylon*. On the ſame Shore of the *Perſian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabta* the third Son of *Chus*, where *Ptolomy* informs us of a City called *Saphta*, and of an Iſland in the ſame Gulf called *Sophta* alſo. From whence in probability ſome of this People might paſs over into *Perſia*, on the other ſide of the Gulf, and there gives names to the *Sabtæi*, which by the tranſpoſition of the Letter *T*, are by *Ptolomy* called the *Stabæi*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus* did firſt plant himſelf in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is ſo plain and poſitive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fifth Son, I confeſs I can find no tract in any of the ancient Authors. For why we ſhould admit of ſo great a change, as firſt, of *B* into *M*, and then of *T* into *D*, (which could not eaſily be done by very careleſs Tranſcribers) and ſo find *Stabeca* in *Samidace*, a City or Country of the *Carmanians* on the *Perſian* ſide of the Gulf, I can ſee no reaſon: And therefore rather chuſe to mingle him and his Poſterity with the Son of *Sabta*, and the Children of his Brother *Regma*, all planted on the ſame Shore of the *Perſian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *Engliſh* Bibles call him *Raama*) was ſettled on the Banks of the Bay of *Perſia*, hath ſo good authority, that there is no diſpute to be made of that: *Ptolomy* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latin* Tranſlation) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* alſo in his Book *De Urbibus*, Καὶ Ῥῆγμα περὶ τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον. And *Regma*, on the *Perſian* Gulf, as his words there are. And not far from thence we are to look for his Son *Sheba*; both being joined together in the Book of God; and both there are ſaid to buſie and employ themſelves in the Trade of Merchandizing: *The Merchants of* Shebah *and* Raamah (ſaith the Text) *they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, Ezek. 27. 22. So that the Nations of the *Sabæans*, though deſcended at the firſt from ſeveral Parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix*, from one Sea to the other, as evidently appeareth by thoſe words of *Pliny*; where he informeth us moſt truly, that the *Sabeans*, an *Arabian* People, well known for their abundance of Frankincenſe, *ad utraque maria porrectis gentibus habitare*, had ſpread themſelves over all the Country, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Perſia*. Finally, in the ſame Tract we find *Dedan* the other Son of *Regma*, and the laſt of all the Sons of *Chus*: there being on the mouth of the *Perſian* Gulf (but on the *Arabian* Coaſt thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius*, and ſome other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than ſo, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joins him with his Brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the ſame trade of Merchandiſe; *The men of* Dedan *were thy Merchants*, Chap. 27. 15. Sheba *and* Dedan, *and the Merchants of* Tarſhiſh, Chap. 38. 13. *They brought thee horns of* Ivory *and* Ebony, ſaith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next Houſe of the Race of *Cham*, was *Miſraim*, the ſecond Son, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder Brother *Chus* and his Poſterity, in the rich and delectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the Land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own Son and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no queſtion amongſt the Learned, though all the tracks and footſteps of *Miſraim* be quite worn out; unleſs any thing of it were preſerved in the word *Meſori*, by which the *Egyptians* anciently called the firſt Month in the Year; or in that of *Meſre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt* to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Miſraim* in the *Hebrew* Bibles, that only is ſufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his Son *Ludim*, whom he ſent to People *Æthiopia*, the next Country to him. For that this *Ludim* was the Father of thoſe *Æthiopians*, many good reaſons are alledged. Firſt, from the Text of *Iſaiah*, Chap. 66. 19. and *Jer.* 46. 9. where *Lud* is ſaid to be very *ſkilful in drawing the Bow*; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Æthiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the ancient Writers. Secondly, From the joining of the Children or People of *Ludim* with thoſe of *Phul*, in the place of *Eſaiah* before cited: which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Græcians* call *Philæ*, ſituate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Æthiopia*, and anciently inhabited both by the *Æthiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Ancients witneſs. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the Children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with thoſe of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and thoſe of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek.* 30. 5. and that of *Jer.* above-mentioned; (where our *Engliſh* very ſtrangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chus* and *Phut*, to be joined together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the arguments being ſo ſtrong, and ſo moſt demonſtrative. I go on therefore to the next; only obſerving by the way, that the *Æthiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our *Engliſh* Bibles, are not theſe of *Africa*, but the *Chuſites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Tranſlators always rendring *Chus* by *Æthiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unleſs they were the ſame with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Pliny*, a People ſeated on the Sea-ſide near the greater *Syrtis*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give ſome Countenance; who ſeem to be the ſame with the People of *Lybia*, a Province ſeated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Libyægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Napthuhim*, I am alſo at a loſs, unleſs we find them ſomewhere in *Cyrenaica*; and that ſome remnant of the name be in *Aptuchi fanum*, which occurrs in *Ptolomy*. But for the *Pathruſin*, I think no queſtion need be made, but that they were the People of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Eſa.* 11. 11. *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. and ſeems to be that part of *Egypt* which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*, (and *Pathuris*, the *Greek* or *Septuagint* term *that*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros.)*

Hitherto we have found the Nations which deſcended from the Sons of *Miſraim* in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoining to it. And there or thereabouts, we are to look for *Cophtorim*, and *Caſlubim*, the two Sons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Caſlubim* in *Colchis*, and the *Cophtorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*, where notwithſtanding there is no track of the Names remaining. But this being ſo far off from *Egypt*, in, and near which both *Miſraim* himſelf, and all the reſt of his Sons were planted, I can by no means yield to it, though to content ſuch Learned Men as would fain have it ſo, I think it poſſible enough that ſome of the *Egyptians* in ſucceeding times, moved with the fame of that great Wealth which *Colchis* was ſuppoſed to yield to ſome Adventurers, might leave their native Soil to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the Learned *Junius*, that the *Caſlubim* were firſt planted in the Region of *Caſſiotis*, (not far from *Damiata*, a chief Town of *Egypt)* which retains ſomewhat of the Name; and ſo doth *Coptus*, an old City of *Egypt*, of the name of *Cophtorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophti*, which at this day is given to the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its firſt riſe from *Cophtorim*, rather than that they are ſo called *quaſi Ægophti*, corruptly for *Ægyptii*, I muſt needs ſay I am not ſatisfied. Beſides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Caſlubim* and *Cophtorim* dwelt near together, and that the *Philiſtins* are ſaid to deſcend from *Caſlubim*, if *Caſlubim* ſhould go for *Colchis*, and *Cophtorim* for *Cappadocia*, we muſt firſt carry them I know not how far off from the reſt of their Brethren, againſt the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philiſtins* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the Borders of the Land of *Egypt*, from whence their Anceſtors and Allies were ſo far remote. Whereas by ſetling theſe two Nations amongſt the reſt of their Brethren, the Journy of the *Philiſtins* unto *Canaan*, and ſetling themſelves in the poſſeſſions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanitiſh* People) whom they had ſubdued, *Deut.* 2. 25. is both eaſie and natural. But before we follow theſe *Philiſtins* further in their new Plantation amongſt the *Canaanites*, we will firſt ſee what became of *Phut*, the Third Son of *Cham*. And if we guide our ſelves in this *Labyrinth* by the clue of Antiquity, we ſhall find him ſetled Weſt of his Brother *Miſraim*, and ſo the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their Dominions. Some Relicts of the Name there were in the time of *Joſephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it; alſo *Ptolomy* takes notice of a River in thoſe Parts called *Pthuth*, which comes very near it. And ſo doth *Iſidore, Origin. l.* 2. But St. *Hierom*, in my mind, puts it out of doubt, whoſe words I ſhall put down, and ſo leave *Africa*; Phut *Lybiæ, à quo & Mauritaniæ fluvius uſque ad præſens* Phut *dicitur, omniſque circa eum Regio* Phytenſis *cujus rei multi Scriptores tam Græci quam Latini teſtes ſunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*, and many ancient Writers both *Greek* and *Latin* called to witneſs to it.

And now we ſhould proceed to *Canaan* and his Sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and laſt branch of the Houſe of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the Land of *Canaan*, we ſhall find him there; or meet with them in ſuch Plantations and Colonies as they ſent abroad, under the Title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whoſe *Tents* God promiſed to enlarge, as indeed he did; ſpreading his Branches over *Europe*, the leſſer *Aſia*, and a great part of the greater alſo. To him were born ſeven Sons in all, that is to ſay, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Meſech*, and *Thyras*; Of which the Iſſue of two only are upon Record, *viz. Aſchenaz*, *Riphath*, and *Togarma*, the Sons of *Gomer*; *Eliſha*, *Tarſhiſh*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the Sons of *Javan*. And firſt for *Gomer* and his Sons, the firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of convenient Dwellings in the *greater* and the *leſſer Aſia*: *Gomer* himſelf firſt planting in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his Name; and after changing that unpleaſant and unfruitful Dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the days of *Pliny*, did preſerve his Memory. For that the Poſterity and People of *Gomer*, called at firſt *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongſt the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himſelf in the *Greater Phrygia*, ſo did his eldeſt Son *Aſchenaz* in *Phrygia Minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, ſpreading himſelf along upon the *Helleſpont*, and thoſe *Greekiſh* Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left ſome memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*, together with a River and a Lake of the ſame name alſo. And in the *leſſer Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoining, anciently known by the name of *Aſcania*, and the *Aſcaniæ Inſulæ* alſo on the Coaſt thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in Honour of this *Aſchenaz*, the Kings and great Men of thoſe Parts, took the name of *Aſcanius*. Of which Name, beſides *Aſcanius* the Son of *Æneas*, we find a King mention'd in the ſecond of *Homer*'s *Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the Siege of *Troy*. In the ſame Quarters of the World we find *Ripath* alſo, the Founder of the *Riphei*, a People dwelling in the Eaſt parts of *Bithynia*, and ſpreading alſo over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are ſome Remnants of his Name to be found amongſt the Ancients. For, beſides that *Joſephus* ſaith expreſly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Rephei*, there is mentioned in *Apollonius*'s *Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebæus*, which riſing in *Bithynia*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Pontus Euxinus*, near to *Paphlagonia*; of which River *Pliny* alſo doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it ſelf, but tells us alſo of a Region of the ſame Name, and of a People thereabouts, which are called *Rhebæi*. Nor need we look much further to find out the ſeat of *Togarma* the third Son of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joineth with his Father, as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judæa*; Gomer *and all his bands, the houſe of* Togarma *in the North Quarters, and all his bands*, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not gueſs amiſs, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the Land of *Canaan*, but very well ſtocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horſes, as *Strabo* teſtifieth in the Eleventh Book of his *Geography*; with which Commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the ſame Prophet tells us of them, *Chap.* 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma*'s Dwelling muſt be found in *Cappadocia*; we muſt firſt know that the *Greek* Tranſlators call him generally by the name of *Togarma*; and then, that anciently there was a People in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Biſhop of the *Trogmades* (Κυριακὸς Ἐπίσκοπος Τρογμάδων) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the Sons of *Gomer*, we will next purſue the reſt of the Sons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his Four Sons we will keep together. And the next Son of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much diſpute and difference amongſt our *Antiquaries*, ſome making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and ſome of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that ſuch terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but ſuch terrible Nations. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome of his Poſterity in ſucceeding times, finding their own Seats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the Founders of ſome *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nation; but that *Magog* himſelf in his firſt Plantation, ſhould wander ſo far out of the way from the reſt of his Brethren, when he had Elbow-room enough amongſt them, I cannot eaſily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogareus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Cœlo-Syria*, which the *Græcians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themſelves called *Magog*; I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to look for *Magog* any where elſe, than in thoſe Countries where they have left ſuch evident Land-marks to diſcern themſelves by. But this we ſhall the better ſee, by looking out the Dwellings of his two Brethren, *Meſech* and *Tubal*, who being joined together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek.* 38. 2. and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far aſunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action againſt the *Jews*, according to the ſcope and purpoſe of the Holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Meſech*, whom the Ancients named *Moſoch*, ſeated himſelf on the North and North-Eaſt of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and ſo unto the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that Tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moſchici*, diſterminating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and moſt like to be the dwelling of *Meſech* or *Moſoch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, becauſe *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally join together with *Meſech*, is by moſt Writers ſaid to have ſetled himſelf in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Joſephus* alſo telling us, that anciently the *Iberi* were called *Theobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on ſome new occaſion. And hereunto the conſtant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives ſome good authority, who boaſt of their deſcent from *Tubal*; which can no otherwiſe be granted, than as they were a Colony of theſe *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is ſtill called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is moſt plain by the Authority of Scripture (were there no proof elſe) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who, in the Book of *Daniel*, and that of *Heſter*, are repreſented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of thoſe who fixt themſelves in either, or in both the *Aſia*'s; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the *leſſer Aſia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous Progenies. And firſt beginning with *Javan*, [illegible] the Elder Brother, moſt Authors make him the Original of thoſe *Greek* Nations which paſs under the general Names of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the aſſertion, conſidering that the *Greek* Tranſlators of the Bible, inſtead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all thoſe who elſewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the ancienteſt of the *Greeks*, named *Iaones*. Now *Javan* and *Jaon* ſound ſo like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the ſame: A Name not only proper to the *Athenians* and their *Colonies*, (though probable enough firſt belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Bœotians* and *Achæans* alſo; yea, and extending alſo into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we Engliſh *Græcia*. Nor do we much diſ-join *Javan* from the reſt of that Stock, by carrying him croſs the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his ſecond Plantation; and leaving him well ſetled in the *greater Phrygia*, and his Son *Aſkenaz* in the *leſſer*; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) paſs over the *Helleſpont*, and plant himſelf in *Attica*, called at firſt *Ionia*, ſaith *Plutarch* in the Life of *Theſeus*. Or if any one notwithſtanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecatæus*, that the *Iones* came out of *Aſia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpoſe) I ſhall not much contend againſt that Opinion; ſo it be alſo granted on the other ſide, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the Shores of *Aſia*, paſſed over into *Greece*, as a Land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Eliſha* his Eldeſt Son, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Aſian* ſide, as *Joſephus* hath it; and the Founder of *Elis* in *Peloponneſus*, and Planter of the *Græcian* Iſles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel* 27. 7. are called the Iſles of *Eliſha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Iſles of *Greece*, what by the Prophet is affirmed of the Iſles of *Eliſha*; namely, that the Inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blue* and *Purple*, in which ſome of the *Grecian* Iſles were ſuch excellent Artiſans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porphyry*, and *Cithera* was called Πορφυροῦσα, only from the abundance of *Purple* which they had amongſt them. Not to ſay any thing of *Coos*, *Niſyrus*, and *Gyarus*, and ſome other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that Commodity.

A ſhorter Journey, but withal a far ſhorter Territory, fell to the lot of *Tarſhiſh* the ſecond Son; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new Diſcoveries, left ſetled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the *leſſer Aſia*; where either he, or ſome of his Poſterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarſus*, the Principal City of that Province. For that *Tarſhiſh* in thoſe early days ſhould go into *Spain*, and there build *Tarteſſus*, I take to be a ſtrange, (if not idle) *Romance*; that Town being built by the *Phœnicians*, many Ages after, without relation unto *Tarſhiſh*, or his Memory either. What Voyages or Plantations thoſe of *Cilicia* or *Tarſus* made in times ſucceeding, as I no where find, ſo it is not material to my preſent purpoſe; which principally is to ſettle the Sons of *Noah* in their firſt Habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim*, the third Son of *Javan*, whom *Joſephus* ſettleth firſt in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence ſurnamed Κιτιεὺς. *Joſephus* is herein followed by St. *Hierom*, in his Notes on *Geneſis*, in whoſe time (as *Pintus* telleth in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Citium* was ſtill ſtanding; ſo do *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* ſets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. *After that* (ſaith the Author) Alexander *the Son of* Philip, *went forth of the Land of* Chethim, *and ſlew* Darius *King of the* Perſians *and* Medes, *Cap.* 1. 1. And after in the 8*th.* Chapter of the ſame Book, Verſe 5. *Perſeus*, King of *Macedon*, is called King of the *Cittims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his firſt planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reaſon of the neighbourhood of his Brother *Tarſhiſh* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarſus* lying near unto it:) But finding in time that Iſland to be either too barren, or too ſmall for his People; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Aſia*, were taken up already by the firſt Adventurers, he might finally fix himſelf, or ſome of his Poſterity, in *Macedonia*, as a ſpare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he, or any of his Sons, did plant firſt in *Italy*, which I ſee *Bochartus* would fain have; were againſt the method of Plantations; and he muſt give them Wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the uſe of Shipping, or not accuſtomed at leaſt to make long Voyages. But that in courſe of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, ſome of the Race of *Cittim* might paſs over into *Italy*, the paſſage thither from ſome of the Ports of *Greece* being ſhort and eaſie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place ſhall declare my ſelf for it. Nor can I otherwiſe agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom againſt all right and reaſon he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, miſtaking the Letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh* (as indeed the

Letters are ſo like, that one may very eaſily be miſtook for the other) moſt commonly preſent unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to ſettle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Iſle of *Rhodes*, lying ſo near the Dwellings of his other Brethren; till wanting room for the increaſe of his Poſterity in ſo ſmall an Iſland, he might coaſt along the Shores of *Peloponneſus*, and fix himſelf finally in *Epirus* by his Brother *Eliſha*; where in the Province of the *Moloſſians*, we ſhall find a City called *Dodona*, without any ſuch miſtake or change of Letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three furtheſt parts of *Europe*, in reſpect of *Aſia*, ſhould be planted all at once by theſe Sons of *Javan*, is ſo incredible an imagination, that he muſt have a very ſtrong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally, as for *Tyras*, the laſt Son of *Japhet*, having accompanied his Brother *Javan* to the Shores of *Aſia*, and ſeeing him paſſed over the Seas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next Strait or *Fretum* (ſince called *Thracius Boſphorus*) and fixed himſelf in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as moſt Writers teſtifie. Nor want there ſuch apparent footſteps of the name of *Thyras*, beſides the name of *Thracia* (as ſome ſpell the word) which may add good authority to this general teſtimony; there being both a River and an Haven-Town not far from *Byzantium*, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Mela* call *Athyras*; a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Mæſia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof moſt of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally, the *Thracians* calling their God, *Mars*, by the name of *Thyras*. Not to ſay any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and ſome others of the Kings of *Thrace*, whoſe Names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the Founder of their Nations.

Thus have we ſeen the ſeveral Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*, ſo far forth as their Names are regiſtred in Holy Scripture: theſe being the Heads and Leaders of thoſe ſeveral Tribes which joined together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards diſperſed themſelves, as before was ſhewn. But that no more than theſe (I mean Heads of Families) deſcended in ſo long a time from the Loins of *Noah*; that they ſhould have towards the new peopling of the World, in an hundred Years, (for ſo long it muſt be at leaſt from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than ſixteen Sons in all; and ten of thoſe ſixteen go childleſs alſo to the Grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the People which were born ſince the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inſpiration; or being met, would join together in a work of ſo little profit; or, that if *Noah* or *Shem* had been there amongſt them, they would not have diſſwaded them from that fooliſh Enterpriſe. And therefore I ſhould rather be of their Opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himſelf in thoſe Parts, which lay neareſt to the place where the Ark took Land: And having planted as far Eaſtward as he thought convenient, ſent out the ſurpluſage of his People under the conduct of one or more of theſe *Undertakers*; directing them perhaps to the Land of *Shinaar*, where himſelf had dwelt before the Flood. Where being come, and deſtitute of graver and more ſober Counſels, they fell upon that vain attempt, which became their ruine; and made them ſcatter and diſperſe themſelves into ſo many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walter Rawleigh* pleads the point exceeding ſtrongly, that it muſt needs be that *Noah* was ſettled in the Eaſt, and had well peopled all thoſe parts which lay neareſt to him, before he ſent his Troop abroad upon new Diſcoveries. For being it is expreſly ſaid in Holy Scripture, that *as they went from the Eaſt, they found a plain in the Land of Shinaar*; it muſt needs follow, without Controverſie, that they came from the *Eaſt* Countries into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia*, (as the vulgar Opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countries whence they came were not left utterly deſolate upon this remove, but very ſufficiently provided both of Men and Cities, appeareth by thoſe huge Armies which *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the Field. Of whom the firſt being invaded by *Ninus* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, encountred him with an Army of 400000 fighting Men; the other on the like occaſion outvied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did conſiſt, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and an half of Men, beſides 10000 armed Waggons; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may ſerve to prove that the Eaſt muſt needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For conſidering that *Ninus*, the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the third in deſcent from *Nimrod*, (that is to ſay, the Son of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*) it had been a moſt impoſſible thing that ſuch a vaſt increaſe ſhould be made only out of *Colonies* in ſo ſhort a time as needs muſt be between the planting of the Countries before ſpecified, and theſe two great Actions; unleſs God raiſed them out of Stones, or by ſome ſuch Miracle, to abate the pride of theſe Uſurpers over other Nations. Without a Miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wiſe Man would expect to find) it is, I ſay, a thing impoſſible that *Staurobates* ſhould exceed *Semiramis* in number of Men, as *Diodorus* ſaith he did; he being but a Caſtling of a ſecond Swarm, and ſhe the great Commandreſs of that part of the World from whence he came upon a ſecond or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that thoſe who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander the Great*, aſſure us, that he found more Cities, and Sumptuoſities in that little Kingdom of *Porus*, which lay ſide by ſide to the Eaſt of the River *Indus*, than in all his other Travels and Undertakings: And this may ſerve inſtead of a further evidence, that the Eaſt Countries were not planted after this diſperſion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as ſoon as any in the World. Nor know I elſewhere to find either *Noah* himſelf, or *Sem* and *Japhet*, unleſs they ſtaid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were diſpoſed of by themſelves in their ſeveral Quarters: there being none of thoſe, though moſt diligent Men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this diſperſion, that either ſpeak of any Nations planted by them, or of their ſetling in the Colonies of any one of their deſcendants. Which is to me a very ſtrong Argument that they came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, but tarried ſtill in thoſe Habitations wherein God had placed them.

Againſt this I can ſee but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old *Tradition* among the *Jews*. That from the Text is gathered from thoſe words of *Moſes*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, he adds, *And by theſe were the Nations divided in the Earth, after the Flood*, Gen. 10. v. *ult.* But theſe words, as I take it, do relate only unto that diviſion which was made upon occaſion of the *Confuſion* of *Languages*, when they were forced to give over their work, and ſort themſelves into ſeveral Companies, and not to ſuch Plantations as were made before; who being all of one Tongue, tho' in divers Dwellings, could not be looked upon as ſeveral and divided Nations. For the *Tradition* of the *Jews*, 'tis this that from the beginning of the World to the building of *Babel*, that Language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common Language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the Houſe of *Eber*; (whence it had the name) becauſe he joined not with the reſt in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may poſſibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-ſpring of *Noah*, which came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and conſequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curſe of *Confounded Languages*, but muſt needs ſpeak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as thoſe deſcended of the Loins of *Heber*. But againſt this Tradition, and the conſequences of it, there are ſome things to be objected.

For firſt it is but a Tradition, and therefore of no ſure foundation to build upon. And ſecondly, it is ſuch a Tradition as holds no good coherence with the truth or ſtory; it being a moſt clear and demonſtrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Meſopotamia*, but that which he found ſpoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Poſterity did conform themſelves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they ſay it was, (but moſt undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a priviledge conferred on *Heber*, that he and his Poſterity ſhould ſpeak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it muſt have been extended to all thoſe of the Houſe of *Joktan*, which deſcended from him; as alſo to the Houſe of *Laban* in *Padan-Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the Seed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Iſhmaelites* and *Idumians*, deſcended of *Abraham* and *Eſau*; and not be limited and confined only to the Houſe of *Jacob*. Either all theſe muſt be partakers of ſo great a priviledge, becauſe their Father *Heber* had obtained it for himſelf and his: or elſe it was not ſuch a Priviledge, or given ſo univerſally and incommunicably to the Houſe of *Heber*, as they ſay it was. So the *Tradition* falls to Ground, as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that thoſe who ſtayed behind with *Noah* ſpake the ſame Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what elſe ſoever it was) I ſee no reaſon to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into ſeveral Languages or *Dialects* of the ſame one Language, by the commerce and intercourſe which they had with Nations of a different Speech; as well as thoſe of *Judah*, in ſo ſhort a time as the *Captivity* of *Babylon*, had loſt the purity of that Language which they ſo much brag of; and could not underſtand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an *Interpreter*. Of which ſee *Neh.* 8 7, 8.

But to proceed: On this diſperſion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, it came to paſs, that though they all deſcended from one common Root, yet by the ſituations of their ſeveral Dwellings, they came to be of ſeveral Tempers and Affections; in which they were ſo different from one another, that it might ſeem they had been made at firſt out of ſeveral Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O ſee how full of wonders ſtrange, is Nature!
Sith in each Climate, *not alone in ſtature,*
Strength, colour, hair; but that Men differ do,
Both in their Humours and their Manners too.
The Northern *Man is fair, the* Southern *foul;*
That's white, this black, that ſmiles, and this doth ſcoul.
Th' one's blithe and frolick, th' other dull and froward;
Th' one's full of courage, th' other a fearful coward, &c.

The ground or reaſon of which difference is to be attributed to the different Tempers of thoſe Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on thoſe ſeveral Countries which do continue ſtill the ſame, though many times the Countries do ſhift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patria ſorte durantia, quæ totas in hiſtoriis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, ſaith a modern but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical Judgment, which otherwiſe might appear obſcure in the ſearch of Cauſes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum eſſe majorem quam virorum; ſecundum minorem quam fœminarum.* Which is the ſame which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, That he begins an Action like Thunder, and ends in a ſmoke. *Ut ſunt* Gallorum *ſubita ingenia*, ſaith *Cæſar* of the ancient *Gauls*: and I believe the preſent *French* are altogether as raſh and hair-brain'd, as the other were. *Gallia fœcundia Cauſidicorum*, was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French*, by ſome late Obſervers, that there are commonly more Law-Trials amongſt them in one Year, than have been in *England* ſince the Conqueſt. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the ſeveral Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britains*, *Normans*, and *Goths*, being in poſſeſſion of their ſeveral Dwellings. Thus alſo it is ſaid by *Tacitus* of the ancient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli opprobrium*; that it was no diſgrace to any, to ſpend the whole Day and Night in Drinking; and more than ſo, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace, in conviviis conſultare*; that they conſulted over their Cups of their weighty buſineſs. Since which time, though all *Germany* hath ſhifted almoſt all her old Inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Swedes*, *Avarers*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Sclaves*, *Hunns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet ſtill thoſe ill Cuſtoms are as much in uſe amongſt them, as ever formerly. To go a little farther off; the old Philoſopher *Anacharſis* tells us of the ancient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feaſts they uſed little Goblets, πλησθέντες δὲ ἐν μεγάλοις πίνουσι, and greater towards the end, when they were almoſt drunken; which Cuſtom ſtill remains amongſt them, as *G. Sandys* obſerveth, notwithſtanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of State and People which have happen'd ſince. I ſhall not ſpeak here of the effeminateneſs of the *Aſiatick*, or the cruelty or implacableneſs of the *Affrican* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithſtanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Sarazens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, ſucceſſively and reſpectively in theſe ſeveral Countries. And therefore I conclude this Point in theſe words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quædam inconcuſſa, quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus naſci contigerint, ſua fata diviſerit* (*There is a certain irremovable force fixed in all Countries, which aſſigns to every of them their Fates, according to the nature of the Lands in which they happen to be born.*)

Nor is this all the conſequent of this diſperſion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*; the ſeparation of their Perſons producing, firſt an alteration of Affections, and that engendring natural *Animoſities*: which ſeconded by their ſeveral Intereſſes and Reaſons of *State*, hath left almoſt no People without ſome ſuch Enemy which doth particularly and perverſly croſs them in all their Counſels. Concerning which, take here the Obſervation of that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian, *Philip de Comines*: which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, “*In rebus humanis ita comparatum* “*eſt, ut nullus fere ſit populus quem non æmulus aliquis exer*“*ceat*, &c. It is (ſaith he) ſo ordered in the ſtate of “humane Affairs, that there is almoſt no Nation with“out a more particular Enemy. The *Engliſh* are Ene“mies to the *French*, the *Scots* to the *Engliſh*; the *Portu*“*gueze* have the like inveterate hatred againſt the *Spani*“*ards*. The Princes of *Italy* enjoy great Poſſeſſions “without any good Title; but are continually oppoſed “by the more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, “and *Luca*. The *Aragonian* Kings of *Naples* have found “perpetual Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the “Dukes of *Millain*, of the Houſe of *Orleans*. The Princes “of *Italy* and the *Florentines*, have a ſtitch at *Venice*; as “the States of *Genoa*, and *Sienna*, have againſt the *Flo*“*rentines*. In *Germany* the Animoſities have been great “and of long continuance between “the * Houſes of *Auſtria* and *Bava*“*ria*; the hatred grown beyond “all hopes of Reconciliation, which “is between the *Switzers* and the “*Auſtrian* Family. The Dukes of “*Cleve* and *Gulick* are always upon ill “terms with their Neighbours of “*Gelderland*: and in the North, the “Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have “their continual Quarrels with the

---

* *The Houſes of* Auſtria *and* Bavaria, *at the Reformation, continuing firm to the* R. C. *Religion, when moſt of the other great Families of* Germany *forſook it. This has ever ſince united theſe two Families in the ſtreighteſt Alliance that is poſſible.*

“ Kings of *Denmark*. Nor are the Enmities any thing “ leſs, if they be not greater, which are diſcernable “ amongſt the People of *Aſia* and *Africk*, than thoſe “ that are above-remembred. So far and to this purpoſe ſaith that noble and judicious Writer.

The conſideration of which Points, if there were no other, were of it ſelf ſufficient to ſhew the neceſſary uſe of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as well for the underſtanding the Affairs of the Ages paſt, as for Commerce and Correſpondency with the Nations preſent. For had no *Hiſtories* been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all thoſe occurrences which do ſo much concern the whole ſtate of Mankind, and are our principal directors in Life and Action? in which reſpect the Orator moſt truly calleth it, *Magiſtram vitæ*. For upon the credit of this, *Hiſtory*, the examples of our Anceſtors, the grounds of civil Prudence, and the Fames of Men do moſt eſpecially depend. And certainly, to draw back the Mind to the contemplation of Matters long ago paſſed; to ſearch out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expreſſion, ſuch things as are found out on a diligent ſearch; to repreſent unto our Eyes the Changes of Times, the Characters of Perſons, the uncertainties of Counſels, and the Conveyances of Actions, the Subtleties of Pretentions, and the Secrets of State; muſt of neceſſity be a work of as publick Uſe, as it is of great both Pains and Judgment. Beſides, it gives a kind of eternity to all ſuch Men, who by their Counſels or Atchievements have deſerved nobly of thoſe Kingdoms and Common-wealths wherein they lived. And thereupon the *Orator* doth not only call it, *Magiſtram vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis*, *Teſtem temporis*, *Nuntiam vetuſtatis*, *& Vitæ memoriam*. According to which Character I find theſe Verſes ſet before a Chronicle of ſome Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book beſides;)

For though in theſe days Miracles be fled,
Yet this ſhall of good Hiſtories *be ſaid,*
They call back time that's paſt, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other Motives to endear unto us the uſe of *Hiſtory*, beſides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding Times; and the *eternity* (if I may ſay ſo) which it conferreth on the *Actors* themſelves, by the preſervation of their names from the ruins of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For firſt, it ſtirreth Men to Virtue, and deters them from Vice, by ſhewing forth the glorious Memories of vertuous Men, and the ill ſavour which is left behind Men of ungodly life; and eſpecially keeps Perſons of moſt eminent place from letting looſe the reins unto all licentiouſneſs, by repreſenting this to their conſideration, That all their Actions ſhall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, It hath been a principal Conſerver of moſt Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of ſo many of the old *Philoſophers*; out of which, a perfect body of *Philoſophy*, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digeſted. Thirdly, It is the beſt *School-maſter* in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctual directions, than can be otherwiſe obtained; and is withal the beſt Aſſiſtant to the Stateſman or Politician, who from hence draw their Obſervations and Concluſions; and become thereby ſerviceable to their Prince and Country, though they never travelled more than amongſt their Books. So *Archimedes* in his Study, and *Demoſthenes* in his Orators Gown, endangered more the Enemies of their ſeveral Countries, than the *Athenians* and *Syracuſani*, did by dint of Sword. And laſt of all, beſides theſe civil Benefits and Conſiderations, and the great help which it affords in the way of Diſcourſe; there is no particular branch of Knowledge more uſeful for the true and perfect underſtanding of holy Scripture, than that of *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Prophane* Hiſtory; or which gives clearer light to many dark Paſſages thereof, eſpecially in the *Prophetical* Writings of either Teſtament.

This, as it ſhews the neceſſary uſe and benefit which redounds from *Hiſtory*, ſo doth it ſerve to uſher in that commendation which belongs to the ſtudy of *Geography* alſo; without ſome knowledge wherein, the ſtudy of Hiſtory is neither ſo pleaſant nor ſo profitable, as a judicious Reader would deſire to have it. 'Tis true *Geography* without *Hiſtory* hath life and motion, but very unſtable, and at random; but *Hiſtory* without *Geography*, like a dead Carcaſs, hath neither life nor motion at all, or moves at leaſt but ſlowly on the Underſtanding. For what delight or ſatisfaction can any Man receive from the reading of Story, without he know ſomewhat of the Places, and the Conditions of the People which are therein mentioned? In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath deſerved very well of all his Readers; premiſing to the Actions of every Country ſome brief Deſcription of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatneſs of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and ſatisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveys it to us. *Hiſtory* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Fires or Meteors which Philoſophers call *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threatned both with a certain Shipwrack; and are like two Siſters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almoſt ſaid impiety) to be kept aſunder. So as that which Sir *Philip Sidney* ſaid of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And ſhe not being he was none;

may be as juſtly ſaid of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as of thoſe two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the ſtudy of *Geography*, which is exceeding uſeful to the reading of the Holy Scriptures, as in diſcovering the ſituation of *Paradiſe*, the bounds and borders of thoſe Countries which are therein mentioned; eſpecially with relation to the Travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangeliſts*, and *Apoſtles*, yea of *Chriſt* himſelf; not otherwiſe to be comprehended and underſtood, but by the help of *Geographical* Tables and Deſcriptions. Beſides this, it is uſeful to moſt ſorts of Men, as to *Aſtronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in ſeveral Countries; their ſeveral Influences and Aſpects, their riſing and ſetting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Phyſicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of Mens Bodies, according to the *Climes* they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simples*, and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath ſome more natural and proper to it ſelf, than to any others. Thirdly, To *States-men*, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and diſpoſition of thoſe People with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their reſpective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and Diſcord. Fourthly, To *Merchants*, *Mariners*, and *Soldiers*; the ſeveral Profeſſors of which kinds of life, find nothing more neceſſary for them in their ſeveral Callings, than a competent knowledge in *Geography*; which preſents to them many notable advantages, both for their Profit and Contentment. Finally, by the ſtudy of *Geography*, a Man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far leſs danger and expence, acquaint himſelf with the particular deſcriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns, and Caſtles, with all things conſiderable in the ſame, together with the Cuſtoms, Manners, and Diſpoſitions of all Foreign Nations: And that too in as full a manner, as if he had ſurvey'd the one, and obſerv'd the other, by a perſonal viſit of the Places repreſented to him.

Such is the neceſſary uſe which Men of ingenious Studies and Profeſſions, do, and may make of *Hiſtory*, and *Geography*, in the courſe of their Callings and Imployployments. And there are ſome things alſo neceſſary to the Knowledge of each, that we may ſtudy them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *Hiſtory*, it is only requiſite that it be defined, diſtinguiſhed from ſuch writings as do ſeem to challenge the Name of Hiſtories; and that ſomewhat be premiſed of thoſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from which all People do begin their Computations. But to *Geography* it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate thoſe Terms, or ſecond *Notions*, which are not obvious to the Underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt then for *Hiſtory*, if we conſult the Name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱστορεῖν, *i. e. videre*; and therefore properly doth ſignifie a Relation of ſuch remarkable Actions at which the Author was an Eye-witneſs, if not an Agent, *Apud veteres enim* (ſaith *Iſidore*) *nemo ſcribebat* Hiſtoriam *niſi is qui interfuiſſet, & ea quæ ſcribenda eſſent, vidiſſet*. But now the cuſtomary uſe of the Word hath taught it a more ample Signification. *Hiſtory* being defined to be *A perfect Relation of all Occurrents obſervable, hapning in the State whereof it is written, deſcribed by the Motives, Pretexts, Conſultations, Speeches and Events; a ſpecial care being had both of Time and Place.*

As for the Writings which do challenge the Name of *Hiſtory*, but indeed are really diſtinguiſhed from it, they are *Commentaries*, *Annals*, *Diaries*, or *Journals*, and *Chronologies*. Firſt, *Commentaries* ſet down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and Deſigns, the Councils, Speeches, Occaſions and Pretexts of Buſineſſes. So that *Cæſar* with more Modeſty than true propriety of Speech, applied the Name of *Commentaries* to the beſt *Hiſtory* in the World, A *Hiſtory* commended by King *James* to his Son Prince *Henry*, above all other prophane Authors, both for the ſweet flowing of the Stile, and the worthineſs of the Matter it ſelf. *For I have ever* (ſaid he) *been of this Opinion, that, of all* Ethnick *Emperors or great Captains, he hath fartheſt exceeded, both in his Practice and in his Precepts, for Martial Affairs.* Which makes me the more wonder at the ſtrange and unjuſt Cenſure of *Juſtus Lipſius*, who calls them *Nudum & ſimplicem narrationem*, for being entituled *Commentaries*, they do (ſaith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen*; with Pride and Arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next; they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the Cauſes and Pretexts, or any of the chief Ingredients required in *Hiſtory*. So that *Tacitus* had no other reaſon to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is diſtinguiſhed by the Years of the *Conſuls*. Otherwiſe there is no great difference as unto the Matter betwixt an *Hiſtory* and an *Annal*, the Subject of them both, being matter of State; and not ſuch trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants and ſuch like, which ſtand not with the Gravity and Authority of Hiſtorical *Annals*; betwixt which and a *Diary*, the ſame *Tacitus* (ſpeaking of ſome magnificent Structures which were built that year) doth make this difference, *Res illuſtres* Annalibus, *talia* diurnis *Urbis Actis mandari*, that Matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, beſides this difference in point of Matter, are diſtinguiſhed from *Annals* alſo in point of Time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the Name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the Chronicle call'd for by *Ahaſuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the Relation of the Treaſon intended againſt him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King *Edward* the ſixth, mentioned in the Hiſtory of his Life by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Laſt of all for *Chronologies*; they are only bare ſupputations of times, with ſome brief touch of the Actions therein happening, ſuch as are thoſe of *Euſebius*, *Functius*, *Calviſius*, and *Helvicus*; of which laſt I dare give that teſtimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, *viz.* that he is *perfectiſſimus in forma operis ſui*; though he and all the reſt are Debtors to *Euſebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of theſe four, as out of the four Elements, the *Quinteſcence* of Hiſtory is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* Time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* Matter, from *Chronologies* conſent of Time and Coetanity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all ſuch other Ornaments in which theſe four are found defective.

That which remains, is to premiſe ſomewhat of thoſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from whence particular States, Nations, and People, make their Computations. Theſe have been very different in former times, according to the ſeveral occaſions took in ſeveral Countries. The *Jews* had ſeveral *Epoches* peculiar to themſelves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Thoſe which they had amongſt themſelves were firſt from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of Time; Secondly, from the univerſal Deluge, which hapned *A.M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confuſion of Tongues, *A.M.* 1786. Fourthly, From *Abraham*'s Journey out of *Chaldæa* into *Canaan*, *A. M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *A. M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the firſt Year of Jubilee, *A. M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomon*'s Temple, *An.* 2932. And laſtly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the Victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the firſt Victory which *Seleuchus* had againſt *Antigonus*, which was in *A. M.* 3637. An Accompt much uſed by the *Jews*, *Chaldæans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations of the Eaſt. But the *Chaldæans* alſo had their own *Epoche* or Accompt apart, reckoning their time from the firſt Year of *Nabonaſſer* (*Salmonaſſer* he is called in Scripture) which being 438 Years before this of *Seleuchus*, muſt fall in *A. M.* 3201. Next for the *Græcians*, they reckon'd a long while by *Olympiades*, the firſt of which is plac'd in the Year of the World 3174. (of which more hereafter.) But this Accompt periſhing under the *Conſtantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an Accompt deviſed by *Juſtinian*;) every *Indiction* containing 15 Years, the firſt beginning *A. Chr.* 513. which amongſt *Chronologers* is ſtill uſed. The *Romans* reckoned firſt from the Foundation of their City, which was *A. M.* 3213. and afterwards from the ſixteenth Year of *Auguſtus*'s Empire, (being that which is properly called the *Roman Æra*) *A.M.* 3936. An Accompt uſed by the *Spaniards* (where it firſt began) till the Reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Arragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, *An. Chr.* 1350. followed therein by *John* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1383. and then at laſt by the King of *Portugal* alſo, 1415. The *Chriſtians* generally do reckon from the Birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not uſe till the Year 600. following in the mean time the Accompt of the Empire. And finally, the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for ſo they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarchæ*, which hapned *An. Chr.* 617. Of theſe we ſhall make uſe generally but of two alone, thoſe namely of the World's Creation and our Saviour's Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to thoſe ſeveral States.

Next for *Geography*, we will firſt define it, and after explicate ſuch terms or ſecond notions, as are not obvious to the underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt, for the definition of it, it is ſaid by *Ptolomy* to be a *deſcription of the whole Earth*, or *the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it.* Ἡ Γεωγραφία μίμησίς ἐστι διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commoly but corruptly read) τοῦ κατειλημμένου τῆς γῆς μέρους ὅλου μετὰ τῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν αὐτῷ συνεμμένων, as his own Words are. In which we look not on the Earth ſimply as it is an Element, for ſo it belongeth to *Philoſophy*; but as it is a *Sphærical* Body proportionably compos'd of Earth and Water, and ſo it is the Subject of *Geography*.

First, for the *Earth*, which is the firſt Part of this Body, it is affirmed by the beſt Writers to be 21600 Miles in compaſs; which is de-

It appears by an exact Commenſuration, that there are 70 Engliſh *Miles in a Degree, ſo that the circumference of the Earth is* 25200 Engl. *Miles.*

monſtrable enough: For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360 Degrees, every Degree being reckon'd at 60 Miles: let 360 be multiplied by 60, and the *Product* will be 21600 as before is ſaid. So that if it were poſſible to make a Path round about the Earth, an able Footman going conſtantly 24 Miles a Day, would compaſs it in 900 Days.

The Earth is divided, in reſpect of Men into the right hand and the left: In reſpect of it ſelf, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets* which turn their Faces towards the *Fortunate Iſlands* (ſo memorized and chanted by them) which are ſituated in the Weſt; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our Days to *Prieſts* and Men in Holy Orders, who uſually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themſelves unto the Eaſt, the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Aſtronomers*, who turn their Faces towards the South, becauſe that way the motions of the *Planets* may be beſt obſerved, the Weſt is the right hand, and the Eaſt the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who, by reaſon they have ſo much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their Face towards the North; the Eaſt is the right hand, and the Weſt the left.

The *Real* parts of the Earth are divided commonly into *Continents*, *Iſlands*.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land not ſeparated by any Sea from the reſt of the World, as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Iſland* is a part of Earth invironed round about with ſome Sea or other; as the Iſle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Iſle of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latin* it is called *Inſula*, becauſe it is ſituate *in ſalo*, as ſome derive it.

Touching the *Continent* I have nothing in general to inlarge, till we come to the particular *Chorography* and deſcription of them. But for Iſlands (leaving the diſquiſition of their being, or not being before the Flood) there are four caſes to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: Firſt, when by it one part of a Country is forcibly torn away from the other; and ſo *Eubœa* was divided from the reſt of *Attica*: And Secondly, when ſome vehement Wind or Vapour being ſhut up in ſuch parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiſeth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of moſt of thoſe Iſlands, which are far remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred. 2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of Gravel, Dirt, and Weeds; which if the Sea be not the more working, will in time ſettle to an Iſland. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* ſowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the People and caſt into *Tiber*, ſetled together and made the *Holy Iſland*. So the River *Achelous* cauſed the *Echinades*, as we ſhall more at large declare; and ſo the Iſland of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is ſaid to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mire of the great River *Laanza*, caſt into an heap, and at laſt formed into an Iſland. 3. The Sea violently beating on ſome ſmall Iſthmus, weareth it through, turneth the *Peninſula* into a compleat *Iſle*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the reſt of *England*. And 4. ſometimes as it eateth and worketh on ſome places, ſo it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in ſome time grow to be *Iſlands*, and firm Land under foot. So it is thought the *Iſles* of *Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea: And *Verſtegan* proveth it, becauſe that the Husbandmen in Tilling and Manuring the Ground, find ſometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the Bones of huge and great Fiſhes, which could by no accident come hither. To theſe kind of Iſlands, *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, ſaith,

> ———— *Vidi factas ex æquore terras,*
> *Et procul à pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ,*
> *Et vetus inventa eſt in montibus anchora ſummis.*
>
> Oft have I ſeen that Earth, which once I knew
> Part of the Sea; ſo that a Man might view
> Huge Shells of Fiſhes in the upland Ground;
> And on the Mountain-tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the ſituation of *Iſlands*, whether commodious or not, this is my Judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City whoſe People covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; becauſe in ſuch Seats they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from Idleneſs, and by conſequence from Riotouſneſs: but for a City whoſe Inhabitants deſire to enlarge their Confines, a fertile place was rather to be choſen than a ſteril, as being more able to nouriſh multitudes of People. The like I ſay of Iſlands. If a *Prince* deſire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Iſland; as being by it ſelf and nature ſufficiently defenſible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Iſland is no fit ſeat for him; becauſe partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longſomneſs of the ways, he is not ſo well able to ſupply and keep ſuch Forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the moſt puiſſant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the cauſes above-mentioned, cannot ſhew any of her winnings on the firm Land, though ſhe hath attempted and atchiev'd as many glorious Exploits as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Iſland are ſub-divided into *Peninſula*, *Iſthmus*, *Promontorium*.

Peninſula quaſi pene Inſula, is a tract of Land, which being almoſt encompaſſed round by Water, is joined to the firm Land by ſome little *Iſthmus*; as *Peloponneſus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Iſthmus is that narrow neck of Land which joineth the *Peninſula* to the *Continent*; as the Streights of *Dariene* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium is a high Mountain which ſhooteth it ſelf into the Sea, the utmoſt end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*, as the *Cape of good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are ſuch which not being at all in the Earth, muſt yet be ſuppoſed to be ſo, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, anſwerable to them in Heaven, in name.

Theſe Circles are either the Greater or Leſſer: in both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than thoſe in the leſſer; and every Degree in the greater is 60 Miles.

The greater Circles are either Immutable, as the *Æquator*. Mutable, as the *Horizon*, *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terreſtrial Globe from Eaſt to Weſt. It paſſeth through *Habaſſia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, &c. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Latitude* of any *Town*, *Promontory*, &c. Now the *Latitude* is the diſtance of a place South or North from the *Æquator* or middle of the World; and muſt be meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the Earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a Man liveth; but the chief and firſt *Meridian* paſſeth through the Iſland St. *Michael* one of the *Azores*. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a City, *Cape*, &c. is the diſtance of it Eaſt and Weſt from the firſt *Meridian*, and is uſually meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, deſigning ſo great a ſpace of the Earth, as a quick ſight can ken in an open

Field. The uſe of it is to diſcern the divers riſings and ſettings of the Stars.

The leſſer Circles either are noted with ſome name, as Tropical of *Cancer*, *Capricorn*; *Polar*, either *Artick*, *Antartick*; noted with no diſtinct name, and are the *Parallels*.

The *Tropick* of *Cancer* (ſo called of the Celeſtial Sign *Cancer*) is diſtant from the *Equinoctial* 23 Degrees Northward, and paſſeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hiſpania*.

The *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator* Southward, paſſeth through *Æthiopia inferior*, and the midſt of *Peruana*. And this is to be obſerved in theſe *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, our days are at the longeſt; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, the days are at the ſhorteſt. The firſt they call the Summer, the laſt they call the Winter *Solſtice*; the firſt happening on, or about St. *Barnaby*'s Day in *June*; the laſt on, or about St. *Lucy*'s Day in *December*.

The *Artick* Circle (ſo called for that it is correſpondent to the Conſtellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in *Greek Arctos*) is diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer* 45 Degrees, and paſſeth through *Norway*, *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antartick* (ſo called becauſe oppoſite to the other) is as much diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and paſſeth through *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*. The uſe of theſe four Circles is to deſcribe the *Zones*.

The *Zones* are ſpaces of Earth included betwixt two of the leſſer nominated Circles; they are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually ſcorched with the preſence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are ſituate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*; continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two *Temperate Zones* are betwixt the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and the *Artick*; and 'twixt the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick* Circles, enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; ſo that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

Theſe five *Zones* are diſpoſed according to the order of the *Zones* in Heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamor.* 1.

Utque duæ dextra cælum, totidemq, ſiniſtra
Parte ſecant Zonæ, *quinta eſt ardentior illis*;
Sic onus incluſum numero diſtinxit eodem
Cura Dei totidemq; plagæ tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media eſt, non eſt habitabilis æſtu;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; locavit,
Temperiemq; dedit, miſta cum frigore flamma.
And as two *Zones* do cut the Heavens right-ſide,
And likewiſe other two the left divide,
The midſt in heat excelling all the reſt;
Even ſo it ſeem'd to the Creator beſt;
That this our World ſhould ſo divided be,
That with the Heavens in *Zones* it might agree.
The midſt in heat; the outward moſt excel
In Snow and Ice, ſcarce fit for Men to dwell.
Betwixt theſe two Extreams, two more are fixt,
Where Heat with Cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called alſo *Æquidiſtants*, circle the Earth from Eaſt to Weſt, and are commonly ten Degrees aſunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are ſet down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another ſort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*. Theſe are called *Artificial Parallels*, becauſe they ſhew the difference of the *Artificial* Days; and are of an unequal breadth, as we ſhall ſee in the *Table* following. The uſe of theſe leſſer *Parallels* is to ſhew the *Climates*.

Now a *Clime*, or *Climate*, is a ſpace of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middlemoſt whereof divideth it into two equal Parts: ſerving for ſetting out the length and ſhortneſs of the days in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the Days are of the juſt length of 12 Hours; but afterwards they encreaſe the length of half an Hour for every *Clime*, till they come to the length of 24 Hours, without Night at all; which length attained, they encreaſe no more by Hours, but by Weeks and Months, till they come to the length of half a Year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southward: Thoſe Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Climes* doth paſs, as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Sienes*, &c. Thoſe on the South by the ſame names, with the condition of *Anti-Dia-Sienes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient *Coſmographers* made but ſeven *Climes* in all; at the moſt but nine. Nor needed they to add more, as the cauſe ſtood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being ſo fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, becauſe thoſe *Climes* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard, it is impoſſible to deſcribe them under any Rule: I have thought fit to add this enſuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the Works of *John de Sacro Boſco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the uſe of the Globes.* The whole divided into ſeven Columns. In the firſt whereof is ſhewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, and *Heteroſcii*, which terms we ſhall anon expound. In the ſecond, is ſet down the number of the *Climes* themſelves. In the third, the number of the *Parallels*. In the fourth, the length of the Days in Summer. In the fifth, the diſtance of every *Clime* and *Parallels* from the *Æquator*. In the ſeventh, the name of the Town or place through which the middlemoſt of the three *Parallels* doth paſs in this manner following.

Here follows the Table of the Climes.

A ſecond uſe of theſe *Parallels* and other Circles, is for diſtinction of Men in their ſeveral Dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geograghy*) divided in reſpect of their ſhadows into *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, *Heteroſcii*; and in reſpect of their ſite and poſition, into *Antæci*, *Periæci*, and *Antipodes*. 1. *Amphiſcii* are ſuch as dwell between the two *Tropicks*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are both ways; ſometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; ſometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periſcii* are ſuch as dwell beyond the *Poler* Circles ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are on all ſides of them.

3. *Heteroſcii* are ſuch as dwell in either of the two temperate *Zones*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows reach but one way, *viz.* in our *Zone*, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antæci* are ſuch as dwell under the ſame *Meridian*, and the ſame *Latitude* or *Parallel* equally diſtant from the *Æquator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the Days in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periæci* are ſuch as dwell in the ſame *Parallel*, on the ſame ſide of the *Æquator*, how diſtant ſoever they be Eaſt and Weſt; the ſeaſon of the Year, and the length of Days being to both alike; but the ones Midnight being the others Noon.

6. *Antipodes* are ſuch as dwell Feet to Feet, ſo as a right Line drawn from the one unto the other, paſſeth from North to South, through the Center of the World. Theſe are diſtant 180 Degrees, which is half the compaſs of the Earth. They differ in all things, as Seaſons of the Year, Length of Days, Riſing and Setting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned ſo ridiculous and impoſſible (if not ſomewhat worſe) in the former times, that *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, hapning to ſee a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine

might

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three ſorts of Inhabitants. Pag. 18.

Inhabitants belonging to ſeveral Climates.	*Climes.*	*Parallels.*	*The longeſt ſummer Day.*		*Latit. & Elevation of the Pole.*		*The breadth of the Climates*		*The places by which the Climes paſs.*
			H.	*Scr.*	*Deg.*	*Sc.*	*Deg.*	*Sc.*	
Amphiſcii.	0	0	12	0	0	0	4	18	*The beginning from the Æquator.*
		1	12	15	4	18			
	1	2	12	30	8	34	8	25	Sinus Arabicus, *or the Red Sea.*
		3	12	45	12	43			
	2	4	13	0	16	43	7	50	Meroe *an Iſland of* Nilus *in* Ægypt.
		5	13	15	20	33			
	3	6	13	30	23	10	7	3	Siene *a City in* Africa.
		7	13	45	27	36			
Heteroſcii.	4	8	14	0	30	47	6	9	Alexandria *in* Ægypt.
		9	14	15	33	45			
	5	10	14	30	36	30	5	17	Rhodes *and* Babylon.
		11	14	45	39	2			
	6	12	15	0	41	22	4	30	Rome *and* Helleſpont.
		13	15	15	43	32			
	7	14	15	30	45	29	3	48	Venice *and* Millain.
		15	15	45	47	20			
	8	16	16	0	49	21	3	13	Podolia *and the leſſer* Tartary.
		17	16	15	50	13			
	9	18	16	30	51	58	2	44	Batavia *and* Wittenburgh.
		19	16	45	53	17			
	10	20	17	0	54	29	2	17	Roſtoch.
		21	17	15	55	34			
	11	22	17	30	56	37	2	0	Ireland *in* Muſcovy.
		23	17	45	57	34			
	12	24	18	0	58	26	1	40	Bohuſe *a Caſtle in* Norway.
		25	18	15	50	14			
	13	26	18	30	59	59	1	26	Gothland.
		27	18	45	60	40			
	14	28	19	0	61	18	1	13	Bergen *in* Norway.
		29	19	15	61	53			
	15	30	19	30	62	25	1	0	Wiburg *in* Finland.
		31	19	45	62	54			
	16	32	20	0	63	22	0	52	Arotia *in* Sweden.
		33	20	15	63	46			
	17	34	20	30	64	6	0	44	*The mouth of* Darecally *a River in* Sweden
		35	20	45	64	30			
	18	36	21	0	64	49	0	36	*Divers places of* Norway.
		37	21	15	65	6			
	19	38	21	30	65	21	0	29	Suecia, Alba Ruſſia.
		39	21	45	65	35			
	20	40	22	0	65	47	0	22	*With many Iſlands.*
		41	22	15	65	57			
	21	42	22	30	66	26	0	17	*Thereunto adjoining.*
		43	22	45	66	14			
	22	44	23	30	66	20	0	11	*Wanting ſpecial Names.*
		45	23	15	66	5			
	23	46	23	30	66	29	0	5	*And Land-marks*
		47	23	45	66	30			
	24	48	24	0	66	31	0	0	*Iſlands under the Artick Circle.*

		Menſes.			
Periſcii.	*Here the Climates are accounted by the Months, from 66 Degrees 31 Minutes where the Day is 14 Hours unto the Pole it ſelf, ſet at 90 Degrees, where the artificial Day is ſix Months.*	1	67	15	*Theſe Climates are ſuppoſed to paſs by divers Iſlands within the Artick Circle, as* Groenland, Iſland, Greenland; *wherein, as yet, for the narrowneſs of theſe Climates coming near together, and the uncertainty of Obſervation, no ſpecial places have been aſſigned as to the other.*
		2	69	30	
		3	73	20	
		4	78	20	
		5	84	0	
		6	90	0	

might be couched under that ſtrange name, made complaint firſt to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *An.* 745. by whom the poor Biſhop (unfortunate only in being Learned in ſuch a time of Ignorance) was condemned of Hereſie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excuſed, in regard that many of his betters fell alſo on the ſelf-ſame Error. For venerable *Bede*, a Man whoſe Books Archb. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, eſteemeth the Opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *neque enim* Antipodarum *ullatenus eſt fabulis accommodandus aſſenſus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum*, *cap.* 32. And yet the marvel is the leſs, conſidering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the ſtate of Learning was in its declination; when S. *Auguſtine* and *Lactantius*, and ſome others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when Learning was at the very height, condemns this point of the *Antipodes*, for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whoſe words I could put down at large, did I think it neceſſary. So that we of theſe Ages have very good cauſe (to uſe the words of the late L. *Verulam*) to congratulate the preſent times, in that the World in theſe our Days, have *through-lights* made in it, after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly ſee thoſe things, which either were unknown, or but blindly gueſſed at by the Ancients.

But to proceed, the ſecond part of the *Terreſtrial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, firſt, becauſe it is a Body not ſo heavy; Secondly, It is obſerved by Sailors, that their Ships move faſter to the Shore than from it; whereof no reaſon can be given but the height of the Water above the Land. Thirdly, To ſuch as ſtand on the Shore, the Sea ſeems to ſwell into the form of a round Hill, till it puts a bound upon our ſight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelm it, muſt be aſcribed only to his Power and Providence, who, *hath made the Waters to ſtand on a heap, who hath ſet them a bound that they ſhould not paſs, nor turn again to cover the Earth*. The other Affections and Properties of the Sea, as motion, ſaltneſs, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philoſophers, than this preſent Argument.

The *Sea* or *Water* is divided into, 1. *Oceanus*. 2. *Mare*. 3. *Fretum*. 4. *Sinus*. 5. *Lacus*. 6. *Flumina*.

Of which, and other *Waters*, thus ſaid *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*.

Tum Freta *diffudit, rapidiſq; tumeſcere ventis*
Juſſit, & ambitæ circundare littora terræ.
Addidit & Fontes, *&* Stagna *immenſa*, Lacuſq;
Fluminaq; *obliquis cinxit declivia ripis*, &c.

Which may be Engliſhed to this purpoſe.

He ſpread the *Seas*, which then he did command
To ſwell with Winds, and compaſs round the Land:
To thoſe he adds *Springs*, *Ponds*, and *Lakes* immenſe,
And *Rivers*, which their winding Borders fenſe.
Of thoſe not few, Earth's thirſty Jaws devour,
The reſt their Streams into the *Ocean* pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamy Cliffs inſtead of Banks they lave.

And for *Oceanus* the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all Waters, which encompaſſeth the Earth on every ſide. A Point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh'd at by *Herodotus* in the former Times; who counted it a groſs Abſurdity for any Man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompaſſed about with the main *Ocean*. But Modern Navigations have found that to be true, which we held ridiculous; and which the moſt Learned in thoſe Times knew rather by Conjecture than by Demonſtration. Nor were thoſe Ages ſo acquainted with thoſe ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all thoſe other Seas and Rivers which have intercourſe with it, as the meaneſt Sailor at the preſent. The natural cauſes of the which ſeeming ſo full of difficulty to the beſt of the Ancients, Experience hath taught us to aſcribe wholly to the *Moon*; at whoſe *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever higheſt, and the Sea moſt furious. For as ſoon as the Moon cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to ſwell, and floweth towards the Eaſt, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her Company) till ſhe come unto the height of our *Meridian*: After which, till her ſetting or Weſtern fall, the Sea abateth or decreaſeth, which we call the *Ebb*. And when ſhe paſſeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to ſwell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemiſphere* doth again abate. In brief, From the *New Moon* till the *Firſt Quarter* the Sea decreaſeth; from the *Firſt Quarter* to the *Full* it is ſaid to ſpring: from the *Full* to the *Laſt Quarter* it is ſaid to *nepe*; and from the *Laſt Quarter* to the *Prime* it ſprings again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every Day, it is not ſo perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof know well when to look for it; the next Days Tide coming for the moſt part, one Hour ten Minutes after the time it hapned on the Day foregoing.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through ſome *Fretum* or *Streight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, Firſt, either from the adjacent Shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coaſt of *Tuſcany*: Or, Secondly, from the firſt Diſcoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who firſt found it; Or, Thirdly, from ſome remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the Son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Streight* is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into ſome Sea, or out of ſome Sea into the *Ocean*, as the *Streight* of *Helleſpont*, *Gibralter*, *Fretum Davies*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling Shore, wherewith it is almoſt environed; as *Sinus Perſicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is ſometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf* of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of Waters, which hath no viſible intercourſe with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake* of *Thraſymene* in *Italy*; the *Lacus Aſphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea*, in the Land of *Canaan*, and of this kind properly is the *Mare Caſpium*, though by reaſon of the greatneſs of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvius*, is a Watercourſe continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a ſtanding Pool, iſſuing from ſome Spring or Lake, and emptying it ſelf into ſome part of the Sea, or ſome other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Oſtium*: *Tiberinaque longe Oſtia*, as the Poet hath it. Theſe are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual ſuſtenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chaſmaes* of the Earth, and congealed by the extream cold of that Element, diſſolves into Water (as we ſee the Air in Winter-nights to be melted into a pearly Dew, ſticking on our Glaſs-windows:) and being grown to ſome quantity, will (like *Hannibal* in the *Alps*) either find a way, or make a way to vent its ſuperfluity. Which beginning is ſeconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden paſſages of the Earth, joineth it ſelf with this aerial Vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it ſelf of a ſalt and brackiſh ſavour, yet) paſſing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleaſantneſs, and by how much the Spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by ſo much uſually are their Waters affected with a delightful reliſh. Rivers having thus entred themſelves into a good courſe, are never without the aſſiſtance of neighbouring Springs and Waters; by whoſe addition they augment their Streams, till they diſchannel themſelves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble uſe: Firſt, That out of them Drink may be affoted to Man and Beaſt: Secondly, That running through the Earth, as Blood through the Body, by interlacing it, and ſometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce thoſe Fruits which are

neceſſary for the Life of Man. The laſt uſe of Rivers, is, eaſineſs and ſpeedineſs of Conduct; and hereto are required four Conditions: Firſt, the *Depth*, becauſe deep Waters ſuſtain the bigger burdens, and on them Navigation is more ſafe. Secondly, *Pleaſantneſs*, whereby the Paſſage is eaſie both with the Stream and againſt it: whereas in Rivers of a violent Current, or ſuch as fall down by great *Locks* or *Cataracts*, the ſailing or rowing up the Waters is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, The *Thickneſs* of the Water; for by how much the more ſlimy and groſs a Water is, by ſo much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for Navigation, by reaſon of its fatneſs, than the pure and thin Waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, The *Broadneſs* of the Channel, that Ships and other Veſſels may conveniently wind and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philoſophers* reputed this conduct ſo dangerous, that one of them being asked, whether he thought the Living or the Dead were the greater number, would not declare himſelf, becauſe he knew not in which rank to place ſuch as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that Men never committed greater Folly in their Lives than in venturing to go by Water, when they might have gone by Land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that ſaid, *Dulciſſima eſt ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhene*; of *Africa*, *Nilus* and *Niger*; of *Aſia*, *Ganges* and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque* and *Maragnan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over theſe particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are conſiderable in *Geography*, and come within the compaſs of thoſe *Annexaries* of each which *Ptolomy* calleth τὰ συνημμένα: And having ſo done, may diſcover where the difference lieth between *Geography* and *Chorography*; which to ſome Men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, ſeem to be the ſame. For howſoever a *Chorographer* doth deſcribe a Country by the Bounds, Rivers, Hills, and moſt notable Cities, yet it is ſtill but the deſcription of ſome Place or Country, and not of the whole *Earth* univerſally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorography* differeth from *Geography* as a part from the whole: that being, as *Ptolomy* doth very handſomely expreſs it, like the painting of an Eye or an Ear, or ſome other Member; this, as the picturing of the Head, or whole Body of Man. But *Geography*, in its full latitude, comprehendeth not *Chorography* only, but *Topography* and *Hydrography* alſo. Of theſe the laſt is the delineation of the Sea by its ſeveral Names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks, and other affections; as alſo of great Lakes and Rivers: which is moſt neceſſary for the uſe of *Mariners*, and is beſt done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regula Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*, the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotiſm*.

2. *Topography* is the deſcription of ſome particular Place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus*, περὶ πόλεων, or *de Urbibus*, among the Ancients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Bruinus* in theſe latter times; *Stow*'s Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and ſuch as theſe. And of this kind is the deſcription of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and of thoſe the *Elyſian* Fields, the Gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Heſperides* in the ancient Poets.

3. *Chorography* (as before was ſaid) is the exact deſcription of ſome Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the ſame; unleſs this laſt may fall more properly under the notion of *Topography*. Of this kind the deſcription of the ſeveral Eſtates of *Greece*, written by *Pauſanias*, is of moſt uſe and reputation of all the Ancients: as that of *Cambden Clarenceux*, for the Iſle of *Britain*; of *Lewis Guicciardine*, for the *Low-Countries*; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongſt the Modern.

4. *Geography* finally is an aggregate of all theſe together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the deſcription of Seas and Waters; from *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular Places; and from *Chorography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdoms, which brought into body, make up that Portraicture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every conſiderable part thereof in Writing; which, according to *Ptolomy*'s definition before-mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which Studies, thoſe which have took moſt pains, with the greateſt benefit to Poſterity, are the ſaid *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo* for the elder times: *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two firſt lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the *Roman* Emperor, *An. Chr.* 141. or thereabouts; the other in the Reign of *Tiberius Cæſar*, the unworthy Succeſſor of *Auguſtus*: the three laſt flouriſhing in the Days of our Fathers, about ſome 80 Years ago.

Thus have I briefly ſummed up thoſe general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are neceſſary to the knowledge and underſtanding as well of *Hiſtory* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariſeth that univerſal comprehenſion of *Natural* and *Civil* Story, which by a proper and diſtinct name may be termed *Coſmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongſt mixed Stories; for it hath from *Natural Hiſtory* or *Geography*, the Regions themſelves, together with their Sites, and ſeveral Commodities; from *Civil Hiſtory*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coaſts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the utility and excellency of which Study I need ſay no more, than what hath been already ſpoken of the ſeveral Parts, whereof this is only the Reſult, deſiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Chriſtened theſe imperfect and unworthy Papers by ſo noble a name; which I deſire they may deſerve, though I fear they will not. However, I will give the venture, and make as ſpeedy and as profitable a diſcovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the moſt obſervable things therein; according to the beſt light which the reading of *Hiſtories* and *Geographical* Diſcourſes hath ſupplied me with; beſeeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him ſeems beſt, to bleſs me in the undertaking; and furniſh me with fit Abilities both of ſtrength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipſe enim eſt qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And ſo on in God's Name.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHY.

The Firſt Book.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
ITALY, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*,
SPAIN, and *BRITAIN*, with the
ISLES thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

Florus in Proœm. l. 1.

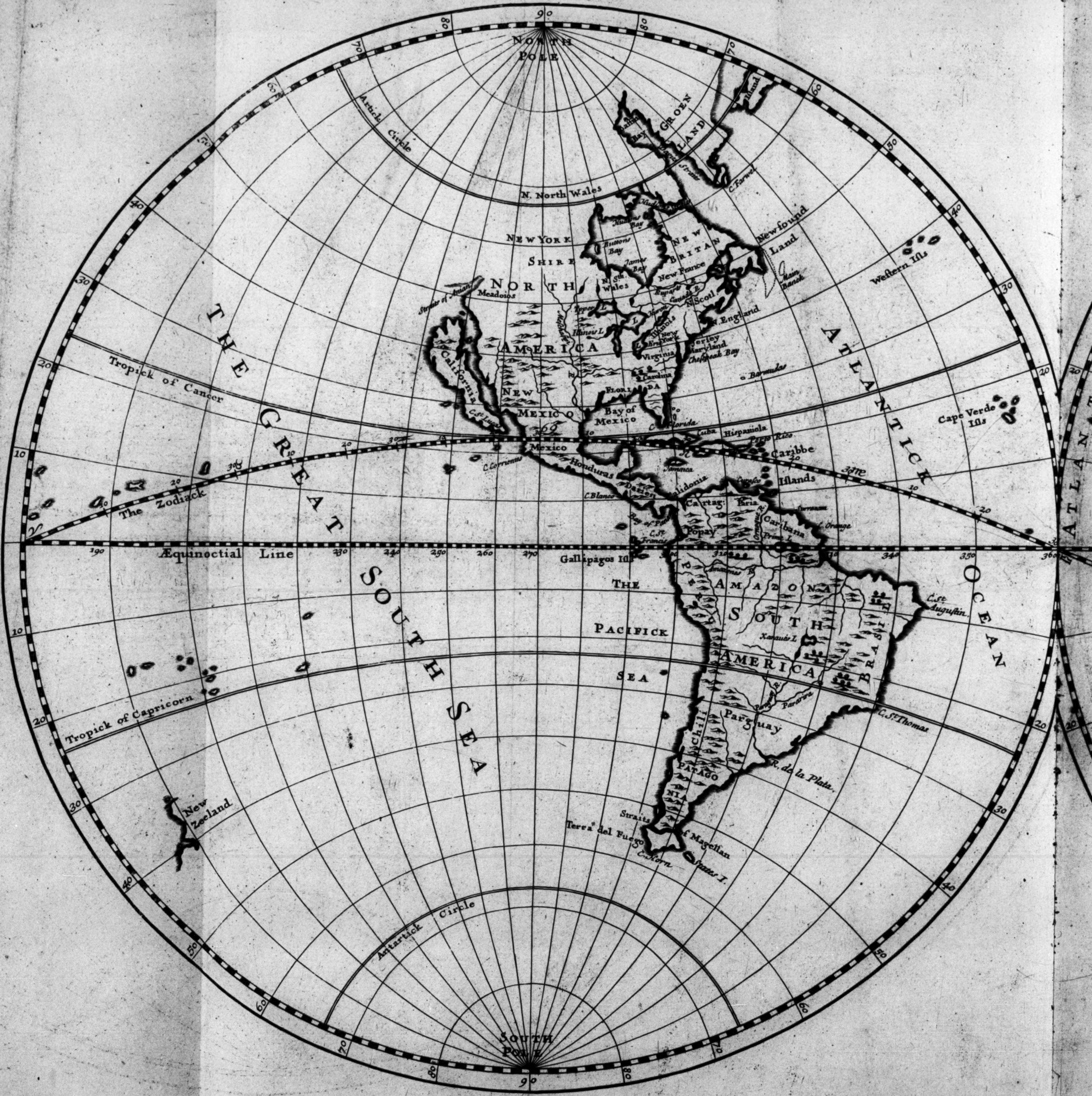
Populus Romanus *à Rege* Romulo *ad* Cæſarem Auguſtum *ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit*, *ut qui res ejus legunt*, *non* unius Populi, *ſed* generis humani *facto diſcant*.

Velleius Patercul. Hiſt.

Quemadmodum Urbem Imperiorumque, *ita &* Gentium *nunc floret fortuna*, *nunc ſeneſcit*, *nunc interit*.

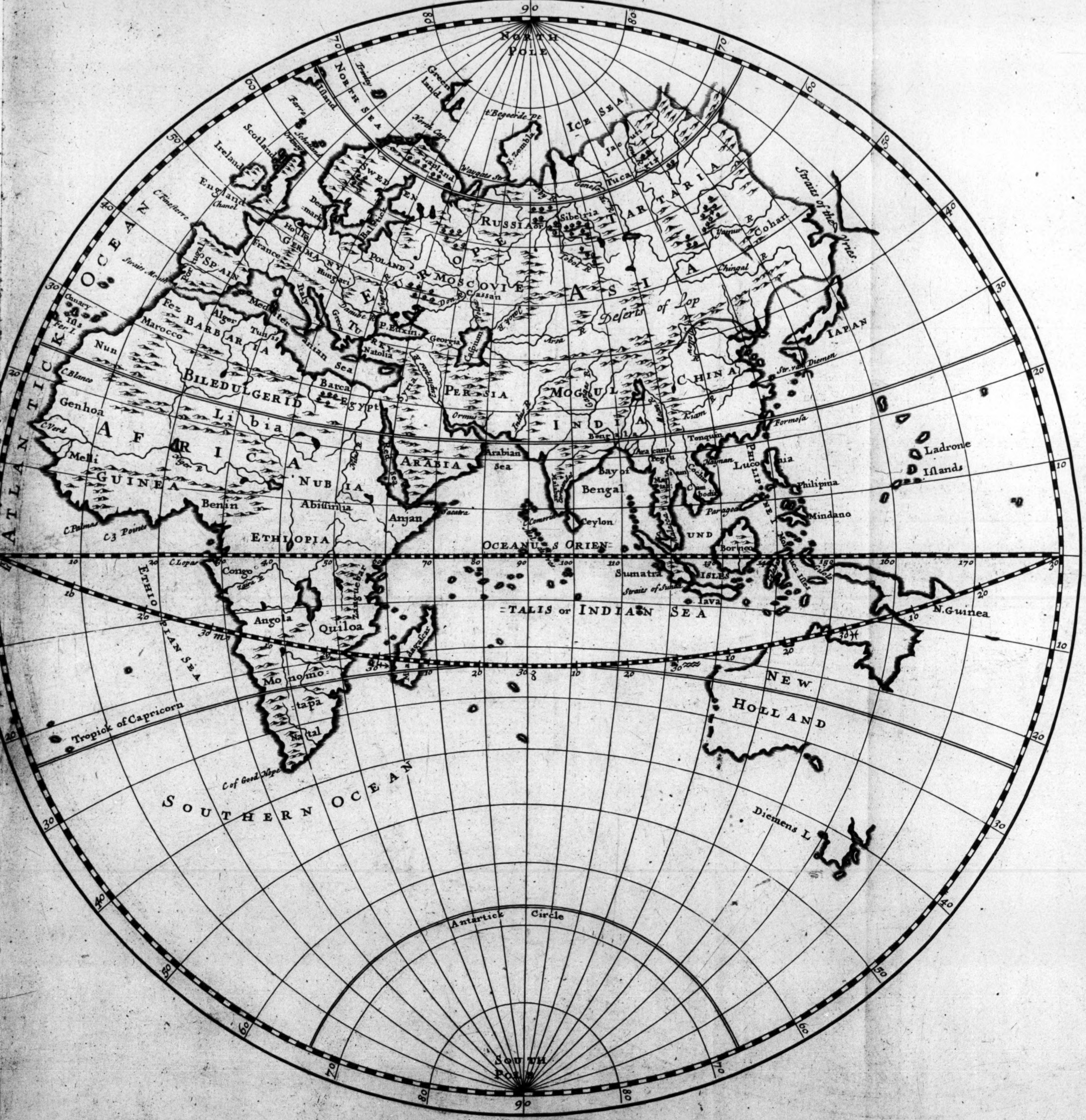
LONDON,
Printed by *Tho. Hodgkin*, MDCCI.

A NEW MAP O


NORTH POLE
Artick Circle
GROEN LAND
Baffins Bay
Davis Straits
Island
C. Farwel
N. North Wales
Hudsons Streights
Hudsons Bay
Buttons Bay
James Bay
NEW YORK SHIRE
NEW BRITAN
New France
Newfound Land
Main Banck
N. Sth. Wales
Straits of Anian
Meadoios
NORTH AMERICA
Mississipi
Upper L.
Ilinois L.
Huron
Illinois
Canada R.
N. Scotl.
N. England
New York
Erie L.
Jerley
Maryland
Chesapeak Bay
Virginia
Carolina
FLORIDA
California
NEW MEXICO
C. St. Lucas
Bay of Mexico
C. Florida
Barmudas
Western Isls
Cape Verde Isls
Cuba
Hispaniola
Porto Rico
Caribbe Islands
Jamaica
Curasao
Mexico
C. Corrientes
Honduras
Darien
Caledonia
C. Blanco
Bay of Panama
C. St. Francis
Cartag:
Paria
Popay
Caribana
Oronoque R.
Prime L.
Surenam
C. Orange
Gallapagos Isls
Amazones R.
PERU
AMAZONA
SOUTH AMERICA
Xaraies L.
BRASIL
C. St. Augustin
Paraguay R.
Pararina
Parguay
Chili
C. St. Thomas
R. de la Plata
PATAGONIA
Straits of Magellan
Terra del Fuego
C. Horn
States I.
THE PACIFICK SEA
THE GREAT SOUTH SEA
ATLANTICK OCEAN
Tropick of Cancer
Tropick of Capricorn
The Zodiack
Æquinoctial Line
New Zeeland
Antartick Circle
SOUTH POLE
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
190
230
240
250
260
270
320
340
350
360

p 25

OF THE WORLD


NORTH POLE
NORTH SEA
Island
Greenland
Nova Zembla
ICE SEA
Scotland
Ireland
England
Chanel
C. Finisterre
SWEDEN
Lapland
Denmark
Holland
GERMANY
France
SPAIN
Portugal
Straits Mouth
RUSSIA
Siberia
TARTARIA
Straits of the Iesso
POLAND
MOSCOVIE
Cassan
EUROPE
ASIA
Deserts of Lop
Hungari
Italy
Mediterranean Sea
Turkey
Danube R
P. Euxin
Georgia
Caspium
Natolia
Canary Isl.
OCEAN
Fez
BARBARIA
Algier
Tunis
Marocco
Nun
C. Blanco
BILEDULGERID
Barca
Egypt
Libia
Genhoa
C. Verd
AFRICA
Melli
GUINEA
NUBIA
Benin
Abissinia
ARABIA
Arabian Sea
PERSIA
Ormus
MOGUL
INDIA
CHINA
JAPAN
Str. van Diemen
Formosa
Tonquin
Bengal
Bay of Bengal
Ceylon
PHILIPPINE I.
Luconia
Philipina
Mindano
Ladrone Islands
Anjan
Socatra
ETHIOPIA
C. Palmas
C. 3 Points
C. Lopez
Congo
Angola
Quiloa
ETHIOPIAN SEA
Monomotapa
Natal
C. of Good Hope
OCEANUS ORIENTALIS or INDIAN SEA
Sumatra
Borneo
Straits of Sunda
Iava
SUND ISLES
N. Guinea
NEW HOLLAND
Tropick of Capricorn
SOUTHERN OCEAN
Diemens L.
Antartick Circle
SOUTH POLE
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
110
120
130
140
150
160
170

COSMOGRAPHY.

The Firſt BOOK.

CONTAINING,
The CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY of *ITALY*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the ISLES thereof.

OF THE WORLD:

And Firſt of

EUROPE.

OF the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantations* of the ſame by the Sons of Men, ſufficient hath been ſpoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all thoſe Parts united into one *Compoſitum*; called therefore by the *Grecians* Τὸ Πᾶν and Τὸ Ὅλον, becauſe the *Summa Totalis*, and general comprehenſion of all things exiſtent. In which reſpect 'tis called by the *Latins*, *Univerſum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united (*Univerſi qui in uno loco verſi*, ſay the old *Grammarians*.) The great Body of the World, like the Body of Man, though it have many Parts and Members, is but one Body only. A Body of ſo perfect and exact a form, of ſo compleat a *Symmetry*, in reſpect of the particular Parts, and all thoſe Parts ſo beautified and adorned by the God of Nature, that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called Κόσμος by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*, both Names declaring the Compoſure of it to be full of *Ornament*; and all thoſe Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Chriſtian Advocate* reaſoneth very ſtrongly,) as he which comes into an Houſe, and ſeeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order, *utriſq; præeſſe crederet Dominum*, &c. muſt needs conceive, both that the Houſe had ſome wiſe Lord and Maſter who had ſo contrived it, and that ſuch Lord and Maſter of it was of more worth and excellency than the Houſe and Furniture: So (ſaith he) whoſoever doth obſerve the moſt eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, muſt needs conceive there is ſome great and more glorious power who did firſt create it; diſpoſing of all things therein in ſuch excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the notions of a *Deity*, which naturally are ingraffed in the Soul of Man; hath trained up all Men in the practice of ſome *Religion* though few (comparatively) ſo happy as to be practiſed in the true. For though the knowledge and worſhip of the true God, by reaſon of ſome acceſſions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffuſed than in former times; yet is the leaſt part of the World poſſeſſed by them who make profeſſion of that Worſhip. For dividing the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by ſuch as have laboured in this ſearch, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worſhip Stocks and Stones for gods, even the works of Mens hands. Of the eleven parts which are remaining, ſix are poſſeſſed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Sarazens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worſhiping the Lord that *bought them*, they have no part or portion in the true *Religion*. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion, the other three being divided betwixt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, and ſuch as otherwiſe differing in ſome Opinions, paſs generally by the name of *Proteſtant* or Reformed Churches. Which as it ſheweth how ſmall a portion of the World is poſſeſſed by *Chriſtians*, who only (though not all of them) have reaſon to pretend to the true *Religion*: So doth it ſhew (I note this only by the way) how falſly thoſe of *Rome* make multitude of Profeſſors to be a ſign of the True Church; and then conceive themſelves to be ſuch a multitude, as correſponds unto that ſign. Faulty alike both in the *Poſition* and the *Application*: For if the multitude of Profeſſors be a ſign of the Church, the True Church ſhould be found rather amongſt the *Heathens* or *Mahometans*, than amongſt the *Chriſtians*: or if they do reſtrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to thoſe who make profeſſion of the *Chriſtian* Faith: thoſe of the *Greek* Communion poſſeſſing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the Members of the Church of *Rome*, though poſſibly of leſs eſteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that brag of *Bellarmine* (though otherwiſe more modeſt than the reſt of the *Jeſuits*) affirming poſitively and expreſly, *Romanam Eccleſiam univerſum plane orbem poſſidere*, *i. e.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it ſelf. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more ſpecial notice of the ſtate of *Religion* in the ſeveral Provinces of the World, to which now I haſten; premiſing firſt this Scheme of thoſe ſeveral Parts, into which it doth now ſtand divided.

The World is divided into two Parts; unknown or not fully diſcovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Auſtralis*: the laſt taking up the Southern Continent; the other lying on the North of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we ſhall ſay ſomewhat at the end of this Work.

Known, either
- Anciently, as
  - *Europe.*
  - *Aſia.*
  - *Africa.*
- Lately, as *America.*

Europe is joined to *Aſia*, by that ſpace of Earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Aſia* is joined to *Africk*, by the *Egyptian Iſthmus*; *America* is divided (as moſt conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is ſeparated from *Aſia*, by a Line drawn from the Bay of St. *Nicholas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it ſelf all the length of his courſe, then by *Palus Meotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean*. *Aſia* is parted from *Africk* by the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Aſia* than *Africk*, *America* than *Aſia*.

Europe is bounded on the North by the *Frozen Ocean*, on the Weſt by the *Atlantick Ocean*, and on the South by the *Mediterranean Sea*; by which it is ſeparated from *Africa*. Theſe three are ſo notorious, that all are agreed about them; but the fourth is a little difficult: But however, it is parted by the *Ægean Sea*, now call'd the *Archipelago*; the *Euxine Sea*, now call'd *Mare Maggiore* by the *Italians*, and the *Black Sea* by the *Turks*; the *Palus Mæotis*, now call'd *Mare delle Zabacche*; and the River *Tanais*, now call'd the *Don*. Thus far the Ancient and the Modern Geographers are agreed: But then the River *Tanais* extends but a ſmall part of that vaſt Tract, between the *Palus Mæotis* and the *Frozen Sea*; to ſupply which the latter Geographers have taken in the River *OBY* or *OB*, which was altogether unknown to the Ancients; but after all, there is a great ſpace of Land which has no natural Boundary, but is to be ſupplied by a Line drawn from that part of the *Tanais* which lies next the *Worga*, to that part of the *Ob* which is neareſt to it. *Cluverius. Baudrand.*

They which have entertained a fancy of reſembling every Country to things more obvious to the Sight and Underſtanding, have liken'd *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the Head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two Wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiouſly impertinent, in reſembling *France* to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a Lion; *Britain* to an Ax; *Ireland* to an Egg; *Peloponneſus* to a Plantane Leaf; *Spain* to an Ox-hide ſpread on the Ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth beſt proportion) to a Man's Leg; with divers the like *Phantaſms* of a capricious Brain; theſe Countries no more reſembling them, than Pictures made when Painting was in her Infancy, under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion, and this is a Whale*, for fear the Spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the leaſt (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 Miles) is yet of moſt renown amongſt us. *Firſt*, Becauſe of the temperature of the Air, and fertility of the Soil. *Secondly*, From the ſtudy of Arts, both ingenious and mechanical. *Thirdly*, Becauſe of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies. *Fourthly*, From the purity and ſincerity of the *Chriſtian* Faith. *Fifthly*, Becauſe we dwell in it, and ſo firſt place it.

Cluverius reckons its greateſt extent from *Cape St. Vincent* in *Spain*, to the Mouth of the River *Ob* to be 900 *German* Miles; and from *Cape Matapan* in the *Morea*, to *Noort Kyn*, or the North Cape in *Lapland* to be 550 of the ſame Miles, fifteen of which Miles make a Degree.

EUROPE is generally ſaid ſo to be called from *Europa*, the Daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the ſhape of a Bull; or as ſome Hiſtories ſay, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others in a Ship whoſe Beak had the Portraicture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Iſle of *Crete*, ſhould give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Iſland is ſo inconſiderable, and ſo ſmall a part, I muſt confeſs I ſee no reaſon. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the *High Dutch* to be the primitive Language which was ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, and loves to fetch all Names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being firſt inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, ſhould be beholding to the *Grecians* for its Name; will have it called *Europe*, *quaſi Ver-hop*, by the tranſpoſition of the two laſt Letters; *Ver* ſignifying excellent, and *hop* a multitude (whence we uſe to ſay, *as thick as Hops*) becauſe *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent People. And on the other ſide, *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all Names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* Tongue, will have it called *Europe* from *Ur-appa*, which ſignifieth in that Language a *beautiful Countenance*, becauſe the *Europeans* much excelled the *Africans* in whiteneſs of Skin, and clearneſs of Complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath beſt determined of the Controverſie, who telleth us plainly, Ὁκόθεν τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, οὔτε ὅστις ἦν ὁ θέμενος, *&c.* That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who firſt called it ſo. And yet conſidering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter) why might not the *Aſiaticks* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neareſt to them? as the *Romans* did the name of *Africk* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they firſt brought under their Obedience? Or as the *Europeans* gave the name of *Aſia* to the greateſt of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Aſia Minor* (as it ſince was called;) or rather to thoſe parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been ſhewn in part already, and ſhall be ſhewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongſt whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *The Iſles of the Gentiles were divided*, *Gen.* 10. 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Iſles adjoining. For beſides that it is compaſſed about with the *Cyclades* and other Iſles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Iſles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, the Iſles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it ſelf was formerly taken for an Iſland; as being invironed round with Water, ſaving where it is joined on the North-Eaſt to *Aſia the Great*, which very few of the Ancients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the Poſterity of *Japhet*, but ſo many *Peninſula's*, or *Demi-Iſlands*, invironed almoſt round with one Sea or other? Nor was the Name and Memory of *Japhet* ſo much forgotten by the Children which deſcended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the firſt of their *European* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Japetus*, whom they make to be the Son of *Cælum* and *Terra*, and the Father of the wiſe *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *ſatus Japeto*, in the firſt Book of his *Metamorphoſis*. So that we ſee how punctually the firſt part of God's Bleſſing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would *enlarge the borders of Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The ſecond part thereof, that he *ſhould dwell in the Tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accompliſhment, yet it came at laſt; and that both in the literal and myſtical ſenſe. Firſt, in the *literal*, when the Poſterity of *Japhet*, both *Greek* and *Romans*, made themſelves Maſters of *Judea*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eaſtern Parts, promiſed to, and poſſeſſed by, the Seed of *Sem*. Next in the *myſtical*, when God was pleaſed to break down the *partition Wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the Houſe of *Japhet*, into the body of the *Church*: which for a long time was reſtrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be conſidered as it ſtands divided into the *Continent*, and the *Iſlands*: the *Continent* lying all together; the *Iſlands*, as they are diſperſed in the *Greek*, *Ægæan*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *Britiſh* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we ſhall diſcover them, and diſcourſe of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into, 1 *Italy*. 2. The *Alps*. 3. *France*. 4. *Spain*. 5. *Britain*. 6. *Belgium*. 7. *Germany*. 8. *Denmark*. 9. *Swethland*. 10. *Ruſſia*. 11. *Poland*. 12. *Hungary*. 13. *Sclavonia*. 14. *Dacia*. and 15. *Greece*; and ſpeak of the ſeveral *Iſlands*, as they relate to ſome or other of theſe greater Countries.

In all which Countries, and Iſlands belonging to them; beſides the *Latin* Tongue, which is now rather *Scholaſtical* than National; and beſides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spaniſh*, being but as ſo many corruptions of the *Latin*: and beſides the *Engliſh*, which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latin*, and *French*, there are in all fourteen Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to ſay, 1. *Iriſh*, ſpoken in *Ireland*, and the Weſt of *Scotland*; 2. *Britiſh*, or *Welch*, in *Wales*, and ſome parts of *Cornwal*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Baſquiſh* in *Biſcay*, about the *Pyrenean* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean; 4. *Arabick* in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*; 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*; 7. *Cauchian*, which the *Eaſt-Friezlanders* (or *Cauchi*) ſpeak among themſelves, though to Strangers they ſpeak the common *Dutch*; 8. *Sclavoniſh*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almoſt all the parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire; 9. *Illyrian*, on the Eaſt ſide of *Iſtria*, and the Iſle of *Veggia*; 10. *Greek*, in moſt Provinces and Iſles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themſelves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epirotique* in the mountainous Places of thoſe Countries; 13. *Jazygian*, on the North-ſide of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*; and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, and other *European* parts of that barbarous People. And this ſhall ſerve for *Europe* in the general notion. Deſcend me now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Iſlands of it; beginning firſt of all with *Italy*, contrary to the uſage of moſt *Geographers*; who commonly begin with *Spain* or *Ireland*, as being the furtheſt Countries Weſtward, and conſequently neareſt to the firſt Meridian, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we ſhall do by reaſon of that great influence which the *Romans* had in moſt parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World beſides, in matters as well *Civil* and *Eccleſiaſtical*, which much depended on the Power of that Empire, formerly, and on the Uſurpations of that Church in the latter days.

The Great *Ortelius*, ſaith *Pliny*, call'd *Europe*, Altricem Victoris omnium Gentium Populi, terrarumque Pulcherimam. *The Nurſe of that People* (the *Romans*) *which hath conquered all the reſt, and the moſt beautiful of all Lands that are known.* And tho' it is certainly the leaſt of all the four great Parts into which the World ſtands now divided, yet as *Ortelius* goes on, *It is of great Fertility, naturally Temperate* (being ſeated in the Northern Temperate Zone) *and therefore enjoying the Bleſſings of a Temperate Air; and its Soil producing Fruits of all ſorts, Wine and and Trees equal to the beſt, which make it extreamly pleaſant to the Eye. It is alſo adorn'd with Cities, Towns, and Villages, and a numerous Progeny of Men beyond any of the reſt. Its Inhabitants are not only more numerous in Proportion, but much more Civil and Ingenious; ſo that tho' it is leſs than any of the other three in extent, yet it is, and ever was thought much more excellent than any of the other; and beſides its preſent Grandeur it is venerable on the Account of the* Macedonian *and* Roman *Empires.* Thus far that Great Man.

Dr. *Heylin* has obſerved, That the Ancient Prediction was ſoon verified, *God ſhall enlarge* Japheth, in that the Poſterity of that Patriarch had ſo much a larger ſhare than *Cham* in *Aſia*, and all *Europe* beſides, but it ſeems but reaſonable to me to obſerve, that this Prediction has received a conſiderable accompliſhment in the diſcovery of the *Weſt-Indies*, or *America*, by the *Europeans*; by which the bounds of that Patriarch are in theſe our times dilated to vaſt Countries unknown to the Ancients, and in a great degree unknown yet to us too.

Tho' the two firſt Empires were in *Aſia*, yet neither of them had one Acre of Land in *Europe*; and on the other ſide the *Macedonian* Empire was almoſt all of it in *Aſia*, and the *Roman* took in a great part of *Africa*, ſo that no part of *Europe* was ever yet in Bondage to any *Aſiatick* or *African* Prince (except the ſhort time when the *Sarazens* reigned,) but on the contrary a great part of *Africa* and *Aſia* are at this Day ſubject to *European* Princes, and the beſt and greateſt part of *America*.

OF
ITALY.

ITALY once the Empreſs of the greateſt part of the (then known) World, is compaſſed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alps*; ſo that it is in a manner a *Peninſula* or *Demi-Iſland*. But more particularly it hath on the Eaſt, the lower part of the *Adriatick* and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the Weſt the River *Varus*, and ſome part of the *Alps*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North in ſome part the *Alps*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Seas, by which it is ſeparated from the main Land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Auguſta Prætoria* (now called *Aoſt*) at the foot of the *Alps*, unto *Otranto* in the moſt Eaſtern Point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020 Miles; in breadth from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Provence*, to the Mouth of the River *Arſa* in *Friuli*, where it is broadeſt, 410 Miles; about *Otranto*, where it is narroweſt, not above 25 Miles; and in the middle Parts from the Mouth of *Peſcara*, in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to the Mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuſcan* or Lower Sea, 126 Miles. The whole compaſs by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the Shore, comes to 3038 Miles, which added to the 410 Miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448 Miles. But if the Coaſt on each ſide be reckoned by a ſtraight Line, then it falls very ſhort of this proportion, amounting in the total, as *Caſtaldo* computes it, to no more than 2550 Miles. The whole Country lieth under the fifth and ſixth *Climates* of the Northern Temperate *Zone*, which it wholly taketh up: ſo that the longeſt Day in the moſt Northern Parts is fifteen Hours, and three fifth parts of an Hour; the longeſt in the Southern Parts, falling ſhort a full Hour and no more of that length.

But theſe dimenſions muſt be underſtood of *Italy* in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flouriſhing Fortunes of that State; the bounds of *Italy* on the Weſt, and North-weſtern Parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay Weſt-wards toward the *Alps*, as it was poſſeſſed by the *Gauls*, ſo it had alſo the name of *Gallia*, and for diſtinction ſake, of *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) diſtinct from *Italy*, until the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who dividing *Italy* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina* into ſeveral Parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the body of *Italy*.

The Names hereof ſo bounded as before, are ſaid to have been very many, according to their ſeveral Nations which were anciently of moſt power and authority in it; or to the ſeveral fancies of the Name giver: whereof ſome being the Names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymy*, taken for, and applied to the whole. Of this laſt ſort, to omit others of leſs note, were *Latium*, and *Auſonia*; the *Auſones* being a People dwelling about *Cales*, a Town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lieth on the Eaſt of *Tiber*, ſo called, as moſt Writers are of Opinion, *à latendo*, from hiding; becauſe *Saturn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed:

> ——— *Latiumq; vocari*
> *Maluit, his quoniam latuiſſet tutus in oris*, as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgils* fancy only, but a Tradition generally followed and allowed of by the greateſt Writers, as by *Eutropius*, and *Herodian*, and by *Minucius Felix* alſo, though *Varro* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium, quod lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Appennini*, as *Servius* in his Notes on *Virgil*, becauſe it lieth hidden (as it were) under the Precipices of the *Alps* and *Appennine* Hills; which cannot poſſibly be ſaid of *Italy* properly and anciently ſo called, no part whereof came near the *Alps*. The more general Names of the whole Country, were, 1. *Heſperia*, from *Heſperus* the Son of *Atlas*, as the Poets ſay, or rather as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Heſperus* the Evening-Star, as being ſeated Weſtward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the Wines, Wine being called Οἶνος by the *Grecians*; or, as moſt think, from *Oenotrius* an *Arcadian* King, one of the firſt Planters of the Country: And 3. *Italia*, the name at firſt of that part of this Continent which was afterward called *Calabria*; ſhut up firſt between *Golfo de Chilaci* (called anciently *Sinus Scylleticus*) on the South, and *Sinus Lameticus*, part of the Bay or Gulf of *Tarentum*, on the South ſide of it, for ſo ſaith *Ariſtotle* in the Seventh Book of his Politicks, *Cap.* 10. Τὴν ἀκτὴν ταύτην τ̃ Εὐρώπης Ἰταλίαν τοῦ ὄνομα λαβεῖν, &c. that is to ſay, *That part of* Europe *which lieth between the Bay* Sylleticus *and the Bay* Lameticus, *took the name of* Italy, *the Golfs being diſtant from each other about half a days Journey*. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the beſt Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurrs in *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, out of *Antiochus Syracuſanus*, a more ancient Author; the like in *Strabo*, lib. 6. ſo named from *Italus*, a chief Commander of ſome Nations; who firſt ſettled here, and by degrees communicated to the reſt of this Continent. Of theſe three laſt, thus the Poet *Virgil*.

> *Eſt locus*, Heſperiam *Graii cognomine dicunt*,
> *Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq; ubere gleba*,
> Oenotrii *coluere viri*; *nunc Fama, minores*
> Italiam *dixiſſe, ducis de nomine, Gentem*.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

> That which the Greeks *Hiſperia* call'd, a place
> Great both in Arms and Wealth, firſt planted was
> By the *Oenotrians*; ſince, if Fame not lie,
> Was from their Chieftain's Name call'd *Italy*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we ſhall ſee e're long. Mean time we will take notice of the conſent or harmony, which is betwixt *Ariſtotle* and this Poet: it being ſaid by *Ariſtotle* in the Seventh of his *Politicks*, *cap.* 10.

that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrians* the Arts of Husbandry, who before were wandring Shepherds only, he cauſed them by his own name to be called *Italians.* Let us next take a view of thoſe honorary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, ſo denominated from him; by *Æthicus*, called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empreſs of the World; by *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyriſts*, *Gentium Domina*, the Miſtreſs of the Nations; by others, *Paradiſus Mundi*, the terreſtrial Paradiſe. But what need more be ſaid then is ſpoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following Panegyrick; *Italia terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parens, numine Deum electa quæ Cælum ipſum clarius faceret, ſparſa congregaret imperia, ritus molliret, tot populorum diſcordes linguas ſermones commercio ad colloquia diſtraheret, & humanitati hominem daret.* Italy (ſaith he) the Parent, and withal the Foſter-child of all other Nations, was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if poſſible) the very Heavens themſelves more famous: To gather the ſcattered Empires of the World into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the diſagreeing Languages of ſo many Men by the benefit of one common Tongue; and in a word to reſtore Man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtleſs; and yet not much more than the place deſerves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The People anciently, (and to this day they ſtill partake ſomewhat of thoſe qualities) were wary of behaviour, ſparing of expence, and moſt greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras nationes ſunt Romani*: by which he doth not mean thoſe only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but alſo their *Italian* Neighbours and Aſſociates, *Romans* by priviledge and freedom, though not by Birth. They have twice given the Law to the faireſt, and moſt puiſſant parts of the World; once by their *Valour*, when the greateſt part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the ſtanding body of whoſe Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* Bands: And ſecondly by their *Wit*, by which they have ſubdued a great part of *Chriſtendom*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the ſtanding body of whoſe Council (though he have Miniſters of all tempers and Nations) do ſpecially conſiſt of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipioes*, one of which ſubdued *Africk*, and the other *Aſia*; *Pompey* the Great, who extended the *Roman Empire* Eaſtwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæſar*, the greater of the two, enlarging it Weſtward to the *Britiſh*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; beſides infinite others of leſs note in reſpect of theſe, though moſt deſerving in themſelves. Here flouriſhed alſo the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortenſius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Hiſtorians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Saluſtius*; the memorable Poets *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus* and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyriſts, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Perſius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muſes*, that it is not eaſie to determine whether they were moſt eminent in Arts or Arms. What Men of ſpecial eminence it hath ſince produced, we ſhall ſee hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it ſtands at preſent; and to that place we ſhall defer our Obſervations of the Air; and diſpoſition of the Soil, with ſuch other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was anciently divided, as moſt Countries elſe, into *Tribes* and *Nations*, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuſcans*, *Samnites*, *Campani*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we ſhall meet with in the deſcription of thoſe ſeveral States into which it doth now ſtand divided. But all thoſe Nations being ſeverally vanquiſhed by the *Roman* puiſſance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleaſed *Auguſtus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was ſaid, that is to ſay, *Liguria*, *Hetruria*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, the *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Tranſpadana*, *Venetia*, and *Hiſtria*. In the time of the Emperour *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were encreaſed to ſixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being ſomewhat altered; and the three Iſles of *Sicily*, *Corſica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhætia's* firſt and ſecond, added to the number. But this diſtribution alſo received ſome change in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, who altering both the names and bounds of the former Province, and adding one more to them, made ſeventeen in all, that is to ſay, 1. *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*, 2. *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Brutii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corſica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the Præfecture of the City of *Rome*; 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12. *Venetiæ*, 13. *Æmylia*, 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alpes Cottiæ*, 16. *Rhætia prima*, and 17. *Rhætia ſecunda*, which made up the Dioceſs of *Italy*, properly and eſpecially ſo called, whereof *Millain* was firſt the *Metropolitan* City, *Aquielia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was diverſe; according to the ſeveral Provinces and People of it. In *Apulia*, they uſed the *Meſſapian* Tongue: in that which is now called *Calabria*, they ſpake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria*, they uſed the *Tuſcan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: Which laſt ſo altered in ſhort time by reaſon of the Commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulſion of the *Tarquins*, could not be underſtood (as *Polybius* ſaith) by the beſt *Antiquaries* of his time. And yet the time between the making of thoſe Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, paſſed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* Tongue was afterwards at any time ſpoke generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it ſelf, as I ſee ſome hold, I can by no means be perſwaded; it being by ſpecial favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they ſhould uſe the *Roman* Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* People dwelling out of *Latium* had uſed it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and a great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* Tongue in ſucceeding times came to be underſtood in moſt parts of *Italy*, by reaſon of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted among them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual reſort to *Rome* on their ſeveral buſineſſes: It being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Prætors* for the ſeveral Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the ſubject Nations, ſave only in the *Latin* Tongue, their own proper Language. Yet for all this, it never grew to ſuch extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it ſelf, no more than the *Engliſh* Tongue is natural or national to the *Welch*, or *Iriſh*, though it be generally underſtood (for the very ſame reaſons) by all of the better ſort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spaniſh*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* Tongues, occaſioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impreſſion which the *Latin* Tongue had made amongſt them, whilſt they were under the obedience of that puiſſant Empire; and that the *Italian* Tongue, as it is now ſpoken, could not receive ſo great a change from the Barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongſt them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they ſo long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eaſtern parts) as to be either the occaſions or authors of the alteration. So that the preſent Language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up eſpecially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*; ſome notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the *North*, and *Weſt*, ſome of the *Gothiſh*, in the midſt, about *Rome* it ſelf, and not a little of the *Greek*, in the Eaſt of *Naples*.

And as the Language, ſo the *Religion* of the Country, hath received ſome change. The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt preached in *Rome* it ſelf, and in *Rome* firſt preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apoſtles *Peter* and *Paul*, are generally ſaid by the ancient Writers, to be the firſt who preached the Goſpel in that City, *A duobus Apoſtolis* Petro *&* Paulo *Romæ fundata & conſtituta eſt Eccleſia*, ſaith the old Father *Irenæus* Lib. 4. Cap. 3. To one of theſe, the firſt preaching of the Goſpel there is to be referred? both being Biſhops of that City: That is to ſay, St. *Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*; St. *Paul* of thoſe which conſiſted ſpecially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Goſpel was preached there before *Pauls* coming, is evident by his Epiſtle writen to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port-Town of *Corinth*, ſix years at leaſt before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he teſtified that their *Faith was famous over all the World*; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. *Peter* was the firſt Preacher of the Goſpel at *Rome*, ſo ſent he his Diſciples to promulgate it in moſt parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Biſhops of St. *Peter*'s making for ſo many of the principal Cities of this Country: That is to ſay, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom St. *Paul* ſpeaks of in his Epiſtle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Anxur*, *Hermagoras* for *Aquileia*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proſdocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuſe*, and *Pancratius* for *Tauromenium* in the Iſle of *Sicily*. But whether St. *Peter* planted it, or St. *Paul* watered it, certain I am that GOD only *gave it the increaſe*. It could not elſe have proſpered under ſuch a Tyranny, as many, if not moſt of the *Roman* Emperors did earneſtly endeavor to ſuppreſs it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*; the watering of it with the blood of ſo many *Martyrs*, made it grow the faſter. And this ſmall grain of Muſtard-ſeed waxed to ſo great a Tree, as over-ſhadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only ſtand it out againſt all Tempeſts, but in concluſion did ſuppreſs that Superſtition and Idolatry, for whoſe ſake all thoſe Princes, till the time of *Conſtantine*, did more or leſs, labour to deſtroy it. How much it hath receded ſince thoſe times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the deſign and arts of thoſe who boaſt themſelves to be Succeſſors to that great Apoſtle, ſhall be a little touched at, in the ſtory of the *Roman Papacy*. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that all the people of this Country, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquiſition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Proteſtant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monſtrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been ſtopped or elſe corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this moſt flouriſhing Garden, ſtill preſerve their Beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the ſame Channels, as before they did. And of theſe *Italy* hath as many as any one Country, but none of any long courſe, by reaſon that all parts of it are ſo near ſome Sea; moſt of which riſing from the *Alpes*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter and caſualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often overflow the Country, and for the moſt part leave an ill Air behind them. Thoſe of chief note are, 1. The River *Po* or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is ſaid to have been dreanched when he fell from Heaven. It ariſeth in the *Alpes*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Ciſpidanum* and *Tranſpadanum*; and having taken in thirty leſſer ſtreams, falls with ſeven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Venice*. 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*, anciently the North-bound of *Italy*; *Hic fluvius quondam Italiæ finis*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long ſince choked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arnus*, *L' Arno*, which riſing in the *Apennine* falleth into the *Tuſcan* Sea, and anciently divided *Italy* on that ſide from the *Ciſalpine Galls*: On the banks hereof ſtandeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticinus*, *Tecino*, *Teſino*, which gave name to the City of *Pavy*, called of old *Ticinum*; it riſeth in the *Alps*, and emptieth it ſelf into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Liris* now called *Gariglia*, ſtained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*, and no leſs unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medices*. 6. *Cuique fuit rerum Promiſſa Potentia*, Tibris.

> *And* Tiber, *unto which was given*
> *The Power of all things under Heaven.*

It riſeth from the *Apennine* Hills, not far from *Aretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuſcany*, (which it parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently near *Cita de Caſtello*, *Perugia*, and the old *Ocriculum*, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tuſcan* or lower Sea, at *Oſtia*. Here is alſo, 7. The Lake of *Thraſymene*, near which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Conſul and his whole Army, opening thereby his paſſage to the Gates of *Rome*; and 8. The famous River of *Metaurus*, *Metramo*, *Metro*, where the *Romans* overcame *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of leſs note ſhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, thoſe of moſt note are the *Alps*, and the *Apennine*, of which the reſidue in a manner are but ſpurs and branches. Of theſe the *Alps* being alſo appertaining to *France* and *Germany*, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deſerve a Tractate by it ſelf. The *Apennine*, being proper only to this Country, but ſo that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, ſhall be ſpoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of *Genoa*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compaſs Northwards, extend to the furtheſt part of *Italy*, dividing it almoſt in the very midſt: That part thereof which lieth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea, being called *Ciſapennina*; *Tranſapennina*, that which lies towards the *Adriatick*. Paſſing in one entire body as far as *Aſcoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the higheſt; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the mount of *Gargano*, and ſo unto the Land of *Otranto*; the other ſpreadeth it ſelf as far as *Calabria*, thoſe being the moſt Eaſtern Provinces of this noble Continent. In all this long Courſe of 700 Miles, there is but one River *Offanto* (*Afidus*) that croſſeth it near the City of *Conza* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, called the *Apennine* as ſome ſay, *a Penna*, by which word the *Latins* uſed to ſignifie the top or ſummit of an Hill, by reaſon of the height and ſharp points thereof; as others ſay, *quaſi Alpes Pœninæ*, becauſe firſt overcame by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, who the *Roman* Writers did call by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof by *Virgil* named *Apenninicolæ*. But otherwiſe reducible to ſome of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain moſt of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eaſtwards, are but the excurſions; which being of leſs note, ſhall be ſpoken of as they lie before us in the way.

To proceed now to ſo much of the Hiſtory of *Italy* as concerns the general; we are to know that the firſt Inhabitants of it (not to ſay any thing of the fictions of Frier *Annius* under the name of *Beroſus*, who will needs have *Noah* himſelf come hither ſhortly after the Flood) were doubtleſs of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth Son of *Javan*, one of the Sons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was ſince called *Macedon*, and after ſpreading themſelves further as their numbers increaſed, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countries adjoining to it: From whence, deſirous of a warmer and more fertile ſoil, they came in tract of time to the

Coaſts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country ſince called *Italy*. That they did ſpring originally from the ſeed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the *Greek* pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Euſebius*, Κίτιοι ἐξ οὗ Λατῖνοι ϗ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι, that is to ſay, from the *Kitians*, or Children of *Kittim*, deſcended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The ſame occurrs alſo in the *Chornicon* of *Alexandria*. So alſo ſaith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (ſaith he) the Son of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his Son *Latinus*, ὃς τοὺς Κηταίους ἐκωνόμασε Λατίνους, from whom the *Ketians* were named *Latins*. The ſame in other words ſaith *Suidas*. Nor want there ſome remainders of this Name in approved Writers, beſides theſe Authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cumæ*, whereof *Ariſtotle* ſpeaketh in his Book *de Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætolians*, beſides the other Arguments which *Reinnecceus* uſeth in this point, the nearneſs, or identity rather of the Names doth ſeem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek*, *Aitolia*, and the Letter O being changed into *A* according to the *Æolick* Dialect, which was that uſed by the *Ætolians*; the alteration of the Name from *Aitolia* and *Aitolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very eaſie, if not natural; the rather in regard there is an Iſland near *Italy* in the *Tuſcan* Sea, peopled originally by theſe very *Ætolians*, which in ancient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by ſuch an eaſie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its firſt plantation from the *Ætolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus*, the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* ſpeaks, be no other than *Aitolus*, ſome Man of principal mark and eminency amongſt that People, who had the Conduct of this Colony, when they came for *Italy*. And this I ſhould believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the Name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable that *Sicily* ſhould borrow its firſt Planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* ſhould borrow either Name or People from ſo ſmall a Kingdom; eſpecially conſidering that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in thoſe parts of *Greece*, ever ſince *Aitolus*, the Son of a King of *Elis*, was Founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdom. The way thus ſhewn, and the paſſages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelaſgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it: After whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their ſeveral Followers, came and ſettled there. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe ſeveral Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponneſus*, and the Parts of *Achaia*, planted themſelves ſo thick in the Eaſt of *Italy*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Græcia*. So that the *Grecians* made the main groſs or body of the *Italy* People: To which the coming of ſome *Tuſcans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia* in *Aſia Minor*, ſerved but as an *Acceſſary*, and altered nothing of the Principal. The laſt that ſettled here, were ſome of the Relicts of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*; who flying from their Native Country, and enraged Enemies, were firſt caſt upon the Coaſts of *Africk*; where having ſtaid a while to refreſh his Companies (we ſhall hereafter take an occaſion to conſider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he ſet Sail for *Italy*, being the place aſſigned him by the Gods for his Seat and Empire, whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucidides* alloweth to the Veſſels then uſed, to the number of 1200 Men. And there he landed, as it proved, in an happy Hour: For he was no ſooner arrived, but he was lovingly cheriſhed and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*; whoſe chief City or Seat-Royal was then called *Laurentum*; who much eſteeming of this Stranger, as a Man whoſe Fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither manifeſt his love ſufficiently, nor bind him faſt enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only Daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutuli*, a former Suitor, which being ended in the death of the *Rutulian* Rival, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a ſure poſſeſſion. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentini*, into a more conſtant bond of Friendſhip, by many Inter-marriages and Mutual-kindneſſes, they built the Town of *Lavinium*, called ſo in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat-Royal of the Princes of the *Trojan* Line. But long it did not hold that ſtate: For *Aſcanius* the Son of *Æneas* by his former Wife, to avoid all occaſions of Contention with his Mother-in-Law, left her (*Æneas* being dead) in poſſeſſion of *Lavinium*, and built *Longa Alba*; which being ſurrendred by *Julus* the Son of *Aſcanius* to his Half-Brother *Sylvius*, became the conſtant Habitation of the *Sylvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and final ending of the Race of the *Latin* Kings. The Names of whom (for there occurs little of their Actions) we are next to ſhew; taking along with us thoſe few Kings which reigned in thoſe parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Æneas*.

A. M.		The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.
2637	1	*Janus*, the firſt King of the *Aborigenes*, who lived in the ſame time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*; He received *Saturn* flying out of *Crete* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his Death. He is ſaid to be the Founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janiculus*, on which it was ſuppoſed that he had his Dwelling.
	2	*Saturn*, who taught the People the uſe of dunging of their Lands, and for that cauſe was honoured by them as a God, under the Name of *Stercutius*, as St. *Auſtine* hath it. He reigned firſt together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himſelf alone: The whole time of both their Reigns was 33 Years.
2670	3	*Picus*, well skilled in divination by the flight and chattering of *Birds*, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Pye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon, 37.
2707	4	*Faunus*, the Son of *Picus*, and the Husband of *Fatua*, in whoſe time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquiſhed the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*, 44.
2751	5	*Latinus*, the Son of *Faunus*, who entertained *Æneas* coming from the Wars and deſtruction of *Troy*, and gave him his Daughter *Lavinia* to Wife, with his Kingdom after him in Dower, 36.
2787	6	*Lavinia*, Daughter to *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins*, married to *Æneas*, whom ſhe outlived, he being ſlain in his Wars againſt *Mezentius*, the King of *Tuſcany*; the Son or Succeſſor of that *Mezentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Æneas* had before ſlain in his War with *Turnus* and the *Latins*, 7.

Kings of the *Latins* of the *Trojan* or *Sylvian* Race.

2787	1	*Æneas* the Son of *Anchiſes*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, ſlain in his Wars againſt *Mezentius*, King of the *Tuſcans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is ſaid, 3.
2790	2	*Aſcanius*, the Son of *Æneas* by *Creuſa* his former Wife: for fear of whom, *Lavinia* being great with Child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a Son called *Sylvius*. He removed the Seat Royal from *Lavinium* to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building, 38.
2828	3	*Sylvius Poſthumius*, the Son of *Æneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred to the Kingdom by the love of the People, before *Julus*, the Son of *Aſcanius*, (the

(the Founder of the *Julian* Family) from whom all the Kings of this Race had the Name of *Sylvii*, *Julus* being honoured with the chief Prieſthood (an Office next in dignity to that of the King) which he tranſlated afterwards unto his Poſterity, 29.

A. M.

2857 4 *Æneas Sylvius*, 31.

2888 5 *Latinus Sylvius*, 50.

2938 6 *Alba Sylvius*, ſo called becauſe of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in ſome decay: or probably, becauſe there he had his Birth, 39.

2977 7 *Capetus Sylvius*, 24.

3001 8 *Capys Sylvius*, ſaid to be the Founder of the City of *Capua*; which ſhews that he extended his Dominion farther than the Province of *Latium*, 28.

3029 9 *Capetus Sylvius*, 13.

3024 10 *Tyberinus Sylvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*, 8.

3050 11 *Agrippa Sylvius*, 40.

3090 12 *Alladius Sylvius*, who to make himſelf the more terrible to his Subjects, ſtudied a way to imitate the Thunder; but was killed at laſt by a real Thunder-clap from Heaven, 19.

3109 13 *Aventinus Sylvius*, who gave the name to the Hill *Aventine*, 37.

3146 14 *Procras Sylvius*, 23.

3169 15 *Amulius Sylvius*, the younger Son of *Procas*, ſetting aſide his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdom for himſelf, ſlain at laſt by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* ſettled in the Throne, 42.

3211 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the laſt King of the *Latins*, reſtored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the ſhort Reign of one Year only, deprived by him both of Life and Kingdom. After whoſe death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themſelves as a Free-Eſtate, till ſubdued to *Rome*, 1.

Concerning this it is to be underſtood, that *Amulius* having chaſed his Eldeſt Brother *Numitor* out of the Country, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne, cauſed his Brothers Daughter *Rhea* (for preventing an Iſſue by her) to be ſhut up in the Temple of *Veſta*. Where ſhe proving the Mother of two Sons, was according to the Law buried quick, and her Children by the cruel Tyrant caſt out to be devoured of Wild Beaſts. They were found by *Fauſtulus* the Kings Shepherd, Nurſt by his Wife, for her infamous Life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were ſuckled by a Wolf) and being grown to Mens eſtate, ſlew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grand-father *Numitor* in the Royal-Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of Life and Kingdom. Of theſe the eldeſt was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the ſhort poſſeſſion of their Grand-father *Numitor*, laid the Foundation of the moſt Famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* firſt hanſelled with the Blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had diſdainfully leapt over the Walls of his new City. This City he made an *Aſylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what deſperate eſtate ſoever, and having ranked them into order, made himſelf their King. A People of ſo baſe a Nature, that their Neighbours refuſed to give them any of their Daughters in Marriage: So they were deſtitute of Wifes, and conſequently not like to continue a People long; till on a Proclamation made of ſome Plays and Paſtimes, many of the *Sabine* Women flocked thither to behold the Sports, whom the *Romans* ſeized on, and forced an unwilling conſent from them, to become their Wives. From ſuch a baſe and low beginning did this City riſe to be the Empreſs of the World.

A. M. The Kings of *Rome*.

3213 1. *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*; he made peace with *Tatius*, King of the *Sabines*, coming againſt him to revenge the raviſhment of their Women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory, 37.

3251 2 *Numa*, the firſt Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies, 43.

3294 3 *Tullus Hoſtilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the Conqueſt of *Alba*, the Mother City of the *Latins*, and vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*, 32.

3326 4 *Ancus Martius*, who built *Oſtia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City, 24.

3350 5 *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who ſubdued many of the *Tuſcan* Nations, encreaſed the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the *Triumphal* Ornaments, 38.

3388 6 *Servius Tullus*, who firſt cauſed the People to be *inrolled*, and brought into *cenſe*, 44.

3432 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, Son to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquiſhed the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Ocriculum*, and *Sueſſa Pometia*: but for his own inſolent Behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatin*, by his Son *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, *Anno Mund.* 3457. *U. C.* 244. when he had reigned 25. Years.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, cauſed two Officers to be choſen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Conſuls*, *à Conſulendo*, from Counſelling of, and conſulting the good of the Common-wealth, *Ut conſulere ſe ſuis civibus meminerint*, ſaith the Hiſtorian, (That they might remember, conſult, or take care of the welfare of the People) their Name being a *Memento* of their Charge or Duty. And in this Office they reſolved to have always two, and thoſe but only for a Year, *Ne vel ſolitudine vel mora poteſtas corrumperetur*: That neither the Intireneſs or Continuance of this high Office might corrupt it. And though ſome had the fortune to be *Conſuls* two or three Years together, yet every new Year they were anew choſen, and ſo their Offices reckoned as ſeveral; neither do we find any to have been elected for leſs than a Year, unleſs upon the Death or Depoſition of a former, until the Civil Wars. But then, *Cum belli civilis præmia feſtinari cœperunt*, when the Services done in the Civil Wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Conſulſhip* was given only for ſome part of the Year, and ordinarily for two Months: The firſt *Conſuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whoſe Names the Writings for the whole Year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only ſerved to make up a number. For ſo ambitious were the *Romans* of this Honour, that when *Maximus* died in the laſt Day of his Conſulſhip, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæſar* for that part of the Day that remained: whence that ſo memorated Jeſt of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Conſulem, qui toto conſulatus ſui tempore ſomnum oculis non vidit!* O vigilant Conſul! who during the whole time of his Office never ſlept. And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this Honour on the Day in which he was to have reſigned it, one *Roſcius Regulus* obtained the Office from *Vitellius* for the Day remaining: But as the Hiſtorian noteth, *Magno cum irriſu accipientis, tribuentiſque*: To the great content of him that gave, and of him that took it. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the firſt number of *Conſuls*, ſo ſometimes fell they ſhort of it. The firſt that was ſole *Conſul* was *Pompey* in the beginning of the Civil Wars, *viz.* *A. U. C.* 403. The next, one *Varanes*, *U. C.* 410. This Office, from the firſt Inſtitution, to the final period of it, continued at the leaſt in name (for the Emperors had of long time aſſumed the Power and Prerogative appertaining to it) the ſpace of 1084 years, though not without many intermiſſions of the Name and Title, by the ſeveral interpoſings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Conſular Tribunes*; of which more anon. The laſt *Conſul* was one *Baſilius*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, *A. C.* 542. The two firſt were *Collatinus* the Huſband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whoſe Inſtigation the People had took Arms againſt the Houſe of the *Tarquins*. A Man ſo zealous in defence of the common Liberty, ſo reſolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and ſo extreamly oppoſite to the Royal Race, that he not only cauſed *Collatine* to reſign his Office within the year, becauſe he was of the Blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own Sons for holding *Correſpondence* and *Intelligence* with them. But though the Government were changed, the old Deſign was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with ſo ſlow a pace, by reaſon of their Factions and Diviſions, that it was full 500 years before they could be Maſters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our conſideration, that the *Italians* ſhould hold out ſo long a time againſt the puiſſance of the *Romans*; when in leſs than half that time enſuing, they did poſſeſs themſelves of almoſt all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Aſia* and *Africk*. So difficult a thing it was (as is ſaid by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiæ*, to contract the many Limbs of Italy into one Body, and unite them under one Head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their neareſt Neighbours; whoſe Overthrow in the end of the firſt *Punick* War, *A. U. C.* 512. gave them the full poſſeſſion of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracuſa*) and the Iſle of *Sardinia*. After that being moleſted in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pyrates; and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War againſt her, and brought that puiſſant People to become their Tributaries, *A. U. C.* 525. The ſecond *Carthaginian* War, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almoſt put a period to the glories of their Common-wealth. But that being alſo ended to their advantage by the conqueſt of *Spain*, they quarrelled with *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace (*A. U. C.* 555) on their own terms, and after outed his Son *Perſeus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the reſt of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a Quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his poſſeſſion of the *Leſſer Aſia*, *A. U. C.* 562. and finally prevailed ſo ſucceſsfully in all their Actions, that there was neither King nor Common-wealth that could ſtand in their way, until the State being burthened with its too much Greatneſs, began to totter of it ſelf.

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their Power and Greatneſs, beſides the Providence of *God* which had ſo diſpoſed it: which were the great Encouragements which they gave their Soldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they uſed to beſtow upon their *Generals* when they returned home with Honour and Victory. For when any of their *Generals* did ſo return, he was permitted to enter ſitting on a glorious Chariot, the Spoils which he had got in War being carried before, the Priſoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Soldiers compaſſing him about with their ſeveral Crowns according to the quality of their well-deſervings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Prieſts and principal Ladies going out to meet him. The firſt beginning of which Cuſtom is acribed to *Romulus*, who in the War with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made againſt him in revenge of the Rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* Women, ſeeing his People give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Acron* being vanquiſhed, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair young Oak, and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquiſhed King: then girding his Gown cloſe unto him, and putting on his Head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his ſhoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and ſinging an *Epinicion*, or Song of Victory. To this we muſt refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But, *Nihil eſt inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the ſaying is. *Tarquinius Priſcus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the Triumphant Chariot drawn with four Horſes. The other Pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in Power and Pride. Now of theſe *Triumphs* there were two ſorts; the greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the leſſer, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumſtances. For 1. The *Triumpher* made his Entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met only by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumpher* had a Laurel Crown, and entred with a noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Firr, with Flutes and Hautboys playing before him. 3. The *Triumpher* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Veſtis Trabeata*, but the *Ovator* in a plain purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph*, the Soldiers cried out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation*, they ingeminated only O, O, O, from the often doubling of which Word, it had (as ſome think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And laſtly, the *Triumpher* uſed to ſacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only, from whence the Name is properly to be derived.

Now there was three Caſes in which the Conqueror was to be content with this leſſer Triumph. 1. If the number of Enemies whom they ſlew in Battle exceeded not 5000 Men; or that he had not ſo much overcome them by force, as by perſwaſion or ſubtilty. 2. If the War had been ſlight, curſory, or not lawfully managed. And 3. If it were againſt an Ignoble Enemy. And of this laſt we have a fair Inſtance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the Victory in the *Servile* War, (a Victory of great Importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*, *ne Triumphi dignitatem* Servili *inſcriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the geater *Triumphs*, they were indeed very full of Magnificence; the Pomp whereof, who liſt to ſee, may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Æmilius* deſcribed by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been ſaid, we may conjecture ſomewhat at the Glories of it.

And yet this Honour was not always vouchſafed to thoſe who had beſt deſerved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatneſs of the Men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the ſtrength of a contrary Faction; and ſo *Pompey* denied *Metellus* the honour of a Triumph for the Conqueſt of *Crete*. 2. Sometimes the Conqueror himſelf is willing to decline it for fear of Envy: And ſo *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his Conqueſt of *Sicily*, having *Triumphed* twice before, refuſed that Honour; his Reaſon was ϗ φθόνον ἄ χεν ὁ τρίτος θρίαμβος, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Soldiers, having been ill paid, or otherwiſe not well treated by their Commanders, oppoſed them in their ſuit for it: and this was the caſe of *Paulus Æmilius*, who queſtionleſs had miſſed this Honour for not dividing amongſt them the Spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promiſed, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own caſe, had not ſtickled hard for him with the Soldiers. 4. It was ſometimes denied, becauſe the General had born no publick Office in the Common-wealth: for ſo in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconſul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers anſwered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that Honour, but that they had no Precedent for it, *ut qui neque* Conſul, *neque* Dictator, *neque* Prætor *Res geſſiſſet*, Triumpharet. 5. Sometimes the *Generals* themſelves omitted it for the furtherance of ſome of their other purpoſes: And ſo *Cæſar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the ſame time the *Conſuls* were to be choſen, laid aſide his demand of the *Triumph* to ſue for the Conſulſhip; it being the cuſtom that ſuch as demanded the *Triumph* ſhould abide without the City, and ſuch as ſued for the Conſulſhip muſt of neceſſity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the *Senate*: in which reſpect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Manlius* on the Conqueſt of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of the Empire, *quia cauſam Belli* Senatus *non approbavit*, becauſe he had no Commiſſion from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, becauſe in all ſuch Wars whoſoever was Conqueror, the Common-wealth was a loſer by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquiſhed *Sertorius* and his Party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Foreign*, not a *Civil* War, becauſe they would not loſe their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam* Civile *videri voluerunt, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loſs on the *Romans* ſide; in which regard, *Valerius*, after his Conqueſt of the *Gauls*, was denied this Honour, *Quia magis dolor civibus amiſſis, quam gaudium fuſis hoſtibus prævaluit*, ſaith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And laſtly, The *Triumph* was denied a *General*, if the Service had not been performed in his own Province: And ſo we find that when *Livius* and *Nero*, being Conſuls, had vanquiſhed *Aſdrubal*, *Livius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the Man that had won the Day, becauſe the Field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Acceſſary*, or Aſſiſtant to him.

And theſe are all, or at the leaſt the principal cauſes of hindering or omitting this great Honour, indeed the greateſt that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the *Common-wealth* was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aſide for altogether, as too great for Subjects; and was firſt purpoſely neglected by *Veſpanius Agrippa*, the Eſtabliſher of *Auguſtus* in the *Roman* Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Aſia*, and his quiet ſettling of that Country; to give Poſterity an example, refuſed to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occaſioned that this Cuſtom was in ſhort time quite laid aſide; and that no Man under the degree of an *Emperor* triumphed ſolemnly; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, μόναις δὲ ἐπινικίαις τιμαῖς, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Beliſarius* having ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is ſaid (600 Years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet in propriety of Speech, it was nothing but an honourable preſenting of himſelf and his Priſoners before the Emperor, and was ſo far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the Solemnities uſed in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themſelves much affect this Honour, either becauſe too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majeſty*; the laſt (as I remember) that made uſe thereof to ſet forth his Glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his Victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemyæ*, a People of *Africk*, in or about the Year 284 of our Saviour's Birth.

In the next place look we on the Incouragements and Rewards of the Common-Soldiers: For, beſides the ſetting out of Lands and Dwellings for the poorer ſort, in which they might reſt themſelves when they were paſt Service; and beſides the large *Donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did beſtow upon them, they had their *Mural Crown* for him that firſt ſcaled the Walls, a *Naval Crown* for him that firſt boarded the Enemies Ships, a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Caſtrenſis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preſerved the Life of a *Roman* Citizen. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe Chains and Bracelets which Soldiers of inferiour Merit were adorned withal: By which Encouragements and the good Conduct of their Counſels in the Senate, the *Roman* Affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, and their Dominions were enlarged ſo immenſly, that never any Commonwealth had ſo large a growth.

And yet the greatneſs of this State is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the *Conſular* Government. For though the Walls of this great Building were raiſed by the *Conſuls*, yet the Foundation of the ſame was laid by the Kings, and the Roof thereof laid on by the Emperors. Nay, be it ſpoken to the Honour of *Monarchical* Government, whenſoever any great and imminent Danger did ſeem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aſide their confidence in the rule of their *Conſuls*, and betake themſelves to the Command of one Soveraign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the Changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this ſhort Abſtract from *Corn. Tacitus*. “*Urbam* Romam *à principio Reges habuere, &c.* “The City of *Rome* was in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and the Conſulſhip *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were choſe but for a time. The *Decemviri* paſſed not two Years, neither had the *Conſular* Authority of the *Tribunes* of the *Soldiers* any long continuance, or *Cinna*'s or *Sylla*'s Dominion. *Pompey* and *Craſſus* quickly yielded to *Cæſar*'s Forces; *Lepidus* and *Anthony* to *Auguſtus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of theſe publick Changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were inſtituted only on a particular occaſion for the reforming of the Laws by thoſe of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Conſular Authority* ordained to divert Common People from ſeeking after the *Conſulſhip*; I ſhall here ſay nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supream Power, and ſuch as made way for the Emperors in the cloſe of all; I ſhall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à dictando*, becauſe they preſcribed what they pleaſed unto the People; which they were bound to execute and not diſpute. Hence that memorable Jeſt of *Julius Cæſar*, who being told that *Sylla* had reſigned his *Dictatorſhip*, though by the Decree of *Senate* made *perpetual* to him; return'd this Anſwer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned Man, *dictare neſciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were alſo called *Populi Magiſtri*, or the Peoples Maſters, becauſe from them lay no Appeal unto the People (as did from all the reſt of the *Roman* Magiſtrates) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for ſix Months; yet ſo, that if they did in the mean time ſettle the Affairs of the Commonwealth, they reſigned it ſooner; if the neceſſities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were choſen again. The Names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here ſubjoined together with the Services they did the Publick, in the time of their Office.

The Dictators of Rome.

A. U. C.		
253 *aliis* 253 & 256	1	*Titus Largius*, choſen upon occaſion of a general War made by the *Latins* upon *Rome*; the firſt that ever had this Office.
257	2	*Aulus Poſthumius*, choſen to purſue that War, which he ended with the ſlaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.
295	3	L. *Quintius Cincinnatus*, choſen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the *Volſci*; choſen again *An. U. C.* 314. to ſuppreſs the Sedition raiſed by *Sp. Melius*.
328	4	*Æmilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven Years called unto this Office.
338	5.	*Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquiſh'd the *Fidenates* and the *Lavicani*, choſen firſt in 320.

A.U.C.		
354 *aliis* 359	6	*Furius Camillus*, who finally deſtroyed the City of the *Viti*, and being choſen a ſecond time, *A.U.C.* 362. 366. preſerved his Country from the *Galls*: thrice choſen after this upon new occaſions.
375	7	*Tit. Quintius Cincinnatus*, choſen in the War againſt the *Latins*: He took *Præneſte* and eight other Cities in twenty Days.
385	8	*L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous Peſtilence, to find a way for the appeaſing of the gods.
396	9	*C. Sulpitius*, againſt the *Gauls*, whom he beat.
418 415 *aliis*	10	*Martius Rutilius*, the firſt *Dictator* choſen out of the *Commons*.
421	11	*L. Papyrius*, ſubdued the *Samnites*, *A.* 444.
429	12	*Coſſus*; by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquiſhed.
437	13	*Æmilius*, who alſo overcame the *Samnites*.
442	14	*Sulpitius Longus* made *Dictator*.
	15	*Lentulus* who triumphed alſo over the *Samnites*.
451	16	*I. Bubulcus*, who finally ſubdued the *Æqui* and the *Volſci*.
452	17	*M. Valerius* Dictator, overcame the *Tuſcians* and *Marſians*.
	18	*Corn. Rufinus*.
466	19	*App. Claudius Cæcus* was choſen.
467	20	*Q. Hortenſius*, choſen for appeaſing a difference betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified himſelf in *Janiculum*, one of the Hills whereon *Rome* ſtood.
505	21	*Cl. Glizias*, forced to reſign his Office to
	22	*Atilius Colatinus*, the firſt that exerciſed his Office out of *Italy*: he was choſen in the firſt *Punick* War.
536	23	*Fabius Maximus*, choſen in the War againſt *Annibal*.
537	24	*M Junius*, choſen upon the great defeat which the *Roman* Forces had at the Battel of *Cannæ*.
545	25	*L. Manlius Torquatus*, choſen upon the death of *Marcellus* Conſul, ſlain by *Annibal*.
672	26	*L. Sylla*, (deſcended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this Office) having by force of Arms ſuppreſſed the Faction of *Marius* and *Cinna*, made himſelf Maſter of the City, and cauſed himſelf to be choſen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the Office had been intermitted for the ſpace of 127 Years: which Office having exerciſed with a great deal of Cruelty, he reſigned with as great a Confidence.
707 *aliis* 704	27	*C. Julius Cæſar* deſcended from *Julus* the Son of *Aſcanius*, who was the ſecond King of the *Trojan* Race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaul Tranſalpine* to the *Roman* Empire; and finding himſelf unworthily requited by the Faction of *Pompey*, paſſed with his Army after him into *Greece*: and having vanquiſhed him in the Fields of *Pharſalia*, and made himſelf abſolutely Maſter of the *Roman* Empire; took to himſelf the ſupreme Government thereof, under the Title of *Dictator*; which having managed for the ſpace of five Years, he was murthered in the Senate-houſe by *Brutus* and *Caſſius*.

Before the time of theſe perpetual *Dictators*, the *Romans* having ſome Enemies or other that oppoſed the progreſs of their Fortunes, had not the leiſure to contend with one another in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and ſeditions were ſoon compoſed. But being grown ſo great as to fear no Enemy; and the Eſtate ſo vaſt, that it was grown too mighty for a *popular* Government; then they began to practiſe on the Peoples Patience, and to project the ſharing of the Empire amongſt the Great Ones. Concerning which, take here this ſhort *Epitome*, which I find in *Tacitus*. " *Rebus modicis æqualitas facile habebatur, &c.* While (ſaith he) " our Dominions were but ſmall, Equality was eaſily " maintained among us. But after we had ſubdued " the World, and deſtroyed all Kings and Cities that " ſtood in our way, or might work our annoyance; " when we had leiſure to ſeek after Wealth without " peril, there aroſe hot Contentions betwixt the *Nobility* and *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* carried it away, ſometimes the *Conſuls* had the better: " and in the City and common *Forum*, (Market-place) " ſome little Skirmiſhes (the beginning of our Civil " Wars) were ſometimes ſeen. Afterwards, *C. Marius* " one of the meaneſt of the Commonalty, and *L. Sylla* " the moſt cruel of all the Nobility, by force of Arms " overthrowing the *Free-State*, reduced all to an abſolute Government. To them ſucceeded *Cn. Pompeius*, " a little cloſer in his Projects, but nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: *Et nunquam poſtea niſi de* " *Principatu quæſitum*; and never after that was any " other point debated, than who ſhould get the Sovereignty unto himſelf. So *Tacitus*: and he ſtateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the Controverſie, and had found *Cæſar* a better Diſputant than himſelf; *Auguſtus*, *Antonius*, and *Lepidus* (on the Death of *Cæſar*) made good the Argument, attracting all Power unto themſelves by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Auguſtus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquiſhed *M. Antony* at the Battel of *Actium*, became ſole Sovereign of the State, by the name of Prince; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus feſſa, nomine Principis ſub imperium accepit*: And when all were weary of the Civil Wars, under the name of Prince, he ſubject all to his Sovereignty, as that Author hath it.

But touching thoſe great Alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief Command, and the reduction of it into a *Monarchy* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, I publiſhed a Diſcourſe in the Year 1631. (but written many Years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or, *An* Eſſay *of thoſe Means and Counſels* whereby the *Commonwealth of* Rome *was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but ſhort, ſo pertinent to the preſent buſineſs, and ſo well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to ſubjoin it here. The Reader may either peruſe it, or pretermit it, as his fancy guides him. And here it followeth in theſe words.

THey which have heretofore written of *Commonwealths*, have divided them into three Species: *Firſt*, The Government of the King: *Secondly*, Of the Nobles: And *Thirdly*, of the People. Either of theſe is again ſubdivided into *good* and *evil*: The *evil* being only the *good* corrupted; the *good* nothing elſe but the *bad* refined. So is the Government of a *King* divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyranny*: Of the Nobles, into *Ariſtocracy* and *Obligarchy*: Of the *People*, into a *Republick*, and *Democracy*. All theſe, as well in general, as in the ſeveral Couplets, have a ſecret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* tranſmigration (as it were) into each others Being. I need not ſtand on many Inſtances. The Common-wealth of *Rome* (" into whoſe Stories whoſoever looks, will " judge them rather to contain the acts of the whole " World, than a particular Nation) will ſerve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reſerved unto himſelf the chief Sovereignty, leaving it entire to his Succeſſors. *Numa*, *Ancus*, *Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themſelves ſo moderately, and the People ſo juſtly, that they affected not *Tyranny*, nor the Commons *Liberty*. They appeared more deſirous to fill the *Coffers* of their Subjects than their own *Treaſuries*: And when neceſſity compelled them to a Tax, they rather ſeemed to ſheer their Sheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the Second, commonly called *Superbus*, a Man of inſupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himſelf in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious Spirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightful Inheritance, made his Government anſwerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many Men, eminent as well by their own Vertue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cauſe promote, to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the Senate was free from ſlaughter? What corner of the City from Lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miſerable *Romans* were viſited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Luſt* exorbitant in their Son *Sextus*, a true *Copy* of the old *Originals*. Either of theſe had been more than enough to exerciſe the People's Patience. But meeting all at one time, it ſeemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedneſs of the one, and the wickedneſs of the other. *Brutus* (a Name fatal to Tyrants) did eaſily perſwade the *Commons* to ſhake off this Yoke: For they, as well deſirous of *Novelties*, as ſenſible of *Oppreſſions*, had long ſince murmured at the preſent State, and wanted nothing but a Head to break out into actual Rebellion. So the *People* got the *Freedom*, and the *Kings* loſt the *Sovereignty* of the City.

2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair Title to the Crown, yet either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the firſt *Conſul* than the laſt *Prince*, inſtituted a new form of Government: Wherein the ſway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom two were annually choſen as chief of the reſt. And herein certainly he dealt very adviſedly: For had he ſought to confirm himſelf in the *Kingdom*, what could Men judge, but that not love to his Country was the cauſe that ſtirred him to take Arms, but deſire of Rule? Again, beſides that, ſecure *Privacy* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; What hope had he to keep the Seat long, having by his own example taught the People both the *Theory* and *Practice* of *Rebellion*? Under this new *Ariſtocracy* the *Roman* Affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, their Dominions were inlarged ſo immenſly, that it may well be queſtioned whether the *Roman* Fortune cauſed their Greatneſs, or their Valour commanded their Fortune. For the Governours not ſeeking Wealth but Honour, or not their own Wealth, but the Publick, did ſo demean themſelves both in Peace and War, that there was between all a vertuous emulation who ſhould moſt benefit his Country. An happineſs which was too great to continue long. The People had as yet no written Laws: *Cuſtom* bearing moſt ſway, the reſt of the Law locked up in the Breaſt of the *Judges*. To avoid ſuch Inconveniencies as might hence enſue, there were ſome Men, conceived to be as ſound in Judgment, as honeſt in their Actions, deputed by a general Commiſſion, to take an abſtract of the *Grecian* Laws: according to the tenour whereof the People were to frame their Lives, the *Judges* their Sentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy* or *Decemvirate*, *State* of *Rome*, but long it laſted not. For theſe new *Lords* joining Forces together, made themſelves rich with the Spoil of the People, not caring by what unlawful means they could purchaſe either Profit or Pleaſure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He, unmindful of *Lucretia* and the *Tarquins*, luſted after *Virginia*, a Woman though of low condition, yet ſuch a Woman in whom Beauty and Vertue ſtrove for the preheminence. The Iſſue was, that ſhe (to ſave her Honour) was ſlain by her own Father in an open Aſſembly of the People; *Appius* forced to make away himſelf in Priſon; and the reſt of that *Magiſtracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Conſuls* were for a time reſtored.

3. The *People* fleſh'd with this Victory, and calling to mind how their Anceſtors had in like manner baniſhed the *Kings*, began to know their own ſtrength, and ſtomached it exceedingly, that they on whoſe Shoulders the frame of the State was ſupported, ſhould be ſo much under the command of others; that they who were *Lords* abroad, ſhould be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raiſe a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune*, *Canuleius*. Nor could they by any perſwaſions be induced to lay down Arms till they had obtained a Decree, That from thenceforth the *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiſcuouſly be married. And this was the firſt ſtep to the *Republick*. The gaining this new *Priviledge*, put them in poſſibility of obtaining greater. They now ſue to be capable of the *Conſulſhip*. The *Fathers* conſulting of this demand, wiſely foreſaw, that to grant their Petition, or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly daſhed, it was to be feared the People would again forſake the City; and yet make their ſtay more inſolent and inſupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both Parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly propoſed a middle courſe, whereby the fury of the Multitude might be appeaſed, without blemiſh to the *Conſular* Dignity. He conſtituted ſix Annual Officers, equally choſen out of the *People* and the *Nobles*, calling them *Tribuni Militum Conſularis Poteſtatis*. This Office continued, but not without many *Interſtitiums*, the ſpace of 78 Years. Which time expired, and ſome experience being had of the Peoples Government, the *Lords* of the Senate did decree, That one of the *Conſuls* ſhould from thenceforth be choſen by, and out of the Commons; that they ſhould be capable of all *Magiſtracies*, yea, even of the *Dictatorſhip*. So that now *Vertue* was as ſpeedy a Ladder to climb unto *Honours*, as *Nobility of Birth*; and a *Good* Man as much reſpected as a *Great*. A rare felicity of the times.

4. The *People* being thus mixt with the *Nobles*, as well in Marriages as Honours; one would have thought that this *Common-wealth*, being thus equally poiſed, had been immortal. But as in the *Natural* Body there can be no exact and *Arithmetical* proportion of the Humours and Elements, without ſome *Predominancy*; ſo in the *Body Politick* can there be no equal mixture of the *Plebeians* and *Patricians*, without the ſupremacy of the one or the other. The *People* had, preſently after the inſtitution of the *Conſuls*, raiſed a Commotion, and withdrew themſelves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the City, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*, or Protectors of the Commons. Theſe being not long after by the Common Council pronounced to be *Sacroſancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular State* too high, and thruſt the *Ariſtocratical* too low; not regarding to loſe the love of the one, ſo they might get the applauſe of the other. Inſomuch, that matters of Judgment were devolved from the *Fathers* to the *Commons*; and the authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the *People*. Nay, they proceeded ſo far, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatned to ſend *Cotta* the *Conſul* unto Priſon. And *Sulpitius* in the ſame *Office* made the *Conſuls* forſake the *Senate-houſe*, and ſlew one of their Sons, whoſe Heels were not nimble enough to fly away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of *Rule*, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable neceſſity in *Nature*, as the ordinary courſe of *Policies*, there muſt be a reverting to the firſt, and *Monarchical* Authority. For queſtionleſs it fareth many times with a *Common-wealth* as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the ſigns of the *Zadiack*, till it return to the place where its motion firſt began. And the *Platonick* Year of reducing of all things to the ſame beginning, continuance, and period, how falſe ſoever in the Books of *Nature*, is in ſome ſort true in the change of Government.

5. The way down Hill is eaſie and ordinary, but to aſcend unto the top requireth both Wit to frame the

Steps, and courage to give the Attempt. So was it here alſo with the *Romans*: They had naturally, and almoſt inſenſibly faln from a *Monarchy* to a *Populacy* or *Democracy*: But to aſcend from a *Populacy* to a *Monarchy*, required many ſteps and degrees in many, much induſtry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well ſkilled in feeding the Humours of the *People*, were the firſt that attempted, and ſeverally mounted to ſuch a height of Command, as never durſt any promiſe to them, nor they hope for themſelves. *Marius* was of a harſh and ſtern Nature, equally cruel to the *Enemies* in War, and the *People* in Peace; one whoſe Birth the *Romans* might have had juſt cauſe to curſe, had he not ſaved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whoſe Carriage none could enough commend before, or ſufficiently condemn after his Proſperity. A Man whoſe *Peace* was far more bloody than his *Wars*; a better *Subject* than a *Prince*.

Theſe two gave way to each other, and both to Death. Next theſe, as well in Factions and Deſigns, as Blood and Alliance, ſucceeded *Cæſar* and *Pompey*: Two Men never truly parallel'd ſince their own times. *Cæſar* had a Wit to invent ſo pregnant, a Heart to execute ſo ſtout, and to both a Fortune ſo favourable, that he durſt undertake what no Man dared; and his Performances commonly were anſwerable to his Undertakings. *Pompey*, a Man greater than his own or his Friends wiſhes, had triumphed over all the Parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an *Equal*, he had never met *Superior*. Had theſe two lived in divers Ages, or exerciſed their Valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them employment. But turning their Forces one againſt the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was baſely murthered in *Egypt*: And *Cæſar* victoriouſly Conqueror in *Theſſaly*, was barbarouſly maſſacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of theſe four Worthies could ſettle the *Monarchy* in himſelf, yet this ſhall be to their eternal Memory recorded, that they firſt opened a paſſage to others, and firſt moved the Stone, which rowling along, tumbled the People out of the *Government*.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæſar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Cæſar* had left no Heir, and *Pompey* no Children: or rather, if *Antonius*, a Man of an unquiet and turbulent Spirit, had not begun new Troubles. For he knowing the Affection of the *common People* unto young *Octavius*, *Cæſar*'s Heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his Inheritance, did by Decree of the *Senate* reſtore *Sextus* the Son of *Pompey* to his Blood and Honours; hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers Hatreds, would, like Pellets in a Boys Pot-gun, drive out each other; and ſo he might remain *Lord* of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be ſo fetch'd over, and had moreover more deſire to revenge his Father's Death on *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, than turn himſelf upon an Enemy that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his firſt entrance into *Rome* he declared himſelf *Cæſar*'s Heir, though ſome regarding more his Welfare than Honour diſſwaded him from it. His Retinue at his Entrance was but ſmall, his Behaviour gentle and courteous, ſo that all had cauſe to love him, none to fear him. His firſt buſineſs was to *Antonius*, then poſſeſſed of all *Cæſar*'s Eſtate. His Words as modeſt as his Petition juſt. *Antony*'s anſwer ſomewhat churliſh, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the Name of *Cæſar*, and ſo diſmiſſed him unſatisfied, and with Diſcontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that Name we mean to call him, though he was not yet ſo called) perceiving that *Antony*'s Anſwer, though in ſhew but a delay, was in effect a denial, inſinuated into the Acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whoſe means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to caſt great Affection towards him. Next in a ſolemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have diſtributed his Father's Wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjuſtly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevaileth ſooner with the ignoble Man than hope of Gain. No ſooner had he finiſhed his Speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impoſſible to get for himſelf, but all was in a tumult. None was ſo ſparing of his words, but he had ſome Curſe in ſtore for *Antonius*; every one vowing the deſtruction of that Man, whom they ſuppoſed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* Donative.

7. In this Hurly-burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of the Houſes declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius* and *Panſa*, then *Conſuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18 Years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League againſt the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to abſent from a neceſſary War, ſo he always uſed to reſerve himſelf from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole Enterpriſe unto the *Conſuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Soldiers took moſt pains to get the Victory, yet would the Honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the buſineſs, would bring his Honour off without ſtain. The *Conſuls* therefore proceeded in the War againſt *Antony*: who ſeeing little poſſibility of prevailing, reſolved to ſell the loſs of his own Liberty and his Soldiers Lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the Fortune of the Day was ſo equally ſhared, that as the *Conſuls* might boaſt of the vanquiſhment of *Antony*, ſo *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Conſuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could deſire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his Service. He therefore applies himſelf ſo to them, that giving that among them which he had in preſent, and promiſing them greater Favours, according as his Fortune and their Valour ſhould advance him; he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of Allegiance, and made them the firſt ſtep by which he aſcended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the Young-Man's Fortune, thought it beſt to ſtrangle theſe hopes even in their Cradles, and to that end, decree the Honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whoſe defence (being beſieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this froſt of unexpected unkindneſs, ſufficient to nip the bloſſom of his hopes; but they denied him the *Conſulſhip*. Theſe harſh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his Honour now lying at ſtake) to enter *Rome* as *Conqueror*, and force the *Fathers* to grant him his deſires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at, he generally ſhewed himſelf grateful to all, and particularly to ſome of the Soldiers, paying them what was behind by promiſe, and openly proteſting that without their Aid he durſt not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his Day with the *Military* Men, and ſhewing his noble and generous Nature in a thankful commemoration of their Service; he added ſtronger Bonds to ſuch as were already his own, and won many daily to his ſide, which before were either *neutral*, or *Adverſaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puiſſant Army, he poſted thither, and ſo far prevailed with the Soldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the *General* entertained him with all expreſſions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, ſoon perſwaded him to lead his Forces into *Italy*; promiſing him no leſs than the Lordſhip of the World, if he durſt but ſhew his Face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual news of this Combination, and fearing much the proweſs of *Antony*, now ſtrengthen'd; conceived no courſe ſo fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join Friendſhip, and to enter in-

to Confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but becauſe being deſtitute of means to reſiſt them, and alſo to revenge the Death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their Forces oppreſs *Caſſius* and M. *Brutus*, and, as occaſion fell out, deal with them being ſevered. This League was ſolemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proſcription* immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their *Enemies* they betrayed their *Friends*. A lamentable and ruthful time; good and bad, rich and poor, being alike ſubject to the ſlaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæſar's* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*; and every one began to curſe *Brutus* and *Caſſius* as the Authors of theſe preſent Miſeries; whom they but lately honoured as the Reſtorers of the Common Liberty. Nay, the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and ſuch as lived in their Days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrants*: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us Men, that we know not our own happineſs in the fruition, but the want. Two of theſe *Triumviri* glutted themſelves with Blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the People. *Auguſtus* on the contrary, ſhewed himſelf much grieved at this barbarous Cruelty; ſo that his conſent ſeemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Proſcription*, though in it ſelf cruel and tyrannical, produced ſome good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proſcription* and the enſuing Civil War, the ſtouteſt of the Nobles and Commons were made away, few being left which durſt endeavour to recover the old Liberty; *Auguſtus* did the more eaſily eſtabliſh his Monarchy, and reſtore Peace to the City. Moreover, the proſecution of this Cruelty ſo incenſed the People againſt *Antony* and *Lepidus*, that *Auguſtus*, whom moſt held excuſable, found them always his faſt Friends, if not for love to him, yet in ſpight to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Auguſtus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius*; both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that Service, as well to diminiſh *Antony*'s Forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himſelf, either he in policy ſuffered himſelf to be driven out of the Field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or elſe indeed durſt not abide the Battel. Such end had *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, two Men whom Fortune ſeemed to be in love with on the ſudden, and did as ſuddenly forſake them. *Brutus* the more accompliſhed Man; *Caſſius* the more expert Soldier. I paſs over *AUGUSTUS*'s Wars in *Italy*, *Antony*'s in *Aſia*, the diſcontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, Siſter to the one, and Wife to the other *Emperor*. As alſo how joining Forces together to oppreſs *Sextus*, then lording it over the Sea, and proud with the Conqueſt of *Sicilia*; they received him into the Confederacy, and joined the Iſland of *Sardinia* to his other Conqueſts. To recompence which kindneſs, *Sextus* invited the two Generals aboard his *Admiral-Gally*: and after a bountiful Entertainment, returned them ſafe to their Camps. I ſcarce have ever heard of ſo great an over-ſight among ſo many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my ſelf, upon what confidence *Auguſtus* and *Antony* durſt ſo far truſt their Perſons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reaſon *Sextus* having both of them in his Power, would let ſlip ſo ſlightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a diſcontented and ambitious Perſon. This I am ſure of, that he afterwards repented it, and could have wiſhed that he had harken'd to the Voice of *Menas* his old Servant, who had perſwaded him to make his beſt of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Arragon*, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like interview at *Savona*: which that notable Hiſtoriographer and States-man *Guicciardine* deſcribeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet, in the like caſe, have many, and, as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* XI. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, the Arch-politicians of thoſe Days, in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himſelf into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who alſo after a ſhort reſtraint, diſmiſſed him.

10. Theſe ſolemn expreſſions of Amity between the three *Generals* being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his eſtabliſhment in the *State*; though with the ruine of his *Colleagues*. He beginneth firſt with *Sextus*, having by Gifts and Promiſes drawn *Menas* unto his ſide, who by reaſon of his inwardneſs with his Maſter, knew moſt of his Deſigns. By the direction of this *Menas*, and the aſſiſtance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death in *Europe* by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Aſia* by the commandment of *Antony*. After this Victory, *AUGUSTUS*, either having, or pretending a Quarrel againſt *Lepidus*, entreth into his Camp, ſeizeth his Perſon, and depriving him of all Honours, confineth him to *Rome*. A Man that half againſt his Will, ſtumbling upon the Government, had beyond any deſert of his, enjoyed ten Years continuance of Empire and Proſperity. An Action of a very high nature, and ſuch as *AUGUSTUS* durſt not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore adviſedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the ſame. It hath been ever a chief *Maxim* in *Court-Policy*, to remove that Man out of the way, under pretence of ſome honourable Charge, whom we intend either to caſt from his preſent Honours, or elſe to make leſs potent with Prince and People. For which cauſe alſo *AUGUSTUS* perſwaded *Antony*'s abſence from the *City* to bring him at the laſt into diſcredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many Inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than diſtaſtful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his Siſter *Octavia* to leave her Husband *Antony*'s Houſe; yet privately he perſwaded her to live there ſtill, and bring up his Children; that ſo the *Romans* ſeeing her noble demeanour and love to her Husband, might the more heartily deteſt him, who ſo ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more Fuel to this flame of Hatred, he readeth *Antony*'s Will unto the People, in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s Children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewiſe preferred many Bills againſt *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had depoſed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* among his own Soldiers only, that he had not reſtored the Ships borrowed to make War againſt *Sextus*.

11. Theſe Diſcontents ſeconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both reſolute to refer all to the deciſion of a Battel. *Antony* had a Fleet conſiſting of 500 Ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces conſiſted of 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horſe: *Auguſtus* had the like number of Horſemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good *Men of War*, ſnug and cloſe, built more for uſe than oſtentation. The *Rendezvous* is *Actium*, a place ſeeming to be marked out for notable deſigns: Here being fought alſo in our Fathers Days, that famous Battle, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to underſtand, that the *Turks* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offenſive-ſide, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onſet by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whoſe words were Oracles, perſwaded him to the Sea-fight; not that ſhe thought it more ſafe, but that, if *Antony* loſt the Day, ſhe might with more facility eſcape. To this reſolution, when moſt of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Soldiers thus bluntly gain-ſaid it. "What a miſerable Security art thou poſſeſſed with, moſt noble Emperor! Where is that ancient fore-ſight wherewith thou haſt formerly prevented all Diſaſters, and turned the Enemies devices on their own Heads? Conſider with thy ſelf, moſt

noble General, what uncertain Friends the Wind and Sea are? To how fickle an Element thou doſt truſt the Fortunes? Let the *Egyptians* and *Phœnicians*, old *Mermaids*, born and nurſt up in the Sea, follow this kind of warfar. But let us thy true *Roman* Spirits try our Valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy Empire, and our own Lives. “Perhaps thou doſt miſtruſt our Faith: Look “here, *Antony*, (with that he opened his Boſom) and thou “ſhalt ſee many an honourable Scar got in thy Service. “We are now too old to learn new Treaſons: Alter therefore thy Reſolution, and to pleaſe a Woman, caſt not “away ſo many of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the unreſiſtable Powers of Heaven when they decree a Man's Deſtruction, overthrow thoſe Counſels by which he ſhould eſcape it. *Antony* turns his deaf Ear to this Soldier's wholſom Advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three Kiſſes, (as if from the Fountain of her Lips he had derived all his Courage) without any more Ceremony prepareth unto the Battle.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other ſide, ſeeing a neceſſity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Veſſels were more uſeful, and better man'd, though fewer than his Enemies: That his Men to him were faithful, and by reaſon of their many Victories, in good heart: From *Antony* were daily revolted ſome Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one ſide, and diſheartning of the other. The whole charge of the War he committed to *M. Veſpanius Agrippa*, who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies whatſoever might be impediments to the Valiant or ſhelter for the Cowardly; all that was cumberſom to his own Men, or advantageous to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the Battles ready to join, *Auguſtus Cæſar* ſtanding where he might ſee and be ſeen of all, is ſaid to make this or the like Oration. “Fellows and Companions in Arms, I ſuppoſe it needleſs to hearten you, which never were acquainted with Fear; or bid you overcome, which never “yet knew what it was, not to vanquiſh. Conqueſt hath “always ſat upon the edge of your Swords, and Victory “been written in your Foreheads. Be not now backward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When “after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memory, “I firſt dealt in matters of War, I rather found than “made you good Soldiers. And during this twelve years “ſervice under me, neither have you been wanting in the “Duty of faithful Followers, nor I (I hope) of a vigilant “and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expreſſed my ſelf as “far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let “not the number, nor the greatneſs of the adverſe Gallies any ways affright you. The hugeneſs of their Bulks “make them unapt for employment; and the multitude, “one clogging and hindring the others, may as much “further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of *Men*, we them in number of Soldiers. The “meaning of the Word *Pilot* is unknown among them. “And for their *Mariners*, the beſt of them are but *Carters*, “*Reapers* and *Harveſt-men*, raked out of the Field; the “reſt, the Excrement of common Priſons, wherewith the “Veſſels are loaded, not manned. The *General* is indeed “a fit *Captain* for ſuch a ſelected Company. It is the ſame “*Antony*, whom you once drave out of the Field before “*Mutina*. I verily perſwade my ſelf, that neither he “dares think of recovering, or you of loſing your former “glories. It is the ſame *Antony*, who being ſhamefully “chaſed out of *Parthia*; only in that he was not vanquiſhed, proclaimed himſelf *Victor*. It is the ſame *Antony*, “who intended to make *Rome* ſubject to the *Ægyptians*; “and to diſtribute the *Provinces* purchaſed with the Blood “and Virtue of our Anceſtors, amongſt *Iras* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed it is not *Antony* at “all, but the ſhadow only of that ſubſtance, which now “is hid in *Cleopatra*'s Cabbin. Courage then brave Men “of Arms; be, as you have ſtill been, *Conquerors*. To “ſpeak more, were to detain you from Victory. Only “this, Call to mind your ancient Valour. Remember “that I am *Cæſar*, you *Romans*.

13. This Speech animated the new Soldiers, and confirmed the old; ſo that with a general Acclamation they gave the Aſſault. Death, Wounds, and Blows, diſhed in divers Faſhions, and ſerved in by ſeveral Men, were the beſt Delicates prepared for theſe unwelcome Viſitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battle, and doubting the ſucceſs, through the thickeſt of *Antony*'s Fleet, made away with the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This Diſorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* ſeeing her flight, left his Squadron alſo; and being taken into her Gally, hoiſed ſail for *Ægypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Soldier, whilſt each of his Soldiers executed the Office of a couragious *General*. For they ſo abſolutely perſiſted in the Fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them Mercy ſooner than they would demand it, and divers times before they would accept it. At laſt they all ſwear Allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loſer of Advantages) ſpeedeth into *Ægypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the People pay for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this Money, he ſo weakned them that they had no ability to raiſe an After-war; and by diſtributing part of it among his Soldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he ſeeing his Fortunes deſperate, redeemed the Honour loſt in his Life, by a noble Heroick Death. And *Cleopatra* ended her Life not long after alſo. A Woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-ſpoken, rather than either. *Antony*'s Courtiers had ſeen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; Men being chained to her by the Ears, rather than by the Eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS*'s entry into *Rome*, as alſo the ſtate and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he uſed ſo juſtly, that none felt the fury of the War, but ſuch as were ſlain in the Battle. To aſſure himſelf of *Antony*'s Adherents, was his firſt care: To which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his Friends in *Rome* had been incloſed; well knowing that as long as any thought themſelves ſuſpected Adverſaries, they would never ſhew themſelves true Friends. To the *Senators* and *Magiſtrates* he made ſumptuous Feaſts; to the *Common People* he exhibited magnificent and pleaſing Stage-Plays; and with all Variety of Pleaſure, baniſhed from both, as well ſorrow for the old *Proſcription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main Deſign. There were two Men moſt dear unto him, and privy to his Counſel, *Mecænas* and *Agrippa*; which in the Object of their love, differed only in this; *Mecænas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the *Emperor*. *Mecænas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a Man of good and bad parts equally compounded; when his Buſineſs required care, vigilant and circumſpect; at leiſure time, exceſſively riotous. *Agrippa* was the firſt of his houſe; a Man alike fit for Camp and Counſel; one neither careleſs of a good Name, nor covetous of a great. For altho' he only was the Man which vanquiſhed *Sextus* and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the Humours of Princes, he gave *AUGUSTUS* the honour of all his Conqueſts; making the Virtue not the Reward, but the end of his Actions. So by doing nobly, and ſpeaking modeſtly of it, he was without Envy, but not without Glory. With theſe two, *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Cloſet, and then ſpake unto them in this ſort. He made firſt unto them a long Diſcourſe of the Civil Wars; then added. “That having by his “Fortune, and the Valour of his Soldiers, put an end to “the Troubles; he was unreſolved what to do; whether “to reſign the Empire to the People, or retain it ſtill in “his own hands: That in a Buſineſs of ſuch importance, he durſt not rely altogether on his own wiſdom; “That he had made them his Judges, as Men that could “ſpeak ſoundly, and durſt ſpeak freely: That he knew “them to have more care of his Honour, than Profit; “but of the *Common-wealth*, more than both; That his “Counſels, which courſe ſoever he took, would not be by

“them thrown out, rejected, or eliminated. He therefore intreated them to conſider what was to be done, and to give up their Opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a ſhort ſilence thus began. ‘I know thou canſt not but marvel, O *Cæſar*, that I who under thine Empire, am ſure to be beyond preſident exalted, ſhould perſwade thee to live private. But I eſteem more thy Honour, than my Profit; the Publick Good, than my Particular Preferment. And yet perhaps my Counſel ſhall be as profitable, if not as plauſible as the contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with Lies and Flattery, and will therefore deal with thee freely and plainly. Thou haſt indeed put a period to the *Civil Wars*, but to what end, unleſs thou doſt reſtore unto the *Common-wealth* that *Liberty* for which the Wars were raiſed? What benefit can the People reap from thy *Victory*, if thou doſt uſe it only as an Inſtrument for their greater Bondage? Doſt thou think that the *Romans* having ſo many hundred Years maintained their Liberty, will now be willing to forgo it? No, *Cæſar*, no, flatter not thy ſelf with theſe hopes. *Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father of happy memory, did not long live, after his Actions ſeemed to bring the *Common Liberty* in hazard. And ſhall we think that there is no true *Roman* ſpirit ſurviving? no *Brutus* living to attempt the like againſt thee? Believe me, *Cæſar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the *Empire* at all, than to be forced to abandon it. But ſay, Divine Providence will ſo protect thee that thou mayſt out-live ſuch Practices; ſhalt thou alſo not out-live thy Glories? This preſent Age perchance will not cenſure thine Actions, becauſe it dares not; but Poſterity, free from all Reſpects of love or hatred, cannot but call them into queſtion, and brand thy Enterprize with Ambition, and perhaps Tyrranny. If thy Deſigns proſper, they will judge thee to have riſen unjuſtly; if otherwiſe, to have fallen deſervedly. How much better then were it, now when thine Honour is without blemiſh, and thy Reputation unſtained, to reſign thy Authority? Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* over *Ægypt*, it might have been thought want of ſpirit, to have depoſed thy ſelf from the Government. But now to do it, when thou art without *Rival* in the *Empire*; now when thou art Commander of the World's Forces, now when the *People* and *Senate* lie proſtrate at the feet of thy mercy, were to ſtrike dumb detraction, and to make future Ages admire thy Temper. Thou art at this preſent the Joy and Comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame. Here then fix thy Foot. For go but one ſtep beyond this, *non ultra*, and thou wilt run into a boundleſs Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy Life and Reputation.

16. ‘Not ſo, excellent *Agrippa*, replyed *Mecænas*. I never heard good *Pilot* find fault with *Sea-room*, or of more Veſſels caſt away in the *Ocean*, than in the *Straits*, and narrow paſſages. Our *Republick* is a Ship fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long toſſed on the waves of *Civil Diſſenſions*, long driven up and down with the wind of Ambition, and there is now no place ſo fit for her ſafety, as the unlimited *Ocean* of one Man's power. This *Empire* at firſt-riſing, ſeemed not to require a *Monarch*; but it is now grown too unwieldy to be without one. Take then upon thee, O *Cæſar*, this Empire; or, to ſay better, do not forſake it. I ſhould never thus adviſe thee, did I conceive any poſſible Inconveniencies. The *Senate* doth allow thee a competent guard of valiant and faithful Soldiers; whom then ſhouldſt thou fear? Nay, ill may I proſper, if I ſee any cauſe of fear, were thy Guard caſhiered. Enemies thou haſt none: For ſuch as were, are either already ſlain by thy Valour, or made thy faſt Friends, by thy Bounty and Clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Soldier to be a *States-man*, was too heady and violent in eſtabliſhing his Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, and ſuffer the People inſenſibly, and by degrees, to drop into bondage; but oppreſs them all at once. Again, he committed a great *Solœciſm* in *State*, when diſcharging his *Guard*, he ſought to retain that *Empire* by fair means, which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Cæſar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. Learn alſo to work out thy own ſafety by *Pompey*'s Misfortunes. He after the finiſhing of the *Pontic War*, at *Brunduſium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to be accounted an honeſt and moderate Man. Certainly he ſhewed himſelf in the courſe of this Action, rather virtuous than fortunate or politick. For preſently he began to be contemned, and by his improvident weakning of himſelf, made an open paſſage to his own ruin. I commended his Modeſty more than his Brain; neither did he himſelf, on better Conſiderations, approve his own doings; and therefore he reſolved, had he been Victor in *Pharſalia*, never to have committed the like overſight. So it is, and ſo it will fall out with thee, O *Cæſar*, if in this Action thou propoſe him to be thy Pattern. It is not ſafe, *Agrippa* ſaith, to take the Empire; leſs ſafe it is, to refuſe it. A ſetled and innative Vice it is in Man, never to endure that any not above our own rank ſhould over-top us. *Rome*'s ſecond Founder, *Camillus*; *Scipio* that ſcourge of *Carthage*, were diſgraced; and *M. Coriolanus* baniſhed by our Anceſtors; only becauſe their worth had lifted them above the ordinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fear better than thy Prodeceſſors. Heretofore, perchance thou mightſt have ſought the Empire to ſatisfie thy Ambition: The Empire muſt now be thy Refuge and *Aſylum*. Credit me, the *Lords* of the *Senate* after ſo many years of *Obedience*, know not how to *Govern*; neither canſt thou, having ſo long been a *Governour*, learn *Obedience*. True it is, that in matters of domeſtical Buſineſs, a Man may ſtop and deſiſt where he will: but in the getting of an Empire, there is no mean between the Death of an *Enemy* and the Life of a *Prince*. Thou haſt already gone too far to retire. Now thou muſt reſolve to be *Cæſar* or Nothing. To ſay more were ſuperfluous. Thine own Diſcretion will ſuggeſt unto thee better Arguments. Only this I know, that thou haſt in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an *Emperor*.

17. *AUGUSTUS* ſeemed to incline to this latter Opinion, whether moved with *Mecænas*'s Oration, eſpecially his inſtance in *Pompey*, or that he was before reſolved to follow that courſe, is uncertain. Howſoever, ſeeming with great attention to obſerve their Speeches, and gathering their ſeveral Reaſons and Motives together, he made this reply. ‘A moſt hard thing it is for a divided Mind to make a well join'd Anſwer. Divided I am, and troubled between your two Opinions; loth to follow either, ſince in ſo doing I muſt offend one. Yet ſince there is a neceſſity of Reſolution, I intend, though I like well of thy Advice *Agrippa*, to follow thine *Mecænas*. In doing which, I am but an Inſtrument of the *Deſtinies*, to put their Wills in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for his Skill in *Judiciary Aſtrology*, told him once in open *Senate*, That he had begotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As alſo how *M. Cicero*, ſo renowned for *Wit* and *Eloquence*, dreamed, that he ſaw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitol*, with a Whip in mine Hand. Certainly, if the Powers of Heaven promiſe me ſo great an *Empire*, I will not be wanting to my ſelf; but will add by my *Induſtry* to their *Influence*. To further my Deſigns, I do deſire you, nay, I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counſels, ſo you would not now be backward in any neceſſary Aſſiſtance. This ſaid, they preſently enter into a new Conference, how to manage a Buſineſs of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their Intent, how to diſpoſe of the *Army*, not yet caſhiered; with what

plummet it were beſt to ſound the Minds of the common People, and to oblige all ſorts unto him. This Conſultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his affability to the *People*, and reſpect to the *Nobles*. An Opportunity he had to expreſs himſelf to both. There was at that time a Famine, which ſhrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer ſort he deſtributed Corn, *gratis*; to others, at a mean price. Riches and Honours he communicated to both ſorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient Freedom. Such parts of the City as were deſtroyed by caſualty of Fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houſes of *Common-Aſſemblies* he repaired, Temples conſecrated to the Gods, he ſpared no coſt to adorn and beautifie. And finally, ſo freely diffuſed his Bounty, that there was no part or member of the City, which had not ſome taſte of it. Next, he diſmiſſed his Soldiers, aſſigning them Lands and Habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That ſo the People might conceive his *Reſignation* to be real; and yet if need were, his Forces might be quickly re-aſſembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecænas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cauſe, but carefully acquainted ſome of the *Senate* with it, who ſtood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had ſtood indifferent

18. The Foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* ſat, *AUGUSTUS* roſe from his Seat, and ſpake to this or the like effect. "When I conſider with my ſelf the " infinite extent of the *Roman* Empire; I proteſt I ſtand " at a maze: marvelling how ſuch, as heretofore, have " raiſed Combuſtions in the State, durſt undertake the " ſole Adminiſtration of it. What Nation in the World " hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates; or " felt the Fury of our Wars at their own? What Countries have we not harried with Fire and Sword; making the riſing and ſetting of the Sun the Bounds of " our Dominions? It muſt queſtionleſs proceed from an " over-weening Conceit in them of their own Abilities, " who thought themſelves ſo fit to undergo that Burthen, " which none but the Immortal Gods can carry. Of " my ſelf I will not ſay much: Only, I hope, I may " ſay with Modeſty, that I am not inferiour to *Cinna*, nor " it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found in my ſelf by " late Experience, how unable I was to manage the Affairs of State, even then when I had two *Co-adjutors*. " There is no *Atlas* of Strength ſufficient to bear up this " *Heaven*, no *Star* of Influence ſufficient to animate this " *Sphere*; nor one *Form* of Virtue ſufficient to actuate " this *Matter*. Neither indeed is it fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be Immortal, ſhould depend only " on the Life and Welfare of one Man. There never was, " ſince the beginning of Time, a City repleniſhed with " greater ſtore of worthy and able Men, either to conſult or execute. Never was there ſeen ſo grave and " diſcreet a *Conſiſtory*; never ſo many of both ſorts, ſo " fit to govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of your Soldiers, put an end to all home-bred " Quarrels. I have been your Inſtrument to reduce " Peace internal and external to your City; and deſire " now no other Guerdon or Recompence for any former " Services, than a quiet and private Life; free from all " ſuch Dangers and Inconveniences, as are inſeparably " annexed to the Sovereignty. Now therefore, (and may " my Action be auſpicious and fortunate to my Country) do I reſign my Authority; committing my ſelf " and the *Common-wealth* into the Hands of the *Senate* and " *People* of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a ſoft and ſilent buzzing in the Houſe. Some ſuppoſed this Speech not to have ſo much Truth as Art and Cunning; yet ſmothered their Conceits for fear of After-claps. Others were Creatures of his own making, and they hoping to riſe in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a Reſignation. Some few of the wiſer ſort thought it not expedient, to put the Reins again into the Hands of the Multitude. The reſt out of a ſluggiſh and phlegmatick Conſtitution, choſe rather the preſent Eſtate with Security, than to ſtrive to recover the old with Danger. All therefore with a joint-conſent proclaim him ſole Emperor, and ſolemnly entreat him to ſave the *Common-wealth*, otherwiſe running to inevitable Ruin. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly perſiſted to deſire him: At laſt wearied with the Clamours of all in general, and Importunity of ſome in particular; he by little and little yielded to their Requeſts, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten Years, with this Proviſo, That if before that time expired, he could fully ſettle and order the preſent State, he would give up his Charge. This he gave out not with a purpoſe of performance, (for at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Leaſe of the Government;) But that the People ſeeing ſo nigh a poſſibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practiſe againſt him. Whereas, had he for term of Life received the Supream Authority, he had no doubt haſtened his own Overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithete *Perpetual*, was the deſtruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great Reſpect was had alſo in the choice of the Title. The Name of *King* he refuſed, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much deſired it; leſt they ſhould ſuppoſe that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the People called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garmants; deſiring them to diſcharge him of a Name ſo hated: and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbad all that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted; well knowing, that the like glorious Attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which leaſt loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred he might the ſooner be diſpatched. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Common-people*, led more by Appearances than Truth, diſcerned Names more plainly than Execution: and that the only courſe to make Greatneſs ſtand firmly, was to receive extraordinary Power under a Title not offenſive. The Name alſo of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been ſomething in him more than mortal) he refuſed not; as a Title expreſſing more Dignity and Reverence than Authority. And having pleaſed himſelf in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the eſtabliſhment of his Power, which he thus purſued.

20. When firſt at the Hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian* Soldiers for the guard of his Perſon; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double Wages of a *Legionary* Soldier, to make them more vigilant and heedful in their Charge. Over theſe he appointed two Prefects or Governours, (*Captains of the Guard* we may beſt term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed Danger, to more, Confuſion. *Agrippina*, to ſettle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom ſhe had at her devotion, the ſole Captain: and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of ſetting *Galba* beſides the Cuſhion; deſired the Command of the *Guard*, as the next ſtep to Sovereignty. In choice of theſe Captains, he obſerved two Rules: Firſt, he ever choſe them, *ex ordine Equeſtri*, not *Senatorio*; leſt that, ſo high a Dignity joined to ſo high a Birth, might ſtartle their Reſolutions to ſome Deſigns againſt his Quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two ſuch as were of contrary Humours, and ſomewhat at odds; that ſo the ill Intents of the one (if they ſhould harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble Emulation, ſhould contend to be moſt forward in his Service. The next Courſe which he took for his own Security, was a Law he made to curb the Wills and Attempts of the great ones. For whereas it hath been formerly unlawful to queſtion a Bondman, in matters concerning the Life and Death of his Lord; *AUGUSTUS* paſſed an Act, that all ſuch Bondmen

ſhould be firſt ſold to him, or the Commonwealth. By means whereof he kept the Lords, before preſuming on the ſecreſie of their Slaves, from all cloſe and private Conſpiracies againſt him. Having thus ſtrengthened his Perſon, he aſſumed to himſelf the *Imperial*, *Cenſorial*, and *Tribunitian* Authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* Dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could preſs Soldiers, raiſe Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very beſt and ſtouteſt of the *Senators*. As *Cenſor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt Manners, enquire after Mens Carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he liſted; to place and diſplace the People from a more honourable Tribe, to a leſs honourable. Yet would he not be called *Cenſor* as a name too inferiour; but accepted the Prerogatives of it, after the ſurrendry of *Manutius*, and his Aſſociate, two Men ſo unfit for that *Magiſtracy*, that they could object no Crime to old or young, of which themſelves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian Authority* enabled him to hinder any thing attempted againſt his liking. It preſerved his Perſon from all contumely and injury; giving him power to puniſh, as an execrable Perſon, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whoſoever had offended him either in Word or Deed. As for the Pontifical Dignity, it made him a little more Reverenced, not more Potent. Only it added to his Title the ſtile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Biſhop*; and made him of authority amongſt the Prieſts, and in ſacred Matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reaſon taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his People; He had been elſe but half a *Monarch*, ſuch as ſome Princes are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. Theſe ſeveral Prerogatives annexed together, ſeem not yet ſufficient: And therefore he ſo cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he ſeriouſly bends his thoughts to ſettle the Common-wealth; and ſo to ſettle it, that by uniting all Parties, and giving ſatisfaction to all *Intereſts*, it might not be obnoxious to ſuch frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein when he had conſulted the ancient Platforms, he found no ſmall difficulty. The form deſcribed by *Plato*, ſhewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Ariſtotle*, though bred in the *Free-States* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his diſcourſes dark, and ſpeculative, and not eaſily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legiſlators* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Perſian* Law-makers indulged to the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other ſide, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, aſcribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of ſome particular Laws, than the Framer of a Commonwealth. *Phaleas*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpoſe; and withal conſidering with himſelf, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by conſequence ſubject unto change: He reſolved to frame his Commonwealth out of the perfections of the three good *Forms*, their imperfection being rejected; reſerving to himſelf the Supreme Majeſty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a juſt and fit proportion. And to ſay truth, he did ſo mix the Soveraignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of Bondage or Sedition, enjoyed their accuſtomed Freedoms. The Conſuls and Nobles of the City aſſembled as formerly they uſed; matters of State they handled by themſelves; Ambaſſadors of foreign Nations they heard, and diſpatched. The *Commons* did aſſemble in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magiſtrates, as in the free Common-wealth; Yet ſo that nothing was done without the conſent and privity of the Prince, who for the moſt part nominated the ſucceſſive Magiſtrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the People. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the ſilent approbation of both Eſtates, as ſeeming to conſiſt more in the alteration of the Magiſtrate, than of the Laws.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the firſt care he took, was to confirm Religion in the ſame ſtate in which he found it. I mean Religion, as the *Romans* uſed the word, for thoſe particular, though Idolatrous Forms of Worſhip, which to their ſeveral Gods had been uſed among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Biſhop of the City; yet very wiſely he forbare it. It is not ſafe for Princes that are ſetled in a long deſcent of Government, to be too active in ſuch changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an Empire not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more ſenſible of the ſmalleſt alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raiſe more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* ſpecially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either *Gods* or *Ceremonies*, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, *That none ſhould offer Sacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Foreign faſhion.* Excellent therefore was the Counſel which *Mecænas* gave him when he firſt undertook the *Empire*, *viz.* "That he ſhould follow conſtantly the *Religion* which he found eſtabliſhed, and compel others alſo to do the like. For, Foreign and ſtrange Rites (ſaith he) will offend the People, work many inconvenient alterations in the Civil State; yea, and moſt likely will occaſion many both Seditions and Conſpiracies. Words which he ſpake not to the Air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehenſive of the beſt Advice. Nor did AUGUSTUS ever ſhew himſelf more careful in any one *Art* of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecænas* noted, we find true in theſe latter Ages; in times more skilful of Obedience, than the moſt quiet hour of AUGUSTUS's Government. No one thing more hath cauſed ſo frequent and ſo general Rebellions in the States of *Chriſtendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious reſolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better ſome few corruptions ſhould be ſuffered in a Church than ſtill a Change.*

23. Religion thus eſtabliſhed, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire conſiſted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was moſt apparent in the *Senate* it ſelf. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in Men of eminent place end not in themſelves; but by degrees become diffuſed among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and deſertleſs Men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour ſuch as were moſt potent. Of theſe he expelled none by his own power; but making a Speech to them in the *Senate*, of the ancient order and preſent confuſion of the Houſe, he firſt exhorted them to look back on their former Lives, and to judge of their own Abilities and Merits, for ſo honourable a Room. Then he deſired ſome of them to pick out ſuch among them, as were in diſpoſition factious, and in life faulty, but loth to conceive ſo ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that *the great Thief leadeth the leſs to the Gallows*; and as *Commines* obſerveth, that after the Battel of *Montliberry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on ſuch as ran ten Miles beyond them: So remained many in the *Senate*, neither leſs vicious, nor leſs violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than ſome others

whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the ſetling of his Affairs, that none ſhould have a voice in that famous Council, but ſuch as were of able Judgment, honeſt Repute, and well affected to his Service and the Commonwealth. An Enterpriſe which he eſteemed ſo dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were ſearched: Himſelf wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the moſt courageous and beſt beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcuſable, he diſcharged from their attendance; electing ſuch in their places, which were either ennobled for their Wiſdom, or noted moderation, or otherwiſe ſtrong in their dependants. Yet ſo that greatneſs of Revenue was eſteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offenſive; nor a juſt cauſe to challenge intereſt in the Houſe. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the Mind, than thoſe of Fortune, he relieved with honourable Penſions; and finally he beſtirred himſelf ſo reſolutely, that all confeſſed that they had need of ſuch a wiſe Phyſician, to cure the dull Conſumption, whereinto the *Commonwealth* was fallen.

24. In other things he ſeldom did proceed againſt them, as of himſelf; but when that any of them had conſpired his ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their Fellows. And this he did partly to reſerve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be Judge and Party in his own Cauſe: But principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchleſs contempt of his adverſaries, uſed, when he was leaſt ſuſpected, under hand, and by publick Officers, to work their Deſtruction. Many alſo of them whom the *Senate* had condemned he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the queſtioning of Men of high Calling, would produce as much Terror, though it argued not ſo much rigour as the puniſhment. Yet if extremity of Law was uſed towards ſome few, it was to ſettle quietneſs in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Thoſe who had followed the Factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not ſo only, but by manifeſting his Works by his Deeds, and adding Truſts and Honours to his Pardons; he made his Chair of State more ſetled, and immoveable. So *Cæſar*, by erecting the faln and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own Statues ſtand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italy*. For well he knew, that an Empire unſetled, and Provinces not quieted; the Preſence and Authority of Men of that Rank, might raiſe greater Troubles, than could be eaſily ſuppreſſed. Examples he wanted not, that eſpecially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, ſtirred ſuch a War againſt *Cæſar* in *Africk*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to impriſon them, he licenſed them at their pleaſure, to viſit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyſe*, Provinces cloſe to the Continent of *Italy*, altogether unfurniſhed for Wars; and indeed ſuch, as by reaſon of the variety of pleaſures in them uſed, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* ſome ſweet-meat to their ſowre ſawce, he as much honoured and reverenced that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-ſtate*; ſubmitting himſelf to their Judgments, and appearing of his own accord, at moſt of their days of Seſſion. Out of thoſe he choſe fifteen alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy-Council*; but then changing them for others, that ſo all of them might participate of that honour, and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his Secrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he uſed courteouſly to ſalute the *Lords*; and ſo likewiſe at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, ſo much to ſlight the *Lords* of that *Houſe*, as he always did: Never making to them any Obeiſance; no not then, when they came to tell him what Honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great Ones, ſoon made the lower ſort more careful; both to obſerve good Order, and to learn Obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to *Preſident*, but ſomewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yield an account of their Lives; a courſe full of Health and Wiſdom: Idleneſs being the root of all private Vices, and publick Diſorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other Meetings, he preſcribeth Laws and Orders as himſelf liſted. The old Authority of the *Tribunes*, daſhed in the *Dictatorſhip* of *Sylla*, he would not reſtore. He ſuffered them to intercede for the *People*, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill*, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Eſtate*. Without this *Curb*, the *Common ſort* would never have ſuffered him to ſit faſt in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes*, and had the *Tribunes* had their ancient Dignity and Power, which they had uſurped, there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-People*, eſpecially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the deſigns of Sovereign *Princes*.

26. The City thus reformed in the principal Errors, and Defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleaſures; as ſhews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of wild Beaſts, publick Dancing, with variety of other delightful Spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing leaſt their Cogitations, for want of other Objects, would fix themſelves upon his actions, and the old *Freedom*. And therefore when ſome of his more ſevere and rigid Counſellors adviſed him to interdict all ſuch Publick Paſtimes, alledging, that the Meetings of the People at thoſe Sports, and in ſo great numbers, might at laſt end in ſome great Tumult and Sedition, to the endangering of his Perſon, and Deſtruction of his whole Eſtate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecænas* (his moſt truſty Favourite) *Expedit tibi, O Cæſar, plebem ſic occupatam eſſe*, That it beſt agreed with his Affairs, to have the minds of the People taken up with theſe Sports and Paſtimes; by which being ſweetned and appeaſed, they were the leſs ſenſible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horſe-races, Tilts, and Turnaments, as he gladly cheriſhed them, ſo he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That ſo that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be ſtored with good Horſes, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: And when that many of them had made him Heir to their Goods, he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any *Prince* but a *Tyrant*, preſently reſtoring to the Children of the Deceaſed the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS*; as true a *Guardian* of *Orphans*, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gape covetouſly after other Mens Poſſeſſions, ſeldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treaſures of Kings are then greateſt, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he ſeemed to leave unto the People, which they thought moſt pleaſing, *Liberty of Speech*: Wherein ſometimes they were ſo licentious, that they ſpared not *Agrippa* himſelf, ſo potent with the *Emperor*. But he, good Man, never uſing the Prince's favour to the prejudice of any, ſeemed not to mark their taunts and ſlanders; whether with greater Moderation or Wiſdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AUGUSTUS* ſcape their fooliſh *Paſquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature ſlighted and contemned, ſoon vaniſh of themſelves; but if repined and ſtormed at, ſeem to be acknowledged. A Temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of Wiſdom in both of them. It is the miſery of the beſt Princes, even when they do well to be ill ſpoken of. And therefore many times ſuch follies are with more policy diſſembled than obſerved, by the greateſt Kings.

27. As for this laviſhneſs of the Tongue, it is a humour that ſpringeth for the moſt part, rather from a delight in pratling, than any malice of the Heart: And they which uſe it are more troubleſom than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat Men, but the lean and ſpare. And ſo *AUGUSTUS* thought, that not Men liberal of ſpeech, but ſilent, cloſe and ſparing of their words, were moſt likely to raiſe Tumults. Moreover, as long as the Common People retained this Liberty of Speech, they were the leſs ſenſible of the loſs of Liberty in State. Whereas in the days of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their ſecret ſighs and Tears were regiſtred, then began they to look back with a ſerious Eye on the old and common Liberty. Neglect is the beſt remedy for this Talking vein. When the humour is ſpent, the People will ceaſe on their own accords: Till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Veſpaſians* Revolt; that being the only way to increaſe, not diminiſh the rumor. And as much he extolleth (I will not ſay how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and ſpeak what he thought.

28. Theſe courſes though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the People, yet he ſtayed not here. There were too many of both ſorts, dangerous and unquiet ſpirits, who ſtomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the ancient Liberty, were apt to any bold Attempt, and ſudden Alteration. Theſe as he winked at for the preſent, ſo he imployed them (as occaſion ſerved) in his foreign Wars: Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Soldiers had diſpleaſed him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them preſently unto ſome deſperate and dangerous Service: So weakning both his Foes which lay next unto him, and puniſhing thoſe Soldiers, which had diſobeyed him. For, though *AUGUSTUS* had thrice ſhut the Temple of *Janus*, and cheriſhed Peace, no Emperor more, of ſo large a Territory; yet when he ſaw his times, and that Mens minds were active, and their thoughts diſquieted, he could find preſently occaſion for ſome new imployment. In this a Body Politick may be compared moſt fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of blood, and our ſpirits boiling, there is not any *Phyſick* better than *Phlebotomy*. But if a Vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our eſtate commonly is dangerous, and almoſt incurable. So Princes, when their People are tumultuous and apt to miſchief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkening after Action, do commonly imploy them in ſome Service far from home, that there they may both vent their Anger, and imploy their Courage. For let them ſtay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at laſt into a faction, the State will ſuffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer inſtance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whoſe foreign Wars kept us all quiet here at home, waſted thoſe humours, and conſumed thoſe fiery ſpirits, which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Soldiers, and to make them ſure. Some of which he diſperſed as before I ſaid, all about *Italy*, in thirty two Colonies; as well for the defence of the *Country*, as for their more ſpeedy re-aſſembly, if need ſhould require. Abroad amongſt the Provinces were maintained upon the common charge twenty three Legions with their aids; beſides 10000 of his Guard, and thoſe which were appointed for the bridling and ſafety of the City. As to all of them he ſhewed an excellent thankfulneſs for their faithful ſervices: So in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whoſe name the Hiſtories of that Age have not remembred. This latter had valiantly behaved himſelf at the Battel of *Actium*: And being ſummoned to appear before the Lords of the *Senate*, in a matter which concerned his Life, cried to *AUGUSTUS* for Succour, who aſſigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breaſt, and ſhewing him the marks of many Wounds; Theſe (quoth he) have I received, *AUGUSTUS*, in thy Service, never ſupplying my place by a Deputy. Which ſaid, the Emperor deſcending to the Bar, pleaded the Soldiers Cauſe, and won it. Never did Sovereign Prince, or any that command in Chief, loſe any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly ſpreading it ſelf over all the Provinces, did ſo indear him to the Military Men, that they all thought their ſervices well recompenſed, in his graciouſneſs to that one Man. And now were they ſo far given over to him, that the Honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increaſe their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common *Parentage*. But ſupplying the defects of his Birth with the perfections of his Mind, he became very potent with *AUGUSTUS*; who not only made him *Conſul*, but his Companion in the *Tribunitian Authority*, and *Provoſt* of the *City*. So many Titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecænas* perſwaded the Prince, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife: Affirming it impoſſible for *Agrippa* to live ſafe, conſidering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious Men, unleſs he were ingraffed into the Royal Stem of the *Cæſars*. On which cauſe queſtionleſs, for the ſtronger eſtabliſhment of his new Honours, *Sejanus* afterwards attempted, but not with the like Succeſs, the like Match with *Livia*, *Tiberius*'s Daughter-in-Law.

30. The *Senate*, *People*, and *Men of War*, thus ſeverally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content, the next labour is to alter the old, and eſtabliſh a new Government of the *City* it ſelf. To effect which, he daſhed all former Laws, by which the *Allies* and *Confederates* of the State were made free *Denizens* of the *Town*. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole Empire into one City; and by the monſtrous growth and encreaſe of that, to make poor the reſt. Therefore this Priviledge he communicated unto a few only; partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not ſo much feel the want of Suſtenance; and partly that ſo ancient an honour might not be diſ-eſteemed; but principally leſt *Rome* repleniſhed with ſo huge a multitude of ſtirring and unruly Spirits, ſhould grow too headſtrong to be governed in due order. The greateſt and moſt populous Cities, as they are proneſt unto Faction and Sedition; ſo is the danger greateſt, both in it ſelf, and the example, if they ſhould Revolt. This provident courſe notwithſtanding there were in *Rome* Men more than enough; and among them not a few Male-contents, and Murmurers at the preſent State, ſuch as contemned the *Conſuls*, and hated the *Prince*. To keep theſe in compaſs, *AUGUSTUS* (it being impoſſible for him to be ſtill reſident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be abſent) conſtituted a *Provoſt* of the City for the moſt part choſen out of the *Senators*; aſſigning him a ſtrength of 6000 Men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the *City Soldiers*. To him he gave Abſolute and Royal Authority, both in the Town and Territory near adjoining, during his own abſence. To him were Appeals brought from the other Magiſtrates; and finally to his Tribunal were referred all Cauſes of Importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greateſt part of *Italy*. *Meſalla* was the firſt *Provoſt*; but proof being had of his inſufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: Who did not only ſettle and confirm the City, but did the beſt he could to free the adjoyning parts of *Italy* from *Thieves* and *Robbers*; and ſtopped the courſes of many other troublers of the preſent State. And yet he could not with that power either ſo ſpeedily, or ſo throughly reform all thoſe miſchiefs, which in the late unſetled times were become predominant, as he did deſire.

31. It is recorded that in the Civil Wars of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Teleſinus* of the *Marian Faction*, told his *General*, That he did well to ſcour the Country, but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was

ſo fit a Foreſt, and ſo near to retire unto. The like might have been ſpoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the common *Roads* and *Paſſages*, but *Italy* would never want *Thieves*, whilſt *Rome* was ſo good a place of *Refuge.* For though he did, as far as humane Induſtry could extend, endeavour a general *Reformation* both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foreſee all Miſchiefs. Still were they many, and thoſe great Diſorders committed in the Night-ſeaſon; when as no Eye, but that to which no Darkneſs is an Obſtacle, could diſcern the *Malefactors.* For in the firſt *Proſcription*, many Men uſed to walk the Streets well weaponed; pretending only their own ſafety; but indeed it was to make their beſt advantage of ſuch Men as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Paſſages, or travelling as their occaſions did direct them, in the Night. To repreſs therefore the foul Inſolencies of theſe *Sword-men*, *AUGUSTUS* did ordain a *Watch*, conſiſting of 7000 *Free-men*, their Captain being a *Gentleman* of *Rome.* In the day time, the *Guard* of the *Town* was committed to the *Provoſt*, and his City Soldiers; Theſe *Vigils* reſting in their ſtanding Camps. In the Night-ſeaſon, one part took their Stations in the moſt ſuſpicious places of the City; another, in perpetual Motion traverſed the Streets; the reſt lying in the *Corps du Guarde*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the preſent Diſorders, but preſerved the City from danger of Fire alſo: Yea, and ſecured himſelf from all Night-tumults, which carry with them (though but ſmall) more Terror and Affrightment, than greater Commotions in the Day. Never till now were the common People Maſters of their own, both Lives and Subſtance. And now was travel in the Night, as ſafe, tho' not ſo pleaſant, as at Noon.

32. The People and City thus ſetled, his next ſtudy is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the change. But little *Rhetorick* needed to win their liking, who had long deſired the preſent Form of *Government*: miſtruſting the *Peoples* Regiment, by reaſon of *Noblemens* Factions, Covetouſneſs of *Magiſtrates*, the *Laws* affording no ſecurity, being ſwayed hither and thither by Ambition and Corruption. Theſe *Provinces* when he firſt took the *Government*, he thus divided; *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Bætica*, *Narbonenſis*, *Sicilia*, *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known and faithful Obedience, he aſſigned unto the *Senate.* But the new-conquer'd *Regions*, ſuch as had not digeſted their loſs of Liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared, he retained under his own Command. Such were *Terraconenſis*, *Luſitanica*, *Lugdunenſis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitanica*, *Syria*, *Cilicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to ſuſtain the danger himſelf alone, leaving unto the *Senate* all the ſweets of Eaſe: But the Truth was to keep them without Arms, himſelf always ſtrong, and in a readineſs. The notable Effects of which Counſel did not diſcover themſelves only by the eſtabliſhment of the *Empire* in his own Perſon during Life, and the continuance of it in the Houſe of the *Cæſars* (though Men of moſt prodigious Vices) after his deceaſe: but in ſome of the Ages following alſo. For when the Family of the *Cæſars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperial* Provinces being ſo ſtrong, and perceiving the *Conſular* ſo weak; aſſumed to themſelves the creating and eſtabliſhing of the following *Princes.* Thus *Galba* was made Emperor by the *Spaniſh* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *Germans*, *Veſpaſian* by the *Syrian*, and *Pannonian*: The *Conſular Provinces* never ſtirring, either to prevent their Attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old Man and all his Family to a *tragick* end. And yet he did not ſo appropriate thoſe Provinces to the *Senate*, but that they alſo (as well as thoſe which he reſerved unto himſelf) were ſpecified particularly in his private Regiſter. In which (the better to manage the Affairs of the *Empire*) he had ſet down what Tributes every of them paid, what Preſents they ſent in, what Cuſtoms in them were levied. That Book alſo comprehended the Wealth of the publick Treaſury, and neceſſary Charge iſſuing out of it: What number of Citizens and Allies there were in Arms; what Strength there was by Sea: with all other Circumſtances, the Extent, Strength, Riches, and Particulars of his Eſtate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his firſt entrance into *England*, when he compoſed that *Cenſual Roll* of all this Kingdom, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll* of *Winton*; according unto which Taxations were impoſed, and Aids exacted. The greateſt Princes have not thought it a Diſparagement to be good Husbands, to know the Riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrado.*

33. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either becauſe from thence there neither was much hope of Profit, nor much fear of Hurt; or elſe becauſe being more deſirous to keep than enlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it moſt expedient to confine it within the Bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, Mount *Atlas* on the *South*, *Euphrates* on the Eaſt, and the main Ocean on the Weſt, did both bound his Empire and defend it. Some Kingdoms have their Limits laid out by Nature, and thoſe which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Perſians* ſeldom did attempt to ſtretch their Territory beyond *Oxus*, but they miſcarried in the Action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved Action, or expected Preferment by the Wars, incited him unto the Conqueſt and Plantation of theſe Countries; affirming, “ That the barbarous People were naturally bad Neighbours; “ and though for the preſent not very ſtrong, “ nor well skill'd in Arms, yet might a weak Enemy in “ time gather great Strength: That he ought to purſue “ the War for his Father *Julius*'s ſake, who firſt ſhewed “ that Iſland to the *Romans*: That it yielded both Refuge “ and Supply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies “ in *Germany*: That he would loſe the Benefit of “ a wealthy Country, ſtored with all manner of Proviſion, “ and the Command of a valiant Nation, born (as “ it were) unto the Wars: That it was an Apoſtaſie “ from Honour, to lie ſtill, and add nothing to the Conqueſt “ of his Anceſtors: That he was in all Equity “ bound, as far as in him was, to reduce to Civility from “ Barbariſm, ſo many proper and able Men. But to theſe Motives he reply'd, “ That he had already refuſed “ to wage War with the *Parthian*, a more dangerous “ Neighbour, and far worſe Enemy than the *Britains*: “ That he had waſte and deſert Ground enough in his “ Dominions, for many a large Plantation, when he ſaw “ it needful: That he had conſtantly refuſed, though “ with great Facility he might, to conquer any more of “ the barbarous Nations: That, as in the National Body, “ a Surfeit is more dangerous than Faſting; ſo in the Body “ Politick, too much is more troubleſom than too little; “ That the *Roman* Monarchy had already exceeded the “ *Perſian* and *Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was “ the next way to make it totter and fall by its own “ weight. That he had learn'd in the Fable not to loſe “ the Subſtance by catching at the Shadow. And finally, “ that many puiſſant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, “ againſt whom *Garriſons* muſt be kept, and he feared the “ Revenues would not quit the Coſt. And ſo the Enterpriſe of *Britain* was quite laid aſide.

34. For the aſſurance of the Provinces already conquered, he diſperſed into them 23 *Legions*, with their *Aids*; whoſe Pay only, beſides Proviſion of Corn, and Officers Wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our *Engliſh* Pounds, and ſomewhat more, were ſo duly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read ſeldom in the Hiſtories of that Empire, of any Mutiny amongſt the Soldiers for want of Pay. An Happineſs, whereof theſe Ages have been little guilty. For the amaſſing of this Treaſure, and

defraying of this Charge, *AUGUSTUS* made not uſe only of his own Revenue. Wars which are undertaken, and Soldiers that are levyed for the Common Safety, ought in all reaſon to be maintained on the Common Purſe. The Grandeur and Security of an *Empire*, concerns in all reſpects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cauſe he erected an Exchequer in the City, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Soldiers Treaſury*; whereto the twentieth part of every Mans Eſtate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was eſteemed an heavy Burden at the firſt; and indeed it was, but that the People felt the ſweetneſs and effects of it in the Common ſafety. In that reſpect, the Intereſt was greater than the Principal. Subjects that have a care either of the common Peace or Honour, will not repine at Payments and Taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that Princes either are able or obliged, to maintain the Wars without aſſiſtance from their People: Or that the Treaſures which in theſe reſpects they give the King, they do not give unto themſelves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophiſter*, but never for a faithful Subject, which coyns diſtinctions betwixt the welfare of the King and the Weal of the Kingdom. Theſe *Legions* he employed as occaſion was, either to curb the Natives, or ſecure the Borders. The *Roman* Empire ſeldom had ſuch perfect Peace, but that there were employments always for the Soldiers. If that they had in any place a ſhort Ceſſation from the Wars, yet they were not idle. Idleneſs doubtleſs is the greateſt enemy to *Martial Diſcipline*. Therefore he kept them at ſuch times perpetually buſied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in draining *Mariſhes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *Barbarous Countries*, both fruitful in themſelves, and profitable to the Chequer: But thereby alſo he ſecured his own Affairs, and diſarmed his Enemies. For many times the Barbarous People truſting to ſuch advantages, were apt too often to Rebel; and having got themſelves within thoſe Myres and Faſtneſſes, ſtood on their Guard, as in ſome faſhionable or defenſible Fortreſs. The ſureſt means to keep a conquered People from all occaſion of Revolting, is to lay waſte their Wood-lands, and make all parts paſſable. The opportunity of a ſafe retreat, makes not more Thieves than Rebels.

35. Thoſe whom he placed over his Provinces and Armies, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer ſtay might teach them too much cunning in practiſing on the diſpoſitions of the People, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War: And ſo at laſt eſtabliſh in themſelves a Soveraignty. *Ceſar's* long ſtay in *Gaul*, (a ſecond five years being added unto that which was firſt allowed him) made him ſo potent with the People, and gracious with the *Soldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman* Empire under his Subjection. And on the other ſide, to take them from their charges under three years continuance were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the Cuſtoms and the Nature of the Provinces; ſo making them unable to inſtruct their Succeſſors: As for the Men whom he employed in thoſe Commands, he cull'd them always out of the moſt valiant and upright in the Camp and Senate. A *Prince* more willing and deſirous not to imploy Men likely to offend, than after the offence to puniſh and chaſtiſe them for it.

36. Beſides his Forces by Land, he alſo maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*. The one lay at Anchor near *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, &c. The other at *Miſenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. Neither was this the only uſe of two ſuch puiſſant *Fleets*, but in all probability they were to cleanſe the Sea of *Pyrates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Cuſtoms* into the *Exchequer*; and ſerved alſo for tranſporting *Corn*, and other neceſſary Proviſions, for the Suſtenance and Relief of the City. In the enſuing *Civil Wars*, theſe two Navies proved to be of great Importance: The Revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one ſide, as a comfort to the other. The principal aſſurance of *Otho* in his Wars, was the immoveable fidelity of the *Miſenian Fleet*; and the ſiding of the other with *Veſpaſian* brake the hearts of *Vitellius*'s beſt followers.

37. Now as he thus ſtrengthened the *Provinces* in general, ſo he did caſt an eſpecial eye on three particulars, viz. *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* founded *Rome* the *Metropolis* of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well aſſured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum ſociale* raiſed by the people of that Country, in the *Free State*, more ſhook and endangered the *Empire*, than the Invaſions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies*, of old and truſty Soldiers, to keep it ſure unto himſelf; ſo now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magiſtrates* and *Under-Officers*. This not ſo much to eaſe the *City-Prætor*, although he had imployment enough at *Rome*; but becauſe it was thick-ſet, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whoſe riſing might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colonies* he kept a Gariſon upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: And by his *Officers* and *Juſticiers* (as I may call them) he ſet ſo ſtrait a Watch about them, that they durſt not *practiſe*.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Country, ſtored with a people valiant in all attempts, and in many deſperate. A People with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to increaſe their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had ſacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people finally, with whom the *Romans* durſt not make War, till they had almoſt all the reſidue of the World in ſubjection. The remembrance of their ancient Reputation, and ſtore of Money, might occaſion many deſperate practices againſt the quiet of the *Empire*. The readieſt way to keep them in Obedience, was to keep them poor: For without Wealth high *Stomachs* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digeſt it never. *Licinius*, his *Freed-man*, was the fitteſt fellow for ſuch an Office, who is preſently made the *Task-maſter* of the *Province*. The *Gauls* uſed to pay a Monthly Tribute, which he much enhaunſed (beſides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Months in a year. The *Solicitors* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He ſometimes yielded unto them, ſometimes excuſed his *Freed-man*; ſome things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he diſſembled. *Licinius*, to make up his peace, ſent to the Emperor all his *Treaſure*, and that huge Maſs of Gold and Silver by thoſe unlawful means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being ſerved, and the *Gauls* not a little impoveriſhed; he recalled *Licinius*, and ſent *Tiberius* to ſettle the *Province*. So old and common a thing it is with great *Princes*, to ſuffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers* to ſuck like *Spunges*, the Wealth of the *Subject*, till they are quite full; and then to *ſqueeze* them into their own *Coffers*.

39. But the *Province* whoſe tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not ſo much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the natural ſtrength and ſituation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Juriſdiction thereof to one Man; fearing leſt he preſuming on the Wealth of the *People*, and ſite of the *Country*, would ſettle the poſſeſſion in himſelf. And ſo *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconſtancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in Coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as ſerving the City four Months yearly with Corn) not only truſted not the rule thereof into the

hands of any of the *Senators*, but expreſly forbad any of that Order (without his ſpecial permiſſion) to ſojourn there. It is a Principle in *State*, never to licenſe Men of great Houſes, and credit among the *People*, to have free acceſs into that *Countrey*, whoſe Revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakneſs doubtleſs in the Council of King *Henry* the ſixth, to ſuffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to paſs at leiſure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought Supply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entring once into *Alexandria*, only to ſee the *Antiquities* of it, and return; ſtirred ſuch Suſpicions and Diſtractions in the jealous Head of *Tiberius*, that he ſpared not ſharply to rebuke him for it. *Veſpaſian* alſo being by the *Syrian Legions* choſen Emperor, firſt aſſured himſelf of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a ſmall Power, againſt a ſtrong Hoſt eaſily defended. This Place he reſolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his Deſigns ſucceeded not luckily. And to this place he haſtened, after the defeat of the *Vitellian* Army, that ſo detaining the ordinary Proviſion of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his *Devotion*. The Government of this *Province* was by *AUGUSTUS* always committed to ſome one of the *Roman* Gentry, as leſs able, by reaſon of his low Condition, to work againſt the *Prince's* Safety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious Attributes of *Lieutenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconſul*, or *Prætor*: *Captain*, or *Preſident* of *Egypt*, was their higheſt *Title*: there being even in Titles no ſmall Motives to *Ambition*.

40. *AUGUSTUS* having by theſe means reduced both the City and *Provinces* under his abſolute Command; and being now declining in Strength, by reaſon of a ſudden and violent Sickneſs, began to call his Wits to Counſel, how to diſpoſe of the *Eſtate* after his deceaſe. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a Woman of immodeſt Carriage, never made further uſe of her Father's Greatneſs, than that ſhe ſatisfied her Luſts with the greater Inſolence. *Marcellus*, his Siſter's Son, and *Julia's* Husband, was a young Man of an ingenious Diſpoſition, and ſeemingly capable of the Fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AUGUSTUS* preferred to the *Pontificial* Dignity and *Ædileſhip*: Yet once upon his Sickneſs, he privately determined to chooſe another Succeſſor in the Commonwealth, rather than his own Family, and not to leave the *Empire* to *Marcellus*, who he held unable to undergo it, but to his Companion in Arms, *Agrippa*, a Man daunted neither with adverſe, nor altered with proſperous Fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards ſo ſtomached, that he began to grutch at *Agrippa's* Greatneſs, and to bear a vigilant Eye on his Plots and Actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa*, unwilling to offend him; under whoſe future Government he was in all likelihood to end the reſt of his Days, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that ſo his Abſence either might allay, or remove the Diſpleaſure conceived againſt him by the young *Prince*. An Action full of Wiſdom and Magnanimity. For though *AUGUSTGS's* chief End was to diſcountenance the popular Dependencies of his *Son*, by the Favours heaped on his *Servant*; yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favourite ought to have ſo much in him of the *Perſian* Religion, as to worſhip the *Riſing-Sun* alſo; and that he ſhould reſemble old *Janus* with two Faces, with the one looking on the *King regnant*, with the other on the *Prince ſucceſſive*.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, married his Widow, and on her begat two Sons, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whoſe Actions afterwards afforded ſuch variety for Cenſure, that there was wanting neither much reaſon to commend, nor little to condemn them. On theſe two, or at leaſt one of them, *AUGUSTUS* now grown aged, reſolves to ſettle the Eſtate; and, if they failed, upon ſuch others, as by the Liberty of the Laws, he might *adopt*: *Adoption* in the Eſtimation of the *Roman* Laws being indeed *another Nature*. Poſterity, whether it be *natural*, or only *legal*, is the beſt *Support* of the *Arms Imperial*: ſuch as both fortifies the Prince, and aſſures the Subject. Yet this he did, not without much Reluctancy, and a great Conflict in his Mind. 'Sometimes his Thoughts ſuggeſted to him, that the deſigned Succeſſors draw to them all the Attendance and Reſpect, from the *Prince* in *poſſeſſion*; that they have always a lingring deſire to be actually ſetled in the *Throne*: That they ſuppoſe the Life of the preſent *Prince* too tedious, not caring by what means it were ſhortned: That ſometimes it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Succeſſor himſelf alſo. On the other ſide his better Thoughts prompted him to conſider, in what a miſerable diſtraction he ſhould leave the *Empire*, if ſudden Death ſhould take from him an Ability to nominate his Heir: The fear conceived in the whole City at his laſt Sickneſs: That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all hands condemned, for leaving his Kingdom to the ſharpeſt Sword: That the Commonwealth faln into Diſſentions, could not be ſetled again without a lamentable War, and a bloody Victory: That the People ſeeing him *Childleſs* would not only contemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old *Liberty*, though with the ruine of the State: That it was the Cuſtom of *Tyrants*, to deſire the eternizing of their Deaths, by the downfall of their *Countries*. His Mind thus diſtracted and perplexed, at laſt he brake in this manner. Thou haſt, *Octavian*, a Wolf by the Ears, which to hold ſtill, or let ago, is alike dangerous. Many Inconveniences may enſue, if thou doſt not declare thy Succeſſor; more if thou doſt. The good of the *Republick* conſiſteth in knowing the future *Prince*. Thine own Welfare dependeth upon the *Concealment*. The *Common Good* is to be preferred before any *private*: Yet ought *Charity to begin at home*. No, *Octavian*, no: As thou haſt receiv'd, ſo ſhew thy ſelf worthy of the Title of *Pater Patriæ*. Yea, and perhaps this Deſignation may ſecure thine own Eſtate. For what will it profit the People to conſpire againſt thee; when they ſhall ſee a Succeſſor at hand, either of thine own Body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy Place, and revenge thy Wrongs?

42. Thus reſolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; deſiring, though he made ſhew to the contrary, they ſhould be *Conſuls elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wiſely forecaſting the Dangers incident to himſelf, if they ſhould make their abode in *Rome*; he ſendeth them with honourable Charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exerciſe them in *Feats of War*, as to take away all Cauſe of Faction in the Court, and Sedition in the City. Which *Myſtery* of State, as it was anciently practiſed by moſt *Princes*, ſo at this Day by the *Grand Seignior*; who always ſendeth his eldeſt Son unto *Amaſia*, as Governour thereof; from whence, till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In theſe Journeys died the two young *Princes*; a Misfortune which *AUGUSTUS* bare nobly; neither baniſhing Grief, with a *Stoical Apathy*; nor ſpending the time in womaniſh Lamentations. Having performed due Rites to the Dead, he adopted his Wife's Son, *Tiberius*: A Man, for the conveniency and ripeneſs of his *Age*, not *unfit*; in *Feats of Arms*, not *unexpert*; in *Humane Learning*, not *ignorant*; but withal ſuſpected to be cruelly given, and poſſeſſed with the hereditary Pride of the *Claudian* Family. A ſtrange Medley of vertuous and vicious Qualities! *Tiberius*, ſuch was the Will of his Father, to eſtabliſh the Succeſſion with more Stays than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Druſus's* Son, then commanding over eight *Legions* in *Germany*: which done, he ſpeedeth to his Charge in *Illyricum*. This Man *AUGUSTUS* appointed to be his Succeſſor, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the Party; but to win Honour to himſelf; and to make the *Roman* People again wiſh for him, when they ſhould ſee that infinite diſproportion in all Royal and Kingly Qualities, between the old and now *Emperors*,

A

A Fetch, after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the Adoption of *Caius Caligula*.

43. The laſt (though not the leaſt) help of the *Empires* eſtabliſhment, was the long life and reign of our *AUGUSTUS*: As having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Sovereignty*, by the *Senate* and People. All the young Men in the City were born after the firſt *Decennium* of the *Monarchy*. Moſt of the old Men, during the Civil Wars: Few had ſeen what was the ancient *form* of *Government* in the Common-wealth: many did not deſire it: For at the preſent, enjoying Peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what ſad and tragical reports their Fathers made of the former Troubles and *Proſcriptions*, they contented themſelves with the new Government; as more eſteeming a ſecure and happy *Subjection*, than a dangerous and factious *Liberty*. By which long time of Empire, and the policies already recited, beſides many others, which I can neither learn by Relation, nor gather by Preſumptions; did *AUGUSTUS* ſo firmly ſettle the *Roman* Monarchy, that it continued ſome hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Succeſſors were in a manner Monſters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than Men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own *Tyranies*, and their Bondmens *Extortions*, would have ruined any *Monarchy* not founded by *AUGUSTUS*.

44. To ſpeak concerning the Domeſtical Affairs of this *Emperor*, is beyond my *Theme*. As either how far he ſuffered himſelf to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he uſed variety of Women; not ſo much to ſatisfie an inordinate Appetite, as by ſo many Women to fiſh out the ſecret deſigns of many Men. He was too exact a Stateſman to be perfect in *Soldiery*; and in all his Wars was proſperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his *Captains* Valour than his own. The *Common-wealth*, which he found weak and in *Rubbiſh*, he left *Adamantine*, and Invincible. In Behaviour he was Affable and Gracious; in his Diſcourſe, Sententious; to the good, of a moſt ſweet Diſpoſition; to the lewd and diſhoneſt, harſh and unpleaſant. *Friendſhip* he contracted with few, and that ſlowly; but to them whom he once loved, conſtant and bountiful to the laſt. Finally ſuch a one he was, of whom I will only ſay, what I find ſpoken of *Severus*; ‘It had been an ineffable benefit to ‘the *Common-wealth* of *Rome*, if either he had never *died*, ‘or never been *born*.

Thus having drawn the picture of this puiſſant and prudent *Prince* (though I confeſs with too much ſhadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman* Emperours: in which I ſhall take notice of ſuch of their Actions only, as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decreaſe of their Power and Empire; or point to any ſingle matter which concerns the *Church*.

The *Roman* Emperors.

A. M.

3902 1 *Julius Cæſar* the laſt of the *Dictators*, and the firſt of the *Emperors*: In Memory of whom the following Emperors were called *Cæſars* till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the Title of the Heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor; the firſt who had it in that ſenſe being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3906 2 C. *Octavianus Cæſar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Auguſtus*; who added unto the *Roman* Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*.

A. Chr. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born. 56.

17 3 *Tiberius Nero*, the Son-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, ſubdued many of the *German* Nations; and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time *CHRIST* ſuffered. 23.

39 4 *Caius Caligula*, the Son of *Germanicus*, Son of *Druſus*, the Brother of *Tiberius* and of *Agrippina*, Neece to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by his Daughter *Julia*. 3.

43 5 *Claudius Cæſar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, Brother of *Germanicus*, and Son of *Druſus* by *Antonia*, Neece to *Auguſtus* by his Siſter *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the *Roman* Empire. 13.

57 6 *Domitius Nero*, Son of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina*, Daughter to *Germanicus*, the laſt of the *Cæſars*. He made the *Cottian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman* Emperors; and was the firſt that raiſed any publick Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 67. 13.

7 *Sergius Galba*, choſen by the *French* and *Spaniſh* Legions.

8 *Salvius Otho*, made Emperor by the *Prætorian* Soldiers.

9 *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German* Legions.

71 10 *Flavius Veſpaſianus*, choſen by the *Syrian* and *Judæan* Armies, ſubverted utterly the *Common-wealth* of the *Jews*, by the valour and proweſs of his Son *Titus*; and brought *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the Form of *Roman* Provinces. 9.

80 11 *Titus Veſpaſianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the *Jews*. 2.

82 12 *Fl. Domitianus*, who raiſed the ſecond Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 96. *aliis* 92. 15.

97 13 *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born; as all the reſt had been before him, but not many after him. 2.

99 14 *Ulpius Trajanus*, by Birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: He made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carried the *Roman* Armies over *Euphrates*, ſubduing *Armenia*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*, and raiſed the third Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 110. *aliis* 101. 19.

118 15 *Ælius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewiſh* Nation, and continued the Perſecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138 16 *Antoninus Pius*, whoſe friendſhip was ſought by the very *Indians*. 24.

162 17 *Marcus Antoninus*, ſurnamed the Philoſopher, aſſociated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whoſe valour he ſubdued the *Parthians*. He raiſed the fourth Perſecution againſt the Church. *An.* 167. 19.

181 18 *L. Antoninus Commodus*, Son to *Marcus*, the firſt Emperor that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194 19 *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperour againſt his will.

20 *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Soldiers.

195 21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Cteſiphon* from the *Parthians*, ſubdued the Provinces of *Oſroene*; and raiſed the Fifth Perſecution, *An.* 195. 18.

213 22 *Baſſianus Caricalla*, Son to *Severus*. 7.

220 23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperor by the Men of War ſix Months.

221 24 *Varius Heliogabalus*, the ſuppoſed Son of *Caracalla*, three years and two months.

225 25 *Alexander Severus*, Couſen of *Varius*. 13.

238 26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obſcure Birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raiſed the ſixth Perſecution. *An.* 237. 6.

241 27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate againſt *Maximinus*. 6.

247 28 *Philip*, an *Arabian*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be a Chriſtian. 7.

252

252 29 *Decius*, ſlain in War againſt the *Goths*; the Author of the Seventh Perſecution raiſed againſt the Church. *An.* 252.

254 30 *Gallus Hoſtilianus.* 2.

256 31 *Æmilianus* the *Moor.*

256 32 *Valerianus*, the Author of the Eighth Perſecution, *An.* 259. He was taken Priſoner by *Sapores*, King of *Perſia*, and made to ſerve him for a Footſtool. 9.

261 33 *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*, in whoſe time the 30 Tyrants ingroſſed unto themſelves ſeveral parts of the Empire. 7.

267 34 *Claudius* II, who after a ſhort and troubleſom time, left it to

268 35 *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the ſame but 17 days.

269 36 *Valer. Aurelianus*, reſtored again the antient Diſcipline, ſuppreſſed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquiſhed the *Goths*; but was a greater Perſecutor of the Church. *An.* 278. 6.

275 37 *Annius Tacitus*, deſcended from *Tacitus* the Hiſtorian.

277 38 *Florianus*, an Emperor of two Months only.

277 39 *Valerius Probus.* 6.

282 40 *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*. 6.

283 41 *Diocleſian*, firſt aſſociated *Maximinianus* by the name of *Emperor*, or *Auguſtus*; and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Conſtantius Chlorus*, by the name of *Cæſars*. He had had continual Wars againſt the *Perſians*, and raiſed the Tenth Perſecution againſt the Church, *An.* 302. which held ſo long, and was ſo vehement withal, that as St. *Hierome* writes, there were 5000 ſlain for every day in the year, ſave the firſt of *January*. He afterwards reſigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Salona*. 20.

306 42 *Conſtantius Chlorus*, a friend to *Chriſtians*. 2.

306 43 *Conſtantine*, Son of *Chlorus*, ſurnamed *Magnus*, or the Great, the firſt *Emperor* that countenanced the Goſpel, and embraced it publickly; which he is ſaid to have done on this occaſion. At the ſame time that he was ſaluted Emperor in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was choſen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Soldiers; and *Licinius* named Succeſſor by *Maximinianus*, the Aſſociate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being penſive and ſolicitous upon theſe diſtractions, he caſt his eyes up towards Heaven, where he ſaw in the Air a lightſome Pillar in the form of a Croſs, wherein he read theſe words, ἐν τούτῳ νίκα, *In hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Viſion, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he ſhould overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly Victorious, from which time he not only favoured the *Chriſtians*, but became a very zealous Profeſſor of the Faith and Goſpel. I know *Zoſimus* an Heathen Hiſtorian, partly out of Malice to the *Chriſtians* in general, and partly a particular grudg to the Emperor *Conſtantine*, reporteth otherwiſe of the Cauſes of his Converſion: But the authority and conſent of all *Chriſtian* Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the teſtimony of one ſingle Heathen, had he not been biaſſed (as he was) by his diſaffections, he Reigned 30 years 10 months.

Before this time it is obſerved, that few (if at all any) of the *Roman* Emperors died a natural death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæſar* unto *Conſtantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Auguſtus* made away by his Wife *Livia*; as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was ſlain by *Caſſius Chæreas*; *Claudius* poyſoned by his Wife *Agrippina*; *Nero*, and *Otho*, laid violent hands upon themſelves; *Galba*, and *Vitellius*, maſſacred by the Soldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Letus* and *Electus*, *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Soldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*; *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus* ſucceſſively by the Men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Soldiers; *Hoſtilianus* by *Gallus* and *Æmilianus*; and they by the Soldiers; *Valerianus* died a Priſoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the author of his own end; *Aurelianus* murthered by his Houſhold Servant; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Tacitus* and *Probus*, by the fury of the Military Men. And yet I have omitted out of this Accompt ſuch of the Emperors as were tumultuouſly made by the Army, without the approbation of the *Senate*; as alſo the *Cæſars*, or deſigned Succeſſors of the Empire; moſt of which got nothing by their deſignation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur.* Some of theſe were cut off for their Miſdemeanors; ſome for ſeeking to revive again the ancient Diſcipline; and ſome that others might enjoy their places. The chief cauſe of theſe continual Maſſacres, proceeded originally from the *Senate*, and Emperors themſelves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Soldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that Election; *Evulgato* (ſaith *Tacitus*) *imperii arcano principem alibi quam* Romæ *fieri poſſe*: when that Secret was once diſcovered, that an Emperor might be made in another place than *Rome*, more Emperors were made abroad in the Field by the *Legions*, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly from the *Emperors* alone, who by an unſeaſonable love to their *Guard-Soldiers*, ſo ſtrengthned them with Priviledges, and nuſled them in their licentious Courſes, that on the ſmalleſt Rebuke, they which were appointed for the ſafety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their Ruine: So truly was it ſaid by *Auguſtus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum eſt eſſe ſine cuſtode, ſed multo magis a cuſtode metuendum eſt*: It is a fearful thing to be without Guards, but it is more fearful to have them The laſt cauſe (be it *cauſa per accidens*, or *per ſe*) was the Largeſs which the new Emperors uſed to give unto the Men of Service; a Cuſtom begun by *Claudius Cæſar*, and continued by all his Succeſſors: In ſo much that the Empire became ſaleable, and many times he which bad moſt had it. As we ſee in *Dion*, when *Sulpitianus* offering twenty *Seſtertiums* to each Soldier, was (as if they had been buying a ſtock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promiſed them five and twenty *Seſtertiums* a Man. So that *Herodian* juſtly complaineth of this Donative; *Id initium cauſaque militibus fuit, ut etiam in poſterum turpiſſimi contumaciſſimique evaderent, ſic ut avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad ſanguinem uſque proveherent.* That is to ſay, *From this occaſion and beginning, the Soldiers every day grew more ſhameleſs, and leſs regardful of their* Prince: *So that their Covetouſneſs encreaſing, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at laſt in the frequent ſhedding of their Bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Succeſſor*: So as the Emperor *Conſtantine* wanted not good reaſon, beſides their ſiding againſt him for *Maxentius*, to Caſhier theſe Guards, as grown more dangerous than uſeful to *Imperial* Majeſty. And ſo accordingly he did, levelling their *ſtanding Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole Company, or putting them under other Officers, and to other Services, by means whereof they were not able to create the like Diſturbances, or diſpoſe of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of theſe *Guards* which before were two (*Præfecti Prætorio* in the *Latin*) he encreaſed their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Juriſdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and caſting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own deviſing.

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman* Empire, whilſt it remained one intire Body (as it was before the time of *Conſtantine,* who at his death divided it among his Sons) it was in length about three thouſand Miles, namely from the *Iriſh* Ocean Weſt, to the River *Euphrates* on the Eaſt; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thouſand Miles. And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions ſometimes farther *Eaſt,* and *North*; yet could they never quietly ſettle themſelves in thoſe Conqueſts. Nature (it ſeemeth) had appointed them theſe bounds, not ſo much to limit the *Empire,* as to defend it. For the Enemies found thoſe Rivers, by reaſon of the depth of the Channel, and violent current of the Stream, as a couple of impregnable Fortreſſes; purpoſely (as it were) erected to hinder them from harraſing the *Romans* Countries.

The Revenues of it *Lipſius* in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana,* eſteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty Millions of Crowns; and that they were no leſs, may be made more than probable by theſe reaſons: 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus,* that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount to one hundred and twenty Millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few queſtion it) we cannot in proportion gueſs the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yield leſs than one hundred and fifty Millions; eſpecially conſidering what Arts-Maſters the *Romans* were, in levying and raiſing their Taxes and cuſtomary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Soldiers which were diſperſed over the Provinces, received in ordinary pay, (beſides proviſion of Corn, Apparel, and Officers wages) five Millions, 516062 pounds and ten ſhillings of our Money; which amounteth unto ſixteen Millions of Crowns, or thereabout. In the City it ſelf were kept in continual Pay, ſeven thouſand Soldiers of the Watch, four thouſand or ſix thouſand for the defence of the City, and ten thouſand for the Guard of the Emperor's Perſon. The two firſt had the ſame Wages, the laſt the double Wages of a *Legionary* Soldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of diſburſals, and I think nothing of the ſum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* ſpent in one year two Millions and ſeven hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; how *Nero* moſt laviſhly gave away two Millions and one hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few Months, was nine hundred thouſand *Seſtertiums* in Arrerages; every *Seſtertium* being valued at ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite ſums. 4. When *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was ſo impoveriſhed, that he profeſſed in open Senate, that he wanted to ſettle the Common-wealth forty Millions of *Seſtertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve Millions of our *Engliſh* Money: which Proteſtation (ſaith *Sueton*) ſeemed probable, *Quia & male partis optime uſus eſt*. Now unleſs the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have ſpoken, by what means could this extraordinary ſum be raiſed? 5. We may gueſs at the general Revenue by the Moneys iſſuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded the *Ptolomies* twelve thouſand Talents yearly: Neither had the *Romans* leſs, they being more perfect in inhanſing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cæſar* ceſſed at the yearly Tribute of twenty Millions of Crowns. And no doubt the reſt of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And laſtly, the infinite ſums of Money given by the Emperors in way of largeſs, are proofs ſufficient for the greatneſs of the In-come. I will inſtance in *Auguſtus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the Victory of *Actium,* and the reſt, I will ſpecifie the Legacy at his Death: He bequeathed (by his Teſtament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common ſort, and the reſt of the People, three pound eight ſhillings a Man to every Soldier of the *Prætorian* Bands, ſeven pounds ſixteen ſhillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* Soldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten ſhillings ſix pence; which amounted to a mighty maſs of Money.

The Arms or Enſigns of this Empire when it was up and in flouriſhing, was the *Eagle*; Not born, as now in Colours, and a Banner; but in an Image or Portraicture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the Earth at pleaſure. This Enſign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ ſigna quod quaſi labantia haſtis appenderentur* Labara *dixerunt,* ſaith *Lipſius, Epiſt. Qu. Ep.* 5. The uſe as of this, ſo of other Standards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the ſecond of *Numbers,* namely, *ut ad eorum aſpectum, bellatores dividantur & uniantur,* to call together, and diſtribute the Soldiers according to occaſion. And certainly for this end and purpoſe were thoſe Enſigns firſt invented. Afterwards they were applied to the diſtinguiſhing of *Tribes* and Families; and at laſt beſtowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well-deſerving: Thoſe which had been the Enſigns of War, ſo becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in Colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturn,* in a Field *Sol,* which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *moſt rich.* It was firſt born by *Ca. Marius* in his ſecond Conſulſhip, and in his Wars againſt the *Cimbri*; from him conveyed to *J. Cæſar,* who was allied to him in deſign and perſon; and ſo derived unto the Emperors, his Succeſſors.

But to proceed, *Conſtantine* having ſetled his affairs in peace, and caſhiered the *Prætorian* Guards, fell to new modelling the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumberſome and unweildy to be governed by the former Polity; as indeed it was. And firſt of all, he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordered a particular *Preſident,* that had his reſidence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced theſe Provinces under fourteen *Dioceſes,* (for ſo he called the greater diſtributions of his Empire) ſeven of which were in the *Eaſt* parts thereof, that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Egypt,* of the *Orient,* of *Aſia,* of *Pontus, Thrace, Dacia,* and *Macedon*: And as many alſo in the *Weſt, viz.* the *Prefecture* of the City of *Rome* (which I count for one,) the *Dioceſe* of *Italy, Africk,* and *Illyricum,* of *France, Spain,* and *Britain.* Finally inſtead of the two *Præfecti Prætorio,* which had the command of the *Prætorians,* he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: That is to ſay, the *Præfectus-Prætorio Italiæ,* under whom were the Dioceſes of *Italy, Africa,* and *Illyricum*: *Præfectus-Prætorio Galliarum,* who had under him the *Dioceſes* of *France, Spain,* and *Britain.* 3. The *Præfectus-Prætorio Orientis,* who had command over the *Dioceſes* of *Egypt,* the *Orient,* the *Aſian,* the *Pontic* and *Thracian* Dioceſes. And 4. the *Præfectus-Prætorio Illyrici,* under whoſe ſuperintendence, beſides *Illyricum* it ſelf, were the *Dioceſes* of *Macedon* and *Dacia* only, each of theſe *Præfects* having a *Vicarius,* or Lieutenant in the ſeveral *Dioceſes* under his Authority, who fixed their Reſidence in the head City of the *Dioceſe.* And this I have the rather noted, becauſe of the relation which the *Polity* of the *Chriſtian* Church had to this Diviſion: it being ſo ordered in the beſt and pureſt times thereof, that in every City where the Emperors had an Officer, whom they called *Defenſor Civitatis,* the *Chriſtians* ſhould have a *Biſhop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan,* and over every *Dioceſe* an *Archbiſhop* or *Primate,* from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And ſo far *Conſtantine* did well; if at the leaſt the caſting of the Empire into ſo many Dioceſes was of his deviſing. But I have reaſon to believe, that it was more ancient: The Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome, Carthage, Alexandria, Antioch,* and other of the greater Churches, being ſetled in a Preheminence of Juriſdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* aſſigned to them long time before the Council of *Nice,* and conſequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Conſtantine*, who poſſibly might act no more in this great buſineſs, than the aſſigning of a *Præfectus-Prætorio* to each ſeveral Quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceſes* unto each *Præfectus*. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that he committed divers Errors, which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that ha[illegible]een done by his Predeceſſors. Firſt, in tranſlating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which tranſplantation, the Empire loſt much of its natural vigour: as we ſee by experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, loſt much of their Vertue which was formerly in them. On which reaſon *Camillus* would not ſuffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it, ſet fire on the Town, and ſo conſumed it, *ut nunc* Veios *fuiſſe, laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A ſecond fault of this *Conſtantine* was the dividing the Empire amongſt his Sons, which only concerned himſelf. For though it was quickly re-united in the Perſon of *Conſtantius* (his Brethren dying without Iſſue;) yet his Example being followed by others, the Empire was after torn into many pieces, to the deſtruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors uſed ſometimes to aſſociate ſome Partner with them; but ſo that they did manage it as one ſole Eſtate: *Conſtantine* (if I remember rightly) being the firſt which parcelled it into ſeveral Sovereignties, each independant of the other, allotting to *Conſtantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt; to *Conſtans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Africk*; to *Conſtantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legions* and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eaſtern parts of his Dominions, pretending to uſe them as a Bulwark againſt the *Perſians*; laying thereby thoſe paſſages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations enter'd, and ſubdued the Weſt. For though inſtead of theſe *Colonies* he planted Gariſons and Forts in convenient places, yet theſe being filled with Soldiers, for the moſt part out of other Countries, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and muſt have done) but on the firſt onſet of thoſe *Barbarians* abandoned them to the will of the Enemy. So that *Zozimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewrayeth much Malice) doth call him, nor untruly, the firſt ſubverter of that flouriſhing Monarchy. To theſe three we may add a forth, which concerns the Emperors in general; namely, their ſtupid negligence and degenerate Spirits, which ſhewed it ſelf moſt viſible in the laſt of

The *Weſtern* Emperors.

A. C.

Conſtantine the Great died in the Year of *Chriſt*, 338.

341 1 *Conſtance*, the youngeſt Son of *Conſtantinus Magnus*, his Brother *Conſtantine* being dead, in the third Year of his Reign, remained ſole Emperor of the Weſt. 13.

354 2 *Conſtantius*, the other of *Conſtantine's* Sons ſucceeded *Conſtans* in his part, after his deceaſe; uniting the divided Empire into one Eſtate. He reigned 24 Years, 5 Months, and died in the Year of *Chriſt*, 361.

365 3 *Julian* the Apoſtate.

4 *Jovian*, a Catholick Chriſtian Prince of ſeven Months.

366 5 *Valentinian*, Emperor of the Weſt, his Brother *Valens* ruling in *Conſtantinople*, and the Eaſtern parts.

377 6 *Valentinian* II. youngeſt Son of the former *Valentinian*, 17 Years.

381 In the fifth Year of *Valentinianus* II. *Theodoſius the Great* was made Emperor of the Eaſt, he reigned 16 Years and died in the Year of *Chriſt*, 396.

397 7 *Honorius* the ſecond Son of *Theodoſius* the Emperor, (his elder Brother *Acradius* reigning in the Eaſt) in whoſe time *Alarick* with the *Goths* invaded *Italy*, ſacked *Rome*, and made themſelves Maſters of the Country, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain*. 26. others aſſign him 28. In the Year of *Chriſt* 411. *Rome* was taken by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*; which was the firſt time it fell into the hands of the barbarous Nations.

425 8 *Valentinian* III. during whoſe time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in *Italy*; and the *Vandals* ſeized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* alſo after his deceaſe: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whoſe Wife he had trained into the Court, and raviſhed) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter on another occaſion. He was Son unto *Conſtantius Cæſar* by *Placidia* Siſter to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Authulfus* King of the *Goths*. He reigned 30 Years.

455 9 *Maximus* having ſlain *Valentinian* the Third, ſucceeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the Wife of *Valentinian* (who had ſome inkling of the manner of her Husband's death) had drawn into *Italy*, he was ſtoned to death by his own Soldiers, 1.

456 10 *Avitus*, choſen Emperor in a military Tumult.

457 11 *Majoranus*. 4.

461 12 *Severus*. 6.

467 13 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five Years was ſlain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* a *Suevian* born, the chief Commander of the Armies, who had an aim to get the Empire for himſelf, but died as ſoon as he had vanquiſhed and ſlain *Anthemius*.

471 14 *Olybrius*, an Emperor of four Months only.

472 15 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As alſo was

474 16 *Julius Nepos*, depoſed by *Oreſtes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his Son, called at firſt *Momillus*; but after his aſſuming the Imperial Title, he was called as in contempt *Auguſtulus*.

475 17 *Auguſtulus*, the laſt of the Emperors who reſided in *Italy*, vanquiſhed by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*, an ominous thing, that as *Auguſtus* raiſed his Empire, ſo an *Auguſtulus* ſhould ruin it. In the Year of *Chriſt*, 477.

But though *Auguſtulus* loſt the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not ſuffered to enjoy it † long: *Zeno* the Emperor of the Eaſt ſending *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* to expel him thence, and to poſſeſs himſelf of *Italy*, the reward of his Valour. And this the Emperor did the rather, partly becauſe the *Goths* were Chriſtians, and in good terms of correſpondency with him: but principally to remove the active Nation ſomewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might diſmiſs them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the *Roman* Empire; an Honour firſt deviſed by the Emperor *Conſtantine*; and of ſo high eſteem from the firſt Inſtitution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedency of the *Prætorii Præfecti*, who before took place next to the Emperor himſelf. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* ſet upon it any lower eſtimate, in caſe he did not add much unto it; when to the Title of Emperor of the *Romans*, he added that of a *Patrician* in the ſtile Imperial. *Theodorick* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward *Italy*; and having vanquiſhed *Odoacer*, ſecures himſelf in his new Conqueſts by divers politick proceedings; firſt by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortreſſes at home. To fortifie himſelf abroad he took to Wife *Adelheida*, Daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*; marrying his

† *He Reigned 16 Years and 6 Months. This was the firſt of the barbarous Kings that reigned peaceably in* Italy.

Siſter *Hemelfride* to *Thoriſmund*, King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, *Amalaſunta*, a ſecond Daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Neece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus back'd with theſe Alliances with his Neighbour Princes, (all equally concern'd in the ſubverting of the *Roman* Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alps*, and the Shores of the *Adriatick*, to impede the paſſage of the barbarous Nations into *Italy*. His Soldiers and Commanders he diſperſed into moſt parts of the Country; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whoſe wavering and unconſtant Nature he was ſomewhat doubtful; partly to unite both People in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Cuſtoms; and partly that he might more eaſily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite diſordered by the frequent Inundations of Luſt and Rapine; he reduced to ſuch a peaceable and ſetled Government, that before his Death they had quite loſt the memory of their former Miſeries: inſtead whereof a general felicity had diffuſed it ſelf over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, ſtrengthen'd, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private Carriage diſcreet and affable. Finally, (as *Velleius* ſaith of *Moroboduus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus*: And went the moſt judicious way to eſtabliſh his Dominion in *Italy*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman* Provinces, which he left thus confirmed and ſetled unto his Succeſſors.

A. Chr. The Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*.

493 1 *Theodorick*, of whom before; who to his Conqueſt of *Italy* added that of *Illyricum*, as alſo the appendant Iſlands to both thoſe Countries; and wreſted *Provence* in *France*, from the *Goths* of *Spain*. 33 Years.

527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his Daughter *Amalaſunta*, who in the minority of her Son managed the Affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing ſome danger out of *Greece*, ſhe reſtored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all thoſe Nations which had any Commerce with the *Roman* Empire, inſomuch that *pro miraculo fuerit ipſum audire loquentem*, ſaith *Procopius* of her. 8 Years.

534 3 *Theodatus*, the Son of *Hemelfride*, the Siſter of *Theodorick*, ſucceeded on the untimely Death of *Athalaricus*: Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperors, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Goths*) and deſiring before-hand to know his ſucceſs; was willed by a *Jew* to ſhut up a certain number of Swine, and to give ſome of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of *Romani*. Which done, and going to the Styes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothiſh* Faction all ſlain, and thoſe of the *Roman* half unbriſtled: And thereupon the *Jew* foretold, That the *Goths* ſhould be diſcomfited, and the *Romans* loſe a great part of their ſtrength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called *Orquarria*, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loſs of this Battel (won by *Beliſarius*, Commander of the Armies of the Emperor *Juſtinian*) drew on the loſs of *Rome*, and the Eaſt parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occaſioned the death of *Theodatus*, ſlain ſhortly after theſe great loſſes by the *Goths* themſelves, 3.

537 4 *Vitiges*, choſen by the *Goths*, beſieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the ſaid *Beliſarius*. 3.

540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Beliſarius*, choſen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after ſlain. 1.

541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable. 1.

542 7 [illegible]*as*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predeceſſors, and ſacked *Rome* in the ſight of *Beliſarius*, (then returned into *Italy*,) as not able to hinder him. Vanquiſhed and killed in fight by *Narſes*, in the 11*th* of his Reign. 11.

353 8 *Teyas*, the laſt King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, who being vanquiſhed by *Narſes* in the fourteenth Year of his Reign, ſubmitted himſelf to the Eaſtern Emperors: but after breaking out again, he was finally diſcomfited, and ſlain by *Narſes*, not far from the City of *Nocera*. *An.* 567. After which time, the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in Blood and Language, became one Nation.

But the Miſeries of *Italy*, and thoſe Weſtern parts were not ſo to end. No ſooner had God freed them from the rod of his Viſitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Perſecution*, formerly remembred; and giving them Peace within their Dwellings; but they became divided into *Schiſms* and *Factions*: and after wallowed in thoſe Sins; which a continual ſurfeit of Proſperity hath commonly attending on it. Inſomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about theſe times, complains of that high hand of wickedneſs, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the Lives of *Chriſtians* being grown ſo deplorably wicked, that they became a ſcandal to the Faith and Goſpel. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium*, *in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*; Chriſt is reproached on our Account, and the Chriſtian Law curſed, ſaith that godly Biſhop. So that their Sins being ripe for Vengeance, God ſent the barbarous Nations, as his *Executioners*, to execute his Divine Juſtice on theſe impenitent Men, and made them ſenſible, though *Heathens*, that it was God's work they did, and not their own, in laying ſuch Afflictions on theſe Weſtern parts. *Ipſi fatebantur non ſuum eſſe quod facerent, agi enim ſe & perurgeri divino juſſu*, They confeſſed that they did not their own work, becauſe they were forced and urged to it by a Divine Command; as the ſaid godly Biſhop doth inform us of them. On this impulſion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they firſt waſted *Spain*, and then haraſſed *Africk*: And at the ſame time, did *Attila* the *Hun* inſert into his Royal Titles the Stile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehenſion of ſome ſpecial and extraordinary calling to this publick Service. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, ſome of theſe barbarous People did not ſtick to ſay, That they were put on this employment by ſome Heavenly Viſions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In proſecution of the which, in leſs time than the compaſs of 80 Years, this very *Italy* (though anciently the ſtrength and ſeat of that Empire) was ſeven times brought almoſt unto deſolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, *viz.* Firſt by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, who ſacked *Rome*, *Naples*, *&c.* 2. By *Attila*, King of the *Huns* who razed *Florence*, waſted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the Interceſſion of Pope *Leo*. 3. By *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, who alſo had the Sackage of *Rome* it ſelf. 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperor *Maioranus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, who drove *Auguſtulus* the laſt Weſtern Emperor out of his Eſtate; and twice in thirteen Years laid the Country deſolate. 6. By *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*. And, 7. by *Gundebald*

King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranſack'd all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving poſſeſſion to the *Goths*. As for theſe *Goths*, being the firſt and laſt of thoſe barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the Spoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the ſpace of 72 Years, they were at laſt ſubdued by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two of the braveſt Soldiers that had ever ſerved the Eaſtern Emperors; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Juſtinian*. But *Narſes* having governed *Italy* about ſeventeen Years, and being after ſuch good Service moſt deſpightfully uſed by *Sophia* (never the wiſer for her Name) the Wife of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, abandon'd the Country to the *Lombards*. For the Empreſs envying his Glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government, but ſent him word, *That ſhe would make the* Eunuch (for ſuch he was) *come home and ſpin among her Maids*. To which the diſcontented Man returned this Anſwer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a Web, as neither ſhe nor any of her Minions ſhould ever be able to unweave*. And thereupon he opened the Paſſages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italy* with their Wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Country which anciently was inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, calling it by their own Names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf Maſter of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the Borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1. Of *Friuli* at the Entrance of *Italy*, for the admiſſion of more Aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders: 2. Of *Turlin*, at the Foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*: 3. *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the Incurſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern Parts of that Kingdom: And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the midſt of *Italy*, to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Succeſſors.

A.Ch. The *Lombardian* Kings of *Italy*.

568	1.	*Alboinus*.	6.
574	2.	*Clephes*.	1.
		Interregnum annorum.	11.
586	3.	*Autharis*.	7.
593	4.	*Agilulfus*.	25.
618	5.	*Adoaldus*.	10.
628	6.	*Ariaoldus*.	11.
639	7.	*Richaris*, or *Rotharis*.	16.
655	8.	*Radoaldus*.	5.
660	9.	*Aribertus*.	9.
669	10.	*Gundibertus*.	1.
670	11.	*Grimoaldus*.	9.
679	12.	*Garibaldus*, *menſ*.	3.
679	13.	*Partarithus*.	18.
698	14.	*Canibertus*.	12.
710	15.	*Luitbertus*.	1.
711	16.	*Rainbertus*.	1.
712	17.	*Aribertus II*.	12.
723	18.	*Aſprandus menſ*.	3.
723	19.	*Luitprandus*.	21.
744	20.	*Hildebrandus*, *menſ*.	6.
744	21.	*Rachiſius*.	6.
750	22.	*Aſtulphus*.	6.
756	23.	*Deſiderius*, the laſt of the *Lombards*.	18.

of whom more anon. In the mean time, we will look into the Story of ſome of the former Kings, in which we find ſome things deſerving our conſideration. And firſt beginning with *Alboinus*, the firſt of this Catalogue: Before his coming into *Italy* he had waged War with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepidæ*; whom he overthrew, and made a Drinking-cup of his Skull. *Roſamund* Daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that deteſted Cup; which ſhe ſo ſtomached, that ſhe promiſed one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her ſelf and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when he had conſented to, and performed accordingly, they were both ſo extremely hated for it, that they were fain to flee to *Ravenna*, and put themſelves into the Protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a deſire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be poſſeſſed of that Maſs of Treaſure which ſhe was ſaid to bring with her; but principally hoping by her Power and Party there, to raiſe a beneficial War againſt the *Lombards*, perſwaded her to diſpatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her Husband: to which ſhe willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for Drink, and ſhe gives him a ſtrong Poyſon; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the ſtrange Operation of it how the Matter went, he compelled her to drink the reſt: ſo both died together. 2. *Clephes*, the ſecond King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*; but was ſo tyrannical withal, that after his Death, they reſolved to admit of no more Kings, diſtributing the Government among thirty Dukes. Which Diviſion, though it held not above twelve Years, was the chief cauſe that the *Lombards* failed of being the abſolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the People having once caſt off the Yoak of Obedience, and taſted ſomewhat of the Sweetneſs of licentious Freedom, were never after ſo reduced to their former Duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in ſuch Atchievements as tended more unto the Greatneſs of the King, than the Gain of the Subject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14th King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled againſt him, one of the Clergy knowing that the King's Life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thruſt himſelf into the Head of the Enemy, where he loſt his own Life, but ſaved the King's. 4. *Aribert*, the 17th King, gave the *Coltian Alpes*, containing *Piedmont*, and ſome part of the Dutchy of *Millain*, to the Church of *Rome*: which is obſerved to be the firſt Temporal Eſtate that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the Foundation of that Greatneſs which they after came to. 5. The 19th King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia* and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*, having firſt won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof *An.* 741. The laſt *Exarch* being called *Eutychus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoy'd not his Conqueſts; for *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* III. ſolicited to come into *Italy*, overthrew *Aſtulphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The laſt King was *Deſiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the Firſt, and beſieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the Great, Succeſſor to *Pepin*, beſieged in *Pavy*, and himſelf with all his Children taken Priſoners, *An.* 774. And ſo ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 Years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: Many of whoſe Emperors uſed to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Biſhops of *Millain*, with an Iron Crown; which was kept at *Modoecum*, now called *Monza*, a ſmall Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Father's former Donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconitana*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For theſe and other Kindneſſes, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* IV. on *Chriſtmas*-day crowned Emperor of the Weſt, *Anno* 801. whoſe Succeſſors ſhall be reckoned when we come to the Story of *Germany*. At this Diviſion of the Empire, *Irene* was Empreſs of the Eaſt; to whom and her Succeſſors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria* (the Eaſt Parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperor and his Father, almoſt all the Lands which they poſſeſs at this Day; though afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperors, or under colour of their Title; by many ſeveral ways and means brought again unto them, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *ſui juris.* The reſt of *Italy*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuſcany*, *Friuli*, *Trevignia*, and whatſoever is at this Day in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Milan*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piedmont*, together with *Liguria*, or the States of *Genoua*, was reſerved by *Charles* unto himſelf, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his ſecond Son, with the Stile or Title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not reſt in the Houſe of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wreſting it from the Line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their ſeveral Factions, till in the end, inſtead of an united Kingdom, there roſe up many ſcattered Principalities, as ſhall hereafter be declared. But firſt we muſt proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we ſhall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the Confuſions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1. *Pepin*, Son of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2. *Barnard*, Son of *Pepin*.
3. *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
841 4. *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldeſt Son of *Ludovicus*. 15.
856 5. *Ludovicus* II. Emperor, eldeſt Son to *Lotharius*. 20.
876 6. *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngeſt Son of *Ludovicus Pius* II.
7. *Caroloman*, Nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his ſecond Son, ſurnamed the *Ancient*.
8. *Carolus Craſſus*, or the Fat Emperor. Brother of *Caroloman*, the laſt King of *Italy* of the Houſe of *Charles*: he died *Anno* 888.
888 9. *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, of the Kingdom of *Italy*, and in fine carrieth it againſt him; and was crown'd Emperor of *Italy* by *Formoſus*, upon the *Saracens* invading *Italy* in the Year 891.
894 10. *Lambert*, the Son of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Stephen* VI. in 897. He was confirmed Emperor again in the Year 904. and was ſlain in the Year 910. by the Earl of *Milan*.
900 11. *Ludovick*, Son of *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by ſome Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*; and is made King.
917 915 12. *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuli*, vanquiſhed *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italy*; and at laſt overcome by the *Hungarians*; who having waſted the Country, returned back again.
923 13. *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*, called into *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*, reſigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Couſin.
926 14. *Hugh D'Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this Reſignation; but after many Troubles, was at laſt outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France* in the Year 945.
Lothaire, Emperor, and ſole King of *Italy*.
946 15. *Berengarius* II. Son of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the Son of *Hugh*; beſieging *Adelhais* the next Heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken Priſoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
951 16. *Otho* called into *Italy* by *Adelhais*, Daughter to *Rodulph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*; marrieth the Lady, and in her Right is King of *Italy*.
974 17. *Otho* II. Son of the former *Otho*, marrieth *Theophania* Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower, 20.
984 18. *Otho* III. Emperor and King of *Italy*, in whoſe Minority the Kingdom was uſurped by
19. *Harduicus*, a Man of great Power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long Wars by *Henry* the ſucceeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20. *Henry*, the ſecond Emperor of that Name, having thrice vanquiſhed *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the ſame unto the Emperors his Succeſſors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Country governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by ſuch Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time ſent thither. But long it ſtaid not in that State. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Policy, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; ſtirred up continual Factions and Wars againſt them; and by that means, and by the Cenſures of the Church, which they denounced according as they ſaw occaſion, did ſo aſtoniſh and diſtract them, that in the end the Emperors began to lay aſide the Affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more Trouble than the Profit came to. Inſomuch that *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*, a valiant and a politick Prince, finding the ill Succeſs which *Henry* the Fourth and Fifth, and *Frederick* the Firſt and Second, Emperors of more Puiſſance than himſelf, had found in their *Italian* Actions and Pretenſions, reſolved to rid his Hands of that troubleſom and fruitleſs Province; and to that end made as much Money as he could of that Commodity, which he ſaw he was not like to keep. And yet he ſold good Peny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but ſix thouſand Crowns; the Citizens of *Luca*, ten thouſand; others, as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reaſon, why he went not into *Italy* to look to the Affairs thereof, as his Predeceſſors had done before him: he is ſaid to have returned for anſwer that Conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as other Beaſts did) at the Lion's Den;

———Quia me veſtigia terrent,
Omnia te adverſum ſpectantia, nulla retrorſum.

That is to ſay;

I dare not go, becauſe no Track I ſee
Of any Beaſt returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident Reſolution being followed by too many of his Succeſſors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themſelves the great Diſpoſers of the Affairs of *Italy*; but many petit Princes thereby took occaſion of getting all they could lay hold on for themſelves, and others. For by this means, the *Scaligers* made themſelves Maſters of *Verona*, the *Paſſariens* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*, and by the ſame the *Florentines* got *Piſtoia*, and *Ferrara* was poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* VII. provoked by theſe Indignities, made a Journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former Obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron-Crown; as were alſo *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles* IV. two of his Succeſſors: yet found they in concluſion ſuch ſmall benefit by the Enterprize, as did not quit Charge and Trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to the Pope's diſpoſing, who gave away to others what they could not manage; or otherwiſe confirmed thoſe Men in their Uſurpations, whom they ſound already poſſeſſed of the Emperors Countries, and bound them by that means the faſter to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their Eſtates in Fee: the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exerciſing the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquiſates, and Marquiſates to Dukedoms, which they often did for ready Money, or Reward of Service, or to preſerve ſome Shadow of their ancient Intereſt.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new Face of things, not only in regard of ſeveral Principalities and Forms of Government; but as repleniſhed with new Colonies or Sets of People, differing from the old in Manners as well as Language. And though the Soil be now as it was before, yet hath that alſo found ſome change in the different Production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and Works of Art. For now, beſides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the Staple Commodities of this Country, they ſupply the reſt of Chriſtendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffaties, Sattins, Grograins, Raſh, Fuſtians, Gold-wire, Allom, Armour, Glaſſes, and ſuch like Commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the moſt part Gentlemen of Noble Houſes, not only loſe not the Eſteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandiſe (as in other places;) but by reaſon that they are poſſeſſed of Eſtates in Land, which they manage by their Bailiffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthieſt Merchants in all *Chriſtendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of Affluence, which can be poſſibly enjoyed in ſo rich a Soil. Their Lands they ſet not at a Rent, but at thirds and halfs, according as the Soil is more or leſs fruitful; ſeldom abiding in the Country, but only for a Month or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themſelves with their Muſick and Miſtreſſes under the fragrant Hedges and ſhady Bowers, in as much Solace and Delight as may be deſired. The reſidue of the Year they ſpend in Cities, and places of the moſt reſort, for change of Company. But, on the other ſide, the Country Farmer lives a drudging and laborious Life, liable to all the Taxes and Impoſitions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any Diſburſments or Defalcations; inſomuch that it is Proverbially, but moſt truly ſaid, That *the rich Men in* Italy *are the richeſt, and the poor Men the pooreſt in all the World.*

Our Learned Author has, without doubt, truly repreſented the State of *Italy*, as it appeared to him from Authors perhaps written threeſcore or an hundred Years agone; but all the later Travellers agree (as one of them expreſſeth it,) That when a Man ſees what *Italy* was an Age or two agone, not to go back ſo far as to remember what *Rome* was once, he can hardly imagine how ſuch a Fall, ſuch a Diſpeopling, and ſuch a Poverty could befal a *Nation* and *Climate*, that Nature has made one of the richeſt in the World, or of *Europe* at leaſt. Thoſe *Italians* that have ſeen the Wealth and Abundance that is in *England* and *Holland*, though their Sun is leſs favourable, and their Climate is more unhappy, and then come home to ſee their Towns deſerted, and their Inhabitants in Rags, ſpeak of this ſometimes with an Indignation that is too ſenſible to be at all times kept within Bounds. And a little after he tells us, That conſidering it has a kind Sun, long and happy Summers, and mild Winters, a fruitful and rich Soil, and every thing that the Inhabitants can wiſh for on Nature's part, to render them the Envy of the World, they are yet become the Scorn and Contempt of all that ſee them. And as much as the *Dutch* ſeem to have acted in ſpite of Nature on the one hand, in rendring themſelves much more conſiderable than ſhe intended they ſhould be: So the Governments of *Italy* ſeem to have reverſed the Deſign of Nature as much on the other Hand, by reducing the Inhabitants to ſuch a degree of Miſery, in ſpite of all her Bounty. Thus not only one, but all our late Travellers, repreſent the preſent State of *Italy*, as the moſt poor, deſolate, ruin'd Country in the whole Chriſtian World.

But then the two Common-wealths of *Venice* and *Genoua* have managed their Buſineſs ſomething better: Their Territories are at leaſt full of People, tho' they do not abound ſo much in Wealth, eſpecially the former of theſe; for the latter is much the more wealthy as to its Inhabitants. The Reaſons of theſe great Changes are ſuppoſed to be, firſt, the change of the Current of the Trade of the World from the Eaſtern to the Weſtern Parts; The vaſt quantity of Silks Imported by the *Eaſt-India* and *Turkey* Trades into other Parts, and there Manufactur'd. So that *Italy* has now loſt all that Trade, as far as concerns a Foreign Conſumption. The Reformation has had its ſhare too, by abating the Reſort and the Wealth of *Italy*. And after all, their Princes have abated nothing of their Taxes: So that the Inhabitants are not only impoveriſhed, but utterly, in many places, extirpated, or driven into other Countries; and where there are any left, they ſeem to be as poor and miſerable as can be imagined, and utterly unable to defend their Country againſt any Foreigner that ſhall ever hereafter invade them.

All the Wealth that is now to be found in *Italy* is lodged in their Convents, Churches, and Clergy, where it ſerves to no other End but to amuſe the Minds of the People, to ſink their Trade and diſpeople their Country, by inviting too many to bury themſelves alive in thoſe plentiful, rich, eaſie Retirements: And thoſe that are left in the World are ſo diſpirited and worn out by their Miſeries and Poverty, that they are not able to ſupply the Nation with a ſufficient number of Inhabitants.

I ſuppoſe this to be enough to be ſaid of the preſent State of *Italy* in the General; the reſt being much better to be ſaid in the ſeveral places to which each Particular belongs.

The People generally are grave, reſpective and ingenious. Excellent Men (ſaid once an *Hiſpaniolized Italian*) but for theſe three things; that is to ſay, in their Luſts they are unnatural, in their Malice unappeaſable, in their Actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaſpheme rather than ſwear, and murder a Man ſooner than ſlander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of ſome particulars: It being obſerved by moderate and impartial Men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and moſt deſirous by all fair and friendly Offices to win their Loves. In Apparel they are ſaid to be very modeſt, in the Furniture of their Houſes ſumptuous, at their Tables neat, ſober of Speech, Enemies of all ill Reports of others; and of their own Reputation ſo exceeding tender, that whoſoever ſlandereth any one of them, if it come unto the Parties Ear he is ſure to die for it. Of Money and Expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more Coſt than he is ſure to ſave by, or receive great Thanks for: But otherwiſe for civil Carriage and Behaviour, ſurpaſſing all the Gentry of the World beſides. Only in Strictneſs to their Wives they exceed all Reaſon; of whom they are ſo extremely jealous, that they ſhut them up all Day from the common view, and permit them liberty of Diſcourſe with few or none. The Lock uſed by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be aſſured of his Wive's Chaſtity in the time of his abſence, is ſo known a Story that it needs no Report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous Humour in moſt Southern Nations, we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet, if that be true, which is proverbially ſpoken of the Women of *Italy*, the Huſbands have more reaſon for this ſtrict Reſtraint than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the moſt part witty in Speech, and modeſt in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is ſaid of them in the way of Proverb, *That they are as Magpies at the Door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the Houſe, Angels in the Streets,* and *Syrens in the Windows,* not wanting on this Ground to ſet out themſelves with all advantages of Art, their being few amongſt them who uſe not *painting*, and other the ſophiſtical Helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a Saying, That *if God make them Tall and Fat* (for the Title of a *Goodly Woman* is much prized amongſt them) *they will make themſelves Fair.*

The Language of both Sexes is very courtly and fluent, all of them ſpeaking the *Courtezan*, or Court-Language; notwithſtanding the diverſity of Dialects which is amongſt them. For tho' there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millaneſe* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genoeſe*; yet is is hard to be diſcerned by the Tone or Pronunciation what Language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is beſt ſpoken in the Great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* eſpecially; in which City *Guicciardine* the *Hiſtorian*, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Maſters of the *Italian* Language, did live and flouriſh in their times.

For other Men of Note both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many ſince the fall of the Empire, *viz.* *Æneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the Name of *Pius* the Second; 2. *Marſilius Patavinus*, a ſtout Defender of the Imperial Rights: 3. *Petrarch*, a *Roman* born: 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Reſtorer of polite Literature in *Italy*: 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*: And 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians: 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Aſtrologer: 8. *Arioſto*, and 9. *Taſſo*, the moſt renowned Poets of their times, and the latter never fellowed ſince: 10. *Sixtus Senenſis*, one of the beſt Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine: 11. *Bellarmine*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttreſſes and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms: 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the firſt Reſtorer of the Honour of the *Italian* Soldiery: 2. *Forti Bracchiro*, and 3. *Nic lao Picinino*, two of his training up in the Feats of Chivalry: 4. 5. *Sforza*, the Father, and the Son; of which the Son attained by his Valour to the Dukedom of *Millain*: 6. *Chriſtopher Columbus*, a *Genoeſe*: 7. *Americus Ve putius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebaſtian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Diſcoverers of *America*: 9. *Andrea D' Oria*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles* the Fifth, and 10. *Ambroſe Spinola* (both *Genoeſe*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*: Which laſt being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as iſſued from a Race of Merchants, (though otherwiſe of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and ſudden Anſwer, That *he thought it a greater Honour to him, being a* Merchant, *to have the command of ſo many* Princes; *than it could be unto the other, though a Prince by Birth, to be under the command of ſo many* Merchants.

The uſual Diviſion of *Italy* is into ſix Parts, 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuſcany*, 3. The Land of the *Church*, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: And of them there is paſſed this Cenſure according to the principal Cities; *i. e. Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for Beauty, *Genoa* for Statelineſs, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for Riches. But take it as it ſtands at the preſent time; and *Italy* is beſt divided into

The Kingdoms of { *Naples*. p. 56.
Sicily. p. 67.
Sardinia. 73

The Land or Patrimony of the *Church*. 79
The Great Dukedom of *Tuſcany*. 106.

The Common-wealths of { *Venice*. 97.
Genoa. 111.
Lucca. 112.

The Eſtates of *Lombardy, i. e.* { The Dukedoms of { *Millain*. 118
Mantua. 121.
Modena. 122
Parma. 122
Monteferrat.
The Principality of *Piedmont*.

The Kingdom of NAPLES.

THE Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all ſides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, excepting where it joineth on the Weſt to the *Lands of the Church*; from which ſeparated by a Line drawn from the Mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which Account it taketh up all the Eaſt of *Italy*; the Compaſs of it being reckon'd at 1468 Miles.

It hath been called ſometimes the Realm of *Pouille*, from *Pouille* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the firſt Poſſeſſion of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdom) in theſe Parts of *Italy*; but called moſt commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this ſide of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Iſle of *Sicil*, lying on the other ſide of the *Phare*, or Strait of *Meſſana*. The Reaſon of which improper Appellation proceeded from *Roger* the firſt King hereof, who being alſo Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary Reſidence, when he got the Favour to be made King, deſired (in Honour of the Place where he moſt reſided) to be created by the Name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient Name of the Kingdom; the Name and Title of King of *Naples* not coming into uſe till the *French* were diſpoſſeſſed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdom; of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by ſome of the *Italian* Writers, the *Kingdom* only.

This is eſteemed to be the moſt fertile place in all *Italy*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the Life of Man, and in ſuch alſo as conduce to Delight and Phyſick; *viz.* Many Springs, and Medicinal Waters, Baths of divers Vertues, ſundry Phyſical Herbs. It hath alſo an excellent breed of Horſes, which may not be tranſported but by the leave of the King, or at leaſt the *Viceroy*; great Store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choiceſt Wines, called anciently *Vina Maſſica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mention'd by the *Poets*. And as for Merchandiſe, to *Alexandria* they ſend Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wines, and to *Venice* Oyl, *&c.*

The very Mountains of this Kingdom, which are near half of the Soil, are fruitful (as a late Traveller tells us) and produce either Wine or Oyl in great abundance; the latter of which is Exported now moſt commonly by the *Engliſh* for Soap and other Manufactures: So that many thouſands of Tuns is every Year brought from thence. There Corn is Exported to *Spain* by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* to that degree, that many of the poorer Inhabitants are famiſhed in plentiful Years for want of Food.

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live of all Men the moſt careleſs and contented Lives; and like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder Stories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marqueſſes, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and thoſe not only Titular, as in other places, but Men of great Power and Revenue in their ſeveral Countries; inſomuch that the yearly Income of the Prince of *Biſignano* is ſaid to be 100000 Crowns, one Year with the other; the Princes of *Salerno* and *S. Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to ſerve the King in his Wars; which gives them many Privileges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the abler to aſſiſt the King, upon any forreign Invaſion; ſo are they in condition alſo of raiſing and countenancing ſuch defections as have been made from King to King, and from one *Family* to another, as ſorted beſt with their ambitious and particular intereſts. For not alone the *Nobles*, but in general as many of the common People as can be ſpared from Husbandry, are more addicted to the Wars, than they are to Merchandiſe: The *Nobles* in purſuit of honour, and the *Paiſant* out of deſire of being in action; ſo that the greateſt part of the Forces which ſerve the *Spaniard* in the *Low-Countries*, are ſent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the higheſt to the loweſt, of going bravely in Apparel, ſerves exceeding fitly. An humour which is ſo predominant in both Sexes, that though the *Paiſant* lives all the reſt of the week in as great ſervility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundays* and *Saints-days*, he will be ſure to have a good Suit to his Back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his Belly. And for the Women, ſhe that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be ſo pranked up on the Sundays and other Feſtivals, or when ſhe is to ſhew her ſelf in ſome publick place, that one who did not know the humour, might eaſily miſtake her for ſome noble Lady.

One who lately travell'd this Kingdom aſſures us, that the preſent Sloath and Lazineſs of this People, renders them incapable of making thoſe Advantages of ſo rich a Soil, that a more induſtrious ſort of People would find out: For it amazeth a Stranger to ſee in their little Towns all the Men of the Town walking in the Market-places in their torn Cloaks, and doing nothing. So that as they have not hands enough for their Soil, ſo thoſe they have are generally too little imployed, that it is no wonder to ſee their Soil produce ſo little, that in the midſt of all that abundance that Nature hath ſet before them, they are one of the pooreſt Nations in *Europe*.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Sybaris*, 2. *Boſentus*, 3. *Peſcara*, 4. *Trontus*, 5. *Aufidus*, 6. *Salinellus*, 7. *Vomanus*, 8. *Salinus*, and 9. *Gariglian*. The moſt famous of which are *Aufidus* and *Gariglian*. The firſt as being the only River of *Italy*, which riſing on the South-ſide of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great Battel fought on the Banks thereof, called the Battel of *Cannæ*, of which more hereafter. The other no leſs famous for thoſe many Battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniard*, for the Kingdom of *Naples*: eſpecially that famous Battel between the Marquiſs of *Saluzzes*, General of the *French*, and *Gonſalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loſs of which Victory by the *French*, was the abſolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being baniſhed his Country at the coming of King *Charles* VIII. into *Italy*, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loſs of the day, took Ship with others, to fly to *Gajeta*; but over-charging the Veſſel, ſhe ſunk and drowned them all. But moſt famous is it, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s Faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himſelf ſtark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had not lain long, but *Sylla*'s Soldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off. Theſe Men, to pleaſe *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (ſuch is the vertue of Majeſty even in a miſerable fortune) run out again crying, he could not kill C. *Marius*. This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoyning.

This Kingdom is divided into the Provinces of 1. *Terra di Lavoro*, 2. *Abruzzo*, 3. *Puglai*, or *Apulia*. 4. *Terra de Otranto*, 5. *Calabria Superior*, 6. *Calabria Inferior*, and 7. the Iſles of *Naples*. Some of which have ſome ſmaller Territories adjoyning to them, which we ſhall meet withal as they come in our way.

The Latter Geographers have divided this Kingdom into theſe Provinces, *Terra di Lavoro*, 2. *Il Principato Citra*, 3. *Il Principato Ultra*, 4. *La Baſilicata*, 5. *La Calabria Citra*, 6. *La Calabria Ultra*, 7. *La Terra di Otranto*, 8. *La Terra di Bari*. 9. *Il Abruzzo Citra*, 10. *L. Abruzzo Ultra*, 11. *L. Contado di Moliſe*, and 12. *La Capitanata*.

TERRA di LAVORO is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which ſeparated by the *Apennine* Hills, on the Eaſt with the River *Silarus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Sea, and on the Weſt with *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*; from which divided by the River *Gariglian*; called anciently *Campania Fælix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the Seat or Dwelling of the *Campani*; by ſome modern *Latiniſts* called *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campana di Roma*, or *Campania Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandmen in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof: But neither the Reaſon, nor the Name ſo new, as ſome ſuppoſe. But, I am ſure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth theſe parts ſometimes by the name of *Laboria*, ſometimes of *Campus Laborinus*; and gives this reaſon of the name, *quod ingens in eo colendo ſit labor*, becauſe of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

Baudrand, who divided this Kingdom into more Provinces, bounds it on the North with *Abruzzo*, on the Eaſt by the County *di Moliſe*, and the *Principato Ultra* on the South by the *Principato Citra*, and on the Weſt by the Sea and *Campana di Roma*.

The Country is ſo exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Hiſtorian it is called *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deſervedly too. For in this noble Region one may ſee large and beautiful Fields overſhaded with rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, ſweet Fountains, and moſt wholſom Springs of running Waters; uſeful as well for the reſtoring of Mans Health, as Delight and Pleaſure. And in a word, whatſoever a covetous mind can poſſibly aim at, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1. *Cajeta*, ſeated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedneſs whereof it is thought by *Strabo*, to have took the name; the word in the *Latonian* Language ſignifying *crooked*. Other will have it ſo called from Καίω, *Uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Æneas* by the *Trojan* Ladies, for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been ſo extremely toſſed in their former Voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furtheſt Coaſts of *Sicil*, ſhould be ſo ſolemnly commemorated here on the ſhores of *Italy*, I can ſee no reaſon: And therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the Nurſe of *Æneas*, in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Æneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib.* 7.

Tu quoque littoribus noſtris Æneia *nutrix,*
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, *dediſti.*

That is to ſay,

Æneas Nurſe, *Cajeta* by her death,
Did to theſe ſhores an endleſs fame bequeath.

But on what ground ſoever it firſt had this name, it is aſſuredly a place of great ſtrength and conſequence; and of ſo ſpecial importance for the Eſtate of this Kingdom, that (as *Comines* hath obſerved) if King *Charles* VIII. had but only forfeited it and the Caſtle of *Naples*, the Realm had never been loſt. The *Spaniards* have taken this care now, and not only fortified it, but maintain a good Garriſon in it, ever ſince they were poſſeſs'd of it. 2. *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing ſeven Miles in compaſs. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis.* Among other things here is an Hoſpital, the Revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns yearly, wherewith, beſides other good Deeds, they nouriſh in divers parts of the Kingdom, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the Diſeaſe called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was firſt known in *Chriſtendom.* This City is ſeated on the Sea-ſhore, and fortified with four ſtrong Caſtles, *viz.* 1. *Caſtel Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was, 2. *Ermo*, 3. *Caſtel del Ovo*, or the Caſtle of the Egg, and 4. *Caſtel Novo*, or the new Caſtle. But nature hath not done much leſs to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art, the Town being for the moſt part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be aſcended without great difficulty and diſadvantages. Which Mountains, as they ſerve on that ſide as a bank to the City, ſo do they furniſh the Citizens with moſt generous Wines; and being once aſcended, yield a gallant proſpect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, and the continual reſort, if not conſtant reſidence of moſt of the great Men of the Realm, which makes the private buildings to be very graceful, and the publick ſtately. And yet it had increaſed much more in buildings, than it is at preſent, if the King had not forbidden it by ſpecial Edict. And this he did, partly, at the perſwaſion of his Noblemen, who feared that if ſuch a reſtraint were not laid upon them, their Vaſſals would forſake the Country to inhabit here, ſo to enjoy the Priviledges and the Exemptions of the Regal City; but principally upon jealouſie and point of State, the better to prevent all Revolts and Mutinies, which in moſt populous Cities are of greateſt danger. On *Saturday* the *5th* of *June*, 1688. about the *22th* hour there happened in *Naples* a dreadful Earthquake, and (though it laſted not long) the old Colledge of the Jeſuits was ruin'd by it, and the great Chapel of their new College with three other Chapels Adjoyning, the Magnificent Arch erected before the Church of the *Theatins*, fell together with thoſe great and ancient Columns which formerly made a part of the Temple of *Caſtor* and *Polux*, four only of which eſcaped, and thoſe much ſhaken: The next day was another great ſhock, which threw down many of the Houſes that were ſhaken the day before; So that a third part of the City was ruin'd by this Calamity. 3. *Capua*, once the Head of the *Campani*, ſeated in a delicious and luxurious Soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the Seat of the Empire, the other two being *Carthage*, and *Corinth*. Being diſtreſſed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to caſt themſelves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but ſuffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject-State. Which freedom they enjoyed, till after the Revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their Obedience by force of Arms, they loſt all their Liberties, and hardly eſcaped its fatal and final Ruine: Drawing the whole Nation of the *Campani* with divers leſſer States, which depended on them, into Bondage with it; *A. U.C.* 542. *Appius* and *Flaccus* being Conſuls. The pleaſures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Cannæ*; whence came the ſaying, *Capuam eſſe* Cannas *Annibali.* In after times it was Ruin'd firſt by *Genſerick* King of the *Vandals*, and being Rebuilt by *Narſetes*, it was again Ruin'd by the *Lombards*; That City which now bears the name of *Capua*, was built about the year 856. and notwithſtanding the ſtrength of its Caſtle, the nearneſs of the River *Volturno*, and the fertility of the Soil, is ſenſibly decaying, as *Baudrand* aſſures us upon his own Knowledg. 4. *Cuma*, a City once of great Power and Beauty, till *Campania* was ſubdued by the *Romans*; after which, it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the ſtink whereof is ſaid to have poyſoned Birds as they flew over it; ſuppoſed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Æneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghoſts, to talk with his Father: now it is an heap of Ruins and deſolate. 5. *Nola*, where *Marcellus* diſcomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to underſtand, that he was not invincible, now in a tolerable State and a Biſhops See. 6. *Puteoli*, a ſmall Town ſtanding on a Creek of the Sea, juſt oppoſite to *Baiæ*, on the other ſide of it; from which diſtant about three Miles and a half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, compoſed of ſundry Veſſels joyned together in ſuch ſort, that there was not only fair and large paſſage over it, but Victualling Houſes on both ſides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in Triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made ſubject to him. And this he did (as himſelf afterwards affirmed to ſome of his Friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*, mentioned in the ancient Writers, as alſo to terrifie the *Britains*, and the *German* Nations, with the report of ſuch a notable exploit; or (as ſome thought) to fulfil the Propheſie of one *Thraſibulus* a Fortune-teller of thoſe times, who had been often heard to ſay in the Life-time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predeceſſor) that it was as impoſſible for *Caius* to ſucceed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horſeback from *Baule* to *Puteoli.* 7. Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, ſtands the City of *Baiæ* (whereof *Baule* before mentioned is a part) ſo called as they, from *Baius*, one of the Companions of *Ulyſſes* in his Navigations. A City in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire of five Miles in length, and two in breadth; ſo wonderfully endued by Nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the World was thought comparable to it:

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis *prælucet amœnis.*

Few places in the World there are
With pleaſant *Baiæ* to compare. As it is in *Horace.*

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitude of *Baths*, or *Bannia's*, Imperial Palaces, ſtately Buildings, and the adjoyning Mannor-houſes of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleaſures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and ſenſible a Monument of the Laſciviouſneſs and Luxury of that proſperous People, of which the *Ambubaiæ* mentioned in the *Satyriſt* is ſufficient proof: (though ſome fetch the *Etymologie* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*, a *Syrian* word ſignifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latines* give this name to their Minſtrels) now ſo demoliſhed by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered Ruines. 8. *Miſenus*, ſeated near a great Hill, or *Promontory* of the ſame name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious Harbour; where *Auguſtus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman* Empire. But theſe were places of renown in the former times; all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it ſelf) *Seſſa*; the *Sinueſſa* or *Suiſſa* of the ancients, and now the Title of a Dukedom to the houſe of *Cordova* in *Spain*, derived from *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2. *Averſa*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence, ſecond to few in all the Kingdom, but forced to yield (though the Earl of

Monpenſier then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles* VIII. were in Perſon in it) to the good fortune of *Gonſalvo*, ſpoken of before ; the whole Kingdom following ſhortly after. 3. *Ceano*, 4. *Salvi*, 5. *Venafre*, and 6. *Caſerte*, with others, to the number of 22, beſides 166 Caſtles or defenſible places. Here is alſo in this Tract the Hill called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal* that great Maſter in the Art of War, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the ſtratagem of two thouſand Oxen, carrying fire in their Horns; by which device he freed himſelf out of thoſe difficult *Straits*, in which he was at that preſent. And in this Country there is alſo the Hill *Veſuvius*, that caſteth out flames of fire, the ſmoke of which ſtifled *Pliny Senior*, coveting to ſearch the cauſe of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly alſo during the Reign of *Titus*, caſting out not only ſuch ſtore of ſmoke, that the very Sun ſeemed to be in the *Eclipſe*, but alſo huge Stones; and of Aſhes ſuch plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered ; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy* were overwhelmed with them. There were heard diſmal noiſes all about the Province; and Giants of incredible bigneſs ſeen to ſtalk up and down, about the top and edges of the Mountain ; which extraordinary accident either was a cauſe, or preſage of the future Peſtilence which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after. This Mountain has at ſeveral times ſince the Birth of our Saviour raged horribly, and done great Damages: The Learned *Julius Cæſar Recupitus* has ſet down twelve of theſe Irruptions, the laſt of which was in the Year 1631. ſince which time the Mountain has been left deſolate ; for before it was planted with *Vineyards* and pleaſant *Orchards*. This Mountain is now call'd, *Il monte di ſomma*.

On the Eaſt ſide of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was eſteem'd) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonſo*, King of *Naples*, cauſed to be called the *Principate*, bounded upon the Eaſt with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Baſilicate* ; from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends 33 Miles in length, and 10 in breadth : and was of old the Seat of the *Picentini* : a Colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principal places of it, 1. *Maſſa*, by the *Italians* called *Marſo*, of more note for the Hills adjoining, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it ſelf. Thoſe Hills now called *Monte Marſo*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Maſſici*; of ſpecial eſtimation for the rich Wines called *Vina Maſſica*. 2. *Nuceria*, nine Miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious Soil : And a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Salerno*. 3. *Rivelli*, a City not long ſince built, which for the elegancy of the buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4. *Malfi*, or *Amalphi*, an Archbiſhop's See, in which it is ſuppoſed that the Mariner's Compaſs was firſt found out. It is ſituate on the Sea-ſide, and giveth name to the coaſt of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of ſo great an height, that to look down into the Vallies or the Sea adjoining, makes Men ſick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing elſe to commend it to our obſervation) for the finding out of the *Mariner's Compaſs*, (as before is ſaid) deviſed and contrived here about the Year 1300. by one *John Flavio*, a Native or Inhabitant of it. 5. *Salerno*, about a Mile from the Sea, the Title of the Prince of *Salerno*, and an Univerſity, but chiefly for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England* : not to King *Henry* VIII. as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Armoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the Year 1313.) muſt needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* I. or King *Edward* I. who in their Journeys towards the *Holy-Land*, might beſtow a viſit on this place, and give ſome honorary encouragement to the Students of it. Beſides theſe, there are ſaid to be in this ſmall Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Caſtles or walled places; but theſe the principal.

II. North of *Campania* lieth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Puglia*, or *Apulia*; on the Weſt with *Marca Anconitana*; on the North with the *Adriatick Sea* ; and on the South with the *Apennine*. It is called *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, but the reaſon of the name not agreed upon : divided anciently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites* : the *Picentes* taking up thoſe parts which lay next the *Adriatick* : the reſt (being far the greater part) was poſſeſſed by the *Samnites*. Theſe laſt (for of the others we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere) a People which held longer Wars with the States of *Rome*, than almoſt all *Italy* beſides ; as keeping them in continual action for the ſpace of Seventy Years together, beſides many after-claps. In which long courſe of Wars, the *Romans* were ſo hardly put to their ſhifts, that they were four times fain to have recourſe to the laſt refuge ; which was the chuſing of *Dictators*; and yet came off ſo often with ſucceſs and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty Triumphs. But theſe *Samnites*, as they were a potent, ſo they were alſo a compound Nation ; conſiſting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Precatini*, *Veſtini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites*, properly ſo called ; into which Name the reſt of the inferiour Tribes were after ſwallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their Name ; which in the concluſion of the War was ſo defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Conſul, *ut hodie* Samnium *in ipſo* Samnio *requiratur*, that not improperly (ſaith *Florus*) a Man might ask where *Samnium* ſtood, even in the middle of the City, which hapned *A. U.* C. 481.

The River of *Peſcara* runneth through the midſt of it, and divideth it into Parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Caſtles, or walled Places ; the other, 184 Caſtles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates* and the Country of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2. *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, becauſe the Winds hereabouts are ſo fierce and violent, that Men could not ſit upon their Horſes; but had at laſt that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleaſant Plains and ſpacious Valleys which lie round about it ; in like manner as the Country of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvoy* into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected, when they firſt came into *Italy*, for the better aſſuring of their Conqueſt ; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* IV. in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* IX. to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the ſaid Emperor was born, and is ſtill under the Command of the Popes of *Rome*. The 5*th*. of *June* 1688. this City was intirely ruin'd by an Earthquake ; the Inhabitants, ſuppoſed to be about 6000, for the moſt part periſhing. The Archbiſhop was alſo buried in the Ruines of his Palace, but taken out alive with one Wound on his Head ; ſo that this may be eſteem'd the Cataſtrophe of this ancient City, which will hardly be rebuilt. 3. *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, King of *Naples*, to aſſure the Realm upon that Quarter: Now the Capital of the further *Abruzzo*, and an independant Biſhop's See, tranſlated hither in the Year 1252. by Pope *Alexanller* IV. It is ſeated on an Hill by the Banks of the River *Peſcara* (*Aternus*) 60 Miles from *Rome* to the S. E. 4. *Lanciana Anxianum*, an Archbiſhop's See ever ſince the Year 1562. and the Capital of the *Hither Abruzzo* ; it ſtands upon the River *Heltrino*, four Miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much reſorted to by Merchants at her Annual Marts. 5. *Ortona*, the Port-Town unto *Lanciana*. 6. *Teranum*, or *Teran*, (*Ptolomy* calls it *Inter-amna*) anciently the *Metropolis* of the *Precatini*. 7. *Citta di Chiety*, ſituate on a Hill ſome ſeven Miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8. *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great Shoolman, who firſt brought the ſcattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here ſtood alſo 9. The old Town *Corfinium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Ænobarbus* againſt *Julius Cæſar*, in his firſt following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And ſeven Miles hence, 10. *Sulmo*, honoured with the Birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himſelf teſtifieth.

Sulmo *mihi patria eſt, gelidis uberrimus undis,*
Millia qui novies diſtat ab Urbe *decem.*

Full of cool Streams *Sulmo*, my native Land,
From the great City ninety Miles doth ſtand.

There belongeth alſo to *Abruzzo*, the Country of *Moliſe*, in which are 104 walled Places or Caſtles, and four conſiderable Towns; the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Biſhop's See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum*, to difference it from another in this Tract, of the ſame Name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2. *Luparetha*, of which little memorable. In this Country alſo (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the Streights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their Confederates had ſo incloſed the *Romans*, that there was no poſſibility to eſcape, they ſent to *Herennius*, a Man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wiſdom much followed by them, to know what they ſhould do with the captive Enemies. Word was returned, that they ſhould ſend them home ſafe, and without diſhonour. Thinking the old Man had not been well informed of the ſtate of the buſineſs, they ſent to him again, and he adviſed, that they ſhould put them all to the Sword. Theſe contrary Anſwers made them judge amiſs of the Old Man's Brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they ſpoiled the *Romans*, and diſarmed them, and deſpightfully uſed them, and ſo ſent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of ſo raſh an Action; but much more the deſtruction of his Country, as a conſequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a ſafe and honourable deliverance from the preſent danger, they had made them their Friends for many Ages, or had they put unto the Sword ſo many of their Soldiers and chief Commanders, they had diſabled them for long time from purſuing the War: The middle courſe which they had taken would be their undoing; and ſo accordingly it proved. For the *Romans* not being made their Friends by ſo odious a benefit, but hatching Revenge for the Diſgrace, ſoon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* ſubdued the Country, and handled the poor conquered People with the like deſpight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and thoſe in Power, how to proceed towards Men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which muſt be, *either not to ſtrike at all, or to ſtrike home, and to the purpoſe.* Nic. *Machiavil*, in his *Florentine* Hiſtory, taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Solecism* in point of State, in that hating *Coſmo de Medices*, and deſiring to remove him from his publick managery of Affairs, he thought it was ſufficient to procure his Baniſhment: which *Coſmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better Coin. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aphoriſm*, that *Great Perſons muſt not at all be touched, or if they be, muſt be made ſure from taking Revenge.* Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any Supreme Governours, the uſe of *Mercy*. I know it is the richeſt Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the uſe of that excellent Vertue: Only I ſhall obſerve what uſage hath been commonly afforded towards ſuch Perſons after their *Delinquencies*, whoſe Liberty or Life may create danger to the Publick. The firſt is preſent Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the ſaying is: a Courſe more to be allowed where it cannot, than commended where it may be ſpared. The ſecond is either cloſe Impriſonment under truſty Guards, or elſe confinement to the Houſe and Cuſtody of ſome truſty Stateſman: in which great caution alſo is to be obſerved. For, beſides that nothing is more ordinary than the eſcape of great Priſoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers. We find in our Hiſtories, how Dr. *Morton*, Biſhop of *Ely*, being committed to the cuſtody of the Duke of *Buckingham*, by King *Richard* III. not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary Faction. The laſt, which is in all times the gentleſt, and in ſome caſes the ſafeſt, is not only an abſolute pardon of Life, and a grant of Liberty; but an endearing of the Party *delinquent*, by giving him ſome Place of Honour, or committing unto his fidelity ſome Office of Truſt, it being the nature of moſt Men, that where they are not truſted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under ſuſpect and jealouſie, they will be apt to entertain ſome thoughts of their loſt condition. And of this kind of dealing with a Perſon *delinquent* we have a pregnant Inſtance in the Emperor *Otho*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celſus*, one of *Galba*'s Faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place neareſt to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War againſt *Vitellius*. His reaſon was, *Ne hoſtis metum reconciliationis adhiberet*, leſt lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but bad made up. And on the other ſide, *Marius Celſus* proved ſo ſenſible of the Obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very laſt; and loſt his Life in the purſuance of his Quarrel: ſhewing thereby, that Perſons of a generous and noble diſpoſition, are more obliged by Favours, than reſtrained by Terror. But it is now time I ſhould free my ſelf of theſe *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and ſport my ſelf a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I muſt note, before I take my leave hereof, that theſe two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greateſt, richeſt, and beſt peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority both of Claim and Power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to thoſe two for Wealth and Greatneſs, and were aſſigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying moſt conveniently for the Realm of *Sicily*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Abruzzo*; on the Eaſt, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians*, and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it, beſides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Caſtles and walled Places, with 13 Cities of good note. The moſt conſiderable of which we ſhall meet withal in our *Chorography* of the ſeveral parts, divided anciently by *Ptolomy*, and ſince him, by *Leander*, into *Apulia Daunia*, and *Apulia Peucetia*: the former ſubdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille* the *Plain*; the latter into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the Land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it ſelf) did ſometimes paſs in the accompt of *Apulia*, ſeems to me moſt probable, in that all the Eaſt parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names than thoſe of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: and by no other names than thoſe were aſſigned over unto *Otho* II. of *Germany*, on his Marriage with *Theophania*, Neece to one of thoſe Emperors. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather than to *Calabria*, firſt, in regard that the old Inhabitants were the ſame in both; the *Iapyges*, *Meſſapians*, and *Salentini*, poſſeſſing promiſcuouſly all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Daunia*, to the Promontory called *Iapygium* in the moſt Eaſtern Angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And ſecondly, in regard that the People of both have a Diſeaſe peculiar only to themſelves, occaſioned by the biting of a little Serpent, called a *Tarantula*, not curable but by Muſick only. This ſaid, we will proceed in our Survey of the Parts. And firſt,

APULIA DAUNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted by the River *Phiternus* (now called *Fortore*) and ſo extending Eaſtwards to the River *Aufidus*, (*L' Offanto* the *Italians* call it) where it meets with *Peucetia*. The reaſon of the Name is not yet agreed on. But I find no more probable conjecture of it, than that it ſhould be called thus of *Daunus*, the Son of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of thoſe elder times, that *Danae* being deliver'd of *Perſeus* whom ſhe had by *Jupiter*, was by her Father the King *Acriſius*, expoſed to the mercy of the Seas; by which ſhe was wafted with her young Son to the Coaſts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fiſher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became ſo enamoured on her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Daunus*. But *Daunus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by Force or Compoſition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*: who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous Courſes of his Wife *Ægiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and ſo came with his People to this Country; where he fixt his Dwelling, and built the City of *Argyripa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Daunus*, though he was not able to keep the poſſeſſion of this Country, yet he bequeathed his Name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with ſuch of his Subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief Head of the *Rutuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief Seat at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*; betwixt whom and *Turnus*, the Son of this *Daunus*, grew that deadly Feud, ſo celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Leſina*, ſo called from a City of that name adjoining to it, made of the Waters of *Phiternus*, and ſome other Rivers, which there loſe themſelves; in compaſs forty Miles, and well ſtored with Fiſh: the Eels hereof the largeſt that have been ſeen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable, though not ſo great, it being ſaid hereof by *Pliny*, that the Waters of it are neither diminiſhed by draining, nor increaſed by Land-flouds. Here is alſo the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called S. *Angelo*, high, ſteep, and full of cragged Rocks: twenty Miles in compaſs, but that extent diverſified into Hills and moſt pleaſant Valleys, well wooded, and well ſtored with Waters: here being one Lake (beſides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, ſaid to be thirty Miles in circuit. A place defenſible by Nature, and ſo ſtrong by Art, that it is commonly the laſt piece in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many Years, after the *Normans* had poſſeſſed themſelves of the reſt of the Kingdom.

The whole divided by *Alphonſo* (in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing called *Pouille* the *Plain*, from the condition of the Soil which is plain and level, not ſo much ſwelled with Hills as the reſt of *Apulia*: for which cauſe called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italians*. Interjected betwixt which and *Abruzzo*, lieth a ſmall Territory, by the ſaid King *Alfonſo* called the *CAPITANATE*, deſtitute both of Woods and Rivers, and conſequently not ſo populous as the reſt of this Province: well furniſhed notwithſtanding with all ſorts of Grain, and ſtored with large and ſpacious Paſtures, which breed ſuch infinite Herds of Cattel, that the Tribute thence ariſing was valued at 80000 Crowns *per An.* in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckon'd one of the beſt Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which Tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reaſon that on the diviſion which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (ſpoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the *Spaniards*; they brake out into open War, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a juſt occaſion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent Nation, and more intent upon their Work, to worm them by degrees out of all the Kingdoms.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*: 1. *Luceria*, the *Nu-* 1
ceria of *Ptolemy*, and the *Rudra* of *Suetonius*; as rich as it
is ancient, and honour'd with an Epiſcopal See. Of late
Years it has been made a Dukedom, and conferr'd by the
King of *Spain* upon the Family of *Barberino*. 2. *Aſcoli*, 2
of old called *Aſculus*, and ſometimes *Aſculum Satrianum*,
to difference it from another of that Name in *Anconitana*;
the Stile and Honour of a Duke. 3. *Troia*, a Dukes 3
Title alſo, built by the Eaſtern Emperors in a place of
ſtrength and great advantage, to reſtrain the Inſolencies
of the *Sarazens*, then infeſting this Country. Theſe
three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*.
Then in the other part called *Pouille* the *Plain*. 4. *Sipon-* 4
tum, once a *Roman* Colony, and an Archbiſhop's See, which
Honour it enjoyed till deſtroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5. *Mau-* 5
fredonia, founded near the place of the former, by *Manfred*
the Baſtard King of *Naples*, the better to aſſure
theſe Parts of his Kingdom, about the Year 1256. A
ſtately and magnificent City, the Seat of the Archbiſhop of
Siponto; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt
of Ships, and an impregnable Caſtle for defence thereof.
Being ſome Years ſince taken and plundered by the *Turks*;
the Memory of that Calamity has made it little, poor,
and ill inhabited. 6. *Salpe*, of great Antiquity, but not 6
elſe obſervable. 7. *Severine*, of a newer Date, but more 7
rich and populous. 8. As ancient and as famous as the beſt 8
among them, the poor Village of *Cannæ*, ſituate near
the Mouth or Influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis* Apu-
liæ *vicus*, as it is in *Florus*, but ſuch as afterwards grew
more notable for the great Defeat which *Annibal* there
gave to *Paulus Æmilius* and *Terentius Varro* the *Roman*
Conſuls, of whoſe Army he ſlew 42700 on the very
place. Which Victory had he husbanded as he might
have done, he had utterly ſubverted the State of *Rome*:
ſo that it was moſt tartly (as moſt truly) ſaid by *Mahar-*
bal General of his Horſe, *Vincere ſcis* Annibal *Victoria uti*
neſcis; that he knew better how to get, than to uſe his
Victory. 9. But of moſt note in this part of *Apulia* was 9
the Town *Argypia* or *Argyrippa*, as ſome call it, founded
by *Diomedes* in the Skirts of Mount S. *Angelo* towards the
Sea, and in that part of this Country, which then (or afterwards)
was held by the *Iapyges*, of which thus *Virgil* in
the 11th of the *Æneids*.

Ille Urbem Argyripam *Patriæ de nomine Gentis*
Victor Gargani *condebat* Iapygis *arvis*.

And being Victor, he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in the *Iapygian* Fields,
And called it *Argyrippa*, by the name
Of ſome known place i'th' Land from which he came.

By which we may alſo conclude, that it took this Name with reference to ſome Town of *Ætolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers ſuppoſe it to have been firſt called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that Name in *Peloponneſus*; and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam*; yet thoſe Words of *Patriæ de nomine Gentis*, do perſwade me otherwiſe; *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis*, where that City ſtood; nor in the whole Demi-Iſland of *Peloponneſus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called alſo *Diomedia*, and *Urbs Diomedis*, becauſe of this Foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in his Country; but at the laſt it came to be called *Aryp*, and by that Name was known in the time of the *Roman* Greatneſs; now no where to be found but in the Ruins of Time, and the Records of Antiquity, unleſs it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy*, where *Nigar* findeth it.

APULIA PEUCETIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the Weſt, to the Land of *Otranto* on the Eaſt: So called, as ſome conceive, from *Peucetius*, the Brother of *Oenotrus*, which may be probable enough, this being the firſt Country at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came unto *Italy* with his People. *Bochartus*, a great Enemy of all Traditions will have it called *Peucetia*, ἀπὸ τῶν πευκῶν, for that great quantity of Pitch which theſe Countries yield, as the Word ſignifieth in the *Greeks*. But whatſoever was the reaſon of the ancient Name, that of the preſent is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barri*.

Places of moſt importance in it; 1. *Barri*, ſeated near the Sea, but without a Haven, yet in ſo rich a Soil, and ſo well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. *Baudrand* gives it an indifferent good Haven upon the *Adriatick* Sea; however it is certainly an Archbiſhop's See, and now gives Name to the Province now commonly called *Terra di Bari*. This is now alſo well fortified againſt the *Turks* and Pirates. 2. *Barlette*, by the Modern *Latiniſts* called *Barulum*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Canuſium*; an Haven Town, and of ſo great importance reckoned for one of the four ſtrong Holds of *Italy*, in the middle Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardie*, *Prato* in *Tuſcani*, and *Fabrianum* now called *Fabiano* in *Anconitana*. It lies upon the *Adriatick* Sea, 24 Miles to the Weſt of *Bari*, and is a large and a beautiful City. 3. *Monopolis*, a Port-Town alſo, not very large, but of a neat elegant Building; new built, and the Title of a Marquiſs, and a Biſhop's See. 4. *Tranum*, an ancient City, and an Archbiſhop's See, but at this time better built than peopled, by reaſon of ſome Defects in the Harbour upon which it ſtandeth. Theſe three laſt, together with *Maufredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when firſt invaded by the *French*) to the State of *Venice*; but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, when poſſeſſed of that Kingdom. 5. *Bitonto*, an Archbiſhop's See alſo; one of which was a notable Stickler in the Council of *Trent*. 6. *Polignano*, on a rocky Hill, the Honourary Title of a Marquiſs, and a See Epiſcopal. 7. *Molfette*, which gives Title to a Prince, but not elſe conſiderable. 8. *Vigilla*, now called *Biſigli*, a Biſhop's See, ſituate near the *Adriatick* amongſt craggy Rocks. 9. *Venoſa*, a ſtrong Place, and of great Importance; one of the laſt Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles* VIII. The *Venuſium* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venuſinus*. Nothing conſiderable of theſe People in point of Story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* againſt the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Brutii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to ſubmit to the Power of *Rome* at the end of the War, *A. U. C.* 481. *Papyris Curſor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the ſecond time Conſuls.

IV. *TERRA di OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eaſtern part of *Apulia Daunia*, unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a Line drawn from *Brunduſium* to *Tarentum*; of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto*, the chief Town hereof, the Seat and Habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Iapyges*, and the *Meſapiani*, and is accordingly intituled in ancient Authors by the ſeveral Names of *Iapygia*, *Meſapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the laſt People of *Italy* which held out againſt *Rome*, and ſunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whoſe Fate they did depend, *An. U. C.* 487. *Junius Pera* and *Fabius Pictor*, the two Conſuls then, triumphing for it. Of theſe three Nations the *Iapyges* were of greateſt Fame, or of greateſt Infamy. *Cretans*, originally ſent in queſt of *Glaucus* the Son of *Minos*, whom when they could not find, and durſt not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling, *Iapyx* the Son of *Dædalus* being their Captain and Conductor, and from him denominated. Growing into Eſtate and Power, they became not only ſo luxurious in their courſe of Life, and effeminate in their Dreſs and Habit, that they were a Scorn and Scandal to the Neighbour-nations; but ſo regardleſs of their Gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and deſtroyed their Temples; puniſhed at laſt for theſe high Inſolencies by Balls of Fire falling on them from the Heavens, with which the whole Stock of them were almoſt extirpated. The Promontory called *Iapygium*, being the extream point of this Country towards *Greece*, now better known by the Name of the *Cape* of St. *Mary*, did take Name from this People; and from thence the North-weſt Wind (or the Weſt-north-weſt) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this Coaſt, had the Name of *Iapyx*, occurring by that Name in the 8. of *Æneids*, and in *Horace*, *Carm. l.* 1. *Ode* 4.

But to proceed: this Country is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, ſaving where it joineth to *Apulia* by an *Iſthmus* of about 30 Miles in breadth; reaching from *Brunduſium* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulf or Bay thence named in the *Ionian* Sea; and is from Land to Land, as you go by Water, about 200 Miles in Compaſs. The Soil hereof is very fruitful if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oil, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other Commodities of good Price; for which they never want the Company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endanger'd by *Graſhoppers*, which commonly devour all whereſoever they come, and would in one Night conſume whole Fields of ſtanding Corn, if Divine Providence by ſending the Birds called *Gaines* amongſt them, did not provide a Remedy for ſo great a Miſchief. The greateſt defect hereof is the want of Waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Siticuloſa Apulia*; ſpoken of by *Horace*; which notwithſtanding, they have very rich Paſtures. The People are conceived to be the ſimpleſt, or moſt void of Craft, of any in *Italy*; perhaps becauſe they have ſo little Commerce with their own Countrymen, and ſo much with Strangers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lecci*, *Aletium* in Latin, a rich Town, well built, and very well peopled. 2. *Caſtro*, a Sea-Town, but not well fenced by Art or Nature, which hath made it very often a Prey to the *Turks*. 3. *Gallipolis*, a Town built on ſo craggy a Rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4. *Brunduſium*, the Head Town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the moſt capacious Haven of all the World; from whence there was continual Paſſage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the reſt of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ſhip to fly from *Cæſar*, and *Cæſar* took Shipping alſo to purſue after him: when to encourage the Pilot, who was afraid of the Storm, he cryed out, *Cæſarem vebis & fortunam ejus*. It was firſt built by the *Ætolians*, under the Conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Bronteſion*, which in the *Meſſapian* Tongue ſignifieth the Horn or Head of a Stag, which it much reſembleth: from whence the *Latines* give it the Name of *Brunduſium*. At this Day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being ſo choaked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very ancient Town, and an Archbiſhop's See, and yet ſtill reaſonably well peopled, having a ſtrong Caſtle upon a Rock for its Defence, and a capacious Port for Traffick; the principal at the preſent of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latiniſts*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of ſuch importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *Anno* 1481. put all *Italy* into ſuch a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandon'd: Not well inhabited again, till the Expulſion of the *Turks* in the Year next following.

Paſs we on next to the two *Calabria's*, ſo called from the *Calabri*, an ancient People of this Tract, inhabiting that Part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Græcia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with a part of the Country of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern ſide of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the Name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperors being poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Italy*, when the more Weſtern parts thereof were under the *Goths* and *Lombards*, extended the Name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Meſſana*, taking the Country of the *Brutii*, now *Calabria Inferior*, into the Accompt: and making but two Provinces of their whole Eſtate, which was left in this Continent by the Names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which *Apulia* contained all the Country on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme Point or Promontory in the Land of *Otranto*, called anciently *Iapygium*, now the Cape of St. *Mary*; *Calabria*, all the reſt of theſe Parts of *Italy*, which lie between the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the ancient *Calabria* was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3. *de Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old *Ennius* his Garden tills
Among the ſteep *Calabrian* Hills.

Now called the *Baſilicate*, and reckon'd as a Member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving theſe Matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it ſtandeth at the preſent; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which diſtinct Capacities we ſhall look upon it. Premiſing only by the way, that this Country is the Title of the eldeſt Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was ſubjected to theſe Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whoſe Daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfrey* of *Bouilon*, being King hereof, *An.* 1098.

V. CALABRIA SUPERIOR, called formerly *Magna Græcia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the Eaſt the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the Weſt *Lucania*, now called the *Baſilicate*; from which it is divided by the *Apennine*, and the River *Crathis*; on the North *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-Eaſt, *Calabria Inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillacy*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcaſtro*, eight Miles from the Sea, where once ſtood *Petilia*. 2. *Beſignan*, the Title of a Prince, fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and endowed with the beſt Revenues of any Principality or other Nobleman of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Macera*, an Archbiſhop's See, a rich Town and well peopled. 4. *Roſſano Roſanum*, three Miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and ſituate in a very fruitful and pleaſant Soil. 5. *Altavilla*, which gives Title alſo to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the Title of Duke to *Gonſalvo Fernandes de Cordova*, commonly called the *great Captain*, as a Reward of his ſignal Service in the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*: and ſtill enjoyed (together with the Title of Duke of *Seſſa*) by the Houſe of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the *Greeks* in the former times, they were *Locris*, founded by the *Locrians*, a People of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Saleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be puniſhed with the loſs of both Eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the firſt Offender. Therefore to ſhew the Love of a Father, and the Sincerity of a Judge, he put out one of his Son's Eyes, and one of his own. He alſo provided in his Laws, That no Woman ſhould be attended in the Street with more than one Maid, but when ſhe was drunk; That ſhe ſhould not go abroad at Night, but when ſhe went to play the Harlot; That ſhe ſhould not wear Gold or Imbroidered Apparel, but when ſhe meant to ſet her ſelf to open Sale; and that Men ſhould not wear Rings and Tiſſues, but when they went about the proſtituting of ſome Woman; and many others of this Mould. By means whereof both Men and Women were reſtrained from all extraordinary Trains of Attendants, and Exceſs of Apparel; the common Conſequents of a long and proſperous Tranquility. It was alſo famous in old times for the Victory which *Eunomus*, an excellent *Muſician*, obtained againſt *Ariſtonus* of *Rhegium*, another of the ſame Profeſſion. For though *Ariſtonus* had made his Prayers to *Apollo*, the God of *Muſick*, for his good Succeſs; yet *Eunomus* plainly told him, that Nature was againſt them in this Contention, which had made all the Graſhoppers mute on that ſide the Water. And ſo accordingly it hapned. For when the Day appointed came, *Eunomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harp-ſtrings, even in the middle of his Muſick; when preſently a Graſhopper leaped upon his Harp, and ſupplied moſt melodiouſly the place of the broken String; and by that means obtained the Victory to *Eunomus*. An Accident not unworthy of the *Muſe* of *Strada*, in his perſonating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bind not any Man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo*'s telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one ſide of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the Graſhoppers do merrily ſing; but on the other ſide, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always ſilent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no leſs note, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; firſt built by the *Spartans*; the People whereof having a great command on the Country adjoyning, were one of the laſt *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis poſt* Tarentinos *auderet*: For who durſt ſtir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquiſhed? ſaith the Hiſtorian. For in the Ruine of this Eſtate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Brutii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, *A. U. C.* 578. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* War ſome nine years before) were either a free People, or in a kind of Subjection to this mighty City; but never felt the Force of the *Roman* Puiſſance. So that the War began but *A. U. C.* 472. and ended in the total ſubjection of theſe ſeveral Nations; *An.* 482. *Papyr. Curſor*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the ſecond time Conſuls, as before was ſaid. In the defence of this People did *Pyrrhus* war againſt the *Romans*; the hope of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loſs of *Capua*: finally here lived *Archytas*, ſo famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotona*, the Inhabitants whereof were once ſo active, that at one *Olympick* Meeting, the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their Glory much decayed in a Battel againſt the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thouſand of them and their Confederates were vanquiſhed by fifteen thouſand of the Enemy. 4. *Amyclæ*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoras*, who having been often terrified with a falſe Report of the approach of their Enemies, publiſhed a Law, prohibiting all ſuch Reports. By which means their Enemies coming unawares, poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Hence grew the Proverb, *Amyclas ſilentium perdidit*; and hence that notable Saying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be ſilent, returned this Anſwer, *Mihi neceſſe eſt loqui, ſcio enim* Amyclas *ſilentio periiſſe*: 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Græcians* after the Deſtruction of *Troy*; the People whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could arm 30000 Men. A people ſo effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no not ſo much as a Cock to live among them, becauſe they would not have their Sleeps diſturbed: But the Fidlers and Muſicians were in high requeſt; which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in Hoſtility) they entred the Town in the Habit of Muſicians, and ſo maſtered it. Before which Accident there had been a Propheſie, that the Town ſhould never be taken, till Men were more eſteemed than the Gods themſelves. It hapned that a Slave being grievouſly beaten by his Maſter, and obtaining no pardon for the

the Gods ſake, upon whom he called, fled to the Monument of ſome of his Maſters Anceſtors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philoſopher, he forſook the Town, moſt Men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave ſo delicate a Seat: whence came the Proverb, *Amyris inſanit*, applied to ſuch as under the pretence of madneſs or folly do provide for their ſafety.

VI. *CALABRIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the North with *Calabria ſuperior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Meſſana*; on the Weſt with that part of *Campania* which is called the Principate: and on the Eaſt with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was anciently the habitation of the *Bruti*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*; and their Country *Bretania*; upon which ground, ſome of our modern Criticks (envying ſo great an honour to the Iſle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the Birth of *Conſtantine*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Emperor. Theſe *Brutii* being firſt conquered by the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Cannæ*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had ſhut up in this corner. A Country not much ſhort in fruitfulneſs of the reſt of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of ſo much Sea, is the better ſituate for Traffick. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Ptolemy*, *Leuco-Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, eſpecially in the month of *May*, are taken great ſtore of *Tunnies* (a Fiſh which much reſembleth Mans fleſh) which being barrelled up are ſold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers alſo of a very ſtrange nature; of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a Mans Hair yellow, and dieth Silk white; the other named *Buſentus*, cauſeth both Hair and Silk to be black and ſwarthy.

The Principal Cities of it are, 1. *Conſentia*, an ancient Town comprehending ſeven little Hills, and a Caſtle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and Country adjoining. It is built betwixt the ſaid two Rivers, and is ſtill reaſonable rich, though not ſo wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium* or *Rhegio*, on the Sea-ſhore, oppoſite to *Meſſana* in the Iſle of *Sicily*, which is ſuppoſed to have broken off from the reſt of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word ῥήγνυμι, which ſignifieth to break off, or to tear aſunder. A Town in former times very well Traded, but left deſolate in a manner ſince the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Caſtrovillare*, ſeated upon the top of a very high Mountain. 4. *Belmont*, and 5. *Altamont*, two very fair Towns, whoſe names ſufficiently expreſs their pleaſant and lofty Situations. 6. St *Euphemie*, from whence the Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lameticus*, is now called *Golfo de St. Euphemie*. 7. *Nicaſtro*, three Miles from the Sea, the ſame with *New-caſtle* in *Engliſh*.

On the Weſt ſide of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, ſtandeth that Mountainous Country, which in the ſubdiviſion of theſe Provinces by King *Alfonſus*, was called the *BASILICATE*; anciently the Seat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latiniſts*. Divided from the *Principate*, or Weſt parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Country heretofore very unſafe for Travellers, by reaſon of the difficult ways, and aſſured company of Thieves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it 93 walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, 1. *Poſſidonia*, or *Peſt*, a City ſituate in ſo clement and benign a Soyl, that Roſes grow there thrice a year. 2. *Polycaſtro*, on the Sea-ſhore, as the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedom. And *Dion* or *Diamum*, a more midland City, near which there is a Valley twenty Miles in length, and four Miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulneſs, yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Iſlands of *Diomedes*, right againſt *Apulia*, where it encountreth with *Abruzzo*: ſo called from *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was ſo great a ſtickler) ſettled himſelf in ſome part of *Apulia*; the principal whereof are, St. *Maries*, St. *Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2. The Iſland of *Acates*, over againſt the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3. St. *Andrews* in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4. And finally, the two Iſlands of *Dioſcoros* and *Calypſo*, over againſt the Cape of *Licinia*, now called *Colonnes*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Iſlands of *Pontia* and *Pandataria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; ſave that the laſt is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the Wife of *Germanicus*, and Mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperour *Tiberius Nero*.

Thoſe in the *Gulf* or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are, 1. *Iſchia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as alſo with Allom, Sulphur and moſt excellent Fruits. It is in compaſs 18 Miles, and ſo begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is acceſſible at one entrance only, and that too fortified with a ſtrong and impregnable Cittadel: And therefore choſen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of Refuge, when he was outed of his Kingdom by *Charles* VIII. Here is alſo good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2. *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about ſix Miles in circuit, wherein are very wholſom Baths, good ſtore of Conies, Hares and Pheaſants; the Shore repleniſhed with Fiſh, and the Land with Fountains. *John de Prochitis*, who plotted the *Sicilian Veſpers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that ſervice, made *Vice-Roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3. *Capreæ*, a ſmall rocky Iſland, having no Haven, nor convenient ſtation for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air, much beautified by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, in regard that an old ſapleſs Tree upon his caſual landing here, did bud forth afreſh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from Affairs of State; and as much diſhonoured by *Tiberius* his next Succeſſor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and moſt filthy Luſts. It hath a little City of the ſame name, having a Fortreſs, and a Biſhops See; and another Town called *Anacapræ*, inhabited by Fiſhermen, and Shipwrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Iſland they uſed to confine Offenders in former times, and ſometimes alſo at this day. 4. *Ænaria*, a ſmall Iſland given by *Auguſtus* to the *Neapolitans* in exchange for *Capreæ*, whoſe before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have ſuffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the firſt a mixture of ſeveral Nations, ſome of them preyed upon the others, till they were all ſubdued (as hath been ſhewed before) by the Power of *Rome*. In the declining of her Fortunes, they followed for the moſt part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was ſubdued by the *Goths*, it became ſubject to that People, as *Sicil*, and the reſt of thoſe Iſlands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the *Greek* Emperour having conquered from the *Goths* with the reſt of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themſelves. In the diviſion of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, theſe two laſt Provinces only were aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitans*; the reſt to *Charles*, and his Succeſſors: both outed of their ſeveral parts by the prevailing *Sarazens*, under the Conduct of *Sabba*, and other ſucceſſive Generals. Theſe partly diſpoſſeſſed by the Emperor *Otho* I. and his *Almain* Forces; challenging a right herein, as King of *Italy*, that right confirmed and enlarged by the Marriage of *Otho* II. with *Theophania*, Neece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eaſtern Emperour, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower and Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens*, joyning together againſt them as a common Enemy; who afterwards held bitter Wars againſt one another, for the ſole command. During theſe Wars, it hapned that one *Drangot*, a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the preſence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conquerour) ſlain one *Repoſtel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the Juſtice of the Prince, and the practices of *Repoſtels* Kindred, fled into this Country; attended by ſuch of his Followers, as either did depend upon his Fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eaſtern Emperor, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raiſed withal, That the *Greeks* hearkned after Men of Valour and Action; cauſed many private Gentlemen to paſs over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themſelves out a more proſperous fortune than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate ſucceſs of which laſt Adventures, drew thither alſo *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*; who with his twelve Sons came into *Apulia*, *An.* 1008. and in ſhort time not only drove the *Sarazens* thence, but the *Grecians* alſo, as Men that had broke Covenant with them in the diviſion of the Booty. For *William* the Son of *Tancred*, combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperor, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, Men of power and honour, for the Conqueſt of *Sicil* (which the *Sarazens* then wholly held) agreed amongſt themſelves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts; one for each Adventurer. But when the *Sarazens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new Supplies ſent him out of *Greece*, ſeized on the poſſeſſion of the whole Iſland in the Emperour's name. Which injury *William* commonly diſſembled, till *Melorco*'s Forces were diſperſed, and then he ſuddenly ſet upon him; firſt took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees, moſt of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italy*: Of which both he and his Succeſſors kept poſſeſſion by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of theſe (though all of eminent Vertue) there were two beſides this *William*, of ſpecial Fame. 1. *Robert Guiſcard*, the third Son of *Tancred*, the moſt valiant Captain of his time, and chief eſtabliſher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*, to which he added in concluſion the Iſle of *Sicil*, together with the City of *Naples* it ſelf, and all the Lands which lye betwixt it and *Rome*. 1. *Bohemund*, the eldeſt Son of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and others of the Weſtern *Chriſtians* to the *Holy Land*, was for his ſignal merit inveſted with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his Children after his Deceaſe.

But to proceed: This *Guiſcard* at his Death, (but not without ſome wrong to the Children of his Brother *William*, whom he had diſpoſſeſſed of all by the Pope's Authority) gave *Sicil*, with the Title of Earl, to his Son *Rogero*; and his Eſtates in *Italy* to his other Son *William*: Who going to *Conſtantinople* to marry with the Emperour's Daughter, was outed of his part by his Brother *Roger*, made not long after, by the Popo the firſt King of this Family.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

1125 1 *Roger*, Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Callixtus* II. King of both the *Sicilies*, at the Town of *Benevent*; which City in requital of ſo great a favour, he reſtored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the firſt Donation of it) by the *German* Emperours. 24.

1150 2 *William*, the Son of *Roger*, who to aſſure himſelf of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* IV. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

1170 3 *William* II. Son of the former *William*, who left a Daughter called *Conſtance*, who became a Nun. 26.

1196 4 *Tancred*, the baſe Son of *William* II. excluded his Siſter from the Crown, but was ſententially depoſed by Pope *Celeſtine* III. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himſelf. But when he ſaw that *Tancred* was too ſtrong for him, out of meer ſpight to be defeated of his purpoſe, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Conſtance*, then almoſt fifty years of Age, in Marriage unto *Henry* VI. 2.

The *German* Line.

1198 5 *Henry*, the ſixth of that name, Emperour, and Duke of *Schwaben*, ſucceeded on his Marriage with the Lady *Conſtance*. 4.

1202 6 *Frederick*, Son of the Emperour *Henry* and Queen *Conſtance*, Crowned at the Age of three years, afterwards Emperour by the name of *Frederick* II. he had to Wife the Daughter of *John di Bren*, the titular King of *Hieruſalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever ſince had the title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*. 48.

1250 7 *Conrade*, the Son of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as alſo Emperour and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*; poyſoned (as it was conceived) by his baſe Brother *Manfred*. 4.

1254 8 *Manfroy* or *Manfred*, baſe Son of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, firſt governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*; but after took it to himſelf againſt the will of Pope *Urban* IV. who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and the Earl of *Provence*, Brother to *Lewis* X. of *France*: It being uſual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) to call new Men into *Italy*, and ſtir up new Wars for their own Ambition; not ſuffering any to poſſeſs that long which themſelves (through their weakneſs) could not hold; and practiſing the overthrow of thoſe very Men, whom themſelves had raiſed to power and greatneſs.

The *French* Line.

1261 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urban* IV. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Succeſſors ſhould aſſume the Empire; and that they ſhould pay fifty thouſand Crowns *per annum* as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did alſo vanquiſh *Conradine* the Son of *Conrade*, the laſt of the Royal Houſe of *Suevia*, whom he cauſed to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his Poſterity, did either quietly or long enjoy theſe Kingdoms. For in his own time *Peter* King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdom of *Naples*, in right of *Conſtance* his Wife, Daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a ſingle combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward* I. of *England*, to decide the Controverſie. But whilſt *Charles* there expected him, he ſeized on *Sicil*. The *French* being all murdered in that famous Maſſacre commonly call'd the *Sicilian Veſpers*. *Anno* 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.

1284 10 *Charles* II. Son of *Charles* I. formerly Priſoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ranſomed by the procurement of K. *Edward* above named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen Children: The moſt pertinent of which (to our purpoſe) were *Charles* ſurnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*; *John* of *Durazzo*, and a Daughter (whoſe name I find not) married to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310 11 *Robert*, the ſecond Son of *Charles* II. 32.

1342 12 *Joan*, the Neece of *Robert* by his Son *Charles*, firſt married *Andrew* the ſecond Son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom ſhe hanged at her window for inſufficiency; and for her ſecond Husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-ſtraining himſelf to ſatisfie her carnal Appetite, died. Her third Husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom ſhe beheaded for lying with another Woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, a tough Soldier, who had the good fortune to out-live her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, Brother of *Andrew* her firſt Husband: Reſtored the firſt time by the power of Pope *Clement* the ſixth; but at the ſecond time taken and hanged at the ſame window where ſhe had hanged her firſt Husband. But firſt, out of an hatred to her next Heirs of the Houſe of *Hungary*, ſhe adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, (deſcended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* ſpoken of before) for her Heir and Succeſſor.

The *Hungarian* Line.

1381 13 *Charles* III. Son to *Lewis*, and Nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban* V. was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in Battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his Competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, ſucceeded in that Kingdom alſo; but long he had not Reigned therein, when poyſoned (as it was ſuppoſed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her Daughter to that Throne. 5.

1386 14 *Ladiſlaus*, Son of *Charles* III. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a Voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: On which diſpleaſure the Pope called in *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladiſlaus* a great overthrow. Inſomuch, as *Ladiſlaus* uſed to ſay, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the firſt day, he had been maſter of his Kingdom and Perſon too; if the ſecond, of his Kingdom, but not of his Perſon: But not purſuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flee to *Rome*, and give over the Enterpriſe. 29.

1415 15 *Joan* II. Siſter of *Ladiſlaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of ſo ill a fame as the former *Joan*: obſerving the unproſperous ſucceſſes of the Houſe of *Anjou* ſhe adopted for her Heir *Alphonſo* V. of *Aragon*; who had ſome claim unto the Kingdom as the direct Heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter* III. and *Conſtance* the Daughter of King *Manfred*, ſpoken of before. But finding him to ſtand too much on his own Right, and to be too forward in taking a poſſeſſion of it before her Death, ſhe Revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Eſtate to *Lewis* IV. Duke of *Anjou*, and after his Deceaſe to his Brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: Both vanquiſhed by the *Aragonians*.

The *Aragonian* Line.

1434 16 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well ſetled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural Son. 24.

1458 17 *Ferdinand*, the baſe Son of *Alfonſo* (the lawful Sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, *Sicil*, *&c.*) ſucceeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494 18 *Alfonſo* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, in whoſe time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predeceſſors were of the order of the Garter.

1494 19 *Ferdinand* II. Son of *Alfonſo* II. outed of his Eſtate and Kingdom by *Charles* VIII. Son of King *Lewis* XI. [illegible] *France*, whom *Rene* the laſt Duke of *Anjou* had made the ſole Heir of all his Titles and Poſſeſſions. And though *Charles* upon his Conqueſt was ſolemnly Crowned, yet poſting back again into *France* before he had ſetled his Affairs in this Kingdom, and having much diſcontented the chief Men of the *Ajouin* Faction, he loſt it ſuddenly to the ſame *Ferdinand*, from whom he had ſo ſuddenly won it.

1497 20 *Frederick* II. Brother of *Alfonſo* II. and Uncle of this laſt *Ferdinand*, ſucceeded him in Eſtate, and was the ſixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compaſs of three years: That is to ſay, *Ferdinand* I. *Alfonſo* II. *Ferdinand* II. *Charles* of *France*, the ſecond *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himſelf betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he ſubmitted himſelf to *Lewis* XII. King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdom to him. And indeed what elſe could that poor Prince do, when he ſaw his own Blood, and ſuch as had taken his Realm into their protection, conſpiring againſt him?

For when *Charles* made his paſſage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, ſent *Gonſalvo*, (who was afterward for his Valour ſurnamed the *Great Captain*) with ſome Forces to reſiſt the *French* Invaders. But when the *French* were expelled, *Gonſalvo* would not leave the Country, becauſe his Maſter had not as yet ſent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France*, and this *Ferdinand*, that they ſhould joyntly ſet upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the *French* ſhould poſſeſs *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabrias*: That the firſt ſhould be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept ſecret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonſalvo* poſſeſſed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themſelves Maſters of the Country. An action in which the *French* dealt very unadviſedly, in bringing into *Italy* where he was before the ſole *Moderator*, another King as great as himſelf, to whom as to his *Rival*, his Enemies might have recourſe on all occaſions; and the *Spaniards* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moiety of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own Blood, under pretence and promiſe of Succour. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnerſhip. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their Advantages, ſoon picked a quarrel with the *French*, within two or three years drave them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his Succeſſors *Francis* I. and *Henry* II. have divers times, and with great effuſion of Blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The *Spaniſh*, or *Caſtilian* Line.

1503	21	*Ferdinand* III. ſurnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 1.
1516	22	*Charles* V. Emperour, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
1558	23	*Philip* II. of *Spain*, and the firſt of *Naples*. 40.
1598	24	*Philip* III. of *Naples*, 3*d* of *Spain*. 22.
1621	25	*Philip* IV. of *Naples*, 4*th* of *Spain*. 45.
1666	26	*Charles* II. of *Spain*, and 5*th* of *Naples*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure, Seme of Flower de Luces, Or*, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-Rent; and the reſt ſo exhauſted in maintaining Garriſons upon the Natives, and a ſtrong Navy againſt the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
Arch-biſhops 20. Biſhops 127.

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

Before we can come into the Iſle of *Sicily*, we muſt firſt croſs that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Strait of *Meſſana*; where the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is diſtant from the main Land of *Italy* near 300 Miles; that is to ſay, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is ſo called becauſe it interlaceth the midſt of the Earth; extending from the Straits of *Gibralter* on the Weſt, to the Coaſt of *Paleſtine* on the Eaſt; and ſo dividing *Africk* both from *Europe* and *Aſia minor*. In the Scriptures, *Joſh.* 1. 4. it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the *great Sea*: Great in compariſon of the *dead Sea*, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other ſide of the Land of *Paleſtine*; but ſmall enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Beſides which general Name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath alſo many particular Names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian Sea*, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Libycum*, where it runneth by the ſhores of *Africk*: With reference to *Italy* called in ſome parts *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Liguſticum*; in ſome parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, *&c.* And as the *Cameleon* is ſaid to apply it ſelf to the colour of the neareſt adjacent Body; ſo this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the neareſt ſhores. Theſe Seas are alſo called by ſome modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; becauſe in reſpect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, *&c.* they lie towards the Eaſt; the word *Levant* ſignifying in the *French*, a riſing up, and more eſpecially the Sun-riſing. The principal Iſlands of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) are thoſe of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and ſome Iſles adjoining unto theſe

SICILY, environed round with the *lower* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains ſeven hundred Miles in compaſs; and is ſuppoſed to have been joined to *Italy* in former times, being then a *Peninſula*, or Demi-Iſland, ſuch as *Peloponneſus*; and joined to the Continent by as narrow an *Iſthmus*. The reaſon of that Name we ſhall ſee anon. The Learned *Cluverius*, who meaſured this Iſland, found the North ſide 255 Miles, its Southern 190. and its Weſtern ſide 150, in all 595. Miles in Compaſs.

The ſeparating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets aſcribed to *Neptune*, who with his three forked Mace, or *Trident*, broke it off from the Land, in favour of *Jocaſtus* the Son of *Æolus*; that ſo he might inhabit there with the greater Safety, being invironed round with Waters: which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with ſome help from the *Mythologiſts*, may be made a ſtory. For if by *Æolus* and *Neptune*, we underſtand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the reſt of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of ſome Earthquakes, to which this Iſland is ſtill ſubject, which might in time conſume and wear away the Earth. Nor wants there very good reaſon for this ſuppoſition; as, 1. The narrowneſs of the Strait, exceeding not a Mile and a half; inſomuch as at the taking of *Meſſana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the People ſaved themſelves by ſwimming over this Strait, into the oppoſite parts of *Italy*. 2. The ſhallowneſs of it, being found upon a diligent ſounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis obſerved, that the Land on both ſides is very brittle, full of Caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this ſeparation; and that on the *Italian* Coaſt where the Strait is narroweſt, there ſtands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which ſignifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word Ρήγνυμι, which ſignifies to break off, or violently to pull aſunder; and is ſuppoſed to be ſo called upon this occaſion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is ſo great and dangerous in this narrow Chanel, ſo ſubject unto bluſtring winds iſſuing out of the hollow Caverns of the Earth; that the breaking off of this Iſland from the reſt of *Italy*, is a thing moſt incredible. Which dangerous nature of the paſſage, being alſo full of Rocks, and unſafe by reaſon of the Whirl-pools, occaſioned it to be called by *Florus* the Hiſtorian, *Fabuloſis infame monſtris fretum*; chiefly ſo called with reference to *Scylla*, and *Charybdis*, of which many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of theſe *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* ſide, which violently attracting all Veſſels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and caſteth up their wracks at the ſhore of *Tauromenium*, not far from *Catana*. Oppoſite to this in *Italy*, ſtandeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks ſhoot out, on which the water ſtrongly beating, making that noiſe, which the Poets feign to be the barking of Dogs. The paſſage between theſe two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllum cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who ſeeks *Charybdis* for to ſhun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicily* famous in old times, beſides theſe two, as *viz.* the puniſhment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt againſt the Gods: the frequent burning of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be ſhut up) being ſuppoſed to proceed from his ſulphurous Breath. Secondly, the Birth of *Ceres* in this Iſle; and Thirdly, the Rape of *Proſerpine*. To theſe two laſt the Iſle was conſecrated in thoſe days; to *Ceres* in regard ſhe firſt taught the People to ſow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often uſed in the Poets to ſignifie *Bread*, and other neceſſary Proviſions for Life, as *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, To *Proſerpine*, becauſe beſtowed upon her by *Pluto*, to pleaſe her after the Raviſhment committed on her.

It is ſituated under the fourth Climate, the longeſt day being 13 hours and a half: And was once called *Trinacria*, becauſe it ſhoots forth into the Sea with three *Capes* or *Promontories*: *viz.* 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*, to the North. 2. *Pachynus*, now *Capo Paſſaro*, to the Weſt. And 3. *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Caro*, to the South. This laſt looketh towards *Carthage*, and the Shores of *Africk*, from which diſtant 180 Miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a Man of quick and ſtrong ſight getting up into a Watch-Tower that ſtood in this *Cape*, deſcried a Fleet ſetting Sail out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybæans* their bigneſs and number. That this is true, I dare not ſay: for beſides the unlikelihood of kenning at ſo great a diſtance; we are taught by Philoſophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular Form, ſwelleth it ſelf into the faſhion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-ſight. From theſe three corners, this Country was (as we have ſaid) called *Trinacris*, or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

Terra tribus ſcopulis vaſtum procurrit in æquor;
Trinacris *à poſitu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Iſland with three corners braves the Main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The firſt Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Giants ſo often mentioned in the *Odyſſes* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Læſtrigones* and *Cyclopes*; of which laſt rank was the ſo much famouſed *Polyphemus*, who with ſo much humanity entertained *Ulyſſes*, and his Companions. Theſe were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani*, a People of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the Name of *Sicilia*, ſome derive it from *Sicileus*, a ſuppoſed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Iſland: to which having maſtered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the Weſt and the Northern part, to the Eaſt and South, they left their Name. At their firſt landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Meſſana*, together with *Neæ*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another *Italian* People named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and ſate down in that part of the Iſland where ſtood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their firſt arrival. The firſt of all the *Greeks* who ſet footing in it (not to ſay any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither in the purſuit of *Dædalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Hiſtorical truth) where the *Chalcideans*, a People of the Iſle *Eubœa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Architas* of *Corinth*, with his Fellow-Adventurers, by whom *Syracuſe* was either firſt built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* ſent ſome Colonies hither, the firſt Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation ſent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of *Megaris*, another State of *Greece*, ſent a Colony alſo, who built *Selinus*. And did thoſe of *Meſſene* alſo, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it, ſo repaired, the name of *Meſſana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* being ſo great undertakers of publick buſineſs, and very powerful in Shipping, would ſit ſtill, when ſo fair a booty did invite their Induſtry: who ſeizing on the *Promontories* of *Pachynus* and *Lilybæum*, and ſome of the adjoining Iſlands; did fortifie them for the better ſecuring of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all theſe ſeveral Adventurers having ſeveral Intereſſes, joined not together in the work of an abſolute Conqueſt; but planting themſelves only on the Sea-ſhores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The People are Ingenuous, Eloquent, and Pleaſant, but withal very Unconſtant, and ſo full of Talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerræ Siculæ*. They are alſo ſaid to be of a very Envious, Suſpicious, and Diſtruſtful Nature, uncapable of Injuries, and vehement in purſuit of Revenge, as appears by that great ſlaughter which they made of the *French*: yet withal Courteous enough to Strangers, and *Paraſitical* enough to their Superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable Inventions, *Ariſtotle* aſcribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and firſt making of *Paſtoral Eclogues*; *Pliny* of Clocks, (or rather of Hour-Glaſſes; for Clocks were but a late Invention, and that of the *Flemmings*;) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which laſt were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here, by ſome of the Diſciples of St. *Peter*, whom he ſent hither at his firſt coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly St. *Pancrace*) is ſaid to have been the firſt Biſhop of *Tauromenium*, and *Martianus* of *Syracuſe*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek* Church being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be Ten thouſand Souls, but looked on by the reſt as *Schiſmatical* People. For the moſt part they uſe the *Italian* Language, but very much altered by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French* and *Spaniſh* Tongues; to which Nations they have been ſeverally ſubject, ſince the time of the *Romans*. The total number of the People is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The Soil is incredibly fruitful in Wine, Oil, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which laſt Commodity the Natives ſell in Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is Refined; and thereby letting Strangers go away with the beſt part of their Gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize; which they permit to be exported, rather than put themſelves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foreign Nations. There are alſo Gems of *Agates*, and *Emralds*. It yieldeth alſo great ſtore of the richeſt Silks, which grow plentifully about *Meſſana*; variety of moſt excellent and delicious Fruits, both for Taſte and Colour: with ſuch abundance of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman* Empire; and doth now furniſh ſome parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, beſides *Maltha*, and the adjacent Iſles, with that which ſhe can ſpare of her ſuperfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and Store-houſe of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds that it was accounted a well-furniſhed *Treaſury*; as being able of it ſelf, without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furniſh the greateſt Army, with Leather, Corn, and Apparel. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and ſome other places, Wheat did grow of it ſelf, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in ſome parts of the Iſle, the Soil is ſo exceeding fruitful, that it yields unto the Husbandman an hundred meaſures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country muſt needs yield a wonderful increaſe, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thouſand Crowns yearly for the Cuſtom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, ſo famous for Bees and Honey; near which there was a City of the ſame Name alſo, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is alſo the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Mongibel*, which continually ſendeth forth flames of Fire, to the aſtoniſhment of all beholders. The moſt famous Conflagrations in the former times were preſently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicil*, which the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum ſervile*, not pacified but by the ſlaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms againſt *Rome*; and ſhortly after the death of *Julius Cæſar*, portending thoſe Proſcriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day ſuch extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it ſelf is of that height, that it is ten Miles from the top to the bottom, and may be eaſily diſcerned by Sailors at an hundred Miles diſtance; the lower parts thereof being very fruitful, the middle ſhaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the Year, notwithſtanding the frequent vomiting of Flames and Cinders. But theſe eruptions of Fire are not now ſo ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being waſted by continual burnings; ſo that the Flames which iſſue hence are hardly viſible but by Night, though the ſmoke ſhew it ſelf the moſt part of the Day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four Years; it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoining; to the deſtruction of the Vintage, and great loſs of the Country. But that, they ſay, is recompenced by the plenty of the following Years; the aſhes thereof ſo batling and enriching the Soil, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongſt our ſelves, that the Turf taken from the Ground and burnt to aſhes, and ſo ſpread on Land and ploughed into it, doth yield a very great improvement, even to barren Soils. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonſhiring* of Land, becauſe there firſt uſed; but in *Hampſhire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a Stranger there) by the name of *burning and beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*, into this fiery Furnace the Philoſopher *Empedocles* caſt himſelf, that he might be reputed a God.

———Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Ætnam
Inſiluit———

As *Horace*, in his Book *de Arte Poetica*.

Empedocles to be a God deſires,
And caſts himſelf into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reaſon of theſe fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimſtone, contained in the boſom of the Hill; which is blown by the Wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of Bellows. Through theſe chinks alſo there is continually more fuel added to the Fire, the very Water adding to the force of it: As we ſee that Water caſt on Coals in the Smiths-Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reaſon of this flame is thus ſet down by *Ovid*.

Iſta bitumineæ *rapiunt incendia vires*;
Luteaq; exiguis ardeſcunt ſulphura *flammis*.
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, abſumptis per longum viribus ævum,
Naturæq; ſuum nutrimen deerit edaci,
Non feret Ætna *famem, deſertaq; deſeret ignes.*

A rozen Mould theſe fiery flames begin,
And clayie Brimſtone aids that fire within:
Yet when the ſlimy Soil conſumed, ſhall
Yield no more food to feed the fire withal,
And Nature ſhall reſtrain her nouriſhment,
The flame ſhall ceaſe, hating all famiſhment.

Under this Hill ſome Poets feign the Giant *Enceladus* to have been buried, as before is ſaid, whoſe hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his Face. Others ſuppoſe it to be the Shop of *Vulcan*, and the *Cyclops*; and the groſs Papiſts take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike infallible.

This Iſland has in all times been extreamly liable to the furies of Earthquakes; but that which happen'd the 11*th* of *January*, in the Year 1693. is one of the moſt dreadful that has been read of; in which periſhed intirely *Sentini* and 3000 Inhabitants; *Carlontini*, *Auguſta* and 5000 Souls; *Noto* and 7000 Souls; *Specaſurno* and 3000; *Saichilo* and 8000; *Catania* and 18000 Souls; the greateſt part of *Mineo*, a Royal City, and in it 3000 Souls; *Saragoza* and 6009: In all there was an account taken of 73680 Perſons that periſhed; and yet many great Towns periſhed, with moſt of the Inhabitants, of which no account could be taken.

The principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta*, anciently called *Terius*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Iſaurus*. 4. *Hypſa*. 5. *Acaſus*, of great note for its precious Stones. None of them much obſervable for length or breadth, but that defect ſupplied by the commodiouſneſs of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Iſland, and by the benefit of Fountains and freſh-water Lakes. Moſt memorable amongſt theſe, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro*, (now *Napthia*) which for three Months doth caſt forth Water very hot, but of very ill ſmell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Ephintia*. 2. A Fountain near the foot of *Ætna*, the Water whereof is ſharp like *Vinegar*, and ſometimes boileth; into which a piece of Cloth caſt, being before ſteeped in Water mixed with Gall, becomes ſuddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the Water of which, as ſoon as drunk, provoketh looſneſs. All which effects proceed from that ſulphureous and bituminous Matter, of which the whole Iſland is exceeding full. 4. *Arethuſa*, of greater fame among the Ancients than all the reſt; eſpecially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having ſwallowed up one hundred and forty leſſer Streams, and loſing it ſelf under the Ground, is thought to empty it ſelf into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and ſeems to be ſufficiently proved, by the ſeveral Inſtances of a wooden Diſh or Cup loſt in the River *Alpheus*, and found riſing up in this River; and by the Leaves of certain Trees growing on the Banks of that *Greek*-River, and ſwimming on this in great abundance; there being none of theſe Trees in all *Sicil*. *Decitur* Alpheus (ſaith *Mela*) *ſe non conſociare pelago*; *ſed ſubter maria, terraſq; depreſſus, huc agere alveum, atq; hic ſe rurſus extollere.*

This Iſland is famous for the worthy Scholars ſhe once produced, *viz.* *Æſchylus*, the firſt *Tragedian* of fame; who being bald through Age, once walked in the Fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald Pate for a white Rock, let a Shelfiſh fall on it, of that bigneſs that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Hiſtorian. 3. *Empedocles*, the firſt inventer of *Rhetorick*; and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclide*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris*. 5. *Archimedes*, a moſt worthy *Mathematician*, the firſt Author of the Sphere; of which Inſtrument he made one of that art and bigneſs, that one ſtanding within, might eaſily perceive the ſeveral motions of every Celeſtial Orb. He made alſo divers Military Engines, which in the Siege of *Syracuſa* ſorely vexed the *Romans*, and was at laſt ſlain in his Study by a common Soldier in the ſack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcellus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the firſt Inventer of Comedies. And 7. *Theocritus*, the firſt Author of Paſtoral *Eclogues*. In the latter-times, *Nicolas*, Abbot of *Palermo*, a Learned *Canoniſt*, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greateſt fame.

In *Pliny*'s time there were reckoned in this Iſland ſeventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three ſmall Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Val de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mona*; to which the Iſles adjoining may add a fourth.

1. *VALLIS de NOTO* taketh up the Eaſtern parts of the Iſland. The chief Cities of which are 1. *Syracuſa*, once the Metropolis of the whole Iſland, and a moſt flouriſhing Common-wealth: it was (as *Tully* reports) the greateſt and goodlieſt City of all that were poſſeſſed by the *Greeks*; for ſituation very ſtrong; and of an excellent proſpect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both ſides of it, was for the moſt part environed with beautiful Buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both ſides banked up, and ſuſtained with very fair Walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodlieſt City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us,

but one of the greateſt alſo in the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmoſt Wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compaſs, which of our meaſure cometh to eighteen Miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to ſay, *Inſula* (or the Iſle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, beſides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the reſt; the greatneſs of all which, the Ruines and Foundations of it do ſtill demonſtrate. It ſtandeth North of the Promontory called *Pachynus*, and was built by *Architas* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*; who being for an unuatural Rape, committed on a young Gentleman, baniſhed his Country, together with his Friend and Companion *Miſcellus*; conſulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they ſhould diſpoſe of themſelves. The Oracle demanding whether they moſt affected Wealth, or Health: *Miſcellus* anſwereth Health, and *Architas* Wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to ſettle himſelf at *Crotona* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reaſon of its beautiful and commodious Port, proving of greateſt Trade and Wealth next to *Carthage* it ſelf, in thoſe times of the World. It was the Cuſtom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive-leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to baniſhment for five years, and was called *Petaliſm*, from the *Greek* word Πέταλον, ſignifying a Leaf. Yet could not this Device ſo well ſecure them in the poſſeſſion of their ſo much deſired Freedom, but that this City fell oftner into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Auguſtus*, who after a ſecond Deſtruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, ſent a Colony hither, and built upon the Iſle, and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Iſle (*Ortygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the whole City alſo being very well walled, and held by a Garriſon of *Spaniards*. *Sandys* our Countreyman who ſaw this Place, gives us no other Account of its preſent State, than that it is ſtrongly wall'd, and not far removed on both ſides from the Sea, the point whereon it doth ſtand being but narrow towards the Weſt, and ſo maketh by Land a difficult Approach, without which are the Ruines of the old City, and the principal Gate is on the South ſide, and near the Weſt end. The Garriſon conſiſted then of 200 *Spaniards*, and 300 Townſmen; beſides certain Houſemen of the Countrey adjoyning who ſerve by turns, and are ſent out every Night to ſcour and guard the Sea Coaſt. The Winter is very Temperate, but the Summer is exceeding hot and not Healthful; the Town is moſtly ſupplyed by an old Aquaduct, which brings their Water near the Town from the nearer Mountains; but then there are ſome Springs in and about the Town. 2. *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Diviſion; a City which heretofore contended with *Syracuſe* in point of Greatneſs; ſituate on a very high Rock, unacceſſible on all ſides but by one narrow paſſage; and having under the Cape of *Paſſari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that ſide. *Noto* ruined intirely the 11*th* of *January* 1693. with the deſtruction of 7000 of its Inhabitants. 3. *Auguſta*, ſituate on the Shore alſo, and of ſo large a Haven, that it could never be fortified; Built in 1229. and Fortified in 1232. by *Frederick* the Emperor, made ſtronger by the *Spaniards* by cutting it off from the Continent, and adding three Caſtles, Surprized by the *French* in 1675. Abandon'd by them in 1678. Intirely deſtroyed by an Earthquake, and the firing its Magazens the 11*th* of *January*, 1693. with the loſs of 6000 of its Inhabitants. 4. *Caſtro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thouſand Families, ſituate in a wholſom Air, and a fruitful Soil, which they hold to be the very Naval and exact middle of the Iſland. It is alſo much prized for Mines of moſt excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whoſe Fiſhing is farmed for eighteen thouſand Crowns yearly: It was anciently called *Leontium*, and ſtood ſomewhat North of *Syracuſa*; with which continually in War, either to preſerve their own Liberties, or get the Soveraignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is ſaid to have raviſhed *Proſerpine*: In after-times the Dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who ſtirred up the *Roman* Slaves againſt their Lords; and having broke open the common Priſons, and received all ſuch as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty Thouſand. This War the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at laſt but with no ſmall difficulty, by the Valour and good Fortune of *P. Rupilius*. *A. U. C.* 650.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the Weſt parts of the Iſland. The chief Cities thereof, 1. *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the deſtruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*.

> ——*Nec enim lex juſtior ulla eſt,*
> *Quam necis Artifices arte perire ſua.*

> Moſt juſt it is, a Man ſhould be tormented
> With that, which firſt his cruel Wit invented.

It was ſaid anciently of the People of this City, that *they built as if they ſhould never die, and eat as if they were ſure to live no longer.* 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*; now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the Seat of the *Spaniſh* Vice-roy; ſituate on the Weſt Cape of the Iſland looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate Buildings, ſtrong Walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* ſerving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*, a work of vaſt expence, and worthy of the greatneſs of *Rome*. It is alſo an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity. 3. *Monreal*, commonly called *Morreal*, famous for the Church, the Archbiſhops See; built by *William* II. King of *Sicily*, and endowed with a large Revenue about the year 1182. It is called in *Latine*, *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trepani*, ſituate on a Promontory thruſting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on theſe Coaſts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are ſaid to be the beſt Seamen of *Sicil*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, ſituate South of *Lilybæum*, and not far from *Selinus*. This is a Biſhops See under the Archbiſhop of *Palermo*, a Sea-port Town, having a Large, Safe, Convenient, Haven, and therefore is well fortified againſt the *Moors*. It lies 30 Miles from *Trapano* to the South. 6 *Eryx*, ſituate on a Mountain overlooking the Sea, ſaid by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the Son of *Venus*, ſlain here by *Hercules*: Memorable in thoſe elder times for being the Seat of King *Aceſtes*, who ſo kindly entertained *Æneas*, and his wandring *Trojans*: And a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worſhipped, and from thence was called *Erycina*, as, *Sive tu mavis Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the laſt Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*. On the ſurrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Annibal*, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongſt other things, that the *Carthaginians* ſhould relinquiſh all the Claim or Title which they had to any part of this Iſland; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracuſa* excepted only;) who, whatſoever colour they were pleaſed to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by Ambition and Covetouſneſs. And therefore in my mind *Florus* ſtates it rightly, who ſaith, that it was undertaken *ſpecie quidem juvandi Socios, re autem ſollicitante Præda*;

i. e. under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themſelves into their protection, but in plain terms to get poſſeſſion of the Iſland which lay fit for *Italy*. Now, and long ſince a Ruine only, the place on which it ſtood being called *Mount St. Julian*. 7. *Segeſta*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojan* Ladies, weary of their many long and dangerous Voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*; on which occaſion it was built. Peopled at firſt by ſuch of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longævoſque ſenes, & feſſas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who choſe rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas*, in his queſt of *Italy*. Called then *Aceſta*, in honour of King *Aceſtes*, ſpoken of before, part of whoſe Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egeſta* from *Ægeſtas* one of *Trojan* Race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at laſt *Segeſta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-Eaſt of the Iſland, oppoſite unto *Vallis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicoſia*, in the Mid-land. 2. *Milaſe*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Meſſana*, a City of great ſtrength and beauty juſt oppoſite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the firſt Town which the *Romans* had in this Iſland, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Soldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themſelves too ſtrong for the *Citizens*, made themſelves Maſters of the place; but being withal too weak to hold it, choſe rather to ſurrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the firſt War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the moſt beautiful Building of any in *Sicil*; and peopled by the wealthieſt ſort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleaſure (if not voluptuouſneſs) as having plenty of all neceſſary Proviſions, Fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elſewhere in the Country. On the Weſt ſide there ſtands a ſtrong Citadel, highly mounted, and well Gariſoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn where Lights are kept burning all Night long, for the direction of ſuch Mariners as are to paſs thoſe dangerous Streights; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Meſſana*. The Haven of this Town is the faireſt of *Sicil*, whoſe entrances are ſo ſtrongly Sconced and Bulwarked, that the People let their Gates (in deriſion of the *Turks*) ſtand always open. It is alſo an Archbiſhops See. The *Spaniards* treating the Inhabitants of this powerful and rich City very ill, in the Year 1674. they revolted, and call'd in the *French*, who defended this Place againſt the *Spaniards*, till the 16*th* of *March* 1678. but then being over-powered, they ſurrender'd it, without ſecuring the Townſmens Privileges; ſo that this City was doubly ruin'd by this Attempt to relieve it ſelf. 4. *Catana*, ſo often vexed by *Dionyſius* the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*; more ancient than beautiful: ſeated on the North ſide of a great (but hollow) Bay, not eaſily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Gariſon, nor much traded by Merchants; the Riches of the Place conſiſting principally in the fruitfulneſs of the Soil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a ſmall Univerſity. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And ſo was alſo *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Iſland, called ſometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a Ruine only of what was in the former days: a place by Nature of great ſtrength, but over-topped by *Syracuſa* and *Meſſana*, betwixt which it ſtandeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclopes* dwelt, there being three little Rocky Iſlands (now not Inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*. *Charles* the Fifth wall'd and fortifi'd this City againſt the *Turks*; ſince which there has been an Haven forced by *Pieres*, to promote its Trade: but in the Year 1669. it ſuffered very much by an Irruption of Mount *Ætna*, which has abated much of its former Wealth. The 11*th* of *January* 1693. it was intirely ruined by an Earthquake, with the deſtruction of 18000 of its Inhabitants.

4. On the Weſt part of *Sicil* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Iſlands, heretofore only ſeven, and all almoſt of equal bigneſs; now eleven in number. The firſt name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them, who being well skilled in divining from what Coaſts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the Smoke aſcending from them) occaſioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of Fire; by reaſon of the continual flames of Fire from thence evaporating in thoſe elder days. But now the matter of thoſe flames being waſted in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STROMBOLO*; by ſome Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundneſs of it. An Iſland of about ten Miles compaſs, but ſuch as ſeems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof iſſueth continually a flame like a burning *Beacon*, eaſily diſcernable far off, but at Nights eſpecially: a place ſo full of horror to the neighbouring Iſlanders, that they and many others of the *Romiſh Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it ſelf. And yet in thoſe parts where the rage of the Fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitful Soil, and apt for Tillage.

2. But the faireſt and beſt peopled of thoſe Iſlands, is that of *LIPARA*, ſome ten Miles in circuit, (from whence the reſt are called the *Liparean* Iſles) ſo named from *Lipara* the chief Town, ſaid to be built in the time of *Joſiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Biſhop, under the Archbiſhop of *Meſſana*. The Iſland generally fruitful, well furniſhed with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with ſome hot medicinal Baths, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermeſſa*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of ſo great Wealth, that falling into the diſpleaſure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the ſum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which Sum they had no ſooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewel, robbed their very Temples. Unproſperous in his Actions always after that Adventure. Nor ſped it better with the *Turks*, who in the Year 1544. laid the Country deſolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the Fifth repleniſhed it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very ſtrongly againſt all Invaſions.

3. Not far off lieth another of theſe Iſlands, now called *FAFOGNANA*, or *Fauciana*, but anciently *Æguſa*, conceived to be the ſame which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægates*: in which there is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greateſt Navies; and near to which *Luctatius Catulus* the Conſul gave the *Carthaginians* their laſt blow at Sea, which drew along with it the ſurrender of *Eryx*, and the loſs of *Sicil*. *Denyme*, *Ericoſæ*, *Eunymos*, and *Phœnicuſæ*, four other of theſe Iſlands, but of leſſer note, I paſs over willingly; and make haſte to.

4. *HIERO*, the ſeventh and laſt of theſe Iſlands of any conſideration, and the eighth in tale, called alſo *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worſhipped; ſaid to have firſt appeared above the Water at ſuch time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, ſtony, and unhabited place, by reaſon of the Fires which formerly have flamed ſo hideouſly (eſpecially in the Year 1444.) that it made not only the reſt of theſe Iſlands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Iſle was fought the firſt Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*: Before which time the *Romans* had never uſed the Seas, as being totally employed in the Conqueſt of *Italy*, inſomuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exerciſe their Men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the Water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithſtanding, having deviſed an Engine like a grapling Hook, they ſo faſten'd the adverſe Fleet unto them, that the whole Fight ſeemed a Land-battel fought upon the Sea. The Victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duillius* the Conſul, then commanding

in chief; and honoured with the firſt *Naval Triumph* that was ever ſolemnized at *Rome*.

After the Iſland of *Sicily* was once known to the *Greeks*, they ſent from all their chief Cities ſeveral Colonies, who planted on the Sea-Coaſts of the Country, as before noted. But ſo as they never united themſelves in a body together, but had their ſeveral Eſtates and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many Factions, and at laſt made themſelves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panætius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuſe*, *Cleander* at *Gela*, and when one Faction grew too weak to reſiſt the other, they called in ſeveral Foreign Nations to abet their Quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were firſt called into *Sicily* by the *Meſſanians*, againſt the *Agrigentines*. And on the ſame was managed here a great part of the *Peloponneſian* Wars: the *Athenians* ſiding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracuſans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demoſthenes* murdered in Priſon. But becauſe *Syracuſe* was a City of the greateſt Authority, and of greateſt influence over the reſt of *Sicily*, we ſhall more punctually inſiſt on the State-affairs thereof. The Government of which at firſt was popular, as it was in moſt of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Ariſtocratical*, when *Gelon* made himſelf King of it, about 26 Years after the expulſion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom with as many as ſucceeded in the Royal Dignity, take a long as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syraduſa*.

A. M.

3465 1. *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the Quarrels in *Syracuſa*, betwixt the Magiſtrates and People, made himſelf Maſter of the City; and was choſen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were ſlain in Battel for their firſt welcom into *Sicil*. 7.

3472 2. *Hiero*, the Brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King alſo, but a rude and covetous Man, whereby he loſt the love of his People. 11.

3484 3. *Thraſybulus*, Brother of *Hiero*, whoſe Government proved ſo cruel and unſupportable, that it held not above ten Months; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracuſans*, the People did a while enjoy their Liberty; but withal fell into thoſe Factions, which after 60 Years made them loſe it again.

3544 4. *Dionyſius*, that ſo famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracuſans*, made himſelf their King: A Man of great Vices, but great Vertues withal. He brought almoſt all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*; reigning in all 38 Years.

3582 5. *Dionyſius* II. ſucceeding his Father in his Kingdom and Vices, but not in Valour or Wiſdom, was firſt outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuſe*; and afterward taken Priſoner by *Tymoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was ſent, and there died in Exile.

3635 6. *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Soldier: 20 Years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himſelf King of *Syracuſe*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, he paſſed over into *Africk* and beſieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.

3681 7. *Hiero* II. of a Commander of their Armies choſen King of *Syracuſe*, by a Party which he had made amongſt them. In his time brake out the firſt *Punick* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Meſſana* againſt the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that time of the greateſt part of the Iſland. 56.

3737 8. *Hieronymus*, the Son of *Hiero*, after whoſe death *Syracuſe* and all *Sitil* became ſubject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of theſe eight Kings, the ſix firſt commonly paſs under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence and from ſome others of like diſpoſition, who lorded it over the reſt of the free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionyſii*, who were ſo odious, that there were continual Execrations poured on them; only one old Woman praying for the Life of the latter. Who being asked the cauſe, made anſwer, that ſhe knew his Father to have been a monſtrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the Curſes of the People have prevailed, and obtained his Death; this his Son ſucceeded, worſe by far than he; for whoſe Life ſhe was reſolved to pray, leſt after his Death the Devil himſelf ſhould come amongſt them. But to proceed; after theſe *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Iſland was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire. It fell into the hands of *Genſericus*, King of the *Goths*, in the Year 440. and was recovered from them by *Beliſarius*, in the Reign of *Juſtinian*, about the Year 535. till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Apulia* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whoſe Greatneſs, this Iſland having been miſerably pilled and ſpoiled by the Emperor *Conſtans*, *An.* 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*, under whom it continued from the Year 827 to the Year 1070. It was in the mean time granted to the *Normans* by Pope *Nicholas* the Second, in the Year 1058. who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the Title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, ſubject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* Lines; till the Death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whoſe Death when *Manfroy* or *Manfrede*, the baſe Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himſelf King of theſe Countries; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, Brother to *Henry* III. of *England*: a Prince of ſuch Riches, that he was able to diſpend an hundred Marks *per Diem*, for ten Years together, which, according to the Standard of thoſe times, was no ſmall ſum. But the Conditions which the Pope propoſed were ſo impoſſible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well ſay to his Maſter, *I will give thee the Moon; catch, climb up, and take it*. The Earl refuſing it, it was offered the King for his ſecond Son *Edmund*, who was inveſted by the gift of a Ring in 1255. and Money coined in his Name by the Popes appointment, with the Inſcription of *Aimundus Rex Siciliæ*. But the King not being able to purſue the buſineſs, becauſe then overburthened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having ſucked no ſmall ſtore of Treaſure from him; it was in the Year 1263. given unto *Charles* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, Brother to *Lewis* X. Under him thoſe Countries jointly continued ſubject till the Year 1281. in which his Competitor, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his Wiſe, Daughter of *Manfroy* before-mentioned, promiſing him to fight a ſingle Combat before our King *Edward* I. at *Bourdeaux*, failed of his Word; and in the mean time ſo contrived it, that at the ſound of a Bell tolling to Prayers, all the *French-men* in *Sicily* were cruelly maſſacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Veſperi Siculi*; and was managed by *John de Procbita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had diſpoſſeſſed of the Iſle of *Procbita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him ſuch a piece of Injuſtice, added a further Inſolency to it, in the forcing his Wiſe. Provoked with theſe two Injuries, the abuſed Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Maſter of the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he had very good Intelligences; and where the

French by reaſon of their Luſts and Inſolencies had ſo exaſperated the Natives, that they were capable enough of any ſuch impreſſions, as a Man ſharing with him in his Sufferings could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggeth out his Navy, under pretence of ſome exploit againſt the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out ſo agreeably to his expectation, that in one inſtant as it were, on the ſignal given, the *French* were univerſally murthered in all parts of the Iſland: The People being ſo enraged, that they would not ſpare Women great with Child, if ſuppoſed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the general conſent of all ſorts of People crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, I confeſs, which as the Actors learned of the *Engliſh Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; ſo did they teach it to the *French*, who practiſed it on the *Hugonots* of *France*, in that horrid Maſſacre of *Paris*, *An.* 1572. This *Sicilian* Maſſacre was an Act which ſo provoked the Pope, that he ſolemnly accurſed the King, and cauſed many of the neighbouring Princes to arm againſt him. But the Fox fared never the worſe for that: who did ſo order his Affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of thoſe Enemies which on the Pope's Curſe had come in againſt him; and ſetled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Iſland hath belonged to the Houſe of *Aragon*, but not always in poſſeſſion of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whoſe Succeſſion followeth.

Kings of *Sicily*, of the Houſe of *Aragon*.

1281 1. *Pedro*, or *Peter* I. King of *Aragon* by Birth, of *Sicily* in right of his Wife, the choice of the People, and the Legacy of *Coradine* (the laſt of the Royal Line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the Sword.

1285 2. *James*, the ſecond Son of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*, after the death of his Brother *Alfonſus*, ſucceeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Iſle of *Sardinia*.

1296 3. *Frederick*, the Brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got poſſeſſion of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonſo*, a younger Son of this *Frederick*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.

1336 4. *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. Son of *Frederick*.

1342 5. *Frederick* II.

6. *Peter*, or *Pedro* III.

7. *Lewis*, Son to *Peter* III.

1355 8. *Frederick* III. in the Life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1389 9. *Martin*, Son to *Martin* I. King of *Aragon*, ſucceeded in the right of his Wife *Blanch*, Daughter of *Frederick* III. and dying without Iſſue, gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.

1409 10. *Martin* II. of *Sicily*, and the firſt of *Aragon*, of which laſt he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his Son. After which time the Iſle of *Sicily* being again united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never ſeparated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his Son, the better to fit him for the Bed of *Iſabel* Princeſs of *Caſtile*, with whom the Match was then in treaty; and when the Emperor *Charles* V. gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip*, his eldeſt Son, on his Marriage with *Mary* Queen of *England*, who thereupon was ſtiled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Jeruſalem*. But this held only for a Year: his Father ſhortly after reſigning to him all his Kingdom, whereby it became joined to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by ſome ſaid to be but 800000, but as others ſay, a Million of Ducats, moſt of which is again diſburſed on the entertainment of the *Vice-Roy*, and the defence of the Iſland. The Arms are, *Or*, four Pallets *Gules* (being thoſe of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches *Argent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Manfroy*, King of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, ſpoken of before, who gave thoſe Arms with reference to his deſcent from the *German* Emperors.

This Iſland, for the number of its Nobility, compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 Years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 13 Marqueſſes, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barons: Men of Authority and Power in their ſeveral Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Iſland, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in the Court of *Spain*, but more to ſatisfie that King upon reaſon of State, than any affection of their own to ſo long an exile: But notwithſtanding this, the Policy of the Inhabitants of this Iſland forced the *Spaniards* to recal all their Taxes in the Year 1647. And for the Government of the Church,

Here are Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 9.

The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

THE Iſland and Kingdom of SARDINIA lieth Weſt from *Sicily*, from the neareſt point whereof called Cape *Boii*, or Cape *Coro*, it is diſtant about 200 Miles. It is in length 180 Miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is ſituate under the fourth *Climate*, the longeſt Day being 14 Hours.

In the time of *Ariſtotle* it was called *Ichnuſa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the reſemblance which it hath to a Man's Shoo or Sandal; and finally *Sardinia*, from *Sardus* the Son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* poſſeſſed the ſame. For this there is ſufficient authority amongſt the Ancients. Of the firſt Names, ſaith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timeus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*, and *Myrſilus*, *Ichnuſa*, from the ſimilitude which it hath to the Shoo-ſole, or impreſſion of a Man's Foot on the Ground; *Sardiniam Timæus* Sandaliotin *appellavit ab effigie ſoleæ*; *Myrſilus*, Ichnuſam *à ſimilitudine veſtigii*. And for the laſt, nothing can be more plain than that of *Pauſanias*, who tells, that the firſt who came by Shipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the Son of *Maceris*, whom the *Ægyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Iſland then called *Ichnuſa*, τὸ ὄνομα ἀπὸ τȣ̃ Σάρδȣ τȣ́τȣ μετέβαλεν ἡ νῆσος, cauſed it after his own Name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the People in the *Latin* Tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoining Sea *Mare Sardoum*. And to this Name it was ſo conſtant, that no following Plantations from other Countries were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and ſetled here, where they built *Olbion*, and *Agrillis*: leaving a Memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in ſome places, which remained in the time of *Pauſanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themſelves for his ſake the Name of *Iolatenſes*. And after the deſtruction of *Troy*, ſome of that ſcattered Nation came and planted in ſome void parts of the Iſland; kept to themſelves the Name of *Ilienſes*, and by that Name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of theſe Nations did attempt the change of the Name, becauſe not of ability to ſuppreſs or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puiſſant Nation than the former were; and ſuch as by the nearneſs of their habitation (*Sardinia* being diſtant but 160 Miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at laſt they did) a full Conqueſt of it: building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*: and holding it until it was unjuſtly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the firſt *Punick*

War, at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and ſo not able to reſiſt.

But of the Name and firſt Plantations of this Iſland we have ſaid enough. Let us now look upon the place, in which it is reported, that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtful Beaſt, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and thoſe very plentiful of Fiſh; but generally ſo deſtitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the Rain which falls in Winter, for their uſe in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no paſſage for the Northern Winds, being obſtructed by the high Mountain near Cape *Lugudori*, the Air is generally unhealthy, if not peſtilential: Inſomuch that *Tully* writing to his Brother *Quintus*, being then in this Iſland, adviſeth him to remember, as in point of Health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and ſpeaking of *Tigellius*, a *Sardinian* born, ſaith of him, that he was more peſtilent than the Country which bred him.

The Soil is very fertile in reſpect of *Corſica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*, which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the Soil it ſelf. Well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheeſe and Hides which are ſent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horſes hereof, hot, head-ſtrong, and hard to be broken, but will laſt long. The Bullocks naturally amble, ſo that the Country-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Aſſes. Here is alſo the Beaſt called *Mufrones*, or *Muſcriones*, found in *Corſica* alſo, but in no other part of *Europe*; ſomewhat reſembling a Stag, but of ſo ſtrong an Hide, that it is uſed by the *Italians* inſtead of Armour: Of the Skin of which, carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dreſſed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is ſaid he will die with Laughter; whence came the Proverb, *Riſus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I ſhall not diſpute, tho' it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poyſonous nature, cauſeth Men to die with ſuch a Convulſion or attraction of Sinews, that they ſeem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The People are ſmall of Stature, of Complexion inclining unto ſwarthineſs, and that either by reaſon of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their Behaviour much participating of that People alſo. So ſlothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now eſteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to Hunting, and ſo prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable among themſelves, and in ſome meaſure courteous unto Strangers alſo. Their Language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their Diet on Meats common on groſs; their Apparel in the Towns (eſpecially that of the Women) gorgeous, in the Villages ſordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make moſt ſhew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their Neighbourhood to their Pope, and their ſubjection to the *Spaniard*, have impoſed upon them. But in their practice of it they are looſe enough, going to *Maſs* on *Sundays* and *Saints-days*; which done they fall a dancing in the midſt of the *Church*, ſinging in the mean time Songs too immodeſt for an *Ale-houſe*. Nay, it is thought that their *Clergy* it ſelf is the moſt rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any People in Chriſtendom; ſaying their Maſſes rather by rote, than reaſon, and utterly unable to give any account of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudori*, toward *Corſica*; and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*; the firſt the leaſt, and withal mountainous and barren; the laſt the larger, level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calaris*, firſt built by the *Carthaginians*, and ſituate in that point of the Iſland which lieth neareſt to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of ſuch fame, when it was firſt taken by *Gracchus*, for the uſe of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs urbium*; and was deſtroyed by the ſaid *Gracchus*, the better to diſable the Natives from rebelling againſt the Conquerors. Being new built again in more ſettled times, it was a ſecond time deſtroyed by the *Sarazens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Piſans*, at ſuch time as they were Maſters of this part of the Iſland. Very well fortified by Nature, as ſeated on the top of an Hill; and hath under it a ſpacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it ſelf adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Archbiſhop, many fair Turrets, and the conſtant Reſidence of the Vice-Roy: from whoſe authority it is exempt by eſpecial priviledge, as to the legal Government of it; and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Boſſa*, on the Weſt ſide of the Iſland, another Arch-Epiſcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Corſica*. 4. *Aquilaſtre*, on the Weſtern Shores. 5. *Saſſary*, a Town of conſequence, where they have an *Aquæduct* twelve Miles long, reaching from thence unto *S. Gavius*. 6. *Alghes-boſa*, a good Town ſituate in a wholſome Air, and a fertile Soil, and having a fair Haven of ſix miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do moſt commonly ride. 7. *Oreſtagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reaſon of a bad Air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives title to the Marqueſs of *Oreſtagne*. 8. *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruine; yet giving title to the third Archbiſhop of this Iſland, who is called in Latin, *Turritanus*. Here are alſo in divers parts of this Iſland the remainders of ſundry Towers and Forts which the People call *Noracks* from *Nora*, one of the Sons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the firſt dwelling or manſion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath ſo much in it of Hiſtorical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; ſomewhat before the expedition of the *Atticks* under *Iolaus*, as *Pauſanias* teſtifieth.

This Iſland taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is ſaid, was firſt under the immediate Juriſdiction of the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*; but after by *Juſtinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceſs of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Sarazens*, *Anno* 807. From them recovered by the joint-forces of the *Piſans* and the *Genoeſe*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Piſans*; and the Northern towards *Corſica*, to thoſe of *Genoa*. But the *Genoeſe* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Iſland being leſs in quantity, and worſe in quality) began to quarrel with the *Piſans*, and at the laſt to break into open Wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface* VIII. beſtowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoeſe*, *Anno* 1324. became Maſter of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend ſome Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicil*, then in his poſſeſſion; to ſome preceding Kings whereof it had once been ſubject: and having backed that Claim by the Pope's Donation, who challenged it as a part of St. *Peter*'s Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpoſe of performance, that being only a device to fetch him off from the Party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered: and was as ſuddenly laid by, as if it had done the feat intended in the Propoſition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who reſides at *Calaris*, and muſt of neceſſity be a *Spaniard*, under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* alſo; the one for Cape *Cagliari*, the other for Cape *Lugudori*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What Profits ariſe hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The Arms hereof are ſaid to be *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, betwixt four *Sarazens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but firſt taken (as ſome ſay) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occaſion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found ſevered from their Bodies in the Battel of *Alcoraz*, *Anno* 1094. won by *Don Pedro*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers ſmall Iſlands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Iſola Roſſa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2. the Iſle of *Hercules*, now called *Aſinaria*. 3. St. *Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Iſland,
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST of the Realm of *Naples*, lieth the *LAND OF THE CHURCH*, extended North and South from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuſcan* Seas. Bounded on the North-Eaſt with the River *Trontus*, on the South-eaſt with the *Axofenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-Weſt by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which ſeparated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-Weſt with the River *Piſco*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuſcany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Accompt the Pope's Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italy*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above two hundred Miles, and in the length along the *Adriatick* to the furtheſt parts of *Romandiola*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth moſt fitly for the command of all the reſt, it being very eaſie for the Popes to convey their Forces by Sea or Land, into what part thereof they pleaſe. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of ſeveral Factions; and that the Succeſſor purſueth not the deſigns of his Predeceſſors, but hath his own ends to himſelf, which for the moſt part are driven on without conſideration of encreaſing the publick *Patrimony*; it is not poſſible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, conſidering the extraordinary fertility of the Soil, able to ſpare Proviſions for the greateſt Armies; the multitudes of People which it may afford, in regard they are ſo ſeldom conſumed by Wars; and that the Men of this Dominion (but chiefly thoſe of *Rome*, and the parts adjoining, are conceived to be the beſt Soldiers of *Italy*; as retaining ſome ſparks of their Anceſtors Valour, together with their Gravity, Magnificence, and a certain greatneſs of Courage, which ſeems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preſerve alſo to this day ſo much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of Life before Trades or Merchandize. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dreſſed, and all things done exactly in the way of Huſbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both ſides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little coſt might be made very uſeful: yet do they no way improve their Fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of *Traffick*; which is the main defect of the *Papal Policy*, and filleth a rich Country full of poor and indigent Perſons. Thoſe who have of late Years travel'd into *Italy* repreſent things quite otherwiſe. One of our own Country-men thus expreſſeth himſelf: “All the way from *Florence*, through the Great Duke's Country, looked ſo ſad that I concluded it muſt be the moſt diſpeopl'd of all *Italy*; but indeed I changed my Note, when at *Pont Centino* I came into the Popes Territories, where there was a rich Bottom all uncultivated, and not ſo much as ſtock'd with Cattel: But as I paſs'd from *Fiaſcone* to *Viterbo*, this appear'd yet more amazing, for a vaſt Champion Country lay almoſt quite deſolate; and that wide Town hath yet few Inhabitants, and thoſe looked ſo poor and miſerable, that the People in the ordinary Towns in *Scotland*, and in its worſt places, make a better appearance. And within a Day's Journey of *Rome*, tho' the Soil was rich, and lay ſo ſweetly, that it far exceeds any thing I ever ſaw out of *Italy*; yet it had neither Inhabitants in it, nor Cattel upon it to the tenth part of what it would bear; and a little after, as I went out of *Rome*, on the other ſide towards *Naples*, and on the way to *Civita Vecchia*, a vaſt rich Champion Country that runs all along to *Terracina*, which is a hundred Miles from the former, and is in many places twelve and twenty Miles broad, is abandon'd to ſuch a degree, that as far as ones Eye can ſee there is often not ſo much as one Houſe to be ſeen, but on the Hills that are on the North ſide of this Valley: And by this diſpeopling of the Country the Air is now become ſo unwholſome, that it is not ſafe to lodge a Night in it, eſpecially in the Summer, the Water for want of draining rotting the Ground, and producing ſuch noiſome Steams, that it is felt even in *Rome* it ſelf; and if it were not for the Breezes that come from the Mountains it would be intolerable.

This Learned Author aſcribes all this deſolation to the ill Government of the Popes, who being Elective, are yet Abſolute in their Temporal Powers, and each of them endeavouring to make the beſt he can poſſibly for the benefit of his own Family, it has been by degrees reduced to this miſerable ſtate of Deſolation and Ruine. The Popes have not been contented of late Years to tax their Subjects too high, but they have the preemption of all the Corn too that grows in the Eccleſiaſtical State, ſo that no Profit is made by the Owners out of the Tillage of the Soil, all that going wholly to the Pope; And as the Apoſtle obſerves, *He that ploughs muſt plough in hope*, that is, to be the better for it one Day, intimating, that without this Hope, no Man would plough. So here it is literally fulfill'd, and no Man takes care for more than will be needful for his own Family; ſo that it is thought a fourth part of the Inhabitants of *Rome* it ſelf have left that City within the laſt ten Years. So that what ever the Pope anciently might have done, it is moſt certain at this day he is not able to defend his Country againſt any Prince that is able to bring 20000 Men into the Field.

In the Year 1557. when Pope *Paul* the Fourth forced *Philip* the Second into a War againſt him, that Prince took above a hundred Towns from him with a ſmall Army; and if he had not been ſtrangely addicted to this See, he might eaſily have ſtrip'd it of all its Territories, and have taken *Rome* it ſelf: And ſince that time it was never able to do any thing againſt any of the greater States of *Italy*. And when *Paul* the Fifth Interdicted the *Venetians*, in the Year 1606. and threatned a War againſt him, the *French* and *Spaniards* refuſing to aſſiſt him, he was forced to an ignoble Peace, purely for want of Force to compel that State to ſubmit to him. *Baudrand* who travel'd over all the Pope's Territories, ſpeaks of the Deſolations of it in every place, tho' he was a zealous *Roman Catholick*. And I have heard the ſame things from many other who have travel'd over his Dominions. But to proceed to the deſcription of the Pope's Eſtate: it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*. 2. The Territory of *Ferrara*. 3. The Eſtate of *Urbine*. 4 *Marca*

Anconitana. 5. *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabinia.* 6. *St. Peter's Patrimony*, and 7. *Campagna di Roma.*

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Foglio*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbina* on the Eaſt, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the Weſt, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*: and from the *Apennine* on the South to *Padus*, and the *Adriatick* on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Conſul, who having won it from the *Gauls*, planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he purſued this War againſt the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better paſſage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Cauſey, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia.* Chief Rivers hereof, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, which are only borderers; 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia* (or *Boulogne*) ſeated in a ſpacious Plain near the *Apennine* Hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antique, ſeeming for the moſt part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the Houſes of Free-ſtone, the reſt of Bricks; built with arched Cloyſters towards the Street, under which one may walk dry in the greateſt Rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief Univerſity of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much ſtudied here, inſomuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andreas*, *Aza*, *Bartolus*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Caſtles in the Air, which aſcribe the founding of this Univerſity to *Theodoſius* II. The Charter of whoſe foundation dated *Anno* 423. is an idle and fooliſh thing. For there it is ſaid that at the inſtitution there were preſent *Gualter* Earl of *Poicters*, Embaſſador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: When at that time, neither thoſe Earldoms, or thoſe Kingdoms were in *rerum natura.* It is ſituate on the River *Apoſa*, and was by former Writers called *Felſina.* Near unto this Town in a Demy-Iſland called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between *Auguſtus*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themſelves: which Combination was confirmed by the enſuing Proſcription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proſcribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2. *Rimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note, but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia.* The City large, and ſeated in a plentiful and pleaſant Soyl, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs and Olives; wealthy withal, the Trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the moſt part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs, but joyned together by a fair and ſtately Bridge built over it by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who alſo erected in the City a *Triumphal* Arch. It is ſituate ſomewhat Eaſt of the River *Rubicon*, which in thoſe times divided *Italy* from *Gaule*: Upon the Bank whereof, looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar, having on it a *Latine* Inſcription to this purpoſe, *viz. Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and paſs not with thy Forces beyond* Rubicon; *whoſoever goeth againſt this command; let him be held an enemy to the People of* Rome. Which Rule when *Cæſar* had tranſgreſſed, and ſurprized this City, he ſo frighted *Pompey* and his Faction, that they abandoned *Italy* and *Rome* it ſelf, and withdrew themſelves into *Epirus.* It is ſaid that *Cæſar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Soothſayers gathered that he ſhould be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which Dream, and ſeveral Prodigies hapning at the ſame time with it, did ſo encourage him in his Enterpriſe, that he is ſaid, at the paſſing over *Rubicon*, to have ſaid theſe words, *Eamus quò nos Deorum oſtente, &c.* Let us go whither the Sins of our Enemies, and the Prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he cauſed a Monument to be erected in this City, with his Name and Titles. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and in the Buſtles hapning betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, was ſeized on by the *Malateſti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of theſe parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julio* the Second. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made ſo much Salt, that they furniſh therewith all their Neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*: the Pope receiving for his Cuſtoms of this one Commodity, no leſs than 60000 Crowns *per annum.* 4. *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, ſeated in a very pleaſant Air, and a fruitful Soyl, betwixt two freſh Streams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus.* 5. *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which groweth in the adjoyning Fields, and the Earthen Veſſels which they vend to moſt parts of *Italy.* It was firſt given unto the Popes by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, whom they but ſorrily requited for ſo great a courteſie. 6. *Sarſina*, an old City, ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth place of *Plautus* the Comedian; 7. *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelii*; and 8. *Ceſena*, Cities both of them of no ſmall Antiquity; but this laſt the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more ſtrongly fortified: there being a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an Hill, the work of *Frederick* II. Emperour and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarſina*, ſpoken of before, ſeem to be ſeated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello.* 9. *Ravenna*, ſituate in the embracements of two Rivers, called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was once beautified with one of the faireſt Havens in the World, and for that cauſe made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Auguſtus* always kept manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Miſenus* in *Campania.* This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* the other at *Miſenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* The Walls of this City are ſaid to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Cæſar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Goths*, who built here a moſt ſtately and magnificent Palace; the ruines whereof are ſtill eaſily diſcernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but ſtately ſtructure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of St. *Mary the Round*, whoſe Roof was of one entire Stone, and honoured with the rich Sepulcher of the ſaid King *Theodorick*: which the Soldiers (in the ſack of this City by the *French*, *An.* 1512.) pulled down together with the Church it ſelf, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the preſent is the Church of St. *Vitalis*, the Pavement hereof is all of Marble, and the Walls all covered with precious Stones of many ſorts, but unpoliſhed as they were taken out of Mines; which ſheweth as well the Magnificence as Antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was ſo long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themſelves: not brought to yield the place to thoſe proud pretenders, till *Donus* II. in the ſhort time of his Papacy about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reaſons, this City having been anciently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his Succeſſors; next of the *Gothiſh* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and laſt, of its *Patriarchs*. And it was choſen for this purpoſe, becauſe of the plentiful Territory, ſince covered with water; and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choked: though lately by expence of a great deal of Treaſure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in ſome places turned to fruitful Fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleaſure; but however it begins now to decline again, and is at this day in a waſting condition.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and ſome part of *Trevigiana*, the Habitation of the *Boii*, who with the *Senones*, the *Inſubres*, and the *Cenomani*, made up the whole body of the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next Neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to beſtir themſelves, eſpecially after the defeat given them by the Conſul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Carolamus* their King, they ſet upon *Marcellus* the Conſul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquiſhed and ſubdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquiſhed again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula*, with the loſs of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Inſubrian* and *Tranſalpine Gauls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquiſhed alſo at the Battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardy*) *A.U.C.* 528. they were followed home, and utterly ſubdued by the Conſul *Flaminius*, as before was ſaid: after which times this Country following the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italy*, became ſubject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* Conqueſts: whoſe Kingdom here was no ſooner deſtroyed by *Narſes*, but the *Lombards* entred. To give a ſtop to whoſe ſucceſſes, and preſerve ſo much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Juſtine* II. to ſend thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the Title of *Exarch*. His reſidence ſetled at *Ravenna*, as ſtanding moſt commodiouſly to hinder the incurſions of the barbarous Nations; and withal to receive ſuch aids from the Eaſtern parts, as his occaſions did require. Theſe *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each ſome Supreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it ſelf (ſo far then was it from being ſubject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind (accomptable to the *Exarch*, and ſubordinate to him) whoſe Government was called the *Roman* Dukedom. That which they kept unto themſelves as their own *peculiar*, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Claſſi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarſino*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities, with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *Diſtrict* which properly was called the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Hiſtories of the middle times, by reaſon of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entred when this Magiſtracy had its firſt beginning. The names of theſe *Exarchs* are as follow.

The *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*.

A.C.
570 1 *Longius* 21.
591 2 *Smaragdus* 4.
595 3 *Romanus Patricius.*
596 4 *Gallinicus* 13.
609 5 *Smaragdus* 3.
612 6 *Joh. Lamigius* 4.
616 7 *Elutherius* 5.
621 8 *Iſaacus Patricius* 24.
645 9 *Theodorus Calliopia* 10.
655 10 *Olympius* 2.
657 11 *Theodorus Calliopia* II. 30.
687 12 *Joh. Plotina* 15.
702 13 *Theophylactus* 25.
727 14 *Paulus.*
728 15 *Eutichus* 12. In the days of this *Exarch*, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, *An.* 740. But regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Biſhops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the conſent and authority of the Popes. The Donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to thoſe Prelates, changed the Name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which Name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithſtanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the poſſeſſion of it: The Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italy*, wreſting it by ſtrong hand out of the poſſeſſion of the Church; and giving it to ſuch as deſerved well of them, and were moſt likely, or moſt able to uphold their Faction. And ſo it ſtood, till the late Popes conſpiring with the *French* King, *Lewis* the twelfth, and *Francis* the firſt, brought them into *Italy*, *Anno* 1509. and by their Aids, and by the Cenſure of the Church, ſo prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and ſome other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petit Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to St. *Peter's* Patrimony; and thereby got poſſeſſion of all thoſe Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

The *Territory* of *FERRARA* lieth in the very ſkirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and ſixty Miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: The ſoil thereof exceeding rich, but ſubject to the overflowings of the River *Po*; which makes the Air in many places to be ſomewhat unwholſom. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof have been at great charge in raiſing high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the Waters; yet could not this reſiſt the violence of the River, falling from ſo high a Spring, and ſeconded with ſo great Land-floods (as ſometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of moſt note herein, are 1. *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuſcany*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, ſeated in the midſt of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the houſe of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thouſand Crowns in ready Mony, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5th incorporated into this Eſtate. 3. *Commachia*, ſeated in the Marſhes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Eſte*, were at firſt called only Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fiſhing of Eels; but it is now ſmall and very little inhabited, by reaſon of the badneſs of the Air. 4. *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonſo* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is alſo the Territory and Lordſhip of the *Poleſin*, the cauſe of ſo many Quarrels and Contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the States of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara* a City of five Miles in compaſs, ſo called from the Iron Mines which are about it; commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Po*, which by reaſon of its breadth, depth and violent ſwiftneſs of the current, is a ſufficient Rampart to it on that ſide; the other ſides being fortified with a ſtrong Wall, and a ſpacious Mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and ſpacious Market-place, into which do open on all ſides about twenty Streets, all of them half a Mile in length; and all ſo ſtreight and evenly built, that the furtheſt end of each of them may be eaſily ſeen. Near to this Market-place is a little Iſland, in which the former Dukes had a ſtately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair Proſpect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the

North-ſide of the City a large Park for pleaſure. The other Houſes are for the moſt part built of fair Free-ſtone, not joining unto one another as in other Cities, but at pretty diſtance with neat Gardens between. *Arioſto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioſo*, and *Hierome Savanarolo* the Prophetical Frier, were both of them Natives of this place: of which the firſt lieth here entombed, the laſt for preaching againſt the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City, together with *Faenza*, was given by *Deſiderius* their laſt King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by ſo great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the prroweſs of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, *An.* 1107. who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, and at her death conferred the ſame upon the Church. The Popes once more poſſeſſed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the Houſe of *Eſte*, a Man of great ſway in the Affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it againſt *Ezelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the Second. This was the firſt of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety: His Anceſtors being called before, the Marqueſſes of *Eſte*, and ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*, (but in Title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grandchild of this firſt *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the Firſt, (who was willing to make what Mony he could of his Lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legate of Pope *Benedict* the Ninth, with the Pope's conſent, *Anno* 1304. Other Improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued conſtant in their poſſeſſion but theſe three Cities and the Territories adjoining to them. As for this Family *de Eſte* (*Familia Ateſtina*, it is called in *Latin*) it took this name from *Eſta*, or *Ateſte*, a ſmall Town in the Seigneury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Anceſtors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great: And for the Chiefs or Princes of it, they have been of great Authority and Power in their ſeveral times, commanding ſometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and ſometimes the Pope's; great favourers of Learned Men, and advancers of Learning; inſomuch that the *Reinaldo*'s and *Rogero*'s of *Eſte*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Arioſto* and *Taſſo*, two of the greateſt Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the beſt Houſes of Chriſtendom. The Catalogue of whom, ſince they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here ſubjoined.

The Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*.

1236 1 *Actius*, or *Azo de Eſte*, the Ninth of that Name, but firſt Hereditary Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.

1264 2 *Obizo*, the Sixth of that Name, Grandſon to *Azo*, by his Son *Reinaldo*, ſecond Marqueſs of *Ferrara*.

1293 3 *Azo* the Tenth of *Eſte*, and Second of *Ferrara*, Son to *Obizo*.

1308 4 *Franciſco*, Brother to *Azo* the Second, after whoſe death, *Anno* 1312. *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.

1312 5 *Alabrandinus*, Brother of *Franciſcus*, who had the Title to, but not the Poſſeſſion of *Ferrara*.

1315 6 *Reinaldo* the Third of *Eſte*, and the Firſt of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and caſt out his Gariſons, 1317.

1335 7 *Obizo* II. Brother of *Reinaldo*.

1352 8 *Alabrandino* II. Son of *Obizo*.

1361 9 *Nicolao*, the Second of *Eſte*, and Firſt of *Ferrara*, Brother of *Alabrandino*, whoſe Children being young he diſpoſſeſſed of the Eſtate.

1388 10 *Albertus*, Brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1392.

1382 11 *Nicolas* II. baſe Son of *Albertus*.

1441 12 *Leonellus*, the baſe Son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his Brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Eſtate, and held it.

1450 13 *Borſius*, another of the baſe Sons of *Nicolas* the Second, ſucceeded *Leonel* in the Eſtate; who being made Duke of *Mutina*, by *Frederick* the Third, was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* alſo, *Anno* 1470.

1471 14 *Hercules*, the lawful Son of *Nicolas* the Second, made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* IV.

1505 15 *Alphonſo*, the Son of *Hercules*.

1534 16 *Hercules* II. Son of *Alphonſo*.

1559 17 *Alphonſo* II. who dying without lawful iſſue, *Anno* 1595. Pope *Clement* VIII. challenged this Eſtate in right of the Church; and partly by Force, partly by Compoſition (whereof we ſhall ſay more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns; now not ſo much worth unto the Pope, by reaſon of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

One of our Country-men who travell'd here, aſſures us, that this Dutchy of *Ferrara* is at this Day ſo abandon'd, that there were not Hands enough to Mow their Graſs, which we ſaw (ſaith he) withering in their Meadows, to our no ſmall wonder. And the City of *Ferrara* is at this Day in no better condition, there being in it whole ſides of Streets without one Inhabitant. The Poverty alſo of this Place appears in their Churches, which are mean and poorly adorn'd. And this want of People has alſo infected the Air, for want of draining the Fens and Bogs; ſo that without doubt the Revenues of this Dukedom are very much abated.

The Arms of theſe Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illuſtrious Family, and for the ſtrangeneſs of the Coat, I ſhall here put down) were Pale-wiſe of three pieces, 1. *Partie per Feſſe*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Baſe *Azure*, three Flowers *de Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Feſſe*, with an Eſchocheon of pretence *Azure*, ſupporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the ſecond. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3. as the firſt Counterplaced. Which Coat, upon the falling of the Houſe of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as deſcended of it.

3. From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Eſtate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms, and diſtinct Eſtates till theſe later times: this laſt the younger of the two, and conſequently (as in the ordinary courſe of Nature) the ſurviver alſo; but ſwallowed at laſt into the Popedom as the other was. Bounded on the Weſt with the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the Eaſt from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuſcany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 Miles, 35 in breadth: Some pieces and Eſtates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Seigneuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The Soil is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oil, plentiful of Figs, and other Fruits of moſt pleaſant taſte; and in a word, affording all things neceſſary for the Life of Man. But the Air is generally unwholſome, eſpecially about *Peſaro* and *Foſſembrune*, by reaſon of the low flats and overflows of the Water. The principal Commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Peſaro*, ſold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The moſt famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reaſon of that great Battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Conſuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot Diſpute, the Victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* ſlain, (as *Livy* writeth) and 5400 taken priſoners. *Polybius* ſpeaks of a leſs number both ſlain and taken; and like enough it is that *Livy*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatſoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this Victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to Trade and Traffick, to follow their Affairs, and make Contracts and Bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as ſecure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River riſeth in the *Apennine* Hills, and paſſing by *Foſſombrune*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom ſeven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Epiſcopal Sees) and three hundred Caſtles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the moſt ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Duke's ordinary ſeat in Summer. It is ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills, in a very rich and pleaſant ſoil, built in the faſhion of a Miter, and therefore called *Urbinas, quod urbes binas continere videbatur. Franciſco Ubaldi* the firſt Duke, built here a very ſumptuous Palace, and therein founded a moſt excellent Library, repleniſhed with a great number of rare Books, covered and garniſhed with Gold, Silk, and Silver; all ſcattered and diſperſed in the time that *Cæſar Borgia* ſeized on the Eſtate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the Hiſtory of *England*, which paſſeth under his name, was a Native here: an Hiſtory of worth enough as the times then were, except only in ſuch paſſages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whoſe *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whoſe Credit and Authority he preferreth ſometimes, before truth itſelf. This City was made an Archbiſhops See in the year 1563. 2. *Piſaurum*, now called *Peſara*, the ſtrongeſt Town of all the Dukedom, two Miles in compaſs, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the Fortifications of it being firſt begun by *Franciſco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo*, his Son and Succeſſor; the ordinary Seat of the Duke in Winter, well Garriſoned, and therefore truſted with the publick Armory. It is ſeated near the ſhore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Iſaurus*, which parts it from *Romegna*: populous, of handſom Buildings, and a very ſtrong Wall, the Soil exceeding Rich, but the Air ſo bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating too much Fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, eſpecially in the Month of *Auguſt*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Senogalle*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuſcany*) a ſtrong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge conſiſting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not ſo much in regard of the breadth of the Chanel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent Water. 4. *Foſſombrune*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for Air and Soil of the ſame nature with *Piſaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateſte* for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo* or *Cagli* on the Sea. 6. S. *Leon*, a good Town and the chief of the Countries of *Montfeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Epiſcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortunæ*, for a Temple there erected to the Goddeſs *Fortune* (*Te facimus* Fortuna *deam*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Eugubium* (now called *Augubio*) a Town belonging to theſe Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and there we ſhall hear further of it. Of the Caſtles the principal are *Marivola*, and the Rock of S. *Leon*, which are the laſt that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldi* againſt *Cæſar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinoys*, Son to Pope *Alexander* the ſixth; and the firſt which did return again under his Obedience. For which cauſe when he fled the ſecond time from the ſaid *Borgia*, he diſmantled all his other Caſtles, as being more likely to admit than reſiſt the Invader; and theſe two laſt being very well fortified, he left to keep poſſeſſion of the Country for him.

Here is alſo within the limits of this Eſtate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a ſtrong natural ſituation amongſt the Hills: an Eſtate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Verena* till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Verana* the Heir thereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido Ubaldi* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pretending an Eſcheat for want of Heirs Males, made himſelf Maſter of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his Son *Pitero Farneſi*, whom afterwards with the conſent of the Colledge of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and ſetled *Camerino* on the Church, as it ſtill continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the Habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, who only had the honour of ſacking *Rome*, to which City it continued ſubject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at laſt (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradine*, the laſt Duke of the Imperial Houſe of *Schawben*, when *Urbine* was firſt ſubdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whoſe Succeſſors increaſing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the Buſtles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the ſixth, *Anno* 1345. *Gelaſſo de Montfeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperor's *Vicegerent*. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444 by the Title only of Earls of *Montfeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine* when *Frederick Ubaldi*, for his ſingular and ſurpaſſing Valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the firſt Duke hereof: to hold as Feudataries of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of ſuch repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the ſixth, made *Knight of the Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *Engliſh* to this day enjoy many Priviledges in theſe Dominions. *Guido Ubaldi*, this Duke's Son, loſt his Eſtate to *Cæſar Borgia*; after whoſe death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, to whom ſucceeded *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, his Siſters Son, in whoſe Family it continued till now of late, as will appear by this enſuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of *Urbine*.

1444 1 *Frederick Ubaldi*, of the ancient Family *de Montefeltre* the firſt Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the Garter.

2 *Guido Ubaldi*, Son of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cæſar Borgia*. He was Knight alſo of the Garter.

3 *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, Siſters Son and next Heir to *Guido Ubaldi*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Piſauro* from the Pope in reward of his many Services done unto the *Church*; diſſeized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.

4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catherine de Medices* the *French* Queen, and of *Alexander* the 1. Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the 10*th* (being of that

Family) but loſt it ſhortly after to Duke *Franciſco*, who after the Death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Eſtate again, and died poſſeſſed of the Dukedom.

1538 5 *Guido Ubaldi* II. Son of Duke *Franciſco*.

6 *Franciſco Maria* II. Son of *Guido 2d*, whoſe line expired, it eſcheated not long ſince (for want of Heirs Males) to the Church of *Rome*. This Prince in the year 1631. reſigned his State whiſt he lived into the hands of the Pope, to prevent any Conteſt after his Death about it.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns *per annum*; but might have been raiſed to a greater Sum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and eaſe of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raiſe 1200 good Soldiers out of this Eſtate; and more the people would ſupply, if they had occaſion. The Arms hereof *Azure* a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces *Or*.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bound on the Weſt with the State of *Urbine*; on the Eaſt with the River of *Trontus*, or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from the *Spo*[illegible]*n* Dukedom; on the North with the *Adriatick*. The [illegible]aſon of the Name we ſhall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, who poſſeſſed all theſe parts on the Coaſts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the Eaſt, to that of *Aufidus* on the Weſt. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their War againſt *Rome*, they were invaded and ſubdued by the *Romans A. U. C.* 485. which was about five years before the firſt *Punick* War, under the Conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were ſo great and multitudinous a Nation, that they were numbred to amount to 360000, which were then brought under the Command and Vaſſalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more than eight Regions, theſe *Picentes* only made up one; ſo did they alſo when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the ſixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by thoſe Emperors; and the ſame repute it held in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Picenum* making always one. *Aſculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the Head of their Nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province. Called in thoſe times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by reaſon of the abundance of Grain which it did produce; and partly to diſtinguiſh from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearneſs unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was firſt called *Marca Farmiana*, from *Firmo*: once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of moſt importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief Seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, beſides thoſe named already, which are only borderers, are, 1. *Chientus*, 2. *Sentinus*, and 3. *Potentia*; all riſing in the *Apennine*, and paſſing with a ſweet courſe to the *Adriatick* Sea.

The chief Towns, 1. *Ancona*, ſeated on the Hill *Cimmerius* ſhooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor; one of the faireſt of the World, not ſo much for Capacity, as the Pleaſantneſs and Beauty of it: the Deſcents down unto the Water being made of Marble, and very Delectable walking on all ſides of it. The City it ſelf is begirt with Hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the ſeventh built a very ſtrong Caſtle. *Anno* 1532. under pretence of defending the Town againſt the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the People in more full Subjection, who till that time, did yearly chooſe their own Magiſtrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Commonwealth. 2. *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Recina*,) ſeated upon the banks of the River *Mulſio*, renowned for the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Marts; and a vein of the moſt excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, ſurnamed the *Strong*: in former times of moſt eſteem in all the Province which was hence called *Marca Fermiana*; and to this day, a place of great Strength and Conſequence; and an Archbiſhops See. 4. *Macerata*, now of moſt credit, by reaſon that the Popes *Legat* keeps his Reſidence there, and with him the Chancery for his Marquiſate. 5. *Loretto*, called in *Latin Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified againſt the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once ſpoiled the ſame, and might be eaſily tempted thither on the like occaſions: The Church here being admirable rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their Devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the Removal of whoſe Chamber hither, on our deſcription of *Paleſtine*, you ſhall meet with a very proper Legend. 6. *Aſcoli*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, ſeated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furtheſt ſide of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is ſaid, and then called *Aſculum*, Conquered by the *Romans*, under the Conduct of *Sempronius*, *A. U. C.* 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the ſecond Battle between *C. Fabritius* and the *Romans* on the one ſide, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having ſlain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with ſuch loſs on his ſide alſo, that he affirmed to ſome of his Friends and Followers, *That ſuch another Victory would quite undo him*; and with ſuch apparency of Valour and Vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this Acclamation; *O quam facile eſſet orbem vincere, aut mihi,* Romanis *militibus, aut me rege,* Romanis! This Town alſo was the ſeat of the War called *Bellum ſociale*, raiſed by the people of *Italy* againſt the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They for a while ſorely ſhaked the State of *Rome*; but at laſt were vanquiſhed, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and ſpoiled. 7. *Adria*, now not otherwiſe famous, than that it gave Denomination to the adjoyning Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8. *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The ſucceeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5. Having ſurveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we muſt next croſs the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Weſtern part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the deſcription of this, we muſt a little look on the ſtate of that. A Country bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the Eaſt parts of *Latium*; on the Weſt with *Tuſcia* or *Hetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with that part of *Tuſcany* which is now called St. *Peter's Patrimony*. So called, becauſe being ſituate under the ſhade of the *Apennine* Hills, it was *Regio Umbroſa*. Some give another reaſon of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, *quaſi* Ὄμβροι, as men that had eſcaped the Deluge; becauſe ſo ancient a people, that no body could tell the Original of them.

But whatſoever was the reaſon of the Name, they were a ſtout and valiant people, and gave the firſt check to *Annibal*'s Career, after his great Victory at *Thraſymene*, repulſing him with loſs and ſhame from the Walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power ſufficient, for all their Valour, to preſerve their Country from the *Tuſcans*, who are ſaid to have deſtroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly ſubject, yet ſo obnoxious to the will and pleaſure of the *Victors*, that at their inſtance or command they ſided with them in a War againſt the

Romans (whom formerly they had found very quiet Neighbours:) and by the *Romans* were ſubdued together with the reſt of the Confederates then in Arms againſt them, *A. U. C.* 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Conſuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in ſuch eſteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; and finally, together with *Tuſcia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Weſtern parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was ſaid, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which laſt, (now called *Neara*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally compoſed of very rough Hills, and yet moſt delectable Vallies; exceeding plentiful of all Neceſſaries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fœcundity of the Women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the beſt of *Italy*.

De Spoletanis *quæ ſunt carioſa lagenis*
Malueris, quam ſi Muſta Falerna *bibas*. That is to ſay,
If with *Spoleta* bottles once you meet,
Say that *Falerno* Muſt is not ſo ſweet.

Places of great note herein, 1. *Spoletum*, built partly on the Hill, and partly on the lower ground; the reſidence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord Preſidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence the Country round about it, was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is ſtill a Town of good eſteem, populous, and of handſome Building; and hath a ſtrong Fortreſs for defence thereof, built upon the Ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*: To which men paſs over a great Bridge of Stone, upheld by 24 great Pillers, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any Water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narſes*, but ſince ruined. 2. *Eugubium* (now called *Augubio*) ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently ſtood that City which *Pliny* calls *Juginium*; *Ptolomy Iſuvium*; utterly ſubverted by the *Goths*. A Town well ſeated in a fruitful and wealthy Soil, and bleſſed with an induſtrious People: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that Eſtate was ſwallowed up into the Popedom. 3. *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny*'s time called *Alfatinia*, at the foot alſo of the *Apennine*; the People of which in former times much traded in their wooden Veſſel. 4. *Aſſiſium*, or *Aſiſes* deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and only famous at this time, for a See Epiſcopal, and being the Birth-place of St. *Francis*; the founder of the *Franciſcans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Gray-Friers*. 5. *Citta de Caſtello*, anciently *Tripherdum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6. *Tuderdum*, now called *Todi*, ſeated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The reſt of *Umbria* towards the Eaſt, not being within the compaſs of the *Spoletan* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, becauſe the dwelling in times paſt, of the ancient *Sabins*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded Betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War againſt it, they were ſubdued by *Curius Denatus* the *Roman* Conſul, and made a Subject Province of that Commonwealth, *A. U. C.* 463. But though the *Sabins*, at this time bear away the name, yet were they not ſole Maſters of it in theſe elder times; the greateſt part hereof being poſſeſſed by ſome Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri* (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a Member of that Body, ſubdued together with the reſt of *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the diviſion of *Italy* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nurſia*; and in that made by *Conſtantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*; *Reate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. This Province is bounded on the North by the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, on the Eaſt by *Abruzzo*, on the South by *Campania di Roma*, and on the Weſt by St. *Peters* Patrimony, cut off by the River *Tiber*. A Territory of no great Circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees: watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very midſt of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Laco di Pedeluco*) eſteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy* by ſome ancient Writers; the waters of which are of ſuch a nature, that in ſhort time they will cloath a piece of wood with a coat of ſtone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fiſh. The Towns and Cities of moſt note, are, 1. *Reate* (now called *Reite*) an ancient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nurſia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2. *Nurſia*, a City no leſs ancient, ſeated among the Hills, which for the moſt part are covered with Snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more Reputation, the Province of *Nurſia*, ſpoken of in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, took Denomination. 3. *Magliano*, a pleaſant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. It is ſeated upon the *Tiber* 20 Miles North of *Rome*, and was made the Biſhops See by Pope *Alexander* the VI. in the year 1495. 4. *Ocriculum*, built amongſt many fruitful Hills, a Mile from *Tiber*, 5. *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperour *Nerva*, the firſt of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The Soil about it is of ſo different and ſtrange a nature, that it is ſaid to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and duſty by Rain: The City well peopled, and a Biſhops See, ſeated upon a very ſteep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got poſſeſſion, never left practiſing till they had got into their power all the reſt of the Country. Little elſe famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Weſtern part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dolabella* overthrew ſuch of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Galls*, as had eſcaped the Sword of *Camillus*, *Quinctius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars againſt them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (ſaith the Hiſtorian) *qui incenſam à ſe* Romam *gloriaretur*: a former ſlaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eaſtern limit of theſe *Umbri*.

5. S. *PETERS PATRIMONY*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is that part of *Tuſcany* which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the Weſt, with the River *Piſeo*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario* and parteth it from the Eſtate of the great Duke of *Tuſcany*; on the North, with the *Apennine* and the *Spoletan* Dukedom, on the South with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name preſently on the donation of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An.* 1115. (*Paſchal* the ſecond ſitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of S. *Peter*, and his Succeſſors in that See. A Country not inferior unto any in *Italy*, for the fertility of the Soil: but for the moſt part of an unhealthy Air, by reaſon of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick Woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanſe it.

The principal Cities, and places of moſt obſervation, are 1. *Perugia*, formerly called *Peruſia*; a famous Town; in which *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the Brother, and *Fulvia* the Wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to ſeduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which alſo at the laſt, yielded to the more fortunate Emperor. *Auguſtus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, cauſed it to be called *Auguſta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. *Totila* King of the *Goths* lay ſeven years before this City to reduce it, after which *Narſetes* General to the Emperor of the Eaſt, rebuilt and adorn'd it. It is ſeated very pleaſantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil; well built both for the publick and private Structures; a Biſhops See and made an Univerſity, *An.* 1090. In the diſtractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, this City was ſeized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an oppoſite Faction to them, having got together a ſtrong party of Male-contents, ſo ſuddenly entred one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly: Nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Maſters of the Palace, but the Chain which was drawn croſs the Gate. One of the Soldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his Arm, cried aloud *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well underſtood by thoſe furtheſt off, put them to their heels; and the foremoſt, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was ſaved. 2. *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it is no ſmall terrour to look down from the top of it, into the Vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightneſs, and yet the windows of the ſame (if we may credit *Adrianus*, who reports it) are made of Alabaſter, inſtead of Glaſs. 3. *Viterbo*, famous for the long reſidence of the Popes, at ſuch time as they were affronted by the *Roman* Senators. Dr. *Burnet* tells, this great and wide Town, which is of great compaſs, has but few Inhabitants, and they look ſo poor and miſerable, that the people in the ordinary Towns in the worſt places of *Scotland*, make a better appearance. 4. *Civita Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcellæ*) the only uſeful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of their Shipping. In the year 1688. the Pope ordered a new Fort to be built here, to ſecure his Fleets and this City. 5. *Porto*, ſeated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over againſt *Oſtia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Biſhops See, who is one of the ſeven Cardinals which is always aſſiſtant to the Pope. 6. *Farneſe*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Farneſis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7. *Bracciano*, which gives the Title of a Duke to a branch of the *Urſins*, a well-known Family of thoſe parts. 8. *Bacchano*, near the laſt in ſound, although not in ſite: compaſſed round about with Hills in form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the mid'ſt; out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, near which the *Fabii* were ſlain.

Here was in this Country alſo the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but queſtionleſs of great Wealth and Power; in a War againſt which, managed for the moſt part by the aforeſaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were ſlain in a day, at the Battle of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuſcans*: only one little Child of them being left at home, who reſtored the Houſe; and was the Anceſtor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preſerved *Italy*, in the Wars with *Annibal*. Of which great ſlaughter, thus ſaith *Ovid*.

———— ——*Veientibus Arvis*
Ter centum Fabii, *ter cecidere duo.*
———————On the *Vientine* Plain
Three hundred and ſix *Fabii* were ſlain.

This City of the *Veii* was at laſt after a ten years Siege taken by *Furius Camillus A.U.C.* 359. and by him levelled with the Earth; becauſe he found that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is alſo that fatal River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, (that people, as ſhall be ſhown hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italy*, by the ſweet taſte of the *Italian* Wines) ſlaughtered the *Romans*: the *Roman* Army at that time conſiſting of 40000 Soldiers, moſt of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withal ſo big-boned, that it ſeemeth they were born to be the terror of Mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Which overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquiſhment of the *Fabii*, hapning in one day, though in divers years, occaſioned the old *Romans* to put that day among thoſe unfortunate days, on which they never did attempt any buſineſs of importance. The like cuſtom, whether on Superſtition, or fear of Ill-luck, is uſed by many *Chriſtians*; and eſpecially on *Childermas-day*: on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us, that *Lewis* the 11*th* uſed not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a ſign of ſome great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his Affairs; and would be marvellouſly diſpleaſed with thoſe that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatſoever. In this particular, little leſs ſuperſtitious (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thraſymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearneſs of it to that City) where *Annibal* ſlew *Flaminius* the Conſul, and 15000 of his *Romans*: Which fight continued three hours, with ſo great an eagerneſs, that the Soldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6. *CAMPAGNA di ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the Habitation of the *Latins*, and Seat of *Rome*; ſo called, for that it is adjoyning to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and the Precinct thereof. It is ſometimes alſo called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly ſo called; the Seat and Dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with the ſaid *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Azoſenus*; on the Weſt with *Tiber*; on the North with *Umbria*, or the now *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South with the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Soveraignty and Poſſeſſion of the City of *Rome*, to which it always it did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is ſaid, but ſubdivided into many petit and inferior Tribes, ſuch as the *Æqui*, *Volſci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquiſhed piece-meal by the *Romans*, firſt under the Conduct of their Kings, and then of their Conſuls and Dictators. Broken at laſt by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A.U.C.* 295. they became aſſociates with the *Romans*, and ſo continued for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. But growing inſolent on the ſack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Conſul yearly ſhould be choſen by and from themſelves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms; by whom ſubdued under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus*, and *Decius Mus*, then Conſuls, *A.U.C.* 413. Subject from that time afterwards to the State of *Rome*, but enjoying greater Privileges than the reſt of the conquered Nations did, excepting ſuch to whom the like were granted by eſpecial favour. It is now one of the moſt deſolate and diſpeopl'd Countries of all *Italy*, and for want of draining, ſcarce poſſible to be again Peopl'd, at leaſt not without great Hazard and Charge, as a late Traveller aſſures us, who ſaw it.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-Royal of the *Latin* or *Sylvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hoſtilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which War *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the Stake, the whole Action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*; to the *Curiatii*, by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each ſide; in which it happened that two of the *Horatii* were firſt ſlain, and the third counterfeiting a flight ſevered his Enemies, and ſo ſlew them; whereby the *Albans* ever after became ſubject to *Rome*. 2. *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his Wife *Lavinia*. 3. *Antium*, honoured many times with the Seat and Retirement of the Emperors: the Country round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very ſtrong in Shipping till the taking of the Town by *Mavius* a *Roman* Conſul, who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with them into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other Veſſels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*,) which have generally ever ſince been called *Roſtra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volſci*, a people very ſtrong in Shipping, though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their Retirements from the City, ſo that for pompous and ſtately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the Ruins of this Town long ago deſtroyed, ſprang the new City called *Neptunum*, ſituate on a Rock near unto the Sea, the ſteepneſs of which gives it natural ſtrength enough; and yet it is fortified beſides with two ſtrong Caſtles, ſurveying the Sea, and commanding the ſhore. 4. *Ardea* the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and the ſeat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Æneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the laſt King of the *Romans*, to which when the *Gauls* had taken *Rome*, the miſerable Citizens were compelled to fly. 5. *Gabii*, taken alſo by the ſame *Superbus*, whoſe Son *Sextus* counterfeiting ſome diſlike of his Fathers Cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom improvidently entruſted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6. *Oſtia*, anciently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martius*, the fourth King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long ſince dammed up, to ſtop the paſſage of the Enemies Ships unto the City. The Biſhop of this Town uſeth to conſecrate the Pope. 7. *Præneſte*, firſt, conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing ſo much endamaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: For when the *Romans* in the times of Sedition abandoned the Town, they uſed to make this place their refuge. Among others *Marius* the younger made it the Seat of War, againſt *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unſucceſsfulneſs of his affairs, here killed himſelf; and *Sylla* entring it as Conquerour, put 12000 of the Citizens to the Sword. It hath ſince been ſo often ſacked, that it is very ſhort now of its former luſtre; but ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See. 8. *Tibur*, an ancient City alſo, and ſeated in a healthy Air. It is now called *Tivoli*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with Water, repreſenteth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it ſeemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almoſt all Civil Nations may pretend a ſhare; ſo I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*: whoſe Maſter-pieces in this kind do far exceed the reſt of *Europe*. For in the Kings houſe at St. *Germains*, ſeven Miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digreſs a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a Nymph, ſitting before a pair of *Organs*: whoſe fingers by the help of Water, are taught to manage the keys in ſo due an order, and the inſtrument to yield ſuch a Muſick to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the ſame; her head in the mean time jolting from one ſhoulder to another, like an old Fidlers at a *Wake*; there being alſo not far off, the counterfeits of divers Mills, who very buſily plyed their work till the Muſick ſounded, and then ſtood ſtill as if inchanted with the noiſe. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may ſee two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of Water; each of them with a ſhell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns ſerved inſtead of Trumpets. In a third, the ſtory of *Perſeus* and *Andromeda* moſt lively acted; and in a fourth, *Orpheus in ſylvis poſitus*, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wild Beaſts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the Waters only; the pretty Birds in every place ſo chirping out their ſeveral and reſpective notes, that the hearer would conceive himſelf to be in ſome pleaſant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9. *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitræ*, and then a City of the *Volſci*) famous for the Birth of the Emperor *Auguſtus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place moſt delectably ſeated amongſt the Vines; which yields as rich Wines as moſt in *Italy*. 10. *Anxur*, ſo called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*; ſurnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardleſs*; firſt built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the ſeverity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here ſeat themſelves, after a Colony of the *Volſci*, and at laſt of the *Romans*. But this Town being deſtroyed by the tyranny of time, there ſtarteth up 11. *Taracina* in the place thereof, ſeated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*:) this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on the other, which is the firſt Port-Town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country hereabouts hath moſt pleaſant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the ſame time both ripe and green Fruits, and repreſents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the preſent, are 1. *Tuſculum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here compoſed his excellent Book, called the *Tuſculan Queſtions*. 2. *Formiæ*; built by the *Laconians*, heretofore the delight and ſolace of the ancient *Romans*, now viſible only in its ruins. 3. *Privernum*, once the chief City of the *Volſci*, and the Seat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulian*, in his ſharp War againſt *Æneas* and the *Trojans*, where ſhe loſt her life. 4. *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now ſtands S *Felix*) the Habitation of *Circe*, that ſo much celebrated *Sorcereſs*; of whom, and her enchanting of *Ulyſſes* and his Companions, there is ſo much upon Record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circean Promontory*, the repercuſſion of the Waves by whoſe Southern *Baſis* makes a dreadful noiſe; and gave occaſion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, *&c.* which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italy* only, but of all the World, was, that the famous City of ROME was ſeated in it, being built on the Eaſt ſide of *Tiber*; now much inlarged by the increaſe of 42 leſſer Streams or Rivers. It is diſtant from the Sea about 15 Miles, firſt built, as Frier *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma* Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forſaken and forlorn, by reaſon of the unwholſom Air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleaſed with the natural ſtrength of the ſituation; and therefore like to make a good Town of War. And this tradition I ſhould rather ſubſcribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleaſed to challenge the honour to himſelf, might better have cauſed it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) then to call it *Roma*. But whatſoever greatneſs it did after come to, it was ſmall enough (God knows) at firſt; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a Mile in compaſs; the Territory not extending as *Strabo* witneſſeth, above ſix Miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the firſt general *Muſter*, amounting at the moſt to 3300 Men. So inconſiderable they were as well in quality as numbers, that their Neighbours thought it a diſparagement to beſtow their Daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themſelves Wives by a ſlight of Wit: proclaiming ſolemn Plays and Paſtimes to be held in *Rome*, and Raviſhing the Women which came thither to behold the Sports. The Kings ſucceeding much inlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the Hill *Janiculum* on the other ſide of the Water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Eſquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Cælius*, came not in till afterwards. But at the laſt it was improved to ſuch an height, that in the flouriſhing times of that Common-wealth, the men encreaſed to the number of 463000, and the compaſs of the Town unto 50 Miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither Servants, Women, nor Children, but men able to bear Arms; *Free-Denizens*, and ſuch as were inrolled into *Cenſe*, or the Subſidie-Books. To which if we ſhould add their Wives, Children, and Servants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and ſo *Lipſius* is of opinion, in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The moſt memorable Buildings of it, were firſt the *Capitol*, founded by *Terquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the ſpoils of their conquered Neighbours; ſaved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geeſe. *Tacitus* calleth this houſe *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, auſpicato a majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the Wars of *Veſpaſian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Veſpaſian* carried the firſt baſket of Earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the ſervice, and perhaps the cuſtom of laying the firſt ſtone in a building, or driving the firſt nail in a timber-work, by him whoſe Edifice it is; hath, from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2. Here was the Temple of *Janus* open in the time of Wars, and ſhut in the time of Peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely during the Reign of *Auguſtus*, after the firſt *Punick* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* reſiſted the whole Army of King *Porſena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuſcans*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the Bridge, received him ſwimming to the bank with joyful Acclamations, and ſaved their City from preſent Ruin. Here lived the famous Writers, ſo much renowned in the ſtories of elder times; here flouriſhed the exact Martial Diſcipline, ſo memorized by ancient Hiſtoriographers: and finally, here were laid up the Spoils and Trophies of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it ſtandeth lower on the bank of *Tiber* upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*) is in compaſs about eleven Miles, within which compaſs is not a little waſte ground. The Inhabitants of all ſorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergymen and Courtiers; that is to ſay, ſuch as have their dependance on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding Offices and places of Employment under the Popes, or by attending on his Perſon, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates, who are there abiding; or otherwiſe being of the Retinue of ſuch foreign Ambaſſadors as are always commorant in the City, to follow the Negotiations of their ſeveral Maſters; all which muſt needs amount to a very great number. It was firſt built on the Eaſt-ſide of the River in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there ſome Churches and ſcattered Houſes (except it be a little on the North-Eaſt of the River, from the Gate called *Del populo*, to the Iſland of *Tiber*;) the reſt, eſpecially towards the South, being taken up with paſtures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it ſtands is on the Weſt-ſide of the water, and the *Holy Iſland*, conſiſting of three diſtinct parts or members. Of theſe the leaſt is that which they call *La Iſola*, but anciently the *Holy Iſland*; firſt made an Iſland by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchſafing to convert to any publick or private uſe, commanded to be flung into the River; where it ſunk and ſetled to an Iſland, called afterwards the *Holy Iſland*, from a Temple herein built unto *Æſculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurus*, in the ſhape of a Serpent. This Iſland is not above a quarter of a Mile in length, and hardly half ſo much in breadth; but full of ſtately Churches and beautiful Houſes. Next to this is that which they call *Traſtavere*, or *Tranſ-Tiberina*; but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called alſo *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Soldiers which *Auguſtus* kept at *Ravenna* againſt *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reaſon of the unwholſomneſs of the Air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor People; yet compaſſed about with Walls, except on that ſide next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and ſome handſom Buildings. But the chief glory of the City conſiſteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North-ſide of the other, but diſ-joyned from it; compaſſed about with Walls by Pope *Leo* the *4th.* and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. The Church of S. *Peter*, which were it once finiſhed, would be one of the rareſt Buildings in all the World. 2. The Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, impregnable unleſs by Famine. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compaſſed about with a very high Wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the fifth. And had its Name from the fair proſpect which it hath: in the ſame ſenſe, as *Belvoir* Caſtle here in *England*, the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the Hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican* Library: a Library firſt founded by *Sextus* the Fourth, who not only ſtored it with the choiceſt Books he could pick out of *Europe*: but allowed alſo a large Revenue for the perpetual Augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam* Palatinam *in* vaticano, *toto terrarum orbe celebrem, advectis ex omni* Europa *libris conſtruxit; proventuſq; certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* ſacked *Rome*, *Anno* 1527. it was much defaced and ranſacked; but by the ſucceeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an Univerſity, which was founded by *Urban* the Fourth, at whoſe requeſt *Thomas Aquinas* profeſſed here. Pope *Nicolas* the Fifth was a Special Benefactor to the ſame; and after him, *Leo* the Tenth, who revived the *Greek* Learning and Language, which were in theſe parts almoſt forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the Treaſures of thoſe parts of Chriſtendom ſubject to the Popes Authority: partly for the expence of Strangers, which do there remain on their ſeveral pleaſures or occaſions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhopricks, and *Bulls* of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of *Court-holy-water*; and partly in the Penſions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Miniſters of thoſe Kings and Princes, which know beſt how to make their ends of the Popes Ambitions. So that it may be truly ſaid, there came not more Tributes into *old-Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the *New* from the Subject Churches, which have ſubmitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of *Religion*, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it ſaid by *Proſper* of *Aquitane*, (if memory fail not).

> Roma *caput mundi, quicquid non poſſidet* Armis,
> Religione *tenet*, ——

That is to ſay,

> What *Rome* ſubdu'd not with the Sword,
> She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the Power and natural Courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the ſame againſt the Bravery and Aſſaults of all foreign Enemies: This City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but ſince *Pontifical*, it hath been made a prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was beſieged by any that did not take it. In a Word, the City of *Rome* as now it ſtandeth, is but the carkaſs of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins; and the cauſe of them, her ſins.

The Popes do much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the Authority of St. *Peter*; whoſe being there is indeed conſtantly atteſted by moſt ancient Writers; inſomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum conſenſum*, in regard of the unanimous conſent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The ſilence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; againſt ſo great a *Cloud* of unqueſtioned *Witneſſes*, as ſoberly and poſitively have affirmed the ſame. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romaniſts*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Pope's *Supremacy*, becauſe he ſits in *Peter*'s Seat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the ſtory) to attain *Tully*'s Eloquence, or *Cæſar*'s Power, becauſe he married *Tully*'s Widow, and bought *Cæſar*'s Chair: Though the poor Gentleman did befool himſelf with this opinion, that he ſhould be Maſter of them both. Of which ſee *Lib.* LVII. And yet the Popes relie ſo much upon this fancy, of being the direct Heirs of St. *Peter*, and all his Preheminencies, that all things which they ſay or do, muſt be intituled to St. *Peter*. Their Throne muſt be St. *Peter*'s *Chair*, their Church St. *Peter*'s *Ship*, their Lands St. *Peter*'s *Patrimony*, their Tributes and Exactions muſt be called *Peter-pence*, their Excommunications fulminated in St. *Peter*'s Name; and all their Bulls and Faculties ſealed *Annulo Piſcatoris*, with St. *Peter*'s Signet. Nay, they went ſo far at the laſt, that Pope *Stephen* not being contented to be *Peter*'s Succeſſor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himſelf. For being diſtreſſed by *Aſtulphus* King of the *Lombards*, he ſends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following ſtile. *Petrus Apoſtolus* JESU CHRISTI, &c. *i. e.* Peter *the Apoſtle of* JESUS CHRIST, *to you the moſt illuſtrious King* Pepin, *and to all Biſhops, Abbots,* &c. *I the Apoſtle* Peter, *whoſe adopted Sons you are, admoniſh that you preſently come and defend this City*, &c. And *doubt you not, but truſt aſſuredly, that I my ſelf, as if I ſtood before you, do thus exhort you*, &c. And *that I* Peter *the* Apoſtle *of God, will at the laſt day yield you mutual kindneſſes, and prepare you* Tabernacles *in the Heavens. Baronius* who records this Letter, *Anno* 755. numb. 17. was, it ſeems, pretty well perſwaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Paræneſis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon ſome differences with Pope *Paul* the Fifth, he ſtileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus Idemque* Petrus *vicem* Chriſti *agens in terris*, i. e. *Paul*, who is alſo *Peter*, and Chriſts Vicegerent, *&c.* but leaving theſe imaginary claims and challenges of St. *Peter*'s Privileges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages, two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and diſcerning times of *Chriſtianity*. Of which the principal was, the Orthodoxy of the Biſhops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and ſincere Profeſſion of the Faith of *Chriſt*; when almoſt all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schiſm*, or waſted and ſubverted by the fraud of *Hereſie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the *Communion* of it much deſired by all true *Chriſtians*, and a repair thither for relief and ſhelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Profeſſors under perſecution. And of theſe times, and this condition of that Church, we are to underſtand ſuch paſſages of the ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and ſet it above all the batteries and aſſaults of *Hereſie*. Such is that paſſage of St. *Cyprian*, Romanos *eſſe ad quos perfidia non poteſt habere acceſſum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, Romanam *fidem* (*i. e. Romanorum fidem*) *Apoſtolica voce laudatam, ejuſmodi præſtigias non recipere*, in *Apol. cont. Ruffin* and many others of that kind. Which paſſages it were as fooliſh and ridiculous to apply to all following times, the condition of that Church being different from what then it was; as to accommodate all thoſe *Elogies* and Commendations to the preſent City of *Rome*; which the Orators and Panegyriſts of the elder times have *hyperbolically* aſcribed to old *Rome* in her greateſt Glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it ſuch a multitude of Suiters and Attendants from all parts of the World, could not but add much to the Power and Reputation of thoſe Prelates, who had the happineſs and honour to be Reſident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Diſciples*, to ſolve more doubts of Conſcience, and decide more Controverſies than any other could expect. And ſo we are to underſtand that paſſage in St. *Irenæus*, in which he ſaith, *Ad hanc Eccleſiam propter potentiorem* Principalitatem, *neceſſe eſt omnem convenire Eccleſiam*, i. e. *eos qui ſunt undiq; Eccleſiæ*. And ſo they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Principality* than other Cities. But when that more potent *Principality* failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, firſt to *Conſtantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Biſhops of *Conſtantinople* and *Ravenna*, diſpute with thoſe of *Rome* for Superiority; the chief Seat of Religion moſt commonly following the Seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Biſhop of *Conſtantinople* prevailed ſo far, that with the permiſſion of *Mauritius* the Emperour, he took upon him the Title of *Univerſal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is ſaid that he was the worſt Biſhop of all that went before him, and the beſt of all that came after him) was at that time Biſhop of *Rome*: who ſharply inveighed as well againſt the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, for this Title, and plainly maintained, that whoſoever called himſelf *Univerſal Biſhop*, was the forerunner of *Antichriſt*. As for himſelf it is probable that he took the Title of *Servus Servorum Dei*, more in oppoſition to him of *Conſtantinople*, than with an intent to be ſo truly. To which though thoſe of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not abſolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John* the *Conſtantinopolitan* Patriarch for aſſuming to himſelf that Attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be: For then either in the old Bulls of the former Popes, we ſhould find mention of this Title; or elſe Pope *Gregory* would have aſſumed it to himſelf, that the World might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one ſucceeded *Gregory*, having further aims, applied himſelf to *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant: who having murthered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his Wife and Children; and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to aſſure himſelf of *Italy*, whoſe Revolt he feared, declared this *Boniface*, to be the *Oecumenical* Biſhop, and *Head of the Church*. To ſuch a good beginning, ſuch a gracious Patron do the Popes ſtand indebted for that Power and Empire, which now they challenge to themſelves over all the *Church*.

Now as the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency of the Popes of *Rome*; by reaſon that they were reſpectively honoured with the Seat *Imperial*; ſo were there divers other Biſhops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any Superiority. For trial of whoſe claim, we muſt look back on ſomewhat which hath been ſaid before; where it is ſhewn that the *Roman* Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioceſſes*; each *Dioceſs* being ſubdivided into ſeveral Provinces; each Province comprehending many ſeveral Cities: then, that in every of thoſe Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defenſores* the *Chriſtians* alſo had a Biſhop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the Seat of the *Roman Preſident*, the *Chriſtians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each ſeveral *Dioceſs*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Dioceſs* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Chriſtians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim* of *Optatus Reſpublica non eſt in Eccleſia, ſed Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth; and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Council of *Chalcedon*, raiſed this ſuperſtructure, Ἐκκλησιαστικῶς τὴν τάξιν, *&c.* that the Honours of the Church ſhould be accommodated unto thoſe in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and reſtrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he preſume once to act, he moved *irregularly*, and in his *Eccentricks*;

tricks. And for thoſe *Primates*, I ſhall give you once for all, this general Muſter, that is to ſay the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Dioceſs or Præfecture of that City; the Primate or Archbiſhop of *Millain*, for the Dioceſs of *Italy*; of *Syrmium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *York*, for *Britain*; *Toledo*, for *Spain*, and of *Carthage*, for *Africk*. Then for the Eaſt parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the Dioceſs of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Archbiſhop of *Epheſus*, for the Dioceſs of *Aſia*; of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, or *Conſtantinople* for that of *Thrace*; of *Theſſalonica*, for the Dioceſs of *Greece*, and of *Juſtiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongſt all which there was a mutual Correſpondence and *Co-ordination*, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourſe, which they called *Literas formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no ſubordination, and much leſs ſubjection, unto one another, as doth appear moſt evidently by the Canons of the Council of *Nice*, aſſigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the cuſtom of the former times. As for the *Dioceſs* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it thoſe ten Provinces, which were immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* or *Provoſt* of that City (an Officer firſt inſtituted by *Auguſtus Cæſar*) that is to ſay, the Provinces of *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucana* and the *Brutii*, in the main Land of *Italy*; and the three Iſlands of *Sicily*, *Corſica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of thoſe Provinces by the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ*, by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer, ſo anciently the Pope himſelf was called *Urbicus*, or the City Biſhop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a ſteddy and conſtant watchfulneſs upon all occaſions, to increaſe the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themſelves the honour to be *Vindices Canonum*, the ſtrict and punctual preſervers of the ancient Diſcipline, which took extreamly well with all ſorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at laſt the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from the chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at laſt obtained by the foreſaid *Boniface*, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the ſixty ſixth Biſhop and firſt Pope of *Rome*: the *Latin* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* Πάππας, ſignifying a Father. A Title at the firſt common unto other Biſhops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto thoſe of *Rome*. Of theſe Popes, their Succeſſion, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to ſee, agreeing exactly with another. The reaſons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1. The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2. the many *Schiſms* which have hapned in it; and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: The Writers of thoſe times accounted him only among the Popes, to whoſe faction they were moſt devoted. This Catalogue enſuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmine*, and *Onuphrius*, whoſe differences I have reconciled as well as poſſibly I could: premoniſhing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to ſit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his firſt admiſſion, to the coming in of his Succeſſor; it muſt be underſtood by ſome *Schiſm* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongſt the Ancients, in the firſt ſucceſſion, ſome placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; ſome *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally ſome others putting *Clemens* the firſt, I know no better way to compoſe the ſame then to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; St. *Peter* of the Church of the *Circumciſion*, and St. *Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Biſhop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succeſſion in this manner following.

The Biſhops of *Rome*.

A. Ch.

44 1 St. *Peter*, Biſhop of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*.

70 2 *Cletus*, or *Anacletus*, Succeſſor to St. *Peter* in the Churches of the *Circumciſion*. 23.

59 1 St. *Paul*, Biſhop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.

70 2 *Linus*, Succeſſor to St. *Paul* in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.

81 3 *Clemens* having ſucceeded *Linus* firſt in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after *Anno* 93. ſucceed *Cletus* alſo in the Church of the *Jews*, reckoned by ſome the next Succeſſor to St. *Peter*, becauſe the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not diſtinguiſhed from the other, till ſome years after *Peter*'s coming.

103	4	*Anacletus* 9
112	5	*Euariſtus* 9.
121	6	*Alexander* 16 *m.* 5 *d.*
131	7	*Sixtus* 10.
142	8	*Teleſphorus* 12.
154	9	*Hyginus* 4.
158	10	*Pius* 9.
167	11	*Anicetus* 8 *m.* 9.
175	12	*Soter* 4.
179	13	*Eleutherius* 15.
194	14	*Victor* 9.
203	15	*Zepherinus* 18.
221	16	*Caliſtus* 5.
226	17	*Urbanus* 6 *m.* 7 *d.*
233	18	*Pontianus* 5.
238	19	*Antherus* 1.
239	20	*Fabianus* 14.
253	21	*Cornelius* 2.
255	22	*Lucius* 1 *m.* 8.
256	23	*Stephanus* 3 *m.* 3.
260	24	*Sixtus*, or *Xiſtus* II. 2.
262	25	*Dionyſius* 10.
272	26	*Felix* 2 *m.* 5 *d.*
275	27	*Eutychianus* 8.
283	28	*Caius* 13.
296	29	*Marcellinus* 8.
304	30	*Marcellus* 5.
309	31	*Euſebius* 2.
311	32	*Miltiades* 3.
314	33	*Sylveſter* 22.
336	34	*Marcus m.* 8.
337	35	*Julius* 15 *m.* 5.
352	36	*Liberius* 15 *cui vivo Felix ſuffectus.*
367	37	*Damaſus* 18.
385	38	*Syricius* 13.
398	39	*Anaſtaſius* 4.
402	40	*Innocentius* 15.
417	41	*Zoſimus* 1 *m.* 4.
419	42	*Bonifacius* 5.
424	43	*Celeſtinus* 8 *m.* 5.
432	44	*Sixtus* III. 8.
440	45	*Leo magn.* 21.
461	46	*Hilarius* 6 *m.* 10.
468	47	*Simplicius* 15 *m.* 5.
483	48	*Felix* III. 9.
491	49	*Gelaſius* 4.
497	50	*Anaſtaſius* II. 2.
499	51	*Symmacus* 15.
514	52	*Hormiſda* 9.
523	53	*Joannes* I. 2 *m.* 9. *d.*
526	54	*Felix* IV 4.
530	55	*Bonifacius* II. 1.
532	56	*Joannes* II. 3.
535	57	*Agapetus* 1.
536	58	*Sylverius* 1.
537	59	*Vigilius* 18.
555	60	*Pelagius* 5.
563	61	*Joannes* III. 10.
573	62	*Benedictus* 4.
578	63	*Pelagius* II. 12.
590	64	*Gregorius Mag.* 14.
605	65	*Sabinianus* 1. the laſt of the *Roman* Biſhops, not having that arrogant Title of *Univerſal Biſhop*, or *Head of the Church*.

The Popes of *Rome* challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

606	1	*Bonifacius* III. 3.
607	2	*Bonifacius* IV. 8.
615	3	*Deus-dedit* 3.
618	4	*Bonifacius* V. 5 *m.* 10.
624	5	*Honorius* 13.
634	6	*Severinus* 2.
639	7	*Joannes* IV. 2.
641	8	*Theodorus* 7 *m.* 5.
649	9	*Martinus* 6.
654	10	*Eugenius* 2 *m.* 9.
657	11	*Vitalianus* 14.
671	12	*A-Deo-Datus.*
677	13	*Domnus* 1 *m.* 5 *d.*
679	14	*Agatho* 4.
683	15	*Leo* II. *m.* 10.
684	16	*Benedictus* II. 1.
685	17	*Joannes* V. 1.
686	18	*Conon m.* 11.
688	19	*Sergius* 13.
701	20	*Joannes* VI. 3.
704	21	*Joannes* VII. 3.
707	22	*Siſinnius d.* 20.
707	23	*Conſtantinus* 7.
714	24	*Gregorius* II. 17.
731	25	*Greg.* III. 10 *m.* 9.
742	26	*Zacharias* 10.
752	27	*Stephanus*

752	27	*Stephanus* II. *d.* 4.
752	28	*Stephanus* III. 5.
757	29	*Paulus* I. 10.
767	30	*Conſtans* II. 1.
768	31	*Stephanus* IV. 4.
772	32	*Adrianus* I. 23.
796	33	*Leo* III. 20.
816	34	*Stephanus* V. *m.* 7.
817	35	*Paſchalis* 7.
824	36	*Eugenius* II. 3.
827	37	*Valentinius d.* 4.
827	38	*Gregorius* IV. 16.
843	39	*Sergius* II. 3.
846	40	*Leo* IV. 8.
854	41	*Joannes* VIII. *vulgo* Pope *JOAN*. 2.
856	42	*Benedictus* III. 2.
858	43	*Nicolaus* 10.
868	44	*Adrianus* II. 5.
873	45	*Joannes* IX. 10.
883	46	*Martinus* II. 1.
884	47	*Adrianus* III. 1.
885	48	*Stephanus* VI. 6.
891	49	*Formoſus* 4.
895	50	*Bonifacius* VI. *d.* 15.
896	51	*Stephanus* VII. 1.
897	52	*Romanus m.* 4.
897	53	*Theodorus* II. *d.* 20.
897	54	*Joannes* X. 2.
899	55	*Benedictus* IV. 2.
903	56	*Leo* V. *d.* 40.
903	57	*Chriſtophorus m.* 7.
903	58	*Sergius* III. *m.* 7.
910	59	*Anaſtaſius* III. 2.
912	60	*Lando m.* 6.
912	61	*Joannes* XI. 15.
928	62	*Leo* VI. *m.* 6.
929	63	*Stephanus* VIII. 2.
931	64	*Joannes* XII. 5.
936	65	*Leo* VII. 4.
940	66	*Stephanus* IX. 3.
943	67	*Martinus* III. 3.
946	68	*Agapetus* II. 9.
956	69	*Joannes* XIII. 8.
964	70	*Leo* VIII. 1.
965	71	*Benedictus* V. 1.
966	72	*Joannes* XIV. 7.
973	73	*Benedictus* VI. *m.* 6.
974	74	*Domnus* II. 1. *m.* 3.
975	75	*Bonifacius* VII. 1.
976	76	*Benedictus* VII. 8.
984	77	*Joannes* XV. 1.
985	78	*Joannes* XVI. 10.
995	79	*Joannes* XVII. 4.
999	80	*Gregorius* V. 3 *m.*
999	81	*Sylveſter* II. *dictus Necromanticus* 4.
1003	82	*Joannes* XVIII. *m.* 5
1003	83	*Joannes* XIX. 6.
1009	84	*Sergius* IV. 3.
1012	85	*Benedictus* VIII. 12.
1024	86	*Joannes* XX. 8 *m.* 9.
1033	87	*Benedictus* IX. 12.
1045	88	*Sylveſter* III. *m.* 1.
1045	89	*Benedictus* X. *m.* 1.
1045	90	*Gregorius* VI. 1 *m.* 7
1047	91	*Clemens* II. *m.* 9.
1047	92	*Damaſus* II. *d.* 23.
1049	93	*Leo* IX. 5.
1055	94	*Victor* II. 2.
1057	95	*Stephanus* X. 1 *m.* 6.
1059	96	*Nicolaus* II. 2 *m.* 6.
1062	97	*Alexander* II. 11.
1073	98	*Gregorius* VII. *dictus Hildebrandus* 12.
1086	99	*Victor* III. 1.
1087	100	*Urbanus* II. 12.
1099	101	*Paſchalis* II. 18.
1118	102	*Gelaſius* II. 1.
1119	103	*Caliſtus* II. 6.
1125	104	*Honorius* II. 5.
1130	105	*Innocens* II. 13.
1143	106	*Celeſtine* II. *m.* 5.
1144	107	*Lucius* II. *m.* 11.
1145	108	*Eugenius* III. 8.
1153	109	*Anaſtaſius* IV. 1.
1154	110	*Adrian* IV. 4.
1159	111	*Alexand.* III. 22.
1181	112	*Lucius* III. 4.
1185	113	*Urban* III. 2.
1187	114	*Gregorius* VIII *m.* 2
1188	115	*Clemens* III. 3.
1191	116	*Celeſtine* III. 6.
1198	117	*Innocent* III. 17.
1216	118	*Honorius* III. 10.
1227	119	*Gregorius* IX. 14.
1241	120	*Celeſtine* IV. *d.* 17.
1243	121	*Innocent* IV. 11.
1254	122	*Alexander* IV. 6.
1261	123	*Urbanus* IV. 3.
1265	124	*Clemens* IV. 3.
1271	125	*Gregorius* X. 14.
1275	126	*Innocent* V. *m.* 5.
1276	127	*Adrian* V. *d.* 19.
1276	128	*Joannes* XXI. *d.* 8.
1277	129	*Nicolas* III. 4.
1281	130	*Martinus* IV. 4.
1285	131	*Honorius* IV. 4.
1288	132	*Nicolas* IV. 4.
1294	133	*Celeſtine* V. *m.* 6.
1295	134	*Bonifacius* VIII. 8
1303	135	*Benedictus* IX. *m.* 8.
1305	136	*Clemens* V. 9.
1316	137	*Joannes* XXII. 18
1334	138	*Benedictus* X. 7.
1342	139	*Clemens* VI. 10.
1352	140	*Innocent* IV. 10.
1362	141	*Urban* 5. 8.
1371	142	*Gregorius* XI. 7.
1378	143	*Urban* VI. 11.
1389	144	*Boniface* IX. 14.
1404	145	*Innocent* VII. 2.
1406	146	*Gregorius* XII. 2.
1409	147	*Alex.* V. *m.* 10.
1410	148	*Joannes* XXIII. 5.
1417	149	*Martin* V. 13.
1431	150	*Eugenius* IV. 16.
1447	151	*Nicolaus* V. 8.
1455	152	*Caliſtus* III. 3.
1458	153	*Pius* II. *antè dictus Æneas Sylvius* 6.
1464	154	*Paulus* II. 7.
1471	155	*Sixtus* IV. 12.
1484	156	*Innocent* VIII. 7.
1492	157	*Alexander* VI. 11.
1503	158	*Pius* III. *d.* 26.
1503	159	*Julius* II. 10.
1513	160	*Leo* X. 9.
1522	161	*Adrian* VI. 2.
1524	162	*Clemens* VII. 10.
1534	163	*Paulus* III. 15.
1550	164	*Julius* III. 5.
1555	165	*Marcellus* II. *d.* 22.
1555	166	*Paulus* IV. 5.
1560	167	*Pius* IV. 6.
1567	168	*Pius* V. 5.
1572	169	*Gregorius* XIII. 13
1585	170	*Sixtus* V. 5.
1590	171	*Urban* VII. *d.* 12.
1590	172	*Greg.* XIV. *m.* 9.
1591	173	*Innocent* IX. *m.* 1.
1592	174	*Clement* VIII. 13.
1605	175	*Leo* XI. *d.* 26.
1605	176	*Paulus* V. 16.
1621	177	*Greg.* XV. 2.
1623	178	*Urban* VIII. 21.
1644	179	*Innocent* X. 11.
1655	180	*Alexander* VII. 13
1667	181	*Clement* IX.
1670	182	*Clement* X.
1676	183	*Innocent* XI.
1689	184	*Alexand.* the VIII. a *Venetian* Nobleman by Birth, and now 79 years of Age. He was called formerly Cardinal *Ottoboni*, Biſhop of *Porto*, and Sub-Dean of the Coll. of Cardinals. And was Elected Pope the *6th* of *October*. His Prophetick Motto is *Pœnitentia Glorioſa*, as that of his Predeceſſor was *Bellua inſatiabilis*. He died the firſt of *February*, 1691.
1691.		*Innocent* XII. was Elected *July* 12. Aged 76 Years, four Months, and was before Cardinal *Pignatello* Archbiſhop of *Naples*.

To theſe one hundred ſeventy nine Popes add the ſixty five Biſhops which preceded that arrogant Title of *Univerſal*, and they make up the full number of two hundred forty four. How many are to come, he muſt be a cunning man that can determine. And yet ſuch cunning men there have been, who have determined poſitively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name St. *Malachy*, one of the firſt Apoſtles of the *Iriſh* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Meſſinghams* Collection of the *Iriſh* Saints, a certain number of *Mottoes*, in the Latin Tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes ſucceſſively to one another, according to the order of thoſe ſeveral *Mottoes*: and there unto this Propheſie annexed, that when ſo many Popes had ſate in St. *Peters* Chair, either the World ſhould end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was ſhewed to me by the Author, when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as the time of *Urban*, who laſt deceaſed; which I compared as well as memory would ſerve me, and found the *Mottoes* and the Popes to be very anſwerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took moſt notice of, was, *Lilium* and *Roſa*: a *Motto* very ſutable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *Engliſh Roſe*, and the *French Lilly*; in the marriage of *Charles* King of *England*, and Madam *Henrietta Maria* the Princeſs of *France*; which that Pope earneſtly promoted, in his ſpeedy and cheerful granting of the Diſpenſation. And to take from me all ſuſpition of Impoſture, this *Maſſingham* ſhewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Fleming*, and printed near 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottoes* ſtood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottoes* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottoes* more to come; by conſequence, if this *Malachy* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachy* was, juſt ſo many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* ſake will abridge thoſe days, and not permit the Superſtitions and the Corruptions of that Church to endure ſo long; nor ſo many Aſſertors and Defenders of thoſe *Roman Heterodoxies*, to be added to the former number. Out of the Stories of all which (permitting many things of leſs conſideration) I will only ſelect ſome few paſſages, for the better underſtanding of their State and Story.

1. *Pelagius* the firſt, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schiſmaticks* ſhould be puniſhed with temporal Death; which ſeverity continueth ſtill: and that none ſhould be preferred to Eccleſiaſtical Dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long ſince antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus*, firſt brought *Organs* into the Divine Service of the Church of *Rome*, to be uſed with the ſinging or vocal Muſick formerly in uſe; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes ſucceeding.

3. *Conſtantine* was ſo generally beloved of all Men,

that going to *Conſtantinople*, *Juſtinian* the ſecond kiſt his Feet in ſign of Honour, which ſome of the ambitious Popes in times ſucceeding, drew into example, and at laſt brought into a cuſtom, as it ſtill continueth.

4. *Paſchal* the firſt, cauſed the Prieſts of certain Pariſhes in *Rome*, by reaſon of their nearneſs to his Perſon, their preſence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now Mates for Kings, and numbred about 70, but more or fewer at the ſole pleaſure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the ſecond, took to himſelf within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had uſed to do.

6. *Sergius* the ſecond, was the firſt that changed his Name. For thinking his own Name, *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swines-mouth*, not conſonant to his Dignity, he cauſed himſelf to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Succeſſors following, do alſo vary their Names. So that if one be a Coward he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheiſt, *Pius*, or *Innocent*: if a Ruſtick, *Urbanus*; and ſo for the reſt.

6. *John* the eighth, is by moſt Men confeſſed to be a Woman, and is uſually called Pope *Joan*. To avoid the like Diſgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *ubi ab ultimo diacono, &c.* ſo that both in a literal and myſtical Senſe, this Woman may not unfitly be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The Name of this Female Pope, *the Romiſh Chronologers* have not inſerted into the Catalogue; the reaſon, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & ſexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, theſe Popes that have called themſelves *Johns*, are ſo ill ordered; ſome making that *John* which ſucceeded *Adrian* the ſecond, *An.* 872. to be the *8th*, and others the *9th*. *Platina* only of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joan* as the *8th* of the *Johns*, and ſo forward: in which particular I have followed his Authority. And it is probable enough, that God might ſuffer that proud See to fall into ſuch an Infamy, the better to humble the enſuing Popes, in the times of their greateſt ruff and flouriſh; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succeſſion, they ſo much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the ſtory in matter of Fact) he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in Mr. *Cooks* Book of Pope *Joan*; who moſt induſtriouſly hath anſwered all Objections, which hath been made againſt it by thoſe of *Rome*.

8. *Nicholas* the firſt, the better to faſten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the leſs Obnoxious to their natural Princes, was the firſt who did by Law reſtrain them from Marriage; ſaying, that *it was more honeſt to have to do with many Women privately, than openly to keep a Wife*: and ſome of his Succeſſors followed it ſo cloſe, that a Prieſt of *Placentia* being accuſed to have Wife and Children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that ſhe was the Wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again reſtored to it.

9. *Adrian* the third, ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth ſhould have no more to do with the Election, or Confirmation of the Pope, but that it ſhould be left wholly to the *Roman* Clergy.

10. *Formoſus* was ſo ill beloved, and of ſuch a general Diſeſteem, that Pope *Stephen* the Seventh cauſed his Body to be unburied, all his Acts Reverſed, two of his Fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled Carcaſe to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though theſe Acts of *Stephen* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Succeſſors; and the doings of *Formoſus* juſtified: yet *Sergius* the third cauſed his corrupt and putrified Body to be taken once more out of the Grave; and his Head to be cut off, as if ſtill alive. So little did the *Infalibility* of S. *Peters* Chair preſerve theſe Popes from falling into groſs and irreconciliable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the ſecond that changed his Name; a very Wicked, Cruel and Libidinous Man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatneſs, cut off the Noſe of one Cardinal, and the Hand of another, for that they had ſignified to the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, what a Scandal all the Church did ſuffer by his deteſtable Life; and finally, being taken in Adultery, was ſlain by the Husband of the Woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperor, as long as it continued in a way of Succeſſion, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incenſed againſt the *Romans*, who, till that time retained ſome ſhadow of an Empire; projected the Election of the future Emperors, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were diſtracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakned; and ſo a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Stephen* the tenth, brought the Church of *Milan* to be under the Obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an Equality with them; as before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for ſome time had challenged the *precedency* of them.

14. *Gregory* the ſeventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet Man, who firſt adventured to draw the *Premiſſes* laid down by ſome of his Predeceſſors into a *concluſion*: Excommunicating the Emperor *Henry* IV. for medling with the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhops, and cauſing *Rodolph* Duke of *Swevia* to rebel againſt him. A man, much favoured againſt the Princes of her own Houſe by the Counteſs *Mathildis*; who is ſaid to be ſo much his Friend, that for his ſake ſhe left the company of her Husband, and diſherited her right Heirs, ſetling her whole Eſtates in *Italy*, on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperor had the better of this Pope, and made him flie out of *Rome*, and die in Exile; yet he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf to Pope *Paſchal* the ſecond, (who had Armed his own Son againſt him) to attend bare-foot at his own door, and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of *Candles* in the Feaſt of the *Purification* of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth, was the firſt that on *Chriſtmas* Night, with divers Ceremonies did Conſecrate Swords, Roſes, or the like; to be ſent as tokens of Love and Honour to ſuch Princes as deſerved beſt of them, or whom they deſired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth ſent a conſecrated Roſe to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requeſting him to Baniſh *Luther*: and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War againſt *Henry* the Eighth, who had then withdrawn himſelf and his Kingdom, from the Pope's commands.

17. *Nicholas* the ſecond took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the Colledge of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celeſtine* the ſecond, was the Inventer of that mad manner of *Curſing*, or *Anathematizing*, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, purſuing the deſperate courſe of *Gregory* the ſeventh, Excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick* I. and by raiſing War againſt him in every place; brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to proſtrate himſelf at his feet: when the Pope treading on his Neck, ſaid aloud, *Super Aſpidem & Baſiliſcum*, &c. profanely applying thoſe words to the preſent occaſion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his diſgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi ſed Petro*; the Pope not willing to loſe his part of ſo great a glory, ſubjoyned as angerly, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope ſhould have the correction of all *Chriſtian* Princes: and that no Emperor ſhould be acknowledged, till he had ſworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*; who when he hath dined,

commands his Trumpeters to ſound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may ſit down to Dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Tranſubſtantiation*, and ordained that there ſhould be a *Pix* made to cover the conſecrated (but now *Tranſubſtantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is alſo ſaid to have firſt impoſed *Auricular Confeſſion* upon the People.

21. *Nicholas* the Third, was the firſt Pope who practiſed to enrich his Kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuſcany*; and to raiſe the reſt to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Pope's Kinsfolks or Poſterity, ſo afterwards they ſtudied no one thing more than to prefer their own Blood; inſomuch that they have not only laboured (as he ſaith) to make them Princes, but if it were poſſible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For ſo dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they uſe to call their Baſtards) that it was very juſtly ſaid by Pope *Alexander* the Third, *The Laws forbid us to get* Children, *and the Devil hath given us* Nephews *in their ſtead.*

22. *Boniface* the Eighth, of whom it is ſaid, *That he entred like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*; by his general *Bull* exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* I. put them out of his Protection; and ſo the Pope's Bull left roaring here. He cauſed the Book of the *Canon* Law, called the *Decretals* to be firſt ſet out; and inſtituted the Feaſt of *Jubilee* to be held in *Rome* every hundredth Year; but by *Clement* the Sixth it was brought unto the fiftieth Year, and ſince reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourſe of People which repaired to *Rome*, to obſerve his new Feaſt of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remiſſion of all his ſins) ſhewed himſelf one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and cauſed two Swords to be born before him every day, in ſign that all Power *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Temporal* did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the Fifth was the firſt that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* ſaleable. For ſeeing (ſaid he) that one drop of our Saviour's Blood had been enough to have ſaved all Mankind, and yet that all his Blood was ſhed, the *over-plus* was left to the Church as a ſtanding Treaſure, to be diſpoſed of by St. *Peter* and his Succeſſors. And hereunto, to make his Treaſure the more inexhauſted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the Inſolencies of the People of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the ſpace of ſeventy Years.

24. *Clement* the Sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to ſuch as formerly had uſurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which Title the *Malteſti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaffi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Eſtates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julio* the Second, though conquered from the preſent owners in the time of *Alexander* the Sixth, by *Cæſar Borgia* his Son; who had an aim of ſetling them, and perhaps the Papacy it ſelf, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the Eleventh, returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himſelf by Sea in private, for fear of being with-held by the *French*; and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City ſo over-grown with Briars and Buſhes, and the principal Buildings of it ſo decayed and ruinous, that a little longer abſence would have made it deſolate.

26. *Paul* the Second, endeavoured to encreaſe the Majeſty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predeceſſors in pomp and ſhew; cauſing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphyrs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the ſplendor of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the Fourth had graced with *Red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty Years to twenty-five.

27. *Sixtus* the Fourth ordained a conſtant Guard to attend his Perſon. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the firſt Founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other ſide he is ſaid by ſome, to have ſet all Offices and Preferments to Sale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stews of both Sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies *Pſalter*.

28. *Alexander* the Sixth, ſetting aſide all modeſty, was the firſt that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Baſtards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cæſar Borgia* before-named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other Eſtates from the preſent owners, on a deſign of ſetling them in his own Family, as before is ſaid, and to that end called in the *French*, who after made ſuch foul work in *Italy*.

29. *Julio* the Second had more in him of the *Soldier*, than the *Prelate*; recovering many Towns unto the Church, which had been formerly uſurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæſar Borgia*; and keeping *Italy* in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who paſſing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandiſhed his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River; ſaying that if *Peter*'s Keys would not ſerve his turn, then *Paul*'s Sword ſhould do it.

30. *Leo* the Tenth was indeed a great favourer of Learning, but of great Prodigality, and vaſt Expence. For maintenance whereof he ſent his ſaleable *Indulgences* into *France* and *Germany*; which buſineſſes being indiſcreetly handled by his *Miniſters*, occaſioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* among the *Switzers*, firſt to write againſt them; and afterwards to queſtion many points of Popiſh Doctrine. In purſuance of which Quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luther*'s Books, whom he declared an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Pope's *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Perſecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichriſt*. Which flame increaſed ſo faſt, and inlarged ſo far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the Fourth, continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the Third, but interrupted and laid aſide from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby ſetled and confirmed the *Intereſt* of the Church of *Rome*, cauſed it to be received as *Oecumenical*; though the *Italian* Biſhops being moſt of them the Pope's Creatures, did more than double the number of all the reſt; and yet ſome of the reſt alſo were but meerly *Titulars*. He added alſo a new *Creed* conſiſting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apoſtles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of theſe Ghoſtly Fathers we have ſaid enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to St. *Peter*'s Picture too much of the *Red*, replied, That *he had made him ſo, as bluſhing at the Lives of thoſe who were called his Succeſſors.*

At the time of our Author's Writing, *Innocent* the Tenth was poſſeſs'd of the Papal Throne, and therefore nothing is ſaid of him. *Brietius* ſaith of him, That he was a Man of greater Courage than was to have been expected from a Man of his Years and Birth, and fixed in his Reſolves; under whom the *Janſeniſts* were condemn'd: But *Olympia* his Brother's Wife gave his Reputation ſome blemiſh by her too great Power over him; he being leſs careful than was fit in ſo ſuſpicious a Nation, of giving Men the opportunity of traducing and defaming him.

Alexander the Seventh was elected the ſeventh of *April* 1655. He received *Chriſtian*, Queen of *Sweden*, into

Rome with great Magnificence. And repaired the City and Haven of *Civita Vecchia* for the building and entertaining his Gallies; the Popes before this time not having any Naval Forces of their own. He alſo promoted the *Pyranean* Treaty of Peace between *France* and *Spain*, in the Year 1659. He changed the Papal Cuſtom from carrying the Hoſt in a ſitting Poſture in the publick Proceſſion into that of Kneeling. Laſtly, He conſecrated *Francis de Sales*, Biſhop of *Geneva*, and was a great Builder of Churches, and a great admirer of the Virgin *Mary*, whom he ſtil'd in an Inſcription, *Pacis Arbitra.* He ſate thirteen Years.

Clement the Ninth was elected the twentieth of *June*, 1667. This Pope Canonized St. *Roſe* of *Panama*, in the Year 1668. And St. *Peter* of *Alcantara* in *Spain*, a *Minorite*; And St. *Magdalen* of *Pazzi*, a *Carmelite* Nun. He ſate three Years.

Clement the Tenth was elected the 29*th* of *April*, 1670. He Canonized Pope *Pius* V. in the Year 1672. *Cajetan*, the Founder of the *Theatins*; *Francis Borgia*, General of the Jeſuits; *Lewis Bertrand*, a Dominican; and *Margaret*, Queen of *Scotland*. He ſate ſix Years.

Innocent the Eleventh, the preſent Pope, was elected the 21*ſt* Day of *September* 1676. There ought little to be ſaid of him, becauſe living; but Chriſtendom is certainly much indebted to him for having contributed ſo very much as he has done to the recovery of *Hungary* out of the Hands of the *Turks*. He died the 12*th* of *Aug.* 1689. This Pope had the good fortune in his life time to pleaſe all the World but the *French* King, with whom he was imbroil'd to the Hour of his Death, on the ſcore of the Franchiſes and other Eccleſiaſtical Concerns: He was no Friend to the *Jeſuits*, nor they to him; which Society, by the Intrigues with *France*, procured the troubleſome Proceſs againſt Seignior *Michael Molino*, and the *Quietiſts*; who were ruined by the Inquiſition, after the Author's Doctrines had been twice tried and acquitted by that Unholy-Office. *Molino* is ſaid to have died ſome ſmall time before this Pope, who had ever been his Friend, and was ſo far ſuſpected, that the Inquiſitor came to examine the Infallible Father, and try whether he were ſound in the Faith; and perhaps he had been depoſed as a *Quietiſt*, but for the ſcandal it might have given to the Northern Hereticks, who yet ſmil'd to ſee Infallibility ſuſpected: But the Inquiſitors being twice deceived by this ſly Heretick themſelves, are the leſs to be blamed that they were jealous of their Spiritual Infallible Father, whoſe Inerrability was never intended for any but Lay-mens belief.

I have extracted this ſhort Account of the four laſt Popes, and their Elections, out of a Book ſtiled *Hiſtoria ſummorum Pontificum per eorum Numiſmata:* Written by *Claud du Molinet*, a Regular Canon, and Printed at *Paris* in the Year 1679. and Dedicated to this preſent Pope.

As for the *Temporal* Power and Greatneſs of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperor *Conſtantine*; by which the City of *Rome* it ſelf, moſt part of *Italy* and *Africk*, and all the Iſlands of thoſe Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly ſhewn by our learned *Cracanthorp*, in his Diſcourſe upon that ſubject. But that *Donation* might moſt juſtly be ſuſpected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the ſame; conſidering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof diſputed: inſomuch that many Leaſs are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquiſition*, where it had been queſtioned. For in that place the Hiſtorian not only denieth the ſaid feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned Men reported, That *Conſtantine* and *Sylveſter* (to whom it is ſaid to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then ſheweth, how baſe and obſcure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it ſelf, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2. That in the inſtitution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporal* Sword, but lived as ſubject to the Emperors. 3. That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reaſon of the corruption of their Manners. 4. That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the Advice and Power of the Popes. 5. That *Pepin* of *France*, and his Son *Charles*, having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, gave unto the Popes the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns, and Territories about *Rome*. 6. That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, expreſſed the date of them in theſe following words; *Such a one our Lord the Emperor reigning.* 7. That long after the tranſlation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open proteſtation, that the *Pontifical* Dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperors than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raiſed to an earthly Power, they forgot the ſalvation of Souls, ſanctity of Life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards Men: And that to raiſe Arms, to make War againſt *Chriſtians*, to invent new devices for getting of Money, to prophane ſacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their Kindred and Children, was their only ſtudy. And this is the ſubſtance of *Guicciardine* in that place; an Author above all exception. He was a Man whom the Popes employed in many buſineſſes of principal importance, ſo that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, ſo unlikely is it to have been given by *Conſtantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperor was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis*, ſirnamed *Pius*, is ſaid to have been the firſt *Donor* of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volateran*, ſubſcribed by the Emperor, his three Sons, ten Biſhops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's *Library-Keeper*: yet notwithſtanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious Men, that really there was no ſuch matter; but that all this was forged by *Anaſtaſius* the Pope's *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witneſs to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of queſtion, let us next hear what that great Politician and Stateſman, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath obſerved in this caſe. ‘*Rome* (ſaith he) was always ſubject to the ‘Lords of *Italy*, till *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* ‘were enforced to ſubmit themſelves to the Biſhops, ‘*An.*[*] 430. or thereabouts. And talking of the eſtate of the Popedom, *An.* 931. he ſtates it thus. ‘In *Rome* were elected yearly out of ‘the Nobility two *Conſuls*, who according to ‘the ancient Cuſtom ruled that City. Under them ‘was appointed a Judge to miniſter Juſtice to the ‘People. There was alſo a Council of twelve Men, ‘which gave Governours unto the Towns ſubject to ‘*Rome*. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or ‘leſs Authority, according to the favour which he ‘found with the Emperors, or others then moſt mighty; ‘but the leaving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperors ſetled ‘the Pope in a more abſolute Sovereignty over the City. ‘And yet it ſeems they were not of ſuch abſolute Power, ‘but that the *Romans* tugged hard with them for their ‘Liberties. Concerning which he tells us, in another place, ‘That the ambition of the People of *Rome* did at ‘that time, *viz.* *An.* 1010. make much War with the ‘Popes; and that having helped the Pope to drive out ‘the Emperor, and altered the Government of the City ‘as to them ſeemed good, ſuddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more Injuries at ‘their Hands, than at any other *Chriſtian* Princes; and ‘that even in thoſe days when the Cenſures of the ‘Popes made all the Weſt of the World to tremble, ‘yet even then did the People of *Rome* rebel, and both ‘the Popes and the People ſtudied for nothing ſo ‘much, as how one of them might overthrow the

‘Au-

[*] *This was in the Year* 493.

Authority and Eſtimation of the other.

But for the Method and Degrees by which the Popes aſcended to their Temporal Greatneſs, take here an extract of the Story taken out of the beſt Authors, by the moſt Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuit*. ‘The Pope (ſaith he) being choſen anciently by the *Clergy* and People of *Rome*, uſed always to receive from the Emperor's Hands a ratification of that choice: inſomuch that about the Year 579. when all *Italy* was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the Second conſtrained through the neceſſity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without the Emperor's leave; St. *Gregory*, then a Deacon, was ſhortly after ſent in an Embaſſy to excuſe it. But when the *Lombards* grew ſo great in *Italy*, and the Empire was ſo infeſted with the *Saracens*, and ſuch changes hapned in all parts of the World, as that neither for the preſent the *Homage* of the Pope was uſeful to the Emperor, nor the *Protection* of the Emperor, available for the Pope; by this means was the Biſhop of *Rome* left to play his own Game by himſelf. A thing which as it pleaſed him well enough, ſo both he and his Succeſſors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperors, and greatneſs of that City and place of his abode, he then found himſelf the more free, the greater the Tempeſt was that beat upon the other. And then firſt he ſet himſelf to alienate the Hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperor, in which he did prevail ſo far, that *Theophylact* the *Exarch* coming into *Italy*, was oppoſed by the Soldiers, who wiſhed better to the Pope, than to the Emperor; and the Emperor's own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Soldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten an Intereſt in them againſt their own Maſter. Next he oppoſed himſelf againſt him; and about the Year 710, Pope *Conſtantine* the Firſt did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperor, in defence of *Images*, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him, *Gregory* the Second and Third, took up his Example, and did the like by *Leo Iſaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very cloſe, and to vex on all ſides not only *Italy*, but *Rome* too. This drives the Pope to ſeek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in *France*, that famous Warriour againſt the *Saracens*. Him he imployeth in defence of the Church againſt the *Lombards*; and the Addreſs ſeems very adviſedly taken, it proved ſo fortunate to them both. For in ſhort time it diſſolved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then ſtood Two hundred and four Years, which was the Pope's Security: and it brought the Crown of *France* into the Houſe of *Charles*, and ſhortly after the Weſtern Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to ſay, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River *Po*; ſo that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charles* the Great had ſet up the Weſtern Empire, then he reſumed the Ancient and Original Power to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Papal Elections. And this Power continued for a time in his Poſterity; for *Gregory* the Seventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the ſame *Henry* the Fourth, whom he afterwards depoſed. And it might have continued longer, if the ſucceeding Emperors had had *Abilities* enough to ſecure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a ſtrong Council about him, and meeting with ſome weak Princes, and thoſe oft-times diſtracted with great and dangerous Wars, grew ſtronger till he had got the better; yet was it carried in ſucceeding times with great changes of Fortune, and different ſucceſs; the Emperor ſometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperor; winning and loſing Ground, as their Spirits, Abilities, Aids and Opportunities were; till at laſt the Pope ſetled himſelf on the Grounds laid by *Gregory* the Seventh, in that great Power which he now uſeth in and over theſe parts of the *Chriſtian* World. A Power firſt exerciſed (ſaith he in another place) by this Pope *Gregory* the Seventh, and made too good upon the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the Fourth, *Alexander* the Third, with ſome others, upon *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. And others of the Emperors were alike ſerved when they did not ſubmit. And for this, I hope his Holineſs was not to be blam'd. For if the Emperor kept the Pope under for divers Years together, againſt all reaſon; the Pope, as *Bellarmine* affirms, being never ſubject to the Emperor, and wanting force to ſtand on his own *Prorogative*: I hope the Pope having now got Power enough, may keep the Emperors under foot, and not ſuffer them any more to ſtart before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great Power of the Church of *Rome* was firſt obtained; let us next conſider of thoſe Policies, by which this *Papal* Monarchy hath been ſo long upheld in eſteem and credit. We may divide them into three Heads. 1. Thoſe by which they have inſinuated and ſcrewed themſelves into the Affections and Affairs of the greateſt Princes. 2. Thoſe by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to ſecure their eſtate: And 3. thoſe by which they keep the People in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the firſt. Firſt, The Donation of ſeveral Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by theſe Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them faſt to uphold that Power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are poſſeſſed of. Of which ſort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of *France* to the Houſe of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the Houſe of *Schawben*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readineſs of their Miniſters to kill ſuch as reſiſt them, cannot but neceſſitate Princes to ſeek their Friendſhip, and hold fair with them: eſpecially ſince by a Writ of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects againſt their Sovereign; and without the charge of levying one Soldier, either deſtroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raiſed by them againſt the Emperors of *Germany*, and that againſt King *John* in *England*, by theſe *Papal fulminations* only; the poyſoning of the ſaid King *John* by a Monk of *Swineſtead*, and killing of King *Henry* the Third of *France*, by *Jaques Clement*, are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the iſſue of which cannot but uphold the Pope's Authority, without which their Birth would be illegitimate, and conſequently themſelves uncapable of the Eſtates they are born unto: And by this means they do more ſtrengthen themſelves by the unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriages of his own. Nothing more faſtned Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the Queſtion that was raiſed about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the Eighth; the lawfulneſs of which depended chiefly on the diſpenſation of Pope *Julio* the Second. 4. Then cometh in their diſpenſing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themſelves induced upon reaſon of State, to fly off from thoſe Leagues and break off thoſe Treaties, which have been ſolemnly made and ſworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, ſuch Princes think themſelves not perjured, becauſe diſpenſed with by the Pope; and commonly get ſomething in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankful unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and Stories. 5. Next comes the chooſing of the younger Sons of great Princes into the rank of *Cardinals*; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papal Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes

are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regal Patrimony. 6. And as by theſe courſes he holds in with all *Chriſtian Princes* generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; ſo hath he faſtned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we ſhall ſpeak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the ſecond: 1. So it is that their Eſtate hath the firmeſt foundation of any, as being built on the Conſciences of Men poſſeſſed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted Power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but alſo over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their diſpoſing, for Men of all Humours and Affections; as having in their Power the diſpoſing of almoſt all the Benefices and Biſhopricks in *Italy*, half of thoſe in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all ſuch as are that way ſtudied, in a perpetual dependance upon that See; eſpecially injoying by it many notable Privileges, which thoſe of the *Temporalty* are not capable of. 3. Conſider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Friers*, whoſe very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monaſtery* and *Convent* being a Garriſon (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spiritual Janizaries*; Men moſt affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of theſe it is conceived, that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at leaſt may be fit for action; and all maintained at other Mens coſt, themſelves not diſburſing one Peny towards it. 4. Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increaſe to their Revenue: ſome of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, which was for 82000 Years to all that could ſay ſuch a Prayer of St. *Auguſtines*; and that for every Day, *Toties quoties*. 5. Their practiſing on *Penitents*, whom they perſwade in the very agony of their Souls, that there is no Salvation for them, but by giving part of their Eſtates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any ſmall advantage to their Power and Patrimony by the invention of *Spiritual Fraternities*, which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into theſe the *Lay-People* of all ſorts, Men and Women, Married and Single, deſire to be inrolled; as hereby injoying the ſpiritual Prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more ſpeedy diſpatch out of *Purgatory*.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deter the People from reading the Scripture, alledging unto them the perils that may incur by miſ-interpretation. 2. They *breed an Antipathy* between the *Papiſts* and the *Proteſtants*; inſomuch that a *Papiſt* may not ſay *Amen* unto a *Proteſtant's Deo Gratias*. They debar them from all *ſound of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers, and hiding their own Treatiſes, in which the Tenet of the *Proteſtants* is recited only to be confuted; inſomuch that in all *Italy* one ſhall ſeldom meet with *Bellarmine*'s Works, or any of the like nature to be ſold. 4. They have, under pain of Excommunication, prohibited the *Italians* from *Travel* and *Traffick* with *Heretical* Countries, or ſuch places where thoſe contagious ſounds and ſights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquiſition* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Spain*) cruſheth not only the beginnings, but the ſmalleſt ſuſpitions of being this way addicted. And 6. the People thus reſtrained from Travel, are taught to believe, that the *Proteſtants* are Blaſphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the People grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a profeſſed Sanctuary for Roguery, and the like. We have yet two latter Examples of their dealing in this kind. Firſt, The groſs ſlander of the *Apoſtacy* (or as they call it the Reconciliation) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God Dr. *King*, not long ſince the Lord Biſhop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a Faith and Zeal, to give occaſion for ſuch a Calumny. The ſecond, A Book by them publiſhed, and commonly ſold in *Italy* and *France*, containing a Relation of God's Judgments, ſhewn on a ſort of *Proteſtant Heretick*, by the fall of an Houſe in St. *Andrew*'s Pariſh in *London*, in which they were aſſembled to hear a *Geneva* Lecture, *Oct. 26. A. D.* 1623. By which dealing the ſimple People are made to believe that to be a Judgment on us of the *Proteſtant* Party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a Calumny in regard of us; and a ſad Chance (I will not ſay a Judgment) which befel their own, by the fall of a Chamber in *Black-Fryers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Drury* a *Popiſh* Prieſt, and that too on the fifth of *November*, in their own Account, being the *26th* of *October* before-mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and ſtrongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been choſen young, or of the ſame Family, (ſo that the Succeſſor had not often croſſed the Deſigns of his Predeceſſor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better eſtabliſhed, than ever the old *Roman* Empire was in her greateſt glory. And to ſay truth, I have wondered with my ſelf, that ſome of the more active Popes eſpecially, ſuch as were choſen young, and had the happineſs to deſcend of Noble Families, did never ſeek the ſetling of this Eſtate in their own Poſterity: eſpecially conſidering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in ſacred and in civil Stories. The *High Prieſthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Son; and why ſhould any Man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the *High Prieſthood* in the Church of *Chriſt* to be alſo *hereditary*, not *elective*? The *Saracens*, who were as great Maſters for Wit and Policy, as any thoſe Ages did produce, purſued that Precedent; governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many Years together, until the *Sultans* their *Vicegerents* (ambitiouſly affecting the ſupream Command) rooted out their Races. And if the ſame obligation lie on the *Maſters* of *Religions* or mixt Orders, for preſerving the Rules and Statutes of their foundation; as is upon the Pope by the fundamental Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it ſeems to do; why might not the Popes as well diſpenſe with thoſe *Conſtitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an Hereditary Eſtate; as *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, and *Gotardus* of *Denmark*, Maſters of the *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I ſee, but that ſuch an alteration as I ſpeak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of Chriſtendom, as the like change from an unſetled popular Government to an Hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that noble Hiſtorian and Stateſman *Tacitus*, *Neque Provinciæ illum rerom ſtatum abnuebant, ſuſpecto* Senatus populique *imperia ob certamina Potentium, & avaritiam Magiſtratuum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, poſtremò pecuniâ turbabantur*, The Provinces (ſaith he) diſliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the *Senate* and *People* had been long diſtaſted, by reaſon of the Factions of the great Ones, and covetouſneſs of their Officers: the Laws affording no ſecurity at all, as being ſway'd up and down by force, ambition, and corruption. The *Popedom* ſetled in one Houſe, would prove more conſtant in the preſervation of all Leagues and Treaties, more careful to preſerve the *Intereſt* of their Eſtate, more uſeful to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occaſions, than it is at preſent; where the Popes ſo often change their ſides, and ſhift their Factions; the Succeſſor many times eſteeming it his greateſt glory to reſcind all the Acts of his Predeceſſor. And poſſible enough it is that *Ceſar Borgia* the Son of *Alexander* VI. might have ſome ſuch ends, when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis* XII. of *France*, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conqueſt of *Milain*; he ſhould be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malateſti*, *Baillons*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of leſs note, did poſſeſs in *Italy*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Father's ſudden death, and his own dangerous ſickneſs happening at the ſame time, cut off his deſign; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himſelf abſolute Maſter of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the ſame eſtabliſhed in the *Borgian* Family. It is true, that ſuch an alteration would be very diſtaſtful to the ambition of the Cardinals, who by the deaths (natural or violent, it matters not) of the preſent Pope, aſpire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot ſee how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpoſe to poyſon ſome of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a meer miſtake of his Cup-bearer, had not poyſoned himſelf, (even in the very heat of the buſineſs then almoſt effected) and ſo made fruſtrate the device.

But paſſing by this imagination of an *Hereditary* Popedom, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order obſerved in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made moſt commonly in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Vatican*, are among other Buildings five Halls, two Chapels, and a Gallery ſeventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for Conference, one *Chapel* for the Maſs, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the Cardinals Lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purpoſely for the time, made of green or Violet Cloth. To each Cardinal is allowed four Servants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unleſs they be ſick, ſtill to continue there; and ſuch as are once out, are no more permitted to go in, leſt by that means, the Cardinals ſhould maintain intelligence with any foreign Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four Locks, and as many Keys. One Key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Biſhops; one, of the *Roman* Nobility, and one, of the *Maſter of the Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at Dinners and Suppers, whereof the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* keepeth a Key. At this hole the Cardinals Servants receive their Meat; every diſh being firſt diligently ſearched, leſt any Letters ſhould be conveyed in them. As for the Lodgings, they have neither holes nor windows to give light; ſo that there they make day of Wax-Candles; And leſt the Pope ſhould be made by force, both the City and *Conlave* are ſtrongly guarded. When the *Cardinals* are going to Election, the Privileges of the *Cardinals* are recited, which every one ſweareth to obſerve, in caſe he be choſen Pope. Then the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Maſs: Which ended, there is brought to every *Cardinal* a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the *Cardinals* names. Before the Altar is ſet a Table covered with a Purple Cloth, whereupon is ſet a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it ſix Stools, on which ſit two Cardinal Biſhops, two Cardinal-Prieſts, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every *Cardinal* writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his Seat. The firſt Biſhop taketh out all the Papers, and delivereth them to the firſt *Deacon*; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elector*) the name of the Elected: and every *Cardinal* in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voices every one hath. The accompt being made, the *firſt Prieſt* having the like Scroll, pronounceth who hath moſt voices: Which done, the *Prieſt* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a Pan of Coals, and burneth all the little Papers, wherein the names of the *Elected* were written. He that hath the moſt voices (ſo that his voices exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the reſt of the *Cardinals*: but if they exceed not this number, they muſt begin all anew. If in the ſpace of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then muſt the *Cardinals* be kept from Fire, Light, and Victuals, till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which ſtands an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, beſtoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their ſins. Then ſtriketh he continually on the ſame door with a *Golden Mallet*; which whilſt he is doing, workmen without break it open. The Chips, Stones, Duſt, and Dirt which fall from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preſerved as choiceſt *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is uſually given to that Cardinal, who is in moſt grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election, but ſubject to much Faction and Diviſion among the Cardinals, and that in times of leſs deceit than the preſent are: Inſomuch as after the death of Pope *Clement* IV. the differences among them held for two years and more. Which gave occaſion to one of them to ſay in ſcorn, that *they muſt uncover the roof of the Houſe to make way for the* Holy Ghoſt *to come upon them.* And there is now much more corruption and abuſe in it, than ever formerly, as buying Voices, ſetting up ſome for ſtales and tearing Scrutinies, every Cardinal deſiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Prince's Faction. So that we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long abſence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that inceſſant Prayers, as in times of old, ſhould have procured ſome fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Chriſt*: That, finding nothing but canvaſſing, promiſing rewards, and threatning for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc modum* (ſaith he) *fiunt Pontifices Romani?* and ſo returned unto his Country, and ſaw *Rome no more.*

The ordinary *Temporal* Revenue of the Papacy ariſing out of Land-rents, Impoſts upon Commodities, and ſale of Offices, *Boterus* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spiritual*, to be far beyond. For it is ſaid of *Pius Quintus*, who ſate Pope ſix years only, that he got from the *Spaniſh* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great Builder, which ſpent him a great deal of money, yet he ſo managed his Eſtate, that he laid up four Millions of Crowns in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*. *Sixtus* V. took from the *Jeſuits* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent, (becauſe they were too rich for men profeſſing poverty:) and having ſat but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Succeſſors *Gregory* XIV. ſpent in leſs than a year. Out of *France* they received no leſs than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England*, when it was the Pope's *Puteus inexhauſtus*, they and their Followers extracted no leſs than 60000 Marks *per annum*, which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our preſent Money; and was more than the King's ſtanding Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of King *Henry* III. before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late days no longer than ſince the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. beſides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual Rent upon every Chimney in the Realm, firſt granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, *Anno* 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf*, the ſecond Monarch of *England*; beſides their firſt Fruits, Tenths, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in ſome few years then laſt paſt, the Popes had received out of *England* no leſs than 160000 *l.* Sterling for the confirmation of Epiſcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vaſt ſums they drew hence on all other occaſions. Let other Countries ſubject to the Pope's Authority be accordingly rated,

ted, and the total will amount to a ſum incredible. Next add to this the ſums of money they receive from particular perſons, for Pardons, for Diſpenſations with unlawful Marriages; the profits ariſing from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great Perſons,. from the Indulgences granted to Abbies and Convents, in all which the Popes have a ſhare; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to ſtate his *Intrado.* So truly was it ſaid by Pope *Sixtus* IV. that *a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a Pen in his hand.* Yet notwithſtanding, their Treaſury for the moſt part is but low and empty. For 1. the State they kept, becauſe of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for *the more worſhip the more coſt,* as the ſaying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards ſtanding them in no leſs than 30000 Crowns *per annum.* 2. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their *Legates, Nuntios,* and other Miniſters, keep their Coffers low; the entertainment of their ordinary *Nuntios* in the Courts of *Chriſtian* Princes, amounting to no leſs than 1200 Crowns a Month to each. And 3. their greedy deſire to enrich their Sons or Kinſmen with the Treaſures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus* V. being of poor and obſcure Birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto theſe the exceſſive gorgeouſneſs of the Papal Veſtments (in which vanity every one ſeeketh to excel the other) eſpecially that of their *Triple-Crown*, which muſt needs put them to great charge, and continual iſſues of their Treaſure. And for an evidence of this laſt, we find that *Clement* V. who firſt transferred his See to *Avignon,* to ſhew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine ſight) had his Crown thick ſet with *Carbuncles* and precious Stones; one of which being loſt by a fall from his Horſe, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impreſs as great a number of Land-Soldiers out of his Eſtate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italy. Paul* III. ſent to the aid of *Charles* V. in the Wars of *Germany,* 12000 Foot, and 500 Horſe, and yet raiſed his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma. Pius* V. ſent to the aid of *Charles* IX. againſt the *Hugonots,* 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe, which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara,* he raiſed out of his Eſtate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe in leſs than a Month; which was more than moſt Princes in *Europe* could poſſibly have done. And for the Valour of his Soldiers, and Ability of his Commanders, they retain ſo much (as before was ſaid) of their Anceſtors Virtues, that there are thought to be many Families in the Eſtate of the Church, able to furniſh all the Common-wealths and Princes of *Chriſtendom,* with ſufficient Captains. What and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be beſt ſeen out of the aid which he ſent to the *Venetians,* at the famous Battel of *Lepanto,* wherein he furniſhed them with no more than twelve Gallies; and thoſe too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick,* and the *Florentines* in the *Tuſcan* Seas, having all the Trade, and conſequently all the power in the Seas of *Italy.* It is true, the Pope was bound by the Capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the reſt of the Princes of *Italy* (who were to march under his colours) to ſet forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horſe: Which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakneſs at Sea.

Having a purpoſe in the proſecution of this Work, to mention ſuch particular Orders of Knighthood, as moſt Countries have given beginning to; I will here ſet down the Orders of ſuch *Popiſh Spiritual Knights* or *Friers,* which his holy Benediction hath erected, and fat allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the Original of a *Monaſtical Life*; and then we will make ſpecial mention of ſome of the *Romiſh* Votaries of both Sexes. Know then, that under the ſeventh Perſecution raiſed againſt the Church by *Decius,* one *Paulus,* born at *Thebes* in *Egypt,* retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, *Anno* 260. Here he is ſaid to have lived one hundred years, and to have been ſeen of no man but one *Anthony,* who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the firſt that followed the example of *Paulus,* a man of a noble Houſe, and one that ſold all his Eſtate, that he might the more privately enjoy himſelf. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the *Father of the Monks.* To theſe beginnings doth *Polidore Virgil* refer the Original of the *Monks,* and Religious Orders; the name *Monk* coming from the Greek Μόνος, becauſe of their lonely and ſolitary Lives. Thoſe of the Religious Orders are called *Fratres,* and in *Engliſh Friers,* from the *French* word *Frere,* which ſignifieth a Brother; and that either becauſe of their brotherly Co-habitation; or elſe becauſe they are *Fratres in malo,* Brethren in miſchief and deſign.

The foundation of *Monaſtical* life thus laid by *Paulus,* and *Antony*; the World increaſed ſo faſt in *Monks* and *Eremites,* that it ſeemed neceſſary to preſcribe them Orders. Hereupon St. *Baſil* gathered them together, living formerly diſperſed; and is ſaid to be the firſt that built them Monaſteries. He is alſo ſaid to have ordained the three Vows, of *Poverty, Chaſtity,* and *Obedience*; to have inſtructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the ſervice of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching Of this Order there are not many in the Latin Church, but good plenty of them in the Greek. They are bound to abſtain from all kind of Fleſh, and are called *Monks* of St. *Baſil,* by the name of that Father; amongſt the Writings of which Father, the Rules for theſe *Monaſticks* are ſet down at large.

II. The next who preſcribed Orders was S. *Auguſtine,* born in the year 350, who being thirty years of Age, is ſaid to have obtained a Garden without the Walls of *Hippo,* for private Contemplations. Twelve only he aſſumed into his Society, living with them in all Integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to diſtinguiſh them from *Monks.* Branched afterwards into two ſeveral and diſtinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canons Regular,* whoſe chief Houſe here in *England* was St. *John*'s near *Colcheſter*; the other called commonly *Auſtin Friers,* or the *Eremites* of St. *Auſtin,* as others call them; Of ſuch eſteem formerly in the Univerſity of *Oxford,* that all who took the Degree of a Maſter of Arts, were to ſubmit themſelves to their Oppoſitions in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Auguſtinenſibus reſponderit vel oppoſuerit,* ſtill retained among them. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood in *Broad-ſtreet,* of which a part of the Church ſtill ſtandeth, converted to a Church for the uſe of the *Dutch*; the reſt demoliſhed, and in the place thereof a ſtately Manſion erected by Sir *William Pawlet* the firſt Marqueſs of *Wincheſter,* and Lord Treaſurer of *England.* Theſe make the firſt Order of the *Friers Mendicants.* The firſt Monaſtery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William* Duke of *Guien, Anno* 1155. and *Anno* 1200. they began to flouriſh in *Italy,* by the favour of *John* Lord of *Mantua.* The other branches of this Tree, are 1. the *Monks* of St. *Hierom,* 2. the *Carmelites,* 3. the *Croychet Friers,* and 4. the *Dominicans.*

1. The *Monks* of St. *Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, ſo called. They flouriſh eſpecially in *Spain,* where there are thirty two Monaſteries of them; their chief Houſe being St. *Bartholomews* of *Lupiena*; and have taken unto themſelves the Rule of Saint *Auſtin.* Their Robe is a white Caſſock, under a tawny Cloak.

2. The *Carmelites,* ſo called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria,* pretend their Original from *Elias,* and *John* the *Baptiſt.* They only allowed at firſt the Rule of S. *Baſil*; and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the Third. They are by ſome called *Jacobines*; from a Church dedicated to St. *James,* where they had their firſt Convent;

vent; and by us, the *White Friers*, from the colour of their Habit. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood in *Fleetſtreet*, converted ſince into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, beſides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of St. *Auſtin*, by *Donna Ereſba* (or *Tereſa*) a *Spaniſh* Woman; who made them alſo certain Conſtitutions, confirmed by *Pius* IV. *Anno* 1565.

3. The *Friers* of St. *Croſs*, *Croſſed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were firſt ordained by *Cyriacus* Biſhop of *Jeruſalem*, who ſhewed to *Helena* the place where the Croſs was hidden; hence this Order, which being almoſt decayed, was reſtored firſt by *Urban* II. and afterwards by *Innocent* III. under the Rule of St. *Auſtin*. Their Robe is Watchet, and in their hands they carry the Figure of the Croſs. Their Houſe in *London* near the *Tower*, ſtill retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were inſtituted by S. *Dominick* a *Spaniard*. He put himſelf in this Order with ſixteen of his Diſciples, under the Rule of St. *Auſtin*, *Anno* 1206. and had his Device confirmed by *Honorius* the Third. Their duty is to preach the Goſpel in all places unto the fartheſt parts of the World; which both they did, and their Succeſſors ſince have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black-Friers*, from the Colour of their Habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood near *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct, which is ſtill called *Black-Friers*; though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

III. The third that preſcribed Orders was St. *Benedict*, born at *Nurſia*, in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*, *Anno* 472. He gathered the *Monks* of *Italy* together, gave them a Rule in Writing, cauſed them to be called *Benedictines*, or Monks of St. *Benedict*; and lived till he had ſeen twelve Monaſteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew ſo populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbiſhops, 4000 Biſhops, beſides ſome thouſands of Canonized Saints, which they uſe to brag of. Their Habit is a looſe Gown of black, reaching down to the ground with a Hood of the ſame; an under-garment of white woollen, and Boots on their Legs. The other principal ſtreams of this Fountain are, 1. the *Monks* of *Clugnie*, 2. of *Carthuſia*, 3. of *Ciſteaux*, 4. the *Celeſtines*.

1. The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are ſo called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the firſt that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, *Anno* 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperors, that all ſuch Abbies as would come under the compaſs of his Reformations (which were in all about two hundred) ſhould be called the *Congregation of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapters, and diſpatch their common buſineſſes, when and as often as they pleaſed.

2. The *Carthuſians* were firſt inſtituted by one *Bruno*, a *German* Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthuſia* in *Dauphin*, *Anno* 1080. His followers which were at the firſt but ſix, have at this day 93 Monaſteries. They eat no Fleſh, live by Couples, labour with their Hands, Watch, Pray, and never meet together but on Sundays. Their Houſe in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-Houſe*, (the *Monks* themſelves being corruptly called the *Charter-Houſe-Monks*) now better known by the name of *Sutton*'s *Hoſpital*; from the Hoſpital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3. The *Monks* of *Ciſteaux* were firſt inſtituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Moleſme*, *Anno* 1090, or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the moſt Religious of his Covent, retired to *Ciſteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Caſſock, girt with a girdle of wool, the reſt black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their Habits.

4. The *Celeſtines* owe their Original to *Peter de Moron* a *Samnite*, born *Anno* 1250, who being afterwards for his Sanctity choſen Pope, was called *Celeſtine* V. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* XI. There are at this preſent 124 Monaſteries of them.

IV. The fourth and laſt that preſcribed new Orders to the *Monaſticks*, was St. *Francis* of *Aſſis* in the Dutchy, of *Spoleta*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his firſt Profeſſion, unto the ſtudy of Religion, going bare-foot, and behaving himſelf very penitently: whereupon, great ſtore of Diſciples following him, he gave them a rule in Writing, by which they are bound to profeſs abſolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more Victuals than will for the preſent ſerve themſelves and their Brethren. This they obſerve punctually in their own Perſons, but give themſelves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without ſcruple. St. *Francis* deſired they ſhould be called *Minors*, to ſhew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciſcans*, by the name of their Founder. By the *French*, called *Cordeliers*, becauſe of the knotty Cord which they wear about them inſtead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray-Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloyſters, and ſome other the publick Offices, do ſtill ſtand entire; the whole converted to an Hoſpital for poor Children by King *Edward* VI. in the latter end of his Reign, now beſt known by the name of *Chriſt-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent* III. *Anno* 1212, and is the fourth and laſt of the *Friers Mendicants*, or *begging Friers*. The other principal Children of this Father, are 1. the *Minims*; and 2. the *Capuchins*.

1. The *Friers Minims*, were firſt founded by *Franciſcus de Pola*, a *Neopolitan*, *Anno* 1450, according to a correct copy of the Rule of St. *Francis* of *Aſſis*. His followers keep always a true Lenten Faſt, unleſs in caſe of Sickneſs. The Robe is a dark tawny, an Hood of the ſame hanging to their Girdles.

2. The *Capuchins*, (ſo called from their Cowl or *Capouch*) were ordained by one *Matthew Baſci* of *Ancona*; Frier *Lewis* his Companion obtained for them of the Pope, the Habit and Rule of S. *Francis*, *Anno* 1526. In the ſpace of 42 years they increaſed to 2240 Aſſociates, had 222 Monaſteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to ſpend their time in prayer, and are generally thought to be the devouteſt of all the Orders *Monaſtical*.

I ſhall now ſpeak of the *Jeſuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any Rule, as being a people neither ſimply *Lay* nor *Prieſts*, nor meerly *ſecular* nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the Wars, was lamed in one of his Legs: After which maim betaking himſelf to the ſtudy of Religion, he framed this Order, conſiſting at the firſt of Ten only. *Paul* III. did confirm it, *Anno* 1548, confining the number within ſixty, which he after enlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greateſt Politicians, ſoundeſt Scholars, and chiefeſt Upholders of the *Romiſh* See: So that the only way to Re-eſtabliſh the *Romiſh* Religion in any Land, is to plant a Colledge of *Jeſuites* in it. To the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chaſtity*, common to all other Orders, *Ignatius* at the Inſtitution of this, added the Vow of *Miſſion*: whereby his Followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reaſon, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatſoever, whether it be undertaking ſome tedious Voyage, for the propagation of the *Romiſh* Religion, or the Maſſacring of any Prince whoſe Life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jeſuit* being in the midſt of his Maſs, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was ſent by *Ignatius*; to whom, leaving off his Maſs, he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no buſineſs wherein to imploy him, told him, he only ſent for him to try his Obedience; and withal profanely added, that *Obedience is better than Sacrifice*: and this is called the blind Obedience of the *Jeſuits*. To leave them then as they are, the greateſt Diſturbers of the quiet of *Europe*; I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, ſay many times, that till the *Jeſuits* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peeviſh *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in *Chriſtendom*; with what a true preſaging Spirit, the Event hath ſhewed.

Corrivals with the *Jeſuits* in Power and Learning, and almoſt coætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, *Anno* 1564. Who marking the great ſway which the *Jeſuits* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally ballanced by ſome other of as much Ability, firſt eſtabliſhed this, conſiſting altogether of Prieſts; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral Duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples Affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cæſar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Biſhop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three firſt whom he admitted to his Rule, initiated in St. *Hierom*'s Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius* IV. with great zeal and chearfulneſs; to whom, as to ſome of his Predeceſſors, the power and practices of the *Jeſuits* were become ſuſpicious. They increaſed ſpeedily (being countenanced on ſo good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue, as much eſteemed of for their knowledge in *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, and *Practical Divinity*, as the others for Philoſophy, Tongues, and the ſtudy of Controverſies; and more accepted of in moſt places, becauſe not uſually intermedling in Affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jeſuits* could not obtain the *Canonization* of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* alſo: which hapned in the ſhort Popedom of *Gregory* XV. *Anno* 1622.

To conclude this Diſcourſe of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will ſay ſomewhat of their ſevereſt kind of *Recluſe*, which is the *Anachoret*, or *Anchoret*, ſo called from ἀναχωρέω, becauſe they uſe to live retired from Company. They are kept in a cloſe place, where they muſt dig their Graves with their Nails; badly clad, and worſe dieted; not to be pitied for all that, becauſe their reſtraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be ſorrowed for in this, that after ſuch an earthly *Purgatory*, they ſhall find inſtead of an *Euge*, *bone ſerve*, a *Quis quæſivit hæc de manibus veſtris?*

But concerning theſe Orders of *Monks* and *Friers*, certain it is, that at their firſt inſtitution they were a People much reverenced for their holy life; as men that for Chriſts ſake had abandoned all their Pomps and Vanities of the World. And queſtionleſs they were then a people altogether mortified, and who by their very Aſpects, would gain upon the Affection of the hardeſt Heart; inſomuch that not only mean men, but greater perſonages alſo did deſire to be buried in a *Frier*'s weeds; as *Francis* the Second Marqueſs of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italy*; *Iſabel* the renowned Queen of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, Wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholick; and in late times the great Scholar *Chriſtopher Longolius*. But as *Florus* ſaith of the Civil Wars between *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus Belli, eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*, we may ſay alſo of theſe *Friers*: The greatneſs of their wealth, which many on a ſuperſtitious Devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them firſt to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchleſneſs of their credits, and conſequently into contempt: So that there was not a people under Heaven that was more infamous in themſelves, or more ſcornfully abuſed by others. Hence the vulgar ſayings of the People, that *Friers wear Croſſes on their Breaſts; becauſe they have none in their Hearts*; and that, *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*; and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas Moor*, who loſt his Head in the Pope's quarrel, ſticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errones Maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and ſturdy Beggars. Now to ſhew both the humours of Reſpect and Contempt, uſed ſeverally to theſe *Monks* and *Friers*, as men ſtood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir *Thomas* his Wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle, ſhewed it to her Husband with great joy, ſaying, *Behold* Sir *Thomas, a ſtep towards Heaven*: Whereunto with a ſcornful laugh he returneth this anſwer, that *he feared that ſtep would not bring her a ſtep higher*. And as for their retiredneſs and ſolitary courſe of Life, ſo it is that many Kings, eſpecially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchy*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Berclay* in his *Argenis*, under the perſon of *Aneroeſtus*, hath defended it in ſuch Princes, as have Cloiſtered themſelves to enjoy the ſolitude of a Convent. Which notwithſtanding, Philoſophers have defined a man to be ζῶον πολιτικὸν, a Creature principally made for civil Converſation; the Poets ſay, *Naſcitur indignè per quem non naſcitur alter*, that he dieth indebted to the World, who leaveth no Poſterity behind him: And the *Jews*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it ſelf, abhor this unſociable kind of living, and prefer a civil ſociableneſs much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and conſequently to God more acceptable. And having ſpoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, deſcend we now unto the *Nuns*.

And indeed I ſhould much wrong the *Friers*, if I ſhould deprive them of the company of their deareſt *Votaries*, and therefore take ſomewhat of them alſo. Called anciently *Moniales* from the *Greek* word Μόνος, from their living alone; whence we alſo had the names of *Monks* and *Monaſteries*, in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Egyptian* word, (for *Egypt* in old times was not meanly furniſhed with ſuch *Eremites*) which alſo ſignifieth a ſolitary and lonely life. A word in ſome of the barbarous *Latines* very much in uſe. *Scholaſtica* the Siſter of St. *Benedict*, was the firſt who collected them into Companies, and preſcribed them Rules. They are ſhaved as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetual Poverty and Virginity. Which laſt how well they keep, let *Clemangis* teſtifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam* velare *idem eſt hac publice eam ad* ſcortandum *exponere*, to veil a *Nun*, and proſtitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinſon*, who lived for a time in the *Engliſh* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us, that he found a hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many new-born children, which their unnatural Mothers had murthered and thrown in there. But of theſe I will inſtance only in two Orders, *viz.* that of St. *Clare*, as being the ſtricteſt; and that of St. *Briget* which enjoyeth moſt liberty.

1. St. *Clare* was a Knight's Daughter of *Aſſis*, where St. *Francis* was born, with whom ſhe was contemporary, and with whoſe auſtere life ſhe was ſo affected, that ſhe forſook her Fathers Houſe, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirrie* of that *Frier-monger*, ſhe deviſed an Order of Religious Women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius* III. *Anno* 1225. Her followers vow *Poverty* and *Virginity*, as before was ſaid, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more ſtraitned in their courſe of life, than thoſe of any other Order. By their Foundreſs, out of a deſire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of St. *Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Mi-*

nores, and gave name to the place near the *Tower-hill* in *London*, where they had their Houſe, called from them the *Minories*.

2. St. *Briget* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban* III. *Anno* 1370. or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in ſome places live together. For being a Woman, and a Widow, ſhe knew beſt (as it ſeemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and ſo deviſed ſuch a Rule, as contented both. But little needed this co-habitation or living together under the ſhelter of the ſame Roof. For they had formerly been joyned in carnal Affections, though parted by Walls; neither were the *Viſitations* of the *Friers* ſo fruitleſs, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. Theſe *Friars* and *Nuns*, though they live under the ſame Roof, are prohibited from coming to one another but on ſpecial occaſions: The *Foundreſs* ſo ordering it, that the *Nuns* ſhould lie in the upper Rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confeſſor* alſo is denied acceſs into their Chambers, but ſhriveth them through an *Iron-Gate*, by which his Lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbeſſe*'s. And herein lieth the *Myſtery of Iniquity*. For *Robinſon*, whom before I named, tells us, that at the time of his ſervice in the *Engliſh Nunnery* at *Liſbon*, he was ſhewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which ſeemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *Female friends*, might be, and was on ſuch occaſions, uſually removed, and the acceſs made free and open to each others Beds. Which if it be truly ſaid of theſe, may be ſuſpected alſo in all the reſt of this Order, and in moſt alſo of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which beſides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their preſent Subſiſtence, are kept in a continual hope and poſſibility of attaining to the higheſt honours which that Church can give, if they continue conſtant in their due Obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2. *Provincial* of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3. and then the General of this Order. Next none more likely than the Generals to be choſen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of neceſſity muſt be choſen (and why not he, as well as any of the Pack?) to be Pope of *Rome*. So firſt and ſweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the laſt thing that leaves him, it makes all toyl ſupportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Archbiſhops 44. Biſhops 57.

The Seigneury of VENICE.

NOrth of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alps*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*, bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romandiola*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedom of *Millain*; on the North, with the main Body of the *Alpes*; and on the Eaſt, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arſia*, by which laſt parted from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province. Theſe *Italian* Provinces extend from Eaſt to Weſt 240 Miles, from N. to S. 100 Miles. Beſides which, it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Iſland of *Candy*, *Corfu*, *Cephalenia*, *Ithaca*, *Zant*, *Cithera*, and certain others of leſs note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thouſand Miles, but the breadth not anſwerable

The nature of the Soil, and the principal Rivers which refreſh it, we ſhall ſee anon in the deſcription of the Provinces into which it is divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may beſt be taken: it being ſaid Proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themſelves are ſtately, crafty, and greedy; the *Veronians* ſtudious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincentians* eager on Revenge; thoſe of *Friuli*, grateful, but inconſtant; thoſe of *Hiſtria*, neither long livers, nor of very great Courage. That in the Conduct of a War, thoſe of *Venice* bring Silver; thoſe of *Treviſo*, Swords; that the *Breſcians* are fit to dig in Trenches; thoſe of *Bergomo* to lay Ambuſhes; thoſe of *Padua* to manage Horſes. And of the Women it is ſaid, that thoſe of *Crema* are deceitful, thoſe of *Venice* inſolent, thoſe of *Vincentia* conſtant; thoſe of *Verona* gracious; thoſe of *Treviſo* jealous, thoſe of *Breſcia* diligent, and the *Bergomaſque* crafty.

But not to dally longer in theſe proverbial Characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is, that the *Venetians* themſelves do affect a great deal of Gravity in their Actions, ſpeak very little at the Table, very ſevere where they have Authority, and many times in the exceſs. And yet ſuch is the conſtant temper of their Government, and their Impartiality in doing Juſtice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their Subjects (notwithſtanding the heavy preſſures which are laid upon them) as well in *Italy* as without. Eſteemed in former times good Soldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining Wars continually with the *Turks* in *Paleſtine*; the Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, in *Greece* it ſelf, the *Genoeſe* by Sea, and their Neighbours of *Italy* in this Continent. But of late times they have more ſtudied to preſerve, than inlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of money, than the loſs of blood, and by Wit rather than by Valour. So fortunate in this laſt kind of practice, that *Machiavel* obſerved of them in his time, that *whatſoever they loſt by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we ſhall ſee anon.

To proceed now to the deſcription of ſuch of the Provinces and Eſtates of this Common-wealth, as paſs under the accompt of *Italy*, they are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, 1. *Marca Trevigiana*, 2. *Friuli*, 3. *Hiſtria*, 4. the *Italian* Iſles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Eſtate to be conſidered in their proper places.

1. *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South with the River *Atheſis*, and the moſt Northern branch of the *Po*, which from ſome Limekilns near adjoyning, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara* and the reſt of *Romagna*; on the Weſt, with the Rivers *Mineius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda*, from a little Town of that name adjoyning) by which parted from the Dutchy of *Millain*; on the Eaſt, with *Friuli*, and the *Golf* of *Venice*; and on the North with the *Alps* which divide it from *Tirelis*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Auguſtus Cæſar*, this Tract together with *Friuli*, the next Neighbouring Province, had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants thereof; and by that name made one of thoſe eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italy*. How it obtained this new Name we ſhall ſee anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1. *Brenta*, called anciently *Meduacus Major*, which riſing in the *Alps* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, paſſeth into the Sea, near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2. *Bachilio* called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riſeth alſo in the *Alpes*; and paſſing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Brenta*. And 3. *Atheſis*, now called *Adige*, which ſpringeth alſo out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many leſſer ſtreams into its Chanel, paſſeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great Branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loſeth it ſelf in the midſt of the Mariſhes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Vincentia*, now call'd *Vicenza*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians* on this ſide of the *Apennine*; pleaſantly ſeated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all ſtore of fruits, and yielding an excellent kind of Wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The Buildings of it for the moſt part of poliſhed Stone, whereof the Fields adjoyning afford ſpecial Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an induſtrious People, making a great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themſelves, and ſupply their Neighbours. It has alſo at this day more of its old Liberty, than any Town under the States of *Venice*, which appears in the Riches of their Palaces and Churches, many of which are new built. It has alſo a Modern Theater, built in imitation of the Ancient *Roman* Theaters, as Dr. *Burnet* acquaints us, who ſaw this Place. Dr. *Brown* agrees with him as to the Theater, and the beauty of its Buildings; Adding, that the Biſhoprick is valued at 12000 Ducats a. year. By reaſon of divers Hills very near, it can never be made ſtrong, or able to make any ſignificant Reſiſtance, on which account it has been forced to change Maſters as often as it has been Atack'd, and at laſt voluntarily Surrendered it ſelf to the *Venetians*, in the year 1404. *Shoars* in his *Itineray*, is of Opinion, that if a Mountain that lies near it were taken within the Walls, it would be as ſtrong as any Town in *Italy*, which belongs to the *Venetians*; he ſaith it is four Miles in Compaſs with its Suburbs; That it is double Wall'd, has 8 Gates, and 7 Bridges, and about 30000 Inhabitants. This City was taken by *Maximilian* I. in the year 1509. and reſtored to the *Venetians* by a Treaty in 1516. 2. *Treviſo*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, abounding even to Admiration, with moſt excellent Wheat, and all other Neceſſaries. A City of no ancient Name, not mentioned by *Ptolomy*, nor others of the old *Geographers*; but of ſufficient note in the latter times, for being the Reſidence or Seat of thoſe Provincial Governours (*Marqueſſes* they are ſometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings ſent hither to defend their Borders. Hence it gave name to all the Country, in *Latin* called *Marca Treviſtana*, or *Tarviſana*, as ſome call it, taken by the *Venetians*, and loſt again divers times; but was finally conquered *Anno* 1384. or thereabouts, *Antonia Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. It is an handſom City, adorn'd with good Houſes, Churches, Towns and Fountains, and abundantly furniſhed with good Wines and Fruits. Dr. *Brown*. 3. *Padua*, formerly called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whoſe Tomb is ſtill here to be ſhown. From him named *Antenoria*, as ſome report, but after called *Pataviam* quaſi *Padavium*, from its nearneſs to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in ſo delectable and ſweet a Soyl, that *Conſtantius Palæologus* was uſed to ſay, that did not the Authority of the Scriptures perſwade him otherwiſe, he ſhould look for *Paradiſe* no where elſe, than in *Perſuavi* Pativina *amænitate*, amongſt the flouriſhing and delightful ſweetneſſes of the *Paduan* field. A Town of great eſteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much reſorted to the ſame, and much frequented at the preſent for the Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *Anno* 1220. famous for Phyſitians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; of good name alſo for the birth of *Livy* the Hiſtorian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Contemporary, *L. Aruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the latter times of *Marſilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Frier, who wrote ſo Learnedly in behalf of the Emperor, againſt the Pope, *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanarola* the Phyſitian, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the Humanity of Men, and Chaſtity of the Women; which laſt ſo eminent and famous, that as *chaſte as one of Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, ſpeaking of his Laſcivious Writings;

Tu quoq; nequitias noſtri luſuſq; libelli,
Uda puella leges, ſis Patavina *licet.*

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to ſee,
And read them o're, though *Patavines* they be.

The City after much Viciſſitude of Fortune fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compaſs one hundred and eighty Miles, *An.* 1400. *Michael Steno* then Duke; *Vicenza* being won about the ſame time alſo. The *Venetians* in memory of the ſtout Reſiſtance this City made, have ever govern'd it with more than ordinary ſtrictneſs; ſo that it has the leaſt Liberty of any City under the State; the quarrels of the Scholars have alſo ruin'd the Univerſity; the Nobility are almoſt quite extinguiſhed by their own faults, and all theſe Calamities have made it extreamly poor and unfrequented, though it is eight Miles in Compaſs, and ſhews many noble Palaces, the Monuments of its ancient Wealth and Splendor. The outward Wall is very ſtrong (ſaith Dr. *Brown*) being well fortified according to the modern Rules of Fortification in the time of *Leonardo Loredaro*, Duke of *Venice*; The Revenues of its Church are thought to be 100000 Crowns the year. This City has alſo the moſt perfect ancient *Arena* of a Theater, that is any where Extant. 4. *Breſcia*, the ſecond City for Bigneſs and Beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is alſo the Seat of an Archbiſhop, who is an Earl, a Marqueſs, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty Miles; which the Citizens, together with their Freedom, bought of *Otho* the *German* Emperor, but loſt it to *Philip Maria Viſconti*, Duke of *Milain*, *Anno* 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain Conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themſelves unto the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, *Anno* 1434. *Francis Foſcari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the Air ſound and good, the Soil exceeding plentiful of Corn, Wine and Fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuſcans* hence, and ſeated themſelves in their Habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is ſituate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is ſaid to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5. *Verona*, ſo called (as ſome conceit it) *quaſi vere una*; or as others, *quaſi Brenonia*, becauſe built by *Brennus*; both falſe and frivolous alike. It is ſituate on the Banks of the River *Atheſis*, and is counted the firſt City of the ſecond Rank of the Cities of *Italy*; proud in the Birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet; and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatneſs) able to contain 80000 Perſons. The Territories hereof are ſixty five Miles in length, forty Miles in breadth, enriched with many *medicinal* Herbs, (eſpecially on Mount *Baldus*, an Hill therein) where the Phyſitians go a Simpling. Dr. *Brown* in his Travels has given a very large account of the Hiſtory and Situation of the City of *Verona*, and eſpecially of its *Amphitheater*, the Repreſentation of which he has given us. He ſaith, the City is a Round, of about ſix Miles in Compaſs, ſtrengthened by the *Venetians* with Baſtions, and having three Forts or Caſtles, and four Bridges over the *Adige*; yet after all, the Town is very poor and had little Trade or Money ſtirring, as another Traveller aſſures us. 6. *Bebriacum*, or *Bedriacum*, as ſome Writers call it, two days march from *Verona*, now a ſmall Borough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the beſt. Remarkable in the *Roman* Stories for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho*'s Army; and after by *Veſpaſian*'s Forces unto thoſe of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus* Romanis *cladibus notus & infauſtus Vicus*. 7. *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but ſituate in a wealthy Soil, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: ſo ſtrongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeury of *Venice* againſt the *Millaneſe*, on the borders of which State it ſtandeth; yet at this day a ſmall, poor, ill peopled Place, as Dr. *Burnet* ſaith. Firſt built about the year 970. by ſome remnants of the

Anthropomorphites, who on the deſtruction of *Parnaſſus* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their Hereſie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in ſucceeding times with a See Epiſcopal; and either the Birth-place, or preferment of *John Cremenſis*, a *Roman* Cardinal, who being by Pope *Honorius* ſent into *England*, *Anno* 1225, to diſſwade the Clergy-men from Marriage, and having in a Convocation of the Clergy, called for that purpoſe, highly advanced the honour of a ſingle life, and ſhewed the inconvenience and unfitneſs of Marriage, in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*; was the night following (to the great diſcredit both of his Cauſe and Perſon) taken in Adultery. 8. *Bergomo*, or *Bergamo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, ſeated upon the ſide of an Hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the ſpurs and excurſions of the *Alps*; but withal many rich and delightful Vallies intermingled with them. The people of this City and Country are ſaid to ſpeak the coarſeſt Language of any in *Italy*, but to have as fine Wits as the beſt. Places of more inferiour note are, 1. *Eſte*, (*Ateſte* in moſt Latine Writers) whence came the Family *D'eſte*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2. *Liniacum*, a ſtrong Garriſon on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3. *Caſtel-Franco* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4. *Seraval*, of moſt remarkableneſs for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5. *Feltry*, which ſtill preſerves its old name of *Feltria*; moſt memorable at the preſent for a See Epiſcopal. 6. *Altina*, a Biſhops See alſo, but deſtroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Ciſalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War; and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till firſt the *Goths*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Maſters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, it fell firſt unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances, it came at laſt to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*, who bought the ſame of *Ulricus* the laſt Duke of *Carinthia*: Whoſe Predeceſſor probably had been ſeized hereof, from the time that *Henry* Son of *Engelbert*, Præfect of *Hiſtria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epperſtein* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, ſucceded him in that Eſtate. Upon a Reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg* (then Emperor of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Auſtria* it ſelf) unto the Patrimony of that Family, ſold by Duke *Leopold* IX. to the *Carara's*, then Lords of *Padua*; in ruine of whoſe Eſtate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who ſtill hold the ſame.

2. *FRIULI* hath on the Eaſt the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Hiſtria* and *Carniola*; on the Weſt, *Marca Treviſana*, and a branch of the *Alpes* dividing it from *Tyroll*; on the North the main Body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, two Provinces of *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is divided) from *Julius Cæſar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town ſo named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoyning, as it is thought, had the name of *Juliæ*. By ſome Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegienſis*, as appertaining for the moſt part, by the gift of the Emperors *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the moſt part, *Patria*, or the Country, becauſe from theſe parts they derive their firſt Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was ſaid.

The Country is in a manner ſquare, each ſide fifty Miles; watered with the Rivers of 1. *Hydra*, heretofore of no ſmall fame for the Silver Mines; 2. *Tiliaventum*, riſing from the *Alpes*, and Navigable towards the latter end of its courſe, but broken into many Chanels (ſeven at leaſt in number) which makes it not ſo Navigable as it would be otherwiſe; moſt of theſe Chanels being ſhallow, and eaſily forded, but ſwift and violent withal, by reaſon of their fall from the neighbouring Hills. 3. *Natiſco*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4. *Timavus*, mentioned in the firſt of the *Æneids*, which riſing out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the ſpace of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Chanels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieſte*. By *Niger* it is now called *Lareina*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soil ſufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yielding a very pleaſant Wine, which *Pliny* did prefer before any in *Italy*.

Towns herein of moſt note and conſequence, 1. *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as ſome call it, made the Metropolis firſt of the Province of *Hiſtria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperor *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Dioceſs of *Italy*, by the Weſterm Emperors. Honoured in that regard with the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant; tranſlated from *Millain* to this City, as the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never ſo like to be ſhut out, as by the power and preſence of ſo great an Officer. After this time, and on this occaſion, the Biſhop hereof had the Title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued, when the City was deſtroyed by *Attila*, that furious *Hun*, 37000. of the Citizens being ſlain with the Sword, the reſt removing to ſome places of more ſafe Abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Narſes*, but never able to recover its former Luſtre. Afrer which time fearing the like miſeries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice*, as the ſafer place, and ſetled in the Iſle of *Grada*; yet ſo, that the ſucceeding Biſhops of *Aquileia* (for they ſtayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do ſtill retain the Dignity and Name of *Patriarchs*, as well as thoſe of *Grada* do, and with better reaſon. For beſides the honour which it had in being made the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the reſidence of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a *ſecond Rome*; and of *Tiberius* who lived here with *Julia* the Daughter of the ſaid *Auguſtus*, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſituate on the River *Natiſco*, but not well inhabited at the preſent; partly becauſe of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reaſons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great Reſort of Biſhops, and others of the Clergy of his Juriſdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it ſelf. Moſt memorable in old Hiſtory for enduring that famous Siege againſt *Maximinus*, for the ſafety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperors *Maximus* and *Balbinus*. In woſe cauſe the Citizens hereof were ſo reſolutely faithful, that they bereaved the Women (willing to loſe that invaluable Ornament of their Sex, for the common good) of the hair of their Heads to make Bowſtrings withal. Nor did this pious conſtancy of theirs want an happy iſſue; for they beheld the Tyrant headleſs under their Walls (ſlain by the hands of his own Soldiers) and ſaw the Metropolis of the World preſerved by their Loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant, the Soldiers and People laying hands on his Children alſo, and putting all to the Sword. Of which cruelty being asked the reaſon, they returned this anſwer, *That not a Whelp was to be ſpared of ſo ill a Litter*; none of the brood of ſuch a Cur; or in the Language of the Author, *Peſſimi Canis Catulus non eſt relinquendus*. 2. *Trieſte*, of old called *Tergeſtum*, from whence a ſpacious Bay adjoyning had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergeſtinus*, and is now called *Golfo de Trieſte*. The Bay repleniſhed principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many Streams doth fall into it, and is therefore by the Inhabitants of that

Gulf or Bay, called *Fons Maris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater Antiquity than Obſervation, mentioned by *Pliny*, and ſome others of the ancient Writers, but not elſe conſiderable. 3. *Montfalcon*, famous for its medicinal Herbs. 4. *Porto Gruare*, of old called *Portus Romatinus*, an Haven-Town, as the Name importeth. 5. *Concordia*, in former times of no ſmall eſteem; but ſo demoliſhed by *Attila* the *Hun*, that it is now nothing but a Ruine. The people hereof betaking themſelves to the Iſlands in the Mariſhes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Tourcellan*, *Muriano*, *Conſtantiaca*, and ſome others were adjoyning to them, of which more hereafter. 6. *Utina*, or *Uden*, the faireſt and largeſt at this time of all the Province, containing about five Miles in compaſs, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at ſome Siege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is ſtill the ordinary Seat of the *Procurator* or Principal Governour, ſent from *Venice* hither. 7. *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer ſince than the year 1593. but held to be the beſt fortified of any in *Italy*. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown* who ſaw this Place, ſaith it is the largeſt regular Fortification he ever ſaw. It hath nine Baſtions, bearing the Names of ſo many Noble *Venetians*, which have little to be excepted againſt but their round ears; on each Curtain there are two Cavalliers, and the Rampart is much higher than the Wall, upon which there are planted 100 good Guns, and many more are in readineſs upon all occaſions. The Ditch is thirty Paces broad, and twelve deep, always kept dry to make the Town more healthful; but may be fill'd upon occaſion like that of *Vienna*. In the center of the Town is fix'd a Standard over a Triple Wall, from which the three Gates and ſix Streets may all be ſeen, and in the middle of the Bridge is a Drawbridge made with ſuch Artifice, that the Sentinel may by only touching an iron with his Foot, upon the diſcovery of any Danger, draw up the Bridge. And they were then making a Half-Moon before every Gate for its further ſecurity. And they had before made a Cut from the Sea to the Town capable of good Veſſels, and broad and deep enough to bring in Proviſions and Supplies. 8. *Cividad de Auſtria*, firſt built by *Julius Cæſar*, in ſome of his Marches towards *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Diſtrictus Foro-Julienſis*, as the *Latines* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by ſome Princes of the *Auſtrian* Family (on the borders of whoſe Eſtate it ſtandeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Auſtria*.

This Province anciently was the Seat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this Tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But thoſe being vanquiſhed by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, it became finally ſubject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italy*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. the Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of ſpecial fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italy*. But this Family being ſuppreſſed by the Emperor *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Country to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almoſt all the reſt was added by the Emperor *Conrade*; yet ſo that there were divers petit Lords, who had got Eſtates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto ſome of the ancient Race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increaſe of Dominion, made War againſt them: which ended in the loſs of his Country, *Anno* 1020, or thereabouts; ever ſince ſubject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquilaia* (whoſe Authority in this Country began to decline, in the riſing of the State of *Venice*) ſurrendring all his intereſt alſo to that powerful *Signeury* as better able to defend it againſt all Pretenders, *Anno* 1420. But notwithſtanding this ſurrendry, the Patriarch hath ſtill large Poſſeſſions and Revenues here, and ſtill retains his Juriſdiction over the Prelates of this Country, and thoſe of *Hiſtria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) ſix only which are thoſe of the Iſles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is invironed on the East, Weſt, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, ſave where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North is parted from *Carinthia*, with the *Alps* of *Germany*. The Country very wooddy, and full of Quarries, affording Materials to *Venice*, both for Ships and Houſes; not comparable for fertility to the reſt of *Italy*; and of Air ſo ſickly and unwholſom, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large Immunities. It is two hundred Miles in compaſs, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Formio*, which they now call *Riſano*; 2. *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3. *Arſia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Country from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Cape de Iſtria*, called in *Pliny*'s time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Juſtin*, was called *Juſtinopolis*. But being taken and deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe*, and rebuilt again, it took the name of *Caput Hiſtriæ*, or *Cape d' Iſtria*; becauſe the principal of the Province and Biſhops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Biſhop, about the time of *Luther*'s firſt preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Archbiſhop of *Spalato*, were of moſt note of any of theſe parts of the World, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the *Proteſtant* party, and therefore ſhall be ſpoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great induſtry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany* againſt *Luther*. In which Negotiation he behaved himſelf with ſuch Dexterity, and gave ſuch content unto the Pope, that *Paul* 3. *An.* 1541. intended to have made him *Cardinal*; had not ſome who envyed him that honour, accuſed him of *Lutheraniſm*. To purge himſelf he began to write a Book, entituled, *Againſt the Apoſtata's of Germany*, in the purſuit whereof, pondering of *Luther's* Reaſons he became of his Opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Juſtinople*. He ſubmitted himſelf and his Cauſe to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the *D.* of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no where finding protection, he retired unto the *Griſons*, and there preached, till *Chriſtopher* Duke of *Wittenberg* *Anno* 1548, placed him in his Uuiverſity of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a ſufficiency of Maintenance. It was built by *Juſtinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Juſtinian*, the Emperour, as a Fortreſs againſt the incurſions of the barbarous People. 2. *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their firſt coming thither, the Name in their Language importing as much as the place of Baniſhment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*: but being firſt deſtroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoeſe*, it recovered the old Name again; and ſtill continueth with the Title of a See Epiſcopal. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Gulf of *Quevero*. It is now a ſtrong, but ſmall place, having not above ſeven or eight hundred Inhabitants, as Mr. *Wheeler* tells us, who ſaw it. 3. *Parenza*. 4. *Plium*. 5. *Cita Nova*, all of them ſeated in the Midland, and not much obſervable, but that *Parenza*, and *Cita Nova* are Epiſcopal Sees: This laſt being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Biſhop hath the Name of *Emonienſis*. 6. *Rovigno*, in a little Iſland, and mounted on a high Hill, not unfruitful in Olives, beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended alſo by a very ſtrong Caſtle. The Town but poor, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which diſtant not above twenty Miles; inhabited for the moſt part by Mariners and skilful Pilots, hired by ſuch Ships as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them ſafely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The Country adjoining mountainous and ſomewhat wild; but thoſe Mountains covered on the outſide with Phyſical Simples; and yielding many Quarries of moſt excellent Marble, which ſo adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

It is recorded that the *Hiſtrians* were a People of *Colchis*, who being ſent by King *Æeta* to purſue *Jaſon* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the King's Anger, or not daring to venture their weak Veſſel to ſo long a Voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came, ſtayed in this Country. It was after that time called *Japigia*, from *Japis* an *Ætolian*, who firſt planted here, and took the name of *Iſtria* from the *Iſtri*, a People on the Banks of *Iſter*, or *Danubius*; who made up a conſiderable part of this Plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, and making many Inroads and Excurſions on them; they were invaded firſt by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with ſuch a Fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all ſtore of Proviſions, they fell roundly to it, till *Manlius* having rallied his Men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place, their miſerable King being ſo hotly purſued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himſelf for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno U. C.* 575. *Cl. Pulcher*, the next Conſul perfected the Conqueſt. *Sempronius* long time after that, *ſc. An. U. C.* 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who joining it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and laſt Region of *Italy*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilſt that Empire ſtood, and after the decay thereof regained their Liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy moleſting the *Venetians*, they loſt many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *An.* 938. and the whole Country was made Tributary, by the Valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo*, about the Year 1390. After which, many times rebelling, they were ſtill re-conquered.

4. The fourth Member of this Eſtate, with reſpect to *Italy*, are ſome *ISLANDS* in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 Miles, in breadth 140 Miles, in ſome places leſs; ſo called of *Adria* once a famous Haven Town (as before was ſaid) at the mouth of *Eredanus* or *Po*: Concerning which we are to know, that though this Gulf or Bay of the *Adriatick* extended no farther than the Eaſtern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea, was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-weſtward till it meeteth with the *Tuſcan* Seas; and Southward till it come to the Coaſt of *Africk*, inſomuch as *Mare Libycum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Oroſius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For ſpeaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and eſpecially ſo called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*, as he doth the Iſle of *Creet*, on the South-ſide of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *quod &* Adriaticum *vocant*, which they alſo call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are: The like might alſo be made evident out of other Authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here becauſe *Paul*'s being toſſed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is ſaid, *Acts* 27. 27. and being after caſt on Shore in the Iſle of *Melita*, occaſioned ſome to think this *Melite* or *Malta* to be that Iſland of *Dalmatia*, which is now called *Melida*, being ſeated in the Bay or Gulf of *Adria*, whereas the Text ſpeaks plainly of that Iſle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furtheſt parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Coaſts of *Africk*. But to return to this Gulf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempeſtuous and unſafe, as appeareth by *improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*; the *Minax Adriaticum* in *Catullus*; and in the *Ventoſi tumor Adriæ*, in *Seneca*'s *Thyeſtes*. But when the Empreſs *Helena* had found the Croſs on which *CHRIST* ſuffered, ſhe cauſed one of the three Nails with which his Body was faſtned to it, to be thrown of purpoſe into this Sea; ſince which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the Life of Pope *Sylveſter* (and cites St *Ambroſe* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the ſecond Nail being made into a Bridle for her Son *Conſtantine*'s Horſe, and a Creſt for his Helmet of the third. But not to truſt too much to the truth of this Miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it by reaſon of their Naval Power: and that it is every Year eſpouſed to the Duke of *Venice*, by the ſolemn caſting in of a Wedding Ring; and every Year baptized on *Epiphany*-Day, by the Biſhop of *Zant*. When this laſt Ceremony took beginning I am yet to ſeek. But for the firſt, which is performed with a great deal of State, every *Holy Thurſday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos*, being rowed in the *Bucentaure* (which is a rich and ſtately Galley made for ſuch Solemnities, and capable of 200 Perſons, whence it had the Name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the Third: Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebaſtian Cyani* being then Duke: in proſecution of whoſe Quarrel, the *Venetians* encountred *Otho*, the Emperor's Son, vanquiſhed him, and reſtored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Priſoners, was thus ſaluted by the Pope. *Cyani, Take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this Day* (the Aſcenſion-Day) *ſhall be yearly obſerved both by thee and thy Succeſſors; that ſo Poſterity may know that you have purchaſed the dominion thereof by your Valour, and made it ſubject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principal Iſlands of this Sea lie on the other ſide thereof, on the Coaſt of *Dalmatia*: Some few there are upon this ſide, but thoſe (as well as theſe under the command of this *Signeury*) neither great nor famous. Of theſe the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Methuacum*, ſituate on the South-weſt end of the Bank or Cauſey, called *Il Lido*; now only conſiderable for the Haven, which is large and deep, made by the influx of *Meduacus* before-mentioned; in which the greater Ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to croſs the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Duke's Palace, and an Epiſcopal See; the See of *Padua* being tranſlated hither, at the ſack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Duke's Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Epiſcopal See to the Iſland of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the moſt part by none but Seamen. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the ſame Name, honoured with a Biſhop's See, (the Biſhop of *Altina* with much People with him, for fear of the ſaid *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reaſon of the ill Air not very well Peopled. 3. *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three Miles in compaſs, and but one from *Venice*, of a ſound Air, and very well inhabited, the People whereof make the beſt *Venice* Glaſſes, ſo much uſed in all Parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Foſſa Clodia*, a little Weſt of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Mariſhes from the *Adriatick*: diſtant from *Venice* 25 Miles; to which it ſerved inſtead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the ſame Name, to which the Biſhop's See was removed from *Malamocco*, *Anno* 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits, which yield great gain unto the People, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Iſland the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfite[illegible]he *Venetians* in a Fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Iſland following ſhortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoeſe* being grown too inſolent on their good Succeſs, made the City deſperate; who putting all to hazard, fell again upon them, beat them, purſued them home, and there utterly cruſhed them; as we ſhall tell you more at large when we come to *Genoa*. 5. *POUEGIA*, five Miles from the City, firſt Peopled by ſome who had raiſed a Commotion in the City, on the death of *Petro Tradonico*, the thirteenth Duke. After which much increaſed both in Wealth and Buildings, till deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe* It is called *Pupilia* by the Latins. 6. *JUDECHA*, (in Latin called *Judaica*) ſo named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit; not above half a Mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furniſhed with moſt pleaſant Gardens. Theſe and the reſt reckoned as Members of *Trevigiana* or appendants on it.

Betwixt theſe Iſlands and the main Land of *Friuli*, lieth a ſhoal of little Iſlets, in and amongſt which ſtandeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. Theſe Iſlets 72 in number, but joined together by many Bridges, of which here are ſaid to be 4000 at leaſt, beſides 10000 Boats for paſſage from one Iſle to the other. The compaſs of the whole aggregate Body ſaid to be eight Miles, the Buildings fair, and generally adorned with Glaſs-Windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the Windows for the moſt part are made with Paper to let in the Light; and that Paper oiled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants eſtimated at 300000. By the ſituation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* ſignifieth the ſeething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exæſtuatio eſt quæ ad littus veniat*, ſaith the old *Gloſſary* upon *Iſidore* out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was ſo called from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns*, then threatning *Italy*, abandoned the main Land, and built this City in the Bogs and Mariſhes of the Sea adjoining. And that it might afford them the greater ſafety, they not only built it in the moſt inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midſt of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety Miles in compaſs, and having on the Eaſt the ſaid *Adriatick* Sea for the length of 550 Miles: betwixt which and the ſaid Lakes, there is a Bank or Cauſey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by Nature to defend the Iſlands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Cauſey of 35 Miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in ſeven places only, which ſerve as well to keep the Lakes always full of Water, as for the paſſages of Veſſels to and from the City. Known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*. 2. *Chioza*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. The *three Caſtles*, or the Caſtles of *Lio*, 5. S. *Eraſmus*, 6. *Lito Maggiore*, or the great Shore; and 7. the *Treports*: of which that of *Brandolo* lieth moſt to the South-weſt, and that of *Treports* to the North-weſt of the ſaid great Cauſey. And through every one of theſe there is a ſafe paſſage for Ships and Barks of ſmaller burden, the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor on the South ſide of the City, near to the Ports of *Malamocco*, and the Caſtles of *Lio*, which are well Fortified, and there muſt remain till they are brought in by skilful Pilots, who know the Paſſages, which by reaſon of the ſhifting of the Sands, change very often. On the Weſt and North ſides, it is compaſſed with very deep Mariſhes, about five Miles diſtant from the Land; and on the South with many Iſlands, in which are ſeveral Churches and Monaſteries, like ſo many Forts, which lie between it and thoſe parts of *Italy*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth, ſo that it is impoſſible to be taken, but by an Army which can ſtretch 150 Miles in compaſs. It is built, as before is ſaid, on 72 Iſlands, 60 of which lie cloſe together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater diſtance. Of theſe the principal, 1. *Heraclea* near the firm Land of *Trevigiana*, Peopled at firſt by ſuch as followed *Magnus*, Biſhop of *Uderza*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Iſland and the Town which they founded in it by the Name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperor in whoſe time it hapned. Made by this means a Biſhop's See, and being grown populous withal, it was honoured with the firſt Seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodatus* the ſeventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Deſtroyed by *Pepin*, King of *Italy*, Son of *Charles* the Great, it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiario* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the Antiquity of the Biſhop's See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jeſulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, firſt planted by ſome Country People, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horſes, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Biſhop's See alſo, by the name of *Jeſulanus* or *Equilienſis*. 3. *Grada*, on the ſame part of the City alſo, but more towards the North, inhabited as firſt by ſuch of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themſelves thither to avoid the Tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, tranſported to this Iſland the Reliques and Treaſures of his Church; and ſetled where the Church of S. *Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who ſucceeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* XI. *Anno* 580. that the Biſhops of *Grada* ſhould from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be eſteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Country of *Venice*; yet the *Aquileian* would not ſo be robbed of his ancient Privileges, and therefore ſtirred up many ſuits and diſputes about it. The buſineſs compromiſed at laſt to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* ſhould enjoy his ancient Juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him: and that he of *Grada*, with the Title and Stile of *Patriarch*, ſhould have like Juriſdiction over the Churches in the Iſlands; that is to ſay, the Biſhopricks of *Haraclea* (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilia*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprulæ*, and *Caſtella Olindo*. His habitation near the Church of S. *Sylveſter*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4. *Caprulæ*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Biſhop's See before the time of *Charles the Great*, but not elſe obſervable: none of theſe four, nor of the reſidue of the twelve, which be remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the preſent. *Caſtello Olindo*, or *Olivaller*, as ſome call it; ſituate at the Eaſt end of the City, not far from the Cauſey called *Il Lido*, of old a City of it ſelf (as the former were) now joined by a Bridge to the reſt of *Venice*; of moſt note for the Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Biſhop's See by Pope *Adrian* the Firſt, *Anno* 774. with Juriſdiction over the Iſles of *Olivolla*, *Rialto*, *Lupria*, and *Dorſe-dura*. His Title firſt *Caſtellonenſis*, but afterwards, the Biſhop of *Venice*, becauſe the beſt part of the City did belong unto him, inveſted by the Duke, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whoſe ſuffragans they were till the Year 1450. At what time Pope *Eugenius* IV. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Biſhops hereof to the Dignity and Name of Patriarch; aſſigning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were intituled Primates) for their Juriſdiction. By means whereof, and by perſwading him of *Aquileia* to fix his Dwelling here alſo, as before is ſaid, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their conſtant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6. *Rialto*, which is of moſt eſteem and reputation, ſo called *quaſi Rivo alto*, becauſe the Mariſhes are there deeper than in other places; or *quaſi Ripa alta*, becauſe it lay higher above the Waters than the other Iſlands. For which reaſons that Iſland getting reputation above the reſt, moſt of the Gentlemen ſetled their dwellings in the ſame; and drew thither in the end, the Duke's Palace alſo, inſomuch that in ſome ancient Writings the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many old *Records* being dated in ſuch and ſuch a Year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increaſe in numters, ſo were they fain to ſpread themſelves from one Iſle to another; till in the end they built on all the Iſlands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joined by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the Paſſage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 Paces, and ſome forty in breadth; adorned on both ſides with ſtately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with incredible numbers of Boats called *Gondola's*, very neatly built, and veiled over with Cloth, ſo that the Paſſengers may go unſeen and unknown, without the moleſtation of Sun, Wind, or Rain. For publick Buildings it hath in it 70 Pariſh Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well, 31 Cloyſters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, beſides Chapels and Alms-houſes.

The principal Church of this City is that of S. *Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whoſe body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein; affirmed by ſome to be the richeſt and goodlieſt Church in all the World. The building of *Moſaic* Work, of which they boaſt themſelves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called λιθόϛρωτα, and by the *Latin* Writers *Muſiva*, *Muſica*, and *Muſaica*, wrought out of Stones or Metals of divers colours, into the ſhape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beaſts, and other Fanſies of the Workman; yet done with ſuch exactneſs of Skill and Judgment, that it ſeemeth to be all one Stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable Work both within and without, compacted of moſt rare pieces of Marble, Porphyry, and a rich Stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, becauſe it is ſpeckled like a Snake: adorned on the outſide with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyry near the Door; beſides 600 Marble Pillars of a leſſer ſize, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magiſtrates and others of the principal Citizens behold ſuch Shews as are preſented in the Market-place adjoining to it. The Church in length not above 200 Foot of *Venice* meaſure, nor above 50 in breadth; the Roof whereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no Windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to ſtrike in the Spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles ſhew the better. And for the inſide of the Church, the Riches of it are ſo great, Images ſo glorious, the furniture of the Altars ſo above compariſon, that all the Treaſures of the State may ſeem to be amaſſed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is ſtill unfiniſhed; and, as ſome think, is kept unfiniſhed on purpoſe partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the Work, the benefit of whoſe liberality may be employed unto the uſe of the publick Treaſury; and partly, leſt Revenues which are given already ſhould be reſumed by the Heirs of the deceaſed, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the ſumptuouſneſs and beauty of the Church it ſelf.

Of other of the publick Buildings, the Council-houſe the Ducal Palace, Monaſteries, Churches, and the like, though ſtately and magnificent Structures, I forbear to ſpeak. Nor ſhall I here ſay any thing of their private Houſes, ſo large and beautified, that here are ſaid to be no fewer than 200 (moſt of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the beſt King in Chriſtendom. All I ſhall add, and ſo leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arſenal*, and publick *Magazine*. In the firſt of which they have in readineſs 200 Gallies, with Rooms for Cables, Maſts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all ſorts; able thereby to ſet out a Navy to Sea on the ſhorteſt warning. And in the other it is ſaid, that they have Arms ſufficient for 100000 Soldiers of all ſorts; amongſt which are affirmed to be a thouſand Coats of Plate, garniſhed with Gold, and covered with Velvet, fit for the uſe and wearing of the greateſt Princes. But of their Power and Forces both by Sea and Land, we ſhall ſpeak more ſhortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarius*, one of our late *Italian* Poets, *viz.*

Viderat Adriacis *Venetam* Neptunus *in undis*
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:
Nunc mihi Terpeias *quantum vis* Jupiter, *arces*
Objice, & illa tui mœnia Martis, ait.
Si Pelago Tibrim *præfers,* Urbem *aſpice utramque;*
Illam homines dices, hanc poſuiſſe deos.

In Engliſh thus:

Neptune ſaw *Venice* in the *Adrian* ſtand,
And all the Sea brought under her command;
Now *Jove*, ſaid he, thy *Roman* Towers object,
And thoſe proud Walls which *Mars* did once protect;
Before the Sea if *Tiber* thou prefer,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt aver,
That Men build *Rome*; the Gods plac'd *Venice* there.

Proceed we now unto their Story: and if we look upon them in their firſt Original, we ſhall find them to have been a People of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Aſia* the leſſer) called the *Heneti*, who aiding *Priamus*, King of *Troy*, in his ten Years Wars againſt the *Greeks*, where they loſt their King, named *Philemenes*, (or *Philemon* as ſome call him) choſe rather to ſeek out new Dwellings, than return with ſhame unto their old. Upon this reſolution they join themſelves to *Antenor*, who with ſome remnant of the *Trojans*, had the ſame deſign; and ſailing as the Wind and Sea conducted them, arrived at laſt in thoſe parts of *Italy* now called *Friuli*. So witneſſeth the Poet, ſaying,

Antenor *potuit, medius elapſus* Achivis,
Illyricos *penetrare Sinus, atque intima tutus*
Regna Liburnorum, *& fontes ſuperare* Timavi.

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And ſafely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Croſs the *Liburnian* Realms, and conquer all,
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fall.

Here landing they ſubdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this Tract) and poſſeſſed their Dwellings; the Name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till ſubdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Ciſalpina*; agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Britain*. When thoſe *Galls* were vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, the Name and Nation of theſe *Veneti* was ſo conſiderable, that their Territory had the Name of *Venetia*; and together with *Hiſtria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and ſafety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible Noiſe of the great Preparation of the *Hunns*; for the Conqueſt of *Italy* occaſioned many of the principal Men, with their ſeveral Retinues, to betake themſelves to the Iſlands, and inacceſſible Mariſhes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March* 25. *Anno* 421. exceedingly increaſed by the deſtruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila*, and the ſaid *Barbarians*, *Anno* 456. at what time it begun to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much increaſed in Power and Greatneſs, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom; though ſo conſiderable at that time, that in the Diviſion of *Italy* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himſelf, the Popes and the Eaſtern Emperors; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Eſtate: and they deſerved to be left in a free condition, conſidering how notably they had freed themſelves from *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puiſſant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at firſt ſucceſsful. After which making uſe of their ſituation, they grew not only rich in Trade, but ſtrong in Shipping; and thereby did good ſervice to the Weſtern Princes, in their Wars againſt the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they ſerved themſelves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely, in which the Empire of *Conſtantinople* was made a Prey unto the *Latins*, *Anno* 1200.) all the Iſlands which they have at the preſent, in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas; many in thoſe Seas which they have loſt; and not a few good Towns in *Peloponneſus*, ſince conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoeſe* for the Sovereignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received ſo great a Blow at the Naval Battel near *Chioggia* (ſpoken of before) that they had utterly loſt all, if the Enemy could have uſed his Fortune with moderation. But being recovered of the Blow, after many various Succeſſes and Events of War, *Anno* 1381. they got the better of them, and made them quiet: by means whereof being Lords *Paramont* at Sea, they next caſt their Eyes on the main Land of *Italy*, which now they were at more leiſure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Hiſtrians* had before infeſted them with Piracy, and were puniſhed for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loſs of many of their Towns; but in the Year 1390. the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then appendant on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carrari*, *Anno* 1405. The City of *Vincentia* they poſſeſſed themſelves of in the ſame Year alſo: and not long after fully perfected their Conqueſt of *Hiſtria*, with the Revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they moſt improved their Eſtate, was by a conſtant watching of their Opportunities, taking advantage of the Factions and Fractions amongſt their Neighbours, and working their own Greatneſs out of others Ruines. By means whereof they came poſſeſſed of many Places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as alſo of ſome Towns pertaining to the Dutchy of *Milain*; and four of the beſt Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving Aid to any of their diſtreſſed Neighbours, without the Mortgage or direct Sale of ſome Piece or other. Which ſordid kind of Merchandizing drew all the Princes of thoſe Parts, (confederated together in a League at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1508.) to make War upon them; every one to recover by ſtrong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them in their neceſſity. And the Confederates thrived ſo well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Trieſt*, *Friuli*, and whatſoever elſe he laid claim unto; the Popes, in right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Ariminum*,) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* XII. of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Milain*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain*, in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trona*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Aſſulia*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) ſtripped of all their Feathers, were fain to quit the firm Land, and betake themſelves unto the Iſles and Mariſhes of their City; having not one Foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but their Seas and Iſlands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their Intereſts in the Towns aforeſaid; and patrly by dividing the reſt of the Confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had loſt in a little time, except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Ariſtocratical*, managed only by the principal Men of all the City, both for Birth and Breeding; the common People having no Authority in Affairs of State. The chief Officers at the firſt were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that Confuſion, which a multitude of Governors carrieth for the moſt part with it, in the Year 697. they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their *Duke*. Under theſe Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The Authority of which Dukes was at firſt more abſolute, but by degrees reſtrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his Gravity and outward Port, and the reſpect given him by the People, would think no Prince could be more abſolute and ſupream. But look upon him in the exerciſe and power of Government, and he is nothing in the World but an empty Title. For notwithſtanding that he enjoyeth ſo great a Dignity, yet hath he full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the preſence of his *Counſellors* (being ſix in number) who always ſit with him, and diſpatch Affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambaſſadors from Foreign States, receiving Letters from their own Miniſters, granting of Privileges, and the like, in which the *Duke* can do juſt nothing, if four (at leaſt) of theſe *Counſellors* be not preſent with him. And yet theſe *Counſellors* without him may conclude of any thing: Nay, he is ſo reſtrained in all things to the Power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their conſent; and by them is preſcribed an Order in his own Apparel; ſo that he is but little better than a Priſoner when within the City; and a Traytor, if he ſtir abroad: at the beſt but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treaſury no more than 40000 *Ducats* a Year, towards his Expence and Entertainment. As for the *Sovereignty* of the State, that reſides wholly in the *Senate*; but repreſentatively in the *Duke*, the ſix *Counſellors*, and the three Heads or Preſidents of the Forty, which are thoſe Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Council*, conſiſts of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty Years of Age, which may amount to the number of two thouſand five hundred, though ſeldom half that number do aſſemble at once, by reaſon of their ſeveral Imployments in Affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places; who uſually do meet together every *Sunday* Morning, and on the Morning of other *Feſtivals*, where they chooſe Magiſtrates, and diſtribute Governments, and other matters of the State. But becauſe ſuch great Bodies move but ſlowly, and are not very capable of Truſt and Secrecy, they parcel this great Council into leſſer Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Council of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* conſiſteth of 120, in which they treat of and determine matters of the greateſt importance; and therein conclude commonly of ſuch principal Points, as formerly have been propoſed and treated of in the great Aſſembly: And in this Council, beſides the 120 before-mentioned, the *Duke*, the ſix Counſellors, and the Council of Ten, and all ſuch as have born any publick Office, have their Voice or Suffrage. This is that Council which properly and more eſpecially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or paſſed into Acts, except four of the ſix *Counſellors* be preſent at them, and that ſixty at the leaſt of their whole number give their ſuffrage to it. Then for the *Council of Ten*, their Power is univerſal, over all Affairs, ſuch as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclude of War or Peace, to put in execution what they think moſt neceſſary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which if they were firſt treated of in the General Council or Aſſembly, and after in that of the *Pregady*, as they ought to be in common courſe, could not be poſſibly managed with ſuch ſpeed and ſecrecy as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his ſix Aſſiſtants, the *ſupream Majeſty* of the State doth reſide eſpecially. Some other Officers there are, and thoſe of great Authority and Reputation, as the *Procurators* of St. *Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treaſures, and the *Avogadori* or *Tribunes* as one might call them) of the People, being three in all; one of which muſt be always preſent in all Conſultations, leſt any thing ſhould paſs to the prejudice, and infringement of the Privileges of the Common People.

For the whole body of the City conſiſteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. Theſe laſt are the Deſcendants and Progeny of ſuch as came to ſettle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their Occupations by ſeveral Privileges and Immunities which were offered to them, and theſe they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Truſt and Power, except it be two, that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the People. The other are the Iſſue or Deſcendants of thoſe who firſt laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and theſe they have in ſuch reſpect, and ſo high eſteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent ſoever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greateſt Honour they can beſtow; and not beſtowed but upon the beſt deſerver. *Henry* III. of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himſelf graced with this Attribute, which they are very dainty and ſparing of, it being the higheſt Honour which they vouchſafe to impart to ſuch Commanders of their own, and Ambaſſadors of other Princes as have well deſerved it. And that this Honour may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap by being too numerous, neither the younger Sons of theſe *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen*, in the Country are permitted to marry. But otherwiſe they ſuffer them to ſatisfie their Luſts with too much impunity; and for their ſakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be avoided on the former grounds.

Now, as *Otho* in *Tacitus* ſaid to the *Prætorian* Soldiers, *Princeps è Senatu oritur, Senatus è vobis*: ſo out of theſe Gentlemen are choſen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contarenus* is deſcribed in this manner: In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty Years of Age are aſſembled. So many as meet caſt their Names into a Pot; and in another are juſt ſo many Balls, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a Child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn, for which thirty the Child draweth again the ſecond time out of another Pot, that hath only nine gilt Balls. The nine ſo drawn nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again ſelected by the ſame kind of Lot. Theſe twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by Lot ſet apart. Theſe nine nominate forty five, who are by Lot again reduced unto eleven. Theſe eleven chooſe forty one of the beſt and chiefeſt of the *Senators*; who after an Oath taken ſeverally, to chooſe whom they judge worthieſt, write in a Scrole every one whom he beſt liketh. The Scroles are mingled together, and then drawn, the fitneſs of the Perſons then drawn is diſcuſſed, and he that hath moſt Voices above five and twenty, is the Man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudged with due Solemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they chooſe Gentlemen in the Senate, and make publick Officers, inſomuch that *Contarenus*, who hath committed unto Writing theſe publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not ſay how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato*'s Platform.

But whether this be ſo or no, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus conſtituted, and modelled, as before is ſaid, hath laſted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the World, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preſerved it ſelf in the ſame condition, but may moſt juſtly be accounted one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom* againſt the incroachments of the *Turks*: the Wars whereof hath procured Peace, and the Peace thereof hath procured Plenty to the reſt of *Europe*. Inſomuch that it may well be ſaid, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the Face of *Europe*, ſo *Venice* is the Eye of *Italy*, the faireſt, ſtrongeſt, and moſt active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome*, by ſome *Pythagorical* tranſmigration had paſſed into the Body of this powerful State, and animated it with all the Virtues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and conſtant Temper. From ſo baſe and abject a beginning is this City grown to be one of the beſt *Supporters* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this *State*, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themſelves profeſs no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with ſuch caution and reſpect to their own Authority, that they ſuffer not the Clergy to enjoy thoſe Privileges, which they poſſeſs in other Countries, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the Quarrel betwixt them and Pope *Paul* the Fifth, in which the *Signeury* ſtood ſtifly to their ancient Rights, and cauſed Maſs to be duly ſaid, notwithſtanding all their Churches were under the Interdict; baniſhed the *Jeſuits* for ever out of their Dominions, for ſtickling too buſily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed ſo far by their conſtant Courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the Cauſe, and reconcile them to the Church, without any ſubmiſſion. A notable example to all Chriſtian Princes, how to behave themſelves towards thoſe of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon but by ſuch reſiſtances. So eaſie a thing it is for Men of Conſtancy and Courage to ſhake off that Yoke, which Papal Tyranny and Superſtition hath impoſed upon them.

In managing their Wars they anciently obſerved two Rules, which moſt conduced to the enlargement and ſecurity of their Common-wealth. The firſt was the exempting of their own Citizens from the Wars (not out of Jealouſie, but care of their preſervation) unleſs compelled to the contrary by extream neceſſity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the Provincial Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof they did not only keep their City in the ſame condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the reſt of their Dominions; but waſted the hot and boiling Spirits of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwiſe might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of ſome neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the concluſion of the Service they diſmiſſed with Honour and Reward. And by this courſe they avoided Faction, and prevented Servitude: Either or both of which might have hapned by employing any of their own Great Ones in the chief Commands, who (after the example of *Julius Cæſar* in the State of *Rome*) having a ſtrong Party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himſelf their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their Wars in *Italy*, and in ſuch times when the *State* was not ſo well ballanced as it hath been ſince.

As for the Forces of the *State*, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-Forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, conſiſt of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and beſides thoſe, they have a choice Band of 4000 Muſquetiers, for exerciſing of which, they keep yearly Muſters, as well to improve them in Experience, as to proportion them ſome Gratuities, according to their well-deſervings. And as for *Horſe*, they maintain conſtantly 6000 Men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet beſides this conſtant and ordinary eſtabliſhment, they are able to bring great Forces into the Field; as appeareth by their Army againſt *Lewis* XII. in which without diſfurniſhing any of their Forts and Garriſons, they had 2000 Men of Arms, 3000 light Horſe, 30000 Foot, moſt of their own natural Subjects, ſaving that they were interlined with ſome Bands of *Switzers*, to which People they give yearly Penſions, to be aſſured of their Aid upon all occaſions. Then for the *Sea-Forces*, beſides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no leſs than 200 more laid up in the *Arſenal*, with all manner of Tackling and Ammunition appertaining to them: They have 10000 Men enrolled to ſerve at the *Oar*, and may raiſe as many as they pleaſe for thoſe kind of Services, out of thoſe parts of *Sclavonia*, which are ſubject to them. But the great evidence of the Power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet ſet out againſt the *Grand Signieur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of leſſer burden; being in all one hundred and eighty ſeven Sail, fit for preſent Service. To give the total Sum in brief, they held a War by Sea and Land for ſeven Years together, againſt all the Princes of *Chriſtendom* (excepting *England*) confederated againſt them by the League at *Cambray*: In all which time they neither wanted Men nor Money; and in the end, were the leaſt loſers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture alſo at the greatneſs of the publick Treaſury, and of the yearly Income which ſupplies the ſame. For though it be conceived, that their ordinary ſtanding Revenue be but four Millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any Chriſtian Prince can boaſt of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treaſury, by laying new Impoſts on Commodities as they ſee occaſion; which needs muſt riſe to vaſt and moſt conſiderable Sums, in a City of the greateſt Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the World beſides. And yet beſides ſuch Cuſtoms and Impoſts as they lay on Merchandiſe, there is nothing which the People do eat or drink, for which they pay not ſomething to the publick Treaſury; over and above which the pooreſt Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money* alſo. Inſomuch that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Chriſtians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without ſuch helps, (though heavy and burdenſome to the Subject) they could not poſſibly have ſpent twelve Millions in the War againſt *Selimus* II. and as many a little before that, in the enterpriſe of *Ferrara*, and the War raiſed againſt them by the League at *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Sovereign Princes*, nor ſuch as do ſucceed each other in the right of Inheritance; yet being they are always Men of moſt eminent Note, and that in their Names all the buſineſs of State is acted, and all Writings dated, I will ſubjoin a Catalogue of them to this preſent; to the end that meeting with their Names in the courſe of Hiſtory, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of *Venice*.

697	1	*Paulus Anafeſtus* 20.
728	2	*Marcel Tegalien* 10.
727	3	*Hippateus Urſus* 11.
An Interregnum of ſix Years.		
742	4	*Theodatus Hippateus.*
755	5	*Galla of Malamocco.*
756	6	*Dominico Monegarta.*
760	7	*Maurice Galbata.*
783	8	*John Galbata.*
799	9	*Obelerius.*
804	10	*Angelus Partitiarius.*
822	11	*Juſtinian Partitiarius.*
824	12	*John Partitiarius.*
833	13	*Petro Tradonico.*
859	14	*Urſus Partitiarius.*
876	15	*John Partitiarius.*
881	16	*Petro Candiano.*
	17	*Dominico Tribuno.*
	18	*Petro Tribuno.*
905	19	*Urſus Badoareus.*
925	20	*Petro Candiano* II.
932	21	*Petro Badoario.*
935	22	*Petro Candiano* III.
950	23	*Petro Candiano* IV.
970	24	*Petro Urſeola.*
972	25	*Vital Candiano.*
973	26	*Tribuno Meme.*
985	27	*Petro Urſeola* II.
1003	28	*Otho Urſeola.*
1020	29	*Petro Barbolani.*
1021	30	*Dominico Flabenico.*
1031	31	*Dominico Contureni.*
1059	32	*Dominico Silvie.*
1072	33	*Vitalis Falerius.*
1084	34	*Vitalis Michaeli.*
1090	35	*Ordelaſius Falerius.*
1105	36	*Dominico Michaeli.*
1118	37	*Petrus Polanus.*
1136	38	*Dominico Moroſini.*
1143	39	*Vitalis Michaeli* II.
1160	40	*Sebaſtian Ziani.*
1165	41	*Aura Maripiere.*
1179	42	*Henrico Dondolo.*
1193	43	*Petro Ziani.*
1216	44	*Jacobi Tepuli.*
1236	45	*Marino Moroſini.*
1240	46	*Renieri Zeno.*
1256	47	*Lorenzo Tepuli.*
1263	48	*Jacobo Contareni.*
1267	49	*Giovanni Dondolo.*
1276	50	*Petro Gradenico.*
1298	51	*Marino Georgio.*
1299	52	*John Sourance.*
1315	53	*Franciſco Dondolo.*
1329	54	*Barthol Gradonico.*
1330	55	*Andrea Dondolo.*
1342	56	*Marinus Falerius.*
	57	*John Gradonico.*
1343	58	*John Dauphin.*
1348	59	*Lorenzo Celſo.*
1352	60	*Marco Cornaro.*
1355	61	*Andrea Contarene.*
1371	62	*Michael Moroſini.*
	63	*Antonio Veniere.*
1389	64	*Michael Steno.*
1402	65	*Thomazo Micenico.*
1412	66	*Franciſco Foſcari.*
1447	67	*Paſchal Malipiere.*
1452	68	*Chriſtophero Moro.*
1461	69	*Nicolao Troni.*
1463	70	*Nicolao Marcelli.*
1464	71	*Petro Moceneci.*
1465	72	*Andrea Vendramine.*
1467	73	*John Mocenico.*
1474	74	*Marco Barbadico.*
	75	*Auguſtino Barbadico*
1489	76	*Leonardo Loredani.*
1509	77	*Antonio Grimani.*
1511	78	*Andrea Gritti.*
1527	79	*Petro Laude.*
1533	80	*Franciſco Donati.*
1540	81	*Antonio Treviſani.*
1541	82	*Franciſco Vivieri.*
1543	83	*Lorenzo Prioli.*
1547	84	*Hierome Prioli.*
1555	85	*Petro Loredani.*
1560	86	*Lewis Mocenico.*
1567	87	*Sebaſtan Venieri.*
1578	88	*Nicola di pont.*
1586	89	*Paſchal Cicogne.*
1596	90	*Marino Grimani.*
1606	91	*Leonardo Donati.*
1612	92	*Antonio Memmo,*
1615	93	*Giovanni Bembo.*
1618	94	*Nicholao Donati.*
1618	95	*Antonio Priuli.*
1623	96	*Franciſco Contareno.*
1630	97	*Giovanni Correlio.*
1648	98	*Franciſco Erizzo.*
1656	99	*Contareno.* *Cornaro.* *Bertrucio Valetio,* elected *July* 10.
1658	100	*Johannes Pezaro,* he died *Oct.* 19.
1659	101	*Dominico Contareno.*
1684	102	*Marc Antonio Giuſtiani,* Jan. 26.
1688	103	*Franciſco Moriſini.* April 3.

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are 1. of S. *Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, inſtituted in the Year 1330. and renewed again (being grown ſomewhat out of uſe) *An.* 1562. The Honour is commonly beſtowed on the Perſon preſent, ſometimes by Letters Patents on a Party abſent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinſius*, one of great eminence for Learning in the *Netherlands*. The Perſon choſen is to be of Noble Blood, at the leaſt a Gentleman, the Word or Motto of the Order, is, *Pax tibi Marce.*

2. *Of the glorious Virgin*, firſt inſtituted by *Bartholomew of Vincentia*, *An.* 1222. Their Charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the Fourth, *An.* 1262. The Arms of this Order are a purple Croſs between certain Stars. The Habit a white Surcoat over a Ruſſet Cloak; and ſeems to be as well a Religious as a Military Inſtitution, like to the *Spaniſh* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this Common-wealth
before deſcribed,
Patriarchs 2. Biſhops 16.

The Great Dukedom of TUSCANY.

HAving thus run along the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church, unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuſcan* or *Lower Sea* from the ſaid *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the firſt place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Eſtate of the Great Duke of *Tuſcany*; divided on the Eaſt from St. *Peter's Patrimony*, by the River *Piſco*; on the Weſt from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the ſtrong Fort of *Sarazana* on the

North from *Ramandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*; by the *Apennine* Hills, and on the South ſide it is bounded with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greateſt and goodlieſt part of all that which anciently was called *Tuſcany* from the *Greek* word θύειν, which ſignifieth to *Sacrifice*; of which act of Religious Worſhip, or rather of ſome ſuperſtitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to ſay truth, they were much given to *South-ſayings* and Divinations, and ſuch like Vanities of *Gentiliſm*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, firſt appearing here, from whom they learned the greateſt part of their Superſtitions. So that this Name was adventitious and accidental. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus*, the Son of *Atys*, King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in theſe parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Iſrael*. But theſe Names ſignified the ſame both Country and People, though in divers Languages, and with reſpect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being moſt uſed by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tyſci*, and *Tyſcia*, by their Neighbours of *Rome*, who alſo called the People *Hetruſci*, and the Country *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was ſo entituled. Anciently it extended as far Eaſtward as the Banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the preſent; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be reſtrained within the *Appennine* and the *Tiber*, waſted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation: and built twelve Cities on the other ſide of the Mountains, that is to ſay, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*, all of eſteem and reputation to this very day. They were the firſt Nation that carried an *Offenſive* War to the Gates of *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porſena*; and held it out on the *Defenſive* as long as any: No People in all *Italy* ſtanding more ſtifly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Faliſci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hetrurian* Tribes. But nothing could withſtand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations o[illegible]hem were brought under by *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who from hence brought to *Rome* the *Faſces* and Triumphal Ornaments, and other embelliſhments of State: the *Veii* and *Faliſci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the Conqueſt perfected by the Conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Contumalus*, *A. U. C.* 455. So the *Tuſcans* were ſubdued at laſt, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 Years; that is to ſay, from *Tarchon Priſcus*, their firſt King, *A.M* 2550, to *Turenus Ceſo*, their laſt King, *A. M.* 3668.

The chief Towns of it in thoſe times were, 1. *Veii*, and 2. *Peruſia*, ſpoken of before. 3. *Feſulæ*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4. *Ægillina*, ſituate not far from the Lake of *Thraſymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum*, the chief Town of the *Tuſcans*, at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*, and the Seat Royal of *Mezentius*, that noted Tyrant ſo often mentioned by *Virgil*. Firſt built by the *Pelaſgi*, a *Greek* People, and by them thus named, afterwards by miſtake called *Cære*: by like miſtake as *Peru*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their preſent Names; as ſhall there be ſhewn. For the *Tuſcans*, or the *Romans* as others ſay, demanding in their Language of a Country Fellow, the name of the place, was anſwered in his Language, χαῖρε, that is to ſay, *God ſave you*, or *God ſpeed you*: which word they taking for the Name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cære*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoining, from hence called *Balnea Cæretana*; more for the preſervation of the *Veſtal* Fire, and the other Holy Things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the Privileges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Cenſors* uſed to enroll the Names of thoſe whom they deprived of their Votes in Senates, or any other publick Council, were called *Cærites Tabulæ*. 5. *Phaleria*, on the Sea ſide, the principal Town of the *Faliſci*, of which there is ſome remainder extant in the Village called *Falarii*. 6. *Cluſium*, the Seat Royal of King *Porſena*; for aiding which againſt the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themſelves the fury of that turbulent People. *Piſa*, *Aretium*, and ſuch others as are ſtill in being, we ſhall ſpeak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the Soil do remain as formerly, though the firſt altered in their Names. The principal of which are, 1. *Arnus*, ſpoken of before, in the general ſurvey of *Italy*. 2. *Sercius*, by *Ptolomy* called *Boactus*; a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes ſome amends to the People for its violent Land-flouds. 3. *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not ſo profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orviette*. 4. *Martha*, by *Ptolomy* called *Oſa*. Here is alſo the Lake *Volſinius*, which is twenty four Miles in compaſs; and that called anciently *Sabatenus*, but now *Laco Braciani*, from which Water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reaſon of theſe and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of Bogs, which made the Air unhealthy, and the Ways unpaſſable; it being in the Flats and Mariſhes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was turmoiled; loſing herein the greateſt part of his Elephants, and one of his Eyes. But ſince thoſe times, partly by the induſtry of the People, and the great providence of the Princes, the Fens in moſt places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm Land; whereby the Air is rectified, and the Ways made pleaſant; care being alſo taken, by great Banks and Ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the moſt part within their Channels: So that the Country is now full of very ſpacious Fields, and fruitful Vallies, ſwelled here and there with pleaſant Mountains, little inferiour in fertility to the richeſt Vales; abundantly well ſtored with delicious Wines, and plentiful, in a word, of all the bleſſings of Nature; ſave that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is ſupplied from the Fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themſelves and their Neighbours; though no ſuch ſuperfluity, as to ſpare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the Story, *Tuſcany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the ſecond of thoſe eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In the diviſion of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Conſtantine*, it made with *Umbria*, one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards, in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, it became a Member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times, it was governed by an Officer of Truſt and Power, whom I find ſometimes called the *Marqueſs*, ſometimes *Duke* of *Tuſcany*; who had here more or leſs Authority, as they could work on the neceſſities of their ſeveral Princes. *Deſiderius*, the laſt King of the *Lombards*, had been Duke of *Tuſcany*, and ſo was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called *Marqueſs* of it, under the Reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German* Emperor. Afterwards, as the Popes grew in Power and Greatneſs, ſo they made bold to intermeddle in the Affairs of this Province; giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*, another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making ſome challenge to that Kingdom. In which diſtractions the *Florentines* firſt bought their own Liberty of the Emperor *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*; and after purchaſed the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladiſlaus*, King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florens*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their Affairs ſo well, that they became one of the moſt conſiderable Eſtates in *Italy*; and at the laſt by taking in *Piſa* and *Sienna*, they got the abſolute Dominion of the beſt and largeſt part of *Tuſcany*: which now is under the Command of the *Great Duke*, and may be branched moſt fitly into theſe four parts; that is to ſay, the Cities and Territories of 1. *Florence*, 2. *Piſa*, 3. *Sienna*, and 4. the *Iſlands* ſituate in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

1. And firſt, the Territory or Eſtate of *Florence* taketh up the North part of this great Dukedom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Eſtates of *Piſa* and *Sienna* on the South. On the Eaſt it has the Dukedoms of *Urbino* and *Spoleto*; and on the Weſt the States of *Piſa* and *Luca*. It is ſo called from the City of FLORENCE, ſituate nigh unto the Conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*; the former paſſing through the midſt of the City, which is joined together with four Bridges of Stone: Environed with Mountains, which do ſerve as a Fortreſs againſt Invaſions, and for defence againſt the Winds: Firſt built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Auguſtus*, *Antoni*, and *Lepidus*; from the flouriſhing ſituation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards*, upon ſome diſpleaſure, razed it to the Ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*; to whom, and whoſe Succeſſors, they continued faithful, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*; but after they betook themſelves to the *Papal* Faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now ſtands, and is indeed a very fair and flouriſhing City, agreeable to the Name; the Streets being very ſtraight and large, paved with ſquare Stone, and always kept exceeding clean; the ordinary Buildings beautiful above any in *Italy*, beſides many fair and ſtately Palaces adorned with *Statua's*. The principal of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of fifty Houſes which were wont to ſtand there, capable of a great Retinue: and for the largeneſs of the Building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as alſo for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acceſſaries, equalling, if not ſurpaſſing, the goodlieſt Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may alſo be affirmed of the *Cathedral*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanſhip, but that eſpecially of the Steeple, which both for ſtuff and ſtructure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*: in which the City there are beſides, ſo many excellent Pieces and curious Rarities, that the Arch-duke *Charles* was wont to ſay, that it was *a City not to be ſeen but on Holy-days*. As for the Inhabitants of this City, and the Parts adjoining, they are a very induſtrious People, and generally ſaid to be of a very great Wit, ſubtle Heads, and of much inſight into Buſineſs: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was uſed to ſay, *Non ſapeve dove conſiſteſſe l' ingegne tanto celebrate di Florentini*, That he could never find where that great Wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine*, the Hiſtorian, was without doubt a notable Stateſman; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a Man of as ſhrewd a Brain as any; and ſo were the two *Coſmo's* of the Houſe of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the major part of them, be of ſuch extraordinary Wit, as they ſay they are, I am not very well reſolved; nor is it much material to enquire into it. This City is now much ſunk both as to its Wealth and its People, it being ſuppoſed now not to have above 50000 Souls in it, tho' about forty Years agone it had 90000.

The other Cities and chief Places of this firſt diviſion, are 1. *Feſulæ*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a ſmall Village called *Fieſoli*, ſituate in the ſtreight of the *Appennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have riſen chiefly from the ruines of it; moſt memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Goths*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadaguſus*. 2. *Pizoria*, or *Piſtoia*, ſeated on the foot of the *Appennine*, but ruinated with his own diſſentions; of which the greateſt and moſt laſting, were thoſe betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black Men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines*, which here took beginning, and for a long time exerciſed the Peace of *Chriſtendom*. This laſt began (as ſome ſay) upon the quarrel of two Brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo*, ſtood for the Pope, the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperor. The Quarrel ſpreading into Parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at laſt the wonder and amazement of all good People; inſomuch as ſome are of Opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we uſe to fright young Children was derived from hence. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſeated in a fair and goodly Plain, compaſſed with Mountains; the Streets paved with Free-ſtone, and the Church (which is Cathedral) with Marble. It was firſt walled by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to ſubmit it ſelf to the Power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was ſubdued, *Anno* 1150. when as yet themſelves were not the abſolute Maſters of their
own City. 3. *Volterra* built among the Mountains, the 3
Birth-place of *Linus* Succeſſor to St. *Peter* in the See of
Rome. It ſtandeth on the top of an Hill, the Walls thereof
made of ſquare Stone ſix Foot long, which are very neat-
ly joined together without Mortar; and in thoſe Walls
five Gates for entrance, each Gate having near unto it
a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and ſome Epi-
taphs in *Tuſcan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very
ancient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterranus*,
one of the greateſt Reſtorers of Learning in the Weſt
Parts of the World. 4. *Monte Pulciano*; in *Latin* called 4
Mons Politianus, a well fortified City, and the birth-place
of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman*
Elegancies. 5. *Prato*, another ſtrong piece of this part al- 5
ſo, neighboured by a retiring place of the Great Dukes,
called *Pratoline*, a right pleaſant Village, beautified with
a magnificent Palace; in which, beſides many other
Singularities, are moſt curious Water-works, equal, if
not ſuperior unto thoſe of *Tivoli*. 6. *Cortona*, an ancient 6
City of the *Tuſcans*, ſituate at the Foot of the *Apennine*;
ſold to the *Florentines* by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*.
7. *Aretium* [illegible] *Arezzo*, one of the ancient Cities of the 7
Tuſcans alſ[illegible]nd ſold to the *Florentines* as the other was;
this being bought for 40000 *Florens* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*,
then the Pope's *Vicegerent* in this Country. 8. *Borgo San* 8
Sepulchro, ſeated on the *Tiber*, near, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedom; added to this *Signeury* by *Coſmo de Medices*, the firſt of that Name; by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* IV. for the Sum of 25000 *Florens*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Common-wealth, to which it ſerveth for a Bulwark on that ſide of this Country.

To this diviſion alſo we may beſt refer the ſmall, but Maſsa
rich Signeury of *Maſſa*, ſituate on the borders of the
State of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Maſſa* it ſelf, 1
which gives the Title of a Marquiſs to the Lord hereof,
of the Family of the *Maleſpines*. 2. *Carara*, three Miles 2
off from *Maſſa*, and more near the Sea; of great fame for its Quarries of whiteſt Marble (much uſed in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs) and a breed of the faireſt Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*; but amongſt his own Vaſſals abſolute enough. It is now in the Poſſeſſion of the Family of *Cibo*.

2. The ſecond Member of this Eſtate is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoeſe* on the Weſt, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the Eaſt. The City firſt built by the *Piſæ*, a People of *Elis* in *Greece*: who following old *Neſtor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the Wind driven upon this Coaſt: and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchius*, did erect this Town. In the diſtractions of the Empire it ſtood up for it ſelf, and grew ſo potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians* and the *Genoeſe*. They were once Maſters of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being diſcomfited by the *Genoeſe*, near the Iſle of *Giglio*, *An.* 1369. they ſubmitted themſelves to the Protection of *Charles* IV.

by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *Anno* 1404. by *John Marid*, his Son and Succeſſor ſold unto the *Florentines*; from whoſe command they freed themſelves by popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this beſieged them, and brought them to that extremity of Hunger, that they were ready to be ſtarved. But ſuch was the humanity of the Beſiegers, that when they entred the Town, every man carried Victuals in his hand in ſtead of Weapons, to beget, as it were, new life in that rebellious People. This Victory the *Florentines* got by the Valour and Conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being firſt a Taylor in *Eſſex*, afterwards ſerved *Edward* III. in his *French* Wars, where he was Knighted. And when upon the Peace concluded after the Battel of *Poictiers*, he wanted Employment, he entred with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himſelf into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in War with this City: who for his Valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles* VIII. went into *Italy*, the *Piſans* again revolted; and were not without much Labour and great Charges, reduced to their former Obedience. As for the City it ſelf, it is almoſt as big as *Florence*; this being five Miles in compaſs, and that but ſix; but very ſhort of it in the number of people, *Florence* being ſaid to contain 90000 Souls, *Piſa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to ſay, the publick *Arſenal* for Shipping, an Univerſity for Students, and the See of an Archbiſhop: The Cathedral Church of which, is a very beautiful piece of Work, the Gates thereof are Braſs, and the Steeple of it of ſuch Artificial and exquiſite Building, that it ſheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholſomneſs of the Air over-ballanceth all theſe fair Advantages.

The next place of Importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn*, (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latine*) ſeated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified againſt the *Genoeſe*, by whom the Works were once ſlighted, *Anno* 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between thoſe States, it returned again to its old Maſters. And when the *Piſans* were ſold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Fregoſa* Duke of *Genoa*, ſeized upon this place, and ſold it alſo to the ſame Chapmen, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Coſmo* and his two Sons it is much improved in Strength and Beauty; and ſo well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt Cities in *Chriſtendon*: Cities I ſay, and not Caſtles, the Caſtles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the ſtrongeſt Forts in the World. After this comes in 3. *Peira Sancta*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Arnus*, (a place of great Conſequence and Strength) one of the beſt pieces of the *Piſans* when a Free-Eſtate, againſt their old Enemies the *Genoeſe*, towards whom it ſtandeth. 4. *Terraciola*, Eaſtward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Caſtellona*, an Epiſcopal See. 6. *Porto Barrato*, bordering on the Seigneury of *Sienne*, now nothing but a ſtation for Ships (not much uſed for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the beſt Cities of the *Tuſcans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *SIENNA*, lying betwixt the Eſtate of *Piſa*, and the Land of the Church. The City ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old ſickly men to ſojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Æneas Sylvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* II. of *Francis Picolominy*, after Pope *Pius* III. and of *Sixtus* (hence ſurnamed) *Senenſis*, the greateſt Scholar of the three, if not of all the Age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Senæ Juliæ*, to difference it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treiſſa*; but built (which makes the Situation of it exceeding pleaſant) upon an high Hill, on which there is a Caſtle that commands the Town; the Streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and ſpacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace uſed for a Senate-houſe in the Free-Common-Wealth, and on the South-ſide near the Walls the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the faireſt in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an aſcent by fair Marble Stairs, of which the Pavement is made alſo. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperial Faction, it bought its liberty at an eaſie rate, of the Emperor *Rodolphus* I. After. it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Coſmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, *Anno* 1558. in conſideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*, and other ſervices expected for the time to come. *Coſmo* being thus inveſted in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the firſt Prince who had the abſolute command of it, after the conſtitution of their Common-wealth, neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their ſeveral Factions; and ſuffered to have Garriſons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their Party. And, to ſay truth, it ſtood with good reaſon of State, that the *Florentine* ſhould uſe all his wit to get this City; and having got it, uſe all means to aſſure it to him. For, beſides that great acceſſion which it made unto his Eſtate; by adding thereunto the yearly income of 150000 Ducats, above all expences: it was alſo to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time ſtood in competition with it, for the ſoveraign command of *Tuſcany*. Beſides there had been mighty Animoſities between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennoys* of the *Gibelline* Faction. A Faction at laſt ſo generally diſtaſted in all *Italy*, and ſo abominable to the Popes, that on *Aſhwedneſday*, when the Pope being to caſt Aſhes on the Heads of the Cardinals, was to have ſaid, *Memento, O homo, quòd cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*, according to the uſage of the Church of *Rome*: ſeeing a *Gibelline* amongſt them, he forgot himſelf, and ſaid thus unto him. *Memento, O homo, quòd* Gibellinus *es, & cum* Gibellinis *morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1. *Montolcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latine*) a place of great ſtrength both by induſtry and ſituation. 2. *Caſtro Cartaldo* ſeated upon a lofty Hill, moſt memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the beſt Wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a ſorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of tranſcribing. 3. *Soana*, an Epiſcopal City; as alſo are 4. *Pienza*, 5. *Croſſetto*, and 6. *Chiuſi*; this laſt, the *Cluſum* of the ancient *Tuſcans* ſpoken of before. Beſides theſe are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs.

There belonged alſo unto this Common-wealth, when a State diſtinct, ſome Ports and Pieces on the Sea, which when it was conſigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniards*: partly thereby to keep thoſe Princes at his devotion, but principally that by holding ſo many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramont of thoſe Seas. Of thoſe the principal, if not all, 1. *Piombino*, in *Latine* called *Plumbinum*, from ſome Mines of Lead; adorned with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a plentiful Territory: the Caſtle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in poſſeſſion of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole Rents of the Eſtate. 2. *Port Telamon*, Eaſtward of *Piombino*, ſo called of old from *Telamon*, an adjoyning Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chidf City of *Tuſcany* in thoſe elder times, but moſt remarkable for the great Battel fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Gauls*, *A. U. C.* 529. the Army of the *Gauls* conſiſting of 70000 Horſe and Foot; that of the

Romans little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Attilius*, one of the Conſuls being ſlain, the Victory was gotten by *Æmilius* his Collegue, with the ſlaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Priſoners: *Aneroeſtus* and *Congolianus* two Kings of the *Tranſalpine Gauls* being ſlain or taken. A Victory which drew after it the total ſubjugation of the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, which followed within three years after. 3. *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the Eaſt, the *Coſſa* of the ancient Writers. 4. *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninſula*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea, over againſt *Orbitello*, by the *Latines* called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by ſome who have obſerved the ſituation, ſtrength, and extent thereof, to be the fitteſt place for a Royal City to be built in, to command thoſe Seas. 5. *Port Hercule*, which ſtill retains its ancient name, imparted to it from ſome Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; ſituate near the Eaſtern *Iſthmus* of the ſaid *Peninſula*. 6. *Porto-Longone*, a piece of ſpecial conſequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cauſe of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the Conqueſt of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now poſſeſs it.

The fourth and laſt Member of this Eſtate, are the Iſlands in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is, 1. *Ilva*, not above ten Miles from *Piombino*, called anciently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmeth it to contain in compaſs a hundred Miles, but it proves upon a juſt meaſurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furniſhed with Corn, and leſs with Fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron; as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, eſpecially for Steel of great eſteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that paſſage in the tenth of his *Æneids*, where it is called

Ilva

Inſula inexhauſtis Calybum generoſa metallis.

A noble Iſle, and known full well,
For unexhauſted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is ſupplied by Iron; which Iron is of ſo ſtrange a nature, that every 25 year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilſt it is in the Iſland, but muſt be carried ſomewhere elſe. It affordeth alſo Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in ſome parts the Loadſtone alſo. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it againſt the *Turks*, if they ſhould at any time invade it, reſigned it, by the Counſel of *Charles* V. unto *Coſmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: reſerving to themſelves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except thoſe that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven, called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that ſhould come thither, and therefore if the *Turks* and *Moors* had been Maſters of it, they might eaſily have commanded all the Coaſts adjoyning, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two ſtrong Caſtles, ſituate on two little Mountains, on each ſide one; ſo fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable, having alſo good ſtore of Cannon, and all ſorts of Warlike Ammunition. In the year 1555. a Potent *Turkiſh* Fleet coming into theſe Seas to aſſiſt the *French* againſt the *Spaniards*, and having tried their fortunes unſucceſsfully upon the *Piombino*, they made a Deſcent upon this Iſland, and attempted *Porto Ferrario*, but were beaten off with great Slaughter. But as to *Coſmopolis*, *Baudrand* aſſures us, there is no ſuch Town in the Iſland. And not far off ſtands a ſtrong Town built by the ſame Duke *Coſmo*, and by him called *Coſmopolis*; well fortified, and made the ſeat of his New Order of St. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

rto Ferrario

The ſecond Iſland of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* anciently, juſt oppoſite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having ſome 25 Miles in compaſs; near unto which the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Piſani* in a fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puiſſance. 3. *Capraria*, not far from *Ligorn*, ſo called from its abundance of Goats; and for the ſame reaſon *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers: as 4. *Gallinaria*, not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the reſt nothing memorable, but that ſome of them do occur in the ancient Writers; of which ſort are 1. *Melorta*, heretofore *Lanellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2. *Lanuſi*, formerly *Artemeſia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3. *Gorgona*, 4. *Troja*, and 5. the ſmall Iſlands which are called *Formicæ*. 6. To theſe we may add alſo the Iſle of *Planaſia*, more memorable than the reſt, for the baniſhment and death of *Agrippa Poſthumus*, the Nephew of *Auguſtus Cæſar* by his Daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State imperial, ſituate ſomewhat nearer unto *Corſica*, than the reſt of theſe Iſlands.

iglio

As for the *MEDICES*, whoſe Poſterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-State* (as *Machiavel* informs us in his *Florentine* Hiſtory) accounted in the chief rank of the popular Nobility: Thoſe being ſuch of the ancient Nobles, as, to be capable of the Magiſtracy, and publick Offices (then wholly ſhared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themſelves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410. *John de Medices*, (the firſt great raiſer of his Houſe) ſtoutly maintaining the Liberties of the People againſt the great ones, was by them ſo honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great Party, but almoſt a Soveraignty in the City. To him ſucceeded his Son *Coſmo*, one of the greateſt Stateſmen of thoſe times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Caſentino*, *Burgo*, St. *Sepulchro*, and ſome other pieces. Dying in the year 1464. he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his Son, whoſe whole time was conſumed in ſuppreſſing ſuch Factions, as had at home been raiſed againſt him; and at his death left all his Power, and the great Wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater meaſure of his Fathers Vertues) to *Laurence* and *Julian* his two Sons. The People after his deceaſe, either deſirous of Novelties, as moſt people are; or fearing to be made Hereditary to this powerful Family, ſeemed to encline to one of the *Soderini*, a Man of plauſible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciouſly conſidering, that new Houſes as they are eaſily honoured, ſo are they as ſoon abandoned by the fickle Multitude; conferred all the dependencies which were caſt upon him, on theſe two young men of the *Medices*: as being deſcended from a Family which had long governed the City. Againſt theſe two the *Pazzi*, a potent Houſe in *Florence*, conſpired, and at Maſs they ſlew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* eſcaped; the blows which were ſtruck at him, being received by one of his Servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of priſon. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbiſhop of *Piſa*, who had been of the Conſpiracy. To revenge the death of this Biſhop, Pope *Paul* II. excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo*, to divert this miſchief, went in perſon to *Naples*; where he grew ſo much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual League made between them. After his death 1492. his Son *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Piſa* and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King, was, together with his whole Family, baniſhed. *John de Medices*, the Son of *Laurence*, the Brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the Name of *Leo* X. reſtored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exiled. This diſgrace *Julio di Medices*, Son to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* VII. not enduring, procured *Charles* V. to beſiege it: which requeſt was granted, and the City after two years reſiſtance, yielded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Grandchild to *Peter*, by his Son *Laurence*) *Anno* 1531. And he to reſtrain the Inſolencies of the People,

ple, built a ſtrong Cittadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of parts good enough, had he not been too mûch addicted to Luſt and Wantonneſs; which being obſerved by *Laurence di Medices* his own Couſin, he trained him to a ſecret place, under colour of bringing him to the Bed of a beautiful Lady, and there baſely murdered him. Which done, inſtead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their loſt liberty, as he firſt intended, he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice.* So that before the people had notice of the accident, the Heads of the *Medices* conſulted together, and ſent for *Coſmo di Medices*, dwelling in the Country with his Mother (and then about eighteen years of Age) to be their Prince: as being next Heir-Male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Coſmo* proving an excellent Stateſman, and a fortunate Commander, ſo ſwayed the Affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip* II. of *Spain* to be aſſured of his friendſhip, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* IV. had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuſcany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwiſe his ſpecial friend) thwarted that intent, as loth to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himſelf. After in the year 1570. *Pius* V. crowned the ſame *Coſmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the Title of *Great Duke of Tuſcany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Duke's Coronet he cauſed to be engraven theſe words, *Pius Quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis Catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque juſtitiæ ſtudium, donavit.* Thus forward were theſe Popes to honour this Family; but their Succeſſors have been otherwiſe affected to it. For when one of Duke *Coſmo's* Succeſſors did ſince intreat a ſucceeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuſcany*; the Pope not liking ſo Lordly a Title, made anſwer, that he was content, *He ſhould be a King in* Tuſcany, *but not King of* Tuſcany. A Scholar-like diſtinction, but not ſo ſatisfactory to the point propoſed.

The Princes of the Houſe of *Medices*,
in the *Free-eſtate.*

A. D.
1410 1. *John di Medices*, the firſt advancer of the Family to publick greatneſs.
1433 2. *Coſmo di Medices*, the Son of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.
1464 3. *Peter* the Son of *Coſmo*.
1472 4. *Laurence di Medices*, Son of *Peter*, the great advancer of Learning in *Italy*.
1492 5. *Peter di Medices* II. exiled upon the coming in of *Charles* VIII.
1512 6. *Laurence di Medices* II. Son of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of *Urbin* by Pope *Leo* X. He was the Father of *Catherine di Medices*, *French* Queen. In the year 1512. *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Spain*, reſtored the *Medices*, but the *Florentines* again expelled this Family in the year 1529. which was their laſt ſtruggle for their Liberty.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great*
Dukes of *Tuſcany*.

A. D.
1531 1. *Alexander di Medices*, the Son of *Laurence*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*, ſlain by his Citizens in a Tumult, though he had married a natural Daughter of *Charles* the V*th*, whoſe Forces were Maſters of the City.
1537 2. *Coſmo* II. the next Heir of *Alexander*, deſcended from *Lawrence*, a Brother of the firſt *Coſmo*; the wiſeſt Stateſman of his time.
1574 3. *Francis di Medices*, Son of *Coſmo* II. Father of *Mary* the *French* Queen.
1587 4. *Ferdinand di Medices*, the Brother of *Francis*.
1609 5. *Coſmo* III. Son of *Ferdinand*.
1621 6. *Ferdinand* II. Son of *Coſmo di Medices*, the twelfth of this Family, the ſixth Duke of *Florence*, and the fifth of *Tuſcany*, born in the year, 1610.
1670 7. *Coſmus* the III. Son of *Ferdinand* II. born in the year 1642. and at this time Duke of *Florence*. Dr. *Heylin* reckons one of this Name who lived before the Family was exalted to this Honour, and then he is the IV*th* of that Name, and the VII*th* Duke of *Florence*: he ſucceeded his Father in the year 1670. *May* 26. He hath a Son called *Craſto*, in the year 1688. married *Violauta Beatrix*, Daughter of *Ferdinand Maria*, Elector and Duke of *Bavaria*: the Revenues of this Family are ſaid to be 18 Millions of Duckats, by which exceſſive Tribute, the Dominions of this Prince are in a great degree deſolate, the Inhabitants removing into the States of *Genoua*, *Venice*, and the *Griſons* and *Swiſs*.

The length of this Eſtate is 200 Miles, the breadth in ſome places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which Tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one conſiderable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligorn*; ſo that his ſtrength in Shipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not ſuffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Veſſels. For otherwiſe being an induſtrious People, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea muſt needs be greater than it is: the *Great Dukes* Fleet conſiſting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaſſes. And for his Power by Land, he hath in readineſs (ſixteen thouſand Foot of his own Subjects, well Trained and Muſtered under experienced Commanders, to ſerve him upon all occaſions; and an hundred Men at Arms, and 400 Light-horſemen, well paid, as well in times of Peace, as in time of War. And beſides theſe, he keeps ſo many Forts and Towns in continual Garriſon, that his Eſtate is ſaid to *be made of Iron.*

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free-Eſtate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifeſt, in that having in thoſe five years, wherein they waged War againſt the Duke of *Millain*, ſpent three Millions and an half of Florens; their Treaſury was ſo far from being exhauſted, that the next year they beſieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Common-wealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*, the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a Million and a half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raiſed yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*, 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*; the Cuſtoms ariſing out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 Ducats, the Toll of Mill-ſtones only unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not ſhort of that; in all a Million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his Stock going amongſt the Bankers, and Trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loſeth the priviledges of a Nobleman, that betakes himſelf to Trade and Merchandize. He uſeth alſo to buy up almoſt all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and ſell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be ſold till all his be vended. The reſt is made up by *Exciſe* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor eſpecially: inſomuch that it was tartly ſaid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui ſub* Medicis *vivit miſere vivit*; applying an old rule in a new ſenſe.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Eſtate, is that of St. *Stephen*, inſtituted by *Coſmo di Medices*, *An.* 1561. and dedicated to St. *Stephen*, becauſe upon the Feſtival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the ſixth of *Auguſt*,

guſt, he won the famous Battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* IV. confirmed it the ſame year, and granted them all the Priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy, conditioned that thoſe of this Order ſhould make a Vow of Charity, of Conjugal Chaſtity, and Obedience; they are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romiſh* Church, and without note of Infamy. The Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Croſs on their left ſide, as well upon their Military Garment, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally againſt the *Turks* and *Moors*, for which cauſe ſetled firſt at *Piſa*, being near the Sea; but after at *Coſmopolis* in the Iſle of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain; the *Great Duke* the ſupreme Maſter of it. Other Orders are commonly ſimple, but this mixt; being partly Religious, partly Honourary.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three *Flower de Luces* of the reſt.

Here are in this Eſtate
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 26.

The State of LUCA.

IN the Weſt part of *Tuſcany*, betwixt the Eſtate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *Luca*, ſo called from *Lucumo*, a King of the *Tuſcans*, who is ſaid to have built it; ſituate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the Mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three Miles in compaſs, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modeſt People, Men of good Judgment, and Diſcreet, and by their Wiſdoms have preſerved themſelves a free Common-wealth, notwithſtanding the attempts of more powerful Neighbours: and they are very induſtrious alſo, and well ſeen in *Manufactures*, eſpecially in weaving Silks and Cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City ſeated in a Plain, compaſſed with Mountains on all ſides except towards *Piſtoa*: ſo ſtrongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Iſle of *Candy*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was leſs known) to be the four ſtrongeſt Towns in the *Chriſtian* World. The Streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-ſtone, and moſt eaſie to walk on: the Buildings very fair, built of Free-ſtone alſo, and beautified with pleaſant Gardens. On the North-weſt ſtands a very ſtrong Caſtle, near which lieth the Cathedral, ſtately paved with Marble, but very dark, as moſt of the *Popiſh* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the great Captains, *Cæſar*, *Pompey*, and *Craſſus*, ſo pernicious to the *Roman* Republick. For *Pompey* deſirous to maintain his Authority, *Cæſar* to get Honour, and *Craſſus* to increaſe his Wealth, here united their Councils: *Pompey*'s Authority to be upheld by *Cæſar*'s Arms, and *Craſſus* his Riches; *Cæſar*'s continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey*'s Power, and *Craſſus* his Money; and *Craſſus* his Eſtate to be ſecured by *Pompey*'s Greatneſs, and *Cæſar*'s Military Reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themſelves, aſſigning *Gaul* to *Cæſar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Craſſus*, *Syria*; which ſtrong Confederacy was the cauſe of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Craſſus* being ſlain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæſar* wanting a third Man to poize the ballance, fell firſt to diſcontents, then to Civil Wars, which at laſt made *Cæſar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which ſucceeded afterwards, was grounded that ſo memorated Speech of *Cicero*, that is to ſay, *Utinam* Pompeius *cum* Cæſare *ſocietatem aut nunquam iniiſſet aut nunquam diremiſſet*.

But to return again to the Affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became poſſeſſed by the *Goths*, from them recovered by *Narſes* with the reſt of *Italy*. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface* the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Counteſs of *Mathildis*: who being deceaſed without Iſſue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Eſcheat, the Citizens made a common purſe, and bought their Liberty of their Emperour *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some ſay the Money was disburſed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithſtanding this Purchaſe, and their Title by it, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* ſeized upon it again, under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Caſtruccio*, who had made himſelf abſolute Maſter of it. By a *German* Garriſon there left it was ſold to the *Genoeſe*; and having paſſed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles* IV. got it once again: of whom they once more purchaſed their deſired Liberties for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to ſecure themſelves thereof, demoliſhed the Caſtle built by *Caſtruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper ſtrength they have put themſelves under the protection of their Potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conduced moſt to their preſervation: and finding no ſecurity from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they ſeverally tried; they put themſelves at laſt into the Protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compaſs eighty Miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it ſelf, being that of *Luna*, a Biſhops See; all the reſt ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good Air, and very well Peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treaſury of 80000 Crowns *per annum*; and out of which the State is able to raiſe (if there be occaſion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe. A great ſtrength for ſo ſmall a *Signeury*, but all too weak to ſave them from the *Great Duke*'s clutches, if he did ſeriouſly attempt to force it, and would venture on the diſpleaſure of the Catholick King: beſides that, it is thought that he receives more profit thence in Gifts and Preſents, by letting it ſtand as it is, than it would yield (conſidering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magiſtrate is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every ſecond Month; aſſiſted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every ſix Month alſo; during which time they live together in the Palace, or common Hall. Other inferior Officers I inſiſt not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Biſhops only, which acknowledge the Archbiſhop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan*.

The Common wealth of GENOA.

DIrectly Weſt of *Tuſcany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lieth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviere di Genoa*, the Coaſt of *Genoa*, becauſe it lieth along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by ſome, *Il Genoueſate*, from *Genoa* the *Metropolis* of this Country and Common-wealth. A Common-wealth once of a larger Reputation and Authority than it is at the preſent; commanding heretofore the Iſlands of *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Chios* with ſome others in the *Greekiſh* Seas; the Town of *Capha*, or *Theodoſia* in the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*; *Pera*, on the other ſide of *Conſtantinople*; and a good part of *Tuſcany*.

It was alſo then ſo ſtrong both in Men and Shipping, that they ſent ſeven ſeveral Armies to the Wars of the *Holy Land*: and in the ſpace of three days only armed once upon occaſion of preſent ſervice, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being Veſſels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and ſixty Oars apiece;) and at another time, one hundred and ſixty ſix Gallies, as a ſudden pinch. By the advantage of this ſtrength, they beat the *Piſans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling him to pay 135000 Crowns for their Peace; they got a good ſhare in the diviſion of the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latins*, and held a very ſtrong hand over the *Venetians*. Theſe laſt they had once in ſo great an exigence, having vanquiſhed their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Iſland of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*, that the Senate ſent them a blank Charter, bidding them write down what Conditions they pleaſed, which ſhould be readily condeſcended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unſeaſonably proud of his Advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own diſpoſal. Whereupon the *Venetians*, now made deſperate, aſſault the ſecure *Genoeſe*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worſt, loſing their Iſlands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha* and *Pera* with their Iſlands in the *Greek* Seas, to the Great *Turk*; moſt of their Holds in *Tuſcany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the laſt being ſo broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to ſet out a Navy fit for an Enterpriſe. But theſe Misfortunes were occaſioned principally by their own Diviſions; the City being miſerably torn in pieces by continual Factions; firſt betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli* on the one ſide, the *Fliſci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, *Anno* 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri* and *Mollani*, againſt the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, *An.* 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themſelves, *An.* 1336. And fourthly between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did ſo weaken them both at home and abroad, that having loſt the greateſt part of their Eſtate, they were fain to put themſelves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the reſt; having now nothing left them but *Liguria* and the Iſle of *Corſica*.

1. *LIGURIA*, hath on the Weſt the River *Varus*, riſing about the edge of *Provence* in *France*; on the Eaſt, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuſcany*: on the North the *Apennine*-Hills; and on the South the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. It is in length an hundred and forty Miles; that is to ſay, from the Port of *Luna* in the Eaſt, to that of *Monaco* in the Weſt, which lieth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not anſwerable to the length: and is divided generally into two Parts or Provinces, the Eaſt and the Weſt, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a ſtout and warlike Nation, light and ſwift of Body, well practiſed in laying Ambuſhes, and not diſcouraged by an Overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Country ſerved them very well, being rough, mountainous and woody, and full of ſtraight and dangerous Paſſages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Caſtles, ſo that without much labour, they could neither be taken nor beſieged. And if at any time they were vanquiſhed in the open field, they had recourſe unto theſe Caſtles, and other Faſtneſſes, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains, in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades*, and *Ingauni*; all at laſt vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, after the ſecond *Punick* War: but not without much labour and pains, by reaſon of the Woods and Mariſhes and Mountains, within and behind which they retired and ſaved themſelves, inſomuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quàm vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this much moleſt the *Romans*, till at laſt *Poſthumius* ſo diſweaponed them, that he ſcarce left them Inſtruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Maſters. In the diviſion of whoſe large Territories by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italy*; as it was alſo one of the ſeventeen Provinces into which *Italy* was divided by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of Men they were in the breaking of the Weſtern Empire, may be known by their Actions both by Sea and Land, ſpoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandiſe than War, but moſt of all to Uſury. A Vice which the Chriſtians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the ſaying of a merry fellow, that in Chriſtendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when anſwer was made, that of all theſe there was rather too great a plenty than any ſcarcity, he replied, that if there were *Scholars* enough, ſo many would not be double or treble Beneficed; if *Gentlemen* enough, ſo many Peaſants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, ſo many *Chriſtians* would not profeſs *Uſury*. The Women are very fair and comely, wearing for the moſt part their hair in Treſſes, which they caſt over their Backs: they wear no upper Garments but of Cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under Garments of the pureſt ſtuff. The Women here are priviledged above all in *Italy*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publickly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at ſuch time as the *French* were Maſters of this Eſtate; who do allow their Wives ſuch exceſs of Liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtizan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the Women of the Country, or the City it ſelf, do abuſe this liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be paſt all ſhame; as they eſteem the *Genoan* Merchants (who make little reckoning of their promiſes, if not bound by Writing) to be men without Faith. Of which and other things concerning this Eſtate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne ſenza legni, &c.* that is to ſay, *Mountains without Wood, Seas without Fiſh, Men without Faith, and Women without Shame.*

The Country, as before ſaid, is very Mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy Rocks towards the Sea: ſo that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidſt thoſe Hills are Valleys of as rich a Vein, as moſt others in *Italy*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like Fruits; with ſuch Variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are ſeldom unfurniſhed of them in the Month of *December*. It yieldeth alſo great plenty of moſt pleaſant Wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Chriſto*, or *lacrymæ Chriſti*: This laſt ſo pleaſing to the Taſte, that it is ſaid, a *Dutchman* taſting of it as he travelled in theſe parts, fetched a great ſigh, and brake out into this expreſſion: How happy had it been with us, *ſi Chriſtus lacrymatus eſſet in noſtris regionibus*, if Chriſt had ſhed ſome of his Tears in the Country of *Germany!* Their greateſt want is that of Corn, and therewith they do ſupply themſelves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eaſtern part, are, 1. *Sarezana*, a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Florentines*, and one of the beſt pieces of this Republick. It is ſeated in a fruitful Plain, defended by a great Ditch and a Wall, and has an ancient Caſtle flank'd with four Walls: not far from it lyes *Sarzanella*, a Fort built by *Caſtraccio*. 2. *Pont-Remali* (*Pons Remuli, as the Latines* call it) of as great conſequence as that, but poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*. 3. *Lerigi*, a Haven in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4. *Seſtri*, a reaſonable good place, remarkable for as white Bread, and as pleaſant Wine as any in *Italy*. 5. *Fino*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatneſs: but they are ſet ſo thick, and intermingled with ſo many goodly Houſes, both on the Hills and the Valleys, that for the ſpace of twenty Miles, the whole Country ſeems to be one continual Building.

In the Weſt part the Towns of moſt importance are 1. *Monaco*, of old called *Monoecus*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven; belonging not long ſince to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi*, then its proper Owners; but of late in the year 1641. gotten by the *French*, under colour of a late Contract, who ſtill are poſſeſſed of it, and maintain a Garriſon in it, under pretence of protecting the Family of *Grimaldi*, in their ancient Poſſeſſion; and to that purpoſe have very ſtrongly fortified it. This Town ſtands two Miles from *Nizza* to the Eaſt. 2. *Vintimiglio*, a good Town, and ſweetly ſeated. 3. *Savona*, taken by the *Genoeſe*, *An.* 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the *interview* betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and *Lewis* XII. of *France*, *Anno* 1507. who having been deadly Enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here moſt ſtrangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* firſt boarding *Ferdinand*'s Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feaſting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his poſſeſſion, as Protector of the Eſtate of *Genoa*. Which kind of *Interviews* (I note this only by the way) as they chance but ſeldom; ſo when they do, they prove for the moſt part dangerous unto one of the Parties: great enmities not being eaſily forgot by perſons of a publick *Intereſt*: Nay, that notable Stateſman *Philip de Comines* utterly diſliketh all ſuch meetings of Princes, though in Amity and good Correſpondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* XI. of *France*, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*; who meeting purpoſely, *Anno* 1463. to change ſome friendly words together, took ſuch diſlike at each others Perſons and Behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an Interview betwixt *Edward* IV. of *England*, and the ſame King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperour, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His Reaſons I purpoſely omit, as not pertinent to my preſent undertaking, and make haſt again unto the Town: which is about a Mile and a half in Circuit, and hath many ſtately Buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: Being taken from the *Genoeſe* by the *Viſconti*, and the *Sforza*'s, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at laſt recovered again by thoſe of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yielded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, *viz. Gregory* VII. *Julio* II. and *Sixtus* IV. which is as much as *Genoa* it ſelf can brag of. This Town of *Savona*, had belonging to it a convenient Haven, which *Andrew Doria* endeavoured to Ruine, by ſinking two great Veſſels in the Mouth of it: Since which the *French* demanding the Town to make of it a Magazine of Salt, the States not only refuſed it, but alſo ordered the Mouth of the Harbour to be ſtopped with Maſons Work, which have intirely and irrecoverably ruin'd it. 4. *Nola*, upon the Seaſide, a commodious Haven. 5. *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town alſo, and very well fortified: honoured a long time with the Title of a Marquiſate, one of the ſeven founded by the Emperor *Otho*, (of which more hereafter;) but taken from the laſt Marquiſs by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governour of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and Garriſoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*, the poor Marquiſs being put off with an Annual Penſion, *Anno* 1602. *Baudrand* ſaith in the year 1599. it was ſold to the *Spaniards* by *Sforſia Andrea*, the laſt Marquis. 6. *Mileſimo*, a ſmall Town adjoyning, poſſeſſed upon the ſame right by the *Spaniard* alſo; who by theſe pieces hath a ſtrong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7. But the great Ornament of thoſe parts of *Italy*, is the City of *Genoa*, firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Janus* the Son of *Saturn*, as others ſay, by *Janus Genius Priſcus*, an *Italian* or *Tuſcan* King. But by whomſoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miſerably deſtroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, *A. U. C.* 534. repaired by *Lucretius Surius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whoſe Cauſe and Quarrel it was ruined: once again ſpoiled and waſted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, *An.* 660. or thereabouts: but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great, about the year 806. On his Foundation it now ſtands, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an Hill, full of ſtately Palaces, it giveth a moſt pleaſant and magnificent Proſpect. It is in compaſs ſix Miles, of an Orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land by Art and Nature; there being but one way to come to it by Land, and that over ſteep and craggy Rocks. The Streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and moſt of them on the ſides of the Hill; which is the reaſon that they uſe Horſe-litters here inſtead of Coaches, and moſt of the better ſort are carried on mens ſhoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs; which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nueva*, or the *New-ſtreet*, reaching from the Weſt to North-eaſt, is of a very fair breadth; each Houſe whereof is built with ſuch Kingly Magnificence, that it is thought to be the faireſt Street in the World. In all the reſt the Buildings for the height of two Stories are made of Marble, curiouſly wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be uſed any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, ſafe from the violence of Tempeſts, and well fortified: ſo that the *Spaniards* uſe to ſay, that were the Catholick King abſolute Lord of *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italy*, he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the People here continued ſubject to his Succeſſors, till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italy*, made them free, *Anno* 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being ſhrewdly weakned in their Eſtate, they were fain to give themſelves to Pope *John* XXII. after to *Robert* King of *Naples*. (About the year 935. this City was burnt by the *Sarazens*.) But being ſoon weary of a foreign Government, the People in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Boeca Negra* to be their Duke, *Anno* 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the Reign of *Charles* VII. under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many Inſolencies, they put themſelves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, *Anno* 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of thoſe Princes, in great Tranquility, who never carried towards them any rigorous Hand; ſave that once Duke *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great Maſs of Money. But as the Tale goeth, his Ageut being invited to the Houſe of a *Genoeſe*, and walking in a Garden with him, was ſhewed an herb growing there, called *Baſil*, which ſtroaking gently, he ſmelt thence a moſt pleaſing ſavour, but as unſavoury a ſmell when he ſtrained it hard. The *Genoeſe* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently ſtroak the hand of his puiſſance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by Obedience; but may chance to prove Rebellious if he do oppreſs it. But *Lodowick* being taken Priſoner by King *Lewis* XII. they firſt came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*, according as thoſe Nations had poſſeſſion of the State of *Millain*; and after many Changes and Alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis* I. Which being not able to preſerve by their proper ſtrength, they finally put themſelves under the ſhelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector; and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, *Anno* 1600. a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes Authority; that ſo the King might be indebted to that See; for moſt of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Maſters of this City. The ſame courſe of non-payment the King took with the reſt of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the reſt, inſomuch that it was commonly ſaid in *Italy*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter had ever made good in all his life. And thus you ſee this great City which commanded the *Ocean*, the Lady of ſo many Iſlands, and a great Moderator of the Affairs of *Italy*, fain to put her ſelf into the protection of a foreign Prince, and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treaſure; which he continually raiſeth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a ſorry Pay-maſter. And if the Wars he had with *England* did ſo drain their Purſes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him ſo indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no queſtion but the Revolt of *Catalogne*, and the laſting Wars made againſt him by the *French* in ſo many places; have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithſtanding this people do ſo thrive under his protection, and drew ſo great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private Men were never richer, the publick Treaſury never fuller than it is at the preſent. Additions. In the year 1674. *Lewis* the 14*th* the now King of *France*, ſent a powerful Fleet of 90 Sail, and Bomb'd this City five days together without any interruption, after which they made ſeveral Attacks by detached parties, which landed in ſeveral places, but were ſo warmly entertain'd by the *Spaniards*, who came in to the Relief of the *Genoeſe*, ſo that having ſpent all their Bombs, and plagued this City from the 17*th* of *May*, till the 28*th*, they were then forced to ſet Sail for *France*, having in this Action burnt the Ducal Palace, and about a third part of the City, moſt of their ſtately Churches, Hoſpitals, Monaſteries, and noble Buildings being laid in Aſhes, or very much damnified. The deſign of the *French* King, was to have made himſelf Maſter of it; but fail'd by his continuing the Bombing too long before they landed, the Terror turning into Rage and Revenge in the Delay.

CORSICA is an Iſland in the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Sea, oppoſite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is diſtant about ſixty Miles; and lying juſt north of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, from which it is diſtant ſeven Miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty Miles, ſeven in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longeſt day being almoſt fifteen hours.

The people are ſtubborn, poor, unlearned; ſuppoſed to be more cruel than other Nations, and ſo affirmed to be by *Cæſar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as ſome ſay, of the 52 Daughters of *Theſpius*, who being all got with child in one Night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Iſland, after peopled by them. From one of theſe Sons named *Cyrnus*, the Iſland had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in ſuch old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Euſtathius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corſica*, from a Woman ſo named, dwelling in the Coaſt of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the firſt that diſcovered it. But theſe Originals I look on, the firſt eſpecially, as the worſt kind of *Romances*: the Name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which ſignifies a Horn or Corner, by reaſon of the many Promontories with which it ſhoots into the Sea. *Corſica inſula multis promontoriis angulоſa eſt*, as it is in *Iſidore, Lib.* 15. *cap.* 6. And for the Name of *Corſica*, I ſhould derive it rather from the *Corſi* (by which name the Inhabitants thereof are called in moſt *Latine* Writers) one of the two Nations of moſt note in the Neighbouring Iſland of *Sardinia. Celeberrimi ea populorum Balari, & Corſi*, as we find in *Pliny*. Which *Corſi*, or ſome of them, being overborn by ſome new Invaders (which the Iſland of *Sardinia* was ſeldom free of) were fain to ſhift their ſeat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for Game, good Horſes, fierce Maſtiffs; and a Beaſt called *Muſoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Iſland, and *Sardinia* only; but there came *Muſrones*, or *Mucriones*, (for I conceive they are the ſame under divers names) ſaid to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of ſuch incredible hardneſs, that the Beaſt being caſt headlong againſt a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemies to his Den.

The Soil by reaſon of the Mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing Corn in leſs plenty, but the beſt Wines, and ſuch as the old *Romans* well reliſhed, in good meaſure. It produceth alſo Oyl, Figs, Raiſins, and Honey: the firſt three in a mediocrity of goodneſs, the laſt ſomewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholſom. It aboundeth alſo with Allom, Box-trees, Iron Mines, and the Tree called *Taxus*, whoſe poyſonous Berries, though in taſte pleaſing, are much fed on by Bees, and therefore thought to be the cauſe of the bitterneſs of the Honey. In ſome few places where the Rivers have their Currents, eſpecially towards *Liguria*, it recompenceth by its fertility, in bearing all manner of Grain, the barrenneſs of the Mountains. Which Mountains cutting through the midſt of it, divide the whole Iſland into *Ciſmontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Tranſmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet ſo, that the People on each ſide call themſelves the *Ciſmontanes*, and the other the *Tramontanes*. Both of them ſpeak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spaniſh*.

For Rivers, there are none of note; the principal of thoſe which the Iſland yields being called *Gelo*, and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, ſome of the Ancients reckoned 33. which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Caſtles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of ſome Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Biſhops See. But now the place of moſt Importance, is the Town of *Baſtia*, ſeated in the North-eaſt part of the Iſland, oppoſite almoſt unto *Alleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a ſtrong Garriſon to defend it: as being the ordinary Seat of the Governour ſent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Biſhop of *Alleria*, who makes there his Reſidence. 2. *Aiazze*, a reaſonable ſtrong Town, and a Biſhop See; and ſo is alſo 3. *Nebbio*, called *Chaſunum* by *Ptolomy*. Then there is 4. *Porto Urechio*, built not long ſince in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony ſent from *Genoa*. 5. St. *Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midſt betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*: and 6. St. *Boniface*, called by *Ptolomy*, *Portus Syracuſanus*, juſt oppoſite unto it in the South corner of the Iſle; both of them places of good ſafety, and capable of the greateſt Veſſels that frequent thoſe Seas.

Who where the firſt Inhabitants is not eaſily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had ſome footing here, is manifeſt by that of *Callimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it Φοινίακα Κύρνος, the *Phœnician*, *Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthagians* and *Tyrrheni* (which queſtionleſs he miſtook for *Tyrii*) caſt the *Phocenſes* out of his Iſland. But whether theſe *Phocenſes* did firſt inhabit, or only had a Colony in ſome part thereof, is not demonſtrable from thoſe Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a Conqueſt of it, and held it till the time of the firſt *Punick War*; when they were driven thence by the Valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally ſubdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till ſome time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Papyrius, A. U. C.* 541. This Iſland and *Sardinia* at the firſt being joyned together, governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two diſtinct Provinces, immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and conſequently Members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman Empire*, it became a Prey unto the *Vandals*, who uſed to ſend their condemned Perſons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for Shipping; the Country even till then being very much overgrown with Woods. Afterwards with the reſt of the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, againſt whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa*, armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquiſhed them in a fight at Sea, but loſt his Life in the Action: which notwithſtanding the *Genoeſe* following their good Fortune, ſeiſed on the Iſland, and carried thence thirteen of the Enemies Ships. The *Piſans* after this got poſſeſſion of it, but being vanquiſhed by the *Genoeſe* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that, it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, ſave that it remained ſomewhat longer than that City did in the hands of the *French*, who in the year 1554. ſeized on it by the Aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great diſhonour of Chriſtianity) they entertained in their Wars againſt *Charles* V. but in the end, reſtored it to the Common-wealth, upon the Peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. And for ſecuring of this Iſland to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handſom Project, imploying none but natural *Genoeſe* to ſerve in the Garriſons of the Iſlands, the better to keep under this untractable People; and filling all their Garriſons upon the *Continent* with natural *Corſicans*, whereby the Iſland is unfurniſhed of its ableſt Men, who alſo ſerve for *Hoſtages* of the *Publick Faith*.

Having thus taken a brief view of the ſeveral Parts and Members of this *Common-wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. Firſt for the *Government*, the principal of their Magiſtrates hath the name of *Duke*; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of leſs Eſteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of Life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called moſt properly the *Mayor* of *Genoa*. For this two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the Guard of his Perſon; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth ſome reſemblance of a *Negative Voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his Houſe as a private Perſon, but ſo, that during Life he hath the Office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are aſſiſtant eight principal Officers, who ſit upon the ſame Form with him, and continue in their Office for two years alſo; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeury*: but he, and they, in matters of moſt Weight and Moment, ſubordinate to the *General Council*, conſiſting of 400 Perſons, all of them Gentlemen of the City: who with the Nine before remembred do conſtitute the Body of the Common-wealth. Under this Form they have continued ever ſince, by the Power and Goodneſs of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himſelf their Prince) they were diſcharged of their Subjection to the *French*, *Anno* 1528. never in danger of Relapſing to their former Servitude, but in the treaſonable practice of the *Fliſchi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to poſſeſs themſelves of the *Principality* under the Protection of the *French*, had ſo laid their Plot, that *Auguſtine de Fliſchi*, who was deſigned to be their Duke, had in the Night-time ſeized on the Navy, and ſlain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one *Galley* to another, to make ſure of all, ſtumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious Treaſons were both drowned together.

As for their *Forces*, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 Men ready to arm at any time, as they ſee occaſion; 25 Gallies always ready in the Publick *Arſenal*, and four continually at Sea for the defence of their Trading. Sufficient ſtrength to ſave them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a ſtrong Invader. But the chief ſtrength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whoſe protection, though it coſts them dear, is worth their Money; and they have proſpered ſo well by it, that notwithſtanding all the Loſſes which they have ſuſtained, it is ſuppoſed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (beſides the Treaſury of St. *George*, which is very rich, and managed as a diſtinct Body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no leſs than 430000 Crowns *per annum*.

And for the *Treaſury* of St. *George*, though it contain no part of the Publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State diſtinct; yet it is of ſuch ready uſe, ſo able at all times to furniſh the Republick with vaſt ſums of Money; that the ſecurity and preſervation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Inſtitution and Adminiſtration whereof, together with the Benefit which from hence reboundeth unto this Eſtate, I cannot better preſent to the Readers View, than in the words of *Machiavel*, the greateſt Politick of his times; who in his Hiſtory of *Florence* hath expreſſed it thus: ‘*Poſt diuturnum illud bellum quod* Genoenſes *multis abhinc annis cum* Venetis *geſſere*, *&c.* After that tedious War between the *Genoeſes* and *Venetians*, was ended in the year 1281. and that the *Genoeſe* found themſelves unable to repay thoſe Moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in purſuit thereof, they thought it beſt to aſſign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that ſo in tract of time the whole debt might be ſatisfied; and for that end allotted them a common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of their Affairs. Theſe Men, thus made the Maſters of the publick Taxes, elect among themſelves a Common-Council of an hundred; and over them eight Officers of ſpecial power, to order and direct the reſt, and to diſpoſe of the *Intrado*: which Corporation ſo eſtabliſhed, they intituled St. *Georges Bank*. It hapned afterward, that the *Republick* wanting more Moneys, was glad to have recourſe unto St. *George*; who growing Wealthy by the orderly managing of his Stock, was beſt able to relieve them in their Neceſſities: and as before they aſſigned their Taxes over to him, ſo now, *ditionem ſuam oppignorabant*, they *mortgaged* all their Demain. So that St. *George* continually waxing richer, and the States poorer, this Corporation became poſſeſſed at laſt, of almoſt all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth; all which they governed by their own Magiſtrates, choſen by common ſuffrage from among themſelves. It followed hereupon, that the common People bearing leſs reſpect unto the Publick, applied themſelves unto St. *George*; this being always orderly and prudently governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny: this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that ſubject to the proud ambitious Luſts of each Uſurper, whether Domeſtick or Foreign. Inſomuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fregoſi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Soveraignty in this Eſtate, moſt of the People looked upon it as a quarrel which concerned them not: St. *George* not medling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preſerve his Liberties. *Rariſſimo ſanè exemplo*, *&c.* A moſt excellent and rare thing (ſaith he) never found out by any of the old *Philoſophers* in their imaginary forms of a Common-wealth, that in the ſame State, and the ſame People, one may ſee at the ſame time both Tyranny and Liberty, Juſtice and Oppreſſion, Civility and Miſgovernment: This only Corporation preſerving in the Common-wealth its ancient Luſtre. So that in caſe St. *George* ſhould in the end become poſſeſſed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Eſtate thereof, as it is poſſible it may, the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpoſe that great Maſter of *State-craft*; a Man of leſs Impiety, and more regular Life, than ſome of thoſe who have traduced him for an Atheiſt.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Archbiſhops 1. Biſhops 14.

The

The Eſtates of LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Romandiola*, and the Eſtate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the Weſt, with that part of the *Alpes* which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Travigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lieth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Ciſalpina*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more anon, and took this new Name from the *Lombards* or *Longobardi*, a People of *Germany* (of whom we have already ſpoken, but ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Hungary*,) who coming out of *Pannonia* poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of *Italy*; but left their Name to this Tract only. A Tract of Ground of which it may be truly ſaid, that, as *Italy* is the Garden of *Europe*, ſo *Lombardy* is the Garden of *Italy*, or the faireſt Flower in all that Garden. A Country of ſo rich a mixture, that ſuch another piece of Ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Paſtures ſhaded with ſuch excellent Fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fiſh, Corn, and Wine, cannot be found again in our Weſtern World: So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain* have ſtrived ſo eagerly, and with ſuch an effuſion of Chriſtian Blood for the Dutchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richeſt part) of this goodly Country; and but a ſpot of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing beſides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the Name of *Gallia Ciſalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over the *Alpes* by the taſte of the ſweet *Italian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, King of *Rome*, under the Conduct and Command of *Belloveſus*, Son of *Ambigatus*, King of the *Celtæ*, ſubdued the Natives, and poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Country, from the Weſt parts of the *Tuſcan* Sea and *Apennine* Hills, to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpes* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-eaſt, and the River *Arnus* on the South-eaſt. *Ciſalpina* it was called, becauſe it lay on that ſide of the *Alps* which was near to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other ſide of the Mountains, which had the Name of *Tranſalpina*. It was alſo called *Gallia Togata*, becauſe the People of it being civilized, conformed themſelves to the *Roman* Habit: that on the other ſide of the *Alps* being called *Braccata*, becauſe they kept themſelves to their former Mantles (reſembling thoſe now worn by the vulgar *Iriſh*) which by the *Latins* were called *Braccæ*. For though the word *Braccæ*, in ſome of our common Dictionaries, be rendred Gally-ſlops or Breeches (and poſſibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive, that the Habit heretofore of thoſe *Galls* was a kind of *Trouzes*, ſuch as thoſe uſually worn by the *Iriſh* Foot-men: yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago impoſita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Caſſocks, I conceive I had good reaſon to tranſlate it otherwiſe.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to ſay, 1. The *Inſubres*, inhabiting from the *Alps* to the River *Arnus*, and conſequently ſpreading over the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Florence*. 2. The *Cenomani*, who lay next the *Inſubres*, poſſeſſing the greateſt part of *Trevigiana*. 3. The *Boii*, taking up the reſt of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and ſo much of *Romandiola* as lieth on the North-weſt ſide of the River *Rubicon*. 4. The *Senones*, who paſſing over the *Rubicon*, inhabiting the reſt of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbine*. Of theſe the *Senones* (or *Semnones* as *Ptolomy* calls them) were of greateſt fame. Theſe were the Men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the Battel of *Allia*, followed their Victory unto *Rome*, which they ſacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which alſo had been taken by them, *ni anſeres diis dormientibus vigilaſſent*, as St. *Auſtin* ſcoffs it, if the Geeſe had not been more watchful than their Gods or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of Gold to forſake the City: but before the Money was received, they were aſſaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town, and vanquiſhed in a ſet Battel, about eight Miles off; who is therefore called *Rome's ſecond Founder*. This happed *Anno U. C.* 364. Vanquiſhed again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quinctius* the Dictator; and after that *Anno U. C.* 404. by the ſaid *Camillus*, being then 80 Years of Age, in the *Pontine* Fields: they got the *Boii* to aſſiſt them, and after joined with the *Samnites*, *Tuſcans*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the moſt part beaten, and the War carried to their own Doors, a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius* the Conſul; they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally ſo ſlaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimon*, *Anno U. C.* 470. that there was ſcarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Anceſtors had ſet fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus deſtroyed, the *Romans* ſuffered the reſt of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet till the end of the firſt *Punick* War, when being grown of more ſtrength, and at very good leiſure, they took up Arms againſt the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their Aid both the *Inſubrians* and *Tranſalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe. *An. U. C.* 528. Diſcomfited by *Æmilius* the *Roman* Conſul, near *Talamon* a City of *Tuſcany*, with a ſlaughter of 40000 of their Men; they were ſet upon in their own Country ſhortly after by the Conſul *Flaminius*, vanquiſhed and mulcted with the loſs of one half thereof, moſt of them after this diſaſter paſſing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Inſubres* and *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themſelves (the remainders of the *Tranſalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next Year after, (*Anno U. C.* 431.) under the Conſuls *M. Claudius Marcellus*, and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loſs of their Armies, and ſome of their beſt Towns, they did yield themſelves: the *Romans* ſo becoming Maſters of all this Country. And yet it was accompted as a Province diſtinct from *Italy*, until the ſetling of the Empire in *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Ciſalpina*; that is to ſay, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Tranſpadana*; as afterwards it made up four of the ſeven Provinces of the *Dioceſs* of *Italy*, according to the diſtribution of it which was made by *Conſtantine*. How it came with the reſt of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the reſt of that Kingdom, had been ſhewn already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* tranſferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*; it did ſo far preſerve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperors were ſometimes Crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleeveland*) with a Silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a Golden Crown at *Rome*, for the ſacred Empire. But the Emperor being weakned by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled, in concluſion, amongſt many Princes, as it ſtill continueth.

The *Lombards* being Maſters of it, and having given it their own Name, divided it by the River *Po* into *Longobardia Ciſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine* Mountains: and *Tranſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the firſt of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconſul of it. In the diviſion of *Italy* by *Auguſtus Cæſar* it had the name of *Gallia.* The other was by him honoured with the Name of *Italia Tranſpadana*, by which Name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentiſſimum Italiæ latus*, the moſt flouriſhing part of all *Italy*. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of uſe, and the whole Country being cantoned into many Eſtates, as before was ſaid, we will conſider it at the preſent as it ſtands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Travigiana*, deſcribed already, make up *Tranſpadana*; and thoſe of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Ciſpadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the Eaſt, the Eſtates of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the Weſt, *Piemont* and ſome part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Inſubres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui*, inhabiting in thoſe Parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*: but croſſing the Mountains with the reſt of the *Gallick* Nation, ſpoken of before, they ſetled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greateſt Tribes of the *Ciſalpine Gauls*: from thence this Country hath the name of *Inſubrium Ducatus* in ſome of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanenſis*, from *Mediolanium*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Addua*, 3. *Ollius*, and 4. *Ticinus*; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already; and beſides thoſe it hath alſo in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 Miles in length.

The chief Cities and Places of note, are, 1. *Modoecum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatneſs; the fame thereof ariſing from the Iron Crown kept in a Monaſtery here, wherewith ſome of the Emperors have been Crowned by the Archbiſhops of *Millain*. A Cuſtom taken up from the Kings of *Oſtrogoths*, who are ſaid to have firſt uſed the ſame, in teſtimony that they had won their Eſtates by *Iron*. 2. *Pavie* or *Papia*, ſeated on the Flood *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeazi*, the firſt Duke thereof; made an Univerſity by *Charles* IV. *Anno* 1361. And famous for the Battel in which *Francis* I. of *France* was taken Priſoner by *Charles* V. *Anno* 1525. It is ſeated, as before was ſaid, on the Flood *Ticinus*, about four Miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City ſo great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no leſs than 200 walking Paces long, built of Free-ſtone, and covered over-head with a Roof ſupported all along with Pillars. From this River the City it ſelf was anciently called *Ticinum*: and took the Name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Patria Piorum* (the two firſt Syllables of thoſe words being joined together) by reaſon of the many Godly Men it did produce. It lieth in length from Eaſt to Weſt, a very fair Street dividing it in the very midſt: on the Weſt ſide whereof are two handſome Market-places, and a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Galeazi*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*; whoſe Tomb, together with that of *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*, are here ſtill remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being ſo pleaſed with the ſituation of the place, that they made it the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the beſt endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns *per Annum*. 3. *Como*, the birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handſome Town ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the Name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the Waters do not mingle: that of the River paſſing over thoſe of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair Houſes and handſome Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midſt thereof an Iſland called *Comacina*, in which there was a ſtrong Fortreſs in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preſerve their Treaſure. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latin*, ſeated in a proſperous Soil, and bleſſed with a painful and induſtrious People. This Town was built by *Frederick* the Emperor, in the Year 1204. and is now a pitiful Frontier Town towards the States of *Venice*. There was another Town of the ſame Name, much more ancient, and a *Roman* Colony, but which was ruin'd by the Citizens of *Millain* in the Year 1158. 5. *Novara*, ſituate upon an high Hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families, of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, conſigned over, upon ſome Conditions, to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is ſituate within the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; and ſo is, 6. *Alexandria* alſo, once a poor ſmall Village, known by the Name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oaks adjoining to it: afterwards being raiſed to its preſent Greatneſs, by the joint Purſes of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*; in honour of the Emperor it was called *Cæſarea*. But in ſhort time theſe People ſiding with the Popes, drew on themſelves the Anger of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*; who having in a manner deſolated the City of *Millain*, the People thereof, at the deſtruction of the City retired to this Town; calling it, in honour of Pope *Alexander* III. whoſe part they then took againſt the Emperor, by the Name of *Alexandria*, which it ſtill retaineth. It is now the ſtrongeſt Outwork of the whole Dutchy, well fortified againſt all Aſſaults and Batteries which may come from *France*. 7. *Marignan*, ſituate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis* I. and now the Title of a Marquiſs. 8. *Cremona*, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthful Soil; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this Day; and of ſuch fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the Name of *Cremona the Faithful*. It was built in the firſt Year of the ſecond *Punick* War, and burnt to the Ground by *Veſpaſian*'s Soldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Veſpaſian*'s General, firſt after his Victory entred into it, he went into a Bath to waſh away the Sweat and Blood from his Body; where finding the Water ſomewhat too cold, he ſaid by chance, that it ſhould anon be made hotter. Which words the Soldiers applying to their greedy deſires, ſet fire on the Town, and ſpent four Days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Veſpaſian* it was again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower, from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus Portus in Ancona.* 9. *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Dioceſs of *Italy*; called therefore Μητρόπολις τῆς Ιταλίας, the *Metropolis* or Mother City of *Italy*, as *Dionyſius* one of the Biſhops hereof, is called the Metropolitan of *Italy* by S. *Athanaſius*. At this time the faireſt and the biggeſt of all *Lombardy*, having a Caſtle ſo ſtrongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable; but ſo narrow and full of Buildings, that it could not ſtand out againſt a good Army, or reſiſt a ſhowre of Bombs three Days. A City very populous, containing 200000 Perſons; and of great Trade, here being private Shops equalling the publick Store-houſes of other places; the People conſequently ſo rich, that the Wife of every Mechanick will flant it in her Silks and Taffaties. The Trade now falls mightily by the vaſt Importations that the *Eaſt-India* Companies bring into *Europe*, to the great abatement of their Trade and Wealth. This City is ſaid to have been built by the *Gauls*, 359 Years before Chriſt. It is ſeven Miles in circuit, and honoured with an Univerſity, wherein flouriſhed *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Cælius Rhodoginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is in as commodious a Soil as any in *Italy*, environed with Water by two great Channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Teſis* or *Atheſis*, which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in ſo great abundance, that things there are of very cheap rates; and add much alſo to the induſtry of the Inhabitants in the vending and diſperſing of their Manufactures, which are of great eſteem in moſt parts of the World. The Buildings of the City generally are fair and ſtately, but three eſpecially commended for their Magnificence; that is to ſay, The Caſtle, the Hoſpital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth uſe to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apoſtle was its firſt Biſhop, and St. *Ambroſe* one of his Succeſſors; that formerly their Biſhop ſtood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that ſince thoſe times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to ſay, *Alexander* II. *Urban* III. *Celeſtine* V. and of late *Gregory* XIV.

As for the Fortunes of it, it continued in the Power of the *French*, and the King of *Italy* of that Nation, from the deſtruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the Houſe of *Charles* the Great, and came at laſt into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, from whoſe obedience it revolted *Anno* 1161. in behalf of Pope *Alexander* III. the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the People ſtill miniſtring freſh occaſions of diſlike and quarrel. *Beatrix* the Wife of *Frederick* coming to ſee the City, without any ill Intentions to it, was by the irreverent People firſt Impriſoned, and then moſt barbarouſly uſed; for ſetting her upon a Mule, they turned her Face towards the Tail, which they made her hold inſtead of a Bridle; and having thus ſhewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the Gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible Affront, the Emperor beſieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the People to die without Mercy, but ſuch as would undergo this Ranſom: Between the Buttocks of a skittiſh and kicking Mule, there was faſtned a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, ſuch as deſired to live muſt ſnatch out with their Teeth, their Hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the Streets. A condition which moſt of them accepted; and thereupon gave occaſion to the Cuſtom uſed among the *Italians*, who when they intend to ſcoff or diſgrace a Man, are wont to put their Thumb betwixt two of their Fingers, ſaying, *Ecco la Fico*; a diſgrace anſwerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is ſuſpected to be a Cuckold. The City after this rebelling, and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the Ground, pulled down the Walls, and cauſed the whole Ground on which it ſtood to be plowed up, and ſowed with Salt; ſeeming to threaten by that Emblem, that it ſhould never be re-edified. Which notwithſtanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope, with the help of theſe *Millaneſe* and *Venetians*, had at laſt the better of the Emperor; whom he enjoyned, after a vile ſubmiſſion, to undertake a Journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of a *Republick*; in which condition they continued about 56 Years: when *Otho*, ſurnamed *Viſconti* (*quaſi bis Comes*, becauſe he was Lord of *Millain* and *Angerona*) aſſumed the Title to himſelf, and ſetled it upon that Family after his deceaſe; but ſo that for the moſt part they were under the Command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeazo* I. ſo called (as ſome write) becauſe the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his Birth, added to the Eſtate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the Perſon of *John Galeaze* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready Money; which *John* increaſed ſo mightily in Wealth and Power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuſcany*. To him ſucceeded *John Maria*, and after him his Brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only Daughter (but illegitimate) to *Franciſco Sforza*, the beſt Commander of his times; and at his Death appointed *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his Heir and Succeſſor. Before *Alfonſo* could take any benefit of this deſignation, *Sforza* was quietly poſſeſſed both of the City and the loves of the People. This *Francis Sforza* (I muſt needs crave leave to tell this Story) was the Son of *James Attendulo*, a plain Country-man, who going to his Labour with his Ax in his Hand, whilſt a great Army was paſſing by him, compared the Miſery and unpleaſingneſs of his preſent Condition with thoſe fair probabilities which a Martial Life did preſent unto him; and being in a great diſpute within himſelf what were beſt to do, he preſently fell upon a reſolution of putting the Queſtion to the determination of the *Heavenly Providence*, by caſting his Ax unto the top of a Tree next to him, conditioning with himſelf, that if the Ax came down again, he would contentedly apply himſelf to his wonted Labour; but if it hung upon the Boughs, he would betake himſelf unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in paſſage. He did ſo, the Ax hung upon the Boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived ſo well in that Imployment, that he became one of the beſt Captains of his Time, ſurnamed *de Cotoniogla* from the place of his Dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatneſs of his noble Courage. By *Antonia*, the Daughter of *Francis di Caſalis*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza* whom now we ſpeak of, who was ſo fortunate a Commander in the Wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his Party, *Philip*, the Duke of *Millain*, beſtowed his Daughter upon him, and thereby a fair Title to this great Eſtate, which he ſucceſſively obtained againſt all Pretenders. In his Line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* XII. of *France*, the Son of *Charles*, and Nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina*, the ſole Daughter of *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke; who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Switzers*) into his Hands, carried him Priſoner into *France*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Eſtate. Outed not long after by the Confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of ſo great a Neighbour; he left the Cauſe and Quarrel unto *Francis* I. his next Succeſſor in that Kingdom; in purſuance whereof, it is ſaid by *Bellay*, a *French* Writer, that the uſe of Muſkets was firſt known. But *Francis* being, in concluſion, taken at the Battel of *Pavie*, and carried Priſoner into *Spain*, for his releaſe, was forced to releaſe all claim unto this Eſtate. A releaſe long before endeavoured by ſome *French* Politicians, becauſe the Pretenſions hereunto had brought ſuch damage unto that Crown: and no leſs eagerly oppoſed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the ſame reaſon that *Scipio Naſica* did oppoſe the deſtruction of *Carthage*, that is to ſay) becauſe it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual diſcipline of War, but ſerved for a purgation of idle and ſuperfluous People. Yet notwithſtanding this Releaſe, *Francis* renewed the War again, and laid Siege to *Millain*, then under the Command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spaniſh* Garriſon: during which War, the wretched *Millaneſe* endured the worſt of Miſeries: For firſt the Governour, under colour of providing Pay for his Soldiers, got all the Victuals of the Town into the Caſtle, to be ſold again at his own price: which many of the poorer ſort not able to pay, periſhed of Famine in the Streets. And on the other ſide, his Soldiers which were quartered in moſt parts of the City, uſed when they wanted Money, to chain up their Hoſts, and then to put them to a Ranſom. Such as upon this barbarous uſage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiſcate: On which there followed ſuch a diſconſolate deſolation, that the chief Streets were overgrown with Nettles and Brambles. In this miſerable eſtate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, reſtored it to *Francis Sforza*, Brother to the laſt Duke *Maximilian*, and Son of that *Lodowick*, who to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, had moſt improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without Iſſue, and the Houſe of *Sforza* failing in him, the Emperor entered on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the ſame to his Succeſſors in the Realm of *Spain*. This ſaid, we will ſum up the whole Story of this Eſtate, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

1277 1. *Otho Viſconti*, Archbiſhop of *Millain*.
1295 2. *Matthew*, Brothers Son to *Otho*, confirmed in his Command of *Millain* by *Albertus* the Emperor.
1322 3. *Galeaze Viſconti*, Son of *Matthew*, diſſeiſed of his Command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
1329 4. *Actio Viſconti*, Son of *Galeaze*, confirmed in his Father's Power by the ſame *Lewis* the Emperor.
1339 5. *Luchino Viſconti*, Brother to *Galeaze*.
1349 6. *John Viſconti*, the Brother of *Luchino*.
1354 7. *Galeaze* II. Son of *Stephen*, the Brother of *John*.
1378 8. *John Galeaze*, Son of the firſt *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *An.* 1395.
1402 9. *John Maria*, Son of *John Galeaze*, ſlain by the People for his horrible Tyrannies.
1412 10. *Philip Maria*, the laſt of the *Viſconti* which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great Power in ſwaying the Affairs in *Italy*. He died *Anno* 1446. the *Millaneſe* for ſome Years reſuming their former Liberty.
1446 11. *Francis Sforze*, in right of his Wife *Blanch*, the baſe Daughter of *Philip*, ſeconded by the power of the Sword, admitted Duke by the general conſent of the People of *Millain*, one of the Knights of the Noble Order of the Garter.
1461 12. *Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
1477 13. *John Galeaze Sforze*, privately made away (as it was ſuppoſed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
1494 14. *Lodowick Sforze*, the Son of *Francis*, and Brother of *Galeaze*, who to ſecure himſelf of his ill got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italy*.
1501 15. *Lewis* XII. of *France*, Son unto *Charles*, and Nephew to *Lewis*, Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina*, Daughter to *John*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, vanquiſhed *Lodowick*, carried him Priſoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himſelf.
1513 16. *Maximilian Sforze*, the Son of *Lodowick*, reſtored to the Dukedom by the Power of the *Switzers* and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* I. Son-in-law and Succeſſor to King *Lewis* XII. in the Kingdom of *France*.
1529 17. *Francis Sforze*, Brother of *Maximilian*, reſtored to the Eſtate, and the *French* expelled by the Puiſſance of *Charles* V. who after the Death of this Duke *Francis* (the laſt of the *Sforzes*) *Anno* 1535. united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of ſuch great Extent, and Power, as in former Times; there being but nine Cities remaining of thoſe 29 which were once under the Command of the Dukes hereof, the reſt being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*; and yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Chriſtendom* (as *Flanders* was accounted the prime Earldom of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the diſcharge of his Garriſon-Soldiers, the defraying of his Vice-Roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Miniſters, it is conceived that he ſpends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge, an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Sarazen*, vanquiſhed by *Otho* the firſt of the *Viſconti* in the *Holy Land*.

Here are in this Dukedom,
Archbiſhop 1. Biſhops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Millain*; on the Eaſt, with *Romandiola*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reaſonably good, and yieldeth all ſorts of Fruits, being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Paſtures, the very High-ways by the Fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be ſo civil and well-bred as the reſt of *Italy*; childiſh in their Apparel, without manly gravity; poor in the entertainment of their Friends, and exacting all they can from Strangers.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1. *Merçaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2. *Bozilia*, a ſmall, but pleaſant Habitation, belonging to ſome Princes of the Ducal Family; built with fair Cloyſters towards the Street, in which Paſſengers may walk dry in the greateſt Rain. 3. *Petula*, a ſmall Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born, but generally ſaid to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* Virgilio *gaudet*, as the old Verſe is) becauſe the Village is ſo near the City of *Mantua* (being but two Miles diſtant) that his Birth might very well be aſcribed unto it. 4. *Mantua*, ſeated on the River *Nincius*, now called *Sarca*, which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a paſſage unto *Venice*. By Nature ſtrong, environed on three ſides with a running Water, half a Mile in breadth; and on the fourth ſide with a Wall. The Dukes, to take their pleaſure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaure*, five Stories high, and capable of two hundred Perſons (whence it had the Name) furniſhed very richly both for State and Pleaſure. *Oenus*, the Son of *Manto* the Propheteſs, the Daughter of *Tireſias*, is ſaid to have been the Founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mother's Names; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil*, a Native of thoſe parts, do report it ſo; this City being one of thoſe which the *Tuſcans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the ſoundeſt Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whoſoever built at firſt) in the declining times of Chriſtian purity, for a Council holden in it, *An.* 1061. wherein it was decreed, that the chooſing of the Pope ſhould from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*; a Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was firſt by *Conſtantine* III. ſurnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and People of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict* II. *Anno* 684. reſumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the College of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town; on the Eaſt-ſide of a Bridge of about 500 Paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, ſtands the Duke's Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of St. *Peter*. The Palace very fair and ſtately, but far ſhort for the pleaſures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mermirollo*, five Miles from the City; which though it be of a low Roof (after the manner of ancient Buildings) yet it is very richly furniſhed, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens; able to lodge, and give content to the beſt Prince in Chriſtendom. Here are alſo many other Towns, as 5. *Capræna*, and 6. *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the the Fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be obſerved that *Mantua* followed for long time the Fortunes of the Weſtern Empire; till given by *Otho* II. Son to *Theobald* Earl of *Canoſſe*, for the many good Services he had done him. *Boniface* who ſucceeded him, had to Wife *Beatrix*, the Siſter of *Henry* II. and by her was the Father of *Mathildis*, that famous Warriourеſs, who carried ſo great a ſtroke in the ſtate of *Italy*. Being diſpoſſeſſed of her Eſtate by *Henry* III. ſhe joined in Faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and diſmembred from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her Death (having had three Husbands, but no Iſſue) ſhe gave in Fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *An.* 1115. After her Death, *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that Protection failing them, by little and little, it was brought under the Family of the *Bonacelſi*; who lording it over a free People with too great ſeverity, contracted ſuch a general hatred, that *Paſſavino*, the laſt of them, was ſlain in the Market-place by the People, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman, who preſently with great applauſe took to himſelf the Government of the Eſtate, *Anno* 1328. which hath continued in his Houſe to this very day, with a great deal of luſtre: Whoſe Succeſſors take here as followeth, under the ſeveral Titles of

The Lords, Marquiſſes, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

Showartus gives us this Account of the firſt Original of this Family; *Hugo*, Son of *Hugo*, Earl of *Province*, the Grand-child of *Lotharius* III. Great Grand-child of *Lotharius* II. which laſt was the Son of *Lotharius* the Emperor; marrying a Daughter of the Family of *Gonzaga*, of *Lombardy*, obtained the Inveſtiture of this Principality from *Adelbertus*, a Kinſman, in the Year 1009. and left it to his Son *Gerhard Gonzago Aloiſius*, or *Lewis Gonzaga*, who under *Charles* III. in the Year 1329. was made Captain of *Mantua*, was the Eleventh in the Succeſſion from *Gerhard*.

A. Chr.
1328 1. *Lewis Gonzaga*, the firſt of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
1366 2. *Guido*, Son of *Lewis*.
1369 3. *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* II. Son of *Guido*.
1382 4. *Francis Gonzaga*, Son of *Lewis* II. highly extolled by *Pagio* the *Florentine*, for his Wiſdom and Learning; who valiantly repulſed the attempts made againſt his Eſtate by *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*.
1407 5. *John Franciſco Gonzaga*, created the firſt Marquiſs of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigiſmond*, in 1433. *Sept.* 22.
1444 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. Son of *John Franciſco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick*, and the King of *Denmark* with great magnificence.
1478 7. *Frederick*, Son of *Lewis* III.
1484 8. *Francis* II. Son of *Frederick*.
1519 9. *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* V. with great ſolemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua* 1530. and declared Marquiſs of *Montferrat*, in right of his Wife.
1540 10. *Francis* III. Son of *Frederick* II. Duke of *Mantua* and Marquiſs of *Montferrat*.
1550 11. *William*, the Brother of *Francis* III. created the firſt Duke of *Montferrat*.
1587 12. *Vincent*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.
13. *Francis* IV. Son of *Vincent*, had to Wife *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a Daughter named *Mary*; in whoſe behalf the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the War againſt her Uncle for *Montferrat*.
1613 14. *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *Francis* IV. ſucceeded him in both Eſtates, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15. *Vincent* II. the Brother of *Ferdinand*, and of *Francis* IV.
1628 16. *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers*, in *France*, by his Mother's Line; and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*, by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick* I. Duke of *Mantua*; ſucceeded on the death of *Vincent* II. but not without great oppoſition of the *Spaniſh* Faction, who ſacked *Mantua*, diſtreſſed *Caſal*, and much impoveriſhed both Eſtates. But the Buſineſs was at laſt compoſed by the Power of the *French*, and the Inveſtiture conferred upon him by the hands of the Emperor.
1637 17. *Charles* III. Son of *Charles* II. and Grand-ſon of *Charles* I. ſucceeded his Grand-father, his Father dying in the Year 1631.
1665 18. *Ferdinand Charles*, the preſent Duke of *Mantua*, was born *Aug* 31. 1652. he married *Iſabella Clara*, Daughter of *Leopold* V. Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, but has no Children by her.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* alſo) are in circuit nigh unto thoſe of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much ſhort, which amount to about 500000 Ducats only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burthenſome to his Subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all ſides Land-locked from Navigation and Traffick.

The chief Order of Knighthood in theſe Dukedoms, is, of *The Blood of our Lord JESUS CHRIST*, inſtituted *Anno* 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was ſolemnized between his Son *Francis* and Lady *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It conſiſteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Sovereigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul* V. The Collar hath Threads of Gold laid on Fire, and interwoven with theſe words, *Domine Probaſti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, ſupporting three drops of Blood, and circumſcribed with *Nihil iſto triſte recepto*. It took this Name, becauſe in St. *Andrew*'s Church in *Mantua*, are ſaid to be kept as a moſt precious Relique, certain drops of our *Saviour's Blood* (thou canſt not, O Reader but believe it) with a piece of the *Sponge*.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Croſs *Petee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the ſecond, under an Eſcocheon in *Feſſe*, charged quarterly with *Gules*, a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbiſhop 1. Biſhops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoining to them; both of them ſituate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Ciſpadana*; and conſequently partake of the Pleaſures and Commodities of it.

The People of this Dukedom are ſaid to be better natured than moſt of *Italy*; thoſe of *Modena* being quick in their Reſolution, eaſie to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of preſent Wits, and fit for any thing they can be imployed in: the Women in both Towns of a middle diſpoſition, neither too courtly, nor too froward, as in other places.

The firſt principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the Name of *Mutina*, and famous in thoſe times for the firſt Battel betwixt *Anthony* and *Auguſtus Cæſar*; this latter being then not above eighteen Years of Age, and yet made head of a new League againſt *Antonius*, whom the Senate and People looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirſius* and *Panſa*, then Conſuls; the fortune of the Day ſo equal, that *Anthony* left the Field, and the Conſuls their lives, leaving *Auguſtus* the abſolute command of a powerful Army, into whoſe favour he did ſo cunningly work himſelf, that he made them the foundation of his future greatneſs. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, ſituate near the *Apennine* in a very good Soil, and of indifferent fair Buildings. In the diſtractions of *Italy*, betwixt the Emperor's and the Popes, *Guido* the Pope's Legate, and then Biſhop thereof, conſigned it over to *Azo* of the Houſe of *Eſte*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1304. the Pope himſelf conſenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly Tribute of 10000 Crowns: ſince which time it hath been for the moſt part in the Power of that Houſe: *Borſius*, the Marquiſs of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick* III. made Duke of *Mantina*. 2. *Reggio*, the ſecond Town of note, hath taſted much of the ſame fortune; at firſt a *Roman* Colony called *Legium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Goths* when they came firſt into *Italy*, repaired and compaſſed with a Wall by its own Inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canoſſe*. But being weary of that Yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in thoſe buſtling times, they gave themſelves unto *Obizo*, the Father of *Azo*, *An.* 1292. and after that in the Year 1326. to the See of *Rome*. Paſſing through many other hands, it was at laſt ſold for 60000 Ducats to the *Viſconti*, Lords of *Millain*, *Anno* 1370. and in the end recovered by the Houſe of *Eſte*, *Anno* 1409. and gave the Title of a Duke to the aforeſaid *Borſius*, whom *Frederick* III. made Duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*, 1452.

The Succeſſors of this *Borſius* are before laid down in the Succeſſion of *Ferrara*, who held the whole Eſtate together till the death of *Alfonſo* the laſt Duke. He dying without lawful Iſſue, *Anno* 1595. left his Eſtate to *Cæſar de Aſte*, his Nephew by a baſe Son called *Alphonſo* alſo; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement* VIII. a War was threatned for the whole; but at laſt compromiſed upon theſe conditions, That the Church of *Rome* ſhould have *Ferrara*, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as the Eſtate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena* and *Reggio* being *Imperial Fiefs*, ſhould remain to *Cæſar*, but to be held in Fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cæſar* to have leave to carry away all his moveable Goods, to ſell ſuch of his Lands as were not of the ancient demain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, diſtinct, and independant of any other: each City being well fortified, and garriſoned, and furniſhed with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raiſe out of his Eſtates, I cannot poſitively determine; but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*, I conceive they cannot yield leſs than 100000 Crowns of yearly Income. The Arms of this D. the ſame with thoſe of *Ferrara*, before blazon'd.

Schovartus gives this Account of the Pedigree of this Houſe: *Alphonſus* I. Duke of *Ferrara*, had a natural Son by *Laura Euſtachia*, called *Alphonſus*, and made by him Marquis *di Ceſſo*, and he was the Father of *Cæſar de Eſte*, who by *Alphonſus* II. Duke of *Ferrara*, was appointed Heir of the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, by the conſent of *Maximilian* II. and *Rudolphus* II. Emperors of *Germany*: but his Succeſſion was oppoſed by *Clement* VIII. Pope of *Rome*. His Succeſſor (ſaith he) was *Francis* I. who was the Father of *Alphonſus*.

1597 1. *Cæſar d' Eſte*, Grand-child of *Alfonſo*, the firſt Duke of *Ferrara*, and became the firſt Duke of *Modena* (of this Branch) by an Agreement made with Pope *Clement* VIII. *Jan.* 11. 1598.
1628 2. *Alphonſo*, Son of *Cæſar d' Eſte*.
1644 3. *Francis* I. Son of *Alphonſo*, Father of *Mary* late Queen of *England*.
1658 4. *Alfonſo* II. Son of *Francis*.
1662 5. *Alphonſus* III. born in the Year 1660. and ſucceeded *Alfonſo* his Father when he was but two Years old.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of PARMA hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*; on the South the *Appennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the Eaſt the Country of *Modena* and *Romandiola*, from which laſt parted by the River *Scultenna*, now called *Panaro*; on the Weſt *Montferrat*: ſituate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Ciſpadana*; and much of the ſame nature both for Soil and Air, and other the Commodities of thoſe parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the ſame time were. It is ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame Name, which runneth almoſt through the midſt of it; beautified with very handſome Buildings, and peopled by a Race of ingenious Men, whether they do betake themſelves to Arts or Arms. The Grounds about this City are of excellent Paſturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheeſe which is called *Permeſan*. 2. *Placentia*, *Piacenza*, ſeated on the *Po*, one of the firſt Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongſt the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, and famous for the reſiſtance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Aſdrubal*, who ſeverally in vain beſieged it; made afterwards the Metropolis of the Province of *Æmilia*, yet nothing the leſs beautiful for ſo great an Age. The Fields adjoining have the ſame commendation with thoſe of *Parma* for moſt excellent Cheeſe; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3. *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Conſtans*, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Great; the Patrimony of the Noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Sholar) but held by them as Feudataries to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4. *Briſcello*, called anciently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City of *Parma*, of no great note at the preſent time, but memorable in the *Roman* Story for the death of the Emperor *Otho*, who here killed himſelf. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens* and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire, he rather choſe to fall by his own Sword, than that the *Romans* ſhould be forced for his ſake, to renew the War: And this he did with ſo much honour to himſelf, that many of his Soldiers ſlew themſelves at his *Funeral Pile*; not out of conſciouſneſs of Crime, or for fear of Puniſhment, but to teſtifie their affections to him, and to follow ſuch a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly ſay of him, as he is ſaid by *Tacitus* to have ſaid of himſelf, *viz. Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit.* 5. *Monticella*, in the middle way almoſt between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and oppoſite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

Theſe Towns (as others in theſe parts) have been partakers of the diverſities of Fortune, as being (after the declining of the Weſtern Empire) ſometimes under

der the *Venetians*, moſt times under the *Millanoys*; and at laſt conquered by Pope *Julius* II. in the confuſions and diſtractions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two laſt Princes of the Houſe of *Sforza*. By *Paul* III. being of the Houſe of the *Farneſis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his Son *Petro Aleigi* (or *Petrus Aloyſius*, as the *Latins* call him) with the Title of Duke, *Anno* 1545. The Signeury of *Camerine*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbin*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a Man of moſt vicious Life, had amongſt other Villanies committed an unſpeakable violence on the Perſon of *Coſmos Chirius* the Biſhop of *Fanum*; and ſoon after poyſoned him. For which moſt deteſtable Fact, he received no other chaſtiſement of his Father than this, *Hæc vitia me non commonſtratore didicit*, that he was ſure he had not learnt thoſe Vices by his example. But going on in theſe wicked courſes, he was ſlain at laſt by Count *John Aguzzola*, and *Placentia*, after a ſhort Siege, yielded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (Vice-Roy in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles* V.) conceived to be privy to the Murder. *Octavian*, the Son of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himſelf in *Parma* as well as he could; but being hated by the new Pope, and diſtruſtful, not without good cauſe of the Emperor's Purpoſes, he had quite loſt all, if *Henry* II. of *France* had not taken him into his Protection; for the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithſtanding that *Octavian* had married his baſe Daughter) to have made himſelf Lord of the Town; and the *French* King was loth to ſee ſo great a ſtrength added to the Emperor's poſſeſſion in *Italy*. When the War had now laſted four Years, *Philip* II. (who afterward ſucceeded *Charles*) conſidering how neceſſary it was for his Affairs in *Italy*, to have this *Octavian* his Friend, reſtored unto him the City of *Plaiſance* or *Placentia*, and ſo withdrew him from the *French* Faction, *Anno* 1557. Yet becauſe he would be ſure to keep his Houſe in a perpetual dependance on *Spain*, he reſtored it not abſolutely at the preſent, but held the Citadel thereof with a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, till the Year 1583. when in regard of the good ſervices which *Alexander*, Prince of *Parma*, had done him in his Wars againſt the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he cauſed it to be ſurrendred into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his ſettling upon this Houſe the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other perſonal Favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of *Spain* ſeem to have given ſome ſatisfaction to this Houſe for ſtepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made ſuch a probable Title, as would have troubled his Eſtate, had they ſtood upon it,

The Dukes of *Parma*.

A. Chr.	
1545	1. *Petro Luigi Farneſis*, Son to *Paul* III. made by the Pope, his Father, the firſt Duke of *Parma*.
1550	2. *Octavian Farneſis*, Son to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret*, baſe Daughter of *Charles* V. afterwards Governeſs of the *Netherlands*.
1586	3. *Alexander*, Son of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Auſtria*, one of the moſt renowned Soldiers of his time, Governour of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip* II.
1592	4. *Rainutio Farneſis*, Son of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldeſt Daughter of *Edward* Son to King *Emanuel*, one of the Competitors for that Crown.
1622	5. *Odoardo* or *Edward Farneſis*, Son of *Rainutio*.
1646	6. *Rainutio* II. ſucceeded *Edward* his Father, in the Year 1660. *April* 29. He married *Ioland*, the Daughter of *Amidæus Victor*, Duke of *Savoy*, who died in 1663. after which he married *Iſabella d' Eſte*, by whom he has one Son named *Odoardo*. And he is now marrying *Hedewick Elizabeth Amalia*, Daughter of *Philip William*, Elector Palatine, and Siſter to the Empreſs of *Germany*, and the Queens of *Spain* and *Portugal*.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THE Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT* is ſituate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the Eaſt and Weſt; extended North and South in a Line or Branch from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which laſt it was ſometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Ciſapennina* for diſtinction ſake.

It took this Name either *à monte ferrato*, from ſome Mountain of it ſtored with Iron; or elſe *à monte feraci*, as ſome rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to ſay truth, though the whole Country ſeem to be nothing elſe than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of ſuch wonderful fruitfulneſs, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

It is bounded on the Eaſt by the Dukedom of *Millain* and the States of *Genoua*; on the North with the Territories of *Vercelti*, *Biella*, and *Canaveſe*; on the Weſt by *Piedmont*, cut off by the *Appennine*; and on the South by *Millain*. The Territory of *Canaveſe* was a part of it, but in the Year 1631. was granted to the Duke of *Savoy*.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus* above-mentioned, which ſpringing out of the Hills about *Barceis*, a Town of the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are 1. *Alba*, called by *Pliny Alba Pompeia*, ſituate on the Banks of the ſaid River, in a rich and fertile Soil, but a very bad Air: near to which, in a poor Village called *Zobia*, the Emperor *Pertinax* was born, who being of mean and obſcure Parents, after the Death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conſpirators to the *Roman* Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Soldiers, he was, by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their Vertues, as much as formerly for their Vices) moſt cruelly murthered; and the Imperial Dignity ſold to *Julianus* for 25 *Seſtertiums* a Man. This City, in the Year 1631. was yielded to the Duke of *Savoy*, and is now in a declining State. 2. *Caſal*, vulgarly called St. *Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to St. *Evaſius*, (or St. *Vas*, as they ſpeak it commonly) the ſtrongeſt Town in all this Country; well built and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of St. *George* is one of the principal; and made a Biſhop's See by Pope *Sixtus* IV. *Anno* 1474. It was in former times the chief Seat of the Houſe of *Montferrat*, and for that cauſe compaſſed with a ſtrong Wall and a fair Caſtle; but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and ſtrengthned with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzago*, as the ſureſt Key of his Eſtate; in which new Citadel the Governour of the Province holds his uſual reſidence. It is now under the Duke of *Mantua*, but ſo Garriſon'd by the *French*, that they are indeed the Maſters of it. 3. *Aique*, in Latin *Aquenſis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and Medicinal Waters. 4. St. *Saviours*, where there is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, as there is alſo in 5. *Ponſture*, or *Pont di Stura*, ſo called of the River *Stura*. 6. *Oſoniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old ſeat of the firſt Marquiſſes of this *Montferrat*. 7. *Belzale*. 8. *Liburn*, and many others of leſs note.

Here are alſo within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Aſt*, *Cherian*, and *Chivaſco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the deſcription of whoſe Country we may ſpeak more of them, together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have ſpoken of already. And hereunto alſo I refer the ſtrong (and in thoſe times) impregnable Fortreſs, by the *Latin* Hiſtorians called *Fraxinetum*, from ſome Grove of Aſhes near unto it: ſituate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by conſequence better able to defend it ſelf and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens* at ſuch time as they had footing in theſe parts of *Italy*: Firſt took and fortified by them in the Year 891. recovered afterwards by the Prowеſs and good Fortune of *Otho* the Emperor, deſervedly ſurnamed the Great, about ſixty Years after. Of great note in the Stories of thoſe middle times: By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander*, near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally, by *Sigonius* in the *Coctian Alpes*: and ſo moſt fit unto be referred to this Country, though now ſo deſolated that there is no remainders of the ruines of it.

This Country was made a Marquiſate by *Otho* II. 985. one of the ſeven by him erected and given to the ſeven Sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his Daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conſpicuouſly eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-Land*; where they did many Acts of ſingular Merit; inſomuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, iſſuing from a ſecond Branch hereof, were made Kings of *Jeruſalem*; and *Boniface*, one of the Marquiſſes, got the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*, and many fair Eſtates in *Greece*. But the Male-iſſue failing in Marquis *John*, the Eſtate fell to *Theodorus Palæologus*, of the Imperial Family of *Conſtantinople*, who had married the *Heir-General* of the Houſe, continuing in his Name till the Year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the Perſon of Duke *William Gonzaga* raiſed to the honour of a Dukedom, as it ſtill continueth, the beſt and richeſt part of the Duke's Eſtate, and the faireſt Flower in all his Garden. The reſidue of the Story may be beſt collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marquiſſes of *Montferat*.

A. Chr.

185 1. *William*, one of the Sons of *Waleran* and *Adelheide*, made the firſt Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.

2. *Boniface*, the Son of *William*.

3. *William* II. who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade* III. and St. *Lewis* of *France* to the *Holy-Land*.

1183 4. *Boniface* II. Son of *William* II. his younger Brother, *William* being deſigned King of *Jeruſalem*, and *Reyner*, another of them, made Prince of *Theſſaly*, ſucceeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the Son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, he was took Priſoner by *Guy* of *Luſignan*, Competitor with him for that Title.

5. *William* III. Son of *Boniface*, poyſoned in the *Holy Land*, where he endeavoured the reſtoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languiſhing Kingdom.

6. *Boniface* III. Son of *William* III. for his Valour in taking of *Conſtantinople*, made King of *Theſſaly*.

1254 7. *Boniface* VI. Son of *Boniface* III. added *Vercelli* and *Eporedium* unto his Eſtate.

8. *John*, ſurnamed the *Juſt*, the laſt of this Houſe.

9. *Theodore Palæologus*, Son of the Emperor *Andronicus Palæologus* the Elder, and *Toland* his Wife, Daughter of *Boniface* IV.

10. *John Palæologus*, Son of *Theodore*.

11. *Theodorus* II. Son of *John*, a great Builder and Endower of Religious-Houſes.

12. *Jacobus Johannes*, Son of *Theodore* II.

13. *John* III. eldeſt Son of *Jacobus Johannes*.

1464 14. *William* IV. Brother of *John* III. Founder of the City and Monaſtry of *Caſal*.

1487 15. *Boniface* V. Brother of *John* and *William*, the two laſt Marquiſſes, inveſted by the Emperor *Frederick* IV. *Blanca Maria*, the Daughter of *William*, ſurrendring her Eſtate unto him.

16. *William* V. Son of *Boniface* V.

1518 17. *Boniface* VI. Son of *William* V.

1530 18. *John George*, Brother of *William* V. ſucceeded his Nephew in the Eſtate which he held but four Years. After whoſe Death, *An.* 1534. this Marquiſate was adjudged to *Frederick* the Firſt, Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret*, Daughter of *William* V. and next Heir to *George*.

Whoſe Succeſſors may be ſeen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Eſtate,
Archbiſhop 0. Biſhops 4.

And now according to my method, I ſhould proceed to the Deſcription and Story of the Principality of *Piemont*, the laſt and moſt Weſtern part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Coctiæ*, and is now part of the Eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*, we will defer till we come to thoſe *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And ſo much ſhall ſuffice for *Italy*, in which there are, beſides thoſe of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Archbiſhops 35. Biſhops 292.
Univerſities 17.

VIZ.

In the Land of the Church.
- *Rome.*
- *Bononia.*
- *Ferrara.*
- *Peruſia.*

In *Sicil*,
- *Palermo.*
- *Catana.*

In the Signeury of *Venice*.
- *Venice.*
- *Padua.*
- *Verona.*

In the Dukedom of *Tuſcany*.
- *Florence.*
- *Piſa.*
- *Sienna.*

In *Naples*.
- *Naples.*
- *Salern.*

In *Lombardy*.
- *Millain.*
- *Pavie.*
- *Mantua.*

And ſo much for *Italy*.

OF THE

ALPES.

Before we can come out of *Italy* into *France*, we muſt croſs the *Alpes*, a ridge of Hills wherewith (as with a ſtrong and defenſible Rampart) *Italy* is aſſured againſt *France* and *Germany*. They are ſaid to be five Days Journey high, covered continually with Snow, from the whiteneſs whereof they took this Name; that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latin* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguſtick* Seas, and croſſing all along the Borders of *France* and *Germany*, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Iſtria*; and are in ſeveral Parts called by ſeveral Names, which we will muſter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And firſt thoſe which lie neareſt to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cauſe called *Maritimæ*, from the nearneſs to *Liguria*, Liguſti called by ſome *Liguſticæ*. 2. Then follow thoſe called *Cottiæ*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3. Thoſe named *Graiæ*, from the paſſage of *Hercules* and his *Græcian* Followers, of which, both amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pæninæ*, ſo named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latin* Writers called by the Name of *Pæni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pæninus*, worſhipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Lepontiæ*, ſo named from *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6. the *Rhæticæ*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhæti*, once a powerful People of that mountainous Tract. 7. Then follow thoſe called *Juliæ*, from the paſſage of *Julius Cæſar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and ſo at laſt we come unto thoſe called *Carnicæ*, extending to the Shores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni*, who did here inhabit, and who gave Name alſo to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe mountainous Countries, beſides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhæti*, and *Carni*, ſpoken of before, were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenſes*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of leſs note and eſtimation; all vanquiſhed by the indefatigable induſtry of the *Romans*. After whoſe ſubjugation, and the ſettlement of the *Roman* Empire, theſe Mountains, and ſome part of the Vales adjoining, made five ſeveral Provinces, *viz.* the Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Walliſland* and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhetia Prima*, comprehending the *Griſons*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millain*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Switzers*; both which were Members of the Dioceſs of *Italy*. Thirdly, Of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Dauphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, Of the *Graiæ* and *Pæninæ Alpes*, and the greateſt part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including ſome part of *Savoy*, and moſt part of *Switzerland*; both which were Members of the Dioceſs of *Gaul*. And fifthly, Of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending, *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts near hand, which were Members of the Dioceſs of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The People anciently as now, by reaſon of their drinking Snow-Water diſſolving from the tops of the Hills, and ſometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are ſaid to do, were generally troubled with a ſwelling in the Throat, which the *Latins* call *Struma*, being the ſame with that which we call the *Kings-Evil*, becauſe by ſpecial privilege curable by the Kings of *France* and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of theſe vaſt Hills, the loweſt are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying neareſt to the ſeveral Seas before remembred: The *Cottiæ* and the *Graiæ* not ſo high, but that the Paſſages lie open for the moſt part of the Year. The reſt, by reaſon of their deep and dreadful Precipices, their tedious and ſteep Aſſents, narrow Ways, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce Whirlwinds, and huge Balls of Snow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains, are hardly paſſable by Horſe, not at all by Waggon: And yet amongſt theſe dreadful Hills, there are obſerved to be ſome Valleys of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulneſs to the beſt in *Europe*; and for the ſweetneſs of the temperature going much beyond them. With ſuch an equal hand doth the heavenly Providence diſpence the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation, that Plenty bordereth upon Want, and Pain on Pleaſure.

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of theſe *Alpine* Paſſages, Covetouſneſs, or Curioſity, or Deſire of Conqueſt, have found a way to make them paſſable in many places; and that not only for private and particular Paſſengers, but for vaſt Multitudes and numerous Armies, ſuch as thoſe led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæſar*. But eſpecially the barborous People found out five ways to break into *Italy*, which hath been ſince much travelled by divers Nations, of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germany*. The firſt from *France* is through 1 *Provence*, and ſo cloſe to the *Liguſtick Seas*; eaſieſt for private Paſſengers, but too ſtrait and narrow for great Armies; there being many Paſſages in the Country of *Nizze*, ſo narrow that ten Men may make head againſt ten thouſand; as in that called the *Pace* of the *Virgin* for one. The ſecond is over the Hills called *Gencure*, into 2 the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and to the other parts of *Lombardy*, which was the way that *Charles* VIII. marched towards *Naples*, and by the *Italians* is commonly called *Strada Romana*, becauſe the ordinary Paſſage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater 3 *Cenis*, (which ſome call the leſſer St. *Bernard*) ſo to *Aoſt* or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was firſt opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*; who found the Paſſages ſo cloſed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with Fire and Vinegar, whence that ſo memorable a ſaying, *Viam* Annibal, *aut inveniet, aut faciet*. From the paſſage of thoſe Worthies, this Tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pæninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is moſt certain that he took in his March; then theſe *Pæninæ* muſt take Name from the Paſſage of *Aſdrubal*, or of ſome part of *Annibal*'s Army, which probably was too great to go all one way; or elſe from the Mountain God *Pæninus*, as before was ſaid.

The firſt way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of *Griſons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* ſeized into his hand. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he alſo erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this Paſſage; not only to the diſcontent of the Na-

Natives, but to the diſtaſte of his Neighbours the *Savoyards* and *Venetians.* (But it was afterwards reſtored to the *Griſons*, under whom it now is.) The other way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of *Tirolis* by the Towns of *Inſpruch*, and *Trent.* This Paſſage is commanded by the Caſtle and Fort of *Eresberg*, ſeated on the Confines of this Country towards *Suevia*, and from *Inſpruch*, is two days journey diſtant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Proteſtant* Princes made againſt *Charles* V. was ſurprized by Captain *Scherteline*, ſo to hinder the coming of the Pope's Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperour ſo hated him, that when all the reſt of that Faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proſcript*, his Head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking alſo of this Fort, and the Caſtle adjoyning, by D. *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the ſaid *Charles* then being in *Inſpruch*, to fly out of *Germany*; and ſhortly after to reſign his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand.*

Rivers

Out of theſe Mountains riſe the Springs of many of the moſt renowned Rivers in theſe weſt Parts of the World; as, 1. The *Rhine*, which ſpringeth from two ſeveral Fountains, the one which they call the *Nearer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontiæ*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rheticæ*, which meet together about a *Dutch* Mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Griſons*, and ſo go on by *Conſtance* to *Germany.* 2. *Rhoſne*, which riſeth in that part of the *Lepontiæ*, which is called *Die Furchen*, about two *Dutch* Miles from the head of the *Nearer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and ſo through *Walliſland* in *France.* 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Coctian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Veſulus*, and ſo through *Piemont* into *Italy.* Out of them alſo ſpring the Rivers of *Ruſſe*, *Durance*, and *Atheſis*, the firſt a *Dutch*, the ſecond a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River alſo; not to ſay any thing of others of inferiour note. The great Lakes which are found in this Mountainous Tract, we ſhall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countries and Eſtates here ſituate, which bordering upon *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*, and partaking ſomewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themſelves to be free and abſolute Eſtates ſupreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of theſe *Alpine* Countries, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as ſome parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the reſt which belongs to *Auſtria*, ſhall be conſidered in the Hiſtory of thoſe States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the reſt, which as they lie entire together without intermixture, ſo they are abſolute in themſelves, and owe no Suit nor Service unto any other, we will conſider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine Provinces*, call them which you will, are bounded on the Eaſt with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedom of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*, on the Weſt; with *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and *La Breſs*, parts of the Continent of *France*, on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schawben* in *High Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea; called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, becauſe it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour.* A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Baſil*, and not far from the *Rhine*, paſſeth South-ward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Newenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almoſt unto the *Rhoſne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the Country of *Burgundy.*

It lieth under the ſixth Climate, and ſome part of the ſeventh, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is fifteen hours and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soil and People; which will beſt ſhew it ſelf in the ſurvey of the ſeveral Provinces, into which divided; that is to ſay, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2. the Signeury of *Geneva*; 3. the Reſorts of *Walliſland*; 4. the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*; and 5. the Leagues of the *Griſons.* Which ſeveral States, though they be reckoned to belong to the *German Empire*, and that the Biſhops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Baſil*, are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are ſubject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of thoſe ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein ſpoken partakes ſomewhat of all three, as before was ſaid: The *French* being wholly ſpoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Walliſland*, and generally by the *Switzers*, bordering on the Lake *Leman*; the *Dutch* being common to the greateſt part of the *Switzers*, the *Griſons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Walliſland*: and finally the *Italian* uſed by the generality of the *Griſons*, the Præfectures appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both in *Piemont*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

She principal Soldiers of theſe Mountainous Provinces, 1. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family. 2. *Thomas*, and 3. *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this laſt ſurnamed *Charlemain* II. 4. *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain.* 5. *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of *Germany*, For Scholars of more ſpecial note, for which we are beholden to theſe Countries, we have 1. *Philip Theophraſtus Bombaſtus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelſus*, the Author, or *Inſtaurator* of *Chymical* Phyſick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he ſaith himſelf: A Man of moſt prodigious Parts, and of no mean Vices. 2. *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3. *Muſculus*, and 4. *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his Seconds. 5. *Henry Ballinger*, one of the ſame profeſſion alſo. 6. *Sebaſtian Caſtalio*, of as much learning as the beſt of them, though of different Judgment. 7. *Dan. Toſſanus* the *Hebrician.* To which we may add 8. *Calvin alſo*, who though he had his Birth in *France*, had his Being here; and never grew to any Eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was ſetled in *Geneva.*

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition alſo in all theſe Countries: That of the *Romiſh* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but ſo that the Reformed is tolerated in ſome parts thereof; eſpecially in the next parts of *Daulphine*, to which the Neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great increaſe. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the *Reformation*, *viz.* *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Baſil*, and *Schaffhauſen*: Seven that ſtands wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, i. e. *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburgh*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Griſons* are confuſedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Præfectures admit no other but the *Romiſh.* The cauſe of which diviſion came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a *Canon* of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther*'s good Succeſs in *Germany*, began about the year 1519. to preach againſt the *Maſs* and *Images*, and other the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome.* In which his Party ſo encreaſed, than on a publick Diſputation, which was held at *Zurich*, the *Maſs* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the Authority of the Senate, *Anno* 1526. and *Images* deſtroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which proſperous beginnings, the *Reformation* began to ſpread it ſelf amongſt the *Confederates*; and had prevailed farther both in *France* and *Germany*, but for a difference which aroſe betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *real Preſence*, but a *Conſubſtantiation* alſo in the ſacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare ſign and repreſentation of Chriſts bleſſed Body. For reconciling this difference, wherein the Enemies of both did extremely triumph; a Conference was held between them at *Marſpurg*, a Town of *Haſſia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without ſucceſs:

ceſs: *Luther* profeſſing that he durſt not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *Ne principes ſuos interpretatione tantopere* Pontificiis *exoſa, magis inviſos redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profeſſion. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally caſt upon one another; to the great hinderance of the Cauſe which they had in hand: yet ſo that the *Lutheran* Opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongſt theſe Mountains, and in *France* it ſelf; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts in *Germany* alſo. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the Story of thoſe Countries, before they were divided into ſo many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered ſeverally by the *Romans*; as ſhall be ſhewn in the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces: Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor, they became a Member of their Kingdom; except the Country of the *Griſons*, and ſome parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, of the *French* erection, when ſubdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the *Bald*, the laſt of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdom of *France*, divided that Kingdom into three Eſtates; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, and the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This laſt, containing the greateſt part of all theſe *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the ſaid *Charles* given to *Conrade* a *Saxon* Prince; the Son of *Witikind* III. and younger Brother of *Robert*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*; by the Name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane* or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his Son and Succeſſor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Couſin German, was honoured with the Title of King, to make him equal at the leaſt, with *Boſon* Earl of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, whom *Charles* the *Groſs*, about the ſame time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offenſive to the *German* Emperor, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himſelf the Title of Duke. The reſidue of the Story we ſhall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earls, Dukes and Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

1. *Conrade* the firſt Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

890 2. *Rodolph*, Earl, King, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

912 3. *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*; which Title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was choſen by another Faction for the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*; on the aſſuming of which Crown, he reſigned this Dukedom to his Brother *Boſon*.

4. *Boſon* the Brother of *Rodolph* II. ſucceeded his Brother in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he ſucceeded *Rodolph*, his Brothers Son, in the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

965 5. *Conrade* II. Son of *Boſon*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

990 6. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Conrade*, who dying without Iſſue, left his Eſtates to *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, the Son of his Siſter *Giſela*, by *Conrade* II. Emperor and King of *Germany*: united ſo unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of ſome following Emperors, it was Cantoned into many parts, of which more anon.

It is now time to lay aſide this Diſcourſe as to the general condition and affairs of theſe *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars; beginning firſt with the Eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*, ſituate wholly in the Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of SAVOY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*; on the Weſt, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Country of ſo different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one Charecter: and therefore we muſt look upon it in the ſeveral parts into which divided; that is to ſay, 1. the *Principality* of *Piemont*, and 2. *Savoy*, eſpecially ſo called.

1. PIEMONT, in *Latine* called *Regio Pedemontana*, becauſe ſituate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Millain*, and *Montferrat*; on the Weſt, with *Savoy*, on the North, with the *Switzers*, and on the South, it runneth in a narrow Valley to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one ſide, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland* and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferiour to the reſt of *Italy*. It containeth, beſides Barronies, and Lordſhips, 15 Marquiſates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Caſtles or Walled places: and is ſo populous withal, that once a *Piemonteſs* being demanded the extent of his Country, made anſwer, that it was *a City of three hundred Miles in compaſs*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Turin*, called of old *Auguſta Taurinorum*, becauſe the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini*, it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as ſome conceive from the River *Duria*, on whoſe banks it ſtandeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy* (who is the Lord of this Country) the See of an Archbiſhop, and an Univerſity, in which the renowned Scholar *Eraſmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is ſituate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cauſe the *Romans* ſent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoyning to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, ſix Miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleaſant Fountains; which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in *Europe*. 2. *Mondeni*, ſeated on the ſwelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chapel to the bleſſed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Ducal Family. It is the beſt peopled Town, for the bigneſs of it, of any in *Italy*. 3. *Auguſta Prætoria*, now called *Aoſt*, ſituate in the furtheſt corner of *Italy* to the North and Weſt. 4. *Vercelli*, a ſtrong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given firſt in Dower with *Blanch* the Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* III. Duke of *Savoy*; anciently the chief Town of the *Libyci*, who together with the *Salaſſi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Country. 5. *Inuria*, called by *Ptolomy Eporedia*, ſituate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Epiſcopal City. 6. *Nicæa*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Biſhops Palace, a Monaſtery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place ſo naturally ſtrong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it reſiſted the whole Forces of *Barbaroſſa* the *Turkiſh* Admiral, *An.* 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred Sail, and battering it continually with incredible fury. Firſt fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occaſion of ſome words of the Duke of *Bourbon*, who paſſing this way with his Army, *Behold*, ſaith he, *a ſituation of which they know not the Importance*: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and Garriſoned for the moſt part with 400 Soldiers. 7. *Suſe*, ſeated in the ordinary Thorough-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*; and honoured in thoſe times with a ſtately Sepulchre of King *Coctius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: one of the ſeven Marquiſates in the middle times erected by the Emperor *Otho*. 8. *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Caſtle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoyning Valleys, ſold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis* XIII. of *France*, together with the Fort and Valley of *Perouſa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the ſum of 494000 Crowns, to be for ever in the Propriety and Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* a commodious paſs from *Daulphine* into *Italy* upon all occaſions, and no ſmall influence and command on his own Eſtates. 9. *Quiers*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10. *Ville Franche*, a place of great ſtrength, more towards the Sea. 11. *Savillan*, ſeated in ſo pleaſant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpoſe to ſettle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Eſtate. 12. *Buſque*, a Marquiſate, another of the ſeven erected for the Sons of *Waleran*. 13. Hereunto we may add the City of *Aoſt* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatneſs and beauty of her Palaces, to the moſt ſtately Cities of *Lombardy*; ſituate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich and populous.

Here is alſo in this Country the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, (of the ſame erection as the former, but a greater Eſtate) the cauſe of ſo many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principal Town whereof is called alſo *Saluzze* (from the *Salaſſi* queſtionleſs who dwelt hereabouts) ſeated about the Spring of the River *Po*; reaſonably big, and fortified with a very large Caſtle, fitted with Rooms for all Uſes, and for every Seaſon. 2. *Carmanvogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain, who carried ſo great a ſway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town ſo fortified and ſtored with all ſorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3. *Ravelle*, a well fortified place. 4. *Doglian*, the Thorow-fare for the greateſt part of the Trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salaſſi*, *Libyci*, and *Taurini*, as before is ſaid, all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the Name of the Province of *Alpes Cottiæ*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The preſent are deſcended for the moſt part of the *Heruli*, who under the conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themſelves, but *Odoacer* being vanquiſhed near *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conquerour for their Habitation. They had not held it long when ſubdued by the *Lombards*, of whoſe Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the ſeventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by ſome to be the firſt *Temporal* Eſtate that ever the Popes of *Rome* had poſſeſſion of. But lying far off, and that Donation not confirmed by the Kings ſucceeding, the Popes got little by the gift: ſo that in the ſubverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*; of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great: and afterwards of his Succeſſors in the Empire, by whom diſtracted into ſeveral Eſtates and Principalities. *Thomas* and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the latter in the year 1256. Since that time the firſt Son of *Savoy* is ſtiled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquiſate of *Saluzzes* containing almoſt all the reſt, was added by the Marriage of a Daughter of this Marquiſate, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, *An.* 1481. Of which Marriage though there was no Iſſue, yet the *Savoyards* always held it as their own, till the *French* upon as good a Title poſſeſſed themſelves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard*, *Anno* 1588. the Civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it againſt *Henry* IV. (who looked upon it as a door to let his Forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, *Anno* 1600. the Country of *Breſſe* being given in exchange for this Marquiſate: of which, together with the reſidue of *Piemont*, and ſome pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now ſtand poſſeſſed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Croſs *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2. *SAVOY*, ſtrictly and eſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Wallisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the Weſt, with *Daulphine*, and *La Breſſe*; on the South, with ſome parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the moſt part Hilly and Mountainous, overſpread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill Countries are, but not very fruitful, except ſome Valleys which lie neareſt to the Weſtern Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reaſon of the difficult and narrow ways, and thoſe full of Thieves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the paſſages being opened by the Coſt and induſtry of the People, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary Juſtice, it gained the name of *Savoy* or *Salvoy*, *quaſi ſalva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like conſiderations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of theſe later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the ancient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common People are naturally very dull and ſimple, ſo groſs of underſtanding for all their continual converſe with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*, that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greateſt Prince in the World: and ſo unwarlike, that a few Men of another Nation, well trained and diſciplined, will make a great number of them flie. But on the other ſide, the Gentry are of a very pleaſing converſation, civil, ingenious, and effecting all good Exerciſe: ſo that there may be daily ſeen in *Chambery*, as much good Company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the beſt Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both ſorts (taking in *Piemont* who are not intereſſed in the firſt place of this Character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Chambery*, ſituate on the banks of the River *L' Arch*, in a very pleaſant Valley, compaſſed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that ſide of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he reſideth in this Country, the ordinary ſeat of Juſtice, and many neat Houſes which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a ſtrong Caſtle and ſufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received *Anno* 1600. when it was forced by King *Henry* IV. of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2. *Tarentaiſe*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in the midſt of the Mountains, heretofore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this Tract. 3. *Lansbourg* in the Country of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suſe*, a Town of *Piemont*, lieth the moſt ordinary rode betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4. *Aigue belle*, ſituate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5. *Ripaille*, a ſweet and fruitful ſituation, on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Foſſigny*: where *Amadeus* I. Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Eſtate, lived a Monaſtick life, and was thence choſen Pope by the Fathers at *Baſil*, *Anno* 1440. 6. *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by ſome of the old *Latines* called *Noviodunum*) an ancient City, laid deſolate in or before the time of *Julius Cæſar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Veſpaſian*; the Seat of late times of the Biſhops of *Geneva*, ſince their expulſion out of that City. 7. *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhoſne*. 8. *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9. *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwiſe of ſmall importance. 10. *Annuntiada*, not much obſervable, but for being the ſeat or place of Solemnities, for an Order of Knights called by that name. 11. *Maurienne*, or St. *John de Maurienne*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in the Valley of the *Alpes* ſo called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this Houſe were firſt entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12. *Charboniers*, a well fortified place. Here is alſo the ſtrong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four Months againſt *Henry* IV. and many thouſand ſhot of *French* Canon, *Anno* 1600, and the impregnable Fortreſs of St. *Catharines*, which yet ſubmitted to that King, the Government whereof being denied to the Duke *Byron*, plunged him into diſcontent and Treaſon, to the loſs of his Head.

The many Tribes in and about this Mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned ſome before, paſs generally in ſome ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; becauſe the moſt powerful of them all. Of whom the firſt mention which we find in ſtory, is the Atonement made by *Hannibal* in his paſſage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the Succeſſion of the Kingdom. Afterwards ſiding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War againſt *Marſeilles*, then a Confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their banks: by whom they were in fine ſubdued, with the loſs of no leſs than 120000 *Gauls* under the ſeveral conducts of *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*: by which laſt *Bitutius* or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the Confederates, was led in Triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and People at that time were much alike, *Cœlum atrox pervicaci ingenio*, a ſharp Air, and a ſtubborn People, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for diſcovering *Catalines* Conſpiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruine. After which we find *Coctius*, one of the Kings of theſe *Allobroges*, to have been in ſpecial favour with *Auguſtus Cæſar*: affirmed to be the Founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous Tract; whence it had the name of *Alpes Coctiæ*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and paſſed, with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperours of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the laſt King. To whom it did continue ſubject till the year 999. in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, Son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was Son of *Otho*, and Brother to *Otho* III.) for killing *Mary* the laſcivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*; and ſetled himſelf here, near *France*. His Son *Humbert*, (ſurnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *White-hand*) was by the ſpecial favour of the Emperour *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, *Anno* 1027. And by his Marriage with *Adela*, the Daughter and Heir of the Marquis of *Suſe*, added that noble Marquiſate (one of the ſeven erected by *Otho* II. and given amongſt the Sons of *Waleran*) unto his Eſtate. *Humbert* II. gained by Conqueſt the Town and Territory of *Tarentaiſe*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee* III. did the Countries of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, *Anno* 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. by the Marriage of *Sibylle*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Ulrick* Earl of *Breſſe*, added that Earldom to his Houſe: as *Ame* or *Amadee* IX. did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the Contract betwixt *Philibert* his Son and Succeſſor, with *Blanch* the baſe Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee* II. Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry* V. inveſted with the Title of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* VIII. created the firſt Duke, by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, *Anno* 1397. But the main improvement of the Power and Patrimony of this Houſe, came by the Valour and good Succeſs of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210. and *Peter* one of his Sons and Succeſſors (for his manifold Conqueſts, ſurnamed *Charlemain* the *Junior*) *An.* 1256. by Conqueſt got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was united by a marriage of the Daughter of the Marquiſate, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*: and though he died without Iſſue by her, *Anno* 1489. yet his Succeſſors ſtill kept the poſſeſſion of it, till *Francis* I. pretending ſome Title to it in the right of his Mother (a Daughter of the Houſe of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*; from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civil Wars, *Anno* 1588. and now is peaceably poſſeſſed. The Country of *Breſſe* being given to the *French*, for their pretenſion to this Marquiſate, *Anno* 1600. Theſe Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the Faction of *Spain*, eſpecially ſince the *French* Kings took in the leſſer States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, *&c.* *Charles* III. ſided ſo conſtantly with the Emperour *Charles* V. that denying *Francis* I. a paſſage for his Army through the Country into *Italy*, he was by the ſaid King deſpoiled of his Eſtates, *An.* 1536. The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountring his force in the open Field, vanquiſhed them, with the ſlaughter of fifteen thouſand of his Men. In the year 1558. peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, Succeſſors to thoſe great Princes, *Emanuel Philibert*, Son to Duke *Charles*, was reſtored to all his Rights. His Son and Succeſſour having married *Katherine* the Daughter of King *Philip* II. depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithſtanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his Sons receiving thence many great Penſions and Preferments. For at the ſame time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the ſecond Son, during the life of *Philip* his Elder Brother, was chief Commander of that King's Gallies; and had in Penſion a hundred thouſand Crowns *per annum*; *Philibert* the third Son, was Vice-roy of *Sicil*: *Maurice* IV. a Cardinal, had a moiety of the Revenues of the Archbiſhoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomaza*, though then young, had his Penſions alſo. But *Amadee Victorio*, who ſucceeded him, marrying Madam *Chriſtiane*, a Daughter of King *Henry* IV. of *France*, changed his dependences, and held more cloſe to *France* than any of his Predeceſſors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Eſtates, future times will ſhew. For leaving his Heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his Mother, the *French* upon pretence of preſerving the Country for him, againſt the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt parts of it: which when they will reſtore to the proper Owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999	1	*Beral* of *Saxony*, he was Marquis of *Maurienne* and Earl of *Savoy*, and died in the year 1023.
1027	2	*Humbert*, the firſt Earl of *Maurienne*.
1048	3	*Ame*, or *Amadze* I. or *Oddo*, he was (after his Father) Lord of *Chableſia*, and *Valeſia*: and *Auguſta*, Marquis of *Italy*, and *Suſa*, and Duke of *Turin*; the latter Part of the Title being acquired by himſelf. He died (ſaith *Showartus*, in the year 1191. and was ſucceeded by *Amadæus* the II. Father of *Humbert* II.
1076	4	*Humbert* II.
1109	5	*Ame*, or *Amadee* II. the firſt Earl of *Savoy*, died in an Expedition into *Paleſtine*, in the year 1149.
1154	6	*Humbert* III. died in 1186.

1201 7 *Thomas*, Son of *Humbert.*
1234 8 *Ame*, or *Amadee* III.
1246 9 *Boniface*, Son of *Ame* III: died in 1263.
1256 10 *Peter*, a young Son of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the *leſs*, died in 1285.
1268 11 *Philip*, Brother of *Peter.*
1285 12 *Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. Nephew of *Thomas* VII. Earl, by a Son named *Thomas.* This Prince was called the *Great.* In the year 1310. he was by *Henry* VI. created a Prince of the Empire. He was born in the year 1249. and died the 16*th.* of *Octob.* 1323.
1323 13 *Edward*, Son of *Ame* IV.
1329 14 *Ame*, or *Amadee* V. the Brother of *Edward.*
1342 15 *Ame*, or *Amadee* VI.
1383 16 *Ame*, or *Amadee* VII.
1397 17 *Ame*, or *Amadee* V[illegible]I. the firſt Duke of *Savoy*; he was born 1383, 4 *Sept.* In 1416. the 19*th* of *Feb.* he was created Duke of *Savoy* by *Sigiſmond* the Emperor, and in 1434. he reſigned to his Son *Lewis*, and died in the year 1451.
1434 18 *Lewis*, Son of *Ame* VIII. was born in 1402. In the year 1432. he married *Ann de Luſignan*, Daughter of *Jane* King of *Cyprus*, and died in the year 1465.
1491 19 *Ame*, or *Amadee* IX. who died in 1472. and was ſucceeded by *Charles* the II. who died in 1490. ſo that *Philibert* here is Excluded.
1475 20 *Philibert*, Son of *Ame* IX.
1481 21 *Charles*, Brother of *Philibert.*
1489 22 *Charles* II. *Charles John Amidæus* Duke of *Savoy*, and King of *Cyprus*, was born in 1488. and died without Iſſue in 1496.
1495 23 *Philip* II. Son of *Lewis* the ſecond Duke, was born 5 *Feb.* 1438. In the year 1497. he reſigned the Government to his Son *Philibert.*
1496 24 *Philibert* II. who was born in 1480.
1504 25 *Charles* III. the Brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Eſtate by King *Francis* I.
1559 26 *Emanuel Philibert*, born in 1528. the 8*th* of *July* reſtored upon his Marriage with *Margaret*, the Daughter of King *Francis* I. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Mary.*
1580 27 *Charles Emanuel*, died *Anno* 1630. he was born the 12*th* of *Jan.* 1562. and was a Learned and Wiſe Prince, but unfortunate in War.
1630 28 *Ame* X. called alſo *Amadee Victorio*, Son of *Charles Emanuel*, married *Chriſtiane* the Daughter of King *Henry* IV.
1637 29 *Lewis Ame*, or *Amidæus*, a Child of ſeven years of Age, ſucceeded his Father in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, under the Government of his Mother, but he dying young.
1637 30 *Charles Emanuel* II. Son of *Amadee Victor*, or *Ame* X. at the Age of three years ſucceeded his Father. He was born in the year 1634. 20*th* of *June*, and opened an Univerſity at *Turin* in 1675. He died, and was much lamented by his Subjects.
1675 31 *Victor Amadee* II. who was born the 17*th* of *May* 1666. ſucceeded his Father *Charles Emanuel* at the Age of IX. years, his Mother was a *French* Lady, Daughter of *Charles Ame* Duke of *Nemours*, and promoted the *French* Intereſt to the damage of her Son, and his Countries. In the year 1684. 9*th* of *April* he married *Ann Mary* Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Orleans*, and of the Princeſs *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Charles* the Firſt of *England*, by whom he has two Daughters, but no Sons.

Thomas Francis Prince of *Carignan*, the youngeſt Son of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, was born the 21*ſt* of *December* 1596. and in 1624. he married *Mary* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Charles* Earl of *Soiſſons*, by whom he had *Emanuel Philibert Ame*, 2. *Joſeph Emanuel*, and 3. *Eugenius Mauritius.* The laſt of theſe three married *Olympia*, a Niece of Cardinal *Mazerin* in 1657. and had by her *Lewis Thomas Count de Soiſſons*, born the 15*th* of *December* 1657. who married in the year 1682. 2 *Philip* B. in 1659. 3. *Lewis Julius* B. 1660. 4 *Emanuel* in 1663. and 5. *Francis Eugenius* in 1665. *Philip* and *Lewis* are both dead, the reſt are living, and ſome of them or their Children, will ſucceed this Duke of *Savoy*, if he has no Male Iſſue.

The Forces of this Duke conſiſt eſpecially in his Forts and Garriſons, whereof he hath good ſtore in *Savoy* and *Piemont*, well fortified, and plentifully furniſhed with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him ſo to have, conſidering what dangerous Neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continual thorow-fair, for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain*, upon all occaſions. Nor doth it leſs conduce to his preſervation, that he hath ſo many retreats of natural ſtrength, as are not eaſily acceſſible by a conquering Army; of which laſt ſort is, amongſt many others, the Valley of *Aoſt* (which ſome reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and ſome of *Piemont*) ſo ſtrong by reaſon of the narrow Entries, the uneaſie Paſſages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that thoſe who have made themſelves Maſters of the reſt of the Country, durſt never attempt it. And of the firſt, beſides thoſe formerly deſcribed, is the Town of *Nizze*, ſo fortified and flanked upon all acceſſes, that it ſeems rather to be an Aſſembly of Forts, than a ſingle Fortreſs. Out of which Garriſons the Duke is able to draw great Forces for preſent ſervice; beſides the readineſs of the *Piemonteſe* upon all occaſions, which are for the moſt part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piemont*) are ſaid to be above a Million of Crowns *per annum.* But his extraordinary is ſo great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during the Wars with *Henry* IV. in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* only 11 Millions of Crowns; beſides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Soldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want Money to ſerve their turns, when they ſhall deſire it of their Subjects; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Eſtate, is that of the *Annuntiada*, ordained by *Amadee* the firſt Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *An.* 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to ſhew the fifteen Myſteries of the Virgin: at the end is the Portraiture of our Lady, with the Hiſtory of the *Annuntiation.* Inſtead of a Motto, theſe Letters, *F. E. R. T. id eſt*, *Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are Engraven in every Plate or Link of the Collar: each Link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights are fourteen, beſides the Duke, who is the Soveraign of the Order: the Solemnity was held anciently on our *Lady-day*, in the Caſtle of St. *Peter* in *Turin*; but of late time in the Town of *Annunciada*, from hence ſo denominated. So from this Victory (for every repulſe of the Beſieger, is a Victory to the Beſieged) there aroſe a double effect; firſt, the Inſtitution of this Order; Secondly, the Aſſumption of the preſent Arms of this Dutchy, where are G. a Croſs A. This being the Croſs of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, whoſe Knights at that time were Owners of the *Rhodes.* Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules*, ſupporting in *Feſſe*, an Eſcutchion of *Saxony*, that is Barwiſe ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowered *Vert.* A Coat belonging to the Emperors of the Houſe of *Saxony*, from whom the firſt Earls of *Savoy* did drive themſelves.

3. *The Signeury of* GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly ſubject to its Biſhops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-ſtate*, bordering cloſe upon the *Switzers*, and with them Confederate; and ſo more properly within the courſe and compaſs of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemane*, oppoſite to the City of *Lozane* in the *Canton* of *Beren*, from which it is diſtant ſix *Dutch* Miles: the River *Rhoſne* (having paſſed through the Lake with ſo clear a colour, that it ſeemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a paſſage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is ſeated on a flat or level, the reſt on the aſcent of an Hill: the Buildings fair and of free Stone, well fortified on both ſides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretenſions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they ſuffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealouſies of State. The compaſs of the whole City is about two Miles, in which there are ſuppoſed to be about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand Souls. One of their Bridges is more ancient, and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old Inhabitants of that Tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæſar*, to hinder them from paſſing that way into *Gallia*.

The People of the Town are generally of good Wits in the managery of publick Buſineſs, but not very courteous towards Strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modeſt and thrifty in Apparel, and ſpeak for the moſt part the *Savoyard*, or worſt kind of *French*: So that the great reſort of young Gentlemen thither, is not ſo much to learn that Language (which is no where worſe taught) as out of an opinion which their Parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where ſo purely practiſed and profeſſed as there. By means whereof, the *fry* or *ſeminary* of our Gentry being ſeaſoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles, have many times proved diſaffected to the Forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Epiſcopal*) which they found eſtabliſhed here at home, to the great embroillment of the State, in matters of moſt near concernment. The Women are ſaid to be more chaſte (or at leaſt more reſerved) than in any other place in the World: which poſſibly may be aſcribed to that ſeverity, with which they puniſh all Offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; *Adultery* expiated by no leſs than Death: *Fornication*, for the firſt Offence, with nine days faſting upon Bread and Water in Priſon; for the ſecond, with Whipping; for the third, with Baniſhment. But notwithſtanding this ſeverity, they make love in ſecret, and are as Amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very ſmall, extending not above two Leagues and a half from any part of the Town: but the Soil, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all ſorts, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of Paſture and feeding Grounds, which furniſh the City with Fleſh-meats. Butter, and Cheeſe, at very reaſonable Rates: the nearneſs of the Lake affording them both Fiſh and Wild-Fowl in good meaſure, and amongſt others (as ſome ſay) the beſt *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the Induſtry of the People, and the convenient ſituation of the City it ſelf: the City being ſituate very well for the Trade of Merchandize, in regard it is the ordinary paſſage for Tranſporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the Marts at *Lions*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Italy*. And for the induſtry of the People, it is diſcernable in that great ſtore of Armour, and Apparel, and other Neceſſaries, brought from hence yearly by thoſe of *Bern*; and their Manufactures in Sattin, Velvet, Taffatee, and ſome quantities of Cloth, (fine, but not durable) tranſported hence yearly into other places.

The Soveraignty of this City was anciently in the Earls hereof, at firſt *Imperial Officers* only, but at laſt the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt theſe and the Biſhops (Suffragans to the *Metropolitan* of *Vienna* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the abſolute command thereof. In fine, the Biſhops did obtain of the Emperor *Frederick* I. that they and their Succeſſors ſhould be ſole Princes of *Geneva*; free from all Taxes, and not accomptable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithſtanding, the Earls continuing ſtill to moleſt the Biſhops, they were fain to call unto their Aid the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him firſt as Protector only, but after by degrees as the *Lord* in *Chief*. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Marriage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*, with *Beatrix* a Daughter of this Earl's, fell into that Houſe, then *Ame* or *Amadee* VI. of that Name, obtained of the Emperor *Charles* IV. to be *Vicar-general* of the Emperor in his own Country, and in that right ſuperiour to the Biſhop in all *Temporal* matters: and *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, got from Pope *Martin* (to the great prejudice of the Biſhops) a Grant of all the *Temporal* Juriſdiction of it. After which time the Biſhops were conſtrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Soveraign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown ſo great (notwithſtanding that the people were immediately ſubject to their Biſhop only) that the Money in *Geneva* was ſtamped with the Duke's Name and Figure: Capital Offenders were pardoned by him; no Sentence of Law executed till his Officers were firſt made acquainted; nor League contracted by the People of any Validity, without his privity and allowance: and finally the Keys of the Town preſented to him as often as he pleaſed to lodge there; as once (for inſtance) to Duke *Charles* III. coming thither with *Beatrix* his Wife, a Daughter of *Portugal*. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the year 1528. the Biſhop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis juriſdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himſelf confeſſeth in an Epiſtle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton* of *Bern*, near adjoyning to them, *Viret* and *Farellus* did endeavour it in *Geneva* alſo. But finding that the Biſhop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they ſcrewed themſelves into the People, and by their Aid in a popular Tumult, compelled the Biſhop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Biſhop made them many fair Overtures, out of an hope to be reſtored to his Eſtate; yet would they never harken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thruſt out. Nor did they only in that Tumult alter the Doctrine and Orders of the Church before eſtabliſhed; but changed the Government of the State alſo; diſclaiming all Allegiance both to Duke and Biſhop, and ſtanding on their own Liberty, as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farellus*; before *Calvin's* coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *ſuffragio meo comprobavi*, as he ſaith himſelf, no Man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongſt them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he firſt Negotiated with them to Abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Biſhop; to which he found a chearful and unanimous conſent in all the People. Then finding that no *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline* was in uſe among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own compoſing: which at laſt he obtained alſo, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate, *July* 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this Yoak, and he and his Colleagues (*Farellus* and *Coraldus*) as reſolute to hold them to it; they were all three baniſhed the Town in popular humour; and with like levity ſued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themſelves by a ſolemn Oath, to admit of ſuch a Form of Diſcipline, as he with the Advice of their other Miniſters ſhould preſcribe unto them. This being condeſcended to by that fickle Multitude, he returns in Triumph to *Geneva, September* the thirteenth 1541. and got his new Diſcipline eſtabliſhed on the twentieth of *November* following. The ſum of the Device was this; All *Miniſters* to be equal among themſelves; two *Lay-men* to be ſuper-added unto every Miniſter; the Miniſter to continue for tevm of life; the *Lay-Elders* to be annually choſen; theſe being met together to be called the *Preſbytery*; and to have power of *Ordination, Cenſures, Abſolution,* and whatſoever elſe was acted by the Biſhop formerly. Hitherto it related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City, and a ſmall one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbytery.* The names and notions of *Claſſical, Provincial,* and *National* Aſſemblies, came not in till afterwards, as it got ground in Kingdoms, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpoſe framed to content the people; yet ſince the *Lay Officers* were to be but annual, and after ſubject to the laſh, like other *Mortals*; it gave but ſorry ſatisfaction unto wiſer Men. And being built withal on a falſe Foundation, was for a long time hardly able to ſtand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a ſupport from *Zurich,* and others of the *Proteſtant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earneſtly ſolicited to allow his project, againſt which one *Perinus,* and ſome principal Citizens, had begun to ſpurn. And ſo we have the true beginning of the *Genevan* Diſcipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nurſed up by Faction.

Being born in the World by the means aforeſaid, ſome other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of in other Churches. As firſt the great content it gave to the *Common People,* to ſee themſelves entruſted with the weightieſt matters of *Religion*; and thereby an *equality* with, if not (by reaſon of their number, being two for one) a *Superiority* above their *Miniſters*: Next the *great Reputation,* which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Dictates* as Authentick amongſt ſome Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipſe dixit* in the Church of *Rome.* Whereby it came to paſs, in a little time, that only thoſe Churches which imbraced the Doctrines and Diſcipline authorized by *Calvin,* were called the *Reformed Churches*: thoſe in High *Germany,* and elſewhere, which adhered to *Luther,* being generally called by no other names than the *Lutherans* or the *Lutheran* Churches; as not *reformed* enough from the dregs of *Rome.* Then comes in his *endeavours* to promote the Platform, in all other Churches which he had calculated for the *Meridian* of *Geneva* only: commending it to *Gaſper Olevianus,* Miniſter of the Church of *Triers,* as appears by his Letters dated *April* the twelfth 1560. Congratulating the Reception of it in the Churches of *Poland,* as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the laſt help, comes in *Beza,* who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the uſe of that Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) impoſed it as a matter neceſſary upon all the Churches: ſo neceſſary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipſius* Religionis *placitis,* that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as for the moſt natural points of the *Chriſtian Faith.* So he, *Epiſt.* 83. By means whereof their Followers in moſt of the *Reformed Churches* drove on ſo furiouſly, that rather than their Diſcipline ſhould not be admitted, and the *Epiſcopal Government* deſtroyed in all the Churches of *CHRIST,* they were reſolved to depoſe Kings, ruine Kingdoms, and to ſubvert the fundamental Conſtitutions of all Civil States. And hereunto their *own Ambition* gave them ſpur enough, affecting the *Supremacy* in their ſeveral *Pariſhes*; that they themſelves might Lord it over God's Inheritance, under pretence of ſetting CHRIST upon his Throne. Upon which love to the Preheminence, they did not only prate againſt the Biſhops, *with malicious words* (as *Diotrephes* for the ſame reaſon did againſt the Apoſtles) but not therewith content, *neither would they themſelves receive them, nor permit them that would, caſting them out of the Church* with Reproach and Infamy. Which proud Ambition in the ordinary *Parochial* Miniſter, was cunningly fomented by ſome great Perſons, and many *Lay-perſons* in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raiſe themſelves great Fortunes out of Biſhops Lands; the other to keep thoſe Tythes themſelves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate ſome deſerving Perſon. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was diſperſed and propagated.

But to return unto *Geneva,* though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual *Moderator,* and *Beza* too, until *Danæus* ſet him beſide the Cuſhion: yet after that, the power of the *Presbytery* was ſhrewdly leſſened in *Geneva,* and the good Members ſo reſtrained in the exerciſe of it; that they have no power to convent any Man before them, but by the Authority of a *Syndick,* or *Civil* Magiſtrate. And as for Maintenance, they hold their Miniſters ſo ſtrictly to a ſorry pittance, as would be ſure to keep them from preſuming too much on their power in the *Conſiſtory. Tythes* of all ſorts were to be taken up for the uſe of the State, and laid up in the publick Treaſury; and ſtipends iſſued out to maintain the *Miniſtry*: but thoſe ſo mean, that *Beza*'s Stipend whilſt he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pounds *per annum,* the reſidue of the *City Miniſters* not to ſixty pounds, thoſe of the Villages adjoyning, having hardly forty pounds; enough to keep them always poor, and miſerably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizens. And that they may not *ſteal the Gooſe, and ſtick up a Feather,* the State doth uſe to make ſome poor allowance to the Wives and Daughters of their deceaſed *Miniſters,* if they die poor, or leave their Children unprovided, or otherwiſe have deſerved well in the time of their lives. In reſpect hereof, though the *Miniſters* are very ſtrict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts againſt it; yet to give ſome content to the common People (who have not leiſure to attend it at other times) they allow all Manlike Exerciſes on the *Lords-day,* as ſhooting in Pieces, Long-bows, Croſs-bows, and the like, and that too in the Morning, both before and after the *Sermon,* ſo it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civil* or *Imperial* Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-Criminal*; before whom all Cauſes are tried, and from whom there lieth no *Appeal*; unleſs it be unto the Council of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Council,* in which the ſupreme power of the State reſideth. Out of this *Council* of two hundred, there is choſen another *Leſſer Council* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks,* who have the ſole managing of the Common-wealth; except it be in ſome great matter, as making Peace or War, *Offenſive* or *Defenſive* Leagues, hearing Appeals, and ſuch like general concernments; which the great Council of two hundred muſt determine of. They have a Cuſtom ſuperadded to the *Civil Law,* that if any Malefactor from another place flie to them for Refuge, they puniſh him after the cuſtom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwiſe their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds.* Examples hereof I will aſſign two: the firſt of certain *Monks,* who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home, to be the welcomer thither, were at their firſt acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The ſecond is of a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, who having fled his Country for Clipping and Counterfeiting the King's Gold, came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alledged, that he underſtood their City being free, gave Admiſſion to all Offenders; *True* (ſaid they) *but with an intent to puniſh them that offended*: a diſtinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pounds *per annum*; which they raiſe upon the *Demain* of the Biſhop, and the *Tythes* of the Church, and on ſuch *Impoſitions*, as laid upon the Fleſh and Merchandiſe. But they are able to raiſe greater ſums if there be occaſion, as appears plainly by the ſending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry* III. before they had been long ſetled in their own Eſtates.

And as for *Military Forces*, they are able to impreſs two thouſand Men, and have Arms of all ſorts for ſo many in the publick *Magazines*: as alſo twelve or fourteen Pieces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them, and on the Lake ſome Gallies in continual readineſs, againſt the dangers threatned them by the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater ſafety of their Eſtate, and the preſervation of their *Religion*, they joyned themſelves in a conſtant and perpetual League with the *Canton* of *Bern*, *Anno* 1582. communicating to each other the freedom of their ſeveral Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a Member of the Commonwealth of the *Switzers*, which is no ſmall ſecurity to their Affairs. But their chief ſtrength, as I conceive, is, that Neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Potentate of more ſtrength than he. Inſomuch that when that Duke beſieged it, *Anno* 1589. they were aided from *Vevice* with four and twenty thouſand, and from *England*, with thirteen thouſand Crowns, from *Florence* with Intelligence of the Enemies purpoſes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French* King, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had deſigns upon it, the Emperor offered them aſſiſtance both of Men and Money: yea, and ſometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have aſſiſted them againſt the others, as being more deſirous that the Town ſhould remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for ſuch petit States, to be more ſafe by the intereſt of their jealous Neighbours, than any Forces of their own.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof were *Or*, a Croſs *Azure*. But for the Title of *Geneva*, after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip*, youngeſt Son of *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, to *Janus* the third Son of *Lewis* the ſecond Duke; and finally, to *Philip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth Son of *Philip* the ſeventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whoſe Poſterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth ſtill continue.

4. WALLISLAND.

EAſtward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Pœninæ*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*: ſo called either *quaſi Wallenſland*, or the Land of the *Valenſes*, once the Inhabitants of the Country about *Martinacht*, a chief Town hereof; or *quaſi Valleys-land*, or the *Land of Valleys*, of which it totally conſiſts. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furken*, to the Town of St. *Maurice*, where again the Hills do cloſe, and ſhut up the Valley; which is ſo narrow in that place, that a Bridge laid from one Hill to another (under which the River *Rhoſne* doth paſs) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Caſtle and two ſtrong Gates. On other parts it is invironed with a continual Wall of ſteep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a cruſt of Ice; not paſſable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by ſingle Paſſengers: ſo that having but that one entrance to it, which before we ſpake of, no Citadel can be made ſo ſtrong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of thoſe craggy and impaſſable Rocks lies a pleaſant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and moſt delicate Fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and moſt excellent Paſtures, which yield a notable increaſe of Cheeſe and Butter: and in the Country about *Sion* they diſcovered in *Anno* 1544. a Fountain of Salt; and have alſo many hot *Baths*, and Medicinal Waters very wholſom. Of Springs and River-water, they are very deſtitute; having ſcarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhoſne*, with a great deal both of Charge and Trouble (the common People uſing Snow-water for the moſt part for Domeſtick uſes:) which made one pleaſantly obſerve, that they *pay dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine*. Cattel they have ſufficient to ſerve their turn, and amongſt others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigneſs, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a Fallow-deer, leaping with wonderful Agility from one Precipice to another, and ſo not eaſily caught but in Summer time, for then the heat of that ſeaſon makes him blind. It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt 100 Miles, but its breadth is between fifteen and thirty.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Walliſland*: the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *di Furken*, in the very bottom of the Valley: and the *Lower* ſtretching out to the Town of St. *Maurice*, which is at the opening of the ſame: the length of both ſaid to be five ordinary days Journey, but the breadth not anſwerable. The *Upper Walliſland* containeth the ſeven *Reſorts* of 1. *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2. *Leuck*, 3. *Brig*, 4. *Nies*, 5. *Rawren*, 6. *Sider*, 7. *Gombes*, in which are reckoned thirty Pariſhes, the *Lower* comprehending the ſix *Reſorts* of 1. *Gurdis*, 2. *Ardoa*, 3. *Sallien*, 4. *Martinacht*, 5. *Juramont*, and 6. St. *Maurice*: in which are 24 Pariſhes. The people in both parts ſaid to be courteous towards Strangers, but very rough and churliſh towards one another.

The ſeveral Reſorts before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1. *Sedunum*, *Sittim*, or *Sion*, a Biſhops See, ſuffragan to the *Metropolitan* of *Tarencuniſe*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it ſelf, but neat and gallant in reſpect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhoſne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is ſeated the Cathedral Church, and the Canon's Houſes; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very ſtrong Caſtle, the Dwelling-place of the Biſhop in the heat of Summer: which being built upon an Hill of ſo great an height, and ſo hazardous an aſcent, is impoſſible almoſt to be took by force; the ſharpneſs of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of Aſſaults, and the highneſs of the Hill from the reach of the Gun-ſhot. 2. *Marchinacht*, by *Cæſar* called *Octodurus*, and *Civitas Valenſium* by *Antonius*, remarkable for its Antiquity only. 3. St. *Maurice*, or St. *Morits*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter eſpecially, when all the other Paſſages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town, which for that cauſe is very well manned and fortified to avoid ſurpriſal; and therefore alſo choſen for the Seat of the Governor of the *Lower Walliſland*.

This Country now called *Walliſland*, is in moſt *Latin* Writers called by the name of *Valeſia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valenſia*, as the *Dutch* or *Engliſh* name for *Wallenſland*: which name I ſhould conceive it took from the *Valenſes*, the old Inhabitants of this Valley, of whom *Octodurus* (now called *Merchinacht*) is by *Antonius* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made ſubject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cæſar*, at ſuch time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Weſtern parts of the *Roman* Empire unto *Charles* the *Great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Biſhop of *Sion*, *Anno* 805. Under his Succeſſors they continued to this very Day; but ſo, as that the Deputies of the *ſeven Reſorts* have not only Voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being choſen and inveſted unto the place, they join with him alſo in the *Diets* for chooſing Magiſtrates, redreſſing Grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Walliſland* obeyeth the *Upper*, made ſubject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no ſway in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governors agree of. The ſame Religion is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themſelves with the ſeven Popiſh *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, *Anno* 1572. or thereabouts; as alſo for their mutual defence and preſervation againſt foreign Enemies, and keeping Amity and Concord amongſt one another.

5. SWITZERLAND.

NEXT unto *Walliſland* lieth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the Eaſt, the *Griſons*, and ſome part of the *Tirol* in *Germany*; on the Weſt, the Mountain *Jour*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy* and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, another Province alſo of the upper *Germany*; and on the South *Walliſland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to ſay, 1. *Argow*, ſo called from the River *Aaz*, whoſe chief Town was *Lucern*. 2. *Wiſliſpurgergow*, ſo called from *Wiſliſpurg*, an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*. And 3. *Zurichgow*, ſo named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this preſent the Town of moſt note in all this Tract; but ſince the falling of theſe Countries from the Houſe of *Auſtria*, divided into many *Cantons* and other Members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner overgrown with craggy Mountains, but ſuch as for the moſt part have graſſy-tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nouriſhing Paſtures, which breed them a great ſtock of Cattel, their greateſt Wealth. And in ſome places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increaſe of Corn alſo, if care and induſtry be not wanting on the Huſbandman's part, but neither in ſo great abundance, as to ſerve all neceſſary uſes, which want they do ſupply from their neighbouring Countries. And tho' it ſtand upon as high ground as any in *Chriſtendom*, yet is no place more ſtored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of Fiſh, but ſerve the People very well in the way of Traffick, to diſperſe their ſeveral Commodities from one *Canton* to another: Of which the principal are *Bodenſee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genſer-ſee*, or the Lake of *Geneva*, by the *Rhoſne*; *Walldſtet-ſee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Ruſſe*; *Namonburger* and *Bieter-ſees*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich ſee*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty Miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the higheſt Country in *Europe* (as before is ſaid) the Rivers which do iſſue from it running through all quarters of the ſame; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Weſtern Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius*, paſſeth through *Germany* and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, ſuch are the Inhabitants of rude and rugged diſpoſitions, more fit for Arms than any civil Occupations, capable of Toil and Labour, which the neceſſities of their Country do inure them to, not able otherwiſe to afford them an hungry livelihood: the Poverty whereof makes them ſeek for Service, which they ſhift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their ſuperfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to ſpare greater multitudes to a foreign War, than a Man would eaſily imagine. In a word, the People are naturally honeſt, frugal, and induſtrious, impartial in the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and great lovers of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of ſuch a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himſelf able to take the Field, or ſtand his own ground in defence of his Dominions, if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their Reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, ſerved exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French* or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France* or *Spain*. And having had ſome good Succeſſes to increaſe their Fame, they grew ſo terrible at laſt, that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien*, were more afraid of one Band of *Swiſſe*, than of all the reſt of the *French* Army. But being found withal to be falſe and treacherous, and eaſily bought off by the better Purſe (which they moſt evidently diſcovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforza*, who had put himſelf and his Eſtate into their hands) and thoſe *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay ſo faſt in their Reputation, that firſt the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at laſt uſed them not at all, or at leaſt very ſparingly. And now it is their honour that they are choſen of the Guard to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; and that the greateſt Princes of *Europe* give them yearly Penſions. Which Penſions were given heretofore to be aſſured of their Aid upon all occaſions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other ſide.

For matter of *Religion* it is proportionably mixt; ſome of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popiſh*, ſome wholly *Proteſtant*; in others, both Religions uſed promiſcuouſly. At firſt the differences were ſo eagerly purſued on both ſides, that notwithſtanding the mediation of ſome potent Neighbours, it broke out into a Civil War; the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug*, (which the *Latin* Writers of this Story call the *Quinquepagici*) arming againſt *Zurich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War the *Proteſtant* Party was diſcomfited, *Zuinglius* himſelf ſlain in the head of the Battel, and his Body burnt; his Heart remaining in the midſt of the Fire whole and untouched; as Archbiſhop *Cranmer*'s alſo did, when all the reſt of his Body was conſumed to Aſhes. But thoſe of the *Reformed* Party would not ſo give over. Another Field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverſe Party. Wearied at laſt with reciprocal Defeats, they agreed the buſineſs, indulging each to other the free exerciſe of their own *Religions*: So it continueth at this Day, diverſity of Opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick Intereſt, nor giving any interruption to that bond of Peace which was ſo firmly knit amongſt them in their firſt *Confederacy*.

In the Year 1656. there aroſe a War between the *Proteſtant* and *R. C. Cantons* on this occaſion: All the Cantons have a right by Agreement to make what Regulations concerning matters of Religion they think fit, without prejudice to the General League. Now the *Popiſh Cantons* have made Laws, That it ſhall be Capital to any to change their Religion; and on a ſet Day every Year they go all to Maſs, and the Maſters of Families ſwear to continue true to the State, and firm in their Religion to their Lives end; and ſo they pretend they puniſh their falling into Hereſy with Death and Confiſcation of Goods, becauſe it is a violation of the Faith which is ſolemnly ſworn. But on the other hand, in the *Proteſtant-Cantons*, ſuch as turn are only obliged to go and live out of the Canton; but for their Eſtates they ſtill preſerve them, or are permitted to ſell them.

In the Year aforeſaid, ſome of the Canton of *Schwitz* changing their Religion and retiring to *Zurich*, their Eſtates were Confiſcated; and ſome others that had alſo changed,but had not left the Canton,were taken and beheaded. *Zurich* demanded the Eſtate of the Refugees; but inſtead of granting this,the Cantons of *Schwitz* demanded back their Subjects, that they might proceed againſt them as Delinquents, *&c.* But thoſe of *Zurich* and *Bern* thought this was both Inhumane and Unchriſtian, tho' the Deputy of *Baſil* was of another Mind, and thought they ought to be deliver'd up, which extreamly diſguſted thoſe of *Zurich*. Thoſe of *Schwitz* hereupon committed ſome Inſolencies upon the Subjects of *Zurich*, and refuſed to give ſatisfaction; upon all which, a War follow'd between the *Proteſtant* and the other Cantons. The Cantons of *Bern* and *Zurich* raiſed an Army of 25000 Men, which was commanded by Mr. *d' Erlack*, the greateſt Man amongſt them, but it was diſperſed in ſeveral Bodies, the *R. C.* Cantons drew out not above 6000 Men, yet they ſurprized Mr. *d' Erlack* with a body not much ſuperior to theirs, and both ſides, after a ſhort Engagement, run; the Cannon of the Canton of *Bern* was left in the Field a whole Day unregarded, and then thoſe of *Lucern* carried them off. And ſoon after the War was ended by a Treaty.

Long ſince that there aroſe another Quarrel between theſe two Religions, upon this occaſion: In the Canton of *Apenzel*, as the two Religions are tolerated, ſo they are ſeparated in different Quarters, the Canton being equally divided between them, and each Party living in their proper part; but in *Glaris* they are mixt, and the *R. C.* Family not above 200. and thoſe too ſo poor that ſome of them every Day changed their Religion; the other *R. C.* Cantons ſeeing the danger of loſing their Intereſt intirely in that Canton, and being ſet on by a Court, made uſe of ſome Complaints that were brought by the Papiſts of *Glaris*, as if the prevailing of the other Religion expoſed them to much Injuſtice and Oppreſſion; and upon that they propoſed that the *Canton* ſhould be equally divided into two halves, as *Apenzel* was: This was extreamly unjuſt, the *R. C.* not being the tenth part, perhaps not the twentieth of the Canton; but then neither was it eaſie for the other *Proteſtant* Cantons to come in to their Aſſiſtance, *Glaris* being ſituated in the midſt of the *R. C.* Cantons: However they of *Glaris* reſolved to periſh rather than to yield to this Injuſtice; and all the *Proteſtant* Cantons were reſolved to aſſiſt them in caſe of force; but at laſt, by the Interpoſition of the Popes Nuncio, the buſineſs was compoſed, upon condition that in all Suits of Law between thoſe of different Religions, two thirds of the Judges ſhould be always of the Religion of the Defendant. Whilſt this * Conteſt was on foot the *French* fortified *Hunninghen*, within a Mile of *Baſil*, to the great Terror of all the Cantons of both Religions, when they came to conſider it in cold Blood.

Now for the Body of their State, it conſiſts of three diſtinct Parts or Members, which are to be conſidered in this Diſcourſe, *viz.* the *Swiſſe* themſelves, the *Præfectures* which are ſubject to them, and the States that are Confederates with them. The *Swiſſe* are ſubdivided into thirteen Cantons, that is to ſay, *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Baſil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris*, and *Schaffhauſen*. Theſe properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many Rights, Priviledges and Preheminences which the others do not; as power to determine of War and Peace, to diſpoſe of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongſt themſelves the ſpoil of the Enemy. The firſt Confederacy was made betwixt the Cantons of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the moſt potent, the moſt exaſperated, and that which did moſt hotly proſecute the Combination, gave to the reſt the Name of *Switzers*, firſt made for ten Years only in defence of themſelves againſt the Violences of *Albert* I. Emperor and Duke of *Auſtria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by ſtrong hand to his own Eſtates, *Anno* 1309. but made perpetual after their great Victory obtained againſt Duke *Leopold*, Son of *Albert*, in the Fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, *Anno* 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the Confederacy till the Year 1352. nor *Bern* until the Year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in *Anno* 1481. *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* united with them in the Year 1501. And *Apenzel*, which was the laſt which was admitted into their Confederacy, *Anno* 1513. So that there paſſed within little of two hundred Years, from the firſt beginning of theſe Leagues, to the finiſhing of them.

The ſecond Member of this Body, are the Towns and States *Confederates* with them, for the preſervation of their common Liberties, *viz.* the Town and Abbot of of *St. Gall*, the Towns of *Rotwel*, *Mulhauſen*, *Muenberg*, and *Biel*, ſituated on the Lake thence named: or which the firſt belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in *France*, the latter to the Biſhops of *Baſil*) with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of theſe, *Rotwel* and *Mulhauſen* are confederate with all the Cantons; the reſt with ſome particulars only. The Abbot of St. *Gall* firſt entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preſervation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurick*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, the better to preſerve themſelves from the power of their *Abbot*, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in *Anno* 1452. *Rotwel* and *Mulhauſen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the *Cantons*, the firſt *Anno* 1515. the other 1519. *Newenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are ſuch leſſer parcels and additaments, as have accrued to their Eſtate, and are ſubject unto their Authority; either by Gift, Purchaſe, or [illegible] chance of War; ſome lying in *Switzerland* it ſelf, ſome amongſt other parts of the *Alpes*, and ſome in *Italy*. Theſe are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenſwyl*, *Wagenthal*, interpoſed here and there amongſt the *Switzers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongſt the *Rhætian Alpes*, not far from the *Griſons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a Valley of the *Alpes*, on the left Shore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Conſtans*; and finally, the Valleys of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano Mendriſio*, and *Belinzano*, ſituate in and amongſt the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden* and *Mellingen*, appertain to the eight firſt *Cantons*: *Waganthall*, the *Sargans*; and *Rhineck* to the ſeven firſt *Cantons*; *Rappenſwyl* to *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*, and *Thurgow* unto the ten firſt *Cantons*; *Belinzano* to the three firſt only; and all the reſt of the *Italian Præfectures* to the *Cantons* generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entered into the Confederacy when theſe *Præfectures* were given unto the *Switzers*, by *Maximilian Sforza*, Duke of *Millain*; which was in *Anno* 1513. ſome Months before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the reſt of the *Cantons*.

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Præfectures*, and *States-confederate*, amongſt all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Towns in the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States-confederate ſituate amongſt the *Switzers*, but St. *Gall* only, nor in any of the *Præfectures*, but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of conſideration are not like to be many. Of thoſe that are, the principal are, 1. *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned Univerſity, ſituate on both ſides of the River *Limon*, where it iſſueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had anciently two Monaſteries in it, in one of which *Huldericus Zuinglius* was a Canon, ſlain near this Town in the Battel ſpoken of before, *Anno* 1531.

now giving Name to the moſt honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the authority of ſummoning the general *Diets*, as of thoſe alſo of the *Proteſtants*; the Legates thereof preſiding in both Aſſemblies. 2. *Friburg*, ſituate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky Hill, founded by *Bertold*, the fourth Duke of *Zeringen*. 3. *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurum* of *Antoninus*) on the River *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of S. *Urſus*, and his 66 *Theban* Soldiers, in the time of the Emperor *Diocleſian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not ſo old by far as the People make it; who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4. *Baſil*, ſo called either of a *Baſilisk* ſlain at the building of the City; or of the *German* word *Paſel*, ſignifying a Path; or of Βασίλεια, ſignifying Kingly. It was built *Anno* 382. and is famous for an Univerſity founded by *Pius* II. *Anno* 1459. It was made a *Canton*, *Anno* 1501. and is honoured with the Sepulchers of *Oecolampadius*, *Eraſmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarienus*, and *Hottoman* the famous Civilian. In this City, *Anno* 1431. was held that notable Council wherein though the Papal Authority was then at the height, it was declared that a *General Council was above the Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practice; the Council depoſing Pope *Eugenius* IV. and placing in his room *Amadeus*, Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the IV. who having held the See nine Years, in a time of *Schiſm*, did willingly, in order to the peace of *Chriſtendom*, reſign the Popedom to *Nicholas* V. who had before been choſen by the oppoſite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, ſometimes a Town Imperial, ſtill a Biſhop's See; the Biſhop being ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Beſanſon*, in the County of *Burgundy*; ſeated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Weis* and *Byrſa*, two leſſer Brooks) by which it is divided into the *greater Baſil* lying towards *France*, and the *leſſer* lying towards *Germany*. 5. *Lucern*, ſituate on both ſides of the *Ruſſe*, where it iſſueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; ſo called from *Lucern*, *i. e.* the *Lanthorn* which was placed here on an high Tower, [illegible] give light to Watermen in the Night. A City well traded and frequented by Strangers, becauſe the ordinary Road from *Germany* into *Italy*, paſſing from hence through the Country of the *Griſons*; and in regard that the *Diets* for the *Popiſh Cantons*, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates Hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whoſe Ghoſt (as the common People are made to believe) doth walk once a Year on the Banks of this Lake in his Judge's Robes. And to be ſure the fiction ſhall not be confuted, they add, That whoſoever ſeeth him ſhall die that Year. 6. *Bern*, compaſſed almoſt round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little Mountain; the Houſes of Free-ſtone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives Name to the largeſt and moſt potent of all the *Cantons*; one of the firſt which did embrace the *Reformation*, and the firſt of all which purged it ſelf of Images, thoſe excellent Inſtruments of Superſtition and Idolatry, defaced here in a popular Tumult, *Anno* 1548. 7. *Lauſanna*, in the Canton of *Bern*, a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Beſanſon*, ſeated on the Banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compaſſed with Mountains always covered with Snow, which open themſelves on the Eaſt ſide only, which is towards *Italy*. 8. *Schaff-hauſen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lieth on the other ſide of the *Rhene*; of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Schawben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this *Confederacy*.

Next for the *Præfectures* and *Confederate States*; they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rotwel*, and *Mulhauſen*, two Imperial Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of thoſe which be, the principal amongſt the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of St. *Gall* (*Sengal* as they corruptly call it) an Imperial City, ſituate amongſt the Mountains near the *Boden-See*, a rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking Name from the Monaſtry of St. *Gall*, a famous *Scot*, and the Apoſtle of thoſe parts, *Anno* 630. or thereabouts; the Abbot of which having great Poſſeſſions in this Tract (before *Apenzel* and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptiſts* were once very prevalent here, in ſo much that one of them cut off his Brother's Head in the preſence of his Father and Mother, and ſaid (according to the humour of that Sect, who boaſt much of Dreams, Viſions, and Enthuſiaſms) that *God commanded him ſo to do.* The principal amongſt the *Præfectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquiſate in *Germany*) the *Upper-Baden*, ſeated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almoſt in the middle of the Country; and for that cauſe the place of meeting for the Council of *Eſtate* of all the *Confederates*. It taketh Name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the reſt in private Houſes; conſcious, as it is thought, to much laſciviouſneſs. For whereas it is ſaid of *Adrian*, that *Lavacra pro ſexibus ſeparavit*; here Men and Women promiſcuouſly bathe together; and which is worſt, in private: whereas *Munſter* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem ſolam cum ſolo*; and yet are not any of them diſturbed with Jealouſie. The *Baths* are much frequented, yet not ſo much for Health as Pleaſure. Their chiefeſt Vertue is the *quickning* Power they have upon *barren* Women. But as the *Friars* uſe to ſend Men whoſe Wives are fruitleſs, in Pilgrimage to St. *Joyce*, the Patroneſs of fruitfulneſs, and in the mean time to lie with their Wives; ſo it may be with good reaſon thought, that in a place of ſuch liberty as this is, the luſty young Gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation on barren Women, than the Waters of the Bath it ſelf. No other Town of eminent note amongſt the *Præfectures* of the *Swiſſes*, except *Rhineck* it ſelf, the ſeat of the Governour for the *Switzers*, ſituate near the Lake of *Conſtance*; and none of any note at all amongſt the *Italian Præfectures*, except *Belinzana* and *Locarno*, neither of them containing four hundred Houſes, and thoſe none of the handſomeſt.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*, with ſome of the adjoining parts of *Germany*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*, did ſometimes ſtand the famous and renowned Caſtle of *HABSPURG*; from the Lords whereof, the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and moſt of the Kings and Princes of the Chriſtian World do derive themſelves. Firſt founded, as ſome ſay, by *Ottopert* the third Prince of this Line, at or before the Year 700. as others ſay, by *Rapato*, the Son of *Betzeline*, about the Year 1020. ſituate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now ſo decayed, that there is no tracing of the Ruines: Preſerved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, deſcended in a direct Line from *Segebert*, the eldeſt Son of *Theodebert*, King of *Metz*, or *Auſtraſia*; firſt ſetled in theſe Parts by *Clotaire* II. King of the *French*, with the Titles, as ſome ſay, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schawben*, an adjoining Province of *Germany*.) Being ſoon weary of that empty, but invidious Title, they were ſometimes called Earls of *Habſpurg*, by the Name of this Caſtle; ſometimes Earls of *Altemberg*, another Caſtle not far off, of their own foundation. And after, cloſing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*; from which ſome of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known diſtinctly by the Title of Earls of *Habſpurg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned, when thoſe of *Altemberg* and *Argow* became diſcontinued. Howſoever we will here lay down the whole Succeſſion of this famous Family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The

The Earls of *Habſpurg*.

A. Chr.

635 1. *Sigibert*, Son of *Theodobert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotaire* the ſecond of that Name, *French* King, diſpoſſeſſed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of thoſe Countries, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the Title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.

2. *Sigibert* II. Son of *Sigibert* I. Duke of *Upper Almain*.

3. *Ottobert*, or *Othirt*, the Son of *Sigibert* II. the Founder, as ſome ſay, of the Caſtle of *Altemburg*, and *Habſpurg*, of which promiſcuouſly called Earl.

4. *Bebo*, the Son of *Ottopert*, the laſt Duke of *Upper Almain*; which Title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habſpurg*.

5. *Robert*, or *Rother*, as ſome call him, the Son of *Bebó*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

766 6. *Hertopert*, the Son of *Robert*, who added unto his Eſtate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Briſgow*.

7. *Rampert*, the Son of *Hertopert*, who flouriſhed *Anno* 814. at what time he procured the Canonization of S. *Trutpertus*.

8. *Guntram*, the Son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

9. *Luithard*, the Son of *Guntram*.

900 10. *Luitfride*, the Son of *Luithard*.

929 11. *Hunifride*, the Son of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Eſtates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alſatia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his Deceaſe by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

950 12. *Guntram* II. Son of *Hunifride*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the Title of Earl of *Argow*: from whoſe ſecond Son named *Berthilo*, deſcended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and a good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebiro*, the third Son of *Guntram*; who having founded the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great poſſeſſions in adjoyning parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his Deceaſe (being childleſs) to *Berthold* the Son of *Berthilo*, and his Coſin *German*.

13. *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldeſt Son of *Guntram* II. Earl of *Argow*.

14. *Rapato*, Son of *Betzeline*, the Founder or Repairer of the Caſtle of *Habſpurg*, from whence both he and his Succeſſors were conſtantly called Earls of *Habſpurg*, Great Grand-father by *Theodorick* his youngeſt Son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperour (at the inſtigation of the Pope) againſt *Henry* IV.

15. *Warner*, by ſome called *Berenger*, or *Berangarius*, the Son of *Rapato*.

1096 16 *Otho*, the Son of *Warner* or *Berenger*.

1108 17 *Warner* II. Son of *Otho*, enriched by the Emperour *Henry* IV. with ſome fair Eſtates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

18. *Albert*, the Son of *Warner* II. ſurnamed the *Rich*.

19. *Albert* II. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, Son of *Albert* I. added to his Eſtates a great part of the *Upper Alſatia*; which he had by the Right of *Heduigis* his Wife, one of the Daughters and Heir of *Simon*, the laſt Earl thereof.

1238 20 *Rodolph*, the fortunate Son of *Albert* II. added to his Eſtate the reſt of the *Upper Elſate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, *Anno* 1273. Of which he made ſo good advantage, that he added unto his Eſtates the great Dukedom of *Auſtria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the firſt Foundation of the *Auſtrian* greatneſs; of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that beſides the following Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, thoſe of the line Collateral ſtill retained the Titles of Earls of *Habſpurg* (according to the ill cuſtom of *Germany*) increaſed with the addition of the Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and ſo continued till the expiring of that Line in the Perſon of *Rodolph* IV. the laſt that bare the Title of Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Anno* 1356. by whoſe death many fair Eſtates were added to the *Auſtrian* Family.

Having on the occaſion of theſe Earls of *Habſpurg*, beheld ſo much of the Affairs of this Country, as related unto that puiſſant and illuſtrious Family, let us go forward to the reſt: firſt taking in our way the ancient Eſtate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous Tract, containing many ſeveral Nations (ſome of them ſpoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greateſt and moſt-populous of all the reſt: ſo called, as *Verſtegan* will have it, *Quaſi Hil-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, which is now called *Juitland*; and from thoſe dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province ſtill called *Voitland*. Grown by long Peace, and want of opportunity by Traffick into foreign Parts, to ſo great a Multitude, that the Country barren of it ſelf, was no longer able to maintain them, they ſet fire on their Towns and Houſes, and with a general Reſolution, went to ſeek new Dwellings. The total number of Men, Women, and Children, which went upon this deſperate Action, are ſaid to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 90000 were fighting Men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Caſſius* à *Roman* Conſul, ſlain the Conſul himſelf, and ſold his Soldiers for Bond-ſlaves: upon the apprehenſion of which good Succeſs, they thought no body able to withſtand them. But they found *Cæſar* of a ſtronger metal than *L. Caſſius*; who having ſtopped their paſſage by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown ſtrong enough to bid them Battel; ſo waſted them in ſeveral Skirmiſhes and Defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild thoſe Towns and Villages, which they had deſtroyed before this Enterprize: which he upon delivery of Hoſtages, did vouchſafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the leaſt, two Millions of them periſhed in this journey, and not ſo much by the Sword (though that ſpared them not) as for want of Neceſſaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* III. by the *Burgundians* and *Almains*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Ruſs* parting their Dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; ſome parts firſt taken out: and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habſpurg*, as before was noted. Given with the reſt of that Kingdom to the Emperour *Conrade* the ſecond, by *Rodolph* the laſt King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their cuſtom was) into divers States; moſt of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habſpurg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenburg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as Heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Auſtria*. By means of which united Titles, the *Auſtrian* Family was poſſeſſed of ſo much of this Country, as now makes up five *Cantons*, and as many of the principal *Præfectures*; that is to ſay, the *Cantons* of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffehauſen*; the

Præfectures of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenthall*, *Roperſwyll*; together with a great part of the Country of *Targow*, wherein ſtands the City of St. *Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; ſome of the reſt, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the Power of the Emperor *Albert*, the Son of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, who had a purpoſe to unite them to the Houſe of *Auſtria*; becauſe obnoxious alſo to the Power of thoſe Princes. But the People being at laſt over-burthened by the tyranny of thoſe Governours, whom the Dukes of *Auſtria*, and their other Lords had ſent among them; ſeeing withal the Empire by the Pope's Fulminations diſtracted into many Factions, and the *Auſtrian* Family weakned by a ſub-diviſion of that great Eſtate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League amongſt themſelves, for defence of their Liberty, into which firſt entred thoſe of *Switz*, *Uren*, and *Underwalden*, *Anno* 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513. as was before noted. At their firſt beginning to take Arms, *Frederick* one of the many Dukes of *Auſtria* (to whoſe ſhare they fell) ſent his Brother *Leopold* againſt them with a puiſſant Army, which they encountred near *Mortgarten*, a Village of the now *Canton* of *Underwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of thoſe narrow paſſages, through which his Army was to march, than by any Valour. In which it was no ſmall help to them, that the ways were all ſo filled with Ice, that he was able to do no ſervice with his Horſe, and his Soldiers ſo amazed at the preſent difficulties, that the *Confederates* only caſting Stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoyning. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this Succeſs, they brought the new *Canton* of *Lucern* into their Confederacy by the force of Arms, *Anno* 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their Reputation and like hope of Liberty, *Anno* 1351. in which year thoſe of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five, and willing to diſcharge themſelves of their Lordly Maſters, were united to them, as was the new *Canton* of *Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381. the Towns of *Solothurn* and *Friburg* deſcended from the Houſe of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that Line) upon thoſe of *Habſpurg*, revolted from their natural Lords, and admitted *Cantons*, occaſioned *Leopold*, Son of *Albert* the *ſhort*, and Brother of *Albert* IV. Duke of *Auſtria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquiſhed and ſlain near *Sempach*, a Village of the *Canton* of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, *Anno* 1386. and the ſucceeding Dukes not venturing any more againſt them, the reſidue of the *Cantons* and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themſelves of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, they continued free and unmoleſted, but never came to any Reputation for their Valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they diſcomfited in three great Battels, and ſlew him alſo in the third. A War commenced by him at the firſt on ſmall occaſions, and leſs hope; the Country being ſo barren, and the People ſo poor, that their Embaſſadour to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) proteſted, that if all their Country-men were taken, they would not be able to pay a Ranſom, to the value of the Spurs and Bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were ſo poor, that they knew not what Riches was. For having won the firſt Battle at *Granſon* (the other two were thoſe of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodlieſt *Pavilions* in the World, was by them torn in pieces, and turned into Breeches and Side-coats: divers ſilver Plates and Diſhes, they ſold for a *French Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an *Engliſh* Peny) ſuppoſing them to be but Pewter; amd a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodlieſt Jewel in *Chriſtendom*, was ſold to a Prieſt for a *Guilder*; and by him again to ſome of the Lords of the Country for three *Franks*. After their Valour ſhewed in theſe Battels, *Lewis* XI. took them into Penſion, giving them yearly forty thouſand Crowns, *viz.* twenty thouſand to the Cantons, and twenty thouſand to particular Perſons: and bowed ſo much beneath the Majeſty of the moſt *Chriſtian* King, as to term himſelf one of the *Burgeſſes* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them ſhould be held for their firſt *Allie*. By theſe Arts, and the nearneſs of their Forces for thoſe occaſions, he wreſted *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* XII. won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiouſly betrayed, as was ſaid before. Upon the merit of theſe Services, they required an Augmentation of their Penſions: which when this *Lewis* XII. denied, they withdrew themſelves from the Amity of the *French*, and entred into the Service of Pope *Julio* II. who therefore ſtiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, *An.* 1510. The fruits of which Entertainment was the Defeat of the whole Forces of King *Lewis*, and the loſs of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the Son of *Ludowick*, was ſolemnly re-inſtated by the Confederates: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them thoſe Towns and Valleys in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly Members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*, reckoned amongſt the *Præfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis* I. in purſuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the Battel of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards conſidering what Damage his Realm had ſuſtained by the Revolt of the Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them, on Condition that he ſhould reſtore the ancient Penſion of forty thouſand Crowns; Secondly, that he ſhould pay unto them at certain terms, ſix hundred thouſand Crowns; Thirdly, that he ſhould entertain four thouſand of them in his pay continually; Fourthly, that for the reſtoring of ſuch places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he ſhould give unto them thirty thouſand Crowns: Fifthly, that he ſhould give them three Months pay beforehand: Sixthly and laſtly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had eſtated in *Millain*, and were now going to diſpoſſeſs, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thouſand *Franks* of yearly Revenue, and married to a Daughter of the blood Royal. On theſe conditions, as honourable to them, as burthenſom to the King, was the League renewed, *An.* 1522. ſince which time, they have obtained, that ſix hundred of their Country are to be of the *French* King's Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the Gates of the Courts, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not ſo ingroſs the Market, though they raiſed the price of the Commodity, but that all other Princes might have them alſo for their Money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never going ſo high as the *French* had done. At laſt, upon the differences which grew amongſt themſelves in point of *Religion*, they grew to be divided alſo in point of *Penſion*: the *Popiſh Cantons* taking Penſions of the Pope, and the King of *Spain*; the *Proteſtants* of the *French*, the mixt, of both; and all of the *Venetians*. By which means being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be truſted of none. Which ſudden ſinking of that Fame and Reputation which they had attained to, together with the Reaſons of it; that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian *Guicciardine* doth deſcribe as followeth: “ The Name (ſaith he) of this wild “ and uncivil Nation, hath got great honour by their “ Concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by “ Nature, inured to War, and exact keepers of Military “ Diſcipline, they have not only defended their own “ Country, but have won much praiſe in Foreign parts: “ which doubtleſs had been greater, if they had fought to “ inlarge their own Empire, and not for Wages, to inlarge the Empire of others; and if nobly they had “ propounded unto themſelves any other ends than the

‘ gain of Money; by the love whereof being made abject,
‘ they have loſt the opportunity of becoming fearful
‘ to *Italy*. For ſince they never came out of their
‘ Confines, but as *Mercinary* Men, they have had no publick
‘ fruit of their Victories: but by their Covetouſneſs,
‘ have become intolerable in their Actions, where they
‘ overcame, and in their demands with other Men; yea,
‘ at home froward and obſtinate in their concluſions, as
‘ well as following their commands, under whoſe pay
‘ they ſerve in War. Their chief Men have Penſions of
‘ ſeveral Princes to favour them in their publick Meetings;
‘ and ſo private profit being preferred before the
‘ good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and
‘ fall at diſcord amongſt themſelves, with great leſſening
‘ of their Reputation, which they had gotten amongſt
‘ Strangers. So he, relating the Occurrences of the year 1511, which the following iſſue of Affairs hath fully verified.

As for the Government of this State, it is meerly *popular*, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate Body of their Council: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in thoſe long Wars which were betwixt them and their *Vaſſals*, juſtly provoked by thoſe intolerable preſſures and exactions which they laid upon them; or elſe worn out of memory and obſervation, for want of ſway and ſuffrage in the Councils of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffehauſen*, *Baſil*, and *Zurich*, are ſome *Gentry* left, not capable of any place or *ſuffrage* in the *Senate* of the ſaid *Cantons* (from which they are excluded by the common People, becauſe they joyned not with them in their firſt Revolt) unleſs they wave their *Gentry*, and be enrolled amongſt the number of *Plebeians*. The reſt they have (it ſeemeth) in ſo poor eſteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meaneſt Trades, in all occaſions of War, are numbred with and amongſt theſe *Gentlemen*; making up one Society only, and joyning with them in electing the *Maſter of their Company*, who is one of the Senate. But becauſe that every *Canton* hath his proper Magiſtrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatneſs, or in the number of its ſeveral *Reſorts*, or Sub-diviſions; it will not be amiſs to ſhew what number of *Reſorts* are in every *Canton*: that is to ſay, in *Underwalden* only two, in *Switz* ſix, in *Uren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* ſix, in *Lucern* ſeven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Baſil* and *Schaffehauſen* but one a piece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themſelves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one hundred forty and eight. Of theſe conſiſts the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrate, choſen by the Commonalty of that *Canton* (whom they call the *Wuaman*) together with a ſtanding Council aſſiſtant to him, choſen out of the People, for the directing and diſpoſing of their own Affairs; which meet and ſit in the chief Town and Village of that *Diſtrict*. But if the Cauſe concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* ſendeth one or more Commiſſioners to the general *Diets*; where they determine of the buſineſs which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Votes*: the Commiſſioners of every *Canton* having one Vote only, though many may be ſent from each, to add the greater weight to their Conſultations. The place of meeting is moſt commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in reſpect of the Commodity of the Inns and Houſes, the pleaſant ſituation and famous *Medicinal Baths*: and becauſe it is ſeated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and ſubject to the eight firſt *Cantons*. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of ſending, receiving, and anſwering Embaſſadors; of Governments, and diſtributing the publick Offices; and finally, of difficult Cauſes and Appeals, referred unto the judgment of the *Great Council*, in which the City *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the firſt place, not by Antiquity, but Dignity, and of old Cuſtom hath the greateſt Authority of calling together this *Great Council*, ſignifying by Letters to each *Canton*, the Cauſe, Time, and Place of Meeting: yet ſo, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commiſſioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the ſame. That which the greater number do reſolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of theſe *Swiſſe* conſiſt altogether of Foot, Horſe being found unſerviceable in this Mountainous Country. And of theſe Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raiſe ſixſcore thouſand. Which poſſibly may be true enough, if it be underſtood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwiſe *de facto*, the greateſt Army that ever they brought into the Field, conſiſted but of one and thirty thouſand Men, which was that wherewith they aided the Confederate States of *Italy* againſt the *French*, and reſtored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedom of *Millain*. Their ordinary ſtanding Forces are conceived to be ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand, which they may bring into the Field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furniſhed. And for their *Revenue*, it is not like to be very great, conſidering the poverty of their Country, and their want of Traffick with other Nations. That which is *ordinary* and in common, ariſeth out of the Annual Penſions which they receive from Foreign States; the profits ariſing out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Prefectures, the Impoſt laid on Wines ſold in Taverns, and Corn uſed by Bakers; and the Rents of a diſſolved Monaſtery called *Kings-field* (or *Conings-field*) becauſe many Kings and Queens have been Cloiſtered there, amounting to forty thouſand Guldans yearly. Which Monaſtery was built in the year 1380. in memory and honour of the Emperor *Albertus*, ſlain by his Nephew *Spantback*, not far from *Baſil*. Their *extraordinary* doth conſiſt of Spoils that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* only, the reſt can claim no ſhare in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themſelves. For otherwiſe taking in the *Confederate* States as well without as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raiſe fifty or threeſcore thouſand Men; that is to ſay, the *Switzers* themſelves ſeventeen thouſand Men, the *Griſons* ten thouſand, thoſe of *Walliſland* ſix thouſand, the Abbot and Town of St. *Gall* four thouſand, the City of *Geneva* two thouſand; beſides what *Rotwel* and *Mulhauſen*, two Imperial Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their ancient Leagues to aid them with ſix hundred Horſes, at his own charges; beſides two thouſand ſix hundred Crowns in Annual Penſions. But the Revenue of thoſe States is ordered by it ſelf apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unleſs it be on the repulſing of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which caſe, and others of a general *intereſt*, they communicate both Heads and Purſes: the Delegates and Commiſſioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to conſult of the Common Cauſe, which Meeting they entitle the *Great Council*. But this is very ſeldom held, publick Affairs being generally ordered by the Commiſſioners of the *Switzers* only, though they themſelves diſclaim the Name of *Switzers*, as too mean and narrow, and call themſelves *Eidienoſſen*, that is to ſay, *Partakers of the ſworn Leagues*. More of this Commonwealth he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in *Simler*, who purpoſely and punctually hath deſcribed the ſame.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Atheſis*, and

Adua: being bounded on the Eaſt, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the Weſt with *Switzerland*; on the North with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more Mountainous than any of this *Alpine* Tract, and having leſs natural Commodities to boaſt it ſelf of, more than the Fountains of thoſe Rivers before mentioned.

Reti or Grisons

The People of it by moſt *Latine* Writers of theſe times, are called by the Name of *Rhæti*, the Country *Rhætia*: and ſo far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rhæti* did inhabit all the Lands poſſeſſed by the *Griſons*: though the *Griſons* do not inhabit a fourth part of thoſe Lands, which were poſſeſſed heretofore by the ancient *Rhæti*: For anciently the *Rhæti* did extend their Dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italy*, to the River of *Danow*, *Danube*; comprehending beſides this of the *Griſons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Sckwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and ſo much alſo of the *Switzers*, as was not in poſſeſſion of the old *Helvetii*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich Valleys and fruitful Fields; but a moſt pleaſant Race of Wines called *Vina Rhætica*, much drank of by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no Man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous Fields, which the continual Snow made to look of an hoary hue: and by alluſion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the preſent by the Name of *Graunpuntner*, that is to ſay, the hoary or *gray Confederates*.

As for the *Rhæti*, take them in the former Latitude, they were ſubdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius*, the Sons-in-law and adopted Children of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *A. U. C.* 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, *viz.* *Rhætia prima*, and *Rhætia ſecunda*, both of them appertaining by *Conſtantines* new Model, to the *Dioceſs* of *Italy*. A Nation in the firſt Original of *Italian* Race, and ſo more properly to be aſſigned to that *Dioceſs*; but had inhabited this Tract from the time that *Belloveſus* the *Gaul* ſeiſed on part of *Tuſcany*, expelling thence the ancient Inhabitants thereof: who under the Conduct of *Rhætus*, a great Man amongſt them, poſſeſſed themſelves of theſe Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoyning, which they called *Rhætia*, by the name of their Captain General. This happened in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, in the firſt Cradle, as it were, of the *Roman* Empire. In the declining Age whereof, during the Reign of *Valentinian* III. and *Anaſtaſius*, thoſe parts which lay neareſt unto *Germany*, and were worth the Conquering, were ſubdued by the *Almains*, and *Boiarians*; by them Incorporated with the reſt of their ſeveral States. The reſidue of this Mountainous Tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a Member of the Empire, till given by *Charles the Great* to the Biſhop of *Chur*; whoſe Succeſſors, being ſeveral ways moleſted by their potent Neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual Aid and Preſervation, *Anno* 1497. By whoſe Aid they ſo valiantly made good their ground against the *Auſtrians*, that at the laſt, after the loſs of twenty thouſand Men on both ſides, the points in difference were accorded, and a Peace concluded.

This is the ſubſtance of this Story, as to former times, to which there cannot much be added in the way of *Hiſtory*; little or no alteration happening in their Affairs, but a more perfect ſetling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we muſt obſerve that this whole Tract is caſt into three *Diviſions*; that is to ſay, the *Upper League* or *Liga Griſa*. 2. *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the Houſe of God. 3. The *Lower League* called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eighth *Italian Præfectures* will make a fourth. Their Buildings generally in the three firſt being cold and mountainous, are of Free-ſtone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the Windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the ſaid three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of Glaſs, and preſently ſhut it cloſe again; the out-ſide of the Windows having leaves of Wood, to keep the heat of their Stows from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for Travelling, the ways are for the moſt part unſafe and dangerous, by reaſon of the ſtraight Paſſages, dreadful Precipices, and thoſe almoſt continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and *Cataracts* of the River *Rhene*, deſcending with great violence from the higheſt Mountains: huge Hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noiſe as hideous, as if it were a clap of Thunder.

For the Particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the higheſt and moſt mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italy*, having therein thoſe vaſt Mountains of *Locknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two Streams of the *Rhene* have their firſt Original. By the *French* it is called *Ligo Griſe*, or the *Gray League*, (the word *Gris*, or *Griſe*, in that Language, being *Gray* in ours) in the ſame ſenſe as the *Dutch* call it *Graunpuntner*, that is, *Confæderati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Griſle-pates*: either becauſe the Mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of *hoary Iſicles*, or from the Heads of the People, *Gray* before their time. It conſiſteth of nineteen *Reſorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages, of which four only ſpeak the *Dutch*, all the reſt a corrupt *Italian*: and was the firſt which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the Name of *Griſons* came unto the reſt, who after joyned with them in the ſame Confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of Note. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1. *Ilanter*, the place ſometimes of the *General Diets* for theſe *Leagues*. 2. *Diſerntis*, where is a very rich Monaſtery. 3. St. *Bernardino*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4. *Maſox*, ſometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley *Maſoxer-tal*. 5. *Galanckter*, whence the Vale ſo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6. *Ruſſia*, ſituate on the River *Mueſa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italy*. This League is compoſed of 28 Communities, of which 18 are Papiſts, and the reſt are Proteſtants, the Communities of the two Religious live Neighbourly together; yet they will not ſuffer thoſe of another Religion to live amongſt them, ſo that every Community is intirely of the ſame Religion, and if any one change, he muſt go into another Community. *Burnet*.

2. The ſecond *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the Houſe of God*, ſo called becauſe it was the proper Patrimony of the Biſhop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *Middle League*, as being ſituate between the *Upper League* on the Weſt, and the *Lower League* upon the Eaſt. It is the greateſt of the three, containing twenty one *Reſorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this ſide the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the reſt towards *Italy*: and yet two only ſpeak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of moſt note are 1. *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated amongſt high and inacceſſible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2. *Mur*, (called *Murus* by the ſame *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*; a Valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian* Præfectures. 3. *Stalla*, called *Bevia*, by the *Italians*, becauſe the way doth in that place divide it ſelf. 4. *Jacomo* (in the Valley of *Compolſchin*) called *Travaſede* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Sinnada*, in the Valley of *Engadin*. And 6. *Chur*, by ſome *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, ſo called from the long ſtay that *Conſtantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended againſt the *Germans*; built afterwards by ſome part of his Forces which continued here, *Anno* 357. about half a *Dutch* Mile from the meeting of the two ſtreams of the *Rhene*, in form Triangular, the Buildings indifferent in themſelves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hil; in one corner of which ſtandeth the *Cloſe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a ſtately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives who have ſeen

no fairer, than it is with Strangers: and near the Church the Biſhop's Palace, and the Houſes of the *Canons*, all well built, and handſomly adorned. The Biſhop of this City, and of all the Country of theſe *Leagues* (for they received their *Biſhop* and the *Faith* together, *Anno* 489.) acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole League: but on the Introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themſelves from their Obedience to the Biſhop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free-State*. So far conformable to him, for their own preſervation, that as the Biſhop and his Canons, with the reſt of this *League*, upon occaſion of the wrongs done them by the Houſe of *Auſtria*; Lords of the Neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in Confederacy with the ſeven firſt *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themſelves from the command of their Biſhops, concur with them at laſt in that mutual *League*. In this there are 24 Communities, and the Burgo-Maſter of *Coire* is ever the Head of the League, and they are almoſt all Proteſtants; yet the Papiſts are ſcarcely kept in Order by the Perſons of Quality amongſt them, who ſee their Intereſt: In all the three Leagues the Proteſtants are ſaid to be two thirds. *Burnet*.

3. The third *League* of theſe *Griſons*, is the *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*; ſituate cloſe upon *Tirol*, in the Northeaſt part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are thoſe of *Malans* and *Meienfield*, obey the joynt commands of the three Leagues of the *Griſons*; the other eight being ſubject to the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria* under whom they are ſuffered to enjoy their ancient Priviledges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, *Anno* 1436. conditioning their mutual defence againſt all Enemies, preſervation of their Peace, and maintenance of their Priviledges; reſerving notwithſtanding their Obedience to their natural Lords. In which reſpect, and by reaſon of the Intereſt and Society which they have with the reſt of the *Griſons*, they are in friendſhip with the *Swiſſe*, but in no Confederacy. City or walled Town they have none. The chief of thoſe they have, are 1. *Caſtels*, the Seat of the Government for the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*; 2. *Malans*, and 3. *Meienfield*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4. *Tanaas*, giving name to the firſt and greateſt of the ten Juriſdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the ſame; and where are kept Monuments and Records which concern their Priviledges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhætico mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, becauſe it is at the end of the Valley which the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4. As for the *Italian Præfectures* they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Griſons* by *Maximilian Sforze*, Duke of *Millain*, *Anno* 1513. at ſuch time as he gave the like Preſent to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of theſe the firſt is called *Plurs*, ſo called from the chief Town of the ſame name, in Latine *Plura*, once ſeated in a Plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of ſundry Villages lying in the ſame bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomleſs Gulf. For on the *26th* of *Auguſt* 1618, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinckling of an eye 1500 people, (*Burnet* ſaith 2200.) and left no ſign or ruine of a Town there ſtanding; but in the place thereof a great Lake of ſome two Miles length. 2. *Chiaronna*, ſituate in a pleaſant Valley ſo called, near the River *Maira*, and ten *Italian* Miles from the *Lake* of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch Clevener-tal*, or the Valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the ancient name. 3. The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Tolina* in the *Latine*, a pleaſant Valley, extending threeſcore Miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*, and two Miles in breadth: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently tranſported on this ſide the *Alpes*. It is divided into ſix Præfectures, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1. *Bormio*, ſeated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2. *Teio*, the chief Fortreſs of the whole Valley. 3. *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the paſſage of the King of *Spain's* Forces out of *Millain* into *Germany*, by the Practiſes and Treaſons of *Rodolphus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romiſh* Religion, was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, *Anno* 1622. the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it ſelf forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* ſetled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians* and *Savoyards*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long Treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Griſons* re-eſtated in their juſt poſſeſſions, *Anno* 1630. ſave that the *Spaniard* ſtill holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the ſafer paſſage of his Forces, if occaſion be. This is one of the richeſt Valleys in the World, in which there are three Harveſts ſome years, yet the *Griſons* draw nothing thence but ſome ſmall inconſiderable Fines, ten or twelve thouſand Crowns being thought a great deal.

Such is the State of *three Leagues* conſidered ſeverally, and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Common-wealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *General Diet*, once in every year, conſiſting of threeſcore and three Commiſſioners: that is to ſay, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the Houſe of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*. Theſe have Authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common Prefectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Embaſſies, and Laws, which concern the Publick: yet ſo, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have Authority if need be, to Reverſe the Sentence; the Cauſes being ſeverally propoſed, and paſſed by the major part of the Voices. The Government of each League, *popular*, is amongſt the *Switzers*.

Dr. *Burnet* who lately travell'd theſe Countries obſerves, That *Switzerland* lies between *France* and *Italy*, that are both of them Countries incomparably more rich and better furniſhed with all the Pleaſures and Conveniences of Life than it is; and yet *Italy* is almoſt quite diſpeopl'd, and the People that remain in it, are reduced to a miſery that can ſcarce be imagin'd, by thoſe who have not ſeen it: And *France* is in a great meaſure diſpeopl'd, and the Inhabitants are reduced to a Poverty, that appears in all the Marks in which it can ſhew it ſelf, both in their Houſes, Furniture, Cloaths, and Looks.

On the contrary, *Switzerland* is extream full of People, and in every place in the Villages, as well as in their Towns, one ſees all the Marks he can look for of Plenty and Wealth. Their Houſes and Windows are in good caſe, and the High-ways are well maintained, all the People are well Cloath'd, and every one lives at his eaſe.

This Obſervation ſurprized me (ſaith he) yet more in the Country of the *Griſons*, who have almoſt no Soil at all, being ſituate in Valleys that are almoſt waſhed away with the Torrents that fall from the Hills, and yet thoſe Vallies are well Peopl'd, and every one lives Happily and at eaſe, under a gentle Government, whilſt other Rich and Plentiful Countries are reduced to ſuch Miſeries; that as many of the Inhabitants are forced to change their Seats, ſo thoſe who ſtay behind, can ſcarce live and pay thoſe grievous Impoſitions that are laid upon them. The *Peaſants* on the contrary in *Bern* are ſome of them worth 100000. Crowns and 10000 commonly, they paying no Duties to the Publick. The liberty of this Country is ſuch (ſaith the ſame Author in another place) that the Natives when they have made up Eſtates elſewhere, are glad to leave even *Italy*, and the beſt parts of *Germany*, and to come and live amongſt thoſe Mountains, of which the very ſight is enough to fill a Man with Horror.

On the contrary, *Lombardy* which is certainly the beautifulleſt Country that can be imagined, the ground lies ſo even, it is ſo well watered, ſo ſweetly divided by rows of Trees: in a vaſt extent of Soil of above 200 Miles long and 100 broad, in which the whole Country is equal to the lovlieſt ſpots in all *England* or *France*, and has all the ſweetneſs of *Holland* or *Flanders*, but with a warmer Sun, and a better Air, cauſed by the nearneſs of the Mountains; ſo that it ſeems the moſt deſirable place in the World to live in; yet after all the Government is ſo exceſſive ſevere, that there is nothing but Poverty and Beggary over all this rich Country, ſo that a Traveller in many places finds almoſt nothing, if he does not buy his Proviſions in the great Towns, and carry them with him.

There are in theſe *Alpine* Provinces,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.
Univerſities 4.

i. e.

1. *Turin.* 3. *Baſil.*
2. *Geneva.* 4. *Zurich.*

OF
FRANCE.

HAving thus croſſed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently diſpoſe our ſelves for *France* or *Germany*. But, we will follow the Courſe and Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which firſt paſſed into *France*, before it meddled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain* and *Britain* under the Form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater diſtance.

FRANCE then according to the preſent dimenſions of it, is bounded on the Eaſt, with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as alſo, with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands*; on the Weſt, with the *Aquitan Ocean*, and a Branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, with the *Engliſh* Ocean, and ſome parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the reſt of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it, is almoſt Square, each ſide of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 Miles in length. But, they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* Miles; the breadth 570. only; the whole Circumference to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern Temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the Fifth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 15 hours; and the middle *Parallel* of the Eighth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this preſent Name of *France*, from the *Franci*, or *Franks*, a people of *Germany*, who ſeiſed upon thoſe parts of it which lay neareſt to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* III. and, having afterwards ſubdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royal of their growing Empire, they cauſed the Country thereabouts to be called *France*. Which Name, as they enlarged their Borders, they impoſed on, or communicated rather, to the reſt of this Country, and to thoſe parts of *Germany* alſo, which were conquered by them. At which time, for diſtinction ſake, they called the Eaſt parts of their whole Empire by the Name of *Ooſten-reich*, or *Auſtraſia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is ſubject to the King of *Spain*: and for the Weſt parts thereof they have the Name *Weſten-riech*, or *Weſtraſia*, (in the barbarous *Latine* of that Age) *Weſt France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the Name of *France* was at laſt appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently, it was called *Gallia*, and the people, *Galli*; and by that Name occurs, moſt commonly, in the Writers of the *Roman* ſtory: and *Gallia Tranſalpina*, becauſe ſituate on the furtheſt ſide of the *Alpes*, from *Italy*, to difference it from the Country of thoſe *Gauls*, which being planted in thoſe parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Ciſalpina*: Sometimes it was called *Galatia* alſo, and by that name known amongſt the *Greeks*: by *Ptolomy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celtæ*, a potent Nation of old *Gaul*; to diſtinguiſh it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Aſia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians*, or *Gauls*, of this Country. Whence it became ſo named, is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word Γάλα (*Gala*) ſignifying Milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebat*, for the milky and white complexion of the People, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who firſt impoſed it. Others, and amongſt them, *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a Son of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was ſometimes in this Country, is affirmed alſo by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further adds, That after he had ſuppreſſed thoſe Tyrants which oppreſſed the people, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eas partes quibus imperitabant, nominibus ſuis appellaſſe, Lib.* 11. Who gave their own names to thoſe parts over which they ruled. But, in another place, acknowledging, That the *Grecians* call this people, *Galatæ*, (*ita enim* Gallos *ſermo* Græcus *appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the ſearch of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines*, or firſt Inhabitants hereof, called themſelves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured; *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas*, and *Galatæ*, from the Name of his Mother *Galata*; who, and properly enough, might be a Daughter of *Hercules*, miſtook by *Diodorus*, for one of his Sons.

Of the Original of this People, more anon. In the mean time, we may take ſo much notice of the ancient *Gaul* as to affirm him (out of *Cæſar*, and other Authors) to be quick-witted, of a ſudden and nimble apprehenſion; but withal, very raſh and hair-brain'd (*ut ſunt ſubita* Gallorum *ingenia*, is a note ſet upon them by the Pen of *Cæſar*:) ſo full of Law-ſuits and Contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work. *Gallia Cau-*

ſidicos, &c. as that Poet hath it, of vehement Affections, and precipitate in all their Actions, as well Military as Civil; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and preſently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, ſecundus minor quam fœminarum*, was a part alſo of their Character, in the time of *Florus* the Hiſtorian. And though the preſent *French* be generally of another Original; yet there is ſo much of the old *Gaul* ſtill left among them, either by the impreſſion of the Heavenly Bodies, or by Inter-marriages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them; that all the Qualities are ſtill predominant in the *French*; not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Compariſon, homely I muſt confeſs, but to the life expreſſing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spaniſh*, in matters of War. The *French* is ſaid to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Country, and ſoon leaping out of it; as was the Expedition of *Charles* VIII. into *Italy*. The *Dutch* is ſaid to be like a *Louſe*, ſlowly maſtering a place, and as ſlowly (yet at laſt) driven out of their hold; as was their taking and loſing of *Oſtend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is ſaid to be like a *Crab*, or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is ſo rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of Violence can fetch him out again. In which, I think I need not inſtance; it being generally obſerved, that the *Spaniards* will endure all poſſible hardſhip, before they will part with any thing that they are poſſeſſed of. It is uſed alſo for a By-word, *That the* Italian *is wiſe before-hand, the* Dutch *in the time of Action, and the* French *after it is done*: a Wiſdom much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they leſs Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: inſomuch as it is thought, that there are more Law-ſuits tried among them in ſeven Years, than have been in *England* from the Conqueſt, till the time of King *James* the Firſt. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of *Religion*, as appeareth by the Story of a Gentleman lying ſick on his Death-bed, who, when the Prieſt had perſwaded him, that the *Sacrament of the Altar* was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refuſed to eat thereof, *becauſe it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the ſame extremity; who ſeeing the *Hoſt* (for ſo they call the Conſecrated Elements) brought unto him by a Lubberly Prieſt, ſaid, *That* CHRIST *came to him, as he entred into* Jeruſalem, *riding upon an Aſs*. As for the Women, they are ſaid to be witty, but apiſh, wanton, and incontinent; where a Man at his firſt entrance may find Acquaintance; and at his firſt Acquaintance may find an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View of France* deſcribeth them. But I have ſince heard this *Cenſure* condemned of ſome Uncharitableneſs, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all thoſe Graces which may beautifie and adorn that Sex. And it is poſſible enough, that it may be ſo in ſome particulars, though it be more than any Man would gueſs at, that cometh amongſt them. For, generally at the firſt ſight you ſhall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are ſo full of Chat and Tattle, even with thoſe they know not, as if they were reſolved ſooner to want Bread than Words; and never to be ſilent but in the Grave.

As to the Perſons of this People, they are commonly of a middle Stature, and for the moſt part, of a ſlight making; their Complexion being generally hot and moiſt, which makes them very ſubject to the heats of Luſt, and eaſily inclinable unto thoſe Diſeaſes which are concomitants thereof. Their Conſtitution ſomewhat tender, if not delicate; which rendreth them impatient of Toil and Labour; and is, in part, the cauſe of thoſe ill Succeſſes which have hapned to them in the Wars; in which they have loſt as much for want of Conſtancy and Perſeverance in their Enterprizes, as they have gained by their Courage in the Undertaking. And for the Women, they are, for the moſt part, very perſonable, of ſtraight Bodies, ſlender Waſtes, and a fit ſymmetry of proportion in all the reſt; their Hands white, long, and ſlender, and eaſily diſcernable to be ſo; for, either they wear no Gloves at all, or elſe ſo ſhort, as if they were cut off at the Hand-wriſt. To theſe, the Complexion of their Faces, and the Colour of their Hair, too much enclining to the black, holds no true *Decorum*. 'Tis true, the Poets commend *Læda* for her black Hair, and not unworthily; *Læda fuit* nigris *conſpicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was ſpecially, becauſe it ſet off, with the greater luſtre, the amiable ſweetneſs of her Complexion; for in that caſe, the Hair doth ſet forth the Face, as Shadows commonly do a Picture; and the Face ſo becometh the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*; which kind of Coat, our *Critical Heralds* call the *moſt fair*. But when a black Hair meets with a brown or ſwarthy Complexion, it falls ſhort of that attractiveneſs of Beauty which *Ovid*, being ſo great a *Crafts-Maſter* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Læda*.

The chief Exerciſes they uſe, are, 1. *Tennis*; every Village having a *Tennis-Court*, *Orleance* 60, *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*; a ſport to which they are ſo generally affected, that were it not ſo much inveighed againſt by their ſtraight-laced Miniſters, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholicks* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For, ſo extreamly are they bent upon this diſport, that neither Age nor Sickneſs, no nor Poverty it ſelf, can make them keep their Heels ſtill when they hear the Muſick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their raggs hang ſo looſe about them that one would think a ſwift *Galliard* might ſhake them into their nakedneſs, will to the *Dancing-green* howſoever, and be there as eager at the ſport as if they had left their ſeveral Infirmities and Wants behind them. What makes their *Miniſters* (and indeed, all that follow the *Genevian Diſcipline*) inveigh ſo bitterly againſt *Dancing*, and puniſh it with ſuch ſeverity when they find it uſed, I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this Diſcourſe. But being it is a *Recreation* which this People are ſo given unto, and ſuch a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of Company, and before many Witneſſes and Spectators of their Carriage in it, I muſt needs think the *Miniſters* of the *French Church* more nice than wiſe, if they chuſe rather to deter Men from their *Congregations* by ſo ſtrict a *Stoiciſm*, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural *gaiety* of this People, in matters not *offenſive* but by *accident* only.

The Language of this People is very voluble and pleaſant; but rather *Elegant* than *Copious*; and therefore much troubled for want of proper words to find out *Periphraſes*: beſides that very much of it is expreſſed in the Action; the Head and Shoulders move as ſignificantly towards it, as the Lips and Tongue; and he that hopeth to ſpeak it with any good Grace, muſt have ſomewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, and conſequently, a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing; and ſo naturally diſpoſed for Courtſhip, as makes all the People Complemental; the pooreſt *Cobler* in the Pariſh, hath his *Court Cringes*, and his *Beaubeniſte de Cour*, his *Court-Holy-Water*, (as they call it) as perfectly as the beſt *Gentleman-Huiſhar* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the Language of the *Spaniards* is ſaid to be *Manly*; the *Italian*, *Courtly*; and the *French*, *Amorous*. A ſweet Language it is, without queſtion, the People leaving out in their Pronunciation, many of their Conſonants; and thereby giving occaſion to this By-word, That *the* French-man *pronounceth not as he writes, ſingeth not as he pricketh, nor ſpeaketh as he thinketh*. In the Original thereof, it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues; the old *Gallick* being queſtionleſs the ſame with the *Welch* or *Britiſh*, as appeareth clearly by theſe Reaſons. 1. The *Latin* words are known to have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words, at the coming in of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*; but the *Welch* words which they have, we can give no reaſon, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welch* words which ſtill continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2. It is ſaid by *Tacitus*, that the *Britans* were the Deſcendants of the *Gauls*: and this he proveth, as by other Arguments, ſo from the identity or near reſemblance of the Language which both Nations ſpeak. *Utriuſque ſermo haud multum diverſus*, as his own words are. And 3. It is ſaid by *Cæſar*, That the *Gauls* uſed to paſs into *Britain*, to be inſtructed in the Rights and Learning of the *Druids*; which ſheweth that both People ſpeak but one common Tongue; there being in thoſe times, no one Learned Language which other Nations ſtudied, beſides their own.

The Soil is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-ſtones to draw Riches out of other Countries, *Corn*, *Wine*, and *Salt*; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000 *l.* Sterling; the Cuſtom of Salt, only to the King, being eſtimated at 1700000 Crowns *per Annum*. And indeed the benefit ariſing on this one Commodity, is almoſt incredible; it being conſtituted by the King's Edict, (which is all in all) That no Man ſhall have any Salt for Domeſtick uſes, (except by ſpecial Priviledge, and that dearly paid for) but what he muſt buy of the King's Officers, and that upon ſuch prices too as they pleaſe to ſell it. Nor can it but be very well ſtored with Fiſh; for, beſides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are ſaid to be 135000. Their other Merchandizes are Beeves, Hogs, Nuts, Woods, Skins, vaſt quantities of all ſorts of Linnen. And, to ſay truth, there are not many Countries in the Chriſtian World to which Nature hath been ſo prodigal of her choiceſt Bleſſings, as ſhe hath to this, the Fields thereof being large and open, and thoſe ſo intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every Hedge-row ſo beſet with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious Eye had a fairer object. And yet ſo miſerable is the condition of the common Peaſant; partly, by reaſon of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King; and partly, by thoſe great, but uncertain Rents which are ſet upon him by his Landlord, (for the poor Husbandman is *Tenant* only at the *will of his Lord)* that there is many one amongſt them who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the Year unto the other.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was planted firſt amongſt the *Gauls*, by ſome of St. *Peter*'s Diſciples, ſent hither by him at his firſt coming to *Rome*: *Xyſtus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the firſt Biſhops of *Rhemes*, *Perigort*, and *Mants*, (*Cenomanenſium*, in the *Latin)* being ſaid to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on ſure grounds) of *Trophimus*, the firſt Biſhop of *Arles*; for, on a Controverſie betwixt the Archbiſhops of *Vienna* and *Arles*, for the dignity of the *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo* I. it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Biſhop of *Arles*, *Quod prima inter Gallias*, &c. That *Arles* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did firſt obtain the happineſs of having *Trophimus* ordained Biſhop thereof by the hands of St. *Peter*. Nor is St. *Paul* to be denied the honour of ſending ſome of his Diſciples thither alſo to preach the Goſpel; *Creſens* ſent by him, as he telleth us, 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the firſt Biſhop of *Vienna*, ſpoken of before, as, not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennenſis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expreſly ſay. And that it was into this Country that he ſent that *Creſcens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia* in *Aſia minor*, the Teſtimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the ſame, and that which hath been ſaid before of this Name of *Galatia*, may confirm ſufficiently. But *Chriſtianity* being deſtroyed by the *French* at their firſt coming hither, was again planted by the induſtry of St. *Remigius* the firſt Biſhop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis*, or *Clodovæus* V. King of the *French*, giving way unto it for his Wives ſake, who was zealous in it; and after taking unto himſelf that holy Calling, on a great Victory which he won againſt the *Almains*; by whom, being over-laid in the day of Battel, he made his Prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clotilda* worſhipped; vowing to be of that *Religion* if he got the Victory; which Vow he had no ſooner made (as the Story telleth us) but *Alemannos invaſit timor*, a ſudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in *Religion*, as in other places; ſome following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*; and others, that of thoſe *Reformed Churches* which adhere to *Calvin*. But this diviſion is more ancient than *Calvin*'s Days; the ſame Opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romiſh* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenſes*, *Waldenſes*, or *Pauperes de Lugduno*, (the *Vaudoys* as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, That the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* firſt preached againſt the ſuperſtitions of the Maſs, and the worſhip of Images; and *Calvin* travelled in advancing the *Reformation*, though much ſuppreſſed as to the outward profeſſion of it. But, being revived by their endeavours, it ſprung out again, and ſpread it ſelf ſo ſpeedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the Year 1560, above 1240 Churches of them; which cannot, in ſuch a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though ſcarce any of them having eſcaped ſome Maſſacre or other. Of theſe Maſſacres two are moſt memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindol* and *Chabriers* as being the firſt; and the Maſſacre of *Paris*, as being the greateſt. That of *Merindol* hapned in the Year 1545, the Inſtrument of it being *Minier*, the Preſident of the Council of *Aix*; for, having condemned this poor People of *Hereſie*, he muſtred a ſmall Army, and ſet fire on the Villages: They of *Merindol* ſeeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the Wood, but were there butchered, or ſent to the Gallies. One Boy they took, placed him againſt a Tree, and ſhot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themſelves in a Cave, were in part ſtifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers* they ſo inhumanly dealt with the young Wives and Maids, that moſt of them died immediately after. The Men and Women were put to the Sword; the Children were Rebaptized, 800 Men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 Women were put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, ſuch was the Cruelty of theſe Soldiers to theſe poor Women, that when ſome of them had clambred to the top of the Houſe, with an intent to leap down, the Soldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The Maſſacre of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted: A Peace was made with the *Proteſtants*; for the aſſurance whereof, a Marriage was ſolemnized between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the Proteſtant Party, and the Lady *Marguerite*, the King's Siſter. At this Wedding there aſſembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admiral *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not ſo much Wine drunk, as Blood ſhed at it. At Midnight the Watch-Bell rung, the King of *Navarre* and the Prince of *Conde* are taken Priſoners, the Admiral murdered in his Bed, and 30000 at the leaſt, of the greateſt and moſt potent Men of the *Religion*, ſent by the way of the *Red Sea*, to find the neareſt Paſſage to the Land of *Canaan*, *Anno* 1572. yet notwithſtanding theſe Maſſacres, and the long and frequent Wars which were made againſt them by their Kings, they grew ſo numerous, and got unto ſo great a Power, that partly by *Capitulations* with the *French* Kings, at the end of every *Civil War*, but principally, by the connivance of King *Henry* IV. who was ſometimes the Head of their Party, they had gotten above three hundred walled Towns and Garriſons, and were abſolute Maſters; in effect, of all thoſe Provinces which lie along the *Aquitain* Shore, and the *Pyrenees* from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River of *Loyre*. But, being grown too inſolent by reaſon of ſo great a Strength, and ſtanding upon Terms with the King, as a *Free Eſtate*, (the *Commonwealth* of *Rochel*, as King *Henry* IV. was uſed to call it) they drew upon themſelves the Jealouſie and Fury of King *Lewis* XIII. Who ſeeing that he could not otherwiſe diſſolve the Knot of their Combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at laſt ; and was ſo fortunate in the ſucceſs of his Undertakings, that in two Years (*viz. Anno* 1621, 1622.) he ſtripped them of all their Walled Towns, except *Montalban* and *Rochel* only ; and thoſe two he reduced not long after, by the Power of his Arms, leaving them nothing to rely on for their future Security, but the Grace and Clemency of their King, promerited by their Obedience and Integrity. And it hath ſped ſo well with them ſince that time, that they never had the exerciſe of their *Religion* with ſo much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed ſince the reducing of their Forts and Garriſons to the Kings obedience. The ſtate of things at preſent is well underſtood.

The other Party in *Religion*, having the countenance of the State, and the preſcription and poſſeſſion of ſo many Years to confirm the ſame, is in as proſperous a condition, both for *Power* and *Patrimony*, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*. In point of *Patrimony*, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythes and Temporal Revenues of the *Clergy*, beſides Proviſions of all ſorts, to 80 Millions of Crowns ; but this Accompt is diſallowed by all knowing Men. *Bodin* reporteth from the Mouth of *Monſieur Allemant*, one of the Preſidents of Accompts in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 Millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* Money ; and he himſelf conceiveth, that they poſſeſs ſeven parts of twelve, of the whole Revenues of that Kingdom. The Book, entituled, *Comment d' Eſtat*, gives a lower eſtimate ; and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 Millions of *Arpens*, (which is a meaſure ſomewhat bigger than our *Acre*) aſſigneth 47 Millions, which is near a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallican Clergy*. And then it is reſolved by all, that the *Baiſemain*, (as they call it) which conſiſts of Offerings, Churchings, Burials, *Diriges*, and ſuch like Caſualties, amounteth to as much *per Annum* as their ſtanding Rents. Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computed their *Revenue* at ſix Millions yearly. And to ſay truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their Numbers ; there being reckon'd in this Kingdom, 13 Archbiſhops, 104 Biſhops, 1450 Abbots, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friers, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta* ; beſides the Colleges of the *Jeſuits*, which being of a late Foundation, are not here accompted. And for the *Pariſh-Prieſts*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all ſorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all thoſe of Inferiour Orders, which have ſome Miniſtry in their Churches, the number of which was reckon'd, in the time of King *Lewis* XI. to be little leſs than 100000. But then, 'tis like, that *Chanteries* and *Free Chapels* went in that account ; or elſe the *Hugonots* in the Wars have deſtroyed more Churches than they are like to build again in haſte ; there being found in *France*, on a juſt Accompt, no more than 27400 Pariſh-Churches, beſides *Oratories* and *Chapels of Eaſe* appertaining to them: In which there are ſuppoſed to live 15 Millions of People, whereof the *Clergy*, and the Miniſters depending on them, do make up three Millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their *Power*, the *Gallican Clergy* ſtands more ſtoutly to their natural Rights, againſt the Uſurpations and Encroachments of the See of *Rome*, than any other that lives under the Pope's Authority ; which they acknowledge ſo far only, as conſiſtent with their own Privileges, and the Rights of their Sovereign. For neither did they in long time ſubmit to the Decrees of the Council of *Trent*, nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquiſition* ; nor yield ſuch ſtore of Griſt to the Pope's Mill, as probably might redound to him from ſo rich a Clergy. And for his *Temporal Power* over Kings and Princes, it is a Doctrine ſo averſe from the Poſitions and Principles of the *Gallican Church*, that in the Year 1610. the Divines of *Paris* publiſhed a Declaration, in which it was affirmed, that the Doctrine of the *Pope's Supremacy* was an erroneous Doctrine, and the ground of that Helliſh Poſition, of Depoſing and Killing Kings. And this, indeed, hath conſtantly been the Doctrine of the *Gallican Church*, ſince the time of *Gerſon*, maintaining the Authority of a Council, above that of the Pope.

But to proceed; The Men moſt eminent for Learning of either ſide, have been, (beſides thoſe mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence, by the Pen of *Balſac* : *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine ; *Chamier* the Controverſer, and *Philip de Morncy*, Lord of *Pleſſis*. Of the other Party, *Claudius Eſpencæus*, a *Sorbon* Doctor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron* ; *Genebrard* the Hiſtorian, *Petavius* a learned Jeſuit, *&c.* In the middle times, St. *Bernard*, Abbot of *Clarevalle* ; *Pet. Lombard*, Biſhop of *Paris* ; *John Gerſon*, Chancellor of that Univerſity, More anciently, *Proſper* of *Aquitain*, *Caſſiamus* the Hermit, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons* (though not here a Native.) And as to Men of other Studies, *Auſonius* the Poet, *Hottoman* and *Gotfredus*, the Civilians ; *Duarenus* the Canoniſt, *Barn. Briſſonius* the great Antiquary, *Iſaac Caſaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budæus* that great Maſter of the *Greek* Language, *Thuanus* the Hiſtorian, *Laurentius* the Anatomiſt, *&c.* And as for Military Men, it hath been famous for the Valour of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* ; *Charles Martel*, that ſtout Champion of the Church againſt the *Sarazens* ; and *Charles* the Great, the Fourth of the Weſtern Empire. In the middle times for *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, one of the Nine Worthies, (as they call them ;) the Son of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy* : and in theſe latter Days, for King *Henry* IV. *Francis* and *Henry*, Dukes of *Guiſe* ; *Charles* Duke of *Bayonne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleaſure ; or *Fundamental*, which neither King or Parliament (as they ſay) can alter. Of this laſt ſort, the principal are, the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder Brother. Which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whoſe time we find the Children of the Kings eſtated in their ſeveral Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law they are to be entituled to ſome Dutchy or County, (though they are content ſometimes with Annual Penſions) with all the Rights and Profits thereunto belonging ; all matters of Regality (as, Levying Taxes, Coinage, and the like) excepted only ; which upon the failing of the Maſculine Line, do return again unto the Crown. The Name thereof derived from *Albamago*, a *German* Word, ſignifying a Portion.

But the main Law they ſtand on, is the *Salique* Law, by which the Crown of *France* may not deſcend unto the Females, or *fall from the Lance to the Diſtaff*, as their ſaying is. Which Law, one undertaking to make good out of Holy Writ, urged that Text of St. *Matthew*, where it is ſaid, *Mark the Lilies*, (which are the Arms of *France*) *and ſee how they neither labour nor ſpin.* This Law they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond*, the firſt King of the *French* ; and that the words, *Si aliqua*, ſo often uſed in it, gave the Name of the *Salique* Law. But *Heillian*, one of their beſt Writers, affirms, That it was never heard of in *France*, till the Time of *Philip* the *Long*, *Anno* 1315. and that it could not poſſibly be made by *Pharamond* ; who though he was the firſt King of the

French, had not one Foot of Ground in *France: Clodeon*, the Son of *Pharamond*, being the firſt of the *French* Kings which paſſed over the *Rhine*; their third King, *Merovee*, the firſt that ever fixed his Seat in the modern *France*. Others ſay, it was made by *Charles the Great*, after the Conqueſt of *Germany*, where the incontinent Lives of the Women, living about the River *Sala*, (in the Modern *Miſnia*) gave both the Occaſion and the Name. *De terra verò* Salica, *nulla portio hæreditatis* mulieri *veniat*, *ſed ad* virilem *Sexum tota terræ hæreditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the Learned *Selden*, in his *Titles of Honour*, Engliſheth, *Knights Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Teſtament being once produced, in which the *Teſtator* had bequeathed unto his Son all his *Salique* Land, it was reſolved by the Court, That thereby was meant, his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the ſenſe thereof muſt be, That in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military Tenure, the Male-Children ſhould inherit only, becauſe the Females could not perform thoſe Services for which thoſe Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reaſon, tho' in *England* we deal not ſo unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the Age of 15 Years to enjoy ſuch Lands, becauſe they may then take ſuch Husbands as are able to do the King thoſe Services which the Law requireth. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine indeed ſoever it be) cannot ſtand with the *French* Gloſs: For then the Crown, being held of none but God, and ſo not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feiſe*, could not be brought within the compaſs of the *Salique* Law, becauſe not to be counted for *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Gloſs, their own Etymology and Original; and let us ſee by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their Succeſſion to the Diadem. For firſt, ſuppoſing that to be the *Salique* Land which lieth about the River *Sala*, in the Modern *Miſnia*, I would fain know how it could reach unto the King's Daughter in *France*, ſo far diſtant from it; or with what honeſty they can lay on them the like brand of Incontinency, as was ſuppoſed to have been found in thoſe Women of *Germany*? And next, ſuppoſing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applied to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no Title, nor ſo much as one Foot of Land on that ſide of the *Rhine*. And finally, ſuppoſing that the Law was made in ſuch general terms, as to extend to all the Countries, which the *French* in time to come ſhould conquer, and conſequently unto *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all ſubordinate Eſtates which were holden of it; if unto all Eſtates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give Sentence in behalf of *Charles* of *Blais*, againſt *John de Montfert*, in the Succeſſion to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles* of *Blais* claiming by his Mother, the Neece of *Arthur* II. by his ſecond Son *Guy*; whereas *John de Montfert* was the third Son (and the next Heir Male) of the ſaid Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutcheſs, whoſe Daughter and Heir, the Lady *Claudè* being married unto *Francis* I. had Iſſue *Henry* II. and other Children: Which *Henry*, beſides *Francis* II. *Charles* IX. *Henry* III. and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without Iſſue, had a Daughter named *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth*, married to *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, by whom ſhe was made the Mother of *Iſabella*, the late Arch-Dutcheſs, and of *Catharine*, the Wife of *Charles Emanuel*, the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to ſay any thing of the Pretenſions of the Houſe of *Lorain*, deſcending from the Lady *Claudè*, the ſecond Daughter of King *Henry* II. and Siſter of *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth*, Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find, that the *French* ſo ſtand upon this Law, as not to think, that a Succeſſion by and from the Females, is, in ſome Caſes, their beſt Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thruſt his Maſter *Childerick* into a Monaſtery, to make good his Title to the Crown, (or ſome colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Plythilda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire* I. married to *Auſpert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the firſt *Mayre* of the Palace of *Pepin*'s Family. As alſo how *Hugh Capet*, putting aſide *Charles* of *Lorain*, the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawleſs Action the more ſeemingly lawful, drew his Deſcent from ſome of the Heirs General of *Charles the Great*; his Mother *Adeltheid* being the Daughter of the Emperor *Henry* I. ſurnamed the *Fowler*; who was the Son of *Otho*, Duke of *Saxony*, by *Luitgardis*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Arnulph*, the laſt Emperor of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the Houſe of *Charles*. And it is ſaid of *Lewis* IX. ſo renowned for Sanctity amongſt them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conſcience, till it was proved unto him, that by his Grand-mother, the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, he was deſcended from *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorain*. Add here, that this ſuppoſed *Salique* Law, not only croſſeth the received Laws of all Nations elſe, which admit of Women to the Succeſſion in their Kingdoms, where the Crown deſcends in a Succeſſion; and have a great reſpect both unto their Perſons and Poſterities, in ſuch Kingdoms alſo where the Kings are ſaid to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*; but that even *France* it ſelf hath ſubmitted to the Imperious Command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the preſent to the Government of a *Spaniſh* Princeſs. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomſoever made, and how far ſoever it extended, is of no ſuch force, but that the *Labels* of it may be eaſily cut in pieces by an *Engliſh* Sword well whetted, if there were no other Bar to the Title of *England*, than the Authority and Antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

But for my part (if it be lawful for me to diſpute this Point) I am not ſatisfied in the right of the *Engliſh* Title; ſuppoſing the *Salique* Law to be of no ſuch force as the *French* pretended, and meaſuring the Succeſſion in the Crown of *France*, to be according to Succeſſions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* III. ſeem'd to ground his Claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude Succeſſion by the *Females*, as the *Engliſh* did pretend there was not; yet could not *Edward*, coming from a Siſter of the three laſt Kings, which reigned ſucceſſively before *Philip* of *Valois*, againſt whom he claimed, be ſerved in courſe, before the Daughters of thoſe Kings (or the *Males* at leaſt deſcending of them) had had their turns in the Succeſſion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left Iſſue, *viz.* *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* ſurnamed *Hutin*, Son of *Philip the Fair*, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was King of *Navarre*, in right of his Wife; from which Marriage iſſued all the ſucceeding Kings of that Realm, the Rights whereof are now in the Houſe of *Bourbon*. *Philip* the ſecond Brother, ſurnamed *the Long*, by *Joan* the Daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a Daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, from whom deſcended thoſe great Princes of the Race of *Burgundy*, the Rights whereof are now in the Houſe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique* Law to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles* King of *Navarre*, the Son of Queen *Joan* and *Philip de Eureux*, deſcended from *Lewis Hutin* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malarine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the Son of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the Daughter of *Philip the Long*, the ſecond Brother, muſt have precedency of Title before King *Edward* III. of *England*, deſcended from a Siſter of the ſaid two Kings, their Iſſue ſeverally and reſpectively, be-

fore

ſore any claiming or deſcending from the ſaid King *Edward*. So that K. *Edward* III. had ſome other Claim than what is commonly alledg'd for him in our *Engliſh* Hiſtories; or elſe he had no Claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, ſo wiſe a King would not have ventured on a buſineſs of ſo great conſequence, without ſome colourable Title; tho' what this Title was is not declared, for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon ſome other grounds, than that of *ordinary Succeſſion* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown as the *eldeſt Heir Male* and neareſt Kinſman to the laſt King. For being Siſter's Son to the King deceaſed, he was a degree nearer to him than either the K. of *Navarre* or the E. of *Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in reſpect of Age, had a fair Title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on theſe grounds K. *Edward* might the rather go, becauſe he found it a *ruled Caſe*, in the diſpute about the Succeſſion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though K. *Edward* I. meaſuring the order of Succeſſion by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who ſhould hold it of him, gave Sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldeſt Daughter of the E. of *Huntington*, yet was this Sentence diſavowed and proteſted againſt by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* Son of the ſecond Daughter of the ſaid Earl of *Huntington*, as a degree nearer to the laſt King, though deſcended from the younger Siſter, who not only thought himſelf wronged in it, but had the whole *Scotiſh* Nation for him to aſſert his Right; by whoſe unanimous conſent his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the Life of *Baliol*, and his Patron both. *Proximity* in Blood to the King deceaſed, was meaſured by nearneſs of Degrees, not deſcent of Birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly poſſeſſed himſelf of the Crown of *Scotland*; ſo on the ſame, though different from the Laws of *Caſtile*, did *Philip* II. ground his Claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being eldeſt Son of *Mary* the Siſter of *Henry* the laſt King (and this was juſt King *Edward's* Caſe to the Crown of *France*) he thought himſelf to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the Daughters of *Edward* the ſaid King's Brother, becauſe the eldeſt Male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the ſaid K. *Henry* by one degree. In the purſuance of which Title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Caſtile*; ſo in like caſe, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to K. *Edward*, than the Laws of *England*. In Claims to Crowns, the Rules of *Regal Succeſſion* differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the ſame with that of the Succeſſion into mean Eſtates; as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*; as in the Caſe of *Parceners*, the *Whole Blood*, (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure of Courteſie*, and ſome others, were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; Whether the *Salique* Law were in force or not, it made not much to the prejudice of King *Edward* III. though it ſerved *Philip the Long* to exclude the Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles the Fair* to do the like with the Daughter of *Philip*; as it did *Philip* of *Valois* to diſpoſſeſs the whole Lineage of King *Philip le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique* Law to be a great happineſs to the *French* Nation, not ſo much in relation to the unfitneſs of Women to govern (for therein ſome of them have gone beyond moſt Men) but becauſe thereby the Crown of *France* is not endangered to fall into the hands of Strangers. Such Men conſider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empreſs being married to *Geoffry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain* and *Main*, conveyed thoſe Countries to the Diadem of *England*, nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by the Match of the Lady *Joan* to Arch-Duke *Philip*: neither do they ſee thoſe great Advantages of Power and Strength which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like Marriage. Yet there is a ſaying in *Spain*, that as a Man ſhall deſire to live in *Italy*, becauſe of the civility and ingenious Natures of the People; and to die in *Spain*, becauſe there the *Catholick Religion* is ſo ſincerely profeſſed: ſo he ſhould wiſh to be born in *France*, becauſe of the nobleneſs of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Country.

The chief Enemies to the *French* have been the *Engliſh* and *Spaniards*. The former had here great Poſſeſſions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom; but being called home by Civil Diſſentions, loſt all. At their departure, the *French* ſcoffingly askt an *Engliſh* Captain, *When they would return?* who feelingly anſwer'd, *When your ſins be greater than ours.* The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Millain*: they diſplanted them in *Florida*; poiſon'd the *Dauphine* of *Viennois*, (as it was generally conceived) murder'd their Soldiers in cold Blood, being taken Priſoners in the Iſle of *Tercera*; and by their Faction raiſed even in *France* it ſelf, drave *Henry* III. out of *Paris*, and moſt of his other Cities; and at laſt cauſed him to be murdered by *Jaques Clement*, a *Dominican Friar*. The like they intended to his Succeſſor K. *Henry* IV. whoſe coming to the Crown they oppoſed to their utmoſt Power, and held a tedious War againſt him. Concerning which laſt War, when they ſided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the reſt of thoſe Rebels which called themſelves the *Holy League* (of which the Duke of *Guiſe* was the Author) againſt the two Kings *Henry* III. and IV. a *French* Gentleman made this excellent *Alluſion*; for being ask'd the cauſe of theſe *Civil Broils*, he replied, they were *Spania* and *Mania*; ſeeming by this anſwer to ſignifie Σπανία, *penury*, and Μανία, *fury*; which are indeed the cauſes of all inteſtine Tumults; but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: ſince which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithſtanding the croſs Marriages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their ſeveral Siſters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*, outing them by their Plots and Practiſes of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of *Catalogne* in the main Land of *Spain* it ſelf, and of many of the beſt parts of *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little conſtancy there is, either in the Favours of Fortune, or the Affection of great Princes, that no wiſe Man can truſt the one, or depend ſafely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Comines*, there were no Princes more friendly than theſe two, the Kings of *Caſtile* and *France*, being the neareſt confederate Princes in *Chriſtendom*. For their League was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great Curſes to keep inviolable. But of late times, eſpecially ſince the beginning of the Wars betwixt *Charles* V. and *Francis* I. for the Dukedom of *Millain*; there have not been greater Animoſities, nor more implacable Enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which ſeconded by the mutual Jealouſies they have of each other, and the diverſity of Conſtellations under which they live, hath produced ſuch diſſimilitude betwixt them in all their ways, that there is not greater contrariety of Temper, Carriage, and Affections, betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is between theſe Neighbours, parted no otherwiſe from one another, than by paſſable Hills. Firſt, in the *Actions* of the *Soul*, the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one ſociable and diſcourſive, the other reſerved and full of thought; the one ſo *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a ſecret; the other ſo *cloſe*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the World cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Faſhion* and Apparel, the *French* wears his Hair long, the *Spaniard* ſhort; the *French* goes thin and open to the very Shirt, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* ſo wrapt up and cloſe, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the laſt always conſtant in his Faſhion, the firſt intent ſo much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walk faſt, as if purſued on an *Arreſt*, the *Spaniard* ſlowly, as if newly come out of a *Quartan Ague*; the *French* go up and down in cluſters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the moſt; the *French Lacqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spaniſh* always in the *Van*; the *French* ſings and danceth as he walks the Streets, the *Spaniard* in a grave and ſolemn poſture, as if he were going a *Proceſſion*. The like might be obſerved of their Tune, their Speech, and almoſt every Paſſage in the Life of Man: for which I rather chuſe to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howel*'s Book of *Inſtructions for Travel*, than inſiſt longer on it here. Only I add, that of the two ſo different Humours, that of the *Spaniard* ſeems to be the more approvable. Inſomuch as the *Neopolitans*, *Millenois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had trial of both Nations, chuſe rather to ſubmit themſelves to the proud and ſevere Yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the Luſts and Inſolencies of the *French*, not ſufferable by Men of even and well-ballanced Spirits. And poſſible enough it is, that ſuch of the *Netherlands*, as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find ſo little comfort in the change of their Maſters; as may confirm the reſidue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*, the *Jour* or *Jura*, which ſeparates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vauge* or *Vogeſus*, which divides it from *Lorrain*, are thoſe which *Cæſar* calleth *Gabenna*, *Ptolomy Cimmeni*, being the ſame which ſeparate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the moſt part is plain and champain; the others before-mentioned, being Common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully ſtored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. *Sequana* or *Seine*, which ariſing in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Roan*, and receiving into it nine navigable Streams, diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Britiſh* Ocean. 2. *Some*, in *Latin* called *Samona*, which riſing near the Town of St. *Quintin*, firſt cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artois*, afterwards paſſeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight leſſer Streams, loſeth it ſelf in the ſame Sea alſo. 3. *Legeris* or *Loyre*, on which are ſeated *Nantes* and *Orleans*. It riſeth about the Mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greateſt in *France*) and having run 600 Miles, and augmented his Channel with the entertainment of 72 leſſer Rivulets, mingleth his ſweet Waters with the brackiſh *Acquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhoſne*, which ſpringeth from the *Alpes*, three *Dutch* Miles from the head of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Lions* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen leſſer Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5. The *Soaſne*, by the old *Latines* called *Araris*, which riſing out of the Mountain of *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, in the borders of *Lorrain* and *Alſatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhoſne*, at the City of *Lions*. 6. *Garumna* or the *Garond*, which iſſuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, paſſing by *Tholouſe* and *Bourdeaux*, and having ſwallowed up ſixteen leſſer Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Acquitane* Ocean, near the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordonne*, being called the *Giarronne*. Of theſe it is ſaid Proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richeſt, the *Rhoſne* the ſwifteſt, the *Garond* the greateſt, and the *Loire* the ſweeteſt. And by theſe and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the properties of a good Harbour; that is to ſay, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Eaſineſs of defence, 4. Reſort of Merchants.

As for ſo much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was firſt peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothes* the ſixth Son of *Japhet* (affirmed by them, and ſuch as adhere unto them, to be that Son of his, who in the Scripture is called *Meſech*) in the Year of the World 1806. But thoſe which are better converſant in the courſe of Hiſtory have utterly laid aſide this device of *Annius*. Even *Functius*, though a great *Beroſian*, doth confeſs ingenuouſly, *Quis hic* Samothes *fuerit, incertum eſt*, that it is unreſolved who this *Samothes* was. And *Vignier*, a *French* Antiquary, doth confeſs with *Functius*, *Mais un ne ſcay quil il eſtoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better ſtudied this Point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhet*'s eldeſt Son, whoſe Offſpring were firſt called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at laſt *Cimbri*: firſt planted (as before was ſaid) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preſerved his Memory, and after changing that unfruitful and unpleaſant *dwelling* for the *Plains* of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain ſomewhat of his Name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his Poſterity proceeded further in the *leſſer Aſia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Britain*, with his numerous Iſſues: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the ſame Original, though known amongſt the *Romans* by two different Names. From whence they had the Names of *Gauls*, and *Celtes*, and *Galatæ*, hath been ſhewn before. It ſhall ſuffice us now to add, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having ſomewhat in them of the Blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whoſe Love no King could ſecure himſelf from iminent Dangers. They were very ſparing in their Diet, and uſed to fine any one that outgrew his Girdle. With theſe Men the *Romans* fought at firſt for their own Preſervation, rather than out of any hope by the Conqueſt of them to improve either their Fame or their Dominions. Inſomuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, under the Conduct of *Aneroeſtus* and *Congelianus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Telamon*, a City of *Tuſcany*, the *Romans* thought they had done enough in diſcomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of Wiſdom to purſue them, or invade their Country; though by the conqueſt of *Liguria*, but few Years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the Borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great Atchievments in the Wars, theſe were they who under the Conduct of *Belloveſus*, paſſing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neareſt Parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Ciſalpina*; and under that of *Segoveſus* over-run all *Germany*, and following their Succeſſes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythæ*. Theſe were the Men, whoſe Iſſue under the Command of *Brennus*, diſcomfited the *Romans* at the River *Allia*, ſack'd the City, and beſieg'd the Capitol, *An. M.* 3577. *U. C.* 365. In which Action they ſo terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulſion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Prieſts, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, ſhould be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, theſe were the Men, who under the Command of *Belgius*, and another *Brennus*, ranſack'd *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they ſpoil'd and plunder'd the Temple of *Delphos*; for which Sacriledge they were viſited with the Peſtilence. Such as ſurvived this Plague went into *Aſia*, and there gave Name to that Country now called *Galatia*, of whom thus *Dubartus*:

The ancient *Gaul*, in roving every way,
As far as *Phœbus* darts his golden Ray;

Seiz'd *Italy*; the World's proud Miſtreſs ſackt,
Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.
Then ſpoils *Pyſidia*, *Myſia* doth enthral,
And midſt of *Aſia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at laſt the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almoſt all the reſidue of the (then known) World. Attempting firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a Roman Conſul, called in by the *Maſſilienſes* to aſſiſt them againſt the *Salii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A. U. C.* 628. that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonenſis*, being brought into the form of a *Roman* Province at the concluſion of the War againſt the *Allobroges* and *Arverni*, (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally ſubdued until the time of *Julius Cæſar*, and not eaſily then. For though the War was managed then by the ableſt Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more eaſily vanquiſhed by the Valour and Fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correſpondence amongſt themſelves. Nor did they ſell their liberty ſo good cheap, as thoſe other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal: *Cæſar* himſelf affirming, That he had ſlain 1192000 of them before they would ſubmit to the *Roman* Yoak. But at the laſt they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Narbonenſis*, called ſo from the City of *Narbon*, then a *Roman* Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and ſome part of *Savoy*, called alſo *Braccata* at the firſt Conqueſt by the *Romans*, from the uſual Habit of the People (reſembling the Mantles uſed by the Wild *Iriſh*) called in *Latine*, *Braccæ*: attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War againſt the *Salii*, as before is ſaid; and finally ſubdued, *A. U. C.* 633. by *Fabius Maximus*; and *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, in their War againſt the *Allobroges*, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæſar*. 2. *Aquitanica*, ſo called from the City of *Aquæ Auguſtæ* (now *D' Acqs*, in *Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean, which comprehendeth the Provinces of *Gaſcoyn*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoygne*, *Limoſin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Bourbonoys*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River *Loyre*, and conſequently ſtretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celteca*, ſo named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*; called alſo *Lugdunenſis*, from the City of *Lions*; and *Comata* from the long Hair worn amongſt this People, extending from the *Loyre* to the *Britiſh* Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Main*, *Le Beauſſe*, the Iſle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnois*, 4. *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that Tract, taking up all the Eaſt parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the reſt of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with ſo much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lieth on this ſide of the *Rhene*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the Seat of one of the four *Præfecti Prætorio*, deſigned the four Quarters of it. His Title *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceſſes of *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*: This Dioceſs of *Gaul* being caſt into ſeventeen Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Lugdunenſis Prima*, 2. *Secunda*, 3. *Tertia*, 4. *Quarta*. 5. *Belgica prima*. 6. *Secunda*, 7. *Germania prima*, 8. *Secunda*, 9. *Narbonenſis prima*, 10. *Secunda*, 11. *Aquitania prima*, 12. *Secunda*, 13. *Novempopulonia*, 14. *Viennenſis*, 15. *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16. *Alpes Graiæ & Pæninæ*, 17. *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of theſe ſeventeen *Germania prima & ſecunda*, all *Belgica prima*, and a great part of *ſecunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graiæ & Pæninæ*, and ſo much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*; are now diſmembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the preſent *France*, the reſt contained, ſhall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it ſtood not in this ſtate: for within ſixty years after the death of *Conſtantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodoſius*, the *Burgundians* a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor, to keep the borders of the Empire againſt the *French*; then ready with ſome other of the Barbarons Nations to invade the ſame. The *Goths* not long after by agreement with the ſame *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were veſted in *Gaul Narbonois*, by the gift of that Emperor; with a good part of *Tarraconenſis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the Service they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impreſſion on that Country. And in the Reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the Banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the diſtractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; firſt made themſelves Maſters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after, ſpread themſelves over all the reſt of the Provinces which had not been ſubdued by the *Goths* and *Burgundians*; excepting a ſmall corner of *Armorica*, then poſſeſſed by the *Britains*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Country, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Goths* poſſeſſing all *Aquitain*, and *Narbonenſis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*; *Languedoc*, *Gaſcoigne*, *Guienne*, *Xantoigne*, *Poictou*, *Berry*, *Limouſin*, *Perigort*, *Quercu* and *Avergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their ſhare, the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolois*, *Forreſt*, the Countries of *Lionois*, *La Breſſe*, *Dauphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them ſo denominated. The reſt (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was poſſeſſed by the *French*, who in ſhort time repulſed the *Viſigothes*, or *Weſtern-Gothes*, (then buſie in the Conqueſt of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the Valour of *Clouis* the Great, their firſt Chriſtian King, before they could challenge a Preſcription of 60 years. Nor was it long before *Provence* alſo was reſigned to *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Mets* by *Amalaſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; nothing being left unto that Nation, of all their *Gallick* Conqueſts, but *Languedoc* only. In which reſpect, the *Gothiſh* Provinces of *Gaul*, (except *Provence* only) together with ſo much of the *Burgundia*'s which was after laid to *Weſt-France*, ſhall paſs in the account of the *French* part of this Country; the reſt of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts which lie within the bounds of the Modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) ſhall be conſidered by themſelves in the deſcription and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, a diſtinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by peace-meal, and by ſeveral Titles, (and yet not wholly ſo neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themſelves, and the ſucceſſion of their Kings, we will ſpeak at laſt, when we have brought all the chief Parts and Provinces of this flouriſhing Country into their poſſeſſion. The principal Provinces are, 1. *France*, ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Champagna*, 3. *Picardy*, 4. *Normandy*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. The Eſtates of *Anjou*, with its Members, 7. *La Beauſſe*, 8. *Nivernois* 9. The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it; being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the firſt acqueſts of the *French*. Then following the chief Provinces of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom; that is to ſay, 10. *Berry*, 11. *Poictou*, 12. *Limoſin*, 13. *Perigort*, and 14. *Quercu*, 15. *Aquitain*, with the Members of it; and 16. *Languedoc*: and laſt of all, the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Countries of 17. *Provence*, 18. *Daulphine*, 19. *La Breſſe*, 20. *Lionois*, 21. The *Dutchy*, 22. The County of *Burgundy*, 23. The Iſlands of the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the cloſe of all. Of ſome of which, *La Nove*, a *French* Author, hath paſſed this Cenſure: The Men of *Berry*, are Lechers; they of *Tourein*, Thieves; they of *Languedoc*, Traytors; they of *Provence*, Athieſts; they of *Rhemes*, (or *Champagne*) Superſtitious; they of

Normandy, inſolent; they of *Picardy* proud, *&c. ſic de cæteris.* But here we are to underſtand that all theſe Provinces (though paſſing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the Command of the *French* King; the Iſles of *Jerſey* and *Guernſey*, being poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, by the King of *Spain*; the Dutchy of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the Houſe of *Naſſaw*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other ſide, the *French* Kings are poſſeſſed of ſome Towns and Cities not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorain*, the Fort and Paſs of *Pignerolle*, in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Baſe Navarre*, in *Spain*; not to ſay any thing of their late acqueſts in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I look not on as part of the *French* Dominions. Since that the *French* have taken in *Lorain*, *Alſatia*, and the *Franche Compte* and *Strasburg*, and made a much greater Progreſs in the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, than they had done at the time of the Authors writing, which ſhall be accounted for in the proper places.

FRANCE, *eſpecially ſo called.*

THE firſt place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their fixt Habitation was by that People honoured with the Name of *FRANCE*; the firſt *green Turf* of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *Livery* and *Seiſin* of all the reſt. A Province now bounded on the Eaſt, with *Champagne*; on the North, with *Normandy*; on the Weſt and South, with *La Beauſſe*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called the *Iſle of France*, as being circled almoſt round with ſeveral Rivers; that is to ſay, the *Oiſe* on the North, the *Eure* on the Weſt, the *Velle* on the Eaſt, and a Vein-reveret of the *Sein*, towards the South. A Country not ſo large as many of the *French* Provinces; but ſuch as hath given Name unto all the reſt; it being the Fate of many ſmall, but puiſſant Provinces, to give their Names to others which are greater than they, if conquered and brought under by them. For, thus we ſee the little Province of *Poland*, to have maſtered and given Name to the *Mazovii*, *Prutevi*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia*, *Europæa*, as that of *Moſco*, to the Province of *Aſiatica*. And thus have thoſe of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almoſt the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the ſmalleſt Provinces. And thus this Iſland being the Seat-Royal of the *French* in *Gallia*, gave name to all the reſidue of it, as they made it theirs. A Country generally ſo fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gaſtinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Valleys in moſt places of *Europe*: but the Vale of *Montmorence* (wherein *Paris* ſtandeth) ſcarce is to be fellowed in the World. An argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, beſieged that City with an Army of 100000 Men, neither the Aſſailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any ſcarcity of Victuals; and yet the Citizens, beſides Soldiers, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, *& Lugdunenſis quarta*; the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Pariſii*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2 *Gaſtinois*, 3. *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Iſle of France*; by ſome, the *Provoſt*, or *County of Paris*.

1. Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lieth under *Picardy*: the principal Cities of it, 1. *Senlis*, (in *Latine*, *Silvanectum*) a Biſhops See. 2. *Compeigns*, (*Compendium*) ſeated on the River *Oiſe*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings for Hunting, and other Country pleaſures. 3. *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cæſaromagus*; a fair, large, well-traded Town; from which the Country round about hath the name of *Beauvoiſin*. The Patrimony, in former times, of *Roger*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the ſecond Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Oden*, the firſt Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvois*: and at his death gave it for ever to the Biſhops hereof: for anciently this City was a See Epiſcopal; the Biſhop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip*, one of the Biſhops here in times ſucceeding, a Military Man, and one that had much damnified the *Engliſh* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* I. The Pope being made acquainted with his Impriſonment, but not the cauſe of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Eccleſiaſtical Perſon, and one of his beloved Sons. The King returned unto the Pope the Armour in which the Biſhop was taken in, and theſe words engraven on the ſame, *Vide an hæc ſit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* Children ſpeak to him, when they preſented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joſeph*, which the Pope viewing, ſwore, that it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mars*, than a Son of the *Church*: and ſo left him wholly to the Kings pleaſure. 4. *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *Beauvoiſin*, memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont* to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King, St. *Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*: afterwards, to the eldeſt Sons of that Princely Family: and finally, to *Catharine de Medices*, created Counteſs of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Succeſſor to King *Francis* I. in the Realm of *France*. 5. *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soiſſons*. 6. *Brenonville*, 7. St. *Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, ſo called from a Monaſtery dedicated to St. *Lupus*, Biſhop of *Troys* in *Champagne*, ſent into *Britain* with St. *Germanus*, to ſuppreſs the *Pelagian* Hereſies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France*, nothing more obſervable, than that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings, (thirteen in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, *Anno* 1328. and ending i[illegible] *Henry* III. *Anno* 1589. As for the Earls hereof, (from whom that adjunct or denomination had its firſt Original) the firſt who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the ſecond Son of *Philip* III. in right of his Wiſe; Earl of *Anjou* alſo: after whoſe death, it deſcended upon *Philip de Valois*, his eldeſt Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* III. On his aſſuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his ſecond Brother; and he deceaſing without Iſſue, *Anno* 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of *Charles* V. amongſt the Titles of which Houſe, it lay *dormant*, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* XII. and lately given unto the *Monſieur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis* XIII. and Uncle to King *Lewis* XIV. now reigning, upon the firſt Reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother; adding thereby to his Eſtate, no leſs than 10000 pounds Sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 100000 *Franks* or *Livres*, in the *French* accompt. I only add, that *Charles*, the firſt Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip* III. Brother of *Philip* IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: ſo was he Uncle to *Lewis Hutin*; *Philip the Long*, and *Charles the Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was ſaid of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himſelf.

2. The ſecond part of this Province, is called *HEUREPOIX*; beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris*, on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*; which divides it from *Gaſtinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Charenton*, three Miles from *Paris*, where the *French Proteſtants* of that City have their Church for Religious Exerciſes, it being not permitted them to hold their Aſſemblies in any Walled Cities, or Garriſon Towns, for fear of any ſudden ſurprize,

prize, which ſo great a Multitude might eaſily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Pariſians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, ſlain at the Siege of *Montalban*, *Anno* 1622. was preſently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mombaſon*, then Governour of the *Iſle* of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let thoſe of the Reformed Party underſtand that it was their *Diſobedience*, and not the *Religion*, which cauſed the King to Arm againſt them. 2. *Corbeil*, ſeated on the confluence of *Sein* and *Eſſons*. 3. *Moret*, which gives the Title of an Earl to one of the natural Sons of *Henry* IV. begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4. *Melun*, by *Cæſar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the Seat of the *Bailiff* for this Tract. Here is alſo in this part the Royal Palace of *Fountainbleau*, ſo called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongſt which it ſtandeth; but otherwiſe ſeated in a ſolitary and woody Country, fit for Hunting only; and for that cauſe much viſited by the *French* Kings in their times of leiſure; and beautified with ſo much coſt by King *Henry* IV. that it is abſolutely the ſtatelieſt and moſt magnificent Pile of Building in all *France*.

3. GASTINOIS, the moſt dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris*, and the Country of *Orleanoys*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Eſtampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it, towards *La Beauſſe*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of *Chanoins*, with the ruines of an ancient Caſtle; which together with the Walls and demoliſhed Fortifications of it, ſhew it to have been of great importance in the former times: given, with the Title of an Earl, by *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard* the third Son of *John* of *Montford*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in marriage with his Siſter the Lady *Marguerette*; from which Marriage iſſued *Francis* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleherry*, famons for the Battle betwixt King *Lewis* XI. and *Charles* Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both ſides ran out of the Field, and each proclaimed it ſelf the Victor. It ſtandeth in the Road betwixt *Paris* and *Eſtampes*. And ſo doth, 3. *Caſtres*, of the bigneſs of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a *Chamber* or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here ſetled by King *Henry* IV. for the uſe and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latine* called *Camera Caſtrenſis*. 4. *Nemours*, upon the River of *Loyre*, the chief of *Gaſtinois* in Name, but not in Beauty, (wherein inferiour to *Eſtampes*) a Town which hath given the Title of Duke to many eminent Perſons of *France*. Here is alſo in this part, the County of *Rochfort*, and the Towns of 1. *Milly*. 2. *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting in this part of the Country, but that being part of the poſſeſſions of *Hugh* the Great Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*. It was given by him, together with the Earldom of *Anjou*, to *Geofry*, ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a right noble Warrier, and a great ſtickler in behalf of the Houſe of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it ſelf, which at laſt they carried. Continued in his Line till the time of *Fulk* II (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip* I. that by his help he might poſſeſs himſelf of the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never ſince that, diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, in Fact or Title.

4. But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and ſometimes κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Iſle*, cauſed by the Circlings and Embracements of the Rivers of *Sein*, and *Marn*; the abſtract of the whole Beauties and Glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleaſant Valley are ſummed up together.

Chief places in it, 1. St. *German*, ſeated on the aſcent of an Hill ſeven Miles from *Paris*, down the water; a pretty neat and handſom Town, honoured with one of the faireſt Palaces of the *French* Kings; which being built (like *Windſor*) on the top of a fine Mountainet, on the Rivers ſide, affordeth an excellent Proſpect over all the Country. The excellent Water-works herein, have been deſcribed on occaſion of thoſe of *Tivoli*, a Town of the Popes in *Campagna di Roma*, ſo much extolled by the *Italians*. It was firſt built by *Charles* V. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*; beautified by the *Engliſh*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Country; but finally, re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry* IV. who brought it into that Magnificence in which now we ſee it. It took name from St. *German*, Biſhop of *Auxerre*, Companion with St. *Lupus* before mentioned, in the *Britiſh* Journey againſt *Pelagius*. 2. *Poiſſie*, upon the ſame River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marn*, which falleth into the *Sein*; ſituate not far from St. *Germans*, a Bailiwick belonging to the *Provoſt* of *Paris*, and one of his ſeven Daughters, as they uſe to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief Seat of the Dukes of *Montmorency*, the ancienteſt and moſt noble Family of all *Chriſtendom*, whoſe Anceſtors were the *firſt fruits of the Goſpel* in this part of *Gaul*, and uſed to ſtile themſelves, *Les primiers Chriſtiens, & plus vieilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The firſt *Chriſtians*, and moſt ancient *Barons of France*. A Family that hath yielded unto *France* more *Admirals*, *Conſtables*, *Marſhals*, and other like Officers of Power, than any three in all the Kingdom; now moſt unhappily extinct in the Perſon of *Henry* the laſt Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of *Richlieu*, for ſiding with the *Monſieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) againſt King *Lewis* XIII. his Brother. The Arms of which illuſtrious and moſt noble Family, (for I cannot let it paſs without this honour) were Or, a Croſs *Gules*, cantoned with ſixteen *Alerions Azure*, four in every *Canton*. What theſe *Allerions* are, we ſhall ſee in *Lorain*: take we notice now, that from the great poſſeſſions which this Noble Family had in all this Tract, it was, and is ſtill called the *Vale of Montmorency*. 4. S. *Denis*, ſome three Miles from *Paris*, ſo called of a Monaſtery built here by *Dagobert*, King of *France*, about the year 640. in memory of St. *Denis*, or *Dionyſe*, the firſt Biſhop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr*, an Hill adjoyning) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French* Kings, becauſe it lay ſo near to *Paris*, beſtowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defenſible; nor otherwiſe of any conſideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French* Kings and Princes: neither for Workmanſhip nor Coſt, able to hold compariſon with thoſe at *Weſtminſter*. But being the Sepulture of their Kings, the *French Men* uſe to ſay facetiouſly, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town alſo is the Church of St. *Maclon*, where the Kings, with a Faſt of nine days, and other Penances, uſe to receive the famous Gift of healing the *Kings-Evil*, with nothing but a Touch: a Priviledge enjoyed only by thoſe Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5. St. *Cloud*, (or the Town of St. *Claudus*) unfortunately memorable for the Murder of King *Henry* III. who lying here at a Siege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flee by the *Guiſian* Faction, was wretchedly aſſaſſinated by *Jaques Clement*, a Monk employed in that ſervice by the Heads of the *Holy League*. 6. PARIS, the chief City, not of this Iſle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæſar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Pariſiorum*, from the *Pariſians*, a Nation of *Gaul Celtick*, whoſe chief City it was: by *Strabo* called *Leutetia*, *Lucoteſia* by *Ptolomy*, *quaſi in Luto ſita*, as ſome conjecture from the dirtineſs of the Soil in which it ſtandeth. A Soil ſo dirty, (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the Streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Auguſtus*) yet every little daſh of rain, makes them very ſlippery; and worſe than ſo, yields an ill ſavour to the Noſe. The Proverb is, *Il deſtaint comme la fange de Paris*, It ſtaineth like the dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il peut*, &c. *It* ſtinketh *like the dirt of* Paris: no ſtink being more offenſive than thoſe Streets in Summer. It is in compaſs about eight Miles, of an Orbicular Form, pleaſantly ſeated on the diviſions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far ſhort of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis* XI. to contain 500000 People of all ſorts and ages; which muſt be the leaſt: the ſame King at the entertainment of the *Spaniſh* Embaſſadors, ſhewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Caſſocks, with white Croſſes. A gallant ſight, though poſſibly the one half of them were not fit for Service: the *Pariſians* being for the moſt part an effeminate People, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occaſions; but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their ſuffering King *Henry* IV. to hold St. *Dennis* ſo long againſt them, with no conſiderable Garriſon, and by that means to ſhut them up from all relief on that ſide of their City. And yet their multitudes, which ſince the time of that King, muſt needs be very much increaſed, are the chief ſtrength of the Town; the Fortifications being weak, and of ill aſſurance: inſomuch that when once a *Pariſian* bragged, that their Town was never taken by force, an *Engliſh* Man returned this Anſwer, That it was, *becauſe on the leaſt diſtreſs it did uſe to Capitulate.* It is ſeated (as before was ſaid) on the River *Sein*, which ſerveth it with Boats and Barges, (as the *Thames* Weſtward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no higher than *Pont de l' Arche*, 75 Miles diſtant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts; The Town, the City, the Univerſity, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is ſituate on the North ſide of the River; the biggeſt, but pooreſt part of the Four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradeſmen of the meaner ſort. In this part are the *Hoſtel de Ville*, or the *Guild-Hall*, for the uſe of the Citizens: the *Arſenal*, or Armory, for the uſe of the King; and that Magnificent Building called the *Place-Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry* IV. for Tilts and Turnaments, and ſuch Solemnities of State. And in this alſo, near the banks of the River ſtands the Kings Palace of the *L'ouvre*; a place of more Fame than Beauty; and nothing anſwerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A Building of no Elegance or Uniformity; nor otherwiſe remarkable, but for the vaſt Gallery begun by King *Henry* IV. and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoyning to it. *The City* is that part of it which takes up the Circumference of a little Iſland, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joyned to the other parts on both ſides, by ſeveral Bridges. The *Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old *Gauls* was no more than this, the *Town* on the one ſide, and the *Univerſity* on the other, being added ſince. This is the richeſt part, and beſt built of the whole *Compoſitum*. And herein ſtandeth the *Palace*, or *Courts of Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and the Church of *Noſtre-dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Biſhops See, but of late raiſed unto the Dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South-ſide of the River lieth that part which is called the *Univerſity*, from an Univerſity here founded by *Charles* the Great, *An.* 792. at the perſwaſion of *Alcuinus* an *Engliſh-Man*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the firſt Profeſſor of Divinity here. It conſiſteth of 52 *Colledges* or places for Study, whereof 40 are of little uſe; and in the reſt, the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or *Inns* of *Court*, or *Chancery* at *London*; there being no Endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which poſſibly may be the reaſon why the Scholars here are generally ſo Debauched and Inſolent: a ruder rabble than the which, are hardly to be found in the *Chriſtian* World. Senſible of this miſchief, and the cauſe thereof, *Francis* I. whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muſes*, at the perſwaſion of *Reuchline* and *Budæus*, thoſe great Reſtorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a Colledge for 600 Students, and therein to have placed *Profeſſors* for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their conſtant Maintenance. But it went no further than the purpoſe; prevented by the inevitable ſtroak of Death, from purſuance of it. In bigneſs this is little inferiour to the Town of *Ville*, and not ſuperior to it for Wealth and Beauty; few Men of any Wealth and Credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of little Government. The fourth and laſt part, is the *Suburbs*, (or the *Faux-bourgs*, as the *French* call them) the principal whereof is that of St. *Germains*, (ſo called from an ancient Abby of that name) the beſt part of the whole Body of *Paris*, for large Streets, ſweet Air, choice of the beſt Company, magnificent Houſes, pleaſant Gardens, and finally, for all thoſe Contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of moſt populous Cities.

Here are alſo in this Iſle, the royal Houſe of *Madrid*, a retiring-place of the Kings, built by King *Francis* I. at his return from his Impriſonment in *Spain*. 2. *Rual*, a ſweet Country-houſe of the late Queen-Mothers. And, 3. *Boys de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry* V. I add this only, and ſo end; That this Iſle hath always followed the Fortune of the *Crown of France*; never diſmembred from the Sovereignty of the ſame, though ſometimes out of the poſſeſſion of the *French* Kings; as when the *Engliſh* kept it againſt *Charles* VII. and the *Leaguers* againſt *Henry* IV. A thing which hardly can be ſaid of any other of the Provinces of this flouriſhing Country: The *French* Kings of the Race of *Merouee*, and *Charles* the Great, alienating from the Crown, many goodly Territories, contented only with a bare and titular *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was ſhared firſt amongſt the great Princes of the *French*; which afterwards, by Inter-marriages, and other Titles, fell into the hands of Strangers; moſt of them Enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandeur and Power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiſcations, Marriages, and ſuch other means, they reduced all theſe *Rivulets* to their firſt and original *Channel*; as ſhall be ſhewn in the purſuance of this Work.

2. *CHAMPAGNE.*

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North, with *Picardy*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the Eaſt, with *Lorain*; on the Weſt, with *France* ſpecially ſo called.

The Country, for the moſt part, very plain, and pleaſant, (whence it had the name) adorned with ſhady Woods, and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat, in elder times, of the *Tricaſſes*, *Catalauni*, *Remi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which laſt Tribe or Nation, were thoſe *Ciſalpine Gauls* who ſacked *Rome* under the Conduct of *Brennus*) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*; and ſo accordingly diſpoſed of the *Belgians*, into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*: the *Celts* into *Lugdunenſis quarta*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Sens*; both Cities ſeated in this Country, the chief Rivers of it, 1. *Bloiſe*, 2. *Marne*. 3. *Yonne*. 4. *Sauls*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1. *Chalon*, on the River *Marne*, an Epiſcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch-biſhop of *Rhemes*; called anciently, *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2. *Joinville*, ſituate on the ſame River, belonging to the Houſe of *Guiſe*; the eldeſt Son of which Family, is called *Prince of Joinville*: in the Caſtle whereof, ſeated upon an high and inacceſſible Hill, is to be ſeen the Tomb of *Claude*, the firſt Duke of *Guiſe*; the richeſt Monument of that kind in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third Son of *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his Wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bouillon* for her Dower or Portion; and Brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorain*, and Kings of *Jeruſalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, or that he had it by his Wife, a Daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his deceaſe, to *Godfrey* his youngeſt Son (*Thierry* his eldeſt Son ſucceeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorain*:) upon the failure of whoſe Line, it fell unto the Duke of *Lorain*, as next Heir thereof, and ſo unto the Dukes of *Guiſe*, as deſcended from them. 3. St. *Urben*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two Leagues diſtance. 4. *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Caſtle of ſo great ſtrength, that in the Civil Wars of *France*, *An.* 1614. it endured 1100 ſhot of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5. *Vaſſey*, upon the River *Bloiſe*; a Town of as ſweet a ſituation, as moſt in *France*. Theſe laſt ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: ſo named, as I conceive, from the River *Vaſle*. 6. *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Bailage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Prætenſis* in the *Latine*;) ſo called of 7. *Perte*, another Town thereof, but now not ſo eminent. 8. *Chaumont*, upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Baſſigni*, and ſtrengthned with a Caſtle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9. *Dedior*, or St. *Deſier*, (*Fanum Sancti Deſiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, *An.* 1544. 10. *Rhemes*, (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Archbiſhops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, ſituate on the River of *Vaſle*. At this City, the Kings of *France* are moſt commonly crowned, that ſo they may enjoy the Unction of a ſacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof; which, as they ſay, came down from Heaven and never decreaſeth. How true this is, may be eaſily ſeen in that *Gregory* of *Tours*, who is ſo prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it, but eſpecially (for *Argumentum ab authcritate negative parum valet*) ſince the *Legend* informeth us, that this Holy *Oyl* was ſent from Heaven at the anointing of *Clouis*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*. Whereas *Du Haillan*, one of their moſt judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the Great, to have been their firſt anointed King; and that there was none *de la premiere lignee oinct, ny ſacre à Rhemes, ny ailleurs*, none of the firſt or *Merovignian* line of Kings had been anointed at *Rhemes* or elſewhere. But ſure it is, (let it be tru[illegible]r falſe, no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their ſacred) *Oyl*; and fetch it with great ſolemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, ſitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent; the Archbiſhop hereof, (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and ſuch Biſhops as are preſent, going to the Church-doors to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, ſome competent Pawn; and on the other ſide, the King, when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himſelf before it with great humility. But to return to the Town; it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of theſe parts, whoſe chief City it was, and now an Univerſity of no ſmall eſteem: in which among other Colledges, there is one appointed for the Education of young *Engliſh* Fugitives. The firſt Seminary for which purpoſe, (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, *An.* 1568. A ſecond at *Rome* by Pope *Gregory* XIII. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain* by K. *Philip* II. A fourth in *Lovain*, a Town of *Brabant*: And a fifth here (ſo much do they affect the gaining of the *Engliſh* to the *Romiſh* Church) by the Dukes of *Guiſe*. This Colledge had been famous for nothing but their verſion of the *New Teſtament* into *Engliſh*. 11. *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunenſis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief Note are, 1. *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by conſequence the See of an Archbiſhop alſo. The Country hereabouts called *Le Paris Senonis*, was part of the Habitation of the ancient *Senones*, ſome of which paſſing over the *Alpes*, with other Nations of the *Gauls*, planted thoſe parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Ciſalpine*. Of which the *Senones* were the moſt valiant, though far leſs in numbers; as thoſe which had not only the honour of ſacking *Rome*, but of managing an offenſive War againſt that State, for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been ſhewed already when we were in *Lombardy*. 2. *Langres* or *Civitas Lingonum*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Audomaturum*) ſituate in the Confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the Fountain or Spring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Biſhop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*. 3. *Troys*, *Civitas Tricaſſium*, ſeated on the *Seine*; a fair, ſtrong and well-traded City, honoured with the Title of the Daughter of *Paris*, a See Epiſcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne* next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French* and *Engliſh* Hiſtories, for the meeting of *Charles* VI. and *Henry* V. Kings of *France* and *England*, in which it was agreed, that the ſaid King *Henry*, eſpouſing *Katharine* Daughter of that King, ſhould be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he ſhould ſucceed on the ſaid Kings death, and be the Regent of the Realm for the time of his Life, with divers other Articles beſt ſuiting with the Will and Honour of the Conqueror. 4. *Provence*, (by *Cæſar* called *Agendicum*) ſeated upon the *Seine*, in a pleaſant Country, abounding in all fragrant Flowers, but eſpecially with the ſweeteſt Roſes, which being tranſplanted into other Countries, are called *Provence Roſes*. 5. *Meaux*, ſeated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this Tract; now honoured with a Biſhops See, and neighboured by 6. *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace, built by *Katherine de Medices*, Queen-Mother of the three laſt Kings of the Houſe of *Valois*. 7. *Montereau*, a ſtrong Town on the Confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8. *Chaſteau-Thierri*, (*Caſtrum Theodorici*, as the *Latines* call it) ſituate on the River *Marne*. Theſe five laſt, ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which lieth next to *France*, ſpecially ſo called; known of long time by the name of *Brie*; which being the firſt or chief poſſeſſion of the Earls of *Champagne*, occaſioned them to be ſometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and ſometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here 9. *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*; of which more hereafter. And 10. *Fontenay*, a ſmall Town in *Auxerrois*, in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great Battel fought near it, *An.* 841. between the Sons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Fathers Kingdoms: in which ſo many thouſands were ſlain on both ſides, that the Forces of the *French* Empire were extreamly weakned; and had been utterly deſtroyed in purſuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a Peace between them; allotting unto each ſome part of that vaſt Eſtate, diſmembred by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorain*, *Burgundy*: never ſince brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoyning unto *Champagne* alſo, where it looks towards *Lorain*, lies the Country and Dutchy of BAR; belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*; but of late years ſeized on by the King of *France*. The Country commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the moſt part with the two ſtreams of the River *Marne*; of which the one riſing in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorain*, do meet together at *Chalons*, a City of *Champagne*. Places of moſt Importance in it, 1. *Bar le duc*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2. *La Motte*, 3. *Ligni*. 4. *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what Antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom firſt founded and made an abſolute Eſtate, I am yet to ſeek; though probable it is, that it might take its firſt Riſe (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruin and diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Lorain*, or otherwiſe might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of ſome part of that Eſtate. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that it came firſt to the preſent Houſe of *Lorain*, by the gift of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c. who ſucceeded in it in the right of *Yoland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of Don *John* I. King of *Aragon*, and of *Yoland* or *Violant*, the Heir of *Bar*; and dying gave the ſame, together with the Towns of *Lambeſque* and *Orgon*, to *Rene* Duke of *Lorain*, his Nephew by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis* XI. who having put a Garriſon into *Bar*, repaired the Wall, and cauſed the Arms of *France* to be ſet on the Gates thereof. Reſtored again by *Charles* VIII. at his going to the Conqueſt of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I gueſs aright) of his Pretenſions to that Kingdom, which were fair and ſpecious, ſince which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorain*, till the year 1633. when ſeized on by *Lewis* XIII. upon a Judgment and Arreſt of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, in regard the preſent Duke had not done his Homage to the King as he ought to have done by the *Pyrenean* Treaty in 1659. It was again reſtored to the Duke, who enjoyed it till the year 1674. when the preſent *French* King *Lewis* the XIV. reaſſumed it.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, *Or*; *Seme* of Croſs Croſſet, *Fitche*, of the ſecond.

But to return again to *Champagne*; it pleaſed *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the ſame to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, (whoſe Daughter he had married in his private Fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the Rights and Priviledges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble *Dane*, to whom *Charles* the *Simple* gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920, and not long after the time that he conferred the Country of *Neuſtria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whoſe Kinſman and Aſſiſtant this *Gerlon* was in haraſſing and waſting the Coaſts of *France*. In the Perſon of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, deſcended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Siſter and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth, *Anno* 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Counteſs of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of *France*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, both theſe Eſtates were added to the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without ſome prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* ſucceeding in the Crown of *France*, he reſtored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the ſaid Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be truſted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Poſterity, as in the way of exchange, ſome certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to ſo rich a Patrimony.

Count *Palatines* of *Champagne*.

An. Chr.		
999	1	*Odo*, Earl of *Champagne*, *Brie*, *Blais* and *Toureine*, Son of *Theobald* the elder Earl of *Blais*.
1032	2	*Stephen*, Earl of *Champagne*, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.
1101	3	*Theobald*, eldeſt Son of *Stephen*.
1151	4	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1181	5	*Henry* II. an Aſſociate of the Kings of *France* and *England* in the *Holy Wars*; King of *Hieruſalem*, in right of *Iſabel* his Wife.
1196	6	*Theobald* II. Brother of *Henry*, added unto his Houſe the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Blanche*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* 8.
1201	7	*Theobald* III. Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the ſecond, and the Lady *Blanch*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, *An.* 1234.
1269	8	*Theobald* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 3. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1271	9	*Henry* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 4. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1284	10	*Philip* IV. King of *France*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1313	11	*Lewis Hutin* Son of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1315	12	*Philip* the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1320	13	*Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and the laſt Earl of *Champagne*; united after his deceaſe by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoleſm*, being given for it, in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre* married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right, honoured with that Crown, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre*, of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of theſe *Palatines* of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, potencee and counterpotencee of three pieces, *Or*.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorain*; on the Weſt, ſome part of *Normandy*, and the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainault*; and on the South *Champagne*, and *France* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. A Country ſo well ſtored with Corn, that it is accounted the *Granary* or Store-houſe of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are b[illegible] harſh, and of no good reliſh, eſpecially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Sueſſiones*, *Ambiani*, and *Veromandui*, conſiderable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to ſeek. Omitting therefore the Conjectures of other Men, ſome of the which are groundleſs, and the reſt ridiculous; I only ſay, as *Robert* Biſhop of *Auranches* hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaq; ætas noſtra* Picardos *appellat, vere* Belgæ *dicendi ſunt, qui poſtmodum in* Picardorum *tranſmigrarunt*.

The whole Country as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorain*, is divided into the *higher* and the *lower*: the *lower* ſubdivided into *Sainterre*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guiſnes*: the *higher* into the *Vidimate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rethelois*, and *Tieraſche*; in every of which there are ſome places of Importance and Conſideration.

In *Lower PICARDIE* and the County of GUISNES, the chief Towns, 1. *Calais*, by *Cæſar* called *Portus Iecius* (as the adjoyning *Promontory*, *Promontorium*, *Iecium*, by *Ptolomy*) a ſtrong Town cloſe upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *Engliſh* Chanel: taken by *Edward* the third after the Siege of eleven Months, *Anno* 1347. and loſt again by Queen *Mary* in leſs than a fortnight, *Anno* 1557. So that had *Monſieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wiſh; who uſed to ſay, That, *he would be content to lye ſeven years in* Hell, *on condition that* Calais *were taken from the* Engliſh. The loſs of which Town was a great blow to our Eſtate, for till that time we had the *Keys* of *France* at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Queen *Mary*, who ſickning preſently upon it, ſaid to thoſe which attended her, That, *if ſhe were opened, they ſhould find* Calais *next her Heart*. It was taken alſo by Cardinal *Albert* from the *French*, in the year 1596. for the King of *Spain*; but ſoon after reſtored to them by a Treaty of Peace. 2. *Hamme*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt Outworks of *Calais*. 3. *Fiennes*, on the borders towards *Artois*, which with the Country joyning to it, made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times paſt of the Earls of St. *Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of St. *Paul* and Conſtable of *France*, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the Houſe of *Egmond*, by the marriage of *Francis* Heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528, and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alva*, *Anno* 1568. 4. *Andres*, more towards the borders of *Boulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the Eighth, and *Francis* the firſt; and many meetings of the *Engliſh* and *French* Commiſſioners. 5. *Guiſnes*, which gives name to this Diviſion, called the County of *Guiſnes* (of which the Land of *Oye* wherein *Calais* ſtood (by the *French* called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was eſteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illuſtrious Houſe of *Graie*, of which more anon.

2. In *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Country of *Guiſnes*, the places of moſt note, 1. *Blackneſs*, a ſtrong Fort on the Sea-ſide, betwixt *Calais* and *Boulogne*. 2. *Caſtillon*, oppoſite to *Boulogne*, on the other ſide of the water. 3. *Boullenberg*, more within the Land, an Outwork to *Boulogne*. 4. *Boulogne*, by *Pliny* called *Portus Geſſoriacus*, part of the Country of the *Morini*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*; divided into the *Baſe* or *Low Town* lying on the ſhore ſide, well built, and much frequented by Paſſengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town* ſtanding on the riſe of an Hill, well gariſoned for defence of the Port beneath it, and honoured with a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither from *Tournay* when that City was taken by the *Engliſh*. The Town and Country taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of Treaſure, *Anno* 1544. but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the ſixth: the *French* redeeming it at leſs than a fourth part of the Money, which the gaining of it had coſt the Crown of *England*. As for the Fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, during which time it gave one King unto *Hieruſalem*, and another to *England*. The firſt Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Euſtace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the Daughter of *Geofry* or *Godfrey* the Second, Duke of *Lorain*, added the Dutchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him ſucceeded in both theſe Titles and Eſtates, *Godfrey*, Sirnamed of *Bouillon* his eldeſt Son: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third, his Couſin-German, attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorain*, and finally was the firſt and moſt renowned King of the Weſtern Chriſtians Reigning in *Hieruſalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Euſtace* the youngeſt of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whoſe Daughter *Maud* brought this Eſtate and Title of *Stephen* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Euſtace* the only Son of *Stephen* dying without Iſſue, the Rights hereof remained in his Siſter *Mary*, the Abbeſs of *Ramſey*, married to *Matthew*, Brother of *Philip* of *Elſats*, Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to reſtore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Country for her Children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldeſt Daughter of this Bed to *Reginald* of *Chaſtris*, her third Husband; by *Maud* his Daughter to *Philip*, ſecond Son of *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France* by another *Maud*, (he dying without Iſſue) to *Alfonſo* of *Portugal*, who ſucceeding after in that Kingdom, ſent her back to *Boulogne*; and finally by *Joan* Daughter and Heir of *William*, this *Alfonſus*, Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*, the Son of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*; to whom ſhe brought *Philip* their only Son, Succeſſor to his Grand-father in the ſaid Eſtates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceaſing without Iſſue, *An.* 1361; and *Joan* not leaving any Children by King *John* of *France*, whom ſhe married after the death of her firſt Husband, it fell by ſome other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tours* of *Auvergn* (the Anceſtors of the now Dukes of *Bouillon*) continuing in that Family till the year 1477, when bought by *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* of *Bertrand de la Tour*, the better to aſſure his Kingdom on that ſide againſt the *Engliſh* then poſſeſſed of the Country of *Guiſnes*. The purchaſe being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietor, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Noſtre Dame*, bare-headed, on his knees, without Spurs or Girdle: and offered to her Image a maſſie Heart of Gold of 2000 Ounces; Capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Succeſſors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vaſſal, preſent her with a golden Heart of the ſame weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving Title unto any but to *Katherine de Medicis* Wife of *Henry* the Second, created Counteſs of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when firſt married to him, he being then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne*, were *Or*, a Banner *Gules*, tuffed *Purple*: thoſe of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattelled *Sable*; but the colour of the Field I do no where find.

3. *PONTHIEU*, ſo called from the Bridges, built for conveniency of paſſage over the mooriſh Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *Engliſh*; to whom it came by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, by *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon*, the laſt Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the firſt. Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Abbeville*, ſeated on the *Some*, well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one ſide unaſſaultable by reaſon of a deep and mooriſh Fen, which comes up cloſe to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatis Villa* in the *Latine*) and the See of a Biſhop. 2. *Monſtreville*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Boulogne*, and a ſtrong out-work unto *Paris*. 3. *Creſſie*, where King *Edward* the third defeated the great Army of *Philip de Valois*, in the firſt Onſets for that Kingdom, *Anno* 1343. And 4. *Treport*, a ſmall Haven on the Eaſt of S. *Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of S. *Paul* in this Country of *Ponthieu*, others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were *Or*, three Bends *Azure*.

4. And as for the Country of *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardy*, the chief Towns of it are, 1. *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the eleventh, the greateſt Maſter of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himſelf moſt improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, who as improvidently diſmiſſed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Mont Didier*, (*Mons Deſiderii* in *Latin*) both of them ſtrong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwiſe of little fame in former Stories.

In the *Higher Picardy*, being that part of this Country which lieth furtheſt from the Sea, the firſt diviſion which occurreth, is the *Vidamate* of *AMIENS*, ſo called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame*, or chief Governour of it. Which honour, as it is peculiar to the *French* only, ſo *Mills* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in *France*, *viz.* this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Garbory*, and that of *Chartres*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Biſhops; the *Vice-dominus*, or *Vice-dame*, being to the

Biſhop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Viſcounts*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an Example nearer home, and of more reſemblance, theſe *French Vidames* were unto their ſeveral and reſpective Biſhops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Biſhoprick of *Ely*, to thoſe ſeveral Biſhops.

Places of moſt note herein, 1. *Corbie*, a Town of great Importance, and ſtrongly garriſoned, ſituate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*. 2. *Chaune*, on the ſame Frontier alſo, but of leſs conſideration, the Honorary Seat and Title of the preſent *Vidame*. 3. *Piquigni*, ſituate on a pretty aſcent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary Seat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the enterview of *Edward* the IV. of *England*, and *Lewis* the XII. than for giving the name of *Picardy* to all the Provinces which *Mercator* only of all Writers doth aſcribe unto it. 4. *Crouy*, an obſcure Village now, but formerly of ſpecial Note for a goodly Caſtle, commanding over the adjoyning Territory, and giving name to the illuſtrious Family, hence ſurnamed of *Crouy*, deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Arſchot*, and Princes of *Chimay*, in the *Netherlands*; before their tranſlating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entituled Earls of *Guiſnes*. 5. *Amiens* it ſelf, ſeated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the uſe and ſervice of the Town; well built, with very ſtrong Walls and deep ditches: the loſs whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, in 1597. much hazarded the Affairs and Reputation of King *Henry* the Fourth, and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the faireſt and moſt lovely Structure in the Weſt of *Europe*: ſo beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Coſt and Architecture ſeem to be met together in the Compoſition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glaſs in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the coſtly Imagery, and arched Butreſſes in the Chapel at *Weſtminſter* (before the late defacements of thoſe *Cathedrals*) might ſerve as helps to ſet forth the full beauties of it. The Towns and Territories anciently under the command of the Biſhops of it, whoſe Officers for the Temporal Government hereof called *Vice-domini* or *Vidames*, were at firſt eligible by the Biſhops, and accomptable to them, but by degrees engroſſing all power unto themſelves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidimate* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The preſent *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaune*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monſieur de Luyne* (chief Favourite to K. *Lewis* 13.) obtained in Marriage the Daughter and Heir of the former *Vidame*, with whom he had the Town and Caſtle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of theſe parts, and a Rent of 9000 *l. per Annum*, hohoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother, with the Title of the Duke of *Chaune*, and Peer of *France*, *Anno* 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, paſs we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient Habitation of the *Veromandui*, the faireſt and largeſt part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the beſt of *France* in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Soiſſons*, called anciently *Auguſta Sueſſionum*, the chief City of the *Sueſſones* or *Sueſſiones*: and the laſt Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; loſt by *Siagrius*, Governour for the Weſtern Emperor, to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the diviſion of his Kingdom, made the ſeat Royal of *Clotair*, the Son of this *Clouis*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick*, the Sons of *Clotair*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soiſſons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy*, and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Soiſſons* having long ſince loſt the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of long time been made the honorary Title of the Counts of *Soiſſons*, a Branch of the Royal ſtock of *Bourbon*; a Biſhop See, and ſituate on the River of *Aiſne*. In this City *Pepin* was firſt proclaimed King of *France* in the year 752. 2. *Laon*, a Biſhops See alſo, the Biſhop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, an Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3. *Noyon*, in *Latin*, *Noviodunum*, an Epiſcopal See alſo. 4. *Chapelle*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt Out-works of *Paris* againſt the *Netherlands*. 5. *D' Ourlans*. 6. *La Fere*, and *Han*, places of great ſtrength alſo, but more near the Frontiers. And 7. *S. Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Auguſta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards *S. Quintin*, from that Saint here worſhipped, as the *Patron Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great Importance, for the Realm of *France*; and ſo eſteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Chorlois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the XI. the firſt of which never digeſted the reſtoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no leſs than 400000 Crowns; the latter never would forgive the Earl of St. *Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his Service. A Town of greater note in ſucceeding times, for the famous Battel of St. *Quintin*, *Anno* 1557, wherein King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, with the help of the *Engliſh*, under command of the Earl of *Pembrook*, overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themſelves Maſters of the Town, and thereby grew ſo formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guiſe* was in poſt haſte ſent for out of *Italy* (where his Affairs began to proſper) to look unto the ſafety of *France* it ſelf. As for the Fortunes of this part it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the moſt in *France*, it being one *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in purſuance of the quarrel of the Houſe of *Anjou*, ſurpriſed *Charles* the *Simple*, and carried him Priſoner to *Peronne*, where he after died; for which deſervedly hanged by *Lewis*, Surnamed *Tranſmarine* the Son of *Charles*, when he became poſſeſſed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the Daughter and Heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in Marriage unto *Hugh* ſurnamed the Great, one of the younger Sons of King *Henry* the firſt of *France*, ſucceeding in her right into the Title and Eſtate of Earl of *Veromandois*, and by that name renowned in the firſt Wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Neece of this *Hugh*, the Daughter of *Radulphus* his eldeſt Son married to *Philip* of *Elſatz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that Eſtate; but ſhortly after given by the ſame *Philip* (having no Children of his own) in Dower with *Iſabel* his Neece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*, unto *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, and ſince united to that Crown, not giving ſince that time the Title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainalt* and *Lorain* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, ſo called of *Rethel* the chief Town, well fortified as the reſt of the Frontier places, but of moſt note among the *French*, in that the Eldeſt Sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have uſually been entituled Earls, and Dukes of *Rethel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, *An.* 1312, or thereabouts. 2. S. *Monhaud*, a Town of conſequence and ſtrength. 3. *Sygni*, a ſtrong piece belonging to the Marquiſs of *Vieu ville*. 4. *Cabſteau-Portion*, of more beauty, but of like importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Rethel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented *Or*.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIERASCHE*, the laſt part of the *higher Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guiſe*, of ſome note for the Caſtle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorain* (on the borders whereof it ſtandeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guiſe*. A Family which within a little compaſs of time produced two *Cardinals*, the one entituled of *Guiſe*, the other of *Lorain*; ſix Dukes, that is to ſay, the D. of *Guiſe*, *Mayenne*, *ne*, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Chevreuſe*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and beſides many Daughters married into the beſt Houſes in *France*, one married to *James* the Fifth King of the *Scots*. The firſt, and he that gave the riſe unto all the reſt of this potent Family, was *Claud*, Son to *Rene*, the ſecond Duke of *Lorain*, who paſſing into *France* to take poſſeſſion of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry* I. in the War of *Italy*, where he behaved himſelf ſo valiantly at the Battel of *Marignan*, in which he had the chief Command of the *German* Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great eſteem, and married him to *Anto Reette* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendoſme*; in reſpect of which Alliance, and his other Merits, he was honoured with the Title of Duke of *Guiſe*; the Father (amongſt other Children) of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, Wife of *James* the Fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the Sixth, the firſt Monarch of *Britain*. The ſecond was *Francis*, who endanger'd the Realm of *Naples*, reſiſted the Siege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Mets*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Queen *Mary*, and was at laſt treacherouſly ſlain at the Siege of *Orleance*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltrot*, (on the Inſtigation of ſome of the Chiefs of that Faction) *Anno* 1563. The third was *Henry*, that great Enemy of the Proteſtants, who contriv'd the great Maſſacre at *Paris*, and almoſt diſpoſſed *Henry* the Third of all *France*: He began the Holy League, and was finally ſlain at *Blais*, by the Command of King *Henry* the Third. But we muſt know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorain*: and had given the Title of Earl of *Guiſe* to *Frederick*, the ſecond Son of *John*, and *Charles* the third Son of *Rene*, both the firſt of thoſe Names; before *Claud* of *Lorain* was advanced to the Title of Duke; as being part of the Eſtate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Joinville*, of whom we ſpake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of moſt note, next to *Guiſe* it ſelf, is, 2. *Ripemont* on the South of *Guiſe*. 3. *Chaſtelet*, upon the borders towards *Luxembourg*, a ſtrong Town, and one of the beſt Out-works of *France*. 4. *Mazuers*, upon the *Maeſe* or *Meuſe*, a place of great ſtrength and like importance, belonging properly to the Dukes of *Mevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their deſcent from the Houſe of *Rethel*: fortified with a ſtrong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garriſoned by the *French* King, for defence of this Border; laid to the Government of *Champagne*, though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made by ſome to belong to that Province alſo.

As for the ſtate of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever paſſed over by the *French* Kings unto any one Hand; as almoſt all the reſt of *France* had been at ſome time or other, but diſtracted unto divers Seigneuries and ſeveral Lordſhips (all of them abſolute in themſelves, and ſcarce affording to the *French* King the ſlight Tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have ſeen before; ſome of which fell to the Crown of *France* by Confiſcations, ſome by lawful Marriages, and others by Conqueſt; ſome held of *England*, ſome of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and laſtly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of thoſe Provinces; thoſe which depended upon *England*, being ſeized on by *Charles* the Seventh, on the loſs of *Normandy* by the *Engliſh*; as thoſe which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his Son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the Battel of *Nancy*, *An.* 1476.

4. NORMANDY.

NORMANDY is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Some*, and part of *Picardy*, on the Weſt with *Bretagne*, and ſome part of the Ocean, on the North with the *Engliſh* Chanel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* eſpecially ſo called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunenſis ſecunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Rouen*; and in the Greatneſs of the *French* Empire had the Name of *Neuſtria*, corruptly ſo called for *Weſtria*; the Name of *Weſtria* or *Weſtenrich*, being given by ſome to this part of the Realm of *Weſt-France*, as that of *Auſtria* or *Oſtenrich* to a part of *Eaſt-France*. Afterwards being beſtowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles the Simple*, it was called *Normandy*.

This flouriſhing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeneſs of Extent, multitudes of People, number and ſtatelineſs of Cities, fertility of Soil, and the commodiouſneſs of the Seas, may worthily be accompted the chief of *France*. Well water'd with the River *Seine*, which runneth quite through it; as do alſo 2. the *Orne*, and 3. the *Aven*: not to ſay any thing of 4. *Robee*, 5. *Ante*, and 6. *Reinelle*, and many others of leſs Note. In length it reacheth about 170 Miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narroweſt; containing in that round the largeſt and faireſt Corn-Fields that are to be ſeen in all *France*. Of all other natural Commodities it is extream plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldneſs of the Climate admits not of, or ſparingly at the beſt, and of no perfection. The People of it formerly renowned for Feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the Eaſt; at this time thought to be of a more ſharp and ſubtil wit, than the reſt of the *French*; *Scavans au poſſibile ed proceces & plaideries* (ſaith *Ortelius* of them) eſpecially in the quillets of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* containing the Sea-coaſts, and the *Higher*, the more Inland Parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Conſtance*, (call'd by the *French Contances*) a Biſhop's See, the Spire or Steeple of whoſe *Cathedral*, is eaſily diſcernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and ſerveth Sailors for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the Name of *Conſtantine*. 2. *Auranches* ſituate on a Rock, with a fair proſpect over the *Engliſh* Chanel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other, the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolomy*; now a Biſhop's See. 3. *Cain* (*Cadomum* in *Latin*) an Epiſcopal See as the other; ſtrong, populous, and well built, ſeated upon the River *Orne*, ſecond in reputation of the whole Province, but more eſpecially famous for the Sepulcher of *William* the *Conqueror*, the Univerſity founded here by King *Henry* the Fifth of *England*, and for the long reſiſtance which it made againſt him, in his Conqueſt of *Normandy*, in the Year 1417. 4. *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocaſſium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the Name of *Belſin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Epiſcopal. One of the Biſhops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William the Conqueror*, by the Mother's ſide, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards, on ſome juſt diſpleaſure, committed Priſoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergy being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this Anſwer, *That he had committed the Earl of* Kent, *not the Biſhop of* Bayeux: by which diſtinction he avoided the Pope's diſpleaſure. 5. *Rouen*, of old *Rothomagum*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Seine*, and water'd with the two little Riverets of *Robee* and *Reinelle*, which keep it very ſweet and clean. The City for the moſt part well built, of large Circuit and great Trading; the ſecond for Bigneſs, Wealth, and Beauty in all *France*: anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, and an Archbiſhop's See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the Twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a reverend, but no beautiful Fabrick) is to be ſeen the Sepulcher of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the Sixth; which when an envious Courtier perſwaded *Charles* the Eighth to deface; *God forbid* (ſaid he) *that I ſhould wrong him, being dead, whom living all the Power of* France *was not able to withſtand*; adding withal, that he deſerved a better Monument than the *Engliſh* had beſtowed upon him. And to ſay truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, ſhort of the Merits of the Man, and carrying no proportion to ſo great a Virtue. 6. *Falaiſe*, upon the River *Ante*, once of Strength and Note; the dwelling-place of *Arlette*, a Skinner's Daughter, and the Mother of *William the Conqueror*; whom Duke *Robert*, paſſing through the Town, took ſuch notice of, (as he beheld her in a Dance amongſt other Damoſels) that he ſent for her to accompany him that Night in Bed, and begot on her *William the Baſtard*, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodeſty that Night ſaid to be ſo great, that either in regard thereof, or in ſpight to her Son, the *Engliſh* called all Strumpets by the Name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this Day. 7. *Verneville*, (*Vernolium* in *Latin*) in former Times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy* againſt the *French*. Of which it is reported, that when News was brought to *Richard* the Firſt, that *Philip*, ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, the *French* King, had laid Siege unto it, he ſhould ſay theſe words; *I will never turn my back, till I have confronted thoſe cowardly Frenchmen.* For performance of which Princely word, he cauſed a Paſſage to be broken through the Palace of *Weſtminſter*, and came ſo unexpectedly upon his Enemies, that they raiſed their Siege, and haſted homewards. 8. *Alanſon*, of moſt note for giving the Title of Earl and Duke to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King; and continuing for eight Succeſſions, till the Death of *Charles* the Fourth, Duke of this Line: conferred occaſionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9. *Lyſieux*, on the North-eaſt of *Alanſon*, a Biſhop's See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10. *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæſar* in theſe Parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanium*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and ſtill a rich and flouriſhing Town; the third in eſtimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the Perſon of *Lewis* a younger Son of *Philip* the Third, whoſe Son, called *Philip*, by his marriage with *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town, with many fair Eſtates in this Country, which depend on it, being ſeized on by the *French* in the time of *Charles* the Son of this *Philip*, for ſome Practices againſt that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the Third, and laſt King of this Houſe, in compenſation for the ſame, *Anno* 1406. the Title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good Sum of ready Money, and a Penſion of 1200 *l. Sterling*, yearly, iſſuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12. *Guiſors*, a ſtrong Frontier Town towards *France*, whilſt *Normandy* was in the hands of the *Engliſh*, or under its own Dukes and Princes; notable for the many Repulſes given unto the *French*. And 13. *Pontoyſe*, another Frontier upon *France*; ſo called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyſe*, (which divides *France* from *Normandy*) on which the Town is ſituate, and by which well fortified on that ſide; but taken at the ſecond coming of *Charles* the Seventh, after an ignominous flight hence, upon the noiſe only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the *Engliſh* Forces. 14. *Albemarl*, contractedly *Aumerl*, moſt memorable for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderneſs* in *England*; and of Duke to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *York*. Made more famous by *Charles* II. by creating the Loyal General *Monk* (the Reſtorer of the *Engliſh* Monarchy) Duke of *Albemarle*, the ſeventh Day of *July*, 1660. In which Honour his only Son *Chriſtopher* ſucceeded him, in the Year 1669. More towards the Sea, 15. S. *Valeries*, ſeated on a ſmall, but ſecure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the Mouth of a little River ſo named, opening in a large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, eſpecially for the *New-found-Land*; remarkable for its Fidelity to *Henry* IV. in the midſt of his Troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guiſian* Faction, called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almoſt all the reſt of his Cities, compelled him to betake himſelf hither, (from whence he might more eaſily hoiſe Sail for *England*) and called him in deriſion, *The King of Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port-Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, ſituate at the Mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence, by great Ships, navigable as far as *Rouen*; by leſſer, unto *Pont de l' Arch*, 70 Miles from *Paris*; the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the *Engliſh*, to ſecure the Town, lying unrepaired to this Day, by means of the *Pariſians*, for the better trading of their City. By the *French* it is called *Hav're de grace*, and *Franciſcopolis* by the *Latins*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the *Engliſh*) by King *Francis* the Firſt, and from thence ſo named. Deliver'd by the Prince of *Conde* and his Faction, into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of Caution, for the Landing of ſuch Forces as ſhe was to ſend to their Relief, in the firſt Civil War of *France* about Religion; and by the help of the ſame Faction, taken from her again, as ſoon as their Differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weaken'd for the preſent, but made uncapable of any Succours out of *England* for the time to come; and the next Year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflew*, and 19. *Honflew*, both ſituate on the Banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the preſent, becauſe not capable of any great Shipping; nor uſeful in the way of Trade, by reaſon of the interpoſition of *New-haven*, betwixt them and the Sea; the former famous notwithſtanding in our *Engliſh* Stories; as the firſt Town which that Victorious Prince King *Henry* the Fifth, attempted and took in, in *France*. 20. *Churburg*, (the *Latins* call it *Cæſaris Burgum*) on the Sea-ſide alſo, the laſt Town which the *Engliſh* held in the Dukedom of *Normandy*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till alienated by *Charles* the Third of *Navarre*, on the compoſition before-mentioned; but being garriſoned by the *Engliſh* for King *Henry* the Sixth, it held out a Siege of ſeven Months, againſt the Forces of *France*.

Here are alſo in this Dukedom the Towns of 21. *Tankerville*, and 22. *Ewe*, which have given the Title of Earls to the Noble Family of the *Greys*, and *Bourchiers* in *England*; as alſo thoſe of 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longueville*, and 25. *Aumal*, which have given the Title of Duke and Earl to ſome of the beſt Houſes in *France*.

In this Country alſo is the little Signeury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore ſaid to be a free and abſolute Kingdom; advanced to that high Dignity by *Clotaire*, the ſeventh King of the *French*; who having abuſed the Wife of one *Gautier de Ividot*, (ſo called becauſe of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent Revenge) killed the Man himſelf, to make ſome ſatisfaction to his Family for ſo great an Injury, erected the Lordſhip of *Ividot* to the Eſtate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the Heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the Prerogatives of a free and abſolute Monarch, as, to make Laws, Coin Money, and the like. From hence the *French* call a Man that hath but ſmall Demains to maintain a great Title, a *Roy d' Ividot*. At laſt, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordſhip, and belongeth now to the Houſe of *Bellay* in *Bretagne*.

There belonged alſo to this Dukedom, but rather as ſubject to the Dukes of *Normandy*, than part of *Normandy* it ſelf, the County of *PERCH*, ſituate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beauſſe*, of which now reckoned for a part; and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch Govet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou*, the ſecond Earl of this County, the Founder or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that Name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*; of moſt note in the higher *Perch*, eſpecially for giving the Title of an Earl to *John*, the youngeſt Son of King *Henry* the Second, after King of *England*; as in the times ſucceeding to the Lord *Edmund Beauford*, after Duke of *Somerſet*. The whole, firſt made a diſtinct Eſtate, in the Perſon of *Arnulph* of *Heſdin*, the firſt Earl hereof. Whoſe Son and Succeſſor, named *Rotrou*, (of great Note in the Wars of *Spain* againſt the *Moors*, in behalf of *Alfonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, *An.* 1110.) by *Maud* the natural Daughter of *Henry* the Firſt of *England*, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William*, as they croſſed the Seas; had one only Daughter, named *Magdalen*, (or as ſome ſay, *Margarite*) the Wife of *Garcia*, the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of King *Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have ſince deſcended. But this Family being extinct in a ſhort time after, the Eſtate fell unto the *Engliſh*, as Dukes of *Normandy*; and ſo continu'd till the ſeiſure of *Normandy* by the *French*, in the time of King *John*. After which time, the Title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanſon*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Alanſon*; in which Houſe of *Alanſon* it continu'd, and was commonly the Title of the eldeſt Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandy*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, ſpoken of before; the *Bellocaſſi*, or *Venelocaſſi*, about *Rouen*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenſes*, about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered firſt by the powerful *Romans*; the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. Theſe laſt, a People of the *North*, inhabiting thoſe Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and *Norway*, united in the Name of *Normans*, in regard of their Northernly ſituation; as in our Hiſtory and Deſcription of thoſe Kingdoms, we ſhall ſhew more fully. Out of thoſe Parts they made their firſt irruption about the Year 700, when they ſo ranſacked and plagued the *Maritime Towns* of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inſerted in the Litany, *From Plague, Peſtilence, and the fury of the* Normans, *good Lord*, &c. To quiet theſe People, and to ſecure himſelf, *Charles the Simple* gave them a part of *Neuſtria*, (from them ſince called *Normannia*) or *Normandy*, together with the Sovereignty of *Bretagne*; enjoy'd by them and their Poſterity for many Ages. Their firſt Duke was *Rollo*, *Anno* 912. from whom in a direct Line, the ſixth was *William the Baſtard*, Conqueror, and King of *England*, *Annó* 1067. After this *Normandy* continued *Engliſh* till the Days of King *John*; when *Philip Auguſtus* ſeiz'd on all Eſtates in *France*, as Forfeitures, *Anno* 1202. The *Engliſh* then poſſeſſing the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Main*, *Poictou*, and *Limoſin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themſelves poſſeſſed. The *Engliſh* after this recovered this Dukedom, by the Valour of King *Henry* the Fifth; and having held it thirty Years, loſt it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth; the *Engliſh* then diſtracted with domeſtick Factions. After which double Conqueſt of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* diſtruſting the Affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withal a ſtubborn and untractable People, have miſerably oppreſs'd them with Tolls and Taxes, keeping them always poor and in a low condition; inſomuch as it may be ſaid of them, that they are the moſt beggarly People that ever had the luck to live in ſo rich a Country. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandy*.

An. Chr.		
912	1	*Rollo* of *Norway*, made firſt Duke of *Normandy*, by *Charles the Simple*; by whoſe perſwaſion Baptized, and called *Robert*.
917	2	*William*, ſurnamed *Longeſpee*, from the length of his Sword.
942	3	*Richard*, the Son of *Longeſpee*.
980	4	*Richard* II. Son of the former.
1026	5	*Richard* III. Son of *Richard* II.
1028	6	*Robert*, the Brother of *Richard* III.
1035	7	*William* the baſe Son of *Robert*, ſubdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the *Conqueror*.
1093	8	*Robert* II. eldeſt Son of *William the Conqueror*, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refuſed the Crown of *Hieruſalem*, then newly conquered by the Forces of the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt. Outed at laſt, Impriſoned, and deprived of Sight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miſerable Life in the Caſtle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Glouceſter*.
1102	9	*Henry* I. King of *England*.
1134	10	*Stephen*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*.
	11	*Henry Plantagenet*, Duke of *Normandy*, and after King of *England*; of that Name the ſecond.
1161	12	*Henry* III. ſurnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* II. made Duke of *Normandy* by his Father.
1189	13	*Richard* I. ſurnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry* II.
1199	14	*John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, outed of his Eſtates in *France*, by King *Philip Auguſtus*, *An.* 1202. before whom he was accuſed of the Murther of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the Ditches of the Caſtle of *Rouen*, where he was Impriſoned; but ſentenced *Cauſa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this, *Normandy* ſtill remained united to the Crown of *France*, (the Title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the Fifth, during the Life-time of his Father) till the Conqueſt of it by the Valour of King *Henry* the Fifth, *Anno* 1420. which was 218 Years after it had been ſeized on by King *Philip Auguſtus*, and having been holden by the *Engliſh* but 30 Years, was loſt again, *Anno* 1450. in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſaving that *Lewis* the Eleventh, the better to content the Confederate Princes, conferred it, in *Appennage*, on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, *Anno* 1465. but within two Months after, took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, which lay further off from his Aſſociates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times I can hardly ſay. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who ſaith that he had ſeen raiſed in *Normandy* 95000 *l. Sterling* Money; which was a vaſt Sum of Money in thoſe times. As alſo by this teſtimony of the Duke of *Burgundy*, who held King *Lewis* the Eleventh to be weaken'd a whole third part in his Eſtate, by giving *Normandy* in Portion to the Duke of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much as the Kings *Treaſures* and *Tollmaſters* are pleaſed to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandy* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the ſingle *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy* of *Aquitain*, make the Arms of *England*.

5. BRETAGNE.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Normandy*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poictou*; on all other parts with the *Engliſh* or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South-ſide with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but ſo as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South-ſide of that River, betwixt it and *Poictou*.

It was firſt called *Armorica*, from its ſituation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new Name, is not well agreed on. The general Opinion is, That it took this Name from the neighbouring *Britains*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling againſt the Emperor *Gratian*, *Anno* 389, by whom this Province was ſubdued; and from them named *Britania Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this People hath ſtill no ſmall affinity with the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; there being a Tradition alſo, that the *Britains* who firſt came over hither and married the Women of this Country, cut out their Tongues, for fear they ſhould corrupt the Language of their Poſterity. And to this Conqueſt by the *Britains*, theſe old Verſes give this further Countenance.

Vicit Aremoricas *animoſa* Britannia *Gentes*,
Et dedit impoſito, nomina priſca, jugo.

That is to ſay,

Gaul-Armorick, the *Britains* overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their Name.

Notwithſtanding the moſt probable Opinion ſeemeth to be, that it took this Name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* People, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the Invaſions and Incurſions of the Barbarous Nations; though poſſibly thoſe *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica*, might be as well ſome Colony of the *Iſland-Britains*, as the *Belgæ*, a great Nation in the Iſle of *Britain*, are ſaid to have been a People of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reaſon is, becauſe there was no Author before *Geoffery* of *Monmouth*, who takes notice of this tranſporting of the *Inſular Britains*, by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no Ancient Author, *Greek* or *Latin*, making mention of it. And for the *Welch* or *Britiſh* Words, which are ſtill remaining in the Language, they are conceived to be of no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* Tongue, which was originally the ſame with the ancient *Britiſh*, as is elſewhere proved.

The Province is in compaſs 200 *French* Leagues, pleaſant and fruitful; beautified with many ſhady Woods, and ſpacious Downs; ſufficiently well ſtored with all manner of Grain; but deſtitute of Wine and the choiceſt Fruits, by reaſon of the Northernly ſituation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High-Britagne*, and *Baſſe* or *Low-Bretagne*: the firſt containing the more Eaſtern, and the laſt the Weſtern parts hereof. Neither of the two much furniſhed with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the neighbourhood of the Sea ſupplieth, affording it more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens; thoſe of moſt note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1. S. *Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every High-water it is encompaſſed. A Biſhop's See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spaniſh*, who uſe here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes ſpoiled by the *Engliſh*, in the Wars with *France*, eſpecially ſince the time of King *Henry* the Seventh. 2. *Blauet*, a ſafe, but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the ſame Name alſo. Impregnably fortified by the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1590. when taking opportunity of the broil in *France*, and pretending a good Title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the Male-Iſſue of King *Henry* the Second, he thought by this Door to have entred on the whole Eſtate; but quitted it again on the general Peace made between the Crowns. 3. S. *Brieu*, (by the *Latins* called *Fanum Sancti Brioci*) a Biſhop's See, and a well-traded Port, ſeated upon the *Engliſh* Chanel. 4. *Vannes*, a Biſhop's See alſo, ſituate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Valain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cæſar* placeth in this Tract, and makes them to be the mightieſt People of all the *Armoricans*; ſtrongeſt in Shipping, and beſt ſeen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Croiſſie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Weſtern Parts thereof, there is, 6. *Breſſe*, ſeated upon a ſpacious Bay of the Weſtern Ocean; the Key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodlieſt Harbour of all *France*. 7. *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. S. *Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguior*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſituate on the Sea-ſhore, and both the chief Towns of the *Oſiſmi*, whom *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coaſt: the firſt of them neighboured by the *Promontory*, which they call *Le Four*, the *Govæum* of *Ptolomy*. 10. *Kemper Corentin*, a Biſhop's See alſo, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cournoville*, (and called ſo for the ſame reaſon as *Cornwall* in *England* is) ſituate not far from the *Foreland*, which they call *Penmarch*, oppoſite to *Le Four*, ſpoken of before. A Sea-Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11. *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not for from *Breſt*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nannentes*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, ſtrong, and populous City, ſeated upon the *Loir*, a Biſhop's See, and the *Metropolis* of *Bretagne*. 2. *Rennes*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones*, (called *Condate* by *Ptolomy*) now a Biſhop's See, and the Parliament-City for this County, eſtabliſhed here, *Anno* 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great reſort, though not fully two Miles in compaſs. 3. *Del*, an Epiſcopal City alſo, but unwholſomly ſeated among Mariſhes. 4. *Dinan*, a rich and pleaſant Town on the River *Nance*. 5. *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*. 6. *Rohan*, the Title and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Roan*, deſcended from a Branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the ſecond Daughter of Duke *Francis* the Firſt, and Wife of *John*, then Viſcount of *Rohan*. 7. *Anſenis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and the Head of his Eſtates in *Bretagne*. Of which poſſeſſed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mencoueur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of this Ducal Family. St. *Chaſteau-Briant*, a ſtrong piece on the borders of *Normandy*. 9. *Cliſſon*, the chief Town of the Dutchy of *Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-ſide of the *Loire*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with a very good Caſtle.

The *Britains*, whoſoever they were in their firſt Original, were queſtionleſs one of the firſt Nations that poſſeſſed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conqueſt of the *Romans*. Governed at firſt by their own Kings, the moſt conſiderable of which, was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the Suit of the *Inſular Britains*, then diſtreſſed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, (as *Geoffrey* of *Monmouth* telleth the Story) ſent over *Conſtantine* his Brother with a compleat Army to their Aid; who having valiantly repulſed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, *An.* 433. Of whoſe Poſterity more there. Thoſe of *Armorica* being broken by the Puiſſance of *Charles the Great*, abandoned the Name of *Kings*, and ſatisfied themſelves with the Title of *Earls*; aſſumed firſt by *Alain le Rebre*, *An.* 874. but as ſome ſay, *An.* 859. which was ſomewhat ſooner. By *Peter* of *Dreux*, the ſixteenth Earl; challenging his Eſtate in Right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Siſter of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Conſtance*, by *Guy* of *Thouars*, her third Huſband; the better to ſecure his Title, this Earldom was made ſubject to the Vaſſalage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the Ninth; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the firſt Duke of *Bretagne*; as being of the Blood-Royal of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Robert* the firſt Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis the Groſs*. Yet notwithſtanding this ſubjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reſerved to themſelves the Sovereign Power, as to write themſelves, *By the Grace of God*, the priviledge of coining Gold, *&c.* and ſtood ſo high upon their Terms, that *Francis* the laſt Duke, denied to do his Homage to *Charles* the Seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former Cuſtom: For which, being quarrelled by *Lewis* IX. the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leiſure to purſue the buſineſs, than his Father was, he joined himſelf with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, in a War againſt him; and thereby drew upon himſelf that ruine which he endeavoured to avoid. For, in concluſion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poyſon'd; *Charles* of *Burgundy* loſt his Life at the Battel of *Nancie*, 1476. and a great part of his Eſtate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis* this Duke, having embarked himſelf in the ſame troublous Ocean, muſt needs ſuffer Shipwrack with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*; the Duke over-charged with Melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne* his Daughter and Heir, in the Power of *Charles* VIII. the Son and Succeſſor of this *Lewis*; who contracts a Marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many Impediments which might have hindred this Marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. Firſt, *Charles* himſelf had been formerly contracted to the Arch-Duke *Maximilian*'s Daughter; but this he held void, becauſe the young Lady was not of Age at the time of the Contract. 2. *Anne* the Dutcheſs was alſo contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held invalid alſo, becauſe that being his Homager, ſhe could not beſtow her ſelf without his conſent. 3. *Maximilian* had by proxy married her, which Marriage he conſummated by a Ceremony in thoſe Days unuſual; For his Ambaſſador, attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the ſame within the Sheets of the Dutcheſs, taking poſſeſſion thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* conſulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Conſummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church; and therefore of no power to hinder his purſuit of this Marriage, ſo advantagious to his Crown. What elſe remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we ſhall ſee anon; having firſt looked over the Succeſſion of thoſe Princes, who under ſeveral Titles have governed the Eſtate thereof, according to the beſt light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britains *of* Gaul-Armorick.

385 1 *Conan*, placed here by *Maximus*.
2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conan*.
3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*.
4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Son of *Solomon*.
5 *Bodis*, Son of *Auldran*.
6 *Hoel*, Son of *Bodis*.
7 *Hoel* II. Son of *Hoel* the Firſt.
8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the Second.
9 *Hoel* III. Son of *Alain*.
10 *Solomon* II. Son of *Hoel* the Third.
11 *Alain* II. Grandchild to *Solomon* the Second, the laſt King of *Bretagne*, of the Race of *Conan*; who dying without Iſſue, left his Kingdom unto many *Competitors*, by whom diſtracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at laſt ſubdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next ſucceeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Inſomuch, as after the murder of two or three Uſurpers of the Royal Title, *Alain*, ſurnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aſide that invidious Name of *King*, would be called only *Earl* of *Bretagne*. His Succeſſors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

874 1 *Alain le Rebre*.
2 *Indicael* and *Colodock*, Sons of *Alain*.
3 *Mathrudon*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
4 *Alain* II. Son of *Mathrudon*.
5 *Conan*, deſcended from King *Solomon* the Third.
6 *Geofrey*, Son of *Conan*.
7 *Alain* III. Son of *Geofrey*.
8 *Conan* II. Son of *Alain*.
9 *Hoel*, Siſters Son of *Conan* the Second.
10 *Alain* IV. called *Fergent*, Son of *Hoel*.
11 *Conan* III. Son of *Alain*.
12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
13 *Conan* IV. Son of *Eudon*.
14 *Geofrey* II. Son of *Henry* III. King of *England*, Husband of *Conſtance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the Fourth.
1186 15 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofrey*.
1202 16 *Peter* of *Breux*, in right of *Alice* his Wife, the the half Siſter of *Arthur*.
1250 17 *John*, the firſt Duke of *Bretagne*.
1287 18 *John* II. Son of *John* the Firſt.
1305 19 *Arthur* II. Son of *John* the Second.
1312 20 *John* III. Son of *Arthur* the Second.
1341 21 *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Brother's Son of *Arthur*.
1399 22 *John* V. Son of *John* of *Montfort*.
1442 23 *Francis*, the Son of *John* the Fifth.
1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
1457 25 *Arthur* III. ſecond Son of *John* Earl of *Montfort*.
1457 26 *Francis* II. Son of *Richard* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* III. the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom ſufficiently before.
1484 27 *Charles* VIII. *French* King, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis* II.
1498 28 *Lewis* XII. *French* King, ſucceeded on the Death of *Charles*, in the right of the ſaid *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himſelf from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* XI.
1515 29 *Francis* III. of *Bretagne*, and firſt of *France*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Lewis* XII. and of *Anne* of *Bretagne*; by whom being made the Father of ſo many Children, that he had little cauſe to fear that the Crown would be ſeparated from his Houſe; in the Year 1532. being the ſeventeenth of his Reign and Government, cauſed an Act to paſs, with the conſent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inſeparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means diveſted his Poſterity of it. For this Male-Iſſue failing in King *Henry* III. the Rights hereof deſcended on the Heirs general, that is to ſay, on *Iſabel*, Daughter of *Philip* II. of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth* his Wife,

the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* II. and Neece to the ſaid *Francis* I. and after her deceaſe (dying without Iſſue) on the Lady *Catharine* her Siſter, married to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*: For whom, when *Philip* of *Spain* claimed this Eſtate, the *French* pretended a Law againſt it of their own deviſing, *viz.* That no Eſtate being incorporated into that Crown, could be aliened from it. A proper Law, and Couſin-German to the *Salique*; but ſuch as ſerved their turn by the help of the *Engliſh*, who deſired not to have the *Spaniards* ſo near Neighbours to them.

Moſt of our former Earls of *Richmond* were Earls and Dukes of this Houſe. Their Arms were *Ermin*.

6. *The Dukedom and Eſtates of* ANJOU.

THE Dukedom and Eſtates of *ANJOU*, taking them in the full Latitude and extent thereof, are bounded on the Eaſt with *La Beauſſe*; on the Weſt, with *Bretagne*, and part of *Poictou*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with part of *Berry* and *Poictou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three ſmall Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Main*; moſt commonly accounted of as Parts and Members of *La Beauſſe*, the ancient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andes*, as *Cæſar* (or the *Andegavii* as *Pliny*) calls them, the *Turones*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunenſis tertia*.

The Country for the moſt part is very fruitful and pleaſant, eſpecially in *Tourein*; as is the whole Tract upon the *Loire*. *Anjou* is ſomewhat the more hilly, but otherwiſe little inferiour to *Tourein*, affording plenty of White Wines, the beſt in *France*; and yielding from thoſe Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence; the chief whereof are *Mayenne*, 2. *Vienne*, 3. *Dive*, and 4. *Sartre*.

1. *ANJOU*, called *Andegavia* by the *Latins*, is ſituate in the midſt betwixt *Main* and *Tourein*, ſo called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of theſe Parts. It is bounded on the North by *Main*, on the Weſt by *Bretagne*, on the South by *Poictou*, and on the Eaſt by *Tourein*. Principal Cities are, 1. *Angiers*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Juliomagus*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Biſhop, reckoning in it 15 Pariſhes beſides the Cathedral. It is ſeated on the River *Sartre* in a very good Air, and therefore choſen for the Seat of an *Univerſity*, founded here by *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, *Anno* 1388. 2. *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaſter*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* ſo much delighted, that he cauſed all the Children that he had by *Catharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterwards Dukes of *Somerſet* and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorſet*. This Town came to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, by the marriage of *Blanch* of *Artois*, unto *Edmund* ſurnamed *Crouch back*, ſecond Son to our *Henry* III. created by his Father, the firſt Earl of *Lancaſter*. Memorable in theſe latter times for giving the Title of a Dutcheſs to Madam *Catharine*, the beloved Miſtreſs of King *Henry* IV. by whom ſhe was Mother of *Cæſar*, now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and of *Alexander* not long ſince the *Grand Prior* of *France*. With reference to which, the ſecond Son of the Duke of *Vendoſme* is honoured at this preſent with the Title of Duke of *Beaufort*; as the eldeſt with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercœur*. This Title was by *Charles* II. in the Year 1682. given to the Noble and Loyal *Henry Somerſet*, Marquis of *Worceſter*, then created Duke of *Beaufort*. 3. *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Engliſh* and the *French*, wherein the *Engliſh* loſt the Day; and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* V. was there unfortunately ſlain, *Anno* 1422. 4. *Saumur*, pleaſantly ſituate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*; of whom it is the only entire Univerſity in this Kingdom, eſpecially famous for the Learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Pleſſis*, ſometimes the Governour hereof. 5. *Loches*, ſeated on the River *Indre*, the Caſtle whereof being mounted on a ſteep high Rock, is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt Pieces of all *France*. 6. *La Fleſche*, of ſpecial Name at the preſent for a College of *Jeſuits*, one of the faireſt in this Kingdom: The word in the *French* Tongue ſignifieth an Arrow (whence thoſe who make Bows and Arrows have the Name of *Fleſchers*.) At *Nola*, in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another College of them called *D' Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily compoſed this enſuing Diſtich.

Arcum Nola *dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam*
Gallia: *quis Funem, quem meruere, dabit?*

That is to ſay,

Nola *the* Bow, *and* France *the* Shaft *did bring*,
But who ſhall help them to the Hempen-ſtring?

2. On the South-eaſt of *Anjou*, lieth the Country of *TOUREIN*, the ancient Seat of the *Turones*: which for the wholſomneſs of the Air, the pleaſantneſs of the Country, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by ſome called the *Garden of France*. Principal Cities in it, 1. *Amboiſe*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the faireſt Caſtles in *France*, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulneſs of the Proſpect. 2. *Tours*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cæſarodunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*, the Metropolis of *Lugdunenſis tertia*, and an Archbiſhop's See; a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, ſituate on the Banks of the *Loire*, in a moſt ſweet and pleaſant Country. Famous, in that thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of S. *Hugo*, at which they uſe to iſſue out to their Aſſemblies in the Fields, had the Name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as ſome others think, as the Diſciples of the Night-walking Spirit (or *Robin-Goodfellow*) which they call S. *Hugo*, in regard they had their firſt Meetings, for the moſt part, in the Nights; as had the Primitive Chriſtians in the times of their Perſecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculouſly) derive the Name from the firſt words of an Apology which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were, *Huc nos venimus*: fancying, that as the *Proteſtants* did derive that Appellation from the words *Proteſtants*, and *Proteſtamur*, ſo often uſed by them in their Apology to *Charles* V. ſo from thoſe words, *Huc nos*, came the Name of *Hugonots*, or *Huc-nots*. But more aſſuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of *France*, againſt an Army of 400000 *Moors*, led by *Alderamen*, Lieutenant General in *Spain*, for *Evelid* or *Iſcam* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 loſt their Lives in the place, *An.* 734. 3. *Laudun*. 4. *Richlieu*, pleaſantly ſeated in a rich and flouriſhing Soil, as the Name importeth. Of no great note, till the time of the late great Cardinal of *Richlieu*, who took Name from hence, by whom it was made one of the neateſt Towns (for the bigneſs of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the Titles of a Dukedom and *Pairrie* of *France*.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we ſhall ſpeak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls of the Houſe of *Blais*, conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald*, or *Thibald* his eldeſt Son, (his ſecond Son, named *Stephen*, ſucceeding in *Champagne*;) who in the Year 1043. was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Charles Martel*, Earl of *Anjou*, and this Province ſeized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Reſidence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the ſeizure of *Anjou*, and all the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces in *France*, on the Sentence paſſed upon King *John*. After which time diſmembred from it was confer'd on *John* the fourth Son of King *Charles* VI. with the Stile and Title of Duke of *Tourein*; and he deceaſing without Iſſue, it was beſtowed with the ſame Title, on *Charles* the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the Life of his Father ;) the ſame who afterwards ſucceeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Priſoner by the *Engliſh* at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept Priſoner 25 Years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* XII.

3. On the North ſide of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomannenſis* in our *Latin* Writers: So called of the *Cenomanni*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract in the Time of *Cæſar* ; ſome of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other Nations of the *Gauls* had in the former time paſſed over the *Alps*, and there poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe Countries, which now paſs under the Name and accompt of *Lombardy*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Mans*, *Cenomannenſium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Vindinum* ; ſeated on the meeting of *Huive* and *Sartre*; the principal of the Province, and a Biſhop's See ; moſt memorable in the elder times for giving the Title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Siſter's Son of *Charlemagne*, one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, (the ſubject of many notable Poems, under the Name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioſo*, beſides many of the old Romances) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2. *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a River of the ſame Name, (*Meduana* in *Latin*) the Title of the ſecond Branch of the Houſe of *Guiſe*; famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the League againſt *Henry* IV. A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in ſo ill a Cauſe. 3. *Vitrun*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4. *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*, of note for giving both Name and Title to the Earls of *Laval*, an ancient Family, allied unto the Houſes of *Vendoſme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and other the beſt of *France*. Few elſe of any note in this little Country ; which once ſubſiſting of it ſelf under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at laſt united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie*, the laſt Earl hereof, married to *Foulk* Earl of *Anjou*, *An.* 1083. or thereabouts. The Fortunes of which great Eſtate it hath always followed, ſince that time.

But as for *Anjou* it ſelf, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles the Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his Valour ſhewn againſt the *Normans*, *An.* 870. which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Robert* who ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles the Simple* for the Crown it ſelf, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the purſuit of this great Quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the Title of Earl of *Paris*, and his Pretenſions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, ſurnamed the *Great* ; who, to make good his Claim to the Crown, againſt *Lewis* IV. Son of *Charles the Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Country of *Gaſtinois*, on *Geofrey* ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great ſtickler in his Cauſe, in whoſe Race it continued near 300 Years. How the two Countries of *Main* and *Tourein* were joined to it, hath been ſhewn before. *Geofrey* the Son of *Foulk* III. married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry* I. of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the Fourth Emperor; from whom proceeded *Henry* II. King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Eſtates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown ; and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* IX. on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* IV. was made King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* V. (*Tourein* being firſt diſmembred from it) in the Perſon of *Lewis* of *France*, his ſecond Brother to whom this fair Eſtate was given, as ſecond Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and conſequently the next Heir to *Charles de Valois*, the laſt Earl hereof (the King his Brother yielding up all his right unto him.) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* XI. The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veſted with the Diadems of ſeveral Countries, following in this order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the Line of *Saxony*.

870	1	*Robert* of *Saxony*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*.
875	2	*Robert* II. Competitor for the Crown of *France* with *Charles* the *Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the laſt King.
922	3	*Hugh the Great*, Lord of *Gaſtinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Conſtable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.
926	4	*Geofrey Gryſogonelle*, by the Donotion of *Hugh the Great*, whoſe Party he had followed in the War of *France*, with great Fidelity and Courage.
938	5	*Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, the Son of *Geofrey*.
987	6	*Geofrey* II. ſurnamed *Martel*, for his great Valour.
1047	7	*Geofrey* III. Nephew of *Geofrey* II. by one of his Siſters.
1075	8	*Foulk* II. Brother of *Geofrey* III. gave *Gaſtionis* (which was his proper Inheritance) to King *Philip* I. that by his help he might recover the Earldom of *Anjou* from his part, wherein he was excluded by his Brother *Geofrey*.
1080	9	*Geofrey* IV. Son of *Foulk* II.
1083	10	*Foulk* III. Brother of *Geofrey*, King of *Jeruſalem*, in the right of *Milliſend* his Wife.
1143	11	*Geofrey* V. ſurnamed *Plantagenet*.
1150	12	*Henry* II. King of *England*, Son of Earl *Geofrey* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry* I.
1162	13	*Geofrey* VI. third Son of King *Henry* II. made Earl of *Anjou* on his marriage with *Conſtance*, the Heir of *Bretagne*.
1186	14	*Arthur*, Son of *Geofrey* and *Conſtance*.
1202	[illegible]	*John*, King of *England*, ſucceeded on the death of *Arthur* ; diſpoſſed of his Eſtates in *France* by *Philip Auguſtus*, immediately on the death of *Arthur*, *An.* 1202.

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

1262	1	*Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis* IX. Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, King of *Naples*, and *Sicilia*, &c.
1315	2	*Charles* of *Valois*, Son of *Philip* III. Earl of *Anjou*, in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Son and Heir of the ſame Name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.
1318	3	*Lewis* of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of *Charles*, died without Iſſue, *Anno* 1325.
1376	4	*Lewis* of *France*, the ſecond Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, created the firſt Duke of *Anjou*, by King *Charles* his Brother ; and adopted by Qu. *Joan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Jeruſalem*, and E. of *Provence*.
1385	5	*Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence* and *Main* ; titular King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Jeruſalem*.
1416	6	*Lewis* IV. Succeſſor to his Father in Eſtate and Titles.
1430	7	*Rene*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of Qu. *Joan* II. was for a while poſſeſſed of *Naples*; but preſently outed by *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, and died the titular K. of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Jeruſalem* ; the Father of Q. *Margarite*, Wife of *Henry* VI. and Duke of *Bar*, in right of *Violant* his Mother.

1480 8. *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Nephew to *Rene* by his third Brother *Charles*, at his deceaſe left *Anjou*, and all the reſt of his Eſtates to King *Lewis* XI. *Anno* 1481. Since which never otherwiſe aliened, than as an honorary Title of the third Son of *France*.

It is to be obſerved here (according to our method in other places) that *Rene* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, inſtituted an Order of *Knighthood*, called of the *Croiſſant*; the Knights whereof carried a *Creſcent*, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L'Os en Croiſſant*; encouraging them thereby to ſeek the increaſe of Valour and Reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedom, were *France*, a Border *Gules*.

7. LA BEAUSSE.

LA *BEAUSSE*, (not reckoning in the Provinces laſt before deſcribed) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *France* ſpecially and primarily ſo called; on the Weſt, with *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Tourein*, and ſome part of *Berry*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with *Nivernois*, and the reſt of *Berry*. It is called *Belſia* in *Latin* Writers; both Names derived from the pleaſantneſs and beauties of it; this Country being not only looked on as the Garden of *France*, but the Nurſe of the great City of *Paris*, which from the Breaſts thereof receiveth the beſt part of its ſuſtenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greateſt part, and the *Sammitæ* near the *Loire*, part of *Gallia Celtica*, and caſt into the Province of *Lugdunenſis quarta*, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediate*.

1. The *HIGHER BEAUSSE* is that part which lieth next to *Normandy*, of which the principal Towns are, 1. *Dreux*, ſeated upon the River *Eureux*, ſuppoſed to be the Seat of the ancient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Seſſions* for adminiſtration of Juſtice. The Title and Inheritance of *Robert*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Groſſe*, and Grand-father of that *Peter* of *Dreux*, who ſucceeded *Arthur*, the Son of *Geoffrey Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. Near this Place, in the Year 1562. was a fierce Battel between the *Hugonots* and the *Roman-Catholicks*, in which the Prince of *Conde* was taken. 2. *Montfort*, an Earldom, the Title and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Montfort*, ſurnamed the *Valiant*, who ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1341. 3. *Chartres*, called anciently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolomy*, *Atricum*) from whence the Country hereabouts was called *Le Paris Chartrain*: ſeated in an uneven place, varied with fertile riſing Hills, ſo that the Eaſt ſide ſtands upon the top of an Hill, and the Weſt ſpreads it ſelf in the bottom of a Plain, through the midſt whereof runs the River *Eure*, which as ſoon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South-ſide, divides it ſelf into three Branches, two whereof encompaſs the City round about, and the third running through the midſt thereof, ſerveth the Town with many Mills for the uſe of the People; doth afterwards unite it ſelf with the reſt into one main Channel. A very fair and goodly City, a Biſhop's See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France*; anciently giving the Title of an Earldom alſo to the Houſe of *Blois*, from the time that *Theobald* the ſecond Earl of *Blois* extorted it by ſtrong hand from the Biſhops hereof, about the Year 950, continuing in the poſſeſſion of that Family till the Year 1300, or thereabouts, when ſold by *Maheult* or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietor hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chaſtillon*, in her Right, called Earl of *Blois*, to King *Philip the Fair*, for an Annual Penſion of 4000 Livres. 4. *Anneau*, a Town of the Territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great ſlaughter made here by *Henry* Duke of *Guiſe*, of the *German* Auxiliaries, invading *France* with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonots*, *Anno* 1587.

2. The *LOWER BEAUSSE* is that which lieth towards *Nivernois* and *Berry*; and is ſubdivided into *Sologne* and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth cloſe to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1. *Romarantin*, ſeated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2. *Mellenzay*. 3. *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte St. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lieth more Northwards upon the River *Loyre*, are 1. *Targeau*, a Town once of very great ſtrength, and one of the Out-works of *Orleans*. 2. *Cleri*, called alſo *Cleri* of *Noſtredame*, from the Church there built unto *our Lady*. 3. *Tury*, and 4. *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* and 5. *Orleans*, the principal City of all *Beauſſe*, called *Genabum* in the time of *Cæſar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperor *Aurelius*, *Anno* 276. from thence named *Aurelia*, the Country round about it *Aurelianenſis*, now *Orleans* and *Orleanois*. The Country generally very fruitful, and yielding a moſt excellent and delicious Wine; which for the ſtrength and intoxicating power thereof, is baniſhed the *French* King's Cellar by eſpecial Edict. The City very pleaſant, ſeated on the River *Loyre*, well built, ſituate in a ſweet Air, and planted with a Civil and Ingenuous People; who are ſaid to ſpeak the beſt Language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a diſtinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovignians*) the Lot of *Clodomire* Son of *Clovis the Great*, and of *Guntram* Son of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*; as alſo was *Theodorick*, the ſecond Son of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Guntram*. But *Sigibert* his Son, being vanquiſhed by *Clotaire* II. this Kingdom extending to the Shores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of *France*. *Orleans* ſince that time, content with the lower Title, hath of late oftentimes with great prudence, been made the honorary Title of the ſecond Sons of *France*, called Dukes hereof, the firſt who had the Title being *Philip* II. Son of *Philip de Valois*, from a baſe Son of whoſe, the Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longeville* do derive themſelves, and *Lewis* the ſecond Son of *Charles* I. Grand-father of *Lewis* XI. *French* King. It is a See Epiſcopal, a Baliwick, or *Siege Præſidial*, and an Univerſity. The *See Epiſcopal* founded in the Church of St. *Croſs*, miſerably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the Civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the Name. The *Siege Præſidial* ſetled here by King *Henry* II. 1551. for the eaſe of his Subjects of theſe Parts, in Suits not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The Univerſity erected by King *Philip le bel*, *An.* 1312. though to ſpeak properly, it be an Hall only for the reading of the *Civil Laws*, the only Learning there profeſſed, and for that conſiderable. A Town now not of ſo great ſtrength as in former times, when for ſome Months it held out againſt the whole Power of the *Engliſh*; reſcued from them at laſt by the Valour of *Joan the Virgin*, whoſe Statue (like a Man of Arms) is ſtill preſerved on the Bridge-Gate of this City; near which great *Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, had his fatal Blow.

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEUASSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1. *Blois*, ſeated alſo on the *Loire*, in a ſound Air and fruitful Country; the Nurſery for the moſt part of the King's Children, for that cauſe much reſorted to by the Nobility, and honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the Kings themſelves; it being in the Council Chamber of the King's Houſe here, that *Henry* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Guiſe*, the chief Contriver of the terrible Maſſacre at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*, was ſlain by the Command of King *Henry* III. *Anno* 1589. 2. *Chaſteau-Dun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the Honour and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard of Orleans*, one of the beſt Soldiers of his time, and ſo approved by his Exploits againſt the *Engliſh*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loire*, and *Aigre*. 3. *Laverdin*, moſt remarkable for giving Name and Honour to a noble Family, which depending upon the Houſe of *Vendoſme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monſieur de Tardin*, a faithful and couragious Follower of King *Henry* IV. in his long War againſt the *Leaguers*. 4. *Vendoſme*, (*Vindocinum* in *Latine*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendoſme*; not otherwiſe of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title; of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now Regnant, I have thought fit to add the enſuing Catalogue; premiſing firſt, that this Earldom came to the Houſe of *France* by the marriage of *Katharine* Daughter and Heir of *John*, the laſt Earl of the former Race, to *John* I. the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*.

1386 1 *John* of *Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis* I. Duke of *Bourbon*, the firſt Earl of *Vendoſme* of this Family.

1432 2 *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, a Confederate with *Joan* the *Virgin* in her Actions againſt the *Engliſh*.

1446 3 *John* of *Bourbon* II. from whom deſcended the Princes of *Roch-Suryon*, and the Dukes of *Montpenſier*.

1472 4 *Francis* of *Bourbon*.

1495 5 *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*, from whoſe youngeſt Son, called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, deſcended the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soiſſons*.

1532 6 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Navarre*.

1562 7 *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Navarre*, afterwards King of *France* alſo, by the name of *Henry* IV.

8 *Cæſar de Vendoſme*, one of the Sons of *Henry* IV. by the Dutcheſs of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendoſme*, and once deſigned his Succeſſor in the Crown of *France*. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Mercoeuer*, (a younger Branch of the Houſe of *Lorain*) poſſeſſed of a fair and goodly Eſtate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the Right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the Houſe of *Martignes* (a Branch of the Family of thoſe Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendoſme* hath not only a large Inheritance, but great Authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*, were and are, *Azure*, ſix Flower de Lyces, *Or*, 3, 2, 1. Thoſe of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been *France*, on a Bend *Gules*, three Lions or, *Or*.

But the great Lords of this Country were the Earls of *Blois*, poſſeſſed not only of the Earldom of *Chartreſs*, (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the higheſt *Beauſſe*, but alſo of the whole Country of *Touxein*, a better Patrimony and Eſtate than that; which how they were alienated from this Houſe, we have ſeen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blois* it ſelf, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle *Beauſſe*, thereto belonging; which being after ſold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the firſt greatneſs to that Houſe. As for the Earls of *Blois* themſelves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble *Dane* (Companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the firſt Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles* the *Simple*, created the firſt Earl hereof, *An.* 920, or thereabouts, branching it ſelf into the Houſes of *Blois* and *Champagne*; ſometimes united into one Perſon, but for the moſt part, and at laſt divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blois*, derived both his Name and Parentage from the Earls of this Houſe, as being Son of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blois*, by *Maud* one of the Daughters of *William* Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, ſurnamed the Conqueror. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blois* continued in the Maſculine Line, till the year 1219, under nine Princes in the Total: of the Houſe of *Gerlon*: And then it fell by the Heirs general, to the noble Family of *Chaſtillon*, continuing theirs till the year 1391, when ſold by *Guy de Chaſtillon*, the laſt Earl of that Houſe, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, he being then Childleſs, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the Houſe of *Namurre*) who could not otherwiſe maintain her great prodigality, but by ready Money. United finally to the Crown by *Lewis* the Grandſon of this *Lewis*, on his Succeſſion to the Kingdom after *Charles* VIII.

The Arms of theſe great Earls were *Gules*, three *Palls*, *Vaire*, a *Chief Or*.

8. NIVERNOIS.

NIVERNOIS is bounded on the North, with *La Beauſſe*; on the South, with *Bourbonois*; on the Eaſt with *Champagne*; and on the Weſt with *Berry*; ſo called from *Nivernium*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof. This ſmall Province is bounded by *Baudrand* thus, on the Eaſt it has the Dukedom of *Burgund*, on the South *Bourbon*, on the Weſt *Berry*, and on the North *Orleans*.

This is the ſmalleſt Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, becauſe not eaſily reducible unto any other, as all the reſt of the leſſer Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully ſtored with rich Paſtures, and well ſhaded with Woods, in which are found ſome Mines of Iron, interſperſed with Silver, and many Quarries of good Stone, of much uſe for Building. The Territory being but ſmall, we cannot look for many Towns of Note and Conſequence. Of thoſe that be the principal are, 1. *Pontigni*, remarkable for an ancient Abbey, the Burial-place of ſome of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it ſelf upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of twenty Arches, but otherwiſe not great or fair, though the chief of this ſmall Country, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The Reputation which it hath, proceeding ſpecially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated. *John Caſſimir* King of *Poland* died in this City in the year 1672. It is alſo a Biſhops See, under the Archbiſhop of *Sens*.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts, and from them won by the *French*; it came to have Princes of its own, almoſt as early as any other Country in the Realm of *France*. Who was the firſt that had the Title of *Earl of Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordſhip of this Eſtate, I can no where find; but ſure I am, that in the year 1001, both the Eſtate and Title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a Nobleman of the *Burgundian* Race, who on the death of *Henry* IV. Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have ſeized on that Eſtate, in deſpight of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it: Paſſing through many Families, it came at laſt to the Houſe of *Burgogne*, in the Perſon of *Odo*, the Son of *Hugh* the fourth of that Name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir-General of *Nevers*; and from that to the Houſe of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Toland*, or *Burgogne*, to *Robert* of *Bethure*, Earl of *Flanders*, 1512, whoſe Son, named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Rethel*, uniting by that marriage theſe Eſtates under his command. Together with the reſt of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again by marriage, to *Philip* the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and conſent of his elder Sons, (otherwiſe well provided for) conferred both it and *Rethel*, on his third Son *Philip*, whoſe Neece *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve*, her Husband, *An.* 1484. In the Perſon of *Francis*, the fourth Earl of this Houſe, it was made a Dukedom; and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, Siſter and Heir of *Francis* the laſt Prince of this Family, was brought in Dower to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, ſecond Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, *An.* 1563. whoſe Son *Charles* ſucceeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Couſin German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be obſerved, that though this Eſtate hath paſſed through ſo many Families; yet the Rights and Regalities thereof, have been ſtill continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought that I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the reſt of that Kingdom is, but ſuch parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or elſe enjoy the Priviledges of a free Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compone*, *Gules*, and *Argent*, three *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*.

9. *The Dukedom of* BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *BOURBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forreſt*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. *BOURBONOIS* hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the Weſt, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a Corner of *Gaſtinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*: ſo called from *Bourbon*, (for diſtinction ſake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well Wooded, and of excellent Paſturage; which makes the People more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loire*, *Yonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted Navigable; beſides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lanbois*, and ſome leſſer Streams.

It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*: in the *Higher*, which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note than that of *Montaigne*, ſituate in the Country of *Combraille*; the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michael de Montagne*, the Author of the Book of *Eſſays*. But in the *Lower Bourbonois*, are, 1. *Molins*, eſteemed the Center of all *France*; ſituate on the *Allier*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this Country; the River yielding great plenty of Fiſh, but of *Salmons* ſpecially; the Town adorned with a fair Caſtle, and that beautified with one of the fineſt Gardens in *France*; in which are many Trees of Lemmons and Oranges. 2. *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancie*: the former of the two, ſeated upon the *Loire*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great reſort by reaſon of its *Medicinal* Waters. 4. St. *Porcin*, and 5. *Varennes Ganat*, upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 6. *Chancelle*, 7. *Charroux*, 8. *Paliſſe*, 9. *Souvigni*, 10. *Amand*.

The ancient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waſted in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was, by *Julius Cæſar* conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their Defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the requeſt of the *Hedui*, who deſired it of him: and poſſibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have theſe *Boii* dwell amongſt them, not only to fill up their numbers, and Manure the waſt Grounds of their Country; but in regard of ſome nearer Tie that was between them: it being conceived by many Learned Men, that theſe *Boii*, which together with theſe *Cenomanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations, croſſed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of theſe parts: and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence ſent thoſe Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their Journey, ſpoken of before. Made ſubject to the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Gallia*; and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitanica*: it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was ſubdued, and made a part of their Kingdom; in the ſubverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) ſubdued by the more powerful *French*; and how diſpoſed of afterwards, we ſhall ſee anon, having firſt taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. *FORREST*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Beau-jolois*; on the Weſt, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonois*, and on the South with a part of *Languedoc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Woodlands. The Air a little of the coldeſt to afford good Wines; but that ſufficiently recompenced by abundance of Pit-coal; by which they have very good Fires at a cheap rate. The People are conceived to be none of the wiſeſt, but withal, very greedy and covetous of Gain.

The chief Towns in it, are, 1. *Mont-briſon*, ſeated on the *Loire*. 2. *Feurs*, ſeated on the ſame River, called anciently, *Forum Seguſianorum*, the chief Town of the *Seguſiani*, or *Secuſiani*, whom *Cæſar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. St. *Stephen*, (or *Eſtienne*) in *Feurian*, near the head of that River. 4. St. *Germans*. 5. St. *Rimberg*. 6. St. *Bennet le Chaſteau*. 7. St. *Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forreſt* was anciently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; diſmembred from it at or about the ſame time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long ſucceſſion of Earls *Proprietaries* of it, as a State diſtinct, till *Regnaud*, Lord of *Forreſt*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Iſabel*, Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together; which was about the year 1265; parted again after his deceaſe, *An.* 1280. *Guy* being his eldeſt Son, ſucceeding in *Forreſt*, and *Lewis* his ſecond Son, in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the Houſe of *Bourbon*, we ſhall ſee anon.

3. *BEAU JOLOIS*, ſo called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the Tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Soaſne*; and betwixt *Lionnois* and *Forreſt*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been Men of great Eminence in the ſeveral times. The chief Town of it, is *Beau-jeu* beautified with a goodly Caſtle, pleaſantly ſeated on the brow of a riſing Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the Name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Caſtle, was in the ſame ſenſe, and for the ſame pleaſant ſituation, called *Joyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du lake*, whoſe that Caſtle was. Which appears further by a Tower built by *Conſtantine*, by *Guiſchard* the third of that Name, Lord hereof, (being then Embaſſador to the Emperor, from King *Philip Auguſtus*) with this Inſcription, *Turris Belli-jocenſis*; which there continued to be ſeen a long time after. 2. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* II. *Anno* 1158. 3. *Ville-Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* IV. whoſe Son *Guiſchard* III. above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciſcans*, called to this day, *Minorette*. 4. *Noironde*. 5. St. *Maurice*. 6. *Ulſie*. 7. *Obches*, concerning which, there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forreſts*, and theſe Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Country, as that other of *Forreſt*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Eſtate, it fell to *Ompbroy*, one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, *Anno* 989, whoſe Succeſſors had no other Title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were moſt of them Men of great Piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches; ſome of them Men of Action alſo: *Humbert* the ſecond, and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard* II. in thoſe againſt the *Engliſh*; *Guiſchard* IV. made Conſtable of *France*, by King *Lewis* IX. But the Houſe failing in this *Guiſchard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forreſt*, as before is ſaid, in the Perſon of *Regnaud*, Earl thereof whoſe Son and Succeſſor,

ſor, called *Lewis*, was alſo Conſtable of *France*; as *Edward*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, a Marſhal of it. But at the laſt it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* II. who being impriſoned at *Paris* for his great Offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*, made a Donation, or Free-gift, of all his *Signeuries*, to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, ſurnamed the *Good*; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forreſt*, the eldeſt Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forreſt*, the Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and conſequently of next kin to him, *An.* 1400.

4. *AUVERGNE* hath on the Eaſt, *Forreſt*, and *Lyonois*; on the Weſt, *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry*, and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree. The *Higher*, mountainous and barren. In this laſt, the Towns of chief note are, 1. St. *Flour*, a Biſhops See of an impregnable ſituation. 2. *Arilla*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of a Rock. 3. *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*. 5. *Murat*. 6. *Billon*, of which little obſervable in ancient Stories. In the *Lower*, called *Lemaigne*, from a River of that Name which falls into the *Allier*: there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Biſhops See, fair and pleaſing for the ſituation, and Fountains deſcending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergne*, the chief City of the whole Province. Moſt memorable in theſe latter Ages, for the Council here called by Pope *Urban* II. *Anno* 1067. in which, by the Artifice of the Pope, the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt engaged themſelves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories and their Power. It was firſt raiſed out of the ruines of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cæſar*; and the Seat-royal of *Vercingetorix*, King of that Nation, who ſo long put him to his trumps with the Army of 138000 Men: now a ſmall Village called *Gergeau*. 2. *Rion*, in which reſides the Seneſchal, or chief Governour of the Lower *Auvergne*. 3. *Montpenſier*, of great note for the Princes of the Houſe of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof; beginning in *Lewis* the firſt Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An.* 1415. and ending in *Henry* the laſt Duke; whoſe Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* XIII. 4. *Montferant*. 5. *Yſſoire*. 6. *Brionde*, 7. *Aigueperſſe*, 8. *Turenne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Delatours*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*; to whom it hath for ſome Ages ſince, given the Title of *Viſcount*. A Family deſcended from the Heirs general of *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfry* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorain*, and King of *Jeruſalem*.

The Country firſt inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whoſe King *Bituitus*, was taken Priſoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War againſt the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and other of their Confederates. Not fully conquered, till *Cæſar* had ſubdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; retaining, in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergne*: Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*; remaining ſubject to thoſe Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whoſe name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither; of whom there is nothing on Record, but that he took up Arms againſt *Lewis* VI. who began his Reign *An.* 1110. By the Heir-general of this Houſe, it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the ſecond Son of *Guigne* IV. and *Beatrix*, Daulphin of *Viennois*; in whoſe Line it continued under the Title of the Daulphins of *Auvergne*, till *Berault*, the laſt Earl or *Daulphin* of it. Who having marryed the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forreſt*, the Son of *Regnaud* abovementioned, had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Eſtates, married to *Lewis* the *Good*, the third Duke of *Bourbon*; to whom *Edward* the laſt Lord of *Beau-jeu*, made a Donation or Surrendry of that Signeury alſo, uniting in his Perſon the diſtinct Eſtates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forreſt*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonois* it ſelf, in the diſtractions of the *French* Empire by the Poſterity of *Charles* the Great, who moſt improvidently Cantoned it into many great Eſtates, and petit Signeuries, it fell unto the ſhare of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, deſcended from the ancient Houſe of *Burgogne*; who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* IX. for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauvoiſin*) his fifth Son, married him to *Beatrix*, Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre*, the laſt of that Houſe. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert*, was the firſt Duke of this Line; whoſe Succeſſors and their Atchievements, follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Bourbon*.

1308 1 *Robert*, Son of King *Lewis* IX. Earl of *Clermont*; the firſt Lord of *Bourbon* of the Houſe of *France*.

1317 2 *Lewis*, the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*; *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*: from whoſe ſecond Son *Jaques*, comes the Houſe of *Vendoſme*.

1341 3 *Peter*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; ſlain in the Battle of *Poictiers*, *An.* 1356.

1356 4 *Lewis* II. called the *Good*; in whoſe Perſon all theſe Eſtates were firſt united: *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*, and Governour of *Charles* VI.

1410 5 *John*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; taken Priſoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and died in *England*: the Root of the Family of *Montpenſier*.

1434 6 *Charles*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; General of the Army againſt the *Engliſh*, in the *Iſle* of *France*.

1456 7 *John* II. *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Conſtable of *France*.

1487 8 *Peter* II. Brother of *John*; *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the abſence of *Charles* VIII.

1503 9 *Charles* Earl of *Montpenſier*, Duke of *Bourbon*, in the right of *Suſan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the ſecond, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whoſe death, being ſlain at the ſack of *Rome*, *An.* 1527. without Iſſue, his Eſtate fell unto the Crown; and ſo continued till by the Sentence of *Arreſt* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forreſt*, and *Beau-jeu*, were adjudged to Madam *Loviſe*, Mother of *Lewis* the firſt Duke of *Montpenſier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de Bourbon*, Earl of *Montpenſier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, (the firſt of that Name) of which Houſe ſhe was the only ſurviving Heir; from whence deſcended *Henry*, the laſt Duke of that Family, ſpoken of before. And for the Title of *Auvergne*, it was uſed cuſtomarily, by the eldeſt Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpenſier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* IX. called from hence, the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*; who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604 made Priſoner by King *Henry* IV. releaſed by King *Lewis* XIII. *An.* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angoleſm*; in whoſe Poſterity it remaineth.

The Arms of theſe Dukes were, 1. *France*, a Baſton, *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. 2. *Or*, a Daulphin *Palm*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*. 3. *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the ſame, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forreſt*, I am yet to ſeek. But anciently, the Arms of *Bourbon*, when under the *Dampierres*, were *Or*, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockleſhells of *Azure*.

10. *BERRIE.*

HAving thus taken a view of thoſe ſeveral Provinces which (except *Bretagne*) were the firſt Purchaſes of the *French* in the modern *France*; and ſo much of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts, as were either laid to the Kingdom of Weſt-*France*, or elſe were neceſſarily to be paſſed over in the courſe of our Journey: let us next look on thoſe which were poſſeſſed by the *Goths*. And firſt we will begin with *BERRIE*, (as next in ſituation with thoſe before deſcribed) bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bourbonois* and *Nivernois*; on the Weſt, with *Poictou*, and part of *Tourein*, on the North with *La Beauſſe*; on the South, with *Limoſin*; in *Latine* called *Biturigum regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and ſome others, called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Ubiſci*, dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Country watered in the Eaſt with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Chur*; and in the Inland parts, with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we ſhall meet withal anon: of no great note, but ſuch as much conduce to the fruitfulneſs of it; affording it the benefit of fat Paſtures and flouriſhing Meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattle, and ſuch flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a Man for lying in exceſs of numbers, they uſe to ſay, *Fye, Sir, there are not ſo many Sheep in* Berrie.

It containeth in it 33 Walled Towns; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great ſtrength by Nature, and as well fortified by Art, ſituate in a low Flat, amongſt deep impaſſable Bogs and Mariſhes, cauſed by the overflowing of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*; ſmall Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together: by means whereof it may be eaſily drowned at the approach of an Enemy: for that cauſe made the Faſtneſs and Retreat of *Charles* VII. in his long Wars againſt the *Engliſh*, poſſeſſed at that time of *Paris*, and the greateſt part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feaſt it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high days neither. From his conſtant abode here, and that withal he had been Duke of this Country, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *Engliſh* in deriſion called King of *Berrie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-biſhop: a Siege preſidial, and one of the beſt Univerſities in *France*, eſpecially for the Study of the Civil-Laws, firſt founded by King *Lewis* IX. and afterwards reſtored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berrie*, the Brother of King *Lewis* XI. Some Fabulous Founders, and Ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it, as, that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchild of *Noah*; by whom called *Bytoguges*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forſooth) unto *Bituriges*; which Etymology, were it as dear bought, as it is far fetch'd, *might be good for Ladies*; and then it would be good for ſomewhat. Others, no leſs abſurdly, will have it called *Brituris*, *quaſi Biturris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here: one of the two, in part, ſtill ſtanding: and unto this, they ſay, alludeth an old *Grammarian*, thus:

Turribus à binis, inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The Name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges*, (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that Name in the diviſion of old *Gaul* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; of which this Country was a part. 2. *Wiarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeure*, meeting hereabouts, built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great Note and Strength in the time of *Cæſar*: the Revolt whereof gave ſuch a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to ſtretch his Wits and Valour on the very Tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Concreſſant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle. 4. *Chaſteau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Iſſaudun*, on the River *Theo*, the Baliage for that part of the Country. 6. *Montfulcon*, an ancient Barony. 7. *Argenton*, on the River *Creuſe*, the Title and Eſtate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Signeur de Argenton*, who writ the Hiſtory of *France* under *Lewis* XI. in which he dived ſo far into, and writ ſo largely of, the greateſt Affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medices* uſed to ſay, That he had made as many *Hereticks* in *State Policy*, as *Luthur* had done in *Religion*. 8. *Sancerre*, ſeated on a high Hill near the River *Loire*; by ſome *Latine* Writers called *Xantodorum*; but moſt generally ſaid to be ſo called, *quaſi ſacrum Cereris*, from the Goddeſs *Ceres*, herein worſhipped in the times of *Gentiliſm*. A Town of great Conſequence and Strength; and as ſuch, aſſigned over to the *Hugonots*, *An.* 1569. as a Town of Caution for their Security, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon. Famous not long after, for enduring a moſt deſperate and tedious Siege under *Charles* IX. by whom thoſe Articles were almoſt no ſooner made than broken. Before which time it was not under the command of the *French* Kings, but under the direct Dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Soveraignty thereof: but being taken by the Kings Forces upon this occaſion, *An.* 1573. and the Walls thrown down, a Garriſon was put into the Caſtle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings Devotion, the Rents and Profits of it ſtill remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is alſo in this Province, the Town and Signeury of *Aubignie*, adorned with many Priviledges, an ample Territory, and a beautiful Caſtle: Beſtowed by *Charles* VI. on *Robert*, the ſecond Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many ſignal Services againſt the *Engliſh*; and is ſtill the honourary Title and Poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of that Noble and Illuſtrious Family, hence called by the Name of Lords of *Aubignie*.

But as for *Berry* it ſelf, and the Fortunes of it, we may pleaſe to know, that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Biteriges Liberi*, as ſome Writers call them) ſubdued but not without great difficulty, by the matchleſs *Cæſar*: in the firſt diviſion of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*; and in the new-modelling of that Province, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, a part of *Aquitania prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *French*. It was for long time under the command of Provincial-Governours, one of which, called by the Name of *Godfrey*, obtained that Dignity from *Hugh Capet*; and his Poſterity enjoyed that Office under the Kings of *France*, till the days of King *Henry* I. of whom the Inheritance and Eſtate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the Deſcendents of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own Right; when deſirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he ſold it back again to King *Philip* I. (the better to furniſh himſelf for that Expedition) *An.* 1096. to be united to the Crown after his deceaſe. Since which time, the Soveraignty of it hath been always in the Crown of *France*; but the Poſſeſſion and Revenue ſometimes given, with the Title of Duke, for a Portion to ſome of the Kings younger Sons, to be holden of them in *Apennage*, under the Soveraignty and Command of the *Donor*, and his Succeſſors. The firſt of thoſe that held this Title, was *John*, a younger Son of *John* King of *France*, and Uncle to *Charles* VI. during whoſe Reign, betwixt this Duke and thoſe of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miſerably diſtracted into Broils and Factions. The ſecond was another *John*, Son of *Charles* VI. who dying in his Minority, was ſucceeded in this Title by his Brother *Charles*, Succeſſor to his Father in the Crown it ſelf. The fourth and laſt, (for it had no more than four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of King *Charles* VII. who ſiding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did ſo much trouble the Affairs of *France* under *Lewis* XI. by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienne* afterwards; but held neither long. After whoſe death, it was united to the Crown; never ſince ſeparated from it: but though it never had Duke ſince, it hath had three Dutcheſſes; firſt giving the Title of Dutcheſs to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis* XI. and Wife to *Lewis* XII. then Duke of *Orleans*, eſtated herein by her ſaid Husband; when coming to the Crown he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Dutcheſs of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles* VIII. his Predeceſſor. Conferred after her deceaſe, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis* I. on the Lady *Margaret* his Siſter, firſt married to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*; and after his deceaſe, to *Henry* of *Albert*, King of *Navarre*, the laſt that had this Title, being another *Margaret*, Daughter of the ſaid King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*.

11. POICTOU.

POICTOU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Tourein*, *Berry*, and *Limoſin*; on the North with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*; on the South with *Xaintoigne*, a Member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; and on the Weſt, with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomy*, *Cæſar*, and ſome others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof; and is a Country ſo great and plentiful, that there are numbred in it 1200 Pariſhes, and three Biſhopricks. A ſtrong Argument of the populouſneſs and largeneſs of it. Beſides the goodneſs of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to ſay, a large Sea coaſt, ſome capacious Harbours, not a few Navigable Rivers emptying themſelves into the Sea: beſides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin* or *Clavius*, the *Creviſe*, and *Vienne*, their Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which alſo glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Poictiers*, in *Latine Pictavis*, ſeated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavius*; by *Ptolomy* called *Auguſtoritum*: the largeſt City for compaſs of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it ſelf, but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Cornfields, and other waſt Grounds. It is an Univerſity, eſpecially for the Study of the *Civil-Law*; and a See *Epiſcopal*: one of the Biſhops hereof being St. *Hilarie*, ſurnamed *Pictavenſis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a ſtout Champion of the *Catholick* Faith againſt the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Hereſie by the Emperor *Conſtantius*. 2. *Sauri*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3. *Talmont*, upon the ſhores of the Ocean. 4. *Beaumoir*, a Sea-Town alſo, and a reaſonable good Port, near the Confines of the *Bretague*. 5. *Roch-ſur-yon*, ſo called from its ſituation on the *Yon*, or *Ion*; which gave the Title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal Race of *Bourbon*. 6. *Luſignan*, on the River *Ion*; alſo denominating the noble Family of *Luſignan*, ſometimes Kings of *Hieruſalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which laſt they had in exchange for the firſt, by the donation of King *Richard* the firſt of *England*. 7. *Lucon*, or *Luſſon*, ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the Sea; ſufficiently famous in being the Epiſcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richilieu*, who ſo long managed the Affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8. *Maleſais*, a Biſhops See alſo. 9. *Thouars*, which gives the Title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremouile*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themſelves; from the time that *Conſtance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofry Plantaganet* her firſt Husband, had *Guy* of *Thouars* for her ſecond. 10. *Chaſtel Herauld*, (or *Caſtrum Heraldi*) on the River *Vienne*; of which *James Hamilton* Earl of *Arran*, in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, the better to aſſure him to the *French* Faction there, againſt the *Engliſh*, had the Title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Country, within two Leagues of *Poictiers*, was fought that memorable Battle between *John of France*, and *Edward* the Son of King *Edward* the third, ſurnamed the *Black Prince*; who being diſtreſſed by number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable Terms: which the *French* not accepting, inſtead of Conqueſt, found a fatal Overthrow. The greatneſs and particulars whereof, we ſhall hereafter ſee in the like of King *John*. For they preſuming on their own Strength, to their diſadvantage, bereft the Enemy of all opportunity of retiring; whereas ordinary Policy would inſtruct the leader of an Army, to make his Enemy, if he would fly, a Bridge of Gold, as Count *Potillan* uſed to ſay. Hereupon *Themiſtocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Helleſpont*, by *Xerxes*, leſt the *Perſians* ſhould be compelled to fight, and ſo happen to recover their former loſſes: and *Charles* the ſixth loſt his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth, in his march to *Calice*. For, where all way of Flight or Retreat is ſtopt, the baſeſt Soldier will rather dye with glory in the front of his Battle, than fly and be killed with ignominy. So true a Miſtreſs of hardy Reſolutions, is Diſpair, and no leſs true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil.* On the contrary, it hath been the uſe of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Soldiers fight more reſolutely, by taking from them all hope of ſafety, but by Battle. So did *William* the Conqueror, who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the Ships which tranſported his Army: thereby giving the Soldiers to underſtand, that their Lives lay in the ſtrength of their Arms, and courage of their Hearts; not in the nimbleneſs of their Heels. *Tariffe*, the Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewiſe all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reſerved to carry tidings of his Succeſs. So when *Charles Martel* encountred that infinite Hoſt of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the People of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the Banks thereof, certain Troops of Horſe-men, to kill all ſuch as fled out of the Field. Hereby informing his Men, that there was to them no more *France*, than what they fought on, unleſs they were Conquerors. In like manner, the ſame *Themiſtocles* cunningly working the *Perſians* to encloſe the *Greek* Navy on every ſide, enflamed the *Grecians* with ſuch courage, by a neceſſity of fight, that they gave their Enemies the moſt memorable defeat that ever happened on thoſe Seas.

But to proceed, the People of this Province have more in them of the old *Gaul*, than any in *France*; as lying ſo betwixt the borders of the *Goths* and *French*, that it was never throughly planted or poſſeſſed by either. An Argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, ſubtil, crafty, and contentious, than the reſt of their Country-men; and have a *Dialect* by themſelves, much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it, queſtionleſs ſome remainders of the ancient *Gallick*, which the natural *Frenchmen* underſtand not. In the diviſion of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda*; and, as a part thereof, won from the *Romans*, with *Linoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, by *Furicus* King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. Of whoſe Kingdom it continued part, till thoſe *Goths* were diſpoſſeſſed of their hold in *France*, by *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, ſurnamed the *Great*. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People; by the Poſterity of *Charles* the Great, aſſigned to ſome Provincial Governors, with the Title of *Earls*. One of which being named *Ebles*, (of the old *Gothiſh* Race, if I gueſs right) by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *William* the *Debonaire*, Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, ſucceeded in that fair Eſtate. *Poictou*, by this means, made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the laſt to the Kings of *England*, as ſhall there be ſhewn; and being theirs, was given with the Title of Earl, by King *Henry* the Second, to *Richard*, ſurnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French*, in that unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces, *Anno* 1202. *Alphonſo*, Brother to *Lewis* the Ninth, is made Earl of *Poictou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the Third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the Barons Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the Affairs of *Germany*, of which, by ſome of the Electors, he was choſen Emperor, it was fully conquered by the *French*; and never ſince diſmembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For, though in the more active Times of King *Edward* the Third, ſome of the beſt Towns and Pieces of it were poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; yet were they loſt again ſoon after, according to the various ſucceſſes and events of War.

12. *LIMOSIN*, 13. *PERIGORT*, 14. *QUERCU*.

THeſe Provinces I have joyned together, becauſe for the moſt part they have followed the ſame Fortune; being ſometimes *French*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, according to the ſucceſſes of either Nation.

1. *LIMOSIN*, the largeſt of the three, hath on the Eaſt, *Bourbonnois*; on the Weſt, *Perigort*; on the North and North-weſt, *Poictou*, and *Berry*; on the South *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limoſin*; and the *Lower* commonly called *La Marche*; both parts, but ſpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air; inhabited by a People of a more ſtaid and ſober nature than the reſt of the *French*, frugal in expence, and moderate in Diet; only ſo great devourers of Bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the *Lower Limoſin*, are, 1. *Lulles*, ſeated in a rough and hilly Country, a Biſhops-See. 2. *Uzarche*, ſeated amongſt the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent Current; with which ſo fortified on all ſides, that it is thought to be a very ſtrong and ſecure dwelling. 3. *Treniac*, 4. *Douſenac*, 5. *Belmont*, 6. *Meiſſac*, 7. *Brive le Guillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limoſin*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Limoges*, a Biſhop's See, the principal of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated by *Ptolomy*, called *Ratiaſtum*. A neat, but no large City; rich, populous, and inhabited by a People of ſo great an Induſtry, that they compel every one to Work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Priſon of Beggars*; ſeated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it, in 1371. when revolted, *Edward* the *Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diſtreſſed Citizens, till purſuing Enemies he ſaw three *French* Gentlemen make Head againſt his Army; the conſideration of whoſe Magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he avowed Revenge. 2. *Chaluz*, at the beſieging of which, our *Richard* the Firſt was ſlain by a Shot from an *Arbaliſt*; the uſe of which Warlike Engine, he firſt ſhewed to the *French*: Whereupon a *French* Poet made theſe Verſes on the Perſon of *Atropos*.

> *Hoc volo, non alia* Richardum *morte perire,*
> *Ut, qui* Francigenis *Baliſtæ primitùs uſum*
> *Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitùs experiatur:*
> *Quamq; aliis docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.*

> It is decreed, thus muſt great *Richard* die,
> As he that firſt did teach the *French* to dart
> An *Arbaliſt*; 'tis juſt he firſt ſhould trie
> The ſtrength, and taſte the fruits of his own Art.

The Man that ſhot him, was called *Bertram de Gurdon*; who being brought before the King, (for the King neglecting his Wounds, never gave over the Aſſault till he gained the place) boldly juſtified his Action, as done in the ſervice of his Country; and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had cauſed to be ſlain. Which heard, the King not only cauſed him to be ſet at liberty, but gave him an hundred Shillings *Sterling*, in reward of his Gallantry. 3. *Soubſterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4. *Confoulat*, 5. *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*, 6. *Boiſſon*, 7. *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2. *PERIGORT* hath on the Eaſt, *Auvergne* and *Quercu*; on the Weſt, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limoſin*; and on the South, ſome part of *Gaſcoigne*. The Country and People are much of the ſame condition with that of *Linoſin*; ſaving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and thoſe Woods plentiful of Cheſnuts. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Perigeux*, the principal City of the *Petrogorii*, by *Ptolomy* called *Veſſena*, now a Biſhop's See; ſome footſteps of which Name remain in a part of *Perigeux*, (for the Town, it is divided into two parts) which to this Day is called *Veſune*; in which ſtandeth the Cathedral Church, and the Biſhop's Palace. The whole City ſeated in a very pleaſant Valley, inviron'd with Downs, affording a moſt excellent Wine, and having in it, as a mark of the *Roman* Greatneſs, the ruins of a large and ſpacious *Amphitheater*, 2. *Bergerac*, ſeated on the great River *Dordonne*. 3. *Sarlat*, a Biſhop's See. 4. *Nontron*, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 5. *Miramont*, 6. *La Roche*. 7. *Marſac*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulſe of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8. *Angoleſme*, in the North-weſt, towards *Xaintoigne*, the Seat of the *Engoliſmenſes*, in the time of the *Romans*, now a Biſhop's See; ſeated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoſt encompaſſed: the other ſide being defended by a ſteep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance when poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; being one of their beſt Out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*; one of the Gates thereof being to this Day called *Chande*, ſeems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandois*, Banneret, one of the firſt Founders of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*; then recovered from the *Engliſh* by *Charles* the Fifth, it was beſtowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the Firſt, with the Title of an Earldom only, *An.* 408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the Perſon of the ſaid King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoining Country was laid unto it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 *French* Leagues in length: and 15 in breadth: within which circuit are the Towns of *Chaſteau-neif*, and *Coignat*, on the River of *Charente*. 3. *Roche Faulcon*, 4. *Chabannes*, 5. *Meriville*, 6. *Villeboir*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the Title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, *An.* 1618. the baſe Son of *Charles* the Ninth, conſequently extracted from the Houſe of *Angoleſme*.

3. *QUERCU*, or *Quercy*, is encompaſſed about with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*; a populous Country, for the bigneſs, (being one of the leaſt in all *France*) and very fruitful withal, though ſomewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1. *Cahors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci* in the times of the *Romans*; ſtill a great, ſtrong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporal* Lord of it; ſeated upon the River *Loch*. From hence deſcended and took Name the Noble Family of *Cawroth de Cadurcis*, in *Latin*: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Og-*

more and *Kidwelly*, in the Marches of *Wales*, married to *Henry* the Third, Earl of *Lancaſter*, come the Kings of *England*, and moſt of the Royal Houſes in *Europe*. 2. *Montalban*, a Biſhop's See alſo; built on the top of an high Mountain, and ſo well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the moſt defenſible of any in *France*: of which it gave ſufficient proof in that notable Reſiſtance which it made to King *Lewis* the Thirteenth, in his Wars againſt thoſe of the *Religion*, *Anno* 1622. 3. *Sonlac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4. *Nigrepelliſſe*, another of the Towns poſſeſſed by the Proteſtant Party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the Thirteenth, *Anno* 1621. but in *November* following, they murdered the King's Garriſon, and the next Year denied admiſſion to the King. Taken at laſt, *An.* 1622. by the King in Perſon: the Puniſhment did exceed the Crime. For, the Men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deſerved, but many of the Women alſo; ſome of them having their Secret Part rammed with Gun-powder, and ſo torn in pieces by the unpattern'd Barbariſm of the mercileſs and revengeful Soldiers. 5. *Chaſteau-Saraſin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Garond*. 6. *Nazaret*. 7. *Burette*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci* beforementioned; of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were caſt into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engoliſmenſes*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, ſeized on by the *Goths*; but from them ſpeedily extorted by the conquering *French*. Afterwards, when King *Henry* the Third of *England* releaſed his Right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Main*; *Lewis* IX to whom his Releaſe was made, gave him in ſatisfaction of all former Intereſſes, 300000 *l.* of *Anjorian* Money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limoſin*. And on the Capitulation made betwixt *Edward* the Third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Priſoner to him; *Perigort* and *Quercu* (among other Conditions) were conſigned over to the *Engliſh*, diſcharged of all *Reſort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times reſpectively, they remained all three in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, until their final expulſion by King *Charles* the Seventh, never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*.

15. *AQUITAIN.*

THE Dukedom of *AQUITAIN*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of all *France*, contained the Provinces of 1. *Xaintoigne*, 2. *Guienne*, 3. *Gaſcoigne*; with the Iſles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Iſlands in the *Aquitanick* or Weſtern Ocean.

XAINTOIGNE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Limoſin* and *Perigort*; on the Weſt with the *Aquitanick* Ocean; on the North with *Poictou*; and on the South with *Guienne*. So called from *Sainctes*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santones*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whoſe chief City it was. The River *Charente* running through the middle; and ſo on the North border of it, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, juſt oppoſite to the Iſle of *Oleron*; having firſt taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two leſſer Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Sainctes*; by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanium*; by *Antoninus Civitas Santonum*, ſeated upon the *Charente*; a Biſhop's See, and the Seneſchalſie for the County. 2. S. *John de Angelie*, ſituate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnably fortified; whereof it hath given ſufficient teſtimony in the *Civil Wars of France* about *Religion*, until the fatal time was come, in which the great Power of that Party was to be diſſolv'd; at what time, (*viz. Anno* 1621.) after a Siege of forty Days, it was taken by King *Lewis* the Thirteenth, the Fortifications demoliſhed, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards to be called by the Name of *Lewis Bourg*. *Bourg ſur la Mer*, upon the *Dordonne*; which, for the wideneſs of it, is here called a Sea. 4. *Retraicte*, ſeated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond* and the *Dordonne*. 5. *Blaye*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Garriſon for ſecuring the Paſſage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being ſeated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6. *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the preſent *Latin*; but anciently called *Santonum Porcus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santones*; a well-noted Port in the moſt Northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Country hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town ſeated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay; the entrance of which is well aſſured by two very ſtrong Forts, betwixt which there is no more ſpace than for the paſſage of a good Ship; every Night cloſed up with a maſſy Chain, and the whole Town either environed with deep Mariſhes, or fortified with ſuch Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Works of Modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the ſafeſt retreat for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*, in the time of their Troubles; as may be ſeen by the Story of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the ſecond Civil-War, *An.* 1568. many Towns conſidering how ill the former Peace had been obſerved, refuſed to take in any of the King's Garriſon, or permit any of the *Papiſts* to bear Arms amongſt them; of which *Rochel* was one; which alſo, contrary to the King's Command, maintained a Navy for their ſafety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre*, and her Son, retired, as to a place of ſafety, *An.* 1572. *Rochel* alone, of all the *French* Towns, held good for the *Ptoteſtants*, and is by Monſieur *Joinville* on all ſides blocked up; but the Siege ſoon raiſed, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Santerre*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace enſuing, *An.* 1575. beſieged by *Biron* the Elder, with an Army of 50000 Men, and 60 Pieces of Artillery: *Charles* the Ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the Duke of *Aumal*, &c. being alſo preſent at the Service: it held out from the beginning of *March* till the ſeventh of *June*, and was then freed, the City having in one Month endured 13000 Shot, and the King loſt 20000 Men, amongſt them, the Duke of *Aumal* for one. *An.* 75 and 78, it was attempted by *Landereau*, the Iſle of *Ree* taken, but ſoon recovered: the King of *Navarre* and Prince of *Conde*, after the defeat, being received in Triumph. *Anno* 1577. beſieged to Sea-ward by *Lanſca*; who being alſo beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former ſtrength. In the Troubles of 85, and 88, the Princes above-named made it their Retreat; and from thence iſſued to divert the Purpoſes of the Duke of *Mercoeur*. The next Year, *Henry* the Third being ſlain, and the King of *Navarre* ſeated in the Throne, the *Proteſtants* encreaſed exceedingly in Power and Number, and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the Thirteenth, govern'd themſelves a part as a *Free Eſtate*, *Rochel* being made the Head of their Common-wealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal *Baſtions* of Free-ſtone, with double Ditches, deep and broad in the bottom, abundantly furniſhed with Powder and Ammunition, 150 Pieces of Cannon, beſides Culverins and ſmaller Pieces, with Victuals, and all other neceſſaries to endure a Siege; and grown unto ſo great Wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or ſix-ſcore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns apiece. This drew upon them the great Wars in the Year 1621, and 1622. which ended in the loſs of their Garriſons, except *Rochel* and *Montalban*; thoſe to remain in pledge with the *Proteſtant Party*, but for three Years, on which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again beſieged both by Sea and Land, the Iſle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven ſo barred up with Ships chained together, and ſunk into it, and other Works of ſtupendious greatneſs, in the very Ocean, that no Foreign Succors out of *England*, (whoſoever really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their Relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious Siege, they yielded themſelves to the King's mercy, *An.* 1628. *Montalbon*, *Niſmes*, and other places newly fortified, ſubmitted at the ſame time alſo. 7. *Marans*, a great Town, and of great Importance, ſeated by the Ocean-Sea, in a low fenny place, as it were in a *Peninſula*, and ſo encompaſſed on every ſide with Mariſh watry grounds, that there is no acceſs to the Works thereof, but by very few, and thoſe narrow Paſſages. 8. *Chaſtillon*, and 9. *Saubize*, places of good ſtrength alſo, but of great note: the firſt for giving a ſurname to a Noble Family, out of which iſſued formerly the Earls of *Blois*, and of late times, *Gaſper de Colligni*, and *Monſieur D' Andalot*, his Brother; much mentioned in the Wars of *France* about *Religion*: the latter giving the Title of a Duke to a younger Son of the Houſe of *Rohan*; as great a ſtickler in that Cauſe, as thoſe Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the ſecond Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South with *Gaſcoigne*, on the Eaſt with *Perigort*, and on the Weſt with the *Aquitanick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* Hills, to the River of *Bourdeaux*. The reaſon of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old Name *Aquitain*; and very probably. The Country generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The People, as thoſe of *Xaintoigne* alſo, tall of Stature, of able Bodies, haters of Servitude and Baſeneſs, and well practiſed in Arms; which qualities of the Mind, and conſtitution of Body, (being therein ſo different from the reſt of *France*) it is poſſible enough they might have from the *Engliſh*, who for 300 years were poſſeſſed of the Country, and have left many tracts of their Language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province, are the *Garond* and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean; the Country betwixt theſe two Rivers, being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*; or, The Country betwixt the two Seas: the Rivers hereabouts reſembling a ſmall Sea in wideneſs. Of leſſer note are, 1. *Jearne*, 2. *Baize*, 3. *Lot*, and 4. *Liſſe*, falling into the *Garond* in their ſeveral places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Bourdeaux*, ſeated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongſt the Mariſhes. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who poſſeſſed this Tract; and for diſtinction's ſake, were called *Bituriges Ubiſci*; thoſe of *Bourges*, being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalonſium*, the *Metropolis* at that time of *Aquitania ſecunda*, conſequently, an Archbiſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. After a rich, and populous City, beautified with many good Buildings, an Univerſity founded here by King *Lewis* the 11*th*, and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoyning by King *Charles* the 7th, *An.* 1453, not long after the expulſion of the *Engliſh* thence; and is one of the moſt noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom; frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, for *Gaſcoigne* Wines: over which laſt the *French* are ſo jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordinance* at the Port of *Blaye*. This City in the year 1650, had ſome broils with the Court, which ended in a Siege, by which the City was reduced. The Country hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdelois*. 2. *Fronſac*, lying in the Country betwixt the two Seas, (as they call it) which gives the Title of a Duke to the Noble Family of the Earls of St. *Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronſac*, and to the Country round about, the name of *Fronſadaze*. 3. *Libouon*, at the confluence of the two great Rivers, oppoſite to *Retraicte* in *Xaintoigne*. 4. *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninſula*, or Demi-Iſland, called the Country of *Medoc*. 5. *Baionne*, a Sea-Town, and Epiſcopal See frontiering on the Coaſt of *Spain*. 6. S. *John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains; all about which the People ſpeak the *Baſquiſh*, or old *Gaſcoigne* Language, being the ſame with that of *Biſcay*. 7. *D' Acqs*, an Epiſcopal See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aquæ Auguſtæ*, (*Civitas Aquænſium*, by *Antonius*) from whence this part of *Gaul* had the name of *Aquitain*. Theſe three laſt, being all of them Frontier Towns, are ſtrongly fortified. 8. *Bazas*, (called *Coſſium* by *Ptolomy*) the chief City of the *Vaſates*, whom *Antonius* placeth in this Tract: now a Biſhops-See, ſituate on the borders of *Gaſcoigne*: in the Country from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of leſs note, 1. *Eſparrez*, 2. St. *Baſil*, 3. *Reule*, 4. *Chaſteau-Moron*, 5. *Monſeguer*, 6. *Saincterre*, &c. Here is alſo in this Province, the Country of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-Coaſt, from *Baionne* to *Medock*; a barren, poor, and wretched Country, the worſt piece of *France*; only remarkable for the Lords or Owners of it, formerly of the Houſe of *Foix*: of which the moſt remarkable were *Gaſtou de Foix*, for his many ſignal Services againſt the *French*, created Earl of *Kendal*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by the ſaid King *Henry*; but better known in *Engliſh* Stories, by the Name of *Capitol*, or *Capau de Buche*; the Lords hereof having no higher Title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largeſt part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the Eaſt, *Languedoc*; from which parted by the River *Garond*, on the Weſt, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*: on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and ſome part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main Tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Country generally fruitful, but of Wines eſpecially; brought hence to *Bourdeaux*, as the ſtaple for that Commodity, and thence tranſported into *England* in great abundance.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Auſcii*, *Lectoraces*, *Convenares*, *Conſerani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*, united in this name of *Gaſcoigne*, on the Conqueſt of it by the *Vaſeones*, a *Spaniſh* Nation, who fell in here during the Reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though ſubdued by *Clouis* the ſecond, Son of *Dagobert*; yet they left their Name unto the Country, divided afterwards according to the chief *Signeuries* and Eſtates thereof, into 1 the Principality of *Bearn*, 2. the Earldom of *Foix*, 3. *Comminges*, 4. *Begorre*, 5. *Armaignac*, 6. *Albert*, and 7. the Country of *Agenois*.

1. The *Principality* of *BEARNE*, is ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; ſo called from *Benearnum*, principal City of this Tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Country of good Paſturage, though amongſt the Mountains; affording plenty of Cattel, Butter, and in ſome places Wines alſo, little inferiour in Taſte and Colour, to the beſt of *France*; and many *Medicinal* Springs iſſuing from the Hills adjoyning.

The *Religion* here, as generally in all *Gaſcoigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*, introduced about the year 1560. or rather, then confirmed by publick Authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*, at what time the *Maſs*, *Tythes*, *Church-Lands*, and the *Prelates* Votes in *Parliament*; (according to the *Genevian* way of *Reformation*) were condemned together. And ſo it ſtood till the year 1620, when by the Power and Authority of *Lewis* the 13, King of *France* and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were reſtored to their *Votes* and *Lands*; the *Clergy* to their *Tythes*, and *Maſs* cauſed alſo to be ſaid in ſome of their Churches: yet ſo, that thoſe of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exerciſe of their own *Religion*, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Orthes*, the ſame which anciently was called *Benarnum*. 2. *Leſcar*, a Biſhop's See, the ancient Seat and Habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3. *Oleron*, a Biſhop's See alſo, mounted upon a high Hill in the more mountainous parts of the Country. 4. *Saincterra*, well garriſoned ſince the reduction of this Country to the King's Obedience. 5. *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Country; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Albert*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till the coming of *Henry* the Fourth to the Crown of *France*. 6. *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Country for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general diſmembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the abſolute Lords of it, acknowledging no ſuperior for ought I can find. The principal of which was that *Gaſton* (a Name very frequent in this Family) who in the Year 1118 accompanied with many Noble Perſons of *France*, aſſiſted *Alphonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon* at the Siege of *Saragoſſa*; in the courſe of which Action he did ſo good Service, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his Poſterity enjoying many Privileges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaſton*, married to *William de Moncada*, Seneſchal of *Catalogne*, and of great Poſſeſſions in that Country, the Lordſhip and Sovereignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family about the Year 1220. but long it did not tarry in it: For *William* being ſlain in the Conqueſt of the Iſle of *Majorca*, *An.* 1228. left his Eſtates to *Gaſton de Morcada* his eldeſt Son; who much increaſed them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly Pieces, accruing to him in the Right of his Wife *Martha*, Heir hereof, whereof more anon. Grown by this means to ſuch Authority and Eſteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without Iſſue Male) *Conſtance* his eldeſt Daughter was thought a Match of great advantage to *Alphonſo*, eldeſt Son of King *James* the Firſt. But dying without Iſſue by her, *Anno* 1260. the Sovereignty of *Bearn*, with all the Appendixes thereof both in *France* and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of *Foix*, (an Eſtate equal to it both in Power and Patrimony) by the Marriage of *Roger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who ſucceeded in that Earldom, *Anno* 1262. with *Margaret de Moncata*, another Daughter of this *Gaſton*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increaſed both in Power and Honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Comminges*, the Viſcounty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guienne*, to this Houſe of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the Marriage of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*, and Sovereign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, *Anno* 1481. deſcending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the Name of *Henry* the Fourth; but governed by him always as a *State diſtinct*, without relation or reſort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the Thirteenth his Son, finding ſome inconvenience in that diſtinction, incorporated it for ever to the reſt of his Dominions, *Anno* 1620. though not without ſome oppoſition from the Subjects of *Bearn*, which he was fain to over-bear by his Perſonal Preſence, and the advantage of ſuch Forces as he carried with him. Since reckon'd as a part of that Kingdom, awed, as the reſt of *France*, by Forts and Garriſons, and governed in Civil Matters by the Parliament eſtabliſhed at *Pau*: the Judges and Counſellors thereof at the King's appointing.

2. The Earldom of FOIX, ſituate on the Weſt of *Languedoc*, *Commingeois* interpoſing betwixt it and *Bearn*, Chief Towns hereof, are, 1. *Maſcroſs* on the *Garond*, a Biſhop's See. 2. *Parmieres*, a Biſhop's See alſo, ſeated on the River *Lagiere*. 3. *Foix*, on the ſame River, called in *Latin*, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxenſes*; the chief Seat of the *Fluſſates*, in the times of the *Romans*; now giving Name to all the Country. 4 *Mirande*, in the County of *Eſterac*, and the chief thereof; but otherwiſe of no great account. 5. *Savardum*, and 6. *Monbault*, two ſtrong Pieces. 7. *Mirepoix*, (*oppidum Miropenſe*) a Biſhop's See alſo, but of no note otherwiſe. The old Inhabitants of this Tract, beſides the *Fluſſates* above-mentioned, were called *Vaccei*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the Paſtures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, *Four Cows paſſant Gules*, horned and hoofed *Azure*, in a Field Or.

The firſt of theſe Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcaſſone*, advanced to this Honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, who had then the Sovereignty hereof, *Anno* 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increaſed by Marriage (no one Family more) many fair Lands in the Mariſhes of *Provence* being added to it by *Eſtmiette*, Wife of *Roger* the Second; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cecil* Daughter of Earl *Raimond*, Wife of *Roger* the Third; the Earldom of *Caſtelbon*, by *Brunicen* Wife of *Roger Bernard* the Firſt; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the Wife of *Gaſton* the Second. Beſides all which, in or about the Year 1262. *Roger Bernard*, the Ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Eſtate as before is ſaid; whoſe Grandchild *Iſabel* (the Male Iſſue failing) conveyed the whole Eſtate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaſton*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldeſt Son *John*, was for his many good Services to *Charles* the Seventh, made a Peer of *France*: and did not only purchaſe this Viſconty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was deſcended by *Mairguard*, Wife of *Roger Bernard* the Second; but by his Marriage with *Eleanor* or *Beanora*, Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his Houſe, though he enjoyed it not in his own Perſon. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of his Eſtate, his Family grew to ſo great Power and Reputation, that there were four Queens at one time deſcended from it, *viz.* *Catharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. Before which time (I mean the *Addition* of *Navarre* to their other Eſtates) the Earls of *Foix* were in ſo high eſteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendoſme*, though extracted from the Royal Blood, and lived in a condition equal to moſt Kings in Chriſtendom. In which regard, as alſo that the later Kings of *Navarre* and preſent Kings of *France*, are deſcended of them, it will not be amiſs to ſubjoyn here the Catalogue of

The Earls of Foix.

A. C.		
1062	1	*Bernard* the younger Son of *Roger* Earl of *Carcaſſon*, the firſt Earl of *Foix*.
1096	2	*Roger*, the Son of *Bernard*, an Adventurer in the firſt War for the *Holy Land*.
1111	3	*Roger* II. Son of *Roger* the Firſt.
1144	4	*Roger* III. Son of *Roger* the Second.
1188	5	*Raimond*, *Roger* Son of *Roger* the Third, a great Stickler for the Earls of *Tholouſe*, in favour of the *Albigenſes*, and their Opinions.
1223	6	*Roger Bernard*, the Inheritor of his Father's Opinions, as well as of his Eſtates and Fortunes.
1241	7	*Roger* IV. ſurnamed *Rotſer*, a Companion of the King S. *Lewis* in the *Holy Land*.
1255	8	*Roger Bernard* II. Son of *Rotſer*.
1262	9	*Roger Bernard* III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendixes unto his Eſtates.
1306	10	*Gaſton* the Son of *Roger Bernard* the Third, and of *Margaret de Moncade* the Heir of *Bearn*.
1315	11	*Gaſton* II. Son of *Gaſton* the Firſt, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a Friend to the King of *Aragon* againſt the *Moors*, in which Wars he was ſlain.
1344	12	*Gaſton* III. for his beauty ſurnamed *Phœbus*, inferior for Revenue and the Port he lived in, to few Kings in Chriſtendom.

1390

1390 13 *Matthew* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, Son of *Roger Bernard* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, the ſecond of *Gaſton* the Firſt; deſigned Succeſſor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whoſe eldeſt Daughter he had married, but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Duke of *Monlanc*.

1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Iſabel* Siſter and Heir of *Matthew* Earls of *Foix*.

1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Charles* the Seventh of *France*: his younger Brother *Gaſton*, as great a Friend unto the *Engliſh*, ſucceeding in the Eſtate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the ſecond Son of this *John*, deſcended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lautrech*, ſo renowned in the Wars of *Italy*.

1436 16 *Gaſton* IV. Son of *John*, a principal Agent in the Conqueſt of *Guienne* from the *Engliſh*; by his Marriage with *Eleanor*, Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his Houſe unto that Kingdom; Grandfather by *John* Viſcount of *Narbone* his ſecond Son to *Gaſton de Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, ſlain at the taking of *Ravenna*, *Anno* 1512.

1472 17 *Francis Phœbus*, Nephew of *Gaſton* the Fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre*, by their Son *Gaſton* Prince of *Viane*, ſucceeded his ſaid Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about ſeven Years after.

1483 18 *Catharine* the Siſter and Heir of *Francis*, by her married with *John* Earl of *Albert*, added that Earldom alſo to the Houſe of *Foix*.

1517 19 *Henry* of *Albert*, Son of *John* and *Catharine*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter to King *Francis* the Firſt, added the greateſt part of the Lands of *Armaignac* unto his Eſtate.

1556 20 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Sovereigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.

1572 21 *Henry* II. Son of *Joan* and *Antony*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the Third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Kingdom by the Name of *Henry* the Fourth, *Anno* 1589. the Father of *Lewis* the Thirteenth, and Grandfather of King *Lewis* the Fourteenth, now reigning, *An.* 1648.

And ſo having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France* it is time to leave them. The Arms of theſe great Earls we have ſeen before.

3. The Earldom of BEGORRE, *Bigorre* is ſituate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* Mountains; ſo called from the *Bigerrones*, the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious People of noiſome Breaths, deformed Bodies, and ghaſtly Viſages, in which regard not ſuffered to have any Commerce with other People, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themſelves to Drudgery, and the baſeſt of mechanick Trades. From their great miſhapen Heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Figneres*, famous for *Medicinal* Baths. 2. *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3. *Tarbe*, (*Antonine* called *Turſaubica*) ſeated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a ſtrong Caſtle, an Epiſcopal See, and the Seneſchalſie for all the County of *Begorre*. Which Country having for long time its own Proprietary Earls, under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or thoſe Kings from them; was at the laſt, by the Marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eſquibat* the laſt Earl, to *Baſan* Viſcount of *Marſan* and *Gabardan*, added to that Houſe. Whoſe Daughter *Matthee*, marrying to *Gaſton* Prince of *Bearn*, increaſed that Principality with thoſe goodly pieces of *Marſan*, *Gabardan*, and *Begorre*; all brought into the Houſe of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaſton*, married to *Roger-Bernard*, as before is ſaid.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*; by *Inigo Ariſta* the Son of *Simon*, Earl of this Country called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Croſs in chief, *Gules*; which Arms are ſaid to be took by *Gratia Ximines* the firſt King of *Navarre*, from ſuch a Sign appearing to him in the Sky, before his firſt Battel with the *Moors*.

4. The Earldom of COMMINGES lieth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eaſtward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher* and more mountainous part, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and the *Lower*, which hath ſomewhat more of the Valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenæ* and *Conſerani*. The principal places at preſent in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1. *Lombes*, a Biſhop's See, but of late erection. 2. *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3. *Samathan*. 4. *Lieſſe en Dordon*. And in the *Higher* there is, 1. *Conſerans*, once the chief Town of the *Conſerani*, now a Biſhop's See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Hills. 2. S. *Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Biſhop's See alſo, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3. S. *Beat*. 4. S. *Bregoa*, 5. *Moregeau*, or *Mons Regius*. 6. *Silliers*, &c.

Of the Eſtate of this Earldom I have little to ſay, but that it was united to the Houſe of *Foix*, by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaſton* the ſecond of that Name, and the eleventh Earl of this Houſe. Given afterwards notwithſtanding to a *Spaniard* called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by *Charles* the Seventh. But in the end reſtored again to the Houſe of *Foix*, by the Proweſs and great Services of *Gaſton* the Fourth, who cauſed his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngeſt Son of *Archembald* and *Iſabel* Earls of *Foix* to be ſetled in it, according to the Will and Purpoſe of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on *John* of *Leſcon*, a Baſtard of the Earl of *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the Marſhals of *France*, in the time of King *Lewis* the Eleventh. The Arms of theſe Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5. The Earldom of ARMAIGNAC, the greateſt of all theſe Eſtates conſidered ſeverally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and ſo extendeth it ſelf to the Banks of the River *Garond*. Principal Towns are, 1. *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Auguſta Auſciorum*; the Metropolis or Head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; by conſequence an Archbiſhop's See: The Revenues whereof are ſaid to be the greateſt of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no leſs than 40000 *l. per Annum*. 2. *Lectoure*, a Biſhop's See called of old *Leſtoratium*, in our modern *Latin Lectodurum*. A Town ſo well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a Siege of three Months againſt the Forces of *France*; but ſince it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, ſo ſtrengthened and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the Kingdom on this ſide, and their ſureſt Fortreſs againſt *Spain*. 3. *Liſle de Jourdain*, which hath the Title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the Fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, *An.* 1421. 4. *Auvillar*. 5. *Auzan*. 6. *Chaſtelneau*. 7. *Malbourquer*. 8. *Neſtes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*. *Sancho* the Great, having ſubdued ſome Lands in *Gaſcoigne*, which he conferred on *Graſias* a younger Son of his, with the Title of Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1014. On which Foundation it increaſed ſo faſt, both in Power and Honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof came to be Conſtable of *France*. And ſo did *John* the Fourth of that Name, by the favour of King *Charles* the Seventh; who alſo writ himſelf, *By the Grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the ſtile of Sovereign Princes. A Man of ſo conſiderable Power in theſe parts of *France*, that the Marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the Sixth, was thought the beſt means for eſtabliſhing his Eſtate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking of this Alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cauſe of the loſs of the King's Pieces in *France*. This Greatneſs made him ſubject to the Jealouſie of King *Lewis* the Eleventh, who worried him out of his Eſtate and his Life together. *Charles* (Brother of this *John*) ſucceeded by the favour of King *Charles* the Eighth. After whoſe Death the fair Eſtate was ſeized on to the uſe of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the Firſt to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*, (whoſe Grandfather had married with a Siſter of the ſaid Earl *John*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the ſaid King's Siſter, who, after the deceaſe of the Duke of *Alanſon*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*, her ſecond Husband; returning ſo to the *Original* from whence firſt it came.

The Arms of theſe great Princes, were quarterly 1. *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*, 2. *Gules*, a Leopard Lyon *Or*, the 3. *&c.*

6. The Earldom of *ALBERT* is ſituate on the Northweſt of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1. *Nerac*, ſeated on the River of *Raize*; the only place of ſtrength and moment in all this Eſtate. 2. *Chaſtell-Jalone*, well ſeated to diſturb the Trade betwixt *Bourdeaux* and *Gaſcoigne*, but not able to endure a Siege. 3. *Mont de Marſan*, and 4. *Tartas*, both ſeated on the River *Ladour*, and all four formerly Towns of Caution for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Country is ſo full, that the *Popiſh Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the ſmalleſt of the ſix, and of leaſt Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the reſt into it. For *John*, the Son of *Alan* Earl of *Albert*, by his Marriage with *Catharine*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Gaſton*, Son of *Gaſton* of *Foix*, and of *Leanora* Princes of *Navarre*, added to his Eſtate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albert* his Son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of King *Francis* the Firſt, united to it thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Jean* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Eſtate was brought to *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and Father to King *Henry* the Fourth becoming ſo united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at firſt diſmembred.

The Arms of theſe Earls were Quarterly, 1. *France*; 2. *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The 3. *&c.*

7. As for the Country of *AGENOIS*, the laſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, it never had other Hearts (after it left off to be *French*) than the Dukes of *Aquitain*. The principal Cities of it, 1. *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, ſeated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country; a Biſhops See, a Seneſchalſie, and held to be the faireſt in *Gaſcoigne*. 2. *Condon*, a Biſhop's See alſo, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condonnois*. 3. *Villenufine*. 4. *Claerac*. 5. *Marman*. 6. *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of thoſe ſeveral Members which make up the great Body of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; let us next look on the Eſtate of the whole thus brought together; which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Goths*, before poſſeſſed of all *Gallia Narbonenſis*, by *Valentinian* the Third, as a reward for their Service driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of them by *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his Succeſſors till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngeſt Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Son of this *Pepin*, being diſpoſſeſſed by *Charles the Bald*, it was by him conferred on *Ranulph*, of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, for his many good Services againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 844. Whoſe Succeſſor take here in this order following.

The Dukes of Aquitain.

844	1	*Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, firſt Duke of *Aquitain*.
875	2	*William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.
902	3	*Ebles*, Earl of *Poictou*, ſucceeded in *Aquitain*, and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Teſtament of Duke *William*.
911	4	*Ebles* II. Son of *Ebles* the Firſt.
935	5	*William* II. the Son of *Ebles* the Second.
970	6	*William* III. Son of *William* the Second.
1019	7	*Guy*, the Son of *William* the Third.
1021	8	*William* IV. Son of *Guy*.
1086	9	*William* V. Son of *William* the Fourth.
1156	10	*Lewis* the Seventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, ſole Heir of *William* the Fifth.
1152	11	*Henry* Duke of *Normandy*, and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of ſome conſanguinity, after King of *England*.
1169	12	*Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry*.
1199	13	*John*, King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*,

who forfeiting his Eſtates in *France*, on a judicial Sentence pronounced againſt him for the (ſuppoſed) murder of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitain* and the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces were ſeized on by the *French*, *Anno* 1202. But notwithſtanding this Arreſt, the *Engliſh* ſtill continued their Pretentions to it, till at laſt it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, and *Henry* the Third of *England*, *An.* 1259. that the *Engliſh* ſhould reſt ſatisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein alſo the Country of *Limoſin*; and that on his Inveſtiture into this Eſtate, he ſhould relinquiſh all his Rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Maine*, &c. In conſideration whereof he ſhould have 50000 Crowns in ready Money. On this accord, the Kings of *England* became Homagers to the Crown of *France*, which ſometimes they omitted, ſometimes did it by Proxy, but never in Perſon, till *Philip de Valois* required it of King *Edward* the Third: and becauſe ſuch Duties are not often perſonally done by Sovereign Princes, *Du Serres* ſhall deſcribe the formality of it. The place deſigned for this Exploit was the Church of *Amiens*, “to which *Edward* came (ſaith he) with “ſuch a Train, as was intended rather to the Honour of “himſelf than the *French* King. Royally attired he was, “with a long Robe of Crimſon Velvet, powdred with “*Leopards* of Gold, his Crown upon his Head, his Sword “by his ſide, and golden Spurs upon his Heels. *Philip* “attended by the chief Officers of the Realm, ſat upon “his Throne, apparelled in a long Robe of Purple Velvet, “powdered with *Flower de Luces* of Gold; his Crown “upon his Head, and the Scepter in his Hand. Viſcount “*Melum*, the great Chamberlain of *France*, commanded “*Edward* to take off his Crown, Sword, and Spurs, and “to kneel down; which he did accordingly. Then taking both his Hands, and joining them together, he ſaid “unto him; *You become a* Liege-man *to the King my Maſter, who is here preſent, as Duke of* Guienne, *and Peer of* “France, *and promiſe to be faithful and loyal to him; ſay* “*Yea:* and *Edward* ſaid *Yea*, and roſe. But the Hiſtorian notes withal, that *Philip* paid yearly for this Pageant, the young King never forgeting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made *France* a field of Blood. And here it is to be obſerved, that though the Kings of *England* by this new Inveſtiture, were entituled Dukes of *Guienne* only, yet they had all the Power and Privileges of Dukes of *Aquitain*, excepting the Homage of the great Lords and Earls of *Gaſcoigne*, which formerly belonged unto them. Inſomuch as *Richard* the Second, though Duke of *Guienne* only in Style and Title, inveſted his Uncle *John* of *Gaunt* in that brave Eſtate, under the Style and Title of Duke of *Aquitain*; ſummoned to Parliament by that Name by the ſaid King *Richard*. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the *Engliſh* had poſſeſſion of the Dukedom of *Guienne*, according to the order of their Succeſſion, from the fortieth of King *Henry* the Third, *Anno* 1259. to the Twenty Ninth of King *Henry* the Sixth, *An.* 1452. (the intercalation of *John* of *Gaunt* excepted only:) when outed of all their old Rights in *France*, rather by the good Fortune, than by the Valour of *Charles* the Seventh; the *Engliſh* then, divided in Domeſtick Factions, and not at leiſure to look after the Affairs of *France*. Nor do I find, that *Guienne* being thus recovered, was ever diſmembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the Eleventh aſſigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joining with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundy* in a new Confederacy; who held it but two Years, and died the laſt Duke of *Guienne*, *An.* 1427.

The Arms of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon *Or*, which joined to the two Lyons of *Normandy*, make the Arms of *England*.

16. LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenæan* Hills, the Land of *Rouſillon*, and the *Mediterranean* on the the South; and on the North, with *Foreſt*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; on the Eaſt, with *Provence* and *Daulphine*; on the Weſt, with *Gaſcoigne*. Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation ſay *Ouy*, theſe of this Country ſay *Oc*; and therefore *Oraclius* conjectures it was call'd *Langue d' oc*. But others think that it took denomination from the *Goths*, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a ſmack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphoniæ gratia*, termed *Langedotia* or *Langedoc*, that is to ſay, the Country which retaineth the *Gothick* Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by *Paulus Æmilius*, promiſcuouſly called *Gothicana* and *Ottilana*; and in relation to the reſt, the People hereof in one of *Calvin*'s Epiſtles, are given unto us by the Name of *Populus Linguæ Ottilanæ*.

The Country on thoſe parts which lie next to *Auvergne*, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful, in all the reſt as rich and pleaſant as the beſt Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of Olives, Raiſons, Figs, Oranges, and other Fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring Province; in that participating the Commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The People have ſomewhat in them of the ancient *Goths*, and draw nearer to the Temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very Devout, great vaunters of themſelves, affecting Bravery above their Condition and Eſtates; not caring how they pinch it on the working Days, or at home in private, ſo they may flaunt it in the Street, and be fine on Holy-Days; The humour alſo of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this Province, are 1. *Aurance*, 2. *Lieraw*, and 3. *Orbe*, emptying themſelves into the *Rhoſne*; and *Alby*, which diſburdeneth it ſelf into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Niſmes* (in *Latin*, *Nemauſium*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Biſhop's See; where there remain ſome marks of the *Roman* Greatneſs, eſpecially the ruins of a ſpacious Palace built by the Emperor *Adrian*. 2. *Mont-pelier* (in *Latin*, *Mons Peſſulanus*) ſituate on a high Mountain, as the Name imports, ſome twelve Miles diſtant from the Sea, an Univerſity for the Study of *Phyſick*, and for that very happily ſeated, the Country round about affording great variety of medicinal Herbs. An Earldom of it ſelf in the former times, conveyed by *Mary*, Daughter of *William* the laſt Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her Husband; next, made a Member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*; and finally by *James*, the laſt King of *Majorca*, ſold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the ſtrongeſt Holds which thoſe of the *Reformed Religion* had in this Country; and memorable for the notable reſiſtance which it made againſt the whole Forces of *Lewis* XIII. in the laſt Civil Wars about Religion. 3. *Aleth*, and 4. *Carcaſſonne*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſeated on the River *Aude*; the People of both ſpeaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of ſome *Spaniſh*: Which intermixture of *Spaniſh*, with that broken *French*, they either have originally from the *Goths* of *Spain*, of whoſe Kingdom this was once a part; or from their long ſubjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair Eſtates in this part of *France*, by the Marriage of *Raymond Borenger* the ſeventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of ſome of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the Year 1040. And to theſe Towns, as alſo unto thoſe of *Niſmes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had loſt the poſſeſſion of them) as thoſe of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual Releaſes made on both ſides of each others Claims, by *James* the Firſt of *Aragon*, and the King S. *Lewis*, *An.* 1260. or thereabouts. 5. *Alby*, commodiouſly ſeated on the River ſo called, the *Civitas Albigenſium* of *Antonius*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence, *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkable in Church-Hiſtory for thoſe great Oppoſitions to the Corruptions and Errors of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenſes*. 6. *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betiræ* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Beterraſium* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colony of old, now a Biſhop's See. 7. *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient Writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the Year 450. and for a well frequented Port at the mouth of the River *Egbaud*. 8. *Narbon*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phocenſes*, and the firſt *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it ſelf (to obſerve ſo much by the way) were no leſs than 150 Colonies, 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, 4 in *England* only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries ſome, but very few in reſpect of the largeneſs of the Territories. Theſe Colonies were inſtituted partly to repreſs Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to reſiſt a Foreign Enemy, partly to reward the ancient Soldiers, partly to relieve the poorer ſort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the ſuperfluity and redundance of her People. Now if the Queſtion be ask'd, whether a *Colony* or *Fortreſs* be more behoveful, I anſwered with *Boterus*, in his *Raggio de ſtato*, that a Fortreſs is more fit for ſudden uſe, and a Colony for continuance; the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as ſoon loſt; the other require ſome time of ſettling, and are after of a good ſufficiency to defend themſelves. As we ſee in our times, the *Spaniſh* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tangier* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the laſt Town we loſt on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the Infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the moſt populous and greateſt Town of all *France*; inſomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonenſis*. A Province of which *Pliny* delivered us this cenſure; Narbonenſis Gallia *agrorum cultu, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli Provinciarum poſtponenda; diciturque Italia potius quàm Provincia*; that is to ſay, that for fruitfulneſs of the Soil, and the civility of the People, it was inferior to no Province in the *Roman* Empire. But to return unto the Town, being anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, it had withal the honour of being an Archbiſhop's See, which it ſtill continueth; well fortified at the preſent as a Town of War [illegible] the Land of *Rouſillon*. 9. *Le Puy*, the See of a Biſhop, who in *Latin* is called *Podienſis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc.* which is named *Velay*, the ancient Seat of the *Velauni.* 10. *Viviers*, on the River *Rhoſne*, (by *Pliny* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoining hath the Name of *Vivarets.* 11. *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Biſhop's See; from whence the Country round about hath the Name of *Rouvergn*; though ſome account this *Rouvergn*, a diſtinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc.* 12. *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectoſages* and the *Toloſates*, placed by old Writers in this Tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greateſt in all *France.* The Seat of an Archbiſhop, and an Univerſity; ſo ancient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael.* Here was a Parliamentary Court erected for the adminiſtration of Juſtice in theſe Parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Soldiers having ſtole Sacrilegiouſly ſome Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Conſul) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends. Hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applied unto unhappy Men.

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are large and ſpacious Fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the Name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which Fields, *Anno* 435. was fought that terrible Battel between *Attilla*, King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*; *Ætius* was ſtrengthened by the *Goths*, *Franks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans.* *Attilla*'s Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that Day loſt their Lives; *Attilla* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a Funeral Pile of *Horſe Saddles*, he would have burned himſelf. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Ætius* politickly fearing, that if *Attilla* were quite deſtroyed, the *Goths*, *Franks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too inſolent, gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*; which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei.* *Ætius*, notwithſtanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian*, the Emperor of the Weſt, rewarded with the loſs of his Head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right Hand with his left.* And indeed ſo it happen'd: For not long after he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champagne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious Men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three Reaſons. *Firſt*, The improbability that *Ætius* having got the Victory, ſhould ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France*, from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Country, to break into *Italy.* And *ſecondly*, the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, firſt, that before this Fight, *Attilla* had beſieged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the Fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Toriſmund* the King of the *Goths*, (his Father *Theodorick* being ſlain) *in Campis Catalaunicis, ubi & pugnaverat, Regia Majeſtate ſubvectus Tholoſam ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in thoſe very Fields, entred with great ſtate and triumph into *Tholouſe*, the regal City at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of Battel to be near this City; though poſſibly by the Name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Country of *Languedoc.*

The old Inhabitants of this Country beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vellauni*, the *Tectoſages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembred, were the *Agatenſes*, *Beterenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcæ*, and the *Arecomici*; all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon.* In the falling of the *Roman* Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, and ſome part of *Spain*, to *Atholphus* King of the *Goths*, whom *Honorius* by this Gift, and by beſtowing on him his Siſter *Placida*, bought out of *Italy.* The *Goths* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their Bounds by taking in the moſt part of *Aquitain*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*, but forced to quit them to the *French*, who conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their firſt Donation. After this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; loſing *Provence* to *Theodorick*, King of the *Oſtro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; whoſe Succeſſor *Amalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her Intereſt in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the *French* King of *Mets.* Nothing now left unto the *Goths* of their *Gallick* Purchaſes, but this *Languedoc* only; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the Great given to one *Thurſin*, of the Race of the ancient Kings, with the Title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be *Chriſtened.* But long it continued not in his Race, nor in any other; not being ſetled in a way of Lineal Deſcent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of St. *Giles* (a Town of *Guienne*) whoſe Grandchild *Hugh*, being an Adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting Money to provide himſelf for that Expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of St. *Giles* before-mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of St. *Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that Name frequently remembred in the *Eaſtern Stories*; as for his great Valour in the courſe of the Holy Wars, eſpecially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Chriſtian) with the Title of Earl. This *Raymond*, worthily named the Great, Earl of *Tholouſe*, St. *Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three Sons, all of them ſucceeding; of which the eldeſt was *Bertrand*, had a baſe Son called *Ponce*, who ſucceeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grandfather of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both ſuſpected to be falſe to the Chriſtian Princes in the continuance of thoſe Wars. *Alphonſo* the third Son was alſo the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great Maintainer of the *Albigenſes*; and in purſuance of that Cauſe murdered a Legate of the Pope, ſent to Excommunicate him, and ſtrangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his Opinions. For this cauſe warred upon, and vanquiſhed by *Simon de Montfort*, Father of *Simon de Montfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*; and after many Troubles and continual Wars, left his Eſtate and Quarrel to his Son, named alſo *Raymond*, the laſt Earl of this Houſe; who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a Heretick, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French* Kings, *Philip* the Second, *Lewis* the Eighth, and St. *Lewis.* This laſt willing to make a peaceable Compoſition, married his Brother *Alphonſo* to *Jane*, Daughter and Heir to Count *Raymond*, with this Condition, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without Iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raymond* agreed, the Marriage was ſolemnized, *An.* 1249. They both died without Iſſue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the Days of *Philip* the Third.

The Names and Succeſſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were Peers of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt part Men of Action, take in order thus.

The Earls of Tholouſe.

An. Chr.		
779	1	*Thurſin* the firſt Earl of *Tholouſe*.
803	2	*William* made Earl by *Charlemagne*, Peer of *France* at the firſt foundation of that Order.
828	3	*Iſauret Thurſin*, Son of *Thurſin* the firſt Earl.
841	4	*Bertrand*, Son of *Iſauret Thurſin*.
894	5	*William* II. of ſome other Houſe.
919	6	*Ponce*, a great *Juſticiar*, but of unknown Race.
963	7	*Almaric*, of as obſcure Parentage as *Ponce*.
1003	8	*Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of St. *Giles*, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
1052	9	*William* III. Duke of *Aquitain*, ſucceeded in right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
1086	10	*Hugh Aymon*, Son of *William* the Third, ſold his Eſtate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
1096	11	*Raymond* II. Earl of St. *Giles*, *Tholouſe*, and *Tripoli*; of great note in the War of the *Holy Land*.
	12	*Bertrand*, Son of *Raymond* the Great.
	13	*William* IV. Brother of *Bertrand*.
1101	14	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *William* the Fourth.
1146	15	*Raymond* III. Son of *Alphonſo*.
1185	16	*Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the Third, the great Patron of the *Albigenſes*.
1222	17	*Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the Fourth, vanquiſhed and compounded with, by King *Lewis* the Saint.
1249	18	*Alphonſo* II. Brother of St. *Lewis*, and Huſband of *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of the laſt *Raymond*: after whoſe Death, and the deceaſe of *Joan* the Counteſs, *An.* 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of *France*; according to the Capitulations before-mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Croſs *Pommelè*, of 12 Points, *Or*.

17. *PROVENCE.*

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the Weſt; *Daulphine* on the North; the *Mediterranean* on the South; and on the Eaſt with the *Alps*, and the River *Varus*, which divide it from *Piemont*, the neareſt of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, 44 *French* Leagues from North to South 32 in Circuit, 158. as *Honorate de Bouche* has ſhewn in a very exact deſcription of it lately publiſhed.

It took this Name from the *Romans*, who being called in by the *Maſſilians*, to revenge a private Wrong done them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, wholly poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, calling it, κατ' ἐξοχὴν, *The Provence*. The Country being now divided between ſeveral Princes, we muſt neceſſarily premiſe ſo much of the Story of it as ſerves to ſhew the time and grounds of that diviſion. In order whereunto we are firſt to know, that it long continued part of the *Roman* Empire, making up the whole Province of *Narbonenſis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritimæ*. How it was given unto the *Viſigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and from them taken by the *Oſtrogoths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, hath been ſhewn in *Languedoc*. Being reſigned unto the *French*, it became a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. Made a diſtinct Eſtate in the Perſon of *Hugh de Arles*, (who afterwards ſucceeded in the Kingdom alſo) by *Boſon* the Firſt, elected *Octob.* 15. 87[illegible] And by this *Hugh de Arles*, upon his reſignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, given unto *William* his Son, with the Stile and Title of Earl of *Provence*; confirmed therein by the Emperor *Conrade* the Second, on whom the Rights of that Kingdom had been tranſſerred; to be held of him and his Succeſſors in the Empire. In his Poſterity it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of *Barcelone*, by the Marriage of the Lady *Doulce* with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, *Anno* 1032. carried, together with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*; and finally by *Beatrix* one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the Third, the laſt Earl of this Family, conveyed in Marriage to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, *An.* 1262. whom *Urban* the Fourth, not long after, Crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the Firſt, the fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and reſtored again by the Power of Pope *Clement* the Fifth; the City and Territory of *Avignon* (where the Pope reſided at that time) is diſmembred from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompence that favour, and partly for diſcharge of ſome old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome*, for the Realm of *Naples*. A City which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that Title in the actual Poſſeſſion of many of the Popes of *Rome*, ever ſince the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, to whom it formerly belonged, but held by them in Fee of the Earls of *Provence*. Not long after this Donation, the ſaid *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Succeſſor, *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*: poſſeſſed by this Adoption of the Earldom of *Provence*, and a Title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no Iſſue-Male ſurviving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, the Prince of *Orange* (another Signeury in this Country:) and gave him therewithal full Power to make Laws, coin Money, and pardon all Crimes; to write himſelf *Prince of Orange, by the Grace of God*, with all the other Prerogatives of an abſolute Prince. This was in the Year 1415. So that now the Country ſtands divided betwixt the *French* King, the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them abſolute and independent in his own Eſtate: as long at leaſt as the *French* King is pleaſed to give way unto it.

The whole is much of the ſame nature with *Languedoc*, before deſcribed, but in one part thereof, that namely between *Marſeilles* and *Arles*, different from all the reſt of *France*. By the *French* commonly called *La Croix*: by the elder Writers, *Campi lapidei*, becauſe all in a manner overſpread with ſcattered Stones; ſuppoſe by *Mela* to be the place in which *Hercules* encountred *Albion* and *Bergeon* the Sons of *Neptune*; whom when he could not otherwiſe vanquiſh, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided with a ſhower of Stones; of which theſe were feigned to be the Remainders. A Country which takes up a good ſpace of Ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it, but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of ſpecial note are, 1. *Aix*, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonenſis ſecunda*, and at that time called *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from *Sextius* the Founder of it (by whom the *Salii* were ſubdued in the ſecond Year of that War) and the hot Baths here. Now, and of long time, an Archbiſhop's See, and the chief City of this Province: and for that reaſon made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Country, *Anno* 1501. Moſt memorable in old Story for the great diſcomfiture of the *Cimbri* by C. *Marius*, who not willing to venture on the Enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000 fighting Men) and lately fleſhed in the Overthrow of *Manlius* and *Sepio*, two *Roman* Conſuls; permitted them quietly to paſs by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imputed it to fear or cowardiſe, ſcornfully asking his Soldiers, What ſervice they would command them to *Rome*. But when, for their eaſier paſſage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themſelves into three Companies; *Marius* ſeverally ſetting on them all, put them all to the Sword. *Ea victoria viſus meruiſſe, ne ejus nati Rempub. pœniteret*, By this Victory, and this only, giving cauſe to the *Romans* (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be ſorry for his Birth. 2. *Arles* in *Latin*, *Arelatum*, by *Auſonius* called the *Rome* of *France*, and in thoſe times ſo highly prized, that *Conſtantinus Flavius* being choſen Emperor by the *Britiſh* Legions, in the declining times of the Weſtern Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not leſs memorable in Church Story for a Council here held in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, *Anno* 313. in which was preſent *Reſtitutus* the Biſhop of *London*, and certain other Biſhops of the *Britiſh* Church. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and now the See of an Archbiſhop ; ſituate on the River *Rhoſne*, in a low and marſhy ſituation ; which natural Strength, ſeconded by the new Works of King *Henry* the Fourth, have made it one of the beſt Bulwarks of *France*, on that ſide of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat-Royal of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, who from thence were called Kings of *Arles* ; as the Kings of *Auſtracia* or (*Eaſt-France*) were called Kings of *Mets*, becauſe they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other ſide of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite Charge and Induſtry, by C. *Marius*, for conveyance of Victuals into his Camp, in his War againſt the *Cimbri* before-named ; by *Ptolomy* called *Foſſæ Marianæ*, by the *French*, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius* : the Country about which called alſo by the ſame Name for the ſpace of 24 Miles, is of excellent Paſturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horſes ; the chief Town of which is called, 3. St. *Gillis*, 4. *Marſeilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, firſt built by the *Phocenſes*, a *Greek* Nation of *Aſia Minor*, who being baniſhed their Country, came and planted here, about the Reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the laſt King of *Rome*. It was firſt only a Confederate City of the *Romans*, for whoſe ſake, being moleſted by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the *Roman* Legions firſt entred *Gaul* ; afterwards, ſiding with *Pompey* in the Civil Wars, or at leaſt deſirous to ſtand neutral, it was forced by *Cæſar*, and made a Colony. In the proſperity hereof it drove a great Trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the Mother of many fair and flouriſhing Colonies, *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicæa*, *Olbia*, diſperſed in the adjoining Shores of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. 5. *Glandeves*, anciently called *Glanum*, a Biſhop's See, ſeated upon the *Maritime Alpes*. 6. *Taulon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tauroentium*, and by ſome *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well ſtored with Oil, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Iſle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off ; and a kind of Almonds called *Province Almonds* ; made by this means one of the moſt frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7. *Antibi*, (in *Latin*, *Antipolis*) a Sea-coaſt Town near the River *Varo*, one of the fartheſt of this Country towards *Italy*. 8. *Feriols* (the *Forum Julium* of the Ancients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Maſſilians*, as before was ſaid, after a Colony of the *Romans*. 9. *La Grace*, a Biſhop's See, more within the Continent. 10. *Ciſteron*, on the Borders of *Daulphine*. 11. *Brignols*. 12. *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongſt the Mountains, towards *Daulphine* ; not otherwiſe of note, but for the horrid Maſſacre of the *Proteſtants*, before deſcribed.

II. The *Principality of* Orange lieth on the North-Weſt of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Durance*, 2. *Seile*, 3. *Meine*, and 4. *Ecque* ; all helping to augment the *Rhoſne*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Orange*, ſeated on the *Meine*, an Epiſcopal See ; famous for many rare and wonderful Antiquities, demonſtrating the *Roman* Greatneſs, of whom once a Colony ; but of moſt note in the Church-Hiſtory for a Council held there againſt the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the Year 444. called *Arauſicanum* ; the *Latin* Name of this City became anciently *Arauſia*, in ſome Writers *Auriacus*, and of late *Aurangia*. This City is a Biſhop's See, under the Archbiſhop of *Arles*, and had anciently a very ſtrong Caſtle, which in the Year 1660. was deſtroyed by *Lewis* XIV. now King of *France*. 2. *Eſtrang*. 3. *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly, St. *Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Venſienſium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwiſe memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Bauſſii*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold*, the laſt of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons*, one of the moſt Noble Houſes of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* the Son of this *John*, obtained of *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, the Sovereignty hereof, as before was ſaid. By *Claude* the Heir-general of this Houſe, beſtowed in Marriage by King *Francis* I. on Count *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Ambaſſador from *Maximilian* the Emperor of *Germany*, *Anno* 1514. It was tranſlated to that Family, where it ſtill remaineth.

The Princes of Orange.

1475 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, firſt abſolute Prince of *Orange*.

2 *William de Chalons*, who ſubmitted his Eſtate to the Parliament of *Daulphine*, to ſatisfie King *Lewis* XI. by whom reſtored again to his former Sovereignty.

3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter Enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the Rights of *Mary* Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*.

1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, ſlain at the Siege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the Fifth, *Claude* his only Siſter, and next Heir of that Houſe, being married to *Henry* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *Anno* 1515.

1536 5 *Rene* of *Naſſaw*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he ſucceeded in this Eſtate ; ſlain at the Siege of *Landrecie* in the *Netherlands*.

1544 6 *William* of *Naſſaw*, Couſin-german of *Rene*, by whoſe laſt Teſtament left Heir unto his Eſtates ; the great Patron and Aſſertor of the *Belgick Liberties*, againſt the *Spaniard* ; ſlain by a Partiſan of *Spain*, called *Belthazar*, at *Delfe* in *Holland*, *Anno* 1584.

1584 7 *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, kept as an Hoſtage all his Life by the King of *Spain*.

8 *Maurice* of *Naſſaw*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the *United Provinces*.

1625 9 *Henry* of *Naſſaw* II. Succeſſor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Eſtates, and Honours.

1648 10 *William* of *Naſſaw* II. the Son and Succeſſor of *Henry*, married to Princeſs *Mary*, eldeſt Daughter of *Charles* King of *Great Britain*, &c. on *May*-Day, 1641.

1650 11 *William* of *Naſſaw* III. was born the 14*th* of *November*, 1650. nine Days after the Death of his Father. And the firſt of *November*, 1677. married the Lady *Mary*, eldeſt Daughter of *James* II. King of *England*.

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2. *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, ſtringed *Gules* ; the third as, *&c.* Over all, an Eſcotcheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus ; Quarterly *Chalons*, and *Aurange*, under an Eſcotcheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lieth the Country of *VENASCINE*, as the *French* call it ; *Commitatus Veniſſinus*, in the *Latin* ; ſo called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had Lords of its own, called Earls of *Venice*, (*Veniſſa Comites* in the *Latin*) united to the Houſe of *Savoy*, by the marriage of *Laurentia*, a

Daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the Second, *Anno* 1080. or thereabouts. But this Family of the firſt Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what Right, I find not) to the Earls of *Tholouſe*, but held by them as Homagers (for this Eſtate) for the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Hereſie, brought under the Protection and Patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more abſolute Sovereignty hereof, and of the City *Avignon*, being ſetled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is ſaid. The principal Cities of this Tract, are, 1. *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*; a very fair and flouriſhing City, pleaſantly ſeated on both ſides of the River of *Rhoſne*; famous for being the Reſidence of the Popes for Seventy Years; which times the *Romans* remember till this Day, by the Name of the *Babylonian Captivity*; adminiſtring, ever ſince, an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The firſt Pope that removed hither, was *Clement* V. *An.* 1300. when as yet the Popes had no more right in it, than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory* XI. *An.* 1377. In this City are ſaid to be ſeven Palaces, ſeven Pariſh-Churches, ſeven Monaſteries, ſeven Nunneries, ſeven Inns, and ſeven Gates. So that if there be any Myſtery in the Number of Seven, or any credit to be given to ſuch *Pythagorean* Divinity, the Archbiſhop of this City may as well be entituled Antichriſt as the Pope of *Rome*, if there be nothing but the myſtery of this Number to affix it to him. It was made an Univerſity at the time of the Popes firſt ſetling here; and ſo ſtill continueth: *Alciac* the great Emblematiſt, being here Profeſſor. 2. *Carpentras*, by *Ptolomy* called *Carpentoracte*, a Biſhop's See: as is alſo, 3. *Cavillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a *Roman* Colony on the River *Durance*: and 4. *Taraſcon*, on the *Rhoſne*, oppoſite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedoc*; for the Popes dwelling here ſo long, could not be otherwiſe attended than by Mitred Prelates. 5. *Vaſon*, *Civitas Vaſionenſium*, of *Antoninus*.

The Revenues of the Popes here are not very great, and thoſe expended all in keeping of Ports and Garriſons, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the Proteſtants of *Orange*: So that it is ſuppoſed, that it is rather a Charge, than a Profit to him; which maketh the People like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more Money to them, than he gathereth from them.

The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Venice*, were *Gules*, two Keys in Saltire *Or*, ſtringed *Azure*. Which ſeems to have in it ſome preſage, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it ſhould one Day become ſubject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maſſilienſes*, *Vaſionenſes*, and *Venſieuces*, before-mentioned; beſides the *Deceates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*, and *Sigeſtorij*, about *Ciſteron*; all conquered by the *Romans* in their firſt War in *Gaul*, called in to aid thoſe of *Marſeilles* againſt the *Salii*. The Fortune of it ſince hath been ſhewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

The Earls of Provence.

1 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Auſtracia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine; made the firſt Earl of *Provence*, by *Boſon* the Firſt, King of *Burgundy*. He was after King of *Burgundy* and *Italy* alſo.

2. *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.

3. *William* II. ſurnamed the Younger, Son of *William*.

4. *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.

1082 5. *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Huſband of the Lady *Doulce* of *Provence*.

1131 6 *Berengar Raymond* the ſecond Son of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*; his eldeſt Brother *Raymond* ſucceeding in *Barcelone*.

7 *Raymond* II. Son of *Berengar Raymond*.

1173 8 *Alfonſo*, King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelone*; the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldeſt Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*.

1196 9 *Alfonſo* II. ſecond Son of *Alfonſo* the Firſt, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his eldeſt Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.

10 *Raymond* III Son of *Alfonſo*, the laſt Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

1261 11 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the Third, Earl of *Provence*. He was alſo King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c.

1282 12 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310 13 *Robert* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Counteſs of *Provence*.

1371 15 *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*, Earl of *Provence*, and titularly King of *Naples*, &c. (of whoſe deſcent from *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have ſpoken elſewhere.)

1485 16 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416 17 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1430 18 *Renè*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Main*, the Brother of *Renè*, ſucceeded in all the Eſtates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his Death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* XI. his Couſin-German, as being the Son of *Charles* VII. and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Siſter of *Lewis* III. and *Renè*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the laſt Earl of *Provence*. Immediately on whoſe Death, *Decemb.* 19. *An.* 1481. the King ſent a Commiſſion to *Palamedè de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take Poſſeſſion of the Country in his Name, and Command therein as Lieutenant-General. Since which time, *Provence* never was diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſo much as in the way of *Apennage*, or any Honorary Title amongſt the King's Children.

What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to ſay, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that beſides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other cuſtomary and caſual Taxes, there was a Tax called, *The Royal Impoſt*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every Fire; which reckoning 3500 Fires (for ſuch the eſtimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is ſubject to the rigour and uncertainty of the King's Taxations, as well as all the reſt of *France*. And ſo much of thoſe Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Goths*, let us next look on thoſe which at the ſame time were ſubdued by the *Burgundians*; whoſe Hiſtory, Kingdom, and Eſtate are to be conſidered, before we come to the deſcription of their ſeveral Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUNDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS*, at their firſt ſettlement in *Gaul*, contained all thoſe Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Peninæ*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, and *Viennenſis*; now paſſing under the Names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Griſons*, *Walliſland*, *Savoy*, *La Breſſe*, *Dauphiney*, *Lionois*, *Nivernois*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of Ground, able at once to tempt and ſatisfie an am-

ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord, though of their own accord they drew ſomewhat near it. In their Original, they were a People bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them; and dwelling in thoſe parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Meclenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Druſus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgs*, gave them the Name of *Burgundians*, amongſt the *Romans*: in the ſame ſenſe as the wild *Arabs* had the Name of *Scenitæ* amongſt the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the Year 418 at the inſtigation of the *Vandals*, they left their own Seats, and planted themſelves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Chriſtian Faith, being then miſerably oppreſſed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themſelves of that Enemy, they betook themſelves to the God of the Chriſtians, and were univerſally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they ſlew no leſs than 30000 of them in one Battle, from that time forwards, never troubled with that barbarous Nation. Chriſtians then they were, and Orthodox in their Profeſſion, before their coming into *Gaul*; and for that reaſon called in by *Stilico* to oppoſe the *French*, then threatning an Invaſion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this Invitation they paſſed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting Men, poſſeſſing themſelves of all which lay from the fartheſt Shore of the *Loyre*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*; and from the Mountain *Vauge* to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that ſame time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*: *Monarchical*, when ſettled in the Realm of *France*, where they had theſe five.

Kings of the Burgundians.

A. Chr.

408 1 *Tabica*, who firſt brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.

2 *Gundioch*.

3 *Gundebault*, who haraſſed *Italy*, then in the poſſeſſion of the *Goths*, with Fire and Sword; the Uncle of *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, by her perſwaſion made inclinable to the Chriſtian Faith.

4 *Sigiſmund*.

5 *Gundomar*, the Son of *Sigiſmund*, firſt ſet upon by *Clodomire*, the Son of *Clouis* King of *Orleans*, whom he ſlew in Battel near *Auſtun*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotair* Kings of *Paris* and *Soiſſons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Clodomire*, and ſo the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 Years: *Guntram* the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clouis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the Firſt; being in their Times honoured with the Title of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the firſt time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* ſetled amongſt the *French*, in the way of Succeſſion, was in the partage of that vaſt Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongſt the Children and Poſterity of *Ludovicus Pius*; in conſtituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckonings, to make this anſwerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The firſt of theſe *French* Kings, was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Lewis the Godly*. The Succeſſion in this order following.

The French *Kings of* Burgundy.

A. Chr.

855 1 *Charles*, youngeſt Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without Iſſue.

858 2 *Lotharius*, the ſecond King of *Mets*, and *Lewis* the ſecond Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, ſucceeded in *Burgundy*; the Mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Eſtates.

876 3 *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without Iſſue, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; which he again divided into three Governments or Members; that is to ſay, *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Maſcon*. 2. *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Walliſland*, and the Eſtates of the *Griſons*; and 3dly, *Burgundy* on the other ſide of the *Soaſne*, lying betwixt the other two, containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breſſe*, and *Daulphine*. This laſt conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles the Bald*, who had married his Siſter *Judith*; and not long after, in the Perſon of the ſaid Earl *Boſon*, raiſed unto a Kingdom by *Charles the Groſs*, by the Name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings theſe that follow.

4. *Boſon*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the Second, Emperor and King of *Burgundy*, was firſt by *Charles the Bald* made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Soaſne*; and afterwards by *Charles the Groſs*, created the firſt King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Succeſſors of the *German* Emperors.

5 *Lewis* II. Son of *Boſon* and *Hermingrade*, choſen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Berengarius*.

917 6 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the Second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; ſucceeded by the Gift of *Lewis*, and was choſen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* alſo. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he reſigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.

926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Hugh de Arles*, his Brother *Boſon* being ſetled beyond the *Jour*.

937 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*, a Prince of ſo ſhort a Reign, or of ſo little Note, that he is by ſome left out of the Catalogue of theſe Kings.

9 *Boſon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the Firſt; by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

965 10 *Conrade* Son to *Boſon* the Second.

990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Conrade*; who having no Iſſue of his Body, gave his Eſtate to *Conrade* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry*, ſurnamed *the Black*, whom he had by *Gileſa* the Siſter of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, *An.* 1032. In the diſtractions whereof, following not long after his Deceaſe, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the *German* Emperors, made themſelves Maſters and Proprietors of their ſeveral Provinces, (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, ſetled long before) out of which roſe the great Eſtates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the Daulphins of *Viennois*, and Lords of *Breſſe*, together with the Common-wealths of the *Switzers* and *Griſons*; every poor Bird ſnatching alſo ſome Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithſtanding the diſmembring and cantoning of this fair Eſtate, the ſucceeding Emperors of *Germany* claimed not only a ſuperintendence over, but a diſpoſal of all the Countries that ever were under the

command of the King of *Burgundy*: inſomuch that the Emperor, *Henry* the ſixth, receiving no ſmall part of the Money which our *Richard* the firſt paid to the Duke of *Auſtria*, for his Ranſom, gave unto the ſaid *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Soveraignty of *Provence*, *Viennois*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lions*, together with the Homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digon* and St. *Giles*. A Royal gift, if either the Emperor had any Dominion over thoſe Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are ſaid to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg.* armed *Gules*. Which being ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of thoſe Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lye within the bounds of *France*; the reſt, which lye beyond the *Jour*, having been ſpoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole Continent of the *Transjouran Burgundy*.

18 *DAULPHINE.*

NOrth of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAULPHINE*; having on the Eaſt, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the Weſt, *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhoſne*; and on the North, *La Breſſe*; and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lye towards *Piemont*, ſo called, as ſome report, from *Dauphine*, Wife of *Guigne* the ſecond; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed moſt probably to have took that name from *Flandrina*, Wife of *Liderick* the ſecond, then one of the laſt of thoſe Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forreſters*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the one mountainous, ſtony, and unfruitful, of the ſame nature with the *Alpes*, with whoſe branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the reſt of *France*. The People of the Higher, and more mountainous parts, are generally groſs and rude; not capable of Learning, but well enough enclined to Arms and Traffick; and have a cuſtom, that on the coming on of Winter, they ſend abroad all thoſe which are fit for Travel, whom they call *Bics*, (or *Biſonards*) who ſeldom return back till *Eaſter*: none ſtaying at home but old Men, Children, and impotent Perſons, which cannot go abroad to get their Livings. Thoſe in the Lower are more civil, but not more given to Labour, than the Mountainous are, nor very covetous of Gain, ſo they may live at eaſe, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Soldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Daulphine*, together with that part of *Provence*, which lies next to the *Rhoſne*, and the adjoyning parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennenſis*, from *Vienna*, the Metropolis of it, ſituate on the *Rhoſne*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; ſtill the chief City of this Country, and Arch-biſhops See, and a Siege *Preſidial*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the Title of the firſt Proprietaries of this Country, entituled, *Daulphins* of *Viennois*. To this Town, *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was Baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 2. *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a *Roman* Colony; now a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity for the Civil Laws: a rich, ſtrong, and well traded Town, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given Honorary Title to two Perſons of more Fame than Honour: the firſt of which was *Cæſar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, who caſting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois*, by *Charles* the eighth: the other, Madam *Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the ſecond, under whom ſhe much ſwayed the Affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutcheſs of it. 3. *Grenoble*, (in *Latine Grationopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Acuſiani*; the moſt populous and beſt built of all this Province; and much reſorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reaſon of the Court of Parliament here erected. *Anno* 1453. About this, lieth the Country called 3. *Griſinaudan*. 4. *Ternay*. 5. *Roſſillon*. 6. *La Roche*. 7. *Mantelimar*, all along the *Rhoſne*. 8. *Romons*, upon the confluence of the *Rhoſne*, and the *Iſere*. 9. *Cremien*. 10. St. *Marceline*. 11. S. *Andre*. 12. *Beaurepaire*, more within the Country.

The *Higher Daulphine*, together with thoſe parts of *Provence* which lye next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*; the Metropolis whereof was, 1. *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Arch-biſhops See, and Siege *Præſidial*, ſeated on a high Rock, in the midſt of a pleaſant Valley, ſurrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Country hereabouts is the higheſt of *France*. 2. *Brianſon*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*. 3. *Gappe*, now a Biſhops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenſes*; the track of whom is ſtill found in the name of the adjoyning Territory, called *La Pais Gapencois*: memorable for a Synod or Aſſembly of the *French Proteſtants* here holden, *An.* 1603. in which it was determined, and as for an Article of Faith, *That the Pope was Antichriſt*, and where the Miniſters then aſſembled, gave Audience to the Ambaſſadors of Foreign States, as to a Common-wealth diſtinct from the Realm of *France*: audaciouſly importuning their King by their ſeveral Agents, for liberty of going (whenſoever they liſted) or ſending whenſoever they pleaſed, unto the Councils and Aſſemblies of all Foreign Nations, which profeſſed the ſame Religion with them: the Preamble to thoſe Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruine of their Power and Party. 4. *Tricaſſin*, ſo called of the *Tricaſſini*, the old Inhabitants of theſe parts. 5. *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Droſne*: from whence comes thoſe ſmall, but good Stomach-Wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm, (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, moſt plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hey*; from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hey*; and ſo contractedly, *Vin Day*. 6. *Chorges*. 7. *Mombrum*. 8. *Eſſiles*; of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, beſides the *Tricaſſini*, *Apencenſes*, *Vaconties*, and *Accuſiani*, before mentioned; and the *Allobroges*, ſpoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segulauni*, about *Valence*; the *Decenſes* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at laſt by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the ſurrender of the ſame to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the year 1100. when *Guigne*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Griſinaudan*, ſeeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-born by the Popes, and not able to aſſert his own rights, ſeized upon this Province under the Title of Earl of *Viennois*, to which *Guigne* the ſecond, his Son and Succeſſor, gave the name of *Daulphine*, either from his Wife ſo called, as ſome; or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others ſay. In this Family it continued till the year 1349. under the Power and Government of theſe following Princes, entituled,

The *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

A. Ch.
1100 1 *Guigne*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Albon* and *Griſinaudan*, at the time of the Diſſolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.

1135

1135 2 *Guigne* II. the firſt and abſolute Proprietary, Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*.
1146 3 *Guienne* III. Son of *Guigne* the ſecond.
1152 4 *Beatrix*, Daughter of *Guigne* the Third, firſt married to *Raymond* the Third, Earl of *Tholouſe*, next to *Hugh* the Third, Duke of *Burgundy*; and finally, to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the Houſe of the former Earls; all in her right entituled, *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.
1280 5 *Andrew*, the Son of *Beatrix* and of *Guigne* the Fourth.
1242 6 *Guigne* V. Son of *Andrew*.
1283 7 *Humbert* the Firſt, in the right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the Fifth.
1335 8 *John* the Son of *Humbert*, exerciſed in continual Wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoy*.
1322 9 *Guigne* VI. Son of *John*, taken Priſoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, *An.* 1329. and at laſt ſlain *An.* 1342.
1342 10 *Humbert* II. the younger Son of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the Sixth, the laſt *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, who being ſurcharged with Wars by *Ame* (or *Amede*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friers, at *Lions*; ſelling his Country at a ſmall rate, to *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, upon condition, that the eldeſt Son of *France* ſhould be entituled always *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, and quarter the Arms of *Daulphin*, with thoſe of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted; and *Charles* the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Eſtate, in the very year of the ſurrendry. Since this time, the eldeſt Son of *France* is called generally the *Daulphin* of *France*; ſometimes the *Daulphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times the *Prince-Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Count-Daulphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps ſome others. A Title ſo annexed unto them, that it is not uſually laid by on the acceſſion of a greater or ſuperiour Dignity: inſomuch as *Francis* the eldeſt Son of *Henry* the Second, (whom he ſucceeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his Wife, was by the *French* commonly called *Lay Roy Daulphin*, or the King of *Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare Title of this Country only, but the Commands, Profits, and Poſſeſſion of it, ſending their own Governours thereunto; who by an ancient Indulgence, have the greateſt Priviledges (conferring all Offices within the Province) of any Governors of *France*.

19. *LA BRESSE.*

LA BRESSE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Savoy*; on the Weſt with *Lionois*; on the North with *Charolois* in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and ſome part of the *Aranche County*, and on the South, with *Daulphine*. The reaſon of the Name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleaſant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soaſne* and *Rhoſne*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1 *Bellay*, a Biſhops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for diſtinction ſake called *Bourg en Breſſe*) a Town ſo well fenced, and fortified with ſo ſtrong a Citadel for command of the Country, that it was thought little inferiour to the two impregnable Fortreſſes of St. *Katherines*, and *Montmelian* in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earneſtly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governour of *Burgundy*, after a repulſe on the like ſuit, for that of St. *Katherine*: but being ſuſpected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time in ill terms with King *Henry* the 4*th*, it was alſo denied him: which drew him into diſcontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the Minority of *Lewis* the 13*th*, *An.* 1611. demoliſhed by ſpecial Order of the Council of *France*, for fear of being ſurpriſed by the Duke of *Savoy*, during thoſe Confuſions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secuſianorum*, from the *Secuſiani*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. 3. *Caſtillon*, 4. *Mont-Real*, 5. *Bugey*, 6. *Vironne*, of which nothing obſervable.

This little Province being anciently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, *Proprietary* Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285. at what time *Sybill*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Breſſe* and *Baugie*, (or *Baſgee*, as ſome Writers call it) conveyed the Eſtate in marriage to *Ame*, or *Amadee*, the 4*th* of that Name Earl of *Savoy*. In which Houſe it continued till the year 1600, and then ſurrendred by Duke *Charles Emanuel*, to King *Henry* the 4*th*, to ſilence the pretences which that King made unto the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end to the War then begun about it: the politick Duke chuſing rather to part with an Eſtate on this ſide of the Mountains, than to give that active King occaſion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* muſt have been a Thorow-fair, *Piemont* an ordinary Paſs; and where no end could be expected, but the loſs of all. Surrendred then it was on good reaſon of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digon*, as it ſtill continueth.

Arms hereof, are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermine*, armed and langued, *Or*.

20. *LIONOIS.*

THE Country of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Breſſe*, on the Weſt with *Beau-jolois*, *Forreſt*, and *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Dutchy; and on the South, with *Daulphin*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City; and under that Title made an Earldom by *Charles* the *Groſs*, in the cantoning and diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*. The Earldom containing at that time not only *Lionois* it ſelf, but alſo *Forreſt* and *Beau-jolois*, before deſcribed. The Earls hereof were at firſt only *Provincial* Governours; but under the diſtractions of the *German* Empire, they ſhifted for themſelves and became Hereditary: but long it held not in one hand. For firſt, the Earldom of *Forreſt*, and the Lordſhip or Signeury of *Beau-jeu* being taken out of it about the year 990, the reſt of the Eſtate fell in ſome tract of time to the Biſhops and Church of *Lions*; but under the Soveraignty of the *French* Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1. *Maſcon*, (*Matiſconum*) a Biſhops See, ſituate on the *Soaſne*, anciently a diſtinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*: one of the Earls hereof, called *William*, flouriſhing in the year 1000, or thereabouts; whoſe Son and Succeſſor, named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* Daughter of *Humbert*, the firſt Earl of *Maurienne*, (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*) Continuing for ſome Ages after in this Poſterity, it was purchaſed of *William* the laſt Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9*th*, and afterwards ſubjected to the Juriſdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it ſtill continueth. 2. *Eſchalas*, on the *Rhoſne*, on the South of *Lions*, oppoſite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Daulphine*. 3. *Dandilli*. 4. *Francheville*. 5. *Chaumont*, and 6. *Lebrelle*, all ſomewhat Weſtward of that River, but not much obſervable. 7. *Lions* it ſelf, pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Soaſne* and the

Rhoſne, anciently a *Roman* Colony, (teſtified by many old Inſcriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France*, to *Auguſtus Cæſar*: now the moſt famous Mart of *France*, and an Univerſity; By our *Latin* Writers called *Lugdunum*. Theſe Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11*th*. for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the ſecond had Excommunicated *Lewis* the 12*th*, he commanded by his Apoſtolical Authority, that they ſhould be returned to *Geneva* again: but therein his pleaſure was never obeyed; the Marts continuing ſtill at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious for that great reſort of *French*, *Dutch* and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the ſame. As for the Univerſity, queſtionleſs it is very ancient, being a ſeat of Learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in thoſe times before an Altar conſecrated to *Auguſtus Cæſar* in the Temple ſpoken of before, this *Caligula* did inſtitute ſome Exerciſes of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence: the *Victor* to be honoured according to his Merit: the *Vanquiſhed* either to be *ferulated*, or with their own Tongues to blot and expunge their Writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoyning. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Ut Lugdunenſem* Rhetor *dicturus ad aram*, applied to dangerous Undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* firſt coming into *Gaul*, it was the chief City of the *Hedui*, and *Secuſiani*, afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunenſis Prima*. The Archbiſhop hereof, is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was ſo in the time of S. *Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Biſhop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor of *Germany*; who being a devout and conſcientious Man, ſenſible of the many Errors and Corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, diſtributed the greateſt part of his Riches amongſt the Poor, and betook himſelf to Meditation, and Studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRIST*'s Body, the ſubtraction of the Cup in the bleſſed Sacrament, in matter of Purgatory, the Supremacy, Adoration of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held Opinions contrary to thoſe of *Rome*, and little different from thoſe of the preſent *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongſt ſome good Wheat, there were many Tares; which gave the juſter colour to their Adverſaries to exclaim againſt them. Being much followed in regard of his Piety and Charity, he got unto himſelf and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor Men of Lions*, given in deriſion and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenſes*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name oppoſed and writ againſt by Fryer *Thomas* of *Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of pronunciation, drowning the *L*, and changing the *W*. into *V*, call them commonly *Vaudois*, by which name they occur in the ſtories of that State and Language. But *Lions* proving no ſafe place for them, they retired into the more deſart parts of *Languedoc*; and ſpreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the Name of *Albigenſes*, as before was ſaid. Supported by the two laſt Earls of *Tholouſe*, they became very maſterful and inſolent; inſomuch, that they murdered *Trincanel* their *Viſcount* in *Beziers*, and daſhed out the Teeth of their Biſhop, having taken Sanctuary in S. *Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high out-rage, the Divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croiſadas*, under the conduct of the *French* Kings, and many other noble Adventurers, who ſacrificed them in the ſelf ſame Church, wherein they had ſpilled the blood of others. About the year 1250. after a long and bloody War, they were almoſt rooted out of that Country alſo. The remnants of them, being bettered by this Affliction, betook themſelves unto the Mountains lying betwixt *Daulphine*, *Provence*, *Piedmont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious Life; painfully tilling the Ground, rebuilding Villages, which formerly had been deſtroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good Paſturage to their Cattel: inſomuch as places which before their coming thither, ſcarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their Care and Induſtry. *Laſciviouſneſs* in Speech they uſed not: *Blaſphemy* they abhorr'd; nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongſt them; as their very Enemies could not but confeſs, when they were afterwards in troubles. The Crimes alledged againſt them were, that when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no addreſs unto the Saints, nor bowed before ſuch Croſſes as were erected in the High-ways, and Streets of Towns. Great crimes aſſuredly, when greater could not be produced! And ſo they lived, neither embracing the *Pope*'s *Doctrines*, nor ſubmitting unto his *Supremacy*, for the ſpace of 300 years, untouched, unqueſtioned; even till the latter end of the Reign of King *Francis* the firſt. But then the Perſecution raging againſt the *Lutherans*, they were accuſed, condemned, and barbarouſly murdered, in the *Maſſacres* of *Merindol*, and *Cabriers*, before mentioned. After which time, joyning themſelves with the reſt of the *Proteſtant* Party, they loſt the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before; and paſs in the account of the *Reformed Churches* of *France*; enjoyning the ſame Priviledges and Freedom of Conſcience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on theſe Men, and their Congregations as Founders of the *Proteſtant* Church, or of the ſame Church with them, as I ſee ſome do: yet I behold them as *Aſſertors* of ſome Doctrinal Truths, and profeſſed Enemies of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predeceſſors of the preſent *Proteſtants*.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overſpreading not this Country only, but *Burbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of theſe *Hedui*, the *Inſubres* are thought by ſome learned Men to have been a Tribe, who paſſing over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick* Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoyning. The reſidue of the ſtory which concerns this Country we have had before.

21. *The Dukedom of* Burgundy.

THe *Dukedom* of *BURGUNDY* hath on the Eaſt, the *French County*, and ſome part of *Savoy*; on the Weſt, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Breſſe*, *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Beau-joulois*. A Province ſo well watered with pleaſant and profitable Rivers, that as Queen *Katharine de Medices* uſed to ſay of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*; ſo we may ſay of this Country, That it hath more fine Rivers than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armacan*, 2. *Serum*, 3. *Curi*, 4. *Torney*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Dove*, 7. *Brune*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Soaſne*, (the *Araris* of the ancient Writers) this laſt dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithſtanding this great plenty of Waters, the Country generally leſs fruitful than the reſt of *France*: hardly yielding ſufficient for its own Inhabitants, except Wines only.

Chief Cities in it are, 1. *Dijon*, the Birth-place of S. *Bernard*, ſeated upon the *Soaſne* and *Louche*, in a Champian Country: The Town large, populous, and of much Reſort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province, a Parliament being here erected, *An.* 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but eſpecially defended by a ſtrong Caſtle, called *Talente*, ſituate on a

Hill adjoyning. It is called *Divio* in the *Latine*; the Biſhop hereof *Divionenſis*. 2. *Chalons*, (in *Latine*, *Caballinum*) called for diſtinctions ſake, *Chalons* upon *Soaſne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Biſhops See alſo, as the other is; and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of *Burgundy*, the other three, *Vienne*, *Neufchattel*, and *Vergie*. 3. *Autun*, by *Ptolomy* called *Auguſtodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Biſhops See, heretofore the chief of all the Country, ſome marks of the old ſplendour being ſtill to be ſeen: now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with ſome fair Churches, which the ruines of Time have not yet demoliſhed. 4. *Boauine*, *Beaune*, *Baulne*, *Belna*, ſeated on the *Burſoize*, in the beſt and richeſt Soil of all *Burgundy*; and yielding the beſt Wines in all *France*: remarkable for an Hoſpital of ſo fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Caſtle built by King *Lewis* XII. 5. *Alize*, now a ſmall Village, but of great Name and Power in the time of *Cæſar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortreſs of *Vercingetorix*, beſieged herein by the ſaid *Cæſar*; but ſo beſieged, that he had 70000 Men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 300000 *Gauls* at the back of *Cæſar*, to relieve their Fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Walls, the one againſt them within the City, and the other againſt them without: which done, he kept ſuch diligent watch and ward on both ſides, that the beſieged heard ſooner of the diſcomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal News being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæſar*; then ſitting in his Chair of State, diſarmed himſelf, took off his Horſes capariſons; and laying all upon the ground, ſate down at *Cæſar*'s feet, and became his Priſoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompaſſed with the *Soaſne*. 7. *Semur*, conſiſting of three parts, each of them ſeverally walled, and ſtrongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Nayx*. 10. St. *Ligier*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 11. *Noyors*, on the borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antiſiodorum*, of moſt note for the Council held here, *Anno* 627. the Country about which, is called *Auxerrois*; and was an Earldom of it ſelf. The Title and Poſſeſſion of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*; to whom it came in Marriage with his firſt Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the laſt Earl of the former Race. On the failure of which Houſe, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the Marriage of *Iſabel*, Niece of the ſaid *Peter*, by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons*, Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom ſucceeded *John de Chalons*, his eldeſt Son by that *Venter*, (his ſecond Wife) and finally, was ſold by *John de Chalons*, great Grandchild of the ſaid *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, *An*. 1370. by whom united to the Crown; ſubjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is alſo within this Country, the great and famous Monaſtery of *Ciſteaux*; the Mother of ſo many *Religious* Houſes diſperſed up and down in *Europe*; from hence denominated, and ſubject to the Diſcipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom, (on the South parts of it) ſtands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, *Caroleſium*, heretofore the Title of the eldeſt Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*: ſo called from *Charolles*, *Caroliæ*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate in the borders of it, towards *La Breſſe*: ſeized upon with the reſt of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* XI. immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the *Warlike*: reſtored again to *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the Second, of *France*, on the Peace made at *Cambray*, and ſubjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Eſtate. So that neither the *Governour* of the Dukedom for the *French* King, nor the *Parliament* of *Digion*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion paſſant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*. By the Treaty of 1659. it was reſerved to *Spain*, but is ſince return'd under the Dominion of *France*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the moſt potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who calling in the *Romans* to aid them in their Quarrels againſt the *Sequani* and *Averni*, made them all ſubject unto *Rome*. In the proſperity whereof, they made up the Province of *Lugdunenſis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. Afterwards, in the diviſion of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the *Bald*; this part thereof being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Maſcou*: whereof the three firſt laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the Stile and Title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The Iſſue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*: and the Male-Iſſue failing of that Line alſo, it was devolved (partly by eſcheat for want of Heirs Male; and partly in the Right and Title of the Heir-general) to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the Third; who with the conſent of *Charles* his eldeſt Son, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, gave it unto his ſecond Son *Philip*, (more worthily ſurnamed the *Hardy*) together with the Marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great Wiſdom, as was judiciouſly obſerved by King *Lewis* the Eleventh. For by this means, thoſe great Eſtates being united in one Perſon, and afterwards theſe Eſtates improved by as proſperous Marriages; this Houſe of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themſelves, who never left practiſing againſt it, till they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Eſtates, from which at firſt it was diſmembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundy*.

890	1	*Richard* of *Saxony*, the ſecond Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*.
938	2	*Gilbert*, the ſecond Son of *Richard*.
964	3	*Otho*, the Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, ſurnamed the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.
976	4	*Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.
1001	5	*Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
1004	6	*Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
1075	7	*Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert*, by his Son *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
1097	8	*Odo*, or *Otho* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
1102	9	*Hugh* II. Son of *Otho* the Second.
1124	10	*Odes*, or *Otho* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
1165	11	*Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the Firſt, in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1193	12	*Odes*, or *Otho* IV. Son of *Hugh* the Third.
1218	13	*Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the Ninth in the *Holy Land*.
1273	14	*Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* IV. which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardy*, after Duke of *Burgundy*.
1308	15	*Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the Third.
1315	16	*Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* alſo, in the right of his Wife.

1349 17 *Philip* the Grandchild of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, by deſcent, (who if he had lived, had been alſo Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife.) But dying young and without Iſſue, he was ſucceeded in all his Titles and Eſtates, by

1363 18 *Philip* II. ſurnamed the *Hardy*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the third, by King *John* his Father, with the conſent of *Charles* the 5th his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de Malain* (and conſequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predeceſſor.

1404 19 *John* ſurnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the ſecond, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.

1419 20 *Philip* III. ſurnamed the *Good*, who added moſt of the *Netherlands* to his Eſtate.

1467 21 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Charolois*, Son of *Philip* the *Good*. After whoſe death, ſlain by the *Switzers* at the Battle of *Nancy*, *Lewis* the eleventh ſeized upon this Dukedom *An.* 1476. pretending an Eſcheat thereof, for want of *Heirs Males*; and ſo uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Eſcheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Eureux*, deſcended from the Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Siſter of the Mother of the ſaid King *John*.

Of the great Wealth and Potency of theſe laſt Dukes of *Burgundy*, we ſhall ſpeak further when we come to the deſcription of *Belgium*: the acceſſion whereof to their Eſtates, made them equal to moſt Kings in *Chriſtendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were *Bendwiſe* of *Or* and *Azure* a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is uſually marſhalled in the Scutcheons of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their poſſeſſion. The reaſons of which are probably (for I go but by gueſs) partly becauſe this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of this Title to the Dukedom it ſelf, in right of which he holdeth ſuch a great Eſtate.

22. *The County of* Burgundy.

THe County of *BURGUNDY* hath on the Eaſt, the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the Weſt, the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Soaſne*; on the North, a branch of the Mountain *Vauge*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorain*; on the South, *La Breſſe*. It is reckoned to be 90 Miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Daulphine*, *La Breſſe*, and *Province*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*; on the Eaſtern ſide of which it is wholly ſituate. This part thereof, now generally called the *Franche Compte*, or the *Free County*, becauſe not under the command of the *French* Kings; but living in a more free Eſtate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The County in ſome parts very Mountainous, but thoſe Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having, in recompence of a little barrenneſs, an intermixture of moſt pleaſing and fruitful Valleys, ſwelling with plenty of all natural Commodities uſeful unto the life of Man; and for the variety of freſh Streams, and delightful Riverets, inferiour only to the *Dutchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Beſanſon*, called by *Cæſar*, *Veſontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province entituled, *Maxima Sequanorum*; by conſequence an Archbiſhops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almoſt encompaſſed; ſuch Artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very ſtrong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not ſubject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*; honoured with a ſmall Univerſity, founded here *An.* 1540. by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, and *Charles* the fifth. This City in 1651. was exempt from the Empire, and given to the *Spaniards*, ſoon after which it fell into the hands of the *French*, and was retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1654. by the *French* in 1668, and in 1674. and at laſt by the Treaty of *Nimmeguen* in 1678. it was finally left to the *French*. 2. *Dole*, ſeated on the ſame River *Doux*; for Riches, Strength, and Beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament-City, and conſequently of moſt reſort for diſpatch of Buſineſs. Anciently it was an Univerſity for the ſtudy of the Civil Laws; but now the Univerſity is devoured by a Colledge of *Jeſuits*: who fearing leſt the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* might creep in amongſt the People, not only have debarred them the uſe of the *Proteſtant* Books; but have expreſly forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good ſort or a bad. This had in latter times the ſame fate with *Beſanzon*. 3. *Salines*, ſo called from its ſalt Fountains, out of which came the greateſt part of the Earls Revenue: in which reſpect, or that it was the Title of *Otho* the Son of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, before he did attain the Earldom; the Earls of *Burgundy* ſince that time, and the Emperors of *Germany*, in their right, retain the Name of Lords of *Salines*, in their uſual Stile. A City honoured for a while with the Seat of the Parliament, removed hither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, at ſuch time as he held this Country, beholding to him (being a wiſe and politick Prince) for many wholſom Ordinances, ſtill obſerved amongſt the 4. *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the *Lower*; as 5. *Veſcal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6. *Arboiſe*, noted for the beſt Wines, and 7. *Laxoal*, for Medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the ordinary ſeat and retreat from Buſineſs, of the firſt Prince of *Orange*, of the *Houſe* of *Chalons*, who had great poſſeſſions in this Country. 9. *Gray*, 10. *Chaſtel-Chalon*, 11. *Quingey*, 12. *Orgelet*. Here is alſo the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaum*; out of which of many Monaſteries in the Weſtern Church, had their firſt Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County, were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation, contending with the *Hedui* and *Averni*, for the Soveraignty of *Gaul*, till the ſtrife was ended by the *Romans*, under whom it made, together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the laſt King of the *French*, the Kingdom of *Burgundy* was given to *Conrade* the ſecond Emperor of *Germany*. After that, reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, and governed by ſuch *Earls* or Provincial Officers, as thoſe Emperors ſent thither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Son to a Siſter of the Emperor *Conrade*, was the firſt that held it as *Proprietary*, the other three whom *Paradine* ſets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being meerly official. It was firſt united to the *Dutchy*, by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Counteſs. But no Iſſue coming out of this Bed, it fell into the Houſe of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardy*, the firſt Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, *An.* 1369. *Philip* the Grandchild of this *Philip*, united moſt of the

Belgick Provinces unto his Eſtate: after whoſe death, and the death of *Charles* his Son, at the Battel of *Nancy*, the *Dutchy* was ſurprized by King *Lewis* the Eleventh, as holden of the Crown of *France*, eſcheated to him for want of Heirs-males. But the *County*, holden of the Empire, though ſubdued alſo by this *Lewis*, was reſtored again to *Mary* the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, continuing hitherto in her Iſſue; as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundy*.

1101 1 *Otho Guilliaume*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundy* by the Power and Aid of *Robert* King of *France*.

1118 2 *Reinald*, Couſin and Heir of *Otho*.

1157 3 *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor, in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundy*.

1183 4 *Otho*, the youngeſt Son of *Frederick*.

1200 5 *Otho* II. Duke of *Meranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundy* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.

1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalone*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the ſecond Daughter of *Otho* the firſt, and Siſter of *Beatrix*; acknowledged by his Faction there, for Earl of *Burgundy*, in the life of *Otho* the ſecond, whom he diſpoſſeſſed, and left the ſame unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.

1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen de Chalons*.

1269 8 *Hugh* the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Meranie*; ſo getting in that pretenſion alſo.

1279 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*, Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.

1315 10 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.

1331 11 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſs.

1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Grandchild of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.

1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and ſecond Daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſs, was Counteſs of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, after the death of her Couſin *Philip*.

14 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, by his Mother.

1383 15 *Philip* II. called the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Gift of King *John* his Father, with the conſent and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth, was Earl of *Burgundy*, *Flanders*, and *Artois*; as alſo, Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of *Margarite* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.

1404 16 *Antony* the *Proud*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, his younger Brother *Philip*, ſucceeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.

1419 17 *Philip* III. called the *Good*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.

1467 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.

1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, Son of *Frederick* the third, Emperor of *Germany*; in which honour he ſucceeded his Father.

1482 20 *Philip* IV. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, King of *Caſtile*, in right of his Wife *Joan*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, King of *Caſtile*, &c.

1506 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperor of *Germany*, by the Name of *Charles* the fifth.

1558 22 *Philip* V. of *Burgundy*, and the ſecond of *Spain*.

1598 23 *Philip* VI. of *Burgundy*, and the third of *Spain*.

1622 24 *Philip* VII. of *Burgundy*, and the fourth of *Spain*; in whom reſteth the poſſeſſion of the County of *Burgundy*, and the Earldom of *Charollois*; herein not troubled by the *French*, upon the death of *Charles* the *Warlike*; partly, becauſe it was accounted as a Fief of the Empire; but principally, for fear of giving offence to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth: jealous enough already of the greatneſs and power of *France*, and ſo not willing to admit ſuch a potent Neighbour.

1665 25 *Charles* the Second King of *Spain*, who being an Infant, *Lewis* the 14*th* the preſent King of *France*, in the year 1668. poſſeſs'd himſelf of this Country, which being reſtored by a Treaty in 1674. he again entered upon it, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of it a ſecond time, the *Spaniards* taking no care of it, as believing the *Switzers* were obliged to defend it for their own Security, as in truth they ought to have done, and do now too late repent they did not. Hereupon the *Spaniards* by the Treaty of *Nimmegen* in 1678. abſolutely reſigned this Country to the *French*.

The Arms of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lion Rampant *Or*, Seme of Billets *Argent*.

23 *The Iſlands in the* Aquitain *and* Gallick *Ocean*.

HAving thus took a view of the ſeveral Provinces within the Continent of *France*, let us next look upon the *ISLANDS* which belong unto it, diſperſed in the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Weſtern Ocean. Thoſe in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note; as 1. the Iſles of *Eres*, and 2. *Pomegues*, lying againſt *Provence*: 3. *Maguelone*, lying againſt *Languedoc*: and 4. *L' Anguellade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhoſne*, of which there is nothing to be ſaid, but that thoſe of *Eres* are thought to be the *Stoechades* of *Ptolomy*; and his *Blaſcon*, to be *Anguellade*. And if the Iſles of *Eres* by the ſame with the *Stoechades*, then one of them muſt be the *Lerina* which we find in *Pliny*: of moſt note afterwards for a Monaſtery founded in it, which gave name to *Vincentius Lerinenſis*, or rather *Lirinenſis*, as moſt Writers call him: the Iſland now called *Inſula Sancti Honorati*, or Saint *Honorates*, as *Maſſonus* telleth us. And of as little note in the *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Belle Iſle*, againſt *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Iſle de Dieu*, having in it two or three good Villages: and *Marmoſtier*, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monaſtery called the *White Abby*. Of which three laſt, that of *Belle Iſle* hath been of late ſo fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable: the Abbey of the laſt endowed with ſo plentiful a Revenue, that it was thought a competent Preferment for *Anthonine* of *Bourbon*, baſe Brother to King *Henry* the Fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the ſame. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1. *Oleron*, and 2. *Ree*, on the Coaſt of *Aquitain*; and thoſe of *Jerſey*, 4. *Guernſey*, 5. *Sarke*, and 6. *Alderney*, on the ſhores of *Normandy*: Of which, the four laſt are under the Kings of *England*; the reſt poſſeſſed by the *French*.

1. *OLERON* is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the Province of *Xaintoigne*, and South unto the Iſle of *Ree*, from which little diſtant. It is the biggeſt of the two, and makes yearly a very great quantity of Salt, wherewith moſt of the Provinces of the *Weſtern Ocean* uſe to be furniſhed. But it is eaſie of acceſs, and not very defenſible; which makes it of leſs note both in ancient and modern Stories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the Name of the Iſland. One thing there is for which indeed this Iſland is of ſpecial fame, and that is, that the *Maritine* Laws, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Chriſtian World, which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian* Laws being antiquated and worn out of uſe) for regulating of Sea-affairs, and deciding of Maritine Controverſies, were declared and eſtabliſhed here, and from thence called the *Laws of Oleron*. And here they were declared and eſtabliſhed by King *Richard* the Firſt of *England*, as Lord Paramont of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy Land*: this Iſland being then in his poſſeſſion, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitain*: *Quæ quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum* Ricardum *quondam Regem* Angliæ *in reditu a* Terra Sancta, *correcta fuerunt*, *interpretata*, *declarata*, *& in Inſula de* Oleron *publicata & nominata in* Gallica *Lingua* La Loy d' Oleron, *&c.* ſaith an old Record which I find cited in a MS. Diſcourſe of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs*, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entituled, *The Sovereignty of the* Britiſh *Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Laws to all that Traded on the Ocean.

2. The Iſle of *REE* is ſituate over againſt *Rochel*: to which it ſerved for an Out-work on that ſide thereof It is in length ten *Engliſh* Miles, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep Mariſhes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great ſtrength. Chief places in it are, 1. *La Butte de Mont*, 2. St. *John de Mont*. 3. *St. Hillary*, 4. *St. Martins*, the largeſt and ſtrongeſt of them all; from whence the whole Iſland hath ſometimes been called St. *Martins*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis* XIII. *An.* 1622. (the Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for thoſe of *Rochel*) it was very well fortified; and ſince made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the *Engliſh* Forces under the Command of *George* Duke of *Buckingham*. Sent thither to recover the Town and Iſland, on the Inſtigation of *Soubize*, who before had loſt it, *An.* 1628.

3. *JERSEY*, by *Antonine* called *Cæſarea*; ſituate about ten Miles from the Coaſt of *Normandy*, within the View and Proſpect of the Church of *Conſtance*, part of which *Dioceſs* it was: in length containing 11 Miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitful of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themſelves, but ſome over-plus to barter at St. *Malos* with the *Spaniſh* Merchants: and of an Air not very much diſpoſed to Diſeaſes, unleſs it be an Ague in the end of *Harveſt*, which they call *Les Settembres*. The Country ſtands much upon Incloſures, the Hedges of the Ground well ſtored with Apples, and thoſe Apples making ſtore of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleaſant Rivulets, and good ſtore of Fiſh-ponds, yielding a Carp for taſt and largeneſs inferiour unto none in *Europe*, excepting thoſe of *Guernſey*, which generally are ſomewhat bigger, but not better reliſhed. The People, for the moſt part, more inclinable to Husbandry, than to Trades or Merchandize; and therein differing very little from thoſe of *Guernſey*, who are more for *Merchandize* than *Tillage*. It containeth in it 12 Pariſhes or Villages, having Churches in them, beſides the Manſions of the *Seigneurs*, and the chief Men of the Countrey. The principal is St. *Hillaries*, where is the *Cohu*, or *Court of Juſtice* for all the Iſland. It is about the bigneſs of an ordinary Market-Town in *England*: ſituate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one ſide with a ſmall Block-houſe called *Mont* St. *Aubin*; but on that ſide which is next the Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, called *Fort Elizabeth*, ſituate upon craggy Rocks, and encompaſſed with two Arms of the Sea: ſo named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to aſſure the Iſland againſt the *French*, and furniſhed it with thirty pieces of *Ordinance*, and all other neceſſaries. There is alſo on the Eaſt-ſide, oppoſite to the City of *Conſtance*, high mounted on ſteep and craggy Rocks, the ſtrong Caſtle of *Mount Orgeuile*; of great Antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the Fifth; now furniſhed with forty pieces of Cannon, and made the ordinary Reſidence of the Governours for the Kings of *England*. This Iſland ſtood firm to *Charles* the 2*d*, in all his Misfortunes, till *October* 22, 1651. when it was by the Forces of the Rebels reduced. In acknowledgment of this their Loyalty, that Prince in the year 1663. ſent them a Silver Mace to be hereafter born before their chief Magiſtrate, as a remembrance of their Fidelity to him.

4. On the North-Weſt of *Jarſey*, lyeth the Iſland of *GUERNSEY*, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*; in form *Triangular*, each ſide of nine Miles in length. The Country is of as rich a Soil as the other of *Jerſey*, but not ſo well Cultivated and Manured; the poorer People here, being more given to *Manufactures*, (eſpecially to the knitting of Stockings and Waſtcoats) and the rich to Merchandize, many of which, are Maſters of good ſtout Barques, with which they Traffick into *England*, and other places. The whole Iſland contains ten Villages with Churches; the principal of which, Saint *Peter's Port*; a very neat and well built Town, with a ſafe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the ſecuring of the Haven, capable of handſom Barques: a Market-Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie*, or *Court of Juſtice*. Oppoſite whereto, in a little Iſlet, ſtandeth the Caſtle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimenſions of it; environed on all ſides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furniſhed with no leſs than 80 pieces of Ordinance for the defence of the Iſland, but chiefly, to command the adjoyning Harbour, capable of 500 as good Ships as any ſail on the Ocean. A piece of great Importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly deſtructive of the Trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were ſtrong in Shipping. For that cauſe made the ordinary Seat of the *Engliſh* Governours, though of late times not ſo much honoured with the preſence of thoſe Governours, as a place of that Conſequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gernſey*, are two little Iſlets, the one called *Jet-how*, the Governours Park, wherein are ſome few fallow-Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, ſome three Miles in compaſs; a dwelling heretofore of *Franciſcan Friers*; now not inhabited, but by *Pheaſants*; of which, amongſt the ſhrubs and buſhes, there is very good ſtore.

5. *ALDERNEY*, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*; is ſituate over againſt the Cape of the *Lexobii*, in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: diſtant from which but ſix Miles only. Beſides many Dwelling-houſes ſcattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the ſame name with the Iſland, conſiſting of about an hundred Families; and having, not far off, an

Harbour made in the faſhion of a *Semi-circle*, which they call *La Crabbie.* The whole about eight Miles in compaſs; of very difficult acceſs, by reaſon of the high Rocks and Precipices which encompaſs it on every ſide, and with a ſmall force eaſily defenſible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And ſo is alſo *SARK*, the adjoining Iſland, being in compaſs ſix Miles; not known by any ſpecial Name unto the Ancients, and, to ſay truth, not peopled till the fifth Year of Queen *Elizabeth*; who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Seigneur* of St. *Oen*, in the Iſle of *Jerſey*, who from thence planted it, and made Eſtates out of it to ſeveral Occupants, ſo that it may contain now about 50 Houſholds. Before which time it ſerved only for a Common, or Beaſts Paſture, to thoſe of *Guernſey*; ſave that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the uſe of ſuch as the ſolitarineſs of the place invited to thoſe Retirements.

Theſe two laſt Iſlands are ſubject to the Governour of *Guernſey*; all four to the Crown of *England*; holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*, to which they anciently belonged; and of which now the ſole remainder is in the power of the *Engliſh*. Attempted often by the *French*, (the two firſt I mean) ſince they ſeized on *Normandy*, but always with repulſe and loſs; the People being very affectionate to the *Engliſh* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Priviledges, which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their Language is the *Norman French*, (though the better ſort of them ſpeak the *Engliſh* alſo) their Law, the *Grand Cuſtomaire* of *Normandy*, attempted and applied to the uſe of this People in their Suits and Buſineſs, by the *Bayliffs* and *Juſticiars* of the two chief Iſlands. Their Religion, for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*; the Government in *Jerſey* by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Biſhop of *Conſtance*, now to the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*; in *Guernſey*, by a mixt Conſiſtory of Clergy and Lay-Elders, according to the New Model of *Geneva*; a Government firſt introduced in both Iſlands, *Anno* 1565. being the eighth Year of Queen *Elizabeth*, and aboliſhed again in *Jerſey*, *Anno* 1619. being the ſeventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the Story of *France*, thorow which we have now made our Progreſs, both by Sea and Land: It took this Name from the *Francks* or *French*, a *German* People, who in the wane of the *Roman* Empire poſſeſſed themſelves of it: not mentioned by that Name by *Cæſar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, or any of the more ancient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred Years after the Death of *Ptolomy*: The firſt expreſs mention of them occurring in the Reign of *Gallienus*; then ranſacking the Coaſts of *Gaul*, and joining with *Poſthumus* the Rebel, againſt that Emperor. Afterwards often ſpoken of in the courſe of the *Roman* Stories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Diocleſian*, and the Sons of *Conſtantine*; though only in the way of Pillage and Depradation. Their habitation in thoſe times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almains*, to the *German* Ocean; containing the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cheruſci*, *Friſii*, and *Tencteri*, beſides ſome others of leſs note: and taking up the Countries of *Weſtphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and ſo much of *Cleve* as lieth on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, the Landtgravedom of *Heſſia*, the Dutchy of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-yſſel*, both *Frieſlands*, and ſo much of *Holland* as lieth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*. United in the Name of *Franks*, to ſhew that liberty or freedom from the Yoke of Servitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impoſe upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other ſide of the River were ſuppoſed to ſuffer: Governed by Dukes, till the Year 420. when *Pharamond* firſt took upon himſelf the Name of King. *Meroveus* their third King, having diſpoſſeſſed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Pharamond*, was the firſt that fixed his Seat in *Gaul*; when ſeeing the *Romans* on the one ſide put to the worſt by *Theodorick* and the *Goths*; and on the other ſide by the *Burgundians*, they paſſed over the *Rhene*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* ſide of that River, together with the Diſtrict of *Cologne*, *Gulick*, and the reſt of *Cleve*, then paſſing in the account of *Gaul*. His Victories and Fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Succeſſor, who added *Picardy*, *Champaigne*, and the Iſle of *France* to the former Conqueſt; took *Paris* and made it the Seat of his Kingdom. Afterwards, when they had fully ſeated themſelves here, and thereby opened a free paſſage to the reſt of the Country, they quickly made themſelves Maſters of all that which formerly had been poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their laſt hold in *Soiſſons*, under *Clouis* their fifth King, who alſo took *Aquitain*, and the Parts adjoining, from the *Viſi-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*: for theſe and many ſignal Victories againſt the *Almans*, deſervedly ſurnamed *the Great*; but greater in ſubmitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving Baptiſm, than by all his Victories. *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, the Sons of this *Clouis*, vanquiſhed the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdon to their own; as *Theodebert* his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*, did the Country of *Provence*, reſigned unto him by *Amaloſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wreſted from the *Goths* of *Spain*. In the Perſon of *Clotaire* the Second, the Realm of *France* improvidently diſmembred into many Kingdoms, amongſt the Children of *Clouis* the Firſt; that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soiſſons*, *Orleans*, and *Auſtraſia*, (of which *Orleans* and *Auſtraſia* were of long continuance) were again united; whoſe Succeſſor, *Dagobert* the Firſt, was the laſt conſiderable Prince of the *Merovignians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this Line, began to diminiſh, ſcarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to ſucceeding Ages; or leaving any Monument behind them, but their empty Names; which I ſhall repreſent in the following Catalogue, according to their ſeveral Times; firſt taking notice, that though the Kings of this firſt Race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was ſaid; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but thoſe that had their Royal Seat in the City of *Paris*, the reſt being called only Kings of *Soiſſons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the Name of their principal Cities. And therefore, leaving thoſe to their proper places, we will here only take a ſurvey of thoſe who paſſed in the common eſtimate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of France, *of the* French *or* Merovignian *Line.*

A. Chr.		
449	1	*Meroveus*, Maſter of the Horſe to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*; from whom this Line of Kings were called *Merovignians*. 10.
459	2	*Chilperic*, the Son of *Merove*. 26.
485	3	*Clouis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*. 30.
515	4	*Childebert*, eldeſt Son of *Clouis*, his other Brethren reigning in their ſeveral places. 45.
560	5	*Clotaire*, Brother of *Childebert*, firſt King of the *Soiſſons*, afterwards ſole King of the *French*.
565	6	*Cherebert*, Son of *Clotaire*.
574	7	*Chilperic* II. King of *Soiſſons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom, 14.
588	8	*Clotaire* II. Son of *Chilperic* the Second. 44.
632	9	*Dagobert*, Son of *Clotaire* the Second. 14.
645	10	*Clouis* II. Son of *Dagobert*. 17.
663	11	*Clotaire* III. Son of *Clotaire* the Second. 4.
667	12	*Chilperic* III. Brother of *Clotaire* the Third, and Son of *Clouis* the Second.
680	13	*Theodorick*, Brother of *Chilperic*. 14.
694	14	*Clouis* III. Son to *Theodorick*. 5.

698 15 *Childebert* II. Brother to *Clouis* the Third. 15.
716 16 *Dagobert* II. Son of *Childebert* the Second. 5.
722 17 *Chilperic* IV. Son of *Childebert* the Second, and Brother of *Dagobert* the Second, oppoſed by *Charles Martel* in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth Son of *Theodorick*, and Brother of *Childebert* the Second. 5.
727 18 *Theodorick* II. Son of *Dagobert* the Second. 15.
742 19 *Chilperick* V. Son of *Theodorick* the Second, the laſt of the *Merovignian* Family; depoſed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his Proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel*, were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings; which *Mayres* were originally Comptrollers of the King's Houſe, and had nothing to do with the Affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the Third, to eaſe himſelf and his Succeſſors of a burden ſo weighty, made the *Mayres* Vicars-general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their Pleaſures, ſhewing themſelves only on *May-Day*; and then ſeated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth Pacquets, heareth and diſpatcheth Foreign Ambaſſadors, giveth remedy to the Complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws, and repealeth them. An Authority ſomewhat like that of the *Præfecti Prætorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire; or that of the *Sultans* under the *Mahometan Caliphs*, and the Vice Roys of the old *Egyptian Pharoahs*. An Office which had been long born by the Anceſtors of this *Martel*, ever ſince the Reign of *Clotaire* the Second; in whoſe time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, deſcended lineally from *Utilo*, the ſecond Son of *Theadon* the firſt Duke, and Nephew of *Aldagerius* the laſt King of the *Boiarians* or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a Military Prince, and having done good Service to *Theodorick*, the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, or *Metz*, againſt the *Danes*, then grievouſly infeſting the Coaſts of the *Lower Germany*; was by him made Warden of thoſe Mariſhes, honoured with the Marriage of his Daughter *Plithilda*, and liberally endowed with fair Poſſeſſions in that Tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulph*, the firſt *Mayre* of this Houſe; which Office having long enjoyed, he reſigned it to *Anſegiſus* his eldeſt Son, (the firſt who drew unto himſelf the managery of the whole Eſtate) and bidding farewel to the Affairs of the World, became a Prieſt, and died Biſhop of *Metz*, *Anno* 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Anſegiſus* dying in the Year 679. left his Authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Ferdulphus* his younger Brother. But he being ſlain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it: *Pepin*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Anſegiſus*, revenging his Couſins Death upon *Ebroinus*, and cruſhing all the oppoſite Factions which were raiſed againſt him, obtained that Honour for himſelf. And having much advanced the Affairs of *France* by the Conqueſt of the *Sueves* and *Friſons*, died in the Year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his deceaſe, (for *Grimold* his only lawful Son, and *Theobaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had ſucceſſively ſubſtituted in the ſame, died not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albeida* his Concubine; from his Martial Proweſs called *Martil*: Who in his time did to the Kings of *France* great Service, eſpecially in routing that vaſt Army of the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in the Battel of *Tours* before-mentioned; thereby not only freeing *France* from the preſent Danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in poſſeſſion of the *Goths* and *Moors*; for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*, yet would he not uſurp the Kingdom, or the Title of King, though both at his diſpoſal wholly; it being his ordinary ſaying, that *he had rather rule a King than be one.*

To him ſucceeded *Caroloman* his eldeſt Son, *Anno* 741. who held the Office but a Year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*; who being of leſs moderation than his Father was, made ſuch uſe of his Power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an Election, confirmed by Pope *Zachary* the Firſt, he took the Kingdom to himſelf; and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his Poll ſhaven, and was thruſt into a Monaſtery. For this Inveſtiture, both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good Services for the Popes, deſtroying, on their Quarrel, the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them moſt of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other ſide, the Popes to requite theſe Courteſies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom, by their Papal Power (which then began to bear ſome ſway in the Chriſtian World;) and gave the laſt (beſides the opportunity of attaining the Weſtern Empire) the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian King*, continued ever ſince unto his Succeſſors. And, to ſay truth, he well deſerved thoſe Honours, had they been far greater, by many Victories obtained againſt the Enemies of the Goſpel; the ſeveral Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of CHRIST; the great Abilities he had of Eſtate and Judgment, enabling him to ſupport the Majeſty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was ſole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times ſucceeding, into ſeveral petit Kingdoms and Principalities, but had added thereunto, by his own proper Virtue, the greateſt part of *Italy*, the beſt part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia*'s, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vaſt Empire falling into weak Hands, which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raiſing; partly by the unnatural Ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis the Godly*, the next Succeſſor of this *Charles*; who, to make themſelves all Kings, firſt depoſed their Father, and then divided his Eſtate amongſt them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*; four of which falling at laſt into the hands of Strangers, ceaſed to be *French*, and paſſed into ſuch Families as proved the greateſt Enemies of the Crown of *France*; partly by alienating the beſt and goodlieſt Provinces of *France* it ſelf, never again united till theſe latter Days; which made the *French* Kings leſs conſiderable both at home and abroad; which we have touched upon before; and partly by the weakneſs and unworthineſs of the Kings of his Race, there being no queſtion to be made, but *Lewis the Stammering*, *Charles the Bald*, *the Groſs*, and *the Simple*, would have found better Attributes if they had deſerved them. For by this means, the Iſſue of this brave Prince grew ſo deſpicable in the Eyes of their Subjects, that firſt *Eudes*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*; and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes* (both of the Race of *Witibundus*, the laſt Prince of the *Saxons*, and conſequently, both Aliens to the Houſe of *Charles*) poſſeſſed themſelves ſeverally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depreſſed and over-born by their oppoſite Factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on; who being Son of *Hugh* the Great Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger Brother of *Eudes*, and near Kinſman of *Rodolph*; never left practiſing his Party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got poſſeſſion of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of this Houſe had been inveſted formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this ſecond Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjuſt grounds of an Uſurpation, they are theſe that follow.

The ſecond Race of the Kings of France, *of the Carolovinian or Boiarian Line.*

A. Chr.
751 1 *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, ſucceeded in the Office of *Mayre*, *An.* 742. and having got the Regal Crown, vanquiſhed the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and cruſhed the *Saxons*. 18.

769 2 *Charles*, ſurnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Pepin*, ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians* and *Avares*, and vanquiſhed the *Saracens* of *Spain*; Crowned Emperor of the Weſt, upon *Chriſtmas-day*, by Pope *Leo* III. *An.* 800. 46.

815 3 *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles* King of *France*, and Emperor, the laſt ſole Monarch of the *French*, depoſed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons; the Empire of the *French*, after his Deceaſe, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorrain*; and *France* it ſelf diſtracted into many Sovereign Eſtates and Principalities. 26.

841 4 *Charles* II. ſurnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngeſt Son of *Lewis*, King of *France*, and Emperor; vanquiſhed by *Charles the Groſs*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.

879 5 *Lewis* II. ſurnamed *Balbus* or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor.

881 6 *Lewis* III. with *Caroloman* his Brother, the baſe Sons of *Lewis the Stammering*, Uſurpers of the Throne, in the Infancy of *Charles the Simple*.

886 7 *Charles* III. ſurnamed *Craſſus*, or *the Groſs*, King of *Germany*, and Emperor; called into *France*, and elected King, during the minority of *Charles the Simple*. 5.

891 8 *Odo*, or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the Race of *Witikundus*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*; elected by an oppoſite Faction, outed *Charles the Groſs*. 9.

900 9 *Charles* IV. ſurnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Poſthumus* Son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, reſtored unto the Throne of his Fathers; which, after many Troubles raiſed againſt him by *Robert* the Second, Earl of *Anjou*, (whom he ſlew in Battel) he was forced to reſign. 27.

927 10 *Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, Son of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Brother of *Eudes*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Charles the Simple*. 2.

929 11 *Lewis* IV. Son of *Charles the Simple*, ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers Troubles he had lived in *England*, reſtored unto the Regal Throne on the Death of *Rodolph*; oppoſed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes*, by his Brother *Robert* before-mentioned.

958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* IV. diſturbed in his Poſſeſſion by *Hugh Capet*, the eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Hugh*, on the pretenſion of that Houſe, by which at laſt he got the Kingdom.

977 13 *Lewis* V. Son of *Lotharius*, the laſt King of the Houſe of *Charles the Great*. After whoſe Death, (being King only for a Year) the Crown whs ſeized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the Fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the preſent Race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*; ſo called from the greatneſs of his Head, Son of *Hugh the Great*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the Second, Earl of *Anjou*; which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Couſin-german of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who, partly by his own Wits, but chiefly by the weakneſs of the Mungrel-Iſſue of *Charles the Great*, having got the Diadem, tranſmitted it unto his Poſterity; the Crown deſcending in a direct Line from Father to Son, till the Death of *Lewis* the Tenth, ſurnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to underſtand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time ſhut up within narrower bounds than it is at preſent: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; beſides thoſe Provinces which conſtituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and diſmembred from it. How they became reduc'd to the Crown again, will be diſcern'd in the enſuing Hiſtory, and Succeſſion of

The third Race of the Kings of France, *of the* Capetine *or* Saxon *Line.*

An. Chr.

988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom ſufficiently before. 9.

997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* alſo. 34.

1031 3 *Henry*, the eldeſt Son of *Robert*, his younger Brother *Robert* being ſettled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.

1061 4 *Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.

1110 5 *Lewis* VI. Son of *Philip*, ſurnamed the *Groſs*. 28.

1138 6 *Lewis* VII. Son of *Lewis* the Sixth, and Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*; as alſo was his Son and Succeſſor.

1181 7 *Philip* II. ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their ſeveral Appendixes, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.

1224 8 *Lewis* VIII. Son of *Philip Auguſtus*. 3.

1227 9 *Lewis* IX. ſurnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt* and the *Holy Land*. He reſtored *Guienne* to the *Engliſh*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholouſe* and *Maſcon* to the Crown of *France*. 44.

1271 10 *Philip* III. Son of *Lewis* the Ninth. 15.

1286 11 *Philip* IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre*, in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.

1314 12 *Lewis* X. ſurnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre*, in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, *An.* 1305. after whoſe Death the Kingdom of *France* was to have deſcended to *Joan* his Daughter. 2.

1315 13 *Philip* V. called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by Threats, Promiſes, and other Practices, cauſed a Law to paſs to which he gave the Name of the *Salique Law*, for diſabling Women from the Succeſſion to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brother's Daughter: ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf, by his Brother *Charles*; who following his Example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Nieces, *Joan* and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.

1320 14 *Charles* IV. but in true accompt the Fifth of that Name, moſt commonly called *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two laſt Kings. After whoſe Death began the Wars of the *Engliſh* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by King *Edward* the Third, as Son and Heir of *Iſabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip the Fair*, and Siſter to the three laſt Kings. 7.

1328 15 *Philip* VI. ſurnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of King *Philip* the Third, and Uncle to the three laſt Kings, ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique Law*; of which *Charles* it is ſaid, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himſelf was no King. In this Kings Days was fought the famous Battel of *Creſſie*, *An.* 1343. in which the *French* Army conſiſted of about 70000 Soldiers, the *Engliſh* of 11800 only:

yet the Victory fell unto the *Engliſh*; by whoſe Valour fell that Day *John* King of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Soldiers. He added unto his Eſtate, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the County of *Daulphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.

1350 16 *John* the Son of *Philip de Valois*; in whoſe Reign was fought the Battel of *Poictiers*, wherein *Edward the Black Prince*, (ſo called for his black Acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Soldiers, (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* Army, conſiſting of 40000; of which they ſlew, beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soldiers, and took Priſoners King *John* himſelf, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.

1364 17 *Charles* V. the Son of *John*, recovered all thoſe places (except only *Calice*) which the *Engliſh* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wiſe*; but *Lewis* XI. would by no means allow him that Attribute; affirming, that it was but a fooliſh part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withal, the Heir of *Flanders* to Wife. And ſo it proved in the event.

18 *Charles* VI. a weak and diſtracted Prince; in whoſe Reign *Henry* the Fifth of *England*, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy*, againſt that of *Orleans*, married the Lady *Catharine*, Daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France*, during the King's Life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had firſt won the great Battel of *Agincourt*, *Anno* 1415. in which the *Engliſh* having an Army but of 15000, vanquiſhed an Army of the *French*, conſiſting of 52000 Men; of which were ſlain, 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *Engliſh* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Soldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his Predeceſſor, *Philip* the Second, had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* IX.

1423 19 *Charles* VII. Son of *Charles* the Sixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *Engliſh*, (then divided by domeſtick Diſſention) all their Lands and Seigniories in *France*, except *Calice* only.

1461 20 *Lewis* XI. Son of *Charles* the Seventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithal a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicily*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great Wants, or ſuch ſordid Parſimony, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accompts in *Paris*, of two Shillings for new Sleeves to his old Doublet; and three Half-Pence for Liquor to greaſe his Boots.

1484 21 *Charles* VIII. Son of *Lewis* the Eleventh, who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the Right of the Houſe of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.

1498 22 *Lewis* XII. Son of *Charles*, and Grandſon of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of the Fifth) ſucceeded as the next Heir-male of the Houſe of *Valois*. He diſpoſſeſſed *Lodowick Sforza*, of the Dutchy of *Millain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand the Catholick*; but held neither long. By his Marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predeceſſor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his Houſe; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his Death, the *Engliſh*, to prevent the growing greatneſs of *Spain*, began to cloſe in with the *French*, and grew into great Correſpondencies with them; inſomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis* XIII. (except *Francis* the Second, a King of one Year, and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.

1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angoleſm*, Grandſon of *John* of *Angoleſm*, one of the younger Sons of the ſaid *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, ſucceeded on the Death of *Lewis* XII. without Iſſue Male. Took Priſoner at the Battel of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the Fifth, with whom he held perpetual Wars; he being as unwilling to endure a Superior, as the Emperor was to admit an Equal. 32.

1547 24 *Henry* II. Son of *Francis*, recovered *Callice* from the *Engliſh*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities, ever ſince Members of this Kingdom.

1559 25 *Francis* II. Son of *Henry* the Second, King of the *Scots* alſo, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.

1560 26 *Charles* IX. Brother of *Francis* the Second, the Author of the Maſſacre at *Paris*. 14.

1574 27 *Henry* III. elected King of *Poland*, in the Life of his Brother, whom he ſucceeded at his Death. The laſt King of the Houſe of *Valois*, ſtripped of his Life and Kingdom by the *Guiſian* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.

1589 28 *Henry* IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendoſme*, ſucceeded as the next Heir-Male to *Henry* III. in the Right of the Houſe of *Bourbon*, deſcended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son of *Lewis* the Ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Breſſe* unto the Crown, together with the Eſtates of *Bearn*, and *Baſe Navarre*; and after a ten Years time of Peace, was villanouſly murdered by *Ravillac*, in the Streets of *Paris*. 21.

1610 29 *Lewis* XIII. Son of *Henry* the Fourth; the moſt abſolute King of *France*, ſince the Death of *Charles the Great*. For to the reduction of the ſcattered and diſmembred Provinces, (the work of his many Predeceſſors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garriſons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the leaſt in number) ſeized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and ſurprized that of *Lorrain*; both which he held until his Death. This Prince was born the 27th of *September*, in the Year 1601. crowned the 18th of *October* 1610. 32.

1642 30 *Lewis* XIV. Son of *Lewis* XIII. and of the Lady *Anne*, eldeſt Daughter of *Philip* the Third of *Spain*; ſucceeded at the Age of four Years, under the Government of his Mother: the thirtieth King of the Line of *Capet*, the forty third from *Charles the Great*, and the ſixty fourth King of *France* (or rather of the *French*) now living. This Prince was born the fifth of *September*, 1638. crowned the ſeventh of *June*, 1654. He married *Mary Thereſia*, Daugh- of *Philip* IV. King of *Spain*, in the Year 1659. by whom he had *Lewis* (XV.) now *Daulphine* or Heir of the Crown of *France*, born the 2d of *November*, 1661. married to *Mary*, Siſter to the Elector of *Bavaria*, in the Year 1680.

March 7. by whom he has three Sons, 1. *Lewis* Duke of *Burgundy*, born the 6th of *Aug.* 1682. 2. *Philip* Duke of *Anjou*, born *Nov.* 19. 1683. 3. *Gaſton*, Duke of *Berry*, born *Auguſt* 31. 1686. The Mother of theſe Princes died in the Year 1690.

As for the *Government* of theſe Kings, it is meerly *Regal*; or, to give it the true Name, *Deſpotical*; ſuch as that of a Maſter over his Servants: the King's Will going for a Law; and his Edicts as valid as a Sentence of the Court of Parliament. *Quod principi placuerit* Legis *habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the *Roman* Emperors, as *Juſtinian* tells us in his *Inſtitutes*; and the *French* King's deſcending from *Charles the Great* claim it as their own. The King's Edicts always ending with theſe binding words, *Car tel eſt noſtre plaiſir*, For ſuch is Our Pleaſure. And though he ſometimes ſends his Edicts to be verified, or approved, in the Parliament of *Paris*; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the *Chamber of Accompts*, there holden; yet this is nothing but a meer formality, and point of Circumſtance; thoſe Courts not daring to refuſe what the King propoſeth. It is *Car tel eſt noſtre plaiſir*, which there goeth for Law. And by this intimation of his Royal Pleaſure, doth he require ſuch Taxes as the neceſſity of his Affairs, the greedineſs of his Officers, or the importunity of Suiters do ſuggeſt unto him: the Patrimony of the Crown being ſo exhauſted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garriſons, reward ſuch as deſerve well of him, and ſupport thoſe that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaſeth on the backs of his Subjects; againſt which there is no diſpute by the Common People, though many times the great Princes have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them alſo inſtrumental to the publick Slavery, the Kings are willing to admit them to ſome part of their Spoils, to give them ſome Exemption from thoſe common burdens; and to connive at the oppreſſing of their Tenants, againſt all good Conſcience: that being ſo priviledged themſelves, they may not interrupt the King in his Regal Courſes.

As for the *French* Parliaments, or Aſſembly of the three Eſtates, which heretofore were of great Credit and Renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publick Liberty, being firſt diſcontinued by reaſon of the ſharp and continual Wars which the *Engliſh* made in this Kingdom, for the ſpace of a hundred Years and upwards, they afterward became much weaken'd by the Policy of King *Lewis* XI. and the Kings ſucceeding; and finally, by King *Lewis* XIII. were laid by for ever. For, finding them to retain ſomething ſtill of their ancient Stomach, and apt enough to claſh with that abſolute Sovereignty which his Predeceſſors had attained to, he reſolved to make no more uſe of them for the times to come; inſtead whereof, he ordained another kind of Meeting, which he called *La Aſſemble des Notables*; that is to ſay, the Aſſembly of ſome principal Men, compoſed of ſome ſelected Perſons out of every Order or Eſtate (of his own nomination) whereunto ſhould be added ſome Counſellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which, being fewer in number, would not breed ſuch a confuſion as the others did, and be withal more pliant and conformable to the King's Deſires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before-mentioned, being but as ſo many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Weſtminſter*) are theſe that follow; that is to ſay, The Parliament 1. Of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of *France* ſpecial, *Champagne*, *Picardy*, the Provinces and Eſtates of *Anjou*, *La Beauſſe*, *Berry*, *Poictou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the County of *Lionois*. 2. Of *Rouen* for the Dukedom of *Normandy*. 3. Of *Renes*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 4. Of *Bourdeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limouſin* and *Perigort*. 5. Of *Tholouſe*, for the Earldom of *Languedoc* and *Quercu*. 6. Of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Provence*. 7. Of *Grenoble* for the Country of *Daulphine*. And 8. Of *Dijon*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the ſmall Country of *La Breſſe*; to which is added of late times by King *Lewis* XIII. the little Parliament of *Pau*, for the Country of *Bearn*. Beſides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in ſome principal Cities, called *Courts Preſidial*, reſembling thoſe with us at *York*, and the Marches of *Wales*, whilſt they continued in that Power and Juriſdiction which at firſt they had. And for the better ordering of the whole Eſtate, (with reference ſpecially to matters Military) it is divided into twelve ſeveral and diſtinct Governments; that is to ſay, 1. Of the Iſle of *France*, 2. *Burgundy*, 3. *Normandy*, 4. *Guienne*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6 *Champagne*, 7. *Picardy*, 8. *Languedoc*, 9 *Provence*, 10. *Daulphine*, 11. *Lionois*, and 12. *Orleanois*, for in this order they were ranked by the laſt King; over every one of which is placed a Governour, with ſuch authority as the Lords Lieutenants have in *England* in their ſeveral Counties; all of them carrying Matters with a very high hand on the common People, and ſometimes ſtanding on terms alſo with the Kings themſelves; but inſtrumental notwithſtanding to the common Servitude, which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before is ſaid.

The Power of the *French* King over his Subjects, being ſo tranſcendent, it cannot be, but that his Forces muſt be very great, and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not truſt the common People with the uſe of Arms, for fear they ſhould refuſe to pay the accuſtomed Taxes, or forſake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an Eſſay of what a *French* King is able to do in this kind, it is ſaid, that *Charles* IX. in Garriſons and ſeveral Armies in the Field, had 15000 Horſe, and 100000 Foot, of his own Nation; beſides 50000 Horſe and Foot of *Swiſſes*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more than what was done by *Lewis* XIII. within few Years paſt, who had at once five Royal Armies in the Field, in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer than 120000 fighting Men in Pay and Action, for ſome Years together. Nor did this laſt King keep up the Military Power of *France* for Land-ſervice only, at ſo high a pitch, but he alſo brought the Naval Power thereof into eſtimation: For whereas the *French* Kings before his Time, were very weak and inconſiderable on the Seas, and had ſcarce any Men of War, but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations; this King became ſo ſtrong in Shipping in a little ſpace, (I doubt ſome neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigg and arm 1000 Sail of good Ships, and upwards, fit for any Service. But to return again to the Power at Land, in which the force of theſe Kings doth conſiſt eſpecially; it is conceived by ſome, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the Field for a ſudden Service, no leſs than 60 Companies of Men of Arms, 20 Cornets of Light-Horſe, and 5 Companies of *Harquebuſiers* on Horſeback, which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Enſigns of *French* Foot, and 40 of *Swiſſes*, and yet leave his Garriſons well manned, and his Forts and Frontiers well and ſufficiently defended.

What the Revenues are in a State ſo ſubject to the Will and Pleaſure of the King is hard to ſay; being alſo more or leſs, as the Times and their Occaſions vary: according unto which, the Revenues of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* XI. gathered one Million and a half of Crowns; *Francis* I. brought them to three Millions; his Succeſſor *Henry* II. to ſix; *Charles* IX. to ſeven; *Henry* III. to ten; afterwards they were inhanced to fifteenth. And in the Time of *Henry* IV. the Treaſurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not ſhame to ſay, That his Maſter had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five Millions *Sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far ſhort of thoſe infinite Sums which are exhauſted from the People; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the King's Exchequer. But what need more be ſaid, than that of *Lewis* XI. who uſed to ſay, that *France* was a Meadow which he mowed every Year, and as often as he liſted, And indeed their Impoſitions cannot but be great, ſince there are no leſs than 30000 Under-Officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe ſprung that Wiſh of *Maximilian* the Emperor, which was, that *he* (if it were poſſible) *might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldeſt might be a God after him; and the ſecond, King of* France. And this was alſo the cauſe, that in the Wars between *Charles* V. and *Francis* I. when the Emperor's Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, &c. with the reſt of his Titles; the King commanded the Herald to return the Challenge from *Francis* King of *France*; commanding him to repeat *France* as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his Stile. And on the other ſide of no leſs Bravery and Fanſie was the ſaying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being diſſwaded by one of his Commanders, from the War with the *Netherlands*, in regard of the great ſupport they were like to have from the Queen of *England*, the King of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunſwick*, the Earls of *Naſſaw*, &c. Tuſh Man! (ſaid he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our ſide than theirs; that is to ſay, the Emperor of *Mexico* and *Peru*; the Kings of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Milain*, the Earls of *Hapſpurg*, *Charolois*, &c. But letting paſs theſe flaſhes and conceits of Wit; certain it is, (to ſay the truth) conſidering the compactedneſs thereof within it ſelf, the admirable fertility of the Soil, the incredible multitudes of People, and the conveniency of ſituation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; the Name of *France* might ballance all the others Titles.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom were firſt of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the *French Palace*; and ſo called either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it, or from the *Gennets* of *Spain*, over whom he triumphed at the Battel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the Days of S. *Lewis*. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring; wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2. Of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers, ſo called, *quaſi pares inter ſe*; ſaid to be inſtituted by *Charles the Great*, in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*. Six of theſe were of the Clergy, 1. The Archbiſhop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2. the Biſhop and Duke of *Laon*, 3. the Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*, 4. the Biſhop and Earl of *Beuvois*, 5. the Biſhop and Earl of *Noyon*, and 6. the Biſhop and Earl of *Chalons*. And ſix others of the Temporality, 1. the Duke of *Burgundy*, 2. Duke of *Normandy*, 3. Duke of *Guienne*, 4. Earl of *Tholouſe*, 5. Earl of *Champagne*, 6. Earl of *Flanders*. Theſe are they ſo much memorized in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but falſly, and on no ground; it being impoſſible that thoſe ſhould be of the foundation of *Charles the Great*, in whoſe Time there were none of thoſe Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouſe* only. Therefore with better reaſon it may be thus concluded on, that the *Twelve Peers* were inſtituted by *Charles the Great*, tho' that Honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Eſtates and Titles; but left at large to be diſpoſed of according to the perſonal Merit of the beſt deſervers: it being moſt ſure, that neither *Rowland* nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the Titles above-mentioned. But for the fixing of this Dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is ſaid, by ſome, to have been done by *Hugh Capet*; others refer it to *Lewis* VII. in whoſe Times all thoſe Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum Natura*. But by whomſoever firſt ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct, and others of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they ſee occaſion, to gratifie a well deſerver. Only at Coronations, and ſuch publick Triumphs, the cuſtom is, to chuſe ſome principal Perſons out of the Nobility, to repreſent thoſe Temporal Peers; as at the Coronation of *Lewis* XIII the places of the Temporal Peers were ſupplied by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soiſſons*, the Duke of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Eſperon*; the Eccleſiaſtical Peers remaining as at firſt they were. So that tho' *Charles the Great* might deviſe this Order, and inſtitute the firſt *Twelve Peers*, as is commonly ſaid; yet was not that high Honour fixed in any of thoſe Temporal Princes, till the Times ſucceeding; but given to Men of ſeveral Houſes, according to the King's Pleaſure, and their well deſervings.

3. Of the *Star*; begun by *John* King of *France*, *Anno* 1352. They wore about their Necks a Collar of Gold, at which hanged a *Star*; the words, *Monſtrant Regibus aſtra viam*. This Order was diſgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his Guard; and ſo it ended.

4. Of St. *Michael*, inſtituted by King *Lewis* XI. *Anno* 1409. It conſiſted firſt of 30 Knights, which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask, down to the Ground, with a Border interwoven with Cockle-ſhells of Gold, interlaced and furred with Ermins; with an Hood of crimſon Velvet, and a long Tippet. About their Necks they wore a Collar woven with Cockle-ſhells; the word, *Immenſi tremor Oceani*. It took the Name from the Picture of St. *Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the Collar. Some think, that the invocation of St. *Michael*, was in alluſion to the tenth of *Daniel*. Others ſay, he took St. *Michael* in regard of an Apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the Seventh on *Orleans* Bridge, in his Wars againſt the *Engliſh*. The Seat thereof was firſt at St. *Michael's Mount*, in *Normandy*, a place which had held longeſt for the *French* Kings, againſt the *Engliſh*; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. St. *Michael's* Day the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount St. Michael* the Name of the Herald which did attend upon the Order, which in moſt things are precedented that of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghoſt*; ordained by *Henry* the Third, *Anno* 1579. to rectifie the Abuſes which had crept into that of St. *Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy Perſons: to reduce which to its firſt eſteem, he ordered that the Collar of St. *Michael* ſhould be given to none who had not firſt been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghoſt*; into which none to be admitted, but ſuch as can prove their Nobility by three Deſcents. Their Oath is, to maintain the *Romiſh Catholick* Religion, and perſecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe, a black Velvet Mantle, powdered with Lillies and Flames of Gold; with a Croſs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the Name of the *Holy Ghoſt*, becauſe he was on *Whitſunday* choſen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as thoſe of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*, and of the *Thiſtle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings, in the Days of *Pharamond*, and his three firſt Succeſſors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clouis the Great* altered them to *Azure*. Some of *Flower de Luces*, *Or*; and *Charles* the Sixth, to *Azure*, three *Flower de Luces*, *Or*. In which laſt changes, they were followed by the Kings of *England*; varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did; and by the Princes of the Blood, who bare the Arms of *France*, with ſome difference only, for the diſtinction of their Houſes.

There are in FRANCE.

Archbiſhops 17. Biſhops 107.

And Univerſities 15. *viz.*

1. *Paris.*
2. *Orleans.*
3. *Bourget.*
4. *Poictiers.*
5. *Angiers.*
6. *Caen.*
7. *Rhemes.*
8. *Bourdeaux.*
9. *Tholouſe.*
10. *Niſmes.*
11. *Montpelier.*
12. *Avignon.*
13. *Lions.*
14. *Beſancon.*
15. *Dole.*

And ſo much for FRANCE.

THE

THE
Pyrenean Hills.

BEtwixt *France* and *Spain* are the Mountains called *Pyrenæi*, the reaſon of which Name is very differently reported. Some fetch the original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*; ſaid by old Fablers to have been here raviſhed by *Hercules*. Others conceive they were ſo called, becauſe much ſtricken with Lightnings, thoſe *Celeſtial Flames*. But being the Name doth moſt undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* Word which ſignifieth *Fire*. The more probable Opinion is, That they took this Name from being fired once by Shepherds, (theſe Hills being then extreamly overgrown with Woods:) the Flame whereof raged ſo extreamly, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran ſtreaming down the Mountains many Days together, the fame of which invited many Foreign Nations to invade the Country. Which Accident they place 880 Years before the Birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, adds no ſmall Authority; who ſpeaking of this Conflagration, (as *Ariſtotle* and *Strabo* alſo do) addeth withal, Τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ συμβεβηκὸς κληθῆναι Πυρηναῖα, ἀπὸ τοῦ πυρὸς συχνὴ ἡμέρως ἐπιπλέγοντος: that is to ſay, theſe Mountains had the Name of *Pyrenees*, from the Fire which many Days together ſo extreamly raged. And this Tradition backed by ſo good Authority, I ſhould rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying dark or ſhady; though true it is, that theſe Mountains anciently were very much overgrown with Woods, as before was noted.

But whatſoever was the reaſon why they had this Name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural Bound betwixt the great and puiſſant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their Deſires and Purpoſes againſt each other, as well as their Dominions; if any thing could put a Bound to the Deſigns of ambitious Princes. Yet not more ſeparated by theſe Mountains, than by thoſe Jealouſies and Fears which they have long ſince harboured of one another; each of them manifeſtly affecting the Supreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Hiſtorian doth of others on the like occaſion, *Aut montibus, aut mutuo, metu ſeparantur*. The Mountains alſo make the *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoyns *Spain* to the reſt of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-weſt, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently waſhing the South-eaſt thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarcho*, (the *Ocaſo* of *Ptolomy*) not far from the City of *Baionne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*, from thence continued South-eaſtwards, betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the Ancients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Roſas*, one of the Port-Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be eighty *Spaniſh* Leagues, at three Miles to a League. The higheſt part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latins* named *Canus*: from which (as it is ſaid by ſome) there is a proſpect in a clear Day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt the higheſt part of all theſe Mountains; and took this Name from the whiteneſs and hoarineſs thereof, as having on its top or ſummit, a Cap of Snow for moſt part of the Year. In which reſpect, as the *Alpes* took their Name, *ab Albo*; that, in the *Sabine Dialect*, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latins* was called *Album*, which before we noted; ſo did Mount *Lebanon*, in *Syria*, take its Name from *Leban*; which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth White, and *Lebanah*, Whiteneſs. Such People as inhabit in this mountainous Tract, have been, and ſhall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and ſo go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous People of theſe Mountains, compelled *Sertorius*, in his haſty paſſage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla*'s Faction, to pay them Tribute for his Paſs: to which when ſome of his Soldiers murmured, as thinking it diſhonourable to a *Proconſul of Rome*, to pay Tribute to the barbarous Nations; the prudent General replied, that *he bought only Time*; a Commodity which they that deal in haughty Enterpriſes, muſt needs take up at any rate.

Theſe Hills have acquir'd a conſiderable addition of Fame by the Treaty of Peace betwixt *France* and *Spain*, commonly called the *Treaty of the Pyrenees*.

OF

SPAIN.

HAving thus croſſed the *Pyrenees*, we are come to *SPAIN*, the moſt Weſtern part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *France*; from which ſeparated by the ſaid Mountains; but more particularly bounded upon the North with the *Cantabrian*, on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South, with the Straits of *Gibralter*, on the Eaſt with the *Mediterranean*, and on the North-eaſt with thoſe of *Pyrenees*. The figure of it compared, by *Strabo*, to an Ox's Hide ſpread upon the Ground; the neck whereof being that *Iſthmus* which unites it to *France*.

This Country hath in divers Ages been as diverſly named. 1. *Heſperia*, either from *Heſperus*, a ſuppoſed King hereof, or from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, under which it was ſuppoſed to be ſituate, as being the fartheſt Country Weſtward; to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Heſperia*, alſo named *Heſperia minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Country of *Aſia* which we now call *Georgia*; as *Celtiberia*, from the mixture of thoſe *Aſian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which Name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and ſometimes *Strabo*. 3. *Hiſpania*, as the ſoundeſt Judgments agree, from *Panus* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Græcians* call it Σπανία, as may be proved in many places, that eſpecially of the 15*th* to the *Romans*, ver. 28. Ἀπελεύσομαι δι᾽ ὑμῶν εἰς τὴν Σπανίαν, *I will come by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Græcians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the Name of *Spania*, which they often uſed; to which the *Spaniards*, according to their cuſtom, adding *E*, (as in *Eſcola*, *Eſcuda*, &c.) made it *Eſpania*, and now *Hiſpania*. In like manner, as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at firſt, *Spalis*, (according hereunto, the Biſhop hereof, in the Council of *Eliberis*, ſubſcribed himſelf by the Name of *Sabinus Spalenſis*) in tract of time was called *Hiſpalis*. And yet I muſt not pretermit the Fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the Names of moſt places from the *Punick* Language, will have it to be called *Spanija*, or *Sphanija*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phœnicians*, at their firſt diſcovery, from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* Tongue ſignifies a *Conie*, with which that Country much abounded in the former times, the *Romans* being hence furniſhed with them. Let the *Reader* it like as he liſt.

The greateſt length hereof is reckon'd at 800 Miles; the breadth, where it is broadeſt at 500; the whole circumference, 2480 *Italian* Miles. But *Marina* meaſuring the compaſs of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 Miles of *Italian* meaſure. And though according to the ſmalleſt computation, it be above 460 Miles in compaſs, more than *France*; yet it is far ſhort thereof in numbers of People: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 Millions of living Souls; whereas *Spain* is reckon'd to contain but 8 Millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reaſons of which diſproportions, are, 1. The continual Wars which they had for 900 Years together againſt the *Moors* in their own Country; by which they were conſumed in the very growth. 2. The Expulſion of ſo many thouſand Families of *Jews* and *Moors*, 124000 Families of the one, in the time of *Ferdinand the Catholick*; and 110000 of the other by King *Philip* the Third; which was as the lopping off of a main Limb from the Body Politick, though without any loſs to the Eccleſiaſtical. 3. The unneceſſary Wars maintained againſt all the reſt of Chriſtendom, ever ſince the Time of *Charles* the Fifth, out of meer ambition, before they were well cured of their former Wounds. 4. The infinite Plantations made by them in the *Eaſt* and *Weſtern-Indies*, and all along the Sea-coaſts of *Africa*; and thoſe great Garriſons maintained in *Milain*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-Countries*, and their Towns in *Africk*; conſiſting, for the moſt part, of natural *Spaniards*. 5. The barrenneſs of the Country in many places, unable to ſuſtain great Multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of Men to labour and manure the Land. And 6. and laſt of all, the *Impotency of both Sexes* for Generation; the Men being generally more hot upon their Luſts, than able for Generation; and the Women, for the moſt part, beginning to be Mothers ſo extreamly young, that Nature is decayed and ſpent in them, before they have run half their courſe. And 'tis a moſt true and undoubted Maxim, That the greatneſs of Cities, and populouſneſs of Kingdoms and Commonwealths, do much depend on the generative Virtue of the Men, and the nutritive Virtue of the Soil in which they live.

It is ſituate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate *Zone*, and almoſt in the midſt of the fourth and ſixth *Climates*; the longeſt Day being fifteen Hours and a quarter in length, in the moſt Northern parts hereof; but in the extream South, near to *Gibralter*, not above fourteen. Which ſituation of this Country, rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, ſeldom obſcured with Miſts and Vapours; and not ſo much ſubject to Diſeaſes as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt People, deſcending from the *Goths*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the ancient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superſtition; from the *Moors* Melancholy; Pride from the *Goths*; and from the old *Spaniards*, the deſire of Liberty. The *Jews* firſt planted here by the Emperor *Adrian*; who having totally baniſhed them their native Country, ſent them hither to dwell; the total number of which Plantation is ſaid to amount to 500000 Men, Women, and Children; and yet their numbers much increaſed in the time of *Ulidor*, *Ulet*, the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; who having made a Conqueſt of *Spain*, ſent hither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to aſſure it to him. And ſo we have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*; the Conqueſt of it by the *Goths*, and their ſetling here, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter; which ſeveral Nations, by long time, and intermarriages together, were at laſt incorporated into one. For their Condition, it is ſaid that they are highly conceited of themſelves, great Braggards, and extreamly Proud, even in the loweſt ebb of Fortune. Which laſt appeareth by the Tale of a poor Cobler on his Death-bed; who (as *Barklaie* in his *Icon Animorum*, reporteth the Story) commanded his eldeſt Son, coming to him for his laſt Bleſſing, *to endeavour to retain the Majeſty worthy ſo great a Family*; *Memineris* (ſaid he) *in majeſtatem uſſurgere familia tua dignam*. The ſame Author relateth another Story to the like purpoſe. A Woman of this Country, attended on by three of her Brats, went a begging from Door to Door; ſome *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her caſe, offered her to take into their Service the bigger of her Boys: but ſhe, proud, though poor, ſcorning as ſhe ſaid, that any of her Lineage ſhould endure a Prenticeſhip, returned this Anſwer, *Qui aut tu, aut ego, ſciamus, in quæ fata ſit genitus? For ought ſhe, or any knew, her Son* (ſimply as he ſtood there) *might live to be King of* Spain. Not much unlike to theſe, is that Tale of a *Spaniſh Cavaliero*; who being for ſome Faults by him committed, whipped through the principal Streets of *Paris*, and keeping a ſober pace, was adviſed by a Friend to make more haſte, that he might the ſooner be out of his Pain. But he, half in Choler, replied, *That he would not loſe the leaſt ſtep of his pace for all the whipping in* Paris. For indeed, their Gate is Gennet-wiſe, very ſtately and majeſtical.

Of Temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to Women, and yet not very able for *Generation*. And this ſtrong inclination unto Women which they find in themſelves, makes them ſo jealous of their Wives, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church; and then too veiled and ſo hooded, one can hardly ſee them; and not that neither only, but attended with their Damoſels, and ſome truſty ſhe-friend, that is to give an account of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambaſſador from *Spain* in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Time, uſed to find fault with the promiſcuous ſitting of Men and Women in the Church uſed here in *England*, accounting it to be a very great incentive unto *Laſciviouſneſs*. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of the *Maſters of the Requeſts*, is ſaid to have replied, That indeed in *Spain*, where the People even in the time of *Divine Service*, could not abſtain from impure Thoughts and unclean Geſtures, that mingled kind of ſitting was not ſo allowable; but the *Engliſh* were of another Temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is poſſible, this humour of Jealouſie might be derived on them from the *Moors*, who in the ſtrict guarding of their Women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors; it being Death in *Barbary*, to this very Day, for any Man to ſee one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they ſee a Man, though but through a Caſement, they do not preſently cry out. A frenzy which much rageth in moſt *Southern* People, but not predominant in the *Northern*; who do not only ſuffer their Wives to ſit with other Men in the Church, but even in the open and common Baths alſo; two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather die an hundred Deaths than give conſent to. But though the Women are not permitted to ſtir abroad, the Men take liberty enough, and are as good ſmell-Feaſts as in any Country: it being obſerved of them by a very good Writer, that howſoever in their own Houſes they are temperate and content with little, yet when they go unto a Feaſt, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and deſirous to eat good Chear, as any People whatſoever.

But not to conceal their Virtues, and make our ſelves merry at their Follies, (wherein all other Nations have a ſhare with them) they are queſtionleſs a People very grave in their Carriages, in offices of Piety very devout, and to their King very obedient, whoſe Greatneſs they affect more cordially, than any Subjects in the World: exact in doing Juſtice upon all Offenders, which commonly they adminiſter without partiality: indulgent unto one another, and of their Duties to their Betters not unmindful. But that which deſerveth the greateſt commendation in them, is an unwearied Patience in ſuffering Adverſities, accompanied with a reſolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Diſcoveries they ſhewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious Rewards; withal, of very daring Spirits, great Undertakers for the moſt part; and to ſay truth, the greateſt enlargers of their Dominions, (according to the advantage of their ſituation) of any Nation under Heaven. For having firſt either exterminated or ſubdued the *Moors*, which for many hundreds of Years were poſſeſſed of this Continent, the *Aragonians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added to their Eſtate the Iſlands of *Majorca* and *Minorca*, the Kingdoms of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*; the *Caſtilians* lying on both ſides of the Streights, firſt took in ſome of the oppoſite Towns on the Coaſt of *Africk*, next, conquered the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Iſlands*; and finally, diſcovered and ſubdued the moſt part of *America*: the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea-coaſt on the Weſtern Ocean, poſſeſſed themſelves of the *Azores*, moſt of the Sea-Towns of *Morocco*, and the Land of *Guinnia*; and doubling the *Cape of good Hope*, made themſelves Maſters of many Ports and Iſlands of great conſequence in the *Eaſt-Indies*; adding thereto, in fine, the large Country of *Brazill*, in that part of *America* which lay fitteſt for them: and the *Navarrois* (to conclude, though locked up by their greater Neighbours from all Trade at Sea, and conſequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their Eſtates the moſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large Poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France*, thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is ſaid, that *the French are wiſer than they ſeem*; and the *Spaniards ſeem wiſer than they are*; wherein they agree with many particular Men of other Nations, who according to the Philoſopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non eſſe, quam eſſe & non videri.*

In matters of War, the *Spaniards* are obſerved to be generally too heavy, ſlow, and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one loſing as many fair occaſions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haſte; but between them both they make one good Soldier; who, according to the preſent Opportunities, is to make uſe of the Spur of Courage, or the Bit of Reſpite. But of the ſtrange and many differences in Temper, Humour, and Affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have ſpoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are ſober, loving their Husbands or Friends; wonderful delicate, curious in Painting or Perfuming: And though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *Engliſh* Proverb, that *none are worſe ſhod than the Shoo-makers Wife*. Herein in worſe condition than the Women of *France*; who, though they are reſtrained from Wine before their Marriage; yet, after that, they take what liberty they liſt, and are no more reſtrained from it than the other Sex. But this is the leaſt liberty which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniſh*: theſe being ſo watched and over-looked, that it is hardly poſſible for them to hold ſpeech with any Man, in buſineſs of moſt importance, and much leſs in matters of *Civilities* only; thoſe having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the preſence of their Husbands, without any diſtruſt or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous ſtrong; and, beyond belief, patient of the throws of Child-bed: *Strabo* relating how one of theſe Women being hired for Harveſt-work, and finding her travail come upon her, becauſe ſhe would not loſe her Days Wages, withdrew her ſelf into a Buſh; where, being eaſed of her burden, ſhe returned from one Labour to another. And many of them, at this Day, uſe not to keep their Chambers above three Days after their Delivery, and then apply themſelves to their Houſhold-buſineſs, without either danger or delay.

The Language is not the ſame in all places, though all called the *Spaniſh*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and ſome parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in theſe parts have had much Trade and Negotiation. In *Granada*, and ſome parts of *Andaluſia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpuxarras*, the *Arabick* or *Mooriſh* Language ſtill remains in uſe. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biſcay* ſpecially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made ſubject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spaniſh*, or *Caſtilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breerwood* in his *Enquiries*, reporting, that he hath ſeen a Letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spaniſh*. *Merula* ſhews a Copy of the like, *pag*. 300. By reaſon of which conſonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue, are generally the *Gothick*, *Arabick*, and old *Spaniſh*, and in ſome places the *French* alſo, as before is ſaid; thoſe People having made great Conqueſts, and having had great Negotiations in this Country. It is ſaid to be a very lofty ſwelling Speech, as if it were faſhioned to command.

And as their Language, ſo their Laws do owe a great part of themſelves to the Laws of *Rome*; the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally uſed amongſt them, but intermixt with many Cuſtoms of the *Goths*, and the Edicts or Conſtitutions of their ſeveral Kings. Thoſe of the *Goths* being firſt committed unto Writing, and reduced to order by *Euricus* the firſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*: thoſe of *Caſtile* digeſted by the command of *Ferdinand* III. *Anno* 1296. into Seven Books, called the *Partidas*; not finiſhed till the time of his Son *Alphonſo*. *Leges* Hiſpaniarum *quas partitas vocant, in volumen redegit*, as *Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. The like done by King *James* the Firſt, for the Realm of *Arragon*, *Ann*. 1248. reſpectively confirmed and ratified by the King's ſucceeding. Authorized to be read, diſputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*, the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the Fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for Delight, Pleaſures, and Commodities; which here appear in greater ripeneſs and perfection, than in other places. But, for the moſt part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbred with wild and rocky Mountains, or of ſo hot a nature, and ſo ſandy withal, that it is not very fit for Tillage; and ſo deficient in Water, as not good for Paſturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*, where is is *good*, no Country *better*; where *bad* and barren, few ſo inconvenient, and not any *worſe*. But this defect of outward Beauty and Commodities, is recompenced by thoſe within, affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and ſome Mines of Silver; of which laſt ſo abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations. And it is ſaid of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani*, (now part of *Andaluzia*) he received 3000 Pound weight daily, for a long time together. The principal Commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licoras, a fine ſort of Wool, Cork, Roſin, Limons, Raiſins, Oranges, and Fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the Staff of Life, they are ſo defective, that they receive the greateſt part of what they ſpend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair nor many, the Country being not able to breed them; ſo that their Diet is on Salads, and Fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what Fleſh he ſhall buy for himſelf and his Family, which if he ſend for to the Butcher, or Poulterer, by the ſmalleſt Child, able to do the Errand for him, he is ſure not to be defrauded in price or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant Fare, as if they ſurfeited with the plenty of all Proviſions: handſomly checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Soldier, Sir *Roger Williams*, of whom it is ſaid, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus fooliſhly bragging of his Country Sallads, he gave him this anſwer, *You have indeed good* Sawce *in* Spain, *but we have dainty* Beefs, Veals, *and* Muttons *to eat with that* Sawce; *and as God made Beaſts to live upon the Graſs of the Earth, ſo he made Men to live upon them.* And it is obſerved, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good Diſh to his Supper, you ſhall find all the Feathers ſcattered before his Door by the next Morning.

And as it is in private Houſes, ſo for travelling alſo, the Inns and *Vents* of this Country are very ill provided; inſomuch, that moſt Men that would not go ſupperleſs to Sleep, carry their Proviſion at their Saddle-bows, and Men of worth their Bedding alſo. So poor and mean is the Entertainment in theſe places.

Spain is in many places, not to ſay moſt, very thin of People, and almoſt deſolate. The Cauſes are firſt a bad Religion. 2. The Tyrannical Inquiſition. 3. The multitude of Whores. 4. The barrenneſs of the Soil. 5. The wretched Lazineſs of the Inhabitants, who ſtalk about in long Cloaks and Swords. 6. The Expulſion of the *Jews* and *Moors*; the firſt of which were planted there by *Adrian* the Emperor. 7. Wars and Plantations. In all the Towns, but eſpecially in the South and Weſt parts of *Spain*, a great many Ruins of Houſes are ſeen. About a quarter of a League round a Town you ſhall ſee the Ground plowed, and all the reſt neglected. There is little Hay, and above half the Kingdom is Mountains. Mr. *Willoughby* in his Travels, *P.* 493. This Gentleman travelled all over *Spain*.

Here lived in ancient times, the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quelled by *Hercules*; and in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire, 1. *Seneca* the *Tragedian*, and 2. the *Philoſopher* of the ſame Name; a Man of that happy Memory, that he could repeat 2000 Names in the ſame order that they were rehearſed; as alſo 3. *Quintilian* the Orator, 4 *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds. 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator; 8. *Juſtin*, and 9. *Paulus Oroſius* the Hiſtorian, this laſt a Chriſtian. In the middle times, 10. *Iſidore*, Biſhop of *Sevil*, 11. *Julian*, and 12. *Hildephonſus*, Biſhop of *Toledo*; and after them, *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; Men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximines*, and 2. *Arias Montanus*, famous for the Editions of the Holy Bible. 3. *Maſius*, a learned Commentator. 4. *Oſorius*, well ſeen in the *Latin* Elegancies; and before all, as well in induſtry as time. 5. *Toſtatus*, Biſhop of *Avila*; a Man ſo copious and induſtrious in his Writings, that it is thought he writ more Sheets than he lived Days. But of late times we find but few of their Works which have paſſed the Mountains; the *Latin* which they writ, being very courſe, and ſavouring too much of the *Schoolman*, (wherein their excellency conſiſts) and therefore they ſet out their Works moſt commonly in their own Tongue only. The chief for *Soldiery* amongſt them, were formerly *Viriatus*, who held out ſo long againſt the *Romans*. *Trajan* and *Theodoſius*, both *Roman* Emperors. *Theodorick* the Second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conqueror of the *Suevians*. *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their Atchievements againſt the *Moors*; and in late time, *Gonſalvo* the *Great Captain* who ſubdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Chriſtian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spaniſh* Tradition, was firſt here planted by St. *James* the Apoſtle, within four Years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very conſtant a long time together; yet of late Days, *Baronius*, and other learned Men of the Church of *Rome*, do moſt deſervedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpoſe of coming hither, is evident in his *15th* Chapter to the *Romans*; and that he did come hither accordingly, is poſitively affirmed by St. *Chryſoſtom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in *Anno* 61. as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great Service, but joined with St. *Paul*; though not in the Journey, yet in the ſending of Biſhops and other Presbyters, to ſecond the beginnings made by that Apoſtle. For it is ſaid expreſly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Cteſiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaletius*, *Heſychius*, and *Euphraſius*, being at *Rome*, ordained Biſhops by the two Apoſtles, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in* Hiſpanias *directi*, were diſpatched into *Spain* to preach the Goſpel. Biſhops, moſt likely, of thoſe Cities where they ſuffered Death; the Names of which occurr in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the *Goths* the Faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming hither they found right and Orthodox, was defiled with *Arrianiſm*: not ejurated till the Year 588. when that whole Nation did ſubmit to more *Catholick* tendries. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moors* under the conduct of *Muſa*, Lieutenant-General to *Ulidor Ulit*, the *Arabian Caliph*; and *Mahometaniſm* over-ſpreading the whole face of the Country; ſuch *Chriſtians* as remained under their Obedience, but few and inconſiderable both for Power and Quality, had the Name of *Muſarabes*. Encreaſing in Eſtate and Numbers, by the fortunate Succeſſes of the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*, and other Chriſtian Principalities growing up apace; they ſtill retained their old Name, and their ancient Service, diſtinct from that obſerved in the Church of *Rome*; this being called the *Muſarabique*, the other the *Gregorian* Miſſal; the one pretending S. *Iſidore* Archbiſhop of *Sevil*, the other S. *Gregory* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this ſtate, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo*, by *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1083. At what time *Bernard* a *French-man* being made Arch-biſhop of that City, and Primate of *Spain*, endeavoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service; but therein was oppoſed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the People, ſufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At laſt it was concluded (as the Story telleth us) to commit the deciſion of the Controverſie to a fiery tryal: both Books being caſt into the Fire, the *Gregorian* leaping preſently out, and the *Muſarabique* remaining unhurt in the midſt of the Flames. Convinced by this experiment, that both Forms were pleaſing to Almighty God, they yielded ſo far to the deſires of the King, (who was zealous in it) that the *Muſarabique* being retained in ſix of the Churches of *Toledo*, (where it is ſung to this Day in a Chappel of the great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service ſhould be entertained in the reſt of *Spain*. According unto which Decree, the *Muſarabique* (but not until ſome tract of time) came to be diſuſed; and the *Gregorian* Service firſt admitted in the Cathedral of *Toledo*, *May* 29. *An*. 1091. And after by degrees, in the reſt of the Country.

Since that, they have been conſtant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein profeſſed, notwithſtanding the great intermixture of *Jews* and *Moors*, eſpecially ſince the ſetting up of the *Inquiſition*; deviſed at firſt about the Year 1478. by *Pedro Gonſales de Mendoza*, Archbiſhop of *Toledo*, againſt ſuch converted *Jews* and *Moors* as did return again to their Superſtition. But he, and thoſe that had the firſt execution of it, being found ſo cruel, that, in the compaſs of nine Years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been deſtroyed in that Dioceſs only. In the Year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to ſome *Jacobins* or *Dominican* Friers; who, in the firſt place, were to have an Eye unto ſuch Apoſtates, and to Hereticks, Magicians, Sodomites, Blaſphemers of the Name of God, *&c.* confirmed in this Authority by Pope *Sixtus* the Fourth. This Inſtitution in it ſelf was not only neceſſary, (as the condition of Affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at firſt intended. But of late, inſtead of being uſed on the *Jews* and *Moors*, it hath been turned upon the *Proteſtants*, and that with ſuch violence and extremity of Torture, that it is counted the greateſt Tyranny, and ſevereſt kind of Perſecution under Heaven; inſomuch that many *Papiſts*, who would willingly die for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the Death withſtand the bringing in of this Slavery among them. This is it that made the People of *Arragon* and *Naples* rebel, Countries where the People are all of the Papal ſide: And this was it which cauſed the irremediable revolt of the *Low-Countries*; the greateſt part of that Nation, at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romiſh Catholicks*; yet it is planted and eſtabliſhed in *Spain* and all *Italy*, (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the moſt zealous and rigorous Friers in the whole Pack: The leaſt ſuſpicion of Hereſie, affinity, or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the Lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books, prohibited, or diſcourſing in matters of Religion, are Offences ſufficient. Nay, they will charge Mens Conſciences, under the pain of Damnation, to detect their neareſt and deareſt Friends, if they do but ſuſpect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great ſecreſie and ſeverity; for firſt, the Parties accuſed ſhall never know their Accuſer, but ſhall be conſtrained to reveal their own Thoughts and Affections. 2. If they be but convinced of any Error in any of their Opinions, or be gain-ſayed by two Witneſſes, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved againſt them, yet ſhall they with infinite Tortures and Miſeries be kept in the Houſe divers Years, for a terror unto others. And, 4. If they eſcape the firſt brunt with many Torments, and much Anguiſh; yet the ſecond Queſtion, or Suſpicion, brings Death remedileſs. And as for Torments, and kinds of Death, *Phalaris* and his Fellow-Tyrants, come far ſhort of theſe Bloodhounds. And if at laſt a Man proves innocent, yet all the Eſtate he has in the World is irrecoverably loſt, and the Family undone, how Catholick ſoever it proves to be. See the Hiſtory of the Inquiſition of *Goa* lately publiſhed.

The adminiſtration of this Office, for the more orderly regiment and diſpatch thereof, diſtributed into twelve Courts or ſupream Tribunals, for the ſeveral Provinces of *Spain*; no one depending on another, but in ſome ſort ſubordinate to the general Inquiſition, remaining in the Court near the King's Perſon, which hath a kind of ſuperintendency over thoſe Tribunals: in all of which thoſe of the Secular Clergy ſit as Judges, the Friers being only uſed as Promoters to inform the Court, and bring more Griſt unto the Mill. Of theſe Inquiſitors, every one hath the Title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peaſants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordſhips deſirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor Man's Orchard not far off, ſent for the Man to come unto him, which put the poor Soul into ſuch a fright, that he fell ſick upon it, and kept his Bed: being afterwards informed, that all his Lordſhip's buſineſs with him was to requeſt a Diſh of Pears, he pulled up the Tree by the Roots, and carried it unto him with the Fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reaſon of that raſh and improvident Action, he return'd this Anſwer, *That he would never keep that thing in his Houſe, which ſhould give any of their Lordſhips cauſe to ſend further after him.* Certain it is, that by this means the People of this Kingdom are ſo kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Prieſts and Friers ſhall be pleaſed to teach them; or entertain the Truth if it come amongſt them; or call in queſtion any of thoſe palpable and groſs Impoſtures which every Day are put upon them.

For by this means, the People of this Kingdom have been, and ſtill are punctual followers of the Church of

Rome, and that too in the very Errors and Corruptions of it; taking up their Religion on the Pope's Authority; and therein ſo tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth ſuffer none to live in his Dominions, which profeſs not the *Roman Catholick* Religion: Of which they have been, ſince the times of *Luther*, ſuch avowed Patrons, that one of the late Popes being ſick, and hearing divers Men to moan his approaching end, uttered ſome words to this effect: *My Life* (ſaid he) *can nothing benefit the* Church, *but pray for the proſperity of the King of* Spain, *as its chief Supporter*. And though he ſpoke theſe words of King *Philip* II. yet they hold good in his Succeſſors ever ſince; being eſteem'd the greateſt Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cauſe*; which is indeed the proper intereſt of this King. For ſeeing that they have framed to themſelves an hope of the *Weſtern Monarchy*; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporal*, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his *Spiritual* Empire, they have linked themſelves moſt faſt to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them to be the Executioners of the Pope's *Excommunications*; by which Office, *Ferdinand the Catholick* ſurpriſed *Navarre*, not without hope of working the like effect in ſome courſe of time, on the reſt of the interdicted Eſtates of *Europe*; as may be ſeen by the eager following of the *French* War againſt *Henry* the Fourth, till he had reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many Years together againſt Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*. And the purſuit of this *Spaniſh* Monarchy is ſo hotly followed by the *Jeſuits*, who in all their Perſwaſions ſpeak not more of One God, or of One Pope, than they do of One King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and ſubdue the great Enemy of Religion, the *Turk*. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a Project of the *Jeſuits* only, but a Deſign avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licenſed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *Supreme Council* of the *Inquiſition*, but by order from the *Lords of the Council*, with the *King's Privilege* and Commendation prefixt before it. The Book entituled, *La Convenientia de los dos Monarquias Catolicas*, &c. The agreement of the two Catholick Monarchies of *Rome* and *Spain*, ſet out in the Year 1612. by one *John de Puente*. In the *Frontiſpiece* whereof are ſet two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Croſs-Keys* of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; *In vinculo pacis*, for the Motto. On the one ſide of this, there is a Portraicture repreſenting *Rome*, with the Sun ſhining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inſcription, *Luminare majus ut præſit Orbi & Urbi*, the greater Light to govern the City and the World. On the other ſide, another Image deſigning *Spain*, with the Moon ſhining over that, and darting her Rays on the *Spaniſh* Scutchion, with this Impreſs, *Luminare minus ut ſubdatur Urbi & dominetur Orbi*, *i. e.* The leſſer Light made to be ſubject to the City, (underſtand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World beſides. Over all, in the top of the Front or Title Page, in Capital Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large *Folio*, is but a Comment on this Text, which for ſubſtance is contained wholly in the Frontiſpiece, but more at large diſcourſed of in the Volume it ſelf; and plainly ſhews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jeſuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation; and if the Project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himſelf *Luminare majus*, and make the *Pope* content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the Spoil; and glad to borrow all his Light from the *Sun* of *Spain*. For, though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome* be thus ſtraitly combined, yet herein the Popes have over-ſhot themſelves; in that leaning ſo much to the *Spaniard*, and ſo immoderately encreaſing his Dominion, they do in a manner ſtand at his Devotion, and may, peradventure, in the end, be forced to caſt themſelves into his Arms, as their good Lord and Maſter. For certain it is, that the *Spaniſh Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to ſee the Day wherein the King ſhould offer the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuſe any; and that they themſelves ſhould chuſe no *Pope* but one of their Maſter's naming. So great an inconvenience it is, more than poſſible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and only String to their Bow; and faſtning the dependancies of his *Roman Catholicks* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all the other Kings in *Chriſtendom*, of the *Romiſh* Party, from the honour of it. And yet ſo firm they are to their *Spaniſh* Principles, that no Favours either granted to their Perſons or Religion, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their Acceptations, if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace*, than the *Court of Spain*. Inſomuch as I have heard from a great Miniſter of State, that when ſome Favours were obtained for the *Engliſh Papiſts*, on the Treaty of the Match with *Spain*, they were ready with great greedineſs to embrace the ſame. But when the ſame Favours were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a Man of them would accept them: For which ſome of their Chiefs being asked the reaſon, returned this Anſwer; *That by applying themſelves to the* French *they might loſe the* Spaniard; *and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and conſtant* Friend, *who had never failed them, for one of whoſe Affections they had no aſſurance; and ſuch a one as by tolerating Hereticks in his own Dominions, ſhewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholicks to rely upon.*

The Affairs of *Spain* are, within forty Years laſt paſt, reduced by the *French*, the Revolt of the *Portugueze*, the Infancy of the late King, and the Factions which then obſtructed their Counſels, to that low ebb, that the dream of an univerſal Monarchy may ſeem long ſince ended, and their Cares turn'd upon the preſerving what they have left, rather than in conquering more, they having been great loſers in all their late Wars.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Tagus*, now *Tajo*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed (by ſome Writers) to be made; but I have not Faith enough to believe the ſame. The Head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then ſmoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Weſtern Ocean. 2. *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which ariſing about the ſame place, runneth afterwards under the Ground the ſpace of 15 Miles: and hence the *Spaniards* uſe to brag, that they have a Bridge whereon 10000 Cattel daily feed. An accident common to many other Rivers; as to *Mole*, a ſmall River in *Surrey*; *Eraſinus*, in *Greece*; and *Lycus*, in *Anatolia*, of which laſt, thus *Ovid*.

Sic ubi terreno Lycus *eſt epotus hiatu,*
Exiſtit procul hinc, alioque renaſcitur ore.

So *Lycus*, ſwallowed by the gaping Ground,
At a new Mouth, far off, is riſing found.

But having gotten up again, it loſeth it ſelf without recovery in the Weſtern Ocean, on the South of *Portugal*, which is ſeparated from *Eſtremadura*. 3. *Bætis*, now called *Guadalaquivir*, (which in the *Arabick* Language ſignifieth a great River) ariſeth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and paſſing by *Corduba* and *Sevil*, diſburdeneth it ſelf into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of *S. Lucars de Barameda*. 4. *Iberus*, *Ebro*, which having its Head amongſt the Mountains of *Biſcay*, paſſeth on Eaſtwards by *Saragoſſa* and *Tortoſa*, into the *Mediterranean*; the whole courſe thereof being 460 Miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of ſuch note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Country, into *Citeriorem* and *Ulteriorem*; of which more anon. 5. *Durus*,

rus, now *Duero*, which riſing in the ſame Mountain, paſſeth through *Portugal*, and ſo unto the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6. *Minius*, *Minho*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains, next unto the *Pyrenees* ſpoken of before, 1. The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Aſturum*; which riſing out of a ſpur or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overſpread the Provinces of *Biſcay*, *Aſturia*, and *Gallicia*, (coaſting along the ſhores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at laſt they end. 2. *Idubeda*, *Jubalda*, or *Aurantius Saltus*, ſo called by *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers; which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the courſe of that River by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3. *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæſar* called *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolemy*; which beginning about the Town *Alcoraz*, coaſting along the right-hand ſhores of the River *Bætis*, to the South Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolemy* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Oroſpeda* by *Strabo*; but by the *Moors*, the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of Hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada* from Eaſt to Weſt, and amongſt which the people to this day ſpeak the *Arabick* Tongue.

The Country is ſaid to have been inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Beroſus* of Frier *Annius*, and by ſuch Chronologers as he hath impoſed on by the name of that Author, that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he ſeated himſelf in the *Aſturia*'s, a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of S. *Uval*. A device ſo fooliſh and abſurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal* muſt come hither by Sea or by Land; if by Land, then muſt he in the compaſs of a year or two travel not leſs than 4000 miles (ſo far it is, at leaſt, from *Biſcay* to the valley of *Shinar*) with Women and Children, through moſt unpaſſable Woods and Mountains, which no underſtanding Man can give belief to. If by Sea, beſides the ſhort time he had to provide ſhipping for ſo great a company, and ſo long a Voyage, nothing is more improbable to a ſober man than that he ſhould leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermit the opportunity of poſſeſſing *Valentia*, *Andaluzia*, *Portugal*, being fruit Countries, to fix himſelf in the moſt mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet moſt of our *Beroſians* are ſo confident in it, that they make him the firſt King of *Spain*; from whom to *Gargarus Melicola* they numbred 25 Kings more, who laſted 988 years: the chief of which are ſaid to be, 1. *Heſperus*, who ſubdued alſo *Italy*, named both Countries *Heſperia*; but ſo that *Italy* was called *Heſperia* the greater, and *Spain Heſperia* the leſs. 2. *Hiſpanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hiſpania* to be derived. 3. *Tagus*, 4. *Bætus*, and 5. *Anus*, whence the three Rivers in *Spain*, ſo called, muſt by all means derive their names. 6. *Idubeda*, Godfather, no doubt, to the great Mountain ſo named. 7. *Sicilius*, from whom the Iſle of *Sicily* is ſaid to take denomination. 8. *Hiſpailus*, who is reported to have built the City *Sevil*, or *Hiſpalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flaviobriga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10. *Luſus*, who gave name to *Luſitania*, now *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings, I deſire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Caſſibeline*. A Catalogue ſo ill contrived, that whereas *Juſtin* ſpeaks of *Habis*, and *Herodatus* of *Agurthonius*, *Macrbrius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*, all Kings of *Spain*; none of theſe are mention'd in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in perſon) hither, is a ſilly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or ſome Nations of them, may derive their Pedigree from *Tubal*; as being the deſcendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Joſephus* ſaith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*; a Name in which are all the Radical Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in ſound. For ſomewhat before the ſuppoſed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are ſaid to come in under *Panus*: divided after his deceaſe, amongſt many petit Kings and Princes, for the ſpace of 900 and odd years, even till the firſt attempt which the *Carthaginians* made upon it; who found here no ſuch Univerſal or Supream Monarch, as the *Beroſian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we find nothing more obſervable and certain in the ſtory of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coaſts, by divers Nations, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe elder times. Of which ſort were the Towns of *Emporea* and *Dianium*, founded by the *Maſſilians*, *Saguntum* by the *Zacynthi* or people of *Zant*, *Rhode* by the *Rhodians*, as ſome think; the City and Iſle of *Gales*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after ſpread themſelves over all the Coaſts of *Andaluzia*. The firſt that came in bodies hither, in way of Conqueſt, were the *Celtæ*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*, who mixing themſelves with the *Iberi*, cauſed the whole Country to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it is very uncertain. Of the invaſion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is a greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicily* by the conquering *Romans*, *An. V. C.* 512. and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the Weſt, and paſſing through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, by the Iſles of *Gades*, (their own long before) landed in *Spain* under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loſs of *Sicily*. In leſs than twenty years following, *Amilcar*, (*Aſdrubal* his Son in law) and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almoſt all *Spain* ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Weſtern Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; deſtroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and ſtruck ſo great a terrour into all the Country, that had not *Annibal*'s deſign carri'd him to *Italy*, the State of *Carthage* had been abſolute Maſters of it, without further oppoſition or reſiſtance. But *Annibal* having taken all his Souldiers with him; and thoſe that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts ſufficient to go through with it; they loſt it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in leſs time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The laſt that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Aſdrubal* the Son of *Giſgo*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Iſland of *Gades*, left that alſo to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deſerted, it forthwith yielded to the *Romans*, the *Carthaginians* after this never poſſeſſing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Maſters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ulteriorem*, lying from the River *Iberus*, Weſtward, becauſe furtheſt off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the ſaid River, and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally ſubdued it, they divided it into three main parts; 1. *Tarraconenſem*, ſo called of *Tarragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2. *Bæticam*, ſo named of the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; comprehendeth the now Countries of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Eſtremadura*. 3. *Luſitanicam*, denominated from the *Luſitani*, the moſt potent people of that part, differing in extent from the preſent *Portugal*, (though this called *Luſitania*, by our modern *Latiniſts*.) For the old *Luſitania* comprehended part of *Eſtremadura*, and ſome part of the two *Caſtiles*; and no more of the preſent *Portugal* than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana*, being laid to *Bætica*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconenſis*. Of theſe three parts, *Bætica* was in moſt eſteem under the *Romans*; inſomuch that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the Rights and Priviledges of the *Latins*. The reaſon thereof was, that the people of this Country having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the reſt, for a long time reſiſted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in

Spain, *Scipio Africanus* laid the firſt foundation of the *Roman* Government in this Country: which building, though undertaken by many excellent workmen, was not throughly finiſhed till the days of *Auguſtus*, being almoſt 200 years ſince the firſt attempt. He roofed it, ſtrengthened it, and made it a principal building in his *Monarchical* City. For the old *Incolæ* were exceeding valiant and reſolute, ſometimes diſgracing, ſometimes endangering the *Roman* reputation; inſomuch that there were more Commanders loſt in thoſe Wars, than any other. At firſt the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*: then periſhed both the *Scipio's*, *viz.* the Father and the Unkle of *Africanus*. *Viriatus* held War for 20 years, *Numantia* help out almoſt 15. the *Aſtures* remained unconquered till the time of *Auguſtus*; and alſo reſolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non potuerit* (ſaith *Paterculus*) Hiſpanis *an* Romanis *plus eſſet in armis roboris, & uter populus alteri pariturus foret*. So that it was not to be determin'd whether the *Romans* or *Spaniards* were the better Souldiers, or whether of the People in the end would be the Maſter of the other. Such manner of men were the ancient *Spaniards* under *Rome* and *Carthage*; the firſt people of the Continent of *Europe*, (excepting *Italy*) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire, and the laſt that wholly were ſubdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the laſt, and brought under the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, it was governed by their *Proconſuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magiſtrates, according to the diviſion before-mentioned. But *Conſtantine* the *Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying ſome part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Dioceſs* of the Empire; and ſubject to the *Prefectus Prætorius* for *Gaul*, by whoſe *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into theſe ſeven Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Bætica*, 2. *Luſitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicio*, *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the greateſt part of the *Old Caſtile*, and ſo much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*, 4. *Carthaginenſis*, ſo called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Caſtile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia* with the part of the *Old Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Andaluſia*, 5. *Tarraconenſis*, embracing all *Biſcay*, *Navare*, and *Catalogne*, with the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Arragon*, 6. *Tingitana*, ſo called from *Tingis*, (now *Tangier*) a Town of *Africk*, on the oppoſite Coaſt, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*. And, 7. the *Province of the Iſlands*, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuſa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which ſeven Provinces, the three firſt were *Conſulares*, governed by *Proconſuls*; the other four, from their being under *Preſidents*, were called *Preſidiarie*. Being thus ſettled, it continued a *Roman* Dioceſs till about the year 400, when it was ſubdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, atchievements, and final period, we will ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themſelves; invited thereunto, partly to eſchew the ill neighbourhood of the *Goths*, who began to grow too potent for them, and partly to ſatisfie the deſire of *Boniface*, Governour of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third, againſt whom he had then rebelled, and wanted ſuch ſupport to make good his action. Thoſe being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long ſubſiſt; but were finally broken by the *Goths*, and afterwards diſpoſſeſſed of their Kingdoms alſo, (though ſuffered to remain in the Country ſtill) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Goths*, (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more in *Sweden*, and have already made ſome mention when we were in *Gaul*) having ſacked *Rome*, and waſted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were bought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonenſis* in *Gaul*, and ſo much of *Tarraconenſis* in *Spain*, as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the compoſition being ratified by the marriage of *Athaulfus*, the Succeſſor of *Alarick* with *Placidia*, Siſter to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note, (for *Sigerick* who interpoſed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Succeſſor of *Athaulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania* and *Carthaginenſis*, added thoſe Provinces alſo unto his Eſtates, and confining the *Vandals* within *Bætica*, was the firſt of the *Goths* which entituled himſelf King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. By their agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep thoſe Provinces for the uſe of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania*, by theÁroweſs of *Vallia*, and the *Swevi* out of *Bætica*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Toriſmund*, they fell upon the *Romans* themſelves; whom *Euricus*, and his Succeſſors, by little and little, diſpoſſeſſed of all *Spain* on this ſide of the Streights. *Tingitana* held out longeſt, as fartheſt off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of the *Goths*, whoſe Soldiers being ſet upon by the *Romans* on the Lord's day or Sunday, refuſed to fight in their own defence, and were ſo miſerably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superſtition of a *Lord's day Sabbath* prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the ſhort time of this reign, *An.* 642, made the Conqueſt abſolute.

Let us next look upon the *Goths* as Lords of *Spain*, and we ſhall find them to have been *Chriſtians* in Religion, and ſomewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and converſations with the *Græcians*, before they turned their Forces into the Weſt. Their company more deſired in this reſpect, than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But theſe *Goths*, being for long time of the *Arrian* Faction, did grievouſly afflict and perſecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this errour till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildis* as ſome call him) the laſt Patron and Aſſertor of it. Their Government *Monarchial*, but the Kings *Elective*, though for the moſt part they kept themſelves to the Regal Family:) an Excommunication being laid on ſuch, by the fifth Council of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that eſtabliſhed courſe. Their Rule or Government was *Cuſtom*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Laws being firſt made by *Euricus*; which the enſuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What elſe concerneth them, we ſhall find in the cloſe of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain*.

A. C.		
420	1	*Vallia* 20.
440	2	*Theodoric* 13.
453	3	*Thoriſmund* 3.
456	4	*Theodoric* II. 14.
470	5	*Henry*, or *Euricus* 18.
493	6	*Alaricus* 21.
513	7	*Genſaleric* 3.
516	8	*Amalaric* 11.
526	9	*Theudes* 18.
543	10	*Thelegiſdus* 3.
546	11	*Agila* 5.
551	12	*Athanagildus* 14.
565	13	*Luiba* 3.
568	14	*Leonigild* 18.
586	15	*Richared* 15.
601	16	*Luiba* II. 2.
603	17	*Victoricus* 7.
610	18	*Gundebaris* 20.
630	19	*Siſebulus* 9.
639	20	*Richared* II. 2.
641	21	*Suintilla* 3.
644	22	*Siſenanda* 7.
651	23	*Suintilla* II. 4.

655

655 24 *Tulgas* 2.
657 25 *Vidiſuindus* 10.
667 26 *Receſuind* 13.
680 27 *Bamba* 9.
689 28 *Ering* 7.
696 29 *Egypea* 7.
703 30 *Vitiza* 13.
716 31 *Roderick*, the laſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom went, for the moſt part, by Election, and that they had reſpect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland* and *Bohemia*) very few *interlopers* being here admitted: yet ſome there were, who either by their merit, or ſome opportunity, got the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theudes* an *Oſtro-Goth*, ſometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdom in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudeſelus*, or *Theudegiſdus*, Nephew to *Totilas*, one of the Succeſſours to *Theodorick*. The reſt of principal note were, 1. *Theodorick* the firſt, ſlain in the battle near *Tholouze*, againſt *Attila* the *Hunn*; in defence of his own Countrey, and the *Roman* Empire. 2. *Theodorick* the ſecond, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Bætica*; and 3. *Leonigild*, or *Leutigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* alſo. 4. *Reccaredus* the firſt, who firſt imbraced the *Catholick* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arrianiſm*; and for that cauſe firſt honoured with the Title of the *Catholick King*; afterwards reſumed by *Alfonſus* the firſt King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5. *Euricus*, or *Henricus* as ſome call him, as remarkable for *Civil Polity*, as *Reccaredus* for *Piety*; as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legiſlator* of this People; not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain cuſtoms, or at the pleaſure of ſuch Officers as the King ſet over them. 6. *Suintilla* Son of *Reccaredus* the ſecond, who having in the ſhort time of his reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana An.* 642, was the firſt Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana*, (though on the other ſide of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, as before was ſaid. And of this Province was *Julianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the Sons of *Vitiza*, ſtomached his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the King's diſpleaſure; who ſending him upon an Embaſſie to the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the mean time defloured his daughter, named *Cava*: which the Father took in ſuch indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongſt whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This requeſt they performed under the conduct of *Muſa* and *Tariff*, and having made a full Conqueſt, ſubjected it to the great *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors. It is recorded in a *MS*, Hiſtory of the *Saracens*, that at the firſt coming of *Tariff* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Priſoner, fell down at his feet, kiſſed them, and told him, that ſhe had heard her Father (who was Letter'd) ſay, that *Spain* ſhould be conquered by a people whoſe General ſhould have a Mole on his right ſhoulder, and in whom one of his hands ſhould be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers againſt the next encounter, uncloathed himſelf, and ſhewed the mark, which ſo encouraged them, that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe. *Tariff* had 30000 Horſe and 180000 Foot. The Battle continued ſeven days together, from morning to night; at laſt the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings Apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd; with whom the King, after the diſcomfiture, had changed cloaths. It is written alſo in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of thoſe *Saracens*, King *Roderick*, upon hope of ſome treaſure did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which reſembled the *Moors*, with a Propheſie, that whenſoever the Palace was there opened, the people there reſembled, ſhould overcome *Spain*; and ſo it hapned, *An.* 724.

The *Moors*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treaſon of *Julian*, (who having ſeen the miſerable death of his wife and children, was ſtarved in Priſon by the *Africans*) permitted the free uſe of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants; leſt they ſeeking new dwellings for the Liberty of Conſcience, ſhould leave their native Soyl deſolate. The *Moors* finiſhed their Conqueſt in five years ſay ſome, others, in two; and ſome again in eight Months. To keep the new conquered Country in ſubjection, no way was ſo convenient, as to plant Colonies: but the *Moriſco* women would not abandon their old ſeats. Hereupon *Muſa* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and perſwaſions, drew many *Chriſtian* women to forſake their *Religion*, whom they married to the Souldiers. Not long after *Ulidor Ulit*, the great *Caliph*, ſent over about 50000 Familes of *Moors* and *Jews*, aſſigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great Immunities, and upon ſmall Rents. Theſe politick courſes notwithſtanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the ſole Soveraignty herein: for the *Chriſtians* having now recovered breath, choſe themſelves Kings, and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petit Royalties, many of which, by little and little, were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at laſt, *Spain* fell into a fifteenfold diviſion. *viz.* into the Kingdoms and proprietary Eſtates of 1. *Navarre*, 2. *Biſcay*, and 3. *Guipuſcoa*, 4. *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5. *Gallicia*, 6. *Corduba*, 7. *Granada*, 8. *Murcia*, 9. *Toledo*, 10. *Caſtile*, 11. *Portugal*, and the members of it, 12. *Valentia*. 13. *Catalonia*, 14. the Kingdoms of *Majorca*, and 15. that of *Arragon*: not to ſay any thing of the petit Kingdoms of *Jaen*, *Algozire*, and *Sevil*, beſides others of like nature to them, erected by the factious and divided *Moors*, but of ſhort continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Caſtile*, *Portugal*, and *Arragon*; the Kingdoms and Eſtates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biſcay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Caſtile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Iſles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it ſelf; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Arragon*.

1. *NAVARRE.*

NAVARRE, the ſecond Kingdom for Antiquity in *Spain*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Principality of *Bern*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the Weſt, firſt with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after, with a little River falling into it, near *Calaborra*, by which divided from *Caſtile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuſcoa*, and on the South, with the River *Arragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent anciently, than it is at the preſent; the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuſcoa*, and the whole Country of *Ripye*, (on the Weſt-ſide of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned members of *Caſtile*, by *Alfonſo* the 4th. Howſoever, we ſhall look upon it in its ancient bounds, and ſhall accordingly take notice of the chief Cities and Towns thereof.

It was called at firſt, the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, ſituate in the moſt inacceſſible part of the *Pyrenees*; and therefore choſe by *Garcia Ximines*, the firſt King hereof, for the ſeat of his Kingdom, as moſt defenſible againſt the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, ſignifying a plain and Champaign Country, (firſt uſed by *Inigo Ariſta*, the ſixth King, who having taken *Pampelone*;

lone, abandoned the Hill-Countries, and betook himſelf unto the *Plains*) or from *Navarriero*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Country, though environed on all ſides with mighty Mountains, yet of it ſelf is ſaid to be reaſonably fruitful, well watered, and for the moſt part plain and level, as before is ſaid. It taketh up alſo ſome parts of both ſides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spaniſh* ſide being fertile, and adorned with Trees; the *French* ſide generally very bare and naked. That on the *Spaniſh* ſide, and on the ſummits of the Mountains, now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the *French* ſide, now called *Baſe* or *Low Navarre*, eſtimated at a ſixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* 13, to the Realm of *France*, *An.* 1620.

Places of moſt importance in *Baſe Navarre*, 1. S. *Palai*, formerly the Place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620, removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bern*: both *Bern* and *Baſe Navarre*, which hath before been governed as diſtinct Eſtates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navareux*, a Town of great importance ſeven Leagues from *Pau*, well fortified, and as well munitioned, King *Lewis* the 13, finding in it at his coming thither, *An.* 1620, no fewer then 45 Cannons all mounted; beſides 40 Culverins and ſmaller Pieces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals, anſwerable thereunto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or St. *John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France* againſt which formerly a piece of eſpecial ſtrength. 4. *Roncevallis*, or *Roncevaux* ſituate in the moſt pleaſant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a ſmall but delightful Valley: famous for the great Battle fought near unto it; in the Straights or entrance of the Mountains leading to this valley; betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which Battle by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the *French* were ſlain; and amongſt them, *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*; of whom ſo many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*; the firſt Author of which Fables, paſſeth under the name of Arch-Biſhop *Turpin*, ſaid to be one of thoſe twelve *Peers*, who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof, the noble acts of that puiſſant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obſcured and blemiſhed by thoſe very Pens, which in the time ſucceeding did employ themſelves to advance the ſame.

Of ſpecial note in *High Navarre*, 1 *Victoria* firſt built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4. King of *Navarre* *An.* 1181, by whom thus named in memory of ſome victory obtained thereabouts againſt the *Caſtilians*; whereas before his time it was called *Gaſteiz*: as in like caſe there had been many Towns built by *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victory*, which we ſhall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the ancient *Vellica*, but graced with the priviledges and name of a City, by *John* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, after it came under the Command of that Crown, *An.* 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Alava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongſt the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An.* 1200. by *Alphonſo* the 4th. of *Caſtile*, it was in the year 1332. incorporated into that Crown, as a part thereof; as were ſome other Towns and Members of this Kingdom alſo, won by the *Caſtilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the Eaſt of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Logronno* on the other ſide of the water, (from which diſtant not above a League) as the Frontier Town againſt *Caſtile*. Of greateſt note for being the title of the eldeſt Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An.* 1421. in imitation of the like Cuſtom in *Caſtile*, where the eldeſt Son was called Prince of the *Aſturia's*: but not leſs memorable for the death of *Cæſar Borgia*, ſlain near unto it in an ambuſh, after all his wandrings, and interchangeableneſs of fortunes. For being Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquiſhing the Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France*, created Duke of *Valentinois*, in the Province of *Dauphine*: during his fathers life, he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Eſtates which anciently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*; but after his deceaſe, impriſoned by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, who was jealous (not without good cauſe) of his plots and practices. From *Rome* he ſtole unto *Gonſalvo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholick*; who notwithſtanding his ſafe conduct, ſent him Priſoner to *Spain*: but breaking Priſon (deſperately ſliding down a window) he came at laſt into this Kingdom, and was here ſlain in an *Ambuſcado*, as before was ſaid. So many times was *Machiavel's* great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souliders! 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the moſt inacceſſible parts of the *Pyrenees*; for that cauſe made the firſt Seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a diſtinct Kingdom from *Navarre*, by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonſales* his youngeſt Son: after whoſe death (not having iſſue) it was ſeized on by *Don Raymir*, the firſt King of *Arragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sangueſſa*, a Town of a large Territory and Juriſdiction, priviledged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Eſtates, and a ſtrong Fortreſs on the borders towards *Arragon*: for which cauſe formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it ſometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampelona*, in the Champaign Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom; and the Seat-Royal of its Kings, ſince the Conqueſt of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Ariſta*, the ſixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts; that is to ſay, *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having ſeveral Officers and Juriſdictions, (the cauſe of many quarrels and much blood amongſt them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magiſtrate, by King *Charles* the third. An ancient Town, firſt built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars againſt *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeiopolis* by our modern *Latiniſts*; but *Pampelun*, more near unto the preſent name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an *Epiſcopal* Sea, the ſeat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the beſt fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6. *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuſcoa*; a place of principal importance: the Caſtle whereof was one of the laſt pieces on this ſide of the Mountains which held out for King *John* of *Albert*, againſt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, in his ſurprizal of this Kingdom. 7. *Montreal*, 8. *Olite*, and 9. *Tafalla*; all yielded with the reſt of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: who had the happineſs to ſubdue this Realm to the Crown of *Caſtile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudele*, on the Eaſtern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the *Moors*, by a ſurprize, by *Rotrou* Earl of *Perch*, (a *Frenchman*) coming with many other noble perſons to the aid of *Alfonſo*, King of *Navarre* and *Arragon*, at the ſiege of *Saragoſſa*, *An.* 1110. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his ſervice; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* daughter of Earl *Rotrou*, with *Garcia* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, Succeſſor in that Kingdom to the ſaid *Alfonſo*. Of late times honoured with a little Univerſity there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, on his ſurprizal of that Kingdom. 11. *Calaborra*, ſituate on the Weſtern banks of the *Iberus*, or *Ibro*, by *Ptolomy* called *Calagorina*; by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*; now a Biſhops See: taken from *Sancho* the eighth of *Navarre*, by *Alfonſo* the fourth of *Caſtile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom. As alſo was 12. *Logronno*, in the Country of *Rioja*, on the ſame banks of the River alſo. 13. *Eſtella*, bordering on *Caſtile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eaſtern ſide of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th, of *France* made Umpire for the atonement of ſome differences betwixt *Henery* King of *Caſtile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Arragon*; to ſatisfie that King for his charges in the former Quarrel.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vaſcones*, poſſeſſed not only of this tract, but of *Biſcay*, and *Guipuſcoa* alſo, from them denominated : who paſſing over the *Pyrenees* , made themſelves Maſters of that Province which is now called *Gaſcoigne* by the *French*, and *Vaſconia* in *Latin*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximines*, a noble man of the *Gothiſh* bloud, who with 600 men only began to make head againſt the *Saracens*, *An*. 716. firſt under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe* ; and after that, of *Navarre*, for the reaſons formerly delivered. The ſixth from *Garcia Ximines*, was *Inigo*, ſirnamed *Ariſta*, (ſo named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gaſcoigne* ; elected to this Kingdom on the death of *Ximines* the fifth King, *An*. 840. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line) of *Don Garcia Ximines* the firſt King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of *Pampelona* is aſcribed moſt generally, though *Turquet* in his Hiſtory refer the ſame to *Garcia* the ſecond King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the proweſs of *Charlemagne* ; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who poſſeſſed himſelf of it. To this King alſo is aſcribed the firſt beginning of the Ceremony of Crowning and Anointing; after the manner uſed by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial*, cited in the *Titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth no ſuch honour to theſe petit Kings, communicated only, in that time to the Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt, the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicily*. And therefore probable it is, that the cuſtom came into *Navarre* with the Houſe of *Champagne*. Other Kings of moſt note in the courſe of Story, were 3. *Fortun*, the ſecond Nephew of *Inigo Ariſta*, by his Son *Garcia* the third ; who added unto his Eſtate, the Earldom of *Arragon*, deſcended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Aſnarius*, or *Aznario*, the laſt Earl thereof. 4. *Sancho* the fourth, ſirnamed the Great, who firſt aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Spain* : his Predeceſſors uſing no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* and *Navarre* ; his Co-temporaries calling themſelves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*, according to the names of their ſeveral Kingdoms ; the *Goths*, Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain* ; and ſo the *Vandals* , and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelone*, at their firſt erection by the *French*, entituled themſelves the Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Spain*, as if all were theirs, with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had ſome good ground for it, as being by inheritance poſſeſſed of *Navarre* and *Arragon*; of *Caſtile* in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Elvira*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the laſt Earl thereof ; and by conqueſt of a great part of the Realm of *Leon* : ſo that almoſt all *Spain*, not poſſeſſed by the *Moors*, was become his own. Had theſe Eſtates remained entire to his Succeſſors, the *Moors*, no doubt, had ſooner loſt their hold in *Spain* ; and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one ſole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or elſe offended with the eldeſt, who moſt unnaturally had accuſed his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery, divided his Eſtates amongſt them ; giving to *Garcia* his eldeſt Son, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by Conqueſt ; to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Son, *Caſtile* : and *Arragon*, to his baſe Son *Raymer* ; both which he erected into Kingdoms : and finally, to *Gonſales* his third Son, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*, then firſt diſmembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick courſe, his Sons being all of equal Title and Eſtates, inſtead of opposing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the Quarrel as a Legacy to their ſeveral Succeſſors :. which miſchief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings, or left the reſt as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *ſancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera* ; unnaturally and trayterouſly ſlain by his Brother *Raymer*. After whoſe death, and the ſhort interpoſition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was ſeized on by the Kings of *Arragon*; three of which, *viz*. *Sancho Ramires*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonſo*, did ſeverally and ſucceſſively enjoy the ſame. 6. *Alfonſo*, the laſt of the three Kings of *Arragon* reigning in *Navarre*, ſirnamed the *Warriour* ; who for a time was King of *Caſtile* alſo, in right of *Vrraca* his Wife ; in which reſpect he took unto himſelf the title of *Emperour* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged ſo by others. But finally, dying without Iſſue, and his Brother *Raymer*, or *Raymond*, called the *Monk*, ſucceeding in *Arragon*, the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir*, Lord of *Monſon*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calaborra*, his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the eighth, the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the ſeventh, ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, the laſt King of the Maſculine and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre* ; the Kingdom, after his deceaſe, paſſing by the Females, or Heirs-general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and ſo unto the Kings of *France*, the Houſes of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albert*, and *Vendoſme*, but never holding above three deſcents in any one Family. By means whereof, theſe Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moors*, by the interpoſition of the Kings of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings or adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spaniſh* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the perſon of *Gaſton* of *Foix*; as thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Albert*, in the perſon of *John* Earl of *Albert*; all lying together on the other ſide of the *Pyrenees*; all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof : made up a fairer and wealthier Eſtate than *Navarre* it ſelf, inferiour to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to ſay any thing of the acceſſion of the Country-palatine of *Champagne*, exchanged afterwards for ſome Lands in the Country of *La March* in *Limoſin* ; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Dutchy of *Vandoſme*, as lying further off, and of leſs importance : Nor of the great Kingdom of *France*, now hearwith incorporate , as to the perſon of the King, though not in the Poſſeſſion of this Kingdom alſo. With ſo much judgement and ſucceſs did the enſuing Kings (not otherwiſe able to enlarge their Territories) beſtow their Daughters, that the *Diſtaff* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8. *Charles*, the ſecond of that name, and the 30 King of *Navarre* ; whom I mention not for any glorious Actions atchieved in his life (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the ſtrangeneſs and hideouſneſs of his death. He was a Prince much given to *voluptuouſneſs*, and ſenſual pleaſures, which ſo waſted his ſpirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benummed joynts, he was bound and ſewed up naked in a ſheet, ſteeped in boiling *Aqua-vitæ*. The *Chyrurgeon* having made an end of ſewing the ſheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the thread, took a Wax-candle that ſtood lighted by him ; but the flame running down by the thread, caught hold on the ſheet, which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vitæ*) burned with that vehemency, that the miſerable King ended his days in the fire. 9. *John* of *Arragon*, the ſecond Son of *Ferdinand* the firſt, in the life of his Brother *Alfonſo*, was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third; and on the death of his Brother, King of *Arragon* alſo. And though his Queen died long before him, in whoſe right he reigned; yet he kept poſſeſſion of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning fifty four years in all) notwithſtanding the oppoſition made againſt him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his only Son by that marriage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquiſhed, impriſoned, and at laſt Poyſoned. 10. *John*, Earl of *Albert* in *Gaſcoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whoſe reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was ſeized on by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, Son of the ſaid *John* King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, by a ſecond Wife. The manner of it we ſhall relate with more Particulars, when we have ſummed the whole Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Navarre*.

A. C.		
716	1	*Garcia Ximines.* 42.
758	2	*Garcia* II. Son of *Garcia Ximines.*
802	3	*Fortunio.* 13.
815	4	*Sancho Garcia*, the laſt of the direct Line of *Garcia Ximines.*
		An *Inter-regnum* of 4 years.
844	6	*Inigo*, ſirnamed *Ariſta*, Earl of *Begorre*, the next Heir-male of the Houſe of *Garcia Ximines.* 23.
867	7	*Garcia* III. ſirnamed *Inigo.* 18.
885	8	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon.* 16.
901	9	*Sancho* II. called *Abarcha*, Brother of *Fortunio* the ſecond. 19.
920	10	*Garcia* IV. 49.
969	11	*Sancho* III. 24.
993	12	*Garcia* V. ſirnamed the *Trembler.*
1000	13	*Sancho* IV. ſirnamed the *Great*; of whom ſufficiently before.
1034	14.	*Garcia* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho.* 20.
1054	15.	*Sancho* V. ſlain by
1074	16.	*Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the firſt, diſpoſſeſſed by
1076	17.	*Sancho* VI. ſirnamed *Ramyres*, King of *Aragon.* 18.
1094	18.	*Pedro*, King of *Aragon.*
1104	19.	*Alfonſo*, called the *Warrier*; the laſt of the Kings of *Arragon*, reigning in *Navarre.*
1134	20.	*Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera.* 16.
1150	21.	*Sancho* VII. ſirnamed the *Wiſe.*
1194	22.	*Sancho* VIII. the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Garcia Ximines.* 40.
1234	23.	*Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Son of the Lady *Blanch*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th. 19.
1253	24.	*Theobald* II. Earl of *Champagne.* 18.
1271	25.	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald* the ſecond. 3.
1274	26.	*John*, the Daughter of *Henry*, married to *Philip* the *Fair*, of *France.* 31.
1305	27.	*Lewis Hutin*, King of *France.* 10.
1315	28.	*Philip* the *Long*, King of *France.* 5.
1320	29.	*Charles* the *Fair*, King of *France.* 8.
1328	30.	*Joan* II. Queen of *Navarre*, the Daughter of *Lewis Hutin.* *Philip* II. Earl of *Eureux.*
1349	31.	*Charles* II. Son of *Joan* and *Philip* of *Eureux.* 37.
1386	32.	*Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux.* 39.
1425	33.	*John*, Prince of *Arragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Arragon* alſo; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daughter of *Charles* the third. 54.
1479	34.	*Leonora*, Daughter of *John* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 days only.
1479	35.	*Francis Phœbus*, Grandchild of *Leonora* and *Gaſton* of *Foix*, by their Son *Gaſton*, Prince of *Viane.*
1483	36.	*Catharine*, Siſter of *Francis.* *John*, Earl of *Albret.*
1517	37.	*Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Son of *John* and *Catharine.*
1556	38.	*Joan* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret.* *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* in *France.*
1572	39.	*Henry* III. the Son of *Antony* and *Joan*, after the death of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the fourth.
1610	40.	*Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*,
	41.	*Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV of *France*, now living; with whom remain the rights,

but not the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom. For in the reign of *Katharine* and *John* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moors*, and ſurpriſed this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and deſtitute of means to make the ſmalleſt reſiſtance, *Anno* 1512. The pretended reaſon of this ſurpriſal, was an *Excommunication* laid on theſe Princes by the *Pope*, of which this King took upon him to be *Executioner*; but the true cauſe was an ancient deſire which this King had to poſſeſs this frontier Kingdom, it being a ſtrong Bulwark againſt *France*. It hapned then, that *Lewis* the 12th, having incurred the diſpleaſure of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, was (together with all his adherents) excommunicated, and his and their Eſtates given to ſuch as could or would ſubdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were, at this time, both *French* Subjects: he, in reſpect of *Albret*, his Paternal Inheritance; and ſhe, of her Eſtates of *Foix* and *Bearn*: and therefore ſided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we ſaid) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moors*, turneth upon the *French* King, and demanded of theſe Princes not only a free paſſage through their Country, but alſo to have certain places of ſtrength put into his hand, for his better aſſurance. Theſe unjuſt demands the *Navarrois* denyed. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greateſt part of which he took without a blow given; the *French* King being as backward in affording due aſſiſtance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* netled with this loſs, divers times attempted the recovery of it but in vain: for the *Spaniard* ſtill keepeth thoſe parts of it which lye on that ſide of the *Pyrenees*, leaving the reſt, which lyeth on the *French* ſide of thoſe Mountains (being about a ſixth part of the whole) to the Deſcendents of thoſe Princes whom he had diſſeized.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the ſixth; their Blazon, a pot of *Lillies.* with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it, their duty, to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries.*

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed *Or*. Which Carbuncle having a reſemblance unto chains of Gold, is ſaid to have been firſt taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had firſt broken the Fortification made with Chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Meramomolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent.*

3. *BISCAY and GUIPUSCOA.*

OF theſe two we ſhall ſpeak together, becauſe of the ſimilitude and reſemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the People: the names being alſo forged from the ſame Original: Bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Leon*, on the Eaſt with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guyenne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Caſtile*. Thus named from the *Vaſcones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre*, in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people in the year 640, or thereabouts, paſſed over unto the further ſide of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up thoſe parts of *France*, ſince from the called *Gaſcoigne*. The reſt continuing in their old Seats, or ſpreading more into the Weſt, toward the *Cantabrians*, gave to thoſe parts the name of *Guipuſcoa*, and *Viſcaia*, (for ſo the *Spaniards* write and ſpeak it) now by us called *Biſcay*: their language alſo (which is much different from the reſt of *Spain*) being called the *Baſquiſh*, more near in ſound to that of the *Vaſcons*, the original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little ſtore of Corn, and leſs of Wine: the defect of the firſt being ſupplied from other Countries; of the laſt, by *Sider*; for which end they Plant Apples here in great abundance. But from thoſe Woods they draw continually great ſtore of Timber for the building of Ships: and from thoſe Hills there do not only iſſue pleaſant Rivers, (ſome ſay 150 in number) of which *Iberus* and *Duero* are ſaid to be two; but ſuch infinite ſtore of *Iron* and *Steel*, that no Country yieldeth better, or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cauſe, the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occaſion unto *Pliny* to report, that there was in this Country a whole Mountain of Iron. *Maritimâ Cantabriæ parte; Mons præruptè altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia eſt*. lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furniſh all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into Inſtruments of War, and others for domeſtick uſes: but with Timber alſo for their ſhipping, with which ſo ſtored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two Parts; the Eaſtern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the Weſtern, bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrico* ſtanding in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the ſame Original, though by ſeveral means united to the Crown of *Caſtile*: both ſpeak the ſame *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Baſquiſh*; the People of both being more rude and ſimple than the reſt of *Spain*; but ſtanding much upon their Gentry, according to the cuſtom of moſt mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that thoſe of *Guipuſcoa*, by reaſon of their traffick and commerce with other Countries, ſavour a little more of Chriſtianity than the others do, in which the common *Biſcains* are ſo far to ſeek, that though they have ſome general notions of God and *CHRIST*, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable meaſure. And thus a view being taken of thoſe general notions in which both Countreys are concerned, let us next look upon them in their ſeveral and diſtinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And firſt for *GUIPUSCOA*. It is Bounded on the Weſt by *Biſcay*, on the South by *Alava*, on the North by the Bay of *Biſcay*, and on the Eaſt by the Kingdom of *Navarre*; and is not above 36 leagues in Compaſs. The Places of chiefeſt note in it are, 1. S. *Sebaſtians*, (*Don Baſtia*, as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurvineo*; beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two ſtrong Caſtles founded upon the oppoſite Rocks, and honoured with an Epiſcopal See. 2. *Toloſa*, (commonly called *Toloſette*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duarzo*. 3. *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Black-ſmiths*, who do attend their Hammers with ſuch endleſs diligence, that *Vulcan*'s Forge may ſeem to be tranſlated hither out of the Iſland of *Lemnos*. 4. *Guetaria*, beautified with a ſafe and convenient Haven; defended from all Winds by a little Iſland lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebaſtian del Cabo*, that famous Pilot, the firſt that ſailed about the World: *Magellanus* who went chief in that expedition, periſhing in the Action. 5. *Fontaabia*, at the mouth of the River *Vidoſa*, which divides this Country from *Guyenne* in *France*, for that cauſe very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned. 6. *Renteria*, ſituate near a Brook abounding with moſt excellent Salmons. 7. *Montrico*, at the mouth of the River *Denia*; the fartheſt Town hereof on the edge of *Biſcay*. Moſt of which ſtand upon or near the Sea, there being but few Towns of note within the Land, (though ſtore enough of ſcattered Villages, as in *Biſcay* alſo) becauſe of the roughneſs of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and Affairs of this Part of the Country, after the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of the *Goths* in *Spain* (for till that time they followed the ſame Fortunes with the reſt of this Continent) it was at firſt a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wreſted from King *Sancho* the ſixth, by *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1079; by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biſcay*. Reſtored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon ſome following Capitulations: It ſo continued till the year 1200; when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Caſtile*, they offered themſelves to the ſubjection of *Alfonſo* the 4th; who without ſo much as one blow ſtruck, became Maſter of all the Country, and left it ſettled and confirmed unto his Succeſſors, as it hath ever ſince remained.

2. For *BISBAY* next; it is bounded on the North-Weſt by the Bay of *Biſcay*, on the Eaſt by the Kingdom of *Navarre*, on the South by that of *Caſtile*, and on the North, by the *Aſtures*. The Principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Larrabechia*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times; in the chief Church whereof, the Kings of *Spain* as Lords of *Biſcay*; uſe to be ſolemnly inaugurated, here making Oath to maintain the Libetrties of the Country and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the People of it. 2. *Berneo*, an old Town alſo, and amply Priviledged; the Franchiſes whereof, the Kings are ſolemnly ſworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of S. *Euphemia*. 3. *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of theſe Countries. Then of a later date, we have, 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilboa*, ſituate ſome two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep *Creek* thereof; on the other ſide ſurrounded with Mountains: built out of the ruines of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Hero*, Lord of *Biſcay*, An. 1300; and ſituate the beſt of any Town in this Country, for Plenty of Victuals, eſpecially for fleſh, and moſt excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all ſorts of Weapons, (their chiefeſt Manufacture) the *Bilbo*-blades in ſuch requeſt being brought from hence. Beſides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal alſo in Wool; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown ſo wealthy, that here are many Private Merchants which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town alſo, with a capable Port. The landing Place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquiſhed the Empire, and all his other Eſtates, with reſolution to ſpend the reſt of his life in *Spain*, in a Private manner: it being obſervable, that he was no ſooner landed, but the Admiral-ſhip in which he came, and the greateſt Part of the Navy which came with him, periſhed in the Haven; to ſhew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this reſolution. 6. *Portogalltre*, commodiouſly ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houſes, and ſerveth them exceeding fitly for the lading and unlading of their Commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, before the coming in of the *Vaſcones*, were the *Cantabri*; theſe ſubdivided into the ſeveral Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Cariſti*, the *Antrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly ſo called. From theſe deſcend the modern *Biſcains*. An argument whereof may be their Language, different from the reſt of *Spain*; and ſaid by ſome to have continued in this Country ever ſince the confuſion at *Babel*. And though they overſhoot themſelves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the ancient Language of *Spain*, is more than Probable; becauſe this People have ever continued without any mixture of Forreign Nations, as being never throughly ſubdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Goths* or *Moors*; and ſo they remained, as in their Liberties not maſtered, ſo in their Language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*; the Tongue of the old *Britains*, in our *Wales*; and the ancient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though thoſe of *Guipuſcoa* ſpeak the ſame Language alſo, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words, (by reaſon of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with Strangers) than it is in *Biſcay*; where the old natural Language, whatſoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biſcains* differ from the reſt of *Spain* in Language only, but in Cuſtoms alſo; four of which I will here ſet down as a light to the reſt. Firſt, they account themſelves free from Taxes and Contributions to the King of *Spain*; yielding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purſes*. And when any of the *Spaniſh* Kings, in their *Progeſſes*, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entreth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who profer him ſome few ſmall Braſs pieces (*Maravides* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leathern Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance: but withall they tell him, that he muſt not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Biſhops to come amongſt them; and when *Fredinand* the *Catholick* came in Progreſs hither, accompanied, amongſt others, by the Biſhop of *Pampelune*, the people aroſe in Arms, drave back the Biſhop; and gathering all the duſt on which they thought he had trodden, caſt it into the Sea. Which averſneſs unto Biſhops, as they firſt took up, in all probability, on ſome hard uſage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and ſtill retain it out of a ſtubbornneſs of nature, moſt peculiar to them: ſo poſſible enough it is, that the want of Biſhops, and of Epiſcopal Viſitations amongſt the *Biſcains*, is not the leaſt cauſe of that ignorance and rudeneſs (ſpoken of before) which is found amongſt them. Thirdly, they allow not any Prieſts to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it impoſſible for them to keep their Wives unto themſelves, if the Curate hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, The Woman, at all meetings, do firſt taſte of the Cup, and ſo diſpoſe of it to the men: which cuſtom they have had amongſt them ever ſince *Ogno*, the Counteſs of *Caſtile*, attempted to have poyſoned her ſon *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country againſt the *Romans*, when the reſidue of *Spain* was ſubdued: and were at laſt, not without great effuſion of blood, and manifeſt tokens of manly reſolution, and heroick ſpirits on their parts, vanquiſhed by the Darling of Fortune, *Auguſtus*. Such hilly and mountainous people, are always the laſt that are conquered, and the firſt that ſtand on their own guard: as beſides thoſe *Biſcains*, the *Navarrois* and *Aſturians* here in *Spain*, in reſpect of the *Moors*; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a ſharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occaſion good and able men; or that the Forts of Nature's own building are not ſo eaſily won, as defended; or that the unpleaſantneſs of the Countrey, and unfruitfulneſs of the Soil, yield no occaſion to ſtrangers to deſire an Adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at laſt, they were firſt caſt into the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; and ſo continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but reſigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the reſt of that Province. Nor loſt they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Waſcons*; continuing ſtill good Souldiers both for Sea and Land; a ſtubborn, fierce, and couragious people; impatient of ſervitude, and not eaſie to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The laſt of all the *Spaniards* that ſubmitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting thoſe of the *Aſturia's*, never conquered by them) and one of the firſt Provinces which ſhook off that yoak: animated and conducted in that undertakink, by *Soria*, deſcended of the Blood-Royal of *Scotland*, *Anno* 870. made upon that good ſervice, the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*. After this, they continued a free and diſtinct Eſtate, under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the Noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Jeanne*, the right Heir of it, *Anno* 1358. From which *Donna Jeanne*, the eldeſt Daughter, married to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right heir of *Caſtile*, iſſued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the ſecond, and mother of *John* the firſt, both Kings of *Caſtile*: by which laſt, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, *Anno* 1379. The names of the proprietary Lords of this Eſtate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biſcay*.

A. Chr.

870 1. *Sorai*, the Son of *Lopes* of *Biſcay*, but Nephew by the mother's ſide to a King of *Scotland*, the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*.

2. *Manſo Lopes*, the Son of *Soria*.

3. *Inigo* the Deaf, Son of *Manſo Lopes*.

4. *Lopes Diaz*, the Son of *Inigo*.

5. *Sancho Lopes*, the Son of *Lopes Diaz*.

6. *Inigo* II. the baſe Son of *Lopes Diaz*; the two Sons of *Sancho Lopes*, by reaſon of their tender years, being ſet aſide.

7. *Lopes Diaz* II. Son of *Inigo* the ſecond.

8. *Diego Lopes*, ſirnamed the *White*, Son of *Lopes Diaz* the ſecond.

9. *Lopes Diaz* III. Son of *Diego Lopes*; the firſt who took unto himſelf the ſirname, of *Haro*, from a Town of that name, of his foundation.

10. *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*; Son of *Lopes Diaz* the third.

11. *Lopes Diaz* IV. Son of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.

1257 12. *Diego Lopes Diaz* II. aſſiſted *Sancho* the ſecond Son of King *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Fredinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after ſlain. A reward not unſuitable to his bold attempt.

1289 13. *Diego Lopes de Haro*, the Son of *Diego*

1290 14. *Diego Lopes* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the ſecond, the Founder of the Town of *Bilboa*.

1309 15. *John* of *Caſtile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the ſecond.

1319 16. *John* the *Blind*; ſo called, becauſe he had loſt an Eye; Son of *John* of *Caſtile*, and *Mary Diaz* of *Haro*; ſlain by King *Alfonſo*.

1329 17. *John Nugnes* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *John* the *Blind*, (whoſe name I find not) ſucceeded after the deceaſe of *Donna Maria Diaz*.

1350 18. *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, ſucceeded *John Nugnes* of *Lara*, his *Father*.

1351 19. *Jean* and *Iſabel*, the Siſters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, ſeized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Seigneury of *Biſcay* ſubjected by ſtrong hand to the Crown of *Caſtile*, with many other fair Eſtates which depended on it.

The Arms of theſe Lords of *Biſcay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the ſecond.

4. *LEON and OVIEDO.*

THE Kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO*, hath on the Eaſt, the Gountry of *Biſcay*: on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean: on the South, *Caſtile*: on the Weſt, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and firſt Seat of their Kings; the ancienteſt Kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more ancient name it was called *Aſturia*; from the *Aſtures* who poſſeſſed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two general names of *Auguſtani*, and *Tranſmontani*; but conprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Peſici*, *Gigari*, *Zoelæ*, and *Lancienſes*.

The Country mountainous and woody, but formerly of ſome eſteem for thoſe ſmall, though ſwift Horſes, which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Aſturcones*; we may Read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Geldings: *Aſturco Macedonicus*, being uſed for a *Macedonian Nag*, by *Petronius Arbiter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Aſturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the Weſt: and 2. *Aſturia Santillana*, confining on *Biſcay*, towards the Eaſt. From which diviſion of the Country, the eldeſt Son of *Caſtile* is called Prince of the *Aſturia*'s in the plural number; which title ſome ſuppoſe to be given unto them, becauſe it was the firſt Country which held up againſt the *Moors*. But indeed, the true Original hereof, is referred by the beſt *Spaniſh* Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and in right of her mother *Conſtance*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, unto *Henry* Son of *John* the firſt then in poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, ſaith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they ſhould be called Princes of the *Aſturia's*. In times ſucceeding, the Towns of *Jean*, *Ubeda*, *Biatia*, or *Bacca*, and *Andujar*, all ſituate near together in *Andaluſia*, and each of them inveſted with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Eſtate hereof; and ſo continue to this day.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Sublanco*, now a ſmall Village, but once a Town of ſo great ſtrength, that it was deſtroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, leſt it might animate theſe Mountainers unto a revolt. 2. *LEON*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain, not far from the place of the old *Sublanco*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Biſhop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, *An.* 722. Afterwards made the *Regal* Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by ſome called *Legio*, becauſe the ſeventh *Legion* was here lodged: by *Ptolomy* called *Legio Garmanica*; and by others, *Gemina*. 3. S. *Andrea*, ſo named from a Church there built to the honour of S. *Andrew*; by *Ptolomy* called *Flavionavie*; now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eaſtern part of *Aſturia*. 5. *Llanes*, where the two *Aſturia*'s meet together. 6. *Cividad Real*, in the Weſtern part of *Aſturia*, called *Aſturia de Oviedo*. 7. *Villa Vicioſa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Sythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time, the *City of Biſhops*, becauſe many of the Biſhops of *Spain*, diſpoſſeſſed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preſerved the line of Epiſcopal Succeſſion, till their Sees were filled again with Biſhops in more happy times. Anciently it was called *Lucus Aſturum*, and was of old a Biſhop's See; re-edified by King *Froila* the firſt, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the Title of a Kingdom to the firſt Chriſtian Princes, after the Conqueſt by the *Moors*; called from hence, Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, *An.* 896, in the time of K. *Ordogno* the firſt, they began to be ſtiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*, and at laſt, Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the *Regal* ſtile, by *Raymir* the ſecond, *Anno* 940. In the year 1580 there was an Univerſity opened here, which never came to any fame in the World. More towards the Inlands of this kingdom, (now reckoned part of old *Caſtile*) are, 10. *Palenza*, the *Palentia* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*, ſeated on the *River Carrion*, once a ſmall Univerſity, till the tranſlation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town firſt felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they maſtered theſe parts of *Spain*. 11. *Aſtorga*, anciently called *Auguſta Aſturica*, when the *Aſtures* of this Tract were called *Auguſtani*; a Biſhop's See, frontiering on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the luſtful king *Vitiza*; who to ſecure himſelf in his unlawful pleaſures, and to weaken his ſubjects if they ſhould attempt any thing againſt him, diſmantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Aſtorga*. 12. *Benevent*, on the South-eaſt of *Aſtorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the baſe Son of king *Henry* the 2d, of *Caſtile*, the ſtem of the potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in. 13. *Toro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Kingdom: and for that cauſe well fortified againſt the encroachments of the *Caſtilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms: made afterwards (as lying neareſt to *Caſtile*, and the Court of the king) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Country, hath been ſhewn already. When conquered by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, they were made part of the province of *Tarraconenſis*; part, afterwards, of the Province of Gallicia, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*. Won from the *Romans*, by the *Goths*; and from them, by the *Moors*; though long they did not lye under their command. For as the luſt of *Roderick*, the king of the *Goths* in *Spain*, occaſioned the coming in of the *Moors*; ſo the luſt of *Magnutza*, a *Mooriſh* Vice-Roy occaſioned (though in long courſe of time) their expulſion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius*, a young Prince of the *Aſturia*'s, on an Embaſſie to *Muſa* the Lieutenant General of the *Moors*, then reſiding at *Corduba*, in his abſence raviſhed his Siſter, and at his return died by the edge of his Sword. Deſpairing of pardon for his act, he was fain to ſtand upon his guard, and fortifie himſelf in the Mountainous places of this Country; to which many of the old Inhabitants reſorted, put themſelves under his command, and elected him to be their King: firſt by the name of King of the *Aſturia*'s; and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of moſt note, and the ſtrongeſt Hold that he was poſſeſſed of. The kingdom at the firſt beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Aſturia*'s; enlarged a little further South, on the taking of *Leon* by this firſt *Pelagius*. Afterwards, by the valour of *Ordogno* the ſecond, it extended over both *Aſturia*'s, *Gallicia*, and the *Old Caſtile*: divided from the *Moors* by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by thoſe Mountains. Kings of moſt note; beſides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mauregate*, the baſe Son of *Alphonſo* the firſt; who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the *Moors*, obtained the Kingdom, came to a baſe agreement with them; in which he bound himſelf to pay them, as an yearly Tribute, 50 *Virgins* of Noble Families, and as many of inferiour birth: for which he died hated and deteſted of all men. 2. *Raymir* the firſt, who ſo diſcomfited the *Moors* at the Battel of *Clavigio*, near *Calaborra*, in *Navarre*, An. 836, that from that time the Power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languiſh. 3. *Alfonſo* the third, who refuſed to pay unto the *Moors* the ſaid tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many Victories againſt the *Moors*, was ſirnamed, The Great: who being outed of the Kingdom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digeſted ſo great awrong, but willingly became his Son's Lieutenant againſt the *Moors*. 4. *Veramund* the ſecond, choſen King in the minority of *Raymir* the third; in whoſe time the *Moors* took *Leon*, and ſpoiled the Church of S. *James* in *Gallitia*; but were after beaten to their homes with the loſs of many of their own Places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making War againſt *Ferdinand* the firſt *King* of *Caſtile*, was by him ſlain in Battle; the Conqueror ſeizing on his Kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, the Siſter of *Veramund*; the three *Kings* next ſucceeding, being *Kings* of both. 6. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alfonſo* the 9th. and of *Berengaria*, the younger Siſter of *Henry King* of *Caſtile*; by the Power and Policy of his Mother, ſeized on the *Caſtiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Siſter, Wife of *Lewis*, Son to *Philip* the ſecond, *King* of *France*: and after the death of his Father, ſucceeded in *Leon*. Of whom we ſhall hear more when we come to *Caſtile*. After this time, theſe Kingdoms never were divided, but incorporate into one Eſtate, called for a long time the *Kingdom* of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal ſtyle, and only that of *Caſtile* mentioned; except in *Legal Inſtruments*, *Letters Patents*, and *Inſtruments* of Negotiation with Foreign Princes. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe *Kings*, the Hiſtories of *Spain* thus Preſent unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*.

A. CH.		
716	1.	*Pelagius*, of whom ſufficiently before. 20
736	2.	*Faſila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
738	3.	*Alfonſo*, for his Piety ſirnamed the *Catholick*, the Son in law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormiſinde*.
756	4.	*Phroilla*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, the Founder, or Repairer rather, of *Oviedo*.
768	5.	*Aurelius*, the Brother of *Phroilla*. 6.
774	6.	*Sillo*, the Son in law of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, by his Daughter *Odeſinde*. 9.
783	7.	*Mauregate*, an Uſurper, the baſtard Son of *Alfonſo*. 6.
789	8.	*Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
795	9.	*Alfonſo* II. ſurnamed the *Chaſte*, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
824	10.	*Raymir* the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
830	11.	*Ordogno*, Son to *Raymir*. 10.
840	12.	*Alfonſo* III. ſirnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Ordogno*. 46.
886	13.	*Garcio*, Son to *Alfonſo* the third. 3.
889	14.	*Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.
897	15.	*Phroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1.
898	16.	*Alfonſo* IV. Son of *Ordogno*. 6.
904	17.	*Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonſo*. 19.
923	18.	*Ordogno* III. Son of *Raymir*. 5.
928	19.	*Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Groſs*, Brother of *Ordogno* the third. 12.
940	20.	*Raymir* III. Son of *Sancho*. 17.
957	21.	*Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 24.
981	22.	*Alfonſo* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
1027	23.	*Veramund* III. Son of *Alfonſo*. 9.
1036	24.	*Sancha*, Siſter of *Veramund*. *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile*. 30.
1066	25.	*Alfonſo*, VI. the younger Son of *Ferdinand* and *Sancha*: firſt *King* of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sancho* elder Brother, he ſucceeded alſo in *Caſtile*. 41.
1107	26	*Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo*. *Alfonſo* VII. King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*. 13.
1120	27.	*Alfonſo* VIII. the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in *Leon* and *Caſtile*. 35.
1155	28.	*Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonſo*, *King* of *Leon* only. 31.
1186	29.	*Alfonſo* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
1228	30.	*Ferdinand* III. Son of *Alfonſo*, by *Berengaria*, or *Berenguela*, Siſter of *Henry* of *Caſtile*, by the Power and Practices of his Mother, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, whilſt his Father lived, *An.* 1217. to the Prejudice of *Blanch* her eldeſt Siſter, married to *Lewis* the eighth of *France*; by whom he had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth, on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldeſt Daughter, with *Ferdinand* eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth, ſurrendred all rights in the Crown of *Caſtile* and ſo confirmed the ſame more abſolutely to the houſe of *Leon*, *Anno* 1267; though neither this *Ferdinand*, nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs, did attain that Kingdom, diſſeized thereof by *Sancho* a younger ſon. The Kingdoms never ſince that time disjoyned, as they had been twice before ſince the firſt uniting.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lyon *Paſſant*, Crowned *Or*. Which Arms when it was joined to the Kingdom of *Caſtile*, were quartered with the Coat thereof; that being the firſt time (as *Cambden* notes) that ever Arms were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himſelf the title of *King* of *France*, but (to ſhew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lyces* with his *Engliſh* Lions.

5. *GALLICIA.*

GALLICIA, or GALÆCIA, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Aſturia's*, from which Parted by the River *Mearo*; on the South with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North with the *Cantabrian*; and on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Gallaici*, (whence it had the name) diſtinguiſhed into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Cilini*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*.

The Country, like that of the *Aſturia's*, mountainous, and almoſt inacceſſible, overſpread with the *Cantabrian* Hills; and ſo the fitter to hold out againſt Forreign Invaſions, in defence of *Liberty* and *Religion*: in that regard choſen for a retiring place by the diſtreſſed and vanquiſhed *Chriſtians*, in their firſt Wars againſt the *Moors*: Not well inhabited to this day; not ſo much for the hillineſs of the Country, as for want of Water; which defect makes the People generally draw more towards the Sea, were they improve their Fortunes by trade and fiſhing. The barrenneſs of the Country recompenſed heretofore by the rich Mines of gold and ſilver, which in this Country, and the *Aſtures*, and ſome part of *Luſitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millious of Crowns: but now no ſuch Mines found in it of any value. Inſtead of which, it yieideth the beſt Mines for Iron, of any Province of *Spain*; for which their Waters are ſo proper, that they are ſaid to fortifie and improve the *metal*.

Places of principal importance, are 1. *Compoſtella*, an Univerſity and Arch-Biſhops See, vulgarly called St. *Jago*, in honour of St. *James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here, and of whom there is denominated an *Order* of Knights: his *Reliques* ſaid to be kept in the chief Church of it, worſhipped by the *Romaniſts* with great devotion: and drawing to this place a wonderful concourſe of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3. *Corunna*, by *Ptolomy* called *Flavium Brigantium*; by us *Engliſh* the *Groyn*: often mentioned in the ſtory of our Wars with the *Spaniard*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time; then taken by the *Engliſh*: but ſince, very well fortified to avoid the like ſurpriſal. Divided then, as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*; ſituate on the *Cantabrian* Sea betwixt the Promontory

Trilencum, now *Cabo Ortogal*, lying towards the Eaſt; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis Terræ*; as being the moſt Weſtern end of the then known World. 4. *Orenus*, upon the *Minia*, a Biſhops-See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aquæ Calidæ*, from the *Bathes* here being, now much commended for the beſt Wines. 6. *Tui*, on the River, frontiering upon *Portugal*: a Biſhops See, in ancient Writers called *Tude*. 6. *Ponto-vedre*, 7. *Ribadeo*: both upon the Sea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, as before is ſaid, were the *Gallaici*, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the Power of the *Romans*: by whom firſt made a part of *Tarraconenſis*; after a province of it ſelf, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Aſturia*'s and ſome part of the old *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germany*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *tranſmigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and firſt Poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country. But not content with their Eſtate, they warred on the *Silinges*, (a *Vandal*-Tribe) then poſſeſſing *Bætica*, whom they vanquiſhed, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their ſecond King. They added, ſhortly after, *Luſitania* to their former Conqueſts: ſtopped in their career, by *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Goths*: by whom vanquiſhed, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed till the final ruine of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, *Anno* 858: reduced then to a Proviuce of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eaſtern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their Religion at the firſt, under *Recciarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and ſound. But vanquiſhed by the *Goths*, aud obliged unto them for the reſtoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianiſm*: perſiſting in that *Hereſie* for the ſpace of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholick* Faith, under *Theodmire* their King; therein continuing conſtant till their final overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are theſe that follow.

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1. *Hermenericus*; who firſt brought the *Suevians* into Spain, and poſſeſſed *Gallicia*; *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, then Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt.
2. *Rhechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and ſubdued *Bætica*.
3. *Recciarius*, the firſt Chriſtian King, who won *Luſitania*; afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Theoderick*, King of the *Goths*; the *Suevians* for a time becoming ſubject to that King.
4. *Maſdras*, reſtored unto the Kingdom by *Theodorick*.
5. *Frumarius*, the Son of *Maſdras*,
6. *Remiſmundus*, brother of *Frumarius*, recovered ſome part of *Luſitania*, and fell off to *Arianiſm*.
7. *Theodomirus*, the Reſtorer of the *Catholick* Faith amongſt the *Suevians*.
8. *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodomire*.
9. *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, depoſed and ſhorn *Monk* by *Andeca*.
10. *Andeca*, the laſt King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the uſurper of the Regal Title, ſerved in the ſame kind by *Leutigildis*, King of the *Goths*, as he had ſerved *Eboricus* his Lord and Maſter.

After which time *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothiſh* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times enſuing, it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonſo* the third, ſirnamed the *Great*, *An.* 886; and given unto *Ordogno* his ſecond Son: by whoſe ſucceſſion to the Crown on the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*; but ſo as to continue a Realm diſtinct. In the year 955, the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raymir* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordogno* the third, and right Heir of the Kingdom: who, coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raymir*, did once again unite it unto that Eſtate. Diſmembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngeſt Son, *Anno* 1067; but conquered ſhortly after by *Sancho* the eldeſt Son of *Ferdinand*; by whom *Garcia* was diſcomfited and imprisoned, *Anno* 1081. Never ſince ſeparated from the Crown of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: but when *Leon* was ſevered from *Caſtile*; going along with *Leon* in thoſe ſeparations, till the union of thoſe Kingdoms in the perſon of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1230; the *Caſtilians* being then grown better Stateſmen, than to canton Kingdoms.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, ſemee of Croſſets *Pitchee* a Chalice crowned *Or*.

6. *The Kingdom of* Corduba.

HAving thus ſurveyed thoſe Provinces under the Government of *Gaſtile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the ſhores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on thoſe which lye more towards the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*, and ſo come round at laſt to *Caſtile* it ſelf. And firſt we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, which at firſt erection of it, contained all thoſe parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrow bounds, when ſubdued by the King of *Caſtile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andaluſia*, *Extramadura*, *Granada*, and the Iſle of *Gades*. We will conſider it, notwithſtanding, in both capacities: In the firſt and largeſt notion, as unto the ſtory and affairs thereof, till diſtracted by the *Moors*, into many Kingdoms: In the laſt and ſtricteſt, as to the *Chorography*, and deſcription of it.

The Kingdom of *Corduba*, as it ſtood when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the Eaſt with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt with *Portugal*, and the Ocean; on the North with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Caſtile*; and on the South with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland-Seas: ſo called from *Corduba* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was ſaid, the Provinces of 1. *Andaluſia*, 2. *Gades*, 3. *Extramadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But becauſe *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the reſt were conquered, we will conſider it by it ſelf; and here proceed to the deſcription of the other three.

1. *Andaluſia* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Granada*; on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*: on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extramadura*: on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubenſis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andaluſia*, *quaſi Vandaluſia*, from the *Vandals*; who having won it from the *Romans*, had for ſome time (and till their expulſion into *Africa*) poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

This is the moſt rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*; extremely fruitful of Wine, Oyl, Oranges, (which laſt being ſhipped at *Sevil*, and ſo brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Oranges) and better furniſhed with Corn than moſt part of this Continent; watered with the Rivers, 1. *Anas*, 2. *Odier*, 3. *Bætis*, and 4. *Tenot*: which makes it flouriſh with a continual greenneſs of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven, do partake alſo in reaſonable meaſure. The *Air* hereof, by reaſon of its Southernly ſituation, is exceeding hot, inſomuch that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but thoſe exceſſive heats, much moderated by thoſe conſtant refreſhings which the cool winds, breathing from the North, do beſtow upon it. In which reſpect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* did uſe to ſay, that it was *beſt living in the Summer at Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reaſon of theſe cool refreſhings; and in the *winter-time at Burgos in old Caſtile*, which though ſituate more Northernly, in a very ſharp Air, had yet many notable defences againſt the cold.

The principal Cities and Towns hereof, are 1. *Corduba*, ſeated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left ſhore of *Guadalquivir*, overlooking towards the South, a ſpacious and fruitful plain. Firſt founded by *Marcellus* a *Roman* Conſul, *An. V. C.* 601; employed at that time in the Wars of *Spain*; the firſt Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the Chief City of *Bætica*. For a long time the Seat of the *Mooriſh* Vice-Roy, Lieutenant to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace, a magnificent Caſtle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, it was reſtored unto the honour of an Epiſcopal See; which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great circuit, but of very few Houſes, by reaſon of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca*'s.

Duoſque Senecas, *unicumque* Lucanum,
Fæcunda loquitur Corduba: ſaith *Martial*.

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field,
One *Lucan* and two *Seneca*'s did yield.

Nor was it leſs fruitful of good wits in the times ſucceeding. For not to ſay any thing of *Hoſius* that renowned Confeſſor, who was Biſhop here in the times of *Conſtantine*, and before: it was a flouriſhing Univerſity in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhaſis*, *Almanſor*, *Meſſabalah*, thoſe famous Philoſophers and Phyſicians, being Students or Profeſſors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* Leather, made of the Skin of a *Sardinian* Beaſt. Near unto this City is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but Olive-trees. 2. *Jaen*, a Biſhops See; remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever ſince the firſt recovery of it, have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Jaen*, and uſe it to this day amongſt the reſt of their Titles: it having been, before that time, the ſeat and title of ſome petit Kings amongſt the *Moors*. Not far from hence ſtood the Famous Town of *Illiturgis*, (by *Ptolomy*, *Illurgis*) mentioned ſo often in the War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Oſſuna*, of moſt note for the Dukes hereof, and a ſmall Univerſity founded here, *Anno* 1549. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*; of more eſteem formerly, than at the preſent: by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus* called *Aſtigi*, by *Pliny*, *Auguſta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Juridical Reſorts* of *Bætica*. 5. *Marchena*, ſituate on a Hill, where is ſaid to be the beſt breed of *Gennets*, (a ſwift race of Horſes) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Bætis* (as it was thought) conveying ſome ſecret virtue into them. Of this Race was the Horſe which *Cæſar* ſo loved, that he erected his Statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Luſitani* thought they were begotten by the Wind. 6. *Xeres*, ſituate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeros de la Frontera*, (the *Aſta* of *Ptolomy* and *Antonius*) famous for the plenty of that Wine which we call *Xeres*-Sack: but more for that great and fatal Battle fought near unto it, betwixt King *Roderick* and the *Moors*; the loſs of which, drew along with it the loſs of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sidonia*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from a Town of *Caſtile*, called *Medina Cæli*; the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conqueſt of *England*, *Anno* 1588. The Town called anciently *Aſinda*, and *Aſido Cæſariana*; the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greateſt Prince, for Revenue, in all *Spain*; his Intrado being eſtimated at 130000 Crowns *per annum*. 8. *Algezire*, on the *Seaſide*; a Town of ſuch ſtrength and conſequence, that it held out a ſiege 19 months, for the *Moors* of *Africk*, againſt *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*; to whom ſurrendred at the laſt upon Compoſition, *Anno* 1343. Since which, the Kings of *Caſtile* have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet diſcontinued. 9. *Conil*, a Town on the Sea-coaſts, beyond the Iſle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibraltar*, a ſtrong Town, ſeated at the month of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the Mountain of *Calpe*, ſuppoſed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furtheſt point Southwards of all *Europe*. 11. St. *Lucar de Barrameda*, (the *Luciferi forum* of the Ancients) the Port-Town to *Seville*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a fair wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*, 12. *Tariffa*, ſeated at the end of the Promontory which looks towards *Africk*; and ſo called, becauſe *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moors* by *Sancho* the third of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1292, or thereabouts; the firſt Governour thereof being *Alfonſo Peres de Guzman*, the firſt Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Suppoſed by ſome to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if ſo, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on ſome unmarried *Spaniſh* Women, by the *Roman* Souldiers) placed here, and indulged the Priviledges of the *Latins*, by Decree of the Senate, *An. V. C.* 600. Not far from theſe laſt Towns, in a little Iſland made by two branches of the *Bætis*, where it falleth into the Sea, ſtood the famous 13. *Tarteſſus*, celebrated in moſt ancient Writers, for the abundance of Silver which the Mines of it did produce Which was ſo great, that (as we read in *Ariſtotle*'s book *de Mirabilius*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* firſt came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχειν δύνασθαι, μήτε ὑποδέξασθαι τὸν ἄργυρον, that their Ships were neither able to contain or tranſport it thence: inſomuch that they were fain to make their Anchors, and other Utenſils, of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Heroditus* maketh mention, *Lib.* IV. Hereupon ſome have been perſwaded, that the ſhips which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarſhiſh*, (whereof we read 1 *Kings* 10. 22.) were bound no further than this place. As for the ſituation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as ſome, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture, (though where *Carteia* was be alike uncertain, if it were not the ſame with *Tariff*) but in a ſmall Iſland, at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, as before is ſaid doth appear by *Strabo*; who telleth us, that *Bætis* falls into the *Sea* with two mouths or chanels, πόλιν ἐντὸς μεταξὺ χώρα κατοικεῖσθαι, ἣν καλοῦσι Ταρτησσὸν, &c. and that in the midſt thereof there is a City called *Tarteſſus*, of the ſame name with the River, (for *Bætis* antiently was ſo named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tarteſſus*. The like *Pauſanias* ſaith expreſly in his *Eliaca*. Which ſituation of this Town in an Iſland, at the mouth of *Bætis*, occaſioned *Pliny*, and ſome others of the antient Writers, to give the name of *Tarteſſus* to the Iſle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latin*, *Hiſpalis*) the faireſt City, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compaſs ſix miles, divided into two parts by the *Bætis* but joined together by a ſtrong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful Walls, and adorned with many magnificent and ſtately Buildings, and Palaces, Churches, and Monaſteries; amongſt which is that of the *Gertoſins*, or *Carthuſians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly Revenue. It is alſo the See of an Arch-Biſhop, under whoſe Juriſdiction are ſaid to be 20000 Villages; and a moſt flouriſhing

ing Univerſity, wherein ſtudied *Avicen* the *Moor*, that excellent and learned Scholar: Pope *Sylveſter* the ſecond, and *Leander*, who was Arch-Biſhop hereof, about the year 580; a ſtout defender of the *Catholick* tendries of the Church againſt the *Arians*. The Univerſity adorned with one of the greateſt and goodlieſt Libraries in the Chriſtian World; furniſhed by *Diego*, the Son of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the firſt Founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in ſeveral Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care, and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times, for two Provincial Councils holden here; the firſt, *Anno* 584; the laſt, *Anno* 636; and at the preſent, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the ſervice of the King; but moſt of all, for the great traffick of the place. For from this Town the *Caſtilians* ſet forwards towards *America*; and here they do diſcharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagna*, and the Emerals of S. *Martha*, the Cochineile of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hiſpaniola*, and in a word, the whole treaſure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Oranges, and Oyls; ſent from hence in ſo great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people uſe to ſay in the way of a *By-word*, That *if there enter not into* Sevil 4000 *Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the* Farmer *of the Cuſtoms is ſure to break*; inſomuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholick* King: *Maginus* reckoning it at no leſs than a Million of Crowns yearly. Laſtly here reſteth the body of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the fortunate diſcoverer of the *New World*, with a Latin Epitaph upon his Tomb; but ſhort (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: Of which more hereafter.

As for the Fortunes of this City, as they relate to Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Arch-biſhop, (as before is ſaid) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*; his revenue eſtimated at 100000 Crowns *per Annum*; his Juriſdiction reaching over all *Andaluſia*, and the *Fortunate Iſlands*; in which are ſaid to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceſſes of which, being ſaid to comprehend 2000 Benefices, beſides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hoſpitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages, ſubject to his Power, as a *Metropolitan*, of more eaſie credit. Yet not ſo much conſiderable for its *Wealth* and *Revenue*, as for being once the See of *Iſidore*, ſo much renowned (conſidering the time he lived in) for the univerſality of his learning; who was a Biſhop here, called uſually *Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis*, to diſtinguiſh him from another of that Name in *Egypt*, called *Peluſiota*. As for the civil Fortunes of it, in the declining of the *Moors*, when their Eſtate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf under a Noble *Moor* named *Allcorexi*, *An.* 966. One of the Kings whereof, called *Almuneamuz*, was of ſo great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greateſt part of *Andaluſia* under his command, made ſubject with the reſt of the *Moors* in *Spain*, to the *Miramolins* of *Morocco*, *An.* 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaſer* unto *Africk*, *ann.* 1214. After which, once more made a Kingdom in the perſon of *Aben Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moors*; but no longer continuing in that Royal Dignity and Eſtate, than till the year 1248, when taken and ſubdued by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, and made a part of his Eſtate: but ſo, that it remaineth a Realm diſtinct in the Regal ſtile; in which the Kings of *Spain* are called the Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andaluſia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, ſtands the Iſle of *Gades*, diſtant from the main land 700 paces, and joined unto it with a Bridge called *Puento de Suaco*. It is in length 18 miles, of a very fruitful ſoil; beſides the Riches which it gets by Fiſhing, and making of Salt. Firſt peopled by the *Tyrians*, 562 years before the Birth of CHRIST; ſubdued by the *Carthaginians*, *ann. V. C.* 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defenſive War againſt the *Spaniards*; and was the laſt hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*; out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here ſtood in ancient times a Temple conſecrated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Sea fairingmen (at their being here) uſed to pay their vows, and offer ſacrifice, as being arrived at the furtheſt parts of all the World.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Cadiz* and the main Land of *Andaluſia*. 2. *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North; 3. *Cadis*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Iſland, and giving name unto the whole. Situate on the Weſtern part of the whole Iſle, on a large Bay ſerving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet; by the reſort and trade whereof it is much enriched. Firſt founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City by the *Romans*; and one of the *Juridical Reſorts* for the Province of *Bætica*; in whoſe times it was held to be the nobleſt and richeſt in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire, for greatneſs, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. In ſo much that here lived at one time, 500 *Roman* Knights; which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: Beſides the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great reſort, occaſioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old, the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moors*, at their conqueſt of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but ſince repaired, well fortified, and made the Magazine for the Ammunition of the *Spaniſh* Navies. Taken, notwithſtanding, in one day by the *Engliſh*, under the command of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Walter Raleigh*; in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, conſiſting in 40 Ships, whoſe Lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spaniſh* Navy, conſiſting of 57 Men of War; took the St. *Michael*, and the St. *Andrew*, two great Gallions, and their Luggage, ſpoiled and carried away more Martial Furniture than could be ſupplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they ſlew and took Priſoners 4000 Foot, and 600 Horſe, and brought thence a very great booty in the ſackage of it, *Anno* 1596. The fortunacy of which enterpriſe, gave occaſion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame their excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Eſſex*, (who was looked on as the greateſt Adventurer in it) viz. *De'vreux*; *Vere Dux*, which he afterwards caſt into this *Diſtich*.

Vere dux De'vreux, *& verior Hercule*; GADES
Nam ſemel hic vidit, vicit at ille ſimul.

Alcides yields to *De'vreux*; he did ſee
Thy Beauties (*Cales*) but *De'vreux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this *Iſle*, is that ſo celebrated Straight, called by ſome, *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearneſs of it to this Iſland; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not becauſe *Hercules* did there break out a paſſage, to let the *Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but becauſe of the two Pillars which he cauſed to be erected on each ſide of it, with the inſcription of *Nil Ultra*, this being ſuppoſed to be the furtheſt Country Weſtward. But when that ſuppoſition was proved untrue by the diſcovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in thoſe parts, cauſed two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones ſtood, or rather, where he thought they ſtood, and *Plus Ultra* to be written on them. As for thoſe Pillars ſo much memorized in the ancient Writers, ſome place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Iſland; others, on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*; and ſome again in two little Iſlands near thoſe Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Straight*, called now the *Straight* of *Gibraltar*, from the Town and Caſtle of *Gibraltar*, ſituate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length fifteen miles; and in breadth, where it is narroweſt, ſeven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the Eaſt and North, *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Portugal*; and on the South *Andaluſia*. It was firſt called *Bæturia* from the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; and for diſtinction ſake, *Bæturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract; to difference it from *Bæturia Turdulorum*, containing thoſe parts of *Granada* and *Andaluſia*, which lye neareſt unto *Tarraconenſis*. And when firſt it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the Banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time, of the Kingdom of the *Moriſco*'s, ſo called by the Chriſtians, as lying on the extremities or furtheſt ſide of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1. *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, ſituate near the ruins of *Norba Cæſaria*, deſtroy'd by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey*'s Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cæſar*: Now of moſt note for an *Order* of Knights here ſeated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2. *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3. *Merida*, ſituate alſo on the *Tagus*; firſt called *Auguſta Emerida*, founded and made a Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Luſitania*; and, by *Auſonius*, preferred before any in *Spain*: Now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing, but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatneſs. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Attace*, King of *Alani*, and *Silinges*, (this laſt a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, cauſed the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4. *Medelino*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it ſelf under the ground, for the ſpace of ten leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Diſcoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5. *Badaios*, a Biſhop's See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6. *Guadalupe* on a River of the ſame name; renowned amongſt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, for the Miracle and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much reſorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* in *Italy*. 7. *Placenza*, a Biſhops See, near the Hills of *Caſtile*; amongſt which Hills, (by reaſon of their ſtrength and ſafety) *Sertorius* made his laſt retreat, when perſecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary Faction; and where he was moſt wickedly ſlain by *Perpenna*, and ſome other of his own Aſſociates. Not far from hence, if it be not in the ſelf-ſame place, in a retired and ſolitary Valley, ſtandeth the Monaſtery of Saint *Juſtus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boaſt of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, the moſt puiſſant Monarch, having reſigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the reſt of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the ſecond, did here bid farewell unto the World; ſpending the reſidue of his time in Prayers and devout Meditations. The greateſt Monument and Example of *Self-denyal*, which theſe latter Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our Cloyſtered Monks, or any quitting of their Crowns by ſome Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in time of Ignorance and Superſtition, ſaw not ſo clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakneſs, and want of ſpirit) as this Maſculine and Heroick Emperor.

The old inhabitants of theſe Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Baſtuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andaluſia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and ſome part of the *Luſitani* in *Extremadura*; all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, during the ſecond *Punick* War, under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who paſſing over into *Africk*, left it to the *Suevians*; loſt by them to *Theodorick* the fourth King of the *Goths*, who hereby added all *Bætica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained ſubject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almoſt an entire Conqueſt of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at firſt ſubject to the *Great Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracenical* Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Ulidor Ulit*, under whom they firſt made this Conqueſt, *Anno* 714, to *Abdalla*, of the Houſe of *Alaveci*, *Anno* 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the line of *Mahomet* the *Impoſtor*, and firſt Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humeia*, (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been diſpoſſeſſed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spaniſh Moors*, cordially affected to his Houſe: whoſe Government he took upon him, diſcharged of all ſubjection and ſubordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors, and making it an abſolute Kingdom of it ſelf. In his Race it continued without any fraction or ſubdiviſion, till the time of *Hizen* the ſecond, the tenth King of theſe *Spaniſh Moors*; after whoſe death, diſtracted amongſt many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors* of *Africk*; of which more anon. In the mean time, take here the Catalogue of the Kings of theſe *Moors* of *Spain*, called commonly, from *Corduba* their Royal Seat,

The Kings of *Corduba*.

A. C.		
757	1	*Abderamen*, the firſt Sovereign Prince of the *Moors* in *Spain*.
787	2	*Hizen*, the ſecond Son of *Abderamen*, by whom *Zuleima*, his elder Brother, was put by his Throne. 7.
794	3	*Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hizen*. 24.
819	4	*Abderamen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, diſcomfited by the *Chriſtians* in the memorable battle of *Clavigio*, *anno* 836.
839	5	*Mahomet*, Son of *Abderamen* the ſecond, who reduced *Toledo*, then revolted under his Command. 35.
874	6	*Almundie*, the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
876	7	*Abdalla*, Brother to *Almundie*, and as little memorable. 13.
889	8	*Abderamen* III. ſirnamed *Almanaſor*, too fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Chriſtians*. 50.
939	9	*Hali Hatan* II. Son of *Abderamen* the ſecond.
959	10	*Hizen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*; in the 33 year of his reign, depoſed for his ſloath and negligence, by
989	11	*Zuleima*, an *African Moor*, of the Family of *Alaveci*; and he expelled by
993	12	*Mahomet* II. ſirnamed *Almohadi*, of the Old Houſe of *Humeia*; outed again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt theſe three, and their ſeveral Factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never reſtored again to its ancient luſtre; and finally, made a prey to
1001	13	*Hali*, another *African Moor*. 2.
1003	14	*Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
1007	15	*Hiaia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. Menſ. 4.
1007	16	*Abderamen* IV. a King of 4 weeks only.
1008	17	*Mahomet* III. poyſoned by his own Servants. 1.
1010	18	*Hizen* III. depoſed by the *Moors*, grown weary of the Houſe of *Humeia*, of which Houſe he was.
1011	19	*Ioar*, of *Algezire*. 3.
1014	20	*Mahomet* IV, the Son of *Ioar*, the laſt King of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, before the ſecond Conqueſt of theſe parts of *Spain* by the *Moors* of *Africa*.

Concerning which, we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigio*, againſt *Abderamen* the ſecond,

cond, by *Laymir* King of *Leon*, *Anno* 836, in which the *Moor* loſt 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spaniſh Moors* began to decline; brought utterly to nothing, by the ſloth and negligence of *Hizen* the ſecond; after a long and unprofitable reigu, depoſed by *Zuleima*, who ſucceeded. But the *Moors* not eaſily brooking the command of a new *Uſurper*, fell into many Fractions and Diviſions amongſt themſelves: every great man ſeizing on ſome part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himſelf with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valentia*, a fourth of *Cordova*, *&c.* the names of which laſt only, do occur in the former Catalogues; as they which did pretend a Soveraignty over all the reſt. And 'twas a ſign the Kingdom was in the exſpiring, when ſo many Kings ſucceeded in ſo few years, after one another: there paſſing from the depoſing of *Hizen* the ſecond, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time, we find no fewer than ten Kings. The often change of Princes, and ſhort lives of Kings, are the apparent ſigns of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its exſpiration; as may be ſeen by the ſhort lives and reigns of the laſt *Weſtern* Emperors, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years: as alſo, of the Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*, of which the ſix laſt held the Throne no longer then the nine *Weſtern* Emperors had done before them. But to proceed: *Mahomet* the laſt King of this firſt Rank, having left the ſtage in the 13th year of his reign, *Anno.* 1027, we find no good *conſtat* of his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconſiderable by the withdrawing ſo many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and inſolency of which Roytelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at laſt to call unto their aid the Kings or Miramomolins of *Morocco*, by whom themſelves, and all the reſt of their Cortivals, were in fine ſubdued. Under 7 Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spaniſh Moors* continued ſubject about 120 years; that is to ſay, from the firſt coming in of *Joſeph Telephin*, the Miramomoline, *Anno* 1091; unto the going out of *Mahomet*, ſurnamed the *Green*, *An.* 1214. During which time, the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain* were ſo well conducted, that they loſt nothing to the *Chriſtians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonſo* the ſecond, in the accompt of *Caſtile*; the ſeventh, in accompt of *Leon*, *An.* 1147: and the City of *Liſbon* taken from them in the ſame year alſo by *Alfonſo* the firſt King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquiſhed in the great Fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joynt Forces of the confederated *Chriſtians*, *Anno*, 1214, left off all further care of the *Moors* in *Spain*; after his going thence diſtracted once again into many Kingdoms, almoſt as many as great Towns, all of them ſwallowed up, in a little time, by the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongſt them, the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to ſtand long on this new Foundation, was ruinated and brought under the command of the *Caſtilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, armed and crowned of the firſt, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Andaluſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New-Caſtile*; on the South with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief-City, and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compaſs: a Kingdom of no great extent; but ſuch as contained in it more fair Towns, ſtrong Fortreſſes, and defenſive Places, then the like quantity of Ground in the World beſides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts overſpread with the *Alpuxarra*'s, and other ſpurs and branches of the *Oroſpeda*. In the time of the *Moors*, wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all ſorts of Commodities, the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys ſwelling with Corn and Gardens: ſince their expulſion neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dreſs and manure the Land.

The principle Cities of it, are 1. *Granada*, ſituate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; conſiſting of four ſeveral parts, called *Alhambre*, *Sierre de Sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*: the two firſt ſtanding on the Hills, the two laſt in the valley, the whole circuit being about 7 miles, and containing in the time of the *Mooriſh* Kingdom, about 200000 of Souls. Fenced with ſtrong Walls, fortified with 130 Turrets, and repleniſhed with abundance of wholſome and pleaſant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the beſt ſort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houſes of which, are for the moſt part built of Free-ſtone, with delicate and artificial Maſonry, ſhewing great magnificence; Herein ſtandeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable ſtructure: of Figure round, as having ſometimes been a *Mahometan Moſquet*. Here is alſo the place which they call *Alcazar*, repreſenting a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambre* is the Palace of the *Mooriſh* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Moſaical* work; and which, by reaſon of the ſtructure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongſt the *Wonders* of the world, having withal a goodly proſpect over all the Town, lying under it upon the Eaſt; a ſpacious Champaign towards the North, and the ſnowy tops of *Sierra Novano* towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Juſtice, for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolid* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the higheſt Court, having Juriſdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town firſt raiſed out of the ruins of *Illeberis*, ſituate not far off the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the ſtories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer ſort. 2. *Albama*, ſeated amongſt ſteep and craggy Rocks, out of which iſſue *Medicinal* Waters, occaſioning a great reſort of the *Spaniſh* Gentry: the firſt Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their laſt long War againſt the *Moors*, for the recovery of this Kingdom, *Anno* 1482; and looked on, by the *Moors*, as a ſad preſage of a ruinated and expiring Empire. 3. *Guadix* an Epiſcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4. *Veles Malaga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cex*; by *Antonius*, *Sexicanum*; ſituate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxarra*'s; a large branch of the *Oroſpeda* overſpreading a great part of this Country: heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who choſe to dwell there for the ſtrength and ſafety of the ſituation: ſince their expulſion, deſolate, and unfrequented; nothing remaining of them now, but the *Arabick* Language; which is ſtill ſpoke by theſe few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this Tract ſo high, that from the tops hereof a man may eaſily diſcern the whole courſe of the *Streights of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Ceuta*, and *Tangier* in *Africk*. 5. *Randa*, at the foot of another branch of the *Oroſpeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*: not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very ſmall Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Cæſar*, and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which fell to *Cæſar*, who then made an end of the *Civil-War*, which that very day, four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* ſlain, and his Forces broken; *Cæſar* himſelf being ſo put to it, that ſeeing his Souldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *Remember, that at* Munda *they forſook their General.* The ſhame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onſet, which was honoured with a ſignal and remarkable Victory: this being the laſt fight that *Cæſar* was in; mudered not long after in the Senate-houſe. And of this fight he uſed to ſay, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, in this for his life.* 6. *Antequera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering cloſe upon *Caſtile*. 7. *Muxacra*, on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, ſuppoſed to be the *Murgis* of *Ptolomy*. 8. *Vera* on the ſame ſhore; the furtheſt Town of *Bætica*, and of this Country, towards *Murcia:* ſuppoſed to be the *Virgao* of *Pliny*, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgitanus*. 9. *Loxa*, on the River *Darien*, enjoying a ſituation both ſtrong and pleaſant. 10. *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, ſituate at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, once ſacked by *Craſſus* the rich *Roman*, who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the Fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had ſlain his Father and Uncle, hid himſelf and his Companions, in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, iſſued out, and ranſacked, amongſt many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great Traffick, and much Reſort, eſpecially for Raiſins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and, to the great prejudice of the *Moors*, taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, *Anno* 1487: the Conqueſt of the whole kingdom of *Granada*, following not long after. It was ſince made a Biſhops-See, or reſtored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11. *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and enciently a Biſhops-See. 12. *Carthema*, 13. *Coim*, and 14. *Baſa*, more within the Land: this laſt, the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-eaſt whereof it ſtandeth. A place of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature; and by the *Moors* defended with ſo great a gallantry, that it held out a ſiege of 7 Months againſt an Army of 13000 horſe, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, being there in perſon: and yielded at the laſt, *Decemb.* 4. 1489. upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, after the Conqueſt of it by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, and ſo continued till that Kingdom was ſubdued by the *Spaniards*. But the *Moors* were too ſtout to yield at once. Having yet ground enough both to ſecure themſelves in, and endow their King: they are reſolved, though they had loſt one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruinated, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Albamer*, their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themſelves unto *Granada*, and there renewed their ſtrength and Kingdom, which laſted 256 years, under 20 Kings; whoſe names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of *Granada*.

A. C.		
1236	1.	*Mahomet Albamar*, the laſt King of *Corduba*, and the firſt King of *Granada*. 36.
1272	2.	*Mahomet Mir Almir.* 30.
1302	3.	*Mahomet Aben Ezar.* 7.
1309	4.	*Mahomet Aben Evar.* 10.
1319	5.	*Iſmael.* 3.
1322	6.	*Mahomet.* 12.
1334	7.	*Joſeph Aben Amet.* 20.
1354	8.	*Mahomet Lagus.* 23.
1377	9.	*Mahomet Virmeil.* 2.
1379	10.	*Mahomet Guadix.* 13.
1392	11	*Joſeph* II. 4.
1396	12.	*Mahomet Aben Balva.* 11.
1407	13.	*Joſeph* III. 16.
1423	14.	*Mahomet Aben-Azar.* 4.
1427	15.	*Mahomet* the little. 5.
1432	16.	*Joſeph Abud Almud.* 13.
1445	17.	*Mahomet Oſmen.* 8.
1453	18.	*Iſmael.* II. 9.
1462	19.	*Muley Alboacen.* 20.
1482	20.	*Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King of the *Moors* in *Spain*.

Of all which, there is little left upon Record: their whole time being ſpent in defending their borders againſt the encroachments of *Caſtile*; or elſe in *Civil-Wars* and diſcords amongſt themſelves: in which they were ſo frequent and ſometimes ſo violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Evar*, the fourth King, depoſed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thruſt out by *Hiſmael*, the Son of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treaſon. *Mahomet*, Son of *Iſmael*, murdered by his Subjects. *Joſeph* the Son of *Mahomet*, ſlain by *Mahomet Lagus*, and he again depoſed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miſerably ſlain by *Pedro*, the *Cruel*, of *Caſtile*, to whom he had fled for help and ſuccour. After this time, they reigned and depoſed one another, to the end of their Kingdom; the Succeſſor never ſtaying till the death of his Predeceſſor, but violently making way for himſelf to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but ſetting him beſides the Throne, as he himſelf was for a time, by *Muley Moabdelin* his Uncle; and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces to the ſubduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile*; ſo it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile* alſo. In the firſt year, then, of this man's Reign, did the War begin, or rather in the laſt year of his Father, who by taking *Zabara* from the Chriſtians, gave the firſt occaſion: and in the tenth year of the War, (for ſo long it laſted) 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick and *Iſabel* his Wife, after their firſt entrance into it more than 760 years.

Such of them as, after the decay of their Kingdom, had a deſire to ſtay in *Spain*, which had for ſo long time been their native Country, were ſuffered ſo to do by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a deſolation of the Country, if they ſhould abandon it) conditioned, that they would be *Chriſtened.* And that they might be known to be as they profeſſed, the *Inquiſition* was eſtabliſhed in the City of *Granada*, conſiſting of a certain number of Secular Prieſts, and Dominican Friers; who finding any counterfeit or Apoſtate *Chriſtian*, were firſt gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict ſuch puniſhment on them, as was accuſtomed in like caſes. By the terror of which *Inquiſition*, many profeſſed, in ſhew the *Chriſtian* Faith. But being *Chriſtians* only in the outward ſhew, and practiſing on all occaſions againſt the State, the Kings of *Spain* reſolved long ago on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a peace with *England*, and a Truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moors* of *Africk* ſo imbroiled in Wars, that they were not able to diſturb him; put that extream rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their conſultations; 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themſelves from the *Inquiſition*, and to recover their old Liberty loſt ſo long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada*, in the times of their greateſt power, were able to raiſe, were far beyond the ameaſurement and extent of their Kingdom: not above 700 miles in compaſs, as before is ſaid: but ſo exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of neceſſaries, that within two days ſpace, the King hereof was ſaid to have been able to draw together 50000 Horſe, and 200000 Foot, for defence of this Kingdom. *Turquet* reports it ſo, in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. But this proved more than they were able to do in their greateſt need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at laſt ſubdued by *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, Kings of *Spain*: though poſſibly by reaſon of their diviſions at that time, (ſome following the Party of *Mahomet Boabdelin*; and others, that of his Uncle *Muley*, choſen King againſt him) they might not join together in a common intereſt, for the defence of their Eſtate.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranate (or Apple of *Granade*) ſlipped, *Vert*.

8. *MURCIA*.

MURCIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Granada*; on the Eaſt and North, with *Valencia*, and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times eſteemed a rich and wealthy Country, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits; and ſo abounding in *Silver* Mines, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 25000 *Drachma*'s of daily profit: Now for the moſt part barren, and but ill-inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in ſo ſmall a Country. The Principal, 1. *Murcia*, by *Ptolomy* called *Menralio*, ſeated upon the River *Segura*, a Biſhops See, ſituate in a pleaſant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranates, and other excellent Fruits: From this, the Country had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2. *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, firſt built by *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, the brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of ſuch aids, both of men and money, as ſhould come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Iſland, in the very jaws of the *Mediterranean*: by which, and by a deep Mariſh on the Weſt-ſide of it, ſo impregnably fortified, that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the ſiege thereof, had not been ſhewed a way over that Mariſh, at a dead low water, by poor Fiſher men of *Tarragon*, who knew the Secret, he had there loſt both his time and his honour. Nothing more memorable in the ſackage and ſpoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treaſure) than the vertue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spaniſh* Ladies of great Birth and Beauties, left there as Hoſtages for the *Spaniards*, with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him, for fear it ſhould betray him to ſome inconvenience. Being re-edified, it was made a *Roman* Colony, and one of the ſeven Juridical Reſorts of *Tarraconenſis*: by *Conſtantine* made the chief City of the new province of *Carthaginenſis*,* which was hence denominated. Afterwards twice ſacked by the *Goths* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though now again new built and peopled, in the year 1570, it is but ſmall, containing at the moſt but 600 houſholds, and would be utterly abandoned but for the ſafety of the place, and the ſtrength thereof garriſoned and fortified very ſtrongly by King *Philip* the ſecond, for fear of a ſurprizal by the *Turks*; and the ſecurity of the Haven (which is withal very large and capacious) coming from a little Iſland lying at the mouth thereof; by which aſſured from tempeſtuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occaſion of that ſaying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, That *there were but three ſafe Ports in the Mediterranean*; that is to ſay, *Auguſt*, *July*, and this *Carthagena*: meaning, as I conceive, that thoſe two Months being commonly free from tempeſtuous weather, were of as great ſafety to the Marriners, as this famous Port. 3. *Lorca*, another Port-Town ſituate on a Creek more within the Land. 4. *Almanca*, 5. *Sarazel*, two ſtrong Towns bordering on *Valentia*; well fortifi'd when *Murcia* and *Valentia* were in ſeveral hands. 6. *Cervillan*. 7. *Albama*. 8. *Rus*, *&c.*

This Country being part of the Province of *Carthaginenſis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans* at their firſt entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Goths* in this part of *Europe*. Together with the reſt of *Spain*, it was ſubdued by the Moors of *Africk* in the diſtractions of whoſe Empire; after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made a diſtinct Kingdom by *Aben Hut*, of the Race of the Kings of *Saragoſſa*, who had ſeized upon it, *anno* 1228; and for a time was the moſt puiſſant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Countrey *Granada*, and a part of *Andaluſia*. Invited to a Feaſt, made drunk, and then baſely Murdered by *Aben Aradin*, a falſe Servant of his, *anno* 1236. One *Aben Hudiel* ſeized on the Realm of *Murcia*, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Alboaquis*, the laſt King hereof. But he not able to defend himſelf againſt his Competitor, ſurrendred it to *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, whom he put into poſſeſſion of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned that *Alboaquis* ſhould enjoy the Title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Soveraignty of *Caſtile*: And that *Ferdinand* ſhould enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the ſtate of a Kingdom but 12 years only, united to *Caſtile* without blood or trouble, and ſo remains ever ſince.

9. *TOLEDO*.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, ſo called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greateſt part of that Country which is now called *New-Caſtile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member. The Country lying next unto it was anciently the Seat of *Carpentani*, the nature of the Soil we ſhall find elſewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom: 1. *Toledo*, of great antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prætor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with thirty Towers ſtanding on the Walls. By reaſon of the ſituation of it in the very midſt almoſt of *Spain*, it is paſſing well inhabited; as well by the Nobility, who reſide there for pleaſure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who reſort thither for their profit: beſides ſuch Soldiers and their Officers, who are continually garriſon'd in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean and ordinary; though, by far, more handſome in the inſide than the outſide promiſeth: moſt of them being furniſhed with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed unto them by the admirable invention of one *James*, a native of *Cremona* in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The Streets narrow, cloſe, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troubleſome to walk or go upon, eſpecially in ſlippery or dirty weather, by reaſon of its ſteep and uneven ſituation on the ſide of a Rocky Hill: by which, and by the River which almoſt ſurrounds it, it is naturally very ſtrong, and well helped by Art. For that cauſe made the Seat of the *Gothiſh* Kings: by one of which called *Bomba*, ſo repaired and beautified, (beſides the addition of a ſtrong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by ſome accounted for the Founder of it. For ſo we find it in theſe old Verſes:

Erexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclytus Urbem
Bamba, *ſuæ celebrem protendens Gentis honorem*.

That is to ſay,

King *Bamba* (God aſſiſting) rais'd this Town,
Extending ſo the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief eſtimation amongſt the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both, (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and Preſident, for the moſt part, of the *Inquiſition*. His Revenue anſwerable to his Place, the greateſt of any *Clergy-man* in the *Chriſtian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being eſtimated at 300000 Crowns *per annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the Temporal Juriſdiction over 17 walled Towns, beſides Villages. 2. *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is ſituate on the River *Ana*; of moſt fame in theſe latter times, for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Caſtile*. Neighboured by the ruins of the ſtrong and famous City *Caſtulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreſoeni*, a People that dwelt on the other ſide of the River, ſuddenly entred and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the ſame Gate, put them all to the Sword; and cauſing his Men to apparel themſelves in the clothes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyreſoeni*; who ſuppoſing them to be their own Party, opened their Gates, and were all either ſlain, or ſold for ſlaves. More of this Town anon, when we come to *Caſtile*, to which now belonging. 3. *Tabora*, commonly called *Talavera de la Reyna*, or the Queen's *Talavera*; and called ſo on occaſion of an execrable Murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Guſman*, her Husband's Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*; ſuppoſed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolomy*, and now belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof. *Medina Zelim*, commonly called *Medina Celi*; of great importance when poſſeſſed or neighboured by the *Moors*. Now of moſt note for giving the title of Dukes to the illuſtrious Family *de la Cerde*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth, claiming, by that deſcent, a title to the Crown of *Caſtile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we ſhall ſee anon.

As for *Toledo* it ſelf, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; after that, the Seat-Royal of the *Gothiſh* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouſe* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors*, at their firſt entrance into *Spain*, *an.* 716; more prudently aiming at the Head, than the *Goths* poſſibly expected from ſuch *Barbarians*. In the Confuſions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the Reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the ſecond coming in of the *Moors* of *Africk*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf; continuing in that eſtate, till taken from *Haia Alchaduchir*, the laſt King hereof, by *Alfonſo* the firſt King of *Caſtile*, *an.* 1083. This *Alfonſo* being the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand*, the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that, by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Caſtile*, he lived in exile with the *Moors*; kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Haia* King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *an.* 1073, he picked a quarrel with his Hoſt, and beſieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his deſigns; which notwithſtanding held him a ſiege of five years, before he could make himſelf maſter of it, by him incorporated preſently on the taking of it, with the reſt of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Caſtile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well thoſe who held it but for life, as thoſe who left the ſame unto their Poſterity, they are theſe that follow:

The *Mooriſh* Kings reigning in *Toledo*.

A. C.

1 *Galafroy*, King of *Toledo*, in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vaſſalage of the great *Caliphs* of *Damaſcus*; ſubdued by *Abderamen* the firſt, King or Miromomolin of the *Moors* in *Corduba* of the Houſe of *Humeya*.

787 2 *Zuleima*, the eldeſt Son of *Abderamen* King of *Corduba*, being diſpoſſeſſed of the Realm of *Corduba*, and the reſt of his Eſtates in *Spain*, by *Hizen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which dyed not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the ſecond. At what time

833 3 *Aben Lope*, (the Son of *Muſa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and deſcent; but a *Moor* by profeſſion; who had cauſed the *Toledans*, and others of the *Moors* of *Spain*, to rebel againſt *Abderamen*) aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Toledo*: a ſtrict confederate of *Ordogno* the 11th, King of *Leon*; by whom ſupported in his Wars againſt thoſe of *Corduba*; but at laſt vanquiſhed and diſſeiz'd by *Mahomet*, the Son of *Abderamen*, *anno* 848.

990 4 *Abdalla* a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the ſecond, for the realm of *Corduba*, ſeized on the City of *Toledo*; which he held as *King*: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during thoſe contentions; by whom ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

995 5 *Mahomet*, ſirnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya*, King of *Corduba*, and diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*, and was kindly entertain'd by King *Abdalla*, whom he ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

999 6 *Obeydalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, ſlain in his Wars with *Hizen*, the King of *Corduba*, in the firſt or ſecond year of his reign.

1000 7 *Hairam*, of the ſame houſe of *Aben Humeya*, and, probably, the next Kinſman of *Obeydalla*; ſucceeded him in this Eſtate, and left the ſame unto his Poſterity, till ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

1010 8 *Hizen*, the Son of *Hairac*, of whom nothing memorable.

1045 9 *Ali Manon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alfonſo* the ſixth of *Leon*, when diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by his Brother *Sancho*.

1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.

1078 11 *Haya*, ſirnamed *Alcadarbile*, the Son of *Ali Maynon*, and Brother of *Hizen*; a cruel Prince, and ill beloved of his Subjects; which gave occaſion unto *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, ſpoken of before, to invade this Kingdom; by whom at laſt it was ſubdued, and *Toledo*, with its Territories, added unto *Caſtile*, as before is ſaid, *anno* 1083. By which means there accrued to the Realm of *Caſtile*, beſides *Toledo* it ſelf, and the Towns ſpoken of already, thoſe of *Illeſcus*, *Eſcallona*, *Maqueda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Conſuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalaiara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now paſſing in the eſtimate of *New-Caſtile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Chriſtians*, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain*, (in regard of Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*: and ſhortly after honour'd by *Alfonſo* with the Title of the Imperial City; that King, upon the conqueſt hereof, having aſſumed unto himſelf the ſtile of Emperour of *Spain*, but ſomewhat too affectedly, as the caſe then ſtood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which reſpects he gave unto this City for the Arms hereof, in a Field *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperial *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry precious Gems *Proper*; changed afterwards by *Alfonſo* the third of *Caſtile*, and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the ſame title of Emperor, to an Emperor ſitting on his Throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right. But the Blazon of theſe Arms I find not, nor much worth the ſearching: the old Coat being worn again after his deceaſe.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Navarre*, *Arragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the Weſt, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biſcay*, *Guipuſcoa*, and the *Aſturia's*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andaluſia*, and *Granada*. The Reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

This was the moſt prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent; to which the reſt are all united either by Marriages or Conqueſt. Divided commonly into the *new* and *old*; parted from one another by the Hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Caſtile*, becauſe it was the Ancient Patrimony of the Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the firſt Inheritance, by the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Toledo*, and other pieces, from the *Moors*. The *Old Caſtile* is the leſs fruitful of the two; more fit for Paſturage, than Corn, but better ſtored with that and all ſorts of fruits than the neighbouring Countries, which lye betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champian, better ſtored with Fruits, and furniſhed with ſufficient plenty of Corn, and other proviſions neceſſary for the life of man. The *Old Caſtile* watered with the Rivers of, 1. *Relaunos*, riſing not far from *Burgos*. 2. *Tormes*, paſſing by *Salamanca*. 3. *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others. The *New* with, 4. *Guadarama*, honoured with the neighbourhood of *Madrid*. 5. *Tævina*, and 6. *Tagus*, the moſt famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is ſituate on the North of the *New*; and hath for the chief Cities of it, 1. *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numantia*; which for the ſpace of 14 years, withſtood the whole Forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulſed their Enemies, and forced them to diſhonourable Compoſitions. But finding, at laſt, no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in a heap, then ſet fire on them, and finally burnt themſelves in the midſt of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adorn his triumph. 2. *Avila*, ſituate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence, the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abula*; and by that name giving the title of *Abulenſis* to the renowned *Toſtatus*, who was Biſhop of it. A Man, who in his time was Preſident of the Council to *John* King of *Arragon*; yet could find leiſure enough not only to attend his Epiſcopal Charge, but to compoſe thoſe learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other Abilities, (beſides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Caſaubon* hath given him, in his book againſt *Baronius*, ſaying *Laudo acumen viri, ſi in meliora incidiſſet Tempora, longe maximi*. 3. *Valladolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the ancienteſt Univerſities of *Spain*: diſcontinued for a time, by Students, and then reſtored again by King *Philip* the ſecond, whoſe birth-place it was; and who erected here a College (amongſt others) for the education only of young *Engliſh* Fugitives, in the year 1589. Seated upon the River *Piſuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the King's Court here reſiding in the ſummer-times, it became, in little ſpace, a fair, large, populous City, and of great reſort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbon*, and *Sevil*. It is called in *Latin*, *Vallis Oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it: but by *Ptolomy*, *Pintia*. 4. *Segovia*, a Biſhops-See, of great trade in clothing; ſituate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence, the Hills of *Segovia*. 5. *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relaunos* or *Relanzos*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d' Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*: built out of a certain Village lying hereabouts, by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Son in Law unto one of the firſt Earls of *Caſtile*. For a long time the ſeat of thoſe Kings, ſince of the Archbiſhops hereof; the Cathedral being one of the faireſt in *Spain*; built with ſuch art, that Maſs may be ſung aloud in five ſeveral Chappels, without diſturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency, (in *Civil* matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the firſt place or vote in all Parliaments or Aſſemblies of the States of *Caſtile*. But yet to ſatisfie *Toledo*, the Controverſie is ſtill undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, ſaying that *he would firſt ſpeak for* Toledo, *and then* Burgos *ſhould do for it ſelf*. Without the Walls of this City is a famous Nunnery, called *De las Huelgas*, conſiſting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houſes. 6. *Cividad Rodrigo*, a Biſhops-See, on the River *Gada*. 7. *Zamomora*, a ſtrong and well-built City, and a Biſhops-See, the *Sentica* of *Ptolomy*: ſituate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the beſt Bag-pipes. 8. *Tordeſillas*, the *Segiſana*, of the Ancients. 9. *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes ſo called; a Prince of great poſſeſſions, and the chief of the Family of *Roias*, and *Sandoval*. 10 *Salamanca*, the moſt famous Univerſity of *Spain*, eſpecially for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws: firſt inſtituted by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1240; and by an Order of the Pope's, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Profeſſors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Arabick* Tongues, beſides thoſe of the Arts. It was of old called *Salamantica*; is now a Biſhops-See, ſituate on the River *Tormes*, as before was ſaid.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grand-Fathers, was diſcovered in a Valley ſituate amongſt high and impaſſable Mountains, a kind of *Patoecos*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occaſion this: An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva*'s, which he very much valued, flew over thoſe Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at firſt, they were ſent back by the Duke to ſeek her. Clambring from one Hill to another, they hapned at laſt upon a large and pleaſant Valley, where they ſpied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongſt many craggy Rocks. The *Salvages*, gazing a while upon them, ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the beſt Houſes they had: which being obſerved by the *Falconers*, they return again unto their Lord, telling him, that inſtead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New world* in the midſt of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they ſaid they obtained belief. And the Duke ſhortly after went with a Company of Muſquetiers, and ſubdued them eaſily; they having no offenſive Weapons, but only Slings. They worſhipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good ſtore of excellent Fruits, Roots, and Springs of Water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their Language was not altogether underſtood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Baſquiſh*. Reduced, on this diſcovery, to *Chriſtianity*; but eaſily diſcernable from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occaſioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from thoſe Rocky Mountains wherewith on all ſides they are encompaſſed. The truth hereof, beſides the credit of *James Howel*, in his *Inſtructions for Forreign Travel*, I have upon enquiry found to be atteſted by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick intereſt. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly ſatisfied in the men; whom I conceive to be ſome remnant of the Ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themſelves amongſt theſe Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idolatry ſpeak them to be ſuch. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found ſome *Croſs*, or other Monument of *Chriſtianity*, as in other places; or ſome ſuch mixture in their Speech, as would have favoured ſomewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I ſhould proceed.

NEW CASTILE is ſituate on the South of the *Old.* The chief Cities there, 1. *Siguenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Biſhop's See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, ſuppoſed to be the *Condabora* of *Ptolomy.* 2. *Madrid*, upon the *Guadamara*, the *Mantua* of the ancient Writers, now the Seat of the Kings: whoſe reſidence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleaſant, hath made it, of a Village, the moſt populous City in all *Spain.* It is a cuſtom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their Houſes do belong to the King, except ſome compoſition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do uſe to brag to ſtrangers, that they they have a *City walled with fire*; and then make good the boaſt, by ſaying, That it is ſituate in the midſt of Quarries of Flint. 3. *Alcala de Henares*, (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an Univerſity of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Franciſco de Ximines*, Cardinal, and Archbiſhop of *Toledo*; and by him furniſhed with the ableſt men both for Divinity and the Tongues that all *Spain* afforded. By whoſe joynt diligence and ſtudy in turning over ſo many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he publiſhed the *Complutenſian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latin*, with the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* alſo. A work of very great charge and pains, (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof an *Hebrew Dictionary*, for the underſtanding of that Language. 4. *Alcoraz* amongſt the Mountainous tracts of *Oroſpeda*, called *Sierræ de Alcoraz*; memorable for a great diſcomfiture given unto the *Moors, anno* 1094. 5. *Molina* in the ſame Mountainous Tract, hence called *monte de Molina*, remarkable for giving the Title of Lord, to the Kings of *Caſtile*, who in the Regal ſtile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Seigneury hereof accruing to that Crown, by the marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonſo*, the laſt Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of ſtrength; well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6. *Cuenca*, ſeated at the Spring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of *Tagus* alſo, amongſt the Mountains of *Oroſpeda*; built by the *Moors* on the top of thoſe craggy Hills, whom it ſerved for an impregnable Fortreſs againſt the *Chriſtians*, till taken by *Sancho* the ſecond of *Caſtile, anno* 1177.

Here alſo is the *Eſcurial*, or *Monaſtery* of St. *Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the ſecond: A place (ſaith *Quade*, who ſpendeth 13 pages in its deſcription) of that magnificence, that no building, in times paſt, or this preſent is comparable to it. The front, toward the Weſt, is adorned with three ſtately Gates, the middlemoſt whereof leadeth into a moſt magnificent Temple, a Monaſtery in which are 150 *Monks* of the Order of St. *Jerome*, and a College: That on the right hand, openeth into divers Offices, belonging to the *Monaſtery*: That on the left, unto *Schools* and out-houſes belonging unto the College. At the four corners, there are four Turrets of excellent Workmanſhip; and for height majeſtical. Towards the North, is the King's Palace; on the South part divers beautiful and ſumptuous Galleries; and on the Eaſt-ſide ſundry Gardens and Walks, very pleaſing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 ſeveral Quadrangles, every one encloyſtered; and is indeed ſo brave a ſtructure, that a Voyage into *Spain* were well employed, were it only to ſee it, and return. Here is alſo in this Tract the old Town of *Caſtulo* (the *Caſtaon* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Hilmilce*, the Wife of *Annibal*, from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*; and ſo called by *Cæſar*; now a poor Village, known by the name of *Caſtona la Veia*; in which is ſomewhat to be found of the ancient ruines. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*; to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of theſe *Caſtiles*, were the *Vaccæi*, *Ventones*, *Arevacæ*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which, the name of *Caſtile* can be deduced: ſo that we muſt fetch it either from the *Caſtellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from ſome ſtrong fortified Caſtles erected in the Frontiers againſt the *Moors*. This laſt conjecture may ſeem probable, becauſe the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Caſtle* tripple-towered, *Or*. Neither is it any way ſtrange, for Provinces, eſpecially ſmaller ones, ſuch as at firſt this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Caſtle. For (to go no further) even with us, *Richmondſhire*, was ſo called from the Caſtle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alain*, Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flint-ſhire* took the denomination from the Caſtle built of Flint-ſtones, by *Henry* the ſecond. We may ſee hereby, how much *Cœlius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth, that *Alfonſo* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enaſer*, King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; aſſumed theſe Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Baſtitanes*; becauſe that Victory, like a ſtrong Caſtle, had confirmed his Eſtates unto him. Whereas, in caſe there were no other Error in his ſuppoſition, the *Baſtitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Caſtile*, but of *Valentia* and *Murcia*, Provinces far enough off from the *Old Caſtile*, at the firſt taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth moſt evidently, in that the people are by the *Latins* called *Caſtellani*: The Country, *Caſtella*: the ſame name with thoſe elder *Caſtellani* which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to ſtand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof, having been conquer'd by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Goths*, as hath been ſhewed already on ſome other ocaſion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*: recovered, foot after foot, by the Kings of *Leon*; governed under them, at firſt, by *Provincial* Earls, Commanders of ſo many Caſtles in the Country of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended againſt the *Moors*. *Ordogni* the ſecond, harbouring ſome ſuſpicions againſt theſe Earls, cauſed them all to be cruelly murdered. The People upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; govern'd firſt by Judges, then by Earls again, as an abſolute and free Eſtate. *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt that re-aſſumed the Title of Earl of *Caſtile*; coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave Retinue, ſold to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horſe, of excellent kinds, for a ſum of money; conditioned, that if the Money were not paid at the time agreed on, it ſhould be doubled, and redoubled, till the Debt were ſatisfied. This money, by the negligence of the King's Officers, who looked upon the Contract as a matter of jeſt, became ſo great a ſum, that the King, to ſatisfie *Gonſales*, made him the firſt Proprietary-Earl of *Caſtile*, *anno* 939; releaſing the Eſtate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as ſome call her, Siſter and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Eſtate by Marriage to *Sancho*, ſirnamed the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, *anno* 1028; by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Son, *anno* 1034. Kings of moſt note and obſervation in the couſe of their ſtory, are 1. *Ferdinand* their firſt King; who added *Leon* to his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Veramund* the laſt King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2. *Alfonſo* the firſt, who ſubdued the Kindom of *Toledo*, adding it, by the name of *New Caſtile*, unto his Eſtate. 3. *Alfonſo* the Fourth, who not only conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatſoever lay on the *Caſtilian* ſide on the River *Iberus*, but alſo the whole Countries of *Alava*, and *Guipuſcoa*, all which he united to *Caſtile*: but grew ſo great, that he cauſed himſelf to be ſolemnly crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*; and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Caſtile*, in his own life time. The chief of the Confederates againſt *Mahomet Enaſar*, the *Miramomoline* of *Morocco*, whom he vanquiſhed in the famous

battel

battle of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Moracca*, *anno* 1215. 4. *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Caſtile* into one Eſtate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 5. *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperor of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in Aſtronomy; the Author of the *Alfonſine Tables*: compiled by many Learned Men aſſembled together, by his means, in the City of *Toledo*, where, in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spaniſh* Writer, that he ſpent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 6. *Sancho* the 3d, Son of this *Alfonſo*, the Author of the great breach in the Line of *Caſtile*: for having the hap to ſurvive *Ferdinand*, ſirnamed *de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; he made himſelf ſo ſtrong a Party in his Father's Life-time, that he ſucceeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brother's Children of their Right therein, though many attempts were made, in their favour, afterwards. *Don Alfonſo*, eldeſt Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*; who by *Leonora de Guſmen*, a Daughter of the now houſe of *Medina Sidonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John* and *Iſabella de la Cerde*, (in which laſt, the Male Iſſue being quite extinct) the whole Rights of that Line remained: brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a baſe Son of the houſe of *Foix*; created by King *Henry* the ſecond, the firſt Earl of *Medina Celi*; whoſe Son, called *Gaſton*, left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himſelf that of *de la Cerde*; continued ever ſince in his Poſterity advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi*, in the perſon of *Lewis* the firſt Earl, the better to preſerve in memory their diſcent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preſerving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the cuſtom of this Houſe, once, at leaſt, in the life time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for reſtitution to the Throne; which the King receiving as of courſe, doth of courſe ſubſcribe this Anſwer to it, viz. *No eſt lugar*; that is to ſay, there is no room for him. 8. *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of this Kingdom by *Henry* of *Tranſtamare*, his Brother, reſtored again, for a time, by the valour of *Edward* the *Black-Prince*, Son of *Edward* the third. 9. *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Tranſtamare*, who married his Son *Henry*, to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, by *Conſtance*, one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*; ſo uniting both Titles into one. The times in which theſe Princes, and the reſt did reign, appeareth in theſe Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Caſtile*, which are as follow.

The Earls of *Caſtile*.

A. Cbr.		
910	1	*Ferdinand Gonſales* the firſt Proprietary Earl.
932	2	*Garcias* Son of *Ferdinand*.
983	3	*Sancho*, or *Sanctius*, Son of *Garcias*.
1018	4	*Garcias* II. Son of *Sancho*, ſlain by Treaſon; without iſſue.
1028	5	*Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Siſter of *Garcias* the ſecond, married to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the firſt King of *Caſtile*.

The Kings of *Caſtile*.

A. Cbr.		
1036	1	*Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon*, in the right of his Wife. 33.
1067	2	*Sancho*, Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* only; his younger Brother *Alfonſo* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 6.
1073	3	*Alfonſo*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Caſtile* alſo.
1108	4	*Uracca*, Queen of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. *Alfonſo* II. King of *Navarre* and *Arragon*. 15
1122	5	*Alfonſo* III. King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, the Son of *Uracca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, her former Husband.
1157	6	*Sancho* II. the elder Son of *Alfonſo* the third; his younger Brother *Ferdinand* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 2.
1159	7	*Alfonſo* IV. ſirnamed the *Noble*, Son of *Sancho* the 2d. 55.
1214	8	*Henry*, Son of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 3.
1217	9	*Ferdinand* II, Son of *Alfonſo* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Siſter of *Henry*, ſucceeded his Father in *Leon* alſo, *An.* 1230; the Kingdoms never ſince disjoyned, though the title of *Leon* in ſhort time became diſcontinued.
1252	10	*Alfonſo* V. ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, and Emperor Elect. 32.
1283	11	*Sancho* III. the ſecond Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth; the Children of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother, being ſet beſide. 12.
1295	12	*Ferdinand* III. of *Caſtile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.
1312	13	*Alfonſo* VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.
1350	14	*Pedro* the Son of *Alfonſo*, for his infinite Tyrannies, ſirnamed the *Cruel*. 18.
1368	15	*Henry* II. the Baſtard-Son of *Alfonſo* the 6th, Earl of *Tranſtamare*. 11.
1379	16	*John*, the Son of *Henry* the ſecond. 11.
1390	17	*Henry* III. Son of *John*, and Husband of *Katharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and the Lady *Conſtance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.
1406	18	*John* II. Son of *Henry* and *Katharine*. 48.
1454	19	*Henry* IV. Son of *John* the ſecond. 21.
1475	20	*Iſabel*, Siſter of *Henry* the Fourth, married to *Ferdinand* V. Son of *John* King of *Arragon*.

Of whoſe Acts, and Iſſue, we will make more ample mention when we ſhall come to ſpeak of the *Monarchy* of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been ſince continued in their poſterity.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within theſe Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, long ſince united into one, were Three in all; partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious perſons, not known in any Country but *Spain* alone.

This of the laſt ſort, is called the Order of *Mercy*, or *de la Mercede*; firſt inſtituted by King *James* of *Arragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelone*, *anno* 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdoms of *Caſtile*, where of moſt eſteem; but ſo, that in remembrance of their firſt foundation, they ſtill retain their ancient Arms, which are thoſe of *Arragon*, *viz.* a Croſs *argent*, and four Bends *Gules* in a field *Or*. Their Habit white; The Rule of their Order, that of St. *Auguſtine's*; the practice and profeſſion of it, to gather Alms amongſt the People wherewith to redeem ſuch Chriſtian Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by ſome other means are enthralled to the *Turks* and *Moors*: ſending their Agents yearly to *Algiers* and *Feſſe*, to inform them of the ſtate, age, and quality, of each ſeveral Captive, and after, on inſtruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A buſineſs which they manage with great care and faithfulneſs, and are accordingly truſted with great ſums of money, given and collected to that end: few men here dying, who give not ſome Legacy or other to this pious uſe. Nor are the Kings behind hand in ſo good a work, promoting it with a liberal Purſe, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Eſtate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* beſides. And to ſay truth, it doth concern him more than others, becauſe they are his Subjects chiefly, for whoſe redemption the whole ſum is given and gathered: *religious perſons* are ranſomed firſt, and then the *Laity*; the young and ſerviceable men, before old and impotent: if after the *Redemption* of the *Spaniſh* Captives, they have any ſtock left, they keep it not till another year, but therewith ranſom Captives of ſome other Nations. So that this ſeemeth to ſucceed in the place of the now antiquated and uſeleſs *Orders* of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power: that is to ſay,

1. Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, (to whom the defence thereof belonged) on the approach of the *Moors*, made good by *Raymond*, the Abbot of *Piſuria*, and the Monks of *Ciſteaux*, *Anno* 1157. For the future preſervation and defence whereof, they ordained this *Order*; which in proceſs of time grew to ſuch eſtate, that beſides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no leſs than 61 Towns and *Caſtles*. The Knights hereof do wear for their habit, a *White Robe*, with a *Red Croſs* upon their breaſts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the third, *An.* 1164, under the Diſciples of *Ciſteaux*. Their reſidence is at the *Caſtle Covo*; bound, by their Order, to ſerve in the Wars againſt the Infidels: upon which ſervices, they have been ſometimes in the field with three hundred great Horſe.

2. Of St. *Jago*, inſtituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Caſtile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the ſecurity and entertainment of *Chriſtian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of St. *Jago*, confirmed by the ſaid *Pope Alexander* the third, *anno* 1175, under the Rule of the *Auguſtine*. Their Habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red Croſs* like a *Sword*: the companions of it, according to the firſt Founders, being part *Eccleſiaſtical*, and part *Secular*: whereof theſe laſt are only tied unto the vow of conjugal Chaſtity. They grew in little time unto ſuch eſteem, that beſides two Colledges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a Colledge in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hoſpitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Caſtles in ſeveral parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, beſides *Friers* ſerving in their Cures, and other Miniſters, are above 600. Their firſt reſidence at the Hoſpital of S. *Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*, on a diſlike with *Ferdinand* the ſecond King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Caſtile*, beſtowed upon them by *Alfonſo* the 4th. Upon this occaſion being divided, they have ſince two Maſters, or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who reſides at St. *Marks*; the other the *Commendador* of *Caſtile*, who reſides at *Ucles*.

3. Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon*, againſt the *Moors*; where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, *an.* 1183. Others aſcribe it to *Alfonſo*, the Succeſſor of that *Ferdinand*. *an.* 1217; by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians*, in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the ſuperiority thereof, and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. Their device at firſt was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a field *Or*, to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a ſign of their ſubjection to them of *Calatrava*, changed, *anno* 1411, to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Croſs* on their breaſts.

I omit here the order of the *Dove* and *Reaſon*, inſtituted by King *John* of *Caſtile*, becauſe of ſmall eſteem, and but ſhort continuance: nor ſhall I now ſpeak any thing of the Arms of the Kingdom, which we have ſeen before on another occaſion. And ſo much for *Caſtile*, the firſt of thoſe Three greater Kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the reſt are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Eſtates before deſcribed; amounting to two third parts of the whole: and many large eſtates elſewhere, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter in its proper place. Paſs we on, next, to *Portugal*; the ſecond, in repute, of the ſaid three Kingdoms not ſo much for the largneſs of the Territories which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendixes* in all other parts of the World.

11. *The Kingdom of* Portugal.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth, 1. *Portugal* it ſelf: 2. *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*: and 3. the *Tercera's*, or Iſles of *Azores*: theſe laſt not reckoned parts of *Spain*, by any of our Writers, either old or new; but made by us a part hereof, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Portugal*, one of the firſt additions which was made unto it on the Ocean: and finally, becauſe I know not under what head to reduce them better.

And firſt *PORTUGAL* it ſelf, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the Eaſt, with the two *Caſtiles*, and *Extremadura*, from which divided by a Line drawn from *Ribadania*, ſtanding on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas*, or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coaſt from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it, in the broadeſt place (not taking in the Iſlands into the accompt) 100 miles; in the narroweſt 80: the whole circumference, 879 miles: and in that compaſs, 1460 Pariſhes.

It was firſt called *Luſitania*, from the *Luſitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof; and took the name of *Portugal*, either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called *Caia*, ſometimes a very rich and flouriſhing *Empory*; or rather from the Haven-Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*; where the *Gaules* (or the *French* rather) uſed to land their Merchandiſe: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*; and which Town was given in Dower with *Tereſa*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, to *Henry* of *Lorrain*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whoſe Succeſſors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all thoſe Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Country for the moſt part hilly, and bare of Corn, ſupplied from *France*, and other parts of the North; that which they have, being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The ſoil, and people, in all places, not rich alike. For where the *ſoil is richeſt*, (as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*) there the *people* are *pooreſt*; in regard of the great diſtance thereof from *Lisbon*; and ſo not benefitted by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the *ſoil* is *pooreſt*, there the *people* be richeſt, helping themſelves by trade and *manufactures*; eſpecially by making Silks and Salt, ſufficient for themſelves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwiſe ſufficiently recompenced with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fiſh, Salt, white Marble, and ſome Mines of Silver, *&c.*

The people of a more plain and ſimple behaviour, than the reſt of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old *Proverb*) none of the wiſeſt. For whereas the *Spaniards* are ſaid to ſeem wiſe, and yet to be Fools; the *French* to ſeem Fools, and yet to be wiſe: the *Italians* both to ſeem wiſe, and to be ſo: the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wiſe indeed, nor ſo much as to ſeem ſo. But little different from which is the *Spaniſh* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*; few, and fooliſh: which others vary with the addition of another part of their Character; ſaying, they are *Pocos, Sotos y Devotos*, few and Fooliſh, but withal Devout. They have great animoſities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathy*) againſt the *Caſtillians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but, when *moſt Fools*, were counted for good *Seafaring-men*, and happy in the diſcovery of Foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all ſorts, both great and ſmall, almoſt 200. Thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Minius*, full of Red-Led (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latins*), navigable with ſmall Veſſels 100 miles. 2. *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3. *Muliadas*, now *Mondego*. 4. *Tagus*, 5. *Duerus*, and 6. *Anas*, theſe three laſt common alſo to the reſt of *Spain*; *Anas*, or *Guardiana*, paſſing by *Portugal* but for 7 *Leagues* only; *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long ſpace, by Ships of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally ſwift of courſe, reſtrained within narrow Chanels, banked on both ſides with very ſteep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: inſomuch that it is reckoned for a great Prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great Ships, fifteen or twenty miles within the Continent. But here that want is ſomewhat tolerably ſupplied with three excellent Havens. 1. That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*: and 2. *Porto*, on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*; of which more anon: 3. of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, ſituate on a Gulf of 20 miles in length, and 3 in breadth: a place of principal importance to thoſe parts of the Realm. Rivers however of great fame; according to whoſe courſe, the whole Country was divided, by the *Romans*, into *Vlteriorem*, lying beyond *Duero*, Northwards. 2. *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*: and 3. *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1. *Lisbon*, ſeated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for Traffick; the *Portugals* in all their Navigations ſetting ſail from hence. By the *Latins* called *Olyſippo*, and *Vlyſippo*; becauſe, as ſome ſay *Vlyſſes* built it, coming hither in the courſe of his ten years travel; a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found that *Vlyſſes* did ever ſee this Ocean. But like enough it is, that this Town being ſeated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Sea-faring-men, might at the firſt be conſecrated to the memory of ſo great a Traveller: as *Athens*, being a place of *Learning*, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athens*. It is in compaſs 7 miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Pariſhes, and in them 2000 houſes: all of neat and elegant building. Turrets and Towers it numbreth upon the Wall, about 76; Gates toward the Sea-ſhore, 22. And towards the Continent, ſituate upon five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the higheſt Hill, an ancient Caſtle, not ſtrong, but by reaſon of the ſituation, ſerving now only for a Priſon of men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Caſtle of *Caſcais*; and nearer to the City, by the Fort of St. *Julians*, and the Rock of *Belem*; munitioned with 20 pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honour'd with the Seat of the Kings, ſince of the Vice-Roys, an Arch-biſhops See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beſide, ſaid, by ſome *French* Writers, to be the beſt peopled City in *Chriſtendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart-Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Conſtantinople*, *Paris*, *Moſco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous, and well-traded, as the beſt of them all. 2. *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, ſo called from S. *Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monaſtery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did uſe to be crowned) here martyr'd by the *Moors*; by *Ptolomy* called *Scabaliſcus* then a *Roman* Colony. 3. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whither by reaſon of the cool refreſhings from the Sea, and pleaſure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* uſed to retire in the heats of the Summer. 4. *Conimbre*, on both ſides the River *Mondego*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Vineyards, and Woods of Olives, a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity; the Maſters whereof made the Commentary on moſt part of *Ariſtotle*, called from hence, *Schola Conimbricenſis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5. *Braga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Bracoria Auguſta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*, the Royal Seat, when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbiſhop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6. *Porto*, the Haven of the *Gauls* on the Mouth of *Duero*. 7. *Mirlanda*, a Biſhops See on the ſame River. 8. *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is ſo great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the People of *Portugal* are his Vaſſals, and live on his Lands: Originally deſcended from *Alfonſo*, natural Son to *John* the firſt; created by his Father, Earl of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the latter Dukes, ſince the time of King *Emanuel*, being withal of the right Royal Blood; two ſteps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately aſcended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarve*, there is 9. *Ebora* in the midſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, an Archbiſhop's See, and an Univerſity; this laſt of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10. *Portelegre*, a Biſhops-See. 11. *Olivenca* on the *Guadiana*. 12. *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Meau*, and not very well inhabited; but anciently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridical Reſorts of *Luſitania*.

2. The Kingdom of *ALGARVE* lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Aſcorin*, on the Weſtern Sea, to *Odechore*, a Caſtle on the *Guadiana*: on the Eaſt, bounded by *Andaluſia*; on the Weſt and South, by the main *Atlantick*. This is the moſt wild and deſart part of all this Kingdom, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, nor thoſe very populous: hilly and mountainous withal; but yielding, by the benefit of the Sea, a great Trade of Fiſhing, of *Tunny* eſpecially; whereof more caught upon this Coaſt, than in all the Kingdom.

The name is took from the Weſtern ſituation of it, for ſo the word *Algarve* ſignifieth in the *Arabick* Tongue. The utmoſt end of it, called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*; now the Cape of St. *Vincent*; becauſe the bones of S. *Vincent*, religiouſly preſerved by the Chriſtians, were here burnt and ſcattered about by the *Moors*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Meſad*, once a King of this Countrey. 2. *Silvis*, an Epiſcopal See, ſeated in the In-land part. 3. *Villa nova*, ſituate beyond the Cape. 4. *Tavila*, the *Balſa*, and 5. *Faro*, the *Oſſonoba* of *Ptolomy*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*. 6. *Lagos*, another Haven-Town alſo.

This Country, conquer'd by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*, in the diſtractions of their Power, was for a time under the Sovereignty and Command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became ſubject unto them till they left this Countrey; and, after their retreat, was parcelled among many Princes. One of which, called *Aben Meſad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the parts adjoining, being diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, moſt of the other Towns and Princes ſubmitted to him, and became his Vaſſals, *anno* 1257. More abſolutely ſubdued and made ſubject to the Crown of *Portugal*, by *Alfonſo* the third, *anno* 1260; to whom the ſaid *Alfonſo*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Caſtile*, had given the ſame in Dowry with *Beatrix* his Daughter. From which Marriage iſſued *Dionyſius*, or *Denys*, King of *Portugal*, the firſt that ever uſed the Title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, *anno* 1279.

3. The *AZORES* are certain Iſlands lying in the *Atlantick* Ocean, oppoſite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which diſtant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern *Latitude*; and one of them in the firſt *Longitude*; which is commonly reckoned from theſe Iſlands, as being the moſt Weſtern part of the *World*, before the diſcovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goſhawks* which were found there in the beginning; (the word *Azor*, in the *Spaniſh* Tongue, ſignifying a *Goſhawk*) though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called alſo the *Flemiſh Iſlands*, becauſe firſt diſcovered by the *Flemings*; and the great numbers of them in the Iſle of *Faial*, (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet ſome Families which reſemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit, and not far from the place of their abode, a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Ribera de los Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are alſo called the *Tercera*'s, from *Tercera* the Principal Iſle among them.

The Air of thoſe Iſlands is generally good, and ſubject unto few Diſeaſes, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an impoſthumation of the blood, breaking out at the eyes, or other parts of the body. Some other inconveniencies they are ſubject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and ſtorms, of ſuch a violent and ſtrange kind of working, that Bars of Iron as big as a man's arm, have in ſix years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well ſtored with Fleſh, Fiſh, and other things neceſſary, excepting Salt and Oyl, with which they are furniſhed out of *Portugal*. Wines they have alſo for their own uſe, but not to be tranſported far, becauſe of their weakneſs: for which cauſe alſo the richer men provide themſelves of *Canary* Wines, or thoſe of the Iſland of *Madera*. Of like nature is their wheat and other Fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them ſubject unto Earth-quakes, and ſome to breathings out of fire, which continually ſendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief Commodities which they tranſport into other Countries, are *Canary*-Birds for Ladies, Woad for the Diers, Joyners-work, which they ſell to the *Spaniards*, and Beeves for the victualling of ſuch Ships as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; inſomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks; much given to *Joynery*; by which they make many pretty fancies, much eſteemed by the *Spaniards*, but not ſo expert at it, as thoſe of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach the Cattel underſtanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Maſter calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their Cuſtoms and Apparel, but with ſome ſmatering of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Iſlands nine in number; and diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral names of, 1. *Tercera*. 2. S. *Michael*. 3. *Fayal*. 4. *Gratioſa*. 5. S. *George*. 6. *Pico*. 7. *Corvo*. 8. *Flores*, and 9. S. *Maries*; of which, S. *Michael* and S. *Maries*, lye next to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the North-weſt of thoſe, (by conſequence the third in Order, whence it had the name) S. *George's*, *Gratioſa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, on the Weſt of that, and finally, thoſe of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, neareſt to *America*.

1. *TERCERA*, the chief of all the reſt, 18 miles in compaſs; well ſtored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges; and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-hearbs, and as good *Potato-roots*, (which are the beſt food the people have) as any be in the world; but more eſteemed in *Portugal*, than they be in this Iſland, by reaſon of their great abundance. Here is alſo great quantity of the beſt kind of Woad (which from hence is called *Iſland Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man which bears no fruit; but hath a Root as profitable as thoſe that do, out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattreſſes inſtead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the uſe of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any ſafety in it, but that of *Angra*; and that made ſafe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which ſtick out like a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who ſhould venture over them. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Praye*, on the Sea ſide, well walled, but not very well peopled. 2. S. *Barbara*, 3. S. *Sebaſtian's*, 4. *Gualme*, and 5. *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6. *Angra*, the chief, not of this Iſland only, but of all the nine. The reſidence of the Governour, and an Archbiſhops See, who hath in it his Cathedral Church; ſeated on a convenient Bay, made in the form of a *Creſcent*, with two Promontories on each ſide, (like the two Horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each Fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of the Haven: the Town it ſelf alſo well walled about, and environed with ſharp Rocks on all ſides. Both Town and Caſtle well garriſoned, and no leſs diligently guarded. This, in regard of its great ſtrength, and commodious Haven, is eſteemed the principal of theſe Iſlands, and communicates its name unto all the reſt; though neither neareſt unto *Spain*, nor the greateſt in compaſs.

2. S. *MARIES*, ſo called from the Saint (as St. *Georges* and St. *Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated, is the moſt Southern of theſe Iſles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* only, and thoſe much given unto the making of Earthen Veſſels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be eaſily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it hath the name of S. *Maries* alſo, which it either giveth unto the Iſland, or borroweth from it.

3. S. *MICHAELS*, directly North of S. *Maries*, from which little diſtant; the biggeſt in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not anſwerable; much ſubject unto Earth-quakes and fiery vapours. Of moſt note among our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the firſt *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into Eaſt and Weſt) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Iſlands*, where it was fixed in the time of *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

And this remove ſeems countenanced even by Nature it ſelf; it being obſerved that the *Compaſs* when it cometh under the *Meridian*, drawn through this Iſle, hath little or no variation at all, but pointeth almoſt directly towards the North; whereas in all other places, or leſs *Meridians*, Eaſt and Weſt, it pointeth not ſo directly North, but more or leſs to the *North-eaſt*, or the *North-weſt*; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-eaſting* and the *North-weſting* of the Compaſs. And yet it's obſerved of late, that there is ſome more ſenſible variation of it in this Iſle of S. *Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*; which therefore is conceived more fit for the firſt *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, beſides many Burroughs and leſſer Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, ſeated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers, than the Port of *Angra*, becauſe here they may go in and out as they pleaſe; but not ſo in the other.

4. *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length; plentifully provided with all things neceſſary for the life of man, and well furniſhed with Woad, for which Commodity, much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it, *Dorta*; defended with a Caſtle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*: both Town and Iſland taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *anno* 1597. This action was called the *Iſland-Voyage*; undertaken as well to divert the War, which the *Spaniards* threatned to bring to our own doors; as, by ſeizing ſome of thoſe Iſlands, to intercept the *Spaniſh* Fleet in their return, and to hinder them in their ſetting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their Neighbour-Nations. And though the *Engliſh* were not able to hold it long, yet it was ſaid that the Booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 40000 Crowns; beſides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took the name from its abundance of Beeches.

5. *GRATIOSA*, not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs, but ſo well furniſhed with Fruits, that they ſend much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but ſo poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6. S. *GEORGES*, twelves miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of Foreſts: but thoſe Foreſts ſo well ſtor'd with Cedars, that they uſe them many times for Shipping, and ſometimes for Fewel. The chief Town of it called St. *Georges*, as the Iſland is.

7. *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Iſle of St. *George*, and took this name from an high Hill in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Repleniſhed with Fruits, ſome *Cedars*, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty; the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within, and waved; ſo admirably beautiful, that it is allowed only to the

King's Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the uſe of it, (but on ſpecial licence) by a publick Edict. In bigneſs, it is ſecond only unto that of S. *Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly ſo much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1. S. *Sebaſtians*, 2. *Callcta de Neſquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the Eaſt parts of the Iſland.

8. *FLORES*, directly Eaſt from *Fayal*, ſo called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratioſa* from the like flouriſhing Verdure of it) is in compaſs not above 8 miles; but plentifully furniſhed with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Cruz*. The Iſle (though ſmall, yet) twice as big as the Iſle of

9. *CORVO*, ſo called from its abundance of *Crows*, ſituate on the North hereof, and but little diſtant: both very unſafe, and both moſt miſerable poor, by reaſon of the many Pirates which lie betwixt them, to intercept ſuch Ships as trade to *America*. But this, though much ſmaller than the others, may in time be of more eſteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the moſt natural place for the firſt *Meridian*, as before was noted: The Needle here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. Which whether it proceed from ſome ſecret Inclination of the *Loadſtone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being ſituate between the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magnetical* vertue of the Earth it ſelf, I leave to be diſputed by more able Judgments.

Theſe Iſlands were firſt diſcovered and ſubdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the firſt; who firſt made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were alſo the laſt Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, which held out for *Don Antonio* the Baſtard, againſt *Philip* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, againſt whom the Iſland of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the laſt by the Marqueſs of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promiſe of Life, cruelly murdered in cold Blood. After which garriſon'd at the firſt by none but *Portugals*. But upon ſome commotion hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on ſome Reaſon of State, to make ſure of the beſt Iſlands, by *Spaniſh* Garriſons; which accordingly were put into the Caſtle of *Angra* in *Tercera*, the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in St. *Michaels*; and *Dorta* in *Fayal*. And to ſay truth, the *Spaniards* had good reaſon to be careful of them: theſe Iſlands being of ſuch importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Æthiopia*, *Braſil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continu'd: becauſe the Fleets which come from thoſe Countries to *Lisbon* or *Sevil*, muſt, in a manner, of neceſſity touch upon ſome of them; as well in following their Courſe, if they come from the Weſt, as in recovering ſuch Winds as are uſeful to them, if they came from the Eaſt.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know that the ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Luſitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duerus*, the old *Luſitania* being bounded within thoſe Rivers; the *Celtici* and *Turditani*, who took up alſo ſome part of *Bætica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*: and the *Galaici Bracarii*, (ſo called to difference them from the *Gallaici Lucenſes*, who poſſeſſed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Duerus*. Subjected firſt unto the *Romans*; by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Suevians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal Seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* loſt it to the *Goths*; and the *Goths* to the *Moors*, as hath been ſhewn already in their ſeveral ſtories. Recovered, in part, by the King of *Leon*; to whom that part continued ſubject, till given by *Alfonſo* the ſixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his baſe Daughter *Tereſa*, to *Henry* of *Lorrain*, (whoſe virtue and good ſervice, merited no leſs reward) *anno*, 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl for the ſpace of 12 years, left his Son *Alfonſo*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the Title of King of *Portugal*, by the Soveraigns of *Leon*, for his moſt gallant demeanor ſhewn in the Battel of *Obrique*, *anno*, 1139. He had, before the *Aſſumption* of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here with no leſs, 45 years after that *Aſſumption*; reverenced by his friends, and feared by his enemies. So that the whole time of his ſitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years; a longer enjoying of Soveraignty, than any Prince ſince the firſt beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Succeſſors we ſhall have in order of the following Catalogue. But we muſt firſt tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of moſt note in the whole Succeſſion, are, 1. *Henry* of *Lorrain*, (whom ſome make a *Burgundian*, of the City of *Beſancon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deſerving nobly in the ſame, was honoured by *Alfonſo* the ſixth, with his Daughter *Teraſa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dower; given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Eſtate as far as *Conimbre*, on the South of the River *Duero*; that River being before that time, the utmoſt bound of it that way. 2. *Alfonſo* the firſt King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, Anno 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdom; which he extended Southward, as far as *Algarve*. 3. *Alfonſo* the 3d, who partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Eſtate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He alſo did prevail ſo far with *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, (never the wiſer for ſo doing) as to get his Realm diſcharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*. *an.* 1270. 4. *Alfonſo* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the ſame name in *Caſtile*, againſt *Alboacen* the *Miramomolin* of *Africk*, at the fight near the River *Salado* not far from *Tariff*; where they diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Moors*, conſiſting of 470000 Horſe and Foot. 5. *John* the firſt, the baſe Son of *Pedro* the firſt; ſetting aſide the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Caſtile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the firſt, and the Lawful Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election, obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his Marriage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, a ſtrong Competitor, at that time, for the Crown of *Caſtile*: On which relation, this King, the four Kings next ſucceeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6. *Edward* the Son and Succeſſor of *John* the firſt; of whom there goes a ſtory, that on the day of his Coronation, he was adviſed by a *Jew*, (one of his Phyſicians) learned in *Aſtrology*, to defer the Ceremony until noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his reign would be very ſhort, and full of trouble. But the King, either out of magnanimity, or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony, the *Jew's* Prediction was found true; for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill ſucceſs in his attempts againſt the *Moors*. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Viſco*, (*Viſcontinus* the *Latins* call it) the ſecond Son of *John* the firſt, created Knight of the *Garter*) by King *Henry* the ſixth, *an.* 1444. By whoſe encouragement and example, the *Portugueze* began to be affected to Foreign Voyages: diſcovering in his time, (and, for the moſt part, under his conduct alſo) the Iſlands of *Azora*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, thoſe of *Cabo Verde*, and a great part of the Coaſt of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*. He dyed *anno* 1465. 8. *Alfonſo* the fifth, who warring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the ſtrong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcazar*, and *Arzilla*. 9. *John* the ſecond, under whoſe reign the *Portugals* fully ſetled themſelves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; diſcovering all the Coaſts and Iſles of *Africk*, (not before diſcovered as far as to the *Cape of good hope*, *anno* 1487. planting and fortifying as they paſſed: the whole diſcovery of *Africk*, the *Eaſt-Indies*, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*, under whom alſo they diſcomfited great Armies of the *Turks* and *Sultans*, of *Egypt*; bringing by Sea the riches of the *Eaſt*, into the *Weſt*. 11. *Sebaſtian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, ſon of *Emanuel*, embarking himſelf unadviſedly in the Wars of *Africk*, loſt his life (as it is generally ſuppoſed) at the battel of *Alcaſar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for ſhame and ſorrow he returned not home; wandring from one place to another, and at laſt was found and avowed at *Venice*; thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon, without any ſuſtenance but a Knife and a Halter: brought into *Spain* by the King's Command, where at laſt he dyed. A Man in whom ſo many circumſtances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* uſed to ſay, that either he was the true *Sebaſtian*, or elſe the Devil in his likeneſs. But whether true or not, it is not now material; Death having put an end to that diſputation; though the controverſie which enſued upon his death, for the Crown of *Portugal*, be not yet decided. For, though King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, ſucceeded in it next after *Henry* the *Cardinal* King (who only came upon the ſtage, that the Competitors might have time to declare their titles); and claimed the Crown as eldeſt Heir-male, and neareſt Kinſman to King *Henry*; yet all the World was not well ſatisfied in the Juſtice and Equity of his Demands. In the carrying on of which Affair, he ſeemed to deal very candidly to the Eyes of men, not biaſſed by their proper *Intereſt*: offering to ſubmit his Title to a Diſputation; profeſſing, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Caſtile*; and openly acknowledging that if he ſhould chance to dye before the ſaid *Henry*, his eldeſt Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind ſome others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himſelf had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make ſure work after his deceaſe, (*Antonio* the Baſtard having got poſſeſſion of *Lisbon*, and taking on himſelf as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raiſed an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and ſubdued all that ſtood againſt him; *Katherine* the Dutcheſs of *Bragance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, ſurrendring alſo all her intereſt and pretenſions to him; ſo entring by a mixt Title of Deſcent and Arms, *anno* 1580. Threeſcore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the King of *Spain*, when ſuddenly diſpoſſeſſed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the youngeſt Son of King *Emanuel*, which wrought ſo cunningly and ſucceſsfully in his behalf, (by the great wit and under-hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Miniſters of the *French*) that the King of *Spain* was ſooner diſſeized of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice ſet on foot againſt him, *anno* 1636. In which it is to be obſerved, that as King *Philip* the ſecond, for the better obtaining of this Crown had embroyled the *French*, ingaging, that King in a bloody War againſt the *Proteſtants* of that Kingdom; to make him ſure enough from troubling him in his preſent Enterpriſe: ſo the *French* Miniſters had cauſed a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was buſied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themſelves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the *Antipathy* betwixt the Nations made leſs pleaſant to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loſs of *Portugal*, and no more: but a general falling off of the whole Eſtate in *Africk*, *Aſia*, *America*; in the Iſles and Continents: the *Acceſſories* (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*, and ſome of the *Tercera's*) going the ſame way as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be juſtly taxed for committing a greater *Solœciſm* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that, having got the full and peaceable poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garriſons and ſtrong Holds of the whole Eſtate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it ſelf fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any heſitancy, which, had ſome of the chief Pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, been brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Caſtilians*; might have been eaſily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever ſince ſo over-laid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leiſure to attend that buſineſs. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to preſent you with a Catalogue of

The Kings of *Portugal*.

A. Ch.		
		Henry the firſt Earl of *Portugal*, the Father of
1139	1	*Alfonſo*, the ſecond Earl, and firſt King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184	2	*Sancho* the Son of *Alfonſo*, 28.
1212	3	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Sancho* 11.
1223	4	*Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonſo* the 2d. 34.
1247	5	*Alfonſo* III. Brother of *Sancho* the 2d. 22.
1279	6	*Denys* the Son of *Alfonſo* the 3d. 48.
1327	7	*Alfonſo* IV. the Son of *Denys*. 32. Died in 1383.
1359	8	*Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the 4th. 10.
1369	9	*Ferdinand*, the Son of *Pedro*, the laſt King of the lawful Iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorrein*. 18.
1387	10	*John* the baſe Son of *Pedro*, of whom ſufficiently before. 48.
1435	11	*Edward* the Son of *John*, and of the Lady *Philip* of *Lancaſter*. 5. born in 1401.
1440	12	*Alfonſo* V. the Son of *Edward*. 43; born 1432.
1483	13	*John* II. the Son of *Alfonſo* the 5th. 14.
1495	14	*Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Son *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viſco*. 26. born 1469.
1523	15	*John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38. Born 1502.
1557	16	*Sebaſtian*, the Nephew of *John* the 3d. by his Son *Don John*; unfortunately ſlain in the Fields of *Africk* in 1578. 21. Born 1554.
1582	17	*Henry* the Cardinal, Son of King *Emanuel*, the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorrein*. 2. Born in 1420. Died in 1584.
1584	18	*Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, Son of *Charles* King of *Caſtile*, and Emperor, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.
1598	19	*Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*.
1621	20	*Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. During his Reign, the *Portugueze*, weary of the *Spaniſh* Government, choſe for their King
1640	21	*John* D. of *Bragance*, the IV. of that Name: a Prince of great poſſeſſions, and of Royal Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it. He was Proclaimed *Decemb.* 1. and crown'd the 15th of the ſame Month. This Prince was Born the 19th of *March* 1604, and is Deſcended from *Alphonſus* a Natural Son of *John* I. King of *Portugal*, who was made the Firſt Duke of *Braganza*, his Grandmother was *Catherine* the Daughter of *Edward*, Infant of *Portugal*. He Reigned to the 6th of *November* 1656.

Now that ye may the better ſee by what title both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Bragance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of *Sebaſtian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Baſtard, (but alledging a ſentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the Houſe of *Savoy*, did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following *Scheme*.

Emanuel had theſe Children;
1. *John*, King of *Portugal* --- *John*, Prince of *Portugal* --- *Sebaſtian*, King of *Portugal*.
2. *Lewis* --- *Don Antonio* a Baſtard --- *Chriſtopher*, and others.
3. *Henry* the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*.
4. *Edward*
   1. *Mary*, wedded to *Alexander* Duke of *Parma*. --- *Rainuccio Farneſis*.
   2. *Kath.* married to *John* D. of *Bragance*.
5. *Mary*, married to *Charles* the fifth, King of *Caſtile*. --- *Philip* the II. King of *Spain*.
6. *Beatrix*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the Claims are grounded: but whether Title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal Line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, ſo it ended in an *Henry* alſo; the Male-Line failing in the perſon of the Cardinal King, and the Crown falling (on whomſoever it ſhall faſten) on the Heirs of the Females.

1656. 22. *Alfonſo* VI. Son of *John*, born in 1643. ſucceeded his Father, being then a Minor, and under the Tutelage of his Mother. He proved a Prince unfit for Government, and was depoſed by his Subjects, and ſent into the Iſland of *Tercera*, where he died in the year 1683.

1668. 23. *Pedro* II. Brother of *Alfonſo*, born in 1648, who had at firſt the Title of Regent, and married his Brothers Wife; but upon his Death, in 1683, He aſſumed the Title of King of *Portugal*, and is now living. In the Year 1687 he married *Mary Sophia*, Daughter to *Philip William* Elector *Palatine*. By his firſt Wife, he has only one Daughter, *Maria Elizabetha*, born in the year 1669. There was a Prince born of the 2d Marriage, in 1689.

The Principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *Avis*, ſo called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the Seat thereof: Founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the firſt, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whoſe *Green Croſs* they wear: but equal to it neither in Power nor Riches.

2. Of *CHRIST*; inſtituted by *Denys* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the exauterated *Templers*, confirmed by Pope *John* the twenty ſecond, *anno* 1231. Their Robe is a *Black Caſſock*, under a *White Surcoat*; over which, a *Red Croſs*, ſtroaked in the midſt with a white Line: their Duty, to expel the *Moors* out of *Bætica*, the next Neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown, they have added many gallant Countries in *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *Brazil*; and ſo improved their own Eſtates, that all the Iſles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them; beſides the Rents of the Mine of St. *George*, in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Eſcocheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the firſt, pointed *Sable*, within a Border of *Gules* charged with ſeven Towers, *Or*. Which five Eſcocheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonſo*, the firſt King, ſlew at the battel of *Obrique*, *anno* 1139; the Border, with the Towers or Caſtles, being added by *Alfonſo* the third, on his Inveſtiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, *anno* 1257. whoſe Daughter *Beatrix* he then married, and ſo conceived himſelf to have ſome relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And ſo proceed we on to thoſe Provinces which are under the Government of *Arragon*: the third great Body of this State.

The growth of this Family of *Portugal* we may thus repreſent; *Alphonſus* 1. becoming King of *Portugal*, *Alphonſus* III. married *Beatrice* the Daughter of *Alphonſus* X. King of *Caſtile*, and with her had *Algarve*; *John* the Baſtard, in the year 1415, took the City of *Ceuta* in *Africa*, his Son in the year 1420 diſcovered the *Madera* Iſlands, which, with the *Canary* Iſlands, became united to this Crown. *Alphonſus* 5. took *Tangier* and ſome other Towns in *Barbary*. *Emanuel* ſubdued in the *Eaſt-Indies*, *Ormus*, *Malacca*, *Cochin* and *Goa*; and in *Africa*, *Congo*, *Angola*, St. *Thomas*, *Mozambick*, *Melinda*, *Mombazo*, *Zofala*; and in *America*, *Brazile*: They alſo poſſeſs *Maoco* and the *Azora*, and the *Tercera* Iſlands, ſo that when *Portugal* was Conquered by *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, it was one of the richeſt Nations in *Europe*, and by its Trade and Dominions abroad, of mighty Force and Eſteem.

In the year 1640, they regained their former liberty, and with it moſt of their Ancient Dominions abroad, which were then in their poſſeſſion; ſo that the greateſt loſs they have ſuſtained, has been by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company, which has raviſhed from them *Ormus*, and a great part of their Trade in the *Indies*, and on the Eaſtern Shoar to *Africa*; and what they have left there is become very poor, and in all probability, will be loſt; but in *Braſil* they have had better ſucceſs, and have beat the *Hollanders* out of that Country. All that the *Portugueſe* enjoyed on the Coaſt of *Barbary*, is loſt alſo to the *Moors* or *Spaniards*. One of the richeſt Trades the *Portugueſe* had was the *Braſile* for Sugars and Tobacco, with which *Trades* they ſupplyed the World before, but this Trade is now loſt to the *Engliſh*, whoſe *Barbado* and *Jamaica* Sugars and *Virginia* Tobacco have outed them, ſo that *Lisbon* is but the faint Shaddow of what it was in thoſe times.

12. *VALENTIA*.

VALENTIA hath on the Eaſt the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, part of *Caſtile*, and *Arragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia* upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers, 1. *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron*, and *Surus*. 2. *Guadalander*, ſignifying a River of pure water: and 3. *Millar*.

This Country ſtandeth in the moſt temperate and pleaſing Air of all *Spain*, full of Gardens and places of wonderful delight, where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn and Fruit: garniſhed all the year long with ſweet ſmelling Flowers, and miraculouſly fruitful of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath alſo Mines of Silver at *Buriol*; of Gold at *Laudor*; of Iron at *Finiſtrat*; of Alabaſter, at *Piacent*; and of Allom, Lime, and Plaiſter in many places. From thence alſo come the beſt Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimſon, Scarlet, and other precious Colours, and rich Perfumes. Finally, all the Senſes of man may be delighted and refreſhed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality, and ſweetneſs, much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleaſures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought leſs Warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Country alſo bear the fineſt Fleeces of any in *Spain*: firſt ſtocked with *Cotſwold* Sheep from *England*, at the requeſt of *John* King of *Arragon*, *anno* 1465, by the imprudent courteſie of King *Edward* the Fourth.

Places of moſt note in it are, 1. *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our true *Alicant* Wines, made of their Juice of Mulberies; by *Ptolomy* called *Illicias*; by *Mela*, *Ilice*: from whence the Bay adjoining is called *Sinus Ilicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2. *Oribuela*, a Biſhops See on the River *Segura*, which divides the Province from *Murcia*. 3. *Segorve*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolomy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City in old times of the *Celtiberi*. 4. *Xelva*, ſuppoſed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5. *Valentia*, a fair, pleaſant, and well-traded City, the See of an Archbiſhop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its firſt glory, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in theſe parts of *Spain*: in its laſt, the Royal Seat of the *Moriſh* Kings of this Country. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Durias*, now called *Guadalander*: and is by ſome ſaid to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which ſignifieth ſtrength. But when the *Romans* maſtered it, to diſtinguiſh it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*, which in the *Latin* Tongue, is of the ſame ſignification with the *Greek* ἡ Ρώμη. Here is an Univerſity in which Saint *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, ſtudied. 6. *Laurigi*, now a ſmall Village: once a Town of great ſtrength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* beſieged, took, and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whoſe Confederates the *Lauronites* were, ſtood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the Flame to warm his hands, and yet durſt not ſuccour it. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and his famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey*'s Army being not only overthrown, but himſelf, with life, hardly eſcaping. 8. *Morvedre*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof, when beſieged by *Annibal*, continued ſo obſtinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they choſe rather to burn themſelves, than yield up the Town; the occaſion of the ſecond War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. Firſt founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this deſtruction of it, repaired, or re-edified, by the *Romans*, (they could not poſſibly do leſs) by whom made a *Colony*. 9. *Gandia*, which gives the Title of a Duke to the Houſe of *Borgia*, and was the ſtyle of *Franciſco Borgia*, the eldeſt Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine*, by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10. *Denia*, ſeated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly Proſpect; the Marquiſate of the Duke of *Lerma*: firſt founded by the *Maſſilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which, is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*; the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars againſt *Pompey* and *Metellus*, both of great renown; the one aged and of much experience; the other young, and of high reſolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himſelf more troubled with the old man's Gravity, than the young man's Gallantry; inſomuch as he was uſed to ſay, That *had it not been for the old Woman* Metellus, *he would have whipped the Boy* Pompey *home with Rods*. For he had twice overcame this Great *Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyned in the Action with him: the firſt time dangerouſly wounding, and the ſecond time driving him out of the Field. But fighting againſt both, he was overmatched; and yet ſeemed rather to retire, than flye before them; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves very valiantly, in the time of theſe Wars under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, ſaying, *Necunquam mages apparuit* Hiſpani *militis Vigor, quam* Romano *duce*. At the laſt, when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traiterouſly murthered by *Perpenna*, one of his *Aſſociates*; for which, *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Triumph* at *Rome*. So high an eſtimate did they ſet upon the caſual death of this *Poſtſcript*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Baſtetani*, the *Edetani*, the *Conteſtani*, and ſome part of the *Celtiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; afterwards (in the ſub-dividing of that Province by *Conſtantine*) of *Carthaginenſis*. In the declining of the Empire, firſt ſubdued by the *Alani*, who were ſcarce warm in their new dwelling, when diſſeized by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moors*, of whoſe Kingdom reckoned as a Province; 'till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enaſer*, at the battle of *Sierra Morena*; and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco*, to their own Country; which followed preſently upon it. By *Zeit Aben-zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, *anno* 1214, but taken from him by one *Zaen*, a Prince of the *Moors* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpoſe of turning Chriſtian, and making his Kingdom ſubject to the Crown of *Arragon* (as indeed he did) *anno* 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the ſweets of a new raiſed Kingdom, by *James* King of *Arragon*, *anno* 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never diſmembred from the body of it, ſince the firſt uniting. But ſtill ſo overgrown with *Moors*, (not to be blamed for loving ſuch an excellent ſeat) that at the final expulſion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 22000 Families of them in this little Country.

The Arms hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embatteled *Argent* purfled (or pennon'd) *Sable*.

13. CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-eaſt, with the Land of *Rouſillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the Eaſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South with *Valentia*; on the North and North-weſt, with *Arragon*. The Country ſomewhat mountainous, and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholden more, in that reſpect, for Corn, Fruits and other neceſſary Proviſions, unto the courteſie of the Sea, which ſerves them out of other Countries, than to the Goodneſs of the Land. And it is as well watered, as moſt parts of *Spain*; having in it beſides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1. *Tardera*, 2. *Lobregat*, 3. *Segre*, 4. *Francolino*, 5. *Beſone*, and 6. *Onbar*.

The name of *Catalonia*, ſome derive from the *Caſtelani*, who formerly inhabited ſome part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly, for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, ſucceſſively the Maſters of it: and ſome more improbably, from one *Carthalot*, a Nobleman of this Country, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* People of *Languedoc*, the adjoyning Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici*, near unto *Tholouſe*, took denomination. But from what root ſoever they came, certain it is, that they are generally a ſtout couragious people, as may be ſeen by their exploits in moſt parts of *Greece*, which they miſerably ſpoiled and pillaged many years together; in the time of *Andronicus* the ſecond; to whoſe aid called in. But then withal, they are a very perverſe and obſtinate people, little obſervant of the pleaſure or profit of their *natural Princes*: but on the other ſide, ſo zealous in defence of their own *Priviledges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the reſt of the Subjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other inſtance, than their late revolt unto the *French*, *anno* 1638. which drew after it the loſs of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the reſt of the *Netherlands*. The ſame unquiet Humour made them, in the year 1652, eject the *French* Garriſons, and return under the Obedience of the King of *Spain*, to whom they are this day ſubject.

Principal places in it are, 1. *Barcelone*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spaniſh* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large ſtreets, handſom buildings, ſtrong walls, and a very pleaſant ſituation. Called *Barcino* by the ancient Writers, in whoſe time it was a *Roman* Colony, now honoured with a Biſhops See, and the Seat of the Vice-Roy. This City was taken from the *Moors* by St. *Lewis* King of *France*, about the Year 884. 2. *Tarragon*, ſeated alſo on the *Mediterranean*, Eaſt of the River *Francolino*: built, fortifi'd and peopled by the two *Scipio*'s, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthagena* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the Metropolis of *Tarraconenſis*, hence denominated; but ſtript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two Miles in compaſs, and containing not above ſeven hundred Families. Yet ſtill it holdeth the reputation of an Archbiſhops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* alſo doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*:) the controverſie being undecided to this very day. 3. *Ampurias*, on the ſame Sea alſo: once of great eſteem, founded by the *Maſſilians*, a *Roman* Colony, and a well-traded Town, as the Name doth ſignifie: this being the *Emporia*, ſpoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*; now not obſervable for any thing, but a ſafe Road for Ships. 4. *Blamos*, 5. *Palamos*, and 6. *Roſas*, all Ports on the ſame Sea, but ſubject unto divers Winds, and not very ſpacious, this laſt by *Ptolomy* called *Rhoda*, firſt founded by the *Rhodians*, or people of the Iſle of *Rhodes*, and by them ſo named. More in the Land, are 7. *Girone*, a ſmall, but handſom built and a well traded Town; a Biſhops See, and the Title of the eldeſt Son of *Arragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which Title was firſt given to *John*, the eldeſt Son of King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his Birth, *anno* 1351; and hath ſince continued. 8. *Tortoſa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the moſt rich and pleaſant part of all the Country; recovered from the *Moors*, by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone*, and Prince of *Arragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneſchal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good ſervice in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garriſoned by the *French*, ſince the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whilſt it continueth in their power, or in the poſſeſſion of their party. It was retaken in the year 1652. 9. *Vrgel*, an Earl's Honour, and a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10. *Momblanc*, which heretofore gave the Title of Duke to the ſecond Sons of the Kings of *Arragon*. 11. *Moncada*, once a Town of ſtrength; but of more note for giving denomination to the Noble Family *de Moncada*, Hereditary Seneſchals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is alſo on the Eaſt part, where it joineth with the Land of *Rouſillon*, the Promontory called of old, *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Creux*. And not far from *Barcelone*, the Mountain called *Montſerrata*, on the ſides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* Cells; and having towards the ſummit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; much famed and reſorted to by Pilgrims from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enſhrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province, were the *Caſtellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Coſitani*, with part of the *Ilercones*, and *Iacetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconenſis*. In the declining of the *Empire*, ſeized on by the *Alani*; and they ſoon after vanquiſhed, if not diſpoſſeſſed by the power of the *Goths*. Loſt to the *Moors*, in the general ruine of the whole: from them recovered by the puiſſance of *Charles* the Great; who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, *anno* 801, gave it to one *Bernard* a *French-man*, with the Title of Earl, who governed the Country for that Emperour; as *Wilfredus* or *Godfredus*, his Succeſſor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus*, Son to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Groſs*, was the firſt Proprietary; united unto *Arragon* by the Marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. Firſt held in Vaſſalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgment releaſed to King *James* the firſt, *an.* 1260, by the King St. *Lewis*; the King of *Arragon* releaſing at the ſame time, his pretenſions and rights of Sovereignty to *Carcaſſon*, *Beziers*, *Albi Niſmes*, and ſome other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that, the *Catelauns* had neglected the acknowledgment of their ſubjection to that Crown; it being ordered by *Alphonſo* the ſecond King of *Arragon*, about the year 1180, That the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France*, ſhould no more be uſed in any Inſtrument or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which, in effect, was to diſclaim the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*.

The Earls of *Barcelone*.

A. Chr.		
884	1	*Godfredus*, ſirnamed the *Hairy*, Son of *Wifrede*, the *Provincial* Governour for the Emperour *Ludovicus Pius*.
914	2	*Miron*, Son of *Godfredus*.
933	3	*Godfredus* 2. Son of *Miron*, by ſome called *Seniofrid*.
971	4	*Borellus*, Brother of *Miron*, and Uncle of *Godfredus* the ſecond.
993	5	*Raymond*, Son of *Borellus*.
1017	6	*Berengarius*, ſirnamed *Borellus*, Son of *Raymond*.
1035	7	*Raymond* 2. Son of *Berengarius Borellus*.
1076	8	*Raymond* 3. Son of *Raymond* the ſecond.
1082	9	*Raymond* 4. Son of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence* alſo in right of *Doulce* his Wife.
1131	10	*Raymond* 5. Son of *Raymond* the fourth, and *Doulce* Counteſs of *Provence*, married *Petronilla* Daughter of *Raymir*, or *Raymond*, the ſecond King of *Arragon*; whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, *anno* 1134. Uniting theſe Eſtates together, never ſince diſjoyned: the chief Procurer of this Match, being *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, ſpoken of before.

The Arms hereof, were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field *Or*, now the Arms of *Arragon*. Which Arms were given to *Geoffey*, ſirnamed the *Hairy*, the firſt Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperor and King of *France*, to whoſe aid he came againſt the *Normans* with a Troop of Horſe; and being bloody in the fight, deſired of the Emperour to give him ſome Coat of Arms, which he and his Poſterity might from thenceforth uſe. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield, (which was only of Plain Gold, without any Device) ſaying, *This ſhall be your Arms hereafter.*

14. The Kingdom of *Majorca*.

THE Kingdom of *MAJORCA* contained the Iſlands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuiſa*, and *Frumentaria*, in the *Mediterranean*; the Land of *Rouſillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne* in the Continent of *Spain*; and the Earldom of *Montpelier* in *France*.

The Land of *ROUSILLON*, which is the firſt Member of this Kingdom, is ſituate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*; bounded on the South, with the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Catalogne*; or the North, with the ſaid *Pyrenees*; on the Eaſt, with *Languedoc* in *France*. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Helna*, a Biſhops-See on the River *Techo*. 2. *Collibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a ſafe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, ſo often mention'd in the Wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Perpignan*, (in *Latin*, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068, by *Guinard*, Earl of *Rouſillon*, in a pleaſant plain on the River *Thelis*, now a rich Town, well traded, and as ſtrongly fortified againſt the *French*; to whoſe fury in the time of War, it is ſtill expoſed. Beſieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the firſt, with a puiſſant Army, *an.* 1542. partly to be revenged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marſeiles* in *Provence*; and partly to get into his hands the chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that kingdom. But he found here ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that he was fain to raiſe his Siege, with as little honour as *Charles* had gotten by his Expedition which he made into *Provence*. In the year 1642, the *French* took this City and kept it to the year 1659, when by the Pyrenean Treaty it was reſtored to *Spain*. 4. *Salſus*, (the *Salſula* of *Strabo*) a ſtrong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc*;

fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks againſt the *French.* 5. *Rouſillon*, a Caſtle of more honour and antiquity than ſtrength or Beauty; by *Pliny* and other Ancients, called *Ruſcino*, the Country *Comitatus Ruſcianenſis*, now *Rouſillon* and the Land of *Rouſillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gallia Narbonenſis*; and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Goths*. On the death of *Gerrard*, the laſt proprietary Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Arragon*, by *Alphonſo* the ſecond: by *James* the firſt, laid to the kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that, ſold, or rather pawned by King *John* the ſecond, to *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, for the Sum of 300000 Crowns, *anno* 1462, and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the ſecond, (after called the *Catholick*) by King *Charles* the 8. *anno* 1493; conditioned that he ſhould not hinder him in the Conqueſt of *Naples*. Joyning hereto, as a part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Country of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagno*; the habitation of the *Ceretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Arragon*. The chief Town of thoſe *Ceretani* called *Julia Lybica*; the principal now being hath the name of *Cardono* (or *Sardono*, as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce) retaining ſome reſemblance to the name of the Nation. The Country lying in the Vallies of the *Pyrenees*, and conſequently in a Corner ſomewhat out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Rouſillon*, (for the better endowment of this Kingdom) the Fortunes of which it hath ſince followed, as appendent on it; pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that reſtored.

2. The Earldom of *MONTPELIER*, is ſituate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoyning to the Land of *Rouſillon*: ſo called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the deſcription whereof we muſt ſend the *Reader* back to *France*, having ſpoken of it there already. All I ſhall here repeat, is this, That *Mary*, the Daughter of *William* the laſt Earl thereof, brought it by Marriage to her Husband *Peter* the ſecond King of *Arragon*: and that it was ſold to *Philip de Valois*, the *French* King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory and affairs of this little Earldom, but the Fortunes of the two laſt Counteſſes of it. Of which the firſt being Daughter of *Emanuel Comnenus*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and affianced to *Alphonſo* the 2d King of *Arragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier*, in her way towards *Spain*, and there lodged with her whole retinue, in the houſe of *William*, then Earl thereof, *anno* 1174. But hearing that *Alphonſo*, contrary to his word and promiſe, was in treaty of another Marriage with the Princeſs *Sancha* of *Caſtile* (which he celebrated very ſhortly after) and aſhamed to return to the Court of her Father, after ſuch an injury; ſhe hearken'd to the counſel of her Lords and Followers, who perſwaded her to marry with Earl *William*, then a luſty Batchelor; which was done accordingly. To him ſhe brought a Daughter, named *Mary*, (their only child) afterwards married to *Don Pedro* the 2. Son of *Alphonſo*, and ſucceſſor to him in that Kingdom: So that although the Mother could not have the happineſs to be Queen of *Arragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no great beauty, the King her Husband grew weary of her, would have been divorced, had the Pope conſented: whoſe conſent not being to be had, he forſook her Bed, and betook himſelf to other Women. Which the Queen not being otherwiſe able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his Chamber, called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his Bed, (when ſome other Miſtreſs was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, was neither well pleaſed, nor much offended at the honeſt fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*, Succeſſor to his Father in the Kingdom of *Arragon*; and to his Mother (the laſt Counteſs of it) in the Earldom of *Montpelier*; united, in his perſon, into one Eſtate; and by him finally parted from it, in the erection of the new Kingdom of *Majorca*, as before was ſaid.

3. The Iſland of *MAJORCA* is ſituate in the *Mediterranean*, juſt over againſt *Valentia*; from which diſtant about 60 miles; about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth ſomewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land, on all ſides towards the Sea, is ſomewhat mountainous, and barren withal: The Inland's more Champian, and fruitfully yielding ſufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the uſe of its people. The whole Iſland is divided into 30 parts (as ſo many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and thoſe not hurtful, but by accident; of which more anon.

Places of chief note, in the former times, were 1. *Palma*, and 2. *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens, 3. *Cinium*, and 4. *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latins*: and 5. *Cocbri*, (or *Bochorum*) which was in the condition of a Town *confederate*; beſides divers others not ſo priviledged. Of theſe none left, at this day but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorea*, by the name of the Iſland: a Biſhop's See, the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for theſe Iſles, and an *Univerſity*: the birth-place of *Raymundus Lullius*, a man of great Wit, and profound Judgment; the Author of ſome Books in the Art of *Chymiſtry*, whoſe Works are read and ſtudied in that Univerſity, as *Ariſtotle*'s are in others. This is the greater of the two Iſlands called *Baleares*, whence it hath the name. Adjoining hereunto, two others of Inferiour note, called *Dragonera* and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4. *MINORCA*, ſo called, becauſe it is the leſſer of the *Baleares*; is ſituate Eaſtward of *Majorca*, from which diſtant near 100 miles, of about 60 miles in length, and 150 in circuit: More fruitful than the other, though leſs in quantity, of rich ſoyl, which breedeth them great Herds of Cattel, and Mules of the largeſt ſize of any in *Spain*; accomodated alſo with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farneſſus*. Other conſiderable places, are, 1. *Minorca*, now ſo called by the name of the *Iſland*; but anciently known by the name of *Mago*; ſituate in the Eaſt part thereof, firſt founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And ſo was alſo 2. *Jamno*, ſeated in the Weſt, (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus a* Pœnis *indita nomina*, ſaith *Savetus* Biſhop of theſe Iſles, *anno* 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella*, or the little City. Here was alſo in the midland a third Town, called *Saniſera* by *Pliny*; of which I find no track remaining.

5. *EBUSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land, and the *Baleares*, oppoſite to the Promontory of *Ferraria*, in the Realm of *Valentia*; from which diſtant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles in compaſs. The Country plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits, breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only which many times deſtroy their Harveſt. The chief Town here, *Yvica* (of old called *Ebuſus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great ſtore of Salt; wherewith they do not only furniſh *Spain*, but ſome parts of *Italy*.

6. *FRUMENTARIA*, ſo called from the plenty of Corn, is diſtant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of *Spain*: in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited by reaſon of the multitude of Serpents; from which called by the *Græcians*, *Ophiuſa*, and *Colubraria*, by the *Latins*. Both Iſlands anciently known by the name of *Pituſæ*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About theſe Iſlands are ſix others of little worth, called 1. *Veda*, 2. *Conirello*, and 3. *Dragonago*. 4. another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the influx of the River *Iberus*. 5. *Alfaques*, lying in the very Mouth of that River: and 6. *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Iſland of *Hercules*) over againſt *Carthagena*; ſo named from a kind of *Tunny*, in *Latin* named *Scombri*, of which great ſhoals uſe to ly about it. All theſe, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Iſlands, the ſeventh Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of theſe Iſlands, were the *BALEARES*, ſo called (as the general conceit is) from the *Greek* word βάλλειν, which ſignifyeth to *throw*; becauſe the people were ſo expert in *throwing* their Slings or Darts: but as *Bochartus* will needs have it, (to the ſame effect) from *Baal-iare*, a *Punick* or *Phœnician* word ſignifying a *Maſter in the Art of ſlinging*. An Art ſo natural and innative to them, that Parents uſed to give no meat unto their Children, after ſome ſet age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings* from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the ancient Writers, as well Hiſtorians, as Poets. And from this Exerciſe they had the name alſo of *Inſulæ Gymnaſiæ*; or elſe, becauſe the people of it uſed to go naked to the Wars,(and poſſibly enough, in thoſe firſt Ages of the world,as at other times alſo) from the *Greek* word γυμνὸς the ſame with the *Nudus* to the *Latin*. Nor were they good at *ſlinging* only, but at *ſwimming* too; an exerciſe not ordinarily performed but by naked people: at which the very women are at this day expert; *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, that,being becalmed about theſe Iſlands, there came a woman ſwimming from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to ſell. But that which made them moſt talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies; which here, and the neighbouring Continent, encreaſed ſo wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain*, undermined by them: and *Strabo*, that they did not only deſtroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their Trees. In ſo much that the Inhabitants did requeſt the *Romans* to give them ſome new ſeats to inhabit in; ἐκβάλλεσθαι γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν ζώων τέτων, being ejected by thoſe Creatures out of their Poſſeſſions, whoſe multitudes they were not able to reſiſt. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Auguſtus Cæſar* (as *Pliny* telleth us) for ſome aid againſt them; who, inſtead of *Souldiers*, ſent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminiſhed in a little time.

Theſe *Iſlands* were firſt planted by the *Tyrians*, or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities; one of which, in the Iſle of *Ebuſus* had the name of *Phœniſſa*: From them alſo they derived the Art of Slinging. Made ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Hamilco*, *anno M.* 3500, or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under that State they remained ſubject, till the end of the ſecond *Punick* War: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themſelves, till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who ſubdued *Creet*, The people were much given to Piracy: and ſeeing The *Roman* Navy ſayling by their Coaſts, ſuppoſed them to be Merchant-men: aſſaulted them, and at firſt prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the Shore, diſcovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling ſubmiſſion: for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they always, after that, followed the Fortunes thereof. In the diſtraction of the Empire of the *Moors* in *Spain* they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majorca*: won from the *Moors* by *Raymund* Earl of *Barcelone*, with the help of the *Genoeſe*, *anno* 1102. By the *Genoeſe* delivered to the *Moors* again; and from them reconquered by *James* King of *Arragon*, deſcended from that *Raymund*, *anno* 1228.

Of theſe Eſtates conſiſted the Kingdom of *Majorca*, erected by *James* the firſt, immediately (almoſt) on his recovery of theſe Iſlands from the hands of the *Moors*; and by him given unto *James* his ſecond Son; who, fearing the diſpleaſure of his Brother, King *Peter* the third, ſubmitted his new Kingdom to the *Vaſſalage* of the Crown of *Arragon*. Yet could not this ſo ſatisfie the ambition or jealouſies of thoſe mightier Kings, as to preſerve his Succeſſors in poſſeſſion of it. By *Pedro* the 4. extorted from King *James*, the fourth and laſt King thereof, under colour of denying his accuſtomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the Houſe of *Arragon*:

An. Chr.
1276 1. *James* the firſt Son to *James* the firſt, King of *Arragon*.
1412 2. *Sancho*, Son of *James* the firſt.
3. *James* the II. Son of *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *James* the ſecond.
4. *James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and ſlain in Battel by *Pedro* 4. King of *Arragon*. *Majorca*, and other members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever ſince united unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, ſold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdom. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was diſcomfited and ſlain in the Iſle of *Majorca*, *an.* 1341, as before is ſaid.

The Forces of this little Kingdom may be beſt eſtimated by the Army which the *Moors* brought into the field againſt *James* the firſt, for defence of the Iſland of *Majorca*, conſiſting of 50000 Horſe: but better, by the Army of *James* the laſt King hereof, in defence of his Eſtates againſt *Pedro* the 4. (for the *Moors* might poſſibly be aided by the reſt of their Nation) conſiſting of 3000 Horſe, and 15000 Foot, of his natural Subjects.

15. ARRAGON.

ARRAGON, hath on the Eaſt, the Land of *Rouſillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the Weſt, the two *Caſtiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South and South-eaſt; *Catalonia*, and ſome part of *Valentia*. So called from the River *Arragon*, by which it is divided, from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the firſt Princes of this Houſe having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themſelves, for that reaſon, the Earls of *Arragon*: ſpreading the name, as they enlarged their Bounds by enſuing Conqueſts; as in like manner, the great Earldom of *Moſelle*, founded by the diſherited Sons of *Cloidon*, ſecond King of the *French*, was named from that River; upon the courſe whereof, and the parts adjoyning, it was firſt erected.

The Country lyeth on both ſides of the River *Iberus*, and hath alſo ſeveral Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like ſo many Veins through the body of it; yet it is generally ſo deſtitute of Waters, and ſo ill inhabited, eſpecially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many days, and find neither Town, nor Houſe, nor People. But where the Rivers have their courſe, the caſe is different, the Valleys yielding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, eſpecially about *Calatajud*, where the Air is good, and the Soil fruitful.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconenſis*: divided into leſſer Tribes not here conſiderable. Theſe ſprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is ſaid) the greateſt and moſt potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Country, or willing to employ themſelves upon new Adventures, paſſed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themſelves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of the *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according to this of *Lucan*.

——*Profugiunt à gente vetuſta*
Gallorum, Celtæ *miſcentes nomen* Iberi.

Who being chas'd from *Gaul*, there home did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of leſs conſideration, were the *Jaccetani*, and *Lucetani*, with part of the *Edetani*, and *Illergetes*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jaccetani*, ſeated amongſt the *Pyrenees*; and for that cauſe choſen for the chief ſeat and reſidence of the firſt Kings of *Arragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragoſſa*, by *Alfonſo* the firſt. 2. *Calatajud*, ſeated on *Xalon*, in the beſt Country of *Arragon*: ſo called from *Ajud* a *Mooriſh* Prince, the firſt founder of it. Not far from which, upon an Hill, ſtood the old Town *Bilbilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martial*. 3. *Venaſque* amongſt the *Pyrenees*. 4. *Balbaſtro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtina*, now a Biſhops-See. 5. *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as ſome ſay; but others place it on the *Senga*: which riſing in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Arragon*, and ſo paſſeth into *Iberus*, now an Univerſity; called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the Encounter hapning nigh unto it, betwixt *Herculeius*, Treaſurer or *Quaſtor* to *Sertorius*; and *Manilius* Proconſul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was ſo diſcomfited, and his Army, conſiſting of three Legions of Foot; and 1500 Horſe, ſo routed, that he, almoſt alone, was ſcarce able to recover this City, few of his Souldiers ſurviving the overthrow. 6. *Moſon*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: at which time the people of *Arragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, preſent the King with 600000 Crowns, *viz.* 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Arragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times they ſit rent-free, as it were, only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the Head of their *Commonwealth*. This Revenue is proportionably, 200000 Crowns a year; all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Roys* in their ſeveral Provinces. 7. *Hueſca*, (called of old, *Hoſca*) ſomewhat South of *Jacca*, an Univerſity; a place long ſince dedicated to Learning. For hither *Sertorius* cauſed all the Noble-mens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-Maſters for the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues; bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it not only to make them fit to undergo Charge in the Commonwealth, but indeed to have them as Hoſtages for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8. *Saragoſſa*, on the River *Iberus*; called, at firſt, *Salduba*, by reaſon of the Salt-pits there: But being afterwards reedified by *Cæſar Auguſtus*, it had the Name of *Cæſarea Auguſta*, (whence that of *Saragoſſa* had its origination) by whom firſt made a Colony of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium*, or *Free-borough*, ſuffered to live according to the Laws of the Country. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the ſeven *Juridical Reſorts* of *Tarraconenſis*: under the *Moors*, a peculiar Kingdom of it ſelf: and now a Biſhop's-See, and an Univerſity. Amongſt the Kings of it; when it was a Kingdom, two are chiefly famous, *viz.* 1. *Marſilius*, who joyned with the Confederate *Moors* and *Chriſtians*, againſt *Charles* the *Great*, in the Battel of *Roncevaux*. 2. *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale, in Archbiſhop *Turpine*; that being by the ſaid *Charles* perſwaded to become a *Chriſtian*, he came unto the Emperour's Court very well accompanied, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars*, and poor people before the Gates, attending for their uſual Alms from the Emperor's Table: he asked what and who they were; and was anſwered, that they were the poor Servants of God. Upon which words he ſpeedily returned again, proteſting, That *he would never ſerve that God, who could keep his* Servants *no better*. Took from the *Moors*, by *Alphonſo* King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, *an.* 1118. it was made the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Arragon*; removed hither from *Jacca*; and of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which together with being an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, hath ſo enriched it, that it is one of the faireſt Cities in all *Spain*, for handſomeneſs of Streets, and ſumptuouſneſs of Palaces, and publick Buildings, containing ſeventeen Pariſh-Churches, and fourteen Monaſteries; beſides divers Chappels erected in moſt parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been ſhewn heretofore, toſſed from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*; from them to the *Gothes*, and finally, unto the *Moors*: Recovered from the *Moors*, about the firſt beginning of the Kingdoms of *Leon* and *Sobrarbe*. At which time, one *Aznar*, a man of great puiſſance and action, poſſeſſed himſelf of ſome Lands on the banks of the River *Arragon*, to be holden by him and his Succeſſors, of the Kings of *Sobrarbe* or *Navarre*, *an.* 775. The Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their better honour. The ſixth of which, from *Aznar*, was *Fortunio Ximines*, whoſe Daughter *Urraca* being married to *Don Garcia Inigo*, King of *Navarre anno* 867, conveyed this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member, till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, *anno* 1034. The whole Succeſſion I ſhall borrow from the *Spaniſh* Hiſtories; firſt taking (as in other places) ſome ſhort notes of the Princes which have been moſt obſervable in the courſe of the Story. Of which the principal were, 1. *Aznarius*, the firſt Earl, his Eſtate then containing ſome few Towns on the River of *Arragon*: not much enlarged, when made a Kingdom by *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, ſirnamed the *Great*, deſcended from *Fortunio* the ſecond of *Navarre*, and *Urraca* the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the laſt Earl of *Arragon*. 2. *Raymir* the firſt King, baſe Son to *Sancho* the *Great*, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho*, for ſtanding ſo generally in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unnaturally accuſed of Adultery, by the ſaid *Garcia* her own Son; againſt whom he undertook to maintain her Honour in a ſingle Combat. 3. *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by marriage with *Petronilla*, the Heir of *Arragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdom. 4. *Peter* the ſecond, who on a ſuperſtitious zeal, firſt made his Kingdom tributary to the See of *Rome*, *anno* 1214. But preſently repenting of it, he ſided againſt the Pope, with the *Albigenſes*: ſlain in their cauſe, by *Simon de Montford*, and the reſt of his Aſſociates, in that war. 5. *James* the firſt, who conquered the Kingdoms of *Valentia* and *Majorca*; and was the firſt that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas; being ſhut up from making any further impreſſion on the *Moors*, by the interjection of *Caſtile* betwixt him and them. 6. *Peter* the third, pretending a Title unto *Sicilia*, in right of *Conſtantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred*, King thereof; and by the laſt Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that and *Naples*; extorted that Iſland from the *French*, maſſacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Veſpers*. 7. *James* the ſecond, by whom the Iſle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Arragon*. 8. *Martin*, the laſt of the *Maſculine* Race of the Houſe of *Barcelone*: to whom ſucceeded, 9. *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, Son of *John* King of *Caſtile*, and *Leonora*, the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Arragon*. 10. *Alphonſo*, Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the ſecond, got the Kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, ſirnamed the *Catholick*, we ſhall ſpeak more anon, in the cloſe of all.

The Earls of *Arragon*.

A. Chr.		
	1	*Aznarius*, the firſt Earl, contemporary with *Garcia*, the ſecond King of *Navarre*; under whom he held.
775	2	*Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the firſt.
	3	*Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the ſecond.
	4	*Ximines Aznario*, Son to *Galindo*, ſlain in the Battel of *Ronceval*, againſt *Charles* the *Great*.
803	5	*Ximines Garcia*, Brother to *Galindo*.
	6	*Fortunio Ximines*, Son of *Ximines Garcia*, the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Aznarius*.

7 *Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, in Right from his Mother *Urraca*, the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the laſt Earl of the Houſe of *Aznarius*.

991 8 *Sancho*, ſurnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*.

920 9 *Garcia*, Son of *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, &c.

909 10 *Sancho* II. of *Arragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.

993 11 *Garcias*, ſurnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, Son to *Sancho* III.

1000 12 *Sancho the Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, in his own Right; and of *Caſtile* in the Right of *Elvira* his Wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Chriſtians*, except the Kingdom of *Leon* only; erected the Earldom of *Arragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it, for the reaſon before ſpecified, to his Son *Raymir*.

The Kings of Arragon.

A. Chr.
1034 1 *Raymir*. 42.
1076 2 *Sancho*, Son of *Raymir*. 18.
1094 3 *Pedro*. 14.
1108 4 *Alphonſo*, Brother of *Pedro*. 26.
1134 5 *Raymir* II. the Brother of *Alphonſo*.
1137 6 {*Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the Second.
{*Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelone*.
1171 7 *Alphonſo* II. Son of *Raymond* and *Petronilla*. 34.
1196 8 *Pedro* II. Son of *Alphonſo*.
1213 9 *James*, Son of *Pedro* the Second. 43.
1256 10 *Pedro* III. Son of *James*. 9.
1265 11 *Alphonſo* III. Son of *Pedro* the Third. 6.
1271 12 *James* II. Brother of *Alphonſo* the Third. 36.
1308 13 *Alphonſo* IV. Son of *James* the Second. 8.
1316 14 *Pedro* IV. Son of *Alphonſo* the Fourth. 51.
1367 15 *John*, Son of *Pedro* the Fourth. 8.
1375 16 *Martin*, the Brother of *John*. 17.
1392 17 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the Fourth. 4.
1396 18 *Alphonſo* V. 42.
1438 19 *John* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alphonſo*: King of *Navarre* alſo, in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
1458 20 *Ferdinand* II. of that Name, of *Arragon*, Son of *John* the Second, King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, by a ſecond Wife; and the Fifth of that Name, of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; which Kingdoms he obtained by the Marriage of *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth*, Siſter and Heir of *Henry* the Fourth; uniting thereby the great Eſtates of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard, he may well challenge the firſt place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of *Spain*, to be preſented in due ſeaſon.

In the mean time, to draw to a concluſion of the Affairs and Eſtate of *Arragon*, we are to underſtand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniards*, it is the moſt privileged, and free from the abſolute Command of the Kings of *Spain*; having in it ſuch a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well nigh *Titular*, or of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the firſt erecting of this Eſtate, the better to encourage the People to defend themſelves againſt the *Moors*, they had many Privileges indulged them; and, amongſt others, the creating of a *Juſticiar*, or *Popular Magiſtrate*; which, like the *Ephori* of *Sparta*, had, in ſome caſes, ſuperiority over their Kings, reverſing their Judgments, cancelling their Grants, and ſometimes cenſuring their Proceedings. And though King *Philip* the Second, in the buſineſs of *Antonio de Perez*, had made a Conqueſt of that Kingdom, and annulled all their Privileges, yet after, of his own meer goodneſs, he reſtored them (in part) again, as they continue at this Day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* (beſides that of *Mercede*, ſpoken of before) in this Kingdom, are 1. Of S. *Saviour*, inſtituted by *Alphonſo* I. *Anno* 1118. to animate the Members of it againſt the *Moors*. Of the Habits and Cuſtoms of this Order, I have met with nothing.

2. Of *Monteſa*, inſtituted by *James* the Firſt, King of *Arragon*, *Anno* 1270. or thereabouts, endowed with all the Lands of the *Templers* (before diſſolved) lying in *Valentia*; together with the Town and Caſtle of *Monteſa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the Name. Subject at firſt unto the Maſter of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* XIII. they quitted themſelves of that ſubjection; and, in ſign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they uſed, to a *Red-Croſs* upon their Breaſts; now the Badge of their Order.

The Arms of *Arragon*, ſince poſſeſſed by the Earls of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules*; before which, they were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

The Monarchy of Spain.

THus having ſpoke of *Spain*, and the Eſtate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body; effected, for the moſt part, by *Ferdinand* the laſt King of *Arragon* before-mentioned. Before which time, *Spain*, being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little Famous, and leſs Feared; the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Diſpute*, &c. hath well obſerved, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole Puiſſance was then turned one againſt another, and ſmall atchievements had they out of that Continent, except thoſe of the Houſe of *Arragon*; upon *Sicily*, *Naples*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the Hiſtory of his own Times, (if in ſome things he ſavour not more of the *Party* than the *Hiſtorian*) telleth us, that before this King's Reign, the Name and Glory of the *Spaniard* was like their Country, hemmed in by the Seas on ſome ſides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiuſque patuiſſe exteris invadentibus, quàm quicquam memorabile extra ſuos fines geſſiſſe*: And lay rather expoſed to the Invaſions of Strangers, than was able to do any thing it ſelf abroad. 'Tis true, that *Sancho the Great*, King of *Navarre*, aſſumed unto himſelf the Title of King of *Spain*, and that *Alphonſo* the Fourth of *Caſtile*, and the Ninth of *Leon*, cauſed himſelf to be crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*: Titles ambitiouſly affected upon no good ground, and ſuch as ended with their Perſons. But this Prince, worthily named *The Great*, ſeized on the Kingdom of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moors*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Arragon* to *Caſtile*, baniſhed 124000 Families of the *Jews*, began, by the conduct of *Columbus*, the diſcovery of the *Weſtern Indies*; and finally, by marrying his Daughter *Joan*, to *Philip*, Son of the Emperor *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greateſt part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the preſent *Auſtrian* Greatneſs. Continued ſince by ſo many Inter-marriages betwixt the *Spaniſh* and *Imperial* Branches of that potent Family, that *Philip* the Second might have called the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, Brother, Couſin, Nephew, and Son. A ſtrange Medley of Relations. Thus by the Puiſſance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became firſt conſiderable in the Eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen Hiſpanicum obſcurum antea & Vicinis penè incognitum*, (ſaith the ſame *Thuanus*) *tum primùm emerſit, tractuque temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidoloſum ex eo & terribile toti terrarum Orbi eſſe cœperit*: Before this time the Name of *Spain* was obſcure, and ſcarce known to its Neighbours;

but after this, by degrees it got up, and in a ſmall time grew ſo great, that it began to be formidable and terrible to the whole World. And he ſaith true, with reference to the *French* and *Italian* Nations; to whom the *Spaniards* have adminiſtred no ſmall matter of fear and terror; though unto others, they appear no ſuch dreadful *Bugbears*. But ſure it is, and we may warrantably ſpeak it without any ſuch Impreſſions of Fear and Terror, that this Kingdom, ſince that time, is wonderfully both enlarged and ſtrengthned; ſtrongly compacted in it ſelf, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the riſing and the ſetting of the Sun; which, before the *Spaniard*, no Monarch could ever ſay. A greater change than any Man can poſſibly imagine to have been effected in ſo ſhort a time, as was between the firſt Year of *Ferdinand the Catholick*, and the laſt Year of *Charles* the Fifth.

Concerning the Title of the *Moſt Catholick King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find, that *Alphonſo* the Firſt of *Oviedo*, was ſo named for his *Sanctity*; with whom it died; and was revived in *Alphonſo* the Great, the twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the Grant of Pope *John* the Eighth. After, it lay dead till the Days of this Prince, who re-obtained this Title from Pope *Alexander* the Sixth; either becauſe he compelled the *Moors* to be baptized, baniſhed the *Jews*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Chriſtianity*; or becauſe, having united *Caſtile* to his Dominions, ſurprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and ſubdued that of *Granada*; he was, in a manner, the *Catholick* or general King of all *Spain*. The laſt reaſon ſeemeth to ſway moſt in the reſtauration of this Attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, the King of *Portugal* exceedingly ſtomached at it: *Quando* Ferdinandus *imperio* univerſam Hiſpaniam, (ſaith *Mariana*) *non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes* Reges *alios*. It ſeems *Emanuel* could not think himſelf a King of *Portugal*, if the Title of the *Catholick King* did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the ſame Mind as was *Gregory the Great*; who when *John* of *Conſtantinople* had aſſumed to himſelf the Title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholick* Biſhop, adviſed all Biſhops of the World to oppoſe that Arrogancy; and that upon the ſelf-ſame reaſon, *Nam ſi ille eſt*, Catholicus, *vos non eſtis Epiſcopi*; for, if *John* were the *Catholick* Biſhop, they were none at all. But upon what Conſideration ſoever it was firſt regranted, it hath been ever ſince aſſumed by his Poſterity: to whoſe Crown, as Hereditary, and in common uſe, as the *Moſt Chriſtian King* to *France*, the *Defender of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was ſome further reaſon, why the *Spaniard* might affect the Title of *Catholick King*, his Empire being *Catholick* in regard of extent, (though not of *Orthodoxy* of Doctrine) as reaching not over all *Spain* only, but over a very great part of the World beſides. For in right of the Crown of *Caſtile*, he poſſeſſeth the Towns of *Mellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Maſalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canary* Iſlands in *Africk*; the Continent and Iſlands of all *America*, except *Braſil*, and ſome Plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Iſlands, of the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the Right of the Kingdom of *Arragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Iſlands interſperſed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the Right of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois*, the greateſt part of *Belgium*, with a Title unto all the reſt: beſides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plumbino*, and many other pieces of Importance in *Italy*, held by Inveſtiture from the Empire. To which if thoſe Eſtates be added, which accrued to *Philip* the Second by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortreſs of *Aquin*, and S. *George* in *Guinea*; the Iſles of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this ſide of the *Cape*, and of *Moſambique* on the other: in *Aſia*, all the Sea-coaſt, almoſt from the Gulf of *Perſia* unto *China*, and many ſtrong Holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantam*, *Zeilan*, and other Iſlands; and finally in *America*, the large Country of *Braſil*, extending in length 1500 Miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to theſe Monarchs the Stile of *Catholick*.

The Monarchs of Spain.

A. Chr.

1478 1. { *Ferdinand*, King of *Arragon*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Valentia*, Earl of *Catalogne*; ſurprized *Navarre*, and conquered the Realm of *Naples*.
Iſabel, Queen of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Gallicia*, *Toledo*, *Murcia*, Lady of *Biſcay*, conquered *Granada*, and diſcovered *America*.

1502 2. { *Joan*, Princeſs of *Caſtile*, *Granada*, *Leon*, &c. and of *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Sicily*, &c.
Philip, Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, L. of *Belgium*.

1516 3. *Charles*, King of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, *Naples*, &c. Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Millain*, *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, &c. Earl of *Catalogne*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c. Lord of *Biſcay*, *Frieſland*, *Utrecht*, &c. and Emperor of the *Germans*. He added the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Dukedoms of *Gelderland* and *Millain*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Seigniories of *Utretcht*, *Over-Yſſel*, and *Groyning*, unto his Eſtates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puiſſance, that had not *Francis* the Firſt in time oppoſed him, he had even ſwallowed all *Europe*. He was alſo, for a time, of great ſtrength and reputation, in *Tunis*, and other parts of *Africa*, diſpoſing Kingdoms at his pleaſure; but the *Turk* broke his Power there; and being hunted alſo out of *Germany*, he reſigned all his Kingdoms, and died private, in 1559. 41.

1558 4. *Philip* II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth, and of *Iſabel*, Daughter of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*; was born in the Year 1527. ſucceeded his Father, upon his Free Reſignation, in the Throne of *Spain*, in 1556. conquered *Portugal* in 1580. of more Ambition, but leſs Proſperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of *Portugal*; but that is ſufficiently ballanced by his ill Succeſs in the *Netherlands*, and againſt the *Engliſh*; for the *Hollanders*, and their Confederates, drove him out of eight of his *Belgick* Provinces: the *Engliſh* overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleets*; and by awing the Ocean had almoſt impoveriſh'd him; and though he held, for a time, a hard hand upon *France*, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *Leaguers*, yet upon caſting up his Accompts, he found that himſelf was the greater Loſer by that undertaking: So zealous in the Cauſe of the *Romiſh* Church, that it was thought that his eldeſt Son *Charles* was put to death with his conſent in the *Inquiſition-Houſe*, for ſeeming favourably inclined to the *Low-Country-Hereticks*, as the *Spaniards* called them. Theſe four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed. By his firſt Wife, *Mary*, Daughter of *John* IV. King of *Portugal*, he had *Charles*, a hopeful Prince, born in 1545. and murthered by him in 1568. out of Jealouſie either of his Religion or of his Wife. His ſecond Son was *Philip* III. afterwards King of *Spain*. He was born 1578.

1598 5. *Philip* III. finding his Eſtate almoſt deſtroyed by his Father's long and chargeable Wars, firſt made Peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for 12 Years with the States of the *Netherlands*; which done, he totally baniſhed all the *Moors* out of *Spain*, and was a great ſtickler in the Wars of *Germany*. He baniſhed 900000 *Moors* out of *Spain*, by which he weakned that Kingdom more than by all their unfortunate Wars.

1621 6. *Philip* IV. Son of *Philip* the Third, got into his Power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but loſt the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his beſt Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and ſome Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown from the Power of the *French*. This Prince, upon a Quarrel which aroſe in *London*, in the Year 1661. between his and the *French* Ambaſſador, yielded the Precedence to the *French* to prevent a War. This Prince died in the Year 1665.

1665 7. *Charles* II. ſucceeded his Father, an Infant of Four Years of Age, under the Guardianſhip of his Mother, who has not been hitherto very Fortunate. He was born in the Year 1661. *Novemb.* 6. and married firſt *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Orleance*, who died in the Year 1689. without Iſſue; and next, *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Newburg*, and Elector *Palatine*, in the Year 1690.

This Empire conſiſting of ſo many ſeveral Kingdoms united into one Body, may ſeem to be invincible. Yet had Queen *Elizabeth* followed the Counſel of her Men of War, ſhe might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 Men ſhe might have taken away his *Indies* from him; without whoſe Gold the *Low-Country* Army (which is the very beſt) could not be paid, and by conſequence muſt needs have been diſſolved. Nay, Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, in the Epilogue of his moſt excellent *Hiſtory of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the Charge of 200000 *l.* continued but for two Years, or three at the moſt, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perſwaded to live at peace; but all their ſwelling and overflowing Streams might be brought back to their natural Channels, and old Banks. Their own Proverb ſaith, *The Lion is not ſo fierce as he is painted*; yet the *Americans* tremble at his Name: it's true, and it is well obſerved by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that *things which ſeem to be and are not, are more feared far off, than near at hand.* Nor is this Judgment built upon weak conjectures, but ſuch as ſhew the Power of *Spain* not to be ſo formidable, as it's commonly ſuppoſed; which I find marſhalled to my hand in this manner following: 1. The *disjointedneſs* of his Realms, and other Eſtates, ſevered by infinite diſtances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2. The *ſlowneſs of his Preparations* in *offenſive* or *defenſive* Wars; his Forces, of neceſſity, being long a gathering in places ſo remote from the *Royal Seat*, and being gathered, no leſs ſubject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for Action. 3. The danger and uncertainty which the moſt part of his *Forinſique Revenues* are ſubject to; many times intercepted by Pirates and open Enemies; ſometimes ſo long delayed by croſs Winds and Seas, that they come too late to ſerve the turn. 4. The *different Tempers* and *Affections* of a great part of his Subjects, not eaſily concurring in the ſame ends, or travelling the ſame way unto them. 5. The *diſcontentedneſs* of the *Arragonians*, *Portugueze*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular Reaſons, unto the *Caſtillians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Miniſters* of neighbouring Princes, whom *jealouſies of State* keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depreſſing of his Power. 6. And laſt of all, the *want of People* of his own natural Subjects, whom he may beſt rely on for the increaſe and grandeur of his Eſtates, exhauſted and diminiſhed by thoſe ways and means which have been touched upon; without any politick or provident cauſe, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greateſt and moſt ſenſible Error in the *Spaniſh* Government. Therein directly contrary to the ancient *Romans*; who finding that nothing was more neceſſary for great and important Enterprizes, than multitudes of Men, employed all their Studies to increaſe their numbers, by Marriages, Colonies, and ſuch helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth; by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became ſo great (all being equally intereſſed in the preſervation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibal*'s Judgment) by any Forces but her own. But, on the other ſide, the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations, but their own native Subjects; and ſo many of them alſo in all their Enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that ſo many thouſands going forth every Year, in the flower of their Age, not one of ten returning home; and thoſe few which return, either Lame or Old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themſelves, but alſo of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the Firſt of *Portugal*, who reigned before the ſeveral Voyages and Plantations of that People, was able to raiſe 40000 Men for the War of *Africk*; whereas *Emanuel*, who lived after thoſe Undertakings, had much ado to raiſe 20000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe, on the ſame occaſion; and *Sebaſtian*, after that, found as great a difficulty to raiſe an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Eſtates, they may be beſt ſeen by his Preparations for the Conqueſt of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his deſign for *England*, *An.* 1588. he had a Fleet conſiſting of 150 Sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great Galleons, 4 Galeaſſes of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the reſt ſmaller Veſſels; fraughted with 20000 Soldiers for Land-ſervice, 9000 Sailers, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 2650 Pieces of Ordnance; not reckoning into this Accompt the Commanders and Voluntiers; of which laſt, there were very great numbers who went upon that Service for *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the deſign of *Charles* the Fifth, for the Conqueſt of *Provence*, he had no leſs than 50000 in the Field: And in that of *Philip* the Second, for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his firſt ſetting forward out of *Italy*, conſiſting of 8800 *Spaniſh* Foot, and 1200 Horſe, all of them old experienced Soldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Dutchy of *Millain*; 3600 *German* Foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harquebuſiers on Horſeback, of the County of *Burgundy*; all old Soldiers alſo; beſides many Voluntiers of great Rank and Quality, very well attended, and his old ſtanding Army in the *Belgick* Provinces; a Strength ſufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of ſtanding Forces in this Country, he maintaineth in theſe Realms of *Spain*, but three thouſand Horſe; and in his Forts and Garriſons, no more than 8000 Foot; his Garriſons being very few, and thoſe upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns; his Gallies ſerved with Slaves out of *Turky* and *Barbary*. And yet he is able, on occaſion, to raiſe very great Forces; partly, becauſe the ordinary Subjects are ſo well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence; and partly in regard there is ſo great a number of *Feudataries* and Noble-men, who are by Tenure to ſerve perſonally at their own Charges, for defence of the Realm. And certainly, it muſt be a conſiderable Force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raiſe, conſidering the greatneſs of their Revenue, and the number of Vaſſals which live under them; it being ſuppoſed, that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able, one with another, to diſpend yearly from 50000 Ducats, to 100000; ſome going very much above that proportion; and that of 30 Marqueſſes, and 50 Earls, the pooreſt had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent, and ſo aſcending unto 50 and 60000. The Arch-Biſhops, Biſhops, and others of the greater *Clergy*, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Eſtates than in moſt places in *Europe*, are alſo bound to ſerve (though not perſonally) on the like occaſions. And to theſe Services the Noblemen are for two reaſons more forward than the other Feudataries: 1. Becauſe their Honours deſcend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unleſs confirmed to the Son by the King's acknowledgment and compellation, which makes them more obſervant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2. Becauſe out of the groſs body of theſe Noblemen, the King doth uſe to honour ſome with the Title of *Grandees*, privileged to ſtand cover'd before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the higheſt Honour which that State can yield, keeps thoſe great Perſons in readineſs to obey his Pleaſure, in hope to come to an Honour of ſo high eſteem.

For the *Revenues* of this King, which ordinarily ariſe out of his Eſtates, (taking *Portugal* into the Accompt) they are computed at Eleven Millions of Crowns yearly; that is to ſay, Four from his Dominions in *Italy*, Two from *Portugal* and the Appertinents thereof; Three from the *Weſt-Indies*, and the other two remaining, from his Kingdoms in *Spain*. Beſides this, he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Maſterſhips of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, not without good Policy and reaſon of State: the Maſters (or *Commendadors*, as they call them) of thoſe ſeveral Orders drawing after them ſuch Troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their Power began to be ſuſpected by the Kings themſelves. By which addition there accrueth to the Crown (beſides the opportunity of preferring Servants of the greateſt Merit) above 150000 *l.* of yearly Rents. As for his Caſualties and extraordinary ways of raiſing Money, they are very great: reckon'd by the Author of the *General Hiſtory of Spain* to amount (according to divers Opinions) to Fourteen, Eighteen, and Twenty three Millions of Crowns. For making up of which Sum, he puts in the *Firſt Fruits*, and ſome part of the *Tenths* of Rectories; and other Church Preferments, amounting to Three Millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Diſpute*, &c. affirmeth the Pardons ſent to the *Indies* given him by the Pope, to be worth half a Million of Pounds yearly. Add hereunto the fall and diſpoſal of all Offices, which make up a good round Sum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good *Revenue*. For the Kingdom of *Naples* preſents him every third Year with a Million and Twenty thouſand Crowns; and *Caſtile* only at one time granted a Contribution of Four Millions, to be paid in 4 Years: his Subjects generally being ſo well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reaſon of them, which they are not ready to grant; the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperor *Maximilian*, the *King of Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in Treaſure, his Expences being very great. *Firſt*, In keeping Forts and Garriſons in many parts of his Eſtates againſt the Revolt of the Natives. *Secondly*, Maintaining ſo many Frontier places againſt Foreign Invaſions. *Thirdly*, In the continual pay of an *Armada* for conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*. And laſt of all, The many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the Second, ſo plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the *Revenues* of it ſtand engaged for payment to this very Day.

There are in *Spain*.

Arch-Biſhops 11. Biſhops 52.

Univerſities 18.

i. e.

1. *Sevill.*
2. *Granada.*
3. *S. Jago.*
4. *Toledo.*
5. *Valadolit.*
6. *Majorca.*
7. *Salamanca.*
8. *Alcala de Henares.*
9. *Siguenca.*
10. *Ebora.*
11. *Lisbon.*
12. *Conimbre.*
13. *Valentia.*
14. *Lerida.*
15. *Hueſca.*
16. *Saragoſſa.*
17. *Tudela.*
18. *Oſſuna.*

And ſo much for SPAIN.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES OF BRITAIN.

BEFORE we can arrive in *Britain*, the laſt Weſtern Dioceſs, we muſt croſs the OCEAN, that *ingens*, and *infinitum Pelagus*, as *Mela* calls it: in compariſon of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or *Gullets*: a Sea in former times known more by Fame than Tryal, and rather wondred at on the Shore ſide, than any more remote place of it. The *Romans* ventured not on it with their Veſſels, unleſs in the Paſſage from *France* to *Britain*: And much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous Voyage on this unruly Sea, he having ſailed in all 400 Furlongs from the Shore. The Name and Pedigree take here both from the *Poets* and *Etymologiſts*. The Poets make *Oceanus* to be the Son of *Cœlum* and *Veſta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the Father of all things, as, *Oceanumque Patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, becauſe moiſture was neceſſarily required to the conſtitution of all Bodies; and uſually painted him with a Bulls Head on his Shoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him Ὠκεανὸς Ταυρόκρανος, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the bellowing and fury of the Winds; which from it come to the Shore, and to which it is ſubject. As for the *Children* attributed unto him, they are doubtleſs nothing but the *Clouds* and *Vapours* hence ariſing. The Name of Ὠκεανὸς, *Oceanus*, ſome derive from ὠκὺς, *celer*, becauſe of its *ſwiftneſs*; ſome from κέω, *findo*, *divido*, becauſe it *cleaveth* and interlaceth the Earth, And others make it Ὠκεανὸς, *quaſi* ὠκυνάος παρὰ τὸ ὦκυ νάειν, *à celeriter fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the firſt. Particular Names it hath divers, according to the Name of the Shore, by which it paſſeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Iſles of it appertaining to *Europe*, beſides thoſe called the *Azores* or *Iſles of Tercera*, which we have ſpoken of, when we were in *Portugal*; thoſe of the *Aquitain* Ocean, deſcribed in our Hiſtory of *France*; thoſe of the *Netherlands*, and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be deſcribed hereafter in their proper places, are the *Britiſh* Iſlands: by many of the moſt ancient and approved Writers called ſimply BRITAIN, becauſe united all in that common notion; though afterwards diſtinguiſhed into the particular appellations of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the reſt. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather as the next Dioceſs of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorian Præfectus* of *Gaul*, I am next to ſpeak.

An Advertiſement to the Reader.

THO' Britain, *ſince the Year* 1640. *has been the Scene of more Actions and Changes than any Country in* Chriſtendom, *a great part of which were over when the Reverend Dr.* Heylin *wrote, about the Year* 1648. *yet he did not think it ſafe to mention any thing of them. And, perhaps, all things conſider'd, it is as difficult to do it now as it was then: I ſhall therefore, in this part of the Work, leave things in almoſt the ſame ſtate I found them, only correcting the Errors of the Preſs.*

Of *BRITAIN.*

BRITAIN, according to the largeſt latitude of that Name and Notion, comprehendeth all thoſe Iſlands both great and leſs, which lie in compaſs about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly ſo called: by *Ptolomy* called *Britanniæ*, in the plural number; for ſpeaking of *France* he thus ſubjoineth, *Ex adverſo hujus* Britannia *Inſula*, Albion *ipſi nomen fuit, cum* Britanniæ *omnes vocarentur*, i. e. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iſland of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper Name was called *Albion*, the Name of *Britain* comprehending all the Iſles adjoining. And in this latitude and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of theſe Iſlands, diſtinguiſh'd into ſeveral Names, being united in the Perſon and under the Command of the King of *Great Britain*: that Name including all the reſt, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the *Iſles of Britain*, or the *Britiſh Iſlands*. Thus *Ariſtotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari duæ Inſulæ* Britannicæ *ſitæ ſunt, quarum maximæ* Albion *&* Ierna; *i. e.* In which Sea there are ſituate two *Britiſh* Iſlands of great note and compaſs, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly ſo called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolomy* goeth to work more punctually, and he ſtates it thus; *Complectitur prima hæc* Europæ *tabula duas* Britannicas *inſulas, quas Dionyſius* Bretanides *vocat*, Hiberniam *nempe &* Albionem, *cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus inſulis, ut ſunt* Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, *& reliquæ ſuis nominibus expreſſæ*: that is to ſay, This firſt Table of *Europe* comprehendeth the two Iſlands of *Britain*, which *Dionyſius* calls the *Bretanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with ſome leſſer Iſlands joyning to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleſey*, (or *Man*) and others called by diſtinct Names. By which we ſee, firſt, that the general Name of *Britain* or *Britiſh* Iſlands comprehended all thoſe which are ſituate in the *Britiſh* Ocean: And, ſecondly, that the greateſt and moſt famous of them, more ſpecially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was anciently called *Albion* by its proper Name. And it was called *Albion*, as many Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Borgian*, the Son of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Æſchylus*, *Dionyſius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper, that the greateſt Iſland of the *Ocean* ſhould be denominated from a Son of the greateſt Sea-god: or from the old word Ἄλφον, ſignifying *White* amongſt the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Album*,) by reaſon of the white chalky Cliffs, ſeen by the Mariners afar off as they ſailed thoſe Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the ſeveral Iſlands which that Name includeth, we may diſtinguiſh them into the *Greater* and the *Leſſer*; the *Greater* ſubdivided into 1. *Great Britain*, or *Britain* ſpecially ſo called, and 2. *Ireland*; the *Leſſer*, 1. the *Orcades*, 2. the *Hebrides*, 3. *Man*, 4. *Angleſey*, 5. the Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 6. the *Sorlinges*, or Iſles of *Scilly*, 7. *Wight*, 8. *Thanet*, 9. *Sunderland*, and 10. *Holy Iſland*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO ſpeak much of GREAT BRITAIN or BRITAIN, ſpecially and properly ſo called, I hold ſomewhat ſuperfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no ſtrangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once ſaid of *Italy*, *De* Italia, *magis quia ordo exiget, quam quia monſtrari egeat, pauca dicentur; nota ſunt omnia*; ſo ſay I of *Britain*. It is ſo obvious to the Eye of every Reader, that he needs not the Spectacles of Letters. Yet ſomething muſt be ſaid, though for method ſake, rather than neceſſity. Firſt then, we will begin with laying out the Bounds thereof (as in other places;) which are, on the Eaſt, the *German* Ocean, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the Weſt, S. *George*'s Channel, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or Weſtern Ocean, of which the Ancients knew no ſhore; on the North, with the *Hyberborean* or *Deucaledonian* Ocean, as *Ptolomy* calls it, extending out to *Iſeland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *Engliſh* Channel, which divides it from *France*.

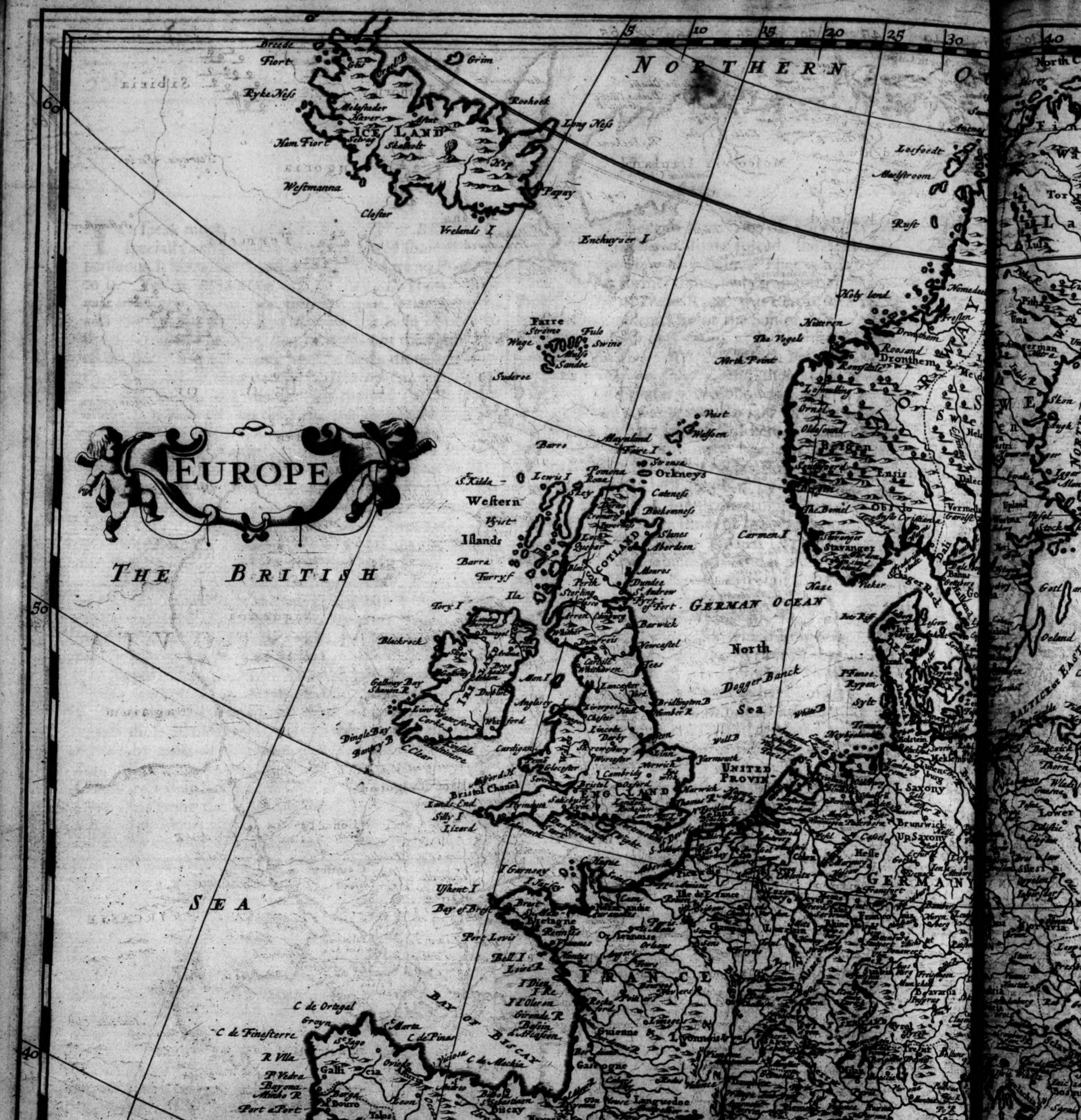
The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian* Miles; the greateſt breadth from Eaſt to Weſt, meaſured in a right Line, no more than 250 of the ſame Miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-Coaſt, come to 320 Miles: whole circumference accompted 1836 Miles. The greateſt Iſland in the World, except, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagaſcar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and ſome other Ancients (to whom thoſe Iſlands were not known) called the *Other World*: by other of late time, the *Lady and Miſtreſs of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th Climes; ſo that the longeſt Day at the *Lizard* Point in *Cornwall*, (being the moſt Southern part thereof) containeth 16 Hours and a quarter; at *Berwick*, which is the border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 Hours three quarters, and one Hour more at *Straithby-head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where ſome obſerve, that there is ſcarce any Night at all in the Summer *Solſtice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, ſaying, *Et minima contentos nocte Britannos*: *Britain* content with little Night. And the *Panegyriſt*, in the time of *Conſtantine*, amongſt other Commendations which he gives to *Britain*, ſaith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any ſcorching heats in Summer; and that which is moſt comfortable, *Long Days, and very lightſome Nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyriſt* tell us only of the temperateneſs of the Air, or the length of the Days, but of the fruitfulneſs of the Soil: affirming “ *Britain* to be bleſſed with all the “ Commodities of Heaven and Earth; ſuch an abundant “ plenty of Corn as might ſuffice both for Bread and “ Wine; the Woods thereof without wild Beaſts, the “ Fields without noiſome Serpents, infinite number of “ milch Beaſts, and Sheep weighed down with their own “ Fleeces. Whereto add that of *Alfred* of *Beverly*, a Poet of the middle times, ſaying thus of *Britain*.

Inſula prædives, quæ toto vix eget orbe;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Inſula prædives, cujus miretur & optet.
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus *opes.*

A wealthy Iſland, which no help deſires,
Yet all the World ſupply from her requires;
Able to glut King SOLOMON with Pleaſures,
And ſurfeit great *Auguſtus* with her Treaſures.

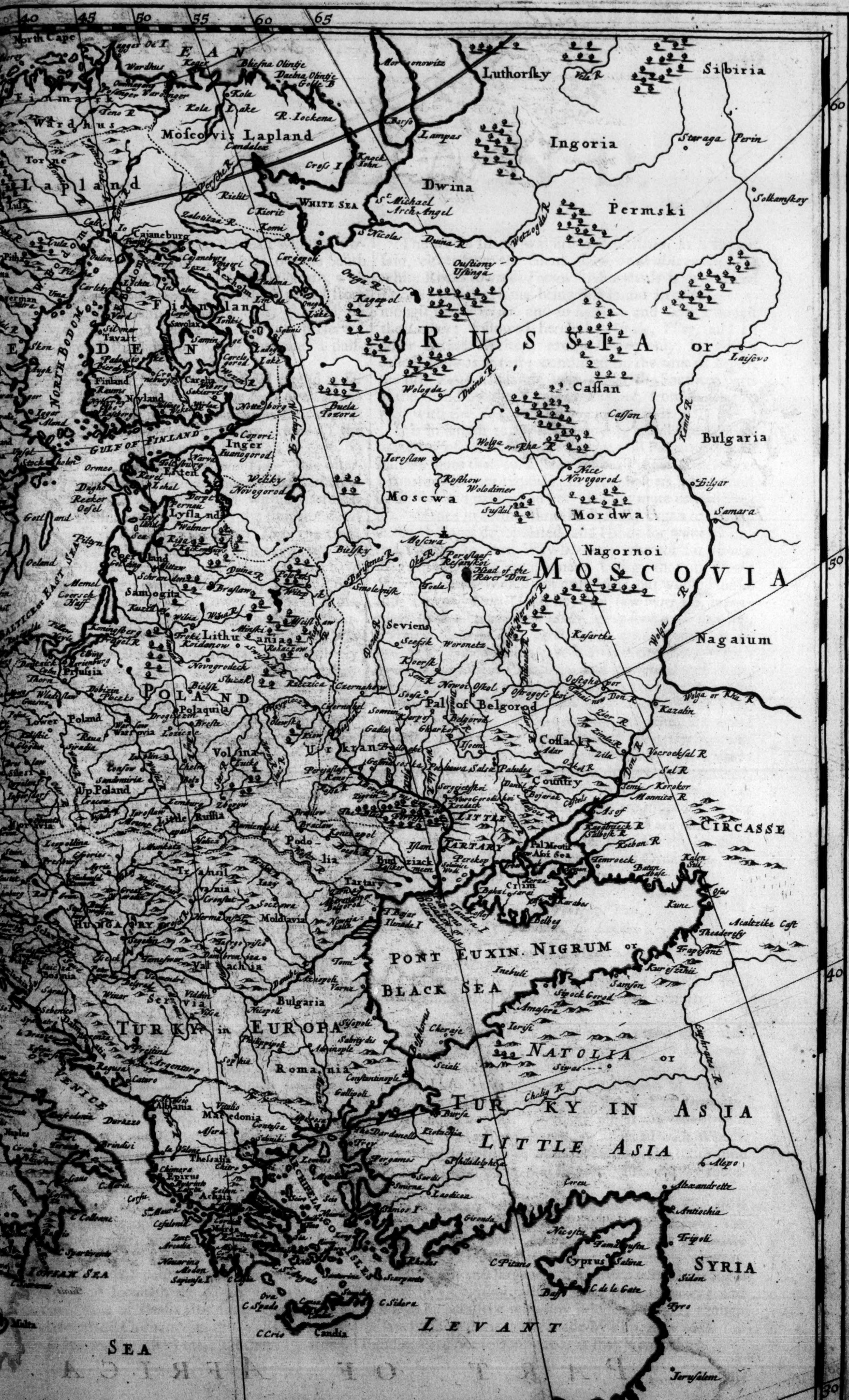
Proceed we next to the Name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etymologies*, ſome forced, ſome fabulous and fooliſh, and but few of weight. That which hath paſſed for current in former times, (when almoſt all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* Race) was that it took this Name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grand-child of *Æneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* Blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his Friends and Followers; after a long Voyage, and many wandrings, is ſaid to have fallen upon this Iſland, to have conquered here a Race of Giants; and, having given unto it the Name of *Britain*, to leave the Sovereignty thereof unto his Poſterity, who quietly enjoyed the ſame, till ſubdued by the *Romans*. This is the ſum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*; which tho' received in the darker times of Ignorance, and too much credulity, in theſe more learned Days hath been laid aſide, as falſe and fabulous. And it is proved, that there was no ſuch Man as *Brutus*, 1. From the newneſs of his Birth, *Geofry of Monmouth*, who lived in the Reign of King *Henry* the Second, being the firſt Author which makes mention of him; for which immediately queſtioned by *Newbrigenſis*, another Writer of that *Age*. 2. By the ſilence of all the *Roman* Hiſtorians, in whom it had been unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident ſo remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (eſpecially when they wanted Matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in ſo great an Iſland. 3. By the Arguments which *Cæſar* uſeth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*, as Speech, Laws, Cuſtoms, Diſpoſitions, Making, and the like. 4. And leſt it might be ſaid, that though the *Britains* in *Cæſar*'s time were of *Gallick* Race, yet there had been a more ancient People, who had their Original from the *Trojans*, *Tacitus* putteth off that diſpute with an *Ignoramus*: *Qui mortales initio coluerint, parum compertum eſt*, It is not well known what Mortals at firſt inhabited it, ſaith that knowing Writer. And 5. By the Teſtimony of all *Roman* Hiſtories, who tell us that *Cæſar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the Command of one ſole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli adminiſtrandi, communi conſenſu, commiſſa eſt* Caſſivellauno; The principal Command and Care of the War was by common conſent committed to *Caſſivellaun*, as it is in *Cæſar*: *Dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*; Whilſt they fought in ſmall Parties they were all at laſt one after another overcome, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons*, as unlikely, but of leſs Authority; the Name of *Britain* is moſt probably derived from *Brit*, which in the ancient *Britiſh* ſignifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain* ſignifieth a *Nation*; agreeable unto the Cuſtom of the ancient *Britains*, who uſed to diſcolour and paint their Bodies, that they might ſeem more terrible in the Eyes of their Enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted Men; ſuch as the *Romans* called *Picts* in the times enſuing. Which I prefer before the Etymology of *Bochartus*, a right Learned Man, but one that wreſteth all Originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* Language; by whom this Iſland is called *Britain* or *Britannica*, from *Barat-anac*, ſignifying in that Language a Land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Weſtern parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Iſle of *Britain* ſhall be obſerved in the deſcription of thoſe Parts into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay. 1. *England*, 2. *Wales*, and 3. *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

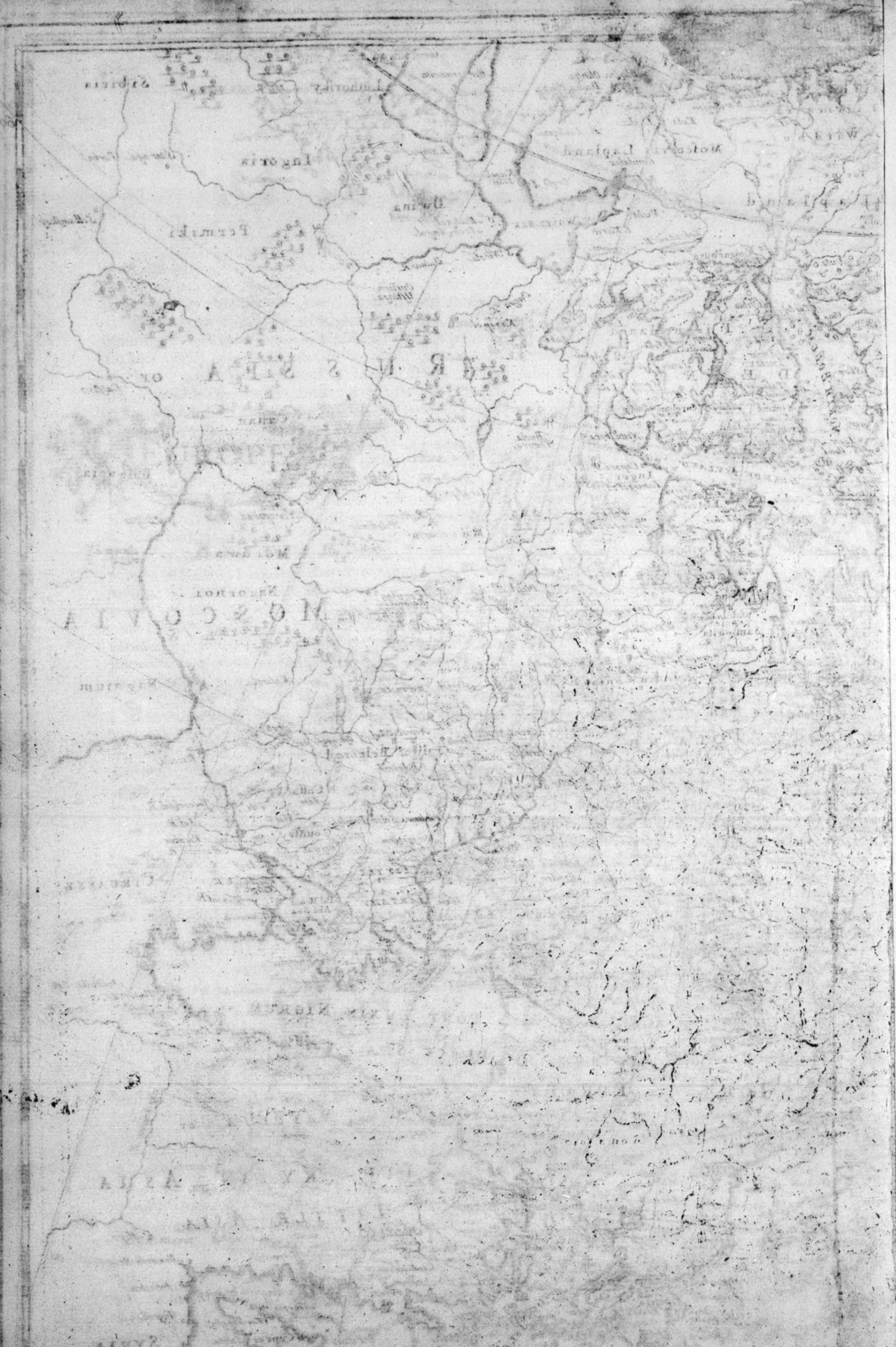


EUROPE

NORTHERN
Breede Fiort
Ryke Nifs
Ham Fiort
Westmanna
Clofter
ICE LAND
Grim
Rookok
Long Nifs
Papey
Vrelands I
Enchuyser I
Farre
Fulo
Wage
Swine
Sandoe
Suderoe
Losfoedt
Maelstroom
Rust
Holy land
Nomedes
Drontheim
Roosand
North Point
The Vogels
Vust
Weissen
Barre
Mayneland
Faire I
Orkneys
St. Kilda
Lewis I
Pomona
Western
Islands
Barra
Catenes
Buckemness
Aberdeen
Slanes
Carmen I
Bergen
Stavanger
Naze
Vleker
THE BRITISH
Tory I
Ila
SCOTLAND
Perth
Sterling
Edenburg
Dundee
St. Andrew
Barwick
Newcastel
Tees
North
GERMAN OCEAN
Dogger Banck
Sea
Blackrock
Gallway Bay
Shannon R
Dingle Bay
Bantry B
C. Clear
Dublin
Wexford
Man I
Anglesey
Cardigan
Lancaster
Whitehaven
Carlisle
Chester
York
Lincoln
Norwich
Yarmouth
Dridlington B
Humber R
Wells B
UNITED PROVIN
Bristol Chanel
Milford H
Lands End
Silly I
Lizard
ENGLAND
London
Dover
Bristol
Oxford
Cambridg
Worcester
Holstein
Mecklenburg
L Saxony
Brunswick
Up Saxony
Hesse
GERMAN
Sylt
I Garnesy
I Jersey
Ushent I
Bay of Brest
Port Louis
Bell I
Loire R
I Dieu
I Re
I d'Oleron
Gironde R
Bretagne
Normandie
Rennes
Picardie
Isle de France
Paris
Orleans
Champagne
FRANCE
Rochelle
Poitou
Guienne
Limosin
Lyonnois
Gascogne
Bay of Biscay
Languedoc
Provence
Gulf of Lyon
C de Ortegal
C de Finesterre
R Villa
P. Vedra
Bayona
Minho R
Port a Port
Galicia
Oviedo
Victoria
C de Machia
C de Pinas
Douro
Beira
Coimbra
R Mondego
Barlenga I
Estrema
Leon
Burgos
Old Castile
Navarre
Arragon
Biscay
Salamanca
Madrid
Catalonia
Tarragona
Barcelona
Dura
Lisbon
C Sintra
Tajo R
St. Ubes
Extrema
Merida
Evora
SPAIN
Toledo
Cuenca
New Castile
Valencia
C Dragofredi
Andalusia
Sevilla
Algarve
C St. Vincent
Lagos
Granada
Murcia
Malaga
Cadiz
Straits of Gibralter
C. Spartel
Ceuta
C de Gata
C de Palos
Majorca
Minorca
Ivica
Mahon
MEDITER
RANIAN
Sardinia
Corsica
Cagliari
Tyrhenian Sea
Malta
Oran
Algier
Larache
Tunis
PART OF AFRICA
60
50
40
30
5
10
15
20
25
30
40



40
45
50
55
60
65
North Cape
Wardhus
Finmark
Wardhus
Moscovis Lapland
Candalax
Lapland
Torne
Kola
Kola Lake
R. Iockena
Cross I
Knock John
Morsovonowitz
Luthorsky
Sibiria
Lampas
Ingoria
Staraga
Perin
Dwina
St. Michael Arch Angel
White Sea
Permski
Solkamskoy
S. Nicolas
Duina R
Wetzogda R
Oustiony Ustinga
Cajaneburg
Finland
Savolax
Tavast
Carelia
Nyland
Onega R
Kargapol
Onega Lake
Ladoga Lake
Gulf of Finland
North Bodom
RUSSIA or
Cassan
Cassan
Laiscvo
Kama R
Bulgaria
Bilgar
Samara
Wologda
Duina R
Bucla Tozora
Nottenborg
Inger
Ivanogorod
Caporii
Narva
Reval
Esten
Great Novogorod
Velicky Novogorod
Wolga or Rha R
Jeroslaw
Rosthow
Wolodimer
Susdal
Moscwa
Nice Novogorod
Mordwa
Nagornoi
MOSCOVIA
Nagaium
Wolga R
Moscwa
Pereslaf Resanskoi
Head of the River Don
Oka R
Tula
Bielsky
Boristenes R
Smolensko
Seviens
Seefsk
Woronetz
Koersk
Kasartha
Dagho
Oesel
Livland
Riga
Courland
Samogita
Memel
Coersch Haff
Gotland
Oeland
Baltick or East Sea
Lithuania
Wilna
Minski
Kowno
Koningsberg
Prussia
Dantzick
Thorn
Novogrodeck
POLAND
Poland
Warsaw
Warsovia
Lower Poland
Up. Poland
Cracow
Brestie
Oskol
Pal of Belgorod
Belgorod
Charkow
Czernihow
Kiovia
Volinia
Ukran
Cossacks
Country
Azof
Don R
Kazalin
Wolga or Rha R
Ier R
Pultawa
Little Tartary
Perekop
Crim
Palus Meotis
Azof Sea
Temroeck
CIRCASSE
Koban R
Podolia
Kaminieck
Braslow
Budziack
Tartary
Moldavia
Iassy
Transilvania
HUNGARY
Walachia
Danube
Belgrade
Servia
Bosnia
Bulgaria
Nicopoli
TURKY in EUROPA
Sophia
Romania
Philipopoli
Adrianople
Constantinople
Gallipoli
Varna
Tomi
PONT EUXIN. NIGRUM or
BLACK SEA
Caffa
Bospherus
Trebisond
Theodorosy
Acaltzike Cast
Samson
Sinope
Amasera
NATOLIA or
Sivas
Euphrates R
TURKY IN ASIA
LITTLE ASIA
Bursa
The Dardanells
Troy
Pergamus
Smirna
Philadelphia
Sardis
Laodicea
Rhodes
Aleppo
Alexandrette
Antiochia
Tripoli
SYRIA
Sidon
Tyre
Nicosia
Famagusta
Cyprus
Salina
C. de le Gate
Baffa
C. Pitano
Ragusa
Cataro
Albania
Durazzo
Macedonia
Thessalia
Epirus
Achaia
Morea
Corfu
Cefalonia
Zante
Athens
Archipelago Isles
Candia
C. Spada
C. Sidero
Malta
Ionian Sea
Venice
Levant
Sea
PART OF AFRICA
Jerusalem
Alexandria
Cairo
30
35
40
45
50
55
60


Siberia
Ingoria
Permski
Dwina
Lapland
RUSSIA or
MOSCOVIA
ASIA
LITTLE ASIA
SYRIA
LEVANT

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with the *German*, on the Weſt with the *Iriſh*, on the South with the *Britiſh* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environ'd with turbulent Seas, guarded by inacceſſible Rocks; and where thoſe want, preſerved againſt all foreign Invaſions by ſtrong Forts and a puiſſant Navy.

In former times the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh Fryth* on the Eaſt, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the Weſt, (for ſo far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient ſpace being ſhut up with a Wall of Turfs by *Lollius Urbicus*, in the time of *Antonius Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the barbarous People, the Province was contracted within narrower Bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carliſle* to the River *Tine*, the track whereof may eaſily be diſcerned to this very Day. A Wall ſo made, that at every Miles end there is ſaid to have been a Caſtle, between every Caſtle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Braſs, conveying the leaſt noiſe unto one another without interruption; ſo that News of any approaching Enemy was quickly over all the Border, and reſiſtance accordingly provided. In following times the ſtrong Towns of *Barwick* and *Carliſle* have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the back Door ſhut; and as for other Forts, we had ſcarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea-Coaſts of the Kingdom; though in the midland Parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occaſioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings, till in the latter end of the Reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and thoſe few which remained diſmantled, and made unſerviceable. The Maritime Parts were thought ſufficiently aſſured by thoſe Rocks and Cliffs which compaſs the Iſland in moſt parts; and hardly any Caſtle all along the Shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the *Key* of *England*. But in the Year 1538. King *Henry* the Eighth conſidering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, by his Divorce from Queen *Catharine*; and incurred the diſpleaſure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as alſo that the *French* King had not only married his Son to a Neece of the Pope, but a Daughter of the King of *Scots*; thought fit to provide for his own ſafety, by building in all places where the Shore was moſt plain and open, Caſtles, Platforms, and Block-Houſes; many of which in the long time of Peace enſuing were much neglected, and in part ruined.

His Daughter, Queen *Elizabeth*, of happy Memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom; for ſhe not only fortified *Portſmouth*, and placed in it a ſtrong Garriſon; but walled the Kingdom round with a moſt ſtately, royal, and invincible Navy; with which ſhe always commanded the Seas, and vanquiſhed the mightieſt Monarch of *Europe*; whereas her Predeceſſors, in their Sea-ſervice, for the moſt part, hired their Men of War from the *Hanſmen* and *Genoeſe*. Yet did neither of theſe erect any Caſtles in the inward part of the Realm; herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the Head and the Feet only, not the middle of Beaſts; or ſome Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordnance on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Outworks, leaving the reſt by theſe ſufficiently guarded.

The whole Iſland was firſt called *Albion*, as before is ſaid, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which Name being firſt found in *Athenæus*, amongſt the *Græcians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæſar* amongſt the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient Writers, except *Ptolomy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at firſt; continued till the time of *Egbert*, the firſt *Saxon* Monarch, who called the Southern parts of the Iſland by the Name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 Miles, enjoying a Soil equally participating of Ground fit for Tillage and Paſture; yet to Paſture more than to Tillage are our People addicted, as a courſe of life not requiring ſo many helpers, which muſt be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain Profits. Hence in former times Huſbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn Way-beaters; whereof Sir *Thomas Moor*, in his *Utopia*, complaineth, ſaying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only Men, but whole Houſes and Towns. *Oves* (ſaith he) *quæ tam mites eſſe, tamque exiguo ſolent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomitæ eſſe cœperant, ut homines devorent ipſos, agros, domos, oppida vaſtent, ac depopulentur*: Sheep which have been hitherto thought ſuch mild and peaceable Creatures, and contented with little, are now become ſo devouring and untameable, that they deſtroy our Lands and Houſes, and depopulate and lay waſte our Towns. To prevent this miſchief, there was a Statute made in the Fourth Year of *Henry* the Seventh, againſt the converting of Arable Land into Paſture Ground; by which courſe Huſbandry was again revived, and the Soil made ſo abounding in Corn, that a dear Year is ſeldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and ſeldom come to maturity, and are more uſed for the pleaſantneſs of the Shade, than for the hopes of Wine. Moſt of her other Plenties and Ornaments, are expreſſed in this old Verſe following;

Anglia, 1. *Mons*, 2. *Pons*, 3. *Fons*,
4. *Eccleſia*, 5. *Fœmina*, 6. *Lana*.

That is to ſay,

For 1. Mountains, 2. Bridges, 3. Rivers, 4 Churches fair,
5. Women, and 6. Wooll, *England* is paſt compare.

1. For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty Heads, and giving a gallant proſpect to the lower Ground; the principal are thoſe of *Mendip* in *Somerſet*, *Malvern* Hills in *Worceſterſhire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamſhire*, *Cotſwold* in *Gloceſterſhire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyſhire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact deſcription of which would require more time than I can ſpend upon that ſubject. Proceed we therefore to

2. The *Bridges*, which are in number 875. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rocheſter* over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Briſtol* over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London* over *Thames*. This laſt ſtanding upon 19 Arches, of wonderful ſtrength and largeneſs, ſupporteth continual ranges of Buildings, ſeeming rather a Street than a Bridge; and is not to be parallel'd with any Bridge of *Europe*; though of late by ſome defacement made by Fire, *Anno* 1632. the Buildings are not ſo contiguous as they were before.

3. The *Rivers* of this Country are in number 325. The chief is *Thamiſis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Iſis*; whereof the former riſing ſomewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamſhire*, and the latter beyond *Cirenceſter* in *Glocesterſhire*, meet together about *Dorceſter* in *Oxfordſhire*: The iſſue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamiſis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamſhire*, *Middleſex*, *Surry*, *Kent*, and *Eſſex*; and ſo weddeth himſelf to the *Kentiſh Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*; ebbing and flowing twice a Day, more than 60 Miles: about whoſe Banks are ſo many fair Towns and Princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly ſpoke,

Tot campos, ſylvas, tot regia tecta, tot hortos,
Artifici excultos dextrâ, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Auſonio Thamiſis *cum* Tibride *certet.*

We ſaw ſo many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and ſtately Towers:
So many Gardens dreſs'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The ſecond River of note, is *Sabrin* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon*-Hill in *Mongomeryſhire*, and his end about ſeven Miles from *Briſtol*; waſhing in the mean ſpace, the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, and *Gloceſter*. 3. *Trent*, ſo called, for that 30 kind of Fiſhes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 leſſer Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordſhire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the moſt violent Stream of all the Iſle. Yet *Humber* is not, to ſay truth, a diſtinct River, having a Spring-head of his own; but rather the Mouth or *Æſtuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely *Youre*, *Darewent*, and eſpecially *Ouſe* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, *Danube*, having received into its Channel the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiſcus*, and divers others, changeth his Name into *Iſter*; ſo alſo the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the Waters above named, changeth his Name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4. *Medway*, a *Kentiſh* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy. 5. *Tweed*, the North-Eaſt bound of *England*, on whoſe Northern Bank is ſeated the ſtrong and impregnable Town of *Berwick*. 6. *Tine*, famous for *New-Caſtle*, and her inexhauſtible Coal pits. Theſe, and the reſt of principal note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton*'s Sonnets:

Our Flood Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd
And ſtately *Severn* for her Shore is prais'd,
The Cryſtal *Trent* for Fords and Fiſh renown'd,
The *Avon*'s fame to *Albion*'s Cliffs is rais'd.
Carlegion Cheſter vaunts her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouſe* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whoſe Banks ſo fertil be,
And *Kent* will ſay her *Medway* doth excel.
Cotſwold commends her *Iſis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern Borders boaſt of *Tweed*'s fair flood;
Our Weſtern parts extol their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of *Daniſh* Blood.

4. The *Churches*, before the general ſuppreſſion of Abbies, and ſpoiling the Church Ornaments, were moſt exquiſite; the chief remaining, are, 1. The Church of St. *Paul*, founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple conſecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick of the largeſt dimenſions of that kind, of any in the Chriſtian World. For whereas the ſo much celebrated Temple of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople* hath but 260 Foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of S. *Paul* is 690 Foot long, and 130 Foot broad, the main Body being 102 Foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 Foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and cover'd with Lead, was by the careleſneſs of the Sexton, in the Fifth Year of the Reign of Q. *Elizabeth*, conſumed with Fire, which happening in a thundring and tempeſtuous Day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was ſo generally believed till the Hour of his Death: but not many Years ſince, to diſabuſe the World, he confeſt the truth of it; on which diſcovery, the burning of St. *Paul*'s Steeple by Lightning, was left out of our Common Almanacks; where formerly it ſtood amongſt the ordinary *Epoche*, or Accounts of Time. A Church of ſuch a gallant Proſpect, and ſo large dimenſions, that had not the late Reparation of it been diſcontinued, it would have been the ſtatelieſt and moſt majeſtical Fabrick in the Chriſtian World. This Noble Structure was burnt in the Year 1666. *Sept.* 3. 2. The Collegiate Church of St. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, (wherein I have the honour to be a Prebendary) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the moſt ſumptuous, and the Chappel the moſt accurate piece of Building in *Europe*. 3. The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4. For a private Church, that of *Radcliff* in *Briſtol*. 5. For a private Chappel, that of *King's-College* in *Cambridge*. 6. For curious Workmanſhip of the Glaſs, that of *Chriſt-Church* in *Canterbury*. 7. For the exquiſit beauty of the Fronts, thoſe of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8. For a pleaſant lightſome Church, the Abby Church at *Bath*. 9. For an ancient and reverend Fabrick, the Minſter of *York*. And 10. to comprehend the reſt in one, our Lady-Church in *Salisbury*, of which take theſe Verſes.

Mira canam; ſoles quot continet annus, in una
Tam numeroſa, ferunt, æde feneſtra micat.
Marmoreaſq; tenet fuſas tot ab arte columnas,
Comprenſas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot menſibus annus abundat:
Res mira, at vera res celebrata fide.

How many Days in one whole Year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we ſee.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are Hours throughout the fleeting Year.
So many Gates, as Moons, one Year do view;
Strange Tale to tell, yet not ſo ſtrange as true.

5. The Women generally are more handſome than in other places, ſufficiently endowed with natural Beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophiſtications. In an abſolute Woman, ſay the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch-Woman*, from the Girdle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the Girdle to the Shoulders; over which muſt be placed an *Engliſh* Face. As their Beauties, ſo alſo are their Prerogatives the greateſt of any Nation; neither ſo ſervilely ſubmiſſive as the *French*, nor ſo jealouſly guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping ſo true a *decorum*, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of Horſes; ſo it is acknowledged the *Paradiſe* of *Women*. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if *there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the Women of* Europe *would run into* England: For here they have the upper hands in the Streets, the upper place at the Table; the thirds of their Husbands Eſtates, and their equal ſhare in all Lands, yea even ſuch as are holden in *Knights ſervice*; Privileges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high eſteem in former times amongſt foreign Nations, for the modeſty and gravity of their Converſation, but of late times ſo much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have loſt much of their ancient honor and reputation amongſt the *knowing* and more *ſober* Men of foreign Countries, who before admir'd them.

6. The Wool of *England* is of exceeding fineneſs, eſpecially that of *Cotſwold* in *Gloceſterſhire*; that of *Lemſter* in *Herefordſhire*; and of the Iſle of *Wight*. Of this Wool are made excellent Broad-cloths, diſperſed all over the World, eſpecially *High-Germany*, *Muſcovy*, *Turky* and *Perſia*, to the great benefit of the Realm; as

well

in return of ſo much money which is made of them,
ſetting to work ſo many poor People, who from it
e Suſtenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the
Engliſh Men had not the Art, or neglected the uſe
king Cloth: till whoſe time our Wool was tranſ-
d unwrought. And as his Succeſſors have laid Impo-
s on every Cloth ſold out of the Realm; ſo his Pre-
ſors had, as their occaſion required, ſome certain Cu-
granted on every Sack of Wool. In the beginning
s *Edward*'s Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns
nders being then even to admiration rich, combined
him, and aided him in his Wars againſt that King.
e for his part by the Compoſition then made, was to
hem 140000 *l.* ready money to aid them by Sea
and, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then
f the great Mart-Towns of *Chriſtendom*, the *Staple*
s Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at
time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the
and he having by experience ſeen what the benefit of
Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *Eng-*
And for the eaſe as well of his Subjects in bringing
Wools unto the Ports, as of ſuch Foreign Merchants
me to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exceſter*, *Bri-*
incheſter, *Weſtminſter*, *Chicheſter*, *Canterbury*, *Nor-*
Lincoln, *York*, and *Newcaſtle*, for *England*; at *Caer-*
for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork* and
for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *Eng-*
iſh, or *Welch*-men ſhould tranſport this Stapled
odity, no not by Licence (if any ſuch ſhould be
d) on pain of Confiſcation, and Impriſonment du-
e Kings pleaſure. Laſtly, he allured over hither
Flemmings, which taught our men the making of
s (who are now grown the beſt Cloth-workers in
rld;) and to encourage them in that Art. it was by
tute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, Enacted to
ny, to carry any Woolls unwrought. When *Eng-*
d ſome ſhort time enjoyed the benefit of theſe
the King removed them to *Calice*, which he had
red, and deſired to make wealthy. From hence
ere at ſeveral times and occaſions tranſlated, now
now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was
own, in what Country ſoever, where the *Engliſh*
Houſe for this Traffick; the confluence of all Peo-
her to buy, infinitely enriching it. *Antwerp* in
long enjoyed the *Engliſh* Merchants, till upon
ſcontents between King *Henry* the Seventh, and
lian Arch-Duke and Lord of *Belgium*, they re-
but at their return again, were received by the
pians, with ſolemn Proceſſion, Princely Triumph,
ous Feaſts, rare Banquetings, and other expreſſions
h Love, but more Joy. And giving of ſome
Sheep by *Edward* the Fourth, to *Henry* of *Ca-*
d *John* of *Arragon*, An. 1465. is counted one
greateſt prejudices, that ever happened to this
m.

Wool tranſported bringeth into the Kingdom no
1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the ſum, ſo that
uicciardine reporteth, That before the Wars of
-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *Engliſh* bar-
Wares, yearly to the value of 12 Millions of

next Commodity to the *Wool*, though not mentio-
he verſe foregoing, are the rich and inexhauſtible
Cole, *Lead*, and *Tin*: to ſay nothing of the *Mines*
as bringing more damage to the Publick by the
Woods, than profit to particular perſons in the
of their Eſtates. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly
Newcaſtle in *Northumberland*, and by that the
ity of *London*, and many other good Towns be-
hich could not poſſibly ſubſiſt in this general de-
Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this Com-
The Mines of *Lead* are moſt conſiderable in
of *Derbyſhire*; thoſe of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where
Tin not much inferiour to Silver in fineneſs. A
dity which brought great wealth to *England* in

former times, the art of making it not being elſewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the Tin-workers, flying out of *England* for a Murder, paſſed into *Germany*, *An.* 1243. and there diſcovered ſome Tin-Mines in *Miſnia*, not known before, and ſet on foot that Trade amongſt them, to the great prejudice (ſaith my Author) of the Earls of *Cornwall*, who had before the ſole *Monopoly* of that uſeful Mettal.

To theſe Particulars, being matter of Profit and Neceſſity, if I would add ſuch things as are for Delight and Pleaſure, I might ſubjoin the *Bells* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among foreign Nations, as for any of thoſe mentioned in the ſaid old Verſe. The *Bells* ſo many, tunable, and of ſuch excellent Melody to a Muſical Ear (brought more to the command of the skilful Ringer than in former times) that is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Iſland, than in half Chriſtendom beſides, *Parks* more in *England*, than in all *Europe*. The firſt of which kind for the encloſing of Veniſon, being that of *Woodſtock*, made by King *Henry* the firſt; whoſe Example being followed by his Succeſſors, and the Lords and great Men of the Realm; the number ſo increaſed in a little time, that at the laſt, beſides 55 *Foreſts*, and 300 *Chaſes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*; all well repleniſhed either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleaſure, and the Sheep with ſafety, great care was taken by our Progenitors for the deſtruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, that *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not ſo; here being ſtore of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 *l.* of Gold, 300 *l.* of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel impoſed as an yearly Tribute by King *Athelſtane* upon *Idwallo Prince of Wales*, for the like yearly Tribute of 300 *Wolves*; by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welch* proteſting at laſt they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither ſo hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, becauſe of its Northernly ſituation; nor ſo cold in the Winter; becauſe the Air of this Kingdom being groſs, cannot ſo ſoon penetrate as the thin Air, of thoſe Countries: For to ſay truth, the Air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much diſpoſed to miſts; eſpecially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inſomuch that many times, the Sun is not ſeen to ſhine out clearly for ſome Weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a Tale, that the great Conſtable of *Caſtile* being Ambaſſadour to King *James* in the firſt Winter of his Reign, and tarrying here about a Month, is ſaid not to have ſeen the Sun all the time of his ſtay, which occaſioned him at his going on ſhip-board, to deſire ſuch Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *preſent his humble Service to the King their Maſter, and to the* bleſſed Sun of Heaven, *when they chanced to ſee him.* And ſomething alſo touching the temperature of the Air, may be aſcribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they paſs unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be ſaid, that we were come from Gods bleſſing into the warm Sun; but it is not ſo; For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of Fiſh than ours. Our Oyſters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*, to whom, the *Engliſh*-men, reſerving to themſelves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by Cuſtom demand liberty to Fiſh, of *Scarborough-Caſtle* in *Yorkſhire*) have yielded up the Commodity; by which thoſe States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoveriſhed and condemned for Lazineſs and Sloth. Beſides the loſs of Imployment for many Men, who uſing this Trade, might be a Seminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and diſcoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the ſtrength and flouriſhing of the Common-wealth, and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I ſhall extract ſome paſſages out of a M.S. diſcourſe of the late Learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Soveraignty of the* Britiſh *Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fiſhing in thoſe Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fiſh, at all times of the year: and that too in ſo plentiful a manner, that not long ſince near *Minnegal* on the Coaſts of *Devonſhire*, 500 Tun of Fiſh were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near S. *Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 Laſt of *Herrings*.

Secondly, That almoſt all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and thoſe of the *Hanſe*, do mightily improve themſelves both in Power and Wealth, by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Fiſhing; inſomuch as 10000 Sail of Foreign Veſſels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *Eaſt Friſeland* only) are thought to be maintained by this Trade alone.

Thirdly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Veſſels of all ſorts for this Trade of *Fiſhing* on our Coaſts, whereby they have a Seminary of 15000 Sailers and Mariners, ready for any publick Service; all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of ſeveral Trades upon the Land.

Fourthly, That for the holding up of this Trade, the ſaid *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not ſo big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furniſhing all the parts of the World (even as far as *Braſil*) with our Commodities; returning home thoſe of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they ſell to us many times at their own prices.

Fifthly, That the ſaid *Hollanders* (as appeared upon Computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon theſe Coaſts, the ſum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Cuſtoms and tenth Fiſh advancing to the publick Treaſury no leſs than 800000 *l.* Sterling:) it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by thoſe of the *Hanſe* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a ſum as that,

Sixthly, and finally, That by erecting only 250 *Buſſes*, (Veſſels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not ſwift of ſail) for the *Herring Fiſhing*, (which is not a ſixth part of thoſe which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated, there would be found employment yearly for 1000 Ships, and at leaſt 20000 Mariners and Fiſhers at Sea, and conſequently for as many Tradeſmen and Labourers at Land; by means whereof, beſides the vindication of our credit now at ſuch a loſs, there would ariſe in Cuſtoms, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Impoſts, no leſs than 300000 *l. per Annum* to the publick Treaſury. The proſecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once deſigned by Mr. Atturney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend. So do I heartily commend it to the Care of the State, and to his Succeſſors in that Office, as the fitteſt Remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithſtanding theſe advantages of Fiſh, the Diet of *England* is, for the moſt part Fleſh; in *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep ſlain, and uttered in a year, beſides Calves, Lambs, Hogsflew, and Poulterers Ware. To prove this, ſuppoſe there be in *London* 60 Butchers *Free* of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Ox a day, as at leaſt they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreigners in the Suburbs and Villages ſell four for their one. Laſtly, count for every Ox ten Sheep, (for this is alſo certainly known) to be killed and ſold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gondomar*, once the *Spaniſh Lieger* here, having in ſome ſeveral Market days ſeen the ſeveral Shambles of this great City, ſaid to them who made the diſcovery with him, That there was more Fleſh eaten in a Month in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill, who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole Body, I might by this proviſion of Fleſh conſumed in the Head, gueſs at the Quantity of that which is ſpent in the Body of the Realm: But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The uſual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, ſo called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is ſaid) which, without controverſie, is a moſt wholſom and nouriſhing Beverage; and being tranſported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea, is ſo purg'd, that it is among them in higheſt eſtimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Biere d' Angleterre*. And as for the old Drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Daniſh* word *Oela*, it is queſtionleſs in it ſelf, (and without that commixture which ſome are accuſed to uſe with it) a very wholſom Drink; howſoever it pleaſed a Poet in the time of *Henry* the Third, thus to diſcant on it:

> *Neſcio quid monſtrum* Stygiæ *conforme paludi,*
> Cerviſiam *pleriq; vocant nil ſpiſſius illa*
> *Dum bibitur, nil clarius eſt dum mingitur; ergo*
> *Conſtat quod multas* fæces *in ventre relinquit.*

In *Engliſh* thus;

> Of this ſtrange Drink ſo like the *Stygian* Lake,
> Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
> Folk drink it thick, and piſs it very thin;
> Therefore much *Dregs* muſt needs remain within.

[It is worth obſerving perhaps, that Dr. *Heylin* who wrote but 40 years ſince ſaith nothing of *Cider*, which is now made in vaſt quantities, and every day encreaſing in quantity, and improving as to the goodneſs of it, and the more eaſy ways of making and refining it.]

Now to conclude this general diſcourſe concerning *England*, there goes a Tale, that *Henry* the ſeventh (whoſe Breeding had been low and private) being once preſſed by ſome of his Counſel, to purſue his Title unto *France*, returned this Anſwer: That France *indeed was a flouriſhing and gallant Kingdom; but* England *in his mind was a fine Seat for a* Country Gentleman, *as any could be found in* Europe.

Having ſtaid thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it ſelf, together with the chief commodities and pleaſures of it; and amongſt them of the *Women* alſo (as the method of the old Verſe led me on:) it is now time that we ſhould look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the moſt part gray-ey'd, pleaſant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous, and much reſembling the *Italians* in Habit and Pronunciation. In matters of War, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and reſolute to undertake the hardeſt Enterprizes: in Peace quiet, and not quarrelſom; in Advice or counſel, ſound and ſpeedy. Finally, they are active, hearty and chearful. And yet I have met with ſome Gentlemen, who upon the ſtrength of a little Travel in *France*, have grown ſo *un-Engliſhed* (and ſo affected, or beſotted rather, on the *French* Nation) that they affirm the *Engliſh* in reſpect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* People; of no diſpatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what-not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had conſulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16. Chap. of his 3^d Book *De re poetica*, giveth of the two moſt noble Nations, *Engliſh* and *Scotiſh*, this baſe and unmanly Character, *Gothi belluæ*, Scoti *non minus*; Angli *perfidi, inflati, feri, contemptores, ſtolidi, amentes, inertes, inhoſpitales, immanes.* His bolt (you ſee) is ſoon ſhot, and ſo you may happily gueſs at the quality of the

Archer. A Man indeed of an able Learning, but of his own worth ſo highly conceited, that if his too much Learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* diſgrace on a *Perſonal*, is an ignoble victory. Beſides *Socrates* reſolution in the like kind in my opinion was very judicious, εἰ δέ με ὄνος ἠλάκτισε, δίκην ἂν αὐτῷ ἐλάγχανον; If an Aſs kick us, we muſt not put him in the Court. To confute his cenſure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a trouble; it being a task, which of it ſelf would require a volume. The beſt is, many ſhoulders make the burthen light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel againſt that proud Man, as ours: for ſo maliciouſly hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *Engliſh* and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought moſt given to their Bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the ſame *Scaliger* hath thus ſhewed in one of his Epigrams.

Tres ſunt Convivæ, Germanus, Flander *&* Anglus;
Dic quis edat melius; quis meliuſve bibat.
Non commedis Germane, *bibis; tu non bibis* Angle,
Sed comedis; comedis Flandre, *bibiſq; bene.*

Dutch, Flemmings, Engliſh, are your only gueſts;
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it beſt.
Th' *Engliſh* love moſt to eat, the *Dutch* to ſwill,
Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

Thus was it in his time with the *Engliſh* Nation; though ſince, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemmings* alſo.

The Nobility of this Country is not of ſo much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marqueſſes*, being meerly titular: whereas in other places they have ſome abſolute, ſome mixt Government, ſo that upon any little diſtaſt, they will ſtand on their own guard, and ſlight the power of their *Soveraign*. And on the other ſide, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Priviledges above all other Nations; being moſt free from Taxes, and burdenſom Impoſitions, but what they take upon themſelves by their own conſent. They have twice in a year (a laudable Cuſtom no where elſe to be ſeen) Juſtice adminiſtred even at their own Doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order firſt inſtituted by King *Henry* the ſecond. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them ſavour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a ſtranger honeſtly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergie* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, againſt the temporal Revenues of the Church; in which it was ſuggeſted, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Almshouſes, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l.* *per Annum* into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot ſay. But after this, King *Henry* the Eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excreſcencies of it; demoliſhing the Monaſteries, and Religious Houſes, and paring off the ſuperfluities of Biſhopricks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongſt the Miniſters and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergy* ſo poor and naked, or deſtitute of the Encouragements and Rewards of Learning, but that they have been ſtill the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harpies* left them, being thought too much:) though for abilities of Learning (I dare boldly ſay it) not to be parallel'd in the World. For beſides 5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and beſides the *Vicarages*, moſt of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas; there was left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Queen *Elizabeth*, 26. *Biſhopricks*, (taking thoſe of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; moſt of which, places of fair Revenue. And as for the maintenance of Prieſts, Monks, and Friers, before the *Reformation* there were reckoned 90 Colledges, beſides thoſe in the Univerſities, 100 Hoſpitals, 3374 Chanteries and Free Chapels, and 645 Abbies and Monaſteries: more than half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l.* in old Rents, many above 2000, and ſome 4000 almoſt. So ſtudious were our *Anceſtors* both in thoſe times of blindneſs, and thoſe of a clearer ſight, to encourage men to Learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the *Land* or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land* are moſt apparent over the *Iriſh*, *Scots*, *Cypriots*, *Turks*, and eſpecially, *French*, whoſe Kingdom hath been ſore ſhaken by the *Engliſh* many times, eſpecially twice by King *Edward* the Third, and *Henry* the Fifth: this later making ſo abſolute a Conqueſt, that *Charles* the Seventh, like a poor *Roy d' Ividot*, confined himſelf to *Bourges*, where (having caſhier'd his Retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton, and two Chickens. And ſo redoubted even after our expulſion from *France*, (our *Civil Diſſenſions* rather cauſing that expulſion than the *Frenchmans* Valour) was the *Engliſh* Name in that *Country*: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the Eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to ſtrike a terrour into his enemies apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects in the Arms and Croſs of *England*. But as the Aſs, when he had on the Lions Skin, was for all that but an Aſs and no Lion: ſo theſe *Britons*, by the weak reſiſtance they made againſt their Enemies, ſhew'd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Engliſhmen*. *Spain* alſo taſted the valour of our Land-Soldiers, when *John* of *Gaunt* purſuing his Title to *Spain*, was ſent home with 8 Waggons laden with Gold, and an Annual Penſion of 10000 Marks; as alſo when the *Black-Prince* re-eſtabliſhed King *Peter* in his Throne. And then alſo did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puiſſance of the *Engliſh*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* ſurprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuſcoa*, 6000 *Engliſh* Foot, who lay there to joyn with this *Ferdinand* in an Expedition againſt *France*. Concerning which, *Guicciardine* giveth this *Item*, That *the Kingdom of* Navarre *was yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the* Engliſh *Forces that were at hand, than by any puiſſance of the King of* Arragon. Since thoſe times the *Spaniards* much eſteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Soldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*; *You are tall Soldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our Guards, and look for Blows; but as for thoſe baſe and cowardly* French, *when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or ſleep on our Rampart*. The like the *Netherlands* can teſtifie; only this is the grief of it; The *Engliſh* are like *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to ſay any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *Engliſh* Souldiery hath gotten by the Civil Broils among themſelves; at which my heart ſo aketh, and my hand ſo trembleth, that I ſhall only add in the words of *Lucan*,

Heu! quantum potuit cœli pelagique parari,
Hoc quem Civiles *fuderunt ſanguine dextræ!*

That is to ſay,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By their dear blood, which *Civil Wars* have drain'd!

As for their Power and Valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the Battel of *Scluſe*, wherein King *Edward* the 3*d*, with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet conſiſting of 500 Sail; of which he ſunk 200 and ſlew 30000 Soldiers. Secondly, at the Battel in 88, wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquiſhed the *invincible Armada* of the *King of Spain* conſiſting of 134 *great Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigneſs. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships took from the *Spaniard* one Million and 189200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, ſacked S. *Jago*, S. *Dominico*, and *Carthagena*; carrying away with him, beſides Treaſure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candiſh*, and the Voyage to *Cales*: as alſo how one of the Queens Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir *Richard Greenville* was Captain, with 180 Soldiers (whereof 90 were ſick on the balaſt) maintained a Sea fight for 24 hours againſt above 50 of the *Spaniſh* Galleons. And though at laſt after her Powder was ſpent to the laſt barrel, ſhe yielded upon honourable terms; yet ſhe was never brought into *Spain*: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Soldiers, and ſunk four of their greateſt Veſſels. I omit alſo the diſcovery of the Northern Paſſages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Forbiſher*; concluding with that of *Keckerman*, *Hoc certum eſt, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi induſtriâ & peritiâ ſuperiores eſſe Anglos: & poſt Anglos, Hollandos*: Though now I know not by what neglect, and diſcontinuance of thoſe honourable Employments, the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themſelves Lords of the Seas, and brobably had been ſo indeed, had not his Majeſty by the timely re-inforcing of his Naval Power, *An.* 1636, recovered again the Dominion of it. It might perhaps not ſeem unreaſonable to give here a ſhort account of the three *Dutch* Wars, which have fallen ſince the finiſhing of this Work by the Learned Dr. *Heylin*: The Firſt began by the *Hollanders* in the year 1652. And after three Fights all terminating in their loſs, ended in 1654. *April 26th*. The Second began by the *Engliſh* in 1664. and ended the *29th* of *June* 1667. The Third began by the *Engliſh* in 1672. and ended the *9th* of *February* 1673, 74. In which tho' we obtained many Signal Victories, and made our Maritim Forces terrible to the World, yet in truth it is heartily to be wiſhed, there may never be any future occaſions for ſuch Trophies, it being the Intereſt of theſe two Nations, to preſerve each other.

The *Engliſh* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch*, *French* and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to add to it's perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; ſince out of every Language we have culled the moſt ſignificant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither ſo boyſterous as the *Dutch*, nor ſo effeminate as the *French*; yet as ſignificant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one little inferiour to the *Greek*.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted as ſome ſay, by S. *Peter* and *Paul*: more probably (as others ſay) by *Joſeph* of *Arimathea*, whoſe body they find to have been interred in the Iſle of *Avalonia*, where the Abby of *Glaſtonbury* after ſtood. But that of his plantation being almoſt rooted out by long Perſecutions, and no ſupply of Preachers ſent from other places: It is now well known that all the Story of *Lucius* is a Fable. *Lucius* a King of *Britain* (and the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Europe*) *An.* 180. or thereabouts, ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome*, to be furniſhed with a new ſupply of *Paſtors*, if not to plant, yet at the leaſt to water, and confirm the *Goſpel* planted here before; but almoſt rooted out again by prevailing *Gentiliſm*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himſelf, but by the piety of his Example, and the diligence of the firſt Preachers ſent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britains*) it ſpread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in ſome tract of time over all the Iſland. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Chriſt*, was forthwith furniſhed with *Biſhops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the Provinces and principal *Cities* (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Chriſtianity* it ſelf. For not to truſt herein to the authority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, we find three *Biſhops* of this Iſle ſubſcribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz, *Eborius* Biſhop of *York*, *Reſtitutus* Biſhop of *London*, and *Adelfius* Biſhop of *Colcheſter*, there called *Colonia Londinenſium*; and ſome of them alſo preſent in the Council of *Sardica*, *An.* 358. concurring with the reſt in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Hereſies: and the ſame or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britains* were expulſed their native Country, or ſhut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Chriſtianity* and *Biſhops* along with them: *Auguſtine* the *Monk* finding no fewer than ſeven Biſhops in the *Britiſh* Church, when he was ſent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *Engliſh*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as ſome men ſuppoſe) to ſay that *Auguſtine* the Monk firſt Preached the Goſpel in *England*, becauſe it muſt be underſtood, not with Relation to the *Britains*, but the *Engliſh Saxons*; from whom theſe parts of the Iſle had the name of *England*; and from whom both the *Britains*, and the Faith it ſelf were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwal*, and Heatheniſm introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleaſed God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) ſeeing ſome handſom youths to be ſold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was anſwered they were *Angli*: and well may they be ſo called (ſaith he) for they ſeem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongſt the *Angli*; and anſwer being made of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (ſaid he) *De ira Dei ſunt liberandi*. And laſtly underſtanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (ſaid he) may he ſing *Allelujahs* to the moſt High God; After which time he ſeriouſly endeavoured the Converſion of the *Engliſh* Nation; who, being Pope, he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. And ſo well did the work proſper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Goſpel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Haſſians*, *Franconians* and *Turingians*, being converted by *Winfred*; the *Friſons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the firſt Biſhop of *Utretcht*; the *Saxons* of *Weſtphalen*, by *Weldrode*, the firſt Biſhop of *Breme*; all of them being *Engliſh Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and ſome others.

Now as theſe parts of *Britain* were the firſt which generally entertained the Goſpel, ſo were they the firſt alſo in theſe latter times, which univerſally ſubmitted to the Reformation of ſuch corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*: Endeavoured firſt in *France*, by the *Albigenſes*, and *Waldenſes*, as was ſaid before: Who being ſuppreſſed and ruinated by the Sword of the King of *France*, ſheltered themſelves in the mountainous parts of *Gaſcoigne* and *Guienne*, then in poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publickly by *Wiclef*, and ſpreading under-hand amongſt the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther*, and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in moſt other Countries received tumultuouſly, by the power of the people, was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and conſent of the Prince and Prelates; the *Architects* in this great Work, without reſpect unto the Dictates of *Luther* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Words and the Primitive Patterns, aboliſhing ſuch things as were repugnant unto either, but ſtill retaining ſuch *Ceremonies* in Gods publick Worſhip, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did obſerve a greater meaſure of Chriſtian prudence and moderation, than their Neighbour Churches; which in a meer deteſtation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in uſe amongſt them, becauſe defiled with *Popiſh* Errors and abuſes; and thereby utterly averting thoſe of the *Papal* party from joining with them in the Work, or coming over to them when the Work was done: Whereas had they continued an allowable correſpondency in theſe extrinſecals of Religion, with the Church of *Rome*, their party in the World had been far greater, and not ſo much ſtomached as it is. And ſo it was conceived by the Marqueſs *de Rhoſne*, after Duke of *Sully*, and Lord High-Treaſurer of *France*, and one of the chief Men of that Party there: when being ſent Ambaſſadour to King *James*, from King *Henry* the fourth, he had obſerved the Majeſty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in ſome *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom; Religion would be ſoon defeated and trod under foot if not preſerved and fenced about with the Hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church ſince the laſt *Converſion*, as by the piety and example of *Lucius*, there were founded three *Archbiſhopricks*, and 25 *Biſhopricks*, according to the number of the *Archi-Flamines*, and *Flamines* (whoſe great Revenues were converted to more ſacred uſes in the times of *Idolatry*:) So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whoſe means this laſt Converſion happened, *Archbiſhopricks*, and *Biſhopricks* were deſigned to convenient places; the number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, beſides the two *Archbiſhops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happineſs to have his deſires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till theſe later days, nor with ſuch equal diſtribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *York* laid waſte and deſolate by the *Danes*, and not ſo ſoon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan Biſhops came not up to his purpoſe, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: eſpecially when K. *Henry* the 8th had incorporated *Wales* with *England*, and founded five Epiſcopal Sees out of the Ruines and Revenues of ſome principal Monaſteries; of which none but the Biſhoprick of *Gheſter* (and that of the Iſle of *Man*, which maketh up the *27th*) were laid unto the Province of *York*. And ſo it ſtood, notwithſtanding the alterations of *Religion*, without any diſpute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbytery*, and recommended it to the uſe of all *Chriſtian* Churches (the Hiſtory whereof we had ſuccinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in moſt places to decry this Order, though conſonant to the Word of God and moſt pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not ſo much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamors of their Diſciples, which cauſed the *Epiſcopal* Order to grow out of credit; as the *Avarice* of ſome great perſons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Poſſeſſions. It had been elſe a miracle that *Calvins* Platform made only for the uſe of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the firſt, to the ſtate of other Churches, eſpecially where the Biſhops had been inſtrumental in the Reformation: ſhould be ſo headily received in ſome Kingdoms, and ſo importunately and clamarouſly deſired in others.

The moſt valorous Soldiers of this Country, when poſſeſſed by the *Britains*; were 1. *Caſſibelane*, who twice repulſed the *Roman* Legions, though conducted by *Cæſar*; and had not a Party here at home been formed againſt him, he had for ever done the like. 2. *Pratuſagus*, King of the *Iceni*. 3. *Conſtantine* the Great. 4. *Arthur*, one of the Worlds *Nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*. 5. *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. 6. King *Edmund Ironſide*; and 7. *Canutus* the *Dane*. Under the *Normans*, of moſt note have been 1. *William* ſurnamed the Conqueror. 2. *Richard*, and 3. *Edward*, both the firſt of thoſe names, ſo renowned in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, 4. *Edward* the 3*d*, and 5. *Edward* the Black Prince, his Son, *duo fulmina belli*, as famous in the Wars of *France*: 6. *Henry* the 5*th* and 7. *John* Duke of *Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8. *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9. Sir *John Falſtaf*, and 10. Sir *John Hawkwood*, of great eſteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to deſcend to later times. And for Sea Captains, thoſe of moſt note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinſon*, *Drake*, *Forbiſher*, *Cavendiſh* and *Greenvile*, of ſome of which we have ſpoke already, and of the reſt we may have an opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter.

Scholars of moſt renown amongſt us, 1. *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the Univerſity of *Paris*. 2. *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which, the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knaviſhly conducted him to preach to an heap of ſtones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very ſtones concluded, ſaying, *Amen, Amen, Venerabilis Beda*. But other of the Monkiſh Writers do aſſign this reaſon, and both true alike; that at his death ſome unlearned Prieſts intending to honour him with an Epitaph, had thus far blundered on a verſe, viz. *Hic ſunt in foſſa* Bedæ *oſſa*: but becauſe the Verſe was yet imperfect, he went to bed to conſider of it, leaving a ſpace betwixt the two laſt words thereof; which in the morning he found filled up in a ſtrange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and ſo he made his Verſe, and *Beda* (pardon this diverſion) obtained that Attribute. 3. *Anſelm*, and 4. *Bradwardin*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*, Men famous for the times they lived in. 5. *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6. *Thomas* of *Walden*, the profeſſed Enemy of *Wiclife*, againſt whom he writ, 7. *John Wiclife* Parſon of *Lutterworth* in the Country of *Leiceſter*, who ſo valiantly oppoſed the Power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*, though he vented many of his own. Then ſince the time of the *Reformation*, 1. *John Jewel* Biſhop of *Salisbury*, to whoſe Learned and Induſtrious Labours, in defence of the *Religion* here by *Law* eſtabliſhed, we are ſtill beholden. 2. Dr. *John Raynolds*, and 3. Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Chriſti* Colledge in *Oxon*; the firſt, a man of infinite reading, the ſecond of as ſtrong a judgment. 4. Dr. *Whitaker* of *Cambridge*, the *Antagoniſt* of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5. Dr. *Thomas Bilſon*, and 6. Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Biſhops of *Wincheſter*, the Ornaments of their ſeveral times. 7. Biſhop *Montague* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8. Dr. *John Whitgift*, and 9. Dr. *William Laud*, Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. Of which laſt, and his diſcourſe againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuite*, Sir *Edward Dearing* his profeſſed Enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had *muzled the* Jeſuits, *and ſhould ſtrike the* Papiſts *under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, whereſoever his grave ſhould be,* PAULS (whoſe reparation he endeavoured, and had almoſt finiſhed) *would be his perpetual Monument, and his Book his laſting Epitaph.* And as for thoſe who have ſtood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, thoſe of moſt note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagoniſt of Biſhop *Jewel*. 2. *Nic. Sanders*, and 3. Dr. *Thomas Stapleton*, to whoſe Writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmine* doth ſtand much indebted. 4. *Campian*, and 5. *Parſons*, both *Jeſuits*; and 6. *William Raynolds*, a *Seminary* Prieſt; and the Brother of Dr. *John Raynolds* ſpoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very obſervable, That *William* was at firſt a *Proteſtant* of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in *Popery* beyond the Seas; *William* out of an honeſt zeal to reduce his Brother to his Church, made a journey to him; where in a Conference betwixt them it ſo fell out, that *John* being overcome by his Brothers Arguments, returned into *England*, where he became one of the more ſtrict or rigid ſort of the *Engliſh* Proteſtants, and *William* being convinced by the Reaſons of his Brother *John*, ſtayed beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papiſt*. Of which ſtrange accident, Dr. *Alabaſter*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongſt many notable

Whimſeys; had ſome fine Abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the Excellency thereof and the Rareneſs of the Argument, I ſhall here ſubjoyn,

Bella inter geminos pluſquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ *Fidei pro partibus inſtat ;*
Iſte Reformandum *denegat eſſe fidem.*
Propoſitis cauſæ rationibus, alter utrinque ;
Concurrêre pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem *capit alter uterque ;*
Quod fuit in fatis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini ſine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi transfuga caſtra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugna eſt, ubi victus gaudet uterque ;
Et tamen alter-uter ſe ſuperaſſe dolet ?

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great diſadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus tranſlated:

In points of Faith ſome undetermin'd Jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil Wars.
One for the Churches *Reformation* ſtood ;
The other thought no *Reformation* good.
The points propos'd, they traverſed the Field
With equal Skill, and both together yield.
As they deſir'd, his Brother each ſubdues ;
Yet ſuch their Fate, that each his Faith did loſe,
Both Captives, none the Priſoners thence do guide ;
The *Victor* flying to the Vanquiſht ſide.
Both joyn'd in being Conquer'd, (ſtrange to ſay)
And yet both mourn'd becauſe both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1. *Lindwood* the Canoniſt, 2. *Coſins*, and 3. *Cowel*, eminent in the Studies of the *Civil Laws*, 4. *Bracton*, and 5. *Briton* of old times ; 6. *Dier*, and 7. *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of *England*. 8. *Johannes de Sacro Boſco*, the Author of the Book of the *Sphere*; and 9. *Roger Bacon*, a noted *Mathematician* in the darker times. 10. Sir *Francis Bacon* the Learned Viſcount of S. *Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11. Sir *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellour, one of the Reſtorers of Learning to the Iſle of *Great Britain*. 12. Sir *Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chryſoſtom*. 13. Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right Learned Antiquary, and a Religious Aſſertor of he Churches Rights. 14. *Camden* , *Clarenceaux* , the *Pauſanias* of the *Britiſh* Iſlands. 15. *Matthew Paris*, 16. *Roger Hoveden*, 17. *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18. *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19. *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, and 20 *Thomas* of *Walſingham* ; all known Hiſtorians. And finally for Poetry, 1. *Gower*, 2. *Lydgate*, a Monk of *Bury* ; 3. The Famous *Geofrey Chaucer*, Brother-in-Law to *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaſter* ; of which laſt Sir *Philip Sidney* uſed to ſay, that *he marvelled how in thoſe miſty times he could ſee ſo clearly, and others in ſo clear times go ſo blindly after him*. 4. Sir *Philip Sidney* himſelf, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5. The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Fairy Queen*, in another place. 6. *Sam, Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7. with *Michael Drayton*, the *Ovid* of the *Engliſh* Nation. 8. *Beaumont*, and 9. *Fletcher*, not inferiour unto *Terence* and *Plautus*, with 10. my friend *Ben. Johnſon*, equal to any of the Ancients for the exactneſs of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the *Dramatick* Poems, never before obſerved on the *Engliſh* Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as thoſe here ſpecified, of whom, as being ſtill alive, I forbear to ſpeak ; according to that caution of the Hiſtorian, ſaying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita* Cenſura *eſt difficilis*.

But from the Men to return again unto the Country, we find it to be ſubject (according to the ſeveral reſpects of Church and State) to a treble diviſion ; *viz.* 1. into 6. *Circuits* deſtinated to the *Itinerary Judges* : Secondly, into 22 *Epiſcopal Dioceſſes*. Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was firſt divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the Second, who appointed twice in the year, two of the moſt Grave and Learned Judges of the Land, ſhould in each *Circuit* adminiſter Juſtice in the chief or head Towns of every County. Of theſe Judges, one ſitteth on matters *Criminal*, concerning the Life and Death of Malefactors : the other in Actions *Perſonal*, concerning Title of Land, Debts, or the like, between Party and Party. The firſt *Circuit* (for we will begin at the Weſt) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerſet*, *Devon*, *Cornwal*, *Dorſet*, and *Southampton*. The ſecond containeth the Counties of *Oxford* , *Berks* , *Glouceſter* , *Monmouth* , *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*. The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Suſſex* , *Kent*, *Eſſex*, and *Hartford*. The fourth conſiſteth of the Shires of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*. The fifth of the Shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leiceſter*, and *Warwick*. And the ſixth and laſt, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmorland*, and *Lancaſter*. So that in theſe ſix *Circuits* are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middleſex*, and *Cheſhire* : whereof the firſt is exempted, becauſe of its vicinity to *London* ; and the ſecond as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Judges and Counſellours to it ſelf.

The ſecond Diviſion, but more ancient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceſſes*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Epiſcopal Sees*, each Dioceſs having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for diſpatch of *Eccleſiaſtical* buſineſs ; and every *Arch-Deaconry* ſubdivided into *Rural Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigneſs and extent thereof. Of theſe there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to ſay, the Dioceſſes of *York*, *Cheſter*, *Durham*, and *Carliſle* : the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In reſpect of which great Authority and Juriſdiction, the Archbiſhops of *Canterbury* had anciently the Titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England* ; and for ſome Ages before the Reformation, uſed to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right Foot. Which Cuſtom took beginning at the Council of *Lateran*, when *Urban* the ſecond called *Anſelm*, the Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury* from amongſt the other Prelates then aſſembled, and placed him at his right Foot, ſaying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe noſtro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam*. This happened *An.* 1099. They were anciently alſo *Legati nati* ; which honourable Title was firſt given to Archbiſhop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the Second, and continued unto his Succeſſors. And both to honour their calling in the courſe of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Counſel, being men of Learning ; both the Archbiſhops and the Biſhops, were anciently priviledged to have their place and ſuffrage in the Court of Parliament (ever ſince any Parliaments were firſt held in *England*) as Peers of the Realm ; and that too in a double reſpect : firſt in relation had to their ſacred Office, and ſecondly to thoſe temporal Eſtates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greateſt Power and Flouriſhing, all the Prerogatives and Priviledges of the temporal Barons : as neither being tried by their *Peers* in Criminal Cauſes, but left to an Ordinary *Jury* ; not ſuffered in Examination to make a Proteſtation upon their honour, to the truth of the Fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their *Eccleſiaſtical* Courts, it was anciently ordered alſo, that beſides ſuch as appertained to the Archbiſhops themſelves ; beſides thoſe holden by the *Chancellors* and *Arch-Deacon* of every Biſhop, in their ſeveral Dioceſſes ; and ſome in many private Pariſhes which they call *Peculiars* : and finally, beſides the Courts of *Viſitation*, held every two years by the Arch-Deacons or their Official, and every third year by the Biſhop himſelf in Perſon, or his lawful Deputy : there ſhould be alſo *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, aſſembled pri-

marily

ily for the Reforming of the Church in Doctrine
Diſcipline: And ſecondarily, for granting Tenths
Subſidies to the King: Which Synods, whether they
Jational or Provincial only, do naturally conſiſt of all
Right Reverend Fathers, the Arch-biſhops, Biſhops,
Deans, Arch-Deacons, and one Prebend out of each
hedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for
y Dioceſs) elected by the reſt to ſerve for them in
great Aſſembly; the Clergy not being bound anci-
y by any Act, to which they had not given conſent
hoſe their *Proxies:* Of which ſo called and met toge-
, the Biſhops ſitting by themſelves make the Upper-
ſe; the Deans, Arch-deacons, and reſt, do conſti-
the Lower-Houſe of Convocation.

he third and laſt Diviſion, though the ſecond in courſe
ime, is that of Shires made by King *Alfride*, both for
eaſier Adminiſtration of Juſtice; and to prevent ſuch
rages and Robberies, as (after the Example of the
es) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all
es to commit. For over every one of theſe Shires or
nties, he appointed an *High Sheriff* and divers Offi-
, to ſee into the Behaviour of private Men, and to pu-
ſuch as were *delinquent:* And in times of War either
dy begun, or intended, he inſtituted a *Præfect* or
tenant; to whom he gave authority to ſee their
ſters, their proviſion of Arms, and if occaſion ſerved,
uniſh ſuch as rebelled or mutined. This wiſe King
ined alſo, that his Subjects ſhould be divided into
or *Tithings*, every of which ſeverally ſhould give Bond
he good appearing of each other; and he who was
at diſſolute Behaviour, that he could not be admitted
eſe *Tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the Houſe of
rection. By this courſe every Man was not only
ful of his own Actions, but had an Eye to all the
e for whom he ſtood bound; as the Nine had over
: inſomuch that a poor Girl might travel ſafely with
g of Gold in her Hand, and none durſt meddle with
The ancienteſt of theſe Ten Men were called
ἐξοχὴν, the *Tithing-Men*, Ten of the nigheſt and
hbouring *Tithings*, made the leſſer Diviſion, which we
Hundreds; which Name cannot be derived from
like number of Villages, for none of our *Hundreds* are
rge; and one of them there is in *Berkſhire* which
aineth five *Hamlets* only. We have then a diviſion
he Realm into Forty Shires; of the Shires into divers
dreds, and of the Hundreds into Ten Tithings. And
diviſion made by *Alfride* remains ſtill in force; as
doth the High-Sheriff, and the reſt of the ſubordi-
Officers of the High-Sheriff, conſiſting eſpecially at
time in executing Arreſts, aſſiſting the *Itinerary*
ges, gathering the King's Fines and Amerciaments,
raiſing the *Poſſe Comitatus*, if occaſion be. But for
Civil part of Government in the ſeveral Counties, it
oſt in the hands of ſuch as we call *Juſtices of the Peace*,
orized by Commiſſion under the Great Seal of
land; appointed firſt by that prudent Prince King
ard the Firſt, by the Name of *Cuſtodes Pacis*, Guar-
s of the Peace, and firſt called *Juſtices of the Peace* in
36. of King *Edward* III. *Cap.* 11. A form of Govern-
t ſo much conducing to the propriety of the Coun-
and the ſecurity of the People, that King *James* the
, Monarch of *Great Britain*, eſtabliſhed it by Law in
Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts which
ſtill kept in every Shire, they are either the *County*
, holden every Month, wherein the Sheriff or his
cient Deputy commonly preſideth; or the Aſſizes
Court of Goal delivery, held twice a Year by the
ges Itinerant, aſſiſted by the *Juſtices of the Peace* and o-
in Commiſſion with them. There are alſo two
ces in every Hundred choſen out of the Yeomanry,
m we call the *Conſtable of the Hundred*; who receiving
Precepts or Warrants of the Sheriff, or Juſtices, diſ-
heth them to the Tithing-Man or Petit Conſtable of
Town and Village, in their ſeveral Diviſions. And
ch Hundred, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by
the Steward of the Hundred, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or Actions under the value of Forty Shillings, though in ſome few of theſe Courts alſo (as in that of *Slaughter-Hundred* in *Gloceſterſhire*) the value of the Action, by ſome ſpecial Charter, be left unlimited. The like Court alſo holden in ſome ancient Burroughs. And beſides theſe, in every Village, are two ſeveral Courts, and theſe two holden twice a Year, if occaſion be, by the Steward of the Mannor; in the one of which, called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquiry made into Treaſons, Felonies, Murders, and other Caſes, falling between the King and the Subject; and in the other, which we call by the Name of *Court-Baron*, ſuch only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and theſe laſt for the moſt part ſummoned at the Will of the Lord: So that *Comines* had (we ſee) good reaſon for this Affirmation, that *of all the Signiories in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of* England *was the Country in which the Common-wealth was beſt governed.*

To return again unto the Shires, ſome of them take their Names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* from the *Cymbri* or ancient *Britains*, *Eſſex* and *Suſſex* from the Eaſt and South *Saxons*; ſome from the ſituation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Southfolk*, *Devonſhire*; this laſt ſo called from *Devinam*, a *Welch* or *Britiſh* word, ſignifying Low Vallies, of which it very much conſiſteth: Some from the Form or Figure of them, as *Cornwal* from the reſemblance which it hath to an Horn; and *Kent*, (in *Latin*, *Cantium*) becauſe it lieth in a Canton or Corner of the Iſland: Some from ſome Accidents therein, as *Berkſhire*, or *Berockſhire*, from the abunduance of *Box*, which the *Saxons* call by the Name of *Beroc:* the moſt part from the principal Town of all the County, as *Gloceſter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of theſe Shires the biggeſt, beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 Men may be raiſed for preſent Service, if need ſo require. And in them all are comprehended 8709 Pariſhes, beſides thoſe of *Wales*, not reckoning in ſuch Chappels as we call *Chappels of Eaſe*, in greatneſs not inferior to many Pariſhes; 22 Cities, 585 Market Towns which are no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 144 Caſtles, or ruines of Caſtles; few of them places of Importance, and ſuch as are belonging generally to the Kings, who ſuffer not any of their Subjects to neſt themſelves in Strong Holds and Caſtles.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *London*, ſeated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoined together by a ſtately and magnificent Bridge, ſpoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greateſt Ships. by means whereof it hath been reckon'd a long time for one of the moſt famous Mart-Towns in Chriſtendom; and not long ſince had ſo much got precedency of all the reſt, that the greateſt part of the Wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A City of great Note in the time of the *Roman* Conqueſt; to whom it was firſt known by the Name of *Londinum:* a Town at that time of great Trade and Riches; and by them honour'd with the Title of *Auguſta*. Increaſed of late very much in Buildings: contiguous to ſome Towns and Villages, from which in former times disjoined by ſome diſtant intervals: So that the circuit may contain 8 Miles at leaſt; in which ſpace are 132 Pariſh Churches; the Palace of the King, the Houſes of the Nobility, Colleges for the Study of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 600000 People; which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus; *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more ancient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that *London* is the more populous, ſo neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we meaſure them by the Walls; for taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that paſſeth in account by the Name of

London, I cannot but conceive, that if *London* were caſt into the ſame orbicular Figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of Building, *Paris* indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled alſo in ſome tract of time, if the Deſign begun in King *James* his Reign, tending to the advancement of ſuch *Uniformity*, be not interrupted. (Whatever that was, the Fire in 1666 has effected in a ſhort time, what could not otherwiſe have been brought about in many Ages; ſo that *London* is now one of the moſt beautiful and uniform Cities in the World, and perhaps near one third part greater than it was in the Year 1648.) For other things, certain it is that *London* is the ancienter City, as being an Archbiſhop's See in the time of the *Britain*, when the Name of *Paris* was ſcarce heard of; a Biſhop's See at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*: increaſed ſo much in Wealth and Hononr from one Age to another, that it is grown at laſt too big for the Kingdom; which, whether it may be profitable for the State or not, may be made a Queſtion. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Milt* in the Body natural, the monſtrous growth of which impoveriſheth all the reſt of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* Spirits, which ſhould give nouriſhment unto them: And in the end cracked pr ſurcharged by its own fulneſs, not only ſends unwholſome Fumes and Vapours unto the Head, and heavy Pangs unto the Heart, but draws a *Conſumption* on it ſelf. And certainly the overgrowth of great Cities is of dangerous conſequence, not only in regard of Famine, ſuch multitudes of Mouths not being eaſily to be fed, but in reſpect of the irreparable danger of *Inſurrections*, if once thoſe Multitudes, ſenſible of their own Strength, oppreſſed with Want, or otherwiſe diſtempered with Faction or Diſcontent, ſhould gather to an Head, and break out into Action. Yet thus much may be ſaid to the Honour of *London*, though grown by much too big now for the Kingdom, that it is generally ſo well governed, and in ſo good peace, that thoſe Murders, Robberies, and Outrages ſo frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here ſeldom heard of. 2. *York*, in the Weſt Riding of that Country, the ſecond City of *England*, as the old Verſe hath it.

Londinum *caput eſt & Regni urbs prima Britanni,*
Eboracum *à prima jure ſecunda venit.*

That is to ſay,

In *England*, *London* is the chiefeſt Town;
The ſecond place *York* claimeth as its own.

And ſo it may, being indeed the ſecond City of the Kingdom, both for Fame and Greatneſs. A pleaſant, large, and ſtately City, well fortified and beautifully adorn'd, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich and populous withal. Seated upon the River *Ouſe* or *Eure*, which divides it in twain; both parts being joined together with a fair Stone Bridge, conſiſting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great eſtimation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Province or Dioceſs of *Britain*; remarkable for the Death and Burial of the Emperor *Severus*, and the Birth of *Conſtantine the Great*; by conſequence the Seat of the Primate of the *Britiſh* Church, as long as Chriſtianity did remain amongſt them. Nor ſtooped it lower when the *Saxons* had receiv'd the Faith: And notwithſtanding thoſe Mutations which befel this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it ſtill preſerved its ancient luſtre, and increaſed it too. Adorned with a ſtately and magnificent Cathedral, inferior to few in *Europe*; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Mannor-Houſe) the Dwelling, in theſe later Days, of the Lord Preſident of the Court or Council here eſtabliſhed by King *Henry* the Eighth, for the benefit of the Northern Subjects, after the manner of a *French Parliament* or *Preſidial Siege*. This Court is now taken away, having been ſuppreſs'd firſt in the great Rebellion. 3. *Briſtol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *England*, ſituate on the meeting of the *Frome* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the Ocean: in that regard commodiouſly ſeated for Trade and Traffick; the Ships with full Sail coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full Purſes trading into moſt parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sewers* made under Ground, for the conveyance of all filth and naſtineſs, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of eighteen or twenty, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of *Radcliff*. The Cathedral firſt built by *Robert Fitz-Harding*, Son to a King of *Denmark*, once a Burgher here, and by him ſtored with Canons Regular, *An.* 1248. but made a Biſhop's See by King *Henry* the Eighth, *An.* 1542. The principal Building next the Church, is an ancient Caſtle, a piece of ſuch ſtrength, that *Maud* the Empreſs having took King *Stephen* Priſoner, thought it the ſafeſt place to ſecure him in. 4. *Norwich*, the fourth City of the firſt Rank, of which more hereafter. 5. *Oxford*, the firſt of the ſecond Rank of *Engliſh* Cities, ſeated upon the *Ouſe*, or *Iſis*; but whether ſo called as *Vadum Iſidos*, *Ouſeford*, or the *Ford of Ouſe*; or *Vada-boum* (as the *Greeks* had their *Boſphore* in former times) I determine not. An ancient Town, and anciently made a Seat of Learning, co-eval unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the Univerſity hereof being reſtored, rather than firſt founded by King *Alured*, *An.* 806. after it had been over-born a while by the *Daniſh* Furies; but hereof as an Univerſity more anon. This only now, that for the ſtatelineſs of the Schools, and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colleges, all built of fair and poliſhed Stone, the liberal Endowment of thoſe Houſes, and notable encouragements of Induſtry and Learning in the Salary of the Profeſſors in moſt Arts and Sciences, it is not to be parallel'd in the Chriſtian World. The City of it ſelf well built, and as pleaſantly ſeated, formed in the Figure of a Croſs, two long Streets thwarting one another, each of them near a Mile in length; containing in that compaſs, 13 Pariſh-Churches, and a See Epiſcopal founded here by K. *Henry* the Eighth, *An.* 1541. The honourable Title of twenty of the noble Family of the *Veres*, now Earl of *Oxon*. 6. *Saliſbury*, firſt ſeated on the Hill, where now ſtands *Old Saliſbury*, the *Sorbiodunum* of the Ancients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very ſuddenly into great Renown; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Avon*, (a Name common to many *Engliſh* Rivers) which watereth every Street thereof; and for the populouſneſs of the place, plenty of Proviſions, numbers of Churches, a ſpacious Market-place, and a fair Town-Hall, eſteemed the ſecond City of all the Weſt. 7. *Glouceſter*, by *Antonine* called *Glevum*, by the *Britains Cair Glowy*, whence the prepreſent Name; the *Saxons* adding *Ceſter*, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the Banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and Trade of the place; well built, conſiſting of fair large Streets, beautified with a fair Cathedral; for the magnificence of the Quire, elegancy of the Cloiſters, and graciouſneſs of the Bell-Tower there ſcarce to be fellowed in the Kingdom; and ſituate in ſuch a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the uſe of Man except only Wine, which Life or Luxury may require. 8. *Cheſter* upon the River *Dee*, built in the manner of a Quadrate, incloſed with a Wall, which takes up more than two Miles in compaſs; containing in that compaſs 12 Pariſh-Churches, and an old Cathedral dedicated anciently to S. *Wereburg*, Daughter of *Wolfere*, King of the *Mercians*, and the Viſitreſs of all the Monaſtries of *England*. But made a Biſhop's See by King *Henry* VIII. The Buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every Door under which a Man may walk dry from one end to the other. The reſt of chief Note ſhall be ſpecified on another occaſion, with this advertiſement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with thoſe of *France* and *Italy*: Firſt becauſe the Nobles and Gentry of thoſe Countries live for the moſt part in the Cities, ours in the Country-Villages; and ſecondly, becauſe the *Londoners* ſo ingroſs all Trading, that they drew thither all the Wealth and Treaſure of the Kingdom. By means whereof that every Day increaſeth in Wealth and Beauty; the reſt (except *Briſtol* only) do decay as ſenſibly; that City being like the *Spleen* in the Body Natural, the monſtrous growth whereof ſtarveth all the reſt of the Members. *Liene excreſcente, reliquum corpus contabeſcit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in *England* but two *Univerſities*, which may equal ſix, nay ten of all other Countries (ſo that *Paris* be not in the number) moſt of them being no better than our Colleges of *Weſtminſter*, *Eaton*, or *Wincheſter*; and none ſo liberally endowed as ſome one of thoſe in the Univerſities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, ſome of them called only by the Name of *Halls*, but theſe endow'd with Lands and Fellowſhips as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colleges endow'd with Lands, beſides ſix Halls, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them Profeſſors of the Arts and Sciences, as alſo of Divinity, Law, Phyſick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries, and in each to the number of 3000 Students, ſo regular in their Lives and Converſation as are not to be found in the World beſides. The fairer and more ancient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honour'd with the Title of *Generale ſtudium*. For that the Univerſity of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her Siſter of *Oxford*, ſhe may take place of all the Univerſities in the World beſides) is not of ſo long ſtanding as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the teſtimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Maſter *Camden*, viz. *Regnante* Edwardo *primo*, (it ſhould rather be read *ſecundo*) *de ſtudio* Grantbridge *facta eſt Academia, ſicut Oxonium*: where the word *ſicut* doth not import an identity of the time, but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the Pattern. We ſee this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* XXI. the contemporary of our *Edward* the Second, as I find in the Work of that great ſearcher of *Academical* Antiquities Mr. *Brian Twine*, *Apoſtolica Authoritate ſtatuimus* (ſaith the Bull) *quod Collegium Magiſtrorum & Scholarium ejuſdem ſtudii* (ſpeaking of *Cambridge*) *Univerſitas ſit cenſenda*, &c. But what need more than the Reſolution of the *Commons* of the firſt Parliament holden under K. *James*? For when the Clerk of that Houſe had put the Name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking diſdainfully that *Hyſteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Univerſities to be ſearched, and after ſearch made, gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the Univerſity of *Cambridge*, as it was much of later Foundation, ſo was it long before it grew into eſteem; inſomuch, that when *William* of *Wainfleet*, Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, and Founder of *Magdalen* College in *Oxon*, (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perſuaded King *Henry* the Sixth to erect a College in *Oxford*, as ſome of the Kings his Predeceſſors had done before him: *Imo potius* Cantabrigiæ, (reply'd the King) *ut duas ſi fieri poſſit in Anglia Academias habeam*. No, ſaith the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that ſo, if poſſible, I may have two Univerſities in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Story of this Country, that it was firſt peopled out of *Gall*, is affirm'd by *Cæſar*, and prov'd by many ſtrong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Cuſtoms, and the nearneſs of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are ſaid to have reign'd here ſucceſſively before the coming of the *Romans*, certain it is, that *Cæſar* found the Country canton'd into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the People to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was lock'd up in the Breaſts of the *Druides*, who committed nothing unto Writing, and by that means kept the People in continual Ignorance, communicating what they knew to none but thoſe of their own Order, and therein being ſought to by the *Druides* or *Prieſts* of *Gaul*; who came over into this Iſland to them, and did from them receive the knowledg of their ſacred Myſteries. Being conquer'd or diſcover'd rather by *Julius Cæſar*, it was not ſo much as looked after by the two next Emperors. *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wiſdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean; *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durſt not follow it: But *Claudius*, his Succeſſor, undertook the Enterprize, ſollicited thereunto by *Bericus* a noble *Briton*, who for Sedition, and ſome practices againſt the Publick, was expell'd the Country. Hereupon *Aulus Plantius* is ſent over with ſome *Roman* Forces, by whom and P. *Oſtorius Scapula*, his Succeſſor, *Condigunus* and *Caracticus*, two Kings of the *Britains*, were ſeverally overcome in Battel, a *Roman* Colony planted at *Camalodunum*, (now *Maldon* in *Eſſex*) and the Southern parts thereof reduc'd to the form of a *Province*. After this time, by little and little, the whole was conquer'd, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarton* and *Edenburgh*. *Agricola*, in the time of *Domitian*, having the happineſs and good fortune to go beyond the furtheſt of his Predeceſſors; and ſo much moderation not to venture farther, where there was nothing to be got but Blows, Cold, and Hunger.

At the firſt entrance of the *Romans*, the Iſland was divided into ſeveral Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their Ends and Counſels, and ſo more eaſily ſubdu'd by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needleſs to make mention of inferior *Clans*) where P. the *Danmonii*, containing *Devonſhire* and *Cornwal*, whoſe chief Cities were *Iſea*, now *Exeter* and *Volca*, near the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*. 2. The *Durotiges*, inhabiting only in the Country of *Dorſet*; whoſe chief City was *Durnium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorcheſter*. 3. The *Belgæ*, planted in the County of *Somerſet*, *Southampton*, and *Wilts*, whoſe chief Cities were *Aquæ Calidæ*, now *Bath*: *Venta Belgarum*, now *Wincheſter*; and *Sorbiodunum* the ſeat of *Old Saliſbury*. 4. The *Attrebatii*, confined within *Berkſhire* only, the chief City of whom was *Guallena*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5. The *Regni*, poſſeſſed of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, whoſe chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelſey*; and *Neomagus*, ſituate ſome ten Miles from *London*. 6. The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentiſh*, having *Durovernum*, now *Canterbury*; *Dubris*, now *Dover*; and *Rhutupiæ*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7. The *Trinobantes* of *Middleſex*, and *Eſſex*, where *London*, called afterwards *Auguſta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum*, the firſt *Roman* Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat-Royal of *Cunobelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes*, in the time of the *Romans*. 8. The *Catieuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hartford*, whoſe Towns of moſt importance were *Magivintum*, now called *Dunſtable*; and *Verulamium*, (near S. *Albans*) the ſtrongeſt Hold the *Britains* had in their Wars with *Cæſar*. 9. The *Iceni*; living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Fauſtini*, now S. *Edmundsbury*; *Sito-Magus*, now *Thetford*; *Durolis*, now *Godmancheſter*; and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10. *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Derby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*; *Rhage*, where now is *Leiceſter*, *Guaſendæ*, not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Caſterton*; *Ageculus*, now *Littleborough*, a ſmall Village near *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Tripontum*, now *Torceſter*, not far from *Northampton*. 11. The *Brigantes*, the greateſt Nation of the Iſland, filling all *Yorkſhire*, the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*, in a word, all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the (12) *Otta-*

dini, whoſe chief Town was *Bremenniam*, thought now to be *Ribcheſter* in *Riddeſdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation, were *Iſaurium*, now *Aldborow* in the North Riding; *Eboracum* or *York*, in the Weſt Riding; and *Petuaria*, thought to be *Beverly* in the Eaſt Riding of *Yorkſhire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Bincheſter*, in the Biſhoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Pap-Caſtle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wheallop-Caſtle* in *Weſtmerland*; and *Rhigodunum*, now *Rible-Cheſter* in the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*. 13. The *Cornavii*, ſeated in the Counties of *Cheſter*, *Salop*, *Worceſter*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whoſe Principal Towns were, *Deuvania*, or *Legio viceſima Victrix*, now *Weſt-Cheſter*: *Urconium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble Village: *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*: *Brannogenium*, now *Worceſter*: *Manduesſedum*, now *Mancheſter*, on the River *Ankor*. 14. And laſt of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford* and *Gloceſter-ſhires*; Principal Places of the which were *Dorcinia*, now *Dorcheſter*, ſeven Miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrenceſter*, near the Head of the *Thames*. Such Names as are comprehended under the Name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, ſhall be remembred when we come to ſpeak of thoſe Countries.

Theſe, and the reſt of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed) being once ſubdu'd, *Britain* became a Member of the *Roman* Empire; yet ſo that many of the *Tribes* had their own Kings, and were ſuffer'd to govern by their own Law: it being a known Cuſtom amongſt the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *Habere ſervitutis inſtrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings ſometimes in the conquer'd Countries, making them inſtrumental to the Peoples Bondage. And it is ſaid of *Lucius Verus*, the *Roman* Emperor, that having put an end to the *Parthian* War, *Regna Regibus*, *Provincias* Comitibus *ſuis regendas dediſſe*: He gave thoſe Kingdoms he had conquer'd to be rul'd by Kings; the Provinces to be govern'd by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Pratuſagus*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*: *Lucius* before-mentioned, the firſt Chriſtian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Conſtantine the Great*. But as afterward in the *Heptarchy* of the *Saxons*, that King who overrul'd the reſt, and was of moſt Power and Eſtimation, was called the Monarch of the *Engliſh*: ſo probable enough it is, that amongſt the *Britiſh* Kings, who was in moſt credit with the *Romans*, or of moſt Power amongſt his Neighbours, might be permitted to aſſume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Caſſibelane* to *Conſtantine*, I have here ſubjoined, according to the tenor of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory.

The Kings of Britain *after the coming in of the* Romans.

A. Ch.

1. *Caſſibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britains* in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*.
2. *Theomantius*.
3. *Cymbeline*.
4. *Guiderius*.

45 5. *Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius*, called *Pratuſagus*, in whoſe time *Britain* was ſubdued by *Aulus Plantius*, ſent hither from the Emperor *Claudius*.

73 6. *Marius*.

125 7. *Coilus*, the ſuppoſed Founder of *Colcheſter*.

180 8. *Lucius* the firſt Chriſtian King of *Britain*, and of all the World, who dying without Iſſue, left the *Roman* Emperor his Heir.

207 9. *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.

211 10. *Baſſianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome*, after his Father, who loſt the Kingdom of *Britain* to

218 11. *Carauſius*, a Native of the Iſland; who rebelling againſt *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himſelf.

225 12. *Alectus*.

232 13. *Æſclepiodorus*.

260 14. *Coilus* II. the Father of *Helena*.

289 15. *Conſtantius*, Emperor of *Rome*, in Right of *Helena* his Wife, ſucceeded on the Death of *Coilus* II.

16. *Conſtantine the Great*, the Son of *Helena* and *Conſtantius*, who added his Eſtates in *Britain* to the *Roman* Monarchy.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman* Empire, it was at firſt divided into three Provinces only, that is to ſay, *Britannia prima*, (ſo called becauſe firſt ſubdu'd) containing all the Countries on the South ſide of the *Thames*, and thoſe inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, and *Cattieuclani*, whoſe *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2. *Britannia ſecunda*, compriſing all the Nations on the further ſide of the *Severn*, whoſe chief City was *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*, in the Country of *Monmouth*; and 3. *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, including all the reſt of the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*; each Province having ſeveral Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof twenty eight Biſhops, reſiding in thoſe ſeveral Cities; three of the which reſiding in the principal Cities, were honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a ſuperiority over all the Biſhops of their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces, and in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of *Conſtantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, alter'd the Bounds, and enlarg'd the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the *Fryth* of *Solway*, and the *Picts Wall* on the South, to the *Fryths* of *Edenburg* and *Dunbritton* North, and *Flavia Cæſarienſis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the reſt betwixt the *Humber* and the Bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old Name of *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, though now made leſs than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarg'd, he made the whole a full and compleat Dioceſs of the *Roman* Empire (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was ſhewn) ſubordinate, as *Spain* was alſo the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and govern'd by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General. Of which diviſion, or rather ſubdiviſion of the *Roman* Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the *Eccleſiaſtical* Government, but that the *Britiſh* Church became more abſolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each Dioceſs had) reſiding in the ſame City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant-General (which was then at *York*) of as great Power and Juriſdiction in the Iſle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their ſeveral *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being order'd by a Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number ſhould not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman* Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continual Pay, as well to keep their Coaſts and Frontiers againſt the Enemies, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Pancirol* be not miſtaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot and 2000 Horſe; three Legions keeping here their conſtant and continual Reſidence, that is to ſay, the ſixth Legion, ſurnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the twentieth Legion, ſurnamed alſo *Victrix*, at *Weſt-Cheſter*; and the ſecond Legion ſometimes at *Iſca Dannoniorum*, which we now call *Exeter*, ſometimes at *Iſca Silurum*, which is now *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*. Which *Legions*, with their *Aids* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number ſpoken of before. Of ſo high eſtimation was this Iſland in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all theſe Forces ſo preſerve the Country from foreign Enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great Spoils on the Coaſts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern Borders:

ders: Againſt all which the *Romans* held out well enough, and made good their Ground; till the recalling of the Legions out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it ſelf, then waſted and deſtroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which hapned in or about the Year of Chriſt 407, and ſome 470 Years from the firſt Invaſion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Victorinus* the laſt Governour for the Empire in the Iſle of *Britain*; for though the noble *Ætius*, on the Petition and complaint of the ſlaughter'd People, unmercifully butcher'd by the *Scots* and *Picts*, ſent ſome ſmall Forces to aſſiſt them againſt thoſe Enemies; yet were they preſently called back for the defence of *Gaul*, againſt the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains*, hopeleſs of all help from *Rome*, and being unable by their own ſtrength to repel the Enemy, by reaſon of their long eaſe and diſuſe of Arms, apply'd themſelves to *Aldroenus*, King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the ſame Stock, for Relief and Succour. Whoſe Brother *Conſtantine* (according to the *Britiſh* Story) paſſing over with a competent Army; and having valiantly repulſed the barbarous People, was crown'd King of *Britain*, the firſt of a new Race of Kings which ſwayed the Scepter with much trouble and continual conflicts, either againſt the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally ſubdued and ſhut up in *Wales*. Thoſe of moſt obſervation in the courſe of the Story, were, 1. *Conſtantine* the firſt King, and the reſtorer of the Country to Peace and Quiet, traiterouſly murder'd by a *Pict*. 2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Guyſes*, (now *Cornwal*) Protector of *Conſtantius* the Son of *Conſtantine*, taken out of a Monaſtery; after whoſe Death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himſelf, but being unable to defend it againſt the Enemy, and make his Title alſo good againſt the other Children of *Conſtantine*, firſt called in the *Saxons*. 3. *Vortimer*, eldeſt Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many Battels; but in the midſt of his Succeſſes was poyſon'd by *Rowena* a *Saxon* Lady, ſecond Wife of *Vortiger*. 4. *Arthur*, one of the World's Nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkiſh* Writers, and other *Legendaries*, report ſo many idle and impoſſible Actions. Doubtleſs he was a Prince of moſt perfect Vertue, a great preſerver of his Country from approaching ruine, and worthy the Pen of an able *Panegyriſt*; by whom his brave Atchievments might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of thoſe feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round Table*. For by the overſtraining of ſome *Monkiſh* Writers, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and the reſt, they have given too juſt occaſion to Poſterity to ſuſpect that Vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the Story, as admiration of the Perſons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur*, and his Nobles only; *Charlemaign*, and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, Men of great Vertue and Renown, ſuffering as deeply in the ſame kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the cuſtom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the Twelve Days following, with ſuch Paſtimes and Sports as are, or have been uſed of late by the *Lords of Miſrule* in ſome Gentlemens Houſes; an Inſtitution which the *Scotiſh* Writers of thoſe times much blame. Perhaps not unjuſtly; it being a time more fit for our Devotions than ſuch rude Diſports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to the 5. *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his neareſt Kinſman, ſlain by *Aurelius Conanus*, his own Nephew, who ſucceeded after him: which fraction did ſo weaken the diſtreſſed *Britains*, that they were forced to withaw themſelves beyond the *Severn*: as 6. *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joint Forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the ſafer but more fruitleſs Mountains. Of the reſt, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their Names only; which are thus ranked in the ſecond Race of

The Kings of *Britain*, after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A. C.		
433	1.	*Conſtantine.* 10.
443	2.	*Conſtantius.* 3.
446	3.	*Vortiger*, 18.
464	4.	*Vortimer* his Son. 7.
471	5.	*Vortiger* (again) 10.
481	6.	*Aurelius Ambroſius.* 19.
500	7.	*Uter Pendragon.* 6.
506	8.	*Arthur.* 36.
542	9.	*Conſtantine* II. 4.
546	10.	*Aurel. Conanus.* 30.
576	11.	*Vortipor.* 4.
580	12.	*Malgo.* 6.
586	13.	*Careticus*, or *Caradoc.* 27.
613	14.	*Cadwan.* 22.
635	15.	*Cadwallan.* 43.
627	16.	*Cadwallader*, the laſt King of the *Britains*, who on a ſuperſtitious Zeal travelled in a Pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the Habit of a Religious Order from the Hands of Pope *Sergius*, where he died not long after, *Anno* 689. After whoſe death, his Succeſſors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we ſhall be ſure to find them.

And ſo the *Britains* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongſt the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many People, under their Name and Service, than in themſelves; the *Juites* and *Angles* joining with them, and paſſing in accompt as the ſame one Nation, their Countries different as their Names until this Conjunction; but neighbouring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the firſt in that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe*, which we now call *Sleſwick*, where ſtill the Town called *Angolen*, doth preſerve their Memory: the *Juites* upon the North of them, where there is ſtill a Province called by the Name of *Juiteland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, ſituate in the very neck of that *Cherſoneſe* where it joineth with *Germany*; Joining their Powers, they ſpread themſelves with good ſucceſs, to the South and Weſt; of which more hereafter. And growing Maſter of the Seas, infeſted with continual Piracies the Coaſts of *Britain*, occaſioning herein an Officer of great Truſt and Power, appointed to defend and ſcour thoſe Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici* Known by this means amongſt the *Britains*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him againſt the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched Field near *Stamford* in the County of *Lincoln*: for ſo far had the barbarous People marched without any reſiſtance. Rewarded for this Victory with the Iſle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their Hoſts; whom by degrees they diſpoſſeſſed of all the Country on this ſide of *Severn*; parcelling it into ſeven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchy*, that is to ſay, 1. Of *Kent*, 2. Of the *South-Saxons*, 3. Of the *Weſt-Saxons*, 4. Of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, 5. Of the *Eaſt-Angles*, 6. Of the *North-Humbers*, and 7. of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which ſeveral Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to ſhew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengiſt*, who with his Brother *Horſus* had the leading of the *Saxon*'s Forces, at their firſt entry into *Britain*, *An.* 455. being the ſixth Year after their firſt coming in; who reſtoring *Paganiſm* to this Country, when the reſt of the Iſle was *Chriſtian*, occaſioned the diſtinction of *Kent* and *Chriſtendom*. The *Kentiſh* afterwards the firſt of the *Saxons* who received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the Apoſtle of the *Engliſh Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Canterbury*, once the Regal Seat of

the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his Converſion, to *Auguſtine* the firſt Archbiſhop thereof and his Succeſſors; afterwards the See of thoſe Archbiſhops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reculver*, ſeated in the Eaſt part of the Country, about ſeven or eight Miles from the Sea, a little Brook ſerving it thence with ſome Commodities. A City of more Antiquity and Fame than Beauty; being now ruinous and decay'd, and having nothing in it worth obſervation, but the Cathedral Church, firſt founded by *Ethelbert* before-mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his Foundations, in the form it now ſtands, by Archbiſhop *Lanfrank*, *Will. Carboyle*, and ſome other, of their Succeſſors in the ſaid See. The Archiepiſcopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruines of S. *Auguſtine's* Monaſtry ſhew what once it was. 2. *Dover*, anciently called *Dubris*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhore, where the paſſage is ſhorteſt into *France*; for that cauſe Fortified with a ſtrong and (in thoſe Days accounted an) impregnable Caſtle; eſteem'd one of the Keys of *England* and the chief of the *Cinque Ports*; now giving the Title of an Earl to the Houſe of *Hunſdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous Memory. 3. *Rocheſter*, ſeated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham* (the ſtation of the Royal Navy) an ancient City, but of no greatneſs; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the Name of *Roff-Cheſter*; a Biſhop's See, the ſecond for Antiquity in all the Iſland. 4. *Maidſtone*, upon the *Medway*, alſo near the Head thereof, the largeſt and moſt beautiful in all this Country, and moſt commodiouſly ſeated for Publick Buſineſs.

The Kings of Kent.

A. Chr.		
455	1	*Hengiſt*, the firſt King.
488	2	*Esk* or *Oſca*.
512	3	*Octa*.
532	4	*Immerick*.
561	5	*Ethelbert*, the firſt Chriſtian King of this Country.
617	6	*Edbald*.
641	7	*Ercombert*.
665	8	*Egbert*.
673	9	*Lotharius*.
686	10	*Edrick*.
693	11	*Wightred*.
720	12	*Egbert* II.
749	13	*Ethelbert* II.
754	14	*Alricus*.
793	15	*Ethelbert* III.
797	16	*Guthred*.
815	17	*Barldred*, the laſt King of *Kent*, who loſt both Life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *Weſt-Sex*, or the *Weſt-Saxons*, *Anno* 824. The Progeny of *Hengiſt* having been before extinguiſh'd in the Perſon of *Alricus*, overthrown and ſlain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdom of *SOUTH-SEX*, or of the *SOUTH-SAXONS*, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that People, *An.* 488. It contain'd only the two Counties of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated, the firſt ſo called *quaſi South-Sex*, the Country of the *South-Saxons*; the ſecond *quaſi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-ſide of the River *Thames*, in the ſame ſenſe as S. *Mary's* Church on the other ſide of that River (in reſpect of *London*) is called St. *Mary Over Rey*. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbiſhop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of moſt importance in it, were 1. *Chicheſter*, built by *Ciſſa* the ſecond King hereof, and called *Ciſſanceſter*, incompaſſed almoſt round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Suſſex*, and a Biſhop's See, removed hither from *Sealſy*, a Demy-Iſland, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, where it was firſt planted by Archbiſhop *Wilfride*. 2. *Haſtings*, one of the *Cinque-Ports*, in *Suſſex* alſo, the Landing-place of the *Normans*, and famous for the Overthrow of King *Harold* in the Fields adjoining. 3. *Guileford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surry*, well built, and having in it two Pariſh-Churches. 4. *Arundel*, in a *Dale* or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence ſo named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Teſtament of King *Alfride*, unto *Anthelm*, his Brother's Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Caſtle; but more for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Families of the *Albeneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*; this laſt of ſuch a large and diffuſed Nobility, that in the Year 1641, there were no fewer than eight *Howards* in the Houſe of Peers. 5. *Kingſton* upon the *Thames*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Kingſton* upon *Hull* in *Yorkſhire*; heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *Engliſh Saxons*, whence it had the Name of *Kingſton*, or the King's-Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, cruſhed in the infancy thereof by more potent Neighbours.

The Kings of the South-Saxons.

A. Chr.		
488	1	*Ella*, the firſt King.
514	2	*Ciſſa*, the Son of *Ella*, who loſt his Life and Kingdom to *Cerdic*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
590	3	*Cheulin*, King of *Weſt-Sex*, called himſelf King of the *South-Saxons*.
	4	*Edelwalch*, or *Ethelwolf*, the firſt Chriſtian King, overcome and ſlain in Battel by *Ceadwal*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, *Anno* 687. After whoſe Death *Berthan* and *Authum*, two Brethren, took on themſelves the Government, with the Title of Dukes or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withſtand the puiſſance of the *Weſt-Saxons*, this Kingdom was ſubdued by *Ina*, the Succeſſor of *Ceadwal*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of *WEST-SEX*, or the *WEST-SAXONS*, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the reſt; contained the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerſet*, *Dorſet*, *Wilts*, *Southampton*, and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, *Anno* 495. who having overcome the *Britains* of this Weſtern Tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himſelf King of the *Weſt Saxons*, *Anno* 522. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as elſewhere, was reſtor'd again in the time of *Kingil*, their firſt Chriſtian King; by the preaching of S. *Birinus*, Biſhop of *Dorcheſter*, near *Oxford*, then a great City, of no fewer than ten Pariſhes, now reduced to one.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Biſhop's See, remov'd hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, *An.* 1049. Seated upon the Bank of the River *Ex*, whence the Name of *Exceſter*; environ'd with deep Ditches, and very ſtrong Walls, in compaſs about a Mile and half beſides the Suburbs, in which are contain'd in all 15 Pariſh-Churches, beſides the Minſter, a beautiful and ſtately Fabrick. 2. *Bath*, ſo called from the *Baths* there being, the chief City of *Somerſet*, by the *Latines* called *Aquæ Solis*; by the *Greeks* ὕδατα θερμά for the ſelf ſame reaſon. Situate in a low Valley, environ'd about with Hills, very ſteep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and freſh Springs, to the great Commodity of the People. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monaſtery, partner with *Wells*, the Biſhop's See, in the Stile Epiſcopal; and gives the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3. *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*, ſeated upon a large and capacious Bay, ſo full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the beſt Ships, that it is ſaid, an hundred Sail of Ships may be lodg'd therein with ſuch convenience, that from the top of the one, the Maſt of another is not to be ſeen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater ſafety with two very ſtrong Caſtles built by *Henry* the 8*th*, that of S. *Maudits* on the Eaſt, and that of *Pendinas* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the Weſt. 4. *Dorcheſter*, the chief Town of *Dorſetſhire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and conſequently of no great Trading: not ſo much famous for ought elſe as giving the Title of a Marqueſs to *Henry* Earl of *Kingſton*, of the noble Family of the *Pierrepoints*. 5. *Wilton*, the head Town, in thoſe times of *Wiltſhire*, and a Biſhops See, honoured with the Reſidence of ſeveral Biſhops. But by tranſlating of the See to *Sarum* (or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithal the Thorowfare, which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market Town. 6. *Wincheſter* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons*, *Vent-ceaſter*, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant River, the Seat Royal of the *Weſt Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolves-eye*: ſo named from the Kings of the *Wolphian* Family, and the ſituation of it in the circlings of the foreſaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wool-Staple* here kept, as ſome; much leſs from Cardinal *Wolſey*, as others moſt abſurdly think. The Houſe given after to the Biſhops, and made their Palace. The Town in compaſs two Miles, beſides the Suburbs; commodiouſly ſeated in a low place, between very ſteep Hills, by which it is defended both from Cold and Wind: Afflicted very much ſince thoſe times both by War and Fire, half of the Ground within the Town being Fields and Gardens; but ſtill adorned with a Magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Caſtle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and proſpect; beſides a *Colledge*, and an *Hoſpital* added ſince thoſe days. 7. *Southampton*, conveniently ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richeſt Towns in thoſe parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large Streets, beautified with five Pariſh Churches, and fortified with high Walls, a double Ditch, and a right ſtrong Caſtle; but the Caſtle now decayed and ruined. 8. *Reading*, on the banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great Trade for Clothing, well built, and of three Pariſh Churches; heretofore beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Monaſtery, but both decayed. 9. *Windſor*, called *Windleſhores* in the old *Saxon*, ſituate near the banks of the *Thames* on a riſing Ground, which gives it a fair proſpect over all the Country; adorned in ſucceeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the Seat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10. *Wallingford*, the *Guallena* of the Ancients, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berks*; a Mile in compaſs at that time within the Walls, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and adorned with twelve Pariſhes. So deſolated by a Plague, *an*. 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in Repair; and nothing of the Walls left (as not much of the Caſtle) but the track and ruines.

The Kings of the *Weſt-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
522	1	*Cerdic*, the firſt King, 17.
539	2	*Kenric*, 29.
568	3	*Celingus*, or *Cheuline*, 27.
595	4	*Celric*, 5.
600	5	*Ceolwolf*, 14.
614	6	*Kingil*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
646	7	*Kenewalchin*, 31.
677	8	*Sigebert*, 1.
678	9	*Eſewin*, 2.
680	10	*Centwin*.
687	11	*Ceadwal*.
690	12	*Ina*, who firſt gave the *Peter-pence* to the Church of *Rome*.
725	13	*Ethelard*, 14.
739	14	*Cuthbert*, 16.
755	15	*Sigebert* II. 1.
756	16	*Kinulph*, 31.
787	17	*Bitbric*, 13.
800	18	*Egbert*, the moſt Puiſſant King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who united all the *Heptarchie* into one Eſtate, of whom ſee more among the *Monarchs* of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*.

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchinwin*, deſcended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wedneſday*, or *Wodenſday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middleſex*, *Eſſex*, and ſo much of *Hartfordſhire*, as is in the *Dioceſs* of *London*. The *Chriſtian* Faith expulſed here as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, by the Preaching of *Melitus* the firſt Biſhop of *London*, after the entrance of the *Saxons*, ſuppreſſed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but ſetled ſtronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Biſhop. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, beſides *London*, ſpoken of already, were, 1. *Weſtminſter*, ſituate in thoſe times a Mile from *London*, now adjoyning to it. The See of the Archbiſhop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*; afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-eye*, or the Thorny Iſland; till the new *Minſter* built by *Sebert* as before is ſaid, and the *Weſtern* ſituation of it in regard of St. *Pauls*, built at the ſame time by *Ethelbert* the King of *Kent*, gained it this new Name. A City honoured with the Seat of the Kings of *Eaſt-Sex*, and ſince thoſe times with that of the Kings of *England*; the name of the *Old Palace* of the one, and the *New-Palace* of the other, ſtill remaining there; beautified upon that occaſion with more ſtately and magnificent Houſes, belonging to the King, Biſhops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Covent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the *Monks* of *Weſtminſter*) for uniformity of Building, and handſom Streets, inferiour to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2. *Colcheſter*, the chief Town of *Eaſt-ſex*, ſituate near the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinenſium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Biſhops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaſter*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colcheſter*. A fair and well built Town, and of good Reſort, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3. *Itebancheſter* in *Dengey* Hundred, where S. *Ceadda* the ſecond Biſhop of *London*, baptized the relapſed *Eaſt-Saxon*. 4. *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County ſo called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Chriſtianity amongſt the *Saxons*; in which S. *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Apoſtle of that People, had a Conference or Conſultation with the Britiſh Biſhops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the Title of an Earl to the illuſtrious Family, ſurnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*; and at this time, Title of Earl, and Marqueſs to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *Eaſt-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
527	1	*Erchenwin* the firſt King.
587	2	*Sledda*.
596	3	S. *Sebert*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
	4	*Seward*, and *Sigebert*.
623	5	*Sigebert* II. or the Little.
	(6	*Sigebert* III.

661	7	*Suithelme.*
664	8	*Sighere.*
664	9	S. *Sebba.*
694	10	*Sigheard.*
	11	*Seofride.*
701	12	*Offo.*
709	13	*Selred.*
774	14	*Suthred*, the laſt King of the *Eaſt-Saxons* ſubdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *Weſt-Sex*, *Anno* 828. and his Kingdom made a Member of that riſing Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, ſo called from the *Angli* or *Engliſh*, which poſſeſſed theſe parts, and that *Eaſtern* ſituation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, *Anno* 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeſhire*, and the Iſle of *Ely*. The Chriſtian Faith firſt planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Miniſtry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the firſt Biſhop of the *Eaſt-Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of moſt Importance in it, were 1. *Dunwich* on the Sea ſhore, the firſt Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*: then a Town capable of that Dignity, now, ruinous, decayed, and for the greateſt part worn into the Sea. 2. *Ipſwich* in the ſame County of *Suffolk* and the chief of the Country, a rich populous, and well traded Empory, conſiſting of no fewer than twelve Pariſh Churches. 3. *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, ſituate on the River *Yare*, which runs thence to *Yarmouth*, lying out in length a Mile and an half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 20 Pariſhes well walled about with many a *Turret*, and 12 *Gates* for entrance; but hath within it much waſte Ground, the City ſuffering great loſs both in Wealth and Buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth. Recovered of the firſt blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the laſt ſtill languiſhing: yet ſtill it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Biſhops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*, and the Ruins of an ancient Caſtle of the *Saxons* building. 4. *North Elmham*, the Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for thoſe parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this and that at *Dunwich* ruinated in the *Daniſh* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years and here continuing, both Sees united unto one, till removed to 5. *Thetford*, another Town of this County, ſituated on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the leſſer *Ouſe*; a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at laſt removed to *Norwich*. 6. *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Camboritum*, whence the Modern name: unleſs we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for ſome call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reaſon of the Univerſity, ſaid to be founded by *Sigebert*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the Education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he ſpeaketh neither of *Univerſity*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7. *Ely*, ſituate in the Iſle ſo named, occaſioned by the divided ſtreams of *Nen* and *Ouſe*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers; turning a great part of this Tract into Fens and Marſhes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*: A place of no great Beauty or Reputation, as ſituate in a foggy and unhealthful Air; but only for a fair Monaſtery built by S. *Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards Rebuilt and Repleniſhed with Monks by *Ethelwold* Biſhop of *Winchester*, *Anno* 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Biſhops See in the time of King *Henry* the Firſt, *Anno* 1109,

The Kings of the *Eaſt-Angles*.

A. Ch.		
575	1	*Uffa*, the firſt Chriſtian King.
582	2	*Titullus.*
593	3	*Redwall*, the firſt King.
624	4	*Erpenwald.*
636	5	S. *Sigebert.*
638	6	*Egric.*
642	7	*Anna.*
654	8	*Ethelbert.*
656	9	*Edenwald.*
664	10	*Alduff.*
683	11	*Elſwolph.*
714	12	*Beorn.*
714	13	S. *Ethelred.*
749	14	*Ethelbert* II. treacherouſly murdered by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, to whoſe Court he came an invited Gueſt, *Anno* 793. after whoſe death this Kingdom became ſubject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *Weſt-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no *conſtat* till the time of
870	15	S. *Edmund*, deſcended from *Anna*, the Seventh King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his ſtout and conſtant perſeverance in the Faith of *CHRIST*; from whence the fair Town of St. *Edmundsbury*, in the County of *Suffolk*, took Denomination. After whoſe death the Kingdom was poſſeſſed by the *Danes*, till vanquiſhed by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the reſt of *England*.

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHUMBERLAND*, ſo called from the ſituation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaſter*, *Durham*, *Weſtmerland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland*, properly ſo called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Occa* the Son, and *Ebuſa* the Brother of *Hengiſt*, Conductors of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*; under pretence of guarding theſe Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Tees*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tees*, to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned; both governed a long while by Dukes, under the Soveraignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547. Duke *Ida* takes unto himſelf the Title of King of *Bernicia*, and *An.* 559. Duke *Ella*, doth the like in *Deira*. The Towns of moſt notice in this laſt (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) beſides *York* ſpoken of before, were 1. *Lancaſter*, the chief Town of that County, ſituate on the River *Lon*, which with addition of *Ceaſter* much uſed by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the ſame reaſon *Longovicus* by the Emperour *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled nor much frequented, but of ſufficient fame in our *Engliſh* Annals for thoſe Noble Perſons which have ſucceſſively born the Titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greateſt Princes for Revenue, of any Subjects in *Chriſtendom*, 2. *Kendal*, or *Candale*, ſituate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the Name; the chief Town of *Weſtmerland*: built in the manner of a Croſs, two long and broad Streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous and well traded Town, eſpecially for the making of fine woollen Cloth, but of more fame for giving the Title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the Sixth. 3. *Carliſle*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontier Town betwixt the *Romans* and *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *Engliſh*: conſumed to aſhes in the time of the *Daniſh* furies; afterwards rebuilt by *William Rufus*, made an Epiſcopal See in the Reign of K. *Henry* the Firſt, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the perſwaſion of *Athelwolfus*, the firſt Biſhop hereof. 4. *Monck-cheſter*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a ſafe and capacious Haven. Of no great note till the *Norman* Conqueſt, when from a Caſtle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Caſtle*: growing from that time forwards to ſuch Wealth and Trading, by the Neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodlieſt Town in all the North; fortified with ſtrong Walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. *Will. Cavendiſh*, Viſcount *Manſfield*, the honorary Titles of Earl and Marqueſs. 5. *Hagulſtade*, or *Hextold*, by the *Romans* called *Axelodunum*, by the *Normans*. *Hexam*, a Biſhops See in the firſt time of *Chriſtianity* amongſt theſe *Northumbers*, ſpecially ſo called, converted to the Faith in the time of *Oſwald* their tenth King, by the Miniſtry of *Aiden* the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*: *Eata* the fifth Biſhop, erecting here an Epiſcopal See, for the better propagation of the Goſpel among this People; after a Succeſſion of ten Biſhops ruinated and ſuppreſſed by the *Daniſh* furies. 6. *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, ſituate on a Hill, as the name importeth, a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither with the body of St. *Cutbert*, *Anno* 990. or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarn*, a ſmall Iſland on the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, where it was firſt erected by S. *Aidainus*, the firſt biſhop thereof: planted in *Lindiſfarn*, becauſe of the ſolitude of the place; tranſlated hither to avoid the fury of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in theſe Quarters. And being ſetled here, was fortified with ſuch ample Priviledges and Poſſeſſions, by the *Saxon* Kings; that the Biſhops were reputed for *Count Palatines*, at and before the *Norman* Conqueſt. 7. *Halifax*, in the *Weſt Riding* of *Yorkſhire*, of great wealth by making of Cloth. 8. *Rippon*, in the ſame, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, ſubordinate to that of *York*. 9. *Godmanham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmandin Gaham*) famous in thoſe days for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly deſtroyed by *Coiſe*, the chief Prieſt thereof, converted to *Chriſtianity* by *Paulinus* the firſt Archbiſhop of *York*, and the Apoſtle of the *Northumbers* in theſe parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nations, by reaſon of the diviſion of it into two Kingdoms, as before is ſaid, is very intricate and confuſed, the Kingdoms being ſometimes united, and ſometimes diſ-jointed. But in regard the moſt prevalent King of either, was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I ſhall accordingly ſubjoyn them in this order following.

The Kings of *Northumberland*.

A. Ch.		
549	1	*Ida* the firſt King.
560	2	*Ella*, King of *Deira*.
589	3	*Ethelrick*, Son of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.
593	4	*Ethelfride*.
617	5	*Edwin*, Son of *Ella*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
633	6	*Oſrick*.
634	7	St. *Oſwald*.
645	8	*Oſwy*, who having ſubdued and ſlain *Oſwin* King of *Deira*, was the firſt abſolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.
671	9	*Egfride*.
686	10	S. *Alfride*.
705	11	*Oſred*.
716	12	*Kenred*.
718	13	*Oſrick* II.
729	14	*Ceolnulph*.
738	15	*Ogbert*.
758	16	*Eſwulph*.
759	17	*Edilwald*.
765	18	*Alured*.
774	19	*Ethelred*.
778	20	*Alfwald*.
789	21	*Oſred* II.
794	22	*Ethelred* II. After whoſe death, ſlain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predeceſſors had been before) the Kingdom became diſtracted into Parts and Factions, invaded by the *Danes* on the one ſide, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other, who during theſe Diſtractions, had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Countries on the other ſide of the *Tweed*. At the laſt *Anno* 827. they yielded themſelves to *Egbert*, the moſt Potent King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, ruled by his Deputies for a while, then ſubdued by the *Danes* and finally recovered to the Crown of *England*, by *Athelſtan* and *Edred*, *Anno* 950. or thereabouts. Content ſince that to give the Title of an Earl to ſome eminent Perſons both of *Engliſh* and *Norman* Races: as it hath done ſince the firſt year of King *Richard* the Second; to the Noble Family of the *Percies*, deſcended by *Joſceline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adolize* the ſecond Wife of King *Henry* the Firſt, from *Charles* the *Great*, Emperor and King of *France*, and that too in a clearer Line than the Dukes of *Lorain*, who ſo much brag of it.

VII. The Kingdom of MERCIA, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Criodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *Engliſh* Nation, who ſetling in the heart of *Britain*, where the People were leaſt uſed to Arms, made themſelves Maſters of the Counties of *Glouceſter*, *Worceſter*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Cheſter*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the reſt of *Hartfordſhire*, which bounded in a manner by all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Mearc*, which ſignifieth a bound or limit. The Chriſtian Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was reſtored again in the Reigns of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wolfhere*, by the preaching of St. *Chad* the firſt Biſhop of *Lichfield*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Hereford*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of moſt flouriſhing Meadows, and no leſs plentiful Corn Fields; raiſed out of the Ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the Tract of which name it doth ſtill retain. A Biſhops See in the time of the *Britains*, reſtored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, *An.* 680. the honourable Title of the *Bohuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook* Duke of *Hereford*. 2. *Worceſter*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Biſhops See, *Anno* 672, beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way conſiderable for ſituation, number of Churches, neat Buildings, the induſtry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Somerſets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3. *Litchfield*, the firſt Biſhops See amongſt the *Mercians*, founded there *Anno* 646. by *Oſwy* King of the *Northumbers*, but fixed and ſetled by St. *Chad* in the Reign of *Wolfhere* King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very Infancy with ſuch fair Poſſeſſions, that in the year 793. *Adulfus* the Biſhop hereof, was made Archbiſhop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a perſonal honour, and died with him. 4. *Coventry*, ſo called from an old *Covent* or Religious Houſe, which gave name unto it; Situate in *Warwickſhire*, and now the principal of that County, though eſteemed a County of it ſelf: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Pariſh Churches, large Streets, and very handſom Houſes. A City of great Trade and Riches, though deſtitute of all Advantages which a Navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great Fame for a ſtately Monaſtery, to which the See Epiſcopal was for a while removed from *Litchfield*, now a ruine only. 5. *Leiceſter*, once a Biſhops See, the *Dioceſs* taken out of *Litchfield*, *An.* 733. removed to *Dorcheſter* near *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in thoſe days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a ſtrong Caſtle; and decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of theſe later times; the Town remaining in as good plight both for Trade and Buildings, as moſt Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of moſt fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Montfort* the *Catiline* and great *Incendiary* of this Kingdom, the Princes of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, who bore this Title; with ſome others ſince. 6. *Derby*, upon the River *Dervent*, a well-traded Town, and of good Reſort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary Title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henry* the Seventh. 7. *Nottingham* ſeated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an Hill, which overlooks it. For Buildings, fair Streets, and a ſpacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of moſt fame for a Royal and Magnificent Caſtle, which for Strength, Statelineſs, and Proſpect, may juſtly challenge the precedency of moſt in *England*. 8. *Lincoln*, a Town in thoſe days of great ſtrength and note, one of the beſt Peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great Merchandiſe and Traffick both by Sea and Land; inſomuch that *Remigius*, then Biſhop of *Dorcheſter* thought fit to tranſlate hither the Epiſcopal See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is*, &c. The chief fame which now it hath, is for the Minſter, one of the ſtatelieſt Piles in *England*, and perhaps in Chriſtendom; high ſeated on a Hill, and from thence diſcerned over all the Country. 9. *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great ſport the Hunters found in the Neighbouring *Foreſt*, commodiouſly ſeated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouſe*, riſing on the North with a ſoft aſcent, conſiſting of four Pariſh Churches, and ſhews the ruins of a Caſtle built by *Edward* the *Elder*, *An.* 917. 10. *Peterburgh*, ſeated in a Nook or *Angle* of *Northamptonſhire*, were formerly had been a Gulf or Whirpool of exceeding depth; but made firm ground by *Wolfhere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the Foundations of the Monaſtery, *Anno* 633. dedicated to St. *Peter*, whence it had this Name; before then called *Medanſhede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great eſteem, as ſtanding out of the way for Trade, and in no plauſible place for Health or Pleaſure; yet ſhewing two handſom Streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Pariſh Church (beſides the Abbey) made an Epiſcopal See by King *Henry* the 8th. 11. *Northampton*, built on the Northern Bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it, need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and ſeated in ſo good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpoſe to remove their Univerſity hither. The Noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12. *Bedford*, ſo called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both ſides thereof for the uſe of Travellers, growing in time to ſo great bigneſs as to contain in it five Pariſh Churches: famous in former times for the great Battel fought in the adjoining Fields, *Anno* 572. in which *Cuthwolf* the *Saxon* vanquiſh'd the *Britains*, and became Maſter of the Country; But more famous for giving the Title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaſter*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the Sixth, and *Jaſper* of *Hatfield*, Uncle to King *Henry* the 7th. 13. St. *Albans*, ſo called from a famous Monaſtery, here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of St. *Albans*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it; out of the Ruins whereof, decayed by Age, and deſtroyed by War, aroſe the preſent greatneſs of S. *Albans*, the faireſt, and beſt traded Town in the County of *Hertford*. 12. *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County ſo called, ſituate on the River *Ouſe*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder againſt the *Danes*, *Anno* 915, otherwiſe not much obſervable, but for thoſe many noble perſonages which have had the Title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of *Mercia*.

A. Ch.		
582	1	*Criodda*, the firſt King.
593	2	*Webba.*
614	3	*Cheorl.*
626	4	*Penda.*
656	5	*Peada*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
659	6	*Wolfere.*
675	7	*Etheldred.*
704	8	*Kenred.*
709	9	*Chelred.*
716	10	*Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthbert* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, at a Fight near *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, the place firſt called *Battelage* Hill.
758	11	*Offa* the Great.
796	12	*Egfride.*
797	13	*Kenwolf.*
819	14	*Kenelm.*
820	15	*Cheolwolf.*
821	16	*Bernulf.*
824	17	*Ludecan.*
826	18	*Withlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predeceſſors) by *Egbert* King of *Weſt-Sex*, became his tributary.
839	19	*Berthulf.*
852	20	*Burdred*, a ſubſtituted King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the laſt King of the *Mercians* (the ſhort Reign of his ſix Predeceſſors, portending that fatal period to be near at hand.) After whoſe Death, *Anno* 886, this Kingdom for ſome few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alured* to the *Engliſh* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succeſſion of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or diviſion of it into ſeven Kingdoms; continuing ſeparate and diſtinct till the prevailing Fortune of the *Weſt-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But ſo, that they were ſubject for the moſt part unto one alone, who was intituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: thoſe which were ſtronger than the reſt, giving the Law unto them in their ſeveral turns; and are theſe that follow:

The *Monarch* of the *Engliſh Saxons* in the time of the *Heptarchie*.

A. C.		
455	1	*Hengiſt*, King of *Kent*, who firſt brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
481	2	*Ella*, the firſt King of the *South-Saxons*.
495	3	*Cerdic*, the firſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
534	4	*Kenric*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
561	5	*Cheuline*, or *Celingus*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
562	6	*Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *Saxons*.
616	7	*Redwald*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*.
617	8	*Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
634	9	*Oſwald*, King of *Northumberland*.
643	10	*Oſwy*, King of *Northumberland*.
659	11	*Wolfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
675	12	*Etheldred*, King of *Mercia*.
704	13	*Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
709	14	*Chelred*, King of *Mercia*.
716	15	*Ethelbald*, King of *Mercia*.
758	16	*Offa* the Great, King of the *Mercians*.
794	17	*Egfride*, King of *Mercia*.
796	18	*Kenwolf*, King of *Mercia*.
799	19	*Egbert*, the Son of *Alcmond*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who having vanquiſhed all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kings, and added moſt of their Eſtates unto his own, cauſed the whole united body to be called *Engle-lond*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Council held at *Wincheſter*, *Anno*, 819, being the 19th year of his Reign over the *Weſt-Saxons*; and by that Name he was then crowned in the preſence of his Nobles, and the reſt of his Subjects, leaving it unto the reſt of his Succeſſors.

But before we come to the recital of their Names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next conſiderable *Actors* on the Stage of *England*, who in the time of this *Egbert*, firſt invaded the Country, and after exerciſed the patience of his Poſterity, till in fine they got the Kingdom to themſelves. Of the Original and firſt Succeſſes of this

People, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark.* Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Juites* and *Engliſh* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, they thought it not amiſs to follow them into *Britain* alſo; making a diſcovery of ſome part of the Coaſt thereof with three Ships only, *An.* 787, being the firſt year of *Brithic* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the Weſt-*Saxons.* Which having done, and prepared themſelves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert*, they invaded *Northumberland*, the Iſle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coaſts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings ſucceeding, having vanquiſhed the *Northumbrians*, *Eaſt-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petit Tyrannies: by *Alfrid* firſt ſtopped in their Career, by *Edward* the *Elder* outed of the *Eaſt-Angles*, and by *Athelſtan* of *Northumberland* alſo, the *Danes* for ſome time after being ſubject to the *Engliſh* Government, mixing in Marriages and Alliance, and Incorporated with them. By the Valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the Perſon of *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom: who having impolitickly ſent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if a Kingdom got by Force, could be held by Favour) opened a way to their excluſion from the Crown; which happened within ſeven years after his deceaſe. Which ſaid, we come to the Succeſſions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

819 1 *Egbert*, the laſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the firſt of *England.* 18.

837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the eldeſt Son of *Egbert.* 20.

857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldeſt Son of *Ethelwolf.* 1.

858 4 *Ethelbert*, the Brother of *Ethelbald.* 4.

863 5 *Ethelfred*, the Brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwolf*, and as much moleſted by the *Danes*, as his Brethren were. 10.

873 6 *Alfride*, the fourth Son of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon Heptarchy* into one Eſtate, vanquiſhed the *Danes*, whom he made ſubject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into Shires, and reſtored the Univerſity of *Oxon.*

900 7 *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Elder*, the Son of *Alfride*, who recovered the *Eaſt-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he ſhut up in *Northumberland.* 24.

924 8 *Athelſtan*, the Son of *Edward*, who ſubdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Cornwal*, and compelled the *Danes* to ſubmit themſelves to the *Engliſh* Government. In his time lived Sir *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Daniſh* Champion (the great *Goliah* of that People) near the Walls of *Wincheſter.* 10.

940 9 *Edmund* the Brother of *Athelſtan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly ſubverted.

946 10 *Edred*, the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelſtan*, ſo fortunate againſt the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Chriſtened. 9.

955 11 *Edwy*, the Son of *Edmund.*

955 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, ſurnamed the *Peaceable*, the moſt abſolute *Monarch* of *England*, ſince the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the Tribute of Money, impoſed by *Athelſtan* on the *Welch*, was exchanged into a Tribute of *Wolves.* 16.

971 13 *Edward* II. Son of *Edgar*, treacherouſly murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her Son; hence ſurnamed the *Martyr*, 3.

978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly, which he got unjuſtly. Oppreſſed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; inhanced to 48000 pounds within ſhort time after; which monies were raiſed upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegelt.* Weary of the exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they ſlept in their Beds; which accordingly was put in execution on St. Brices Night, *November* 12. *Anno* 1012. To Revenge this Outrage and Diſhonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 Ships came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuiſſant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Daniſh* Tyrant, who miſerably plagued them till his death. To whom ſucceeded his Son *Canute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmond Ironſide*, a moſt valiant King, did in the end poſſeſs himſelf of the whole Kingdom.

1016 15 *Edmund* II. ſurnamed *Ironſide*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at laſt divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherouſly and baſely murdered, by *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Out-Law*, his eldeſt Son. He was Grandfather of *Edgar Atteling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots.*

The *Daniſh* Kings.

1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the Second, ſole King of *England.* He married *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred*, and Daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy* 20.

1037 2 *Harald* the baſe Son of *Canutus*, ſurnamed *Harfagar*, 4.

1041 3 *Canutus* II. commonly called *Hardy Canute*, the lawful Son of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the ſecond, and Mother of *Edward* ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*, the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England.* After whoſe death that People having tyrannized in *England* for the ſpace of 255 years, (of which they had reigned only 26.) were utterly expelled the Country, or paſſed in the Accompt of *Engliſh*; *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, the youngeſt Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the abſence of the Children of *Edmund Ironſide* his elder Brother, *Anno* 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence as they did, I obſerve three Cuſtoms yet in uſe amongſt us. Firſt, each *Engliſh* houſe maintained one *Dane*, who living idely like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their Labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we ſee an idle fellow, we call him a *Lordane.* 2. The *Danes* uſed when the *Engliſh* drank, to ſtab them, or cut their Throats: to avoid which Villany, the party then drinking, requeſted ſome of the next unto him to be his ſurety or *pledge*, whilſt he paid nature her due; and hence we have our uſual cuſtom of *pledging* one another. 3. The old *Romans* at the expulſion of their Kings, annually ſolemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *Engliſh* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, inſtituted the annual Sports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old Tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *Scorning*, or Triumphing. This *Solemnity* conſiſted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in thoſe days, during which the *Feſtival* laſted, and was celebrated by the younger ſort of both Sexes, with all manner of Exerciſes, and Paſtimes in the Streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath ſo corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no ſign of the firſt inſtitution.

The *Saxons* Re-enthroned.

A. Ch.

1042 16 *Edward* III. ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironſide*, and *Hardy-Canute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the Dukes his Couſins, ſucceeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Daniſh*, *Saxons*, and *Mercian* Laws, one univerſal and general Law, whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its Original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *cuſtomary* and unwritten Laws; theſe being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holineſs that he received power from above to cure many Diſeaſes, amongſt others, the ſwelling of the Throat, called by us the *Kings-Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his Succeſſors of *England*. Finally after his death, he was Canonized for a Saint; and died, having reigned 24 years.

1066 17 *Harald* II. Son to Earl *Goodwyn*, was choſen King in the Non-age of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironſide*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend ſome Title as being born unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the baſe Daughter of *Canutus* the firſt, Siſter by the whole blood to *Harold Harfager*, and of the half blood to *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which People we have ſpoke already when we were in *France*, and ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the laſt *Actors* on the *Theatre* or Stage of *England*.) This *William* (I ſay) pretending a Donation from his Couſin, King *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, invaded *England*, ſlew *Harold*, and with him 66654 of his *Engliſh* Soldiers, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdom; uſing ſuch Policy in his new Conqueſt, that he utterly diſheartned the *Engliſh* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new accompt of the Kings of *England*, thoſe of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the firſt, ſecond, or third, *&c.*

The *Norman* Kings.

A. Ch.

1067 1 *William*, ſurnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquiſhment and death of *Harold*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of *England*, and eſtabliſhed thoſe of *Normandy* in the place thereof: governing the People abſolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and ſuch as were ingaged in the Action with him; from whom moſt of our ancient Families do derive themſelves; thoſe Lands to be holden in *Knights-Service*, which drew along with it the *Wardſhip* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089 2 *William* II. ſurnamed *Rufus*, ſecond Son to the Conqueror, ſucceeded by the appointment of his Father, and was Crowned King; ſlain afterwards in the *New Foreſt*, by an Arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102 3 *Henry*, for his Learning ſurnamed *Beau-Clerk*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the abſence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land* Wars) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him alſo the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-iſſue, he left one only Daughter whoſe name was *Maud*; firſt married to the Emperour *Henry* the Fifth, and after to *Geofry Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Toureine*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136 4 *Stephen*, ſecond Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blois*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, ſucceeded; who to purchaſe the peoples love, releaſed the Tribute called *Danegelt*: he ſpent moſt of his Reign in War againſt *Maud* the Empreſs. 19.

The *Saxon* Blood reſtored.

1155 5 *Henry* II. Son to *Maud* the Empreſs, Daughter to *Henry* the Firſt, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret* Siſter to *Edgar Atheling*, reſtored the *Saxon* Blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *Engliſh* Empire, as alſo the Dutchy of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poictou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by Conqueſt. Happy in all things, the unnatural Rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.

1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, ſurnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almoſt driven out of *Syria*, took the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy Atchievements, returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* againſt the *French*, was by Tempeſt caſt upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Auſtria*, was taken Priſoner, put to a grievous Ranſom, and after his return ſlain at the Siege of *Chaluz*, in the Province of *Limoſin*. 12.

1201 7 *John*, Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Diſtreſſed for a great part of his Reign by Wars with his *Barons*, outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom alſo he was likely to have loſt the Realm of *England*. Finally, after a baſe ſubmiſſion of himſelf and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is ſaid to have been poyſoned at *Swinſtede* Abbey. 17.

1218 8 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a compoſition with *Lewis* the *9th*, was reſtored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Succeſſors till the Reign of King *Henry* the *6th*. Exhauſted by the Pope, and oppreſſed a long time by his factions and unruly Barons, but at laſt Victorious. 56.

1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, ſubdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into ſubjection, of whoſe King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308 10 *Edward* II. Son of *Edward* the Firſt, a diſſolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the Vulgar, for his immeaſurable love to *Pierce Gaveſton*, and the *Spencers*, was twice ſhamefully beaten by the *Scots*: and being depoſed by a ſtrong Faction raiſed againſt him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*, was barbarouſly murdered in *Berkley* Caſtle. 19.

1327 11 *Edward* III. Son of *Edward* the Second, a moſt Vertuous and Valorous Prince, brought the *Scots* to Obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great Battels, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair poſſeſſions in that Kingdom. 50.

1377 12 *Richard* II. another of our unfortunate Kings, loſt many of his Peers in *France*, and at laſt being overawed by his two great Uncles of *Lancaſter*, and *Glouceſter*, and taken Priſoner by his Couſin the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to reſign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Caſtle.

The *Lancaſtrian* Line.

1399 13 *Henry* IV. Son to *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the fourth Son of *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the conſent of the People, ſetled in the Throne; and ſpent his whole Reign in ſuppreſſing homebred Rebellions. 15.

1414 14 *Henry* V. the Mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true Vertue, purſued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to poſſeſs the Kingdom. 9.

1423 15 *Henry* VI a Pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*, which he held during the life of his Uncle *John* of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* of *Glouceſter*; after whoſe deaths, he not only loſt *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Yorkiſh* Faction. 38.

The *Yorkiſh* Line.

1461 16 *Edward* IV. Son of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grandſon of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fiſth Son of King *Edward* the Third, challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grandmother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, the Son of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, and of *Philippa*, his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the third Son of the ſaid King *Edward*, and elder Brother of *John* of *Gaunt*. The claim firſt ſet on foot by his Father the Duke of *York*, who loſt his life in purſuance of it in the Battle of *Wakefield*; with better fortune and ſucceſs, purſued by King *Edward* himſelf, who finally after nine bloody Battels fought between the Houſes (ſpecially that of *Towton*, in which were ſlain 36000 *Engliſh*) was quietly ſeated in the poſſeſſion of *England* and *Ireland*, 23.

1484 17 *Edward* V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.

1484 18 *Richard* III. Brother of *Edward* the 4th, a moſt wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the Sixth, and 2. Prince *Edward* his Son. 3. *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his Brother. 4 *Haſtings* a faithful Servant to King *Edward*. 5. *Rivers*, *Vaughan* and *Gray*, the Queens Kindred. 6. *Edward* the Fifth, his Sovereign, with his Brother *Richard*. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greateſt Coadjutor in theſe his ungodly practices; and his own Wife *Anne*, ſo to make way to an inceſtuous Marriage with his Neece *Elizabeth*, the eldeſt Daughter of *Edward* the 4th; but before the Solemnity, he was ſlain at *Boſworth* 3.

The Union of the *Families*.

1487 19 *Henry* VII. Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, (as Son of *Margaret*, Daughter of *John* Duke of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* Earl of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* the 4th. uniting by that Marriage the divided *Families*. He was alſo extracted from the *Britiſh* and *French* Royal Blood, as being Son to *Edmund Tudor* Earl of *Richmond*, Son to *Owen Tudor* (deſcended from *Cadwallader*, the laſt King of the *Britains*) and *Katherine* of *France*, Widow of *Henry* the 5th. His whole Wars was againſt home-bred Rebels, the chief being *Lambart*, and the Followers and Fauters of *Perkin Warbeck*. 23.

1509 20 *Henry* VIII. Heir to both *Families*, between which were fought for the Diadem 17 pitched Fields; in which periſhed 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marqueſſes, and Earls, 200000 of the common People, beſides Barons and Gentlemen. This King baniſhed the uſurped *Supremacy* of the *Popes*, and began the *Reformation* of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book againſt *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*; afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Succeſſors. A Prince of great Vices, but of greater Virtues. 38.

1547 21 *Edward* VI. the Son of *Henry* the 8th, by *Jane Seymour* his third Wife; out of whoſe Womb he is ſaid to be cut, to come into the World, as *Cæſar* was; but he had neither *Cæſar*'s Fortune nor length of Life; dying very young, and his Affairs conducted by divided Councils; though otherwiſe of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of Judgment above his years. 6.

1553 23 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by *Katherine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, reſtored the Popes Supremacy baniſhed by her Father, with the whole maſs of Popery aboliſhed in her Brother's Reign. To which Religion ſo addicted, that in the ſhort time of her Reign there was more Blood ſhed, than in the whole 44 years of her Siſter *Elizabeth*. In the laſt year of her Reign ſhe loſt *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loſs of her life alſo, as it was ſuppoſed. 5.

1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by the Lady *Anne Bullein* his ſecond Wife, a moſt gracious Heroick Princeſs, was by the Divine Providence of God preſerved from the Practices of her Enemies in her Siſters Reign, to ſway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She purſued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father, furniſhed the Royal Navy with all kind of Warlike Ammunitions; encreaſed the Revenue of the Univerſities, by the Statute of *Proviſions*; ſuccoured the *Scots* againſt the *French*; the *French* Proteſtants againſt the *Papiſts*, and both againſt the *Spaniard*: defended the

Netherlands againſt the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muſcovite*; and was famous for her Prudence and Government amongſt the *Turks*, *Perſians*, and *Tartars*, yea, her very Enemies. Finally, ſhe died in the 45 year of her Reign, and the 70. of her Life, on the 24 of *March*, *Anno* 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the New Year with the Feaſt of the *Annunciation*. To whom ſucceeded JAMES the Sixth, King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all Men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we ſhall ſay more when we come to ſpeak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*, of which he was the firſt ſince the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and ſuch more properly than the greateſt of all thoſe Emperors had been before: None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it ſelf, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Iſles adjoyning, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State diſtinct, we will conſider it and the *Kings* thereof, with references to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And firſt for *Reputation*, when all Chriſtendom in the Council of *Conſtance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*; and had its voice of equal balance with the Nations of *France* or *Italy*, in all Affairs concerning the Doctrine, Diſcipline and Peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in thoſe *General Councils*, and the rank they held among other *Chriſtian* Princes; I find that the Emperour of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Eccleſiæ*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*; and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius & adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *General Councils*, had place next the Emperour, on his right Hand; the King of *England* on his left Hand, and the King of *Scotland* next before *Caſtile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being ſo much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogateth to himſelf the place above all other Princes; but in time of Pope *Julius*, the Controverſie ariſing between the Ambaſſadors of the two Princes for Precedency: the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the Fourth, upon the like Controverſie ariſing between the Ambaſſadours of *France* and *Spain*, adjudged the Precedency to the *French*. And the preſent King of *France*, *Lewis* the 14*th*, forced the King of *Spain* to acknowledge that Right, upon a Quarrel ariſing between their Ambaſſadors in *London*, in the year 1661.

Touching the *Souldiery* of *Engl.* and their moſt notable Atchievements, both by Sea and Land, ſufficient hath been ſaid already. What *Forces* the Kings hereof have been able to Raiſe, and may command for preſent Service, will beſt be ſeen by the Action of King *Henry* the 8*th* at *Bullogn*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88, and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the ſeveral Counties. Firſt, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8*th*, he had in his *Avant Guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horſe in *blew Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horſe and Foot; and in the main Battel 20000 Foot; and 2000 Horſe, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe. They drew after them 100 great Pieces, beſides ſmall ones, and for conveyance of their *Ordnance*, Baggage, and other neceſſaries, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horſes, beſides other Carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen diſperſed in ſeveral places on the Southern Coaſts of the Kingdom, to hinder the Landing of the Enemy, 15000 Soldiers of both ſorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the Command of the Earl of *Leiceſter*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe: and for the Guard of her own Perſon, under the Lord *Hunſdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: in all the number of 84000 men: beſides thoſe goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did preſent her with, at their own proper Charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both ſorts diſciplined and muſtered to be ready upon all occaſions: in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have ſince ſeen no Muſter-Roll of them) amounted to 296130 able men, 141315 armed men, 935 Demilances, 6777 Light-Horſe, 19345 Pioneers; beſides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, ſuppoſed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light-Horſe. And for their ſtrength at Sea, beſides the *Navy Royal*, conſiſting of about 30 gallant Ships, (beſides the leſſer Veſſels; the beſt and braveſt that any Prince of Criſtendom can boaſt of as his own propriety; there are ſuch ſtore of *Colliar* and *Merchants* Ships, fit for any Service, that in the year 88 aforeſaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppoſe the *Spaniards*; and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597, ſhe ſet out for the Iſland Voyage, no fewer than 120 Sail of all ſorts, of which 60 were men of War.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7*th*, to be no more than 400000 Crowns *per annum*; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a Million more, by King *Henry* the 8*th*, the diſſolution of Monaſteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of Wards, making that improvement. And to ſay truth, the Univerſal Diſſolution of Religious Houſes of all ſorts, did for the time ſo mightily increaſe his annual Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the ſame. But theſe Additions being waſted by his own exorbitant expences, and the ſeveral Alienations made by King *Edward* the Sixth; thoſe Courts of new erection were diſſolved again; and the Revenue fell ſo ſhort of its former height, that in the 12*th* year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (beſides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaſter*) came to no more than to 188197 *l.* 4 *s.* Of which 110612 *l.* 13 *s.* went that year out upon the Navy, the charge of Houſhold, and other neceſſary aſſignments. Since which time the great increaſe of Trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of Money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Intrado*. The certainty whereof as I do not know, ſo neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearſay.

The Principal Orders of *Knighthood* are, and were, 1. of the *Round Table*, inſtituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britains*, and one of the Worlds *Nine Worthies*. It conſiſted of 150 Knights, whoſe Names are recorded in the Hiſtory of King *Arthur*, there were Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts; it being his fate that only the beſt Knight of the Order ſhould be his *Chirurgeon*: The Arms of moſt of theſe, with their ſeveral *Blazons* (I know not on how good Authority) we find in *Bara*, the *French* Herald. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Triſtram*, Sir *Lamorock*, Sir *Gawin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Wincheſter*, is falſly called *Arthurs Round Table*, it being not of ſufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of theſe Knights they are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablais*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy Bread, and a phillop on the Noſe.

2. Of S. *George*, called commonly the *Garter*, inſtituted by King *Edward* the Third, to increaſe Vertue and Valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as ſome will, in honour of the Counteſs of *Salisburies* Garter, of which Lady the King formerly had been inamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the *Order*; firſt publiſhed by *Polydore Virgil*, a Stranger to the Affairs of *England*, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common People; too trifling a Foundation for ſo great a Building; Common bruit being ſo infamous an

Hiſtorian, that wiſe Men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this ſame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elſewhere canvaſſed. Suffice it to obſerve in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this *Order*, in teſtimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound ſeverally unto one another, and all of them jointly to the King as the *Sovereign* of it. So ſaith the *Regiſter* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did ſo fit the Habit unto that deſign, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the *Order*, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of *England* are *Sovereigns*: And is ſo much deſired for its excellency, that eight Emperors, twenty one Foreign Kings, twenty two Foreign Dukes and Princes, beſides divers Noblemen of other Countries have been *Fellows* of it. The Enſign is a blue Garter, buckled on the left Leg, on which theſe words are embroider'd, viz. *Hony ſoit qui mal y penſe*. About their Necks they wear a *Blue Ribbond*, at the end of which hangeth this Image of St. *George*, upon whoſe Day the *Inſtallations* of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3. Of the *Bath*, brought firſt into *England*, 1399. by *Henry* the Fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Inſtallation* of the Princes of *Wales*. Their Duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the King's Rights. The Knights thereof diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribbond*, which they wear ordinarily about their Necks, to difference them from Knights *Batchelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedency; unleſs they be alſo the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their Birth gives it before all *Orders*.

4. Of *Baronets*, an Order inſtituted by King *James*, the Ninth Year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulſter*. They have Precedency of the *Knights of the Baths*, but not of thoſe of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being Hereditary, not Perſonal, and rather *Civil* than *Military*, is not ſo properly to be ranked amongſt *Orders* of Knighthood.

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, *three Lyons paſſant Gardant*, *Sol*. The reaſon why theſe Arms, quartered with the *French*, took the ſecond place, are, 1. Becauſe that *France* at the time of the firſt quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2. That the *French* ſeeing the honour done to their Arms, might more eaſily be induced to have acknowledged the *Engliſh Title*. 3. Becauſe the *Engliſh* Arms were compounded of the Lion of *Aquitain*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both *French* Dutchies.

There were in *England*, at and ſince the time of the Reformation.

Archbiſhops 2. – Biſhops 20.

WALES.

WALES is bounded on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *England* on the Eaſt; from which ſeparated by the River *Dee*, and a Line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eaſtwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puiſſance of *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britains* were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themſelves to the Mountains; where he cauſed them to be ſhut up and divided from *England* by an huge Ditch, called in *Welch*, *Claudh Offa*, i. e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepſtow*, extendeth 84 Miles in length, even as far as *Cheſter*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harold*, That if any *Welchman* was found with a Weapon on this ſide of it, he ſhould have his Right-hand cut off by the King's Officers.

The Name of *Wales* ſome derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallader*, who with the ſmall remainder of his *Britiſh* Subjects, made good the faſtneſſes of this Country, and was the firſt who had the Title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the Name of *Welch* and *Wales*, was given them by the *Saxons*; who having poſſeſſed themſelves of all the reſt of the Country, called the *Britains*, who lived here by the Name of *Walſh*, which in their Language ſignifieth as much as *Aliens*; becauſe they differed from them both in their Laws and Language: which is the general Opinion. Moſt probable it is, that as the *Britains* derive their Pedigree from the *Galls* (as before was proved) ſo they might ſtill retain the Name; and were called *Walliſh* by the *Saxons*, inſtead of *Galliſh*: The *Saxons* uſed in moſt Words *W.* for G. as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, becauſe the *Frenchmen* to this day call the Country *Galles*, and the eldeſt Son of *England*, *Le Prince de Galles*: As alſo that the *Dutch* or *Germans*, (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call ſuch Nations as inhabit on the Skirts of *France*, by the Name of *Wallons*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the Name of *Wales*, were the *Silures*, poſſeſſing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Clamorgan*, all *Gloceſterſhire* beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worceſterſhire* on the ſame ſide alſo: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*, (not reckon'd ſince the time of *Offa*, as a part of *Wales*,) *Baleum*, now *Buelth*, in *Brecknock*, *Cobannium*, now *Abergavenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County ſo named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2. The *Dimetæ*, poſſeſſing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembrokeſhires*, whoſe chief Towns were *Loventium*, now *New-Caſtle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it ſelf: and *Octopitæ*, where now ſtands S. *Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Menew*, whence that Biſhop hath the Name of *Menevenſis* in *Latin*. 3. The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worceſterſhire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropſhire*, on the ſame ſide of the River. Their chief Towns were *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont*, in *Carnarvonſhire*; *Cononium*, now *Conwey* in the ſame County; *Bonium*, where after ſtood the famous Monaſtery of *Banchor*, in *Flintſhire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By theſe three Nations was all that Tract poſſeſſed, which lieth on the other ſide of the *Severn*. A very ſtout and hardy People, and ſo impatient of the Yoke, that two of the three Legions which the *Romans* kept conſtantly in *Britain*, as before is ſaid, were planted in and near this People, the better to contain them in due obedience; that is to ſay, the ſecond Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuvana*, where now ſtands *Weſt-*

Cheſter. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation ſubject to the Power of *Rome*; and no leſs difficult to bring them under the Command of the *Saxons*, whom they withſtood, when all the reſt of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to ſee their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themſelves had yielded to a Foreign Yoke.

The Chriſtian Faith planted amongſt the *Britains*, in the time of *Lucius*, they ſtill retained, when all the reſidue of the Iſland had been relapſed to *Paganiſm*: and they retained it not in ſecret, as afraid to own it, but in a well conſtituted Church. Inſomuch that *Auguſtine* the Monk, when he firſt preached the Goſpel to the *Engliſh Saxons*, found here no fewer than ſeven Biſhops; that is to ſay, *Herefordenſis*, *Tavenſis*, *Paternenſis*, *Banchorenſis*, *Elwyenſis*, *Wiccienſis*, and *Morganenſis*, (or rather *Menevenſis*:) all which, excepting only *Paternenſis*, do ſtill remain amongſt us, though in other Names; *Hereford*, and *Worceſter*, (*Wiccienſis*) reckon'd now in *England*; St. *Davids* or *Menevenſis*, *Tavenſis* or *Llandaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwyenſis*, or St. *Aſaph*, in *Wales*, according to the preſent boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, ſo they retained it after the Tradition of their Predeceſſors; neither ſubmitting unto *Auguſtine* as Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came as *Oecumenical*, or chief Paſtor of the Church of *Chriſt*; nor receiving any new Doctrines or Traditions from them; but ſtanding to thoſe Principles of *Liberty* and *Religion* which they were poſſeſſed of, till all the World almoſt had yielded to that powerful See. Not manumitted from the vaſſalage and thraldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England* in Doctrine, Diſcipline, and Worſhip; the Liturgy whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, tranſlated into the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; as the Bible alſo was by virtue of an Act of Parliament, in the Fifth of that Queen, the care thereof committed to the Biſhop of *Hereford*, and the four Biſhop's of *Wales*. But becauſe the Bible then ſet forth was only in a large Church Volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the coſt and charge of my Couſin, Mr. *Rowland Heylin*, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who alſo cauſed the Book called, *The Practice of Piety* to be Printed in that Language for the inſtruction of the People; and a *Welch* or *Britiſh* Dictionary to be made and publiſhed, for the underſtanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and Affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the ſame, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceſſes (beſides that of *Hereford*) for the exerciſe of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*, thoſe Dioceſſes ſubdivided into nine Arch-Deconries, as before in *England*: all ſubject heretofore to their own Primate or Archbiſhop, reſiding in the City of *Iſca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Britannia Secunda*, called by the *Welch* or *Britains*, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the *Legion*, from the ſecond Legion fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, becauſe ſituate on the River ſo named. But this City being too much expoſed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiſcopal See was tranſlated to *Menew*, ſtanding on a Promontory in the extream Angle of *Pembrokeſhire*, by *David* then Archbiſhop thereof, and near of Kin to *Arthur*, that renowned King of the *Britains*; from whom, in tract of time, the Name of *Menew* being left off, the See and City came to be called *St. Davids*. From *David* unto *Sampſon* the twenty ſixth Archbiſhop of the *Welch*, (being above 400 Years) did they hold this Dignity; but then the Peſtilence extreamly raging in theſe Parts, Archbiſhop *Sampſon* carried with him the *Epiſcopal Pall*, and therewith the Dignity it ſelf to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbiſhop in *Wales*, in Name and Title, though the Power proper thereunto ſtill remained among them: The *Welch* Biſhops acknowledging no other Primate, nor receiving Conſecration from any other hands than their own Biſhop of *St. Davids*, till Biſhop *Bernard* was compelled to ſubmit himſelf to the Power and Juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry* the Firſt.

But its time to look upon the face of the Country, as it ſtands at the preſent, which we find Mountainous and Barren; not able to maintain its People but by helps elſewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were ſome Silver Mines diſcover'd in it not long ſince, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Country, but to the Profit and Renown of the whole Iſland of *Great Britain*. Their chief Commodities are courſe Cloths, entituled commonly by the Name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottons; which Merchandiſe was heretofore brought to *Oſweſtre* (the furtheſt Town of *Shropſhire*) as the common *Empory*; there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewsbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Country, occaſioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their Commodities; till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and enforced them to ſettle the whole Trade at *Shrewsbury*, where it ſtill continueth.

To ſpeak of Mountains in a Country which is wholly Mountainous, were a thing unneceſſary; yet of moſt note are thoſe of 1. *Snowdon*, 2. *Brechin*, 3. *Rarduvaure*, and 4. *Plinlimmon*: Not much obſervable but for their vaſt height, and thoſe many notable Rivers which iſſue from them. The principal whereof are, 1. *Dee*, in *Latin* called *Deva*, ariſing out of *Rarduvaure* Hills in *Merionethſhire*, and running into the Sea not far from *Cheſter*. Over this River, *Edgar*, King of *England*, was rowed triumphantly in his Barge by eight inferior Kings, Vaſſals and Tributaries to him, that is to ſay, *Kenneth*, King of the *Scots*; *Malcolm*, King of *Cumberland*; *Mac-cuis*, King of the Iſles; *Dufwal*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Jago*, and *Indethel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales*; uſing theſe words to ſuch as attended on him, that *then his Succeſſors might call themſelves Kings of* England *when they did the like.* This was in the Year 973. and the laſt of his Reign. 2. *Wie*, in *Latin* called *Vaga*, ariſing from *Plinlimmon*-Hills, and emptying it ſelf into the *Severn* at *Chepſtow*. More in the heart of the Country (for theſe are but borders for the greateſt part of their courſe.) 3. *Conwey*, which riſing in *Merionethſhire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4. *Tyvie*, which riſing in *Montgomery-ſhire*, and paſſing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Caermarthen*, runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5. *Chedlady*, which runneth quite through *Pembroke-ſhire*, emptieth it ſelf into *Milford-Haven*, one of the moſt capacious and ſafeſt Havens, not of *England* only, but of all the World.

The Men are of a faithful Carriage towards all Men, eſpecially towards one another in a ſtrange Country, and towards Strangers in their own. Of a temper queſtionleſs much enclining to Choler, as being ſubject to the Paſſion by *Ariſtotle* called ἀκροχολία, by which Men are quickly moved to Anger, and as ſoon appeaſed; of all Angers the beſt and nobleſt. Their Language (the old *Britiſh*) hath the leaſt commixture of foreign words of any in *Europe*; and by reaſon of its many Conſonants and guttural Letters, is not ſo pleaſing as ſome others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much ſtudied by thoſe of other Nations, in regard that ſuch of the Inhabitants who have addicted themſelves to Learning, have rather choſe to expreſs themſelves in the *Latin* or *Engliſh* Tongues, than that of their own Native Country. The principal of which (not to ſay any thing of *Merlin*, the *Tages* of the *Welch* or *Britiſh*) were 1. *Gildas*, for his great knowledge ſurnamed *Sapiens*. 2. *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and 3. *Giraldus Cambrenſis*, the Hiſtorians; and of later times, 4. *William Morgan*, the Tranſlator of the Bible into *Welch*, for which performance moſt deſervedly made Biſhop of *Landaff*. 5. Sir *John Price*, the Antiquary. 6. *Owen*, the Epigrammatiſt, *&c.*

The whole Country (not taking in the Counties of *Shropſhire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) contain in it twelve Shires only; of which, ſeven were ſet out by King *Edward* the Firſt; that is to ſay, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Angleſey*, and *Carnarvon*; the other five, *viz.* the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the *Marchlands* by King *Henry* VIII. Theſe twelve Shires are again contracted or ſubdivided into four Circuits, for the adminiſtration of Juſtice. Of which the firſt containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the ſecond thoſe of *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, and *Merioneth*; the third thoſe of *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth thoſe of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In theſe 12 Shires are reckoned one Chaſe, 13 Foreſts, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain alſo 1016 Pariſhes, amongſt which, four Cities, 55 Market-Towns, and 41 Caſtles of the old erection. The Cities ſmall, poor, and inconſiderable. The Market Towns, thoſe eſpecially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Country, very fair and ſtrong; as being not only built for Commerce and Trade, but fortified with Walls and Caſtles to keep in the *Welch*; and ſo employed till the incorporating *Wales* with *England*, took away all occaſion of the old Hoſtilities. And for the Caſtles in the Inlands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *edax rerum*, but chiefly by the Policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not ſuffer any places of ſtrength to remain in a Country almoſt inacceſſible, and amongſt Men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly, the four Cities (or Epiſcopal Sees) are 1. *St Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, ſituate on the Promontory in *Pembrokeſhire*, by the Ancients called *Octopitæ*; in a ſafe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* moſt feared, but incommodious enough for all the reſt of the Clergy to repair unto it; and not ſo ſafe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in reſpect of ſundry other Nations, who have often ſpoiled and defaced it. For ſtanding near the Sea, it hath been frequently viſited and ſpoiled by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other Pirates; inſomuch that the Biſhops were enforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen*; which brought the City (ſmall enough before, when it at the biggeſt) to the condition of a Village. 2. *Llandaffe*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the Name; *Llan*, in the *Welch* or *Britiſh*, ſignifying a Church; *Llandaffe*, the Church upon the *Taffe*: the Biſhops whereof derive their Lineal Succeſſion from thoſe of *Caer-Leon* upon *Uſk*, though the Primacy or Archbiſhop's See were removed to *Menew*, a ſmall Town now it is, God wot, nothing to rank it for a City but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends Houſes. 3. *S. Aſaph*, a ſmall Town in *Flint-ſhire*, ſo called from *S. Aſaph*, the ſecond Biſhop hereof; left here by *Kentigern* a *Scot*, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the Year 560. ſituate on the Banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *Llan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Biſhop *Elwynenſis* in ſome *Latin* Writers. 4. *Bangor* upon the *Menai*, a Branch of the *Iriſh* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the Cathedral founded here by the firſt Biſhops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards re-edified by *Henry Dean*, Biſhop hereof, *An.* 1496.

Towns of chief note (for theſe Cities have not ſo much in them which is worth the noting) are 1. *Shrewsbury*, counted now in *England*, but heretofore the Seat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, who had here their Palace; which being burnt in ſome of their Broils with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the uſe of the Townſmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *Engliſh*, the common Empory of both; well built, and ſtrongly ſituate on a riſing Ground, almoſt encompaſſed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery*, the firſt Earl hereof, *Anno* 1067. Over the River, for convenience of Paſſage, it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welch Bridge*, which is towards *Wales*; built by *Leoline* or *Llewellen* the Firſt, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*, whoſe they conceive to be that *Statua* which is there ſtanding on the Gate. Remarkable ſince the times of King *Henry* the Sixth, for giving the Title of Earl to the noble Family of the *Talbots*; a Family of great Honour, and as great an Eſtate, till the parcelling of the Lands betwixt the Daughters and Coheirs of *Gilbert Talbot*, late Earl hereof; according to the ill Cuſtom of *England*, where many times the Eſtate goes to the Females, and the Honour (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir-Male. 2. *Banchor*, by *Beda* called *Bancornaburg*, a famous Monaſtery of the *Britains*; containing above 2000 Monks, attending their Devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood; moſt cruelly and unmercifully ſlaughter'd by the *Saxons*, at the inſtigation of *Auſtin* the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yield unto his Authority. 3. *Caernarvon*, on the *Menai* before-mentioned, not far from *Bangor*, (the Monaſtery of *Banchor* being in *Flint-ſhire*) well walled, and fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle by King *Edward* the Firſt, after his Conqueſt of the Country, formerly much reſorted to, for the Chancery and Exchequer of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4. *Denbigh*, well ſeated on the Banks of the River *Iſtrad*, which from thence runs into the *Cluyd*, the faireſt River of all thoſe Parts. A Town well traded and frequented, eſpecially ſince it was made by King *Henry* the Eighth, the head Town of a County; before which time of great reſort, as being the head Town of the Barony of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodlieſt Territories in *England*; having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5. *Matravall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore a fair and capacious Town, honour'd with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powysland*, thence called Kings of *Matravall*; now a poor Village. 6. *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* anciently, whence the modern Name, the *Britains* adding *Caer* unto it; not called ſo from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, inchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fablers and Romances tell us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church; to which there was a purpoſe in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth, of removing the Epiſcopal See from *St. Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, ſtands *Dinevour*-Caſtle, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevour*; who had their Chancery and Exchequer in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7. *Haverford Weſt*, ſituated in the *Cherſoneſe*, or Demy-Iſland of *Pembrokeſhire*, by the *Welch* called *Roſs*; by the *Engliſh*, *Little-England* beyond *Wales*, by reaſon of the *Engliſh* Tongue there ſpoken; a Town the beſt traded and frequented of all *South-Wales*. 8. *Milford*, in the ſame County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving Name to the moſt ſafe and capacious Haven in all the Iſland, conſiſting of ſundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greateſt Navy: The Landing-place of *Henry* the Seventh, when he came for *England*. 9. *Monmouth*, ſituate at the mouth or influx of the River *Munow*. (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the Name. A Town belonging anciently to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, the Birth-place of King *Henry* the Fifth, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we ſhall add no more. 10. *Ludlow*, a Town of great reſort, by reaſon of the *Court and Council of the Marches*, kept here for the moſt part ever ſince the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the eaſe of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their Suits at Law. Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the Palace heretofore of ſome of the Princes of *Wales* of the Blood-Royal of *England*, at ſuch times as they reſided in this Country (of which more anon;) and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *Preſident of Wales*; now reckon'd as all *Shropſhire* on that ſide of the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Angleſey*, and the Towns thereof, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royal-Seat ſometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, called thence *Kings of Aberfraw*.

The Story of the *Britains* till the time of *Cadwallader* their laſt King, we have had before. After whoſe retirement unto *Rome*, the whole Name and Nation became divided into three Bodies; that is to ſay, the *Corniſh Britains*, the *Britains* of *Cumberland*, and the *Britains* of *Wales*. The *Corniſh Britains* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the firſt Monarch of *England*; by whom ſubdued, *An.* 809. and made a Province of that Kingdom. The *Britains* of *Cumberland* had their own Kings alſo, (ſome of whoſe Names occur in Story) till the Year 946. when conquered by *Edmund*, King of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtan*, their laſt King being named *Dummilus*, as *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* informs us. But the main Body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preſerve the Name and Reputation of their Country; although their Princes were no longer call'd *Kings of Britain*, but of the *Walliſhmen* or *Welch*; and much ado they had to make good that Title; all the plain Country beyond *Severn* being taken from them by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*; and themſelves made Tributaries for the reſt by *Egbert* beforementioned, by *Athelſtan* afterwards. Which laſt impoſed a Tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattel yearly; exchanged in following times for a Tribute of Wolves. But howſoever, they continued for a time the Title of Kings, whoſe Names are thus ſet down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, publiſhed by *Milles*.

The Kings of Wales.

A. Ch.
690 1 *Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*.
720 2 *Roderick*, Son of *Idwallo*. 33.
755 3 *Conan*, Son of *Roderic*. 63.
818 4 *Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.
843 5 *Roderick* II. ſurnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom, ſmall enough before, amongſt his Sons; giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarhawdh* his eldeſt Son; to *Cadel*, his ſecond Son, *Debeubarth*, or *South-Wales*; and *Powys-land* to his youngeſt Son *Mervin*; conditioned, that the two younger Sons and their Succeſſors, ſhould hold their Eſtates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the Sovereignty thereof, as *Liege-men* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Conſtitutions of *Howel Dha*, the Legiſlator of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in a way of Tribute to the Kings of *London*; ſo the Kings of *Dynevour* and *Matraval*, ſhould pay, in a way of Tribute, the like Sum to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithſtanding the reſervation of the Sovereigty to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solœciſm* in point of State, by this diſmembring of his Kingdom, eſpecially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occaſions to work upon the weakneſs of the neighbouring *Welch*; which had they continued under one ſole Prince, might have preſerved their Liberty, and themſelves a Kingdom, as well as thoſe of *Scotland*, for ſo long a time, againſt the Power and Puiſſance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worſt of the miſchief neither; his Succeſſors ſubdividing (by his example) their ſmall Eſtates into many parcels, inſomuch that of the Eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we muſt follow in our Story, according to the diviſion of the Country made by him into three Eſtates of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powys-land*.

1. NORTH-WALES, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvan*, the Iſle of *Angleſey*, and the greateſt parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-ſhires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Canarvan*, *Aberfraw*, ſpoken of before; and ſome in *Angleſey*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. The Country (*Angleſey* excepted) the moſt barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withal the ſafeſt and furtheſt from the danger of the encroaching *Engliſh*; which poſſibly might be the reaſon why it was ſet out for the portion of the Eldeſt Son, in whom the Sovereignty of the *Welch* was to be preſerved by the Kings or

Princes of North-Wales.

A. Ch.
877 1 *Amarawd*. 36.
913 2 *Idwallo*, Son of *Amarawd*.
3 *Merick*, Son of *Idwallo*.
4 *James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick*.
1076 5 *Conan*, Son of *James*, or *Jago*.
1099 6 *Gryffith ap Conan*.
1120 7 *Owen Guinedth*, Son of *Gryffyth*.
1178 8 *David ap Owen*, Son of *Owen Guinedth*.
1194 9 *Llewellen ap Jorweth*, the Nephew of *David*.
1240 10 *David ap Llewellen*.
1246 11 *Llewellen* II. Son of *Gryffyth*, the Brother of *David ap Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales*, of the *Britiſh* Race. Of whom it is ſaid, that once conſulting with a Witch, he was told by her that it was his deſtiny, to be carried in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his Head. Hereupon making ſome Excurſions on the *Engliſh* Borders, he drew upon himſelf the whole part of King *Edward* the Firſt, which not being able to withſtand, and the King as unwilling on the other ſide not to fight with Mountains, Commiſſioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and ſome others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welch* Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great Man of that Country, deſcended from *Breckwel Skythrack*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom if *Cambden Clarencieux* be of any credit, the Author of theſe Papers doth derive his Pedigree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-bearer*, and from thence their Name, *Heylyn, Promus, ſive a poculis, quæ vox in proprium nomen abiit* (,ſaith the *Welch* Dictionary.) By thoſe Commiſſioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* ſhould enjoy a part of the Country with the Title of Prince, during his Life; the reſt in preſent, and the whole after his Deceaſe, to be ſurrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David*, the Brother of *Llewellen*, finding himſelf excluded by this Agreement, from the hope of Succeſſion, incenſed his Brother and the *Welch* to a new Revolt; the iſſue thereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of Juſtice; and the death of *Llewellen*, ſlain in Battel near the *Buelth* in *Brecknock-ſhire*: Whoſe Head being pitched upon a Stake, and adorned with a Paper Crown, was by a Horſeman carried triumphantly through *London*, *An.* 1282. And ſo the Propheſie was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the ſpace of 405 Years reſiſted not only the private Undertakers and Adventurers of *England*, but the Forces of many Puiſſant Monarchs, whoſe Attempts they always made fruſtrate, by retiring into the heart of their Country, and leaving nothing for the *Engliſh* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period of the *Britiſh* Liberty being come, they were conſtrained to yield to the ſtronger. What followed after this, we ſhall ſee anon.

The Arms of theſe Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Paſſant Gardant counterchanged.

2. *POWYS-LAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery* and *Radnor*, all *Shropſhire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the reſt of *Denbigh* and *Flintſhires*; comprehending by the eſtimation of thoſe times, fifteen *Cantrets*, or *hundreds* of Villages; the word *Cant* ſignifying an Hundred, and *Tret* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns of it were, *St. Aſaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matraval*, ſpoken of before. A Country more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but always lying in harms way, by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *Engliſh*; and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngeſt Son, partly becauſe he was the youngeſt; but chiefly becauſe he was a Man of an approved Valour, and ſo more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and diſmembred by the Earls of *Cheſter* and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropſhire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who caſt many a greedy Eye upon it. Of the Succeſſors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Conſtat*, more than of *Brockwel Skythrac*, before remembred. The laſt that held it all entire was *Meredith ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc* and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Madoc* died at *Wincheſter*, *An.* 1160. in the time of King *Henry* the Second, his part hereof depending after his deceaſe, on the Fortunes of *Guinedth*: And *Gryffith* was by *Henry* I. made Lord of *Powys* (the ſtile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his Race it continued till the time of King *Edward* I. to whom, at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith*, the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredith* before-mentioned, ſurrendred his Place and Title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the Cuſtom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John Charleton*, *Valet* (or Gentleman of the Privy-Chamber) to King *Edward* the Second, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powys*. *Edward* the Fifth alſo of this Line of the *Charletons*, was the laſt of that Houſe; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Eſtates and Title to the Houſe of the *Greys*; and of them alſo five enjoyed it, the laſt Lord *Powys* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who died in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And ſo the Title lay extinct, until revived again in the Perſon of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-Caſtle*, deſcended from the *Herberts*, Earl of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys*, by King *Charles* the Firſt, *An.* 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powyſland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

3. *SOUTH-WALES*, or *Debeubarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greateſt and moſt fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more expoſed to the invaſion of Foreign Nations, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea Coaſts were from time to time moſt grievouſly plagued; inſomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were inforced to remove their Seat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at firſt, unto *Dynevour* Caſtle, as a place of greater ſtrength and ſafety; where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence *Kings of Dynevour*, as before is ſaid. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, *S. Davids*, ſpoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are theſe that follow,

The Princes of South-Wales.

A. Chr.

877 1 *Cadel*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.

2 *Howel*.

907 3 *Howel Dha*, Sovereign King of *Wales*.

948 4 *Owen*, the Son of *Dha*.

5 *Meredith*, Son of *Owen*.

998 6 *Aeneas*, or *Evenus*, Brother of *Meredith*.

7 *Theodoret* the Great.

1077 8 *Rheſe ap Theodore*.

1093 9 *Gryffith ap Rheſe*.

10 *Rheſe* II. *ap Gryffith*.

11 *Gryſſith ap Rheſe*, the laſt Prince of *South-Wales*, of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great ſtrugling maintained their Liberty for the ſpace of 300 Years and upwards; but ſo, that though they ſtill preſerved the Title of *Princes*, they loſt a great part of their Country to the *Norman-Engliſh*. For in the Reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Newmark* a Noble *Norman*, ſeized upon thoſe Parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordſhip: And *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with ſome other noble Adventurers, made themſelves Maſters of *Glamorgan*, in which the Poſterity of ſome of them are ſtill remaining. Incouraged by their good ſucceſs, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the Firſt, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeſhire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the ſame times did prevail exceedingly in the Conqueſt of *Cardigan* and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no Country left entire, but *Caermarthen* only, too little to maintain them in ſo high a Title. And though this laſt *Gryffith*, in the time of the Wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empreſs, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of his loſt Eſtate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himſelf deceaſing ſhortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith*, being taken by King *Henry* the Second, who moſt cruelly put out their Eyes: Yet did the *Welch*, as well as poſſibly they could, endeavour to preſerve the Liberty which their Fathers left them; till the Felicity and Wiſdom of King *Edward* the Firſt, put an end unto the Wars of *Wales*, and ſetled them in ſome degree of Peace and Quiet.

But before we come to ſpeak to this, we are to ſhew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the Succeſſion of them before laid down; and made according to the Hiſtory of *Wales*, writ by *Humphry Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the Succeſſion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Guynedth*, *Debeubarth*, or *Powys-land*; ſuch as gave Law unto the reſt, and had the honour to be called *Kings of Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the Monarchs of the *Engliſh Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchy*. Only we ſhall find ſome in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expreſſed in the former Tables; but ſuch as by ſtrong hand had intruded into thoſe Eſtates, to the prejudice of the right Heirs, overpower'd by them.

The Kings and Princes of Wales, *according to the* Welch *Hiſtory*.

A. Ch.

688 1 *Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwallader's* departure uſurped the Kingdom.

690 2 *Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwallader*, reſtored unto his Father's Throne.

720 3 *Roderick Malwinnoe*, the Son of *Idwallo*.

755 4 *Conan Tieudaethwy*, the Son of *Roderick*.

820 5 *Mervin Urich*, in right of *Eiſylht* his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.

843 6 *Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Eſtates) the Son of *Mervin*.

877 7 *Amarawdh*, Prince of *Guynedth*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.

913 8 *Edwal Voel*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Amarawdh*; made tributary to *Athelſtan* King of *England*.

940 9 *Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Debeubarth*, and *Powys*.

948	10	*Jevaf*, and *Jago*, Sons of *Edwal Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did releaſe the Tribute ordained by King *Athelſtan*, to be paid in Money, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we ſpake before when we were in *England*.
982	11	*Howel*, the Son of *Jevaf*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being ſtill alive, and of right Prince of *Guynedth*.
984	12	*Cadwallan*, the Brother of *Howel*.
986	13	*Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*.
992	14	*Edwal* III. Son of *Merick*, the Eldeſt Son of *Edwal Voel*; which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
1003	15	*Aeden ap Blethored*, an Uſurper.
1015	16	*Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, deſcended from *Amarawdh*, the firſt Prince of *Guynedth*, or *North-Wales*.
1021	17	*Jago ap Edwal*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Edwal* the Third.
1037	18	*Gryffith ap Llewellen*, the Son of *Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
1061	19	*Blethyn*, and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Dehenbarth*, by a ſecond Husband.
1073	20	*Trahaern ap Caradoc*, Couſin to *Blethyn*.
1078	21	*Gryffith*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Jago ap Edwal*, one of the Princes of the ſame, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the laſt that had the Title of King of *Wales*.
1137	22	*Owen Guinedth* Prince of *Guinedth*, and Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, eldeſt Son of *Gryffith*.
1169	23	*David ap Owen*, Prince of *Guinedth*, the younger Son of *Owen Guinedth*.
1194	24	*Llewellen*, Son of *Jorwerth*, eldeſt Son of *Owen Guinedth*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
1242	25	*David ap Llewellen*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Llewellen ap Jorwerth*.
1246	26	*Llewellen*, Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the laſt Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, of the Race of *Cadwallader*; overcome and ſlain in Battel by King *Edward* the Firſt, *An.* 1282. as before is ſaid; by means whereof the Principality of *Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great buſineſs, he gave unto his *Engliſh* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signiories and Eſtates; as well to reward them for their ſervice in the Conqueſt, as to engage ſo many able Men, both in Purſe and Power, for the perpetual defence and ſubjection of it. As for the Lordſhip of *Flint*, and the Towns and Eſtates lying on the Sea coaſts, he held them in his own hands, both to keep himſelf ſtrong, and to curb the *Welch*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperor *Auguſtus*) pretending the eaſe of ſuch as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and Men of employment under himſelf only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into ſeven Shires, *viz.* 1. *Glamorgan*, 2. *Caermardhen*, 3. *Pembroke*, 4. *Cardegan*, 5. *Merioneth*, 6. *Caernarvon*, and 7. *Angleſey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of theſe, as he placed a particular *Engliſh* Lieutenant, ſo he was very deſirous to have one general *Engliſh* Vicegerent, over the whole Body of the *Welch*. But this, when they mainly withſtood he ſent for his Wife, then great with Child, to *Carnarvon*, where ſhe was deliver'd of a Son. Upon the news whereof the King aſſembled the *Britiſh* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could not ſpeak one word of *Engliſh*, and whoſe Life no Man could tax. Such a one, when they had all ſworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; ſince which time our Kings eldeſt Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. There *Inveſtiture* is perform'd by the impoſition of a Cap of Eſtate, and a *Coronet* on his Head that is inveſted, as a token of his Principality; by delivering into his hand a *Verge*, being the emblem of Government; by putting a Ring of Gold on his Finger, to ſhew him that now he is a Husband to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a Patent, *to hold the ſaid Principality to him and his Heirs Kings of* England. By which words the ſeparation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themſelves ſo excellent an occaſion, of obliging unto them their eldeſt Son, when they pleaſe. In imitation of this Cuſtom, *more ex* Anglia *tranſlato* (ſaith *Mariana*) *John* the Firſt of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Aſturians*; which is a Country ſo craggy and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spaniſh* Princes even to theſe times, are honoured with this Title of *Prince of the Aſturians*.

Notwithſtanding this provident care of *Edward* the Firſt, in eſtabliſhing his Empire here; and the extream rigour of Law here uſed by *Henry* the Fourth, in reducing them to obedience, after the Rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the Eighth, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welch* Blood) they ſeldom or never contained themſelves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by Act of Parliament) one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame Preferments, and priviledged with the ſame Immunities. He added alſo ſix Shires to the former number, out of thoſe Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and *Marches of Wales*; and inabled them to ſend Knights and Burgeſſes into the *Engliſh* Parliaments; ſo that the Name and Language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*; an happy Union.

The ſame King *Henry* eſtabliſhed for the eaſe of his *Welch* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow* like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*; wherein the Laws are miniſtred according to the faſhion of the Kings Courts of *Weſtminſter*. The Court conſiſteth of one *Preſident*, who is, for the moſt part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord Preſident of Wales*; of as many Counſellors as it ſhall pleaſe the King to appoint; one Attorney, one Solicitor, one Secretary, and the four Juſtices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town it ſelf (for this muſt not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Caſtle, which hath been the Palace of ſuch Princes of *Wales*, of the *Engliſh* Blood, as have come into this Country, to ſolace themſelves among their People. Here was young *Edward* the Fifth, at the death of his Father; and here died Prince *Arthur*, eldeſt Son of *Henry* the Seventh; both being ſent hither by their Fathers to the ſame end, *viz.* by their Preſence to ſatisfie and keep in order the unquiet *Welch men*. And certainly, as the preſence of the *Prince* was then a terror to the rebellious, ſo would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable People.

What the *Revenues* of this *Principality* are, I cannot ſay, yet we may boldly affirm, that they are not very ſmall, by theſe reaſons following, *viz.* 1. By the Compoſition which *Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the Firſt; who being Prince of *North-Wales* only, and diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of that, was fain to redeem the reſt, of the ſaid King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 10000 Pounds of our preſent Money) to be paid down in ready Coin; and for the reſidue to pay 1000 *l. per Annum*. And 2*dly*, by thoſe two circumſtances, in the marriage of the Lady *Catharine* of *Spain*, to the above-named Prince *Arthur*. For firſt, her Father *Ferdinand* being one of the warieſt Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for Jointure, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Cheſter*. And ſecondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perſwaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that ſo great a Treaſure as the yearly Revenue of her Jointure might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from thoſe of *England*, only by the addition of a *Label* of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with three *Oſtrich* Feathers, and inſcribed round with ICH DIEN, that is, *I ſerve*; alluding to that of the Apoſtle, *The Heir while he is a Child, differeth not from a Servant.* This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the Black Prince, at the Battel of *Creſcie*, from *John* King of *Bohemia*; who did there wear it, and whom he there ſlew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now ſhut up my Diſcourſe of *Wales*, with that teſtimony of the People, which *Henry* the Second uſed in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*; *The Welch Nation is ſo adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed Men; ready to ſpend their Blood for their Country, and pawn their Life for Praiſe*: And adding only this, That ſince their incorporating with the *Engliſh*, they have ſhewed themſelves moſt loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State; cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the beſt of their Fellow-Subjects; whereof they have given good proof in theſe latter times.

There are in *Wales*.
Archbiſhops 0. Biſhops 4.

The BORDERS.

BEfore we come into *Scotland*, we muſt of neceſſity paſs through that Batable Ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called, *THE BORDERS*; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of Military Men, ſubtile, nimble, and by reaſon of their often Skirmiſhes, well-experienced and adventurous. Once the *Engliſh* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the Eaſt, and that of *Dunbritton* on the Weſt (the firſt *Fryth*, by the *Latins* called *Bodotria*, and the latter *Glotta*:) betwixt which, where now ſtandeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an ancient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*; on a Croſs ſtanding whereupon, was writ this Paſport;

I am Free-march, *as Paſſengers may ken,*
To Scots, *to* Britains, *and to* Engliſh-men.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Daniſh* Oppreſſion, the *Scots* well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but alſo took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Weſtmorland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered theſe Provinces, making the *Borders* of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, Eaſt; the *Solway*, Weſt; and the *Cheviot*-Hills in the midſt. Of any great Wars made on theſe *Borders*, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the Firſt; who taking advantage of the *Scots* diſagreements about the Succeſſor of *Alexander* the Third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of *England*. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end; the Wars ſurviving the Author: ſo that what *Velleius* ſaith of the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, I may as well ſay of the *Scots* and *Engliſh*. For almoſt 300 Years together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli præparatio, aut infida pax fuit*, there was either a War, or a preparation for one, or an uncertain faithleſs Peace. In moſt of theſe conflicts the *Scots* had the worſt. So that *Daniel* in his Hiſtory ſeemeth to marvail how this corner of the Iſle could breed ſo many, had it bred nothing but Men, as were ſlain in theſe Wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the Second, the *Scots* (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became ſo terrible to the *Engliſh Borderers*, that an hundred of them would fly from three *Scots*. It is a Cuſtom among the *Turks*, not to believe a *Chriſtian*, or a *Jew*, complaining againſt a *Turk*, except their Accuſation be confirmed by the Teſtimony of ſome *Turk* alſo; which ſeldom hapning, is not the leaſt cauſe why ſo little Juſtice is there done to the *Chriſtians*. In like manner, it is the Law of theſe *Borderers*, never to believe any *Scots* complaining againſt any *Engliſh-man*, unleſs ſome other *Engliſh-man* will witneſs for him; and ſo on the other ſide. *Ex jure quodam inter limitaneos rato* (ſaith *Cambden* in his *Elizab.*) *nullus niſi Scotus in Scotum, nullus niſi Anglus in Anglum, teſtis admittitur.* This Cuſtom making void in this faſhion all kinds of Accuſations, was one of the greateſt cauſes of the Inſolencies of both ſides committed. Beſides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but ſometime were *Scots*, ſometime *Engliſh*, as their preſent Crimes and Neceſſities required Protection or Pardon. To keep in this People, and to ſecure their *Borders*, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*; one being placed over the Eaſt, the other over the Weſt, the third over the middle *Borders*. In *England*, the *Warden* of the Eaſt *Marches* had his Seat at *Berwick*, (a Town of great Strength, and which for the conveniency of its ſituation, was the firſt thing which the *Engliſh* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to ſurpriſe) of which he was alſo Governour. The *Warden* of the Weſt Marches had his Seat in *Caliſle*, which *Henry* the Eighth for that cauſe well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle Marches had no ſet place o reſidence, but was ſometimes in one place, ſometimes in another, according as occaſion required; the Office being executed for the moſt part, by the Wardens of the Eaſtern or Weſtern Marches. But *Imperii medium eſt, terminus ante fuit*, by the bleſſed Marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; theſe Officers, and the cauſe of them, the Wars, are quite extinguiſhed.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, ſeparated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot*-Hills, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 Miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place diſtant from the Sea above 60 Miles, and the Country ending like the ſharp point of a Wedge. And for the length aſſigned unto it by *Polydore*, it muſt be made up by meaſuring the Crooks and Windings of the Shores, every where thruſting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land: For meaſuring in a ſtrait Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Fryth* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten *Italian* Miles; and from *Berwick* unto *Straitby-head*, is a great deal ſhorter. So that there is no ſuch over-ſight in the Maps of *Britain*, nor ſuch neceſſity to correct them, as was ſometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii*, a chief People of it: ſometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the moſt uſual Name is *Scotia* or *Scotland*; though the reaſon of the Name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Ægyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reaſon (though that none of the beſt) from the *Scotti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmartian* People, of noted fame; whom they will have to ſeize firſt on ſome parts of *Spain*, from thence tranſplant themſelves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable Opinion is, that they were no other than mere *Iriſh*, (whoſe Language, Habit, and the moſt barbarous of their Cuſtoms, the *Highlanders* or natural *Scots* do ſtill retain) united in the Name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* ſignifying in their Language, a Body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*, *Scot illud dicitur*, (ſaith *Cambden* out of *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*) *quod ex diverſis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. Firſt mentioned by this Name in ſome fragments of *Porphyry* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*) as they are cited by S. *Hierom*; after the death of *Conſtantine* much ſpoken of in approved Authors, as the Confederates of the *Picts*, in haraſſing the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Iriſh Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the Weſt parts of the Continent adjoining to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Iriſh* at this day; not to be civiliz'd (as King *James* obſerved in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron*) *but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots among them.* Amongſt the manifold Calamities that afflicted theſe Kingdoms, between the Years 1640. and 1660. and particularly *Scotland*, one good thing, which was not expected, happened, and that was the civilizing of the *Highlanders*, partly by the Earl of *Montroſs*, and partly by the *Engliſh*; ſo that they are now quite another People than they were before, tho' that brave Earl periſhed in his attempt to reſtore the Royal Family. The *Lowlanders* or *Engliſh Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this ſide the two *Fryths* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countries along the *German* Ocean, are the more civil of the two, as being of the ſame *Saxon* Race with the *Engliſh*. This is evident, firſt by their Language, being only a broad Northern *Engliſh*, a Dialect only of that Tongue. 2. By the teſtimony of the *Highlanders* themſelves, who are the true *Scots*, and ſpeak the old *Iriſh* Language, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *Engliſh* are called by the ſame Name of *Saxons*. 3. By the general conſent of all Hiſtorians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *Engliſh Saxons*, beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Fryths* before-mentioned; and there continued for the ſpace of 300 Years. And 4. By the confeſſion of ſome ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, That the *Saxons* and *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the ſame time, the *Saxons* might extort the Eaſtern Shore lying next their Country, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Weſtern parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Weſtern Iſlands*, from whence they firſt paſſed into *Britain*.

The Country for the moſt part, eſpecially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford ſuſtenance for the Natives of it; were they not a People patient of Want and Hunger, temperate in Diet, and not accuſtomed unto that Riot and Exceſs, uſed commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many Trees, either for Building or for Fewel; the People holding, as in *France*, at the *Will of the Lord*, and therefore not induſtrious to build or plant. Their chief Commodities are courſe Cloth; Fiſh in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two laſt their Mountains do afford ſome rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their beſt Writers, for ſome barbarous Cuſtoms entertain'd amongſt them. One of which was, If any two were diſpleaſed, they expected no Law, but bang'd it out bravely, one and his Kindred, againſt the other and his; and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the Peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word ſo barbarous, that were it to be expreſſed in *Latin* or *French*, it muſt be by *Circumlocution*. Theſe deadly *Feides*, King *James* in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron*, adviſeth his Son to redreſs with all care poſſible; but it pleaſed God to give him ſo long a Life as to ſee it in his own days remedied; wherein he got a greater Victory over that ſtubborn People, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predeceſſors could do before him, an Act indeed truly Royal, and worthy himſelf. Another Cuſtom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongſt the Heathen, and much leſs in *Chriſtendom*, which took beginning, as the *Scotiſh* Hiſtorians affirm, in the Reign of *Ewen* III. who is the Fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the firſt *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto Laſciviouſneſs, made a Law, that himſelf and his Succeſſors ſhould have the *Maidenhead*, or firſt Nights lodging with every Woman, whoſe Husband held Land immediately from the Crown; and the Lords and Gentlemen of all thoſe whoſe Husbands were their Tenants or *Homagers*. This was, it ſeems, the *Knights-ſervice* which Men held their Eſtates by; and continued till the Days of *Malcolm Conmor*; who, at the requeſt of his Wife *Margaret*, (ſhe was the Siſter of *Edgar Atheling*) aboliſhed this Law, and ordained, That the Tenants, by way of commutation, ſhould pay unto their Lords a Mark in Money; which Tribute the *Hiſtorians* ſay is ſtill in force. It was called *Marcheta mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a Horſe in the old *Gallique* (implying the obſcene ſignification of

Equitare) as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or from *Marca*, the ſum of money by which it was afterwards redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am, that this laſt Cuſtom was of ſuch a barbarous and brutiſh Nature, that the Cuſtom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramine* the firſt nights Lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in proſtituting their Wives and Daughters to the Luſts and Pleaſure of their *Gueſts*; have not more *unchriſtianity* in them, than this of thoſe *Scottiſh* Chriſtians, if I may ſo call them.

Theſe Cuſtoms ſhew the ancient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the Neighbouring Nation; nor are they ſo broken of the former, but that they are obſerved by a *modern Writer*, to be ſtill greedy of Revenge where they find means to take it; as alſo to be a ſubtile and politick People, inclined to Factions and Seditions amongſt themſelves; which he that reads their Stories cannot chooſe but ſee. A People, as King *James* obſerveth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, ever weary of the preſent State, and deſirous of Novelties, accuſtomed to judge and ſpeak raſhly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themſelves with ſuch untractableneſs, that more Kings have been betrayed, murthered and depoſed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themſelves without theſe relations, and they are ſaid to be an induſtrious People, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well verſed in *Grammatical* Learning, of which moſt of their *Gentry* have a ſmattering. And of moſt note in point of Learning, have been 1. *Marianus* (ſurnamed) *Scotus*, and 2. *Hector Boetius*, the Hiſtorians. 3. *John Major*, a well known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4. *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unſound *States-man*; whoſe Hiſtory, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more miſchief in the World, than all *Machivels* Works. Not to have been remembred here, but becauſe he was Pædagogue to 5. King *James*, of moſt famous memory; whoſe Printed works declare his large Abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6. *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiſton*. 7, 8. *Barcklay*, the Father and the Son. 9. *John Skene*, the beſt Antiquary of this Nation. 10. Doctor *John Maxwel*, the late learned Biſhop of *Roß*, and my very good friend; beſides ſome others of leſs note.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was here planted by divers Men according to their ſeveral Nations, who did here inhabit amongſt the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan* the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*, or *Holy-Iſland*; amongſt the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eaſtern parts, by *Nimas*, Biſhop of *Candida Caſa*, or *Whitherne*, in *Galloway*; amongſt the *Northern Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongſt the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, ſent to them hither for that purpoſe by Pope *Celeſtine*, An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the *Reformation* of *Religion*, overgrown with the ruſt and rubbiſh of the *Romiſh* Church, (degenerated from it ſelf in the latter days) it was here made by a ſtrong hand, according to the judgment of *Knox* and others; not taking counſel with the *Prelates*, nor ſtaying the leiſure of the Prince as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates*, out of all Authority; made by that means, more naturally ſubject unto alterations, than it had been otherwiſe; or only to be made good by the ſame violence which firſt introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while being in danger of the *French*, and of neceſſity to ſupport themſelves by the power and favour of the *Engliſh*; they bound themſelves by a ſolemn Subſcription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to obſerve that form of Worſhip which was there eſtabliſhed. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus ſubſcripſerunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Hiſtorian. But no ſooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leiſure to affect their ends; and have endeavoured ever ſince by practices, and correſpondency with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thruſt their own Conſtitutions and Form of Worſhip on the Church of *England*, which at laſt ended in the ruine of it even in *Scotland*; and at the Reſtitution of *Charles* the II. ſetled that Kingdom under Epiſcopacy again, though without a Liturgy.

This Kingdom in the Revolution in 1688. received another great change; The Epiſcopal Party ſtanding at a Gaze, to ſee what would be the iſſue of the ſtruggle in *England*: The *Presbyterian* Party fell into Tumults and Outrageous Violences, and having picked a *Convention* of their own Creatures, whilſt few or none of the other Party endeavoured to be choſen. They fairly voted the *Geneva* Diſcipline more agreeable to the People of *Scotland*, than Epiſcopacy; and therefore once more laid it aſide, and ſet up the other. How long it will laſt is uncertain; but it ſeems to have no very firm Foundation, by the Violences were uſed to bring it in, and the Difficulty they have had to keep it. That *Convention* being kept on foot to this day, for reaſons beſt known to themſelves. As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Biſhops, (as in all parts elſe;) but ſo as they exerciſe their Functions and Juriſdictions in all places equally, whereſoever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceſſes*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third *An.* 1070, or thereabout. Nor had they any Archbiſhops till the year 1478. The Archbiſhop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the *Metropolitan* of *Scotland*. But being once ſetled in an orderly and conſtant *Hierarchy*, they held the ſame until the *Reformation* began by *Knox*, and when he and his Aſſociates approving the *Genevian* Plat-form, took the advantage of the Minority of King *James* the Sixth, to introduce the *Presbyterian* Diſcipline, and ſuppreſs the Biſhops; forbidding them by their own ſole Authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the *Church*; and *Cantoning* the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own aſſigning. And that the King might not be able to oppoſe their doings, they kept him under by ſtrong hand, Impriſoned him at *Sterling*, made him fly from *Edenburg*; removed from him all his faithful Servants, and ſeized upon his principal Fortreſſes: and in a word, ſo baffled and affronted him upon all occaſions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*, which doubtleſs he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by ſome of great place, and power) had not the hopes of coming at the laſt to the Crown of *England*, made him ſtay it out: So that his *Maxim* of *No Biſhop, No King*, was not made at random, but founded on the ſad experience of his own condition. And though upon the ſenſe of thoſe inconveniencies, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, reſtore again the *Epiſcopal* Order, and ſettle it both by *Synodical* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament; yet the ſame reſtleſs Spirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Son, *An.* 1638. did violently eject the Biſhops, and ſuppreſs the Calling; and ſet up their Presbyteries throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Country are, 1. The Lake of *Nirton*, part of whoſe waters do congeal in Winter, and part of them not. 2. That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 Miles in compaſs, The Fiſh are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3. That when there is no wind ſtirring, the Waters of the ſaid Lake are ſo Tempeſtuous, that no Marriner dares venture on it. 4. That there is a Stone called the *Deaf-ſtone*, 12 foot high, and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket ſhot off on the one ſide, cannot be heard by a man ſtanding on the other. If it be otherwiſe (as he muſt have a ſtrong Faith who believes theſe wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot* Hills upon the *Borders*; and Mount *Grampius*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; the ſafeſt ſhelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Bri-*

tains againſt the *Romans*. and of the *Scots* againſt the *Engliſh*; now called the Hills of *Albany*, or the Mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of theſe ſpringeth the 1. *Tay*, or *Taus*, the faireſt River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the Eaſt ſide; and 2. the *Cluyd*, emptying it ſelf into *Dunbritten Frith*, on the Weſt ſide of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of moſt note, are, the 3. *Banoc*, emptying it ſelf into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*; on the Banks whereof was fought that fatal Battel of *Bannocks bourn*, of which more anon. 4. *Spey*, 5. *Dee*, the *Ocaſa* of *Ptolomy*; none of them of any long courſe, by reaſon that the Country Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to *Eccleſiaſtical* Affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceſſes, to which the Dioceſs of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of S. *Andrews*) hath been lately added; and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneſchalſies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the moſt part hereditary, are no ſmall hindrance to the due execution of Juſtice. So that the readieſt way to redreſs the miſchief (as King *James* adviſed) is to diſpoſe of them as they fall, or Eſcheat to the Crown, according to the laudable cuſtom (in that caſe) in *England*.

The greateſt *Friends* of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots* ſhewed themſelves ſo faithful, that the *French* King committed the defence of his Perſon to a ſelect number of *Scottiſh* Gentlemen; and ſo valiant, that they have much hindred the *Engliſh* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the ſmart of the *Engliſh* Puiſſance alone, have continually heartned the *Scots* in their Attempts againſt *England*, and hindred all means of making Union betwixt them; as appeared, when they brake the Match agreed on, between our *Edward* the Sixth, and *Mary*, the young Queen of *Scots*. Their greateſt Enemy was the *Engliſh*, who overcame them in many Battels, ſeized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and unacceſſible Woods had not been more advantagious to the *Scots*, than their Power; for ſo much King *James* ſeemeth to intimate in his Speech at *White-hall*, 1607. *And though*, ſaith he, *the* Scots *had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the* Defenſible *ſide; and may in part thank their Hills and inacceſſible Paſſages, that ſaved them from an utter Overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them.* But

Jam cuncti gens una ſumus, ſic ſimus in ævum:

One only Nation now are we,
And let us ſo for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Caſtrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Courts of Juſtice. It conſiſteth chiefly of one Street extending in length one Mile, into which run many pretty Lanes; ſo that the whole compaſs may be nigh three Miles, extending from Eaſt to Weſt on a riſing Ground, at the ſummit or Weſt end whereof ſtandeth a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep and precipitious Rock, which commandeth the Town; ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtrum Alatum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*. Under the command, or rather the Protection of which Caſtle, and through the Neighbourhood of *Leith*, ſtanding on the *Fryth*, and ſerving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Juſtice, and the Court Royal, called *Holy-Rood-Houſe* it ſoon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withal Factious and Seditious, conteſting with their Kings, or ſiding againſt them upon all occaſions. No way to humble them, add keep them in obedience to their Sovereign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it with the Priviledges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear than all the Plagues that can befal them. It belonged in former times to the *Engliſh Saxons*, (as all the reſt of the Country from the *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom, oppreſſed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, Anno 800, or thereabouts. 2. *Sterling*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom ſo called; a ſtrong Town, and beautified withal with a very fair Caſtle, the Birth-place of King *James* the Sixth, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, happned the moſt memorable diſcomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *Engliſh*; who beſides many Lords and 700 Knights and Men of Note, loſt in this Fight (as the *Scottiſh* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Soldiers (our *Engliſh* Hiſtorians confeſs 10000, and too many of that) the King himſelf *Edward* the II.) being compelled to flie for his Life and Safety. Some of the *Scotiſh* Writers tell us, that the purer ſort of Silver, which we call *Sterling*-Money, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our Silver *Bullion* comes from *Bullion* in *Luyckland*, or from the Port of *Bulloin* in *France*; the truth being that it took that name from the *Eaſterlings* or Merchants of *Eaſt-Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *John* to refine our Coin. 3. *Glaſco*, in *Cluidſdale*, honoured with an Archbiſhops See, and a publick School (to which ſome give the name of an Univerſity) founded here by Archbiſhop *Turnbul*, Anno 1554. 4. S. *Andrews* the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiſcopal See, and an Univerſity; by the *Latines* called *Fanum Reguli*; which, and the *Engliſh* Name, it took from the bones of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, tranſlated firſt from *Patras* in *Peloponneſus*, where he ſuffered death, unto *Conſtantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the year 378. (if they be not miſtaken in the time, who made the Story.) Over which Relicks he is ſaid to have built a Monaſtery, which after grew to be a City; called from the Founder *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint S. *Andrew*. The Biſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *Scotland*; the City ſeated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a ſtrong and goodly Caſtle, the Archbiſhops Seat. 5. *Falkland*, in the ſame Province or *Fife*, beautified with a retiring Houſe of the Kings, reſorting thither, often on receſs from Buſineſs, or for the commodity and pleaſure of Hunting, which the place affords. 6. *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Taodunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Taye*, the chief Town of *Anguis*. 7: *Aber-don*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it had the name, (the word *Aber* in the *Britiſh*, ſignifying the mouth or influx of a River) an Univerſity, and Biſhops See. 8. *Perth*, or St. *Johns Town*, ſeated on the *Taye*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and repleniſhed with an induſtrious People: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9. *Scone*, on the farther ſide of the *Taye*, adorned heretofore with a famous *Monaſtery*; the uſual place for the inauguration of the *Scottiſh* Kings, the fatal ſtone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scottiſh* Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Weſtminſter*, by King *Edward* the firſt. Upon which ſtone there were of old ingraven theſe Verſes.

Non fallat fatum, Scoti *quocunque locatum*
Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.

Tranſlated into old Meeter thus:

The *Scots* ſhall brook that Realm as native ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, whereere this *Stone* is found.

Moſt happily accompliſhed in the Succeſſion of King *James* the Sixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10. *Dumbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) ſeated in a graſſie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Cluyd*, upon two ſteep and precipicious Rocks, flanked on the Weſt with the ſaid two Rivers, and on the Eaſt with a miry Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the ſtrongeſt hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famine or Treaſon, and the chief Town of the Weſt ſide of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoining.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, poſſeſſing *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *March* and *Lothien*, whoſe chief City was *Caſtra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2. The *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydſdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*; and *Menteith*, whoſe chief City was *Vanduara*, now *Renfraw*; *Lindum*, now *Linlithquo*. 3. The *Selgovæ* inhabited in *Liddiſdale*, *Tividale*, *Eskdale*, *Annondale*, and *Niddiſdale*, whoſe chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4. The *Noventes*, containing *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*, Principal places of the which were, *Lucopibia*, now *Withern*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the *Province* amongſt the *Picts* or *barbarous Britains*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatæ*, the Nations of moſt Note were, 5. The *Caledonii* properly ſo called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6. The *Vermines* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7. The *Talzali* of *Buquhan*. 8. The *Vacomagi* of *Loqubabre* and *Murray*. 9. The *Cantæ* of *Roſs* and *Sutherland*. 10. The *Contini* of *Cathneſs*; and 11. The *Cornubii* of *Strathnavern*, the furtheſt Country Northward of all the Iſland. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatia*, *Orea*, *Devana*, and *Tueſiis*, which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this People, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been ſhewed before. On the withdrawing of whoſe Forces, ſo much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*, the reſidue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*; ſave that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themſelves Maſters alſo of the plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the paſſage out of *Germany*, was both ſhort and eaſie. By which accompt, beſides thoſe places in the Eaſt, they were poſſeſſed of the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *March*, *Lothien*, *Liddiſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Niddiſdale*, *Cluydſdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richeſt and moſt flouriſhing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorne*, *Loqubabre*, and *Strathnavern*, lying on the Weſt and North: the other Northern moiety (excepting ſome parts near the Coaſt of the *German* Ocean poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Cathneſs* *Southerland*, *Roſs*, *Murray*, *Buquham*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Athol*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into theſe parts; hath been ſhewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of thoſe who will have them to deſcend from the *Agathyrſi*, a People of *Scythia*) they were no other than ſuch of the natural *Britains*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but ſtill preſerved their Country in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Tertullian*, *in acceſſa* Romanis *loca*, as indeed they were; and uſing ſtill their ancient Cuſtom of painting their Bodies; after the reſt of their Countrymen had conformed themſelves to more civil courſes, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*: and by that name firſt mentioned in the *Paneygyrick* of *Eunomius*, in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great. They long poſſeſſed theſe parts, without an *Inmate*, even till the year 424; when the *Iriſh Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly poſſeſſed themſelves of the Weſtern Iſles, firſt ſet foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continual War, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Weſtern parts, and withdraw themſelves into the Eaſtern. Afterwards growing into better terms with the other, and willing to enlarge their Borders towards the more flouriſhing *South*, they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League againſt the *Britains*; who on all ſides, they moſt miſerably tortured, till vanquiſhed and beaten back by the conquering *Saxons*, againſt whom they contracted a new *Confederacy*. Taking the advantage of the death of *Ethelred* King of the *Northumbers*, and the Invaſion of the *Danes* on the reſt of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or ſo much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Twede*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forwards as a part of their Dominions. But this good Neighbourhood held not long betwixt theſe two Nations. It hapned at the laſt, that *Achains* King of the *Scots*, married *Ferguſia*; Siſter unto *Hunguſt*, King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hunguſt* dying without Iſſue, and having none of a nearer Kindred, was in the Judgment of the *Scots*, to ſucceed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alledging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, choſe one *Ferreth* of their own Nation, to be their King; with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, Victorious, for the moſt part, in concluſion ſlain. The quarrel notwithſtanding did remain betwixt the two unfriendly Nations, till at the laſt, after many bloody Battels, and mutual over-throws (the *Scots* being for the moſt part on the loſing ſide) *Kenneth*, the ſecond of that Name, vanquiſhed *Donsken*, the laſt King of the *Picts*, with ſo great a ſlaughter of his People, that he extinguiſhed not their Kingdom only, but their very Name; paſſing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictiſh* Nation; unleſs perhaps we will believe that ſome of them paſſed into *France*; and there, forſooth, ſubdued that Country which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I ſhall begin the ſame with *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name in the Accompt of their Hiſtorians; leaving out that rabble of 39 Kings (half of them at the leaſt before *Chriſts* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Claſſick* Authors. Neither ſhall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more Judicious and underſtanding Men of the *Scottiſh* Nation, (and for others I take little care) ſince I deal no more unkindly with their firſt *Fergus* and his Succeſſors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his: The firſt *Scottiſh* King that ſetled himſelf in the North of *Britain*, is according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyl* governed the *Britains*, came (forſooth) into theſe parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued Succeſſion: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is ſaid to have been expelled the Iſland, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britains*, and *Picts*. Twenty and ſeven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their poſſeſſions here, by the Valour and Conduct of another *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scottiſh* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the ſtories of the former 39 Kings to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this Aſſertion, this Expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain* being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*, at what time the beſt Writers of the *Roman* Story, for thoſe times, report the *Scots* to have firſt ſeated themſelves in this Iſland.

The Kings of chief note in the courſe of the whole Succeſſion are, 1. *Achaius*, who died in the year 809. and in his Life contracted the Offenſive and Defenſive League with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The Conditions whereof were, 1. Let this League between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2. Let the Enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the Enemies of the other; 3. if the *Saxons* or *Engliſh-men* Invade *France*, the *Scots* ſhall ſend thither ſuch numbers of Soldiers as ſhall be deſired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4. If the *Engliſh* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* ſhall at his own charges ſend competent aſſiſtance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any League, which was either more faithfully obſerved, or longer continued, than this between theſe two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occaſions ſo readily aſſiſting the *French*, that it grew to a Proverb, or by-word, *He that will* France *win*, *muſt* *with* Scotland *firſt begin.* 2. *Kenneth* the 2*d*, who having utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the preſent *Scotland*, deſerved to be accompted the firſt *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or ſo few in number, that they paſſed afterwards in the name and accompts of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3. *Malcolm* the firſt, who added *Weſtmerland* and *Cumberland*, unto his Dominion, given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtane*, to have his aid againſt the *Danes*, or to keep him neutral. After which time, thoſe Counties were ſometimes *Scottiſh*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the Second, and united to the Crown of *England*; never ſince disjoyned. 4. *Kenneth* the Third, who by conſent of the Eſtates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *Hereditary*, to deſcend from the Father to his Eldeſt Son, before which time (keeping within the compaſs of the Royal Family) the *Uncle* was ſometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldeſt in years, though furtheſt off, before the younger Kinſman, though the nearer in Blood. After which time (the oppoſition and interruption made by *Conſtantine* the Third, and *Donald* the fourth excepted) only the eldeſt Sons of theſe Kings, or the next in Birth, have ſucceeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of thoſe Tributaries and *Vaſſal Kings*, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee* near *Cheſter*, in ſuch Pomp and Majeſty. 5. *Machbeth* of whom there goeth a famous Story, which ſhall be told at large anon. 6. *Malcolm* the Third, the Son of *Duncane*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbeths* Tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only ſome *Civilities* of the *Engliſh* garb, but the honourary Titles of Earls and Barons, not here before mentioned. At the perſwaſion of the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, (Siſter of *Edgar*, ſurnamed *Atheling*, and after his deceaſe the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he aboliſhed the barbarous Cuſtoms ſpoken of before. He did *Homage* to *William* the *Conqueror* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards ſiding againſt him with the *Engliſh*, was ſlain at *Alnwick*. 7. *David*, the youngeſt Son of *Malcolm* the Third, ſucceeded (his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* dying without Iſſue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *Edgar Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldeſt Son of *Edmund* the Second, ſurnamed *Ironſide*, King of *England*, had the beſt Title to that Kingdom alſo; but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the *Norman Conquerors*, with whom by reaſon of the great puiſſance of thoſe Kings, and the little love which the *Engliſh* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to diſpute their Title by force of Arms. From *Maud* the Siſter of this *David*, married to *Henry* the Firſt of *England*, deſcended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeth*'s death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the Sixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, ſucceeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his deſcent from another *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the Seventh. So that in his Perſon there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a reſtoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir) to the Crown of *England*; the poſſeſſion whereof had for ſo long time continued in the Poſterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this deſcent it followeth moſt undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the II. ſurnamed *Ironſide*; and that his Succeſſors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeth*'s Death: yet *James*, the firſt *Monarch* of *Great Britain*, ſucceeded by a right deſcent from the *Saxon* Line; without relation to the Conqueſt of the *Norman* Baſtard. 8. *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the Fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry*, (who died in the life of his Father) being taken Priſoner at the Battel of *Alnwick*, did *Homage* to King *Henry* the Second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon reſtored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the ſucceeding Kings, when their Affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more conſiderable, we ſhall ſee anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the ſtory of *Machbeth*, than which for variety of action, and ſtrangeneſs of events, I never met with any more pleaſing. The Story in brief is thus: *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of Importance, *Machbeth* and *Banquho*. Theſe two travelling together through a Foreſt, were met by three *Faries*, Witches (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the firſt making obeyſance unto *Machbeth*, ſaluted him *Thane* (a Title unto which that of *Earl* afterwards ſucceeded) of *Glammis* the ſecond, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, ſaith *Banquho*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made anſwer, That he indeed ſhould not be a King, but out of his Loyns ſhould come a Race of Kings that ſhould for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus ſaid, they all ſuddenly vaniſhed. Upon their arrival to the Court, *Machbeth*, was immediately created *Thane* of *Glammis*; and not long after, ſome new ſervice of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the Title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the Prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the former, he reſolved not to be wanting to himſelf in fulfilling the third, and therefore firſt he killed the King, and after, by reaſon of his command among the Soldiers, and common People, he ſucceeded in his Throne. Being ſcarce warm in his Seat, he called to mind the Prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*; whom hereupon ſuſpecting as his ſupplanter, he cauſed him to be killed, together with his whole Poſterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons eſcaping only, with no ſmall difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed as he thought from all fear of *Banquho* and his Iſſue, he built *Dunſinan* Caſtle, and made it his ordinary Seat: and afterwards on ſome new fears, conſulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Eſtate, was told by one of them, that he ſhould never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being ſome Miles diſtant) came to *Dunſinan* Caſtle; and by another, that he ſhould never be ſlain by any man which was born of a Woman. Secure then as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the ſpace of 18 years; for ſo long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the meaſure of his Iniquities, *Macduffe* the Governor of *Fife*, aſſociating to himſelf ſome few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny, privily met one Evening at *Bernane* Wood; and taking every one of them a Bough in his Hand, (the better to keep them from diſcovery) marched early in the Morning towards *Dunſinan* Caſtle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Machbeth* eſcaping, was purſued by *Macduffe*; who having overtaken him, urged him to the Combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in ſcorn, returned this Anſwer, that he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *deſtiny* never to be ſlain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then ſaid *Macduffe*, is thy fatal end drawing faſt upon thee, for I was never born of a Woman, but violently cut out of my Mothers Belly; which words ſo daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwiſe a valiant Man, and of great performances, that he was very eaſily ſlain; and *Malcolm Conmer*, the true Heir of the Crown, ſeated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* ſo proſpered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Country; and on her begot a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his deſcent once known, he was not only reſtored to the Honours and Eſtates of his Anceſtors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the Houſe of *Edgar*, the Son of *Malcolm* the Third, ſurnamed *Conmer*; the Name of *Stewart* growing hence Hereditary unto his Poſterity. From this *Wal-*

ter deſcended that *Robert Stewart*, who ſucceeded *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned ſucceſſively in that Kingdom. But now it is time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

A. Ch.		
424	1	*Fergus.*
	2	*Eugenius.*
449	3	*Dongal.*
	4	*Conſtantine.*
	5	*Congall.*
	6	*Goran.*
	7	*Eugenius* II.
	8	*Congall* II.
	9	*Kinnatel.*
	10	*Aidan.*
604	11	*Kenneth.*
	12	*Eugenius* III.
622	13	*Ferquard.*
	14	*Donald.*
	15	*Ferquard* II.
	16	*Malduine.*
	17	*Eugenius* IV.
	18	*Eugenius* V.
	19	*Amberkeleth.*
	20	*Eugenius* VI.
	21	*Mordoc.*
730	22	*Etfinus.*
	23	*Eugenius* VII.
	24	*Fergus* II.
	25	*Solvathius.*
	26	*Achaius.*
809	27	*Congall* III.
	28	*Dongall* II.
	29	*Alpine* ſlain in a Battel by the *Picts*, in purſuit of his Quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in the Right of his Mother, Siſter, and Heir of *Hungius* the laſt King thereof.
	30	*Kenneth* II. Son of *Alpine*; who utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scottiſh* Kingdom from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*; of which deſervedly accounted the firſt *Monarch*, the Founder of the new Succeſſion of

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

An. Ch.		
839	1	*Kenneth* II. the firſt ſole King of all *Scotland* 17.
856	2	*Donald* II. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2*d*.
862	3	*Conſtantine* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 2*d*.
875	4	*Ethus*, Brother of *Conſtantine* the 2*d*.
890	5	*Donald* III. Son of *Conſtantine* the 2*d*.
903	6	*Conſtantine* III, 30.
933	7	*Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the 3*d*.
949	8	*Ingulph*, an Intruder. 12.
961	9	*Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm* 1.
991	10	*Kenneth* III. Brother of *Duffe*.
994	11	*Conſtantine* IV. an Intruder againſt the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3*d*.
1004	12	*Malcolm* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 3*d* oppoſed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.
1035	13	*Duncan*, Son of *Grime*, ſucceeded *Malcolm* the ſecond dying without Iſſue.
1040	14	*Machbeth*, the Tyrant and Uſurper.
1057	15	*Malcolm* III. Son of *Duncan*.
1096	16	*Donald* IV. ſurnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3*d*.
1098	17	*Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the 3*d*.
1107	18	*Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar*.
1124	19	*David*, Brother of *Alexander*.
1133	20	*Malcolm*, Son of *David*.
1166	21	*William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth.
1213	22	*Alexander* II. Son of *William*.
1250	23	*Alexander* III. Son of *Alexander* the 2*d*, after whoſe death, dying without any Iſſue, *An.* 1285. began that tedious and bloody Quarrel about the Succeſſion of this Kingdom, occaſioned by ſundry Titles and Pretendants to it: principal whereof were *Bruce* and *Baliol* deſcended from the Daughters of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the Third, the laſt of the Male Iſſue of *Kenneth* the 2, thoſe of nearer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compoſe the difference among themſelves, it was taken into conſideration by King *Edward* the Firſt of *England*, as the Lord Paramount of that Kingdom; whoſe ſelecting 12 *Engliſh*, and as many of the *Scots* to adviſe about it, with the conſent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Dervorguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of the ſaid *David*; who having done his homage to the ſaid King *Edward*, was admitted King.
1300	24	*John Baliol*, an *Engliſh-man*, but forgetful both of *Engliſh* Birth, and *Engliſh* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hoſtile manner, and was taken Priſoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himſelf Maſter of all *Scotland*, which he held during the reſt of his Life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.
1306	25	*Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce*, Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland*, in Right of *Iſabel* his Mother, the ſecond Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and conſequently a degree nearer to the King deceaſed than *Baliol* was, though deſcended from the elder Siſter) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the Firſt; but not fully poſſeſſed thereof until after his death; confirmed therein by the great Defeat given to *Edward* the Second, at the fight of *Banocks-bourn*, not far from *Sterling*, ſpoken of before. But he being dead, *Anno* 1332. *Edward* the Third confirmed the Kingdom on
1332	26	*Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*; rejected by the *Scots* for adhering ſo firmly to the *Engliſh*; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with Fire and Sword. 10.
	27	*David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *Engliſh*. Invading *England* when King *Edward* was at the Siege of *Calice*, he was taken Priſoner by Queen *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windſor*, where he was Priſoner for a while with King *John* of *France*. Releaſed at laſt on ſuch conditions as beſt pleaſed the Conqueror. 29.
1371	28	*Robert* II. ſurnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by deſcent from the eldeſt Siſter of *David Bruce*, was extracted alſo from ancient Princes of *Wales* (as was ſaid before:) reſtoring thereby the *Britiſh* Blood to the Throne of *Scotland*.
1390	29	*Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the Second, called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own Brother the Duke of *Albany*, who had an aim at it for himſelf. 16.

1406 30 *James*, Son of *Robert* the Third, taken Priſoner by King *Henry* the Fourth of *England*, as he was croſſing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practices of his Uncle. Reſtored unto his Country in the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, after 18 years abſence, he was at laſt moſt miſerably murdered by the Earl of *Athol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

1448 31 *James* II. ſlain by the *Engliſh* at the Siege of *Roxborough* Caſtle. 24.

1462 32 *James* III. ſlain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

1491 33 *James* IV. married *Margaret* the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the Seventh, but at the ſoliciting of the *French*, (againſt the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the abſence of King *Henry* the Eighth) with 100000 Men; but was met with by the Earl of *Surrey* (having 26000 Men in his Army) nigh unto *Flodden*, where he was ſlain, together with two Biſhops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 *James* V. Son of *James* the Fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time ſuch good correſpondency with the *Engliſh*, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred againſt them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of the *Weſt Marſhes*. The Battels being ready to joyn, one Sir *Oliver Sincleer* the Kings Favourite, though otherwiſe of no great Parentage, was by the Kings directions proclaimed *General*: which the *Scottiſh* Nobility took in ſuch Indignation, that they threw down their Weapons, and ſuffered themſelves to be taken priſoners; there being not one Man ſlain on either ſide. The principal Priſoners were the Earls of *Glencarn*, and *Caſſiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, with divers others; beſides many of the principal Gentry, 28.

1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten Child of *James* the Fifth, ſucceeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promiſed in Marriage to King *Edward* the Sixth of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where married to *Francis*, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the ſecond. After whoſe death, ſhe married *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, eldeſt Son of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox*. Outed of her Diminions by a potent Faction, ſhe was compelled to flie into *England*; where after a tedious Impriſonment, ſhe was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Caſtle in *Northamptonſhire*, and interred at *Peterburgh*, *Anno* 1586.

1567 36 *James* VI. the Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, was crowned King in his Cradle alſo. He married *Anne*, the Daughter of *Chriſtian* the Third, King of *Denmark*; was choſe of the Order of the Garter, *Anno* 1590, and ſucceeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, *March* 24. *Anno* 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent fore-ſight of *Henry* the Seventh, who having two Daughters, beſtowed the Eldeſt (contrary to the mind of his Council) on the King of *Scots*, and the younger on the King of the *French*; that ſo, if his own Iſſue Male ſhould fail, and that a Prince of another Nation muſt inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the leſſer Kingdom would depend upon *England*; and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which Succeſſion of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, ſpoken of before, did receive accompliſhment. And ſo perhaps might that aſcribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Ethelreds* time, which is this, Engliſhmen, *for that they wonneth them to* Drunkenneſs, *to* Treaſon, *and to* Retchleſneſs *of Gods Houſe, firſt by* Danes, *and then by* Normans, *and the third time by* Scots, *whom they holden leaſt worth of all, they ſhall be overcome. Then the World ſhall be unſtable, and ſo divers and variable, that the unſtableneſs of thoughts ſhall be betokened by many manner* Diverſity *of Clothing.* For on this Union of the Kingdoms, this Prediction ſeems to have been accompliſhed; the Circumſtances mentioned in the ſame ſo patly agreeing, and the *Scots* never ſubduing *England*, but by this bleſſed Victory. Unleſs perhaps the Accompliſhment thereof be ſtill to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great Defeat at *Bannocks-bourn*, in which was ſlain 50000 *Engliſh*, as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing ſo terrible for a time, that an hundred of the *Engliſh* would flie from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* eſtimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 Sterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not Commodity in this Kingdom to allure Strangers to Traffick: the Demain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in moſt places Barren, and many of the Subjects, thoſe eſpecially of the Out-Iſles, and the Weſtern parts, ſo extreamly barbarous, that they add very ſmall improvement to the publick Treaſury.

And anſwerable to the ſhortneſs of their ſtanding Revenue, were their Forces alſo. For though the Country be very populous, and the Men generally patient both of Cold and Hunger, and inured to Hardſhip; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces ſeldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal ſooner, did disband themſelves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to ſerve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them ſuch, and ſo many of their *Vaſſals*, as the preſent Service did require; uſed to provide for themſelves and their Followers, Tents, Money, Victuals, Proviſion of all ſorts, and all other Neceſſaries; the King ſupplying them with nothing. Which being ſpent, they uſually Disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reaſon, why the *Scots* in the time of Hoſtility betwixt the Nations, made only ſudden and tumultuary Incurſions into *England*, without any thing of ſpecial Moment: and that they have not acted any thing elſewhere in the way of Conqueſt, but only as Mercenaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the 4*th*, when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, (being then in *France*) conſiſted of 100000 fighting Men; yet this I look on only as an Argument of their Populoſity; few of thoſe Men being armed or trained up to Service, and therefore eaſily diſcomfited by a far leſs Army. It's true, that in the year 1645. the *Scottiſh Covenanters* raiſed an Army conſiſting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery, and Ammunition correſpondent to it: which was the gallanteſt Army, and the beſt appointed, that ever that Nation did ſet out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained and payed by the two Houſes of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 *l. per menſem*, and an advance of 100000 *l.* before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the Action, and prepare Neceſſaries for it, without any charge unto themſelves. And though the Army which they ſent into *England* above five years after, under *James* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferiour unto this number, but far ſuperiour to it both in Horſe and Arms, and other neceſſary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own Bodies to compound that Army; the Horſe and Arms being ſuch as they had gotten out of *England* in the former War.

In point of Reputation amongſt Foreign Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambaſſadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Eccleſiaſtical Aſſemblies, before thoſe of *Caſtile*: and by the *Statiſts* of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for abſolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only ſince the firſt years of King *Edward* the Third, when they had quitted their Subjection and Vaſſalage to the Crown of *England*. For that anciently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonſtrated by theſe following Arguments. 1. By the Homages, and other Services, and Duties, done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto thoſe of *England*: *Malcolm* the Third, doing Homage unto *William* the Conqueror; as *William*, one of his Succeſſors, did to King *Henry* the Second; and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by ſome pretended) but for the very Crown it ſelf: *Kenneth* the Third, being alſo one of thoſe eight Tributary or Vaſſal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2*ly*, By the interpoſing of King *Edward* the Firſt, and the ſubmiſſion of the *Scots* to that interpoſing, in determining the controverſie of Succeſſion betwixt *Bruce* and *Baliol*; as in like caſe, *Philip* the *Fair* adjudged the Title of *Artoys*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in queſtion betwixt the Lady *Maud*, and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the Third, in the right of the ſaid Crown of *France*, determined of the Controverſie betwixt *John* Earl of *Montford*, and *Charles* of *Blois*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 3*ly*, By the confeſſion and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Eſtates of *Scotland*, ſubſcribed by all their Hands and Seals in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the Superiority of the Kings of *England*, not only in regard of ſuch advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherouſly delivered into the hands of the *Scots*, by *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, in the beginning of the Reign of King *Edward* the Third. 4*ly*, By the tacit conceſſion of the Kings themſelves, who in their Coins, Commiſſions, and publick Inſtruments, aſſume not to themſelves the Title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*; and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is ſome Superiour Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5*ly*, By the Judgments and Arreſts of the Courts of *England*, not only in the times of King *Edward* the Firſt, but in ſome times ſince. For when *William Wallis*, a *Scotiſhman* by Birth, and the beſt Soldier of that Country, was taken *Priſoner* and brought to *London*, he was adjudged to ſuffer death as a Traytor; which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Priſoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the caſe of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom in the ſame Kings Reign. In like manner, in the time of K. *Edward* the Third, it was reſolved by the Court, in the Lord *Beaumonts* Caſe, when it was objected that one of the Witneſſes was a *Scot*, and therefore as an *Alien*, not to give his Evidence; that his Teſtimony was to be allowed of, becauſe the *Scots* in the Law of *England* did not go for *Aliens*. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13*th* of Queen *Elizabeths* Reign, deſired a *Medietatem Linguæ*, becauſe he was a *Scotchman*, and ſo an *Alien*, it was denied him by the Court, *becauſe the* Scots *were not reputed here as* Aliens, *but as* Subjects *rather*. So alſo, when *Robert Umframville*, Lord of *Kyme*, was ſummoned to the Parliament of *England*, in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third, by the name of *Robert* Earl of *Angus*, (which is a dignity in *Scotland*;) and after in a Writ againſt him was called only by his own name of *Umframville*, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate; which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if *Scotland* had not been reputed to be under the Vaſſalage of the Kings of *England*, 6. and laſtly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my cuſtody) granted by King *Edward* the Firſt, in the laſt year of his Reign, to *Peter Dodge* of *Stopworth* in the County of *Cheſter*, one of the Anceſtors of my Mother, in which it is expreſſed, that the ſaid Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent ſervices, *encontre ſon grand Enemy & Rebel*, Baliol, *Roy d'*Eſcoſſe *& vaſſal de* Angleterre; that is to ſay, againſt his great Enemy and Rebel *Baliol* King of *Scotland*, and Vaſſal of *England*. A thing ſo clear, that if King *James* had not been extreamly tender of the honour of his Native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a *New Invention* in hammering the Caſe of the *Poſt-nati* for him; to make the *Scots* inheritable unto Lands in *England*. The acknowledgment and *Reviver* of their old *Subjection* would have ſerved his turn. But of this Argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable Perſon of that Kingdom of *Scotland*, employed unto the Court in a buſineſs of no mean conſequence to the Peace and Quiet of his Country: I found him ſo ſenſible of the inconveniences of their preſent Government, by reaſon of the Kings abſence, and the frequent diviſions and partialities of his Council there; that he confeſſed that Nation could be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the *Engliſh* Empire; and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as *Ireland* was.

The Principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. *Andrew*, inſtituted by *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, to encourage his Subjects in the War againſt King *Athelſtane* of *England*. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thiſtles, with the Picture of St. *Andrew* appendant to it: the Motto *Nemo me impune laceſſit*. It took this name becauſe after the Battel, *Hungus* and his Soldiers went all barefoot to S. *Andrews*, and there vowed that they and their Poſterity would henceforth uſe his Croſs as their Enſign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whenſoever they take in hand any warlike Enterprize. This Order having been long Extinguiſhed in the year 1687. was revived by *James* the 2*d*, King of *England*.

2. But this Order being expired many Ages ſince, there is now no Order of Knight-hood in it, (except *Knights Batchelors*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King *James*, *An* 1622. for the planting of that Country by *Scotiſh* Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Baronets in *England*, for the plantation of *Ulſter*. Hereditary, as that alſo is, but the Knights hereof diſtinguiſhed by a Ribband of *Orange-Tawney*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Treſſure *Counter-flowred*: which Treſſure *Counter-flowred* was added to the Lion by *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*: ſignifying (ſaith *Hector Boetius* one of their Hiſtorians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the *Scotch* Lion ſhould be guarded by the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in *Scotland*, with
the Iſles of it,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 12.

Univerſities two,
S. *Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is inviron'd on all ſides with the Ocean; parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. *Georges* Chanel; ſituate to the Weſt of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggeſt Iſland of *Europe*, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 Miles; and is ſeated under the 8*th* and 10*th Climates*; the longeſt day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland*, in the Iſle of *Britain*. But the general name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latines* called *Hibernia*, by the *Greeks*, *Iernia*. And though ſome frame a wreſted *Etymologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spaniſh* Captain; and ſome from *Irnaulph*, once a ſuppoſed Duke hereof; as others, *ab Hyberno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement Air; yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which ſignifieth in their own Language a Weſtern Land. And yet I muſt not pretermit the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more near the name than moſt of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying the furtheſt Habitation; there being no Country known amongſt the ancients, which lay Weſt of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cæſarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was ſubdued by *Bartholanus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither, and laſt of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters, who muſt needs name this Iſland *Scotia*. But not to honour ſuch *Fopperies* with a confutation, doubtleſly the firſt Inhabitants of this Iſland came out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the nigheſt Country unto it, and ſo had a more ſpeedy waftage hither. Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Iſland, a *Britiſh Iſland*: And thirdly, *Tacitus*, giveth us of this Country this Verdict, *Solum, cælumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum a Britannia differunt*; the Soil and Air, the Habits and Diſpoſition of the People, were not much unlike the *Britains*. For further evidence whereof, it was obſerved, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England*, by King *Edward* the Firſt, that many of their Laws and Cuſtoms were thoſe of the *Iriſh*; which ſhews, that they did both deſcend from the ſame Original. But then we muſt obſerve withal, that they were counted far more barbarous and ſavage by moſt ancient Writers, than thoſe of *Britain* are deciphered at the firſt diſcovery; ſaid by *Strabo* to be Man-eaters; accuſtomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the Blood of thoſe whom they ſlew in fight. Nor were the Women, though the ſofter and more tender Sex, free from ſuch wild and ſavage Cuſtoms, it being a conſtant courſe amongſt them, when they were delivered of a man-child, to put ſome meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a Sword, wiſhing therewith it might not dye but in the midſt of Arms, and the heat of Battel. Both Sexes uſed to trim themſelves with the Teeth of *Fiſhes*, white as the driven Snow, or the poliſhed Ivory; and therein placed the greateſt part of their pride and bravery.

Nor are the modern *Iriſh* much abhorrent from ſuch barbarous Cuſtoms, as plainly ſhew from what Original they deſcend; altered but little by converſe with more civil Nations. Of natural conſtitution generally ſtrong and nimble of Body; haughty of Heart, careleſs of their Lives, patient in Cold and Hunger, implacable in Enmity, conſtant in Love, light of Belief, greedy of Glory; and in a word, *if they be bad, you ſhall no where find worſe*; *if they be good, you ſhall hardly meet with better*. The Diet, eſpecially of the *meer Iriſh*, is for the moſt part, on Herbs, Roots, butter mingled with Oat-flower, Milk, and Beef-broth: eating Fleſh many times without Bread, which they digeſt with *Uſquebaugh*; and give their Bread-corn to their Horſes inſtead of *Provender*: But more particularly, thoſe of the richer ſort in all parts, and of all ſorts thoſe which inhabit within the Pale (as they themſelves call it) and in ſuch places where the *Engliſh* Diſcipline hath been entertained; comformable to civility, both in Behaviour and Apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the *wild Iriſh* of the poorer and inferior ſort) moſt extreamly barbarous; not behaving themſelves like *Chriſtians*, ſcarcely like Men. All of them ſo tenacious of their ancient Cuſtoms, that neither Power, nor Reaſon, nor the ſenſe of the inconveniences which they ſuffer by it, can wean them to deſert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their uſe of *Ploughing*, not with ſuch Gears or Harneſs, as in other places; but by tying the hindmoſt Horſes head to the Tail of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unſerviceable by the ſoon loſing of their Tails, and withal is a courſe of ſo ſlow a diſpatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a Week, as a good Teem well harnaſſed would perform in a Day; yet no perſwaſion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous Cuſtom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord *Deputy* had damned it by act of Parliament, and laid a Penalty on ſuch as ſhould after uſe it, the People thought it ſuch a Grievance, and ſo injurious to the Nation, that amongſt other things demanded towards a *Pacification* of the preſent Troubles, their *Agents* and *Commiſſioners* inſiſted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we ſhall hereafter meet with in another place. Near of kin to which, is a lazie Cuſtom that they have of burning their Straw (rather than put themſelves to the pains to threſh it) by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no Reaſon can diſſwade them, nor Perſwaſions win them. They have among them other Cuſtoms as abſurd though leſs inconvenient; as placing a green Buſh, on *May-day* before their Doors, to make their kine yield the more Milk; kneeling down to the *New-Moon* as ſoon as they ſee it, deſiring her to leave them in as good health as ſhe found them; and many others of like nature.

They uſe a Language of their own, but ſpoken alſo in the Weſt of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands; which though originally *Britiſh*, or a Dialect of it, by reaſon of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Eaſterlings*, or *Ooſt-mans*, and *Engliſh Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welch*, for ought I can learn.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached among them by S. *Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. *Martin* of *Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts, and the *Engliſh* Colonies, according to the Platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Iriſh*, (and many of the better ſort of the Nation alſo) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own Superſtitious fancies, as in former times. And to ſay truth, it is no wonder that they ſhould, there being no care taken to inſtruct them in the Proteſtant Religion; either by tranſlating the Bible, or the *Engliſh Liturgie*, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*, but forcing them to come to Church to the *Engliſh* Service, which the People underſtand no more than they do the Maſs: (Since altered.) By means whereof the *Iriſh* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the Doctrine and Devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Proteſtant* Churches; but thoſe of *Rome* are furniſhed with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not underſtand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when theſe Diſtempers are compoſed) to provide that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Chriſtian* Inſtruction and Devotion in their natural Tongue.

The Soil of it ſelf is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for Graſs and Paſturage, than it is for Tillage: as may be ſeen in ſuch places where the induſtry of Man is aiding to the natural goodneſs of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbred with vaſt Bogs, and unwholſome Marſhes; yielding neither Profit nor Pleaſure unto the Inhabitants. In ſome places, as in the County of *Armagh*, ſo rank and fertile, that the laying of any Soil or Compoſt on it, doth abate its fruitfulneſs, and proves the worſt Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious Lives of the Monks. Amongſt whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apothegm*; when offered many Preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Anſwer, *It becomes not them to embrace other Mens Goods, who for Chriſt's ſake had forſaken their own.* Of no leſs Piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Rafe*, Archbiſhop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flouriſhed about the Year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Iſland, that (amongſt other Privileges which it hath above other Iſlands) it foſtereth no venomous Serpent; and that no ſuch will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her ſelf we find her ſpeaking in the Poet.

Illa ego ſum Graiis *Glacialis* Hibernia *dicta*;
Cui Deus, & melior rerum naſcentium Origo;
Jus commune dedit cum Creta *altrice* Tonantis,
Angues ne noſtris diffundant ſibila in oris.

I am that Iſland which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Hibernia*, Icy-cold:
Secured by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Jove*'s Mother dear,
That poiſonous Snake ſhould never here be bred,
Or dare to hiſs, or hurtful venom ſpread.

The other Miracles of this Iſland are, 1. That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thruſt a piece of Wood, he ſhall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whetſtone: richly deſerved by him, if the Tale be falſe, who did firſt report it. 2. That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at leaſt their Calves-skins ſtuffed with Straw or Hay. It is ſaid alſo, that all the breed of this Country are of leſs ſize than they be in *England*, except Women and Grey-hounds, and thoſe much bigger than with us.

As for the Clergy of this Country, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons* in former times; ſome of their Biſhops being ſo poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Paſture of two Milch-Beaſts. And ſo far had the Monaſteries and Religious Houſes been invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches Rights, that of late times, in the whole Province of *Connaught*, the whole Stipend of the Incumbent was not above forty Shillings, in ſome places not above ſixteen: So that the poor *Iriſh* muſt needs be better fed than taught; for *Ad tenuitatem* Beneficiorum *neceſſario ſequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*: Poor Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Prieſts, ſaid *Panormitan* rightly. But this remedied in part by his Sacred Majeſty King *Charles* the Second, Monarch of *Great-Britain*, who liberally (at the Suit of the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*) reſtored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tythes*, which had been veſted in the Crown. An Action of moſt ſingular Piety and Princely Bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are, 1. The *Shannon*, (the *Senas* of *Ptolomy*) which ariſing in the Mountains of *Letrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it paſſeth forwards; loſeth it ſelf after a courſe of 200 Miles (of which ſixty Navigable) in the Weſtern Ocean. 2. The *Liff*, by *Ptolomy* called *Libnius*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3. *Awiduffe*, or *Black-Water*, as the *Engliſh* call it. 4. *Slane*, ſuppoſed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5. The *Showre*. 6. The *Boyne*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue out of the Canto of the Marriage of the *Thames* and *Medway* in the *Fairy Queen*.

There was the *Liffie* rowling down the Sea,
The ſandy *Slane*, the ſtony *Aubrian*,
The ſpacious *Shenin*, ſpreading like a Sea,
The pleaſant *Boyne*, the fiſhy-fruitful *Banne*,
Swift *Awiduffe*, which of the *Engliſhman*
Is called *Black-Water*; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis*, that once his People over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Slewlogheer* ſteep,
And *Maullo* mine, whoſe Waves I whilom taught to
  weep.

There alſo was the wide-embayed *Mayre*,
The pleaſant *Bandon* crown'd with many Wood;
The ſpreading *Lee*, that like an Iſland fair
Incloſeth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And bateful *Oure*, late ſtain'd with *Engliſh* Blood,
With many more,———

So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the marriage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But beſides theſe Rivers, this Iſland is in moſt places well ſtored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of Fiſh to the parts adjoining. The principal of which, 1. *Lough-Erne*, containing 15 Miles in breadth, and 30 Miles in length; ſhaded with Woods, and ſo repleniſhed with Fiſh, that the Fiſhermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their Nets. It hath alſo in it many Iſlands, one moſt remarkable for the ſtrange and horrid Noiſes which are therein heard, called therefore by the Vulgar, *St. Patrick's Purgatory*: Almoſt as big as this is, 2. the Lake of *Corbes*, which loſeth it ſelf in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 Miles in length, and four in breadth; ſaid to have in it 30 Iſlets, abounding with Pine-Trees. 3. *Lough-Foyle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolomy*. 4. *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well ſtored with Salmons, hath its firſt Original. And beſides theſe and many others of leſs note, there are ſaid to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far aſunder, and having an Intercourſe of Waters; but of ſo different a Temper, that the Fiſh which are proper to the one, (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar ſorts) will not live in the other; but either die, or by ſome ſecret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it ſelf, that is to ſay, 1. *Leinſter*, 2. *Meth*, 3. *Ulſter*, 4. *Connaught*, and 5. *Munſter*; but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinſter*.

1. *LEINSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Channel) commonly called

St. Georgt's Channel) by which parted from the Iſle of *Great Britain*; on the Weſt, the River *Newrie*, (*Neorus*, as the *Latines* call it) which divides it from *Munſter*; on the North, the Province of *Meth*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally than the reſt of *Ireland*, becauſe better cultivated and manured, as having been longeſt in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; from whom a great part of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, and for that reaſon more conformable to the Civilities and Habit of the *Engliſh* Nation. Well watered, beſides a large Sea-coaſt, with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1. the *Barrow*, called in *Latin*, *Bergus*, 2. the *Newrie*, 3. the *Showre*, 4. the *Liffie*, (the *Libnius* of *Ptolomy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1. *Dublin*, 2. *Kilkenny*, 3. *Caterlough*, 4. *Kildare*, 5. *Leaſe*, or *Queens-County*; 6. *Ophalie*, or *Kings-County*, and 7. *Weiſleford*; in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Caſtles well fortified, and able to make good reſiſtance againſt an Enemy. The *Engliſh* being forced to fortifie themſelves in their Plantations with ſtrong Holds and Fortreſſes againſt the incurſions of the Natives.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dublin*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolomy*; by the *Iriſh* called *Baladeigh*; becauſe, being ſeated in a fenny and mooriſh Soil, it was built on Piles, as the word doth ſignifie in that Language. Situate at or near the mouth of the River *Liffe*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbred with heaps of Sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Iſland, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbiſhop's See, and an Univerſity; beſides the benefits redounding from the Courts of Juſtice. In thoſe reſpects well fortified againſt all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly Buildings, both private and publick. The principal of which are the Caſtle, wherein the Lord Deputy reſideth, built by *Henry Loandres*, once Archbiſhop here: A College founded by Queen *Elizabeth*, to the Honour, and by the Name of the bleſſed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to St. *Patrick*, the Apoſtle of the *Iriſh* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Chriſt-Church*, beſides thirteen others deſtinated to Parochial Meetings. Being deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the *Daniſh Wars*, it was re-edified by *Harold*, ſurnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Maſters of moſt parts of the Iſland; and after the ſubjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colony of *Briſtol*-Men. 2. *Wieſhford*, or *Wexford*, the *Menapia* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, ſuppoſed to be the *Modona* of the ſame Author, the firſt of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colony of *Engliſh*. 3. *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newrie*, the chief Seat of the Biſhop of *Oſſory*, and the faireſt Town of all the Inlands: ſo called, *quaſi Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monaſtery of *Canicus*, a Man of great renown for Piety in theſe parts of the County. 4. *Kildare*, an Inland Town alſo, and a Biſhop's See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the Eighth, as a Man of ſo unquiet and turbulent a Nature, that his Adverſaries cloſed their Charge againſt him with this Expreſſion, *Finally, all* Ireland *cannot rule this Earl*; the King replied, that *Then this Earl ſhould rule all* Ireland; and ſo, for his Jeſts ſake, made him *Lord Deputy of the Kingdom*. 5. *Roſſe*, once populous, well traded, and of large circumference, now a Ruine only; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Iſabel*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Iſland for King *Henry* the Second. 6. *Philips Town*, the principal of the County of *Ophalie*, or *Kings County*; ſo called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7. *Marieburg*, the chief of *Leaſe*, or the *Queens-County*, was in honour of Queen *Mary*. 8. *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified againſt the incurſions of the *Iriſh*, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9. *Caterlough*, commonly, but corruptly, *Carlough*, a Town of great ſtrength, and the chief of that County. 10. *Rheban*, not otherwiſe of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolomy*.

2. *METH*, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, hath on the South *Leinſter*; on the Weſt *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulſter*; on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Sea, or S. *George*'s Channel. A ſmall, but rich and pleaſant Province; well ſtocked with People, and ſtored with all things neceſſary for their Suſtentation; and for a ſweet and wholſom Air not inferior to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to ſay, 1. *Eaſt-Meth*, 2. *Weſt-Meth*, and 3. *Longford*; containing thirteen Towns of note, and fourteen Caſtles of good eſteem. By reaſon of which ſtrength, it is called by ſome Writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of moſt conſequence herein, are, 1. *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *Eaſt-Meth*, the ancient Barony of the *Lacies*; poſſeſſed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greateſt part of *Ulſter*. 2. *Tredagh*, more properly *Drogbedah*, ſituate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulſter*, to which Province belongs ſo much of the Town as lieth on the North-ſide of that River; a very fair and populous City, as well by Art as Nature very ſtrongly fortified, and furniſhed with a large and commodious Haven. It took the Name of *Drogheda*, from the Bridge there built upon the River for the conveniency of paſſage (as the word ſignifies in that Language) and therefore called *Pontana* by ſome *Latin* Writers. This was one of the firſt Places *O. Cromwel* took in *Ireland* by Force, who put all he found in it to the Sword, and miſerably impoveriſhed the place. 3. *Molinga*, the chief Town of *Weſt-Meth*. 4. *Delvin*, in the ſame County alſo, the Barony of the *Nugents*, an ancient Family in this Tract. 5. *Longford*; of moſt note in the County ſo named, but not elſe obſervable.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for *Leinſter* ſince the firſt Conqueſt of it, hath been inſeparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was firſt granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the Second, to *Hugh Lacy*, a Man of great merit and employment in the Conqueſt of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter* his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Neeces of this *Walter*, by his Son *Gilbert*, one moiety hereof came to the *Mortimers*, Earls of *March*, and in their Right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the Fourth; and the other moiety to the *Verduns*, by whom diſperſed and ſcattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, in whoſe Reign it was divided into *Eaſt-Meth* and *Weſt-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. *ULSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Ultonia*; is the largeſt Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South with *Meth* and *Connaught*; on the Weſt, with the vaſt *Iriſh* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolomy* gives the Name of *Hyperborean*; and on the Eaſt, with St. *George*'s Channel. A Country fruitful of it ſelf, but in moſt places formerly overgrown with Woods, and drowned in Marſhes and great Bogs, by the natural ſlothfulneſs of the People; made more reſponſal to the Husbandman, both for Corn and Paſturage, ſince the late Plantation of the *Britiſh*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1. *Louth*, 2. *Cavon*, 3. *Fermanath*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Monaghan*, 6. *Armagh*, 7. *Colrane*, 8. *Tirconnel*, 9. *Tir Oen*, and 10. *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and

Traffick, and 30 Caſtles for the defence of the Country, and keeping under the wild *Iriſh*; wilder and more untractable in theſe Northern parts, than the reſt of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and ſpacious Sea, on three ſides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, beſides the Rivers of 1. *Boine*, called in *Latine Boanda*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2. the *Bann*, 3. *Moandus*, and 4. the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Armagh*, on or near the River of *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County ſo called; and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An ancient City, but ſo miſerably defaced by Fire in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion, that it can ſcarce preſerve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2. *Carlingford*, and 3. *Dundalk*, both ſituate on the Sea-ſide, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4. *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*; more properly *Rock-Fergus*, (and in that ſenſe called *Carick-fergus* by the *Iriſh*) ſo called from *Fergus*, one of the Kings of the *Iriſh Scots*, who there ſuffered Shipwrack. Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vinderius* of *Ptolomy*) which giveth it both a ſafe and commodious Port; as well by natural ſituation, as the works of Art, very ſtrongly fortified, by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Cantire*, from which little diſtant. 5. *London-Derry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*, beſt built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6. *Dungannon*, the principal Seat and Reſidence, in former times, of the great *O-Neals*. 7. *Dungall*, the principal of *Tir-Connel*. 8. *Robogh*, a ſmall Village at preſent, but anciently a Biſhop's See: fit to be mention'd in this place, in regard it ſtill preſerveth ſome foot-ſteps of the old *Rhobogdii*, an *Iriſh* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolomy* in this Tract, where they gave Name unto the *Promontory*, by him called *Rhobogdium*, now the *Fair-Foreland*; as is probably conceived by the Learned *Cambden*.

This, as it is the largeſt Province of all this Kingdom, ſo was it with moſt difficulty ſubjected to the Crown of *England*, and reduced to good order and civility. Firſt conquered by *John Curcy*, a valiant *Engliſh-man*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Second, by whom he was created Earl of *Ulſter*. But being maligned for his eminent Virtues, and after proſcribed by King *John*, this Title and Eſtate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacie*, the Lord and Conqueror of *Meth*, whom before we ſpake of. By an Heir General of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs*, then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the laſt Earl of that Family, it came to *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*, the ſecond Son (then living) of King *Edward* the Third; as by his Daughter *Philip*, to the Earls of *March*; from them by the like Marriage to the Houſe of *York*, and in the Perſon of King *Edward* the Fourth, to the the Crown again. But being neglected by the *Engliſh* in the whole courſe of their Government, eſpecially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaſter*, it was cantoned in many Eſtates and Principalities, by the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*; (who had born too great ſway here in the former times) and ſo eſtranged from the civilities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if that it had never been in ſubjection to it. In which eſtate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more Power or Profit, than the great ones of the Country were pleaſed to give them): till the Rebellion firſt, and afterwards the vanquiſhment of *Hugh O-neal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full ſubjection to the *Engliſh* Government, of which more hereafter.

4. CONNAUGHT, in *Latin* called *Connacia*, by the *Iriſh Connaught*, is bounded on the North with *Ulſter*; on the Weſt with the main Ocean; on the South with *Munſter*, from which parted by the River *Shanon*; and on the Eaſt, with *Meth* and ſome part of *Leinſter*. So called from the *Nagnata*, an old *Iriſh* Nation; or from *Nagnata* a Port-Town, both placed by *Ptolomy* in this Tract. The Soil of the ſame temper with that of *Ulſter*; as woody and as full of Bogs till theſe later times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniences.

It hath been alſo called by our *Engliſh* Writers the County of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloceſter*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the Firſt; and is divided at the preſent into theſe five Shires, that is to ſay, 1. *Letrim*, 2. *Roſcommon*, 3. *Maio*, 4. *Slego*, and 5. *Galloway* and *Twomond*. In which are comprehended but eight Towns of any conſequence, for Commerce and Traffick (an argument of the imperfect Plantation of it by the *Engliſh* Conquerors); and about 24 Caſtles for defence of the Country, of old erection, beſides ſuch Fortreſſes as have been raiſed occaſionally in theſe latter Troubles.

Places of moſt note and obſervation, 1. *Toam*, an Archbiſhop's See. 2. *Athenry* an ancient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of moſt renown for being the Barony of *John de Birmingham*, a noble *Engliſhman*, who had great poſſeſſion in this Tract. 3. *Letrim*, the chief Town of the County ſo named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *Engliſh* in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shenin* or *Shanon*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 4. *Slego*, and 5. *Roſcommon*, the chief Town of their ſeveral Counties. 6. *Athlone*, a piece of great ſtrength, and the great Key of *Connaught*. 7. *Twomond*, not otherwiſe much obſervable, but for giving the Title of an Earl to the Family of *O Brian*, (deſcended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that Honour by King *Henry* the Eighth. 8. *Galloway*, the principal of this Province, a Biſhop's See, and the third City of the Kingdom for beauty and bigneſs. Situate near the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbes*, in the Weſtern Ocean, defended on that ſide from the fury of the Sea, and fear of Invaſions, by the enterpoſition of ſome Iſlands (called the Iſles of *Arran*) very ſtrongly fortified. A noted Empory, and lately of ſo great fame with Foreign Merchants, that an out-landiſh Merchant meeting with an *Iriſh-man*, demanded *in what part of* Galloway Ireland *ſtood*; as if *Galloway* had been the Name of the Iſland, and *Ireland* only the Name of ſome Town.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, as the reſt of thoſe Provinces; the laſt King whereof was *Roderick*, ſurnamed the *Great*, who having a great hand over the reſt of the *Roytelets*, entituled himſelf ſole Monarch, or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to ſubmit himſelf to King *Henry* the Second, his Country at the laſt was brought into ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, by the Valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloceſter*, *William de Bermingham*, and other Noble Adventurers of the *Engliſh* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their Labours; yet the greateſt part of the Spoil, together with the Title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghi*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was ſhewn. Cantoned again amongſt the *Iriſh* and degenerate *Engliſh*, as *Ulſter* was, by the ſupine neglect of the Kings of *England*; till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the chief of the *Iriſh* Nation in the ſame cauſe with him, involved them alſo conſequently in the ſame deſtruction.

5. MOUNSTER, by the *Latins* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North with *Connaught*; on the Eaſt with *Leinſter*; on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* or Weſtern Ocean; and on the South with the *Verginian*. By the natural *Iriſh* it is called *Mown*, whence the *Engliſh* had the Name of *Mounſter*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the Soil, yields not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into ſix Counties, *viz.* *Limerick*, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, 4. *Deſmond*, 5. *Kerry*, and 6. *Tipperary*, which two laſt anciently enjoyed all the Rights of a County Palatine: And in theſe Shires are comprehended (beſides many ſafe Stations and Roads for Shipping) 24 Towns of Note and Trading, and 66 Caſtles of old erection.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Caſſiles*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbiſhop's See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the Third, about the Year 1150. 2. *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in eſtimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Iſland compaſſed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Empory, and a Biſhop's See; diſtant from the main Ocean about 60 Miles, but ſo accommodated by the River, that Ships of Burden come up cloſe to the very Walls. The Caſtles and the Bridge-pieces of both great ſtrength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the ſituation. 3. *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperary*, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 4. *Holy Croſs*, in the ſame County alſo, once flouriſhing by reaſon of the great reſort of Pilgrims, to ſee and worſhip there a piece of the Holy Croſs, as it was ſuppoſed; which ſuppoſition, as it drew much Wealth unto the Town, ſo it obtained the Rights of a County *Palatine* for the County alſo. 5. *Thurles* in the ſame County, which gives the Title of a Viſcount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not elſe obſervable. 6. *Waterford*, on the River *Showre*, a well traded Port, a Biſhop's See, and the ſecond City of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *Engliſh* ſince the Conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that cauſe endowed with many ample Privileges. Firſt built by ſome *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the moſt barren Parts, and moſt foggy Air of all the Country, yet they made choice of ſuch a ſafe and commodious Site for the uſe of Shipping, that of a Neſt of Pirates it was afterwards made a Receipt for Merchants, and ſuddenly grew up to great Wealth and Power. 7. *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principal of that County, and a Biſhop's See; well walled and fitted with a very commodious Haven; conſiſting chiefly of one Street reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and induſtrious People. 8. *Dunk-Eran*, an old Epiſcopal See, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Ivernis* of *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 8. *Kinſale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir Oen*'s Rebellion by a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, under the Command of *Don John de Aquila*; but ſoon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the Walls hereof) by the Valour and indefatigable Induſtry of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9. *Baltimore*, 10. *Youghall*, and 11. *Bere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of ſafe Roads and convenient Havens. 12. *Leſmore*, of old a Biſhop's See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it ſtandeth. Nothing in point of Story ſingular which concerns this Province, but that it was ſo carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the Deputy himſelf) called the *Lord Preſident of Munſter*; by whoſe vigilancy there have happened fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Iſland.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Iſland, being originally *Britains* (as before is ſaid) were in the time of *Ptolomy* diſtinguiſhed into the Nations of *Rhobognii*, *Darnii*, *Volontii*, *Venicnii*, and *Erdini*, poſſeſſing the Northern parts, now *Ulſter*; the *Auteri*, *Cangani*, and *Nagnatæ*, inhabiting *Connaught*: the *Velibori*, *Uterni*, *Vodii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounſter*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinſter*. Principal Cities of the which were *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolomy* honoured with the Title of *Urbs inſignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolicum*, *Labernus*, *Ivernis*, &c. not eaſily diſcernable by what Names we may call them now: This Country never being ſo happy as to come under the Power of the *Romans*, the great Maſters of *Civility* and good Letters in the Weſt of *Europe*; and by that means, the Actions and Affairs thereof buried in ignorance and ſilence. Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be ſeated here, and from hence firſt to take poſſeſſion of the *Hebrides*, or Weſtern Iſles, next of the Weſtern part of *Britain*, on the North of *Dunbritton Frith*. Afterwards ſome of the *Saxon* Monarchs caſt their Eyes upon it, and made themſelves Maſters of *Dublin*, and ſome other place, but being incumbred with the *Danes*, could not hold them long; being hardly able to defend their own againſt the People. The next that undertook the Conqueſt were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all paſſing in the Chronicles of that time under the Name of *Norwegians*; who firſt only ſcowred along the Coaſts in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakneſs of the Iſland, divided amongſt many petit and inconſiderable Princes, they made an abſolute Conqueſt of it under the Conduct of *Turgeſius*, whom they elected for their King; ſoon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the only *Iriſh* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King, by Name *Omo-Laghliben*, had a Daughter of renowned Beauty, whom *Turgeſius* demanded of her Father to ſerve his Luſts; and he ſeeming willing to condeſcend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made anſwer, That beſides his Daughter, he had at his diſpoſing many others of more exquiſite Beauties, which ſhould all be ready at command. *Turgeſius* ſwallowing this Bait, deſired him with all ſpeed to effect the meeting. But the King of *Meth*, attiring in the Habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durſt, for the common Liberty, adventure their ſeveral Lives, conducted them to the Tyrant's Bed-chamber, and they, according to the directions given them, (when for that little modeſty ſake he had in him, he had commanded all his Attendants to avoid the Room) aſſaulted him, now ready for and expecting more kind Embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Methian* King had by this time acquainted divers of the better ſort with his Plot; all which upon a Sign given, ruſh into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other Attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Roytelets* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the Year 1172. in which *Dermot*, *Mac Morough* King of *Leinſter*, having forced the Wife of *Maurice O Rork*, King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for ſuccour. To this Petition, *Henry* II. then King, condeſcended; ſending him Aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, ſurnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who reſtored King *Dermot*, and brought a great part of the Iſland under the *Engliſh* ſubjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the firſt who was entituled *Lord of Ireland*; which Stile was granted him by Pope *Urban* III. who for the ornament of his Royalty, ſent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: And when *Tir-Oen* ſtiled him *Defender of the Iriſh Liberty*, he was by *Clement* VIII. honoured with the like Plume. But here we are to underſtand, that tho' the Kings of *England* uſed no other Title than *Lords of Ireland*, yet were they Kings hereof in Effect and Power, *Lords Paramount*, as we uſe to ſay. And tho' themſelves retained only the Name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *Engliſh* Subjects, the honourable but invidious Title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this Title of *Lords*, till the Year 1542. in which *Henry* VIII. in an *Iriſh Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a Name more ſacred, and repleat with Majeſty, than that of *Lord*: At which time alſo he was declared to be *Supream Head*, under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended Juriſdiction of all Foreign Powers, eſpecially the uſurped Authority of the Pope of *Rome* renounced by Law, though ſtill acknowledged by too many of this ſuperſtitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Country, ſince the firſt Conqueſt by the *Engliſh*, hath been moſt commonly by one Supream Officer, who is ſometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*,

tenant, moſt generally the *Lord Deputy* of *Ireland*; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater Power, or comes nearer the Majeſty of a King in his Train and State. For his aſſiſtance he hath a Privy-Council attending on him, though reſident for the moſt part at *Dublin*; and in emergencies, or caſes of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the ſtanding Rule of all Civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *Engliſh* Parliaments. For in the Reign of King *Henry* VII. Sir *Edward Poynings*, then *Lord Deputy*, cauſed an Act to paſs in the *Iriſh* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and ſtand in force as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which foundation they have raiſed many *Superſtructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, ſummoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment; in which, by another Statute made in the time of the ſaid *Poynings*, the People are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were firſt tranſmitted to the Court of *England*, to be conſider'd of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the Houſes of the *Iriſh* Parliaments: Which Laws, commonly called *Poyning's Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongſt them; though the laſt much ſtomached and repined at, not only as a badge of their ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb or Martingal to hold them in.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe good *Laws*, and the ample Power of their Commiſſion, the Lord Deputies could never abſolutely ſubdue the Iſland, or bring the People to any civil courſe of Life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy Curſe on all their Poſterity, if ever they ſhould ſow Corn, build Houſes, or learn the *Engliſh* Tongue. To this indiſpoſition of the *Iriſh* themſelves, let us add the defects of the King of *England*, and *Iriſh* Deputies, in matters of civil Policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy Diſcourſe of this Subject: I will only glean a few of them. Firſt then, ſaith he, a *barbarous* Country is like a Field overgrown with Weeds, which muſt firſt be well broken with the *Plough*, and then immediately ſown with good and profitable *Seed*; ſo muſt a wild and uncivil People be firſt broken and ploughed up by War, and then preſently ſown with the *Seed of good Laws* and Diſcipline; leſt the Weeds revive in the one, and ill Manners in the other. Here then was the firſt defect in our *Engliſh* Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomachs and Pride of this People, though either Civil or Foreign Wars perhaps occaſioned this neglect; And alſo the *Iriſh* Deputies, who at ſuch times as the People upon a ſmall diſcomfiture, were Creſt-fall'n, neglected the ſo keeping of them by ſeverity of Diſcipline. The ſecond overſight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave ſuch large Poſſeſſions and Regalities unto the firſt Conquerors, that the People knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of *England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Iriſhry*, but to ſome particular Families and Provinces only; inſomuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of *England*, that is to ſay, O *Neal* in *Ulſter*, O *Connohor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Murrough* in *Lemſter*, O *Malaghlin* in *Meth*, and O *Brian* in *Twomond*, known by the Name of *Quinque Sanguines* in ſome old Records. By means whereof the reſt of the People being in the condition of *Out-Laws*, or at the beſt of *Aliens*, had no encouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themſelves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies or Lords Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholſome Laws againſt the barbarous Cuſtoms of the common People, and the mercileſs Oppreſſions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for Terror, not for Reformation. *Fifthly*, Add unto theſe (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of *England* in the choice of their *Deputies*: Sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court Preferment, without relation unto the Merits of the Perſon, and ſometimes ſending Men of weak or broken Fortunes, who attended more their own Profit than their Maſter's Service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. *Sixthly*, And yet beſides theſe Errors of the Kings and Deputies, in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themſelves; who building all their Forts and Caſtles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Faſtneſſes to the natural *Iriſh*; the ſtrength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occaſions, but ſerved too fitly to continue them in their ancient Barbariſm.

In theſe terms of wildneſs and non-ſubjection ſtood *Ireland*, till the latter end of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, at what time the Rebellion of *Hugh O Neal*, Earl of *Tir-Oen*, had engaged almoſt all the *Iriſhry* in that deſperate Action, which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his Partizans, not only cruſhed the over-much Power of the *Iriſh* Nobility, but made the final and full Conqueſt of the whole Nation. So true it is, that *Every Rebellion, when it is ſuppreſt, doth make the Prince ſtronger, and the Subjects weaker.* *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a Victor over all her Enemies, and left the ſowing of it unto her Succeſſor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skilful *Seedſman*. 1. Then there was an ἀμνηςία or *Act of Oblivion* made, whereby all the Offences againſt the Crown were remitted, if by ſuch a limitted Day the People would ſue out their *Pardons*, and by the ſame Act, all the *Iriſhry* were manumitted from the ſervitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate *Protection*. 2. The whole Kingdom was divided into *Shires*, and *Judges Itinerant* appointed to circuit them; whereby it hath follow'd, that the exactions of the Lords are laid aſide, the behaviour of the People narrowly look'd into, the Paſſages before unknown unto our Soldiers, are laid open by our *Under-Sheriffs* and *Bayliffs*; and the common People ſeeing the benefit and ſecurity they enjoy by the *Engliſh* Laws, and loth to plead always by an *Interpreter*, began to ſet their Children to School, for the learning of the *Engliſh* Tongue. 3. The *Iriſh* were not rooted out, as in the firſt Plantation in *Lemſter*, and the *Engliſh* only eſtated in their rooms, but were only removed from the Woods, Bogs, and Mountains into the plain and open Country; that being like *wild Trees* tranſplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better Fruit. And 4. whereas there was but one *Freeholder* in a whole Country, which was the Lord himſelf, the reſt holding in Villenage, and being ſubject to the Lords immeaſurable Taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to Build or Plant: now the *Lord's Eſtate* was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himſelf, which was ſtill left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenants*, who had Eſtates made in their Poſſeſſions, according to the common courſe of *England*, paying inſtead of uncertain *Iriſh* Taxations, certain *Engliſh* Rents; whereby the People have ſince ſet their Minds upon repairing their Houſes, and manuring their Lands, to the great increaſe of the private and publick *Revenue*.

But that which moſt advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a ſettled and civil Government, and rooted it in a ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone* and *Tirconnel*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great Men of the North, poſſeſſed of large Territories and great Juriſdictions. Who being both uncapable of Loyalty, and impatient of ſeeing the Kings *Judges*, *Juſtices*, and other Miniſters of State, to hold their *Seſſions*, and execute their Commiſſions of *Oyer* and *Terminer* within the parts where they commanded, without more provocation, or the fear of any danger, but a guilty Conſcience, forſook the Country, and left their whole Eſtates to the Kings diſpoſing. By whoſe directions, their Lands were ſeized upon, and ſold to ſeveral Purchaſers, the City of *London* infeoffed in a great part of them, a great Plantation

tation made in *Ulſter* of *Engliſh*, *Welch*, and *Scots*, by the united Name of a *Britiſh Plantation*; and a new Order of *Knights Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England*, for raiſing Money to advance and endear the work. Which, had it been as cordially effected by the *Engliſh*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned ſo great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not eaſily brook) and the uniting of both People in the bonds of amity: the *Iriſh* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *Engliſh* as his old Maſter, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howſoever, ſo great a part of the Country (and that which heretofore was the Neſt of the *Rebels*) being thus diſpoſed of, it came to paſs that *Ireland*, which before ſerved only as a *Grave* to bury our beſt Men, and a *Gulf* to ſwallow our greateſt Treaſures; being govern'd neither as a Country *Free* nor *Conquer'd*; was brought in ſome hope, by the prudence and policy of her laſt Kings and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Common-wealth*, civil in it ſelf, profitable to the Prince, and a good ſtrength to the *Britiſh* Empire: For to ſuch Order it was reduc'd, in a little time, that the *wayfaring* Men might travel without danger, the *Ploughman* walk without fear; the Laws adminiſtred in every place alike, the Men drawn unto Villages, the Woods and Faſtneſſes left to Beaſts, and all reduc'd to that civility as our Fathers never ſaw, nor could we well ſample out of *ancient Hiſtories*.

The *Revenues* of this Kingdom are ſaid by *Walſingham* in the time of *Edward* III. to have been yearly 40000 *l.* but his Succeſſors, till of late, have ſcarce got ſo much as the keeping of it coſts them. King *Richard* II. being by the ſame *Walſingham* reported to have ſpent 30000 Marks out of his own Purſe, over and above the Money which he receiv'd thence. Whether this Country were ſo profitable to *Edward* III. or no, I determine not, tho' I find good reaſon to perſwade me, that *Walſingham* was not well acquainted with the ſtate of that *Exchequer*. But ſure I am, that the *Revenues of the Crown* are more than double what they were in the ſaid Kings Reign, and more duly paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the Profits of the *Cuſtom-Houſe* amounting to 30000 *per An.* in the laſt Year of King *James*'s Reign. Not to ſay any thing of the great Improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, becauſe they fell together with him.

The ſtrength of this Kingdom conſiſteth partly in the ſituation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Caſtles firſt built and fortified by the *Engliſh* Planters; and partly in a ſtanding Army continually kept up by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and intereſt againſt the Rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raiſe, both of Horſe and Foot, could never be conjectur'd at, till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually poſſeſſed only of thoſe four Countries, which they called the *Pale*, that is to ſay, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Louth*, *Kildare*, and *Meth* (which laſt hath ſince the time of King *Henry* VIII. been ſubdivided into three) were not able to raiſe any great Power out of that Eſtate, but were forced to ſend Soldiers out of *England* (as occaſion was) to preſerve their Sovereignty in *Ireland*. The greateſt Levy which I read of, was that of 1500 *Iriſh*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry* V. then being at the Siege of *Harflew* in *Normandy*. And on the other ſide, the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, and degenerate *Engliſh*, being divided into Factions amongſt themſelves, and never joined in any one principle of common Intereſt, were more inconſiderable than the weak, but united Forces of the Kings of *England*. And tho' moſt of them at the laſt were drawn into a Confederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his Rebellion, yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 Men; and thoſe not well appointed neither: So that the beſt eſtimate which can be made of the Forces of *Ireland*, muſt be meaſured by the Armies raiſed in the late Rebellion, when the *Iriſh* had both time and leiſure to get themſelves ſome reputation in the World, and make proviſion for a War. In proſecution of which, he who conſiders the many Armies they have raiſed, ſince the firſt muſtering under the Command of Sir *Phelim O Neal*; the many Defeats which have been given them, and thoſe as many new Recruits after each Defeat; all of them raiſed out of the Bodies of their own People, without ſupply from other Countries (beſides ſuch as have ſerved againſt them for the King) muſt needs conclude that they want not Men enough for Service; nor Skill, nor Courage to attempt the moſt difficult Enterprizes.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harp *Or*, ſtringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to ſhew himſelf the firſt abſolute King of *Ireland*) firſt cauſed to be marſhalled with the Royal Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckon'd in *Ireland* at, and ſince the *Reformation*,
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 19.
One Univerſity, *viz.* *Dublin*.

The LESSER ISLANDS.

AND now we come at laſt to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, diſperſed in ſeveral parts of the *Britiſh* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1. The *Orcades*, 2. *Schetland*, 3. The *Hebrides*, 4. *Man*, 5. *Angleſey*, 6. The Iſlands of the *Severn Sea*, 7. The *Sorlings*, or Iſles of *Scilly*, 8. *Wight*, 9. *Thanet*, 10. *Sunderland*, 11. *Holy Iſland*.

I. The *ORCADES* or Iſles of *Orkney* are in number 32, ſituate over-againſt *Cathneſs*, the moſt Northern Country of all *Scotland*; and ſeparate from one another by ſome narrow Streights. The Soil indifferently fruitful, exceedingly well ſtored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentiful in Hares and Conies, Cranes and Swans; but deſtitute of Wheat, and unfurniſh'd both of Woods and Trees. But their chief Commodity is their Fiſh, which the Inhabitants catch upon the Coaſts in great abundance. Thoſe of moſt note in all the cluſter, are 1. *Heth*, conceiv'd to be the *Ocetis* of *Ptolomy*. 2. *Fair Iſle*, on good reaſon thought to be the *Dumna* of *Pliny*; the chief Town of it being ſtill called by the Name of *Dumo*. 3. *Hey*, taken or miſtaken for the *Dumna* of *Pliny*, but not elſe obſervable. 4. *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 Miles, in breadth, where it is broadeſt ſix. The chief Town of it *Kirckwall*, honour'd with a Biſhop's See, and ſtrengthen'd with two Caſtles. This Iſland is well ſtored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day, by the Inhabitants, call'd *Mainland*.

The People of theſe Iſles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no Drunkards; *Bibaciſſimi ſunt incolæ, nunquam tamen inebriantur*. They uſe the *Gothiſh* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whoſe Poſſeſſions they once were; and of whoſe Qualities they ſtill retain ſome ſmack. The Iſles themſelves, in the time of *Solinus*, were not inhabited, being then overgrown with Ruſhes (now in a meaſure populous and fertile as before was ſaid) and were firſt diſcover'd by *Julius Agricola*, the firſt that ever ſail'd about *Britain*. In later times they were poſſeſſed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the Year 1266. when *Magnus* King of *Norway* ſurrendred them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*; which Surrender ſome of the ſucceeding Kings did afterwards ratifie; the claim heretofore being finally relinquiſh'd by *Chriſtiern* I. King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, on the marriage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James* III. 1474. others ſay in 1470. ſome Money being added to make good the Contract, without which the *Danes* would not forego pretentions to them.

II. Two Days ſailing North of theſe *Orcades*, lieth *SCHETLAND*, an Iſland belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*; and is by many learned Men, upon very good reaſons, ſuppoſed to be the *Thule* of the Ancients. For firſt, it ſtandeth in the 63 degree of *Latitude*, in which *Ptolomy* placed *Thule*. *Secondly*, It lieth oppoſite to *Bergen* in *Nor-*

way; againſt which *Pomponius Mela* hath ſeated it. And, *Thirdly, Caſper Peucerus* hath obſerv'd that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylenſel*; a Name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couch'd. That *Iſland* was not *Thule* (as moſt ſay) we ſhall ſhew you when we come to *Norway*, and the Northern Iſlands: Here we add only, That the Ancients did report many ſtrange things of it, and ſome of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming, that they had no Day here for all the Winter, *(nulla per brumam dies)* as his own words are: with whom agree *Solinus*, and many others; as to that particular *Iſidore* adds, *(Origen lib.* 14 *c.6.) nullum ultra eam diem eſſe*, that beyond this Iſle there was no Day in any place; as if here had been the end of the World and Nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting, that in this Iſle, there was no diſtinction of Earth, Air, and Water, ἀλλὰ ςύγκειμά τι ἐκ τύ των, but a confuſed mixture of all together, like the Primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reaſon of which ſtrange report was the audaciouſneſs of thoſe who had ſeen the Iſland, and thought that whatſoever they ſaid of it would not be diſproved, becauſe of the remoteneſs of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciouſly ſpoken was that of *Syneſius*, a right Learned Prelate, Ἡ Θύλη δίδῦσι τοῖς διαπλέσιν αὐτὴν Ἀνδ'δυνα ϗ ἀνέλεγκτα ψεύδεσθαι. *Thule*, (ſaith he) gave thoſe who had ſailed unto it the opportunity of lying without controul. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers had made too much uſe of in theſe laſt times alſo.

III. The *HEBRIDES, HEBUDAE*, or *Weſtern Iſlands*, ſituate on the Weſt of *Scotland*; are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1. *Ila*, 24 Miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattel, and Herds of Deer. 2. *Jona*, famous for the Sepulchers of the old *Scotiſh* Kings; whoſe chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Biſhop's See, called hence *Sodorenſis*; his Juriſdiction comprehending theſe Iſlands with the Iſle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* IV. *Anno* 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the moſt part of it in the Iſle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleaſant part of his Dioceſs, till the Conqueſt of it by the *Engliſh*; at what time, thoſe of the *Weſtern Iſlands* withdrew themſelves from his Obedience, and had a Biſhop of their own; both of them for a long time called *Sodorenſes*, but at laſt this took the Name of *Inſulanus*, Biſhop of the Iſles, which he ſtill retains. 4. *Mela*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maleos*, (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia)* mountainous and hilly, but affording good Mines of Lead and Copper, 25 Miles more in compaſs than that of *Ila*. 4. *Lewis*, or *Leviſſa*, the largeſt of all the *Hebrides*, ſaid to be 60 Miles in length and 30 in breadth, the more Weſtern of the two *Ebudaes* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; the other being now called *Skye*, famous for the multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6. *Racline*, the *Recine* of *Ptolomy*, the ſmalleſt of the *Hebrides*, and moſt near to *Ireland*. The reſt of leſs note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopl'd at the preſent, I forbear to name; ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, others ſcarce having Graſs enough to hide their Barrenneſs. The People of them all, as well in Language as Behaviour, reſemble the *Wild-Iriſh*, and are call'd *Red-ſhanks*; a People, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all ſhew of Civility; ſuch as endure not to be govern'd by Laws, or kept under by Diſcipline. *Legum ſeveritate, & judiciorum, metu, ſe alligari non patiuntur*, ſaith judicious *Cambden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a Contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norway*, and King *Alexander* III. the *Orcades* being bargain'd for at the ſame time alſo.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton Frith*, lieth the Iſle of *Rothſay*, (now called *Buthe)* which gives the Title of a Duke to the Prince of *Scotland*; and the Iſle of *Arran*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. *MAN* is ſituate juſt over againſt the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is diſtant 25 Miles, and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*; becauſe it foſter'd venomous Serpents, brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Monœda*, or the further *Mona*, to difference it from that which we call *Angleſey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Oraſius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas*, an old *Britiſh* Writer. The *Welch*, at this day, call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *Engliſh Man*. It is in length 30 Miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in ſome places. The People hate Theft and Begging, and uſe a Language mixt of the *Norwegians* and *Iriſh* Tongues. The Soil is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they uſe to ſupply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it ſelf, yet queſtionleſs the *Weſtern Iſles*, which are a Member of it: For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke*, late Biſhop of this Iſland, in a Letter to Mr. *Cambden*, at ſuch time as he was compoſing his moſt excellent *Britannia*, *Our Iſland* (ſaith he) *for Cattel, for Fiſh, and for Corn, hath not only ſufficient for it ſelf, but ſendeth alſo good ſtore into other Countries*. Now what Countries ſhould need this ſupply (*England* and *Ireland* being afore-hand with ſuch Proviſion) except *Scotland*, or ſome Members thereof, I ſee not

Venerabble *Bede* numbred in it 300 Families; and now it is furniſh'd with 17 Pariſh Churches; the chief Towns are, 1. *Balacuri*, and 2. *Ruſſin*, or *Caſtle-Town*, the Seat of a Biſhop, who tho' he be under the Archbiſhop of *York*, yet never had any Voice in the *Engliſh* Parliament. In this Iſland is the Hill of *Sceaful*, where, on a clear Day, one may ſee *England, Scotland*, and *Ireland*: Here alſo are bred the *Soland* Geeſe, of rotten Wood falling into the Water. This Iſland was taken from the *Britains* by the *Scots*, and from them regain'd by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* ſeiz'd on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and ſome part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* III. of *Scotland*, by a mixt Title of Arms and Purchaſe. After which time it was ſometime *Engliſh*, ſometimes *Scotiſh*, as their Fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the Year 1340. *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, deſcended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and ſold it to the Lord *Scrope*, who being condemn'd of Treaſon, *Henry* IV. gave it to *Henry Piercy*, Earl of *Northumberland*; but he alſo proving falſe to his Sovereign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Derby*.

The Kings of Man, *of the* Daniſh *or* Norwegian *Race.*

1065	1	*Godred*, the Son of *Syrric*.
1066	2	*Fingal*, Son of *Godred*.
1066	3	*Godred* II. Son of *Harold*.
1082	4	*Lagnan*, Eldeſt Son of *Godred* II.
1089	5	*Donald*, Son of *Tado*.
1098	6	*Magnus*, King of *Norway*.
1102	7	*Olave* the Third, Son of *Godred*.
1144	8	*Godred* III. Son of *Olave*.
1187	9	*Reginald*, baſe Son of *Godred* the Third.
1226	10	*Olave*, the lawful Son of *Godred* the Third.
1237	11	*Harold*, Son of *Olave*.
1243	12	*Reginald* II. Brother of *Harold*.
1252	13	*Magnus* II. Brother of *Reginald*.
1266	14	*Magnus* III. King of *Norway*, the laſt King of *Man*, of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of Man, *of the* Engliſh *Blood.*

1340	1	*William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
1395	2	*William* Lord *Scrope*, King of *Man*.
1399	3	*Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
1403	4	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Iſle of *Man*.
	5	*John* Lord *Stanley*.
	6	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*.
	7	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1503	8	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1521	9	*Edward* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1572	10	*Henry* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1593	11	*Ferdinando* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1594	12	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1642	13	*James* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*, Lord of

the Iſle of *Man*, now living, *An.* 1648. but beheaded by the Order of the *Junto* in 1651. for his Loyalty at *Bolton* in *Lancaſhire.*
1651 14 *Charles L. Stanley* and *Strang*, who was diſpoſſeſs'd of the Government of *Man* till 1660.
1672 15 *William Stanley*, Son and Heir of the ſaid *Charles* K. of *Man*, and E. of *Derby*, who is now living.

They are Kings in effect, though but Lord in Title, as having here all kind of *Civil* Power and Juriſdiction over the Inhabitants under the *Fife* and *Soveraignty* of the Crown of *England*, together with the nomination of the *Biſhop*, whom he preſents unto the King for his *Royal Aſſent*, then to the Archbiſhop of *York* for his Conſecration. And this I take to be the reaſon why the Biſhop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but ſuch as held immediately of the King himſelf, nor was it reaſon that they ſhould.

V. *ANGLESEY*, is an Iſland ſituate in the *Iriſh* Sea; over againſt *Caernarvonſhire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Straight, which they call the *Monai*: By the *Britains* themſelves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called the *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Monai*; but being conquered by the *Engliſh*, it obtained the name of *Angleſey*, as one would ſay, the Iſland of the *Engliſh*-Men (*eye* in the *Saxon* Language ſignifying an *Iſland.*) A place of ſuch a fair Revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales* being ſtripped of almoſt all the reſt of his Eſtates by King *Edward* I, paid to that King a Tribute of 1000 *per Annum* for this Iſland only.

And to ſay Truth, the Iſland is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattel: from whence the *Welch* are liberally ſtored with both: and therefore it is ſaid proverbially; *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Angleſey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from Eaſt to Weſt, about 20 Miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compaſs 74 Pariſhes, divided into ſix hundreds, and hath in it only two Market-Towns; that is to ſay, 1. *Beaumaris*, ſeated on a flat or marſh Ground, near the *Monai*, built by King *Edward* the Firſt to ſecure his Conqueſt: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2. *Newburgh*, a Town of no great Antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Roſſur*: in former times it had an Haven of ſome good receipt, but now choaked with Sand. The other places of moſt note are. 3 *Aberfraw*, a ſmall Village now, but heretofore the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4*ly*, *Holyhead*, ſeated on a head-land or *Promontory* thruſting into the Seas, made *holy* (or thought ſo at leaſt) by the religious Retirement of Saint *Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Diſciples of St. *Hillary* of *Poictiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer Cuby*: of moſt note for the ordinary paſſage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Anciently this Iſland was the ſeat of the *Druides*, and brought with no ſmall difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the People fighting in other parts of *Britain* for their Liberty only; but here *pro Aris & Focis* too, for their *Religion*, *Liberty*, and their Goods to boot: Being deſerted by the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Britain*, it remained in the poſſeſſion of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State, when added to the Crown of *England* by the puiſſance of King *Edward* the Firſt, by whom made one of the Shires of *Wales*, as it ſtill continues.

Not far from *Angleſey*, ſomewhat inclining to the South, is the Iſle of *Bardſey*, by *Ptolomy* called *Edri*, by *Pliny Adros*, by the *Welch Enlhy*; extended towards the Eaſt with a Rocky *Promontory*, but rich and fruitful towards the Weſt: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in former times. Southwards from hence and over againſt St. *Davids*, are two other Iſlands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild Honey; the other named by the *Welch Lymen*, by the *Engliſh Ramſey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolomy*, the *Silianum* of *Pliny*, but not elſe remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I muſt take them in my paſſage to the Iſles of *Scilly*. Of thoſe the firſt is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level. The 2. *Steholm*, from the ſteep and craggy diſpoſition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both ſituate over againſt the County of *Somerſet*. More towards the opening of the *Channel*, lyeth the Iſle of 3. *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen Inis Pir*, of as ſmall note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Iſle of 4. *Lundey*, over againſt *Devonſhire*, the principal Iſland of this Sea: extending two Miles every way; of excellent paſturage, well ſtored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good diſtance from any part of the Land, in the midſt of the ſalt and brackiſh Ocean, and yet yieldeth many Springs of *Freſh-water* for the uſe of the People; inhabiting for the moſt part in a Town of the ſame name with the Iſland. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks: and having but one way of acceſs into it, and that ſo narrow, that two Men cannot go a breaſt.

VI. The Iſles of *SCILLY*, in number 145, are ſituate over againſt the Weſtern *Promontory* of *Cornwal*, from which diſtant 24 Miles; and lye round together in the manner of a ring or *Circle*, Diſcovered firſt by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, oppoſite againſt which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and reſorted to by the ſaid *Phœnicians* from the Iſle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhauſtible Mines of *Tin*, which they found amongſt them. A Trade ſo great and gainful to them, that they held it a great point of State: κρύπτειν ἅπασι τὸν πλοῦν, to keep it as a Secret from all the World, as we find in *Strabo*: who adds the ſtory of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, incountred in his Voyage hither, by ſome *Roman* Veſſels; and ſplitting his Ship on the next ſhore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; was rewarded for his honeſt care, and recompenced for the loſs of his Ship and Goods, out of the publick Treaſury. From this abundance of *Tin*, the *Gracians* when they came to know them, called them *Caſſiterides*: (*Caſſiteros* in that Language ſignifying *Tin*) accordingly *Herodotus*, ὅτι νήσους οἶδα Κασσιτερίδας ἐούσας ἐκ τῶν ὁ κασσίτερος ἡμῖν φοιτᾷ, affirming that he knew not thoſe Iſlands called *Caſſiterides*, from whence *Tin* was brought. The richneſs of this Commodity, the pleaſures of the Place, and the Weſtern ſituation of them makes many of the *Græcians* call them *Heſperides*: miſtaking them for the *Fortunate Iſlands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*; as before is ſaid, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antonius*; *inſulæ Sillinæ*, by *Severus Sulpitius*: from whence we have the name of the *Iſles of Scilly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, beſides the Treaſures hid within, well ſtored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and moſt ſorts of wild Fowl. Ten of them more eſteemed than the reſt, are called by the names of 1. *Armath*, 2. *Agnes*, 3. *Sampſon*, 4. *Scilly*, 5. *Breſar*, 6. *Suſco*, 7. S. *Hellens*, 8. *Arthur*, 9. S. *Maurice*, and 10. S. *Maries*: Of which the moſt famous in the account of former times, was that of *Scilly*, as giving name unto the reſt; but in the preſent eſtimate S. *Maries* is accompted the chief of all: 8 Miles in compaſs; fruitful of all Neceſſaries, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle built by Queen *Elizabeth*, well Manned and *Garriſoned*, for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongſt theſe Iſlands, capable of the greateſt Navies.

Theſe Iſlands firſt diſcovered by *Hamilco* a *Carthaginian*, ſent by that State to ſearch into the Weſt Coaſts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece*, and *Italy*; by reaſon of the Mines of *Tin* ſpoken of before: So beneficial to the *Romans*, that they uſed to ſend hither their condemned Priſoners to work in the Mines; as the beſt ſervice to be done by their forfeited Lives. And hither amongſt others, *Juſtantius*, a fierce *Priſcillianiſt*, for his factious and ſeditious Carriage, was ſent by *Maximus*; *ad Sillinam inſulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forſaken their hold in *Britain*, they reaturned again into the power and poſſeſſion of the *Natives*; from whom ſubdued, and added unto the *Engliſh* Crown by *Athelſtane* the 8 K. of *England*. Now ordered for *Civil* matters, as a part of *Cornwall*, for military, by their own Captain, ſubordinate to the Lord *Lieutenant* of that County; and for the *Tin-Trade*, by the Lord *Warden* and Court of *Stanneries.* An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwal*, who by reaſon of their Employment in theſe *Mines* have many Priviledges and Exemptions more than other Subjects; but of late limited and reſtrained by Acts of Parliament.

VIII. The Iſle of *WIGHT* lieth over againſt *Hampſhire*, from which it ſeemeth to have been divided; the paſſage betwixt it and *Hurſt-Caſtle* on the oppoſite ſhore, being very narrow; and the name of it intimating ſome ſuch diviſions. For by the *Britains* it was anciently called *Guith*, which ſignifieth a Breach or Separation, from whence the *Engliſh* have their *Wight*; the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* People; and from ſome Root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vectis*, *Vetcht*, *Wight*, and *Guith* being words of near reſemblance, that we need not to travel further for an *Etymologie.* The Iſland of an *Oval* form 20 Miles in length, and 12 Miles broad about the midſt; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*. Naturally fenced about on all ſides, on the South eſpecially, where it looks towards *France*, on which ſide inacceſſible by reaſon of the ſteep and craggy Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much leſs ſafe on the North-Weſt, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingels*, and the *Needles)* not worn away either at or ſince the firſt *ſeparation* from the other ſhore, make the paſſage dangerous; except to ſingle Ships, and thoſe not unacquainted with the courſe of the Channel. Towards the North-Eaſt more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Caſtles of the *Cows* and *Sandham*. There is alſo the Caſtle of *Yarmouth* in the Weſt of the Iſland, and that of *Garesbrook* in the midſt (but more towards the North) in which laſt there is ſaid to be Armour for 5000 Men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, beſides many Market-Towns) a piece of Ordnance. Yet do not all theſe Arms and Caſtles add ſo much to the ſtrength of it, as the natural courage of the People; Warlike and Stout, and trained up unto the poſtures of War from their very Childhood.

The Soil hereof abundantly anſwereth the pains of the Husbandman, ſo plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of good *Paſturage*; that they have not only enough for themſelves, but furniſh the Markets of *Southampton* and *Portſmouth* (but the laſt eſpecially) with the greateſt part of the Wheat, Fleſh, Cheeſe, and Butter; which is ſpent amongſt them. Inſomuch that the Soldiers of *Portſmouth* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Town, have been uſed to ſay, That if *they had the Iſle of* WIGHT *to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World beſides.* Their Sheep hereof ſo fine a Fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the ſecond eſteem next to that of *Lemſter* (in the Country of *Hereford*) and precedency of that of *Cotſwold.*

Their chief Towns, 1 *Yarmouth*, on the North-Weſt of the Iſland, ſeated on a convenient Haven, which is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance to that of *Rochel*; and that Haven defended with a ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Brading*, another Market-Town. 3. *Newton*, an ancient *Burrough*, and privileged, ſending Burgeſſes to the *Engliſh Parliament*. 4. *Garesbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an ancient Caſtle. 5. *Newport*, now the chief of all the Iſle, called in the times paſt *Medena*, afterwards *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at laſt *Newport*; ſeated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of leſſer burden to the very Key; and by that means populous, well traded, & inhabited by a civil and wealthy People.

The Iſland firſt ſubdued to the *Romans* by the Valour of *Veſpaſian*, (afterwards Emperour of *Rome)* in the time of *Claudius.* Extorted from the *Britains* by *Cerdick* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almoſt rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the laſt Country of the *Saxons* which received the *Goſpel*, and then upon compulſion too, forced to it by the power as well as the perſwaſion of *Cedwella* the *Weſt-Saxon* King. Took from the *Engliſh* in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the firſt Lord thereof. From whoſe Family, by the gift of *Henry* II. it paſſed to that of *Redvars*, or *Rivers*, *(de Riparis)* then Earl of *Devonſhire*: and on failing of that Houſe, returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward* the Firſt. Never ſo much ennobled as by *Henry* the Sixth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his Reign crowned him King of *Wight*, An. 1445. Which Title ended with his life about two years after.

IX. *THANET*, is a little Iſland in the North-Eaſt of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea, into which it ſhooteth with a large Promontory called the *North-fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the ancient Writers: and towards the Weſt, ſevered from the main Land of *Kent* by the River *Stoure*, which is here called *Yenlade*, but ſevered ſo, that by the benefit of a Cauſey and paſſage for the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent or main Land of *Kent*. The quality, ſite, and figure of it, taken in theſe Rhythms (for I dare hardly call them Verſes) extant not long ſince in a Window of the chief Church there, *viz.*

Inſula rotunda Thanatos, quam circuit unda,
Nobilis & munda, nulli eſt in orbe ſecunda.
Thanet is round with circling waters bound,
A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in ſome Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in other things, ſo in theſe particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they firſt came into *Britain*; the firſt *Livery* and *Seiſin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bounty of *Vortiger*, to whoſe aid called in; and the landing place of *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he brought the Goſpel to the *Saxons*. The whole about two Miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in thoſe times, 600 Families; now very populous for the bigneſs, and plentiful of all Commodities neceſſary, but of Corn eſpecially. The People generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by *Sea* and *Land*, well skilled, as well in ſteering of a Ship at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both induſtrious. Of moſt note in it, 1. *Stonar*, a Port-Town, the uſual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britains*, who having vanquiſhed the *Saxons* in many Battels, and finally driven them out of the Iſland, deſired to be here interred on a conceit, that this dead Corps would fright them from landing any more upon theſe Coaſts. And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a Fortunate hand againſt thoſe of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coaſts of *Italy*.

X. *SUNDERLAND* is an Iſland only at an high-water, when environed on all ſides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an eaſie paſſage from the one to the other: pulled by ſome Tempeſt, or by the working of the Sea from the reſt of the Land: whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-Eaſt part of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, over againſt the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhauſtible Mines of *Coal*, and for that cauſe ſeldom without the company of foreign Merchants, yet not to have been here remembred, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Sovereign Lord King *Charles*, the ſecond Monarch of Great *Britain*, to confer the Title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*; the firſt in the third year of his Reign, *An.* 1627. the ſecond in the 18*th*, *An.* 1642.

XI. The HOLY ISLAND lieth upon the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, not far from *Berwick*, ſtretched out in length from Eaſt to Weſt, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and of great ſafety, but more Famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Chriſtianity* amongſt the *Northumbers*, made a Biſhops See, by S. *Aidanus*, one of the firſt *Apoſtles* of that potent Nation. Selected for this Dignity by that godly Man for the *Solitude* and Privacy of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious Lives* of ſo many pious Biſhops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy Iſland*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to ſay, from the year 637, to 990, under 22 Biſhops, hence called Biſhops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the inſolencies of the *Danes* (who then raged terribly on thoſe Coaſts) compelling them to abandon that *Religious ſolitude*.

Thus have we taken a ſurvey of the *Britiſh Iſlands*, and ſhewn by what means *Ireland* and all the *leſſer Iſlands* became united either to the Crown of *England* or *Scotland*; and thoſe two Kingdoms to each other joyned in the perſon of the ſame King, and the participation of his Favours, though different ſtill in Laws, and ſome forms of Government, as moſt of the Eſtates of *Spain*, at the preſent time. United alſo in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being ſwallowed up, or incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleaſed King *James* to own for his ſtile *Imperial*. And for a memory thereof, to cauſe a piece of Gold to be coined of 20 *s.* (ſince raiſed to 22 *s.*) which he called the *Unity*, ſtamped on the one ſide with his picture, and this *Inſcription*, *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other ſide with his Arms, crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to do, is to lay down the names of thoſe puiſſant Princes, whom God hath raiſed to be

The MONARCHS of *BRITAIN*.

1602 1 *James*, the ſixth of that name; King of the *Scots*, Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, Daughter of *James* V. the Son of *James* IV. and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* VII. of *England*: which *Margaret* being after married to *Archibald Douglas* Earl of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* alſo (the only child of her Parents) married to *Matthew Stewart* Earl of *Lenox*; by whom ſhe was made the Mother of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *James* VI, by the ſaid *Mary* Queen of *Scots*. So that King *James* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* VII. both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* VIII. in the perſon of Queen *Elizabeth* of famous Memory; was the next Heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyful Acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. *An* 1602. (according to the Accompt of the Church of *England*) a Learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nurſing Father of the Church*, and a lover of Learning. He died at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four days over.

1625 2 *Charles*, ſecond Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63 King in deſcent from *Cerdick*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*; the 45*th* King of *England*, in deſcent from *Egbert*; the 24*th* from the *Norman* Conqueror; the 64*th* Monarch of the *Engliſh*, and the ſecond Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his Reign he married the Princeſs *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* IV. and Siſter to *Lewis* XIII. *French* Kings, by whom bleſt with a *Royal Iſſue* of Sons and Daughters. The firſt 12 years of this Princes Reign were to his Subjects moſt Happy, and to him not Inglorious; but in the year 1637. the *Scots* began to be unquiet, yet this Storm ſoon was compoſed, but broke out again the next year, and forced this Prince to enter into a War againſt them in 1639. which ended in a ſhort liv'd Peace, two Parliaments being call'd in *England* in the year 1640. The laſt of which proved fatal to this Nation, and the 30*th* of *January* 1648. baſely Murdered that Holy Prince. Baniſhing his Children, and as much as in them lay, extinguiſhing the Monarchy of Great *Britain*. They intended to have governed it for the future as a Common-Wealth; but the 20*th* of *April* 1653. *Oliver Cromwell* one of their Generals, put an end to this Dream, and took upon him the Title of **Protector** of the Common-Wealth of *England*. The 3*d* of *September* 1658. This Tyrant went to his own place, and *Richard* his Son ſucceeded him, who, *April* the 2*d* following was deſerted, and the 7*th* of *May* the *Rump* Parliament was reſtored, which was finally diſſolved by *General Monk* the 15*th* of *March* 1659, 60.

1660 3 *Charles* the 2*d*, Eldeſt Son of *Charles* the Martyr, was Reſtored to the rightful Poſſeſſion of his Fathers Throne the 29*th* of *May*, to the univerſal and unſpeakable Joy of all *Engliſh* Men; who by ſo many Miſeries, had learned to value the **Monarchy**, as the greateſt of their Bleſſings; he proved a Prince of incomparable Juſtice, Mercy, and Goodneſs, and wanted nothing but Children to have made him the eternal Darling, and Admiration of the *Engliſh* Nation.

1684 4 *James* the 2*d*, the ſecond Son of *Charles* the Martyr, and Brother of *Charles* the 2*d*, Succeeded him the 6*th* of *February*, 1684. according to the Computation of the Church of *England*. He was born the 13*th* of *October* 1633. And Married firſt *Ann*, Daughter of *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, Lord Chancellor of *England*, in the year 1660. by whom he had many Children that are Dead; but there ſurvived *Mary* late Queen of *England*, born the 10*th* of *May* 1662. Married to *William* Prince of *Orange* the 7*th* of *November* 1677. *Anne* Born in 1665. Married to *George* Prince of *Denmark* now Queen, the 28*th* of *July* 1683. Of which there was one Son born the 24*th* of *July* at *Hampton Court*, Baptized the 28*th* by the Name of *William*, and declared Duke of *Glouceſter* by his late Majeſty, ſince Dead.

The firſt Wife of *James* the Second, Died in the year 1671. and he Marryed in 1673. *Mary Eleonora*, Daughter of *Francis* Duke of *Modena*, from this Marriage the 11*th* of *June* 1688. there was pretended a Spring, a Prince of *Wales*, which is ſtill living in *France*.

1688 5 *William* III. Prince of *Orange*, and *Mary* Eldeſt Daughter of *James* II, Succeeded in the Abdicated Throne of *England*. *James* II. having the 11*th* of *December* 1688. and the three Eſtates in a Convention having Recognized the Rights of *William* and *Mary*, the 12*th* of *February* following. The Hiſtory of which wonderful Revolution, is too long to be here inſerted, it being largely unfolded in the *Hiſtory of the Deſertion then Printed*. The Queen died the 28*th* of *December* 1693. And the Government continued in the King to his Death.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe *Britiſh* Monarchs, we cannot put the eſtimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each ſeveral part; out of which *Items* the *ſumma totalis* of the whole both in *Power* and *Treaſure*, will be eaſily gathered. For though theſe Monarchs never had any occaſion to muſter and unite the *Forces* of their ſeveral *Kingdoms* upon any one Action, yet by conſidering what they have been able to do divided; we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And ſo we are to do in marſhelling the Arms of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, which are 1. Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2*ly*. *Scotland*, 3*ly*. *Ireland*, the Fourth as the firſt. I ſhut up this Diſcourſe of the *Britiſh* Empire, with thoſe words of *Scripture* (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QUÆ DEUS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET*.

The Revenues and Government of *England*, received ſo great a change in the year 1660. upon the Reſtitution of *Charles* the Second, that it is in vain to attempt a Repreſentation of it here: I ſhall therefore refer the Reader to that Elaborate piece, which has been ſo often Printed, call'd the **Preſent State of England**, where he may ſatisfie his Curioſity, and in the Interim, what this Learned Author has Written, may ſtand as the moſt exact Account of its Ancient State, before the War began.

And ſo much for *Britain*.

A

A TABLE

Of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE OF THE CHIEF CITIES mentioned in this FIRST BOOK.

	Lon.		Lat.	
A				
Aberdene	22	20	57	20
Alcala de Henares	23	0	40	30
Alicante	28	40	39	0
Almodine	34	0	33	40
Ancona	43	10	43	50
S. *Andrews*	22	10	56	20
Angoleſme	27	0	46	0
Angiers	18	10	47	25
Aquilegia	42	50	46	40
Armagh	14	50	54	9
Avero	17	30	41	10
Avignion	23	40	45	50
Aux	22	40	43	50
St. *Anderos*	22	20	43	
Aix	22	20	42	10
Arls	21	45	43	20
Amboiſe	20	35	47	35
B				
Badaios	19	40	38	30
Baione	24	20	42	14
Baſil	28	10	48	30
Beſanſon	26	30	47	30
Bilbao	23	30	41	10
Baden in Switzerland.	31		48	44
Blavet	21	15	47	50
Bononia	35	50	43	33
Breſt	20		48	50
Bath	20	56	51	20
Bragance	6		45	
Barwick	22	43	55	48
Barcelone	17	15	41	36
Bourdeaux	18		45	10
Bruges	24	10	48	20
C				
Cambridge	23	25	52	10
Calice	26	2	52	
Canterbury	24	50	51	16
Cartema	28	20	38	20
Caen	21		50	5
Carliſle	21	31	52	57
Cheſter	20	23	53	11
Chicheſter	26	10	51	
Clermont	30	15	45	50
Chur	32		42	
Cork	15	40	41	40
Corduba	9	4	37	50
Conimbre	5	45	50	19
Compoſtella	17	15	44	18
Coventry	25	52	52	23
D				
Diepe	28	40	49	30
Dignion	25	45	47	
Dole	28	3	49	5
Dover	26	10	51	
Dublin	16	40	54	27
Dunbritton	19	24	57	10
Durham	22		54	55
E				
Edenburgh	22		55	50
Embrum	28		44	
Elie	25	20	52	40
Exeter	22	10	51	
F				
Florence	41	10	43	40
Ferrara	44		36	
Fayal			48	40
G				
Geneva	33	40	46	20
Galloway	13	17	56	6
Gloceſter	19		53	
Gades	15	10	37	
Granada	11		37	50
Groine	16	50	43	20
Genoa	37	50	45	0
Grenoble	27		45	30
H				
S. *Hillary in Guernſey.*	22	20	49	40
Hull	25	20	53	40
L				
Leon	21	10	42	15
Lisbon	9	10	38	30
Lions	23	15	45	20
Lincoln	22	15	53	12
London	23	25	50	33
Luca	42	10	40	
Legorn	40	20	43	30
M				
Majorca	39	50	30	
Malaga	23	50	33	22
Marſeilles	24	30	43	16

S. *Malo*

	Lon.		Lat.	
S. *Malo*	19		49	
Medina Cœli	23	30	41	10
Millaine	38	30	46	10
Modena	41	50	35	40
Montpelier	25	30	44	10
Montalban	23		45	
Meſſana	45	50	37	50
Minorca	40	30	40	0
N				
Naples	46		39	30
Nantes	24	10	47	10
Narbon	30	20	43	20
Nevers	24		47	10
Newcaſtle	22	30	54	57
Niſmes	26		44	2
Norwich	24	55	52	40
O				
Oleron	24	30	45	30
Orleans	28	30	48	0
Orange	26	20	43	20
Oxford	22		51	20
Otranto	49	30	40	20
P				
Pampelun	24	30	43	33
Paris	23	30	48	40
Pavie	44	1	35	5
Padua	44	45	36	29
Parma	39	20	45	10
Peſcara	43	0	30	10
Palermo				
Peragia	42	20	43	10
Peter-port in *Jerſey*	23	0	49	20
Piſa	40	30	43	40
Placentia	20	40	40	0
Poictiers	26	30	47	
R				
Ravenna	44	20	44	20
Rhemes	25	25	48	30
Remes	19		48	

	Lon.		Lat.	
Rochel	18	15	45	50
Rome	42	30	42	
Rouen	23	40	48	50
Rhezo	24	0	38	20
S				
Salisbury	18	3	51	10
Saluenca	8	5	40	15
Saragoſſa	24	15	41	45
Sevil	7	15	37	
Sion, or *Sittia*	29		45	
Stirling	20	10	56	20
Stena	42	20	36	16
Siguenca	18	2		
Syracuſe.	40	30	37	30
T				
Taranatiſe	29		45	
Tarragon	28	30	38	20
Tholouſe	28	40	43	10
Toledo	16	20	39	40
Trieſte	44	10	46	10
Tredah	16	34	54	10
Turin	31	30	43	45
Tarentum	48	0	40	30
V				
Valadolid	16	10	42	5
Valentia	19	20	39	4
Venice	41	40	45	50
Verona	40	40	45	50
Viterbo	41	50	41	4
W				
Weymouth	23	50	51	
Winchester	22		52	
Wexford	16	42	53	
Y				
Yarmouth	27	30	53	0
York	22	25	54	18
Z				
Zurick	30	20	47	

The End of the First Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
Belgium, *Germany*, *Denmark*, *Swethland*, *Ruſſia*,
Poland, *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, and *Greece*,
with the *Iſles* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

TACIT. HIST. LIB. 4.
Humanarum rerum poſſeſſionem Trans-alpinis *gentibus portendi*, Druidæ *canebant*.

SENEC. de Conſolat. ad ALBINUM.
Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciuntur, nova Gentium nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.

LONDON,
Printed by *William Richardſon*. in the Year MDCCI.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
Belgium, *Germany*, *Denmark*, *Swethland*, *Ruſſia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, and *Greece*, with the *Iſles* thereof.

OF
BELGIUM.

HAving purſued the Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the four Weſtern Dioceſſes or Diviſions of it, wholly ſubdued to the Command of that Conquering State: Let us next look on thoſe Countries which lay farther North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but Conquered in part, or elſe were reckoned as the Members of ſome greater Province. Of this laſt ſort was all that Tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded Eaſtward with *Weſtphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the Land of *Triers*, Provinces of the Higher *Germany*; on the Weſt with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *Eaſt-Friſeland*; on the South with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-Eaſt with the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.

By the *Latines* (eſpecially of theſe laſt Times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belgæ*, the moſt potent People of all theſe Parts; and ſometimes alſo *Germania inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the ſame ſence as by the *Engliſh* it is called the *Low-Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low Situation, and the conformity which they have with the *Germans* in Laws, Languages, Cuſtoms and Manners. By ſome it hath been call'd by the aggregate Name of the *Seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of ſeveral and diſtinct Eſtates united under the Command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which, though but one of the Seventeen Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the People of which were once generally called by the Name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reaſon of the great Trade and Traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges*, (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all Parts of *Europe*; or in reſpect that lying nearer than the reſt to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *England*, that Name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the Command of many Princes; of which the Earls of *Flanders* were eſteem'd moſt potent. And though this name continued alſo after the Incorporating of moſt of theſe Provinces in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Eſtates* of *Flanders*: Yet ſince the falling off of *Holland* and the reſt of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath loſt this Honour, the name of *Flanders* being now reſtrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name moſt current amongſt the *Latines* of this Age, yet I ſee little

little reaſon for it. For firſt, Old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large Eſtates which are not now within the compaſs of theſe *Belgick* Provinces; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and a great part of *Cleve*, the Biſhopricks of *Triers*, *Mentz* and *Colen*, and ſo much of the Kingdom of *France* as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne* and of *France* ſpecially ſo called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended ſomewhat farther yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Alſace*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Switzerland* as lyeth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *Weſt-Friſeland*, *Groening*, *Over-Yſſell*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and ſo much of *Gelderland*, and *Utretch* as lyeth on the farther ſide of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never counted of as parts of either *Belgium* or of *Belgia Gallica*, though now within the compaſs of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the Limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which Body *Belgium* was a Limb or Member in the *Roman* eſtimate.

As for the *Belgæ*, from whence we have the Names of *Belgium* and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themſelves within the *Rhene*; eſteem'd by *Cæſar* to be the Valianteſt of the *Gallick* Nations for theſe three Reaſons. 1. They were the fartheſt from *Provence*, where the *Roman* Civilities and more affable courſe of Life was embraced. 2. They dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and ſo wanted thoſe allurements to Effeminacy which are in Countries of Traffick. 3. They border'd on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation, with whom they were continually in Armes. This People ſeeing the proſperous ſucceſs of *Cæſar*'s Victories in *Gaul*, joined together in a League, and muſtered an Army of 269000 fighting Men againſt him. But ſeeing they could not draw him out of his Fortreſſes, they retired again, and that in ſuch diſorder, that three Legions (for no more was *Cæſar*'s Army) put them to an infinite ſlaughter. After this, *Cæſar*, fighting againſt them ſeverally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the bordering *Germans*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed, ſubject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Conſtantine* the Great it was made part of the Dioceſs of *Gallia*, and by him caſt into five Provinces: that is to ſay, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorrain* and the Land of *Triers*, the Metropolis whereof was *Triers*; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and *France* ſpecial, of which the Metropolis was *Rhemes*; 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alſatia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Biſhoprick of *Mentz*, the Metropolitan City of that Province; 4. *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Gelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Luxemburgh*, *Limbourg*, and the Land of *Colen*, which laſt was honoured with the Title of Metropolitan; 5. *Maxima Sequanorum*, ſo called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Switzerland* as lyeth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, of which *Beſancon* was the Mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above ſpecified are comprehended under the accompt and name of *Belgium*, but ſuch as were poſſeſſed in theſe latter Ages by the Houſe of *Burgundy*; ſome petty Seigniories and Eſtates which properly do belong to *Germany* being added to it: that is to ſay, the Lordſhip of *Weſt-Friſeland*, given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald; the Earldom of *Zutphen* united unto that of *Gelders* by Earl *Otho* of *Naſſau*; and finally the Eſtate of *Groening*, *Over-Yſſel*, and ſome part of *Utrecht* by *Charles* the Fifth. Under which Name and Notion we do now conſider it.

And taking it according to this Name and Notion, it is in compaſs 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* Miles; and is ſituated in the Northern temperate Zone, under the 7, 8, and 9 Climates: the longeſt Day in the midſt of the 7th Climate, where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 9th Climate increaſed to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in theſe latter Days is grown more wholeſom than formerly; partly by the wonderful increaſe of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible Induſtry of the People, who, by draining the Marſhes, and converting the ſtanding Waters into running Streams have purged the Air of many groſs and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence uſually ariſe in Times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing well-nigh Three Millions of Souls; the Men being for the moſt part well-proportioned, great lovers of our Engliſh Beer, unmindful both of good Turns and Injuries, of good Wit for inventing, and of a moſt indefatigable induſtry for perfecting the rareſt Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as alſo for *Arras*-Hangings, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the Mariner's Compaſs. They reſtored Muſick, and found out divers Muſical Inſtruments, being naturally good Muſicians, and generally ſo given unto it, and ſo perfect in it, that therefore (till the Art of Muſick grew more common) there were not many Great Mens Houſes which had not Muſicians to teach their Children. To them belongeth alſo the invention of Chariots, the laying on of Colours with Oyl, the working of Pictures in Glaſs, and the making of Worſteds, Seyes, and Tapeſtries; the making of which and other Stuffs, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they firſt taught the *Engliſh*. The Women generally are of good Complexion, well-proportioned, eſpecially in the Leg and Foot, honourers of Vertue, active and familiar. Both within doors and without they govern all: which, conſidering the natural deſire of Women to *bear Rule*, maketh them too imperious and burthenſom.

They uſe for the moſt part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to *France*, that is to ſay, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and ſome parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, they uſe the *French*; but the ſame very corruptly and imperfectly, by reaſon of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *German*, yet ſo that one may eaſily diſcern thoſe People to be *French* Originally, or ſome remainder of the old *Gauls*, maſtered by the *French*, but not rooted out. From their Language or firſt Original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *Germans* uſually changing *G* into *W*, as *War* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like caſes *Wales* for *Galles*. I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*; ſome making them to be of the *Burgundian* Race, who, at their firſt paſſing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Country People in theſe words, *Ou allons*, i. e. *Whither go we?* which being oft repeated by them, occaſioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtleſs, but of no ſolidity, nor to be farther honoured with a confutation.

The Country in thoſe parts which lie towards *Germany*, eſpecially on the South-Eaſt bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorrain*, is ſomewhat ſwelled with Hills and over-ſhaded with Woods, the Relicks of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof: But towards the Weſt and North, where it joins to the Sea, it is plain and level, full of Flats and Marſhes, affording very little Corn, but abounding in Paſturage, which yields a great increaſe of Butter and Cheeſe, good ſtore of Beeves and Horſes of more than ordinary bigneſs. By reaſon of which low and level Situation, and the ill Neighbourhood of a troubleſom and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much ſubject to Inundations; inſomuch as in the time of King *Henry* the II. *Flanders* was ſo overflown, that many thouſands of People, whoſe Dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new Seats; and were by that King firſt placed in *Yorkſhire*, and then removed to *Pembrokeſhire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* ſwallowed eight of the Iſlands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whoſe Churches and ſtrong Buildings are at a dead low Water to be ſeen. And as once *Ovid* ſaid of *Helice* and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, ſo may we of theſe;

Invenies ſub aquis, & adhuc oſtendere nautæ
Inclinata ſolent cum mœnibus oppida verſis.

That is to ſay,

The Waters hide them, and the Sailors ſhow
The ruin'd Walls and Steeples, as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into their Countries are Linnen, Scarlets, Worſted, Seyes, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheeſe, *&c.* Of which, excepting Cheeſe and Butter, there is nothing of the natural grow of the Country: the reſt being Manufactures which they make out of ſuch materials as they fetch out of Foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them moſt benefit is that of Fiſh, not caught upon their own Coaſt neither, but either in the Northern Seas or the Coaſt of *England*. The very Herrings which they catch on the Shoars of *England* (to the no ſmall Diſhonour of the *Engliſh* Nation) bringing them a Revenue (beſides what is purſed up by Adventurers) of 440000 Pounds *per Annum*; and that of Cod-fiſh, which they catch on the Coaſts of *Frieſeland*, amounting to 150000 Pounds Sterling yearly.

Captains of Note and Eminence it hath bred but few, the People living till of late in perpetual Peace. The chief of thoſe whoſe Names have been tranſmitted to us are, 1. *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for ſubtilty of Wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long War againſt the *Romans*, in the time of *Veſpaſian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperor of *Germany*. 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. 4. *Philip* the Good, and 5. *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor and King of *Spain*. And of late times the Princes of the Houſe of *Naſſau* and *Orange*, tranſplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian* out of higher *Germany*. And to ſay the truth their Genius doth not lie ſo much for Land-ſervice as it doth for the Seas; in which they have been very Famous, and not leſs fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver Vander Noordt*, the fourth that compaſſed the World, *Jacob le Maire*, the firſt diſcoverer of the Streight or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name, beſides divers others. And generally the People are ſo expert in Navigation, (eſpecially thoſe bordering on or near the Coaſts) that they ſeem born for and to the Seas: many of which being born on Ship-board and bred up at Sea, know no other Country, and brook the Land as ill as a Fiſh doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the neceſſity they have of employing themſelves that way (the Country not being otherwiſe able to provide ſuſtenance for thoſe multitudes of Men which it doth abound with) hath ſo exceedingly increaſed their Shipping, that it is thought that they are Maſters of more Veſſels of all ſorts, taking one with another, than almoſt all the reſt of *Europe*.

Scholars of Note it hath bred many. 1. *Eraſmus*, the great reſtorer of Learning in theſe parts of the World. 2. *Juſtus Lipſius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 3. *Joſeph Scaliger*, the Son of *Julius*, ὁ περὶ πᾶν πανσοφώτατος, a Man not to be fellowed in all parts of Learning; but of equal Arrogance. 4. *Rodulphus Agricola.* 5. *Levinus Lemnius.* 6, 7. *Janus Douſa*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo Caſſander.* 11. Dr. *James Hermin.* 12. *Gerard Voſſius*, eminent Divines. And 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great Parts (but ſeaſoned with more Modeſty and Moderation) as the Famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Janſenius*, and 15. *Pamelius*, two right learned Men, but of the *Pontifician* Party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in ſome wretched Hereticks, in none more than in *David George*, born at *Delf* in *Holland*, who called himſelf *Chriſt* and King immortal: Flying from *Delf* to *Baſil* with his Wife and Children, *Anno* 1545. he there taught his Doctrine, *viz.* 1. That the Law and Goſpel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to ſave ſuch as received it. 2. That he was the true *Chriſt* and *Meſſias.* 3. That he was not to reſtore the Houſe of *Iſrael* by Death or Tribulation, but by Love and Grace of the Spirit. 4. That he had been till that preſent kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this laſt Point might obtain the eaſier credit amongſt the People, he bound his Diſciples, firſt, to conceal his Name; ſecondly, not to reveal of what Condition he had been; thirdly, not to diſcover the Articles of his Doctrine to any Man in *Baſil* without his permiſſion. But for all this great care of his within three days after his Death (which happened in the Year 1556.) his Doctrines being made known, were condemned by the Senate and Church of *Baſil*, his Goods confiſcate, and his Bones moſt deſervedly taken up and burnt. Of ſomewhat leſs Impiety, but of no leſs Phrenſie, was, 2. *John* of *Leyden*, (another Town of the ſame Province) who from a Taylor was made King of the Anabaptiſts, when they had raged in *Munſter*, and there we ſhall hear farther of him. 3. *Cappinus*, and 4. *Quintinus*, both *Flemmings*, the joint Authors and Co-founders of the Sect of the Libertines.

The Chriſtian Religion was planted in ſeveral Provinces by ſeveral Men: in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Frieſeland*, by *Willibrode* an *Engliſh* Man, the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*, whence by degrees it gained on the reſt of the Country; theſe being the firſt People of the *Franks*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Goſpel. In tract of time it fell from the Primitive Purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they deſired to reclaim themſelves, they were therein oppoſed by the King of *Spain* and his Miniſters. Hence the beginning of the Troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of Civil Rights invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards*, affecting a more abſolute Dominion over them than their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth ſtand divided betwixt the States and the *Spaniards*, ſo ſtands it with Religion alſo: the *Spaniards* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome* within the Provinces and Eſtates under his Command; and the States General indulging the free uſe of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the Reformed Churches, according to the Plat-form laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Foreſts of this Country are, 1. That of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæſar* extended from the Banks of *Rhene* as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way, and was in compaſs 500 Miles in the leaſt accompt. In which circuit there was comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxemberg*, *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and *Hainalt*, together with the Land of *Gulick* in the Higher *Germany*, as ſome Writers ſay. At this time, though the greateſt of all *Gaul Belgick*, it reacheth but from *Liege* to *Theonville*, 30 Leagues in length, and yet not all that Woodland neither, though within the Verge of the Foreſt; there being much Tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground, the principal of which is the Town of S. *Hubert*, ſituate almoſt in the midſt of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Nonuen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the firſt extending to the Banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up cloſe to *Ypres*. 4. *Pondsberg*, in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mont-Gerard*. All theſe were parts of this great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, which once overſhadowed all this Country. 5. *Normault*, in *Hainault*, in which is much Charcoal made; ſuppoſed for that reaſon to be part of that Foreſt which the old *French* called *La Charboniere.* 6. *Echterwald,* in *Gelderland,* near *Arnheim,* &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene,* which ariſeth out of two Springs in the *Lepontian Alpes* amongſt the *Griſons,* united into one ſtream near *Chur*; thence paſſing by the Cities of *Conſtance, Baſil, Spire, Wormes, Mentz,* and *Colen,* it is again divided about the Confines of *Gelderland* into four Branches or Channels. Of which the firſt is called the *Wael,* which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimeguen* and *Bommel,* loſeth it ſelf in the *Maes.* The ſecond, which keeps the name of the *Rhene,* paſſeth by *Arnheim,* from thence in a contracted Channel to *Utrecht,* and ſo through *Holland* unto *Leyden.* The third, called the *Leck,* taketh his courſe through the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland,* and ſo into the Sea betwixt *Dort* and *Rotterdam.* And the fourth called the *Yſſel,* which paſſing by the Towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer* betwixt *Gelderland* and *Over-Yſſel,* emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean near *Amſterdam.* And of theſe Branches I have given the exacter reckoning, partly becauſe the courſe of that famous River is otherwiſe not eaſie to be obſerved; and partly becauſe the knowledge of a great part of theſe Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the courſe of this River, it being the middle Branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leyden*) which anciently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica.* A River of ſuch Reputation in the ancient Times, that into it the old *Belgæ* uſed to caſt the Children which they ſuſpected to be illegitimate: For were they born of lawful Bed, they floated on the Waters, if of unlawful they ſank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian,* alluding, ſaith, *Naſcentes explorat gurgite Rhenus.* But the great ſearcher of Antiquities, *Verſtegan,* is of Opinion, that thereby they only inured their Children to hardneſs, and made trial of their Strength; Adultery being rarely found among them, and ſo theſe kinds of Experiments needleſs. 2. *Moſa,* the *Maes,* as the *Dutch,* or the *Meuſe,* as the *French* Men call it, which ſpringing from the Mountains of *Vauge* in the Confines of *Lorrain,* and not far from the Fountains of the *Seine* and *Marne,* runneth through *Lorrain, Luxemberg, Luyckland* and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond* and *Venlo,* two known Towns of *Guelderland,* where turning towards the Weſt, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene,* and from thence paſſing by *Maeſtricht,* divides *Brabant* from *Holland,* watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort* in the other; and falleth into the Sea not far from *Briel* with ſo great a violence, that the Waters of it for a long ſpace continue freſh, 3. *Ems,* in *Latine* called *Amiſus,* dividing the two *Frieſelands*; of which more in *Germany,* 4. *Scaldis,* which ariſing in *Picardy,* and running through *Artois,* and between *Hainault* and *Brabant,* meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp.* And 5. *Lis* or *Ley,* which runneth quite through *Flanders.* Beſides which Rivers, and others of inferior Note, (which we ſhall meet withal in their proper places) here are great ſtore of Lakes, Pools and Marſhes, which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of Fiſh: beſides many navigable Channels, made by the hand of Man from one River to another, for the convenience of paſſage, and the more eaſie tranſport of their Commodities.

The Shoar of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea, eſpecially that of the Iſlands of *Zeland,* and ſuch as lie ſcattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with Banks and Ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. Theſe Banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty-five in breadth at the bottom: they are made of the hardeſt Clay that may be gotten, in the inſide ſtuffed with Wood and Stone, on the outſide covered with Mats ſtrong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently diſpoſed of in their ſeveral Countries. That is to ſay, the *Atrebates* in the greateſt part of *Artois*; the *Morini* in the reſt of *Artois,* and thoſe parts of *Flanders* which make up the Imperial and Dutch *Flanders*; the *Nervii* in *Hainault*; *Namur,* and *Flanders Gallicant,* the *Batavi* in *South-Holland,* and ſo much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lies on the South-ſide of the *Rhene,* with the *Menapii* intermixt in the Dukedom of *Gelders*; the *Mattiaci* in the Iſles of *Zeland*; the *Aduatici* and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant,* with part of the *Treviri* in *Luxemburg,* and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland* and the Dukedom of *Limburg*: all which were *Belgick* Nations, and therefore anciently accompted of as parts of *Gallia.* Then on the Northern ſide of the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* there dwelt the *Friſii minores* in *North-Holland,* and ſo much of the Diſtrict of *Utrecht* as lies on the farther ſide of that Channel; the *Friſii majores* in *Weſt-Frieſeland* and the State of *Groening*; ſome parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen,* and the reſt of *Gelderland,* with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-Yſſel,* all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica.* Thoſe which paſſed under the accompt and name of *Belga* being ſubdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the Valour and good Fortune of *Julius Cæſar,* continued ſubject to the *Romans,* without any notable Diſturbance unto their *Affairs,* but the Rebellion raiſed againſt them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians* in the time of *Veſpaſian.* In the declining of the Empire they were poſſeſſed by the *French,* under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz* or *Oſtenreich,* united by *Childerick* the Third to the reſt of *France,* and made a Member of that Kingdom; as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire amongſt his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France,* the reſidue of theſe Countries on this ſide of the *Rhene* made up a ſpecial part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain.* Thoſe, on the farther ſide of the middle Channel of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vaſt Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the diviſion of the Spoil ſpoken of before fell to the ſhare of *Lewis* ſirnamed the Ancient, the firſt King of *Germany,* and after his deceaſe to his Succeſſors in that Eſtate, whether Kings or Emperors. And ſo we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France, Lorrain* and *Germany,* by that means ſubdivided into leſſer parcels (no fewer than Nineteen in all) we ſhall ſee anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* Conqueſts in the reſt of *Gallia,* there ſtarted up in *Belgica* two great Eſtates, founded by *Auberon, Regnault* and *Ranchaire,* Sons of *Clodion,* the ſecond King of the *French*; who being diſherited of their Father's Kingdom by *Merove* Maſter of his Horſe, to whoſe Tuition and Guardianſhip they had been committed, betook themſelves to the moſt defenſible places of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne,* and the Countries on the Banks of the River *Moſelle*; where they Founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moſelle* we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders,* and ſome part of *Brabant,* together with all *Hainault, Namur, Limburg, Luxemburg,* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon.* Grown to this greatneſs by the withdrawing of the *French* Forces into richer Conqueſts, and diſmembring of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and truſting too much to that Greatneſs, they drew upon *themſelves* the jealouſie of thoſe mightier Princes: occaſioning *Clotaire* the Second to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldeſt Son, then King of *Metz,* whom he furniſhed with convenient Forces for the Conqueſt of it; *Brunulph,* the then Prince hereof, being by him diſcomfited and ſlain in Battel. By *Sigebert,* who ſucceeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz,* the Earldom of *Hainault* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert,* one of the youngeſt Sons of *Brunulph.* By *Dagobert* himſelf, ſucceeding in the Realm of *France*; (and whilſt he lived ſole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant,* formerly belonging to theſe Princes, were diſmembred from it, and laid unto two new Eſtates of his own erecting. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great Houſe, or to comply with the ill Cuſtoms of thoſe Times; the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the ſame time alſo, for the portion of ſome other of the younger Brethren. The reſt of the Eſtate, with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldeſt Son: whoſe Poſterity, notwithſtanding this great diminution, grew to ſuch eſteem, that *Judith*, the Widow of *Buin*, and Siſter of *Boſon*, Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit Wife for *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, by whom (the more to Honour his Family) the ſaid *Boſon* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Otho* the Firſt, the Earldom of *Luxemburg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefride*, one of the younger Sons of *Ricuine* the preceding Prince, and ſo perhaps was *Limbourg* alſo for another of them. The reſt remained to *Godfrey* the eldeſt Son, who by *Matilda*, a Daughter to *Otho* the Second, was Father of another *Godfrey*, who ſucceeded after *Charles*, and *Otho* the third Duke of *Lorrain*: the Dukedom being ever ſince enjoyed by the Houſe of *Ardenne*, and there we ſhall hear farther of it. This ſaid, and ſo much of the Story opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*, divided at the preſent into Seventeen Provinces, beſides the two great Biſhopricks of *Liege* and *Cambray*, which being always under the protection of the *Belgick* Princes, partakers of their Fortunes, either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their Eſtates, ſhall have their turn in the Deſcription of theſe Countries, divided generally.

into
- 2 Biſhopricks,
  - 1. *Liege* or *Luyck*.
  - 2. *Cambray*.
- 4 Dukedoms,
  - 1. *Limbourg*, 2. *Luxemburg*,
  - 3. *Gelderland*, 4. *Brabant*.
- 1 Marquiſate, *viz.* of the Holy Empire.
- 7 Earldoms,
  - 1. *Flanders*, 2. *Artois*,
  - 3. *Hainault* 4. *Namur*,
  - 5. *Zutphen*, 6. *Holland*, 7. *Zeland*.
- 5 Baronies,
  - 1. *Weſt-Frieſeland*,
  - 2. *Utrecht*, 3. *Over-Yſſel*,
  - 4. *Machlin*, 5. *Groening*.

Of theſe Nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artois*; the Earls whereof were Homagers unto that *Crown*, but ſeldom did deſcend ſo low as do their Homage, quitted at laſt to *Philip* the ſecond King of *Spain*, and his Succeſſors, by King *Henry* the ſecond of *France* in the Treaty at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1558. The reſt were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperor of *Germany*, and Regent of thoſe Countries for his Son *Philip* (who had a purpoſe to ſubject them to the Empire again) were made the Tenth Circle of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundy*. But neither ſince, nor before that time, would the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy* acknowledge any ſuch Subjection, but govern'd theſe Eſtates as abſolute Princes, without relation to the Empire, or Subordination to the Emperor or Imperial Officers; never appearing at the Diets, nor contributing to any Taxes there impoſed, not holding themſelves bound by any Conſtitutions which were made therein. So that theſe ſeveral Relations being out of uſe, we muſt behold it at this time as it ſtands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the States: beginning firſt with thoſe Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein firſt with *Flanders*, as of moſt eſteem.

1. *FLANDERS*, and 2. *ARTOIS*.

THeſe two I have thought fit to join together, becauſe at firſt but one Eſtate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or ſix Deſcents again united, and have ſo continued ever ſince.

1. *FLANDERS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Hainault* and *Brabant*, on the Weſt with the *Engliſh* or *German* Ocean; on the North with the Seas of *Zeland* and a branch of the *Scheld*, and on the South with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interpoſing betwixt *Calice* and *Greveling*; in which bounds *Artois* is included. So called, as ſome ſay, *a Flando*, becauſe it lieth open to the Winds; as others ſay, from *Flandbert*, the Son of *Bleſinda*, Daughter of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*. Some fetch it from a Town of this name, ſituate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenburg* ſtands; ſo long ſince ruined, that very few except themſelves could ever hear of it: and others (which I think moſt probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* II. the firſt who governed in theſe Parts by the name of *Foreſter*.

The Soil is indifferently fruitful in Corn and Paſture; the Air healthful, temperate and pleaſant. The whole Country not in length above 90 Miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compaſs above thirty Cities (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) and 1154 Villages, which ſtand ſo thick, (as needs they muſt in ſo narrow a compaſs) that the *Spaniards*, at their firſt coming in with King *Philip* the Second, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into, 1. *Imperialem*, 2. *Gallicam*, and, 3. *Teutonicam*; or, 1. *Flanders Imperial*, 2. *Flanders Gallicant*, and, 3. *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. *FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT*, which is the greateſt of the three, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Imperial Flanders* and the River *Scheld*, on the Weſt with the *Engliſh* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland*, and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallicant*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, ſeven Miles in compaſs, but taking in the Suburbs, which are great and large, the whole Circuit is ten Miles at leaſt. One of the greateſt Cities in *Europe* for extent of Ground, but not ſo populous as many of a leſs capacity; there being much waſte Ground even within the Walls. Commodiouſly ſeated on the Banks of the *Scheld* and the *Ley*, both which run through it, and make in it Twenty-ſix Iſlands, joined together with Ninety-eight Bridges: and had not her many Seditions ruinated her Beauties, ſhe might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, commonly called *John* of *Gaunt*, and *Charles* the fifth Emperor, and King of *Spain*: which laſt, to reſtrain the People from their old Sedition, which had been very troubleſom to his Predeceſſors, (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a ſtrong Citadel in the place where ſtood the Abby of Saint *Bavons*. For Churches, Monaſteries, and other places of Devotion, there were numbred in it Fifty-five, all of them anſwerable to the Grandeur and Renown of the City; the private Buildings being alſo very ſtately, if not Majeſtical. But now it is much fallen from its former Glories, the often Seditions of this People drawing upon themſelves the Vengeance of their angred Prince; and their Wealth much impaired by the long Wars, and the diverſion of their Trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. This Place was taken by the *French* the 12th of *March*, 1678. but reſtored to the *Spaniards* by the Treaty of *Nimmeguen* in 1679. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brugge*, more within the Land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of ſuch Wealth, and the People in thoſe Times ſo willing to ſhew it, that Queen *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip* the Fair, having been there, and marked the Pomp of the Women, complained that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four Miles circuit within the Walls, wonderfully well peopled; the Buildings fair and ſumptuous (amongſt which Sixty Churches and Religious Houſes) the Streets large and ſtraight, and a ſpacious Market-place, from which the ſix principal Streets of the City do paſs directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleaſant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River, as before was ſaid, yet was it

anciently of ſo great Trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-Towns of Chriſtendom; flouriſhing chiefly by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Cloth, and ſenſibly decaying when the *Engliſh* Traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was Walled by Earl *Baldwin*, *An.* 890, is diſtant three Leagues from the Sea, and ſeated on a fair and deep Channel made by Art, and filled with the Waters of all the adjoining Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial Channels are in theſe Countries very frequent, to the great inriching of the whole State. It continues ſtill under the *Spaniards*, and is one of the beſt Places they have left. 3. *Ypres*, a Town ſeated very ſtrongly, and almoſt impregnable, on a ſmall River ſo named: a reaſonable rich Town, and well built, though moſt of the Houſes be of Timber, very well ſerved with Water, conveyed into every Houſe almoſt in leaden Pipes, of which there is ſo great a number, that the Foundations of it ſeem to be laid in Lead. This City was taken by the *French* the 26th of *March*, 1678. and is ſtill in their Hands. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine ſtrong Town, but little, pertaining to the *French* King in the Right of the Houſe of *Bourbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lis*, or *Ley*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the Birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable States-Man and Hiſtorian. Now under the *French*. 6. *Courtray*, on the ſame River of *Ley*, one of the ancienteſt Towns in *Flanders*, yet ſtill continueth well built, of very great ſtrength both by Art and Nature, famous for a great Overthrow given the *French*, *Anno* 1301. for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre of the Frenchmen*. Taken by the *French* in 1646, and again in 1667, but reſtored to the *Spaniards* in 1679. 7. *Ardenburg*, (called in Times paſt *Rodemburgh*) a pretty Town, enriched every Year with a great Horſe-Fair every *June*, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part hereof, which properly is called *Flanders*; that name being firſt given to the Parts hereunto adjoining, as ſome conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the reſt of the Country. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1604, and is ſtill in their power, but waſted to nothing. 8. *Biervliet*, both a Town and Iſland, and furniſhed with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mention'd in this place, but that the ſalting of Herrings was here firſt invented by one *William Beukeleme*, who died *Anno* 1397. 9. *Winocksberg*, ſo called of a goodly Abbey built upon an Hill in the honour of St. *Winock* an *Engliſh* Man of an holy Life, ſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1538, but ſince re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. Taken by the *French* in 1646, retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1658, 10. *Graveling*, on the Sea-ſide, which, ſince the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the ſtrongeſt Town in the Low-Countries. Yet it has been twice taken by the *French* in 1644, and in 1658: Since which laſt date it has been in their Hands. 11. *Oudenard*, ſeated on the *Scheld*, a fair ſtrong Town and of very great Traffick, eſpecially for Tapeſtry and the fineſt Linens, which are here made: The Birth-place of *Margaret*, Dutcheſs of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, that renowned Souldier. taken by the *French* in 1658, and in 1667, beſieged by the *Spaniards* unſucceſsfully in 1674, but reſtored by the Treaty in 1679.

The principal Ports of *Flanders*, being four in number, are all of them ſeated in this part. 1. *Dunkerck*, a ſmall but ſafe Port, belonging to the *French* King (as doth *Graveling* alſo) in the Right of the Houſe of *Vendoſme*; but ſtrongly Garriſoned by the *Spaniard*, even in times of Peace, becauſe of the importance of their ſituation both by Sea and Land. Moſt memorable in theſe Days for that the People of it in the times of War ſo infeſted the Seas. This Town was taken by the united Forces of *England* and *France* in the Year 1658, *June* 17. And being put into the Hands of the *Engliſh*, was ſold to the *French* in the Year 1662. And the preſent *French* King has beſtowed incredible Coſt in Fortifying it, and enlarging and ſecuring the Haven, though to little purpoſe. 2. *Scluys*, ſeated at the Mouth of the Channel of *Bruges*, beautified with a very fair Haven able to contain 500 good Ships; and is now ſubject to the States, with whoſe ſafety it could not well ſtand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any ſafe and large Harbours ſo near unto them. Over againſt it lieth the Iſle of *Caſſandt*, famous for the Birth of *George Caſſander*, a moderate and learned Papiſt, formerly as big again as it is at the preſent, having then a fair Town in it and many rich Villages, of which there is but one remaining (of the ſame Name with the Iſland) the reſt all ſwallowed by the Sea. 3. *Nieuport*, a pretty Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very ſafe, and therefore not much uſed by the Men of War, nor made rich by Paracies, as *Dunkerck*. Near to this Town, *Anno* 1603. was fought the Field-battel betwixt the Arch-duke *Albert* and the *States*; the Victory, next under God, being gotten for the *States* by the Valour of the *Engliſh*, and the excellent Conduct of the *Veres*. 4. *Oſtend*, not walled till the Low-Country Wars, and then but with a mud Wall only, and that not finiſhed till the Arch-duke ſate down before it: inſomuch as the Arch-dutcheſs *Iſabel* is ſaid to have ſworn, that ſhe would not ſhift her Smock till the Town were taken: who, had ſhe kept that raſh Oath, had been very lowſie; the Town (then Garriſoned with *Engliſh*) holding out againſt the ſaid Arch-duke a Siege of three Years and as many Months. Theſe two Eaſt Ports are ſtill in the Hands of the *Spaniards*.

2. *IMPERIAL FLANDERS*, ſo called, becauſe it was long under the Obedience of Emperors, is ſevered from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders* by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was ſometimes called *Bracant*, of a Caſtle of that name, deſtroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire*, Earl of *Flanders*; and is now call'd the County of *Aloſt*, from the chief Town thereof ſo named; the Juriſdiction whereof, containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the Walls of *Gaunt*, and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The Town is ſtrong, and indifferently fair, ſituate on the River *Dender*, moſt Famous in theſe Times for a Fair of Hops which is kept there Yearly. 2. *Hulſt*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being, 3. *Axele*. 4. *Mouchant*. 5. *Aſſenede*; of which little memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire by the ſaid *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth. 6. *Dendermond*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Dender*, where it entreth into the *Scheld*; a ſtrong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fuſtians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A diſtinct Signiory of it ſelf, with many rich Villages belonging to it; incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Marriage of Earl *Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which Houſe it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*: Famous in former time for an ancient Caſtle, in which were kept the Monuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times for being the Birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned Coſmographer. 8. *Mont-Gerhard*, called by the *French*, *Grandmount*, a fine and pleaſant Town ſeated on the *Dender*. Which three laſt Towns, together with *Bornhem*, a fair large Village, having ſome Juriſdiction on the Parts adjoining, made up that Eſtate which was called the *Proper* or *Domaine* of *Flanders*, becauſe not holden of the Empire or the Kings of *France*, but in the Soreignty alone of the Earls hereof. This Part of *Flanders* is yet entirely in the Hands of *Spaniards*, though in the Year 1667 they took *Aloſt*, and kept it till the Peace.

3. *FLANDERS GALLICANT*, ſo called from the French Language there ſpoken, lieth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the Eaſt, *Artois* on the Weſt, and the Country of *Cambray*

on the South. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *L'Iſle*, in *Latine*, *Inſula*, ſo called from its Iſland-like ſituation, among Ponds, Pools, Marſhes, dried up and made firm Land by Earl *Baldwin de Barbu*, who built the Town, *Anno* 1007. which afterwards was called by *Baldwin de Liſle*, his Son (born in his Town, and hence ſo named) *Anno* 1066. The Town made rich by Manufactures and reſort of Merchants, accompted the beſt Town of Traffick, next *Amſterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be ſeen the Ruins of an ancient Caſtle called *Brug*, the Seat or Mannor-Houſe of the ancient *Foreſters*, who had the Government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. Taken by the *French* in 1667. 2. *Doway*, (*Duacum*, in *Latin*) a fair and ſtrong Town ſeated on the *Scharp*, having many Fountains, good Buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an Univerſity by King *Philip* the Second of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or Colledge for *Engliſh* Fugitives. Taken by the *French* in 1667. 3. *Orchies*, a pleaſant Town, and well traded for the making of Serges; which, with the other two, make up the three Eſtates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled Town, but of very great Trading; there being yearly 25000 pieces of Cloth ſent hence to *Italy*, and thence to *Conſtantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the *Dutch* call it) a great, rich, mighty and ſtrong Town, ſeated on the *Scheld*, well built, and full of ſtately and magnificent Churches and Religious Houſes, and anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. A Town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the *French*; but finally fell unto the *French*, as the more puiſſant Prince; taken from them by *Henry* the Eighth of *England*, *Anno* 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Ducats for their preſent Ranſom; reſtored by him unto the *French*, *Anno* 1518. for the ſum of 600000 Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the Fifth, who reſtored it to the Body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long diſmembred; but ſo that it is govern'd as a State apart, and is called the *Seignioury* of *Tourneſis*, having a goodly Juriſdiction over the Country round about it. Taken by the *French* again in the Year 1667. 6. *S. Amand*, in the Country of *Tourneſis*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Scharp*; in which is one of the richeſt Abbeys in all *Flanders*; the Abbot thereof having the temporal and ſpiritual Juriſdiction over it and the parts about it. And ſo much for the Chorography of the Earldom of *Flanders*, inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cæſar*. All this part of *Flanders* was reſigned to the French by the Treaties of *Aix la Chapel*, in the Year 1668, and confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen*.

2. *ARTOIS*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Flanders Gallicant* and the Country of *Cambray*, on the South and Weſt with *Picardy*, on the North with *Flanders Flammengant* and the River *Lis*. The name is derived from the *Atrebates*, the old Inhabitants hereof: the Air exceeding temperate, and the Soil ſo Fruitful, that it ſerveth as a Granary to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This whole Province was reſigned to the *French* by the *Pyranean* Treaty in the Year 1659, and confirm'd by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen*.

On the Weſt part hereof towards *France* lieth the Earldom of S. *Paul*, ſo called from the chief Town thereof; a goodly Seignioury, and of great Juriſdiction and Revenue, containing, beſides many Villages, the good Town of *Pern*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walleran*, Brother of *Henry* the Seventh Emperor of *Germany* and Earl of *Luxemburg*; the laſt of which was *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, made Conſtable of *France* by King *Lewis* the Eleventh, with whom, as alſo with *Edward* the Fourth of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he plaid ſo many croſs Tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual Jealouſie of one another, he was at laſt by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whoſe death this goodly Seignioury fell to the Houſe of *Vendoſme* in *France*, by the Marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendoſme* with *Mary* the Daughter of this *Lewis*, to whom it was adjudged by the Power and Favour of the *French* King's; the Heirs-males being made uncapable of Succeſſion in it, by the Attainder and Confiſcation of the ſaid laſt Earl. By means whereof the Houſe of *Vendoſme* was intituled to many fair Eſtates in *Artois*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and much good Lands in *France*, which they were poſſeſſed of; *Francis* the 2d. Son of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only Son of this, being intituled, whilſt they lived, Earl of S. *Paul*, and Dukes of *Tutteville*.

The Arms of theſe Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gules* armed and crowned *Or*, his Tail forked of the ſecond.

As for the reſidue of *Artois*, the Towns of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Arras*, in Latine *Attrebatum civitas*, the chief City of the *Atrebates* the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*, and ſtill the chief City of this Province; a large, populous and well-fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopal, and ſtocked with an induſtrious People, the firſt makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took Name from hence: divided into two diſtinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two ſeveral Names; the leſſer called *La Citte*, ſubject to the Biſhop, beautified with a fair and ſtately Cathedral Church, and a Library containing many excellent Manuſcripts; the leſſer called *La Ville*, ſubject to the Prince, having large Streets, and a rich Monaſtery of the yearly Revenue of 20000 Crowns. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Regiacum*, ſeated within a Bow-ſhot of the River *Scharp*, and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was diſmembred from it; ſince which time the chief City of this Province, as before is ſaid. Taken by the *French* in 1640, and unfortunately attacked by the *Spaniards* in 1654. 2. S. *Omar*, a fair Town, and well peopled, ſeated upon the River *Aa*, ſome eight *Dutch* Miles from the Ocean; ſo called from S. *Omar*, or *Audomarus*, Biſhop of the *Morini*, who built a Monaſtery in this place, from which grew the Town, the ſecond of Eſteem and Rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly Lake of freſh Water, in which are many little Iſlands affording good Paſturage for Cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by faſtning a Cord unto the Buſhes which grow in them, a Man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great number of Fiſhes, who bed themſelves there for ſhelter againſt the Weather. This City was raiſed to the Dignity of a Biſhops See under the Arch-Biſhop of *Cambray* in 1559, inſtead of *Terovanne*, which was Ruined ſome few Years before. In 1596 *Philip* II. of *Spain* founded here a Colledge for the *Engliſh* Jeſuits: In 1639 the *French* beſieged it unſucceſsfully, but they took it 1677, and had the Poſſeſſion confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen*. 3. *Bathune*, a ſtrong Town; and ſeated amongſt excellent Paſtures, of which the People make great plenty of the beſt Cheeſe: which, with the Territory hereof, fell to *Guy* of *Dampiere*, Earl of *Flanders*, in Right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town, honoured in that regard with the Birth of their eldeſt Son, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Bathune*. Taken by the *French* in 1645. 4. *Ayre*, on the *Lis*, a ſtrong Town, with a Caſtle of great Antiquity. Taken by the *French* in 1641, and ſoon after recovered by the *Spaniards*, but was finally retaken by the former in 1676, and is now in their Hands. 5. *Bapaulme*, a little, but well Fortified Town; and yet more ſtrong, becauſe it cannot be Beſieged for want of freſh Water, which is not to be had within three Leagues of it. Taken by the French in 1641, and ever ſince kept by them. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled Town, but Fenced with a very ſtrong Caſtle, beſieged by the French, *Anno* 1554. but being overcome in a ſet Field by *Charles* the Fifth, they were fain to raiſe the Siege and go home again. In the Year 1638 the French took and ruined it.

7. *Heſdinfert*, on the confluence of two little Riverets, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a Frontier Town on the edge of *France*, one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the Fifth out of the Ruines of old *Heſdin*, which having taken from the French, he commanded it to be razed as no longer ſerviceable, and raiſed this Town in ſtead thereof, ſomewhat nearer *France*. Which in the Year 1639 was alſo taken by the French, and reſigned to them by the *Pyranean* Treaty. 8. *Terwin*, or *Teroane*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a Frontier Town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the VIII. *Anno* 1513. they changed their Opinion. A Siege not only memorable for the iſſue of it, but for two other matters of great moment: The one, that the Emperor *Maximilian* came and ſerved in Perſon under the Colours of S. *George*, with the *Engliſh* Croſs upon his Breaſt: The other, that the *French* intending to Victual the Town, had ſo great an Overthrow, that had the *Engliſh* followed their Fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themſelves Maſters of all *France*; the French King being ſo aſtoniſhed at the News hereof, that he prepared to fly into *Britagne*. But the Engliſh more minded the Spoils and Riches of *Terwin*, than the ſequel of an abſolute Victory; *Et frui maluerunt victoria, quam uti*, as the Hiſtorian ſaid of *Hannibal*. It is now, after many changes of Fortune, in the Hands of the French, and by ſome reckoned and accounted of as part of *Picardy*. There are, beſides theſe, three walled Towns more, that is to ſay, *Liliers*, *Lens*, and *La Baſſee*, of which little memorable, and to the number of 854 Villages.

Theſe Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* were anciently, if not a part, (as the parts hereof about *Tournay* moſt undoubtedly were) yet much of the ſame nature with the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waſte of Woods and Deſarts till the Conqueſt of it by the *French*; the Sea-coaſts being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent Piracies did much vex thoſe Shores, and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of Corn and other Neceſſaries for the Life of Man; ſubject in part to the greateſt Princes of *Ardenne*, till the diſcomfiture of Earl *Brunulph* by *Dagobert*, ſole King of the French, by whom about the Year 621 this wild Country, extending then as far as the River *Some*, and comprehending, beſides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Liderick de Bucque*, with the Title of *Foreſter*, to be holden under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whoſe Poſterity it continued with the Title of *Foreſters* till the time of *Baldwin* the Firſt, the Son of *Odoacer*, the ſeventh of the *Foreſters*, whoſe Names occur upon Record; there being a long intermiſſion of their Names and Memories during the Ravagements and Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having firſt Raviſhed, and afterwards Married, *Judith*, Siſter to *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reſerved as before it was: in whoſe Iſſue it remained intire, till *Philip* the firſt Earl of that name gave unto *Philip Auguſtus*, King of *France*, the Country of *Artois* with the Earldom or Country of *Veromandois*, part of *Picardy*, in Marriage with *Iſabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*. By *Lewis* the Eighth, Son and Succeſſor of *Philip Auguſtus*, *Artois* was given in Portion to his youngeſt Son *Robert*, made the firſt Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the Ninth, *Anno* 1234. And by the Marriage of *Lewis* the Firſt of *Flanders* with *Margaret* the Heir of *Artois* and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both theſe Eſtates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great acceſſion of Eſtate it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millane* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: theſe Earls being priviledged to write themſelves *Dei Gratia*, all others *Dei Clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to ſo great Eſteem, that it was generally uſed for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the Marriage of *Margaret*, Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, this great Eſtate became united to that Houſe, and afterwards was conveyed to that of *Auſtria*, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in due time and place. In the mean ſeaſon let us take a brief ſurvey of

The Earls of FLANDERS and ARTOIS.

864	1.	*Baldwin*, the firſt Earl of *Flanders*.
879	2.	*Baldwin* II.
918	3.	*Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* the 2d.
960	4.	*Baldwin* III. Son of *Arnulph*.
964	5.	*Arnulph* II. Son of *Baldwin* the 3d.
988	6.	*Baldwin* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
1029	7.	*Baldwin* V.
1067	8.	*Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainault*.
1070	9.	*Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainault*.
1071	10.	*Robert*, Son of *Baldwin* the 5th, and Brother of *Baldwin* the 6th.
1093	11.	*Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the I.
1111	12.	*Baldwin* VII.
1118	13.	*Charles*, Son of *Canutus*, King of *Denmark*, and *Adelize*, the Daughter of *Robert* I.
1127	14.	*William*, Son of *Robert*, the Son of *William* the Baſtard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Baldwin* the 5th.
1132	15.	*Theodorick* of *Alſace*, Nephew of *Robert* I. by his Daughter *Heltrude*.
1169	16.	*Philip* of *Alſace*, Son of *Theodorick*.
1191	17.	*Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainault*, ſucceeded in Right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter of *Theodorick*, and Siſter of *Philip*.
1199	18.	*Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, and Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.
1205	19.	*Joan*, eldeſt Daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperor, firſt married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas* the 3d Son of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her Right called Earls of *Flanders*.
1244	20.	*Margaret*, Siſter of *Joan*, and 2d Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, Widow of *William* of *Dampierre*, governed the Eſtate of *Flanders* as long as ſhe lived, admitting *William* her eldeſt Son to the Title of Earl, which he continued till his death (being many years before his Mother's) *Anno* 1255.
1278	21.	*Guy* of *Dampierre*, the ſecond Son of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Eſtate it ſelf on the death of his Mother.
1304	22.	*Robert* III. ſirnamed of *Bethune*; who married *Toland*, Heir of *Odo* of *Bourgogne*, Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son call'd *Lewis*, who married *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*.
1323	23.	*Lewis*, Son of *Lewis*, and Grandſon of *Robert* the 3d. in right of his Mother Earl of *Rethel*, in right of his Grandmother Earl of *Nevers*, and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grandfather.
1347	24.	*Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois* and of *Burgundy*, in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded at her death, but the time I find not.
1369	25.	*Philip* II. ſirnamed the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, &c. in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married ſolemnly at *Gaunt*, *An.* 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Succeſſors in theſe Eſtates we ſhall hereafter ſpeak in a place more proper.

The Earls of *ARTOIS.*

1234 1. *Robert* of *France*, Grandſon of *Philip Auguſtus*, and *Iſabel* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the firſt Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.

1245 2. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert*.

1302 3. *Othelme*, Earl of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in right of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter of *Robert* the Second.

1315 4. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, the Daughter and Heir of *Maud* and *Otho*, or *Otheline*.

1331 5. *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Philip*.

6. *Philip*, the only Son of *Eudes*, in right of his Mother, Earl of *Artois*, and ſo called in his Father's life-time.

1349 7. *Philip* III. Son of *Philip* the II. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young and without Iſſue, *Anno* 1361.

1361. 8. *Margaret*, Daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Counteſs of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, *&c.* ſucceeded *Philip* III. (being then a Widow) in the Earldoms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, *Anno* 1361.

The Arms of *Flanders* are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, langued and armed *Gules*. Thoſe of *Artois* being Semé of Flower-de-Luces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a File of three Labels, *Gules* charged with as many Caſtles of the firſt.

3. *HAINAULT.*

HAINAULT is bounded on the Eaſt with *Namur*, on the Weſt with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was anciently called *Saltus Carbonarius*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the Woods and Foreſts of it; by ſome Writers of the middle Times, the *Lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* Writers of theſe Times called *Hannonia*. It ſeemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Hain* or *Hania*, which paſſeth thro' it, and the word *Holt*, ſignifying a Wood, as being overſpread in a manner with the Foreſts of *Normault*, *St. Amand de Faignd*, and that of *Poodsberg*, and then *Hainault* will be *quaſi Haine holt*, *i. e.* a Country of Woods and Foreſts on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French*, (as the word importeth:) but by the *Dutch* beſt known by the name of *Hainegow*, *i. e.* the Country bordering on *Haine*, as the name ſignifieth in that Language.

The length thereof is 60 Miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compaſs 950 Villages, and 24 Towns; in and amongſt which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marſhal, (beſides other Officers of the Prince) deſcending by Inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The Air hereof is very good, and the Soil Fruitful, by reaſon the Country is watered with ſo many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and ſeveral leſſer Streams, beſides divers Lakes, Marſhes, Ponds and Pools, which do much enrich it, the Country abounding in moſt places with freſh Meadows, and ſweet Paſtures, good Fruits, and profitable Trees, but eſpecially with great plenty of Corn. Here are alſo ſome parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead, and excellent Quarries of the beſt Stone, fit for all kind of Buildings.

The principal of theſe Towns are, 1. *Mons*, ſituate at the confluence of *Haine* and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural ſtrength unto it; fortified beſides with a very ſtrong Wall, three large deep Ditches, and an ancient Caſtle. The Town is great, beautiful and rich, adorned with ſumptuous Buildings, both private and publick, and repleniſhed with wealthy Merchants and Men of Trade; the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and ſometimes uſed for the ſtyle of Earls of *Hainault*. In this Town is the noble Nunnery of S. *Valdrade*, once a Dutcheſs of *Lorrain*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of Noble Families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns, in the afternoons according to their Birth and Qualities; who when they pleaſe may leave the Cloiſter and be married. The Abbeſs hath Juriſdiction both in the Town and Country about it, and anciently did put the Earls of *Hainault* into poſſeſſion of the State. Another Nunnery like this (but not of ſuch large Revenues) there is at, 2. *Maubeuge* on the *Sambre*, a good Town of Merchandiſe. This Town, and the Earldom thereunto belonging, is ſtill in the Hands of the *Spaniards*, the far greateſt part of the Province being ſubdued by the *French*. In the Year 1678 the latter beſieged this City, and were defeated chiefly by the Valour of the *Engliſh*, though they were ſo well Re-entrench'd that they deſpiſed their Enemies. 3. *Valenciennes*, ſeated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*, which make not only in it many pleaſant Iſles, but paſs almoſt under every Man's Houſe, to the great benefit and delight of the place and People. The ſight hereof is ſo ſtrong by Nature (beſides the Fortifications of Art) that on the one ſide it may be eaſily made unapproachable by Water, and on the other ſide is ſo defended by Hills, that it can hardly be beſieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large and beautiful Town, eſpecially for publick Building: the chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built after the ancient manner of Architecture, with ſumptuous Arches and goodly Pillars of Marble and Porphyry; the Earl's Palace, and the Town-hall, Buildings of great Magnificence and excellent Workmanſhip. The Birth-place of *Henry* the Seventh, Emperor of *Germany*, of *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the Warlike, and of *Froiſſart* the great French Hiſtorian. Finally a Town which, for the Eminence thereof, is governed as a State apart by it ſelf, having under the Juriſdiction of it 3 Towns, 132 Villages, which on occaſion of Appeal reſort not to the Provincial Council at *Mons*, but the great Council at *Mechlen*. This Town was taken by the French in the Year 1677. 4. *Chimay*, upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleaſant Foreſt, which gives the Title of a Prince to the eldeſt Son of the Duke of *Aerſcot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very goodly Palace. 5. *Halle*, ſeated on the *Sinne*, which runs through it, a place of great Credit amongſt the Papiſts, by reaſon of an Image of the bleſſed Virgin famed for many Miracles. Of which ſee *Lipſius* on that ſubject. 6. *Beauvais* or *Bavay*, an old Town, at a Pillar whereof begin all the ways leading into *France*, made of Paved-ſtones by *Brunehault*, the Wife of *Sigebert* King of *Metz* and *Auſtraſia*, who with *Fridegonde*, the Wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katharine Medicis*, the Wife of *Henry* the Second, are ſaid to be the Three Furies of *France*. 7. *Landrecie*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable reſiſtance which it made to *Charles* the Fifth, 1543. 8. *Marienburg*, built by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, Governeſs here for the ſaid *Charles*, *Anno* 1524. to ſerve as a Bulwark againſt *France*, on which it Frontiereth. Surrendred by the *Spaniards* to the *French* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty, but diſmantled. 9. *Philip-Ville*, built and well fortified for the ſame Reaſon by King *Philip* the Second. Surrendred by the laſt mentioned Treaty to the French. 10. *Bouchain*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Oſtrinand*, which County is the Title of the firſt Son of *Hainault*; and by that name *William* the eldeſt Son of *Albert* Earl of *Hainault* and *Holland*, was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the Second. Under the French. 11. *Conde*, a good little Town ſeated on the *Scheld*, the Moiety whereof belonged heretofore to the Houſe of *Montpenſier* in *France*; as, 12. *Enghein*, a Town of great Trade for Tapeſtry, to the Houſe of *Vendoſme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghein*, do derive their Titles. This Town was taken by the French in 1655, and loſt in 1656, but was retaken in 1676, and is ſtill in their Hands. 13. *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goodly Hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the preſent to the Dukes of *Aerſchot*, but anciently the Partage of the ſecond Son of the Earls of *Hainault*. 14. *Bins*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the Jointure-Towns of the Counteſſes of *Hainault*, much beautified and made a place of Pleaſures by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, to whom it was given by *Charles* the Fifth, (commonly called the *Queen's Paradiſe*) but burnt and utterly deſtroy'd by the French, *Anno* 1554. 15. *Aeth*, ſeated on both ſides of the *Dender*; a little, but a pleaſant and wealthy Town; here being held the Staple of Linnen for all this Country, and the Cloth here ſold amounting to 200000 Crowns *per Annum*. This laſt is yet in the Hands of the *Spaniards*.

As for the Hiſtory of *Hainault*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the moſt valiant and moſt potent People of all the *Gauls*, poſſeſſed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and ſome part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the Field, when the *Belgæ* muſtered up their united Forces againſt *Julius Cæſar*, no fewer than 50000 fighting Men. Won from the *Romans* by the *French*, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing ſo till the death of *Burnulph*, diſcomfited and ſlain in battel by *Dagobert* ſole King of the *French*, whom his Father in his Life-time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and deſigned unto the Conqueſt of it. But the Fury of the War being over, the Parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it eſtated upon other Houſes, and the reſt allotted out amongſt his Children, *Alberic*, ſirnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger Sons, was by *Sigebert* King of *Metz* or *Auſtraſia*, enfeoffed of this Country, by the Name and Title of Earl of *Hainault*. Twice this Eſtate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1. In the Perſon of *Baldwin* V. Earl of *Flanders*, ſucceeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his Wife, Daughter of *Regnier* the Third. 2. By the Marriage of *Baldwin* the Sixth of *Hainault* with *Margaret* Counteſs of *Flanders*, Siſter and Heir of *Philip* of *Alſace*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the firſt time by the Uſurpation of *Flanders*, wreſted from *Arnulph* the Third by his Uncle *Robert*, and the ſecond time by the Intruſion of *John de Aveſnes*, natural Son of *Margaret* the ſecond Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, into the Eſtate and Earldom of *Hainault*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the Marriage of *John de Aveſnes* to *Adelize* or *Aleide*, Daughter and (at the laſt) Heir of *Florence*, the Fourth Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. From which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

The Earls of HAINAULT.

1. *Alberic*, one the younger Sons of *Brunulph* Earl of *Ardenne*.
2. *Waultier*, Son of *Alberic*.
3. *Waultier* II. Son of *Waultier* the firſt.
4. *Waultier* III. Son of *Waultier* the ſecond.
5. *Albon*, in right of his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *Waultier* the third.
6. *Albon* II. Son of the ſaid *Albon* by that Wife.
7. *Manaſſier*, Son of *Albon* the ſecond.
8. *Regnier*, Son of *Manaſſier*.
9. *Regnier* II. Son of *Regnier* the firſt.
10. *Regnier* III. Son of *Regnier* the ſecond.
11. *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the firſt of that name in *Hainault*, ſucceeded in Right of *Richild* his Wife, the ſole Daughter to *Regnier* the third.

1070 12. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deſpoiled of his Eſtate and Life by his Uncle *Robert*, who ſeized on the Earldom of *Flanders*.

1071 13. *Baldwin* II. Brother of *Arnulph*, ſucceeded in *Hainault*.

14. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Baldwin* the ſecond.

15. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Baldwin* the third.

16. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Baldwin* the fourth.

17. *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainault*, Son of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the eighth of that Name in *Flanders*, into which alſo he ſucceeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Philip* of *Alſace*, Earl of *Flanders*.

1199 18. *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainault*, and IX. of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.

1205 19. *Joan*, Counteſs of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, firſt married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.

1244 20. *Margaret* the younger Siſter of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom ſhe had *William* and *Guy*, both Earls of *Flanders*.

21. *John de Aveſnes*, baſe Son of *Margaret*, begot before her Marriage by *Buſchart* her Guardian the Prior of St. *Peters* in *L'Iſle*, by Force and Fraud extorted *Hainault* from his Brethren born in lawful Wedlock, and married *Aleide* Daughter and Heir of *Florence*, the 4th Earl of *Holland*; whoſe Succeſſors in both Eſtates we ſhall meet with there, and amongſt them with *William* II. Father of Queen *Philippa*, Wife of *Edward* III. one of the moſt conſiderable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

4. The Biſhoprick of CAMBRAY.

Southward from *Hainault* lieth the Biſhoprick of *CAMBRAY*, containing a goodly Town and Territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainault*, now a State diſtinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than ſubject to them.

The principal City hereof is *Cambray* (called in *Latine Cameracum*) ſeated on both ſides of the River *Scheld*, a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of People, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them induſtrious, eſpecially in making that fine linnen Cloth from hence called *Cameras*, or *Cambrick*. The private Buildings are very fair, but the publick much fairer, eſpecially the Monaſteries and other Churches, of which the moſt remarkable is that of our Lady, an ancient and ſumptuous Fabrick, and the See Epiſcopal; from whence the Country and Territory hereunto adjoining is call'd *Cambreſis*, in which are divers Villages and Places of importance. The chief of which are, 1. *Chaſteau Cambreſis*, ſix Leagues from the City, remarkable for the Treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. in which a Peace was happily ſettled amongſt all the chief Princes of Chriſtendom, after a long and tedious War between thoſe Kings and the Confederates of each: and before that for the Confederacy there made by the ſaid Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperor, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, againſt the Seignoury of *Venice*, *Anno* 1508. called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Aveſnes le ſec*, (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Aveſnes* in *Hainault*) near which are digged excellent white Stones for building, little inferior unto Marble.

This Biſhoprick was Founded in the Perſon of S. *Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, *Anno* 390, or thereabouts: whoſe Succeſſors in tract of time became ſo potent, that at the laſt the Biſhop hereof became both the Lord Spiritual and Temporal of the Town and Territory, honoured with the Title of a Duke, and Prince of the Empire, and was in the end made an Archbiſhop by Pope *Paul* the Fourth, *Anno* 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made Imperial by the *German* Emperors, afterwards by *Henry* the Fifth, given in Protection to *Robert* of *Jeruſalem*, Earl of *Flanders*; and finally ſettled and confirmed on all his Succeſſors by the Emperor *Frederick*, *Anno* 1164. Which notwithſtanding the *French* finding it convenient for them, divers times poſſeſſed it: but governing with too great Inſolence, they were driven out by the People in the time of *Lewis* the Eleventh, and the Town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, Governour of theſe Countries for his Son *Philip*. *Charles* the Fifth, in the Year 1543, built a ſtrong Citadel in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town againſt the *French*, but indeed to keep it for himſelf. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alenzon*, (Brother of *Henry* the Third of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, *Anno* 1582. but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of Victuals. Since that continually poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, and by them ſtrongly Garriſon'd; but ſo, that the People ſtill enjoy their ancient Privileges, and are govern'd by their own Laws and Biſhops, as in former times. In the Year 1677, *Lewis* the XIV. the preſent King of *France*, after a ſharp Defence took this City, and by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* had the Poſſeſſion of it yielded to him.

5. *NAMUR.*

THE Earldom of *NAMUR* hath on the Eaſt *Hainault*, on the Weſt the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South *Luxemburg*; ſo called from *Namur* the chief Town of it; *Namurcum* and *Namurcenſis Comitatus* in our *Latine* Writers. The Country is very ſmall, containing only 182 Villages, and four Walled Towns, but plentiful of all Commodities, and repleniſhed with a Loyal and Induſtrious People. Particularly the Air hereof is very wholeſom; the Country water'd with many Rivers and pleaſant Brooks (amongſt which the *Sambre* and the *Maes*) which, beſides the benefit of Portage, yield great plenty of Fiſh. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, are cloathed with Woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and Veniſon; the Valleys eminently fruitful of all ſorts of Grain, rich Mines of Lead, Quarries of Marble of all colours, as alſo of Porphyry or Jaſper, and great plenty of Coal. In Mines of Iron ſo abounding, and that continually hammer'd by a painful People, that *Vulcan*'s Forge may ſeem to be reſtored to the World again and ſeated here; which as it makes the People Wealthy, ſo it keeps them from Idleneſs. And as for the Nobility they are generally Valiant, given to all military Exerciſes fit for their Degrees, and very affectionate to their Princes; The greateſt Vertue of a Subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was ſaid; that is to ſay, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where reſideth the Council for the Country, from which lieth no Appeals but to *Mechlin* only. Seated it is between two Hills on both ſides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuſe*. This City is rich, inhabited for the moſt part by the Nobility, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, founded here in the Church of S. *Albin*, *Anno* 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Monſtier* are two Nunneries of Ladies, like thoſe of *Mons* and *Maubeuge*, ſpoken of in *Hainault*. 2. *Bovines*, upon the *Meuſe*, ſacked by the *French*, *anno* 1554. ſince repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a ſmall Town, but of moſt exact Fortifications, built by *Charles* the Fifth, *anno* 1555. to oppoſe the *French*, who had then poſſeſſed themſelves of *Marienburg*, a Town of *Hainault*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but ſtanding in a goodly and fruitful Country. Of the Villages the chief is *Douc*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and honoured with the Title of a Viſcounty, 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vaſcie*, and 4. *Sanſon*, of much Beauty and Greatneſs.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were a part of the *Nervii*. It was firſt made an Earldom by ſome of the Deſcendents of the Sons of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*, who being diſpoſſeſſed of their Father's Kingdom by *Meroveus*, the Maſter of his Horſe (to whom he had committed the Guardianſhip or Tuition of them) were forced to betake themſelves to the moſt defenſible places of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne* and the parts adjoining, where they founded the great Earldoms of *Ardenne* and *Moſelle*, as before is ſaid, divided in ſucceeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls this Earldom was poſſeſſed, I am yet to learn, the Eſtate being ſmall, and conſequently the Princes of it not much conſiderable. They were allied to the Royal Houſe of *France*, by the Marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof with *Irmingrade*, Daughter of *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke of *Lorrain*: and after unto the Houſe of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *N.* the Daughter and Heir of *Peter*, the laſt Earl of that Race, to *Henry* the ſecond, Son of *Baldwin* the eight of *Flanders*, and Brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the firſt Emperor of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*, whom he ſucceeded in that Empire. After whoſe death it came by *Yoland* his Daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who ſucceeded alſo in the Empire, and after his deceaſe to *Philip* his younger Son. But he deceaſing without Iſſue, and *Robert* his elder Brother reigning in *Conſtantinople*, it was ſeized on by *Philip* the Brother of *Henry*, who, to aſſure themſelves thereof, took to Wife *Mary* Daughter of *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, by a Niece or Couſin of this *Philip* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, (the Father by a former Wife of *Henry* the ſeventh, Emperor and Earl of *Luxemburg*) and finally brought back again to the Houſe of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Iſabel* Daughter of that *Henry* by the Heir of *Namur*, and in his Iſſue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was ſwallowed up with the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the Houſe of *Burgundy*. So that the higheſt we can go in ſearch of the Earls of *Namur*, is to the time of *Hugh Capet* and *Charles* of *Lorrain*, which was 540 Years after the coming in of the Sons of *Clodion*. From which time downwards the Succeſſion is confuſed and broken, and towards the latter end diſcontinued for 140 Years. Such as are left upon Record I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good order as I could, and here preſent them in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *NAMUR.*

1. *Albert*, Co-temporary of *Hugh Capet*, ſpoken of before.

2. *Godfrey* the Son of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice*, Wife of *Baldwin* the fifth of *Hainault*, and Mother of *Baldwin* the ſixth of *Hainault*, and the eighth of *Flanders*.

3. *Peter*, the Son or Brother of *Godfrey*.

4. *Henry* the ſecond, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his Wife, the Heir of *Peter*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, alſo on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th, his elder Brother.

1216 5. *Peter* II. Son-in-Law of *Henry* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.

6, 7. *Philip*, the younger Son of *Peter*, and *John* the elder Brother of *Henry*, both taking to themſelves the Title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Conſtantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceaſing without Iſſue.

8. *Philip* II. Brother of *John* and *Henry* without Iſſue alſo.

9. *John* II. ſirnam'd of *Dampierre*, the third Son of *William* of *Dampierre*, by *Margaret* Counteſs of *Flanders*, Daughter and Heir of the Emperor *Baldwin*, ſucceeding by the gift of his Mother, challenging the diſpoſing of it as next Heir of *Philip* the ſecond, or in the right

paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better Title by.

10. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*; and elder Brother of *John* the ſecond, in right of *Iſabel* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg* by the Heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her Name nor Parents.
11. *John* III. Son of *Guy* and *Iſabel.*
12. *John* IV. Son of *Guy* by a former Wife, the Brother of *John* III. by the whole Blood, being abſent or unfriended, and ſo put beſide.
13. *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the Fourth by the ſame Venter.
14. *John* V. Son of *Guy* the ſecond, who in the Year 1307. married a Niece of *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son.
15. *John* VI. who in the Year 1429 ſold his Eſtate to Duke *Philip* the Good, to be enjoy'd by him on the death of *Theodore*, the next Heir hereof, infirm, and (as it ſeems) without hope of Children.
16. *Theodore*, or *Theodorick*, the laſt Earl of *Namur*, after whoſe death Duke *Philip* entred on this Earldom by the former Contract, and as the next Heir of the Houſe of *Flanders* it continuing ever ſince unto his Poſterity.

The Arms hereof are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, bruiſed with a Bend *Gules*.

The *Spaniards* are poſſeſſed entirely of this Earldom.

6. *LVXEMBVRG.*

LVXEMBVRG is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Moſelle* and the Land of *Triers*, on the Weſt with the *Meuſe* or *Maes* and a branch of the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, on the North with *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainault*, and on the South with the Dutchy of *Lorrain*; ſo called from the Caſtle near the Town of *Luxemburg*, ſelected by *Sigefride* the firſt Earl hereof for his Seat and Reſidence.

The whole is divided into two parts: the Eaſtern part being called *Faveune*, fruitful of Corn, and yielding withal ſome Wines, ſome Mines, and many excellent Quarries of goodly Stone: the Weſtern called *Ardenne*, a remainder of that ſpacious Foreſt, which ſometimes over-ſhadowed all this Country, barren of Corn, but very plentiful of Veniſon, and having of Fowl good ſtore.

The People of this Country are not all of one Language: thoſe nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxemburg*, *Arlun*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville* and the reſt on that ſide ſpeaking the *Dutch*; as thoſe of *Montmedy*, *Marville*, *Dampvillers*, with the reſt bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*, in which regard the Pleadings held before the Council reſiding in *Luxemburg* are made in both Languages, that ſo they may be underſtood by all that have buſineſs there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the Seventeen) ſpeak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of Men full of Vertue, Courteſie, and Hoſpitality towards one another, and of great Truth and Faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worſt Landlords in all theſe Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the Peaſants of *France*, contrary to the uſe and Liberties of the reſt of the *Netherlands*. Both ſorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both Law and Lawyers, and for the moſt part end their Controverſies amongſt themſelves without any Proceſs.

The whole Country containeth in compaſs about 70 Leagues, or 200 *Italian* Miles, in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Luxemburgh* or *Lucemburg*, built in the place where anciently ſtood the *Auguſta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolomy*; and took this new name *quaſi Lucis burgum*, from the Image of the Sun there worſhipped; ſeated on the *Alſinuntius* or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large and of a ſtrong ſituation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the Spoils which the long Wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it before the Treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the Reſidence of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemia*, ſlain in the Battel of *Creſſy* againſt the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1348. This City was taken by the *French* in the Year 1684. 2. *Arlun*, on the top of an Hill, ſo called *quaſi Ara Lunæ*, from an Altar conſecrated to the Moon in the time of Paganiſm. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Moſelle*, over which it hath a goodly Bridge; a Frontier Town near *Metz* and the Border of *Lorrain*, and for that cauſe made marvellous ſtrong; but taken by the *French*, *anno* 1558, and reſtored the next Year by the Peace of *Cambray*. Retaken by the *French* in the Year 1644. 4. *Boſtonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it ſtandeth. 5. *Montmedy*, on an high Hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. Taken by the *French* in the Year 1657. 6. *Dampvillers*, once a very ſtrong place; both taken and ranſacked by the *French*, *anno* 1552. 7. *Marville*, upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the other to the King of *Spain* as Duke of *Luxemburg*, for which cauſe it is called *la Ville Commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle. 9. *Yvois*, a place once of great importance, ſacked by the *French*, *anno* 1552, and reſtored by the Treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it ſhould never more be walled. 10. *La Frette*, on the *Chiers*, a Town of the ſame Condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* ſtandeth the Principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the Banks of the River *Maes*, from the Borders of *Lorrain* on the South, to the great Foreſt of *Ardenne* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* on the North: A ſmall, but very fair Eſtate, of fruitful Soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and ſome Towns of note; the principal whereof are, 1. *Jamais* upon the borders of *Lorrain*, by the Duke whereof it was taken after a long ſeaſon from the Lady *Charlotte*, the laſt Heir-general of the Houſe of *Mark*, *anno* 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchiery*, a ſtrong Town of War, bordering on *Tiraſche* in *Picardy*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed. 3. *Sedan*, in *Latin* call'd *Sedunum ad Moſam*, becauſe ſituate on the Banks of the *Maes* or *Moſa*, the uſual Reſidence of the Prince: a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 Braſs pieces of Ordhance; honoured with a Seat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar-School and an Univerſity, is in the Criticiſm of theſe Times called a *Scholæ illuſtris*, to which Men may ſend their Children to learn good Letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a Privilege reſerved only to the Univerſities. So that theſe Schools may be ſomewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Weſtminſter*, *Wincheſter* and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in theſe laſt named are more reſtrained to Rhetorick and Grammar than in the other, though theſe more liberally endowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning than all the *Schola illuſtres* of either *Germany*. 4. *Mouſon*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence on the River *Maes*, upon ſome jealouſies of State garriſoned by the *French*, as alſo in *Sedan* it ſelf, and moſt of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality; but ſo that the Revenues of it, execution of Juſtice, and all other Rights of Soveraignty, are ſtill enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof. This ſmall Principality in the Year 1642 was forced to ſubmit to the Crown of *France*.

This Eſtate anciently was a part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, from which it was diſmembred for the Portion of ſome younger Prince, at ſuch time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, after *Charles* and *Otho* the firſt Dukes; or elſe excepted and reſerved by *Godfrey*, ſirnamed of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Jeruſalem*, when he ſold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Biſhop of *Liege*. By many mean Conveyances and Alterations of the Owners it came at laſt to the Houſe of *Aremberg*, a Family of great Wealth and Power in *Weſtphalen*, (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the Heir-general of which Houſe it was brought in Marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, about the Year 1330, from whom deſcended *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Sovereign of *Sedan* with the Towns annexed, who ſucceeding his Mother in the Eſtates of *Sauſi* and *Florenge*, Fiefs holden of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, and eagerly affecting to unite the Eſtates together, (as they had been anciently) purchaſed the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon* of *Eberherd* Earl of *Mark* his Brother, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and conſequently Duke of *Bouillon* alſo. Proud of his Honour, and being ſomewhat too ſtiff in maintaining the Rights of his new Dukedom againſt a Sentence paſſed in the Imperial Chamber, in a Suit there depending betwixt two of his Vaſſals, he took up Arms againſt the Empire, with far more Courage than Diſcretion. For being in the courſe of that War worſted by *Charles* V. (for whom he was too weak an Enemy) the Town of *Bouillon*, being taken by the conquering Emperor, was afterwards reſtored to the Biſhops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the Protection of the *French*, (as his Anceſtors from the time of *Charles* VIII. had done before, and died *anno* 1535, leaving his Titles and Eſtate unto *Robert* his Son, one of the Marſhals of *France*, whoſe Grandſon, called alſo *Robert*, being a dear Friend and Companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* alſo, dying without Iſſue at *Geneva*, *anno* 1588, committed to him the diſpoſal of his Eſtates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Siſter. And he ſo well diſcharged his Truſt, that (having ſettled his own Affairs) he gave the Lady in Marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne*, in *France*, (one who had done him very good ſervice in the courſe of his long War againſt the Leaguers) and with her the poſſeſſion of *Sedan*, and the Title of *Bouillon*; whoſe Poſterity do ſtill enjoy it. The whole Succeſſion of theſe Princes we ſhall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again unto the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, it was at firſt a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, diſmembred from it in the time of the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, by *Sigefride* the Son of *Ricuinus* Prince thereof, who, in the diviſion of that Eſtate amongſt his Brethren, had this for his Portion, with the Title of Earl. Of his Succeſſors there is little to be found upon good Record in a conſtant order of Succeſſion, until the time of *Henry* I. Father of *Henry* II. Emperor of *Germany*, and they of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are moſt conſiderable, tho' all of them of eminent quality in their ſeveral times, *viz.* 1. *Henry*, elected and crowned Emperor by the name of *Henry* VII. ſaid to be poiſoned by a Friar in the holy Chalice, to prevent ſome Deſigns he had againſt the Pope, in aſſerting the Imperial Power in *Italy*. 2. *John*, the Son of this *Henry*, choſen King of *Bohemia*, in regard of his Marriage with *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Winceſlaus* King thereof, the poſſeſſion of which Realm he left unto his Poſterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles* IV. the eldeſt Son of this *John*, in the Perſon of *Winceſlaus* his younger Brother. What elſe concerns it we ſhall find in this following Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of LUXEMBURG.

1. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Ricuine*, Prince of *Ardenne*, the firſt Earl of *Luxemburg*.
2. *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine*, Wife of *Baldwin* the Fourth of *Flanders*; but whoſe Son I find not.
3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was alſo Earl of *Luxemburg* by the right of Marriage, Father of *Agnes* the Wife of *Simon* the ſecond Duke of *Lorrain*.
4. *Conrade*, perhaps the Son of *Godfrey* by the Daughter of *Luxemburg*, Father of *Catharine*, Wife of *Matthew* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrain*.
5. *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, ſlain in the Quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Geldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchy of *Limbourg*.
6. *Henry* II. Son of *Henry* I. by means of his Brother *Baldwin*, Elector of *Triers*, was choſen Emperor of the *Germans*, the ſeventh of that name, *anno* 1308, firſt crown'd at *Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*, one of the laſt Emperors that meddled in the Affairs of *Italy*.

1313 7. *John*, Son of *Henry* II. Earl of *Luxemburg*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Winceſlaus* the elder, King of *Bohemia*; upon which he was upon that Marriage elected and crowned King, *anno* 1311. in the Life of his Father; ſlain by the *Engliſh* in the Battle of *Creſſy*, *anno* 1346.

1346 8. *Winceſlaus*, the younger Son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxemburg* by his elder Brother *Charles* IV. Emperor and King of *Bohemia*.

1383 9. *Winceſlaus* II. eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Charles* IV. Emperor and King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.

1419 10. *Sigiſmund*, Brother of *Winceſlaus*, ſucceeded *Winceſlaus* in all his Eſtates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the Marriage of *Mary*, Daughter of King *Lewis* I.

11. *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *John* Duke of *Gorlitz*, (a Town of *Luſatia*) the Brother of *Sigiſmund*, by the gift of *Sigiſmund* her Uncle, being then alive, the better to fit her for the Bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgogn*, Duke of *Brabant*, after whoſe deceaſe ſhe married *John* III. Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. But having no Iſſue by either of them, ſhe ſold her Intereſt in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good.
12. *Philip* the Good ſucceeded on the Sale aforeſaid made by the ſaid *Elizabeth*, in purſuance of the Contract and Agreement made at her firſt Marriage, for ſettling this Eſtate in the Houſe of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Succeſſors in theſe *Belgick* Provinces, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

The Arms are *B.* ſix Barrulets *A.* ſupporting a Lion *G.* crowned and armed *Or.*

7. LIMBOURG.

THE greateſt of the Eſtates of *Belgium* for extent of Territory, at the time of their incorporating in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending five of the 19 Provinces; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire, and the Seignioury of *Mechlin*, with the Sovereignty of *Liege* or *Luyckland*.

LIMBOURG hath on the Eaſt the Dukedom of *Gulick*, or *Juliers*, in High *Germany*, on the Weſt the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*. The Soil is fruitful of all neceſſary Commodities, excepting Wines, the want whereof is recompenſed with moſt excellent Wheat, great ſtore of Fewel, and plenty of the beſt Iron Mines in all theſe Countries: all which Commodities it hath of ſo great excellency in their ſeveral kinds, that it is ſaid of them proverbially, That *their Bread is better than Bread, their Fire hotter than Fire, and their Iron harder than Iron.* It is alſo well ſtored with Medicinal Simples, and enriched with a Mine of Copperas, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis ærosus*, *lib.* 34. *c.* 10.) which being incorporated with

Braſs makes Lattin, and encreaſeth the Braſs by one third part. *Lapis ærosus multum æris habet, & ex eo fuſo fit æs*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the leaſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities: *viz.* 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Eſtate, pleaſantly ſeated on a Hill amongſt ſhady Woods, under which runneth the River *Weſdo*; which, having watered the whole Country, emptieth it ſelf into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep precipice, of no eaſie acceſs. This City was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1632, after which it was recovered by the *Spaniards*, from whom it was taken by the *French* in 1675, diſmantled in 1677, and reſtored to the *Spaniards* again in 1678. 2. *Valkenburg*, called by the *French Fauquemont*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Maeſtricht*; conquered from *Reynold*, Lord hereof, by *John* the third, Duke of *Brabant*. Now under the *Hollanders*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Caſtle, the Territority thereof extending beyond the *Maes*, conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the ſecond. 4. *Rhode le Duc*, a little old Town with as old a Caſtle, half a League from *Valkenburg*. 5. *Carpen*, ſituate between *Gulick* and *Collen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, in which there is a Governor with a good Garriſon for defence of the place. Each of theſe Towns hath Juriſdiction on the parts adjoining, but with Appeal unto the Chancery at *Brabant*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Biſhoprick of *Liege* adjoining, were the *Eburones*, When it was firſt made an Earldom, I am yet to ſeek. Moſt probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, it was at firſt a member of that Earldom alſo, diſmembred from it for the Portion of ſome younger Son, as *Luxemburg* and *Namur* were, or ſeiz'd on by ſome ſtrong Pretender, (as *Gulick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrain*, and the direct Heirs of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, were abſent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. But whenſoever, and by whomſoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick Barberoſſa*, *anno* 1172. *Henry*, one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third, Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that Houſe ſome colour to pretend unto it; backed with a better Title on the death of another *Henry*, the laſt Duke of *Limbourg*, whoſe next Heir, *Adolph*, ſold it to *John*, Duke of *Brabant*; pretending to it in the right of the former Marriage, *anno* 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Geldres*, thinking himſelf to have a better Title than *Adolph*, in right of *Ermingrade* his Wife, the Daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challeng'd it by force of Arms: but being vanquiſhed and taken Priſoner by the ſaid Duke *John* in the Battel of *Worancan*, was fain, for his Releaſe, to releaſe all his Claim and Title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, after that quietly enjoy'd by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the Houſe of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or* and *Gules*.

8. *LUYCK-LAND*, or, the Biſhoprick of *LIEGE*.

WEſtward of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier Eſtate than it, lieth *LUYCK-LAND*, as the *Dutch*, or the Biſhoprick of *LIEGE*, *Leodienſis*, as the *Latin* and *French* Writers call it; anciently under the Protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. By ſome it is accompted of and deſcribed as a part of *Germany*; but for the reaſons before-mentioned, I ſhall place it here. It is environed on all ſides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to ſay, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and the Earldom of *Namur* on the Eaſt, with *Brabant* on the North and Weſt, on the South with *Luxemburg*.

The Air hereof is very wholſom, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits with ſome ſtore of Wine; and as for Fleſh, Fiſh, Fowl and Veniſon, it hath very great plenty, and that too of an excellent taſte: leſs fertile it is in ſuch parts hereof as lie towards *Luxemburg*, in which it is moſt ſwelled with Hills, and over-ſpread with ſhady Woods, remainders of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, within which it ſtood. But the chief Riches of this Country is under Ground, conſiſting in Mines of Lead and Iron, and ſome few of Gold; Quarries of Alabaſter, mingled with all ſorts of Marble; rich veins of Brimſtone, and unexhauſtible Pits of Coals; which laſt it hath in ſuch abundance, that there is digged within the compaſs of one League of the City of *Liege*, not only ſufficient for that great City, but ſo much over-plus, as being ſold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 100000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much ſweeter than elſewhere, and of nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with Water, and quenched with Oil, and the ſtrong fervour of it taken off by caſting Salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Liege*, or *Luyck*, (in *Latin*, *Leodium*) ſituate in a pleaſant Valley environ'd with Hills, the *Meuſe* entring it in two branches, accompanied with four leſſer Riverets, which make in it many delightful Iſlands. The compaſs of it is about four Miles; the ordinary Buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Biſhop's Palace a magnificent and ſumptuous piece; the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate, 32 Parochial, all of them for their Riches and Beauty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Beſides theſe, there are ſo many Covents, Monaſteries and Religious Houſes about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an Hundred, all of them of ſuch fair Revenues, ſo well endowed, and the Religious Perſons there of ſo great Authority, that it is called the *Paradiſe of Prieſts*, and that deſervedly. It is alſo an Univerſity of good Antiquity, wherein were Students at one time 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes Sons, 29 Earls Sons, beſides Barons and Gentlemen; the greateſt part of which were Canons of the Church of S. *Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithſtanding it hath taſted of the malice of Fortune as well as others, being firſt deſtroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once deſtroy'd by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, *anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Biſhop as Lord Temporal of it; from whom (being long ſince made an Imperial City) there lieth an Appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. In the Year 1675 the *French* took this City by Surprize, and perceiving they could not keep it, in 1676 pulled down the Caſtle of it. In the Year 1616 the Biſhop of this Dioceſs founded here a College for the *Engliſh* Jeſuits. 2. *Dinant*, upon the *Meuſe*, near *Namur*, of very great Traffick, till deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in the ſame Year with *Liege*; hardly recover'd of which Wound; it was again ſack'd by King *Henry* II. of *France*, *anno* 1548. 3. *Nuſeck*, upon the *Meuſe* or *Maes* alſo, a League from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the ſame nature with that of *Mons* and others ſpoken of before: the like to which there is near, 4. *Bilſen*, another Town of this Biſhoprick: the Abbeſſes of each having the privilege of Coining both Gold and Silver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borcolm*, in the County of *Dioſtein*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the Great, the Title and Poſſeſſion of *Ogier* the *Dane*, ſo famous in the Hiſtory of *Gallen* of *France*, and others of the old Romances. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Biſhop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or St. *Truden*, a fair Town, ſo called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoey*, ſo called of a violent River which there runs into the *Meuſe*. 9. *Tungres*, the City of the *Tongri*, which together with the *Eburones* were once the Inhabitants of this Tract; in which are ſtill the Ruines of a Temple conſecrated to *Hercules*: Anciently it was an Epiſcopal See, tranſlated hence to *Maeſtricht*, and at laſt to *Liege*; and in thoſe times ſo great and of ſuch Renown, that *Attila* the *Hun* deſtroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very ſmall Town, and not worth the mentioning but for theſe Antiquities. Eight Leagues from hence, amongſt the ſhady Thickets of the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, is, 10. that ſo celebrated Village, and thoſe famous hot Baths frequented from all the places in *Europe*, called the *Spa*; not ſo pleaſant as wholeſom, not ſo wholeſom as famous. Yet are they good for ſundry Diſeaſes, as the Tertian Ague, the Dropſie, the Stone, the Exulceration of the Lungs, the Sciatica, *&c.* They are of moſt virtue in *July*, becauſe they are then hotteſt; and to ſuch as taſt them they reliſh much of Iron, from ſome Iron Mines, it ſeemeth, thro' which the Waters run, which feed them. Theſe Baths were of great Fame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus deſcribe them: *Tongri Civitas fontem habet inſignem, plurimis bullis ſtillantem ferruginei ſaporis, quod ipſum non niſi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas diſcutit calculorumque vitia.* So he, *lib.* 31. *c.* 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this preſent time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this accompt) followed the ſame Fortunes with the reſt of *Belgica*, till the Conqueſt of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*; in the diviſion of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the ſhare of the Kings of *France*, as lying almoſt wholly on the Weſt or *French* ſide of the River *Maes*, which parted their Poſſeſſions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the *French* King (the laſt but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Otho* the 2d. it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till ſold by *Godfrey* of *Bouillan*, Duke of *Lorrain*, to the Biſhops of *Liege*, (of which more anon) ſince which time it hath been the Patrimony of thoſe wealthy Prelates. As for the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was ſaid; after the ſackage of which City by *Attila*, it was removed *anno* 498, by S. *Servatius* unto *Maeſtricht*. But the People of *Maeſtricht* having martyred S. *Lambert* their Biſhop, *anno* 710, by *Hubert*, his deſign'd Succeſſor, with the leave of Pope *Conſtantine*, it was tranſlated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here Founded by the name of S. *Lambert*. His Succeſſors did ſo well husband their Advantages that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, ſold unto *Speutus* and *Obertus* ſucceſſively Biſhops of it by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrain*, at his departure hence to the Holy Land: not much increaſed ſince that in Lands, though they be in Titles, the Biſhop being ſtiled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bouillon*, Marquis of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Loetz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 30000 Ducats yearly; his Subjects living very well under him, at eaſie Rents, and growing for the moſt part unto good Eſtates. An argument whereof may be, that when the *Liegeois* had rebelled againſt *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy* (under whoſe Protection they were as Dukes of *Brabant*) they bought their Peace of him at the Price of 600000 Florens of the *Rhene*, to be paid in ſix Years. After which again Rebelling againſt *Charles* the Warlike, (as they have been obſerved to be the moſt rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gaunt*) they were able to wage 30000 Men; but not being able to withſtand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell into that miſerable deſtruction ſpoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*: but were counted neutral in Quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the States Confederate, as formerly between the *Spaniards* and the *French*; though many times they ſuffer in the Conteſtations.

Southward hereof betwixt it and *Luxemburg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bouillon*; ſubject unto the Biſhops of *Liege*, but a State diſtinct, and holden by a different Title. It taketh up a great part of that Country, which more particularly and ſpecially is called the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, with the Woods thereof many places over-ſhadowed; but not unfurniſhed of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Loni*, and, 2. *Muſon-Court*, deſtroyed by *Charles* the Fifth, in his War againſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*, but, on the Peace enſuing, repair'd again. 3. *Sauſi*, and, 4. *Floringe*, Fiefs, as before is ſaid, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but poſſeſſed by the Sovereigns of *Sedan*, ſince the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Sovereign of *Sedan* had them in Marriage with *Joan* his Wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the firſt Duke of *Bouillon* of that Family. The laſt a pretty Town, till deſtroyed by the *French* in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the ſeconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, ſince paſſing in account as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, in the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, the cauſe of the great War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, ſpoken of before; the Emperor having paſſed Sentence in behalf of the *Embries*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the Pretenſions of the Houſe of *Chinay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the ſide of a Hill near the River *Senoy*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Caſtle on the top of the ſaid Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, ſo ſtrong, as well by Art as Nature, that before the uſe of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; much ſpoiled in the War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* of *Mark*, and toſſed from one Maſter to another in a little time, for being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, *anno* 1552, and finally reſtored to the Biſhop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *anno* 1559, but without prejudice to the Claim and Title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that there are no fewer than three diſtinct Families which at this time enjoy the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to ſay, the Biſhop of *Liege*, who hath precedency of Title, and the poſſeſſion of the City; the Houſe of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sauſi*, and ſome other pieces; and the Heirs-males of the collateral Line of the Houſe of *Mark*, who hold *Lumaigne*, *Rochfort*, and ſome other places, but of leſs importance. By the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* in 1679, That the Dukes of *Bouillon*, who are in poſſeſſion of it, ſhould peaceably enjoy the ſame, all Differences being referred to Honorary Arbitrators, and that the Biſhops of *Liege* in the mean time ſhould uſe no Force againſt the ſaid Dukes.

This Dukedom, once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the diviſion of that Eſtate betwixt the Children of *Ricuine*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the ſhare of *Godfrey* his eldeſt Son (*Sedan* with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his Son it was united to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, who ſucceeded into that Eſtate after *Charles* and *Otho*, and by another *Godfrey* the firſt Duke of *Lorrain* diſmembred from it, and given in Dower with his Siſter *Ida*, at her Marriage with *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of theſe was born the Famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey of Bouillon*, either becauſe he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*; who, to provide himſelf of neceſſaries for the Wars of the *Holy Land*, (ſo fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) ſold firſt this Dukedom unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole Country of *Luyck-land* to *Speutus*, Biſhops of *Liege* ſucceſſively, and their Succeſſors for ever; which though accounted by moſt Writers for a part of *Luyck-land*, or of the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, call it which you will, was notwithſtanding held by thoſe great Prelates as a State diſtinct, and governed under them by the Eſtates of the Country, from whoſe Sentence there lay no Appeal. The maintenance of which Privileges, on an Appeal made by the *Embries* unto *Charles* the Fifth, coſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* ſo dear, who had not long before purchaſed this Eſtate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*, as was ſaid before. The reſt of the Story we have had already in our Deſcription of *Sedan*: we will now look upon the Princes which have born theſe Titles.

The Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Ardenne*.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldeſt Son of *Ricuine*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the firſt Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a Daughter of the Emperor *Otho* II.
2. *Godfrey* II. Son of *Godfrey* I. who in the Year 1004, by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Couſin, and the power of *Henry* II. Emperor, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.

1019 3. *Gozelo*, Brother of *Godfrey* II. Duke of *Lorrain* and *Bouillon*.

1044 4. *Godfrey* III. Son of *Gozelo*.

5. *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his Wife, Daughter of *Godfrey* III. by him endow'd at her Marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.
6. *Godfrey* IV. ſirnam'd *of Bouillon*, Son of *Euſtace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, *anno* 1078, and died King of *Jeruſalem*. Going unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, he ſold this Dukedom to *Obert* Biſhop of *Liege* and his Succeſſors, *anno* 1096. who did accordingly enjoy it till the Year 1509 or thereabouts; when it was ſold by *Everhard* of *Mark* to his Brother *Robert*, of whoſe Deſcent and Succeſſors you may take this view, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Mark*.

1. *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany*, by marrying with the Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jamais*, &c. to the Houſe of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, ſecond Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4. *Everhard* II. Brother of *John* Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5. *John* II. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* II.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the ſecond Son of *John* II. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* ſucceeding in the Eſtates of *Aremberg*. He added *Florenge* and *Sauſi*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, to his other pieces.
7. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* I. Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchaſed of *Everhard* his Brother, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*.

1534 8. *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* II. one of the Marſhals of *France*, Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Titulary Duke of *Bouillon*.

1556 9. *Henry-Robert*, Son of *Robert* III.

10. *Robert-William*, Son of *Henry-Robert*, zealous in the Reformed Religion, and a great Follower of *Henry* of *Vendoſme*, King of *Navarre*, to whom, dying at *Geneva*, *anno* 1588. he bequeathed the care of his Eſtates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Siſter of *Robert-William*, married by *Henry* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne*.
12. *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne* in *France*, deſcended from the Heirs-general of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by Marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* IV. of *France*, ſucceeded in the Sovereignty of *Sedan* and Title of *Bouillon*; a Proteſtant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illuſtris* in *Sedan*.
13. *Henry de la Tour*, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William* Prince of *Orange*, ſucceeded his Father in his Eſtates, but not in his Religion alſo, which, to ingratiate himſelf with the *French* King, he exchanged for Papiſtry, made thereupon one of the Marſhals of *France*, and now living *anno* 1648. He was ſlain in the Year 1675, near *Satzbach* in *Germany*.

9. *BRABANT.* 10. The *MARQUISATE.* And 11. *MECHLIN.*

These I have joined together, though diſtinct Eſtates, becauſe they have a long time follow'd the ſame Fortune, and that the two laſt do no otherwiſe differ from the firſt than the parts from the whole; the *Marquiſate* and *Mechlin* being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

1. *BRABANT* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Luyckland* or the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, on the Weſt with the River *Scheld* and a part of *Flanders*, on the North with the *Maes*, which ſevereth it from *Holland* and *Gelderland*, and on the South with *Hainault*, *Namur*, and a part of *Luyckland*: ſo called *quaſi Brackland*, that is to ſay, a barren Land, as at firſt it was; or from the old *Bratuſpantium*, which *Caſar* placeth in this Tract; but from whether of the two is not determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholeſom and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it ſelf, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattle, Soiling the Ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The People live in moſt freedom, and are the beſt privileged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholden to the Prince's goodneſs, than their own great Wits: being noted to be none of the wiſeſt, eſpecially as they grow in age, when moſt Men learn Wiſdom. *Brabanti, quo magis ſeneſcunt, eo magis ſtulteſcunt*, as *Eraſmus*.

The length hereof, from S. *Gertruydenburgh* to *Gemblours*, North and South, is 22 *Dutch* or *German* miles; from *Helmont* to *Bergen op Zoome*, Eaſt and Weſt, 20 of the ſame Miles; the whole compaſs 80. Within which circuit are contain'd 26 walled Towns and Villages, with Pariſh-Churches 718; of which the odd 18, called *Franks* or Market-Towns, enjoy the Privileges of walled Towns or Cities, though unwalled themſelves.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Hertogen Boſch*, or the *Boſch*, as the *Dutch Bois le Duc*; or *Bolduc*, as the *French*; and *Sylva Ducis*, or *Boſcum Ducis*, as the *Latins* call it: each name derived according to their ſeveral Languages, from a pleaſant Wood, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now ſtands, ſituate on a little River call'd *Deeſe*, ſome two Leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Gelderland*. A large and well-built Town, very ſtrongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper: Made an Epiſcopal See, *anno* 1559, the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of S. *John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt Dials in the Chriſtian World. This is the principal Town of *Brabant* (properly and diſtinctly ſo called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maeſland*, *Peelland*, and *Oſterwick*; and was taken by the Confederate *States* from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable Siege, *anno* 1628. 2. *Tilmont*, on the little River *Geet*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long ſince decayed. 3. *Aerſchot*, on the little River *Dennere*, which gives the Title of Duke to them of the noble Houſe of *Croy*, deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary* (of which we ſpake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the Fifth) being Men of greateſt Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*.

4. *Bergen-*

op-Zoome, ſo call'd from the River Zoome upon
ſituate, about half a League from the influx
the Scheld, and not far from the Sea, which
reaſonable good Haven. A Town of great
y nature, but more ſtrongly fortified; famous
made a Marquiſate by Charles the Fifth, anno
re for the notable Reſiſtance which it made to
uis Spinola, anno 1622. 5. Breda, upon the
rck, a Town pleaſantly ſeated, well fortified,
reat Revenue, having under it the Town and
of Steenberg, the Franchiſe of Roſindale, and
oury of Oſterhout; the Reſidence, Barony and
vn of the Princes of Orange, from whom being
the Spaniard in the beginning of thoſe Wars, it
n recover'd by ſome venturous Gentlemen,
g themſelves in a Boat cover'd over with Turf,
vey'd into the Caſtle, which they eaſily maſter-
nade the Prince Lord of it again; after retaken
niard, anno 1625, but now in the poſſeſſion of
l Owners, to whom it came by the right of the
Naſſau, by the Marriage of Engelbert the 7th.
hat Houſe, with Mary Daughter and Heir of
laſt Lord hereof, about the Year 1400. This
made more famous, a Peace being here made
the Engliſh and Dutch in the Year 1667, after a
War of three Years. 6. Dieſt, on the River
a good Town and inveſted with a goodly Ter-
elonging to the Prince of Orange, whoſe An-
the Houſe of Naſſau had it in exchange for ſome
nds of the Duke of Cleve; and in right hereof
grave of the City of Antwerp. 7. Grinbergen,
t Barony, with a large Juriſdiction, deſcendible
oungeſt Son only, after the manner of Burg
as our Lawyers call it. 8. Gertruydenberg,
on the Donge, not far from the influx of it into
, the fartheſt Town in the North of Brabant,
joins to Holland; which makes it a matter of
etwixt thoſe Provinces, to which of them it
ng. A Town of great trade for Fiſhing, plen-
mons and Sturgeon being taken here, but of
pecially, whereof 18000 are ſometimes caught in
alted, and ſent abroad into Foreign Parts. It
edgeth the Prince of Orange for the Lord there-
th alſo, 9. Grave, a good Town upon the Maes,
y theſe Princes of the King of Spain without
f the States, without whoſe approbation no part
Domain is to be diſmembred. 10. Maeſtricht,
Trajectum ad Moſam) ſo called of a Ferry over
in former times; ſupplied now with a goodly
ridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly
beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one
the Dukes of Brabant were always Canons;
n part to the Biſhop of Liege, and partly to the
Brabant. The Children are ſubject to that Prince
the Mother was ſubject at the time of the Birth,
relation to the Father according to that Maxime
Civil Law, Partus ſequiter ventrem. And if a
come to live there, he muſt declare to which
wo he will be ſubject. Yet is the Duke of Bra-
chief Sovereign of it, he only having the power
ge, and of granting Pardon to Offenders: and
wn of this Dukedom it was beſieged and taken
Confederate States, anno 1632. In the Year 1673
aken after a ſharp reſiſtance by the French; in
Hollanders attempted the reduction of it by
ut that failing, in 1678 they recovered it by the
of Nimmeghen, and have ſince made it much
than it was before.

is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom the
nd Seigniory of Raveſtein, ſituate on the Banks
aes, held by the Dukes of Cleve of the Duke of
but no otherwiſe ſubject: and on the ſame
Town and Country of Horn, a Fief Imperial,
d with a ſtrong Caſtle and a goodly Territory,
is Wiert, the Reſidence of the Earls of Horn,
d of the ancient Houſe of Montmorency in France.

*

2. The MARQUISATE of the EMPIRE, ſo called becauſe the fartheſt Bounds and Marches of the German Empire frontiering on Flanders, which appertained unto the Sovereignty of the Crown of France, comprehendeth four of the beſt Towns in Brabant, with very large and ſpacious Territories adjoining to them: viz. 1. Lovain, on the River Dille, about four Engliſh Miles in compaſs; but in that compaſs much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows and pleaſant Fields, which make the ſituation far more delightful than if all built and peopled. It was the Mother Town of Brabant, and ſometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards was made an Univerſity by Duke John the 4th. anno 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colleges, ſuch as they be, much privileged, and enriched with Penſions for Publick Readers, by King Philip II. This Prince in the Year 1606 Founded here a College for the Engliſh Jeſuits. 2. Bruxels, (Bruxella) the Seat of the ancient Dukes of Brabant, and of the Dukes of Burgundy alſo, after they came to be Lords of thoſe Countries; ſeated upon the Sinne, and other ſweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in all Europe, having withal a goodly Channel made by Art from Bruſſels to the River Dille, and from thence to the Scheld, the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the ſame compaſs with Lovain, the Building ſumptuous, and the Town very rich, not only in regard that it is the ordinary Seat of the Prince or his Regent, and the Chancery for all Brabant and the Dutchy of Limbourg; but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of Arras, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there induſtriouſly purſued. 3. Nivelle, on the borders of Hainault, in a very rich and fruitful Soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linen which is therein made, but moſt of all for a very rich Nunnery (or rather a Nurſery) of noble Ladies of the ſame nature with thoſe of Mons and others before deſcribed. 4. Antwerp, ſituate on a goodly Plain on the River Scheld, above 17 Leagues from the Sea, but furniſhed with 8 Channels, cut out of the River for the Tranſport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private Buildings are very handſome, but the publick ſumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of Noſtre-Dame, the Burſe, the Town-houſe, and the Houſe of the Eaſterlings or Eaſtern Merchants. Well peopled it is, and of ſo great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richeſt Empory of the Chriſtian World; the Commodities here bought and ſold amounting to more in one month than thoſe of Venice in two Years. The cauſes of which ſudden growth and encreaſe of Trading are ſaid to be theſe. 1. The two Marts holden here every Year, either of them during ſix Weeks, in which time no Man's Perſon could be arreſted, or his Goods diſtrained. 2. The King of Portugal having in the Year 1503 diverted the courſe of Merchandiſe from Alexandria and Venice to the City of Lisbon, kept here his Factories, and ſent hither his Spices and other Indian Commodities: for which cauſe the Merchants in the Year 1516 forſook Bruges in Flanders, and ſettled here. And, 3. Many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt France and Spain, forſook their Country-houſes and repaired hither: by means whereof Antwerp, in a very little time grew bigger by 3000 Houſes than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was ſudden, ſo the fall ſenſible; occaſioned through the yoaking it with a Cittadel by the Duke of Alva, which made Merchants afraid to reſort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom and leſs ſecurity; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven and intercepting the Trade at Sea, by the more powerful Hollanders, which hath removed this great Traffick to Amſterdam and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief ſupport of it is the Reputation which it hath of being an Imperial City, the place of Receipt for the King's Revenues, and a Biſhop's See, Founded here in the Year 1559, which

draweth hither ſome reſort of Lawyers and Churchmen.

3. The *Seignioury* of *MECHLIN* conſiſteth only of that City and a ſmall Territory of 9 Villages adjoining to it. The City is ſeated on both ſides of the River *Dille*, which ebbeth and floweth to the Town and a League above it, and runneth through the very midſt, maketh in it a number of ſmall Iſlands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town containing ſeven Pariſh Churches, beſides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbiſhop, founded here in the Year 1559. Strong, in regard it may eaſily be drown'd on all ſides; and of great Wealth, by reaſon of the many Manufactures of Linnen, great Artillery of Braſs and Iron, Bells, painted Works, and others of like uſe and ornament. And being ſituate in a manner in the Centre of *Brabant*, diſtant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, it was made by *Charles* the Warlike (who loved the place) the ordinary Seat of the great Council of State, to which Appeals are made from the other Provinces. But yet it was more beautiful in former times than it is at the preſent; the City being much defaced by firing 200 Barrels of Powder, *anno* 1546. and by the Sackage of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force, *anno* 1572. Moſt memorable at this time for a famous Nunnery, like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are ſometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they pleaſe may leave their Cloiſter and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State diſtinct: for which cauſe many Women at the time of their Childbirth uſe to lay down their Bellies in ſome Village of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the Privileges and Immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leeſt* or *Heyſt*, pleaſantly ſeated on an Hill, the reſidue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages were the Patrimony heretofore of the noble Family of the *Bertholds*; which failing in the perſon of *Gaulter*, ſlain in the Battel of *Worancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Biſhop of *Liege*, who ſold his moyety to *John* the 2d. Duke of *Brabant*; the other to the Earl of *Geldres*, who in the year 1333 ſold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he ſold nothing but the Title; *John* the 3d. Duke of *Brabant* having ſeiſed upon it, and added it to his Eſtate: the occaſion of ſome quarrel between thoſe Princes, compoſed by the Marriage of *Lewis* with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it ſelf, the ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aduatici* and ſome part of the *Tongri*: it was accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, and by the *French* a Province of the Kingdom of *Eaſt-France* or *Auſtraſia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault* under the Governance and Command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts lying towards the Sea, and terribly infeſted with the Depredation of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of ſome principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. *Theodebert* Son of *Theodorick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, accompanied with *Utilo* a *Boiarian* Prince, having repulſed theſe common Robbers, obtained for *Utilo*, of his Father, the command of thoſe Countries, and poſſeſſion of a great part of them alſo, by the Title of Lord Marquis of *Antwerp*: the fourth from whom, called *Arnulph*, was the firſt Mayor of the Palace (of this Houſe) to the Kings of *France*, made as it were hereditary unto his Succeſſors. By *Dagobert* the firſt, ſole King of the *French*, that part of this Country which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them, the whole Eſtate was conferred on *Anſegiſus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the Title of Duke of *Brabant*. The Actions and Atchievements of ſo many of them as were Mayors of the Palace we have already ſeen when we were in *France*. The whole Succeſſion follows here in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *Antwerp* and Dukes of *BRABANT*
of the *German* or *Boiarian* Race.

1. *Utilo*, Son of *Theodore*, the firſt Duke and Nephew of *Aldiagerius*, the laſt King of the *Boiarians*.

2. *Hugopert*, Son of *Utilo*.

563 3. *Aſopert*, the Son of *Hugopert*, and Husband of *Plythilda*, Daughter of *Clotaire* the firſt of *France*.

579 4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Aſopert*.

601 5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the firſt Mayor of the Palace of this Family.

641 6. *Anſegiſus*, Son of *Arnulphus*, Marquis of *Antwerp*, and Mayor of the Palace by *Dagobert* the firſt made Duke of *Brabant*.

679 7. *Pepin*, ſirnamed the Fat, Son of *Anſegiſus*, Succeſſor to his Father in his Honours, Offices and Eſtates, and was herein ſucceeded by

714 8. *Charles* the baſe Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant Acts ſirnamed *Martel*, there being no lawful Iſſue of his Father living.

741 9. *Pepin* II. ſirnamed the Short, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the Affairs of *France* from the death of his Father for the ſpace of ten Years, uſurped the Kingdom, and was ſolemnly crowned King at *Soiſſons* by *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, on *May-day*, *anno* 751.

The Dukedom of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of *France*, continu'd a Province of that Kingdom, till the diviſion of the *French* Empire among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the Godly; when it was made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*. Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuſe* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themſelves the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*) it was by *Lotharius* the third of *France*, in whoſe ſhare it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the Title of the Dukes of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greateſt part thereof, together with the reſt of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, which of right belonged unto the *French*, being conquered by the Emperor *Otho* the 2d. and by him added to the Empire. And yet this alſo fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Couſin-german to this *Otho* the 2d. by the Lady *Gerburg*, (Siſter of *Otho* the firſt, and Wife of *Lewis* ſirnamed *Tranſmarine*, King of *France*, the Father of *Charles*) was by him inveſted into the great Dukedom of *Lorrain*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lerrain*, *Gulick* and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luyck*, with part of the Lands of *Triers* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Baſs* (or *Low*) *Lorrain*, and as in memory thereof, there is a Court for criminal and civil Cauſes held at *Gennap* (one of the Franks or Market-Towns of *Brabant*) called *La Cour de Lorrain* to this Day: an Eſtate firſt erected, as before is ſaid, by the Emperor *Otho* II. who giving it to the ſaid *Charles* of *France*, reſerved out of it as a Dower for his ſaid Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle* and *Antwerp*, lying on the Marches of his Dominions towards *France*, which (with reference perhaps to the old Marquiſate of *Antwerp*) he honour'd with the Title of *Marquiſate of the holy Empire*, anno 981. *Gerburg*, the Siſter, and Heir of *Otho* the Son of *Charles* abovementioned being put beſides her hopes of that fair Inheritance by her Brother *Otho* (who gave it to *Geofrey* of *Ardenne*) ſucceeded her Grandmother, the firſt *Gerburg*, in the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelle* and *Bruxels*, which ſhe conveyed in Marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Reyner* of *Hainault*, with the Title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his Son having made himſelf Maſter of *Antwerp* alſo, was by that means poſſeſſed of the whole Marquiſate, but ſtill retain'd the Title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6th Earl, having inlarg'd the bounds of his Dominions by the Conqueſt of the reſt of the Country, *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrain*, being then abſent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperor *Henry* the 5th (whoſe Siſter he married) created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the firſt Duke of that name, added hereunto the Dutchy of *Limbourg*; and *John* the 3d, the Seignioury of *Malins* or *Mechlin*. How it became united to the Houſe of *Burgundy* is to be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Earls of LOVAIN and Dukes of BRABANT of the Race of *Charlemagne*.

1004 1. *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainault*, made the firſt Earl of *Lovain*, in Right of *Gerburg*.

1015 2. *Henry* the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire.

1046 3. *Lambert* II. Son of *Henry*.

1054 4. *Henry* II. Son of *Lambert* the ſecond.

1068 5. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the ſecond.

6. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third.

1096 7. *Godfrey*, ſirnamed *Barbatus*; Brother of *Henry* the Fourth, in Right of his deſcent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain* challenged the Country, and recovered it from the Houſe of *Ardenne*; and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth was created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*, *anno* 1108. Father of *Adelize*, the ſecond Wife of our *Henry* the firſt, and of *Joſceline de Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (late) Earl of *Northumberland*.

1140 8. *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. Son of *Godfrey*.

1143 9. *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* III. Son of *Godfrey* the 2d.

1183 10. *Henry* V. Son of *Godfrey* the third.

1230 11. *Henry* VI. ſirnamed the Good, Son of *Henry* the fifth.

1247 12. *Henry* VII. ſirnamed the Magnanimous, by whoſe Marriage with *Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia* came into this Houſe inveſted in it the Perſon of *Henry* his Son by the ſaid *Sophia*.

1260 13. *John*, Son of *Henry* the ſeventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and deſtroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*: his younger Brother *Henry*, by another *Venter*, ſucceeding in *Haſſia*.

14. *John* II. Son of *John* the firſt, bought of the Biſhop of *Liege* the moyety or one half of *Mechlin*.

1312 15. *John* III, Son of *John* the ſecond, added the whole Eſtate of *Mechlin* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.

1355 16. *Joan* the eldeſt Daughter of *John* the third, married to *Winceſlaus* the firſt Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without Iſſue.

1406 17. *Anthony* of *Bargogn*, Son of *Philip* the Hardy and the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the Siſter and Heir of *Joan*, after the death of the ſaid *Winceſlaus* and *Joan* his Wife, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder Brother *John* giving way unto it, at the requeſt of their great Aunt *Joan*, the Proprietary of it.

1415 18. *John* IV. Son of *Anthony* by his firſt Wife *Joan*, Daughter of *Waleran*, Earl of Saint *Paul*.

1426 19. *Philip*, the ſecond Son of *Anthony*, and Brother of *John* the Fourth.

1430 20. *Philip* II. called the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son and Heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder Brother of *Anthony*, on the death of his two Couſin-germans, *John* and *Philip*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct Heir of the Lady *Margaret*, Wife to *Lewis de Malain*, and Daughter of *John* the third, the laſte Duke of *Brabant*, of the Houſe of *Lovain*. Of whoſe Succeſſors more in another place.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a Lion *Or*.

12. HOLLAND. 13. ZELAND. 14. WEST-FRIEZLAND.

HAving thus ſpoken of thoſe Provinces, which ſtill continue in ſubjection to the King of *Spain* (except ſome few Towns in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, before mentioned,) let us next look on thoſe which have withdrawn their Obedience from him; beginning firſt with *Holland* and its Appendices, as of more power and conſideration than all the reſt. Which though diſtinct Provinces, and acting in their ſeveral Capacities at the preſent time, yet having been always under the Command of the ſame Princes they muſt be joined together in the Story of them, but ſhall be ſeverally handled as to the Chorography.

HOLLAND hath on the Eaſt the *Zuider-See*, *Utrecht* and ſome part of *Gelderland*, on the Weſt and North the *German* Ocean, on the South the Iſlands of *Zeland* and ſome part of *Brabant*. So called, as ſome think, but with little reaſon, *quaſi Holt-land*, that is to ſay, a woody Country; as others, *quaſi Hollow-land*, from the Bogs and Marſhes and unſound footing on the ſame; and ſome will have it called ſo, *quaſi Hoy-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius*, not reliſhing any of the three, conceives that both his Country and the Iſles of *Zeland*, being planted by ſome Colonies of *Danes* and *Normans* (at the time of the Irruption of thoſe Northern Nations) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland*, two Iſlands of the *Baltick* Sea, out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may pleaſe himſelf.

The Country for the moſt part lyeth very low, inſomuch that they are fain to fence it with Banks and Ramparts to keep out the Sea, and to reſtrain the Rivers within their bounds; ſo that in many places one may ſee the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulſed with thoſe Banks: and it is withal ſo Fenny and full of Marſhes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable Dikes and Chanels, to make it firm Land, and fit for dwelling; yet not ſo firm to bear either Trees or much Grain. But ſuch is the Induſtry of the People and Trade they drive, that having little or no Corn of their own growth, they do provide themſelves elſewhere; not only ſufficient for their own ſpending, but wherewith to ſupply their Neighbours: having no Timber of their own, they ſpend more Timber in building Ships and fencing their Water-courſes than any Country in the World: having no Wine, they drink more than the People of the Country where it groweth naturally: and finally, having neither Flax nor Wooll, they make more Cloth of both ſorts than all the Countries in the World, except *France* and *England*.

The preſent Inhabitants are generally given to Sea-faring Lives, ſo that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Weſt-Friezland*, there are 2500 Ships of War and Burthen. The Women are for the moſt part laborious in making Stuffs: Nay, you will hardly ſee a Child of four Years of age that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their Government. The greateſt of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheeſe; of which, beſides that infinite plenty which they ſpend in their own Houſes, and amongſt their Garriſons and Ships, they ſell as much unto other Countries as comes to 100000 Crowns *per annum*. By which means, and by the greatneſs of their Fiſh-trade, ſpoken of before, they are grown ſo wealthy on the Land, and ſo powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*, ſo now *Holland* is taken generally for all the Provinces confederated in a League againſt the *Spaniards*.

The whole Compaſs of it is no more than 180 Miles, no part thereof being diſtant from the Sea above three hours Journey: and yet, within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns and 400 Villages; ſome ſituate in *North*, and others in *South-Holland*, as it ſtands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lieth next to *Zeland*, and the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, paſſing from *Utrecht* unto *Leyden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dort*, in *Latin Dordrectum*, formerly the Staple for *Rheniſh* Wines; a large, rich, and well-peopled Town; anciently joined to the firm Land, but in the year 1421 rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Iſland; of great command upon the Traffick of the *Maes* and the *Wael*, upon whoſe Confluence it ſtands, but of moſt note in theſe latter times for an Aſſembly of Divines out of divers Countries following *Calvin*'s Doctrine, for Condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Univerſal Grace and Predeſtination, *Anno* 1618. 2. *Gorchum*, ſituate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*; a Town of great Trade and Riches, by reaſon of a daily Market of Cheeſe and Butter brought hither in very great quantity; beautified anciently with a ſtrong Caſtle and a fair Church, from the Steeple whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, beſides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it called by that People *Van Arckel*, or the Land of *Hercules*, from an opinion, that *Hercules* the *German* did there appoint his Camp, or rather from ſome Temple dedicated to him, in the place whereof the Lords of this Tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arcueli* they are called in our *Latin* Writers) founded a Church unto the Honour of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thierre* the 2d Earl of *Holland*, by whom they were firſt ſetled in this Country. And here they flouriſh'd as Lords of *Gorchum*, *Leerdam*, and the parts adjoining, till the Year 1416; when falling to *John* Lord of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *John* of *Arckellandt*, the laſt Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond*, Duke of *Geldres*, it was by him ſold to *William* the 6th, Earl of *Holland*, and ſo again united unto that Eſtate. 3. *Rotterdam*, ſeated on a Dike or Chanel called the *Rotter*; not far from which at a place named *Rempen* the *Leck*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a ſtrong fair and well-traded Port: the birth-place of the learned *Eraſmus*. 4. *Schoon-hoven*, ſituate on the *Leck*, a fair Town, having a commodious Haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the ſix principal Towns of *Holland*, rich and well fortified, ſeated on the River called *Yſſel*, which riſing about *Yſſelſtein*, ſpoken of anon, falleth into the *Leck* at a place called *Yſſelmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene* ſo called, which giveth name to *Over-Yſſel*. On the ſame River alſo ſtand, 6. *Oudwater*, and 7. *Yſſelſtein*; this laſt belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the firſt of great Trade for making Cables and Cords for Shipping. 8. *Leyden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an Univerſity, founded *Anno* 1564. The Town conſiſteth of 41 Iſlands, to which they paſs partly by Boats, partly by Bridges, whereof there are 144, and of them 104 builded with Stone. Here is in this Town a Caſtle, ſaid to have been built by *Hengiſt* the *Saxon* at his return out of *England*. And not far off ſtood the famous Nunnery of *Rainsburg*, of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Monts* and *Nivelle* before deſcribed; ſo liberally endowed, that 2000 Perſons did there daily receive Relief. 9. *Vianen*, on the *Leck*, a Seignioury diſtinct from *Holland*, pertaining anciently to the Lords of *Brederode*: and ſo was alſo, 10. *Hueſden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Caſtle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which Houſe it had Lords of its own, as acknowledging no ſubjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the Year 850, or thereabouts, to the Year 1290, at which time *Theodorick* the 9th of *Cleve* at a merry meeting transferred the Sovereignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the poſſeſſion of 20 Lords of that Family, on the expiration of that Line in the Perſon of *John* the 9th dying without Iſſue, *Anno* 1334, it was made a Member of this Earldom (after ſome ſharp Diſputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a Reſignation of the laſt Lord *John*) by *William* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Holland* and *Hainault*, *Anno* 1361, or thereabouts. 11. *Leerdam*, upon the River *Linge*, which, together with *Yſſelſtein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, in right of his deſcent from the Earls of *Bueren*. 12. *Delf*, a Town of great Trade for Cloathing, but more by reaſon of the Cloth of *England* brought thither in great quantities by the *Engliſh* Merchants, than for any great ſtore of their making; by reaſon of the concourſe which that Trade brings with it, rich, large and well built, beautified with ſpacious Streets and goodly Churches; the birth-place of that monſtrous Heretick *David George*, who called himſelf *King*, and *Chriſt immortal*, as is before ſaid.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* and the *Zuider-See*: The Towns or Cities of moſt importance are, 1. *Alkmaer*, encompaſſed with deep Fens and Marſhes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheeſe which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*, and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* Troubles, having with the loſs of 20000 of his own Men forced *Harlem* in the Year 1573, laid his Siege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Soldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandon'd: but having environ'd them round, he put them to ſuch a reſolution, or deſparation (chuſe you whither) that manfully they reſiſted three of his Aſſaults, and in the end made him depart with great loſs, as well of his Soldiers, as his Reputation. 2. *Amſterdam*, a very fair Haven-Town, where divers times at one tide 1000 Ships of all ſorts have been ſeen to go out and in. So truly ſaid a modern Poet.

Quod Tagus *atque* Hermus *vehit, &* Pactolus, *in unum*
Vere hunc congeſtum dixeris eſſe locum.

What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,
One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby are ſo rich, that if a Fleet of 300 Sail ſhould come into the Port fraught with all kind of Commodities, in five or ſix days they would be ready to buy all the Lading. Situate it is on the Gulf called the *Tie*, and the Dike or Chanel called *Amſtel*, whence it hath the name of *Amſterdam*, in *Latin*, *Amſtelodamum*; built upon Piles like *Venice*, and reſembling it in ſo many points, that it may juſtly be called the *Northern Venice*. It was firſt fortified with Towers and Ramperts by *Giſelbert* of *Amſtel*, about 300 Years ago; but being burnt, through the envy of its Neighbours, it began to be walled, *Anno* 1482. Grown to this Wealth ſince the diverting of the Trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cauſe inhabited by Men of all Nations and of all Religions, and thoſe not only tolerated and connived at in private, but openly and freely exerciſed without any diſlike. A greater Confuſion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of Religions, that of Languages only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlemmeer*, the greateſt Town of all *Holland*, and the ſecond for Dignity; well built, and very pleaſantly ſituated amongſt many goodly Meadows, near a delightful Foreſt, and round about environed with wealthy Villages; famous for the invention of Printing, invented here, but perfected at *Mentz* in Higher *Germany*; the firſt Book which was ever printed being *Tully's Offices*. It was made a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Utrecht* by Pope *Paul* IV. in 1559, and taken and ſacked by the *Spaniards* in 1573, with the loſs of 20000 of their Men. 4. *Naerden*, on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, to whom it anciently belonged. 5. *Enchuiſen*, on the very point of the Gulf of *Zuider-See*, oppoſite to *Frieſeland*, from which not diſtant two Leagues. A Town of great conſequence to the Prince of *Orange* in the firſt revolting of theſe Countries from the King of *Spain*. For ſiding with him in that War, and ſtanding conveniently to obſtruct the Paſſages by Sea unto *Amſterdam*, it compelled that City in ſhort time, by ſtopping all ſupplies of Victuals and other Neceſſaries, to yield it ſelf unto the Prince. 6. *Horn*, on the ſame Gulf alſo, a rich Town, with a very good Haven, and of ſo great ſtrength by reaſon of the multitude of Dikes and Chanels which are round about it, that it ſeems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the ſame Gulf (of *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of Ships which are built yearly in it, and an incredible number of the beſt *Holland* Cheeſes made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick*, on the Ocean, ſeated in the beſt Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel; unwalled, but enjoying all the Privileges which a walled Town hath, and fortified with a right ſtrong Caſtle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague*, or *Graven Hague*, in *Latin Haga Comitis*, becauſe formerly the Court and reſidence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace, founded by Earl *William*, King of the *Romans*, and therein a choice and excellent Library gathered together by *John Haire*, a Canon Regular of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the Fifth. In former times the Reſidence of the Council for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commiſſioners or Delegates of the Confederate Provinces called by the name of the *States General*. It is now much increaſed in Buildings of what it was; and yet ſo great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 Houſholds. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as deſiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the ſecond City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Waſſenaer*, which anciently gave names to three Noble Families; of which none ſo Illuſtrious and Renowned as that of *Egmond*, deſcended lineally from *Radbold*, Son of *Adgillis* the King of the *Friſons*, the firſt Lord of *Egmond*, who died *anno* 791. Advanced by Marriages to the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Seigniouries of *Yſſelſtein* and *Bueren*. And finally they were made Earls of *Egmond* by *Maximilian* the Emperor, *anno* 1592. Both this Houſe and that of *Waſſenaer* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Brederode* for ought I can learn. Near to the laſt ſtood the famous Fortreſs called *Arx Brittannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battel upon this Shore. For making ſhew of a Voyage into *Britain*, to ſubdue that Iſland, he borded his Galley, embattail his Soldiers, cauſed the Trumpets to ſound, gave them the Signal, and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortreſs was at the Fall of the *Roman* Empire overwhelmed by the Sea; the Ruins whereof at a dead low Water are ſtill to be ſeen.

Beſides theſe places on the firm Land or Continent, there are ſome Iſlands which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the general name of *Voorn*, becauſe ſituate directly againſt *Holland*: *Voorn*, ſignifying as much as *before*, or in old *Engliſh*, *bevorne*; but known by their diſtinct and more proper names of *Somerſdike*. 2. *Gaurede*, 3. *Pierſchille*, ſo called of their principal Towns, and, 4. *Voorn* ſpecially ſo named, the chief of them all, being of a Fat and Fruitful Soil, and plentiful of moſt ſorts of Grain. The principal Towns whereof are, 1. *Briel*, (which we call the *Brill*) a ſtrong Town, and the firſt that revolted againſt the *Spaniard*, *anno* 1572. Cautionary to the *Engliſh* with the Town of *Fluſhing*; choſen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the Paſſage to *Gertruydenberg* and the reſt of *Brabant*, as alſo to *Delf*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greateſt Towns of Trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Gervliet*, a ſmall Town, but having a Juriſdiction over many Villages. There are alſo on the North ſide of *Holland* the Iſles of *Wieregen* and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the laſt is furniſhed with a ſafe and capacious Bay for receipt of Shipping.

One ſpecial accident concerning *Holland* I cannot over-paſs in ſilence, namely, how *Margaret* Counteſs of *Hennenberg*, and Siſter to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 Years, was delivered at one birth of 365 Children, the one half Males, the other Females, the odd one an Hermaphrodite; all chriſtened at the Church of *Looſduynen*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Baſins ſtill to be ſeen in the ſaid Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utretcht*; all which immediately after died; and with them the Mother.

The Arms of *Holland* of it ſelf, as a State diſtinct, are *Or*, a Lion *Gules*.

ZELAND conſiſteth of ſeven Iſlands, the remainder of 18, the reſt whereof the Sea hath ſwallowed, and in them 300 inhabited Towns. It is ſevered from *Flanders* with the left Branch or Arm of the *Scheld*, which they call *Honte*, and on the Eaſt from *Brabant* with the right Branch of the ſaid River, which ſtill keeps his name; on the North from *Holland* with the Gulf called the *Vlack*, and on the Weſt with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of *England*. So called as ſome ſay, *quaſi Sea* and *Land*; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Iſland of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The Country is generally more Fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of Coriander, and abundance of Madder uſed in Dying; the Soil alſo is very rich in Paſture, but low and marſhy: which makes the Air to very unhealthy: and the whole deſtitute both of Freſh Water and Wood; the want of which laſt is ſupplied with Coal out of *England* and *Scotland*, or by Turf digged among themſelves but very ſparingly, for fear of weakning the Sea Banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns, and 100 Villages. The Iſlands which remain are commonly divided into the Weſtern and Eaſtern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Weſtern Iſlands are four in number: That is to ſay,

1. *WALCHEREN*, (*Valachria* in *Latin*) lying to the North of *Scluys* in *Flanders*, the richeſt and moſt populous of all this Province, in compaſs 10 *Dutch*, or 40 *Italian* Miles. The principal Towns of which are, 1. *Middleburg*, ſeated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the Streets ſpacious, the Houſes and Churches well built, inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and induſtrious Tradeſmen, and of late time, (ſince the removing of the *Engliſh* Trade from *Antwerp*) a moſt flouriſhing Empory: So called becauſe built in the midſt of the Iſland; or becauſe built (as ſaith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Fluſhing*, of great note for its good Port and invincible ſtrength. One of the firſt Towns which the *Low-Country* Men took from the *Spaniards* by the diligence of *Voorſt* a Seaman, and Monſieur *de Berland*, then the Bayliff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *Engliſh* as a Town of Caution; the firſt Governor of it being the Renowned Sir *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without whoſe Licence no Ship can paſs either to or from the City of *Antwerp*; inſomuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his Government had beſtowed that pains in the fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns, as he did in the ſtrengthening *Antwerp* and ſome Midland Cities, he had in all probability hindred the remedileſs Revolt of theſe flouriſhing Countries. Not far off ſtandeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once Cautionary to the *Engliſh* alſo, together with the *Briel*, the chief Town in the Iſle of *Voorn*, (an Iſle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniards*, *anno* 1572. made Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth*, *anno* 1585. and finally ſurrendred by King *James* as the States United, *anno* 1616. *Robert* Lord *Liſle* (afterwards created Earl of *Leiceſter*) the Brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governor of *Fluſhing*. 3. *Ramne*, or *Armuyden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodlieſt

and moſt frequented Havens in all the World; out of which one may ſometimes ſee 500 ſail of Ships of great burthen ſet forwards on their Voyages to ſeveral Parts. 4. *Vere*, or *Camfere*, ſeated in the North part of the Iſland, which once gave Title to a Marquis, and from the which the Noble Family of the *Veres* (now and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that ſo many of that Family have ventured their Eſtates and Lives in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence they were tranſplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, ſituate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greateſt of the Iſles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 *Dutch* Miles in compaſs, but now much diminiſhed by the Rage and Fury of the Sea, by which the Town and Seignoury of *Bourſele*, with all the Countries round about it, was ſwallowed up, *anno* 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleaſant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beaſts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here are, 1. *Romerſwale*, ſeated on the Eaſt toward *Bergen op Zoome*, ſevered at the ſame time from the reſt of the Iſland, and made an Iſland of it ſelf, defended with continual charge from following the ſad Fate of the Town of *Borſule*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coaſt, a ſtrong Town, well privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Iſland.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Iſle of *Schowen*, in former Times eſteemed the Paradiſe of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort Cheen*, but ſo deſtroyed by the Sea-breach, ſpoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying betwixt the two *Beverlands*, the ſmalleſt of the Weſtern Iſlands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but repleniſhed with good ſtore of Paſture.

And theſe are all which fall in the diviſion of the Weſtern Iſlands, ſo called becauſe they lay Weſtward of the River *Scheld*; as thoſe which they call the Eaſtern Iſlands, on the Eaſt thereof. Of which laſt there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the South-Weſt of *Holland*; ſo near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one ſhore to the other: but now the Sea hath ſet them at a greater diſtance. It containeth in compaſs ſix *Dutch* miles. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Zireckzee*, the ancienteſt Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet ſtill reputed for the ſecond Town of all the Province: the whole Trade thereof conſiſting in Salt and Madder; of which it yields good plenty. Moſt famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philoſopher and Phyſician. 2. *Brouwers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fiſhermen, not elſe remarkable.

2. *DOVELAND*, ſo named from the multitude of Doves or Pigeons; ſituate between *Schowen* and *Tolen*, in compaſs about 4 *Dutch* Miles. It hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages and Gentlemens Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, *anno* 1530, but by the induſtry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy*, and the Lord of *Boſateres* in *Flanders* recover'd again, and at the exceſſive charge of the People hitherto preſerved.

3. *TOLEN*, ſo called from the chief Town of the Iſland, where the Earls Toll was wont to be paid, whence it had the name, is ſituate over againſt the North-Weſt of *Brabant*, from thence disjoined by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the ſecond Town of Note being called S. *Martin's Dike*; walled, but not otherwiſe conſiderable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland* are the Arms thereof, being *Or*, a Lion *Gules* riſing out of a Sea Wave *Argent* and *Azure*.

WEST-FRIESLAND, hath on the East *Groening-land* and a part of *Weſtphalen* in *High Germany*, on the South *Over-Yſſel* and the *Zuider-See*, on the North and Weſt the main Ocean. The Country is generally Mooriſh and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yielding great ſtore of Paſturage: which Mooriſhneſs of the Ground makes the Air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any Fewel wherewith to rectifie it, (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Wolden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which adds but little to the ſweetneſs of an unſound Air. Nor are they better ſtored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leewars*, the want of which is ſupplied by great Channels in moſt places, which do not only drain the Marſhes, but ſupply them with Water: Which notwithſtanding, their Paſtures do afford them a good breed of Horſes fit for ſervice; plenty of Beeves both great and ſweet, the beſt in *Europe*, next theſe of *England*; and thoſe in ſuch a large increaſe, that their Kine commonly brings two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country is divided into three Parts. In the firſt part, called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principal Towns are, 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Hindelopen*, on the ſame Coaſt alſo. 3. *Staveren*, an Hanſe-Town, oppoſite to *Enchuiſen* in *Holland*, the Town decayed, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which ſecures the Haven. 4. *Franeker*, a new Univerſity, or a *Schola Illuſtris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck*, in a low and inconvenient ſituation; but both for largeneſs and beauty the beſt in this part of the Province, and the ſecond in eſteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGOE*, of the Eaſt part, lying towards *Groening-land*, the Towns of moſt note are, 6. *Leewarden*, ſituate on the hinder *Leewars*, the prime Town of *Weſt-Frieſland*, and honoured with the Supreme Court and Chancery hereof, from which there lieth no Appeal: a rich Town, well built, and ſtrongly fortified. Made a Biſhop's See in 1559. 7. *Dockum*, bordering upon *Groening*, the birth place of *Gemma Friſius*, in *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of Seven Foreſts, ſo called from ſo many ſmall Foreſts joining near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Wood-land Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs 345.

To this Province belongeth the Iſle of *Schellink*, the ſhores whereof are plentifully ſtor'd with Dog-fiſh, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The Men of the Iſland attire themſelves with Beaſts Skins, and then fall to dancing; with which ſport the Fiſh being much delighted, make out of the Waters towards them; Nets being pitched preſently between them and the Water. Which done, the Men put off their Diſguiſes, and the frighted Fiſh, haſtning toward the Sea, are caught in the Toils.

Touching the *Friſons*, heretofore poſſeſſed of this Country, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Eaſt-Frieſland*, poſſeſſed alſo by them, and ſtill continuing in the quality of a Free Eſtate, governed by its own Laws and Princes: Here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Frieſland* are *Azure*, ſemy of Billets *Argent*, two Lions *Or*.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces were the *Batavi* and *Caninoſates*, inhabiting the Iſland of the *Rhene*, ſituate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utretch*, and ſome part of *Geldres*; the *Friſii*, dwelling in *Weſt-Frieſland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Iſles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the Bald theſe Countries, being almoſt unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, Son of *Sigebert*, a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the Title of Earl; his Succeſſors acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4th Earl, who turned Homager to the Empire. In *John* II. they became united to the Houſe of *Hainault*, and in *William* III. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Eſtates of the Dukes of *Burgundy* in the

Perſon of Duke *Philip* the Good; as appeareth by the Succeſſion of

The Earls of *HOLLAND, ZELAND*, and Lords of *WEST-FRIESLAND*.

863 1. *Thierrie*, or *Theodorick* of *Aquitain*, the firſt Earl, *&c.*
903 2. *Thierrie* II. Son of *Thierrie* I.
3. *Thierrie* III. Son of *Theodorick* II.
988 4. *Arnulph*, who firſt made this Eſtate to be held of the Empire; ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*. From *Sigefride* the ſecond Son of this *Arnulph* came the Lords of *Brederode*, advanced by Marriages to the Seigniouries of *Genap* and *Vianen*, and many other fair Eſtates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.
993 5. *Thierrie* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
1039 6. *Thierrie* V. Son of *Theodorick* IV.
1048 7. *Florence*, Brother of *Thierrie* V.
1062 8. *Thierrie* VI. Son of *Florence*, in whoſe Minority the Eſtate of *Holland* was uſurped by *Godfrey le Boſſu*, Duke of *Lorrain*, by ſome accompted as an Earl hereof.
1092 9. *Florence* II. ſirnamed the Fat, Son of *Thierrie* VI.
1123 10. *Thierrie* VII. who tamed the ſtomachs of the *Friſons*.
1163 11. *Florence* III. a Companion of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1190 12. *Thierrie* VIII. Son to *Florence* III.
1203 13. *William* the Brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, which Country he had before ſubdued, ſupplanted his Niece *Ida*, his Brother's Daughter, but after her deceaſe, dying without Iſſue, ſucceeded in his own Right unto the Eſtate.
1223 14. *Florence* IV. Son of *William*.
1235 15. *William* II. Son of *Florence* IV. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.
1255 16. *Florence* V. the firſt, as ſome write, who called himſelf Earl of *Zeland*: the Title to thoſe Iſlands, formerly queſtioned by the *Flemings*, being relinquiſhed to him on his Marriage with *Beatrix*, the Daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*.
1296 17. *John*, the Son of *Florence* V. ſubdued the rebellious *Friſons*; the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Thierrie* of *Aquitain*.

Earls of *HAINAULT, HOLLAND*, &c.

1300 18. *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, Siſter of *William* II. and Daughter of *Florence* IV. ſucceeded as next Heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.
1305 19. *William* III. ſirnamed the Good, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, Wife of our *Edward* III.
1337 20. *William* IV. of *Holland*, and II. of *Hainault*, ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.
1346 21. *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *William* IV. and eldeſt Daughter of *William* III. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperor of the *Germans*, forced to relinquiſh *Holland* unto *William* her ſecond Son, and to content her ſelf with *Hainault*.
1351 22. *William* V. ſecond Son of *Lewis* and *Margaret* (his elder Brother *Stephen* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Coheir of *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Leiceſter*.
1377 23. *Albert*, the younger Brother of *William* V. fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Friſons*; Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c.
1404 24. *William* VI. Earl of *Oſternand*, and by that name admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Edward* II. eldeſt Son of *Albert*.
1417 25. *Jaquiline*, only Daughter of Earl *William* VI. firſt married to *John* IV. Duke of *Brabant*, the Son of *Anthony* of *Bourgogne*, from whom divorced under colour of Conſanguinity, ſhe was married after to *Humfrey* Duke of *Glouceſter*, and then to *Frank* of *Borſelles*, a private Gentleman: being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundy*, ſhe ſurrendred her Eſtates to Duke *Philip* the Good.
26. *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of Earl *William* VI. and Daughter of *Albert*, Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. ſucceeded on the Reſignation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Couſin-german, tranſporting theſe Eſtates to the Houſe of *Burgundy*. His Succeſſors we ſhall meet with ſhortly in another place.

15. *UTRECHT*. 16. *OVER-YSSEL*.

THE Biſhoprick of *Utrecht*, I mean the temporal Juriſdiction and Eſtate thereof, contain'd once all that Tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, and *Groening*. But *Groening* was long ſince diſmembred. *Utrecht* and *Over-Yſſel* remaining parts thereof till the Year 1528, then added to the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces by *Charles* V.

UTRECHT hath on the Eaſt *Gelderland*, on the Weſt, North and South, environ'd with *Holland*. The Country is very Fruitful, much drier than *Holland*, and ſo fitter for all ſorts of Grain. It containeth 70 Villages, and 5 walled Towns: that is to ſay, 1. *Wyckat Duerſtede*, ſituate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, where it diverteth into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified anciently with a good Caſtle; ſuppoſed to be the *Batavodurum* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, the Manſion at that time of the ſecond Legion. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the ſame branch of Channel, whence it hath the name: about which is digged abundance of Turf for Fewel. 3. *Amersfort*, on the River *Ems*, (called in *Latin Amiſus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Montfort* upon the *Yſſel*, pleaſantly ſeated, and of great ſtrength, as being anciently a Frontier Town againſt the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, ſituate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*: firſt called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*: but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Ultrajectum*, we now call *Utrecht*) becauſe there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town is large, beautiful, and very ſumptuouſly built, having in it many goodly Churches of which five were anciently Collegiate; beſides two famous Monaſteries of noble Women, ſuch as thoſe ſpoken of elſewhere: the private Houſes well contrived, moſt of them having goodly Cellars, vaulted with wonderful Art and Skill, to which the People may reſort in all times of danger. Sometime the Seat-Royal of *Radbold*, King of the *Friſons*, then of the Biſhops; honoured of old with a Juridical reſort for the parts adjoining, and now the principal of this Province. A City ſo miraculouſly ſeated amongſt walled Towns, that a Man may go from hence in one day to any one of 50 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally diſtant; or to any one of 26 Towns to Dinner; and come home to Bed. *Dagobert*, King of *France*, built this preſent Iſle in the year of Chriſt 642; *Willibrode* became the firſt Biſhop of it in the year 696. In the year 1527 it ſubmitted to *Charles* the V. In 1559 it was made an Archbiſhop's See. In 1577 it revolted from the *Spaniards*. In 1636 it was made an Univerſity. In 1676 it fell into the hands of the *French* for a ſhort time, who uſed it very ill two years, and then it recovered its preſent Liberty.

OVER-YSSEL, in *Latin Tranſiſalana*, ſo named from its ſituation beyond the *Yſſel*, is bounded on the

Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, on the Weſt with *Zuider-See*, on the North with *Weſt-Frieſland*, on the South with *Gelderland*. The Country is very plain and without Hills, but wet and mooriſh affording excellent good Paſturage, and not defective in Corn. It is divided into three parts, that is to ſay, *Twent*, confining upon *Weſtphalen*; *Yſſel-land*, on the River *Yſſel*; and *Drent*, beyond the River *Vecht*; in all which are contained 11 Towns, and 100 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yſſel*, ſtrong and well fortified, and withal beautiful and well peopled; an Hanſe-Town, and the chief of all this Province; firſt taken from the States by the Earl of *Leiceſter*, then Governour of thoſe Countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno.* 1586, treacherouſly re-yielded to the *Spaniards* by Sir *William Stanley*, but in the year 1590 again recovered by the States, taken by the *French* in 1672, and deſerted in 1674. 2. *Swol*, ſtanding on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double Ditch, and very ſtrong Ramparts, an Hanſe-Town; as is alſo 3. *Campen*, ſituate on the left Shore and fall of the *Yſſel* into the *Zuider-See*, a fair and large Town, and of very great ſtrength by reaſon of thoſe inacceſſible Marſhes among which it is ſituate. Theſe three are in that part thereof which is called *Yſſel-land*, and by ſome *Saland*, by whom (erroneouſly) it is ſuppoſed to be the Country of the ancient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Twent*, we have the Towns of 4. *Oldenzeel*, 5. *Enſchede*, 6. *Delde*, 7. *Almeloo*: of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Caſtle of *Vallenhoven*, ſtanding upon the *Zuider-See*, well ſerved with all ſorts of Victuals, and for that cauſe made the ordinary Reſidence of the Governour, and ſupream Council for the whole Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe two Provinces were ſome parts of the *Batavi* and *Friſii minores*, for that of *Vtrecht*; the *Bructeri* and (as ſome ſay) the *Salii* in *Over-Yſſel*. Both Provinces belonging anciently to the Epiſcopal See of *Vtrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories; the firſt Biſhop being *Willibald*, an *Engliſh*-man; who converted theſe parts to Chriſtianity. His Succeſſors grew to ſo great power, that they were able to bring 40000 men into the Field, and with great courage did maintain their Eſtate and Patrimony againſt the encroaching Earls of *Holland*: but at the laſt having continued for the ſpace of 900 years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Biſhop hereof, being extreamly diſtreſſed with War by the Duke of *Geldres*, and driven out of the City of *Vtrecht* by his own Subjects, (perhaps upon ſome humour of Reformation) alienated all the Temporalities of his Biſhoprick to *Charles* the 5th, *An.* 1527. and the next year the Imperialiſts by one of the Factions were let into *Vtrecht*; at what time both the Eſtates of the Country, and Pope *Clement* the 7. confirmed the Alienation made by the Biſhop. After which ſolemn Acts of theirs the Emperour cauſed himſelf to be inveſted in this Eſtate by the States of the Empire, (for *Vtrecht* was of old an Imperial Fief,) and, for the better Government and Adminiſtration of it, divided it into two Provinces as it ſtill continueth. But what this Biſhop loſt in Power his Succeſſors not long after gained in Title; the Biſhop of *Vtrecht* being made an Archbiſhop or Metropolitan, *Anno.* 1561. But by Reaſon of the change of Religion which was then working, and the falling off of theſe Countries, which ſoon after followed, he had but little joy in his new Preferment.

17. *GELDERLAND.* 18. *ZUTPHEN*, and 19. *GROENING.*

THE Dukedom of *Gelderland*, at ſuch time as it was firſt taken in by *Charles* the fifth, contained under it the Dutchie of *Geldres*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Town and Seignioury of *Groening*; held by diſtinct Titles, and governed ever ſince their union with the *Belgick* Provinces as diſtinct Eſtates.

GELDERLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cleveland* and the Earldom of *Zutphen*, on the Weſt with *Holland* and *Vtrecht*, on the North with *Over-Yſſel* and the *Zuider-See*; and on the South with *Brabant* and the Land of *Gulick*. The Country is flat, having few hills in it, but many pleaſant and commodious Woods, eſpecially that called *Echterwaldt*, of Corn and Cattle very fruitful.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts, 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-See*, the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Yſſel*; the barenner of the two, and the worſe inhabited; the people hereof preferring Health before Wealth, as in other places; but affording a more pure Air, and a pleaſanter dwelling than the other; the Woods and Foreſts well repleniſhed with moſt kind of Game. The *Betuwe* (ſo called of the *Batavi*, who poſſeſſed theſe parts) intercepted betwixt the ſaid middle Channel of the *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceeding fruitful in Corn, and of ſo excellent a Paſturage for the feeding of Cattle, that in the Year 1570. there was a *Gelderland* Bull ſold in *Antwerp* which weighed 3200 pounds.

In both diviſions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled Towns, beſides ſome fortified of late ſince the Wars began. The chief whereof are, 1. *Nimmegen*, (in *Latine Noviomagus*) an Imperial City, ordained by *Charles* the Great, to be one of the three Sieges of the Empire for theſe outer parts: the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxemburg*, and *Aix* or *Aken* iu the land of *Gulick*. And, as a Town Imperial, it had anciently the Priviledge of Coyning money: for which and other Freedoms or immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other ſervice to the Emperours than once a year to ſend a man to *Aix* or *Aquiſgrane* with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being ſold to the *Gelderois* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans* for 21000 Marks of Silver, *Anno.* 1248, the power of Coinage fell to thoſe Princes; and yet the Town was brought to do better Service than formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town is high mounted on the top of an Hill, the *Wael*, which is there large and deep running at the foot of it, rich, great, and populous, having beſides the modern Fortifications an ancient Caſtle, with ſo goodly a proſpect, that from thence one may behold the beſt part of the Country; built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar* to command thoſe parts. This City in the year 1672. Having made a vigorous Defence againſt the *French*, was at laſt forced to yield the year after it was Deſerted and became the Seat of the Treaty for Peace, here concluded in the year 1678. between the Emperor and the Kings of *France* and *Spain*, and the States of *Holland*. *Charles* the 2d. of *England*, by his Faithful Miniſter Sir *Leoline Jenkens*, being the Arbitrator of all theſe Princes. Under the Juriſdiction of it are, 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both ſituated on the *Wael*, both ſtrong, and having many rich Villages under their command; and 4. *Ghent*, on the *Wael* alſo, an unwalled Town, but having all the Priviledges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the firſt meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, ſtands the ſtrong Fort of S. *Andrews*, raiſed by the Archduke *Albert* to command the paſſage of thoſe Rivers; but in the year 1600 taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Naſſau*, (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever ſince garriſoned by the States to ſecure that paſſage. 5. *Ruermond*, ſeated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautiful and well-peopled City, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and ſeated in a fruitful Country, heretofore of the Dioceſs of *Liege*, (as *Nimmegen* anciently of *Colen*) but made a See Epiſcopal by King *Philip* the Second, *Anno.* 1559. This is the ſecond capital City of *Gelderland*, and hath under the Juriſdiction of it. 6. *Venlo*, a ſtrong Town on the *Maes*, in which the Duke of *Cleve* yielded himſelf to

Charles the fifth, *An.* 1543. 7. *Geldres*, heretofore of ſuch reputation, that it gave name to all the County; and well it doth deſerve to do ſo ſtill, being the only Town in all this Dukedom which neither firſt nor laſt hath been won by the *Hollanders*, but ſtill preſerved themſelves in their Obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well fortified piece; but which, according to the chances of War, hath often changed its Maſters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in thoſe times the Manſion of the tenth Legion, ſituate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Channel, which *Druſus*, to keep his Soldiers from idleneſs, cauſed them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into thoſe of the *Yſſel*; called therefore by the Ancients *Foſſa Druſiana*, by the Modern *Yſſel Dort*. The Town is large and well built: the ordinary Reſidence heretofore of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other ſupream Courts of *Juſtice*. In the Year 1672, it was taken by the *French*, but in 1674, was diſmantell'd and forſaken by them. This is the Third Capital City of *Gelderland*, anciently of the Dioceſs of *Utrecht*) and hath under the Juriſdiction of it, beſides divers Villages, 10. *Wageninghen* on the *Rhene*, the ſame which *Tacitus* calls *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground *Anno.* 1503, but ſince re-edified, and now more ſtrong and beautiful than ever formerly. 12. *Hatem*, upon the *Yſſel*, a good Town of War, but not elſe obſervable.

Within the Limits of this Dukedom ſtands the Town and County of *Culemberg*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the 2. by reaſon of the fair Territory which belonged unto it; formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, but otherwiſe not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Bueren*, ſituate on the River *Linge*, having a ſtrong Caſtle anciently, and a goodly Territory, holden immediately of the Empire, as a Fief Imperial. It was firſt made an Earldom in the Perſon of *Frederick* Lord of *Egmond*, Brother's Son to *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the ſixth Duke of *Geldres*, created Earl of *Bueren* by *Maximilian*, the firſt, *An.* 1492. which *Frederick* was Grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond* Earl of *Bueren*, who died *Anno.* 1549. after whoſe death it fell at laſt to *Philip* of *Naſſau*, eldeſt Son of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Ann* the Daughter and Heir of the ſaid *Maximilian* upon the death of the ſaid *Ann*, Anno. 1551.

ZUTPHEN, accompted formerly for the fourth capital City of *Gelderland*, now a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, on the Weſt with that part of *Gelderland* which is called *Veluewe*, on the North with *Over-Iſſel*, on the South with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8 walled Towns, beſides many Villages; that is to ſay, 1. *Dotecum*, ſtanding on the old *Yſſel*, riſing out of *Weſtphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yſſel* falleth into the new *Yſſel*, or the Trench called *Foſſa Druſiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Bronchorſt*, a County of it ſelf, which anciently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochem*, upon the River *Berckel*. 5. *Tſheerenburg*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll*, taken by the Prince of *Orange*, for the *States* Confederate *Anno.* 1627. 7. *Bredervord*, a Town of War, and ſubject to the change of Maſters, as ſuch places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidfen*, ſo called of the Southern ſituation of it amongſt the Fens, on the right ſhore of the *Yſſel*, where it receiveth into it the River *Berokel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick Edifices; a diſtinct State in Civil matters, but in Spiritual ſubject (in former times) to the Biſhop of *Munſter*. A thing obſervable and not to be parallell'd elſewhere; that the four chief Towns and Quarters of one Province only ſhould appertain (as here in *Gelderland*) to four ſeveral Dioceſes. Of which there may ſome reaſon be aſſigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more ancient than that of *Gelderland* it ſelf, and not depending anciently on the fortunes of it; united to it by the Marriage of *Otho* of *Naſſau*, the firſt Earl of *Gelderland*, with *Sophia*, Daughter and Heir of *Wickman* the laſt Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldom ended, when that firſt began. After this it continued Subject to the Earls and Dukes of *Geldres*, till the revolt of *Holland* and the other Provinces from the King of *Spain*; at what time it was beſieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leiceſter*: at the Siege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *Britiſh* Epigrammatiſt thus verſifieth.

Digna legi ſcribis, facis & digniſſima ſcribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tua, facta probum.

Thou writ'ſt things worthy reading, and didſt do
things worthy writing too:
Thy Acts thy Valour ſhow,
And by thy works we do thy Learning know.

And though upon the loſs of that gallant man (Nephew and Heir unto that Earl) the Siege was raiſed at the preſent; yet was it re-inforced again, *An.* 1590, and the Town then taken, continuing ever ſince in the Confederacy of the *States* United. Having been in vain Attack'd by the Biſhop of *Munſter*, in the Year 1672.

GROENING-LAND hath on the Eaſt *Eaſt-Frieſland*, on the Weſt *Weſt-Frieſland*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South *Over-Yſſel*; ſo wedged in as it were betwixt both *Frieſlands*, that ſome hold it to be but a part of the Weſt. It containeth under it the Country called the *Ommelands*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, becauſe lying along the River *Em*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief thereof are, 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *Eaſt-Frieſland*. 2. *Keykirk*, 3. *Old-Haven* ſtanding on the Sea. 4. As for the Town of *Groening* it ſelf, it is rich, great, and very well built, ſituate amongſt divers ſmall Streams which run through it, and having alſo divers Chanels for conveiance of waters, which adds much to the ſafety and ſtrength thereof. A Town of great Juriſdiction both within and without, judging abſolutely without Appeal in Cauſes both Civil and Criminal; in Spirituals, ſubject heretofore to the Biſhop of *Munſter*, till made one of the new Biſhopricks by King *Philip* the ſecond, *Anno.* 1559. And though the Prince in Civil Cauſes had his Officer or Lieutenant there; yet in Criminal the Town was Soveraign, and granted Pardons as Soveraign of the whole Eſtate, paying to the Prince for all Duties yearly but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonging to the Biſhops of *Utrecht*, for whoſe negligence in defending them they ſubmitted their Eſtate to the Duke of *Gelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying ſome claim to it, diſturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland* poſſeſſed himſelf of it; but not able to make good his unjuſt poſſeſſion ſold his Eſtate therein to the Duke of *Geldres*, An. 1513, to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536, they put themſelves under the command of *Charles* the fifth, but with the reſervation of all their Priviledges and ancient Liberties, for preſervation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the reſt of the United *States*, Anno. 1594, and ſo ſtill continue. In the year 1672, it was taken by the *French*, and continued 2 years in Bondage.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe Countries were the *Menapii* and *Sicambri*, very valiant people, poſſeſſing *Gelderland* and the *majores Friſii*, which were planted in *Groening* and the reſt of *Frieſland*. Of theſe the *Sicambri* were accounted the moſt valiant People, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name poſſeſſing with the reſt of thoſe Nations the mighty Empire of the Weſt. In the diviſion whereof by the poſterity of *Charles* the Great, theſe Countries were firſt part of the Kingdom of *Auſtraſia* or *Eaſt-France*, afterwards of the *German* Empire; governed at the firſt by Guardians or Protectors created by the people in the Reign of *Charles* the *Bald*, the two firſt being *Wickward*, and *Lupold*, (or *Leopold*) two Brethren, who fixing their chief Seat in the Caſtle of *Geldres*, occaſioned the whole

Country to be called *Gelderland*. But they and their Succeſſors, by what Name or Title ſoever called, were in effect but Provincial Officers, accomptable to the Emperors for their Adminiſtration; the firſt free Prince hereof being *Otho* of *Naſſau*, who having to his firſt Wife the Lady *Aleide*, Daughter of *Wickard* the laſt Guardian, was by the Emperor *Henry* the third made firſt Earl of *Gelderland*, adding thereto the State of *Zutphen* by a ſecond Marriage, as is ſaid before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *anno* 1339. Sold by Duke *Arnold* (juſtly incenſed at his ungracious Son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* for 92000 Florens of ready Money, and an annual Penſion, *anno* 1472. But notwithſtanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) poſſeſſed himſelf of it, and left it unto *Charles* his Son, who finally ſurrendred it unto *Charles* the fifth, *anno* 1547.

Earls and Dukes of *GELDERLAND.*

1079 1. *Otho* of *Naſſau* the firſt Earl.

2. *Gerard* the Son of *Otho* by his firſt Wife *Aleide*.

1131 3. *Henry* the Son of *Gerard*.

1162 4. *Gerard* II. Son of *Henry*.

1180 5. *Otho* II. Brother of *Gerard*.

1202 6. *Gerard* III. Son of *Otho* II.

1229 7. *Otho* III. Son of *Geraro*, who wall'd the Towns of *Ruermond*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick*.

1271 8. *Rainold*, Son of *Otho* III. taken and impriſon'd till his death by

1326 9. *Rainold* II. his own Son, created the firſt Duke of *Geldres* by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* at *Francfort*, *anno* 1339. liberal to the Poor, and a great Patron of the Muſes.

1343 10. *Rainold* III. Son of *Rainold* II. moleſted with continual Wars with his Brother *Edward*, by whom he was taken and impriſoned till his dying day.

1371 11. *Edward*, the Son of *Rainold* II. by *Eleanor* the Daughter of *Edward* III. of *England*, his ſecond Wife, died the ſame Year with his Brother; the laſt of the male iſſue of *Otho* of *Naſſau*.

1371 12. *Mary* (by ſome call'd *Joan*) Siſter of *Edward*, by the ſame *Venter*, and Wife of *William* Earl of *Gulick*.

13. *William*, Son of *William* Duke of *Gulick* and *Mary* of *Geldres*, admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* II.

14. *Rainold* IV. the Brother of *William*.

15. *Arnold* of *Egmond*, Son of *John* Lord of *Egmond* and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Joan*, the Siſter of *Rainold* and *William*, the two laſt Dukes, ſucceeded in the Eſtate of *Geldres*; the Dukedom of *Gulick* being ſeized on by *Adolph*, Son of *William* the firſt Duke of *Berg*, as the next Heir-male to the two laſt Dukes. Being aftarwards taken, impriſoned, and moſt barbarouſly handled by his own Son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*, he ſold to him his Eſtates of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, to be enjoyed by him after his deceaſe, *anno* 1472.

1473 16. *Adolph*, the wicked Son of *Arnold*, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by the ſaid Agreement, which Duke *Charles* enjoyed for his Life, after the death of the ſaid *Charles* was reſtored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, *anno* 1467. and made the General of their Forces againſt *Lewis* XI.

1477 17. *Charles*, Son of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the Houſes of *Burgundy* and *Auſtria*, pretending the Sale and Legacy of Duke *Arnold* to *Charles* the Warlike, ſurrendred his Eſtates unto *Charles* V. to be enjoyed by him after his deceaſe, if he left no Iſſue. According to which Contract the Emperor *Charles* ſucceeded him in *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, *anno* 1538, being the Year of his Deceaſe; after which time they were accompted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, crowned *Gules* for the Dukedom of *Gelderland*; 2. *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we ſeen a Country which at the firſt erecting of theſe States was nothing in a manner but Bogs and Marſhes, and at the beſt but a continual Wilderneſs of Woods and Foreſts, by the great Providence of the Princes, and extream Induſtry of the People, made the moſt populous, beſt planted, and the wealthieſt Eſtate (for the bigneſs of it) in the whole habitable World. And we have ſeen thoſe ſeveral Eſtates and Principalities, by Marriages and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the Houſe of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illuſtrious Family, inferior to no Kings of Chriſtendom for Power and Riches (eſpecially under Duke *Philip* the Good) the Subjects hereof did ſo abound in Wealth and Plenty, that *Philip de Comines*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country ſeemed like the *Land of Promiſe*. Some thought there was a purpoſe in this Duke *Philip* of erecting theſe States into a Kingdom, from which he was diverted by the difference and variety of Laws and Privileges which thoſe People ſeverally lived under, not to be brought without great difficulty and diſtaſte to one form of Government: yet might he have done it, if he would, as himſelf openly affirmed to the Ambaſſadors of King *Lewis* XI. But *Charles* his Son, being more bent on the deſign, negotiated to that end with the Emperor *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, *anno* 1473. and doubtleſs had obtain'd his purpoſe, upon the Marriage of his Daughter with *Maximilian*, *Frederick's* Son (which was then propounded) had not his raſh Engagement againſt the *Swiſſers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the courſe of theſe Projects: which Projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had, but for that Engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both ſides of it, from the *Alps* to the *German* Ocean, and been the moſt conſiderable Prince at that time in Chriſtendom; all *Alſace* in High *Germany* being ſold or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Auſtria*, the Dukedom of *Lorrain* at his mercy; beſides the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way into the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its diſtinct Laws, and living according to ancient Privileges, till the attempt of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, moſt reſolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancel all their Privileges, and new-mould the Eſtate according to his own will and pleaſure; occaſioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country, and the ſetting up of a new Eſtate oppoſite unto him, and deſtructive of his Intereſt in it. But before we come unto this Change, we will firſt look upon the Prince's Power, Revenue, and other things conſiderable touching this Eſtate, whilſt it ſtood entire under the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy* and

Lords of *BELGIUM.*

1369 1. *Philip* the Hardy, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the firſt great raiſer of this Houſe.

1404 2. *John* the Proud, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.

1419 3. *Philip* the Good added to his Eſtates the Dukedom of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the Marquiſate and *Mechlin* by the death of his Couſin *Philip*, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordſhip of *Weſt-Frieſland*, by the reſignation and death of the Counteſs *Jaqueline*, whoſe next Heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for Money.

1467 4. *Charles* the Warlike, who bought the Eſtates of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, and held them peaceably all his Life.

1476 5. *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the XI. of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the greateſt part of the Countries of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, unfortunately killed with a fall from her Horſe, and an unſeaſonable Modeſty in not ſuffering the Chirurgeon to dreſs her wound, the hurt which ſhe had taken being on her thigh.

1482 6. *Philip* III. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* VIII. of *France* reſtored all the places in *Artois* and the County of *Burgundy*, taken by his Father, married *Joan*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, King and Queen of *Spain*.

1506 7. *Charles* II. Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperor of that name the fifth, added to his Eſtate in theſe Countries the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, the Lordſhips of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel* and *Groening*.

1558 8. *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the ſecond of *Spain*, invading theſe Countries againſt their Privileges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, *anno* 1581, which made him, after a long and bloody War, to ſurrender all his Intereſt in them to

1599 9. *Iſabella Clara Eugenia*, his Daughter, and *Albert*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, whom he married to her; during whoſe Government a Truce for 12 Years was made, and in the Preface to that Truce, the Confederate *Eſtates* declared to be treated with as a Free State, to whom the King of *Spain* could pretend no Title.

10. *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the 4th of *Spain*, on the deceaſe of the Archdutcheſs *Iſabella* his Aunt, ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion of ſome, and the Title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

1665 11. *Charles* II. King of *Spain*, ſucceeded *Philip* his Father, being then an Infant of 4 years of Age.

The ordinary Revenue of theſe Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the Breach, were eſtimated at Three Millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in Chriſtendom at thoſe times received, the *French* only excepted; the very meaſuring of Corn in the City of *Antwerp* being Farmed yearly for 10000 Crowns in ready Money: but the extraordinary was far greater; the Eſtates of theſe Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* V. an Aid which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 Crowns a Month; and yet the Provinces of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, *Geldres* and *Groening*, were not rated to it. And it is ſaid, that *Philip* II. at his firſt coming to the Eſtate, was preſented with a Grant of 40 Millions of Florens, to be paid in a few Years. So that theſe Countries were the true Correlative of both his *Indies*; the loſs of which, before the making of the Truce, *anno* 1609, coſt him above 100 Millions of Crowns, and the loſs of 400000 Men.

The Forces of theſe Princes by Land may beſt be ſeen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolois*) againſt *Lewis* XI. whom Duke *Philip* the Good, his Father, furniſhed to that Enterpriſe with 9000 Archers, and 1400 Men at Arms, every one of which had five or ſix great Horſes attending on him; and at his ſetting forward he was told by his Father, (never accompted for a Braggart) that if he fell into any danger, he ſhould not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting Men. The ſaid Duke having thus ſent away his Son, and being provoked by the Indignities of thoſe of *Liege* and *Dinant*, who revolted from him, ſuddenly raiſed an Army of 28000 Horſe, and a proportionable number of Foot, for the chaſtiſement of that proud and rebellious People. And *Charles* himſelf, ſucceeding on the death of his Father, in his unproſperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no leſs than 80000 Men at the Battle of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any ſtanding Navy, nor needed they ſo to do, as the caſe ſtood with them; conſidering that when they had occaſion of any ſuch ſervice, they uſed to take up all the Ships which they found in their Harbours, (of which there never wanted good ſtore) employing as many as they pleaſed, and diſmiſſing the reſt.

The principal Order of Knighthood ordained by theſe Princes was that of the *Golden Fleece*, firſt inſtituted by Duke *Philip* the Good (in imitation of the Order of St. *George* in *England*,) *Anno* 1430. The Name and Fancy was borrow'd, as ſome conceive, from *Gideon*'s Fleece; from *Jaſon*'s Fleece, as others think; but more probably from the Golden Fleeces of *England*, which brought him in ſo much Gold and Treaſure in the way of Cuſtom. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with Irons, ſeeming to ſtrike fire out of a Flint, (*Ex ferro flammam* being the word;) at the end whereof hung the *Toiſon d'Or*, or Fleece of Gold. Their number at the firſt was but 25, (which is the number of Knights of the *Engliſh* Garter) increaſed afterwards by the ſame Duke *Philip* unto 31. *Charles* the firſt raiſed them to 51; and now the King of *Spain* hath aſſumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaſeth: This being the only Military or Civil Order of which thoſe Kings have the beſtowing; the Orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the reſt of *Spaniſh* Inſtitutions, being rather Religious and Monaſtical, at the beſt but mixt. St. *Andrew*'s Day is the day of Inſtallation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did theſe Princes live as long as they continued in good Terms with the ſubject Provinces, being Maſters of more goodly Jewels, magnificent Furniture for their Houſes, and coſtly Moveables, than any three of the greateſt Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other ſide, the Subjects, whilſt they lived in Duty under ſo great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly Happineſs; in their Apparel exceſſively gorgeous, in their Feaſts and Banquets over-ſumptuous, in their Manners diſſolute; Vices which uſually accompany that kind of Felicity. An Happineſs too great to continue long. By the Ambition and Violence of *Charles* the Warlike they were firſt plunged into a War againſt *Lewis* the Eleventh, of which they did not only feel the preſent Miſeries, but loſt all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better-grounded, Ambition of *Charles* the Fifth, they were exerciſed in continual Wars againſt the *French*, who miſerably haraſſed and ranſacked the Countries of *Luxemburg*, *Hainault* and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the ſpecial care of *Philip* his Son, adviſing him to uſe them kindly, as thoſe that were the chief Supporters of his State and Glory; adding, that if he ſhould deal otherwiſe with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other ſide, the People to obtain his Favour, preſented him at his firſt entrance on the Government with a Grant of Forty Millions of *Florens*, as before was ſaid. But he, tranſported with Ambition and a Catholick Zeal, not only forgot their Love, but his Father's Counſel; and had no ſooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *anno* 1559, but preſently he caſt his Thoughts on the Subjection of this People to his will and pleaſure. For they were ſo fortified with Priviledges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had ſworn to obſerve, that he wanted much of that abſolute and uncontrollable command which he ſtrongly aimed at. Some of which Priviledges were, 1. That the Prince could place no ſtranger amongſt them with Juriſdiction over their Eſtates and Perſons, in Offices of War or Juſtice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the Clergy; nor 3. Leavy any ſubſidies without the States of the Country. 4. But the main Prerogative was that of the *Brabanters*, (*viz.*) That if the Prince by violence or wrong did infringe any of the ſaid Charters and *Franchiſes*, the people, after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that ſuch baſe and unworthy people (for ſo they eſteemed them) ſhould in ſuch liberty poſſeſs ſo brave and rich a Country, their King bearing no title of Majeſty or abſolute command over them. Beſides the Reformation of Religion, which then began to grow to ſome ſtrength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome* by the power and terrour of the *Inquiſition*; and by the erecting of ſome new Epiſcopal See amongſt them, (for before there were but three in all) to ſettle ſome more conſtant courſe of Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline. Againſt both which, when the people violently oppoſed, he then reſolved of bringing them by *Spaniſh* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Canon) to their old obedience. To theſe ends he ſends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain, (as having 60 years been a Souldier) with a puiſſant Army, to be his Vice-Roy amongſt them. He alſo gave him a Commiſſion of that large extent, that he might place and diſplace whom he would, and execute all ſuch as he could find oppoſite to his deſigns. At that time the two chief men amongſt them were the Prince of *Orange*, and Count *Egmont*; the firſt more potent with the *People*, the latter with the *Souldiers*. Had theſe two joyned together, they might eaſily have prevented D. *Alva*'s entrance; but *Egmont* was ſo ſoothed up with the Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had concerning the Duke's Commiſſion. The Earl exhorted the Prince to ſubmit himſelf to the pleaſure of the King, and ſo to prevent the ruine of his Houſe. The Prince deſired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country, as for himſelf, *He had rather be a Prince without a Houſe, than a Count without an Head.* Being thus reſolved, the Prince retires to his County of *Naſſau* in High *Germany*; the Earl ſtayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no ſooner ſetled himſelf, but he entrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmont*, and beheaded them, *An.* 1567. Being thus rid of theſe two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindred his proceedings, he quarter'd his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces, ſpoiled the people not of their Priviledges only, but their Liberty. Amongſt the Reformed he brought in the bloody *Inquiſition*; and indeed ſo tyranically did he behave himſelf, that the people were forced to a Defenſive War, as well for their Lives as Subſtance. This was a War of State, not Religion, the moſt part of the *Hollanders* being Papiſts at the time of their taking Arms. During theſe Troubles the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but he in one place, and Count *Lodowick* his Brother in another, kept Duke *Alva* imployed, though divers times not with ſuch fortunate ſucceſs as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Fluſhing* was ſurpriſed by *Voorſt* and *Berland*, as we have before ſaid: ſo alſo was the *Briel* in *Voorn*, an Iſland of *Holland*, by the Count *de la March*. And not long after all *Holland*, except *Amſterdam*, followed the fortune and ſide of the Prince: together with all the Towns of *Zeland*, *Middleberg* excepted. *Anno.* 1573. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requiſens* was appointed Governour; during whoſe rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country, ſome flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, moſt into *England*. After his death, and before the arrival of *Don John*, the Prince and his Party recovered ſtrength and courage again till the coming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into a worſe caſe than ever. Yet, *Anno.* 1581. they declare, by their Writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain*, was fallen from the Government; and take a new Oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spaniſh* Obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, Heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no ſmall hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to ſettle a Tyranny in himſelf, than to derive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the Town, but was by the valour of the *Burgers* ſhamefully repulſed: ſhame of this ignoble enterpriſe, eſpecially grief for its ill ſucceſs, took him out of the world. About which time the Eſtates of theſe Countries were thus by the Hieroglyphick expreſſed. A Cow repreſented the Body of *Belgium*, there ſtood the King of *Spain* ſpurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but ſhe foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, eſpecially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherouſly ſlain with a Piſtol, *Anno.* 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miſerable, deſperate of Pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but ſuch as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only Sanctuary they had now left; to which they Sue, offering the Queen thereof the Soveraignty of their Provinces, who had, if not a Right, yet a plauſible Title to them, as being lineally deſcended from *Edward* the third and *Philip* his Wife, who was Siſter and (as ſome ſay) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *&c*, If *Margaret* from whom the Right of *Spain* is derived, were Daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to ſucceed after *Philip*, who was rejected: If that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger Siſter, then was our Queen the undoubted Heir, her Predeceſſor *Philippa* being Earl *William*'s elder Siſter. But that Heroick Queen not diſputing the right of the Title, nor intending to her ſelf any thing ſave the honour of relieving her diſtreſſed Neighbours, and providing for her own Eſtate by this diverſion, took them into her Protection. Under which the *Belgian* Affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly (I will not now ſtand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any Treaty of Peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this Concluſion, that he treated with them as with a free Eſtate, abſtracted from all Right and Title which he might pretend unto the places which they were poſſeſſed of. This Peace was concluded *Anno* 1609. Since which time they have kept Garriſons well diſciplined, and as well paid: ſo that theſe Countries have in theſe latter days been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence, for all Chriſtendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to ſee the manner of Fortifications, and learn the Art of War, and the uſe of their Weapons. Thus did they for 40 years hold the ſtaff againſt a moſt puiſſant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with a great advantage; that it is obſerved, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by War, theſe only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to conſider into what follies and extremities Princes run by uſing their People to the War. The Kings of *France* place moſt of their hopes in their Cavalry, becauſe in policy they would not that the vulgar ſhould be exerciſed in Arms, *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedamonians*, that they ſhould never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans* a ſmall Commonwealth, to be their equals in power: whereupon it was tartly ſaid by *Antalcidas* to *Ageſilaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them and fighting with them, *he had made the* Thebans *good Soldiers againſt their wills.* The *Turks* won the vaſt Empire they now poſſeſs by making many and ſpeedy Wars. But now that policy being worn out of Faſhion, we ſee that (to omit *Perſia*) the little and diſtracted Kingdom of *Hungary* hath for 200 years reſiſted their Forces. So was it betwixt the Dukes of *Auſtria* and the *Switzers*, and ſo it is between the *Spaniard* and *Low-*

Country-men; who formerly being accompted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the Wars, by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of Action, and great managers of cauſes appertaining to fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby alſo perceive what advantage a ſmall State gaineth by fortifying places and paſſages: there being nothing which ſooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince than to beleaguer a well-fortified Town; for that herein he conſumeth his time, and commonly looſeth his men, credit and money; as the *Romans* before *Numantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy* before *Nancie*. For where War is drawn out of Field unto the Walls, the Mattock and Spade being more neceſſary than the Sword and Spear, there the Valour of the Aſſailant is little available, becauſe it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought theſe ſeveral Eſtates and Provinces into one hand, ſo now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in Obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themſelves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, ſome few Towns excepted) the Marquiſate of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders*, (except only *Scluys*) and the Lordſhip or Seignioury of *Mechlin*, with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Geldres*, to countervail the Towns that are held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing, but as much inferiour to the other in power and riches, by reaſon of their ſtrength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole Trade of Chriſtendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amſterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacy. Since our Author wrote, a great part of this Country has in three Great and Bloody Wars been extorted by the *French*, and the reſt which remain in the hands of the *Spaniards* is preſerved more by the *Hollanders*, *Engliſh*, and *Germans*, than by any ſtrength the *Spaniards* have of their own: So that it is now one of the Pooreſt, weakeſt and moſt broken States in Chriſtendom, Harraſs'd on all occaſions, and without any hope of Deliverance.

For the General Government of theſe Provinces there is a Regent ſent from the Court of *Spain*, whoſe Authority is generally as great as that of the King; ſave that all matters of moment paſs under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great truſt and concernment are appointed by him, and that all Laws, Decrees, Sentences, and Negotiations are diſpatched in his name alſo. For the aſſiſtance of the Regent there is a Privy Council, a Council of State, and a Council of Finances, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the Regent's Authority co-operating and concurring with them, without which, though they may conſult, they can execute nothing. And for the Governance and well ordering of their ſeveral Provinces there is in every one of them a Lieutenant or Provincial Government, ſubordinate to the Regent, and accomptable to him; and in each Province a particular Council held in the King's name, conſiſting of more or leſs Counſellors, (as the bigneſs of the Province is) for the moſt part Doctors or Licentiates of the Civil Laws, with a Preſident at the Head thereof, which in ſome places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, and in ſome the *Chancery*. To theſe Courts all the Subjects do reſort for Juſtice, in Cauſes both Criminal and Civil: to theſe are brought Appeals from inferior Judicatures, ſuch as the Courts of great Towns and particular Franchiſes: and from theſe lyeth an appeal to the great Council at *Mechlin*, ſupreme and ſuperintendent unto all the reſt.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwiſe is of publick moment, the Regent ſendeth out Letters in the King's name, to command the Eſtates, that is to ſay, the Clergy, the Nobility, and the Principal Towns of every Province, (except thoſe of *Luxemburg*, *Geldres*, *Weſt Frieſland* and *Over-Yſſel*, who by ſpecial Priviledge cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Aſſembly is for the moſt part at *Bruxels*, the Court and Reſidence of the Regent; becauſe the *Brabanters* are alſo Priviledged not to be ſummoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the States Aſſemble not altogether, but thoſe of one Province at a time, ſo one after another: to whom the Preſident, or ſome one of the Council of State propoſeth in the Princes name that which he demandeth. To which if any Town oppoſe, then all which the reſt have done is of no effect, nothing being granted by the Deputies or States of any Province, but with this condition, that all the reſt of the Eſtates do agree unto it. Without this punctual conſent of all parties intereſſed, the Prince can impoſe nothing, by their Laws upon the Subject nor alter any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the people are thus Priviledged in regard of the Prince, ſo are the Princes and Prelates priviledged in regard of the Pope, it being agreed upon between them.

1. That the Prince is to give Clergy-Benefices, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-perſon may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to ſend his Delegates or Commiſſioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a Benefice, nor grant a Pardon, nor ſend a Bull into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no Clergy-man can buy Lands or other immoveables, without the Princes conſent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to viſit the Clergy, to ſee if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the Abuſes.

Great Priviledges, if conſider'd rightly, greater than which few Proteſtant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the Revenue raiſed by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Eſtate, it is not eaſy to be gueſſed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his *Coffers*. The expences of his Court there is as great as ever under any of the former Regents; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garriſons greater than before. Nor doth it now ſtand with reaſon of State to lay any Arbitrary Taxes upon the people, leaſt he exaſperate them to a ſecond Rebellion, or ſtartle them to ſome new Confederacy againſt his Quiet.

Under the Government of the Confederate *Eſtates* are the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, excepting ſome few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Zutphen*, the Seigniouries of *Weſt-Frieſland*, *Vtrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, *Groening*, the Town of *Scluys*, with the Iſle of *Caſſandt* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchy of *Brabant*. This is the leſſer part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the Soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the Induſtry and great Trading of the people the more rich and powerful. They are governed after their own old Laws, by the particular Eſtates of every Province, not yet united into one entire Body of a Common-wealth; ſaving that for the better preſervation of their Confederacy, the Commiſſioners of the ſeveral Provinces do conſult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The Eſtates of the particular Provinces elected out of the principal Towns and Places of moſt importance. do order the Affairs thereof according to their ancient Priviledges, Rights, and Cuſtoms, as well by themſelves as by their Collegues and Officers whom they do appoint; and that as well for matters of State as in point of Juſtice. For Adminiſtration of the which, the Governours, Preſident, and Counſellors of the Provincial Courts, have the cognizance of all Caſes, both civil and

Criminal, and in all Cauſes of Appeal from inferiour Courts; in each of which they proceed without Appeal, making their Acts and Commiſſions in the name of the ſaid Governors, Preſidents and Council; but pronouncing Sentence and executing Judgment in right of the Sovereignty of the ſaid Province. And theſe provincial States are choſen generally out of the Plebeians or common People; and the Burghers (at the beſt) of the greater Townſhips: the Nobility and Gentry being ſo worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three Families of Gentlemen, and thoſe compelled to live after the Plebeian Faſhion for fear of Envy, and to avoid the Inſolency of the ſaucy Clowns, who out of rudeneſs and the deſire of Equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of theſe *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleaſure of the Community for which they ſerve, are choſen one or more for each ſeveral Province, according to the Condition and Capacity of thoſe which are choſen, to reſide at the *Hague*, there to conſult of the Affairs which concern the Publick: but ſo, that be they more or leſs out of every Province they make amongſt them but one Suffrage, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And theſe they call the *States General*, firſt becauſe a collected Body out of all the Provinces; and, ſecondly, becauſe they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular Concernment, which are determinable abſolutely by the States Provincial, but only in ſuch things as concern the General Good of the whole Eſtate, as treating with Ambaſſadors, making War and Peace, *&c.* For their Aſſiſtance in the which, there is a Council of State, made up of the Governors and ſome eminent Men of every Province, (in which the Ambaſſador of *England*, as long as we held *Fluſhing* and the other Cautionary Towns, had his Voice or Suffrage) by whoſe Advice they diſpoſe of all things which concern the Publick: but ſo, that if any difficulty do appear in the Buſineſſes, they conclude nothing till they have the Approbation and Conſent of the particular Cities and Provinces for which they are choſen; to whom they are accomptable for their Adminiſtration, and by whom revocable whenſoever they pleaſe.

The Revenue of this Eſtate doubtleſs is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual Entertainment conſiſting of no leſs than 30000 Men; which they can draw into the Field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided; yet ſo well paid that we never read of any Mutiny amongſt them for want thereof. The whole Charge, with the Entertainment of Captains and ſuperior Officers, is ſaid to amount to 500000 *l. per Annum*; raiſed on the People by Exciſe laid upon all Commodities, and many Taxes of like nature, ſo inſupportable in themſelves, and amongſt Men which would be thought to live in a Free State, that ſhould the *Spaniard* or any Prince in Chriſtendom lay but half ſo much on their Subjects, it would occaſion a Revolt. So that whereas one of the firſt Cauſes of their falling off from the King of *Spain* was to free themſelves from Taxes and Impoſitions illegally (as they ſaid) enforced upon them; they have drawn on themſelves more arbitrary and illegal Payments than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the Change of Government. Touching their Power at Sea, we have ſpoke of already. All I ſhall now add to it is by way of Inſtance, which is, That in the Year 1587 the King of *Denmark*, on pretence of ſome diſpleaſure, arreſted 608 Ships of theirs of all ſorts at one time in the *Sound*; and that the next Year after they ſet out, upon very ſhort warning, an Hundred good Men of War, to join with *England* againſt the invincible *Armado*, which then threatned both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to theſe Countries wherewith the God of all Bleſſings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleaſed the Almighty to confer upon them, they would ſurpaſs all Neighbouring States in Treaſure, Potency, Content, and all worldly Happineſs.

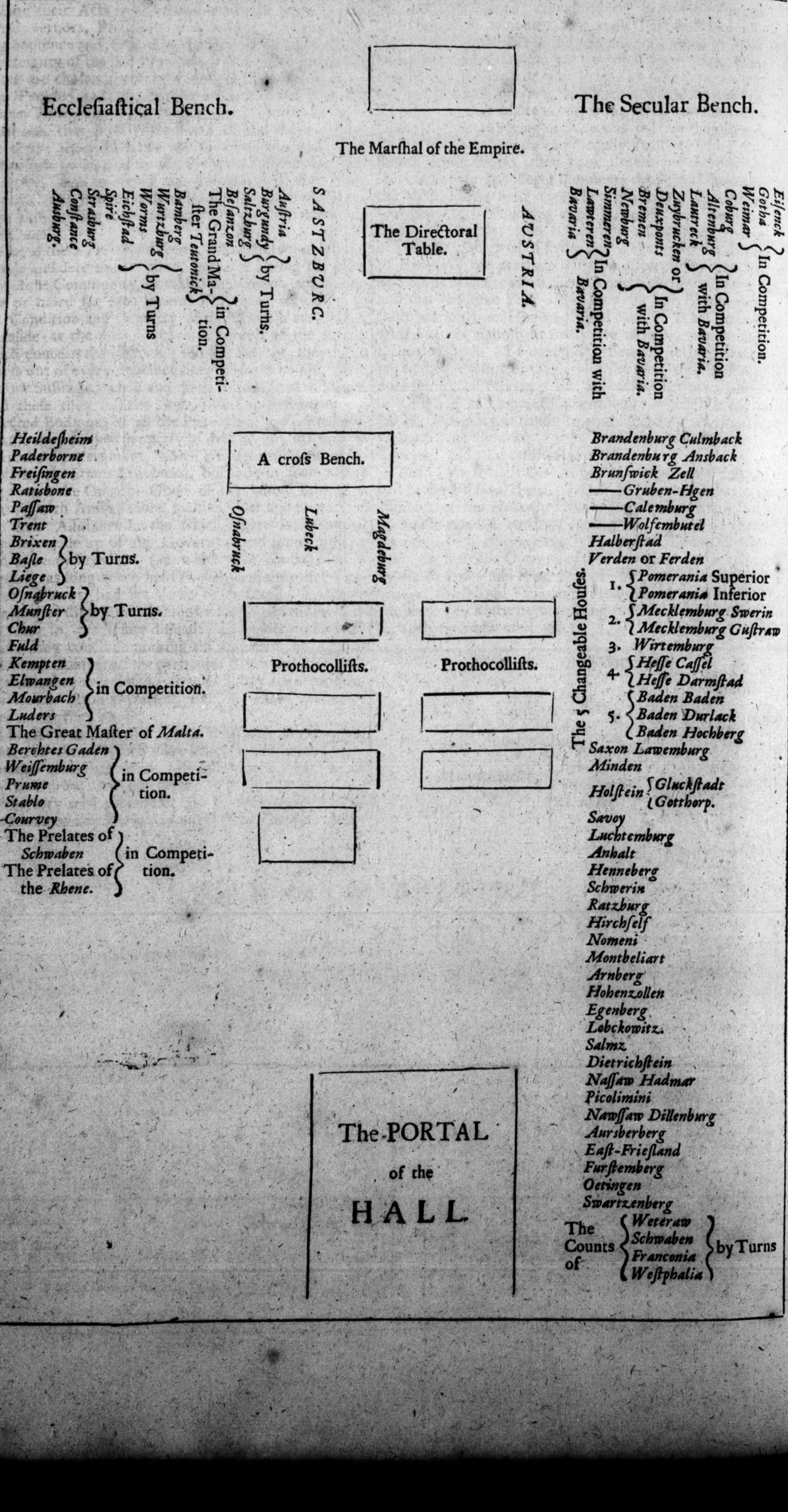
The Form of their Government is excellently deſcribed by Sir *William Temple*, which is done with that accuracy that the *Hollanders* themſelves have approved of it, and honoured him by placing his Picture in their State-Houſe at *Nimmeghen*. Their miraculous delivery from that horrible Outrage of the *French* in the year 1672, by the Courage and Prudence of the preſent Prince of *Orange*, the ſecond Founder of theſe States, will be alſo celebrated by Poſterity according to its worth, but ſhall for the preſent be omitted.

There are in theſe Countries,

Archbiſhops	3.	
Biſhops	15.	
Univerſities	7.	*Lovain*, *Liege*, *Doway*, *Leiden*, *Harderwick*, *Groening*. *Franeker*.

And ſo much for BELGIUM.

A Repreſentation of the Order obſerved in the DYETS held by the College of PRINCES in GERMANY.



Eccleſiaſtical Bench.

The Secular Bench.

The Marſhal of the Empire.

The Directoral Table.

SASTZBURG.

Auſtria
Burgundy } by Turns.
Saltzburg
Beſanzon
The Grand Maſter *Teutonick* } in Competition.
Bamberg
Wurtzburg } by Turns
Worms
Eichſtad
Spire
Straſburg
Conſtance
Ausburg.

AUSTRIA.

Eiſenck
Gotha } In Competition.
Weimar
Coburg
Altenburg } In Competition with *Bavaria.*
Lautreck
Zwybrucken or *Deuxponts* } In Competition with *Bavaria.*
Bremen
Newburg
Simmeren
Lawteren } In Competition with *Bavaria.*
Bavaria

A croſs Bench.

Magdeburg
Lubeck
Oſnabruck

Heildeſheim
Paderborne
Freiſingen
Ratisbone
Paſſaw
Trent
Brixen
Baſle } by Turns.
Liege
Oſnabruck
Munſter } by Turns.
Chur
Fuld
Kempten
Elwangen
Mourbach } in Competition.
Luders
The Great Maſter of *Malta.*
Berchtes Gaden
Weiſſemburg
Prume } in Competition.
Stablo
Courvey
The Prelates of *Schwaben*
The Prelates of the *Rhene.* } in Competition.

Prothocolliſts.

Prothocolliſts.

Brandenburg Culmback
Brandenburg Ansback
Brunſwick Zell
——*Gruben-Hgen*
——*Calemburg*
——*Wolfembutel*
Halberſtad
Verden or *Ferden*

The 5 Changeable Houſes.
1. *Pomerania* Superior / *Pomerania* Inferior
2. *Mecklemburg Swerin* / *Mecklemburg Guſtraw*
3. *Wirtemburg*
4. *Heſſe Caſſel* / *Heſſe Darmſtad*
5. *Baden Baden* / *Baden Durlack* / *Baden Hochberg*

Saxon Lawemburg
Minden
Holſtein { *Gluckſtadt* / *Gotthorp.*
Savoy
Luchtemburg
Anhalt
Henneberg
Schwerin
Ratzburg
Hirchſelf
Nomeni
Montbeliart
Arnberg
Hohenzollen
Egenberg
Lobckowitz.
Salmz
Dietrichſtein
Naſſaw Hadmar
Picolimini
Nawſſaw Dillenburg
Aursberg
Eaſt-Frieſland
Furſtemberg
Oetingen
Swartzenberg
The Counts of { *Weteraw* / *Schwaben* / *Franconia* / *Weſtphalia* } by Turns

The PORTAL of the HALL.

The Seats of the STATES in a GENERAL DYET.

ELECTORS.

BRANDENBURG,
BAVARIA,
MENTS.

The Benches of Eccleſiaſtical PRINCES.

The Archduke of *Auſtria* } by Turns.
The Duke of *Burgundy*
The Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*
The Archbiſhop of *Beſanzon*
The Grand Maſter of the Teutonick Order
The BISHOPS of
Bamberg
Wurtzburg } by Turns.
Wormes
Eichſtad
Spire
Strasburg
Conſtance
Ausburg
Hildeſheim
Paterborne
Freſinghen
Ratisbon
Paſſaw
Trent
Brixeen } by Turns.
Baſil
Liege
Oſnabruck
Munſter
Chur
The ABBOTS of
Fuld
Kempten
Elwangen
Luders
Mourbach
The Grand Maſter of the Order of St. *JOHN*
Bergteſgaden
Weiſſemburg
Prume
Stablo
Corbey
The PRELATES of
Schwaben } by Turns.
The *Rhene*

The EMPEROR or his Commiſſioner.

TRIERS.

The Biſhop of *Oſnabruck.*
The Biſhop of *Lubeck.*

A croſs Bench

The Count of *Papenheim.*

The Directoral Table.

ELECTORS.

COLEN,
SAXONY,
PALATIN.

The Benches of the Secular PRINCES.

The DUKES of
Bavaria
Magdeburg
Palatine Lauteren
Simmeren
Newburg
Bremen
Zeuybrucken or *Deuxpont*
Lautreck
Saxony Altenburg
——— *Coburg*
——— *Weimar*
——— *Gotha*
——— *Eiſenach*
Brandendurg Culmbach
——— *Ansbach*
Brunſwick Wolfenbuttel
——— *Zell*
——— *Crabenhagen*
——— *Calemberg*
Verden
Halberſtad
Pomerania Superior
Pomerania Inferior
Mecklenburg Swerin } by Turns.
——— *Guſtrow*
Wirtemburg
Heſſe Caſſel } by Turns.
——— *Darmſtad*
Baden Baden } by Turns.
——— *Dourlach*
——— *Hochberg*
Saxony Lawenburg
Minden
Holſtein Gluckſtad
——— *Gotthorp*
Savoy
Leuchtemberg
Anhalt
Henneberg
Swerin
Ratzburg
Hirchfeld
Lorrain
Montbelliard
Aremberg
Hohenzolern
Eggenberg
Lobcowits
Salms
Dietrichſtein
Naſſaw { *Hademar*, and *Sigen*
——— *Dilenberg*
——— *Aversberg*
The COUNTS of
Weteraw } by Turns.
Franconia
Weſtphalia

IMPERIAL CITIES.

The Bench of the *RHENE.*

Colen
Aix la Chapelle
Strasburg
Lubeck
Wormes
Spire
Francfort
Wetzlar
Gelnhauſen
Haguenaw
Colmar
Schleſtad
Weiſſenburg
Landaw
Oberenheim
Kaiſersberg
Munſter in the Valley of St. *Gregory*
Roſheim
Turcheim
Dort Mont
Friedberg.

The Bench of *SCHWABEN.*

Ratisbone
Ausburg
Nuremberg
Ulm
Memmingen
Kaufbeuren
Eſlingen
Revelingen
Nortlingen
Dinckelſpiel
Bibrach
Alen
Bopſingen
Gingen
Rotemburg
Hall in *Schwaben*
Rotweil
Uberlingen
Pfulendorff
Weil
Heilbrun
Buchorn
Wangen
Gemond
Lindaw
Ravensburg
Windſheim
Wempfen
Offenbur
Zell a Namersbach
Buchaw upon Tederſee
Leut Kerch
Swinfort
Kempten
Weiſſemburg in *Nortgow*
Gengenbach.

OF GERMANY.

GERMANY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pruſſia*, *Poland* and *Hungary*; on the Weſt with *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Belgium*; on the North with the *Baltick* Seas, the Ocean, and ſome part of *Denmark*; on the South with the *Alps*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germany* much differeth from that deſcribed by *Tacitus* and others of the *Roman* Writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweeden*, with ſo much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this ſide of the River *Viſtula*; but bounded on the Eaſt with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germany* containing on the farther banks of thoſe Rivers five whole *Roman* Provinces, that is to ſay, *Noricum Ripenſe*, and *Mediterraneum*, *Rhætia ſecunda*, *Belgica* and *Germania prima*, with ſome parts of *Rhætia prima* and *Germania ſecunda*: but terminated with the *Danes* and the *Baltick* Sea.

It was firſt called thus by the *Romans*, (as ſome conceive) who ſeeing the People both in Cuſtoms, Speech and courſe of Life ſo like thoſe of *Gallia*, called them the *Germani* to the *Gauls*; the word *Germanus* in the *Latin* ſignifying a Brother of the whole Blood, (as our Lawyers phraſe it) that is to ſay, a Brother both by Father and Mother; thoſe which have the ſame Mother, but divers Fathers, being called *Fratres* [illegible]*erini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who ſpeaking of the great reſemblance which was betwixt theſe Nations in Manners, Speech, Cuſtoms and way of Life, concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reaſon call them *Germani*, *cum fratres*, *eos*, *Gallorum hoc nomine vellent oſtendere*; intending to ſignifie by that name, that they were the Brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be underſtood of thoſe People only which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vaſt Continent according to the ancient extent thereof; it being very well obſerved by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at firſt *Nationis*, *non Gentis*, *nomen*, the name of ſome of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in proceſs of time ſpreading over all that large Tract of ground and thoſe ſcattered Nations which were either conquer'd by them or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which ſignifieth *All*, and the word *Man*, ſignifying in that Language as in ours; whence alſo they derive the name of *Almans*, by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a People that have in them *nihil niſi virile*, nothing not worthy of a *Man*. *Bochartus*, ſomewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the ancient *Gallick* did ſignifie as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*, would have them at their firſt coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans* by the *Gauls*, that is to ſay, *Men of War* (or *Gens de Arms* in the preſent *French*) by reaſon of the great and many Victories obtained by them.

The like diverſity I find for the name of *Almans*. For though ſome gave them the name of *Almans* from the ſame Originals from whence they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was ſaid before, yet others as probably conjecture that they had that name becauſe they conſiſted of ſo many ſeveral Nations coming out of the North and North-Eaſt hither, that they ſeemed to be a Hotchpotch of all ſorts of Men, kneaded into one Name and Nation; which is the conceit of *Aſinius Quadratus*. But for my part, I do conceive (ſuppoſing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain* till ſuch time as the Princes of the Dukedom of *Almany* (ſince called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did poſſeſs the Empire, which continuing in that potent Family near 100 Years, might very well occaſion them to be called the Emperors of *Almain*, or the *Almain* Race, and ſo impart that name to the Empire alſo. And for the *Almans* naturally and properly ſo called (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Suevia*) I ſee no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuiſco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuiſconem Deum & filium Mannum*; *originem gentis conditoreſque*,) as it is ſaid by *Tacitus*; the People being called *Alemanni* (with a double *n*) in all ancient Writers, as Men that did derive themſelves from this *Mannus*, the Son of *Tuiſco*. In like ſorts as (I think) the *Marcomanni*, inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were ſo called, as being the *Manni* of the *Marches*, or Outborders of *Germany*, and not the *Markmans*, as if they were Men of *Mark*, the only Men of Fame and Honour of all thoſe Nations; which might as well be preſſed from the *Dutch* Original as that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this Opinion I am ſwayed the rather, becauſe I find the *Dutch* Nation generally ſo much inclined to derive their Original from *Tuiſco*, (from whom the *Teutones*, inhabiting about *Brandenburg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of *Dutchland* or *Dutchmen* coming near in ſound to *Tuiſc-land* and *Tuiſc-men*. In which I ſhall ſubſcribe to *Verſtegan*'s Opinion, though for the moſt part I look upon him but as the ſecond part of *Goropius Becanus*.

But being the Etymologies of the Names of moſt ancient Nations are very uncertain, and for the moſt part founded on Conjectures only; let us leave the name a while, and ſurvey the Countrey: the length whereof (according to the trueſt and exacteſt meaſurement) from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay from the *Viſtula* or *Weiſſel* to the *Rhene*, is eſtimated at 840 *Italian* Miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to ſay, from the Ocean to the Town of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the ſame Miles. So that the Figure of it being near a Square, it may take up 3160, miles in compaſs, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parellels of the ſixth and tenth Climates, the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half, and in the moſt Northern 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compaſs and extent of Ground are ſuppoſed to live 10 millions of People. The Men of the poorer ſort are laborious, painful, and of a ſincere and honeſt Carriage; the Nobles for the moſt part either Scholars or Soldiers, and true lovers of Honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwiſe reſolved it, affirming that the *Gauls* fight for Liberty, the *Belgians* for Honour, and the *Germans* for Gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Soldiers, who, if they fail of Pay, fail in Courage preſently. Of both ſorts they are generally tall and big, of great Bones, much Fleſh, and large Sinews, but commonly of ſuch a phlegmatick Conſtitution, that they have not Spirit enough to manage ſuch a maſs of Fleſh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that Humour makes them for the moſt part to be Men of a bright or light brown Hair, and fair Complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum eſt bibere*; and the old Verſes,

Germani poſſunt cunctos tolerare labores.
O utinam poſſent tam bene ferre ſitim.
The *Dutch* themſelves to labour well inure.
O would they Thirſt could half ſo well endure.

This love unto their Liquor, together with their natural Temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julius* the ſecond, ſtiling the *Spaniards Birds of the Air*, becauſe of their Ambition; the *Venetians and Genoeſes Fiſhes of the Sea*, becauſe ſo much accuſtomed to Navigation; called the *Germans* by the name of the *Beaſts of the Field*. And when *Auguſtus* was reſolved to take unto himſelf the ſupreme Government of *Rome*, he was adviſed by *Agrippa* to chuſe a Guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reaſon was (as *Dion* giveth it) Becauſe in thoſe great Bodies there was little Malice hidden, and leſs Subtilty; and that they were a People that took more pleaſure to be commanded than to command. In matters of War this People have been formerly in a meaſure famous; yet not ſo much by the Valour or Conduct of their Captains (for they have had but few ſuch) as by their own hardineſs. They withſtood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that ſpace than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*; and even at the laſt (ſaith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis ſunt quam victi*, They were rather Triumph'd over than Conquer'd. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lansknights* of *Germany* (for ſo they called their Horſe and Foot) have been much employ'd: but more by reaſon of their numbers, eaſily rais'd out of ſo large a Country, than any opinion of their Valour; being ſlow of motion, dull of apprehenſion, fearful of putting any thing to the chance of War. By reaſon of which fearfulneſs, as they are very cruel upon all advantages, not ſparing either age or ſex when they get the Victory; ſo are they apt to run upon any Alarm, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any perſwaſions. Inſomuch as *Charles* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting Men, but moſt of this Nation, was forced to ſuffer a ſmall Army of 10000 *Turks* to paſs by his Trenches, being then ſtrongly encamp'd before *Strigonium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungary*, and to victual the Town before his face; not daring to ſet upon them or diſturb their purpoſe, for fear leaſt, being luſtily charg'd, his *Germans* would give back and endanger all. (Their latter Wars with the *French* and *Turks* under the prudent and brave Conduct of the Duke of *Lorrain* have within this 20 Years ſo exalted the Courage and Experience of this Nation, that at this day 10000 *Germans* would as bravely and by God's bleſſing as ſucceſsfully Attack and Overcome 50000 *Turks*.) And yet beſides theſe weakneſſes, they have ſome great faults. One of which is a cuſtom, if their Wages be not duly paid (tho' it be in the very midſt of a Battel) to cry *Guelt*, *Guelt*, throwing down their Weapons, and ſuffer themſelves to be cut in pieces by the Enemy. And ſo they ſerved *Frederick* the Elector *Palatine* at the Battel of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of Spoil and Plunder; on which they are ſo bent whereſoever they come, that ſuch as entertain them have juſt cauſe to ſay, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their Enemies. Two undeceivable notes of mercenary Valour.

The Women are of a good Complexion, but by reaſon of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to corpulency; Women of a good Carriage (as the ſaying is) good Bearers, and as fruitful Breeders; ſervilely obſequious to their Husbands, whom many of good Rank ſerve at the Table with Trenchers and other neceſſaries; and take away when he hath done, eating the reſidue apart with and amongſt their Maids, ſcarce ſitting down with him once a week; and then too at the lower end, or at ſome ſuch diſtance. And though the Women by their Laws have a propriety in their Goods, which they bring with them at their Marriage, or are given them after (ſo as the Husband hath but the uſe of them only) and may diſpoſe of them by their laſt Will at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better, the Husband being no leſs churliſh and imperious than he would be otherwiſe. Which made *Caracalla* to ſay often, that only *that Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the Feminine Article to the Sun, and the Maſculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* do. Moſt of them, as well Wives as Virgins, (except Perſons of Honour) uſe to go bare-footed within doors, and ſeldom put on Shoes or Stockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occaſions. A thing that ſeems the more ſtrange in regard of the extream coldneſs of the Country, which is ſo fierce that generally they lodge between two Feather-beds both in Summer and Winter: and the moſt Houſes have their Stoves, of which the doors and windows are kept very cloſe, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which tho' they may be uſeful and inoffenſive in Gentlemens houſes, yet in the common Inns, where all ſorts of People are neceſſitated to throng together, the ill ſmells, never purged by admitting any freſh Air, are ready to ſtifle and choak up the Spirits of raw Travellers, not accuſtomed to them.

The Diet of *Germany*, *France* and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus cenſur'd: The *Germans* have much Meat, but ſluttiſhly dreſt; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to ſay truth, the *Germans* have meat enough; the People being generally of good ſtomachs, and either by nature or ill cuſtom exceſſive both in eating and drinking, ſeldom riſing from the Table till they have devour'd all which was ſet before them. Inſomuch that in ſome places it is provided by Law, that in their Feaſts they ſhall not ſit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by Intemperance either in eating or drinking a Man diſgorge his foul Stomach in his fellow's Lap, or piſs under the Table, it is no diſgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and exceſſive drinking is not only cheriſh'd among the Vulgar, but even amongſt their greateſt Princes; who, beſides what they do in this kind themſelves, have their drinking Champions, as well to anſwer all Challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whoſe Cellar ſhall afford the greateſt and moſt capable Veſſels.

The Title of the Father deſcends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke, and every Daughter a Dutcheſs: a thing which the *Italians* hold ſo ridiculous that they put it in the fore-front of this facetious Satyr The *Dukes* and *Earls* of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Monſieurs* of *France*, the *Biſhops* of *Italy*, the *Nobility* of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the *Knights* of *Naples*, and the *Younger Brethren* of *England*, make a poor Company. For by this common aſſuming of the Father's Honour, and the parting his Lands among all the Brethren, the Nobility is beyond reaſon multiplied; and no leſs impoveriſh'd; there being not long ſince ſeventeen Princes of *Anhault*, and twenty-ſeven Counts of *Mansfield*; to moſt of which their Arms have been the beſt part of their Riches, *& nihil niſi arma & manus & in his omnia*, as *Tacitus* once ſaid of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchſafe to marry with the Daughter of the wealthieſt Merchant, or ſuffer any of their Siſters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman; nor any juſter cauſe of a Diſheriting their Children than ignoble Marriages: they never permitting the Iſſue of ſuch a Bed to ſucceed in any of their Fees, Eſtates or Titles: by means whereof, tho' they debar themſelves of ſuch acceſſions of Wealth as Matches of that kind might bring them; yet, to the great honour of their generoſity in this particular, they preſerve the pure Stream of their Blood from running into muddy Channels, and keep the Spirits of brave Men though they want the Fortunes.

The Languages here ſpoken are, the *French* in *Lorrain*, and in ſome Towns of the Biſhop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the higheſt part of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* ſpoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and ſome parts of *Luſatia*; and the *High Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A

Language very ancient doubtleſs, (though I am not ſo much a *Goropian* as to think it ſpoken in Paradiſe, or before the Flood) and ſuch as, by reaſon of the little or no impreſſion which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath leſs commixture with the *Latin* than any which is uſed in theſe Weſtern parts, (the *Welch* excepted) and is very harſh by reaſon of its many Conſonants.

This Country was eſteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Foreſts, unprofitable Heaths; and unhealthful Pools. *Germaniam informen terris, aſperam cœlo, triſtem cultu aſpectuque*, *Germany* is a deformed Land, under a ſharp Air and both as to the ſight and Habit of it ſad or unpleaſant, as he farther addeth. And ſuch no doubt it was in thoſe times wherein *Tacitus* lived; the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectifie the ſharpneſs of that Northern Air. But he who doth obſerve it now, cannot but confeſs that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or repleniſhed with more goodly and gallant Cities; being alſo in moſt parts both pleaſant, healthy and profitable; abounding with Mines of Silver and inferiour Metals, plentiful in Corn and Wines, with which they ſupply the defect of other Nations, as alſo with Fleſh, Fiſh, Linnen, Quickſilver, Alume, Saffron, Armour and other Iron-works. The Arable Lands are ſo ſpacious in the Eaſtern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turneth not back again till noon; ſo making but two Furrows for his whole daies work. For this *Verſtegan* is my Author; and if it be not credible; let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of moſt eminency in the elder times were 1. *Arminius* the Prince of the *Cheruſci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus* and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Wittikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*. For the middle Ages, 3. *Otho*, the firſt, 4. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, 5. *Rodulph* of *Habſpurg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*; 6. *Henry*, ſirnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the laſt Century of years, 7. *Frederick* the ſecond, Elector *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* againſt the *Turks*; 8. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter. 9. *Erneſt* Earl of *Mansfield*, 10. *John-George* of *Jagerndorf*, 11. *Albert Wallenſtein* Duke of *Fridland*, and divers others of late days.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; Learning being here ſo rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg* was condemned of Hereſie, for holding that there were *Antipodes*. In the next Age there flouriſhed *Rabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberſtadt*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they liv'd in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a ſtout defender of the Rights of the Empire againſt the Encroachments of the Pope, *Otho Friſingenſis* the Hiſtorian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philoſopher; of which laſt it is ſaid, that he made the *Statua*, of a Man, which with the help of Artificial Engines could ſpeak articulately, and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers we have 1. *Martin Luther*, that great inſtrument of the Reformation. 2. *Philip Melancthon*, his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phœnix* of that age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitius*, a ſolid and laborious Writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the Rigid *Lutherans*. 6. *Sebaſtian Munſter*, and induſtrious Coſmographer, and a learned Linguiſt. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxtorſius*, as great Linguiſts as he, and *John Sleidan*, the Learned and Induſtrious Author of the Hiſtory of the Reformation. Not to deſcend to farther inſtances in thoſe who have ſo filled the Marts of *Francfort* in theſe latter times.

But the greateſt excellency of this people lieth in the Mechanical part of Learning, as being eminent for many Mathematical Experiments, ſtrange Water-works, Medicinal Extractions, Chymiſtry, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no leſs benefit than admiration of the World. Amongſt which I cannot chuſe but inſtance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent Mathematician, and a cunning Artizan, ſpoken of by *Keckerman*; who at the coming of the Emperor *Maximilian* to the City of *Nurenberg*, made a wooden eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and ſo accompanied him to his Lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuſe the World with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that Miracle of a flying Dove, for which *Archytas* is ſo famed amongſt the ancients. Exceeded only by himſelf in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, becauſe leſs in quantity) which at a Feaſt, to which he had invited ſome of his ſpecial Friends, flew from his hand about the Room and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*; expreſſed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*.

Once as this Artiſt, more with mirth than meat,
Feaſted ſome Friends, whom he eſteemed great,
From his learn'd hand an Iron Flie flew out,
And, having flown a perfect Round-about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Maſter,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine Wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a ſmall Flie could find ſufficient room
For all thoſe Springs, Wheels, Counterpoiſe & Chains,
Which ſtood inſtead of Life, and Spur, and Reins!

And amongſt theſe I reckon *Bertholdus Swart*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, the Inventer (though by accident) of that fatal Inſtrument, the Gun. Studious in Chymiſtry, he mingled dried Earth, Sulphur, and ſome other Ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar covered with a ſtone; and ſtriking Fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a ſpark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the Sulphur and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the ſtone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial ſeverally of theſe Ingredients, to find out which of them it was that produced that effect: which having diſcovered, he cauſed an Iron Pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Saltpetre, and Stones; and putting fire to it, ſaw with what violent noiſe and fury it diſcharged it ſelf. This Invention he is ſaid to have firſt communicated to the *Venetians*, Anno 1330, or thereabouts, who having been often vanquiſhed by the *Genoeſes*, and driven almoſt to a neceſſity of yeilding to them, by the help of their Guns (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable diſcomfiture. And this was the firſt Battle that ever thoſe war-like Pieces had a part in; which not long after put to ſilence all the Engines and Devices wherewith the Ancients were wont to make their Batteries. The next that made uſe of this inſtrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea: and not long after them the *Engliſh* at the Seige of *Callice*, Anno 1347; about which time they began alſo to be uſed in *France*: The *French*, it ſeemeth, learned the uſe of them from the *Engliſh*, and the firſt benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the Siege of *Orleans* was ſlain with a great ſhot, *An.* 1425. Twenty years after this, *An.* 1446, they were firſt uſed in *Spain*, at the Siege of *Setteville*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Caſtilians*; and after by degrees made common to the reſt of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Moors* as unto the Chriſtians, it was not long before they taught it the *Turks*. For the *Jews* being forced to abandon *Spain*, Anno 1492, betook themſelves to *Greece* and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions, to whom they ſhewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gun-powder, Harquebuſſes, ſufficiently ſince uſed by that people to the hurt of Chriſtendom. But ſomewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholden for them to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholden, I ſay, for notwithſtanding the harm received by them at firſt, ye afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Uſſan Caſſanes* and *Hiſmael* two of the moſt mighty Emperours of *Perſia*, two memorable Overthrows by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Perſians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkiſh* Emperour objected againſt them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain Harquebuſſiers, but alſo ſent him workmen to ſhew him the uſe and making of Artillery. Theſe great Pieces at the firſt invention were rude unwieldy, and charged with Stone-bullets only, but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which now they have. Whether now Archery or Gunning be to be preferred, I ſtand not here to determine; only this I am ſure of, that Victories have been of late purchaſed with leſs expence of blood and life than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we ſhall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into conſideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not eaſie to name, conſidering ſo many are here allowed; *Jews* being intermixt with *Chriſtians*, and theſe divided into Papiſts and *Proteſtants*; the latter alſo divided into *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, &c. The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt planted here, if *Dorotheus* Biſhop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by St. *Thomas* ſirnamed *Didymus*, one of the Twelve. But being there is little truſt unto his Relations, the beſt were to ſay with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the ſame Apoſtle; that the Goſpel was firſt preached amongſt the *Rhætians* and *Vindelici* by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*, amongſt thoſe of *Noricum* by S. *Marick*, by S. *Creſcens* at *Mentz*, S. *Clement* at *Metz* in *Lorrain*, all of them Apoſtolical men, and of the number of the 70; after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the Faith was planted very early in theſe Countries, *Irenæus*, the renowned Biſhop of *Lions*, *An.* 170, is ſufficient evidence, who takes notice of it; and that it proſpered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Biſhops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Baſil*, and *Straesburg*, ſubſcribing to the Council of *Colen* in the Reign of *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Great, *An.* 347. But the light hereof being extinguiſhed for a time by thoſe barbarous Nations who fell upon theſe out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to ſhine again on the Converſion of the *French* in all parts of this Country; the Conqueſts and example of this puiſſant Nation giving great encouragement thereunto. In which as thoſe of other Countries do not want their honour, ſo the greateſt part thereof belongs to the *Engliſh Saxons*; *Willibrode* the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*, *Willibald* of *Aichſtat*, *Swibert* of *Verden*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and eſpecially *Boniface* the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, being moſt glorioully fortunate in that ſacred ſervice. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and other farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the Faith, they began to ſuck in the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; diſcerned and oppreſſed by *J. Huſſe* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, *Bohemian* Divines, who by reaſon of the Marriage of King *Richard* the ſecond of *England* with the Daughter of *Wenceſlaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the Preachings of *Wicliff*, the Point of whoſe Doctrine they approved and propagated. But theſe two being burnt at *Conſtance* by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not ſo give over, but after many ſufferings and much blood ſhed, obtained at laſt a Toleration of the Emperour *Sigiſmond* their King, more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had been to ſave the two Martyrs from the fire at *Conſtance*, to whom he had granted his ſafe Conduct for their coming and going. In this condition they remained under the name of thoſe of the *Sub utraque* or *Caliſtini*, becauſe of their adminiſtring the Sacrament in both kinds, till the riſing of *Luther*; who juſtly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Aſſertions of Friar *Tokel*, and others of the Pope's Pardon-mongers; firſt oppoſed their doings, and after queſtioned their Authority by which they acted, falling from one point to another, till he had ſhaken the Foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the ſucceſs of his undertaking we ſhall ſpeak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to ſay that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally imbraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweethland*, with the Provinces and Iſlands appertaining to them, in a great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Tranſylvania*, as far almoſt as to the banks of the *Euxine* Sea; but for the progreſs of it here (which we are more eſpecially at this time to enquire into) it was ſo well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunſwick*, *Lunenburg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and moſt of the free Imperial Cities did adhere unto it, who from their Proteſtation made at *Spires* (the Imperial Chamber) to that effect, *An.* 1529. had the name of *Proteſtants*. The next year following they delivered in the Confeſſion of their Faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*; authorized, or tolerated at leaſt, after a long War, with variable ſucceſs on both ſides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the Pacification made at *Paſſaw*, *An.* 1552. and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, (where their Confeſſion had firſt been tendred, *Anno* 1555.

But not to paſs over this matter in theſe generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530, the Proteſtant Princes having tendred their Confeſſion at *Ausburg*, (as before is ſaid) and finding it not ſo well received as they did expect, entred into a Confederation at the Town of *Smalkald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the Defence of one another in purſuance of it. Into this Confederacy firſt entred *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony* and his Son, *Erneſt*, and *Francis* Duke of *Lunenburg*, *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, *George* Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, the Cities of *Straesberg*, *Neurenberg*, *Heilbrun*, *Ruteling*, *Ulme*, *Lindaw*, *Conſtance*, *Memming*, and *Campedune*. Afterwards, *Anno* 1535, there entred into it *Barnimus* and *Philip* Princes of *Pomeren*, *Ulrick* Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Robert* Duke of *Zweibrucken*, (or *Bipont*, as ſome Writers call him) *William* Earl of *Naſſau*, *George*, and *Joachim* Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Francford*, *Hamborough*, *Ausburg*, *Hanover*, and not long after the *Palſgrave* and King of *Denmark*. But this Confederacy was like to have daſhed the buſineſs. For *Charles* the fifth looking upon it as a matter of a dangerous conſequence to the power and ſafety of the Empire, and withal inſtigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whoſe intereſt was no leſs concerned in it, conſidering that he could not otherwiſe untie this *Gordian* knot, reſolved to cut it with the Sword. At firſt the War ſucceeded luckily with the Proteſtant Princes, who armed themſelves upon the noiſe of his Preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John Frederick* and *Philip* the Lantgrave, the one ſometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the other's projects, the end proved not anſwerable. Beſides the politick Emperour knowing full well that the Forces of confederate States are oftner broken by Delays than Battle, avoided all occaſions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which, without performing any notable exploit, disbanded it ſelf, every man haſting home to defend his own. But none had more reaſon ſo to do than the Duke Electour: For in his abſence his Couſin *Maurice* (forgetting the Education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and eſtated him in thoſe parts of *Miſnia* (maugre all oppoſition of the Popiſh party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle) combined himſelf with the Emperour, and invaded the Electours Country; who notwithſtanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part alſo of thoſe Lands and Territories in which he had before eſtated his ungrateful Kinſman. But while he was in this Career, the Emperour ſuddenly falls upon him not far from *Mulberg*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the ſuddenneſs of his coming routed his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himſelf with ſome few reſolute Gentlemen making head againſt him, till the moſt of them were ſlain, and the Duke taken Priſoner. The next morning he was condemned to looſe his head, but pardoned at the laſt upon ſome conditions: amongſt which it was none of the leaſt, that he ſhould ſurrender his Eſtates, and reſign the Electoral dignity to be diſpoſed of by the Victor, as alſo that he ſhould without ranſom releaſe Marquiſs *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, (a buſie and unquiet Man) who was then his Priſoner. This done, the Emperour fraudulently intrappeth the Lantgrave, as we ſhall ſhew more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the Wars from one free City to another, compelled them to receive the Maſs, and to ſubmit to ſuch Compoſition as he pleaſed to grant them; in ſo much as it was thought that the Emperour gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But theſe Succeſſes were too great and two unjuſtly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice*, the new Duke Elector, who had married the Lantgrave's Daughter, and engaged himſelf unto his Children both by Word and Bond (and that too at the Emperour's inſtance) for his ſafe returning, conceived himſelf unworthily dealt with ſo to be made the inſtrument of his Father's thraldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untryed which might gain his Liberty. And withal, finding cauſe to fear that the courſe of the Emperour's great ſucceſſes might end at laſt in the ſubverſion of the common Liberty, he ſecretly by an under-hand practice called in the *French*, and raiſing Forces under the colour of the Emperour's ſervice, gained Marquiſs *Albert* before mentioned) who had then a running Army in the field) to aſſociate with him, and fell ſo ſuddenly on the Emperour, lying then at *Inſpruck*, that he compell'd him to run away in poſt-haſt by torch-light, and the Prelates to break off the Council of *Trent*, where at that time they were aſſembled. Upon which turning of the balance a Peace ſoon enſued, which brought forth the *Edicts* of *Paſſaw* and *Ausburg*, ſpoken of before, the beſt and ſureſt Pledges of the Peace of *Germany*.

In the mean time, while the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there ſtarted up another party, begun at firſt by *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, of whoſe both Doctrine and Succeſs we have ſpoken there. Theſe, not communicating Counſels, went two ſeveral ways, eſpecially in the Points of Conſubſtantiation and the Real preſence; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongſt their followers. For *Calvin*, riſing into the eſteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added ſome Tenets of his own to the former Doctrines touching Predeſtination, Free-will, Univerſal Grace, Final Perſeverance; (Points fitter for the Schools than a popular Auditory;) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the Cauſe being followed on both ſides with great impatience, as if they did not ſtrive ſo much for Truth, as Victory. And of the two, thoſe of the *Lutheran* party ſeemed more violent, (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuſe but ſtomach it, to ſee themſelves undermined and blown up by a new form of Doctrine not tolerated in the *Empire*, but under colour of Conformity to the Confeſſion of *Ausburg*. For *Zuinglianiſm* being entertained amongſt the *French*, a buſie and active people, ſpread it ſelf farther in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers*, (men of the ſame temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Inſomuch as it did not only prevail in *France*, but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his Followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and even in *Germany* it ſelf, in which it got footing in all the Territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in ſome of the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, in the Imperial City of *Straesburg*, many of the *Hanſe*-Towns, and amongſt other Princes and free Cities of inferiour note. The reſt of *Germany*, containing the Patrimonial Eſtates of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorrain*, the Territories of the three Spiritual *Electors*, and of all the other Biſhopricks in the hands of the Clergy, ſome of the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, part of the ſubjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperial Cities, (and thoſe ſmall ones too) that is to ſay, *Gemund*, *Vberlingen*, and *Dinckell-Spyel*, (unleſs ſome more be added by the great late Succeſſes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*) remain in their Obedience to the See of *Rome*; all which together will hardly make up one fifth part of this ſpacious Country, the other four being in the power and poſſeſſion of the Proteſtant party: yet ſo that there be as many Proteſtants in *Bohemia*, *Auſtria*, and in other the *Eſtates* of the Popiſh Princes; as there be Papiſts in the Free Cities of *Francford*, *Nuremberg*, *Vlm*, *Aken*, and ſome other places, beſides the late increaſe of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of ſuch a ſpeedy growth was the Reformation, that within the ſpace of 40 years it was not only received in all thoſe Countries which do now profeſs it, but had alſo got ſome footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly uſed for the promoting of this Work; by which it came to ſpread ſo far in ſo little time, and next upon the ſtops and hinderances which were given unto it, by which it was reſtrained from ſpreading farther. 1. For the means uſed in the Advancement of this Work, (next under the Almighty power of the moſt wiſe God) they were theſe eſpecially. 1. The tranſlating of the Scripture into vulgar Languages, which eaſily diſcovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worſhip. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Miniſtry, both in Towns and Villages for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the Capacities of the meaneſt Auditors; which gained exceedingly both on the judgment and affections of the common people; the courſe of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Pariſh Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the begging-Friars. 3. The publiſhing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all ſorts of men; accuſtomed before to no other Duties than to tell over their *Credo's* and *Pater-Noſters*, and to keep a juſt account of their *Ave-Maries*, and that moſt commonly in a tongue which they underſtood not. 4. The Education of youth, eſpecially in Catechiſms containing the whole body of Chriſtian Religion; which once well planted in their minds, could not ſo eaſily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary perſwaſion. 5. Their continual offers of diſputation with the adverſe party in a publick audience; which being denied (as generally at the firſt it was) gave great aſſurance of the truth and ſoundneſs of the one ſide, as of the falſehood and weakneſs of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies and Hiſtories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Conſtancy both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by thoſe brave Examples which therein was preſented to them. One point of Prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Proteſtant and Reformed Churches, for the compoſing of the differences which have grown between them. And this I look on as the firſt and greateſt ſtop to the Reformation from proceeding farther; many men (not improbably) thinking there muſt be ſome want of truth in the Foundation of that building, which had ſuch wide and open breaches in the Superſtructures. The Tyranny and Terrour of the Inquiſition, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy*, and all other parts of the Pope's Obedience, together with thoſe other Policies both to diſcountenance and ſuppreſs it, (which we have ſpoken of in our deſcription of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to theſe the cares and diligence of the *Jeſuits* and Seminary

nary Prieſts, in applying themſelves to all thoſe means which they found ſo effectual on the other ſide, thereby not only countermining their Endeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the ſelf-ſame Weapons. And laſt of all, the Plots and Practices of the Papal Miniſters in working on the Humours of the oppoſite Parties, thereby enraging them not only into Tongue-combat and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open War, once I am ſure. By theſe means they have not only ſtopped the Progreſs of the Reformation, but would fain give themſelves ſome hopes to deſtroy it utterly, and thereby to reſtore the Pope to that power and ſplendor which formerly he had attained unto in theſe parts of *Europe*. But of theſe and ſuch like ſelf-flatteries I ſhall ſay with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applied to my own Intention:

> —— *Hæ manus* Trojam *erigent?*
> *Parvas habet ſpes* Troja, *ſi tales habet.*
>
> That is to ſay,
>
> Shall theſe ſmall Jars reſtore the ruin'd Pope;
> Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, thoſe that continue in Obedience to the See of *Rome* are under the old form of Archbiſhops and Biſhops, coæval in all *Germany* (as in moſt places elſe) with the Faith it ſelf. The *Calviniſts* (by which name the *Zuinglianiſt* now alſo paſſeth, if not eaten out) ſubmit themſelves for Doctrine, Diſcipline and Forms of Worſhip, to *Calvin*'s Model; whereof we have ſpoken more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the Epiſcopal Function from the Revenues; giving theſe laſt to ſome of their younger Princes, with the Title of *Adminiſtrators* of ſuch a Biſhoprick; the Function or Juriſdiction to ſome of the more eminent Clergy, with the Title of a *Superintendent*, aſſigning to them a Priority both of Place and Power before other Miniſters, which they enjoy for term of Life, together with ſome liberal Maintenance, in proportion to it. In other things, as Order, Habit, and Title of Dignity, they differ not at all from the other Miniſters. And over them, in the place of Archbiſhops, they have their *General Superintendents*; all of them of each ſort accomptable to the Supreme Eccleſiaſtical Conſiſtory, (as formerly to the Provincial or National Synod) made up of Counſellors of State, and the Heads of the Clergy. So that the Form ſeems to be much the ſame as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it ſeems to be; a great part of the alteration being in the Names; and that no other in a manner than by changing the old *Greek* word *Epiſcopus* into the new *Latin* word *Superintendents*, both ſignifying an *Overſeer*, though in different Languages. And ſo *Ex Græcis bonis Latinas facere non bonus*, in the Poet's word. Which brings into my mind the Story of a People of *Africk*, who having received much hurt by Tigers, made a Decree that no Man from thenceforth ſhould call them Tigers, but give them a more harmleſs or leſs hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of Government, ſo do they alſo come up to them in their Forms of Worſhip; retaining ſtill a ſettled and preſcribed Liturgy for all their Churches, moſt of the Holy-days obſerved in the former Ages, the Croſs in Baptiſm, Kneeling at the Communion, and many other innocent and ſignificant Ceremonies, commended to the Church by moſt pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance they are as defective as the *Calviniſts* are; few of their Miniſters having Tithes, moſt of them Penſions or Stipends, and thoſe ſmall ones alſo, ſeldom exceeding 2 or 300 Guldens, beſides Wood for fewel, Corn, and ſome other Neceſſaries.

Now becauſe mention hath been made of the *Hanſe*-Towns and Imperial Cities, we are to underſtand that the Cities of this Country are of three ſorts. 1. Such as are holden in poſſeſſion by ſome of the Princes in way of Inheritance, part of their Patrimony and Eſtates; as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munchen*, *Wittemberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it ſelf: which are called *Free Cities*, for their great Prerogatives of their Coining Money, and governing themſelves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial*, in regard they know no Lord or Protector but the Emperor only, to whom they paid two third parts of ſuch Contributions as are aſſeſſed in the Aſſemblies or general Diets, and 1500 Florens yearly for themſelves and their Territories. They are in number about 60, many of which are of a fair and large Eſtate; ſuch as are *Nurenberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolſtad*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*: Thoſe, ſaith he, are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate Tribute the Authority of the Empire, do notwithſtanding in all other things govern themſelves after their own Laws, not ſeeking to amplifie their Territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third ſort is of thoſe which are called *Hanſe*-Towns, or *Hanſteden*, that is (ſay ſome) *An zee ſteden*, Towns upon the Sea; ſuch as thoſe were who firſt entred into this Confederacy: but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great Trading, joined with them in a League for their common Defence and Preſervation. A League made firſt againſt the *Danes* and the Earls of *Holſtein* by ſome of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them, that is to ſay, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Roſtock*, *Wiſmar*, *Straelſund*, and *Lunenburg*: but afterwards many other of the Imperial Cities and Towns of Trade aſſociated with them in an offenſive and defenſive League againſt all Enemies whatſoever. In number about 72, thoſe of *Livonia* and *Pruſſia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to Sea 150 good Sail of Ships; ſuch as lie more within the Land contributing in Money or otherwiſe to the common Charge. Firſt handſelled by *Waldomar* III. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquiſh'd in a Naval Battel. After that, growing into credit, and driving a great Trade in moſt parts of Chriſtendom, they enjoyed many large and ample Privileges whereſoever they came: call'd amongſt us ſometimes by the name of *Eaſterlings*, from their Eaſterly dwelling: and Merchants of the *Steelyard*, from the place where they ſtowed their Commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum*, in regard of their Nation, for the moſt part *Dutch*. But the *Engliſh* learning ſo much wit at the laſt as to make uſe of their own Shipping, they began here by little and little to decay, and are now almoſt worn out of memory with us; though ſtill of good eſteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which riſing out of *Nigra Silva*, or the *Schwartzenwald*, that is, the *Black Foreſt*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* call'd *Den Eſchingen*, about two *Dutch* Miles from the ſhores of the *Rhene* paſſeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensburg*, *Paſſaw*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, beyond which it beginneth to be called *Iſter*, by that name moſt generally known amongſt the *Græcians*; and receiving into its Channel, from the long tract of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian*, and *Carpathian* Mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, beſides leſſer Brooks, diſgorgeth his full Stomach by ſeveral mouths (the names whereof we ſhall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine* Sea; the whole length of his courſe 1500 Miles, inſomuch as we may ſay with a Modern Poet,

> *Cedere Danubius ſe tibi, Nile, negat,*
> O ſeven mouth'd *Nile*, I plainly ſee,
> *Danow* will ſcarce give way to thee.

2. *Rhene* (of whoſe original and courſe we have ſpoken more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a courſe of 800 Miles, emptieth it ſelf into the *German* Ocean. All which ſhall be here added is, that it gives the Title of the *Reine-grave* to ſome Princes of as good Blood as the beſt in *Germany*, whoſe Poſſeſſions and Eſtates bordering near unto it they were from thence ſo called; but of late time decayed (almoſt to nothing) in their Eſtates, and living for the moſt part on the Entertainment of other Princes, whom they ſerve in their Wars;

the *Palſegraves* of the *Rhene*, and two at the leaſt of the three Biſhops Electors raiſing themſelves upon the ruine of this Houſe. 3. *Elb*, (*Albis*) which ſpringing out of the Mountain of *Riſenberg* in the ſkirts of *Bohemia*, runneth a courſe of 400 miles and paſſeth by the Cities of *Dreſden*, *Meiſen*, *Torgaw*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lawenburg*, Cities of the Electoral and ancient *Saxony*, and ſo betwixt the Dukedom of *Holſtein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the reſt of *Germany*. 4. *Oder*, which hath its Fountain in the highermoſt parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its courſe through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, of ſome 300 miles in length, falleth at laſt into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Viſurgis*, or the *Weſer*, which iſſuing out of the Hills of *Thuringia*, runneth through *Haſſia* and *Weſtphalen*, to the City of *Breme*, not far from which it falls into the *German* Ocean. 6. *Viſtula*, or the *Weyſſel*, which riſing out of the *Capathian* Mountains betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, firſt paſſeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*, then betwixt *Pomeren* and *Pruſſia*, and ſo into the *Baltick* Sea; the ancient Boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europæa*. 7. *Moſelle*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Vague*, in the Confines of *Lorrain* and the County of *Burgundy*, paſſeth directly thorough *Lorrain*, and the diſtrict of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toul*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it ſelf, beyond which laſt it falleth into the *Rhene*, at the Town called *Confluentz*. 8. *Sala*, or *Salza*, which riſing in the Mountains of *Fitchelberg* in the Borders of the *Upper Palatinate*, and paſſing by the ſkirts of *Miſnia* and *Saxony* ſpecially ſo called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having firſt watered the Cities of *Naumberg*, *Merſberg*, and *Jene*, very obſervable for being the moſt Eaſtern Bounds of the *Saxon* Conqueſts, by this River parted from the *Sclaves*. 9. *Manus*, or the *Maine*, which hath its Spring in the Mountains of *Bohemia*, and paſſing by the Cities of *Bamburg* and *Wurtzburg*, is received into the *Rhene*, beneath *Frankford*. 10. *Amiſus*, or the *Ems*, which hath its Fountain near *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, and paſſing between the two *Frieſelands*, falleth into the *German* Ocean not far from *Emden*.

Chief Mountains of this mighty Country, beſides the *Alps* ſpoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are, 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartzenwald*, i. e. *Black Hills*, (the preſent name both of this Mountain and the Foreſt of *Martiana*, which doth overſhadow it) out of which riſe the ſprings of *Danow* and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudetæ*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the Woods called anciently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds, of *Paſſaw* and *Behaimer*, from the places adjoining. 3. *Cetius* in *Auſtria*, now called *Culember*, the ancient Bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogeſus*, commonly called *Vague*, and by ſome *French* Writers *le Monte de Faucities*, which incircling *Lorrain*, divideth it on the Eaſt and South from *Alſace* and the County of *Burgundy*, As for the Foreſts of this Country, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, that of moſt note was the Foreſt of *Hercynia*, (of which all the reſt were but Limbs or branches) the beginning whereof was about the Borders of *Switzerland* and *Alſatia*, from thence running Eaſtward along the courſe of the *Danow* unto *Tranſylvania*, and their declining on the left hand through the vaſt Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moſcovites*, and *Ruſſes*, in which laſt there are ſtill many vaſt Deſerts of it; the greateſt part thereof in *Germany* being long ſince conſumed, in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields and well-built Cities. A Wood ſo formidable to the *Romans*, that they durſt never venture to ſearch to the end of it; the length thereof after the end of 60 days Journey being undiſcoverable, and the farther ſearch into it quite laid aſide.

These Boundaries and Land-marks being thus deſcribed we ſhall the better follow the Chorography of this great Continent, according to the ſeveral Principalities and Eſtates therein, having firſt taken a ſurvey of the ancient condition of it, with ſo much of the Story as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into ſo many hands. The Country was firſt planted by the poſterity of *Gomer*, who, deſcending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their firſt Seat, in memory thereof firſt called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by that name known to *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancient Writers, removed into the more fruitful Plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris*, which *Pliny* ſpeaks of. But that ſmall Province proving of too narrow a compaſs to contain his Off-ſpring, and the adjoyning Countries being taken up in the former Plantations, they removed unto the North-weſt of the *Euxine* Sea, where we find a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, and the adjoyning Streight or *Fretum*, called by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius* by the *Greeks* and *Latins*. Driven from theſe Dwellings by the more powerful *Scythians*, they ſpread themſelves into the Weſt, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under thoſe of the *Ambrones* and *Teutones*, ſeveral Branches of them, intended an Invaſion and Conqueſt both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *niſi iſti ſeculo Marius contigiſſet*, had not *Marius* happened to have lived in that Age, by whom they were diſcomfitted and deſtroyed. That theſe *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the firſt Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and Weſt of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the Learned. Divided they were into ſeveral Nations, and thoſe alſo ſubdivided into leſſer Tribes, and more obſcure Families; amongſt which thoſe of *Teutones* or *Tuiſcones*, from which the *Dutch* do ſo affect to derive themſelves, might be ſome of the principal there ſettled, and not pleaſed with that deſert dwelling, ſuch of them as dwelt neareſt to the *Rhene* paſſed over that River, and beating the *Gauls* farther up into the Country, poſſeſſed themſelves of their Dwellings, enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Cæſar*) without any Rival. But *Cæſar*, who moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the inſolencies of *Arioviſtus* a King of the *Germans*, (for by that name for the reaſons aforeſaid the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being ſo afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut teſtamenta paſſim in principiis ſcriberentur*, (ſaith the Hiſtorian) that many of them made their Teſtaments at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquiſhed by *Cæſar*, and *Arioviſtus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans*, by command of their General made a Bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*; who were more fully brought into ſubjection by *Druſus*, the adopted Son of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, from thence called *Germanicus*, by whom not only the *Rhæti* and *Norici*, then lying out of the bounds of *Germany*, now included in it, were ſubdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Country in a manner to the very Ocean was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for ſo ſhort a time, that it was both won and loſt during the Reign and Government of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. So that the whole eſtabliſhed Conqueſts of the *Romans* upon this Country, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica Prima*, with part of *Germania Secunda*, belonging unto the Diocefs of *Gaul*; the greateſt part of the two *Rhætia's* being under the Dioceſs of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum* and *Ripenſe*, with ſome parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the Dioceſs of *Illyrium*. But none of theſe (as lying on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever paſs in the accompt of the ancient *Germany*, the *Germans* not enduring the yoke ſo long as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the Luſt and Inſolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who ſucceeded *Druſus* in that charge, they ſet upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongſt them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions; as we ſhall ſee more particularly when we come to *Brunſwick*, the ancient Seat of the *Cheruſci*, by whom the Forces of that Empire were driven over the *Rhene*. After which defeat *Auguſtus* laid aſide the Affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Druſus* had extended to the banks of the Ocean. *Hac clade factum, ut Imperium quod in littore Oceani non ſteterat, in ripa* Rheni *fluminis ſtaret*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this Loſs by making a new War upon them; but ſeemed more careful to defend themſelves againſt thoſe Invaſions, than to incur the hazard of a new Defeat; quarteriug eight Legions with their ſeveral Wings and Aids on the ſhores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep theſe People from incroaching on the *Roman* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on a pace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through their Guards, diſpoſſeſs the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhetia*, and *Noricum*, which they ſhare amongſt them: till in the end the *French*, prevailing over the reſt, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly perform'd by the valour of *Charles* the Great, created Emperor of the Weſt by the People of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* IV. on *Chriſtmas*-day, *Anno* 801. So that now the old Propheſie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the Weſt, came to be accompliſh'd; tho' *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle Prediction. For when *Civilis* raiſed a Rebellion amongſt the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoining) againſt *Veſpaſian* then newly made Emperor, *poſſeſſionem rerum humanarum* Tranſalpinis *gentibus portendi* Druidæ, *canebant*, the *Druides* propheſied of the Tranſlation of the Empire to the *Tranſalpine* Nations: accompliſhed, as before is ſaid, in the perſon of *Charles* the Great, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom it was divided (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *Weſt-France*, or *Weſt-rieck*, in the barbarous *Latin* of thoſe times called *Weſtraſia*, containing the modern *France*, and ſo much of the *Netherlands* as lieth on the *French* ſide of the River *Maes*; and *Oſtenrick*, (*i. e.* the Eaſtern Kingdom) in the *Latin* of thoſe times *Auſtraſia*, containing ſo much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia* as was poſſeſſed by the *French*, with the reſt of the *Netherlands*. This was afterwards ſubdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorrain* and *Germany*: whereof the firſt contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before deſcribed, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the reſt. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the Son of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many Members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrain* and *Germany*, diſtributed amongſt his Sons and Nephews with the Title of Kings: by means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorrain*, united in the Perſon of *Lewis* the Ancient, in little time were alien'd from the Houſe of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*, poſſeſſed by the great Princes of *Lorrain*, *Saxony*, *Schawben*, and *Bavaria*; by them diſmembred into many Principalities and inferior States, all paſſing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperors of which here follow.

The Kings and Emperors of *GERMANY*.

A. Ch.

801 1. *Charles* the Great, Emperor, King of *France* and *Germany*.

815 2. *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germany*, and the Emperor of the *Romans*.

841 3. *Lewis*, ſirnamed the Ancient, ſecond Son of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which *anno* 876. he united that of *Lorrain* alſo.

4. *Charles* the Groſs, Son of *Lewis* the Ancient, reigned at firſt jointly with *Carloman* and *Lewis* his elder Brethren, after their deaths ſole King of *Germany*, *anno* 880. he ſucceeded *Ludovicus Balbus* in the Title of Emperor, continued unto his Succeſſors; and during the minority of *Charles* the Simple by a Faction of the *French* Nobility was choſen King of *France*: the whole Eſtate of *Charles* the Great becoming once again united in the perſon of one Sovereign Prince.

891 5. *Arnulph*, the natural Son of *Carloman*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Germany*, and Emperor.

903 6. *Lewis* or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the Brother of *Charles* and *Carloman*, being reckoned for one) King of *Germany*, and Emperor, the lawfully begotten Son of *Arnulph*.

913 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lewis* the 4. the laſt Prince of the maſculine Iſſue of *Charles* the Great. After whoſe death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, ſeeing *Charles* the Simple, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the Houſe of *Anjou*: took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themſelves: and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperor. A worthy Prince, by whom ſome Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorrain* were ſubdued or added to the Empire.

929 8. *Henricus*, ſirnamed *Auceps*, or the Fowler, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but deſigned by *Conrade*, as being eldeſt Son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis*, Daughter to the Emperor *Arnulph*, and conſequently a branch of the *Caroline* Stock.

938 9. *Otho*, ſirnamed the Great, the Son of *Henry*, Emperor and King of *Italy* 36 Years.

974 10. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the firſt, Emperor and King of *Italy*. 10.

984 11. *Otho* III. Son of *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and the laſt of that Houſe which had the Title of Emperor and King of *Italy*. After whoſe death all right of Succeſſion being diſclaim'd, the Emperors became elective; but for the moſt part the Election was engroſſed or monopoliz'd (ſince the Failure of the Houſe of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*, notwithſtanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The buſineſs was firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperors leſs powerful, and diſtract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into Sides and Factions: confirmed by a Decree of Pope *Gregory* the Fifth, being a Native of that Country.

1002 12. *Henry* II. ſirnamed the Saint, Duke of *Bavaria*, the firſt Emperor elected according to the Conſtitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but ſo elected, that he callenged it in a manner by the right of Blood, as being the Grandchild of *Henry* ſirnamed *Rixoſus*, the firſt Duke of *Bavaria* of the *Saxon* Race) the ſecond Son of *Henry* the firſt, and conſequently the next Heir-male of that Houſe after *Otho* III. compelling ſome of the Electors, who oppos'd his Title, by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the firſt Emperor who came in by a clear Election, but not without pretenſion of a Title alſo, was

1025 13. *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, ſirnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Luitgardis*, one of the Daughters of *Otho* I. and conſequently not a Stranger to the former Family.

1040 14. *Henry* III. ſirnamed *Niger*, the Son of *Conrade*.

1056 15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the Third, in whoſe days the Popes began to uſurp Authority over the Emperors; inſomuch as *Leo* the ninth, having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himſelf of it; put off his Papal Veſtments, went to *Rome* as a private perſon, and was there new choſen by the Clergy. This was done by the perſwaſion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*; the firſt Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254, there were continual Wars and Thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours, ſome of them being excommunicated, ſome forced to put their Necks under the Feet of the Pope, others to quit the care of the Common-wealth, and betake themſelves unto the Wars of the *Holy* Land, leaving the Pope to do what he liſt in *Germany*.

1106. 16. *Henry* V. Son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope againſt his Father; whom he had no ſooner ſucceeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too ſtiff in the buſineſs of Inveſtitures, and raiſed up the *Saxons* againſt him; by whom being vanquiſhed, and otherwiſe afflicted by the Pope's practices, he was forced to ſubmit unto his commands, and was the laſt Emperour of the Houſe of *Franconia*.

1125. 17. *Lotharius* Duke of *Bavaria*, ſeizing on the Empire without any Election, was reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of St. *Bernard*. He ſettled the Affairs of *Italy* in two Journeys thither. 13.

1139. 18. *Conrade* III. Son of *Frederick*, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Sueve* or *Schwaben*, and Siſter's Son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquiſhed *Henry* ſirnamed the Proud, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the Holy Wars with *Lewis* King of *France*, diſcomfited the *Turks* near the banks of *Meander*. 15.

1153. 19. *Frederick*, ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Sueve* crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3, to whom he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf, the Pope inſolently treading on his Neck. He went after to the *Holy Land*, where he died, having diſcomfited the *Turks* in three great Battles. 37.

1190. 20 *Henry* VI. Son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Conſtance* his Wife, crowned by Pope *Celeſtine*, who imployed him in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*; in his Journey towards which he died at *Meſſina*. 8.

1198. 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, Brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope, (who loved not this Family) by whoſe means *Otho*, the Son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was ſet up againſt him. The occaſion of great Wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by Marriage of *Otho* with a Daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207. 22. *Otho* IV. Son of *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long after he was excommunicated, for taking into his hands ſome Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquiſhed in *Brabant* by the Faction raiſed up againſt him, he relinquiſhed the Empire to his Competitor.

1212. 23. *Frederick* II. King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, Son of *Henry* the 6. having ſettled *Germany*, diſpoſed himſelf for the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, where he recovered the poſſeſſion of the Realm of *Jeruſalem*. He was excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*, and not long after poiſoned.

1250. 24. *Conrade* IV. Son of *Frederick* the laſt Emperour of the Houſe of *Schwaben*. After whoſe death the Empire being diſtracted by the Pope's practices into many Factions, each Faction choſe an Emperour or King of the *Romans*: ſo that at one time there were elected *Henry* Earl of *Thuringia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, and *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*, the renowned Author of the *Alfonſine* Tables, and

1254. 25. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, Brother of *Henry* the third of *England*, the beſt monied man of all his time, ſuppoſed therewith to buy the Suffrages of the Archbiſhop of *Colen* and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *An.* 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whoſe death, or an *Interregnum* of 12 years from his *Exit* rather, the Title was at laſt accepted by

1273. 26. *Rodolph* Earl of *Habſpurg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Eſtates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raiſer of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family. This *Rodolph* was the Son of *Albert* the *Wiſe* Earl of *Habſpurg*, and Landgrave of *Alſatia*, and his Mother was *Hedewig* Counteſs of *Keyburg*, he was born the 1ſt. of *May*, 1218, and educated in the Court of *Frederick* II. He gained *Auſtria* for *Albert* his Eldeſt Son, and *Suabia* for *Rodolph* his 3d. Son in the Dyet of *Ausburg* in the year 1282, by which he laid the Foundations of the Preſent Grandure of this Family.

1292. 27. *Adolph*, Earl of *Naſſau*, who ſerved in perſon under King *Edward* the 1. of *England* againſt the *French*; for which being diſ-reliſhed by the *Germans*, he was encountered and ſlain near the City of *Spires*.

1298. 28. *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, Son of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it. He Married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of the Duke of *Carinthia*, and Count of *Tirol* and *Goricum*. His Empire was not pleaſing to any, nor Happy, becauſe he imployed all his Thoughts in amazing Treaſures. After a ſhort Reign, he was ſlain at *Rhinefield*, by *John* Duke of *Suabia* his Brother's Son, in the year 1308. This Prince was born the 29th of *July*, 1289, and was the firſt that brought *Carinthia* and *Tyrol* into this Family. *Rodolphus* his Son, was choſen King of *Bohemia* in the year 1307, and died without Iſſue. *Frederick* the Fair, his 2d. Son was choſen Emperour in 1314, and maintain'd a War againſt *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, wherein he was defeated in 1323.

1308. 29. *Henry*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who made a Journey into *Italy* to recover the Rights of the Empire, (wherein an Emperour had not been ſeen in 60 years:) ſuppoſed to be poiſoned in the Chalice by a Frier at *Benevent*, a Town of the Pope's, in 1313. 6.

1314. 30. *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; oppoſed by *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, choſe by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a Town of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*: but he being defeated, *Lewis* remained ſole Emperour, and was excommunicated by Pope *John*, 22, 33.

1347 31. *Charles* IV. Son of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and Grandſon of *Henry* VII. crowned with the Iron Crown at *Millain* 1354; the framer of the Golden Bull. 32.

1378 32. *Winceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, deformed and vicious; depos'd by the *German* Princes. 22.

1400 33. *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, paſſed into *Italy* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, ſold by *Wenceſlaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzo*, and ſo returned. 10.

1410 34. *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marquis of *Moravia*, Uncle to *Wenceſlaus*.

1411 35. *Sigiſmund*, Brother of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, crown'd at *Rome* on *Whitſunday* 1432. He travelled exceedingly for eſtabliſhing the Peace of Chriſtendom, diſtracted at that time with three Popes at once; and was a great promoter of the Council at *Conſtance*. This Prince was very unfortunate in his Wars, and was overthrown by the *Turks* near *Nicopolis* in 1395, and was often beaten by the *Huſſites* in *Bohemia*, after he had broken his Faith in the Council of *Conſtance*. He died in the Year 1437.

1438 36. *Albert* II. Duke of *Auſtria*, Son-in-law of *Sigiſmund*, whom he ſucceeded in all his Eſtates and Titles, excepting *Luxemburg*. 1. This *Albert* was the Son of *Albert* IV. the Son of *Albert* III. the Son of *Frederick* the Fair; and was elected Emperor in the Year 1338. From his time the Imperial Crown fixed in this Family though he enjoyed it but one year.

1440 37. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Auſtria*, the Son of *Erneſt* of *Auſtria*, and next Heir of *Albert* II. He procured the calling of the Council of *Baſil* for the Peace of Chriſtendom, travelling for that cauſe to *Rome*, where he was declared Emperor, *Anno* 1442. 54.

1494 38. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Auſtria*, who firſt united the Eſtates of *Burgundy* to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thro' with none. 25. This Prince was born at *Naples* in the Year 1459. He was of a good Diſpoſition and Wit, and a Lover of Learning and learned Men. He was elected King of the *Romans* in the Life of his Father, in the Year 1486. Under him the Reformation began. *Philip* his Son was born in the Year 1478, and died in the Year 1506, leaving *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany* after his Grandfather; and *Ferdinand* who ſucceeded *Charles* his Brother in the Empire.

1519 39. *Charles* V. King of *Spain*, Son of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*, Son of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puiſſant Prince, who had Priſoners at the ſame time the *French* King and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruin'd the League made by the Proteſtants at *Smalcald*; took Priſoners the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Haſſia*, drave the great *Turk* from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end reſigned all his Eſtates, and died in a Monaſtery in the Year 1558. 39.

1558 40. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, *Anno* 1531. Upon whoſe Reſignation he was choſen Emperor, *Anno* 1558. This Prince was born in *Spain* in the Year 1503. He was crowned King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in the right of his Wife, in 1527. He had three Sons, *Maximilian* II. Emperor, born in 1527. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, born in 1534. *Charles* Count of *Stiria* and *Corinthia*, born in 1540.

1565 41. *Maximilian* II. the Son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *Anno* 1562, ſucceeding the Empire after his deceaſe. This Prince reigned peaceably. He died in the Year 1576.

1577 42. *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt Son of *Maximilian*, had great Wars againſt the *Turk*, with whom in the Year 1600 he concluded a Peace; but being undermined by his Brother *Matthias*, was forced to ſurrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himſelf with *Auſtria* and the Empire only. Theſe eight laſt Emperors were all of the Order of the Garter. This Prince was born in the year 1552. He loſt *Rab* to the *Turks* in 1594, but recovered it again; *Erlaw* in 1596; *Caniſa* in 1600; and *Gran* in 1605; which are all recovered again by the preſent Emperor *Leopold* II. This Emperor was never married.

1612 43. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; in whoſe time were ſown the Seeds of that terrible War which had almoſt deſtroy'd the Empire. Having no Children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gretz* to be declared Succeſſor into his Eſtates. This Prince was born in the Year 1557, and elected Emperor in 1612. He was married but had no Children, and died in 1619. 7.

1619 44. *Ferdinand* of *Gretz*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Son of *Charles* of *Gretz*, the younger Son of *Ferdinand* the firſt; ſucceeded *Matthias* in all his Eſtates and Titles. A Prince more zealouſly affected to the See of *Rome* than any of his Predeceſſors, and a great Enemy of the Proteſtant Religion, occaſioning thereby that long and bloody War in the Empire of *Germany*, not yet fully ended. This Prince was born in the Year 1579, crown'd King of *Bohemia* in 1617, of *Hungary* in 1618, and elected Emperor in 1619. He began the War in *Bohemia* in 1620.

1637 45. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* II. born in the Year 1608: the 13th of *July* crowned King of *Hungary* in 1625, of *Bohemia* in 1627, choſen King of the *Romans* in 1636, and crown'd Emperor the next Year; broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (call'd in for the ſupport of the *German* liberty, and againſt the violent reſolutions of his Father at the Battel of *Norlingen*) the twelfth Emperor of the Houſe of *Habſpurg*, and the ninth of the Houſe of *Auſtria* without intermiſſion. The cauſe of which is to be attributed to *Charles* V. who procured in his life time that his Brother might be choſen *Rex Romanorum*, as his Succeſſor in the Empire: a policy which hath been ever ſince continued by his Succeſſors. And the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, becauſe the *Auſtrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Country, but better able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majeſty than any of the reſt of that Nation are. This Prince in the Year 1648 put an end to the deſtructive Wars of *Germany* by the Peace of *Oſnaburg*. He died the 2d of *April*, 1657.

1658. 46. *Leopold* IV. Son of *Ferdinand* III. born the 9th of *June*, 1640. was elected Emperor of *Germany* after the Death of his Father, the 8th of *July*, 1658. at *Francfort* (*Ferdinand* his eldeſt Brother having been choſen King of the *Romans* in 1653, and Dying of the Small Pox, before his Father in 1654.) This Prince was unfortunate in his firſt *Turkiſh* Wars, and in his Wars with the *French*, has not had any great advantage, but in the preſent War with the *Turks*, has in the ſpace of five years recovered *Tranſylvania* and almoſt the whole Kingdom of *Hungary*, and reduced that Potent Empire to the brink of Ruine. This Prince married the third time, *Eleonora* Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Newburg*, and now Elector *Palatine*, the 6th. of *January*, 1677, by whom he has *Joſeph*, born the 16th. *July* 1678. Crowned King of *Hungary* in 1688. King of the *Romans* in 1689. II. *Charles*, born 1ſt. of *October* 1685, all his Sons by his 2 firſt Wives are Dead.

And to ſay truth, it is but need that ſome great Prince or other be elected to it, who by the power and reputation of his own Eſtate may preſerve the Honour of the Empire, confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there ſo weakened by the alienating of whole Countries from it, (ſome Titulary acknowledgment excepted only) that it is nothing in effect but *magni nominis umbræ*, the ſhadow of a mighty body, a meer empty Title. For if we look upon the preſent ſtate and condition of it, we ſhall find it otherwiſe too weak to ſupport the great and ſwelling Title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it ſelf, it hath ſome Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no Subjection; as *Belgium*, *Switzerland* and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of Subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the Imperial Diet; as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorrain*, and ſome of *Italian* Potentates: Finally, ſome both confeſs the Emperour to be their Sovereign, and that they owe Service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but thoſe ſo priviledged, ſo exempted from his commands, ſo abſolute and incontrollable in their own Eſtates; that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his perſon; of which we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occaſions the Empire became ſo infeebled, it may be ſaid, that the reaſons and occaſions of it have been very many. As firſt, the weakneſs and improvidence of the *Caroline* Race, diſmembring from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces, reſerving only a bare Homage and ſome ſlight acknowledgment. 2. The Cunning of the Popes, who from the time of *Henry* the 4. to *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* had by their Excommunications and other practices ſo exerciſed the Emperours with inteſtine troubles, that they forced them in a manner to abandon *Italy*: inſomuch that the ſaid *Rodolph* finding the inconvenience of it, ſold moſt of his Eſtates there to the faireſt Chapmen. 3. This done, and the Popes knowing well enough that they could not wax ſtrong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperour's Eſtate in *Germany*, they firſt wreſted out of their hands the Inveſtiture of the Biſhops, Abbots, and other Eccleſiaſtical Preferments; who being now made their own Creatures, were ſo increaſed both in Revenue and Power by little and little, and fortified with ſo many Immunities, that ſome of them grew in time to be free Eſtates, all of them Princes of the Empire. 4. But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they baited them with continual Factions and perpetual Broils: which put them to a neceſſity of making what Friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and taking up what monies they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in Exemptions and Royal Priviledges, when they could not otherwiſe cancel or diſcharge the Debt. 5. And unto this, the making of the Empire Elective gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire but as Tenants for term of life, and therefore were more likely to diſcharge ſuch Debts by imparing the publick Patrimony, which they had no hold in, than to diminiſh any thing of their own Eſtates. 6. But being the Title of Emperour was the greateſt Honour which any of that Nation could be capable of, and ſuch as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their poſterity, (as we ſee what good uſes have been made of it by the *Auſtrian* Family, ever ſince the time of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*;) who would not part with ſome of the Imperial Rights, to advance his own Houſe to an equal greatneſs. And herein many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who, to get the Empire to themſelves, or leave it after them unto their poſterity, diſmembred from the ſame many Towns and fair poſſeſſions, given by them to the Electors for their Votes and Suffrages. 7. A thing which the Electors underſtood ſufficiently, and therefore were reſolved to make the beſt of the market, knowing that the Commodity could be bought of none but themſelves: as in the Election of *Winceſlaus* Son of *Charles* the 4th. of whom it was but Ask, and have what they have a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time ſo ſtrong, that there were few of them who durſt not undertake a War againſt their Emperours. And this appeareth by the Story of *Charles* the fifth, who though the moſt puiſſant Emperour which had reigned in *Germany* ſince *Charles* the Great, yet found himſelf ſo over-matched by theſe ruffling Princes, that he was willing to reſign the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed: By theſe and every of theſe means the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Eſtates, and thoſe Eſtates to be made abſolute and independent, as before is ſaid. The principal whereof which being deſcribed will make up the Chorography of this great Continent are thoſe of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. the Eſtates of the three Spiritual Electors, 3. the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alſatia*, 5. *Lorrain*, 6. *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Auſtria* and its Appendixes, 9. The Confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wirtenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the *Palatinate* of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia* and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenburg*, 17. the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, 18. *Saxony*, and the Members of it, 19. The Dukedoms of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, 21. *Weſtphalen*, 22. *Eaſt-Frieſland*. Such leſſer States as, being abſolute and free, are of leſſer moment, ſhall be reduced (together with the Imperial Cities) to thoſe ſeveral Provinces in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holſtein*, or *Holſatia*, though it be Imperial, and in this reſpect by ſome accounted as a Province of *Germany*; yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, I ſhall there ſpeak of it. Some of theſe are thus cenſured by *Aubanus*, a late Writer. They of *Suevia* (ſaith he) are Whores, they of *Franconia* Raviſhers and Buggerers, they of *Bohemia* Hereticks, thoſe of *Bavaria* Thieves, they of *Saxony* Drunkards, they of *Frieſland* and *Weſtphalia* Swearers, and they of the *Palatinate* Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than ſo. I know there is another diviſion of this Country, made by the Emperour *Maximilian* at the Diet at *Colen*, *Anno*. 1522. who, for the better raiſing both of men and money for all publick ſervices, cauſed it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1. *Lower Saxony*. 2. *Upper Saxony*. 3. *Weſtphalia*. 4. Of the *Rhene*. 5. Of the *four Electors of that part*. 6. *Franconia*. 7. *Suevia*. 8. *Bavaria*. 9. *Auſtria*, and 10. *Burgundy*. But that before propoſed being the more particular, I ſhall follow that, according to the order before laid down; beginning firſt with thoſe which, together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, contained anciently the Provinces of *Belgica* and *Germania Prima*, and ſome part of *Germania Secunda*, and made up the Kingdom of *Auſtraſia* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called.

I. CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Eſtates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before diſmembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom on the death of the laſt Duke hereof *Anno* 1609, contained the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark*, or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though theſe two laſt lie on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, and not ſo properly within the old Precincts of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named; yet being they belonged all to the ſame Prince, not parted by the interpoſition of other Countries, they ſhall be handled here together as the ſame Eſtate.

1. The Dukedom of *CLEVE*, properly and diſtinctly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt the Countries of *Mark* and *Berg*, with ſome part of *Weſtphalen*, on the Weſt *Gelderland*, and ſome part of *Limberg*, on the North the Earldom of *Zutphen* and the Land of *Over-Yſſel*, and on the South *Gulick*, and the Land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief Town of it.

The Country is very fruitful both for Corn and Paſturage, well ſtocked with Cattle of all ſorts for neceſſary uſe and pleaſure; hath good ſtore of Fowl, both tame and wild, is bleſſed alſo with an healthy Air, and, in a word, with all things needful for the life of man, well water'd with the *Rhene*, the *Roer*, the *Duſſel*, the *Ezfat*, and the *Nirſi*, common to this and the reſt of the incorporate Provinces.

The places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Cleve*, (in *Latine Clivia*) ſo called becauſe built on the ſides of three little Hills, (which the *Latines* call *Clivi*) gently deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it ſelf into ſeveral Channels. An ancient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old Foundations and other monuments of Antiquity continually digged up in the Fields adjoyning; but chiefly by an old four-ſquare Tower built on the higheſt of the three Hills, of great height and ſtate, Founded by *Julius Cæſar* as a Bulwark againſt the *Germans* inhabiting the farther ſide of the River. For proof of which, beſides the old Tradition conſtantly maintained, there is an Inſcription on the Gates of the Duke's Palace, near adjoyning to it, which ſaith *Anno ab Vrbe* DCXCIIX. C. Julius Dictator, *his partibus ſubactis, hanc Arcem fundavit, i. e.* that in the year, 698, from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Cæſar* the *Dictator*, having ſubdued thoſe parts of the Country, cauſed this Tower to be built. Dr. *Burnet*, who lately ſaw this City, ſaith it has a charming Situation and Proſpect, and a very pure and pleaſing Air. The *Dutch* under *Mauritius* their General, in the year 1628, ſeized on this City, which they kept, till the year 1672, when they were outed of it by the *French*, they again being forced to withdraw, they left it to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was poſſeſs'd before of the greateſt part of this Dukedom. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a Town of great Antiquity, as the Ruins of it do declare; ſuppoſed by *Pighius* to be the *Trajana Colona* of the Ancients. 3. *Weſel*, (in *Latine Veſalia*) a fair and rich Town, ſeated on the Confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Lippe*, which, riſing in *Weſtphalia*, doth here loſe it ſelf: of great note for a Colledge of Secular Canons built here by *Eberard* the 9th Earl, *Anno* 840, or thereabouts; and an Hoſpital liberally endowed for old impotent perſons, Founded by *Henry de Baers* the Dukes Chancellour. A Town not ſubject to theſe Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an Imperial City, and one of the *Hanſe*-Towns; now neither ſo Imperial nor ſo free as formerly: poſſeſſed firſt for the *Spaniard* with a Garriſon of 3000 men (at the beginning of the War of *Cleve*) by D. *Lewis Valaſco*, and from them taken by the *States* of the United Provinces, *Anno* 1628, it has ſince had the ſame Fate with *Cleve*. 4. *Burick*, on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Weſel*, amongſt goodly Corn fields and pleaſant paſtures. 5. *Duysburg*, or *Tuitchburg*, in *Latine* called *Teutoburgum*, a Town of the ancient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) ſituate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Roer*, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great Trading, and notably well built; Imperial, and one of the *Hanſe*: but ceaſed to be Imperial when ſold by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*; together with 6. *Cranenburg*, another Town of his Dukedom, but of leſſer note. 7. *Emmerick*; on the *Rhene*, a well frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8. *Rees*. 9. *Griet*, and 10. *Griethuiſen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11. *Calcar*, a Town more within the Land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of Cloathing, and the beſt Beer or Ale in all theſe parts, ſold thence abundantly into the Country round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auff de Baern*, it is ſuppoſed that *Cæſar Germanicus* built his Bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetera Caſtra* againſt the *Marſi* a Nation of *Germany*. 12. *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* nor *Nirſi*, not far from its influx into the *Maes*: which together with *Duiſſele* and *Riexwald* were bought of *Sigiſmund*, the Emperour, by *Adolph* the firſt Duke of *Cleve*, for a great ſum of money.

South of the Land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lieth the County of *MVERS*, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a diſtinct State, the Earl of which is ſubject to no other Prince but the Emperour only; ſo called from *Muers*, the chief Town of it, ſituate on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Duysburg*. Next Towns to which are, 2. *Orſey*, 3. *Augur*; of which little memorable. A ſmall Territory, but in a very fruitful Soil. The Neighbourhood whereof to the Land of *Colen* (to which it ſerveth as an Outwork upon that ſide) preſerved it in former times, from the Dukes of *Cleve*, who otherwiſe, no doubt, either by Arms or Marriage had been Maſters of it, as they were of the adjoyning Provinces on both ſides of the River; this is now under the Prince of *Orange*.

2. *GVLICK-LAND*, or the Dukedom of *Gulick*, hath on the Eaſt the County of *Muers*, and the Land of *Colen*, on the Weſt *Gelderland* and *Limbourg*, on the North *Cleve*, and on the South the reſt of the Land of *Colen*. The Air and Soil are much of the ſame nature as in *Cleve*; ſave that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of Horſes than in the other. The Seat of the *Menapii* in the times of old.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Gulick*, in *Latine Juliacum*, (whence the *French* call it *Juliers*) known by that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, ſufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof, but not otherwiſe famous; ſeated upon the River *Roer*, the chief Seat heretofore of the Dukes of *Gulick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*; and ſince the diſſolution of that Eſtate, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *States* of the united Provinces, and ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, called in by the Competitors to aſſert their Titles. In the year 1660, it was put by the order of the King of *Spain*, (who then had it) into the hands of the Duke of *Newburg*. 2. *Dueren*, on the ſame River, the *Marcodurum* of the old Writers; and of late memorable for the long Siege which it held againſt *Charles* the fifth, in his Wars againſt *William* Duke of *Cleve* and *Gulick* for the Dukedom of *Geldres* in the year 1545, but in the year 1659, it was alſo reſtored by the *Spaniards* to the Duke of *Newburg*. 3. *Munſter Eyfel*, (in *Latine Monaſterium Eyſalie*) ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Munſter* of *Weſtphalen*, pleaſantly ſeated in a valley begirt with Mountains, not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Erp*, under the Duke of *Newburg*, 4. *Caſter*, ſo called of a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle, built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. *Berken*, on the River *Erp*. 6. *Meroden*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which gives name to an honourable and ancient Family. 7. *Enskirck*, 8. *Berlin*, &c.

There is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom the famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it; famous of old time for the hot Baths both within and without the Town, whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquen*, (in *Latine Aquiſgranum*;) ſituate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitful Soil, but the Buildings nothing anſwerable to the fame of the place; inhabited for the moſt part by Smiths and Braſiers, who drive the greateſt Trade herein, working continually on Iron and other metals, with which they are ſupplyed abundantly out of *Liege* and *Limbourg*. The Town is Imperial, but under the Protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which Family, under colour of ſome quarrels about Religion, it was ſeized on and garriſoned by Marquiſs *Spinola* for the King of *Spain* in 1614. It was of great fame formerly for the death and ſepulture of *Charles* the Great, by him made one of the three ſeats of the Weſtern Empire, and deſigned by him to be the place in which the King of the *Romans* ſhould receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany* at the hands of the Archbiſhops of *Colen*. The Town is ſuppoſed to be formerly the wintering Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis* in the beginning of his Rebellion againſt *Veſpaſion*; during which Wars it is often mentioned by the Writers of thoſe times. They were built and ſtrengthned by *Auguſtus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; *quippe illis hybernis obſideri premique* Germanias Auguſtus *crediderat*, becauſe that *Garriſon* was a Curb, as *Auguſtus* thought, to the *Germans*, as *Tacitus*. At this day, this Town and *Triers* are reputed famous for holy Reliques; here being ſaid to be amongſt others the Bearing-cloth wherewith our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his Swadling-clouts, which the Emperor ſolemnly worſhippeth at his Inauguration, Concerning the ambition which the Papiſts have to be thought poſſeſſors of theſe Reliques: ſee, I beſeech you, how pitifully they have mangled the Head of S. *John Baptiſt*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his Face, and ſo do they of S. *John d' Angelie*. The reſt of his Head is at *Malta*; yet is his hinder part of his Scull at *Namur*; and his Brain at *Novum Roſtovienſe*: another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*; his Jaw at *Weſel*, his Ear at S. *Flowres*, his Forehead and Hair at S. *Salvadore*'s in *Venice*: another part of his Head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*: Yet is his whole Head entire and unmaimed in S. *Sylveſter*'s Church at *Rome*. And ſo no doubt is this Bearing-cloth at more places than one. In the year 1656, This City was all moſt intirely Ruin'd, by a diſmal Fire, and in 1668, there was a famous Treaty concluded here between the preſent King's of *France* and *Spain*. This City is ſtill Imperial and Free, but under the Protection of the Duke of *Newburg*.

But to return to *Gulick* again. It was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Dukes of *Lorrain*; whether laid to it at the firſt erection of that Dukedom, as ſome Writers ſay, or added to it by the Princes of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, when they ſucceeded in the ſame, I dare not poſſibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the ancient Verge or Perambulation of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne* makes the laſt in my opinion not to be improbable. It was firſt made an Earldom of it ſelf in the perſon of *Euſtace*, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, who ſeized upon it as his part of the Eſtate, on the death of *Godfrey*, his eldeſt brother *Baldwin* being abſent in the *Holy-Land*. In the perſon of *William* the fourth of that name it was made a Marquiſate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1329, created not long after Duke of *Gulick* by *Charles* the fourth, *Anno* 1356. His Eſtate was much augmented about that time, or but ſhortly after, by his Marriage with *Mary*, Siſter and Heir of *Rainold* and *Edward* Dukes of *Geldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two Sons *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes ſucceſſively, dying without Iſſue, the Eſtate fell to *Adolphus* Duke of *Berg* or *Monts*, as the next Heir-male, *Anno* 1425; and finally, together with that of *Berg*, was added to the Dukedom of *Cleve*, by the Marriage of *Mary* Heir hereof with *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and with it conjoyned till the expiration of that noble Family; whereof more anon.

As for the Eſtates of *Berg* and *Mark* they had one original, begun by two Brothers, the Sons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Teiſterbant*, of the Houſe of *Cleve*: out of which Houſe as they deſcended, ſo into that they finally were again reſolved, as their firſt materials. Of theſe two Brothers, *Adolphus* being the elder, was by the Emperor *Henry* ſirnamed the Fowler, made Earl of *Altena* *Anno* 930, or thereabouts; and *Eberard* the younger, by the ſaid Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard* entring a Monaſtery of his own Foundation, left his Eſtate and Earldom of *Berg* to the Elder Brother. United thus into one Eſtate, they became again divided betwixt the Sons of *Adolph*, the 3. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*; *Engelbert* the younger Son enjoying the Eſtate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder ſucceeding his Father in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the Houſe of *Cleve*, we ſhall ſee hereafter, having firſt looked over the Chorography or deſcription of them.

3. The Dukedom of *BERG* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen* and the Country of *Mark*, on the Weſt with the *Rhene* from *Weſel* up as high as *Colen*, by which 'tis parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the North with the River *Lippe*, which ſeparates it from the reſt of *Cleve*, and on the South with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the Hillineſs of the Country, *Berg* in Dutch ſignifying an Hill; (as *Burg* doth a Town or Borough;) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenſes* in *Latine*, and *les Contes* and *Ducs de Monts* in *French*. The Country for the moſt part, in the Vales eſpecially, yields a great ſtore of the beſt Wheat, and conſequently of the pureſt Bread; and in the Hill-Countries rich Mines of Cole, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Duſſeldorp*, ſo called of the River *Duſſel*, upon which it is ſituate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*, Fortified in the year 1613, by the Duke of *Newburg*. 2. *Adenburg*, built by *Eberhard* the firſt Earl of *Berg*, the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till removed to *Duſſeldorp*. 3. *Keiſerſword*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, belonging anciently to the Empire, but bought for a great ſum of Money of *Charles* the 4. by *John* Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* alſo, juſt againſt *Colen* on the other ſide of the Water; fortified in the year 1614, and made the Receptacle of the Proteſtants of that Biſhoprick, prohibited the free exerciſe of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marquiſs *Spinola*, on complaint made by thoſe of *Colen* to the Emperor *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, among the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermond*; on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Eſſen*, or *Eſſendia*, on the borders of the County of *Mark*, once an Imperial, but under the Protection of the Earls of *Berg*, of moſt note for a Monaſtery here built by *Alfride* the 4th Biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, for Fifty Two Nuns and Twenty Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the Dorps adjoyning.

How *Berg* at firſt was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoyned again, hath been ſhewed before. No ſooner made a State diſtinct; but it was added to the Patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the Marriage of Earl *William* with the Daughter and Heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William* and *Adolphus*, Sons of *Gerard* the 2. *An.* 1247. the firſt ſucceeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the laſt in *Berg*. During this Partage it was made a Dukedom in the perſon of *William* the firſt of that name by *Wenceſlaus*, the Emperor, *Anno* 1389. whoſe Son *Adolphus*, as next Heir, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, *anno* 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve* hath been ſaid already.

The

The Dukes and Earls of

A.Ch.	*BERG*	A. Ch.	*GVLICK.*
	1. *Engelbert*, the firſt Earl of *Berg*, diſtinct from *Mark*.	1129	1. *Euſtace*, the firſt Earl of *Gulick*, diſtinct from *Lorrain*.
	2. *Adolphus*, Son of *Engelbert*.		2. *Un*, Son of *Euſtace*.
	3. *N.* the Siſter of *Adolphus*.		3. *William*, Earl of *Gulick*.

4. *Gerrard*, Earl of *Gulick* and *Berg*.
5. *William* II. Son of *Gerrard*.
6. *Gerrard* III. Son of *William* II.

A.Ch.	*BERG*	A. Ch.	*GVLICK.*
1247	7. *Adolphus* II. younger Son of *Gerrard* the 2d. took Priſoner by the Archbiſhop of *Colen*, (whom not long before he had held in cuſtody) ſhut up in an Iron Veſſel daubed with Honey, and moſt miſerably ſtung to death by Bees.	1247	7. *William* III. eldeſt Son of *Gerrard* the ſecond.
1296	8. *William* III. Son of *Adolphus*.		8. *Gerrard* III. Son of *William*.
1337	9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *William* the 3d.		9. *Gerrard* IV. Son of *Gerrard* the 2d.
	10. *William* IV. created the firſt Duke of *Berg*, *An.* 1389, outed of the greateſt part of his Eſtate by his Son *Adolphus*.	1325	10. *William* IV. created firſt Marquis, after Duke of *Gulick*.
		1366	11. *William* V. Duke of *Gulick* and *Geldres*, this laſt accruing to him in the Right of his Mother *Mary*, Heir of that Eſtate.
		1404	12. *Rainold*, Duke of *Gulick* and *Geldres*, who died in the year 1423.

11. *Adolphus* III. the Son of *William* the Fourth, Duke of *Berg*, ſucceeded alſo unto *Rainold* the laſt Duke of *Gulick*, dying without Iſſue, as the next Heir-male, the Dukedom of *Gelderland* falling by the Heirs-general to the Houſe of *Egmund*.

1434 12. *Gerrard* IV. of *Berg*, and V. of *Gulick*, Son of *William*, and Brother of *Adolphus*.

1475 13. *William* V. of *Berg*, and VI. of *Gulick*, Son of *Gerrard*.

1511 14. *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *William*, Dutcheſs of *Gulick* and *Berg*, convey'd the whole Eſtate in Marriage to *John* the 3d. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *Mark*, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the Perſon of *John-William*, the laſt Prince hereof, *Anno* 1610.

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the Eaſt and North *Weſtphalia*, on the Weſt the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the South that of *Berg* or *Monts*. So called, as being ſeated in the *Marches* of *Weſtphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Country for the moſt part, like the reſt of *Weſtphalen*, is more fit for Paſturage than Corn, woody, and yielding ſtore of Pawnage to thoſe Herds of Swine with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Werden*, upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Weſtphalia*, the People whereof get great Wealth by grazing of Cattel. 2. *Soeſt*, (in *Latin Suſatum*) for Wealth and Greatneſs not inferiour to any in *Weſtphalen*, (except *Munſter* only) conſiſting of ten Pariſhes, and lording it over many rich and pleaſant Villages. Anciently it belong'd to the Biſhops of *Colen*; but in the Year 1454, did voluntarily yield it ſelf to the Duke of *Cleve* (being then Earl of *March* alſo) and was by Duke *John* the 4th couragiouſly defended againſt thoſe Prelates. 3. *Arusberg*, a fine and pleaſant ſite, uſed for a retiring-place by the Electors of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4. *Dortmund* (in *Latin Tremonia*) a County anciently of it ſelf, and held immediately of the Empire, poſſeſſed by the *Trotmanni*, a Tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence called *Trotmania*, and at laſt *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancoſtein*, built commodiouſly by *Adolphus* the Fifth of that Name, and firſt Earl of *March*; as was alſo, 6. *Ham*, or *Hammone*. 7. *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the firſt Title of the Earls of this Houſe, before they aſſumed that of the Earls of *March*, aſſumed firſt by *Adolphus* the 4th, on the Conqueſt of ſome Lands in the Marches of *Weſtphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*. This Earldom, upon the expiring of the Family of *Cleve*, was ſeiz'd on by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, who now enjoys it.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the reſt of thoſe Eſtates did in time accrue; it was one of the moſt ancient Eſtates or Principalities in theſe Parts of the World, continuing in a direct Line for the ſpace of 900 Years, held by them of the Kings of *France*, and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorrain*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the *German* Empire. Begun firſt by *Elius Grallins*, Companion to *Charles Martel* in his Wars againſt the *Friſons*, *Saxons* and *Bavarians*, whoſe Son *Theodorick* added hereto by Marriage the County of *Teirſterbant*, containing the Towns and Seigniouries of *Altena* in *Weſtphalen*, as alſo of *Bornel*, *Heunſon*, *Bueron*, *Culemburg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the ſixth Earl was added the Territory of *Twentzen* (in *Latin Regio Tuentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*: By *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and Seigniour of *Dinſlack*, ſetled upon him on his Marriage with *Maltida*, the Heir thereof: By *Theodorick* the 9th the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys* in the Land of *Colen*, together with the Towns of *Duysburg* and *Culemburg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*: By *John* his Son, the Town and Territory of *Keiſerſwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4th: By *Adolph* the 29th Earl, the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united: By *Adolph* his Succeſſor (made the firſt Duke hereof by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, *Anno* 1417.) were added the Lordſhips of *Gennep*, *Duiſſele*, and *Riexwald*, bought of the ſaid Emperor; together with the County of *Ravenſtein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers*, and *Hatteren*, for the Ranſom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other noble Perſons taken Priſoners by him, *Anno* 1397. By *John*, the firſt Duke of that name, the Town and Territory of *Soeſt*: And finally, by *John* the 3d, the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as Heir thereof by his Mother *Mary*, ſole Daughter and Heir of *William* the 5th and 6th, the laſt Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themſelves and their Sons and Daughters fit Matches for the greateſt Princes, but it pleaſed God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to diſſipate this brave Eſtate in the hands of Strangers, as ſhall be ſhew'd in the concluſion of this Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *CLEVE*.

A. Ch.	
717	1. *Elias Grallins*, Companion in the Wars of *Charles Martel*.
732	2. *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teiſterbant*.
755	3. *Rainold*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teiſterbant*.
767	4. *Conon*, of great Fame in Arms under *Charles* the Great.
778	5. *John*, Son of *Conon*, married the Daughter of *Michael Curopalates*, Emp. of *Conſtantinople*.
790	6. *Robert*, the eldeſt Son of *John*.
798	7. *Baldwin*, the Brother of Earl *Robert*. After whoſe death, *Anno* 830, the Earldom of *Teiſterbant* was taken out of it, and made the Portion of *Robert* a younger Son; from whom deſcended the two Houſes of *March* and *Berg*.

830 8. *Ludowick*, Son of *Baldwin*.

834 9. *Eberhard*, Brother of *Ludowick*, who gave *Teiſterbant* to his Brother *Robert*.

843 10. *Luthardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.

878 11. *Baldwin* II.

928 12. *Arnold*.

968 13. *Wignan*, Son of *Arnold*.

1004 14. *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire in the life of his Father.

1045 15. *Theodorick* II.

1088 16. *Theodorick* the 3d. Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the *Holy-Land*.

1114 17. *Arnold* II. Brother of *Theodorick* the third.

1161 18. *Theodorick* IV.

19. *Arnold* III.

1205 20. *Arnold* IV.

1218 21. *Theodorick* V.

1229 22. *Theodorick* VI.

1247 23. *Theodorick* VII.

1255 24. *Theodorick* VIII.

1271 24. *Theodorick* IX.

16. *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick*.

1309 27. *Theodorick* X. Brother of *Otho*.

1325 28. *John*, Brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the laſt of the line of *Elias Grallius*.

29. *Adolphus* the 7th of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, firſt Archbiſhop of *Colen* (as ſix of this Houſe of *March* had been (almoſt) ſucceſſivelybefore him) ſucceeded on the death of his *Uncle John* to the Earldom of *Cleve*, inaugurated thereto by *Charles* IV.

Earls of *ALTENA* and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.

834 1. *Robert*, Son of *Baldwin*, to whom the Country of *Teiſterbant* was given by *Eberhard*.

2. *Theodorick*, Son of *Robert*, the firſt Lord of *Altena*.

3. *Adolphus* I. Earl of *Altena*.

4. *Adolphus* II. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

5. *Conrade*, Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

6. *Adolph* III. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

7. *Eberhard*, Earl of *Altena*; his younger Brother *Engelbert* ſucceeding in *Berg*.

8. *Frederick*, Earl of *Altena*.

9. *Adolphus* IV. created the firſt Earl of *March*.

1249 10. *Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena*.

11. *Adolphus* V. Son of *Engelbert*.

12. *Engelbert* II. from whom, by a ſecond Wife, the Maſculine Iſſue, of Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, deſcended that Branch of the Houſe of *March*, which till of late were Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*.

13. *Adolph* VI. Husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) Daughter and Heir of *Theodorick* the 9th. Earl of *Cleve*.

1389 30. *Adolph* II. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the firſt Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigiſmund* at the Council of *Conſtance*, *anno* 1417.

1443 31. *John* III. Son of *Adolph* Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenſtein*.

1481 32. *John* II. of the Rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.

1521 33. *John* III. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, *&c.* by deſcent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in Right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *William* the laſt Duke thereof.

1539 34. *William*, Son of *John* the 3d. and *Mary* his Wife; Daughter and ſole Heir of *William* the laſt Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*, Father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the Wives of *Henry* the 8th of *England*. He contended very ſtrongly againſt *Charles* the 5th for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but, being too weak for ſo great an Adverſary, made his Submiſſion to him at *Venlo*, and ſo ſaved his Eſtates.

1584 35. *John-William*, Son of the former *William*, during the Life of *Charles Frederick*, his elder Brother, was Biſhop of *Munſter*; on whoſe death, *anno* 1575. he reſigned that Dignity, and in the end ſucceeded his Father in his whole Eſtates, which he managed with great Piety and Prudence till the Year 1610. and then died Iſſueleſs; the laſt of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whoſe death much quarrel and contention grew about the Succeſſion betwixt the ſeveral Competitors and Pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold*, Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, pretending an Inveſtiture from the Emperor *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom, for want of Heirs-males the Eſtate was ſaid to be eſcheated. 2. *John-George*, Duke of *Saxony*, deſcended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third; at whoſe Marriage with *John-Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, *anno* 1535, it was ſaid to have been ſolemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the Heirs-males of *Cleve*, the Iſſue of that Marriage ſhould ſucceed therein. 3. *George-William*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, Son of *John Sigiſmund* the Elector of *Brandenburg*, by the Lady *Anne* his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldeſt Siſter and next Heir of the Duke deceaſed. 4. *Wolf-gangus-Gulielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magddlen*, the younger Siſter of that *Mary*, who claimed the Eſtate as neareſt Kinſman by one degree to the ſaid laſt Duke. And though the Right ſeem'd moſt apparently on the ſide of *Brandenburg*, the Eſtate in tail, pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial Authority, and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg* not of force in *Germany*: yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a Poſſeſſion of *Juliers* and of moſt parts of that Country, the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* ſoon agreed the controverſie, and by the help of the Proteſtant Princes their Confederates recovered the greateſt part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg*, not content with his Partage, firſt married with a Daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, and called in the *Spaniſh* Arms, under the command of the Marquis *Spinola*, to abet his Quarrel: which made *George-William*, Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the Forces of the *States*, under the command of *Maurice*, Earl of *Naſſau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The iſſue of which War was this, that *Spinola* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Weſel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Duſſeldorp*, and moſt other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*, ſince ſurrendred to the Duke of *Newburg*; and the *States* got into their power ſome Towns of *Gulick*, with *Rees* and *Emerick* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, and almoſt the whole County of *Mark*; all ſince put into the hands of the Duke of *Brandenburg*. And though moſt parts of theſe Eſtates have been delivered ſince to the rightful Owners, yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which notwithſtanding that they both pretend to keep for the uſe of thoſe Princes in whoſe cauſe they ſtood: yet when ſuch ſtrong Parties keep the Stakes, it is moſt eaſie to determine who will win the Game: Such Alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and loſing of ſome Towns on both ſides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of theſe Princes were, 1. *Gules* over an Eſcutcheon in Feſſe *Argent*, a Carbuncle pierced, pometted and flower'd *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*. 2. *Or*, a Lion *Azure*, armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *Marck* I have no where found.

2. *The Eſtates of the Three* ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

ADjoining to the Eſtates of *Cleve* are thoſe of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Mentz* and *Triers*; not ſo contiguous and conterminous as thoſe of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out ſeverally by their Metes and Boundaries. And firſt for

COLEN-Land, or the Eſtate of the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Colen*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with the Dukedom of *Berg*, divided from it by the *Rhene*, on the Weſt with *Gulick*, on the North with *Cleve* it ſelf and the County of *Muers*, and on the South extending to the Land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times poſſeſſed of the Countries of *Berg* and *Marck*; but being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the Borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own ſecurity againſt that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the Reign and under the Conduct of *Childerick*, *anno* 412. or thereabout; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, *anno* 949. By *Otho* the ſecond made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or at the leaſt given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke thereof: after whoſe death, deceaſing without Iſſue-male, the Town of *Colen* and many other pieces upon the *Rhene* were ſeized on by *Otho* the third, and by him reſtor'd to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and of late times incorporated amongſt the *Hanſe*-Towns; but the Territory near unto it, and a great part of *Weſtphalen*, ſubject immediately to the Biſhop. The Biſhop's See was firſt Founded here by S. *Maternus*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Peter*, as hath been conſtantly affirmed by old Tradition: but howſoever it was an Epiſcopal See, without all queſtion, in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Maternus*, Biſhop hereof, ſubſcribing amongſt others to the Council of *Arles*, *anno* 326. And being *Colen* was in thoſe times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Biſhop had the power of a Metropolitan; according to the Rule and Obſervation ſo often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, theſe Biſhops, with their Brethren of *Ments* and *Triers*, were made three of the ſeven which were to nominate and elect the ſucceeding Emperor: After which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of moſt importance within this Electorate are, 1. *Bonn*, ſituate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful place of all the Country; the ordinary Reſidence of the Archbiſhop, whoſe Houſe or Palace here is ſaid to be one of the faireſt in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* it is called *Bonna*, and ſometimes *Caſtra Bonenſia*, the wintering Camp in his time of the Sixth Legion. Dr. *Edward Brown*, who ſay this Place in the year 1686, aſſures us it was then not long before Fortified by the Order of the then preſent Archbiſhop, and the Direction of one Colonel *Biſer*, a blind Man. In the Year 1688, the *French*, under pretence of ſupporting the Intereſt of the Cardinal of *Furſtemberg*, who was elected Archbiſhop of this See, put a ſtrong Garriſon into *Bonn*, and ſpent the following Winter in ſtrengthening its Works the 11th of *July*, 1689, the Elector of *Brandenburg* came before it and took by Aſſault the Fort of *Beul* over-againſt it on the oppoſite ſide of the *Rhene*, from which time it was blockaded to the 21th of *Auguſt*; at a diſtance then he began to fire upon it with his Cannon and Mortars, and drawing Lines of Circumvallation to prevent Sallies: *Mentz* being in the mean time ſurrendred to the Duke of *Lorrain* the 9th of *September*, the 10th the Elector ſummoned the Town, which refuſing to yield, the 11th he opened the Trenches and began the Approaches, and the 12th of *October* it was ſurrendred on good terms; the Counterſcarp having been taken the 9th day by Storm. 2. *Nuys*, by the ſame Writer called *Noveſium* (*Niveſia* by *Antoninus*) ſeated on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the Glories of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who being reſolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient paſs into *Germany*, lay ſo long before it, that he loſt the opportunity of joining with King *Edward* IV. of *England*, whom he had purpoſely invited to the War of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew ſo low in Reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorrainer*, forſook by the *Engliſh*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at laſt overthrown and ſlain by that beggarly Nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andernach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*, one of the ten Garriſons erected by the *Romans* on the Banks of the *Rhene*, to ſecure their Province from the *Germans*; the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Boppart*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Seltz*, *Straesburg*, and *Waſſenburg*. 4. *Lintz*, ſeated on the ſame River alſo. 5. *Sontina*, a Town of good repnte. 6. *Zulp*, now a Village of no eſteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* call'd *Tolliacum*, moſt memorable for the great Victory which *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* (upon a Vow made in the heat of the Fight to embrace the Goſpel) obtained againſt the whole power of the *Almans*, never preſuming after that to invade his Territories. 7. *Rhineberg*, commonly called *Berck*, the moſt Northern Town of all the Biſhoprick, ſituate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the Lands of this Biſhop, as alſo of the Dukes of *Cleve* and the Earls of *Muers* meet upon a point. A Town which for theſe 60 Years hath been of little uſe or profit to the right Owner, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes by the Confederate *States*; for each commodiouſly ſeated, as opening a Paſſage up the River, and receiving great Cuſtoms on all kind of Merchandiſe paſſing to and fro. But having finally been poſſeſs'd by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606 till 1633, it was then regained for the *States* by *Henry* of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loſs of no more than 60 Men: there being found in the Town 30 braſs pieces of Ordnance, 70 barrels of Powder, with Victuals and Ammunition of all ſorts thereunto proportionable. In the year 1672 this Place was taken by the *French*, and reſtored to the Archbiſhop of *Colen*. 8. *Colen*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, firſt built by the *Ubii* before-mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*; afterwards, in honour of *Agrippina* (Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Colonia Agrippina*, and ſometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compaſs, in which are numbred 19 Hoſpitals, 37 Monaſteries of both Sexes, 30 Chappels of our Lady, 9 Pariſhes, and 10 Collegiate Churches, beſides the Cathedral, being a Church of vaſt greatneſs, but of little beauty, and not yet finiſhed: the Metropolitan whereof is Chancellor of *Italy*, the ſecond of the three Electors, and writes himſelf Duke of *Weſtphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cæſar* with incredible expedition make a Bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous Enemy than the reports of his Valour. So powerful is laborious Induſtry, that it overcometh all diſaſters, and maketh the moſt unpaſſable Waters yield to heroick Reſolutions.

In this Town alſo is ſaid to lie the Bodies of the three wiſe Men, which came from the Eaſt to worſhip our Saviour, vulgarly called *the three Kings of* Colen. The whole Story is at large written in Tables which are faſtned unto their Tombs: the pith whereof is this: The firſt of them, called *Melchior*, an old Man with a large Beard, offer'd Gold, as unto a King; the ſecond, call'd *Gaſper*, a beardleſs young Man, offer'd Frankincenſe, as unto God; the third, called *Balthaſar*, a *Black-moor*, with a ſpreading Beard, offer'd Myrrh, as unto a Man ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the Table ſaith is probable; 1. Becauſe they came from the

Eaſt, and ſo is *Arabia* in reſpect of *Hieruſalem*; and, 2. Becauſe it is ſaid in the 72 *Pſalm*, *The Kings of Arabia ſhall bring gifts.* As for their Bodies, they are there ſaid to have been tranſlated by *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine*, unto *Conſtantinople*; from thence by *Euſtorſius*, Biſhop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus*, Biſhop hereof, *anno* 1164. This is the ſubſtance of the Hiſtory; which for my part I reckon amongſt the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from ſome part of *Arabia*) but have not leiſure in this place to refel the Fable.

As for the temporal Eſtate of the Biſhops of *Colen*, it came unto them ſpecially by the munificence of the Emperors of the Houſe of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Weſtphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbiſhop hereof, one of the younger Sons of the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, ſirnamed the Fowler, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt, his elder Brother. To which was added not long after the whole Land of *Colen* (as we have formerly deſcribed it) by *Otho* the ſecond, which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, was taken out of it, and ſetled on the Biſhops hereof, at ſuch time as the Dukedom of *Lorrain* was erected by him; ſuch pieces only as are found on the other ſide of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the Wit and Induſtry of the following Biſhops: exceedingly increaſed both in Power and Patrimony by the addition of *Liege* to this Electorate; it being of late the conſtant cuſtom of the Canons of *Liege* to chuſe the Archbiſhop of *Colen* for their Prince and Paſtor.

The Names of the Archbiſhops and Electors of *COLEN*; from *John Buſſieres.*

	1.	*Heribertus.*
1021	2.	*Peregrinus.*
	3.	*Hermannus*, Nephew by the Siſter of *Otho* II. Emperor of *Germany.*
	4.	S. *Anno.*
	5.	*Hidulphus.*
1084	6.	*Sigevinus.*
1089	7.	*Hermannus* II.
1112	8.	*Frederick.*
1132	9.	*Bruno*, Count of *Altena.*
1152	10.	*Arnoldus.*
1158	11.	*Hugo.*
	12.	*Arnoldus*, Earl of *Gelderland.*
1161	13.	*Frederick* II. Count of *Altena.*
	14.	*Reinoldus*, Count of *Daſſell*, who brought the three Kings from *Millain.*
1187	15.	*Philip ab Heinsberg.*
	16.	*Bruno* II. Count of *Altena.*
1199	17.	*Adolphus*, Count of *Altena*, ſucceeded *Bruno* his Brother, who became a Monk.
	18.	*Bruno de Segelbach* III.
1220	19.	*Theodorick*, Count of *Berg.*
1225	20.	*Engelbert*, Count of *Berg.*
1232	21.	*Henry.*
	22.	*Conradus.*
1261	23.	*Engelbert* II. *a Falkenburg.*
1280	24.	*Sigefridus de Weſterburg.*
1299	25.	*Wickboldus*, a Baron of *Weſtphalia.*
	26.	*Henry de Varenburg* II.
	27.	*Walram*, Earl of *Juliers.*
1359	28.	*William Genap.*
	29.	*John Varenbourg.*
	30.	*Adolph* II. Count of *Mark.*
1367	31.	*Engelbert* II. Count of *Mark.*
1368	32.	*Cuno de Falkenſtein.*
	33.	*Frederick* III. Count *de Sonwerden.*
1414	34.	*Theodorick* II. Count of *Muers.*
1462	35.	*Rupert*, Duke of *Bavaria.*
1479	36.	*Herman*, Landtgrave of *Haſſia.*
1508	37.	*Philip* II. Count of *Dhuin.*
	38.	*Herman* II. Count of *Weida*, depos'd in 1552.
1552	39.	*Adolph* III. Count of *Scaumberg.*
1556	40.	*Anthony*, Count of *Scaumberg.*
1559	41.	*John Gebard.*
1562	42.	*Frederick* IV. Count *de Wiedt.*
	43.	*Salentinus*, Count of *Iſenburg*; he Reigned in the Year 1576.
	44.	*Gerard de Waldpurg*, depoſed.
1583	45.	*Erneſt*, Duke of *Bavaria.*
1612	46.	*Ferdinand*, Brother of *Maximilian*, Duke of *Bavaria.*
1650	47.	*Maximilian*, Nephew of *Ferdinand*, he died *June* the 3d, 1688.
1688	48.	*July* 19. Prince *Clement* of *Bavaria*, Brother to the preſent Elector, was choſen in competion with Cardinal *Furſtemburg.* The 15th of *September* the ſaid Election was confirm'd by the Pope, the Cardinal *Furſtemburg* being rejected as Biſhop of *Straſburg.* This was made the pretence of a War by *Lewis* XIV.

Next to the Biſhoprick of *Colen* lieth the Land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the courſe of the *Moſelle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrain* on the South, beyond the Influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*. It is bounded on the Weſt with *Luxemburg*, as on the Eaſt with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the ſaid two Rivers, and is now called *Rhinegow*; more Southward on that ſide with the Country of *Weſt-reich* and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*. The Country towards *Lorrain* and *Luxemburg* is ſomewhat wild and barren, more Fruitful about *Triers* it ſelf and the Bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleaſant than profitable, the greateſt Riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Biſhop's See was here firſt erected by *Eucherius*, a Diſciple and Follower of S. *Peter*. The reality whereof is not only teſtified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a Writer of approved Credit, who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next Succeſſors; the line Epiſcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, *anno* 326. *Agritius* Biſhop of *Triers* ſubſcribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Biſhop had the Reputation and Authority of a Metropolitan, the City of *Triers* being anciently the Metropolis of *Belgica prima*, within which it ſtands. It increaſed exceedingly by being made one of the three Electors of the Spirituality, tho' the laſt in order, and Chancellor to the Emperor for the Realm of *France*: the Fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wreſted from it, with the reſt of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, by the *German* Emperors.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Confluentz*, or *Coblentz*, the *Confluentes* of *Antoninus*, ſo called becauſe ſeated on the Confluence or Meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Moſelle*; the Station anciently of the firſt Legion. A populous and well built Town, and ſeated in a pleaſant and fertile Country. This City was taken by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, who drove out the *Spaniſh* Garriſon, and kept it till the Peace of *Munſter*. 2. *Eerenbretſtein*, over againſt *Coblentz*, on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle of the Biſhop's, mounted upon a lofty Hill, which not only gives a gallant Proſpect to the Eye, but commands both the Town and River. It was yielded up into the hands of the *French* by *Philip-Chriſtopher*, Elector of *Trier*, for which he was carried Captive to *Vienna* by the preſent Emperor's Orders, and in the end of the War the Caſtle was reſtored to the Elector. This Caſtle was began by *Hillinus* Archbiſhop of *Trier* in the year 1166. 3. *Boppart*, ſeated on the *Rhene*, and call'd ſo *quaſi Bonport*, from the commodiouſneſs of the Creek (upon which it ſtandeth) for the uſe of Shipping: one of the Forts (as *Confluentz* before mentioned) alſo was erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; occaſioning in time both Towns. It was miſerably waſted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* and King of the *Romans*, becauſe the Biſhop of *Triers* agreed not unto his Election; but ſoon recovered of thoſe hurts. The ancient name hereof in the *Itinerary* of *Antonius* is ſuppoſed to be *Bodobrica*. It was pawned to the Biſhops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrain*, (by *Antonius* called *Pons Sarnix*) ſeated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moſelle*: poſſeſſed at the preſent by a Branch of the Houſe of *Naſſau*, (but Homagers of this Elector) entituled hence, according to the *Dutch* faſhion, Counts of *Naſſau* in *Sarbruck*, 5. *Veldentz*, and 6. *Beilſtein*, on the *Moſelle*, of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine*, *Auguſta Trevirorum*, the principal City of the *Treviri*, who poſſeſſed this Tract; ſeated upon the *Moſelle* alſo; the Metropolis of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the Reſidence of the Vicar or Lieutenant-General for the whole Dioceſs of *Gaul*; by conſequence the Seat of a Metropolitan when it ſubmitted to the Goſpel. Of ſuch antiquity it is, that it is ſaid to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it ſelf, and as little Trading; the River not being capable of Ships of burthen, and the Air generally ſo clouded and inclined to rain, that it is by ſome called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It paſſed ſometimes among the number of Imperial Cities, but now acknowledgeth the Elector for the Lord thereof; by whom it was made an Univerſity, one of the ancienteſt in all *Germany*, and of as much reſort for the ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences as the beſt amongſt them. This City in the year 1632, was put into the hands of the *French*, to preſerve it from the *Swedes*, and continued under them till the year 1645, when it was recovered by the Imperialiſts. The *French* took it again in 1672, but were forced to ſurrender it in 1675 with great loſs. 8. *Ober-Weſel*, or *Veſalia ſuperior*, (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Weſel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Veſalia inferior*, or the *Under-Weſel*) the fartheſt place of this Diſtrict, ſeated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccharach* a Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accompted for a Town Imperial.

This Country anciently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moſelle*, denominated from the River *Moſelle*, along the Courſe whereof it was firſt erected; an Eſtate founded by the diſherited Sons of *Clodian*, ſecond King of the *French*, at the ſame time (and on the ſame occaſion alſo) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them, of which we have already ſpoken, when we were in *Belgium*: this, of the two, the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and ſo more in ſight; the other being farther off, in Countries far leſs cultivate, but more defenſible. This Earldom comprehending, beſides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Zweibrucken* and *Weſt-reich*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, occaſioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their Port to the very laſt: inſomuch that *Giſlebert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moſelle*, in the time of the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, ſirnamed the Fowler, was thought by him a fit Husband for his Daughter *Gerberg*, married after his deceaſe to *Lewis* ſirnamed *Tranſmarine*, King of *France*; and *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, was married to *Henry* ſirnamed *Gozelo*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and by him made the Mother of another *Henry*, Succeſſor unto *Otho* the 3. in the *Roman* Empire. Impoveriſhed, not a little, both in Power and Patrimony by the erection to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, there grew ſome Feuds between thoſe Houſes, occaſioning the Death of *Albert*, another of theſe Earls, ſlain (as it is ſaid by *Lazius*) by *Godfrey*, Son of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*: more probably by ſome other Prince of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, it not being founded in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the Father of any Children. But this Difference being reconciled by the Marriage of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierrie* the 9. Duke of *Lorrain*, and the Family of theſe Earls expiring in a ſhort time after, this part of the Eſtate was ſeized on by the Biſhops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallick* ſide of the *Rhene*, by the Biſhops of *Mentz*, *Spires*, *Worms*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the reſt being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorrain*, who do ſtill enjoy it: the Emperors of thoſe times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

The Succeſſion of the Electors of *Triers*, is thus ſtated by *John Buſſieres*.

998	1. *Ludolphus*, one of the Family of the Dukes of *Saxony*.
	2. *Adelbert* Brother of St. *Kunegund* the Empreſs.
1008	3. *Minguard*, or *Megingotus*.
	4. S. *Poppo*, Son of *Leopold*, Marquiſs of *Auſtria*.
1037	5. *Eberhard*, Count *Palatin*.
1065	6. *Cuno*, or *Conrad* who was ſlain.
1066	7. *Udo*, Count of *Nellenburg*.
1077	8. *Ado*, whom ſome make the ſame with the former.
1079	9. *Engelbert*.
1101	10. *Bruna*.
1123	11. *Grodefridus*.
1130	12. *Meginherus*.
	13. *Adelbert*, II.
1132	14. *Hilinus*.
1154	15. *Arnolus*.
1188	16. *Johannes*.
1213	17. *Theodorius*, Count *de Wiedt*.
1242	18. *Arnoldus*, II.
1259	19. *Henricus de Winſtegen*.
1286	20. *Boemundus a Voſperg*.
1299	21. *Dietherus*, Count of *Naſſau*.
1307	22. *Baldainus*, Count of *Luxemberg*.
1354	23. *Boemundus*, II. Count *de Sarbruch*.
1368	24. *Conrad*, Count de *Falkenſtein*.
1388	25. *Wernherus*, Count *de Koningſtein*.
1418	26. *Ottho*, Count *de Ziegenhaim*.
1430	27. *Rhabanus*, *ab Helmſtat*.
	28. *Jacob*, Baron of *Sirk*.
1436	29. *John*, Marquiſs of *Baden*.
1505	30. *Jacob*, II. Marquiſs of *Baden*.
	31. *Richard a Grieffenclau*.
	32. *John a Meznhauſen*.
1540	33. *John Lewis ab Hagn*.
1547	34. *John*, Count *de Iſenburg*.
1556	35. *John de Stain*.
1567	36. *Jacob ab Elz*.
1599	37, *Lotharius a Maternich*.
1623	38. *Philip Chriſtopher a Soteren*.
1652	39. *Charles Caſpar a Petra*.
1676	40. *John Hugo*, Nephew to the former.

3. The Biſhoprick of *MENTS* is not laid out by Bounds and Limits, as the other, becauſe the Patrimony and Eſtate thereof doth not lie together, diſperſed for the moſt part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Biſhops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the Temporal Eſtate of this Elector is every way inferior unto thoſe of *Triers* and *Colen*; though ſuperior unto both in place and dignity, he being the firſt in rank of the whole Electoral Colledge, Chancellour for the Empire, and in all Meetings ſitting at the right hand of the Emperor. The Biſhop's See was firſt placed here, as ſome report by S. *Creſcens*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Paul*, of whoſe being ſent by him into *Gallia* (for ſo the ancient Writers underſtand *Galatia*) the Apoſtle ſpeaketh 2 *Tim.* 4. Though others with more probability ſeat him at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that anciently this City was a See Epiſcopal; *Martine*, the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the

the Council of *Colen*, *anno* 347. And if a Biſhop, certainly a Metropolitan Biſhop, this City being in thoſe times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Chriſtianity being worn out of theſe parts of *Germany* by the Conqueſt of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again reſtored in this Tract by *Boniface*; an *Engliſhman*, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Mentz* of this new Plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin*, ſirnamed the Groſs, Major of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and Father of *C. Martel*) who, for the Orthodoxy of his Doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deſervedly honoured with the Title of the *Apoſtle of Germany*.

Towns of moſt note belonging to the Biſhops hereof are, 1. *Mentz* it ſelf, the *Moguntiacum* of the Ancients, ſo called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Mogonus* in the *Latine*, (now better known by the name of *Mœnus*) oppoſite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old, ſo having the command of both Rivers; and for that cauſe made the Seat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the Frontiers, and eſpecially of thoſe ten Garriſons planted on the Banks of the *Rhene*, ſpoken of before. It is ſtretched out in great length on the River's ſide, but not of anſwerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not ſo well inhabited. The publick Buildings generally are very large and beautiful, the Houſes built according to the old *Roman* Model: the moſt magnificent whereof is the Biſhop's Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both ſides of the *Rhene*, fruitful in all natural Commodities, and abounding with moſt excellent Wines. Of good note alſo for an Univerſity here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the Electors; but eſpecially for the Art of Printing, which was here invented, or perfected at the leaſt, and made fit for uſe. This City was taken by the *Swedes* in 1631, and 1635, and remained in their hands till the Peace of *Munſter* in 1648, and paid to *Gouſtavus Adolphus* above 10000 Dollers for a Ranſom. This Prince built a Bridge over both the *Rhene* and *Main*, the latter of which, was found ſo convenient, that it is ſtill continued, though the former is taken away. 2. *Bing*, ſeated on the *Rhene*, another of the Garriſon-Towns erected by the *Romans* on the Banks of that River. In a ſmall Iſland of which, not far from this Town, is a Tower or Caſtelet called the *Mouſe-turn*, *i. e.* the Tower of Mice, built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *anno* 900, or thereabouts, who, in a year of great ſcarcity, pretending to relieve the poor people oppreſſed with Famine, cauſed them to be gathered together into an old Barn, where he burnt them all, ſaying, they were the Rats and Mice which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was ſo perſecuted by theſe Vermin, that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midſt of the *Rhene*, whither the Rats and Mice followed him, and at laſt devoured him. 3. *Lauſtein*. 4. *Hasford*. 5. *Oxenford*. 6. *Alderburg*. 7. *Middleburg*. 8. *Caroloſtadt*, the birth place of *Caroloſtadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Biſchoffſtein*. 10. *Koningsburg*, (*Mons regius* in *Latine*) the Birth-place of *Joannes de Monte regio*, a famous Mathematician, as appeareth by his Comment upon *Ptolomy's Almageſt*. Moſt of which Towns being in *Frankenland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in groſs by theſe Electors, as were the Land of *Colen* and Diſtrict of *Triers*, but piece-meal in a manner, and by retail; partly upon the failure of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, Dukes of *Franconia* alſo, partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperors, but ſpecially by making the beſt uſe of their Votes and Suffrages in the Choice of the Emperors, which they did not part withal for nothing. Such Towns hereof as lie on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene* were gained by like means upon the expiration of the Houſe of *Moſelli*.

The Electors of *Mentz*, are thus repreſented by *John Buſſieros*.

	1. *Willigiſus*.
1001	2. *Erckenbold Abbas Fuldenſis*
1120	3. *Aribo*, formerly Count of the *Rhene*.
1031	4. B. *Bardo, de oppers-hoſen Abbas Fuldenſis*, the *Chryſoſtome* of that Age.
1050	5. *Luitpold*.
1059	6. *Sigefrid Baron ab Epenſtein Abbas Fuldenſis*.
1084	7. *Wezilo*.
1088	8. *Ruchardus Abbot of Erfurt*.
1109	9. *Adelbert*, Duke of *Lorrain*.
1137	10. *Adelbert*, II. Count *de Sarbrugg*.
1141	11. *Matcolphus*.
1142	12. *Henry*.
1153	13. *Arnold de Selenhofen*, ſlain by his Subjects.
1160	14. *Conrad*, Count *de Wittelſpach*, depoſed by the Emperor.
1164	15. *Frederick*, Chancellor *of Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſettled by that Prince.
1180	16. *Conrad*, reſtored.
1205	17. *Sigefrid*, II. Baron *de Eppenſtein*.
1225	18. *Sigefrid*, III. Baron *de Eppenſtein*.
1248	19. *Chriſtian*.
1251	20. *Gerard a Minorite*.
1260	21. *Wernerus*, Count *de Falchenſtein*.
1282	22. *Gerard de Eppenſtein*.
1304	23. *Peter de Achzpalt*.
1320	24. *Matthias*, Count *de Buochegg Abbot* of *Murbach*.
1328	25. *Henry*, II. *de Virnberg*.
1353	26. *Gerlacus*, Count *de Naſſaw*.
1371	27. *John*, Count of *Luxemburg*.
1373	28. *Adolph*, Count of *Naſſaw*.
1388	29. *Conrad*, II. Count *de Weinſperg*.
1395	30. *John*, Count of *Naſſaw*.
1419	31. *Conrad*, III. Count of the *Rhene*.
1434	32. *Theodorick*, Baron *de Erpach*.
1454	33. *Dietherus*, Count *de Iſenburg* depoſed.
1461	34. *Alphonſus*, Count of *Naſſaw*.
1475	*Dietherus*, reſtored.
1482	35. *Albert*, Duke of *Saxony*.
1484	36. *Berthold*, Count of *Henneuberg*.
1505	37. *Jacob a Liebenſtein*.
1508	38. *Uriel a Gemmingen*.
1508	39. *Albert*, Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*.
1545	40. *Sebaſtian ab Heuſenſtein*.
1555	41. *Daniel Brendel ab Homperg*.
1582	42. *Wolfang*, Treaſurer of *Dalburg*.
1601	43. *John Adamus de Bicken*.
1604	44. *John Swicard de Cronberg*.
1626	45. *Gerg Frederick Greiffen*.
1629	46. *Anſelm Caſſimir ab Vinſtatt*.
1647	47. *John Philip a Schonborn*, Biſhop of *Wurtsburg*.
1673	48. *Daniamus Hartard*.
1679	49. *Charles Henry Metternich*.
1679	50. *Anſelm Francis ab Ingelſheim*.

3. *The PALATINATE of the RHENE.*

THE *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE* is bounded on the East with the Dukedom of *Wirtemberg* and ſome part of *Franconia*, with the reſidue thereof and the River *Maine* on the North, on the South with *Elſas* or *Alſacia*, and on the Weſt with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gemerſheim*, North and South, 72 miles, and in breadth from *Zweibrucken* to *Lauden*, Eaſt and Weſt, 90 miles.

It is called the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate of Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*. The *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, becauſe lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is ſaid to be the moſt pleaſant part of all *Germany*, ſtored with all ſorts of Fruits and Metalls, abounding with thoſe cool

Wines which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rhemiſh*; adorned with many goodly Towns both for ſtrength, populouſneſs, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

The Religion of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate*, which depends upon it, hath much varied ſince the firſt Reformation eſtabliſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond according to the Form and Doctrine of the Confeſſion of *Ausburg*; the Doctrine and Diſcipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutheran* Form reſtored again by *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*, as more conducing to the ends of ſome needy Statiſts, who could not otherwiſe raiſe their Fortunes than by the invading the Tithes and Glebe, and other poor remainders of the Churche's Patrimony; of which the Clergy being univerſally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miſerable ſhort Stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became ſo contemptible and neglected by all ſorts of men, that at the laſt the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the ſame condition with the Church of *Iſrael* under the Reign of *Jeroboam*, when *Prieſts were made out of the meaneſt of the People.* And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Geneva* Plat-form as near as it might be, yet were thoſe Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the Elderſhips, and therefore did appoint ſome ſuperior Offices to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inſpectores & Præpoſitos*, their Power being much the ſame with that of the particular Superintendent amongſt the *Lutherans*; and over them a ſtanding Conſiſtory conſiſting of three Miniſters and as many Counſellers of State, of the Prince's nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A Temperament for which they were beholden to *Eraſtus* a Doctor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, who made this Pill, to purge Presbytery of ſome Popiſh humours which ſecretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole Model and Religion of the Country is much changed of late; and the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, reſtored in moſt parts thereof ſince the Conqueſt of them by the *Spaniards* and *Bavarians*, which before we ſpake of.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Moſpach*, a pretty neat Town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a Præfecture, not far from the borders of *Wirtenberg*. 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the ſame River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperor and *Palatinate* of the Earls of *Hohenloe*, An. 1571, the other moiety belonging to the Biſhop of *Wormes*. 3. *Weinheim*, a ſmall Town not far from *Ladenberg*, belonging once to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, but on ſome controverſie ariſing about the Title, adjudged unto the ſaid *Rupertus* and his Heirs for ever. 4. *Scrieſſen*, in the ſame Tract, well ſeated but not very large, ſold with the Caſtle of *Straluberg* to the ſaid *Rupertus* by *Sifride* (or *Sigefride*) of *Stralnberg*, the right Heir hereof, *Anno* 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right ſhore of the *Neccar*, (going down the water) compaſſed on three ſides with Mountains and lying open only toward the Weſt; which makes the Air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief Beauty of it lyeth in one long Street, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt: on the South-eaſt ſide whereof is a fair and pleaſant Market-place, and not far off a very high Mountain called *Koningſtall*, (that is to ſay, the *Kingly Seat*) upon the middle aſcent whereof is the Caſtle, where the Princes Electors uſe to keep their Courts; and on the very Summit or top thereof, the ruins of an old Tower blown up with Gun-powder. A Town of no great bigneſs, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was uſed in the time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the reſt being either ruined, or employed unto other uſes, if not repaired again, ſince the *Spaniards* became maſters of it, for more frequent Maſſes. Howſoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this *Palatinate*; not long ſince furniſhed with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (eſpecially Manuſcripts) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, till matched, if not over-matched, by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*. Moſt of them to the great prejudice of the Proteſtant Cauſe were carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, *anno* 1020. Finally for the Town it ſelf, it was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Biſhop of *Wormes*, from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*, and it is now famous for being the Seat of the *Palſegraves*, the Sepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for a Univerſity founded by the Emperor and Palatine *Rupertus*, *An.* 1346. This City was taken, and retaken ſeveral times in the *Swediſh* War, but after the Treaty of *Munſter* in the year 1649, was at laſt reſtored to its own proper Maſter, the Elector *Palatine*, and is now recovering its ancient Splendor, which was much abated in theſe troubles. In the year 1688, this City, and with it the whole *Palatinate*, was taken by the *Frtnch* with ſmall reſiſtance. 6. *Baccharach*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, ſo called *quaſi Bacchi ara*, for the excellent Wines. 7. *Coub*, on the other ſide of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Caſtle called *Pfalts*, from whence the name *Pfalts-grave*, or *Palſgrave* ſeemeth to ſome to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a ſtrong Town; which together with *Keiſers-Lautern* and *Ingelheim* were given to the *Palatines* by *Wenceſlaus*, and after ſettled on them by *Rupertus* then Emperor and *Palatine* for 100000 Florens, *Anno* 1402. 9. *Creutznach*, called anciently *Staroneſus*. 10. *Frankendale*, lately a Monaſtery only, but being well peopled by ſuch of the *Netherlands* who to avoid the fury of the Duke of *Alva* fled hither, is now a Town of principal ſtrength. 11. *Gemerſheim*; and 12, *Manheim*, a well fortified Town, ſeated on the Confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*. The 5th of *November* 1688, it was Inveſted by the Forces of *France*, under the *Dauphine*, the 8th the Trenches were opened, and the 10th the Town was ſurrendred.

On the Eaſtern part of the Country ſtandeth 13. *Laden*; ſituate on the little River *Tauber*, the fartheſt bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-eaſt, there adjoyning to the reſt of *Frankenland*. And on the Weſt-ſide the Towns of 14. *Newſtat*, 15. *Keiſers-Lautern*, in *Latine* called *Cæſarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial, from which, and from its ſituation on the River *Lauter*, it received this name. This Town was taken the 30th of *September* 1688, by the Marquiſs *de Bouflers*; after it had been twice Storm'd, the Garriſon ſurrendring it, almoſt the whole *Palatinate* followed it without any conſiderable reſiſtance. 16. *Zweibrucken*, inveſted with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Zweibruck*, the Patrimony and Title of a younger Houſe of the *Pfaltsgraves*, whom the *Latine* Writers call *Principes Bipontani*, the *French* the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17. *Simmeren*, on the North-weſt point of it, where it meets with the diſtrict of *Triers*; the Title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Duke of *Simmeren*, ſituate in that part of the Country which is called *Weſtreich*, of which *Zweibrucken* is alſo part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince, moſt of which they have added to their Eſtates within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Eſtates, ſo potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in War and Peace, and ſo Ingrafted themſelves into the moſt notable Families of *Germany*, that I may well ſay with *Irenicus*, *Non eſt alia* Germaniæ *Familia cui plus debeat Nobilitas.*

Deupont, one of the places mentioned in this Paragraph, gives Title to one of the Families of the Illuſtrious *Palatine* Family, Founded in the Perſon of *John*, Son of *Wolfang* Duke of *Deuxpont*, his Son *John* was Born 1584, he Died in the year 1635, ſucceeded by *Frederick* his Son, Born 5th of *April* 1616, he having no Male-Iſſue, his Eſtate went to *Frederick Lewis*, Son of *Frederick Caſſimer* Brother of *John* II. This Prince was Born in 1619, became Duke of *Deuxpont* in 1661, and being driven out of it by the *French*, he Dyed 1ſt. of *April* 1681, without Iſſue-Male. So the Right of this Dukedom returned to *Charles Gerard* Son of *John Caſſimir*, youngeſt Son of *John* I, who afterward upon the Reſignation of *Chriſtina* Queen of *Sweden*, became King of *Sweden*, and is now in *Charles* his Son, at preſent King of *Sweden*, to whom *Lewis* the 14th in the year 1689, offered to reſtore it, if this Prince would ſtand Neuter in the preſent War, which was rejected by that brave Prince. The *French* ſeized theſe Countries in the year 1676.

Within the Limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Biſhopricks of *Spires* and *Worms*; both anciently of great Revenue, but Feudataries for a great part of their Eſtates to theſe Electors. Of theſe more toward the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* ſide thereof, ſtands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newneſs of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetum*, from the *Nemetes*, who poſſeſſed this Tract; and ſometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth ſtill continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Biſhop's See; *Teſſis* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, *Anno* 347. A neat Town, and very delectably ſeated, of great reſort, by reaſon of the Imperial Chamber, the Soveraign Court of Judicature of all the Empire, capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all Princes and free States thereof. A Court which firſt followed the Emperor in all his Removes, (as anciently the *King's Bench* in *England*) but by *Maximilian* the Emperour firſt made ſedentary, and fixed at *Francford*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Proteſtants* was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the Reformed Religion, upon their legal *Proteſtation* here exhibited. This City was taken, and diſmantell'd by *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, ſo that it was the more eaſily recovered by the Imperialiſts in the year 1635. In the year 1688, the *French* took it and carried away all the Records of the Court, and in 1689, Burnt the whole Town down to the Ground, not leaving one building ſtanding, whereupon the *Dyet* agreed to ſettle this Court at *Weſlar*, a City in *Haſſia*, 7 Miles from *Franckfort* to the North. More down the water and on the ſame ſhore thereof, ſtands the City of *Wormes*, one of thoſe built upon the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; by *Ptolomy* called *Borbetomagus* by *Antonine Civitas Wormenſis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of thoſe parts, whoſe chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Epiſcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Victor* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen* before mentioned. A Town to be obſerved for the firſt appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the 5th. (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City) who, being diſſuaded from that Journey by ſome of his Friends, returned this reſolute Anſwer, That *go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town, as there were Tiles on the Houſes.* Chief Towns belonging to this Biſhop are, 1. *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Biſhop of *Spires*, whoſe Reſidence it ſometimes is; conveniently ſeated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon ſome deſign which was then in hand fortified ſtrongly by the Biſhop. But this new Fortification, being begun in a time of Peace, gave great occaſion of diſtruſt to the neighbouring Princes, who interpoſed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince *Elector*, (of whom it was held in chief) to cauſe the Biſhop to deſiſt from the finiſhing of it. Which when he had refuſed to do, pleading a Placeat from the Emperor *Matthias* to compleat the work, the Prince *Elector* with the reſt of the Confederates beat it down by force. For this contempt they were cited to *Spires*, the Imperial Chamber, in which it was alſo reſolved to proceed ſuddenly and ſeverely to their condemnation. One of the chief Motives which occaſioned that unfortunate Prince to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and conſequently the chief cauſe of the *German* Wars. In managing whereof this Town was thought ſo commodious, that Marquiſs *Spinola* cauſed the works to be raiſed again, made it the ſtrongeſt Hold in all thoſe Countries, and cauſed it to be called by the name of *Philipsburg*. This Fort was taken in the year 1634 by the *Swedes*, ſurprized the next year after by the *Spaniards*, and in 1644 taken from them by the *French*, in 1676, it was retaken by the Duke of *Lorrain*, and by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* in 1679, reſtored to the Biſhop of *Spire*, the *French* having much improved its Fortifications whilſt it was in their hands. In the year 1688, the *French* ſuddenly entered into a War againſt the *Germans*, upon no other provocation than the Jealouſie of the proſperity of their Arms againſt the *Turks* in *Hungary*, and began the War with the Attack of this place. The 27th of *September*, their Forces came before it, the 3d. of *October* the Trenches were opened, the 6th the *Dauphine* came thither, and the firſt of *November*, it was ſurrendred to him after a ſtout defence, which it might have maintain'd much longer, the Garriſon being Great, and the *French* mnch incommoded by the Waters, Raines and Cold Seaſon of the Year. 2. *Rottenberg*, originally belonging to the Biſhops of *Spires*, but of late times poſſeſſed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of leſſer note I forbear to mention. In the year 1688, *Lewis* the 14th (of *France*) having began a War on the Eight pretences againſt the Empire, and more particularly againſt this Elector, after he had taken *Philipsburg*, proceeded and took *Heidelburg*, *Wormes*, *Spires*, *Oppenheim*, and *Manheim*, and a War enſuing of all *Europe* for the recovery of theſe Countries, he burnt and deſtroyed all theſe Cities, and Ruin'd all the *Palatinate* in Cold Blood, alledging he ought to deſtroy what could not be kept, that it might be of no uſe to his Enemies, he carrying the Inhabitants Captive into *Alſatia* and *France*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene* where the *Nemetes* and *Vangiones* ſpoken of before the other ſide the *Intuergie*. That on the Weſt ſide of the River was firſt conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*, of whoſe Empire it remained a part, but ſo that it was ſubject more immediately to the Earls of *Moſelle*, firſt under the Soveraignty and Vaſſalage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorrain*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became ſubject to the Empire, but ſtill poſſeſſed by thoſe of *Moſelle* as it was before. Eſcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by ſelling of their Voices, as they ſaw occaſion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and ſo alſo that part of it which lies on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of *Frankenland*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the faileur of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, and then devolved unto the Empire, as the other did. By little and little it got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperor's Houſhold, (ſuch as the Majors of the Palace to the *French* Kings at the firſt inſtitution) haſt firſt the honour of Counts *Palatine* beſtowed upon them, and afterwards the place of an Elector in the choice of the Emperor. But where their Eſtates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had ſubject to them *a nullo inveni ſcriptum*, I could never find any good Reſon to build on, ſaith the Learned *Munſter*; their habitation and poſſeſſion in and of theſe parts (acquired for the moſt part by Arms and Money) not being above 460 years ſtanding at the utmoſt. Likely it is, they had their Reſidence for the moſt part in the Emperor's Palace, living upon their Rents (as other great Officers of Court in theſe latter times) the Dignity and Authority of ſo great a place ſeeming ſufficient to content them: but were called *Count Palatines* of the *Rhene*, becauſe their Juriſdiction and Authority lay moſt eſpecially in theſe parts of the Empire which were towards that River,

ver. Afterwards, on the Marriage of *Otho*, the ſecond of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this Office with the Electoral Dignity fell into that Houſe, poſſeſſed at that time of thoſe parts of *Franconia*, and the Earldom of *Moſelle*, who not long after, on the dividing of that Eſtate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovick* the 2d, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which ſuddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperor and Elector *Palatine*, partly by the weakneſs and ambition of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and partly by the valour of *Frederick* the Prince Elector. Of theſe the firſt bought in the Towns of *Weinneim*, *Ludenburg*, *Scrieſſen*, and the Caſtle of *Straluberg*, with their Lands and Territories. The ſecond gave unto the *Palatines*, for their Voices in his Election, three ſtrong Towns of the Empire, *viz. Keiſers, Lautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*. And the laſt took in Battel, *anno* 1452, the Earls of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquis of *Baden*, the Biſhop of *Spires*, and the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and ranſomed them on what condition he pleaſed. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtenberg* (for it was not yet erected into an Dukedom) payed for his ranſom 100000 Florens; the Biſhop of *Mentz* redeemed himſelf for 450000 Florens; the Biſhop of *Spires* gave for his liberty the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Werſaw*; and the Marquis of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Creutznach* is a part, the Towns of *Beſiken* and *Binheim*, the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over againſt *Gemerſheim*, and his Royalties between this *Gemerſheim* and *Seltz*, a Town of *Alſatia*, in Fiſhing and Hunting. So having brought theſe Princes unto their Eſtates, let us next take a view of thoſe who have ſucceſſively enjoy'd both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

Electors *Palatinate* of the *RHENE.*

A. Ch.

1. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by him ordained to be one of the ſix Electors.

2. *Sigeſride*, the Son of *Adelheid*, Wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former Husband.

3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigeſride*.

4. *Ludolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.

5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.

6. *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperor *Conrade* the third.

1180 7. *Henry* II. ſirnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.

1195 8. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clementia*, Daughter of *Conrade*, Duke of *Schwaben* and Elector *Palatine*.

9. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father, the laſt Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperor, the Dignity from henceforwards becoming hereditary.

1227 10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the ſecond, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene* in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Siſter and next Heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he ſucceeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirm'd therein by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond.

1269 11. *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*: Born in 1229.

1294 12. *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, ſucceeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral Dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the Scale, his younger Brother *Ludovicus* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*. This Prince was the ſecond Son of *Lewis*, he was born in the year 1274, and was the Founder of the *Rudolphian* Line; and oppoſing *Albert* the Emperor he was forced into *England* in the year 1315, and there died in the year 1319.

1313 13. *Adolphus*, ſirnamed the Simple, reſigned the Electoral Dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter Man to undertake it. Born in 1300.

1327 14. *Rodolphus* II. on the Reſignation of *Adolphus*: Born in 1309.

1337 } 1353 } 15. *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the ſecond, Founder of the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, *anno* 1346.

1390 } 1385 } 16. *Rupertus* II. Son of *Adolphus* the Simple. This Prince maintained a War againſt the *Hanſe*-Towns, and vanquiſh'd their Armies. He alſo in the Year 1387 refounded the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, and died in the year 1398, the 12th of *February*.

1398 17. *Rupertus* III. elected Emperor in the place of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1406. made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the Fourth.

1410 18. *Ludovicus* II. ſirnamed *Cæcus* and *Barbatus*, the eldeſt Son of *Rupertus* the Emperor, married *Blanch*, Daughter to King *Henry* the Fourth of *England*.

1439 19. *Ludovicus* III. Son of *Lewis* the ſecond. He managed divers Wars againſt the *Turks* in *Paleſtine*; and in *Germany*, being Preſident of the Council of *Conſtance*, gave Sentence to *John Huz* and *Jerome* of *Prague*. He died in the Year 1439, and was ſucceeded by *Lewis* the Peaceable, who died in the Year 1449.

1451 20. *Frederick*, Brother of *Ludovicus*, during the Minority of *Philip*, his ſaid Brother's Son, ſucceeded in the Electoral Dignity, and added much to that Eſtate by his perſonal Virtue.

1478 21. *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third; pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his Wife; but after a long and bloody War was forced to go without it.

1508 22. *Ludovicus* IV. Son of *Philip*: Born in 1478. This Prince was a great lover of Peace, he ſaved *Luther* in the Dyet of *Worms* when deſigned to be burnt as *John Huz*. In the year 1532 he obtained the firſt Peace of Religion, and died the 16th of *March*, 1544.

1544 23. *Frederick* II. Brother of *Lewis* the Fourth, who firſt introduced the Reformed Religion into the *Palatinate* in 1546. He was born 1483, delivered *Vienna* from the *Turks*, and died in 1556.

1556 24. *Otho-Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Frederick* and *Lewis*, the laſt of the direct Line of this Houſe of *Bavaria*. Born in 1502, he was Heir by his Mother to the Dutchy of *Newburg*; embraced the Reformation in 1542; and after he was Elector began the Library of *Heidelburg*.

1559 25. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, deſcended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweibruck* or *Bipont*, younger Son of the Emperor *Rupert*, ſucceeded on the deceaſe of *Otho-Henry* without Iſſue. He was born in 1515. This Prince introduced the *Calviniſt* way into the *Palatinate*, by which he reaped much trouble.

1576 26. *Ludovicus* V. Son of *Frederick* the third, a munificent Benefactor to the Univerſity of *Heidelburg*: Born in 1539, *July* 4. He was as much addicted to the *Lutheran*, as his

Father was to the *Calviniſt* Religion, but was a peaceable and a wiſe Prince, that hated to embroil himſelf in other Mens Concerns.

1583 27. *Frederick* IV. Son of *Lewis* the Fifth, married *Ludovico* or *Louiſa*, Daughter of *William*, and Siſter of *Maurice*, Princeſs of *Orange*. Born in 1547, the 5th of *May*. He Fortified *Manheim* in 1606, and improved the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*: His Father, tho' a *Lutheran*, finding his Subjects moſt *Calviniſts*, brought up his Son in that Religion.

1610 28. *Frederick* V. Son of *Frederick* the 4th. Born in 1596; married the Princeſs *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proſcribed for demoliſhing the Works of *Udenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worſted at the Battel of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he loſt both that and his own native Eſtates and Dignities; of which he was deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperor: the *Lower Palatinate* being aſſigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*; the *Upper Palatinate*, with the Electoral Dignity, beſtowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Reſtored to the poſſeſſion of the moſt part of his Country by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, *November* 29. 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the Power and Government of the former Conquerors.

1631 29. *Charles Ludovick*, born *Decemb.* 22. 1617. the Heir both of his Father's Eſtates and Misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his Honours, (contrary to the Fundamental Conſtitution of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Father's Offences) but in fair hopes to be reſtored thereto in part, by the Pacification made at *Munſter* this preſent year 1648: which I pray God to proſper, for the peace of afflicted Chriſtendom. This Prince recovered part of his Dominions by the Treaty of *Munſter* in the Year 1648, and was made the eighth Elector. He died the 28th of *Auguſt*, 1680.

1680 30. *Charles-Lewis*, Son of the former, born the 31th of *March*, 1651. ſucceeded his Father the 28th of *Auguſt*, 1680. being then in *England*. This Prince married *William-Erneſtina*, Daughter of *Frederick* the third, King of *Denmark*, the 20th of *September*, 1671, and was a Prince of great Prudence and Clemency, greatly honoured and beloved by his Subjects. He died without Iſſue, and in him ended the Male Line of *Frederick* III.

1688 31. *Philip-William*, Duke of *Newburg*, born the 25th of *October*, 1615. ſucceeded in the *Palatinate*; who is deſcended from *Lewis* the Black, Brother of *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, both Sons of *Stephen* the younger Son of *Rupert* III. Emperor of *Germany*. He is ſaid to be a Magnanimous, Prudent, and Religious Prince, extreamly zealous for his Religion (which is that of the Church of *Rome*) and the publick Peace. By *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *George*, Landgrave of *Heſs*, he is the Father of *Eleonora Magdalena Thereſia*, the preſent Empreſs of *Germany*, who was married to that Prince in 1676. His eldeſt Son is *John-William*.

1688 32. *Joſeph*, born the 19th of *April*, 1658. A War being made upon the *Palatinate* in the Year 1688 by *Lewis* XIV. King of *France*, the old Prince ſeeing his Country likely to be ruined, ſurrendred it to the Prince his Son, as better able to defend it. The *French* however took all the *Palatinate*; and a War enſuing, and they not able to defend it, they burnt to the Ground *Heidelburg*, *Wormes*, *Spire*, *Oppenheim*, and *Manheim*, and all the Villages and Caſtles in this delicate Country, not ſparing any thing Sacred or Prophane which they could deſtroy by Fire and Gunpowder in the Year 1689, and then were forced to leave it. He died *September* 2. 1690. Aged 75.

1690 33. *John-William*, Son of the former.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the Concernment of theſe Princes. The *Palſgrave* hath many Prerogatives above the Electors of either ſort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony*, and Marquis of *Brandenburg*, becauſe *Henry* the Palatine was deſcended of *Charles* the Great: for which cauſe he is alſo, in the vacancy of the Empire, Governor of the Weſtern parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate or give Offices, to take Fealty and Homage of the Subjects, and which is moſt, to ſit in the Imperial Courts, and give Judgment of the Emperor himſelf. And look whatſoever ſhall in the vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are by Oath to confirm and ratifie.

The Revenues of theſe Princes were conceived to be about 100000 *l. per Annum*; nor could they be ſuppoſed at leſs: the Silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate*, yielding 60000 Crowns a Year, and paſſage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; beſides the Demeſne Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (ſince the Reformation) into their Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a Lion *Topaz*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

4. *ALSATIA.*

ALSATIA (or ELSAZ, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the Marquiſate of *Baden*, and ſome parts of *Schwaben*; on the Weſt with the Mountain *Vauge* or *Vogeſus*, which ſeparateth it from *Lorrain*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the pleaſantneſs and fertility of it inferior to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elſaſz*, (as ſome think) *quaſi Edelſaſz*, that is to ſay, a *noble Seat*; derived more probably by others from the River *Ill*, the only River of note in all this Tract, and called ſo, *quaſi Ill ſaſz*, the *Seat* or ſituation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower* and *Higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, ſo called becauſe farther off from the Mountains, and down the Water in reſpect of the courſe of the *Rhene*. A Country ſo abundantly fruitful in Wine and Corn (with which it furniſheth ſome parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour-Countries) that it is generally called *Germania Nutrix*, or the Nurſe of *Germany*; by *Winphelegius*, the *Epitome*, or Abſtract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1. *Straesburg*, ſo called from the multitude of Streets (the *Dutch* call them *Straets*) anciently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the *Roman* Exchequer or Receipt, here kept in the time of their Greatneſs; or from ſome Mines of Silver which were found about it. A ſtately, rich, and populous City, well ſtored with publick Garners and Cellars of Wine againſt times of Dearth; ſituate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Bruſch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*, by which, and by the helps of Art, it is very ſtrongly fortified: deſigned from the firſt Foundation for a Town of War, this being another of the Towns which the *Romans* built to defend the *Rhene* againſt the *Germans*; now an Imperial City, and a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alſatia*. The Church Cathedral is one of the faireſt in all *Germany*, much famed for a Clock of moſt admirable Workmanſhip, and a Steeple of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 Foot in height, the higheſt of any in Chriſtendom, higher (if the meaſure of it be not miſtaken) by 40 Foot than the Steeple of St. *Paul*'s in *London* before the firing of it. Of this thus ſaith the Poet in *Adrianus*,

Urbs præclara ſitu, ripis contermina Rheni,
Maxima cui celſa metiuntur mœnia turris.
Straesburg on *Rhene*'s inamell'd Banks doth lie,
Whoſe Tower even bids defiance to the Sky.

The Reformation began to be entertained in this City in the Year 1522, and was ſetled in 1529. For the defence of which it entred into a League with the Reformed Cantons in 1638, and opened an Univerſity in 1566. The 29th of *September*, 1681, the preſent King of *France*, *Lewis* XIV. ſuddenly ſurprized this City in a time of Peace, who has ſince ſpent very much in the Fortifying of it, but has not as yet attempted any change of the Religion publickly profeſſed. 2. *Zabern*, or *Alſaſz Zavern*, the *Taberna* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old *Roman* Garriſons, deſtroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the Apoſtate, then Emperor; now the chief place of Reſidence for the Biſhops of *Straesburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Juſtice kept by his Officers in this City for the *Lower Alſatia*. 3. *Altrip*, ſo called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the River on which it is ſeated; another of the Towns or Forts, which the *Romans*, like politick Conquerors, built on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the Incurſions of the barbarous Nations. And ſo was, 4. *Seltz*, ſeated on the *Rhene*, betwixt *Straesburg* and *Zabern*. And, 5. *Weiſſenburg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a Town Imperial, but ſeated on the River *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompaſſed with little Hills and delightful Groves, the River gently waſhing the Walks thereof, and adding much to it both of ſtrength and beauty. 6. *Hagenaw*, between *Seltz* and *Straesburg*, but not ſo near unto the *Rhene* as either of them; firſt Walled by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1164, and ſince that time of great importance for command of the Country, but ſeated in a ſandy and unfruitful Soil; frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elſaſs* for the Commodities of Hunting. This City by the Treaty of *Munſter* was aſſigned to the *French*; and in the Year 1675 was beſieged unſucceſsfully by the Imperialiſts, yet the *French* have ſince Demoliſhed its Works. More from the *Rhene*, 7. *Stechfelt*, corruptly ſo called for *Steffansfelt*, from the Monaſtery of S. *Stephen* there Founded. 8. *Haſle*, on the *Bruſch*, &c.

Places of the moſt importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA* are, 1. *Ruffach*, on the River *Ombach*, belonging to the Biſhops of *Straesberg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the Earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great reſort by the *Roman* Nobility much taken with the Fruitfulneſs and Pleaſures of it, and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it, by reaſon of their vigorous proceedings againſt Thieves; from whence the *Germans* have a Proverb, That *the old Gallows at* Ruffach *is made of Oak*. Taken by *Turenne* in 1675. 2. *Enſheim*, or *Enſiſheim*, on the River *Ill*, anciently the Station of the Tenth Legion, and then called *Aruncis*; now of moſt note for the Supreme Court of Juſtice there held for *Briſgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alſatia*, by the Archdukes of *Auſtria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3. *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raiſed out of the Ruines of old *Argentaria*, deſtroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*; well built, and ſituate almoſt in the very Navel of *Alſatia*, not above an hours Journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich Soil both for Corn and Paſturage, the Country hereabouts being very well watered with the *Lauch*, *Duro*, *Fech*, and *Ill*. The *French* in the Year 1673 diſmantled this Place. 4. *Schleſtad*, in the modern *Latin*, *Seleſtadium*, but by the Ancients called *Elcebus*, the Station at that time of the Ninteenth Legion; afterwards of great Fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis*, Dutcheſs of *Schwaben*, *anno* 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Jeruſalem*, which in tract of time became the richeſt Monaſtery in all theſe parts. It is ſituate in a very fertile and delightful Soil, having the *Rhene* on the one ſide, and ſome ſpurs of the Mountain *Vauge*, ſhadowed with Groves of Cheſnuts upon the other; walled in the time of *Frederick* the ſecond, about the Year 1216, and on the Eaſt defended with impaſſible Fens. Diſmantled at the ſame time with the former. 5. *Gebwiler*, and 6. *Watweil*, both ſeated near the aforeſaid Mountains, and both ſubject to the Abbot of *Murbach*. 7. *Keiſersberg*. 8. *Turcheim*, two Imperial Towns, but not otherwiſe memorable; as neither are many of the reſt, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this ſmall Province of *Elſaſs* (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with Walls, beſides Caſtles, Forts and Villages, almoſt innumerable; and amongſt them more Free and Imperial Cities than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elſaſs*, bordering on the Canton of *Baſil*, is commonly call'd by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latin*, *Sungovia* and *Sungoia*, but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirt*, from *Pfirt* the chief Town of it, and the Duke's Seat. The Country is very plentiful in Corn and Wine, (as the reſt of *Elſaſs*) affording good ſtore of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mulhauſen*, on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Biſhops of *Straesburg*, as were alſo *Keiſersberg* and *Colmar*; but being taken in by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made Imperial, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls and as many Counteſſes. 3. *Maſz munſter*, ſo called from a Monaſtery of Nuns there Founded by *Maſo*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Engelburg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty Hill. 5. *Morſ-munſter*, ſo named of an ancient Monaſtery there Founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, moſt of them great Builders of Religious Houſes. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7. *Pfirt* it ſelf, ſeated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore overgrown with Woods and Foreſts, whence it had the name, called by the *French*, *le Paris de Ferrette*, (corruptly for *le Pai de Foreſt*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirt*: by which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines* and other *French* Writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigiſmund* the Archduke to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, made by that means too near a Neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Weſtward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lyeth the Town and Earldom of *MONT-BELGARD*, (*Montis Belgardium* in the *Latin*) united by the Marriage of *Henrica*, Daughter and Earl of *Henry* the firſt Earl hereof, *anno* 1396. to the Houſe of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Clarewang*, 2. *Paſſewang*, 3. *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Caſtles; and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great ſtrength, proud of a Caſtle-Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name: once the Seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the Houſe of *Wirtenberg*; but now both Town and Caſtle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, cauſed a good Garriſon of their own to be put into them, *anno* 1633, under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged. *Eberhard* the ſixth Earl of *Wirtenberg*, by a Marriage in the Year 1439, obtained this Dukedom, it continued united to that Dukedom to the year 1608, when it was ſeparated and given to,

1608 1. *Lewis Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtenberg*, who was born the 29th of *January* 1586, was the firſt of this Line.
1631 2. *Leopald Frederick* Son of *Lewis*.
1662 3. *George*, II. Son of *Lewis*, Brother of *Leopald*, in the year 1684, he was expelled out of his Dominions by the *French*, and lives now in *Exile*. He has one Son, *Leopald Eberhard*, who was born the 21th of *March*, 1670. And may one day ſucceed in this Dukedom.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then ſubdued by the *Almans*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German* Empire. Governed for the Emperors by Provincial Earls, in the *Dutch* language called *Lantgraves*: at firſt officiary only and accomptable to the Emperours under whom they ſerved; in the end made hereditary, and ſucceſſional unto their poſterities. The firſt hereditary Lantgrave is ſaid to be *Theodorick* in the Reign of *Otho* the third: after whoſe death the Empire being made elective: gave the Provincial Governours ſome opportunities to provide for themſelves. In his Male-Iſſue it continued till the Reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire, *anno* 1212, and died *anno* 1250; during which interval this Eſtate was conveyed by Daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Oetingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, Son of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperor of the *Germans*, marrying with *Anne* the Daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became poſſeſſed alſo of his part of the Country; which added to his own, made up the whole upper *Elſaſs*, continued ſince that time in poſſeſſion of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, deſcended from him. The third part, comprehending all the Lower *Alſatia*, was not long after ſold by the Earl of *Oetingen* to the Biſhop of *Straesburg*, whoſe Succeſſors hold it to this day, aſſuming to themſelves the Title of the *Lantgraves* of *Elſaſs*. But as for *Sungow*, or the County of *Pfirt*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the Houſe of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illuſtrious Family, by the death of *Conradine* the laſt Duke, *anno* 1268, that great Eſtate being ſcattered into many hands, it was made a diſtinct Earldom of it ſelf. And ſo it continued till the year 1324, when *Ulrick* the laſt Earl dying without Iſſue-Male, left his Eſtate betwixt two Daughters: whereof the one, named *Anne*, conveyed her part in Marriage to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſirnamed the ſhort, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperor before mentioned; the other, named *Urſula*, ſold her moiety to the ſaid *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, (ſave only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alſatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*) governed in Civil matters and points of Judicature by the Parliament or Court of *Enſheim* in the Upper *Elſaſs*. This intire Country is now in the hands of the *French*, and was yielded to them by the Treaty of *Munſter* in 1648, and by the ſurprize of *Straesburg*, in the year 1681. They are become the intire Maſters of it.

5. *LORRAIN.*

THE Dukedom of *LORRAIN* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Elſaſs*, and that part of the lower *Palatinate* which paſſeth by the name of *Weſt-reich*; on the Weſt with the River *Meuſe*, or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxemburg* and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elſaſs*, it is parted by the *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, wherewith it is encompaſſed on thoſe ſides. Aſſigned unto *Lotharius*, ſecond ſon of *Lotharius* the Emperor, (who was eldeſt Son of *Lewis* the Godly) with the ſtyle of a Kingdom; from thence called *Lot-reich* by the *Dutch*, *Lot-reigne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorrain*, and the *Latine Lotharingia* are to fetch their Pedigree.

The Country is in length about four days journey, almoſt three in breadth, much overgrown with Foreſts, and ſwelled with Mountains, the ſpurs and branches of *Vogeſus*, and the once vaſt Wilderneſs of *Ardenne*; yet ſo ſufficiently ſtored with all manner of neceſſaries, that it needeth no ſupply out of other places. Some Lakes it hath which yield great quantity of Fiſh; one more eſpecially 14 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh whereof yields to the Duke's Coffers 20000 *l.* yearly. It affordeth alſo divers Metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in ſome places Pearls: Chalcedonians alſo of ſuch bigneſs, that whole Drinking-cups are made of them, and a matter of which they make the pureſt Glaſſes, not to be parellell'd in *Europe*. They have alſo a goodly breed of Horſes, equal to thoſe of *Barbary*, or the Courſer of *Naples*.

The people, by reaſon of their neighbourhood to and commerce with *France*, ſtrive much to imitate the *French* in garb and faſhion; but one may eaſily ſee that it is not natural: they have much in them alſo of the *Dutch* humour of Drinking, but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themſelves. Generally they are a politick and an hardy Nation; not otherwiſe able to have held their Eſtate ſo long againſt the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppreſſed with Taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and uſeful unto one another. Their Language is for the moſt part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxemburg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not ſo refined and elegant as is ſpoke in *France*, nor ſo corrupt and courſe as that of *Montbelgard* and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in reſpect of the *French* language, ſpoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of *France*, and uſually deſcribe it ſo in their Charts and Writings: but I have placed it with more reaſon (as I conceive) amongſt thoſe of *Germany*; firſt, in regard that a Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire; but eſpecially becauſe that, in the diviſion of the Kingdom of *Lorrain* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatſoever lay on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Meuſe* (as this Dukedom of *Lorrain* for the moſt part doth) was reckoned in the ſhare or portion of the *German* Emperors.

The Rivers of chief note are, 1. *Murta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and paſſing with a ſwift ſtream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good ſpace within ſight of the *Moſelle*, into which at laſt it falls near *Conde*. 2. *Moſa*, the *Meuſe*, or *Maes*, whoſe ſpring and courſe hath been already deſcribed in *Belgium*. 3. *Moſelle*, famous for the deſign which *Lucius Verus*, Governour for the Emperor *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariſeth in the Mountain *Vauge*, not far from the head of the River *Soaſne*, and disburtheneth it ſelf into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*; he intended to have cut a deep Chanel from the head of this unto the other, ſo to have made a paſſage from the Ocean to the Mediterranean, the *Soaſne* emptying it ſelf into the *Rhoſne*, a chief River of *France*, as the *Moſelle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle*, which mingleth waters with the *Moſelle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Sar*, 6. *Martane*, 7. *Voloy*, with others of leſs note: all of them plentiful of Salmons, Perches, Tenches, and the beſt ſorts of fiſh, as in their Lakes are great ſtore of Carps, ſome of them three foot long, and of excellent taſte.

Principal Cities in it are, 1. *Metz*, by *Ptolomy* called

Dividorum, *Metis* and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices*, who poſſeſſed this Tract. It is ſeated in a pleaſant Plain at the confluence of the *Selle* and *Moſelle*; the Royal Seat, in former times of the *French* Kings of *Auſtraſia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*; long before that a Biſhop's See, as it ſtill continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolomy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, ſo called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the Tract about it; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Moſelle*, and anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Epiſcopal See alſo, the *Civitas Verodunenſium* of *Antoninus*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*. The Town or Territory adjoyning in preceeding times belonged to the great Princes of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorrain*: but whither they had it in right of their Patrimonial Eſtate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might be, or that it came to them in the right of Marriage with ſome Daughter of the Houſe of *Moſelle*, or other Heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howſoever it came to them, it gave unto this Houſe the Title of Earls of *Verdun*, uſed in their Style, till ſwallowed with the reſt in that of *Lorrain*. The Biſhop whereof, as alſo thoſe of *Metz* and *Toul*, (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorrain*) acknowledge the Archbiſhop of *Triers* for their Metropolitan. All of them were in the number (heretofore) of Imperial Cities, poſſeſſed of large and goodly Territories and of great Revenue; but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2. *Anno* 1552, during the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and the Proteſtant Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them againſt the Emperor. And though *Charles* tryed all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and deſperate Seige againſt the City of *Metz*: yet was the Town ſo gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guiſe*, that he was fain to raiſe his Siege, and go off with diſhonour. Since that, they have been always under the ſubjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Metz* for the eaſe of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of ſuch Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great, but of a pleaſant and commodious ſite, well watered by the River *Meurte* or *Marta*, and fortified better than before, in the year 1587, on occaſion of a great Army of the *Germans* paſſing into *France* to aid the Proteſtants: moſt commonly the Duke's Seat, and famous for the Diſcomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here ſuffered, with the loſs of his life. In the Year 1633, it was taken by *Lewis* 13 King of *France*, and in 1661, by *Lewis* the 14th, who diſmantell'd it, but in 1673, he began to Fortifie it again, and has ſince made it much ſtronger than before. 2. S. *Nicolas*, a Town ſo populous, well ſeated, and neatly built, that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedency unto *Nancie* it ſelf; ſo called from a Church here built to the honour of S. *Nicolas*, Biſhop of *Myra* in the leſſer *Aſia*, whoſe body they pretend to be buried here, or at leaſt ſome part or Relick of it to be here inſhrined, occaſioning a great reſort of Pilgrims and other people. *Pont a Mouſon*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*, ſo called from a Bridge on the River *Mouſon* upon which it ſtandeth, of ſpecial note for a ſmall Univerſity lately founded in it, and for giving the Title of a Marqueſs to the eldeſt Son of the Dukes of *Lorrain*, called commonly and contractedly Marqueſs *du Pont*, *Marchio Muſo-Pontanus* by our modern Latiniſts. 4. *Vaucoleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whoſe Miracles and Valour the *French* attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the *Engliſh*. But being at laſt taken Priſoner, ſhe was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burnt for a Witch. Of which crime, I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwiſe conceive of her and her brave exploits, than as of a luſty Laſs of *Lorrain*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*, and ſo preſented to *Charles* the ſeventh, *French* King, as if ſent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpoſe, (as the moſt intelligent of the *French* Writers ſay) *pour fairer revenir la courage aux Francois*, to revive the drooping ſpirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raiſed again but by help of a Miracle. Upon the ſight of her *Statua* on the Bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verſes in her commendation, too long to be inſerted here, but they ended thus,

She dy'd a Virgin: 'Twas becauſe the earth
Bred not a man whoſe valour and whoſe birth
Might merit ſuch a Bleſſing. But above
The Gods provided her an equal Love,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lillies* and their Diadem.
You then about whoſe Armies ſhe doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her Match:
And when in field your Standards you advance,
Cry loud, Saint *Denys* and Saint *Joan* for *France*.

Next theſe we have, 5. *Vaudemont*, which gave the Title of an Earl to a younger Branch of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, ſucceeding at the laſt in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, in perſon of Duke *Rhene* 2. and ſince a Title of the younger Son of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Neuf-Chatteau*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amance*, ſeven leagues on the South of *Metz*, ſometimes the Chancery of *Lorrain*. 8. *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garde-lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9. *La Mothe*, ſeated on a River which falls preſently into the *Moſelle*. 10. *Charmes*, ſeated on the *Moſelle*, the place of Treaty between the Duke of *Lorrain* and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the reſult whereof was the ſurrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by conſequence of all the Dukedom, into the hands of the *French*, *September* 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extream North of all this Country, a well fortified Town and of great conſequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or wreſted from the Soveraignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth, (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. It was taken by the *French* in 1654. Of leſs note there are, 1. *Saint Die*. 2. *Saint Hippolite*. 3. *Bouquenon*, and 4 *Saverden*; the firſt Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633, in the War againſt *Lorrain*. 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Oden Chaſtea*, 7. *Mirecour*; all taken the ſame year by the *French*, in the proſecution of that War, before the Treaty at *Charmes*. 8. *Rombervile*, 9. *Eſpinul*, 10. *Gerbeuillier*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrices* and the *Leuci* ſpoken of before, together with the *Viridonenſes*; all of them conquered by the *Romans*, under whom this Country and the diſtrict of *Triers* made up the whole Province of *Belgica prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the reſt of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania prima* and *ſecunda* (containing all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, and ſo much of the *Netherlands* as lie on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called firſt, from the Eaſtern ſituation, by the name of *Oſtenreich*, or *Auſtraſia*; the portion of *Theodorick*, the fourth Son of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, from the chief City of his Kingdom called the King of *Metz*, whoſe Succeſſors follow in this order.

The Kings of *AVSTRASIA*, or *METS*.

514 1. *Theodorick*; the baſe Son of *Clovis* the Great, vanquiſhed the *Thuringians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Haſſia* and *Thuringia*, as we call them now.

537 2. *Theodebert*, the Son of *Theodorick*, repulſed the *Danes* infeſting the Coaſts of the Lower

Germany, and added *Provence* (taken from the *Gothes* of *Italy*) unto his Eſtates.

548 3. *Theobaldus*, the Son of *Theodebert*, ſubdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.

555 4. *Clotaire*, King of *Soiſſons*, the youngeſt Son of *Clovis* the Great, ſucceeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom, as afterwards his Brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, *anno* 560, uniting in his perſon the whole *French* Dominion.

565 5. *Sigebert*, the Son of *Clotaire*, vanquiſhed the *Huns*, then falling into his Eſtates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the Wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.

577 6. *Childebert*, the Son of *Sigebert*, Succeſſour to his Uncle *Guntram*, in the Realm of *Orleans*.

598 7. *Theodebert* the II. the Son of *Childebert*, vanquiſhed and outed of his Kingdom by *Clotaire* the ſecond of *France*, from whoſe eldeſt Son *Sigebert* deſcended the illuſtrious Family of the Earls of *Habſpurg*.

617 8. *Clotaire* II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Auſtraſia*, and his Brother *Theodorick* King of *Orleans*, the ſole King of the *French*.

9. *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia*, whom he ſucceeded at his death in the Realm of *France*.

645 10. *Sigebert* II. the eldeſt Son of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom for his part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *Weſt-France*, or *France* it ſelf, which he left to *Clovis* the 2. his younger Brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and ſubdued the *Sclaves*.

656 11. *Childebert* II. Son *Grimoaldus*, Maior of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Metz*, *Dagobert* the Son of *Sigebert* being ſhorn a Monk, and ſent into *Scotland*.

12. *Clovis* the 2. King of the *French*, having vanquiſhed and beheaded *Grimoald*, diſpoſſeſſed *Childebert* of the Kingdom, which he took to himſelf.

662 13. *Childerick*, the 2. Son of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder Brother, ſucceeding in the Kingdom of *France*, united all the *French* Dominions into one Eſtate. In which condition it remained (but with ſome inlargement of the Bounds) till the Partition made by and amongſt the Children of *Lewis* the Godly; the name of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great over all *Pannonia*, and ſo much of *Germany* as was under the command of the *French*. In which diviſion, *Lewis* the ſecond Son, ſirnamed the Ancient, being inveſted in the Kingdom of *Germany*, or ſo much of *Eaſt-France* or *Auſtraſia* as lay on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Rhene*; *Lotharius*, the eldeſt Son, had for his ſhare the Title of Emperor, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Auſtraſia* or *Eaſt-France* as lay on the *French* ſide of the River. Afterwards being ſubdivided into three Eſtates, *Italy*, with the Title of *Roman* Emperor, was given to *Lewis* the eldeſt Son; to *Charles*, the youngeſt, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and to *Lothaire*, the 2d. Son, *Auſtraſia* on this ſide of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-reigne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was ſaid. But *Lothaire* dying without iſſue, the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, became divided betwixt *Charles* the Bald Emperor and King of *France*, and *Lewis* ſirnamed the Ancient, King of *Germany*; the one calling himſelf King of *Lorrain* on that ſide, the other King of *Lorrain* on this ſide of the *Maes*; the River *Maes* or *Menſe* parting their Poſſeſſions. But this Partition held not long amongſt their Succeſſors: For *Lewis* and *Carloman* King of *France* (the Sons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) reſigning their part hereof to *Charles* the Groſs, Emperor of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*, the ſaid *Charles*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis* and *Conrade*, ſucceſſively Emperors of the *Romans* and Kings of *Germany*, (together with *Zwentobald* the Baſtard-Son of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themſelves. And ſo did alſo *Charles* the Simple King of *France*, on the death of *Conrade*, till forced thereto by *Henry* the firſt, (who ſucceeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) he gave way to the old Partition ſpoken of before: the *Germans* after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof, which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much viciſſitude and interchangeableneſs of affairs) both Princes laid aſide the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*, incorporating ſo much as they held thereof into the reſt of their Eſtates; *Otho* the third of *Germany* and *Lewis* the fifth of *France* being the laſt that pleaſed themſelves with that broken Title. In the mean time this Country of *Lorrain* it ſelf, as it is now bounded, together with the Country of *Luyck-land*, a great part of *Brabant*, ſome parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as ſome ſay, the Country of *Gulick* alſo, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur) as before was ſaid, being taken out of it, were by *Otho* the Second made a Dukedom, *anno* 981, and by him given with the Title of Duke of *Lorrain* to *Charles* of *France*, Son of *Gerberge*, his Aunt by *Lewis* the 4. of *France* ſirnamed *Tranſmarine*, Son of *Charles* the Simple. *Charles* thus advanced by his Couſin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his Brother, ſhewed himſelf ſo alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*, that the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fifth, (whoſe next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho*, the Son of this *Charles*, dying without iſſue, left his Eſtate to *Geofrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, his near Kinſman by the Mothers ſide; from whom the preſent Dukes of *Lorrain* do derive themſelves. From *Hermingrade*, one of the Daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (ſome call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their Daughter, married *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainault*, deſcended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, the Father of the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainault*, Wife of *Philip* the 2. King of *France*, thereby uniting the Blood of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9. her Nephew; of whom it is ſaid, that being a man of a tender Conſcience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved, that he was lineally deſcended, by his Grandmother, from *Charles* of *Lorrain*, whom *Hugh Capet* had ſo unjuſtly diſpoſſed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrain*, I find not any great improvement made of the Eſtate, by any of them, more than the acceſſion of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne* in the perſon of *Godfrey* or *Geofry* the 3d. Duke hereof, and the adding of the Dutchy of *Bar* in *France* by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*; but on the contrary; a great weakning and diſtraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luyck-land* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, being ſold unto the Biſhops of *Liege* by *Godfrey* ſirnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hieruſalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geofry* Earl of *Lovain*, in the time of *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*; and *Gulick-land* by *Euſtace* the Brother of *Baldwin*; the Biſhops of *Triers* not being negligent, all this while of the opportunity. Beſides which, ſomewhat had been done by the Emperor *Otho* the Third, to the diminution of this Eſtate, ſeeing that *Otho* the Second Duke, Son of *Charles* of *France*, had no Iſſue-Male, and thinking this Eſtate to be great enough without thoſe Additions, and ſome other pieces on the *Rhene*, by him reſtored unto the Empire. The reſt of this Eſtate was conferr'd

ferr'd on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne*, and not without good reaſon neither: it being probable enough that as it was firſt given by *Otho* II. unto *Charles* of *France*, with reference to his Mother *Gerberge* that great Emperor's Aunt; ſo *Otho* of *Lorrain*, Son of *Charles*, might look on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne* as moſt capable of it, with reference to his Mother *Matilda*, the ſame Emperor's Daughter. And unto this he might be moved not only in a noble gratitude to the blood of *Otho*, from whom his Father had receiv'd ſo great a benefit, but on the ſolicitation of the Emperor *Henry* II. (a Prince of the ſame Houſe of *Saxony*) to whom the Alienation of it from the Daughters of *Charles* is aſcribed by ſome. Which ſaid, we have no more to do, but to preſent the Reader with the Catalogue of

The Dukes of LORRAIN.

A. C.

981 1. *Charles* of *France*, took Priſoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which ſtate he died. He married *Bona*, Daughter of *Ricuine*, and Siſter of *Godfrey* the elder, Earls of *Ardenne*.

1001 2. *Otho*, Son of *Charles* and *Bona*.

1004 3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Son of *Godfrey* the elder, and Couſin of *Otho* by his Mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emror *Henry* II.

1019 4. *Gozelo* of *Bouillon*, the Brother of *Godfrey*.

1044 5. *Godfrey* II. Son of *Gozelo*.

1070 6. *Godfrey* III.

1078 7. *Godfrey* IV. of *Bouillon*, Son of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, and of *Ida* his Wife, the Daughter of *Godfrey* II. created King of *Hieruſalem*, *anno* 1099.

1100 8. *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.

1119 9. *Thierrie*, Son of *William* the Brother of *Baldwin*.

1128 10. *Simon*, Son of *Thierrie*.

1141 11. *Matthew*, Son of *Simon*.

1176 12. *Simon* II. Son of *Matthew*.

1207 13. *Frederick*, Brother of *Simon*.

1213 14. *Theobald*, Son of *Frederick*.

1219 15. *Matthew* II. Son of *Theobald*, no great Friend of the Pop'es.

1259 16. *Frederick* II. Son of *Matthew*.

1303 17. *Theobald* II. Son of *Frederick*.

1311 18. *Frederick* III. Son of *Theobald*.

1329 19. *Rodolph*, Son of *Frederick*.

1346 20. *John*, Son of *Rodolph*.

1382 21. *Charles*, Son of *John*.

1430 22. *Rhene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*, *&c.* in right of *Iſabel* his Wife, the Daughter of *Charles*.

1452 23. *John* II. Son of *Rene* and *Iſabel*, ſucceeded on the death of his Mother.

1470 24. *Nicholas*, Son of *John*.

1473 25. *Rene* II. Son of *Frederick*, Earl of *Vaudemont*, and of *Violand* or *Toland*, Daughter of *Iſabel* and *Rene* the firſt; the Vanquiſher of *Charles* of *Burgundy* at the Battel of *Nancy*.

1508 26. *Anthony*, Son of *Rene* the 2d. who in the year 1542 covenanted with *Ferdinand*, King of the *Romans*, that the Dukedom of *Lorrain* ſhould for the future be Free.

1544 27. *Francis*, Son of *Anthony*.

1545 28. *Charles* II. Son of *Francis*.

1608 29. *Henry*, Son of *Charles*, married *Katharine*, Siſter to *Henry* the 4th of *France*.

1624 30. *Francis*, Brother of *Henry*.

1630 1632 31. *Charles*, Nephew to *Francis* by his Brother the Earl of *Vaudemont*, and Son-in-Law to him by the Marriage of *Nicholaa* his Daughter and Heir, ſucceeded by a mixt Title of Deſcent and Marriage. Being reſolved to hold it in his own Right, he put away his Wife the Daughter of *Francis*, and took another to his Bed, which he better fanſied. Puniſhed not long after by the loſs of his whole Eſtate: For immediately he engaged himſelf in the Wars of *Germany*, in behalf of *Ferdinand* II. but being beaten by the *Swedes* at the Battel of *Pfaffenhofen* in the County of *Hanaw*, he loſt a great part of his Country to the Victors, who purſued him home. And on the other ſide, *Lewis* XIII. of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the Monſieur his Brother, and the Marriage of the Monſieur with the Lady *Margaret* the Duke's Siſter, deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*, and falling into *Lorrain* with a puiſſant Army at ſuch time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by conſequence all the reſt of his Eſtates, *September* 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been reſtored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it, for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Mothe*, (if that) together with a good Cauſe, many Hearts, and an invincible Courage. *Nicholaa* the Daughter of *Francis*, and Wife of *Charles* the laſt mention'd Duke of *Lorrain*, dying in the year 1657 bequeathed all her Right to the preſent King of *France*, who by the *Pyranean* Treaty in 1659 reſtored him to the Poſſeſſion of it on certain Conditions. In the Year 1662 he reſigned, or as ſome ſay ſold, this Dukedom to the King of *France* again, and had it regranted; he ſoon repented, and was herein oppoſed too by *Charles* the Son of *Francis-Nicholas* his Brother, who thinks himſelf the right Heir. In the Year 1663 the *French* forced him to another ſurrender, and he ended his unhappy Life the 17th of *December* 1675, at *Burckenfield* in the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*.

1675 32. *Charles-Leopold*, Son of *Francis*, Brother of *Charles* the laſt Duke, who formerly was a Cardinal, but renounced that Order and married *Claudia*, Siſter of *Nicholaa*, by whom he had this *Charles*, born in the Year 1643; and being kept out of his Dukedom by the Forces of *Lewis* XIV. in the year 1672 became General of the Imperial Forces againſt the *French*, and ſince againſt the *Turks*; and he has had ſuch prodigious Succeſs againſt the latter, that he has almoſt intirely recovered the Kingdom of *Hungary* out of their hands. This Prince married *Eleonora Maria*, Siſter of *Leopold* the preſent Emperor of *Germany*, the 6th of *Feb.* 1678. She was the Relict of *Michael Wiſnowizky*, King of *Poland*. He died the 18th of *April*, 1690. of an Apoplexy at *Wells* in *Germany*, being extremely lamented by almoſt all Chriſtendom. He left three Sons, the eldeſt of which at his death was about ten years old.

1690 33. *Leopold-Joſeph-Charles*, Son of *Charles-Leopold*, born the 11th of *Sept.* 1679. is the preſent Duke of *Lorrain*. He has alſo four other Brothers beſides himſelf, and all younger, ſo that this Houſe is in no danger to be extinguiſh'd in this Generation.

The Revenues of this Prince are ſaid to be 700000 Crowns; whereof 200000 ariſe from the Cuſtoms of the Salt made in his Country, and the other 500000 from his Coronet-lands. He is an abſolute Prince, and giveth for his Device an armed Hand coming as it were from Heaven, and graſping a naked Sword; to ſhew that he holdeth his Eſtate by no other Tenure than God and his Sword; the only hope at this time, of the preſent Duke. For though he be accompted a Prince of the Empire, and his Dukedom reckoned for a part of the fifth Circle thereof, which is called *the Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the Dyets, nor holdeth himself bound by any of the Orders or Decrees which are made therein, as do the rest of the great Princes of *Germany*; his neighbourhood to the *French* formerly securing his Estate against any Force which the Empire durst bring against him for those neglects.

The main Reason why *France* has with so much greediness seized this small Dukedom, and since *Alsatia*, and the *Franche Comte*, was a desire to gain the Protection of the *Rhene*, that it might be the Barrier between them and *Germany* as it was of old; and by the surprize of *Strasburgh* they have in a great measure gain'd that point, if they can keep what they have thus gotten.

The Arms of *Lorrain* are *Or*, a Bend *Gules* charged with 3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I find *Bara*, an old *French* Herald, to differ from *Paradine*, the most exact Genealogist of the *French* Nation. For *Bara* charg'd the Bend not with 3 *Allovettes*, Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*, which are in Blazon small Birds wanting Beaks, Feet and Legs. Of this last Opinion is the most worthy Antiquary *Cambden Clarenceux*; who withal telleth us, that when *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was at the Siege of *Hierusalem*, shutting at S. *David*'s Tower there, he broached three feetless Birds called *Allerions* upon his Arrow, and thereupon assumed this Arms.

6. *SUEVIA*, or *SCHWABEN*.

THE Dukedom of *SUEVIA*, or *SCHWABEN*, according to the ancient Limits and Extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankenland* and the *Lower Palatinate*; on the South with *Switzerland* and the *Alps* of *Tyrol*; on the East with the River *Leck*, parting it from *Bavaria*; and on the West with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow*, and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, and other lesser Estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower Bounds, having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungo* and the *Upper Elsass*, on the North *Franconia* or *Frankenland*, and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Country for the most part is Mountainous and Hilly, overspread with some spurs of the *Alps*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva* or *Swartzenwald*, recompenced notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers (and amongst them the *Neccar*, and the Renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very Fruitful, sufficiently stored with all necessary Provisions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of Fewel and the pleasures of Hunting, they do afford some Mines of Iron and other Metals.

The People in regard of their mountainous Situation are more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *Germans*, and so accompted of by *Plutarch* in former times; industrious in several Trades and Manufactures, especially in the weaving of Linnen-cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and by reason they have so much in them of the South, they are *supra modum in Venerem proni*, as *Aubanus* tells me, at least more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans* are; the Women also being said to be very forward in this kind, as tractable and easie as the Men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow* lying next to the Lake of *Constance*, the *Algow* extending to *Bavaria*; *Brisgow*, upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and North *Schwaben*, on the Northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW* are, 1. *Lindaw*, situate like an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed almost with the Waters thereof, but joined to it with a Causey of 290 Paces long: one of the Free or Imperial Cities, made so, for Money, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, [illegible]. The natural strength of this City helped to preserve it from Count *Wrangel*, who in the year 1647, besieged it for the *Swedes*. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Uberlingen*, on the same Lake; both Imperial also. 4. *Schauff-hausen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of Lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Arch-dukes of *Austria*, but anciently known by the name of *Lacus Venetus*) and near those dreadful Falls or Cataracts of that River no less than 50 Cubits downwards, with great Noise and Violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene* are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their Goods to this Town, where they embark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit unto the Town by Tolls and Imposts, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other Vessels: whence it hath the name of *Schauff-hausen*, that is to say, the *house* of *Skiffs*, or the Town of *Skip-boats*. The Town is conveniently seated amongst rich Pastures and sweet Groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant Hills, and those well planted with Vines, near adjoining to it: Imperial once, but now a Canton of the *Switzers*, as hath there been shewn. In 1529 this City imbraced the Reformation. 5. *Arbon*, upon the Lake it self, (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Merspurg*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same Lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the Lake, called from hence the *Lake* of *Constance*, but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-zee*, from the Castle of *Bodmen*; by *Pliny* and other Antients *Lacus Acronicus*, and *Brigantinus*; made by the Confluence of the *Rhene*, and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town is Imperial, an Episcopal See, and a flourishing Empory: famous for the Council here holden, *Anno* 1414, of great Renown as well for the multitude and quality of the People which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled. The People of most note there assembled were *Sigismund* the Emperor, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 Secular Princes and Noblemen, 450 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The business there handled was, first the pacifying of a Schism in the Church, there being at that time three Popes (or rather Anti-Popes) *viz.* *Gregory* the 12. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Council, and *Martin* the 5. made sole Pope by the unanimous consent of the Council, declaring both by matter of Fact, and by a publick Constitution here made and ratified, that a *Council is above the Pope*. The other main business was the proceeding against *John Hus* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, (spoken of before) both which notwithstanding the Emperor's safe conduct, were here condemned of Heresie, degraded and burnt. Now the manner of degrading a Priest is this: (I hope to be excused for this Digression) The Party to be degraded is attired in his Priestly Vestments, holding in the one hand a Chalice full of Wine and Water, and in other a gilt Plate (or *Patten*, as they call it) with a Wafer. Then kneeling down, the Bishop's Deputy, 1. taking from him all those things, commands him to say no more Masses for the quick and dead. 2. Scraping his Fingers ends with a piece of Glass, he commanded him from that time forwards not to hallow any thing. And, 3. striping him of his Priestly Habit, he is clothed in a Lay Attire, and so deliver'd over to the secular Magistrate. But to return again to the City of *Constance*: Being proscribed by *Charles* the 5th. for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces as were raised against them, they put themselves under the protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and Brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the Frying-pan into the Fire, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seised on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and Writings which belonged unto them; ſet out an Edict, that all the Miniſters within eight days ſhould depart the City; and that no Citizen from thenceforth ſhould wear any Weapon. And ſo inſtead of a Protector he became their Maſter. The *Swedes* in 1634 attempted to Recover this City from the *Auſtrians*, but without any Succeſs.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria* which is called the *ALGOW*, are, 1. *Buchau*, on the Lake called *Feder-zee*, a Town Imperial. 2. *Ravenſpurg*, a Free City, ſeated amongſt Mountains, whereof one hangeth over it, the River *Ach* running by it in a bed ſo narrow that not able to receive the Waters which fall down from the Hills, it much endamageth all the Country by frequent Land-floods. 3. *Wangen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial alſo. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*, and 5. *Memmingen*, the *Druſomagus* of *Ptolomy*, both Imperial Cities; the laſt about three miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well Traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*. 7. *Zeukirk*. 8. *Bibrach*; all three Imperial; the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Bragodurum* of the Ancients. 9. *Augsburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, firſt made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *A. V. C.* 739. and by him call'd *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, the principal City in thoſe times of the *Vindelici*, a potent People of this Tract. A City of great Wealth and State, containing about nine Miles in circuit, and very ſtrongly Fortified; by Nature on the Eaſt and North, where the ground lies low and under Water, and on the Weſt and South by Art. The Buildings for three parts of it are of Clay and Timber; but on the Weſt part, ſeated on an Hill, built of Free-ſtone, ſix or ſeven Stories high; in which are many fair Houſes of the principal Citizens, and many ſtately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggers*, a Family of very great (almoſt Princely) Revenues, poſſeſſed of many goodly Dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories; who though they have of late obtained the Honour of Barons, in regard of their Wealth, ſtill keep themſelves (contrary to the cuſtom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a diſgrace to a Noble-man) to the Trade of Merchandiſe. The publick Edifices of it are very decent, eſpecially the Cathedral Church, a majeſtick Building; the other Churches, being ten in number, and the Religious Houſes, correſpondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worſhipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulneſs of the Soil) the City gives a Sheaf of Corn for the Arms thereof. Since their Converſion unto Chriſtianity it was made a Biſhops See. Deſtroyed by *Attila* and his *Huns*; it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at laſt made Imperial (by *Frederick* I. in the Year 1162.) and the Miſtreſs of as large a Territory as moſt Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the *Confeſſion of Faith* exhibited in this place to *Charles* the Fifth, by the Proteſtant Princes, hence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*, *Anno* 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt Form of Doctrine, containing ſome Points of Proteſtaniſm, but moſt of Popery, here tendred to both Parties by the ſaid Emperor (but received by neither) to be ſubſcribed to and obſerved till the Differences could be ſetled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by a Decree of all the States of the Empire to the Proteſtant Party, to profeſs openly their Religion without any Impeachment, *Anno* 1555. a Limitation only laid on the Eccleſiaſticks, that if they changed their Religion, they ſhould loſe their Preferments; which were to be beſtowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*. This City embraced the Reformation 1533, the Exerciſe of which was continued, tho' the City was in the hands of the *Auſtrians* till the Year 1629; which by the Treaty of *Munſter*, in 1649, was again reſtored.

In the third part hereof, called *BRISGOW*, lying on the Eaſt of the River *Rhene*, and the Weſt of *Wirtenberg*, and on the South cloſed in with the Canton of *Baſil*. Places of moſt importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Triſſe* and other Streams deſcending from the Mountains of *Swartzen-wald*, under which it lieth: Founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Zeringen*, (the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, Founded by *Berthold* the firſt, Son of *Gebizo*, the youngeſt Son of *Guntram* the ſecond Earl of *Habſpurg*, once the chief Seat of thoſe Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the Reign of *Henry* the fifth Emperor, *Anno* 1112. or thereabouts. Famous in thoſe Days for Silver Mines, now for an Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *Anno* 1459, and being in preſent eſtimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*. 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintrich*, and both Towns Imperial: the firſt ſo named from *Offa*, an *Engliſh Saxon*, the Apoſtle of theſe Parts of *Germany*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zell*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth alſo, 6. *Badenwiller*, to the Marquis of *Baden*; this laſt accruing to them by the Marriage of *Rodolphus* the ſixth of that name, Marquis of *Hochberg*, with a Siſter of *John* Earl of *Friberg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldſhut*, upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold and mountainous Country, but well ſtor'd with Woods. 8. *Briſac*, by *Antonïne* called *Mons Briſacus*, a Garriſon in his time againſt the encroaching *Almans*, and ſituate at that time on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, the courſe of the River being ſince turned on the other ſide, where now it runneth. It is built Caſtle-wiſe on the top of a round Hill, in which there is alſo a ſtrong Tower or Fortreſs, raiſed by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place; otherwiſe ſtrong enough by its own natural ſituation, and might be made impregnable, but for want of Water, which is all drawn from one deep Well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town is fair, populous, and well built, once of moſt note in all the Country, from hence called *Briſac-gow*, or *Briſe-gow*; but after the Building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the Fourth, it grew by little and little to be leſs frequented, the other being ſeated more conveniently for Trade and Buſineſs: Here alſo, not far off from the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, ſtood that of *Kiburg*, ſomewhat the ancienter of the two; of ſuch Authority and Repute in thoſe elder Times, that the Emperors do ſtill retain the Title of Earls of *Kiberg* in the Stile Imperial: deſcended on the Houſe of *Habſpurg* by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Hartman* the laſt Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habſpurg*, Couſin-german to the Emperor *Rodolph*; on the expiring of which Line, *Anno* 1356, it fell, together with many fair Eſtates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſirnamed the Short. In the Year 1638, this City was taken by the *French*, and is ſtill in their hands.

Finally, in the fourth and laſt part hereof, called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, becauſe on the North-ſide of the *Danow*: the places moſt obſervable are, 1. *Gemund*, on the *Rheems*. 2. *Dinckel-Spyel*, on the *Warmitz*, two Imperial Towns; which with *Uberlingen* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in Building, Territory, or eſtimation, ſpoken of before) are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany* which totally adhere unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Bopfingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the ſame River, but in a low and mooriſh Ground, yet of great reſort, populous and well traded; moſt memorable for the Defeat here given the *Swedes* by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his firſt entrance on the Government; in which *Bannier*, one of the principal Commanders of that Nation, was ſlain on the place, *Guſtavus Horn*, another of as great Eminence, taken Priſoner, their whole Forces routed, and thereupon ſo ſtrange an Alteration of the Affairs of *Germany*, which they had almoſt wholly conquer'd, (though not for themſelves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before reſtored to its proper Owner, was again poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankendale* by the Imperialiſts, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their Holds on the *Baltick* Seas, *Anno* 1637. 5. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 6. *Donawert*, ſeated on the Confluence of the *Donaw* and the *Werdt*, whence it had the Name, moſt commonly called only *Werdt*; an Imperial Town, the Habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria*, in the late *German* Wars. 7. *Villengen*, on the *Bregentz*, a ſmall River falling into the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. Not far from which ſtands, 8. *Furſtenburg*, an ancient Caſtle. The Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country, deſcended lineally from *Eginon*, or *Eggon*, the youngeſt Son of the Lady *Judith*, Siſter and Heir of *Berthold* the Fifth, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*, and conſequently a Branch of the Illuſtrious Houſe of *Habſpurg*; exceedingly increaſed both in Power and Patrimony, by the Marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he ſerved in his Wars againſt the Proteſtants) with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Chriſtopher* the laſt Earl of *Werdenberg*, poſſeſſed of many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers* and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl, call'd *Den Eſchingen*, is the head of *Danubius*. A Cardinal of this Family is now Biſhop of *Strasburg*, a great Favourite of *Lewis* the 14th of *France*, who in the Year 1687 procured him to be choſen Coadjutor to the Elector of *Cologne*; and in the Year 1688 oppoſed him to Prince *Clement* of *Bavaria* upon the Death of that Elector. 9. *Ulm*, an Imperial City, ſituate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*, the principal City of *North-Schwaben*; about ſix Miles in compaſs, rich, populous, well fortified, and ſtored with an Armory for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town is but new, taking its firſt riſe from a Monaſtery, here Founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulm* from the Elms about it. At firſt it belonged unto the Monks; of whom having bought their Freedom in the time of *Frederick* the Third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having ſo violent a Stream, that the Boats, which go down the Water uſe to be ſold at the place where they land, it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence, on the Banks of the *Danow*, lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongſt them the old Caſtle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the Ruin of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, became poſſeſſed of a great Eſtate here and in Upper *Elſaſs*, ſold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the now *Auſtrian* Family. This City embraced the Reformation in the Year 1529, and ſtill perſiſted in it.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixentes*, *Suanetes*, *Kuguſci*, and *Calucones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other Tribes of the *Rhæti*, (of whom ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in the *Alpine* Provinces) poſſeſſed themſelves of that Country which lieth betwixt the River *Inn* and the head of the *Rhene*, Eaſt and Weſt, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compaſs are the greateſt part of the *Griſons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on this ſide the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tyrol*, and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius Nero*, Sons-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, they were made a Province of the *Romans*: divided into *Rhætia prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhætia ſecunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck*, and the River *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which account all *Schwaben* on the South ſide of the *Danow* was part of the Province of *Rhætia prima*, continuing ſo till vanquiſhed and ſubdued by the *Almans* in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Weſtern parts. As for the *Almans* who ſucceeded in poſſeſſion hereof, they were originally ſome Tribes and Families of the *Suevi*, the moſt warlike Nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River *Albis*: who jealous of *Cæſar*'s great Succeſſes, brought againſt him 430000 fighting Men, of which 80000 were ſlain, and many drowned. They uſed to ſtay at home and go to the War by turns: they which ſtaid at home tilling the Land, to whom the reſt returning brought the Spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow we hear little of them till the time of *Caracalla* the Son of *Severus*; during whoſe Reign, deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other Nations as they paſſed along, they aſſumed firſt the name of *Almans*; either from that promiſcuous mixture of all ſorts of Men, or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuiſco*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germans*. And though they were well beaten by him at their firſt coming down, near the River *Mœnus*, and afterwards more broken by *Diocleſian*, who ſlew at leaſt 60000 of them at one time in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infeſt the Provinces of the Empire which lay neareſt to them, till in the end following the tract of the *Hunns*, who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garriſons which were in their way, they made themſelves Maſters of *Rhætia prima*, *Germania prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing, beſides the Countries ſpoken of before, *Alſatia*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French*, their next Neighbours, (of whoſe growth and greatneſs they began to be very ſenſible) they were firſt vanquiſhed by *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, in that great and memorable Fight at *Zulph* near *Colen*, and afterwards made wholly ſubject to the Conqueror, who oppreſſed them with an heavy and laſting Servitude. About this time they returned again to their old Name of *Suevians*, their Eſtate being erected into a Dukedom, called many times the Dukedom of *Almain*; and when ſo called, divided into the *Upper Almain*, comprehending the Country of the *Griſons*, with ſome parts of *Switzerland* and *Tyrol*, and the *Lower* or the proper *Almain*, which contained the reſt of the Eſtates of the ancient *Almains*, called for the moſt part by the name of the Dukedom of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally tranſmitting that name to this Province only, the beſt part thereof. Theſe Dukes were at firſt officiary only, removeable at the will of the Emperor, and accomptable to him; not ſeldom many at one time, eſpecially whilſt under the command of the *French*, ſome of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their Succeſſion: nor much care to be taken in ſearching after it; though otherwiſe Men of great Authority and command in their ſeveral Times. The moſt remarkable amongſt them was *Rodolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden* and Duke of *Schwaben*, (deſcended from the Earls of *Habſpurg*) in the Reign of *Henry* the 4th. againſt whom he was choſen Emperor by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*, but overcome and wounded at the Battel of *Eyſter*, he died not long after of his Wounds, with great repentance for rebelling againſt his Sovereign. After his death, ſome Provinces being diſmembred from it, and other leſſer Eſtates firſt erected out of it, it was made hereditary in the perſon of *Frederick* Baron of *Hohenſtauffen*, ſirnamed the Ancient, by the Munificence and Bounty of the ſaid *Henry* the Fourth, whoſe Daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Succeſſors follow in this order.

The Dukes of *SCHWABEN*.

1. *Frederick* the Ancient, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2. *Frederick* with one eye, Son of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3. *Frederick* III. ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, Son of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor: he ſucceeded the Emperor

Henry the fifth in the Dukedom of *Franconia*, and left the ſame unto his Succeſſors.

1190. 4. *Frederick* IV, ſecond Son of *Barbaroſſa*; his elder Brother *Henry* ſucceeding in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the ſixth.

5. *Conrade*, Brother of *Frederick* the fourth.

6. *Philip*, Brother of *Conrade*, after the death of *Henry* the 6. elected Emperor.

1207 7. *Frederick* V. Son of *Henry* the ſixth, elected Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Naples* and *Sicily* alſo in the right of his Mother.

1250 8. *Conrade* II. Son of *Frederick* the fifth, King of both *Sicilies*, and Emperor of *Germany* after the death of his Father; poiſoned, as was ſuppoſed, by his baſe Brother *Manfred*, who ſucceeded in his Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1254 9. *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*, purſuing his Right unto the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was overcome and taken priſoner by *Charles* of *Anjou*, Succeſſor unto *Manfred* in thoſe Eſtates, and by his command beheaded at *Naples*, *anno* 1268. After whoſe death (being the laſt of that powerful and Imperial Family) this vaſt Eſtate was brought unto a ſecond diſmembring, and divided amongſt the Biſhops, Princes and Free Cities hereof: of which laſt there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedom than in all *Germany* beſides. So that beholding it in the firſt and ſecond Dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Eſtates (beſides what belongeth to the Cities and Epiſcopal Sees) to have been raiſed out of the Ruins of this great Dukedom: that is to ſay, the Dukedoms of *Zeringen* and *Wirtemberg*, with the Marquiſate of *Baden*, diſmembred from it when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenſtauffen*; the Earldoms of *Pſirt*, *Hohenberg* and *Friburg*, (beſides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habſpurg*) advanced out of the ſecond Ruine. How *Pſirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the Houſe of *Auſtria* hath been ſhewn already; and what becomes of *Wirtenberg* and *Baden* ſhall be ſhewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow* and a great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Original to *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebizo*, a younger Son of *Guntram* the 2. Earl of *Habſpurg*. Which being extinguiſhed after a Succeſſion of ſeven Princes only in the perſon of *Berthold* the fifth, (who died the ſame day in which the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* was born) *anno* 1218, the Rights hereof deſcended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country: *Cuno*, the firſt that bare the Title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldeſt Son of *Judith*, Siſter and Heir of *Berthold* the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*. *Eggon*, the laſt Earl of which Houſe, being overlaid by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, ſold his Eſtate therein for 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold* Dukes of *Auſtria*, Sons of *Albert* the Short, whoſe Succeſſors enjoy all *Briſgow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were *Argent*, 3. Leopards *Sable*, as is ſaid by *Bara*: But *Paradine* will have them to be three Leopards *Sable*, crowned *Gules*, in a Field *Or*.

7. *BAVARIA.*

BAVARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Auſtria*, and the Biſhoprick of *Saltzburg*,, on the Weſt with the River *Leck* or *Lycus*, which parts it from *Schwaben*, on the North with *Northgoia*, or the upper *Palatinate*, and *Bohemia*, and on the South with the Earldom of *Tyrol* and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhætia ſecunda*, and ſo much of *Noricum Mediterraneum* as now maketh up the Biſhoprick of *Saltzburg*, and by a diſtinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*; ſo named from the two Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus*, (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verſified by a *German* Poet.

Reſpicit & late fluvios Vindim *que* Licum *que*
Miſcentes Vndas, & nomina Littoris, unde
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Vrbemque vocarunt
Vindelicam.——

In *Engliſh* thus,

Vindis and *Lycus*, Floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their Streams and Name;
To which the old *Vindelici* do own
The name of both their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after ſuch time as the *Boii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got poſſeſſion of this Country, the name of *Vindelicia* and *Rhætia ſecunda* grew into diſuſe, that of *Boiaria* ſucceeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the preſent name of the Country amongſt the *Latines*; but by the *Dutch* called *Bayeren*, by the *French Bavier*. By the Treaty of *Munſter*, all the upper *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, was taken from that Family, and given to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

The whole is divided into three parts: the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the Diſtrict of *Saltzburg*, ſituate betwixt the *Inn* and the Dukedom of *Auſtria*: all three much over-ſpread with Woods and Foreſts, remainders of the *Hercynian* Foreſt deſcribed before. But more particularly the Higher, lying towards the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affording no Wines, and but little Corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for ſome parts (eſpecially about *Regenſperg* and *Landſhuc*) inferiour unto none in *Germany* for Richneſs and pleaſantneſs of the ſituation, Of the Diſtrict of *Saltzburg* we ſhall ſpeak by it ſelf, becauſe by ſome not reckoned as a part hereof. In all there is great quantity of Fewel for the fire, and of Timber for Building; no leſs of Swine fatted in the Woods, and ſent away by numerous Herds into other Countries.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here amongſt the *Boiarians* by *Rupertus* Biſhop of *Wormes*, driven from his See by *Childebert* King of the *French*, *anno* 540, or thereabouts, and here made the firſt Biſhop of *Saltzburg*: corrupted at this time with the Leven of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (ſetting aſide the Imperial Cities) is more entirely devoted than any other in all *Germany*.

Principal Cities in the *HIGHER* are 1. *Munchen*, (in Latine *Monachium*) the Duke's Seat, ſeated on the *Iſar*, or *Iſara*, in a very ſweet and delightful Soil, among Ponds and Groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be parallell'd in all this Continent: firſt founded by *Henry* Duke hereof in the time of *Otho* the firſt, *anno* 972, now grown a large and populous City; the publick Buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-Houſe, or *Guild-hall*, and common Market-place, of ſuch excellent Structure, that they ſerve not only for Uſe and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongſt them none is more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein are conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the moſt part of them Manuſcripts. A Town made choice of by *Maximilian*, the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the Spoils got by him in the Wars of *Germany*: here being found (at ſuch time as the Town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 Braſs pieces (beſides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, inſtead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landſperg*, upon the *Leck* or *Lycus*, near the *Alps* of *Tyrol*: once of great ſtrength, becauſe a Frontier towards *Schwaben*; but proving a dangerous neighbour to the *Swediſh* Garriſons planted in theſe parts, during that War againſt the Duke of *Bavaria*, was by them taken and diſmantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of no note or beauty, heretofore the *Inutrium* of *Ptolomy*, ſeated near the *Alps*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick* or *Lewis* the ſecond, for a Bulwark againſt thoſe of *Augsberg*. 5. Here ſtood alſo the old Caſtle of *Schyre*, built by *Arnulph* 2 Son of *Arnulph* the firſt, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Seat and Honory Title of his Poſterity, (*Dynaſtæ Schyrenſis* in the *Latine*) till *Otho* of *Wittlesback*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* and his own good fortune did attain that Dukedom.

In the *LOWER Bavaria* there firſt offers it ſelf to conſideration the Town of *Rain*, ſeated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*; memorable for the Skirmiſh near to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians* at the firſt paſſing of the *Swediſh* Forces over that River, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, ſo famous for his long and fortunate Conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at *Ingolſtad* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg*, upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the firſt Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes* after the ſaid defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolſtad*, ſaid to be built by a Tribe or Nation of the *Sueves* called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angeloſtadium* or *Angleſtade*; firſt made a City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria* Duke and Emperor, and in the year 1410 made a Univerſity, much priviledged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, and Pope *Pius* the ſecond. A Town ſo ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it ſeems impregnable, and indeed proved ſo to *Guſtavus* the late King of *Sweden*, in the year 1632, who here found the firſt check to his proſperous Fortunes, being forced to raiſe his Siege without endangering it, and find work elſewhere. 4. *Regenſpurg*, (in *Latine*, *Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* alſo, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Auguſta Tiberii*, ſo called of a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius Cæſar* about the time of our Saviours Paſſion, afterwards called *Rhætopolis*, or the City of the *Rhætians*, the chief of *Rhætia ſecunda*. At this time it is a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houſes: anciently an Epiſcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the general Diets of the Empire. In former times it was the Seat of the Kings and firſt Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made Imperial, and now mixt, or both: for being ſtill Imperial, at the leaſt in name, it was ſeized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* firſt got footing within his Dominions, held by him with a very ſtrong Garriſon, after the loſs of *Munchen* his chief place of Reſidence, till at laſt won from him by the *Swedes*, *anno* 1633. 5. *Paſſaw*, by the modern *Latiniſts Patavia*; but by ſome thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolomy*, then a *Roman* Garriſon: ſeated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn* and the *Iltz*; by which it is divided into three Towns, *Paſſaw*, *Inſtadt*, and *Ilſtadt*, the whole *Compoſitum* being a rich, fair, and well traded City: a See Epiſcopal, and ſubject immediately to the Biſhop as chief Lord hereof, who hath his dwelling in the Caſtle of *Oberhauſen*, adjoyning to that part hereof which is called *Ilſtadt*. A place remarkable for many Meetings and Conſultations of the *German* Princes, eſpecially for that of the year 1552, in which, all former Quarrels being laid aſide, the Proteſtants were firſt permitted the free Exerciſe of their Religion, by the conſent and Edict of *Charles* the fifth, who had moſt laboured to ſuppreſs it. More in the land is 6. *Friſing*, on the ſwelling of a fine round Hill near the River *Ambra*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraxinum*, conceived to be built by ſome of the Preſidents or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperors honoured with an Epiſcopal See about the year 710. One of the Biſhops whereof, commonly called *Otho Friſingenſis*, was the beſt Hiſtorian of his time. 7. *Landſhut*, upon the River of *Iſer*, in the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208, adorned with a Church of moſt curious building for the ſervice of God, and a magnificent Palace for the uſe of the Duke. 8. *Freiſtat*, the only Imperial Town (except *Regenſpurg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great Townes in both *Bavaria's* is ſuppoſed to be 80: that is to ſay, 34 Cities, and 46 great Towns, of which theſe are the principal.

Lewis the II. the Elector *Palatine*, was the Founder of the line of *Newberg*, which at this time enjoys that Electorate, he ſucceeded his Father in the Dukedom of *Bipont*, and the Earldom of *Veldenz* and *Sponheim*, and having Eradicated Popery, ſettled the *Auguſtine* Confeſſion in theſe Countries.

1532 2. *Wolfang* his Son Succeeded him, who was born in the year 1526, *Otho Henry* Elector *Palatine* gave this Prince *Newburg*, upon the *Danube* and *Sultzbach*, and by his Will he declared him the Heir of the *Palatinate*, if his own Male Line failed.

1569 3. *Philip Lewis* born in the year 1547, 1. *Octo.* A good manager of his Eſtates, and a Zealous Proteſtant, he married *Ann* the Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleves*.

1614 4. *Wolfang William*, born the 28th of *October*, 1587. This Prince returned to the *Roman Catholick* Religion, in the year 1614, and was much diſliked on that account by his Mother and Brothers, and Son after was involved in a War on the Account of the Dukedom of *Juliers*.

1653 5. *Philip William*, born the 24th of *November* 1615, he continued the War his Father had began, till the year 1666, when that Controverſie was ended, and in the year 1685, *Charles* Elector *Palatine* Dying without lawful Iſſue, he ſucceeded by the Fifth Article of the Treaty of *Osnabruck* in that Electorate, out of which he was driven by *Lewis* the 14th. in the year 1688, but the next year Recovered the moſt of it, This Prince was very happy in the Marriage of his Daughters, *Maria Sopia* in 1687, Married *Peter* King of *Portugal*, *Maria Anna* in 1689, Married *Charles* the II. King of *Spain*, *Eleonora Magdalena* the Eldeſt, in 1676 Married *Leopold* Emperor of *Germany*.

Of *John William Joſeph* his Eldeſt, born the 19th of *April* 1658. I ſhall ſpeak in the Catalogues of the Elector *Palatine*.

The *Biſhoprick* or *Diſtrict* of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former diviſion of it) extendeth from the *Inn* or *Oenus* towards the Confines of *Auſtria*. The Soil hereof is rocky, dry, and barren, excepting ſome few Vallies only, as ſeated in the midſt of the *Julian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici mediteranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, ſeated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name; raiſed out of the Ruins of *Juvavia*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the Station of a Cohort of *Roman* Souldiers belonging to the firſt Legion. An *Alpine* City, ſtrongly ſituate among the Mountains; but no leſs beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal Seat of ſome of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Archbiſhops hereof, the moſt powerful Prelates for Revenue or Juriſdiction of any in *Germany*. The See was firſt fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Rutbertus*, the firſt Apoſtle of theſe parts, ſpoken of before; whoſe Image or Impreſs is ſtamped to this day on the Coins of this Biſhoprick. At the time when *Luther* firſt endeavoured a Reformation. Cardinal *Matthæus Langius* was Biſhop here, who did ingeniouſly confeſs, that the Maſs did not want its faults; that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Prieſts and Friers fit to be reformed; *ſed quod miſellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non eſſe tolerabile*; but that ſuch a ſorry fellow as *Luther* ſhould attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the ſame River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rottenburg*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunſheim*, upon the *Traun*, riſing out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildeſhut*, one of the fartheſt Northwards, and 6. *Biſhops-ſtoffe*, one of the moſt Southern in all this Tract. In the year 1685, the Inhabitants of a Valley of *Tyrol*, ſubject for the Main of it to the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, were forced to leave their dwelling by that Archbiſhop. They ſeemed to be ſome Remains of the old *Waldenſes*, becauſe they Worſhipped neither Saints nor Images, and believed the Sacrament to be only a Commemoration of the Death of Chriſt, and in many other points they differed from the Church of *Rome*, but then they knew nothing of the *Lutherans* or *Calviniſts*, and were not known to the *Griſons* their next Neighbours; and they had Maſs ſaid amongſt them. Some few years before this, ſome of them Travelling into the *Palatinate*, were better inſtructed in matters of Religion, and brought back with them ſome Books, which prevailed ſo far upon the reſt, that they gave over going to Maſs, ſome of their Prieſts concurring with them in the change, the reſt complain'd to the Archbiſhop, who commanded them to return to the Maſs upon ſevere Threats, whereupon all the Inhabitants of this Valley, old and young, to the number of 2000 Perſons, divided themſelves into ſeveral parties, ſome of them went into *Brandenburg*, others into the *Palatinate*, and about 500 of them diſperſed themſelves amongſt the *Switzers* and *Griſons*.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the Diſtrict of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforeſaid: a people ſo reſolvedly bent to maintain their Freedom againſt the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Druſus*, the Son in Law of *Auguſtus*, and Father of *Germanicus Cæſar*, made War upon them, the very Women thereof took the Alarm; *& deficientibus teles, Infantes in ora militum adverſa miſerunt*, and when their Darts were ſpent, threw the young Infants (ſaith the Hiſtorian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, ſucceeded the *Boiarians*, ſome of the many Tribes of the *Boii*, the moſt diffuſed and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally they were of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, from whence ſome of them paſſed with the *Senones* and other of the *Gauls* to the farther ſide of the *Alps* (in reſpect of them) where they took up the Country between the *Appenine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many Bickerings, at laſt with ſharp and bitter Wars againſt the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country, ſome of them paſſed into *Germany*, and mingled themſelves with the *Tauriſci*, then dwelling in thoſe parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing further, thruſt themſelves into the *Norici* (of whom more anon) and ſome retired themſelves into the ſhelters and faſt places of the *Hercynian* Foreſt. Driven from this laſt by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermanduri* and *Norici*, (now the Upper *Palatinate*) who, mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and were by that name firſt known in the time of *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*; by whoſe perſwaſion, in the 17th year of *Anaſtaſius* Emperor of the Eaſt, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Vindelicia*, or the ſecond *Rhætia*, with ſome part of the *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was ſignified. They were governed firſt by Kings, (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius*, (and he the laſt of that Race) ſlain fighting on the ſide of the *Almans* againſt the *French*, at the great Battle of *Zulph* near *Colen*. After which they were made ſubject to the Conquerors, as their Neighbours and Confederates the *Almans* were, but ſuffered to live under the command and Government of their own Princes, by the name of Dukes. Of theſe, from *Theodo* the Son of *Aldigerius* to *Taſſilo* the laſt Duke, outed of his Eſtate and Honours by *Charles* the Great, for conſpiring with the *Lombards* againſt him, are reckoned 15. Dukes in all; whoſe names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we ſhall ſubjoyn in the enſuing Catalogue of the

Dukes of the BOIARIANS.

493	1. *Theodo*, Son of *Aldigerius* the laſt King; from whoſe younger Brother *Utilo* deſcended *Pepin* the Father of *Charles* the Great.
511	2. *Theodo* II. ſirnamed the Great.
537	3. *Theodebert*.
	4. *Theodo* III. the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Boiarians*.
565	5. *Taſſilo*, Son of *Theodebert*.
598	6. *Garibaldus*.
612	7. *Theodo* IV.
630	8. *Taſſilo* II.
650	9. *Theodo* V.
	10. *Theodebert* II.
	11. *Theodo* VI. Son of *Grimoldus*, the Brother of *Theodebert* the ſecond.
708	12. *Grimold*.
	13. *Hugobert*, Brother of *Grimold*.
735	14. *Utilo*.
765	15, *Taſſilo* III. the laſt Duke of the *Boiarians*, of whom more anon.

Amongſt theſe, few were of any note but 1. *Theodo* the firſt, Son of *Aldigerius*, who abandoning the name of King, becauſe leſs pleaſing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, aſſumed that of Duke, and paſſing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhætia ſecunda*, with part of *Noricum* from the *Romans*, *anno* 508, or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the ſecond, named the great, for his great and many Victories againſt the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicia*, and whatſoever they held on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Alps*. 3. *Theodo* the third of that name, and the fourth in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Chriſtian Faith by the Preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, *anno* 580. 4. *Taſſilo* the third of that name, and the laſt of their Dukes of the Race of *Aldigerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* blood; who being depoſed by *Charles* the Great, the whole Country became immediately ſubject to the *French*, governed at firſt by their Lieutenants. Diſmembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom, (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom it was conferred on *Lotharius* his eldeſt Son, who was afterwards Emperor of the *Romans*: after his death poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a diſtinct Kingdom both in name and Title, till the deceaſe of *Lewis* the Son of *Arnulph*, the laſt of the direct Line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a Subject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*, one *Arnulph* of the Iſſue of the ſaid *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himſelf the Title of King; but being oppoſed therein by *Conrade* the Brother of *Lewis*, Emperor and King of *Germany*, and alſo by *Henry* the firſt who ſucceeded, he changed the Title of King into that of Duke; the Founder of the preſent Houſe of

The Dukes of BAVARIA.

	1. *Arnulph*, of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great, firſt Duke of *Bavaria*.
938	2. *Eberhard*, Son of *Arnulph*, depoſed by *Otho* the firſt.
	3. *Berchthold*, the Brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the Eſtate by the ſaid Emperor *Otho*. After whoſe death it was conferred on *Henry* the Brother of *Otho* the 1ſt. who had married *Judith*, Daughter of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke, and Siſter to *Eberhard*.
947	4. *Henry*, Brother of *Otho* the firſt, ſirnamed *Rixoſus*, or the Quarrelſom.

5. *Henry* II. Son of the former *Henry*, ſirnamed *Hezelo*.

6. *Henry* III. ſirnamed the Saint Son of *Henry* the 2d. the firſt Emperor who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory* the 5. After whoſe coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 Succeſſions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleaſure of the preſent Emperour; in manner following.

7. *Henry* IV. ſirnamed *Hezzel*, Brother to *Cunegund*, the renowned Wife of *Henry* the Saint; by whom he was preferred to this Dukedom, and by him depoſed.

8. *Henry Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*, (of the ſtrange Original of which Family we ſhall ſpeak in *Brunſwick*) made Duke by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2.

9. *Guelpho*, Son of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the 5.

10. *Erneſt*, created Duke hereof by the ſame *Conrade* the 3. and by him depoſed again for conſpiring againſt him.

11. *Henry* VI. the Black.

12. *Cuno*, accuſed of Conſpiracy, and diſplaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for

13. *Henry* VII. Son of the ſaid Emperor *Henry* the 3. whom he ſucceeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.

14. *Agnes*, the Mother of the ſaid *Henry* the 4. by the gift of her Son.

15. *Otho*, by the gift of the Empreſs *Agnes*, depoſed not long after by *Henry* the 4.

1071 16. *Welpho* III. Son of *Coniza*, the Daughter of *Guelph* the 2. by *Azon* an *Italian* Marquiſs made Duke hereof by the ſaid Emperor *Henry* the 4.

17. *Welpho* IV. Son to *Welpho* the 3. he dyed in 1119.

1119 18. *Henry* VIII. ſirnamed the Proud, by others called *Henry* the black, Brother of *Guelpho* the 4. by the Marriage of *Gertrude* Daughter of *Lotharius* the ſecond, Duke of *Saxony* alſo. In the year 1137. Deprived of both by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. He dyed in 1139.

1138 19. *Leopold*, Son to *Leopold* the 4. Marqueſs of *Auſtria*, made Duke by the ſaid *Conrade* the Third.

20. *Henry* IX. Brother of *Leopold*, after Marqueſs, at laſt Duke of *Auſtria*.

1154 21. *Henry* X. ſirnamed the Lion, Son of *Henry* the Proud, reſtored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, (the Duke of *Auſtria* being otherwiſe ſatisfied) by whom he was not long after preſcribed, and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this Eſtate became fixed and ſettled in the perſon and poſterity of *Henry* the Xth. died in the year 1195.

1180 22. *Otho* of *Wittlesback*, ſo called from the place of his birth or dwelling, deſcended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper of *Bavaria*, and 2. Son of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke hereof; advanced unto his honour by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſenſible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this Eſtate being reduced by this time to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.

1183 23. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* Son of *Otho*.

1231 24. *Otho* II. Son of *Lewis*, who, by marrying *Gertrude*, the ſole Daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral Dignity into the Houſe of *Bavaria*.

1290 25. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the Son of *Otho* 2.

1294 26. *Ludowick* or *Lewis* II. Brother of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.

1312 27. *Ludovick* or *Lewis* the III. ſecond Son of *Lewis* the 2. ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph*, the eldeſt Son, ſucceeding in both *Palatinates* and the Electoral Dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperor, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavarius*. This Prince was born in the year 1287, Choſen Emperor in 1314 upon the Death of *Waldemar*, Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, he gave that Electorate to *Lewis* his Son, in the year 1323. *Frederick Pulcher* of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and in the year 1347, was ſlain by a fall from his Horſe.

1347 28. *Stephen*, the eldeſt Son of *Ludovick* the Emperor; *William* and *Albert*, his two Brethren, ſucceſſively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their Mother. He ſucceeded in *Bavaria*, and was a Prince of Great Piety and Vertue.

1375 29. *Stephen* II. Son of *Stephen* the firſt; his Brothers, *Frederick* and *John*, ſharing with him parts of the Eſtate.

1413 30. *Ludovick* II. ſirnamed *Barbatus*, depoſed and impriſoned by his own Son *Ludovick*, who yet died before him without Iſſue. The depoſed Prince, was a Turbulent and Unjuſt Prince, and would have diſinherited *Lewis* his Son, to ſet up a Baſtard in his ſtead. He dyed in Priſon in the year 1447, his Son dying in 1445.

1447 31. *Henry* the II. Son of *Frederick*, the ſecond Brother of *Stephen* the 2. ſucceeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.

1450 32. *Ludovick* V. ſirnamed the Rich, the Son of *Henry* the 2. baniſhed the *Jews* out of his Eſtates and ſeized their goods in 1450.

1479 33. *George*, ſirnamed the Rich alſo, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ingolſtadt*; whoſe ſole Daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince Elector *Palatine*, with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperor, not liking ſo much greatneſs in the *German* Princes, confirmed the ſame on,

1503 34. *Albert* III. Son of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John Munchen* by his Son *Erneſtus*: which *John* was youngeſt Brother to *Stephen* the 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperor ſucceeded unto *George* the Rich: the cauſe of a long and unhappy War betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worſt whereof, beſides the loſs of this Eſtate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proſcribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel: but, upon their Submiſſion reſtored again.

1508 35. *William*, the Son of *Albert* the 3d, *William* the Son of *Albert*, was born in the year 1493.

1577 36. *Albert* IV. a great Champion of the Doctrines and Traditions of the Church of *Rome*; and ſo extremely affected unto the *Jeſuites*, that he built Colledges for them at *Landsburg*, *Ingolſtadt* and *Munchen*, his three principal Towns, he was born in 1526.

1579. 37. *William* II. Son of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as his Father in the cauſe of the Church of *Rome*: therein exceeded very much by *Maximilian* his eldeſt Son, to whom this Prince reſigned his Government in the year 1597, and retired into a Monaſtery, he Dyed the 27th of *February* 1626, being then in the 78th year of his Age. Born in 1548.

1597 38. *Maximilian*, eldeſt Son of *William* the 2. born the 17th of *April* 1573, who chiefly out of the ſame zeal ſided with *Ferdinand* the 2. in the Wars of *Germany*, *anno* 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the ſaid Emperor againſt *Frederick* Count and Elector *Palatine*, choſen King of *Bohemia*: in which having done great ſervice to the Imperial and *Romiſh* Intereſt, he was by the ſaid *Ferdinand* inveſted in the Upper *Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the *Electoral Dignity*. This laſt was conferred at firſt upon him but for term of life in the Dyet at *Regenſpurg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* then proteſting againſt it; but afterwards, in the Dyet at *Prague*, *anno* 1628. conferred upon him and his Heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reaſon of their ſimultaneous Inveſtiture with the firſt of their Houſe, are not to be deprived of their Eſtates and Dignities for the offence of their Fathers; the puniſhment not being to extend beyond the perſon of the Offender. But notwithſtanding their Pretenſions and Allegations, the Duke is ſtill poſſeſſed of the Title and Dignity, and confirmed therein by the Concluſions of the Treaty of *Munſter*, and a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.

1651 39. *Ferdinandus Maria*, Son of *Maximilian*, born in the year 1636, the 21ſt. of *October*, he ſucceeded his Father in the year 1651, and dyed ſuddenly in 1679, the 26th of *May*.

1677 40. *Maximilian Maria Emanuel*, the preſent Duke and Elector of *Bavaria*, was born the 11th of *July* 1662. He having ſignalized his Valour in the preſent War againſt the *Turks*, eſpecially in the Sieges of *Buda* in 1684, and in 1686 was preferr'd before all others in the Marriage of *Maria Antonia*, &c. Eldeſt Daughter of *Leopold* the preſent Emperor of *Germany*, and *Maria Anna* the Eldeſt Daughter of *Philip* the IV. King of *Spain*, ſo that if the preſent King of *Spain*, ſhould happen to die without Iſſue (as he has none yet) this Prince will ſucceed him in the Kingdom of *Spain*, His younger Brother is *Joſeph Clemens*, &c. born the 5th of *December* 1671, Elected Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, the 14th of *July* 1688.

The growth of this Family of *Bavaria*, is thus repreſented by a late *German* Author. ‘After *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, was proſcribed by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* the Emperor, and deprived of all his Territories. The ſame Emperor about the year 1180, gave into the Poſſeſſion of *Otho* I. both the Upper and Lower *Bavaria*, to which at that time belonged the Earldoms of *Scherdingen* and *Newburg*, and the Territory of *Burch-hauſen*; this *Otho* purchaſed alſo the Earldoms of *Dachovien* and *Rittenburg*, and the Territories of *Rotenburg*, *Rheningen*. *Otho* II. Grandchild of the former, in the year 1227, in the Right of *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Henry*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, his Wife became Elector *Palatine*; and in the year 1256, he purchaſed the Caſtle of *Lindenfels* and the City of *Nuſloch* in *Cregow*, and he obtained of *Henry* of *Waldorf* the Emperor, the City of *Wiſelach*. In the year 1281, *Rodolph* the Emperor gave to *Lewis* Count *Palatine*, the Earldom of *Mosburg*, and he obtain'd by Inheritance *Werden*, *Landberg*, *Vilſviburg*, *Chagen*, *Landau*, *Mumuro*, *Elbrecht*, *Kirchen*, and *Libenau*, &c. And afterwards, upon the beheading of *Conradin* Duke of *Suabia*, he acquired *Lavingen*, *Hochsſtad*, *Schongau*, *Swabeck*, *Fuſſen*, *Moringen*, *Newmarck*, *Amberg*, &c, and he purchaſed *Schriſheim*, and the Caſtle of *Strahenberg*, and the City of *Bretten* in *Cregow*. In the 1392, *Rupert* and his Lady had given them half the Earldom of *Sponheim*, and the other half, and the City of *Pfrortzheim* came into their hands in the time of *Frederick* the I. Elector *Palatine*. About the ſame time, the Earldom of *Simeren* was Mortgaged to *Rupert* by the Emperor, and afterwards it was fully ſetled in this Family; the ſame *Rupert* for 25000 Florens, bought the Earldom of *Deuxpont*. In the year 1404, the Marquiſs of *Baden* ſold *Eppingen* in *Gregow* to *Lewis* the Elector; and about the ſame time came the Earldom of *Kirchbergen*. In the year 1410, *Stephen* II. in the Right of his Wife, obtained the Earldom of *Veldenz*. In the year 1441, *Frederick* obtained the Earldom of *Lowenſtein*, and in 1452 that of *Sutzelſtein*, and he had in Mortgage from the Biſhop of *Mentz*, *Bergſtraſſe*. In the year 1607, *Maximilian* I. got into his hands the Free City of *Donowerd*, or *Donawert*. In the year 1618, he purchaſed the Earldom of *Middelheim* in *Suabia*, and in 1646, he had by the League of mutual Succeſſion, the Landgraviate of *Zenchtenberg*. In the year 1655, *Charles Cruſtauus* Duke of *Deuxpont* of this Family, obtained the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and his Brother *Adolph John*, had great Poſſeſſions given him in *Sweden*. In the year 1666, there was given to *Maximilian*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the 8th. Electorate. In the year 1666, *Philip William* Duke of *Newburg*, one of the Branches of this Houſe, by a Treaty obtained of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukedoms of *Juliers* and *Monts*, and the Earldom of *Ravenſtein*.

The greateſt Loſſes this Family has receiv'd, have happened in this Age. *Maximilian* Duke of *Bavaria* by the Treaty of *Oſnabruck* in 1648, being forced to part with the Upper *Auſtria* to the Emperor, and the *Bergſtraſſe* to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, both Mortgaged to this Houſe. In the War with *France* in 1673, the *French* King ſeized the Dukedom of *Deuxpont*, and the Earldom of *Veluentz*, and many other Towns as dependancies of the Landgraviate of *Alſatia*. In 1689, he ſeized the Earldoms of *Sponheim*, *Simeren* and *Lauteren*, and took and Burnt the greateſt part of the Towns and Cities in the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, on the Weſt of that River.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in Bend, *Argent* and *Azure*.

8. The Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*.

THE Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces and the Members of it, is bounded on the *Eaſt* with *Hungary*, and part of *Sclavonia*; on the Weſt with *Bavaria*, and ſome parts of the *Switzers* and the *Griſons*; on the North with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; and on the South with *Iſtria* and ſome part of *Friuli* in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the ſeveral Provinces of *Auſtria* properly ſo called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tyrol*. The quality of the whole will be beſt diſcerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the leſſer Tribes of the *Sevaces*, *Alanni*, *Ambiſontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidrauni*; ſubdued by *Druſus*, Son-in-law to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Conſtantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and ſome parts of *Tyrol*, with the Biſhoprick or Diſtrict of *Saltzburg*; of which *Solva* was the Metropolis or Capital City: and *Noricum Ripenſe*, containing only *Auſtria*, and thoſe parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eaſtward of the River *Inn*, extended all along on the Banks of the *Danau*. It was known by no other names while poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avares* and other Nations, it gained thoſe ſeveral names and appellations ſpecified before.

1. *AUSTRIA* properly ſo called hath on the Eaſt the Kingdom of *Hungary*, on the Weſt *Bavaria*, on the North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the Weſt, and on the other ſide the *Teye*, which ſeparates it from *Moravia*, on the South *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. It is called by the *Dutch Oſtenriech*, and contractedly *Oſtrich*, that is to ſay, the *Eaſtern Kingdom*, (a part aſſuming to it ſelf the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *Eaſt-France*, or the Eaſtern Kingdom of the *French*, in the barbarous *Latin* of thoſe times called by the name of *Auſtraſia*, whence the modern *Auſtria*.

The Air is generally very healthy, and the Earth as fruitful, yielding a plentiful increaſe without help of Compoſt or other Soiling, and of ſo eaſie a Tillage to the Husbandman, that on the North ſide of the *Danow* it is Ploughed and managed by one Horſe only. Exceeding plentiful it is of Grain, and abundant in Wine, with which laſt it ſupplieth the Defects of *Bavaria*; it hath great ſtore of Saffron, ſome proviſion of Salt; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Haimburg*, ſome Ginger alſo. Nor wants it Mines of Silver in a large proportion. It is divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North ſide of the River, towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; this on the South ſide towards *Stiermark*.

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA*, are, 1. *Gmund*, ſeated on a Lake call'd *Gmunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the efflux of the River *Draun*, which ariſeth out of it. 2. *Lintz*, ſeated on the Confluence of the ſaid *Draun* with the famous *Danow*; the *Aredate* of *Ptolomy*: a Town before the late Wars almoſt wholly Proteſtant; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other ſide. 3. *Walkenſtein*, on the *Ens* or *Aniſus*, near the borders of *Steirmark*. 4. *Ens*, on the Fall of that River into the *Danow*, raiſed out of the Ruines of *Laureacum* ſometimes the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripenſe*, the Station at that time of the 2d Legion: afterwards an Archbiſhop's See, made ſuch in the firſt planting of Chriſtianity amongſt this People by S. *Severine*, *anno* 464. On the Reviver whereof (ſuppreſſed by the *Hunns*, *Boiarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of S. *Rupertus*, the Metropolitan Dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5. *Weidhoven*, near the head of the River *Ips*. 6. *Ips*, ſeated at the Influx of that River, and from thence denominated; the *Geſodunum* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients. 7. *Newſidle*, on a great Lake ſo named. 8. *Wels*, on the main Stream of the *Danubius*. 9. *Hainburg*, on the Confluence thereof, and the River *Markh*. Near to which, at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg* (from the Town adjoining) but antiently named *Mons Cagnamus*, is ſome ſtore of Ginger: a wonderful great rarity for theſe colder Countries. 10. *Newſtat*, firſt called ſo from the newneſs of it, being built of late. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch*, *Wein*, the principal of all theſe Parts, by *Ptolomy* call'd *Juliobona*; *Vindebona*, by *Antonine*; the Station in their times of the tenth *Roman* Legion; of whoſe being ſetled here there are many Monuments both within the City and without. Seated it is on the Banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick Edifices; each private Houſe having ſuch ſtore of Cellarage for all occaſions, that as much of the City ſeems to be under the ground as is above it. The Streets for the moſt part are ſpacious, and all paved with Stone, which makes them very clean and ſweet in the midſt of Winter. It is fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and precipicious Ditches on all parts of it, and many Bulwarks, Towers and Ramparts in all needful places. The Walls hereof were firſt raiſed with ſome part of the Money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria*, for the Ranſom of K. *Richard* the Firſt of *England*, taken Priſoner by him as he paſſed homewards through this Country from the *Holy Land*: Eſteemed to this day the ſtrongeſt hold of Chriſtendom againſt the *Turks*; and proved experimentally ſo to be in that moſt notable and famous Repulſe here given them, *Anno* 1529. at what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the Magnificent, beſieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the ſecond, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes, were gallantly reſiſted and compelled to retire, with the loſs of 80000 Soldiers. It was again beſieged in the year 1532. And in our Days, in the year 1683, *Mahomet* the Fourth ſent an Army of 100000 Men, which from the 14th of *July* to the 12th of *September* lay before this City, employing all the modern Arts of War and Battery, by which they had reduced it to the utmoſt Extremity, and in a few days more had in all probability carried it, but it was then relieved by *John Sobietsky*, the late King of *Poland*, and *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*: The Princes of the Empire appearing in Perſon, or ſending in their Forces in great numbers. The *Turks* maintained the Siege with that obſtinacy, that being forced to fly at laſt they loſt all their Tents, Cannon, Ammunition and Carriages, and ſaved nothing but their Lives, and what they carried about them; and, which was worſt of all, they loſt all their Valour, Reputation and Union, and are in five Years time reduced to the brink of Ruine. May this Empire riſe no more! Nor doth the ſtrength hereof ſo diminiſh the Beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodlieſt Towns in all the Empire; the Reſidence for theſe laſt Ages of the Emperors: made an Univerſity by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond; reviv'd and much advanc'd by *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *anno* 1356. adorn'd with an Epiſcopal See, many magnificent Temples and ſtately Monaſteries: but above all, with a moſt ſumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperors uſe to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Auſtria*. In the middle Ages, as appears by *Otho Friſingenſis*, it was called *Fabiana*: but being ruined by the *Huns*, and again re-edified, was firſt called *Biana*, (the firſt Syllable omitted by miſtake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch Wein*, and the *Latin Vienna*.

We ſhould now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Country having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great Antiquity; nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Auſtrian* Princes, ſince it came into their poſſeſſion: the only one of note being *Crems*, or *Cremia*, on the left-hand ſhore of *Danubius*, going down the Waters. 2. *Recz*, on the River *Teye*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Frieſtat*, at the Foot of the Mountains on the skirts of *Bohemia*.

2. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North with *Auſtria*, on the South with *Carniola*, on the Eaſt with *Hungary*, and on the Weſt with *Carinthia*; extendeth in length 110 Miles, but in breadth not above 60, or thereabout. For the moſt part mountainous and barren, as being overſpread with the Spurs and Branches of the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

Towns of moſt conſequence are, 1. *Gratz*, ſeated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third Branch of the Houſe of *Auſtria* (ſince the time of *Ferdinand* the firſt) was called *de Gratz*, and had the Government of the Country for their part of that Patrimony. A Town once full of Proteſtants, and thoſe ſo ſtrong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindred from the free Exerciſe of their Religion, till the Year 1598, in which *Margaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, Siſter to the Archduke *Ferdinand de Gratz*, was by the Citizens ſolemnly entertained; with whom entred ſo many Soldiers, that the City was taken, and Fourteen Miniſters of the Reformed Religion preſently baniſhed. 2. *Rackelſpurg*, and 3. *Pruck*, both ſituate alſo on the *Mur*. 4. *Steckaw*, an Epiſcopal See, ſeated on the *Dra* or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5. *Petaw*, the *Pœtovia* of *Antoninus*, ſeated ſomewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6. *Lambach*, the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* alſo. 7. *Voitſperg*,

ſperg, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Celey*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, of great Antiquity, as appeareth by many *Roman* Inſcriptions and other evident ſigns of Age which are upon it; for this cauſe thought by ſome to be that *Celia*, or built at leaſt out of the Ruines of it, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. It is ſituate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large Juriſdiction over the adjoining Countries. 9. *Caniſia*, ſeated in a Marſh on the edge of this Country: a place of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature; once one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks againſt the *Turks* in all theſe parts, and a great eye-ſore to them for many years; but taken by them at laſt, *Anno* 1600, and never regained by the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, though many times in vain attempted; till the 13th of *April*, 1690. it was delivered up into the hands of the *Germans*, when it had ſuffered a Blockade of three years continuance, and the Count *de Budiani*. The *Turk* that delivered up the Keys ſaid, *I herewith conſign into your hands the ſtrongeſt Fortreſs in the* Ottoman *Empire*. This was the laſt place the *Turks* had in all the *Lower Hungary*, of which it was eſteemed a part as long as it was in their hands. There marched out of it 3000 *Turks*, 600 of which were Soldiers. The *Germans* found in it 80 Pieces of Cannon, and great ſtores of ſmall Arms and Ammunition. Before they could enter the Town they paſſed a Bridge of 320 Foot, and another 220, which are great ſigns of the ſtrength of its Situation.

The whole Country being mountainous and hilly, generally over-ſpread with the ſpurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals, as before was ſaid, was anciently the Inhabitation of the *Tauriſci*, (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*, the *Germans* calling that a *Stier* which the *Latins* call *Tauriſcus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermark* is nothing but the Borders or Marches of the *Tauriſci*, the utmoſt Bounds of their Poſſeſſions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Pannonia* in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria*, the Daughter of *Diocleſian*. But once diſmembred from the Empire, it fell unto the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Tauriſci* ſpoken of before. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of one *Ottacarus*, advanced unto that Honour by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2d: *Leopold* the 4th, from this *Ottacarus* (two other *Ottacars* intervening) was made Marquis of *Steirmark*; and his Son, *Ottacar* the 4th, was made Duke hereof by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. But being without hope of Iſſue, and infected with the incurable Diſeaſe of the Leproſie, he ſold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Auſtria*; who bought it with ſome part of that vaſt Sum of Money which he extorted for the Ranſom of King *Richard* the Firſt. It hath continued ever ſince in the poſſeſſion of this potent Family, but ſo, that it hath many times been aſſigned over for the Portion of the younger Brethren: as, namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; *Erneſt* the youngeſt Son of that *Leopold*: and laſtly, to *Charles* the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand* the Firſt, called *Charles* of *Gratz*, Father of *Ferdinand* the Second, Succeſſor to *Matthias* in *Auſtria* it ſelf, and all the reſt of the Eſtates incorporate with it: not like hereafter to be ſo impolitickly diſmembred from the chief of the Houſe, as in former times.

3. *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Stiermark* and the River *Lavand*, on the Weſt with the Diſtrict of *Saltzburg* and the River *Saltzach*, on the North with *Auſtria* it ſelf, and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*, which having its Original in the Skirts hereof, paſſeth through theſe *Auſtrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at laſt into the *Danow*. The Country, being ſituate in the worſt part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in Minerals; extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 *Engliſh* Miles, and 47 in breadth, betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it are, 1. S. *Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief Town of the Country, ſituate at the meeting of the *Glan* and the *Wunies*, two ſmall Rivers adorn'd with a ſpacious Market-place and a beautiful Conduit. 2. *Villach*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, in a pleaſant Valley encompaſſed about with Rocks, the Houſes thereof adorned on the out-ſide with painted Stories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurck*, a ſmall Town, but an Epiſcopal See. 4. *Clagenfurt*, on the Lake call'd *Wera-See*, a well-fenced place, called anciently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolfſperg*, upon the *Lavand*, ſo near to *Stiermark*, that it is by ſome reckon'd for a Town thereof. 6. *Lavamundt*, on the ſame Border, an Epiſcopal See, ſituate at the Influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7. *Frieſach*, a Town of much Antiquity, ſeated on the *Oleza*. 8. *Spital*, &c. The Story and Succeſſion of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the Houſe of *Auſtria* (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Eſtate between them) we ſhall ſee anon.

4. *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia* Eaſt, *Friuli* Weſt, *Carinthia* and part of *Stiermark* North, and *Iſtria* South. It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 *Italian* miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being lower and leſs cold and rocky than more towards the Weſt, maketh it to be the more rich both in Corn and Wine, and other the productions of Nature, than it would be otherwiſe.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmarkt*, 2. *Eſling*, 3. *Marſpurg*, 4. *Pogonock*, and 5. *Saxenfelt*, all upon the *Savus*, which, ariſing in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6. *Laibach*, ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name; by *Ptolomy* called *Pamportus*, but by *Pliny*, *Nauportus*, famous in old Mythology for the tranſport of the Ship called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his Comrades brought the Golden Fleece: who coming out of *Pottus*, or the *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danov*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this Town; hence carried their Ship over land into the *Adriatick*, and from thence ſailed into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, call'd anciently *Noreia*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreia* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſnzo*, an *Italian* Water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of ſo much note, that anciently it was an Earldom and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Manard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (to whom it formerly belong'd) was given to *Albert* his ſecond Son, with the Stile and Title of Earl of *Goritz*; continuing in his Houſe till the Year 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earl hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next Heir unto it; whoſe Succeſſors, not only in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*, but the Empire alſo, do ſtill retain the Title of Earls of *Goritz* in their uſual Stile.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Krain* and *Karnten*, were the *Carni* of *Pliny* and other Ancients, who made them part of *Venetia*, the Tenth Region of *Italy*; but afterwards, in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, they were caſt into *Noricum*, and made a Member of the Dioceſs of the Weſtern *Illyricum*, but ſubject, or ſubordinate rather, to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alps* adjoining had the name of *Carnica*, but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they go. They were united a long time in the Perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon good Record was *Henry*, Son to *Berchthold*, a Nobleman of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperor *Otho* the Third, by him advanced unto this Honour and Eſtate; diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the Will of the Emperors, and given from one Family unto another, as their Fancies ſerved them; not fixed in any Houſe till it came to *Henry* the Son of *Engelbert*, Preſident or Præfect of *Iſtria*: in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his Brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof, who by his Marriage with *Agnes*, Siſter and Heir of *Otho* the ſecond, Duke of *Meran*, added that Eſtate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without Children, he ſold his whole Eſtate to *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*; by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the Peace which was made between them. And although *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (in right of whoſe Daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the Son of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*;) yet on the death of *Henry* the Son of *Mainard* without Iſſue-male, it fell (according to the Contract) unto *Albert* the Short; younger Son of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*; continuing ever ſince in that Family, tho' not always in the chief Houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*.

The ſtrange and obſervable Ceremonies with which the Archdukes of *Auſtria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carinthia* take here out of *Munſter*. In the Meadows adjoining to the Town of S. *Veit* a certain Country-man, to whom that Office by inheritance belongeth, ſitteth on a Marble-ſtone there being, holding in his right hand a Cow with a black Calf, and in his left hand a Mare as lean as a Rake. Then cometh the new Duke attired in a plain ruſtick Habit, his Courtiers attending him in their richeſt Apparel: at whoſe approach the Country-man above mentioned demandeth, *What is he that ſo majeſtically cometh hitherward?* And the People anſwer, that *it is the future Duke.* He again asketh, *Whether he be a juſt Judge, and one that will maintain the Liberty of the Country, and Sincerity of the Religion?* The People anſwer, *He will.* Then he asketh, *By what right he will diſplace him of his Marble-Seat?* To whom the Steward of the new Duke's Houſe replieth, *He ſhall give thee 60 Pence in Silver, the Cattle now ſtanding by thee, the Clothes which he hath at this time on, and thy Houſe ſhall ever be free from Tax and Tribute.* The Fellow upon this taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle cuff on the Ear, ſetteth him on the Marble-ſtone, and taking away the Cattle departeth. This done the new Duke goeth to S. *Veit's* Church, and having done his Devotions, putteth off his ruſtick Weeds, and dreſſeth himſelf in Cloths befitting a Prince: for ſuch after their Ceremonies he is acknowledged.

The Arms of theſe Dukes were *Argent*; three Lions Leopards *Sable*.

4. *TYROL* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Friuli* and *Marca Trivigiana*, by the interpoſing of which or ſome parts thereof, disjoin'd from *Carniola*; on the Weſt with the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*; and on the North with *Bavaria*; and on the South with *Lombardy*. It is extended over the greateſt parts of the *Alps Rhatica*, and ſome part of the *Julia*; yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful Vallies, thoſe eſpecially which lie on the Banks of the *Inn* and the River of *Adiſe*. Nor are the Hills ſo void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good ſtore of Metals digged out of them, eſpecially of Braſs and Silver; which laſt have yielded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of moſt note are, 1. *Oenipons*, or *Inſpruck*, ſo called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the ſecond Branch of *Auſtria*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the ſecond Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*; the Houſe of *Gratz* iſſuing from *Charles* the third, Son of that Emperor. Moſt memorable for the haſty Flight of *Charles* V. in the Year 1552. upon the News that Duke *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming againſt him with his Forces, which ſo terrified him, that he fled away by Torch-light with ſome of his Followers; the reſidue of his Court, (moſt of which were perſons of great Eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the black Guard and the Scullery. The Town hath been many times the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Auſtria*; who have here a very Royal and Magnificent Palace. And to ſay truth, the Town deſerveth to be ſo honoured; being ſweetly ſeated amongſt pleaſant Meadows, ſpacious Corn-fields, and ſhady Mountains, the Houſes fairly built of Stone, enriched by the Courts of Judicature here ſettled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant Armory. 2. *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latin*) ſituate in the Confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cauſe the Inhabitants ſpeak both Languages: built on the Banks of the River *Atheſis* or *Adiſe*; honoured with an Epiſcopal See; but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the Third, *Anno* 1546. againſt the *Lutherans*: It was for 22 Years together before their meeting daſhed by one Pope, and animated by another; advanced by *Charles* the 5th. upon worldly Policies, and for as worldly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this firſt Convention of it, at ſundry times aſſembled, ſuſpended, and diſſolved: and finally, when fixed here ſeriouſly by Pope *Pius* the Fourth, *Anno* 1562. managed with ſo much art and cunning by the Papal Party, that nothing was determin'd among the Prelates but what had been formerly reſolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by eſpecial Poſts; occaſioning that moſt bitter Jeſt of one of the *Hungarian* Biſhops who was preſent at it, That the *Holy Ghoſt was ſent unto them in a Cloak Bag from* Rome. The effects of which Council, ſo artificially carried on by the ſtrength of Wit, I cannot better deſcribe than in the words of the Hiſtory of it, which are as follweth. ‘This
“ Council, deſired and procured by godly Men, to reunite
“ the Church which began to be divided, hath ſo
“ eſtabliſhed the Schiſm and made the Parties ſo obſtinate,
“ that the Diſcords are irreconcileable; and being
“ managed by Princes for Reformation of Eccleſiaſtical
“ Diſcipline, hath cauſed the greateſt deformation that
“ ever was ſince Chriſtianity did begin; and hoped for
“ by the Biſhops themſelves to regain the Epiſcopal
“ Authority, for the moſt part uſurped by the Pope,
“ hath made them loſe it altogether, bringing them into
“ greater ſervitude: on the contrary, feared and avoided
“ by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to moderate
“ the exorbitant Power thereof, mounted from ſmall
“ beginnings, by divers degrees, to an unlimited exceſs;
“ it hath ſo eſtabliſhed and confirmed the ſame
“ over that part which remained ſubject unto it, that it
“ was never ſo great nor ſoundly rooted. So far the
words of the Hiſtory. The next of note is, 3. *Falkenſtein*, remarkable for Mines of Braſs; as, 4. *Hall*, upon the *Inn*, for Salt Wiches; and, 5. *Schwas*, for the richer Mines of Silver. 6. *Malk*, near the head of the River *Atheſis*. 7. *Pollen*, upon the Borders of *Italy*, by the People thereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolſano*. 8. *Tyrol*, an ancient Caſtle, the firſt Seat of the Earls or Governors hereof, and giving name for that reaſon to the Country adjoining. 9. *Meran*, neighbouring the old Caſtle of *Tyrol*, which gave the Title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* Race, deſcended from *Rathboldus*, a baſe Son of the Emperor *Arnulph*, poſſeſſed of many large Eſtates in theſe *Alpine* Counties, now appertaining to the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. From one of the which Dukes called *Otho* of *Meran*, married to *Beatrix*, Heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (ſince that time) do derive themſelves.

The Earls hereof were at the firſt no other than Provincial Officers: when made Proprietaries, I am yet to ſeek. The firſt of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tyrol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258. leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis* was infeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the Second, Son of this laſt *Mainard* dying without Iſſue-male, his Daughter *Margaret* by the conſent of all her People, ſetled her Eſtate therein on the Sons of *Albert* called the Short; which continues ever ſince in the Houſe of *Auſtria*, though ſometimes made the Portion and Inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the firſt it was given in Appennage to his ſecond Son *Ferdinand*, ſirnamed of *Inſpruck* for that reaſon, who by marrying with *Philippina*, a Burger's Daughter of *Augsburg*, ſo diſpleaſed his

Brethren, that, to buy his Peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongſt them all, that *Tyrol* ſhould not deſcend upon his Children of that *Venter*. In purſuance whereof, after his deceaſe, *Tyrol* fell to the Houſe of *Gratz*; his eldeſt Son *Charles* being made Marquis of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngeſt Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Auſtria* we have ſeen already. The old Inhabitants of the other part are ſuppoſed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lieth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in thoſe parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the ſecond *Rhatia*, and ſo much of *Noricum* as lieth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, leaving the reſt to the *Avares*, who poſſeſſed that and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted alſo from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire, as we ſhall ſhew more fully when we come to our deſcription of *Hungary*.

But theſe *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*, both Provinces became Members of the *French* Empire, till the ſubduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*, to oppoſe whom, and keep in peace and ſafety theſe remoter parts, ſome Guardians, or Lords-Marchers, were appointed by the Kings and Emperors of *Germany*, with the Title of *Marqueſſes of Oſtriech*; at firſt officiary only, but at laſt hereditary; made ſo by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, ſirnam'd the Illuſtrious, the Son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, and therewithal the Title of Marquis, *Anno* 980. This Marquiſate was by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* raiſed to a Dukedom 1158; *Henry* being the firſt Duke, whoſe Nephew *Leopold* took *Richard* the firſt of *England* Priſoner, in his return from *Paleſtine*; for whoſe Ranſon he had ſo much Money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neoburg* and *Lintz*, and walled *Vienna*. His Son *Fredericus*, ſirnamed the Warlike, was made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1225. Eleven Years he continu'd in his Dignity; at the end of which he was ſpoiled of his Royal Ornaments by the ſame hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperor's Summons, unto whom for ſome Outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246, diſcomfited and ſlain in Battel by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no Iſſue of his Body, this Eſtate of right ſhould have deſcended on *Frederick*, Son of *Hermannus*, Marquis of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his Wife, the Niece of this *Frederick* the Warlike by his Brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, *Anno* 1268. But *Ottacar*, Son of *Primiſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his Wife, one of the Siſters of the ſaid *Frederick* the Warlike, by a ſtrong hand poſſeſſed himſelf of the Dukedom of *Auſtria*, which he increaſed by the addition of *Carinthia* and *Trevigiana*; all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia* till the year 1278, in which he was vanquiſh'd and ſlain by *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus poſſeſſed of theſe great Eſtates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldeſt Son, who had then married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his Wife, the Daughter of *Gertrude*, and Siſter and ſole Heir at laſt of *Frederick*, ſo cruelly murthered at *Naples*, as before was ſaid; By means of which Marriage and Inveſtiture *Albert* was quickly poſſeſſed of the Dukedoms of *Auſtria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Marca Trevigiana*; to which the Earldom of *Tyrol*, and many other fair Eſtates in *Schwaben* and *Alſatia* were after added. By whom it was firſt raiſed to the Title of Arch-duke is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, at the Inveſtiture of his Son *Albert* into theſe Eſtates, *Anno* 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that Honour *Rodolph* the Ingenuous, *Anno* 1360. Some make it to be firſt given to *Albert*, Duke hereof, in the Year 1430: and others poſt it lower to the Marriage of *Philip*, Son of *Maximilian* of *Auſtria* and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princeſs of *Spain*. But by whomſoever given at firſt, it is now the conſtant and hereditary Title of all this Family: the ſucceſſive Princes whereof from the firſt Inveſtiture follow in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Marquiſſes, Dukes, Kings, and Arch-dukes of AUSTRIA.

926	1. *Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the firſt Marquis.
988	2. *Henry*, Son of *Leopold*.
1014	3. *Albert*, Son of *Henry*, ſirnamed the Victorious.
1056	4. *Erneſtus*, Son of *Albert*.
1075	5. *Leopold* II. Son of *Erneſt*, a Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
1066	6. *Leopold* III. Son of the ſecond, Founder of the Abbey of *Neuburg*.
1116	7. *Leopold* IV. Son of the third, by his half-Brother *Conrade* the third, then Emperor of the *Germans*, made Duke of *Bavaria*.
1141	8. *Henry* II. Brother of *Leopold*, Marquis of *Auſtria* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made the firſt Duke of *Auſtria* by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1158. the whole Country betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens* being added by the ſaid Emperor unto his Eſtate, on his relinquiſhing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.
1177	9. *Ludowick*, Son of *Henry*, built *Ens* and *Newſtat*; of great Note in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.
1193	10. *Leopold* V. Son of *Ludowick*, the irreconcilable Enemy of our *Richard* the Firſt, taken Priſoner by him in his paſſage homewards, and put unto a grievous ranſom, the Dukedom of *Steirmark* being purchaſed with a part thereof.
1230	11. *Frederick* the Warlike, Son of *Leopold* the 5th, made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond; the laſt of the Male-iſſue of the Houſe of *Bamberg*.
1246	12. *Ottacar*, Son of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his Wife, Siſter of *Frederick*, poſſeſſed himſelf of this Eſtate, adding thereto the Countries of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick* the laſt Prince thereof; but was diſpoſſeſſed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* in 1278.
1283	13. *Albert* II. Son of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, by his Father made Duke of *Auſtria*; married *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct Heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Nieces, and (on the death of that *Frederick* who was ſlain at *Naples*) the next Heir of *Frederick*, King and Duke of *Auſtria*; after his Father's death choſen Emperor alſo.
1308	14. *Rodolph* the Ingenuous, his other Brother ſharing with him in the Eſtate.
1315	15. *Albert*, ſirnam'd the Short, the youngeſt and ſurviving Brother of *Rodolph*, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; a great advancer of this Houſe.
1358	16. *Albert* IV. Son of *Albert* the Short.
1365	17. *Albert* V. Son of *Albert* the fourth.
1404	18. *Albert* VI. Son of *Albert* the fifth, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Sigiſmund* the King thereof.
1439	19. *Ladiſlaus*, Son of *Albert* and *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*.
1457	20. *Frederick* II. on the death of *Ladiſlaus* without Iſſue, ſucceeded into the Dukedom of *Auſtria*, as the direct Heir of *Leopold* the 6.

one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; choſen alſo Emperor.

1493 21. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, enriched his House with the Marriage of the Heir of *Burgundy*.

1519 22. *Ferdinand*, Granchild to *Maximilian* by his Son *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſucceeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperor of *Germany*.

1565 23. *Maximilian* II. Son of *Ferdinand*.

1577 24. *Rodolphus* III. Son of *Maximilian* the 2.

1612 25. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*.

1619 26. *Ferdinand* II. ſirnamed of *Gratz*, Son of *Charles* Duke of *Auſtria*, of the Houſe of *Gratz*, the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand* the 1. (the numerous Off-ſpring of *Maximilian* the ſecond being all dead without Iſſue) ſucceeded in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*; choſen Emperor alſo, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, &c.

1637 27. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, now living *Anno* 1648, Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Germans*.

1657 28. *Leopold*, ſecond Son of *Ferdinand* III. his Elder Brother dying in the year 1653.

The Arms of theſe Earls when diſtinct from the Houſe of *Auſtria* were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable* membred *Or*.

Thus have we ſeen by what means and under what Princes all theſe Provinces, belonging unto ſeveral Lords became united and incorporated into one Eſtate. Beſides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* all the upper *Elſas*, the Caſtle and Territory of *Habſpurg* it ſelf, with many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*; by *Albert* the ſhort, the Country of *Sungow*; and by his ſons, the Advocateſhip of *Friburg*, or the County of *Briſgow*. So that theſe Princes are undoubtedly the greateſt for Power, and Patrimony of any in *Germany*, and would be of a great Revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks* did not put them to continual Charges, and make the borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very thoroughly manured. However it is thought that they may yield yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards to the Arch-Duke's Coffers.

The Arms of theſe Princes are *Gules*, a Feſs *Argent*: aſſumed by Marquiſs *Leopold* at the Siege of *Acon* or *Ptolomais* in the *Holy Land*, becauſe his whole Armour being covered with blood, his belt only remained white. The Arms thereof in former times having been ſix Larks *Or*, in a Field *Azure*; ſuppoſed to have been taken by the firſt Marquiſſes, becauſe they poſſeſſed thoſe ſix Provinces, for defence of which the Tenth Legion, called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we ſhall meet withal no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the north-ſide of *Danubius* and the Eaſt-ſide of the *Rhene* being almoſt as ſoon abandoned as conquered by them. So that in our ſurvey of theſe Northern Countries we are not like to find ſuch matter of Antiquity as we have before: but muſt content our ſelves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a leſſer continuance. In which we ſhall begin with thoſe Countries which lie on the other ſide of the *Rhene* bordering on the Eſtates of *Cleveland* and the Biſhops-Electors; and ſo proceed on Eaſtward till we come to the fartheſt parts of *Germany*, and the Confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North, till we meet with *Denmark*; which is last of all to be conſidered.

WETERAW.

VETERAVIA, or WETERAW, is bounded on the West with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, on the Eaſt with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Haſſia* and *Weſtphalen*, and on the South with the lower *Palatinate*. It containeth a Combination of many ſmall Eſtates, which being joined in a common League for defence of each other in the preſervation of their Laws, Liberties and Religion; are called *the Confederation of the Weteraw*. The principal of the States which are thus confederated are the Earls of 1. *Naſſaw*, 2. *Hanaw*, and 3. *Solms*, 4. the Lord of *Lichteberg*, and the Imperial Cities of 5. *Friberg*, and 6. *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *NASSAU* (for fruitfulneſs of Soil and delightſomneſs of ſituation not inferiour to moſt parts of *France*) lieth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Haſſia* from *Engern* and *Weſtphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Naſſau*, ſituate on the South ſide of the River *Lon*, not far from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the firſt Seat and honorary Title of this famous Family, and ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the Princes of *Orange*, the firſt branch hereof. 2. *Dillenburg*, the uſual Seat of the Earls of *Naſſau* before their ſettling in the *Low Countries*; whence they are named the Earls of *Naſſau* of the Houſe of *Dillenburg*, to difference them from others of the ſame Family. 2. *Catzenelbogen*, *ditio Catenſis*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the owners of it, in *Latine Catti Meliboci*, which ſhews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The poſſeſſion of this Town is much controverted between the Earls of *Naſſau* and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*. Concerning which we are to know, that *Henry* the ſecond ſon of *Lewis* Lantgrave of *Haſſia* ſirnamed the mild, married with *Anne*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the laſt Lord hereof, and by her had a Son called *William*, who died without Iſſue, and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, married to *John* the third of *Naſſau*, to whom ſhe brought *Henry* and *William* Earls of *Naſſau*. *Elizabeth* on the death of her Brother *William* laid claim to the Eſtate, as the next Heir to him; followed in the purſuit thereof by *William* Count of *Naſſau* her ſurviving Son. Againſt which *William* the 2. of *Haſſia* did alledg a grant or donation of it from his Couſin *William*, the Brother of *Elizabeth*, as before is ſaid, and having Poſſeſſion of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the laſt it was ſurrendred by Count *William* of *Naſſau* (Father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, for the ſum of 600000 Crowns: the Houſe of *Naſſau* notwithſtanding retaining it amongſt their Titles. 3. *Herborn*, a ſmall Univerſity, or *Schola illuſtris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Naſſau*; in which *Piſcator* was Divinity-Reader, and *Alſtedius* (both famous in their times) Profeſſor for the Arts and Sciences. 4. *Idſtein*, lying South to *Catzenelbogen*, and 5. *Wisbad*, directly South of *Idſtein*, betwixt that and the *Maine*: theſe being the Title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of this Family. 6. *Weilburg*, on the *Lon*, not far from *Wetzelaer*; which gives Title to the Third branch of this Houſe, called the Earls of *Naſſau* in *Sarbruck* and *Weilbrug*.

As for the Princes of the Houſe of *Naſſau*, they are very ancient; *Otho* of *Naſſau* being made Earl of *Gelderland* in the year 1079. Another *Otho* of this Houſe, but proceeding from a different Branch of it, died An. 1190. the Founder of the preſent Family of the Princes of *Orange*, and of the Houſe *Wisbad* and *Idſtein*; out of which deſcended *Adolphus* Earl of *Naſſau*, choſen Emperor in the year 1292. by the Marriage of *Engelbert*, the ſeventh Earl of this Houſe of *Dillenburg*, with *Mary* Daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came firſt to be poſſeſſed of *Eſtates* in the *Netherlands*: and by the Marriage of *Henry* great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the Principality of *Orange* in *France*. A Family as much honoured for the perſonal Merits of the Princes of it as any other in *Europe*, of ſome of which although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the deſcription and ſtory of *Provence*) as Princes of *Orange*, yet take here the whole Succeſſion of them as

The Counts of *NASSAV*.

1. *Otho*, the Son of *Henry*, and Nephew of *Waleran*, the firſt Earl of *Naſſau* of this Line.

1190 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Otho*, who added *Dillenburg*, *Wisbad*, and *Idſtein*, unto his Eſtate; Grandfather, by *Waldradus* his ſecond Son, to *Adolphus* the Emperor.

3. *Otho* II. Son of *Henry*.

4. *Henry* II. Son of *Otho* the ſecond.

5. *Otho* III. Son of *Henry* the ſecond.

6. *John*, Son of *Otho* the third.

1362 7. *Engelbert*, the Son of *John* by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair Eſtates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.

8. *John* II. Son of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Naſſau*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.

1475 9. *John* III. Son of *John* the ſecond.

1516 10. *Henry* III. Son of *John* the third, Knight of the Golden Fleece, married *Claude* of *Chalons*, Siſter of *Philibert* Prince of *Orange*.

1536 11. *Rene*, Son of *Henry* the third, and of *Claude* of *Chalons*, Succeſſor to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, *anno* 1530. and to his Father in the Earldom of *Naſſau*, *anno* 1536.

1544 12. *William*, the Son of *John* the third, by *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, and of *Anne* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Earl of *Catzenelbogen*, reform'd the Religion in this Country according to the *Lutheran* Doctrines.

1559 13. *William* II. Son of *William* the firſt, ſucceeded Prince of *Orange* by the Will of *Rene* his Couſin-german, *anno* 1544. and Earl of *Naſſau* by the death of his Father, *anno* 1559. What elſe concerns this Prince we have had before. I only add, that *William* the firſt, beſides this *William*, had three other Sons; that is to ſay, Count *John*, the Father of *William* of *Naſſau*, Governor of *West-Frieſeland*; Count *Ludowick*, of great Renown in the firſt Wars of the *Netherlands*, in the courſe whereof he loſt his Life, *anno* 1574; and Count *Adolphus*, ſlain in the ſame Wars alſo, *anno* 1568.

1584 14. *Philip*, eldeſt Son of *William* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, ſucceeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his Mother, *anno* 1551. Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Naſſau* by the death of his Father.

1618 15. *Maurice*, Son of *William* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Maurice* Duke Elector of *Saxony*, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Naſſau*: at the age of Ten Years made General of all the Forces of the *United Netherlands*, which place he managed for the ſpace of 37 years both with great Courage and Succeſs.

1625 16. *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice* (but by another *Venter*, the Daughter of *Gaſper Coligny*, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the Forces of the *States* United.

1648 17. *William* III. Son of *Henry* the 4th. Succeſſor to his Father in all his Honours and Commands. A Prince of great hopes and expectations. He died *November* 6. 1650.

1650 18. *William-Henry*, Son of *William* the third and *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the firſt, King of *Great Britain*, born the 14th day of *November*, 1650. nine days after the Death of his Father. In his Infancy by a Decree of the *States* of *Holland*, he was deprived of all thoſe Honours and Privileges which belonged to his Family, which yet were reſtored to him in the Year 1672: And in the Year 1677, the 14th of *November*, he married *Mary* the eldeſt Daughter of *James* the 2d, King of *Great Britain*, by whom he has had no Children. The 12th of *February*, 16$\frac{88}{89}$, he with the Lady *Mary* his Conſort, was recognized King and Queen of *England*, &c. by the three Eſtates aſſembled in a Convention, *James* the 2d, late King of *England*, having deſerted the Throne and Nation the 11th of *December* before, and withdrawn himſelf into *France*.

The Arms of the Earls of *Naſſau* are quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, Armed *Gules*; 2. *Or*, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, Armed and Crowned *Azure*; 3. *Gules*, a Feſs *Argent*; and 4. *Gules* two Leopards *Or*, Armed and Membred of the firſt.

Beſides this *Dutch* Branch of the Family of *Naſſau*, diſtinguiſh'd from the reſt by the Title of *Orange*, there be ſeveral other Branches of great Honour and Eſtate. *William* the firſt, in the former Catalogue, had a Son called *John*, to whom was aſſigned the Caſtle of *Dillingberg*, and he became the Father of 25 Children; four of which Founded diſtinct Families.

SIEGEN NASSAU.

1. *John*, ſirnamed *Midius*, Son of the aforeſaid *John*, and Founder of the Line of *Siegen*, had 23 Children.

2. By his firſt Wife he had two Sons, *John* and *William*; this latter died in the Year 1642 without any Iſſue, *John* the elder turned Roman Catholick, and died in 1638.

3. *John Francis Deſideratus* ſucceeded his Father, and ſerved the King of *Spain*, who in the Year 1680 made him Governor of *Gelderland*, but he has no Children but Daughters.

4. *John* the firſt of this Houſe, had by his ſecond Wife *John Mauritius*, who died without Iſſue in the year 1679. 2. *George Frederick*, Captain of the Guards to the Prince of *Orange*, who alſo died Childleſs in 1674. 3. *Henry*, Governor of *Hulſt* in *Flanders*, his ſurviving Son is *William Maurice*, a Colonel in the *Holland* Army: and he has one Son whoſe name was not known to my Author *Sheveriske*.

The Line of *NASSAU Dillenburg*.

1. *George*, one of the Sons of the aforeſaid *John*, was alſo the Founder of this Houſe. By his firſt Wife he had *Lewis Henry*.

2. *Lewis Henry* was the Father of

3. *George Lewis*, and *Adolph*: the former of theſe had

4. *Henry*, born in 1641; *George Lewis*, born in 1667; *Albert*, born in 1668; *William*, in 1670; *Adolph*, in 1673.

5. *Adolph*, the Brother of *George*, lives at *Schaumberg*, and has only three Daughters.

The Line of *Dietz NASSAU*.

1. The Founder of this Line was *Ernest Caſſimir*, one of the Sons of the ſaid *John*, who ſucceeded his Brother *William Lewis* in the Government of *Frieſland* and *Groenland*: He was ſlain at *Roermond* the 5th of *June*, 1632.

2. *Henry Caſſimir*, his eldeſt Son, was Governor or Stateholder of *Frieſland* and *Groenland*, and died at Fort *Naſſau* in *Flanders* in 1640 without Iſſue.

3. *William Frederick*, his Brother, ſucceeded him, and died the 13th of *October*, 1664.

4. *Henry Caſſimir*, Son of the laſt mentioned *William*, born in the year 1657, ſucceeded his Father in his Dignities, and Married in the year 1684, *Herica Amalia* Daughter to *John George* II. Princc of *Anhalt*.

The Line of *Hadmar Naſſau*.

1. *John Lewis*, a Son of the ſame Father with the reſt, was the Founder of this Line, he turned *Roman Catholick*, and was in great Eſteem with *Ferdinand* the II. and III. Emperors of *Germany*, and he died the 6th of *March*, 1653.
2. *Maurice Henry*, his Son, born in 1626, continued the Line, and Died the 24th of *January*, 1679.
3. *Francis Alexander*, his Son, born the 27th of *January*, 1679, ſucceeds him.

Bordered on *Franconia* or *Frankenland* lieth the County of *HANAW*, ſo called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of moſt note are, 1. *Hanaw* it ſelf, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illuſtris* alſo, and much inriched by the Trade of Printing, with which they uſe to furniſh annually the Marts of *Francford*, diſtant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2. *Phaffenhofen*, of no note formerly but like to be remembred in the ſtories of ſucceeding times for the great Defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorrain*, *July* 31. 1633, who loſt his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition and Baggage, and, which was worſt of all, his Country; taken in part from by him by the conquering *Swedes*, who followed him cloſe unto his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3. *Lichteberg*, which gives Title to a ſecond Branch of the Houſe of *Hanaw*, called the Lord of *Lichteberg*. A Family of good eſteem, ſince the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the Title of Earl thereof which was about the year 1392. Before that, Princes of the Empire; and after that advanced unto great Fortunes, by the addition of theBarony of *Mintzeberg* in the perſon of *Philip* the firſt Earl; of the County of *Rhoinick*, in the perſon of another *Philip*, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former *Philip*; and finally, of the Lordſhips and Eſtates of *Lichteberg*, accruing to this Houſe by the Marriage of a third *Philip*, the youngeſt Son of *Reinard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* Lord of *Lichteberg*; the Title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond Branch of the Houſe of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Lichteberg* and *Hoſchenſtein*, and Earls of *Bitſch*: this laſt being an Eſtate in *Lorrain* accruing to them by the Marriage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fifth in name and order of the Houſe of *Lichtoberg*) with *Margaret* the ſole Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* the laſt Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Naſſau* and *Hanaw* on both ſides of the River *Lon*, lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*; the firſt Earl whereof (of whom there is any good *Conſtat*) was *Henry* honoured with this Title, *anno* 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts Imperial made before that time, I muſt conclude them to be ancienter than the date aforeſaid; though that be ſufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the Marriage of *Conrade* the 9th from *Henry* firſt, with *Elizabeth*, one of the Daughters of *William* of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the Widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of ſuch authority amongſt the *Netherlands*, as to be priviledged with a place and Suffrage in the Council of the States General: there ſetled at the preſent in their greateſt honour, eſpecially ſince the Marriage of *Henry* of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, with a Daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his ſecond Wife, the Mother of *William* the III. of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, and Huſband to the Princeſs *Mary*, the eldeſt Daughter of Great *Britain*. But beſides their Eſtate there, they are poſſeſſed in this Tract of 1. *Braunfeltz*, which gives Title to the firſt Branch of the Houſe of *Solms*; 2. *Croneberg*, the poſſeſſion of the ſecond Branch of this Family; and 3. *Solms* on the North-ſide of the *Lon*, the Root of both.

Of the Imperial Cities in this Confederation, the firſt is *Friburg* called for diſtinction ſake *Friburg* in *Weteraw*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Briſgow*; ſituate in the middle of delicious and moſt fruitful fields, and memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Naſſau*, at that time Emperor; who, when he could not get it by Force or Famine, obtained it by Fraud, and put to death no leſs than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Caſtle. So hated he was for that bloody fact, that he was ſhortly after deprived of the Empire, and ſlain in fight by *Albert* of *Auſtria* his Competitor. The ſecond of the two is *Wetzelaer*, ſeated on the *Lon*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which riſing near *Dillenberg*, a Town of the Earl of *Naſſau*'s doth here loſe its name into the greater. A Town Imperial, confederate with *Friburg* and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common Liberties, and the Religion publickly profeſſed amongſt them, being that of the Reformed Churches of *Calvin*'s Platform.

10. *FRANCONIA*.

FRANCONIA, or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Upper *Palatine*, and part of *Voitland*, on the Weſt with the Confederates of *Weteraw* and part of the *Rhene*, on the North ſide with *Haſſia* and *Thuringia*, on the South with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene* and ſome part of *Schwaben*: So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whoſe poſſeſſion it was when they were firſt known unto the *Romans*; the Reſidence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province appropriating the name unto it. Called alſo *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France* which lay more towards the Weſt. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the preſent, comprehending ſo much of the Lower *Palatinate* as lieth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*; ſince ſubdued from it and made a Province of it ſelf in theſe latter Ages.

The Country, on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Foreſts, and environed almoſt with Mountains; parts of the old *Hercynian* Woods, is within pleaſant, plain and fruitful, ſufficiently plentiful both of Corn and Wines, but abundantly well ſtored with Rape and Licoras, and yielding good paſture for Cattle. So that we compare it to a fine piece of Cloth, wrought about with a courſe Liſt; or an excellent fine piece of Lawn, with a Canvas Selvage.

Chief Rivers of it are, 1. The *Maine* or *Mœnus*, which running through the midſt of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Francfort*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoining *French* had the name of *Salii*, and *Conrade*, Emperor of the *Germans*, the ſirname of *Salicus*. 3. *Radientia*. 4. *Sinna*. 5. *Tubero*. 6. *Æſtus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, ſtrong of body, and very induſtrious, not ſuffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what ſort ſoever. The off-ſpring of the ancient *French*, who, having overmaſtered *Gaul* and the parts adjoyning, left here the ſeminary of their ſtrength, and a ſtock of their ancient Princes; *Marcomir*, Brother of *Pharamond* the firſt King of the *French*, governing in theſe parts as Duke, and leaving the Eſtate and Title unto his Poſterity. The Catalogue of which Princes take in order thus.

The Princes of the *FRANKS*, and Dukes of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *French* Race.

A. Ch.

326 1. *Genebaldus*; the Son of *Dagobert*, deſcended from the old Regal ſtock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* Nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Franks*, having ſubdued thoſe parts which lay towards the

River *Mœnus*, became the firſt Prince of the Eaſtern *Franks*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis.*

356 2. *Dagobert*, the Son of *Genebaldus*, who added the Diſtrict of *Triers* unto his Eſtates.

377 3. *Glodovaus*, or *Ludovicus*, the Son of *Dagobert.*

398 4. *Marcomir*, the Son of *Glodovaus*, who extended his Dominion Eaſtwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia.*

402 5. *Pharamond*, or *Weramond*, the Son of *Marcomir*, the firſt of this Line which took upon himſelf the Title of King of the *French* : on the aſſuming whereof (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *Eaſt-France*, with the Title of Duke, to his Brother *Marcomir.*

419 6. *Marcomir* the Brother of *Pharamond.*

423 7. *Prunmeſſer*, by ſome called *Priamus* the Son of *Marcomir.*

435 8. *Genebaldus* II. the Son of *Prunmeſſer.*

455 9. *Sunno*, the Son of *Genebald* the ſecond.

478 10. *Clodomirus*, or *Luitemarus*, the Son of *Sunno.*

515 11. *Hygobaldus*, the Son of *Clodomir*, who became a Chriſtian and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Eſtates.

541 12. *Helenus*, by ſome called *Hermericus* a Chriſtian alſo, who paſſing over the *Rhene*, ſubdued that Tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorrain*, which the *Dutch* called *Weſt-reich.*

571 13. *Gotofridus*, the Son of *Helenus*, a Chriſtian alſo, but not able to perſwade his people to the ſame belief.

595 14. *Genebaldus* III. the Son of *Gotofride.*

615 15. *Clodomir* II. the Son of *Genebald* the third.

638 16. *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the ſecond.

668 17. *Clodovaus*, or *Clovis* II. the Couſin-german of *Heribert.*

680 18. *Gosbertus* the Son of *Clovis* the ſecond.

706 19. *Gosbertus* II. Son of *Gosbert* the firſt.

720 20. *Hetavus*, the Son of *Gosbert* the ſecond, the laſt Duke of *Franconia* of this Line. He dying without Iſſue-male, *Anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the Great according to a former Contract made between thoſe Princes. And *Charles* no ſooner had it in his poſſeſſion, but he beſtowed the greateſt part of it on *Burchard*, the firſt Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 752. made Biſhop of that City by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, (the firſt Apoſtle of this People) but a year before. The Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* by this Grant were poſſeſſed hereof as long as any of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great did poſſeſs the Empire. But his poſterity failing in the perſon of *Conrade*, *Anno* 910. *Otho* the firſt (who next but one ſucceeded *Conrade*) inveſted *Conrade*, Husband to *Luitgardis* his daughter, with this Country, giving him withal the Title of Duke of *Franconia.* Four Princes of this Houſe poſſeſſed it ; that is to ſay, this *Conrade*, ſirnamed *Salicus* ; and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, ſucceſſively enjoying the Imperial dignity, by the names of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the laſt Prince of the male Line of *Conrade*, dying without Iſſue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next Heir to *Henry* by the Lady *Agnes* his Siſter, married to *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Schwaben*, the Grand-father of *Barbaroſſa.* But that Houſe being alſo extinct in the perſon of *Conradine*, *Anno* 1268. and no one Heir pretending to the Rights thereof, the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former Grant ; content to let ſome great ones have a part of the ſpoil, that he and his Succeſſors might enjoy the reſt. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Biſhops of *Wurtsburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antiently ſo much of the *Palatinate* and the Biſhoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene* were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquiſs of *Onaldsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, *Henneburg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the Free or Imperial Cities as are ſeated in it. Thus every one did gather ſticks when the great Oak fell : the Title of the Duke of *Franconia* remaining notwithſtanding to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg.*

1. *WURTZBURG*, the Metropolis of *Franconia*, the Seat and Reſidence of the Biſhop, who is Titular Duke hereof, is ſituate on the *Maine* or *Mœnus*, in a pleaſant Plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains ; and very well fenced with Walls, Trenches, Bulwarks, and other Arts of modern Fortification ; well peopled, and for the moſt part handſomely and neatly built. Paſſing over the Bridge built of Freeſtone on many large and ſpacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Caſtle, the ordinary dwelling of the Biſhop ; and yet ſo ſtrong, that the many vain attempts of the Boors and Citizens, apt to pick quarrels with their Prince, made it thought impregnable, to which the ſituation of it on the top of an Hill added ſome advantage : but it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1631. who after a ſhort, but ſtout reſiſtance took it by aſſault. Other Towns of moſt note which belong to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* are, 2. *Forcheim*, where it is ſaid that *Pontus Pilate* was born. 3. *Gemund*, at the meeting of the *Maine* and the *Saltza*, or *Sala*. 4. *Bretta* upon the *Saltza* or *Sala* ; not far from *Gemund* ; remarkable enough, if for nothing elſe, for being the Birthplace of *Melancthon* that renowned Scholar, the Phœnix of *Germany*, as ſome call him, and that not unfitly. 5. *Chronach.* 6. *Staffelſtein.* 7. *Hockſtadt* ; of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Biſhop or chief Lord of all. He is called in the refined *Latine* of theſe times *Herbipolitanus* ; but commonly *Wurtziburgenſis* ; differing in ſound, but not in ſence : for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a Town of *Wortz*, ſituate among plants and Gardens, as before is ſaid ; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of ſeveral languages, doth ſignifie no more than a *City of Herbs.* By whom the Epiſcopal See was here firſt erected, and how the Biſhops hereof came to be entituled unto their Eſtates hath been ſhewn already. The manner how the new Biſhop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the deceaſe of the former Biſhop, the Lord Elect, attended with a great train of horſe, is to make his entrance. As ſoon as he comes within the Gates, he alights off his horſe, and putteth off his Robes, and being attired in a poor and deſpicable Habit, begirt about with a Rope, bare-headed alſo and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Caſtel Werthaim*, and *Rheineck*, to S. *Saviour's* Church, being his Cathedral. The Dean and Canons there meeting him, ask him what he would have : to which he modeſtly replied, that, though unworthily, he is come to diſcharge the Office unto which he is called. Then the Dean thus, *I admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy care this Church of S.* Saviour's, *and the Dukedom thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt.* Which done he putteth on his Epiſcopal Habit, ſayeth Maſs, and from thence paſſeth to the Caſtle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Biſhop thus inveſted, proceed we next to the Burial of the dead : whoſe Body imbowelled, is kept in the Chappel of his Caſtle, his Heart preſerved in a veſſel of Glaſs. The next day he is carried to the Monaſtery of Saint *James*, holding a Croſier-ſtaff in his right hand, and a Sword in his left ; buried with them the next day after in the Church of S. *Saviour.* As for the Revenue of the Biſhop, they muſt needs be great ; the Biſhop hereof in the time of *Charles* the fifth, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready Money, and entring into a Bond to pay all his Debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly gueſs at the richneſs of his Exchequer, and partly at the greatneſs of his *Intrado*.

2. The ſecond great Lord of *Franconia* is the Biſhop of *Bamberg*, a City ſeated on the *Maine*, not far from *Wurtzburg*, the little River *Rednitz* falling there into it: ſuppoſed by *Mercator* to be the *Branionarium* of *Ptolomy*, and to have took this new name from the Hill *Baba* (ſo called from *Baba* Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and Wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof (upon which it is ſituate, the right name being *Babemberg*) remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* ſignifieth a Hill) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably ſeated amongſt Mountains and pleaſant Gardens, and in a Soil exceeding fruitful of all neceſſaries, and yielding Lycoras in great plenty: the Birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great Lights of *Germany*; and a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, ſubject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and Territories in this Country: But much diminiſhed ſince the time of *Charles* the fifth: the Biſhoprick thereof then being given to Marquiſs *Albert*, above mentioned, for a Ceſſation from Arms, *an.* 1530. no leſs than 60 of his Lordſhips, (moſt of which fall unto the ſhare of the Marquiſs of *Onaldsbach*) beſides the Tutelage or Guardianſhip of his Wards and Clients. Of thoſe which are remaining in the hands of the Biſhops the principal are, 1. *Bragingliac*, 2. *Schleiſtat*.

3. The third great Lord to be conſidered is the Marquiſs of *ONALDSBACH*, or *Onsbach*, who is Maſter of no ſmall part of this Country; but his Eſtate (as thoſe of the other *German* Princes) confuſed and intermixed with his Neighbours, His chief Towns, 1. *Onaldsbach*, or *Onsbach*; the uſual Reſidence of theſe Marquiſſes, and the Birth-place of moſt of their Children. *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirtenberg*, walled in about the year 1085. and honoured with ſome publick Schools there founded by Marquiſs *George-Frederick*, *Anno* 1482. 3. *Pleinfet*, not far from *Nurenberg*. Such places as they held in *Voitland*, we ſhall meet with there.

Theſe Marquiſſes are of the puiſſant Family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair Eſtate was wreſtled from the female Heirs of *Wolfraimus*, the laſt Lord hereof. The firſt who did enjoy this Eſtate and Title was Marquiſs *George-Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenberg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, the Father of *Albert* the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *George* the firſt Marquiſs of *Jagerndorff*, and the Grandfather of that Marquiſs *Albert* who in the days of *Charles* the fifth ſo harraſſed this Country. But his Male-Iſſue by *Caſimir* his eldeſt Son failing in that *Albert anno* 1557, it returned to the Electoral Houſe; and by *Sigiſmund*, a late Elector was given to *Joachim Erneſtus*, on of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the Union for defence of the *Palatine* was made chief Commander of their Forces, *anno* 1620. A charge in which it was ſuppoſed that he carried himſelf neither ſo faithfully nor ſo valiantly as he ſhould have done, being much condemned for ſuffering *Spinola* with his Army to paſs by unfought with, when he had all advantages that could be wiſhed for to impede his march: the greateſt part of the *Palatinate* being loſt immediately upon that Neglect, and by degrees the reſt of the united Princes either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a conſtancy. To him ſucceeded his Son *Chriſtian*, now poſſeſſed hereof.

As for the other ſecular Princes which have any conſiderable Eſtates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtel*, *Werthaim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenburg*, together with the Lords of *Limburg* and *Rheichisberg*; all of them named ſo from the chief Town of their Eſtates, and all thoſe Towns enriched with ſome ſuitable Territory. Of theſe the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtel*, and *Werthaim*, are Homagers to the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him ſervice at his Inthronization, the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanaw*, as was ſhewn before, and that of *Henneberg* moſt famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increaſe of Children (as many as there be days in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Siſter of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as moſt in *Germany*, fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the Heralds. But they of greateſt power and Parentage amongſt them are the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, deriving themſelves from one *Wittikindus* of the Houſe of *Saxony*; who fighting for his Country againſt the *French*, *an.* 779, was taken priſoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized, at the perſwaſion of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. *Wittikindus*, his Son and Succeſſor, being baptized at the ſame time alſo by the name of *Charles*, was the firſt Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Caſtle of his own Building on the edge of *Thuringia*, *anno* 796; whoſe poſterity do ſtill hold the ſame, but much improved in their Eſtates by Marriages and other accruments. A Race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*; amongſt them *Gunther* Earl of *Swartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans* againſt *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marquiſs of *Brandenberg*, and *Henry* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*. By which laſt he was ſolemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquiſgrane*) *anno* 1394. But being unworthily poiſoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made ſo weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to ſurrender his pretenſions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compenſation for his charges 22000 marks in Silver, and ſome Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which ſhare amongſt them the remainders of *Frankenland*, the principal are, 1. *Francford* on the *Maine*, ſo called from its ſituation on the River *Maine*, to difference it from *Francford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. It is divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridge of Stone: the leſſer part, ſituate on the right-hand ſhore of the River, being called *Saxen-hauſen*; the greater part, properly called *Francford*, ſeated on the other. Both are under one Magiſtrate, and both together make up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded Town; both of great riches and repute by reaſon of the famous Marts here held in the midſt of *Lent* and *September* yearly, and the Election of the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, as occaſion is. The City is of a round form, compaſſed with a double Wall, beautified with ſome Walls without the Town on the banks of the River, amongſt Vineyards, Meadows and ſweet Groves: called thus as ſome ſay, from *Francus* the Son of *Marcomir*, ſuppoſed to be the Founder of it; or *a Francorum vado*, as the *Foord* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. The greateſt part of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*, but both the *Roman Catholicks* and *Calviniſts* are tollerated in it. 2. *Schweinfurt*, on the *Maine* alſo, in a fruitful Soil. 3. *Rottenburg*, on the River *Tauber*. 4. *Winſheim*. Here is alſo the Town of 5. *Coburg*, which belongeth to the Houſe of *Saxony*, and gives Title to ſome of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxon Coburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nurenberg*, conceived by moſt to be within the Upper *Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Franconia*, in regard moſt of the Eſtates and Poſſeſſions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have ſo plentiful a ſhare, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and his Confederates had driven *Charles* the fifth out of *Germany*, Marquiſs *Albert*, before mentioned, (whoſe Sword was his beſt Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no leſs than an hundred Villages belonging to it, ſeventy Mannors and Farm-houſes appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Wood; and after all this havock made of their

Eſtate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and ſix pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it ſelf ſeems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we ſhall there meet with it.

Amongſt theſe Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Franconia* at this time divided; that Title ſtill remaining in the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and ſome part of the Country: but both the Country and the Title of Duke of *Franconia* not long ſince otherwiſe diſpoſed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg anno* 1631, as before is ſaid, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon Weymer*, with the ſtyle and Title of Duke of *Franconia*. He was inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*. *July* 19, 1633. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing Homage to him, and all the Magiſtrates and Officers of the ſeveral Cities taking the Oaths of Allegiance; the new Duke alſo making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their Rights and Priviledges. In the ſolemnities of which day, the firſt great Gun diſcharged in the way of Triumph broke in the going off, without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Soldier only. An Omen that all this Solemn Act would prove but a Pageant, and break in pieces at the firſt giving fire unto it. And ſo accordingly it did: the Victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the Biſhops once more into their poſſeſſions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry Title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of thoſe who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full poſſeſſion of the Country.

Dukes of FRANCONIA, of the *Dutch* or *German Race*.

974 1. *Conradus*, ſirnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the firſt, whoſe Daughter *Luitgardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the ſecond elected Emperor, by the name of *Conrade* the ſecond, *anno* 1025.

1040 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia* and Emperor, by the name of *Henry* the third.

1056 3. *Henry* II. of *Franconia* and IV. of the Empire.

1106. 4. *Henry* III. of *Franconia*. and V. of the Empire.

1125 5. *Frederick* II. (ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his Wife, the Siſter and next Heir of *Henry*, ſucceeded in the Empire, after the death of *Conrade* the 3. his Uncle, *anno* 1153.

1190 6. *Frederick* the II. the ſecond Son of *Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.

7. *Conrade* II. Brother of *Frederick* the ſecond ſucceeded in both Eſtates.

8. *Philip*, the younger Brother of *Conrade*, ſucceeded in both Dukedoms after his deceaſe; and on the death of *Henry* the ſixth, his eldeſt Brother was Elected Emperor *anno* 1198.

1207 9. *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the 5th. of *Suevia*, Son of the Emperor *Henry* the ſixth, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*, *anno* 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, *anno* 1212, was elected Emperor, of that name the ſecond.

1250 10. *Conrade* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV of the Empire, the Son of *Frederick* the third, whom he ſucceeded in all his Titles and Eſtates.

1254 11. *Conradine*, Son of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*, diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the baſe Brother of his Father, and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who ſucceeded *Manfred* in thoſe Kingdoms, *anno* 1268. After whoſe death this Royal Houſe being quite extinguiſhed, the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg* did again reſume the Title of Duke of *Franconia*; content to let ſome of the greater Lords and Prelates, which lived near unto him, to ſhare in the poſſeſſion of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the Houſe of *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or*: which, why it is now born by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, we ſhall tell you there.

11. WIRTENBERG; and 12. BADEN.

These I have joined together, though diſtinct Eſtates, becauſe both of them were taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, erected both about one time, and lie very cloſe, in a round together: bounded upon the Eaſt and South with *Schwaben* properly ſo called, on the North with the *Lower Palatinate*, on the Weſt with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Briſgow*, parted aſunder by the mountainous ridge of Hills called *Swartzenwald*; *Wirtenberg* lying on the Eaſt-ſide thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*, to the Weſt.

And firſt for *WIRTENBERG*. The Air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the Soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the Weſt, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it ſelf barren and unprofitable; but in ſome places, by the induſtry of the Plough-man, made to yield good Corn. But in the middle parts thereof, which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfulneſs both of Corn and Wine unto any in *Germany*; beſides ſome Silver-mines near *Wiltberg*, and about *Puellach*, a ſmall Town, ſuch abundance of Braſs, that the Foundations of the Houſes ſeem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Caſtle of *Wirtenberg*, the firſt Seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Intuergi*, inhabiting the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virthungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gallio* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg*, being added for a termination, made it firſt *Tuerginberg*, or *Virthun-berg*, and after *Wirtenberg*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Stutgard*, the Duke's Seat, a fair, rich and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of Wine almoſt incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both ſides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair Stone-bridge. A Town well built, ſituate in a very rich Soil. and finally adorned with an Univerſity here founded by *Eberhard* the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *anno* 1477, in which *Leonardus Fuchſius* that great Herbaliſt and Reſtaurator of Phyſick, was once a Profeſſor of that Faculty, 3. *Canſtat*, upon the *Neccar* alſo, not far from which, on the Top of an Hill, ſtands the old Caſtle of *Wirtenberg* before mentioned. 4. *Wiltberg*, of great eſteem for its Mines of Silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6. *Schorndorf*, upon the *Reems*, much reſorted to by reaſon of the hot Baths there; as is alſo 7. *Newnburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Haidenheim*, 9. *Greiningen*, 10. *Marbach*; of which little memorable. There are alſo within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial. As 1. *VVimpſen*, and 2. *Hailbrun*, on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gepping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4. *VVeil*. 5. *Reutling*, on the *Neccar* alſo, made Imperial, by *Frederick* the 2. *anno* 1240, otherwiſe of no great note but for the Paper-mills, 6. *Eſling*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Charitni* of *Ptolomy*, and part of the *Intuergi* ſpoken of before. It was made ſubject with the reſt of theſe parts to the *Almans*, after to the *French*, and finally a Member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which diſmembred in the time of *Henry* IV. after a dangerous War raiſed againſt him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the firſt Earl being *Conrade*, in the year 1100, by the Grace and Favour of the ſaid Emperor *Henry*. Increaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelgard* and many other Augmentments, it was made a Dukedom in the perſon of *Eberhard* the ſixth, by *Maximilian* the firſt, *anno* 1495. The Earls and Dukes follow thus in order.

The Earls and Dukes of *WIRTENBERG*.

1100 1. *Conrade*, the firſt Earl.
2. *Ulrick*, Son of *Conrade*.
3. *John*, Son of *Ulrick*.
4. *Lewis*, Son of *John*.
5. *Henry*, Son of *Lewis*.
6. *Eberhard*, Son of *Henry*.
1253 7. *Ulrick* II. Son of *Eberhard*.
8. *Eberhard* II. Son of *Ulrick*.
1325 9. *Ulrick* III. Son of *Eberhard*.
1344 10. *Eberhard* III. Son of *Ulrick*.
1394 11. *Ulrick* IV. Son of *Eberhard*.
12. *Eberhard* IV. Son of *Ulrick*.
1417 13. *Eberhard* V. Son of *Eberhard* the 4th, by his Marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelgard*, added that Earldom to his Houſe.
1419 14. *Lewis* or *Lodovick* II. Son of *Eberhard* the 5th.
1456 15. *Eberhard* VI. Son of *Lewis*, Founder of the Univerſity of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the Firſt, the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *anno* 1495. He deceaſed without Iſſue, *anno* 1496.
1496 16. *Eberhard* VII. Son of *Ulrick* the younger Brother of *Lewis* the 2d, ſucceeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Couſin-german.
1504 17. *Henry* II. the Brother of *Eberhard* the 7th.
1519 18. *Ulrick* V. Son of *Henry* II. expulſed out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5th. for the ſack of *Reutling*, an Imperial City, and his Eſtate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, the Brother of *Charles*, in 1520: but after 15 years Exile reſtored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, in 1534. He Reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the Univerſity of *Tubingen*. In the Year 1547, he was again expell'd by the Emperor upon the *Smalcaldick* War.
1550 19. *Chriſtopher*, the Son of *Ulrick* the 5th, a follower of his Father's ſteps in Reformation of the Church, and advancement of Learning.
1568 20. *Lodovick* or *Lewis* III. Son of *Chriſtopher*. This Prince having no Children to ſucceed him, Founded in the 1589 an illuſtrious College at *Tubingen* to preſerve his Memory.
1593 21. *Frederick*, Son of *George* Earl of *Montbelgard*, the Brother of *Ulrick* the 5th. In the year 1599, the 24th of *January*, he obtain'd from *Rodolphus* the Emperor a new Inveſtiture of both his Dukedoms, according to the firſt and immediate Form, for which he paid a conſiderable Sum of Money, and by it he cut off the Pretences of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. Made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, *anno* 1597.
1608 22. *John-Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* the firſt.
1628 23. *John-Eberhard*, eldeſt Son of the former Duke.
1674 24. *William-Lewis*.
1677 25. *Eberhard Lewis*, Son of the former, born in the year 1676, who is ſtill living.

The Revenues of this Duke are ſuppoſed to be equal unto thoſe of the Electors *Palatine*, ſpoken of before; and were it not for the Silver-mines in *Saxony*, little inferior to thoſe of that Duke. But for Proviſions of War, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furniſhed. A main defect, conſidering the ill terms he ſtands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the Houſe of *Wirtenberg* there have been always open Wars, or ſecret Jealouſies.

His Arms are *Or*, three Attiers of a Stag born Paliebarrie, *Sable*.

The Family of *Wirtemberg*, in the year 1072. under *Conrade*, obtained the Earldom of *Butelsbach*. In the year 1214, *John* II. Earl by Marriage, had *Stutgard*, which before belonged to the Marquiſate of *Baden*. In 1240 the Earldom of *Aurach* was bought: In 1336 the Earldom of *Gruningen*: In 1346, *Calbe*: In 1397 *Eberhard* the 5th, by Marriage, had the Earldom of *Montbelgard*: In 1439 the Dukedom of *Teccen* came by Marriage: In 1495 *Eberhard* VI. raiſed the Title of his Family from an Earldom to a Dukedom: In 1620 *Ulricus* bought *Hohentweil*: In 1646 *Silvius Nimbrod* obtained the Inveſtiture of *Olentz* in *Sileſia*, and in *Moravia* he had *Sternberg* and *Metzibor*; but the *French* in the Year 1684 deprived this Family of *Montbelgard*.

As for the Marquiſate of *BADEN BADA*, lying on the Weſt ſide of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the moſt part, except towards thoſe Wolds, a very pleaſant and fruitful Country, and much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Wirtenberg*; ſo called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquis keeps his Seat in Winter; and that ſo named from the hot Baths there, as is alſo *Baden* (called for diſtinction ſake, the *Upper Baden*) amongſt the *Switzers*; in which reſpect the City of *Bath* in *Somerſetſhire* had anciently the name of *Caer-Baden* alſo. Of theſe Baths it is ſuppoſed that there are in this City at leaſt 300, profitable for many Diſeaſes and exulcerate Sores, drawing a great reſort of People from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquiſate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marqueſſes of *Baden*. The next to this is, 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a ſecond Branch of this Houſe; call'd alſo ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Durlach* only, but commonly, the Marqueſſes of *Baden Durlach*. 3. *Liebenzel*, amongſt the Hills of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Liechtenaw*, remarkable for a Monaſtery, the burial-place of the firſt Marqueſſes. 5. *Gerſpach*, in the very heart of that mountainous Tract. 6. *Pfortzheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagenſcheis*, a branch of *Schwartzenwald*. 7. *Rotelen*. 8. *Badenwile*. And 9. *Suſenburg*, all ſeated in the Upper *Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Briſgow*. 10. *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, the uſual retiring-place of theſe Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquiſate, being alſo taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was Founded in the Perſon of *Herman* of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deſerving well of the Emperor *Henry* V. was by him ſetled in ſome Lands about theſe parts, *anno* 1120. and after marrying with the Daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa* created the firſt Marquis of *Baden*, *anno* 1155. The Eſtate was after much encreaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg* and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Chriſtopher* the 13th Marquis hereof, ſucceeded on the death of his Couſin *Philip*, the laſt Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes deſcending originally from two Brothers; of which the eldeſt, in right of the Lady *Judith* his Wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the ſecond by the favour of the ſaid *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was made Marquis of *Baden*. They were Maſters alſo of many fair Eſtates in the Lower *Palatinate*; which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there ſaid) are ſince poſſeſſed of. Other particulars ſhall be ſhewn (if occaſion be) in the enſuing Catalogue.

Hiſtories ſeem to put it beyond a diſpute that the Family of *Baden* is a branch of that which produced the Houſe of *Auſtria*. From the Ancient Princes of *Alſatia* ſpring the Family of the Dukes of *Zeeringen*, who had large Territories in *Briſgow*. *Hermannus* of this Houſe obtained the Earldom of *Hochberg*, and died in the year 1074: His Son *Herman* married *Judith* the Heireſs of *Baden*. This Family ſtands at this day divided into two Branches, *viz.* *Baden Baden*, and *Baden Durlach*.

The Marqueſſes of BADEN.

1074 1. *Herman*, the firſt Marquis.
1130 2. *Herman* II.
1160 3. *Herman* III. made by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* a Lord of *Verona* in *Italy*, for his Service againſt the *Milaneſe*.
4. *Herman* IV.
5. *Herman* V.
1281 6. *Rodolph*, Son of *Herman* the 4th, died in 1288.
1295 7. *Herman* VI. Son of *Rodolph*.
1333 8. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Herman* the 5th.
1356 9. *Frederick*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2d.
10. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Frederick*.
1372 11. *Bernard*, Son of *Rodolph* the 3d.
1431 12. *James*, Son of *Bernard*.
1453 13. *Charles*, Son of *James*, the firſt of theſe Marqueſſes which was poſſeſſed of the County of *Spanheim* in the Lower *Palatinate*, deſcending on this Houſe by *Matild* Wife of *Rodolph* the ſecond.
1475 14. *Chriſtopher*, Son of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the laſt Marquis of *Hochberg*, ſucceeded alſo in that Eſtate.
1527} 15. *Bernard*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, his Brother *Erneſt* ſucceeding in that of *Hochberg*.
1515}
1506} 16. *Chriſtopher* II. Son of *Bernard*, his elder Brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* Son of *Philibert*, dying in the Life of *Bernard*.
1537}
1569 17. *Philip*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, who being left very young by his Father, fell under the Tutelage of the Duke of *Bavaria*, and was brought up a Roman Catholick. He died in the year 1588, unmarried.
1588 18. *Edward*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, intending the Sale of his Eſtate to pay his Debts, was forcibly deprived of all. He broke his Neck in 1600 at *Bruſſels*.
1594 19. *Erneſt*, Marquis of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Erneſt* above mentioned; who by that means not only preſerved the Marquiſate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary ſeat to *Durlach*.
1604 20. *George*, Brother of *Erneſt*, Marquis of *Baden* and *Hochberg*, who in the year 1622 reſigned his Dominions to his Son, who the ſame year was deprived of it by the Decree of the Chamber of *Spire*, but recover'd it by the Treaty of *Munſter* in 1648.
1622 21. *Frederick*, the Son of *George*, born in the year 1594, ſucceeded his Father in both Eſtates; and (if living) hath a Son called alſo *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his deceaſe.
1659 22. *Frederick*, who was General for the Emperor againſt the *French* from whom he took *Philipsburg* in the year 1676.
1677 23. *Frederick the Great*, Son of the former, ſucceeded his Father, he was born in the Year 1647, the [illegible] of *November*. He has a Son called [illegible] to ſucceed him, who was born in the year [illegible].

If the [illegible] may be pleaſed to know that beſides this Line here ſet down there is [illegible] derived from *Edward*, who was [illegible] in the Year [illegible] who left three Sons, [illegible] and *Herman*, [illegible] by the

Chamber of *Spire*, but that Sentence was repealed by the Treaty of *Munſter*; in 1640 he was made Preſident of the Chamber of *Spire*, and died the 22th of *May*, 1677, leaving ſeveral Sons behind him; ſo that this Branch is ſtill extant, and being Roman Catholicks and Military Men, are particularly favoured by the Emperor, and have been advanced to great Imployments by him. The *Notitia Imperii Germanici* gives a very different Account of this Family and its Riſe from this ſet down by *Heylin*, but it is ſcarce poſſible to make his underſtood without a Genealogy: And they both agree in the Succeſſion from *Erneſt*, who diſpoſſeſſed *Edward* the Apoſtate (as they call him.) Of this Line are Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, often mentioned in the Wars of *Hungary*, and *Herman* of *Baden*, The Emperor's Commiſſioner in the Dyet at this time.

There is great Differences as to the latter part of this Catalogue, which *Shawartus* thus ſets down.

BADEN BADEN.

1527 1. *Bernard*, Son of *Chriſtopher* the 4th of that name, was the Founder of the Line of *Baden Baden*. He embraced the Reformation, and ſetled it in his Eſtate, and then died in 1566.
1566 2. *Philip* II. Son of *Bernard*, ſucceeded, but he died without Iſſue.
1588 3. *Edward* the Fortunate, Son of *Chriſtopher* the third, Son of *Bernard*, ſucceeded his Uncle *Philip*. He returned to the Popiſh Religion, and falling into Debts would have ſold his Eſtate to pay them; but was driven out of all, and forced to turn Soldier in *Flanders*; where he was ſlain the 18th of *June*, 1600.
1594 4. *Erneſt-Frederick*, of the Houſe of *Durlach*, aſſumed the Government, and kept it many Years.
1622 5. *William* the Eldeſt, Son of *Edward* the Fortunate, or Unfortunate rather: In 1640 he was the Emperor's Commiſſioner in the Dyet of *Ratisbonne*, and after Preſident of the Chamber of *Spire*; and he died the 22th of *May*, 1677. *Ætat.* 84.
1677 6. *Lewis-William*, born in 1655, the Son of *Ferdinand Maximilian*, the Son of *William*, ſucceeded his Grandfather, but being ſpoiled of his Dominions by the *French*, he went to the Emperor and ſerved againſt the *Turks*, and is now Marſhal de Camp to that Prince. And in the year 1680, he Married a Daughter of the late Duke of *Saxe-Lawenburg*, by whom he had a fair Eſtate in *Bohemia*. There is another Son of *William*, called *Herman*, who was born in 1628, and is now the Emperor's Commiſſioner at the Dyet at *Ratisbonne*.

BADEN DURLACH.

1527 1. *Erneſt*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, and Brother of *Bernard*, by the Appointment of his Father became Marquis of *Baden Durlach* and *Rotelen*. He was a zealous Proteſtant, and died the 6th of *February*, 1558.
1553 2. *Charles* II. Son of *Erneſt*.
1577 3. *Erneſt-Frederick*, Son of *Charles*, ſucceeded his Father in 1577, and had various Conteſts with *William* of the Houſe of *Baden Baden*.
1604 4. *George-Frederick*, Brother of *Erneſt*, (who died without Iſſue) was born the 10th of *January*, 1573. He was a [illegible] Friend to the Elector *Palatine*, who was then King of *Bohemia*, upon this [illegible] the Emperor favour'd *William* of *Baden Baden* againſt him, and put him in poſſeſſion of that Marquiſate in 1622, and drove *George* out of all his [illegible].

1638

1638 5. *Frederick*, Son of *George*, born in 1594: by the Treaty of *Oſnabruck* he recover'd his Territories in the Year 1648.

1659 6. *Frederick* II. Son of the former *Frederick*, was born in 1617, and was a Prince of great Merit both as to Peace and War. He took *Philipsburg* from the *French*, in 1676; and died the next Year.

1677 7. *Frederick* III. now Marquis of *Baden Durlach*, was born the 27th of *September*, 1647. In 1670 he married *Maria Auguſta*, Daughter of *Frederick*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, by whom he has *Charles-William*, born the 17th of *January*, 1679, and *Chriſtopher*, born the 28th of *September*, 1684.

The Family of *Baden* has made Additions to their Fortunes in ſeveral Ages. *Herman* the Fourth had with his Wife, who was the Daughter of *Henry*, *Palatine*, *Guelſ*, *Durlach*, *Heidelſheim* and *Etlingen*. In the Year 1246, *Herman* the 5th gained by a Marriage the Right of the Dutchy of *Auſtria* and *Stiria*. In 1415, the Earldom of *Hochberg* was added. In 1437, great part of that of *Sponheim* was gained, together with *Mahalberg* and *Lohra*, in *Ortenow*. In 1444, *Chriſtopher* added *Baden*, *Weiler*, and *Welſchenberg*, and afterwards *Rodemachren*, *Herſpringen*, and *Vfeldigen*. In 1503, upon the death of *Philip*, came in *Landgraw*, *Sauſenberg*, and *Rotelen*. And after this the Earls of *Erberſtein* being extinct, the greateſt part of that Earldom was added to this Family.

On the other hand it has ſuffer'd many Loſſes. In the middle of the 13th Century *Ottocar*, King of *Bohemia*, took from *Frederick* the right Heir *Auſtria* and *Stiria*. And in the two laſt *French* Wars both the Lines have been driven out of their Countries by the prevailing Power of *France*, and great part of their Towns burnt and ruined. They have alſo a pretence upon the Dominion of *Geroltzeck*.

13. *NORTHGOIA*, or the *UPPER PALATINATE*.

THE County of *NORTHGOIA*, ſo called from the Northern ſituation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is ſometimes alſo called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, becauſe anciently belonging to that Eſtate; but generally *Ober Pfaltz* or the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, on the Weſt with *Franconia* and part of *Schwaben*, on the North with *Voitland*, and on the South with *Bavaria*. The Country is for the moſt part ſomewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in Mines of Iron, which it yieldeth in moſt places, and ſome of Silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimburg* to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the Hill *Fichtelberg* in the edge of *Voitland*, to *Weiſſenburg* near the Banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Obſervable things touching this Province are chiefly two. Firſt, that out of the Mountain *Fichtelberg*, before mentioned ariſe 4 Rivers running to the four Quarters of the World; that is to ſay, the *Egra* towards the Eaſt, the *Maine* or *Mœnus* towards the Weſt, the *Sala* or *Saliza* to the North, and the *Nab* or *Nabus* to the South; ſo that it may be probably thought to be the higheſt Hill in all *Germany*. 2. That in the South-weſt corner of it are two little Rivers; the one called *Altmul*, which falleth into the *Danow*, and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Maine*, and finally into the *Rhene*; between the Heads whereof, being not much diſtant, *Charles* the Great once began to dig a Channel, for making a paſſage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thouſand Men. But partly by exceſs of Rain, and partly by ſome ſtrange Affrightments, (all which they did in the day being undone in the night) he was fain to deſiſt. Some parts of the intended Water-courſe are to be ſeen near *Weiſſenburg*, ſpoken of before, which ſtandeth in the middle-way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief Places of this Country which belong to the Electoral Family are, 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of Iron, digged out of the neighbouring Hills, here faſhioned into all ſorts of Utenſils, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoining: but prouder of its Mines of Silver than thoſe veins of Iron, affording to the Prince's Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Nanheim*, in the midſt of a fruitful Valley, near a Wood of Juniper. 3. *Newburgh*, upon the River *Swartzach*, which gives Title to the ſecond Branch of the *Palatine* Houſe, call'd the Counts *Palatines* of *Newburg*, Competitors with the Marquis of *Brandenburg* for the whole Dukedom of *Cleveland*, and finally poſſeſſed of *Gulick* and the Members of it. 4. *Kelhaim*, at the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Altmul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which paſſing thence falleth into the *Danow* near the City of *Regenſpurg*. 6. *Caſtel*, where the Electors for the moſt part hold their Reſidence, when they are in this Country. 7. *Awerbach*, 8. *Saltzbach*, 9. *Weiden*, 10. *Newmarckt*.

There are in this Country ſome Towns belonging to the Lantgraves of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old Lantgraves of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Haſſia* and *Alſatia*: ſo called from *Lutchtenberg*, an old Caſtle, ſituate on a lofty Hill not far from *Pfreimt*, the chief Town and ordinary Seat of theſe Lantgraves, ſeated on the River *Nab*, 2. *Gransfelden*, 3. *Schonhoffen*, an ordinary paſs and baiting-place in the way from *Prague* to *Nurenberg*.

But the chief City of this Country, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nurenberg* it ſelf, *Norimberga* in the modern, but *Norica* in the ancient *Latin*. So called from an ancient Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, the Ruins of which are ſtill remaining, encompaſſed with a deep, but dry Ditch, now of no uſe nor ornament to the City at all, but reverenced for its antiquity as the Mother of *Nurenberg*. The Caſtle is ſaid by ſome to be built in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*. More probably by ſome of the *Norici*, who terrified with the Invaſion of *Attila*, in the Decline and Wane of the *Roman* Empire, relinquiſhed *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt and paſſed over the *Danow*, there to provide themſelves of a ſafer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerors, ſubject to the *French*. In the time of *Lewis* the Third, it became Imperial, and was Walled and Fortified during the Reign of *Charles* the 4th. From that time it increaſed ſo faſt both in Wealth and Beauty, that it is counted the greateſt and wealthieſt City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 Stone-Bridges for paſſage over the *Pegnitz*, which runneth through it, 12 Conduits of freſh Water, 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of figure it is ſquare, environed with a tripple Wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully ſtored with all ſorts of Ammunition. The Marqueſſes of *Brandenburg* in former times were the Burgraves of it; an Office of great Power and Juriſdiction, but ſold for a good ſum of Money by *Frederick* III. *Anno* 1414. *Albert* his Son, attempting to recover the old Office again, beſieged the Town, having no leſs than 17 Princes on his ſide, and yet could not force it: that for an Argument of its ſtrength. A proof and evidence of the Wealth of it we have ſeen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great Ranſom they were put to by another *Albert* ſpoken of in *Franconia*, in the year 1552, which is excellently deſcribed by *John Sleiden* in 24 *Lib.* of his Hiſtory. And it adds much unto the commendation of the People that this great Wealth is gotten by their indefatigable Induſtry; the Town being ſituate on a barren and ſandy Soil, and deſtitute of thoſe Helps which commonly navigable Rivers brings unto a City; thoſe great Poſſeſſions which belongs unto the State hereof being gotten out of the Fire, as the ſaying is, by their continual working of

Iron and other Manufactures, occaſioning a reſort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germany*. In the year 1649, here was a general Peace Concluded between the Princes of *Germany*, purſuant to that of *Munſter* made the year before.

There is a Branch of the Family of *Brandenburg*, which is called the *Franconian* Branch, which lays claim to the Burgravate of *Norimberg*.

1. *Frederick*, Son of *Albert* 1. *Achilles*, Duke of *Brandenburg*, and Elector, born the 2. of *May* 1460, and by his Father made Burgrave of *Norimberg*.

1536 2. *Caſimir*, Son of *Frederick*, born the 27th of *September* 1481, ſucceeded 4. *April* 1536, and died the 21th of *September* 1637.

1537 3. *Albert* III. the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, born 28th of *March* 1522, a Prince of great Worth, but lived and dyed a ſingle man.

1557 4. *George*, Brother of *Caſimir*, born the 4th of *March* 1484.

1577 5. *George Frederick*, born the 5th of *April* 1539, made Governour of *Pruſſia*, in 1582, he Founded the Univerſity of *Heilbrun*, he died the 25th of *April* 1603, without any Male Iſſue. In him the Line ended.

1603 6. *Chriſtian* I. Son of *John George*, Elector of *Brandenburg*, born the 30th of *June* 1581, Founder of the Line of *Culembach*.

1645 7. *Erdman Auguſtus*, born the 29th of *October* 1615.

1651 8. *Chriſtian Erneſt*, born the 27th of *July* 1644, aſſumed the Government in 1661, and is ſtill living, his Sons are *George William*, born the 16th of *November* 1678, *Charles Lewis*, born the 11th of *November* 1679.

AUSBACH.

1603 1. *Joachim Erneſt*, born in 1583.

1625 2. *Frederick* his Son, born the 20th of *April* 1616.

1634 3. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick*, born in 1620.

1667 4. *John Frederick* Son of *Albert*, born the 28th of *October* 1654.

He is now living and has three Sons, *Chriſtian Albert*, born the 8th of *September* 1675, and *George Frederick*, born the 25th of *April* 1678, *William Frederick* born the 29th of *September* 1685.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate* are, 1. *Altorff*, where the *Nurenbergers* founded an Univerſity for the ſtudy of all Arts and Sciences, *anno* 1575. 2. *Herſpruck*, a great Town and well ſeated, belonging to the State of *Nurenburg* alſo. 3. *Eyſtet*, (*Aichſtaidium* in the *Latine*) an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the River *Altmul*. 4. *Weiſſenburg*, an Imperial City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was alſo in this Province (if not ſtill remaining) the Town *Winsberg*, memorable for the Piety and gallantry of the Women of it. For the Town being beſieged and diſtreſſed by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. for ſiding againſt him with the *Guelps* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the ſurrendry of it, but that the Women might have leave to depart in ſafety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their Husbands on their backs and ſo left the Town: and by that noble act ſo moved the affections and compaſſions of the angry Prince, that he ſpared the Town, and gave them all a general Pardon. It is ſaid by ſome, that the odious names of *Guelps* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of Chriſtendom was ſo long diſtracted) took their beginning at this Siege, the firſt ſo called from *Guelpho* Brother of *Henry* the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whoſe cauſe they fought; the other from *Veibling* (the *French* and *Italians* ſpeak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperor was born. Another original hereof we had in our deſcription of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two; tho' neither certain.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nariſci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards ſome of the *Norici* fearful or grown impatient of the *Roman* Yoak, came over the *Danubius*, to them, and built that ſamous Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, where now ſtands *Nurenberg*. Overpowred by the *Boii*, and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339, when *Ludovick* the Emperor and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the Eſtate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder Brother relinquiſhed it for ever to the Houſe of the *Palatines*. Returned for the preſent to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom it was conferred, together with the Electoral dignity, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2. in recompence of the great ſervice done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof in the War of *Bohemia*, and the great charge he had been at in the reduction of that Kingdom to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. How long it will continue thus is known only to God, the diſpoſer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* ſince, have been ſo fully Maſters of it, but that the Lantgrave of *Luchtenberg* and the City of *Nurenberg* have put in for a ſhare.

The Arms of which great and puiſſant City are *Azure*, an Harpye diſplayed, crowned, crined and armed, *Or*.

14. The Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*.

THE Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it ſelf with the incorporate Provinces, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland* and *Hungary*, on the Weſt with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voitland* and *Miſnia*, on the North with the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg* and ſome part of *Miſnia*, and on the South with *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, beſides *Bohemia* it ſelf, the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Sileſia* and *Luſatia*.

1. *BOHEMIA*, encompaſſed about with woody Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moravia*, on the Weſt with the *Upper Palatinate* and *Voitland*, the North with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia* and ſome part of *Sileſia*, on the South with parts of *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; by *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the addition of *Gens magna*, by *Tacitus*, *Boiemi*, who make them the deſcendants of the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, who to avoid the Servitude which they ſeared from *Rome*, put themſelves into theſe *Hercynian* deſarts, which from them was named *Boiohemum*, by which name it occurreth in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* firſt, and the *Sclaves* and *Croatians* afterwards, became Maſters of it, theſe laſt continuing their poſſeſſion to this very day: yet it retaineth ſtill the name of *Bohemia* amongſt the *Latines*, as that *Behemerland* amongſt the *Dutch*.

It contains in compaſs about 550 *Engliſh* miles. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, and enriched with Mines of all ſorts, except of Gold. Tin they have here in good plenty, the Mines whereof were firſt found out by a *Corniſh* man, baniſhed out of *England*, *anno* 1240. which diſcovery of Tin in theſe parts was, as ſaith my Author, *in magnaram jacturam* Richardi *Comitis* Cornubiæ, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*:) and no marvel, for in thoſe times there was no Tin in all *Europe* but in *England*. Wood they have here good ſtore; and in ſome of their Foreſts a Beaſt called *Lomin*, which hath hanging under its neck a Bladder full of ſcalding water, with which, when ſhe is hunted, ſhe ſo tortureth the Dogs, that ſhe eaſily eſcapeth them. Of Corn they have ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſometimes alſo an increaſe above their ſpending, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want Wine, the Air being too ſharp and piercing to produce a good Vintage. And it yields alſo ſtore of Saffron, no where to be bettered; with plenty of medicinal Drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. the *Elve*, or *Albis*, having here its ſpring, of whoſe courſe we have ſpoken elſewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldaw* or *Multavius*, and 4. the *Wartz*, all three exonerating themſelves into the *Elve*, which runneth through the midſt of the Country.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties and Provinces, but into the Territories and poſſeſſions of ſeveral Lords, who have great authority and command over their Vaſſals. The figure of the whole is in a manner Circular, the Diameter whereof reacheth every way ſome 200 miles, containing in that compaſs 700 Cities, walled Towns and Caſtles, and (as ſome ſay) 30000 Villages. It is inhabited by a people given to Drink and Gluttony, and yet valiant and with ſenſe of Honour: this laſt belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, the former to the common people; but more moderately than moſt others of the *German* Nations. All of them Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble and baſe, uſe the *Sclavonian* Language, as their Mother-tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of was *Ziſca*, who, in eleven Battles fought in the defence of the *Huſſites*, againſt the Pope and his Confederates, prevailed and went away victorious, inſomuch that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flee him, and make a Drum of his skin; perſwading himſelf, if they ſo did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer* K. of *Britain* ſpoken of before. Scholars of moſt note, *John Hus* and *Hierom of Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here preached by S. *Methodius* the firſt Biſhop and Apoſtle of the *Moravians*; *an.* 900 or thereabouts. *Borzivoius*, (whom ſome call *Borſinous*) the 8. Duke from *Crocus*, being the firſt Chriſtian Prince, and next to him *Wenceſlaus* the 2. This laſt was moſt cruelly murthered by *Boleſlaus* his Brother at the inſtigation of *Drahomira*, an obſtinate Heathen, Mother to them both: who having cauſed the Miniſters of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was ſwallowed up Coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this Prodigy, they continued conſtant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of ſome notable Vanity. For one *Picardus*, coming out of the *Low-countries*, drew a great ſort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the ſame ſtate of Perfection that *Adam* was in before the Fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no reſpect unto Marriage; yet could they not accompany any Woman, until the Man coming to *Adam*, ſaid unto him, *Father* Adam, *I am inflamed towards this Woman*, and *Adam* made anſwer, *Increaſe and Multiply*. They lived in an Iſland which they called *Paradiſe*, and went ſtark naked: but they continued not long; for *Ziſca* hearing of them, entred their Fools Paradiſe, and put them all to the ſword, *Anno* 1416. But to make amends for this Folly, they were exceedingly zealous of the Reformation. For much about the ſame time the Works of *Wickliff* were brought into *Bohemia* by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the Univerſity of *Oxford*, which hapning into the hands of *John Huſſe* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, (two men whereof this Country doth much boaſt) wrought in their hearts a deſire to reform the Church. A buſineſs which they proſecuted ſo earneſtly, that being ſummoned to the Council of *Conſtance*, they were there condemned for Hereticks and burnt, *Anno* 1414; yet had their Doctrine ſuch deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be deſtroyed by the Tyrannies of War or Perſecution (though both were uſed) to this very day; multitudes of the Profeſſors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Caliſtini* and *Sub utraque*, (as before is ſaid) but much both ſtrengthned and increaſed by the Writings of *Luther*, *Melancthon*, *Calvin*, and ſuch other of the Proteſtant Doctors as travelled in the Work of Reformation. But this increaſe of ſtrength and number proved their greateſt weakening. For growing inſolent upon the ſence of their ſtrength and power, they formed themſelves into a party, got many of the *Romiſh* Catholicks to adhere unto them, under colour of aſſerting their Civil Rights, and, in the heat of ſome diſputes, cauſed certain of the Emperor's Council to be thrown out of the Windows of the Council-chamber; and finally about the latter end of the Reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they broke out in open Arms. In the courſe whereof the *Calvinians* being of moſt power, and having got a King of their own Opinions, ſo diſobliged the *Lutherans* and more moderate Papiſts, who had concurred with them at the firſt, that being invaded on the one ſide with a *Lutheran* Army, under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a Popiſh Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were in fine utterly ſuppreſt and made inconſiderable: the conquering and ſucceſsful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2.) taking this occaſion to extirpate this Proteſtant Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Budweiſs*, (conceived to be the *Marobudum* of *Ptolomy*) a Town towards *Auſtria*. 2. *Auſt*, near the head of the *Eld*. 3. *Tabor*, a ſtrong Town built by *Ziſca*, to be a Retreat for the *Huſſites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Melnick*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomiſſel*, an Epiſcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pilſen*, the laſt Town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialiſts in the late long War about that Crown: and then alſo was it betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a ſum of mony, by ſome of the Soldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then abſent, and had ſo long defended it againſt the Enemy. 8. *Elnbogen*, much eſteemed for the hot medicinal Baths; ſituate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, ſo called of the ſame River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper *Palatinate*) it is ſtrongly ſituate: a large, fair City, containing three miles in compaſs. Imperial once, but ſold by the Emperor *Ludovicus Bavarus* to *John* King of *Bohemia*, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compaſs leſs; for Sweetneſs of the place, Elegancy of the building, Pleaſantneſs of ſite, and Richneſs of Soil, ſuperiour far to *Prague* it ſelf. This City was made an Imperial City in the year 1179, and ſold in the year 1315. In the *Swediſh* War it was often taken, and retaken, and in its Caſtle Count *Walliſtein*, Duke of *Fridland* was Aſſaſſinated. 10. *Prague*; the Metropolis of the Kingdom, ſituate in the midſt thereof, on the River *Muldaw*; conſiſting of four ſeveral Towns, each of which hath its ſeveral Cuſtoms, Laws, and Magiſtrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly Buildings, a ſpacious Market-place, and a ſtately Council-houſe. The ſecond, called the *New-Town*, is ſeparated from the Old by a Ditch of great depth and wideneſs. The third, called the *Little-Town*, is divided from the Old by the River *Muldaw*, joyned to it by a beautiful Bridge, conſiſting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the Hill *Rachine*, on the ſides of which are many fair and ſtately Houſes belonging to the Nobility, overlooked by the ſtrong Caſtle of *Wenceſlaus*, (ſituate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings and the later Emperors have kept their Reſidence. The 4th. Town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, and live according to their own Law. The whole City is rather large than fair, the Streets being in Winter very dirty, of ill ſmell in the Summer; the Buildings for the moſt part of Clay and Timber clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompaſſed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open Town, (ſo poor and weak are the Defenſes ; inſomuch that whoſoever is maſter of the Field, will be maſter of the City alſo. And yet beſides the honour of being the Royal Seat, it hath alſo of long time been an Archbiſhop's See, and was by *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, made an Univerſity. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable Battel between the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, with 50000 men, on the one ſide ; and *Frederick*, newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurn*, and 30000 men on the other ſide. It was fought on the eight of *November ſtylo novo*, 1620, wherein (ſuch was the unſearchable Will of God) the Victory fell unto the Imperialiſts : the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Sax-Weimer*, with divers others, being taken Priſoners ; the *Bohemian* Ordnance all ſurpriſed, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen compelled to fly unto *Sileſia*. A moſt lamentable and unfortunate Loſs, not to this people only, but to the whole cauſe of the reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our obſervation, that this great Battle was fought upon a Sunday, the 8. of *November*, about the time of Morning-prayer ; in the Goſpel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after *Trinity*-Sunday) is that famous paſſage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ ſunt CÆSARIS, i. e.* Render unto *Cæſar* the things which are *Cæſars* ; which ſeemed to Judge the Quarrel on the Emperor's ſide. Dr. *Brown*, in his Travels, has given a large Account of this City. The *Swedes* ſoon after revenged the Quarrel of the Proteſtants upon the Imperialiſts, and during that War, took and retook this City ſeveral times. In the year 1689, a great part of this City, was burnt by *French* Treachery, as is vehemently ſuſpected.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juſter Cauſe, may beſt be ſeen by canvaſſing the Records of that State and Nation, (for the ſucceſs of War is no ſtanding Rule for meaſuring the Equity and Juſtneſs of the Cauſes of it : by which it will be clearly ſeen, that ſince the erecting of that Kingdom by the *Sclaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore diſpoſed at the Will of the Emperor, or by Election of the States and People. But I intend not at preſent to diſpute that Point, but only lay down the Story of the Kings and People, as in other places, ſince the firſt coming of the *Sclavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Juſtinian*, at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Iſter*, but on the farther ſide thereof, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, Imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good Succeſſes againſt that Empire, their name was taken up by the reſt of the *Sarmatrians* of *Europe* ; who either wanting room, or not liking their colder Countries, paſſed on more Weſtward, and by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Germany* which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians* and *Boiarians* ; but were then either quite forſaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of thoſe people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. They were divided at, or after their coming thus far Weſt, into four main Bodies : that is to ſay, the *Winithi*, poſſeſſed of the (now) Marquiſates of *Brandenburg*, *Miſnia*, and *Luſatia*, as alſo of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania* ; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the Lower *Auſtria*, and the Upper *Hungary* ; the *Poles* poſſeſſed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Sileſia* : and finally the *Bohemian Sclaves* confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what form of Government they lived at their firſt coming hither, is not certainly known. But being ſettled in theſe Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into ſeveral Kingdoms ; occaſioned by the coming of a new body of *Sclaves*, *Croatians*, and others of thoſe ſcattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongſt them, who about the year 640, together with his Brother *Lechus* was baniſhed *Croatia* for a Murther. He being very acceptable to the *Sclaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own original Extraction, one of the ſame Language, Laws or Cuſtoms that themſelves were of, they admitted him to be their Chief or ſupreme Governour, by whatſoever name he was called at firſt : in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own Language do call themſelves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapſed again into a confuſed Anarchy, till the year 670 ; at what time, not reſpecting the Progeny of *Zecheus*, the Founder of their Commonwealth and firſt Eſtate, they faſtned upon *Crocus*, a man of good eſteem amongſt them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir juſtus, & magnæ apud* Bohemos *opinionis, Princeps electus eſt*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libuſſa*, his youngeſt Daughter ; and of her Government ſoon wearied, they made choice of *Primiſlaus* for their Prince, and made him Husband to *Libuſſa*. A man taken from the Plough (as the Stories tells us) to eſpouſe the Princeſs : it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suitors, that he (whoſoever he was) before whom an Horſe, purpoſely let looſe, did firſt make a ſtand, ſhould be the Husband of the Lady, and have the Government of the State. The Horſe firſt makes a ſtand before *Primiſlaus*, being then at Plough (having perhaps ſome Mare in his Team ;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. Theſe, with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocus*, the firſt Legiſlator of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus,

The Dukes of *BOHEMIA.*

640 1. *Zechius* or *Zeches*.
2. *Crocus*, the Law-giver, or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
3. *Libuſſa*, youngeſt Daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primiſlaus* her Husband, (a ſecond *Quinctius*) Founder of *Prague*.
4. *Nerimiſlaus*, Son of *Primiſlaus* and *Libuſſa*.
5. *Mnatha*, one of the Sons of *Nerimiſlaus*, co-temporary with *Charles* the Great.
6. *Voricius*, Son of *Mnatha*.
7. *Wenceſlaus*.
8. *Bela*.
9. *Naſtriccus*, Son of *Bela*.
900 10. *Borzivoius*, The firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Bohemians*, co-temporary with the Emperor *Arnulph*.
11. *Sbitignaus*, Son to *Borzivoius*.
12. *Vladiſlaus*, Brother to *Sbitignaus*.
13. *Wencheſlaus* II. ſirnamed the Saint, ſlain by his Brother *Boleſlaus*.
14. *Boleſlaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
15. *Boleſlaus* II. Son of the former, a great advancer of Chriſtianity amongſt his people.
16. *Boleſlaus* III. one of the Sons of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond.
17. *Jaromir*, Son to *Boleſlaus* the third.
18. *Udalricus*, Brother of *Boleſlaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
19. *Prediſlaus*, Son to *Udalricus*.
20. *Sbitignaus* II. Son to *Prediſlaus*.
1061. 21. *Vratiſlaus*, Brother of *Sbitignaus*, whom, for his manifold deſerts, the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, created the firſt King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1086. Whoſe Succeſſors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius*.

The Kings and Dukes of *BOHEMIA.*

A. C.
1086 1. *Vratiſlaus*, the Brother of *Sbitignaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4th at *Mentz* created King.

2. *Conrade*, Brother to *Vratiſlaus*, notwithſtanding that his Brother had three Sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.

3. *Breciſlaus*, Son to *Vratiſlaus*, the two Sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* choſen Duke.

1100 4. *Borivorius*, the 4th Son of *Breciſlaus*, is choſen by the *Bohemians*, his eldeſt Brothers then all living.

1109 5. *Sutopulcus*, Couſin-german to *Borivorus*, by the conſent and favour of the People, depos'd *Borivorius*, and cauſed himſelf to be elected in his place.

6. *Vladiſlaus* II. Brother to *Borivorius*, preferred by the People to the Throne before *Otho* the Brother, and *Henry* the Son of *Sutopulcus*, the laſt Prince.

7. *Sobeſlaus*, Brother to *Vladiſlaus*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Vladiſlaus*.

1159 8. *Vladiſlaus* III. Son to *Vladiſlaus* the 2d. (the four Sons of *Sobeſlaus* omitted) is choſen and crowned the ſecond King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperor; but depoſed by the States, becauſe he was not by them formerly elected, according to their Privileges and Cuſtoms.

9. *Uldericus*, the third Son of *Sobeſlaus*, his elder Brethren yet living, was by the People elected in the room of *Vladiſlaus* and his Son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force eſtabliſhed in the Throne.

10. *Sobeſlaus* II. ſecond Son of *Sobeſlaus*, was by *Frederick* above-named expelled; and he alſo by the *Bohemians*.

11. *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Otho*, the Brother of *Sutopulcus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual War.

12. *Wenceſlaus*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and Son of *Otho* aforeſaid, was preferred before many nearer the Succeſſion. Him *Primiſlaus* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.

13. *Henry*, Biſhop of *Prague*, a ſtranger to the Blood, was by a general conſent elected Duke.

14. *Vladiſlaus* IV. Brother to *Primiſlaus*, the Son of *Wenceſlaus* being put by, ſucceeded *Henry*, and ſoon after reſigned.

1199 15. *Primiſlaus*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip* crowned the third King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, was Brother to *Vladiſlaus* the 4th.

1248 16. *Ottacarus*, notwithſtanding that *Wenceſlaus* his elder Brother had been crowned in his Father's life-time, was acknowledged King. He was ſlain in Battel by *Rodolphus* the Emperor near the *Marh*, a River of *Moravia*,

1278 17. *Wenceſlaus* II. Son of *Ottacarus*.

1284 18. *Wenceſlaus* III. Son to *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond, the laſt of the *Bohemian* Princes of the maſculine Race.

1304 19. *Roldolphus*, Son to the Emperor *Albertus*, is by the Potency of his Father, and the election of the States, ſeated on the Throne, being otherwiſe a ſtranger to the Blood-royal of *Bohemia*.

1305 20. *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the Son of *Meinard*, Earl of *Tyrol*, and Husband to *Anne*, the ſecond Daughter of *Wenceſlaus* the 2d. is choſen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John* Earl of *Luxenberg*. Finally, *Henry* was murthered by one of his Nephews.

1311 21. *John*, Earl of *Luxenburg*, Son to *Henry* the ſeventh Emperor, and Husband to *Elizabeth*, youngeſt Daughter to *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond, is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.

1346 22. *Charles*, Son to *John*, and Emperor, of that name the fourth, the Author of the Golden Bull.

1362 23. *Wenceſlaus* IV. Emperor alſo, in whoſe time the Troubles of the *Huſſites* and the Valour of *Ziſca* was famous.

1418 24. *Sigiſmund*, Brother to *Wenceſlaus*, maketh himſelf King by force; and at his death commendeth *Albertus*, Duke of *Auſtria*, the Husband of his Daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the States of the Kingdom.

1437 25. *Albertus*, Duke of *Auſtria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigiſmund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.

1440 26. *Ladiſlaus*, Son to *Albert*, who being the Brother of two Siſters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the States, as fitteſt to ſucceed him.

1458 27. *George Pogibrachius*, neither by Affinity or Conſanguinity of the Blood, ſucceeded. And he, though he had three Sons, yet, for the benefit of his Country, adviſed the Nobles, after his Death to elect their King from *Poland*.

1471 28. *Ladiſlaus* II. Son to *Caſimir* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth* the younger Daughter of *Albertus* Duke of *Auſtria*, the Iſſue of *Anne* the eldeſt Siſter ſtill living, elected King of *Bohemia*.

1516 29. *Ludovicus*, Son to *Ladiſlaus*, Elected and Crowned by the means of his Father, then living, King of *Hungary* alſo.

1526 30. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Brother to *Charles* the 5th, and Husband to *Anne*, Siſter to *Ludovicus*, by his Letters reverſal acknowledged that he was choſen King of *Bohemia* not of any Right, but of meer free Will according to the Liberties of that Kingdom.

1565 31. *Maximilian*, eldeſt Son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Father's life-time, and at his ſuit, Elected King, *anno* 1540. into which he actually ſucceeded on his Father's death.

1575 32. *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldeſt Son to *Maximilian*, elected King.

1610 33. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint ſuit of them both nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia*, by the general conſent of the States, during his Brother's life-time, *viz. anno* 1610. which nomination they both proteſt in their Letters reverſal ſhould not be to the prejudice of the Liberties and ancient Cuſtoms of that Kingdom.

1618 34. *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Auſtria* and of the Houſe of *Gretz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his Son, and declared Succeſſor to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cauſe, amongſt others, he was by the States rejected, in like caſe as *Vladiſlaus* the Third had formerly been.

1619 35. *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the ſtrongeſt *German* Prince of the *Calviniſts*, and moſt potent by his great Alliances, was elected King of *Bohemia*, and Crowned at *Prague*, together with his Wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his deſcent from the Lady *Sophia*, Siſter to *Ladiſlaus* the ſecond, King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James* King of *Great Britain* and *Anne* of *Denmark*, which *Anne* deſcended from the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albertus* of *Auſtria*, and elder Siſter to *Elizabeth*, Mother to *Ladiſlaus* the 2d. abovenamed, from whom the Claim of *Auſtria* is derived.

1621 36. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, elected King of *Bohemia* during the Life both of his Father and of *Frederick* the Prince Elector alſo; after whoſe death he ſucceeded in this Kingdom both in Right and Fact; King of *Hungary*, alſo Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Emperor of *Germany*, now living, *anno* 1648. more moderate in his Counſels than his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to Peace, (though honoured with a more ſignal Victory againſt the *Sweeds* in the Battel of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his Life) which the Concluſions made at *Munſter* are ſufficient proof of.

1658 37. *Leopold*, elected King of *Bohemia* after the Death of *Ferdinand* the third his Father, and at this day living, and the Victorious Emperor of *Germany*.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Hungary*, on the Weſt with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Sileſia*, and on the South with the Lower *Auſtria* and the River *Teya*: fenced on the Weſt with the Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*; part of the *Hercynian* Foreſt; on the North by ſome Spurs or Branches of it, called *Arciburgius* by *Ptolomy*; on the two other ſides open like an Half-Moon or Semicircle. It is the moſt fruitful place of Corn in all *Germany*, and hath no ſmall ſtore of Frankincenſe; which contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a Tree, but out of the Earth; and that too (which adds much to the Miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the ſhape and figure of thoſe Parts which Men and Women do moſt endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of the Province were the *Marcomanni* and part of the *Quadi*, againſt whom when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made War, he had unawares run himſelf into ſuch a Streight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and Enemies the other. To this (as Calamities ſeldom go alone) was added the extraordinary Heat and Drought then being. The Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a Legion of *Chriſtians* (*Melitens* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor ſendeth for them, deſiring them to make Supplication for the Army: which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf Ear to the Prayer of his Servants, when they are either for his Glory, the Churches or their own good, ſcattered and vanquiſh'd the *Quadi* with Thunder-ſhot and Artillery from Heaven, and refreſh'd the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleaſant Shower. This Miracle purchaſed to that Legion the ſirname of κεραυνοβόλος, *i.e.* the *Thunderer*, and induced the Emperor to honour Men of that holy Profeſſion, and to make an end of the fourth Perſecution, *Anno Ch.* 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*: which coming from the Pen of an Heathen, as this Author was, is of more credit in a matter of ſuch concernment unto Chriſtianity, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Eccleſiaſtical Writer.

Places of moſt note herein are, 1. *Olmuntz*, on the River *Marh* (or *Morava*) the chief Town of the Country, and a ſmall Univerſity; near which, out of the Hill *Odenburg* bordering on *Sileſia*, ſpringeth the great River of *Odera*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. This City was taken by the *Swedes* in 1642, and kept by them till the Peace of *Munſter* in 1648. 2. *Brin*, on the River *Swarta*, the Seat of the ancient Marqueſſes. 3. *Hardiſch*, and 4. *Cremſers* both upon the *Marh* or *Morava*. 5. *Znaim*, on the *Teya*. 6. *Niclasberg*, (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the *Lower Auſtria*. In this City, this very Year 1688, 250000 Crowns was ſtop'd by the Emperor, which at length was own'd to be a preſent from the King of *France*, to the King and Queen of *Poland*, and the Count *de Bethune* his Envoy there. 7. *Iglaw*. 8. *Newburg*. 9. *Weiskerchen*. 10. *Boſerleitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Cradiſco*, near to which (and in this place only) the Frankincenſe is found to grow in the ſhape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is ſaid) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*: after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who, from their habitation on the River *Morava*, called themſelves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia*, (the *Dutch* call it *Merheren*) They were extended at that time over all the Lower *Auſtria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiſcus* (overſpreading a great part of the *Upper Hungary*) towards the Eaſt. Governed at the firſt by their own Kings, the firſt whoſe name occurs being *Raſlai*, in the time of the Emperor *Lewis* the Godly; by him taken Priſoner, and his Realm made tributary to the Empire. After him ſucceeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suentopulcus*; in whoſe time the *Moravians* and other Nation of the *Sclaves* received the Goſpel by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, two *Græcian* Doctors; officiating all Divive Services in the *Sclavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made ſuit to the Pope then being, to whoſe Authority (as Patriarch of the Weſtern Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delay'd the buſineſs; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, ſaying theſe words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet Dominum, & omnis Lingua confiteatur ei.* Upon which Miracle their Suit was granted at the laſt, and a Letter Decretal ſent unto that effect from Pope *John* the 8th, to *Suentopulcus* (or *Sfentopulcher*, as ſome call him) above mentioned. A Privilege by them enjoyed full 200 Years, and then reverſed by *Gregory* VII. commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his Letters to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt King of *Bohemia*, *anno* 1086.

But to return unto the Story, *Suantobegius*, Son to *Suentopulchus*, ſucceeded next, depoſed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor *Arnulph*, for denying the accuſtomed Tribute. A Prince of great Spirit, and of as great Command; having at one time under him not *Moravia* only, according to the largeſt Limits, but *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* alſo. *Arnulph* not able otherwiſe to effect his purpoſe, called in the *Hungarians* about the year 892, (though at that time Pagans) by whoſe help the *Moravian* was ſubdued, and his Kingdom ſhattered into pieces; ſeized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations, and finally reduced to the preſent Limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquiſate, (but by whom we find not;) one of the Marqueſſes hereof being *Jodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperor *Anno* 1410. After whoſe death, *Sigiſmund*, his next Heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his Son-in-Law *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *anno* 1417, who in the end ſucceeded him in all his Eſtates; ſince which time it hath always gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it were *Azure*, an Eagle chequer'd *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the ſame.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESIE*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland*, on the Weſt with *Luſatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompaſſed with Mountains, except towards the North, which lets in a ſharp Air upon them: the mid-land part being full of Woods, but withal of Minerals.

Chief Cities are, 1. *Jagendorff*, or *Jegerndoff*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius*, of the Family of *Brandenburg*, commonly called the Marquis of *Jagendorff*. The Lands and Eſtates in his poſſeſſion were firſt given by *Ladiſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, to *George* ſirnamed *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Fredrick* of *Brandenburg*, the firſt

Marquis of *Onſpach* of this Houſe, for the many good ſervices he had done him. But his Poſterity being extinct, they fell to the ſaid *John Georgius*, Brother to *Sigiſmund* the Elector; proſcribed by *Ferdinand* the 2d, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine:* A Prince of great note and activeneſs in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* Wars. He died in the year 1624, and was ſucceeded by *Erneſt* his Son, who died in the year 1642 unmarried; ſo that this Marquiſate ought to have returned to the Electoral Family again, but *Ferdinand* II. granted it (as Forfeit) to the Prince of *Liechtenſtein*, who ſtill enjoys it, notwithſtanding the Pretences of the Elector of *Brandenburg*. 2. *Munſterberg*, which gives the Title of Duke to the Poſterity of *George Pogebrachius*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this Honour and a fair Eſtate, but now extinct. 3. *Glatz*, or *Gletz*, the laſt Town of *Bohemia* which held out for *Frederick* the Elector againſt that Emperor. 4. *Glogaw*, a ſtrong Town on the River *Oder*. 5. *Neiſſe*, on a River ſo named, an Epiſcopal See. 6. *Breſlaw*, in *Latin*, *Vratiſlavia*, ſo called from *Vratiſlaus* the Founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whoſe procurement it was made an Epiſcopal See, *Anno* 970, or thereabouts. It is ſituate on the River *Oder*, all the Water wherein could not ſave it from being burnt down to the Ground, *Anno* 1341, but it was preſently re-edified with a fair Free-ſtone, and is now one of the prettieſt Cities (for the bigneſs of it) in all *Germany*; fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even Streets, the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppelen*, on the *Oder* alſo, well Fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the Weſt, and on the Eaſt with good Out-works, ſtrong Walls, and a fair Caſtle. *Bethleem Gabor*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, had this City and *Ratibor*, with the Title of a Dukedom and Prince of the Empire, given him by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the Year 1623, in exchange for his Title to the Kingdom of *Hungary*, to which he was choſen and Crown'd, in the Year 1619, in oppoſition to the ſaid *Ferdinand*; which *Bethleem Gabor* died in the year 1629, or as others ſay 1628, without Children. 8 *Straten*, 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of War ſince the beginning of the *Bohemian* Troubles.

There are alſo within this Province the two Seigniouries of *Prignitz* and *Croſſen*, ſo called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; the two Dukedoms of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as alſo the Dukedoms of *Lignitz* and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns: of which two laſt, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an Homager and Tributary of that King.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Marſigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and ſome part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eaſtern parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, it was laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of *Poland*, continuing a part thereof till the time of *Vladiſlaus* the 2d, who, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* eſtated in this Country, to be held under the Sovereignty of the King of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his 3 Sons, and afterwards ſubdivided amongſt their Poſterities, according to the ill Cuſtom of *Germany*, it became broke at laſt into 14 Dukedoms, of 1. *Breſlaw*, 2. *Oppelen*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Ceſſin*, 5. *Bethom*, 6, *Glogaw*, 7. *Sagan*, 8. *Olentz*, 9. *Steinaw*, 10. *Falkenburg*, 11. *Sweinitz*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Oſwitz*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which, only the two laſt do remain to *Poland*; the five firſt being made ſubject to the Kings of *Bohemia* by *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond, the five next by King *John* of *Luxemburg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the poſſeſſion of a Proprietary Duke: (as before was ſaid) and *Sweinitz* given to *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Teſtament of *Boleſlaus* the laſt Duke: all *Sileſia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Oſwitz*, and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*, of which it is rather an incorporate than ſubject Province.

Olentz, mentioned in the eighth place above, was by the Marriage of *Silvius Nimrod*, Son of *Julius Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtemberg*, with *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Charles Frederick* the laſt Duke of *Olentz* and *Munſterberg*, was conveighed to this Family in 1646.

1664 2. *Chriſtian Ulrick* his Son, born in 1652, the 9th of *April*, ſucceeded his Father *Chriſtian Ulrick*; his eldeſt Son was born the 11th of *February*, 1674. and *Leopold Victor*, the ſecond Son, *May* the 12th, 1675.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Lauſnitz*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Sileſia*, on the Weſt with *Miſnia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The Country is rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of Corn, and of ſuch Fruits as naturally ariſe out of the Earth: ſo populous and thick ſet with People, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot as good as any in *Germany*. Moſt commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the firſt confining on *Bohemia*, the laſt on *Brandenburg*.

Places of moſt note in the *Higher Lauſnitz* are, 1. *Bautzen*, (*Badiſſinum* the *Latins* call it) the firſt Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*; when he took upon him the Execution of the Emperor's Bann againſt *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly choſen King of *Bohemia*. The poor Prince in the mean time was in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*, and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popiſh* Party, arming both againſt him. So jealous are both ſides of the active and reſtleſs *Calvinian* Spirit, as to leave no means unaſſaied for the ſuppreſſing of it. Seated it is upon the *Spire*, and for the moſt part is the Seat of the Governor for the King of *Bohemia*. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Neiſſe*, which gave the Title of Duke to *John*, Brother of *Sigiſmund*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth*, the laſt Dutcheſs of *Luxemberg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and ſtrongly Fortified; Founded about the year 1231, and not long after ſo conſumed by a mercileſs Fire, *Anno* 1301. *ut ne unica domus remanſerit*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one Houſe left of the old Foundation. But it was preſently re-built in a more beautiful form, and of more ſtrong materials, than before it was, both publick and private Buildings very neat and elegant. 3. *Zittaw*, on the ſame River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lawben*, 5. *Lubben*, 6. *Canitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they may make up thoſe ſix Towns which are confederate together in a ſtricter League for the mutual Defence and Preſervation, but under the Protection, and with the Approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *Lower Luſatia* there is, 7. *Spremberg*, ſo named from its ſituation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country, and in ancient times was called *Suevus*; ſuppoſed by ſome (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elve*. 8. *Tribel*, upon the *Neiſſe*. 9. *Cotthuſe*, upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*, which, together with ſome parts of the *Lower Luſatia*, belongs unto the Marqueſſes of *Brandenburg*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof are by ſome ſuppoſed (and but ſuppoſed) to be the *Benones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of theſe Parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, made ſubject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt and moſt ſpreading Nation of all theſe People. When and by whom firſt made a Marquiſate, I am not able to ſay for certain; but ſure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Maſters. It had firſt a Marquis of its own; *Conrade* the Marquis hereof, who died in the year 1156, being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marquis of *Miſnia*, added it unto that Eſtate: and it remain'd

for

or ſome time united to it. After, being ſeized on by the *Poles*, it was ſold to *Frederick* the 2. Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*.; who, keeping *Cotthuſe* and ſome other Towns bordering next upon him in his own poſſeſſion, ſurrendred the reſt on Compoſition to *George* King of *Bohemia*, claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the 4. to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt *Bohemian* King, *An.* 1087. A Grant on which no Poſſeſſion followed, unleſs it were the Homage and acknowledgment of the Princes of it, holding it afterwards of that Crown as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought theſe four Provinces into the power and poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*, remaining ſtill diſtinct in their Laws and Governments, (as ſeveral limbs of the great Body of the *Sclaves* made up into one Eſtate) though joyned together in the perſon of one ſupream Governour, who is ſeverally admitted and acknowledged by each Province diſtinctly for it ſelf, and not by any one of them in the name of the reſt. Out of all which ſo laid together there may be raiſed the ſum of three millions of Crowns yearly for the Kings Revenues, towards the defrayment of all Charges.

In the year 1623, *Ferdinand* the ſecond, Granted this Marquiſate to *John George* 1. Duke of *Saxony*, for his Service performed againſt the Elector *Palatine.* And this Grant being Confirmed by the Peace of *Munſter*, in the year 1652, the Duke of *Saxony* Granted the Lower *Luſatia*, to *Chriſtian* his Son, Adminiſtrator of *Merſburg* in *Miſnia*, who has ſeveral Sons to ſucceed him, he was living in the year 1684, and his eldeſt Son was of his own name, and born in the year 1653.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked Tail *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was firſt given by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* to *Vladiſlaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good Service he had done him at the Siege of *Millain*. And though *Vladiſlaus* was depoſed by the States of that Kingdom; becauſe never formally and legally elected by them; yet his Succeſſors keep thoſe Arms to this very day.

15. *BRANDENBURG*.

THE Marquiſate of *BRANDENBURG* is bounded on the Eaſt with the Kingdom of *Poland*, on the Weſt with the Dukedom of *Saxony*, on the North with *Pomerania* and part of *Mecklenburg*, and on the South with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia* and *Sileſia*. So called from *Brandenburg*, the chief Town of it, and becauſe once the *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended farther towards *Poland* by little and little, as the Emperors were able to get ground of thoſe potent people.

The Country containeth in length from Eaſt to Weſt 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correſpondent breadth; the whole compaſs making up 540 miles of the laſt accompt. Within which Tract are comprehended 55 Cities and walled Towns, 80 Towns of Trade, (*Mark-Sreten*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them) 38 Caſtles or Manſion-houſes of Noblemen, 17 Monaſteries, and 10 Parks well ſtored with Beaſts of game; the Country otherwiſe (conſidering the extent thereof) being but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of neceſſaries, excepting Corn, of which theſe North-Eaſt Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Country is for the moſt part according to the form and Doctrine of *Luther*; firſt introduced and authoriſed by Marquiſs *Joachim* the firſt. In which Eſtate it continued till the Breach betwixt *George-William*, the Father of the preſent Elector, and the *Palatine* of *Newburg*. At which time the *Palatine*, having married a Daughter of *Bavaria*, the moſt potent Prince of the Popiſh Party, reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, the better to aſſure himſelf to the Aid of *Spain*: and this Elector, having married a Siſter of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince Elector *Palatine*, the moſt Potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himſelf to be of that party and Opinion, the better to aſſure himſelf to the Aid of *Holland*, Anno 1614. But when on the perſwaſion of his Wife he ſet out an Edict for ſuppreſſing the *Lutheran* Forms, and authoriſing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was in the year 1615.) the people of this Marquiſate roſe in Arms againſt him: the difference being thus compoſed, that the *Lutheran* Forms only ſhould be uſed in all the Churches of the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquiſs ſhould have the exerciſe of his new Religion for himſelf, his Lady, and thoſe of their opinion, in his private Chappels.

1. *ALTE-MARCK*, or the *OLD-MARCK*, ſo called becauſe the ancient *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*, lieth betwixt *Lunenberg* and the *Elb*, with which it is bounded on the Eaſt. The chief Towns thereof are, 1. *Tangermund*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanagra* or *Angra*; honoured ſometimes with the Reſidence of *Charles* the fourth. 2. *Steindall*, the chief of theſe Old Marches. 3. *Soltwedel* divided into the Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gardeleben*, fortified with the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſhimp*. 5. *Oſterburg*, 6. *Senhuſen*, ſaid by ſome, but falſly, to be called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old inhabitants of this Country, (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE MARCHES* or *UPPER-MARCK*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Oder*, the Towns of moſt note are, 1. *Butzaw*, a Commendatory of the Temples in former times. 2. *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well-fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called ſo from that River, on which it is ſituate; remarkable for a ſtrong Caſtle built by Marquiſs *Albert* the ſecond, at which all Paſſengers by Water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhop's See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence: by ſome ſaid to be built by *Bremus*, Captain of the *Gauls*; more truly by one *Brando*, a Prince of the *Franconians*, *Anno Ch.* 140. 5. *Francford* (for diſtinction ſake) named *ad Oderam*, on which River it is ſituate; the Soil about it being ſo plentifully ſtored with Corn and Wines, that it is not eaſie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be moſt enamoured of it. It was made an Univerſity by Marquiſs *Joachim*, *Anno* 1506, and it is alſo a flouriſhing and famous Empory, though not comparable to that of the other *Francford* ſeated on the *Maine*. 6. *Berlin* the ordinary Reſidence, of the Marquiſs, ſituate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which riſing in *Luſatia*, falleth into the *Albis*. This City was built by *Albertus Vrſus*, Prince of *Anhault*, and firſt Hereditary Marquiſs of *Brandenberg*, in the year 1142. 7. *Havelburg*, on the River *Havil*, a Biſhop's See, who acknowledgeth the Arch-Biſhop of *Magdeburg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEW-MARCK*, extended from the *Oder* to the Borders of *Poland*, and called ſo becauſe laſt conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire. There is *Cuſtrin*, a very ſtrong and defenſible Town, ſeated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*, fortified with great charge by *John*, Son of Marquiſs *Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2. *Sunneberg*, and 3. *Landſperg*, both upon the *Warta*. 4. *Soldin* in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenburg*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with as ſtrong a Caſtle, towards *Pomerania*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great Nations of the *Suevians*; and after them the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of it. But *Brandenburg* being won from them by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, *An.* 620. (at what time the Goſpel was firſt preached amongſt them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigefride* Earl of *Rengelheim*, (eldeſt Son of *Theodorick*, the ſecond Earl of *Oldenburg*) a valiant Gentleman with the Title of *Marquiſs* or Lord *Marcher*, *Anno* 927, upon condition that he ſhould defend thoſe Marches (the *Old Mark*, as they now call it) againſt the *Sclaves*. Theſe Marquiſſes were at the firſt Officiary, at the appointment of the Emperor, and to him accomptable. *Sigard*, the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the firſt Elector of theſe Marquiſſes, and *Udo* the ſecond of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the laſt that held this Honour at the Emperor's pleaſure; that Dignity after his deceaſe being made hereditary in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, ſirnamed *Urſus*, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his Border by the Conqueſt and extermination of the *Sclaves*, cauſed the unpeopled Country to be planted with the new *Dutch* Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and thoſe parts of the *Netherlands*. The Houſe of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, in was given by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to *Lewis* his Son; by *Otho* the Brother of that *Lewis*, ſold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigiſmund*, the Son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus* Marquiſs of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the ſaid *Sigiſmund* conferred on *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, in recompence of his faithful ſervice in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his poſterity it remaineth, but much increaſed in Power and Patrimony by the additions of the Dukedoms of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Marquiſates of *Onſpach* and *Jagerndorff*, the Earldom of *Marck* in *Weſtphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*, the Lordſhips of *Prignitz* and *Croſſen* in *Sileſia*, the Towns of *Hoff* and *Culmbach* in *Voitland*, with the County of *Raphin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cotthuſe* in the *Lower Luſatia*, inſomuch that this is now the moſt powerful Family in all *Germany*. The Marquiſſes hereof from *Sigefride* to *Albert*, the Son of *Urſe*, &c. follow in this order.

The Marquiſſes of *BRANDENBVRG*.

A. C.

627 1. *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengelheim*, made the firſt Marquiſs of this Border by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt.

2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the firſt.

3. *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created Marquiſs hereof by the ſame Emperor,

4. *Hugh* the Son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.

5. *Sigard*, the Brother of *Hugh*, made by the the ſame Emperor the firſt Marquiſs-Elector.

6. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Sigard*, outed of his Command by *Miſtivoius* one of the Princes of the *Sclaves*, named *Obotriti*.

7. *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel*, (the *Sclaves* being beaten and expulſed) created Marquiſs and Elector by *Conrade* the 2.

8. *Udo* II. Son of *Udo* the firſt, proſcribed by *Henry* the 4. for joyning with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the War againſt him.

9. *Primiſlaus*, King of the *Obotriti*, (the Anceſtor of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*) was advanced unto theſe Honours by the ſaid *Henry* the 4. and held them unto his death. After which it was made hereditary by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the Perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the Son of *Urſus*.

1152 10. *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the firſt hereditary Marquiſs, Father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.

11. *Otho* Son of *Albert*.

12. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the 1.

13. *Albert* II. Brother of *Otho* 2.

14. *John*, Son of *Albert* the 2.

15. *John* II. Son of *John* the 1.

16. *Conrade*, Brother of *John* the 2.

17. *John* III. Son of *Conrade*.

18. *Waldemar*, Brother of *John* the 3.

19. *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the 1. by his Brother *Henry*.

20. *John* IV. Brother of *Waldemar* the ſecond, the laſt Marquiſs of the Houſe of *Anhalt*; the Marquiſate eſcheating to the Empire for want of Heirs.

21. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenburg* by his Father, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the ſaid eſcheat.

22. *Lewis* II. ſirnamed the *Roman*, on the Reſignation of his Brother, ſucceeded in the Marquiſate and Electoral Dignity.

23. *Otho*, Brother to *Lewis* the firſt and ſecond, who ſold the Marquiſate and Electoral Dignity to *Charles* the fourth.

24. *Wenceſlaus*, Son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Romans*.

25. *Sigiſmund*, Brother of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperor of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenburg*; who ſold this Marquiſate to *Jodocus* Marquiſs of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the ſame on.

1417 1415 26. *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, ſolemnly inveſted herein at the Council of *Conſtance* *Anno* 1417, for which Inveſtiture he paid unto the Emperor the ſum of 400000 Crowns. This Prince was born in the year 1372, he was of a martial diſpoſition, and ſerved the Emperor in his Wars, and after this he made Wars with the Earls of *Pomerania*, and the *Huſſites*.

1440 27. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the firſt, to whom the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. gave the Dukedom of *Pomeren*. He was born in 1413, and was the ſecond Son, *John* his Elder Brother, choſing a private Life before the Cares of Government. In 1446, he refuſed the Kingdom of *Poland*, when it was offered to him, and in 1468 that of *Bohemia*. In 1461, he made War with the *Huſſites* for *Luſatia*. In 1470, he went into *Paleſtine* and died there the next year.

1470 28. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick* the 2. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, born in the year 1455, the 2d. of *Auguſt*, ſirnamed *Cicero*, relinquiſhed to *Bugeſlaus* the 10. the poſſeſſion of *Pomeren*; but his Succeſſors ever ſince have retained the Title and kept on foot their Pretenſions to it. From *Frederick* his ſecond Son deſcended *Albert* the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Frederick* the firſt Marquiſs of *Onſpach*, *George* the firſt Marquiſs *Jagerndorff*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who ſo harraſſed *Franconia* in the days of *Charles* the fifth. He was born the 24th of *November* 1414, and was of great Authority, that the Emperor would do nothing without his advice. He confirmed the League of Succeſſion between *Heſs* and *Saxony*: He died in the year 1486, leaving *John* his Son, his Succeſſor, who had now already Adminiſtrated the Electorate by his appointment Ten Years, whileſt he lived privately in *Franconia*, and conſidered the actions of his former Life. *Frederick*, another of his Sons, Founded the Family of *Franconia*.

1476 1486 29. *John*, Son of *Albert*.

1499 30. *Joachim*, Son of *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Francford*, *Anno* 1506, and authorized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun. Born the 21th of *February* 1484, a Learned Prince. In the year 1509, the *Hamburgers* begged his Protection.

1535 31. *Joachim* II. Son of *Joachim* the firſt, was born the 9th. of *January* 1505. In 1539, he imbraced the Reformation, which he Regulated by a Decree in the year 1545. In 1542, he was the Emperors General againſt the *Turks*, a Nation which he hated.

1571 32. *John George*, Son of *Joachim* the ſecond, born the 11th of *September* 1525, he was a Peaceable Prince, and ſo afforded nothing of any great remark.

1598 33. *Joachim Frederick*, Son of *John George*, born the 27th of *January* 1546, he ſucceeded his Father in the Electorate in the year 1606, as *Showartus* ſaith.

1608 34. *John Sigiſmund*, Son of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to Wife the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albert Frederick* the ſecond Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *William* the firſt, Duke of *Cleve*. He was born the 8th of *November*, 1552. In his time the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleve* and *Monts* fell vacant, for which he had various Wars. In 1614, he obtained part of *Pruſſia* from the *Poles*, but upon hard Terms. He died the 13th of *December* 1619.

1620 35. *George-William*, Son of *John Sigiſmund* and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Ravenſpurg*, and the Seigniory of *Ravenſtein*; which he poſſeſſed a while, divided with his Couſin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen* the younger Siſter of *Mary-Eleanor*. But falling out about their Partage, the Palatine of *Newburg* called in the *Spaniard*, and the Father of this Marquiſs, in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate *States* of the *Netherlands*, to aſſert their Titles. After the death of *Bugeſlaus* the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have ſucceeded alſo in that Eſtate, then poſſeſſed by the *Swede*. Of the Agreement made between them, and the great Accrument thereby following to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, we ſhall ſpeak more there. This Prince was born the 3d. of *November* 1595, he at the firſt joyned with *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* againſt the Emperor, but in 1639, he broke with the *Swedes* on the account of *Pomerania*. He died in *Pruſſia* in the year 1640.

1640 36. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William*, Elector of *Brandenburg*. Born the 6th of *February* 1620, was a Prince of great Prudence, Piety and Courage, and had a great ſhare in the affairs of *Germany*; he ſucceeded his Father the 21th of *November* 1640, and Died the 9th of *May* 1688, in the 68th year of his Age, and the 49th of his Government being ſucceeded by

1688 37. *Frederick William* II. his eldeſt Son then living, who was born the 1ſt. of *July* 1657, ſucceeded his Father the 29th of *April*, 1688. His eldeſt Son now living, is *Frederick William*, who was born the 4th of *Auguſt* 1688.

The Territories of this Family are the greateſt, as before is ſaid, of any in *Germany*, but a great part thereof is very barren, and his Subjects in thoſe parts as poor as the Country; much of his new acceſſions yielding little but the Titles only. So that neither in Revenue or Power he is able to keep rank with the Duke of *Saxony*: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmoſt to 200000 *l.* *per annum*, which is but half of the Receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Growth of the Family of *BRANDENBULG*.

Conrade Earl of *Zolleren*, in the middle of the 12th Century, Married *Anne Vohburg* Heireſs of the *Butgravat* of *Norimberg*, and obtained the Inveſtiture of that Honour from *Frederick Barbaroſſa* Emperor of *Germany*. To him ſucceeded *Frederick* 1. his Son who died in 1218. *Conrad* 2. *Frederick* 2. Brother of *Conrad* 2. *Conrad* 3. *Frederick* 3. his Brother, *John*, *Frederick* 4. Brother of *John*. *John* 2. *Frederick* 5. which laſt was the Father of *Frederick* the 6th, who in the year 1415, or 1417, was made the firſt Elector of *Brandenburg*. Of theſe Princes *Frederick* the 3d. added to his Inheritance *Baruth*, and the Caſtle of *Cadolkburg* in the Dukedom of *Meran*. In 1251, he obtained of *Conrad* the 4th Emperor, the City of *Creuſſen*. In 1258, he purchaſed *Uffenheim*, *Birnsberg*, and *Etginhauſen*. In 1261, he obtained the Prefecture of *Aurach*, in 1265 *Munch Steinach*, in 1273, *Ekelſdorf*, *Wendelſtem*, *Schnepſenreuth*, *Schniklingen*. In 1280, he gained into his hands, the Prefecture of *Burkburnheim* and *Dachsbach*. 1282, *Neuſtad am Rauhen Culm*, *Zenckerſheim*, *Eilbach* and *Bruck*. In 1285, *Neuſtad an aer Aiſch*. In 1290, *Swernitz* was bought, which belonged to the Earls of *Orlamund*, and about the ſame time this Family became Advocates of the Monaſtery of *Heilbrun*. In 1292, *Conrade* and *Frederick Burgraves*, bought *Roth*, *Rothſtall* and *Winsbach*. About the year 1317, *John Burgrave* bought *Pegnitz*, &c. which belonged before to the King of *Bohemia*, and he obtained of the Marquiſs of *Miſnia*, *Thirſheim*, and ſix other Mannors. In 1321, *Frederick* 4th. added *Wohn Siedel*, and in 1326, he bought *Grunlach*, *Bruck*, *Hochſtedt*, In 1328, *Stauf* and *Ensfield*, in 1331 *Ansbach*. This Prince ſtanding by *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, againſt *Frederick* the 3d, and he took many of the Nobility of *Auſtria* Priſoners. And he diſmiſs'd them without Ranſom, upon Condition they ſhould hold their Eſtates of him and his Heirs as Fees which is ſtill obſerved. In 1336, *John* 1. added *Culembach*, *Plaſenburg*, and *Himmelſcron*, in 1347 *Weiſſenſtadt*, and the City of *Crailſheim*. In 1364, *Frederick* the 5th, added *Swabach* and five other places. In 1417, The Electorate of *Brandenburg*, which then contained the *Old March*, *High*, *Middle March*, and *Prignitz*, and by a War with *Pomerania* he got *Uckermarch*. In 1455, *Frederick* 2. Elector, won from *George* King of *Bohemia*, in a War, *Cotbus*, and ſome other places in *Luſatia*. In 1472, the Dukedom of *Croſnen* was Mortgaged, and after ſold to this Family. In 1525, *Albert* Maſter of the Teutonick Order in *Pruſſia*, had it turned into a Dukedom, dependant on the Crown of *Poland*, and was made the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, and the ſame year *Zadiſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, gave *George Gagerndorff* or *Karnow*, a Territory in *Sileſia*. And in 1532, he gained the Fraternal League of the Dukedoms of *Opplen* and *Ratibor* in *Sileſia*. In 1524 *Joachim* 1. got into his hands the *New March*, which the *Teutonick* Knights had enjoyed many years as a Mortgage, and he annexed *Rupin* an Earldom to the Electorate, upon the Death of *Wichman* the laſt Earl. In 1609, *John Sigiſmund*, Elector by Marriage, got the Right of the Dukedoms of *Cleves*, *Juliers*, and *Monts*, and the Earldoms of *Mark*, and *Ravensburg*, which in 1666, were yielded to the Duke of *Newburg*, except *Cleves* and *Mark*. In 1637, *Pomerania* fell to this Houſe by the Death of *Bogilaus*, but the *Swedes* deprived him of a great part of it; in lieu of which, in 1648, were given to *Frederick William* Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukedoms of *Magdeburg*, the principality of *Halberſtad*, *Minden* and *Camin*. In 1657, he obtained the full Right of *Pruſſia* from the *Poles*. In 1679, by the Treaty of *Nimmegen*, he gained from the *Swedes* that part of *Pomerania*, which lieth beyond the *Oder*, 1672 the Earldom *Regenſtein*, *Camin*, 1684, *Erneſt Bogiſlaus*, Prince of *Crojan* Dying, all his Eſtates were added to the Electorate, and in 1686, *Suibuſy* was added by a Treaty wth the Emperor.

This Family on the other hand, has ſuffered theſe diminutions. In 1427. *Frederick* the 6th ſold the City of *Norimberg*. In 1535, *George* delivered up to *Ferdinand* the 1ſt. the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor*, for 13000 *Hungarian* Ducats, and in 1625, *John George* being proſcribed, loſt *Jagerndorff*.

The Pretences of this Family to *Juliers* and *Monts*, were extinguiſhed by a Treaty in 1666, as alſo that of *Jagerndorf*, in lieu of which they had *Suibuſy*. There is a League of mutual Succeſſion between this Family, and the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Heſs*, and *Frederick* the 3d. has granted to it the expectation of the Succeſſion of the Dukedoms of *Holſtein*, *Meckeburg* and the principality of *Anhalt*, when ever they become vacant.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membred and beaked *Or*.

16. *POMERANIA*.

POMERANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pruſſia*, from which it is parted by the River *Weyſſel*, or *Viſtula*; on the Weſt with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coaſt hereof for the ſpace of 200 *Engliſh* miles; and on the South with the Marquiſate of *Brandenburgh*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerania*, a Nation of the *Sclaves*, to whoſe ſhare it fell; or from the ſituation of it on the Sea-ſhore, as the word in the *Sclavonian* doth ſeem to import.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzick*, and tranſported thence to all parts of Chriſtendom in their times of Scarcity: yielding alſo good ſtore of Paſturage, and great Herds of Cattle; with plenty of Butter, Cheeſe, Honey, and ſome reaſonable quantities of Flax. Populous it is, and thoſe people of a ſtrong Conſtitution, as living under a ſharp and piercing Air. The whole is divided into the Continent, and the Iſlands: the Continent into 1. the *Vpper Pomeren*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze* to the River *Oder*; 2. the *Lower*, reaching from the *Oder* to that part hereof which is now called 3. *Pomerellia*, betwixt it and *Pruſſia*, ſubject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we ſhall hear farther of it.

Chief places in the *VPPER* are, 1. *Bardt*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the Seat of the Dukes of this hithermoſt *Pomeren*. 2. *Wolgaſt*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over againſt the Iſle of *Vſedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeren*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeren Wolgaſt*; the firſt Town taken in by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for relief of *Germany*, *Anno* 1630. 3. *Straelſund*, a Town of great Trading and much reſort, ſeated upon the ſame Sea alſo, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the courſe of the *German* Wars. The Emperor beſeiging this Town in the year 3629, *Guſtavus Adolphus* was called in, who preſerved it from the Emperor, but became Maſter of it himſelf, and by the Treaty of *Munſter*, it was aſſigned to the *Swedes*, but in the year 1678, the Duke of *Brandenburg* took and burnt it; and in 1679, it was reſtored by Treaty to the *Swedes*. 4. *Gripſwald*, on the ſame Sea, betwixt *Wolgaſt* and *Straelſund*, made an Univerſity, *anno* 1456. 5. *Anclan*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Tribbeſees*, ſituate on a Lake out of which the ſaid River hath its courſe.

Then in the *LOWER Pomeren* there is 7. *Camin*, an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the *Baltick* ſhore, over againſt the Iſle of *Wollin*. 8. *Colberg*, a ſtrong Town on the ſame ſhore alſo, at the fall of the *Perſant* into the Sea. 9. *Coſslin*, the laſt Sea-Town of this Tract lying towards *Pruſſia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the Land; as is alſo 11. *Griffenberg* upon the *Rega*, and 12. *Stetin* on the *Oder*, once a poor fiſher-Town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; riſing to this greatneſs (after the embracing of Chriſtianity) by the fall of *Vineta*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all theſe parts; the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of the Lower *Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomeren-Stetin*, as for diſtinction ſake they are uſed to call them. *Guſtavus Adolphus*, in the year 1630, was put in poſſeſſion of this Town, by the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, *Bogiſlaus* who dying ſoon after, the *Swedes* kept it till the year 1677, when after a ſharp Seige, it was taken by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, and reſtored by the Treaty of St. *Germaine*, in the year 1679 to the *Swedes*. The *Brandenburger* had before in the year 1659, attempted the recovery of this important City in Conjunction with the Imperialiſts, but without any ſucceſs. And he got nothing now by taking it, but the Glory of the Victory, the *French* taking care that no body ſhall be the better for a War (tho' their Allies) but themſelves.

The Iſlands hereunto pertaining are thoſe of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Vſedom*, touched upon before, but now more punctually to be handled. That of moſt note is *Rugen*, over-againſt *Straelſund*, from which it is divided only by a narrow Streight, in length ſeven *Dutch* miles, and as much in breadth; ſo that the Compaſs of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or 100 *Italian* miles; and yet it was once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outragious Tempeſt, a great part of it lying towards the South-eaſt, as far as to the Iſle of *Ruden*, (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and ſunk ſo deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greateſt Ships that be ſail over it. The Iſland is plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Straelſund*, as they call it commonly; and reaſonably well ſtored with Cattle; full of Bays, Creeks, and winding Shores, with many and vaſt Promontories thruſting into the Sea, which gives them great increaſe of Fiſhing. Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bugiſlaus* and *Barnimus* Dukes of *Pomeren*: continuing ever ſince part of that Eſtate. The chief Town of it is called *Bergen*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, but not containing above 400 Families. Others of leſs note and eſtimation being, 2. *Sogart*, 3. *Wick*, 4. *Bingſt*, &c. ſmall Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the beſt they have. And yet ſo populous is the Iſland, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men if there be occaſion. This Iſland was ſeized by *Guſtavus Adolphus* in the year 1630, together with *Straelſund*, in 1678, it was conquered by the *Danes*, but in 1679, reſtored to the *Swedes*, tho' the *Danes* pretend a very ancient Right to it, it having been conquered by *Chriſtopher* II. King of *Denmark*, in the the year 1322, and after that in 1438.

The ſecond of the three, in repute and bigneſs, is that of *WOLLIN* or *VOLLINVM*, ſituate over againſt *Camin*: ſo called from *Wollin* the chief Town, (*Julicum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Epiſcopal See by *Wartiſlaus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of this Nation, which on the Sackage of this City was removed to *Camin*. A Town which once ſo flouriſhed in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Conſtantinople*: the *Ruſſians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, &c. having here their particular Streets. But being miſerably ſacked by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, *anno* 1170. moſt of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, ſince which time it never could come near its former glories.

The laſt in reputation is that of *VSEDOM*, ſeated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgaſt*; ſo called from *Vſedom* the chief Town in it, of which little obſervable. All three were the Habitation of the ancient *Rugii*, who under *Odacer* King of the *Heruli* ſubverted the Weſtern Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themſelves Maſters of it, till ſubdued by the *Goths*. Thoſe which remained in theſe Iſlands became after ſubject to the *Sclaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the firſt whoſe name occurs in Story being *Crito*, the Son of *Ratze*, a puiſſant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holſtein*, *Ditmarſh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2. Earl of *Holſtein*, by ſome eſteemed the Founder of it. But his Iſſue-male failing in the year 1326, it fell by Compact made between them to the Dukes of *Pomeren*, to whom theſe Iſlands ever ſince have continued ſubject. The two Iſlands of *Wollin* and *Vſedom*, were ſubjected at the ſame time with *Rugen* to the Crown of *Sweden*, and are ſtill under it, tho' *Vſedom* was taken in the year 1676, by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, but it was reſtored by the Treaty of St. *Germaine*.

And as for *Pomeren* it ſelf, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-Nani*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with part of the *Peruli* and *Burgundians*; into whoſe void rooms the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi* (the moſt potent Nation of the *Sclaves*) did in fine ſucceed, extending their Dominions to the Banks of the *Viſtula*, the parts adjoyning unto which, to difference them from *Pomeren*, were called *Pomerellia*. But that part of it being given by *Meſtovinus*, the laſt Prince thereof, dying without Iſſue, *anno* 1295, to *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Poland*; the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania* became confined within narrower Bounds than at firſt they had. The firſt Prince of it whom we meet with on good record was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, *anno* 933, whoſe Grandſon *Suantiborus* commanded over all this Tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his Sons, *Bugiſlaus*, who had *Pomerellia*, retained the Language and old Cuſtoms of the *Sclavonians*; *Wartiſlaus*, who poſſeſſed the Reſidue, conformed himſelf to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*: the Country being by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*, and added unto the Empire an account thereof in the time of *Fredrick Barbaroſſa*, by whom *Bugiſlaus* and *Caſimir*, Sons of *Wartiſlaus* were made Princes of the Empire and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Eſtate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugiſlaus* and *Otho*, Sons of *Barnimus* the firſt, and the Houſe of *Otho* failing in the perſon of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperor *Frederick* the third to *Frederick* the 2. Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, the cauſe of much Contention amongſt theſe Marquiſſes and the other Houſe of the Dukes of *Pomeren*, which was thus agreed at laſt, That both Princes ſhould continue the Arms and Title, the Poſſeſſion of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whoſe Iſſue-male it ſhould deſcend upon the Heirs of the Houſe of *Brandenburg*. The Succeſſion of theſe Princes follow in this order.

The Dukes of *POMERANIA*.

1. *Wartiſlaus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Pomeranians*, baptiz'd by *Otho* Biſhop of *Bamberg*, *Anno* 1124.
1128 2. *Bugiſlaus*, Son of *Wartiſlaus*, created by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* the firſt Duke of *Pomeren*.
1188 3. *Bugiſlaus* II. Son of *Bugiſlaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.
1222 4. *Barnimus*, Son of *Bugiſlaus* the ſecond: after whoſe death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

Dukes of *WOLGAST*.

1277 5. *Bugiſlaus* III. Son of *Barnimus*
1319 6. *Wartiſlaus*, Son to *Bugiſlaus*.
1326 7. *Barnimus* II.
1365 8. *Wartiſlaus* II.
1394 9. *Barnimus* III.
1405 10. *Wartiſlaus* III.
1456 11. *Ericus*, Son of *Wartiſlaus*.
1459 12. *Bugiſlaus* III. commonly call'd the Tenth, the younger Princes of both Houſes making up the tale: He ſucceeded *Otho* the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting ſo the whole into one Eſtate.

Dukes of *STETIN*.

1277 1. *Otho*, Duke of *Pomeren Stetin*.
1345 2. *Caſimir*, Son of *Otho*.
1368 3. *Caſimir* II. Son of *Caſimir*.
1374 4. *Suantiborus*, Brother of *Caſimir* the 2d.
1413 5. *Caſimir* III. Son of *Suantiborus*.
1433 6. *Joachim*, Son of *Caſimir* the 3d.
1451 7. *Otho* III. Son of *Joachim*, died without Iſſue, *Anno* 1464.

1523 13. *George*, Son of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth.
1531 14. *Philip*, Son of *George*, in whoſe time the Reformation made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.
1583 15 *Bugiſlaus* IV. but the 13th in the *Dutch* account, Son of *Philip*; his younger Brother *Erneſtus-Ludovicus*, having that of *Stetin* for his ſhare.
1606 16. *Bugiſlaus* V. and 14. Son of *Bugiſlaus* the 4th. born in the year 1580, ſucceeded in *Pomeren* of *Wolgaſt*; as *Philip-Julius*, Son of *Erneſtus-Ludovicus*, did in that of *Stetin*. After whoſe Death *Bugiſlaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*; in a fair way to have loſt all to the prevailing Imperialiſts, had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* ſtopped their violent Progreſs. But *Bugiſlaus* dying without Iſſue in the time of the War (in 1637) and in him the Male-iſſue of the Houſe of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth being quite extinguiſhed, *George-William*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, put in his Claim for the Eſtate, according to the Compact and Agreement ſpoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes* (who under colour of aiding the laſt Duke, had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the ſtrongeſt places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munſter*, that all the Higher *Pomerania*, with the Iſles of *Rugin* and *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin*, ſhould from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*: Lower *Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, ſo long as the Male-iſſue laſteth; on default whereof, that alſo to be added unto that Crown: the Arms and Titles to be uſed by both promiſcuouſly. And in regard the Marquis of *Brandenburg* was to part with the Upper *Pomeren* for the Contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm Peace could be made in *Germany*;) it was alſo there agreed upon, that the Temporal Eſtates of the Biſhoprick of *Halberſtad*, *Minden*, and *Camin*, together with that of *Magdeberg*, (after the deceaſe of the preſent Biſhop) ſhould be for ever added to the Poſſeſſions of that Houſe; the Marqueſſes and Electors of it to be thenceforth intituled Dukes of *Magdeberg*, Princes of *Halberſtad* and *Minden*. But what will be the iſſue of theſe Concluſions future Times muſt ſhew.

The Arms of *Pomeren* are a *Gryphon*.

17. *MECKLENBURG*.

THE Dukedom of *MECKLENBURG* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pomerania*, on the Weſt with *Holſtein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Denmark*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South with *Brandenburg* and *Saxon Lawenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*; (both names in the ſeveral Languages of the *Dutch* and *Greeks*, ſignifying *a great City*, a great Town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, the old Inhabitants of theſe Parts) whoſe chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Country decayed to nothing. The Country is of the ſame nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in Corn.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Wiſmar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, raiſed out of the Ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before-mentioned, about the year 1240. The Haven hereof is capable of the greateſt Veſſels, to which it gives a ſafe and aſſured Station, whence the name of *Wiſmar*; the word ſignifying, in the *Sclavonian* Language, *idem ac certum mare*, (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or ſafe Sea. Now one of the *Hanſe*-Towns, and being it lies conveniently for the uſe of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the Treaty of *Munſter*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof to have the Temporalities of the Biſhopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzenburg.* This City in the year 1675 was taken by the *Danes*, and though by the Treaty in 1679 it was to have been reſtored to the *Swede*, yet the Crown of *Denmark* ſtill keeps it, as *Baudrand* ſaith. It became endued with the Privileges of a City in the year 1266 by *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, (it having been four Years before burnt down) to encourage the rebuilding of it. The *Engliſh* Fugitives under the Reign of Queen *Mary* were ill uſed here in 1554, ſaith *Hofman.* 2. *Swerin*, ſeated upon the South ſide of the Lake ſo named; an Epiſcopal See, and honoured with giving the Title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg.* It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1630, and reſtored to the Duke of *Mecklenburg* by the Treaty of *Munſter*, in 1648. 3. *Malchow*, firſt walled by *Niclot* Prince of the *Vandals*, *Anno* 1270. 4. *Ratzenburg*, an Epiſcopal See, ſpoken of before. 5. *Roſtock*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanſe*-Towns to *Lubeck* and *Dantzick*; large, rich, and much frequented by all ſorts of Merchants; in compaſs almoſt ſix *Engliſh* Miles, ſituate on the River *Warn*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*; honour'd with a Univerſity, here Founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1419, the firſt Profeſſors in it being brought from *Erfort* in *Saxony.* *Roſtock* was built by one of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, in the year of Chriſt 329, and walled by *Primiſlaus* another of them in 1160. It was taken by *Erick* IV. King of *Denmark*, in 1286, and reſtored by *Chriſtopher* III. in 1322, and confirm'd to *Albert* in 1360, by *Waldemar* IV. In 1573, a Sedition brought this City into the hands of its Duke, who, to keep it in order, built a Cittadel in it. In the year 1629, the Imperialiſts took it, and in 1631 the *Swedes* recovered it out of their hands; and by the Treaty of *Munſter* it was put into its ancient State. 6. *Stargard*, which once gave the Title of Duke to the younger Princes of this Houſe. 7. *Sarantine*, memorable for a Nunnery there Founded by Duke *Magnus* II. 8. *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* II. as an Outwork to *Roſtock*, which he had lately bought of *Chriſtopher* then King of *Denmark.* 9. *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10. *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeren*, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the Title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and proſperous Commander of the Imperial Forces in the late Wars of *Germany*, who was miſerably murthered after all his Services by command of the Emperor. 11. *Fitchtel*, both pleaſantly and ſtrongly ſeated on the edge of a Lake. 12. *Dammin*, a ſtrong Town on the Marches of *Brandenburg.*

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the reſt of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians.* But the *Burgundians* being reckon'd as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their Irruptions on the Borders of the *Roman* Empire made them more conſiderable: the Princes of theſe Nations uſing no other Title than Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals.* Of theſe the firſt is ſaid to be one *Anthyrius*, Son of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learn'd his firſt Rudiment of Warfare under *Alexander* the Great. Out of his Loins deſcended a long Race of Kings, amongſt whom *Rhadaguiſe*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth* invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick*, the 17th of theſe Kings, weary of ſo cold a Dwelling, paſſed towards the South; and, having haraſſed *Gaul* and *Spain*, ſhipped himſelf over the Streights of *Gibralter*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; whoſe Succeſſors we ſhall meet with there. By *Vitalaus*, the youngeſt Son of *Genſericus*, the Son of *Gunderick*, the Line of theſe Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti* and other of the *Sclaves*, ſucceeded into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the Title of Kings of the *Vandals*, and called themſelves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*, continuing it to *Pribiſlaus* or *Primiſlaus* the ſecond, who wrote himſelf, *Pribiſlaus, Dei gratia, Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circipanorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kiſſinorum, Vandalorumque Rex*, making herein a general Muſter of thoſe Tribes of the *Sclaves* and *Heruli* which remained under his command. But he being vanquiſh'd by *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the Title of King was laid aſide; his Succeſſors contenting themſelves with that of *Princes.* The Eſtate was divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribiſlaus* by his Son *Henry*, into two Eſtates, *Henry* aſſuming to himſelf the Title of Prince of the *Obotriti*, and *Niclot* that of Prince of the *Vandals.* But the Poſterity of *Niclot* failing in *William* the laſt of that Line, *Anno* 1430, his Title with the Lands thereunto belonging fell to *Henry* the Fat, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*, to which Honour *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry* the fourth, deſcended from the elder Houſe, had been advanced by the Emperor *Charles* the Fourth at *Prague*, *anno* 1348. The Succeſſion of which Family from *Tribiſlaus* take in order thus:

The Princes of the *HERVLI*, and Dukes of *MECKLENBVRG.*

1158 1. *Pribiſlaus*, the laſt King and firſt Prince of the *Heruli*, after their Subjection to the *Saxons*, reſtored to this Title and his former Eſtate by the bountiful Conquerors, to be held under the Right and Homage of the Houſe of *Saxony.*

1179 2. *Henry*, Son of *Pribiſlaus*, baptiſed with all his People in his Father's life-time, by the perſwaſion of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, by whom they were reſtored to their Eſtates.

1215 3. *Henry* II. Son of the former *Henry*, dividing the Eſtate with his Brother *Niclot.*

1228 4. *John*, ſirnamed the Divine, ſo called becauſe created Doctor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Paris*, whither he was ſent by his Father to learn good Arts.

1260 5. *Henry* III. ſirnamed of *Hieruſalem*, becauſe of his Expedition thither againſt the *Saracens.*

1302 6. *Henry* IV. ſirnamed the Lion, for his Valour and undaunted Conſtancy.

1319 }
1329 } 7. *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry*, going to *Prague* with a Princely Train to attend on the Emperor *Charles* the Fourth, were by him created Princes of the Empire, and Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1348. This Prince had a Son called *Albert*, who was choſen King of *Sweden*, in oppoſition to *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, by whom he was taken Priſoner in the year 1388, and kept Priſoner 7 years; he died in the year 1396. So his younger Son *Magnus* ſucceeded his Father in the Dutchy.

1380 8. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert.*

1384 9. *John*, Son of *Magnus*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Roſtock*, *Anno* 1419.

1423 10. *Henry* V. ſirnamed the Fat, who, on the death of *William* the laſt Prince of the *Vandals*, ſucceeded into his Eſtate.

1477 }
1447 } 11. *Magnus* II. Son of *Henry*, Founder of the Cathedral Church of *Roſtock.*

1491 12. *Albert* II. Son of *Magnus* the ſecond.

1503 13. *Henry* the Pacifick, Son of *Albert* the ſecond, ſucceeded his Father, and ſetled the Reformation in this Dukedom: He had two Sons, *Magnus* and *Philip*, but they died before him. So the Eſtate fell to his Brother's Son.

1547 14. *John Albert*, Son of *Albert* the ſecond, endowed the Univerſity of *Roſtock* with the Lands of ſome diſſolved Monaſteries, and authorized in his Eſtates the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther.* He died in 1576.

1576 15. *John* III. Son of *John Albert.*

1592 16. *Adolph Frederick* and *John Albert*, Sons of *John* the third, diſpoſſeſſed hereof by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *anno* 1628. their Eſtates, with the Title of Duke of *Mecklenburg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Fridland*, who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the Aſſertor of the Liberties of *Germany*, reſtored it to the proper Owners, in 1631. The Heir to whoſe Eſtates is *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the only Son and Heir of *John Albert*. *Adolph Frederick* was the Founder of the Line of *Swerin*, (the Family being divided into two Houſes) he died in the year 1658, leaving

	SWERIN.		*GUSTROW.*
1658	17. *Chriſtian-Lewis*, born in the year 1623, who turn- Roman Catholick in 1663, to qualifie himſelf for *Iſabel Montmorency*, a *French* Lady of that Religion, though he had a Wife then living; but he has had no Child by either of them.	1636	*Guſtavus Adolphus*, ſucceeded *John Albert* his Father, his eldeſt Son is *Charles*, born in the year 1664, 18 *November*. In the year 1687, he married *Mary*, Daughter to *Frederick-William*, late Elector and Duke of *Brandenburg*, and died without Iſſue the 15th of *March*, 1688: So there is no Male-iſſue in either of the Houſes now governing.

Frederick, the 10th Son of *Adolph-Frederick*, who was born in the year 1638, and died in the year 1688, has two Sons, *Frederick-William*, born *March* 13th, 1675. and *Charles*, born in 1679. *Adolph-Auguſtus*, the youngeſt Son of *Adolph-Frederick*, has alſo one Son called *Guſtavus Adolphus*.

November the 8th, 1695. the Duke of *Mecklenburg Guſtraw* died without Iſſue-male; thereupon the Duke of *Swerin* endeavoured to get the poſſeſſion of this Country, but was oppoſed by the Duke of *Strelitz*, who Married the laſt Duke's eldeſt Daughter, and the Dukedom is now in the Emperor's Hands till this Controverſie be determined.

As to the increaſe or decreaſing of the Eſtate of the Family of *Mecklingberg*; In the year 1290 they poſſeſſed the Dominion of *Stargard*, and in 1301 the ſame Duke *Henry* the third by force of Arms ſubdued the City of *Wiſmar*. In 1317 they obtained of the King of *Denmark* the Province of *Roſtock*. In 1355, *Albert*, by Marriage, gained the Dukedom of *Swerin*, with the City of *Domitz*. In 1431, by the Failure of a Family, they had the Poſſeſſion of the Principality of the *Vandals* of *Winchlandt*. In the Year 1648, in recompence of the loſs of *Wiſmar*, yielded to the *Swedes*, they had the Biſhopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzburg*, and a Cannons place in *Magdeburg* and *Halberſtad*, and two Commendataries in the Order of the Knights of St. *John* at *Miran* and *Nimerau*. *Antonius Whielmus Schowartus Obſervationes Hiſtorico, Gendo Logica*, pag. 325.

18. The Dukedom and Eſtates of SAXONY.

THE Dukedom and Eſtates of *SAXONY* (not reckoning thoſe which now paſs under other Names, and ſhall hereafter be deſcribed in their ſeveral places) are bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and parts of *Lunenburg* and *Holſtein*; on the North with other parts of *Brandenburg*, and part of *Mecklenburg*; and on the South with *Franconia*, and ſome parts of the *Upper Palatinate*.

It is (we ſee) an aggregate Body, conſiſting of two general Limbs; 1. the Dukedom of *Saxony*, 2. the Eſtates of *Saxony*, or *Saxony* properly ſo called: the firſt containing the whole Provinces of, 1. *Ober-Sax*, or the *Upper Saxony*, the proper Seat of the Duke Elector. 2. *Miſnia*, 3. *Voitland*, and 4. *Thuringia*; the other thoſe of, 1. *Anhalt*, 2. *Mansfield*, 3. *Meydeburg*, and 4. *Lawenburg*. And as it is an aggregate Body, ſo it is comprehenſive of all thoſe honorary Titles by which the Princes of *Germany* are diſtinguiſhed from one another; that is to ſay, the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, the Dukedom of *Lawenburg*, the Biſhoprick of *Meydeburg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Seignioury or Lordſhip of *Voitland*. Of theſe eight Provinces, the four firſt mentioned are wholly ſituate without the Limits and Precincts of the ancient *Saxony*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, becauſe they make up the whole Patrimony and Eſtate of the Dukes Electors, who ſince the Proſcription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſirnamed the Lion, *Anno* 1180, in ſome or other of theſe Countries have had their fixed Seat and Habitation. The four laſt, being parts of the ancient *Saxony*, and heretofore in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes hereof, do ſtill paſs under the account and name of *Saxony*, though in the hands of ſeveral Owners; all which do acknowledge a Superiority in the Duke Elector, if not ſome great Relation to him and Dependance on him: ſo that we have an heterogeneous Body to diſcourſe upon, and therefore muſt conſider ſeverally of the parts thereof, but ſo, that either firſt or laſt we ſhall find them all in the Succeſſion and Affairs of the Dukes of *Saxony*. 1. then,

The Dukedom of *Saxony* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia*, and part of the proper *Saxony*; on the North with the proper *Saxony* only; and on the South with *Franconia*, and the *Upper Palatinate*. So called, becauſe the proper Seat and Patrimony of the Duke Elector: of very different nature both for Air and Soil, but the laſt eſpecially; as we ſhall ſee by looking over the particular Provinces of, 1. *Ober-Sax*, 2. *Miſnia*, or *Meiſſen*, 3. *Voitland*, 4. *Thuringia*, by the *Dutch* called *Duringen*.

1. *OBER-SAX*, or the *Upper Saxony*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Marches of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Mansfield*, from which it is parted by the River *Sala*, on the North with *Meydeburg*, on the South with *Miſnia*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. The Air hereof is ſomewhat ſharp, and piercing, the Soil ſufficiently fruitful, but therein not to be compar'd with *Miſnia*, and much leſs with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Torgaw*, by ſome placed in *Miſnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province; built on the Weſt ſide of the *Elve*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the ſides of a Mountain; beautified with a ſtately and pleaſant Caſtle belonging to the Elector of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof, built by *John Frederick* the Elector, *Anno* 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compaſs, for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 Guldens. 2. *Worlitz*; upon the *Elve*, once a Commandery of the Templars. 3. *Weiſſenburg*, lying towards *Brunſwick*. 4. *Kemburg*, on the *Elve*. 5. *Bitterfeldt*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Mulda*. And, 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elve*, in an open Plain, but ſtrongly fenced with Walls, Ramparts, and deep Ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair Street, extending the whole length of the City: in the midſt thereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market-place, and the Common-Council-Houſe. In former times it was the Seat of the Dukes Electors, till the Electoral Dignity was conferred on the Houſe of *Meiſſen*, who, liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dreſden*, but ſo, that *Wittenberg* is ſtill acknowledged for the head City of the Electorate; and was made an Univerſity for Divines by Duke *Frederick*, *Anno* 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as ſome conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greateſt: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melancthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of Popery firſt broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful Succeſs whereof we have ſpoke already.

Of the Affairs of this little Country we can ſay but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxony*, and conſequently to the name which it ſtill retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſirnam'd the Lion, whoſe Greatneſs was grown formidable even to the Emperors themſelves, the Dukedom of *Saxony* was diſmembred into many parcels; *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg* being given unto the Children of the Duke depriv'd, the lower parts of *Weſtphalen* ſeized on by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*, the parts thereof about the *Weſer* by the Biſhop of *Paderborn*, *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Thuringia* laying hold of that part of this Eſtate which was neareſt to him, *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themſelves as Free Eſtates, and the Anceſtors of the Princes of *Anhalt* and the Earls of *Mansfield* endowed with large Poſſeſſions alſo out of this great Patrimony; the Emperor not only conniving at it, but willingly conſenting to that Diſſipation, the better to reward and content thoſe Princes who had aſſiſted him in his Wars againſt the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient *Saxony* to be eſtated upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbaroſſa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* ſo deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good Services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrade* the third, and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lawenburg*; yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector, it pleaſed the Emperor *Frederick* to beſtow upon him all thoſe Lands and Territories which lay between the *Sala* and the *Elve*, on the North of *Miſnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the Country thus united to it the name of *Ober-Sax* or *Upper-Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meiſſen*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Luſatia*, on the Weſt with *Duringen*, on the North with *Saxony* ſpecially ſo called, and ſome part of *Brandenburg*, on the South with *Voitland* and ſome part of *Bohemia*. The Country was once overſpread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendring the Air unwholeſom, and the Soil unprofitable; both rectified by the care and induſtry of the People; now yielding ſome Mines of Silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Paſturage; well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Pleſſe*, *Elſter*, and *Mulda*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Dreſden*, ſeated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks 150 Pieces of Ordnance; in it a Stable of the Duke's, in which are 128 Horſes of ſervice, and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horſe and Foot may be armed at a day's warning. The Town it ſelf is ſituate on both ſides of the River, by which it is divided into the Old Town and the New, joined into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length. The Country round about it is very rich and pleaſant, able to ſuſtain great multitudes. For that cauſe it was made the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Merſburg*, both ſeated on the River *Sala*, two Epiſcopal Sees. 4. *Leipzick*, as famous an Univerſity for Philoſophers as *Jene* in *Lorrain* is for Phyſicians. It was Founded by *Frederick* the firſt before he was Duke of *Saxony* or Elector, in the year 1409. It ſeemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not ſuffer their Beer to Periſh, of which here is ſo much drunk and exported, that the very Cuſtom of it due unto the Duke amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the moſt part of fair Free-ſtone, and honoured with the Courts of Juſtice for all the Country. Though ſeated on the meeting of *Pleſſe*, *Parde*, and *Elſter*, three Rivers which lie almoſt on all ſides of it; yet it is not ſtrong, having been thrice taken by the Imperialiſts in leſs than two years during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing elſe) for the great Battel fought near it between the late K. of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the Honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons* (with the death of 15000 on both ſides, and the loſs of all the Baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the Imperialiſts) freed all theſe parts of *Germany* from that civil and ſpiritual Bondage which was intended by the Emperor to be put upon them. In the year 1642, this City was taken by the *Swedes*, after a ſecond Victory gain'd over the Imperialiſts under its Walls. 5. *Mulberg*, on the *Elve*, where *John-Frederick* the Elector was diſcomfited and taken Priſoner by *Charles* the fifth, and by him deprived not long after of his Eſtate and Dignity. 6. *Meiſſen*, on the Weſt ſide of the ſame River, in a hilly and uneven Ground, built by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, for defence of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: a Biſhop's See, and the firſt Seat of the Marqueſſes of this Country, both which, together with the Burgrave of the Town, had their Palaces or Manſion-Houſes ſtanding cloſe together on the top of a Hill overlooking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meiſſen*. 7. *Friberg*, near the Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in Mines of Silver. 8. *Roclite*, not far from which are rich Mines of Tin, diſcovered firſt in theſe parts by a *Corniſh*-Man ſpoken of before.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanduri* and *Suardones*, ſubdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Sclaves* ſirnamed *Winithi*: firſt conquered by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, who built the ſtrong Town of *Meiſſen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Sclaves* from any Incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by ſuch Officers as by the Emperors were appointed to guard theſe Marches: the firſt proprietary Marquis being one *Echard*, Son of the Earl of *Ooſtland* (diſcended from a younger Son of *Wittikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third: not made Hereditary till the time of *Henry* the 5th, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade*, Marquis of *Landſperg* and *Luſatia*, whoſe Nephew *Theodorick* by his Son *Otho*, ſirnamed the Rich, married *Judith*, Daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which match *Duringen* accrued to the Houſe of *Meiſſen*, *Henry* their Son ſucceeding in both Eſtates. To this *Henry* ſucceeded *Albert* his Son, and after him ſucceſſively four *Fredericks*; the laſt whereof, on the failure of the Houſe of *Anhalt*, was by the Emperor *Sigiſmund* created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, either becauſe deſcended from the Houſe of *Wittikindus*, or, as moſt able to pay for the Inveſtiture, or elſe beſt able to ſuſtain the Eſtate and Dignity of a Duke Elector, which had but weakly been ſupported by the former Family. In his Poſterity theſe Honours and Eſtates do as yet continue; but neither all nor always in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes Electors. For in the Partage made between *Erneſtus* and *Albert*, the Sons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill Cuſtom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greateſt part of it, was aſſigned to *Albert*, ſucceeded in the ſame by *George* and *Henry* his two Sons: which *Henry* was Father of that *Maurice*, who, being ſetled and confirmed herein by the Duke *John-Frederick*, did after moſt unworthily take up Arms againſt him, ſupplanted him, and finally poſſeſſed himſelf of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITLAND* is bound on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, on the Weſt with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Miſnia* or *Meiſſen*, on the South with the *Upper-Palatinate*. So called, as ſome ſay, from the *Ivites* or *Vites* (ſome of that People, who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquer'd *Britain*) of whom it had the nam-

of *Viteland*, that is to ſay, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did ſpread ſo far Eaſtward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Sclaves*, who finding it deſerted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland* is both plain and obvious. It is the ſmalleſt Province of all *Germany*, and never of ſuch repute as to have any particular Prince, as moſt others had; but always reckoned as an acceſſory to ſome greater Eſtate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities of great eſtimation: the chief of thoſe which are, being 1. *Olſnitz*, 2. *Worda*, 3. *Cornah*, 4. *Schneberg*, near the Mountains called *Sudeti* by *Ptolomy*, famous for Silver-Mines. 5. *Gotzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*, and 7. *Hoffe*, not much remarkable, but only for the Princes of it of the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, called formerly *Curia Pegniama*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nertereates* and *Danduti*, ſucceeded to by the *French* and *Sclaves*, as they ſeverally deſcended Southwards into warmer Countries. Poſſeſſed and planted by the *Sclaves* it obtained this name. But being a ſmall Nation and a ſmall Eſtate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did moſt probably belong to the Lords of *Meiſſen*, upon which it bordereth, and now, in their right, to the Duke of *Saxony*. But ſo that the Duke of *Saxony* is not the ſole Lord hereof: the Marquiſſes of *Onſpach* of the Houſe of *Brandenburg* poſſeſſing the Towns of *Hoffe* and *Culmbach*, and ſome other parts of it; the Patrimony of *Joachim Erneſt* the late Marquiſs of *Onſpach* and *Culmbach*, (who died in 1625, having been made General of the Proteſtant League in 1610, but failing in 1620, in that affair he was ſuſpected of a Correſpondence under-hand with the Imperialiſts againſt his own party. He was ſucceeded by *Albert* his Son, who prudently managed his affairs till his Death, which happened the 22th of *October* 1665, *John Frederick* his Eldeſt Son ſucceeded him in his Honours, whoſe eldeſt Son was born the 8th of *September* 1675, and bears the Name of *Chriſtian Albert*.

4. *THURINGIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Miſnia* and the River *Sala*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia*, on the North with the Wood *Hartz* and the proper *Saxony*, on the South with the Mountainous Foreſt of *Duringerwald*, by it parted from *Frankenland*: the Foreſt and the Country both ſo called from the *Thuringians*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country is environed round about with woody Mountains, but within thoſe Mountains plain and pleaſant, fruitful in Corn, and very plentiful of Woods, which yield great profit to the people; not without ſome Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt; able to furniſh out a Feaſt, but for wine only, which is the greateſt want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more, yet is it ſo populous and well planted, that there are ſaid to be in it 12 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market-Towns, 150 Caſtles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of theſe are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Sala*, bordering upon *Miſnia*, an Univerſity chiefly of Phyſicians, founded in the year 1555, by the Sons of *John-Frederick* the Elector, taken Priſoner and deprived by *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Erfurt*, on the River *Gera*, out of which are cut ſo many Channels, that every ſtreet almoſt hath the benefit of it. A rich populous and well-built City, accounted amongſt the beſt of *Germany*, and made an Univerſity in the time of the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, *Anno* 1382. Many times burnt, but ſtill reviving, as the Phœnix out of the Aſhes, into greater glory. It was at firſt immediately ſubject to the Archbiſhops and Electors of *Mentz*, the firſt Founders of it, as being built by *William*, Son of the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, and then Archbiſhop of that City, of whom more anon; but having freed themſelves from him, they have ſince governed themſelves as a Free Eſtate, and are one of the *Hanſe*-Towns, not ſubject to the Duke of *Saxony* as their Lord, but their Patron and good Neighbour only. In the year 1664, the *French* put this place into the hands of the Elector of *Mentz*: The Elector of *Saxony* having 17 of the 90 Villages. Aſſigned him by the Treaty of *Leipſick*, in 1665, to procure his conſent, to this ſubjection of the City to that Prince. 3. *Mulhuſen*, and 4. *Northuſen*, two Imperial Cities, but elſe not obſervable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the League here made *Anno* 1530. between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the Doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof, and of one another in the purſuance of that work: by which famous Confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his ſhoulders, but the Religion by him reformed grew to that ſtrength, that no force of policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kala*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falza*; of great reſort for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended into other places, at which Town *Philip* the Lantgrave was treacherouſly taken Priſoner, as you ſhall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town which, together with the Caſtle of *Gotha*, were aſſigned for the Eſtate and maintenance of that Religious, though unfortunate Prince, *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, after his Diſcomfiture and Impriſonment by *Charles* the 5. the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of *Saxon-Weymer*, who live here in a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle made of poliſhed ſtone, moſt artificially contrived; and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleaſures, but made more pleaſant by the watering of the River *Ilma*, upon which it ſtandeth. 8, *Gotha*, upon the River *Lon*, ſaid by *Rathaimerus* to be built by the *Goths*, and by them thus named. A place not long ſince of great importance, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, called *Grummemſtein*, that being made the Retiring-place of one *Grunbachius* and other ſeditious perſons under the Protection of *John Frederick*, one of the Sons of the deprived Elector. It was taken after a long Siege by *Auguſtus* the Elector of *Saxony*, (to whom the ſtrength of this piece being in the hands of the injured Family was a great Eye-ſore) and by the command of the Eſtates of the Empire at the Diet at *Regenſpurg*, *Anno* 1567, demoliſhed, and levelled with the ground, but is ſince rebuilt and call'd *Freideſtein*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chaſuarii* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Thuringi*, who, with the *Heruli*, under the Conduct of *Odoacer*, conquered *Italy*; called by ſome *Turcilingi*, by others ſuppoſed to be the *Tirangeta* of *Ptolomy*. Not heard of in this Country till the Reign of *Childerick* the fourth King of the *French*; then taking up the whole Provinces of *Haſſia* and *Thuringia*, under one *Biſſinius* their King. There Arms were at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion Barrie *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great Battle of *Zulph* near *Colen*, where they joyned with the *Almans*, they were afterwards totally ſubdued by *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Metz*, their King *Hermanfridus* taken, and moſt perfidiouſly ſlain; part of their Country taken from them, and given to the *Saxons* (who aſſiſted in that War againſt them) becoming ſubject for the reſt to the Kings of *France*; but ſo, that for ſome time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfroy*, two brothers, Kings hereof ſucceſſively, being Uncles to *Radegond*, a Princeſs of great Piety, the Wife of *Clotaire* King of *France*, Anno 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the firſt; conferred not long after by *Otho* the firſt (the Son of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger Sons, then Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, which he left to his Succeſſors in that See; governed by their *Vidames* and Provincial Officers, till the time of *Conradus Salicus*, when *Ludovicus Barbatus*, one of theſe *Vidames* (or *Vicedomini*) made himſelf the Proprietary of it, and left the ſame unto his Children after his deceaſe. But in the time of *Conrade* the 2. the iſſue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or diſpoſſeſſed, it was by the Emperor conferred on *Lewis* of *Orleans*, Son to a Siſter of his Empreſs, the Title of

Lantgrave being given to them of this Family for their greater Honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five ſucceſſively had the name of *Lewis*, this Eſtate continued: next falling to *Herman*, a brother of the fifth *Lewis*, who by contributing to the Ruine of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, ſirnamed the Lion, in favour of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, had for his ſhare (in the dividing of the Spoil) thoſe parts of his Eſtates which lay neareſt to him, called then the *Palatinate* of *Saxony*; recovered for the moſt part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead, this Country fell to a ſixth *Lewis*, and laſt of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the Male-iſſue failed, having continued for the ſpace of 252 years. To pleaſe all parties intereſſed in the Succeſſion, the Eſtate, before entire, was divided into two Parts or Provinces: of which this now called *Duringen*, or *Thuringia*, was allotted to *Henry* Marquiſs of *Miſnia*, Son of *Judith*, the Daughter of *Herman*: the Weſtern part thereof, with the Title of the Lantgravedom of *Heſſen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 6th: in the deſcription of which Countries we ſhall hear more of them. United thus to the Houſe of *Meiſſen* in the perſon of *Henry* the then Marquiſs, *Anno* 1263, it flouriſhed in long Peace and Happineſs under the Princes of that Houſe. Finally, it much increaſed both in Power and Dignity by the addition of *Ober-Sax* and the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, conferred on *Frederick* the Fourth, Marquiſs and Lantgrave of theſe Countries, *anno* 1423; in which Eſtate it ſtill continueth, the fourth and faireſt of all theſe Provinces which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxony*, (as for the reaſons above mentioned it hath long been called) though none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the Bounds and Limits of the ancient *Saxony*, as before was ſaid.

2. *SAXONY* properly ſo called, or the proper *SAXONY*, is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the great Wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Hercynian* Foreſt, and from thence ſo named; on the Eaſt with part of *Miſnia*, *Ober-Sax*, and the Marches of *Brandenburg*; upon the North with the Dukedom of *Mecklenberg*; and on the Weſt with thoſe of *Brunſwick*, *Lunenberg*, and part of *Holſtein*. So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof, (of whom more anon) and the ſole part of all their great and many Conqueſts which retains their name.

The Air hereof is ſomewhat ſharp, but healthy; the Soil in the South-weſt parts hilly and uneven, chiefly rich in Minerals, elſewhere ſufficiently fruitful. It is divided into Four Eſtates; that is to ſay, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Mansfield*, 3. the Biſhoprick of *Meydeburg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lawenberg*.

1. The Principate of *ANHALT* is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the Wood called *Hartz*, on the Weſt and North with the County of *Mansfield*, on the Eaſt with *Miſnia*; much ſhaded, if not too much overgrown with Woods, part of the *Hartz*, or old *Hercynian* Foreſt, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the *Dutch* ſignifying a Wood or Foreſt; and the Princes of this Houſe being created to this Dignity by the Style of *Principes Hercynia in Anhalt*. Chiefer Towns of it are, 1. *Bernburg*, the Dynaſtie and uſual Title of this houſe before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2. *Ballenſtede*, part of the ancient Patrimony of the firſt Princes hereof. 3. *Deſſaw*, the birth-place of ſome, and the burial-place of others, of this Family; beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, built by Prince *Albert* the 2. *Anno* 1341. 4. *Sterveſt*, the uſual place of the Prince's Reſidence. 5. *Coeten*, a well fortified place, in vain beſieged by the joint-Forces of the Archbiſhop of *Meydeburg*, and the Earl of *Swartzenland*. 6. *Caude*. Here ſometimes alſo ſtood the old Caſtle of *Aſcandt*, the firſt ſeat of theſe Princes, but long ſince deſtroyed, now only to be viſited in Records and Hiſtories.

We ſhall be ſent no higher than the firſt beſieging of the *Roman* Capitol by the ancient *Gauls*, to find out the Pedigree and Deſcent of the Earls of *Lippe*; but we muſt go as high as the Ark for the Princes of *Anhalt*; ſome fetching them from *Azkenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, from whom, and no other, this *Aſcanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedigree. But to content our ſelves with more ſober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodorick* King of *Metz* undertook the Conqueſt of the *Thuringians*, he was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000 men; under the conduct of one *Bernwald*, or *Bernthobald*, a man of great power and rank amongſt them. The *Saxons* were recompenced for that ſervice with ſuch parts of the conquered Country as lay neareſt to them, and *Bernthobald* himſelf rewarded with the Towns of *Aſcandt*, *Ballenſtede*, and the Lands adjoyning, *Anno* 524, to be holden by them under the Soveraignty of the *French*. From which Town and the Caſtle of *Aſcandt*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Pepin* King of the *French*, (for denying the accuſtomed Tributes) *Anno* 747, moſt probable it is that the name of the *Aſcanian Family* was aſſumed by them. So that we may behold it as a Family of as great antiquity as the moſt in *Europe*, little inferior to any of the greateſt Monarchs. His Succeſſors were for the moſt part buſied in Wars againſt their neighbours of *Miſnia*; but rather upon hope of Spoil and plunder, than in way of Conqueſt; their Power and Patrimony being very little improved till the time of *Albert* ſirnamed *Urſus*, deſcended by a long ſucceſſion of Princes from *Bernwald* or *Bernthobald*, before remembred. This *Albert* having done many ſignal ſervices unto *Conrade* the 3. and his Son *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, (eſpecially in taking the Cities of *Breme* and *Lunenburg*) was by the laſt created Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenberg*, Anno 1153, the Father of that *Bernard* who by the munificence and bounty of the ſame Emperor, was created Duke-Elector of *Saxony* in the room of Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, *Anno* 1180, becoming ſo the Stem of the two greateſt Princes of all the Empire. *Henry* the 2. Son of this *Bernard*, was by the ſame Emperor not long after enriched with much of the Lands and Territories lying neareſt to him, which had before belonged to Duke *Henry* the Lion, and created the firſt Prince of *Anhalt*, the firſt of all this ancient and illuſtrious Family which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his Race to this very day; the two Electorates of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* being in the mean while tranſlated unto other Families. The moſt conſiderable of which Princes, tho' all men of Eminence, were 1. *Rodolph*, General of the Forces of the Emperor *Maximilian* the firſt againſt the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in Battle. 2. *George* the Divine, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whoſe Sermons and other Tractates (learned for the times he lived in) are ſtill extant. 3. *Chriſtian*, born in the year 1568, Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the Wars of *Bohemia*. This Family is ſtill extant, but divided into very many branches.

The Hiſtory of the Family of *Anhalt*, is thus ſet down by *Showartus*.

THough the Family of *Anhalt*, is of ſo great antiquity, that no Records will reach its Origen, yet was it known by the Title of the Counts of *Aſcania* and *Ballenſted* about the year of Chriſt 524. After which time, *Albert* the 6th. was made Marquis of *Soltwell*, by *Henry* the 2d, and died in the year 1005, and after this, upon the failure of the Marquiſſes of *Brandenburg* of the Family of the Earls of *Staden* and *Ringelſheim*: *Albertus Urſus* Marquiſs of *Soltquell*, Count of *Aſcania*, *Ballenſted* and *Wolpe* in the year 1142, was made Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who died in the year 1169, the 18th of *November*. By his firſt Wife *Sophia*, Daughter of the Count of *Renech*, he had

1. *Otto*, Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who died in the year 1198, and his Poſterity failed in *Waldemar* II. in the year 1322.

2. *Albert* II. Duke and Elector of *Saxony*, whoſe Poſterity was extinguiſhed in *Albert* the 6th, in 1422.

3. *John* I. the Author of the Line of *Sax-Lawemberg*, whoſe deſcenden *Julius Franciſcus*, died in the year 1688, leaving only two Daughters.

1189 4. *Henry* II. the ſecond Son of *Albertus Vrſus*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, made Prince of *Anhalt*, in the year 1189.

1257 5. *Sigefred*, and *Bernard* Sons of *Henry*, divided his Eſtates amongſt themſelves in the year 1288.

1315 6. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* I.

1318 7. *Bernard* III. who in the year 1323, was inveſted in the Earldom of *Aſcania*, and gained thereby the full Poſſeſſion of the Principality of *Anhalt*, but in the year 1326, he was again deprived of this Earldom by the Biſhop of *Halberſtad* by Force. This Line failed in the year 1468, in *Bernard* the 6th, but there was another derived from *Sigefred* the Elder Brother, that has continued to our time.

1. *Joachim Erneſt*, Son of *John* the 4th, was born in the year 1536, he died the 6th of *December* 1586.

1568 2. *John George Deſſaw*, born the 9th of *March* 1567, he imbraced the Reformation.

1618 3. *John Caſſimir*, born the 7th of *December* 1596.

1660 4. *John George* II. born in 1627, the 7th of *November*, he Married *Henrica Catherina*, and has one Son called *Leopald*, born the 3d. of *July* 1676.

The Line of *Bernburg*.

1568 1. *Chriſtian*, 2d. Son of *Joachim Erneſt*, was the Founder of this Line, he had for his ſhare *Benberg*, *Ballenſted*, *Hatzgerodan* and the Monaſtery *Gernrodan*, he died the 20th of *April* 1630.

1630 2. *Chriſtian* II. ſucceeded his Father in *Bernburg*.

1656 3. *Victor Amidæus*, born the 6th of *October*, 1634, he has two Sons, *Charles Frederick*, born the 13th of *July* 1668. *John George*, the 14th of *February* 1674, and *Frederick* the younger Son of *Chriſtian* II. had *Hatzgerod* aſſigned him, *William* his Son ſucceeded him, but has yet no Children.

The Line of *Plotzrow*.

1568 1. *Auguſtus* the 3d. Son of *Joachim Erneſt*, had his Seat at *Plotzkow*, and was a Prince of great worth and vertue, he died the 22th of *Auguſt* 1653, at the Age of 78 years.

1653 2. *Lebrecht*, born the 5th of *April* 1622, he died the 7th of *September* 1669, without any Iſſue.

1669. 3. *Imanuel* Brother of *Lebrecht*, born in 1631, the 26th of *October*. He was a Soldier in the Iſle of *Candy*, and returning home ſucceeded his Brother, and Married *Ann Eleonora* Counteſs of *Stolberg*, the 23d. of *March* 1670, and dying the ſame year, left her with Child.

1671 4. *Imanuel Lebrecht* born the 20th of *May*, after the Death of his Father, and is now the only off-ſpring of this Houſe.

The Line of *Serveſtan*.

1568 1. *Rodolph*, the 5th Son of *Joachim Erneſt*, had *Serveſtan*, *Lindaw*, *Coſwial*, and *Roſlau*.

1622 2. *John*, the Son of *Rodolph*.

1667 3. *Charles William*, born the 26th of *October* 1653, he is now living, and has theſe Sons, 1. *John Auguſt*, born the 20th of *July* 1677. *Charles Frederick*, born the 8th of *July*, 1678.

Albert the firſt of this Houſe, was made Marquiſs of *Brandenburg* in the year 1152. In 1180, *Bernard* added to it the Dukedom of *Saxony*, and the Electorate, in 1630, *Julius Henry*, had by Marriage the Principality of *Slackewerde* in *Bohemia*, which by him was added to *Sax-Lawemburg*. In 1650, *John* 2d, of the Line of *Serveſtan*, had given him by the Teſtament of *Anthony Gunther* Earl of *Oldenburg* the Territory of *Jevern*.

In the year 1315, they loſt the Earldom of *Aſcania*, and the City of *Aſcherlaben*, to the Biſhop of *Halberſtad* which in 1648, was with that Biſhoprick given to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. In 1322, This Houſe loſt the Electorate of *Brandenburg*. In 1418, it loſt the *Upper-Saxony* and that Electorate. In 1640, *William* Duke of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, took from them the Earldom of *Wolpe*, they aſſigned *Jevern* to the King of *Denmark*, but in 1689, it was again reſtored to them. They have a ſtrong pretence to the Succeſſion of *Sax-Lawemburg*, upon the Death of *Julius Franciſcus*, in the year 1689, without any Male-Iſſue.

2. The Earldom of *MANSFEILD* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Sala*, parting it from *Ober-Sax*; on the Weſt with the River *Wieper*, which divides it from *Brunſwick*: on the North with the Biſhoprick of *Meydeburg*, and on the South with *Anhalt* and part of *Duringen*. So called from *Manſfield*, once the chief Town of it, ſituate on the River *Wieper*, but now much decayed: the other Towns of note herein being 2. *Iſleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cauſe more convenient for the ſeats of Juſtice, firſt ſettled here by Earl *Voldradus*, *anno* 1448, and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom: By ſome affirmed to have took this name from the Goddeſs *Iſis*, who, after the death of her Husband, (as is ſaid by *Tacitus*) viſited theſe parts. Famous more certainly for the Birth of *Luther*, tranſplanted hence for the ſtudy of good Arts to *Meydeburg*, and choſen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Wirtenberg*, where he hammered out that great Work of the Reformation, as before was ſaid; born here in the year 1483, and here deceaſing in the houſe of the Earl of *Manſfield*, *anno* 1546. 3. *Wieper*, (or *Wipra*) ſo called of the River on which it ſtandeth. 4. *Quernfort*, the honourary Title of the Anceſtors of the Earls of *Manſfield*. 5. *Rottenberg*, 6. *Abſted*, 7. *Helderung*, bought of the Earls of *Holſtein*.

Some, who delineate the Pedigree of theſe Earls of *Manſfield*, fetching it out as high as from one *Heger*, one of King *Arthur*'s Knights of the *Round-Table*, born at *Manſfield* in *Nottinghamſhire*, who, ſettling himſelf in *Germany*, gave that name to his Houſe; a military original, and very ſuitable to ſuch an active and warlike Family. But thoſe that do not ſoar ſo high, derive them from the Earls of *Quernfort*, men of authority in theſe parts; made more conſiderable by *Lotharius* Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*; but moſt of all by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who conferred many goodly Lordſhips lying hereabout (once part of the Eſtate of Duke *Henry* the Lion) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof, a conſtant Follower of his, not only in his Wars againſt Duke *Henry* before named, but in thoſe alſo which he managed in the *Holy-Land*, in the courſe whereof he died at *Antioch*, *anno* 1189. His Nephew *Burchard*, by a Son of the ſame name, was the firſt of this Family that had the Title of Earl of *Manſfield*, about the year 1250; continued ever ſince unto his poſterity, (but under ſome Acknowledgment to the Electors of *Saxony*.) Of theſe the moſt eminent were 1. *Waleradus*, one of the Council of Eſtate to the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, Anno 1411, a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof. 2. *John George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3. *Peter-Erneſt*, Governour of *Luxemberg* under *Charles* the 5th. and *Philip* the 2. by them much exerciſed and employed in their Wars with *France* and their *Belgick* Rebels. 4. *Albert*, a conſtant Friend of *Luther*, and a faithful Follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived Elector; in whoſe Quarrel being outed of his Eſtate, he retired to *Meydeburg*, which he moſt gallantly defended againſt the Emperor. And 5. *Erneſtus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his Son *John*, ſo famous for the War which he maintained in moſt parts of *Germany* againſt *Ferdinand* the 2. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine and the States of *Bohemia*, with ſo great conſtancy and courage.

3. On the North of *Mansfield* and *Ober-Sax* lieth the Biſhoprick of MEYDEBURG, having on the Weſt parts *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, and on the North and the Eaſt, the Marches of *Brandenburg*: ſo called from the Epiſcopal See founded in *Magdeburg* the Chief City, by ſome called *Meydeburg* and *Meydenburg*, whence by a *Greek* name *Parthenopolis*, and *Virginopolis* by a mungrel word made of *Greek* and *Latine*. A City ſeated on the *Elve*, divided into three parts, but all ſtrongly fortified, begirt with high Walls, deep Ditches, and almoſt unconquerable Bulwarks; yet very beautiful withal, (before the laſt Deſolation of it in 1631,) of elegant Buildings, fair Streets, and magnificent Temples. It was built in the form of a Creſcent by the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, the Founder of it, who having tranſlated hither the Archiepiſcopal See, for the greater honour of the place built the Cathedral of St. *Maurice*, where his Wife lies buriep, *anno* 948, teſtified by the Inſcription to be the Daughter of *Edmund* King of *England*; a Town which hath long flouriſhed in a great deal of Glory, and taſted of as much Affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refuſing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could firſt take it. It was firſt hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, but he was in a Camiſado taken Priſoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made Captives, and 260 Horſe brought into the City. Next, it was beſieged by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxony*, who on honourable Terms was after a long Siege received into it, *Anno* 1550, when it had ſtood on its own Guard the ſpace of three years. Which long Oppoſition of one Town taught the *German* Princes what Conſtancy could do; it held up the Coals of Rebellion in *Germany*; and indeed proved to be the Fire which burned the Emperor's Trophes. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that Confederacy, by which not long after, this great Emperor was driven out of *Germany*. At laſt it yielded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whoſe Succeſſors it hath ſince enjoyed a long courſe of Felicity, till the year 1631, in which it was moſt miſerably burnt and ſacked by the Earl of *Tilly*; of whom it is obſerved, that after that Fact he never proſpered, being ſhortly after totally routed at the Battle of *Leipzick*, and wounded to the death not long after that near the River *Leck*. In the year ,1666, it was again forced by the Arms of the Duke of *Brandenburg*, to accept *Auguſtus* Dukes of *Saxony* for its Admiration. Other places of note in this Biſhoprick are, 2. *Wormſted*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary Seat or Retiring-place of the Biſhop. 3. *Grabaw*, upon the River *Struma*. 4. *Mockron* on the ſame River. 5. *Barleben*, beneath *Meydeburg*, on the *Elve*. 6. *Louburg*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Struma*, not much obſervable.

The Archiepiſcopal See being tranſlated hither from *Odderſleve* and *Vrese* (places too obſcure for ſo great a dignity) by *Otho* the firſt, and by him endowed with great Revenues and a goodly Territory round about it, the Archbiſhop hereof was alſo by his procurement made the Primate of *Germany*, acknowledged ſo by all but the Biſhop of *Saltsburg* and the three ſpiritual Electors. For the Adminiſtration of Juſtice in matters Criminal and Civil, the ſaid *Otho* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgrave*, conferring that Office firſt on *Gero* Marquiſs of *Luſatia*. Through many hands it came at laſt to *Burchard* Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*, many of which enjoyed this Honour, ſettled at laſt by the Emperor *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg* on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Eſtate. The Archbiſhops notwithſtanding continued Lords of it, and the whole Territory or Diſtrict adjoyning to it, till the Reformation of Religion; when the Revenues, ſeparated from the Juriſdiction, were given to Lay-Princes, (for the moſt part of the Houſe of *Brandenburg*) with the Title of Adminiſtrator. Finally, by the Pacification made at *Munſter*, this fair Eſtate is to be ſettled for ever on the Electors of that Houſe, to be poſſeſſed by them, and their Heirs and Succeſſors by the Title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*, the better to content them for the Conceſſion which they made to the Crown of *Sweden* of a great part of their Right and Title to the Dukedom of *Pomeren*. This may be ſuppoſed to have occaſion'd the War in 1666, mentioned above.

4. On the North-weſt of *Magdeburg*, and on both ſides alſo of the *Elve*, lieth the Dukedom of LAWENBURG, bounded on the North with *Mecklenburg*, on the Weſt with part of *Holſtein*, and on the South with the River *Elve* and part of *Lunenburg*; ſo called of *Lawenburg* the chief Town thereof, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The Town was firſt built, as ſome conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, ſirnamed the Lion, the better to aſſure his Conqueſts on that ſide of the River, by whom it was called *Leopolis* or *Leoburgum*, and *Lawenburg* for the ſame reaſons by the *Dutch* or *Germans*: on the Proſcription of which Prince, the Country being waſted and the Towns deſtroyed, *Bernhard* of *Anhalt*, deſigned his Succeſſor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the ſituation of it, cauſed it to be re-edified in ſtronger manner than before, a great part of the Materials of the Town of *Erdenburg*, being carried croſs the water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the ſaid Duke *Henry* in the courſe of that War it was re-built again by D. *Bernard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by ſome Writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein are, 2. *Erdenburg*, a well fortified piece, oppoſite to *Lawenburg*, on the hither-ſide of the *Elve*; not ſo large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lawenburg* being made greater by the leſſening of this. 3. *Raceburg*, an Epiſcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, upon his gaining of the *Sclaves* to the Chriſtian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4. *Molne*, on the farther ſide of the *Elb*, not far from *Lawenburg*, the cauſe of much Contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a Title thereunto.

The Dukedom of LAWENBURG, gave Title to a Noble Branch of the Houſe of *Saxony*, derived from *Albert* I. the 18th Duke of *Saxony*, of the Houſe of *Anhalt*, the firſt of which Family was

1. *John* ſecond Son of *Albert* the firſt.
2. *Ericus* V. who died in the year 1435, without any Iſſue.

1435 3. *Bernhard*, Brother of the ſaid *Eric*.

4. *John* Son of *Bernhard*.
5. *Magnus*, Son of *John*, diſinherited.

1574 6. *Francis* I. a younger Son of *John*, againſt whom *Magnus* made War in 1574, but being deſerted by his Soldiers, was forced to end it diſhonorably. And being taken Priſoner by his Brother *Francis*, he died in Reſtraint in the year 1603.

7. *Francis* II. entered upon the Government in the Life of his Father, as his Father had in the Life of his Grandfather.

1619 8. *Auguſtus*, ſucceeded *Francis* the ſecond, his Father, and died in the year 1656, without any ſurviving Iſſue.

1656 9. *Julius Henricus*, one of the Sons of *Francis* the 2d, and Brother of *Auguſtus* ſucceeded him; but he forſook the Proteſtant Religion, and turned *Roman Catholick*.

11. *Francis Erdman*, Son of *Julius*, was Educated in the Proteſtant Religion, and ſurvived his Father, but not long.

1666 12. *Julius Francis*, Son of *Julius Henricus*, ſucceeded his Brother *Francis*. He died in the year 1689, without any Male-Iſſue, having in the year 1681, conſented that the Elector of *Saxony* ſhould ſucceed him, if he had no Sons of his own: And accordingly that Prince has entered upon his Territories, but it is ſaid is oppoſed by the Dukes of *Brandenburg*, *Anhalt* and *Lunenburg*, which may have an ill effect, conſidering the preſent War. However here is the end of this branch of this Noble Family.

This Country, being for the moſt part under the Command of the *Sclaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the Lion, and by his care converted to the Chriſtian Faith: but he being proſcribed, and this Seigniourу extorted from him by Duke *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, his Succeſſor in the Electoral Dignity, it was by *Albert*, Son of this *Bernard*, conferred on *John* his ſecond Son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon-Lawenburg*, do derive themſelves; who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigiſmund* at the death of *Albert* the 3. the laſt of the direct Line of *Bernard*, or elſe not caring for a Title which carried with it too great Sail for ſo ſmall a Veſſel as the Eſtate of the Elector at the preſent was, have ſince contented themſelves with their ancient Patrimony.

It is now time we ſhould proceed to the Story of *Saxony*, the ancient Inhabitants of which Tract were the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*, and part of the *Cheruſci* about *Mansfield* and *Wittenburg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is, containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eyder* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, and from the River *Sala*, to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. Theſe are ſaid by ſome to be a People of *Aſia*, and there called the *Saca*, who finding that ſmall Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forſook their Country, and at laſt fixed themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; where they firſt took the names of *Sacaſons* (or *Sac-ſons*) that is to ſay, the Sons of the *Saca*. The improbability of this we have there diſputed. Omitting therefore that and the like Originations of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*, ſome Tribe of that moſt populous and potent People of the *Suevi*: but for the reaſon of the name, let every man enjoy the pleaſure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolomy*'s time they were poſſeſſed of thoſe parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eyder*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holſtein*: and were accounted in that time to be no New-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and paſſing over the *Elb*, in the time of the later *Roman* Emperors, poſſeſſed themſelves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then buſied in the Conqueſt of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine they ſtretcht themſelves from the River *Sala* on the Eaſt, to the *German* Ocean on the Weſt, and took up the now Dukedoms of *Holſtein*, *Lunenburg*, and *Brunſwick*, the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Hildeſheim*, *Halberſtadt*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, *Weſtphalen*, both *Frieſlands*, *Over-Yſſel*, with as much of *Gelderland* and *Holland* as lay on that ſide of the *Rhene*. By which account the preſent Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their poſſeſſion; the Seat and Patrimony of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the Alterations and Changes which have happened in that Eſtate; the name and Title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg*, for no other reaſon but becauſe it was the chief Seat of the Duke-Electors. But to proceed, a ſtout and valiant Nation queſtionleſs they were, the Conquerers of the Iſle of *Britain*; and the laſt People of the *Germans* which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great, by his means gained unto the Goſpel, *anno* 785. Their laſt King was called *Wittikindus*, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France*, ſince the time of *Hugh Capet*, the preſent Kings of *Denmark*, of the houſe of *Oldenburg*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, the Marquiſſes of *Montſerrat*, beſides many other noble and illuſtrious Families though of leſſer note. The right or direct Line of the Male-iſſue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the firſt Duke of *Saxony*) determining the perſon of *Otho* the third, Emperor of the *Germans*, it was by him conferred on *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenberg*, (but the preciſe time I find not:) *Henry* ſirnamed the Saint, who ſucceeded this *Otho* in the Empire, the next in the collateral Line, being pretermitted, either becauſe at that time ſettled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or becauſe there was no hope of Poſterity by him, or for ſome other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this Line till, on the Forfeiture incurred by his poſterity, in the perſon of Duke *Henry* the Lion, it was beſtowed by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, *Anno* 1180; whoſe Iſſue in the right Line failing, it was finally eſtated by the Emperor *Sigiſmund* on *Frederick* Lantgrave of *Thuringia* and Marquiſs of *Miſnia*, *Anno* 1423. In his Family it hath ſince continued, but not without a manifeſt breach in the courſe of his Succeſſion: which happened when *John-Frederick* being deprived of the Electoral Dignity and Eſtate, his Couſin Duke *Maurice* was inveſted in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious, but unfortunate, Prince (if he may juſtly have the Title of *unfortunate*, who ſuffered in ſo good a cauſe, for ſo good a Conſcience) being diſcomfitted and taken Priſoner at the Battle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die, but pardoned at the laſt, upon the interceſſion of ſome powerful Friends, upon condition that he ſhould reſign the Electoral Dignity, and all the reſt of his Eſtates, into the power of the Emperor: Which done, the Emperor gave him back again of his own accord the Caſtle of *Gotha* and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoyning; from which laſt place his Poſterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was alſo much inſiſted on, that he ſhould relinquiſh his Religion, and reconcile himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he oppoſed with ſuch Chriſtian ſtoutneſs, that in the end it was omitted. Theſe matters being thus tranſacted, the Emperor (with the general conſent of the Electors) inveſted *Maurice* Couſin-german to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Eſtates (the Seignouries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belong'd to him: which though it were a great wrong both to the Perſon and Poſterity of the Duke *John Frederick*, yet it is obſerved by ſome grave Writers to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John Frederick*, whoſe Chriſtian Patience and Magnanimity during the whole time of his Impriſonment added great reputation to the Cauſe for which he ſuffered. 2. In reſpect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in purſuing of it as the other was. And 3. in relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of ſuch weight and moment; inſomuch as it was ſaid of him after his deceaſe, *Quod Filios reliquerit ſui diſſimillimos.* It is now time we ſhould proceed to the Inveſtiture of the new Elector. And, becauſe theſe Tranſactions of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat uſed as I have collected them out of *Sleidan*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which ſate the Emperor and the Princes Electors in their Robes. On the back-ſide of the State were placed the Trumpeters; right againſt it ſtandeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horſemen: The firſt in a full Career run their Horſes up to the Pavillion: out of the ſecond iſſued *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick*, *VVolfange* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. Theſe when they had in like manner courſed their Horſes about, alighted, aſcended to the Throne, and humbly requeſted the Emperor, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorſhip. He conſulted with the Electors, made anſwer by the Biſhop of *Mentz*, that he was content, ſo Duke *Maurice* would in perſon come and deſire it. Than came forth Duke *Maurice* with the whole Troop: before him were born ten Enſigns bearing the Arms of as many Regions wherein he deſired to be Inveſted. When he came before the Throne, he kneeled down on his Knees, and humbly deſired the Emperor to beſtow on him the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John-Frederick*, late Elector. His Petition was granted. Then the Biſhop of *Mentz* read unto him the Oath by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire: which Oath when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperor dilivered unto him a Sword, which was a ſign of his perfect Inveſtiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, aroſe, gave the Emperor thanks, promiſed his Fidelity, made Obeiſance, and took his place amongſt the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24th day of *February*, *Anno* 1548. Which ſaid, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of SAXONY.

785 1. *Wittikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*, vanquiſh'd, and created the firſt Duke by *Charles* the Great.

825 2. *Bruno*, the Brother of *Wittikind*.

843 3. *Luitulphus*, Son of *Bruno*.

855 4. *Bruno* II. Son of *Luitulphus*.

876 5. *Otho*, Brother of *Bruno* the 2d.

916 6. *Henry*, ſirnamed the Fowler, Son of *Otho*, Emperor of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*.

938 7. *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperor, called *Otho* I.

974 8. *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperor, called *Otho* II.

984 9. *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperor, called *Otho* III.

998 10. *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the firſt Elector, by *Otho* the third, who was the laſt Duke of the Race of *Wittikind*.

1021 11. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* the firſt.

1063 12. *Ordulphus*, Son of *Bernard* the 2d.

1073 13. *Magnus*, Son of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodolphus* of *Schwaben* againſt *Henry* the Fourth, was taken Priſoner, and deprived.

14. *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the Fourth, he was alſo Emperor of the *Romans*.

1123 15. *Henry Guelph*, ſirnamed the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Husband of *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom he was created Duke-Elector.

1139 1142 16. *Henry* II. ſirnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud by his firſt Wife *Walſildis*, the Daughter of *Magnus*, added to this Eſtate the Countries of *Mecklenburg* and *Lawenburg*, which he had conquered from the *Sclaves*, becoming by that means ſo great, that neglecting his Duty to the Emperor *Frederick*, ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, and ſiding with the Pope againſt him, he was by him publickly Proſcribed, his neighbour Princes arm'd againſt him, and by their joint Forces outed of all his Eſtates, every one laying hold on that which lay neareſt to him, by means whereof this great Eſtate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the Title of the Duke Elector of *Saxony* was given by the ſaid Emperor to

1180 17. *Bernard* of *Anhault*, Son of *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, and Grand-child of *Elicca*, another Daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperor gave the City of *Wittenberg*, the Head ſince that time of this Electorate.

1212 18. *Albert*, Son of *Bernard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lawenberg* do derive their Pedigree.

1273 19. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert* the firſt.

1337 20. *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2d.

1356 21. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph* the firſt.

1373 22. *Wenceſlaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2d.

1389 23. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Wenceſlaus*.

1419 24. *Albert* III. Son of *Rodolph* the third, the laſt Elector of *Saxony* of the Houſe of *Anhalt*.

1423 1425 25. *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marquis of *Miſnia*, (on the failing of the Houſe of *Anhalt*, *Anno* 1422.) created Duke of *Saxony* by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, the Houſe of *Lawenberg* pretermitted for want of putting in their Claim: by the advancement of which Prince, the Title of the Duke of *Saxony* returned again to the Houſe of *Wittikind*, (the firſt King and laſt Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the ſpace of 200 years.

1428 26. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the firſt; born in 1412, *Aug.* 24. and ſirnamed the *Placid*: He died the 7th of *September*, 1464, leaving two Sons, *Erneſt* and *Albert*, the Founders of two potent Families in this Houſe.

1464 27. *Erneſt*, Son of *Frederick* the ſecond, born the 25th of *March*, 1641. A prudent Prince.

1486 28. *Frederick* III. Son of *Erneſt*, born in 1463, and ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Wirtemberg* in 1501, the Preſerver of *Luther*, and thereby the promoter of the Reformation. He died the 5th of *May*, 1525, after he had the honour to refuſe the Empire. This Prince was never Married.

1525 29. *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third, born the 29th of *June*, 1464. He was a great promoter of the Reformation, and joined in the Proteſtation againſt Popery in the year 1630, and procured the *Smalcaldick* League to defend it. He died the 13th of *Auguſt*, 1532.

1532 30. *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the firſt; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion, impriſon'd and depriv'd of his Electorſhip by *Charles* the 5th. He was born the 30th of *June*, 1503. He vanquiſhed *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick* in 1545, but was taken Priſoner by *Charles* the 5th at *Mulberg* the 24th of *April*, 1546, in 1552 he was ſet at liberty, and died in 1554.

1547 31. *Maurice*, Couſin-german to the Duke *John-Frederick* (as being the Grandſon or Nephew of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Erneſtus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the 5th, whom afterwards he drave out of *Germany*; and was ſlain in the Battel of *Siffridhuſe*, againſt Marquis *Albert* of *Brandenburg*. *Albert*, the Founder of this Line, was born the 17th of *July*, 1443, and died in the Year 1500. *George Barbatus* his Son and Succeſſor was born the 27th of *Auguſt*, 1471, and died the 17th of *April*, 1535. *Henry* the Pious, Brother of *George*, was born the 25th of *October*, 1474, and died the 20th of *December*, 1510. He was the Father of *Maurice*, who was born the 11th of *May*, 1521, and he obtained the Electorate in 1548 in prejudice of *John Frederick* and his Children. In 1551 he drove *Charles* the 5th out of *Germany* by Torch-light: The next year he procur'd the Peace of *Paſſaw*. In 1553 he was ſlain in Battel, having no Male Iſſue.

1553 32. *Auguſtus*, Brother of *Maurice*, born the 31th of *July*, 1526. He was a Prince of the greateſt Authority of any in his time, and thought very Rich. He died the 11th of *February*, 1586.

1586 33. *Chriſtian*, Son of *Auguſtus*, born the 3d of *November*, 1560; he died in 1591.

1591 34. *Chriſtian* II. Son of *Chriſtian* the firſt; born the 23th of *September*, 1583. In the year 1610 he obtained the Inveſtiture of the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleves* and *Mentz*; and died the next year after without any Iſſue.

1611 35. *John George*, Brother of *Chriſtian* the ſecond, who firſt ſided with the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond againſt the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* againſt the Emperor: Born the 5th of *March*, 1585. This Prince by his Zeal for the Reformation preſerved it from Ruin.

1656 26. *John George* II. eldeſt Son of the laſt Elector; born the 31th of *May*, 1613; ſucceeded his Father: He was a very Juſt Prince, and died the 22th of *Auguſt*, 1680.

1680 37. *John-George* III. ſucceeded his Father the 22d of *Auguſt*; he was born the 20th of *June*, 1647. This Prince has ſeveral Children: 1. *John-George*, born the 17th of *October*, 1688. 2. *Frederick-Auguſtus*, born the 12th of *May*, 1670.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greateſt of any one Prince of *Germany* (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting in the leaſt to 400000 *l.* *per Annum*; though in multitude of Vaſſals and greatneſs of Territory he come ſhort of ſome them. And to make up this (ſome or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariſeth to him out of Silver Mines is no leſs than 130000 *l.* yearly; the Impoſt laid on Beer in *Leipſick* only, a City but of two Pariſh-Churches, (by which conjecture at the reſt) being Farmed at 20000 *l.* *per Annum*. Then hath he the Tenth of all ſort of Increaſe, as of Corn, Wine, *&c.* The Salt-houſes at *Hall* and ſome other places, very fair Lands belonging unto his Domain; and beſides this, a ſtanding and perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject towards the maintenance of the War againſt the *Turks*; granted at firſt in times of Danger and Hoſtility, but gathered ever ſince in the times of Peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared againſt him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* ſo he keeps his State, well ſerv'd, and better attended than any other of the Electors; there being at one time in the Court of *Chriſtian*, the Father of the preſent Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations (beſides the Nobility of his own) all Penſioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhault* and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the *Saxons*, being two of the number.

The Continuance of the *Erneſt* Line ſtands thus, and is called *Saxony Wimar*.

1. *John-Frederick*, who was ſo unjuſtly diſpoſſeſſed, had

2. *John-William*, born in 1530; he died in 1573.

1573 3. *Frederick-William*, born *April* 25. 1562.

1602 4. *John-Philip*, born in 1597.

1636 5. *Frederick-William*, born in 1603, *Febr.* 12.

1669 6. *William* III. born in 1657.

1673 7. *John* II. Uncle of *William* the ſecond, Son of *John-William*; was born in 1570, Founded the Line of *Wimar*, he died in 1605. *John-Erneſt* his Son, born the 21th of *February*, 1594, died in 1526 without Iſſue: The Line was continued by *William* his 5th Son, born in 1598, whoſe Son *John-Erneſt* was born in 1627. He ſucceeded *William* III. and continued the Line of *Erneſt*.

1683 8. *William-Erneſt*, Son of *John-Erneſt* the preſent Duke of *Saxony Wimar*, was born the 19th of *October*, 1661; his Brother, *John-Erneſt*.

The Dukes of *SAXONY GOTHAM*.

1660 1. This Family was Founded by *Erneſt* III. born in 1601. The Principality of *Gotham* was given him in 1660; in 1672 he got the greateſt part of the Earldom of *Henneberg*, and by his Mother he had *Altenburg* and *Coburg*. He was the 9th Son of *John* II. Duke of *Wimar*, and Brother of *William* II. continuer of the *Wimar* Line. This Prince died the 26th of *March*, 1675.

1675 2. Leaving *Frederick*, now Duke of *Sax-Gotham*, born the 15th of *July*, 1656; whoſe eldeſt Son *Frederick* was born the 28 of *July*, 1676. His 2d Son *John-William* the 4th of *October*, 1677. He died in 1690, his Children young.

The Fortune of this Family is thus repreſented. *Frederick* the Warlike, Marquis of *Miſnia* and Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, obtained of the Emperor *Sigiſmund* the Electoral Dignity with the Palatinate of *Saxony*, and the Burgravate of *Magdeburg* in 1425, and ſome think he purchaſed the Burgravate of *Miſnia* too in 1440. *William*, Brother of *Frederick* II. and Son of *Frederick* I. became Lantgrave of *Thuringe*, and he had the Dukedom of *Luxenburg* with his Wife; which in the year 1462, he having no Iſſue, he ſold to *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*. *Erneſt* I. added to this Dukedom *Paven*, *Voigtsberg*, *Olſnitz* and *Adorf*, and he purchaſed *Sagan* in *Sileſia*. *Albert* the Magnanimous of this Houſe obtained *Weſtfriſia* of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. *Auguſtus* the Elector added to his Family *Naumburg* and *Mersburg*. In the year 1583 this Houſe got the Earldom of *Henneberg*, they had before *Coburg*, a part of it by Marriage. In the year 1635 *John-George* obtained the Upper and Lower *Luſatia*, which before belonged to the Marqueſſes of *Miſnia*. In 1648, *Auguſtus* gained the Adminiſtration of the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdeburg*. In 1659, *John-George* I. obtained the Earldom of *Barby* upon the *Elve*, the Earls that poſſeſſed it being extinct; it lies between *Anhault* to the South, and *Magdeburg* to the North. In the time of the Seventy ſecond *German* War, they gained the Earldom of *Mansfield* by right of Sequeſtration.

On the other ſide, in the year 1549, *Mauritius* the Elector parted with the Principality of *Sagan* to *Ferdinand* the Firſt. In 1680, the Biſhoprick of *Magdeburg* was made a Dukedom, and aſſigned for ever to the Duke of *Brandenburg*. This Family has alſo Pretences upon the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleves*, *Mentz*, and *Sax-Lawenburg*: The Poſſeſſion of the latter they ſeized in the Year 1689, upon the Death of the Duke without Iſſue-Male.

The Arms of *Saxony* are Bar-wiſe of ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flower'd *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, when he confirmed *Bernard* of *Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Bernard* deſiring of the Emperor to have ſome difference added to the Ducal Coat, (being before only Barry, *Sable* and *Or*) to diſtinguiſh him and his Succeſſors from thoſe of the former Houſe; the Emperor took a Chaplet of Rue, which he had then upon his Head, and threw it croſs his Buckler or Eſcutcheon of Arms, which was preſently painted on the ſame.

19. *BRUNSWICK*, and 20. *LUNENBURG*.

THE Dukedoms of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxony*, extracted both from the ſame Root, and many times united in the Perſon of the ſame one Prince, ſhall be join'd together in the Story, though ſevered in the Chorograhpy or Deſcription of them; bounded on the Eaſt with *Magdeburg* and *Mansfield* in the Upper *Saxony*, on the Weſt with *Weſtphalia*, on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Haſſia*. The Air in all parts hereof is very cold and comfortleſs but ſound and healthful: the Soil towards the old Marches of *Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Haſſia* Mountainous and Woody, in other parts very plentiful of Corn, and well provided alſo of ſuch other Commodities as uſually do grow in thoſe colder Climates.

But to take the Chorography of them ſeverally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the Eaſt with the Earldom of *Mansfield*, on the Weſt with *Weſtphalen*, on the North with *Lunenburg*, on the South with *Haſſia*. So called from *Brunſwick*, the chief City and the Head of this Dukedom.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Goſlar*, upon the River *Goſe*, whence it had the name; of a poor Village made a City by *Henry* the firſt, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who found here two Churches and a ſtately Palace; now one of the Imperial Cities. 2. *Helmſtat*, in the middle way between *Brunſwick* and *Magdeburg*; firſt fortified by *Charles* Son of *Charles* the Great, for a Bridle to the neighbouring *Sclaves*; and being after given to the Abbots of *Werden*, was by them ſold to *William* the Duke of *Brunſwick*. 3. *Quedlenburg*, built alſo by *Henry* the firſt, much increaſed ſince by the Neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the Abbeſs whereof had formerly the Privileges of a Prince of the Empire. 4. *Hildeſheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an Epiſcopal See by *Charles* the Great at the firſt Converſion of the *Saxons*. The Biſhop of this City is the only Roman Catholick Biſhop in all *Saxony*. 5. *Grubenhagen*, which gave Title to a younger branch of the Houſe of *Brunſwick*; a Principality, and a Member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very ſtrongly Fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunſwick*, upon the River *Onacra*, which paſſeth through it, paſſed over by many handſom Bridges; the Metropolis of the ancient *Saxony*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom, though of it ſelf Imperial, and one of the *Hanſe*. The City is of a quadrangular Form, ſeated in the midſt of a Plain, very fruitful of Corn, in compaſs about two *Dutch*, or eight *Engliſh* Miles, ſomewhat larger than *Nurenberg*, and leſs than *Erfort*; containing in that compaſs not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples cover'd with Lead, a third with Braſs, all the reſt with Tile. It is rich, populous and ſtrongly Fortified on ſome ſides with a double, on others with a treble Wall; within which Walls are five Cities, diſtinguiſh'd by Privileges, but united by Laws. The whole firſt built by *Bruno*, Son to *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxony*, and Uncle to the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, about the year 861; from whence it had the name of *Brunſwick*, or *Brunonis Vicus*; by the more elegant *Latiniſts*, *Brunopolis*. This City in the year 1671 was ſurprized by the Duke of *Brunſwick*, who built a ſtately and a ſtrong Citadel to aſſure his Poſſeſſion, but the City is obſerved ſince that time to waſt and decay. 8. *Hamelen*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Weſer* or *Viſurgis*, encompaſſed with a deep Moat, (occaſioned by a ſtream cut out of the River) round about which are divers Fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called alſo *Hamelen*, unto which the Py'd Piper (as they call him) led the Children of *Halberſtadt*, where they all ſunk, and were never more ſeen. But of this Story more hereafter, when we come to *Tranſylvania*. 9. *Wolfehaiten*, or *Wolfenbuttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For tho' *Brunſwick* giveth him his Title, yet will it not yield him any Obedience, but reputeth it ſelf amongſt the *Hanſe*-Towns; for which cauſe there have been great Wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Halberſtadt*, a Biſhop's See, the late Biſhop (or Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick) being *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, that noble young Soldier, who had vowed his Life and Fortune to the Service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Couſin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Biſhoprick of great Revenue, and a very large Territory; ſince the alteration of Religion, given with the Title of Adminiſtrator to the Sons of *Brunſwick*; but now, by the Concluſions at *Munſter*, aſſigned over to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Halberſtadt*, the Family of *Brunſwick* being to be recompenſed with an alternate Succeſſion in the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*, and ſome other additionals. 11. *Hetfield*, the Seat ſometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxony*, but not elſe obſervable. 12. *Amelungsbame*, another Town of the ſaid *Palatines*, by one of which, called *Sigefridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abbey: the principal Towns (in thoſe days) of this *Palatinate*, which, bordering on that part of the *Thuringians* which is now call'd *Haſſia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Lantgraves of that Country, on the Proſcription of Duke *Henry*, ſirnamed the Lion; but on the failure of his Line, recovered for the moſt part by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the Eaſt the Dioceſs of *Magdeburg*, on the Weſt the Dioceſs of *Bremen*, and part of *Weſtphalia*, on the North the *Elbe*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Brunſwick*. So called from *Lunenburg* the chief City, once the Seat of the Dukes.

Places of moſt Obſervation in it are, 1. *Lunenburg* it ſelf, ſituate on the River *Elmenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanſe*; ſo called from the Moon here worſhipped in the times of Idolatry. Of a round form it is, and ſeated in a pleaſant Valley, but with Mountains near it: on one of which, called *Calberg*, is a very ſtrong Caſtle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be maſters of their Liberties. The Walls about it are of Earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep: the Buildings generally fair (for the moſt part of Brick) the chief whereof is the Common-Council-Houſe; the Streets broad and long, with two ſpacious Market-places, but of no very pleaſing ſmell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, and half a mile breadth, containing ſix Pariſh-Churches. But the thing moſt conſiderable in it is the Fountain of Salt (the greateſt Riches of this City) and the Houſe in which the Salt is boiled, containing 52 Rooms, and in each Room 8 Leaden Pans, in which are boiled daily 8 Tuns of Salt, every Tun being ſold for 8 *Flemiſh* Shillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; ſome part of the Profits of it belonging to the Duke, ſome to the City, the reſt to the Adventurers who employ their Stocks on it. 2. *Cell*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunenburg*. 3. *Gethern*, of no great bigneſs or eſtimation, but for a ſtrong Caſtle of the Dukes. 4. *Oldendorp*, ſituate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Eſca*, memorable for the great Battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 1633, betwixt the Imperialiſts and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, beſides ſuch as were found dead in the Fields and High-ways, all covered over with dead Bodies, took 1500 of them Priſoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of Ordnance, good ſtore of Ammunition, and three Mules laden with Silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this Victory drawing in *Hamelen* and other places of importance which ſtood out before. 5. *Verden*, an Epiſcopal See, but made a Lay-ſee, as moſt other Biſhopricks amongſt the *Lutherans*; the Profits thereof being received commonly by a Son of *Denmark* with the Title of *Adminiſtrator*, and laſtly, by the Treaty of *Munſter* appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*, the King's whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Verden*. 6. *Rodenburg*, the chief Seat of the Biſhops of *Verden*.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe Dukedoms were the *Dugublini* of *Tacitus*, with ſome parts of the *Chauci* and *Cheruſci*: theſe laſt of moſt fame for the Blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany* after *Druſus* for *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who, behaving himſelf with great Inſolency towards the Natives, was ſet upon by theſe *Cheruſci* and their Confederates, under the Conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongſt them, himſelf ſlain, and his whole Army, conſiſting of three Legions, miſerably cut off and deſpightfully uſed: which loſs, and the ſhame thereof, ſo diſtracted the Emperor, (not formerly accuſtomed to the like Misfortunes) that he was many times obſerv'd to tear his Beard, knock his Head againſt the Poſts and cry out in the bitterneſs of his Paſſion, *Redde mihi Legiones, Quintili Vare*. Having long time after this maintained their Liberty (for the *Romans* kept themſelves from that time forwards on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*) they were at laſt ſubdued by the *Saxons*; continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the three *Otho's*, Emperors of the *Romans* and Dukes of *Saxony*; who, looking on the Empire as a ſtate of Inheritance, diminiſhed both the Grandure and Revenue of the ancient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or Endowment of many Biſhopricks, and partly by the erection of many petty Seigniouries to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongſt which, that of *Lunenburg* was none of the leaſt, continuing as a State diſtinct, till ſuch time as *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, was by the Emperor *Otho* the third made Duke of *Saxony*, and created the firſt Duke-Elector, whereby again it was united to the reſt of that Dukedom, the greateſt part whereof he held in his actual Poſſeſſion, together with a Superiority or Juriſdiction over all the reſidue, (the great Biſhopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is ſaid: and it continued thus united till the Proſcription of *Henry*, ſirnamed the Lion, ſpoken of before; whoſe Reconciliation being made by means of *Henry* the ſecond of *England*, whoſe Daughter *Maud* he had formerly Married, the Emperor *Barbaroſſa* reſtored to him again the Cities of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, with their ſeveral Territories, of which his two Sons, *Henry* and *William*, were firſt created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunſwick*, and the other of *Lunenburg*, by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond. Which Honours and Eſtates do ſtill remain unto their Poſterities. Before I come to the Succeſſions of theſe Princes, I ſhall crave leave to ſpeak of the Original of the *Guelphian* Family, Dukes at the ſame time of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, of which they are at this time the ſole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus*, (whence it had the name) the Son of *Iſenberdus*, Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*; whoſe Wife, called *Jermintrudis*, having accuſed a poor Woman of Adultery, and cauſed her to be grievouſly puniſhed for having 12 Children at a Birth, was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them Sons. Her Husband being abſent at the time of her Delivery, ſhe commanded the Nurſe to kill 11 of them; fearing, it ſeems, the like ſhame and puniſhment as by her inſtigation was inflicted on the other Woman. The Nurſe going to perform this ungodly command was met by the old Earl then returning homewards; who ask'd her what ſhe had in her Apron. She made anſwer, Whelps. He deſired to ſee them: ſhe denied him. Angry at this refuſal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own Sons, pretty ſweet Babes, and of moſt promiſing Countenances. Examining the matter, he found out the truth, and enjoining the old Trot to be ſecret in it, he put the Children out to Nurſe. Six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feaſt moſt of his own and his Ladies Kindred, and attiring the young Boys all alike, preſented them unto their Mother; who ſuſpecting, by the number of them, what the matter was, confeſſed her Offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her Children: whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelps*, alluding to the Whelps or Puppies which the Nurſe told him ſhe had in her Apron. From the eldeſt of theſe *Guelphs* or *Guelps* ſucceeded that *Henry-Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff*, whom *Conrade* the ſecond made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whoſe Poſterity enjoy'd that Dukedom: encreaſed at laſt by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxony*, in the Perſon of Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the Proud, Father of *Henry* called the Lion, the Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the firſt Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, whoſe Succeſſion followeth in this Order.

The Dukes of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*.

1137 } 1179 } 1. *Henry*, ſirnamed the Lion, the laſt Duke of *Saxony*, and the firſt of this Title; who died in the year 1195.

	Brunſwick.		*Lunenburg*, or *Zell.*
1195	2. *Henry* firſt Earl, after Duke of *Brunſwick.*	1195	2. *William*, firſt Earl after Duke of *Lunenburg*, in 1235.
1213	3. *Otho*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the Death of *Henry*, Duke of *Brunſwick* alſo, who in the Year 1227 recovered the City of *Brunſwick* out of the hands of *Frederick* ſecond, Emperor, by force of Arms; yet in the year 1239 he obtained *Frederick*'s Favour, and the regranting his Lands with the Title of a Dukedom, by which Grant this Dukedom was made ſubject to the Empire. He married *Agnes*, Daughter of *Henry* his Predeceſſor.		
1254	4. *Albert*, Son of *Otho.*	1252	4. *John*, Son of *Otho.* He was the firſt Duke of *Lunenburg* ſeparately; he died in the year 1276 or 77.
1279	5. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert.*	1261	5. *Otho* II. Son of *John.*
1318	6. *Otho* II. Son of *Albert* the Second.	1330	6. *Otho* III. Son of *Otho* the 2d.
			7. *William* III. died 1368.

1334 7. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other Houſe, enjoyed both Eſtates.

1368 8. *Magnus* II. Son of *Magnus* the firſt.

1373 9. *Henry*, Son of *Magnus* the ſecond. This Prince in the year 1395 ſubdued the *Lunenburgers*; in 1404 he made an Expedition againſt *Otho* of *Schaumburg*, and he died in the Year 1416; his Eſtate was divided amongſt his Children. *William* his eldeſt Son was Duke of *Brunſwick-Wolfembuttel*, and was ſucceeded by *William* his eldeſt Son in that Honour.

Wolfembuttel.

1416 11. *William* Son of *Henry*. This *William* was called the victorious upon the account of 7 victories he obtained, *William* his eldeſt Son ſucceeded him in *Wolfembuttel*. *Frederick* the 2d. Son, had *Callenburg* for his ſhare, he died in the year 1499, in Cuſtody.

1482 12. *VVilliam* II. Son of *VVilliam*. *VVilliam* the 2d. was a peaceable Prince, and in the year 1503, he divided his Eſtate amongſt his Children, and died. *Henry* ſucceeded in *VVolfembuttel*, and *Erick* his 2. Son in *Callenburg*, but he died without Iſſue in 1584.

1503 13. *Henry* the 2. Son of *VVilliam* the 2. He was an unquiet Prince, and very vexatious to his Subjects, and was at laſt ſlain in *Eaſt-Frieſland* in the year 1514.

1514 14. *Henry* 3. Son of *Henry* the 2. He was a great Enemy to the Reformation; in the year 1543, was by the Leaguers of *Smalcald*, deprived of all his Eſtates, and taken Priſoner by the Elector of *Saxony*, and kept Priſoner till 1547.

1568 15. *Julius*, Son of *Henry* the 3. who reformed the Religion: he was born in 1528. He founded the Univerſity of *Helmſtad* in 1576.

1589 16. *Henry* 4. Son of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, Siſter to *Anne* Queen of *England*. He was born the 15th of *October*, 1564.

1613 17. *Frederick-Vlrick*, Son of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark* and of *Henry-Julius*, born the 5th of *April*, 1591. In 1616, he Forced the City of *Brunſwick*, to do him Homage, he died without any Iſſue.

1636 1634 18. *Auguſtus*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenberg*, ſucceeded, on the death of *Frederick Vlrick*, and the faileur of the Houſe of *Brunſwick* in him, in this Dukedom. He was born in the year 1579.

1666 19. *Rodolphus Auguſtus*, born the 16th of *May*, 1627, in the year 1671, he ſubdued the Inhabitants of *Brunſwick*. He has only 3 Daughters, ſo *Antho Vlrick*, his brother, is to ſucceed, whoſe Son is *Auguſtus William*, born the 8th of *March*, 1662.

Lunenburg.

1416 11. *Bernard*, Brother of *Magnus* the ſecond.

1434 12. *Otho*, the Son of *Bernard*.

1445 13. *Frederick*, brother of *Otho*.

1478 14. *Otho*, Grandſon of *Frederick*, by *Otho* his ſecond Son.

1514 15. *Henry* 3. Son of *Otho* the 3. This Prince ſucceeded in the Life of his Father, and was under the Teutelage of his Grandfather and Mother after many Wars, he died at *Paris* in the year 1532. He had a Son, whoſe name was *Otho*, who ſucceeded him.

1532 16. *Otho* 4th Son of *Henry* the 3.

17. *Erneſt*, the Brother of *Otho*, ſucceeded in his Brother's Lifetime, ſurrendring his Eſtate for an Annual Penſion.

18. *Erneſt* Son of *Henry*, was the 1ſt that admitted the Reformation in this Family.

1546 19. *Henry* 4. Son of *Erneſt*, Reſigned *Lunenburg* to *William* his younger Brother, who died in the year 1592.

1592 20. *Erneſt* 2. Son of *Henry* the 4. He lived ſingle, and died in the year 1611.

1611 21. *Auguſtus*, brother of *Erneſt*, born the 19th of *November* 1568, ſucceeded him becauſe he had no Inheritable Iſſue.

1636 22. *George* Son of *William*, born in 1582. He got the Biſhoprick of *Hildiſheim* in 1633.

1641 23. *Chriſtian Lewis*, Son of *George*, born 1622, the 25th of *February*.

1665 24. *George William*, brother of *Chriſtian*, born in 1624, the 16th of *February*, he has Married *Sophia Dorothea* his only Daughter in 1682 to *George Lewis*, his Brother *Erneſt's* Son, who is to be his Succeſſor. In the year 1683, the 30th of *October*, they had *George Auguſtus*, and in 1685, *William Erneſt*.

The Arms of theſe Dukedoms were firſt the ſame, that is to ſay, *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reaſon of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandy*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, without any addition. But thoſe of *Lunenburg* have added three Coats more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2. *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion of the *firſt*, Armed and Crowned *Or*; 2. *Azure*, a Lion *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*; and 4 *Gules*, within a Border Componie *Or* and *Azure*, a Lion of the *ſecond*, Armed of the *third*.

In the year 1235, when *Otho* the Grandſon of *Henry* the Lion, after the Death of his Anceſtors, obtained theſe Dukedoms of *Frederick* the Emperor, this Family had then beſides the ſaid Dukedoms, the Earldoms of *Nordheim*, *Lawenrod*, and *Lutterberg* almoſt all *Hereinia* or the *Harz*, and *Gottinghen*. In 1246, they got the City of *Munden*. In 1255, *Albert* M. obtained *Aſſeburg* and *Wolfembuttel*. In 1259, the City of *Hamell*, which before belonged to the Abby of *Fuld*, gave up it ſelf to him. In 1305 *Grabenhage*, in 1311 *Gittel* were added. In 1376, *Danneberg* was Conquered. In 1320, the Earldom of *Luchou*, in 1337 the Town of *Vallerſleben*, in 1347 the *Bailiwick* of *Bodenteich*, in 1350 the Town of *Wittingen* were purchaſed. In 1380 *Hardyſen*, in 1388 *Klotze* and *Snackenburg* on the *Elbe*, in 1433 the Biſhop of *Hideſheim* yielded them *Burgdorff*. In 1435 *William* the Elder, united to his Eſtate the Earldom of *Hallermond*. In 1445, *Otho* by Marriage, had the Earldom of *Eberſtein*, and the Territory of *Hamburg*. In 1446, *William* the Victorious, purchaſed *Wunſtorp*, in 1468, *Otho* obtained *Hitzgar*, and *Hitzacker*, in 1490 *William* bought *Helmſtad*, in 1519 they conquered *Daſſel*, in 1571 they had by a vacancy *Radolffshauſen*, and in 1582 the Earldom *Hoyen*, and in 1585 that of *Diepholt*, in 1592 *Gumbſe*, in 1593 *Hoenſtein*, an Earldom. In 1599 the Earldom of *Blankenburg*, in 1636, *George* took poſſeſſion of the Biſhoprick and City of *Hildiſheim*, in 1648, they got the Monaſtery of *Walkenreid*, and an Alternate Succeſſion in the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrugg*. And in 1671, they regained the Dominion of the City of *Brunſwick*. In 1678, by the Treaty of *Nimmegen*, they obtained from the *Swedes*, *Tedinghauſen* and *Doweren*, 2. *Bailywicks*.

The Loſſes of this Houſe are theſe. In 1331, *Otho* the 7th Mortgaged to *Adolph* Biſhop of *Mentz*, *Eisfeld* and *Duderſtad*, in 1648, they were forced to part with the Biſhoprick of *Hildiſheim* and the Territories of *Clettenberg* and *Lohr*, which belonged to *Hohnſtein*, were yielded to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*. And in the year 1689, upon the Death of the former Duke, they ſeized upon the Dutchy of *Sax-Lawenburg*, under the pretence of a moſt juſt pretention, but this is all claimed by the Duke of *Saxony*, and the determining of the Right is reſpited to the end of the preſent War.

20. *HASSIA.*

HASSIA is bounded on the North with *Brunſwick*, on the South with *Veteravia* or the ſtate of *Weteraw*, on the Eaſt with *Thuringia*, and on the Weſt with *Weſtphalia*. *Baudrand* bounds it on the North with *Weſtphalia*, on the Weſt with *Weſterwaldt* and *Weteraw*, on the South with *Franconia*, and on the Eaſt with *Thuringe* and *Brunſwick*. So called from the *Heſſi*, who, having vanquiſhed the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Country, poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here by *Boniface*, or *Winefride*, an *Engliſh-Saxon*, (afterwards Archbiſhop of *Mentz*) *Anno* 730, or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old times there were golden Prelates and wooden Chalices, but in his time wooden Prelates and golden Chalices.* Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, *viz. That once the Chriſtians had blind Churches, and lightſome hearts; but now they have lightſome Churches, and blind hearts.*

The Country is very fruitful of Corn, and affordeth good Paſturage for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great Droves and Herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags and other Deer for the pleaſures of Hunting, harboured in the Woods hereof, with which, in many parts of it, it is very much ſhaded. It breedeth alſo on the Downs good ſtore of ſheep, enriched with the fineſt Fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple-Commodity of this Country: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Braſs, Lead, and other Metals, which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Alendorff*, on the *Weſer* (or *Viſurgis*) of much eſteem for the Springs or Fountains of Salt, which are thereabouts. 2. *Fritzlar*, upon the *Eder*, well walled, and ſituate in a fruitful and pleaſant Soil, belonging to the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Mentz*, but, in regard of the convenient ſituation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and ſometimes forcibly poſſeſſed, both by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia* and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3. *Fulda*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the Monaſtery there founded by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by the name of *Saint Saviours*, the Abbot of which is a Prince of the Empire, Chancellor of the Empreſs, and Lord of a goodly Territory in this Country, called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* alſo, ſo called from the *French*, who encamped there in their Wars againſt the *Saxons*; firſt founded by *Theodorick* the *French* King, *Anno* 520, but much enlarged by *Charles* the Great about the year 804. 5. *Eſchewege*, on the brow of an Hill, near the River *Wert*; of great trading for Woad, of which the Fields adjoyning yield a rich increaſe. Being deſtroyed by the *Hungarians*, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperor *Henry* the 2. and having ſuffered much miſery in the long War between *Adolph* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, it fell at laſt into the poſſeſſion of the Lantgrave, *Anno* 1387. 6. *Melſingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7. *Darmſtadt*, lately, if not at the preſent, the Seat and Inheritance of Count *Ludowick*, of the younger Houſe of the Lantgraves, taken priſoner by Count *Mansfield*, *Anno* 1622, and his whole Country expoſed unto ſpoil and rapine, becauſe (beſides many other ill offices) he was the chief perſwader of the Princes of the *Union* to disband their Forces, provided for defence of themſelves and the *Palatinate*, and to reconcile themſelves to the Emperor. By the Treaty of *Munſter*, they were freed from all ſubjection of the Lantgrave, and declared independent Lords by a ſubſequent Agreement made in the year 1668, the Biſhop of *Paderborne*, upon the failure of the Male Line of *Waldeck*, is to ſucceed in the County and Caſtle of *Pyrmont*, paying 20000 Imperials to the Daughters of the laſt poſſeſſed Prince, who are to enjoy it till this Money is pay'd. 8. *Narpurg*; the ſeat of the ſecond Houſe of the Lantgraves, deſcending from that *Philip* who was Lantgrave in the time of *Charles* the Fifth, whom he ſo valiantly withſtood; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Lon*, amongſt Viny Downs and ſhady Mountains; honoured with an Univerſity founded here by *Lewis* Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1426, and beautified with a magnificent Caſtle (the ordinary dwelling of thoſe Princes) ſituate on an high Hill ſomewhat out of the Town, which gives it a very gallant Proſpect over the Town and Country. The preſent Count of *Waldeck* and *Pyrmont*, is *Chriſtian Lewis*, born in the year 1635, and his eldeſt Son *Frederick*, born in 1663, he had a ſecond Son call'd *Frederick Lewis*, born in 1672. 9. *Geiſen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*, and a ſmall Univerſity alſo. 10. *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging alſo to the Houſe of *Caſſels*. 11. *Caſſels*, the chief Town and ordinary Reſidence of the Lantgraves of the elder Houſe, who are hence ſometimes called the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*: commodiouſly ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, and well fortified with ſtrong earthen Walls and deep Ditches; but the houſes in it of no great beauty, being compoſed for the moſt part of Wood, Thatch and Clay. 12. *Weſlax* or *Wetzlar*, an Imperial and Free City, upon the *Lohne* alſo, 7 miles from *Francfort* to the North, to this City the Imperial Chamber was removed from *Spire*, in the year 1689, by the Diet of *Germany*, the *French* having demoliſhed and deſtroyed all the building in *Spire* before this Decree paſſed.

Within the Limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not ſubject to the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, though included within the Bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Weſtern parts thereof, where it meets with *Weſtphalia*: in figure very near a ſquare, each ſide of which is of the length of ſix ordinary *Dutch*, or twenty four *Engliſh* miles. The Soil is much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Haſſia*, ſave that it hath ſome veins of Quick-ſilver and inexhauſtible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; theſe laſt in great plenty about *Wildung* and the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſenberg*, two of the beſt Towns and places of it. Others of chief note are, 3. *Waldeck* it ſelf, on the River *Eder*, the firſt Seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Caſtle, from whence the whole Country takes its name. 4. *Mangerickhuſe*, in a fair Caſtle whereof live the preſent Earls. 5. *Witterberg*, in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twiſche* and *Abra*. 6. *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus* for its Golden Mines, yielding great profit to theſe Earls. The Pedigree of which Earls is fetched from one *Wittikind* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charles* the Great made advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, being an Office in thoſe times of great Juriſdiction. By *Wittikind* the ſecond, one of his Succeſſors: this Office was ſurrendred into the Hands of the Chapter, for the ſum of 300 marks in Silver; and to cut off all farther Claims, *Henry*, the Nephew of this *Wittikind* by his Son *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the firſt Earl, whoſe Nephew *Henry*, ſirnamed *Ferreus*, ſubdued *Corbach*, *Anno* 1366, and added it to his Eſtate. By a third *Henry* Grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or Man of Iron; this Earldom, formerly held in Fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was firſt under the Patronage and Protection of the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, *Anno* 1428, as it continueth to this day. Since reſtored, the Earls hereof content with their own Eſtates, and more addicted to the Book than unto the Sword, have acted little in the Wars to improve their Fortunes. This City was taken by the Imperialiſts, in the year 1647, but the Caſtle holding out, it was Plundered and deſerted again.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the reſt of *Haſſia*, and alſo of the Country of *Naſſau* in *Veteravia* near adjoyning, were the *Catti* or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Ancients. It was firſt conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* Forces) by the *Heſſi*, and both ſubdued not long after by the *Thuringians*: ſubject unto the Lantgraves of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry* the laſt of the Male-iſſue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the diviſion of whoſe Eſtate, the Weſtern moiety of *Duringen* fell to the ſhare of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitors who leaving the Title of Lantgrave of *Duringen* to the Marquiſs of *Miſnia*, took to himſelf the Title of the Lantgrave of *Heſſen*, in memory of the *Heſſi* ſpoken of before. Of his Succeſſors the moſt puiſſant was that *Philip* who in the time of *Charles* the fifth much ſwayed the Affairs of *Germany*, *Anno* 1520. he diſcomfited King *Ferdinand*, and reſtored *Vlric* to the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, *Anno* 1530, he united all theProteſtant Princes and Cities of *Germany* in common League at *Smalcald*, for the defence of the Proteſtant Religion, *Anno* 1545, he undertook the Cauſe of *Goſlaria* againſt the Duke of *Brunſwick*, whom in a ſet Battle he took priſoner, together with his Son, and poſſeſſed his Country. *Anno* 1548, he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an offenſive and defenſive League againſt *Charles* the fifth. But that War ſucceeded not proſperouſly; for the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual Confederate, being taken priſoner, he ſubmitted himſelf to the Emperor at *Kala*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*; his Sons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, and *Wolfgang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their Bonds for his return. The Condition of his Pardon were firſt, that he ſhould diſmantle all his Towns, except *Caſſels*. 2. That he ſhould yield up unto the Emperor all his Munition. 3. That he ſhould pay unto the Emperor 150000 Crowns the ſame night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to Supper, his Sons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* accompanying him. After Supper he was contrary to the Laws of Hoſpitality and the Emperors exact Promiſe, detained Priſoner. The fallacy ſtood thus: In the Emperors Compact with the three Princes the words were, that the Lantgrave ſhould be kept, *Nicht in einig geſengknes*, that is, *not in any Priſon*; which the Emperors Secretary, by a ſmall daſh of his Pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig geſengknes*, that is, *not in everlaſting priſon*. Well in priſon he ſtaid five years, which being expired, he was again ſet at large by Duke *Maurice* the overthrower and reſtorer of the *German* Liberty. The Reſidue of theſe Lantgraves in their ſeveral times occur in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lantgraves of *HASSIA*.

1263 1. *Henry* of *Brabant*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marquiſs of *Miſnia*, divided the Eſtate, and took unto himſelf the Title of Lantgrave of *Heſſen*.

1308 2. *Otho* and *John*, Sons of *Henry*.

1323 3. *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, Sons of *Otho*.

1376 4. *Herman*, the Son of *Lewis*.

1414 5. *Lewis* II. Son of *Herman*, ſirnamed the Mild.

1458 6. *Lewis* III. Son of *Lewis* the Mild.

1471 7. *William*, the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* the third, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by

8. *William* the II. his youngeſt Brother.

1509 9. *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave ſpoken of before Son of *William* the ſecond, was born in the year 1504, at five years of Age, he became Landgrave, in 1518 he was declared of full Age, in 1527 he imbraced the Reformation, in 1531 he founded the Univerſity of *Marpurg*, in 1547 he was taken Priſoner by *Charles* the 5th.

Heſſe Caſſel.

1657 10. *William* III. eldeſt Son of *Philip*, born the 24th of *June* 1533, ſucceeded in one moiety of the Eſtate, and reſided at *Caſſels*, the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren, *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmſtadt*, Father of *Ludowick* of *Darmſtadt* before mentioned. *William* III. was a Learned Prince, and a great lover of Aſtronomy, he ſought all the ways that were poſſible to gain his Fathers Liberty, and died the 25th of *Auguſt* 1592.

1590 11. *Maurice*, eldeſt Son of *William* the third, born the 25th of *May* 1572. A Learned and a Zealous Prince for the Proteſtant Religion, for the Preſervation of which he began a League in 1603, which after grew up into an Union; but being overpowered by Count *Tilly* in the year 1626, he was forced to ſurrender his Eſtates to his Son *William*, after which he lived privately till the year 1632.

1626 12. *William* IV. Son of *Maurice*, born the 14th of *February* 1602, ſirnamed the Conſtant, purſued his Fathers Methods, and was as Zealous a defender of the Reformation, to which purpoſe he Leagued with *Guſtavus Adolphus*, and fought under his Banners in the Battle of *Leypſick*. He died in *Frieſland* in the year 1637, the 21th of *September*,

1637 13. *William* V. born the 29th of *May* 1629, a Child when his Father died; lived under the Tutelage of *Elizabeth* his Mother (a brave and Magnanimous Lady) till the year 1650, in the year 1649, he Married *Sophia* the daughter of *George William*, Elector of *Brandenburg*, and died of an Apoplexy *July* the 16th 1663:

1663 14. *William* VI. Son of the former, born the 21th of *June* 1651, died of the Small-pox the 21th of *November* 1670.

1670 15. *Charles*, Brother of *William* VI. and Son of *William* the 5th, was born the 3d of *Auguſt* 1654, he is now living and has ſeveral Sons viz, *Frederick*, Born the 28th of *April* 1676. *Charles*, born the 12th of *June* 1680. *Leopold*, born the 30th of *December* 1684.

The Arms of theſe Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of Eight pieces, *Argent* and *Gules* crowned *Or*, Which being properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperor, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at ſuch times as he inveſted him in the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whoſe Line they were challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6th, and his Brother H*enry*, the laſt male Princes of that Houſe.

Heſſe Darmſtadt.

1567 1. *George* the youngeſt Son of *Philip* the Magnanimous, was the Author of this Line. He was born the 10th of *September* 1547.

1596 2. *Lewis* Son of *George*, born the 24th of *September* 1577.

1626 3. *George* II, born the 17th of *March* 1605.

1671 4. *Lewis* II. born the 25th of *January* 1678.

1678 5. *Erneſt Lewis*, born the 15th of *December* 1667, is now living. His Sons are *George*, born the 25th of *April* 1669. *Philip* the 21th of *July* 1671, &c.

The Line of *Heſſe Homburg*.

1596 1. *Frederick* Son of *George*, the Founder of the Line of *Heſſe Darmſtadt*. He was born the Fifth of *May* 1585, and died the 9th of *May* 1638.

1638 2. *William Chriſtopher*, born the 13th of *November* 1625, he died in the year 1665.
1665 3. *George Chriſtian*, born the 10th of *December* 1626, he turned *Roman Catholick*, and died without any Iſſue in the year 1677.
1677 4. *Frederick*, Brother of *George*, born the 30th of *May* 1630. He has three Sons, *Frederick* born 1673, *Charles Chriſtian* in 1674, and *Philip* born in 1676.

Of the Increaſe, and Decreaſe of this Family.

Henry of *Brabant* the firſt of this Houſe, in the year 1280 got into his hands the City of *Immenhauſen*, and in 1281. In 1290 *Eſchwegen*, in 1293 *Stauffenberg*. In 1329 *Treffurt* upon the *Werr*, in 1350 *Henry* purchaſed the Caſtle of *Kenigsberg*, in 1353 the *Bailywick* of *Ihern*, and in 1360, he bought the City of *Smalcald*. In 1386 the Count of *Dietz* dying without Iſſue, the greateſt part of that Earldom was annexed to this Family. In 1453 upon the like Death of the Count of *Zeighenheim*, that Earldom and *Nidda* was alſo united to this Family. In 1464, *Henry* obtained from the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*, the Earldom of *Battenberg*. In 1478, by a Marriage it gained *Butzbach*. In 1480 *Henry* bought *Fridenwald*. In 1492 *William* added *Epſtein*. In 1557, after a long conteſt this Family gained from that of *Naſſau*, *Catzen-Ellenbogen*. In 1504 *Bickenbach*. In 1571 *Pleſſe*, and part of *Hoyen*, In 1583 *Frankenſtein*. In 1600, *Lewis* of *Darmſtadt*, purchaſed *Kelſterbach* upon the Maine. In 1648, the Abby of *Hirſchfeld* under the Title of a Principality, and a great part of the Earldom of *Schaunberg*, was gained.

This Family has not waſted any part of its Patrimony, nor has it any pretences, but to that of a Mutual League of Succeſſion, with the Families of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*.

21. *WESTPHALIA.*

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenberg*; on the Weſt with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, *Cleve*, *Over-Yſſel*, *Weſt* and *Eaſt-Frieſland*, and the *German* Ocean; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; and on the South with *Weteravia*, and ſome part of *Haſſia*.

It was thus called of the *Weſtphalia*, a Tribe or Diviſion of the *Saxons*, diſtinguiſhed heretofore into the *Tranſalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* or *Albis*, in the County of *Holſtein*, now a part of *Denmark*, the *Ooſtphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Sala* and the *VVeſer*, taking up the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Virden*, *Hildeſheim*, *Halberſtadt* and *Meydeburg*, with the Dukedoms of *Lunenberg* and *Brunſwick*; the *Angrivarians*, taking up the North-Weſt part of the modern *VVeſtphalen*, betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Breme* and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; and finally, the *VVeſtphali* or Weſtern *Saxons*, inhabiting the reſt of the modern *VVeſtphalen* with the Earldoms of *Marck*, *Berg*, *Zutphen*, the Seignioury of *Over-Yſſel*, and ſome parts of *Gelderland* and Holland. But the *Saxons* being ſubjugated by the power of the *French*, and ſeveral new Eſtates erected out of that old Stock; the remnant of the *VVeſtphali* and *Angrivarians* (the Biſhoprick of *Breme* being added unto the account) were comprehended and united in the name of *VVeſtphalen*.

The Soil according to the ſeveral parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoyning to the *VVeſer* being deſart and barren; thoſe toward the Earldoms of *Marck* and *Bergen* mountainous and full of Woods; the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry Sands, Heaths and unfruitful Thickets, like the wilde parts of *VVindſor* Foreſt betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts it is exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent Paſturage; ſtored with great plenty of wilde Fruits, and (by reaſon of the many Woods) abundance of Acorns; with infinite Herds of Swine (which they breed up with thoſe natural helps) of ſo good a reliſh, that a Gamon of *VVeſtphalie* Bacon is reckoned for a principal Diſh at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci majores* about *Bremen*; the *Chamavi*, *Angrivarii* and *Bructeri*, inhabiting about *Munſter*, *Oſnabruck*, and ſo towards the Land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cheruſci* (before ſpoken of) taking up thoſe parts which lie neareſt unto *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*. All of them were vanquiſhed by *Druſus* the Son-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, but ſoon reſtored to their former liberty by the great overthrow given by the *Cheruſci* and their Aſſociates to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expulſed the *Romans* out of *Gaul*, leaving their forſaken and ill inhabited Seats to be taken by the *Saxons*, with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themſelves both in Name and Nation. Of that great Body it continued a conſiderable Member, (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the Proſcription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry* the Lion: at what time the parts beyond the *VVeſer* were uſurped by *Bernard* Biſhop of *Paderborn*; thoſe betwixt the *VVeſer* and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*, whoſe Succeſſors ſtill hold the Title of Dukes of *VVeſtphalen*: the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Munſter*, *Paderborn* and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had ſome accruments alſo out of this Eſtate, every one catching hold of that which lay neareſt to him. But not to make too many Subdiviſions of it, we will divide it only into theſe two parts, *viz.* 1. *VVeſtphalen* ſpecially ſo called, and 2. the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*.

1. In *VVESTPHALEN* ſpecially ſo called, which is that part hereof which lieth next to *Cleve*, the places of moſt obſervation are, 1. *Geſeke* a Town of good repute; 2. *Brala* a Village of great beauty; 3. *Arnsberg* and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the Title of Prefectures. 5. *VVadenborch*: 6. *Homberg*, Lording it over fair and ſpacious Territories. All which with two Lordſhips and eight Perfectures, more diſperſed in the Dukedom of *Engern* and County of *Surland*, belonging unto the Biſhop of *Colen*, the titular Duke of *VVeſtphalen*, and really of *Angrivaria*, (*Engern*) as he ſtyles himſelf: the Title and Poſſeſſion of *Henry* Duke of *Engern* being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbiſhop hereof, Son of Henry the firſt, Emperor and King of *Germany*, ſirnamed the Fowler, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt, his elder Brother. 7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) ſeated in that part hereof which is called *VVeſterwald*; a Town of conſequence, belonging to the Elector of *Triers*. 8. *Rhenen*, 9. *Schamlat*, and 10. *Beckem*; reaſonable good Towns; all of the Biſhoprick of *Munſter*. 11. *Munſter* it ſelf famous for the Treaty, and Concluſions made upon that Treaty for the Peace of *Germany* in 1648, ſeated upon the River *Ems*, and ſo called from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charles* the great which gave beginning to the Town; ſuppoſed to be that *Mediolanum* which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. A beautiful and well fortified City, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the Temporal Lord of it, famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawleſs crue of Anabaptiſts in 1583, who choſe themſelves a King (that famous Tailor *John* of *Leyden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jeruſalem*, proclaimed a Community both of Goods and Women, cut off the heads of all that oppoſed their doings; and, after many fanatick and deſperate Actions, were by the care and induſtry of the Biſhop and his Confederates brought to condign puniſhment. The Story is to be ſeen at large in *Sleiden*, Mr. *Hooker's* Preface, and ſome modern Pamphlets, wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly ſee the face of the preſent Times. This City ſuffered very much in the year 1661, being then taken by *Bernard* its Biſhop, a Warlike and reſtleſs Prelate. 12. *Oſnabrug*, firſt built as, ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar*, as others, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither ſo ancient as the one,

nor of ſo late a ſtanding as the others make it. Here is an Epiſcopal See founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the Privileges of an Univerſity; liberally endowed at the firſt erection of the ſame, and ſince ſo well improved both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate Succeſſion in it by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munſter*, as a fit Compenſation for the Biſhoprick of *Halberſtadt*, (otherwiſe diſpoſed of by that Treaty) of late enjoy'd wholly by that Family. This City is famous for a Peace here concluded between the Emperor and the Crown of *Sweden*, in the year 1648. 13. *Quakenburg*, on the River *Haſe*. 14. *Warendorp*, and 15. *Wildſhuſen*; Towns of that Biſhoprick. 16. *Paderborn*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, Founded by *Charles* the Great at the firſt Converſion of the *Saxons*; more ancient than ſtrong, and yet more ſtrong than beautiful. 17. *Ringelenſtein*, and 18. *Oſſendorf*; belonging to the Biſhop of *Paderborn*. 19. *Minden*, upon the *Weſer*, another of the Epiſcopal Sees Founded by *Charles* the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony; converted to Lay-uſes ſince the Reformation, under colour of Adminiſtration of the Goods of the Biſhoprick, and now, by the Concluſions at *Munſter*, ſetled for ever on the Electors of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of *Prince of Minden*. 20. *Rintelen*, a ſtrong Town, conveniently ſeated on the *Weſer*, not far from *Minden*, to the Biſhop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Weſtphalen* had formerly been a part of S. *Peter's Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the Clergy: But there are ſome Free Cities and Secular Princes which have ſhares therein. As, 1. *Warbourg*, a neat Town, but ſeated on an uneven piece of Ground near the River *Dimula*: a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and ſold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it ſelf under the Earls hereof, now govern'd in the nature of a Free Eſtate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2. *Brakel*, accounted of as Imperial alſo. 3. *Hervorden*, a Town of good ſtrength and note, govern'd by its own Laws and Magiſtrates, under the Protection of *Colen*. 4. *Lemgow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*; but by them ſo well Privileged and Enfranchiſed, that now it governeth it ſelf as a free Eſtate. Here is alſo, 5. the Town and County of *Ravenſperg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the Right of that Houſe to the Elector of *Brandenburg*: as alſo, 6. the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the Weſt ſide of the *Weſer*; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof ſome fetch from that *Sp. Manlius* who defended the *Roman* Capitol againſt the *Gauls* (they might as well derive it from the Geeſe which preſerved that Capitol;) others with greater Modeſty look no higher for it than to the time of *Charles* the Great; one of the Noble Families of the ancient *Saxons*. 7. Here alſo ſtands the Town and Caſtle of *Aremberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereunto adjoining; which being much encreaſed by the acceſſion of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir-general of this Houſe conveyed in Marriage to *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Marck*, whoſe ſecond Son, called *Eberhard* (but the only one he had by this *Venter*) ſucceeded in his Mother's Eſtates and Honours; which were kept undivided, till *Eberhard* the 6th, Lord thereof, of the Houſe of *Marck*, contenting himſelf with the Titles and Eſtates of *Aremberg*, left *Sedan* and the pieces which belonged unto it to his younger Brother *Robert*. The great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called alſo *Robert*, created the firſt Earl of *Aremberg*, left his Eſtates and Titles to his Siſter *Margaret*, married to *John* Lord of *Brabanſon*, a perſon of great Note and Power in the *Belgick* Provinces, and faithful to the laſt in the Cauſe and Quarrel of King *Philip* II. in which finally he loſt his life, *Anno* 1568, leaving both his Eſtates and Title unto *Charles* his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles* Earl of *Aremberg* in the Stories of the *Belgick* Wars, in which he was no leſs conſiderable for his eminent Valour, than his ſingular Fidelity to his Lord and Maſter. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but theſe moſt conſiderable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their Acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though ſince in danger of performing more real Services; the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d, after the Surprize of *Holſtein* and ſome part of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1626, gaining ſo far upon this Country, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in ſo ſeaſonably, he had made himſelf abſolute Maſter of it, and, by the opportunity of the ſituation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the United *States* to ſome great Extremities. As for the Title of Duke of *Weſtphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long uſed (as before was ſaid) by the Biſhops of *Colen*; as alſo (but with better Right as to that of *Weſtphalen*) by the Houſe of *Lawenburg*, deſcended from the ancient Electoral Family, writing themſelves in that regard Dukes of *Saxony*, *Weſtphalen*, and *Angrivaria* or *Engern*.

2. The Biſhoprick of *BREME* lieth on the other ſide of the *Weſer*, extending as far as to the *Elb* and the *German* Ocean. So called of, 1. *Breme*, the principal City, ſeated on the *Weſer*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous and rich, beautified with fair and even Streets, and very ſtrongly Fortified againſt all Invaſions both by Art and Nature, the Town being ſo ſeated amongſt Fens, occaſioned by the Overflowings of the River, that it may be eaſily drowned on all ſides, to keep off an Enemy; adorned alſo with a ſpacious Market-place, a fair Council-houſe, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Archbiſhop, who is the Temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of ſpecial note are, 2. *Oſenbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3. *Wruſten*, on the *Weſer* alſo. 4. *Otterendorp*, on the River *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5. *Boxtehude*, on the *Elbe*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the either ſide of the Water. 6. *Stode*, *Stade*, or *Stadium*, ſeated on the River *Zwinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accounted the ancienteſt Town of all *Saxony*, and one of the firſt which was enrolled amongſt the *Hanſe*, and by ſpecial Privilege had the pre-emption of all the *Rheniſh* Wine that paſſed by them, and the Right alſo of Coining Money. But being over-topped by the Power and Trade of *Hamburg*, (5 *Dutch* Miles from it) it grew at length ſo poor, and in ſuch decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 *l. per Annum*, ſo that they were fain to ſell their Privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themſelves under the Protection of the Biſhop's of *Breme*. It revived again upon the coming thither of the *Engliſh* Merchants, who, finding ſome hard meaſure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their Staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in ſhort time grew exceeding Wealthy, the Buildings fair and beautiful, the Town ſtrongly fortified. It is ſituate in a place ſo eaſily overwhelmed with Water, that the People, in oſtentation of their ſtrength and ſecurity, uſed to have Ordnance of Stone planted over their Gates. But the late *German* Wars have made them ſenſible of their Folly; when, notwithſtanding their new Works, and an *Engliſh* Garriſon under Sir *Charles Morgan*, they were compelled to ſubmit themſelves to the Earl of *Tilly*, *Anno* 1627, recovered after by the *Swedes*, in the courſe of their Victories; to whom it was afterwards granted by the Treaty of *Munſter*: in the year 1676, it was taken by the Duke of *Brunſwick*, but in 1680 it was again reſtored to the *Swedes*.

As for the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, it was firſt Founded by *Charles* the Great, in the Perſon of *VVillibrede* an *Engliſh Saxon*, one of the firſt Preachers of the Goſpel in theſe parts of this Country. The Town, before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archiepiſcopal See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into eſteem, as the Biſhop did in Power and Patrimony, till they became Lords of this Tract. It was governed ſince the Reformation of Religion by Lay-Biſhops or Adminiſtrators of the Rents of the Biſhoprick, which under that Title they inverted to their proper uſe. And now of late, by the Concluſions made at *Munſter*, is ſetled as an Inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden*, to be enjoy'd, together with the Biſhoprick of *Verden*, by the Kings thereof, with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen* and *Verden*: the ancient Liberties of thoſe Cities, formerly granted by their Biſhops, being ſtill preſerved.

22. *EAST-FRIESLAND.*

EAST-FRIESLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Weſer*, by it parted from *Weſtphalia*; on the Weſt with the River *Ems*, which parteth it from *Groeningen* and the reſt of *Weſt-Frieſland*; on the North with the *German* Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of *Marck*, and part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Friſii*, who, caſting out the old Inhabitants, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and called it by their own name, *Frieſland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amiſus*, into the Weſtern, ſpoken of amongſt the Netherlands, and the Eaſtern or *Eaſt-Frieſland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the Soil we ſhall ſee anon, when we come to the Subdiviſions of it. The chief Rivers (beſides thoſe of, 1. *Ems*, and 2. *Weſer*, ſpoken of elſewhere) are, 3. *Jada*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *De Jade*. 4. *Dollaert*, on which ſtandeth the City of *Embden*. 5. *Delm*, and 6. *Honta*, neighboured by *Delmenhorſt* and *Oldenburg*, Towns of this Country. The whole is divided into, 1. The County of *Embden*, or *Eaſt-Frieſland*, properly ſo called; and, 2. The Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1. *EAST-FRIESLAND* ſpecially ſo called hath on the Weſt the River *Ems*, on the North the Ocean, on the Eaſt and South the Earldom of *Oldenburg*: called alſo the County of *EMBDEN*, from the fair Town of *Embden*, the chief City of it. The Soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Paſturage, ſending great ſtore of Oxen, Horſes, Wooll, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe, and all ſorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not eaſily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatſoever. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Embden*, ſo called from the *Ems*, on which it is ſituate; *Dollaert*, a ſmall River falling here into it, a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven ſo deep and large, that the greateſt Ships which ſail are admitted into it. The People are rich, affirm'd to have 60 Ships of 100 Tons apiece, and 600 leſſer Barks, of their own; beſides 700 Buſſes and Fiſher-boats, maintained for the moſt part by their Herring-fiſhing on the Coaſts of *England*. The Buildings are generally fair, both private and publick, eſpecially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earl's Palace. This laſt is a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle, ſituate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all ſides encompaſſed by the Sea, and yet not ſtrong enough to preſerve the Townſmen in their due Obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage of the Abſence of the Earl, kept him out of their Town, becauſe he ſeemed not to prove of the *Calvinian* Humour; and have ſince govern'd in the nature of a Commonwealth, confederate with the *States* of the United Provinces, for their better Eſtabliſhment and Support. So eaſily is Religion made a Maſk to diſguiſe Rebellion. This City fell firſt into the hands of the Earls of *Embden* about the Year 1454, it was ſmall and not much frequented at the time of the Reformation, but *Ann* of *Oldenburg*, the Mother and Guardian of *Ezard* the firſt, her Son treating all that fled thither with great kindneſs, it grew to an exceſſive Wealth and Greatneſs: But *Ezard* the ſecond, Son of the former, being a *Lutheran*, began to curb and ſuſpect the *Calviniſts*, who to protect them called in the *Hollanders* in the year 1595, who took poſſeſſion of it with 1000 Men, as Mediators between the City and the Earl, in pretence, but in reality as Maſters; ſince which time their Trade and Wealth are waſted to nothing. 2. *Aurick*, by ſome called *Anſeling*, ſeated in the Inlands, rich and well walled, of great reſort by reaſon of the Pleaſure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the Foreſts and Woods adjoining, drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. *Eſen*, on the Sea-ſhore, which gives the Title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth alſo, 4. *Jever*, ſituate on the Weſt of the River *Jada*; but both Earls ſubject to the Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland*. 5. *Vredburg*, (that is to ſay, the *Free Village*) ſo called from ſome Immunities granted by the Earls; poſſeſſed a while by thoſe of *Brunſwick*, who fenced and garriſoned it for themſelves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the ſecond Earl. 6. *Broeck*, the Seat and proper Government of the Anceſtors of theſe Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broeckmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another Prefecture or Captainſhip of the ſaid Anceſtors. 8. *Dunort*, a ſtrong Caſtle and Retiring-place of the Earls. 9. *Lingen*, upon the *Ems*, a ſtrong Town well Fortified, and as well Gariſon'd; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Frieſland*, even to *Ditmarſh* and the Confines of *Denmark*. A Dignity procur'd by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5th of the Emperor *Frederick* the 3d in right whereof the King of *Spain*, as Heir of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, hath ſome pre-eminence over *Embden*, of little uſe to him ſince the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. This Town and County belonged to the Counts of *Tecklenburg* till the year 1546, when *Charles* the 5th ſeized it as forfeited by the Earls Rebellion againſt him. In the year 1597 the *Hollanders* by force of Arms extorted it from *Philip* II. his Son, and gave it to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, to Recompence his Loſſes in their Service. In the *Spaniſh* Treaty with the States in 1648, the *Spaniards* renounced their Right to the Prince in as ample manner as it was granted to them by *Charles* the 5th in 1546, this Renuntiation was renewed and confirm'd in 1678, and continues ſtill under that Prince. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Caſtles, ſtately dwelling Houſes, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; ſtanding ſo thick, that in many places they join together: ſome of them being withal ſo large, ſo well peopled, and of Streets ſo ſpacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*. Of all which the moſt City-like is named *Leere*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci minores*, deſcribed by *Pliny*, to be ſo barbarous a People, and ſo deſtitute of all neceſſary Proviſion for the Life of Man, that they had no drink but Rain-water, preſerved in great Troughs before the Doors of their Cottages. Theſe were outed or ſubdued by the *Friſons*, a neighbouring People poſſeſſing *North-Holland* the Diſtrict of *Vtretch*, with the Countries of *Groening* and *Weſt-Frieſland*, who having once paſſed over the *Ems*, extending their Dominions as far as *Denmark*; governed by Kings, but intermingled with and overpowered by the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom the laſt King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perſwaded to receive the Sacrament of Holy Baptiſm: but being told that his Friends and Kinſfolks were in Hell, becauſe no Chriſtians, *Neither will I* (ſaith he) *be of that Profeſſion, for I love to be amongſt my Kindred.* After this, *Frieſland* was a Member of the *French* Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, *An.* 893. at which time all *Frieſland* on the Weſt ſide of the *Ems* was conferred upon him; poſſeſſed, but not without much War and Bloodſhed by his Succeſſors; the *Friſons* ever and anon rebelling againſt them, and killing divers of them in the open Field. Thoſe parts of it on the other ſide of the *Ems* remained unto the *German* Empire: governed by Deputies, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accomptable to the Emperors for the Adminiſtration till the year 1453, in which *Vlrick*, Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Embden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, tranſmitting the Eſtate and Title unto his Poſterity.

Earls of EAST-FRIESLAND.

1453 1. *Vlricus*, Son of *Enno*, the Son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governours for the Empire in *Broeck* and *Norden*, made the firſt Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland* by the Emperor *Frederick*.

1466 2. *Enno*, Eldeſt Son of *Vlrick*, ſucceed and was drown'd in paſſing over the *Ire* after one *Engelman*, Governour of *Freburg*, who had Rebelled againſt him, he being unmarried was ſucceed by his Brother.

1491 3. *Ezard* the Son of *Vlrick*, who got *Vredeburg*, from the Citizens of *Brunſwick*.

1528 4. *Enno* the Son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzyl*, formerly uſurped by the Dukes of *Geldres*.

1540 5. *Ezard* II. Son of *Enno* who married *Katharine*, Daughter to *Guſtavus* the firſt of *Sweden*.

1586 6. *Enno* II. Son of *Ezard* the 2. and the Lady *Katharine*.

1625 7. *Rodolphus Chriſtianus*, Son of *Enno* the 2. who was a Prince of great hope, but was unfortunately ſlain in a Tumult, and ſucceeded by

1628 8. *Vlrick* his brother, an excellent Prince, and fit for the times of Trouble, in which he lived.

1648 9. *Enno Lewis* his Son, was in the year 1654, made a Prince by *Ferdinand* 3. he died without any Male-Iſſue, the 4th of *April*, 1660.

1660 10. *George Chriſtian*, brother of the former, to whom the preſent Emperor in 1662, confirmed the honour granted to this Family by his Father, he died the 10th of *June* 1665, leaving his Wife big with Child, who the 11th of *October*, that year, brought fourth

1665 11. *Chriſtian Eberard*, the preſent Prince of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, of whom I can give no further account.

The Arms of the Earls of *Eaſt-Frieſland* are *Argent*, four *Bendlets Azure*, charged with ten Hearts *Or*, 4, 3, 2, 1.

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBURG* containeth that part of this Country which lieth on the Weſt-ſide of the *Weſer*, betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* and *Eaſt-Frieſland* ſpecially ſo called, and ſo extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenburg*, the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, but in Paſtures ſpecially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattle, and furniſh not this Country only, but ſome of their *German* Neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horſes, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe. Here is alſo good ſtore of Pulſe, Barley and Oats; plenty of Fruits and Trees of all ſorts; large Woods, and thoſe well ſtored with Veniſon, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of Hunting. But the Air is cold and foggy in ſome extremity; eſpecially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenburg*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the Great, who founded the Church of S. *John-Baptiſt*. A Town of no great ſtate or beauty; the Houſes being generally of Clay, but the Caſtle (the Dwelling-place of the Earls) of well hewn ſtones; of an orbicular form, with deep Ditches of Water, the Town and Caſtle both being ſtrongly fortified. This City was totally burnt down in the year 1676, that very day the Citizens were to have taken the Oath of Allegiance to the King of *Denmark*. In the year 1688, the King of *Denmark* offer'd this Town and Country in Exchange for *Sleſwick*, to the Duke of *Holſtein*, but it was refuſed. 2. *Delmenhorſt*, on the River *Delm*, a ſtrong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247 by *Otho*, Brother of Earl *Chriſtian* the 2. and having been 65 years in poſſeſſion of the Biſhops of *Munſter*, was ſuddenly ſurprized on *Palm-Sunday* morning by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1547, continuing ever ſince part of this Eſtate. 3. *Beckhuſen*, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea which is called *De Jade*. 4. *Eguarden*. 5. *Ovelgard*; both ſeated on a long Languet or Demy-Iſland betwixt the ſaid *De Jade* and the River *Weſer*, called *Butiada*: both taken and the laſt well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1520, belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Weſterberg*, the chief Town, of a ſpacious Territory. 7. *Vriejade*, a ſtrong piece on the River *Jade*, built by Earl *Chriſtiern*, one of the younger branches of the Houſe of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*, 9. *Jadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the Ocean. Here is alſo within this Earldom the province of *Amerlander*, ſuppoſed by ſome to have been the Seat of the *Ambrones*, who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their Expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were ſlain by *Marius*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themſelves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Wittikindus*, the laſt King and firſt Duke of the *Saxons*; who having about the year 850, built a ſtrong Caſtle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his Wife *Alteberg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, ſo called by the *Latiniſts* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*. But his Male-iſſue failing in *Frederick* the 7. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Friſian* blood, who had married *Richſa*, the Daughter of *John*, the 5th Earl of this Family. From him in a direct Line deſcended *Chriſtian* or *Chriſtiern*, eldeſt Son of *Theodorick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denmark*, *An.* 1448, left his Eſtate in this Earldom (but reſerving the Title, according to the faſhion of *Germany*) to his Brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretenſions to the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, and the Earldom of *Holſtein*, in which he did pretend a ſhare. The Patrimony of it was much improved by the additions of the Countries of *Ruſtringen*, *Oſtringen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea, bequeathed by the laſt Will and Teſtament of the Lady *Mary*, Counteſs of *Jever* in *Eaſt Frieſland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The Succeſſion of theſe Earls, in regard the Royal Line of *Denmark*, and by conſequence of Great *Britain*, is deſcended from them, I have here ſubjoined in this enſuing Catalogue of

The Earls of OLDENBURG.

850 1. *Walpert*, of the Race of *Wittikind*, the firſt Earl of *Oldenburg*.

856 2. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.

3. *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the 1.

4. *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick* the 2.

5. *John*, the Son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperor *Henry* the 2. in his Wars againſt the *Greeks* and *Saraſens*, Anno 1007.

6. *Huno*, ſirnamed the Glorious, Son of *John*.

7. *Frederick*, Son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Friſians*; the laſt of the Male-line of this Houſe.

8. *Elimarus*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Friſian* blood and of *Richſa* his Wife, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl.

1120 9. *Elimarus* II. Son to *Elimar* the firſt.

10. *Chriſtianus*, Son of *Elimar* the 2. ſirnamed the Couragious, or the Warlike; a profeſſed Enemy of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, from whom he took the City of *Breme*.

11. *Maurice*, the Son of *Chriſtian*, an Aſſociate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holſtein* in his Wars with *Denmark*.

12. *Chriſtian* II. Son of *Maurice*.

13. *John* II. Son of *Chriſtian* the 2.

14. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.

15. *Conrade*, the Son of *John* the third.

16. *Chriſtian* III. Son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Collen*, where he was initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquiſhed, much againſt the will of his brother *Maurice* on the death of his Father.

1435 17. *Theodorick*, Son of *Chriſtian* the 3d. the firſt Earl of *Delmenhorſt* of this Line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicolas* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, deſcended from a younger Son of *John* the ſecond.

1440 18. *Chriſtian* IV. Son of *Theodorick* and *Heduigis*, Siſter and Heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus*, Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and Earls of *Holſtein*, elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus* to the Crown of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1448.

1448 19. *Gerrard*, the Brother of *Chriſtian* the 4th. a Prince of an unquiet ſpirit, always in Wars, and always worſted. He loſt the Town of *Delmenhorſt* to the Biſhop of *Munſter*.

1500 20. *John* IV. Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the Ruines of his Eſtate, and ſettled the Diſtractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in Exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Butiada*.

1526 21. *Anthony*, the Son of *John* the 4. by a ſudden ſurpriſe recovered *Delmenhorſt* from the Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1547, which he ſtrongly fortified. The Suit for this place was continued between the Earls of *Oldenburg*, and the Biſhops of *Munſter*, till the year 1670, and then was determin'd in favour of the Earls deſcendents.

1573 22. *John* V. Son of *Anthony*, enlarged this Earldom with the Provinces of *Ruſtringen*, *Oſtringen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the laſt Will of the Counteſs of *Jever*, in *Eaſt-Frieſland*.

1647 23. *Anthony* II. Brother of *John* the 5. in whoſe life time he was Earl of *Delmenhorſt*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* alſo: ſtill living, *Anno* 1648, for ought I can learn unto the contrary. This Prince died without any lawful Iſſue the 19th of *June* 1667, whereupon aroſe a Controverſie, between *Frederick* 3. King of *Denmark*, and the Dukes of *Holſtein-Gothorp* and *Holſtein-Ploen* for this Earldom, the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holſtein-Gothorp*, ſeized and divided the Earldom between them, but a ſuit being commenced for it in the Chamber of *Spire* againſt them by the Duke of *Holſtein Ploen*, the King of *Denmark* in the year 1671, reſigned one half of his ſhare to the Duke of *Holſtein Ploen*, and in 1676, he recovered the other Moiety from the Duke of *Holſtein Gothorp*, by the ſentence of the Chamber of *Spire*. And afterwards reſigned the whole to *Chriſtian* 5. King of *Denmark*, in Exchange for ſome other Lands in *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*, by which the Earldom of *Oldenburg* became (in the year 1676) intirely united to the Crown of *Denmark*.

And thus we ſee the preſent Eſtate of *Germany*, diſtracted and divided amongſt many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporate Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and deſcribed. But beſides theſe there are many others of leſs note and ſmaller Territories, which yet are abſolute and free: inſomuch that in one days riding a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws and divers Coins; every Free Prince and Free City (whoſe Laws the Emperors are ſworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws and coin what Mony they will. And hence, in the Cenſure of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is ſaid to be *Rex hominum*, becauſe of his Subjects reaſonable Obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Aſinorum*, becauſe of their infinite Taxes and Impoſitions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, becauſe of his Subjects often Inſurrection againſt and Depoſition of their Princes: but the Emperor of *Germany* is called *Rex Regum*, becauſe there is ſuch a number of *Reguli* or free Princes which live under his Command; or rather at their own Command, (for they do even what they liſt) as the Emperor *Maximilian* the firſt well noted.

And to ſay truth, the publick Government thereof is nothing leſs than Monarchial; the Emperor being accompted amongſt the Princes but as the Chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of, by *Bodin*, and others of our great Statiſts and Civilians, as an abſolute Monarch, ſuch as the Kings of *England*, *France* and *Spain*, are confeſſed to be. For the Priviledges of the Free Cities being made perpetual, the great Eſtates Hereditary, and the Empire Eligible; the Emperors were brought at laſt to ſuch low Condition, as to be made accomptable to the States of the Empire; who if they be perſwaded in their Conſciences, or but think they be ſo, that he is likely by his Male-adminiſtration to deſtroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Cæſarea majeſtate privare poteſt*, (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the Electors, and a more fit and able man choſen into the place, and that too, as the Emperor *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his Conſtitutions, *An.* 1410, *ſine Infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of Treaſon or Diſloyalty. So that the ſupreme Power and Majeſty of the Empire ſeems to reſide eſpecially and contractedly in the Electoral Colledge; diffuſedly, in the Imperial Diet; by way of Execution, in the Chamber of *Spires*, and other the ſupreme Courts of the ſeveral Circles. But that which makes that Body which they call the Empire, is the Aſſembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commiſſioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or Parliaments, the Emperor preſiding in them: whom he that ſaw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the Imperial Crown and Scepter, with the Titles of *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus* given at every word, would think that the whole Action did take life from him; whereas, indeed, he hath not ſo much Priviledge as a Negative voice, but is to put in execution ſuch Decrees and Sanctions as theſe Eſtates aſſembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own Authority, which may ſpeak him Emperor. But, on the other ſide, the Princes take power unto themſelves of making Laws for, and impoſing Taxes on, their Subjects; of raiſing War upon one another, or againſt a third; and doing many other acts of ſupreme Authority, which in the Emperor would be counted matter of Male-adminiſtration. Such Points as theſe, together with the appointing of Judges and the like chief Magiſtrates, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in general Diets; which may be ſummoned by or without the Emperor, as occaſion ſerveth. And to this weakning of the Majeſty and Power Imperial, the neighbouring princes have afforded their beſt aſſiſtance; jealous of their own Intereſts and decreaſe of Power, if that vaſt Body ſo well limbed ſhould be ſtrongly joynted, and all the ſeveral Members of it united under the command of one ſupreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in thoſe ſolemn Leagues and Confederations made in their ſeveral times againſt *Charles* the fifth, and the late Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, as ſoon as they began to be in ſome poſſibility of ſetling the Imperial Majeſty in its proper ſplendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been, by the way of Election, as before was noted. The buſineſs was firſt projected in the Court of *Rome* by *Gregory* the firſt, then Pope, who being a Native of this Country, thought it the moſt expedient courſe to continue the Imperial Title among thoſe of his Nation. But whatſoever was pretended, the Deſign of it chiefly was to make the Emperors leſs powerful and diſtract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into Parts and Factions, that ſo the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the Emperor might be ſuch as the Pope ſhould like of, the matter was ſo ordered, that the one half of the Electors ſhould be always of the Eccleſiaſticks, who being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the moſt part driving on their Intereſt, were very like to ſerve him on all occaſions. The Electors only ſix in number: that is to ſay, 1. The Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire, 2. The Archbiſhop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy*. 3. The Archbiſhop of *Triers*, Chancellor of *France*. 4. The Count-*Palatine* of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer. 5. The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marſhal, and 6. the Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. By the Treaty of *Munſter*, in the year 1648, the *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and the Duke of *Bavaria*, were both declared Electors, ſo that the Voices were made even again, and to prevent the miſchief this might cauſe, in *December* 1692, the preſent Duke of *Hannover*, was by the conſent of the Diet, declared the 9th Elector by the Emperor. Upon equality of Voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a ſeventh; who by Office is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon days of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the firſt days of the Imperial Diets, and the like to theſe, theſe Offices are performed only; and then performed in this manner following, either in Perſon or by Proxy. Before the Palace-Gate ſtands an heap of Oats, ſo high that it reacheth to the breaſt of the Horſe on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a ſilver Wand and a ſilver Meaſure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke, ſtill ſitting on his Horſe, filleth up the Meaſure with Oats, then ſticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the meaſure of Oats unto ſome of his Servants who ſtand neareſt unto him, and ſo attends the Emperor into the Court. The Emperor being entred and ſate down at the Table, the three Spiritual Electors, ſtanding orderly together, ſay the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marquiſs of *Brandenburg* on Horſe-back alſo, with a Baſin of Water in his hand, (the Baſin being of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his Arm; which, alighting from his Horſe, he holds to the Emperor till he waſh. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene* mounted on his Horſe, with four Silver Platters full of Meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver; which, deſcending from his Horſe, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entring the great Hall on Horſe-back as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his Hand of the weight of 12 Marks in Silver, alighteth from his Horſe, and preſenteth the Cup unto the Emperor. But we muſt know, that of late times theſe Offices are ſeldom or never performed by the Electors in their own Perſons. It is enough if they ſend their Ambaſſadors, or ſubſtitute ſome one or other of the Emperors Court to do it for them.

The Election is uſually celebrated at *Francford* on the *Maine*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair on the day appointed by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, whoſe Office it is (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to iſſue out the Summons for this Aſſembly. In their paſſage unto *Francford* they are to be ſufficiently guarded by every Prince through whoſe Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horſe, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into S. *Barthomew*'s Church, (the moſt Capacious of that City) where, after the High-Maſs is ſaid, the three Spiritual Electors laying their hands upon their Breaſts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chuſe a fit Temporal Head for the People of Chriſtendom. Upon equality of Voices, as it ſometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the caſting Voice, and concludes the buſineſs. If in the ſpace of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then muſt they have no other allowance but of Bread and Water, nor be ſuffered to go out of the City, till that neceſſity compelleth them unto ſome Agreement. Which being at the laſt reſolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince ſo elected is preſently ſaluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperor being not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope: though ſince the time of *Charles* the fifth, without any ſuch trouble to themſelves or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title of both Emperor and Imperial Majeſty is uſually conferred upon them from their firſt Election. The Election being finiſhed, and ſignified to the party choſen, the Inauguration was held anciently at three ſeveral places: *viz.* 1. at *Aquiſgrane*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gulick*, where he received the Silver Crown, for the Kingdom of *Germany*; 2. at *Millain*, by the Archbiſhop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown, for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of *Italy*; 3. at *Rome*, where at the hands of the Pope himſelf, he was crowned with a Golden Crown, for the *Roman* Empire. But ſince thoſe Journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by; the Emperors holding their Elections to be ſtrong enough to make good their Title to that Dignity, being meerly titular, and their Inauguration at *Aken* to be as effectual as if they had alſo viſited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Priviledges of the Electors, and other fundamental Conſtitutions of the *German* Empire, we find ſummed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charles* the Fourth, by him promulgated, *Anno.* 1359. But we muſt know, that ſince the publiſhing of that Bull, the buſineſs of Election hath received ſome change as to the number and the perſons of the parties intereſſed. For, it pleaſed the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. on the Proſcription of *Frederick* the firſt Elector *Palatine*, to transfer the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, from that Houſe to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the Powers and Priviledges which belonged unto it, to be infeoffed upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperor being proteſted againſt by ſome of the Electors, in favour of the *Palatine* Family, and in due care unto themſelves, in not admitting ſuch a dangerous precedent for the time to come, it was at laſt concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munſter*, *Anno* 1648. That the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heir enjoying the ſaid Electoral Dignity, with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Tranſlation of it from the *Palatine* Family ſpoken of before; an eighth Electorate ſhould be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate* by *Charles Ludowick*, the now Prince Elector *Palatine*, and his Heirs, who alſo, on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria* are to be repoſſeſſed of their ancient Rights, the Title of *Arch-Treaſurer* being given unto them at the preſent inſtead of that of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, which they had before.

Now as a ſtep unto the Empire, and for the better aſſurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Auſtrian* Family, it was cunningly projected by *Charlos* the fifth, (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Clement* the 7.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* ſhould be choſen *King of the Romans* whilſt himſelf was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his deceaſe. Which Policy being followed by all his Succeſſors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor, in the preſent Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæſar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the ancient *Romans*. Inſomuch that *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one who is already ſo far eſtated in the Empire, that on the Death, Deprivation, or Reſignation of the preſent Emperor, he is immediately to ſucceed. And ſo accordingly it hath happened ſince this Act of *Charles*; who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of ſo high an Honour; yet he could not do it: it being thought by many underſtanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his Brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to tranſmit the Empire to his own Poſterity, did ſecretly lend Duke *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reaſons, or, to ſay better, the pretences, upon which *Charles* did inſtitute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for queſtionleſs the true reaſon of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the *Auſtrian* Family) they were theſe that follow. 1. Becauſe that, having the command of many Nations, he could not always perſonally attend the affairs of *Germany*. 2. The troubled Eſtate of Chriſtendom, of the Empire eſpecially, occaſioned by the Preachings and Works of *Luther*. 3. The late rural War raiſed by the Boors of that Country, on the coming out of theſe new Doctrines, and not yet throughly extinct. 4. The violent power of the *Turk*, who by his Conqueſt of a great part of *Hungary*, was grown too near a neighbour to them. And 5. the imminent Diſobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly ſeemed to require ſome Prince both of Power and Title to aſſiſt him in the bearing of ſo great a Burthen. And by theſe and the like ſuggeſtions he effected his deſign herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Style. For whereas the firſt Emperors of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great were Emperors of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*; the latter Emperors of the Houſe of *Charles* the fifth, may not improperly be called Emperors of *Germany*, and Kings of the *Romans*. It is true indeed, that the wiſe and underſtanding Duke of *Saxony* ſaw farther through theſe Pretences than the reſt of the Electors either did or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make *Germany* (as *Galba* ſaid, in his Oration unto *Piſo*, of the Empire of *Rome*) *unus quaſi Familiæ Hereditatem*, hereditary in times following to the Houſe of *Auſtria*; and thereupon did openly deny his ſuffrage to the ſaid Election. But finding that the major part of the Electors were reſolved upon it, he moved for an Act to paſs, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family more than three Succeſſions. In which not able to prevail, (as the Game was plaid) he left the Electors to themſelves, by whom *Ferdinand* was choſen King of the *Romans*, and not long after crowned at *Aken* with the uſual Rites, *Jan.* 16. *An.* 1531. The ſame courſe was followed by this *Ferdinand*, when poſſeſſed of the Empire, in cauſing his Son *Maximilian* to be elected *Rex Romanorum*, whilſt himſelf was living; and ſo by all the reſt ſince then, as before is ſaid.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to meaſure the Abilities and Power of *Germany*; we may diſcern them by thoſe Levies which have been raiſed upon particular occaſions, or by the joint conſent of the Free Eſtates aſſembled in the Imperial Diets. Firſt, for particular Levies made by private perſons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horſe raiſed by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweibruck*; for Aid of the *French Hugonots* againſt their King; and on the other ſide, no fewer than 7000 Horſe, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Aumal* and the Earl of *Mansfield*, for the ſervice of that King againſt the *Hugonots*. And as for Levies made by conſent of the States, we find that *Charles* the fifth, had under his Enſigns at *Vienna*, 90000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe; *Maximilian* 2. at *Jauarin* in *Hungary*, 34000 Horſe, and full 100000 Foot; and finally, that in the War betwixt *Charles* the 5. and the Proteſtant Princes, there were no leſs than 150000 men on both ſides: which numbers no one Country in *Europe* is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived that the Empire is able to raiſe 200000 Horſe and Foot, with Arms, Canon, and Ammunition of all ſorts proportionable; which the inſtance before brought do moſt plainly evidence.

Touching the Revenues of the Empire, I find them eſtimated by *Boterus*, and ſome others ſince, at ſeven millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* with the hereditary Eſtates of *Auſtria* into the Accompt. But ſince they are not ſo united unto the Empire but they may at ſome time or other be diſjoyned again, no reaſon they ſhould come into the reckoning, unleſs it be as the Revenue of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the Revenue of the Empire it ſelf, taken abſtractedly from the Perſonal and Patrimonial Eſtate of the Emperour, whoſoever he be, it can amount to no ſuch ſum: the Tribute paid by the Free or Imperial Cities (at leaſt 60 in number) amounting to no more *per ann.* than 15000 Florens, or 1500 *l. Engliſh*: and what is that, but like a Pepper-corn for a Quitrent, in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the reſt may come to. And though, in the way of ſaving Charges, (which may be reckoned as a part of his Income alſo) the Princes and Free Cities be bound to aid him in the time of War againſt the *Turk* with 3842 Horſe, and 16200 Foot, which he may challange without troubling the Diets for it: yet War is ſuch a great devourer, that if the Diets do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a ſorry Gainer by the undertaking; beſides the ſmallneſs of thoſe Forces conſidered with the numbers they are able to raiſe, and the puiſſance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the Arms of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle diſplayed with two Heads *Saturn*, armed and crowned *Mars*: the two Heads ſignifying (as ſome think) the Eaſtern and the Weſtern Empires. *Cuſpinian*, a learned *German*, conceives rather that theſe Arms are two Eagles conjoyned, and not one Eagle with two Heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation, in memory of the three Legions of *Quintilius Varus* diſcomfited by them; at what time they ſeized on two of the *Roman* Eagles (the Military Enſign of that People) the third being caſt into the Fens by the Standard-bearer. But whether it be one or two, certain it is that the one Head is quite pulled off, and the whole Body quite ſtripped of all its Feathers; the Imperial Dignity being little more than titular, deſpoiled and ſtript of all authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germany*.

Archbiſhops 6. Biſhops 34.

Univerſities 21. *viz.*

1. *Colen.*
2. *Triers.*
3. *Mentz.*
4. *Heidelberg.*
5. *Tubingen.*
6. *Ingolſtadt.*
7. *Vienna.*
8. *Herbon,*
9. *Hanaw.*
10. *Wittenberg.*
11. *Friburg.*
12. *Altorff.*
13. *Prague.*
14. *Olmuntz.*
15. *Francford.*
16. *Roſtock.*
17. *Gripſwald.*
18. *Jene.*
19. *Leipzick.*
20. *Wittenberg.*
21. *Marpurg.*

It is impoſſible for me to make a more needful or a more uſeful Addition to *Germany*, than an exact Repreſentation of the forms of their Diets, as they now ſtand, ſince the Treaty of *Munſter*, which I have therefore carefully tranſcribed from the *Sieur Heiſs*, his *Preſent State of the Empire of* Germany. Printed at the *Hague* in 1685.

And ſo much for *Germany*.

OF

DENMARK.

THE Kingdom of *DENMARK*, or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the Additions of the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the great Continent of *Norway*, with the Iſles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Eſtate, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome part of *Sweden*, on the Weſt with the main Weſtern Ocean, on the North-Eaſt with a part of *Sweden*, full North with the main Frozen Seas, and on the South with *Germany*, from which it is divided on the South-Weſt by the River *Albis*, and on the South-Eaſt by the *Trave*; a little *Iſthmus* or Neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Poſſeſſors of it; ſo called *quaſi Danorum Tractus*, *ſive Regio* (as *Mercator* hath it) becauſe the Country of that People: but rather *quaſi Danorum limes*, the Bounds or Marches of the *Danes*, bordering cloſe upon the *Dutch*, from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the Situation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate Zone, and partly within the *Artick* Circle; extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth Clime, or 55 Degree of Latitude, where it joineth with *Germany*; as far as the 71 Degree, where it hath no other bound but the Frozen Ocean. By which accompt, the longeſt Day in the moſt Southern parts hereof is 17 hours and a quarter: but in the parts extremely North, they have no Night for two whole Months, three Weeks, one Day, and ſome ſeven Hours over; as on the other ſide, no Day for the like quantity of time, when the Sun is moſt remote from them, in the other Tropick. The Air hereof by conſequence muſt be ſharp and bitter, even in the very warmeſt places. Of which, and of the nature of the Soil, we ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral Parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good Stature, clear of Complexion, well colour'd, for the moſt part healthful and long-lived; for though they eat and drink beyond meaſure, they have good Digeſtions. In Manners they are very ſevere, crafty and provident in the managing of their Affairs, but proud withal, and (as the Hiſtorian ſaid of another Perſon) *Omniunt qua dixerant fecerant ve oſtentatores*, great Vaunters of whatſoever they do or ſay, highly opinionated of their own Actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own Opinions: religious obſervers of their Words and Contracts, and ſtrict in executing Juſtice; eſpecially in puniſhing of Thieves and Pirates. Such of them as do follow the Wars prove reaſonable good Soldiers, both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea, than Field-ſervice. The Magiſtrate is wiſe rather by Experience than Study, tho' they love Learning, and eaſily attain all Languages which they give their minds to. The old Men are covetous, the young Men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as ancient Families as moſt in Chriſtendom; here being ſome of thoſe Houſes ſtill remaining which were preſent at the Pacification made betwixt *Charles* the Great and *Hemingius* King of the *Danes*: and, which adds much unto their Honour, they keep their Blood unmixt from Marriages with the Vulgar ſort; and reckon it for an high diſgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The Women are fair, diſcreet and courteous, and know well how to govern their Houſholds; exceeding fruitful in bearing of Children, but delivered of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes ſpeak the *Dutch*, or *German*, common (but with ſome difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norway* and *Swethland*.

Of no great Note for Men of Learning in the former time; it hath been fortunate in theſe laſt for, 1. *Tycho Brahe*, that renowned Aſtronomer; 2. *Hemingius*, a well-known Divine; 3. *Bartholinus*, a Phyſician and Philoſopher of good eſteem; 4. *John Cluverus*, the Hiſtorian; and of late *Puſendorſ*, *&c.* More famous for great Captains and Men of War; eſpecially for 1. *Godfrey*, or *Gotricus*, who ſetled the Government of this Kingdom, and endanger'd the great Realm of *France*. 2. *Sueno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Conquerors of *England*. 4. *Waldemar* the third, a right-valiant Prince; but not ſucceſsful in his Wars againſt the *Hanſe*-Towns, then newly entred into League. 5. *Chriſtiern* the 2d. a great Commander in the Wars, but of greater Cruelty. 6. *Chriſtiern* the IV. little inferiour unto many of his Predeceſſors. To whom we may ſubjoyn (though of different Sex) Queen *Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of theſe Northern Countries; a Lady of a maſculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all Enterpriſes, as ſhe declared in the Conqueſt of *Swethland*, and Subjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached to thoſe of *Holſtein*, (the next-neighbouring Country unto *Germany*) by S. *Angarius*, Biſhop of *Bremen*, the general Apoſtle of thoſe Northern parts, in the year 826, *Lewis* the Pious then being Emperor of the Weſt. In whoſe time *Harald*, King of *Denmark*, being expelled his Kingdoms by the Sons of *Godfrey*, or *Getricus*, was baptiſed at *Mentz*, with a great number of that People which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*, employ'd by the Emperor in that ſervice; the Converſion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, aſſigned by the Miniſtry of one *Poppo* the firſt Biſhop of *Arthuſen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongſt the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the Reign of *Olaus* the third, *Anno* 1055, or thereabout: the *Engliſh* aſſiſting in the work, and the good King ſo zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint after his deceaſe. Relapſing for the moſt part to their ancient Gentiliſm, they were finally regained unto Chriſtianity by the means of Pope *Adrian* the 4th, an *Engliſh-man*, about the year 1156, before his aſſuming of the Popedom called *Nicolaus Breakſpear*. But by whomſoever firſt converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend ſome Power and Juriſdiction over them. Which when they began to exerciſe with too much Authority, *Waldemar* the third is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer, *Naturam habemus a Deo*, *Regnum a Subditis*, *Divitias a Parentibus*, *Religionem a* Romana *Eccleſia*; *quam*, *ſi nobis invides*, *renunciamus per præſentes*, that is to ſay, We hold our Life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Anceſtors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by theſe Preſents. But this Renunciation, though then threatned, was not made till afterwards; when the whole maſs of Popery was aboliſh'd by King *Frederick* the firſt, uſing therein the Miniſtry of *Bugenhage*, a Divine of *Pomeren*, by whom they were reform'd according to the Doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches, between 1537 and 1545.

As for the Government of the Church ſince that Reformation, it continueth as before it was, by Archbiſhops and Biſhops in number as before; but much abridged of their Revenues, and a great part of their Power. For *Frederick*, though he found it neceſſary to remove the old Biſhops, (not one of which would be perſwaded to the change of Religion) yet he ſubſtituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient Maintenance, with a power of Preſidence in all Church-Aſſemblies, where they are to take the Advice of other Presbyters along with them; and out of ſuch Aſſemblies to receive Complaints, to provide remedy againſt Scandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar Inſpectors, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbiſhops and thirteen Biſhops; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Lunden*, the Biſhops of *Roſchilt*, *Odenſee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthuſen*, *Sleſwick*, and *Haderſleve*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; the Archbiſhop of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffauger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norway*; and the Biſhops of *Halar* and *Schalhelt*, for the Iſle of *Iſeland*: the Churches of *Holſtein* (formerly under the Biſhops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by Superintendents, as the reſt of the *Lutherans*,

The whole Body of the Eſtate, (as appears by this) conſiſteth chiefly of three Members: *viz.* 1. the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarſh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holſtein*, ſpecially ſo called. 2. The Kingdom of *Denmark*; comprehending both *Juitlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Iſlands: And, 3. the Kingdom of *Norway*; conſiſting of *Norway* it ſelf, and the Iſlands of the Northern Ocean. Which parts we ſhall ſurvey in order, as before laid down; premiſing firſt a word or two of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, in which the Dukedom of *Holſtein* and the two *Juitlands* are contained.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE*.

THE *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE* hath on the Eaſt the *Baltick* Sea, on the Weſt the main *German* Ocean, on the North a part of the Ocean bending into the narrow Streight or *Fretum* which they call the *Sundt*, on the South-weſt the great River of *Albis*, the *Elbe* on the South-Eaſt the ſmall River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the Neck or *Iſthmus* which unites it to *Germany*. I know that ſome contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South with the River *Eyder*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more reſemblance to a Cherſoneſe or Demy-Iſland than the other doth, diſſenting in this point from the common Opinion. It had the name of *Cherſoneſus*, ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου καὶ νήσου *a Terra & Inſula*, it being the ſame with a *Peninſula* in the *Latin*. Of which name there are five moſt famous: that is to ſay, 1. *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*; 2. *Thracica Cherſoneſus*, in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*; 3. *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartary*; 4. *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, in *India*, which we now call *Malaca*, (of all which we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) and 5. *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, where now we are. This laſt was ſo called from the *Cimbri*, the firſt Inhabitants hereof, originally deſcended from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii* and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia* as too narrow for them, they ſought out new Dwellings, and are ſaid to have firſt dwelt on the Banks of *Paulus Meotis*; where they gave name to the *Boſphorus Cimmerius* there being. Being overcome by the *Schythians*, they removed their Seats more Northward, into a Country bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great Ocean on the one ſide, and the Foreſt of *Hircynia* on the other: within which Bounds is the *Peninſula* or Country where we now are. They were a People of extraordinary big Stature, having blew and red Eyes, and lived moſt upon Theft: ſo that for their ſakes, Κίμβρους ἐπονομάζουσι Γερμανοὶ τοὺς λῃστάς, the *Germans* called all Thieves *Cimbers*. It happened that the Ocean overflowing a great part of their Country, compelled them to ſeek new Seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their Dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for ſome place to ſettle in. This Requeſt being denied, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their Swords what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cæpio*, all *Roman* Conſuls, periſhed by them, ſo that now (ſaith *Florus*) *actum eſſet de Imperio* Romano, *niſi illi ſeculo* Marius *contigiſſet*; there had been an end of the *Roman* Empire, if *Marius* had not fallen into thoſe Times; for he, as we have elſewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Juites*, and *Angles*; upon whoſe Removal into *Britain*, the greateſt part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who ſtill poſſeſs it.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* Miles, and 80 of the ſame Miles in breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of Ground 30 walled Towns, ſix Epiſcopal Sees (beſides thoſe of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*) and twenty Royal Caſtles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great Men of the Country, as the private Retirements of the King. The Soil is naturally more fit for Paſturage than Tillage, feeding ſuch multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are ſent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at preſent into the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the Province of *Juitland*.

1. The Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN*.

THE Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* where it joins to *Germany*, extending as far North as the River *Eyder*, which divides it from *Juitland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*, which ſignifies a Wood or Foreſt, according to the nature of it; the Country being low, marſhy, and full of Woods, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it theſe four Province; 1. *Wagerland*, 2. *Stormaria*, 3. *Ditmarſh*, and 4. *Holſt* or *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holſtein* which lies on the South-eaſt of this *Cherſoneſe*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Mecklenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea, on the Weſt with *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea alſo, on the South with ſome part of *Mecklenburg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed this Tract; from whence the name of *Wagria* in our *Latin* Writers.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleaſantly ſeated on the Confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billow*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which it is diſtant 5 *Italian* Miles. The River is capable of Ships of a 1000 Ton which commonly they unlade at *Travemund*, the Port-Town to the City, ſeated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was firſt built by *Adolph* II. Earl of *Holſtein*, *Anno* 1143, as others ſay, with more probability, in 970; but ſo well privileged by him and his next Succeſſors, that in ſhort time it bid defiance to its Founders, (the cauſe of many Differences betwixt it and thoſe Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it ſelf. By *Frederick* the firſt it was united to the Empire, in 1209; after whoſe death they choſe themſelves another Duke; who, having governed them 5 years, was ſubdued by the *Danes*, and the City made ſubject to that Kingdom, remaining ſo till delivered by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond; by whom again once infranchiſed, in 1270, it became Imperial; afterwards liſted amongſt the *Hanſe*-Towns, and the firſt in eſtimation of all the Company, having about 600 Ships of all ſorts (ſome of a thouſand Ton and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the moſt part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from Pirates, they are moſt of them built for burthen, and are ſlow of ſail, and little ſerviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City: It is built upon all the ſides of a riſing Hill, on the top whereof ſtandeth the Church of *Saint Mary*, (once the Cathedral of the City, for it was Epiſcopal) whence is a Deſcent to all the Gates of the City, affording to the Eye a moſt pleaſing Proſpect. The Buildings are very beautiful, and all of Brick; the Streets ſtraight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorn'd with excellent Imagery, and much admired even by skilful Workmen: and unto every private Houſe a Pipe of Water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the Pattern whereof, it hath been obſerved that the Conduits were firſt made in *London* and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany* or the more Northern Countries which can equalize it, either for the Beauty and Uniformity of the Houſes, the pleaſant Gardens, fair Streets, delightful Walks without the Walls; or for the Citizens themſelves, who are much commended for their Civility to Strangers, and ſtrict execution of Juſtice without partiality. The whole in compaſs is about ſix Miles, fortified with a double Wall, deep Ditches, and an unfordable River. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, 4 *Dutch* Miles from *Lubeck*, and near the Head of that River. 3. *Oldeſlo*, on the ſame River, in the midſt betwixt both. In the year 1688 ordered by the King of *Denmark* to be Fortified. 4. *Gronneberg*, and 5. *Newkirk*, on the *Baltick* Shore: and 6. *Sterndorp*, more within the Land, near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

2. South-weſt of *Wagerland* lieth STORMARIA, betwixt the *Elbe* and two leſs Rivers called the *Bille* and the *Stoer*: from which laſt, and the Mariſhneſs of the ſituation, or from that River and the *Murſi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Stormarſh*. Places of moſt importance are, 1. *Crempe*, on a little River ſo named, which falls not far off into the *Stoer*, and both together not much farther into the *Elb*. A Town well fortified by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the Reſiſtance which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, againſt whom it held out 13 months, and yielded at the laſt upon good Conditions, *Anno* 1628. 2. *Tychenberg*, (*Tychapolis* my Author calls) a *Dutch* mile from *Crempe*, but on the very Bank of the River *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhine*, a ſmall River upon which it is ſeated: firſt built and afterwards well fortified by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, of purpoſe to command the *Elb*, and put a ſtronger Bridle in the Mouths of the *Hamburgers*, *Anno* 1603, now held to be the ſtrongeſt piece of all his Dominions: the only Town of all this Dukedom which yielded not to the prevailing Imperialiſts in their late Wars againſt the *Danes*, *Anno* 1628. 3. *Bredeberch*, a ſtrong Town belonging to the *Rantzows*, one of the beſt pieces of the Kingdom; remarkable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Walleſtein* (Duke of *Fridland*) in the War aforeſaid: who at laſt taking it by Aſſault, put all the Soldiers to the Sword. 4. *Pinnenberg*, another ſtrong place, and of very great conſequence. 5. *Jetzeho*, or *Itzeho*, on the River *Stoer*. 6. *Gluckſtadt*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the ſaid *Chriſtiern* the fourth in 1620, who much delighted in the place, to command the paſſage up the *Elb*. 7. *Stoer*. 8. *Hamburg*, upon the *Bille*, where it falls into the *Elb*, an ancient City, built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charles* the Great, and walled by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth. Accounted ſince that time an Imperial City, and made one of the *Hanſe*, upon the firſt incorporating of thoſe Towns. Which notwithſtanding, on a Controverſie ariſing about that time betwixt the Earl of *Holſtein* and the People hereof, it was adjudged to belong to be Earls of *Holſtein*; and that determination ratified by *Charles* the Fourth, *Anno* 1374. In purſuance whereof the *Hamburghers* took the Oath of Allegiance to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of *Denmark* of that Houſe, as Earl of *Holſtein*, acknowledging him and his Succeſſors for the Lawful Lords; though ſince they have endeavour'd to ſhake off that Yoak, preſuming very much on their Power at Sea, and the aſſiſtance which they are aſſured of upon all occaſions from the reſt of the *Hanſe*-Towns. As for the Town it ſelf, it is ſeated in a large Plain, with fat and rich Paſtures round about it, well fortified by Art and Nature, the Haven being ſhut up with a ſtrong Iron Chain. The Buildings for the moſt part are of Brick, but more beautiful than well contrived; and the Streets ſomewhat of the narroweſt. The publick Structures are very fair; eſpecially the Council-houſe, adorn'd with the Statues of the Nine Worthies, carved with very great Art, the Exchange, or Meeting-place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens are generally rich, Maſters of many as great Ships as ſail on the Ocean, ſome of them 1200 Ton in Burthen, which bring in great profit, beſides the great reſort of Merchants and their Factors from moſt places elſe: ſometimes the Staple Town for the Cloth of *England*, removed on ſome Diſcontents to *Stade*, and from thence to *Holland*. It is obſerved, that there were in this Town at one time 177 Brewers, and but 40 Bakers, nor more than one Lawyer and one Phyſician. The reaſon of which diſproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their only Phyſick; their Differences ſooner ended over a Can than by order of Law; Bread being counted but a binder, and ſo not to be uſed, but in caſe of neceſſity. This City imbrac'd the Confeſſion of *Ausburg* at the firſt publication of it, yet Tolerates the *Calviniſts* too, and was kind to the *Engliſh* in 1554. In the year 1686 the King of *Denmark* ſuddenly ſat down before this City with an Army of 30000 Men; but Winter coming on, and the neighbouring Princes ſending Forces into it againſt him, he was forced to riſe without having done any thing that was conſiderable.

3. Betwixt the River *Stoer* and *Eyder*, coaſting along the *German* Ocean, lies the Province of DITMARSH, moſt properly called *Tuitchmarſh*, from the Mariſhneſs of the Ground and the *Dutch* Inhabitants, or from a mixture of thoſe People with the *Marſi*, ſpoken of before. The People being naturally of the *Saxon* Race, retain much of the Stomach and Animoſity of the ancient *Saxons* never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holſtein* (as *Wagerland* and *Stormaria* were) till *Holſtein* it ſelf was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of that Houſe, *Anno* 1474; yet would they not ſubmit unto his Authority, but held it out againſt him and ſome of his Succeſſors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquiſhed in the open Field; till they were broken and made ſubject by the Valour and good Fortune of King *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1550. Chief places in it are, 1. *Meldorp*, upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are ſo wealthy, that many of them cover their Houſes with Copper. 2. *Lunden*, oppoſite to a *Peninſula* or Demi-Iſland called *Eyderſtede*, on the Weſt ſide whereof it ſtandeth. 3. *Heininkſtede*, and 4. *Telinkſtede*; of which nothing memorable.

4. And as for HOLSTEIN it ſelf, the fourth and laſt Member of this Eſtate, though the firſt in Power and Reputation, it taketh up the Inland parts, betwixt *Stormaria* and *Juitland*, ſave that it hath an Outlet into the *Baltick* on the North-Weſt of *Wagerland*. Chief Places in it are, 1. *Kiel* (*Chilonium* in *Latin*) ſeated upon a Navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*: a Town well Traded, and having a capacious Haven, ſeldom without good ſtore of Shipping from *Germany*, *Liefland*, *Sweden*, and the reſt of *Denmark*. In the year 1665 there was alſo an Univerſity opened here. 2. *Rensborg*, the beſt Fortified Piece in all this Province. 3. *Niemunſter*, on the North Weſt of the *Stoer*, not far from the Head of it. 4. *Wilſter*, on a ſmall River ſo called. 5. *Brameſtede*, 6. *Borsholm*, not much obſervable, but for a Monaſtery in which *Henry*, one of the Earls hereof (of a younger Houſe) turned Monk and died, *Anno* 1241.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three were the *Saxons*, *Sigulons*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Ptolemy*; whom I conceive to be no other than ſome Tribes of the *Cimbri* of whom this *Cherſoneſe* took name: the two laſt of which paſſing into the name of the firſt, and in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and ſpreading all along the Coaſts of the *German* Ocean, moleſted with their Piracies and Depredations the Shores of *Britain*, known by that means unto the *Britains*, they were invited to aſſiſt them againſt the *Scots* and *Picts*. Which Action, with the aid of the *Juites* and *Angli* (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*) they perform'd ſo honeſtly as to make themſelves Maſters of the beſt part of the Iſland. Such as remained behind, not being able to defend their own againſt the *Sclaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*; which, being peopled by the *Vagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquiſh'd by *Charles* the Great, theſe on the North-ſide of the *Elb* became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and ſo continued till diſmembred by *Lotharius*, both Duke and Emperor, who gave the proper *Holſt* (or *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called) with the Province of *Stormaria* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deſerved well of him in his Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holſtein*, *Anno* 1114. By *Adolph* the ſecond, his Succeſſor, it was ſetled in this Houſe; who having made a full Conqueſt of it, cauſed it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans* from *Holland*, *Weſtphalen*, and *Frieſland*; by which means the name of *Sclaves* was at laſt worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth the Dukedom of *Sleſwick* was alſo added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whoſe Wars he ſerv'd. *Adolph* the laſt Earl of this Houſe dying without Iſſue, the whole Eſtate fell on *Chriſtiern*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hednigis* his Wife, Siſter and Heir to *Adolph* before mentioned; who, being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his Brother *Gerrard* for the ſum of 50000 Marks; and having gotten *Ditmarſh* alſo of the Emperor *Frederick* the third, prevailed ſo far as to have the whole Eſtate erected into a Dukedom, *Anno* 1414, to be held by him and his Succeſſors of the Sacred Empire. Which ſaid, we will next add the Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of HOLSTEIN.

1114 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*, made the firſt Earl of *Holſtein*.

1137 2. *Adolph* II. Son of *Adolph* the firſt.

1164 3. *Adolph* III. Son of *Adolph* the 2d, vanquiſh'd by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, loſt himſelf and his Country.

1232 4. *Adolphus* IV. in his Father's life-time recovered his Eſtate from *Waldemar* the Succeſſor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well fought Battel, *Anno* 1226, his Father then Priſoner to the *Danes*.

1261 5. *Gerrard*, the ſecond Son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder Brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, ſucceeded in *Holſtein*.

1281 6. *Henry*, the Son of *Gerrard*, the firſt that ſet up a Cuſtom-houſe at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his Tolls and Taxes.

1310 7. *Gerrard* II. Son of *Henry*, ſlain treacherouſly by the *Danes*.

1339 8. *Henry* II. Son of *Gerrard* the ſecond.

1381 9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *Henry* the ſecond, created the firſt Duke of *Sleſwick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.

1404 10. *Henry* III. Son of *Gerrard* the third.

1427 11. *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (thoſe of the younger Houſes being reckoned in) the laſt Earl of this Houſe.

1459 12. *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his Wife *Heduigis*, Siſter of *Henry* and *Adolphus* the two laſt Earls ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Holſtein*, inlarged with the addition of *Ditmarſh*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, *Anno* 1474. But ſeeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schaumburg* pretended a Right unto the whole, as the next Heir-male, according to the Conſtitutions of the Empire, of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the Brother of *Chriſtiern* put in for his ſhare, according to the ill Cuſtom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both, giving to *Otho* 43000 Florens in ready money, with the Towns of *Pienenburg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramſtede*, the ancient poſſeſſions of the Earls of *Schaumburg* and 50000 Marks to his Brother *Gerrard*, beſides his whole Intereſt in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was ſaid. By this means *Holſtein*, was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings thereof, as Dukes of *Holſtein*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither ſend unto the Diets, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick Taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of ſubjection to it more than meerly titulary. Only it was ordained at the requeſt of the Subjects when firſt they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in caſe of any grievance or unjuſt ſentence in the ordinary Courts of Juſtice, wherein they found no remedy in the ſupreme Council of the Province, it might be lawful for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the preſent time, on ſufficient Caution; ſo hath it ſeldom or never been put in practice; the very Grant or Priviledge (if ſuch it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But ſince this uniting of theſe two Eſtates, the Title of Duke of *Holſtein* and a good part of the Country was given unto *Adolphus* Brother of *Chriſtiern* the 3d. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the Garter, *Anno* 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their ſeveral turns, after whoſe death, and the death of all his Children dying without Iſſue-male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, Son of *Frederick* the ſecond, and Brother of *Chriſtiern* the fourth, created Knight of the Garter by King *James*, *Anno* 1605, in whoſe Poſterity it remains till this preſent time.

The Dukes of HOLSTEIN-SLESWICK, of the Line of *Denmark*.

1481 13. *Frederick*, ſecond Son of *Chriſtiern* King of *Denmark*, was by his Father aſſigned his Succeſſor in the Dukedoms of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein*, but was put by by his elder Brother *Chriſtiern* II. King of *Denmark*, but he ſucceeded his Brother in the year 1523, both in the Dukedoms and Kingdom.

1533 14. *Chriſtiern* III. Son of *Frederick*.

1559 15. *Adolph*, Brother of *Chriſtiern* III. had the Title of Duke of *Holſtein*, he was by Queen *Elizabeth* made Knight of the Garter in 1560. This Prince Conquer'd the Inhabitants of *Ditmarſh*, and was a Perſon of great Valour and Worth: So that the *Hamburgers* did him Homage in 1603.

1586 16. *Adolph*, Son of the former, was ſlain the Battel of *Leipſick* in 1631.

1631 17. *Frederick*, who was born in 1597; and is famous for his Ambaſſy to the King of *Perſia*, ſent through *Moſcovy* in the year 1633. He having no Male-iſſue was ſucceeded by

1659 18. *Chriſtian Albert*, his Son born in 1641, but at this time Duke of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*, who was forced by the King of *Denmark* in 1675, to reſign his Dukedoms of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*, who thereupon took and diſmantelled tell'd the ſtrong Towns of *Tonningen* and *Wiſmar*, which is now under debate, the Neighbouring Princes having eſpouſed the Intereſts and cauſe of the Duke of *Holſtein*, he has a Son named *Frederick*, born in the the year 1671, who is his Heir.

Theſe latter Dukes from *Adolph*, Brother of *Chriſtiern* the third, to *Chriſtian-Albert*, were Homagers to the Crown of *Denmark*, and their Dominions much leſs than that of the former Dukes. *Frederick*, Father of the preſent Duke of *Holſtein*, joining with the *Swedes* againſt the *Danes*, forced *Frederick* III. by the Treaty of *Roſchild* in 1658 to declare him an Independent Prince; but *Chriſtian* the 5th, the preſent King of *Denmark*, by the Treaty of *Renſburg*, forced the preſent Duke to ſubmit to him in 1675. The neighbour Princes in the Year 1687 and 1688 endeavoured an Accommodation of this Difference, which the 30th of *June* 1689, was obtained upon theſe following Articles.

The Treaty of Accommodation between Denmark *and* Holſtein, *Concluded and Signed on the 30th of* June, 1689.

Be it known unto all, That the great Differences that have for a long time continued between the King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, &c. and the Duke of *Holſtein Sleſwick*, have, by the zealous Mediation of his Imperial Majeſty, and the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, been finally adjuſted in the following manner.

I. That there be a General Amneſty, and perpetual Oblivion, of whatever has been tranſacted or done by the Miniſters and Subjects on either ſide; none of which ſhall be hereafter queſtioned or called to Account for the ſame: Nor ſhall any of the Duke of *Holſtein*'s Subjects, who may have ſubmitted themſelves to the King of *Denmark*, be, on that account, ill look'd upon; But, on the contrary, an unalterable Friendſhip and Union is hereby renewed and eſtabliſhed between the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein*, and their Heirs and Succeſſors.

II. That the King of *Denmark* ſhall reſtore to the Duke all his Lands and Goods, with the Sovereignty, Regalities, Right of raiſing Monies, making Alliances, building Fortifications, and Garriſoning the ſame; And all other his Rights, Pre-eminences, and Priviledges, as he enjoyed the ſame, according to the *Weſtphalian* and Northern Treaties, till the year 1675; together with what appertains to him by Virtue of the Treaty concluded at *Fountainbleau*, which is hereby again confirmed; And ſhall likewiſe reſtore to all his Servants and Subjects their Goods and Principal Monies.

III. Whereas the Duke, among his other Demands, deſires that the King will free the Iſland *Femeren*, and the Bayliwicks of *Steinhorſt*, *Tremsbuttel*, and *Trittau*, from the Engagements they are now under, and reſtore the ſame without any Incumbrance to his Highneſs: His Majeſty, farther to ſhew his ſincere Friendſhip and Brotherly Inclination, will diſcharge the Bayliwick of *Trittau*, from what is ſtands engaged to him for, altho' a conſiderable Sum is ſtill due to him on that account, and will reſtore the ſame with the other Lands. But for what concerns the ſaid Iſland and Bayliwicks of *Femeren*, *Steinhorſt*, and *Tremsbuttel*, ſeeing the ſame are not in the hands of his Majeſty, but of his Brother his Royal Highneſs Prince *George* of *Denmark*; The Mediators, for the greater ſtrengthening and maintaining the ſo neceſſary Peace of the North and the Lower *Saxon* Circle, in which the common Good is ſo highly concerned, have undertaken to find out a way, without any Charge or Prejudice to his Majeſty, whereby his Royal Highneſs ſhall be ſatisfied for his Pretentions upon the ſaid Iſland and Bayliwicks; ſo that the ſame may, without any incumbrance, be reſtored to the Duke of *Holſtein*.

IV. On the other ſide, the Duke not only renounces all Pretentions he may have upon the King on account of his having ſeized, and for a time poſſeſſed, his Lands; But will likewiſe quit the Proceſs he has begun before the Imperial Court againſt the Duke of *Ploen*.

V. For what concerns the Union and Agreements between the Two Families: and the Treaties made till the year 1675, the ſame ſhall continue in their former Force; together with the *Weſtphalian*, Northern, and *Fountainbleau* Treaties. And the King ſhall on his ſide quit all Arrears and Contributions that remain uncollected.

VI. The Matters that remain undetermined, ſhall be amicably compoſed, or referred to the Law; but neither ſide ſhall attempt any thing by way of Force.

VII. The Ratifications of this Agreement ſhall, within 14 days from the Date hereof, be exchanged at *Altena*; And the Contents hereof put in full Execution within eight days after. *In Witneſs, &c.*

2. The Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

IN which 1. *JUITLAND* containeth all the reſt of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holſtein* by the River *Eyder*, the ancient Boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*; but principally by a long Trench and Wall from one Sea to the other, of ſuch breadth, that a Chariot or two Horſe-men a-breaſt might ride upon it. Firſt built in imitation of the *Picts* Wall in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the Great; either to hinder the daily Incurſions of the *Saxons*, as ſome, or to ſtop the current of the Victories of the ſaid *Charles*, as others think. The Tract thereof, ſtill very eaſie to be ſeen, is called *Dennewerk* (or the *Danes Work*) to this very day.

It was ſo called from the *Juites*, who, together with the *Angli* and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a Conqueſt of the beſt part of *Britain*. The Country ſo aboundeth in Cattel, that it ſendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, beſides great ſtore of Butter, Cheeſe, Tallow, Hides, and Horſes, divided commonly into *North Juitland*, and *South Juitland*, or *Juitland* ſpecially ſo called, and the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*.

SOUTH-JUITLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe*, which lies next to *Holſtein*; called *South-Juitland*, from the Southern ſituation of it; and *Sleſwick*, from the chief Towns of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the moſt part, is plain, little ſwelled with Mountains; the Fields whereof do interchangeably yield both Fiſh and Corn. For during one three years they ſow it conſtantly, and reap the Fruits of it, and for the next three, let the Pools overflow the Land, to the end the Fiſh may eat up the Graſs, (whom they catch as often as they pleaſe) and the Mud which is left behind inrich the Soil. But beſides their Pools, they have alſo on the *Baltick* ſhores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well ſtored with Fiſh, and with Salmons eſpecially.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Flensborch*, ſeated among very high Mountains on the Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port ſo deep, ſo ſafe, and ſo commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their Ships cloſe to their houſes. *Chriſtian* the 5th, the preſent King of *Denmark*, was born in this Town the 18th of *April*, 1646. 2. *Huſem*, or *Huſſum*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the Mouth of the River *Eyder*. 3. *Haderſleve*, a Biſhop's See, if not rather ſome Town or Mannor of the Biſhop's of *Sleſwich*, ſituate on a Navigable In-let of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almoſt encompaſſed: beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldeſt Son of King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, then Duke of *Holſtein*, but finiſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Denmark*. 4. *Londenburg*, in the *Peninſula* called *Eyderſtede*, over againſt *De Strandt*, an Iſland of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Steinberg*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gottorp*, a ſtrong Fort or

Caſtle of the Duke of *Sleſwick*'s, at the end of a large Bay or In-let of the *Baltick* alſo: remarkable for the Toll-booth or Cuſtom-houſe there erected, at which there is Toll paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen ſent out of the *North-Juitland* into *Germany*. 7. *Sleſwick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Hydebui*, built, as they ſay, by *Hethe* a Queen of the Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleſwick*, as the Town upon the River *Sley*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Epiſcopal See, and made the Head of the Dukedom, ſo giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom firſt erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel*, a former King, *Anno* 1280, to be held by him under the Right and Soveraignty of the Kings thereof. But the Male iſſue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holſtein*, as before was ſaid, *Anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, ſhe extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; but it was again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his Son *Adolphus*. After whoſe death it fell together with *Holſtein*, upon *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenburg* King of *Denmark*, as before related, by whom it was incorporated with that Crown, never ſince aliened, but aſſigned ſometimes in Portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the Sons of *Alexander*, ſirnamed of *Sunderborg*, (the place of his Nativity) Son of *John*, one of the younger Sons of King *Chriſtiern* the third, who was ſucceeded by

1. *Alexander*, born in 1573, he died in 1627.
1627 2. *John Chriſtiern*, born in 1607.
1653 3. *Chriſtiern Adolph*, born in 1641.

NORTH-JUITLAND, the moſt Northern part of all the *Cherſoneſe*, hath on the South the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, but on all other parts of the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Biſhopricks, into four Dioceſes or Diſtricts; that is to ſay.

1. The Dioceſs of *RIP* or *RIPEN*, bordering next to *Sleſwick*, containing 30 Prefectures or Herets, (as they uſe to call them) ſeven Cities or walled Towns, and ten Caſtles. The chief of which are, 1. *Ripen*, the Epiſcopal See, ſituate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Kolding*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* See; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Chriſtiern* the third built a publick School, one of my Authors calls it an Univerſity.

2. The Dioceſs of *ARTHUSEN*, lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 Herets or Prefectures, ſeven Cities or walled Towns, and five Caſtles. The Chief whereof are, 1. *Arhuſen*, the Epiſcopal See, ſeated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port and well frequented; the firſt Biſhop hereof being that *Poppo* who converted this Nation; Chriſtianity and Epiſcopacy going for the moſt part hand in hand together. 2. *Schanderborg*, on the South of *Arhuſen*, 3. *Kallo*, a ſtrong Caſtle of the Kings, ſeated in the inmoſt part of a large Bay, occaſioned by the Promontory or Cape of *Hillenis*, extending hence two *Dutch* miles to the high Hill of *Ellemanberg*. Oppoſite whereunto, and pertaining to this Juriſdiction, lie the Iſlands of 1. *Sumſoe*, 2. *Hielm*, 3. *Tuen*, 4. *Hiarnee*, (perhaps *Gerno*) 5. *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The Dioceſs of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhuſen*, containeth ſixteen Herets, the Iſlands of 1. *Jegen*, 2. *Hanſholm*, 3. *Oſtholm*, 4. *Ciſland*, 5. *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*: three Cities or walled Towns, and as many Caſtles. The Principal of which is *Wiborch*, the Epiſcopal See, an Inland City, but ſituate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limfort*. The ordinary Seat of Judicature for both the *Juitlands*, for all Cauſes, as well Criminal as Civil: the Court continually ſitting from one day to another, unleſs perhaps the Judges do ſometimes adjourn it for their own refreſhments.

4. The Dioceſs of *BURGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying farther North, is commonly ſubdivided into four parts or Members: that is to ſay, 1. *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limfors*, on the *Baltick* ſide, whoſe chief Town is *Alborch*, the ordinary Seat and Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times ſtiled *Alburgenſis*, ſituate on the Bay aforeſaid, which, opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth through the main Land Weſtward almoſt as far as the *German* Ocean. 2. *Morſet*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three Prefectures or Herets, the Town of *Nicoping*, the Caſtle of *Lunſted*, and the Iſle of *Ageroe*. 3. *Hanheret*, on the North-Weſt of the Bay of *Limfort*, containing 4 Herets, the Town of *Thyſtad*, where *Chriſtiern* the third, founded a publick School, or ſuch another Univerſity as that of *Kolding*, the Caſtle of *Orum*, and the Iſlands of *Oland* and *Oxholm*. There is in this part alſo, the high Rock called *Skaringelint*, a noted Sea-mark, fitly ſerving to give notice to the Sailour of the Quick ſands which lye underneath it and about this Coaſt. 4. *Wenſyſſel*, *Venſilia*, or *Wenſlie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vadulorum ſedes*, the Seat of the *Vandals*, taketh up all the reſt of the North of *Juitland*, containing ſix Prefectures, the Iſlands of 1. *Groyſholm*, 2. *Hertzholm*, and 3. *Tidſholm*; three Towns, and one Caſtle: the moſt remarkable of which is *Schagen*, within the moſt Northernly point of all this *Cherſoneſe*. In this part is a very high Mountain called Mount *Alberg*, in which are found ſome marks and remainders of the ancient Giants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Juitlands* in the time of *Ptolomy* and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phunduſi*, *Charudes*, and in the moſt Northern Tracts the *Cimbri*, of whom the four firſt were but Tribes or Nations. Theſe moving toward the South in that great Expedition againſt *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals* on the *Roman* Empire, occaſioned the *Juits*, and *Angli* to inlarge or ſhift their Dwellings, each taking up the parts which lay neareſt to them. The *Juites*, or *Gutæ*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolomy*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Juitland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*. poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old Friends and Confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleſwick*) where *Angelen*, now an obſcure Village, once of greater note, doth preſerve their memory. But theſe uniting with the *Saxons* in the Conqueſt of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep poſſeſſion of the Country againſt the new Invaders, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them; by whom the Country being conquered as far as to the River *Eyder*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom: of whom we ſhall ſay more in the cloſe of all, firſt taking a ſurvey of the *Baltick* Iſlands, and ſuch Provinces on the main Land of *Scandia* as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

John, Brother of *Frederick* 2. King of *Denmark*, was the Founder of the ſeveral Branches of the Dukedoms of *Holſtein*, which are theſe following.

1. SUNDERBURG.

1. *Alexander*, born in the year 1573, and in the Diviſion with his Brothers, poſſeſſed of *Sunderburg*, part of the Iſland of *Alſen*, and part of *Sunderwick*, he had ten Sons, and died in the year 1627.

1627 2. *John Chriſtian*, eldeſt Son of *Alexander*, born in the year 1607, he Married *Ann* of *Oldenburg*, by whom in the year 1641, he had *Chriſtian Adolph*, and died in the year 1653.

1653 3. *Chriſtian Adolph*, Son of *John*, now living, he has a Son named *Leopald Chriſtian*, born in the year 1678, who is now living with his Father at *Franzhague*, in the Dukedom of *Sax-Lawenburg*.

2. NORDBVRG.

1. *Frederick* the 2d. Son of *John* Duke of *Holſtein*, was the Founder of this Line, he died in the year 1658.

1658 2. *John Bogiſlaus*, the eldeſt Son of *Frederick*, was born in the year 1629, and died in the year 1680, having never been Married.

1680 2. *Rodolphus Frederick*, the Brother of *John Bogiſlaus*, and 3d Son of *Frederick*, ſucceeded his Brother, and left behind him one Son.

1688 3. *Erneſt Leopald*, born in the year 1684, and ſucceeded his Father at the Age of 4 years, and is now Educated in the Court of *Wolfembuttel*.

3. GLVCKSBVRG.

1. *Philip*, the 3d. Son of *John*, was the Founder of this third branch, he married *Sophia*, *Hedwige*, of the Houſe of *Sax-Lawenburg*, by whom he had eleven Children.

2. *Chriſtian*, his eldeſt Son, was born in 1627, and is ſtill living in the Caſtle of *Glucksburg*: *Philip Erneſt*, his eldeſt Son, was born in 1673, 2. *Joachim Adolph* in 1679, and *Chriſtian*, *Auguſt* in 1681.

4. PLOEN.

There remains the branch of *Ploen*, the Founder of which was *Joachim Erneſt*, the fourth Son of *John*, who died in the year 1671, 80 years of Age.

1671 2. *John Adolph*, Son of *Joachim* born in 1634, who is now living, he has three Sons, *Adolph Auguſtus*, born in 1680. 2. *Joachim Erneſt* in 1681. 3. *John Vlrick* in 1684.

2. THE *BALTICK ISLANDS* are in number 35, and are ſo called, becauſe they lie diſperſed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans*, *de Ooſt Zee*, anciently by ſome *Mare Suevicum*, by *Pomponius*, *Mela Sinus Codanus*, by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally *Mare Balticum*, becauſe the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by ſome Writers of the middle and darker time called *Balthia*. It beginneth at the narrow paſſage called the *Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia* and *Lituania*. The reaſons why this Sea, being ſo large, doth not ebb and flow, are, 1. The Narrowneſs of the Streight by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2. the Northern ſituation of it, whereby the Celeſtial Influences have leſſer power upon it. The principal of this great ſhole of Iſlands are, 1. *Seland*, 2. *Funen*, or *Fionia*, 5. *Langland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falſtre*, 6. *Aria*, 7. *Alſen*, 8. *Tuſing*, 9. *Ween*, 10. *Femera*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of leſs note we ſhall only name, and ſo paſs them over.

1. *SELAND*, the greateſt Iſland of the *Baltick* Seas, is ſituate near the main Land of *Scandia*, parted from it by a narrow Streight or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt* or *Sound*. A Streight through which all Ships which have any trading to or from the *Baltick*, muſt of neceſſity take their courſe; all other Paſſages being barred up with impaſſible Rocks, or otherwiſe prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their Goods. So that being the only ſafe Paſſage which theſe Seas afford, one may ſometimes ſee two or three hundred Ships in a day paſs through it: all which pay a Toll or Impoſition to the King, according to their Bills of lading. And to ſecure this Paſſage, and command all Paſſengers, there are two ſtrong Caſtles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helſingburg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Iſland which is called *Cronenburg*.

But before we come to this Caſtle, we muſt view the other parts of the Iſland, being in length two days journey, and almoſt as much in breadth: the Soil ſo fertile, that, without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all Neceſſaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Codanonia*, and containeth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Caſtles. The principal whereof are, 1. *Haffen*, or *Haſnia*, the Metropolis of the Iſlands, by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven of Merchants*; ſituate near the Sea, with an handſom Port; the Iſle of *Amager*, which lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of the Town, making a very ſafe Road for all kinds of Shipping. The Town is of an orbicular form, and reaſonably well fortified; but the buildings mean, for the moſt part of Clay and Timber, only to be commended for a ſpacious Market-place: Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and Situate in the heart of thoſe Dominions, is the Palace-Royal, built of Free-ſtone in form of a Quadrangle, but of no great Beauty or Magnificence. Moſt memorable for the Univerſity here founded by *Henry*, or *Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, by him and the ſucceeding Princes liberally endowed. In the year 1659, the *Swedes* with a potent Army, beſieged this City, but were beaten off with great Loſs, and the year following, the City was honour'd with the Title of an Archbiſhop's See. 2. *Fredericksburg*, amongſt Woods of Beech, built for a place of Pleaſure by *Frederick* the ſecond, where the King hath a fine Houſe, and a little Park, in which (amongſt other foreign Beaſts) are ſome Fallow Deer tranſported hither out of *England* in the 24th year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Roſchilt*, not walled but counted for a City, as a See Epiſcopal; the Biſhops whereof have anciently had the honour of Crowning and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the Cathedral Church hereof are to be ſeen the Tombs of many of the *Daniſh* Kings; ſome of them very fair and ſumptuous, the moſt mean and ordinary. It is famous for a Treaty of Peace, here made between the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden* in the year 1658. The Biſhoprick was erected here in the year 1012, by *Sweno* King of *Denmark*. 4. *Sora*, of old times beautified with a goodly Monaſtery, the Revenues whereof, at the alteration of Religion, were converted to the maintenance of a Free-School built here by *Frederick* the firſt. But in the year 1623, *Chriſtiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other diſſolved Monaſteries, the one in the Iſle of *Lawland*, and the other in *Juitland*, founded here a new Univerſity, for the better ſupply of learned Miniſters for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furniſhed it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences for its firſt Profeſſors. 5. *Elſenore*, or *Helſingore*, a Village only, but much frequented by Sea-faring men as their Ships paſs by the ſound, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle of *Cronenburg*, built with uncredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the ſecond; the foundation of it being laid on huge Stones ſunk into the Sea, and ſo faſtned together, that no ſtorm or Tempeſt, how violent ſoever, is able to ſhake it; well fortified as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace and a Fort, being ſince the firſt building of it the moſt conſtant Reſidence of the Kings of *Denmark*, who from hence may eaſily diſcern each Ship which ſails through the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or leſs unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleaſing proſpect. By the Commodity of this and the oppoſite Caſtle, the King doth not only ſecure his Cuſtoms, but very much ſtrengthen his Eſtate: the Caſtles being ſo near, and the Streights ſo narrow, that, by the addition of ſome few Ships, he may keep the greateſt Navy that is from paſſing by him.

Unto the Government and Juriſdiction of this Iſland belong many others; the principal whereof are, 1. *A-*

magria, *Amager*, or *Amach*, which helps to make up the Port or Road of *Copenhagen*, ſpoken of before; planted with *Hollanders* brought hither by the procurement of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond. 2. *Mund*, or *Moen-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stekoe*. 3. (2) *HVENE*, or *WEEN*, a little South of *Cronenburg* Caſtle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite ſo broad; remarkable only for the Studies of that famous Aſtronomer *Tycho Brayhe*, to whom *Frederick* the ſecond gave this Iſland, that living in a private and ſolitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day moſt obſervable for the Caſtle of *Vranopolis*, or *Vrenborg*, where the greateſt part of his Mathematical Inſtruments are preſerved in ſafety.

3. *FIONIA*, or *FVNEN*, the ſecond Iſland of account in all the *Baltick*, is ſituate betwixt *Seland* and *Juitland*, from which laſt it is parted by a Streight called *Middleſar Sundt*, ſo narrow, and of ſo ſmall a Sea, that the Iſland and the *Cherſoneſe* ſeem joyned together. A Country of a pleaſant and delightful Situation, and as fruitful withal; containing 12 *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 Herets or Prefectures, 16 Towns, and 6 Royal Caſtles, beſides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens Houſes. The chief whereof are, 1. *Odenſee*, or *Othenſche* (called in Latin, *Othonia*) an Epiſcopal See, founded here, at the firſt converſion of this People, by *Otho* the Great, whence it had the name. The Town is not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Canute*, the other to Saint *Francis*: (in which *Chriſtian* the 2. King of *Denmark*, and *John* his Father, were both buried,) ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, from which the reſidue of the Towns are almoſt equally diſtant; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated for Trade and Merchandiſe, as they do not only traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Ruſſia*, *Flanders* and *Germany*, 2. *Nyborch*, 3. *Foborch*, 4. *Swynborch*, 5. *Middleſar*, whence the Streight is ſo named. 6. *Bowens*, and 7. *Kartemunde*; all ſeated on ſome Haven, or convenient Creek. The principal of the Caſtles are, 1. *Newborg*, 2. *Hagenſchow*, 3. *Eſcheborg*, 4. *Hinſgagel*, 5. the Court of *Rugard*. In this Iſland, not far from the Caſtle of *Hagenſchow*, is the Mountain of *Oſſenburg*, where *John Ranzovius*, *Anno* 1430. diſcomfited the great Army of *Chriſtopher*, the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in thoſe unſettled times to invade the Kingdom, under colour of reſtoring *Chriſtiern* the ſecond formerly depoſed; in which Fight the Earl of *Hoye* and *Teckleborg* were both ſlain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like Pretenders. The *Swedes* harrals'd this Iſland very much in the year 1659, but were at laſt beaten out with great loſs in a Battle fought near *Nyborg*.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 leſſer Iſlands, moſt of them inhabited: the chief of which are.

4. *LANGLAND*, ſeven *Dutch* miles in length, and five broad, in which beſides many Villages and Gentlemens Houſes, we have the Town of *Rudkoping*, and the Caſtle of *Fraenkar*. This and *Lawland* are by *John Bunon* taken for one Iſland, as in truth they are.

5. *LAWLAND*, disjoyned from *Seland* by a little narrow Streight called *Grone-ſundt*; ſo plentiful of Corn and Cheſnuts, that Ships full fraighted with them are ſent yearly hence. An Iſland which, beſides many Caſtles, Villages and Manſion-houſes of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, *viz.* 1. *Nyſtadt*, 2. *Naſco*, 3. *Togrop*, 4. *Richus*, and 5. *Mariboane*; in which laſt anciently was a very rich Monaſtery, the Revenues whereof are now imployed for the endowment of the new Univerſity of *Sora*, founded by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, as before was noted. This Iſland is ſo called *quaſi Lageland*, from its low ſituation, on the Weſt-ſide, it has a ſtrong Caſtle called *Naſcoa*, which in the year 1659, ſtood a long Siege againſt the Victorious *Swede*.

6. *FALSTRE*, four *German* miles in length, and two broad, affording plenty of Corn yearly to ſome neighbouring Iſlands. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Nicopen*, which for the Elegancy of the place and Pleaſantneſs of the Situation is called the *Naples* of *Denmark*. *Chriſtopher* King of *Denmark*, died here in the year 1333. 2. *Stubeopen*, from whence there is the ordinary paſſage into *Germany*, ſeven *Dutch* miles hence.

7. *TVSING*, not far from *Swynborch*, or *Swineburgh*, a Town of *Fionia*; a *Dutch* mile in length ſituate in a dangerous and troubleſom Sea, from whence is no ſafe paſſage either to *Seland*, *Funen*, or *Juitland*, tho' much diſtant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Aſſens*, towards *Juitland*; 2. *Niburg*, towards *Seland*, and 3. the Court of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Roſencrantz*.

8. *FEMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitful and well-peopled Iſland, having in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Pitterſdorp*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not ſo much in danger of being made ſubject to the Imperialiſts by the taking of *Holſtein* and both *Juitlands*, as by planting too ſtrong a Garriſon in this ſmall Iſland: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, againſt all Invaſions, *Anno* 1628. Of the remaining Iſlands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*, 2. *Romſo*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agernis*, 9. *Hellenis*, 10. *Jerdo*, 11. *Birkholm*, of which nothing memorable. This Iſland was made more famous by a Sea fight between the *Danes* and the *Swedes* and *Hollanders*, in the year 1645.

Amongſt theſe Iſlands, but not ſubordinate
to *Fionia*, are,

9. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, conſiſting of 3 Pariſhes, ſome Gentlemens Houſes, and the Town and Caſtle of *Koping*: ſuppoſed to be the habitation of the *Arrii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; but a Colony rather of them, as I ſuppoſe. And not far off,

10. *ALSEN*, another little Iſland, but of more repute called in Latin, *Elyſia*, oppoſite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flensborg* in the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, to which it alſo appertaineth. Well ſtored it is with Beaſts for profit, and Game for pleaſure; ſo populous, that ſome thouſands of men may be eaſily and ſuddenly raiſed in it; conſiſting of 13 Pariſhes and 4 Towns: that is to ſay, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Oſterholm*, 3. *Norderborg*, and 4. the good Town and Caſtle of *Sunderborg*, one of the ordinary Reſidences of the Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and honoured with the Birth of many of their Princes of the Royal Family. Some think it was the Habitation anciently of the *Elyſii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*: But being the *Angli* in thoſe times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when ſome Colonies of the *Angli* ſeated themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as before was ſaid, ſome of the *Arii* and *Elyſii* might go along for company, and plant themſelves near them and theſe Iſlands.

11. *BORNHOLM*, the laſt of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is ſituate more Eaſtward, oppoſite to that part of *Scandia* which is called *Bleking*, betwixt it and *Pomeren*. And is 4 *German* miles long and 2 broad. An Iſle of excellent Paſturage, breeding plenty of Cattle, wherewith, as alſo with Butter, Cheeſe, Wooll, Hides, and ſome ſtore of Fruits, they ſupply the wants of ſome of their neighbours; beſides good quantities of Powdered Beef and Mutton, which they barrel up and ſell to Marriners. It containeth many good Towns and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Iſland. Both Town and Iſland were pawned by ſome former Kings unto thoſe of *Lubeck*; from them redeemed by King *Frederick* the ſecond for a great ſum of mony, after it had been in their poſſeſſion about 50 years. This Iſland in the year 1658, was yielded to the *Swedes*, but the Inhabitants deſtroyed their Garriſon, and return'd under the Crown of *Denmark*.

Gotland, an Iſland near the Coaſt of *Sweden*, 18 miles long, and 5 broad, in which is the Town of *Wisbay*, formerly of great Trade, but now ruin'd. This Iſland was taken by the *Swedes* in 1645, but recovered by the *Dane* in 1677.

Theſe Iſlands in the time of *Pomponius Mela* were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be ſeven ; the reſidue either not inhabited,or not taken notice of, are no where mentioned in the Ancients. Of theſe ſeven ; the greateſt and beſt peopled was called *Codanonia*, (ſuppoſed to be *Seland*,) in which the ſaid Author placeth the *Teutoni*. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia* ſuppoſed by him to be an Iſland. From this, or from the Sea adjoyning,called *Sinus Codanus*,the people of theſe Iſlands and the next Eaſtern Continent took the name of *Danes* ; ſpreading the name afterwards, as they did their Conqueſts : of which more anon. In the mean time we muſt croſs over the *Sound*, and take notice of ſuch other parts of this Kingdom as lie on the other ſide thereof, in the vaſt Continent or Demy-Iſland (which you will) of *Scandia* : of which ſomewhat muſt be firſt premiſed, in regard that not only ſome parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norway* (the Northern Iſlands excepted) are contained in it,

3. S*CANDIA*, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandinavia*, by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the Eaſt that Bay or Branch of the *Baltick* which is called the *Finniſch* and *Bodner* Seas, on the North and Weſt the main Ocean, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick* or *Ooſt Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it, joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Iſthmus*, or Neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner Zee*, not far from *Wardhuys*. In regard of ſo great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Ancients thought to be an Iſland, but *incomperta magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatneſs, as both *Pytheas* and *Xnephon Lampſacenus* do affirm in *Pliny* : by one of which it is called *Baſilia*,by the other *Baltia* ; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoyning. But later Navigations and Experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no Iſland, but a part of the Continent and a great one too ; containing the whole Kingdom of *Norway*, the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and ſome part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark* is ſituate on the South of this great *Peninſula*, and divided into the three Provinces of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Blebing* : and in them are 23 Herets or Prefectures, and 15 Cities.

1. *HALLANDIA*, or *HALLAND*, hath on the Eaſt the wild Woods which part it from *Gothland*, on the Weſt the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juitland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and ſpecially ſo called, on the South *Scandia* or *Schonen*, A Country which for the healthfulneſs of the Air, plainneſs of the Soil, commodiouſneſs of Havens, plenty of Fiſh, pleaſure of Hunting, for inexhauſtible Mines of Braſs and Lead, (with ſome veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and Civility of the Inhabitants, is not inferior to any. Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Laholm*, 2. *Halmſtad*, Fortified by *Chriſtiern* the 4th King of *Denmark* againſt the *Swedes*, then poſſeſs'd of *Warberg*, 3. *Falkenborch* : all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable Streams, whoſe names I find not. 4. *Warsberg*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an Hill ; taken and garriſoned by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, *Anno* 1569. This Province in the year 1645, with all its Apendages, was reſigned up to the *Swedes*, and is ſtill poſſeſſed by them; it is 16 *German* miles long, from *Kol* to *Elſeborg*.

2. *SCANIA*, or *SCHONEN*, hath on the Eaſt *Bleſcida* or *Bleking*, on the Weſt the *Sound*, running along the ſhore hereof for the ſpace of twenty *German* miles,on the North *Halland*, on the South the *Baltick* or *Ooſt Zee*. The Country is of the ſame nature with *Halland*, as before deſcribed,the Character of that pertaining to all the three ; this having over and above as peculiar to it, that the Sea-ſhores are ſtored with ſuch Sholes of Herrings, that ſometimes Ships are ſcarce able with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour, it is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which are, 1. *Lunden*, an Archbiſhop's See, the Metropolitan of *Denmark* and *Norway* ; advanced unto that honour by the means and Mediation of *Ericus* the firſt, who purpoſely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that buſineſs ; the Church of *Denmark* being before that time ſubject to the Archbiſhops of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is ſituate ſomewhat within the Land, but the Cathedral eaſily diſcernable by Mariners as they ſail along. The City is but mean, and were it not for the Cathedral, of no beauty at all. But that indeed is affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art ; eſpecially for the Clock, the Dial, and ſome outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiouſly ſet out with divers Colours are to be ſeen diſtinctly the Year, Month, Week, Day, and Hour of every day throughout the year ; with the Feaſts, both movable and fixed ; together with the Motion of the Sun and Moon ; and their paſſage through each Degree of the Zodiack. Then for the Clock, it is ſo framed by artificial Engines, that whenſoever it is to ſtrike, two horſe-men encounter one another, giving as many blows a-piece as the Bell ſounds hours : and on the opening of a door there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Chriſt* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their ſeveral Trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and preſenting ſeverally their Gifts ; two Trumpeters ſounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that Proceſſion. 2. *Malmoge*, or *Elbogen*, called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, juſt oppoſite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well traded Port ; the Birth-place of *Gaſper Bartholinus*, otherwiſe called *Malmogius Danus*, that great Mathematician, ſuppoſed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial before deſcribed. 3. *Trelleberg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, 4. *Landſcrodn*, on the Sea-ſide, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 5. *Helſenborg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, juſt oppoſite to *Helſinore* and *Cronenburg* in *Seland* ; the other of the two Keys which openeth into the *Sound*. 6. *Rottenby*, a Frontier Town bordering on *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*. 7. *Chriſtiana*, or *Chriſtiendorp*, a ſtrong piece built by *Chriſtiern* the 4th, *Anno* 1604, compaſſed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marſhes, thought to be impregnable. This whole province in the year 1658, was reſigned to the King of *Sweden*, who has opened an Univerſity at *Lunden* in 1668. And the *Danes* in 1676, attempting the recovery of it the Fourteenth of *December*, received a great defeat.

3. *BLESCIDA*, or *BLEKING*, is bounded on the Eaſt and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Verindia*, a Province of *Swetheland*, on the Weſt with *Schania* or *Schonen* ; more Mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking ſomewhat of the former Character which he had of *Halland*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Vſted*, on the Mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Chriſtiernburg*, in Latin *Chriſtianopolis*, called by the *Danes Chriſtianſtad*, on the borders of *Swethland* ; raiſed out of the Ground by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdom on that ſide, *Anno* 1604, but not long after by a warlike ſtratagem, ſurpriſed by the *Swedes*, in the late War betwixt thoſe Kingdoms in the year 1611 ; deſtroyed and diſpeopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleaſant Object, but ſince repaired and repleniſhed. 3. *Ahuys*, upon the River which divides the Kingdom not far from *Chriſtiernberg*. This Province was alſo yielded to the *Swedes* in 1658, but *Chriſtian* the Fifth King of *Denmark*, opened a way to the regaining of it by taking *Croenſtad* and *Chriſtianſtad*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guta* and *Daucjones*, taking up the South parts of this great *Peninſula. Meridionalia tenent Guta & Daucjones*, as we find in *Ptolomy*, *Geogr. l.* 2. *c.* 11. which in all probability muſt be meant of theſe Provinces. Of theſe the *Gutes*, paſſing over into the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the North parts of it, ſince from them called *Juitland.* The reſt, uniting with the People of thoſe many Iſlands which lie together in the Bay or Gulf call'd *Sinus Codanus* (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the name of *Danes*; and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof above 1000 years before the Birth of our Saviour. Firſt taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Juſtinian* the firſt; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived that they made themſelves Maſters of ſo much of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as had been formerly poſſeſſed by the *Juites* and *Angli*, whoſe forſaken or ill-peopled Seats they poſſeſſed themſelves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the Great, living in a confuſed Eſtate, ſometimes made ſubject to the *Norwegians*, ſometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and Order; till by the King *Godfrey* or *Gotricus* they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of Life, *Anno* 797. About this time they firſt began to infeſt the Coaſts of *England*, invaded *Frieſland* with a Fleet of 200 Sail; and had much weakned and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unſeaſonable death of *Godfrey*, and the Quarrels which aroſe about the Succeſſion after his deceaſe, had not kept them off. Their Affairs at home being again well ſetled, they applied their whole Forces againſt *England*, as the weaker Enemy: over which they tyrannized 250 Years, and reigned 26, under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terrour of their name being over, they have been moſt buſied with their Neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*; improving their Eſtate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norway* and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*: their pretenſions to, and for a time the poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Sweden* getting them nothing in concluſion but Blows and Loſſes. So that we have no more to do than to ſum up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, leaving the reſt that follow to another place.

The Catalogue of theſe Ancient Kings of *Denmark* are extremely confuſed. That given by *Buſſieres* being very different from this here, and not poſſible to be reconciled with it, or with it ſelf, ſo that I have left *Heylin*'s as I found it, only adding from the other the Years of *Olaus* the firſt, and *Heningus*, *Magnus* and S. *Canutus*.

The Kings of *DENMARK*.

A. Ch.	
797	1. *Gotricus*, the firſt Legiſlator of the *Danes*, and the Eſtabliſher of their Kingdom; a prudent and valiant Prince.
811	2. *Olaus*, Son of *Gotricus*, or *Godfrey*.
815	3. *Heningus*, Son of *Olaus*.
873	4. *Siward*, Son to a Daughter of *Godfrey*, by the King of *Norway*.
	5. *Regnier*, Son of *Siward*.
	6. *Siward* II.
	7. *Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz* at the ſame time with his Brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his Houſe (of which they had been outed by the Race of *Godfrey*.)
	8. *Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heatheniſh Son of a Chriſtian and pious Father.
880	9. *Froto*, the Son of *Canutus*, a profeſſed Chriſtian.
886	10. *Gormo*, (our Engliſh Writers call him *Gormund*) Son of *Froto*.
889	11. *Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.
900	12. *Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Chriſtian Faith.
927	13. *Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the ſecond, a good Chriſtian.
975	14. *Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald*, at firſt a great Enemy of the Goſpel, an Uſurper of the Throne in his Father's life-time, and a great Scourge unto the *Engliſh*. Outed of his Eſtate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the Goſpel, regained his Kingdom, and eſtabliſh'd Chriſtianity in this Country; his War on *England* ſtill continuing.
1010	15. *Olaus*, the eldeſt Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.
1020	16. *Canutus* II. Brother of *Olaus*, the firſt King of *England* of the *Danes*, ſucceeded his Brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*; to which he added alſo the Crown of *Sweden*.
1037	17. *Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.
1046	18. *Magnus*, Son of *Olaus*, King of *Norway*.
1051	19. *Sueno* II. Siſter's Son of *Canutus* the ſecond, by *Ulfo* an *Engliſh* Duke.
1074	20. *Harald* III. baſe Son of *Sueno* the ſecond.
1088	21. *Canutus* IV. another of the baſe Sons of *Sueno*, murthered at the Altar in the Church of *Odenſee* in the Iſle of *Fionia*; afterwards canonized a Saint.
1088	22. *Olaus* II. another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*.
1099	23. *Ericus* II. another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archiepiſcopal See of *Lunden*.
1102	24. *Harald* IV. baſe Son of *Henry* or *Ericus* the ſecond.
1133	25. *Nicolas*, another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*.
1135	26. *Ericus* III. another of the baſe Sons of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1140	27. *Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth (ſome one of the younger Houſe being reckoned in) Nephew of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1150	28. *Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings; the firſt reigning in *Scuadia*, the other in *Juitland*: both died without Iſſue; *Canutus* being ſlain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.
1157	29. *Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the ſecond, after the interpoſition of ſo many Baſtards, ſucceeded at the laſt in the Throne of his Fathers. By this means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the Goſpel.
1185	30. *Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.
1203	31. *Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleſwick* before his coming to the Crown.
1243	32. *Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar*, the ſecond, ſlain by the Practices and Treaſon of his Brother *Abel*.
1251	33. *Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, ſlain by the Peaſants of *Frieſland*.
1252	34. *Chriſtopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.
1260	35. *Ericus*. VI (VIII.) Son of *Chriſtopher*.
1287	36. *Ericus* VII. (IX.) younger Son of *Ericus*, ſupplanted his eldeſt Brother *Chriſtopher*.
1327	37. *Chriſtopher* II. eldeſt Son of *Ericus*, at firſt diſpoſſeſſed of his Birth-right by his Brother *Ericus*; after whoſe death he ſucceeded in the Crown, by the help of his Half-Brother the Earl of *Holſtein*.
1334	38. *Waldemar* III. Son of *Chriſtopher* the ſecond, againſt whom and his Encroachments the Sea Towns, commonly called the *Hanſe*, did firſt confederate, and vanquiſhed him in many Battels. This Prince (ſaith the other Hiſtories of *Denmark*) ſucceeded in the year 1346, and conquer'd the great *Schoneck*, King of *Sweden*, and ſo became the ſole King of *Scandinavia*

dinavia in the year 1360. He obtain'd *Gothland* by a Treaty with King *Albert*. In 1366 he managed a War againſt the *Hanſe*-Towns of *Germany*, and died in the year 1375, leaving *Margaret* his Sole Daughter of all his vaſt Dominions. The Reaſon of this difference is, that there was two *Waldemars*, the firſt was Duke of *Sleſwick*, and was choſen King of *Denmark* about 1326; the ſecond *Waldemar* was choſen King about 1340, and married the Daughter of the firſt *Waldemar*, who was the Father of *Margaret*, Queen of *Norway*, *Denmark* and *Sweden*.

1376 39. *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Aquin* King of *Norway*, ſo uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their Succeſſors we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we have took a view alſo of the Kingdom of *Norway*, and the Appendixes thereof.

The following Kings of *Denmark* are ſubjoined to theſe of *Norway*.

3. *NORWAY.*

NORWAY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Swethland*, from which is parted by a perpetual Ridge of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Dofrine* Hills; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to ſay, by the Frozen Sea upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the Weſt; and on the South with the *Daniſh* Sea, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, being in breadth from *Schagen*, the moſt Northern point of *Juitland*, to *Congel*, the moſt Southerly Town of *Norway*, no leſs than 250 Miles.

It is called *Norway quaſi Tractus ſeu Via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern ſituation of it; containing in length 1300 Miles, in breadth not above half ſo much, inhabited by a People given to Hoſpitality, Plain-dealing, and abhorring Theft. Anciently they were great Warriers, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom they were called *Normans* (that is to ſay, *Homines Boreales*, or *North-men*, as *Willielmus Gemiticenſis* rightly hath it) being at that time a Mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders*, apart from the *Danes*, whoſe ſteps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual, Piracies on the Coaſts of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the ſame ſenſe they are called *Nordluidi*, a name made into *Latin* out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *Lien*, ſignifying Men a Northern Place or Nation.

Of the Poſition of it in regard of the Heavens we have ſpoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the firſt Parallel of the twelfth Clime, where the Pole is elevated 58 Degrees, 26 Minutes, as far to the 71 Degree of Latitude. By which accompt the longeſt Day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being ſituate fartheſt North of all this Country, they have no Night for almoſt three whole Months together.

The Country is for the moſt part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vaſt Woods, extream cold, and but ill inhabited. In the beſt parts thereof it affords little Corn, and in the moſt Northern none at all: inſomuch that the common ſort of People are fain to uſe dried Fiſh (that which we commonly call Stock-Fiſh) in ſtead of Bread; but the better (that is, the richer) ſort buy Corn of ſuch Merchants as come to Traffick with them. Their chief Commodities are Stock-fiſh, rich Furs, Train-oil, Pitch, and Tackling for Ships, as Maſts, Cables, Deal-boards, and the like, which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other neceſſaries for Mans life. The Country is exceedingly troubled with certain little Beaſts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigneſs of a Field-Mouſe, and are by the Inhabitants ſaid to drop out of the Clouds in tempeſtuous Weather. They devour, like the Locuſts, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time die all in heaps (as it were) together, and with their ſtench ſo poiſon the Air, that the poor People are long after troubled with the Jaundies and with a Giddineſs in the Head. But theſe Beaſts come not ſo often to infect the Land, as the Whales do to terrifie and moleſt the ſhores; the Weſtern Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for thoſe great *Leviathans*: againſt whoſe Violence and Fury the Mariners and people of the Sea-coaſt have found a Remedy, which is by caſting out ſome Water intermixed with the Oil of Caſtor; the ſmell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no Fiſhing on theſe Coaſts, which is the greateſt Staple-commodity (beſides materials for Shipping) which the Country yieldeth.

The Towns here are exceeding thin, and in them the Houſes for the moſt part very poor and miſerable; commonly patch'd up of Dirt and Hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage Houſes in the Fen-Countries. It is diſtributed into five Prefectures or Governments, according to the number of the Caſtles which command the ſame.

1. The firſt moſt towards the South is the Caſtle of *BAHUYS*: to which are ſubject the Towns of, 1. *Marſtrand*, ſeated in a Demi-Iſland begirt with Rocks; of moſt note for the infinite quantity of Herrings caught hereabout. 2. *Congel*, upon the Sea, a Town of Merchandiſe, oppoſite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3. *Oddewald*. The Caſtle of *Bahuys* was reſigned to the *Swedes* in 1660, who were before poſſeſſed of it: the *Danes* in 1678 attempted the Recovery of it, but without any ſucceſs: The reſt of the Province was yielded to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roſchild* in 1658.

2. *AGGERHUYS*, the ſecond of the five Royal Caſtles, hath under its command the Towns of, 1. *Anſlo*, or *Aſloia*, on a Bay or Gullet oppoſite to *Juitland*, an Epiſcopal See, and of moſt Eſteem of all the Country, by reaſon of the Courts of Judicature which are therein held. 2. *Tonsberg*, or *Koningsberg*, that is to ſay, the King's or the Kingly Mountain, formerly a retiring-place of the Kings of *Norway*. 3. *Frederickſtadt*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denmark*. 4. *Schin*, or *Schon*, remarkable for its Mines of Iron and Copper. 5. *Saltsburg*; 6. *Hammar* the greater, and 7. *Hammar* the leſs, divided by the interpoſing of the Bay called *Sinus Mœſianus*, in former times the See of a Biſhop, ſince removed to *Aſloia*, or rather thereunto united in theſe latter Times, as many poor Biſhopricks be in *Ireland*.

3. *BERGERHUYS*, is the third Caſtle of Command herein. Subordinate whereunto are, 1. *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Country, an Epiſcopal See, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*, ſituate amongſt high Mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carmeſunt*. A noted Port, and much reſorted to by Merchants of moſt foreign Nations, bringing in Corn, Meal, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua Vita*, to ſupply the natural wants and defects hereof; and in exchange tranſporting hence Fiſh, Furrs, Cordage, and other materials for Shipping. In which regard it was accounted formerly one of the four chief Staple-Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanſe*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novogrod* in *Muſcovy*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath loſt moſt of its Trade, removed hence to *Wardhuys*, nearer unto *Muſcovy*: as the great Town of *Novogrod*, by reaſon of the change of Navigation from the *Baltick* into that of the Northern paſſage, hath given way to S. *Nicholas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her Traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amſterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the Haven, but eſpecially by keeping *Bergen op Zoon*, have ſuch a command over the River, that no Veſſel can paſs or repaſs without their Licenſe. This Town and Harbour of *Bergen* will ever be remembred

by all *Engliſh* Men, on the account of a deſperate Attempt made by five *Engliſh* Men of War upon a vaſt *Eaſt-India* Fleet of the *Hollanders*, which had here ſheltered themſelves in the Year 1665, the 16th of *Auguſt*, many of which Ships were deſtroy'd, and they had all Periſhed if contrary Winds had not forced the *Engliſh* to retire. 2. *Staffenger*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, but not elſe obſervable.

4. The Caſtle of *TRONDHEIM* is the fourth, ſituate in the Town of *Trondhiem*, or *Drontheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latin*, *Nidroſia*; the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Metropolitan of *Norway*. A beautiful City heretofore, but ſince the Subjection of this Country unto the *Danes* reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is ſeated, and *Roſa*, the name then of the principal Church; which in time gave place to the Cathedral for greatneſs and neatneſs of the Fabrick, all of poliſh'd Stone, not giving place to any in *Europe*; about the year 1530 much defaced with Fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being eſtimated at 7000 Crowns; a great ſum of Mony in thoſe times, and ſo poor a Country. So that, by caſting up our reckoning, we find in *Norway* one Archbiſhop and four Biſhops; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Trondheim* or *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffangor*, and *Hammar*: of the ſame Power, Juriſdiction and Revenue, ſince the Reformation, as thoſe of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the firſt Converſion of this People to the Chriſtian Faith, we have ſpoke already.

5. The fifth and laſt Caſtle which commands this Country is that of *WARDHUYS*, ſo called of the Town of *Wardhuys*, as that is from the Iſle *Ward*, in which it is ſeated. A ſmall Caſtle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, ſituate in the extreme North-point of all this Kingdom; but in thoſe times accounted (as eaſily it might) for the chief of this Prefecture, and honoured in the Summer time with the Seat and Reſidence of the Governor, retiring more Southwards in the Winter, at what time, by reaſon of the extremity of the Cold, and long abſence of the Sun for ſome Mouths together (the Town lying within the *Arctick* Circle) it is hardly habitable. But of late time it is much improv'd both in Wealth and Building, by reaſon of the removal of the *Engliſh* Trading from *Novogrod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of S. *Nicholas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the Trade of *Muſcovy* and *Norway* more near together. So that now it is not only uſeful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it ſomewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives, for that cauſe fortified very ſtrongly by King *Frederick* the ſecond; but made very profitable to him alſo, by the reſort of *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, who muſt of neceſſity touch at it (if they make no ſtay there) in their way to *Muſcovy*. Other Towns in theſe two laſt Prefectures are not worth looking after.

And ſo much for the Continent or Main-land of *Norway*: let us next look upon the *Iſlands* in the Northern Ocean which belong unto it.

The *ISLANDS* in the Northern Ocean.

THE *Northern* Sea, ſo named from its Northern Situation, is by ſome called *Mare Scythicum*, becauſe it coaſted along the Shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal Oceanus Glacialis*, becauſe often frozen; by *Pliny* in the ſame ſenſe, *Mare Amalchium*, the Word in the *Scythick* Language ſignifying *frozen*, or *congealed*; by the *Ruſſes* or *Muſcovites*, *Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians*, in their Tongue, *Marimoruſa*, that is to ſay, the Dead Sea, becauſe of the ſlowneſs of its motion, often clogged with Ice; and, in the ſame ſenſe, *Mare pigrum*, by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth beſt deſcribe, from whom take it thus. “*Trans* Sueones *Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum*, &c. Beyond the *Swedes* there is another Sea, “ ſo ſlow and almoſt immoveable, that many think it to “ be the Bounds which compaſs the whole World. “ Some are perſwaded that the ſound of the Sun is heard “ as he ariſeth out of this Sea; and that many ſhapes of “ Gods are ſeen, and the Beams of his Head. *Illuc uſque* “ (*& fama vera*) *tantum Natura*; At this Sea (the Re- “ port is credible) is the end of Nature and the World. The *Engliſh* were the firſt of all civil People who adventured to open and diſcover the Paſſages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Ruſſia*, *Anno* 1553, and tracing out the way; which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemmings*, *Hollanders*, and ſome Towns of the *Hanſe*, have ſince followed. Of which more in *Muſcovy*. The principal Iſlands diſperſed in it are, 1. *Groenland*. 2. *Iſeland*. 3. *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norway*, to be ſurveyed at the preſent: *Nova Zemla* and Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*'s Iſland, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muſcovy*, of which more hereafter.

1. *ISELAND*, is ſituate under the *Arctick* Circle; in length 144 *German* Miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of Ice in it and about it; frozen continually for the ſpace of 8 Months, and ſo vehemently chilled with the Northern Winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except Juniper only: yet there is Graſs in ſuch abundance that the People are of opinion, that if they do not ſometimes keep their Cattel from feeding, they are in danger to ſurfeit and die with fulneſs. Beaſts for Labour here are both Horſes and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without Horns, but the Sheep not ſo: and they have alſo here a fine breed of little Dogs, known amongſt us by the name of *Iſeland Dogs*, the delight of Ladies; as alſo white Falcons and white Ravens, Eagles with white Tails, and Hares with Bears of the ſame colour. By reaſon of their want of Corn, the People eat Stock-fiſh (as in *Norway*) in ſtead of Bread: yet notwithſtanding, by reaſon of the benefit of the Sea and acceſs of Strangers, they have all things neceſſary brought unto them (even to Wood and Timber) of which the richer ſort make uſe, giving the Merchant in return ſometimes the Fleſh of Beeves and Mutton, but ordinarily Butter. Skins, Horſes, Hawks, Brimſtone, and Fiſh eſpecially, the Staple Commodity of the Country; of which they have ſuch plenty, and of ſo good Condition that a piece of *Iſeland* Ling is counted with us as a fit Diſh for a Nobleman's Table.

The People for the moſt part are of a plain and ſimple nature, living (as in the Golden Age) on that which Nature gives them, which help of Art, more than that of making Cheeſe and Butter (which is very ordinary too:) the Mountains ſerving them for Towns, and the Rivers for Drink, and their Lodging is all under one roof with their Horſes and Oxen. They uſe neither Phyſick nor Phyſicians, yet live ſo long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attain to the Age of 150 years and more. The Women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themſelves; nor is there any difference in Apparel betwixt the Sexes, ſo that it is not eaſie to know one from another. Few of them but have ſome familiar Spirit to do them ſervice: and notwithſtanding the endeavour of the Miniſters to purge them from this Impiety, yet it is ſo grafted in them that they cannot leave it.

It is obſervable, that notwithſtanding the cold condition of this Iſland, yet in many places it is full of Heats and Fire under the ground: which, by the *Antiperiſtaſis* of the cold Air ſtopping the Pores of the Earth, and taking from it the liberty of Evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: inſomuch that there are three high Mountains whoſe tops are always covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecla*, *Helga*, and *La-Croix*, but the firſt the principal, by ſome called *Heclefort*; which ſometimes caſts out Fire, ſometimes flaming Water, then black Aſhes and Pumice-ſtones, in ſo great abundance that it darkneth the Sun, and makes the Country for ſix Miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not ſpoken of

Ætna than of theſe three Mountains: and here the Superſtitious People have the ſame opinion which they have in *Sicily*, *viz.* That underneath muſt needs be Hell, and the Habitations of the Damned. But to judicious Men the natural Reaſon of theſe Flames is plain and obvious; occaſion'd by thoſe veins of Brimſtone (great quantity whereof they ſend into Foreign Parts) on which the Foundation of the Hills is laid: here being many Baths and Fountains of hot Water, which have Sulphur ſwimming at the top.

At the firſt planting of this Iſland, about the year 860 or 874, the People did not trouble themſelves with building of Towns, but every one ſeated himſelf where he thought convenient, dwelling in Cells and Caverns digged in the bottom of the Rock. By means whereof the Inland parts have not many Houſes: but the Sea-coaſts, ſince the coming of ſo many Strangers to them, begin to be built in many places, the Buildings for the moſt part being of Timber, roofed with Flags with an Hole on the ſides of the Roof to let in their Light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are, being, 1. *Halar*, in the North, and 2. *Schalholt*, in the Southern part; both Biſhops Sees, having petty Schools, conſiſting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latin* Tongue is taught at the charge of the Biſhops. 3. *Haffenfordt*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their Commodities. And 4. *Beſtede*, a Caſtle, the ordinary Reſidence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Iſland is that *Thule* which the Poets ſo often ſpeak of: as *Tibi ſerviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec ſit terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the *Tragedian*. Nor did there want ſome reaſon to perſwade them to this opinion; this being indeed the fartheſt part of the old known World. But greater reaſons are againſt it. For when *Solinus* ſaith *Multæ ſunt circa* Brittanniam *Inſulæ, e quibus* Thule *ultima*; I hope *Thule* muſt be one of the *Britiſh* Iſles. And when *Tacitus* ſaith of *Agricola*, *Inſulas quas* Orcadas *vocant domuit, deſpecta eſt &* Thule; I am ſure that *Iſeland* is ſo far from being kenned by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at leaſt eight Degrees diſtant. So that *Thule* muſt be ſought for in another place, and where that is, hath been ſhew'd already. As for *Iſeland*, it was ſo far from being known unto the Ancients, that it was hardly known unto thoſe of *Norway* till the year 874, when ſome of the *Norwegians* were driven out of their Country by *Harald* the firſt, who firſt ſuppreſſed the many Petit Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them ſeek new Dwellings; of which ſome few arrived here; where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loſs (if any) by change of their Dwelling, they invited many of their Friends and Country-men to come unto them, *Anno* 1070, they were converted to the Goſpel by ſome Preachers ſent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbiſhop of *Breme*. By whoſe perſwaſion and procurement they founded two Epiſcopal Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight Religious Houſes; that is to ſay, the Monaſteries of *Pingore*, *Remeſtede*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and Juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Halar*; and thoſe of *Videy*, *Pernebar*, *Kirckebar*, and *Skiade*, under the Biſhop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260, it was firſt brought under the Crown of *Norway*, following ſince the Fortunes of it in all Changes both of Church and State; made ſubject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*, together with it reformed in matters of Religion according to the Confeſſion at *Augsburg*, retaining ſtill their Biſhops, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monaſteries unto other uſes, as there they did, according to the will and pleaſure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

2. South-weſt of *Iſeland* lies another, and as cold an Iſle, commonly called by the name of *FREESLAND*, from the continual Froſts unto which it is ſubject. By the *Latins* it is called *Frizlandia*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Friſia*, or *Frieſland* in *Germany*. It is ſituate under the North Frigid Zone; but not ſo much within the *Arctick* as *Iſeland* is; the longeſt day here in the height of Summer not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the Soil is ſo cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living moſt on Fiſh; which as it is their only Food, ſo is it alſo their chief Commodity wherewith to entertain or invite the Merchant. And hereof there is ſuch abundance caught upon their Coaſts, that they are never without the Company of *Hanſe-men*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes* and *Engliſh*; by which laſt it hath been ſo frequented in theſe later times, that it hath been called by ſome the *Weſtern England*. For quantity it is ſomewhat bigger than *Iſeland*; but by reaſon of the bitter Air, and the Defects above-mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezeland*, by the name of the Iſland; ſituate on the Eaſtern Shore of it. Beſides which, there are ſome others ſet down in the Maps; as, 2. *Sameſcot*, 3. *Andefort*, 4. *Sorand*; but not much obſervable. Weſtward whereof, as *Zeiglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a leſs Iſland called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoining: ſo called (by his miſtake or tranſlation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the Son of *Dædalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over theſe Iſlands. It is much diſputed of late whether there be any ſuch Iſland in the World, and by ſome poſitively denied.

III. GROENLAND, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from the Greenneſs of it in the Summer; as others ſay, by *Antiphraſis*, becauſe never green, by reaſon of the ſharpneſs of Winter. But the former Etymology is more agreeable to the ſtate of the Country. For though it be continually cover'd with Snow, except in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt* (inſomuch that though the People be always clad with Furs and Skins, yet they feel no heat) yet in thoſe Months it is exceeding freſh and green, and affords good Paſturage. It is ſituate for the greateſt part within the *Arctick*, between the 65 and 77 Degrees of Northern Latitude: ſo that the longeſt day in the Southern Part is 21 hours and a half; and in the moſt Northern they have no night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirm'd to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than ſo for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect diſcovery made of it hitherto, tho' much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* (two great Seafaring Nations) for the benefit of the Whale-fiſhing, much there in uſe. Their chief Commodities are Fiſh, white Bears, wild Deer, and ſome ſtore of Cattel there bred upon their Paſtures, but houſed for the moſt part all the Winter. The greateſt part of the People dwell in the Caves, and delight in Necromancy, to which they are more wilfully addicted than thoſe in *Iſeland*, becauſe leſs acquainted with the Goſpel.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Saint Thomas*, (in which there is a Monaſtery of *Dominican* Friars) ſeated in the North-Eaſt part of the Iſland; concerning which *Mercator* ſpeaks of one thing which is very obſervable, relating, that it is not far from a flaming or burning Mountain, ſeated upon hot ſcalding Springs, conveyed by Pipes of ſtone into the Monaſtery, and ſerving both as a Stove to warm them, and for a Fire to boil their Victuals. The Walls of the Monaſtery are built of Pumice-ſtones caſt out of that Mountain; which, being temper'd with the Water of thoſe burning Springs, doth make a glutinous ſubſtance, ſerving inſtead of Lime, and as long durable. The Gardens of the Convent, in regard of this heat, flouriſh all the year with Herbs and ſweet ſmelling Flowers; and the adjoining Sea, for the ſame reaſon being never frozen, affords good plenty of Fiſh and Fowl the whole year about, not only for the Monks, but the neighbouring Iſlanders. So far and to this purpoſe he. The ſecond Town of note is *Ilva*, not far from this Monaſtery: and 3. *Mundcrpre*, on the South-Eaſt-point. Others, as in a Country not well diſcovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years ſince *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, caſt by Tempeſt on the Coaſt of *Freezland*,

land, and by the King thereof imploy'd upon new Diſcoveries, *Anno* 1380, firſt made it known to us of *Europe*; it being immediately on that diſcovery poſſeſſed by the *Norwegians*, and made a Member and Portion of that Crown.

As for the *Norwegians* themſelves, now their Fellow-ſubjects, they were firſt known in the time of *Ptolomy* by the name *Chedini*, poſſeſſing then the Weſtern parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swithlanders*, they became better known in the flouriſhing Times of the *French* Empire by the name of *Normans*; firſt called ſo by *Eginhartus* in his Hiſtory of the Life of *Charles* the Great, infeſting then the Sea-coaſts of *France* and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell ſo heavily on the *French*, eſpecially in the times of *Charles* the Simple, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, ſince of them called *Normandy*, conferred on *Rollo*, firſt Duke thereof, *Anno* 912, whoſe Succeſſors much encreaſed their glory by the Conqueſt of *England*, as ſome private Adventurers of them did by the Conqueſt of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards ſetling on their own bottom, every one of theſe Northern Nations acting by it ſelf, they were called *Norwegians*, ſometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, ſubjects ſucceſſively to each; but moſt an end governed by their own Kings, till their final Subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting ſolely and by it ſelf, they ſubdued *Ireland* under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as alſo all the *Orcades* and the Iſle of *Man*, ſold or ſurrendred by them upon good conditions to the *Engliſh* and *Scots*, who by thoſe Titles ſtill poſſeſs them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all thoſe of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute* and the firſt *Scottiſh Fergus*) as meerly fabulous, we will begin with King *Subidagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongſt his three Sons; whoſe Succeſſors *Munſter* thus reckoneth.

The Kings of *NORWAY*.

1. *Subidagerus*.
2. *Haddingus*.
3. *Hetharius*.
4. *Collerus*.
5. *Frogerus*.
6. *Gotarus*.
7. *Rotherus*.
8. *Helga*.
9. *Haſmunus*.
10. *Reginaldus*.
11. *Gummaraus*.
12. *Oſmundus*.
13. *Olaus*.
14. *Oſmundus* II. not long after whoſe time, *Anno ſcil.* 800, the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15. *Aquinus*.
16. *Heraldus*.
17. *Olaus* II.
18. *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norway* by Conqueſt.
19. *Olaus* III. Son of *Swain* or *Sueno*, ſucceeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, *Canutus* his younger Brother being King of *England*. In this King's time the *Norwegians* firſt received the Goſpel.
20. *Canutus*, King of *England*, ſucceeded his Brother *Olaus* in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he alſo added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21. *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was reſtor'd to the *Norwegians*.
22. *Canutus* II.
23. *Magnus*.
24. *Harald* II.
25. *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*.

1326. 26. *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldeſt Son, conferred that of *Norway* on *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, his ſecond Son.

1359 27. *Aquinus*, King of *Norway*, younger Son of *Magnus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King of *Denmark*; ſo uniting the Kingdom. And though *Olaus*, the only Son of his Bed, died young without any Iſſue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in *Norway*, ſo aſſured themſelves of it, that they have ever ſince poſſeſſed it as a ſubject Kingdom, keeping the Natives ſo poor and low, that they are not able to aſſert their former Liberties, and not permitting them to uſe any Shipping; ſo much as for tranſporting their own Commodities, for fear they ſhould grow wealthy and ſtrong at Sea. Beſides the ſtrong Garriſons maintained in moſt parts of the Country, kept it in ſuch an abſolute Awe, that they dare not ſtir againſt the *Danes* if their ſtomachs ſerved them. So that now *Norway* being made ſubject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made Fellow-ſubjects to the ſame King, we muſt next look upon theſe Kings as Kings of each diſtinct and ſeparate from the other, but as they are in Fact and Title

The Kings of *DENMARK* and *NORWAY*.

1376 1. *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*: of this laſt by Deſcent, of the other by Marriage.

1380 2. *Olaus*, Son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*, King of *Norway*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*, died in the year 1387.

1383 3. *Margaret*, Wife of *Aquinus*, Mother of *Olaus*, and Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her Son (in whoſe time ſhe governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own Right; not only keeping *Norway* in the State ſhe found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the Vanquiſhment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. (In the year 1396 ſhe was elected Queen of *Sweden*.) A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.

1411 4. *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeren*, and Knight of the Garter, Son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutcheſs of *Pomeren*, Daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the Siſter of *Margaret*, by whom he was adopted for her Heir, in a Dyet held at *Calmar* in the year 1397, he ſucceeded after her deceaſe in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death by a ſtrong Faction made againſt him, and his Eſtates conferred on

1439 5. *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in Title only) the Son of *Margaret*, Siſter of *Ericus*; choſen by the joint conſent of all the States of theſe Kingdoms. After whoſe death (without Iſſue) the *Danes* conſidering the great Advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*, pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleſwick* and Earl of *Holſtein*, for the next Succeſſor, that they might get in thoſe Eſtates to the Kingdom alſo. Who, excuſing himſelf by reaſon of his Age and want of Children, commended to them *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Kinſman and next Heir, who was choſen accordingly.

1448

1448 6. *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, ſucceeded his ſaid Uncle in the Eſtates of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*, continuing ſince united unto that Crown, and added alſo thereunto by Conqueſt the Kingdom of *Sweden* in the year 1458.

1482 7. *John*, Son of *Chriſtiern*, ſucceeded in all there Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.

1514 8. *Chriſtiern* II. Son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, which laſt he held under with great cruelty; hated, by reaſon of his Tyranny toward all ſorts of People, and outed of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, *Anno* 1522, by whom at laſt he was taken and kept in Priſon till he died, *Anno* 1559. He was born in the year 1481. He was Diſobedient to his Parents, ſo that he drew upon himſelf his Father's Curſe. In the year 1519 he refuſed a Reconciliation with *Frederick* his Couſin, and entred upon the Conqueſt of *Sweden*, the next year he made the horrible Maſſacre of *Stockholm*.

1523 9. *Frederick*, Brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Abdication of his Nephew, in the Dyet of *Malmoen* in the year 1527. He Reformed Religion in both Kingdoms, according to the Confeſſion of *Augſburg*.

1535 10. *Chriſtiern* III. born in the year 1503, ſuppreſſed with great trouble the Party formed againſt him in behalf of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

1559 11. *Frederick* II. Son of *Chriſtiern* the third, ſubdued *Ditmarſh*, before unconquer'd by the *Danes* or Earls of *Holſtein*, and added it unto that Dukedom, (both being united to that Crown though held of the Empire) Knight of the Garter.

1588 12. *Chriſtiern* IV. Son of *Frederick* the ſecond, Brother of *Anne* Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; who engaging in a War againſt the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d for the Liberty of *Germany*, was ſuddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* by the prevailing Imperialiſts, but compounded the Buſineſs upon very good Terms, and was reſtored to all his own.

1648 13. *Frederick* III. the youngeſt Son of *Chriſtiern* the fourth, his eldeſt Brethren being all dead without Iſſue, ſucceeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*. This Prince in the beginning of his Reign was much endanger'd by one *Vlefeld*, a great, rich, powerful Noble Man, but more after this by a War he began upon *Sweden* (then engaged with *Poland*) by the procurement of the *Dutch*, in the Year 1657; but in the Year 1658, he was forced to purchaſe his Peace in the Treaty of *Roſchild*, ſign'd *February* 26. with the Reſignation of *Haland*, *Scania*, *Bleckling*, *Bornholm*, *Bahuis*, and *Drontheim*: yet the next year the War broke out again, and the *Swede* took *Landskroon*, and in 1659 beſieged *Copenhagen*, which yet eſcaped them: So that in 1660 *Charles Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, dying, a ſecond Peace was concluded; by which he recovered *Drontheim* and *Bornholm*. After which he procured the making this Kingdom Hereditary, which before was Elective.

1670 14. *Chriſtiern* V. his Son, born in the year 1645, ſucceeded him. This Prince, in the year 1675, ſeiz'd the Duke of *Holſtein*, and forc'd him to reſign his Dukedom. The next year he invaded *Schoon*, and took *Helſeburg*, *Landskroon*, *Chriſtianſtad*, and *Gothingly* with great eaſe, but fail'd in his Deſign upon *Halmſtad*, was beaten firſt at *Lunden*, and then at the Siege of *Malmugen* and *Bahuys*: And at laſt by the Treaty of St. *Germain* was forced to reſtore back to the *Swede*, in 1678, all that he had retaken. And his Attempt upon *Hamburg*, in 1686, had no effect. His eldeſt Son is *Frederick*, who was born the 11th of *October* 1671. And his only Brother is *George*, who was born the 21th of *April*, 1653, and married *Anne*, the ſecond Daughter of *James* the ſecond, King of *Great Britain*, the 7th of *Auguſt*, 1683.

Having thus muſtered up the Kings of theſe ſeveral Kingdoms, taken diſtinctly and conjunct; we muſt next look upon the way of their coming to the Regal Throne, their Form of Government, together with their Power and Revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Regal Throne, the *Danes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, and not Hereditary; yet ſo as they have always ſet the eldeſt Son on the Throne of his Father, unleſs ſome extraordinary occaſion have diſpoſed it otherwiſe. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can ſee no ſuch matter, the Kingdom going generally in the way of Succeſſion, unleſs by Faction or Uſurpation ſome popular and powerful Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath happen'd in ſuch other Eſtates as are Hereditary meerly, without claim or colour of Election. 'Tis true, that the Male-iſſue failing in *Olaus* the Son of *Margaret*, and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her deceaſe not being of ſufficient power to aſſert their Titles, the Kingdom was transferred to the Houſe of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of Election. Which, being an extraordinary caſe, is to make no Preſident, though ſeconded by the outing of King *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Eſtate; theſe being acts of Violence and Force, and juſtified only by the falſe Topick of Succeſs. But whoſoever loſt by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon ſuch Conditions as have made him and his Succeſſors little more than Titulary. For he was fain to ſwear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to Death or Baniſhment but by the Judgment of the Senate, that the Great Men ſhould have power of Life and Death over their Tenants or Vaſſals; that no Appeal ſhould lie from them to the King's Tribunal; nor the King be partaker of the Confiſcations, nor, finally, advance any to Commands and Honours but by conſent of his great Council. Which Oath being alſo taken by his Succeſſors, made *Bodinus* ſay, *Non tam re ipſa quam appellatione Reges eſſe*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (ſo they call their Gentry) have but ſmall Eſtates, none of them above the degree of Knights (except only the Princes of the Blood) and that Decree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to croſs or oppoſe their King, but when ſome of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the caſe of *Chriſtiern* the 2d, depoſed by the People, but thoſe People headed and ſet on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an Eye upon the Crown. This was altered by *Frederick* the third in the year 1660, when the Crown was again in a Dyet made Hereditary, and theſe vaſt Privileges of the Nobility retrench'd. *Ut ab unius Natu & Arbitrio omnia Penderent*, as *Puſendorf* has it; ſo that it ſeems now to be an Abſolute Monarchy.

As for the Senate or great Council, ſpoken of before, it conſiſts wholly of Men choſen out of the Nobility (who are to prove their Gentry by a long Deſcent) ſeldom exceeding the number of 28, to each of which there is allowed a convenient Salary, with ſome fair Caſtle in the Country for his Retirements, during his being of that Body: his whole Eſtate being freed alſo for that time from all publick Payments. Without their Counſel and Advice the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new League or Confederacies, nor impoſe any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly is the laſt Appeal: ſuch being the Conſtitution of this Eſtate, that all Cauſes and Controverſies are firſt decided in the Prefecture or Heret (184 in number) where they firſt ariſe; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the Chancellor of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the firſt, who firſt reduced the Laws into ſet form and writing, the Biſhops were to ſit with his Council in all Cauſes of moment: but were diſcharged from that Employment by King *Chriſtiern* the third, by whom it was alſo ordained, that the Clergy ſhould not ſell any of the Church-lands without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raiſe may beſt be ſeen by ſome of their particular Undertakings, thoſe ſpecially of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, who, at the requeſt of *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, ſent a Navy of an hundred Sail into *Scotland* againſt the *Engliſh*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Soldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holſtein*, who in his War againſt this *Chriſtiern* (whoſe removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 Men into the Field to make good his Quarrel. And queſtionleſs conſidering the many Ports and Iſlands that this Crown is Maſter of, both within the *Baltick* and without, it cannot be but he may ſuddenly raiſe a ſtrong power at Sea. And then conſidering that each of the Nobility, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horſe upon all occaſions; as are thoſe alſo who hold Lands of the King, which the *Danes* call *Verlihninge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good Levies for a ſuddain Service, eſpecially in defence of their own Dominions.

The Revenue of this King conſiſteth principally in the great Impoſt laid upon all Ships which paſs through the *Sound*: the greatneſs whereof may eaſily be conjectured at by the multitude of Ships which of neceſſity muſt paſs by it in the Trade of the *Baltick*; though of late ſomewhat leſſened of what it was, ſince the *Engliſh* found out and frequented the Northern paſſage into *Muſcovia*. There are alſo ſome Crown-lands and a great yearly Toll made of the Cattel which paſs into *Germany*; as alſo of the Fiſh tranſported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treaſures of this King are not very great: partly becauſe there is no other important Commodity but Fiſh to draw Merchants thither; and partly, that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms for the entertaining of Commerce.

Since our Author wrote, the Trade of Deal, Timber and Maſts is become equal, perhaps greater, than that of the Fiſh, eſpecially ſince the Fire of *London* in 1666; the greateſt part of that vaſt City having been built with Timber brought from *Norway* and *Denmark*: beſides which, the *Danes* have begun to open a Trade with the *Eaſt-Indies*, which will much enrich them in time, if the *Hollanders* do not interrupt it.

The Preſent State of the Kingdom of Denmark.

THE Account our Learned Author has given of the Kingdom of *Denmark* reſpects the State it was in when he concluded this Work about the year 1648, ſince which time it has received ſo great a Change in all things, as I have above hinted from the Learned *Samuel Puffendorf*; that what he has ſaid will no way comport with it. I ſhall therefore from a late Book ſtiled, *An Account of* Denmark *as it was in* 1692. repreſent as briefly as I can the Preſent State of the Government, and by what means it came to be ſo altered.

There were in all the Ancient times frequent Aſſemblies of the *Three Eſtates*, in which all matters relating to good Government were tranſacted, Laws conſider'd, Peace and War, Alliances, diſpoſal of the great Offices, Contracts of Marriages for the Royal Family, *&c.* were debated. Nay, their Kings (as my Author ſaith) were formally made to anſwer before the Repreſentatives of the People for their Miſcarriages. But if that could not be done, but he that Reigned ſeemed too powerful to be legally contended with, then they diſpatched him without any more Ceremony the beſt way they could, and elected preſently a better Man in his Room: ſometimes the next of Kin to him; ſometimes the Valiant Man that had expoſed himſelf ſo far as to undertake the Expulſion or the Killing of the Tyrant; at other times a private Perſon of good Reputation who poſſibly leaſt dreamt of ſuch an Advancement. Thus far my Author, who ſeems no Enemy to the *King Killing Doctrine*, tho' he has (not without good cauſe) a great Averſion for that of *Nonreſiſtance*. In theſe Aſſemblies the Impoſing Taxes according to the Exigencies of Affairs was conſidered; becauſe there was no ſtanding Crown-Revenue paid by the People; the Rents of certain Lands annexed to the Crown; his Herds of Cattle, Forreſts, Services of Tenants, *&c.* was his Income, ſo that he lived like one of our Noblemen of his own Eſtate: And it was his Intereſt as well as Duty to keep fair with the Nobility and Gentry, and to be careful of the Proſperity of the Commons, who were indeed his Maſters, and not his Subjects. Thus things went on till the year 1660, when of a ſuddain all this goodly Fabrick was pulled down, and the People brought as much under the King, as he and his Anceſtors had before been under them. And I think no Man can juſtly wonder that a Crown thus born down ſhould endeavour a return to its more natural poſition.

To go on with my Author, after the Concluſion of the Peace between the two Northern Crowns, ſome conſiderable care and time was neceſſary to redreſs the Diſorders occaſioned by ſo terrible a War. The Army was not yet disbanded, nor could for want of Money to diſcharge its Arrears; and the Burghers and Country People were in a manner ruined by the Miſeries attending the War: the Nobility and Gentry, though Maſters of the reſt, were full of Diſcontents; and the Clergy not in the Condition they wiſh'd to be in.

To redreſs all which, the King called a Meeting of the Three Eſtates, *viz.* the Nobility, Commonalty and Clergy about the beginning of *October* 1660. After ſeveral Days ſpent in debating the methods of raiſing the Money that was needful, the Nobility inſiſting upon a pretended Privilege not to pay any part of it, though the greateſt part of what was left remained in their hands, but rather ſeeking to widen their Advantages over the other two Eſtates, there follow'd ſharp and hot Conteſts between them. At length one *Otto Craeg*, a principal Senator, told the Preſident of the City, That the other two Eſtates were *no other than* Slaves, *ſo their beſt way was to keep within their bounds, and acquieſce in ſuch meaſures as ancient Practice had warranted, and which they* (the Nobility) *were reſolved to maintain.* This word *Slave* put all the *Burghers* and *Clergy* in diſorder, and *Nanſon* the Preſident of the City and Speaker of the Commons, in great anger roſe out of his Seat and ſwore, That *the Commons were no Slaves, nor would they from thenceforth be called ſo by the Nobility, which they ſhould ſoon find to their Coſts.* And riſing in diſorder they left the Hall, and adjourned to *Brewers-Hall* in the City, the Clergy joining with the Commons: After ſome time there they agreed to wait upon the King, and to offer him their Votes and Aſſiſtance to make him Abſolute Monarch of the Realm, and alſo the Crown ſhould for the future deſcend by Inheritance to his Family, which hitherto had gone by Election. They knew the King, and had ſeen him bear with admirable Patience all his Calamities, and valiantly expoſe his Perſon for the ſake of the Publick, and therefore they thought they could never do enough to ſhew their Gratitude. It was then too late to do this that Night, but all the neceſſary meaſures were then taken for the doing it next Morning. The Clergy expected to benefit themſelves by this Oblation above the other, and the Event anſwered their expectation. One *Hanibal Seeſtede* the Prime Miniſter of State, *Swan* the Biſhop, *Nanſon* the Preſident of the City of *Copenhagen*, and the Queen, were the principal Managers of this Affair: The King on the contrary either was or ſeemed to be leſs engaged in it. The Nobility had very little knowledge in the mean time of the Intentions of the Commons, and having been long uſed to ſlight and tyrannize over them, feared no hurt from thence, contemning their Threats as well as their Perſons.

By the next morning the Nobility had ſome general intimations of the Intentions of the Commons and Clergy; but before they could reſolve what to do, they underſtood the Commons were coming towards them, being huzza'd through the Streets by the *Mob.* The Nobility were perfectly confounded by this briſk attack of the Commons, who told them roundly, If they, the Nobility, would not join with the Commons, they would do it without them. The Nobility now creſt fallen, pretended they liked the thing, but not the manner of doing it, and therefore only deſired to gain time to avoid this firſt ſhock, but to no purpoſe. The Commons and Clergy thereupon went to the King without the Nobility, and there they tendred to the King what had before been agreed, aſſuring him their Swords and Purſes ſhould make good their Gift againſt whoſoever ſhould oppoſe it.

The Nobility were in great Diſtraction, their former Inſolencies was now ſunk into a baſe diſpirited meanneſs, and they broke up without coming to any Reſolution.

That Afternoon the King ordered the City Gates to be lock'd up, and no Body to be ſuffered to come in or go out but by his leave; the Nobility took this for a deſign to Murder them, and in that fear they ſubmitted to all that had been done by the Clergy and Commons. Three days after Scaffolds were erected before the Caſtle, the Soldiery and Burghers ordered to be in Arms, and on the 27th of *October* in the morning the King, Queen, and Royal Family mounted the ſame, and the Nobility, Clergy and Commons came before them, and on their Knees ſwore.

> *That to the beſt of their Power they would defend him from all Danger and Harm, and that they would faithfully ſerve his Majeſty, as Men of Honour and Hereditary Subjects ought to do,* &c.

This Oath they were forced to pronounce aloud, and no Man ſick or well was exempted from it, and yet not one Man durſt oppoſe it. Thus in four days time this Kingdom became Abſolute and Hereditary.

The Clergy, ſaith my Author, always make ſure Bargains, and were the only gainers by this Change; and are ſtill much encouraged by the Court, as the Inſtruments that firſt promoted, and now keep the People in a due temper of Slavery, *the Paſſive Obedience Principle riding triumphant in this unhappy Kingdom.*

Now doubtleſs this wiſe Court has not either ſo little ſenſe as to allow ſuch Men as my Author to inſpire the People with a conceit that it is both their Intereſt and Duty to riſe in Arms againſt their Prince, and to make him away as well as they can; nor is any *Brutus Junior* to be openly wheedled into a conceit, that no Glory is equal to that of murdering a Prince that takes a little too much upon him. But then, after all, 'tis not upon this *Paſſive Obedience Principle* that the King relies for his ſafety; for he very well knew that one *Raviliack*, that is not of this Opinion, may murder a Prince as well and much ſooner than a Thouſand. He very well ſaw the Reluctance of the Nobility, and knew the Inconſtancy of the Commons, and to prevent all Dangers from either, has ever ſince kept his Army on Foot to the number of 32000 Men Horſe and Foot; by theſe he aſſures his Royal Power, forceth his Subjects to pay what Taxes he thinks fit, and to ſubmit to his Orders as well as if they had the conſent of the Three Eſtates. To this, and not to any Principle whatſoever, doth that Prince own his Security.

But there is a Generation of Men who think nothing makes them look ſo great as a Declamation againſt that ancient piece of Chriſtianity, which teacheth Subjects not to rebel againſt their Princes, but this is only for the ſake of the hatred they bear to all Monarchies: For it is to be noted, all the Cry is, it is lawful and needful to reſiſt the King. This is the Peoples laſt reſort againſt Tyrants and ill Princes, but ſtill againſt Kings, againſt Princes, Monarchs, Tyrants, all ſingle Governments. But if it be ſo, then ſure it is as lawful for the People of *Venice*, *Holland*, *Switzerland*, to reſiſt and depoſe their Maſters, as it is for the Subjects of any Prince to do it by their Maſter, yet I fear it is not ſo ſafe to Preach and Print this Doctrine there as it is here in *England.*

If Princes are content to be made low and mean in the Eyes of their Subjects, to be expoſed to the Contempt of every Pamphleteer, and to have their Subjects every day told how much it is their Duty to cut off Tyrants and Arbitrary Princes, let no Man be concerned for them; but even leave them to the Deſtiny they either ſeem to court or deſpiſe. But when all is done, the Saviour of the World in due time will convince theſe Scriblers that his Doctrines are not to be fooled with, though Princes may; and he is well able to aſſert his own Ordinance when he thinks fit, if they are not.

This Mutation changed the whole face of the Government in *Denmark*, the King levying Taxes, making and repealing Laws at his own Will and Pleaſure: And theſe Nobles and Gentry, who loſt the Liberty of their Country, by not complying with their Clergy and Commons in the moſt reaſonable thing that ever was asked, to preſerve to themſelves an unreaſonable exemption from the publick Burthens of the State, at a time when the other two Eſtates were not able to bear the Burthen without them, have ſince been tax'd to that height, that they have courted the King to take great part of their Eſtates into his own Hands, and begged to be freed from the Tax by the loſs of the whole; and ſometimes have not been able to obtain the favour of ſuch a Diſcharge. So dangerous it is for any of the States of any Country, to endeavour to Oppreſs their Fellow-Subjects, to which, and not to the *Doctrine of Nonreſiſtance* or *Paſſive Obedience*, was owing the loſs of the Liberty of *Denmark.*

The chief Order of Knighthood in it is that of the *Elephant*; Inſtituted by *Frederick* the ſecond. Their Badge, a Collar powdred with Elephants towred, ſupporting the King's Arms, and having at the end the Picture of the Virgin *Mary.*

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1. *Or*, three Lions paſſant *Vert*, crowned of the firſt, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and ſecondly, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant *Or*, crowned and armed of the firſt, in his Paws a *Dansk* Hatchet *Argent*, for the Kingdom of *Norway.* What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*, I am yet to ſeek.

There are in *Denmark*
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.

Univerſities 2. *Viz.*
Copenhagen. *Sora.*

And ſo much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK.*

OF SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Muſcovie*, on the Weſt with the *Dofrine* Hills, which divide it from *Norway*; on the North with the great Frozen Ocean, ſpoken of before; on the South with *Denmark*, *Lieſland*, and the *Baltick* Sea, (the late Conqueſts made on the Continent, have taken in all the Provinces formerly belonging to *Denmark*, ſo that *Sweden* is now wholly bounded to the *South* by the *Baltick* Sea) So called from the *Sueci*, *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, and the word *Land*, added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length, from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the Borders of *Denmark*, about 20 good days journey on horſeback: inſomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this ſide of *Lapland* and the Gulf or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little leſs than all *Italy* and *France* together; but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the Gulf, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The ſituation of it in regard of the Heavenly bodies is the ſame with *Norway*, under the ſame Parallels and Degrees; but of ſo different a temper, both for Soil and Air, as if diſpoſed of under ſeveral and long diſtant Climes.For the Air here is very pure,but not ſoſharp and inſupportable as it is in *Norway*: though in ſome places, where the Moors and Waters ſettle, for want of care to open and cleanſe the Water courſes, they have great Foggs and Miſts, which do ſomewhat putrifie it. And for the Soil, it is more fertile than any of the other Northern Provinces: ſo that beſides thoſe Neceſſaries which they keep for themſelves, they uſually tranſport into other Countries ſtore of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Braſs, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the Hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and coſtly Furs. They have alſo ſome Mines of Silver, not mixt with any other Metal; plenty of Fiſh in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of Pine-trees, Furr, Oaks, both for Ships and Houſes; yielding beſides, among the Woods, good ſtore of Tar and Honey, and ſome other Neceſſaries. But hereof we ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the ſeveral Provinces.

The principal Mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* Hills, a vaſt and continual Ridge of Mountains which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uſes, yet partly by reaſon of their great Froſts and flakes of Ice, partly by reaſon of the falling of Trees which lye croſs their Channels, they have not many navigable, or any of great fame. The principal of ſuch as be, are .1. *Meler*, at the mouth whereof ſtands the City of *Stockholm*, 2. *Luſen*, 3. *Dalacarlie*, giving name to the Province ſo called, or denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of moſt note is the Lake of *Weret*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it ſelf at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with ſuch noiſe and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devil's head*.

The people are naturally ſtrong and active, provident, patient aud induſtrious; hoſpitable towards Strangers, whom they entertain with great Humanity; ſo healthy, that, if they do not ſhorten their days by Exceſs and Riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age, and ſo laborious, that a Beggar is not ſeen amongſt them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing: not much addicted to the one; and ſo kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other: but much improved in both reſpects in theſe latter days: *Ericus*, the firſt King of the preſent Race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the laſt King, who freed the *Germans* from the Yoke of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, not being eaſily to be matched in the Arts of War. And ſince they began to give themſelves to the ſweets of Learning, this Country hath produced (amongſt ſome other Learned Men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, of great note for his Hiſtory of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, the Firſt-fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable by reaſon of their late Commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better teſtimony to the World hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Art Mechanical, every man in a manner being his own Artificer, without employing Smith, Maſon, Carpenter, or any other manual Trades. Very Valiant they are both on foot and horſeback, which their long Wars againſt the *Danes*, and their late Wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their Women are diſcreet and modeſt, free from that intemperance which theſe Northern parts are ſubject to. Both Sexes uſe a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms; except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the *Bodner* Sea, where they partake ſomewhat of the *Muſcovite* or *Ruſſian* Language.

The Chriſtian Religion was firſt planted amongſt them by the care and diligence of *Anſgarius* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, the Apoſtle-general of the North. Corrupt with Popiſh Superſtitions, it was reformed, according to the *Auguſtine* Confeſſion, in the time of *Guſtavus Ericus*, the firſt of that preſent Royal Family, ſollicited thereunto by one *Peter Nevicius* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Laurence*, the Archdeacon of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others ſay) by a deſire to appropriate to himſelf the Goods of the Church. And this appears to have had ſome ſtrong influence upon him in it, in that he preſently ſeized upon what he pleaſed; and made a Law that Biſhops ſhould enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well leſſened their Revenues, he was content they ſhould remain as formerly both in power and number; reſerving to himſelf and his Succeſſors the Nomination of the perſons; but ſo as the Approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of Election) doth uſually go along with the King's appointment.

Chriſtianity was not received in *Sweden* till about the beginning of the 9th Century, and not in *Finland* till 300 years after. It was firſt eſtabliſhed by one *Sigfrid* an *Engliſh* man, who is ſaid to have been Archbiſhop of *York*, and was Martyred by the *Pagan Goths*. The Reformation was eſtabliſhed here upon *Luthers* Moddle, and never but once diſturbed from abroad, and ſince that never diſtracted at home with any Nonconformity, all orders of men agreeing in a conſtant attendance on Divine Service, and a Zeal for their own way, without any nice enquiries into diſputable points. The Clergy rather imploying their pains, to perſwade men to Piety, than to oppoſe the Doctrine of others, or defend their own. The Revenues of the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, exceed not 400 *l.* the year, and the reſt of the Biſhopricks are proportionable, which ariſeth from their *Glebes*, and one third of Tythes, the other 2 parts being annexed to the Crown for Pious uſes. Their Clergy are generally the Sons of Peaſants, and not of the Nobility or Gentry, which enables them the better to ſubſiſt on their ſmall Revenues, and maintain good Hoſpitality beſides, for which they are much Reverenced by the common people.

The Biſhops are in number ſeven: that is to ſay, 1. Of *Lincopen*, containing in his Dioceſs 226 Pariſhes. 2. Of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3. Of *Scara*, ruling over the ſame number of Churches. 4. Of *Strengnes*, under whom are a hundred only. 5. Of *Abo*, the greateſt for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Pariſhes. 6. Of *Wyborg*, and 7. of *Habſay*; whoſe Dioceſſes for the moſt part lie out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Muſcovie*, *Livonia*, and ſome other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*: All of them are under the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, as their Metropolitan, whoſe Dioceſs, extending into *Lapland* and *Finmark*, containeth 171 Pariſh-Churches. By which account there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland* but 1417 Pariſhes; but many of them a thouſand or eight hundred Families: the people being diſperſed in Foreſts and other places, where they have ſtore of Timber to build them Houſes, and ſtore of Paſturage for their Cattle; which is the reaſon why they have not ſo many great Towns, not ſo well inhabited, as is uſual in far leſſer Countries. As for the Authority of theſe Biſhops, they ſtill retain their Voice in Parliament, and with them ſo many of the inferiour Clergy as are from every *Socken* (a certain number of Pariſhes, like our *Rural Deanries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the Affairs whereof the Biſhops do direct and order, as well in as out of publick Meetings, according to the Eccleſiaſtical Conſtitutions formerly eſtabliſhed; and if any great occaſion be, they may either adviſe with their Conſiſtorials, or call a Dioceſan Synod, (as they think moſt fit) and therein make ſuch Laws and Canons as they conceive to be moſt proper for their own Edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the Eaſt, the other on the Weſt-ſide of the Bay or Gulf of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*, being a large and ſpacious Branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the moſt Southernly Point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which diviſion, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Sweden*, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, ſhutting it upon the North; 4. *Bodia* or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland* on the Eaſt-ſide thereof; and 6. the *Swediſh* Iſlands, where it mingleth with the reſt of the *Baltick*.

The Dominions of this Crown extend from 56 to 69 degrees of Latitude, and from 32 to 55 in Longitude and conſequently are twice greater than the Kingdom of *France*, but the abatements that muſt be made for ſeveral Seas, great Lakes, Rocks, Woods, Heaths and Moraſſes that cover very much of this Country, will reduce the habitable parts to a very ſmall portion, comparatively to the extent of the whole. The Soil is in ſome places tolerably fruitful, though ſeldom above half a Foot deep, and therefore often plowed by a Maid with one Ox, the barren Lands are enriched with the Aſhes of the Trees, growing on the places that are burnt, and the Seed being raked among the Aſhes, produceth a plentiful Crop without any further Labour. If the inhabitants were induſtrious, they could not want Corn for their own uſe, which now is imported from abroad, and is wanted in the poorer Countries. The Cattle are of a very ſmall ſize, and cannot be mended for want of good Fodder in Winter, and Nouriſhing Graſs in Summer. It hath plenty of wild Beaſts, ſuch as Bears, Elkes, Deer, Hares, Wolves, Foxes, Wild-Cats, wild and tame Fowles eſpecially Hawkes. Their Woods and vaſt Foreſts over-ſpreading much of the Country afford a plentiful and cheap Fireing. They conſiſt of Fir, Beech, Birch, Elder and Juniper, and ſome Oak, and grow ſo thick, that the Woods are ſcarce paſſable. In Summer the fields are cloathed with variety of Flowers; *Strawberries*, *Raſbberries*, *Currants*, which grow upon every Rock, the heat of the Sun is ſo great, that it often ſets the Woods on Fire, which ſometimes ſpreads many Leagues and is not ſtopped, but by great Lakes or Plains, which yet never happeneth in the hotteſt parts of the Earth. In their Gardens *Mellons* are brought to good Perfection in dry years, but Apricocks, Peaches, and other Wall fruits are almoſt as rare as Oranges, they have Cherries of many ſorts, ſome tollerable good; which cannot be ſaid of their Apples, Pears, and Plumbs, which are ſcarce and not good, all kinds of Roots are plentiful, and contribute much to the Nouriſhment of the people. The people are well provided of good and warm Cloathing, befiting their condition, and the Climate they live in, becauſe if any neglect or failure happen, it uſually proves fatal and occaſioneth the loſs of ſome of their Members, and ſometimes of their Lives. The Air is healthful, dry and ſharp, and diſpoſeth the Natives to a vigorous Conſtitution; and that again confirmed by an hardy Education, courſe Fare, hard Lodging, *&c.* qualifies them to endure any uneaſie circumſtances that befall them, better than thoſe that are born in a more moderate Air, and more indulgently bred up. As to their minds they are ſeldom endued with any eminent ſhare of Veracity or Pregnancy of Wit; yet by induſtry, experience and Travel, ſome of them arrive to a Mature and ſollid Judgment, being by their Genious led to ſerious things, in which they become excellent, and merit the Title of Great and Able Men, but this it applicable to but a few, becauſe it requires much patience, Study and Induſtry to attain it. The diſpoſitions aforeſaid, generally qualifies them more for a Life of Labour, than of Art and Curioſity, hence the moſt of the Nobility apply themſelves to a Military Life, in which they are more famed for courage and enduring hardſhip, than for Stratagems and Intreagues, and thoſe imployed in the Adminiſtration of Civil affairs, though very laborious in their buſineſs, do not often riſe to any great perfection. In point of Learning they are rather Tranſcribers than Authors. As to Trade, they more eaſily do the Drudgery of it, than dive into the Miſtery either of Commerce or Manufactures. The common Soldiers endure Cold, Hunger, long Marches and hard Labour to admiration; but they learn their Duty ſlowly, and are better at ſtanding their ground, and obeying their orders, than attacking an Enemy. The Peaſants are laborious as far as need compels them, but are not neat in their Works, and very hard to learn new ways that are better and quicker than their old ones. The Clergy are but moderately learned, they affect gravity and long Beards; and are much eſteemed for their Hoſpitality, which together begets a great Authority among the common people, whoſe heads are not troubled with diſputes in Religion, for here and in *Denmark*, there are no Factions in Religion, the common banes of the more Southern Countries. The whole Nation are very Religious in their way, and conſtant frequenters of the Church, eminently Loyal and well affected to Monarchy, grave even to Formality, Sober, ſuſpitious, apt to Envy each other, as well as Strangers, more inclined to pilfring and frauds than to open Violences, ſuch as breaking into Houſes, and Robbing on the High-way, Crimes as rarely committed in this, as in any Country whatſoever.

1. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Bodner* Sea, on the Weſt with the Mountains which divide it from *Norway*, and ſo much of *Denmark* as lies in the ſame Continent with it, on the North with *Sweden*, on the South with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whoſe original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quaſi goot Land*, from the goodneſs and fertility of the Soil, (*Gootlandia, quæ Germanice* Terra bona *ſonat*, as *Maginus* out of *Munſter* hath it) the Soil being very fruitful of Corn and Cattle, affording plenty of mines, with great ſtore of Fiſh, and generally a better conditioned Country than any of the reſt of theſe Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ooſtro-goth*, or *Eaſt-gothland*; *Weſter-Goth* divided from the former by the great Lake of *Werret*, ſpoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, ſubdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiſcia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns in *Ooſtro-goth* are, 1. *Lincopen*, a Biſhops See. 2. *Loduſe*, adorned with a very fair Haven. In *Weſter-goth*, 3. *Scara*, on the Lake *Werret*, a Biſhop's See alſo. *Elſeborg*, on the Weſtern Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*; a place of conſequence, and flanked with two very ſtrong Caſtles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5. *Tragualle*, remarkable for Iron works, occaſioned by the Mines adjoyning. And finally; in *South-Gothland* there is 6. *Vixime* or *Vexio* another of the Epiſcopal Sees. 7. *Walburg*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a ſtrong Caſtle. 8. *Elcholm*, in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the Confines of *Denmark*, 9. *Calmar*, a noted and well traded port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Caſtle not inferior to that of *Millain*, and ſo well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Chriſtiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, *An.* 1611, there were found mounted on the works 108 braſs pieces of Ordnance, ſix men of War to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. It was reſtored to the *Swedes* in 1613, by Treaty. 10. *Gottenburg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth; enjoying a commodious Haven, on the *Baltick* alſo, and very much frequented for the Trade of *Germany*, to which it ſerves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cauſe the ordinary Seat or Reſidence of the Governour for the King of *Sweden*.

The firſt Inhabitants of the South parts of *Scandia* are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*: whom *Jornandes* in his Book *de Rebu Geticis* makes to have iſſued out of this Country, and to plant themſelves on the North Banks of the *Iſther* near the *Euxine* Sea, ſometime before the *Trojan* War, aſcribing to them whatſoever is reported in old Writers of the ancient *Scythians*, as their Encounter with *Vexoris* or *Seſoſtris* the King of *Egypt*, the Acts and Atchievements of the *Amazons*, their Congreſs with *Alexander* the Great in his *Perſian* War, and the like to theſe. In which *Jornandes*, being himſelf a *Goth* is no more to be credited than *Geofrey* of *Monmouth* a *Welch*-man, in the Story of *Brute* and his Succeſſors, to whom he doth aſcribe the taking and ſacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the Brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Moſt probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the Land of *Pruſſia*; who finding their own Country too narrow for them, might paſs over the *Baltick* into the next adjoyning Regions; and not well liking that cold Clime, might afterwards in ſome good numbers go to ſeek new Dwellings, and at laſt ſeat themſelves on the Banks of the *Iſter*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, beſides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and thoſe of *Ooſtro-goths* and *Wiſi-goths*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alarick*, *Theodorick*, *Riccared*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) ſeem to me to evidence. That they were once ſeated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. by the name of *Gothland* here ſtill remaining; 2. by the Title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the Royal Style; 3. by ſome Inſcriptions in ancient unknown Characters engraven on the Rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wisby* in the Iſle of *Gothland*, ſuppoſed by learned men to be ſome monument of that People. And finally, that their fixt Dwelling, when firſt known by this name amongſt the *Romans*, was on the North-ſide of the *Iſter*, is evident by the teſtimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Antonius Caracalla*, with whom they had ſome tumultuary Skirmiſhes in his way towards *Perſia*, till their violent Irruption into *Italy* and the Weſtern Provinces: moſt famous in this Interval for a great Fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperor, whom they overcame and ſlew in a Battle, *Anno* 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian*, the *Roman* Emperors, a Quarrel being grown amongſt them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus*, the Leaders of the oppoſite Factions; *Phritigernes*, overthrown in fight, had recourſe to *Valens*, from whom he received ſuch Succours, that giving his Adverſary another day for it, he obtained the Victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his party received the Goſpel, but intermixt and corrupt with the Leven of *Arianiſm*, by the practice of *Valens*, who ſent them none but *Arian* Teachers, to whom and their Factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Iſter* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out parts of *Thrace* for an Habitation, on condition they ſhould ſerve under the pay of the Emperor, and become Chriſtians: the cauſe that *Arianiſm* over-ſpread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one part only. *Ulphilas*, a devout and learned man, was their firſt Biſhop; who, for their better Edification in the way of Godlineſs, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and tranſlated the Scriptures into that Language: in the ſtudy whereof they ſo well profited, that many of them in the time of their firſt Converſion ſuffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted Martyrs. Burthened by *Valens*, and denyed their accuſtomed Pay, they haraſs and depopulate the reſt of *Thrace*, marching towards *Conſtantinople*; encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they over came and killed, after all his Favours. Vanquiſhed by *Theodoſius* the ſucceeding Emperor in many Battles, they became good neighbours, inlarging their Bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into ſuch eſtimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Franita*, two of that Nation, did obtain the Conſulſhip: not to ſay any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court it ſelf. Made inſolent by ſo great Honours, and apt to pick Quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great Bodies, conſiſting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men. The firſt whereof, under the Conduct of *Rhadaguiſus*, was diſcomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor, at *Feſula* in the Streights of the *Appennine*. The other, by his Treachery permitted to paſs, ſacked *Rome*, and ſubdued the moſt part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great Victory, let the fruits of it to his Son *Athaulſus*; who marrying with *Galla Placidia* the Emperors Siſter, relinquiſhed *Italy*, and had all *Gallia Narbonenſis*, and a great part of *Hiſpania Tarraconenſis*, aſſigned unto him, where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wiſi-Goths* or *Weſtern-Goths*, poſſeſſed of *Spain* and *Tingitana* for the ſpace of 300 years and upward, when they loſt that Kingdom to the *Moors*, as hath there been ſaid. In the mean time the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, diſtinguiſhed from theſe by the name of *Ooſter-Goths*, by reaſon of their more Eaſtern ſituation, kept themſelves in quiet: being firſt ſubdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamir* freed from that ſubjection, not intermedling or attempting any thing againſt the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperor of *Conſtantinople* into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then ſubdued it. Which action they managed with ſo much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquiſhed *Odoacer*, poſſeſſed *Italy*, and held it above Sixty years; when, broken in many ſet Battles by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, Lieutenants for the Emperor *Juſtinian*, their Kingdom and Name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a ſucceſſion of them in *Jornandes* from *Berig*, who firſt conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the Eaſt, till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with ſo little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it than the Stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharaoh*'s daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and ſucceſſion are theſe few that follow.

The Kings of the *GOTHS*.

344 1. ***Athanaricus***, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Conſtantius* and *Conſtans*, the Sons of *Conſtantine* the Great.

357 2. ***Alaricus***, the firſt of that name, in the time of *Conſtantius*.

3. ***Phritigernes***, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince among that People.

370 4. ***Athanaricus*** II. in the time of the Emperors *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the ſecond; under whom the *Goths* were firſt ſetled on this ſide of the *Iſter*.

379 5. ***Rhadaguiſus***, who in the time of *Honorius* firſt led the *Goths* into *Italy*; ſlain at the Battle of *Feſulæ*.

410 6. ***Alaricus*** II. who, purſuing the War of *Italy*, ſacked *Rome*, ſubdued *Naples*, and the moſt of *Italy*.

412 7. ***Athaulſſus***, the Son of *Alarick* the ſecond, who firſt erected the Kingdom of the *Wiſi-goths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards; the preſent Kings of *Spain* coming from this Stock.

417 8. ***Athalaricus***, King of the *Goths* remaining in the Eaſt at the departure of *Rhadaguiſe* and *Alaricus*, diſtinguiſhed from their Plantations by the name of *Ooſtro-goths*: vanquiſhed by *Attila*, they became Subjects to the *Huns* in the time of *Theodoſius* the ſecond and *Valentinian* the third, Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt.

9. ***Wilamer***, one of the Blood-Royal of the *Goths*, Vaſſal to *Attila*, at the firſt, whom he aſſiſted, or ſerved rather, in the great Battle near *Tholouſe* againſt the *Romans*: but taking advantage of ſome Quarrels amongſt the Sons of *Attila*, ſhook off that Yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperor *Marcianus*.

10. ***Theodomir***, Son of *Winithar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.

11. ***Theodorick***, Son of *Theodomir*, kept at *Conſtantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or Hoſtage for his Father, where he was inſtructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* Learning, and made the adopted Son (as is ſaid by *Scaliger*) of the Emperor *Zeno*, by whom he was ſent into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, and erected there the Kingdom of the *Ooſtro-goths*: which continued till the Reign of *Juſtinian*, when it was deſtroyed by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, as before is ſaid: the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their Blood intermixt with the beſt *Italian*. The ſum of their whole Story, for varieties ſake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilom iſſued forth
From the cold frozen Iſlands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Viſtula*: but the Air almoſt
B'ing there as cold as in the *Baltick* Coaſt,
He with victorious Arms *Sclavonia* gains,
The *Tranſylvanian* and *Valachian* Plains;
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,
Greedy of Spoil, four times he bravely ſeeks
To pluck from *Rome* (then *Mars* his Minion)
The Plumes, which ſhe from all the World hath won,
Guided by *Rhadaguiſe* and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimaras* and *Theodorick*,
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulſt, his (Legions
Reſt ever ſince upon the *Spaniſh* Regions.

The Arms of theſe Kings are ſaid to have been *Or*, three Ravens with diſplayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this ſuffice for the Original, Succeſſes, and final Period of the *Goths*; reſerved by me unto this place, becauſe moſt commonly conceived to be their original Country, at leaſt the place out of which they iſſued, when they firſt moved towards the Eaſt to ſeek new Dwellings.

2. *SWEDEN*.

SWEDEN is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Bodner* Sea, on the Weſt with the *Dofrine* Hills, which part it from *Norway* on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; of whom more anon. A Country ſufficiently fruitful, but for the goodneſs of the Soil inferiour to *Gothland*; and not ſo well planted or inhabited as that is, by reaſon of the vaſt Woods which they will not ſuffer to be deſtroyed, and the greatneſs of ſome Marſhes hitherto undrained: But might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of Corn growing amongſt the Woods, though much hindred by their ſhade and thickneſs both from Sun and Rain. But for the Character of this Country, we had it formerly, when we ſpake of *Swethland*, in the general; relating ſpecially to this as the principal part.

And, as the largeſt and principal part of this great Body, it contains in it many Provinces and Subdiviſions: as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Sudermannia*, 3. *Nericia*, 4. *Weſtmannia*, 5. *Delecarlie*, 6. *Vermiand*, 7. *Coperdale*, 8. *Geſtricia*, 9. *Helſingia*, 10. *Middelfar*, 11. *Angermannia*, bordering on *Lapland*, the fartheſt of theſe Provinces towards the North. Many of theſe have no Towns or Cities of any greatneſs or beauty, the people living thin and ſcattered, where they have Wood for Building, Paſturage for their Beaſts, and elbow-room enough for themſelves and their Cattle. Of theſe the principal are, 1. *Upſal*, an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, ſituate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, beautified with a large Cathedral, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is ſtiled *Archiepiſcopatus Upſalenſis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Ruſſians Stecolne*; the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom; exceeding ſtrong both by Art and Nature, as being ſituate in the Marſhes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake or River of *Meler*, the paſſage to it out of the Bay being very narrow, and by conſequence eaſily defended, and yet ſo deep withal, that the greateſt Ships of Burthen may ſail up to the City: the Port within the Streight being ſo ſafe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 Sail, which uſually ride there without any Anchor. The Caſtle of this City is conceived to be one of the ſtrongeſt holds in the world; fortified for the more aſſurance of it with 400 braſs pieces, many of which are double Canon. A Perſon of Quality, who ſaw this place in the year 1664, ſaith it is not ſo big as *Roan* in *France*, the buildings are moſt of Stone, and the reſt of Wood, the former are many of them very magnificent, ſome part of the Town only is built on Piles, the reſt upon an Iſland, the Kings Palace has nothing very remarkable, but the Civility of the Inhabitants, and the wonder of finding ſuch a Court and City inviron'd with Rocks, and uninhabited Iſland, which yet ſerve inſtead of ſo many Natural Forts to the Town, thus far he. In the year 1518, it was beſieged by *Chriſtiern* 2. King of *Denmark*, and taken, but uſing the Inhabitants Cruelly, he was expell'd in the year 1520, by *Guſtavus* the

Son of *Errick*, the firſt of this Race of Kings now Reigning. This City lies in 59 D. 20 M. North Latitude. About three hundred years agone, it was only a bare Iſland, with 2 or 3 Cottages for Fiſhers, but upon the building of a Caſtle there to ſtop the inroads of the *Ruſs*, and the Tranſlation of the Court thither, it grew by degrees to ſurpaſs the other ancient Cities, and it is at preſent the Metropolis of this Kingdom, and ſuppoſed to be as populous as *Briſtol*. The Caſtle here which is covered with Copper, is a place of no ſtrength or beauty, but of great uſe, being a ſpacious building, that beſides entertaining the Court, furniſhes room for moſt of the great offices, the National Court of Juſtice, Colleges of War, Chancery, Treaſury, Reduction, Liquidation, Commerce and Execution, as alſo an Armory, Chappel, Library and Archives. Yet it Lodgeth very few of the inferior Officers and Servants of the Court, they together with the Foot Guards being Quartered upon the *Burghers*, and at their charge for Lodging, Fire, and Candle. In this City are 7 large Churches built of Brick, and covered with Copper, beſides two more now (in 1692) building, and three or four Wooden Chappels. The Palace of the Nobility, in which is holden the aſſembly of the States, The Bank and ſeveral Magnificent Houſes of the Nobleſs, and the moſt of the *Burghers* Houſes being built with Brick, do altogether make an handſome proſpect. An account of *Sweden* written in 1692. This City is in a manner the Staple of all *Sweden* for Iron, Copper, Wire, Pitch, Tar, Maſts, and Deales are brought to be exported, as alſo the greateſt part of what comes from abroad is Landed here; the Haven being large enough for a Thouſand Sail of Ships, and the Key an Engliſh Mile long, to which the greateſt Veſſel may lay her broad-ſide to Load or Unload, the Sun at the higheſt, is above the Horizon of this City, 18 hours and a half, and for ſome Weeks makes a continual Day. In Winter the days are in the ſame proportion ſhorter being but five Hours one half long, which defect is ſo well ſupplyed by Moon Light, the whiteneſs of the Snow, and the clearneſs of the sky, that Travelling is as uſual in the Night as in the Day, and the want of the Sun is made good by ſtoves within Doors, and by warm furs abroad. 3. *Nicopen*, a Sea Town on the ſame Bay alſo. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4. *Strengnes*, an Epiſcopal See, and 5. *Telga*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Sudermannia*; the Title and Eſtate of *Charles*, Father of *Guſtaphus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Suderman*. Next, in the Province of *Weſtmannia*, there are 6. *Arboga*, on the Weſt-ſide of the ſaid Lake of *Meler*, and 7. *Arroſia*, rich in Silver-mines, out of which are made the beſt Dollars of *Sweden*; the Mines here being ſo rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of Silver, the workmen draw a pound weight of Gold. 8. *Helſinge*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helſingia*, taking name from hence. 9. *Orebo* or *Ourbo*, a ſtrong piece in *Nericia*: and 10. *Leſinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the fartheſt North of *Sweden* diſtinctly and ſpecially ſo called.

3. LAPLAND.

LAPLAND, the moſt Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the Eaſt *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt the Province or Prefecture of *Wardhuys* in the Kingdom of *Norway*, on the North the main Frozen Ocean, and on the South *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both ſides of the Bay ſo called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blockiſh behaviour; the word *Lappon* ſignifying the ſame with *ineptus* or *inſulſus* in *Latin*; for ſuch they are, rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as alſo without Corn and Houſes, or any certain Habitations, (except only in *Finmark*;) feeding for the moſt part on Fiſh and the fleſh of wild Beaſts, with the Skins whereof they hide their nakedneſs. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving Divine honour all the day following to that living Creature, whatſoever it be, which they ſee at the firſt ſetting out in the morning; great Sorcerers, and abhorring the ſight of Strangers, whom till of late they uſed to flee from at their firſt approach, but within few years paſt beginning to be more ſociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true deſcendents of the ancient *Finni*; poſſeſſed in old times of all that Tract which lieth between the Bay of *Finland* and the Frozen Ocean, whoſe natural rudeneſs and barbarity, unmixt with the conditions of more civil people, they do ſtill retain.

It is divided into the Eaſtern and Weſtern *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Muſcovy*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the wild *Lappians*, is ſubdivided into *Biarmia* and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we ſhall there ſpeak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, ſubdivided into two parts alſo that is to ſay, 1. *Finmark*, and 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1. *FINMARK*, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two. The people are for the moſt part Idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and reſort of Strangers unto *Wardhuys* and the parts adjoyning, ſomewhat civilized, and in the Borders of both Kingdoms ſavouring of Religion, poſſeſſed of Sheds or ſorry Houſes, and thoſe Houſes reduced to Pariſhes under the Juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongſt them) are named, 1. *Samman*, and 2. *Hielſo*. Called *Finmark*; as the ancient Bounds and Marches of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneouſly by *Maginus* made a part of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2. *SCRICFINNIA* lieth between *Finmark* and *Ruſſia*. The name is derived from the *Finni*, a great People of *Scandia*, and *Sckirken*, a *Dutch* word ſignifying *leaping*, *ſliding*, or *bounding*, for ſuch is their gate. An Etymologie not much improbable, in that the Wooden ſoled-ſhoes with ſharp bottoms, which they uſed for their more ſpeedy ſliding over the Ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who alſo uſe them) called *Scrickshoenen*, or ſliding-ſhoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scrictofinni*.

Theſe are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanders*, and unto theſe the former Character doth of right belong. Of ſtature very low, little more than Pygmies, but ſtrong and active; well skill'd in Archery, and patient of cold and Labour; much given to hunting of wild Beaſts whom they kill with their Bowes, devour the fleſh, and cloath themſelves with their Skins, which they tye at the top of their Heads, and leave no place open but for the ſight; giving thereby occaſion unto ſome to write that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horſes. Such Deer (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkilled, they make to draw in little Carts, as they ſhift their Quarters. But having ſerved them for a while, they are killed at laſt, though perhaps for nothing but their Skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of Tribute. Three Companies of theſe *Laplanders*, ſo clad and Armed, as aforeſaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630, to ſerve *Guſtavus Adolphus* in thoſe Wars: looked on with admiration by all Spectators.

Towns we muſt look for none here, where no Houſes be: and yet there are ſome Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea ſhore, which Mariners having made for their refreſhment when they came on Land, have beſtowed ſome names on, and poſſibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

4. *BODIA.*

BODIA, BODDEN, or *BODNER*, is ſituate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southwards on the Weſt ſide of it, till it joins to *Sweden*, and on the Eaſt-ſide, till it meets with the Province of *Finland*. Hence is the diviſion of this country into the *Eaſtern*, *Northern* and *Weſtern Bodden*, with reference to the Situation of it on the Bay aforeſaid. The Country is not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beaſts, whoſe rich Skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants, and by reaſon of the commodious ſituation on all ſides of the Bay, is well ſtored with Fiſh. Anciently it was part of the poſſeſſions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, *Bodden* or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence ſoever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoyning is called *Sinus Bodicus*, the *Bodner Zee* by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Birkara*, in *Weſt-Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake. 2. *Toronia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North-bodden*. 2. *Helſingeliac*, more North than that, towards the Borders of *Lapland*. And 4. *Kerlabi* in *Eaſt-Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently ſeated for a Town of Trade.

5. *FINLAND.*

FINLAND hath on the North *Bodia*, on the South the *Baltick* Sea or *Mare Suevicum*, on the Eaſt *Sinus Finnicus*, on the Weſt *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munſter* thought to be called *Finland*, *quaſi* fine land; *quod pulchrior & amœnior ſit Suecia*, becauſe it is more fine and pleaſing Country than *Sweden* it ſelf. But indeed it is ſo called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*, a potent Nation who have here dwelt, whoſe Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*, Finnis *mira Feritas*, *fœda paupertas*, non *Arma*, *non Equi*, *non Penates*, *Victui Herbæ*, *Viſtitui Pelles*, *Cubili Humus*, *ſola in Sagittis ſpes*. The *Finns*, ſaith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miſerably poor, without Arms, Horſe or Houſhold-goods; Herbs their Food, the ground their Bed, and the Skins of Beaſts their beſt Apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our preſent *Finlanders*, eſpecially thoſe of *Scricfinnia* and ſome parts of *Finmarchia*; who are not ſo well reclaimed to Civility as the others are: but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who, living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) entercourſe with foreign Nations, telleth us of them, that they were *Scanzia Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suethidi* themſelves. If ſo, they did deſerve to live in ſo good a Country, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither ſo Hilly, nor ſo Mooriſh.

The principal places in it are, 1. *Abo*, an Archbiſhops See; ſituate on the moſt Southern point of it, ſhooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wyborg*, a Biſhop's See alſo, whoſe Juriſdiction for the moſt part is without this Province, on ſome part of *Ruſſia*, all *Finland* being in the Dioceſs of the Biſhop of *Abo*. A Town conveniently ſeated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulf of *Finland*, (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latin*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*, well fortified as the chief Bulwark of this Kingdom againſt the *Muſcovite*; and ſo well garriſoned withal, that the keeping of this Town, and *Rivallia* or *Revel* in the Borders of *Lieſland*, do coſt the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a Point or Promontory of the ſame Gulf, oppoſite to *Narva*, another Garriſon of this King in *Lieſland*. 4. *Verma*, upon the *Bodner Zee*. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Piente*. 6. *Deckala*, on the Banks of the great Lake called *Holela*. 7. *Varta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*. Of which laſt four I find not any thing obſervable in the way of Story.

6. The *SWEDISH Iſlands.*

AND now at laſt I come to the *Swediſh Iſlands*, here and there interſperſed in the *Baltick* Seas, betwixt the Iſle of *Pornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Lieſland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*. The Principal of which are, 1. *Gothia*, or the Iſle of *Gothland*; and 2. *Inſula Ulandæ*, or the Iſles of *Oeland*,

1. *GOTHIA*, or the Iſle of *GOTHLAND*, is ſituate over againſt *Calmar*, a ſtrong Town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch* miles, and five in breadth, of a rich Soil, but more fit for Paſturage than Tillage, yielding great Herds of Cattle, ſtore of Game for Hunting, plenty of Fiſh, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it ſends forth to other Countries. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages, beſides the Haven Town of *Wisby*, heretofore rich and of very great Trading, as much frequented by the Merchant as moſt in *Europe*; but now much decayed and neither ſo well peopled nor ſo rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Pomerania* (deſtroyed by *Waldemar* the firſt of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1170) made it flouriſh mightily; the greateſt Traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that by reaſon of the long and continual Wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poſſeſſion of this Iſle it became unſafe, the factory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently ſeated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and ſometimes poſſeſſed it; but at the preſent it is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By ſome conceived to be the *Eningia* ſpoken of by *Pliny*.

2. *OELAND*, or the Iſles of *Ulandt*, ſo called in the plural Number, becauſe there are many of them, of which this the principal is ſituate over againſt *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouſly ſeated to invade or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified and as ſtrongly garriſoned: here being the good Towns of 1. *Viborg*, 2. *Vumes*, and 3. the ſtrong Caſtle of *Caſtrolm*.

Beſides which Countries here deſcribed, the King of *Sweden* is poſſeſſed of the ſtrong Towns of *Narva*, and *Rivallia* or *Reuel*, and *Pernaw* in *Lieſland* of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm* in *Corelia*, a Province of *Ruſſia*; with very fair and ample Territories appertaining to them: ſubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the ſecond, *An.* 1581, except *Rivallia* which voluntary ſubmitted to *Ericus* the 2. King of this preſent Race, *An.* 1561. But being theſe Towns and Territories are not within the Bounds of *Swethland*, we ſhall defer all farther diſcourſe thereof to a place more proper.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Kingdom, beſides the *Goths* and *Finni* ſpoken of already, were the *Sitones* and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavcnæ*, the *Phiraſi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Ptolomy*, placed by him in the Eaſt and middle of this great *Peninſula*. Which, being the general names of ſome mighty Nations are by *Jornandes* branched into leſſer Tribes of the *Suethans*, *Theuſtad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Athelnil*; *Gaurigoth*, *Raumaricæ*, *Rauragnicii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzia*, *Unixia*, *Arochitamii*, *Enageræ*, *Othingi*, and divers others by them named, but from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes* or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor ſpoken of at all by *Munſter* or *Cranzius*, which two (but ſpecially the laſt) have written purpoſely of this people. *Gaſper Peucerus* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who anciently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom the *Baltick* Sea, was called *Mare Suevicum*: which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the

Goths and *Daci* into this Country, and by the change of one letter only to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to ſtand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thoſe colder Countries they fell into theſe parts which are ſtill called *Suevia*,(the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Caſar*. And after, *in fatali illa Gentium commigratione*, when almoſt all the Northern Nations did ſhift their Seats, we find ſuch of them as had ſtaid behind to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their Invaſions into *Gaul* and *Spain*, of any expedition of theirs croſs the *Baltick* Seas, *ne gry quidem*, nothing to be found in more ancient Authors. We muſt therefore refer the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both; both being anciently ſetled in theſe Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus* inſcribed, *De moribus Germanorum*; by whom they are reported to be ſtrong in Men, Armour and Shipping. And that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two Circumſtances in that Author, 1. That the people were not permitted to wear weapons, *quia Subitos Hoſtium Incurſus prohibet Oceanus*, becauſe the Ocean was to them a ſufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the ancient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the ſituation of this preſent Country, defended by the *Baltick* and vaſt Northern Ocean from the ſudden Aſſaults of any enemy. 2. Becauſe the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmoſt bounds of the World; *Trans* Suiones *Mare aliud, quo cingi claudique Terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country. 3. Add unto theſe this paſſage of the old Annals of the Emperor *Lewis* the ſecond; where it is told us of the *Danes*, *relicta patria apud Suiones exſulabant*, that they were baniſhed into the Country of the *Suiones*, which cannot ſo well be underſtood of any place as of this *Sweden*, being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And 4. that this people both by *Munſter* and *Cranzius*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci*, or *Suedi*; which ſheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethans* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* ſpeaks of in his Book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Iſle of *Scandia*, (for ſuch this great *Peninſula* was eſteemed to be by moſt ancient Writers.) Now that theſe *Suethidi* are no other than the preſent *Swethlanders* appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the Names. 2. In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finniatha* the next neighbours to them. And 3. in that they are affirmed by the ſame Author to have furniſhed the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the Skins of wild Beaſts with which Commodities this Country is abundantly well ſtored. Now to which of theſe two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suethidi* thoſe of *Sweden* are moſt indebted for their Original, will (I conceive) be no great controverſie: the *Suethans* and *Suethidi* of *Jornandes* being no other than a Tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greateſt and moſt powerful of all thoſe Tribes; placed therefore in the Front to command the reſt, and ſo moſt like to give the name unto the whole,

Their Government was anciently under Kings, affirmed ſo to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us alſo that they were abſolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*; not bound in Covenant with their people, nor holding their Eſtates at the will of the Subject. But their Hiſtorians have gone for Antiquity hereof beyond the ſtory of *Brute* or the *Trojan* War, (beyond which very few of that ſtrain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the Flood. But letting paſs theſe Dreams and Dotages of the Monkiſh times, certain it is that ſometimes they were under the *Danes*, ſometimes under the *Norwegians*, ſometimes had diſtinct Kings of their own; and finally ſometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Norwegians* under the general name of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon Foreign Actions. Omitting therefore the Succeſſion of their former Kings, of whoſe very being there is cauſe to make great queſtion; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jermanicus*, who entertained *Herald* King of *Denmark* and his Brother *Regenfride*, driven out of that Kingdom of *Gotricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemaign*; of whoſe Succeſſors *Munſter* giveth us more certainty.

The Kings of *SWEDEN*.

1. *Jermanicus*.

2. *Frotho*.

3. *Herotus*.

4. *Sorlus*.

5. *Biornus*.

6. *Wichſertus*.

7. *Ericus*.

8. *Oſtenus*.

9. *Sturbiornus*.

10. *Ericus* 2.

11. *Olaus*.

12. *Edmundus*.

13. *Stinkalis*.

14. *Halſtenus*.

15. *Animander*.

16. *Aquinus*.

17. *Magnus*.

1150 18. *Sherco*. 10.

1160 19. *Carolus*. 8.

1168 20. *Canutus*. 54.

1222 21. *Ericus* 3. 27.

1249 22. *Byrgerius*. 2.

1251 23. *Waldemarus*. 26.

1277 24. *Magnus* 2. 13.

1290 25. *Byrgerius* 2. 23.

1313 26. *Magnus* 3. Son to *Ericus* the Brother of *Byrgerius*, was alſo choſen King of *Norway*.

1326 27. *Magnus* 4. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, which laſt he gave in his life time to *Haquin* or *Aquinus*, his ſecond Son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldeſt Son (his deſigned Succeſſors in this Crown) was outed of this Kingdom by the practice of

1363 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Siſter of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, made King of *Sweden*, on that Quarrel Vanquiſhed by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway* Widow of *Aquinus*, *Anno* 1387, to whom, deſirous of liberty, he reſigned his Kingdom, and died in his own Country *Anno* 1407.

1387 29. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her Command, cauſed an Act of State to be paſſed in *Calmar*, a chief Town in *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Succeſſors; the Law and Priviledges of each Kingdom continuing as before they were.

1411 30. *Ericus* 4. Duke of *Pomeren*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whoſe Siſter *Ingelburgis* he was deſcended, was in her life time choſen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he ſucceeded actually after her deceaſe; but outed of them all by a ſtrong Faction raiſed againſt him, *Anno* 1439, he died in a private Eſtate in *Pomeren*, *Anno* 1459.

1439 31. *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavier*, (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of *Ericus*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdoms. After whoſe death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Daniſh* Government, broke the Agreement made at *Calmar*, for the uniting of the 3 Kingdoms under one Prince, and choſe one *Carolus Canatus* to be their King, *Anno* 1448.

1448 32. *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meaneſt of the Nobility, and not long pleaſing to the great ones: whoſe diſpleaſure when he had incurred, and feared the conſequents thereof, he gathered together all the Treaſure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.

1455 33. *Chriſtiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but out again under colour that he had not kept Conditions with them: the Kingdom being governed after that for a time by Marſhals.

1458 34. *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, the Son of *Chriſtiern*, received King by the *Swedes*, then over-powered by the *Muſcovite*: but their turn being ſerved, they expelled him, again, returning to their former Government under Marſhals. Of which Marſhals (deſcended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mothers ſide) there were three in number; *viz.* 1. *Steno.* 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Stur* the ſecond: of which the two firſt died natural deaths, and the laſt being by *Chriſtiern* the ſecond ſlain in Battel, this Kingdom was again poſſeſſed by the *Danes*.

1519 35. *Chriſtiern* II. King of all three Kingdoms, uſed his Victory ſo cruelly here, and his Subjects ſo inſolently at home, that here he was outed by *Guſtavus Ericus* and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.

1523 36. *Guſtavus Ericus*, deſcended from the ancient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquiſhed and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that action choſen King of *Swethland*, which ſtill continueth in his Houſe. He is ſtiled by *Antonius William Schowartus Erick de Waſa a Grypſholm*, he managed many and dreadful Wars with the *Danes* and *Ruſs*, and the City of *Lubeck*, and died in the year 1560.

1561 37. *Ericus* V. Son to *Guſtavus* 8. Was Crowned King of *Sweden*, and managed Wars againſt the *Danes* and *Poles*, he Courted *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*, and being rejected by her he Married a mean Concubine, whom he Crowned at *Stockholm*, in 1568, by which Act he loſt the Hearts of his Subjects, and was depoſed the next year.

1569 38. *John* II. Brother of *Ericus*, married *Catharine* the Siſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, King of *Poland*. He made a Peace with the *Danes* in 1570, but continued the War with *Lubeck*, and the *Ruſs* and died in 1592.

1593 39. *Sigiſmund*, the Son of *John* the ſecond, in the life-time of his Father choſen King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1586, but was diſpoſſeſſed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*. Which War was begun in the year 1595, when *Charles* aſſum'd the Title of Governor of *Sweden*, and was not ended till the year 1607, the year after *Sigiſmund* was Crowned, and in the year 1599, the Nobility of *Sweden* depoſed *Sigiſmund* and elected *Charles* his Uncle, who was the Third Son of *Guſtavus Ericus*.

1607 40. *Charles* II. Duke of *Suderman*, the youngeſt Son of *Guſtavus Ericus*, and Brother of *John* and *Erick* the two former Kings, firſt governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigiſmund*. But having an aim upon the Crown, (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raiſed up a *Calvinian* party within that Realm; according to whoſe Principles he began firſt to withdraw his obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to aſſume the Government to himſelf: ſpeeding ſo well in his Deſign; that after a long War he forced his Nephew to deſiſt from all farther Enterpriſes, and made himſelf King, *Anno* 1607.

1611 41. *Guſtavus Adolphus*, Son of *Charles*, was born in the year 1594, crowned King of *Sweden*, in 1617, having ſetled his affairs in *Sweden*, and made Peace with the King of *Denmark*, in 1613, with the *Ruſs* in 1617, with whom his Father was in War at the time of his death, fell firſt on his Couſin *Sigiſmund*, the King of *Poland*, from whom he took many places of importance in *Pruſſia* and *Livonia*; and in purſuance of that War was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards, having ſetled a Truce with him, he paſſed into *Germany* in 1630, then in great danger of being abſolutely inthralled to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. In which he proſpered ſo beyond all expectation, that in one year he paſſed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Danow*, (which no Conqueror ever did before:) and having twice vanquiſhed the Imperialiſts led by *Tilly*, and reſtored many of the *German* Princes unto their Eſtates, was in the current of his Victories ſlain in the Battel of *Lutzen*, *Novemb.* 1632; his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and there interred.

1632 42. *Chriſtina*, ſole Daughter of *Guſtavus*, of the age of ſeven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*; the Eſtate being governed by the Counſels of the Nobility. After a long War, with variable ſucceſs in *Germany*, they came at laſt to this accord in the Treaty of *Munſter*, that ſhe and her Succeſſors, Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, ſhould peaceably enjoy all the higher *Pomeren*, with the Iſles of *Rugia*, *Wollen*, and the Town of *Stetin*, in Lower *Pomerland*, the Town and Port of *Wiſmar* in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Biſhoprick of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the Prefecture of the Town of *Wilchuſen*; with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomeren*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wiſmar*, and by thoſe Titles to have place, as princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Aſſemblies which concern the Publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not only got a good footing in *Germany*, a ſtrong influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a Door open for more Forces, (if occaſion be) and a free paſſage into the Weſtern Ocean, which before they wanted; but may in time prove abſolute Maſters of the *Baltick* Sea, and make the *Hamburgers*, thoſe of *Lubeck*, and poſſibly the Kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it ſelf, be at their Devotion.

1654 43. *Charles Guſtavus* the 4. Son of *Caſſimir* Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, and *Bipont*, and of *Catherine* the Siſter of the Great *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, upon the Reſignation of *Chriſtina* (who forſook her Religion and her Kingdom together) became King of *Sweden*, which he managed with great Prudence Conduct and Valour, he reduced *Frederick* the 3. King of *Denmark* to that diſtreſs, that his whole Kingdom was in a manner confined within the Walls of *Copenhagen*: And in all probability he had intirely Reduc'd it. If that Courageous but Unfortunate Prince, had not reſolved *to live and die in his Neſt, and not Survive the Fate and Glory of his Country*, as he ſaid. This Victorious King of *Sweden*, died of a Malignant Feaver the 13th of *February* 1660, and was ſucceeded by his only Son.

1660 44. *Charles* the V. born the 25th of *November* 1655, was then an Infant,and was afterwards Crowned at *Upſal* the 28th of *September* 1675, though he has not been equally glorious with his Anceſtors, yet he has kept or recovered all that was left him. His eldeſt Son is Prince *Charles*, born the 22th of *June* 1682, and his 2. Son *Guſtavus*, born the 4th of *June* 1683.

1697 45. *Charles* the VIth, ſucceeded his Father, a Prince of great expectation, and now reigns under the Tutelage of his Guardians.

Of the Increaſe of the Crown of *SWEDEN*.

Guſtavus de Waſa, was the Founder of the preſent Royal Line of *Sweden*; he was Crowned in the year 1522, and acknowledged King of *Sweden* properly ſo called, 2. *Gothland*, 3. *Northland*, and 4. *Finland*, and whatever elſe belonged then to this Crown. In the the year 1578, the Knights of *Livonia* delivered up themſelves, and all they poſſeſſed in *Livonia* to *Erick* King of *Sweden*, which was afterwards confirmed by the Treaty of *Olivo Kloſter* (a Monaſtery one mile from *Dantzick*) in the year 1660, between the Emperor and the Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland*, by which all that part of *Livonia*, which lieth beyond the *Dwina*, was by the 4th Article for ever yielded to the Crown of *Sweden*. In the year 1618, there was a Peace made between the *Ruſs* and the *Swedes*, at which time all the Provinces of *Carelia* and *Ingria*, were yielded by the *Ruſs* to *Guſtavus Adolphus*. In the year 1648, the *Swedes* gained by the Treaty of *Oſnabruck*, the Poſſeſſion of the hither *Pomerania*, the Iſland of *Rugen*, the City of *Wiſmar*, the Dukedom of *Bremen*, and the Principality of *Ferden* in the Lower *Saxony*. In the year 1658, by the Treaty of *Roſchild*, this Crown gained from the *Danes*, *Halland*, *Scania*, *Bleckling* and *Bahuis*, three Provinces of great extent in *Norway*, all which were confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* in the year 1678, So that this Crown is one of the moſt Fortunate in *Europe*. *Antonius Gul*: *Schowartus obſervationes Hiſtorica Genealogica*, page 120.

I have in the Additions to *Denmark* ſhewn, that one of the moſt dreadful Conſequences of the War between that Crown and *Sweden*, was the intire loſs of the liberties of *Denmark*; the three Eſtates being diveſted of all the Authority they heretofore had in the publick affairs of that Kingdom, which a late Author aſcribes wholly to the ſlaviſh Doctrine of Non-reſiſtance, though by his own relation of it, any man may ſee it was owing to the Inſolence of the Nobility, and the Reſentment of the Clergy and Commons made deſperate by the poverty an improſperous War had brought upon them, and wanting Mony to pay off an Army, which they then thought they were as little able to maintain as they knew how to get rid of it, but have ever ſince been forced to maintain to their great impoveriſhment, for the aſſuring that over-great Subjection they then brought upon themſelves. The ſame Fate hung over the Kingdom of *Sweden*, though it fell a little later, becauſe the King then reigning was an Infant, and ſo not capable of ſeeking or accepting ſuch a power over his own people, as the King of *Denmark* had gained over his.

Who ever remarks the Steps and Gradations, by which *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Denmark* and *Sweden* loſt their Liberty, will find it was the conſequence of improſperous Wars, by which the body of theſe States, in ſeveral ages and at different times were brought ſo low, that they were not able to aſſert their own Rights; which cunning active and ambitious Princes obſerving, took the advantage the times afforded them, to raiſe their Authority higher than that which had been enjoyed by their Anceſtors. In which, however they met with great troubles, and if their Crowns ſhone brighter, yet thoſe of their Anceſtors ſat more eaſie, and had leſs of Envy and Danger in them. But ſuch is the nature of Mankind, that neither Governours nor Governed can always be kept in the ſame ſtate, but each aſpiring to be higher, the Ballance is broken, and the advantage for the moſt part falls on the ſide of the Prince, it being much more eaſy and natural to erect and preſerve an abſolute Monarchy than a common wealth.

The *Swiſs* and *Hollanders* are the only people that have raiſed their liberties by Wars and caſt off the Yoak which is owing to the nature of their Countries, both difficult of acceſs, and the latter had alſo the aſſiſtance of moſt of its neighbours, more out of fear and hatred, which they bore to the Grandure of *Spain* than Love to the *Dutch*: And that which then gave birth to theſe States, has ever ſince preſerved them, and will do ſo till a Prince ariſe that is great enough to oppreſs them and their Allies, and then there will be the end of their Liberty. And in the mean time, *England* of all Countries, has no reaſon to envy, and much leſs to imitate the ſtates of *Holland*, or any of the other commonwealths, being much more happy and free under her Regular Monarchy, than they, or any other commonwealth that ever was ſince the Creation of the World.

Charles the preſent King of *Sweden*, was but 5 years of age, when his Father died in 1660, ſo his Mother *Hediwig Eleonora* of the Houſe of *Holſtein* and Siſter to the preſent Duke, was made Regent of that Kingdom, together with the 5 great offices of the Crown which ſhe held till the year 1672. The King was bred moſtly to Military exerciſes by the contrivance of the Principal Miniſters, who found it moſt for their Intereſt not to acquaint him too much with books, that they might the better govern him. He was no ſooner Crown'd than he was engaged in a difficult War that gained him much experience and honour, having never loſt one Battle in which he was preſent. The *French* engaged him in this War by the Temptation of 200000 *l.* the year ſubſidy, for which he loſt his Army in *Germany*, and four of the ſix fortified Towns he held in *Schonen*, *Wiſmar*, ſo that when he took the field againſt the *Danes*, he found the effects of his Miniſters neglects, yet with a ſmall Army he gained 3 Battles in one year, and ſo re-eſtabliſhed his declining Fortunes. This gave him an ill opinion of the *Senate*, and diſcovered to him the ill deſigns of his Miniſters in his Minority, ſo that during the War he ſlighted all theſe Lords, neither communicating his Counſels, nor acquainting them with the Succeſs of his Actions, till in 1680, returning to *Stockholm* in an Aſſemby of the States, he gave an account of the State of affairs during the War. The Odium of all the Misfortunes of War fell upon the Miniſters that had managed the affairs in his Minority, and a Committee was there choſen out of the ſeveral bodies of the Eſtates, to enquire into the Miſcarriages and evil Counſels of thoſe Miniſters, and to paſs ſentence on the Delinquents.

Hereupon they were fined to ruine and all their Authority abrogated, the King was declared to have received his Crown from God, and to be only accountable to God for his Actions, and tied by no other engagement but his Coronation Oath, *viz*, to Rule the Kingdom according to Law. Then they gave him large Taxes, and a power to aſſume all the Crown Lands that had been gained from him or his Anceſtors, to ſettle ſuch a Militia, Fleet, and ſuch Fortreſſes as ſhould to him appear needful for the future ſecurity of the Kingdom: ſo favourable was this Conjuncture for the advancement of the Royal Authority, that he ſcarce needed to ask any thing, each body of the States ſtriving which ſhould out bid the other in their Conceſſions. The Nobility and Gentry being poor, were under a neceſſity to comply with every thing to keep their preſent Imployments or ſecure their future hopes of Advancement, and the Officers of the Army, who ſat in their Houſe, vigorouſly promoted the Kings affairs, the Clergy, Burghers, and peaſants were eaſily perſwaded that the Miſeries they had ſuffered, proceeded from the too great power of the Nobility; that the King could never be too much truſted, and they were glad of the opportunity to humble the Nobility, who in their proſperity had been too imperious; and concluded that the burthen that fell upon them, would redound to their own caſe.

Theſe Diſpoſitions of the people, added to the exceſſive affection they had for the Kings perſon, the opinion of his Piety, admiration of his Courage, and knowledge of his Frugality, Chaſtity and Induſtry, gave him an opportunity to lay the foundations of as abſolute a Soveraignty as any Prince in *Europe* poſſeſſes.

The next aſſembly of the States was in the year 1683, in which, beſides large ſupplies, he obtained the explaining the Article of *Ruling the Kingdom according to Law*, *viz*, that he might alter the Laws, and add ſuch Conſtitutions as he thought moſt uſeful for the preſent ſtate of the Kingdom, and that all his inſtructions to any Colledge or Officer, were Laws to them and all others that they concern'd, only they hoped he would communicate to the States ſuch Laws, as intended to bind the whole Kingdom.

All this was again confirmed in a third aſſembly of the States held in 1686, which has ſo riveted his power in this Loyal Kingdom, that had not the neceſſity of his affairs forced him to raiſe exceſſive Taxes, and Ruine many of the moſt Loyal and well deſerving Families, by his aſſuming thoſe Crown Lands, that had been given upon valuable conſideration; there had been no diſcontentment in his Kingdom.

It is worthy of a remark, that the ſame things that occaſion'd the loſs of the *Daniſh* Liberty, had the ſame effect in *Sweden*, *viz*, an Odium of the Pride of the Nobility; an over great opinion of the perſons of the Kings; and a great Senſe of the obligation they had to them for having delivered their ſeveral Nations from two very dangerous and deſtructive Wars. The poverty that followed thoſe Wars, made all men in both the Kingdoms ſhift off the burthen, till like *Eſau* they ſold their birth-right very cheap, forgetting in the mean time, theſe now good Kings ſhall not live for ever.

But leaving theſe things to the doubtful iſſue of Contingency, let us next look upon the Forces and Revenues of the Crown of *Sweden* before the time of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, or as he found them at his Succeſſion to that Crown. For though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, eſpecially ſince the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh*: yet ſtill the eldeſt Son or next Heir ſucceedeth; unleſs put by by Faction and ſtrong hand, as in caſe of *Sigiſmund* and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* ſo ordered his affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War againſt his Nephew, he was ſolicited at the laſt to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yield, till a law was made for the entailing the ſame for ever unto his Poſterity, whether male or female, as an Hereditary Crown. But whether Hereditary or Elective, the King once ſetled in the Throne is an abſolute Monarch; having not only a power to levy Taxes on his Subjects, as he ſeeth occaſion, as five, ſix, ſeven, eight Dollars, or more yearly upon every Houſholder, according to the proportion of his Eſtate, but alſo to grant a certain number of Peaſants unto ſuch as he means to favour, to be as Subjects and Vaſſals to him, according to his well-deſerving. And whereas in the Conſtitution of this Government every Pariſh hath a Landſman or Conſul to decide the Controverſies of the ſame, as every Territory hath its Vicount, and each Province his Lamen; there lieth an Appeal from the Landſman unto the Vicount, and from the Vicount to the Lamen; who, if they be ſuppoſed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the Council, and from the Council of Eſtate to the King himſelf, (in whom is fixed the Soveraignty and *Dernier Reſort*) and not unto the King and Council, as before in *Denmark*.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land. By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great Power in all the reſt of the *Baltick*; being able to ſet out 70 good men of War, as *John* the 2. did in the year 1578; ſeven of which were good Gallions, and all the reſt did carry above 50 caſt Pieces of all ſorts, beſides many other good Veſſels fit for ſervice. And if a Navy of this ſize will not ſerve the turn, he is not only furniſhed with Timber, Cordage, and all other neceſſaries for the building of Ships, and with good ſtore of Ordnance and Ammunition for preſent uſe, but is able to raiſe upon a ſudden 6000 Marriners, and upon little warning as many more; all which entertaineth at no other charges in a manner than to find Victuals: inſomuch as *John* the ſecond, before mentioned, did uſe to ſay, that *that which coſt the King of Spain a Million of Crowns, coſt not him* 100000 *Dollars*.

For his Land-Forces they may beſt be eſtimated by the Trained Bands (as we call them) in every Province; there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Enſigns) of Foot conſtantly trained and muſtered in the ſeveral Provinces: each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the Total to 20000 Foot; all in a manner Musketiers, ready to march whenſoever the Kings occaſion ſhall ſo require. And then for Horſe, there are eleven Cornets in continual readineſs for *Sweden* and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the Charges of thoſe Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaſeth. And for an inſtance of what this King is able to do, without putting his Eſtates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom, we find that *John* the ſecond, in his Navy of 70 Ships ſpoken of before, had above 18000 Land-Souldiers, beſides Marriners. And in the Army which *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germany*, there were muſtered no fewer at one time than 12000 Horſe, and 34000 Foot, all *Finns* and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with Artillery and the like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings hereof are Maſters of 8000 great Pieces, for the moſt part Braſs, with Mortar-pieces and Granado's in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land Forces moſt conſiderable is their Hardineſs in enduring the extremities of Wind and Weather (inſomuch that it is uſual with them to ſtand Centinel a whole Winters night of 18 hours long without being relieved) their exact Diſcipline, and Obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable Induſtry in making their own Shooes, Apparel, Stocks for Muskets, and all other neceſſaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the wars, but keeps them from Idleneſs and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies of Sloth and eaſe. Nor do they want incouragement on the Kings part neither; who, 1. gives to every Souldier Victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and that according to his Obedience and deſert. 2. If a Souldier be taken Priſoner, him the King doth uſually redeem at his own charges. And 3. If a Soldier's Horſe be ſlain under him, the King ſupplieth him with another. Which makes the Souldiers (very ſenſible of ſuch Obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his Commands, how dangerous ſoever they ſeem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they muſt needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amaſs his Treaſures. Firſt the Revenues of the Church, conſiſting before the Reformation of ſeven Biſhopricks and ſixty Monaſteries, which enjoyed very great poſſeſſions; all ſeized on by *Guſtavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown excepting only what is given back to maintain the Biſhops. Secondly, Mines, which are here of all Metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver, which they have more ſparingly; the Tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yields him ſuch a fair *Intrado*, that in the year 1578, the King's part out of two or three Mines of Copper only amounted to 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tenths out of all Increaſe, as Rye, Wheat, Barley, Fiſh, Oxen, Skins, and the like Commodities; the ſum whereof though not certainly known, (becauſe the increaſe is ſo uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the Tenth of the Oxen only came in one year to 18000 Dollars, beſides Proviſion for his Houſhold. Fourthly and laſtly, Cuſtoms impoſed on Merchandiſe, and paid in all his Haven-Towns for all Commodities imported or exported, of what ſort ſoever. Beſides all which, he hath his Contributions in all times of War, power of impoſing Taxes, (though moderately uſed) as his Neceſſities require; and on the Marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to provide her Portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain ſum of 100000 Dollars, beſides Plate and Moveables. Out of which ſeveral *Items* to ſum up the Total: It was obſerved, that in the year 1578 King *John* the ſecond (all Charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being firſt deducted) did lay up into his Treaſury no leſs than 700000 Dollars; which was a vaſt ſum for thoſe times, conſidering eſpecially the great Charge which the King had been at that year, in furniſhing a Navy of 70 Sail, and raiſing 18000 Land-Soldiers, (beſides Horſe) for defence of his Realm againſt the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by ſome knowing men, that his Revenues would be much greater than they are, if he did employ Strangers to work the Mines, which the Native do not husband to the beſt advantage; and yet are fearful to diſcover them to other Nations upon ſome Jealouſies, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn Merchant, and in his own Ships ſend out Corn and Cordage, with Maſts and Timber fit for building, and in them bring back Salt and other Neceſſaries which his Kingdom wants, ſetting them at a far leſs price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*.

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 8.

Univerſities but one, *viz. Upſal*.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*.

OF
RUSSIA.

RUSSIA is bounded on the Eaſt by *Tartary*, on the Weſt with *Livonia* and *Finland*, from which it is divided by great Mountains and the River *Poln*; on the North by the Frozen Ocean, and ſome part of *Lapland*; and on the South by *Lithuania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim-Tartars*, inhabiting on the Banks of *Palus Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea, and by *Georgia*. It ſtandeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Aſia*, the River *Tanais* or *Don*, running through it, the common Boundary of thoſe great and noted parts of the World.

It was thus called from the *Roſſi* or *Ruſſi*, a people of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, (if not both) who in the decling times of the *Greek* Empire poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome parts of it, and, being the prevailing People, impoſed their Name on all the reſt. Called alſo *Ruſſia Alba*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Ruſſia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*; *quod Incolæ omnium Gentium ipſius imperio ſubjectarum* (as one obſerves, diſcourſing of the Affairs hereof) *Veſtibus Albis & Pileis plerunque utantur*, becauſe the Inhabitants uſe to wear white Caps and Veſtments. And why not thus? ſithence the People of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in *Aſia* have the name of *Jeſelbas* only becauſe they wear green Turbants, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moſcovite*, from *Moſcovie* the chief Province of it; as that is denominated from the *Moſchi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the Heavenly bodies, it is ſaid by ſome to be ſituate betwixt the 8. and 20 Climates; the longeſt Day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half, and almoſt 22 hours and a half in the Northern part. But this is to be underſtood only of the Province of *Moſcovy* properly and ſpecially ſo called, and not of the whole Empire of the *Moſcovite* according to the Bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as Eaſt-*Lapland*, *Condora* & *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctick* Circle, the longeſt Day in Summer will be full 6 months, (for ſo long do thoſe Countries ſee no Night at all;) which is a mighty diſproportion from the length of the longeſt Day in the moſt Southern parts, being but 16 hours and a half, as before is ſaid. And by this Rule we are to take the Dimenſions alſo. For tho' ſome make the length hereof from North to South, that is to ſay, from *Cala* in the North to *Aſtracan* near the *Caſpian* Sea, to be no more than 2260 Verſts, or 3690 *Italian* miles; yet they confeſs that, reckoning forwards from *Tromſchua*, the fartheſt point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh ſo much more. And for the breadth reckoning from *Narva* on the Bay of *Finland*, (now in poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Sueveria* in the Eaſt, it amounteth to 4400 Verſts, or 6300 *Italian* miles; each Verſt being eſtimated at three quarters of an *Engliſh* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled anſwerable to ſome other parts of the World, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold, or make that Prince too great and puiſſant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their Bargains, Falſe-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their Promiſes, and ſtudy nothing more than ways to evade their Contracts. Vices ſo generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with Strangers, they diſſemble their Countrey, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear leſt no body ſhould truſt them. Deſtitute they are of humane Affections, and ſo unnatural, that the Father inſults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother. So malicious one towards another, that you ſhall have a man hide ſome of his own Goods in the Houſe of ſome man whom he hateth and then accuſe him for the ſtealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inſomuch that all heady and intoxicating Drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the moſt part they are ſtrong of Body, ſwift of Foot, of ſquare Proportion, broad, ſhort and thick: grey-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furniſhed with prominent Paunches. The commons live in miſerable ſubjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great Slavery to the Duke or Emperor; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his Grievances, nay, the mean Lords and officers are ſqueamiſh in this kind, and, but on great ſubmiſſion, will not commend unto the Duke a poor man's Cauſe. They are altogether unlearned, even the Prieſts meanly indoctrinated; it being cautioned by the great Duke, that there be no Schools, leſt there ſhould be any Scholars but himſelf; ſo that the people uſe to work commonly on the Lord's day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to ſay in a difficult queſtion, *God and our Great Duke know all this*; and in other talk, *All we enjoy, Health and Life, is all from our Great Duke*; according to whoſe pleaſure every man is preſcribed what Habit he ſhall wear, both for matter and faſhion, ſuitable unto their Condition. In the time of my Author their Habit was a long Garment without Plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very ſtraight Sleeves; on their Legs wearing Buskins up as high as the calf, for the moſt part red, high at the heels, and beſet with nails of Iron. The ſtuff and trimming of the Dreſs is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peaſant.

The Women are attired alſo much after this manner; but if great and noble, ſuffered to ſet forth themſelves with ſtore of Pearls and Precious Stones which hang ſo thick about their ears, that they do almoſt pull their ears from their heads. A ſecond Marriage is conceived no blemiſh in point of Chaſtity, but the third condemns them of Incontinence. They are naturally ſubject enough to the Luſts of the fleſh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once laſcivious, then moſt intolerably wanton. It is the faſhion of theſe Women to love that Husband beſt which beateth them moſt; and to think themſelves neither loved nor regarded, unleſs they be two or three times a day well favouredly ſwadled. The Author of the *Treaſury of times* telleth a Story of a *German* Shoemaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, uſed her with all the kindneſs that a woman could (as he thought) deſire; yet did not ſhe ſeem contented. At laſt learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cauſe of her Penſiveneſs, he took ſuch a vein in cudgelling her ſides, that in the end the Hangman was fain to break his Neck for his labour.

They uſe the *Sclavonian* Languages, but ſo corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Sclavonians* underſtand not one another's meaning but by circumſtance only: yet in *Jugria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have iſſued) they ſpeak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petzora* and the Country of the *Czeremiſſians* they have a Language to themſelves, diſtinct from others.

They firſt received the Chriſtian faith in the year 987, or, as ſome ſay, *Anno* 942, by the preaching and miniſtery of the *Greeks* ſent hither by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; of which Church they are conſtant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine: but not without ſome Superſtitions of their own ſuperadded to them; *viz*, not coming near a Croſs, Church or Monaſtery, but they kneel down, and make the ſign of the Croſs, ſaying *Miloy Hiſpodi*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; nor entring into any Church until waſhed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the *Jewes*, whom they ſuffer not to live amongſt them; and ſo great friendſhip unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his fleſh. Their Church is governed by 18 Biſhops, and 2 Metropolitans, all of them ſubordinate to their Archbiſhop or Patriarch; as he in former times to the *Conſtantinopolitan*, by whom he uſed to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themſelves from that ſubjection; the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and conſecrated by two or three of his own Suffragans. Without the counſel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperor or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Biſhops are all choſen out of the Monaſtick or Regular Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the order of S. *Baſil*) to live very religiouſly, in hope to be advanced to the Epiſcopal Dignity. And for the Secular Clergy, or Parochial Prieſts, there is not much required of them, but to ſay their Maſſes, (which being in their own Language they may eaſily do) and to read now and then one of St. *Chryſoſtom*'s Homilies, tranſlated heretofore for the uſe of thoſe Churches. After the death of their firſt Wives they are not permitted to marry; in other things little differing from the reſt of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and uſual with them to hold a Synod, at which the Patriarch hath his Croſier or Paſtoral-ſtaff carried before him, as the Pope's Legate hath the Croſs; where they make Conſtitutions for the publick Government, and the regulating of Divine matters; which are punctually and carefully obſerved by the Prince himſelf.

As followers of the *Greek* Church, (but ſo as to be counted a Church diſtinct) they differ much both from the *Romiſh* and Reformed. 1. Denying the Holy Ghoſt to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2. Denying Purgatory, but praying for the Dead. 3. Believing that holy men enjoy not the preſence of God before the Reſurrection. 4. Communicating in both kinds but uſing Leavened bread, and mingling warm Water with the Wine which both together they diſtribute with a Spoon. 5. Receiving Children of 7 years old to the Sacrament of the Euchariſt, becauſe then they begin to Sin. 6. Forbidding extreme Unction, Confirmation, and fourth Marriages. 7. Admitting none to Orders but ſuch as are married, and yet prohibiting Marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8. Rejecting Carved Images, but admitting the Painted. 9. Obſerving 4 *Lents* in the year. 10. Reputing it unlawful to faſt on Saturday; or to eat Blood, or any thing that hath been ſtrangled, according to the firſt Council holden at *Hieruſalem*. 11. And finally, diſſolving Marriage by Divorcement upon every ſlight occaſion, or conceived diſpleaſure. Which diverſity betwixt the *Romaniſts* and this people in point of Religion hath bred ſuch a difference betwixt them in point of affection, and made them ſo ill-conceited of one another, that if a *Muſcovite* be known, or but ſuſpected to have converſed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted perſon, and muſt be ſolemnly purged and purified, before he be admitted to partake of the *Bleſſed Sacrament*.

In matters of War the people are indifferently able, as being almoſt in continual Broils with their Neighbours; and have a Cuſtom, that when they go to the Wars, every Soldier giveth to the Emperor or great Duke a piece of money, which at the end of the War he receiveth again: and by that means the number of the ſlain is exactly known. At their Funerals they uſe to put a Penny into the Mouth of the party deceaſed, a pair of Shoes on his Feet and a Letter in his Hand, directed (ſuch is their Superſtion) to S. *Nicolas*, whom they deem to be the Porter of Heaven: an opinion doubtleſs very prejudicial to the Pope's and S. *Peter*'s Perogatives.

This Country is not ſo populous as ſpacious. The Eaſtern parts are vexed with the *Tartars*, who, like *Æſop's* Dog, will neither dwell there themſelves, nor ſuffer the *Muſcovites* to plant Colonies in them: the Weſtern parts almoſt as much moleſted by the *Swediſh* and *Polonian* Kings; the Southern by the *Turks* and *Precopenſes*; and the Northern by the coldneſs of the Air, which is of ſuch vehemency, that Water thrown up into the Air, will turn to Ice before it fall to the ground. The better to reſiſt the extremity of this Cold, not only the Cloaths of this people, but their very Houſes, are lined with thick Furs. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his dwelling-Houſe, a Stove or Hot-houſe in which they keep as it were to thaw themſelves. Such as travel on the way uſe often to rub their Noſe or Ears with Snow or Ice, to ſettle and recal their motive Spirits into thoſe parts which otherwiſe they would be in danger to loſe; the ignorance of which preventing Chirurgery was not the leaſt cauſe that, in the year 1598 of 70000 *Turks* which made an Inrode into *Muſcovy*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reaſon of theſe extremities of Froſts and Cold, it is the Cuſtom of this people to lay the Bodies of their Dead all the Winter long on heaps in the Belfreys of their Churches, where they lie without putrifying or any ill ſavour to the end of *March*; at what time the Air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging each Family looks out their dead Bodies, and takes care to bury them. This exceſs of Cold in the Air gave occaſion to *Caſtalian* in his *Aulicus* wittily, and not incongruouſly, to feign that if two Men being ſomewhat diſtant talk together in the Winter, their words will be ſo frozen that they cannot be heard; but if the Parties in the Spring return to the ſame place, their words will melt into the ſame order as they were frozen and ſpoken, and be plainly underſtood. Such is their Winter: neither is their Summer leſs miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice, which in a manner covered the whole ſurface of the Country, are at the firſt approach of the Sun ſuddenly diſſolved, the Water quickly dried up, and the Earth dreſſed in her holy-day Apparel: ſuch a mature growth of Fruits, ſuch flouriſhing of Herbs, ſuch chirping of Birds as if here were a perpetual Spring. The reaſon of which ſtrange and ſudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the Snow on the Face of the Earth, keeping it from the rigour of the Winter Froſts; which being diſſolved by the Sun in the beginning of the Spring, doth ſo throughly drench and ſoke the Ground, (being of a light and Sandy mold) and conſequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun ſhining hotly on it, that it forceth in a manner the Herbs and Plants to ſhoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a ſhorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much overſpred with Woods, parts of the great *Hercynian* Foreſt, heretofore over-running all the North, and ſtill more viſible here than in other places; either by reaſon of the Idleneſs of the People, naturally given to Sloth and Eaſe; or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them: or that there is already Ground enough for Tillage to ſupply their neceſſary uſes. For here do grow the goodlieſt and talleſt Trees of the World, through which, by reaſon of their thickneſs, the brightneſs of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording ſhelter to great multitudes of Cattel, but of wild Beaſts eſpecially, whoſe Skins are better than their Bodies, as Bears, Marterns, Zibellines, Wolves, black Foxes, whoſe Skins are of very great eſtimation. Of the Timber of theſe Trees are ſquared all neceſſaries both for Forts and Houſes: the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge Beams faſtned together (the chinks filled with Earth) not eaſily ſhaken by Battery, though much ſubject to Fire. And out of them iſſueth an unſpeakable quantity of Pitch and Roſin, which are hence diſtilled: beſides an everlaſting Fountain of Wax and Honey; the Bees, without the Midwifery of the Art of Men, building their Hives or Houſes in the hollow Trees. Concerning this there goeth a Story (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Country-man who accidentally had ſlipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he ſtood up to the breaſt in Honey, continuing there two days without other Suſtenance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the Booty, he laid hold of his Legs, and ſo terrified him with his Cries, that he made him leap out with the Man at his Heels. The Country yieldeth alſo great ſtore of Flax and Hemp, which is tranſported yearly into other Countries (and would make them very excellent Cordage, if the People had any skill in Manufactures or Mechanical Arts) and in ſome places rich Paſtures, and ſuch ſtore of Corn, that therewith they do furniſh *Lapland* and the North part of *Sweden*. Fiſh they have alſo in good plenty, which they ſalt and dry, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in ſtore for their Forts and Families. By which account it will appear that the principal Commodities which they ſend abroad are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-greaſe, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Roſin, Nuts, Filberds and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* buy of them at the Fort of S. *Nicholas*, or the *Armenians* at *Aſtracan* near the *Caſpian* Sea; giving them in return Cloth, Silks, Tapeſtry, and ſome other Merchandiſe, tranſported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 Poad, (every Poad containing 40 *Engliſh* Pounds;) of Tallow 100000 Poad, 100000 Hides, 100 Ships laden with Flax and Hemp, the reſt of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author; ſince whoſe time the Trade hereof hath been much increaſed.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by ſome it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are; 1. The *Don*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It diſburdeneth it ſelf into *Palus Mæotis*; and hath its Fountain not out of the *Riphæan* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Iwanoweſcero*, in the Foreſt of *Okonieskilies* or *Jephapinolies*, ſome 20 *Engliſh* Miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eaſtward, turneth back again and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Mæotis*, as was ſaid before. 2. *Boryſthenes*, now called *Neiper*, whoſe Spring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now diſcovered to be near *Duiperck*, a Village of *Muſcovy* ſpecially ſo called, in the Foreſt of *Wolkonskie*. Whence paſſing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongſt them that of *Deſna* (by the ancient Writers called *Hypanis*) notwithſtanding whoſe muddy Waters it ſtill retains its natural Clearneſs, and ſo falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3, *Turuntus*, (ſo called by *Ptolomy*) or *Duina* the leſs (to difference it from *Duina* the greater) which riſing not far from the Head of *Boryſthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and waſhing the Walls of *Riga*, the chief Town of *Livonia*, loſeth it ſelf in the *Baltick* Sea. 4. *Duina*, or *Dwine* (commonly called *Duina* the greater) ſo call'd from the meeting of two Rivers, the *Juga* and the *Sachan* (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longeſt courſe, not known unto the Ancients, hath its Head in the Province of *Permia*, and it falls into the Frozen or Northern Ocean at the Port of S. *Nicolas*. 5. *Occa*, or *Ocyne*; riſing in the Territory of *Miſceneck*, and making all the Country fruitful through which it paſſeth, emptieth it ſelf into the *Volga*. 6. *Volga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Rha*, by the *Tartars Edill*; which riſeth 25 *Dutch* Miles from *Moſco*, towards *Lithuania*, and fetching a great compaſs in and out, after it hath ſwallowed up many leſſer Rivers, diſchargeth it ſelf with 70 Mouths into the *Caſpian* Sea, now called *Mar di Bachu*. [This is a great miſtake, there being not above five Mouths.] Here are beſides theſe Rivers many notable Lakes, as thoſe of *Duina* and *Volga*, out of which the ſaid two Rivers iſſue; that called *Ilmen*, not far from *Novogrod* the great, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; that of *Ladoga*, 100 *Dutch* miles in length and 60 in breadth, in which are many pleaſant Iſlands; and that called *Bieloyeſero* (*Lacus Albus* in *Latin*) about 12 *German* miles long and as many broad, into which 360 Rivers are ſaid to diſcharge their Streams; in the midſt whereof is a ſtrong Caſtle, ſaid to be impregnable, in which the Great Duke keeps the moſt part of his Treaſure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of Danger and Sedition.

As for the Mountains of this Country, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphæi*, and *Hyperborei*, ſo much talked of and ſo little known amongſt the Ancients: a continual and craggy Chain of Hills running croſs *Sarmatia Europæa*, South and North, and thence Eaſtwards into *Aſiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Boryſthenes* into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*; afterwards bending for a long ſpace towards the North-Eaſt, they are called *Riphæi*; and then paſſing on directly Eaſt, by reaſon of their Northernly ſituation, called *Hyperborei*. And though Sir *Walter Rawleigh* ſays, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphæan* Mountains in *rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this Tract, and telleth us, that in regard of their being always covered with Ice and Snow they are hardly paſſable: calling theſe and the ſaid *Hyperborei* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terra*, or the *Girdle of the Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do ſeem to compaſs.

It is divided, for the better Government hereof, into four parts (by them termed *Chetfords*) and thoſe governed by four Lieutenants, not reſident upon their Charges, but attending on the Emperor's Perſon whereſoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts, but eſpecially at *Moſco*, the prime Seat of the Empire, where from their Under-Deputies they receive the Complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperor's Council of the buſineſs, and from them again receive Inſtruction for Reformation. But as to the Chorography of it, it is divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Muſcovy*, eſpecially ſo called. 2. *Smolensko*. 3. *Moſaiski*. 4. *Pleſcow*. 5. *Novogrod* the great. 6. *Corelia*. 7. *Biarmia*. 8. *Petzora*. 9. *Condora*. 10. *Obdora*. 11. *Jugria*. 12. *Severia*. 13. *Parmia*. 14. *Rezan*. 15. *Wiatbka*. 16. *Caſan*. 17. *Aſtracan*. 18. *Novogordia inferior*. 19. The *Mordwits*, or *Mordua*. 20. *Worotine*. 21. *Tuver*. 22. *Wolodomir*. 23. *Dwina*. And, 24. the *Ruſſian Iſlands*. Others of leſs note (of which there is no want) are reduced to theſe. In my Deſcription whereof I ſhall not be ſo exact and punctual as I have been hitherto; the Country not being much travelled by Strangers, nor any of the Natives ſuffered to go into Foreign Nations, or permitted (out of Jealouſies of State) to hold diſcourſe with the Embaſſadors of Neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperor's hearing. By means whereof the Chorography of this vaſt Empire is come but lameſy to our hands, tho' the Power, Policy and Revenues of it, being Points diſcernible by the Miniſters of other Princes, and by the courſe and conduct of their Affairs, are as well known as thoſe of leſs diſtance. Which ſaid, we will firſt begin with *Moſcovy*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the Situation and Poſition of the reſt of the Provinces is ſet forth unto us in our Authors.

1. *MOSCOVY.*

MOSCOVY ſpecially ſo called, is ſeated in the very Center of this Eſtate, and ſo more fit to order the Affairs thereof. It is the largeſt Province of the whole, extending from Eaſt to Weſt 600 *Dutch*, or 2400 *Engliſh* miles: ſo populous withal, that beſides 30000 *Boiares* or Gentlemen, bound to ſerve on Horſeback at their own charges, (like the *Turks Timariots*) the Great Duke is able to raiſe 70000 Foot, (which is a great matter for a Country ſo little cultivated. It is bounded on the North by *Roſtow* and *Suſdale*, on the Eaſt by *Rhezan*, on the South by *Worotine*, and on the Weſt by *Bielkia*.

The Soil hereof is ſtiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in moſt parts elſe of this large Dominion, the People are accuſtomed to Sow no more of their Land than what they dig with the Spade, or can break up with a Stick very ſharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the Field, that when one breaks they may uſe another.

Chief places in this Province are, 1. *Moſco*, the Imperial Seat, and the See of the Patriarch, ſo called of the River *Moſco* upon which it is ſituate. Exceedingly improv'd both in ſtate and beauty ſince the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Moſcovy*, removed the Seat-Royal hither from *Wolodomir*, where before it was; inſomuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compaſs, containing then 41500 Families: but being fired by the *Tartar*, *Anno* 1571, (at what time there were burnt 80000 Perſons) it is reduced to five miles only. The Houſes for the moſt part are of Wood and Dirt, the Streets very miry, without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart to defend it againſt an Enemy. Inſtead whereof there are two Caſtles in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kitagorod*, the other *Balſigorod*. It is environed with the River *Moſco*, and another Water called *Neglinna*, which here falls into it. It contains 16 Churches, moſt of them of the ſame materials as the Houſes are; and the Palace of the Great Duke, ſituate in the midſt hereof, (which for the greatneſs of it may be thought a little City:) fortified with 17 Towers, 3 Bulwarks, and a continual Garriſon (if the Great Duke be there) of 25000 Men for the Guard of his Perſon. This City was burnt by the *Poles* in 1611; in 1636 a great part was burnt; and in 1668 almoſt the whole City by Accident. 2. *Sloboda*, a Biſhop's See, North-eaſt to *Moſco*, on the Banks of one of the greateſt Rivers which fall into the *Vulga*. 3. *Ruſchow*, the Title of a Dukedom, fortified with a Caſtle of Wood, (of which ſtuff moſt of the Fortreſſes of this Country are made) ſituate 23 leagues from *Moſco* towards the Weſt, on the Banks of the *Volga*, which hath its Fountain in the Territory and Precincts hereof. 4. *Jaroſlaw*, on the *Volga* alſo, a Town and Caſtle diſtant about 46 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*; formerly the Eſtate and Patrimony of the ſecond Sons of the Great Duke, but united to the Royal Domain by *John Vaſiliwich*, and by him added alſo to the Style Imperial. It is alſo one of the Sees Epiſcopal. 5. *Ruſtow*, the See of one of the two Metropolitans, ſituate in a fruitful Soil, well ſtored with Fiſh, and yielding good plenty of Salt. One of the ancienteſt Principalities of all this Empire, and held accuſtomably by the ſecond Son of the Great Duke as a State diſtinct; but conquered by *John Waſiliwich*, *Anno* 1565, and added to the Style, and Patrimony of the Great Duke himſelf, the younger Sons being from thenceforth put off with Penſions. 6. *Vologda*, a Biſhop's See, ſituate in a fenny and woody Country; very ſtrong by nature, and beautified with one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles of all this Eſtate, where the Great Duke doth ſometime lay a part of his Treaſure, that part eſpecially which is raiſed of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchandiſe, which, being landed at the Port of S. *Nicholas*, is firſt brought hither, where having paid a new Toll or Cuſtom, it goeth on to *Moſco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Jaroſlaw* before mentioned, for the ſpace of an Hundred *Engliſh* miles, where ſtood in former times 50 goodly Villages (ſome of them of a mile in length) the Country in a manner is left wholly deſolate and without Inhabitant; abandon'd by the People by reaſon of the inſupportable Preſſures which were laid upon them.

2. *SMOLENSKO.* 3. *MOSAISKI.* 4. *PLESKOW.*

THE Dukedom of *SMOLENSKO* is ſituate on the courſe of the River *Neiper* or *Boryſthenes*, full of many thick Foreſts, from whence they carry a great number of rich Skins yearly. Places of moſt obſervations in it are, 1. *Smolensko*, ſituate on the *Neiper*, a Biſhop's See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Moſco*, begirt on every ſide with Mountains and ſpacious Woods. A large Town, and of great eſteem in theſe parts of the Empire, and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free Condition under the Patronage and Protection of the King of *Poland*, in the time of *Alexander* a late King thereof; but by *Baſilius* the Great Duke conquered and added unto this Eſtate: taken by the *Polanders* in the year 1610, after a long ſiege of two years, with the ſlaughter of 200000 *Muſ-*

covites, and the loſs of many of the Beſiegers. It was beſieged by the *Ruſs* to their great Loſs and Ruine in 1616 and 1633; but taken at laſt in 1654 the 13th of *October*, and yielded to them in 1656 by the *Poles* upon the Treaty of Peace. 2. *Biela*, a Principality of it ſelf, having the honour of a Caſtle, and reckoned in the uſual Style of the Knez or Emperor.

MOSAISKI hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth; ſo called from *Moſaiski*, the chief Town hereof, and a Biſhop's See; taken, together with the Territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *John* the Great Duke, Father of *Baſilius* before mentioned.

PLESCOW, or *PSKOW*, contains in length 350 *Italian* miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts, ſo called from *Pleſcow*, or *Pskow*, the chief City in it, and a Biſhop's See, great, powerful, and well wall'd about, the only walled City of all this Empire: ſo large within the Walls, that when it was beſieged and taken in the year 1581 by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot and 7000 Horſe, beſides the natural Inhabitants of it, which in all ordinary computation muſt be many more. In the year 1615, it was again taken by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and the *Ruſs* were forced to redeem it by the payment of a vaſt Sum of Money. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the Right of the Dukedom of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Baſilius* the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*, *Anno* 1509, by whom and his Succeſſors it is uſed in the Royal Style.

5. *NOVOGORD.*

NOVOGORD, or *NOVOGROD*, is one of the largeſt Provinces or Dukedoms in all *Ruſſia*, bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus* or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and leſs fruitful than that of *Muſcovy*, becauſe ſituate ſomewhat farther North: the longeſt Summer day in *Moſco* not being above 18 hours; whereas in *Novogrod*, the chief City hereof, it is very near 20. By conſequence, the Winter-nights being of that length muſt make the Air exceeding cold, and the Soil as comfortleſs. Here is in this Province the great Lake *Elmen*, ſpoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; as alſo that called *Ladoga*, before alſo mentioned.

Towns of moſt eſtimation in it are, 1. *Novogrod* it ſelf, the wealthieſt and goodlieſt City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatneſs not inferior to *Rome*; call'd therefore *Novogrod the Great* (to difference it from another of the ſame name near unto *Wolodomir*:) an Archbiſhop's See, and one of the four Mart Towns of the *Hanſe*-Merchants, reſorted to from all parts for the Trade of *Muſcovy*, brought thither by Land, and thence tranſported through the *Baltick* to moſt parts of Chriſtendom. So confident were they in thoſe times of their power and ſtrength, that they uſed to ſay, that *Men could do nothing againſt God and them*: but they found the contrary, when taken from the Crown of *Poland* by the Great Duke of *Muſcovy* in 1477. In the year 1569, *John Baſilowitz*, Duke of *Muſcovy*, ſlew a vaſt number of its Inhabitants without cauſe, on a baſe groundleſs Suſpicion: and in 1611, it was alſo taken by the *Swedes*, who kept it till 1634, and then reſtored it to the *Ruſs*. The Trade hereof is ſince much decayed, by the finding out of the North-Eaſt paſſage to the Port of St. *Nicholas*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muſcovite*. Yet ſtill it keeps the reputation of the principal City; ſituate on the River *Naſ*, which the *Dutch* call *Ny*. The Buildings are for the moſt part of Wood and Clay. It is diſtant from *Moſco* 120 *Dutch* Miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*, between which and this City lieth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the Entrances whereof upon the *Duina* which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified with the ſtrong Towns and Garriſons of *Narva* and *Revel*, both in the hands of the King of *Sweden*; which is another great hindrance to the Trade of this Town. 2. *Narva*, on the North-Bank of *Duina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland*, or *Sinus Finnicus*, in the Province or Territory of *Wichidaw*: heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*; but being taken by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, with the reſt of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it ſelf, *Anno* 1477, it was impregnably Fortified by the care of his Son *Waſiliwich*, who for a reward unto the Architect, being a *Polonian*, put out both his Eyes, to diſable him from building the like again. But having left all the Natives in their own Habitations, without abating either their ſtrength or number, the Town and Caſtle not long after was betray'd to the King of *Sweden*, who ſtill holds it. It was taken by the *Muſcovites* in 1558, by the *Swedes* in 1581, and by the *Swedes* again in 1617. In the Year 1654, there being a War between the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, the whole Trade of *Muſcovy* was again driven this way. 3. *Pozow*, or *Pozovia*, and 4. *Volocoluc*; two ſtrong Pieces, ſituate in the Borders againſt the *Polanders*. 5. *Vobſco*, beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland* with an Army of 100000 Men; who was forced to retire without taking it, with the loſs of many of his beſt Captains and common Soldiers. It is diſtant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles: the Country about it is called *Volks*; where they ſay for certain, that all Cattel which are brought thither, of what hair or colour ſoever they be, upon a little ſtay they become all white. The People of this Tract have a Language (or ſome Dialect rather) peculiar only to themſelves. 6. *Juanagorod*, a ſtrong Caſtle not far from *Vobſco*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*, a Frontier Caſtle againſt the *Swedes* garriſoned in *Narva*, to repulſe whoſe Inrodes it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Aſiatick Scythians* went to plant themſelves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining, ſome of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this Tract, went along for Company. Their long ſtay cauſed their Wives, deſpairing of their return, to comfort themſelves with their Slaves both at bed and board; to whom they brought a luſty encreaſe of Youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together againſt them: the Slaves to retain their Wealth and Freedom which they were poſſeſſed of, the Women, for fear of the diſpleaſure of their Husbands, and the Young men for defence of their Fathers and Mothers; with joint Forces they go out to meet them before their entry into the Country; neither are the Maſters ſlow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the firſt ſight of each other. The Maſters, ſcorning to defile their Swords on ſo ignoble an Enemy, aſſaults them with Whips, and by the terrour thereof got a ſignal Victory. In memory of which Battel, the People of that City have ever ſince ſtamped their Money with the figure of an Horſeman ſhaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the Cuſtom of all *Muſcovy*, that the Maids in the time of wooing ſend ſuch a Whip, curiouſly wrought by her own hands, to that Suitor whom ſhe reſolves on for her Husband, in token of her future Subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. *CORELIA.* 7. *BIARMA.*

Sixty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province called *CORELIA*, extending Northwards as far as to a Branch of the Frozen Sea where the longeſt Day is 20 hours and a half; the Nights proportionable in the Winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the Eaſt of *Finland*, from which it is parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reaſon of which Situation, betwixt two great Princes, the People are enforc'd to pay Tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Kexholm* or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes* ever ſince the year 1617. They took it once before in the year 1580; but then the *Ruſs* recovered it again, it ſtands upon the River *Voxin* near to the Weſtern Shore of the Lake *Ladoga*, towards the South-Eaſtern bounds of *Finland*, 40 *German* miles from *Narva* to the North. And, 2. *Corelnburg*, the chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the reſt of the Country unto the *Muſcovite*. By ſome this Province is made a part of the Eaſtern *Lapland*; but, I think, erroneouſly: the People having ſome good Towns, and ſavouring of ſome Humanity, neither of which are known or heard of amongſt the *Laplanders*. 3. *Nodenburg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Warfuga*, emptieth it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Nicholas*.

On the North-ſide of that Branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean which bounds *Corelia*, lieth the Weſtern part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikiloppi*, or wild *Lappians*, as the *Muſcovites* call them, to whoſe Duke or Emperor they are ſubject. We had their Character before when we were in *Swethland*, nor ſhall we need to repeat it here: as barbarous and as rude as the worſt ſort of thoſe mentioned in *Scricfinnia*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to Luſtfulneſs than the others. In the Winter Solſtice, when the Sun entreth into *Capricorn*, they have Night for three whole months together: during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leiſure to conſult with the Prince of Darkneſs: being very great Sorcerers, able (as ſome affirm) to raiſe Winds, Clouds, Tempeſts, and do many ſtrange things. Towns here are none. Some Sheds and Cabins on the Sea-coaſts, patched up by the Sailors for their reception and refreſhment as they came on Land, and named according to their Fancies, but not here conſiderable.

8. *PETZORA.* 9. *CONDORA.* 10. *OBDORA.* 11. *JVGRIA.*

OPpoſite to *Biarmia*, or *Weſt-Lapland*, on the other ſide of the Bay, leading towards the Port of St. *Nicolas*, lieth a large Promontory or Head-land, ſtretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctick* comprehending in it 4 Provinces of the *Ruſſian* Empire; that is to ſay *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Obdora*, and *Jugria*: belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Ruſſian* Emperors; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howſoever ſomewhat muſt be ſaid of them, becauſe parts of this great Body which we are to diſſect.

PETZORA, ſo called from a River of that name, is fenced on every ſide by Mountains and unpaſſable Rocks, extending Northwards to the Sea, and croſſed with a vaſt Chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, ſpoken of before; ſo high, that a certain Man, having travelled in the aſcent of them 17 days together, is ſaid to have returned back again, deſpairing to attain the top of them: cover'd in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as ſcorching Heats, by the continual lying of the Sun in all parts thereof. The People are of a plain and ſimple Nature, and received the *Ruſſian* Faith and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it is *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea, a ſmall Town, but having three Churches in it: the People whereof, though otherwiſe ſufficiently ſimple, as before is ſaid, do in the Summer-time catch Patridge, Ducks, Swans, Geeſe, and other Fowl, which they ſalt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the Titles of *Artis Magiſter*, and *Ingenii largitor Venter*: whereof this may ſerve for one Example.

CONDORA lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by conſequence is a colder Country, and of worſe condition; one half of the Year being continual Day, and the other half as a long Night. The People are univerſally Idolaters, worſhipping ſome Images (or Idols) in the ſhape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, *&c.* which they adorn with the richeſt Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Ruſſes*; who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt thoſe parts for Sables, Foxes and Bevers, take away their Furs, and beſtow a greater heat upon them in Fires. The chief Town hereof is *Puſtozera*, over againſt *Nova Zemla*, on or near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; ſituate in the 68 Degree of Northern Latitude, 50 minutes over. This Country lies to the South of *Petzora*, between it and *Duina* and the Frozen Ocean.

OBDORA, ſo called from the River *Ob*, on both ſides of whoſe Banks it lieth, is the moſt North-Eaſtern Province of all thoſe Dominions; won to the Obedience of the *Ruſſes* in the Reign of *Theodore* the Son of *John*, Great Duke of *Muſcovy*. At what time the People had no Cities, lived in Hoords or Companies; ate the Beaſt they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, ſharpning their Arrows with Fiſh-bones; with which Bones and the Sinews of the Beaſts they ſowed Furs together for their Clothing; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houſes with Elk-skins. By this *Theodore* were ſome Caſtles built on the River-ſide, to which he ſent condemned Perſons, and brought it into the form of a petit Kingdom. But his Succeſſor *Boris* built *Tooma*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both ſides of the Water, not worth naming here. But notwithſtanding this Subjection to the *Muſcovite*, they continue ſtill in their old Idolatry, worſhipping an ancient Idol in form of an old Woman, holding in each Arm a Child, and a third at her Feet, called by them *Zlatu Bahu*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer precious Furs, ſacrifice Harts, and therewith do conſult touching things to come. But ſome account this for a Fable or a meer Miſtake.

JVGRIA, or *JVHAR*, lieth alſo on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other, betwixt *Petzora* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longeſt Day in Summer being not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The People are for the moſt part Idolaters, and worſhip the ſame Images as do thoſe of *Obdora*: affirmed by ſome to be the Progenitors of the preſent *Hungarians*, who, coming out of this Country, over-ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their Dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they ſpake the old *Hungarian* Language, not uſed but in this Country and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, which more learned Men affirm to be the *Jazygian*, the Language of the *Jazyges*, who anciently poſſeſſed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this diſpute to another place, certain it is they are ſubject to the *Muſcovite*, but ſo poor and miſerable a People, that they have few Towns, and not many Houſes; and ſo bare of Money, that inſtead thereof they pay Furs for Tribute to their Emperor.

12. *SEVERIA.* 13. *PERMIA.* 14. *REZAN.*

S*EVERIA*, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Muſcovites* call it, lieth in a long Tract on the Banks of the River *Ob*, or *Oby*, South-Eaſt of *Obdora* and the reſt of the four laſt Provinces. The Country is very fruitful, and abounding with all things neceſſary, notwithſtanding that there be great Deſarts, and ſome Foreſts alſo: but thoſe Foreſts well ſtored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild Beaſts, which yield more profit by their rich Furs, than any more fertile Country doth by its Corn and Fruits. Inſomuch that in the year 1589 there were collected out of this Province only in the way of Tribute for the Emperor, 466 Timber of

Sables, (every Timber containing 40 Skins) five Timber of Marterns, 180 Caſes of black Foxes, (every Caſe containing 40 Skins) beſides other Commodities. The Woods alſo do offer good plenty of Honey, and the Plains of Herbage, well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Deſna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*. There are in it many Towns and Caſtles, the principal whereof are, 1. *Sibier*, on the Weſt ſide of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province. 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Foreſt from hence named. 3. *Starodus*, 4. *Potuvolo*, and 5. *Czernigo*. [*Here by miſtake the two Provinces of* Siberia *and* Severia *(which differ as the fartheſt North-Eaſt and South-Weſt points of* Muſcovia, *betwixt which there is a vaſt Tract of ground) are confounded, part of the Towns belonging to one, part to the other, as do the two Rivers, the* Ob, *and the* Nieper.]

The people hereof, by reaſon of their continual Skirmiſhes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the moſt Warlike Nations of all the *Ruſſes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the firſt acknowledged no Superior, but afterwards was ſeverally and ſucceſſively tributary, to the *Lithuanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Muſcovite*; and finally, the laſt Duke, being falſly accuſed of Treaſon, was outed of his Eſtate by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, who added it to the reſt of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever ſince.

PERMIA is ſituate on the South-Weſt of *Sibior*, or *Severia*, a large Province, diſtant 250 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco* to the North Eaſt; ſo called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate on the River *Viſchore*, or *Viſtorna*. The ſecond Town of note is called *Sicwiarskey*. The people (as alſo thoſe of *Sibior*) are of the *Moſcovite* Religion, and live moſt by hunting wild Beaſts, whoſe Fleſh they eat, and make good Merchandiſe of their Skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of Tribute, who makes a good Commodity of them, ſelling them to the Merchant at exceſſive rates. They have no Corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elſewhere; but, inſtead of Bread, eat the fleſh of Stags dried and prepared in the Sun; ſpeaking a Language of their own, differing from the reſt of the *Ruſſes*; and inſtead of Horſes and Oxen, make uſe of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their Sleds from one place to another. There is good ſtore of Woods amongſt them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vaſiliwich*, meaning to pick a Quarrel with them, ſent to them for certain loads of Cedar-wood whereof he knew their grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had no ſuch Wood, he fined them at 12060 Rubbles.

REZAN, a great and goodly Province, is ſituate betwixt the River *Tanais* and that of *Occa*, the moſt fruitful Country of all *Ruſſia*, and (if report be true) of the World alſo: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of Corn doth bring forth ſix Ears; the Stalks hereof growing ſo thick, that an Horſe can hardly paſs through them, or a Quail flie out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is alſo great plenty of Fruits, better than are to be found elſewhere in *Ruſſia*; together with good ſtore of Honey, Fiſh, Fowl, and other Commodities; beſides Ermins, Bevers, and the like, common in theſe Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the Fountain or Spring head of the River *Tanais*, which riſeth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garriſoned for fear of the *Crim-Tartar*. 3. *Coſſira*, a Biſhop's See, as is alſo 4. *Rezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, ſeated upon the Banks of the River *Occa*. Thirty ſix *German* miles from *Moſo*, to the South Eaſt, and 12 from the Fountains of *Tanais*. This Province lies between the *Don* and *Occa*, having *Maſcoy* on the Weſt, divided from it by the River *Aka*. A Country populous and well planted, affording to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen which ſerve on horſe-back, and betwixt 30 and 40000 Foot.

15. *WIATHKA.* 16. *CASAN.*
17. *ASTRACAN.*

SOuth-eaſt of *Rezen*, beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, lieth the Province called *WIATHKA*, fenny and barren, but well ſtored with Fiſh and Honey, aud wild Beaſts good plenty. Heretofore ſubject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive Servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expulſed, it was made Subject by *Baſilius* to the Dukes of *Moſcovie*. I do not read of any Towns which ſhould be here, which makes me think that they do ſtill retain ſo much of the *Tartar* with them as to live in Hoords and Companies, without any fixt Dwellings, or at the beſt in ſcattered houſes, nor hitherto united into Towns and Villages; except it be the Town of *Wiathka* it ſelf, built ſince the ſubjection of it to the *Muſcovite*, and make a Garriſon to defend theſe out parts of this Empire againſt the Incurſions of the *Tartars*.

CASAN, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria deſerta*, lieth on the South-eaſt of *Wiathka*, the moſt civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that Civility to their converſation with the *Muſcovites*, (though none of the civilleſt themſelves) tilling their Lands and building Houſes where they may with ſafety. For although the Soil hereof be tolerably fruitful and fit for Habitation, yet the Country for the moſt part is deſolate and ill inhabited; partly by reaſon of ſome vaſt Deſarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim-Tartar*, who will not ſuffer the *Moſcovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except only in the Weſtern parts, where they are protected by Garriſons. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Caſan*, upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; ſince the Subjection of this People to the great Duke, and ſince their Converſion to the Faith, made a Biſhop's See. 2. *Surick*, upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vaſt Deſarts between *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*; built by *Baſilius* the great Duke for a Stage or reſting-place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repoſe themſelves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was ſaid; the laſt of which named *Chelealcesk*, ſubmitted himſelf unto *Baſilius* the great Duke, and became tributary; but afterwards revolting, he was vanquiſhed by *John Vaſiliwich*, *Anno* 1553, and his Kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Ruſſia*: the Emperors ſince that time writing themſelves *Czar Caſanski*, or King of *Caſan*. And poſſibly enough it is that *Baſilius*, who firſt made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Baſilius Caſan*, according to the cuſtom of the ancient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremeſſi*, a People that live in great Foreſts without any Houſes, living for the moſt part of Honey and the fleſh of wild Beaſts, with the Skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language is different from the reſt. They are ſwift of foot, and very good Archers, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practiſing their Children ſo timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after ſuch an Age) until they can hit a White which is ſet before them.

ASTRACAN lieth alſo South Eaſt of *Caſan*, more near unto the *Caſpian* Sea; parted from *Caſan* by thoſe Deſerts ſpoken of before, but ſituate on the ſame branch of the River *Volga*; which, having run a courſe of 2000 *Italian* Miles, diſchargeth it ſelf into this Sea with no leſs than 70 Mouths or Chanels. This is a great miſtake, there being in reality but 4, or at moſt 5 Mouths. It took this name from *Aſtracan* the chief Town hereof, ſituate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of thoſe 70 Mouths or Chanels into the *Caſpian*; by the commodiouſneſs whereof it is one of the beſt Towns of Trade in all theſe Dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their Silks and Manufactures for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Ruſſes* or *Moſcovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingdom of leſs eſteem than that of *Caſan*, conquered (together with it) by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, *Anno* 1494, and by him made a Christian. But afterwards revolting, they were more abſolutely ſubdued by *John Vaſiliwich*, who brought into the field againſt them no fewer than 120000 Horſe and 200000 Foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terrour of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Ruſſia*, the Emperor whereof hath ſince ſtyled himſelf the King of *Aſtracan*.

18. *NOVOGORDIA Inferior*.

19. The *MORDWITS*.

BUT it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the skirts of *Aſia*, in tracing out the ſeveral Provinces of this Empire, ſince our firſt croſſing over the Bay of *Grandvic*, or *Saint Nicolas*, into the Country of *Petzora*. But in our way we muſt firſt take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*, ſo called to difference it from *Novogrod* (ſirnamed the *Great*) ſpoken of before, ſituate almoſt in the midſt betwixt *Caſan* and *Moſco*, diſtant from the laſt 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the Borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country is generally very rich both for Tillage and Paſturage, inferior unto none in all this Eſtate but *Reſan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief Town ſituate at the Confluence of the *Occa* and *Volga*; beſides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which ſtoreth it plentifully with Fiſh. A City of great eſteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of Houſes, in that not eaſily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Caſtle cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Baſilius* the Great Duke; but principally for a ſtately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 years ago, in imitation (or emulation, as ſome ſay) of the famous Church of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*. To this Town the Story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* Slaves ought, in my mind, to be aſcribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod*, in the Weſt parts of this Empire. My reaſon is, becauſe it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the Borders of the *Baltick* Sea ſhould croſs all this Country, to join with the *Aſiatick Scythians*, ſo remote from them in a needleſs War, which thoſe of this Tract might well do, as near Neighbours to them, if not of the ſame Nation or Extraction with them: nor is it probable that the Slaves would ſuffer their Maſters to waſte all the Country as far as the *Baltick* Sea, and to increaſe their ſtrength by the Spoil thereof, before they met them in the Field to give them Battle.

Subject to the Eſtate hereof are the *MORDWIT Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don* or *Tanais*, where it beginneth to return Weſtwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the ſame nature with the *Czeremiſſois*, but that they have ſome Villages and ſcattered Houſes, which the other either want or elſe care not for. They are Idolaters for the moſt part (and the reſt *Mahometans*) carrying their Idols in their Carts whereſoever they go; worſhipping that Beaſt all day which they firſt ſee in the morning, and ſwearing by it for that day, as their chiefeſt Deity.

20. *WOROTINE*. 21. *TUVER*.

22. *WOLODOMIR*.

AND now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almoſt as many Titles as Towns with Territories. Four of them (beſides ſome before) are either ſituate in the Province of *Moſcovy*, or elſe ſo intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may eaſily be taken (or miſtaken) for Members of it. The principal are,

WOROTINE, ſeated on the Weſt ſide of the River *Occa*, a diſtinct Dukedom of it ſelf; ſo called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Colluga* in the Province of *Rezen* lying on the farther Bank thereof, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a pleaſant Soil. The 2. *Miſceneck*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the Head of the River *Occa*, which ariſeth in the fields adjoyning.

TUVER, or *OTUVER*, as ſome call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the Banks of the River *Volga*; ſo populous, that it is ſaid to contain 40000 *Boiares* or Gentlemen fit to ſerve on horſeback, and double that number of the common or inferior ſort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Ruſſian* Emperor, and is ſo called from *Tuver* the chief Town thereof, and a Biſhop's Sea; affirmed to be a fairer and more ſtately City than *Moſco* it ſelf, from which it is diſtant 36 *Dutch* miles.

WOLODOMIR is one the moſt fruitful Countries in all *Ruſſia*, not parallel'd by many Countries in the World; the Soil here (if all be true which is ſaid of it) yielding ſuch an Increaſe, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and ſometimes twenty five, for one. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Ruſſian* Emperor and hath precedency before *Moſcovy* in the Style Imperial. So called from *Wolodomir*, the chief City of it, and a Biſhop's See, and that ſo named from the Founder, who probably was the ſame *Valadomir* (one of the firſt Kings of the *Ruſſes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. The City is ſituate 36 *Polonian* miles on the Eaſt of *Moſco*, anciently the chief Seat and Reſidence of the Great Duke, and ſo continued till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who firſt tranſlated it to *Moſco*, that from thence he might more eaſily confront and oppoſe the *Tartars*, with whoſe Irruptions and Invaſions both he and his Predeceſſors had long been troubled. Under the Government hereof is the City of *Suſdali*, of great eſteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal Seat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Moſco* it is ſeated. After it fell into decay, and being once deſtroyed by the *Tartars*, could never ſince recover its ancient Luſtre; having now little to uphold its reputation but a Biſhop's See.

23. *DWINA*.

D*WINA*, ſo called from the chief Town, is ſituate on the Confluence of two Rivers, *Juch* and *Sachona*, whence it hath the name; *Dwine* in the Language of that Country ſignifying *two*, as *twain* doth with us amongſt Country-people. A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren; which makes the Villages hereof to ſtand very thin, the Towns (conſidering the great compaſs of it) to be very few, and the Inhabitants for the moſt part to live upon dried Fiſh and the Fleſh of wild Beaſts, which they have no want of. The chief Commodity is Salt, with which they uſe to furniſh the neighbouring Provinces, and provide ſuch Neceſſaries for themſelves as they ſtand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Dwine*, ſpoken of before, ſituate in the midſt of the Province on the meeting of the ſaid two Rivers, which here united into one Stream take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean in the Bay of *Granvic*. 2. *Sagan*, ſo called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is ſeated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinnegue*, two ſtrong Caſtles.

Unto this Province (becauſe I know not elſe how to diſpoſe of them) I muſt reduce theſe four Towns following; that is to ſay, 1. *Uſting*, a Biſhop's See, ſituate on the Weſtern ſide of the River, over againſt the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country ſo ill furniſhed with Neceſſaries, that the people eat dried Fiſh inſtead of Bread, but have Salt enough to ſeaſon it from thoſe of *Dwine*.

2. *Cargapol*, a Biſhop's See alſo, on the ſame ſide of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3. S. *Nicolas*, a well known Port, and a Biſhop's See; ſituate at the influx of *Dwina* into the Gulf of *Granvicus*, or the Bay of S. *Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much Traded ſince the diſcovery of the North-eaſt paſſage by the *Engliſh*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* Traffick from *Novogrod* hither; from hence diſperſed with more eaſe and ſpeed into all the parts of this vaſt Empire. 4. S. *Michael*, on the Sea-ſide, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *Engliſh* eſpecially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reaſon whereof the *Engliſh* Merchants have not only great Priviledges and Immunities (as the Authors of ſo great a benefit unto this Eſtate) not granted to others, but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them thanany others have received. The cauſe of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperors had of Q. *Elizabeth*, who held very good correſpondence with them, continued ever ſince by mutual Embaſſies on both ſides; and ſecondly, the conformable Behaviour of the *Engliſh* themſelves, ſo acceptable to thoſe Barbarians (both Prince and People) that when *John Vaſiliwich* nailed the Hat of another foreign Embaſſador to his Head, for his too much perverſeneſs, he uſed our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindneſs imaginable. Another time, when the Jeſuite *Poſſevine* began to perſwade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *Engliſh* Embaſſador, that the Pope was a proud Prelate, and would make Princes kiſs his feet, he grew into ſuch a rage, that the *Jeſuite* was afraid he would have beat out his Brains. But to return again to the Port of St. *Nicolas*; it is ſo called from an Abbey there built unto that Saint, the Tutelary Saint and local Patron of the Nation. Which ſaid, I will ſet ſail from this Port to the *Ruſſian* Iſlands, and ſee what may be ſaid of them to our preſent purpoſe.

24. The *RUSSIAN* Iſlands.

THE *RUSSIAN* Iſlands are but two, both of them in the Northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coaſts of this Country; that is to ſay, 1. Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*'s Iſland, and 2. *Nova Zemla*; both ſubject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Moſcovie*.

1. *WILLOUGHBIES* Iſland was ſo called from Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, becauſe he firſt diſcovered it, *Anno* 1553, and was hereabouts found frozen to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth, to find out a new way to *Muſcovy*, *Cathaie* and *China*; he proceeded ſo far as to this Iſland; (ſituate almoſt oppoſite to the Bay of S. *Nicolas*) where the Weather proved ſo extreme, and the Froſts ſo vehement, that his Ship was ſet faſt in the Ice, and all his people with himſelf frozen to death, in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact deſcription of their Voyage and Fortunes. Notwithſtanding which diſaſtrous beginning, the Enterpriſe was purſued by ſome noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinſon*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *Engliſh* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the Eaſt Bounder of *Ruſſia*) but by reaſon of the length of the way, the vaſt floating Iſlands of Ice, and perpetual Night for many Months together in Winter, could advance no farther.

2. *NOVA ZEMLA*, ſituate on the Eaſt of *Willoughbie*'s Iſland, oppoſite to *Puſtozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was firſt diſcovered by ſuch Adventurers as followed *Willoughbie*'s Deſign. Famous for nothing but a race of ſhort-ſtatured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pigmies*: not yet ſo far diſcovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Ruſſes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the Preſcripts of any Law; but that they worſhipped the Sun, Moon, and Northern Star, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their Deer; that the Iſland is woody, deſart, and not eaſie for Travel, having in it neither green Bough nor Graſs, yet harbouring great ſtore of Bears, and ſuch ravenous and dangerous Beaſts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentſon* and his Aſſociates, employed by the *Hollanders* for this Diſcovery, *Anno* 1594, and 1596, in which laſt year, after many dreadful Combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Iſland, where they built an Houſe, as well to preſerve themſelves from being buried in Snow, as from being devoured by the Bears, (ſome of them 13 foot in length) which, with the loſs of two of their company devoured by thoſe ſavage creatures, they at laſt effected; ſome of them coming home in ſafety the *October* following. And though they ſeemed to give ſome hope that a way might be found unto *Cathaie* on the North of this Iſland (themſelves having gone as far North as the 81. Degree of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the ſucceſs impoſſible.

And ſo I leave it, to return to the Story of *Ruſſia*, called anciently by the name of *Sarmatia Europea*, but known no farther Northwards than the Head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europea*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolomy* by the *Baltick* Sea and ſome *Terra Incognita* on the North, the *Jazyges Metanaſta* (now *Tranſylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South, the River *Viſtula*, or *Weſſel*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the Weſt, and the *Tanais* upon the Eaſt, beyond that, all along the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mare Caſpium*, and as far North as any Conqueror had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: the Countries farther Eaſtward being then called *Scythia*. By which accompt, as *Ruſſia*, containeth not all *Sarmatia Europea*, of which *Pruſſia* and the reſt of the incorpotate Provinces of *Poland* paſs for a part; ſo neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Aſiatica*. The ancient Inhabitants, called by a general name *Sarmatæ*, by the *Greeks Sauromatæ*, were ſubdivided, for ſo much of this part of it was then made known, into the *Agathyrſi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Oſyli*, *Alauni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongſt many other barbarious Nations, theſe were ſome of the principal. And from theſe *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the reſt, *Matthias a Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the Original of the *Roſſes*, (which we now call the *Ruſſians*;) ſeconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of ancient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (from which the paſſage into this Country is both ſhort and eaſie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. Ταύρους τοὺς Ῥῶς καλεῖσθαι, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he ſaith from *Tzetzes*. Which *Ros*, or *Rhoſes*, firſt mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* People, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards poſſeſſing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Roſſi*, of Mount *Taurus* (from whom thoſe of *Taurica* deſcended) in their enterprizes on *Conſtantinople* and the parts adjoyning, return to their old name of *Roſſi*. The *Roſſi*, or *Ruſſians*, were then the firſt Lords of this Country generally, the *Moſcovites* poſſeſſors of a Province only; ſo called from the *Moſchi*, ſpoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharſalia*, and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phaſis*, which riſing from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Meſech*, (or *Moſoch*, as the Ancients called him) the Son of *Japhet*, placed originally in the North and North-eaſt of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*; where *Pliny*, as before it ſaid, hath fixed the *Moſchi*, and where there is a long Chain of Hills, which moſt of the old Writers call *Montes Moſcici*. But to return unto the *Roſſi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*; in whoſe Reign they infeſted the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldneſs to attempt the Imperial City, *Anno* 864; ſaid by *Cedrenus* and ſome other of the Eaſtern Writers to be a People of Mount *Taurus*, (next neighbours to *Meſech* or the *Moſchi)* Failing in their attempt upon *Conſtantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they ſpread themſelves, with their Confederates and Aſſociates in this expedition, upon the North-weſt Banks of the *Euxine* Sea; enlarging their bounds Northwards with leſs oppoſition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Conſtantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the Reigns of *Conſtantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auceps.* Converted to the Chriſtian Faith, or growing into better terms with the Eaſtern Emperors, *Helena*, Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valodomirus* one of their Kings. From that time forwards they turned their Forces on the *Polanders* and their weaker neighbours; ſave that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, ſlain accidentally at *Conſtantinople* in a private Quarrel, they made another fruitleſs Journey againſt that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates.* Enlarging their Eſtate to the Weſt and South, they became Maſters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europea*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Ruſſia*, *Nigra*, and other Provinces, now ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*, being then parts of their Eſtate. *Anno* 1240, the *Tartars* under the Conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, the Son of *Occatan Chan*, broke in upon them and ſubdued them: the Country before this entire, under one ſole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferior Governments, according to the will and pleaſure of the inſolent Victors. The principal of theſe (deſcended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Volodomir*, *Moſco*, and ſome other Cities; held by them with no other Title than that of Lords of *Moſcovy*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the reſt. Their Seat was originally at *Volodomir*, till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Ruſſes*, deſcended of the old Regal Line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Moſco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief Seat of his Principality. From whence the reſidue of the *Ruſſes*, united in ſucceeding times unto this Eſtate by Marriages, Fraud and Conqueſt, had the name of *Moſcovites.* But notwithſtanding this increaſe of their power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vaſſals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous Inſolency. Under which Thraldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians*, being divided amongſt themſelves, and grown leſs terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their Power and Command here by the valour of *John*, Son of *Baſilius* the ſecond, who thereupon changed the Title of *Lord* into that of *Duke*, and after into that of *Great Duke*, as his Fortune thrived. Yet not ſo great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their Wars, that the *Tartars* ſhould relinquiſh all their Holds in the Country; and on the other ſide, that once every year, within the Caſtle of *Moſco*, the Great Duke, ſtanding on foot, ſhould feed the Horſe of the *Crim-Tartar* with Oats out of his own Cap. This Homage was by *Baſilius* changed into a Tribute of Furs; which being alſo denied by his Succeſſors, (as they grew in power) occaſioned the long Wars betwixt the Nations; the *Tartars* always preſſing on them by ſudden Inroads, ſometimes by Armies of no leſs than 200000 fighting men. But notwithſtanding all their Power, and the Friendſhip of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moſcovite* is not only able to aſſert his Soveraignty, but hath alſo wreſted from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf (as I ſee ſome do) in tracing a Succeſſion of them as far as from the times of *Auguſtus Cæſar*; when neither the *Roſſi* nor the *Moſchi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whoſe Daughter *Anne* I find to have been married to *Henry* the firſt of *France.* From whom in a direct Line deſcended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the laſt King of the *Ruſſes* before the coming of the *Tartars.* He, wiſely yielding to the Storm, waved the Title of *King*, contented only with the Title of *Lord*, as more ſafe for him, and leſs invidious to the *Tartars.* The fifth from whom, called *John*, (as before is ſaid) having removed his Seat to *Moſco*, took to himſelf the Title of Lord of *Moſco*, the chief Seat of that Power and Soveraignty, which he tranſmitted afterwards to his Poſterity; affecting for that cauſe the Title of Duke of *Moſcovie* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place alſo in his Style) as much as that of *Emperor* of *Ruſſia*; which ſome of them have aſſumed alſo ſince the time of *Baſilius*, who ſtiled himſelf *Baſilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperor and Lord of *Ruſſia*, Great Duke of *Volodomir*, *Moſcovie*, *Novogrod the Great*, *Pleſcow*, *Smolensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiathka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of the *Lower Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rezan*, *Wologda*, *Pſow*, *Biele*, *Roſtow*, *Jaroſſane*, *Poloskie*, *Bielloziere*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan.* But leaving them to their ſwelling and voluminous Title, (little inferior unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the Succeſſion from the time aforeſaid of

The Lords of *MOSCOVIE* of the old Royal *RUSSIAN* Line.

A. Ch.	
1237	1, *George*, the laſt King of the *Ruſſes*, and firſt Lord of the *Ruſſes* of the Royal Line.
	2. *Jaceſlaus.*
	3. *Alexander.*
	4. *Daniel.*
	5. *John*, who transferred the Seat to *Moſco.*
	6. *John* II.
	7. *Baſilius.*
	8. *Demetrius.*
	9. *Georgius* II.
	10. *Baſilius* II.

The Great Dukes of *MOSCOVIE.*

1450	1. *John*, the firſt Great Duke, who ſhook off the *Tartarian* Bondage.
	2. *Baſilius Caſan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roſcovia*, and *Smolensko*, with the Realms of *Aſtracan* and *Caſan.*
1533	3. *John Baſilius*, conquered *Livonia* and *Lituania.* Both which his Succeſſor,
1548	4. *John Baſilides*, or *Waſiliwich*, loſt in his age; though in his youth he had ſubdued the *Noyhacenſian Tartars* to his Empire, and vanquiſhed *Selim* Emperor of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1569. With this King the *Engliſh* firſt began to confederate. He died the 18th of *April* 1584.
1584	5. *Theodorus Johannides*, the laſt of the old Royal Line of *Moſcovie*, called *Pheodor* in *Ruſs.*
1591	6. *Boris Theodorus*, Brother to the Wife of the laſt Great Duke, partly by the laſt Will of his Predeceſſor, partly by practiſing with the people, obtained the Empire, but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was diſpoſſeſſed by the *Polanders*, coming in favour of one
1605	7. *Demetrius*, pretending himſelf to be the Son of *John Waſiliwich* (and generally believed to be ſo) preſerved in a Monaſtery from the Tyranny of *Boria*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whoſe aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperor in the City of *Moſco.* But the *Ruſſian* Lords diſdaining to have a Prince impoſed on them from *Poland*, roſe in Arms againſt him,

and at laſt vanquiſhed and ſlew him in open Field: his Wife, a noble *Polonian* Lady, being ſent poorly home, and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.

1606 8. *Baſil Juanniwich*, ſirnamed *Sniskius*, the chief of the Conſpirators, was by the reſt of his Faction choſen *Knez* or Emperor, and held the State with great Trouble till the year 1610, when

1610 9. *Demetrius* II. another pretender to the State as the Son of *John Baſiliwich* alſo, in oppoſition unto *Sniskius*, ſet up by a ſtronger Faction, gave occaſion to the *Polander* to work upon this Diſtemper, by whom *Sniskius* was taken Priſoner, *Demetrius* ſlain, *Smolensko* and other great Towns ſubdued, and *Vladiſlaus*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Ruſſians* to be choſen Emperor. But the *Ruſſes*, loth to fall under the Power of the *Polander*; and weary of their own Confuſions, made choice at laſt of

1615 10. *Michael Fedrovitz*, Son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Moſco*, who at laſt ſetled this vaſt Empire, and managed it in a more conſtant way of Peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Swetherland*, than any of his Predeceſſors had done before him.

1646 11. *Alexius Michaelwitz* (or the Son of *Michael*) ſucceeded his Father in the Empire; troubled at firſt with ſome Diſtempers in the State (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly ſetled, *Anno* 1648. This Prince died in 1675: in the year 1664 he was 34 years old, being born the 17th of *March*, 1630.

1675 12. *Fœdor Alexovitz*, Son of *Alexius*, ſucceeded his Father. This Prince died in *May* in the year 1682, without Iſſue, though twice Married.

1682 13. *Alexovitz* and *Peter*, both Brothers of *Fœdor*, were ſet up and now Reign together; the Eldeſt of theſe was but 10 years old, and half blind, and altogether unfit for Government, and therefore the *Boiares* paſſed him by and ſet up his younger Brother; upon which the 15th, 16th, and 17th of *June* a Tumult was made by the Army in *Moſco*, and many of the great Men being Aſſaſſinated, they ſet up the Elder Brother with the Younger, and they have hitherto made a ſhift to Reign together about 5 years. In the year 1689 a Conſpiracy being diſcovered to Murder the younger Brother (or at leaſt pretended) he ſent the Elder into a Monaſtery, and began to govern alone.

The Formalities with which theſe great Emperors are inveſted or ſetled in the Throne are not many nor ſtately; ſuch as they be, I here afford you out of the Hiſtory of the Life of *Johannes Baſilides*, written in *Latin* by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the 2d of *June*, *Anno* 1583, *Theodorus Johannides* went towards the Temple of S. *Michael*, being the principal Church in all *Moſco*; the Streets all cover'd with Flowers, the Doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the Air echoing with the noiſe of Flutes and Trumpets, and the People ſo crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked Swords forc'd a paſſage through them, it had been impoſſible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Country (*Knezes* as we call them) went out to meet him; and the Archbiſhop of *Moſco*, clad in his *Pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The Pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapeſtry, and the Stalls adorned with coſtly Hangings. The Great Duke ſate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of Silk, buttoned down with golden Buttons: on his Head he wore a Purple Cap ſpangled with rich Jewels, and on his Fingers abundance of Rings. Being thus ſeated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God to bleſs him, his People, and his Government: which was ſeconded by the joyful Shouts and Acclamations of his Subjects; amongſt whom no ſmall ſtore of Silver-money was flung by the Treaſurer, and ſo they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperor being abſolute Lord of the Lives, Lands and Goods of all his Subjects: all of them, the Noble as well as the baſe, ſubſcribing themſelves in their Petitions to him by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, Slaves. Whereupon *Mahomet*, a *Turkiſh Baſhaw*, was uſed to ſay, that his Maſter and the *Muſcovite* were the two moſt abſolute Princes in all the World. Firſt for their Goods; when any Ambaſſador returns home, the Great Duke takes from him all the Preſents which he hath received, giving him perhaps ſome ſmall Reward, perhaps none at all: and as for Lands, they paſs not from Father to Son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly (beſides the caſe of *Permia* ſpoken of before) *John Vaſiliwich* ſent a Command to *Moſco*, to provide a Coal-pack of live Fleas for a Medicine: and when the Citizens returned anſwer that it was impoſſible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their Diſobedience. Another time he laid a Mulct of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, becauſe he had no good Sport in his Hunting: which they again extorted from the common people; and under colour of want, commanded from ſome Biſhops and Monaſteries the ſum of 100000 Rubbles, from ſome 50000, more or leſs from others, according unto their Revenues. And it is uſual with the beſt of them to cauſe the *Boiares* (or Gentlemen which ſerve on Horſeback) to pretend themſelves robbed, that he may ſend unto the City to find out the Felon, and, on a *Non eſt inventus*, Fine them at diſcretion, ſometimes 8000, ſometimes 10000, and ſometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their Lives, there is a Story, that *Vaſiliwich* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Gooſe ſtuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, cauſed him to be brought into the Market-place of *Moſco*; where without any legal Tryal, he commanded the Executioner firſt to cut off his Legs about the Shins, and then his Arms about the Elbows, (ſtill asking the miſerable Man how he liked Gooſe-fleſh) and in the end to cut off his Head, in ſimilitude of a Gooſe ready for the Spit. And that they may the better preſerve this Power, the Great Dukes ſeldom ſhew themſelves unto the People but in Apparel of ineſtimable value, joining the Ornaments of a Biſhop unto the Majeſty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their Heads ſhining with Diamonds and rich Stones: and when they wear it not on their Heads, they place it before the Chair of State (over which are the Images of *Chriſt* and the Bleſſed Virgin) holding in their hands a moſt Rich Croſier-Staff, and all their Fingers full of Rings. And upon ſolemn Feſtivals and Entertainments the great Chamber is beſet with Cupboards of Plate of infinite value, and filled with Men clothed with Cloth of Gold to the very foot; all of them ſeeming to be Men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the graveſt and portlieſt Citizens of *Moſco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperor's Wardrobe; which to ſuch as do not underſtand the Fraud, look like ſo many Princes, and cauſe no ſmall wonder at his Magnificence. So that the People ſeeing him in ſuch Royal State, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home, reverence him as Slaves, not Subjects, and look upon him rather as a God than a King.

Having ſo abſolute a Command on their Lives and Goods, it will be eaſily ſuppoſed that he may raiſe what Forces and amaſs what Treaſures he hath a mind to. Firſt, for his Forces, it is ſaid that he is able to raiſe 300000 Horſe, if occaſion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *John Vaſiliwich*, in his War againſt thoſe of *Aſtracan*, had actually 120000 Horſe; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiares*, bound by their Tenure to ſerve with Horſe whenſoever he pleaſeth; and that there are 110 Men choſen by the Emperor, and by him enfeoffed with Lands, (during pleaſure only) who for theſe Lands are to find 65000 Horſe with all things neceſſary for the Wars, and thoſe in a continual readineſs fit for preſent Action. Then for ſuch Horſe as he himſelf doth keep in continual pay, there are no fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his Perſon, all of them well-experienced Men and fit for Service: which added to the 65000 ſpoken of before, make up a ſtanding Body of 90000. Had he Foot anſwerable unto this proportion of Horſe, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vaſiliwich* to his great Army of 120000 Horſe having but 20000 Foot; the Foot-men which he hath in continual Pay amounting to 12000 only, far ſhort of ſuch a ſtanding Body of Horſe as before we ſpake of. And this defect hath been the reaſon why the *Polanders* with far leſs Armies have prevailed againſt them: the Great Duke not being able with all his power to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne*, or beſieging *Pleſcow* (though his Army was not above 60000 in both Horſe and Foot) for want of ſtanding Bands of Foot to make good his ground. Generally both Horſe and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and Superiour Officers: patiently enduring all Diſcommodities of Cold, Rain, and Hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortreſs than ſerve in Field) and ſo regardleſs of their Lives in the day of Battel, that they will rather looſe them than either yield themſelves Priſoners or demand Quarters.

Of late years they have taken into pay many *Scotch* and *Poliſh* Gentlemen, who have endeavoured to teach their Soldiers the modern way of Exerciſe uſed by other Countries, and to improve their Foot; which may in time make them an overmatch for all their Neighbours; but we ſee however no great effect of this in their War began at the Solicitation of the *Poles* againſt the *Crim Tartars* in the year 1686, entered upon in 1687, without any Succeſs; and now carried on, but with what Effect is not yet known.

This Prince has extended his Dominions ſince our Author wrote, to the South as far as *Perſia*, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the City of *Tarky*, in 41 Degrees of Latitude, by which he is become Neighbour to the *Georgians* and *Perſians*, who can yet do him no damage: to the North-East upon the Frozen Sea he has taken in the *Samoieds*, and enlarged his Borders beyond the River *Obb*: to the South-Weſt he has the Province of *Severa* extending as far as the *Boriſthenes*, whoſe Inhabitants are called the *Ruſs-Coſſacks*, and are very warlike, ſtrong and numerous; ſo that he has only three Enemies to fear, the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Pole*, and the *Swede*. And as for the laſt, he is not much in pain; he is now conjoined with the *Poles* to conquer the *Crim-Tartar* and the *Turks* being low, he might have ſucceeded in it, if his own *Coſſacks* had not proved Treacherous and Diſobedient.

The Revenues of this Country have been infinitely improved, not only by the Silver, Gold, and other Merchandize Imported by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, but by the vaſt Numbers of *Scotch*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, *Poles*, *Germans*, and *Swedes*, which have gone thither and taught thoſe People Husbandry, Mechanick Arts, Manufactures and Civility, by which they are very much improved and enriched, and their Traffick is enlarged beyond belief, and conſequently the Power and Revenues of this Prince (who is called the *Czar* in imitation of the word *Cæſar*, which they cannot pronounce) are thereby much advanced, and grow every Year greater and greater, eſpecially ſince the *Hollanders* have taken large quantities of Corn yearly off his hands.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himſelf, conſidering (beſides his extraordinary power of oppreſſing his Subjects before-mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amaſſing Treaſure: *viz.* the Foreſtalling of home-bred Commodities, and ingroſſing the foreign; ſelling them at what price he liſt, and hindring all Men elſe from Trade till his own be ſold; Proviſion of Rent-corn and Victual, raiſed in ſome years to 200000 Rubbles, Rent-wood and Hay to 30000, Poll-Money to 400000, Cuſtoms on Merchandiſe to 800000. By which and other means of collecting Monies, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raiſe vaſt Sums: yet it is thought that, his Houſhold-charges being deducted, there remain not towards all other Expences three millions of Rubbles; every Rubble being as much as an *Engliſh* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two Leaves and as many Degrees *Or*.

There are in RUSSIA

Patriarch 1. Archbiſhops 2.

Biſhops 18.

And ſo much for RUSSIA.

OF
POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Ruſſia* and the *Crim-Tartar*, from whom it is parted by the River *Boryſthenes*; on the Weſt with *Germany*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea and ſome part of *Ruſſia*, on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountains, and the *Nieſter*, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Tranſilvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an aggregate Body, conſiſting of many diſtinct Provinces united into one Eſtate, of which *Poland*, being the predominant, hath given name to the reſt, called altogether the Realm of *Poland*: and that ſo named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language (the common Language of the Country) ſignifieth *plain*; becauſe it is but little ſwelled with Hills. It is of Figure round, in compaſs 2600 miles, ſituate under the eighth and twelfth Climates; ſo that the longeſt Day in the Southern part is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts moſt North.

This Country is plain, but full of Woods, which ſerve to rectifie the Air, being naturally ſo cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes; inſtead whereof they uſe that kind of Drink called Ale, in former times the uſual Beverage of *England* and this Country only. Barley they have, and Pulſe in ſuch abundant meaſure, that no ſmall quantities of each are tranſported yearly: nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark* or *Hungary* for their plenty of Cattle. But of this more in our deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces.

The People are very induſtrious, and ſtudious of all Languages, eſpecially of the *Latine*; to which they are ſo devoted, that there is ſcarce a mean man who is not able in ſome meaſure to expreſs himſelf in it. According to their abilities they are rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good Soldiers generally. The Peaſants live in miſerable Servitude unto their Lords; the Lords in ſuch Equality of Eſtate amongſt themſelves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Proud in their Garb, coſtly in their Apparel, impatient in their Humours, and delicate in Diet. Theſe laſt Conditions are common to the Women alſo, who are for the moſt part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well ſpoken. But this, being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly ſo called, is not perhaps communicable to the People of the reſt of the Provinces, whom we ſhall ſpeak of ſeverally in their proper places.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt planted in this Kingdom at ſeveral times and by ſeveral perſons, according to the different parts of which it conſiſteth: in *Poland* ſpecially ſo called in the time of their Prince *Meiciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus Anno* 963; in *Livonia*, by the preaching of one *Meinardus*, *Anno* 1200, or thereabouts in *Lituania*, not until the year 1386, at the admiſſion of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as ſome ſay) by *Thomas* of *Walden* (or *Waldenſis*) an *Engliſh* Frier; in *Samogitia* and *Volhinia*, at the ſame time with *Lituania*; in the reſt at other times and on other occaſions, yet ſo that in many places of it Idolatry was never totally rooted out, the ſeeds and practice whereof in many Points ſtill remain amongſt them. Corrupted by the Superſtitions of the Church of *Rome*, a Reformation was endeavoured at ſuch a time as *John Hus* flouriſhed in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Vladiſlaus* the ſixth, then King thereof, aſſiſted by his Biſhops and Noblemen, it was at that time hindred. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, ſome who had ſtudied at *Leipſick*, and *Wittenberg* (Univerſities of *Saxony*) brought his Opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as ſome *Dutch* Merchants (with the reſt of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerellia*, *Anno* 1525: from whence it ſpread it ſelf over moſt part of that Country. According as it was favoured or diſliked by the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans* and other great men of the Realm, ſo was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Gracians* in the mean time taking opportunity to win ſome parts of it to their ſide, and confirm others in it, who being originally Members of the Church of *Greece*, becauſe originally converted by the Biſhops thereof, did ſtill continue in Conformity and Obedience to it. In the end, by reaſon of the over-great Liberty of the Nobility and People, and want of Power in the King to controle their doings, every man took up what Religion he beſt liked; ſome following the *Auguſtine* Confeſſion, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciouſly to the Church of *Rome*; and ſome inclining to new Sects, or rather to old Hereſies under new Diſguiſes, have brought in ſuch a Miſcellanie or *Babel* of Religions into this Eſtate, (*Jeſuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptiſts*, and indeed what not? being here all tolerated) that at laſt it grew into a by-word, that *If any man had loſt his Religion, he might find it in* Poland, *or elſe believe it to be vaniſhed.* A by-word afterwards applied unto *Amſterdam*, communicable ſince unto other places, *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the Liberty of Propheſying, being now as much allowed of in ſome parts of Chriſtendom, as *Libertas opinandi* was in *Rome* under *Nerva's* Government, *ubi & ſentire quæ velis, & quæ ſententias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he liſted of the publick, and ſpeak what he thought. But whether this be ſuch a *rara temporum Felicitas*, ſuch a Felicity of theſe our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of thoſe, future times will ſhew.

But to return again to *Poland*: notwithſtanding this mixture of Religions, yet that moſt publickly allowed and countenanced is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*, aſſerted here by the Zeal of the Kings unto that Cauſe, and the great Power of the Biſhop's, who ſeeing how thoſe of their Order have ſped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of ſome things amiſs, have hitherto upheld the Eccleſiaſtical Eſtate in the ſame form they found it. The Government of the Church is as formerly by 3 Archbiſhops and 19 Biſhops, who challenge a Juriſdiction over all the Kingdom, but exerciſe it upon thoſe only who ſubmit unto them: thoſe who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin* following the Forms of Government by them eſtabliſhed; as others do ſome new ones of their own deviſing. And for thoſe Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Ruſſian* Empire, and ſtill hold a Communion with thoſe Churches, they have Archbiſhops and Biſhops of their own Religion; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhops of *Vilne* and *Lemburg*, the Biſhops of *Poloczo*, *Lusko*, *Pinzko*, *Volodomir*, *Preſmil*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongſt all theſe different Churches and forms of Government there is this Conformity, that whenſoever the Goſpel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry uſe to draw their Swords. (according to an ancient Cuſtom which they had among them) ſignifying their readineſs to defend it againſt all Oppoſers. Which reaſon doubtleſs gave beginning to the ſtanding up at the Creed and Goſpel in the Primitive times, retained ſtill in the *Church* of *England*, whereby we do declare how prepared and reſolute we are to defend the ſame: though ſome of late, holding it for a Relique of Popery, with greater nicety than wiſdom, have refuſed to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Countrey in the Art of War were, 1. *Caſimir* the third, the great Eſtabliſher of this Kingdom after long Diſſenſions. 2. *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, who firſt brought down the Pride of the *Dutch* Knights in a famous Victory. 3. *Caſimir* the IV. the fortunate Conqueror of the *Knights* of *Pruſſia*, brought by him under the Command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4. *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whoſe Valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally ſuppreſſed, and the greateſt part of *Pruſſia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, ſirnamed *Auguſtus*, fortunate in his Wars againſt moſt of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of moſt ſpecial note for learning, *Hoſius* a Divine of the Papal Party, whoſe great Abilities advanced him to the ſtate of a Cardinal. 2. *Crellius*, and 3. *Volckelius*, of the contrary Party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unſound Opinions. 4. *Cromerus*, the Hiſtorian. 5. *Keckerman*, the Profeſſor at *Danſk* or *Dantzick*; a man of univerſal Studies, but of greater induſtry than exactneſs.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Viſtula* or the *Weyſſel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europea*; which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains paſſeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and, dividing *Pruſſia* from *Pomerellia*, falleth into the *Baltick* Sea, not far from *Dantzick* and is navigable for the ſpace of 400 miles, of old called *Vandalis*. 2. *Warta*, which runneth through the leſſer *Poland*. 3. *Duina* the leſs, watering *Livonia*; and 4. *Boryſthenes*, or the *Nieper*, paſſing through *Podolia*: both ſpoken of before, when we were in *Ruſſia*. 5. *Nieſter*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having firſt parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by ſome called the leſſer *Tanais*, ariſing in *Lituania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais* which is now called *Don*. Of leſs note there are, 1. *Reuhen*, or *Reuhon*. 2. *Chronus*, now called *Pregel*. 3. *Bog*, ſaid by ſome to be the *Hypanis* of the Ancients. 4. *Memel*. 5. *Niemen*, the *Meander* of theſe Northern parts. 6. *Windaw*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the moſt part being plain and champain, and thoſe which be are rather Boundaries betwixt this and ſome other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are thoſe called *Sarmatici* dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europea*, by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolomy* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the Boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common Meets and Landmarks being thus laid down, we will next take a view of thoſe ſeveral Provinces, of which this Kingdom doth conſiſt, being eleven in number; that is to ſay, 1. *Livonia*, 2. *Samogitia*, 3. *Lituania*, 4. *Volhinia*, 5. *Podolia*, 6. *Ruſſia nigra*, 7. *Maſſovia*, 8. *Podlaſſia*, 9. *Pruſſia*, 10. *Pomerellia* and 11. *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europea*.

1. *LIVONIA*.

LIVONIA, or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Ingria* and *Pleſkow*, two Provinces of the Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia* and *Lituania*, cut off from it by the River *Dwina*; extended in length along the Shore of the *Baltick* for the ſpace of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian* miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth; and called thus perhaps from the *Levoni*, a people of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Viſtula*.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, without any Mountains; furniſhed with Corn and Fruits in ſo great abundance, that they ſend part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much Ground untilled in it, by reaſon of the Bogs and Marſhes, which are very frequent. Here is alſo ſtore of Wax, Honey and Pitch, but they have neither Oyl nor Wine: the want of which laſt is ſupplied by Meeth. Of tame Beaſts fit for man's ſervice they are well provided; as alſo ſuch whoſe Skins are of more value with the Merchants than their Fleſh at the Market; as Ermins, Sables, Caſtors, and others of that kind, beſides good ſtore of Game for Hunting, the Country having in it many large Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for the Rivers, there are few Countreys which have more; it being watered by the *Windaw*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Reuhon*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Beybas*, Forty Five miles long, and full of Fiſh.

The people are much given to gluttony and drunkenneſs, eſpecially in rich mens houſes, where it is to be had: for the Peaſants live in want enough, meer Slaves to their Tyrannical Landlords, who ſpend in Riot and exceſs what theſe get by Drudgery: and when at any time the poor Wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with ſome other, the Lord if he can overtake him, will cut off his Foot, to make him ſure for the future. They are mixture of many Nations: as the *Eſthones*, which are the natural Inhabitants, (derived from the *Eſtii*, a *Dutch* people, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*) of which Nation are almoſt all the Peaſants; the *Moſcovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch* and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon ſeveral Conqueſts, and planting themſelves in the beſt parts of it, in which they ſtill Lord it over the Native, but the *Dutch* eſpecially, for long time Maſters of the whole.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by *Neinardus* of *Lubeck*, imployed herein) in the time of *Frederick* the firſt) at the perſwaſion of ſome *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbiſhop of *Breme*, by whom he was made the firſt Biſhop of the *Livonians* in 1190. The Church hereof at this time is governed by the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, the Biſhops of *Dirpt*, *Aſilia*, *Oſel*, *Curland*, and *Rivallia*. In thoſe parts which remain ſubject to the *Polander*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such part of it as are under the *Swedes* or *Danes* are for the moſt part of the *Lutheran* Profeſſion, planted with Colonies of that People, but the *Eſtones*, or original Inhabitants, as they have a Language, ſo they have a Religion by themſelves alſo, mixt of the Chriſtian and the Pagan. Extreamly well affected unto their Prieſts, to whom they preſent Salt, Candles and Fruits, when they come to them for their Bleſſings; great lovers of Confeſſion, eſteemers of Holy Water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but ſo extremely ignorant in all Points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a Village that can ſay his *Pater Noſter*. When they bury any of their dead every one drinketh an Health to him, and powreth his part upon him, when his turn comes to drink; putting into the Grave with him an Hatchet, Wine, Meat, and a little Mony for his Voyage. And in ſome places they are wholly Idolatrous (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jeſuites*) ſome of them worſhipping the Sun, others Stocks and Stones, and ſome Serpents alſo. The Language of the Country is for the moſt part the High *Dutch*, being the Language of thoſe Nations who firſt Lorded over them; the *Eſtones* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others underſtand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland* *Eſtland*, *Semigal*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Lettenland*; but theſe ſix, ſince the Conqueſt of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three, *Harland* and *Virland* being united unto *Eſtland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Eſtland* are, 1. *Rivallia*, or *Revel*, a Biſhops See, and a well traded Port, ſituate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof, and of *Wiborg* on the Borders of *Moſcovy*, ſtand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. This City was built by *Waldemarking* of *Denmark* in the year 1223, and being frighted by the Threats the *Ruſs*, in 1558, they had recourſe to this King for Protection, miſſing it there, they applied themſelves to *Erick* King of *Sweden* who accepted them. In 1570, *Magnus* Duke of *Holſtein* beſieged it for the *Ruſs* without Succeſs, in 1577 the *Ruſs* beſieged it themſelves but with the ſame effect, and ſince then it has Peaceably been enjoyed by the *Swede*. 2. *Habſay*, or *Habſel*, (*Aſilia* in Latin) a Biſhops See; and 3. *Pernaw*, a well-fortified place, belonging to the *Swethlander* alſo, ever ſince the Conqueſt of theſe parts of the Country by *John* the ſecond. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as alſo other pieces of this nature are, which, ſtanding in an Enemies Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adverſaries. For they are not only Doors, to open a farther paſſage into their Territories, whenſoever we ſhall ſee occaſion; but whilſt the Enemy is beſieging thereof, or otherwiſe buſied in recovering them into his power, our own State is preſerved in quiet, and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them if they be diſtreſſed, without waſting of any part of our proper Countries. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *Engliſh*; the Garriſons which the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* have in *Africk* and *India*: the Charge of keeping them being ſufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the Income, as ſometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4. *Velin*, a ſtrong Town, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, betrayed by the *Dutch* Garriſon at that time in it, together with *William* of *Furſtenburg*, the Great Maſter, into the hands of *John Baſilius* the Great Duke of *Moſcovy*, who ſtill holds it. 5. *Derpt*, or *Derbern*, (in *Latin Tupatum*) a Biſhop's See, ſituate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck*, betwixt two Lakes, in the midſt of the Province, and taken at the ſame time by the *Moſcovite*, who, tranſporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted theſe parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Terveſt*, a Caſtle of great ſtrength, taken then alſo by the *Ruſſes*; but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with Gunpowder, that it might no more come into the hand of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; theſe that follow do; that is to ſay, 7. *Borcholm*, the Seat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Rivallia*, ſince the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Weſenburg*, incommodiouſly ſeated betwixt two ill neighbours, *Narva* and *Rivallia*; but ſerving very well to prohibit the Incurſions of thoſe Garriſons farther into the Country. 9. *Wernebeck*, in that part of *Eſtland*, which is called *Odinpo*; and 10 *Weiſſenſtein*; in that part thereof which is named *Jervia*.

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midſt betwixt *Eſtland*, and *Curland*, the places of moſt note are, 1. *Riga*, (the people call it *Rig*) ſeated on the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, falling there into the *Baltick* firſt built and planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbiſhop's See, the ordinary Reſidence of the Great Maſter, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of fortification, with a ſtrong Wall, large Bulwarks, double Ditches, Paliſadoes, and well provided of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Empory, of great reſort for foreign Merchants, who carry hence Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and ſuch other Commodities. They are governed (notwithſtanding their Subjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own Laws; and ſuch ſtout defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Forreigner to have Command of the City, obedient in all other things to the will of that King. This City was built about the year 1196, in 1215 it became a Biſhop's See, in 1561 it willingly ſubmitted upon good Terms to the Crown of *Poland*, in 1605, it was in vain beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, but in 1621 *Guſtavus Adolphus* took it, in 1656 it was beſieged in vain by the *Ruſs*, in 1677, it ſuffered much by Fire, and it is ſtill under the *Swedes*, ſaith *Jehn Bunon*. Mr. *Mervil*, who ſaw it in the year 1664, ſaith it is a Town of no great extent, but compact and very well peopled. Its Buildings are all of Brick and Stone, and it is fortified with a good Wall, and good Ditches and Ramparts, on that ſide towards *Muſcovie*, and towards the River it has a ſtrong and well fortified Caſtle, in which the *Swediſh* Governour of *Livonia* Reſides; the Town is principally conſiderable for the Commerce it draws from all parts, the Ships coming up to the Walls of the Town, and in Winter the Merchants paſs in their Sledges to *Pleſco*, *Novogrod* and *Moſco*. 2. *Dunamund*, an impregnable Fortreſs, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garriſoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all Foreign Merchants. 3. *Blokaws*, a Garriſon of the King's betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are tolled over again. 4. *Wenden*, more within the Land, on the River *Treider*. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the ſame River. 6. *Kakenhauſe*, a ſtrong Town on the Banks of the *Dwina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and ſtood firm for him in the War made by *Charles* Duke of *Suderman* againſt his Nephew *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almoſt all *Eſtland* had ſubmitted to him. The Eaſtern part of this Province is under the *Ruſs*, and the Weſtern, which is much the greater part is under the *Swede*.

CURLAND, the third and laſt member of this Diviſion, containing *Semigallia* alſo, lieth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lituania*: an entire Dukedom of it ſelf, but holden under the Soveraignty and Homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Candaw*, 2. *Goldingen*, 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Windaw*) the Seat of the Great Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order in time paſt; now moſt frequented as the place of Parliament or general Aſſembly for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*, 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea-ſide but of no Trade at all. 6. *Haſenpot*. And then in *Semigal*, 7. *Mittaw*, the Court and Reſidence of the Dukes of *Curland*. 8. *Selborg*, 9. *Beſſinborg*. 10. *Dobelin*. There is no Town in all this Dukedom of any Trading, though lying for a great ſpace all along the *Baltick*; becauſe none of them are furniſhed with commodious Havens. A Dukedom firſt begun in the perſon of *Gothardus Ketler*, (of one of the noble Families of *Denmark*) the laſt Great Maſter of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country, who in the year 1562 ſurrendring his Order, and the whole poſſeſſion of *Livonia*, to *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* K. of *Poland*, received back again for him, and his Heirs for ever the Dukedom of *Curland* and *Semigal*, to be held by them of that Crown; the Nobility of theſe Countries doing then preſently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this Houſe have continued Feudataries unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the Body thereof; not coming to the Diets, not liable to the publick Charges, nor having any thing to do in the Kings Election; in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the King's of *Poland*, than Subjects to them. The preſent Duke is like to be much increaſed in Eſtate and Power, if the now Marquiſs of *Brandenburg* (whoſe Siſter is his Mother) ſhould depart without Iſſue. For by that means there will be added to this Houſe the great Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, thoſe of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, together with ſuch other Countries poſſeſſed now by that Marquiſs as he holds by deſcent from the Heirs-general of thoſe Dukedoms: which makes him caſt an eye already upon thoſe Eſtates.

The Dukes of *Curland*, are Originally of *Weſtphalia* in *Germany*.

1562 1. *Gothard Kedler*, being the Son of *Gothard Kedler*, a Knight of *Weſtphalia*, and being Maſter of the Knights of *Livonia*, he was by *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland*, made Duke of *Curland*.

2. *James* Duke of *Curland*, Son of *Gothard*, Married in the year 1645, *Charlotto* Daughter of *George William* Elector and Duke of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had

3. *Frederick Caſſimir*, now Duke of *Curland*,

2. *Ferdinand* a great Commander in the Wars.

3. *Alexander*, who was wounded at the Siege of *Buda*, and is ſince Dead. *Frederick Caſſimir*, the preſent Duke of *Curland*, in the year 1688, 25th of *December*, Married *Sophia Amalia Naſſau*, of the Line of *Sigen Showartus*.

There belong alſo to *Livonia* ſome few Iſlands ſituate in the *Baltick* See, that is to ſay, 1. *Oſilia*, 2. *Dachden*. 3. *Mona*, 4. *Wormſe*, 5. *Wrangen*, and 6. *Keyn*. Of which the four laſt do belong to the King of *Poland*, *Dachden* to the King of *Swethland*, and *Oſilia*, or *Oſel*, to the *Danes*. This laſt is the chief of all the ſix, diſtant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 *Dutch* miles; 14 of the ſame miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns hereof being 1. *Oſel*, a Biſhop's See, which gives name to the Iſland. 2. *Sunneburg*. The Iſland was made ſubject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Denmark*; who, being choſen Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick of *Derpt* in *Eſtland*, made himſelf Maſter of this Iſland and ſome other pieces, which, dying without Iſſue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it ſelf, it was firſt under the *Levoni* and *Eſtii*, two *German* Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the People of *Eſtlanders* or *Eſtones*. Diſtracted into many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Chriſtian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was ſaid. *Meinard* their firſt Biſhop being dead, and *Berthold* his Succeſſors ſlain by ſuch of the people as had not yet received the Goſpel; the Knights of the Port-glaive, or the Short-Sword, were ſent hither to defend the Preachers and the Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themſelves too weak to effect the buſineſs, they united with the Order of *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia*, to whom from that time forwards they became ſubordinate; the great Maſter of *Livonia* acknowledging him of *Pruſſia* for his Superior. Theſe Knights continued Maſters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinions of *Luther*, *Anno* 1528) then quarrelling with the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, of the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, becauſe he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to ſecure his own Eſtate was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Muſcovite*, who had taken from them almoſt all their Country, they were fain to put themſelves under the Protection of *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Furſtenburg*, the Great Maſter being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Moſcovite*, *Gothardus* his Succeſſor (following the example of *Albert* the Great Maſter of *Pruſſia*) tranſacted with the ſaid *Sigiſmund* for the whole Eſtate, which he ſurrendred to his uſe in the Caſtle of *Riga*, *March* 5. 1562, together with his Croſs, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperors which concerned the ſame, as alſo the Keys of the City and Caſtle of *Riga*, the Office of Great Maſter, the Rights of Coinage, and all the Powers and Priviledges appertaining to it; receiving back again from *Ratzivil*, the King's Commiſſioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever, as before is ſaid. By this Tranſaction the Kings of *Pole* became Maſters of *Lieſland*, and were more abſolutely ſetled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland* and *John Vaſiliwich* the Great Duke of *Moſcovie*, who in the end ſurrendred all his Claim therein to the ſaid *Stephen* and his Succeſſors, *Anno* 1582, reſerving only ſome few Towns on the Eaſtern Borders: the *Danes* and *Swethlanders* taking occaſion by their Troubles to impatronize themſelves of *Narva*, *Rivallia*, *Oſel*, and ſome other pieces.

Mr. *Meril*, Secretary to the Earl of *Carliſle*, in his Embaſſie into *Muſcovy* in the year 1663, ſaith p. 332, That *Livonia* is ſo deſolate, that in 60 Leagues that they paſs'd from *Nihuiſen* to *Riga*, they found only two or three Towns, and they remarkable for nothing but their Antiquity. Though it is ſufficiently fertile in Graſs and Corn, and full of Foreſts and Lakes. The Inhabitants are more Blockiſh and Barbarous than the *Muſcovites*, but in their Habits and Caps like them, their Language is as unpleaſant as their Behaviour and manner of Converſe, and they carry upon their Foreheads all the Tokens of a Savage and Unciviliz'd Nature, and are perfectly Slaves to the *Swedes*, they profeſs the *Lutheran* Religion, but are ſo well pleaſed with the Pagan Superſtition, that it is thought they are only outſide Chriſtians. *Olearius* tells us, that as they were converted more by force than Arguments, they look upon the *Germans* as injurious intruders, who have wrongfully diſpoſſeſſed them of their Country, and hate them and the Chriſtian Religion for their ſake, as far as they durſt ſhew it.

2. SAMOGITIA.

SAMOGITIA is a ſmall Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lituania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lituania* on the Eaſt and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the Weſt: in length extending 50 miles from Eaſt to Weſt, but not of an anſwerable breadth. It is ſo called from the lowlineſs of the ſituation, (the word *Samogits* in the Language of the Inhabitants ſignifying *terram inferiorem*, or the *Low-lands*) by the *Moſcovite* in the ſame ſenſe called *Samotzkaſelma*. This lowlineſs of ſituation makes it very watery, and almoſt continually frozen: but withal it hath many Foreſts, which yield unto the people abundance of Honey, better, more pleaſing to the taſte, and leſs mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are ſuppoſed to be of the *Saxon* Race, of a good Stature, well ſet, bold, and apt for War; but withal boiſterious, rude and barbarous: Chriſtians in general, but many of them do ſtill retain their old Idotries; nouriſhing amongſt them a kind of four-footed Serpents, about three handfuls in length, which they worſhip as their Houſhold-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repaſt: and if any Miſchance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed preſently to ſome want of due obſervance of theſe ugly Creatures. They are naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries, and frequently abuſed (as for the moſt part ſuch people are) by Diabolical Illuſions. Nay, they which profeſs the name of *Chriſt* are ſo ill inſtructed, that they uſe to marry many Wives, without conſideration of Blood or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brothers Widow, and not unuſual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not ſo much as heard of in S. *Paul*'s time among the Gentiles.) They have ſome Cuſtoms alſo as unprofitable as theſe are heatheniſh; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Muſcovie*, with Spades or Sticks. And when one of their Governors, obſerving the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them the uſe of the Plough; it fortuned that for two or three years, either by the indiſpoſition of the Weather, or ſome other Accident, they had not ſo much Corn as they uſed to have. Which want the people attributing to the uſe of the Plough, *Nec quicquam aliud in cauſa eſſe putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cauſe of it, grew ſo much incenſed, that the Governor fearing ſome Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like to that of the preſent *Iriſh*, in ploughing with their Horſes tails, ſpoken of before. So pertinacious for the moſt part are ignorant and ſuperſtitious people, in ſtanding to their ancient Cuſtoms, tho' abſurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houſes for the generality being poor and low, covered with Straw or Dirt, with an Hole open in the Roof to let in the light. The principal of thoſe they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are, 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Swiote*; 2. *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Lituania*: Subject, when that was ſo, to the Kings of *Ruſſia*, Converted when that was to the Chriſtian Faith, and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. *LITVANIA*.

LITVANIA hath on the Eaſt the Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt *Pruſſia*, *Maſſovia* and *Poland*, on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Volhinia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Lituus* the Ceremonial ſtaff, uſed anciently by the Augurs in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Goſpel, were called *Lituani*; but this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it ſhould be peopled by ſome baniſhed *Italians*, firſt named *Italia*, then *Litalia*, and after, by a moſt unlikely Corruption; come to *Lithania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have.

The Country for the moſt part is full of Moors, Foreſts, ſome great Lakes like a Sea for bigneſs, and many navigable Rivers; which frozen over in the Winter make the ways more travellable at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in moſt places is exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have ſome abundance) to be ſeldom ripe, and other Fruits of the Earth to come ſlowly forward. Their Foreſts yield them Bugles, Ermines, Sables, Deer, wild Horſes, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of Cattle is leſs here, and of ſmaller ſtature, then it is in *Germany*. Theſe Foreſts alſo are the Store-houſe out of which the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* furniſh themſelves with Timber, both for Ships and Building, returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other Neceſſaries which are wanting here.

The People anciently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods; nouriſhing the laſt in their houſes, and keeping the other continually burning; the Prieſts and Miniſters of the Temple always adding Fewel, that it might not fail. The *Veſtal* Fire was not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater Ceremony. To this God, whom they called *Diſhpan*, or the *Lord of the Smoak*, they uſed to ſacrifice young Pullets, to the other, their Cocks. The ſeed of this Idolatry is ſo implanted in them, that it is ſaid, that in a Village of the King's called *Lovaniski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worſhip Serpents. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the Chriſtian Faith *Anno* 1386, they yet retained ſuch Cuſtoms as are inconſiſtent with Chriſtianity; marrying, unmarrying, when, and as often as they pleaſe; no Bond being ſo ſoon cancell'd as that of Matrimony. For a married man to uſe the Body of an Harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious Crime: but for the Wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers is a thing ſo ordinary and unblamable, that their Husbands call them their Coadjutors, and prize them far above the reſt of their Acquaintance. The common people are in a miſerable Servitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occaſion; yet muſt not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a Crime deſerving death, he muſt hang himſelf as ſoon as the Sentence is ſignified to him; or elſe is beaten and tormented in ſo cruel a manner, that Death at laſt is looked on as a better Life.

The Country is divided into ten parts or Provinces, ſubject unto the Juriſdiction of ſo many *Palatines*; that is to ſay, the *Palatine* of 1. *Vilna*, 2. *Trock*, 3. *Minsko*, 4. *Novogrod*, 5. *Breſtia*, 6. *Volhinia*, 7. *Kiovia*, 8. *Mieſlaw*, 9. *Vitebſco*, 10. *Polotzkie*. But *Novogrod* and *Polotzkie* being conquered by the Great Duke of *Moſcovie*, and added unto that Eſtate, and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, not depending of it; the remaining number is but ſeven, moſt of them taking names from their Principal Towns. The chief of thoſe, and others which deſerve place here are, 1. *Vilna*, a Biſhops See, equal in bigneſs to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; ſo called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is ſeated; built there in the year 1305 by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of theſe parts; well walled but the Gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by Foreign Merchants, eſpecially by thoſe that drive the Trade of *Moſcovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief Ornaments of the City. They have in it alſo ſome Churches built of Stone, (but the moſt of Wood) the Principal whereof is the Monaſtery of S. *Bernard*, which is a very comely Structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilenski*, the *Dutch Die Wilde*. It is ſituate in the very heart of the Country, the longeſt Day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the moſt Southern parts of the Country it is but 16, and in the moſt Northern not fully 18. This place was made an Univerſity in the year 1579. It was burnt in 1610, but built after this more Nobly than before, in 1655. it was taken by the *Ruſs* and miſerably ſack'd; but in the year 1660, it was recovered out of their hands by the *Poles*. 2. *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, ſituate on the *Nieper* or *Boryſthenes*, where the River *Deſna* falls into it: heretofore a beautiful and moſt ſtately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which ſome remain unto this day; the Ruines of the reſt to be traced out amongſt Shrubs and Buſhes, the receptacles of wild Beaſts. The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Ruſſian* Empire, containing alſo under his Juriſdiction the Countries of *Walachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Ruſſia* in *Poland*. But being deſtroyed by *Bathu* or *Boydo* the *Tartarian*, in the Conqueſt of theſe parts by that People, it never could come near its former Luſtre: yet ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his Metropolitan, and conſequently is of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. This City was built by *Kio*, a *Ruſs*, about the year of Chriſt 861, and became the Capital of *Ruſſia*, in 1615 it was taken and burnt by the *Tartars*; in 1651 the *Poles* took it, but the *Coſſacks* Mortgaged it to the *Ruſs*, who are in that Right at this day poſſeſs'd of it, which Right was confirm'd by the Treaty in 1686. 3. *Grodno*, on the River *Chronus*, the chief Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. This City was built in 1585, by that Prince who died in it ſoon after. The *Ruſs* took it in 1655, but it is ſince return'd under the *Poles* and is frequently honoured with the Diets of that Kingdom. 4. *Grumwald*, more memorable for the Great Defeat given near it, by *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania* and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province; ſo confident of their Succeſs in the undertaking, that they brought with them abundance of Chains and Torches; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Chriſtian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Soldiers ſo tamed their Pride, that he ſlew 40000 of them; ſo that they never re-

recovered of that Blow whilſt their Order ſtood. 5. *Pinsko*, in the Palatinate of *Brzeſt*. 6. *Klow*, reckoned a Country of it ſelf. And, 7. *Striſſin*, Fortified with a Caſtle; both under the Palatine of *Mieſlaw*. The reſt of the chief Towns may be known by the Palatinates which they give their Names to, but not elſe obſervable.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorſi*, *Pagarini*, *Savari*, Tribes of the *Sarmatæ Europæi*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became ſubject to the Kings of *Ruſſia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvill*, then their Prince, (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Ruſſians*) withdrew himſelf from their Command; as did alſo many other of the Conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Chriſtian, was by Pope *Innocent* the Third honoured with the Title of a King; but returning again unto his Vomit, he loſt that Title. In the end, *Anno* 1386, *Jagello*, Duke of *Lituania*, marrying with *Heguidis*, Queen of *Poland*, was upon three Conditions choſen King of that Realm. 1. That he ſhould immediately receive the Chriſtian Faith. 2. That he ſhould draw all his Subjects to the ſame Belief. And 3. That he ſhould unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of the two theſe firſt were performed without any delay, though the ſecond not without ſome difficulty, the People being obſtinate in their old Idolatry, eſpecially in the Religious conceit they had of high Trees, which to cut down was held both unſafe and impious. They could not be weaned from this conceit, till by the Authority of the King their loftieſt Trees were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they ſaw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of thoſe whom he employed in that ſervice, *Regis mandato & autoritati cedere cœperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his Commands, and generally received the Goſpel, and were baptized. In the laſt point there was a longer time of deliberation: For the Princes of the Houſe of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themſelves of their Patrimonial Eſtate, which was Hereditary unto their Poſterity, and to ſubject it to the Election of the *Polanders*, in which it was poſſible the Princes of their Family might be pretermitted, deferred the accompliſhment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Litnanians* would revolt if they went about it. But *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus*, in whoſe Perſon the Male-iſſue of *Jagello* failed, foreſeeing what Diviſions might enſue after his deceaſe, and fearing that the *Muſcovites* would renew their old Pretenſions, united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the Biſhops, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chaſtellans* by him eſtabliſhed, ſhould have their Place and Suffrage in the great Council of *Poland*, power in the chuſing of the King, and all other Privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that it is accounted a chief Member of that Body politick; ſubject to thoſe Corruptions, Changes and Innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting thoſe parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece*, or *Moſco*, adhering pertinaciouſly to the Rites thereof.

4. *VOLHINIA.*

VOLHINIA, by ſome accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania* (as once it was) but by others a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, is bounded on the North and Eaſt with *Lituania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the Weſt with *Ruſſia Nigra* and *Podlaſſia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who, dwelling on the Banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Country, calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at laſt unto *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds. This Country extends from Eaſt to Weſt 450 *German* Miles, and in breadth 100. It has been miſerably haraſs'd of late years by the Rebellious *Coſſacks* and the *Ruſs*. *Hofman*.

The Country yields good plenty both of Grain and Fruits, Pools which abound with very good Fiſh, Foreſts which do afford them ſtore of Game and Honey, and much good Paſturage for their Cattel. The People are of the ſame Nature with the *Lituanians*, but more ſtrong and warlike, and better weaned from their old Superſtitions and heatheniſh Cuſtoms than the others are. They are of the ſame Language and Religion with thoſe of *Ruſſia*, to which, together with the reſt of *Lituania*, it did once belong. It is divided commonly into three Parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it: that is to ſay. 1. *Luske*, in *Latin* called *Luceoria*, a Town of above 1000 Families, where 127 only (in the time of my Author) were of the *Romiſh* Religion, the reſidue being *Ruſſians*, *Græcians*, and ſome *Arminians*. The Seat and Reſidence of two Biſhops, of which one, being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbiſhop of *Lemburg* in *Ruſſia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece* have alſo a Biſhop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his Metropolitan. 2. *Volodomir*, a Biſhop's See alſo, of the ſame condition. 3. *Keromenze*, which (as the reſt) hath under it many fair Towns and Caſtles, beſides large Villages. The whole was once part of *Lituania*, as before was ſaid; but of late diſmembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State diſtinct: but ſo, that the greateſt part of it is immediately ſubject to the Duke of *Oſtrogoye* who is ſaid to have 4000 Feudataries in his Country; the greateſt Prince of thoſe who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. *PODOLIA.*

PODOLIA hath on the North *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the South *Moldavia*, from which it is parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Neiſter*; on the Weſt *Ruſſia Nigra*; extending Eaſtward through vaſt uninhabited Countries as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reaſon of the name I find no where gueſſed at. The People are for the moſt part of the ſame Nature and Original with the *Ruſſians*, to whoſe Empire it formerly belonged alſo, till gained (if ſuch a Subjection as they give the King may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at ſuch time as the *Ruſſes* were inthralled to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country is generally ſo Fertile, that the Husbandman is accuſtomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one Ploughing for three years togeteer; the Country-man being put to no farther trouble, than at the end of the firſt and ſecond years to ſhake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which ſo falls ſerving as Seed for the next year following. The Meadow-ground is ſo ſtrangely rich and luxuriant, and the Graſs ſo high, that a Man can hardly ſee the Heads or Horns of his Cattel; of ſo ſwift a growth, that in three days it will cover a Rod which is thrown into it, and in few more ſo hide a Plough, that it is not an eaſie work to find it. If theſe things ſeem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go ſo far to diſprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the Miracle, the Ground is in moſt places ſo hard and ſtony, that there needs ſix yoke of Oxen to break it up; to the great toil both of the Cattel and the Men. It is alſo ſaid that in this Country there are great Flocks of Sheep, many Herds of Oxen, abundance of wild Beaſts, and great ſtore of Honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things neceſſary, the Country for the moſt part, eſpecially towards the Eaſt, is but meanly inhabited, by reaſon of the frequent Incurſions of the *Tartars*, bordering next unto it, who have ſo waſted it in times paſt, and thereby ſo diſcouraged the People from Building, Planting, and all other works of Peace and Husbandry, that in ſo large and rich a Country there is nothing to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered Houſes, few Villages, and not above five Towns of Note, *viz.* 1. *Orzahow*, at the Influx of the *Boryſthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2. *Vaſzow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3. *Braclaw*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4. *Camienciez*, on the Borders of *Ruſſia Nigra*, built by ſome divine Hand, as it were, amongſt the Precipices of high and inacceſſible Rocks, and ſo well fortified withal, that it is impregnable; as is apparent by the many and great Repulſes which the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians* have received before it, with much ſhame and loſs. This City is a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Lemburg*, and ſtands upon the River *Smotrezyck*, which a little lower falls into the *Nieſter*, 15 *Poliſh* Miles from *Bar* to the Weſt, and 70 from *Kiovia*, and 30 from *Lemburg* to the South-Eaſt, and 80 from *Warſhaw*, and 170 from *Conſtantinople*. In the year 1669 it ſuffered very much by Fire, and in the year 1672 was beſieged and taken by the *Turks*, the *Poles* being then engaged in a Civil War, and the Town not in a condition to defend it ſelf. It has been Blockaded three years by the *Poles*, but the *Turks* have frequently relieved it, and ſeem to take more care of it than of any of their Frontier Places. In the year 1687 it was Bombed by Prince *James*, eldeſt Son to the Late King of *Poland*, and might be reduced if the *Poles* were not very much divided and very careleſs. 5. *Lemburg*, remarkable for the Sawces or Salt-meats which they ſend thence into other Countries. It is a great and populous City, and was made an Archbiſhop's See inſtead of *Halitz*, in the year 1361. It is alſo ſtrongly Walled, and has two Caſtles, one within the Town, and the other without: It was built by *Leo* Duke of *Ruſſia* about the year 1280. In 1648 it was beſieged in vain by the *Coſſacks*: In 1672 it was taken by the *Turks*, and recovered the next year by the *Poles*. The former Fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland* (with which it was incorporated long ſince) we ſhall ſee anon.

6. *RVSSIA NIGRA.*

RVSSIA NIGRA hath on the Eaſt *Volhinia Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the Weſt *Maſſovia*; and *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; on the North *Lituania* and *Podlaſſia*; and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called alſo *Roxolania*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief People of *Sarmatia Europæa*, and by ſome *Ruthenia*: but generally *Ruſſia*, from the *Roſſi* ſpoken of before in the Empire of *Ruſſia*, who ſpread themſelves over all theſe parts. Some hold that it was firſt called *Roſſeia*, which ſignifieth in the *Sclavonian* Language a *ſcattered Nation*, or a Nation diſſeminated and diſperſed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that ſpeak the *Sclavonian* Tongue, and followed the Religion and the Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the Frozen Sea to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This and a greater Tract of Ground I grant to have been heretofore poſſeſſed by divers Nations under the name of *Sclavonians*; a very conſiderable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Ruſſia*, given at firſt to all the *Ruſſian* Empire, diſtinguiſhed now into *Ruſſia Alba* and *Ruſſia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vote, conceiving that it came from the *Roſſi*, an *Armenian* People, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864, or thereabouts, attempting the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and after placed themſelves on the Northern Banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Sclavonians* to the North and Eaſt, till they had made themſelves Maſters of all *Ruſſia Alba*, *Lituania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Ruſſia Nigra*. Diſtinguiſhed from the former by the adjunct of *Nigra*, after the deſtruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*, either from the colour of their Garments, or their black and more Southernly Complexion. In which regard it is called alſo *Ruſſia Meredionalis*, or the Southern *Ruſſia*.

The Country is generally Fruitful, abounding in Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: ſuch ſtore of Bees, that they breed not only in Hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of Fiſh, more naturally ſpawning here than in other places, inſomuch that if a Pond be digged, and ſpring accordingly, the Fiſh will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other Waters. The greateſt want hereof is Wine, either ſupplied with Mede, or from other places. And it is ſaid that in the Territory of *Chelm* the Branches of the Pine-Trees, left upon the Ground for three years together, will be converted into Stone.

The People are generally valiant, and ſo ſtrong of Body that they uſe Bows of twelve Foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the King of *Poland* to ſend Colonies of natural *Polonians* into moſt parts of the Country, inſomuch as moſt of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that Extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the Peaſants and the Original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Chelm*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed that the Branches of Pine-Trees, left upon the Ground for three years together, are converted to Stone. 2. *Premiſlen*. 3. *Halitx*. 4. *Belzo*. 5. *Grodeck*. And 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Muſcovite*; a Town of great Traffick, and an Archbiſhop's See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Moſco* hath here alſo an Archbiſhop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it ſelf, and all *Ruſſia* generally, (as before was ſaid) which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are alſo in this City ſome *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Biſhop, and ſome Prieſts of their own Religion. The Account I have given of *Lemburg* in *Podolia* belong to this place, our Author having twice mentioned the ſame place.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Ruſſian* Empire, hath been ſaid already. Diſmembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governors, ſubject and tributary unto thoſe *Barbarians*: as had alſo *Podolia*, its next Neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by ſtrong hand and the power of Garriſons. But being upon all occaſions apt to revolt, by reaſon of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom they were treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were aſſured unto the State, by giving the ſame Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made Fellow-Members of that Commonwealth. The Act of *Ladiſlaus* the ſixth, the Son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who much augmented their Forces, and aſſured their Eſtates, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome* and the Privileges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces: and was imitated by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus* and *Stephen*, his Succeſſors in their incorporating of *Pruſſia*, *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Lituania*, on the Weſt with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with *Pruſſia* and *Podlaſſia*, on the South with *Ruſſia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maſſo*, one of the Dukes hereof, who in the year 1045, being vanquiſhed by *Caſimir* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Pruſſia* and there unfortunately died. This Province was effectually united to *Poland*, under *Sigiſmund* the firſt, in the year 1526.

The Country is large, and for the moſt part full of Woods, where they find ſtore of Bugles and wild Bulls. The people are ſtrong, valiant and couragious in War; differing little from the *Polonians* in Speech, Manners, or Apparel, ſave that they uſe a kind of Whiſtling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it are, 1. *Warſaw*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the Reſidence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the beſt Mede or Metheglin. This City has been eſteemed the Capital of *Poland*, ever ſince *Sigiſmund* 3. built in it a place for his Succeſſors, by which means it is become one of the moſt Populous, Rich, and Potent Cities of that Kingdom. Yet in the year 1655, it was taken by the *Swedes*, but the next year it was recovered by the *Poles*, and the *Swediſh* Garriſon driven out. *John Demetrius Suiſcius* Great Duke of *Ruſſia*, who was taken Priſoner by the *Poles*, and died in Captivity, lies Buried in a ſmall Chappel here. See below in *Poland*, properly ſo call'd. 2. *Czirsko*, 3. *Poltowskie*. 4. *Gadziek*, 5. *Lozara*, 6. *Droic* the Seat of a Palatine, but not elſe obſervable.

This Province was once ſubject to Princes of its own, not ſubject or ſubordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Maſſo* was one, from whom it was named *Maſſovia*. In the year 1246 and 1260, being ſtrangely waſted and diſtreſſed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lituania*, they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Polanders*; by whom they were made the Portion of the ſecond Son of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Staniſlaus*, the two laſt Dukes hereof, dying without Iſſue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, and became incordorate to that Crown, and priviledged in the Election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, *Anno* 1526. as is above obſerved.

8. PODLASSIA.

PODLASSIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Volhinia*, on the Weſt with *Pruſſia*, on the North with *Lituania*, and on the South with *Maſſovia* and *Ruſſia Nigra*. The reaſon of the name I know not. The Country differs not much from thoſe before: the people being a mixt generation of *Ruſſes*, *Muſcovites* and *Polonians*, partake a little of the Manners and Garb of thoſe ſeveral Nations from which they lineally are deſcended.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Bielsko*, 2. *Bransko*, 3. *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tycockzyn*, ſtrongly fortified, and well garriſoned, as being the place where the King's Treaſures are kept. 5. *Knyſſin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleaſant Park, wherein are ſtore of wild Beaſts for Hunting, and Fiſh-ponds very well repleniſhed. 6. *Narew*, 7. *Vaſilkow*, and 8. *Auguſtow*, a very ſtrong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus*, and by him thus named, *Anno* 1569, at what time he diſmembred this Province from *Lituania*, to which before it appertained, uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

†

9. PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Lituania* and *Podlaſſia*, on the Weſt with *Pomerania* cut off from it by the *Viſtula*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with *Poland* and *Maſſovia*. Called firſt *Boruſſia*, from the *Boruſſi*, who ſubdued it, (of whom more anon) which by an eaſie alteration was changed into *Pruſſia*, by which name it is ſtill called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Dantzick* in the Weſt, to *Labiaw* on the Mouth of the *Maillank*, Eaſt, for the ſpace of 50 *Poliſh* miles; and from *Torne*, bordering on *Maſſovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lituania*, 58 miles of the ſame meaſure. The Air thereof is very mild and temperate, the Soil both profitable and pleaſant; full of *Lakes* and Rivers ſtored with Fiſh, plentiful of Corn and other Neceſſaries, and well clad with Foreſts, which yield them Game for Hunting, rich Skins for profit, and abundance of Honey; of which laſt they make Mede for their own uſe, (their ordinary Drink where there is no Wine) and ſell the reſt unto the Merchant. But the Commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours is their plenty of Amber, which is the juice of a Stone which groweth like a Coral in a Mountain of theſe *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and ſhunned by Marriners three Leagues off, for fear of Shipwrack; the Mountain is reaſonable large, about 50 yards high of *Engliſh* meaſure. And when any Tempeſt riſeth in theſe Northern Seas, eſpecially in *September* and *December*, the Liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and caſt into divers Havens, and on divers Coaſts of this Country, and ſometimes upon thoſe of *Sweden* and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth moſt, whence they take up firſt ſome ſtore of Weeds, after that this Liquor, which being taken out of the water hardeneth like to Coral. Beſides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting Straws and Iron, as the Adamant doth, burning like Pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for ſtopping Bloud, all kind of Agues, Falling-ſickneſs; Dropſies, Stone, Cholick, weakneſs of Stomack, Head-ach, and the Yellow-jaundies.

The people, eſpecially the Gentry, deſcend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature; having more Art and Induſtry then the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient Cuſtoms. They were Idolaters for long time together, converted firſt unto the Faith in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond, by whoſe ſetting on they were ſubdued by the Order of the *Dutch* Knights, *Anno* 1215, and either won or forced to the Chriſtian Faith. As Chriſtians, governed ſince the Plantation of the Goſpel by the Biſhops of *Culm*, *Warmia*, *Sambia*, and *Pomeſan*, Suffragans to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*; under whom thoſe parts do ſtill continue which have not yet forſaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other ſeparate Congregations diſtinct from them, having their own Forms both of Doctrine and Diſcipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this is, both for Lakes and Rivers: ſome of the Lakes being ſeven *Dutch* miles in compaſs, and well ſtored with Fiſh. The Rivers are 12 in number; that is to ſay, 1. the *Viſtula*. 2. *Chronus*. 3. *Nogat*. 4. *Elbing*. 5. *Vaſara*. 6. *Paſſaria*. 7. *Alla*. 8. *Pregel*. 9. *Oſſa*. 10. *Drebnicz*. 11. *Lica*, and 12. *Lavia*, all plentifully ſtored with Fiſh; beſides a large Sea-Coaſt both for Trade and Fiſhing no ſmall Commodity to the Natives.

The Country formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (ſo they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the induſtry of the *Dutch* Knights ſo adorned and beautified, (after they had once brought it under their Obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Caſtles and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increaſed in theſe later times, hath made it the moſt flouriſhing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of theſe Knights being ſuppreſſed in this Country by an Agreement betwixt *Sigiſmund* the firſt, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, the laſt great Maſter of the Order; both Town and Country are divided between the Succeſſors of the ſaid *Albert*, as Dukes of *Pruſſia*, and of the ſaid *Sigiſmund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or Diviſions of *Hogerland*, *Warmia*, *Galindia*, *Michelow*, *Culmigeria*, with the City of *Marienburgh*, the Soveraignty of *Dantzick* and *Melving*, with the whole Country of *Pomerellia*, lying on the Weſt ſide of the *Viſtula*, being allotted to the King; the reſidue, containing the Diviſions of *Schalavenia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomeſania*, (except the City and Territory of *Marienburg*) to the Dukes of *Pruſſia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke are, 1. *Memel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the Commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interpoſing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Koningsberg*, as the *Dutch*, *Regimont* as the *French*, and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; ſituate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulf or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch* Knights in the year 1260, and made an Univerſity by *Albert* the firſt Duke hereof 1225, the Seat and principal Reſidence of his Succeſſors; as alſo of the Biſhop of *Sambia*; in *Latine* called *Sambienſis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch* Knights, *Anno* 1279. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South-ſide of that Bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I gueſs, by ſome of the Great Maſters of that Family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the fartheſt Town of note towards *Lituania*. 6. *Angersburg*, in *Schalavonia*; as was alſo *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg*, in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ortelsburg*, in *Galindia*: of which little memorable. 9. *Marienwerder*, the fartheſt of the Duke's Eſtate towards the *Viſtula*, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Pomeſan*. Beſides which there are reckoned in this Diviſion 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Caſtles, though not of much obſervation in the courſe of Story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are, 1. *Braunſberg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea which they call *Friſch-Haſſe*; a Town of good Trade by reaſon of the commodious Haven, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frawenberg*, on the ſame Bay, not far from *Braunsberg*. 3. *Reſel*, the chief Town of the Diocefs and Dukedom of *Warmia*. 4. *Strasburg*, in *Michelow*, confining on *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called, at the Siege whereof by *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1628, *Elias Trype*, one of the Engineers of that King, found out the uſe of Leathern Ordnance, which afterwards did that King great ſervice in the Wars of *Germany*. 5. *Culm*, on the River *Viſtula*, a Biſhop's See. 6. *Marienburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch* Knights, *Anno* 1302, and made the Seat of the great Maſters of their order, tranſlated firſt from *Ptolemais* or *Acon* in *Syria* to the City of *Venice*, from thence to *Marpurg*, and at laſt to this place by *Siſride* the twelfth Great Maſter of it, whoſe conſtant Reſidence in this Town occaſioned the Biſhop of *Culm* to remove thither alſo. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of thoſe which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by him ſo well garriſoned, and furniſhed with ſuch ſtore of Victuals, Ammunition and other Neceſſaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a Six years Siege. But it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in leſs ſpace then ſo many months in 1625; being on the ſetling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns rendered again unto the King of *Poland* in 1655. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleaſant Iſland made by the *Nogat* and the *Weyſſel*, for the fertility of the Soil, and the great number of Houſes, Villages, and People not equalled (for the quantity of it) in all this Country.

To this part alſo belongeth the fair port of *Elbing*, (or *Melving*, as *Maginus* calls it) ſituate on the Bay of the *Baltick* called *Friſch-Haſſe*; ſpoken of before, not far from a Fiſhful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants; of great reſort from other Nations, and much frequented by the *Engliſh* Merchants who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*: a ſmall, but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed after the manner of a free Eſtate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like ſort as *Dantzick* alſo is, of which more anon. The Town of *Elbing* was built in the year 1239, by the Order, in 1454 it withdrew from them, and put it ſelf under the Protection of the King of *Poland*, in 1492 an Univerſity was opened here, in 1629 it was taken by the *Swedes*, in 1655 it was reſtored to the *Poles* by Treaty, the greateſt part of its Wealth was occaſioned by the Seige of *Dantzick*, about the year 1626, when the *Engliſh* removed the Staple hither from *Dantzick*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the moſt potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coaſts of the *Baltick* from them by *Ptolomy* called *Sinus Venedicus*: containing under them the *Githones*, *Phini*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungudiones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land the *Sodini* and *Galindæ*, whoſe name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth ſtill retain. But great and potent though they were, they were ſubdued by the *Boruſſi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphæan* Mountains, who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Weſtern parts, and vanquiſhed the *Venedi*, and thoſe other Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, which they called *Boruſſia*, now by us named *Pruſſia*. By *Venedus*, one of their Princes, having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into twelve Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every Son; continuing by that means diſtracted into divers petit Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, ſent hither by *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1215, by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michelow*, and the greateſt part of *Nadravia*, were laid waſt and deſolate: the reſt ſubmitted to their power, and received the Goſpel. After this it continued ſubject to this Order of Knights till the year 1419, when, weary of their Extortion and the continual change of Maſters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their Obedience: ſeconded by the yielding up of *Marienburg*, with many other Towns and Caſtles, ſold to King *Caſimir* by the Garriſon-Soldiers, *Anno* 1457, for 476000 Florens. But the Knights diſdaining to be ſo dealt withal, and refuſing to ſwear Allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open War, which was managed with variable Succeſs on both ſides; *Ludovicus*, the then Great Maſter, being ſo ſucceſsful at the firſt, that he once Beat the King out of the Field, routed his whole Army, ſlew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: nor was he vanquiſhed at laſt, but by the Treachery and Rebellion of his own people. In the end, wearied and worn out on both ſides by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, then Great Maſter, having for 14 years together couragiouſly maintained the Honour of his Order, and for the four laſt years importuned in vain the Aſſiſtance of the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, began to think of ſome Expedient to compound the buſineſs. Being inclined to *Luther*'s Doctrines, and willing to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, he ſecretly practiſed with *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland* to end the War to the advantage of both parties. By whom at laſt it was agreed, That *Albert* ſhould relinquiſh his Order, and ſurrender all *Pruſſia* into the hands of the King: That the King, poſſeſſing the Weſtern parts, with the Town of *Marienburg*, and the Soveraignty of *Dansk* and *Melving*, ſhould inveſt *Albert* with the

Title of Duke of *Pruſſia*, eſtating on him and the Heirs of his body the whole Eaſtern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before ſpecified: and finally, that *Albert* and his Heirs ſhould hold the ſaid Eſtate, as Homagers to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Aſſemblies at the King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno* 1525, *Albert*, attired in the compleat habit of Maſter of the *Dutch* Order, preſents himſelf humbly on his knees before *Sigiſmund* at *Cracow*, the King then ſitting on his Throne. The King, raiſing him from the ground, cauſed him to put off thoſe Robes and attire himſelf in a Ducal Habit: which done, an inſtrument was read and publiſhed, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his Body the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, to be held of him and his Succeſſors Kings of *Poland*. An act at which the whole Order were extremely incenſed; but they could not help it, and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were ſome good Lands left, to maintain ſuch of them as had no mind to quit that Military honour; leaving their old Eſtates in *Pruſſia* to the King and the Duke, whoſe Succeſſors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

Dukes of *PRUSSIA.*

1525 1. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Son of *Frederick* Marquiſs of *Onoldsbech*, or *Onsbach*, created Maſter of the Order by the Emperor *Maximilian*, *Anno* 1511, and the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia* by *Sigiſmund*, the firſt of *Poland*, *Anno* 1525, founded the Univerſity of *Koningsburg*, *Anno* 1544.

1568 2. *Albert-Frederick* Son of *Albert* the firſt Duke, married *Mary Elianor*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.

3. *Anne*, Eldeſt Daughter of Duke *Albert-Frederick*, Dutcheſs of *Pruſſia*, brought the Eſtate in Marriage to

4. *John-Sigiſmund*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was confirmed therein by *Sigiſmund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an Eſcheat thereof for want of Heirs-males of the body of *Albert* the firſt Duke.

5. *George-William*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburgh*, in right of his Father, Duke of *Pruſſia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother, and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by Deſcent from *Mary Eleanor* his Grandmother.

1639 6. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William* Marquiſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*; of whoſe Inveſture in the Dukedom of *Pomeren* and other large and goodly Seigniouries we have ſpoken elſewhere.

1688 7. *Frederick-William*, the ſecond Son of the former.

As for the Government of this Province ſtanding thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King; the one being abſolute and uncontroulable in his Eſtates, the other ſubject to the great Council of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, Delegates appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal Juſtice either at *Marienburg* or *Elbing*, do compound the buſineſs: who, together with ſome other of the Dukes nomination, receive all Appeals in which the Duke is interreſſed as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 Ducats yearly.

The Armes thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, membred and crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10. *POMERELLIA.*

POMERELLIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Viſtula*, by it parted from *Pruſſia*, on the South with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the Weſt with the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, of which it was anciently a part, till ſeparated from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland* under this new name. By the *Poles* called *Klein Pommeren*.

The Territory is ſmall, and conſequently not capable of many Towns and Cities of conſideration. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1. *Newenburg*, on the Banks of the *Viſtula*, or *Weſſel*,. 2. *Dirſchaw*, or *Darſaw*, (in *Latine Darſovia*) a well fortified Town and of great importance, at the Siege whereof, *Anno* 1627, *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, received the Order of the Garter. 3. *Dantzick* in *Latine* called *Dantiſcum*, and ſometimes *Gedanum*, ſituate at the mouth of the ſame River alſo, a fair and well-built City, the Houſes for the moſt part of Brick, and the reſt of Stone, raiſed with great beauty and magnificence ſix or ſeven floors high; beautified with a fair Council-houſe for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for diſport and exerciſe. It conſiſteth of three Cities, governed by as many Senates; the one called *Voorſtat*, or the fore City; the ſecond *Altſtat*, or the old City, and the third *Reichſtat*, or the Emperors City: but all incompaſſed with one Wall, and governed by one chief Senate or Common-Council choſen out of all three. A Biſhop's See, and the ſecond in eſteem and rank of all the *Hanſe*-Towns; of ſo great Trade, ſuch a noted Granary of all ſorts of Corn, iſſued from hence to ſupply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 Meaſures of Wheat (beſides other commodities in proportion) are here daily ſold. Heretofore it was reckoned as Imperial, but now as a Free-State, acknowledging the King of *Poland* for their Protectors, to whom they allow many Guſtoms upon their Merchandize, and permit their Officers to remain there for receiving them. The firſt Town in the Kingdom of *Poland* which gave entrance to the Doctrines of *Luther*, *Anno* 1525, but in ſo tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his Opinions depoſed the old Common-Council-men, and created new ones of their own, prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their Ornaments, and ſhamefully abuſed the Prieſts and Religious perſons, aboliſhed the Maſs, and altered all things at their pleaſure. But by the coming of the King they grew ſomewhat quieter, leaving one Convent of Black Friers and two of Nuns, who ſtill enjoy the exerciſe of their Religion. In the year 1454, it firſt ſubmitted to the King of *Poland*, with whom it has had ſeveral Conteſts, particularly in the years 1569, and 1577, 1597. In 1657, it was forced to burn its own Suburbs to prevent their being taken by the *Swedes*, *Olearius* obſerves that the River is ſo ſhallow below this City, that great Ships cannot come up to it; when *Caſimir* King of *Poland* was deſerted by all the World, this City ſtood by him, and was Loyal to him beyond all expectation, as *Bunon* obſerves, who alſo ſaith, *Cluverius* the Great *Geographer*, was a Native of this place.

This Country once a part of the Dukedom of *Pomeren*, was given by *Suantibore*, once Duke thereof, *Anno* 1107, to *Bugiſlaus* his ſecond Son; whoſe Poſterity enjoyed it till the year 1295, when *Meſtevin* 2. dying without Iſſue-male, gave it to *Primiſlaus* Duke of the *Polonians*, whoſe Succeſſors have ever ſince enjoyed it by that Donation. It is called *Pomerellia*, for diſtinction ſake, from the firſt ſeparating of it from the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

II. POLAND.

POLAND, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Maſſovia* and *Podlaſſia*, on the Weſt with *Sileſia* and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, on the North with *Pruſſia* and *Pomerellia*, and on the South with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* Miles, 300 of the ſame Miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is ſaid) from the word *Pole*, ſignifying as much as plain, the Country being plain and level, little ſwelled with Hills.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but ſharp and cold; the Country plain, ſhaded with thick dark Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild Beaſts for Hunting, and of Bees for Honey, which they have here in great abundance, together with ſuch plenty of Grain, but of Rye eſpecially, by reaſon of the continual breaking up of new Grounds gained out of the Foreſts, that it may be called the Granary or Store-houſe of the Weſtern parts of *Europe:* the Grain is ſent down the *Weyſſel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence tranſported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their ſeveral wants.

The Character of the People we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of War they are ſtout and reſolute; ſo forward in giving the Charge and Purſuit of the Enemy, that *John Vaſiliwick*, the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*, comparing them with the Soldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to ſay, that the *Muſcovites wanted a Spur to drive them forwards, and the* Polander *had need of a Bridle to hold them back.* Their Language is the *Sclavonian* Tongue; moſt generally ſpoken alſo in the reſt of the Provinces, but with ſome difference in the Dialect or Pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Greater and the Leſſer *Poland*. The GREATER, lying wholly on the Weſtern ſide of the *Weyſſel*, and ſo accounted anciently as a part of *Germany*, contains nine Diviſions, under the Juriſdiction of nine Palatines of, 1. *Poſna*, 2. *Kaliſch*, 3. *Siradia*, 4. *Lancicia*, 5. *Vladiſlaw*, 6. *Brzeſty*, 7. *Rava*, 8. *Ploczko*, and, 9. *Dobrzin*; each of them ſo called from ſome Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the reſt contained in them, are, 1. *Poſna*, a Biſhop's See, and the principal of the Greater *Poland*, ſeated among the Hills on the River *Warta*; built of Free-Stone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River, but much ſubject unto Inundations, which add much ſtrength unto the place; of great reſort by reaſon of the Marts or Fairs holden twice a year. 2. *Koſcien*, ſituate amongſt Marſhes, and fortified with a double Wall. 3. *Oſtrezow*, bordering on *Sileſia*, begirt with Woods. 4. *Gneſna*, the ancienteſt Town of *Poland*, Founded by *Lechus* their firſt Prince, the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till removed to *Cracow*; ſituate in *Kaliſch*, and by old preſcription the firſt place for Inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*, in regard that here Prince *Boleſlaus*, the firſt King of this Country, received the Regal Diadem at the hands of *Otho* the third. The Town is well walled, and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, by ancient Privilege the Pope's Legate for all *Sarmatia Europaa*, and in the abſence of the King or *Interregnum* the Vicar-general of the Kingdom, having power to Summon the Dyets, to conclude and publiſh their Decrees. 5. *Pietrokow*, a walled Town in the Palatinate or Diviſion of *Siradia*, ſituate on a mooriſh Soil; the place in former times of the General Dyets, ſince removed to *Warſaw*. 6. *Vladiſlaw*, on the *Weyſſel* or *Viſtula*, a Biſhop's See. 7. *Bedgoſt*, a walled a Town on the *Bard*, a Navigable River, conveying the Merchandiſe of theſe parts into the *Viſtula*. 8. *Kruſwick*, in *Brzeſty*, built of Wood, ſtanding on a great Lake named *Gopia*, in the Caſtle whereof *Popielus* the ſecond, Duke of *Poland*, was after a ſtrange manner devoured with Rats ſwarming out of the Lake. 9. *Ploczko*, upon the *Viſtula*, a walled Town, and a Biſhop's See, with a Caſtle to it. 10. *Warſaw*, upon the Banks of the ſame River; of no great note in former times, but of late grown the beſt frequented and moſt traded Town in all the Province: honoured for the moſt part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publick Dyets (removed from *Pietrakow* to the place) and the Tranſaction of all buſineſſes both of Peace and War, which muſt needs draw to it great reſort of all ſorts of People; the fruitfulneſs of the Soil and commodiouſneſs of the Situation rendring it very capable of thoſe publick Meetings. This City is placed above in *Maſſovia*, to which it belongs properly. 11. *Mlawa*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*.

The LESSER *Poland*, lying on the South of the Greater; and divided by the River *Wyeſſel*, comprehendeth only three Diviſions, under the Government of the Palatines of 1. *Cracow*, 2. *Sandomir*, and 3. *Lublin*. Principal Cities of the which are, 1. *Cracow*, upon the *Weyſſel*, (called in *Latin Cracovia*) a Biſhop's See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the Seat of the Prince, and the Sepulchre of the former Kings; by *Ptolomy* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double Wall (of the old Faſhion) a deep Ditch, the Caſtle of *Vanel*, ſituate on the top of an high Rock, and beautified with an Univerſity, or general Study of good Arts and Sciences, opened here in 1364. The Buildings are more fair than elſewhere in *Poland*, of Free-ſtone, and four Stories high; but for the moſt part covered with Shingles, or Tiles of Wood: in the midſt is a large Market-place, in form Quadrangular; and in the middle of that the Common-Council-houſe, about which are many Shops of Merchants. On one ſide of it ſtandeth the Cathedral Church: and on the Eaſt-ſide of the City the Palace Royal, high ſeated on an Hill over-looking both the Town and Country, fair and well built, of Form ſomewhat near a Quadrangle, but lying open to the South without any Buildings above the Wall, affording thereby to the Gallery, being on the North-ſide of the Caſtle, the more excellent Proſpect. The Jeſuits in 1635 procured the Proteſtant Church here to be burnt down, for which the next year after they were baniſhed in the year 1655. This City was taken by the *Swedes*, and recovered by the *Poles* in 1657. This Univerſity is infamouſly Famous for the great number of *Socinians* it has produced. 2. *Lelow*, a walled Town with a Caſtle on the River *Biale*. 3. *Sandomir*, a walled Town with a Caſtle alſo, ſeated on a Hill under which runs the *Viſtula* or *Weyſſel*. 4. *Wiſlicza*, a walled Town amongſt Marſhes, encompaſſed with the River *Nid*. 5. *Lublin*, a walled Town, but more ſtrongly Fortified by the Marſhes and Water with which it is environed; remarkable for three yearly Marts, drawing hither Merchants from moſt parts adjoining, as alſo *Moſcovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, and *Grecians*. The *Jews* inhabiting the greateſt part of the Suburbs, have here their Synagogue; making the Town, eſpecially at the time of thoſe Marts, a medly of all Nations and Religions. This City is not great, but very ſpruce and well built, and is not only the Capital of a Palatinate, but alſo a Biſhop's See. A Synod being held here in the year 1612, the *Socinians* deſired to be admitted to the Communion of the *Calviniſts*, and were rejected, the Jeſuits in the year 1630 burnt their Church which they had in this Town. 6. *Caſimiria*, on the *Weyſſel*, ſo named from the Founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Arii*, *Helverone*, *Elyſii*, and the *Naharvali*, parts of the *Suevi Lygii* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, all of them lying on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Weyſſel*, by conſequence within the Bounds of the ancient *Germany:* the People of all the reſt of the Provinces before deſcribed being of the *Sarmatian* Race, next Neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in Perſons, Cuſtoms, or Conditions. But theſe diſperſed and ſcattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europea*, being united in the common Name of *Sclaves* part of them ſetled in that part which we now call *Poland*, at that time reckoned and accounted of as a part of *Germany*. The time of their firſt coming hither, and the manner of their Government when firſt ſetled here, is not very well known. But for the firſt it is moſt certain, that it was ſometime, and that not long, after the Death of *Mauritius* the Eaſtern Emperor; and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who fled his Country for a Murther, with his Brother *Zechius*, they ſetled into a more conſtant Form of Government than before they did. For *Lechus*, ſeeing his Brother's good ſucceſs in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince; paſſed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as chearfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof, who look'd upon him as a Prince of their own Extraction, and without quarrel or competition ſubmitted themſelves to his Commands, *Anno* 650, or thereabouts. Of this there is good *conſtat* amongſt our Authors. But neither the names or number of his Succeſſors do occur in Story till the time of *Crocus*, the Founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the Legiſlator of this People. After this, the Succeſſion of their Princes and the Succeſs of their Affairs becomes more certain: the Eſtate hereof being much improved by the conqueſt of many *Sarmatian* Countries, all which together conſtitute and make up the Kingdom of *Poland*, ſo called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The ſum of their Affairs is this. The Poſterity of *Crocus* failing in *Popielus* the Second, *Piaſtus* is elected Duke; the Princes from that time forwards becoming Elective, but always with reſpect to the next of Blood. In the time of *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, they received the Goſpel, *Anno* 963. *Boleſlaus*, the Son of *Mieciſlaus*, was the firſt who had the Title of a King, conferred upon him by the Emperor *Otho* the third, about the year 1001, relinquiſhed by *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, and not reſumed again till the time of *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Poſna*, *Anno* 1300, after which it became perpetual. In the Perſon of this *Primiſlaus Pomerellia* is united to the State of *Poland*, *Anno* 1295; in that of *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lituania*, incorporated into this Body as a Member of it in the time of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*. By *Vladiſlaus* the ſixth, Son of *Jagello*, *Podolia*, *Ruſſia Nigra* were alſo added by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Pruſſia* and *Maſſovia*; *Podlaſſia* by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, who alſo took *Volhinia* out of *Lituania*; by *Stephen*, the actual poſſeſſion of the greateſt part of *Livonia*; by *Sigiſmund* the third, a Title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this order.

Dukes and Kings of POLAND.

A. Ch.

694 1. *Lechus* of *Croatia*, the firſt Duke; whoſe Poſterity failing, twelve Palatines were choſen to direct Affairs, and the State became Ariſtocratical.

2. *Crocus*, the Legiſlator of *Poland*.

3. *Lechus* II. Son of *Crocus*.

4. *Venda*, the Daughter of *Crocus*, and Siſter of *Lecus* the ſecond.

5. *Leſcus* I.

6. *Leſcus* II.

7. *Leſcus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the Great.

8. *Popielus*, Son of *Leſcus* the third.

9. *Popielus* II. devoured in moſt horrid manner by Rats and Mice, together with his Wife and Children, the laſt of the Poſterity or Houſe of *Crocus*.

800 10. *Piaſtus*, the firſt Duke elected.

11. *Zemovitus*, Son of *Piaſtus*.

12. *Leſcus* IV. Son of *Zemovitus*.

13. *Nemomyſlaus*, Son of *Leſcus* the 4th.

14. *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Polonians*, Founded the Biſhopricks of *Cracow* and *Gneſna*.

1000 15. *Boleſlaus*, Son of *Mieceſlaus*, the firſt who had the Title of King conferred on him by *Otho* the third.

1025 16. *Mieceſlaus* II. Son of *Boleſlaus*.

1041 17. *Caſimir*, Son of *Mieceſlaus*.

1059 18. *Boleſlaus* II. Son of *Caſimir*, depoſed and died an Exile in *Hungary*.

1082 19. *Vladiſlaus*, Brother of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond, abandoned the Title of King, and only uſed that of Prince or Duke.

1203 20. *Boleſlaus* III. Son of *Vladiſlaus*, Duke of *Poland*.

1140 21. *Vladiſlaus* II. Son of *Boleſlaus* the 3d, outed by his Brethren, and at laſt eſtated in *Sileſia*, united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.

1146 22. *Boleſlaus* IV. Brother of *Vladiſlaus* the ſecond.

1174 23. *Mieceſlaus* III. Brother of *Boleſlaus* and *Vladiſlaus*, depoſed by his Brother *Caſimir*.

1178 24. *Caſimir* II. Brother of the three laſt Princes.

1195 25. *Leſcus* V. Son of *Caſimir* the ſecond, depoſed by *Mieceſlaus* the third.

1203 26. *Vladiſlaus* III. Son of *Mieceſlaus* the third, depoſed by *Leſcus* the 5th, who again ſeiz'd on the Eſtate.

1243 27. *Boleſlaus* V. ſirnamed *Pudicius*.

1280 28. *Leſcus* VI. ſirnamed *Niger*, the adopted Son of *Boleſlaus*, and his Couſin-german once removed; after whoſe death, *Anno* 1289, the Eſtate, being diſtracted into many Factions, was for ſome time without a Prince, ſetled at laſt on

1295 29. *Primiſlaus*, ſirnamed *Poſthumus*, Duke of *Poſna*, who again aſſumed the name of King, continued ever ſince by his Succeſſors.

1296 30. *Vladiſlaus* IV. ſirnamed *Locticus*, Brother of *Leſcus Niger*, outed by *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1300; after whoſe Death, *Anno* 1306, he reſumed the Eſtate.

1333 31. *Caſimir* III. ſirnamed the Great, Son of *Vladiſlaus* the 4th, the firſt Eſtabliſher of the Kingdom after all thoſe Troubles, died without Iſſue.

1371 32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, Nephew or Grandſon to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the Siſter of *Caſimir*.

1383 33. *Heduigis*, the youngeſt Daughter of *Lewis*, her eldeſt Siſter *Mary* ſucceeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, choſen Queen of *Poland*; married to *Jagello*, Duke of *Lituania*, Chriſtened, and called *Vladiſlaus* the 5th.

1386 34. *Vladiſlaus* V. Duke of *Lituania*, elected King upon his Marriage with Queen *Heduigis*.

1435 35. *Vladiſlaus* VI. Son of *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the fifth, by *Sophia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*, King of *Hungary* alſo; ſlain at the Battel of *Varna* by *Amurath* the ſecond, King of the *Turks*, and without Iſſue.

1447 36. *Caſimir* IV. Brother of *Vladiſlaus*, firſt brought the Knights of *Pruſſia* under his Command; Knight of the Order of the Garter.

1493 37. *John-Albert*, the ſecond Son of *Caſimir*; his elder Brother *Vladiſlaus* being pretermitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.

1502 38. *Alexander*, the third Son of *Caſimir*.

1507 39. *Sigiſmund*, the fourth Son of *Caſimir*, his elder Brethren dying without Iſſue: he ſuppreſſed the Order of the *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia*, and added part thereof unto his Eſtate.

1548

1548 40. *Sigiſmund* II. ſirnamed *Auguſtus*, the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Jagello*.

1574 41. *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, Son of *Henry* the ſecond, the *French* King; choſen on the death of *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus*, the only Stranger to the Blood in all this Catalogue. On the death of his Brother *Charles* the 9th, he departed ſecretly into *France*, where he ſucceeded by the name of *Henry* the third.

1579 42. *Stephen Bathor*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third, Emperor of the *Turks*, having firſt married *Anne*, Siſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, is Elected King. He united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Muſcovite*.

1587 43. *Sigiſmund* III. Son of *John* King of *Swethland*, and of *Katharine* his Wife, another of the Siſters of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly oppoſed *Oſman* the Great *Turk*, invading his Dominions with an Army of 300000 fighting Men.

1633 44. *Vladiſlaus* VII. eldeſt Son of *Sigiſmund* the third. After whoſe death the Kingdom was extreamly embroil'd by Factions, eſpecially by the mutinous and ſeditious *Coſſacks*, not fully ſetled by the Election of

1648 45. *Caſimir* V. Brother of *Vladiſlaus* the ſeventh: Who being embroiled with the *Coſſacks*, was Overthrown by them, though he had 50000 Men in his Army, 10000 of which periſhed. The next year he loſt a greater Army. In the third Battel he prevailed againſt them. In 1653 the *Ruſs*, taking the Advantage of theſe Broils, took *Smolenſko* and *Vilna*. In 1655 the *Swedes* fell upon him, and took from him *Poland* properly ſo called, *Maſſovia*, all *Pruſſia*, except *Dantzick*, which City ſaved the Kingdom; and in 1660 the War was honourably ended. This Prince voluntarily Reſigned the Kingdom in the year 1668, when he had Reigned Thirty-one years, and died in 1672 at *Neveres* in *France*, in a Monaſtery. With him ended the *Swediſh* Line in *Poland*.

1669 46. *Michael Wieſnowizky* ſucceeded him, and his Reign was not only ſhort but unfortunate; for in the year 1672 he loſt to the *Turks* the ſtrong Town of *Caminieck*; and in 1673 he died, the 31th of *October*.

1674 47. *John Sobieſky*, was Elected after him, being then Crown-General, and in the Field: His greateſt Acts are the Defeating of the *Turks* at *Cotzchim* in 1673; and the Relief of *Vienna* in 1683. He died in 1696, and left the Crown to the Conteſts of a divided Nobility.

1697 48. *John-George*, Elector of *Saxony*, was Choſen King of *Poland*, having firſt renounced and abjured the Religion of his Anceſtors, for which he had expreſſed great Zeal in his younger years. His Succeſſion was however ſtrongly oppoſed by the King of *France*, but being ſupported by all his neighbouring Princes, he is now in the peaceable poſſeſſion of it, and endeavouring to drive the *Turks* out of *Ukerain*.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing leſs than Monarchical. For though the firſt Dukes hereof were abſolute Princes, and ruled after a Diſpotical manner, having power not only of the Eſtates of their Subjects, but of Life and Death, without Formalities of Law; yet when they once became Elective, they loſt much of that power: which decayed ſo by little and little, that at the laſt the King is counted little better than a Royal Shadow; *Stat magni nonimis umbra*, in the Poet's Language. A Diminution which began firſt in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungary* and *Jagello* of *Lituania*; who, to gain the Succeſſion to the Kingdom, contrary to Law, the one for his Daughter, the other for his Son, departed with many of their Royalties and Prerogatives, to buy the Voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their Elections have ſo limited and reſtrained the King's Authority, and enlarged their own, that without their conſent in Council he may neither make a War, nor treat of Peace, nor impoſe Taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeans, nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick: Inſomuch, as *Boterus*, a great Stateſman, doth expreſly ſay, That the Government of *Poland* doth rather ſeem an Ariſtocracy than a Monarchy, a Commonwealth rather than a Kingdom. Beſides, the King not only takes a ſolemn Oath at his Coronation to confirm all the Rights and Privileges which have been granted to the Subject by his Predeceſſors, but adds this Clauſe, *Quod ſi Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam nobis obedientiam præſtare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects ſhall not be obliged to yield him any Obedience. Which, as *Bodinus* well obſerveth, doth rather ſavour of the Condition of a Prince of the Senate, then of the Majeſty of a King. He is reſpected accordingly by the Great ones, who look not on him as their King but their elder Brother, (and perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three days laſting. Which notwithſtanding, the King, once choſen and inthroned, hath ſole power in many things without conſulting with the Senate; as, *viz.* in aſſembling Dyets, chuſing the ſecular Counſellors, diſpoſing abſolutely alſo of his Vaſſals and the Revenues of the Crown to what uſe he pleaſeth; being ſole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal Cauſes, which is a ſtrong Bridle to rein them in with. By which, and either uniting himſelf unto the Clergy, or the well forming a party amongſt the Nobilit, he may do many things not allowable in ſtrictneſs of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government being proportionable to the ſtrength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be obſerved, that none but the Clergy and Nobility have any Suffrage in the Election of the King: that is to ſay, the Twenty-ſix *Palatines*, and Sixty *Chaſtellans*, with the four *Marſhals*, and ſome others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbiſhops and Biſhops in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reaſon why there is ſo much care taken to preſerve the Privileges of the two firſt Orders, without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third; who are moſt miſerably oppreſſed on all ſides, rather as Bondmen than Tenants in reſpect of their Lords, and not ſo much Subjects as plain Slaves in regard of the King; whereof ſomewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Common people excluded only out of theſe Elections, but have no place nor Vote in the Council of State, or in any of the general Dyets: the firſt conſiſting only of the Prelates, *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and principal Officers ſpoken of before; the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the other aggregated of all perſons of thoſe ſeveral Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City, ſent thither for the reſt of the N[illegible]ty, whom they repreſent. Yet notwithſtanding this exclusion of the Commons from this Common-Council, they there conclude of all matters of publick Intereſt not properly determinable by the great Council or Council of State: in which perhaps (eſpecially in the caſe of Taxes) the Commons may be more concerned than any other.

The Forces of this Kingdom or Commonwealth relate unto Land-Service only. For though they have a large Sea-coaſt upon the *Baltick*, yet the *Danes*, *Swedes* and *Hanſe*-Towns, having got the ſtart of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for Land-Forces, they conſiſt of Horſe eſpecially, whereof they are able to raiſe 80000, (that is to ſay, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lithuania* and the Eaſtern Provinces) of which one half at leaſt are thought to be for Action. And this ſeems probable enough, in regard of thoſe great Bodies of Horſe which *Stephen* and *Sigiſmund* the third had againſt the *Moſcovite*, whereof the one had 40000, and the other 30000, (beſides Draught-Horſes) very well appointed. But for their Foot, they are not at ſo good a paſs; their Infantry being for the moſt part *Germans* or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for Money; of which two Nations King *Stephen*, in his Enterpriſe upon *Livonia*, had no leſs than 16000 to convey his Ordnance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horſe, and their readineſs to ſerve upon all occaſions, the *Polanders* bear themſelves ſo high, that they neither fear the power of a Foreign Enemy, nor regard the Fortifying of their Towns, or the building of Fortreſſes on their Frontiers; boaſting that they are able to defend their Country without ſuch Helps againſt any Nation whatſoever, and truſting more to a Caſtle of Bones (as was couragiouſly ſaid by *Savage* an *Engliſh* Gentleman) than to a Caſtle of Stones. And for the raiſing of theſe Horſe, the Gentlemen of the Country are bound by their Tenure (like the *Turks Timariots*) not only to ſerve in Perſon for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horſe in continual readineſs; eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great, and with whom many times they join to afflict and harraſs their own Country, though in pay againſt them. Of theſe ſome ſerve in the manner of our Men at Arms, ſome like unto our Light-horſe, others like the *Tartars*. And theſe they call commonly by the name of *Coſſacks* (or Adventurers :) a race of Men trained up to ſteal, waſte, and depopulate, whereſoever they come, having little but their Swords to live by; a murtherous and wicked people, chiefly in their Drunkenneſs, and that not only towards Strangers, but their natural Country-men. The cauſe of that Sedition which, for ſome years paſt, hath more depopulated and diſtracted that flouriſhing Kingdom than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

Pfendorf obſerves, that there is no Nation in *Europe* which has ſo great a number of Nobles as *Poland*, and ſaith they can pay large Contributions, whereby a good Foot Army of *Coſſacks* or others might be maintained; but then they are quickly weary of any publick Charge, and therefore cannot maintain a long and tedious War. And when the Nobility are called into the Field they come out late, and are not eaſily kept in good Order, and have too great a number of Servants and Attendants which devour the Country, and make Proviſions ſcarce. They are alſo too hot in the firſt Onſets, but quickly grow weary and impatient of Hardſhips : And Foot they have none beſides their *Coſſacks*, and what they hire of the *Germans* or *Hungarians*. They are extreamly Jealous of their Kings, and in perpetual Intrigues to prevent their invading their Privileges, and this renders them unquiet, ſuſpicious, and ſeditious, uneaſie to govern, and hard to pleaſe. Thus far that great Man. And all this conſidered, it will appear the leſs a wonder to us, that they have not been able to recover *Caminieck*, though it has been three years blockaded, or to make any Progreſs in *Wallachia* or *Moldavia*, notwithſtanding the low Condition the *Turkiſh* Affairs have been in theſe three Years, and the potent Diverſion the *Ruſs* have given to the *Crim-Tartars* in 1687 and 1688.

As for the Revenues of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per Annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt and ſome Mines of Silver : the Profits ariſing from the Demeans of the Crown being for the moſt part given away in Penſions and Gratuities to the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and other great Men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his deſires. Moſt of which Sum is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchaſe of Eſtates for his younger Sons : his Daughters being married at the publick Charge, and the expence of his Houſhold defrayed by the *Lituanians* and moſt part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongſt them. Nor do the Wars at any time exhauſt his Treaſure, in which caſe, by Decree of the Dyets, he is inabled to lay Impoſitions and Taxes upon the People, levied in the way of Exciſe, or upon their Lands: which do amount to ſuch a Sum that by means hereof King *Stephen* maintained War three years againſt the *Muſcovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are,

1. The *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, inſtituted under the Walls of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy-Land*, in a Church whereof, dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin, their Order was firſt allow'd, from whence they are called *Equites Mariani*. The Inſtitution was in the year 1190. The firſt Great Maſter was *Henry Walpot*. The Chriſtians being beaten out of *Syria*, they firſt removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Haſſia*; where, and in ſome other parts of *Germany*, they were endow'd with fair Revenues : hence they were nam'd *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch* Knights. Sent into *Pruſſia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1239, or called in, as ſome ſay, by the *Moſcovite* againſt the *Pruſſians*, they fixed their Seat at *Marienburg*, under *Sigiſride* the ſecond Great Maſter, *Anno* 1340, or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus*, the 18th Great Maſter, they were forced to ſubmit to *Caſimir* the 4th of *Poland*, *Anno* 1450; which was the occaſion of the long War betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the 24th and laſt Great Maſter in this Country; who ſurrendred his Order (as before is ſaid) to *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whom he was created the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*. Such of the Knights as diſreliſhed this Action retired into *Germany*, where they choſe one *Walter Croneberg* Maſter of the Order : the Title being afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger Sons of *Maximilian* the ſecond, but the Order ſenſibly decaying, is at this time of little eſtimation in the World.

2. Of the *Port glaive*, or *Sword-bearers*, (*Enſiferi* in *Latin*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom they were ſent into *Livonia*, to defend the Preachers of the Goſpel againſt the Infidels, at the firſt Converſion of that Country. Being too weak to effect that buſineſs, they united themſelves with the *Dutch* Knights by the Pope's Authority, and, inſtead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Croſs*. Separated therefrom in the time of *Univus* their Great Maſter, *Anno* 1541, the *Dutch* Knights being then diſpoſſeſſed of *Pruſſia*, and theſe inclining wholly to the Opinions of *Luther*, they a while ſubſiſted of themſelves. What became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguiſhed, hath been ſhewed already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly; 1. *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and armed *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2. *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pee*, advancing his Sword, *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courſer of the *ſecond*, for the Dukedom of *Lituania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

Of the *Romiſh* Church, Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 19.
• Of the *Greek* Church, Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 6.

Univerſities 4. *Viz.*

Cracow
Vilna
Dantzick.
Koningsberg.

And ſo much for POLAND.

THE

THE
Carpathian Mountains.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungary* (whither now we go) we muſt of neceſſity paſs over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient Boundary of *Sarmatia Europæa* from the reſt of *Europe*. A long and craggy Ledge of Hills, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the Borders of *Auſtria*, paſs on in a continual courſe till they come to the very *Euxine* Sea; and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, but part *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Ruſſia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolomy*, in his ſecond Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici.* (*Sarmaticæ Rupes* by *Solinus*) becauſe diſterminating the *Sarmatian* Nation (who poſſeſſed the moſt part of it) from *Germany* and the more Southern parts of *Europe:* and in his third Book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, ſo called (as ſome think) from the *Greek* word Καρπὸς, ſignifying *Fruit*, from the Fruitfulneſs of it, compared with the other Mountains in thoſe Northern Countries. At the preſent it is known by divers names, according to the Provinces and People which it paſſeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten* (or *a Garden of Herbs*) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*, by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the higheſt, it is called in the *Sclavonian* Tongue by the name of *Tatri*, in the *German Schneberg:* where it parteth *Tranſylvania* from *Ruſſia Nigra*, the *Ruſſes* call it *Bieſcid*, and the *Dutch*-men *Crapack*. A Chain of Hills of more length than Fame, not much obſervable in Story, but for the ſhutting up the *Hungary Sclaves*, and others of thoſe Northern Nations which afterwards invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the preſent, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers which water the Countries lying on both ſides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will paſs them over, and deſcend into the Plains of *Hungary* where we ſhall meet again with the *Roman* Empire, the Territories and Affairs whereof we ſhall take along without interruption until we come unto the Banks of the great River *Tigris* and the *Caſpian* Sea. And ſo far alſo from this place we ſhall ſurvey the Fortunes and Eſtates of the *Turkiſh* Empire, of which the Realm of *Hungary* is the moſt Weſtern part or Province; not meeting either of them again till we come to *Ægypt*.

OF
HUNGARY.

HUNGARY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Tranſylvania* and *Walachia*, on the Weſt with *Stiria*, *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*; on the North with the *Carpathian Mountains*, which divide it from *Poland*, and on the South with *Sclavonia*, and ſome part of *Dacia*. It extendeth in length, from *Presburg*, along the *Danow*, to the Borders of *Tranſylvania*, for the ſpace of 300 *Engliſh* Miles; and 190 of the ſame miles in breadth. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon. *Tranſylvania* and *Sclavonia* are now both taken for Parts, Provinces, or Dependencies of *Hungary*; and the latter is taken into *Hungary* in his Deſcription of Places by this Author, though he has excluded it here.

It lieth in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the 7th and 9th Climates, ſo that the longeſt Summers Day in the Southern parts is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts moſt North: taking up all that Tract of ground on the North-ſide of *Danubius* poſſeſſed by the *Jazyges Metaneſtæ*, a *Sarmatian* People, and part alſo of *Pannonia Superior* and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it paſſeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know that the *Romans* having made themſelves Maſters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Dioceſs of *Illyricum Occidentale*, that is to ſay, 1. *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the Higher *Auſtria*, and the moſt Weſtern parts of the preſent *Hungary*; on the South-ſide of the *Danow*. 2. *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eaſtern parts of *Hungary*, on the ſame ſide of the River. 3. *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*. And, 4. *Savia*, ſo called of the River *Savus*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*; now called *Windiſchland*, one of the Provinces or Subdiviſions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Maſters, it took a new name from the Nations who poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and was called *Hungaria, quaſi Hunn Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either ſucceſſively or conjunctly were poſſeſſed thereof; or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the Emperor *Arnulph*, to aid him in his War againſt *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*. This laſt I look on as moſt probable: the firſt as more probable than that of *Aventine*, and others of our later Writers, who finding a poor Province in the moſt North-Eaſt point of the *Ruſſian* Empire called *Jugria* (and by them *Jugaria*) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The People are ſtrong of Body, and rude of Behaviour, reſpecting neither the liberal Arts nor Mechanick Trades. The greateſt Aſperſion is the name of a Coward, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are priviledged to wear a Feather, and by the number of their Feathers to ſhew how many *Turks* they have ſlain in Battle. They deſire Wars, and like no Trade better, being naturally ſlothful, (like the *Iriſh*) and therefore beſt approve of that courſe of Life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens Labour than take pains for their living. Extreamly covetous they are, yet having rather deſire than art to enrich themſelves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingroſs all their Trading, and manage ſuch Commodities as the Country yieldeth: which is the cauſe (ſeconded by the Oppreſſions of the *Turk* and the *Auſtrian* Princes, under whom they are) that none of them riſe to any conſiderable Wealth. And for ſuch as have Eſtates in Land, they grow every day more poor than other. For though the Females be excluded from inheriting their Father's Poſſeſſions, (to whom they give no Portion, but new Cloaths on the Wedding-day:) Yet being the Sons do equally inherit the Eſtate, (as ſuch who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it muſt needs be that by ſo many Diviſions and Subdiviſions the greateſt Patrimony that is will be brought to nothing. Both ſexes in the way of their Education are inured to Hardneſs, not ſuffered to lie in Beds till the Night of their Marriage.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt planted here in the time of *Stephen*, ſirnamed the Saint, the firſt King of this Country; who was invited thereunto by the ſpecial means and procurement of the Emperor *Henry* the ſecond, giving him upon that Condition his Siſter *Giſela* in Marriage; and through the preaching and induſtry of *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Prague*, *Anno* 1016, or thereabouts. Since which time Chriſtianity hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*) but broken into Fractions and Subdiviſions among themſelves: Some pertinaciouſly adhering to the Church of *Rome*, ſome following the Doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin* and ſome new Fancies and Opinions diſavowed by all the reſt. Free exerciſe of Religion was firſt granted by *Maximilian* the ſecond, and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus*, his Son and Succeſſor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, procured by the power of *Botſcai* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the beginning of his Reign occaſioned great Wars and Troubles betwixt him and this People, not quieted in a long time after. Yet all theſe different Parties do agree in this, to puniſh Adultery and Fornication with no leſs a puniſhment than Death; the Father forcing his Daughter, the Husband his Wife, and the Brother his Siſters, to the place of their Execution.

The Language generally here ſpoken is a kind of *Sclavonian*, differing in Dialect from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoyning to *Germany* the *Dutch* is ſpoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, the ancient Seat of the *Jazyges Metenaſta*.

The Soil is wonderful fruitful, yielding Corn and Fruits in great abundance; the Graſs in ſome places, (as in the Iſle of *Komara*) if it be ſuffered to grow to its full length before the cutting of it down, being ſaid to exceed the height of a Man: which doth breed ſuch a number of Cattel, that this Country alone is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with Fleſh. They yearly ſend into *Germany* and *Sclavonia* 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheaſants, in ſuch ſuperfluity, that any man that will may kill them, which in other places is utterly prohibited, theſe Creatures being preſerved as Game for Gentlemen. For at that great Inſurrection of the Boors in *Germany*, (before the end of which 50000 of them were ſlain in fight) their chief Demands were, 1. That they might chuſe their own Miniſters. 2. That they might pay no Tithes but of Corn. 3. That they might be free from the power of Magiſtrates. 4. That Wood, Timber and Fewel might be common. 5. And eſpecially, that they might hunt and hawk in all times and places. The other Commodities of the Country are Gold and Silver, whereof they have ſome very rich Veins; as alſo of Tin, Lead, Iron; good ſtore of Fiſh, Copper, Wine: this laſt as good as that of *Candia*.

The worthieſt Scholar that ever this Kingdom produced was St. *Hierom*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church born in *Stridon*. The moſt worthy of all their Soldiers were 1. *Johannes Huniades*, who ſo valiently reſiſted the Incurſions of the *Turks*, and ſlew of them 50000 at the Battle of *Maron*. And 2. *Matthias Corvinus*, his Son, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet,

> ——*Patria decus, unica Stirpis*
> *Gloria,* Pannonicæ *Cædis fortiſſimus ultor.*
> His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,
> Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late Diſgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1. *Danubius*, ſpoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2. *Savus*, which riſing in *Carniola*, 3. *Dravus* which riſing in *Carinthia*, and 4. *Tibiſcus*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their Tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiſcus* the *Hungarians* uſe to ſay, that two parts are Water, and the third Fiſh. Beſides which, and ſome others of inferiour note, there is the famous Lake called *Balaton*, (by the *Dutch Platſee*) forty *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequal, in ſome places being ten miles broad, and in ſome but three. There be alſo many Medicinal waters, and more hot Baths than any one Country hath in *Europe*: ſome Waters alſo of a ſtrange nature, whereof ſome falling on the ground is turned to Stone; others (about the Town of *Smalnice*) which falling into Ditches made a kind of Mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and ſome again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Biſtrice*, or *Menſol*, a Spring or Fountain, out of which commeth a green Water whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, ſpoken of before. 2. *Matzan*, near the City of *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 4. *Erdol*, *omnium ampliſſimus*, the largeſt of the three, ſaith the *Atlas minor*. Which words, if true, muſt needs be underſtood of the heighth of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without queſtion it comes ſhort of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the Upper *Hungary*, and the Lower: the Upper lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the Bounds and Territories of the *Roman* Empire; the Lower lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia* Inferior, and part of Superior, two *Roman* Provinces. The Upper again was ſubdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or Juridicial Reſorts; that is to ſay, 24 on the Weſt-ſide of *Tibiſcus* (or the *Tieſs*) and 8 on the Eaſt-ſide of it: The Lower (at the ſame time) into 16 only; of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other ſix betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*: But this Diviſion and the Subdiviſions depending on it being ſince the coming in of the *Turks* almoſt out of uſe, we will now look upon it as it ſtands divided at the preſent, betwixt the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, by a mixt Title of Deſcent and Election; and the great *Turk*, as Lord of the moſt part of it by Arms and Conqueſt, two parts of three at leaſt being forced into his poſſeſſion. But here we are to underſtand, that by reaſon of the great Jealouſies and Diſtruſts betwixt theſe great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garriſoned like a Town of War, and ſo are almoſt all the Houſes of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Country: ſo that it were an infinite labour to ſpecifie in this place all thoſe Towns and Fortreſſes which do occur in reading the *Hungarian*

Hiſtories of theſe later times. Some of the principal for Strength, Antiquity, or other mark of Eſtimation which is ſet upon them, we ſhall here ſubjoin. This was the true ſtate of *Hungary*, when our Author Wrote, and continued ſo, till in the year 1683, *Mahomet* 4. Emperor of the *Turks*, eſpouſing the Quarrel of Count *Tekely* an *Hungarian* Noble-man, by him made King of *Hungary*: and demanding the Iſland of *Schut*, which the Emperor could not part with, he unjuſtly began a War upon the Emperor, and ſent an Army of 100000 Men to beſiege *Vienna*, which being driven from that Siege by *John Sobieski* King of *Poland*, and *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*, they followed their blow, and the ſame year took *Gran*, and have ever ſince had ſuch a Torrent of Victories, as have almoſt totally extirpated the *Turks* out of *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*. So that I ſhall only make it my buſineſs to ſhew when the ſeveral ſtrong places were retaken by the *Germans*; adding my Prayers, that God would ſtill proſper the Arms of the Chriſtian Princes againſt that bitter and implacable Enemy of Chriſtianity or indeed Mankind in General.

And firſt in the Emperors part of the Lower *Hungary*, we have; 1. *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Rab*, coming out of the Lower *Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabo*, by the *French Javarine*, by our preſent *Latiniſts Javarinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the Boundary of the two *Pannonia's*, Inferior and Superior; hereabouts divided: of late moſt principally for a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Turks*, by whom it was once taken, *An.* 1594, but within four years after again recovered by the Induſtry of Monſier *de Vandrecourt*, a *French* Gentleman, as the *French*-men ſay; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenburg*, at that time Governour of *Komara*. This River ariſeth in the Lower *Stiria* near *Gratz*, and below this City falls into the *Danube*, upon the banks of it near St. *Gothard*, the *Germans* in the year 1664, defeated a Potent Army of the *Turks*, which had paſſed it in order to beſiege *Vienna*, which Victory produced a Peace for 20 years, though broken to the coſt of the *Turks* within the time. 2. *Altenburg*, in the Road leading towards *Auſtria*; a ſtrong Town, and the beſt out-work of *Vienna*, for which cauſe much aimed at by the *Turks*, but without ſucceſs. It ſtands 3 *Hungarian* miles from *Presburg* to the South, and 6 from *Rab*. 3. *Caſtre-Novo*, a new-erected Fortreſs, as the name importeth, but of ſpecial ſtrength, erected purpoſely in the time of the Emperor *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, anciently the Metropolis of *Pannonia* Superior; the Birth-place of S. *Martin* Biſhop of *Tours*; now of leſs accompt; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarovubath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnitz*. 5. *Stridon*, now *Sdrin*, the *Sidrona* of *Ptolomy* in the Confines of *Hungaria* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till deſtroyed by the *Goths*; but after made of more eſteem by the Birth of St. *Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church, and for all parts of Humane Learning nothing inferior to the beſt of the *Grecian* Sages. 6. *Sopron*, (*Soprinium* in *Latine*) on the Borders of *Auſtria*. 7. *Komara* a ſtrong piece, in an Iſland of the ſame name made by the Circling of the *Danow*; but commonly called *Schut* by the *Germans*, oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungary* we have 8. *Presburg*, on the the edge of *Auſtria* alſo, but on the North-ſide of the River, the *Carnutum* of *Antoninus*, but by the modern *Latines* called *Poſonium*; ſeated in a pleaſant healthful Country, on the River *Dyer*, whoſe waters the *Danow* there receiveth: in the Suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, ſtandeth a goodly Caſtle, the ordinary Reſidence of the Emperors, as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City and not very beautiful; yet being ſafe by the Neighbourhood of *Auſtria*, it hath been made the Metropolis of this Kingdom ſince the loſs of *Buda*. Before the Walls hereof died Count *Dampierre*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the Wars of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Fillek*, a place of great Strength and Conſequence taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his firſt attempts upon this Kingdom: and loſt by *Amurath* the third, the *Turks* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Nitria*, a Biſhop's See on the River *Boch*. 11. *Vacia*, a Biſhops See alſo, on the River *Danubius*; once in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, but reſtored again unto the Chriſtians at the making of the Peace between the Emperor *Rodolphus* and Sultan *Achmet*. 12. *Caſſovia*, a ſtrong piece towards *Tranſylvania*. This City was in a manner free till ſetting up Count *Tekely* in the year 1682, it was taken by the Imperial Forces in 1685, and has been ſince curb'd by a ſtrong Garriſon. 13. *Lippe*, in the Borders of that Country alſo, commanding the Entrances thereof and therefore much affected by the Princes or Vaivods of that Province; poſſeſſed by whom in the latter times of the Emperor *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Tranſylvania*; but how long it continued ſo I am not able to ſay. This Town was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1595, and was retaken by the *Germans* the 19th of *June* 1688, after a ſhort defence 2000 *Turks* that were in Garriſon here being made Priſoners of War. 4. *Tokay*, a place of great ſtrength, and as great Fidelity, the people and Garriſon hereof holding out for the Emperor *Rodolphus*, *Anno* 1605, againſt ſome of his Rebellious Subjects, in the time of ſo extream a Famine, that the Soldiers did not only eat two Boys, but many times caſt lots who ſhould eat one another. It ſubmitted to Count *Tekely* in 1682, and was taken by the Imperialiſts in 1685. It is ſeated in an Iſland made by the River *Bodroch*, which paſſing by *Eſpieres* falls into the *Tibiſcus*, and is very ſubject to inundations, yet the Soil is thereby made fruitful, which produceth excellent Wines. 15. *Eperies*, a place of no leſs conſequence, and exemplary Loyalty. Taken by Count *Tekely* in 1678, and retaken by the Imperialiſts in 1685, 16. *Newſol*, or *Newhewſel*, a ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly fortified, not far from the Spring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621 proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*, who at the Siege hereof (the Town being then in Rebellion againſt *Ferdinand* the ſecond, Emperor and King of *Hungary*) loſt his life. For going privately, to view ſome places of advantage for a general Aſſault, he fell into an Ambuſh of *Hungarians*, who ſuddenly ſet upon him, diſcomfited his ſmall Party, killed firſt his Horſe under him, and at laſt himſelf, having in that Skirmiſh received 16 wounds. There were ſlain with him at the ſame time alſo *Torquato*, an *Italian* Prince, Count *Verdugo*, a *Spaniſh* Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the Houſe of *Mantua*. The Grand-Viſier ſat down before this Town the 14th of *Auguſt* 1663, and took it the 27th with the loſs of 15000 Men, the Duke of *Lorrain* ſate down before it the 7th of *July* 1685, and took it by Storm the 19th of *Auguſt* following, putting all the Garriſon to the Sword.

Places of moſt importance in the *Turks* poſſeſſion are, 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Offen*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Curia* of *Ptolomy*, by others the *Abrincum* of *Antoninus*; and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Attila*, ſaid to be the Refounder of it, or from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* People, mentioned in *Herodotus*. It is unevenly ſeated amongſt Hills on the Southern ſhore of the *Danow*, but in the moſt fruitful part of all the Country, exceedingly well fortified, eſpecially by a ſtrong Caſtle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turks*, adorned with many Buildings, both private and publick and furniſhed with ſome Medicinal Baths, which owe much of their Pomp and Sumptuouſneſs to their new Maſters the *Turks*, who took it from the Chriſtians *Auguſt* 20. 1591, *Solyman* the Magnificent then being preſent at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief

City of the Kingdom; as now the Seat of the chief *Baſſa*, or Lord Lieutenant for the Grand Seignior. This City is divided into two parts, ſeparated from each other the diſtance of a mile, and called the higher and the lower *Boida*: the higher ſtands towards the North, and is by Nature one of the ſtrongeſt Forts in the World, being built on a ſteep-hard-Rock, and having a very ſtrong Caſtle and good works, and was the Royal Palace and the Seat of the *Turkiſh Viſier* or *Baſſa*. It was beſieged by the Duke of *Lorrain*, from the 14th of *July* to the 1ſt. of *November* 1684, and yet could not be taken, but the 15th of *July* 1686, it was reinveſted by that Prince, and taken the 2d. of *September* following by Aſſault. An Army of 50000 *Turks* coming on and not being able to relieve it: the Baths are in the Lower-Town, which was taken in both the laſt Sieges very eaſily by the *Germans*, the difficulty being in the gaining the Upper-Town. 2. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weiſſenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*; ſtrongly, but unwholſomly ſeated, in the midſt of an inacceſſible Marſh, joined to the firm land by three broad Cauſeys, blockt up at the ends with three great Bulwarks, but for all the Situation of it, taken by the *Turks Anno* 1543; before that time the uſual place both for the Coronation and Interrment of the Kings of *Hungary*; recovered from the *Turks Anno* 1601, and loſt again unto them in the next year after. After *Buda* was taken, the Prime-Viſier of the *Turks*, retired to *Albaregalis*, and man'd and victual'd it for a long Siege, making it the Capital of *Hungary*. The *Germans* being not willing to Ruin either the Place or their Men by a Siege of this ſtrong place, Blockaded it: and the 18th of *May* 1688, it was ſurrendred to them; the Garriſon having in the mean time endured by Hunger, Cold and Nakedneſs, all the Miſery that can be imagined. 3. *Walpo*, or *Valpo*, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the Siege of that City in 1594, now in the hands of the Emperor ſince the taking of *Eſſeck* in the year 1687. 4. *Gran*, in *Latin* called *Strigonium*, ſeated upon the *Danow*, but oppoſite to the Mouth of *Gran*, which ariſing in the Upper *Hungary* doth there end its courſe, whence this Town had the name of *Gran*, honoured of a long time with the See of an Arch-biſhop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all buſineſs which concern the State; taken by the *Turks Anno* 1534, *Solyman* the magnificent being in perſon at the Siege, and loſt again, *Anno* 1595, at what time Sir *Thomas Arundel* of *Wardor* Caſtle in *Wiltſhire* carried himſelf ſo gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkiſh* Banner, the Emperor *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of *Wardor*: but the Chriſtians were not ſuffered to keep it long; for being many times after beſieged by the *Turks*, who were reſolved not to end the War without it, it was finally recovered by them, *Anno* 1605. In the year 1683, there was under the Walls of this City a ſharp Fight between the *Turks* and *Germans*; in which the latter prevailed and took the City the 23th of *October*. *July* the 30th 1685, the *Turks* beſieged it again, whilſt the *Germans* beſieged *Newheuſel*, but being forced to draw off *Auguſt* the 16th, the City has continued ever ſince in the Hands of the Emperor without diſturbance. 5. *Funfkirchen*, in Latin called *Quinque Eccleſia*, from five Churches in it, a Biſhop's See, conceived to be the *Teutoburgium* of *Antoninus*; taken by the *Turks Anno* 1566, and giving them a great Command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is ſeated. It was retaken by the Imperialiſts in the year 1686, after *Buda* was ſurrendred without any Reſiſtance; the *Turkiſh Baſſa* ſaying, *Now the Old Hen* (Buda) *is eſcaped, the Chickens will follow her*. The truth is, though it was a ſtrong and populous City when the *Turks* took it, they had ſo neglected and diſpeopled it, that a ſmall party of *Croats* ſurprized and plundered it in 1685. 6. *Sirmiſh*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a Vein of the beſt Wines, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation at the preſent, though heretofore of moſt account in all this Province; the Metropolis (as I conceive) of *Pannonia Inferior*, the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Illirici* before the Diviſion of the Empire, honoured with the perſonal Reſidence of many of the Emperors, and made in thoſe reſpects the Stage of many great and memorable Actions. For here *Vetranio* or *Bretanio*, as other call him, took on himſelf the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperor by the *Illyrian* Souldiers lying here in Garriſon: here, being deſerted by his own Souldiers, he ſubmitted himſelf unto *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Great: here *Gratian* the Emperor, ſon of *Valentinian* the firſt was born: and finally here was held a Council againſt *Photinus*, Biſhop of this City, who held that *Chriſt* had no exiſtence of God the Father till he was conceived and born of the *Virgin*; which Tenet, being contrary as well to that of the *Arian* as the Orthodox Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantius*, (who was there in perſon) *An.* 356. 7. *Zigeth*, a ſtrong Town, ſituate in a Marſh-ground on the North-ſide of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the magnificent, *Anno* 1566. who there ended his Days. This City after a Blockade of 18 months, was ſurrendred to the Imperialiſts the 12th of *February* 16$\frac{88}{89}$, there was then in it 600 *Turkiſh* Soldiers, and about 1000 other Perſons. The *Baſtions* of it were well faced with Maſons work, but the *Courtins* are only ſupported by three Rows of Trees, driven into the Earth very to near each other and the ſpace between the firſt and ſecond Row ſerved inſtead of a *Parapet*. The Earth between them being ſo hardened and ſtrengthned by the Trees, that it ſeems to be of no leſs force than the Walls of the *Baſtions*. The Caſtle was alſo of great ſtrength, being ſeated in a Marſh ſurrounded with four Walls, *&c.* Strengthened with Bull-Warks; There was then ſtanding in this place 400 Houſes, 3 ſmall and one great Moſque, and they found in it 45 pieces of Canon, and a vaſt quantity of Ammunition, but almoſt no Victual; Thus fell that noble Fortreſs, which in the year 1556 baffl'd a Royal *Turkiſh* Army, though it was twice beſieged in one Summer, and ten years after had the Conſolation to ſee *Solyman* the great Dye before it, before it fell into the hands of the *Turks*. 8. *Murſa*, now *Eſſeck*, upon the confluence of the *Dra* and the *Danow*, once a *Roman* Colony, and as remarkable in the Stories of elder times. *Eſſeck* is ſuppoſed by many to be the *Marſa* of the Ancients, ſeated on the South ſide of the *Save*, in a low Ground, a Great Populous and Strong Town, and the uſual paſs of the *Turks* into *Hungary*, who had here for that purpoſe a Bridge 5 miles long, built by *Solyman* the magnificent in the year 1521, deſtroyed by Count *Sereni* in 1664, by Count *Leſly* in 1685, by the Duke of *Lorrain* in 1687. The Town preſerved it ſelf from the *Germans* in 1637, and being attempted by the Duke of *Lorrain* in 1687, he was forced to retire, the Prince Viſier covering it with 80000 Men, but that Army being routed at the Battle of *Mohatz* the 12th of *Auguſt*, the 30th of *September* the Imperialiſts found the Town of *Eſſeck* deſerted by the *Turks*, and had nothing to do but to take poſſeſſion of it, ſince which time no coſt has been ſpared in Fortifying and Strengthning it. 9. *Belgrade*, on the confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This laſt being a Town of divers names; firſt called *Taururum* or *Taurunum*; after *Alba Græca*; by the *Dutch*, accordingly *Greichs Weiſſenburg*, by the *French* and modern Latiniſts *Belgrade* and *Belgradium*, from a beautiful ſituation of it, hemmed in upon the North with the *Danow*, on the Eaſt with the *Saw*, on the other ſides defended with ſtrong Walls, deep Ditches, and impregnable Rampiers. It belonged anciently to the deſpots of *Servia*, by whom it was conſigned over to *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*, as beſt able to keep it, the deſpots being ſatisfied with

Lands and Territories of a better value. It was the Bulwark heretofore of Chriſtendom againſt the *Turks*, who, received before it many great and notable Repulſes, (of which the moſt memorable were thoſe of *Amurath* the ſecond, and *Mahomet* ſirnamed the Great:) but taken at laſt to the great loſs and ſhame of the Chriſtian World, not ſuccouring the Defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the magnificent, *Anno* 1520. This City continued in the hands of the *Turks*, without any care beſtowed upon its Fortifications till the year 1686 and 1687, when they began after the loſs of *Buda* and *Eſſeck*, to re-fortifie and ſtrengthen it what they were able; but in the year 1688, the Emperor ſent the Duke of *Bavaria* with a potent Army to reduce it, who forced his way over the *Save* the 8th of *Auguſt*, N. S. and the 10th marched towards *Belgrade*: The *Turks* firing the Lower Town, abandon'd it. The 12th the *Germans* began their Attack againſt the Upper Town and Caſtle, which was defended till the 6th of *September*, when it was taken by Storm at the third aſſault, and about 7000 of the defendants put to the Sword, and about 3000 had quarter given them. The *Germans* took in this place 70 Canon great and ſmall: it is ſeated upon an Hill, and is now re-fortifying with great expence and care. Then on the North ſide of the River, in the Upper *Hungary*, there is 10. *Peſth*, over againſt *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11. *Colocza*, an Archbiſhop's See, on the ſame River alſo. 12. *Zegedin*, or *Segedin*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River *Tibiſcus*, which was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1552, and retaken by the Chriſtians in the year 1686. 13. *Agria*, an old Biſhops See; and ſtrongly fortified, having a great Command over all thoſe parts of the Country; in vain beſieged by *Haly* the *Baſſa* of *Buda* with an Army of 36000 *Turks*, in the time of *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Anno* 1552, but taken by *Mahomet* the third, himſelf lying at the Siege in perſon, *Anno* 1578; not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the Chriſtians ſo great an overthrow, that, if he had purſued his Victory, it is thought that he had finiſhed the Conqueſt of *Hungary*, as on the other ſide, the *Turks* were ſo worſted and diſordered at firſt, (*Mahomet* himſelf and moſt of his Commanders flying out of the field) that, had the Chriſtians followed the chaſe, and not betook themſelves to the Spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed that Kingdom from the *Turkiſh* Tyranny. This Battle, from a Village near unto which it was fought, was called the Battle of *Kereſture*; a Battle of ſo ſtrange a Fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the Field, and the vanquiſhed Army ran away with the Victory. It continued in the hands of the *Turks* till the 17th of *December* 1687, and then was ſurrendred into the Hands of the Imperialiſts, having beſides *Bombing* and other Calamities of War, ſuffered a Blocade of two years continuance without the leaſt relief. The *Germans* have ſince taken good care to keep it from falling back into the hands of Infidels. 14. *Hatvoan*, now called *Hatwan*, a very ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, recovered by the Chriſtians after two long Sieges, and many ſharp Aſſaults, *Anno* 1558, and preſently again abandoned, upon the noiſe of *Mahomet*'s coming into *Hungary*, with a dreadful Army. 15. *Temeſwar*, on the Eaſt of that River towards *Tranſylvania*, the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. 16. *Gyula*, a ſtrong Town on the Borders of *Tranſylvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Kereſken*, Governor hereof, in the laſt year of *Solyman*: on a promiſe of ſome great reward; but *Selimus* the Son of *Solyman* cauſed him to be put into a Barrel ſtuck full of Nails, with the points turned inwards, and ſo to be tumbled up and down till he (moſt miſerably) died; there being on the Barrel this inſcription written, *viz. Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treaſon*; Gyula *thou ſoldeſt for Gold: if thou be not faithful to* Maximilian *thy natural Lord, neither wilt thou be true to me.* 17. *Singidum* on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the Fields of *Maron*, memorable for the ſlaughter of 50000 *Turks*, ſlain here in Battle under the fortunate Conduct of *John Huniades*. 18. *Poſſega*, the Capitol of *Sclavonia* properly ſo called, ſeated upon the River *Oriawa*, 8 miles from the *Save* to the North, and 30 from *Gradiſca* to the Eaſt, containing about 10000 Houſes but mean and ſmall. It is ſeated in a fruitful Country, and was taken by *Solyman* the magnificent in the year 1544, and retaken by the Chriſtians in 1687, after the Battle of *Mohatz*, the *Turks* deſerting it, and either ſlaying or carrying away the Inhabitants, whereupon the *Germans* took care to re-fortifie it. 19. *Petrowaradin*, a Town upon the *Danube*, 6 *Hungarian* miles from *Belgrade* to the North, much celebrated in the preſent War, and often taken and retaken, but now in the hands of the *Germans*, and ordered to be Fortified. 20. *Illock*, a Town upon the *Danube*, of great ſtrength between *Walcowar* and *Petrowaradin*, which was the laſt Town the *Turks* held in *Sclavonia*, but was deſerted and burnt by the *Turks* in 1688, upon the march of the Imperial Army to beſiege it.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, and the Weſt of the *Tieſs* or *Tibiſcus*, were the *Jazyges Motanaſtæ*, and on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Tieſs* the *Daci*, known, but not conquered, by the *Romans*; on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannones*, (by ſome called the *Paones*) ſubdivided into the *Azuli Latovici*, *Wercianni*, *Jaſſii*, *Oſeriates*, and ſome others inhabiting the Weſt parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneales*, *Brouci*, *Ariviſci*, and *Scordiſci*, dwelling in the Eaſtern parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, Anno *V*, *C*, 719, *L. Cornificius* and *Sextus Pompius* being Conſuls; but many times rebelling, and not fully ſubdued till forty years after the Inſurrection of *Bato*, being then cruſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and thereby the whole Province ſetled in Obedience. Divided firſt into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia*, and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till ſubdued by the *Hunns*, a People not heard of in the time of the *Roman* Greatneſs, unleſs we take them, as ſome do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolomy*. But being thoſe *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Baſtarnæ* and the *Roxolani*, on the South-Weſt of *Boryſthenes*, I ſee not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Hunns*, who were ſhut up within Fens of *Palus Mæotis*, and by all the Writers of thoſe times accounted a Nation not ſo much as heard of when they firſt ſet footing in *Europe*. Letting that therefore paſs as an improbable and ill-grounded Conjecture, certain it is that from the Fen-Countries of *Aſia*, on the other ſide of the *Tenais*, they came firſt into *Europe*, living in their own Country a poor and miſerable life, till God thought fit to make uſe of them as a Scourge to chaſtiſe the Chriſtians of the Weſt, then grown luxurious, and almoſt incorrigible, by too much Felicity; and to that end miraculouſly opened them a Paſſage never found before. For having neither mind nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which poſſibly they had not heard of, nor knowing how to clear themſelves of that uncomfortable Country in which they dwelt; it pleaſed the great diſpoſer of all things, by following an Hart or Stag which they had in chaſe, to ſhew them a ſafe paſſage into *Europe* through the Fens of *Mæotis*, which before they thought to be unpaſſable. The report made by thoſe Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleaſant Land which they had ſo fortunately diſcovered, invited the chief Heads of their Clans, with all the ſeveral Raſcalities depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell ſo ſuddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North-ſide of the *Iſter*, to fly over that River, and ſupplicate to the Emperor *Valens* for new Habitations. This happened in the year 373, *Athaniricus* the ſecond, or *Ermanaricus*, (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir*, Captain of the *Hunns*. Fleſhed with this Victory, *Balamir*, or *Balhember*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of King, *Anno* 386, or thereabout; and following the courſe of the *Iſter* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at, found a great Army raiſed on the other ſide of the River, of purpoſe to encounter with him, commanded by *Detricus* General for the *Roman* Army, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus)* Commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals preſuming too much on the depth and wideneſs of the River, and knowing well that the *Hunns* had neither Boat nor Ship to paſs them over, betook themſelves unto their Reſt with too much ſecurity. But the *Hunns*, to the number of 100000, having croſſed the River upon Bladders, fell on the Quarters of the *Romans*, whom they ſlew like Sheep, *Macrinus* after this fought two Battels with them, in the firſt whereof he was victorious, there being loſt on both ſides about Thirty Thouſand Men: but in the ſecond being ſlain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* poſſeſſed themſelves of both *Pannonia's*, buying this Victory with the loſs of 40000 Men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his Sons ſucceeded, *Anno* 436; and *Oleda*, dying alſo in the year 450, left *Attila* ſole King of the *Huns*, that great Scourge of the Chriſtian World; who having firſt waſted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperor *Theodoſius* the ſecond to buy his Peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of Gold, and an yearly Tribute. Invited afterwards by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, to War upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*, and beating down all the Towns and Fortreſſes on the River *Rhene*, on that ſide of the *Roman* Empire, entred that Province in the Reign of the third *Valentinian*, divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Diſcomfited by *Aetius* and the Kings of thoſe Nations then in League againſt him, in that famous Battel near *Tholouſe*, ſpoken of before, (with the loſs of 180000 of his Men) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he ſacked *Aqueleia*, *Millain*, *Vincentia*, *Pavia*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places ſuch unſpeakable Cruelties, that he was always after called (as he ſtyled himſelf) *Malleus orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a Quarrel with *Martianus* the Eaſtern Emperor, as if the Tribute promiſed him by *Theodoſius* had not been well paid. But being pacified for the preſent, and mindful of his former Project upon the *Goths*, he reſolved once again to try his Fortune with that People; and was again defeated by them under the Conduct of *Thoriſmund*, the third King of the *Viſigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and ſo returned ingloriouſly to his Country. Choaked after with his own Blood, violently breaking out at his Noſtrils on his Wedding-night; he left *Pannonia* to his Sons, named *Hernac*, *Aladurius*, and *Chaba*; who, diſagreeing amongſt themſelves about the Kingdom, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then poſſeſſed of *Dacia*, to make themſelves Maſters of this alſo; who were ſcarce through-warm in their new Eſtates, when ſent by *Zeno* the Emperor into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer*, where they finally ſetled. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any-where of the *Hunns*, at all, unleſs acting under the *Auares*, or joining with them in the name of *Hun-Avari*, as ſome think they did.

The Country, being thus left to the next Invader, was preſently poſſeſſed by the *Longobards*, ſaid to be originally of *Scandia*; and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia Jornandes* ſpeaketh, afterwards *ob longas barbas*, *Longobardi*. But concerning this laſt name, take along with you this old Wives Tale, recited, but not approved of, by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili* went unto *Goddan*, (he ſhould rather have ſaid *Wodin*) to ſue for the Victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and ſent *Gambata*, the Mother of their King *Anjou*, on the like buſineſs to *Frea*, *Goddan*'s Wife. So it was that *Goddan* had promiſed the *Vandals*, that they ſhould be victorious whom he ſaw firſt in the Morning: Whereupon *Frea*, willing to pleaſe *Gambata*, and not loving, as it ſeemeth, the ſight of Men, gave order that all the Women of the *Winnali*, parting their Hair, bringing one half over one Cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their Chin, ſhould appear betimes before the Window the next Morning. This they did, and ſhe ſhewing them to her Husband, he demanded of her, *Qui ſunt iſti Longobardi?* Hence the occaſion of the name. And like enough they might be called ſo from the length of their Beards, though otherwiſe the whole Tale be vain and fooliſh. Compelled by ſcarcity of Victuals to ſeek new Habitations, they ſeiſed firſt on the Iſland *Rugia* and the adjacent Countries; and ſetled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in thoſe parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Biſhopricks of *Meydburg* and *Halberſtadt*. Afterwards, finding that Country too narrow for them, they left their Dwellings there, and fell next upon ſome parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at laſt, having tarried in *Pannonia* Forty-two years, or thereabouts, at the ſolicitation of *Narſes* (provoked by many Indignities from the Empreſs *Sophia*, the Wife of *Juſtinus* the ſecond) *Anno* 568, under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*; and there fixt their Kingdom; being at the end of 206 Years overthrown by the power of *Charles* the Great, the moſt mighty Monarch of the Weſt. Of their Kings, before their coming into this Country, I ſhall only make mention of *Lamiſſus* their third King, and of him this Story. *Agilmond*, the ſecond King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a Hunting: as he was riding by a Fiſh-pond, he eſpied ſeven Children ſprawling for Life, which one, as ſaith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many Harlots) had been delivered of, and moſt barbarouſly thrown into the Water. The King amazed at this Spectacle, put his Boar-ſpear or Hunting-pole among them. One of the Children handfaſted the Spear. and the King, ſoftly drawing back his hand, waſted the Child to the Shore. This Boy he named *Lamiſſus*, from *Lama*, which in their Language ſignifieth a Fiſh-pond. He was in the King's Court carefully brought up; where there appeared in him ſuch tokens of Vertue and Courage, that after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* choſen to ſucceed him. This *Lamiſſus*, together with his Predeceſſors and Succeſſors, we find thus Recorded.

The *LONGOBARDIAN* Kings.

A. Ch.		
383	1.	*Anjou.* 10.
393	2.	*Agilmond.* 33.
426	3.	*Lamiſſus.* 3.
429	4.	*Labe*, or *Lethe.* 40.
469	5.	*Hildohoc.* 4.
473	6.	*Godohoc.* 12.
485	7.	*Dophon*, or *Claſſo.* 5.
490	8.	*Thamus.* 10.
500	9.	*Vacon.* 18.
518	10.	*Valcarius.* 7.
525	11.	*Adoinus*, who firſt brought the *Longobards* into *Hungary*, *Anno* 1526.
543	12.	*Alboinus*, who in the year 583, by the ſolicitation of *Narſes* went into *Italy*, and erected there the *Longobardian* Kingdom; which 206 years after was deſtroyed by the Puiſſance of *Charles* the Great.

The Hiſtory of this People epitomized by *Du Bartas* (but with far more of the Poet than the true Hiſtorian) is ſummed up thus.

The *Lombard* ſtrong, who was in *Scowland* nurſt,
On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* ſeiſed firſt.
Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
The death of *Agilmond*, the bold *Barbarian*,
Surprized *Poland*: thence anon he preſſes
In *Danow*'s Streams to rinſe his Amber Treſſes.
When he ſtreight after had ſurrendred
The double-named *Iſter*'s flowry bed
To ſcar-fac'd *Huns*; he hunteth furiouſly
The reſt of *Gauls* from wealthy *Inſubrie*.
There reigns 200 years, triumphing ſo,
That Royal *Teſin* might compare with *Po*.
Which after fell in *French* Mens hand again,
Won by the Sword of worthy *Charlemaign*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage, the *Avares* entred. Some ſay they were the *Avarini* of *Ptolemy*, a *Sarmatian* People; but moſt probably (as *Nicetus*) a People of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Mæotis*. They firſt began to ſtir in the Reign of *Tiberius* the ſecond, (forced by the *Turks*, their next Neighbours, to paſs fartheſt Weſtward) and gave that Emperor's Forces a great Overthrow at the Mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithſtanding did ſomewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great Courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next Succeſſor. Their King at that time was called *Caganus*, we may *Engliſh* it *Cham*, as not being the proper name of any one; but the common Attribute of all their Chiefs. This *Caganus* made his firſt Wars upon the *Turks*, which People were about that time firſt made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*; and with the help of the remainder of the *Hunns*, invaded and poſſeſſed *Pannonia*, vanquiſhing both the Emperor's Forces, and the *Goths* and *Gepida*, who had ſtill kept ſome footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards* were of no ſmall power, the name of *Goths* being ſwallowed up in that of the *Gepida*, though not quite extinct. After this Blow *Mauritius* raiſed a ſecond War, but more with an intent to revenge himſelf on his own Soldiers, which had formerly offended him, than with hope of prevailing againſt the Enemy. *Comentiolus*, according to the Emperor's Directions, betrayeth his Army; 12000 of them were ſlain, and the reſt taken. *Caganus*, an heroick and merciful Conqueror, offers to ranſom them for 8*s.* 6*d.* a piece (for ſo much was that *Nummus* or Νόμισμα which he demanded for them.) When the Emperor, as much loving his Gold as hating his Soldiers; had denied that Condition; he offered them all for one *Nummus*, and after for half a one: but being alſo here unſatisfied, he put them alſo to the Sword. For this cauſe the reſt of the Soldiers not long after made *Phocas*, one of the Centurions, Emperor; and he moſt barbarouſly ſtewed the Emperor in his own Broth, putting him, his Wife, Friends, and Children to the Sword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, foraging *Thrace* to the very Walls of *Conſtantinople*, afterwards ſetled in *Pannonia* and part of *Noricum*, containing now the Upper *Hungary* and ſome part of *Auſtria*, divided from the *Boiarians* by the River *Ems*. They continued poſſeſſed hereof till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom after a War of eight Years, they were utterly ſubdued, and driven out of theſe parts, their Country being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies: the remainders of them were forced to betake themſelves into *Tranſylvania*, or that part of *Hungaria* which lieth beyond the River *Tibiſcus*, there ſubject for a time to *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*; in whoſe Overthrow by the *Hungarians* they were ſo broken, that their Name was never heard of.

And ſo we come to the *Hungarians*, the laſt and principal Actors on the Stage of this Kingdom, the givers of the preſent Name: before whoſe coming into this Country it had no other name than that of *Pannonia*, for ought I can find, in any Authors for thoſe Times. A *Scythian* People, as the *Hunns* and *Avares* were, by *Jornandes* called then *Hunugary*; firſt known in *Europe* by their Acts in the time of the Emperor *Arnulphus*, when wandring in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain Abode, they were by him called into this Country againſt *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*, beforementioned; from whom they took *Tranſylvania*, and ſo much of the modern *Hungary* as lieth on both ſides of *Tibiſcus*, inhabited at that time by the *Sclaves* and ſome ſcattered Remnants of the *Avares*, whom they killed up, or forced to ſeek new Habitations, planting themſelves in thoſe places which they took from them, now called the Upper *Hungary*. In the times of *Lewis* the fourth, Succeſſor to *Arnulphus*, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and ſubdued *Pannonia*, diſmembring it from Empire and name of *Germany*: after that they ranged with unmerciful Cruelty over all *Germany*, *Italy*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, till, broken by the Forces of the *Dutch* Emperors, and mollified by the ſoftneſs of the Chriſtian Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the firſt was under Dukes: *Stephen* the fourth Duke, on his receiving of the Goſpel, being honoured with the Title of King; enjoyed by his Succeſſors to this very day. In the time of *Ladiſlaus*, firnamed the Saint, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungary*, bequeathed to him by his Siſter *Zelomira*, the Widow to the laſt King. In that of *Bela* the Fourth, the *Tartarians*, to the number of 500000 fighting Men, brake into this Country, and like a violent Whirlwind carried all before them, *Anno* 1248, tyrannizing here for three years ſpace, committing mercileſs Maſſacres, and making horrible Spoils whereſoever they came. In that of *Stephen* the Fourth, *Myſia* and *Bulgaria* were made tributary. By the Daughters of *Bela* and *Stephen*, both the Fourth of thoſe Names, the Houſes of *Naples* and *Bohemia* came to claim the Kingdom of *Hungary*; as *Lewis* the firſt, by *Elizabeth* his Mother, Siſter of *Caſimir* the ſecond, did the Kingdom of *Poland*. The reſt of their Affairs ſhall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The Dukes and Kings of *HUNGARY*.

A. Ch.	
	1. *Cuſala*, the firſt Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungars*, ſubdued *Tranſylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*, and paſſed over the *Danow*; ſlain in his Wars againſt the *Dutch* then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*.
	2. *Toxus*, ſubdued *Pannonia* or the Lower *Hungary*.
	3. *Geiſa*, Son of *Toxus*.
1000	4. *Stephen*, the fourth Duke, and firſt King of *Hungary*.
1039	5. *Peter*, ſirnamed the *Alman*, Nephew of *Stephen*; depoſed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, Sons of *Ladiſlaus*, Son of *Geiſa* the firſt, and Brother of *Stephen* the firſt King.
1047	6. *Andrew*, eldeſt Son of that *Ladiſlaus*.
1059	7. *Bela*, the Brother of *Andrew*.
1062	8. *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdom by
1075	9. *Geiſa* II. Son of *Bela*.
1078	10. *Ladiſlaus*, ſirnamed the Saint, Brother of *Geiſa* the ſecond.
1096	11. *Coloman*, Son of *Geiſa* the 2d.
1114	12. *Stephen* II. Son of *Coloman*.
1132	13. *Bela* II. Nephew of *Geiſa* the 2d. by his Son *Almus*.
1142	14. *Geiſa* III. Son of *Bela* the 2d.
1162	15. *Stephen* III. Son of *Geiſa* the 3d.
1172	16. *Bela* III. Brother of *Stephen* the 3d.
1191	17. *Emaricus*, Son of *Bela* the 3d.
1201	18. *Ladiſlaus* II. Son of *Emaricus*, reigned but ſix Months, being ſlain by Treaſon very young, and without Iſſue.

1201 19. *Andrew* II. Son of *Bela* the 3d. and Brother of *Emericus*.

1236 20. *Bela* IV. Son of *Andrew* the 2d.

1271 21. *Stephen* IV. Son of *Bela* the 4th.

1273 22. *Ladiſlaus* III. Son of *Stephen* the 4th.

1290 23. *Andrew* III. Nephew to *Bela* the 4th by his Brother *Stephen*.

1302 24. *Charles*, ſirnamed *Martel*, Son of *Charles*, King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, Daughter to *Stephen* the 4th. Againſt whom was Choſen *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Bela* the fourth; and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, deſcended from *Elizabeth*, another of the Daughters of *Bela* the fourth, was choſen alſo by a Faction againſt *Wenceſlaus*. But *Wenceſlaus* ſurrendring his Claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after being forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.

1343 25. *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Carlibert*, ſucceeded King of *Poland* alſo, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Siſter of *Caſimir* the 2d.

1383 26. *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, deſcended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen* the 4th, before-mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger Brothers of *Charles Martel*; poiſoned after a ſhort Reign by the Widow of the former King, to make a way for her Daughter to the Crown.

1387 27. *Sigiſmund*, Emperor, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxemburg*, ſucceeded in right of *Mary* his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, her younger Siſter *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.

1438 28. *Albert* of *Auſtria*, Emperor, and King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Sigiſmund*.

1440 29. *Ladiſlaus* or *Vladiſlaus*, Son of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladiſlaus* the Son of *Albert*, choſen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately ſlain at the Battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his People; and perhaps his Perjury might deſerve it. For having made and ſworn a Truce with the *Turk*, the Pope's Legate, upon a ſeeming advantage, abſolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the Field. At the beginning the Chriſtians had the better: but at the laſt, *Amurath* the ſecond, againſt whom they fought, lifting up his Eyes to Heaven, and deſiring *Chriſt* to look upon the perfidious Dealing wherewith his Followers had diſhonoured him, re-encouraged his Men, and ſo got the Victory.

1444 30. *Ladiſlaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Sigiſmund* and *Mary*.

1458 31. *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the Famous *Huniades*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus* the 5th choſen King of *Hungary*.

1491 32. *Vladiſlaus* II. or *Ladiſlaus* VI. Son of *Caſimir* the 4th of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Albert*, ſucceeding in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; his three younger Brothers ſucceſſively in that of *Poland*.

1517 33. *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* both, born dead before the ordinary courſe of Nature; being in the 21th year of his Age, and in the 10th of his Reign, unfortunately drawn into the Field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardieſt Captains in his time. The Battel was fought at a Village called *Mogachz* or *Mugace*, juſt betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were ſlain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A moſt lamentable diſcomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepuſio*, Vaivod or Governour of *Tranſylvania*, was by the States choſen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Brother unto *Charles* the Fifth, challenged the Kingdom in Right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter to *Vladiſlaus*, and Siſter to *Lewis*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this Pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor; who, to recover his Right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Country, who took ſo faſt footing in it, that his Succeſſors could never ſince be removed.

1527 34. *John Sepuſio*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, choſen King upon the Death of *Ludovicus* the ſecond, outed by *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, reſtored by *Solyman* the Great *Turk*, died *Anno* 1540: after whoſe Death the *Hungarians* cauſed his Son *Stephen*, an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradle, of which he was immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who, under colour of preſerving that Kingdom for him, ſeized *Buda*, and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himſelf.

1540 35. *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in reſpect to the Lady *Anne*, his Wife, Siſter of *Ludovicus* the ſecond, *Anno* 1527, did in the ſame Right lay Claim to the Crown of *Hungary*; choſen to which by a party prepared for him, he was always in contention with *John de Sepuſio*; each of them acknowledged King by their ſeveral Factions: but he was by both ſides received on the death of *John*.

1562 36. *Maximilian*, Emperor, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.

1572 37. *Rodolphus*, Emperor, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.

1608 38. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperor.

1618 39. *Ferdinand* II. of *Gratz*, next Heir unto *Matthias*, of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, afterwards Emperor, &c. againſt whom a Party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſylvania*, whom they elected for their King intending (as they ſaid) to crown him alſo. But the Affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperor's ſide, *Gabor* relinquiſhed his Pretenſions, and hearkened to a Peace betwixt them.

1625 40. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, choſen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627 King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeding after him in the Empire.

1647 41. *Ferdinand* IV. Elected in the Life of *Ferdinand* the third, his Father, King of *Hungary*, before whom alſo he died of the Small Pox, in the year 1653.

1658 42. *Leopold*, Elected after the Death of *Ferdinand* the third, his Father, a Prince born to Revenge the Injuries of his Anceſtors, beating the *Turks* in 1683 from the Walls of *Vienna*, and winning *Gran*, in 1684 beſieging *Buda*;

in 1685 he took *Newhauſal*; in 1686 he took *Buda*; in 1687 he defeated a vaſt Body of *Turks* in the Plains of *Mohatz*, the 2d of *Auguſt*. After which followed the Surrender of *Eſſeck*, *Agria*, and *Alba Regalis*. And in the Winter he aſſembled the States of *Hungary* at *Preſburg*, wherein

1687 43. *Joſeph*, his eldeſt Son, was choſen the firſt Hereditary King of *Hungary*, the Crown being entailed upon the Heirs of his Body, and for want of ſuch Iſſue upon the King of *Spain* and his Iſſue, the *Hungarians* ſwearing an Abſolute Allegiance inſtead of the Conditional they had promiſed to his Anceſtors; and accordingly he was crowned King of *Hungary* the 9th Day of *December*. He was born the 26th Day of *July*, 1678, and is a Prince of great Expectation.

This Kingdom doth pretend it ſelf to be Elective, and to have ſpecial Privileges indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was ſo in both reſpects, the laſt eſpecially; King *Andrew* giving Authority to his Prelates, Peers, and other People, *Ut ſine nota alicujus Infidelitatis, &c.* that without any imputation of Diſloyalty they might contradict, oppoſe, and reſiſt their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their Liberty of Elections and pretence of Privileges have been ſo ſhaken and reſtrained by their Kings of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, that the Elections are become a matter of Formality only, and their Privileges depending wholly on their Prince's pleaſure, now grown too potent for them to contend withal, unleſs they ſhould betray their Country into the hands of the *Turks*. To which ſome of them have expreſſed ſome ſtrong Inclinations, the Oppreſſions laid upon them by the *Auſtrian* Family being deemed unſufferable.

The Forces of this Kingdom, when it was entire, may beſt be ſeen by thoſe great Armies which they have brought into the Field againſt the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being ſince ſubdued, that which remains muſt not be thought able to anſwer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reaſonably expected from it. For at the Battel of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1596, there were 6000 *Hungarian* Horſe, and 10000 Foot of this Nation only; beſides thoſe of *Germany* and *Tranſylvania*: and the next year, notwithſtanding the Diſcomfiture of that Army, they raiſed no leſs than 20000 Horſe and Foot, on the noiſe of ſome Preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their Foot are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the People, who can but bring their Bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their Horſe (whom they call *Heyducks*) maintained in continual readineſs at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Couſins to the *Coſſacks*, almoſt as miſchievous as they, and hold as ſtrict Intelligence with the *Turks* as thoſe do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the Silver-Mines, out of which is yearly raiſed about a Million and a half of Guldens. *Maximilian* the ſecond made it up Two Millions, by ſeizing on the Lands of Cathedral and Collegiate Churches, and aſſigning Annual Penſions to the Biſhops, Cannons, and other Religious Perſons. Moſt of which Sum comes clearly to the Emperor's Coffers, the Preſidiary Soldiers being paid with Contribution-Money raiſed upon the Country; and the Lieutenant General, whoſe Entertainment comes to 30000 Dollars yearly, defrayed upon their Purſes alſo.

The chief Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of the *Dragon*, inſtituted by *Sigiſmund*, Emperor and King hereof, at ſuch time as by the Council of *Conſtance* againſt *John Hus* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the ſharpneſs of his Sword proved upon their Followers, he had caſt down (as he conceived) the Dragon of Hereſie and Schiſm. But the Device proved of no long continuance, expiring almoſt with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the Hunn, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are ſaid to have been *Guels*, a Falcon diſplayed *Or*, membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time are Barrewiſe of eight pieces, *Guels* and *Argent*.

The 13th of *April*, 1690, the ſtrong Fort of *Caniſa* was ſurrendred to the *Germans*, which was all the Places the *Turks* then had in the Lower *Hungary*. So that the Emperor was then poſſeſſed of all the Places as far as *Niſſa*, on the Weſtern ſide of the *Danube*; but on the Eaſtern the *Turks* had *Grand-Waradin*, *Giula*, *Lippa* and *Temeſware*; but the firſt was much ſtreightned by a Blockade.

There are in *HUNGARY*.

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.

And ſo much for *HUNGARY*.

OF SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*, from which it is parted by the River *Drinus*, and a Line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the Weſt with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Iſtria* in the Seignioury of *Venice*, from which laſt it is divided by the River *Arſia*; on the North with *Hungary*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Sclaves*, or *Sclavi*, a *Sarmatian* People, of whom more anon.

The preſent *Sclavonia* is but a ſmall (if any) part of that here deſcribed by *Heylin*, and is bounded on the North by the *Drave*, which parts it from the Lower *Hungary* on the Eaſt by the *Danube*, dividing it from the Upper *Hungary*; on the South by the *Save*, which ſeparates it from *Croatia*, *Boſnia*, and *Servia*; and on the Weſt it has *Carniola* and *Stiria*, and it is in length from Weſt to Eaſt 50 *German* Miles, in breadth 12; which is but a ſmall part of our Author's *Sclavonia*.

It contains in length from *Aſira* to the River *Drinus*, according to *Pliny*'s Computation, 800 *Italian* Miles, the greateſt breadth being 325 of the ſame Miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 Miles: who may be reconciled with *Pliny* by ſuppoſing this, that theſe laſt meaſure in a ſtraight and direct Line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coaſted by the Creeks and Reaches of the *Adriatick*. It is ſituate in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the ſixth and ſeventh Climates; ſo that the longeſt Day in Summer is about fifteen Hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitful of all thoſe Commodities which are found in *Italy*, to which it is little inferiour; yielding not only Wine and Oil in very good plenty, but good ſtore of Cattel; and of wild Beaſts of pleaſure is no want at all; ſome rich Veins alſo of Gold and Silver. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold for the moſt part, lying under Snows, not capable of Wine, or any the like Productions which require much Heat. But even theſe mountainous parts afford very good Paſturage, and breed a wealthy race of Sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are ſhorn four times. Nor do the Sea-coaſts come behind in advancing the Profit of the People, not only yielding ſtore of Fiſh, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The People are couragious, proud, ſtubborn, and untractable, of ſtrong Bodies and able Conſtitutions, fit for works of Drudgery; and ſo employed by the *Venetians*, when firſt brought under their Command: who, uſing them in all ſervile Offices both at home and abroad, occaſioned the neighbouring Nations to call their Villains or Bond-ſervants, as they of *Venice* did by the name of *Sclaves*; that being originally as to this People the name, not of their Condition, but of their Anceſtors and Country.

The Chriſtian Faith was here planted, I mean in reference to this People who do now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the Bald, Emperor of the Weſt, *Anno* 877, *Sueropilus* being the firſt of their Kings who embraced the Goſpel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church are both allowed of; that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the Eaſt parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Weſtern. But here it is to be obſerved, that though this People, according to their Diviſion into Eaſt and Weſt; follow the Rights and Ceremonies of thoſe ſeveral Churches; yet on both ſides it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the uſage of the Church of *Rome* in all places elſe. And yet the People are not all of the Chriſtian Faith, the *Turkiſh* and *Mahometan* prevailing in thoſe Towns and Territories under their Obedience.

But though they be not of one Religion, they are all of one Language, which is the old *Sarmatian* (or, *Sclavonian*) Tongue, generally ſpoken in the Empire of *Ruſſia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, ſome part of *Hungary*, *Iſtria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Aſia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other Soldiers of the *Turkiſh* Empire: the Language generally ſpreading over all thoſe Countries which either were *Sarmatian* in their firſt Original, or made theirs by Conqueſt under the united name of *Sclaves*, or otherwiſe intermix'd with them by the neceſſity of Commerce and Trade, or diſpatch of their common Buſineſſes. Inſomuch as, taking in the Subdiviſions of the Provinces and Countries before ſpecified, it is affirmed by *Geſner*, a right learned Man, that there are no fewer than threeſcore Nations which have the *Sclavonian* Tongue for their vulgar Language.

Chief Mountains in this Country are, thoſe called *Scardonici*, (from *Scardona*, one of the beſt Towns of *Illyris*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midſt, and extending along the Coaſts thereof; by *Ptolomy* called *Ardium*. Of Rivers thoſe of ſpecial note amongſt the Ancients were, 1. *Titius*, now *Variecha*; ſeparating *Illyris* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Arſia*, now *Arſa*, the utmoſt bound upon the Weſt; as, 3. *Drinus* is upon the Eaſt: of which the firſt falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Goldo di Quernero* (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Ancients;) the other into the *Saw* or *Savus*, ſomewhat Weſt of *Belgrade*. 4. *Narron*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and Land-Marks being thus ſet out, I ſhould proceed to the Diviſion of the Country as now it ſtandeth. But I muſt firſt look on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: in whoſe time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arſia* to the *Titius* was named *Liburnia* and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinis* was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the ſtouter and more warlike People, and ſuch as created greateſt Troubles to the *Romans*, it pleaſed the Conquerors, when they had fully ſubdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Illycum*; and not ſo only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the Dioceſe of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*; for ſo far the Juriſdiction of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Illyricum* did at firſt extend. *Huic Præfecto* (ſaith *Zoſimus*) Conſtantinus, *ejus Inſtitutor*, Macedones *attribuit*, Theſſalos, Cretenſes, Græciam, *& circumjacentes Inſulas*, Epirum *utramque*, Illyricos, Dracos, Triballos, & Pannonias, Valeriam *uſque &* Myſiam *ſuperiorem*. And that all theſe did then paſs by the name of *Illyricum* appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the Life of *Claudius* the ſecond, expreſly ſaying, *Illyricum, Thracas, Myſos, Dacos, Dalmatia, & Pannonias continebat*; as by that of *Socrates* the Hiſtorian, who, *lib.* 32. *cap.* 10. calleth *Sirmium* the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, and *lib.* 5. *cap.* 6. *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *Urbes Illyricas* or *Illyrian* Cities. By which account *Illyricum*, in the largeſt extent of that name, contained no leſs than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to ſay, 1. *Noricum Mediterraneum*, 2. *Noricum Ripenſe*, 3. *Pannonia Superior*, 4. *Pannonia Inferior*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Savia*, 7. *Dalmatia*, 8. *Mœſia Superior*, 9. *Dardania*, 10. *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11. *Dacia Ripenſis*, 12. *Macedonia*, 13. *Theſſaly*, 14. *Achaia*, 15. *Crete*, 16. *Epirus Vetus*, 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Prævalitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three Dioceſes, *viz.* the Dioceſs of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called, containing the ſeven firſt, 2. the Dioceſs of *Macedon*, containing the ſeven laſt, and 3. the Dioceſs of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four, were governed by the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief Seat and Reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the Diviſion of the Empire betwixt the Sons of *Theodoſius* the Great into the Eaſtern and Weſtern, the Dioceſs of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the Weſtern Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*; and thereupon the Seat of Reſidence of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum* removed from *Sirmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter Notion, as a Dioceſs of the Weſtern Empire, containing the ſeven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonia's*, and *Valeria*, (if at leaſt *Stiermark* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remains only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this Country lying on both ſides of the *Savus*, (whence it had the name;) the laſt, thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the Sea, known by the ancient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called being added to it. But as new Lords give new Laws, ſo they give new Names: the Country being divided by the *Sclavi* into two Kingdoms, *viz.* of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*; of which the firſt contained the Province of *Savia*, the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelf alone, being the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi* is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*, we find it ſubdivided into theſe 6 parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Windiſchland*, 2. *Croatia*, 3. *Boſnia*, 4. *Dalmatia*, 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Sclavonian* Iſland.

1. WINDISCHLAND.

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with part of the Lower *Hungary*, from which it is ſeparated by a Line drawn from St. *Nicolas* near the River *Dravus*, to the Town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which falls into the *Savus*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*, on the North with the River *Dravus*, on the South with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch*, as the Land or Country of the *Winnithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windiſch*; and anciently, for ſo much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*, till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their Poſſeſſions, from them named *Wendiſchland*, as before.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Windiſch-gratz*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Vemundria* and *Vindomana* of the Ancients. 3. *Sagona*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiskia*, on the South, and 4. *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5. *Novigrad*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petrowyna*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*; and divided *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7. *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſaken*, (the *Siſſia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) ſituate on the *Sau*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Kulp*; famous for the notable Reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found, *Anno* 1593, who, hoping by the Conqueſt of this Province to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entered it with a puiſſant Army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowitz*, and the ſtrong Town of *Wihits* in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their Batteries and Aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccor them: by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were ſlain in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus* as they fled haſtily and (through that great haſte) blindly from the Sword of the Conqueror.

This Province, for the moſt part, is under the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the Tyranny and Bondage of the *Turkiſh* Garriſons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North with *Windiſchland*, from which it is parted by the River *Una* or *Wana*, on the Eaſt with *Boſnia*, on the South with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*. The reaſon of the name I find not among my Authors, but only impoſed by the *Sclaves* at the firſt coming hither; who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the Mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*, including *Boſnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Country is for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the Branches of the Mountains *Babii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, yet reaſonably fruitful, ſtored with all neceſſary Proviſions for the life of man, and would yield more increaſe and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*, to whoſe Tyranny and Oppreſſions it hath been and is ſtill expoſed. The People for the general are held to be good Soldiers, mentioned in our modern Stories by the name of *Crabats*, or *Croats*.

Chief Towns in it are, 1. *Maſch*, or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Ancients. 2. *Oſtrowitz*, a ſtrong Fort on the ſame Frontier. 3. *Wihits*, or *Vihitz*, by the *Dutch* called *Bibighn*, by the Ancients *Funium*, the Metropolis or chief place of the Country, encompaſſed like an Iſland by the River *Una*, and fortified with ſtrong Works by the help of Art; but taken by the *Turk*, *Anno* 1592, and all the Soldiers in it cruelly murthered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the Surrendry. 4. *Zeng*, 5. *Wackat*, 6. *Tarnaw*, 7. *Modriſch*, of which little memorable.

This Country, with the reſt included anciently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Sclavonia*; the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007 the *Venetians* having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Towns on the Sea-ſide, firſt ſet footing there: How the whole Country of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary* ſhall be ſhewn anon. It is held a part of it, in the right thereof, by the Houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turks*, in the way of Conqueſt: the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOS-

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Servia*, a Province of *Dacia*; on the Weſt with *Croatia*, on the North with the River *Savus*, parting it from *Sclavonia* properly ſo call'd, and the Eaſt parts of the Lower *Hungary*, on the South with *Dalmatia*. So called, as ſome think, from the River *Boſna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Beſſi*, a People of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither, by the Change of a Vowel called *Boſſi*, whence the Country *Boſnia*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Jaicza*, by the *Latines* called *Jazyga*, ſituate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof it is almoſt encompaſſed with two Rivers, which there uniting paſs from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reaſon of the rocky Precipices of the Hill, the Unfordableneſs of the River, and an inacceſſible Caſtle, is held to be impregnable: the Metropolis in former times of this petit Kingdom, and the ordinary Sepulchre for the Kings thereof. It was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1530, or thereabouts. 2. *Warboſoni*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3. *Cazach*, the uſual Reſidence or Retiring-place of the *Boſnian* Kings. 4. *Schwanica*, not much obſervable. 5. *Doroziba*, the firſt Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his Conqueſt of this Kingdom; as 6. *Cliſſa* was the laſt, the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it. This Town in the year 1648, was taken from the *Turks* by the *Venetians*.

This Country anciently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom; but the preciſe time when, I find not. Some ſay about the year 1420, If ſo, a Kingdom of late date, and ſhort continuance. For in the year 1464 *Mahomet* the Great, firſt Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Conſtantinople*, and almoſt all the reſt of *Greece*, caſt his eye upon it, ſuddenly ſurprized it, and having taken *Stephen* the laſt King hereof, moſt barbarouſly commanded him to be flay'd alive. After whoſe death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and governed by one of the *Baſſa's* of it, as it ſtill continueth.

The *BANS* and Kings of *BOSNIA*.

1. *Budimirus*, who was alſo called *Swetoplekus*, the firſt Chriſtian King of *Dalmatia* and *Servia*, in the diviſion of his Province parted *Surbia*, his Northern Province into two Regions, which he call'd *Boſnia* and *Ruſcia*, whereof the firſt lies between the River *Drin* to the Eaſt, and Mount *Pinus* to the Weſt. In theſe Provinces he Inſtituted *Bans* which were Governours, and *Giupans* or *Zupans* which were Sheriffs: whereupon the *Bans* in times following were called *Megajupani*, or *Magni-Jupani*, by the Greek and Latin Writers reſpectively. Theſe Governours in time ſhaked off the Yoke, and became Sovereign Princes in *Boſnia*.

2. *Creſcimirus*, Brother of *Predimirus*, and Son of *Tieſcimirus*, driving the *Ban* of *Boſnia* by force of Arms into *Hungary*, and joyned *Croatia* to it, which he had before as Succeſſor to *Cidomirus* his Uncle.

3. *Stephen* the Son of *Creſcimirus*, ſucceeded his Father, and maintained a good correſpondence with the *Raguſians*.

4. *Legetus* a Baſtard Son of *Stephen*, he rebelled againſt the lawful off-ſpring of his Father after his death.

5. *Wimirus* a Son of *Stephen*, recovered *Boſnia*, out of the hands of *Legetus*.

994 6. *Creſcimirus* ſecond, Brother to *Wimirus*, who is called by the *Venetian* Writers *Murcimirus*, and was King of *Croatia*, and *Boſnia*, 994, and 1015. This Prince had only one Daughter, who was married to a King of *Hungary*.

7. *Stephen* the 2. who reigned about the year 1080.

8. *Thwartkus Ban* of *Boſnia*.

9. *Borichius*, or *Boritzius*, or *Boritius*, who was beaten by the Inhabitants of *Raguza*, about the year 1154. Theſe laſt were ſubject to *Servia*.

10. *Culinus*, or *Culienus*, ſucceeded *Borichius*, and in ſome Letters of Pope Innocent the third, is called *Bacilinus*, but in others more truly *Ban Culinus*. He lived about the year 1171, at firſt he imbraced the *Roman* Rites, but became latter-wards a *Pateran*, or *Waldenſian*. The Pope hereupon in the year 1200, wrote to the King of *Hungary*, to force this *Ban* to purge his Country of *Hereſie*, on pain of being depoſed. Which *Emericus*, then King of *Hungary*, accordingly endeavoured. He reigned above 36 years.

11. *Zibiſclaus*, to whom Pope *Gregory* the 9th wrote about the year 1236, who was a zealous *Roman Catholick*, but being not able to extirpate the *Hereſie* of his Country, the Pope imployed *Caloman* Duke of *Sclavonia*, Brother of *Bela* 3d. King of *Hungary*, with an Army in this Pious Work, who yet could not totally effect it, though he entered *Boſnia* with a powerful Army.

12. *Ninoſlauus*, was *Ban* of *Boſnia* about the year 1244, and joined with the Inhabitants of *Splatro*, againſt them of *Traguria*, by which he brought upon himſelf an *Hungarian* War.

13. *Paulus*, Son of *Stepcon*, *Ban* of *Dalmatia* and *Croatia*; he was alſo *Ban* of *Servia* under *Vladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*. He reigned in the years 1284 and 1307.

14. *Mladinus*, was called Prince of *Croatia* and *Boſnia*, in the Life of *Paul* his Father in the year 1302, and was taken by *Charles* King of *Hungary* in the year 1322.

1302 15. *Stephen* 3. ſucceeded *Mladinus*, though he was not of his Family. *Stephen* the third Son of the former *Stephen*, a Prudent and a moderate Prince. He lived in the years 1326 and 1345, and died in 1357.

1357 16. *Thwartkus*, the Son of *Vladiſlaus*, ſucceeded his Uncle *Stephen* when he was 22 years of Age, and governed his people with great Prudence and Moderation. Yet one *Paul Culizichius* or *Cluſichius*, made a defection from him, who was taken by this young Prince. Hereupon *Lewis* King of *Hungary* invited him to his Court, as Congratulating his good Fortune, but detained him till he parted with ſome of his Country for his Liberty. During this his ſtay in *Hungary*, they ſet up *Wchius* his Brother, whom at his return he drove out of *Boſnia*, he fled into *Hungary*, and *Lewis* eſpouſed his Quarrel. This War ended in the year 1366, when he aſſumed the Title of King of *Boſnia*, and was Crowned by the Abbot of *Mileſven*, by the name of *Stephen Myrces*, with this Prince, *Gregory* the 2. and *Urban* the 5th, had many tranſactions, as alſo with *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, for the extirpating the *Waldenſis* out of *Boſnia*. He prevailed in his Old Age againſt the *Turks* alſo, who then firſt invaded *Boſnia*, and after a peaceable Reign died in the year 1591, without lawful Iſſue.

1391 18. *Stephen* the Fifth, called *Daviſcia*, the Baſtard of *Stephen*, his Brother ſucceeded him in all his Dominions. He died Childleſs in the year 1396.

1396 19. *Thwartkus* II. *Scurus* Baſtard Son of *Thwartkus* I. was crowned King of *Boſnia* after *Stephen* the 5th, but reigned but a ſhort time.

20. *Oſtvia Chriſtichius*, the Son of *Paul*, of the Family of *Sablanowich*, uſurped upon *Thwartkus* the ſecond, pretending he was not of the the Royal Family ; which cauſed a Civil War in which the *Turks* took part with *Thwartkus*. *Oſtvia* in the year 1403 invaded the *Raguſians*.

1415 21. *Stephen* 6. called *Oſtoichus*, or *Oſtoia*, was Elected King of *Boſnia*, with him *Thwartkus* the ſecond joyned againſt *Oſtoia* in the year 1422. This War was ended by the Nobility of *Boſnia*, upon Condition theſe three ſhould all be ſtiled Kings of *Boſnia*. *Stephen* died unmarried ſoon after, *Oſtoia* in 1435, and *Thwartkus* having ſurvived his Rivals, died ſole King of *Boſnia*, in the year 1443.

22. *Stephen* 7. *Thomaſcus* Son of *Paul Jabelo* which upon the Death of *Thwartkus*, was preſently proclaimed King of *Boſnia*, by the Nobility of that Kingdom, who being a *Manichean*, preſently abjured that opinion, received Baptiſm from a *Roman* Cardinal, and in 1449 baniſhed out of his Kingdom all thoſe of that Sect who would not Conform. *Eugenius*, the then Pope, ſent him a Crown, and would have perſwaded him to ſet up the Latin Rites in *Boſnia*, but he fearing the *Turks* his too near Neighbours, refuſed the Overture. Refuſing after this to joyn with the Chriſtians againſt the *Turks*, *Matthias* King of *Hungary* ſurrender'd up againſt him *Stephen* his Son, and *Radiovoius* his brother, by whom he was ſtrangled in his Bed, and a Rumour ſpread abroad, that he died of an Old Diſtemper. *Catherine* his Queen call'd in *Mahomet* 2. to puniſh theſe Paracides, who glad of the opportunity came with great Forces. The Queen thereupon went to *Rome*, where ſhe died in the year 1458.

1456 23. *Stephen* 8. the baſe Son of the former *Stephen*, ſucceeded in his Fathers Kingdom, ſorely laid at by the *Turks*, and purſued by the Divine Vengeance for the Murder of his innocent Father. The *Sultan* in 1457, only rifled his Kingdom, but in 1458 finding him averſe to Peace, and enraged with his ill uſage of his Ambaſſadors ; *Mahomet* entered *Boſnia* with a powerful Army, and took the wretched Prince Priſoner, and cut off his head, contrary to his promiſe given him. *Radiovoius*, underwent the ſame puniſhment, at the ſame time alſo. Pope *Paul* the ſecond, ſaith *Mahomet*, ſlew *Stephen* with his own hands in a Bull dated in the year 1464. The ſame thing is mentioned by *Pius* the 2. in the year 1463.

1467 24. In the year 1467, the *Boſnians* by the Procurement of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, endeavoured to regain their Liberty, and expel the *Turks* by calling in the *Hungarians*, others ſay one *Nichauus*, was made King of *Boſnia* by his means. He held out till the year 1473. In 1482, the Chriſtians recovered it again, how long they then kept it, I find not.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Albania*, from which it is parted by the River *Drino* ; on the Weſt with the *Titius*, (now *Varieca*) which divides it from *Liburnia* ; on the North with *Boſnia*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Sclavonia* retaineth its ancient Name and Bounds. So called from *Dalminium*, the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the People were called *Dalmatæ*, and the Country *Dalmatia*.

Dalmatia, in the flouriſhing times of the Greek Empire, contained all that Coaſt or Country which lieth between *Durazzo*, (*Dyrcachium*) to the South, the Mountains of *Iſtria* to the North, and extended from the *Adriatick* Sea on the Weſt, to the *Danube* on the Eaſt, which was then inhabited by various People, and contained then in it the Provinces of *Morlachia*, *Croatia*, *Boſnia*, *Dalmatia* and *Servia*, but it ſtood then divided into the Provinces of *Dioclea*, in which was *Dyrrachium*, *Terbunia*, *Zachlumia*, *Pagania*, *Croatia* and *Servia*, and that part which has now Appropriated to it ſelf the name of the whole, was then call'd *Croatia Baptizata* by the Greeks. This vaſt Country was then poſſeſſed by the *Sclaves*, who had erected in it divers Kingdoms, which they defended with great Courage againſt the Greeks, and the Barbarous Nations which afterwards invaded them. *Du Freſne*, *De Familis Bizantinis*. p. 295.

The Country in the time of the *Romans* was full of Woods, and thoſe Woods of Robbers, who from thence iſſued out to make Spoil and Booty. *Dalmatæ ſub Sylvis agunt*, *inde ad Latrocinia promptiſſimi*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. And by the advantage of theſe Woods they intercepted and diſcomfited *Gabinius*, one of *Cæſars* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 Horſe and 15 Companies of Foot towards *Macedonia*, to the Aid of his General againſt *Pompey*. But their Woods being deſtroyed, they became more peaceable, and, inſtead of Robberies by Land, began to exerciſe themſelves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coaſt and commodious Havens ſerved exceeding fitly.

Places of moſt conſideration in it are, 1. *Sebenico*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from the Influx of *Titius* or *Variecha* ; by *Ptolomy* called *Sicum*, in whoſe time a Colony of *Roman* Soldiers was ſent hither by the Emperor *Claudius*. This place has 4 times humbled the Pride and Fury of the *Ottoman* Forces, and is ſtill under the *Venetians*. 2. *Salona*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, one of the Juridicial Reſorts for theſe parts of the Province, and the ordinary Arſenal for their Natives. Renowed in ancient Stories for the Retreat of *Diocleſian*, a native of this Country, who, having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much Felicity, but a great deal of Cruelty, depoſed himſelf, and retired to this City, where he followed the Trade of a Gardner, working with his own hands, and obſerving with great content the productions of Nature. Inſomuch that when *Maximianus Herculeus*, his Aſſociate (who at his perſwaſion had done the like) invited him to reſume the Empire, he returned this anſwer. *Utinam poſſitis viſere Olera noſtris manibus plantata*, &c. That if he would come unto *Salona*, and ſee how well the Worts which he had planted with his own hands did thrive and proſper, he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters : a rare expreſſion of a ſettled and contented mind. The name and ſome of the Ruins do ſtill remain, to preſerve the memory of ſo remarkable a place. This City was once 7 or 8 miles in compaſs, but is now only Ruines and Fields of Corn. It lies 4 miles from *Cliſſa*. 3. *Spalato*, Eaſt of *Sebenico* ; a Sea Town, and an Archbiſhop's See, who writes himſelf Primate of *Dalmatia* ; as anciently and of right he was, till the Biſhop of *Venice*, being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, *Anno* 1450, aſſumed that Title to himſelf, together with a Superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as ſubordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antoninus de Dominis*, who, ſeeming to loath the *Romiſh* Superſtition, came for Refuge into *England Anno* 1616, and having here both by Preaching and Writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what Projects he declared himſelf to be of another mind, *Anno* 1622, and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may ſay of him, as *Socrates* in his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory ſaith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Conſtantius* was a Chriſtian, under *Julian* a Pagan, and a Chriſtian again under *Jovenian*, Τοιοῦτος μὲν ἦν κοῦφος καὶ εὐχερὴς Ἐκεβόλιος πρότερόν τε καὶ ὕστερον, *So wavering and unconſtant a Turn-Coat was* Ecebolius *from his beginning to his end*. But *Ecebolius* ſped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his Repentance: but this infatuated man was impriſoned in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, and his dead Body burnt to aſhes. A juſt reward for ſo great Levity and ſo groſs Apoſtaſie as he ſhewed unto the World in his going hence. This City in the year 1420, deſtroyed an Army of *Turks* which came againſt it. Mr. *Wheler*, p. 15. has given us an exact plat of this place, which is about 400 miles from *Venice*. 4. *Almiſſa*, the *Piguntium* of *Ptolomy*, mounted on a high Rock, and defended with an impregnable Caſtle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and ſpacious *Cherſoneſe*, not far from which the River *Naron* (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Caſtel Novo*, a ſtrong Fortreſs within the Gulf of *Cattaro*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, but taken in the year 1687 by the *Venetians*, after a ſharp defence made by the *Turks*. Mr. *Wheler* repreſents the figure of this place, page 28. 7. *Antivari*, on the farther or Eaſtern ſide of the Bay, an Archbiſhops See; but that and the Sees of his Suffragan Biſhops being ſeven in number, are now in the poſſeſſion of the *Turks*. 8. *Cattaro*, on the ſame ſide of the Bay; by *Ptolomy* called *Aſcrivium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a ſtrong hold for the *Venetians* againſt the *Turks*, and giving name unto the Gulf, which formerly called *Sinus Rhizonicus*, from *Rhizana*, (now *Riſine*) ſituate at the bottom of it, is at this time called from this Town *Golfo de Catarro*. 9. *Dulcigno*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians* and therefore called *Colchinium* by ſome ancient Writers. It may contain at this day 7 or 8000 Souls. 10. *Scutari*, more within the Land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolomy* and *Antonius*) ſtrongly ſeated on a ſteep Rock, memorable for the ſtout Reſiſtance which it made for a whole year againſt the whole Puiſſance of *Mahomet* the 2. battered for the moſt part of that time with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigneſs, eſpecially that called the *Princes piece*, which carried a Stone or Bullet of 1200 *l.* weight; but taken at the laſt, *Anno* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake called by *Strabo Labeatis*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compaſs, and environed on all ſides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which iſſueth the *Drinus*, now called *Drino*, or *Drina*, which parting *Sclavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, paſſeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Aleſio*, the *Liſſus* of *Ptolomy*, the fartheſt Town of all *Dalmatia* towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here, whereof more hereafter. 12. *Medon*, raiſed out of the Ruines of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous City, the Birth-place of the Great Emperor *Diocleſian*, ſpoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the Metropolis of this Province, ſituate on the River *Drinus*; firſt ſacked by *Marcus Figulus*, a *Roman* Conſul, *Anno V. C.* 689, and after, on a new Revolt, by one *Naſica*, ſpoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two ſuch Ruins to revive again; nothing being now left of it but the name and memory.

Betwixt the *Cherſoneſe* of *Stagno* and the Gulf of *Cattaro* ſtands the Town and Territory of *RAGUSI*; not ſubject, as all the reſt are, either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themſelves by their own Laws and Magiſtrates, as a free Commonwealth: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 Zecchins yearly in a way of Tribute, and as much in Preſents; diſcharged in that regard of Cuſtoms and Impoſitions in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponneſus*). But that Town being raiſed by the *Goths*, the Inhabitants, (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themſelves, built this in the place of it, at the Foot of a ſteep Mountain; enjoying a pleaſant ſituation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port, forced out of the water by the art and induſtry of workmen. The Town is well built, fortified with Walls and a well-furniſhed Caſtle; now an Archbiſhops See, and a noted Empory; rich and ſtrong in Shipping, commanding over a ſmall and barren Territory within the Land, and ſome pleaſant Iſlands in the Sea. So that the Riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues riſing out of the Earth, but by the benefit of their Traffick upon the Waters: in which they are ſecured by the Protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other ſide preſerved by the State of *Venice* from being a Prey to their Protectors. They were of more Wealth heretofore than they are at preſent, at what time they traded to moſt parts of this Weſtern world in thoſe great Veſſels which from hence were called *Raguſes*, but corruptly *Argoſies*; the laſt of which (their number leſſening with their Trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the War of *England*, *Anno* 1588, in which Action it was loſt and wrecked on the Coaſt of *Ireland*. This City in the year 1686, deſired the Protection of the Emperor.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *Dalmatia*, or *Croatia Baptizata*, from *du Freſne*.

1. The *Avares* and *Huns* paſſing the *Danube* in the Reign of *Heraclius*, and invading theſe Provinces, that Prince (who was much weakened by *Coſroes* King of *Perſia*, and the *Sarazens*) called in the *Croats*, who were then his Alies and Friends, and lived under the Command of one *Porga*; and gave them the Province, on Condition they ſhould drive out the *Avares*, who had began to ſettle in it. They accordingly entered it, and in a Battle defeated the *Avares*, and forcing them to return home, made themſelves Maſters of the Country, and imbraced the Chriſtian Faith; after which they lived under Elective Princes, which were confirmed by the Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, as an acknowledgment of their dependance on that Empire. *Heraclius* ended his Reign in the year of *Chriſt* 640. So that before that time, this Kingdom was erected, but the preciſe time is not known to me.

817. 2. *Borna*, who ſubmitted to *Charles* the Great.

821 3. *Ladiſlavus*, or *Laduſclavus*, Nephew of *Borna*, was elected Duke of *Dalmatia*, with the conſent of the Emperor *Lewis*, the Gentle. *Porinus* named by *Porphyrogenetus*, but without the times in which he lived.

5. *Miſlavus*, *Muyſlavus*, or *Muvius*, about the years 836, and 839.

6. *Tirpimirus* Duke of *Dalmatia*, mentioned about the year 837, in a Charter of the Foundation of a Monaſtery.

7. To him ſucceeded *Creſimirus* his Son.

8. *Dirciſlaus* Son of *Creſimirus*, both mentioned by *Porphyrogenitus*. He reigned about the year 1000, and was the firſt that aſſumed the Stile of King of *Dalmatia*.

9. *Mircimirus* and *Surgina* his Sons, contended for the Kingdom, the eldeſt prevailing.

10. *Pribinna*, or *Pribunius* ſlew *Mircimirus*, and reigned under the Title of *Ban*.

11. *Godemirus*, *Ban* of *Dalmatia*, laid at by the Grand-children of *Mircimirus*, who ſought to recover the Kingdom. Their Names were *Swetſlauus*, *Creſimirus*, and *Goiſluus*.

12. *Creſimirus* prevailed, and was owned King in the year 1019, and 22, or rather in 1017.

13. *Stephen* Son of *Creſimirus*.

14. *Creſimirus* 3. called *Peter*, Son of *Stephen*, was King of *Dalmatia* in the year 1059.

15. *Slaviſo*, probably about the year 1075.

1076 16. *Demetrius Suinimirus*, of another Line, was King in the year 1078. He ſhook off the Yoke of the Greek Emperors in the times of *Michael Ducas*, under which till then his Predeceſſors had lived and took the Stile from Pope *Gregory* the ſeventh, he was living in 1087.

17. *Stephen* Son of *Creſimirus* 3. ſucceeded *Demetrius*, he dying without any Iſſue.

1091 18. *Almus*, made King by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*, in oppoſition to *Stephen*, the Kingdom being at the ſame time invaded, and as to the Sea Towns in part poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*, by the grant of *Alexius* Emperor of *Greece*.

1102 19. *Calomanus* King of *Dalmatia*, by the conſent of *Almus* his brother, who had then obtained the Kingdom of *Hungary*, upon the Death of *Ladiſlaus* his Uncle. He expelled the *Venetians* out of *Dalmatia* about the year 1111. And died in 1114.

1117 20. *Failerus* an *Hungarian*, re-expelled the *Venetians*, who returned after the Death of *Coloman Neeman*, King of *Servia*, taking the opportunity of theſe Broils, endeavoured to Conquer this Kingdom, but *Emmanuel* then Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, ſending great Forces to ſupport the *Dalmatian*, he return'd without doing any thing conſiderable, this expedition was in the year 1119. Thus the Emperor, the *Hungarians*, and the *Venetians* contended which ſhould be the Maſters of *Dalmatia*.

21. *Almericus* Son of *Bela*, the brother of *Stephen* 3. King of *Hungary*, became King of *Dalmatia*, and wore that Title in the year 1194, ſucceeding in it after his Father, for whoſe ſake *Emanuel* Emperor of *Greece*, made the expedition laſt mentioned. In 1203, the *Venetians* by the help of the *Franks* took *Zara*.

22. *Almericus*, after the Death of his Father, became King of *Hungary*, and reſigned *Dalmatia* to his brother *Andrew*, under the Title of Duke of *Sclavonia*, in the year 1198.

23. *Calomanus* his Son ſucceeded him, who was ſlain by the *Tartars*, who had then invaded *Hungary*.

24. *Bela* 4. King of *Hungary*, after this time ſent Viceroy's, who ſtiled themſelves *Bans* of *Dalmatia*, of which *Ladiſlaus* is mentioned in 1245. *Stephen* in 1251. The *Croats* ſet up alſo *Radicus* or *Strepcon*, and *Paulus* his Son after him, who under the Title of *Ban* reigned in 1311. To him ſucceeded *Maldinus* his Son, who defended *Zara* againſt the *Venetians* in 1313. About the ſame time *Gregory* the Brother of *Paul* was *Ban* of the *Maritim* parts, whoſe Son of the ſame name followed him. *Mladinus* in the interim growing great, became ſo inſolent, that his Subjects forced him to flee into *Hungary*, by which means the *Venetians* became much greater than before.

Charles King of *Hungary*, thereupon ſent *Banovichius*, *Nicholaus* and *Mihacus* his *Bans*, into *Dalmatia*; and *Lewis* the Succeſſor of *Charles*, in the year 1344, ſent an Army againſt this Country, which ſubdued the Inhabitants, and drove out the *Venetians* in the year 1381. After this *Emericus Bubelus* in 1382, *Stephanus*, *Laſchovichius* and *Thomas*, were ſucceſſively *Bans* under *Lewis*. And *Mary* under *Sigiſmund*. *Joannes Chus*, and *Joannes Horwathus*: *Sigiſmund* recovered *Dalmatia*, and in the year 1409, ſold *Zara* to the *Venetians*, who in 1420 by a Fleet reduced all the Sea Coaſt under them, which 3 years after were reſigned by *Sigiſmund* by Treaty, and from thence forward they kept it, the Kings of *Hungary* long after poſſeſſing the Title.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Country of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* ſpecially ſo named, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Dalmatia*, on the Weſt with *Iſtria*, on the North with *Croatia*, and on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long diſcontinued) from *Zara* the chief Town thereof, the *Jadera* of *Ptolomy* and the Ancients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbiſhops See, enjoying a ſafe and large Port, and ſituate on a low Cherſoneſe thruſting out like a Promontory into the *Adriatick*, belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom it is well fenced and fortified againſt foreign Invaſions. For the poſſeſſion and command of this Town there have been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and the *Venetians*, to whom it ſeemeth to be of ſuch importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, pretending againſt *Sigiſmund* of *Luxemburg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of S. *John de Malvaſia*, which was built by a company of Sailers, who, being in a tempeſt, made a Vow, that, if they eſcaped, they would conſecrate a Temple to S. *John de Malvaſia*, whoſe Morter ſhould be tempered with Malmſey: and accordingly they paid their Vows. Far leſs did another Maſter of a Ship intend to perform his Promiſe, though he ſpoke bigger, who, in a like extremity of Danger, promiſed our Lady to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main Maſt of his Ship: For when one of his Mates jogging him, told him he had promiſed an impoſſibility: Tuſh, Fool, (replied the Maſter) we muſt ſpeak her fair in time of need; but if ever I come aſhore, I will make her be content with a Candle of Eight to the pound. And in a like fit of Devotion was he who on the ſame occaſion plainly told God, that he was no common Beggar, he never troubled him with Prayers before; and if he would hear him at that time, he would never trouble him again. The Learned Mr. *Wheler*, has given us the Plat of this Town, in his Journey into *Greece*, p. 8.

Other Towns herein conſiderable are, 1. *Albona*, retaining ſtill the old name, (the *Alvona* of *Ptolomy*) ſituate near the River *Arſia*, the Divider of this Province from *Iſtria*. 2. *Flavona* or *Flanona*, ſituate againſt the Gulf of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongſt Sailers, for frequent Tempeſts raiſed on every Wind. 3. *Zegna*, by *Ptolomy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, ſituate on a Flat or Level. 4. *Nona*, of old called *Ænona*, compaſſed with the Sea. 5. *Scriſſia*, now a poor Village, in the place where ſtood the *Argyruntum* of *Pliny*. 6. *Scardona*, now a mean Village alſo, heretofore of great note, and the Juridical Reſort for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring Mountains had the name of *Scardonici*, the Bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is ſaid, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium* or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividentia* of the whole *Illyricum*. The People hereof, called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to Piracies; and for the better ſpeed therein, the Authors and Inventors of thoſe ſwift Veſſels which were called *Liburnicæ* and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*.

Ibis Liburnis *inter alta navium,*
Amice, propugnacula.
That is to ſay,
In *Liburnian* ſhalt thou be
Amongſt the ſtouteſt Ships at Sea.

In imitation of which Veſſels, being ſwift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their Wealth and Pride, invented a kind of Chair or Litter (ſuch as thoſe we call Sedans) wherein they were carried on Mens Shoulders with ſuch eaſe and pleaſure, that they could not only ſleep or read, but write in them alſo. The Porters or Bearers of them were of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the Faſhion of the Veſſel which they did reſemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of theſe thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyr,

Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret ſuper ora Liburno,
Atque obiter leget, aut ſcribet, vel dormiet intus.
Namque facit Somnum clauſa Lectica feneſtra.

Thus *Engliſhed* by my honoured Friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent Tranſlation of that harſh Satyriſt:

When buſineſs calls, a Crowd the rich Man ſhuns,
And o'er Mens Heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, writes, and ſleeps within it, as he goes:
For Sleep will come if he the Curtains cloſe.

Beſides which Office of Chair-carriers, or Sedan-men, as we call them now, this People being, when once conquered, a ſervile Nation, furniſhed the *Romans* with thoſe Beadles whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the Fields to their publick Buſineſſes: to whom the ſame Poet alludeth in the next Satyr, ſaying, *Clamante* Liburno, *Currite jam ſedet*, &c. But to proceed. The nearneſs of this Country to the *Adriatick* occaſioned the Bay of *Quernero*, or *Cornaro*, as ſome call it, commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be ſometimes named *Sinus Laburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other ſide of it to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a Shole of Iſlands lying on the Coaſt hereof, 60 at leaſt in number, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. To which and other Iſlands of the *Adriatick* we are now to haſten, leaving the Stories of *Illyricum* to the cloſe of all.

6. The *SCLAVONIAN Iſlands*.

ALong the Coaſts of *Sclavonia* lie a cluſter of *Iſlands*, [illegible] to the number of a thouſand, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, moſt of which (if indeed ſo many) are but Rocks, not Iſlands, or not inhabited at all, nor of any note. The Principal whereof, and ſuch as deſerve place here, are, 1. the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abſyrtides*. 3. The Iſles of *Raguſia*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Liſſa* and *Brazzia*; the reſt not being worth the looking after as to our Deſign. The whole number of the Inhabitants is reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 Perſons.

1. The *LIBURNADES*, ſaid by *Strabo* to be ſixty in number, lie all along the Coaſts of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*. The chief whereof are, 1. *Iſſa*, now called *Pago*, containing 100 Miles in compaſs, having a Town of the ſame name; but in all that Tract of ground not above 1500 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by reaſon of the ſharp Air, and great want of Fewel. The Salt-pits here yield great Commodity not only to the People themſelves, but alſo to the State of *Venice*, Supreme Lords hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Trau* and *Trahu*, ſo called from the chief Town hereof, built by thoſe of *Iſſa*: ſo near the Continent, that it ſeems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with ſome little difference. 3. *Pharus*, ſo called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom it was once a Colony; long ſince come to Ruine. It is now called *Leſina*, the greateſt of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 Miles in compaſs, and very Fruitful for the bigneſs. It hath a Town of the ſame name, which enjoys a ſafe and ſpacious Harbour; unwalled and of no great beauty, but Fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the Shipping in it. The Birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, ſo often mentioned in the Stories of *Greece* and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, ſo called from the River *Abſyrtus*, which thereabouts falls into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*;

Et cadit Adriaces *ſpumans* Abſyrtus *in undas*.
Abſyrtus foaming with his haſt,
Into the *Adria* falls at laſt.

But whether that River were ſo called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abſyrtus* the Son of *Æctus*, King of *Colchis*, whom they went to ſeek, or for ſome other reaſon, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be ſo named from the ſcattering of his Limbs hereabouts by *Medea*, his unnatural Siſter, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; that cruel Fact being done on the Shores of the *Euxine*, the place being called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occaſion. But of thoſe Iſlands, being in number many, as before was ſaid, two only are of ſpecial Note; that is to ſay, 1. *Vegia*, or *Vigio*, not far from *Segna* on the firm Land, containing in compaſs betwixt 80 and 100 Miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants: the moſt populous of all theſe Seas. It hath a Town of the ſame name, with a very fair Harbour: the Iſland by *Pliny* called *Curicta*, the chief Towns of it in his time being, *Fulſinium* and *Curicum*. 2. *Abſorus*, as *Ptolomy*, *Abſytium*, as *Pliny* calls it, in whoſe time it was one Iſland only, but now divided into two by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherſo* the other *Oſero*; both joined together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together, making up 140 Miles in compaſs; each of them having one Town only, and that of the ſame name with the Iſland; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 50000 Perſons. Stored with ſufficiency of Corn, plenty of Wine, and abundance of Wood, great quantities whereof are ſent yearly to *Venice*. They have alſo goodly Herds of Cattel, and great Flocks of Sheep; affording by their Fleſh, Wooll, Cheeſe and Butter, a good increaſe of profit to the Owners of them.

3. The *Iſlands* of *RAGUSI*, (for ſo I call them which belong to the Commonwealth) are but three in number. 1. *Gravoſa*, a very pleaſant place, full of Gardens of Oranges, Limons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Languſta*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Raguſian* Farms, made rich by great Charge and Induſtry of the ſeveral Occupants, ſo as to yield them Wine, Oil, and moſt excellent Fruits; which they receive more plentifully from a goodly Plain ſituate in the midſt hereof, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near to this laſt Iſland is good fiſhing for Sprats: and in both an Art of making their Trees to bring forth Oiſters, by bending down their Boughs, and ſtaying them under the Water with Stones; ſo as in two years there are ſo many Oiſters faſtned to them as

is

good Meat. *Melyda*, lying betwixt *Raguſia* and the Iſle of *Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *Melita*, and on that ground ſuppoſed by ſome to be that Iſland on which St. *Paul* did ſuffer Shipwreck, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarus* which the Text joins to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Iſland betwixt *Greece* and *Italy* in the times of St. *Paul*, and his Landing, when he parted thence, at *Syracuſe*, an Haven of *Sicily* ſo far from this, ſo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, ſufficiently refel this Fancy, though otherwiſe not improbably grounded.

4. Of thoſe which are known only by one ſingle name the chief are, *ARBE*, ſo called in the time of *Pliny*, from the beſt Town of it, but by *Ptolomy* it is named *Seardona*. A pleaſant Iſland, in compaſs about Thirty Miles, and containing ſome 3000 Inhabitants; the only Havenleſs Iſle of all the *Adriatick*: but that defect is abundantly recompenſed by the natural Sweetneſs of the place, which ſo enticed certain diſſolute Rovers of *Auſtria*, that they ſeiſed upon it *Anno* 1618, and had like to have occaſioned an heavy War betwixt *Ferdinand*, Arch-Duke of the Houſe of *Gratz*, (not long after choſen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the third of *Spain* had not made up the Breach.

5. *CURSOLA*, by *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melena*, more rightly *Corcyra Melana*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the *Ionian* Sea. The chief Town of it, being of the ſame name with the Iſland, was Founded by the *Gnidians* of the Iſle of *Crete*. It is ſufficiently Fruitful, but of Wine eſpecially; Forty Miles long, in compaſs Ninety, and very populous for the bigneſs; notwithſtanding that the People, being Sea-faring Men, do much uſe the Seas, and build many Ships. In the year 1571, a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the Battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluz Aly*, General of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with a Navy of Sixty Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenus*, the *Venetian* Governor, together with the Townſmen and Garriſon Soldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The ſilly Women thus forſaken, and preferring Death before Diſhonour, defended the Walls, and with Fire, Stones, and ſuch other Weapons as they had, they beat off the Enemy; till at the laſt a violent Tempeſt forced the *Turkiſh* General to remove his Gallies farther off, to a place of ſafety. The chief City of this Iſland was about 100 years ſince nothing but an old Caſtle, but now it is a good large City, and well Fortified with Walls on the South, and two Caſtles at the Eaſt and Weſt ends; but there is a Rock towards the Weſt which commands the Town and one of the Caſtles. The Soil of *Corfu* is not ſo Fruitful as to ſupply the Inhabitants with Corn, but it produceth Wine, Oil, and all ſorts of good Fruit in abundance. *Wheler*.

6. *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three ſmall Iſles, not otherwiſe memorable but for their Miſfortunes, ſpoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carried thence 1600 Chriſtians into cruel Bondage. The reſt I purpoſely omit, being rather Rocks than Iſlands, barren and ſtony for the moſt part, and not much inhabited.

The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the *Iapodes*, bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtarii*, confining upon *Macedon*, the *Mazai*, in the midſt about *Salona*; the *Peruſtæ*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Derii*, *Ceraunii*, *Daurſii*, *Vardæ*, *Siculotæ*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of inferiour note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*, and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of theſe the *Liburnian Illyrians* (*Illyrici, ſeu Liburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the firſt who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent Piracies, but more by murthering the Embaſſadors which were ſent unto them to require Satisfaction; *Teuta* their Queen, a proud and imperious Dame, commanding Execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for ſo many Injuries under the Conduct of *Centimalus*, one of their Conſuls, they were overthrown, (as having more of the Pirate than the Soldier in them) ſome of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the Wrong done to the Embaſſadors, a yearly Tribute impoſed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greateſt part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their Confederates. But he proving unfaithful to them in their War with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their laſt King, who commanded over *Illyricum*, ſiding againſt them with *Perſeus* King of *Macedonia*, *Anitius* the Prætor is ſent with a ſufficient Army to make an end of that work; who uſed ſuch diligence therein, that *Scodra*, the chief Town of the Kingdom was taken, and the King himſelf, together with his Wife and Children, made Priſoners; by conſequence the whole War ended *antequam geri* Romæ *nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet Subjects, the whole Country on the taking of *Gentius* being made a Province of the *Romans*, *Anno U.C.* 586, and they employed at *Rome* in many ſervile Offices, as before was ſaid: and then the *Dalmatians* began to caſt off the Yoke. But *Dalminium*, now *Damnio*, an Inland Town of ſmall regard, their chief City, being firſt ſacked by *Marcus Figulus*, and after by *Naſica*, before mentioned, they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, when they again rebelled at the inſtigation of one *Batto*, a Man very potent with the People, who, having ten years together maintained the Liberty of his Country, at laſt, broken and wearied by the Forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius*, ſubmitted himſelf unto the two Generals; who, asking the reaſon of his Revolt, were anſwered, becauſe the *Romans* ſent not Shepherds to keep, but Wolves to devour, their Flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his Command; as the *Goths* alſo did, having vanquiſhed him, and thereby made themſelves Maſters of *Italy* and the reſt of his Purchaſes. But the Kingdom of the *Goths* being brought to an end by the good Fortune of *Juſtinian*, and the Valour of *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two of his Commanders (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the Eaſtern Empire; continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperors till the time of *Phocas*, that bloody Tyrant; when it was made a Prey to the *Sclaves*.

Of theſe, tho' we have ſpoken before in ſeveral places, as their Fortunes and Affairs have led us; yet being this is the only Country which preſerves their name, we will here ſpeak more exactly of them than we have done hitherto; eſpecially as to their Manners, Name, and firſt Original, and finally of their Succeſſes in this Country. And firſt for their Original, I take it for a thing paſt queſtion that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Iſter*; uniting themſelves under this Name in their Undertakings and Attempts on the Eaſtern Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Franks* and *Almans* in their Actions and Atchievements againſt the Weſtern. But why they took this Name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the Original of it from *Slowo*, which in the *Sclavonian* Tongue ſignifieth a *Speech* or *Word*, becauſe they were all of one common Language: others from *Slawa*, ſignifying in that Language *Fame* or *Glory*, in regard of that great Fame and Honour which they had atchieved by their Succeſſors on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winnithi*, *Winidi* or *Venedi*, a *Sarmatian* People, called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, poſſeſſed in his time of the farther Shores of the River *Iſter*, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, and by that name waſting and foraging theſe Provinces and other parts of that

Empire in the time of *Juſtinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I ſee no reaſon why we ſhould look farther for the name of *Sclaves* than from theſe *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* ſubdued this Country, and called it *Sclavinia* or *Sclavonia*, after their own Name; by that and other fortunate Succeſſes on the Eaſtern Empire, and the Honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the reſt of the ſcattered Tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in Name and Action, and try their Fortunes in the Conqueſt of the Weſt of *Europe*, as theſe had done already on the Eaſt parts of it. In which Deſign they ſped ſo well, that they became Maſters of almoſt all thoſe Countries which lie betwixt the River *Viſtula* and *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*; communicating their Language unto all the Provinces and Nations conquered by them; and to moſt their Manners, Rites and Cuſtoms. Their Government was at firſt by Kings, but ſo that the Succeſſion ſeldom held in a Race or Family, and thoſe that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongſt themſelves, that he who killed a Tyrant ſhould ſucceed in his place; they had few Kings whom ſome or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then diſpatch him out of the way, that a greater Tyrant than himſelf (as it commonly happeneth in ſuch caſes) might poſſeſs the Power. Inſomuch that they had a new King almoſt every year, none of them for the ſpace of an Hundred years dying natural Deaths; and all that while the People (as it muſt be) were moſt miſerably torn in pieces by inteſtine Wars. They were not cured of this Diſtemper, till the ſeveral Tribes and Nations of them (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians* theſe here, and thoſe of other Countries) had their ſeveral Princes ſucceeding one another in a regular way. Their Religion was Gentiliſm at the firſt. For being originally Heathens, they worſhipped ſuch Gods as other of the Gentiles did; *Jeſſan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had alſo a Goddeſs called *Fagode*, to whom they prayed for fair Weather and a temperate Air. To their Children they uſed to give no name till they began to grow great, and then they conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their firſt Hair, and offered it as a Pledge of their future Service: at which Solemnity they called together their Friends and Kinsfolks to make merry, with Banquets, Dancing, Singing, and all kind of Sports; offering in Sacrifice an Hog, and Wine mixed with Honey, ſomewhat like Metheglin.

The Goſpel was firſt generally received amongſt them by the Preaching of *Cyrill* and *Methodius*, two right godly Men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circaſſians*, two great *Aſian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, with good Succeſs as to the Work, and with no ſmall Honour and Advantage to thoſe Patriarchs alſo. The Eaſtern *Sclaves* inhabiting thoſe parts of this Country which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Tranſylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The reſt, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary* and the *German* Emperors ſubmitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never ſowed.

But to return unto the Story. The *Sclaves*, thus ſetled in this Country (ſince called *Sclavonia*) continued abſolute Maſters of it, under the Title of *Kings* of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the year 970; when growing unſufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having raviſhed or ſurprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make War upon them: which ended in the Loſs of *Leſian* and *Curzola*, two of their beſt Iſlands, and almoſt all the Sea Towns on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, poſſeſſed for the moſt part ſince that time by the State of *Venice*: a Tribute alſo of a hundred Barrels of Wine, and a Preſent to the Duke of 3000 Coney-Skins being laid upon them; *Petro Urſeolo*, being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir* King of the *Sclavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus*, the laſt King, dying without Iſſue, bequeath'd the Kingdom to his Wife, and ſhe as freely to her Brother *Vladiſlaus*, King of *Hungary*, ſirnamed the Saint; the right hereof accruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*, but the Poſſeſſion of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cauſe of much War and Bloodſhed betwixt thoſe Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the Fray, and got the greateſt part for himſelf by their Diſagreements. Betwixt theſe three *Sclavonia* at this time doth ſtand thus divided: the *Venetians* poſſeſs the greateſt part of the Iſlands, and all the Sea-coaſts from the River *Arſia* to the Bay of *Cattaro*, (the City and Commonwealth of *Raguſi* excepted only) the Houſe of *Auſtria*, in Right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who firſt ſet footing here in the Reign of *Mahomet* the ſecond) the whole Kingdom of *Boſnia*, the Patronage of *Raguſi*, ſome Towns in *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*, and all the Reſidue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*. In this preſent War, began in the year 1683, the *Turks* have loſt great part of this Country to the *Venetians*, and are now in great danger of loſing all the reſt to the Emperor; *Gradiſca*, the ſtrongeſt place they have, being now beſieged by the Imperial Forces.

The Arms of *Sclavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinal's Hat, the Strings pendant, and platted in a True-love Knot, meeting in the Baſe, *Guels*.

There are in SCLAVONIA.

Archbiſhops 4.	Biſhops 26.

And ſo much for SCLAVONIA.

OF DACIA.

DACIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Euxine* Sea and ſome part of *Thrace*, on the Weſt with *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*, on the North with *Podolia* and ſome other Members of the Realm of *Poland*, on the South with the reſt of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here firſt inhabited; in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*: who proving, when firſt known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themſelves to Service in hope of Gain, occaſioned the *Romans* in their Comedies and common Speech to call a Sycophant or Servant by the name of *Davus*.

It lieth on both ſides of the *Danow*, fronting all along the Upper and the Lower *Hungary*, and ſome part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10. ſo that the longeſt Summers Day in the moſt Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours, and in the moſt Southern 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this account, with reference to the other Limits before laid down, it differeth much in Situation and Dimentions from the ancient *Dacia* deſcribed by *Ptolomy*: that lying wholly on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, but taking in ſo much of the Upper *Hungary* as lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of *Tibiſcus*, this comprehending all the reſt of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſia's* and *Dardania*, and, in a word, the whole *Dacian* Dioceſs in the largeſt extent thereof, the Province of *Pravalatana* excepted only; which, though a Member of this Dioceſs, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer underſtanding whereof we may pleaſe to know, that *Dacia* properly ſo called was ſituate on the Northſide of the *Danubius*, as before was ſaid, extending as far Weſtward as the River *Tibiſcus*, were it frontiered on the *Jazyges Metanaſte*; inhabited by a military and valiant People, who many times, eſpecially when the Froſt did favour them, paſſed over the River, and infeſted the *Roman* Provinces. And though repreſſed and made tributary by *Julius Cæſar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Auguſtus*; who ſending *Lentulus* againſt them with a puiſſant Army, compelled them to retire on the other ſide of the River, planting the Southern Banks thereof with ſtrong Towns and Garriſons, to reſtrain them from the like incurſions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia tunc non victa ſummota atque dilata eſt*, ſaith the Hiſtorian, though *Dacia*, was not overcome, yet it was removed ſomewhat farther off, and the Provinces thereby ſecured from the attempts of that People. After this, from the time of *Cotiſo*, with whom *Auguſtus* had to deal, we find little of them till the Reign of *Decebalus* their laſt King, a man both ready in Advice and quick in Execution, againſt him *Domitian* made War by *Julianus* his Lieutenant, who gave *Decebalus* a great overthrow, and had then utterly vanquiſhed him, if his Wit had not better befriended him than his Sword. For fearing that the *Romans* making uſe of their Victory, would enter and take poſſeſſion of his Country, he pitched in the way a great number of Stakes in Battle-array, putting on them the old Corſlets of his Soldiers; which looking like ſo many men at Arms, frighted the Enemy from approaching the Country. *Trajan* was the next that made War againſt him and brought him to that Exigent that having with much loſs indured ſome few Skirmiſhes, he yielded himſelf, and is acknowledged a Friend to the Senate, and People of *Rome*. But being one of an high ſpirit, and born in a free Air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own deſtruction: for ſeeing by the Valour of *Trajan* his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and deſtroyed, he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Loſt in the time of *Gallienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*; who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, tranſplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil ſort of the Natives, to the other ſide of the River, placing them betwixt the two *Myſia's*, (in ſome part of each) and calling the Country given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*, leaving the *Old* unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whoſe Thorough-fare it was in all their Enterpriſes and Deſigns upon the *Roman* Empire. It was divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripenſis*; this lying on the Banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the Land: which, with the Provinces of *Mæſia ſuperior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Dioceſs of *Dacia* in the times ſucceeding. It was ſubject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, for *Illyricum*, and conſequently appertaining (after the Diviſion) to the Eaſtern Empire. And it continued in this State till the time of *Juſtinian*, who being a Native of this Country, ſubducted it from the Command of that Præfect, and inſtituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Dioceſs only in Civil matters, and a Primate for the affairs of the Church; both ſettled in the City of *Juſtinian*, of his own Foundation; enlarging the Juriſdiction of the firſt by the addition of ſome part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all thoſe Preheminencies which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater Patriarchs. But this new Inſtitution was of no continuance. For firſt the *Sclaves*, and afterwards the *Ruſſians*, *Hungars* and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, diſmembred it piece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongſt themſelves. Of which, together with the nature of the Soil and people, I ſhall ſpeak anon, having firſt took a view of the Rivers, Hills and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief Guides in the Chorography or Deſcription of them.

The Rivers then of moſt note are, 1. the *Danow*, which here at *Axium*, or *Axiepolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Iſter*, continuing it from thence to its *Aſtuarium*; where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with ſeven Mouths or Channels; that is to ſay, 1. *Peuce*, 2. *Naracuſtoma*. 3. *Caliſtoma*, 4. *Plendoſtoma*, 5. *Spireoſtoma*, 6. *Boreoſtoma*, the name of the laſt I find not amongſt my Authors, *quia languidiſſimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolomy*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Mariſch*. 3. *Termes*. 4. *Aluta*, keeping its old name. 5. *Hieraſus*. All of *Old Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Iſter*, as do alſo *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Cervia*. And 6. *Succonia* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Mycia*. Chief Mountains of it are, 1. the *Carpathian*. 2. *Scardus*. 3. *Ozbelus*, whereof the firſt parteth it from *Sarmatia Europea*, the ſecond from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to ſay, 1. *Tranſylvania*. 2. *Moldavia*. 3. *Walachia*. 4. *Raſcia*. 5. *Servia*. 6. *Bulgaria*. The firſt four in *Old Dacia*, on the North ſide of the *Danow*, the two laſt in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Maldovia*, on the Weſt with the Upper *Hungary*, on the North with *Ruſſia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which it is parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South with *Raſcia* (or rather *Hungary*) and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*; the name in *Latin* ſignifying the *Country beyond the Woods*. By the *Dutch* it is called *Siebenbergen*, from ſeven Caſtles or ſtrong Holds anciently built in it to defend the Frontiers; *Septemcaſtrenſis* in ſome Latin Authors upon that occaſion. But by the more elegant Latiniſts it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*; or made ſubject to them.

The Soil doth naturally abound with Wine, Corn, and Fruit; of which it was ſo plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperor *Trajan* cauſed a piece of Mony to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-Copia*, and in the other a plain Tablet with this Inſcription. *Abundatia Dacia*. Particularly, beſides great plenty of Wheat and moſt excellent Wines, it yieldeth great ſtore of Cherries, Damaſcens, Malacatoons, Musk-melons, not inferior to thoſe of *Italy*, and alſo Centaury good ſtore, and many other Medicinal plants; ſome Mines of Gold and Silver: many of Iron, Braſs, Copper, and not a few Veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattle ſuch abundance, that many times large Oxen are ſold for a Floren, or half a Crown piece; and a moſt notable breed of Horſes; not to ſay any thing of that variety of Wild Beaſts which they have in their Woods and Foreſts, and of all ſorts of Fowl both for Food and pleaſure. So populous withal, (for the moſt fruitful Countries are commonly populous alſo) that *Caſtaldo*, Governor hereof in the Minority of *Stephen* the fourth Son of *John de Sepuſio*, *Anno* 1551, advanced an Army of 70000 able men, conſiſting of the Natives of this Country only, for the Seige of *Lippe*, a ſtrong Town of *Hungary*, but on the Borders of this Country. This Province is ſurrounded on all ſides with the *Carpathian* Hills, and has the Form of a Rhomtons, being 68 French Leagues from Eaſt to Weſt, and 62 from North to South, that is about 200 Engliſh miles. And ſo extreamly fruitful, that when the Imperial Army in the beginning of *October* 1687, fell into it ſuddenly, and the Inhabitants fled into the Woods and Mountains, and carried with them their Stores, Corn, Cattle and Proviſions, yet the Army wanted for nothing, being richly ſupplied by the Fruits they then found upon the Ground. And by the agreement made with them, they were to furniſh to the Imperial Troops 66000 meaſures of Wheat, 1980 Tun of Fleſh, 7000 Pieces of Wine, 120000 meaſures of Oats, 9180 Tun of Hay, 480000 Truſſes of Straw, and Wood, Salt and Candle to be ſupplied by the reſpective Landlords to the Army. And over and beſides they were to pay in Mony, 700000 *German* Florins, at 6 payments, the laſt of which, was to be paid the laſt day of *June*, the Revenue of Prince *Abaſi* to be no way thereby abated. All which was punctually perform'd, and is a ſtanding Teſtimony of the Riches and Fertility of this Province.

The people are much of the ſame nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time ſubject, but ſomewhat more ſtubborn and untractable; ſpeak the ſame Language as they do, with ſome difference in the Dialect only; converted at the ſame time to the Chriſtian Faith, and under the ſame form of Eccleſiaſtical Government. In former times they uſed to read, as the *Jews* do, from the right hand to the left; but of late here they conform to the Weſtern Nations, from whom they are generally deſcended.

For that the people of this Country are the Progeny of the *Saxons*, is evident 1. by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2. We find that *Charles* the Great, like a politick Conqueror, placed many of that Nation here, weakning ſo their ſtrength at home, and fortifying the Bounds of his Empire. And 3. by a Story recited by *Verſtegan*, which we touched in our Deſcription of *Brunſwick*; the whole Narration is this, *Halberſtadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Muſician, whom they called the *Py'd Pyper*, undertaking for a great maſs of mony to deſtroy, they agree: hereupon he turned his Pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him are drowned in the next River. This done he asketh his pay, but is denied: whereupon he ſtriketh up a new fit of Mirth, all the Children, male and female, of the Town, follow him into the Hill *Hamelen*, which preſently cloſed again. The Parents miſs their Children, and could never hear news of them. Now of late ſome have found them in this Country, where I alſo leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is ſaid to happen the 22th of *July* 1376. Since which time it is ſaid that the people of *Halberſtadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Inſtrument to be ſounded in that Street: and eſtabliſhed a Decree, that in all Writings of Contract, or Bargain, after the Date of our Saviours Nativity, the Date alſo of this their Childrens Tranſmigration ſhould be added *in rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies: and in the Northern parts there remain ſtill ſome of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of thoſe Members is the Body of this State compoſed: ſo ſtrong and populous, that it is conceived to be able to raiſe an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 Horſe and 12000 Foot for the Battle of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1566, being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* ſent unto that Service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1. *Hermenſtat*, in the Latin *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was ſituate) ſo named of one *Herman* the Founder of it, little inferior to *Vienna* for ſtrength or greatneſs, well fortified both by Art and Nature. This City is a Biſhop's See, under the Archbiſhop of *Colcza*. It has good Walls, flank'd with ſtrong Baſtions, and a deep Dike full of Fiſh, the Inhabitants are Civil, and the Buildings large and magnificent, thoſe of the meaneſt Artificers being of Stone. It has good Magazines, always well ſtored and kept under Ground for times of need. The Country about it is fruitful. 2. *Cronſtad*, in Latin called *Corona*, by ſome *Braſſovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*; this laſt name given it by *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it; ſituate on the Borders of *Walachia*, amongſt fruitful Mountains; remarkable for a fair Library and a kind of Academy; and the moſt noted Empory or Mart-Town of all this Country; of great Reſort eſpecially in the time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. This City is called by the *Greeks Hevapoli*, and of old it was called *Ulpia Trajana*. It has ancient Walls and Towers, inſtead of Baſtions, but convenient for the lodging the Garriſon Soldiers: each Citizen has his Garden. 3. *Biſtricia*, (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) ſo called from the River *Biſtrice*, which runneth through it: ſo pleaſant and ſo ſweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be ſeen at any time; or if there be, the people preſently ſwell up the River, and ſo cleanſe the Streets. It is yet moſt commended and valued for its Gold Mines. 4. *Medieſus* (by the *Dutch Medwiſh*) ſo called *quaſi medius conſeſſus*, becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Country; a Town almoſt as neat as *Biſtrice*. 5. *Segoſwaria* or *Scheſburg*, on the declivity of an Hill. 6. *Zabeſus*, or *Laiz*, once the chief Town of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; ſituate in a very deep Valley, well fenced with Waters, and thoſe Waters well ſtored with Fiſh. 7. *Clauſenburg*, or *Coloſwar*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolomy*, in Latin called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the II. Emperor, by whom re-edified: at firſt a Colony of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians*, coming in as ſtrangers were priviledged as Citizens and inhabited it together with them. The Town is well ſeated in the middle of a pleaſant Plain, encompaſſed with an handſome Wall, and beautified with elegant Buildings. But then it has no Dike, and the Walls are not good neither, their Fortifications are only round Towers, after the old Mode, and there are ſeveral Hills near it which command the Town, ſo that it is neither by Art nor Nature ſtrong, but it is very populous and rich, ſo that in the year 1687, it was eaſily forced by the Duke of *Lorrain*, to receive an Imperial Garriſon. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Weiſſenburg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate on a ſmall Brook then called *Apulus*, (but now *Oratus*) whence it had the name. Built on the ſide of an Hill near the River *Mariſch*, or *Mariſus*) over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Biſhop's See, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Prince or Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*; but now a Garriſon of *Hungarian* Soldiers, holding it for the Emperor, as King of *Hungary*. It has the name of *Alba Julia* from the Mother of *Antoninus*, the Great and Learned *Roman* Emperor. And at this day *Roman* Quoins are frequently found in it.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are 1. *Waradin*, much mentioned in the Stories of the latter times, ſince theſe invaſions of the *Turks*; ſituate on the Borders of *Hungary*. This is a very ſtrong Town, ſituate in the Country of *Zathmar*, on the Banks of the River *Criſe*, towards the Eaſt fortified in ſuch manner, that it ſeems impregnable: on the South it has great Suburbs, and the River cloſeth it on the North, on which ſide it has ſome high grounds which command it, but not near it. It has a Wall and Ramparts of the modern figure, and is flank'd with five Royal Baſtions, very regular, and fronted by a good Dike, which may be filled with River Water; within it has five other Baſtions, and a Wall raiſed about the out Wall. In the year 1242, the *Crim-Tartars* took this City, and ſlew moſt of the Inhabitants. The *Turks* beſieged it in 1598, with a puiſſant Army, but without ſucceſs. But in the year 1660, they took it by ſurprize in a time of Peace. In the beginning of this year 1688, the Imperialiſts having taken *Lippa*, plundered the Fields belonging to it, and are not likely long to poſſeſs it, they being in no condition to relieve it. 2. *Thorda*, built in or near the place where ſtood the *Salinæ* of *Ptolomy*, ſo called from the abundance of Salt-pits which were then about it. 3. *Enguedine*, by the *Romans* called *Annium*, from a Cauſey leading to it, raiſed by one *Annius*, and from him ſo named; ſome Fragments whereof are ſtill remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a Vein of the beſt Wines alſo, not inferior to thoſe of *Venuſium* in *Italy*. 6. *Zilachi*, 7. *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8. *Millenback*, not far from which, betwixt which and the Town of *Broſs*, is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, commanding a ſtreight and narrow paſſage leading into this Country out of *Hungary*.

In the North part hereof lieth the Province called *ZECKLAR*, inhabited by the *Siculi*, an old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by *Attila* on his firſt Conqueſt of this Country, and here ſtill continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Huns*, and had heretofore a particular Language to themſelves, but now they ſpeak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the Dialect only. But though by the neceſſity of Commerce and Cohabitation, they are brought into the ſame Language; they ſtill retain their ancient Cuſtoms, governed by their old Laws, and living after the ſame manner as the *Switzers* do; each of their Cantons (ſeven in number) being abſolute in and of it ſelf, but all united with the *Tranſylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country againſt the ſeveral Pretenſions of the *German* and *Turkiſh* Emperors. And though they do acknowledge ſome Subjection to the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, yet it is but what they liſt themſelves: being anciently priviledged from all Taxes, more than the paying of a Bull for every Houſhold, in the way of an Heriot, at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oft ſo ever it may chance to happen. Their Cantons (*Seds* they call them) are, 1. *Sepſi*, 2. *Orbay*. 3. *Kyſdi*. 4. *Czyk*. 5. *Gyrgio* or *Uduarheli*. 6. *Marous-Zeck*. And 7. *Arania-Zeck*, ſo called from the chief Town in each Diviſion. In former times no Nobleman, nor any one of better means and greater Eminence than other, was known amongſt them: but now of late that Parity (or Confuſion rather) is grown out of Credit, and ſome begin to over-top the reſt both in power and Title as in other places.

The firſt Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Tauriſci*, *Rhatacenſii*, *Cancoenſii*, the *Buridenſii*, and *Biephi*, &c. Firſt conquered they were by *Lyſimachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the Renowned Captains of *Alexander* the Great; in token whereof, innumerable Medals in the age of our Grandfathers were found in this Country, having his Image on the one ſide, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards ſubdued by the Emperor *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been ſhew already. Being forſaken by the *Romans*, it was won by the *Goths*; their conſtant Dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Huns*, the next Poſſeſſors of this Country; the Road or thorough-fare from that time of thoſe barbarous Nations which out of *Aſia* made there Inroads on the *Europæans*. Having been ſucceſſively ſubdued by the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen*, the firſt King of *Hungary*, ſirnamed the Saint, by whoſe perſwaſion and inducements they received the Goſpel. They were governed after this time, as a Member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy, whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* ſignifying as much as *Præfectus Melitiæ*, or a Lord-Lieutenant) a man, by reaſon of the greatneſs of his place and power of moſt Authority in that Kingdom. The names and Succeſſion of theſe *Vaivods* till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that, more clear and conſtant in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of *TRANSYLVANIA.*

1. *John*, ſirnamed *Huniades*, made Vaivod hereof by *Vladiſlaus* the IV. A man of great Valour and Renown, the great defender of his Country againſt the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many Battles, eſpecially in that of *Maron*, where he ſlew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
2. *Stephen*, of the noble Family of *Cattory*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, the Son of *Huniades*.
3. *Stephen* II. ſirnamed *de Sepuſio*, from the place of his Honour and Eſtate; not ſo much memorable for any thing as for being Father of *Barbara*, the Wife of *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* and of

4. *John* II. called alſo *de Sepuſio*, after the death of *Lewis* the ſecond choſen King of *Hungary*, of whom before amongſt the Kings of that Realm.

1526 5. *Americus*, Biſhop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepuſio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*; treacherouſly Murthered, for not complying with the *Turk*, *Anno* 1534.

1540 6. *Stephen* III. ſirnamed *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extreamly ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* uſurp'd the Vaivodſhip, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that Dignity. In this Prince's time *Tranſylvania* was ſeparated from *Hungary*.

1541 7. *Stephen* IV. Son of *John de Sepuſio* the late King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the Magnificent made Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, being then an Infant (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary*, not long before) being incroached upon not long after by the ſaid *Solyman*, this Country was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other Lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.

1551 8. *Stephen* V. ſirnamed *Dobus*, for his Valour ſhewed againſt the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made Vaivod of this Country by the ſaid King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Country ſhould be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the ſame (under the Vaſſalage of his Empire) upon one

9. *John* III. whoſe Family and ſirname I have no where found; a profeſſed Champion of the *Turks*, and as profeſſed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.

10. *Stephen* VI. ſirnamed *Battery* (of which Houſe he was) made Voivod by the *Turk*; and afterwards, on the Commendation of *Amurath* the third, choſen King of *Poland*.

1575 11. *Chriſtopher Battery*, Brother of *Stephen*, on whoſe Election unto *Poland*, he ſucceeded here, and was the firſt who leaving the Title of Vaivod, took that of Prince of *Tranſylvania*.

1583 12. *Sigiſmund*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, ſhook off the *Turkiſh* Bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and ſlew ſome of their *Baſſa*'s, (the *Scanderbeg* of the Times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out againſt ſo Potent an Adverſary, he reſigned his Eſtate to *Rodolphus* the Emperor, having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Sileſia*, and an Annual Penſion of 50000 *Joachims*; but finding his Penſion ill paid, he made a new Reſignation of it to

1599 13. *Andrew Battery*, Couſin of *Sigiſmund*, ſlain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whoſe death

1601 14. *Rodolphus*, Emperor and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Tranſylvania*, on the ſecond Reſignation of *Sigiſmund*. But his Soldiers behaving themſelves with too great Inſolence, *Sigiſmund* was called back again, but never well ſetled: ſo that at laſt he was fain to leave the Country in the power of the Emperor and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613 he died unlamented. In the mean time

1604 15. *Juſtine* or *Iſtivan*, ſirnamed *Botſcay*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the Great *Turk*, and ſupported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*: and being followed by great Companies of thoſe of the Reformed Religion, be not only obtained of the Emperor *Rodolphus* a Confirmation of this Eſtate unto himſelf, but Liberty of Conſcience, and the free Exerciſe of Religion for both the Nations, preſently after which he died, *December* 30. 1606.

1607 16. *Sigiſmund* II. of the Noble Family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the *February* following by the *Tranſylvanians*; but finding himſelf not able to make his Election good againſt the Emperor, and being unwilling to ſubject himſelf unto the *Turks*, and after the end of one year he relinquiſhed the Government, and betook himſelf again to a private Life.

1608 17. *Gabriel Battery*, of the Family of the former Princes, ſucceeded by the Favour of *Achmet* the Great *Turk*, after whoſe Death, ſo welcom unto his Neighbours and Subjects,

1613 18. *Bethlem Gabor*, by the ſame *Achmet*, was made Prince of *Tranſylvania*; a profeſſed Enemy of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, but one that with a great deal of noiſe did them little hurt.

1630 19. *Stephen* VII. ſirnamed *Ragotzy*, on the Death of *Bethlem Gabor*, ſucceeded Prince, by the Power and Favour of the *Turks*, under whoſe Clientele and Protection he doth ſtill enjoy it, (as his Predeceſſors did before him) againſt all Pretenſions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*: as on the other ſide he is defended by the Emperor and Crown of *Poland* from being made Subject unto the *Turks*.

1645 20. *George Ragotzy*, Son of the former, ſucceeded his Father, he died of ſome Wounds he had received in the Defence of *Grand-Waradin*, in the year 1660 in *June*.

1660 21. *Achatius Barchay*, was intruded in his place by the *Turks*, and beheaded by them the ſame year.

1661 22. *John Kemeny*, Elected and ſlain the ſame year.

1661 23. *Michael Abaffi*, Count of *Sicule*, ſucceeded by the Favour of the *Turks*, and is ſtill living.

To continue here the Hiſtory of this Country. In the beginning of this preſent War *Michael Abaffi*, tho' often Summon'd to the Port, excuſed himſelf on ſeveral Pretences; and being invited by the *Viſier* as he paſſed by to the Siege of *Vienna* in the year 1683, he came afterwards to their Camp there, with a ſmall Retinue, and yet was kindly received by the *Viſier* and had leave to return, being ordered to take care of the Bridges between the *Raab* and *Rabnitz*, which the *Turks* had lately built to ſecure their Retreat. In the year 1686, when the Emperor had taken *Buda* and *Segidin*, and advanced his Forces almoſt to the Borders of *Tranſylvania*. This Prince conſented to contribute to the Winter Quarters of the *German* Army, it being not ſafe for him to refuſe it; but he would receive no Garriſon from the Emperor, and excuſed his Compliance at the *Port* by the Terror of the Imperial Arms. But in the year 1687, after the Battel of *Mohatz*, the Duke of *Lorrain* marched with the main Body of the Imperial Army towards *Segidin*, and pretending to beſiege *Grand-Waradin* marched that way, but turned ſuddenly and fell into *Tranſylvania*, and the 11th of *October* ſurprized *Habalone*, the firſt Town of that Principality: After which *Clauſemburg* was alſo forced to ſubmit, and after it *Hermanſtad*, *Weiſſemburg*, or *Alba Julia*, *Biſtritz*, and ſix other Places were aſſigned to the *Germans* for

Winter Quarters, with vaſt allowances of Proviſions; but then *the Imperial Army was to march out in the Spring, unleſs the Neceſſity of the War required otherwiſe, or that ſome other Treaty were concluded on in the Winter.* The *Germans* being thus in Poſſeſſion of this fruitful Province without blows, did not ſo content themſelves with the Allowance made them, but that there aroſe great Complaints againſt them, which being compoſed too to the Advantage of the Imperialiſts, who were Maſters of all the ſtrong Towns. And the 9th of *May*, 1688, they brought the Prince and States of *Tranſylvania* to make an abſolute Submiſſion to the Emperor and his Son *Joſeph*, then Crowned King of *Hungary*, the Form of which is as followeth.

The Act of Submiſſion of the Prince and States of Tranſylvania.

WE *Michael Telleky de Szek*, Great Mareſchal, *George* and *Alexis Bethlem*, *Ladiſlaus Szekel de Boroſzeno*, *Valentine Frank*, Chief Juſtice, and *Chriſtian Szabo*, Burgher-Maſter of Hermanſtat, Miniſters and Counſellors of the Illuſtrious Prince *Michael Abaſti* of *Tranſylvania*, *Nicholas de Bethlem* and *Stephen Appor de Alſo Thoyr*, *Peter Alvinzy* and *John Staroſy*, Protonotaries, and *Michael Filſtrick* Juſtice of *Cronſtadt*, deputed Plenipotentiaries of the ſaid Prince and States of the Kingdom of *Tranſylvania*, do for perpetual Memory declare and make known, The whole World is ſtruck with juſt Amazement, and the Envious Pine, at the extraordinary Goodneſs of God, who after the effuſion of ſo much innocent Blood, hath at laſt pitied Chriſtianity, and freed ſo many Provinces and Kingdoms from Barbarous and intollerable Servitude; a Mercy worthy to be had in everlaſting Remembrance, and to be congratulated by all good Men.

The juſt God of Heaven could no longer endure the Rage and diſdainful Pride of that cruel and ſworn Enemy of the Chriſtian Name, who was arrived to ſuch an height of Power, as to be formidable to the whole World, deſtructive to his Neighbours, and a Contemner of all Men. But at length the Lord of Hoſts with the Power of his Right Hand, hath brandiſhed his Sword, and Crowned the Arms and juſt Cauſe of the moſt Auguſt Emperor of the *Romans*, our moſt Gracious Lord, with ſuch happy and glorious Succeſs; that the Turk himſelf owns and acknowledges, that his Power is much ſhattered and broken, and himſelf brought into a very low Condition. So admirable and ſtupendious are the Works of God's providence, that vengeance treads on the Heels of the Infidels whoſe former Succeſſes made them ſecure; ſo that for the future none need fear that they ſhould ever lift up their Heads again to ruine Chriſtianity, nor the Afflicted need deſpond in the depth of their Miſery.

Unhappy *Tranſylvania* hath groaned time out of mind under Oppreſſion, and what is the top of its Miſery, under that of the Turks; and, being deprived of its Lawful Kings and Governors by ſo many Wars, Ruins, Devaſtations, and Inteſtine Diſcords within its own Bowels, was brought almoſt to the brink of Deſtruction. That fatal Tragedy which this Kingdom hath undergone, partly under the Turks Protection, and partly by the Diſcords of its own Princes, will ſtand upon Record in Hiſtory, as a Monument to all ſucceeding Ages.

But at laſt ſhe returns to the King of *Hungary*; from whom, by the envy of the Fates, and the ambitious Deſigns of ſome Men, ſhe had been ſevered; ſhe embraces the Paternal and Powerful Patronage of the Auguſt *Leopold* I. Emperor of the *Romans*, the Great, Happy, Juſt and Invincible Hereditary King of *Hungary*, and of his preſent Succeſſor, the moſt Serene King *Joſeph* (whoſe Life and Reign God proſper and preſerve) and of the future Hereditary Kings of *Hungary* (as in the late Dyet at *Presburgh* was declared) with the univerſal Conſent of the States thereof, and according to the fervent Prayers, which have for a long time unanimouſly been made to Almighty God, for the obtaining ſo great a Bleſſing. That what therefore was heretofore deſired by all, for the Glory of God, may from this preſent time be happy and proſperous to all ſucceeding Ages; Be it known to all Men, that are now alive, or that hereafter ſhall be born, That We (by virtue of our full Power, and, for greater Security, in the ſtrength of the confirmatory Acts and Concluſions of the Prince and the States of this Realm, by the common Conſent of our own mere Motion, and out of Chriſtian Zeal) do renounce, for the future, all Subjection to the Ottoman Port, and all Correſpondencies, with all Gifts and Payments of Tributes, or whatever elſe may carry any ſhew of Compliance therewith, or with its Subjects, Vaſſals, Infidels, or other Enemies whatever, of our moſt Auguſt Lord, his Imperial Majeſty, and of his lawful Succeſſors, the Hereditary Kings of *Hungary*, under the guilt of High Treaſon if it be proved againſt any one, the Puniſhment thereof to be inflicted according to the Laws of *Tranſylvania*. On the contrary we do ſincerely and heartily accept, for our ſelves and for all the Poſterity of the famous Kingdom of *Tranſylvania*, the Paternal Protection of his foreſaid Imperial Majeſty (as hath been already declared:) And that we may give ſome actual Teſtimony of our Submiſſion and Obedience, (by vertue of the foreſaid full Power and Confirmatory Acts and Concluſions of the Prince and States) we are contented to receive the Imperial Gariſons into the Fortreſſes of *Kovar*, *Huſs*, *Georgim*, and *Hermanſtadt*, (beſides thoſe other places already Gariſoned by his Imperial Majeſty, our moſt Gracious Lord.) And moreover, when his Imperial Majeſty ſhall command, we are ready to take up Arms either againſt the common Enemy of Chriſtians, the Turk, or any other Enemy whatſoever; humbly ſupplicating his Invincible Imperial Majeſty, our moſt Gracious Lord, out of his innate Clemency, to confirm to us and our Poſterity all our Liberties and Privileges, and in particular to protect us in the free Exerciſe of the Religions hitherto profeſs'd amongſt us. And we no ways doubt, but his Excellency Count *Caraffa* will effectually promote and further the Humble Addreſſes of the foreſaid Prince and of his whole Kingdom, with his Imperial Majeſty, our moſt Gracious Lord; Which Favour as we confidently promiſe our ſelves from his Excellencies Kindneſs, and try'd Affection to us, ſo we deſire and hope, that his Excellency, the foreſaid General, will no way diſturb us in our Liberties and Privileges. Provided nevertheſs that our Treaty made with the moſt Serene Duke of *Lorrain*, do remain in full force. In Witneſs whereof, and that the Knowledge of this our Declaration and Renunciation of the Protection of the Turks may deſcend to Poſterity, we have ſet the uſual Seals of the Three Nations of the Kingdom of *Tranſylvania* to theſe Preſents. Given at *Harmanſtad* the 9th Day of *May*, 1688.

This Prince died in the year 1690, leaving behind him a Son of Thirteen Years of Age.

2. *MOLDAVIA.*

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Euxine* Sea, on the Weſt with *Tranſylvania*, on the North with the River *Nieſter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolomy* and the Ancients, by which it is parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*, and on the South with *Valachia*. This Country, by a miſtake common to all the Maps, is miſplaced, and ſet where *Walachia* ſhould ſtand: Its true bounds are to the Eaſt, *Walachia*, to the North *Tranſylvania*, to the Weſt the *Upper Hungary*, and to the South the *Iſter* or *Danube*, parting it from *Servia*. *Baudrand* who quotes one *John Lucius*, Count *de Morſtein*,

ſtein, Great Treaſurer of *Poland*, and a Perſon of great Learning.

It is ſo called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Mæotavia*, from its nearneſs to the Fens of *Mæotis*; or rather from the *Hunns* and other People of thoſe Fens who poſſeſſed the ſame. Others conceive that it was firſt called *Maurdavia*, i. e. *Nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the Country of the Black *Davia* (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and ſome others) ſo named from their Complexion, or the colour of their Caps and other Garments; as *Nigra Ruſſia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occaſion. But the more probable Opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldavia*, which runneth through it; as the *Moravians* had the name from the River *Morava*. The Nature and Religion of the People we ſhall find in *Walachia*, whereof anciently it was reckoned for a part.

The Country is very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Graſs, and Wood; but more uſed for Paſturage than Tillage, by reaſon of the great want of People to manure the Land: By means whereof it affordeth great plenty of Beef and Mutton, whereby they ſupply ſome parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Conſtantinople*. And theſe they iſſue out in ſo great a Number, that the tenth Penny, exacted by the Prince or Vaivod in the way of Cuſtom amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per Annum*: and yet the Clergy and the Gentry are diſcharged of this Impoſt. But the main Trade of this Country is not driven by the Natives; the Port Towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguſian* Merchants who foreſtal the Markets, and barter all their Corn and Wine into *Ruſſia* and *Poland*; their Skins, Wax, Honey, powdered Beef, Pulſe and Butter into *Conſtantinople*: It being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 Ships laden with Corn, Victuals, and other Proviſions neceſſary to the Life of Man, are yearly ſent unto that City.

The Country is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 *Engliſh* Miles; but ſo ill inhabited, by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Coſſacks*, that certain *Engliſh* Gentlemen having in the year 1609 travelled at leaſt 240 miles in the Country, could meet with in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together the Graſs ſo high, that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattle to eat it, and of Men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities or Towns of note; though it afford two Archbiſhops, and two Biſhops Sees, Followers (as all the reſt of the People are) of the Traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principal of thoſe which be, are, 1. *Occazoma*, *Zucconia*, or *Soczava*, the Vaivod's Seat. 2. *Fuociania*. 3. *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4. *Kotiim*, a place of great ſtrength, on the Borders of *Poland*; by ſome called *Cochina*; the ordinary Magazine of the Country. Famous for a great defeat of the *Turks* by the *Poles* in the year 1621: And ſince for a more auſpicious Victory obtain'd in the ſame place by *John Sobiesky*, the late King of *Poland*, in the year 1673, againſt the *Turks*, who lay ſtrongly Encamped here with an Army of 50000 Men, but was beaten, and their Camp ſtormed and taken the 9th of *October*, with the ſlaughter and taking of 31500 of them. 5. *Jaſſy*, commonly called *Yas*, the chief Town for Wealth and Trade in all this Province. This Town was taken by the late King of *Poland* in the year 1686, but being burnt ſoon after in his abſence, he was forced upon his Return to withdraw his Forces, and leave it to the Natives to repair it if they thought fit. 6. *Bender*, a ſtrong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7. *Polada*, near the *Danow*. 8. *Bialigrod*, ſituate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Neiſter*; a ſtrong Town againſt the *Tartars* and *Polonians*. 9. *Kilia*, anciently called *Achilleia*, ſituate on the Shore of the *Euxine* Sea, for the moſt part compaſſed round with the Waters of it, and therefore ſaid by *Ptolomy* to be an Iſland. 10. *Ac-German*, of old called *Aſprocaſtron*, and *Moncaſtrum*, a very ſtrong Town on the ſame Coaſt alſo. Both taken by *Bajazet*, the ſecond Emperor of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1485. But theſe three Towns are not ſo properly in *Moldavia*, at leaſt not in *Moldavia* properly ſo called, as in a little Province called *Beſſarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquer'd by the *Turks*, in the year aforeſaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A Tract inhabited by the *Beſſi* in the times of *Ptolomy*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, ſetled themſelves (as ſome ſay) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Boſnia*.

The whole Country, following the Fortune of *Tranſylvania* and the reſt of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was for a while accounted part of the *Ruſſian* Empire, till the diſmembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*; after which it was ſometime Homager to the *Polanders*, ſometime to the *Hungarians*, according as the Vaivods or Princes of it could find beſt Conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made Tributary to the *Turks*; but the Tribute at the firſt was very light and eaſie, not above 2000 Crowns *per Annum*: that mighty Emperor, who aimed at more profitable Conqueſts, being loth to ſpend his Forces on ſo poor a Purchaſe as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his Son finding how fit it lay for the more abſolute Command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Beſſarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkiſh* Province, *Anno* 1485, as before was ſaid; impoſing on the reſt an increaſe of the former Tribute; and ſo left it unto the diſpoſal of its natural Princes. After which time the Vaivods fearing to be made Vaſſals to the *Turks*, did many times riſe in Arms againſt them, aided therein ſometimes by the *Hungarians*, and ſometimes by the *Polander*; which laſt pretended to the Sovereignty and Chiefage of it. *Bogdanus*, Vaivod hereof in the time of *Selimus* the ſecond, uniting himſelf more cloſely to the *Polonians*, became thereby ſuſpected by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant; who with a great power chaſed him out of his Country, and gave the ſame unto one *John*, a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the moſt part in the *Turkiſh* Court (where he renounced his Faith, and was Circumciſed) under the yearly Tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new-made Vaivod was no ſooner ſetled, but he returned again to his firſt Religion, and for that cauſe grew leſs affected by the *Turks*. Which being obſerved by the then Vaivod of *Walachia*, he practiſed to obtain that Dignity for his Brother *Peter*; offering to double the ſaid Tribute, and to aſſiſt in Subjugation of the Country. The *Turk*, accepting of theſe Offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Walachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fell into *Moldavia*; and were ſo gallantly received by the noble Vaivod, that few of them eſcaped the Slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old Friend *Czarnieviche*, and, againſt Faith given, barbarouſly Murthered by the *Turkiſh Baſſa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, *Anno* 1574: the Vaivods from that time forwards being nominated by the Turkiſh Emperors, and governing as Subſtitutes and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Aaron*, one of the ſucceeding Vaivods, did ſhake off his Yoak, and confederated himſelf with *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, and *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, for Defence of themſelves and their Eſtates againſt that Enemy: yet being afterwards ſupplanted by *Raſwan*, one of his own ambitious Subjects, and that confederacy disjointed, it became ſubject firſt unto the *Polonians*, by the power and practice of *Zomoisky*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Redolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*; and finally unto the Turk, as before it was in the Year 1620. And though the *Polanders* have ſince made uſe of ſome Opportunities in impoſing Vaivods on this Country, in deſpite of the Turks: yet was it commonly to their own Loſs, little or no Benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole Power of the Turks upon themſelves in the Reign of *Oſman*; they never ſince intermeddling in the Affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the Turks diſpoſing; who receive hence ſome yearly Tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire Poſſeſſion of it, ſo long ſince aimed at by thoſe Tyrants.

3. *VALACHIA.*

VALACHIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Iſter*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the Weſt with *Raſcia*, on the North with *Tranſylvania* and ſome part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which it is parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. Firſt call'd *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus* a noble *Roman*, who, on the Conqueſt hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colony; afterwards by corruption *Vlachia*, and at laſt *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Vlachia* was firſt of more large extent than it is at preſent, comprehending all *Moldavia* alſo: divided in thoſe times by a Ridge of Mountains into *Ciſalpina*, and *Tranſalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and ſpecially ſo called) unto the other. The People of both, in token of their firſt Extraction, ſpeak a corrupt *Latin* or *Italian* Language; but in Matters of Religion follow the Dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, under whom all Eccleſiaſtical Affairs are governed by one Archbiſhop, and two Biſhops. In other things they partake generally of the Rudeneſs and Barbarity of thoſe Nations, which have ſince ſubdued them; being a rough-hewn People, hardly civilized, ignorant for the moſt part of Letters and all Liberal Sciences, not weaned perfectly (in ſo long time of their profeſſion of Chriſtianity) from the Superſtitions of the Gentiles, ſwearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarrying at their pleaſures, much given to Magical Charms and Incantations, and burying with their Dead both Cloths and Victuals, for their Relief in that long Journey to the other World.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 Miles. The Country is for the moſt part plain and very fertile, affording ſtore of Cattel, a breed of excellent Horſes, Iron-Mines, Salt-Pits, and all Proviſions neceſſary to the Life of Man. Some Vines they alſo have, and not few Mines of Gold and Silver, more than for fear of the Turks, and other ill Neighbours they dare diſcover. They are begirt about with woody Mountains, which afford them Fewel; and very well watered with the Rivers of, 1. *Pruth*, called anciently *Hieraſus*. 2. *Stertius*. 3. *Fulmina*. 4. *Teltz*. 5. *Aluta*, all of them falling into, 6. the *Danow*, which in this Province, at the Influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Iſter*. Yet it is not (at the preſent) very populous, the Spaciouſneſs and Fertility hereof conſidered, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Coſſacks*: their late long Wars againſt thoſe Nations, and the *Dutch* having much decreaſed their former numbers, with which they ſo abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Country, in the year 1473, was able upon little warning to bring 70000 Men into the Field for preſent Service.

Places of moſt note herein are, 1. *Galacz*, on the Influx of the River *Pruth*, or *Hieraſus*, into the *Danubius*; the Water of which River is ſo unwholſom, that it cauſeth the Body to ſwell. 2. *Treſcortum*, nor far from which they dig a Bituminous Earth, ſo refined and pure, that uſually they make Candles of it inſtead of Wax. 3. *Prailaba*, by ſome called *Brailovia*, the Town of moſt Trade in all this Country, ſituate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle, fortified by Art and Nature, and furniſhed with a ſtrong Garriſon of Turks, as the Key of this Province, opening the Door unto the reſt. The Town was moſt cruelly deſtroyed and razed to the Ground, with an incredible ſlaughter of the Inhabitants of all Sexes and Ages, for the ſpace of four days together, by *John* the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, ſpoken of before, at his firſt revolting from the Turks: but the Caſtle, in regard of the great ſtrength of it, was ſcarce attempted by him. 4. *Teina*, a Fortreſs of great ſtrength, but in the hands of the Turks alſo. 5. *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, ſeated on the *Danow*, with an Arm whereof the Caſtle of it is encompaſſed; garriſoned by the Turks, and by them held to be ſo ſtrong and ſo ſafe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigiſmund* the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1596, there were found in it Thirty-nine great Pieces of Ordnance, with ſuch ſtore of Arms and Ammunition as might well have ſerved for a whole Kingdom. 6. *Tergoviſta*, or *Tervis*, ſometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Vaivod, till the taking of it by the Turks: once beautified with a fair and famous Monaſtery, by the Turks converted into a Fortreſs; environed with deep Trenches, ſtrong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great ſtore of Ordnance; but many times loſt and got again, according to the changes and chance of War. 7. *Bucareſta*, about a days Journey from *Tergoviſta*, ſeated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two Bridges built near unto it. The one was of Boats, (the laying whereof took up no leſs then a whole months time) for the tranſporting of the Army of *Sinan Baſſa* againſt *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* before mentioned, and broken down by the ſaid *Baſſa* in his Flight, having been worſted in all places by the *Tranſylvanian*. The other was the work of the Emperor *Trajan*, in his War againſt *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of Stone, and laid on Piles and Arches of a wonderful greatneſs; 24 Piles or Pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebium*, of old called *Lycoſtomos*, in vain beſieged by the Forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in perſon to ſubdue this petit Province. 9. *Zarmizegthuſa*, the Seat Royal of *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and deſtroyed by *Trajan* in his War againſt him; who, cauſing it to be repaired and more beautified than formerly, gave it the Priviledges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*, which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire; now a ſmall Village called *Vetzet*. Some ſtones have been digged up thereabouts with this Inſcription, *COLONIA. ULPIA. TRAJANA. AUG. DACIÆ. ZARMIS.* which clearly ſhew as well the Dignity and eſteem as the Antiquity of the place, before *Trajan's* times.

This Province, as the reſt of *Dacia* on that ſide of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes* was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as thoſe of *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings, they lived long in Peace; till, ſenſible of the approaching Danger which the Conqueſt of moſt part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turks* was like to bring them, the Vaivod of it in the time of *Bajazet* the firſt, paſſed over the *Danow* with his Forces, and having done great Spoil to the *Turkiſh* Territories, returned again unto his Country. Rather provoked than weakened, with which Invaſion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the Vaivod in a pitched Field, compelling him to ſue for Peace, and to pay him Tribute. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and the Succeſſion controverted amongſt his Sons, the impoſed Tribute was with-held, till *Mahamet*, the fifth King of the *Turks*, having ſettled the Affairs of that tottering State, *Anno* 1417, enforced them to a new Compoſition, and the payment of their former Reckonings. The fortunate Succeſſes of *Huniades* in ſeveral Battles, induced them once more to change their Maſters, and to put themſelves under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had done formerly: but they paid dear for it, their Country being made the Thorough-fare of the *Turkiſh* Forces in their Attempts upon that Kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquiſhed at the Battle of *Caſſova* by *Amurath* the ſecond, the accuſtomed Tribute was brought in, and the *Turks* ſatisfied for the preſent, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year 1462. *Mahomet*, the Great, undertook the Conqueſt of this Country, upon advertiſement that *Wladus* the then Vaivod of it, intended to join with the *Hungarians* in ſome War againſt him: and finding how unprofitable he had ſpent his Forces in fighting againſt Woods, Mountains, and a waſted Country, he ſet up *Dracala*, the younger Brother of *Wladus*, to claim the Government; who making a party amongſt the people, and having the *Turk* for his aſſiſtance and ſupport, poſſeſſed himſelf of the Eſtate, to be holden of him as a Vaſſal to the *Turkiſh* Empire. And it continued in this ſtate, the Vaivods being after this at the *Turks* appointment and paying all Exactions impoſed upon them, till the Revolt of *Sigiſmund* the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1595, at what time *Michael*, the then Vaivod hereof, taking that opportunity to ſhake off this Yoke, confederated with him, and the *Moldavian* for their common Safety. And though he held out longer againſt *Turk* and *German* than either of the other did, diſcomfited the *Turks* by his own proper Forces at the Battle of *Nicopolis*, vanquiſhed the *Tranſylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto the Eſtate: yet, being at laſt outed of his Country by the *Polanders*, and another put into his place, he was ſhamefully ſlain in his own Tent, by the privity and conſent of *Baſta*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperor and King of *Hungary*. After whoſe death the Country, miſerably diſtracted betwixt two Vaivods, the one placed by the Emperor *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the Grand Seignior, endured all the Spoil and Wreck which ſo calamitous a Competition could bring upon it: till in the end, the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were conſtrained to ſubmit unto their diſpoſal, and receive their Vaivods from that Court, as they had done formerly; performing their accuſtomed Duties, and paying ſuch yearly Tribute as is laid upon them, which notwithſtanding, partly by their own natural Unquietneſs, and partly by the ambition of ſuch perſons as contend for that Dignity, they have ſince been many times embroiled in Wars; never ſo quietly compoſed, but that a new Hope, or the Artifices of the *Turkiſh* Miniſters, ſtarts them into Action. By means whereof, when they have tired and ſpent themſelves in their own Combuſtions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkiſh* Monarchy.

Of what Revenue theſe Provinces ſeverally were to their natural Lords, and of what ſeverally to the *Turk*, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they ſtood at the time of the Revolt ſo often mentioned, and they yielded one way with another into the Treaſury of the Grand Seignior no leſs than a million of Ducats yearly. *Knolles* in his *Turkiſh* Hiſtory doth report it ſo. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the ſaid Revolt, did yearly yield unto the *Turk* a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 Horſes for ſervice, 10000 great Meaſures of Wheat, with as much Barley, and a wonderful proportion of Butter, Honey and other Victuals; adding withal, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly Tribute. After which rate, the Eſtimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But ſince the Reduction of theſe Countries to their former Obedience, the *Turks* having been more moderate in their Exactions than they were before; for fear of ſtartling them to ſome new Engagement, whom they have brought to this Obedience and Conformity with ſuch a vaſt expence both of Blood and Treaſure as would have purchaſed the beſt Kingdom of Chriſtendom in the open Market. Inſomuch that the ordinary Tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 Chequins, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the ſame Coin; beſides 1000 Horſes yearly ſent from both. Such Bribes and Preſents as are given by the Vaivods hereof, either to get or hold their places, being Merchantable Ware, and wholly at the *Turks* diſpoſing, not being part of this Accompt. *Mahomet* 4. the laſt Emperor of the *Turks*, in the year 1658, made *George Giſca* Vaivod of *Moldavia* and *Wallachia*, whoſe Predeceſſor was one *Matthias*. Of late times the *Turks* have every year increaſed the Tribute of theſe Provinces, making it their buſineſs to impoveriſh this People as much as it is poſſible, that they may keep them low and poor, and ſo prevent any thoughts of throwing off their yoke. The *Walachians* ſubmitted to the *Turks* in 1612.

4. RASCIA.

RASCIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Valachia*, on the Weſt with *Hungary*, on the North with *Tranſylvania*, and on the South with the River *Danow*; encompaſſed on three ſides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines Samus*; and on the Eaſt divided from *Valachia* by the River *Aluta*. Called *Raſcia* from the *Raſciana*, a *Sclavonian* People, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this Tract, and from him *Maginus*. But here it is to be obſerved, that beſides this Country, the *Raſcians* held ſome Towns and Territories on the other ſide of the *Danow*, and amongſt other the ſtrong Town of *Chryſonicum*, whereof more anon. This ſmall Province is now confounded with *Moldavia*, and has no Name in our laſt and beſt Maps of this Country. The Name is by *Baudrand*, applied to the moſt Southern Part of *Servia*.

The Country is poor enough, but the people poorer, oppreſſed in former times by the *Servians*, and of late by the *Turks*; which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occaſions, as commonly thoſe people are who give themſelves the hope of bettering thoſe Fortunes which they cannot make worſe. Places of moſt note here are, 1. *Bodon*, a Town of Trade on the *Danow*, memorable for the Marts or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*. 3. *Covin*. 4. *Novebarde*. 5. *Severin*. not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucareſta*, a Town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trajan*'s Bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella*; of which little memorable.

Theſe *Raſcians*, as before is ſaid, were a Tribe of *Sclaves*, ſettled in this Country, at the time of their firſt ſpreading in the Eaſt, and here continuing ever ſince in poſſeſſion of it. Governed at firſt by their own Princes, whom, by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Deſpots*; that being once the Title of the Heir apparent or deſigned Succeſſor of the Eaſtern Empire as *Cæſar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Monſieur* in the ſame ſenſe in the Realm of *France*, to ſignifie the eldeſt Brother (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperors did affect new Titles, ſo that of *Deſpot* fell from one ſtep to another, till given at laſt unto the Governours of Provinces; as the *Deſpot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponneſus*, &c. and in the end was aſſumed by the ſeveral Princes of *Raſcia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this Eſtate became united unto *Servia*, I am yet to ſeek: but ſure I am, it was united in the perſon of *George*, *Deſpot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his Eſtate ſurprized by *Amurath* the ſecond, who boaſted his Succeſs therein, (in a Speech made unto his Soldiers at the Siege of *Belgrade*) notwithſtanding that he had to ſtrive with Hunger, Thirſt, Labour, and Deſparation. Nor have I found at what time or under whoſe Conduct they paſſed over *Danubius*, and there poſſeſſed themſelves of *Chryſonicum*, and ſome other Towns and Territories on that ſide of the River, which they ſtill retain, either ſurrounded by the *Servians*, or at leaſt intermingled with them; which make ſome Writers of opinion that the *Raſcians* and the *Servians* are but one and the ſame People under divers names: to which conjecture their being ſubject to the ſame Prince gave ſome farther ground. But whenſoever they paſſed over, moſt probable it is, that, proving either troubleſom Neighbours, or unwelcome Gueſts, they gave occaſion to the *Deſpots* of *Servia* to make War upon them, and having vanquiſhed them on that ſide of the River, to carry the War over unto this; till in the end the whole Country was made ſubject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell tegether with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was ſaid before. But being more impatient of the Yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the *Turks* much miſchief many times, as they came in their way: never ſo much nor ſo effectually, as when *Mahomet* the 3. warred againſt the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently diſtreſſed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the proviſions of Arms and Victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Baſſa*. After which at the time when *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* had won ſo many noble Victories againſt the *Turks*, 10000 of theſe *Raſcians*, caſting off that Yoke, offered themſelves unto his ſervice. Theſe are the only memorable Actions which are told us of them; though this laſt was only the attempt of ſome private Adventures, the whole Nation ſtill continuing in Obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the Fortunes of *Servia*, and having a concernment on that ſide of the Water, we ſhall there ſay ſomething farther of them.

Thus have we ſeen when and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part ſubject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to paſs over the *Danow*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia Nova*, or *New Dacia*; containing after our accompt four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to ſay, both *Myſia's Scythia*, and *Dardania*, beſides the two *Dacia's*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripenſis*, interjected betwixt the two *Myſia's*, as before is ſaid: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkiſh* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bulgaria*, on the Weſt with *Boſnia*, and ſome part of the Lower *Hungary*, on the North with the *Danubius*, by which it is parted from *Raſcia* and ſome part of *Valachia*, on the South with *Albania* and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Myſia Superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Serbi*, or *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, of whom more hereafter.

This Country, with the neighbouring *Raſcia*, and the modern *Sclavonia*, was firſt converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembred, between the years 860 and 890. of both which there is reſerved ſome ſpecial Monuments. For *Methodius* having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all Divine Offices in their natural Language, tranſlated the whole Bible into the *Sclavonian* Tongue, which ſtill they have among them in high eſteem. And *Cyril* is ſaid to have deviſed the *Servian* Character, not uſed in this Country only, (though here originally) but alſo in *Raſcia*, *Bulgaria*, *Boſnia*, *Moldavia*, and moſt parts of *Ruſſia*; which Character, from this *Cyril*, (or *Chiruril*, as they pronounce it) is ſtill called *Chiurlizze*.

The Country was very rich and fruitful before the Conqueſt of it by the *Turks*, well ſtored with Mines of Gold and Silver, eſpecially about *Zerbenick*, a ſtrong Town hereof. The People are rude and groſs, and much given to Wine; falſe of their Promiſes, and that upon ſlight occaſions, ſo that there is but little truſt to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Country, are, 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*, 3. *Ibar*, falling into the 4. *Morava*: as that into the *Danow* at *Chryſonicum*, or *Chryſovectia*, a ſtrong Town of the *Raſcians*. Principal Towns hereof, 1. *Niſſa*, the *Neſſum*, as I take it of *Ptolomy*, by whom it is ſaid to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the Metropolis of this Country, and the Key thereof: beſieged and taken by *Amurath*, the firſt King of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1367. The City of *Niſſa*, has been heretofore an important Fortreſs, but the *Turks* after they were poſſeſſed of *Belgrade* ſlighted it, but after *Belgrade* was retaken by the Chriſtians in the year 1688. They repaired it and ſecured it with a great Dike and Paliſadoes, making it their Frontier and Magazine againſt the *Germans*; Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in the year 1689, being ſent againſt them by the Emperor, defeated their Forces upon the *Morava* the 29th of *Auguſt*, when he ſlew 20000 *Turks*, and took all their Canon and Baggage. And purſuing his blow marched to *Niſſa*, near which he found the *Turks* reinforced and ſtrongly intrenched on an Advantageous ground; whereupon he attack'd them the ſecond time in their Camp, the 24th of *September*, and forcing his way ſlew 10000 of them, and had ſlain many more, if the Night had not favoured them in their Flight. After this ſecond Victory, he entered *Niſſa* without any oppoſition, which the *Germans* found to be a very conſiderable Town for the number of its Inhabitants, the ſtrength of its ſituation, the Fertility of the neighbouring Country, and the Security it may give to their former Conqueſts, and thereupon the General forthwith ordered it to be Fortified. They found in this City 5 Moſques, and a great number of private Houſes. 2. *Vidina* by the *Turks* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Feriſbeg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the firſt, and ever ſince the Seat of a *Turkiſh Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa* of *Temeſwar*. 3. *Cratova*, and 4. *Zerbenic*, rich in Silver Mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Country. 5. *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by ſome called *Spenderobe*, by the *Hungarian Zenderin*, by the *Turks Semender*; ſituate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the II. *Anno* 1438. ſince governed by a *Turkiſh Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6. *Novograd*, in the Borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle. 7. *Stoniburg*, (in *Latine Stonibrigadum*) the ordinary Seat of the Deſpots. 8. *Priſden*, ſaid by *Mercator* to be the Birth-place of the Emperor *Juſtinian*; moſt like to be *Taureſium*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the Birth-place of that Emperor, by whom it was repaired aud fortified with four great Turrets, thence called *Tetrapyrgon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrido*, a Town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9. *Scopi*, by *Ptolomy* called *Scupi*. And 10. *Ulpianum*, firſt built by *Trajan*, whoſe forename was *Ulpius*; afterwards re-edified by the ſaid *Juſtinian*, and called *Secunda Juſtiniana*, (*Juſtiniana Prima*, being in *Bulgaria*:) now a poor Village called *Pyrethia*, as *Lazius*, or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhatiara Myſorum*, then the chief City of the *Mæſians*, of which now no Ruines are remaining. 12. *Raveniczen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable.

Beſides theſe Towns and many other of leſs note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Raſcians* alſo hold ſome Towns on this ſide of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chryſonicum*, or *Chryſovectia*, an old Town, almoſt wholly ruinated, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1449. who marking the convenient ſituation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the Fall or influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiouſly it ſtood both to command and to annoy the reſt of this Country, and for tranſporting of their Forces to the other ſide of that great River, made it their firſt work to poſſeſs themſelves of it, and have held it ever ſince with a very ſtrong Garriſon. Such other Towns as the *Raſcians* have on this ſide of the River, or of leſſer note, are looked on by our Author, but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the Deſpots whereof they were long ſince conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, ſuch as are moſt conſiderable in the ſtory of it, were the *Baſtarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mœſi*: the *Tricorneſii* and *Picenſii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, being either Branches of the *Mœſi*, or elſe an obſcure People not worth the looking after. Of theſe the *Dardanians* were moſt ancient inhabiting near Mount *Hæmus*, on the Borders of *Macedon*, a barbarous People, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown, moſt miſchievous in their Attempts and Deſigns againſt it in the declining ſtate thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the ſpoils whereof they enriched themſelves. Inſomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus*, finding no other likely means to be rid of that Trouble, negotiated with the *Baſtarnæ*, a ſtrong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own dwellings, and come to him with their Wives and Children; promiſing to aſſiſt them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them poſſeſſion of their Country. But *Philip* dying as the *Baſtarnæ* were in their March through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his Son to purſue the Buſineſs, they returned all home again, except 30000, which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own Fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of Quarrel to the *Romans* againſt the *Macedonian*; ſo it occaſioned *Perſeus*, the Son of *Philip*, to make uſe of theſe *Baſtarnæ* againſt the *Romans*, at whoſe requeſt 10000 Horſe and as many foot paſſed over the *Danow*, under the Conduct of *Claudicus*, a King amongſt them. But finding that *Perſeus* was too ſtrait-lac'd to part with Mony for their pay, they returned again, foraging the Country as they paſſed. But whether they paſſed over that River, or mingled themſelves with the reſt of their Nation, who upon *Philip's* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. Howſoever, coming by this means acquainted with the ſweets of this Country, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them; inſomuch as *Tacitus* for the moſt part joyns them both together, either as the ſame, or neighbouring Nations, firſt vanquiſhed and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the Civil Wars raiſed by *Spartacus* and the Fencers, or *Gladiatores*; the *Myſians*, or the *Mœſi*, being broken at the ſame time alſo, *Anno V. C.* 681. As for the *Mœſi*, being the laſt and greateſt of theſe Nations, they were moſt probably a Colony of the *Myſians* of the leſſer *Aſia*, anciently called *Myſi*, and the Country *Myſia*, as thoſe *Aſians* were, and as thoſe *Europæans* are by the *Greek* Writers generally, and by *Florus* and ſome others amongſt the *Latines*; though after, for diſtinction ſake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally moſt Latin Authors, give them the name of *Mœſi*. A fierce and ſavage People they were held to be, *Barbari Barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them, more barbarous than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but for all that, ſubdued by *M. Licinius Craſſus* in the time of *Auguſtus Ceſar*, who overcame them in two Battles, and after vanquiſhed the *Baſtarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight; the Country being reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. It continued in this Eſtate till the Fall of the Eaſtern Empire, when it was ſubjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the diviſion of the Spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, contractedly called *Sorbi*; and at laſt *Serbi*, *Servii*, and the Country *Servia*. It was reduced again to the Obedience of the Eaſtern Emperors by *Baſilius Porphyrogenitus*, *Anno Ch.* 1000. or thereabouts; but more abſolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his Succeſſors; but ſo as they were ſuffered to live under their own Princes, whom they called *Deſpots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Inriched with the Conqueſt and addition of *Raſcia*, (the certain time whereof I have no where found) they were firſt ſet on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the Deſpot, from whom *Amurath* the firſt took the Town of *Niſſa*, being the chief of all this Country; provoked thereto by the great Forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian* Deſpots had raiſed againſt him for the Siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus*, terrified with this Loſs, made his Peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open War, in which he was overcome and ſlain in the Plains of *Caſſova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* ſucceeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroiled in War amongſt themſelves by the Sons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once compoſed, and *Mahomet* abſolutely ſettled on his Father's Throne; the *Turks* began again to purſue this Quarrel, which *George* the Son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the 2d. Son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turk* a yearly Tribute, and giving him his Daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this Alliance did not ſo well unite their affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his Chriſtian Neighbours) nor ſo well ſettled his Eſtate, but that *Amurath* in fine diſpoſſeſſed him firſt of *Raſcia*, and afterwards of *Servia* alſo, for letting *Huniades* eſcape, whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was neceſſitated to reſtore *Servia* again, upon the Peace made with *Vladiſlaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet* the Great, on the death of *George* ſoon poſſeſſed himſelf of it. For *Lazarus*, the youngeſt of *George's* Sons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren(whoſe eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them uncapable of theGovernment)of the Principality, compelled them to ſeek to *Mahomet* for Aid. But dying whilſt theſe matters were in agitation, his Widow put her ſelf and her thtee Sons, *Peter*, *John* and *Martin*, under the protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren ſtill ſoliciting the *Turks* againſt her) held the State a while, till the people, finding no aſſurance in that kind of Government, and weary of the daily Harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themſelves abſolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460, continuing ever ſince a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire.

The Kings and Deſpots of *SERVIA*, being not mentioned by our Author, I have taken care to ſupply that defect out of *Du Freſne* his *Hiſtoria Bizantina*.

599 1. The firſt Prince of this Nation on this ſide the *Danube*, obtained this Province about the 18th year of the Reign of *Mauritius*, *Anno Chriſti*, 599. His name is not mentioned by my Author, but it ſeems to have been *Chaganus*.

2. *Boiſethlaunus*, or *Boleſlaus*.
3. *Rodoſlavus*.
4. *Proſogoes*.
5. *Blaſtemirus*. Till this Princes time there was a firm Peace between the *Bulgarians* and the *Servians*; but in his Reign *Preſiamus* King of *Bulgaria*, attempted to conquer *Servia*; but miſcarried and loſt his Army. *Preſiamus* lived in the time of *Baſilius Macedo*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, about the year of Chriſt, 870.
6. *Muntimirus*, *Stroimirus* and *Goinicus*, three Sons of *Blaſtemirus*, divided *Servia* between them; they were ſucceſsful whilſt they joyned their Arms againſt the *Bulgarians*; but en-

tering into a Civil War at home, the eldeſt expelled the 2 younger Brothers.

7. *Prieſlaus*, the eldeſt Son of *Muntimirus*.

8. *Petrus* or *Petriſlaus*, Son of *Goinicus* invading *Prieſlaus*, with the aſſiſtance of the *Croatians*, obtained the Principality of *Servia*, and reigned 20 years in the times of *Leo Philoſophus*, and then was taken Priſoner by Treachery, by *Paulus* 2. Son of *Branus*, 2. Son of *Muntimirus*, and Brother of *Prieſlaus*.

9. *Paulus* reigned 3 years.

10. *Zacharias* Son of *Prieſlaus*, by the aſſiſtance of the *Greeks* and *Bulgarians*, recovered his Fathers Kingdom.

11. *Tzeeſth Lavus*, the Son of *Clonimirus*, of the Royal Family, ſet up by the *Bulgarians* for a ſmall time, and then carried away Captive into *Bulgaria*. But afterwards he eſcaped, and recovered his Country under the Protection, and by the *Greeks*, about the year of Chriſt 950. This is thus recorded by *Conſtantinus Porphyrogenitus*, who lived in the ſame times with this laſt Prince.

There is another very ancient Catalogue, which agrees not with this, either as to Names or Actions, out of which the following Princes are Collected.

1. *Vladimirus* Son of *Petriſlaus*, Son of *Hralimirus*, who ſucceeded his Father, and was perfidiouſly ſlain by the *Bulgarians*, the 22th of *May* 1015.

1015 2. *Draghimius*, Uncle of *Vladimirus*, attempted to recover his Right from the *Bulgarians*, but miſcarried, and was ſlain.

1036 3. *Dobroſlaus*, born after his Fathers Death, recovered the Kingdom from the *Bulgarians*. In his time about the year 1036, *Michael Paphlago* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, brought *Servia* again under that Empire, the Kingdom being much weakened by the *Bulgarian* Wars. He eſcaped, and regained his Country, and defeated the *Greeks*, when ever they invaded it.

1050 4. *Michael* 3. Son of *Dobroſlaus*, poſſeſſed intirely all his Fathers Kingdom, and in the year 1050, entered into a League with *Michael Monamachus* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. He reigned 30 years.

1073 5. *Rodoſlaus* brother of *Michael*, ſucceeded him, though he had a numerous Poſterity of his own. *Codinus* Son of *Michael*, and called *Conſtantinus*, being elected King of *Bulgaria*, in the life of his Father, ſucceeded alſo his Uncle in the Kingdom of *Servia*, or rather his Father, and was living in the year 1100. *Michael* his Son ſucceeded him, but was ſoon depoſed, and

6. *Dobroſlaus* 2. Son of *Rodoſlaus*, was elected King by the People. *Vladimirus* 2. Son of *Vladimirus* 1. and Grand-child of *Michael*.

1115 7. *Georgius*, Son of *Bodinus*, he was driven into exile 7 years, and *Gubreſſa* reigned in his ſtead, but he recovered the Kingdom, but was at laſt taken Priſoner by *Alexius* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.

8. *Draghina*, a Prince of great vertue and goodneſs, elected King, and reigned eleven years.

9. *Rodoſlaus* his Son ſucceeded him, but with the Title only of Count of *Servia*, and not King.

10. *Primiſlaus*, 11. *Beluſes*, 12. *Deſſa*, three brothers, the laſt made King by *Emanuel* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. In the year 1173, he was by the Emperors ſent Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, where he died.

1173 13. *Neeman*, or *Nemagnam*, recovered *Servia*, with the aſſiſtance of the *Croats*. (He is called *Stephen Neeman*) and defended himſelf very ſucceſsfully againſt *Rodoſlavus*, who was ſet up by the *Greeks* againſt *Deſſa*, till *Emanuel* Emperor of *Greece*, aſſiſted his Rival, but then being forced to ſubmit, he came into the Emperors Camp as a ſupplicant, and promiſed Allegiance for the future, but failed in the performance, upon the receſs of the *Greek* Forces. This expedition was in the year 1177. After this he reigned without any great misfortune.

14. *Thimoilus*, Son of *Neeman*, one year. *Simeon*, Brother of *Thimoilus*, called *Stephen* by the *Greek* Writers, who firſt called himſelf King of *Raſcia*, Governed *Servia*, *Dalmatia*, *Dioclia*, *Trebina* and *Zachlumia*; he Married *Eudocia*, Neice of *Iſaac Angelo* Emperor of *Greece*; who was given him by *Iſaac*, whileſt he was Emperor, and delivering up his Throne to his Son, after a ſhort Reign, he retired into a Monaſtery.

15. *Stephen* Son of *Simeon*, a Wiſe Prince, he made Peace with the *Greeks* and *Bulgarians*, and reigned 28 years.

1201 16. *Vulcus*, *Vulcanus* brother of *Stephen*, uſurped upon him, and drove him out by the aſſiſtance of the *Hungarians*, by the Procurement of Pope Innocent the 3. It is probable, *Stephen* however recovered the Kingdom, and reigned till the year 1220.

17. *Neeman* 2. Son of *Stephen*, ſucceeded his Father, or Uncle, he was a Religious, Wiſe and Valiant Prince, Conquered part of *Bulgaria*, and reigned 22 years, he is called *Stephen* alſo.

18. *Stephen*, Son of *Neeman* 2. called alſo *Vreſis*, *Vroſcus*, or *Vroſius*.

19. *Stephen* 2. called *Dragutinus*, ſlew his Father and reigned in his ſtead, but repenting of it, he reſigned the Kingdom to his Brother.

1286 20. *Vroſius Sanctus* brother of *Stephen*, called by the *Sclavonians*, *Milutinus*, i. e. the *Meek*, ſucceeded him; being the elder brother. He was in the Throne about the year 1308, beſieged *Raguza* in 1318, in 1320 he was beaten by the *Hungarians*, and forced to become an Homager of that Crown.

1321 21. *Vladiſlaus*, Son of *Stephen*, and Nephew of *Vroſius*, was made King of *Servia* in 1321, or, as others in 1323, he neither reigned long, nor quietly.

1322 22. *Stephen* 3. Baſtard Son of *Vroſius*, recovered *Servia*, and took *Vladiſlaus*, and kept him in Priſon till he died.

1333 23. *Stephen* 4. *Duſcianus* Son of the former, a Magnificent and Valiant Prince, who defended his Country againſt the *Greeks*, *Hungarians* and *Turks*, which laſt began firſt in his Reign to invade *Servia*; and were beaten by him.

1356 24. *Vroſius* 2. Son of *Stephen Ducianus* and of *Helen* Daughter of the King of *Bulgaria*. This was the laſt of the Kings of *Servia*, and was ſlain in the year 1368. after he had been taken Priſoner, and depoſed

1368 25. *Vouſcimus Ceonichius*, an Uſurper upon *Vroſius*, his Maſter, but a Perſon of great Valour and Worth, he beat *Solyman* the firſt, and ſlew 30 Thouſand of his Men, but in his return was overthrown and ſlain by one of his own Servants, in the year 1371.

Thus ended the ancient Kingdom of *Servia*, when it had continued 772 years, and poſſibly much longer; for

Diocleates makes *Sueladus*, Father of *Oſtroilus*, the firſt King of *Servia* contemporary with *Anaſtaſius*, Emperor of *Greece*, who ended his Reign in the year 517; and Brother of *Totilas*, who in the year 541 joined with *Oſtroilus* in invading the *Roman* Empire. And when *Totilas* went on for *Italy*, his Brother ſetled in *Servia*, and became the firſt King of it. But this doth not ſeem ſo well Founded, and therefore omitting all the firſt Kings, I have begun with *Vladimirus*, which is the firſt of them that I find named by any *Greek* Hiſtorian. After theſe Kings *Servia* was about 100 years Governed by *Deſpotes*.

The Deſpotes of *SERVIA.*

1. *Pribaſius Chrebelanouichius*, a Nobleman, and Baron of *Raſcia*, the Father of *Lazarus* the firſt *Deſpote* of *Servia*, lived in the times of *Stephen* King of *Servia*.

2. *Lazarus*, or *Eleazarus Bulcovitzius*, under *Vroſius* the laſt King; he ſeized on *Simendria*, and kept it with the Title of *Crates* or *Deſpote*, which Title was in probability given him by *Vroſius* or the Emperor. He lived in great Friendſhip with *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, but under King *Stephen* he took and burnt *Belgrade*. Being invaded by *Amurath*, Sultan of the Turks, and not able to reſiſt his numerous Forces, he cauſed him to be ſlain in his Tent by Treachery; others ſay he was overthrown by the Sultan the 15th of *June*, 1389, and ſlain in Battel.

1389 3. *Stephen Bulcouitzius*, Son of *Lazarus*, ſucceeded his Father, made peace with *Bajazet* the Son of *Amurath*, and paid him Tribute; and fought under his Banners againſt *Tamurlane* when he was taken Priſoner. He died of the Gout in the year 1421.

1421 4. *Mara*, *Maria*, or *Maro*, uſurped under *Stephen*, for ſome time, the Title of *Deſpote* of *Servia*, but was at laſt ſlain or conquer'd.

5. *George Brankovitzius*, was the Son of *George* the Son of *Wkus*, ſecond Son of *Lazarus*, *Deſpote* of *Servia*; and after the Death of *Stephen* without Iſſue, became the 4th or 5th *Deſpote* of *Servia*: *Amurath* pretending a Right againſt him, becauſe *Stephen* had no Children; he ended this Quarrel, by giving *Amurath* a part of his Country, and his Siſter in Marriage in the year 1435. About the year 1438 *Amurath* however invaded *Servia*, and took *Sendrew*, the Capital City of it, and many of the chiefeſt Towns of *Servia*, which forced *George* to flee for ſuccour into *Hungary* with *Lazarus* his youngeſt Son, *George* and *Stephen*, the two eldeſt, being both in the hands of *Amurath*, who put out their Eyes. He had before given *Belgrade* to the King of *Hungary* for Lands in that Kingdom, which now ſupported him. *Amurath* proceeds, and in the year 1439 beſieged *Belgrade*, where he loſt his Army. In 1440 the *Hungarians* under *John Huniades* entered *Servia*, and reſtored *George*, *Deſpote*, to his Country. In the year 1444 the War was began again by the Chriſtians, whence followed the Defeat of *Verna*, the 10th of *December*, in which *Vaiſlaus* King of *Hungary* periſhed, and *Huniades* eſcaping into *Servia* was detained by *George* till he had reſtored to him the Towns he had reſigned for his former Aſſiſtance. The *Deſpote* had no hand in this War, which drew upon him an *Hungarian* War, in which he was worſted by *Huniades*. The Turks after this, in the year 1449, invaded him again, and *Huniades* joined with him, and expelled the Turks out of *Servia*. In the year 1456 *Mahomet*, the Succeſſor of *Amurath*, invaded *Servia* again, and laid Siege to *Belgrade*, where he was defeated by *Huniades*. *George* died in the year 1457.

1457 6. *George*, the eldeſt Son, ſucceeded his Father under the Guardianſhip of his Mother, he being blind, but he was ſoon after diſpoſſeſſed by

1458 7. *Lazarus* his Brother, who poiſoned his Mother, and by the Aſſiſtance of *Sultan Mahomet* uſurped his Brother's Throne. This drew upon him a War from *Mahomet*, the terrour of which put an end to his Life in the year 1458.

1458 8. *John*, Son of *Stephen*, ſecond Son of *George*, ſucceeded under the Government of his Mother; *John* the Son of *Lazarus* fleeing to the *Hungarians*, and claiming *Servia* alſo, which became Imbroiled to that height, that in the year 1460 the Inhabitants of *Servia* ſubmitted to *Mahomet* the Great, to preſerve themſelves from utter Ruin. Under which Empire they lived till the year 1689; in which, by two great Victories obtained by the preſent Emperor, they ſeem to be retrived out of that Slavery, which has lain heavy upon them 229 Years.

6. *BULGARIA.*

BULGARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Euxine* Sea, on the Weſt with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here in the Eaſt part called *Iſter*, on the South with *Thrace*, called formerly by the name of *Myſia Inferior*, as lying lower than the other on the courſe of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the Water, was called *Myſia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Caſars* in the Empire of *Diocleſian*, born in this Country near the Borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City *Sardica*; who therefore, in the Martyrologies of the middle Times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* People, who in the year 566 poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The Country for the moſt part is full of ſharp and rugged Hills, branches of the great Mountain *Hæmus*, which divide it from *Thrace*, and ſpread themſelves over all this Province, inſomuch that even the Mid-lands of it are rough and ſtony: and though the lower parts have ſome Plains and Valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deſarts; the moſt unpleaſant and leaſt peopled part of both the *Dacia's*. The Inhabitants hereof, in ſome conformity to the Country, are patient of all Toil and Labour, and not eaſily tired; but nothing is more troubleſom than their Converſation: more full of Courage than of Valour; their Courage not proceeding by the Rules of Reaſon, but iſſuing only out of Brutiſhneſs, or a natural Fierceneſs.

They firſt received the Chriſtian Faith towards the latter end of *Juſtinian* the ſecond, who died in the year 713, *Trebellius* being then their Prince; and afterwards by the perſwaſion of *Leo* the fourth, ſirnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, about the year 789. But thoſe Converſions being but partial and for private ends, they relapſed ſhortly after to their former Gentiliſm; not totally gained unto the Goſpel till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace 860. Subject ſince that unto the Juriſdiction of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; but not without great oppoſition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid a Claim unto them.

Places of moſt note in it are, 1. *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the Banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Iſter*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great Fame otherwiſe. 2. *Dinogatia*, by *Antonine* called *Diniguttia*, now *Drimago*, ſituate alſo on the *Iſter*, oppoſite to the Influx of *Hieraſus*, and the Town of *Gelacz*. 3. *Meſembria*, ſituate on the *Euxine*, and ſtill retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by ſome errour of the Tranſcribers, called *Menebria*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Iſter* or *Danubius* alſo, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his Siſter, whence it had the name: in vain beſieged by the *Goths* at their firſt Irruptions on this Country; and afterwards much mentioned in the Stories of that warlike People, for many Bickerings and ſome great Battels they had near it with the Emperor *Claudius*, in one of which they were overthrown by him with a mighty Slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis* (by the Turks called *Nigebol*) built by the ſame *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the Fall of the River *Jatre*, at his return from the Conqueſt of *Dacia*, whence was the occaſion of the Name; the word *Nicopolis* ſignifying the *City of Victory*; ſufficiently memorable for the Founder of it, more for the many great Battels fought near unto it; whereof two were principal. The firſt, that of *Sigiſmund* the Emperor and King of *Hungary*; beſieging it with an Army of 130000 Chriſtians in the time of *Bajazet* the firſt (whoſe Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*:) the iſſue of which Siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raiſe the Siege obtained the Victory, with the loſs of 60000 Turks; the Army of the Chriſtians being wholly routed, 20000 ſlain, all the reſt almoſt taken Priſoners, and the young Emperor forced to fly by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Conſtantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*, and at laſt, after Eighteen Months abſence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. This fatal Victory was obtained in the year 1393. The other (as it were in Revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the Forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Vaivod got a remarkable Victory, and, as the Fruits thereof, ſacked the City it ſelf, carrying thence great Spoil and Booty, and infinite multitudes of People; with ſome whereof he made up his Army, ſending the reſt to inhabit and manure the void and deſart places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiſcum* in the time of *Ptolomy*, repaired by the Emperor *Juſtinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple founded and dedicated by him unto S. *Sophia*. The ordinary Reſidence in theſe late times of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, who hath the chief Command of *Europe* under the Grand Seignior. Once taken by *Huniades*, and by him, at the command of *Vladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt to the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more ſtrongly Fortified than it had been formerly. *Sophia* is ſeated in a pleaſant Plain or broad Valley between two high Mountains; one of which being always covered with Snow, renders the Air here cool and ſubtile. It has great plenty of excellent Waters and ſome hot Baths: This is nine days Journey from *Belgrade*. Sir *Paul Ricaut*. 7. *Varna*, anciently called *Dionyſiopolis*, ſituate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the Borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great Defeat there given the Chriſtians, the firſt Flight of *Huniades* from the Face of the Turks, and the Death of *Vladiſlans* King of *Hungary*, ſpoken of before, in the year 1444. 8. *Samium*. 9. *Pezechium*. 10. *Galacrium*. 11. *Galatea*. And, 12. *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and loſt again upon the iſſue of that Battel. 13. *Siliſtria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary Abode of a Turkiſh *Baſſa*: delivered to *Amurath* the Firſt by *Saſmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to ſave thereby the reſt of his Country. 14. *Paraſtlaba*, or *Perſtlana*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*, till the taking of it by *John Zimiſces* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, who cauſed it to be called *Johannopolis*: but it ſoon loſt that new name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretalaw*. 15. *Ternova*, the uſual Seat or Reſidence of the later Princes of this Country at the Conqueſt of it by the Turks. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Huniades* in the courſe of his Victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cauſe of much War to the Chriſtians there: ſuppoſed to be built in or near the place where once ſtood the old City of *Oeſcus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, call'd therefore *Oeſcus Triballorum*; though ſome will have that City to be now called *Elida*. 17. *Venuzina*, a Town of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt pieces taken by the Turks. 18. *Caſſova*, fatal to the Chriſtians, who in the Plains hereof had two main Defeats. The firſt by *Amurath* the firſt, who here diſcomfited *Lazarus* the Deſpot of *Servia*, and the greateſt Army that the Chriſtians ever raiſed againſt the Turks: *Lazarus* himſelf being ſlain in the Fight, and *Amurath* himſelf ſhortly after the Battel ſtabbed in the Belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and half-dead Soldier, as he was taking a view of the dead Bodies which lay there in heaps. The laſt by *Amurath* the ſecond to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here diſcomfited after a cruel Fight continuing three days together; in which were ſlain 17000 Chriſtians, and amongſt them the greateſt part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight, and forced to ſome Extremities to preſerve his Life: the Turks buying this great Victory with the loſs of 40000 Men, as themſelves confeſſed. The place in which theſe Fights were fought, called the *Plains of Coſſova*, extendeth Twenty Miles in length, and Five Miles in breadth, incompaſſed round with pleaſant Mountains, in the form of an Amphitheatre; as if it were deſigned by Nature for a Stage of Action. 19. *Doroſtorum*, by ſome of the Ancients called *Rhodoſtolon*, the Seat in *Ptolomy*'s time of the firſt Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Roſſes* or *Ruſſians* had in this Country: from whom it was taken by *John Zimiſces* the Eaſtern Emperor, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinate. 20. *Achridius*, the Birth-place of *Juſtinian*; by whom it was beautified and enlarged, and called *Juſtiniana Prima*: who, raiſing the Dioceſe of *Dacia* into a Prefecture, placed here a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, which honour it doth ſtill retain, the Biſhop hereof being the Primate of all *Dacia*, and a *Præfectus Prætorio* for Affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *l'Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Acre*, by the Turks called *Giuſtandil*: a diſtinct Principate of it ſelf in the time of *Amurath* the firſt, and by him made Tributary at his firſt War with this Country.

And here it is to be obſerved, that thoſe parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea had anciently the Name of *Pontus*, as had alſo ſome parts of *Aſia minor* which bordered on the ſame Sea alſo; and that the City of *Tomi*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, to which *Ovid* was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Aſian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolomy* placed amongſt the Cities of *Mœſia Inferior*, and by *Ovid* on the Weſt or left ſide of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by theſe Lines of his.

Cum Maris Euxini *poſitos ad læva* Tomitas
Quærere me læſi Principis ira jubet.

This is to ſay;

My wronged Prince's Wrath commands me 'bide
At Tomos, *on the* Euxine'*s Weſtern ſide.*

The place is at this day called *Tomiſwar*, according to *Cælius Calcagninus*; but others would have it to be the ſame which is now named *Kiovia*, in the ſame Tract alſo; not far from which is ſaid to be a Lake called to this day *Owidow Jezcocoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cauſe he was hither baniſh'd is not yet agreed on. Some ſay it was for the unlawful Pleaſures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperor's Daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum*, under the borrowed Name of *Corinna.* Others imagine that he had ſeen *Auguſtus* himſelf unnaturally uſing the Company of the ſame *Julia*, his Daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his Book *de Triſtibus*, ſaying, *Cur aliquid vidi? Cur noxia lumina feci?* &c. A Crime of which I dare not think that noble Emperor to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatſoever was the true reaſon of it, that which was openly pretended was the Writing of thoſe laſcivious and inflammatory Books *de Arte Amandi*, tending to the Debauchment of Youth and Corruption of Manners, which he in divers places of his Works acknowledgeth for the cauſe thereof.

But to return unto the buſineſs of this Country. The ancient Inhibitants hereof were, towards the Eaſt, the *Troglodytæ*, dwelling near the Mouth or Fall of the River *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini* inhabiting on the very Mouth of it; and in a little Iſland oppoſite thereunto, called alſo *Peuce*, now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenſii* and *Dimenſii*, the Weſtern parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the moſt potent Nation of them all, who alone had the happineſs to vanquiſh *Phillip* King of the *Macedonians*. For *Phillip* having, or pretending, a Quarrel againſt *Matæas*, a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Country, overthrew him in a ſet Fight; carried with him great Booties, and among other things 20000 Mares for Breed, which he took in the Battel; it being the Cuſtom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* to uſe Mares only in their Wars, becauſe their not ſtopping in the midſt of a Race to piſs could be no impediment to them in their Flight. In his return homeward theſe *Triballi* deny him paſſage through their Country, unleſs they might partake of the Spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and next to a pitched Field. In which Fight *Phillip* was wounded with an Arrow, which paſſing through his Thigh, nailed him to the Saddle; his Horſe being galled with the Wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* ſeeing, and ſuppoſing him dead, fled out of the Field, leaving all the Spoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been ſent out only to be their Receivers. So true an Obſervation is it, that the very *Life-blood of the Army runs chiefly in the Veins of the General* or Supreme Commander. Over-topped after this by the *Mœſi*, or mingled with them, they were firſt broken by the *Romans* under the Conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, ſpoken of before; the abſolute Conqueſt of them and the reſt of the *Mœſians* being reſerved for the times of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. By him, or his Succeſſors, the whole Country of the *Mœſians* being caſt into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mœſia Inferior*, that, lying Weſtward up the Water, being called *Mœſia Superior*, for diſtinction ſake. By the Emperor *Aurelianus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other ſide of the *Danow* by the Barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their Fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Myſia's*, divided afterwards into two Provinces taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripenſis*; which with the help of the higher *Myſia*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Dioceſe of *Dacia*, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof, now paſſing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces alſo; another Province being taken out of the Eaſt parts of the lower *Mœſia*, lying betwixt the River *Phaniſius* and the moſt Northern Branch of the *Iſter*, which they called *Scythia*, becauſe the *Aroteres*, a *Scythian* People, did once poſſeſs it; the *Romans* ambitiouſly affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Succeſſively by the *Goths* and *Hunns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*; recovered again in or before the time of *Juſtinian*, who had here his Officers which were ſubordinate to the Vicar or Lieutenant of *Thrace*, to which Dioceſe they properly and of right belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Sclavonians* firſt and after the *Bulgarians*, being Maſters of them. Of the firſt of theſe enough hath been ſaid elſewhere. Theſe latter being a *Scythian* Peoyle, inhabiting on the Banks of the River *Volga*, were at firſt called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though ſome conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation: but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperor *Anaſtaſius* they made their firſt Sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, afterward, in the Reign of *Heraclius* they were hired by *Coſrhores* the *Perſian* (with many other Barbarous Nations) to beſiege *Conſtantinople*. In the Reign of *Conſtantine* ſirnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or caſting out the *Sclaves*, they planted themſelves in theſe Countries, compelling the Emperor to compound with them for a ſum of mony, from making any farther Inroad into his Dominions. From this time forward we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*: the firſt of which after their ſettling in theſe parts was *Trebellius*, or *Trebellis*, as ſome call him, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Juſtinian* the ſecond was firſt reſtored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Aſimarus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to fly unto *Conſtantinople*, on ſome Breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eaſtern Emperors, they aided them againſt the *Saracens*, then beſieging the Imperial City; of whom they ſlew 22000 as they were Foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the Fourth, called *Porphyrogenetus*, they became Homagers to the Empire, by whoſe perſwaſion *Telericus*, King of the *Bulgarians*, received the Sacrament of Baptiſm; and thereupon was honoured by him with a Wife of the Imperial Family, and the honourable Title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many Privileges indulged them by the *Conſtantinopolitans*, not uſually communicated unto other Princes, *viz.* their Crown of Gold, their Tiar or Cap of Silk, and their red Shooes, for their Regal (which were alſo the Imperial) Ornaments. To theſe Kings alſo, and to theſe only, did the *Greek* Emperors allow the Title of Βασιλεῖς, as being meerly Imperial. Other Kings they called Ῥῆγες, from the *Latin* word *Reges*. Inſomuch that when *Baſilius Macedo* had received Letters from Pope *Adrian* the ſecond, wherein *Lewis* the ſecond, the Weſtern Emperor, was called *Baſileus*; he razed out that Imperial Attribute, and diſpatch'd an Embaſſage to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar Epithet. Some Quarrels after falling out, *Crunus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus*, Succeſſor to the Empreſs *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, and, and taking the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperor in his Tent, and worſteth *Michael* (who ſucceeded) in the open Field; *Meſembria*, a principal City of this Country, being taken and ranſacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of Baptiſm, which many of his Predeceſſors had intermitted; but brought his Subjects (who rebelled on the Change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with and vanquiſhed by him) to the ſame Faith alſo: gratified for that cauſe by *Theodora* the Empreſs with ſome large Acceſſion unto his Eſtate. After long Wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperors, the Fortune of the *Conſtantinopolitan* did at laſt prevail: *Samuel* the King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 150000 of his Soldiers taken and deprived of ſight, and the Country conquered by *Baſilius* the ſecond, ſirnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, *Anno* 1015, from that time Tributary to the Empire; to which they did good ſervice in the time of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, uſing their help againſt the *Uzi*, a new ſwarm of *Scythians*, paſſing over the *Iſter* with an Army of 60000 fighting Men, and waſting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John*, another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* againſt the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great Slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperor of the *Latins* in *Conſtantinople* being taken Priſoner, ſent in Bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly Murthered, *Anno* 1206. They were conquered alſo by *Charles* King of *Hungary* in the year 1310. Nor were they wanting to aſſiſt them againſt the Turks, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the Recovery whereof they raiſed a great and puiſſant Army, unfortunately diſcomfitted by the Forces of *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1369. Provoked with which Invaſion, *Amurath*, having ſettled his Affairs in *Aſia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers Places of importance, and prevailed ſo far, that *Saſmeuos* the laſt Prince hereof, wrapping his Winding-ſheet about him, to ſhew that he had deſerved Death, proſtrates himſelf moſt abjectly at the Tyrant's Feet, offering to put *Siliſtria* (his ſtrongeſt City) into his Poſſeſſion. For not performance of which Offer, his Country is again invaded, and moſt part of it taken from him; he being permitted to enjoy the reſt upon hard Conditions, as Vaſſal and Tributary to the Turk. But *Bajazet*, *Amurath*'s Succeſſor, not content herewith, picked a Quarrel with him, and made an abſolute Conqueſt of *Bulgaria*, converting it into a Province of the Turkiſh Empire, *Anno* 1396. In which ſtate it hath ever ſince continued, governed by three Turkiſh *Sanzacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanzacks* reſiding at *Nicopolis*, *Siliſtria*, and *Sophia*, in which laſt the *Beglerbeg* himſelf doth ſometimes reſides.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *BULGARIA*, from *Du Freſne*.

The *Bulgarians* were originally an *Hord* or Family of the *Crim-Tartars*, who lived about the *Dneiper* or *Boriſthenes*, and by degrees extending their Conqueſts to the Weſt, were firſt heard of amongſt the *Greeks* about the times of *Anaſtaſius*, under whom they invaded *Thrace*; and in the years 499 and 502 defeated two Royal Armies that were ſent againſt them, to reſtrain whoſe Incurſions that Prince afterwards built a Wall from the Sea to *Selymbria*, a City Forty-four Miles South of *Conſtantinople*, now call'd *Selombria*, *Selivrea* or *Selibria* being ſeated on the *Propontis*, ſo that the oppoſite Sea was the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*. In the year 504 they paſſed into *Illyricum*, and took and ſack'd *Syrmium*; which was ſoon after taken by *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, who defeated the *Bulgarians*: Their King then was,

502 1. *Libertes Buſa*, the firſt victorious King.

538 2. *Wiger* and *Draccon*, two of their Leaders or Princes in the times of *Juſtinian*, about the years 538 and 541: Made two dreadful Irruptions into *Thrace*, and in the laſt of them came up to the Walls of *Conſtantinople*; and in the laſt took and ſack'd *Galatv*, but were at laſt conquered and driven home by that victorious Prince, who employed againſt them *Beliſarius*. After which they are never mentioned till the year 640, and then on the account of another great Misfortune, *viz.* that of a Civil War, they are ſaid to be driven into *Pannonia*, in which they deſired to have Lands aſſigned them for their Subſiſtance by *Dagobert* King of *France*.

3. *Chrovatus*, or *Conratus*, is ſaid to be King of the *Bulgarians* under *Conſtantinus Pogonatus*.

679 4. *Bathias*, the eldeſt Son of *Chrovatus*, in whoſe time *Aſparuch*, the youngeſt of the Brothers of this Prince, paſſed the *Danube* and ſetled in *Mœſia*; which from thence forward was from this Nation called *Bulgaria*. *Conſtantinus Pogonatus* in 679, and *Juſtinian* his Son in 687, attempted, without any ſucceſs, to drive them out, but they defended the Country againſt both theſe Princes.

706 5. *Tirbelis*, or *Tyrbagli*, ſucceeded him, who in the year 706 aſſiſted *Juſtinian* againſt one *Apſimarus*, an Uſurper; and helped him to take *Conſtantinople*, for which he was well rewarded by that Prince; yet after this he made a faithleſs and unfortunate War upon the *Bulgarian*, which laſted longer than his Reign.

727 6. *Cormes*, or *Crimus*, Son of *Terbelis*, by *Theophanes* called *Comerſius*, who maintained the War againſt the *Greeks*, which, as to the Event, is variouſly reported by the Hiſtorians.

763 7. *Teleſis*, or *Teleutzas*, of another Family, choſen by the People, who were no longer able (as they pretended) to bear the Inſolence of the Princes of the Royal Family. He began his Reign with an Invaſion of *Greece*, which ended in his Ruin.

764 8. *Sabinus*, Son-in-Law to *Cormes*, who endeavouring to ſettle himſelf by a Peace with the *Greeks*, was Depoſed too, and fled to *Conſtantinople*.

9. *Paganus* was ſet up after him, who by their conſent put an end to the War with the *Greeks*. This Peace was broken by the *Greeks* in the year 765, with the great Loſs of the Aggreſſors.

771 10. *Telericus*, *Tſericus*, ſucceeded *Paganus*. This Prince was at laſt alſo driven into Exile.

777 11. *Cardamus* was next Elected, againſt whom *Conſtantinus*, Son of *Irenes*, made War in 778, which laſted many years with various Events.

807 12. *Crumus*, or *Crumnus*, or *Crumas*, in the year 809 took *Sardica*, and defeated 6000 *Greeks* that oppoſed him. *Nicephorus*, to Revenge this Diſgrace, in 811 entred *Bulgaria* with a formidable Army, which, together with the Emperor, periſhed in *Bulgaria*. In the year 812 he had alſo equal Succeſs againſt *Michael* the Succeſſor of *Nicephorus*; after which he beſieged *Conſtantinople*, being enrag'd againſt the Emperor, for attempting to deſtroy him under the covert of Treaty; he failed in this, but he took *Adrianople*; and in the year following renewed the Siege of *Conſtantinople*, under the Walls of which he died in 815.

815 13. *Doucomus*.

14. *Ditzengus*, or *Tzocus*, a cruel bloody Prince, who became blind, and was depoſed by his own Subjects, and Murthered.

15. *Mortagon*, or *Mutragon*, or *Omortag*, a bloody Perſecuting Pagan Prince, who yet made a Peace for Thirty Years with *Leo* the *Arminian* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. He fought and ſlew *Thomas* who had rebelled againſt *Michael Baltiſus* in the year 821.

16. *Baldimirus*, *Vladimirus*, the Grandſon of *Crumus*, ſucceeded *Mortagon* before the year 829; and is ſuppoſed to be that *Bulgarian* Prince that invaded *Friuli* in the year 828.

17. *Bogoris*, he being in danger to be invaded by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus* in the time of a Famine in his Country, promiſed to imbrace the Chriſtian Religion to avoid that Storm, and obtained a Peace on thoſe terms, about the year 866; and he perſiſted zealouſly in this Faith to his Death, which happened in the year 896.

18. *Preſiamus*, mentioned as King of *Bulgaria*, on the occaſion of a War with *Blaſtimirus*, King of *Servia*.

19. *Michael Vorizes*, or *Burichius*, who to Revenge the Overthrow of his Father, invaded *Servia*, then divided between the Children of *Bluſtimirus*,

Bluſtimirus, but was equally unfortunate with his Father; and forced to a Peace. Theſe Princes lived in the Times of *Baſilius Macedo*, and *Preſiamus* ſeems to have been the Son of *Bogoris*.

20. *Symeon*, the Son of *Vladimirus*, the Sixteenth King of *Bulgaria*. He was Educated at *Conſtantinople* in *Greek* Learning in his Youth, and for ſome time lived in a Monaſtery, and in that Habit aſpired to his Father's Throne, which having gained, he made Peace with *Servia* and *Greece*. In the year 888 he began a War with the latter, in which he prevailed at firſt, but the Emperor engaging the *Hungarians* and *Tartars* againſt him, he was defeated in three Battels, but carried the fourth. This War laſted to the year 895; after this he began a ſecond War with *Leo* the Sixth, in which alſo he was Victorious, whereupon followed a Peace, and a new War upon the change of the Emperor; and *Symeon*, in the year 912, marched up to the Walls of *Conſtantinople*. In the year 914 he took *Adrianople* by Treachery. The Terrour of this Prince forced the Emperor to clap up a Peace with the *Saracens*: after which he beat the *Bulgarians*, in the year 917, but by the Treachery of one of the Emperor's Generals that Battel was loſt alſo. In the year 928 he again beſieged *Conſtantinople*, and invited *Fatlum* the Calyph of the *Saracens* of *Ægypt* to aſſiſt him with their Fleet. The 27th of *May*, 932, he ended his Life.

932 21. *Peter*, Son of *Symeon*, a Prince of great Valour and Conduct in the beginning of his Reign by his great Preparations ſtruck a Terrour into the *Servians*, *Croatians*, and *Turks* of *Tartury*, but bent his Forces againſt his more powerful Enemies the *Greeks*, deſcending with a powerful Army into *Macedonia*; but hearing the Emperor was coming againſt him with conſiderable Forces, he conſented to a Treaty of Peace, which he confirmed by a Marriage with *Mary* the Daughter of *Chriſtopher*, Son of *Conſtantine Romanus*, then Emperor of *Greece*. This was celebrated at *Conſtantinople* the 8th of *October*, 932. After the Death of this Lady he renewed the Peace with *Nicephorus Phoca*, the Succeſſor of *Conſtantine* in the year 943. But in the year 947, *Nicephorus* broke the Peace, and perſwaded *Sphendoſlavius*, Prince of *Ruſſia*, to invade *Bulgaria*, which they accordingly did in *Auguſt* of this year, and in that Expedition took many of *Peter*'s Towns, and *Boriſes* and *Romanus*, two of *Peter*'s Sons. The *Ruſs* were hereupon ſo taken with the Pleaſures of *Greece*, that they joined with *Peter* and invaded the Empire with an Army of Three hundred and eight thouſand Man in the year 968 or 969, which yet were by the Arts of *Bardus*, the *Greek* General, ſtrangely defeated with an Army of Twelve thouſand *Greeks*.

971 22. *Boriſes*, or *Burichus*, the Son of *Peter*, about this time ſucceeded his Father in the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, being delivered out of his Captivity by *Joannes Zimiſces*, then Emperor of *Greece*, who was engaged in an Expedition againſt the *Ruſs*, whom he forced to beg leave to return into their own Country: After which he ſpoiled *Boriſes*, King of *Bulgaria*, of his Crown, which he hung up in the Church of St. *Sophia* at *Conſtantinople* in the year 972. The *Bulgarians* continued ſubject to the *Greeks* till the Death of *Zemiſces* in the year 975. After which they recalled *Boriſes*, and *Romanus* his Brother, but *Boriſes* periſh'd in his return, and *Romanus* the other Brother was forced to return back to *Conſtantinople*.

978 23. The *Bulgarians* thereupon ſet up *Samuel*, who was called *Mocrus*, of another Noble Family, that of *Symeon* being wholly extinct. He was a Valiant warlike Prince, and hated Peace above all things. He began his Reign with an Invaſion upon *Greece*, waſting *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, *Theſſalia*, and *Peloponneſus*, and took *Lariſſa* in the year 981; but in the year 995 he was Overthrown in *Peloponneſus* by the *Greeks*, and loſt his whole Army. In the year 1000 the Emperor ſent an Army againſt him, which prevailed; and 1002 another, which took his Capital Cities, and amongſt them *Sophia*. After this the *Greeks* prevailed againſt him, and in 1014 took 15000 of his Subjects, upon which he died the 15th of *September* of Grief.

1014 24. *Gabriel*, *Radomirus*, or *Romanus*, Son of *Samuel*, King of *Bulgaria*, of equal Valour with his Father, but inferiour in Prudence, ſucceeded him; he Reigned one Year, one Month, and nine Days.

1015 25. *John Vladiſlaus*, the Son of *Aaron*, the Brother of *Samuel*, Poiſon'd *Gabriel* and Reigned in his ſtead, ſubmitting *Bulgaria* to the *Greek* Emperor, who confined him by a Golden Bull. After this he Allured *Vladimirus*, King of *Servia* and *Dalmatia*, his Son-in-Law, and Murthered him alſo, and then with an Army invaded his Kingdom, upon which *Baſilius* the Emperor levied an an Army againſt this Aſſaſſin. The War continued two Years; And in the Year 1017 *John* was ſlain under the Walls of *Durazzo* (by him then beſieged) when he had Reigned two Years five Months; whereupon the *Bulgarian* Nobility again ſubmitted to the Emperor. The Emperor however ſpent two Years in reducing ſome that oppoſed this Submiſſion, and in the Year 1019 was intirely Maſter of *Bulgaria*. After this it was Governed by Dukes ſent by the Emperor.

26. *Petrus Deleanus*, a Servant, pretending to be a Baſtard of the Royal Line, uſurped the Crown, and beat the Emperor.

27. *Thiomirus*, or *Thœcomirus*, was by another Party ſet up againſt *Peter*, but was of no long continuance.

1040 28. *Aluſianus*, the ſecond Son of *Aaron*, went over to *Peter*, by whom being ſent to take *Theſſalonica*, he was beaten; and being ſuſpected by him as a Traytor, he took *Peter* and blinded him, and fled to the Emperor, whereupon *Bulgaria* again ſubmitted to the Emperor, in the Year 1041.

29. *Conſtantinus Bodinus*, Son of *Michaelitza*, King of *Servia*, was after this choſen King of *Bulgaria*, but was taken Priſoner, and ſent to *Conſtantinople*. After this *Bulgaria* continued united to the Empire of *Conſtantinople* till the Reign of *Iſaac Angelo*, when it again made a Defection.

The Succeſſion of the Kings of *BULGARIA* after this Defection.

1180 30. *Petrus* and *Aſan*, two Princes of the Royal Family of *Bulgaria*, truſting in the narrow Paſſes and ſtrong Caſtles of that Country, and deſpiſing the unwarlike Forces of the *Greeks*, made a Defection from that Crown in the Reign of *Iſaac Angelo*. This Prince began his Reign in the year 1185, and ended it in 1194. But *Peter* was King of *Bulgaria* in 1189, when *Frederick* paſſed through *Bulgaria* to the *Holy Land*. *Aſan* died in the year 1189, when he had Reigned nine years, as *Nicetas* ſaith, and *Peter* did not long ſurvive him.

1190 31. *Joannes*, by ſome called *Calojoannes*, and *Joannitza*, and *Joannitius*; he was a long time an Hoſtage with the *Greeks*, and was the eldeſt Son of *Aſan*. He took up the *Latin* Cuſtoms in 1197. He died in the year 1207.

1207 32, *Vorylas*, *Phorylas*, the Siſter's Son of *John* after the Death of his Uncle invaded the Crown of *Bulgaria*, but was unfortunate in it, being beaten by the *Franks* in 1208.

33. *Joannes Aſan*, the Son of *Aſan*, fled into *Ruſſia*, and gathering Forces invaded *Bulgaria*, and put an end to the Reign of *Vorylas*. He died in *June*, in the year 1241.

1241 34. *Calomanus*, *Calamanus*, a Child of Twelve Years, ſucceeded his Father, and was thought to be poiſoned.

1245 35. *Michael*, a Son by a ſecond Wife, he was ſlain by his Uncle *Caloman*.

1257 36. *Caloman* II. Son of *Alexander*, Nephew of *Aſan* King of *Bulgaria*; who was not long after ſlain by the *Ruſs*.

37. *Mytzes*, married *Mary* the Siſter of *Michael*, and was forthwith proclaimed King of *Bulgaria* after the Death of *Caloman*.

38. *Conſtantinus*, the Son of *Techus*, ſet up againſt *Michael* an unwarlike Prince, and on that account deſpiſed and deſerted by the *Bulgarians*.

39. *Lachanas*, *Lahanas*, *Corducuva*, a Perſon of mean Extraction, but of great perſonal Valour, ſlew *Conſtantine*, and married *Mary*, *Cantacuſena* his Widow; but he Reigned no long time.

40. *Johannes Aſan*, ſet up againſt *Lachanas* by *Michael Palæologus*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. He Reigned no long time, about the year 1270.

41. *Georgius Terter*, married the Siſter of *John Aſan*, and upon his deſerting the Kingdom, took poſſeſſion of it. Pope *Nicholas* IV. in the year 1291, ſolicited this Prince to embrace the *Latin* Rites.

42. *Smiltzes*, made King of *Bulgaria* by *Noga*, King of *Tartary*.

43. *Suveſtiſlavus*, or *Sphendoſtilavus*, Son of *George Terter*, King of *Bulgaria*, ſucceeded *Smiltzes*, and Redeemed his Father who was then a Captive to *Andronicus* the Emperor, whom he did not reſtore to his Throne, but ſuffered him to live as a private Perſon to the time of his Death. In the year 1303 he entred a War againſt *Andronicus*.

1323 44. *George Terter* II. Son of *Suveſtiſlaus*.

45. *Boeſilavus*, the Uncle of *George*, hearing of the Death of his Nephew, took upon him the Government with the conſent of the Emperor *Andronicus*, but under the Title of *Deſpote* of *Bulgaria*.

1324 46. *Michael Straſcimirus*, Elected King of *Bulgaria* againſt *Boeſlavus*.

47. *Alexander*, the Son of *Straſcimirus*, the Son of *Michael* King of *Bulgaria*. This Prince died in the year 1350, or as others in 1353.

48. *Straſcimirus*, Son of *Alexander*, ſeeing his Father married to a *Jeweſs*, who had poiſoned *Michael* his elder Brother, and himſelf ſent from the Court, he made a Defection from his Father, and took upon him the Title of King of *Bulgaria*. He was taken Priſoner afterwards by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* in the year 1366, or as others in 1369.

1353 49. *Siſmanus* in the interim ſucceeded *Alexander* his Father in the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*. He was the Son of that *Jeweſs* mentioned above, and maintained a War after his Father's Death againſt *Straſcimirus*. In his time *Sultan Amurath* the Firſt invaded *Bulgaria* by *Schachia* his *Vizier*, and took the greateſt part of the Kingdom from him in the year 1381. He patched up at laſt a Peace with *Amurath*, by marrying his Daughter to him. But *Bajazet* his Succeſſor, in the year 1396, renewed the War, and conquered the reſt of *Bulgaria*, after the unfortunate Battel of *Nicopolis*. Some others ſay *Bulgaria* was ſubdued in the year 1374, and that *Siſmanus* was then ſlain.

There are in *DACIA*.

Archbiſhops. Biſhops.

And ſo much for *DACIA*.

OF
Mount Hæmus.

BEfore we enter into *Greece*, we muſt croſs *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a Ridge of Hills extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*, and thereby ſeparating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. They are ſo high and Subject to the Weather, that *Stratonicus*, an old *Grecian*, did uſe to ſay, that *Eight Months of the Year it was always cold, for the other four, Winter*. It was affirmed by ſome of the ancient Writers, that from one of the higheſt Heads hereof as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been diſcerned: the truth of which Report, upon very good reaſon, hath been called in queſtion. But out of doubt, from ſome one Top or Summit of it there is ſo full a Proſpect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perſeus* taking a ſurvey of the Site of theſe Countries, *poſitis per abrupta Caſtris, &c.* as the Story hath it, was able to make choice of the fitteſt places for Forts and Caſtles, whereby to lock up all the Paſſages againſt his Enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* it is ſo rough and craggy, that it is not to be paſſed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperor *Trajan*, where is yet to be ſeen a mighty ſtrong Gate built of great ſquare Stone, by which the Paſſage that way was either opened or ſhut at the pleaſure of them who had the keeping of the ſame, with a ſmall Force exceeding eaſily defended againſt puiſſant Armies. The other, being ſituate near a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether ſo ſtreight and narrow as the other, but riſing high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous Precipices, is alike impaſſable; defenſible at eaſe, and without any great danger; as was experimentally found by the Famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his Forces this way for the Siege of *Adrianople*. Thoſe parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though ſomewhat opener, are not much eaſier of aſcent; the Paſſages through the broken Rocks and Precipices being very difficult, and not eaſily maſtered: inſomuch that when *Perſeus*, the laſt King of *Macedon*, had Fortified the Streights hereof againſt the *Romans*, *non reliquiſſe aditum niſi è Cœlo venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (ſaith *Florus*) that there was no Paſſage left for any Forces, unleſs they fell immediately from the Heavens themſelves.

This great and rocky Chain of Hills, as they were vehemently expoſed to Wind and Weather, ſo were they deſtitute of thoſe Commodities which were either comfortable, or indeed meerly neceſſary to the Life of Man: which made the Paſſage over them in a manner impoſſible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of Cold and Hunger. Yet were they not left deſolate and void of People, eſpecially in theſe ſides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the Spurs and Branches of the Hills ſpreading far and wide and taking up a great part of the Country, occaſioned the *Romans*, in the Diviſion of the Dioceſe of *Thrace* into ſeveral Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mœſia* by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uſcudama*, and *Anchialus*: the principal Governour thereof being a *Roman* Preſident. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common Impreſſions of the *Code*, *Lib.* VII. *Tit.* 62. *Leg.* 23. where we find *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*; the firſt being the name only of the Mountain, and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But to return unto the Mountain. There is another of this Name in *Theſſaly*, mentioned (or miſtook for this) by *Servius* in his Notes on the firſt Book of the *Georgicks*; on the Top whereof was ſaid to be the Habitation of *Mars*, at the Bottom the moſt pleaſant Valley of *Tempe*: So called from *Hæmus*, the Son of *Boreas* and *Orithya*, amongſt the Poets. And poſſibly, to diſtinguiſh this from that of *Theſſaly*, *Ptolomy* and others call it *Æmus*, without the Aſpirate: though it may as well be that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places or in divers Authors by other names; one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Ariſtotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Praſobus*. The like may be obſerved at the preſent alſo, *Pinetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuſpinianus Coſtegnazzo*, *Lazius Kriviczne*, the *Italians Mont Argentaro*, the *French Monte de Caſtegnao*, the *Sclavonians Cumoniza*, and the *Turks Balkan*. Which I have therefore here obſerved for the Reader's ſake, that, meeting any of theſe names in the Stories either of the ancient or modern Times, he may know what Hills or Mountains are intended by them. Which ſaid, I now paſs on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF
GREECE

GREECE, in the preſent Latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Propontick*, *Helleſpont*, and *Ægæan* Seas; on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*; on the North with Mount *Hemus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and ſome part of *Illyricum*; and on the South with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninſula* or Demi-Iſland, environed on three ſides by the Sea, on the fourth only united to the reſt of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the preſent extent hereof, the name being anciently reſtrained within narrower Bounds. Confined at firſt to *Attica* and the parts adjoyning; *ab Iſthmi anguſtiis* Hellas *incipit*, as it is in *Pliny*: and it took the name of *Hellas* from *Hellen*, the Son of *Deucalion*; as that of *Greece*, or *Græcia*, from *Græcus* the Son of *Cecrops*, the firſt King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponneſus*, then to *Theſſalie* alſo: and finally, when the *Macedonian* Empire had enlarged it ſelf over the petit Commonwealths and Eſtates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Country alſo. The People for this cauſe are known by divers names, by ſome called *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*, ſometimes *Pelaſgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, *&c.* But the name whereby they are beſt known in Sacred Writers is that of Ἕλληνες, ſo called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece* in the ſtricteſt notion and acception. A name uſed frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both abſolutely, to denote this Nation, as where it is ſaid σοφίαν Ἕλληνες ζητοῦσι, that the *Greeks ſeek wiſdom*, 1. Cor. 1. 22. and relatively, as in oppoſition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and *Helleniſts* or *Græcizing Jews*. Firſt with relation to the *Jews*, and then it ſignifieth the whole Body of the Gentiles generally, of which the *Græcians* were the moſt eminent and famous people as Ἰουδαίῳ τε πρῶτον ϗ Ἕλληνι, *to the Jew firſt, and alſo to the Gentiles*, Rom. 2. 9. 10. *Give none offence*, ϗ Ἰουδαίοις ϗ Ἕλλησι *neither to the Jews nor to the Gentiles*, 1. Cor. 10. 32. and elſewhere frequently. In which, and all other places of that kind, where the *Antitheſis* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to underſtand the Gentiles, the whole Body of them; tho' many times our Tranſlators, I know not why, render it literally the *Greeks*; as Rom. 1. 16. and 10. 12. *&c.* Secondly, with reference to all other Nations not ſo well verſed in the Learning and Civilities of that age as the *Græcians* were, whom by a common name of ſcorn they called *Barbarians*: according unto that of *Strabo*, *Barbaræ ſunt omnes Nationes præter* Græcos; the *Romans* themſelves, though then the great Lords of the World, being included in the reckoning. And ſo the word is taken, *Rom.* 1. 14. *I am a Debtor*, ſaith Saint *Paul*, Ἕλλησι ϗ Βαρβάροις *both to the Greeks and Barbarians, to the Wiſe and Unwiſe*; in which as well the *Romans*, as thoſe of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Laſt of all for the *Græcizing Jews* whom the Vulgar Latin called *Græcos* and our *Engliſh Græcians*: they were ſuch of the *Jews*, who living diſperſed among the Gentiles, uſed the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint*, making that the Canon both for Life and Doctrine. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judea* who kept themſelves unto the Scriptures in their Mothers-tongue, and uſed the *Hebrew* only in all Sacred Actions, occaſioned many Jars amongſt them, which ſometimes brake out into open Violence; inſomuch as R. *Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hieruſalem*, and therein committed many Outrages. Of this Unfriendlineſs between them mention is made *Act.* 6. 1. where it is ſaid, that *there aroſe a murmuring of the Græcians againſt the Hebrews*, *&c.* In which place, though the *Engliſh* and Vulgar *Latine* uſe the name of *Græcians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendered *Helleniſts*, or *Græcizing Jews*, as in all other places, *viz.* *Acts* 9. 29. and 11. 20. *&c.* where they are called Ἑλληνισταὶ, and not Ἕλληνες, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our Deſcription of the Country: we find it ſituate in the Northern Temperate Zone, under the fifth and ſixth Climates, the longeſt Day being 15 hours; inhabited by a People which were once brave men of War, ſound Scholars, addicted to the love of Vertue and civil Behaviour; a Nation once ſo excellent, that their Precepts and Examples do ſtill remain as approved Rules and Tutors, to inſtruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be vertuous: famous for Government, affectors of Freedom, every way noble. For which Vertues in themſelves, and want of them in others, all their Neighbours and remote Nations were by them ſcornfully called *Barbarians*: a name now moſt fit for the *Græcians* themſelves, being an unconſtant People, deſtitute of all Learning, and the means to obtain it: Univerſities uncivil, riotous, and ſo lazie, that for the moſt part they endeavour their profit no further than their Belly compels them; and ſo perfidious withal in all their Dealings, eſpecially towards the Weſtern Chriſtians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Grego, ſara intrigo*, *i. e.* He that truſts to a *Greek* is ſure to be couzened. When they meet at Feaſts or Banquets, they drink ſmall Draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increaſe, till they come to the height of Intemperancy: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no Rule or Order; whereas before to drink out of one's turn was accounted a point of Incivility. Hence as I believe, ſprung our By-word, *As merry as a Greek*, and the Latine word *Græcari*.

The Women for the moſt part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well-favoured, and exceſſively amorous. Painting they uſe very much, to keep themſelves in grace with their Husbands; for when they once grow wrinkled, they are put to all the Drudgeries of the Houſe. Both Sexes generally in their Habit and outward Garb apply themſelves to the State under which they live; ſuch as are ſubject to the *Turk* conforming unto the Dreſs and Faſhions of the *Turks*, as thoſe who live under the *Venetians* do to that of *Venice*.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by St. *Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, Acts 16. 9. 12. paſſing from thence to *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Mygdonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, v. 15. 16. then unto *Corinth*, the Metropolis of *Peloponneſus*, ch. 18. 1. watering the greateſt part of *Greece* with the dew of Heaven, and planting Biſhops in moſt Churches where he preached the Goſpel, as *Dionyſius* (the *Areopagite*) at *Athens*, *Ariſtarchus* at *Theſſalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Phillippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Iſle of *Crete*. The like he did in many other Countries alſo accounted Members of the *Greek* Church, though not of *Greece*, the name of the *Greeck* Church extending over all the Provinces of the Eaſtern Empire, governed by the 4. Patriarchs, 1. of *Alexandria*, who preſided over *Ægypt* and *Arabia*; 2. of *Hieruſalem*, whoſe Patriarchate (erected only in regard of our Saviour's Paſſion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrued unto it) confined within the Bounds of *Palaſtine*; 3. of *Antioch*, whoſe Juriſdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and whatſoever elſe was wishin the Dioceſs of the Orient; and 4. of *Conſtantinople*, to whoſe charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek* Church, as *Greece*, *Ruſſia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Iſlands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian* and *Ægean* Seas, together with all *Aſia minor*, and the Iſlands thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilioia* and *Iſauria*) and the Countries lying on both ſides of *Pontus Euxinus* and *Palus Mæotis*. The reaſons of the large increaſe of whoſe Juriſdiction, confined at firſt within the Dioceſs of *Thrace*, were, 1. the reputation of being Seated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Council of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Aſia minor*, (*Cilicia* and *Iſauria* excepted only;) 2. the voluntary ſubmiſſion of the *Græcians* upon their Separation from the Church of *Rome*; by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Iſle of *Crete*, and all the Iſlands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no Superior but their own Primate, the Archbiſhop of *Theſſalonica*, became ſubject unto them; 3. the diligence of the Patriarch hereof in converting by his Suffragan Biſhops and other Miniſters the *Ruſſians*, *Bulganians* and *Sclavonians*, to the Faith of *Chriſt*, which made thoſe people to look upon *Conſtantinople* as their Mother-Church; and 4. the Piety and Care of the latter Patriarchs, in ſupplying with new Paſtors and Miniſters thoſe parts and Provinces of the Weſt, which, being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forſaken by their old Clergy, and left like Sheep without a Shepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward Members, is very much ſtreightned and impaired at home, the Country being thinly peopled, and many of thoſe people trained up from their infancy in the *Mahometan* Law. So that it is a greater wonder that there ſhould be any remainders of Chriſtianity left amongſt them, then that the open Profeſſors of it ſhould be ſo few; the Tyranny of the *Turks* on the one ſide, and the Temptations of Preferment upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find twenty Churches of Chriſtians in *Conſtantinople* the Seat and ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Emperors? or that in *Salonichi* or *Theſſalonica*, there ſhould be 30 Chriſtian Churches, and but three *Turkiſh* Moſquits? that the Primate of this *Salonichi*, ſhould have under him 10 Suffragan Biſhops, whereof he of *Phillippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his Juriſdiction? or, finally, that under the Metropolitans of *Athens* and *Corinth* there ſhould be ſo many? So mercifully hath God dealt with his luxurious and perfidious People, as not to take away their Candleſtick, though he hath darkned and obſcured the Light thereof.

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this preſent held in moſt eſteem, they were no other then ſuch as had been Biſhops of the greater Sees. That is to ſay, 1. St. *Chryſoſtome*, firſt a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: 2. *Baſil*, and the two *Gregories*, 3. *Nyſſen*, and 4. *Nazianzen*; all in *Aſia minor*; this laſt of *Conſtantinople* alſo; 5, 6. the two *Cyrills*; the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the other of *Hieruſalem*: 7. *Epiphanius*, Biſhop of *Salamis* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*: 8. *Theodoret*, Biſhop of *Cyprus*, &c. Men of Renown and Precious Memory amongſt them to this very day. From whoſe Writings if they deviate in any material point of Doctrine, it is in that of the Proceſſion of the Holy Ghoſt, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not à *Filio*. And though *Clichtovius*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather *in modo explicandi, quam in ipſa re*; and that the clauſe *a Filioque* was added by the *Romaniſts* to the ancient Creeds, the *Græcians* not being privy nor conſenting to it: yet ſo uncharitable is that Church towards theſe poor men, languiſhing under Tyranny of *Turkiſh* Thraldom, as to perſecute them with Reproach and Scorn, brand them for Schiſmaticks and Apoſtates, and ſolemnly to anathematiſe them in *Bulla Cœnæ* every Maundy-Thurſday. And it is a very hard meaſure *to add, and anathametize too*; as is right well obſerved by the late Lord Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, in his notable Diſcourſe againſt the *Jeſuite*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek* Church differeth from the *Romiſh* and Reformed (as in ſome points it doth from both) have been already ſpecified in our Deſcription of *Ruſſia*: the Churches of the *Greeks* and *Muſcovites* differing in no material Points. but 1. the manner of diſtributing the Sacrament. 2. the exacting of Marriage by the *Muſcovite* in the party admitted unto Orders; 3. the frequent admitting of Divorces upon light occaſions; and 4. and finally, in being leſs ſtrict in obſerving the Lent before *Eaſter* than in any of the other three. For whereas the *Græcians* account it a damnable ſin to eat Fleſh or Fiſh which hath blood in it, in any of their other Lents or times of Abſtinence; (they have in both Churches four in all) in that before *Eaſter*, which of all reaſon ought to be kept moſt punctually, the Laiety eat all ſorts of Fiſh without any exception, the Blood of ſome of which, as the Cuttle by name, is held to be a delicate Food, and in great requeſt.

The Language they ſpake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, *viz.* 1. the *Attick*, 2. the *Dorick*, 3. the *Æolick*, 4. the *Ionick*; beſides the common phraſe of ſpeech moſt in uſe among them. A Language of great fame for the Liberal Arts, but more for ſo great a part of the Holy Scripture firſt delivered in it, and for the lofty Sound, ſignificant Expreſſions, genuine Suavity, and happy compoſition of words, ſo excelling all others, that even in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire it ſo much overtopped the *Latin*, that the Hiſtories of *Rome* it ſelf (as by *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion* and *Caſſius*) were written in it. It was once alſo the general Language of *Anatolia*, ſome parts of *Italy*, *Provence* in *France*, and almoſt all the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*. But now, partly by the mutilation of ſome words and contraction of others, partly by confuſion of the true ſound of Vowels, Dipthongs and Conſonants, and the tranſlating of the Accents, and finally by the admixture of foreign Nations it is not only fallen from its natural Elegancy, but from its largeneſs of extent. For it is now ſhut up within the Limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coaſt of the leſſer *Aſia* oppoſite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almoſt quite devoured by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* Tongues; but eſpecially by that which they call *Franco*, a mungrel Language, compoſed of *Italian*, *French*, and ſome *Spaniſh* words, uſed as the ordinary Speech for Commerce and intercourſe betwixt *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themſelves, who do not underſtand, and much leſs ſpeak, the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they ſtill retain for ordinary days St. *Chryſoſtom's* Liturgie, and that of St. *Baſil* for the Feſtivals: yet being both written in the ancient and learned *Greek*, they are no more underſtood by the Vulgar *Græcian*, then the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate Papiſt.

The Soil queſtionleſs is very fruitful, and would yield great profit to the Husbandman, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things ſubject to the Grand Seigniour and his Soldiers, neglect the Tillage of their Lands, on the ſame grounds with theſe who ſaid in the Poet's Ecclogues.

Impius hæc tam culta novalia Miles habebit?
Barbarus *has ſegetes? En queis conſevimus Arva!*

Shall misbelieving *Turks* theſe Acres ſpoil,
Which I manur'd with ſo much Coſt and Toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See, neighbours, ſee
For whom theſe goodly Corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain Commodities which they tranſport into other parts are Wines, which, in memory of the Water which our Saviour turned into Wine, and on the ſixth day of *January*, being that day whereon this Miracle was wrought, they uſe to baptize: for which cauſe the *Jews* will drink none of them. They ſend alſo into other parts of the World Oils, Copper, Vitriol, ſome Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turky-Grograms, *&c.*

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades, Ariſtides and Themiſtocles* of *Athens*, *Liſander* and *Ageſilaus* of *Sparta*, *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*, *Aratus* and *Philopœmen* of *Achaia*, *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Subvertor of the *Grecian* Liberty, and *Alexander* his Son, (to omit infinite others) the Subvertor of the *Perſian* Monarchy; for the divine Philoſophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Ariſtotle* and *Theophraſtus*; for the moſt eminent Law-givers, *Solon* and *Lycurgus*; for the moſt exquiſite Poets, *Heſiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles* and *Ariſtophanes* for the famous Hiſtoriographers, *Xenophon* the Condiſciple of *Plato*, *Thucidides*, *Plutarch* and *Herodotus*; for the eloquent Orators, *Æſchines*, *Demoſthenes* and *Iſocrates*; and, laſtly, for the Authors and Eſtabliſhers of all humane Learning whatſoever, only the Mathematicks excepted.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Cephiſus*, which, ariſing in the Frontiers of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it ſelf into the *Ægean* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and 3. *Aliacmon*; which beginning their courſe in the more Northern parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thermaicus Sinus*. 4. *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 4. *Athyras*, and 6. *Neſus*, in *Thrace*. 7. *Stymphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stymphalian* Birds. 8. *Ladon*, in *Arcadia*, 9. *Inachus*, whoſe Daughter *Io*, turned into a Heipher, was worſhipped by the *Ægyptians* under the name of *Iſis*. 10. *Achelous*, in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, eſpecially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*. As is alſo 11. *Peneus*, the chief River of *Theſſaly*, and their ariſing from Mount *Pindus*, and increaſed with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay-tree, lived near or on the Banks of this River *Peneus*, and is therefore ſaid to be his Daughter: as *Io* above mentioned was the Daughter of *Inachus*. Of leſs note,

Populifer 11. *Sperchius, & irrequietus* 12. *Enipeus,*
13. *Apidanuſque ſenex, leniſque* 14. *Amphryſus, &* 15. *Æas.*

That is to ſay,

Cool *Sperchius*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphryſe*, *Æas*. and old *Apidan*.

The reſt of leſs note, and the moſt eminent Mountains in each part hereof, ſhall be remembred in their places, as we ſee occaſion.

Thus much of the whole Country in groſs. And as for the Diviſion of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceſes, *viz. Thrace* and *Macedon*: the firſt under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*. Of theſe the Dioceſs of *Macedon*, lying wholly within the Bounds of the modern *Greece* contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*. 2. *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, (now, as in former times, called *Albania*) 3. *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and ſo much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that ſide of the River *Achelous*, 4. *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the reſt of that Country, 5. *Theſſaly*, 6. *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia*, and *Peloponneſus*, the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only, and 7. *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Iſland adjoyning. And for the Dioceſs of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Europa*, 3. *Rhodope*, 4. *Hæmimontum*, 5. *Mœſia Inferior*, and 6. *Scythia*: of which the four firſt make up the Body of *Thrace*, and ſhall there be ſpoken of; the two laſt, being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been deſcribed already in their proper places. But not to bind my ſelf preciſely unto this Diviſion, (though I ſhall look on this as occaſion ſerveth) I ſhall conſider *Greece* in the ſeveral Provinces of, 1. *Peloponneſus*. 2. *Achaia*. 3. *Epirus*. 4. *Albania*. 5. *Macedon*. 6. *Thrace*, 7. The Iſlands of the *Propontick*. 8. *Ægean*, and 9. The *Ionian* Seas, and 10. finally the Iſle of *Crete*.

1. *PELOPONNESUS.*

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Cretan*, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Seas, on the North-eaſt with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*, on the North-weſt with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras* or *Lepanto*, and on the South with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almoſt an Iſland, properly called a *Peninſula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tied to the main Land of *Greece*, by an *Iſthmus* ſix miles in breadth, which the *Grecians* and *Venetians* fortified with a great Wall and five Caſtles. This Wall was called anciently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the Second, who haraſſed and ſpoiled all the Country. This Wall was firſt built by *Manuel* Emperor of *Greece* in 1413, or as others in 1409, re-built or repaired by the *Venetians* in 1424, caſt down it was by *Amurath* 1. in 1447, and by *Mahomet* his Son in 1458, having been built as our Author ſaith, in the year 1353, upon the rumour of a War by the *Venetians*, (who then had the greateſt part of this Country) in 15 days; there being for that time 30000 men employed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other: which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was haſtily made up, or as it was well fortified had it been as well manned, might eaſily have reſiſted the Turks, until more means had been thought on to defend it. Not leſs obſervable, but more fruitleſs, was the deſign of ſome in the elder times, to cut through this *Iſthmus*, and make a perfect Iſland of it. It was attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæſar*, and *Caius Caligula*; by none more eagerly purſued then by the Emperor *Nero*, who, to hearten his Soldiers, loth to attempt ſo fruitleſs an Enterprize, took a Spade in hand, and buſily began the work. Yet at laſt the Soldiers, being frighted with the Blood which abundantly broke forth, with the Groans and Roarings which they continually heard, and with the Hobgoblins and Furies which were always in their ſight, perſwaded the Emperor, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoyn them ſome more profitable Service. It was alſo given over by the former Princes on the like Diſcouragements. But of this *Iſthmus* we ſhall add no more then theſe words of *Ovid*, and ſo paſs forwards to the Deſcription of the Country; that is to ſay,

Æquora bina ſuis oppugnans fluctibus Iſthmon,
Et tenuis Tellus audet utrumque Mare.

Which may be thus Engliſhed;

Two Seas aſſault the *Iſthmus* with their Waves,
And that thin Neck of Land both Seas out-braves.

As for this Country of *Peloponneſus*, it is in compaſs 600 miles, and was called at the firſt *Ægialia*, from *Ægialus* the firſt King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Apis* the fourth King; after that *Sycionia*, from *Sicyon* the 19th King thereof: and finally *Peloponneſus*, from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆσος, *Inſula*, the word ſignifying as much as the Iſle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that *a Maurorum Incurſionibus*, from the Incurſions of the *Moors* as *Mercator* thinketh; but by the *Moors* he means the *Saracens*, as ſome others alſo do.

It is conceived to be the moſt pleaſant Country in all *Greece*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the Life of man; and in ſuch alſo as do ſerve for Delicacy and Contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains ſwelled with fruitful Hills, well ſtored with Ports and Havens on all ſides thereof. And though no Country in the World, for the bigneſs of it, hath ſuffered in the Ruine of ſo many brave and ſtately Cities; yet is it ſtill the moſt populous and beſt inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of note in all this *Peninſula* but might eaſily be ſeen. A moſt gallant Proſpect. The whole was divided commonly into theſe ſeven Provinces; 1. *Achaia propria*. 2. *Elis*. 3. *Meſſene*. 4. *Arcadia*. 5. *Laconia*. 6. *Argolis*, and 7. *Corinthia*.

1. *ACHAIA propria*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Argolis* and *Corinthia*, on the Weſt with the *Ionian* Sea, on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus* or the Gulf of *Lepanto*, on the South with *Elis*. So called from the *Achai*, the Inhabitants of it; the Adjunct *propria* being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or Main-land of *Greece*.

Places of moſt conſideration in it are, 1. *Dyme*, ſituate in the moſt Weſtern point of it, in or near the Promontory called *Araxus*. The Town is now called *Chiarenza*, and the Promontory *Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another Promontory or Head-land, of old called *Rhium*, oppoſite to another in *Ætolia* that was called *Antirrhium*, divided by a very narrow Streight or *Fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each ſide with a Caſtle for defence thereof, commonly called *Caſtelli di Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bajazet* the ſecond, when he had finiſhed the Conqueſt of *Peloponneſus*, to ſecure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demoliſhed by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the V. to lay the Bay open to the Chriſtians: and finally, both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the Magnificent, as they ſtill continue. *Chiarenza* lies 50 *Italian* miles to the South of that Streight, and has no Relation to the Caſtles of *Lepanto*, however it is now in a mean deſolate condition, and all together deſolate. The Harbour it once had being now ſtop'd with Sand. *Coronelli*. 2. *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been nurſed by a Goat, whence it had the name; 'Αἲξ in *Greek* ſignifying a *Shee-Goat*: once a ſtrong Town, now ruined and deſtroyed by the Turks, called at this day *Voſtiza*, or *Boſtizan*. 3. *Ægira*, once the chief City of all this Tract, ſituate on a ſteep and inacceſſible Hill; now a ſmall Village, called *Xylocaſtro*. 4. *Olenus*, ſo named from *Olenus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Anaxithea*, now called *Caminiſa*. 5. *Patræ Patras* ſituate at the very Mouth of the Gulf, oppoſite to *Lepanto*. Firſt called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patreus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Paera*, which name it holdeth to this day, being ſtill called *Patras*; the Town of moſt note on the Bay of *Corinth*, which is called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A Town of good Trade, and much frequented not long ſince by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who had here their Conſul, called the *Conſul of Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, who here ſuffered Martyrdom. This place was choſen by *Auguſtus*, as a Station for his Navy, and the Inhabitants of it were accordingly much favoured and priviledged by him. In the latter times of the *Greek* Empire, it was a Dukedom, and reſigned to the *Venetians* by the laſt Duke in 1408, when the Turks firſt took it I know not, but *Andrew Doria* made himſelf Maſter of it in 1533. On the Peace in 1539, it was reſtored to the Turks; and in the year 1687, was taken again by the *Venetians*, after the Battle of *Lepanto*, without any defence. Mr. *Wheler* p. 292, ſaith, it ſtands at the Foot of a Mountain, half a Mile from the Sea, and has a Caſtle in the higheſt point of the Hill. It is now an Archbiſhops See, but much decayed, yet he ſets down its Antiquities, which are not fit to be tranſcribed here. 6. *Pellene*, diſtant from the Sea about 60 Furlongs: the people whereof being conſtant to their old Faſhions of Apparel, occaſioned the Proverb of *Pellenica veſtis*, applied to old Cloaths out of Faſhion. Here were once alſo the two Cities of 7. *Helice*, and 8. *Buris*, ſunk by the violence of a Tempeſt into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the Battle of *Leuctra*. Not to ſay any thing of 9. *Tritæa*. and 10. *Phera*, two other Towns hereof, of note in former times; ſo little now remaining of them, as if they had been ſunk at the ſame time alſo.

But the chief Town of all this Province (if not a Province of it ſelf) is *Sicyon*, ſituate not far from the *Iſthmus*, in the moſt Eaſtern parts hereof, and giving to the Territory or adjoyning Country (as once unto the whole *Peninſula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The Territory is rich, eſpecially in Olives, and Works of Iron; the City the moſt ancient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general Flood and Reſtauration of Mankind. Firſt called *Ægialia*, after *Sicyonia*, by the name of the firſt and nineteenth King hereof; by whom, and their Succeſſors it was much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues and Images of their ſeveral Gods: the ancienteſt Kingdom in the World, the *Aſſyrian* and *Ægyptian* excepted only, and perhaps not thoſe. It took beginning in the perſon of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the Deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*; continuing in a Race of Princes who ſwayed the Affairs of *Peloponneſus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reaſon of the undoubted Antiquity of this Kingdom, I ſhall here ſubjoyn in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Kings of SICYON.

A. M.	
1860	1. *Ægialeus*.
1910	2. *Europs*.
1950	3. *Telchin*.
1980	4. *Apis*.
2004	5. *Telxion*.
2055	6. *Ægirus*.
2089	7. *Eurymachus*.
2134	8. *Leucippus*.
2187	9. *Meſſapus*.
2234	10. *Peatus*.
2280	11. *Plemnaus*.
2328	12. *Orthoulis*.
2391	13. *Marathon*.
2421	14. *Marathus*.
2441	15. *Echireus*.
2496	16. *Corax*.
2526	17. *Epopeus*.
2561	18. *Laomedon*.
2601	19. *Sicyon*.
2646	20. *Polybus*.
2686	21. *Janiſchus*.
2728	22. *Pheſtus*.
2736	23. *Adraſtus*.
2740	24. *Polyphides*.
2771	25. *Pelaſgus*.
2791	26. *Zeuxippus*, the laſt King of *Sicyon*.

After whoſe death *A. M.* 2812, the Eſtate hereof was governed by the Prieſts of *Apollo*, ſeven of them ſucceſſively one after another: the firſt five, only years a-piece; *Amphyction*, who was the ſixth, continuing 9 years in the Regency, and *Charidemus*, the laſt of them, ruling 18 years. After whoſe death or departure, I know not which, *A. M.* 2844, the *Heraclida*, who about that time returned into *Peloponneſus*, made themſelves Maſters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyon* from this time forwards.

Of theſe Kings the moſt memorable were *Ægialeus* and *Apis*, the firſt and fourth, from whom this *Peninſula* had the names of *Apia* and *Ægiala*; *Ægirus*, the 6. giving name and being to the City *Ægira* ſpoken of before; *Marathon*, the 13. of whom perhaps the famous Fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Epopeus*, the 17. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Trophies *Sicyon*; the 19. the Founder of the City *Sicyon*, or at leaſt the Repairer and Enlarger of it; *Pelaſgus* the 25. from whom perhaps the *Gracians* might be called *Pelaſgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare ſway in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the ſpecial Ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal Eſtabliſhers of the *Achaan* Commonwealth againſt the *Spartans* and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the general Hiſtory of *Peloponneſus*.

2. The Country of *ELIS* hath on the Eaſt *Arcadia*, on the Weſt the *Ionian* Sea, on the North *Achaia propria*, on the South *Meſſenia*. The chief Cities are, 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Eliſha* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himſelf in theſe parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his poſterity in honour of him did the Iſles adjoyning, mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel* by the name of the Iſles of *Eliſha*, ch. 27. v. 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Sicilia*: and in this City reigned the King *Angeus*, the cleanſing of whoſe Stables is accounted one of the Wonders or twelve Labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statute of *Jupiter Olympius*, one of the ſeven Wonders, being in height 60 Cubits, compoſed by that excellent Workman *Phidias*, of Gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* Games inſtituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A. M.* 2757. The Exerciſes in them were for the moſt part bodily, as running in Chariots, Running on Foot, Wreſtling, Fighting with the Whorlbats, and the like. But ſo that there repaired thither alſo Orators, Poets, and Muſicians, and all that thought themſelves excellent in any laudable quality, to make trial of their ſeveral Abilities: the very Criers, who proclaimed the Victories, contending which ſhould cry loudeſt, and beſt play his part. The rewards given to the Victour were only Garlands of Palm, or ſuch ſlight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no leſs eſteemed that ſmall Sign of Conqueſt and Honour, then the *Romans* did their moſt magnificent Triumphs: thoſe which were Conquerors herein being met by all the principal men in the City in or under which they lived, and a paſſage broken in the main Walls thereof for their reception; as if the ordinary Gates were not capable of ſo high an Honour, or able to afford them entrance. Inſomuch that when *Diagoras* had ſeen his three Sons crowned for their ſeveral Victories, a Friend of his came to him with this Gratulation, *Morere*, Diagora, *nunquam enim in Cœlum aſcenſurus es*, that is to ſay, Die now, *Diagoras*, for thou ſhalt never go to Heaven: as if no greater Happineſs could befal the man either in this life or that to come, than that which he enjoyed already. The Judges and Preſidents of theſe Games were ſome of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it; highly commended for their Juſtice and Integrity in pronouncing who beſt deſerved without Partiality. Of these thus *Horace* in his Odes:

Sunt quos Curriculo pulverem Olympicum
Collegiſſe juvat; Metaque fervidis
Evitata Rotis, Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

Quos Elæa *domum reducit*
Palma cæleſtes.

That is to ſay,

Some in *Olympick* Duſt take pride
Their Chariots and themſelves to hide;
Whom the ſhunn'd Mark, and Palm ſo priz'd,
Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.

Who with clean Garlands come,
In Cæleſtial Triumph home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* theſe Games were diſcontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned ſo to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them, cauſing them to be ſolemnly exerciſed every fourth year: from which Cuſtom *Olympias* is ſometimes taken for the ſpace of 4 years; as *quinque annorum Olympiades* for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the Flood to be obſcure; thoſe before the *Olympiads*, and after the Flood to be Fabulous; but thoſe that followed theſe *Olympiads* to be Hiſtorical. Theſe *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the Reſtauration of them by *Iphitus* until the Reign of the Emperor *Theodoſius*, the *Gracian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their Account: the firſt of them being placed in the year of the World 3174, before the building of *Rome* 40 years; the laſt in the 440 years after Chriſt's Nativity. According to which reckoning this Account continued for the ſpace of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympea* be not found in *Peloponneſus*, the Town at this day being called by the name of *Sconri*. 3. *Piſa*, whoſe people followed *Neſtor* to the Wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by Tempeſt driven to the Coaſts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Piſo* in *Tuſcany*. 4. *Torneſe*, a new Town, or the new name of ſome ancient City; from whence the adjoyning Promontory, of old called *Chelonites*, is now called *Cabo di Torneſe*.

3. *MESSENIA* hath on the Weſt *Arcadia*, on the North *Elis*, on the South the Sea, and on the Eaſt *Laconia*. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Meſſene*, ſituate on *Sinus Meſſeniacus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylos*, where *Neſtor* was King, now called *Navarino*, a deſolate and poor Village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* ſpeaking in the name of *Penelope*.

Nos Pylon, *antiqui* Neleia Neſtoris *arva*,
Miſſimus; incerta eſt reddita fama Pylo.

To *Pylon*, aged *Neſtor*'s Seat, we ſent,
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

Near to it there is now an excellent Harbour, capable of 2000 Ships at once, and which is now thought the beſt Port in the *Morea*. And a Town of good ſtrength call'd *Navarino*, which has 2 ſtrong Forts built by the *Venetians* for the Security of the Town and Harbour. In the year 1498, it ſuſtained and over-came a ſharp Siege from the *Turks*; about 2 years after, it fell twice in a ſhort time into the hands of the *Turks*, who were Maſters of it till the year 1686, when the *Venetians* recovered it from the *Turks*, who call this place *Javarin*. The Turks took it in 1500.

3. *Modon*, or *Methone*, ſeated in the moſt Southern part of this *Peninſula*, from whence unto the *Iſthmus* which joyneth it to the reſt of *Greece* are reckoned 175 *Italian* miles. The Town is commodiouſly ſeated in a

Demi-Iſland, waſhed on the one ſide with the Sea, and ſo well fortified toward the Land, that in the opinion of moſt men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South-ſide with a large and capacious Bay, about three miles wide, ſecure from all winds except the North, and ſhut up with a little Iſland called anciently *Oenuſa*, but now *Sapienza*, which makes it one of the ſafeſt Harbours in all theſe Seas. There be 3 Iſlands, *Sapienza*, *Caprera*, and *Venetica*, lying in a ſtreight Line from Eaſt to Weſt, againſt the Bay of *Modon*. It was poſſeſſed once by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the Turk, after many ſharp and fierce Aſſaults, *An.* 1500, both *Pylus* (*Navarino*) and *Corone* yielding on the noiſe thereof. The beſt Retreat ſince that time of the *Turkiſh* Navies, and the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Sanzack*, who hath the Government of this whole Province of *Morea* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. This place is ſtrong by nature, and well fortified by Art. This City was Raviſh'd from the *Greek* Empire in the year 1124, and being retaken the next year from them, they recovered it in 1204. *Bajazet* 2. beſieged it with an Army of 150000 men in the year 1498, and after a ſtout reſiſtance took it by the negligence of the defendants, who ran to entertain ſome Ships newly arrived, and left the Walls unguarded, which the Infidels obſerving, ſoon turn'd their Joy into Sorrow. In the year 1659, *Moroſmi* took it, and being reſtored to the *Turks* in the year 1686, it was again taken by the *Venetians*, and is now in their Hands. 4. *Corone*, or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Meſſene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the laſt which held out againſt the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea Coaſts of *Peloponneſus*. *Coron* lies 10 miles Eaſt of *Modon*, upon a large Bay call'd by its own name. It is of a Triangular form, and has on the Eaſt Angle a ſtrong Caſtle built by the *Venetians* in 1463 for a Magazine. It came firſt into their hands in 1204. It was taken from them by *Bajazet* in 1498, in the year 1533, it was taken by *Andrew Doria*, and Garriſoned with *Spaniards* who ſoon after deſerted it. In the year 1685, the *Venetians* retook it, after a defence of 40 days, and found in it 120 pieces of Canon, 60 of which were Braſs, with great quantities of Proviſions and Ammunition. 5. *Cypariſſi*, now called *Arcadia*, from when the Bay adjoyning hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is alſo the Promontory called of old *Coryphaſium*; now *Cabo Zunchi*.

The people of this ſmall Province had once a great ſway in the whole *Peninſula*. At firſt they were confederate with the *Spartans* in ſo ſtrict a League, that they mutually ſent young Virgins to one another for their publick Sacrifice: but afterwards Corrivals with them for the ſupreme power. The *Spartans*, at the laſt getting the upper hand of them, oppreſſed them with a miſerable Servitude. The occaſion this: In the confines of this Country ſtood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Meſſenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that ſome *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Meſſenians* here raviſhed: which abuſe the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their War; the true reaſon indeed being their Covetouſneſs of the ſole Empire. This War broke out three ſeveral times. The firſt continued twenty years; in which ſpace the *Lacedamonians*, fearing their abſence would hinder the ſupply of Children in the City, ſent a company of their ableſt young men home to accompany their Wives. Their Off-ſpring were called *Parthenii*, who coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, ſailed into *Italy*, and there built *Tarentum*. The ſecond being of 23 years continuance, was raiſed and maintained by *Ariſtomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Meſſenians*; in which they proſpered till *Ariſtocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their Confederates, revolted to ſide with *Lacedamon*. Then began they to decline, and *Ariſtomenes* was thrice taken Priſoner, ſtill miraculouſly eſcaping. His laſt Impriſonment was in a Dungeon, where by chance eſpying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her Tail. The Fox running away, guided *Ariſtomenes* after; till the ſtreightneſs of the Hole by which he went out made him leave his hold, and fall to ſcraping with his Nails, which exerciſe he never left till he had made the Hole paſſable, and ſo eſcaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhodes*. The third War was like drops after a Tempeſt; in which the *Meſſenians* being finally ſubdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans*, who put them to all Drudgeries and ſervile Works; as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their Bondmen. And to this life ſome of them did apply themſelves with ſo much Obſequiouſneſs, that at laſt it grew into a Proverb, *Meſſina ſervilior*, that ſuch a one was more ſervile, or more ſlaviſhly uſed, than theſe poor *Meſſenians*. But the greateſt part of them not brooking that heavy Yoke, paſſed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Meſſana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens*; the reſt diſperſed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquiſhed the *Lacedamonians* at the Battle of *Leuctra* reſtored them to their ancient Poſſeſſions.

4. *ARCADIA* hath on the Eaſt *Laconia*, on the Weſt *Elis* and *Meſſene*, on the North *Achia propria*, and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Caliſto*; but was formerly called *Pelaſgia*: the people whereof thought themſelves more ancient than the Moon.

> *Orta prius Luna, de ſe ſi creditur ipſi,*
> *A magno, tellus* Arcade *nomen habet.*

> The land which of great *Arcas* took its name
> Was e're the Moon, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are; 1. *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, conſiſting of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horſe, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, conſiſting of 25000 Foot and 2000 Horſe. In this Battle *Epaminondas*, that famous Leader, received his death's wound, and not long after died. At his laſt Gaſpe, one of his Friends bemoaning his untimely death, *Alas*, ſaid he; *thou dieſt*, Epaminondas, *and leaveſt behind thee no Children*. Nay replied he, two Daughters will I leave behind me, the victory of *Leuctra*, and this other at *Mantinea*. It was afterward called *Antigonea*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of *Phillip* the Father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperor *Adrian* reſtored to its old name again, and is now called *Mantegna*. *Mantinea* lies 25 miles North of *Megalopolis*. 2. *Megalopolis* the Birth-place of *Polybius*, that excellent Hiſtorian. The one half of it had ſometimes the name of *Oreſtia*, from the lodging of *Oreſtes* in it; the whole is now called *Leontari*, on what cauſe I know not. 3. *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Pſophis*, ſo called from *Pſophis*, one of the Sons of *Lycaon*, once King of this Country, ſlain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Stymphalus*, ſituate near a Lake and River of the ſame name, where *Hercules* ſlew the *Stymphalian* Birds; ſo great in number and in Body; that they darkened the Sun beams, and terribly infeſted this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was alſo in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6. *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worſhipped; and from hence called *Tegaus*: more for the War made upon the *Tegeates*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedamonians*; who thinking themſelves aſſured of Victory; brought with them ſtore of Chains and Fetters wherewith to lead Captive their conquered Enemies; but being overcome in Battel, were themſelves bound with them, and forced as Slaves to till the Grounds of theſe *Tegeates*. Here is alſo in this Country the famous River *Styx*, whoſe water, for the poiſonous taſte, was called the water of Hell; by which, Poets feign that the Gods uſe to ſwear, as may be every where obſerved; and that what God ſoever ſwore by *Styx* falſly, he was baniſhed from Heaven, and prohibited Nectar for 1000 years.

This Country, for the fitneſs of it for Paſturage and Grazing, hath made it the Subject of many worthy and witty diſcourſes, eſpecially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a Book which beſides its excellent Language, rare Contrivances, and delectable Stories, hath in it all the Strains of Poeſie, comprehendeth the univerſal Art of ſpeaking, and to them which can diſcern and will obſerve, affordeth notable Rules for Demeanor, both private and publick. Which notable Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *Engliſh Heliodore*, ſo the ingenious Author of the Hiſtory of *Melintus* and *Ariana* may deſervedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5. *LACONIA* is bounded on the Weſt with *Arcadia*, on the Eaſt and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called firſt *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* ſaid to be the firſt Inhabitants of it; afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* adding of *Lacedamon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones* who ſucceeded the *Leleges* in the poſſeſſion hereof, on their removal into the Iſlands of the leſſer *Aſia*. It is by ſome Writers alſo called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, and the Fields very ſpacious; yet for the moſt part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea*, and *Tanaria*, now called *Cabo Malio* and *Cabo Matapan*; (the moſt Southern Cape in the *Morea*) and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the Ancients, into which the River *Eurotas* (now better known by the name of *Vaſilipotamo*, or the *Kingly River*) pours his gentle Streams. The nature of the people we ſhall find in *Sparta*.

. Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Leuctra*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, near the Bay of *Meſſene*: of which name were two others in *Greece*, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*; but this laſt moſt memorable. 2. *Amycla*, ſo called from *Amyclas*, the third King of *Sparta*, by whom it was firſt founded; renowned afterwards for the Birth of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, the Sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundreſs of the City of *Amycla* in *Calabria Superior*, at firſt a Colony of this: diſtant from *Lacedamon* about 20 Furlongs. 3. *Thulana*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* ſlew the Monſter *Hydra*; and not far off Mount *Tanarus*, near the Promontory *Tanaria*, in which the Natives ſhew a Cave, (believed in former times to be a Deſcent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salaſſia*, where *Antigonus* vanquiſhed *Cleomenes*, the laſt King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus*, (ſeated on the Bay named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Malvaſia*: a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the ſweet Wines called *Malveſey* or *Malmſey*, ſent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. An Archbiſhops See, ſeated on a Rock on the Eaſt ſhoar of the *Morea*, 60 *Italian* miles South Eaſt of *Napoli di Romania*, very ſtrong by nature, it being encompaſſed with the Sea, and joyned to the Continent, only by a Timber-bridge to the Weſt, to the North Weſt it has a ſmall quantity of Ground, but fenced from it by a Tripple-Wall, and a Caſtle ſeated on a Rock, being built to repel any Force. In the year 1204, this ſtrong place was given in Fee to *William*, a *French* Count, by *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and then Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. This Count gave up his Right to the *Venetians*, who poſſeſs'd it till the year 1537, it was taken from them by the *Turks*. The *Venetians* retook and plundered it during the War of *Candina*. At this time it is the only place the *Turks* have in the *Morea*, all the reſt being recovered by the *Venetians* from them. 6. *Sparta*, ſo called from *Sparta*, the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the ſecond King of *Argos*. the Founder of it, but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedamon*, the ſecond King of this Country, it took that name alſo; promiſcuouſly known by both in the beſt Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a famous Common-wealth; but at firſt governed by Kings as moſt of the *Greek* Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the Father of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof. After whoſe death, and the death of the ſaid famous Brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta*, or *Lacedamon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Siſter. And though *Nicoſtratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *Venter*, ſucceeded after his deceaſe; yet the *Spartans* ſoon rejected them, and received *Oreſtes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione*, the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and conſequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tyſamenes*, the Son of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, ſucceeded next; in whoſe time the *Heraclida*, or poſterity of *Hercules*, returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Cteſiphon*, and *Ariſtodemus*, Sons of *Ariſtomachus*: whereof the firſt poſſeſſed himſelf by force of Arms of the City *Argos*, the ſecond of *Meſſene*, and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*; which dying very ſhortly after, he left unto his two Sons *Euriſthenes* and *Procles*, the Roots of the two Royal Families which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*; firſt abſolutely as Sovereign Princes, without any controul, afterwards at the direction of the Senate, and finally under the Command and Check of thoſe popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But becauſe theſe *Spartan* Kings in each ſeveral period were for the moſt part men of Action, and often mentioned in the Hiſtories of the elder time; I will firſt make a Catalogue of them, and then ſubjoyn ſuch Obſervations and Remembrances as I think moſt pertinent.

The Kings of *SPARTA* of the firſt Family.

A. M.

1. *Eurotas*, the firſt King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
2. *Lacedamon*, Brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedamon*.
3. *Amyclas*, Son of *Lacedamon*, the Founder of *Amycla* a *Laconian* City.
4. *Argalus* Son of *Amyclas*.
5. *Cynorta*, Son of *Argalus*.
6. *Oebalus* Son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebalus*.

2700 8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whoſe life he was King of *Oebalia* only.

9. *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, Sons of *Tyndarus*, famous amongſt the *Argonauts*.

2740 10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Atreus*, and Brother of *Agamemnon*, Kings of *Mycena*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whoſe Rape occaſioned the Deſtruction of *Troy*.

2770 11. *Nicoſtratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by a former Wife.

12. *Oreſtes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
13. *Tiſamenes*, Son of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, who, being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclida*, reigned in *Achaia*, and left his Kingdom there unto his Poſterity.

The

The Kings of SPARTA of the Race of the HERACLIDÆ.

1. *Ariſtodemus*, the firſt King of the Race of *Hercules*, left the Kingdom jointly to his two Sons,

2848	1. *Euriſthenes.*	2848	1. *Procles.*
2890	2. *Agis*, from whom this Line were called *Agidæ.*		2. *Euripon*, from whom this Line were called *Euripontidæ.*
2891	3. *Echeſtratus.*		3. *Prytanis.*
2926	4. *Labetas.*		4. *Eunomus.*
2963	5. *Dryſſus.*		5. *Polydectes.*
2992	6. *Ageſilaus.*	3076	6. *Charilaus.*
3046	7. *Archelaus.*	3140	7. *Nicandrus.*
3096	8. *Teleclus.*	3176	8. *Theopompus.*
3136	9. *Alcumenes.*		9. *Archidamus.*
3173	10. *Polydorus.*		10. *Zeuxidamus.*
	11. *Eurycrates.*		11. *Anaxidamus.*
	12. *Anexandrus.*		12. *Archidamus* II.
	13. *Eurycrates* II.		13. *Agaſides.*
	14. *Leonidas.*		14. *Ariſton.*
	15. *Anaxandrides.*		15. *Demaratus.*
	16. *Cleomenes.*	3447	16. *Leontichides.*
	17. *Leonidas* II.	3478	17. *Archidamus* III.
3470	18. *Plitarchus.*	3520	18. *Agis.*
3471	19. *Pliſtonax.*	3547	19. *Ageſilaus.*
3539	20. *Pauſanias.*	3588	20. *Archidamus.* IV.
3553	21. *Ageſipolis.*	3611	21. *Agis* II.
3567	22. *Cleombrotus.*		22. *Eudamidas.*
3576	23. *Ageſipolis* II.		23. *Archidamus* V.
3577	24. *Cleomenes* II.		24. *Eudamidas* II.
3611	25. *Arius.*	3700	25. *Agis* III.
3655	26. *Acrotatus.*		26. *Eurydamidas*, the laſt King of the Line of the *Euripontidæ*, ſlain by *Cleomenes*, the laſt of the other line alſo.
	27. *Arius* II.		
	28. *Leonidas* III.		
	29. *Cleombrotus* II.		
3714	30. *Cleomenes* 3. the laſt of the Line of the *Agidæ*; who, having ſlain *Eurydamidas*, the Son of *Agis* the third, ſubſtituted his Brother *Epiclides*, in his place. But being himſelf ſhortly after vanquiſhed by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the *Heraclidæ* ended, after it had continued here for the ſpace of Nine Hundred Years, or thereabouts.		

Under theſe Kings the Government at firſt was ἄγαν Μοναρχικὸν as *Plutarch* termeth it, ſufficiently *Monarchical*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the ſecond Houſe, the people, finding the Reins of Government let looſe, began to mutiny and grow too head-ſtrong. To bridle whom, and to reſtrain the Kings withal, (ſhould they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus*, the Protector of *Charilaus*, the ſixth King of that Houſe, did ordain the Senate, committing to them the ſupreme Power in matters Civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all Military and Sacred buſineſs. To curb the Inſolencies of this Senate, who quickly found their own ſtrength, *Theopompus*, the eighth King of that Houſe, with the conſent of *Polydorus*, the tenth King of the other, inſtituted a new Magiſtracy choſen out of the Common People, whom they called the *Ephori*; which grew in fine to ſuch an height of Pride and Tyranny, as not only to control the Senators, but to cenſure, fine, impriſon, depoſe, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the Spirit of Sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon* was at firſt a Monarchy under Kings, then an Ariſtocracy under the command of the Senate, next a Democracy under the *Ephori*, and finally, by thoſe popular Officers made ſo plain a Tyranny, that *Ariſtotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths-men, who died before they had embrued their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms τυραννίδα & τὸ τυραννικὸν a moſt abſolute Tyranny. What think you theſe Men would have called it, had they lived to ſee *Leonidas* the third depoſed, and *Agis* the third of that name alſo moſt barbarouſly murthered by theſe popular Villains?

But being the Foundation of this Common-wealth was firſt laid, and the good Laws and Politick Conſtitutions by which it did ſo long ſubſiſt in great Power and Splendour eſtabliſhed, by the Wit and Power of *Lycurgus*, as before we ſaid; we are to know concerning him, that he was the Son of *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the ſecond Houſe, ſlain in a popular Tumult by the Common people. Who, finding by this Eſſay, that the people were become too head ſtrong for the Kings to govern, unleſs reduced to extream Bondage by their Kings, which he wiſhed not neither, took the advantage of the Minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government; and what he could not do by fair means, to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flie for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleaſed, and ſettled ſuch a Form of Government as himſelf well fancied, the better to decline the Envy of ſo great a Change, he got leave to Travel, binding the People by an Oath to obſerve all his Laws until his return; and, being gone, commanded at his death, that his Aſhes ſhould be caſt into the Sea, leaſt being carried back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themſelves releaſed from their Oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flouriſh in all proſperity. The particulars of which Inſtitutions he that liſts to ſee, may find them ſpecified at large by *Plutarch* in the Life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Diſcipline was ſo ſharp and ſtrict, that many went into the Wars for no other reaſon than on a hope to rid themſelves from ſo hard a Life; and that *Diogenes*, returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from Men to Women, ἐκ τῆς ἀνδρωνίτιδος εἰς τὴν γυναικωνῖτιν and being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the compleateſt men, made anſwer that he could no-where meet with men, but that he had found ſome Boys amongſt the *Spartans*. A *Cynical* and rugged Anſwer, but ſuch as carried a great deal of Judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more ſtout and reſolute in all their Actions, and leſs effeminate in their Lives, than the reſt of the *Gracians*. But beſides the ſtrictneſs of the Diſcipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wiſh for Wars abroad; namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in Civil matters, or Affairs of State, entirely left to the diſpoſing of the Senate and Power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings, having by the Laws the Command of their Armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occaſions, and the Common people as deſirous to attend them in ſuch Employments as the Kings could wiſh. Upon theſe grounds War was made a Trade amongſt them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring People, then with the reſt of the *Laconians*, afterwards quarrelling with the *Meſſenians*, their old Confederates: all which they ſeverally ſubdued, and made ſubject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made againſt the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the firſt, of the elder Houſe, went forth to aid them; ſlain at the Streights of *Thermopylæ*, courageouſly fighting for the Liberty of *Greece*; and when it was thought fit to ſet upon the *Perſian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In purſuit of this War againſt the *Perſians*, *Pauſanias* and *Ageſilaus* were of moſt renown: the firſt in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*: the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perſians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and Glory. Hence the long War betwixt theſe Cities, called *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, managed for the moſt part in *Peloponneſus*, from thence transferred into *Sicily*, and at laſt ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an Ariſtocracy under thirty Magiſtrates of their own appointment, commonly called the *Thirty Tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate Succeſs, their next Quarrel was with the *Bœotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Perſians* openly aſſiſting the Enemy. Here their Proſperity began to leave them. For beſides many ſmall Defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* ſo diſcomfited them at the Overthrows of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that *Sparta* it ſelf was in danger of utter Ruin. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertook againſt the *Phocians*, wherein alſo they made a Party: but this War being ended by King *Philip*, they ſcarce breathed more Freedom than he gave Air to. But when *Alexander*'s Captains fought for the Empire of their Maſter, all theſe flouriſhing Republicks were either totally ſwallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief ſtrength of a Town to conſiſt in the Valour of the People; and therefore would never ſuffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the Death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not thoſe Fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Doſon*, King of *Macedon*, who, having vanquiſhed *Cleomenes*, King of *Sparta*, entred the Town, and was the firſt Man that ever was received into it as Conqueror. So much different were the preſent *Spartans* from the Valour and Courage of their Anceſtors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forſake his Country, and the Race of the *Heraclidæ* failing in him, they became a Prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no ſooner freed, but they were made ſubject (in a manner) to the Power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town was ſo weak and inconſiderable, that it was not able to reſiſt the pooreſt Enemy; now a ſmall Burrough called *Miſthra*. And ſo I leave them to the thoughts of their former Glories; having now nothing elſe to boaſt of but the Fame and Memory of their Actions in former Times.

How great ſoever it was of old, ſaith the Noble *Coronelli*, it is now reduced to a very ſmall Circuit, and a few Inhabitants, who are expoſed to ſo great Heats by reaſon of Mount *Tagetus*, which lies very near it due North, and cuts off the cooling Brizes, and augments the heat of the Sun to that degree, that few years paſs without a Plague. On the top of that Mountain ſtands a ſtrong Citadel which was never taken by Force, built by the *Deſpotes* in the declining of the *Greek* Empire. *Mahomet* the ſecond was the firſt of the *Ottoman* Princes who conquered this City about the year 1458. In the year 1473 it was taken by *Benedict Colleone*, a *Venetian* General. In the year 1687, they again recovered the intire poſſeſſion of it, the *Baſſa* of *Miſithra* Articuling to march away with only what the Gariſon could carry. Monſieur *Guilletiere*, a *French* Gentleman, found the height of the Pole here 35. 26. This City is ſtill the See of an Archbiſhop, and that perhaps has contributed ſomething to its preſervation.

6. *ARGOLIS*, ſo called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the Weſt with *Corinthia* and *Achaia propria*, on the Eaſt and North with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a moſt excellent breed of Horſes, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argos*, the fourth King of this Country; the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, ſo, 1. for the Death of *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*; who, having forced his Entry into it, was here ignobly ſlain, after all his Victories, by the hands of an old Woman, throwing a Tile at him from the top of an Houſe: 2. for the long Race of Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*, *Anno* 2003, unto *Acriſius* their laſt King: whoſe Daughter *Danae*, being ſhut up in a Tower of Braſs, was deflowered by *Jupiter*; to whom ſhe bare the renowned *Perſeus*, ſo memorized in ancient Poets. But *Perſeus*, having by miſfortune ſlain his Grandfather, the old King *Acriſius* quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Mycenæ*, a City of his own Foundation, and ſo better fancied, which was by means hereof the ſecond City of eſteem in this little Province; growing in ſmall time unto ſo great Riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*, as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the Horſes of *Argos* and the Wealth of *Mycenæ* are placed in one Verſe together:

Aptum dicit equis Argos, *diteſque* Mycenas.
For Horſes *Argos* is of Fame,
For Wealth *Mycenæ* hath the Name.

3. *Trœzen*, ſituate on the *Sinus Saronicus*, (now called *Golfo di Engia*) the Royal Seat of *Pittheus*, the Grand-Father of *Theſeus* by the Mother's ſide, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath ſometime the name of *Pittheia Trœzen*, and *Theſeus*, many times is called *Trœzenius Heros*; as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from, 4. *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nurſed. 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* ſlew the dreadful Lion which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act were inſtituted in time following the *Nemean* Games, which continued of great Fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exerciſes were, Running with ſwift Horſes, Whorlbats, Running on Foot, Quoiting, Wreſtling, Darting, Shooting. Some have referred the Original of theſe Games to one *Opheltes*, a *Lacedæmonian*, in whoſe Honour they conceive them inſtituted; and others fetch it higher, from the War of *Thebes*: But this I take to be the more allowable Opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Sea ſide, famous for the Temple of *Æſculapius*, and the Cure of all ſorts of Diſeaſes there; ſo called from *Epidaurus*, the Son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the ſame name, but of a different ſituation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being ſeated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Meliſſa* and *Æmera*, at that time an Iſland, but by an Earthquake laid unto the Continent; now called *Pigiada*. 7. *Nauplia*, ſo called of *Nauplius*, King of *Eubœa*, and Father of *Palamedes*, to whom it anciently belonged. A Station then, as now, for Shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*; the richeſt and beſt traded in all this Tract, giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*, into which the famous River *Inachus*, having paſſed through the City of *Argos*, doth diſgorge it ſelf; ſo called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the Original and Progenitor of the Kings of *Argos* and *Mycenæ*.

Napoli di Romania is now the only Place of any ſtrength or regard in all this Province. It is ſeated upon a Tongue of Land between two Bays, ſhut up by two ſmall Iſlands, the Southern of which is its Port, ſecured by a Caſtle built on the Iſland, from which a Chain is drawn to ſhut up the Entrance. This City is waſhed on three ſides, the North, Eaſt and South by the Billows of the Sea, built upon a high rocky Ground, and fenced with a ſtrong Wall. The Caſtle in the Mouth of the South Bay is very ſtrong too, and ſurrounded by the Waves of the Sea, ſo that Art and Nature have conſpired to make it a ſecure and convenient Dwelling, only on the North a Hill, called *Palamide*, could command it. In the year 1205 this City was firſt taken by the *Venetians*, but then it was ſoon recovered by the *Greeks*. *Mary d'Erigane*, Relick of *Peter* Son of *Frederick Cornar*, being after this the Owner of it, and not able to defend it againſt *Sultan Bajazet* reſigned it to the *Venetians* in the year 1388, who defended it againſt *Mahomet* the ſecond with good ſucceſs about 1463 : Nor had *Solyman* the Magnificent any better ſucceſs in the year 1537, in a Siege of it ; but it lying remote, and he attempting it the ſecond time in 1539, though he could not then get it by force, yet he had it by a Treaty as the Price of a Peace. In the year 1686 the *Venetians* retook it by a Siege, to which the *Palamide* contributed very much, and they have accordingly ſince taken great care to ſecure it on that ſide, by taking that Hill within their Works, and building a good Fort upon it. This and *Moldavia* are the two beſt places on the Eaſtern Shore of the *Morea*.

The Kings of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A.M.	
2093	1. *Inachus*, the ſuppoſed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Gracians* are ſometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.
2143	2. *Phoroneus*, the Son of *Inachus* and *Meliſſa*, from whom the ſaid *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.
2223	3. *Apis*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Niobe* the Daughter of *Phoroneus*, who, leaving *Greece*, went into *Ægypt*, where he taught the People Tillage, and was there worſhipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.
2238	4. *Argus* the Son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*; in whoſe time Agriculture was taken up amongſt the *Gracians*, from him called *Argivi*.
2308	5. *Criaſus*, by ſome *Pieraſus*, the Son of *Argus*.
2363	6. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Criaſus* ; in whoſe time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are ſaid to flouriſh.
2397	7. *Triopas*, the Son of *Phorbas*, and the Brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himſelf in the Iſle of *Rhodes*.
2442	8. *Crotopus*.
2464	9. *Sthenelus*, onted of the Kingdom by
2475	10. *Danaus*, the Brother of *Ægyptus*; by whom being driven out of *Ægypt*, he was made King of *Argos* by conſent of the People : the Father of thoſe many Daughters got with Child by *Hercules*. From him the *Gracians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.
2525	11. *Lynceus*, Son of *Ægyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
2556	12. *Abas*, the Son of *Lynceus* and *Hypermneſtra*, the Daughter of *Danaus*.
2566	13. *Prœtus*, the Son of *Abas*.
2606	14. *Acriſius*, the Brother of *Prœtus*, and the Father of *Danae* ; who being foretold by the Oracle that he ſhould be ſlain by a Son of that Daughter, ſhut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Lady's conſent, by whom he had *Perſeus*, ſo renowned amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians of thoſe elder times.
2637	15. *Perſeus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, expoſed by his Grand-Father to the Seas, miraculouſly preſerved, and grown into great Fame by his brave Exploits. He reſtored *Acriſius* to his Throne, from which he had been depoſed by his Brother *Prœtus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately ſlain the ſaid *Acriſius*, he removed his Seat unto *Mycena* ; where he reigned together with his Son *Sthenelus*.
2645	16. *Eureſtheus*, the Son of *Sthenelus*, much ſpoken of for the difficult Tasks which, at the inſtigation of *Juno*, he impoſed on *Hercules* his Foſter-child, and the ſuppoſed Son of *Amphitryon* his Couſin-german.
2688	17. *Atreus* and *Thyeſtes*, Sons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the Line of *Perſeus*, ſucceeded in *Argos* and *Mycenæ* ; infamous for their Murthers and Adultery ; *Thyeſtes* abuſing the Bed of *Atreus*, and *Atreus* feaſting him with the Body of his own Son, whence Θυέστεια δεῖπνα in the Proverb.
2753	18. *Agamemnon*, the Son of *Atreus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Troy*, in which action there engaged Sixty-nine Kings of the *Græcians*, wafted over with a Navy of 1224 Ships ; killed at his coming home by *Ægiſthus*, his Couſin-german.
2768	19. *Ægiſthus*, the Son of *Thyeſtes*, having defiled *Clytæmneſtra*, the Wife of *Agamemnon*, in the time of his abſence, by her procurement murthered him at his coming home, and uſurped the Kingdom.
2775	20. *Oreſtes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his Father's Death on *Ægiſthus* and *Clytæmneſtra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and reſtored again unto his Wits, he married *Hermione*, Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Sparta* alſo.
2803	21. *Penthilus*, the Son of *Oreſtes*, and the laſt King of this Line, outed of his Eſtate by the *Dores* and *Heraclidæ*, who made themſelves Maſters of all *Peloponneſus*, which they poſſeſſed until the Conqueſt of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Iſthmus* or Neck of Land which joineth *Peloponneſus* to the reſt of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia propria*. It containeth only the Territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of thoſe Commodities which the reſt of this *Peninſula* doth abound withal ; as being mountainous and hilly, and, by reaſon of the nearneſs of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The chief, and indeed the only, Cities of note in it are, 1. *Cenchrea*, the Naval Road or Station of Ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 18. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a diſtinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was : ſituate on that Bay which openeth into the *Cretan* Sea, called anciently *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia* ; and conſequently oppoſite to, 2. *Lecheum*, the other Naval Road for *Corinth*, ſituate on the Weſtern Bay, called of old *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it ſelf, commodiouſly ſituate for the Command of all *Greece*, (had not not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandize than unto the Wars) as being ſeated on the bottom of the Neck or *Iſthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the Weſt, and the *Ægean* on the Eaſt, waſhing the Walls thereof, and giving it on each ſide a Capacious Haven ; in which regard it is called by *Horace bimaris Corinthus*. It was in compaſs about eleven Miles, for Strength impregnable, for Command as powerful, Maſtering both Seas on which it ſtood, and cutting off all paſſage from one half of *Greece* to the other : to which laſt end the Caſtle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, ſerved exceeding fitly ; and was therefore called one of the Fetters of *Creece*. The City was rich, very well Traded, and neatly built, moſt Houſes beautified with handſom Pillars, from thence called *Corinthian* : more memorable for the Wealth of the People, and the conveniency of the Situation, than for any notable Exploits performed by them, or any great Influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the Wealth, Greatneſs, and Situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire ; *Carthage* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous (or infamous) Whore *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a ſingle nights Lodging : which made *Demoſthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*, and occaſioned the old By-word,

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every man's avail,
Unto *Corinth* for to ſail.

Near hereunto ſtood the *Acrocorinthian* Mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Caſtle called hence *Acrocorinthus*, were ſeated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old conſecrated to the Muſes; by *Perſeus* called *Fons Caballinus*, becauſe feigned by the ancient Poets to have been made by the Horſe *Pegaſus* daſhing his foot againſt the Rock. And on the other ſide hereof in the *Iſthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Iſthmian* Games; ordained by *Theſeus* in honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* deviſed by *Hercnles* in honour of *Jupiter*. The Exerciſes were much the ſame, and the reward no other than a Garland of Oaken Boughs: yet they drew yearly a great reſort of people to them; partly to exerciſe themſelves and behold the Sports; and partly to ſacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard-by a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at firſt called *Ephyre*, at that time a ſmall and obſcure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus*, the Son of *Pelops*, it took the name of *Corinth*; governed by him and his poſterity, till the coming of the *Heraclida* into *Peloponneſus*, at what time one *Aletes* of the Race of *Hercules* poſſeſſed himſelf hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his Line enjoyed it for the ſpace of 220 years and upwards: when the Houſe failing in the perſon of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary Officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was ſeized on by one *Cypſelus*, A. M. 3294, who left it to his Son *Periander*, one of the ſeven wiſe men of *Greece*, counted a Tyrant in thoſe times, for no other reaſon than that he had ſuppreſſed the Popular Government. After whoſe death, *Anno* 3364, the City did recover its former Liberty. In the Buſtle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmcn*, and other the Eſtates of *Greece*, for the Superiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being Wealth, not Honour; not intereſſed in any Action of renown in all thoſe times, but in the ſending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracuſans* againſt the Tyrant *Dioniſius*, who did Lord it over them. It was ſubdued, together with the reſt, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the reſt reſtored to Liberty by the Power of *Rome*: under whom growing ſtill more rich, and withal more inſolent, they abuſed certain *Roman* Embaſſadors. But *iraſci populo* Romano *nemo ſapienter poteſt*, as is ſaid in *Livie*, which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being beſieged, ſacked, and burnt unto the Ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Conſul, *Anno U. C.* 607, *A. M.* 3804, 144 years before Chriſt, when it had ſtood 952 years, as *Velejus Paterculus* obſerves, ſo that it was built *A. M.* 2852. In the burning whereof there were conſumed ſo many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Braſs, and other Metals, that being melted into a Lump, they made up by that fatal chance, that ſo much eſtimated Metal called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great eſteem in the time of the Emperors, converted by Saint *Paul* to the Chriſtian Faith; and having flouriſhed a long time in Pride and Pleaſures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a ſmall Burrough called *Crato*. It is called at this day by the *Greeks Coranto*, and by the Turks *Gerame*; to continue down its ſtory where our Learned Author leaves it, ſome attribute the rebuilding of it to *Julius Caſar*, and others to *Auguſtus*. It was converted by St. *Panl* about the 12th year of the Reign of *Claudius*, *Anno Chriſti* 52, confirmed by *Clemens Romanus* about the year 97, after this it was ſeized by *Roger* King of *Naples* in the year 1148, but *Emanuel* then Emperor of the Eaſt, ſoon recover'd it by the aſſiſtance of the *Venetians*, and in 1151, he was glad to ſue to that Emperor for a Peace. After this it was put under Deſpots, by whom it was reſigned to the *Venetians*, and from them it was Raviſh'd by *Mahomet* II. Emperor of the Turks in the year of Chriſt 1458. The *Venetians* made ſeveral attempts to regain the poſſeſſion of it to no good purpoſe; but time and the oppreſſion of the Turks, has deprived them of the Honour of being Maſters of this Noble and Ancient City, which in 200 years was by them brought to a poor Village of about 20 thatched Cottages, and theſe too which the Caſtle of *Corinth* in the year 1687, were wreſted out of their hands by the Victorious Arms of that Common-wealth. Mr. *Wheeler* ſaith it is now called *Corintha*, and is ſituate on the Right hand of the *Iſthmus*, on the *Pelloponneſian* ſhoar, 2 miles from the *Corinthian* Bay, and 6 or 7 from the *Saronick*, having *Athens* Eaſt by South, *Paraſſus* North, it is not big enough to be called a City, but may paſs for a conſiderable Country Town, the Town lies North Weſt of the Caſtle towards *Lepanto*, upon the deſcent of an Hill, half a ſcore Houſes in a knot, and more Spruce than ordinary, it has two Moſques and one Church, at which the Archbiſhop Lives. Its Latitude is 38. 14. So far he, page 439.

Having thus ſpoken of the ſeveral Eſtates of *Peloponneſus*, it reſteth that we ſpeak ſomewhat of the Eſtates of the whole, varied according to the Fortunes of thoſe particular, which had moſt Influence on the ſame. The Affairs hereof were a long time ſwayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, reſtrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleaſures; from *Apis* the third King whereof, (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of ſome Writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, Daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the moſt powerful Prince of all this *Peninſula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponneſus*. The Kingdom of *Mycenæ*, growing into power and Credit, had the next turn in ſwaying the affairs hereof for a certain ſeaſon; as after that the *Dores* and *Heraclida*, poſſeſſed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Meſſene*. The *Spartans*, getting the Preheminence over all the reſt, were the next who governed the Affairs of it, and they held it long; having firſt conquered *Laconia*, and ſubverted the Eſtate of *Meſſene*, by means whereof, and by their fortunate Succeſs againſt the *Perſians*, they became almoſt abſolute in their Commands, without any Competitor. But their Power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* in the *Theban* War, the petit States hereof began to take heart again, and ſtand upon their own Legs; as they did a while, till the Kings of *Macedon*, ſucceeding *Aelxander* the Great, brought them once more under, and made them Fellow-Servants with their *Spartan* Maſters. In the Confuſions which enſued in *Macedon* amongſt the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Patras* and *Dyme*, two Cities of *Achaia propria*, firſt united them in a ſtrong League of Amity, at ſuch time as *Phyrrhus* firſt went into *Italy*: into which Confederacy the Cities of *Tritaa* and *Phera* ſhortly after came; and not long after that of *Ægira*, and the reſt of *Achaia propria*. Their Affairs were firſt governed by two Prætors with Advice of the Senate, as afterwards by one alone with the like Advice, of which *Marcus Carinenſis* was the firſt, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the ſecond. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Common-wealth increaſing by the Vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Trœzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became Members of it, maintaining gallantly the Liberties of *Peloponneſus*, till finally maſtered by the *Romans*. In the Diviſion of whoſe Empire it fell, with all the reſt of *Greece* to the *Conſtantinopolitans*; and in the declining of their Fortunes, when the *Latins* got poſſeſſion of the

Imperial City, moſt of the Sea-Coaſts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*; the Inland parts formerly parcelled out amongſt many Princes whom they called *Deſpots*, continuing as before they were. By *Izabel*, a Daughter of one of theſe Deſpots, (and as it ſeems the chief among them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the firſt, and Father of *James* the ſecond King of *Majorca*, the Title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that Houſe; uſed by them and the reſt of theſe Petit Princes, till all together were made a Prey to the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, *Mahomet* the Great, and *Bajazet* the ſecond, by whom they were wholly conquered. For howſoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and were received and obeyed by thoſe Petit Princes: yet being unable to hold out againſt the Conqueror, they became his Tributaries. But their falling out amongſt themſelves, and neglecting then to ſend in the Tribute agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the Great occaſion to invade the Country, and under colour of aiding one Brother againſt the other, to deſtroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponneſus*, and fly to *Italy*, *Anno* 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice* followed the ſame Fortune alſo in the time of *Bajazet*, by whom they were all taken at the laſt, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, *Anno* 1500, or thereabouts. Governed ever ſince that time by a *Turkiſh Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his Reſidence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horſe to ſecure the Country, and 700000 Aſpers (that is to ſay, 14000 Crowns) a year for his Entertainment. The *Venetians* have within the ſpace of three years laſt paſt, recovered the whole *Morea*, out of the hands of the Turks. An account of which I have given in the continuance of the Hiſtory of the ſeveral Cities. *Monſuer Coronelli*, Geographer to this Republick, hereupon publiſhed a Geographical Deſcription of the principal Cities in it, from which I have Tranſcribed many things.

2. *ACHAIA.*

ACHAIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Epirus*, on the North with *Theſſaly*, on the South with *Peloponneſus* and the Seas thereof. Called anciently *Hellas* from *Helles* the Son of *Deucalion*; but whence it had the name of *Achaia*, is not yet agreed on: though ſure I am that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Græcians*) to difference them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia propria*.

The Country is famous in the Authors of the elder times, more for the Gallantry of the Men, than any great goodneſs of the Soil and place: yet that is ſufficiently memorable for the Hill *Hymettus*, ſwarming with Bees, plentiful of the ſweeteſt Honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as alſo for the River *Cephiſus*, which runneth almoſt through the whole length hereof; divided into two main Streams, of which the one is called *Aſopus*, the other retaineth its firſt name. Upon the Banks hereof ſtood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the Reſtauration of Mankind, as the Poets Fable.

It was divided anciently into theſe ſeven Parts; *viz.* 1. *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A Diviſion now as much diſuſed as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Livadia*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the Weſt *Megaris* and ſome part of *Bœotia*, on all other parts encompaſſed with the Sea; ſo called from *Athens*, the chief City. The Soil for the moſt part is very barren and craggy; yet by the Arms and Induſtry of the people made both rich and and famous; inſomuch as the yearly Revenues of the State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The Mony current in this Country was commonly ſtamped with an Ox, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to ſuch Lawyers as were bribed to ſay nothing in their Clients Cauſe. Not much unlike to which was the proverb riſing from the Coin of *Ægina* (an Iſle adjoyning) ſtamped with the figure of a Snail, *viz. Virtutem & Spientiam vincunt Teſtudines.*

Places of moſt obſervation in it were, 1. *Phyla*, a ſtrong Fortreſs on the Borders of *Bœotia*, ſurpriſed by *Thraſibulus* and others of the baniſhed *Athenians*, during the Government of the thirty Tyrants: the taking whereof was the firſt ſtep towards their own and their Country's Liberty, which ſoon after followed. 2. *Eleuſis* on the Borders of *Megaris*, almoſt impregnably fortified by the thirty Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom it was deſigned for their Retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Phyla* and *Piræus* by the *Thraſybulians*, they found ſtrong Walls a weak defence for ſo much Wickedneſs; being trained out as to a Parley, and ſo deprived of the place and their power together. It was firſt built by one *Eleuſius*, who entertained *Ceres* as ſhe was in Queſt of her Daughter *Proſerpina*; who, to reward him, taught him the uſe of Agriculture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleuſina*, and her Sacrifices *Sacra Eleuſinia*; and ſometimes the City alſo *Cerealis Eleuſis*, ſo called by *Ovid* in the ſeventh Book of his *Metamorphoſes*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Aſopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiarus*, and the Statue of the Goddeſs *Nemeſis*, hence called *Rhamnuſia*, being the Goddeſs of Indignation, puniſhed thoſe who made themſelves unworthy of their preſent Fortunes. 4. *Trycoritum*, of more Antiquity than Fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the South-ſide of the River *Aſopus*, oppoſite to *Rhamnus*, of great note for the Diſcomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, conſiſting of 200000 Foot and 10000 Horſe: the Emulation of which noble Victory ſtarted ſuch brave Reſolves in the breaſt of *Themiſtocles*. As memorable in the Poets of thoſe elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there ſlain by *Theſeus*. This is now a pitiful Ruin'd Village ſaith Mr. *Wheler*, which we thought not worth lighting to ſee. p. 454. 6. *Mopſophia*, the ordinary dwelling-place of *Theſeus*, before he fixed his Seat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he reſtored *Helena* (whom he had before ſtoln from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Reſtitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epiſtle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Oreſtes*; in which laſt it is ſaid expreſly, *Reddita Mopſopia Tyndaris urbe Soror*, that is to ſay, that ſhe was delivered to her two Brethren (who had taken much pains in ſeeking for her) in the Town of *Mopſopia*, 7. *Piræus*, the Port Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 Sail; diſtant from the City about two miles, but joyned unto it by two long Walls reaching from the one ſide to the other, for ſecuring the conveyance of their Merchandiſe to and from the Sea. The Port it ſelf was impregnably fortified by the Advice of *Themiſtocles*: But as theſe long Walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them, ſo were the Fortifications of *Piræus* it ſelf demoliſhed by the command of *Sylla*, in his War againſt *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. This place is now called *Porto di Lione* by the *Italians*, from a huge Marble Statue of a *Lyon*, of admirable Work, advanced at the bottom of the Bay, in a ſitting poſture, but erected on the two fore feet 10 Foot in height. The Harbour would not hold above 30 or 40 of our preſent Ships, as Mr. *Wheler* our Country-man obſerved who ſaw it, nor is there any one Houſe or Habitation in this place, beſides a Ware-houſe for the receiving of Goods. All the other places mentioned by *Heylin*, are in the ſame ſtate of Deſolation, but *Athens*, of which I ſhall ſpeak in its proper place. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-Town alſo, and of very good Trade, but not of ſuch importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the Eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, ſituate from the Sea two miles, as before was ſaid; (the *Venetians* found it five *Italian* miles) the Haven of *Piraus* ſerving it with all Commodities which came from other parts by ſhipping. Firſt built by *Cecrops* the firſt King of it, by whom it was called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409; repaired afterwards by *Theſeus*, and furniſhed with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whoſe Honour there were yearly kept ſome ſolemn Games, called *Panathenaia*. A City heretofore adorned with all thoſe excellencies of Strength and Beauty which Art or Coſt could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, ſo for three eſpecially: 1. For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and moſt firm Affection to their Friends: ſo that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an Adage. 2. For the famous Scholars which here taught and flouriſhed; this being ſo happy a Nurſery of the choiceſt Wits, and ſo fitly ſeated for the Muſes, that the very Natives, being in other Countries, could ſenſibly perceive ſome want of that natural Vigour which at home was reſident in their ſpirits. *Ita ut corpora iſtius Gentis ſeparata ſint in alias Regiones, Ingenia vero ſolis* Athenienſium *muris clauſa eſſe exiſtimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. So that the Bodies of the Inhabitants might be carried into diſtant Regions, but the Ingenuity belonging to them was confined to the Walls of their City as one would think, as *Velleius* obſerves. Yea, and to ſay the truth, it was a moſt famous Univerſity, from whoſe great Ciſtern the Conduit-pipes of Learning were diſperſed over all the World. Yet did not Learning ſo effeminate or ſoften the hearts of the People, but that 3. This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World beſides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, *Themiſtocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Common-wealth, yet were the people ſo ungrateful to them, or they ſo unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in Baniſhment, or by ſome violent death at home. *Themiſtocles*, the Champion of *Greece*, died an Exile in *Perſia*, *Phocion* was ſlain by the people, *Demoſthenes* made himſelf away by Poiſon, *Pericles* was many times indangered, *Theſeus* their Founder firſt depoſed, and then deſpitefully impriſoned, *Ariſtides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. baniſhed for ten years by the Oſtraciſm; a form of Puniſhment, ſo called, becauſe the name of the party baniſhed was writ on an Oyſter-ſhell; and only uſed towards ſuch who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of ſervice. Which Device, allowable in a Democracie, where the over-much power of one might hazard the Liberty of all, was exerciſed in ſpight oftner than for deſert. A Country fellow meeting by chance with *Ariſtides*, deſired him to write *Ariſtides* in his ſhell: and being asked whether the man whoſe Baniſhment he deſired had ever wronged him? he replied, *No, he was only ſorry to hear folk call him a good man.* We find the like unfortunate end to moſt of the *Romans* ſo redoubted in War. *Corolianus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murthered, with divers others; only becauſe their Virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was diſgraced by *Antony*; *Agricola* poyſoned, with the privity of *Domitian*; *Corbulo* murthered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an Age wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In latter times it ſo happened to *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the Mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to ſtand at the *Spaniards* devotion, was by his Maſter called home, where he lived obſcurely, though honoured after his deceaſe with a ſolemn Funeral, worſe fared the *Guiſes* and *Biron* in *France*; worſe *Eſſex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland*, with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who having ſerved 34 years in our Wars with *France*, and for 17 years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled, and baſely murthered. It were almoſt impiety to be ſilent of *Joab*, the braveſt Soldier and moſt fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lord's Battels, and yet was killed at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that ſuch men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and ſuch as have beſt opportunity to endear men of War unto their Sovereigns, know not the way of commending their great Deſerts: or that Envy, the common Foe to Virtue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are diſtruſtful of men of action, and are not willing to make them greater whoſe name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the Soldiers themſelves, by an unſeaſonable over-valuing of their own Performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cauſe of the death of *Silius* in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, That over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets Hate inſtead of Favours. *Beneficia eouſque læta ſunt, dum videntur exſolvi poſſe; ubi multum anteverterunt, pro gratia Odium redditur*, ſaith that Wiſe Hiſtorian.

But to look back again on *Athens*: it was firſt built by *Cecrops* the firſt King thereof; governed by him and his Poſterity with no lower Title for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The Kings of *ATHENS*.

A. M.	
2394.	1. *Cecrops*, who firſt made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained Sacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pauſanias* writeth.
2444	2. *Cranaus*, outed of his Kingdom by
2453	3. *Amphictyon*, the Son of *Dencalion* and Uncle to that *Amphictyon* who firſt inſtituted the ſupreme Court of the *Amphictyones*, or Common-Council of all *Greece*.
2463	4. *Erichthonius*, the Son of *Vulcan*.
2513	5. *Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, ſo famous in the old Poets; of whom more hereafter.
2553	6. *Erichtheus*, whoſe Daughter *Orinthia* was Raviſhed by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603	7. *Cecrops* II. Brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643	8. *Pandion* II. Son of *Erichtheus*.
2668	9. *Ægeus*, Son of *Pandion* the ſecond, of whom the *Ægean* Sea took name.
2706	10. *Theſeus*, the Son of *Ægeus*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquiſhed the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the People of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746.	11. *Mneſthus*, the Son of *Peteus*, Grand-child of *Erichtheus*, ſerved with the other *Greek* Princes at the War of *Troy*.
2769	12. *Demophoon*, the Son of *Theſeus*, reſtored unto his Father's Throne on the death of *Mneſtheus*.
2802	13. *Oxyntes*, Son or Brother of *Demophoon*.
2814	14. *Aphydas* Son of *Oxyntes*, ſlain by his Brother.
2815	15. *Thymades* the laſt of the Line of *Erichtheus*.
2823	16. *Melanthius* of *Meſſene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heraclida*, obtained that of *Athens*.

2860

2860 17. *Codrus*, the Son of *Melonthius*, the laſt King of *Athens*, who in the Wars againſt the *Peloponneſians*, having Intelligence by an Oracle that his Enemies ſhould have the Victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King, attired himſelf like a common Beggar, entred the *Peloponneſian* Camp, and there played ſuch Pranks, that at the laſt they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy underſtood, they thought themſelves by this means deprived of all hopes of Succeſs, and ſo broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the People of *Athens*, did ſo honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to ſucceed as King, and therefore committed the managing of the Eſtate to Governors for term of Life, whom they called *Archontes*: the firſt *Archon* being *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*. They differed not from the former Kings in point of power, but only in manner of their Admiſſion: the former Kings claiming the Government by Succeſſion in right of Blood; and theſe *Archontes* holding by Election only; whoſe names here follow in this Liſt of

The perpetual *Archontes* in the State of *ATHENS*.

A. M.
2882 1. *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*.
2902 2. *Acaſtus*, the Son of *Medon*.
2938 3. *Archippus*, the Son of *Arcaſtus*.
2957 4. *Therſippus*, the Son of *Achippus*.
2998 5. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Therſippus*.
3029 6. *Megacles*, the Son of *Phorbas*.
3059 7. *Diogenetus*, the Son of *Megacles*.
3087 8. *Phereclus*, the Son of *Diogenetus*.
3106 9. *Aritthon*, the Son of *Phereclus*.
3126 10. *Theſpieus*; in whoſe time began the Kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153 11. *Agameſtor*.
3173 12. *Æſchylus*, the Son of *Agameſtor*. After whoſe death, *Anno Mundi* 3195, the *Athenians*, weary of theſe Governours for term of Life, as being leſs obnoxious to the Check and Cenſure of the People, choſe themſelves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a People greedy of Novelties and deſirous of Change, they had only ſeven of thoſe Decennial *Archontes*; their Officers from that time forwards being choſen annually: which Officers, being nine in number, we may call moſt properly the Provoſt, the chief Biſhop, the Marſhal, and the ſix chief Juſtices, all choſen out of the Nobility. And ſo it held for the ſpace of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*; who was the firſt which put the Supreme Authority into the hands of the people; and gave the firſt hint unto that Democracy which afterwards prevailed in *Athens* by the help of *Pericles*, who being one of the great Council of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding Controverſies and Suits in Law, putting them over to the Judgment of the Common people. A Government ſo dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered, or reſtored to Liberty, or won to their party from the *Spartans*, they cauſed it to be admitted: as on the other ſide the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed an Ariſtocracy (their own beloved Government) in all the places where they proſpered. As for the Court of the *Areopagites*, of much fame in *Athens*, it conſiſted from the firſt beginning ἐκ τῶν καθ' ἐνιαυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of ſuch as had born ſome of the nine chief Offices; who being once admitted, held for term of Life. Firſt inſtituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the Son of *Theſeus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the Street of *Mars*, ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ, mentioned *Acts* 17. 22. or becauſe *Mars*, being accuſed for a Murther, did firſt plead before them. A Court which held in eſtimation under all theſe Changes, and ſo continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to return again to the Story of *Athens*. In or about the latter end of the life of *Solon Piſiſtratus* altered the Free State, and made himſelf the abſolute Maſter of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their Liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the Son of *Piſiſtratus*; who hereupon fled for Succour to *Darius* the *Perſian* Monarch, occaſioning by that means the firſt coming of the *Perſians* into *Greece*. What ſucceſs the *Perſians* had in *Greece* the Hiſtories of thoſe Times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquiſhed by *Miltiades* at *Marathon*, and *Xerxes* by *Themiſtocles* at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* ſcape ſo clear but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed firſt abandoned and voluntarily diſmantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perſians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* re-edified their Town, and ſtrongly fortified it with high and defenſible Walls: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and ſpoiled the Coaſts of *Perſia* in all quarters, inriching their City with the Spoils, and inlarging their Power and Dominion by the addition of many Iſlands and Sea-Towns. Hereby they grew unto that Wealth and Potency, that they were ſuſpected by their weaker Neighbours; and envied by their ſtronger, the *Lacedæmonians* eſpecially; who, fearing to loſe their ancient Priority over *Greece*, but pretending the Surpriſal of *Potidæa*, a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and ſome hard meaſure by them ſhewed upon the *Megarenſes*, made War upon them. In the beginning of this War the *Athenians* not only reſiſted the whole Power of all *Greece* confederate againſt them, but ſo exceedingly proſpered, that the *Spartans* ſued for Peace, and could not get it. But the Scales of Fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the walls of their City, and ſubmit themſelves to the will and pleaſure of the *Spartans*, now by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Lyſander* become their Maſters: by whom the Government was changed, and an Ariſtocracie (or rather Oligarchie) eſtabliſhed under 30 Magiſtrates known commonly by the name of the 30 Tyrants; expelled not long after by the Valour of *Thraſibulus* and his Aſſociates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this War, which the Hiſtorians call *Bellum Peloponneſiacum* the *Perſians*, ſeeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppoſe them, began to work upon their Empire, furniſhed *Conon*, a noble *Athenian* Gentleman, with a Navy ſo well provided, that he overcame the *Lacedæmonians* in a Fight at Sea, and thereby put his Country-men into ſo good heart, that they made a party in the War called *Bellum Sacrum*; compoſed at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*, who not only brought the *Thebans*, whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the reſt of the adverſe party, under his Command. A Servitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon* as the reſt became Fellow-ſervants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then loſt her power in point of Arms yet ſhe ſtill kept her credit as an Univerſity in point of Arts. *Origen*, *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and *Gregory Nyſſen*, men of Renown and Eminence in the Primitive Times, are ſaid to have ſtudied at *Athens*, the like is affirmed of Pope *Joan*, if the Tale be true, for the middle Ages. And ſo it held, as I conjecture, though not ſo eminently as before, till the year 1440, when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Author telleth) at the extreme Beauty of the Caſtle, and the ſtrength of the Walls, not having loſt in ſo long time their former Excellencies. Since that it is ſenſibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Borough, (by the *Turks* called *Setines*) but ſtill preſerveth the Reputation of an Epiſcopal See, the Biſhop of it holding up the Title of *Athenienſis*. To continue down the Story of this Ancient City to our own Times, *Alaricus* King of the *Goths* laid its

Honour and Buildings in the Duſt under the Reign of *Valerus*, about the year of Chriſt 378. It was after this Rebuilt, and about the year 1435 we find one *Antonius Commenus Aciajolus*, Duke of *Athens:* About Twenty years after this, under *Mahomet* II. ſhe fell the ſecond time into the hands of the barbarous and conſuming Turks, who have ruined all her Glory and extinguiſhed her Learning; yet ſhe has about 9000 Inhabitants, but very poor and ignorant; and ſome remainders of her ancient moſt noble Structures and Antiquities: The moſt eminent of which was the Temple of *Minerva*, ſince turned into a Turkiſh Moſque. In the year 1686 the *Venetians* having taking *Napoli di Romania*, the Inhabitants of *Athens* ſent to them to procure their Protection, and conſented on that ſcore to a Contribution of 20000 Crowns (a great Tax for ſo poor a City) but the year following, the 21th of *September*, *Moroſini* coming to that Port landed his Army, and marched up to *Athens*, 3000 Turks pretending to defend the Caſtle at firſt, but a Granado falling upon one of their Magazines ſo aſtoniſhed them, that after four or five days reſiſtance they ſurrendred the Place and retreated. The *Venetians* in this ſhort Siege found the Temple of *Minerva* ruined by a Bomb to their great Sorrow. The General ordered the City to be refortified, and Forts to be built to ſecure the Paſſage from the City to the Haven, but finding it five Miles diſtance and not poſſible to be ſecured without more Men than he could ſpare. In the beginning of the Campaign, in the year 1688 he removed the Goods and Inhabitants to *Napoli di Romania* with an intention to reſtore them if he took *Negropont* this Summer, and in the interim that ancient City is now deſolate, and very uncertain it is whether ever it will be again inhabited. Our Learned Country-Man Mr. *Wheler* has taken great pains in deſcribing the Antiquities of this Place as they ſtood juſt before this great Revolution, and to him I ſhall refer the curious Reader when I have told him that it is ſeated, according to that Author, in Long. 53. Lat. 38. 5. our Author gives an Account of the Dukes of *Athens* in the end of the Section concerning *Ætolia* a little further.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Attica*; on the Weſt with the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North with *Bœotia*: and on the South with the *Iſthmus* and the Gulf *di Engia:* So called from *Megara*, the chief City.

This is the leaſt Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitful (the Country for the moſt part being hard and rocky) not beautified with many Cities. The principal of thoſe which were are, 1. *Pegæ*, or *Pagæ*, ſituate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and ſpoken of both by *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*; but not otherwiſe memorable. 2. *Megara*, (now *Megra*) firſt built by *Megareus*, the Son of *Apollo*, and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philoſophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide*, a Diſciple of *Socrates*; of whom ſee *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Niſus*, once the King of this little Territory on whoſe Head there is ſaid to have grown a purple Hair, on which the preſervation of his Life and Kingdom did depend: Which Jewel his Daughter *Scylla* is ſaid to have delivered unto King *Minos*, her Father's Enemy, of whom, then beſieging this City, upon the ſight of him from an high Terret, ſhe became inamoured; but he rejecting her and her Preſent both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*, which the unhappy Woman ſeeing, ſhe threw her ſelf after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the Mythologiſts: obſerving only by the way the antiquity of that politick practice, to *love the Treaſon, and hate the Traitor*. But the Glory of this City did not end with *Niſus*: For, ſhaking off the *Cretan* Yoke, it became *ſui juris* once again; and being conveniently ſeated on the very *Iſthmus*, amounted to that height of Proſperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Iſland of *Salamis*. And in this War they ſo cruſhed the Power and Spirit of *Athens* by one fatal Overthrow, that the *Athenians*, to prevent all the like Diſaſters, did ordain by Law, that whoſoever mentioned the Recovery of *Salamis* was to loſe his Life: ſo that *Solon* was compelled to feign himſelf Frantick, the better, to propound the Enterpriſe. In which although the State of *Athens* got the Iſle of *Salamis*, yet did the *Megarenſes* continue a Free People, till brought under (with the reſt) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made ſubject unto *Rome*. Mr. *Wheler*, who ſaw this City, has given an exact Account of its Preſent State; he ſaith, It was anciently built upon two Rocks, one of which is now totally deſolate, and the other has about two or three hundred pitiful Cottages built one Story high, and cloſe together; the Walls of which are the Ruins of the former Houſes, or a few Faggots covered with Clay, *&c.* there live no Turks there, and the Chriſtians are in that perpetual fear of the Pyrats, that they flee upon the ſight of a Boat, or the barking of their Dogs. Mr. *Wheler*, p. 431. Monſieur *Coronelli* has alſo given a very large Account of this ſmall place much to the ſame purpoſe.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South with *Megaris* and the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with the River *Cephiſus*, on the Eaſt with *Attica* and a Branch of the *Ægæan* Sea, and on the Weſt with *Phocis*. Thus named from Βȣ̃ς, which in *Greek* ſignifieth an Ox; becauſe when *Cadmus*, weary of ſeeking his Siſter *Europa*, (whom *Jupiter* had ſtolen out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle of *Delphos*, he was commanded to follow the firſt Ox he ſaw, and where the Ox did reſt it ſelf there to build a City.

In the Country is nothing ſingular, but an ancient Cuſtom of burning before the Door of an Houſe in which a new-married Wife was deſigned to dwell, the Axletree of the Coach which brought her thither; giving her by that Ceremony to underſtand, (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his Morals) that ſhe muſt frame her ſelf to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country alſo are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the Neighbouring Baths called *Thermopylæ*, not above Twenty-five Foot in breadth; which in the War that *Xerxes* made againſt the *Greeks* were valiantly defended by *Leonidas*, King of *Sparta*, with no more than 300 of his Men, who, having valiantly reſiſted that Army which in his paſſage out of *Perſia* had drank Rivers dry, and ſlain at leaſt 30000 of them, died every Man upon the place. To hide the greatneſs of which loſs, leſt it ſhould terrifie the reſt of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the ſlain Men to be buried in ſeveral Pits, except a Thouſand; as if no more than they had been loſt in that Paſſage.

Places of moſt Obſervation in it are, 1. *Theſpia*, on a River of the ſame name, at the Fall whereof into the Bay it is pleaſantly ſeated, ſhadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*, and conſecrated, as that was, unto the *Muſes*, hence called *Teſpiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platæa*; nigh to which *Mardonius*, General to the *Perſians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loſs of *Mardonius* himſelf and 160000 Men on the *Perſian* ſide; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenſes*. In memory of which brave Exploit, and to preſerve the Names and Honour of thoſe Worthies who there laid down Lives for the Liberty of *Greece*, there was a Feſtival kept annually by the *Plat*æ*ans* in the month of *September*, with ſolemn Sacrifices, and a kind of divine Acknowledgment unto the Deceaſed; continued from the time of *Ariſtides* the *Athenian*, who firſt ordained them, to the days of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to ſay. In this great Fight the Commander in chief was a Noble *Spartan*, called *Pauſanius*, who, afterwards having a Deſign to make himſelf Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being diſcovered in the Practice, fled for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence becauſe it was counted Sacrilege to conſtrain him by Violence, it was unanimouſly reſolved to wall up the Entrances, his own Mother laying the firſt Stone. It is recorded that before the fighting of this Battel, the *Athenians* had been told by the Oracle that they ſhould be Conquerors, if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Platæans*, within whoſe Territories the *Perſians* had prepared to fight, beſtowed that Field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble Act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their City, having been firſt burnt and ſack'd by the *Perſians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedæmonians*, becauſe confederate with *Athens* in the War againſt them. This Place is now totally deſolate, and its Situation not certainly known. *Wheler*, p. 474. 3. *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great Overthrow which the *Thebans*, under the Conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans* and their King *Cleombrotus*, who was there ſlain: by which Victory they did not only preſerve their own Liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never riſe again: the Divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place where ſome of their Nation had defloured the Daughters of *Scedaſus*, who had given them courteous Entertainment. For which when no Reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damoſels ſlew themſelves, to avoid the Infamy of conſenting to their own Diſhonour, and were buried in thoſe very Fields where this Battel was fought. 4. *Aſcræa*, the Birth-place of *Heſiod*, a Man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis:* though it hath pleaſed that proud Critick, *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worſt Verſe in the *Georgicks* of the one before the whole Works of the other. 5. *Labadia*, near the River *Cephiſus*; the Inhabitants whereof were counted the moſt Superſtitious of all the *Grecians:* memorable for the *Trophonian* Den or Cave, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius:* into which Cave none were admitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many Ointings, Waſhings, and the like Superſtitious Preparations, too long and many to be ſpecified in this place and time. A Town which ſtill preſerves ſo much of its ancient Eſtimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Livadia*, by which the Turks call it at this preſent. It is ſituate about the Point of an Hill, on the top of which is an old Caſtle; it has five Moſques, and as many Churches; the Inhabitants a Gentile ſort of Turks or Chriſtians, and but few *Jews*. The Town is Rich and Populous, having a Manufacture of Woollen Stuffs. *Wheler*, p. 329. 6. *Charona*, or *Chæronia*, the Birth-place of *Plutarch*; near unto which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt *L. Sylla* and the *Romans* againſt *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Soldiers, of which 10000 only eſcaped with Life, the *Romans* loſing but 14. 7. *Orchomenus*, no leſs memorable for another Victory, obtained by the ſame *L. Sylla* againſt *Dorilaus*, another of that King's Commanders, having an Army of 80000 Men, of which 20000 loſt their Lives that Day. After which Victories, when *Sylla* might eaſily have deſtroyed that King, he ſuddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might haſten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his Faction under foot; preferring by that act the purſuit of his own private Quarrels before that of his Country, endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port-Town on the Shores of the *Ægean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took ſhipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the Enterpriſe until they had deſtroyed that City. Concerning which thus ſhe in *Virgil*,

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam *exſcindere Gentem*
Aulide *juravi.*
That is to ſay,
I took no Oath at *Aulis*, to deſtroy,
As did the *Greeks* the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chief of this Country, and ſuch as had a ſpecial Influence over all the reſt, was the City of *Thebes*, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Cephiſus*, where it was built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, after all his wandrings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocaſta*. The Hiſtory of which War is the moſt ancient piece of Story that we find of all *Greece*; the former Times and Writings containing nothing but Fables, little ſavouring of Humanity, and leſs of Truth; as of Men changed into Monſters, the Adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who ſo cruſhed the *Lacedæmonians* at the Battels of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that they could never after re-obtain their former Puiſſance. This Commonwealth long flouriſhed, and at laſt, being over-burthened in the *Phocian* War, was glad to ſubmit it ſelf to the Protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Phillip*; who by this means firſt got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thruſt his whole Body. Upon the Death of *Phillip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedonians*, but *Alexander* his Succeſſor quickly recovered it: and to diſhearten the *Greeks* in the like Attempts, he razed the City, ſelling all the Inhabitants of Age and Strength; only *Pindarus*'s Houſe he commanded to be left ſtanding in honour of that learned Poet. At the Sack of this Town, one of the *Macedonian* Soldiers entred the Houſe of a principal Woman, named *Timoclea*, raviſhed her, and rifled her Coffers, but ſtill demanding more Treaſure, ſhe ſhewed him a deep Well, ſaying that there all her Money was hidden. The credulous Villain ſtooping down to behold his Prey, ſhe tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with Stones. For which noble act, the generous Prince not only diſmiſſed her unhurt, but moſt highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Caſſander*, and followed for the moſt part, as the reſt of the *Bœotians* did, the Fortunes of *Macedon*. It is reduced at this time to the ſtate of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Stibes* by the Turks.

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bœotia*, on the Weſt with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with the River *Cephiſus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country ſomewhat ſwelled with Mountains, but thoſe of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof are, 1. *Helicon*, 2. *Cithæron*, both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, and both contending with *Parnaſſus* for heighth and bigneſs. 3. *Parnaſſus*, of ſo great an heighth, that in that great Deluge in which moſt of theſe Parts of *Greece* were over-whelmed with the Waters, *Deucalion* and *Pyrrha* ſaved themſelves and many others on the Top hereof: for which, and for its two Summits reaching to the Clouds, it is of great Renown amongſt the Poets; as in *Ovid*,

Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus Aſtra duobus,
Nomine Parnaſſus; *ſuperatque cacumine Nubes.*
Parnaſſus there with his two Tops extends
To the toucht Stars, and all the Clouds tranſcends.

Places of moſt Obſervation in it are, 1. *Anticyra*, ſituate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, a Herb very medicinal for the Phrenſie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyram*, applied to mad-men. 2. *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, ſaid to be ſeated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter*, deſirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let looſe two Eagles, one from the Eaſt, and the other from the Weſt, which flying with an equal Wing (ſo we muſt conceive) and meeting at this very place, ſhewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reaſon of which convenient ſituation in the Heart of *Greece*, it was made a Seſſions-Town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and General Aſſembly of the *Amphictyones*; Men choſen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controverſies, and to make Laws for the common Good. A Court firſt inſtituted by *Acriſius*, as *Strabo* telleth us: or, as *Halicarnaſſæus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Hellos*, from whom they ſeem to have their name. The Commiſſioners from the ſeveral Cities, with reference to the places for which they ſerved, had the name of *Phylagoræ*; when aſſembled, they were called the *Amphictiones*: their Meetings were at the beginning of the Spring and Autumn. Some Inſtances concerning their Authority will not be amiſs. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cirrhæans*, having by Pyracy wronged the *Theſſalians*, were fined by this Council; and after that the *Lacedæmonians*, for ſurpriſing *Cadmea*. And the *Phocians*, for Ploughing up the Land of *Cirrah*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: And becauſe they continued obſtinate, and paid not their Amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiſcate unto that Temple. But they, diſobeying this Decree alſo, ſpoiled the Temple it ſelf: For which War being proclaimed againſt the by them reſt of the *Græcians*, who by the Aſſiſtance of *Phillip* King of *Macedon* brought them to Obedience, the Council was again aſſembled; in which it was decreed that the *Phocians* ſhould raze the Walls of their Cities, that they ſhould pay the yearly Tribute of ſixty Talents, that they ſhould no more keep Horſe and Arms, till they had ſatisfied the Treaſury of the Temple, nor any longer have a Voice in thoſe Conventions. It was alſo then enacted, that the loſt Suffrages of the *Phocians* ſhould be veſted in King *Phillip* and his Succeſſors, Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they alſo did confer the perpetual Preſidentſhip, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the Seventy Elders amongſt the *Jews*, and, in our times, the Dyets of the Empire, and the Aſſemblies of the *Switzers*, carry moſt reſemblance. The City of *Delphos* is now called *Caſtri*. The Temple of *Apollo* is not now to be found, but by conjecture. It conſiſts of about Two hundred Houſes, and thoſe very ill built, twelve of which are inhabited by *Turks*, who have a Moſque: The *Greeks* have five or ſix Churches, and ſeem a good People, though miſerably poor. Mr. *Wheler*, pag. 315. 3. *Cirrha*, on the Sea-ſide, the Port-town to *Delphos*. 4. *Criſſa*, ſo called from *Criſſus* the Son of *Phocus*, and Grandchild of *Æacus*, ſituate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*, called ſometimes from hence *Criſſæus Sinus*. 5. *Scarphia*, memorable for the Defeat of *Critolaus*, Captain of the *Achæan* Army, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman* Prætors: The loſs of which Battel drew after it the Deſtruction of *Corinth*. It was obſerved in the ſucceſs of this great Fight, that a Band of *Arcadians*, eſcaping out of the Battel, came unto, 6. *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memory of ſome former Alliances, till News came of the Overthrow of *Critolaus*; when they were ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquiſh the Town; (for Adverſity ſeldom meeteth with returns of Friendſhip.) They were ſet upon and all ſlain by the *Romans* in the ſelf-ſame place in which their Anceſtors had unworthily forſaken the reſt of the *Græcians* in their War againſt *Phillip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick Liberty. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who, having married *Progne*, the Daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, raviſh'd her Siſter *Philomela*, and cut out her Tongue, the better to keep his Villany undiſcovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double Injury, firſt made him ignorantly eat his own Son *Itys*, whom ſhe had baked in a Pye; and after killed him with the help of her raviſhed Siſter. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which, with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the moſt famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles; dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with ſo much Cunning, that the meaning of them was moſt hidden, when it was thought moſt eaſie to be diſcerned. An Inſtance of which is that given to *Crœſus*, in the War by him projected againſt the *Perſians*, which was thus delivered.

Crœſus Haly *penetrans magnam ſubvertet opum vim.*
When *Crœſus* over *Halys* goes,
A mighty Nation he o'erthrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, croſſed the River, was vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* King of *Perſia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who, before he made War againſt the *Romans*, conſulted with the Oracle, and received this Anſwer;

Aio te, Æacida, Romanos *vincere poſſe.*

Which doubtful Prediction he thus conſtrued, *Te poſſe vincere Romanos*, That he ſhould overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his coſt that the meaning was, *Romanos poſſe vincere te*, That the *Romans* ſhould overcome him: As indeed it happened. By another kind of the ſame Fallacy, which the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great Enemy of Mankind overthrow another, who, demanding of the Oracle what Succeſs he ſhould have in an Expedition which he was in hand with, received his Anſwer in theſe words,

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis, redibis, nunquam per, &c.* engaged himſelf in the War, and was therein ſlain. Whereupon his Followers, canvaſſing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis, redibis nunquam per, &c.* The like Juggling he alſo uſed in thoſe ſupernatural Dreams which Philoſophers call δαιμονόπεμπτα' For *Cæſar*, dreaming that he carnally knew his own Mother the night before he paſſed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*: And *Hippias*, the Son of *Piſiſtratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the ſame projects the ſame Dream, was killed and buried in the Bowels of his Mother the Earth. So that had *Cæſar* miſcarried in his Action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet ſtill had the Devil been reputed his Craftsmaſter, and the Father of Truths. But as the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, conſulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no Anſwer; becauſe that the Body of *Babylas* the Martyr was entombed nigh his Altar: So neither could the Devils deceive the World, as formerly they had done, after *Chriſt*, the Truth it ſelf, was manifeſted in the Fleſh, and tormented theſe unclean Spirits, though, as they alledged, *before their time Auguſtus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whoſe time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his Succeſſor, received this not ſatisfying Anſwer:

——————— Παῖς
Ἑβραῖος κέλεταί με, θεοῖς μακάρεσσιν ἀνάσσων,
Τόνδε δόμον προλιπεῖν, καὶ ἀΐδην αὖθις ἱκέσθαι.
Λοιπὸν ἄπιθι σιγῶν ἐκ βωμῶν ἡμετέρων.

An *Hebrew* Child, whom the bleſt Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave theſe Shrines, and pack to Hell;
So that of Oracles I can no more.
In ſilence leave our Altar and farewel,

Whereupon *Auguſtus*, coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters cauſed this Inſcription to be ingraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by *Chriſt's* Birth loſt much of their wonted Virtue, ſo after his Paſſion they loſt it almoſt together. Concerning which Plutarch, in a Tract of his Morals called, Περὶ τῶν ἐκλελοιπότων χρηστηρίων, *Why Oracles ceaſe to give Anſwers*, telleth us a notable Story, which was this. Some Company, going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* be-calmed; when on a ſudden there was heard a Voice loudly calling on one *Thamus*, an *Egyptian* then in the Ship. At the two firſt calls he made no anſwer, but to the third he replied, ſaying, *Here I am.* And the Voice again ſpake unto him, bidding him, when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain Shelves and Rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus*, ſtanding on the Poop of the Ship, did as the Voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noiſe of many together, who all ſeem'd to groan and lament with terrible and hidious ſhreekings, News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he cauſed the Learned Men in his Empire to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* ſhould be; by whom it was anſwered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with Ignorance enough, and little ſatisfaction to the buſineſs propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly obſerved the Circumſtances of this Accident found it to happen at the time when our Saviour ſuffered on the Croſs; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the *chief Shepherd and Biſhop of our Souls*, as the Scripture calleth him: And that, upon this divulging of his Death and Paſſion, the Devils, who uſed to ſpeak in Oracles, did with great Grief and Lamentation forſake that Office, which had been ſo gainful to them in ſeducing Mankind. That all Oracles at that inſtance ceaſed, I dare not ſay; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: It being ſaid by *Juvenal*, who lived in the Reign of *Domitian*, Delphis *Oracula ceſſant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then ſilent; the reſt decaying ſenſibly in a ſhort time after.

But to proceed. The Temple of *Apollo* being ſpoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, cauſed the War betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War:* In which the *Thebans*, being likely to have the worſt, ſent for *Phillip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the Quarrel by ſubduing both. The Treaſure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple was reckoned at Sixty Talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Toloſanum*, and brought a ſudden Ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being ſo unpardonable a Crime, even amongſt the Heathen, that the fault of ſome few, countenanced by the reſt of a People, hath brought Deſtruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill Fortune ranſacked by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miſerably periſhing who had any hand in it. It is now a poor Village.

5. LOCRIS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis* and a Branch of the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Ætolia*, on the North with a long Ridge of Hills which part it from *Theſſaly*, and on the South with parts of *Achaia*, *Bœotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Streights of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian* Sea. So that for largeneſs of Extent, and the commodiouſneſs of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not ſo fruitful as ſome others. Divided into the three Nations, of the *Locri Ozolæ*, lying towards the South, on both ſides of the Streights, ſo called from ſome ill Smells of the Country or People; 2. the *Epicnemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, ſo named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnaſſus:* And, 3. the *Opuntii*, ſo called from *Opus* their chief City, lying on the North-ſide of the River *Cephiſus*, on the Coaſts of the *Ægaan* or *Eubœan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the Head City of the *Opuntians*, ſituate on the River *Aſopus*, being one of the main Branches of *Cephiſus*. This Place is now called *Thalanda*, and is a Town that may contain Five or Six thouſand Souls, *Greeks*, *Jews* and *Turks*, and is a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Athens*. It ſtands two Miles from the Sea over againſt a ſmall Iſland called of old *Atlanta*, now nameleſs, as Mr. *Wheler* ſaith, pag. 494. 2. *Cynus*, the Port Town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime Town of the *Epicnemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolomy*. 4. *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphiſſa*, the chief City of the *Ozolæ*, ſituate in the Inland parts of it: The People whereof, refuſing to yield to the Sentence of the *Amphictyones* againſt their Confederates the *Phocians*, were the cauſe that *Phillip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Againſt whom, grievouſly infeſting the *Bœotian*, and manifeſtly aſpiring to the Command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* deſperately oppoſed, not ſo much with poſſibility of prevailing, as being urged on by the ſharp and biting Orations of *Demoſthenes* made againſt his Proceedings: Which being by him called *Philippicks*, occaſioned *Tully* to call his bitter Invectives againſt *M. Antonius* by the ſame name alſo. But the Succeſs hereof was ſuch as commonly attendeth a broken Fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquiſhed at *Chæronæa*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* againſt the *Perſians*, obtained under that Title the Command he ſought. This Place is now call'd *Salona*, and is ſtill a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Athens*, others ſuppoſe it to be *Lambino*. The *Turks* have 7 Moſques, but no *Jews* are ſuffered, and the *Chriſtians* are equal to the *Turks* in number. 6. *Euantia*, as *Ptolomy*, *Oeanthia*, as *Pliny* and *Pauſanias* call it; oppoſite to *Ægira* in *Achaia propria*. 7. *Molycria*, by *Ptolomy* placed here, and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*; not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, ſo called becauſe juſt oppoſite to that of *Rhium* in *Achaia propria*, between which runneth a narrow Streight (not ſo wide as the *Helleſpont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth:* each Promontory being for that cauſe Fortified by *Bajazet* the Second with a very ſtrong Caſtle; that on this ſide being gallantly defended by the Turks, when beſieged by *Doria*, *Anno* 1532; for being forced with great Slaughter into a ſtrong Tower which commanded the Caſtle, they rather choſe to blow it up, together with the Ammunition, Victuals, and themſelves to boot, than that the Fort ſhould come entire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* alſo; but, following the Authority of *Ptolomy*, I have placed it here. The two oppoſite Forts are now called the *Dardanels* of *Lepanto*, and were taken in the year 1687 by *Moroſini*; that on the *Morea* ſide with ſome difficulty, the other without reſiſtance. 8. *Naupactus*, ſo called from the building of Ships there by the *Heraclidæ*; ſituate on the *Corinthian* Bay, near the Mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Meſſenians*, when, after the end of the third War, the *Lacedæmonians*, unwilling to have them troubleſom Neighbours (and they ſcorning to be quiet Slaves) compelled them to ſeek new Habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the Gulf of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name ſubject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1499. Of theſe *Locrians* thoſe of *Italy* were a Branch or Colony, whoſe Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, ſpoken of elſewhere.

This Town (ſaith Mr. *Wheler*, p. 299.) is ſituate upon a very ſteep Hill, with a deſcent every way from the Top; but it is joined to a Mountain behind it by two other ſmaller Hills, which, ever ſince the invention of Gunpowder command it. In more ancient Times it gave great diſquiet to the *Romans*, being then a Refuge to the Rebellious *Ætolians*. It is built from the Sea ſhore up to the higheſt point of the Hill which is crowned with a Caſtle ſecured by four ranges of Walls one above another, which makes it at a diſtance reſemble the Papal Crown. It has a ſmall Oval Harbour too, which has two Towers on each ſide of the entrance for its defence, with ſome ſmall Braſs Guns, but the entrance is fleet and fit for nothing but Galleys; the Town is ſecured as well as the Harbour by a ſtrong but ancient Wall.

The Inhabitants are moſtly Turks and Jews, and very few Chriſtians; In the year 1408, it was under the *Greek* Emperors, who conſigned it to the *Venetians* who thus Fortified it, in the year 1475, it ſuſtained a Siege of 4 Months, in which the Turks loſt 30000 men to no purpoſe. In the year 1499, *Bajazet* the 2. durſt not truſt to an Army of 150000 Men to reduce it, but corrupted *Hieronomo Trono* the *Venetian* Government alſo. But in the year 1687, *Moroſini* having beaten the Seraſquier of the *Morea*, and taken the oppoſite *Dardanel* and *Patras*, and croſſing over to *Lepanto*, he found the Turks emptying the Town for him, and took poſſeſſion of it without one blow ſtriking. This Town is called by the *Greeks Epaɛtos*, by the Turks *Einebachti*, and is the chief upon the Bay, and was formerly a Receptacle for Pirates, and of latter times a place of ſmall Trade.

6. *DORIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis*, on the Weſt with *Atolia*, on the North with the Hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theſſaly*, and on the South with *Atolia* and part of *Locris*. The Air hereof is very healthy, and the Soil ſufficiently fruitful, if well manured: but now the greateſt part lieth waſte for want of Tillage. Firſt peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorienſes*, deſcended from *Dorus* the Son of *Helen*, and Grandchild of *Deucalion*, by whom they were placed in *Theſſaly*, afterwards ſpreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper Dwelling: tho' many of them, following the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus* poſſeſſed themſelves of the greateſt part of *Laconia* alſo; imprinting on the ſame their Dialect or form of Speech, from them called the *Dorick*.

Chief Cities hereof are, 1. *Doris*, ſo called in memory of *Dorus*, the firſt Progenitor of this People. 2. *Erineus*, ſeated at the Foot of *Parnaſſus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemy*, and the reſt of the Ancients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolomy*; or *Boion*, as *Strabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4. *Cytinum*, near *Parnaſſus* alſo, in the common Impreſſions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Hiſtorian falſly called *Cynthinium*. 5. *Lilæa*, ſituate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Cephiſus*; which, riſing hereabouts, paſſeth through the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Agæan* or *Eubœan* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the Eaſt *Locris*, on the Weſt *Epirus*, on the North *Doris*, on the South the *Ionian* Sea, ſaid to be ſo called from *Ætolus*, the Son of *Mars*, who, being by *Salmoneus* caſt out of *Elis*, fixed himſelf in this Country.

Here is the Foreſt of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the Flower of the *Greek* Nobility ſlew the wild Boar. Here is the River *Euenus*; over which the Centaur *Neſſus* having carried *Dejanira*, Wife of *Hercules*, and intending to have raviſhed her, was ſlain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other ſide of the River ſhot at him. Here alſo is the River of *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things: as that being Rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountred him in the ſhape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluck'd off one of his Horns, the Nymphs made of it their ſo much celebrated *Cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the moſt turbulent and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at Peace with their neighbours, and ſeldom with themſelves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reaſon of the Cragginefs of the Country: yet they brought them to ſuch terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into *Greeec*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were, 1. *Chalcis*, ſituate near the Spring-head of *Achelous* before mentioned. 2. *Arachthus*, near the River ſo called; which, ariſing hereabouts, paſſeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olenus*, not far from the Foreſt of *Calydon*. 4. *Pleurone*, giving name to the adjoyning Country, called hence *Pleuronia*, the People whereof had the name of *Curetes* ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *ſhaving*, it being their cuſtom to ſhave the fore-parts of their Heads, and let the Hair grow on the hinder parts only, *ne Hoſtes eos cæſarie apprehenderent*, becauſe their Enemies ſhould not lay hold on them by their Fore-tops, and ſo pull them down. 5. *Thermus* the Parliament City, or place of general Aſſembly, for all the States of *Ætolia*: which Meeting was called *Panætolium*. It was choſen for thoſe Meetings in regard of the ſituation and ſtrength thereof; as being ſituate well-near in the midſt of the Country, environed with rocky Mountains, of ſteep and difficult aſcent. For that cauſe it was made alſo the receptacle of their wealth and Treaſure in all times of danger: but taken at the laſt by *Phillip* of *Macedon*, with all the Spoil in it, in his War againſt them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Foreſt ſo called, giving name unto it: the Royal Seat of *Oeneus*, Father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Euenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*.

> *Et* Meleagræam *maculatus ſauguine* Neſſi
> Euenus Calydona *Secat*.

That is to ſay,

> *Calydon*, *Mileager*'s Town, the Flood
> *Even* divides, defil'd with *Neſſus* blood.

Adjoyning hereunto were the *Athamanes*, whom *Pliny* makes a People of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athamania*; but ſuch (as little as it was) as gave it the Title of a Kingdom to *Animander*; a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made ſpecial uſe of in their Wars againſt *Phillip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*, ſuggeſting to him and his Children, that they were deſcended of the Houſe of *Alexander* the Great, and ſo engaging them, in hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of moſt note are, 1. *Dium*, 2. *Athaneum*; both of them taken by *Phillip* in that War.

Theſe, as they were the laſt Actors on the Stage of *Achaia*, ſo had they the moſt deſperate part in all the Tragedy of that Country. The Affairs whereof, governed ſucceſſively by that State which was moſt powerful, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*; whoſe Councils and Concluſions went for Law amongſt them. But that Eſtate being broken, if not ſubverted by the Power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians*, who came next in play, had the chief Command; uniting almoſt all the reſt in deſign with them againſt the *Spartans*, who now grew terrible to all. Becoming inſolent by the courſe of two much Proſperity, and the many great Victories which they had againſt the *Spartans*, and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cauſe of *Philip*'s coming into *Greece*; who, as he had learned amongſt them the uſe of Arms, ſo made he uſe thereof at laſt, and of their Diſſentions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his Command; *Thebes* it ſelf being taken and ſacked by *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*, as before is ſaid. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by Force, but eſpecially by Art and Practice, there was no People in *Achaia* that durſt oppoſe them; till theſe *Ætolians*, a reſtleſs and impatient People, took the Cauſe in hand. Who thrived ſo well under *Antigonus* and *Philip*, two of the laſt Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Theſſaly*, attempted *Macedon* it ſelf, and when they could not otherwiſe obtain their purpoſe in the Deſtruction of that Kingdom, opened a paſſage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no ſuch favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* againſt them, drawing thereby thoſe Forces againſt themſelves which they had invited into *Greece*, and were the firſt People of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though by the Mediation of the *Rhodians* and ſome other Friends, their Country was reſtored unto them, with the loſs only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and ſome other Iſlands; which the *Romans* were reſolved to keep as the fruits of the War. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then Conſul, and chief Commander in this War. After which time the ſeveral Eſtates hereof enjoyed ſo much Liberty as the *Romans* their new Maſters thought fit to give them: till they were finally made abſolutely ſubject in the time of *Veſpaſian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponneſus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the Diviſion of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, the Weſt parts hereof being divided from the reſt were called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the Dioceſs of *Macedon*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; the principal Officer of this part being called the Proconſul of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his Succeſſors, Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, till the Deſtruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*; but ſo that it remained not always under the Command of one ſole Officer, the Policy of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments, eſpecially after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, or Weſtern Chriſtians. At that time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Græcian*, and one of the then Imperial Family, ſeized on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*; part of which laſt, and all the firſt, he left to *Michael* his Son, who held them, tho with ſome diſpute betwixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the firſt Emperor of *Conſtantinople* after the Expulſion of the *Latines*. *Charles*, the laſt Prince of that Family dying without Iſſue about the year 1430, bequeathed *Ætolio* to another *Charles*, the Son of his Brother; and *Arcania* (being that part of *Epirus* which the Princes of *Ætolio* held) to his baſe Sons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many Quarrels happening upon this Diviſion, *Amurath* the ſecond having then newly conquered *Theſſalonica*, compoſed the Differences by taking all unto himſelf, *Anno* 1432. There were at that time other Princes of the like Authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*; but the firſt the chiefeſt, as honoured not only with the Title of Dukes of *Athens*, but of Princes of *Achaia* alſo; ſuch being the Fortune of that City, as to have the firſt and laſt great Sway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the Tranſlation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *French*-man, was made Duke of *Athens* and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* ſpeaketh, *Anno* 1220: which Honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter de Bren*, a Kinſman of *John de Bren*, the laſt King of *Jeruſalem*, a Protector of *Baldwin* the ſecond, the laſt Emperor of the *Latines*, mentioned by the ſaid *Æmilius*, *Anno* 1288. And though on the Defeat and Death of this *Walter* by the *Catalonians*, then ranſacking thoſe parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was aſſumed by *Frederick-Alphonſo*, the Son of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, and by other Princes of that Houſe: yet upon better ground, by the Heir general of this *Waltar* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Neaulus di Accio*, a Nobleman of the Realm of *Naples*: whoſe Son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Athens*) for a time obtained the Sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, *Anno* 1342: but loſt it ſuddenly again by his too much Cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the laſt Prince of this Houſe, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his Favorites, ſurrendered his Eſtate herein, at the perſwaſion of that Tyrant, in change for the Country of *Bœotia* and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no ſooner had received, but he was ſent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at firſt he was courteouſly received, at laſt cruelly murthered. And ſo the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1454, or thereabouts.

3. EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Ætolia*, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Theſſaly*, *Macedon*, and ſome part of *Albania*, and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the Solidity and Firmneſs of it, the word *Epeiros* in the *Greek* Tongue ſignifying as much as *Terra firma*, on the firm Land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which nama they give to all the Lands and Countries in their poſſeſſion lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the firſt Foreigner who made trial (though to his own Loſs) of the Power and Puiſſance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the ſecond great Soldier of the world. Here is alſo Mount *Pindus*, ſacred to *Apollo* and the *Nuſes*, dividing this Country from *Theſſaly*, and therefore common unto both: as alſo the *Acroceraunian* Hills, ſo called, becauſe they are ſo much ſubject unto Thundering and Lightning, eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners, who, when they ſee a little Cloud riſing on the top hereof, are ſure of a Tempeſt. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron* and *Cocytus*, which, for their black waters and unſavoury taſte, are ſaid to be the Rivers of Hell: from which laſt the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proſerpine* whom *Pluto* raviſhed and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence, by a Metonymie, theſe Rivers are taken ſometime for Hell it ſelf; as in that of the Poet,

Flectere ſi nequeo Superos, Acheronta *movebo*.

Since thoſe in Heaven I cannot move,
The Powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The Soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Foreſts and thin of people: but towards the Sea reaſonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep of more than ordinary bigneſs, and yielding the beſt breed of Horſes. The people ſpeak a diſtinct Language from the *Græcians*, though of the *Greek* Tougue not utterly ignorant: and by reaſon of the Barrenneſs of their own Country, become great Wanderers, eſpecially in Summer-time, when they Travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Aſia-Minor*, hiring themſelves to work in Harveſt under the *Turks*, as alſo to Threſh, Winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter-time return to their Wives and Children. They are able of body, ſwift of foot, apt to undergo any Toil and Labour; having withal good Courages and high Projections: which makes ſuch of them as delight not in works of Drudgery to look for action in the Wars, and otherwiſe to rob and ſpoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their Subjection to the *Turks*, they were much uſed both by the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice* in their ſeveral Wars, ſerving on Horſe or Foot, as occaſion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Weſtern parts, but not ſo faithful to the party entertaining them.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the Weſt, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which it is parted by the River *Achelous*: the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Theſprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in former times, and ſo continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the Conqueſt of *Macedon*, overthrew ſeventy of their Cities. Few of which being ſince re-edified, and the Country for a long time languiſhing under the *Turks*, here are not any very fair Towns or well-peopled Cities at the preſent to be ſpoken of; and therefore we muſt look on ſuch as flouriſhed in the times fore-going. The principal whereof were, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*; ſituate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are ſaid to be Vocal, and to give the Oracle: though others ſay, it was delivered firſt by a pair of Pigeons, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the ancienteſt Oracle of all *Greece*, and ſo perhaps was the Town the ancienteſt Town alſo. Said to be firſt built by *Dodon*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably ſo called from *Dodanim*, the Son of *Javan*, and Grand-child of *Japhet*, who firſt inhabited this Region; the whole Country (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father, (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* Text) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Caſiope*, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the ſame name adjoyning to it. 3. *Oncheſmus*, by *Strabo* called *Onchimus*, and by *Pliny Echinus*, a Port-Town alſo, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, retaining ſtill the old name, and but little elſe. 5. *Antigonia*, more within the Land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus*, a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro Caſtro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phænice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being ſacked by the *Illirians*, under *Teuta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occaſion of Quarrel with them, upon Complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodes*, a Port-Town, the Principal in that part which was called *Threſprotia*; as 8. *Tarono*, on the River *Thyamis*. and 9. *Sybota*, an ancient Haven-Town, (now called *Syoita*) was in that part whereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was firſt named *Moloſſia*, from *Moloſſus* the Son of *Pyrrhus*, and *Andromache*, remarkable for the beſt breed of Maſtives, hence called *Moloſſi*; and afterwards *Chaolia*, by *Helenus* the Son of *Priamus*, whom *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles* ſettled in this Country: who having unfortunately ſlain his Brother *Chaon*, cauſed it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; Chaoniam *que omnem* Trojano *a* Chaone *dixit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of theſe *Moloſſians*, *Pluto*, the third Son of *Saturn*, was ſometimes King, called, from the flat and hollow ſituation of this Country, conſiſting much of deep Valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of ſpecial note in *Acarnania* were, 1. *Anactorium*, on the Bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoyning Town, ſituate in or near the place where *Ambracia* ſtood. Mr. *Wheeler* aſſures us, *Ambracia* is now called *Ambrakia*, and is a ſmall Village, about a days Journey from *Larta*, at the bottom of that Bay from whence it ſtands 16 miles to the Eaſt. It was once ſubject unto *Periander*, King or Tyrant of *Corinth*, who being ſlain by a Woman named *Leonna*, whom he kept as his Concubine, occaſioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their Deliverance, to worſhip a Lion. Afterwards being taken from the Children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by the *Ætolians* in the time of their greatneſs, it was beſieged by *Fulvius*, a *Roman* Conſul ſpoken of before. Who ſeeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the Mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other Friends of both parties to conclude a Peace: but ſo that he deſpoiled this City at his going hence of much excellent Imagery, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the nine *Muſes* moſt admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rareſt Painter of his times. 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* ſimply; now a ſmall Village called *Butrinto*. 4. *Leucas*, ſituate on the point of a Promontory of the ſame name alſo, anciently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*. But leaping into the Sea from the top of this Promontory, ſuch as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady: the firſt trial of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous Poetreſs. At that time it was joined unto the Land; but ſince by the violence of the Sea or the hand of man, it is made into an Iſland; according unto that of *Ovid*,

> Leucada *continnam veteres habuere Colini*,
> *Nunc Freta circumeunt*

That is to ſay,

> *Leucas*, in former times joyn'd to the Land,
> Environ'd round with Waters now doth ſtand.

It was called *Leucas*, from the Whiteneſs of the Rock or Promontory, having before the Separation or diſjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Iſle and Promontory. Both Town and Iſland at this time is called S. *Mauro*, taken by *Bajazet* the II. from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do ſtill inhabit it) at their expulſion out of *Spain*. *Santo Mauro* ſtands three miles from *Leucadia*, as Mr. *Wheeler* acquaints us: It has a good Fortreſs ſituate on a low Ground, with ſome round Baſtions. The Inhabitants of it are Pirates, and for that cauſe are hated both by the Turks and Chriſtians the former burning their Ships to prevent their depredations. It hath about 5 or 6 Thouſand Inhabitants. The *Venetian* Fleet Rendeſvouzed near this Iſland in the year 1687, when it went for the *Morea*. *Coronelli* having deſcribed the Situation of this Important Fort, ſaith, in the year 1479, it was taken by the Turks from ſome *Greeks*, who till then enjoyed it. In 1502, the *Venetians* took it from the Turks, but at the Peace reſtored it to *Sultan Bajazet*. But the 24th of *July* 1684, *Moroſini* retook it, and they have ſince very much improved its Fortifications. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the *Romans*, of great Wealth and Beauty in the time of St. *Paul*, who from hence dated his Epiſtle to *Titus*: called in that Proſcript *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, becauſe *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a diſtinct Province of it ſelf. It was firſt built by *Auguſtus Cæſar* on a Promontory oppoſite unto *Actium*, on the other ſide of the Bay: that being the place where his Land Soldiers were incamped before the Naval Battle betwixt him and *Mark Anthony*, and was thus called either in memory of his Victory, or from a poor man and his Aſs whom he met here the day before. For asking the man his name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, *i. e.* Fortunate, and that the name of his Aſs was *Nicon*, *i. e.* Conqueror; which happy *Omen* made his Soldiers couragious and hopeful of Victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Aſs, the other of his Maſter. It is now a ſmall Village called *Preveſa*. 6. *Actium*, on the Sea-ſhore, nigh unto which *Auguſtus* and *Anthony* fought for the Empire of the World. The Navy of the latter conſiſted of 500 Galleys; the former had 250 only, but thoſe crowned with Victory; *Antonius* ſhamefully deſerting his Soldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very firſt Charge fled away for *Egypt*. The Town being now ruined, the Promontory upon which it ſtood is called *Caba di Figalo*. Mr. *Wheeler* gives us an account of theſe Towns about this Bay, *Anta* which has 6 or 7000 Inhabitants moſt *Greeks*, and is an Archbiſhop's See, which was removed hither from *Lepanto*, under him are 2. *Ragous*, a little Town 10 miles from *Prevenza*, 3. *Ventza*, a Town and Caſtle on the other ſide of the Bay, 4. *Aſtos*, an Iſland Town. 5. *Acheloou*. 6. *Javina*, a Town bigger then *Anta*, peopled by Rich *Greek* Merchants, and an Archbiſhops See too, under which are 7. *Argyro Caſtro*. 8. *Butrinto*, and 9. *Glykeon*. Thus far Mr. *Wheeler*, p. 38.

The Country was firſt peopled by *Dodanim* the Son of *Javin*, or at leaſt by ſome of his Poſterity coming hither from the Iſle of *Rhodes*; whoſe Memory was preſerved a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him, ſo denominated. Afterwards being parted into ſeveral Nations, and thoſe Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*, it became a great and powerful Kingdom; governed by a Race of Kings deſcending from *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus Eacbides*. A man of ſuch Courage and Magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Caſſander*, had deprived his Father, but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Caſſander*'s Children; outed of which, he tried his Fortune with the *Romans*, *Anno Mundi* 3683, *U. C.* 471. After his death this Kingdom was ſhrewdly ſhaken by the *Macedonians*, and ſhortly after ſubdued by *Paulus Æmilius*, who, as we now ſaid, deſtroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For deſirous to ſatisfie his Soldiers after his Victory in *Macedon*, he ſent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. Theſe he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had, and to that end, as he gave out, he ſent certain Companies of Soldiers along with them; unto whom he gave Secret Inſtructions, that on a day by him appointed they ſhould fall to ſack every one the Town whereunto they were ſent. A barbarous and bloody Decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and ſold for Slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to ſo great a Cruelty was, by diſpeopling this Country, lying with a long and fair Sea-coaſt over againſt *Italy*, to give the *Romans* opportunity to land their Armies without any Reſiſtance for the farther Progreſs of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Mæſia*, or where elſe they pleaſed. Which ungodly Policy was afterwards imitated by *William* the Conqueror, who laid waſt all that part of *Hampſhire*, ſince called *New Foreſt*, and therein Thirty Six Pariſh Churches, that he might have a ſafe Landing-place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *Engliſh* ſhould at any time endeavour to make head againſt him. Being made ſubject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards, when *Macedonia* was made a Dioceſs, it became a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eaſtwards of it. At the Diviſion of the Empire it belonged to the *Conſtantinapolitans*, and ſo continued till the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern Chriſtians: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the Imperial Family, ſeized on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, as before was ſaid, and ſped ſo well in his Deſigns, that he took the ſtrong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice*, (to whom it fell in the diviſion of that Spoil) and cunningly (if not Treacherouſly) intercepted *Peter* the third Emperor of the *Latins*, whom, as ſome ſay, he cauſed to be Murthered at a Banquet. After his death, his whole Eſtate being divided into two parts, *Atolia* with that part hereof which is called *Chaonia*, continued in his Houſe till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Atolia* and *Epirus* ſpoken of before, after whoſe death it was ſubdued by *Amurath* the Second, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called *Albania*, fell to the Family of the *Caſtriots*: the laſt of which, named *John*, (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt that Tyrant, who had already ſwallowed up all his Neighbour-princes, ſubmitted his Eſtate unto him, and gave unto him all his Sons for Hoſtages. No ſooner was the old Prince dead, but *Amurath* ſeized on his Eſtate, murthered his three Eldeſt Sons, and cauſed *George*, the youngeſt to be train'd up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards, eſcaping out of his Power and recovering all his Fathers Countries, aſſumed alſo the Stile or Title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whoſe death, his Children, not being able to make good their Game, loſt it to *Mahomet* the Great; as ſhall be ſhewn more fully in the Story and Deſcription of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

4. *ALBANIA.*

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Macedonia*, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Sclavonia*, on the South with *Epirus*. The Country is mountainous and barren; watred with few Rivers, and thoſe of no great note amongſt the Ancients; as 1. *Laus*; 2. *Aſpus*, 2. *Panyaſus*, 4. *Celydnus*: all of them falling into the *Adriatick*.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract, from whom the chief City hereof was called *Albanapolis*. Other Towns of moſt conſideration are, 1. *Sfetigrade*, or *Veſtigard*, (called by ſome the *Holy City*) ſituate in the Borders of *Epirus*, on the top of an Hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagle's Neſt; one of the laſt Towns in all this Country which was taken by *Scanderbeg* at his recovery of his Birthright and Eſtate herein; but being once taken by him, held good courageouſly againſt the Turk, the Soldiers neither fainting in their Oppoſitions, nor corrupted by Mony, till at the laſt ſubdued by a Superſtition. There was in the Town one onely Well, into which a Treacherous Chriſtian caſt a dead Dog: at the ſight of which being the next day drawn up, the Soldiers gave up the Town; being ſo unſeaſonably ſuperſtitious, that no perſwaſion, nor the example of the Captain or Burgo-Maſters, could make them drink thoſe (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. *Durazzo*, a Town of great ſtrength, firſt called *Epidamnum*, and afterwards *Dyrrhacium*. Under the Walls of which Town was the firſt bickering between the Soldiers of *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, not only to the preſent Loſs, but alſo the utter Diſcomfiture of *Cæſar*, as he himſelf confeſſed, if the Enemies Captain had known how to have overcome. I muſt not omit the Valour of *Scæva* at this Siege, who alone ſo long reſiſted *Pompey*'s Army, that he had 220 Darts ſticking in his Shield, and loſt one of his Eyes; and yet gave not over till *Cæſar* came to his Reſcue.

Parque novum Fortuna videt concurrere, Bellum,
Atque Virum----denſamque ferens in Pectore Sylvam.

Fortune beholds an unaccuſtom'd ſight,
An Army and a man together fight,
Whoſe breaſt a Wood of Arrows covered quite.

In the Diviſion of the Eaſtern Empire amongſt the *Latines* it fell into the power of *Venice*; taken at laſt after a long and tedious Siege, by *Amurath* the ſecond, *Anno* 1502. The *Venetians* took and burnt this City in the year 1654, but the Turks ſoon after recovered it. Mr. *Wheeler* ſaith, it is now nothing but a Ruin'd Village, with a neglected Fort. p. 28. 4. *Dibra*, in the Hill-Countries near *Epirus*; the firſt Town which ſubmitted to the Valiant *Scanderbeg* at his revolting from the Turks; ſuppoſed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolemy*. 5. *Croia*, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of all this Country ſeated amongſt inacceſſible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by a Wile; who, having got into his power, the Secretary of the principal *Baſſa*, forced him to write Letters in his Maſter's name unto the Governour hereof, to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly in 1434. Afterwards it was in vain beſieged by *Amurath* the ſecond, who under the Walls hereof gave up his wretched Soul to the Devil in the year 1449; and thrice beſieged by *Mahomet* his Son and Succeſſor, before he could again poſſeſs it, but taken at the laſt after *Scanderbeg*'s death, as if the *Genius* or Tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him in the year 1468. 6. *Petrella*, a Town of great Strength, ſeated on the top of an Hill (as almoſt all the Towns of *Albania* are) about 25 miles from *Croia* delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his firſt ſitting down before it: as alſo was 7. *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, near the Borders of *Macedon*, and ſituate like the other on the top of a Mountain, the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8. *Stelluſa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleaſant and fruitful Valley, with great and ſpacious Plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the Hill Country towards *Sclavonia*; for the poſſeſſion whereof roſe a War betwixt *Scanderbeg* and the State of *Venice*, but the *Venetians* being worſted at the Battle of *Drino*, relinquiſhed their Pretentions to it. 10. *Aulon* a Port Town, now called *Valona*, ſituate over againſt *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, diſtant from it about 60 miles. The Town is unwalled but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle; a Town unfortunately fit for the Invaſion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made uſe of by *Achmetes* the chief *Baſſa* under *Mahomet* the Great; who from hence paſſed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Ottranto*, and had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the Combuſtions, thereon following amongſt the Turks, altered the deſign, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Conſtantinople*. This Place was at firſt a Biſhops See under the Archbiſhop of *Athens*, afterwards under *Durazzo*, and is now an Archbiſhops See, and the Seat of the Turkiſh Governour. It is ſtrong, and has a good Haven ſecured by two Caſtles, yet it could not ſecure the *Algerine* Pirates from the *Venetian* Fleet, who ſome few years ſince burnt them in this Port. 11. *Appollonia*, a Town of great Note in the time of the *Romans*; a Sea-Town, furniſhed with a commodious Haven, which they held as their Entrance into *Greece*; to that purpoſe ſerving them as commodiouſly as *Calais* did the *Engliſh* in their Wars with *France*. It is now called *Pollona* by the Turks, and reduced to a poor Village of a few Houſes.

This Country anciently was a part of *Macedon*, inhabited by the *Talautii*, *Æſtrai* and *Albania*, from which laſt (but not till theſe latter times) it had the name of *Albania*: but whether theſe *Albani* were a Colony of the *Albanians* of *Aſia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When it was made a Province of the Empire it contained all *Pravalitana* and ſome part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; being under the Dioceſs of *Dacia* in the time of *Juſtinian*, but at firſt of *Macedon*. Diſmembred from the main Body of it when the *Latines* had ſubdued *Conſtantinople*, it fell unto the noble Family of the *Caſtriots*; who though they took unto themſelves the Title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (moſt of which they held). as the Country of more Note and Eminence, yet was *Albania* the greateſt Strength, and *Croia* the chief City thereof, the Seat of their Reſidence; they being called in that reſpect by ſome Writers the Kings of *Albania*. *John Caſtriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt the *Turks*, became their Homager, and delivered four Sons for Hoſtages; whom *Amurath* the ſecond in their Father's life time cauſed to be circumciſed, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his deceaſe murthered the three eldeſt, and ſeized upon *Croia* the chief City with the reſt of the Country. But *George* the youngeſt of thoſe Sons, being reſerved for better Fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath*, who ſomewhat paſſionately affected him, in the Stratagems of War; though ſome of his Courtiers then told him that he nouriſhed a Serpent in his Boſom, which would one day ſting him. *Amurath*, to make Trial of his Diſpoſition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his Service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, then his Head for a Crown. Satisfied with which anſwer the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a *Sanzack* or Provincial Governour, and gave him ſome Office of Command in all thoſe Armies which he ſet out againſt the Chriſtians. Eſcaping out of the Battle wherein *Caramben*, the great *Baſſa*, was overthrown and taken Priſoner by *Huniades*, he got the Town of *Croia* by a piece of wit, as before was ſaid; and in a very ſhort time after made himſelf Maſter of *Petrella*, *Petra*, *Alba*, *Stelluſa*, and all the reſt of the Countrey, by the Reputation and Terror of his firſt Succeſs. Having recovered his Inheritance out of the hands of the Turks, he reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Chriſt*, ſtyling himſelf the *Soldier of Chriſt Jeſus* from that time forwards. Invaded by a vaſt Army of Turks, he overcometh *Aly Baſſa*, and kills 20000 of his men. With no more than 20 Horſe and 50 Foot he aſſaulteth *Muſtapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 Turks were ſlain, and 300 taken. With whom encountring not long after in the open Field, he ſlew 10000 of his men, took many Priſoners, and *Muſtapha* himſelf amongſt the reſt, whom he ranſomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Hoſt of *Amurath*, then beſieging *Croia*, he killed *Feris Baſſa* hand to hand in a ſingle Combat: and in the time of *Mahomet*, who ſucceeded *Amurath*, vanquiſhed *Iſaac* the great *Baſſa*, routed his whole Army, had the Spoil of his Camp, took 20 of his faireſt Enſigns, and ſlew 30000 of his Soldiers. Not to inſtance in the reſt of his noble Actions, it is reported that in the courſe of his War againſt the Turks, he killed no fewer then 3000 of them with his own hands; uſing a Turkiſh Scimitar in all his Fights, of great weight and bigneſs. Which when *Mahomet* on a Peace between them had deſired to ſee, and afterwards returning again with this Cenſure of it, that he *ſaw nothing in it more than ordinary*: the gallant Prince ſent back this anſwer, that the *Virtue of the Weapon depended on the Strength of his Arm, which he could not ſend him, for that he did reſerve it for the death of his Enemies*. Finally, having held his Cards againſt *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two moſt fortunate Gameſters, for the ſpace of 24 years, he ſet up his Reſt at laſt a Winner; dying in peace at *Liſſa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*, *Jan.* 17. *Anno* 1466, and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the Turks about nine years after, his Body was digged up by them, not in ſpight, but honour; that man accounting himſelf happy who could get any of his Bones to preſerve as a Relick, ſuppoſing that as long as he had it about him he ſhould be invincible. But with him died the Liberty of his Country alſo, not long after ſubdued by the Turks, and made a Province of that Empire, as it ſtill continueth: the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and ſo much of *Dalmatia* alſo as is under their power.

The Arms of this Kingdom (or rather of the Kings thereof were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sables*.)

The Hiſtory of the Family of the *CASTRIOTS* from *Du Freſne*.

THere is no Man, how moderately ſo ever acquainted with the Stories of the latter Ages, but knows the great Luſtre given to the Family of the *Caſtriots* by that Great *Alexander* or *Scanderbeg*, who was ſcarce inferior in Military Glory and Conqueſts to the *Macedonian*. Thoſe however, who have endeavoured to find out his Pedigree from its Original; though he is confeſs'd to have been Born of one of the moſt illuſtrious Houſes of *Albania*, have yet not been able to deduce his Linage without a mixture of Fables, becauſe they had no certain and undoubted Monuments of Antiquity to direct them in their Inquiry, they periſhing either by the negligence of the *Albanians*, or the calamities of their Wars. However that nothing might be omitted in this obſcure affair, I ſhall here give the World his Deſcent from ſuch Authors as have undertaken to Deduce it, though it is not always founded on undoubted Authorities.

1. *Conſtantin Caſtriot*, ſirnamed *Meſerech*, Prince or Lord of *Æmathia* and *Caſtriot* is mentioned by *Flavius Comnenus*, who ſaith he died in the year MCCCXC. He left

2. *George Caſtriot* his Son, mentioned alſo by *Flavius*, and ſtyled Prince of *Æmathia*, *Meneſtria* and *Caſtoria*.

3. *John Caſtriot* Son of *George*, and Lord of the ſame Towns, and of *Croia*, as *Peter Luccarius* ſaith, who adds, That the Family of the *Caſtriots*, had their name from a Town ſo called in the Territory of *Aſen*, or upon the River *Drin*. This *John* is celebrated in the Hiſtorians of that Age for the greatneſs of his Mind and his Military Knowledge, which enabled him a long time to ſuſtain the furious Attacks of *Sultan Amurath*, who, yet at laſt by his numbers overpowered him, and forced him to give his four Sons as Hoſtages. His Lady was *Voiſava*, the Daughter of *Pologus*, a Lord of a Country ſo called in the Borders of *Macedonia* and *Bulgaria*. By her he had Nine Children, four Sons and five Daughters. 1. *Repoſius*, called *Ameſan Beg*, imployed by *Amurath* againſt his Nephew *Scanderbeg*, on the ſcore of his great skill in Military affairs. 2. *Staniſſa*. 3. *Conſtantine*, and 4. *George*, called after *Scanderbeg*. His Daughters were *Jalla* or *Angela*, the Mother of *Goicus* and *George Streſs*. 2. *Angelina*, married to *Vlademus Golam*, Brother of *Arian Comnenus*. 2. *Vlaika*, the Wife of *John Muſak*. 3. *Mara* Married to *Stephen Cernovich*. 4. *Mamizoza*, Married to *Muſaco Topia*, by her Brother *Scanderbeg*, who was ſlain in a Battle againſt the Turks.

4. *George Caſtriot* or *Scanderbeg*, as he was called by *Sultan Amurath*, when he was Circumciſed by his order. The greatneſs of this Princes mind, and the Military and his Civil Prudence, together with his other rare Virtues and endowments elevated him to the Dignity of a Throne, and he was always called King of *Albania* and *Epirus*. He not only defended his Kingdom againſt the Turks, but very often overthrew their numerous Armies. He died in the year 1463, or as *Barlet* ſaith, the 17th of *January* 1467, being then 63 years old. He Married *Donica* or *Andronia* the Daughter of *Arian Comnenus*, Lord of *Buareſc* and *Terra-Nova* in *Albania*; and by her amongſt other Children, he had *John Caſtriot*, Duke of St. *Peter's* in *Galatina*, and *Voiſſava*, Wife of *Stephen Naramont*, Duke of *Mons-Niger*.

5. *John Caſtriot* his Son, ſeeing *Albania* and *Epirus*, after his Fathers Death wholly Conquered by the Turks, went to *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, and from him obtained the Dukedom of St. *Peters*. He Married *Irenes* the Daughter of *Lazarus Brancovitz* Deſpot of *Servia*; by her he had *Ferdinand* Duke of St. *Peters*. 2. *George Caſtriot* ſirnamed *Scanderbeg*, who died in the year 1540. And was the Father of *Ferdinand Caſtriot*. 3. *Conſtantin Caſtriot* Biſhop of *Eſſernia*. He had alſo a Daughter called *Mary*, who died in 1540.

6. *Ferdinand Caſtriot* Duke of St. *Peters*, Married a Daughter of *Boniface de Aqua Viva*, Duke *di Nardena*, and by her had *Achilles*, *Frederick Alphonſus*, *Paul*, *John* and *Ferdinand*, who all died without any Iſſue. He had alſo a Daughter named *Irenes Caſtriot*, which carried the Dutchy of St. *Peters* into the Family of St. *Severina*, by Marrying *Petro Antonio*, Prince *Di Biſigniano*, who had *Beradino* a Son dead without Iſſue, and *Victoria* a Daughter Married to *Ferdinando di Capua*, Duke of *Termini*.

From this Family are alſo derived the Dukes of *Ferrandina* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. Three of which are named in the Hiſtories of that Kingdom, *John Caſtriot* Duke of *Fertrandino*, *Alphonſo* Marquiſs *di Atripalda*, and *Ferdinando* Marquiſs *di* St. *Angelo*.

John Caſtriot the firſt Duke of *Ferrandina*, Married firſt *Joanna* the Daughter of *Honoratus Cajetan*, Duke *di Trajetto*, and Count *di Fondi*, by whom he had but *Mary* the Heireſs of the Dutchy *di Ferrandina*, and of the Earldoms of *Galatolia*, *Veglia Covertina*, and *Leverani*.

Alphonſo Marquiſs *di Atrapalda*, Married *Camila di Coſaza*, and had by her *Antony* and *John*.

Ferdinando Caſtriot Marquiſs *di* St. *Angelo*, Married *Camila Capuana*. They had Iſſue, *Joanna* and *Hippolita*. *Joanna* Married.

Antonio Caſtriot, Duke *di Ferrandina*, he was ſlain in a Quarrel at *Venice*, and neither he nor his Lady had any Iſſue.

Hippolita Caſtriot, Wife of *Hector Montaquila*. *Joannella Caſtriot*, Wife of *Octavio Capaci*, a *Neopolitan* Noble-man.

Roctuus Pirrus, mentions *Bernard Caſtriot*, Count of *Galatina* and *Capertina*, the Father of *John* Biſhop of *Mazara* in *Sicily*, about the year 1485. There have been ſome of this Line alſo in the Nobility of *Venice*.

5. *MACEDONIA*.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with *Mœſia Superior* and a part of *Thrace*, and on the South with *Epirus* and *Achaia*.

It was firſt called *Æmonia*, from Mount *Hæmus*, which ſhutteth up that ſide hereof which is towards *Mœſia*; after *Æmathia*, or *Emathia*, from a King of it called *Amathus*; *Macedonia*, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the Father of *Caranus*, the firſt King of the Line of *Alexander*; and finally *Kittim*, or the Land of *Kethiim*, whereof ſee 1. *Maccab*. 1. 1. and 8. 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*; who was planted here. Anciently it was of more large extent then it is at the preſent, extending from the *Ægaan* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath ſtreightned it upon that ſide, but the reſt is as formerly.

The Country taking it together; is very fruitful and pleaſant, tho' on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough Mountains and thick Forreſts: in former times much celebrated for its Mines of Gold and Silver, which are long ſince exhauſted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Æmathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelaſgia*, *Iſtiaotis*, *Phthiotis*, *Theſſaly*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of leſs note, inhabited by 152 ſeveral Nations: now principally divided (beſides *Albania*) into 1. *Theſſaly*, 2. *Macedon* ſpecially ſo called, and 3. *Mygdonia*, which the Turks called *Jamboli*.

1. *THESSALY* hath on the Eaſt the *Ægaan* Sea, on the Weſt *Albania*, on the North *Macedon* and *Mygdonia*, on the South *Achaia*. A ſweet and delectable Country it is, the Pleaſures and Delights whereof inclined the People to be very effeminate and diſſolute in their courſe of Life, made them in love with Luxury and Eaſe, and much like the *Perſians* in Behaviour, whoſe Entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithſtanding this Debauchedneſs, they were eſteemed the beſt Horſemen of all the *Gracians*; by their excellent managing of which creature, (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horſe their Minds, or borrowed his Body) they gave occaſion unto the Fiction of the *Centaurs*, half Men, half Beaſts.

It is now called *Comenolitari*, and of old was very famous for many things, eſpecially 1. for the Hill *Olympus* of ſo great height, that it ſeemeth to tranſcend the Clouds, and is therefore frequently by the Poets uſed for Heaven it ſelf. 2. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapitha*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. 3. for the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Oſſa*, the Dwelling-places of the *Centaurs*, who intending to raviſh *Hippodamia*, the new Bride of *Pirithous*, on her Wedding-day, were ſlain by *Hercules* and the *Lapitha*. 4. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, ſituate betwixt *Oſſa* and *Olympus*, extending in length ſix miles, and five in breadth; ſo beautified with Natures Gifts, that it was ſuppoſed to be the Garden of the *Muſes*. 5. and laſtly; For the *Dolopes* and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had Command at the Siege of *Troy*: theſe laſt, by reaſon that they were a laborious and thrifty People, being fabled by the Poets to have firſt been Emmets, transformed into Men at the Prayer of *Æacus*, when he wanted Soldiers.

——— Mores quos ante tenebant
Nunc quoq; habent; parcum genus eſt, patienſq; laborum
Quæſitique tenax, & quod quæſita reſervet.

The cuſtom they of Emmets ſtill retain,
  A ſparing Folk, and unto Labour ſet,
Strangely addicted to all kind of Gain,
  And wary Keepers of what e'er they get.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Trica*, the Epiſcopal See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious Piece called the *Æthiopick Hiſtory*; which he ſo prized, that he choſe rather to loſe his Biſhoprick than conſent to the burning of his Book, which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A Piece indeed of rare Contexture and neat Contrivances, without any touch of looſe or laſcivious Language; honeſt and chaſt Affection being the Subject of it, not ſuch as old or modern Poets ſhew us in their Comedies or other Poems. For here we have no Inceſtuous mixture of Fathers and Daughters, no Pandariſm of old Nurſes, no unſeemly Action ſpecified where heat of Blood and Opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one paſſage unworthy of the chaſteſt Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians*, after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their Freedoms, beſieged *Antipater*: Which was the laſt honourable Enterpriſe undertaken by that great and renowned City, known in old Hiſtories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Lariſſa*, ſituate on the South of *Demetrias*, but on the ſame Bay; memorable for the Birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Lariſſæus Achilles* which Birth of his is aſcribed by others to the Town of *Phthia*, (from whence the Region called *Phthiotis* takes the denomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account: And poſſibly, being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his Birth, and the other of his Habitation. This City is ſeated upon the River *Peneo*, Twenty-five Miles from the Bay of *Theſſalonica* to the Weſt, and from *Pharſalus* to the South, and Two hundred from *Conſtantinople* to the South-Weſt. It is now an Archbiſhop's See, and of late was one of the moſt flouriſhing Cities of *Greece*, *Mahomet* the Fourth keeping his Court there for almoſt Twenty years together, out of Averſion for *Conſtantinople*. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown* who ſaw it ſaith, It is ſeated on a riſing Ground, on the higheſt part of which ſtands the Palace, and on the North of it the famous Mountain of *Olympus*, and on the South lies a plain Country. It is inhabited by *Chriſtians*, *Jews* and *Turks*. There is a handſom Stone-bridge over the River, conſiſting of nine Arches. The City at that time was very populous by reaſon the Sultan was there, yet kept in great quiet by the Officers who were appointed for that purpoſe. This Author ſaw it in the year 1669. 4. *Demetrias*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus* (now *Golfo dell' Armiro*) of very great ſtrength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Iſle of *Eubœa*, now *Negropont*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all *Greece* in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*; the *Gracians* never thinking themſelves at liberty till thoſe Towns were diſmantled by the *Romans*. It ſtands upon the Bay of *Volo*, anciently called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, and is now called by ſome *Dimitriada*, by others *Dimitrado*, and is at this day a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Lariſſa*. Upon this Bay ſtands alſo the Town of *Volo*, which gives it its preſent name; in more ancient times it was called *Pagaſa*, and is built after the Antique way with round Towers. The *Turks* in the year 1655 having made great Preparations here for the War of *Candia*, the *Venetians* attack'd and took the place, and after they had carried away all that was worth the taking, they diſmantell'd, burnt, and blew up all its Works, as much as in them lay, not leaving any thing ſtanding to invite the *Turks* to repair it. See *Coronelli*. 5. *Pharſalus*, nigh to which was fought the great Battel betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey* for the Sovereignty of the *Roman* Empire. A Battel more famous than bloody, 6000 only of 300000 which were in the Field on both ſides, being therein ſlain. A Battel before which the *Pompeians* were in ſuch a miſerable Security, that ſome of them contended for the chief Prieſthood, which was *Cæſar*'s Office: others diſpoſed of the Conſulſhip and Preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himſelf being ſo wretchleſs, that he neither conſidered into what place it were beſt to fly if he loſt the day, or by what means he might provide for his own Safety, and end the War; as if the War had been made againſt ſome ignoble Enemy, and not againſt that *Cæſar* who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took Priſoners One million of Men, and ſlain as many. 6. *Philippi*, ſo named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the firſt Founder of it; ſituate in the farther part of the ſame Plains of *Pharſalia*, and famous for as memorable a Battel as that before, and of no leſs conſequence: that namely betwixt *Auguſtus* and *M. Antonius* on the one ſide, againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the other; theſe latter being rather overcome by Chance than Valour. For either of them (thinking the other vanquiſhed) ſlew himſelf in the Field; being the two laſt that ever openly ſtood out for the common Liberty, and are therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum*, or the laſt of the true *Roman* Spirits. 7. *Gomphi*, a very ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Phera*, in which City *Alexander* the Tyrant reigned, againſt whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting was ſlain in Battel: The Tyrant being not long after Murthered by his Wife's Brother, and by that means all *Theſſaly* recovering Liberty. 9. *Pegaſa*, or *Pagaſa*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, which from hence is ſometimes named *Pegaſum*; in which the Ship called *Argo* was ſaid to be built, ſo famous for the renowned Voyage of the *Argonauts*. The Hill *Pelion* ſpoken of before is not far from hence. 10. *Pithyon*, or *Pitheum*, of great note (according to ſome) for the *Pythian* Games there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: The Conquerors in which Games were crowned at the firſt only with an Oaken Garland, but afterwards with one of Lawrel. Of which thus the Poet.

Neve operis famam poſſet obolere Vetuſtas,
Inſtituit ſacros celebri certamine Ludos,
Pythia *de domiti Serpentis nomina dictas, &c.*

Thus made to ſpeak *Engliſh* by *G. Sandys*;
  Then leſt the well-deſerved memory
  Of ſuch an Act in future time ſhould die,
  He inſtituted the ſo-famous Games
  Of free Contention, which he *Pythia* names,
  Who Ran, who Wreſtled beſt, or rak'd the Ground
  With ſwifteſt Wheels, the Oaken Garland crown'd.

Theſe Games, together with the *Olympick*, *Iſthmian* and *Nemean*, ſpoken of before, made the four annual Meetings amongſt the *Gracians*, renowned for the univerſal Concourſe of the nobleſt Spirits. 11. *Dolicha*, which, together with *Pytheum*; and, 12. *Azorum*, another City of this Tract, ſtanding near together, are called in *Livius* the Hiſtorian by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the Metropolis of *Theſſaly*, ſo called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick* Hiſtory before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliachus*, now *Golfo di Ziton* and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: Upon which Mountain *Hercules*, being tortured with a poiſoned Shirt ſent by his innocent Wife *Dejanira*, is ſaid to have burned himſelf; thence called *Hercules Getaus.* Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Paſaga* and *Oemetrius*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Lariſſa*, *Dolyche*, *Pytheum* and *Azorum*, in that called *Pelaſgia*; *Gomphi* and *Tricca*, in *Iſtiæotis*; the reſt in *Theſſalie* properly and ſpecially ſo named.

This Country, at firſt called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelaſgia*, then *Pyrrhæa*, from *Pyrrha* the Wife of *Deucalion*, and finally *Theſſalia*, from *Theſſalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Pliny* is called *Dryopis*, *Eſtiotis* by *Strabo*, *Pelaſgia* by *Diodorus*, and by *Homer Argos*; the name of ſome chief City or particular Province being figuratively uſed for the whole. It was divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Theſſaliotis*, 2. *Iſtiæotis*, 3. *Pelaſgiotis*, and, 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Theſſalie*, or *Theſſaliotis* in the end prevailing; and accordingly diſtributed into ſeveral Governments, united finally in the perſon of *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by Force, but eſpecially by Art and Practice, made himſelf Maſter of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and ſubject under the *Macedonian* Kings of the ſecond Race, it became ſubject with that Kingdom to the State of *Rome*: Firſt reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*; after a Province of it ſelf, when *Macedon* was made a Dioceſe, part of which it was. But from a Province of that Dioceſe, and a Member of the Eaſtern Empire, it was made a Kingdom; given with that Title to *Boniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*, in exchange for *Candia*, together with the City of *Theſſalonica*, and ſome part of *Peloponneſus*, at the Diviſion of that Empire amongſt the *Latines*; which Title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Theſſalie* by the Emperor *Emanuel*, whoſe Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife: In him as it began, ſo this Title ended; *Theſſalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theſſaly* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom it was ſubdued, and added to the *Turkiſh* Empire, in the Reign of *Amurath* the Second, *Anno* 1432.

2. *MACEDON* ſpecially ſo called is bounded on the Eaſt with *Migdonia*, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hemus*, on the South with *Theſſalie*. The Country is for the moſt part fruitful as before was ſaid, but not ſurfeiting with Delights as to make the People wanton or effeminate in their Courſe of Life; they being naturally good Soldiers, exact obſervers of Military Diſcipline, and inured to Hardneſs, which their many ſignal Victories do moſt clearly evidence both in *Greece* and *Aſia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own Wits reckoned them amongſt the barbarous Nations; and yet, by a ſtrange kind of contradiction aſcribe unto their Country the Seats of the *Muſes*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimpla*, with a Fountain of the ſame name at the Foot thereof, both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here alſo was the Hill *Libethrus*, and the Province of *Pieria*; from whence the *Muſes* had the names of *Libethrides* and *Pierides*; by this laſt called more frequently than by any other name whatever, eſpecially by the *Greeks* themſelves. But the Birth of *Ariſtotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Grecians* of this fooliſh Arrogance than all the *Muſes* in the World. A Man ſo admirable in the general courſe of Learning, ſo univerſally comprehenſive of all Arts and Sciences, that the beſt witted *Grecian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great Happineſs, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children to be tutoured by him.

The principal Rivers hereof (beſides *Erigon* and *Aliacmon* ſpoken of before) are, 1. *Axius*, at preſent called *Vardari*, riſing out of the Hill *Scardus*, a Branch of Mount *Hæmus*, and paſſing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*; or the Gulf of *Theſſalonica* as it is now named: The faireſt River of theſe parts, and of ſweeteſt Water; but ſuch as maketh all the Cattel black which drink of it. 2. *Chabrius*, 3. *Echedorus*; both riſing out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the ſame Bay alſo. Beſides which there are other three fair and capacious Bays aſcribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to ſay, *Singiticus*, now *Golfo di monte ſanto*, and *Toronaicus*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Aiomana*, and the third common unto *Thrace* alſo, which is *Sinus Strymonicus*, now the Bay of *Conteſa*.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopi*, 1. *Horma*, called afterwards *Seleucia*; 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*; 3. *Apſalus*, of *Sintica*; 4. *Triſtolus*; 5. *Paræcopolis*; 6. *Gariſcus*; 7. *Heraclea*, for diſtinction called *Heraclea Sintica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis*, bordering toward *Thrace*; 8. *Scotuſa*; 9. *Berga*; 10. *Amphypolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which it is encompaſſed, whence it had the name; ſeated ſo cloſe on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is queſtionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garriſoned by the *Athenians*, and from them taken by *Philip* the *Macedonian* in the firſt riſe of his Fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* alſo, and by ſome Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneouſly: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned; by whom it was called *Philippi*; and ſituate in a Country ſo rich in Mines of Gold, that the ſaid *Philip* drew hence yearly 1000 Talents, which make 600000 *French* Crowns or 140000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* Money. Afterwards made a *Roman* Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the People of which S. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. Next in *Æmethia* we have, 12. *Tyriſſa* in the Mid-lands, bordering upon *Theſſaly*, now called *Cereſi*. 13. *Ædeſſa*, called afterwards *Ægæa*, and now *Vodena*; the firſt Town of all this Country taken by *Caranaus*, the Founder of the firſt Race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Beræa*, on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the Preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by S. *Luke* commended for their readineſs in receiving the Goſpel. 15. *Pella*, on the ſame Bay alſo; the Birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellæus*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the ſame Bay, at the Influx of the River *Aliacmon*; in which *Caſſander* beſieged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Alexander* the Heir apparent of *Alexander*, all whom he barbarouſly murthered. This Cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himſelf of *Alexander*, who had once knock'd his Head and the Wall together, and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly Murthered *Aridæus* the baſe Son of *Philip* and *Eurydice* his Wife, with whom *Caſſander* was ſuppoſed to be over-familiar. Memorable alſo is this Town for the great Battel fought near it betwixt *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon* and *P. Æmilius* the Conſul, in which *Perſeus* having ſhamefully deſerted his Army, loſt both the Battel and his Kingdom, with no leſs than 20000 of his Foot, which were therein ſlain; the *Romans* having ſo cheap a Victory, that it coſt them not above an Hundred or Sixſcore Men. 17. *Dium*, not far from the Hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea, of which mile the River *Helicon*, becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphyrus*, taketh up one half. It is ſituate in the Borders towards *Theſſaly*; the way unto it out of *Tempe* being ſtreight and narrow, and almoſt impaſſable, by reaſon of the Spurs of the Mountains running overthwart it: which, had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted. But *Perſeus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his Treaſure out of *Dium*, and ſo abandoned both the Paſſage and the Town together. 18. *Phylace*, more within the Land; as is, 19. *Eribæa*. But theſe four laſt are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the Eaſt the *Ægæan* Sea, on the Weſt *Macedon* properly and eſpecially ſo called,

on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strymonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Theſſalonica*; ſo that it is almoſt a *Peninſula*, environed on three ſides with Water.

Here is in this Country the Hill *Athos*, ſtanding in a *Peninſula*, (the *Iſthmus* being once cut through by *Xerxes* but ſince cloſed again) ſaid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long,half a day's in breadth,reſembling the ſhape of a Man lying with his Face upwards: the higheſt point whereof, covered perpetually with Snow, is ſaid to caſt a Shadow as far as *Lemnos*. It is exceeding fruitful both in Graſs, Fruit, Oyl, and Wine, and wondrous plentiful in Hares, according to that of *Ovid*.

Quot Lepores Atho, *quot Apes paſcuntur in* Hybla.

How many Hares on *Athos* feed,
What ſwarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed?

It is Inhabited only by *Greek* Monks, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of S. *Baſil*, to whom the Hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long ſince dedicated: the place being ſo privileged by the Grand-Seigniour, that neither *Turk* nor *Gracian* may inhabit in it, except ſuch *Gracians* only as profeſs this life. Of theſe there are about 6000, diſperſed in 42 Monaſteries, built after a military manner, for fear of Thieves and Pirates; wherewith they were much infeſted in times paſt: frequented with great Concourſe of People coming thither to behold and adore ſome Reliques, (for which they are of much eſteem) the free Oblations of thoſe Pilgrims, and ſome Benevolence from the Turks, which do much reſpect them, being the chief means of their Subſiſtence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient Eremites: poorly clad, their Shirts of Woollen, which they both ſpin and weave themſelves; none of them idle at any time, doing ſtill ſomewhat for their Livelihood, and the advancement of the Houſe of which they are, as dreſſing Vines, felling Timber, yea and building Ships. Few of them give themſelves to Study, and ſome of them are of ſo groſs Ignorance, that they can neither Write nor Read. They are bound by their Order to lodge and entertain ſuch Strangers as have occaſion to paſs that way, according to their Rank and Calling; and that of free Coſt too, if it be deſired.

Towns of moſt note, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, are, for *Mygdonia* ſpecially and properly ſo called, 1. *Antigonia*, ſo called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the firſt Founder of it. 2. *Xylopolis*. 3. *Terpillus*. 4. *Phyſco*. 5. *Aſſorus*. All mentioned by *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 6. *Apollonia*, for diſtinction ſake called *Apollonia Mygdonia*, to difference it from *Apollonia in Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the Studies of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here learned the *Greek* Tongue. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7. *Arethuſa*; 8. *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the Birth of *Ariſtotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9. *Theſſalonica*, ſituate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*,by the name of the Town. Anciently the Metropolis or Head City of *Macedon*; the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as alſo of the Primate of the *Greek* Church, who reſided here. To the people of this City did St. *Paul* write two of his Epiſtles, It continued in great power and credit till the Fall of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was beſtowed firſt on *Boniface* Marquiſs of *Montferrat*, the new King of *Theſſaly*; after whoſe death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when it was forced by *Amurath* the ſecond to become Turkiſh. Which notwithſtanding, it ſtill preſerves the Reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by Rich Merchants, who drive here a great Trade, eſpecially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for Beauty, Riches and Magnificence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the Turks and Jews make the greateſt number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the uſe of Chriſtians. As for the Jews, they ſwarm here in ſuch great abundance, that in this City and that of *Conſtantinople* only there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all ſorts of People. In the year of Chriſt 390, The Inhabitants of this City having committed ſome Inſolencies againſt *Theodoſius* the Great, that Prince Ordered a Military revenge, in which there Periſhed 7000 of its People. In the year 895, it was taken and ſack'd by the *Sarazens*. In the year 1423, it was ſold to the *Venetians*, from whom it was Raviſh'd ſoon after by *Amurath* the ſecond, as our Author ſaith. In the year 1688, the *Venetian* Fleet began the Campaign with the Bombing this City, a conſiderable part of which was by that means burnt. *Coronelli* ſaith, the Walls of this City are flank'd with Towers, and are about 10 miles in compaſs, and it has beſides three Forts. It has many Inhabitants, the moſt of which are Jews, yet it has 48 Moſques, 30 Chriſtian Churches, and 36 great Synagogues, and many ſmaller. 10. *Siderocapſa*, of old called *Chryſites*, remarkable for its Mines of Gold and Silver; ſo beneficial to the Turk, that he received hence monthly 18000, and ſometimes 30000 Crowns *de claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port-Town. 12. *Stratonica*, in the *Peninſula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Atho* or *Athoſa*, in the ſame *Peninſula*, with a Promontory of the ſame name, nigh which it ſtood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called *Eriſſo*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in *Paraxia* we have 15. *Ampelus*. 16. *Torona*, giving name to the Bay adjoyning, called anciently *Sinus Toronaicus*, now *Golfo di Aiomania*. 17. *Caſſandra*, on the Sea-ſide, ſo called from *Caſſander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidæa*. 18. *Derris*. 19. *Merillus*. 20. *Pallene*, ſituate in the Cherſoneſe or Demi-Iſland called *Patalene*, and by ſome *Patalia*: formerly conſecrated to the *Muſes*, but before that infamous for the War which the Giants are fabled to have made here againſt the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the Fields adjoyning *Campi Phlegræi*, in which this great Battle is ſuppoſed to be fought. The occaſion of the Fable was, (as both *Theagenes* and *Eudoxus* do expound the ſame). That the Inhabitants hereof in thoſe elder times, being men of a moſt impious and inſolent Life, got the name of Giants; whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to ſubdue and reduce to Reaſon, it happened that there fell a great Tempeſt of Thunder and Lightning, by which they were conſtrained to fly and ſubmit themſelves. Hence the Report that thoſe Giants made War againſt the Gods. Others have placed theſe *Phlegæan* Fields in *Theſſaly*, and perhaps more probably.Certain I am,that ſome place nearer to the Hills of *Pelion*, *Oſſa* and *Olympus*, doth agree beſt with it: if at leaſt *Ovid* were not out in his Narration, who makes thoſe Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the Skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the ſaying is. For thus that Poet;

Affectaſſe ferunt regnum cæleſte Gigantes,
Altaque congeſtos ſtruxiſſe ad Sidera Montes.
At pater omnipotens miſſo perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excuſſit ſubjectum Pelion Oſſæ.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words;

The Giants once the Throne of Heaven affected,
And Hills on Hills unto the Stars erected:
Till *Jove* with Thunder high *Olympus* brake,
And *Pelion* did from under *Oſſa* take.

But from thoſe Fables to proceed to more real Stories. This Country was firſt peopled by *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, paſſing over out of *Aſia minor*; in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Citium*,ſpoken of by *Livie l.* 42. but the whole Land of *Macedon* is in the Book of *Maccabees* called the Land of *Chettiim*, 1. *Maccab.* 1. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Citims* in the 8. Chapter of the ſame Book, v. 5. Spreading in tract of time from one Sea to another, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, ſome Colonies of them paſſed from hence to *Italy*, and firſt inhabited that Country, as hath there been ſaid. Such as continued in thoſe parts, divided unto ſeveral Tribes, as in all parts elſe, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*. A People not much taken notice of in former times, living a poor and painful Life, Goatherds and Shepherds for the moſt part, ſcarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next Invader, much leſs to dream of Conquering either *Greece* or *Perſia*: And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him ſpoken in paſſion, and to their Diſgrace) that *his Eather* Philip *had firſt made them Gentlemen.* For *Philip* having learned the Rudiments of War under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hoſtage with the *Thebans*) and by that means becoming acquainted with the Temper and State of *Geeece*, not only freed his own Kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the Factions raiſed amongſt the *Gracians*, (which he knew how to feed and cheriſh for his own improvement) brought them at firſt wholly to rely upon him, and after to be ſubject to him. Inſomuch that never any Monarchy had a ſwifter growth nor a more ſpeedy Diſſolution: there paſſing not full 40 years from the firſt of *Philip* to the laſt of *Alexander*, in which ſpace it was both begun, perfected, and broken to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in Murther, Perjury, and Treaſon, as at firſt it was, was never likely to be bleſſed with a long Continuance.

The Kings of *MACEDON*.

A. M.	
3155	1. *Caranaus* 28.
3183	2. *Cœnus* 12.
3195	3. *Tyrimas* 38.
3233	4. *Perdiccas* 51.
3284	5. *Argeus* 38.
3322	6. *Philippus* 38.
3360	7. *Europus* 26.
3386	8. *Alcetas* 29.
3415	9. *Amyntas* 50.
3465	10. *Alexander* 43.
3508	11. *Perdiccas* II. 28.
3536	12. *Archelaus*.
3560	13. *Oreſtes* 3.
3563	14. *Archelaus* II. 4.
3567	15. *Pauſanias* 1.
3568	16. *Amyntas* II. 6.
3574	17. *Argeus* II. 1.
3575	18. *Amyntas* III. 19.
3594	19. *Alexander* II. 1.
3595	20. *Alorites* 4.
3599	21. *Perdiccas* III. 6.
3605	22. *Philip* II. 24.
3629	23. *Alexander* the Great.
	24. *Aridœus*. 6.

Of theſe 24 Kings only 6 are famous, *viz.* 1 *Carmanaus*, the firſt King, originally of *Argos*, of the Race of *Hercules*, and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the firſt Flock of Cattle he ſaw before him. Being here arrived in a tempeſtuous ſtormy day, he eſpied a Herd of Goats flying the fury of the Weather: Theſe Goats he followed unto *Ædeſſa*, into which by reaſon of the darkneſs of the Air, he entred undiſcovered, won the Town, and in ſhort ſpace became Lord of all the Country. On which occaſion as the Goat afterwards became the Arms and Enſign of the Kings of *Macedon*, ſo by that Beaſt thoſe Kings were figuratively deſigned in the Holy Scripture; of which ſee *Dan.* 8. 5. 21. 2. *Perdiccas*, the 4th King, who at *Ægœ* built a Burial-place for all his Succeſſors, aſſuring his People, that as long as their Kings were there Buried, his Race ſhould never fail: and ſo it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the Great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was tranſlated to the Sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a Cradle againſt the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious: This the *Macedons* did, either becauſe they thought they could not be beaten, their King being preſent; or perſwading themſelves that there was none ſo void of Honour and Compaſſion as to abandon an Infant, no way able to ſave himſelf from Deſtruction but by the Valour and Fidelity of his Servants. 4. *Alexander* the Son of *Amyntas*, famous for a notable Exploit on the *Perſian* Embaſſadors; who being ſent from *Megabyzus*, requeſted a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No ſooner were they entred, but *petulantius eas* Perſis *contrectantibus*, as *Juſtine* relateth the Story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, ſending in their ſteads young Springals maidenly attired, who, upon the like Indignities offered, ſlew theſe effeminate *Aſians*. After which he behaved himſelf ſo diſcreetly, that the *Perſian* Monarch gave him all *Greece* between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. 5. *Philip*, Father to *Alexander*, who governed firſt as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the Son of *Perdiccas* his elder Brother; but afterwards took unto himſelf both the Kingdom and Title of King, which he continued in the Depoſition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the Murther of the reſt of his Brethren, and the Deſtruction of all ſuch as oppoſed his practice. But, being otherwiſe a man of approved Abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*, ſubdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponneſus*, and was choſen general of the *Greeks* againſt the *Perſians*. But as ſoon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was ſlain by one *Pauſanias*, a young Gentleman whom he had formerly abuſed in the heat of his unnatural Luſt. 6. *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, who recovered ſuch parts of *Greece* as on the death of his Father had befooled themſelves with a hope of Liberty. He ſubdued *Darius* the great King of *Perſia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Gracians*; and in the height of his Succeſſes was poiſoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Caſſander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 Talents yearly. After his death his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of Succeſſion, he himſelf dying without lawful Iſſue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him who was thought moſt worthy by his Army: and his Soldiers, according to their ſeveral Affections and Relations, thought their own Leaders moſt deſerving. At laſt the Title of King (and in effect nothing but the Title) was by conſent of the Commanders caſt on *Aridæus*, a Baſtard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector, (for *Aridæus* was a little crazed in his Brain) and to be General of the Army: by whoſe deſign he was alſo married to *Eurydice*, Daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before diſpoſſeſſed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces they were aſſigned unto the Government of the chief Commanders, *viz.* *Ægypt* to *Ptolemy*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia* and *Phrygia major* to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Caſſander*, *Lydia* to *Menander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Aſſyria* to *Seleucus*, *Perſis* to *Peuceſtes*, *Thrace* to *Lyſimachus*, and *Macedon* it ſelf unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Perſian* Empire being left to them unto whoſe hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this Diviſion held not long: for *Perdiccas* being once ſlain by *Ptolomy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, theſe two became quickly too great for the reſt; *Ptolomy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his Command not only all *Aſia minor*, but *Aſſyria*, *Media* and almoſt all the Eaſtern parts of the *Perſian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time, ſucceeding in the Protectorſhip, baniſhed *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a Step-dames love unto *Aridæus*. But he being dead ſhe returned out of *Epirus*, (the place of her Baniſhment) into *Macedonia*, where raiſing a ſtrong Party amongſt the People, ſhe put *Aridæus* and his Wife *Euridice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander* the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*; both ſlain not long after by *Caſſander* the Son of *Antipater*, who to make ſure work, murthered alſo with the like Cruelty *Hercules*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Barſine*, (another *Perſian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the laſt Survivor of that Houſe. And ſo the Royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himſelf the Title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Perſian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolomy* in *Ægypt*; and *Caſſander* in *Macedon*.

The ſecond Race of the *MACEDON* Kings.

A.M.

3648 1. *Caſſander*, Son of *Antipater*, ſuppoſed to have been the Poiſoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the Blood-Royal of *Macedon*. His Reign was full of Troubles and Difficulties. 19.

3667 2. *Alexander* and *Antipater*, Sons to *Caſſander*, but not well agreeing, called unto their Aid *Lyſimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in ſhort time murthered. 4.

3671 3. *Demetrius*, Son to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Aſia*, after he had in one Battle againſt *Seleucus* loſt both his Father and all his *Aſian* Dominions, ſettled himſelf in *Macedon*, but there being outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him died. 6.

3677 4. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, was by his Soldiers, voluntarily forſaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*: but after 7 months the Soldiers revolted to *Lyſimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born. 1.

3678 5. *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquiſh'd and ſlain by *Seleucus*, the laſt Survivor of *Alexander*'s Captains. 7.

3685 6. *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, Son to *Ptolomy* of *Ægypt*, having traiterouſly ſlain his Friend and Patron *Seleucus*, ſeiſed on *Macedon*: but loſt it, together with his Life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued theſe Countries. After whoſe Death this Kingdom, being diſtracted amongſt many Competitors, ſettled at laſt upon

3687 7. *Antigonus Gonatus*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who for his Valour ſhewn in expulſing the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italy*; yet after the Death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his Eſtate, but was outed once again by *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 36.

3723 8. *Demetrius* II. Son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 10.

3733 9. *Antigonus* II. ſirnamed *Doſon*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young Son *Philip*, uſurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquiſhed and cruſhed the *Grecians*, beginning then to caſt off the Yoak of *Macedon*. 12.

3745 10. *Philip*, the Son of *Demetrius*. 42.

3787 11. *Perſeus*, the Son of *Philip*, the laſt King of *Macedon*. The Subverſion of which Eſtate was firſt begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Æsolians* and other of the *Greeks* whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection, but ſided with *Hannibal* againſt them. Upon which grounds they ſent firſt *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Conſuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquiſhed at the Battel of *Cunoſcephalos*, and his Kingdom made Tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a Quarrel againſt *Perſeus* alſo, managed with variable Succeſs by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders, they diſpatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to abſolute Subjection. Who ſped ſo well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perſeus* led Captive unto *Rome*, *Anno* 3789. In which Triumph, beſides the Pomp of leading a Captive King in Bonds, *Æmilius* cauſed the ready Money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carried in 750 Veſſels, every Veſſel containing three Talents; which made ſo infinite a Sum, that the *Roman* People were free for many Years after from all Taxes and Impoſitions. *A.M.* 3789.

Macedon, thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to ſay, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris*, and *Prævalitana*, in the new Model of *Conſtantine* became a Dioceſe, the Dioceſs hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *Old* and *New Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greateſt part of *Salutaris*; the reſidue of *Salutaris* and *Prævalitana* (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the Dioceſe of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eaſtern Empire till towards the laſt fatal Diſſolution of it; though many times haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Raſſes*, and other of the barbarous People, at their ſeveral Invaſions of it. Finally, it was conquered by the *Turks*, firſt, under the Conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonicus* now the Bay of *Conteſa*, in the year of *Chriſt* 1392. and after under *Amurath* the ſecond, their ſixth King, making themſelves Maſters of *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country, in the year 1429. By reaſon of which many Invaſions and laſt Deſolation by the *Turks*, there is ſcarce one of all thoſe many Cities before mention'd now of any eminence, except *Theſſalonica* only; the reſt being miſerably deſtroyed. And for the Country it ſelf, it is governed by a *Turkiſh Sanzach*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*; his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing elſe required of him than to maintain an 100 Horſe in ordinary pay for defence of his Province, and to find 400 Horſe on extraordinary occaſions, as the Grand Seignior ſhall command him.

6. *THRACE.*

THRACE hath on the Eaſt *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and the *Helleſpont*; on the Weſt *Bulgaria* and *Macedon*; on the North the Hill *Hæmus*, which parts it from *Bulgaria*; on the South the *Ægean* Sea and part of *Macedon*. It is a very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days Journey in length, and 7 days Journey in breadth; and, in relation to the Heavens, reaching unto the 44 Degree of the Northern Latitude; ſo that the longeſt Day in Summer is about 15 Hours three quarters.

By ſeveral Men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Sthephanus*, *Aria*; by *Suidas*, *Odriſia*; by *Lycophron*, *Creſtonia*; by ſome Writers *Scythia*; by *Joſephus* the *Hebrew*, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that, as ſome, from *Thrax* the Son of *Mars*, as others, from *Thracia*, an Inchantreſs: More probably from the Ferity and barbarous Condition of the firſt Inhabitants, the Name in the Original *Greek* bearing that conſtruction:

ction: Moſt likely from *Thyras*, the Son of *Japhet*, who firſt planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Joſephus*; beſides many other Footſteps and Remembrances of him in the Names of many of their Towns, and ſome of their Princes; of which we have already ſpoken in our General Preface. Finally, by the Turks it is called *Romania*; either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here, or becauſe *Conſtantinople*, the chief City of it, was anciently called *Nova Roma*; and by that name it is now called in moſt modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich Soil nor a pleaſant Air: The Corn and other Fruits, by reaſon of the coldneſs of the Climate, leiſurely ripening; the Vines yielding more Shade than Juice, and the Trees for the moſt part more Leaves than Fruit: Yet in ſome parts there be many large and goodly Plains, where they reap good ſtore of Corn, but of Pulſe eſpecially; and towards the Sea-ſide they have plenty of Wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for ſtrength and goodneſs.

The People anciently were very bold and valiant, and called by ſome Αὐτονόμοι, becauſe every Man was *a Law to himſelf*. So that it was truly ſaid by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one Mind, or under one King, they had been invincible. Of Manners they were rude and ſavage, ſomewhat near to bruitiſhneſs; buying their Wives, and ſelling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open Market: In that ſince imitated by the Turks, who poſſeſs their Country. The Men were more couragious than comely, wearing Clothes according to their Conditions, ragged and unſeemly. The Married Woman were in love to their Husbands ſo conſtant, that they willingly ſacrificed themſelves at their Funerals. The Virgins were beſtowed not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither Beauty nor Vertue for their Dowry, were put off according to their Money; moſt times ſold as other Cattel in the Markets. In matters of Religion they worſhip ped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: Swearing eſpecially by the firſt, from whom they bragged themſelves to have been deſcended. But their chief National Deity was one *Zamolxes*, ſometimes a Native of this Country, who, having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, preſcribed them good and wholeſome Laws; aſſuring them, that, if they did obſerve the ſame, they ſhould go unto a place when they left this World in which they ſhould enjoy all manner of Pleaſure and Contentment. By this means having gotten ſome Opinion of a Divinity amongſt them, he abſented himſelf; and after was worſhipped as their God. Upon theſe Principles, when any one was born amongſt them, his Parents and other Friends, ſitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World, ripping up all the Miſeries and Afflictions whereto he was to be expoſed in this preſent Life, and ſo deplored his Condition as abſolutely miſerable and unhappy. But, on the contrary, when any one chanced to die, they buried him with all Joy and Alacrity; highly rejoycing that by this means he was freed from the Croſſes and Diſaſters of this wretched World. Which is expreſſed thus briefly (after his wonted manner) by my Author, *Lugentur Puerperia, natique deflentur; Funera contra Feſta ſunt, & veluti Sacra cantu luſuque celebrantur.* A Piece of ſuch ſound and orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in thoſe times of Darkneſs; and ſavouring very much of the Primitive Piety, by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as Feſtivals, no notice being taken of the day of their Births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non Nativitatem ſed Mortem Sanctorum Eccleſia pretioſam & feſtam judicat.*

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymneſtor*, who villanouſly murthered *Polydorus*, a younger Son of *Priamus*; for which Fact *Hecuba*, the young Prince's Mother, ſcratched him to Death. Here alſo lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phocis*: and *Diomedes*, who, uſing to feed his Horſes with Man's Fleſh, was ſlain by *Hercules*, and caſt unto his Horſes. And, finally, here reigned King *Cotys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propoſe as a pattern of rare Temper both in maſtering and preventing Paſſion. For when a Neighbour Prince had ſent him a Preſent of Glaſſes of the pureſt Metal, and no leſs accurate in the Workmanſhip or Faſhion of them, having diſpatched the Meſſenger with all the due Complements of Majeſty and Gratitude) he broke them all to pieces; leſt if by miſhap any of his Servants ſhould do the like, he might be ſtirred to an intemperate Choler.

Chief Mountains in this Country, beſides *Hæmus* ſpoken of already, are, 1. *Rhodope*, the higheſt next Mount *Hæmus* in thoſe parts of the World; craggy and rough, and the Top thereof continually white with Snow: Memorable for the Fate and Fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholick Humour (having loſt his Wife) betook himſelf to theſe Mountains, where with his Muſick he affected both Woods and Beaſts, who are ſaid to have danced unto his Muſick: From this place of his Abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his Country *Thracius*, *Non me carminibus vincet nec* Thracius Orpheus, *&c.* as the Shepherd boaſteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a Man of an heavenly Muſe, and by his Dictates and good Counſel, laid down in Verſe, firſt of all civilized this People, and weaned them by degrees from their Beſtiality. Hence the occaſion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it ſelf, it is in the midſt of this Country, thwarting it from Mount *Hæmus* towards the Weſt; which, with the Spurs and Branches of it, and the Plains adjoyning, lying betwixt the River *Neſſus* on the Weſt, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the Eaſt, made up that Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silver. 3. *Melapus*, ſhooting towards the Sea, full of Rocks and Cliffs. And, 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region, from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, beſides *Strymon*, ſpoken of before, the Boundary in ſome places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are, 1. *Neſſus*, by the *Græcians* now called *Meſtro*, by the *Turks Charaſou*, which riſing out of Mount *Hæmus*, falleth into the Sea near the Iſle of *Thaſſius*. 2. *Athyras*, in which name the memory of *Thyras* the Son of *Japhet* ſeems to be preſerved; which, riſing in Mount *Hæmus* alſo, loſeth it ſelf in the *Propontick*; as doth, 3. *Bathynias*, another River riſing from the ſame Mount *Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, now *Mariza*, the moſt noted River of all this Country, riſing out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægæan* near the Iſle of *Samothrace*; a River of ſo ſlow a Courſe, that it is not eaſie to diſcern which way it goeth; but memorable in the Poets for the Fate of *Orpheus*, who, being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* Women, had his Limbs thrown into it by thoſe Furies. 5. *Thearus*, good againſt the Scab both in Man and Beaſt, iſſuing out of Thirty Fountains, ſome hot, ſome cold; with the pleaſantneſs of whoſe Waters *Darius* the King of *Perſia* was ſo delighted, that he erected a Pillar in Honour of it.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Abdera*, now called *Ptolyſtilo*, ſituate not far from the Fall of the River *Neſſus* into the *Ægæan*, the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who ſpent his whole Life in laughing at the Follies of others. 2. *Potidæa*, of old a Colony of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and ſubmitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians*, not enduring the Affront, beleagured it, and after two years Siege, and the expence of Two Thouſand Talents, could not recover it again but on Compoſition. 3. *Ænos*, on the *Ægæan* Sea; a Town of great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore uſed by the latter *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors for the ſecuring of great perſons. For hither *Michael Palæologus* ſent *Jathatines*, the Turkiſh *Sultan* flying to him for Aid; and hither *Mahomet* the great ſent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Peloponneſus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their eaſe and ſafety; but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Priſons. 4. *Lyſimachia*, on the Sea-ſhore; once of great importance, built by *Lyſimachus*, who after *Alexander*'s death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garriſoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus*; on the withdrawing of whoſe Forces, for ſome other Service it was taken and raſed to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the People of it carried into Captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great Re-edified and New-peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient ſituation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philippopolis*, ſo called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who Built and Fortified it as a Bridle to hold in the *Thracians*; called alſo *Trimontium*, from three Hills on which it was ſituate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly Amphitheatre, continuing entire and whole till theſe latter days, and might have laſted longer by many Ages did not the *Turks* daily take away the Stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make Mony of them. Here are alſo many other ancient Monuments, though the Town be much waſted and deſtroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above a Hundred Thouſand perſons: which notwithſtanding it is populous and well frequented by reaſon of the convenient ſituation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. It is now an Arch-biſhop's See. In the year 349, here was an *Arrian* Council held, and here *Julian* was, when he heard of the Death of his Uncle *Conſtantius* the Emperor, and thereupon diſcovered his before conceal'd Apoſtacy. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, took this City and *Adrianople* from the *Turks* in the year 1189, in the year 1359, this City was retaken by the Turks, under *Amurath* the firſt, others ſay in 1362. It is now the Seat of a Turkiſh *Sangiac*, under the *Bacha* or Governour of *Romania*, *Hoffman*. It is ſeated in a large Plain. One part of this Town is built on a Hill, and the other two parts are near it, and appear like Bulwarks or Fortifications, the Walls of the City are very ancient. The Inhabitants retain a Tradition that St. *Paul* Preached in this City, in a certain place, where ſtands a Chappel of great Antiquity, to which they repair with great Devotion. Sir *P. Ricaut*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, ſo called from the Emperor *Trajan*, by whom it was either Founded or Repaired; indifferently well peopled, and ſtill preſerving its Old name, Said by others to be very ſmall, and ill Peopled, it ſtands beneath *Adrianople*, upon the *Mariza*. 7. *Selymbria*, on the Coaſt of the *Propontick* Sea: beautified with a commodious Port for Receit of ſmall Veſſels and many Bays adjoyning capable of greater: by *Ptolomy* called *Selybria*, and *Olybria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus* or the *Black Sea*, now *Siſſopoli*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the ſame Sea alſo. 10. *Nicopolis* at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*, there being another of that name near the River *Neſſus*. 11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* Sea, near the Influx of the River *Arſus*. A Town of great Note in the ancient Buſineſs of *Greece*, of great ſtrength, and peopled formerly with men of ſuch Reſolutions, that they maintained their Liberty againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almoſt all the reſt of *Thrace* had ſubmitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at firſt a Colony of the *Thebans*, and afterwards of much requeſt in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Veſpaſian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperors of *Rome*, as alſo with an Amphitheatre cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the World's ſeven Wonders; and finally, made the Metropolitan City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the Dioceſs of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. This Town has now a good Harbour, five miles in Circumference, and it lies between the Sea and this Port, as Mr. *Wheeler* ſaith, who found here an Inſcription in Honour of *Severus*, their great Benefactor, who ſubjected *Bizantium* to this City, but how ever it is now a poor place. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenephon* the greateſt City of *Thrace*; as poſſibly enough it was in Power and Riches, though not in greatneſs of Extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, Rich in Trade, and Miſtreſs of a fair and goodly Territory adjoyning to it: the People whereof had been malicious Enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally enduced *Philip* ſpoken of before, to ſet upon them. In which Attempt he ſped ſo well, that what he could not get by Force he obtained by Mony, bribing ſome of the principal Officers to betray it to him. For the recovery whereof *Demoſthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens*, in thoſe elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14. *Seſtos*, in the *Thracian* Cherſoneſe, which, being a *Peninſula* abutting over againſt *Troas* on the *Aſian* ſide, is now called *Saint George's Arm*. Oppoſite whereunto on the other ſide of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, celebrated by *Muſæus*, an old *Greek* Poet. 16. *Callipolis*, or *Gallipoli*, on the Northern Promontory of this Cherſoneſe, the firſt City of Note that ever the Turks poſſeſſed in *Europe*, taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchanes* the ſecond King of the *Ottoman* Race, *Anno* 1358; from whence they eaſily and in little time ſpread themſelves all over the reſt of *Thrace*; the ordinary paſſage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*, by reaſon of the convenient Harbour and ſafe Anchorage. It is a great, Populous, well Traded Place, having an Haven, Caſtle and a good *Magazin*, but it is neither Wall'd nor well Built, within the Houſes being all of Earth and Timber, low built, and the Streets Narrow. It is ſaid to be Six Miles in Compaſs, and has about Five Thouſand Chriſtian Inhabitants, but there is little to be ſeen of its ancient Splendor and Elegance. It ſtands a Hundred Miles South from *Conſtantinople*, as Mr. *Wheler* ſaith. Mr. *Wheler* who ſaw it in the year 1675, ſaith it was not populous, nor wall'd, though the Inhabitants are ſaid to be Twenty Thouſand in the compaſs of Six Miles, but the Plague was then there. p. 75. 16. *Cardia*, ſeated on the Weſtern ſide of it, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lemnos*, the Birth place of *Eumenes*, who being a poor Carrier's Son, attained to ſuch an ability in the Art of War, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he ſerved, he ſeized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and ſiding (though a ſtranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias* and the Blood Royal againſt the *Greek* Captains, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Craterus*, and divers times drove *Antigonus* (afterwards Lord of *Aſia*) out of the Field. But being by his own Soldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him ſlain. 17. *Sardica*, ſituate towards Mount *Hæmus*, memorable for the Council there held againſt the *Arians*, Anno 351. 18. *Adrianople*, ſeated near the midſt of *Trace*, called anciently *Uſcudama*; but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperor, who repaired and beautified it; made ſubject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, *Anno* 1362. From the firſt taking of it made the Seat of the Turkiſh Kings, till the taking of *Conſtantinople* by *Mahomet* the Great; by whom it was removed unto that City. Near this City, *Conſtantine* the Great overthrew his Rival *Licinius* in the year 320, by which Victory he obtained the whole *Roman* Empire. *Solyman* the Great, took it from *Muſa* his Brother in the year 1410. The late Grand Seignior *Mahomet* the fourth, lived many years in this City, yet can I not find, that any of our later Travellers have given any account of it. *Busbequius* ſaith, the Walls of it are very ancient, and of no very great Circuit, but it has vaſt Suburbs built by the Turks. 19. *Pera*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, on the farther ſide of the Water, (as the word doth ſignifie niſie in the *Greek*) by ſome called *Galata*; once peopled by a Colony of *Genoueſe*, as the Mart and Factory of that State; taken by *Mahomet* the Great, *Anno* 1453, but ſtill repleniſhed, for the moſt part, with Chriſtian Merchants and Artificers. Mr. *Wheler* our Countryman, who ſaw this place ſaith, it is a good large City, and very populous, and yet the Circumference of the Wall takes up no great ſpace of ground, but the Houſes are thick, and the Streets narrow. It is moſt inhabited by Chriſtians and Jews, and therefore the Ambaſſadors of the Chriſtian Princes, who attend this Court, for the moſt part reſide here too; and in this place is the Scale of the Merchants. It is ſeparated from *Conſtantinople* by the Haven, which muſt be paſſed by Boats, and has had the good Fortune to ſuffer very little yet, in thoſe Tumults which in the years 1687 and 1688, did very much hazard the Ruine of *Conſtantinople*.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the Eaſt, is the renowned City of 20. *Conſtantinople*, ſeated in ſo commodious a place for Empire, that it overlooks both *Europe* and *Aſia*, and commands not only the *Propontis* and *Boſporus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. Firſt founded by one *Byza*, and from him named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Perſians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans*, (unwilling that the *Perſians* ſhould grow ſtrong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pauſanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain it was beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great ſtrength in the Flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls were of a juſt height, every Stone whereof was ſo joyned with Couplets of Braſs, that the whole ſeemed but one entire Piece; adorned beſides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger* in his War againſt *Severus* the Emperor, it indured a Siege of three years againſt all the Forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were ſo diſtreſſed by Famine, that men meeting in the Streets would draw and fight, the Conqueror feeding on the Vanquiſhed. For want of Artillery to diſcharge on the Aſſailants, they caſt down upon them whole Statutes made of Braſs, and the like curious Imagery Houſes they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the Women cutting off their Hair to inch out their Tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, it was loſt all by one Tempeſt. Compelled to yield by this Misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the Wealth of the Inhabitants given for a Prey to the Soldiers, the Walls thereof diſmantled, and the Town left in rubbiſh. Yet there appeared ſo much of Majeſty and Beauty in the very Ruines, *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps ſunt demoliti, vires ſint potiores*, as *Herodian* hath it. One would admire whether the Forces of thoſe who built, or thoſe that Ruin'd it were greater. *Severus* gave the Lands and Territory of this City, and made the ground on which it ſtood Subject to *Heraclea* too, that it was not only Ruin'd but Enſlaved. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, he honoured it with his own name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City was finiſhed *May* 11. *Anno* 331; and being ſo finiſhed, was indowed with all the Priviledges of *Rome*; an equal number of Senators, one of the Annual Conſuls, and all other Officers of State, choſen out of both; the Citizens of the one being free of the other, and capable of all places of moſt Truſt and Power. For that cauſe it was called *Novaroma*, in ſome following times. This City he adorned alſo with magnificent Buildings, curious Statues, and ſuch like Ornaments, tranſported hither from Old *Rome*: which City he ſpoiled of more coſtly Pieces than any twenty of his Predeceſſors had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turks Seraglio* and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and ſituation, ſo as little in Magnificence and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia* was, if not built, yet re-edified, by the Emperor *Juſtinian*. It is built of an Oval form, ſurrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanſhip, adorned with ſpacious and beautiful Galleries roofed all over with *Moſaick* work, and vaulted underneath; very ſtrong for the Fabrick, and pleaſing to the Eye. The Doors are very curiouſly wrought and plated; one of which by the Superſtitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noah*'s Ark. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth; and yet to our Saint *Paul*'s in *London* may ſeem for the bigneſs to have been but a Chappel of Eaſe. But what it wants in Greatneſs, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the Elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks in the whole World. The Sides and Floor are all flagged with excellent Marble; and before the Entrance is a goodly *Portico*, or Porch, in which as well the Chriſtians, who viſit it out of Curioſity, as the Turks, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their Shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, it was converted to a Turkiſh Moſque, as it ſtill continueth; frequented by the Grand Seignior almoſt every *Friday* which is the Sabbath of that People. Near hereunto ſtandeth the Palace or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperors, on the North-Eaſt Angle of the City, where formerly ſtood the ancient *Bizantium*; divided from the reſt of the City by a Wall containing three miles in Circuit, and comprehending goodly Groves of Cypreſſes intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of Pleaſures which Luxury can affect or treaſure compaſs. The Palace it ſelf enjoying a goodly proſpect into the Sea, was firſt built by *Juſtinus* the Emperor, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* Race, containing three great Courts one within another: the Buildings yielding unto thoſe of *France* and *Italy*, for the neat contrivances, but far ſurpaſſing them for Coſt and Curiouſneſs.

As for the City it ſelf, it is ſaid to be 18 miles in compaſs, and to contain Seven Hundred Thouſand living Souls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel Tertian Ague, did not every third year ſo rage amongſt them. It is fortified towards the Land with three ſtrong and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermoſt higheſt of them all; towards the Sea with one Wall only, built after the old Faſhion with many Turrets, which very ſtrongly flank and defend the ſame. But formerly both the Town and Cherſoneſe in which it ſtandeth were defended from the Incurſions of the barbarous people by a ſtrong Wall built on the very *Iſthmus* of it, ſome ten miles from the City, reaching from one ſide to the other: the work of *Anaſtaſius* who ſucceeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which a far off gives to the Eye a moſt pleaſing object: ſo intermixt with Gardens and beſet with Trees, that it ſeems a City in a Wood; but being entred, it much deceiveth the expectation which it promiſed, the buildings of it being mean, if not contemptible. The Streets for the moſt part are exceeding narrow, but raiſed on each ſide for the greater Cleanlineſs: the Houſes but of two Stories high, ſome of rough Stone, and ſome of Timber, without any outward Grace or exterior Garniſhing; in many places nothing but low ſheds or rows of Shops; and in ſome places long dead Walls belonging unto great Mens Houſes. The principal Beauty of the whole, next to ſome Monuments of Antiquity, which are ſtill preſerved, and the Tombs or Sepulchres of ſome of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very ſumptuous, are the Moſques or Temples of the Turks, about Eight Thouſand in Number; and the Port or Haven, ſo conveniently profound, that Ships of greateſt Burthen may ſafely lay their Sides to the ſides thereof, for the Receit or Diſcharge of their Lading; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated on the *Thracian*

Boſperus, that there is no Wind, whatſoever it be, which brings not in ſome Shipping to it. But that which gives the greateſt Pleaſure to the ſight from the Hills adjoyning is the Situation of it on ſeven Mountains, moſt of them crowned with Magnificent Moſques, built all of white Marble, round in Form, and finiſhed on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the Sun-beams with a marvellous Splendour. On the firſt whereof ſtandeth the Ruines of *Conſtantine*'s Palace, exceeding ſtately to behold. On the ſecond, a fair Turkiſh Moſque, built on the Palace, anciently belonging to the *Greek* Patriarch. On the third ſtands a ſtately Moſque, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the ſecond: and a very large Hoſpital, for entertainment of Pilgrims and relief of the Poor: the Annual Rents whereof are valued at Two Hundred Thouſand Chequines. On the fourth and fifth the Sepultures of *Selimus* the firſt, and *Bajazet* the ſecond. On the ſixth the Moſque and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the Magnificent, numbered amongſt the preſent wonders of the World. And on the ſeventh the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the Turks *Seraglio*, ſpoken of already. In which reſpect it is called Πόλις ἑπτάλοφος by *Nicetas*, *Urbs ſepticollis* by *Paulus Diacomus*; and ſo acknowledged to be by *Janus Douſa*, *Phineas Moriſon*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern Travellers, the Eye-witneſſes of it. So that if there be any Myſtery in the number of *Seven*, or that the *ſitting of the Great Whore on a ſeven headed Beaſt*, be an aſſured direction to find out the Anti-chriſt; we may as well look for him in *Conſtantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the Great Turk, the profeſſed Enemy of Chriſt and the Chriſtian Faith, hath his Seat and Reſidence, as amongſt the ſeven Hills of Old *Rome*, where the Pope Reſideth. Or, if his *ſitting in the Temple of God* ſhews us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a Turkiſh Moſque, as in Saint *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*, ſtill a Chriſtian Temple.

But to return again unto *Conſtantinople*. As it was made by *Conſtantine* the Imperial City, and conſequently the chief City of the Eaſt in all Civil matters, ſo it came in little time to have a great Sway alſo in Affairs of Religion. The Chriſtian Faith is ſaid to be firſt preached in *Byzantium* by Saint *Andrew* the Apoſtle, the firſt Biſhop thereof. Afterwards ſpreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches thereof being Regulated by many Biſhops, the chief Preheminence in matters which concerned thoſe Churches was given unto the Biſhops of *Heraclea*, *Heroclea* being at that time the Metropolis or principal City of the Province, by the appointment of *Severus*. But after that *Conſtantinople* was built by *Conſtantine*, and made the Imperial City, as before was ſaid, it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it ſelf the Metropolitan Dignity, but ſtood in Competition with the other Patriarchal Churches for the ſupreme Power: inſomuch as at the ſecond General Council holden in this City it was unanimouſly decreed, that the Patriarch hereof ſhould in degree of Honour be next unto the Biſhop of *Rome*, and above thoſe of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the ſame Decree being confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* alſo. By which not only all the Churches in the Dioceſs of *Thrace*, but alſo of *Natolia*, or *Aſia minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no leſs then Twenty Eight of the *Roman* Provinces, were made ſubject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the firſt, pretending only the preſervation of the Priviledges of thoſe two great Churches, but indeed fearing leſt New *Rome* might in the end get the Precedency of the Old, did oppoſe this Act, and ſome of his Succeſſors perſiſted in the ſame Reſiſtance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, eſpecially after the Emperor *Juſtinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the ſame; by whom it was finally ordained, *Senioris* Romæ *Papam primum eſſe omnium Sacerdotum, beatiſſimum autem Archiepiſcopum* Conſtantinopoleos, *Novæ* Romæ, *ſecundum habere locum*, that is to ſay, That the Pope of *Rome* ſhould have the firſt place in all General Councils, and the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, or New *Rome*, ſhould have the ſecond. Encouraged wherewith, and with the Countenance and Favour of the Emperor *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himſelf the Title of *Univerſal* or *Oecuminical Biſhop*, the Paſtor-General (as it were) of the Church of *Chriſt*. And though Pope *Boniface* by the Grant of that bloody Tyrant *Phocas*, got that Title from him; yet the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople* made good their Ground, never ſubmitting either themſelves or their Churches to the Pope's Authority; being for that cauſe ſpecially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for Schiſmaticks, and accordingly reviled and perſecuted with all kind of Indignities. How it ſucceeded with theſe Patriarchs in the times enſuing, and by what means their Juriſdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muſcovy*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and Eaſt, hath been ſaid already. Certain it is, the conſtant Reſidence of the Emperors from the time of *Conſtantine* gave great ground unto it; of whom I ſhould here add the names, but that I muſt firſt ſum up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the Building of this mighty and predominant City, and take a brief view of the reſt of thoſe Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*. Our Learned Country-man Mr. *Wheler* has aſſured us the Latitude of this City is but 40, 56, though the Geographers have uſually placed it in 43 Degrees of Latitude. It is diſtant one Mile from *Galata* to the South, and three from the ſhoars of *Aſia* to the Weſt, its form is Triangular, and the Wall next the Sea ſtands ſo near it, that there is no paſſing between its Square Towers and the Water. The whole Circumference of the Wall is Thirteen Miles, though uſually ſaid to be Fifteen. They are built of Rough Stone, here and there patch'd up with Brick, and very Ruinous, and in all likely-hood have been but little, if at all, repaired ſince the Time of the *Greek* Emperors. It has about Five and Twenty Gates, Seven towards the Propontus, Seven towards the Land, and Eleven towards the Haven. The Patriarch lives at *Ballata*, on the Weſtern Corner of *Conſtantinople* in a poor Palace, no better than the worſer ſort of Parſonages, and his Church is a ſmall obſcure Edifice. *May we ſee him reſtored to* Saint Sophia! *In the Year* 1687, *the greateſt part of the Wealthy Inhabitants were plundered by the Soldiery, and a great part of the Town Burnt in a Sedition between the Towns-men and the Army; and thoſe that have any thing left, are ſaid to be Removing their Perſons and Eſtaets, not only into* Aſia, *but* Egypt: *and that not only for fear of the Chriſtian Arms, but of a General Revolution at Home.*

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strymonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolonci*, *Sapai*, *Sai*, and ſome others, united by moſt Writers in the name of *Thracians*. They were governed at firſt by the Kings or Princes of their ſeveral Tribes, as moſt Nations elſe; diſtinguiſhed from the common People, as in other Pomps, ſo moſt eſpecially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themſelves a part, and were not to be worſhipped by the beſt of their Subjects. Theſe not agreeing well together for the common good, it gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to ſeize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them, the Country in thoſe times being meanly peopled, and conſequently giving that advantage unto the *Gracians*, as the *Indies* in theſe latter times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portuguezes*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad Neighbours thereunto upon all occaſions, at laſt provoked

voked *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a ſhare; who, being choſen Arbitrator betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom, (drawn at laſt into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with ſuch poor Attendants as Juſtice and Piety, but with a great and puiſſant Army; wherewith having vanquiſhed and ſlain the two Pretenders, he pronounced Sentence for himſelf, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander* this Country was ſeized on by *Lyſimachus*, as his part of the Spoil who here built the City *Lyſimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians*, now accuſtomed to a foreign Yoak, were either Subjects, or at leaſt Tributaries, to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, they incurred the diſpleaſure of that People; who having ſettled their Affairs in other places and repulſed the *Cimbri*, thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions: but ſped ſo ill in the Attempt, that *Porcius Cato* loſt his whole Army in the On-ſet, cunningly intercepted in their Woods and Faſtneſſes. *Didius* the *Prætor*, coming in whilſt the *Thracians* were buſie in the Chaſe, gave them ſuch a ſtop, that he deſerved a Triumph for it, and made the Victory more eaſie to *Metellus*, who ſucceeded *Cato* in that Charge, and Triumphed alſo over them; as alſo did *Lucullus* on another Victory. *A. V. C.* 680. Broken with ſo many ill Succeſſes, they were finally ſubdued by *Piſo* in the time of *Auguſtus*; and became ſo obſequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhitemalces*, a great and puiſſant King hereof, aided him with a ſtrength of Horſe againſt the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards being made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Conſtantine*'s new Model it became a Dioceſs under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; *Thrace* it ſelf being caſt into four Provinces, that is to ſay, *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia* and the Lower *Mæſia*, ſpoken of before, being added to it: of which the Preſidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum* were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were, but only to the Prefect of *Conſtantinople*, the Imperial City. But as *Alfonſus* King of *Caſtile*, ſirnamed the Wiſe, was once heard to ſay, (never the wiſer for ſo ſaying) That *had he ſtood at the elbow of Almighty God when he made the World, he would have ſhewed him how ſome things might have been better ordered*: ſo give me leave to play the fool, and to ſay this here, that had I ſtood at *Conſtantine*'s Elbow, I would have Counſelled him to lay the Dioceſs of *Thrace* to the Prefect of *Illyricum*, who had originally only the Dioceſſes of *Macedon* and *Illyricum* under his Command; and not have placed it under the Prefect of the Eaſt, who had both *Aſia*'s and all *Egypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the Vickers and Lieutenants of the ſeveral Dioceſſes to their reſpective Prefects, how great a trouble muſt it be to the Subjects of *Thrace* on every occaſion of Appeal to poſt to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the Prefect of the Orient, when *Sermium* and *Theſſalonica*, the ordinary Reſidences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, were ſo hard at hand? But *Conſtantine* was an abſolute Prince, and might do what he liſted. He had not elſe removed his Seat ſo far towards the Eaſt, and left the Weſtern parts of the Empire open to the Barbarous people, out of a Fancy only to preſerve the Eaſtern. For that it was a Fancy only the event did ſhew: the *Perſians* for all this prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it ſelf, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with ſo many *Roman* Colonies, ſo ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waſt and deſart many Ages after. Inſomuch as the *Goths*, being by the *Hunns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperor *Valens* planted in this Country, (the Emperor having a deſign to uſe them in his Wars;) were not contented with the Portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, waſting the whole Province, taking divers Towns, and endangering *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, from whence they were not driven (*Valens* himſelf being killed in the War againſt them) but by the coming of ſome *Saracens* to the Aid of the Citizens. Nor could the Reſidence of the Emperors ſo protect this Country, but that it was continually harraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, *Saracens*, and other Barbarous people falling in upon it; nor hinder one *Bryonnius*, in the time of *Michael Ducas* and *Nicephorus Botoniates*, from aſſuming to himſelf the Title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the Turks of the *Ottoman* Race from getting ground every day on the leſſer *Aſia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it ſelf, and in the end obtaining the imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, conſidering the *Turks* are now poſſeſſed of *Thrace* and the reſt of *Greece*, that we ſhould make relation of the Nature of that People, their Cuſtoms, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the diſcourſe thereof we will defer till we come to *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia* from whence they made their firſt Inundations, like to ſome unreſiſtible Torrent, into *Perſia*, and after into the other parts of the World now ſubject to them: And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Deſcription of the reſt of *Greece*, conſiſting of the Iſlands ſcattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, leaving out ſuch as properly belong to *Aſia*, till our Deſcription of that Country, though otherwiſe *Greek* Iſlands, and ſo accounted both for their Language and Original.

7. The Iſlands of the *Pontick* and *Propontick* Seas.

Before we come to the Deſcriptions of theſe Iſlands, we muſt firſt look upon the Seas in which they lie, beginning with the *Pontick* firſt, becauſe the greateſt, and that which doth communicate and convey its Waters unto all the reſt. A Sea made up originally of the Confluence of thoſe mighty Rivers (the greateſt in thoſe parts of the World) which do fall into it, that is to ſay, the *Danow*, *Boriſthenes* and *Tanais*, falling out of *Europe*, beſides many other fair and large Rivers, (though of leſſer note) to the number of at leaſt an hundred, which pay Tribute to it, the whole Compaſs of it being 2700 miles; in form by ſome reſembled to a *Scythian* Bow when it is bended. A Sea not ſo ſalt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; ſeldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern Shore. The Traffick of it is wholly in a manner engroſſed by the *Turk*, who is Maſter of all the Sea-coaſt of it, ſave what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim Tartar*, at firſt it was called Ἄξενος from the *Inhoſpitableneſs* of the neighbouring People, which being brought to ſome Conformitp cauſed the Sea to be called Εὔξενος. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Siniſtrum*, becauſe in the way from *Rome* to *Aſia minor* it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatneſs; and the *Black Sea*, becauſe of the great Miſts thence ariſing. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black Shipwrecks here happening; for it is a very dangerous Shore, full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cauſe there is on the top of an high Tower a Lantern, in which there is a great Pan full of Pitch, Roſin, Tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the Shore. This Sea, being the biggeſt of all thoſe parts, gave occaſion to them which knew no bigger to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, deerant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place of the ſame Poet, ———*nil niſi pontus & aer*: a better reaſon doubtleſs of the name, than that of the Etymologiſts, *Pontus, quia ponte caret.* Of this Sea the chief Iſles are *Thynnias*, and *Erithinus*, little famous.

From hence the Sea binding Southwards is brought into narrower bounds, not being fully a mile broad, and is called the *Thracian Boſporus*; *Thracian*, for its ſight nigh *Thrace*; and *Boſporus*, for that Oxen have ſwam over it.

It hath no Iſland worth naming. It is fortified on each ſide with a very ſtrong Caſtle. That on the *Aſian* ſide, being the elder and the leſſer, is by the *Greeks* called *Aſiocaſtron*, by the Turks named *Accechiſar*; the other, juſt oppoſite to it, is by the Turks called *Genichiſar*, by the *Greeks* named *Neocaſtrum*, or *New Caſtle*. This laſt was the work of *Mahomet* ſirnamed the Great, in the beginning of his Reign; in bigneſs not inferior to a little City, built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Damalis*, invironed with a Wall 22 foot broad, and containing 3 great Towers, their Wall exceeding 10 yards in thickneſs; exceedingly well ſtored with all ſorts of Ordnance and Ammunition. By the *Engliſh* they are commonly called the *Black Towers*; partly becauſe ſeated at the Entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black* Sea, and partly becauſe they ſerve as a Priſon for Malefactors of principal note, who ſeldom are diſcharged thence till releaſed by death. Sir *John Chardin* a French Knight ſaith, this *Boſphorus* is one of the moſt Lovelieſt ſights in the World, being about 15 miles long, and 2 broad. The Shoars conſiſt of riſing grounds, covered every where with Houſes of Pleaſure, Woods, Gardens, Parks, delightful proſpects, and lovely Wilderneſſes, in which are Thouſands of Springs and Fountains. The City of *Conſtantinople* and the vaſt variety of Ships paſſing or riding there are the accompliſhment of its Charms and Beauty. It has 4 Forts to ſecure it, 2 ſtand 8 miles from the Mouth of the *Black Sea*, and the other 2 near the Mouth of that Channel, and were built about the year 1632, to prevent the *Caſſocks*, *Poles* and *Ruſs* from Ravaging as before to the Walls of *Conſtantinople*.

This Streight, having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it ſelf into the *Propontis*, 300 miles in compaſs; confined with *Thrace* on the one ſide, and with *Bithynia* on the other; ſo as they which ſail in the middle may decry the Land on all parts. Now called *Mar di Marmora*, from the Iſland *Marmora*, which, formerly called *Proconneſus*, hath for its abundance of Marble purchaſed this new name. The Soil is apt for Vines, and not deſtitute of Corn; yielding alſo good Paſturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty, with an incredible number of Partridges amongſt the Rocks: the Country of *Ariſteas*, a famous Poet, who flouriſhed in the times of *Crœſus*. Anciently it had in it two Cities of the ſame name with the Iſland, called the *Old* and *New Proconneſus*: the former firſt built by the *Mileſians*, an *Aſian* People; the latter by the Natives of this Iſland. But both theſe being long ſince decayed, it hath now only a ſmall Village towards the North with an Haven to it, inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the reſt of the Iſland: ſuch Chriſtian Slaves as are in great numbers employed here by the Turks, in digging Marble for their Moſques and other Buildings being only Sojourners, not Houſe-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongſt the Inhabitants. Here is alſo in this *Propontick* Sea the Iſle of *Cyzicus*: but being it is on *Aſia* ſide, we ſhall there ſpeak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a leſſer Chanel is called *Helleſpont*, from *Helle*, Daughter of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous Streight did *Xerxes* according to *Herodotus*, make a Bridg of Boats to paſs into *Greece*: which when a ſudden Tempeſt had ſhrewdly battered, he cauſed the Sea to be beaten with 300 Stripes, and caſt a pair of Fetters into it, to make it know to whom it was ſubject. *Xerxes* in this Expedition wafted over an Army conſiſting of two Millions and 164710 fighting men, in no leſs then 2208 Bottoms of all ſorts. When all the *Perſians* ſoothed the King in the unconquerableneſs of his Forces, *Artabanus* told him that he feared no Enemies but the Sea and the Earth, the one yielding no ſafe Harbour for ſuch a Navy, the other not yielding ſufficient ſubſiſtence for ſo multitudinous an Army. But his return over this *Helleſpont* was as dejected as his paſſage magnificent; his Fleet being ſo broken by the Valour of the *Greeks* and the fury of the Sea, that, for his more ſpeedy Flight he was compelled to make uſe of a poor Fiſher-boat. Neither yet was his paſſage ſecure: for the Boat being overburthened, had ſunk all, if the *Perſians* by caſting away themſelves had not ſaved the Life of their King. The Loſs of which noble ſpirits ſo vexed him, that having given the Steerſman a golden Coronet for preſerving his own Life, he commanded him to Execution as a Co-author of the death of his ſervants. It is now called the *Dardanels*, *the Caſtles*, or *the Sea of the two Caſtles*; which 2 Caſtles ſtand one on *Europe*, the other on *Aſia* ſide, in the Towns of *Seſtos* and *Abydus*. Theſe Caſtles, commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanelii*, are exceedingly well built, and abundantly furniſhed with Munition. They ſearch and examine all Ships that paſs that way: they receive the Grand Seigniours Cuſtoms, and are in effect the principal ſtrength of *Conſtantinople*. At theſe Caſtles all Ships muſt ſtay three days, to the end that if any Slave be run away from his Maſter, or Thieves have ſtoln any thing, they may be in that place purſued and apprehended. So that theſe Caſtles are as it were the Out-works of *Conſtantinople*, to defend it from all Invaſions, and from any Forces which may come unto it by Sea out of the *Mediterranean*; as for the Safety thereof from ſuch as may find paſſage out of the *Euxine*, there are ſituate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Boſporus* two ſtrong Caſtles, the one above *Conſtantinople* on *Europe* ſide; the other on the *Aſian* Shore, which before we ſpake of. No *European* Iſle of note is in either of the Streights.

Since our Author wrote, there are two other Caſtles call'd the *New Dardanells*, which bear juſt upon the entrance of the *Helleſpont*, about three miles more to the South than the *Old Dardanells*, as Mr. *Wheler* has obſerved, they ſeem to be both built ſince the year 1655. And in all probability, becauſe the *Venetians* in the year 1655, 56, and 57, took theſe Caſtles, and ſtop'd all paſſage for the Turks that way, during the War in *Candia*.

8. The *Iſlands* of the ÆGÆAN Sea.

Helleſpont, after a forty miles courſe, exſpatiateth its waters in the *Ægæan* Sea: ſo called either from *Ægeus*, the Father of *Theſeus*, who miſdoubting his Sons ſafe return from the *Minotaur* of *Crete*, here drowned himſelf: or, ſecondly, from *Æga*, once a principal City in the prime Iſland *Eubœa*; or, thirdly becauſe that the Iſlands lie ſcattered up and down like the Leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* αἰγὸς.

The chief Iſlands of it are, 1. *Samothrace*, 2. *Thaſſus*, 3. *Imbrus*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cythera*: all which eſpecially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Iſlands of the Arches*; the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatneſs compared unthe narrow Seas which lie above it.

1. *Samothrace* is a ſmall Iſland oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; ſo called *quaſi Samos Thracia*, to difference it from the *Aſian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Ariſtotle*, writing of the Commonweal of theſe *Samothracians*, telleth us that it was firſt called *Leucoſia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Saus* the Son of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter *M* being interpoſed. It is now called *Samandrachi*, and is plentiful in Honey and Wild Deer, and better ſtored with commodious Harbours then any other in theſe Seas. It hath a Town of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on an high Hill on the North part hereof overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infeſting of theſe Seas, wholly in a manner, deſolate.

2. *Thaſſus*, another little Iſland on the ſame Coaſt, oppoſite to the Influx of the River *Neſſus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the Mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria* and *Æthria*, by *Ptolomy Thalaſſia*, at the preſent *Taſſo*. It is in compaſs betwixt forty and fifty miles, ſufficiently fruitful, well repleniſhed with Woods, and yielding good ſtore of the

beſt Wines; mountainous in ſome places; but thoſe Mountains fraught with Quarries of excellent Marble, which the *Romans* called *Thaſſian*, from the Iſland, and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the Great ſo rich in Mines of uſeful Metals, that thoſe Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their Cuſtoms of them. It hath one Town of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on a large Plain in the North part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which ſerves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them ſituate on an hill, but the names thereof occur not amongſt my Authors.

3. *Imbrus*, another ſmall Iſland, now named *Lembro*, is ſituate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian* Cherſoneſe, in compaſs about thirty miles, but more long then broad, ſtretching North and South, and diſtant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Iſland is mountainous for the moſt part, except towards the Weſt; where it hath ſome pleaſant and well-watered Plains: in it is a Town of the ſame name, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains once ſacred unto *Mercury*, but not leſs obſervable. Theſe 3 are very thinly inhabited by reaſon of the Pirates.

4. *Lemnos*, an Iſland of more note, lieth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongſt the Poets for the fabulous Fall of *Vulcan*, who being but an homely Brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great Paſſion thrown out of Heaven, and falling on this Iſland, came to get his Halting. Howſoever, he was anciently worſhipped by the People hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. It is in compaſs about an hundred miles, but more long then broad, extended from the Eaſt to the Weſt; on every ſide well furniſhed with convenient Creeks and ſome pretty Havens, by which the want of Rivers is in ſome ſort recompenſed.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Iſlands, but otherwiſe ſwelled with riſing Mountainets, the interpoſed Valleys being very fruitful of Wheat, Pulſe, Wine, Fleſh, Cheeſe, Wool, Flax, Linnen, and all other neceſſaries; only Wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was ſaid, yet have they good Fiſhing on the Sea-coaſt for their uſe and ſuſtenance; and in ſome parts hot Baths for Health and Medicines. But the chief Riches of this Iſland is in a mineral Earth here digged, of excellent virtue for curing of Wounds, ſtopping of Fluxes, expulſing Poiſons, a Preſervative againſt Infections, and the like; called *Terra Lemnia* from the place, and *Terra Sigillata*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into ſmall Pellets, and Sealed with the Turk's Character, or Signet, it is then (not before) ſold unto the Merchants; by whom it is diſperſed over moſt parts of the Chriſtian World. Upon the ſixth of *Auguſt* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony: and many Religious Preparations, brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Iſland, and ſtill continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one Hill only where it groweth, the Top whereof being opened, they diſcover the Vein, reſembling the caſting up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day as the Prieſts think fit, it is cloſed again; certain Bags of it being ſent to the Grand Seignior yearly, the reſidue ſealed up, and ſold to the Foreign Merchant.

But to return to the Topography of the place. The Eaſtern parts hereof are ſaid to be fat and fruitful, the Weſtern very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and thoſe three garriſoned by the *Turks*, who, being Lords of the whole Iſland, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the firſt was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Iſland, as large and well-peopled now as ever formerly, but of no great eſtimation when it was at the beſt, ſeated upon an high Hill looking over the Sea, with a handſome Market-place, on which Mount *Athos* caſts a ſhadow, though diſtant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* ſtill remaining. 2. The ſecond of the two Cities was then called *Hephæſtias*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæſtiades*; ſince deſolate and deſtroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochino*. This Town is not great, but of a reaſonable ſtrength, memorable for the ſtout Reſiſtance which a notable *Virago*, named *Marulla*, made againſt the *Turks* in the time of *Mahomet* the Great, the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Iſland. For ſuddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpoſe to ſurprize this Town, they found more Reſiſtance at the Gates than they did expect: none being more commended than this Maiden, who ſeeing her Father ſlain, took up ſuch Weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the reſt of the Citizens, wakened with the Alarm, came unto her Reſcue, and forced the Enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the Hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell, more eminent for the Mineral earth here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a Labyrinth to have ſtood in the days of old, little inferior unto thoſe of *Crete* or *Egypt*; the Ruins of it being ſo decayed that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their Oriſons on the ſixth day of *Auguſt*, before their gathering of the Earth ſo often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Thoas*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whoſe time the Women of the Iſland upon ſome diſpleaſure murthered all the men, the King only excepted, preſerved by *Hypſipyle* his Daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jaſon* with the *Argonauts* were ſo kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almoſt forgot their intended Expedition for the Golden Fleece; ſhe her ſelf being got with Child by *Jaſon* at his being there, the other Women probably following her Example. Following the Fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at laſt under the power of the *Conſtantinopolitan* or Eaſtern Emperors. In the Subverſion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Weſtern Chriſtians (of which more hereafter) it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year 1463, or thereabouts. The Principal Port in this Iſland is now called *Mudro*, which lies on the South Eaſt ſide, above which ſtands the City with an indifferent Caſtle Garriſon'd by the Turks, before the War of *Candia*, there were fifty Towns and Villages, but there is now not above twenty, the *Venetians* taking the Iſland in 1662, Ruin'd the ſtrong places, and carried away the Garriſon. *Randolph.*

Beſides theſe on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, there are alſo ſome of leſs note on the Shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Peparethus*, as *Ptolomy*; *Euonus*, as *Pliny* calls it, containing about 40 miles in compaſs, now called *Saraquino*, as *Caſtaldus*, or *Lemene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eaſtern part with a Caſtle built upon a Rock. Others of leſs note are, 2. *Scyathos*, now *Sciati*, 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Haloneſus*, 5. *Cicynethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6. *Dromus*: of which little memorable. All which, together with thoſe formerly deſcribed on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, being but the Acceſſories of the ſeveral Continents upon which they border; followed the Fortune of the principal, and were conquered in them.

5. *Eubœa*, known to the Ancients by the names of *Macris* and *Abantis*, to the Moderns by that of *Negropont*, frontiereth all along the Coaſt of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in Fertility; one part hereof being torn away from it by an Earthquake, and lying ſtill ſo near unto it, that between the Iſland and the Continent is only a little *Euripus*, which ebbeth and floweth ſeven times in one day. The reaſon of which when *Ariſtotle* could not find, it is ſaid that he threw himſelf into the Sea, with theſe words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me.* In this Iſland is the Promontory *Caphreus*, where *Nauplius*, the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his falſe Fires, to the Deſtruction of ſo many *Greeks*. For underſtanding how his Son

Palamedes, whom he deemed to have been ſlain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherouſly circumvented by the Policy of *Ulyſſes* and *Diomedes*, he conceived ſuch a diſpleaſure againſt the whole Hoſt of the *Gracians*, that he intended their general Deſtruction. To this end he cauſed Fires to be made on the tops of the moſt dangerous and unacceſſible Rocks in this whole Iſland; which the *Greeks* taking (according to the Cuſtom of the time) to have been the Marks of ſome ſafe Haven, made thitherward, and were there moſt miſerably caſt away; there periſhing 200 Ships, and many thouſand men. But when *Nauplius* underſtood how *Diomedes* and *Ulyſſes*, whoſe Ruine he principally intended, were eſcaped, he drowned himſelf for very Vexation in this very ſame place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius*'s Son, is ſaid to have invented four of the *Greek* Letters, *viz.* θ, χ, ξ, φ. to have firſt inſtituted Centinels in an Army, and to be the firſt Inventer of the Watch-word.

It is in length 150 miles, ſtretched out from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt; in breadth not above twenty, where it is broadeſt; the whole compaſs 365 *Italian* miles. It is the Queen of the *Ægaan* Sea, not only for Greatneſs, but for Fertility and Strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit and Wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours and capacious Bays, and thoſe well fortified; watered alſo with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Melas*, two Rivers of ſo ſtrange a nature, that if a Sheep drink of the former, his Wooll turneth white, but coal-black, if he drink the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Stone called *Amiantus*, which is drawn into thread like Hemp, and good Cloth made of it; which, when it is ſtained, in ſtead of being ſent unto the Fullers, is thrown unto the Fire and ſo cleanſed. But whether this be ſo or not, (for I put it only upon hear-ſay) certain it is, that it was once enriched with Mines both of Braſs and Iron, though thoſe now decayed; and likewiſe with Quarries of pure Marble, which continue ſtill.

The Iſland before it was conquered by the Turks, was very populous, but the people moſt delighted to live in Villages; the Cities and walled Towns being only three. 1. *Caryſto*, anciently *Caryſtus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea* and *Chironia*, memorable for its marble Quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Caryſtiæ*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the Turks named *Eribos*, ſeated on a Plain near the Water's ſide, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Negropont*; a populous, ſtrong and wealthy City, ſo fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgment of moſt men it was held invincible when the Turks firſt ſat down before it. Nor was it purchaſed by the Turk (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Conſtantinople*, undertook the buſineſs) at a lower price than the loſs of forty thouſand men, who were ſpent upon it; but taken at the laſt, and the people put unto the Sword, without conſideration of Sex or Age. A Town in former times of ſo great Wealth and Power, that it ſent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia*, (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as alſo into *Sicily* and ſome parts of *Italy*; and had a ſtrong Influence on the Affairs of *Achaia* alſo, as being ſituate ſo near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a Bridge. When it was in the hands of the Kings of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demetrius* in *Theſſaly*, and the Caſtle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the *Fetters of Greece*: inſomuch that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*, to ſet the *Gracians* at liberty; the *Gracians* made anſwer, that in vain was their Liberty reſtored them, unleſs theſe three Towns were firſt diſmantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that Benefit they refuſed to declare againſt them in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himſelf Maſter of the Town, and conſequently of the Iſland. But forced to leave the place upon the loſs of the Battel at *Thermopylæ*, it became free again; till finally made ſubject unto *Rome* with the reſt of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eaſtern Empire. In the Diviſion whereof amongſt the *Latines* it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*; who from hence uſed with their Gallies to infeſt the Shores of *Turkie*, and diſturb their Trade. Provoked wherewith eſpecially with their taking of *Ænus*, a City of *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that Enterpriſe had taken 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Iſland, *Mahomet* the Great reſolves upon the Conqueſt of it, and with a puiſſant Army ſets before the Town. And though it coſt him dear, yet at laſt he got it, and therewith all the Iſland alſo, which depended on the Fortunes of it, *Anno* 1471. This Iſland was Granted to the Common-wealth of *Venice*, in the times of *Pietro Zani*, for their good Services about the year 1204. The Fortifications of it were till of late, the ſame which the *Venetians* left, but within theſe 2 or 3 laſt years, the Turks having loſt the *Morea*, have beſtowed much coſt on the Fortifications of it. The Inhabitants are ſuppoſed to make about 15000, the Turks and Jews living in the City, the *Greeks* in the Suburbs, which are ſeparated from it by a large deep Dike. Since it came into the hands of the Turks, moſt of the *Greeks* have left the Iſland, ſo that it is but thinly peopled. It has a ſtrong Caſtle, built in a ſmall Iſland between the City and *Greece*, in the midſt of the Bridge which unites the Iſland to the Continent. There is a place called the *New-Town*, which is very well built, with a large *Bazare*, or Market-place. In this the Chriſtians are thrice the number of the Turks and Jews. The Harbour is very ſecure againſt all Winds, and extends two miles in length, and is ſecured from Enemies by the Caſtle, which has above 20 good Guns planted on this ſide. The Inhabitants of the whole Iſland are thought to be 60000 Souls, a tenth part of which are Turks, the reſt are Jews and Chriſtians. And it affords to the Grand Seigniour 100000 Dollars Revenues, *Randolph*. This Place took the name of *Negropont* from the *Black Bridge* over the *Euripus*. The compaſs of the Walls are not above two miles, but the moſt of the Inhabitants live in the Suburbs. In this City the *Baſha*, or General of the Turkiſh Fleet reſides, who is Governour of the City and Iſland, who has a *Keiah* or Deputy under him, and in this place lies a Squanderon of Gallies always ready for Service. Mr. *Wheler*. The Turks finding their Empire decline a-pace, by the loſs of the *Moreas*, and *Hungary* and a great part of *Dalmatia*, beſtowed great Charges on the Fortifications of *Negropont* in 1686 and 87; but yet the *Venetians* believing it abſolutely neceſſary for the ſecuring what they had recovered; in the year 1688 ſent a powerful Fleet for the reducing of it, which the 13th of *July* Landed 24000 Men in the Iſland, the 22th, *Moroſini* the General ordered the Trenches to be opened, the 20th of *Auguſt* he took all the Out-works by Storm, the 6th of *October* he Stormed the Town, and took the Breach, but was beaten off by the Turks. The 12th of the ſame, it was Stormed the ſecond time, and that proving unſucceſsful, he withdrew the Army which was much weakened; to prevent its intire Ruin; but yet it is ſaid he intends to return in the Spring, and the Turks are now Fortifying it again to preſerve it, and the *Venetian* Fleet Rides in the Gulph to hinder it as much as may be.

6. SALAMIS, is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the Overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes* by the *Athenians* and their Confederates. What was the number of the Soldiers and Gallies of the *Perſian* ſide hath been already declared. The whole *Grecian* Fleet conſiſted of no more than 270 Veſſels, whereof 127 were rigged and ſet forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only, the reſt by the Aſſociates. Yet was the Admiralty committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedemonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common Safety before an unſeaſonable contention for Priority. The *Spartans*, ſeeing the inequality of Forces,

intended not to have hazarded the Battel, but with full ſail to have retired to *Peloponneſus*, into which Country the *Perſians* had made Incurſions; reſpecting more the Welfare of their own Country yet defenſible, than the deſperate eſtate of *Attica*. This Deſign was by *Themiſtocles* (as careful for the eſtate of *Athens* as they for *Sparta*) ſignified to *Xerxes*: who, getting between them and home, compelled them to a neceſſity of fighting, but to his own Ruine. For in the Conflict more than 200 of his Ships were ſunk, and moſt of the reſt taken; the Confederates having loſt of their Navy forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenſes* were many Contentions for this Iſland; the Fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the ſame name, the Royal Seat of *Telamon*, the Father of *Ajax*, ſo famous in the War of *Troy*: More memorable for giving Birth to *Solon* the *Legiſlator* of *Athens*, one of the ſeven Wiſe Men of *Greece*. It was in after-times the See of a Biſhop, ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Athens*, the principal City lying on the South ſide of the Iſle, now called *Colouri*, as the Iſle is *Santa Brouſia*. The old City was on the North ſide, and is now ruined, being called *Ambelaki*. Mr. Wheler ſaith it is in compaſs about 50 miles. The principal Town *Colouri* conſiſts of about 150 poor Cottages and 400 Inhabitants. It has two other Villages *Metropolis*, the other is *Ambelaki*, which was the old *Salamina*, and by the Ruins may have been four miles in compaſs. It has one of the largeſt Havens in the World, and abounds with Corn, Pitch, Roſin, Coal, and Spunges.

7. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engia*, an Iſland ſituate over againſt *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægæan*, hence called *Golfo di Engia*; the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his Juſtice and Integrity one of the Three Judges of Hell: the other two being his Brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been call'd *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but took this name from *Ægina*, the Daughter of *Aſopus* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is ſaid to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The People hereof are properly called *Æginenſes* and *Æginetæ*, much ſpoken of in the Wars of *Athens*, from which they are diſtant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very ſtony, but good for Barley, of which it is very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving People, to whom they gave in thoſe days the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Iſland being alſo call'd *Myrmidonia*) *quod Formicarum more Terram foderent*, becauſe Emmet-like they digged up and under the Earth, to make it the more fit for Tillage; who dwelt at firſt in Caves without any Houſes. Hence the occaſion of the Fable of turning Emmets into Men at the Prayer of *Æacus*. Both Tale and People after (I know not how) were carried into *Theſſaly*, where before we found them. This Iſland gives name at preſent to the whole Bay of *Saron*. It is about 30 Miles in compaſs. It has but one Village called by its own name, which in 1654 was taken and ruined by the *Venetian* Fleet, which took 600 poor *Greek* Chriſtians for Rowers and Slaves away with it. It hath plenty of Corn, Cotton, Honey and Wax, Almond, Partridges; the laſt are ſo numerous, that if they did not yearly break their Eggs they would ſtarve the Inhabitants. This Iſland did of old belong to the *Venetians*. There is another Iſland now called *Porus*, of old *Calabrea*, 18 miles in compaſs. This Iſland was retaken by the *Venetians* in 1674.

8. The *CYCLADES*, ſo called becauſe they lie in a Circle round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are alſo called the *Iſlands of the Arches*, becauſe they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They ſtand ſo cloſe together, that in a clear day a Man may ſee 20 of them at a time; for which cauſe it is with good reaſon accounted to be a dangerous place for Sailors in a Storm. The chief of theſe *Cyclades* are, 1. *DELOS*, *quaſi* Δῆλος, ſignifying *apparent*; becauſe when all the Earth had abjured the receit of *Latona* at the requeſt of *Juno*, this Iſland, then under Water, was by *Jupiter* erected al[illegible], and fit to receive her; and in it was ſhe delivered o[illegible] *Apollo* and *Diana*: Of which thus *Ovid*;

> ——————*Erratica* Delos
> *Errantem accepit, tunc cum levis Inſula nabat.*
> *Illic incumbens ſub* Palladis *arbore, Palma,*
> *Edidit invita geminos* Latona *noverca.*
> Unſettled *Delos* floating on the Wave,
> A little Iſland entertainment gave
> To wandring *Laton*, ſpight of *Juno*'s Head,
> Under *Minerva*'s Palm-tree brought to Bed.

Notable alſo is this Iſland for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a Cuſtom, neither permitting Men to die, or Children to be born in it; but ſending ſick Men and great bellied Women to *Rhene*, a ſmall Iſland, and not much diſtant. By a more ancient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in any of the Poets, both *Greek* and *Latin*. The chief Town of it, called alſo *Delos*, is ſituate on a Plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*, whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Iſland. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, deliver'd here more plainly than in other places, whence, (as ſome ſay) it was called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* ſignifying *manifeſt* or *apparent*: Made famous by the reſort of People from all places hither, eſpecially from the neighbouring Iſlands, who ſent yearly multitudes of Men and troups of Virgins to celebrate his Solemnities with Herds of Sacrifices. More wealthy afterwards by removing of the Trade of *Corinth* hither; that Town being utterly deſtroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the Merchant; partly by reaſon of the Immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient ſituation betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*. It continued in great Wealth and Power till *Mithridates* laid it waſt; and at laſt, on the ceaſing of the Oracles, was utterly forſaken, both Town and Iſland are now called *Sdiles*. By which name alſo *Rhene*, an adjoining Iſland (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polycrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the leaſt in name. This Iſland is but ſmall, not exceeding five or ſix miles in compaſs, but twice as long as broad; low, rocky and barren, now totally deſolate, and called *Zdeli*. The Learned *Wheler* has given a large Account of the Ruins of this Iſland, from Page 53 to 62. *Coronelli* ſaith, this Iſland having been taken from the *Venetians* by *Barberouſſe*, a Famous *Turkiſh* Admiral: In the laſt Century *Francis Moroſini* reduced it under the *Venetians* again the year 1674.

2. *TENOS*, by *Ariſtotle* called *Hydruſa*, by ſome *Ophiuſa*, by the Moderns *Tina*. The chief Town of it is of the ſame name, ſo called from one *Tenes* the Builder of it, and giving name to the Iſland: Memorable for a Fountain called *Dipnoſus*, of which *Ariſtotle* and *Atheneus* doth both affirm, that the Waters will not mix with Wine: the only Iſland of this Sea which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*, the reſt being ſubject to the *Turk*; deſerving therefore the firſt place in our Deſcription of thoſe Iſlands that incompaſs *Delos*, tho' anciently. This Iſland is about 70 miles in compaſs, and is the higheſt Land in thoſe Seas: The *Turks* made ſeveral Attempts to reduce it in 1658. There is about 30 Villages, and 20000 Souls, moſt of them Latinized *Greeks*. *Randoph*. It is in effect a large heap of Marble Rocks, though in many places covered with a fruitful Soil. All the Villages can in time of neceſſity repair to the Caſtle which ſtands on the higheſt Rock in the middle of the Iſle. The Inhabitants, which are many, work their own Silks, but they are no great Artiſts. *Wheler*, Page 51.

3. *ANDROS*, (*prima inter Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongſt the *Cyclades*, or firſt at leaſt in order, becauſe next to *Delos*: originally called *Cauros*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at laſt *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurimachus*, who founded the chief Town of it, of the ſame name alſo. Memorable for a pleaſant Fountain

mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof on the Nones of *January* yearly had the taſte of Wine. It ſtill retains the name of *Andro*, or *Andri*. It has a good large Town to the North Eaſt, there are about 3000 Inhabitants in this Iſland, who are ſubject to the Turks, who pay a Tax of 10000 Dollars, they have Corn and Wine in abundance, but their beſt Commodity is their Silk. *Randolph.*

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nixia*, one of the biggeſt of the Pack, as being about 80 Miles in compaſs. In ancient times it was called *Veneris Inſula*, or the Iſland of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionyſia*, by reaſon of its abundance of Wine, and the goodneſs of thoſe Wines together, conſecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionyſius*. From its wonderful plenty of Wheat called by ſome *Sicilia minor*, or the *Leſſer Sicily*; but at laſt *Naxos*, from one *Naxus*, who had the Conduct of a Colony of *Carians* hither. But notwithſtanding this new name, *Bacchus* did ſtill retain the honour to be worſhipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne* (as the Poets fable) whom *Theſeus* had left upon the Rocks: whoſe Coronet or Chaplet, being by his means made one of the Heavenly Conſtellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*; by the name of the Iſland; though commonly by Aſtronomers *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The Women of this Iſland are ſaid by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth month, as *Bacchus* was born within that term. But it is moſt certainly famous in true Story for the Beauty and Fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophites* or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple Spots, in much eſteem amongſt the *Romans*. When theſe Iſlands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino*, a Patrician or Gentleman of that City (as they did divers of the reſt on other undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Criſpo's*, who held it till the year 1572, when *James* the laſt of that Houſe loſt it to *Selymus* the ſecond. Moſt part of it is very high Land, yet it hath a great many pleaſant and fruitful Valleys: the beſt Town is to the North Weſt. It has an Archbiſhop who lives very well, and has his City and Country Houſe. And the Inhabitants, which exceed not 5000, are very rich and happy, paying their Tribute at *Conſtantinople*; the Jeſuits have great Revenues in the Iſle, and ſome *Genoeſe* Gentlemen live there. *Randolph.*

5. *GYAROS*, a little Iſland, into which the *Romans* uſed to baniſh Delinquents. Hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys.*

Aude aliquid brevibus Gyaris *vel carcere dignum,*
Si vis eſſe aliquid: Probitas laudatur, & alget.
If thou intend'ſt to thrive, do what deſerves
Short *Gyaros* or Gyves: prais'd Virtue ſtarves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Pario*, by ſome of the Ancients called *Pactya*, by others *Minoa*; but it obtained this new name from *Parus*, a Son of *Jaſon*: Memorable for Quarries of the whiteſt Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. It is in compaſs about 50 Miles, running in a long Plain from Eaſt to Weſt, having once a Town of the ſame name ſeated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careleſs of keeping their Promiſes, and Contracts: whence ἀναπαριάζειν grew into a By-word; applied to thoſe who made no reck'ning of their Promiſes. There is now a Town in it called *Cephalo*, but it is of no great note; now called *Bazo* by the Turks, is 50 Miles in compaſs, miſerably poor, but of the *Greek* Religion. *Randolph.*

7. *SCYROS*, oppoſite to *Magneſia* in *Aſia minor*, famous for the Birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, and that it was the Lurking-place of *Achilles*. For his Mother *Thetis*, being forewarned by an Oracle that he ſhould be ſlain in the *Trojan* War, ſent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Iſland, where he was brought up in Woman's Attire amongſt the King's Daughters and deemed a Virgin; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the King's Daughter it was proved to be otherwiſe. Others relate that *Ulyſſes* diſcovered him by a Wile, who, coming thither like a Pedler or Petti-merchant with Arms and other Ware, to avoid diſtruſt, expoſed his Merchandiſe to the view of the Damoſels: When the other Ladies falling on the Tires and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Spear and Shield. Which when *Ulyſſes* had obſerved, he made him leave that Company, and away for *Troy*. The handſomneſs of the Fraud take from *Ovid*; thus:

Conſcia venturi Genitrix Nereia *Fati*
Diſſimulat Cultu Natum; & deceperat omnes
(In quibus Ajacem) *ſumpta fallacia Veſtis.*
Arma ego fœmineis animum motura virilem
Mercibus inſerui, &c.

Thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys* in his Tranſlation of the *Metamorphoſes*.

The whole Deſign in order to relate:
Thetis, foreknowing great *Achilles* Fate;
Diſguis'd her Son, ſo like a Virgin dreſt,
That all miſtook, and *Ajax* with the reſt.
When Arms with Womens Trifles, which might blind
Suſpect, I brought to tempt a manly Mind.
Yet was the *Hero* Virgin-like array'd;
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I ſaid,
O Goddeſs-born, for thee the Fate of *Troy*
Her Fall reſerves: why doubtſt thou to deſtroy
Great *Pergamus*? then made him d'off thoſe Weeds.
And ſent the Mighty unto mighty Deeds.

There is another of this name betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this (though that be the greater Iſle) to which the ſituation of it amongſt the reſt of thoſe Iſlands where reigned ſo many of the *Greek* Kings intereſſed in the War of *Troy* ſeems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in thoſe days ſo much towards the North. It lies to the North of *Negropont*, is large, and has ſeveral very large Harbors, and one great and populous Town, with a ſmall Caſtle to defend them from the troubleſom Pyrates. *Randolph.*

8. *MELOS*, ſituate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponneſus*, and equally diſtant from them both; the Promontories of *Scyllæum* in the one, and that of *Dictynnæum* in the other, ſhooting out againſt it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Byblus*, a Town of that Country, gave that name unto it: Being called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The Birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philoſopher, hence ſirnamed *Melius*, but more properly Ἄθεος or the *Atheiſt*, the firſt who in thoſe dark times of Ignorance abſolutely denied there was a God. Protagoras *Deos in dubium vocavit*, Diagoras *excluſit*, ſaith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compaſs. The Soil is ſufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oil, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble curiouſly beſpotted, and no ſmall ſtore of Mill-ſtones; as alſo great quantities of Pitch and Brimſtone, and ſome Sulphury or hot Springs good for many Diſeaſes. The chief Town of it is called *Milo* alſo. The *Turks* call it *Digirmenlick*. It has but one Town which ſtands in a fine Plain; the Inhabitants are thought to be 5000. The Pyrats are a great plague to it, but the *Turks* come rarely there, their Tribute being paid by them at *Scio*.

9. *SERIPHUS*, Twenty miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the Education of *Perſeus* the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Iſland, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but ſuch as are brought from other places keep their natural tone: from whence, Proverbially, ſilent and ſullen Perſons were called *Ranæ Seriphiæ*. It is now called *Serfine* or *Serphone*, a ſtony and rocky Iſland, and hath a Town of the ſame name.

10. *CIA*, by ſome called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, oppoſite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compaſs about 50 miles; made towards the Weſt, in faſhion

of a Creſcent or half Moon; mountainous and hilly, except towards the North; by *Pliny* ſaid to have been torn from *Eubœa*, by a ſudden violence of the Sea, many men periſhing in the waters. Of old times it was beautified with three fair Towns; 1. *Julis*, 2. *Carthea*, and 3. *Careſſus*: of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whoſe names occur amongſt the Ancients: as 11. *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12. *Cythnus*, now *Cauro*; 13. *Siphnus*, now *Siphano*; 14. *Theraſia*, now *Santorini*; 15. *Cimolis*, called formerly *Echinuſa*, but now *Polino*; 16. *Oliarus*, now *Quiniminio*, 17. *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 18. *Polyægos*, now *Falconara*; 19. *Amorgos*, now *Morgo*, one of the biggeſt of them all, but not elſe obſervable.

9. The *SPORADES* are ſo called from σπείρω, *ſpargo*, *eo quod in Mari ſparſa ſunt, & non in Circulum coacta*, becauſe they lie diſperſed and ſcattered, not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. They are in number twelve. *viz.* 1. *Anaphe*, ſo called by the *Argonauts*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀναφανείσης σκοτομήνης, becauſe the Moon did ſuddenly, and beyond her natural courſe, appear unto them, then grievouſly diſtreſſed by Tempeſt. *Apollo* worſhipped here is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now uſually called *Namfio*. 2. *Aſtypalæa*, now *Stampalia*, in compaſs 88 miles, by ſome of the Ancients called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *Table of the Gods*. In *Aſtypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worſhipped, from hence ſometimes called *Aſtypaleus*. 3. *Helene*, ſo called from that fair *Greek* Dame, whom *Paris* is here ſaid to have firſt deflowered; now called *Macroniſi*. 4. *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is ſaid to have been buried: But others find his Grave at *Naxos*, and ſome at *Chios*; the difference being almoſt as great about the place of his Burial as the place of his Birth. Then are 5. *Laguſa*, 6. *Phocuſa*, 7. *Phacaſia*, 8. *Philocandros*, 9. *Schinuſa*, 10 *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or Story. And finally, 11. *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Caliſte*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the Son of *Auteſion*, conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Mynians*, (theſe laſt of *Theſſaly*) caſt out of *Lemnos* by *Pelaſgus*: in memory of whom, as the Founder of their Name and Nation, the Iſlanders uſed to celebrate an annual Feaſt. A Sedition after happening amongſt this People, the weaker Party, under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admoniſhed ſo to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, paſſed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*. The Birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who aſcribes his Original to this Iſland, as himſelf thus witneſſeth.

Καλλίςη τὸ πάροιθε, τὸ δ᾽ ὕςερον οὔνομα Θήρη
Μήτηρ εὐΐππου πατρίδος ἡμετέρη.

That is to ſay,

Calliſte, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Country the Original.

10. *CYTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lieth in the bottom of the Sea, not above five miles diſtant from *Capo Malio* in *Peloponneſus*; formerly called *Porphyris*, from the abundance of Marble, whereof the Iſland yields good plenty. It is in compaſs about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful Soil, and having many Havens, but thoſe ſmall and unſafe, and very difficult of entrance. It is environed on all ſides with Rocks, of themſelves inacceſſible, by which it is defended from the Turks, who hitherto have ſuffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the diviſion of the Spoil amongſt the *Latines*, ſo often ſpoken of before. It had a Town of the ſame name: ſome two furlongs from the Haven ſtood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancienteſt dedicated to that Goddeſs which the *Gracians* had) and therein her *Statua* in compleat Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the Ruines whereof are ſtill to be ſeen) was *Helen*, the Wife of *Menelaus*, willingly raviſhed by *Paris*, the Son of *Priam*, but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a ſmall Iſland of the *Sporades* by her name called *Helene*, as before is ſaid. From the Devotions of this People paid ſo duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*, by which ſhe is often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*.

Parce metu, Cytherea, *manent immota tuorum*
Fata tibi——
Drive Fear, fair *Cytherea*, from thy mind;
Thou thy Son's Fate immovable ſhalt find.

Mr. *Wheler* aſſures us this Iſland is Barren, Rocky, Mountainous, Ill-peopled, but it has Game and Fowl in plenty. The chief Town lies on the South ſide, and it is ſtill under the *Venetians*. It has a River which in Summer time ſeems dry, but preſerves it ſelf 3 foot under ground. page 47. *Coronelli*. In his Hiſtory of the *Morea*, ſaith it is ſeated in the Gulph of *Laonico* on the South of the *Morea*, and that it has many Harbours upon its Shoars, one of which call'd the *Dragoniers*, on the Eaſt of the Iſland it has good Anchorage, and will ſecure a Numerous Fleet, it being by Nature ſo formed that it may be ſhut up with a Chain, and yet will hold 40 Gallies. *Selim* Emperor of the Turks attempted the Conqueſt of this Iſland by *Hali*, but found ſo ſtout a Reſiſtance, that he gave over the Deſign. The *Lacedemonians* of old, were ~~no leſs~~ Jealous of the Preſervation of this Iſland, than the *Venetians* now are, becauſe it was their Rampart, and ſecured the Trade of *Egypt*; and when the *Athenians* took it in the 8th year of the *Peloponneſian* War from them, they ſoon found the worth of it by the want, their Country from thence forward being expoſed to the Inroads of their Enemies, if they had not forthwith Fortified and Garriſoned the oppoſite Shoars.

And ſo I paſs from the *Ægæan* to the *Cretan* Sea, obſerving this only by the way, that moſt of the 69 Kings which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the War of *Troy* were Kings only of theſe ſmall Iſlands; or elſe of other places as inconſiderable for wealth and Potency: every ſmall Town and Territory having in thoſe early times amongſt the *Gracians* (when Ambition had not taught the Great ones to devour the leſs) a peculiar King.

9. The *Iſlands* of the CRETAN Sea.

THE *CRETAN* Sea is properly that part of the *Ægæan* or *Ionian* Sea which lyeth about the Shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the Command and power thereof: as in thoſe times, the Sea about *Carpathus*, another Iſle of the *Ægæan* had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; tho' ſituate in the *Ægæan* alſo. The Iſles hereof are, 1. *Crete*, 2. *Claude*, 3. *Dia*, and 4. *Letoa*; for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolomy* againſt the Iſlands which adjoyn on *Crete*, having been already ſpoken of amongſt the *Cyclades*, in the accompt whereof they paſs by conſent of Writers.

1. *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the Eaſt the *Carpathian* Sea, on the Weſt the *Ionian*, on the North the *Ægæan*, on the South the *African* or *Libyck*. In form it extendeth Eaſt and Weſt with three Points or Promontories: whereof that towards the Eaſt, called anciently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salamone*; that on the South-weſt, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermæa*, is now *Capo Gabraſſe*; and finally, that on the North-weſt towards *Peloponneſus*, of old called *Cimarus*, is now called *Capo Cheſtin*. This laſt is directly oppoſite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being ſo troubleſome and tempeſtuous, eſpecially on *Laconia* ſide, that at laſt it grew into an ordinary Caveat, *Maleam prætervectus obliviſcatur quæ ſunt domi*, *viz.* that he which was to Sail by the point of *Malea*, ſhould lay aſide the care of all other matters, and attend his preſent Safety only.

It hath in ſeveral Ages and in ſeveral Authors obtained ſeveral names. By *Homer* and *Auſtathius* it is called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an 100 Cities then contained in it: by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros*, and *Macaroneſos*, that is to ſay, the *happy Iſland* from the goodneſs of the Soil and Temper of the Air: by *Stephanus*, *Idæa*, from *Ida* a famous Mountain of it: by *Giraldus*, *Telchinia*, from the *Telchini*, the Prieſts of *Cybele*, who was here had in great requeſt. At the preſent it is called *Candia*, either *a Candore*, from the whitineſs of the Rocks wherewith it is environed; or from *Candia* the Metropolis or chief Town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed moſt in all ſorts of Writers is that of *Crete*, ſo called *quaſi Cureta*, by a Syncope or Abbreviation, from the *Curetes*, the firſt Inhabitants hereof; who together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini*, where the Prieſts of *Cybele* the principal Goddeſs of this Iſland: and they ſo called ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *Tonſure* or *Shaving* of the Head. A Cuſtom much in uſe amongſt the Prieſts of ſome of the Pagan Deities, and poſſibly enough from them tranſmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this Etymology I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Cretes*, the Son of *Jupiter* and the Nymph *Idæa*, or from *Crete* the Daughter of *Heſperus*, though both theſe have their Authors alſo. Nor dare I to reject the Conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the Etymons of moſt people from the *Punick* Language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be deſcended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philiſtins*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans* is no difficult paſſage. But in my mind his Conjecture is better than his Proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience that the chief Arms of the *Philiſtins* were their Bow and Arrows, as appears 1 *Sam*. 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at thoſe Weapons alſo: yet this concludes no more than the *Cretans* are of the Race of the *Philiſtins*, than that almoſt all Nations elſe had the ſame Original; the Bow and Arrows being the ordinary Weapons of moſt People formerly, till Cuſtom and Experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himſelf acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate Tractates.

In reference to the Heavenly Bodies it is ſituate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, ſo that the longeſt Day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter, and in relation to the Earth, ſet in the middle of the Sea, at ſo even a diſtance from *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, as if naturally deſigned to be what *Ariſtotle* hath pleaſed to call it, the *Lady* and *Miſtreſs of the Sea*. For it is diſtant from *Peloponneſus* an hundred miles, as many from *Aſia* the Leſs, and not above 150 from the Shores of *Africk*: ſo verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis *magni medio jacet Inſula Ponto.*
Jove's Birth-place *Crete*, a fruitful Land,
In the middle of the Sea doth ſtand.

It is in length 270, in breadth 50 miles, in compaſs about 590. The Soil is very fruitful, eſpecially of Wines which we call *Muſcadells*, of which they tranſport yearly 12000 Butts, together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orenges, Limons, Raiſins, Melons, Citorns, Pomegranates. Yet, as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn, the moſt or greateſt part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponneſus*.

The Iſland is very populons, inſomuch that it is thought that upon any ſudden occaſion the Seignioury of *Venice* can raiſe in it 60000 men able to bear Arms. The People have formerly been good Sea-faring men, a Vertue commaculated with many Vices, which they yet retain, as Envy, Malice, and Lying; to which laſt they are ſo infinitely addicted, that an horrible Lie was called proverbially *Cretenſe mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a Native of this Iſland, whoſe words are thus cited by S. *Paul* to *Titus*, Chap. 1. v. 12.

Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί.

The *Cretans* always Liers are,
Unruly Beaſts of Labour ſpare.

To which this Proverb may be added, *viz.* Τρία Κάππα κάκιστα. that is to ſay, There are three Nations whoſe names begin with the letter *K*, worſe then any other, *viz.* Καππαδόκαι, Κρῆτες, Κίλικες. the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though ſome, I know, apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the ſame Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are ſick of their old Diſeaſes, as great Liars and as Idle as ever formerly; Covetous withal, and very ſubtile, impatient of Labour, and not caring to learn any Science perfectly: only well practiſed in Shooting, to which they are accuſtomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the Turks themſelves.

The Language generally ſpoken is the *Greek* Tongue, though the Gentlemen and Merchant, by reaſon of their Dependance on the State of *Venice*, ſpeak *Italian* alſo. Both Languages are uſed alſo in Divine Offices; the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* Service is uſed alſo in many places, ſince the Subjection of this Iſland to the *Venetians*. They were converted firſt unto the Faith by S. *Paul* the Apoſtle, who having planted the Goſpel of Life amongſt them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Biſhop of this Iſle; recommending unto him the Care of the Churches there: with power of Ordination and Eccleſiaſtical Cenſure: as appears clearly by the Text. Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Biſhop, and not as their Evangeliſt only, is affirmed expreſly not only by the Subſcription of the ſaid Epiſtle, where he is plainly called τῆς Κρητῶν ἐκκλησίας πρῶτον ἐπίσκοπον, the firſt Biſhop of the Church of the *Cretans*, but by the concurrent Teſtimonies of *Euſeb. Eccl. Hiſt. l.* 3. *c.* 4. S. *Ambr. in Præfat. ad Tit.* S. *Hierom. in Tit. c.* 1. *v.* 5. and in his Tract *de Scripter. Eccleſiaſticis*, *Theodoret*, cited by *Oecumen. in Præfat. ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himſelf in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact* in his Preface to the ſame Epiſtle. All which in plain terms call him *Biſhop*, and the Biſhop of *Crete*; according to that ſenſe and meaning of the word *Epiſcopus*, as it was uſed in their times, diſtinct from *Preſbyter*. The Church hereof, whilſt wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchs, was governed by four Arch-biſhops and 21 Biſhops. But ſince the Subjection of this Iſland to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbiſhop, which is he of *Candia*, the chief City, and eight Biſhops only; beſides the Titular Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who hath there his Reſidence; ſome Prelate of the *Latin* Church having been always honoured with that empty Title ever ſince the Recovery of that City from the Weſtern Chriſtians.

Famous was this Iſland amongſt the Ancients for many things memorized both by the Poets and old Hiſtorians. For here reigned *Saturn* in the firſt Ages of the World, Father of *Jupiter*, who was born here, and ſecretly nurſed in the Hill called *Ida*. For ſeeing that, by the Compact betwixt *Saturn* and his Brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own Life only, but all his Male-children to be murthered as ſoon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his Mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and ſecretly nurſed in Mount *Ida*, as before was ſaid: the Crying of the Infant being drowned by the noiſe of loud-ſounding Cymbals, purpoſely uſed by his Rockers to avoid Diſcovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes*, or Prieſts of *Cybele*, uſed in her Sacrifices the like muſical Inſtruments, continually ſounding, and withal ſhaking of their Heads, (like Fidlers) in an antick and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *Ære canoro*
Luſtravit Corybas.
That is to ſay,
No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou was born did on his Cymbal play.

Here alſo lived *Minos* and *Rhadamanthus*, whoſe Laws were imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who, for their Equity on Earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Æacus*) the Judges in Hell. In this Iſland alſo lived the lewdly-luſtful *Paſiphae*, Wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a Fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they ſay, begat on her the *Minotaur*. *Dædalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which ſhe conveyed her ſelf, and by that means obtained her deſire. The Fable is thus expounded, that *Paſiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Mino's* Secretaries: whoſe company by the Pandariſm of *Dædalus* ſhe enjoying, was delivered of two Sons, one called *Minos*, the other *Taurus*. And whereas it is ſaid that the *Minotaur* was ſlain by *Theſeus*; like enough that the annual Tribute of 7 Children, which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in ſome Priſon, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Gaolers. As for the action of *Paſiphae*, I think it not altogether impoſſible to be true, conſidering how *Domitian*, to verifie the old relation, exhibited the like beaſtly Spectacle in his Amphitheatre at *Rome*: for thus ſaith *Martial*,

Junctam Paſiphaen Dictæo, *credite* Tauro
Vidimus; accepit Fabula priſca fidem.
Nec ſe miretur (Cæſar) *longæva Vetuſtas:*
Quicquid Fama canit, donat Arena tibi.
The Fable's prov'd a truth, our eyes did ſee
The *Cretan* Bull ſport with *Paſiphae*.
What cauſe hath then Antiquity to glory?
We ſaw it done, ſhe only heard the Story.

Finally, here was the ſo-much-celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and ſafe keeping of the *Minotaurus*; ſo full of various Windings and Turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impoſſible for him to come out but by the help of a Clew of thread. By this *Minotaur* (half a Man, half a Bull) the Children of the *Athenians*, paid yearly to *Minos* in way of Tribute, are ſaid to be murthered, till he was killed by *Theſeus*, Son of *Ægeus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monſter, and gave him the Clew of thread, before ſpoken of, to conduct him out again: the Moral or Hiſtory whereof hath been ſhewn before. Nor muſt it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the Geographer, who flouriſhed in the time of *Tiberius Cæſar*, was of *Cretan* Parents, (though born in the City of *Amaſia* in the Realm of *Pontus*:) which adds unto this Iſland as much true Renown as any of the Fictions or Stories (be which they will) of former times.

Things moſt obſervable at the preſent are theſe that follow. 1. That it breeds no Serpents, no venemous Worm or ravenous or hurtful creature; ſo that their ſheep graze very ſecurely without any Shepherd. 2. If a Woman bite a Man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it: which if true, then the laſt part of the Priviledge foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) muſt needs be falſe. 3. They have an Herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he ſhall feel no Hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed, who ſpeaks it. 4. Here is (beſides many other medicinal Herbs) that called *Dictamnum*, or *Dictamnus*, of ſpecial virtue againſt Poiſon, either by way of Prevention or preſent Cure, peculiar only to this Iſland: it affordeth great ſtore of *Laudanum*, a Juice or Gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain Tree called *Ciſtus*, of which the Mountains yield abundance; good to cauſe Sleep, if moderately or carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation it brings the laſt Sleep upon a man, out of which he is not to be awakened till the Sound of the laſt Trumpet raiſe him.

Chief Mountains of it are, 1. *Ida*, now *Pſiloriti*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, begirt about with many fair and pleaſant Villages, ſheltered by it from the violence of Wind and Sun; the Hill being ſo high, that from the Top hereof both ſides of the Iſland may be eaſily ſeen. Here *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been ſecretly nurſed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* uſe to ſhew ſome tracts of the ancient Labyrinth, being indeed no other then the Ruins of ſome larger Quarry: the Labyrinth made by *Dædalus* being ſo defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any Ruins of it. 2. *Dicte*, now called *Sethia*, in ſome places *Laſthi*, ſo high, that all the Winter long it is covered with Snow, yet all the ſides thereof are garniſhed with Cypreſs-trees, a Mountain of ſuch fame, that the whole Iſland ſometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dictynna*, the Promontory *Dictynnæum*, and the Herb *Dictamnos*, all ſeeming to take name from hence. 3. *Lenti*, a long Chain of Hills, ſo named from the Whiteneſs of them, now called *di Mædara*, and by ſome *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of thoſe that be, are, 1. *Nilopotamus*, 2. *Scaſinus*, 3. *Epicidnus*, and, 4. *Divotro*, towards the North. 5. *Populiar*, towards the Eaſt; and 6. *Limens*, towards the Weſt: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of Burthen, ſcarce of little Barks. But that defect is ſupplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many Creeks and Bays, ſome capacious Havens, and great ſtore of Fiſh, among which a kind of bearded Mullet, reckoned among the Delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fiſh-trade, and the ſituation of it in the midſt of the Sea, the people anciently were eſteemed ſo good Sea-faring men, that when the people of thoſe times did tax a man with any incredible report, they uſed to ſay, *Cretenſis neſcit Pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no Sailour.

In former times there were reckoned in this Iſland an hundred Cities, whence it was called *Hecatompolis*; of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolomy*, for ſo many of their names he gives us. Thoſe of moſt note were, 1. *Gnoſus*, the Seat-Royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* had the name of *Gnoſſis*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2. *Cydon* or *Cydonia*, a midland City, (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apples, which the *Latines* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongſt them they were in great requeſt, as they are at this day (though by the name of *Adam's Apples*) amongſt the Turks: the moſt ancient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at firſt Colonies of this: for which reaſon it was called commonly *Mater urbium*. 3. *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolomy*; *Erythræa*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it; one of the firſt Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolomy*; the place in which S. *Paul* left *Trophimus* ſick, as it is mentioned 2. *Tim.* 4. 20, which happened when the Apoſtle hovered over that Coaſt, as it is ſaid *Acts* 27. 7, 8. *&c.* For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Epheſus*, appeareth by his being at *Hieruſalem*, *Acts* 21. 17. and other circumſtances of the Story. 5. *Gortyna*, nigh to which ſtood the Labyrinth made by *Dædalus*: memorable alſo for a Reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (near to which it ſtood) of which they made their ſtrongeſt Arrows, by *Virgil Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Gortynia*; as for a light Garment much uſed by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Gortyniam veſtem*, apparelling *Diana* the great Huntreſs with it. 6. *Dictamnum*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Dictynna*, as *Pliny* calls it, ſo named from the Hill *Dicte*, near to which it is ſituate: one of the chief Cities of the North part of this Iſland; as 7. *Ampelus*, ſo named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8. *Minea*, a Port-town, (now *Altemara*) ſo named from *Minos*, in the Eaſt; and 9. *Corycus*, on a Promontory of the ſame name, in the Weſt ſide of it.

But theſe, and almoſt all the reſt ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, being ſo deſtroyed by Time and Wars that the ruines of them are hardly viſible, we muſt behold it in the preſent condition and eſtate thereof; divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities; that is to ſay, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candia*, 3. *Retimo*, and 4. *Canea*.

The Reader will find the Hiſtory of the Conqueſt of this Iſland, at the foot of the account given by *Heylin*, where I thought it was beſt to place it. The preſent State of the principal places I have intermixed, from one Mr. *Randolph*, who for ſome time lived in it about the year 1675, and ſaw all the great Cities.

In the firſt part, called *SITTIA*, living towards the Eaſt, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Pariſhes, of which ſix only are of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue holding the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by ſome to be the *Cytæum* of *Ptolomy*; a ſmall Town but populous, and very well fortified. The City of *Sittia*, ſtands at the North Eaſt part of the Iſland, on a Bay, the Caſtle ſtood on the North Weſt of the Town, on a riſing ground, and was built of a courſe Marble Stone. This Town and Caſtle was blown up and deſerted by the *Venetians* upon the Landing of the Turks in 1645, after which they retired to *Candia*. 2. *Gierapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, ſeated on the Sea-ſide, on a lofty Rock, at the bottom whereof is ſaid to be a dangerous Whirl-pit, ſuppoſed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolomy*. This Town lies on the South ſide of the Iſland, and has an un-ſecure Port. Though the Town is wall'd and has a ſmall Caſtle and a Garriſon of 200 Janiſaries. The Houſes are well built of good Stone, and the Rooms lofty though but two Stories high; beſides the Garriſon they can Arm 300 Turks, yet in the year 1675, a famous Privateer called *Crevellier* with 500 men ſurprized this Town, and carried 200 into Slavery, and got away ſafe when he had done. 3. St. *Macor*, the dwelling-place of one of the Biſhops of the *Latines*.

2. The ſecond part hereof, called the Territory of *Candia*, lying directly Weſt of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongſt them 99 Pariſh-Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of theſe the principal are, 1. *Candia*, an Archbiſhop's See, the Metropolis or Head City of the Iſland, which takes name from hence. It is ſituate on the North coaſt hereof towards the *Ægæan*, beautified with a ſafe and commodious Haven, and fortified ſo ſtrongly, that it ſeems impregnable; affirmed by ſome to be the *Matium* of the Ancients; but I find no ſuch place in *Ptolomy*, or in *Ortelius* his *Theſaurus*. The City is fair and large, built for the moſt part of Free-ſtone, with low Roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the Streets broad and ſpacious, from whence a fair and pleaſant plain leadeth to a place called the Cave of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. This City ſtands almoſt at an equal diſtance from *Canea* and *Sittia*, on a pleaſant Bay, having alſo an artificial Haven ſecured from the North Wind by a *Mole* of 200 yards, with a large ſtrong Caſtle at the head of it which has 20 Cannons. It is ſecured on the Eaſt, by a point of Land, the entrance of it not exceeding 30 yards; upon this point of Land, the Turks have built a covered way, with a very thick Wall which leads to a ſmall Fort, with four great Guns, both ſtrongly Arched to hinder the force of Bombes, and over againſt the Mouth of the Harbour, another Fort with four great Guns planted low, and eight ſmaller above them. The City is not repaired towards the Land, where the Walls were ſo ſhaken by the Siege, that the Turks will not be at the charge of repairing them. The Walls and out-works are 6 miles circumference. About an eighth part of the Houſes are now inhabited, the reſt are deſolate. The number of the Inhabitants at preſent is thought to be 10000, and there is a Garriſon of 2000 Janiſaries always in it. *Randolph*. 2. *Malviſin*, 3. *Themene*, 4. *Caſtel Novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*; of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the Territory of *Retimo*, formerly *Rhithymna*, lying North-weſt of the Territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Pariſhes, whereof 36 are *Græcians*, and but 8 of the *Latins*. The chief of which are, 1. *Retimo*, on the Shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Biſhop's See; but not elſe obſervable. *Retimo* ſtands on a point of Land very pleaſantly, having a port to the Eaſt, but almoſt choaked up with ſand, towards the Sea are no Walls. This was the firſt place the Turks took, ſaith my Author, putting all to the Sword they found in it. They have built three Forts towards the Sea, and a Wall with a dry Ditch to the Land-ward, and it is chiefly inhabited by Turks. 2. *Milopotamo*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, ſo called of the River *Milopotamus*, on which it is ſeated, 3. *Agiſtiman*, 4. *Mandras*, 5. *Lappa*; hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and laſt part hereof, being the Territory of *Canea*, taking up all the Weſt of the Iſland, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, diſtributed into 47 Pariſhes; of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Thoſe of moſt note are 1. *Canea*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen, on the North coaſt alſo, ſuppoſed to ſtand in the ſame place where once *Cydon* did; ſecond to none but *Candia* for Wealth and Beauty, but far before it for the commodiouſneſs of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thouſand good Gallies at a time; and therefore ſtrongly fortified with two Cittadels or Caſtles, on each ſide of the Haven one, as the Door and Entrance of the Country. *Canea* is ſeated in a fine plain about 3 miles from the bottom of the Bay of *Suda*; having a very fair ſafe Harbour, which the Turks have much fortified. The Houſes are well built, and not much Damnified by the War. And the Walls are in good repair, and have a dry Dike thirty yards broad, and ſix deep about them, and the Walls are about thirty foot high, and have the Earth on the inſide 10 foot higher then they are. The City is about three miles in circumference, and much better inhabited than *Candia*, and better Traded. *Randolph*, who ſaw this Iſland and lived in it. 2. *Chiſamo*, in Latin called *Ciſamus*, old and decayed, the Walls thereof only holding good againſt the Ruines of time; ſituate in a low Mooriſh place towards the *Ægæan*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a Hill on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to *Chiſamo*. 4. *Sfachia*, or *Spachia*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia*, from this Town: unwalled, but fortified with a Caſtle; built for a place of Refuge againſt the Incurſions of ſuch Pirates as annoyed the Coaſts, in which the Governour for this part hath his chief Abode. By which account it will appear that in the whole Iſland are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, and 207 Pariſh-Churches; of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the Reſidue, 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the Story of this Iſland, we can aſcend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Veſta*, or of Heaven and Earth; who bettered favoured by his Mother obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder Brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon Wars ariſing betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, That *Saturn* for his own Life ſhould enjoy the Kingdom, which after his deceaſe ſhould return to the *Titans*: and for the performance of this Contract, the Sons of *Saturn* were to be ſtrangled as ſoon as born. But *Cybele* the Wife of *Saturn* unawars to her Husband, preſerved firſt *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons; which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his Sons, they made War againſt *Saturn*, but in concluſion were ſubdued by the Aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring againſt the Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his Son being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquiſhed, a new War aroſe betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occaſioned only (as many unnatural Wars ſince theſe times have been (by Fears and Jealouſies: which ending at the laſt in the Flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became ſole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death, and dying was interred at *Gnoſſus*, with this Inſcription or Epitaph in old *Greek* Letters, ὁ Ζὰν τῦ Κρόνυ, that is to ſay *Jupiter the Son of Saturn*. After his death he was worſhipped by the blind Gentiles as the chief of their Gods, and honoured frequently with the Title of Πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν τε θεῶν τε *the Father both of Gods and Men*: though moſt incongruouſly and abſurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thouſands living in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed; he being dead, *Minos*, begotten by him on *Europa*, ſucceeded here, who, wiſely taking the advantage which the convenient ſituation of the Iſland gave him, made himſelf Maſter of the Seas, and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the Conqueſt of the *Megarenſes* and *Athenians*, upon which laſt he impoſed, amongſt other hard Conditions, a Tribute of ſeven Male Children yearly to be kept as Hoſtages; which determined after three years by the Valour and good Fortune of *Theſus*. But *Minos* being ſlain in *Sicily*; and his Poſterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themſelves after the manner of a Common-wealth or Free State: The Laws and Ordinances whereof, firſt deviſed by *Minos*, were of ſuch eſteem that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large deſcribed by *Ariſtotle* in the 2. Book of his Politicks, ch. 8. Under the Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the reſt of *Greece*, picked a Quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his War againſt them; yet *Florus* ſtates the matter rightly, affirming that the War was undertaken on no other ground, but *ſola nobilem Inſulam vincendi cupiditate*, out of a covetous deſire only of ſubduing ſuch a wealthy Iſland. And to this War they went with ſo proud a Confidence, that M. *Anthony*, who commanded in it, carried more Chains with him to bring home his Priſoners then Arms to conquer them. An Inſolence which he paid right dear for, his Navy being vanquiſhed by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his ſlain Souldiers hanged upon the Maſts, and himſelf periſhing in the Action by a fit of Sickneſs. *Metellus*, who ſucceeded him in that charge, went on more ſucceſsfully, firſt taking *Gnaſſus*, *Eleuthera*, or (*Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydon*, their principal Cities, and not long after all the Iſland; uſing the vanquiſhed Iſlanders with ſuch Inhumanity, that moſt of them poiſoned themſelves to avoid his Cruelty: rewarded with no other Honour for ſo great a Victory, than that he got the ſir-name of *Creticus*; his Triumph being denied by the Faction of *Pompey*, againſt whoſe will he had put himſelf upon that Service. This being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was after united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a Proconſul till the death of *Nero*; afterwards ſeparated from it, but the time I find not. During the Reign of *Conſtantine*, in 36 years together there fell no Rain, ſo that this Iſland was in a manner wholly deſolated. But *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine*, having obtained Rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by ſeveral Colonies brought out of *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoyning. By *Conſtantine* made a Province of the Dioceſs of *Macedonia*, it continued a Member of the Eaſtern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when it was ſubdued by the *Sarazens* from them recovered by the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire, *Anno* 963. In the diviſion of the Spoil amongſt the *Latins*, it was firſt given to *Boniface* Marquiſs of *Montferrat*, by him ſurrendred willingly to the State of *Venice*, in 1194, or as others in 1294, who had a mind to be poſſeſſed of all the Iſlands of that Empire: he being recompenced with the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Theſſalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponneſus*. Under that State it ſtill continueth, in vain attempted by *Selimus* the ſecond in the year 1571, at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*; and gallantly defended for this year laſt paſt againſt all the Forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Seignior. What the Succeſs of this War will be, we ſhall ſee hereafter.

For the Defence hereof againſt the Inſurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at firſt ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are ſome ſtanding Forces kept in conſtant pay; beſides ſuch as are maintain'd in ſeveral Garriſons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer than ſix Companies of Soldiers, *Candia* 2000 Soldiers, and the leſſer Cities proportionably: over which there is ſet ſo ſtrong a Guard, that a Natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preſervation of their Intereſt in it from foreign Power, they have furniſhed the Iſland with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the Shores; and having exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda* with two ſtrong Caſtles, this Haven being capable of more then 100 Veſſels, and therefore meritoriouſly reputed the Door and entry into the Country. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the ſecond, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven Mony more then enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* ſeemed only to intend the Retreat and relief of his own Navy when he ſhould undertake any Expedition againſt the Turk; yet the Wiſe *Venetians* ſaw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he liſted ſurprize, the whole Country. The *Venetians* purchaſed this Iſland the 12th of *Auguſt* 1204, of *Boniface* of *Montferrat*, but the Inhabitants reſiſting this Sale, put the *Venetians* to the trouble of a Conqueſt, whereupon the Iſland was divided between the Noble *Venetians* or Chavalry, the Noble Candiots or Colony which were the *Venetian* Infantry, and the *Greeks* or Natives who did not Rebel, but took part with the *Venetians*. The firſt two are of the *Latin* Church and ſpeak *Italian*, the third are of the *Greek* Language and Religion. In the year 1645, the Turks began a furious War upon this Iſland, for having only ſecured a *Malteſe*-Fleet, which had beaten and taken a Rich Eunuch, who was going to *Egypt* with his Wealth, the year before in *April*. This Turkiſh-Fleet which conſiſted of 81 Gallies, one Gallion, 12 Turkiſh and 10 Engliſh and Dutch Ships, and 300 Saiks, having on Board 7000 Janiſaries, 14000 Spahees, 50000 Timariots, and 3000 Pioniers ſet Sail for *Candia*, and Landed the 23th of *June* at *Gogna* about 18 miles from *Canea*, and overthrew the few Chriſtians that afterwards oppoſed them, the *Venetians* who expected no War, being in no capacity to oppoſe them: they took *Canæa* the ſecond City of the Iſland, with much ſlaughter of the Chriſtians the firſt year. The year following they attack'd *Retimo*, the *Venetians* having no ſucceſs at Sea in 1647. The Turkiſh Fleet Landed 40000 Fighting Men more, the *Venetian* Fleet looking on, tho' equal in number, and better appointed; and thereupon they began the Seige of *Candia*, the principal City, but were forced to riſe with great loſs. In 1650, they began another Seige, from hence forward the War was managed with great variety, the Turks being generally the looſers, though they could never be expell'd out of the Iſland, till at laſt in the year 1669, the 27th of *Septomber* this City was ſurrendered into the hands of the the Prince Viſier, when but five of the Inhabitants ſtaid behind, and a few Decrepit Jews and Greeks to the number of 30: yet was the taking this City the beſt news *Mahomet* the 4th ever heard. Theſe 30 Acrers of Ground having coſt him an ineſtimable expence of blood and Treaſure. And in all appearance having laid the Foundation of the Ruin and utter Subverſion of this Empire, which has never Thriven ſince this War. When the Turks entred this Iſland, there were above a Million of Souls in it, but they are now not thought to exceed 80000, of which not above 30000 are Turks. And all the Churches which belonged to the *Latins* are now wall'd up and no Chriſtian Service allowed but the *Greek*. In the beginning of this year 1688, there was a ſtrong report that the *Venetians* had recovered this Iſland, and that it was ſold them by the Turkiſh Garriſons, which though contradicted for the preſent, yet it is certain the Turkiſh affairs are here in a very low condition, and they might eaſily be driven out, if the *Venetians* would turn their Arms againſt them, the Candiots being well diſpoſed to ſhake off the Turkiſh Yoke, and joyn with their old Maſters againſt the Turks, though they are better Treated than any other people who are ſubject to the Port.

II. The other Iſlands of this Sea, as of leſſer note, will be paſs'd over in few words. The firſt of which is called *Claude*, mentioned *Acts* 27. 16. ſituate on the South weſt of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Pliny's* time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*, now called *Gozo*, with the Iſland. 2. *Dia*, now *Standia*, a very ſmall Iſland, and of little note. 3. *Letoa*, on the South-eaſt of *Crete*, now called *Chriſtina*. And 4. *Ægilia*, or *Ægialia*, by *Pliny Ægila*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponneſus*; now called *Cecerigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of leſs note (if leſs may be) there is no more to be ſaid, but that they have always followed the Fortunes of *Crete*, on which they ſeem to have their principal Dependance.

10. The *Iſlands* of the *IONIAN* Sea.

THE *IONIAN* Sea is ſo called either from *Ionius*, the Son of *Dyrrhachius*, who *Hercules* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preſerve his memory, as *Dydymus* is of opinion, or from *Ionia* a Region in the Extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the Daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean* which lyeth from the *Ægæan* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick* from which it is parted about *Epidamnum*, (otherwiſe called *Dyrrhachium*, now *Durazzo* as is ſaid by *Ptolomy*; or rather at the ſhooting out of the *Acroceraunian* Hills, as is affirmed by *Pliny* and other Writers; and ſo along the ſhores of the two *Calabria*'s to the Iſle of *Sicily*. Chief Iſles whereof which paſs in the account of *Greece* (for of thoſe lying on the Coaſt of *Italy* we have ſpoken elſewhere) are, 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephælania*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. The *Strophades* are two ſmall Iſlands, now called *Strivali*, lying againſt *Meſſene* in *Peloponneſus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous Birds, affirmed to have the faces of Women, but the Talons of Vultures, ſent by the offended Gods (as the Fable goeth) for the puniſhment of *Phineas* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the Eyes of his Sons by a former Wife at the inſtigation of their Stepdame: For which he was ſo plagued by theſe *Harpyes*, that he could ſet no Meat on his Table whereſoever he was, but theſe ravenous creatures firſt devoured it, and then bewrayed the Diſhes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonauts*, whom he had courteouſly entertained, they ſent *Zethes* and *Calais*, the winged Iſſue of *Boreas* and *Orithya*, who drave them thence, and having purſued them to thoſe Iſlands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which Fable was contained the ſad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by Flatterers, Informers, and falſe Accuſers, by whom their name and Government was made diſtaſtful; till by good Council they had purged their Courts of ſuch ugly Monſters: concerning which *Alphonſus* King of *Naples* was uſed to ſay, that theſe *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades* and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by ſome few *Greek* Friers: and in one of them there is a Spring of Freſh Water, which hath his Fountain in *Peloponneſus*, and paſſing under the Sea riſeth here. The *Greek* Prieſts are called *Calories*, *quaſi καλοὶ ἱερεῖς boni Sacerdotes*; about 30 in number. They wear long Hair, never eat Fleſh, and but ſeldom Fiſh; feeding uſually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like. They never go out of the Iſlands, neither do they on any occaſion permit Women to come amongſt them. They all labour for their Suſtenance, ſome in Tillage, ſome in Vineyards, ſome in Fiſhing; ſo that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of theſe ſomewhat hath been ſaid elſewhere already.

2. *Zacynthus*, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compaſs, and diſtant from *Peloponneſus* 20 miles; ſo called of *Zacynthus*, Son to *Dardanus*. The Country is wonderfully ſtored with Oyl, Wines and Currants: of which laſt they made yearly 150000 Zecchines for their own Coffers and 48000 Dollars which they pay for Cuſtom to the Seignioury of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the Engliſh uſed to Traffick there firſt; but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants firſt frequenting the Country, they much marvelled to what end they bought ſo many Currants: and demanded whether they uſed to dye Cloaths or fat Hogs with them, for ſo they themſelves did: but now they have learned a more profitable uſe of them. Here are alſo very good Salt-pits, Freſh-water plenty, but little or no Wood, and leſs Corn: their ground being Husbanded, as the caſe ſtands with them, to their better advantage; but ſo that many times they are ready to ſtarve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove croſs unto them, and hinder them from fetching their Proviſions both of Fleſh and Corn out of *Peloponneſus*, in which reſpect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the Turks; conſidering how eaſie it is for him to diſtreſs them for want of Victual. The Iſland is much troubled with Earthquakes, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their Houſes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Prieſts are to ring the Bells, to ſtir the people to Prayers. They have a Cuſtom here at Weddings to invite many young men, whom they call *Compeers*, of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring: which done, it is accounted as deteſtable a Sin as Inceſt for them to accompany her in any carnal kind: and therefore they chuſe ſuch to be their *Compeers* who have formerly been ſuſpected of too much Familiarity with her.

The Iſland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a ſpiteful and vindicative nature, not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof, which paſſeth by the name of a City, is called alſo *Zant*, ſtretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in breadth not anſwerable; beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, ſafe from the danger of Pirates, though not of Winds; capable of great Fleets of ſhipping both for bulk and number, and ſo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it need not ſtay for a paſſage. Yet, notwithſtanding this great Concourſe and reſort of Strangers, the Town is rather rich than well-built or beautiful; the Streets hereof being uneven and rugged, and the Buildings by reaſon of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the Eaſt ſide of it, on a round ſteep Mountain, ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, a little City of it ſelf, well garriſoned; impregnably fortified, and of a very difficult Entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoyning. Upon the Wall thereof continually ſtands a Watchman to deſcry what Shipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many Flags as he diſcovereth Veſſels. And over the Door of the Town-Hall (the better to inſtruct the Magiſtrates in their publick Duty) it is ſaid theſe Verſes are inſcribed:

Hic locus 1. *odit*, 2. *amat*, 3. *punit*, 4. *conſervat*,
5. *honorat*,
1. *Nequitiam*, 2. *Pacem*, 3. *Crimina*, 4. *Jura*,
5. *Probos*.

Thus *Engliſhed* by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1. hate, 2. love, 3. puniſh, 4. keep,
5. requite,
1. Voluptuous Riot, 2. Peace, 3. Crimes, 4. Laws, 5. the
Upright.

In matter of Religion, the people, being generally *Greeks* both in Birth and Language, are for the moſt part of that Church alſo; but ſome adhere unto the *Latine*, each party having their own Biſhop: of which the *Greek* Biſhop hath his Cathedral in the Church of Saint *Nicolas*, near unto the Haven which it giveth name to, and therein a Monaſtery of *Caloires*, or Monks of *Baſil*; the *Latin* Biſhop hath his Reſidence and Cathedral within the Caſtle, and therein a Convent of *Franciſcans*. The Jews have in this Town their Synagogue alſo;

alſo: but there are not many of them, if not lately encreaſed. In Civil matters they are ſubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his Reſidence in the Caſtle, aſſiſted by a Chancellour and two Counſellors, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The Fortunes of this Iſland in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we ſhall ſhew anon. Mr. *Wheler* tells us, this Iſland lies in 36. 30. Latitude, 30 miles from the *Morea* to the Weſt, it is little but very fruitful and pleaſant. The Town and Iſland are very populous. The People of this Iſle are much Latinized in their Doctrine, and yet hath the Church of *Rome* as much as ever. The Currants of this Iſland grow not on Buſhes as we ſuppoſe, but on Vines, and are a ſmall black Grape without Stones. They have this Name from *Corinth*, where they firſt grew, though there are none now. They are gathered in *Auguſt*, and ſpread thin on the Ground till they are Dry. The reſt of his Account, and his Map of the Iſland, may be found page the 30th.

3. The *Echinades* are certain little Iſlands, or rather great Rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for nothing but the great Battle of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the Turks; the Turks having in their Navy 207 ſail of Ships, the *Venetians* and their Confederates but 145 of all ſorts. But it pleaſed God to give the Victory to the weakeſt: the Iſſue of it being ſuch, that the Turks loſt 29000 men who were killed in the Fight, 39000 more which were taken Priſoners 140 of their Gallies, 400 pieces of Ordnance, and 200 Chriſtian Captives which were then redeemed: the Chriſtians buying this great Victory with the death of 7656 men or thereabouts, too great a price, could it have been purchaſed with a leſs. A Victory obtained not far from the point of *Actium*, wherein *Auguſtus* overcame the Navy of *Marcus Antonius*, and thereby got the Empire to himſelf alone, of which before he was but Joint-tenant with his Adverſary. So that this place ſeems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent Actions; and that this latter Naval fight was but the ſecond part of the firſt.

But to return unto theſe Iſlands. They ſtand juſt againſt the Mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus the Poet,

Turbidas objectas Achelous Echinadas *exit.*

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt,
Where the *Echinades* (great Rocks) are fixt.

Theſe Iſlands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be ſo many *Naiades* or Sea Nymphs, whom *Achelous* the River-God upon ſome diſpleaſure metamorphoſed into theſe Rocky Iſlands. But the truth is, that they were cauſed by the Dirt and Mud which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laſt is ſettled to firm Ground. Of which himſelf ſaith thus in *Ovid*,

——————*Fluctus noſtrique mariſque*
Continuum deducit humum, parteque revellit,
In totidem mediis quot cernis Echinadas *undis.*

The fury of the Sea-waves and mine own
Continual heaps of Mud and Earth drew down,
Which, parted by the inter-running Seas,
Made, as thou ſeeſt, theſe five *Echinades*.

5. *Cephalenia*, the moſt populous Iſland of this Sea, is ſituate over againſt *Acarnania*, part of the Province of *Epirus*; having on the South eaſt *Zant*, on the North-weſt *Corcyra* or *Corfu*; in length containing 80 miles, 40 in breadth, the whole compaſs being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it; but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolomy*, who takes notice of no more but one, and that of the ſame name with the Iſland. It is woody and mountainous in moſt places, but the Mountains intermixt with Valleys and the Woods with Campain: plentiful in in Wheat, Honey, Currants, Manna, Oyl incomparable, though not long laſting, Muſcadels; as alſo in Cheeſe, Wooll, Turkies, and Powder for the Dying of Scarlets. So deſtitute of Water, as having no River, and not many Fountains, that when their Cattle would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the Dew diſtilling inſenſibly from the Clouds.

The People are for the moſt part *Greeks*; ſome few *Italians*, naturals of the Seignioury of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 Families, the number of the Towns and Villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof are, 1. *Cephalenia*, now *Cefalona*, fortified with good Works and a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Argaſtoli*, a Haven-Town, diſtant ſix miles from *Cefalona*: the Port whereof is capable of a ſufficient Navy, 3. *Sidro*, another Port-Town alſo, lying towards the South. Mr. *Wheler* page 35, has given a ſhort account of this Iſland, *Coronelli* ſaith it is ſituate in 37, 38. Latitude, and 46 Longitude, and is 170 miles in Circuit; that it was ſold by *Robert* Prince of *Taranto* to the State of *Venice* in the year 1350, and that it was ſack'd by the Turks in the year 1571.

As for the Fortunes of this Iſland, it was firſt called *Melæna*, after *Teleboe*: and being known by that name was made ſubject to *Thebes*, by the Valour and good Conduct of *Amphitryo*, the *Theban* General, by whom *Pterelas*, the King hereof was ſlain in Battle. During which War, and the ſtay of *Amphitryo* in this Iſland, it happened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by miſ-adventure killed his Wife *Procris* with an Arrow which he ſhot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own Country, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old Friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*; who pittying his caſe, made him the Governour of this Iſland, ſince, from his name, called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for ſome time in the power of the *Thebans*, it paſſed, together with *Zant* and ſome other Iſlands, into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom, in the declining of their Affairs, the *Achæans* got the Iſle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians Cephalenia*. But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of ſetting the Continent at liberty, made themſelves Maſters of both the Iſlands, that ſo they might at leiſure poſſeſs the whole, as in fine they did. In the Diviſion of the Empire they fell, as parts of *Greece* to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and on the taking of that City by the weſtern Chriſtians, they fell, with almoſt all the reſt of the Iſlands, to the State of *Venice*, the Governours whereof, retaining *Corfu* and ſome other of the moſt importance in the hands of the Seignior, permitted theſe (as many other of leſs note) unto private Adventurers. At the concluſion of the Peace betwixt *Mahomet* the Great and the ſtate of *Venice*, theſe two, with *Neritos*, or *Leucas*, (ſpoken of in *Epirus*) were ſeized on by that Tyrant in deſpight of that Treaty or Concluſion, as belonging unto private perſons, not to the Republick: but were recovered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the Reign of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof are ſtill governed and defended by them. *Coronelli* acquaints us that in the year 1224, this Iſland was out of Pure Generoſity given to the State of *Venice* by one *Gaius* who was Lord of it. That in 1479, it was Raviſh'd from a Petty Prince who then had it by an *Ottoman* Fleet. That in 1499, the Spaniſh and Venetian Fleets joyned in the Conqueſt of it, and took the principal Fort in it by *Eralado*, their Batteries making ſmall Impreſſions on its Walls. The principal Fortreſs now in it is *D'aſſo*, built by the *Venetians* in the year 1595, in a time of War, towards the South-Weſt part of the Iſland.

5. *Corcyra*, (now *Corfu*) more anciently was called *Phæacia*; but took this latter name from a Nymph ſo called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowered.

flowered. It is ſituate over againſt *Epirus*, from thence 12 miles diſtant, ſtretched out from Eaſt to Weſt in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth; and ſo it is the biggeſt of theſe Seas. Commodiouſly ſeated for the Trade and Eſtate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion and Command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous and defective in Water, much ſubject to be blaſted with Southernly Winds; and therefore they ſow little Corn, and plant leſs Fruits. The Northern parts are level and delightful, adorned with whole Groves of Limons, Oranges, Fig-trees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of Grain, abundance of Wines, great ſtore of Oyl and Olives, and moſt excellent Honey; bleſt with a very temperate and healthful Air, made odoriferous by moſt pleaſant and ſweet-ſmelling Fruits, which grow moſt plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who ſo courteouſly entertained *Ulyſſes* after his Shipwreck, was once King of this Iſland; whoſe Gardens, anſwerable to the natural Delights and Sweetneſs of it, are ſo much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus:

Quid bifera Alcinoi *referam Pomaria, voſque*
Qui nunquam vacui prodiſtis in æthera Rami?

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words.

Why ſhould I name *Alcinous* fertile Ground,
And Trees which never without Fruit are found?

Towns of moſt note and ſtrength herein are, 1. *Pagiopoli*, 2. *Caſtello S. Angelo*, of good eſteem in reſpect of many others, but far ſhort of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and ſtrongeſt of the Iſland, which the Turks have found by their frequent Repulſes to be impregnable. For it is ſituate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inacceſſible Fortreſſes, as being ſtrongly fenced with a natural Rock; the one called *the old Fortreſs*, and the other *the New*: juſtly eſteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whoſe Trade and Power would ſoon decay ſhould theſe Forts be loſt. For which cauſe the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are ſworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold Intelligence with one another by word or writing; leſt by the Treachery of the one, the other might be wrought alſo from his Faith and Duty. Neither is their Command here for more then two years; their Commiſſion then terminating, and new Succeſſors being ſent them. The Town is inhabited for the moſt part by *Gracians*, as is all the reſidue of the Iſland; beautified with one of the moſt commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the Reſidence of an Archbiſhop. A Town of ſuch publick Concernment, in regard of the Strength and Situation, that it is accounted of as the Key of *Venice*, and one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of Chriſtendom againſt the Encroachment of the Turks. The Story of it ſince diſmembred from the Eaſtern Empire, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before. *Coronelli* affirms this Iſland to be 70 miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and 20 broad, and in circuit 120. It lies from the Cape of *Otranto* 60 miles from *Venice*, 700 from *Epirus*; at one end 1 mile, at the other 20; Latitude 31.41. Longitude 44.45. Its Principal Town is ſeated on the ſide next *Epirus* in the middle of the Iſland. It was firſt ſubject to the Kings of *Naples*, from whom it was purchaſed by the *Venetians* in the year 1322, and entred upon the 9th of *June* 1327, others place it the 20th of *May* 1386. In the year 1401, they obtained a confirmation from *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples* for a good Sum of Mony. In the year 1537, *Barberouſſe* a Turk beſieged the principal City with an Army of 25000 *Turks*, and 30 pieces of Canon, but he was repulſed with great loſs and ſhame. Thus far he. Our Learned Country Man Mr. *Wheler* ſaith, the Principal City about 100 years ſince, was nothing but an old Caſtle, but it is now a large City, and well fortified with Works on the South. It would be almoſt impregnable were it not for a Rock that ſtands to the Weſt, and commands the next Fort, and great part of the Town. Mr. *Wheler* has given a very large account of this Iſland which begins page 29. I am forced to cite the page, becauſe there is no Index to that excellent diſcourſe which abates very much of its value and uſe.

6. *Ithaca*, now called *Val de Compare*, lieth on the North-eaſt of *Cephalenia*, being in compaſs fifty miles: moſt famous for the Birth of *Ulyſſes*, the Son of *Laertes*, of which thus the Poet;

Effugimus Scopulos Ithacæ Laertia *Regna*,
Et terram altricem ſævi exſecramur Ulyſſis.

From the *Ithacan* Rocks *Laertes* Realm we fled,
And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulyſſes* bred.

It was alſo called *Dulichium*, or elſe there was ſome other Iſland of that name, not far from *Ithaca* whereof *Ulyſſes* was alſo King, who is hence called *Dulichius Heros* among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* ſignifieth the Head of *Ulyſſes*.

Sed neque Dulichius *ſub* Achilles *caſſide*, *Vertex*
Pondera tanta ferat.

Achilles Helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak *Ulyſſes* Head to undergo.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Maſter-Wit of *Greece* for the times he lived in, and one that did as good Service in the War of *Troy* as the beſt Sword-man of them all. A War to which he went ſomewhat unwillingly, as fearing the ſad Conſequences and events thereof; inſomuch that he feigned himſelf mad, ploughing the Shore, and ſowing Salt inſtead of Corn. But *Palamedes*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only, caſt young *Telemacus*, the Son of *Ulyſſes*, before the Plough, which he obſerving, either drove the Plough beſides him, or lifted it over him. Diſcovered by this means, and engaging with the reſt in the *Trojan* War, he found out the Deſign of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it alſo: in the courſe whereof by his Wit and Courage, he did very good Service; aſſociated with *Diomedes* in the action againſt *Rheſus* King of *Thrace*, and with *Palamedes* in foraging the Country for Proviſions. By his Policy was the *Palladium* ſtoln out of *Troy*, and conſequently the City taken and deſtroyed, whoſe Fate depended on the preſervation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was withheld from *Ithaca* ten years longer by Winds and Tempeſts and the Diſpleaſure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he ſaved himſelf from the Inchantments of the *Sirens*, the Allurements of *Circe*, the Cruelty of *Polyphemus*, and after many Dangers came home in ſafety. A man of ſo compleat a Vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a Temperate and Prudent man in the Books called *Odyſſes*, (by his name, as the *Greeks* pronounce it;) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Soldier.

The Country is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plenty of Goats, but no Hares live in it; inhabited for the moſt part by Pirates and Exiles, men baniſhed out of civil Society, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them; but ſubject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*, which hitherto hath maintained theſe Iſlands againſt the Turks, though many times attempted by them in the moſt proſperous times of their Arms and Victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, with almoſt

moſt all the Iſlands of the *Ægæan* and *Ionian* Seas, (as being a People ſtrong in Shipping, and ſo moſt able to preſerve the Poſſeſſion of them) ſome of the greateſt and moſt conſiderable, either for their Riches or Commodiouſneſs of Situation, were furniſhed with convenient Garriſons in the name of the State. The reſt they did beſtow on the better ſort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own Coſt and Charges; who accordingly poſſeſſed themſelves of one, two or more of them, as were of ability to ſet out their Gallies for the keeping of them; the Seigniory having nevertheleſs a Care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals; whereby they did not only preſerve thoſe Seas from the *Genoua* Pirates, but for a long time defended all their Iſlands alſo, as well againſt the *Greeks* as the Turkiſh Emperors. But all the Iſles of the *Ægæan* being loſt to the Turk, except *Cythera* and *Tenos* on the *Europæan*, and *Carpathos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Aſian* ſide; they have now only *Crete* with the Iſles adjoyning, and thoſe of the *Ionian* Sea under their Command, and theſe (but ſpecially the Iſle *Crete*) endangered at the preſent by the Turkiſh Tyrant. And after taken from them in 1669. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown*, having Travailed over a great part of *Greece*, makes this general remark upon it. *The Græcian Countries which I paſſed are extremely altered from that State whereof we read in Ancient Hiſtory; as having ſuffered ſpoiling Incurſions from many Nations, and a fatal Conqueſt by the Turks; who utterly deſtroyed many Towns and Famous places, and changed the Names of moſt, not leaving the old Appellations to the Rivers which moſt laſtingly maintain their Ancient Names. I paſſed moſt of the Great Rivers of* Macedonia, *the* Axius, Erigonus, *and* Aliarmon, *which have Names of no affinity to them. The River* Peneus, *ſo famous in the Old Poets, hath loſt its Name with* Apidanus, Enipius, *and others that run into it. The* Turks *call* Lariſſa, Jeni-Sahar, *and* Theſſaly Comenolitari.

Thus having taken a view of the ſeveral Provinces and Iſles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and preſent ſtate of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Gracian* Emperors, who have had here their principal Reſidence, and poſſeſſed the whole (though for a while their Empire was extended over all the Eaſt) as they here follow in this enſuing Catalogue of

The *CONSTANTINOPOLITAN, GRÆCIAN*, or Eaſtern Emperors.

A. Ch.

331 1. *Conſtantine*, ſirnamed the Great, having reigned twelve years in *Rome*, tranſlated his Imperial Seat to *Conſtantinople*, which himſelf had founded.

341 2. *Conſtantius*, the ſecond Son of *Conſtantine*, in the Diviſion of the Empire, had for his Partage *Thrace*, *Conſtantinople*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt. After the Death of his two Brethren he remained ſole Emperor, but reſided for the moſt part in the Eaſt; a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Perſecutor of the Orthodox Chriſtians.

366 3. *Julian*, ſirnamed the Apoſtate, Son of *Conſtantius*, the Brother of *Conſtantine* the Great, at firſt a Chriſtian, afterwards a profeſſed Enemy of the Goſpel: fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Tranſalpine* Nations, whilſt he was a Chriſtian; prodigiouſly ſlain in the *Perſian* War, when become a Perſecutor.

368 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, choſen by the Army, a Religious Prince, made Peace with the *Perſian*, and ſettled the Affairs of the Chriſtian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean Birth, but great Abilities in War was elected Emperor.

369 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Conſtantinople* and the Eaſt; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Weſtern parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, and the firſt who brought in the *Goths* on this ſide of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the deſart parts of *Thrace*, to the Deſtruction of the Empire, and himſelf to Boot.

382 6. *Gratian*, the eldeſt Son of *Valentinian*, ſucceeded his Father in the Weſt, and his Uncle *Valens* in the Eaſt, after whoſe death he left *Italy* and the Weſt to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Diſtreſſed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodoſius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherouſly murthered by *Andragathies*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7. *Theodoſius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the ſecond, on the Traytor *Eugenius*. He vanquiſhed the *Goths*, utterly ſuppreſt the Pagan Superſtitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it ſelf, and ſtrengthened the Church of Chriſt with good Laws and Ordinances.

399 8. *Arcadius*, the eldeſt Son of *Theodoſius*, ſucceeded his Father in the Eaſt, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the Weſt: the *Roman* Empire after this laſt Diviſion of it being ſo diſtracted and torn in pieces, that it was never ſince united.

412 9. *Theodoſius* II. Son of *Arcadius*; made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he imployed againſt the *Hunns* and *Perſians*; his more dangerous Enemies, and cauſed the *Epheſine* Council to be called againſt *Neſtorius*.

454 10. *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodoſius*, ſucceeded his Maſter, and Married with *Pulcheria* his Maſters Siſter. He called the Council of *Chalcedon* againſt *Dioſcorus*.

461 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joynt conſent of the Senate and Soldiery, ſitting in the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-Law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, ſent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer*. A Tyrant and a great Drinker: in one of his Drunken Fits buried quick by his Empreſs. In his time *Conſtantinople* was almoſt wholly deſtroyed by Fire; in which periſhed, amongſt other things, 120000 Volumes of good Manuſcripts.

497 13. *Anaſtaſius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empreſs created Emperor; a great Patron of *Eutyches*, yet fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Perſians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Conſtantinople*, beſieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great Diſtreſs, if *Proclus*, a Famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

521 14. *Juſtin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anaſtaſius*; a Catholick Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from Baniſhment.

528 15. *Juſtinian*, the Siſter's Son of *Juſtinus*, with whom he was at firſt Conſort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Vandals* by *Beliſarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths* by *Narſes*: and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.

566 16. *Juſtin* II. Nephew of *Juſtinian*, inſtituted the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and loſt a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himſelf to oppoſe the *Perſian*, he choſe

377 17. *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be Conſort with him, who afterwards ſucceeded in the ſole Command.

584 18. *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Meſopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*, by whom at his return he was married to *Conſtantina* his Daughter, and declared his Succeſſor. Refuſing to ranſom ſome of his Soldiers, taken Priſoners by *Cajanus* King of the *Avares*, he loſt the Affections of his Army.

604 19. *Phocas*, a common Soldier, in a military Tumult choſen Emperor, murthered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his Wife and Children, and made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Biſhop or Head of the Church: ſlain in a popular Tumult by the Common people for his Luſts and Cruelties.

611 20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Conſtantinople*, choſen by the general conſent, repaired the Ruines of the Empire, vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, recovered *Hieruſalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Croſs unto *Conſtantinople* in triumphant manner; whence the Feaſt called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to diſperſe his Dotages.

641 21. *Conſtans*, or *Conſtantine* II. Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places. Picking a Quarrel with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choiceſt Ornaments which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left; and ranſacking the Iſle of *Sicily*, was there ſlain by the Women.

670 22. *Conſtantinus* III. Son of the former *Conſtantine*, from his long or early Beard ſirnamed *Pogonatus*, repulſed the *Saracens* from *Conſtantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from paſſing over the *Danow*.

687 23. *Juſtinian* II. Son of *Conſtantine* the 3. ſubdued *Meſopotamia*, *Armenia*, and ſome part of *Perſia*, forcing the *Saracens* to ſue for Peace, and become his Tributaries. Againſt whom *Leontius* on the one ſide, and *Abſimarus*, on the other, ſeverally taking Arms; were declared Emperors. *Juſtinian*, taken by *Leontius*, hath his Noſe cut off, and his perſon committed to Cuſtody: but making an Eſcape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the purſuit of his Revenge, was finally murthered at the Altar by the command of

713 24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Soldiers, a great Enemy of Images, which he cauſed to be caſt out of the Church, thereby incurring the diſpleaſure of

715 25. *Anaſtaſius* II. called alſo *Artemias*, his principal Secretary, who thruſt himſelf into the Empire; forced to relinquiſh it by that Army which he had raiſed againſt the *Saracens*: in which Tumult the City of *Conſtantinople* was ſacked and ſpoiled.

717 26. *Theodoſius* III. made Emperor in this Tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eaſtern Armies, reſigned the Empire and took Orders to preſerve his Life.

718 27. *Leo Iſaurus*, in whoſe time *Caliph Zuleiman* beſieged *Conſtantinople* the ſpace of three years, and when by Cold and Famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were deſtroyed, they deſiſted. At this Siege was that Fire invented which we, for the violence of it, call *Wild-Fire*; and the *Latines*, becauſe the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little moleſted. He was alſo a great Enemy to Images, and for this cauſe hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nickname of *Iconomachus*.

741 28. *Conſtantinus* IV. Son of *Leo*, ſirnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized he bewrayed the Font, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being choſen Emperor againſt him, but at laſt defeated.

777 29. *Leo* III. Son of *Conſtantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the 4. (*Leontius* the Uſurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one;) an enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*.

782 30. *Conſtantine* V. the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, firſt governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at laſt ſupplanted, and deprived of Sight, he died of Melancholy.

798 31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo* the 3. firſt Conſort with *Conſtantine* her Son, and afterwards ſole Empreſs of *Conſtantinople*: for her better ſupport in which Eſtate ſhe ſided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the ſecond Council of *Nice* for defence of Images. In her time *Charles*, ſirnamed the great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the Weſt, for the Popes knowing their own Greatneſs to grow out of the Ruines of the Temporal Power, committed the Empire of the Weſt unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperors became much weakened; and the *French*, being the Pope's Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their Devotion. In following times, when *Frederick*, *Barbaroſſa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperor, *Emanuel* of *Conſtantinople* ſued for a Re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this Anſwer, *Non licere illi conjungere quæ majores ejus de induſtria disjunxerunt*: Let no man preſume to joyn what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put aſunder.

803 32. *Nicephorus* a Patrician, made Emperour by the Soldiers, perſwaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Succeſſor: ſlain in a pitcht Field againſt the *Bulgarians*.

812 33. *Michael*, ſirnamed *Curopalates*, from his Office, (the *Mayor of the Palace*, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, aſſumed the Empire, which, finding his own weakneſs, he did ſoon relinquiſh, and betook himſelf unto a Monaſtery.

814 34. *Leo* V. ſirnamed *Armenius*, from his Country, General of the Horſe to *Michael*, demoliſhed the Images which his Predeceſſors had ſet up. He was ſlain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.

821 35. *Michael* II. ſirnamed *Balbus*, having murthered *Leo*, aſſumed the Empire; unfortunate in his Government, and died of Madneſs.

830 36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an Enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; loſing many Battels to the *Saracens*, at laſt he died of Melancholy.

842

842 37. *Michael* III. Son of *Theophilus*, firſt ruling with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto her ſelf the ſupreme Command; and after of himſelf ſole Emperor, his Mother being made a Nun.

866 38. *Baſilius*, ſirnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his Birth, made Conſort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he baſely and treacherouſly murthered; killed caſually by a Stag.

886 39. *Leo* VI. for his Learning ſirnamed *Philoſophus*, the Son of *Baſilius*, a vigilant and provident Prince: moſt of his time, with variable Succeſs, was ſpent againſt the *Bulgarians*.

912 40. *Conſtantine* VI. commonly called the VII. Son of *Leo Philoſophus*, firſt under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire; by which laſt he was ſo miſerably depreſſed that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting. But *Lacopenus* being depoſed and turned into a Monaſtery by his own Sons, *Conſtantine* at laſt obtained his Rights, and reſtored Learning unto *Greece*.

961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Conſtantine*.

963 42. *Nicephorus*, ſirnamed *Phocas*, firſt Governour or Protector of the young Emperour *Romanus*; after whoſe death, created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia minor*, from the power of the *Saracens*: ſlain in the night by *John Zimiſces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.

971 43. *John Zimiſces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it, vanquiſhing the *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the barbarous Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.

977 44. *Baſilius* II. ſirnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperors had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple, (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial Colour: he ſubdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.

1028 45. *Conſtantine* VII. or VIII. Brother of *Baſilius*, and with him Partner in the Empire: after whoſe death he governed three years by himſelf, but did nothing memorable.

1030 46. *Romanus* II. for his Prodigality ſirnamed *Argyropolus*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Conſtantine* the 8th. drowned in a Bath by the Treaſon of his Wife and her Adulterer.

1035 47. *Michael* IV. ſirnamed *Paphlago*, from his Country, firſt the Adulterer and afterwards the Husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.

1042 48. *Michael* V. ſirnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obſcure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he depoſed from the Government, and turned into a Monaſtery. Out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, ſhe put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 years of age, beſtowed both the Empire and her ſelf upon

1043 49. *Conſtantine* IX. ſirnamed *Nonomachus*, formerly the Husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the ſecond.

1055 50. *Theodora*, Siſter unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Conſtantine*, managed for two years the Affairs of the Empire with great Contentment of all people. But grown in age ſhe ſurrendered it to

1057 51. *Michael* VI. ſirnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military man, depoſed within three years by

1060 52. *Iſaacius*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*, valiant, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with conſent of the Senate and people, to

1063 53. *Conſtantine* X. ſirnamed *Ducas*, a great Juſticiar and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects and contemned by his Enemies.

1071 54. *Romanus* III. ſirnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Taken Priſoner by the Turks, and ſent home again, he found a Faction made againſt him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himſelf at his return depoſed, and ſo died in Exile.

1075 55. *Michael* VII. the Son of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, ſirnamed *Parapinatius*, by reaſon of the *Famine* which in his time happened, made Emperor in the aforeſaid Tumult. But being found unable for ſo great an Honour, (the Turks prevailing in all places) he was depoſed again, and put into a Monaſtery.

1081 56. *Nicephorus* II. ſirnamed *Botoniates*, of the Houſe of *Phocas*, ſucceeded in the place of *Parapinace*; depoſed within three years by the *Comneni*.

1084 57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperor *Iſaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whoſe time the Weſtern Chriſtians with great Forces prepared for the Recovery of the *Holy-Land*; of whoſe purpoſes being very jealous he denied them paſſage through his Country; but was in the end forced to find them Victuals and other Neceſſaries.

1113 58. *Calo-Joannes*, the Son of *Alexius*, had a good hand againſt the Turks, from whom he took *Laodicea* and ſome other places of Importancy. He alſo vanquiſhed the *Scythians* or *Tartars* paſſing over the *Iſter*, moſt of which he either ſlew in Battel, or ſold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this ſide that River. He alſo conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, tranſporting many of them into *Bithynia*.

1142 59. *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemy to the Weſtern Chriſtians, and an open enemy to the Turks; by whom being intrapped in the dangerous Streights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miſerably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.

1180 60. *Alexius* II. Son of *Manuel*, depoſed and barbarouſly murthered by *Andronicus*, the Couſin-german of his Father, with his Wife and Mother.

1183 61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reaſon of his dangerous and ambitious practices, after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Conſtantinople*: firſt made Protector, afterwards Conſort in the Empire with young *Alexius*: whom having barbarouſly ſlain and got the Empire to himſelf, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular Tumult.

1185 62. *Iſaacius Angelus*, a Nobleman of *Conſtantinople*, and of the ſame *Comnenian* Race, diſigned to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Succeſſor; depoſed by *Alexius* his own Brother and his Eyes put out.

1195 63. *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Iſaac Angelus*, who being unjuſtly thruſt out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourſe to *Philip* the Weſtern Emperor, whoſe Daughter *Mary* he had married, who ſo prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. (upon a promiſe for ſubjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome* (that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to reſtore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Uſurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperor is ſeated in his Father's Throne, and not long after ſlain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* aſſault and win *Conſtantinoplo*, make themſelves Maſters of the Empire, and divided it amongſt themſelves: allotting to the *Venetians Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponneſus*, and moſt of the Iſlands; to *Boniface* Marquiſs of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*; to the others of the Adventurers other liberal Shares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperor. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bythinia* in the Leſſer *Aſia*, by *Theodorus Laſcaris*, Son-in-Law to *Alexius*, the Uſurper, continued there till the reigning of *Conſtantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been 60 years poſſeſſed by the Weſtern Chriſtians.

Emperors of the LATINES in CONSTANTINOPLE.

1200 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, firſt Emperor of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and ſent Priſoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulſed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and died a Conqueror.

1215 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngeſt Son to *Lewis* the Groſs of *France*, and Husband of *Toland* the Daughter of *Henry*, ſucceeded in the Empire after his deceaſe. He was cunningly entrapped by *Theodorns Angelus*, a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had beſieged in *Dyrrhachium*: but of an Enemy being perſwaded to become his Gueſt, was there murthered by him.

1220 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having ſeen the miſerable uſage of his beautiful Empreſs, whom a young *Burgundian*, formerly contracted to her, had moſt deſpitefully mangled, cutting off both her Noſe and Ears, died of Hearts grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whether his Melancholly had carried him to conſult the Pope in his Affairs.

1227 69. *Baldwin* II. Son of *Robert* by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John de Brenne*, the titular King of *Jeruſalem*, ſucceeded in his Fathers Throne: which having held for the ſpace of thirty three years, he was forced to leave the City of *Conſtantinople*, being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to ſue in vain for Succours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the Weſt. And though both *Philip* the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* the *French* King, in right of *Catherine* his Wife, Daughter of that *Philip*, did ſometimes pleaſe themſelves with the Title of Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or poſſeſſion there.

The Empire reſtored unto the GREEKS.

1260 70. *Michael* VIII. ſirnamed *Palæologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperor, Emperor of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, moſt fortunately recovered *Conſtantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of fifty men ſecretly put into it by ſome Country-Labourers under the Ruines of a Mine. Preſent in perſon at the Council of *Lions*, at the perſwaſion of the Pope he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denyed the honour of Chriſtian Burial.

1283 71. *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled againſt him.

1328 72. *Andronicus* III. firſt Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards Sole Emperor.

1341 73. *John Palæologus*, Son of *Andronicus* the 3. In whoſe Minority *Contacuzenus* his Protector uſurped the Empire, and held it ſometimes from him, and ſometimes with him, till the year 1357, and then retired into a Monaſtery leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whoſe Reign the Turks firſt planted themſelves in *Europe*.

1384 74. *Andronicus* IV. the Son of *Joannes Palæologus*.

1387 75. *Emanuel Palæologus*, the Son of the ſaid *John*, and Brother of *Andronicus* the 4. In whoſe time *Bajazet* the ſixth King of the Turks did beſiege *Conſtantinople*; but found ſuch notable Reſiſtance, that he could not force it.

1417 76. *John* II. Son of *Andronicus* the 4.

1420 77. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel Palæologus*, in perſon at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches in hopes thereby to get ſome Aid from the Weſtern Chriſtians, but it would not be.

1444 78. *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, the Brother of *John* the 3. In whoſe time the famous City of *Conſtantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great in 1452, the miſerable Emperor, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow mony to pay his Soldiers, (which the Turks found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the Throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may obſerve ſome fatal Contrarieties in one and the ſame name. As firſt, that *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* laid the firſt Foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Phillip* the Father of *Perſeus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the firſt, and *Baldwin* the laſt Emperor of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch; and was loſt by a *Conſtantine*, the Son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch alſo. And fourthly, the Turks have a Prophecy, that as it was won by a *Mahomet*, ſo ſhall it be loſt by a *Mahomet*. So *Auguſtus* was the firſt eſtabliſhed Emperour of *Rome*, and *Auguſtulus* the laſt, *Darius* the Son of *Hyſtaſpes*, the Reſtorer; and *Darius* the Son of *Arſamis*, the Overthrower of the *Perſian* Monarchy. A like note I ſhall hereafter tell you of *Hieruſalem*. In the mean time I will preſent you with a fatal Obſervation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus verſed in *Albion's England*.

Not ſuperſtitiouſly I ſpeak, but *H* this letter ſtill
Hath been obſerved ominous to *England*'s Good or Ill.
Firſt *Hercules*, *Heſione* and *Helen* were the cauſe
Of War to *Troy*; *Æneas* Seed becoming ſo Outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with foreign Arms did firſt the *Brutes*
  invade:
Helen to *Rome*'s Imperial Throne the *Britiſh* Crown con-
  vey'd.
Hengiſt and *Horſus* firſt did plant the *Saxons* in this Iſle:
Hungar and *Hubba* firſt brought *Danes*, that ſwayed here
  long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute* the *Dane*,
Henries the firſt and ſecond did reſtore the *Engliſh*
  Reign.
Fourth *Henry* firſt for *Lancaſter* did *England*'s Crown
  obtain.
Seventh *Henry* jarring, *Lancaſter* and *York* unites in
  Peace.
Henry the eighth did happily *Rome*'s Irreligion ceaſe.

A ſtrange and ominous Letter, every Mutation in our State being as it were uſhered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire ſince the Diviſion of it into the Eaſt and Weſt, I could never yet learn.

That they were exceeding great may appear by three circumſtances. 1. *Zonaras* reporteth that the Emperor *Baſilias* had in his Treaſury 200000 Talents of Gold, beſides infinite Heaps of Silver and other Moneys. 2. *Lipſius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a Jew in his diſcourſe of *Europe* ſaith, that the Cuſtom due to the Emperors out of the Victuals and Merchandize ſold at *Conſtantinople* only did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find that at the Sack of *Conſtantinople* there was found an invaluable Maſs of Gold, Silver, Plate, and Jewels, beſides that which was hid in the Earth. For ſo the covetous Citizens choſe rather to employ their Wealth, then afford any part of it to the Emperor, who with Tears in his Eyes went from door to door to beg and borrow Money, wherewith he might wage more Soldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a Croſs *Sol* between 4 *Greek Beta*'s of the ſecond; the 4 *Beta*'s ſignifying (as *Bodin* ſaith) Βασιλεὺς, Βασιλέων, Βασιλεύων, Βασιλεῦσι.

It may perchance be expected that we ſhould here make an additional Catalogue of thoſe Turkiſh Emperors who have reigned in *Conſtantinople* ſince the taking of it; and being they are poſſeſſed of *Greece*, and do now inhabit it, that we ſhould here alſo ſpeak of the Turks themſelves, their Cuſtoms, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the diſcourſe of thoſe things we intend to reſerve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt Inundation into *Perſia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now ſubject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the *Peninſula* called anciently *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (now part of *Tartaria Precopenſis*) be within the Bounds of *Europe* alſo; yet we will defer the deſcription and ſtory of it till we come to the Affairs of the *Tartars*, and will here conclude our Diſcourſe of *Europe*, and prepare for *Aſia*.

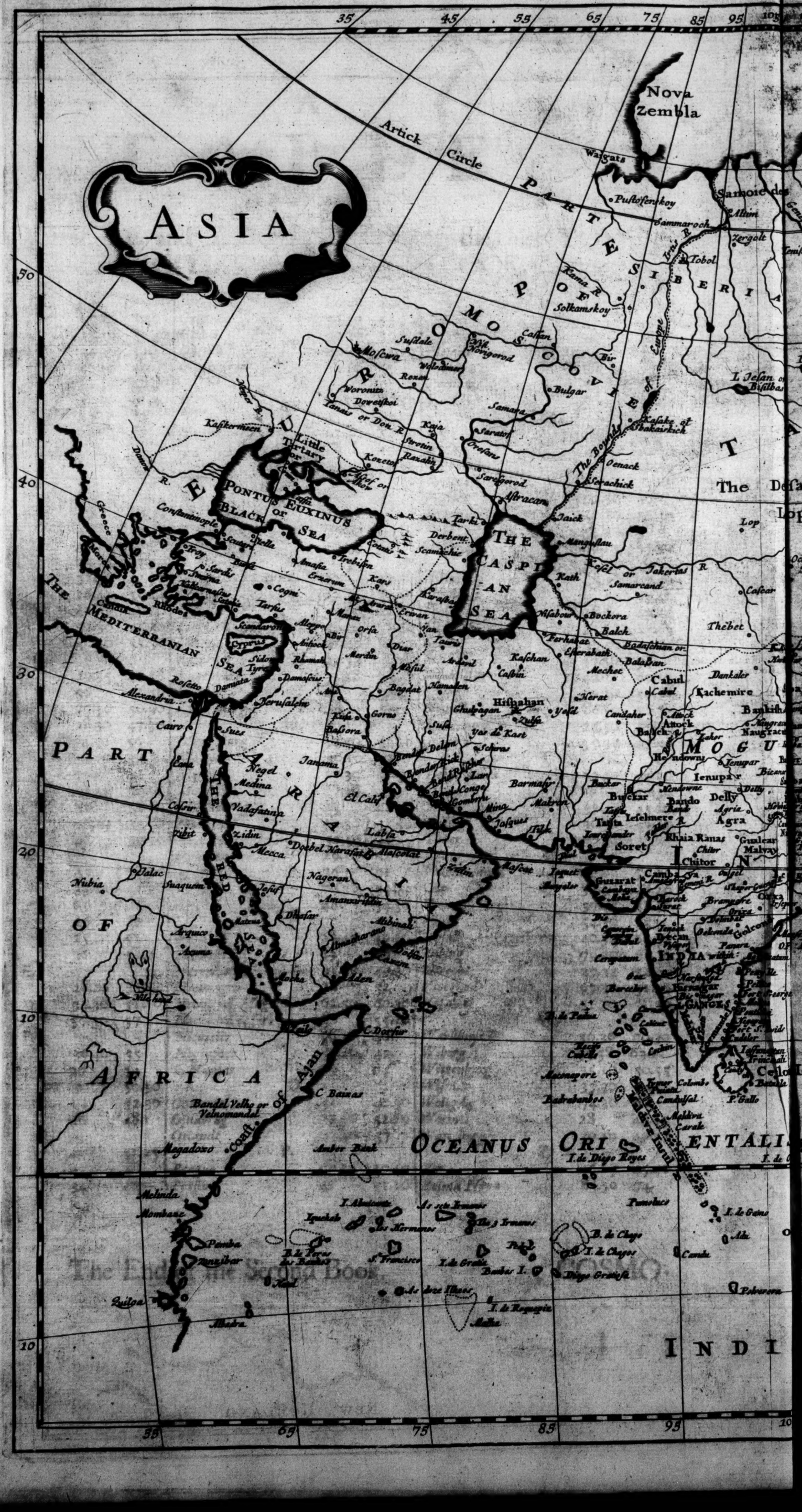
And ſo much for *GREECE*, the laſt of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

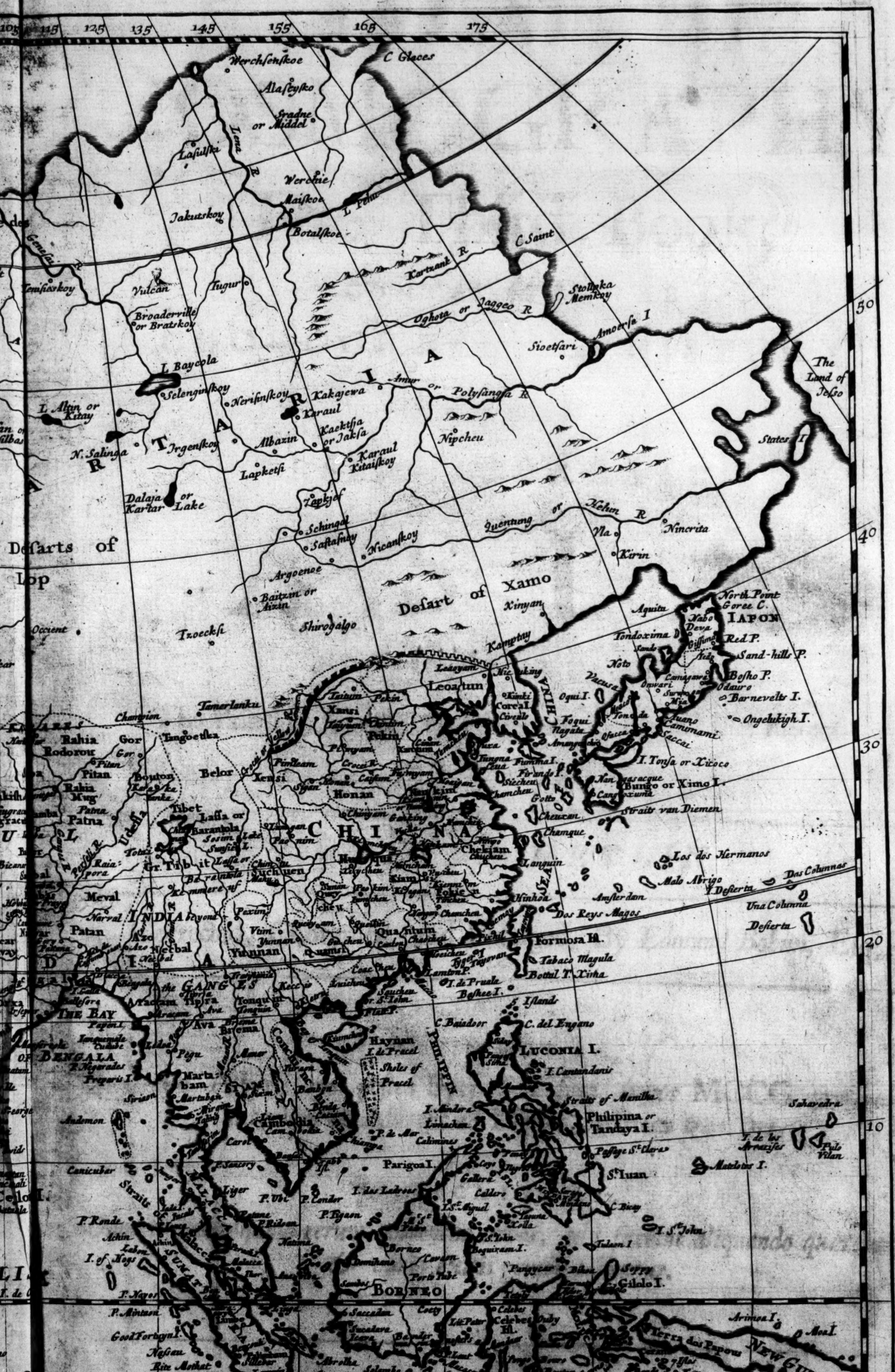
A
TABLE
OF THE
LONGITUDE and *LATITUDE* of the chief TOWNS and CITIES mentioned in this BOOK.

	Long.	Lat.
A.		
AMſterdam	27.39	52.40
Antwerp	24.30	51.48
Athens	46.10	40
Augſpurg	32.30	48.20
Aulona	51.20	41.30
Arras	24	51
Anſlo	36.30	59.20
B.		
Bamberg	39.15	50.10
Belgrade	45	47.40
Bergen	34.16	61.25
Bern	29.45	46.25
Brandenburgh	35.30	52.36
Breme	30.20	53.23
Bruges	24.36	51.30
Brunſwick	32.40	52.30
Bruxells	26.42	51.24
Buda	42	47.20
Bodon	52.30	45.30
Bornholm	40.50	55.30
C.		
Cleve	29.35	41.58
Conſtantinople	56	41.56
Confluentz or *Coblentz*	27.30	50.30
Conſtance	28.30	47.30
Copenhagen	34.50	56
Corinth	54.20	39
Colen	27.40	51
Cracow	42.40	50.12
Cefalona	52	38.30
Caſan	96.10	35.10
Corfu	42	39.30
D.		
Dantzick	45	54.50
Deventer	33.25	51.50
Dirſchaw	63	48.40
Dort	26	52
Doway	25	51
Dreſden	36	51.3
E.		
Emden	28.26	53.34
Erfurdt	34.30	51.10
Elſeneur	36.30	57
F.		
Flensburg	36.40	55
Franeker	27	54
Francford ad Mœnum	30	50.30
Francford ad Oderam	24	52.30
Friburg	20	48.1
G.		
Glogaw	43.50	51.25
Gran	42.30	48
Gratz	34	48
Grodesk	56.30	51.30
Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Gneſna	42	52.10
Groeningen	32.10	53
H.		
Haderſleve	35.5	60.53
Hallar	3	67.14
Halberſtadt	32.40	52.10
Heidelberg	28	49.35
Hamburg	30	54.30
I.		
Jene	34	42
Ingolſtadt	32.10	48.40
Inſpruck	32.50	44.55
Juliers	27.30	52
L.		
Lariſſa	70	33
Leige	22	50.50
Leopoles	52.50	49
Leipzick	30.30	51.20
Lubeck	31.20	54.48
Lucern	29.53	46.42
Lunenburg	32.18	53.27
Lunden	26	53
Luxemburg	28	50
M.		
Magdeburg	37.50	52.18
Marpurg	30.10	51
Mentz	27.30	50.30
Metz	27.40	49.9
Middleburg	25	52
Minden	31.30	52.58
Munchen	32.50	48
Munſter	29.10	52
Monts	26	51
Moſco	70.30	55.40
Melvin or *Elbing*	48	54.50
N.		
Nancie	28.45	49.20
Norlingen	33	49
Nurenburgh	31.30	49.30
Nimmegen	28	52
Novogrod Magn	62.50	60.30
Novogrod Infer.	80	55.20
Nicopolis	56.30	40
Negropont	56.10	41
S. Nicolas	69	64
O.		
Olmuntz	41	40.30
Oſnabrug	29.36	52.29
Oelandt	43.30	57
P.		
Prague	39.15	50.10
Preſlaw	46	51.10
Paſſaw	42	53.48
Presburg	40	48.26
Pleſcow	59.10	59
Pechora	66.50	67
Pernaw	53.30	58.40
Ploczkow	57.30	57.40
R.		
Rab	40.35	48.50
Raguſi	44.40	42.30
Regenſpurg	32.15	48.59
Roſtock	34.18	54.20
Ruſtow	72.50	57
Rugen	40.20	55.10
Riga	53.30	58
Regimont	49.10	55.30
S.		
Saltzburg	35.40	47.40
Schalholt	3. 14	65.42
Schleſtadt	28.6	47.22
Sleſwick	31.20	55.15
Spires	27.40	49.20
Stetin	37.40	54
Stockholm	42	60.15
Sibior	69.20	59.30
Slowada	86.30	58.50
Straesburg	27.50	48.44
Stagira	55.30	43.30
T.		
Theſſalonica	53.40	44.20
Triers	26	49.30
Trent	33.40	45.20
Tubing	30.30	48.40
Tuver	68.10	57.10
U.		
Valenciennes	26.29	50.10
Ulm	32.30	48.20
Vienna	37.45	48.20
Vilna	54.30	55
Upſal	40.30	60.52
Uſting	79.30	61.30
Utrecht	27.33	52.10
Vicegrad	61.30	51.30
Veſalia	31.30	51.30
W.		
Wardhuys	50.30	70.30
Wiborg	55.58	63.6.
Wittenburg	35.10	50.55
Wiſmar	33.30	54.14
Wologda	74.30	60.
Wormes	28	49.45
Wurtsburg	30.10	49.57
Z.		
Zara	46.25	45.40
Zelma Nova	83.30	74

The End of the Second Book.

COSMO-


ASIA
35
45
55
65
75
85
95
50
40
30
20
10
10
55
65
75
85
95
Nova Zembla
Artick Circle
Waigats
Pustosenskoy
Samoiedes
Sammaroch
Altim
Tobol
Yergolt
PARTE
SIBERIA
Kama R.
Solkamskoy
PARTE OF EUROPE
MOSCOVIE
Cassan
Susdale
Novogorod
Moscwa
Wolodimer
Rezan
Bir
Bulgar
Woronitz
Doweiskoi
Tanais or Don R.
Samara
Saratof
Kaja
Strotin
Kasikermen
Little Tartary
Koxeto
Azof
Orestons
The Bounds of Europe
Kalake of Bakairkich
Oenack
Seragorod
Serachick
Astracan
Jaick
Tartary
The Desart
Lop
Danube R.
Greece
Constantinople
PONTUS EUXINUS
BLACK SEA
Trebisonda
Amasia
Erzerum
Kars
Tarki
Derbent
Scamachie
THE CASPIAN SEA
Mangeslau
Kath
Samarcand
Cascar
Troy
Sardi
Smirna
Rhodes
Candia
Cogni
Tarsus
Scondarone
Cyprus
Aleppo
Orfa
Erivan
Tauris
Nisabour
Bockora
Balch
Thebet
THE MEDITERRANIAN SEA
Sidon
Tyre
Antioch
Damascus
Merdin
Diar
Mosul
Ardevil
Kaschan
Casbin
Farhabat
Esterabath
Badaschian or Balaschan
Mechec
Kachemire
Rosetto
Damiata
Alexandria
Jerusalem
Bagdat
Hamadan
Herat
Cabul
Cairo
Sues
Kufa
Gorno
Balsora
Hispahan
Yesd
Candaher
Attock
Bankish
Ghulpagan
Yas de Kast
Schiras
Halch
Tehor
PART
Esna
ARABIA
Janama
Negel
Medina
Bender Delam
Bender Abassi
Ormus
Barmasir
Buckar
Hendowns
Ienupar
MOGUL
El Catif
Lahsa
Mina
Jasques
Makran
Bando
Delly
Agria
Agra
Cossir
Zidin
Mecca
Tatta
Iesselmere
Khaia Ranas
Chitor
Malvay
Soret
INDIA
Nubia
Dalac
Suaquem
Nageran
Mascat
Guzarat
Cambaya
Amanserta
Broach
Surat
Daman
Golconda
Bramport
Orixa
Arquico
Acuma
Dhafar
Almahara
Decan
Bider
Goa
Visapour
OF
Moca
Aden
Canara
Camp
Nile head
Zeila
C. Dorfur
Calicut
Cochin
Negapatam
Fort St George
Tranquebar
Ceilon I.
Colombo
P. Gallo
AFRICA
Coast of Ajan
C. Baixas
Bandel Velho or Velnomandel
Megadoxo
Amber Bank
OCEANUS ORIENTALIS
I. de Diego Reyes
Maldiva Insulae
Melinda
Mombaze
Pemba
Zanzibar
Quiloa
Mafia
I. Almirante
As sete Irmanos
Os Hermanos
Os 3 Irmanos
B. de Chagos
I. de Chagos
Diego Gratiosa
Baxos I.
S. Francisco
Y. de Gratia
As dras Ilhas
I. de Roquepiz
Candu
Polvorosa
INDI


105
115
125
135
145
155
165
175
Werchsenskoe
C Glaces
Alaseysko
Sradne or Middel
Lena R
Losulska
Werchne Maiskoe
L Penu
Jakutskoy
Botalskoe
C Saint
Kartanak R
Vulcan
Tugur
Stolbka Memkoy
Broaderville or Bratskoy
Oghota or Jaggeo R
Amoersa I
Sioetsari
The Land of Jesso
50
L Baycola
Selenginskoy
Nerisinskoy
Kakajewa
Amur or Polysanga R
Karaul
L Altin or Kitay
Kaektsia or Jaksa
Albazin
Irgenskoy
N. Salinga
Karaul Kitaiskoy
Nipcheu
States I
Lapketsi
Dalaja or Kartar Lake
Zapkjes
Schingal
Saltafnoy
Nicanskoy
Quentung or Kelun R
Ula
Nincrita
Desarts of Lop
40
Kirin
Argoenoe
Baitzim or Aizin
Desart of Xamo
Xinyan
Troecksi
Shirogalgo
Occient
Kangetay
North Point
Goree C.
Aquita
IAPON
Tondoxima
Red P.
Sand-hills P.
Leaotun
Corea I.
Kinki
Cirelo
Oqui I.
Boso P.
Odauro
Barnevelts I.
Ongelukigh I.
Tamerlanku
Xansi
Pekin
Champion
Tangoetska
Gor
Rahia
Rodorou
Pitan
Belor
Pimleam
Xensi
Honan
Nanking
Fumma I.
Firando I.
Gotto
Cheucan
Amanguchi
I. Tonsa or Xicoco
Bungo or Ximo I.
Straits van Diemen
30
Tibet
Lassa or Barantola
Boutan
Patna
CHINA
Chekiam
Chamque
Languin
Los dos Hermanos
Malo Abrigo
Das Columnas
I. Desierta
Una Columna
Desierta
Amsterdam
Dos Reys Magos
Ninhoa
Formosa I.
Tabaco Magula
Bottil T. Xima
20
Meval
Patan
INDIA
Suchuen
Yunnan
Quantum
Fokien
the GANGES
Tonquin
Ava
THE BAY OF BENGALA
Pegu
Martabam
Siam
Cambodia
Haynan
I. de Prucel
Basshee I.
Island
C. Baiadoor
C. del Engano
LUCONIA I.
Shoals of Pracel
PHILIPPINE
I. Mindoro
Straits of Manilha
Philipina or Tandaya I.
Saharedra
10
I. de los Arrecifes
Pais Vilan
Andamon
Canicubar
Parigoa I.
I. das Ladrones
St. Iuan
Matelotes I.
Straits of Malacca
P. Uby
P. Condor
P. Tigaon
Natuna
I. St. John
Achin
P. Ronde
I. of Hogs
SUMATRA
Borneo
BORNEO
Gilolo I.
P. Nyas
P. Mintaon
Good Fortune I.
Nassau
Engano
Celebes I.
Terra dos Papous
NEW GUINEA
Arimoa I.
Moa I.
Banda
Key
Araw
Timor Laut
Straits of Sunda
Palimbam
IAVA I.
Timor I.
Sandelbosch
Savage
Vliermuysen I.
SEA
NEW HOLLAND
115
125
135
145
155

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Third Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER
ASIA,
AND ALL
The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

Corrected, Continued, and Enlarged, By *Edmund Bohun*, Eſq;

JUSTIN. HIST. l. 1.
Imperium Aſſyrii *qui poſtea* Syri *dicti ſunt, annos* MCCC *tenuerunt.*
Imperium ab Aſſyriis *ad* Medos Arbaces *transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.
Omnes quæ uſquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur ;
& vario exitii genere tollentur.

LONDON,
Printed in the Year MDCCI.

COSMOGRAPHY

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER

ASIA

AND ALL
The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

Corrected, Continued, and Enlarged, By Edmund Bohun, Esq;

JUSTIN. HIST. I.

Imperium Assyrii qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos MCCC tenuerunt: Imperium ab Assyriis ad Medos, Arbaces transfert.

SENECA.

[illegible]

LONDON:
Printed in the Year MDCCIII.

COSMOGRAPHY.
The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER
ASIA,
AND ALL
The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

Of *ASIA*.

ASIA is bounded on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægæan* Seas, the *Helleſpont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Boſphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Mæotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Duina*, a Line being drawn from the firſt of the two ſaid Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the Eaſt, the Straits of *Anian* (if ſuch there be;) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which ſeparated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* Sea, waſhing the Shores of *Anatolia*, and the main Southern Ocean, paſſing along the *Indian*, *Perſian*, and *Arabian* Coaſts: and finally, on the South-Weſt, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all ſides with the Sea, or ſome Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Iſthmus* in the South-Weſt, which joyns it to *Africk*, and the ſpace of Ground (whatſoever it be) betwixt *Duina* and *Tanais*, on the North-Weſt, which unites it to *Europe*. The beſt of our latter Accounts ſtretch it from 55 degrees of Longitude, to 200, and from 71 to the Line, (*Nova Zembla* lying more to the North) and ſome Iſlands alſo beyond the *Equator*: So then its Length is 10450 Miles, and its Breadth 3960 Miles. *Cluverius* ſaith it is in Length from the *Helleſpont*, to the Cape of *Malacca*, 1300 German Miles; and in Breadth from the Cape of *Tabin* in *Arabia*, to the Streights of *Anian* 1220 of the ſame.

It took this Name, as ſome will have it, from *Aſia*, the Daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the Wife of *Japetus*, and (by him) Mother to *Prometheus*: As others ſay, from *Aſius* the Son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country firſt, afterwards all *Anatolia*, or *Aſia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of *Aſia*. Others, again, (but more improbably) derive the Name from *Aſius* the Philoſopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in Memory whereof that Country firſt, and after the whole Continent did receive this Name: But theſe *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great Affection to the *Punick*, or *Phœnician* Language) will have it called ſo from *Aſia*, a *Phœnician* Word, ſignifying *Medium*, or the middle; becauſe *Anatolia*, or the leſſer *Aſia*, which gives Name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* alſo, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt ſome parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And ſo far the Conjecture doth find Countenance from ſome ancient Writers, that *Aſia* is ſaid by *Pliny* to be *inter Africam & Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *medium noſtris æquoribus excipi*, to be embraced in the *middle* of the two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*); and finally, by *Euſtathius*, (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the *Leſſer Aſia*) μέσην ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν, to have a *middle* Situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what Name, and on what Grounds ſoever it be called by the *Greeks* and *Latins*, it is otherwiſe, and with better Reaſon called in Holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that Portion of the World, wherein the whole Poſterity of *Sem* had their Seats and Dwellings, if the obſervation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is Situate Eaſt and West, from the 52 to the 169 degree of *Longitude*, and North and South, from the 82 degree of *Latitude*, to the very *Æquator*; ſome only of the Iſlands lying on the South of that *Circle*: So that the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve Hours only; but in the moſt Northern parts hereof, for almoſt four whole Months together no Night at all. And for a meaſurement by Miles, it ſtretches in Length 5200, and in Breadth 4560 Miles. *Cluverius* in his Geography bounds *Aſia* to the Weſt, with the River *Ob* inſtead of the *Duina*, neither of which Rivers were known to the ancient *Geographers*; nor, indeed, the Bounds of *Aſia* to the North Weſt, the Countries being then inhabited by barbarous Nations, and unpaſſable; but by the Travellers and Trade driven in *Muſcovy*, now much better known than formerly.

As to the Streights of *Anian*, mention'd above, they could never yet be found out, though many have attempted to find them by the North-Eaſt; but yet it is probable there is ſuch a Paſſage, becauſe it is conſtantly averr'd, that Whales wounded on the Coaſt of *Greenland*, have been found dead with the harping Irons in them, on the Coaſts of *China* and *Japan*, by our and the Dutch *Eaſt-India* Merchant Ships.

This Country hath heretofore been had in eſpecial Honour. 1. For the Creation of Man, who had his firſt making in this part of the World. 2dly, Becauſe in this part of it ſtood the Garden of *Eden*, which he had for the firſt place of his Habitation. 3dly, Becauſe here flouriſhed the four firſt great Monarchies of the *Aſſyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Perſians.* 4thly, Becauſe it was the Scene of almoſt all the memorable Actions, which are recorded by the Pen-men of the Scriptures. 5thly, Becauſe that here our Saviour CHRIST was Born, here wrought he moſt divine Miracles, and here accompliſhed the great Work of our Redemption. 6thly, and finally, Becauſe from hence all Nations of the World had their firſt beginning on the Diſperſion which was made by the Sons of *Noah*, after their vain attempt of *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the Bounds of any one Province, (for of thoſe we are to ſpeak in their ſeveral places) are, 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lyſia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, paſſeth directly Eaſtward to the *Indian* Ocean, and reckoning in its ſeveral windings and turnings, with its Spurs and Branches every way, is ſaid to be 6250 Miles long, and 357 Miles broad. This Mountain, or rather Ridge of Hills, divideth the *Greater Aſia*, as the *Æquator* doth the World, into North and South: memorable for three difficult Paſſages ftom the one to the other. The firſt out of the reſt of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the ſecond out of *Scythia*, or *Tartary*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucaſiæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Perſia*, called *Portæ Caſpiæ*. Of which, and of the whole Courſe of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning near the Shores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South, dividing the *Greater Aſia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into Eaſt and Weſt, and croſſing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other Name among the *Latines*, than *Imaus* only; and by that Name divideth *Scythia*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: But by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*, by ſome Writers *Belgion*. And on the Southſide of that Mountain is known in *Ptolomy* by the name of *Bitigo*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus*, or ſome other Branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean; ſuppoſed by ſome to be Mount *Sephar*, mentioned, *Gen.* 10. 30. of which we ſhall ſay more alſo when we come into *India*.

The Eſtate of *Chriſtianity* in this vaſt Continent is in ill Condition, diſcountenanced and oppreſſed, though not quite extinguiſhed. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*, the moſt that can be hoped for of the Chriſtian Faith, is a *toleratio* or connivance, and that not found but with an intermixture of ſuch Afflictions, as commonly attend diſcountenanced and diſgraced *Religions*. Yet is not *Chriſtianity* ſo over-powered either by *Mahometiſm*, or *Paganiſm*, but that in *Aſia* the *Leſſer*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Goſpel*, under their ſeveral Patriarchs and *Metropolitans*, differing in ſome few Points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither Correſpondency nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Chriſtian* Churches in the Empire of *Perſia*, nor in thoſe of *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Indies*, anciently planted in thoſe Countries; beſides the late increaſe thereof in the *Eaſtern Iſlands* by the diligent preaching of the *Jeſuits*, and ſome late *Factories* there ſettled by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*: Of all which I ſhall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman* Empire, whoſe Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Euphrates*, this Continent contained only three *Dioceſes*, or *Juridical Circuits*; that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Oriental*; which with the *Dioceſes* of *Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the Command of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, the greateſt Officer of Power and Juriſdiction, next to the Emperors themſelves, in the *Roman* Monarchy. And theſe three *Dioceſes* contained in them to the number of thirty ſeven Provinces, *viz.* The Provinces of *Bithynia*. 2. *Helenopontus*. 3. *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 4. *Galatia prima*. 5. *Galatia Salutaris*. 6. *Honorius*. 7. *Paphlagonia*. 8. *Cappadocia prima*. 9. *Cappadocia ſecunda*. 10. *Armenia prima*, and 11. *Armenia ſecunda*, contained in the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant thereof. II. The Provinces of *Pamphylia*. 2. *Lycia*. 3. *Caria*. 4. *Pyſidia*. 5. *Lycaonia*. 6. *Lydia*. 7. *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8. *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9. *Aſia*, ſpecially ſo called. 10. *Helleſpont*, and 11. the *Iſles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Dioceſe of Aſia*; whereof the three laſt were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant, or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Iſauria*. 2. *Cilicia prima*. 3. *Cilicia ſecunda*. 4. *Cyprus*. 5. *Phœnices*. 6. *Phœnices Libani*. 7. *Syria*. 8. *Syria Salutaris*. 9. *Paleſtina prima*. 10. *Peleſtina ſecunda*. 11. *Paleſtina Salutaris*. 12. *Euphratenſis*. 13. *Oſroene*. 14. *Meſopotamia*, and 15. *Arabia*, conſtituting the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The reſt of *Aſia* ſubject unto the *Parthian* or *Perſian* Kings, beſides thoſe of *India*, (and of many Regions and Countries not then diſcovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*; and therefore not within the compaſs of this Diſtribution.

At this time *Aſia* ſtands divided amongſt ſix great Monarchs; that is to ſay, the *Turk*, commanding all thoſe Parts and Provinces, which anciently belonged to the *Roman* Empire. 2dly, The *Perſian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, poſſeſſed by the *Perſian* Kings in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, or the *Aſacidæ*, or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*. 3dly, The *Great Cham* of *Tartary*, commanding over all the North parts of *Aſia*, anciently known by the name of *Scythia*. 4thly, The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5thly, The King of *Barma*, whoſe Dominion comprehends all, or the greateſt part of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*. And 6thly, The *Great Magor*, whoſe Empire is extended over all *India* on this ſide of that River. And ſome there be who in the Deſcriptions of this great Country, follow this Diviſion. But for our parts, for the better underſtanding of the *Greek*, and the *Roman* Stories, and the Eſtate of the *Aſſyrian*, *Babylonian*, and *Perſian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do ſo much relate; we ſhall conſider it as divided into the Regions of, 1. *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*. 2. *Cyprus*, 3. *Syria*. 4. *Paleſtine*. 5. *Arabia*. 6. *Chaldea*. 7. *Aſſyria*. 8. *Meſopotamia*. 9. *Turcomania*. 10. *Media*. 11. *Perſia*. 12. *Tartaria*. 13. *China*. 14. *India*; and 15. The *Oriental Iſlands*.

Monſieur *Tavernier*, a *French* Gentlemen, who travell'd this part of the World ſix times in forty Years, informs us thus of the preſent State of it. A Man cannot travel in *Aſia*, as they do in *Europe*; nor at the ſame Hours, nor with the ſame Eaſe. There are no Weekly Coaches, or Wagons, from Town to Town; and beſides, the Soil of the Countries is of ſeveral Natures. In *Aſia* you ſhall meet with ſeveral Regions untill'd, and un-peopled, either through the badneſs of the Climate or Soil, or the ſloth of the Inhabitants, who rather chuſe to live Miſerably, than to Work. There are vaſt Deſarts to croſs, and very dangerous both for want of Water, and by reaſon of the Robberies that the *Arabs* daily commit in thoſe places. There are no certain Stages, or Inns, to entertain Travellers. The beſt Inns, eſpecially in *Turkey*, are the Tents which you carry along with you, and your Hoſts are your Servants, that get ready thoſe Victuals which you have bought in good Towns. The *Caravanſeras* are more frequent in *Perſia* than *Turkey*, in which are Perſons that furniſh you with Proviſions for your Money: But then *Turky* wants not only this Convenience, but is alſo full of Thieves, who keep in Troops together, and Way-lay the Merchants upon the Roads; and if they be not very well Guarded, will certainly Rob them, nay, many times Murder them. A Miſchief prevented in *Perſia*, by the well-ordered Convenience which is provided for Travellers. To avoid theſe Inconveniences, you are obliged to ſtay for *Caravans*, that go for *Perſia*, or the *Indies*, which never ſet out but at certain times, and from certain places, *viz. Conſtantinople*, *Burſa*, *Smyrna*, and *Aleppo*.

I have tranſcribed this long Paſſage, to ſhew my Reader, not only the preſent State of *Aſia*, but alſo the very true Reaſon why the preſent State of the Inland Towns and Cities of *Aſia* are ſo little known, and ſo ſeldom travell'd; for he that travels with a *Caravan*, has neither Time nor Means to obſerve a Country exactly, or to inform himſelf of thoſe places which lie out of his Road. So that this is one of the principal Reaſons why the Geography of *Aſia* is ſo obſcure and imperfect.

Monſieur *Tavernier* ſaith, the Method the *Perſians* uſe to ſecure their Roads from Robberies, is by paying certain Duties on the Road to the Governor, who is obliged to ſecure the Merchants, or to Indemniſie them for every Robbery committed, ſo that you need not keep with the *Caravan*, except you pleaſe, *p.* 18.

ANATOLIA, or *ASIA MINOR*.

ANatolia, or *Aſia minor*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Aſia*; on the Weſt, with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean Sea*, by which parted from *Europe*; on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called alſo the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*; and on the South, by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphylian* Seas, ſeveral parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it is a demi-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, environed on all ſides with Waters, excepting a ſmall *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine* Sea, by which joyned to the reſt of *Aſia*.

It was anciently called *Aſia minor*, to difference it from the reſidue of this great *Continent*; afterwards *Anatolia*, ἀπὸ τ ἀνατολῆς, from the more Eaſtward Situation of it, in reſpect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former Name. But here is to be obſerved, that as this *Leſſer Aſia* was a part of the greater; and the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* the *Leſs*: So was *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, but a part only of the *Aſian Dioceſe*; the *Lydian Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* properly ſo called; and the *Proconſular Aſia*, but a part of that. The limits of *Aſia* the *Leſs*, and the ſeveral Provinces contained in the *Aſian Dioceſe*, have been ſhewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the Name of *Aſia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, it containeth only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which falling unto the *Romans*, by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Attalus*, the laſt King of *Pergamus*, were by them made into one Province, and called *Aſia*, after the Name of the whole *Continent*, this being as it were the *Earneſt Penny*, to make ſure the reſt. So witneſſeth *Strabo*, where he ſaith, Ρωμαῖοι ἐπαρχίαν ἀπέδειξαν τ̀ χώραν Ἀσίαν προσαγορεύσαντες, ὁμώνυμον τῇ ἠπείρῳ, *Lib.* 13. The *Romans* call'd the Province belonging to them, *Aſia*, which was the Name of that *Continent*. And for the *Lydian Aſia*, that contained only ſo much of the *Roman*, or proper *Aſia*, as anciently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to ſay, *Lydia* it ſelf, together with *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, and ſome parts of the *Greater Myſia* adjoyning to it. Which, as it had originally the Name of *Aſia*, from *Aſia*, a chief City of it near the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas*, and the *Great Etymoligiſt* have taken notice of, before that Name came to be communicated to the greater *Continent*: So it retained that Name to it ſelf ſeveral, diſtinct both from the *Greater*, and the *Leſſer Aſia*; as alſo from the *Aſia propria* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers. And of this *Aſia* only it is, which the Scriptures ſpeak, both in the Books of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the ſeven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Aſia*, and the paſſages in the other concerning *Aſia*, not to be underſtood of any, but of this alone. For whereas it is ſaid, *Acts* 16. That when they had gone throughout *Phrygia*, and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the *Holy Ghoſt*, to preach the Word in *Aſia*; after they were come to *Myſia*, they aſſayed to go into *Bythinia*, and came down to *Troas*: Moſt clear it is, that neither *Galatia*, nor *Bythinia*, though Regions of the *Leſſer Aſia*, nor *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, or *Troas*, all Regions of the *proper Aſia*, were any part of that *Aſia* which the Scripture ſpeaks of. So alſo where it is affirmed, that upon St. *Paul*'s preaching and diſputing for two Years in *Epheſus*, *all they which dwelt in* Aſia, *heard the Word of the Lord*, Acts 19. 10. It is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Aſia*, whereof *Epheſus* at that time was the principal City. So alſo *Acts* 19. 22, 26, 31. and *Chap.* 20. 18. Finally, for the *Proconſular Aſia*, which together with *Helleſpont*, and the *Iſles*, made up a Government apart, exempt from the Command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, it contained only *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countries lying about *Epheſus*. So witneſſeth St. *Hierom* from the *Chriſtian* Writers, where he affirms, That although all the whole *Peninſula* have the name of the *Leſſer Aſia*, *Specialiter ubi* Epheſus *Civitas eſt*, Aſia *vocatur*; *yet more particularly the parts adjoyning unto* Epheſus *have the name of* Aſia. And this appeareth by the Diſtribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, diſtinct from the *Proconſular Aſia*, which we now inſiſt on.

So having cleared our way in regard of the Name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the Notion in the largeſt Latitude, extending from the *Helleſpont*, to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which Account it reacheth from the 5, to the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and from the 36 to the 45 degree of *Latitude*: the length hereof from the *Helleſpont*, to the River *Euphrates*, being eſtimated at 630 Miles; the breadth from *Sinus Iſſicus* in *Cilicia*, to the City of *Trabezond*, 210. As for the Situation of it, in reference to the *Heavenly* Bodies, it lieth almoſt in the ſame Poſition with *Italy*, extending from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the middle *Parallel* of the ſixth. So that the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen Hours and a half, and one Hour longer in thoſe parts which lie moſt towards the North.

The temperature of the Air is exceeding ſound, and the Soil generally exceeding fruitful, abounding in moſt excellent Paſtures, which breed a notable race of Horſes, of very good ſervice in the Wars, if backed with *European* Riders; it being a by-word amongſt the *Turks*, That the Horſes of *Aſia*, and the Horſemen of *Europe* are of greateſt Action. It was anciently very plentiful of all Fruits, both for Uſe and Pleaſure, as ſtill it would be, were it cultivated as in former times. Once very Populous, and repleniſhed with goodly Cities, now in a manner waſte, and deſolate, lamenting the Deſtruction of 400 Towns; ſome of them deſtroyed by *Earthquakes*, (the Falling-ſickneſs of moſt great Cities in the Eaſt) but moſt by War, and have little now to boaſt of but the Commodiouſneſs of the Havens, which are very many; though moſt of them but meanly Traded, as in a Country ill Manured, and of little *Manufactures*.

The People anciently, ſpecially thoſe of *Greek* Original, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very Warlike and Induſtrious: The reſt, ſpecially the *Lydians*, and thoſe of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their Pleaſures. All of them at this time affected with the ſame Diſeaſe; inſomuch, that the *Turks*, (unleſs compelled thereunto by extream Neceſſities) never inrol their Children in the number of *Janizaries*. The greateſt part of them generally profeſs the *Chriſtian* Faith, but overpowered by *Mahometaniſm*, which is here moſt prevalent: All followers of the Church of *Greece*, and ſubject all (except thoſe of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. And as they are of the *Communion* of that Church, ſo they retain the *Greek Liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not ſo well underſtood amongſt them, as in former times, when it was more generally ſpoken there than it is at the preſent; now over-topped in moſt places by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* Tongues. And though in former times, by reaſon of the many *Greek* Colonies planted in this Country, the Conqueſt of it by *Alexander* the *Great*, and the ſubjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* Race, that Language became generally underſtood amongſt them; inſomuch, as three of the *Greek Dialects*, viz. The *Dorick*, the *Ionian*, and the *Æolick*, were ſpoken here; yet did it never ſo prevail, as to become the Vulgar Language of the People, or to extinguiſh any of the Vulgar Tongues. For it is ſaid of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he underſtood two and twenty Languages, without any *Interpreter*, which were no other than the Languages of ſo many Nations ſubject to himſelf, whoſe Dominion was contained for the moſt part within *Aſia Minor*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida*, in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Myſia*, *Tmolus* in *Lydia*, *Amamus* in *Cilicia*, and finally, *Antetaurus* and *Scordiſcus* in *Armenia Minor*: Out of which, for the moſt part, flow the chief Rivers hereof; that is to ſay, 1. *Iris*, (now *Caſilmach*.) 2. *Thermodon*. 3. *Hallis*, (now *Ottemangruch*.) 4 *Parthenius* (now *Dilop*.) 5. *Sangarius*, (now *Sangry*.) All of them falling into the *Euxine Sea*. 6. *Aſcanius*. 7. *Rhyndacus*. 8. *Æſapus*, and 9. *Granicus*, paſſing into the *Propontis*. 10. *Simocis*. 11. *Scamander*, called alſo *Xanthus*, ending their ſhort courſe in the *Helleſpont*. 12. *Caicus*. 13. *Hermus*. 14. *Cayſtrus*; and 15. *Meander*, loſing themſelves in the *Ægæan*. 16. *Calbis*. 17. *Xanthus*, called alſo *Lycus*. 18. *Limicus*. 19. *Cataractes*, diſchannelling into the *Mediterranean*; and 20. *Melas*, adding to the Waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of moſt which we ſhall ſpeak more particularly in their ſeveral places.

In reference to the State, of *Rome*, it contained the whole Dioceſs of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the *Greater*, the *Aſian Dioceſe* intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar Juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*, together with the Provinces of *Iſauria*, and *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the Eaſt. But becauſe the Names of many of thoſe Provinces were of new Invention, and ſome of them of as ſhort continuance, we will conſider it according as it ſtood divided anciently, and before the *Romans* had made any Conqueſts in it, into the Provinces of, 1. *Bythinia*. 2. *Pontus*. 3. *Paphlagonia*. 4. *Galatia*. 5. *Cappadocia*. 6. *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other Names, the *Pontick Dioceſe*. 7. *Phrygia Minor*. 8. *Phrygia Major*. 9. *Myſia*, the greater, and the leſſer. 10. *Aſia*, ſpecially ſo called, comprehending *Æolis and Ionia*. 11. *Lydia*. 12. *Caria*. 13. *Lycia*. 14. *Lycaonia*. 15. *Piſidia*. 16. *Pamphylia*. 17. The Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. 18. *Iſauria*. 19. *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the *Eaſt*, as before was ſaid.

1. BYTHINIA.

BYthinia is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the Weſt, with part of the *Euxine*, and *Thracian Boſphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Myſia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at laſt *Bythinia*, and that as ſome ſay from *Bythinius*, once a King hereof, more probably from the *Thyni*, a People of *Thrace*, who paſſed over the *Boſphorus*, and ſubdued it, called therefore by ſome Writers, *Thracia Aſiatica*. So witneſſeth the Poet *Claudian*, ſaying:

Thyni *Thraces erant, quæ nunc* Bithynia *fertur*.

By *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian it is called by the Name of *Metapontus*, by reaſon of its neighbouring to the *Euxine*, and the *Pontick Regions*.

The Country naturally Rich, and in thoſe parts hereof which lie next the *Boſphorus*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, ſo plentifully enriched with fruitful Hills, and pleaſant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Chriſtian*, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the ſo much celebrated *Tempe*: Now robbed of all thoſe former Beauties, by the careleſneſs of the *Turks*, who affect neither Art, nor Sumptuoſity, in their Retirements and Delights; but deſire to ſeem poor.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Phillis*. 2. *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine Sea*; this laſt ariſing from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furtheſt parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his Journey hither. 3. *Aſcanius*, which riſing alſo in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the Borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay, called *Sinus Aſcanius*; which with a Lake in the ſame Country, called *Lacus Aſcanius*, doth plainly manifeſt, that the *Bythinians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Grand-ſon of *Japhet*.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Scutari*, overagainſt the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, called anciently *Chryſopolis*, for that there the *Perſians* received their Tribute from the other Cities of all theſe parts of *Aſia Minor*. An ample Town, well Garriſon'd within, and ſurrounded round about with moſt pleaſant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower, called the *Maiden-Tower*, ſerving both for a Fort, and Watch-Tower; and being furniſhed for defence with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Chalcedon*, on the ſame Shoar alſo, a Colony of the *Megarenſes*, called *Blind* by the *Oracle*, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and chuſing the leſs convenient place for their Habitation. And yet did *Conſtantine* the *Great* reſolve upon the ſame place alſo for his *Regal* City; but changed his Reſolutions on a kind of Miracle: It being obſerved, that when his Workmen began to draw the Platform, ſome *Eagles* conveyed away their Lines to the other ſide of the *Boſphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there aſſembled, by command of the Emperor *Martianus*, in the Year 451, for repreſſing the Hereſie of *Neſtorius*; in which were 530 Biſhops: Now ſo decayed, that it can only ſhew ſome few of the Ruins of it *Scutari* being riſen on the fall thereof. It is now call'd by the *Turks*, *Cadiqui*, as Mr. *Wheler* aſſures us, *p.* 209. 3. *Nicomedia*, ſo called from *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, (the Son of *Zipes*, and Grand-child to that *Bythinian* King, who ſo valiantly defended his own, and his Countries Liberty againſt *Calantus*, one of Great *Alexander*'s Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an Hill environed with a pleaſant and delightful Plain, honoured with the Seat and Reſidence of many of the *Roman* Emperors, when their Affairs called them into the Eaſt, before the building of *Conſtantinople*; on that occaſion made the Throne on which many of God's Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, eſpecially in the Perſecution under *Diocleſian*. In thoſe times Wealthy, and of Fame, now much decayed; but notwithſtanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the Commodiouſneſs of the freſh Springs which are thereabouts. This City is now by the *Turks* call'd *Iſnigimid*, and for ſhortneſs, *Iſmia*. *Busbequius*, who ſaw this place, ſaith, there was nothing to be found in it worth the ſeeing, but Ruins and ſhattered Marbles, the Teſtimonies of its ancient Splendor and Glory; but the Caſtle which is built on an Hill, is yet more intire, and leſs injur'd. 4. *Libuſſa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Aſcanius*, now call'd *Gebiſa*, memorable for the Death and Sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made Priſoner to the *Romans*, when *Pruſus* King of *Bythinia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himſelf by Poyſon. 5. *Pruſa*, founded by another *Pruſius*, whoſe Name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as moſt in *Aſia*: Honoured for a long time with the Reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Kings, till the removal of their Seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the Firſt; and ſtill ennobled with the Sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* Race, except the Emperors themſelves. By the *Turks* called *Burſa*. This City, ſaith Mr. *Wheeler*, who ſaw it, is ſeated on the Aſcent of an Hill, with a pleaſant fruitful Plain before it, and a Mountain behind it to the Eaſt, both covered with Trees, and is now fair, large, and populous in *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, and *Greeks*. It was taken by *Ottoman*, the Founder of the *Turkiſh* Empire, in the Year 1326, with the loſs of 100000 of its Inhabitants, in the Siege, and vaſt Numbers more in the Sack. Its Walls were ſpared, but the Inhabitants pay a double *Caratach*, or Tribute to this Day, in revenge of the Reſiſtance of their Anceſtors; and the *Chriſtians* are not ſuffer'd to live within the Walls. It is ſaid to have 40000 *Turks*, 12000 *Jews*, and ſomewhat fewer *Chriſtians*. But then *Philadar*, a large Town four Miles thence, has none but *Chriſtians* in it. It has about 30 *Moſques*, and 2 *Seraglios*. It has no River, but great numbers of Springs from the Mountain behind it, and it has a reaſonable good Trade; the *Caravans* from *Aleppo* and *Perſia* paſſing this way to *Conſtantinople*, and *Smyrna*. The *Turks* live here in more Splendor than in other places, and have nobler Houſes, and better Furniſhed. Our Author ſaith, *Orchanes* took it, which may be true, but it was in the Life of his Father, to whom *Orchanes* ſucceeded in the Year 1328. This City is within three days Journey of *Conſtantinople*, and ſends every two Months a *Caravan* to *Perſia*. Tavernier, *p.* 3. 6. *Nicæ*, or *Nicæa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but moſt commonly *Iſnichs*, ſituate near the Fens of the River *Aſcanius*, occaſioned by the frequent overflowings of that River; by ſome affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bythinia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that Honour. Firſt, named *Antigonia*, from *Antigonus* the Founder of it; and afterwards *Nicæa*, by the name of *Nica*, Wife unto *Lyſimachus*; both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*, which laſt had the happineſs to ſurvive the overthrow of the former, and was the longeſt liver of thoſe great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Civil* Story, for the firſt *General Council* there holden by the appointment of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, An. 325. for ſetling the Peace of the Church, then miſerably diſtracted by the *Arian* Hereſie. The number of Biſhops there aſſembled, no more than 318. yet of ſuch high eſteem for Learning and Piety, that never Council hath been held in ſo great an Honour. Here was alſo held the Council by the Empreſs *Irene*, for eſtabliſhing the Veneration of Images; that paſſing by the name of the *Nicene* Council, the Acts thereof might be of greater Reputation amongſt ignorant Men. In which it was decreed by ſuch doubty Arguments, as *Let us make Man after our own Image*, once mainly inſiſted on by a *Legate* of the Eaſtern Churches, that they ſhould be reverenced and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the bleſſed *Trinity* it ſelf. In the Year 1098, this City was taken with a vaſt Expence of Blood and Treaſure, from the *Saracens*, by *Franks* then going to the Holy War, and reſtored to *Aexius*, Emperor of the Eaſt, who in the Year 1105, reſtored it to them again. When the *Greeks* recover'd it, I cannot find. This City was alſo the *Imperial* City of the *Greek* Emperors, after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, and there continued till the expulſion of the *Latins*, under theſe

Emperors of the GREEKS reſiding at NICE.

A. Ch.

1200. 1. *Theodorus Laſcaris*, Son-in-law to *Alexius Angelus* the Uſurper, upon the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latins*, paſſed over into *Aſia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bythinia*, both the *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Lydia*, *Æolas*, *and Ionia*.

1223. 2. *John*, Sirnamed *Ducas*, the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Laſcaris*, ſucceeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, moſt of the Iſles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of Importance in *Thrace* it ſelf.

1256. 3. *Theodorus* II. the Son of *Ducas*.

1259. 4. *John* II. the Son of *Theodore* the Second, an Infant of about ſix Years old, ſupplanted firſt, and after cruelly depoſed and deprived of ſight.

1259. 5. *Michael Palæologus*, deſcended from the *Imperial* Family of the *Comneni*, firſt took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant Emperor, and afterwards as his *Aſſociate* in the Empire; in which confirmed by many fortunate Succeſſes, as well againſt the *Latins*, as ſome *Greek* Uſurpers in *Theſſaly* and *Peloponneſus*, eſpecially the taking of *Conſtantinople*, he deprived the young Emperor of his Sight, made himſelf ſole Emperor, and left it unto his Poſterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual Diſquiets, till the Year 1452. when conquer'd by *Mahomet* the Great, as before was ſaid. But this Recovery of *Conſtantinople* was the loſs of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the *Imperial* Seat, by *Sultan Orchanes*, Anno 1330. who preſently thereupon took on himſelf the Style of *King*, from which before he had abſtain'd. *Busbequius*, who ſaw it, ſaith, it is ſeated on the Banks of the Lake *Aſcanius*, and that its Gates and Walls are tolerably perfect; of the latter it hath only four, which may all be ſeen in the Center of the Market-place; they have all of them Latin Inſcriptions, which mention *Antoninus* for their Founder. Whilſt he was there, the *Turks* found a Statue in a Military Habit, which was almoſt perfect, but they fell preſently to break it: *Busbequius* appearing concern'd ſo ancient and fine a Statue ſhould be deſtroyed: the *Turk* asked him, *if he would have had it preſerv'd to worſhip it, as your manner is*; which, conſidering the place where it happen'd is worth obſerving. Of the number of Inhabitants he ſaith nothing. One part of the City is built upon the Deſcent of a Hill, the other upon a Plain that reaches to the Sea, and forms the Gulf of *Iſnich*, which has an Haven make by two Moles of Freeſtone. It has three *Arſenals* full of large Timber, for Gallies; and in the higheſt part of the Town *Amurath* built a *Seraglio*. The *Jews* inhabit the greateſt part of the Town, and Trade moſtly in Timber and

Corn. Tavernier. p. 3. 7. *Chabanagi*, a ſmall Town built upon the ſide of a Lake, *Chaban Gigul*, which is ten Leagues in compaſs, and full of Fiſh. In this Town are two *Caravanſeras*, or Inns, and a plenty of Fiſh.

As for the Fortunes of *Bythinia* it ſelf, I look upon the *Bythinian* as a *Thracian* People, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* ſpeak of, as the Founders of the Name and Nation. Of ſuch a King of theirs as *Bythinius*, I find ſome mention in my Authors; and poſſibly it may be he who had the leading of the *Thymi*, or *Bythini* in this Expedition, that being the Name rather of this Nation than his proper Family. But for the Line of Kings which held out till the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Greatneſs, they began to reign here ſome few Generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: By which laſt, having other Imployment, and lying out of the Road towards *Perſia*, they were little troubled. *Calantus*, one of *Alexander*'s Captains, made an Expedition into their Country, and was vanquiſhed by them; and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexander*'s greateſt Princes) who though he humbled them for the preſent, yet got he neither Title nor Poſſeſſion by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Pruſias*, ſo ſhuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they ſtill preſerved their own Eſtates. This *Pruſias*, when the *Romans* became ſo conſiderable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, pieced himſelf with them; and having aided them in their Wars againſt *Philip* and *Antiochus* both, and moſt unworthily promiſed to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for Succour) unto their Ambaſſadors, made all ſure to this Side. His Son, and Succeſſor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and reſtored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Feudatory*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Succeſſor, Sirnamed *Philometor*: Who dying without Iſſue in the time of *Auguſtus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bythinia*, continuing ſo till the diviſion of that Empire into the Eaſtern and Weſtern; when falling to the ſhare of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, and with them to the Power of the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, in the Year 1630, who do ſtill poſſeſs it.

2. *PONTUS.*

Pontus is bounded on the Eaſt with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the Weſt with *Bythinia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, from *Bythinia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*, but not of anſwerable breadth; and gives Name to the Sea adjoyning, *à Ponto regione illi adjacente ita apellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it, called from hence *Pontus*, by the *Latins*; the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occaſion, which we have ſpoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Maſters of it) into theſe four parts, *viz. Metapontus* or *Pontus*, ſpecially ſo called. 2. *Pontus Galaticus*. 3. *Polemoniacus*; and 4. *Pontus Cappadocius*.

Pontus, eſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bythinia*, and bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Parthemius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1. *Claudiopolis*, ſo called in Honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman Emperor*; as 2. *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Veſpacianus*; and 3. *Juliopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family; all midland Towns. 4. *Dioſpolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, ſo called from a Temple conſecrated to *Jupiter*, of great reſort. 5. *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, call'd for diſtinction ſake (there being many of that Name) *Heraclea Ponti*, memorable of late times for being the Seat and Reſidence of a branch of the *Imperial* Family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern Chriſtians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into theſe parts: The firſt fixing here his Royal Reſidence, commanded over this part of *Pontus*, and *Paphlagonia*; the other poſſeſſing himſelf of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or Imperial City. But theſe two Empires, though of the ſame date, were of different Deſtinies; that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperors reſiding at *Nice*, and partly ſeized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and firſt Fortunes of the *Ottoman* Family; the other keeping up the Majeſty and State of an Empire, till the Year 1461. when ſubdued by *Mahomet* the Great. (This City is now call'd *Penderachi* by the *Turks*, and ſtands 140 Miles from the *Boſphorus* to the Eaſt on the *Euxine* Sea.) 6. *Phyllium*, at the Mouth, or Influx of the River *Phyllis*, upon which it is ſeated. 7. *Amaſtris*, the fartheſt Town of this part towards the Eaſt, on the Seaſide alſo, once of great Strength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Amiſus*, and other Towns, in the War againſt *Mithridates* the great King of *Pontus*.

2. Eaſtward of *Pontus*, ſpecially ſo called, or *Meta-Pontus*, as *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian calls it, lieth *Pontus Galaticus*, ſo named, becauſe added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were, 1. *Synope*, pleaſantly ſeated on a long Point, or *Promontory*, ſhooting into the Main, remarkable in ancient Story for the Birth and Sepulture of *Mithridates*, before mention'd; and in the latter times for being the chief Seat of the *Iſendiars*, a noble Family of the *Turks*, who had taken it with the reſt of his Tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the ſame Year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was ſubdued by *Mahomet*. Firſt built by the *Mileſians*, and continuing in a *free Eſtate*, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the *Metropolis* of that Kingdom. This City is now call'd *Sinabe* by the *Turks*, as *Leunclavius* ſaith, and has had the good Fortune to preſerve it ſelf in a tolerable Eſtate under the depopulating *Turks*; but in the Year 1616, it fell into the Hands of the *Coſſacks*, to its great Miſery. This City, as Sir *Paul Ricaut* ſaith, is ſtill a place of conſiderable Traffick, and made Rich by the Fiſhery; out of which, and the Cuſtoms the *Paſcha* receives yearly, 734850 *Aſpers*, and has 14 Caſtles under him, to ſecure his Government. *Turkiſh Max.* p. 25. 2. *Caſtamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Iſendiars* before-mention'd; preferr'd by them for Strength and Conveniency of Situation before *Heraclea*, or *Synope*. It ſtands in the borders of *Cappadocia* and *Paphligonia*, as *Cinnamus* ſaith, who mentions it, becauſe taken by *John Comnenus*, Emperor of the Eaſt, from the *Perſians*, and ſoon after re-taken by them again, though not without great Difficulty and Slaughter of the Inhabitants. This War was in or about the Years of *Chriſt* 1121, and 1122. And he calls the *Perſian* Prince *Taniſman*, King of *Cappadocia*, who ſoon after died, and was ſucceeded by *Mahomet* his Son, from whom this Prince re-took it, and maintain'd it, though often attempted by them. It fell finally into the Hands of *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461, with *Trebiſonde*. 3. *Themiſcyra*, now call'd *Fanagoria*, or *Lirio*, ſeated on a ſpacious Plain near unto the Sea, and anciently giving Name to the Province adjoyning. 4. *Amaſia*, the Birth-place of *Strabo* the *Geographer*, remarkable in the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtories for the *Martyrdom* of St. *Theodorus*, and of late times for being the Reſidence of the eldeſt Sons of the *Grand Seignior*, ſent hither as ſoon as Circumciſed, never returning back again till the Death of their Father. Accounted now amongſt the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province, a midland Town. *Amaſia*, ſaith *Busbequius*, is almoſt the Principality of *Cappadocia*, and the Seat of a *Turks* Prefect, or Governor.

It ſtands on both ſides of the River *Iris*, and is flanked on both ſides again by Hills, on which it is ſo built, that it appeareth like a Theatre divided by a River; the Hill beyond it ſo encloſed it on all ſides, that there is but one Paſſage to it paſſable for Carts or Wagons. It is ſeated upon the *Euxine* Sea, and has a Harbour, and a ſtrong Caſtle; but the Streets, or Houſes, had nothing worth the ſeeing, except ſome broken Fragments of Antiquities which yet ſhew this was the Seat of the Kings of *Cappadocia*; though now imploy'd in mean and naſty beggarly Cottages. The *Turks*, as he obſerveth, thought this City very unfortunate on the account of *Muſtapha*, who was here put to Death by the order of his Father, in the Year 1553. He obſerveth alſo, that the Inhabitants were more enclin'd to the *Perſians* than *Turks*, who ſometimes made Inroads to this place. 5. *Cabira*, call'd afterward *Dioſpolis*, memorable for the great Defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*, more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetouſneſs of the *Romans*, he ſaw no better way to ſave himſelf and the reſt of his Forces after the Defeat, than to ſcatter his Treaſures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his Enemies might ſlacken the Purſuit, to collect the Spoils, and he preſerve himſelf to another day; and ſo accordingly it proved. 6. *Comana*, toldifference it from another of that name, call'd *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in ſafety by the trick aforeſaid, and thence eſcaped unto *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 Horſe.

3. Eaſtward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies *Polemoniacus*, ſo call'd by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium*, a chief Town of this Tract, or from *Polemo*, the laſt King hereof, after whoſe Death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Polemonium* on the Seaſide, ſpoken of before. 2. *Hermanaſſa*, a Sea-Town alſo. More in the Land. 3. *Neo-Cæſarea* (now *Nixaria*) the *Metropolis* of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it ſelf. This City is famous for two Synods here held, the firſt in the Year 261. under *Gregory* Biſhop of this place; and the other in the Year 313. it is now in a tolerable good Eſtate, and is the uſual Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Sangiack*. 4. *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and call'd *Megalopolis*; by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5. *Sebaſtia*, ſo call'd in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* call'd *Sebaſtos*, a place of great Strength, and one of the firſt Towns in the *Leſſer Aſia*, which held out againſt *Tamerlane*; in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he cauſed 12000 Men, Women, and Children, to be moſt cruelly buried alive in ſome hollow Pits which he had digged for that purpoſe. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow; where alſo *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, coming to the relief of *Sebaſtia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting Men. The iſſue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having loſt 200000 of his Soldiers, was himſelf taken priſoner, and carried by the inſolent Conqueror in an iron Cage, againſt the Bars whereof he beat out his Brains. Now the Seat of a *Beglierbeg* who has ſix *Sangiacks* under him, and is call'd by them *Savas*. 6. *Barbiniſſa*. 7. *Megaloſſus*. 8. *Gozalvia*, &c. not much obſervable in Story.

In this part of *Pontus* is the riſe and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the Banks whereof the *Amazons*, a ſort of warlike Women are ſaid to dwell; ſo called either *quaſi* ἀμάζαι, becauſe they uſed to cut off their right Paps, that they might not be an Impediment to their Shooting; or from α and μάζα, *ſine pane*, becauſe they uſed not to eat Bread; or from ἁμαζῆν, becauſe they uſed to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their Husbands to theſe parts, about the time of the *Scythians* firſt irruptions into *Aſia*, in the time of *Seſoſtris* King of *Ægypt*. The Leaders of this People into *Cappadocia* were *Plinos* and *Scolpythus*, two young Men of a great Houſe, whom a contrary Faction had baniſhed. They held a great Hand over the *Themiſcyrii*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At laſt they were by Treachery all murder'd: But their Wives now doubly vexed, both with Exile and Widowhood, and extremity of Grief and Fear producing its uſual effect, Deſperateneſs, they ſet upon the Conquerors under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpeſia*; and not only overthrew them, but alſo infinitely enlarged their Dominions, and for ſome time continued in great Reputation: The Names of whom, or of ſo many of them at leaſt as occur in Story, we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

The *Amazon Queens*.

1. *Lampedo*, *Marpheſia*, Firſt *Queens* of the *Amazons* in theſe parts.

2. *Ortara*.

3. *Antiopa*, whoſe Siſters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theſeus* to ſingle Combat, and were at laſt hardly vanquiſhed, to their eternal Credits.

4. *Pentheſilea*, who came with a Troop of brave *Virago's*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*; ſhe invented the *Battle-Axe*, and was at laſt ſlain by *Pyrrhus*, Son to *Achilles*. Long after her Death reigned *Thaleſtris*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him, that ſhe came to be his Bedfellow; which done, ſhe returned; and at laſt by little and little this female Nation was extinct. They uſed in matters of *Copulation* to go to their neighbouring Men thrice in a Year; if they brought forth Males, they ſent them to their Fathers; if Females, they kept them, and trained them up in all Diſcipline of War and Courage. Of theſe more elſewhere.

4 The moſt Eaſtern part of *Pontus*, call'd *Cappadocius*, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmoſt boundaries of this Country. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2. *Ceraſus*, by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought firſt to *Rome*, An. *U. C.* 680. call'd therefore *Ceraſa* by the *Latins*; firſt brought into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his War with *Mithridates*, no leſs deſerving for that Service to be made a God (as wittily *Tertullian* ſcoffs it) than *Bacchus* was for his tranſplanting of the Vine from the Eaſtern Countries. 3. *Iſcopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And ſo is alſo 4. *Trapezus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni* here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and theſe parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded firſt by *Alexius Comnenus*, (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his Son *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, fled into theſe parts, which willingly ſubmitted unto his command, *An.* 1200. Here his Poſterity flouriſhed in great proſperity, preſerving the Majeſty of the Empire in a better meaſure, than the *Conſtantinopolitans* themſelves, till the time of *David* the laſt Emperor; in whoſe Reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, in the Year 1461. the poor Emperor led priſoner unto *Greece*, and there cruelly murder'd. A famous Empory, and ſpecially for the Trade of Fiſh, caught by the People on the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea: here ſalted, and from hence tranſported in great quantities to *Conſtantinople*, *Caffa*, and other places. And for the better help herein, it is ſaid that there is a Mountain not far from this City, affording a black Stone, which being beaten in a Mortar, ſerves inſtead of

Salt wherewith they ſeaſon the Fiſh which they ſend abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the Reſidence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Græcian* Emperor, for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* againſt the *Perſians*; and now the Station of ſuch Gallies as are maintain'd by the *Grand Seignior*, to ſcour the Coaſts of the *Black-Sea*, and ſecure their Trade. This City was taken and ſack'd by the *Coſſacks* in the Year 1616. It is ſtill a place of conſiderable Trade, made rich by Fiſhing, and a ſort of Linen-*Crape* here made; the *Paſcha* hath 734850 *Aſpers* of Revenue, with 14 Caſtles to defend the City. More in the Land ſtand, 5. *Zephiriam*. 6. *Aza*. 7. *Cocalia*. 8. *Cordyle*; and many others named in *Ptolomy*, but not obſervable.

Emperors of *TRABEZOND*.

1204. 1. *Alexius Comnenus*, Sirnamed the *Great*, who being Governour of *Trabezond*, under the Emperor, when *Conſtantinople* was taken by the *Franks*, in the Year 1204. took upon him the Soveraignty of that City by the Title of Duke only, or Lord of *Trabezond*.

2. *N. Comnenus*, Duke and Prince of *Trabezond*, Son of *Alexius*.

3. *N. Comnenus*, whoſe Parents are not known, but he was certainly deſcended of *Alexius*.

1274. 4. *Joannes Comnenus*, who was the firſt of theſe Princes that aſſumed the Name of Emperor of *Trabezond*, in oppoſition to *Michael Paleologus*, who had imbraced the *Latin* Rites in the Council of *Lyons*; he Married *Eudocia*, Daughter of this *Michael*, in the Year 1276. and died *Anno* 1295.

1295. 5. *Alexius Comnenus* II. Emperor of this Family, Born in 1282. he beat the *Genoueſe* in the Year 1303.

1320. 6. *Baſilius Comnenus*, Son of *Alexius*, Pope *John* 22. wrote to this Prince in the Year 1329.

7. *Baſilius Comnenus* II. call'd by *Nicephorus*, *Gregora* the younger, who was murder'd by his Wife in 1339.

1339. 8. *N. Comnenus* III. Son of *Baſilius* the II.

9. *Alexius Comnenus* III. when he began his Reign is not known, nor whether he were Son, or Brother of his Predeceſſor.

1449. 10. *Joannes Comnenus* II. call'd *Calojannes*, or the Beautiful; he ſlew his Father, to attain the Empire, which he defended with great difficulty againſt the *Turks*, and at laſt was forced to pay 3000 Crowns in Gold to *Amurath*, Son of *Mahomet* II.

11. *David Comnenus*, Brother of *John*, who was conquer'd by *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461. when he had reigned but a ſhort time. His 7 Sons were all ſlain by the Conqueror, becauſe they would not renounce the *Chriſtian* Religion, and turn *Mahometans*; ſo ended this Noble Family.

Tranſcrib'd from Du Freſne de familiis Bizantinis, *cap*. 29.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were call'd *Leucoſyri*, or *White Syrians*, govern'd by a race of Kings deſcended from the Royal Houſe of *Archemenes* King of *Perſia*. The firſt of them call'd *Mithridates*, one of the ſeven Competitors for the *Perſian* Kingdom on the death of *Cambyſes*. But that Honour falling on *Darius*, (of which more hereafter) he ſeated himſelf in theſe remote parts of *Aſia Minor*; the Anceſtor of many great and puiſſant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own Name, *Regum Orientis poſt* Alexandrum, *Magnum Maximus*, the moſt potent King of all the Eaſt ſince the time of *Alexander* the Great, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great Abilities both in War and Counſel, and one who longer held it out againſt the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon* and *Syria* had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part againſt *Ariſtonicus*; who would not conſent to the admiſſion of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the Will of *Attalus*. Afterwards conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Aſia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Citizens diſperſed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: In like manner, as in after times the *Engliſh*, taught perhaps by this Example, murder'd all the *Danes* then reſident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* maſſacred all the *French* inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declar'd. He diſpoſſeſſed *Nicomedes*, Son to *Pruſias*, King of *Bythinia*; *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Philumones* King of *Paphlagonia*, of their Eſtates; becauſe they perſiſted faithful to his Enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebel, poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Athens*, and divers places of Importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Aſia*, and allured all the Iſles, except *Rhodes*, from their Obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having diſturbed their Victories, and much ſhaken their Eſtate, for the ſpace of 40 Years, he was with much ado vanquiſhed by the Valour and Felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greateſt Soldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* Puiſſance ſo much pluck down his proud Heart, as the Rebellion of his Son *Pharnaces* againſt him; which he no ſooner heard, but he would have poyſon'd himſelf; but having formerly ſo uſed his Body to a kind of poyſon allayed, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridate*) that the *Venom* could not work upon him, he ſlew himſelf. He is ſaid to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have ſpoken perfectly the Languages of 22 Nations; the Languages of ſo many Nations, which were ſubject to him. But neither his Learning nor his Courage could preſerve him from thoſe common Miſeries which ordinarily attend a falling greatneſs. And ſo ended this long and tedious War, exceeding troubleſome to the *Romans*, but withal very beneficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armenia's*: Inſomuch, as it is ſaid truly by *L. Flor. Totum penè Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his Ruins he involved both the Eaſt and North. But to proceed, after his Death the Kingdom continued unto his Poſterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*: When *Polemo* the laſt King hereof dying without Iſſue, it was *cantoned* and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bythinia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was call'd *Polemoniacus*, retaining the dignity of a Province, diſtinct and ſeparate. And ſo it remained till the Reign of *Conſtantine the Great*, who changing the Names, leſſening the Bounds, and increaſing the number of the Provinces, left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythinia* im the ſtate he found it. And for the reſt, he caſt it into two new Provinces, that towards the Eaſt, retaining the Name, but not the Bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæſarea*, *Ceraſus*, *Comana*, *Pontica*, *Palæmonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, call'd afterwards *Juſtiniana*, of which *Neo-Cæſarea* was the *Metropolis*. That towards the Eaſt, ſeparated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythinia*, by the River *Parthemius*, he cauſed to be call'd *Helenopontus*, by the name of *Helena* his Mother; and thereunto aſſign'd the Cities of *Amaſia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Ægeum*, *Climacus*, *Synope*, *Amiſus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this Diviſion held not long, both being united into one, and call'd *Helenopontis* by *Juſtinian*; continuing after that a Member of the *Roman* Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni*, from *Conſtantinople*, in the Year 1200. whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is ſaid. But their Eſtates being overthrown,

thrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it, ever ſince the Year 1461.

The Arms of the Emperors of *Trabezond*, the greateſt Princes of theſe parts, till the *Turks* ſubdued them, were *Or*, and Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. *PAPHLAGONIA.*

P*aphlagonia* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the Weſt by the River *Parthemius*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythinia*; on the North with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus* which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South with *Phrygia Major* and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the Son of *Phineus*, eſtated in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Country was but ſmall, and of little power, and conſequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The ptincipal of ſuch as were, were, 1. *Gangra*, obſervable for a Council holden there in the Primitive times, *Anno* 327. commonly call'd *Synodus Gangrenſis*. 2. *Conica*, or *Coniata*, of ſo convenient a Situation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was Maſter of this Country. To this place was *Dioſcorus* the *Eutichian* baniſhed by *Martian* the Emperor, in the Year 451. and *Timotheus Ælurus*, a Monk of that Faction, by *Leo* his Succeſſor in the Empire in the Year 457. It was then an Arch-Biſhops See, and at this day is call'd *Cangria* by the *Greeks*, and *Kiengara* by the *Turks*. 3. *Pomteiopolis*, raiſed out of the Foundation of ſome leſſer Town by *Pompey* the Great, and by him ſo named. 4. *Germanopolis*. 5. *Xoana*. 6. *Andrapa*, called afterward *Nova Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that Name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but ſmall in Circuit, was heretofore the Seat of four different Nations, *viz.* 1. The *Tibareni*, of whom it is ſaid that they never waged War on any Enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand of the time and place of their Fight. 2. The *Heptacometæ*. 3. The *Moſynæci*, both which were a People ſo beaſtly and ſhameleſs, that they uſed to perform the work of Generation in Publick; not knowing that *Multa ſunt honeſta factu, quæ ſunt turpia viſu*. And 4. The *Heneti*, to whom the *Venetians*, as we have already ſaid, do owe their firſt Original. The Kings which ruled in this Country, derived themſelves from *Philomenes*, who aſſiſted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence againſt the *Greeks*: In memory of whom, this Region for a while was call'd *Philomenia*. Applying themſelves unto the Times, they were always favourable to the ſtrongeſt, ſerving the *Perſian*, and ſubmitting to *Alexander* as he paſſed that way; and ſo maintained their Eſtate without much moleſtation, till the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*; who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great Power in the *Leſſer Aſia*, depriving *Philomenes*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himſelf, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Reſtored again unto his Kingdom by the Power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his Death. But the Country being very much waſted, and moſt of the Cities of it deſtroyed, and deſolate in the courſe of that War, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a diſtinct Province in the time of St. *Peter*, who writing to the *Jews*, diſperſed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Aſia*, and *Bythinia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwiſe eſteemed than as a Member of *Galatia* in the time of *Ptolomy*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*; part of it after that, with ſome parts of *Pontus* and *Bythinia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperor *Theodoſius*, and call'd *Honorius*, in the honour of his Son *Honorius*, whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly ſo call'd, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Juſtinien*, the name of *Honorius* being aboliſhed, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again, the whole Country, as before limited, was govern'd by an *Imperial* Officer, whom he call'd *Prætor Juſtinianus*; continuing under the Command of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Latins*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabezond*, till the conqueſt of it by the *Turks* in 1461. by whom call'd *Rom*.

4. GALATIA.

G*Alatia* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cappadocia*; on the Weſt with the River *Sangarius*, and ſome part of *Pontus* ſpecially ſo call'd, or *Metapontus*; on the North with *Paphlagonia*; on the South with *Lycaonia*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, paſſed into *Aſia*, and brought a great part of it under their Command: But being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Myſia* and the leſſer *Phrygia*, were at laſt confined to this Country. It was alſo call'd *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Grecians*, who uniting into one Body, when they came for *Aſia*, were commonly call'd *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas Græco Galli*, and the Country ſuitable *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Græcians* notwithſtanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preſerved their own Language, but in ſhort time made it the common Language of the whole Country. And it continued ſo till St. *Hierom*'s Days, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on St. *Paul*'s Epiſtle to this People, that it was *Similimà Treverenſium*, a Language like to that of the *Treveri*, or People of *Triers*. A ſure and certain Argument of their firſt Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of Fruits, even unto Voluptuouſneſs; and providently provided of the Stone call'd the *Amethyſt*, which is ſaid to preſerve from Drunkenneſs the Man that weareth it. The Name doth ſignifie as much, derived from *a privativum*, and μέθυτος, *ebrius*, which cometh from μέθυ, ſignifying Wine.

The People had a cuſtom in their publick Funerals, to caſt Letters fairly written into that laſt and fatal Fire, wherein the dead Body was to be burned, ſuppoſing that their Eriends ſhould read them in the other World. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excell'd all Nations; inſomuch, that *Athanæus* telleth us of one *Ariamnes*, a rich *Galatian*, that he feaſted the whole Nation for a Year together with the *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine, and other Proviſions, boyled in great Chaldrons made for that purpoſe, and diſtributed amongſt them in Tents and Booths erected for that Entertainment. A brave flaſh of vain-glorious Hoſpitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and ſome others. The Towns of moſt conſideration in it were, 1. *Ancyra*, on the Banks of the River *Sangàrius*, the chief City of the *Tectoſages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country; memorable in Church-Story for a *Synod* held here in the Primitive times, *Anno* 399. call'd *Synodus Ancyrana*; but of moſt note at the preſent for the making of *Chamlets*: now call'd *Angauri*. Sir *Paul Ricaut* calls it *Augora*, and ſaith it is the Seat of a *Turkiſh Sangiack*. 2. *Olenus*. 3. *Agrinama*, Cities of the ſame People alſo. 4. *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both Names) the chief City of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen Statue of *Jupiter*, whoſe Temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. 5. *Androſia*. 6. *Phabarena*, Cities of that Nation alſo. 7. *Thermæ*, a *Roman* Colony, ſo called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Toliboſti*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Toliſtobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8. *Talachbocbora*, belonging alſo to that People.

Beſides the Nations above-nam'd, here dwelt alſo the *Byceni* and *Proſeliminitæ*, who had alſo their peculiar Cities, mention'd by Name in *Ptolomy*, but of little or no obſervation in the courſe of Story. Of all which

Nations, only the *Tectoſages* were of the *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Country-men, under the Conduct of *Belgius* and *Brennus*, having ranſacked *Pannonea* and *Illyricum*, fell at laſt into *Macedon*, where having tyrannized a while, and laid waſt the Country, they were at laſt vanquiſhed and expulſed by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the Conduct of *Lammorius*, and *Lutorius*, they ferried over the *Helleſpont*, and ſubdued almoſt all *Aſia Minor* on this ſide the *Taurus*, employed there by thoſe petty Kings and States againſt one another: Their Reputation grown ſo great, that no Prince thought himſelf ſecure without their Alliance, or able to make War without their Aſſiſtance. The very *Switzers* of that Age, as mercenary, but more faithful unto thoſe that hired them. But being over-rigorous, in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too ſevere in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they inforced *Attalus*, King of *Pergamus*, by whoſe favour they had ſetled about the *Helleſpont*, to become their Enemy. Vanquiſhed by him, they were conſtrain'd to contain themſelves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was call'd *Gallatia*, and *Gallo-Græcia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient Courage and Eſtimation, moleſting many times their Neighbours, and ſometimes ſetting themſelves to hire in the Wars of others; but in the end they loſt both Courage and Eſteem, and were *Gauls* only in Name, retaining little in them of their Anceſtors Valour. For as moſt Plants and Trees loſe much of their Virtue, being tranſplanted into another Soil; ſo theſe Men loſt their native Courage, Strength, and Hardineſs, being weakned by the *Aſian* Pleaſures and Delicates. And as *Tully* ſaith, for a Man to be good in other places, is no Maſtery; but in *Aſia* to lead a temperate Life, is indeed Praiſe-worthy: So might one have ſaid to the *Gauls*, that to be couragious and patient of travel amongſt the Mountains, was no whit to be admir'd, but to have continued ſo amidſt the delights of *Aſia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But theſe Men were ſo far from aſſailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they loſt their own Country to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A War which *Manlius* undettook for no other Cauſe, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* againſt the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable Act performed herein; but that of *Chiomena* the King's Wiſe, who being raviſhed by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilſt he buſied himſelf in telling the Money agreed on for her Ranſom, to cut off his Head, which ſhe preſented to her Husband. But *Manlius* got little Honour by his Succeſs, not being welcomed with a *Triumph* at his coming Home, according to the *Roman* cuſtom, becauſe he undertook the War of his own accord, without Commiſſion from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the Fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Feudatories*. This happen'd *An. V. C.* 564. After which time I find *Deiotarus*, by conſent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King; who ſiding with *Pompey* in his War againſt *Cæſar*, incurr'd the anger of the Victor; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his Cauſe, and obtained his Pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Auguſtus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the firſt Preſident or Governor of it; enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticus*. Reduced to its firſt bounds by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodoſius*, the one call'd *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris* from its *medicinal* Waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eaſtern* Empire, it was partly ſeized on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their Hands, till the ſubverting of the Empire of *Trabezond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chiangar*; and is under the Government of a *Sangiack*, who is one of the 14 Deputies of the *Beglerbeg* of *Annatolia*.

5. *CAPPADOCIA.*

CAppadocia is bounded on the Eaſt with *Armenia Major*, and ſome part of *Armenia Minor*; on the Weſt with *Galatia*; on the North with *Pontus Polemoniocus*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South with *Lycaonia*, and the reſt of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of Wine, and moſt kind of Fruits, rich in Mines of Silver, Braſs, Iron, and Allom; affording alſo beſides a mean ſort of *Alabaſter*, good ſtore of *Cryſtal*, *Jaſper*, and the *Onyx* ſtone: But the greateſt Wealth hereof is their breed of Horſes, infinite almoſt in numbers, and fit for any Service they can be put to. And this is univerſal in all parts of the Country, but not the other; there being ſome parts of it mountainous and very barren, eſpecially about the Spurs and Branches of the *Antitaurus*, which is a chain of Hills, thruſting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themſelves unto the North, upon the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is alſo in this Country the Mountain *Argæus*, ſaid to be of ſo great an height, that from one of the ſummits, or tops thereof, a Man of perſpicuous Eyes may diſcern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, ſo vicious and lewd of Life, ſo monſtrouſly addicted to all kind of Wickedneſs, that beſides the ſhare they had in the old *Greek* Proverb, of Τειὰ καππὰ κάκιστα, they had ſome Proverbs to themſelves, Καππαδόκης and Καππαδόκιον τέρας, that is to ſay, a *Man of Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian Monſter*, being uſed *proverbially*, to ſignifie a Man moſt extreamly wicked. The words ſo uſed by *Gregory Nazianzen*, ſpeaking of *Gregory*, or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Eraſmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, underſtand him rightly. And they made good the Proverb in the times of the Goſpel, *Gregory* that bloody Butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Aſterius*, *Euſtathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*, being all of this Country. Yet ſuch is the influence of *Chriſtianity*, where once entertain'd, that this lewd diſpoſition of the *Cappadocians* was ſo corrected and reſtrained by it, that this Country afforded as many godly Prelates, and couragious Martyrs, as any other whatſoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen*, before remembred, who with *Gregory Nyſſen*, and St. *Baſil*, all learned and religious Biſhops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongſt many Martyrs of great Faith and Conſtancy, St. *George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Collonel or Tribune of Soldiers under *Diocleſian*, more celebrated in the Churches both Eaſt and Weſt, than any other Saint in the *Calendar*, the bleſſed Apoſtles and Evangeliſts excepted only, and for that reaſon made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by *Edward* the Third. Finally, it is reported of theſe *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous alſo; inſomuch, that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the Man's Blood was a poyſon to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were, 1. *Halys*, ſpoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original; the end of *Cræſus*'s Empire both in ſite and fate, the utmoſt bounds of his Dominions on that ſide; which purpoſing to paſs over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with, and vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* the great King of *Perſia*. 2. *Iris*, which ariſeth in this Country alſo, and paſſing through it, and a part of *Pontus*, diſchannelleth it ſelf, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by him call'd *Cæſarea*, the

Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, and the Epiſcopal See of renowned St. *Baſil.* Now call'd *Caiſar* by the *Greeks*, and *Tocat* by the *Turks*. *Tavernier*, who ſaw it, ſaith it is at this day a good fair City, built round about a large Rock ; on the top of which is a Caſtle well Garriſon'd. It is alſo well inhabited by *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Jews* : The *Chriſtians* have in it 12 Churches, and an Arch-Biſhop ; two Monaſteries for Men, and two for Women. Very near it runs a fair River, over which there is a beautiful Stone-bridge. To the North of it lies a fruitful Plain full of Villages, which is two or three days Journey over it. Here all the *Caravans* from the Eaſt meet, and diſperſe themſelves afterwards into their ſeveral Countries. From this place the whole Province of *Cappadocia* is now call'd *Tocat* by the *Turks*, and is under a *Sangiack* who is ſubject to the *Beglerbeg* of *Caramania*. 2. *Nyſſa*, the See of *Gregory*, Sirnamed *Nyſſenus*, the Brother of *Baſil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, the Epiſcopal See of another *Gregory*, Sirnamed *Nazianzenus* ; three Men, which as for the Piety of their Converſation they were not equalled in thoſe times ; ſo for their admirable Abilities in all kind of Learning, nothing more inferior to the moſt eminent of the ancient *Græcians*. 4. *Tyana* the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia ſecunda*, after the ſub-diviſion of it by the Emperor *Valens*. 5. *Archelais* in the *Prefecture* of *Guarduacreta*, ſo called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the Founder or Repairer of it. 6. *Comana*, for diſtinctions ſake call'd *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that Name in *Pontus*, by *Ptolomy* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is alſo *Nyſſa* before-mention'd. Memorable in old times for a Temple conſecrated to *Bellona*, whoſe Prieſts and other inferior Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward ; for maintenance of whom the Prieſts receiv'd the *Revenue* of the Region next adjoyning to it ; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the ſame kindred alſo. 7. *Dio Cæſarea*, call'd formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8. *Fauſtinopolis*, ſo call'd in honour of *Fauſtina*, Wife of the Emperor *Antonius*. 9. *Andraca*. 10. *Phiara*. 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campæ*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*. with many others as obſcure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is, 13. *Erzurum*, ſituate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cauſe made the *Rendezvouz* or place of meeting for the *Turkiſh* Soldiers when there is any Expedition in hand againſt the *Perſian* ; at which place alſo after the ending of the War for the preſent Year, they are disbanded and ſent home to their ſeveral Quarters. This is one of the Frontier Cities between the *Turks* and *Perſians*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Euphrates*, (which is yet but ſmall) on the Southſide, ten *German* Miles from *Trebezond* to the S. E. upon the edge of a large Plain, environed with Mountains, and beautified with fair Villages. The Houſes in it are all built with Timber ; but then it has a large Caſtle built with Stone, in which a *Turkiſh Baſha* reſides. This City was once more beautiful than now it is. The Air is very cold about this place, and the Country produceth no Wine ; but it being a place of great Thorowfare for the Eaſtern *Caravans*, and ſeated near *Trebezond*, the *Turks* have made it their Magazin for their *Perſian* Wars. And 14. *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolomy*, but memorable for the great Battle fought in ſight thereof, between *Crœſus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Perſia* ; in which *Crœſus* having loſt the Field, and with it his Kingdom, found the *Oracle* true, (tho' not in the ſenſe that he expected) that *Crœſus* paſſing over the River *Halys*, ſhould overthrow a great Eſtate, as indeed he did ; but it was his own, and not the *Perſians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been ſo fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we ſhall not trouble our ſelves to repeat it here ; nor ſhall we need to ſay more in confuting of their Opinion, who would fetch *Capthorim* out of *Egypt* from the reſt of his Brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been ſaid. Their Fortunes in the former times I find little of ; ſubjected by the *Perſian*, with the reſt of *Aſia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Crœſus*, who before had given the Law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bythinians*, *Myſians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given, together with *Atoſſa* his Siſter, to *Pharnaces* a Noble *Perſian*, who had ſaved him from the fury of a ravenous Lyon running upon him with full Mouth, as he was Hunting. A noble loyalty, and no leſs royally rewarded. From him deſcended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, continuing ſtedfaſt in his Duty to the Crown of *Perſia*, when almoſt all the reſt of the Kings of *Aſia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Perſia*. But after his deceaſe, *Perdiccas* having the command of the Army, ſet upon him, vanquiſhed him, and moſt cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sons, who fortunately had eſcaped this ſlaughter, eſpying his time when the *Macedonians* were at Wars amongſt themſelves, recovered his Eſtate again, and paſſed it over to his Offſpring : continuing in his Line, without any ſubjection, till the time of that *Ariobarzanes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his Dominion, as was told before. Reſtored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Succeſſors, by their *courteſie* only : Continuing yet in ſtate of Kings, till the Death of *Archelaus* the laſt King hereof ; who having angred *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life-time of *Auguſtus*, as did others of the *Tributary* States and Princes, was by him then poſſeſſed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting ſomewhat againſt the State. Where the old Prince, even ſpent with Age, the Gout, and ſome other Diſeaſes, had without queſtion been condemned by the ſervile Senate, but that one of the Witneſſes depoſed, that he had ſaid, That *if ever he went back into* Cappadocia, Tiberius *ſhould find*, quales nervi ſibi eſſent, *what a man he was*. Which moved ſuch a laughter in the *Senate*, the old King being neither able to ſit nor ſtand, that he was diſmiſſed ; *Tiberius* thinking that he could not puniſh him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King conſtrued to the beſt, and in the way of gratitude bequeathed his Kingdom at his Death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly inlarged by the addition of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Pontus* ; and ſo it ſtood in the time of *Ptolomy*, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided beſides thoſe, into theſe eight *Prefectures*, that is to ſay, *Clanianienſis*, *Sargaranſene*, *Gardiocreta*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycaonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycaonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Piſidia*, as I take it) being made Provinces of themſelves, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæſaria*, as is ſaid before, was the *Metropolitan* ; and ſo remained, till the Emperor *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, of purpoſe to deſpight St. *Baſil*, who oppoſed that Hereſie, created another Province out of it, call'd *Cappadocia ſecunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trapezond*, together with which it fell unto the Hands of the *Turks* ; by whom the whole Province, with the addition of *Pontus*, is now call'd *Amaſia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his Reſidence, and is ſaid to yield yearly to the *Grand Seignior* 60000 Ducats. This Country is now call'd by the *Turks* *Tocat*.

ARMENIA MINOR.

A*rmenia Minor* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South with Mount *Taurus*, which ſeparates it from *Cilicia*; on the Weſt, and North, with a long chain of Hills, call'd *Mons Scordiſcus*, by ſome call'd *Mons Amanus*, by others, *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reaſon of the name hereafter.

The Country of the ſame nature with *Cappadocia*, before deſcribed; in ſome parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* ſo incloſed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance; in others pleaſant and delightful, well watered with ſweet Streams, and ſome fair Rivers iſſuing out of the Mountains; the principal whereof is *Melas*, ſo called from the *blackneſs* of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into theſe four Regions; that is to ſay, *Laviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*, *Mariana*; more within the Land towards *Cappadocia*, each of which had their ſeveral Cities, whoſe Names are to be found in *Ptolomy*. The principal, 1. *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region ſo call'd, and the *Metropolis* of the leſſer *Armenia*, call'd afterwards *Malaxia*, and now *Suur*; the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferior to the beſt of *Greece*. The City ſaid by *Onuphrius* to be a Colony of the *Romans*, much ſpoken of by *Euſebius*, and other Writers of *Eccleſiaſtical* Story, for the Piety of the *Chriſtians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Perſecution*. 2. *Nicopolis*, and 3. *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his Victory there obtained againſt the Forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenia*'s. 4. *Garnace*, a well fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth Book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5. *Cucuſum*, and 6. *Arabyſſus*, memorable for the Exile of St. *Chryſoſtom*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, confined unto theſe places by the power and malice of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxy* in points of Faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interr'd.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their Incurſions and Colonies poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*; continuing part of their Eſtate till the War of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; who being diſcomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thouſand Horſe to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his Daughter. By whom at firſt neglected, and not ſuffer'd to come into his Preſence; but afterwards on the apprehenſion of the common danger, more eſteemed and ſet by; inſomuch, that his royal Entertainment there, and the refuſal of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*, occaſion'd *Lucullus* to bring his Forces into theſe parts, ſubduing all before him to the Banks of *Euphrates*. His Victories being ſeconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Auguſtus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia* lying on the other ſide of that River, though conquered alſo in that War, not being taken into the account of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan Auguſtus*, thinking it an high point of Wiſdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond thoſe Banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eaſtern Empire; when waſted by the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by the *Turks*; by whom call'd *Genech*, or as ſome ſay, *Pegia*.

And ſo much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Dioceſe, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*; converted to the *Chriſtian* Faith by the two great Apoſtles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*, as appeareth by St. *Paul*'s Epiſtle to the *Galatians*, and St. *Peter*'s to the *Strangers* diſperſed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Aſia*, and *Bythinia*.

This Country, as *Tavernier* and Mr. *Chardin* aſſures us, is one of the moſt beautiful and rich Countries in the World, and is divided betwen the *Turks* and *Perſians*, who have had dreadful Wars for it. It is divided at this day into the Leſſer, and the Greater. The leſſer *Armenia* is bounded by the greater to the Eaſt, *Syria* to the South, the *Black-Sea* to the Weſt, and *Cappadocia* to the North.

The greater *Armenia* lies between *Meſopotamia* to the South; the leſſer to the Weſt; *Georgia* to the North, and *Media* to the Eaſt. This part is the more beautiful of the two, and is water'd by ſeven large Rivers. The principal Cities in this Country at this day are, 1. *Erivan*, or *Irvan*, under the *Perſians*. 2. *Nackſivan*. 3. *Zulpha*; and 4 *Van*, now under the *Turks*; of which four Cities large accounts are given by our later Travellers above named.

The *Armenians* have of late years by their *Trade* made themſelves known over all parts of the World, and are worthily commended for their great conſtancy to the *Chriſtian* Religion, their Gravity, Temperance, and Sobriety; which yet have made them very odious to their Neighbours the *Georgians*. *Tavernier* has given a very exact and large account of their Religion and Manners in his fourth Book, from the 9th to the 14th Chapters.

The leſſer *Armenia*, and a great part of the greater, is now under the *Turks*; the reſt is under the *Perſians*, who preſerve this Country with much Art and Expence; the Wars having depopulated much of it.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

COme we now to the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and firſt to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reaſons ſpoken of before) call *Aſia propria*. Anciently the moſt rich and flouriſhing part of all this *Peninſula*; and ſo affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us, That the *Tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly ſufficed to defray the publick Charges for defence thereof, *Aſia verò tam opima eſt & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine paſtionis, & multitudine earum rerum quæ exportentur, facilè omnibus terris antecellat.* But as for Aſia, (ſaith he) *it is ſo fertile, and ſo rich, that for the fruitfulneſs of the Fields, variety of Fruits, largeneſs of Paſture-Grounds, and quantity of Commodities which were brought from thence, it very eaſily excelled all other Countries.* The Fortunes of the ſeveral Provinces we ſhall ſee anon. Brought under the command of the *Perſians*, they continued ſubject to that Crown for ſome Generations; but at laſt taken from them by the *Grecians*, under the proſperous Enſigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whoſe deceaſe, the Empire being divided amongſt his Captains, *Aſia* fell to the ſhare of *Antigonus*, whoſe Son *Demetrius* ſeiz'd on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Aſia* to *Seleucus Nicanor*, King of *Syria* and the Eaſt, being alſo one of *Alexander*'s Heirs. The ſixth from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus*, call'd the *Great*, who waging War with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his Father to the protection of the *Romans*, and otherwiſe practiſing againſt their Eſtate, provoked the *Senate* of *Rome* to ſend *Scipio* (Sirnamed from his *Aſian* Victories) *Aſiaticus*, againſt him; who compell'd him to forſake *Aſia*, which the *Romans* preſently took into their Poſſeſſion. But finding it agreeable to the preſent Eſtate of their Affairs (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* ſtanding in their way) to make further uſe of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former War, they gave unto *Eumenes*, the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria*, to the *Rhodians*; knowing full well, that they could eaſily take them back again when they ſaw occaſion. More hereof in the Story of the Kings of *Pergamus*, on the deceaſe of *Attalus* the laſt King thereof; theſe Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the account of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will conſider it as divided into 1. *Phrygia Minor*. 2. *Phrygia Major*. 3. *Myſia*. 4. *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* more eſpecially ſo call'd. 5. *Lydia*; and 6. *Caria*.

1. PHRYGIA MINOR.

PHrygia Minor is bounded on the Eaſt with *Myſia*, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia* on the Weſt, with the *Helleſpont*; on the North with the *Propontis*; on the South with the *Ægæan* Sea; call'd *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as ſome ſay, from *Phryxus*, the Son of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous Snares of his Mother-in-law, did here ſeat himſelf. *Minor* was added to it to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was alſo call'd *Phrygia Helleſpontiaca*, from its ſituation on that *Streight*; and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it, by which Name it occurreth in the Book of the *Acts*. It was call'd alſo *Epictetus*, but the reaſon of the Name I find not, except it came from the *Epecteti*, a People dwelling on the Eaſt parts of *Bythinia*, and conſequently near this place. It is now call'd *Becſangil* by the *Turks*.

Chief Rivers of it *Scamander*, on whoſe Banks ſtood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Heſiod* with the Title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Country a little before they were to be married, uſed to bathe themſelves, and to ſay theſe Words, Λάβε τὴν μου Σκάμανδρε παρθενίαν, that is to ſay, *Take*, O Scamander, *my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Gimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his Head, like a River God, and ſo deflowred *Callirrhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another, occaſioning thereby the leaving off of this fooliſh Cuſtom. It was alſo call'd *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthumque bibiſſent*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region call'd *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his firſt Epiſtle uſeth *Lyciam haſtant*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus* Lyciam *tepefecerat haſtam*) to ſignifie a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2. *Æſopus*, parting this little Region from the *Leſſer Myſia*, the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory call'd *Lectium*, is the furtheſt point of it towards the South. 3. *Simoeis*, now call'd *Simores*, falling into the *Helleſpont*, not far from the Promontory call'd *Rhæteum*, (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*) but riſing out of Mount *Ida*, an Hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father expoſed to the fury of wild Beaſts) judged the controverſie of the golden Ball in favour of *Venus*; reſpecting neither the great Riches of *Juno*, nor the divine Wiſdom of *Pallas*, but tranſported with a ſenſual Delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dardanum*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Aſſos*, mention'd, *Acts* 20. 13. by *Pliny* call'd *Apollonia*; who telleth us, that the Earth about it is of ſuch a nature, that it will conſume a dead body in forty days. 3. *Trajanopolis*, whoſe name declareth its Founder. 4. *Lyrneſſus*, on the Seaſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, deſtroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the firſt beginnings of the *Trojan* War, who brought thence amongſt other Captives the Lady *Briſeis*, reſerved by *Achilles* to himſelf for his part of the Booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which cauſed ſuch a deep diſpleaſure in him, that he would not go into the Field till ſhe was reſtored. 5. *Sigæum*, the Port-Town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the ſame Name. 6. *Troy*, ſituate on the River *Scamander*, the Beauty and Glory of the Eaſt, call'd *Ilium*, and *Pergamus*, for the reaſon to be ſhewn anon. A famous Town, from the People whereof, all Nations deſire to fetch their Original. The beauty of it may be (as ſome write) yet ſeen in the Ruins, which with a kind of Majeſty entertain the beholder; the Walls of large Circuit, conſiſting of a black hard Stone cut four-ſquare; ſome remnants of the Turrets which ſtood on the Walls, and the Fragments of great Marble Tombs, and Monuments of curious Workmanſhip. But certainly theſe are not the Ruins of that *Ilium* which was deſtroy'd by the *Græcians*; but 7. *Troas*, or *New Troy*, built ſome four Miles from the ſituation of the old by *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexander*'s Captains, who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and call'd it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander* the *Great*, who begun the Work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times call'd *Troas* only, and by that name mention'd, *Acts* 20. 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruin only; but every day more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the Stones and Pillars of it to *Conſtantinople*, to adorn the Houſes of the *Baſſa's*. 7. *Scamandria*, a ſtrong place, but of later Foundation, cunningly ſurpriſed by *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*, in the time of a Funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the Buildings, Glories, and fall of it, take this Story with you.

The Kings of TROY.

A. M.

2487. 1. *Dardanus*, Son to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his Brother *Jaſius*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that Verſe of *Virgil*,

Dardanus Iliacæ *primus pater urbis, & autor.*
Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* Race,
Dardanus the firſt Founder was.

2518. 2. *Erichthonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.

2593. 3. *Tros*, the Son of *Erichthonius*, who ſo much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the People *Troes*. By ſupporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* againſt his Son *Jupiter*, he loſt his own Son *Ganymedes*; who being taken priſoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Enſign, is by the Poets ſaid to have been ſnatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.

2653. 4. *Ilus*, the Son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace, call'd *Ilium*; and did withal ſo enlarge the City, and added ſo much Ornament and Beauty to it, that it is frequently call'd *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turrets of it, were of his Erection, which being by the *Greeks* call'd Πύργοι and ſometimes Πύργαμα occaſion'd the whole City to be call'd *Pergamus*. 54.

2707. 5. *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*, which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (juſtly conceiving diſpleaſure againſt the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himſelf being ſlain the latter time. 36.

2743. 6. *Priamus* who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his Son *Paris* to raviſh *Helena* Wife to *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their ancient Quarrel: who, after a ten Years Siege, forced the Town, having loſt of their own Men 860000. and killed 666000. of the *Trojans*, and their Aſſociates, *A. M.* 2783. ſo as that of *Ovid* was moſt true.

Jam ſeges eſt ubi Troja *fuit reſecandaque falce,*
Luxuriat Phrygio *ſanguine pinguis humus.*

Corn fit for Scythes now grows where *Troy* once ſtood,
And the Soil's fatted with the *Phrygian* Blood.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be conſider'd. Firſt, whether the *Grecians* in theſe ten Years lay continually before it; and it ſeems they did not; but rather that they did beat up and down, waſting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the firſt nine Years; and in the tenth only laid a formal Siege. This is the more probable, becauſe that in the tenth Year of the War, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have ſat on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the Names and Qualities of the *Greek* Commanders; which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had ſo long together lain in Eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken; and here we find a difference. For ſome Hiſtorians tell us, that *Æneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the War, or diſcontented that it was not managed by their ſole Advice, or otherwiſe corrupted by the *Grecians*, betray'd it to the Enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Æneas*, whom he intended to make the Pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth of a *Wooden-Horſe*, wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sinon*, one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy* Gates; and that the People deſirous of that Monument of the Enemies flight, made a breach in their Walls, the Gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on Hiſtory, it is thought by ſome, that over the *Scæan* Gate where the *Greeks* enter'd, was the Portraicture of a large and ſtately Horſe; and by others, that the Walls were batter'd by a wooden *Engine*, call'd an *Horſe*, as the *Romans* in after Ages uſed a like Engine call'd a *Ram*. Neither of which is much improbable; but with me perſwade not the integrity of *Antenor*, or *Æneas*, for whoſe ſake the Fable of the *Wooden-Horſe* was firſt invented.

The City being thus deſtroy'd, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forſaken it, began to think of ſome other place for their Habitation, which having often ſhifted, they fixed at laſt by advice of an *Oracle*, ſome four Miles from the former, giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and ſorry Village when *Alexander* came thither, who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had, and a mean one too) offer'd up his own Shield, and took down another, which he uſed after in his Fights againſt the *Perſians*, honouring it with Gifts, and promiſing the People to rebuild and inlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good, was perform'd by *Lyſimacus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next call'd the *Alexandrian Troas*, at laſt *Troas* ſimply. A free City it continued till the War of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; and in the courſe whereof *Fimbria*, a *Roman Queſtor*, having ſeditiouſly ſlain the Conſul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bythinia*, and made himſelf Maſter of the Army, being refuſed entrance here, as a Thief and a Rebel, beſieged the City, and in the ſpace of eleven days took it. And when he boaſted that he had done as much in eleven days as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilians* tartly anſwer'd, *That they wanted an* Hector *to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Cæſar*, emulous of *Alexander's* attempts, and deſcended from *Julius* of *Trojan* race, reſtored them to their Liberty, and inlarged their Territories: A *Colony*, and an *Univerſity* of the *Romans* of no mean eſteem. But Time and War, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto Rubbiſh, as before was ſaid.

In the diſtributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, this little Region, with that of *Myſia*, *Helleſpontiaca* adjoyning to it, made up the Province call'd by the name of *Helleſpontus*, ſubject with *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Aſian* Iſles, to the exempt Juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Following the Fortunes of *Conſtantinople*, till the taking of that City by the *Latins*, it became then ſubject to the *Greek* Emperors reſiding at *Nice*; conquer'd not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzuſian* Family. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire on the death of the ſecond *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Helleſpont*, with part of the greater *Myſia* and *Æolis* adjoyning to them, and ſome part of *Lydia*, were ſeized upon by *Caraſus*, a Man of great power amongſt the *Turks*, who here erected a ſmall Kingdom, call'd from him *Caraſia*, or *Caraſi-illi*; long ſince ſwallowed up by the *Ottoman* Race, in the time of *Orchanes*, Son of *Ottoman*, and the ſecond King of that Houſe.

8. PHRYGIA MAJOR.

PHrygia *Major* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Galatia*; on the Weſt with *Myſia*, interpoſed betwixt it and the *Leſſer Phrygia*; on the North with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo call'd; on the South with *Lydia*, call'd *Phrygia* for the Reaſons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for Diſtinctions ſake, becauſe the *greater* of the two.

The People of this Country were anciently more *ſuperſtitious* than the other *Aſians*, as appeareth by the Rites uſed in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and ſome other Goddeſſes; ſaid to be alſo the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the moſt part Men of after-wits, and all for *had-I-wiſt*; whence the Proverb, *Serò ſapiunt Phryges*, apply'd to thoſe who wanted forecaſt, and knew better to lament Misfortunes, than to keep them off; and uſed not to bethink themſelves of what would follow, till it was too late. A People noted for Effeminacy, and lightneſs of Converſation; and for fear they ſhould not of themſelves be wanton anough, their very *Muſick* was ſo fitted as to diſpoſe them to *Laſciviouſneſs*. Where, by the way, I find three ſorts of *Muſick* ſpoken of amongſt the Ancients: The firſt, that which *Ariſtotle* calleth ἠθικὴν, becauſe it ſetled and compoſed the Affections; and *Boetius*, the *Lydian Muſick*, becauſe much uſed by that People, before corrupted by long Eaſe, and ill Example. It conſiſted principally of long Notes, or *Spondees*, ſuch as is that ſuppoſed to be which *Eliſha* call'd for, 1 *Kings* 3. 15. to invite the Spirit of Propheſie to him; and was play'd by *David* before *Saul*, to drive away the ill Spirit from him. And of this ſort was the *Church-Muſick* of the *Primitive* times, fitted to calm Mens Paſſions, and raiſe their Devotions, *Ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as St. *Auguſtin* hath it) *aſſurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleaſure of the Ears the Paſſions might be calm'd, and the Soul inflam'd with pious and devout Affections. The ſecond ſort is that which *Ariſtotle* calleth πρακτικὸν, or *active*, (as the other ἠθικὴν, or *moral*) commending it before the other in the Education of Youth, becauſe more ſtirring them to Action; conſiſting of *Dactyles*, of one long Note, and two ſhort ones, by him and *Boetius* both call'd *Dorian*, as moſt peculiar to that People: The third and laſt by the Philoſopher call'd ἐνθουσιαστικὴν, or raviſhing, becauſe it unhingeth the Affections, and ſtirreth Men to laſcivious Geſtures, and wanton Thoughts; conſiſting of ſhort Notes, or *Tribrachies*. *Boetius* terms it *Phrygian*, as moſt in uſe amongſt this looſe and ungovern'd Nation; ſuch as the *French-Muſick* in our Age. A ſort of Muſick forbidden to be uſed by *Ariſtotle*, but upon the *Theatre*, for contentation of the rude and unpoliſh'd People, by reaſon of that influence which it had upon mens Behaviours. *Mutatâ Muſicâ* (ſaith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores*; *Curandum itaque ut* Muſica *quàm graviſſima & ſedatiſſima retineatur*; that is to ſay, the change of *Muſick* maketh an alteration of Manners; Care therefore is to be taken in the Commonwealth, that the Muſick be compoſed and grave; and ſuch only uſed. But ſee how this fidling Humour hath led me out of the way. I return again.

The Country very rich and pleaſant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marſyas*. Of which the former hath its Spring or Fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the Banks whereof ſtandeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was ſo call'd from one *Marſyas*, who ſtriving with *Apollo* for Preheminence in *Muſick*, was by him flead, which Fact (ſay the Poets) was ſo lamented, that from the Tears of the Mourners grew this River. The chief Towns, 1. *Gordion*, the Seat of *Gordius*, who from a Plowman being raiſed and choſen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his Wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in ſuch a Knot, that the Monarchy of the World was promiſed to him that could untie it; which when *Alexander* had tried, and could not undo it, he cut it with his Sword. 2. *Midæum*, the Seat of *Midas*, Son to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that whatever he touched ſhould be turned into Gold; which Petition granted, he was almoſt ſtarved, his very Victuals turned into Gold, till he had repealed his Wiſh; and afterward for preferring *Pan*'s Pipe before *Apollo*'s Harp, his Head was adorn'd with a comely pair of Aſſes Ears. 3. *Coloſſe*, where dwelt the *Coloſſians*, to whom St. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. 4. *Peſinus*, where the Goddeſs *Cybele* being worſhipped, was call'd *Dea Peſinuncia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they ſhould be Lords of the World, if they could get this Goddeſs into their Poſſeſſion. Hereupon they ſend to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to pleaſe a potent Neighbour, eſpecially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as deſcended from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their Requeſts, and the Goddeſs is ſhip'd away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckineſs of Fortune: The Ship, Goddeſs, and all, made a ſtand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forwards by Force or Art. It hapen'd that one of the Veſtal Virgins, nam'd *Claudia*, being ſuſpected of unchaſtity, reſolved to put her ſelf upon this Experiment; and faſtening her Girdle to the Ship, prayed to the Goddeſs, that if ſhe were cauſeleſly ſuſpected, the Ship might be ſuffer'd to go forward, which was no ſooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the Ship up the Water to *Rome*; where I leave the People wondring at the Miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it ſtands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by ſome made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* Knot placed in it alſo; but neither rightly. Not far off ſtood the Mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Prieſts of *Cybele* had their uſual Reſidence, thence call'd *Dindymene*. 5. *Apamea*, ſituate not far from the Banks of *Meander*, anciently a moſt flouriſhing Empory, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country, till *Conſtantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*; making, 6. *Symada* the *Metropolis* of the firſt. 7. *Hierapolis*; and 8. *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in thoſe times, the principal of the other Province. 9. *Juliopolis*, and 10. *Tiberiopolis*, ſo call'd from the Emperor to whoſe Honour dedicated. 11. *Dorylæum*, &c. Not known unto the ancient Writers, but of more note in modern Stories; are 1. *Sagua*, the Habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*. 2. *Chara-chiſar*, by the *Grecians* call'd *Melampyrgus*, or the *Black Tower*. 3. *Cillexuga*. 4. *Einegiol*, places of Conſequence and Importance, taken by the ſaid *Ottoman* from the *Chriſtians* in the firſt riſe of his Fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they deſcended (as was ſhewn before) from *Gomer*, the eldeſt Son of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz*, the eldeſt Son of *Gomer*; of which *Gomer* firſt placed himſelf in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleaſant Plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the Poſterity of *Gomer* being generally call'd *Cimmerians*) did preſerve his Memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he firſt took up his Dwelling in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, and the Banks of the *Helleſpont*; where was anciently a City and Territory call'd *Aſcania*, ſome Iſles adjoyning call'd *Inſulæ Aſcanæ*, the name of *Aſcanius* alſo very frequent in *Troy* it ſelf. An ancient People they were doubtleſs, eſteem'd the ancienteſt of the World by *Pſamniticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this Experiment. Deſirous to inform himſelf to what Nation the privilege of greateſt Antiquity did of right belong, he cauſed two Children to be kept in a Fold, where they were ſuckled by Goats: All mankind being prohibited, upon very great Penalties, to have recourſe to them. All the Language which the Children learned from their ſpeechleſs Nurſes, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* Language ſignifieth Bread; and being of no ſignification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their ſide: But other Nations of the World not yielding to this Sentence, by a *Writ of Error*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impannell'd a new *Jury*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* ſide, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*. Where, by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like uſe of this Experiment, to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original, or Mother-tongue of the World; becauſe *Becker* in that Language ſignifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Country reigned *Niobe*, who preferring her ſelf before *Latona*, the Mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her Children ſlain before her Face by an unſeen Means, and was her ſelf turned into a Stone, as the Poet's Fable. Here alſo reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting Wiſdom to make uſe of it, is feigned to ſtand in Hell up to the Chin in Water; and that too under a Tree, whoſe Fruit toucheth his Lips: yet both the one and the other fly from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*:

—— *Tibi* Tantalæ *nullæ*
Deprenduntur aquæ; quæque imminet, effugit arbor.

In *Engliſh* thus:

Thou canſt not, *Tantalus*, thoſe Waters taſte;
The Tree juſt at thy Lips, flies off as faſt.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the Tyranny of time, or War, the *Phrygians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their Command till the Conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the ſtronger by the acceſſion of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus*, one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the Battle of *Ipſus*, to *Seleucus* the Conqueror, the firſt King of that Race; following the ſame fortune after that with the reſt of *Aſia*, till they came to be poſſeſſed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Conſtantine* laying to it the *Greater Myſia*, made two Provinces of it; the one call'd *Salutaris*, from ſome miraculous Cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other call'd *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantine* was *Præfect* for the *Prætorium* of the Eaſt, and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenantſhip* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, it became a Prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; poſſeſſed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the laſt King of that Race: When ſeized upon, together with the *Greater Myſia*, and thoſe parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkiſh* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, call'd by his Name *Aidinia*, or *Aidinilli*; extorted ſhortly from his Heirs by the Houſe of *Ottoman*.

9. MYSIA.

Interpoſed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lieth the Country of *Myſia*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Phrygia Major*; on the Weſt with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North with parts of *Bythinia*, *Propontis*, and the *Helleſpont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So call'd from the *Myſians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether theſe *Myſians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or ſome interlopers which thruſt in afterwards amongſt them, I find not determin'd. Moſt probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*, being as ſuperſtitious in the worſhip of their ſeveral *Deities*, as any *Phrygian of them all*; and that they had this Name given them by the *Lydians* from the abundance of *Beech-Trees* which grow amongſt them, by them call'd *Myſæ*. A people of ſo baſe and contemptible Quality, that it grew into a common Proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Myſiorum poſtremus*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that call'd *Olympus*, ſituate in the North parts hereof bordering towards *Bythinia*; which as it is call'd *Olympus Myſius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; ſo the people of the *Greater Myſia*, where this Mountain is, are call'd *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Myſi* or *Mæſi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, thoſe of moſt note beſides *Æſopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, are, 1. *Caicus*, on whoſe Banks ſtands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence paſſeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elæa*; and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his Fountain in *Myſia Major*, and paſſing through *Myſia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the Banks hereof in his firſt eſſay againſt the *Perſians*. By whom, upon the firſt noiſe of his Preparations he was ſo ſlighted, that *Darius* King of *Perſia* gave command to his Lieutenants reſiding in *Aſia Minor*, that they ſhould take him alive, whip him with Rods, and ſo convey him to his preſence. A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Perſians*. But *Alexander* ſoon taught them another Leſſon. For though the *Perſians* were poſſeſſed of the higher Banks of the River, with an intent to ſtop his paſſage; yet he reſolved to charge them in the face of their ſtrength; knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of ſo great advantage, he ſhould not only leſſen them in point of Reputation, but beget an opinion of himſelf, that he was invincible. And ſo accordingly it proved, the *Perſians* being vanquiſhed by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Aſia* ſubmitting to him on the noiſe of the Victory (as an enemy not to be reſiſted upon equal terms) ſome few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wiſely adviſed by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a paſſage, ſhould with his ableſt Forces oppoſe the *Aſſailant*, becauſe in all Invaſions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only diſhearten their Soldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers of being ſuccoured and defended by ſuch weak Protectors. Which caution, if the *Perſian* Commanders had obſerved either here, or at *Pylæ Ciliciæ*, ſpoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not ſo eaſily ſubverted the *Perſian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the Men either naturally Cowards, or elſe prodigiouſly beſotted.

It is divided commonly into *Myſia Minor*, or the *Leſſer Myſia*, which lying on the Weſt towards *Troas*, and the *Helleſpont*, is call'd ſometimes *Myſia Helleſpontiaca*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, made up that Province which he call'd the *Conſular Helleſpont*; and *Myſia Major*, call'd from *Olympus* which was in it, *Myſia Olympena*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joyned by that Emperor to the Weſtern parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he cauſed to be call'd *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reaſon formerly delivered.

Places of moſt obſervation in the *Leſſer Myſia*, were, 1. *Abydus*, ſtanding on the narroweſt of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite unto *Seſtos* in *Thrace*; firſt built by the *Mileſians* with the conſent of *Gyges* King in *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged; memorable both in the ancient and modern Stories. In ancient Story for the famous reſolution of the Inhabitants, when beſieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into ſome Diſtreſs, and hopeleſs of good Conditions from him, the young Men of the Town who had bound themſelves by Oath to die, rather than fall into his Hands, ſet fire thereon, and barbarouſly ſlew themſelves, with as many of the Women and Children as could be met with. Which News being brought to *Philip*, moved ſo little compaſſion, that he ſaid he would give the *Abydeni* three days leiſure to die; and therefore would not ſuffer any of his Soldiers to enter the Town, then ſet open to him, either to take the Spoil thereof, or hinder this bloody Execution, till the three days end. In modern Story no leſs memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the Reign of *Orchanes* the Son of *Ottoman*, through the Treaſon of the Governor's Daughter: who bewitched with the perſon and valour of *Abderachmen*, a young *Turkiſh* Gallant, whom ſhe had beheld from the Towers of the Caſtle, threw a Letter to him as he drew near the Wall, wherein ſhe manifeſted her Affection, and promiſed to make him Maſter of that Fortreſs, if he would perſwade his General to raiſe the Siege, and come with a ſtrong Party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever ſince in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Caſtles, call'd the old *Dardanels*, ſpoken of before, which defend *Conſtantinople* on that ſide from all force by Sea. 2. *Cyzicus*, ſeated in the *Propontis*, in an Iſland of the ſame name alſo, but ſo near the Continent, that it joyned to it by two Bridges. The *Metropolis* of the *Conſular Helleſpont*, by conſequence an Archbiſhop's See in the proſperous times of Chriſtianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities, or *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Provinces. A Town of wonderful Strength and Beauty, when firſt known to the *Romans*, call'd therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome* of *Aſia*, who gives this Character alſo of it, *Cyzicum nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribuſque marmoreis* Aſiaticæ *plagæ littora illuſtrat*, that is to ſay, that the noble City of *Cyricum*, by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illuſtrate the Shores of *Aſia*. Honoured amongſt many other goodly and magnificent Buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being four Cubits thick, and fifty Cubits high, were each of one entire Stone only; the whole Fabrick all of poliſhed Marble, every Stone joyned unto the other with a line of *Gold*. In vain beſieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his War, who loſt before it by the Sword, Peſtilence, and Famine, no fewer than 300000 Men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *Falling-ſickneſs* of the Eaſt, as before is ſaid, it could never be reſtored to its former luſtre; the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by tranſporting the Stones and Marbles to *Conſtantinople*, for the embelliſhing of that City. 3. *Lampſacus* on the ſame *Propontis*, in which the beaſtly God *Priapus* was worſhipped, in as beaſtly a figure: *Quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* ſcoffeth it) *ne quid appareat riſu dignum*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame with the *Syrian*, or *Phœnician Baal*, ſo often mention'd in the Scriptures. For this, and on ſome other reaſons, *Alexander* had conceived againſt it ſuch an high diſpleaſure when he was in *Aſia*, that he reſolved to raze it to the very ground. And ſeeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambaſſador from the Town, to obtain his Favour, commanding him to hold his peace; and ſware, as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatſoever he requeſted of him: whereupon *Anaximene* entreated him to deſtroy the City, which now for his Oath's ſake he could not do; and ſo this wicked City at that time eſcaped. 4. *Parium*, ſo call'd, as ſome ſay, from *Parius* the Son of *Jaſon*, a Colony at firſt of the *Myleſians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* call'd *Adraſtia*; as *Lampſacus* in the ſame Author, is call'd *Pityuſa*. More in the Land, are 5. *Scepſis.* 6. *Hiragerme*, both mention'd by *Ptolomy*, but of more Antiquity than Fame.

Chief Cities in *Myſia Major*, or *Olympena*, are 1. *Dainta*, in the North parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake ſacred to *Apollo*, in the ſame parts alſo: 3. *Pala Scepſis*, or *Scepſis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*. 4. *Adramyttium*, mention'd *Acts* 27. where St. *Paul* took Ship to go to *Rome*. 5. *Antandarus*, on the ſame Sea alſo, now call'd St. *Dimitri*; named at firſt *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which ſheweth that *Myſia* anciently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterward *Edonis*, and at laſt *Antandrus*, and that either becauſe built, or repaired rather by the Men of *Andros*, an Iſland of the *Ægean*, ſpoken of before, amongſt the *Cyclades*; or becauſe the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the Son of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his Ranſom, or rather in exchange for him, as the word doth intimate. 6. *Protoſelene*, on the ſame Coaſt alſo. More in the Land. 7. *Præpemiſſum*. 8. *Prajanopolis*. 9. *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 10. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this Tract, ſituate in a goodly Plain, on the Banks of the River *Caycus*; of a ſmall Town or Fortreſs, made a ſtately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent *Library* containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing, or tranſcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here firſt invented, which from hence to this day is call'd *Pergamenum*. Here alſo were thoſe coſtly Hangings firſt invented, which we now call *Tapeſtry*; by the *Romans* call'd firſt *Aulea*, from *Aula*, ſignifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof, (by whom invented) being the firſt Room furniſhed and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Phyſician*, living very healthfully to the Age of 140. Years: His Health preſerved to ſo great Age, by theſe means eſpecially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2dly, Never eating any thing that was raw. 3dly, Always carrying about him ſome ſweet Perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *ſeven Churches* to which St. *John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were Originally a City of *Myſia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian Aſia*; within the limits whereof thoſe *ſeven Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof, which flouriſhed here for ſome Ages in ſuch Wealth and Splendor, they came but from a poor and obſcure Original. The firſt of them one *Philetærus*, an *Eunuch*, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexander*'s greateſt Captains; and after his Death, to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom truſted with his Money and Accompts. Fearing the fury of his Maſter, then grown old and tyrannous, he ſeized on the Caſtle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 Talents, which he offered with his Service unto *Seleucus*, the firſt King of *Syria*. But both *Lyſimacus* and *Seleucus* dying ſhortly after, he kept the Money to himſelf, and reigned in this City as an abſolute King; leaving the Kingdom at his Death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better Man than a poor Carter, till raiſed by the Fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furniſhed with Money, though of no great Teriority, was able by the *Gauls* and other Mercenaries, not only to preſerve himſelf againſt the *Syrian* Kings, who laid claim to his City, but alſo to enlarge his Bounds as he ſaw occaſion. But the main improvement of this Kingdom hapned in the days of *Eumenes* the Second, the Son of *Attalus*, the Brother and Succeſſor of this *Eumenes*: who being uſeful to the *Romans* in their Wars againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*; and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Myſias*, which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that War. The reſt of the Affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this ſhort Catalogue of

The Kings of *PERGAMUS.*

A. M.

3668. 1. *Philetærus*, the firſt King of *Pergamus*, of whom before, 20.

3688. 2. *Eumenes*, Brother, or as ſome ſay, the Brother's Son of *Philetærus*, vanquiſhed *Antiochus*, Sirnamed *Hierax*, in a Fight near *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Calinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*, 22.

3710. 3. *Attalus*, Brother of *Eumenes*; reſtored *Ariathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, and diſcomfited the *Gauls*, compelling them to keep themſelves within the Country ſince named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.

3754. 4. *Eumenes* II. Son of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the Spoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured with the *Romans* to deſtroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more uſe of theſe *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to leſs liking with them.

3782. 5. *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans* in the Life of his Brother, then leſs gracious with them; but he moſt gallantly refuſed it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.

3792. 6. *Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the Second, and Tutor, or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whoſe minority he govern'd the Eſtate as King.

3813. 7. *Attalus* III. Son of *Attalus* the Second, ſucceeded on the Death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceaſed without Iſſue, and bequeath'd it by his laſt Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had poſſeſſion of ſo great a Legacy, *Ariſtonicus*, the baſe Son of *Eumenes*, made himſelf Maſter of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and Eſtates hereof. Againſt whom the *Romans* making War, were aided by the greateſt part of the *Aſian* Kings; not ſeeing their own danger and deſtruction to draw near unto them, by letting ſuch a potent Neighbour come amongſt them to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this War, though they had the better of it. For being now made Maſters of the Riches and Sweets of *Aſia*, they took with them their Vices alſo; growing thereby to great Riot, and unparallel'd Luxury; which overcame the rigour and ſeverity of their former Diſcipline, and made them apt for Faction, and thoſe bloody Quarrels, which proved the ruin of their State. So truly was it ſaid by *Juſtin*, *Sic* Aſia *facta* Romanorum, *cum opibus ſuis vitia quoque ſua* Romam *tranſmiſit*. This Kingdom, taking it in the largeſt extent thereof, being thus ſubdued and ſetled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Aſia*, according to the name of the Greater *Continent*; by *Ptolomy*, and others, call'd *Aſia Propria*; continuing under the ſubjection of the *Roman* Emperors, till the tranſlating of the Imperial Seat unto *Conſtantinople*; as after that unto the Emperors of the Eaſt, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family. Which being ended in the perſon of *Aladine* the Second, thoſe parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi*; as thoſe which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Aidinian*; both of them ſwallowed up long ſince by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Acceſſaries* running the ſame Fortune as the *Principals* did.

10. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

BEſides the *Propria Aſia* ſpoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdom, there was one part hereof which anciently had the name of *Aſia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Continent*, or this whole *Peninſula*. This for Diſtinctions ſake the *Romans* call'd the *Proconſular Aſia*; becauſe committed to the government of one of their *Pro-conſuls*, (who had his Reſidence in *Epheſus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the *Conſular Helleſpont*, and the Province of the *Iſles of Aſia*. This we have ſpoken of before, as alſo how the Country lying about *Epheſus*, had more ſpecially the name of *Aſia*, than any other: ſo ſpecially, that *Eraſmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Aſia* in the *New Teſtament*, (but more particularly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Aſia* only in which *Epheſus* ſtandeth.

This being agreed on for the Name, we ſhall bound it on the Eaſt with *Lydia*, whereof it was anciently a part; on the Weſt with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North with *Myſia*; and on the South with *Caria*. And having ſo bounded it, we ſhall divide it into the two Regions of *Æolis* and *Ionia*; that of *Æolis* lying on the North towards *Myſia*, as *Ionia* doth upon the South towards *Caria*; poſſeſſed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them ſo named.

Principal Towns in *Æolis*, are 1. *Acarnea*, over-againſt the Iſle of *Lesbos*, the Royal Seat ſometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Ariſtotle*'s, but unworthy of ſo good a Maſter, ſeized on this City, and here committed ſo great Cruelties, that at laſt he was taken by the People, ſewed in an Ox's, Hide, and ſo baited to death. 2. *Pitane*, on a little River ſo named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making Bricks which would ſwim on the Water. 3. *Elæa* on the Mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4. *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Auguſtus*, call'd *Sebaſtopolis*. 5. *Cene*, by *Strabo* call'd *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Cannæ*, not far from a *Promontory* of the ſame Name. 6. *Cuma*, the principal and greateſt all *Æolis*, the Birth-place of *Ephorus*, a learned Man of elder times; and the Habitation of *Sibylla*, Sirnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, ſo named from *Cumæ*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7. *Phocæa*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, ſo named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocæ*) which thruſt themſelves aſhore at the building of it. The People hereof overburthened by the *Perſians*, and impatient of ſo great ſervitude as was laid upon them, forſook their Country, binding themſelves by a fearful Oath, never more to return unto it; and after many and long Wandrings, came at laſt into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marſeilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Joſephus* ſaid to be deſcended of *Eliſha*, the Son of *Javan*, who therefore call'd them by the name of *Eliſæi*. And it is poſſible enough that ſo it was, *Eliſha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponneſus*; from whence ſome of his Race in ſucceeding times might paſs over into *Aſia*, and poſſeſs thoſe Coaſts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confeſſed by all; the *Æolick Dialect*, or Phraſe of Speech, taking name from hence. Not otherwiſe much mention'd in the courſe of Story, than as partakers of the ſame Fortunes with the reſt of their *Aſian* Neighbours before related, and ſo not neceſſary to be now repeated.

Ionia, as a larger Tract, requires a more particular and punctual Deſcription. For here the River *Lycus* falleth into the *Mæander*, and here *Mæander* and *Cayſtrus*, two of the moſt famous Rivers of *Aſia Minor* (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Epheſus*, honoured with one of the Worlds *ſeven Wonders*, the long abode of St. *Paul*, and the Death and Sepulture of St. *John*; the Promontory *Trogyllum*, with a little Iſle adjoyning of the ſame name, mention'd *Acts* 20. 15.

Principal Cities of this Tract, are 1. *Myas*, on an Arm of the Sea, aſſigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampſacus*, and *Magneſia*, to *Themiſtocles*; when being baniſhed his own Country, he fled to his greateſt Enemy for Entertainment; and there met with more ſafety than *Athens* would, and more Honour than it could afford him; ſo that he might well ſay (as he often did) *Periiſſem niſi periiſſem*. And on the other ſide, the King was ſo overjoy'd at his coming to him, (as having now on his ſide the Man who had moſt hindred him in the Conqueſt of *Greece*) that many times in his ſleep he was heard to clap his Hands, and ſay, *Habeo Themiſtoclem Athenienſem*. In after-times, the Water drawing further off, the Soil brought forth ſuch an innumerable number of Fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forſake the City, and with their Bag and Baggage to retire to *Miletus*: Nothing hereof being left, but the Name and Memory in the time of *Pauſanius*. 2. *Erythra*, memorable for the Habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from hence call'd *Sibylla Erythræa*; of which Propheteſſes we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*. 3. *Lebedus*, of moſt note in the elder times, for thoſe publick Plays which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4. *Clazomene*, ſituate on a ſmall Ilet, near unto the Shore, of much eſteem amongſt the *Romans* for the Wines there growing; and no leſs honoured by the *Aſians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* ſeated near unto it. 5. *Priene*, the Birth-place of *Bias*, one of the ſeven *Wiſe-men* of *Greece*. 6. *Ipſus*, renowned for the great Battle betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexander*'s chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adverſary, eſtated him in all the Conqueſts of his Maſter, except *Ægypt*, only. 7. *Teos*, the Birth-place of *Anacreon*, that laſcivious and drunken Poet, hence Sirnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians*, both for Wit and Wantonneſs; of both which it may well be doubted, whether the ſmoothneſs of the Verſe, or the wantonneſs of their Expreſſions, be the more predominant. 8. *Smyrna*, a fair and ancient City, on a Bay, thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*; the greateſt part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the faireſt on the ſide of an Hill overlooking the Waters. Deſtroyed by the *Lydians*, it was reedified by *Antiochus* and *Lyſimachus*, two of *Alexander*'s great Commanders; of good account in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the *ſeven* Aſian *Churches*, to which St. *John* inſcribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, eſpecially for Camlets, Grograins, and ſuch Stuffs; made for the moſt part at *Ancyry*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the foreign Merchant. For government of the Trade whereof, and of other Commodities of theſe parts, the *Engliſh* Merchants have an Officer, call'd the *Conſul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongſt us, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, ſaid to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. This City is of that Antiquity, that it is one of the Seven which lays claim to the Birth of *Homer*. In the Year 1344. it was taken from the *Turks* by the *Venetians*, and continued in their Hands till 1428. Mr. *Wheeler*, our Country-man, who ſaw it, *p.* 240. gives us a repreſentation of the Haven and City, and ſaith, it has been ſix times ruin'd by Earthquakes; and that the *Inhabitants expect a 7th. that ſhall be its utter ruin, never to be repaired.* *Tavernier* ſaith it was one of the moſt celebrated Cities of the *Levant*, wonderfully traded to, and very rich, and built like an Amphitheatre upon the deſcent of an Hill, which opens to the S. W. and having a Caſtle which commands the Gulph two

Leagues from the City to the N. W. and that it contain'd then about 90000 Souls; but on the 30th of *June*, 1688. between 11 and 12 at Noon, the long-expected 7th. dreadful Earthquake happen'd; which in a minute threw down the moſt part of the Houſes, and ſhattered all the reſt. About 4 hours after a Fire broke out of the Ruins, which conſumed all that was left ſtanding but a few ſcattered Houſes; about 5000 Perſons periſhing in the Calamity, and the Caſtle being ſwallowed by a *Chaſm* that opened under it. Since that, the foreign Nations have left it, and are retired to *Sio* an Iſland: And whether the latter part of the Prediction will not be verified, time muſt ſhew. 9. *Colophon*, moſt memorable for the Inhabitants of it, ſo skilled in Horſemanſhip, that the ſide on which they ſerved in War was ſure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any buſineſs, grew into a Proverb. It was alſo another of thoſe Cities, which ſo ambitiouſly contended for the Birth of *Homer*; of which there were ſeven in all, as the old Verſes tell us, ſaying,

Septem urbes certant de ſtirpe inſignis Homere,
Smyrna, Rhodis, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.

Whether *Homer* purpoſely concealed his Country, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to ſay; but ſure I am, that *Paterculus* ſpeaketh it in the commendation of *Heſiodus*, (the next *Greek* Poet after him in courſe of time) that he had ſpecified his Birth-place: *Qui ut id vitaret in quod* Homerus *inciderit, patriam & parentes teſtatus eſt.* 10. *Epheſus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Roman Aſia*, and the Seat of the Primate of the *Aſian* Dioceſe; memorable in the pureſt times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the Epiſcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangeliſt, the firſt Biſhop thereof. 2dly, In that St. *Paul* directed to the people of it one of his Epiſtles; and 3dly, for the burial of St. *John* the Apoſtle, who by ſome learned Men of the elder times, is ſaid to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but ſleeping; building that thought upon that ſaying which went abroad among the Brethren, *That that diſciple ſhould not die*, Joh. 21. 23. And no leſs memorable amongſt the Gentiles for that ſumptuous and magnificent Temple here conſecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeneſs, furniture, and workmanſhip of it, was accounted one of the Wonders of the World. The length thereof ſaid to be 425 Foot, 220 Foot in breadth; ſupported with 127 Pillars of Marble, ſeventy Foot in height; of which twenty ſeven were moſt curiouſly engraven, and all the reſt of Marble poliſhed. The Model of it contrived by one *Cteſiphon*, and that with ſo much Art and curioſity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finiſhed. When finiſhed, it was fired ſeven times, the laſt time by *Eroſtratus*, only to get himſelf a Name, which happening on the ſame night in which *Alexander* the *Great* was born, gave occaſion to that weighty but witty Scoff, that *Diana* (ſhe was counted one of the Goddeſſes of *Midwifry*) could not attend the preſervation of her Temple, being then buſied at the Birth of ſo great a Prince. The ſituation of this City is very like that of *Smyrna*, it having a fine Haven and a Rivolet before it, and ſeems by the Gates, Walls, and Towers, to have been very large, but then there is now not one Houſe ſtanding in the Ara of the old City, and never a Chriſtian Inhabitant that belongs to it; nor any other than about 40 or 50 Families of *Turks* living in a knot on the Southſide of the Caſtle. The Temple of *Diana* ſtood at the bottom of the Hill near one of the Gates, and the great Portal, and the Vaults under the Arches are ſtill intire. It has one Moſque built at firſt for a Chriſtian Church, out of the Ruins of this Temple, by the *Chriſtians*, and ſince converted to this impious uſe of the *Turks*. The *Turks* call this City *Ajaſaloue*, and *Sabuck*.

As for thoſe *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were, no doubt, the deſcendants of *Javan*, the fourth Son of *Japhet*, as hath been ſhewn before in our *general Preface*; but whether they came hither out of *Græcia*, or paſſed from hence into that Country, hath been made a Queſtion. The *Athenians* boaſting of themſelves to be *Aborigenes*, Men growing as it were out of the Soil it ſelf, without any *Anceſtors*, report that thoſe *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Hecatæus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary, ſaying, That the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from thoſe of *Aſia*; for that *Attica* was anciently call'd *Ionia*; *Plutarch* in the Life of *Theſeus* doth declare expreſly. Moſt probable it is, that *Hecatæus* was in the right; theſe parts of *Aſia* lying ſo directly in the way from the Valley of *Shinaar* into *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave ſome of his company here, when he ferried the reſt over to the oppoſite Continent. I know *Pauſanias*, ignorant of their true Antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion*, the Son of *Xuthus*, and Granchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came ſo near the Truth, tho' he miſſed the Men, that it was the Grandſon of that Man who eſcaped the Flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and thoſe *Ionians* had their true Original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to thoſe *Ionians* againſt the *Perſians*; who on the overthrow given to *Crœſus*, pretended to the Lordſhip, or Dominion of *Aſia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the ſending of freſh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King firſt undertook the invaſion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the ſucceeding Kings purſuing that firſt quarrel with great Animoſities. After this, yielding to the times, they followed the fortune of the ſtrongeſt, ſubject ſucceſſively to the *Perſians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Conſtantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine*, before-mention'd; when both *Æolis* and *Ionis* got a new Name, and are now call'd *Sarcan*, from *Saracan* a *Turkiſh* Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine*, ſeized upon this Country, and erected here a petit Kingdom long ſince ſubdued by thoſe of the Race of *Ottoman*.

11. *LYDIA.*

Lydia is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phrygia Major*, and ſome part of *Piſidia*, from which ſeparated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* ſpecially ſo call'd; on the North with the *Greater Myſia*; on the South with *Caria*: So call'd from *Lud*, the Son of *Sem*, by ſome of whoſe Poſterity it was firſt inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as anciently, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, the adjoyning Provinces, it made the *Lydian Aſia*, ſpoken of before, within the verge whereof all the *ſeven Churches* were contained, mention'd by St. *John* in the *Revelation*.

The People of this Country are ſaid to have been the firſt Coyners of Money, the firſt Huckſters and Pedlers, and the firſt inventers of Dice, Ball, Cheſs, and the like Games: Neceſſity and Hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Perſius*, *Artis Magiſter, ingeniique largitor venter.* For being ſorely vext with Famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the Progenitors of *Omphale*, they deviſed theſe Games; and every ſecond day playing at them, beguiled their hungry Bellies. Thus for 22 years they continued playing and eating by turns; but then ſeeing that themſelves were more fruitful in getting and bearing Children, than the Soil at that time in bringing forth Suſtenance to mantain them, they ſent a Colony into *Italy*, under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the Son of *Atis*, who planted in that Country, call'd at firſt *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuſcany*.

This Country was alſo call'd *Mæonia*, and was thought to have been the native Soil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the ſeven contending Cities, and thoſe which ſeem to have moſt colour for their Claim, were anciently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was ſaid before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mæonides* and *Mæonius Vates*: And in ſome Authors *Carmen Mæonium* is uſed for *Homer*'s Poetical Abilities, as *Carmine* Mæonio *conſurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is alſo call'd ſometimes by the name of *Mæonius*; but for a very different reaſon, *viz.* becauſe anciently there were no Trees in all this Country, but the Vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1. *Sipylus*, and 2. *Tmolus*, this laſt of moſt account in regard of the great fruitfulneſs of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the beſt *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1. *Hermus*, which riſing out of *Phrygia Major*, paſſeth only by the skirts hereof, and ſo falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Iſle of *Clazomene*. 2. *Pactolus*, which riſing at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongſt the Poets for its golden Sands. 3. *Cayſtrus*, no leſs notable for the abundance of Swans which ſwim thereon, whoſe Fountain is in *Phrygia Major* alſo, near the borders hereof; and his fall into the *Ægean* alſo overagainſt the Iſle of *Samos*. 4. *Mæander*, which riſing out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furtheſt parts of the ſaid *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*, paſſeth by *Magneſia*, and endeth his courſe in the ſame Sea, near the City of *Epheſus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the leaſt, as *Pruſæus* counted them. Of which in general thus the Poet:

> Mæander *toties qui terris errat in iiſdem,*
> *Et lapſas in ſe, ſæpe retorquet æquas.*

That is to ſay:

> *Mæander* wandring in the ſelf-ſame Soil,
> Whoſe waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another Paſſage thus:

> *Quique recurvatis ludit* Mæander *in undis.*

> *Mæander* plays his watry Pranks,
> In his ſo many winding Banks.

The Country by reaſon of theſe Rivers was exceeding fruitful, abounding in all ſorts both of Wealth and Pleaſures, well cultivated and manured above Ground, and underneath inriched with prodigal Veins of Gold and Silver, and ſome precious Gems. Which made the People, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more ſenſual and voluptuous, and leſs fit for Action, than any Plot of their new Maſters could have brought them to, had not the natural delicacies of the Soil it ſelf contributed to the advancement of their Deſign. And yet before, they were ſufficiently infamous for their Luxury, and exceſs of Riot, when beſt ſeen in Wars; ſo that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their Command; as in the times of ſome of *Cræſus*'s Predeceſſors it is ſaid they did. Unleſs perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mæcenas*, the great Favourite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *Ubi res vigiliam exigeret, erat ſanè inſomnis, providens, & agendi ſciens; ſimulac aliquid ex negotio remitti poſſit, otio ac mollitie penè ultra fœminam fluens*: No man more vigilant than he in times of buſineſs; nor Woman more effeminate in his times of leiſure.

Principal Cities of this Country were, 1. *Sardis*, on both ſides of *Pactolus*, the Seat-Royal of *Cræſus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*, till the conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*. After which time, being taken by the *Grecians*, it ſo ſtartled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his attendants to ſay aloud every day whilſt he was at Dinner, That *the Grecians had taken* Sardis, continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which courſe (I note this only by the way) was commonly obſerved in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Callice* did remain in the hands of the *Engliſh*; and might be profitably revived, till again recover'd from the *French*. Overthrown by a moſt terrible *Earthquake*, to which Diſeaſe moſt of the *Aſian* Cities had been very much ſubject) it was re-edified again at the coſt of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the *ſeven Churches* of the *Lydian Aſia*, of which the Holy Spirit took ſuch ſpecial Notice. The others (beſides *Pergamus* already mention'd in the *Greater Myſia*; and *Epheſus*, and *Smyrna* in the *Proper Aſia*) were 2. *Philadelphia*, near, or on the Banks of the River *Cayſtrus*, the ſecond City in account next to *Sardis* it ſelf and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, as appeareth by the Acts of the *Conſtantionopolitan* Council, where *Euſtathius*, Biſhop hereof doth ſubſcribe himſelf, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Φιλαδελφίων Μητροπόλεως, Biſhop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. The *Turks* have a Tradition, that *Tamerlane* took and ruin'd this City after a Siege of ſix years; but whatever the truth of this Story is, Mr. *Wheeler* aſſureth us, the Inhabitants are reduced to a very ſmall number, and live by their Labour; the *Turks*, who are their Maſters, being worſe than Beggars, and having neither *Moſque* nor *Prieſt*. The old City ſtood on the Northſide of the *Tmolus*, on the edge of a ſpacious fruitful Plain, and ſhews yet many Marks of its Antiquity and Magnificence, *Wheeler*, p. 263. *Tavernier*, p. 37. 3. *Thyatira*, honoured with the ſame privilege alſo, as appears by the conſtant Order, obſerved as well in the *Civil* as *Eccleſiaſtical* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reaſon whereof (for otherwiſe it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the reſpect had to thoſe ſeveral Churches in regard of their Primitive Antiquity, and the Foundation of them by St. *John* the Apoſtle, as it was generally believed. It is ſeated in the Confines of *Myſia*, and was a Colony of the *Macedonians*, built in a delightful Plain. Chriſtianity is almoſt wholly extinguiſhed now in it, there being not above ten *Chriſtians* in it, and thoſe deſtitute both of Church and Prieſt, but then it has about 5000 *Turkiſh* Inhabitants. All its ancient Marble Structures are now buried in their own Ruins, the preſent Houſes being built of Earth dried in the Sun; but then it has ſome Inſcriptions which have revived the memory of it, which the *Greek* had wholly loſt, till the *European* Merchants ſought it out, and found it by thoſe Remainders, *Wheeler*, p. 229. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolomy* placed amongſt the Cities of this Province, as it ſtood in his time, and before; but afterwards laid by *Conſtantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which Honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well obſerv'd by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not diſpoſe of their Provinces according to Nations, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕτερον τρόπον διατάξαι τὰς διοικήσεις, ἐν αἷς τὰς ποιοῦνται δικαιοδοσίας, but according to thoſe *Diſtricts*, or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of Juſtice. This ancient City is now utterly deſtroyed and deſolate, being an Habitation for Wolves, Foxes, and Chacats, a Den of Dragons, Snakes, and Vipers; yet the Ruins ſhew it to have been a very great City, ſituate upon ſix or ſeven Hills, encompaſſing a lage ſpace of Ground in a Plain, watered by the River *Lycus*. It has yet three Theatres of white Marble, as beautiful and intire, as if they were but lately built, and a ſtately *Circus*. Next unto theſe, there were of eſpecial conſideration. 5. *Magneſia ad Mæandrum*, ſo call'd, becauſe ſituate on that River, to difference it from 6. *Magneſia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the ſame name near the Hill *Sipylus*. The firſt aſſigned over to *Themiſtocles*, together with *Myus* and *Lamſacus*, as was ſaid before. The other memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loſs whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occaſioned the loſs of all his *Aſian*

Province

Provinces on this ſide of *Taurus*, and the payment of 150000 Talents for the charge of the War, beſides ſome other hard Conditions then impoſed upon him. This is now a large wall'd Town, with handſome Gates, well built within, and adorned with ſeveral *Moſques*; it being maintain'd by the Trade of Cotton-Yarn, ſent hence to *Smyrna*, and is call'd by the *Turks Guzel-Hiſſer*, and lies about twelve Miles from *Epheſus* to the S. E. upon the *Meander*; there yet remains in it ſeveral Pillars and Monuments of its Antiquity, *Wheeler*, p. 279. 7. *Alabanda*, oppoſite to *Magneſia*, on the other ſide of *Mæander*, the People whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only ſent Ambaſſadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did, but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniverſary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Goddeſs*. A thing more to be wondred at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for beſtowing on their City ſo divine an honour. 8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cayſtrus*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Biſhop, and Godly Martyr, writ the Epiſtle *ad Trallenſes*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the Son of *Sem*, is teſtified by the general conſent of ſuch ancient Writers, as treat of the diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*, to which Opinions the nearneſs of the Names of *Lud*, *Ludin*, and *Lydi* (or Λύδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) ſeems to give good Countenance. Nor ſhall I here diſpute it further, as a point unqueſtion'd: The Tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman that ſhould name this Country, being taken up amongſt the *Greeks* for want of more certain Truths. Once ſetled here, they grew up ſuddenly to a Kingdom, amongſt the ancient Kings whereof are numbred *Manes* as the firſt, *Cotis* and *Atis*, and then *Aſias*, (from whom *Lydia* firſt, and after, all the Continent, had the name of *Aſia*) as his immediate Succeſſors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, ſaid by *Athenæus* to be ſo great a Gormondizer, that in his ſleep he eat his Wife, and finding her Hand in his Mouth next Morning, ſlew himſelf for ſhame; and of another named *Andramytes*, as infamous for his filthy Luſts, as *Cambletes* for his Gluttony. But the Race of theſe Kings ending in *Omphale*, the Miſtreſs of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion ſpin amongſt her Damſels, the *Heraclidæ*, or Poſterity of *Hercules* ſucceeded next; of whom there is no conſtant and continued Succeſſion till the time of *Ardiſius*, the nineteenth in order of that Line, who began his Reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his Succeſſors the Affairs hereof ſo exceedingly proſpered, eſpecially under *Halyates*, the Father of *Crœſus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bythinia*, *Paphlag*[illegible] *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themſelves Vaſſals to this Crown: Conceived both in Wealth and Power to be equal to the *Ægyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conqueſt of *Syria* and *Egypt* by *Nebuchadnezzar* gave him the preheminence. But being come unto the height, it received a fall in the Perſon of *Crœſus*, the Succeſſor of him who ſo much advanced it. The Kings hereof, from the time of the ſaid *Ardiſius*, take in order following.

The Kings of *LYDIA*.

A. M.

3190. 1. *Ardiſius*. 36.

3226. 2. *Halyates*. 14.

3240. 3. *Melo*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.

3252. 4. *Candaules*, who ſhewing his Wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him ſlain; who marrying his Wife ſucceeded him in his Kingdom. The whole Story is this: *Candaules* had to Wife, a Woman of unparallel'd Beauty, and ſuppoſing the greatneſs of his Happineſs not to conſiſt ſo much in his own Fruition, as the notice which others might take of it, intended to ſhew her in Natures bravery to *Gyges* the Maſter of his Herds. *Gyges* at firſt diſſwaded him from an attempt ſo fooliſh; but ſeeing no perſwaſion could prevail, he condeſcended. When he had ſeen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *Eſto fidelis Gyges*: Which words the Queen marking, and ſeeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the Chamber, the next Morning ſent for him: When holding a Ponyard in her Hand, ſhe gave him his choice, either preſently to be ſlain, or elſe to kill the King, and take her to Wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dower. Of which two Evils he made choice of that which he thought the leaſt, and ſo kill'd *Candaules*.

5. *Gyges*, the firſt of this new Line, added *Ionia* to his other Dominions. A Prince of ſo great Wiſdom, for the time he lived in, that all other Kings, his Neighbours, ſate (as it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them; occaſioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made inviſible, when, and as often as he pleaſed.

3305. 6. *Ardis* II. the Son of *Gyges*. 37.

3342. 7. *Sardiattes*. 15.

3357. 8. *Halyattes* II. of whom before.

3406. 9. *Crœſus*, the laſt King of *Lydia*, ſubdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which Victories he was overcome by *Cyrus* King of *Perſia*; in which Battle, a Son of *Crœſus* who had been dumb from his Cradle, ſeeing a Soldier ready to kill his Father, ſuddenly broke out into theſe words, *Rex eſt, cave ne occidas*. After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Crœſus*, (one of the richeſt Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Perſian* Province, *A. M.* 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again ſubdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their Horſes of Service, diſpoiled them of all their Armour, and trained them up in all manner of looſe and effeminate living; weakning by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoyning. After this they continued *Perſian* till the Conqueſt of *Aſia* by the *Macedonians*, in the diviſion of whoſe Spoils they fell to the Portion of *Seleucus*, and the Kings of *Syria*; following the common fortune of the reſt of this *Aſia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire, it had the *Lower Myſia*, or *Myſia Olympena* annexed unto it; by means whereof the limits of each became ſo confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one are many times aſcribed to the other. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire it was made (as all the reſt of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, ſubject to the *Carauſian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major* were to the *Aidinian*.

12. *CARIA*.

CAria is bounded on the Eaſt with *Lycia*; on the North with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the Weſt with the *Icarsan*, or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South with the *Carpathian*. So call'd from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof, who is ſaid to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, call'd *Augury*; Though others aſcribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill call'd *Latmus*, the dwelling, or rather retiring-place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the ſtudy of *Aſtronomy*, found out the changes and courſes of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and caſt him into a deep ſleep; (which, notwithſtanding ſhe deſcended ſometimes to kiſs him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis ſomnum dormit.* Here is alſo in this Country the River *Salmacis*, ſaid to infeeble all ſuch as either drink of it, or bathe in it; from whence the Poets raiſe the fiction of *Salmacis*, and *Hermaphroditus*; deſcribed by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida ſpolia ſine ſanguine & ſudore*, mention'd by *Tully* in his Book of *Offices*, and there uſed for effeminate and wanton Exerciſes.

Places of moſt note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the Hill *Latmus*, the Birth-place of *Thales*, one of the ſeven Wiſe-men of *Greece*, from hence call'd *Mileſius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* ſaith) of 80 Colonies, diſperſed in ſeveral places of *Greece* and *Aſia*; anciently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, Sirnamed *Didymæus*, whoſe Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Myleſians*, to ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that it remained without Roof; compaſſed about with a *Grove*, and dwelling Houſes, and ſumptuouſly ſet out with coſtly Workmanſhip. This is that *Miletus* mention'd, *Acts* 20. to which St. *Paul* call'd together the Biſhops of *Epheſus*, and of other the adjoyning Cities, *Ab Epheſo & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, ſaith St. *Irenæus*, the renowned Biſhop of *Lions*, lib. 3. cap. 14. Anciently it was call'd *Legis* and *Anactoria*. There is at this day vaſt Ruins of this City to be ſeen, which are call'd by the *Turks Palatſha*, but it has only a few Cottages inhabited by the Shepherds, who underſtand none of its ancient Inſcriptions, *Wheeler*, 269. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a ſmall Town, had ſo great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cried out, and ſaid, *Ye Men of* Mindus, *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates.* 3. *Heraclea ad Latmum*, ſo call'd becauſe ſituate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that Name. 4. *Borgylia*, or *Borgylus*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where anciently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Epheſus*. 5. *Milaſa*, in old times famous for two Temples ſacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 Furlongs was paved with Stone for the eaſier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Proceſſions; the principal of the Citizens ſerving there as *Prieſts*, which Office they held unto their Death. 7. *Primaſſus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*; who meaning to force it by Mines, and finding the Earth ſo ſtony, that it would not work, commanded the *Pioneers* notwithſtanding to make a noiſe under the Ground, and cauſed great Mounts of *Rubbiſh* to be raiſed ſecretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the Work went very well forwards; at laſt he ſent word unto the Townſmen, that two parts of the Wall ſtood only upon wooden Props, to which if he gave Fire, they ſhould find no Mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. So uſeful in the Art of War, is a piece of Wit, that it prevails ſometimes more than Mines or Batteries

In the South Weſt of the Province, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea like a ſpacious Promontory, ſtands the Country of *Doris*, ſo call'd of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1. *Cnidus*, not far from a Foreland or Promontory of the ſame Name, famous of old times for the Marble Image of *Venus*, call'd hence *Dea Cnidia*. 2. *Creſſa*, a noted Haven Town in the time of *Ptolomy*. 3. *Halicarnaſſus*, (now call'd *Neſi*) the Birth-place of *Herodotus* and *Dionyſius*, named hence *Halicarnaſſeus*, two famous Hiſtorians, and the Seat-Royal of *Artemeſia* Queen of the *Carians*, (call'd from hence ſometimes the Queen of *Halicarnaſſus*) who in the Honour of her Husband *Mauſolus*, built a ſtately Monument, accounted one of the World's *ſeven Wonders*; of which thus *Martial*, ſpeaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*:

Aere nec vacuo pendentia Mauſolæa
Laudibus immodicis Cares *ad aſtra ferant.*

That is to ſay,

Mauſolus's Tomb filling the empty Air,
Let not the *Carians* praiſe beyond compare.

But whatever it was in ancient time, it is now an uninhabited heap of Ruins, in which that once ſtately *Mauſolus* is buried. *Wheeler*, p. 275.

That the *Carians* were ſo call'd from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been ſaid before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them ſo call'd from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth a Sheep, or a Ram; with numerous Flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may ſeem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians*, next Neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, call'd Sheep by the name of *Cara*, Κάρα, Ἴωνες τὰ πρόβατα, ſaith *Heſychius*, the old *Grammarian*. From whomſoever they had their Name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people. *Eo armorum pugnaque amantes*, (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appeterent*, who when they had no Wars at Home, would ſeek out for Action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mauſolus* reigned here, whoſe Wife *Artemeſia* (lately mention'd) aided that King in his Undertakings againſt *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, we met with *Ada*, Queen hereof, who aided him againſt the *Perſians*; adopting him for her Son and Succeſſor; Subject after her deceaſe to the *Macedonians*, it followed the ſame Fortune with the reſt of theſe Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magneſia*: In the diviſion of whoſe Spoils it was given to the *Rhodians*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wreſted from the Eaſtern Emperors by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greateſt part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* II. was raiſed unto a petit Kingdom by the name of *Menteſia*, ſo call'd from *Mendos*, (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the reſidue being laid to the *Caraman* Kingdom, both long ago ſubdued by the *Ottoman* Family: That of *Menteſia*, by *Mahomet*, Sirnamed the *Great*, who diſpoſſeſſed *Elias* the laſt Prince thereof, *An.* 1451.

13. *LYCIA.*

L*Ycia* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pamphylia*; on the Weſt with *Caria*; on the North with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three ſides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which [illegible] it from the Countries abovemention'd; by conſequence naturally ſtrong, and not very acceſſible: The Sea for the ſpace of twenty Miles ſhutting up the fourth. And here is to be obſerv'd, that beſides this, there was a little Region of the ſame name not far from *Troy*, not much obſerv'd by our *Geographers*, either old or new, but mention'd ſometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 4. *Qualis ubi hyberniam* Lyciam *Xanthique fluenta Deſerit*, &c. which is meant plainly of the *Phrygian*, or *Trojan Lycia*; the word *Hyberna* being added, becauſe of its Northern ſituation in reſpect of this. Of this ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in *Phrygia Minor*. In which alſo that there was a River call'd *Xanthus*, appears not only by thoſe words of *Virgil* which are cited there, but by two paſſages in *Oenones*'s Epiſtles unto *Paris* no leſs evident.

The people hereof were ſometimes call'd *Xanthi* from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which riſing in two Springs from the root of Mount *Cadmus*, paſſeth by a Town call'd *Xanthus* alſo, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were call'd *Lycii*, and the Country *Lycia*, from *Lycus* the Son of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either

ther conquered them, or did ſome memorable Act amongſt them, which deſerved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Aſia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath its beginning in this Province, extending Eaſtward to the great *Oriental* Ocean; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid hereafter, when theſe Hills are grown unto the greateſt.

One of the Branches of it, and the moſt notable in this Country, is that call'd *Chimera*, vomiting flames of Fire like *Sicilian Ætna*; the bottom whereof was infeſted with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the Dens of *Lyons*. Hence by the Poets made a Monſter, having the Head of a Lyon, the Body of a Goat, and the Tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*:

> *Quoque* Chimæra *jugo mediis in partibus Hircum,*
> *Pectus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat.*

In Engliſh thus:

> *Chimera* from a Goat her mid-part takes,
> From Lyons Head and Breaſt, her Tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was firſt planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monſter; employed upon this buſineſs by *Jobares*, the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been ſent by *Prætus*, King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him, and ſent his Letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the ſaying, *Bellerophontis literas portare*; applied to thoſe, who were unawares employed to carry Letters tending to their own deſtruction; ſuch as thoſe carried by *Uriab* to *Joab* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was ſo populous, that anciently there was reckoned threeſcore Cities in it, of which ſix and thirty remained in the time of St. *Paul*, now nothing left of them but the Names and Ruins. Thoſe of chief note were, 1. *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by conſequence an Archbiſhops See, when Chriſtian. St *Nicolas*, one of the Biſhops hereof, in the Primitive times, is ſaid to have been a great Patron of Scholars: His Feſtival annually holden on the ſixth of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with ſeveral Paſtimes; and ſtill in ſome Schools here in *England*, (as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, where I had my Breeding, and my Birth) for a Feaſt, and a Play-day. Of this City there is mention, *Acts* 27. 5. 2. *Telmeſus*, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South-ſaying*, and accounted the firſt Interpreters of Dreams. 3. *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly call'd *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven, and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an *Oracle* in it, for Wealth and Credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaſelis* on the Seaſide alſo, a Neſt of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatneſs, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algier* is now; but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at ſuch time as *Pompey* ſcoured the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this Town the former Ages were indebted for the firſt invention of thoſe ſwift Veſſels, which the *Romans* call'd a *Phaſelus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5. *Cragus*, with the Mountain of the ſame name, thruſting out eight Points, or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6. *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, moſt probably of the Foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Piſidia*, the people of which were conquer'd and added unto *Lycia* by the Sword of *Bellorophon*, whom *Jobares* with a mind to kill him, according to the requeſt of *Prætus*, imployed in that Service. 8. *Corydalla*, near the Mountain call'd *Maſigrum*, the *Maſſycites* of *Pliny*. 9. *Podalea*, the chief Town of *Mylias*; as 10. *OEnoando* is of *OEbalia*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puiſſant People, extending their Power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Perſian* not without great difficulty; the People with ſuch obſtinacy defending their Liberty, that ſome of them being beſieged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, they firſt burnt their Wives, Children, Servants, and Riches, in a common Fire; and then made a furious ſally upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the Sword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted without any reſiſtance. After whoſe death they fell with the reſt of theſe parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the Battle of *Magneſia*, it was given to the *Rhodians* for their aſſiſtance of that War; but govern'd as a free Eſtate by a *Common-Council* of 14 Senators, elected out in their principal Cities: Over whom was one chief Preſident, or Prince of the Senate, whom they call'd by the name of *Lyciarchus*. In theſe remained the ſole power of impoſing Taxes, making War and Peace, appointing *Juſtitiaries* and inferior Magiſtrates, and all things appertaining to the publick Government. A ſhadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a ſhadow only; the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty Name, and the vain privilege of ordering and diſpoſing the publick Games, wherein by his Office he preſided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the ſame fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*: After the death of the ſecond *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

14. *LYCAONIA.*

LYcaonia is bounded on the Eaſt with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North with *Cappadocia*; and on the South with *Piſidia*. So call'd from the *Lycaones*, a People of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycaonians*, Inhabitants of *Lycaonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who enlarging themſelves into theſe parts, gave this Name unto it. Either of which I ſhould prefer before their Conceit, who derive it from *Lycaon*, King of *Arcadia*, diſpoſſeſſed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycaon* was a King of this Country, and not of that.

Places of note herein, 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province; a place of great Strength and Conſequence, ſituated advantagiouſly in the Mountains, for Defence and Safety, and therefore choſen for the Seat of the *Turkiſh* Kings in *Leſſer Aſia*, at ſuch time as they were moſt diſtreſſed by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*; who under the command and preſence of the Emperar *Conrade*, did in vain beſiege it, forced to depart thence with great loſs both of Men and Honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former Race being extinguiſhed by the *Tartars*; and finally, of the Kings of the Houſe of *Caraman*, whoſe Kingdom, call'd the Kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South part of the *Leſſer Aſia*; that is to ſay, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, *Piſidia*, and this *Lycaonia*. It is ſtill the Seat of a *Turkiſh Baſha*, and of a Chriſtian Arch-Biſhop, great, and well peopl'd, and the capital City of *Caramania*. In the Year 1658. a *Turkiſh Baſha* who was in Rebellion againſt the Port, was defeated near this place, which lies overagainſt the Weſtern Point of *Cyprus*, and is now call'd *Cogni* by the *Turks*. 2. *Lyſtra*, the Birth-place of *Timothy* the Evangeliſt; where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculouſly healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the inſtigation of ſome *Jews* which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, moſt deſpitefully treated; *Paul* being ſtoned into the bargain, though it pleaſed God to raiſe him to life again, *Acts* 14. verſe 19, 20. Such was the Divine pleaſure of Almighty God, that he that did conſent to the ſtoning of St. *Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the Cloaths of his Executioners, ſhould ſuffer in the ſame kind wherein he had treſpaſſed, and feel ſome ſmart remembrance of his former Actions. 3. *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the ſaid Apoſtle. 4. *Laranda*, ſo call'd by *Ptolomy*, and ſtill preſerving its old Name, the ſecond place for Reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5. *Adopiſſus*. 6. *Paralaus*. 7. *Canna*. 8. *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycaonians* themſelves, from whomſoever they deſcended, of any great note or obſervation in the former times; ſubject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Ptolomy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Diſmembred from it by ſome of the following Emperors, either to create new Offices and Preferments for ſome *Court-Favourite*, or to ſatisfie the *Ambition* of ſome Prelates, aſpiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, it was made a Province of its ſelf. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at firſt a member of the *Salzuccian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*. Which laſt founded by *Caraman*, a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the Second, the laſt King of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great Eye-ſore unto thoſe of the Houſe of *Ottoman*, from the time of *Amurath* the Firſt, who firſt warred upon it, to the Reign of *Bajazet* the Second, who in fine ſubverted it, *An.* 1486. as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter, when we come to *Cilicia*, the laſt of the Provinces of that Kingdom, in the courſe of this Work.

The *Sultans* of *Iconium* from *Du Freſne* his *Hiſtoria Bizantina*.

The *Turks* began their Incurſions into that part of *Aſia* which bordereth on *Cappadocia*, and *Lycaonia*, under the Reign of *Romanus Diogenes*, Emperor of C. P. about the Year 1072. when that Empire was involved in deſtructive Civil Wars. *Diogenes*, the Emperor, attempting to put a ſtop to this furious Torrent, being this Year overcome in Battle, and taken Priſoner, which Victory gave a beginning to this Kingdom.

A. C.

1072. 1. *Cutlumeſes* the firſt *Sultan*, Uncle by the Father's ſide to *Tangrolipix*, firſt *Sultan*-General to the *Turks*, and the Conqueror of the greater part of the *Grecian* Aſiatick Provinces. This Prince had before this time poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Iconium*, and upon this Victory he endeavour'd to get into his Power all the Countries which his Nephew had conquer'd; but the *Caliph* interpoſing *Axan*, retained the upper Provinces, and *Cutlumeſes* was to enjoy what he could conquer in the *Leſſer Aſia*. He left behind him two Sons, *Solyman*, and *Mazourius*.

2. *Solyman* the Elder ſucceeded him, and puſhed on his Father's Conqueſts; he took in the greateſt part of *Bythinia*, and the City of *Nice*, which he made ever after the Seat of his Kingdom, and after it *Antioch*; and in the Year 1084. he overthrew *Serfold*, Sultan of *Aleppo*, but the Year after was overthrown and ſlain by his Succeſſor.

1085. 3. *Apelchaſem*, *Solyman*'s Governor, or General, upon the Death of his Maſter, uſurped all his Dominions, but was ſoon after taken and ſlain.

4. *Clitiziaſthlan*, or *Clitzieſthan*, or *Ker-Aſlan*, the eldeſt Son of *Solyman*, next ſucceeded, and inherited the War with the *Greeks*, which he compoſed, and fell upon *Tzacha* another *Turk*, who had taken *Smyrna*, *Phocæa*, under the Reign of *Alexius Comnenus*, whom he treacherouſly ſlew. *Alexius* hereupon reſtored *Nice* to the *Sultan* in the Year 1105. which had been taken by the *Chriſtians* in their paſſage to the Holy Land with much difficulty, in the Year 1097. *Clitziaſthlan* reſigned this City to his Brother, with *Lyaconia*, and ſetled at *Iconium*.

5. *Clitziaſthlan* II. Son of the former, ſucceeded his Father, and ſetled alſo at *Iconium*. He was ſlain by *Maſuat* his Baſtard-Brother.

1116. 6. *Maſuat*, a Baſtard of *Clitziaſtlan*'s the Firſt, by the Forces of *Grazi*, Prince of *Turcomania*, obtain'd the *Sultany* of *Iconium*. He fought *Taniſman*, Sultan of *Cappadocia*, and *Noradin* of *Syria*, and *John* and *Emanuel Comneni*; from all which was he come off a gainer.

7. *Clitziaſthlan* III. Son of *Maſuat*, and Sultan of *Iconium*. In the Year 1176. he gave *Emanuel Comnenus* ſo great an overthrow, that he never joyed after it. Towards his latter End he became a Chriſtian, as *Math. Paris*, and other Writers ſay.

1182. 8. *Chaichoſroes*, eldeſt Son of the former, ſucceeded; his Mother was a Chriſtian, and the Daughter of the Count of *Toloſe*; he fought *Frederick* I. in his paſſage to the Holy Land, and was beaten out of his Country by that Prince, 1188. and 1189. who obtained three Victories in that Paſſage; after this he had with *Alexius Angelus*, Emperor of *C. P.* whom he afterwards viſited at *C. P.* He had a Son call'd *Kutepez*, or *Melec*, but was ſucceeded by

1200. 9. *Rucratin*, or *Rucn*[illegible] his Brother, who in Conjunction with [illegible]*xius*, invaded his Territories. He did not long continue in his Friendſhip to the *Greeks*, pretending they had ſuborned Aſſaſſins to murder him; however, his Reign was not long, for he died in the Year 1204.

1204. 10. *Chaichoſroes* hereupon returned, and regained his loſt Kingdom. After this he retook *Nice*, and took *Attalia* from *Theodorus*, *Laſcaris*, *Conſtantinople*, being then in the Hands of the *Franks*, or *Latins*; and the Eaſtern Emperors not able to defend themſelves againſt the *Turks*, and *Pilgrims*, and yet at laſt *Theodorus* the Emperor ſlew this *Sultan* in Battle with his own Hands.

1207. 11. *Kutepez*, or *Melec*, ſucceeded, and is call'd alſo *Ezzodinus Caicaw*. He died during the Siege of *Damiata*, in 1219. and is reported to have been a Well-wiſher to the *Chriſtians*, but warr'd againſt them by the Procurement of *Saladin*, his Father-in-law.

1219. 12. *Azatinus*, or *Alatinus*, or *Aladin Caicobadus*, Brother of *Melec*, ſucceeded him, his Children being all too young to be truſted in ſuch a beſet Kingdom. He was a Prince of great Prudence and Valour, and reſtored the State of the *Turks* which was then very low. In the Year 1235. he by a Letter ſent to Pope *Gregory* IX. ſhewed a great inclination to imbrace the Chriſtian Religion. The next year after he died before *Satalia*, a Town of *Armenia*; others ſay in 1338.

1235. 13. *Gaiaſadinus*, *Japhatinus*, *Jathatinus*, *Azatinus*, or *Giathodin*, *Caicoſcaw*, according to the various ways of Writing, was the only Son, and Succeſſor of *Azatin*, by the help of *Franks*, who ſerved him and his Father as

Mercenaries; who perſwaded him to put his Father's Widow and his two Brothers to Death, that he might eſtabliſh himſelf. He that gave this Counſel, deſign'd afterwards to murder *Gaiaſadin* himſelf too; but in this he was prevented, and periſhed with the reſt. During the Reign of this Prince, in the Years 1292. and 1293. the *Tartars* invaded his Country, took his Cities, and rifled his Provinces. Upon their going off, one *Coterin*, a *Turk*, endeavoured to uſurp his Kingdom, but was ſlain by the Lord of *Lambron*. *Gaiaſadin* died at *Attalia*, or *Sattalia*, in *Octob.* 1245. He had three Sons, *Azadin*, *Raconad*, and *Altadin*.

1245. 14. *Raconad*, or *Racnaddin*, ſucceeded him in the *Sultany* of *Iconium*; being ſet up by *Selaſadin*, a perſon of great Power and Intereſt; he was then about eleven years of Age, and was born of a *Greek* Mother, who was then living. *Loſyn*, the General of the *Turkiſh* Forces under his Father, oppoſed him, and ſlew *Selaſadin* in his Quarrel, but he maintained his Poſt, an made a Peace with the *Tartars*; In the Year 1254. the *Tartars* again renewed the War againſt him; and the next year took him Priſoner.

1255. 15. *Azadin*, the eldeſt Son of *Gaiaſadin*, aſcended his Father's Throne, *Raconad* being carried into Captivity by the *Tartars*. This Prince is call'd in the *Turkiſh* Annals *Aladin*. In the Year 1260. upon an Invaſion of the *Tartars*, he was forced with his Wife end Children to fly to the Emperor *Michael Palæologus* to *C. P.* he endeavoured after this to have recovered his Government, but died in the Attempt, leaving his Wife and Children in the Hands of the Emperor, who kept them Priſoners.

1261. 16. *Melec*, the eldeſt Son of *Azadin*, was rather the Heir of his Father's Calamity than Kingdom, which he endeavoured to regain, but was oppoſed by *Amur*, the principal of the Nobility, who getting together a great Army, drove *Melec* into Exile. And hereupon the *Turkiſh* Affairs fell into an Anarchy, and that gave occaſion to the Riſe of the *Ottoman* Family. The time of this Prince's Death is not expreſſed by my Author, he ſaith be was proclaim'd *Sultan*; but did never quietly enjoy it, being ſoon after overthrown by *Haly*, the Son of *Amur*.

15. *PISIDIA.*

PIſidia hath on the Eaſt *Armenia Minor*; on the Weſt ſome part of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North *Lycaonia*; on the South *Pamphylia*, and ſome part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So call'd from the *Piſidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their Name I find not amongſt my Authors.

The Country ſmall, but furniſhed with great plenty of all Proviſions, as appeareth by that paſſage of *Livie*, where ſpeaking of the Expedition of *Manlius* into theſe parts, he telleth us that he came into the Fields of *Sagalaſſa*, (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich Soil, and plentiful of all manner of Fruit, *Inde ventum eſt* (ſaith he) *in agrum Sagalaſſarum, uberem fertilemque omni genere frugum*: But this is to be underſtood only of the Plains and Champian, the Mountainous parts hereof being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it. 1. *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, call'd for diſtinction ſake *Antiochia Piſidiæ*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by St. *Paul*'s preaching, the ſum of whoſe divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the firſt King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* Race, and by him ſo call'd in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2. *Seleucia*, the foundation of the ſame *Seleucus*, call'd alſo, to diſtinguiſh it from others of that Name, *Seleucia Piſidiæ*. 3. *Lyſinnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4. *Selge*, a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*. 5. *Sagalaſſa*, ſituate in the moſt fruitful part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livie* before mention'd. 6. *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a *Roman* Colony. 7. *Termeſſus*, ſtrongly ſituate in the *Streights* of the Mounts, the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Milyes*. 8. *Olbanaſſa*. 9. *Pleutaneſſus*, of which little memorable.

As for theſe *Piſidæ*, they were originally deſcended of the *Solymi*, Inhabitants of the Borders of *Lycia*. A valiant People, and ſo affirmed to be by *Livie*, who calleth them *longè multimos bello*. Nor did he ſpeak it without cauſe, this ſmall Nation holding out againſt the *Perſians*, and not conquered by them, when their great Neighbours were ſubdued. Againſt theſe, *Cyrus*, the Brother of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, King of *Perſia*, did pretend a Quarrel, as if they had treſpaſſed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occaſion to levy an Army, pretending revenge on them, but intending to diſpoſſeſs his Brother of the *Perſian* Monarchy: But *Tiſaphernes* Lieunant to the King in *Aſia*, ſeeing greater Preparations than were ſufficient to oppoſe the weak *Piſidians*, made the King acquainted with his Suſpicions, who accordingly provided for Reſiſtance, The Army of *Cyrus* conſiſting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Perſians*. The Kings Forces were no fewer than 900000 fighting Men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* loſt both the Victory and his Life. The *Grecians* who had made their ſide good, and ſtood in honourable terms of Compoſition, being by *Tiſaphernes* betrayed, loſt the beſt of their Company. The reſt under the conduct of *Xenophon*, made ſafe retreat home in deſpight of 200000 Men which followed at their Heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in, and the Hiſtorian of this Expedition; by whoſe Example the *Spartans* firſt, and after them the *Macedonians* were encouraged to attempt the Conqueſt of *Perſia*. But to return to theſe *Piſidians*, they fell, with others of their Neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the *Romans*, and ſetled in Obedience by the Military progreſs of *Manlius*, ſpoken of before; they were in *Ptolomy*'s time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, and ſo continued till thoſe parts of the *Eaſtern* Empire were ſubdued by the *Turks*: Firſt part of the *Selzuccian* and *Aladinian* Kingdoms, after of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

16. *PAMPHYLIA.*

PAmphylia is bounded on the Eaſt with *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*; on the Weſt with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North with *Piſidia*, ſeparated from it by the main Body of that Mountain; and on the South with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in thoſe parts which lie next to it, is call'd *Mare Pamphylium*. The reaſon of the Name I find not, unleſs we think with *Metaphraſtes*, that it was ſo named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus conflata eſſet*, becauſe inhabited by a mixture of many Nations; for ſo *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* Tongue doth expreſly ſignifie. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea, with an open Shore, oppoſite to *Africk*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, ſeveral Nations from thoſe parts might repair unto it; and from thence the Name.

The Country for the moſt part is very Mountainous, over-run with the Branches of Mount *Taurus*; but theſe Branches feed great ſtore of Goats, of whoſe Hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograins*, not inferiour unto Silks for fineneſs. Towards the Sea, which for the ſpace of an hundred and fifty Miles Coaſts along this Shore, more pleaſant, populous, and fruitful; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1. *Cataractus.* 2. *Ceſtrus*; and 3. *Eurimedon*; nigh to which laſt, *Simon* the Son of *Miltiades*, Captain-General of the *Athenian* Army, overthrew in one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Perſians.* The manner thus: Having by plain force broke their Navy, of which he took and ſunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thouſand Gallies, he ſtowed the *Perſian* Veſſels with his beſt Men, attired in the Habit, and wearing the Colours of the *Perſians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrymen, but the *Greeks* once in, ſuddenly put them to the Sword, and took twenty thouſand of them Priſoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1. *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, and for long time the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing City of all this Province; well fenced, and ſeated very commodiouſly for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now call'd *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the *Romans* did confer the Honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aſpendus*, yet ſtill *Attalia* had the ſtart in point of Riches, and is to this day a wealthy and well-traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair Tapeſtries which are herein made. Of this Town there is mention, *Acts* 14. *ver.* 25. 2. *Perga*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly Feſtivals there held in honour of her, from whence call'd *Diana Pergæa*; more famous *in the fulneſs of time*, for St. *Paul*'s Preaching in it, mention'd *Acts* 14. *ver.* 25. 3. *Syde*, renowned in times of *Gentiliſm*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4. *Magydis*, on the Seaſide, not far from *Syde*. 5. *Aſpendus*, an in-land Town, but ſtrongly ſituate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*; remarkable for the Fidlers, or Muſicians of it, who with one Hand both held their Harp, and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainful uſes; whence the Proverb of *Aſpendus, Cithariſta*, an *Aſpendian Harper*, by which they ſignified a Thief. The Town firſt founded by the *Argives*, the Colony ſent thither being led by *Mopſus*, from whom the Country hereabouts had the name of *Mopſia*. 6. *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7. *Caracenſium*; and 8. *Colobraſſus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof which had the name of *Cilicia Aſpera*; as 9. *Cretopolis*, and 10. *Menedemium*, of that part which was call'd *Carbalia*.

Of theſe *Pamphylians* there is little to be ſaid in point of Story, but that they were for the moſt part on the ſuffering hand; ſubject from time to time to thoſe mightier Princes, who would not let their Neighbours reſt in quiet by them. Being on the ſame ſide of *Taurus*, and of eaſie Acceſs, they became firſt Vaſſals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Perſian* Kings. When *Alexander* paſſed that way, in his March towards *Perſia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it: The whole brought under with the reſt of the *Aſian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* firſt, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whoſe Line, this People and their Neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themſelves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his Faction, began to be troubleſome on the Seas, and proved notable *Pirates*, and were the firſt Authors or Inventors of thoſe Gallies of an hundred and forty, or an hundred and ſixty Oars apiece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this Trade at laſt, being Warred upon by the *Romans* with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller Narrative whereof we ſhall have in *Cilicia*) in the concluſion of that War, they loſt that liberty which ſo ſmall a time they had enjoyed, and were made Vaſſals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, they ran the ſame Fortune with the reſt, till ſubdued by the *Turks*; and at the death of *Aladine*, were ſeized on by *Caraman*, and ſo became a part of his Kingdom; of which we ſhall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And ſo much for the Provinces of the *Aſian Dioceſe* (the Provinces of the Iſles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the *Chriſtian* Faith by three great Apoſtles; but moſt eſpecially by St. *Paul*, of whoſe Travels through moſt Cities and Regions of it, there is ſuch pregnant Evidence in the Book of *Acts*. And that St. *Peter* and St. *John* had alſo their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the firſt Epiſtle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God himſelf giving the Encreaſe*. Paſs we on next unto *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*, which though Provinces of the *Dioceſs* of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom; of which having taken a Survey, and ſo cleared our ſelves of this *Peninſula*, we will then ſail about ſuch Iſlands as make up the remainder of the *Aſian Dioceſe*.

17. *ISAURIA.* 18. *CILICIA.*

THeſe two, though diſtinct Provinces, I have joyned together, becauſe the firſt was only a part of the laſt; *Cilicia* anciently comprehending both: The Fortunes of both being the ſame alſo in point of Story, which makes the Conjunction the more natural.

Iſauria, a mountainous and hilly Province, ſeated on both ſides of *Taurus*, hath on the Eaſt and South the reſt of *Cilicia*, whereof anciently it was a part; on the North *Piſidia*; on the Weſt *Pamphylia*. So call'd from *Iſaurus*, the chief City of it, when firſt made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, impoyed by *Pompey* in that Service, reduced the conquered Country under the Command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conqueror the Sirname of *Iſauricus*.

The quality of the Soil, and whole Eſtate of this ſmall Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had ſeen theſe Countries. Ciliciæ *lateri dextro adnexa* Iſauria, *uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile* Calicadnus *interſcindit*, &c. *i. e.* “On the right Hand of *Cilicia* lieth *Iſauria*, a “Province of a wealthy Soil, plentiful of Vines, and “much other Fruits, which the River *Calicadnus* parteth in the very midſt. Beautified, beſides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*; and 2. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperor brought a *Roman* Colony. For as touching 3. *Iſaurus*, heretofore a walled City, and of moſt eſteem, it hath been long ago deſtroyed, as yielding too ſecure a Refuge to the neighbouring Rebels; inſomuch, that now there are ſcarce any viſible Tracts of its former greatneſs. And not much after, *hæ duæ Provinciæ bello quondam* Piratico *catarvis mixtæ Prædonum*, à Servilio *Proconſule miſſæ ſub jugum, factæ ſunt vectigales.* i. e. “Theſe Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore “in the *Piratical* War joyning with thoſe Robbers, “were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, and “made ſubject to the State of *Rome*. And here we have in brief the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principal Cities, with ſo much of the Story as relates to the firſt ſubjugation of it. What further doth concern it we ſhall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2. *Cilicia* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is call'd *Comagena*, ſeparated from which part by a Branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, call'd *Amanus*; on the Weſt with *Pamphylia*; on the North with *Iſauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, ſpecially ſo call'd. It was thus named, as the old Tradition was, from *Cilice*, the Brother of *Cadmus* the *Phænician*, a

near Neighbour to it : But as *Bochartus* (of whoſe Humour I have told you often) from *Callukim*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying Stones, *quia lapidoſa eſt Regio*, becauſe in ſome parts, eſpecially in that which is call'd *Cilicia Thrachæa*, or *Cilicia Aſpera*, it was very ſtony. It is now call'd *Caramania*, as the laſt Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdom, which held out for thoſe falling Princes, when the reſt was conquer'd by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race.

The Country ſaid by *Marcellinus* to be *Terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all Neceſſaries. Which Character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eaſtern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campeſtris*; the Weſtern parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly call'd *Cilicia Aſpera*, being rough and ſtony. But generally where the Lands lie in ſeveral, and are duly cultivated, it anſwereth to the former *Character* ; being alſo very well water'd, and having a fair and large Sea-coaſt for the ſpace of three hundred Miles and upwards. Which notwithſtanding it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited ; a great part of the Country lying in large and common Fields, to which none can lay any proper Claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep : Out of which the Commoners on all ſides raiſe good profit by Cheeſe and Butter, by their Fleeces chiefly. Here is alſo a good breed of Horſes, of which ſix hundred yearly are culled out for the ſpecial Service of the *Grand Seigneur*. But as they have ſome profitable and uſeful Creatures, ſo they have others as dangerous and hurtful to them ; eſpecially thoſe which the vulgar *Grecians* call the *Squilachi*, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in Troops, and are ſo bold, and thieviſh withal, as they uſe to ſet upon a Man as he is aſleep, and leave him neither Hat, Cloak, nor Fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Pyramus*, now call'd *Malmiſtra*, which riſing on the Northſide of the *Taurus*, and forcing his Paſſage through that Mountain, makes ſuch a noiſe in falling down the Precipices and Rocks thereof, as reſemblanceth at a great diſtance a Clap of Thunder. 2. *Orymagdus.* 3. *Calicadnus*, ſpoken of before. 4. *Cidnus*, which riſeth in the *Anti-Taurus* ; a River of a violent Courſe, and ſo cold a Water, that as *Pliny* writes, it cureth the Gout : The Waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the *Great*, the coldneſs of them ſtriking violently into his Stomach ; and deadly to *Frederick* the firſt Emperor of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himſelf, the violence of the Stream tripping up his Heels, and he not able to recover, was preſently drowned.

Of their chief Hills I need add nothing, having already ſaid that the Country is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*, and by *Taurus* it ſelf from *Piſidia* and *Armenia Minor* ; not eaſie of entrance by the firſt, but very difficult by the laſt : The *Streights* thereof call'd *Pilæ Ciliciæ*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed ſo ſtreight, and almoſt impaſſable, that had they been guarded, or regarded by the *Perſians*, as they ſhould have been, the Progreſs of *Alexander*'s Victories might have ended there. But *Arſenes*, who had the charge of them, durſt not ſtand his ground, and ſo left them open to the Enemy, whom by thoſe Ports he put into the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Perſia*. With better Faith, though no better Fortune, did the Soldiers of *Peſcennius niger* make good theſe *Streights* againſt the Emperor *Severus* ; the Monarchy of the World lying the ſecond time at the Stake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* poſſeſſed of theſe *Streights* and Entrances, couragiouſly withſtood the *Severian* Party ; till at laſt a ſudden Tempeſt of Rain and Thunder continually darting in their Faces, (as if the very Heavens had been armed againſt them) they were fain to leave the Paſſage, and therewith the Victory to the adverſe Faction, having ſold that at the loſs of 20000 of their own Lives, which *Alexander* had the happineſs, or the hap, to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country, towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe, or Nation call'd the *Soli*, originally of *Attica* : But in long tract of time diſuſed from converſe and communication with their Countrymen, they ſpeak that Language ſo corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of Pronunciation, and as rude Expreſſion, came the word *Solœciſmus*. Yet amongſt theſe were born three Men of eminent Note ; that is to ſay, *Chryſippus* the Philoſopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets ; out of the Writings of which laſt, St. *Paul* vouchſafed to uſe this Paſſage, τοῦ γὰρ γένος ἐσμὲν *i. e. For we are alſo his Offſpring*, *Acts* 17. ver. 28. That bleſſed Apoſtle thought himſelf never the worſe *Preacher*, for being brought up in humane Learning, at the Feet of *Gamaliel*, nor held it any diſparagement to the influences of the Holy Ghoſt, to make uſe of it in his *Sermons* and divine Diſcourſes : and therefore to prevent thoſe *Cavils* which Ignorance, or Miſpriſion might chance to make in times ſucceeding, hath thrice vouchſaſed the Words and Teſtimony of Heathen Writers, *viz.* of *Epemenides*, Tit. 1. *ver.* 12. of *Menander*, 1 Cor. 15. *ver.* 33. and that of *Aratus* beforemention'd. So lawful is it in this kind, for thoſe of the *Spiritual Iſrael*, to rob the *Egyptians* ; and to make this *Hagar* ſerviceable to her Miſtreſs *Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Solæ*, the Habitation of the *Soli*, before remembred ; by ſome ſaid to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian* ; but generally affirmed to have been planted by thoſe of *Rhodes* and *Attica* ; miſtakingly call'd *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis Civitas*, or the City of the Sun. On the ſite hereof then decayed and ruinous, (the Town having been deſtroyed by *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King, in his late Wars againſt the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his Victory over the Pirates ; who not only Lorded it over the Seas, and conſequently obſtructed Trade and Merchandize, but waſted and ſpoiled the Villages of *Italy* it ſelf. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary Puniſhment on the Ringleaders, with the reſt, peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoyning, allowing them competent poſſeſſions, leſt Want and Neceſſity ſhould again enforce them to the like courſes An action truly commendable, and worthy ſo great a Captain, rather to take an occaſion of offending from the People, than after Offence done to puniſh them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, ſomewhat bitterly though perhaps not unjuſtly, inveigheth againſt the Laws of *England*, for ordaining Death to be the Puniſhment of Theft. *Cùm multò potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis eſſet proventus vitæ ; ne cuipiam ſit tam dira furandi primùm deinde pereundi neceſſitas.* Whereas (ſaith he) the Laws ought to make proviſion for putting Men into ſome orderly courſe of Life, and not let them run upon the neceſſity of Stealing firſt, and then being hanged for it. 2. *Tarſus*, the Birth-place of St. *Paul* the Apoſtle ; for that ſufficiently famous, were there nothing elſe to commend it to conſideration : But it was a Town withal of great Note and Conſequence, the *Metropolis* firſt of all *Cilicia*, and after the diviſion of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the privilege of *Roman* Citizens, Situate in a goodly Plain on the Banks of the *Cydmus*, and by ſome ſaid to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the laſt King of *Aſſyria*, it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarſus*. And 3. *Anchiala*, another City of this Country, near the Seaſide, and not far from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the ſame date, (if the ſaid Monument ſpeak truth) but neither of the ſame Fortune nor Countenance, that being utterly decayed, but *Tarſus* ſtill remaining of great Wealth and Strength. Much ſpoken of in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the Stories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarſians* to ingratiate themſelves with *Julius Cæſar*, would needs have their Country call'd *Juliopolis*, yet the old Name ſurvived the new, and it is to this day call'd *Terſia*, or *Teraſſa* by the vulgar *Grecians*; but *Hamſa* by the *Turks*; as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4. *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolomy*, a large Town, but unwalled, inſtead whereof defended by a very ſtrong Caſtle. Situate in a fruitful Soil, both for Wine and Corn, wherewith the Town is always furniſhed for the uſe of thoſe that are to travel over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three days Proviſion. 5. *Epiphania*, the Birth-place of *George* the *Arian*, Biſhop of *Alexandria*; thruſt on the World of late by ſome learned Men, (but of more Induſtry than Judgment) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6. *Mopſueſtia*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving Title to *Theodorus Mopſueſtenus*, Biſhop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Neſtorian* Hereſies, in the time of St. *Chryſoſtom*. The City otherwiſe of good Note, and of great Conſequence, in the courſe of the *Roman* Wars, deſcribed at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Iſſus*, upon a ſpacious Bay, call'd hence *Sinus Iſſicus*, near the borders of *Syria*; memorable for the great Battle here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handful (in compariſon) of his *Macedonians*, and that vaſt Army of *Darius*, (himſelf there in perſon) conſiſting of 600000 undiſciplin'd *Aſians*; whereof ſo many loſt their Lives, that the dead Bodies ſeemed to have buried the Ground; for, partly by the unskilfulneſs of the Commanders, who choſe ſo ill a place to fight in, that they could make no uſe of their mighty Numbers; and partly by the effeminateneſs of the *Aſian* Soldiers, unable to endure the Charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Perſians*, 40000 of them being taken Priſoners, amongſt them the Wives and Daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the Story. A Victory which aſſured *Alexander* of his former Purchaſes, and opened a way unto the reſt: The *Perſians* not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the Bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria*, and *Egypt* to his former Conqueſts. Of ſo great Conſequence is one full Victory to the loſing and getting of a Kingdom. This Town it ſelf now call'd *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it ſtandeth, *Golfo di Aiazzo*. 8. *Alexandria*, built by Command of the Conqueror near the place of Battle, commodiouſly for Trade, as upon the Sea, but otherwiſe in a Fenny and Boggy Soil, which makes the Air there to be very unwholſom to Men not uſed to it: little now remaining, but a few Houſes on the Sea-ſhore built of Straw and Mud, hardly affording it the Reputation of a ſorry Village, and would not long continue ſuch, but that it is the neareſt Haven to the Town of *Aleppo*, (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the reſort of ſome *Chriſtian* Factors, whoſe Houſes are of Clay and Timber; but of them not many. The Town at firſt call'd *Alexandria*, as before was ſaid, diminiſhed firſt to *Alexandretta*, now call'd *Scanderone*. 9. *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexander*'s Foundations, ſo named in memory of his great Victory before mention'd. 10 *Amaverza*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11. *Heraclea*, mention'd by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well-cultivated Plain, at the Foot of Mount *Taurus*; a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and diſtant from *Adana* towards the Northweſt about three days Journey. But I find no ſuch Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolomy*, or any other of the Ancients. 12. *Scandeloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aſpera*, or that part of *Cilicia* which lyeth towards *Pamphylia*, heretofore with the adjoyning Territory govern'd as a State diſtinct, when all the reſt of this Country was under the Kings of *Caramania*; againſt whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan*, had preſerved his Liberties, by the aſſiſtance of the Knights of *Rhodes*, and the Kings of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* Kingdom was ſubdued by *Bajazet*, he made ſo good Conditions for himſelf, that he had other Lands and Eſtates in the *Leſſer Aſia* aſſigned to him in exchange for this; and ſo ſurrender'd this to the Will of the Conqueror.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of *Tarſhiſh*, the Son of *Javan*, by whom, or ſome of his Poſterity, to preſerve his Memory, the City of *Tarſus* was firſt built. Increaſed in tract of time by ſome new Colonies out of the neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the moſt part the Fortunes of it; ſucceſſively together ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining Fortunes of the Houſe of *Seleucus* they began to ſtand upon their own Legs; and might have continued longer in ſo good a poſture, had they not hearkened to ill Councils. Tempted by *Mithridates* to joyn with him againſt the *Romans*, of whoſe Greatneſs all the Eaſtern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring Men, they began, together with the *Pamphylians*, to infeſt the Seas. At firſt they ventured no further than the Shores adjoyning. But after emboldned with Succeſs, and finding that the *Romans* were ſufficiently embroyled in *Domeſtick* troubles, and a ſharp War with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coaſts of *Greece*, and in fine, of *Italy* it ſelf; *Publius Servilius*, the *Proconſul*, firſt employed againſt them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good Fortune, ſet upon them in their Harbours and retiring-places. In which purſuit he not only took from them *Phaſelis*, a ſtrong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their beſt and ſtrongeſt *Receptacles*; but waſting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Iſaurus*, the moſt defenſible Town thereof, which he took and ranſacked. No ſooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eaſtern Seas with their Frigots, *Brigantines*, and other light *Piratical* Veſſels, inſomuch that *Pompey* himſelf thought it to be an Action not unbecoming his Greatneſs to undertake the War againſt them. And he purſued it to ſuch purpoſe, that having Armed 500 Sail of all ſorts, and ſtored his Ships with 130000 Men, he ſet upon them all at once; and in the ſpace of one ſole Month made an end of the War. An Action not ſufficiently to be wondred at, if we conſider either the ſpeedineſs of it, done in ſo little time as a Month; or the cheapneſs of the Victory, purchaſed without the loſs of one *Roman* Veſſel; or finally, the importance and conſequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infeſt the Seas; and all *Cilicia* ſubjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards diſpoſed of, hath been ſhewn already. After this they did very good Service unto *Pompey* in his War againſt *Cæſar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aid.

> Atque *Cilix* juſta, nunc non *Pirata*, *carinâ*
>
> *And the reformed* Cilician *now*
> *No* Pirate, *in his Fleet did row.*

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conqueror; but generally ſo tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the firſt *Proconſuls*, or Lord Deputies which were ſent to govern them; that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province; ſave that the *Panthers* (ſome of which, one of his Friends had prayed him to ſend to *Rome*, for the adorning of his Triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphilia*. At the firſt Conqueſt by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campeſtrem* and *Trachæam*, as was ſaid before; of which *Campeſtris* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aſpera*, or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Veſpaſian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the ſucceeding Emperors, on ſome reaſons of State (if not thoſe intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being encreaſed, (though the Bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole had been divided into three; that is to ſay, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campeſtris* wholly; *Cilicia ſe-*

cunda, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aſpera*; and *Iſauria* taking up the Mountainous part of this laſt Diviſion. Laid by the Emperor *Conſtantine* to the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*; and conſequently ſubject in ſpiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis* had his uſual Reſidence. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire, it was conquer'd by the *Saracens* in the time of *Mubavæas*, or *Mnavi* the ſixth *Caliph*. Continuing under their Command till their Declination, it was recover'd by the *Greek*, or *Eaſtern* Emperors, and from them conquer'd by the *Turks* in the courſe of their Victories. But the firſt race of *Turkiſh* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the Second, it was part of the new Kingdom of the *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the deſtruction of that Line by *Bajazet* the Second, *Anno* 1486, by whom incorporated with the reſt of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Thus having made our Progreſs over all the *Provinces* of the *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſhewn how every one of them was made ſubject to the *Turkiſh* Tyranny: We muſt next draw down the Succeſſion of ſuch *Turkiſh* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquer'd by the Princes of the Houſe of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themſelves Maſters of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, and following their Succeſſes into *Syria* alſo, fell to a breach amongſt themſelves. For making up whereof it was condeſcended unto by *Axan*, the then *Perſian* Sultan, that *Melocb* and *Ducat*, two of his diſcontented Kinſmen, ſhould be infeoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and their ſeveral Territories, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, poſſeſſed at that time of moſt part of *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and ſome of the adjoining Provinces. It was alſo then agreed upon, that a third, but nearer Kinſman, call'd *Cutlu Moſes*, another of the Leaders of the oppoſite Faction, ſhould have leave to conquer for himſelf, whatſoever he could win from the *Chriſtian* Princes: And he accordingly being furniſhed with a competent Army, ſubdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Aſia*, with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in *Aſia Minor*. Which, and the reſt of their Affairs, take here in the enſuing Catalogue of

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family.

1075. 1. *Cultu Moſes*, Nephew to *Tangrolipix*, the firſt *Perſian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bythinia*.

2. *Solyman*, Son of *Cultu Moſes*, for a while diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, in their firſt paſſage towards the *Holy Land*, An. 1097; the *Northern* parts of which by thoſe Chriſtians were reſtored to the *Grecian* Empire, never recovered afterwards by the Kings of this Houſe.

3. *Mahomet*, the Son of *Solyman*, recover'd ſome part of his Eſtates in the *Leſſer Aſia*; but outed of them, and ſubdued by

4. *Muſat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium*, for the Kings of *Damaſcus*; but of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, who was thereby poſſeſſed of all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

5. *Caliſaſtlan*, the Son of *Muſat*, (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces) wreſted *Amaſia*, and *Ancyra*, from his Brother *Jagupaſan*; *Sebaſtia*, and *Cæſaria*, from his Brother *Dodune*; which with their ſeveral Territories were bequeathed unto them by the Will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperor *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.

6. *Reucratine*, the third Son of *Caliſaſtlan*, having diſpoſſeſt his three Brethren, *Muſat*, *Carpatine*, *Caicoſrobes*, of the Eſtates left them by ther Father, became ſole Monarch of all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*. In the latter end of whoſe Reign, *Occata*, the *Tartarian Cham*, having driven the *Turks* out of *Perſia*, many of them under the Conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, joyned themſelves to their Country-men here, with whoſe help they won *Cilicia* from the *Grecian* Emperors, who in the Reign of *Calo Johannes*, (the *Turks* being then embroiled by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*) had not long before regained it; and after the deceaſe of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole Eſtate.

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor*, of the Race of *Aladine*.

7. *Aladine*, deſcended in a direct Line from *Cuſſanes*, the laſt *Turkiſh* Sultan in *Perſia*, having with many of his Nation ſeated himſelf in *Cilicia*, firſt made *Sebaſtia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief Seat or Reſidence; which, after the Death of *Reucratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the ancient Regal City of the former Kings

8. *Azalide*, by ſome call'd *Azadine*, eldeſt Son of *Aladine*, waſted the moſt part of his Reign in Wars with his Brother *Jathatine*, whom at laſt he forced into Exile.

9. *Jathatine*, on the Death of his Brother, poſſeſſeth the Kingdom, ſlain afterwards in ſingle Combat by *Theodorus Laſcaris*, Emperor of the *Greeks* at *Nice*.

10. *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in Exile; the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vaſſals unto the *Tartarian*.

11. *Maſut*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family (but whether the Sons of the ſecond *Jathatine*, I am not able to ſay) ſubſtituted in his place, as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.

12. *Aladine* II. Son of *Cei-cubades*, ſucceeded his Father in the Kingdom, but as Vaſſal and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whoſe Death, leaving no Iſſue of his Body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongſt them his Dominions. To *Sarachan* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarchan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the reſt of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greateſt part of the *Greater Myſia*, from him call'd *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Caraſus*, the *Leſſer Phrygia*, with the reſt of *Myſia*, from him denominated *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa Illi*; to the Family of the *Iſendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lieth next to *Bythinia*. There were alſo leſſer *Toparchies*, or Subdiviſions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a ſecond of *Amaſia*, a third of *Amiſus*, a fourth of *Scandeloro*, beſides many others. But the main Body of the Eſtate was ſeized by *Caraman*, who for his ſhare had the whole Provinces of *Lycia Lycaonia*, *Piſidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the greateſt part of *Caria*, (the reſt of it appertaining to the Prince of *Menteſia*) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and ſome Towns in *Phrygia*, continuing in his Family for as many Deſcents (as either of the former had held before) in great Power and Luſtre, under

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor*, of the Houſe of *Caraman*.

13. *Caraman*, the firſt raiſer of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the firſt King of that Race.

14. *Aladine* Son of *Caraman*, and Son-in law of *Amurath*, the firſt of the Houſe of *Ottoman*, by whom ſubdued, but pardoned, and reſtored

red unto his Eſtate, on the humble intreaties of his Wiſe.

15. *Aladine* II. Son of the former, ſubdued by *Bajazet* the Firſt, and hanged by *Tertumaſes*, one of *Bajazet*'s great Commanders.

16. *Mahomet*, Son of *Aladine* the Second, recovered his Kingdom on the Death of *Bajazet*, vanquiſhed and led Captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon, and vanquiſhed by *Mahomet* the Son of *Bajazet*, redeemed his Peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally ſlain at the Siege of *Attalia*.

17. *Ibrahim*, the Son of *Mahomet*, and Son-in-law of *Amurath* the Second, againſt whom unadviſedly raiſing War, he was forced to ſubmit, and become his *Tributary*: After whoſe Death, rebelling againſt *Mahomet* the *Great*, he was then alſo vanquiſhed, and a Reconciliation made betwixt them.

18. *Ibrahim* II. by ſome call'd *Pyramus*, the Son of *Ibrahim* the Firſt, ſupported *Zemes*, Brother of *Bajazet* the Second in his War againſt him; for which *Bajazet* having ſettled his Affairs, invaded and ſubdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in Battle, and ſo united that State unto the reſt of the Dominions of the Houſe of *Ottoman* in 1396. The ſtrange Succeſſes of which Houſe, from the firſt riſing of it to theſe preſent times, ſhall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation firſt attempted and atchieved the Conqueſt of *Perſia*, and which only of all their large Poſſeſſions doth retain any thing of their Name. In the mean time we will ſurvey the Iſlands of this *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſo proceed to their Poſſeſſions in the *Greater*, as they lie before us.

See the Catalogue of the *Sultans* of *Lyaconia* above.

19. The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES*.

The Province of the *Aſian Iſles* comprehendeth all the Iſlands in *Aſia Minor*, from the Mouth of the *Helleſpont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one; united firſt into a Province by the Emperor *Veſpaſian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Aſian Dioceſe*; and afterwards together with the Province of the *Helleſpont*, and that of *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo call'd, making up the peculiar or exempt Juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Thoſe of moſt conſideration are, 1. *Tenedos*. 2. *Lesbos*. 3. *Chios*. 4. *Samos*. 5. *Coos*. 6. *Icaria*. 7. *Patmos*. 8. *Claros*. 9. *Carpathos*. 10. *Rhodes*. Others of leſs Note having nothing memorable but their Names, are ſcarce worth the naming.

1. *Tenedos*, is ſituate at the Mouth of the *Helleſpont*, over-againſt the noted Promontory call'd of old *Sigeum*, (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, from which diſtant not above five Miles, the Iſle it ſelf in Circuit no more than Ten, ſwelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level; in both producing as good Wines as the beſt of *Greece*. It took name, as the general Tradition was, from *Tenes* the Son of *Cycnus*, King of a little City in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, who being falſly accuſed by his Stepdame, for ſolliciting her to that inceſtuous mixture which ſhe had violently importuned, and he as piouſly refuſed, was by the Command of his Father put into a Cheſt, expoſed to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculouſly preſerved. Here for a time he is ſaid to Reign, with great Commendation for his Juſtice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been ſlain by the Hand of *Achilles*; of whom therefore it was not lawful to make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples thereof. But *Bochartus* caſting off all this as an old Wives Fable, will have it ſo call'd from *Tin-edum* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Red-clay*, which the Potters made uſe of in their Earthen Veſſels. A Town it had of the ſame name with the Iſland, in which a Temple ſacred to *Apollo Smintheus*; and another call'd *Aſterion*, ſituate near a little River well ſtored with *Crab-Fiſh*, whoſe Shells were made in the form of an Axe, or Hatchet. From which Town, as the Iſlanders have in ſome Authors the name of *Aſterii*; ſo from the other Circumſtance, they are ſaid to have the ſtamp of an Hatchet on their Coin, or Money. Memorable for an old Cuſtom obſerved amongſt them, which was, That at the back of the Judge there always ſtood a Man with an Axe advanced, as well to terrifie the Witneſſes from giving falſe Evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a falſe Sentence upon the Evidence: Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia ſecuris*. More memorable for the final deſtruction of *Troy* which was plotted here; the *Grecians* withdrawing their Forces hither as if gone in earneſt; but from hence ſetting Sail again to ſurpriſe the Town, when they ſaw their Plot had took effect. And ſo I leave it with that Character which the Poet gives it:

> *Eſt in conſpectu* Tenedos, *notiſſima famâ*
> *Inſula, dives opum* Priami *dum Regna manebant:*
> *Nunc tantùm ſinus, & ſtatio male-fida carinis.*

In English *thus*:

> In ſight of *Troy* an Iſland ſtands, well known,
> Call'd *Tenedos*; Rich, and of great Renown,
> Whilſt *Priam's* Kingdom flouriſh'd; now (they ſay)
> Grown a poor Road, for Ships an unſafe Bay.

This Iſland being taken by the *Venetians* in the War of *Candy*, and fortify'd, very much incommoded the Trade of *Conſtantinople* for ſome years; but in the Year 1657, the *Turks* recover'd it again.

2. *Lesbos*, the largeſt of the *Aſian* Iſles, is diſtant from the main Land of *Troas* about ſeven Miles, 168 in compaſs; reckon'd the Seventh in bigneſs of the *Mediterranean*, which *Ariſtotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, ranketh in this order following, Τῶν δὲ αἱ μέγ. ἀξιόλογοι, Σικελία, ϗ Σαρδοὶ, ϗ Κύρνος, ϗ Κρήτη, ϗ Ἔμβοια, ϗ Κύπρος, ϗ Λέσβος. That is to ſay, The moſt conſiderable of theſe, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, *Crete*, *Eubœa*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameleſs Poet in *Euſtathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Ancients, vary in ordering of the reſt, according as their Information, or Phancies let them; yet *Lesbos* comes in the ſeventh place conſtantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it call'd *Lesbos*, from *Esbuith*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying Seven; contracted firſt to *Esbu*, by leaving out the laſt Syllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough fetch'd, and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies; this Iſland being reckoned in the ſeventh place for no other reaſon, but becauſe it lay further off, and moſt North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their Account, and not any Myſtery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the Son of *Lapythus*, who married *Methymna*, the Daughter of *Macarius*, Prince hereof; from which *Macarius*, it had ſometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly call'd from *Mitylene*, another of the Daughters of the ſaid *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole Family might be preſerved in this Iſland, *Methymna* alſo had a City call'd by her name, one of the principal of the Country.

The Country towards the Weſt and South, reported to be mountainous and ſomewhat barren; the reſt level and fruitful. Plentiful of excellent Corn, and abounding

ing in delicious Wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambroſia*, the Liquor of the gods, as the Poets Fable; affording alſo plenty of Sheep, and ſtore of Horſe, theſe laſt couragious and ſtrong, though but low of Stature. More memorable for the eminent Perſons which it hath produced, as 1. *Sappho*, an *Heroick* Woman, whoſe Invention was the *Sapphick* Verſe; and therefore call'd the *Tenth Muſe*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *ſeven Wiſemen of Greece*. 3. *Theophraſtus*, that notable Phyſician and Philoſopher. 4. *Alcæus*, the ſucceſſor of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyrical* Poeſie; and 5. *Arion*, the Muſician, who was ſo perfect on his *Harp*, that being caſt into the Sea playing on that Inſtrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his Back, and wafted him ſafe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole Story unto *Periander*, atteſted by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by ſome rejected as a Poetical Fiction; yet paſt all doubt, the Man was not only an excellent *Muſician*, but an eminent *Poet*, the firſt inventer of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the Verſe call'd *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns herein, 1. *Lesbos*, ἀφ' ἧς ὅλη ἡ νῆσος Λέσβος ἐλέγετο, from whom (ſaith *Stephanus*) the whole Iſland had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Methymna*, ſo named from *Mithymna*, one of the Daughters of *Macarius*, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, ſo nam'd from the other Daughter, and Wife of *Lesbus*, now the chief City of the Iſland; ſeated on a *Peninſula*, looking towards the main Land, ſtrong by Nature, and ſortified by Art; enjoying on either ſide a commodious Haven, that on the South moſt fit for Gallies, the other capable of Ships of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent Buildings, and ſweetned with variety of Delights and Pleaſures. Little now left of it ſince ſubdued by the *Turks*, but a ſtrong Caſtle manned with an able Gariſon, and a well-ſtored *Arſenal* for Gallies, kept here in readineſs to preſerve thoſe Seas from *Pirates*, with which much infeſted. (From this Town the Iſland is now call'd *Metellino*.) But the two firſt long ſince decayed, and grown out of knowledge; thoſe of moſt note next *Mitylene* are, 4. *Veſilica*. 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Caſtel-Gera*; all of late days, and therefore of no obſervation in point of Story. This Iſland payeth 18000 Pieces of Eight yearly to the Port for its *Carraeth*, or Tribute.

The Iſland was firſt inhabited by the *Pelaſgians*, conducted hither by *Zantus*, the Son of *Triopus*, whence nam'd *Pelaſgia*: Afterwards by ſome *Ionians*, and People of ſundry Nations, planted here by *Macarius*, (the Father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*) who by his Prudence, and the Reputation of his Juſtice, obtained a kind of Sovereignty over the neighbouring Iſlands. *Leſbus*, the Son of *Lapythus*, arriving here with his Family, married *Methymna*, and had the Iſland for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Iſland conſequently call'd by her name. Made ſubject to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponneſian* War (when almoſt all *Greece* banded againſt that City) they revolted from it, and were ſo ſtraightly beſieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they ſubmitted unto Mercy. The General ſends to *Athens* to know what ſhould be done with the *Mitylenians*: Anſwer was ſent, That he ſhould put them to the Sword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, ſent a Countermand. Theſe latter Meſſengers made no ſtay; but eating with one Hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene* juſt as *Paches* was reading the former Order, by this ſpeed prevented. So near were theſe miſerable People to a fatal deſtruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the reſt of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors; from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and ſome other of theſe Iſles, *Anno* 1124, by the *State* of *Venice*, upon a Quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperor. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperor *Baldwin*, and all the reſt of the *Ægean* added to their Portion; thoſe above-nam'd were again recover'd by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperor then reſiding at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335, the Emperor *Calo Johannes* gave it to *Franciſcus Cataluſius*, a noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his Siſters, for her Dower. By whoſe Poſterity enjoyed, till the year 1462, when *Mahomet* the *Great* incenſed againſt *Dominicus Cataluſius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder Brother, a Vaſſal and Tributary of his Empire, (thoſe Princes paying to the *Turk* an Annual Tribute of 4000 *Ducats*) but more for harbouring the *Pirates* of *Spain* and *Italy*, beſieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for ſo long it held) he conſtrained to ſubmit unto him, and therewith all the Iſland alſo. Some of the chief Families being removed unto *Conſtantinople*, upon ſome reaſons of State, the main Body of the People were permitted to remain here to Till the Land, and ſo continue to this day, with ſome few *Turks*, inconſiderable for their Strength or Numbers, intermixed among them.

3. *Chios*, the next to *Lesbos*, both in ſite and bigneſs, lieth oppoſite to the Shore of *Ionia*, from which diſtant not above four Leagues, is in compaſs about 126 Miles. So call'd, as ſome ſay, from *Chione*, a fair Nymph hereof, much ſought after by many Suters; as others ſay, from χιὼν a *Greek* word ſignifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are ſometimes cover'd. And ſome again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* Letter χ firſt got that name unto it ſelf, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Iſland. *Iſidore* in his *Origines* gives another reaſon, and will have it call'd ſo from a *Syriack* word ſignifying *Maſtick*, whereof there is plenty in this Iſle. *Chios Inſula* (ſaith he) *Syrâ linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi* Maſtyx *gignitur*; *Syri enim Maſtichen* Chion *vocant*. And were it ſo, that *Chios* in the *Syrick* did ſignifie *Maſtick*, there could no better reaſon be aſſigned for the Name; this Iſland being more furniſhed with that Commodity, than any place in the World beſides. A Gum it is, growing out of the *Lentisk* Tree, which in the Months of *July* and *Auguſt* the Inhabitants force out of thoſe Trees, by making with ſharp Inſtruments a deep inciſion into the Bark of them; out of which the Juice dropping, is afterwards hardned like a Gum, and in the *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultany* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*; and therefore the felling of the *Lentisk*-Tree, at the time of the diſtilling of this precious Juice, interdicted, on the Penalty of loſing the right Hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Iſland are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, ſome *Quarries* of moſt excellent *Marble*, a certain green Earth like the ruſt of Braſs; ſome Silks and Cotton-wool, but ſhort in worth to thoſe of *Smyrna*, and other places; Honey as good as any the World affordeth, and a vein of moſt delicious Vines, thoſe ſpecially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now call'd *Amiſta*. Of which *Pliny* gives this Commendation, *In ſumma gloria fuere* Thaſium, Chiumque, *ex* Chio, *quod* Arviſium *vocant*. Of all Wines (ſaith he) thoſe of *Thaſus*, and *Chios*, are of beſt eſteem; and of thoſe of *Chios*, the *Arviſian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the *ſuperlative* Degree, and calleth the Wine hereof, οἶνον ἄριστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν, incomparably the beſt of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, ſpeaking of an *Epicurean* or voluptuous Lives, affirms, That he conceiv'd it the ſupreme Felicity, Λαΐ δ' συγκαθεύδειν, καὶ πίνειν οἶνον Ἀριούσιον (*to lie with* Lais, *and drink theſe* Arvilian *Wines*.) Here are alſo infinite ſtore of Partridges, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in Flocks like Geeſe, in the Streets and *Greenſwarths* of their Villages; ſome little Boys or Girl driving them to Field, and calling them home again with a *Whiſtle*, when the Night comes on.

The Iſland divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher*, call'd *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and Weſt, hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful Vales and pleaſant Rivers: The *Lower*, oppoſite unto it, call'd *Catamorea*, ſwelled here and there with gentle Hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisk*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoeſe*, and (ſince their Conqueſt by that People) ſome few *Turks* amongſt them. Which mixture with the *Genoeſe*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity; the better ſort of People both in Apparel and Manners coming near the *Genoeſe*, once the Lords of this Iſland; the common ſort continuing their old *Greek* humour of Mirth and Jollity (not ſenſible of the *Turkiſh* Thraldom under which they ſuffer) with as much licentiouſneſs as ever. And though this intermixture hath ſo corrupted their Language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly ſpoken, but a compound Tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions ſtill diſtinct and ſeparate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it ſix and thirty Towns and Villages; the principal whereof are, 1. St. *Elier*, in the North. 2. *Pigrine*, in the midſt hereof; and 3. *Chios* it ſelf, now call'd *Sio* (as is all the Iſland) one of the ſeven Cities contending for the Birth of *Homer*, whoſe Sepulchre they pretend to ſhew in an old Caſtle near the Mount and Town of St. *Elier*, (which, were it his, would be a better Argument for his Burial here, than it is for his Birth.) The Town ſituate in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful part of the Country, to which both Induſtry and Art have given great Advantage; there being few Houſes without Orchards of excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and a kind of Fig, much praiſed for their quickneſs of taſte, by the ancient *Romans*. It ſtandeth on the Eaſtſide, oppoſite to the Shores of *Aſia*, ſtretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the Weſtſide backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did ſtand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwiſe ſecure, once entred; and for directing of the entrance, a Lanthorn advanced by the *Genoeſe*, (when Lords hereof) to give Light by Night, and ſerve for a Land-Mark in the Day. Fortified on the Northſide by a large and ſtrong Caſtle, environed with deep Ditches, well furniſhed with Munition, and a *Turkiſh* Gariſon. And becauſe the Iſland is on all parts acceſſible, not naturally fortified with Rocks and dangerous Precipices as many others, beſides this Caſtle, they have all along the Coaſt ſmall *Watch-Towers*, which with Smoak by day, and Fire by Night, give notice unto one another of ſuch Veſſels as they ſee approaching: The Guards about the Caſtle being ſo intent alſo about their Charge, that every minute of the Night there goeth a word about the Walls, to declare their vigilancy.

The *Chians* were at firſt a *Free People*, governing themſelves as a Commonwealth; and by reaſon of their many Harbours, able to furniſh out a Navy of 80 Sail, which gave them the *Lordſhip* of thoſe Seas, till eclipſed by the *Rhodians*. Beſieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus*, with his utmoſt Power; who when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Maſters Wives, if they would rebel againſt their Maſters. And when this Policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of Indignation, he gave over the Siege. At laſt they became ſubject to the *Romans* with the reſt of *Greece*, and followed punctually the ſame change of Fortunes, as did thoſe of *Lesbos*, which we have ſpoken of before; till given by *Andronicus Palæologus*, one of the laſt *Greek* Emperors, to the *Juſtiniani*, a noble *Genoeſe* Family, aſſiſtant to him in his Wars. Under them it continued *Tributary* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themſelves Maſters of *Conſtantinople*) to whom they annually paid Eighteen thouſand *Ducats*, till the Year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, picking a Quarrel with them for ſome ſuſpected Correſpondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greateſt *Baſſa*'s, to ſeize the Iſland. And he accordingly preſenting himſelf before the City with a ſtrong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did ſo aſtoniſh and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other ſummons than the ſight of the Navy, they ſurrendred themſelves unto his diſpoſing, upon *Eaſter-Day*, being the ſame day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkiſh*, all ſave their *Religion*, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times. This Iſland pays 18000 Pieces of Eight to the *Grand Signior* yearly for its Tribute. In the Year 1688, after *Smyrna* was ruin'd by an Earthquake, the *Engliſh* Factory removed to *Sio*. The Inhabitants of this Iſland enjoy greater Privileges than any *Greeks* in the *Grand Signior*'s Dominions, both as to their Religion and Civil Liberties. The chief City is well built after the *Genoeſe* manner, and is above two Miles in Circumference, and to the North ſtands a very ſtrong Caſtle. On each ſide of the City are many pleaſant Gardens, abounding with all ſorts of Fruit. The Houſes alſo are well built, and the Inhabitants moſtly *Greeks*, (but of the *Roman* Communion) who have ſeveral good Churches belonging to the *Jeſuits*, *Dominicans*, and *Capuchins*. All the *Maſtick* is now taken up for the *Grand Signior*; and what is not uſed by the Court, is ſold by his Officers to Merchants. *Ber. Randolph* in the preſent State of the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*.

4. *Samos* is on the South-Eaſt of *Chios*, diſtant above five Miles from the Shores of *Ionia*, about eighty, or eighty-ſeven in compaſs; environed for the moſt part, eſpecially in the North-Weſt, with inacceſſible Rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little uſe by reaſon of *Pirates* which infeſted thoſe Seas. The Soil ſufficiently enriched with moſt kinds of Fruits, abundantly plentiful of Oyl and Olives, but of Vines altogether unfurniſhed; which is the more to be admir'd, in regard all the Iſlands and Shores about it, produce them in ſo great a plenty. It ſtretcheth from the Eaſt to the Weſt; and on the South part of it ſtood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before ſpoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the reſt of the Iſland, now wholly deſolate in a manner, becauſe of the *Pirates*, and in moſt places very much overgrown with Woods; becoming thereby very uſeful to thoſe publick Enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the ſudden put a Ship to Sea, for purſuit of their *Robberies*. The chief Commodity it affordeth beſides thoſe above, is a *Medicinal Earth*, uſeful for *Chirurgery* and *Phyſick*; of which in former times were thoſe Veſſels made, call'd *Vaſa Samia*, in great requeſt amongſt the *Romans*.

Anciently it had the names of *Dryuſa*, *Anathemuſa*, *Melamphylus*, and *Cypariſſa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it ſtill retaineth. Memorable in old times for the Birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sybils*, hence call'd *Samia*; and finally, of the wiſe Man *Pythagoras* (a wiſer than any of the *ſeven wiſe Maſters* ſo renown'd amongſt them) who firſt brought Philoſophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a *free Commonwealth* of no ſmall eſteem, the Inſtitutes whereof are mention'd by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the ſeveral Commonwealths then being; afterwards made ſubject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a Man ſo fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any miſchances. Fearing leſt ſuch a long calm would bring on a tempeſt, he let fall into the Sea a moſt precious Ring, by him deſervedly eſteemed, that ſo it might be ſaid he had ſome Misfortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a Fiſh, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orantes* a *Perſian*, and brought to a miſerable Death. Leaving a notable Example, that Fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a ſharp Sting, hath always ſome miſery following in the train of a long concatenation of Felicity. From this time forwards it ran the ſame Fortune with the reſt of theſe Iſlands; ſubject ſucceſſively to the great *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5. *Icaria* (now call'd *Nicerea*, *Nicaria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the Weſtward of it, narrow, but extended out in length from Eaſt to Weſt; the whole compaſs ſeven and thirty Miles; Neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Iſlands, of old call'd *Melanthii*, now the *Fernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night eſpecially. Meanly inhabited at the preſent, tho' abounding in Paſturage, and yielding ſufficiency of Corn; Havenleſs, and therefore the leſs frequented, yet that defect ſupply'd by commodious Roads. In former times call'd *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Iſchſiæſa*; which Name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*, who juſtly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandar* to his Wife in her loves with *Taurus*, ſecretly with *Icarus* his Son, fled out of that Iſland. And becauſe he would be ſure to outſtrip the *Rowers* who purſued him, he added Sails unto his Boat, which it is ſaid he firſt invented. But *Icarus* coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new Device, clapped on too much Canvaſs, and bearing too great a Sail, was here caſt away. Hence the new Name both to this Iſland, and the Seas adjoyning to it, and the occaſion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting Wings upon his ſhoulders when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the Wax melted which his Wings were faſtned with, and ſo he periſhed in the Water. Of which thus *Ovid*:

> *Dum petit infirmis nimium ſublimia pennis*
> Icarius, Icariis *nomina fecit aquis.*

In Engliſh *thus*:

> Whilſt *Icarus* weak Wings too high did ſoar,
> He fell, and gave Name to th' *Icarian* Shore.

Nicaria lies 25 Miles South of *Sio*, and is in compaſs 70 Miles; it is Barren, Mountainous, and Rocky, and has not one Harbour for Ships, and ſo not capable of any Trade; the Inhabitants are ſo poor, that neither the *Turks* nor *Pirates* can get any thing that is conſiderable from them; yet they have excellent Winter Grapes, ſome Wine, but not good, and plenty of Goats, which is their chief Food. *Randolph.*

6. *Patmos*, now call'd *Palmoſa*, is ſituate on the South of the other two; a little Iſland not above 30 Miles in compaſs. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, eſpecially of Wheat and Pulſe; of other Commodities, and Fruits not ſo well provided. On one of theſe Mountains ſtands a Town of the ſame name with the Iſland; having on the top thereof a Monaſtery of *Greek Caloires*; and on the bottom a fair Haven, (I mean in reference to the Iſland). Forty ſail of Ships are ſaid to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in thoſe proviſions which the Soil affordeth not: The Soil about the Town being ſo incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on, or near it, but on ſuch Earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Iſland (as to others in other parts of the World) did the *Roman* Emperors uſe to confine Offenders. A Puniſhment laid by *Domitian*, on St. *John* the *Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the *Churches* of *Aſia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Iſland. And the Inhabitants by *Tradition* point unto an Houſe on the Northſide of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the *Cave* where it was revealed. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latins*. They alſo ſhew a dead Man's Hand, which they affirm to be his, the Nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (ſaith *Maginus*) claim it for the Hand of one of their *Prophets*. In the War of *Candy* the whole *Venetian* Fleet did uſually Winter in this Iſland, it having many and good Ports, by which means the Inhabitants grew Rich; but ſince the *Turks* and *Privateers* have reduced them to the ſame ſtate of Poverty with their Neighbours. *Randolph.*

7. *Claros*, another Iſland not far of, containing about 40 Miles in compaſs, well ſtored with commodious Harbours, but very Mountainous; ſome of thoſe Hills of ſuch an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Epheſus* in *Ionia*, (though diſtant at leaſt eighty Miles) may be eaſily ſeen. It is now call'd *Calamo*. Neighboured by *Lero*, (of old call'd *Ileron*) a little Iſland not above eighteen Miles in Circuit, but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furniſhing the neighbouring Countries with ſome ſtore of *Aloes*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckon'd by him amongſt his Honours, in his brags to *Daphne*; where he declares,

> ——— ——— *Mihi* Delphica *tellus*
> *Et* Claros, & Tenedos, Pataræaque *Regia ſervit*.

That is to ſay,

> The Folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,
> And Royal *Patara*, my Vaſſals are.

8. *Coos*, *Cos*, or *Cous*, for by all theſe Names it was call'd of old, is ſituate over-againſt *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægæan*; that is to ſay, in that part thereof which is call'd *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea ſo call'd, as ſome ſay, from one *Myrtilus*, Coachman, or *Charioter* of *OEnomaus*, who having betrayed his Race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his Reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* leſs probably conceived that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Iſland not far from *Eubœa*, a little too far off to extend its Name to the Shores of *Caria*. And therefore conſidering that *Lydia* anciently was call'd *Myrtus*, and that in thoſe times *Æolis* and *Ionia*, lying on this Sea, were accounted but as parts thereof, I think we may reſolve with more probability, that it derived this Name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea ſtands the Iſle of *Coos*, now call'd *Lange*, affording Sailers as they paſs by a moſt beautiful Proſpect, lying for the moſt part flat and level, but ſwelling towards the Eaſt with ſome graceful Mountains, out of which iſſue many ſweet and pleaſant Springs to refreſh the Iſland, which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypreſs*-Trees, *Turpentine*, and ſundry other, both delightful and Medicinal; but moſt eſpecially celebrated for thoſe rich Wines, which the good Fellows of *Rome* ſo much loved to quaff, call'd *Vinum Cos*. It is in compaſs 70 Miles, having a Town of the ſame Name, in the Suburbs whereof ſtood anciently the Temple of *Æſculapius*, famous and rich with the offering of thoſe, who having by his Aſſiſtance (as they ſuppoſed) recovered Health, came hither to make payment of their Vows, and expreſs their Gratitude. It is now fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held by a Garriſon of *Turks*; and beſides this, two Villages only in the Iſland, and both inhabited by *Greeks*. This Iſland exceeds *Rhodes* as much in Beauty, as it is in Quantity inferior to it; there are in it Woods of *Cyprus*-Trees, which the *Turks* will not ſuffer to be cut down. It has one large Town with a Caſtle near the Haven, which is ſecured with a good *Mole* kept well in Repair by the *Turks*, it being the place where all Ships paſſing between *Conſtantinople* and *Egypt* uſually touch, and ſo carefully guarded by Gallies, that no *Pirate* dares come near it. The *Turks* call this Iſland and Town *Stançoi*; the *Greeks Stincos*. Randolph.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæa*, and at laſt *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous Men who were here born, *viz.* of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Phyſick*, then almoſt decayed, who is hence call'd *Hippocrates Cous*. 2. *Simius*, a Phyſician alſo. 3. *Ariſton*, a *Peripatetick* Philoſopher. 4. *Philetas*, as good an Orator as a Poet. 5. *Nicias*, who for a time oppreſſed the liberty of this People; and 6. of *Apelles* the famous Painter; who to expreſs his Art in the Picture of *Venus*, (riſing naked out of the Sea) aſſembled together all the moſt beautiful Women of this Iſland, uniting in that piece their divided Perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Iſland, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Auguſtus*, and there dedicated to *Cæſar*, as the Mother of the *Julian* Family: The *Coans* in regard hereof, being eaſed of a great part of their annual Tributes. Not much leſs memorable for that fine thin Stuff (ſuch as now call'd *Tiffanies*) ſo much in uſe amongſt the chief Ladies of *Rome*; which at once ſhewed them cloathed and naked. *Perlucidâ utuntur veſte, ita, ut nude conſpici poſſint*, as my Author hath it. Theſe they call'd *Veſtimenta Coa*, and *Veſtes Coas*, ſo often mention'd by the Poets, eſpecially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis veſtis*, in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Cois*, in *Propertius*; *Sive erit in Cois*, ſaith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others alſo, too many, and too long to be added here. I paſs to

9. *Carpathos*, ſituate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Iſland, call'd hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleaſing Soil, full of difficult Mountains, but thoſe Mountains ſtored with Quarries of moſt excellent Marble. In Circuit about 60 Miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long ſince periſhed, that of *Carpathos* being ſtill remaining, and ſtill the principal of the Iſland; but now call'd *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the Shore, and every one of them furniſhed with ſome Port or Haven; but ſmall, and for the moſt part very unſafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*. It hath continued hitherto in the poſſeſſion of the State of *Venice*, (if not taken from them very lately) to whom being given with other of the Iſlands of theſe *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern Forces, it had the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almoſt all the reſidue were ſubdued by the *Turks*. The People *Greek*, of the Communion of that Church, notwithſtanding their ſubjection to a ſtatei of *Italy*. *Randolph* ſaith it is 80 Miles in compaſs, and has no ſecure Harbour except to the Eaſt, where the Town ſtands; the Iſland is not above a fourth part of it inhabited, and the People of it very poor, being much expoſed to the Inſults of the *Pirates*, which is a great ſign it is now under the *Turks*, as *Brandrand* ſaith, though I cannot find when it was reduced.

10. *Rhodes*, ſituate in the *Rhodian*, or *Carpathian* Sea, lieth over-againſt the Coaſt of *Lycia* in *Aſia Minor*, from which diſtant 20 Miles. Formerly call'd *Ophiuſa*, *Aſteria*, *Ethræa*, *Trinachia*, *Pæſſa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at laſt *Macaria*; it ſettled finally, and fortunately, in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roſes*, which the Soil produceth, *Rhodes* in that Language ſignifying a *Roſe*, the *Iſle of Roſes*, as it were; but, as the Poets ſay, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of theſe Seas, here deſloured by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the Daughters of *Apollo* begot on *Venus*; for ſo one them thus declareth:

Inſula Dicta Rhodos, *de Sole &* Cypride *nata eſt.*

Rhoda, from whom this Iſle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Iſland 140 Miles in compaſs, enriched with a moſt temperate Air, and fertil Soil, producing Fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent Paſtures, adorned with Trees which always do continue green: And in a word, ſo bleſt with the gifts of Nature, that it gave occaſion to the Fable of thoſe *Golden Showers*, which were once ſaid to have fallen upon it. The Wines hereof ſo excellent, and ſo rich of Taſte, that by the *Romans* they were uſed in their ſecond Courſes, or reſerved for the Sacrifices of the Gods, as too good for Mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cauſe of which perpetual flouriſhing, and continual ſpring, is to be aſcribed to the powerful influences of the Sun, ſo dearly cheriſhing this Iſland, or ſo much in love with it, that it is conſtantly affirmed, that no day paſſeth wherein he ſhineth not clearly on it, be the Air in all other places never ſo much overcaſt with Clouds, or obſcured by Miſts. Feigned for that cauſe to have been naturally a meer Mariſh, altogether uninhabitable, if not covered with Waters; till loved by *Phœbus*, and erected above the Waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we ſhall ſpeak anon; look we in the mean time on the places of moſt obſervation. 1. *Lindum*, (now *Lindo*, a petty Town, but formerly of more eſteem) of note in thoſe times for the Temple conſecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As alſo for the Birth of *Chares*, the *Architect* of the huge *Coloſſus*, whereof more preſently; but ſpecially for the Nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the *ſeven Wiſe-men* of *Greece*; the other ſix being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilon* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Melitum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mitylene*, ſeven Men of whom the *Grecians* moſt immenſely bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number; for which derided handſomly by *Lactantius*, an old *Chriſtian* Writer, who ſcoffs their Paucity, and calleth it a miſerable and calamitous Age, *In quo ſeptem ſoli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mærerentur*; in which there were no more than ſeven who deſerved to be accounted Men. 2. *Rhodes*, anciently, as now the chief City of it, the Iſland from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in latter times, depending on the Fortunes and Strength hereof. No place in elder times held ſuperior to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent Buildings, delightful Orchards, and other Excellencies. Situate on the Eaſt part of the Iſle, on the declining of an Hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a ſafe and common Haven; treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five ſtrong Bulwarks, beſides divers Sconces, and other Out-works; this Town, and *Famaguſta* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two ſtrongeſt Holds in the *Turkiſh* Empire. In former times, one of the principal *Univerſities* of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marſeilles*, *Tarſus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old *Academies* of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a moſt noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperor) did withdraw himſelf, when *Auguſtus* had declared his two Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs; pretending only a deſire to improve himſelf in the ways of *Literature*; whereas the true cauſe was his Envy at their Preferment. Honoured in thoſe times with that huge *Coloſſus*, one of the *ſeven Wonders* of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum* before-mention'd. Compoſed of Braſs, in height ſeventy *Cubits*, every Finger of it being as great as an ordinary Man; and conſecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Iſland. Twelve years in making, and having ſtood but 66 years, was pull'd down in an inſtant by an *Earthquake*, which terribly ſhook the whole Iſland. The *Rhodians* being forbid by an *Oracle*, to erect it again, (or poſſibly pretending ſuch an *Oracle* to ſave that charge) yet held the Braſs and other Materirls of it (in a manner) ſacred. Not medled with, nor ſacrilegiouſly purloined till *Mauvias*, the General of *Oſman*, the *Mahometan Caliph*, finding in himſelf no ſuch ſcruple of Conſcience, (after he had ſubdued this Iſland) made a Prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very Braſs of it. From this *Coloſſus* was the Iſland ſometimes call'd *Coloſſa*, and the people *Coloſſians*; not thoſe *Coloſſians* (as ſome have very vainly thought) to whom St. *Paul* writ his Epiſtle, thoſe being of *Coloſſe*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was alſo in this City anciently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many preſents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*, of both which People the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair eſteem; but the *God*, and the *good Wines* in greater. Towns of leſs note, are 3. *Villanova*. 4. *Ruſſicare*, and ſometimes others, but as little memorable.

This Iſland was firſt peopled by *Dodanim*, the Son of *Juvan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodanim*; miſtaking the *Hebrew* Letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh*, Letters ſo like as eaſily it might draw them to that miſtake. Finding this Iſland too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main of his People, paſſed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been ſaid. Thoſe which ſtaid here being miſtakingly call'd *Rhodians*, (or call'd ſo by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious Eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roſes* here growing) making the beſt uſe of their Haven, and other the advantages of their ſituation, became ſo expert in maritime Affairs, that by *Florus* they are ſtyled *Populus nauticus*, and that not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of Power and Government; holding for many years the Command of theſe Seas, and preſcribing Laws for the Reiglement of Navigation. Which being call'd the *Rhodian* Laws, became the general Rule for deciding *Marine* Cauſes, and ordering the Affairs of Sea, in all the Parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: And ſo continued till ſupplanted in theſe Weſtern parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearful of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themſelves unto the *Romans*, whom firſt they aided in their Wars againſt *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*; and afterwards in that alſo againſt *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this laſt Service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Aſian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his Compoſition; they became ſo faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Iſlands of the *Mediterranean* and *Ægæan* Seas revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their Strength at Sea, or of thoſe good Offices, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themſelves fit Men to adviſe their *Maſters*. Grown troubleſome by their frequent Interpoſitions, and loſing much of their Eſteem by ſuch *Impertinences*, they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*; whoſe Father they before oppoſed with their utmoſt Power. A change which *Paterculus* expreſſed with ſome Admiration. *Rhodii ipſi fideliſſimi antea* Romanis, *dubiâ jam fide proniores in* Regis *partes viſi ſunt*; as his Words there are But yet they held for them againſt *Mithridates*, as before was ſaid, and ſerved their turn on all Occaſions, until inſenſibly they betrayed their Liberty to the Power of their Friends, and of *Confederates* and *Allies*, became their *Vaſſals*. Made by *Veſpaſian* into a Province with the reſt of the Iſles; the Governor, or Preſident of that Province fixing here his Reſidence, as the chief of thoſe Iſlands; which gave the Title of *Metropolitan* to the Biſhop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Conſtantinople* after the Diviſion) till the Year 1124, when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperor, *John Ducas*, then reſiding at *Nice*, in 1227. Won from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, in 1283. The Knights of St. *John* of *Hieruſalem* being utterly driven out of *Aſia*, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel*, the then Emperor, who aided them in the Conqueſt, *Anno* 1308. Afterwards proving bad Neighbours to the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, whom they ceaſed not to infeſt upon all occaſions, they were many times in vain invaded; *Mahomet* the *Great*, famous for taking *Conſtantinople*, and the Empire of *Trabezond*, ſpending ſome time before their City, with both loſs and ſhame in 1480. At the laſt, *Anno* 1522, it was again beſieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamus Villerius* being then great Maſter, who did as much in defence hereof, as Policy and Puiſſance could extend unto. But Multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Chriſtmas-day*, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conqueror; though poſſibly he might have ſaid, (as *Pyrrhus* once ſaid of a like Victory againſt the *Romans*) that *ſuch another Victory would quite have undone him*. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by ſome *Jews* baniſh'd out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: The *Chriſtians* which are licenced to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not ſuffered upon pain of Death, to ſtay there all Night. And ſo we paſs from the Iſlands of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, to the Iſle of *Cyprus*, a near Neighbour unto *Anatolia*; but no Member it: The reſt of that *Dioceſe*, and thoſe Seas, as 11. *Poſſidium*. 12. *Arceſine*. 13. *Bugiales*. 14. *Minyas*. 15. *Sirne*. 16. *Ceſi*, and the reſt, yielding but little matter of Obſervation beſides their Names. The *Turks* have to this day ſo great a veneration for the Valour of the Knights of *Rhodes*, that they preſerve their Houſes as they left them, with all the Arms, Statues, Paintings, and Inſcriptions; and the Walls of the City are put, and maintain'd in the ſame State they were before the Siege. The Knights in the Year 1530, paſs'd to *Malta*, where they ſtill reſide. Moſt of the Inhabitants tranſporting themſelves to *Italy*, *Candy*, and other places, whereupon the *Turks* were forced to grant great Privileges to thoſe who would ſettle here, which in a ſhort time made it very Populous. The Walls of the City (ſaith *Randolph*) are now in very bad Repair.

OF

OF

CYPRUS.

C*yprus* is ſituate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt two hundred Miles, in breadth ſixty; the whole compaſs reckoned five hundred and fifty. Diſtant about ſixty Miles from the rocky Shores of *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main Land of *Syria*; towards which it ſhooteth it ſelf out with a long ſharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main Land, from which rent in former time by a violent Earthquake, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, and worn unto this narrowneſs by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed his Name, or at leaſt had more Names on the By than this. Call'd at firſt *Cethin*, or *Cethinia*, from *Ketim* the Son of *Javan*, who firſt planted it. *Ceraſtis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thruſting like *Horns* into the Sea, (as the word intimates in the *Greek.*) 3. *Amathuſia*. 4. *Paphia*. 5. *Salaminia*: Theſe three laſt from the principal Towns in thoſe parts hereof. 6. *Macaria* from the fruitfulneſs and felicities of it. Beſides theſe, it hath in ſome times had theſe By-names alſo; as 7. *Aſperia*, from the roughneſs of the Soil. 8. *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9. *Ærosa*, from the Mines of Braſs which abound therein. 10. And finally, all thoſe forgotten and laid by, it ſetled at laſt in the name of *Cyprus*. So call'd, ſay ſome, from the abundance of *Cypreſs*-Trees, with which moſt plentifully provided; as others, from *Cryptos*, a *Greek* word, ſignifying *Concealed*, or hidden, becauſe ſometimes concealed by the Surges from the Eye of Sailers; but moſt improbably ſaid by others to take Name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodiſia*; whereas indeed ſix hundred years before *Cyrus* his Birth, we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, ἀπὸ Κύπρου τῆς θυγατρὸς Κινύρου, from *Cyrus*, Daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* Wars; though in my mind the firſt comes neareſt to the truth, the *Cypreſs*-Tree not only growing here in ſo great abundance, but being anciently peculiar in a manner to this Iſland only.

But on what ground ſoever it was call'd *Cyrus*, certain I am, it had the name of *Ceraſtis* upon very good reaſon; no Iſland or Region that I know of, (for the bigneſs of it) thruſting out ſo many ſharp Promontories. For on the Weſt there is, 1. The Promontory call'd *Acamas*, now *Capo St. Piſano*. 2. *Depranum*, now *Trepano* and *Melechia*. 3. *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South. 4. *Phrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5. *Curias*, or *Cape della Catte*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7. *Throni*, or *Capo Pilæ*. On the Eaſt, 8. *Pendalium*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andræa*. And on the North, 10. *Coronyon*, now *Capo Cornochiette*, beſides ſome others of leſs note. Some of the Poets give another reaſon of this Name, as that *Venus* offended with the People of *Amathus*, for ſacrificing their Gueſts, ſhould turn them into *horned* Cattel, *Unde etiam nomen traxere* Ceraſtæ, as it is in *Ovid*, but that meerly fabulous; ſomewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentiſh Long-tails*. Yet ſo far we may joyn with *Ovid*, that the Iſland was not only call'd *Ceraſtis*, but that the People were alſo call'd *Ceraſtæ*, of which there wants not proof from ſome other Authors; with which we need not trouble our ſelves, that name being altogether worn out of uſe, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common Speech. Nor is it a matter of more ſtrangeneſs, that *Cyprus* ſhould be call'd ſo by the *Grecians* from its abundance of *Cypreſs*-Trees, anciently and originally peculiar to this Iſland, as before was noted; than that the ſame *Grecians* ſhould give unto the neighbouring Iſland the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roſes*; or to the neighbouring Iſland the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm*-Trees; the word ſo ſignifying in that Language.

It is ſituate under the fourth *Climate*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is no more than fourteen Hours and a half; and for that cauſe the Air in Summer-time exceeding hot and ſoultry: The Soil moiſtned with ſome few Brooks, meriting rather the name of Torrents than Rivers, which being generated for the moſt part by Rain-water, are not ſeldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; inſomuch, that in the Reign of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, this Iſland was for 36 years together almoſt utterly forſaken, no Rain falling all that time. Theſe inconveniencies notwithſtanding, it is ſtored with ſuch plenty of all things, that without the help of any Foreign Nation, it is of it ſelf able to build and rig a tall Ship from the Keel to the Top-ſail, and ſo put it to Sea furniſhed with all things needful for a Voyage, or a Sea-Fight. It alſo aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Allom, Verdegreece, all ſorts of Metals, ſtore of Salt, Grograins, and other Commodities, whereupon this Iſland was once call'd *Macaria* (i. e. *Happy.*) By reaſon of which wonderful affluence of all Neceſſaries, and that variety of Pleaſures (even to Senſuality) which the place afforded, it was anciently conſecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence call'd *Venus Cypria*, and *Dea Cypri*: *Sic te diva potens Cypri*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

> *Feſta dies* Veneris, *totâ celeberrima* Cypro,
> Venerat; *ipſa ſuis aderat* Venus *aurea feſtis*.

> *Venus* Feaſts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,
> And *Venus* with her Preſence grac'd the ſame.

The People hereof are Warlike, ſtrong and nimble, of great civility and hoſpitality to their Neighbours, and love to Strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Ægypt* and the adjoyning Countries, drew themſelves together, and choſe one *Alexander* for their Captain, under whoſe Conduct they entred into this Iſland, and laid it deſolate, killing in it 240000 Perſons of all Sexes and Ages; not without much Bloodſhed vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Lucius* the Emperor's Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Iſland; but come he hither voluntarily, or by force of Tempeſt, they lay hands on him, and lead him preſently to Execution. A hated Nation, that neither Innocence can protect, or Equity reprieve from that cruel cuſtom.

The Women in former times much noted for their Unchaſtity, to which their worſhipping of *Venus* was no ſmall incentive; it being the cuſtom of theſe Women to proſtitute themſelves on the Shores, to the Paſſers-by: Their very *Virgins* not refuſing to be handled there, before their Marriage; either to raiſe their Portions by the ſale of their Bodies, or elſe to pleaſe their Goddeſs with ſuch beaſtly Sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited, (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carlotte*, when ſhe came to *Rome*, to ſeek for aid againſt *James* the Baſtard, who had dipoſſeſſed her of this Kingdom, ſhewed themſelves little chaſter than thoſe ancient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the Men, 1. *Æſclepiades*, the Author of the Verſe ſo named. 2. *Xenophon*, an old Poet. 3. *Zeno*; and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philoſophers. 5. *Epiphanius*, the learned Biſhop of *Salames*; and 6. Above all, St. *Barnabas*, the dear Aſſociate of St. *Paul*; being all Natives of this Country.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by St. *Paul*, and *Barnabas*, as the very firſt fruits of their Apoſtleſhip, after they had been ſeparated to the Work of the Miniſtry by the impoſition of Hands, as appeareth, *Acts* 13. ver. 4. *&c.* The Church hereof, by reaſon of the Antiquity of it, and the Honour of this joint Foundation, ſo privileged in the beſt Ages of Chriſtianity, that the Archbiſhop of this Iſland had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*; conſecrated by his own Suffragan Biſhops, and acting in all Sacred and Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, without dependance on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Biſhops in the Eaſtern *Dioceſe* were either ſubordinate or ſubject. Which Privilege being queſtioned in the Council of *Epheſus*, was by the Fathers there aſſembled, on a full hearing of the Cauſe, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil Sanction of the Emperor *Juſtinian*, whoſe Wife was a Native of this Iſland; and by the name of *Jus Ciprium*, the Privilege or Exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, tranſmitted to the Prelates of ſucceeding times. Which notwithſtanding, they continued in good Correſpondence with the Eaſtern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the Rites and Forms thereof, till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latin* Service into ſome of their Churches, and appointed Biſhops and other Miniſters of the *Papal* party, for execution of the ſame. And for the Government of theſe Churches, they had at firſt fourteen Biſhops, and Archbiſhops, to gratifie Queen *Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her Friends with ſome of the Spoils of them); reduced by *Innocent* the Third to four only; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Nicoſia*, the Biſhopricks of *Famaguſta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furniſhed with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latins*; of which the Biſhops for the *Latins* have all the Lands, and Annual *Revenue*, which of right belong to thoſe Cathedrals; the *Greek* Biſhops living upon Stipends levied on the Prieſts and Deacons of their Juriſdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was ſaid, here are very few, and of thoſe few, the principal are call'd *Lycus* and *Lapithus*; the firſt running towards the South, the laſt towards the North; both not ſeldom ſo dried up, that they leave their empty Channels without any Water. Both alſo have their Source from the Hill *Olympus*, (the higheſt Mountain of the Iſland) garniſhed with Trees and Fruits of all ſorts; in compaſs about eighteen Leagues, (which make four and fifty *Italian* Miles) and at the end of every League a Monaſtery of *Greek Monks*, or *Caloires*, and a Fountain of freſh water for the uſe of the Houſe. Here are alſo two other little Rivers, the one call'd 3. *Bodeus*, the other 4. *Tolius*; but of the ſame nature as the former.

By *Ptolomy*, or in his time, divided into four parts, or Provinces; but ſince it fell into the hands of the *Luſignian* Family, diſtributed into twelve Counties, or *Cantredes*; moſt of them call'd by the name of their principal Towns, *viz*, 1. *Nicoſia*. 2. *Famaguſta*. 3. *Paphia*. 4. *Audima*. 5. *Limiſſa*. 6. *Maſorum*. 7. *Salines*. 8. *Meſſoria*. 9. *Criſocus*. 10. *Pentalia*. 11. *Carpaſſus*. 12. *Cerines*. The whole containing, beſides the Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages, or thereabouts, which they call'd *Caſales*, whereof the one half anciently belong'd unto the *Crown*, the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility* and the *Eccleſiaſticks*; the Patrimony of theſe laſt being computed at 80000 Crowns of Annual Rents, beſides Caſualties, and the Vails of the Altar. But becauſe the tracing out of theſe *Cantredes* will be very difficult, (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the diviſion made hereof in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of 1. *Paphia*. 2. *Amathyſia*. 3. *Lapethia*; and 4. *Salamine*.

1. *Paphia*, ſo call'd of *Paphos*, the chief Town thereof, taketh up the Weſt part of the Iſland; in which the Towns of moſt Importance and Obſervation are, 1. *Paphos*, on the Seaſide, by *Pliny* call'd *Palaparphos*, or old *Paphus*, built, as ſome ſay, by *Cyniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and ſo named in memory of *Paphus* his Father; but, as others ſay, by *Paphos*, the Son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phœnicia* and *Cyprus*: To which laſt *Ovid* doth agree, who ſpeaking of *Pygmalion*'s Statue, turn'd into a Woman by the power of *Venus*, (or rather of his beautiful Wife, fabled, for the ſurpaſſing whiteneſs of her Skin, to be made of *Ivory*) he adds this of her:

> *Illa* Paphium *genuit de quo tenet inſula nomen.*
>
> She *Paphus* bare, whom from the name
> Of *Paphia* to the Iſland came.

Here *Venus* had her ſo much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedneſs, did perform her Sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful *Earthquake*; or as the *Legends* have it, by the Prayers of St. *Barnabas*; the Ruins of it ſtill remaining. 2. *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now call'd *Baffo*, five Miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Lawgiver, after the Sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent Tempeſt; conſecrate to the ſame impure *Goddeſs*, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; thoſe which here offered not thinking they had done her ſufficient Service, unleſs they went in a ſolemn manner of Proceſſion, and paid their Vows alſo at the other. 3. *Arſinoe*, ſituate betwixt both; built by, or call'd ſo in honour of *Arſinoe*, Daughter of *Ptolomy* the firſt King of *Ægypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that Houſe. 4. *Drepanum*, now call'd *Trepano*, under the Promontory ſo named, a well-traded Port, but miſerably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Iſland. 5. *Connelia*, one of the richeſt of the Iſland, by reaſon of the plenty of Sugar and Cotton-wool growing thereabout. Built in the place of 6. *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* alſo, but differing from the Iſland of that Name in the *Ægean* Sea, rather in pronunciation than the purity of her Oblations; the laſt Syllable ſave one, in the name of that Iſland, being ſhort in Verſe, but this of *Cyprus* ſounding long, as in this of *Virgil*:

> *Eſt* Amathus, *eſt celſa mihi* Paphos, *atque* Cithera.
>
> *Cithera* and *Amathus* Divine,
> And lofty *Paphos* are all mine.

2. On the South-Eaſt of *Paphia* lieth the Province, or Diſtrict of *Amathyſia*, taking up the South-parts of the Iſland which look towards *Ægypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Amathus*, giving Name unto this Diviſion, then of moſt note, and much frequented for the Annual Sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: The Ruins of both hardly now diſcerned. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Amaſis*, King of *Ægypt*, when he conquered this Iſland; but as others ſay by ſome of the *Anathites*, deſcended from *Anath*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*. 2. *Cetium*, or *Citium*,

(for I find it call'd by both names) the Birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence call'd *Κιτιεὺς*, or *Citienſis* ; and memorable for the death of *Simon* the *Athenian*-General. A Town wherein the Memory of *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, is moſt anciently preſerved. 3. *Epiſcopio*, one of the chief of all the Iſland, built on the place, or out of the decay of 4. *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the ſame name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*: His Altars in thoſe times held ſo ſacred, that whoſoever preſumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea, from the Promontory, or Rocks adjoyning. 5. *Salines*, or *Salinæ*, ſo call'd from the rich Salt-pits; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of thoſe twelve *Cantredes*, into which the whole is now divided.

3. *Lapethia*, the third part of the Iſland, lieth on the North thereof, oppoſite to *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*. Places of moſt Importance in it, 1. *Nicoſia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Archbiſhop, and the chief of the Iſland ; anciently call'd *Ledronſis*, and *Lentainis*; but thoſe Names long ago laid by. Situate in the midſt of the Iſle, and in a plain and champaign Country, abundantly fertile and delightful. Environed with a fair Wall, ſo exactly round, as if it had been drawn with a pair of Compaſſes ; in Circuit about five Miles, and both for Situation, number of People, and magnificent Buildings of all ſorts both publick and private, compared by ſome to the moſt beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortifyed by the *Venetians*, when in their Poſſeſſion, with new Walls, deep Ditches, and eleven ſtrong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern Fortification. But notwithſtanding all theſe Works, and the help of 250 pieces of Cannon planted on the Walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the ſecond or third Aſſault, *Septemb.* 9. *Anno* 1570. So evident a Truth it is, that Fortifications are more ſtrengthned by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2. *Cerines*, ſituate near the Sea, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and furniſhed with all things neceſſary to endure a Siege ; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alphonſus Palacius*, the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great ſlaughter made at the Sack of *Nicoſia*, before the Enemy came near it. At firſt call'd *Ceurania*, and ſaid to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* King, when he firſt ſubdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Iſland to that Crown ; bleſt with a more temperate and wholſome Air, than any other in the Country. 3. *Tremitus*, the Birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Biſhop of the *Primitive* times, renown'd for Miracles ; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, lib. 1. chap. 10. and other *Eccleſiaſtical* Writers. Wholly decay'd, the Ruin of it much contributing to the riſe of *Nicoſia*. 4. *Lapithus*, (by *Pliny* call'd *Lapeto*) on the Banks of a ſmall Riveret of that name, of ſo great note in former times, that it gave to this Diviſion the name of *Lapethia* ; in that part ſtandeth the Hill *Olympus*, (now the Mountain of the *Holy Croſs*) deſcribed before.

4. *Salamine*, the fourth and laſt Province of this Iſland, taketh up the whole Eaſt-parts hereof. So named from, 1. *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Iſle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Deſtroyed by the *Jews* in the Reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again ; but being after that taken, ſacked, and razed unto the Ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclus*, in 656, it never could again recover the *Metropolitan* See after that Subverſion, being removed to *Nicoſia*. It was ſometimes, and by ſome Writers, call'd *Conſtentia* alſo ; but that name could give it no more Perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilſt it ſtood for the Founder of it, being *Teucer* the Son of *Telamon*, King of *Salamis*, an Iſle of the *Ægean* Sea ; baniſhed his Country by his Father, and ſetled in this Iſland by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phœnicia*: As alſo for a famous Temple ſacred unto *Jupiter*, hence call'd *Salaminius*. Out of the Ruins hereof aroſe 2. *Famaguſta*, now the prime City of theſe parts, built, as is ſaid, by *Coſta* the Father of St. *Catharine* ; but that uncertain. Situate at the Eaſt end of the Iſland in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one call'd the *Cape* of St. *Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the Head of *Græcia*. In compaſs not above two Miles, in form Four-ſquare, but that the ſide towards the Eaſt ſtretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen Foot in breadth, an old ſtone Wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (oppoſite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-Eaſt, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow paſſage not above forty Paces broad, but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather ſafe than large, aſſured both by the difficult entrance, and a Chain croſſed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortifyed ; the Works of it of the old faſhion, generally decayed, except one Bulwark, which was built according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Paliſadoes*, Curtains, Caſemates, and all other Additaments : Moſt gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who ſpent no leſs than 118000 great Shot upon it ; and at laſt yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3. *Aphrodiſium*, ſo nam'd of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* call'd *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4. *Arſione*, built alſo by one of the *Arſiones* Queens of *Ægypt*, there being two others of this name, and the ſame Foundation, now call'd *Leſcare*, and anciently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5. *Tamaſſus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for Rich Mines of Braſs, as afterwards for an abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitriol* found plentifully in the Fields adjoyning. 6. *Idalium*, near a Mount of the ſame name, ſo call'd by accident. For *Chalcenor*, the Founder of it, being told by the *Oracle*, that he ſhould ſeat himſelf, and build a City, where he firſt ſaw the riſing Sun : One of his Followers, ſeeing the Sun begin to riſe, cried out, ἰδὲ ἥλιον, that is to ſay, *Behold the Sun*. Which *Omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were ſo or not, (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple neighbouring by the *Idalian Groves* ſo memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets. So ſtrong an Influence had Luſt and Senſuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Iſland was defiled with thoſe brutiſh Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that Impure Deity ; though to ſay truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place their *Glory their ſhame*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Iſland were the Poſterity of *Cittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grand-ſon of *Japhet* ; who having ſeen his Brother *Tarſhiſh* ſetled in *Cilicia*, (where his Memory is ſtill preſerved in the City of *Tarſus*) planted himſelf and his Retinue in this oppoſite Iſland. The City of *Cetium*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Citium*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the ancienteſt of the Iſland, taking name from him ; which with the Authority of *Joſephus*, and others of the ancient Writers, put it out of queſtion. But being this Iſland was too narrow to contain his Numbers, and willing to ſeek further off for a larger Dwelling, he left here ſo many of his Followers as might ſerve in time to plant the Country ; and with the reſt paſſed into *Macedon*, where we have already ſpoken of him. Made tributary firſt to *Amaſis* King of *Ægypt*, from which diſtant about three or four days Sailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near Neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring People, made themſelves Maſters of the Sea-Coaſts, and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grandfather to *Adonis*) is ſaid to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus*, one of his Succeſſors, who is ſaid to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named ſo (if not rather repaired than new built by him) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the firſt Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer*, the Son of *Telamon*, baniſhed his Country, accompanied with many Followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was ſetled in the Eaſt parts hereof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his firſt Plantation. Yet ſo that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold; it being evident in Story that *Elulæus* one of the Succeſſors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*) and a Cotemporary with *Salmanaſſar* King of *Aſſyria*, paſſed over into *Cyprus* with a puiſſant Navy, to reduce the *Citiæans* to Obedience, who had then rebelled. The Iſland, at firſt coming of *Teucer* hither, ſo infinitely overgrown with Woods, that the People were not able to Till the Iſland. Inſomuch, that notwithſtanding the great waſte made of them, both in building Ships, and caſting Metals, a Law was made, that every one which would ſhould fell them, and take as much ground in ſeveralty for his own Inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for Tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Ægyptians*, ſo beſtirred themſelves, that at laſt they brought it unto *Champagn*; parcelled out in ſucceeding times amongſt nine Kings, for ſo many *Cyrus*, the great *Perſian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did ſubdue all thoſe petit Princes, yet he took not from them their Eſtates or Titles: contented with the conqueſt of it, and an annual Tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras* and *Nicocles*, to whom *Iſocrates* inſcribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, *Citium* it ſelf (ſuch was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not ſubject to any other. The King whereof to indear himſelf with the Conqueror, gave to him a Sword, μαχαίραν θαυμαστὴν ſaith *Plutarch*, an admirable Sword, both for colour and lightneſs, which he after uſed in all his Fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his Eſtates amongſt them, the Princes and People of this Iſland were in great Diſtractions, not knowing to whom they might ſubmit for their beſt advantage. But *Ptolomy*, who had ſeized on *Ægypt* for his part of the Spoil, being ſtrong in Shipping, ſetled them by a perſonal viſit; and fortifying ſome of the beſt pieces in it, aſſured the Country to himſelf. To him and his Poſterity it continued ſubject till the time of *Ptolomy Auletes*, the ninth King of this Line in our Account, who gave it for a Portion to one of his Brethren; in whoſe time, the *Romans*, without any colour, or pretence of Quarrel, but only to enrich themſelves with the ſpoil of the Iſland, ſent *Portius Cato* to ſubdue it. And he at firſt aſſayed to get it with the King's conſent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Prieſthood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high eſteem among that People. But when *Ptolomy* for fear of worſe miſchief had made away himſelf by Poyſon, *Cato* without more Ceremony takes poſſeſſion of it. And becauſe *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath ſo ſignificantly expreſſed this buſineſs, and withal deſcribed ſo punctually the Eſtate of this Iſland; we will add this diſcourſe from him, though ſomewhat be repeated which was ſaid before. *Cyprum inſulam procul à Continente diſtantem, & portuoſam*, &c. “The Iſle of *Cyprus*, far diſtant from the Continent, “and well ſtored with *Harbours*, is famous, beſides ma-“ny *Municipal* Towns, for two principal Cities, that “is to ſay, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*; the one ſacred to *Ju-*“*piter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Iſle ſo admirably “fruitful, and with all things furniſhed, that without “the help of any foreign Nation, it is able of it ſelf to “build and rig forth a Ship, from the very Keel unto “the Topſail, and trim it with all Tackle neceſſary for “a preſent Voyage. Nor do I ſhame to ſay, that with “greater Avarice than Juſtice, the *Romans* did invade “this Iſland, King *Ptolomy*, our old Confederate and “Ally, being unworthily proſcribed for no other reaſon, “but that our Treaſury was bare, our *Exchequer* empty. “And he no ſooner had prevented this diſhonour by a “quick and voluntary Death, making away himſelf by “Poyſon, but the Iſland was forthwith made tributary, “and the Riches of it, *Velut hoſtiles exuviæ claſſi impoſitæ* “*& in urbem adductæ per Catonem*, as the ſpoils of ſome con-“quered Enemy, were brought on Shipboard, and convey-“ed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

I know there is another cauſe alledged for the ſending of *Cato* on this Errand, *viz.* that *Clodius* who was then *Tribune*, and ſped the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his abſence to revenge himſelf on *Cicero*, and ſome others of the oppoſite Faction; but the main buſineſs was the Money, as before was ſaid; the Prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thouſand Crowns of Coin now currant. Which Money and Moveables, amounting unto ſo vaſt a Sum, he fearing to loſe by Sea, divided it into many ſmall Portions, which he put into ſeveral Boxes, *viz.* in every Box two *Talents*, and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every Box he faſtned a long Rope with a piece of Cork, by which floating above the water, the Money, if by Shipwrack loſt, might be eſpied again; which was not much unlike the *Buoys* which Mariners faſten by long Ropes to their Anchors, that they may be ſooner found. We ſee by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avarius magis quam Juſtius ſumus aſſecuti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* alſo. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the diviſion of the Empire aſſign'd to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors, under whom it ſuffered, as all other parts of the Empire did by the violent invaſion of the *Saracens*, who ſpoiled and ranſacked it in the time of *Conſtance* the Second, deſtroying then the City of *Salamais*, or *Conſtantia*. But that tempeſt being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, govern'd by a ſucceſſion of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* uſurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Iſaacius Comnenus*, one of the Blood-Royal, to ſhift for himſelf; who ſeizing on this Iſland, made himſelf King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191, when *Richard* the firſt of *England*, being denied the common courteſie of taking in freſh Water, and ſeeing his Soldiers abuſed by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Priſoner, but ſubdued the whole Iſland. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamaſdes* King of *Armænia*, *Catenis, ſed ne quid honori deeſſet, aureis vinxit*: So did our *Richard* keep a *Decorum* towards this Priſoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but Silver. King *Richard* having thus poſſeſſed himſelf of this Country, ſold it for ready Money, (which for the managing of his intended Wars againſt the *Turks*, he moſt needed) unto the Templers; and taking it, upon I know not what diſcontent, again from them, he beſtow'd it on *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the titular and miſerable King of *Hieruſalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the Title of that loſt and ſhipwrack'd Kingdom, with which Title he and ſome of his Succeſſors for a time were honoured.

In the poſterity of this *Guy*, this Iſland continued free and abſolute, till the year one thouſand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechbella*, (or *Melechnaſar*) Sultan of *Ægypt*, invaded this Country, took *John*, King hereof, Priſoner, ranſomed him for 150000 Sultanies, reſtored him to his Kingdom, and impoſed on him and his Succeſſors the yearly Tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was Father to another *John*, whoſe two Children were *Carlotte* a legitimate Daughter, and *James* a Baſtard Son. *James* after the death of his Father, diſpoſſeſſed his Siſter

Carlotte of the Crown, by the conſent and help of the *Sultan* of *Ægypt*; and the better to ſtrengthen himſelf againſt all oppoſition, he took to Wife *Catharine Cornari*, Daughter by Adoption to the *Venetian Senate*; whom at his Death he made his Heir, if the Child ſhe went withal (having then none by her) ſhould die without Iſſue, as it did, not long after it was born; and ſhe ſeeing the factious Nobility too headſtrong to be bridled by a female Authority, like a good Child reſigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, An. 1473. Theſe defended it againſt all Claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and afterwards to the *Turkiſh Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns beforemention'd) till the year 1570, when *Muſtapha*, General of the *Turks*, wreſted it from the *Venetians*, to the uſe of his Maſter *Selimus* the Second, who pretended Title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The Governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loſs was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of Succours, means of Reſiſtance, or poſſibility of prevailing continued, with incredible Valour made good the Town of *Famaguſta*, in whoſe defence conſiſted the welfare of the whole Iſland. At laſt he yielded it on honourable Conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General inviting to his Tent the principal Men of worth in the Town, cauſed them all to be murder'd: And as for *Bragadin* himſelf, he commanded his Ears to be cut off, his Body to be flead alive, and his Skin ſtuffed with Straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the Priſoners and Spoils were in two tall Ships, and one *Gallion*, ſent unto *Selimus*; but he never ſaw them. For a noble *Cyprian* Lady, deſtinated to the Luſt of the *Grand Signior*, fired certain barrels of Powder; by the violence whereof both the Veſſels and the Booty in them were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick Act, inferior unto none of the *Roman Dames*, ſo much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Chriſtian* Lady.

Thus having ſummed up the Affairs of this Iſland from the firſt plantation of it, till this laſt ſaid Conqueſt, I will lay down the ſucceſſion of the *Cyprian* Kings of the noble *Luſignan* Family, in this enſuing Catalogue of

The Kings of CYPRUS.

1191. 1. *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the titular King of *Hieruſalem*, eſtated in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the Firſt of *England*.
2. *Almericus*, the Brother of *Guy*.
3. *Hugh*, the Son of *Almericus*.
4. *Henry*, the Son of *Hugh*.
5. *Hugh* II. Son of *Henry*.
6. *Hugh* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
7. *John*, Son of *Hugh* the Third.
8. *Henry* II. the Brother of *John*.
9. *Hugh* IV. Son of *Guido*, the younger Brother of *John*, and *Henry* the Second.
10. *Peter*, the Son of *Hugh* the Fourth.
11. *Petrinus*, the Son of *Peter*.
12. *James*, younger Brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13. *Janus*, the Son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechnaſer*, to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*.
14. *John* II. the Son of *Janus*.
15. *Carlotte*, ſole Daughter and Heir of *John* the Second, firſt married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her Eſtate and Kingdom, by
16. *James* II. the Baſtard Son of *John* the Second, who by a ſtrong hand ſeized upon it, and by help of the *Venetians*, kept it during life.
17. *James* III. Born after the deceaſe of his Father, whom he ſurvived not very long. After whoſe Death, being the laſt of this Family, the *Venetians* poſſeſſed themſelves of *Cyprus*; which they invaded with no better Title, than the *Romans* had done in former times in 1473, not likely to be bleſt with a long Fruition of that which they had ſo unjuſtly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be obſerved, that theſe *Cyprian* Kings retaining the Title of *Hieruſalem*, (towards which they ſometimes caſt an Eye) beſtowed upon their greateſt Subjects, and deſerving Servitors, both Titles of Honour, and Offices of State, belonging anciently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongſt them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæſarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneſchal of *Hieruſalem*, a Conſtable, Marſhal, and high Chamberlain of that Kingdom alſo. With better reaſon, tho' no doubt, with as little profit, as the Pope gives Biſhopricks, and Archbiſhopricks in *Greece*, or *Ægypt*. But thoſe titular Offices are now quite extinct, though poſſibly ſome of the Titles of Honour which were took from thence, may be ſtill remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famaguſta* and *Nicoſia*, on which the whole Iſland did depend; all other Cities of it, and the whole by conſequence, were forced to ſubmit to the *Turkiſh* Tyranny.

The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal Quality, either moſt cruelly maſſacred in the Sack of thoſe Towns, or baniſhed for ever their native Country, as Men whoſe living there might poſſibly endanger their new Conqueſt. But the Country people, Artificers, and perſons of inferior Rank, permitted to enjoy both their Lives, and Livelihoods, together with their ſeveral and reſpective Religions, in the ſame manner as before; paying ſuch ordinary Taxes as were laid upon them. And ſo this goodly Iſland came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoyed the poſſeſſion of it: For notwithſtanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the Pope, and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable Overthrow, at the famous Battle of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing, in purſuit of ſo great a Victory, for the recovery of this Iſland; and indeed they could not, the Confederates returning home, and diſſolving their Fleet, as ſoon as they had ſecured their own Eſtates by the overthrow of the *Turkiſh* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the beſt Face they could on ſo great a loſs, ſo highly pleaſed themſelves with the following Victory, that they put the ſame in balance with the loſs of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them ſee the folly of ſo vain a boaſting, compared the loſing of *Cyprus* to the loſs of an Arm, which could not without a Miracle be recovered; and the loſs at *Lepanto*, to the ſhaving off of ones Beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting; as indeed it proved, for the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no leſs formidable than the other had been before, braving therewith the whole Chriſtian Forces, either not then diſbanded, or reaſſembled. But however the *Turks* have ſince been in a declining ſtate as to their Maritime, or Naval Forces, and were never able to recover the loſs at *Lepanto*: And the War of *Candy* has ſince reduced their Land Forces to the ſame ebb; ſo that in all appearance that Empire is apace ſinking into the Gulph of Ruin.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Cuſtom-houſe, yielded yearly to the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a Million of Crowns. For the Cuſtoms and Profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns *per Annum*, which being turned into the chief *Syrian* Commodities, were counted double worth that Money, when unladed at *Venice*. To which, if we ſhould add the Lands of the former Kings, and other ways of raiſing Money on the Subject, I cannot ſee, but the *Intrado* of the Crown muſt needs amount conſtantly to a Million and a half yearly, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly; Firſt, *Argent*, a Croſs *Potent* between four Croſſes, *Or*: ſecondly, Barwiſe of eight Pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, ſupporting a Lyon Paſſant *Azure*, Crowned, *Or*: thirdly, a Lyon *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lyon *Gules*; as *Bara*, a *French* Herald hath given the Blazon.

On the Eaſt of *Cyprus* towards *Syria*, lie four ſmall Iſlands, which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Clides*, not far from the Promontory of that Name; both Promontory and Iſland, now call'd St. *Andrew*'s; and towards the Weſt another little knot of Iſlets, which he calls *Carpaſiæ*; but nothing memorable in either. So I paſs them over.

There are in *Cyprus*, Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 6.

And ſo much for CYPRUS.

OF
SYRIA.

Syria is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North with *Cilicia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from the laſt parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Paleſtine*, and ſome parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof, from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is ſaid to be five hundred twenty and five Miles; the breadth, from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and ſeventy, drawing ſomewhat near unto a Square.

In the Scripture it is call'd *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, becauſe firſt peopled and poſſeſſed by *Aram* the Son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the Sons of *Canaan*, did alſo put in for a ſhare; and yet not call'd thus by the Scriptures only, but by ſome of the Heathen Writers alſo: For *Strabo* doth not only acknowledge that the *Syrians* in his time were call'd Ἄραμοι, but citeth *Poſſidonius*, a more ancient Writer, for proof that the Ἄραμοι, which *Homer* ſpeaketh of, muſt be thoſe *Syrians*: Further averring, that the *Syrians* call'd themſelves by the name of *Aremæi*; or plainly, *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are call'd *Syrians*, *Surians*, from the City *Tyre*, call'd anciently by the name of *Sur*, or *Tſur*, (of which more hereafter) either becauſe the *Tyrians*, or *Tſurians* had in thoſe times the command of the Sea-Coaſts of this Country; or elſe that *Tyre*, or *Tſer* being the chief Mart-Town of all thoſe parts, was the place where they traded with thoſe *Aramites*. Conforming to which ancient Appellations the City of *Tyre* is again call'd *Sur*, and this Country *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* firſt knew it, a part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, the Seat of which was then at *Ninive*, it was call'd *Syria* for *Aſſyria*; as afterwards *Aſſyria* had the name of *Syria*, (of which more anon) when the Seat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be ſo, conſidering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hiſpania* unto *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to underſtand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a Member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet anciently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude; of which, becauſe it may be uſeful to the underſtanding of *holy Scriptures*, and of ſome *Claſſick* Authors alſo, I ſhall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largeſt acceptation of it, extendeth from the Coaſt of *Cilicia*, North, to *Idumæa* towards the South; from the River *Tygris* in the Eaſt, to the *Mediterranean* Sea upon the Weſt; containing beſides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, (in which *Paleſtine* was alſo included) *Arabia* the *Deſart*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all thoſe Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed, or ſubjoyned in the Book of God, as *Aram-Naharaim*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachah*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, all mention'd in the Holy Scriptures. Some do extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this Name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whoſe Neighbourhood to *Syria* may give ſome colour to the Error; but even thoſe People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine* Sea, the Inhabitants of which were anciently call'd *Leuco-Syri*, or *White Syrians*. But this not having any good Warrant, or Authority wherewithal to back it, ſhall not come under the compaſs of this Conſideration. But for the reſt, I find it generally agreed upon amongſt the Learned, that *Aram-Naharaim* is the ſame with the whole Country of *Meſopotamia*, ſo named both by the *Jews* and *Grecians*, becauſe it is environed with the two ſamous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, which *Priſcian* by a meer *Latin* name, would have to be call'd *Medamna*, but *Inter Amna*, by his leave, would expreſs it better. And as for *Padan-Aram* wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is call'd *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hoſea*, Ch. 12. ver. 13. that is a part only of the other; the whole Country of *Aram-Naharaim*, or *Meſopotamia*, being divided into two parts, whereof the more fruitful lying Northward, is call'd *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whoſe Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and moſt deſart lying towards the South, which by the ſame Author is call'd *Arabia*. For *Aram-Manchah* mention'd 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of *Syria* which was after nam'd *Comagena*, whereof *Samoſata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother-City. And as for *Aram-Sobah*, of which, and of *Adadezar* the King thereof, there is ſo frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-Eaſt of *Damaſcus*, and ſo extending to the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the ſame with that which afterwards was call'd *Palmyrena*, from the City of *Palmyra*, South-Weſt of which, amongſt the petty Kingdoms on the North of *Geſſur*, in the Land of *Paleſtine*, lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon* in the War which they had with *David*, 2 *Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* leſs extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did the name of *Aram*, if they ſtretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Aſſyrians*, in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over-rul'd all *Aſia*, καταλύσασι τὴν τῶν Σύρων ἀρχὴν, the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Aſſyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is ſaid, that thoſe whom the *Barbarians* call *Aſſyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were call'd *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpoſe *Juſtin* alſo, *Imperium* Aſſyrii, *qui poſtea* Syri *dicti ſunt*, *Annos* 1300 *tenuere*. But theſe all write after the time that *Seleucus* and his Race had the poſſeſſion of the Eaſtern Empire; who living for the moſt part in *Syria*, from whence they might more eaſily furniſh themſelves with Soldiers out of *Greece*, (as they did moſt commonly for all their Military Expeditions) cauſed all the other parts of their large Dominions to be call'd, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other ſide, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not ſo far to the Eaſt and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did; ſo it contained ſome other Regions; that is to ſay, thoſe of *Phœnicia* and *Paleſtine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*, as being planted by a People of another Race, and of different Fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat ſeverally of the natures of the Soil and People, their Originals, Government, and Succeſſes, till we have brought them into one hand, and then continue their Affairs, as one joint Eſtate. But firſt we will ſurvey the ancient and preſent Fortunes of Chriſtianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Country, here is choice enough; thoſe namely of the *Mahometan*, *Chriſtian*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Druſians*: The *Mahometan* embraced by the generality of the People throughout the whole, and by all that be in any Office or Authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though all the reſt be tolerated. The *Pagan* entertained only in the mountainous Countries bordering on *Armenia*, inhabited by a People whom they call'd *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from the ancient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their moſt uſual Arms. A Race of People who is ſaid to worſhip alike both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive Benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut proſint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm, of the ancient *Grecians*. But their principal Devotions are addreſſed to the Devil only, and that upon good Reaſons, as themſelves conceive: For God, they ſay, is a good Man, and will do no body no harm; but the Devil is a miſchievous Fellow, and muſt be pleaſed with Sacrifices, that he hurt them not. And for the *Druſians* they are conceived to be the remainder of thoſe *Franks* (by which name the *Turks* call all Weſtern *Chriſtians*) who driven unto the Mountains (when they loſt the Sovereignty and Poſſeſſion of the *Holy-Land*) and defending themſelves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length to afford them both Peace, and liberty of their Religion. But they have ſo forgot the Principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but *Baptiſm*, and not that generally neither; accounting it lawful, moſt unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Siſters, or Mothers; and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their Habits only, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumciſion, and indulging to themſelves the liberty of Wine, by Law forbidden to the *Turks*. A People otherwiſe very Warlike, Stout, and Reſolute; with great both Conſtancy and Courage, reſiſting hitherto the Attempts of the *Turkiſh* Sultans. The Country they poſſeſs environed with the Confines of *Joppa*, about *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eaſtwards as far as the Plains of *Damaſcus*; ſo that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their Habitations reach not.

But for the *Chriſtian* Faith, it was firſt preaced here by ſome of the diſperſed Brethren, (which fled from the rage of Perſecution in *Phœnice*) and the City of *Antiochia*, amongſt whom St. *Peter*, *as he paſſed through all quarters*, Acts 9. 31. is by the Fathers ſaid to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* firſt, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly; who ſpending there a whole year together, enlarged the Borders of the Church, and gained much People, as is ſaid, *Acts* 11. 19, &c. inſomuch, that *here the Diſciples were firſt called Chriſtians*, ver. 26. Not call'd ſo accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a ſerious conſultation amongſt themſelves, and a devout invocation on the Name of God, to direct them in it. The word Χρηματίσαι uſed in the Original, importeth ſomewhat of *Oracular* and Divine direction. And certainly it ſtandeth with reaſon that it ſhould be ſo. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptiſt*, there was not only a conſultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father call'd to adviſe about it; and if we uſe not to admit the pooreſt Child of the Pariſh into the Congregation of Chriſt's Church by the door of *Baptiſm*, but by the joint invocation of the Name of God for his bleſſing on it: with how much more regard of *Ceremony* and *Solemnity*, muſt we conceive that the whole Body of Chriſt's People were *baptized* into the name of *Chriſtians*? And there is ſome proof of it too, beſides *probability* and *conjectures*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old *Coſmographer*, do expreſly ſay, that in the days of *Claudius Cæſar*, ten years after the *Aſcenſion* of our Lord and Saviour, *Euodius* received Epiſcopal conſecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the *Great* in *Syria*, ſucceeding immediately to St. *Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Diſciples* were firſt call'd *Chriſtians*. Τοῦ αὐτοῦ Ἐπισκόπου Εὐοδίου προσομιλήσαντος αὐτοῖς, ϗ ἐπιθήσαντος αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, &c. *i. e. Euodius* their Biſhop, calling them to a *Solemn Aſſembly*, and impoſing this new Name upon them, whereas before they were call'd *Nazarites* and *Galilæans*. A People ſo hated by the *Heathen*, that they ceaſed not to ſlander them from the firſt beginning. *For as concerning this Sect we know that it is every where ſpoken againſt*, ſaid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apoſtle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *Homines per flagitia inviſos, & noviſſima meritos exempla*: The Calumny in his time being ſtrong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Siſters. Which defamations notwithſtanding, they grew in few years to ſo great numbers, that they were a terror to their Enemies; though grievouſly afflicted, tortured, and put to ſeveral kinds of Death, under the ten *Famous Perſecutions*, raiſed againſt them, by *Nero*, An. 67. 2. *Domitian*, An. 96. 3. *Trajanus*, An. 110. 4. *Marcus Antoninus*, An. 167. 5. *Severus*, An. 195. 6. *Maximinus*, An. 237. 7. *Decius*, An. 250. 8. *Valerianus*, An. 259. 9. *Aurelianus*, An. 278. 10. By *Diocleſianus*, An. 293. All, but this laſt eſpecially, ſo extremely raging, that (as St. *Hierom* writeth in one of his Epiſtles) there was martyr'd 5000 for each day in the Year, except the firſt of *January*, on which they uſed not to ſhed Blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum, Semen Eccleſiæ*. This little grain of Muſtard-ſeed, ſowed by God's own hand, and watered by the Blood of ſo many holy Men, grew ſo great a Tree, that the branches of it ſpread themſelves over all the World; and got ſuch footing even in the *Roman* Army it ſelf, (Men commonly not of the ſtricteſt kind of *Religion*) that when *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, had vomited out his Soul, with *Viciſti tandem Galilae*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Chriſtian*, for his Succeſſor, with this Acclamation, *Chriſtiani omnes ſumus*, We are alſo *Chriſtians*. But ſee how the *baptizing* of God's People by the name of *Chriſtians* in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way; I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whoſe Evidence, beſides what doth concern the impoſition of the name of *Chriſtian* upon the body of the Faithful, we have a teſtimony for St. *Peter*'s being Biſhop of *Antioch*, the firſt Biſhop thereof, (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at leaſt) as is ſaid poſitively by *Euſebius* in his *Chronology*, St. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of Eccleſiaſtical Writers, St *Chryſoſtom* in his *Homilie de tranſlatione Ignatii*, *Theodoret Dialog.* 1. St. *Gregory Epiſt. lib.* 6. *cap.* 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his ſixth *Homily* on St. *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in reſpect that *Antioch* was accounted always the principal City of the Eaſt-parts of the *Roman* Empire, (the *Prefect* of the Eaſt for the moſt part reſiding in it) the Biſhop hereof in the firſt Ages of Chriſtianity, had juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Eaſt, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Conſtantine* the *Great*, the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, with thoſe of *Meſopotamia* and *Oſroene* were after added, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioceſe* of the Orient. And though by the ſubſtracting of the Churches of *Paleſtine*, and the decay of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts by the Conqueſts of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the juriſdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much leſſened; yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flouriſhed in the Year 1130, reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiſcopal*, 21 *Metropolitical*, and 127 *Epiſcopal* Sees, yielding Obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminiſhed, *Mahometiſm* more and more increaſing, and Chriſtianity divided into Sects and Factions; inſomuch, that of three ſorts of Chriſtians living in theſe Countries, *viz.* The *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are ſubordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And firſt for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greateſt body of *Chriſtians* in all the Eaſt; they are ſo named in way of ſcorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite Schiſmatick*, ſeparating without juſt cauſe from their Communion. The name derived from *Melchi*, ſignifying in the *Syriack* Language a King or Emperor; becauſe adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Deciſions of preceding Councils, ratified by Authority of the Emperor *Leo*, by whom ſubſcription was required to the Acts thereof; and were in that reſpect (as we uſe to ſay) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate Divine Service as ſolemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*. Subject to the true and Original Patriarch, who, ſince the deſtruction of *Antioch*, doth reſide in *Damaſcus*; and on no terms acknowledging the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name, either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they firſt inhabited; or from the Monaſtery of St. *Maron*, mention'd in the firſt Act of the Council of *Conſtantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which call'd *Maronites*; were the head of their Sect. Some Points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Chriſtians*; others in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the firſt ſort, 1. That the *Holy Ghoſt* proceedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2. That the Souls of Men were created all together at the firſt beginning. 3. That Male-Children are not to be baptized together, but at ſeveral times by one and one. 4. That *Hereticks* returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother, till her *Purification*; and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be paſt, which after the Birth of a *Male-Child* muſt be forty days; of a Female eighty. 6. That the *Euchariſt* is to be given to Children preſently after *Baptiſm*. 7. That the fourth Marriage is utterly unlawful. 8. That the Father may diſſolve the Marriage of his Son, or Daughter. 9. That young men are not to be ordained *Prieſts* or *Deacons*, except they be married. 10. That nothing ſtrangled, or of Blood may be eaten by *Chriſtians*. 11. That Women in their monthly Courſes are not to be admitted to the *Euchariſt*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally, (which was indeed their firſt diſcrimination from the *Orthodox Chriſtians*) that there was but one Will and Action in *Chriſt*; the Fautors of which Opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the laſt kind, 1. That the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper was to be adminiſtred in *both kinds*. 2. And leavened Bread. 3. That Bread to be *broken* to the Communicants, (and not each Man to have his Wafer to himſelf) according to the firſt Inſtitution. 4. Not *reſerving* that Sacrament. 5. Nor *carrying* any part of the conſecrated Elements to ſick perſons in danger of death. 6. That *Marriage* is nothing inferior to the ſingle life. 7. That no Man entreth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment. 8. That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath*, is not to be faſted. 9. Nor the Sacrament upon days of Faſting to be adminiſtred till the Evening. They withdrew themſelves from the See of *Antioch*, and ſet up a Patriarch of their own many Ages ſince, (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schiſm, the honourable Title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Succeſſor of that Apoſtle in the See thereof, diſperſed about the ſpurs and branches of Mount *Libanus*; where they have many Townſhips and ſcattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common ſpeech the true ancient *Syriack*; that is to ſay, 1. *Eden*, a ſmall Village, but a Biſhop's See, by the *Turks* call'd *Æchera*. 2. *Hatchteth*. 3. *Sherry*. 4. *Boloſa*, or *Blouſa*, little ſuperior to the reſt in bigneſs, or beauty, but made the ſeat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongſt them. At ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of theſe parts, they ſubmitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulſion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the Obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever ſince depended. His Reſidence for the moſt part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to viſit his Churches, and take an account of his ſuffragan Biſhops (who are nine in number) then at *Blouſa*, as is ſaid before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptiſt*, a *Jeſuit*, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth, who ſent them a Catechiſm from *Rome*, Printed in the *Arabian* Language, (which is generally ſpoken by them) for their inſtruction in the Rudiments of that Religion; yet ſo that their Patriarch ſtill retains his former Power, and the Prieſts ſtill officiate by the old Liturgies of thoſe Churches, in the *Syriack* Tongue. So that this reconciliation upon the matter, is but a matter of Compliment on the one ſide, and Oſtentation on the other; without any increaſe of Power, or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though diſperſed in many places of this Country; yet ſince they are more intirely ſetled in *Meſopotamia*, where their Patriarch alſo hath his Abode, or Reſidence, we ſhall there ſpeak of them.

The Language vulgarly here ſpoken is the *Arabick* Tongue, continued here ever ſince the ſubjugation of theſe Countries by the *Saracens*. But anciently they ſpake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* Languages. Of which, the firſt (for of the other we ſhall ſpeak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very ſame with the *Chaldæan*, (as the learned *Brerewood* hath obſerved) either originally ſo, or elſe received by them when firſt conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which reſpect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*, being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldæan* Tongues; *Chaldæan* for a great part of it, as to the ſubſtance of the Words: But *Hebrew* as to the notation of Points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original Speech. And of this more hereafter alſo, when we come to *Paleſtine*. But whatſoever their Language was in former time, it is now ſo overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is ſpoken in four Villages of the *Maronites* only in all theſe Countries; the *Arabick* being generally uſed in all the reſt, as was ſaid before.

Principal Rivers of theſe parts are 1. *Chorſæus*, call'd *Chiſon* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its Fountain in *Paleſtine*, but his fall in *Phœnicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2 *Orontes*, now call'd *Saldino*, and by ſome Writers *Jordan* the leſs, ariſeth out of the Hills call'd *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia*, and paſſing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was firſt call'd *Tiphon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built firſt the Bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3. *Elutherus*, which riſeth out of ſome part of *Libanus*, and glided with a ſpeedy courſe thorow a ſtrangely-intricate Channel into the *Mediterranean* Sea: Guilty of the death of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaraſſo*, who falling from his Horſe as he purſued the *Infidels*, and oppreſſed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lieth buried at *Tyre*. It is now call'd *Caſmer*. 4. *Singas*, by whom ſaid to be call'd *Marſias* alſo, which ariſing in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and paſſing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the moſt famous River of the Eaſt; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we ſhall there ſpeak of it. 2. *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its firſt Original. 3. *Caſius*, not far from *Antioch*, ſaid to be four Miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Beſides which it affordeth ſuch ſtore of *Frankincenſe*, that ſome derived the name from Λίβανος, ſignifying Frankincenſe in the *Greek*: and ſo repleniſhed with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen uſed to ſing (as *Galen* telleth us) that *God rained Honey*; and yearly filled their Pots and Veſſels with the ſweets thereof. This the moſt famous and greateſt Hill of all theſe parts, extending in length 150 Miles; that is to ſay, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Cœlo-Syria*; and taking ſeven hundred Miles in compaſs. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Chriſtians, who to keep that Dwelling to themſelves, without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, do yearly pay to the *Great Turk*, ſeventeen *Sultanies* a Man, for every one above twelve years of Age; each *Sultany* being reckoned at ſeven Shillings and Six-pence of our Money. And yet thoſe *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the ſmalleſt *Sect*, for numbers, in all the Eaſt; not eſtimated to exceed twelve thouſand Houſholds, by reaſon of the indiſpoſition of this Mountain, in moſt places unfit for Habitation. For beſides the craggineſs and ſteepneſs of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inacceſſible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with Snow, not melted in ſo hot a Climate at the neareſt approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this Name; the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* Language, ſignifying *White*, or *Whiteneſs*; even as from the like *whiteneſs* of Snow, the higheſt part of the *Pyrenæan* Hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. *Janſonius* ſaith it is the higheſt Mountain in *Paleſtine*, the Northern boundary of which it is; and may be ſeen at the diſtance of 40 Miles. It produceth Frankincenſe, and a precious Drug call'd *Sactar* by the Inhabitants, and by us *Manna*; out of it ſprings the *Chryſorrhoas*, *Jordan*, *Elutherus*, *Leon*, *Lycus*, and the River *Adonis*. It is a fruitful pleaſant Mountain, covered with *Cedars*, *Cypreſs*, *Pines*, *Olives*, *Box*, and *Furz*, and under them with Aromatick and Medicinal Herbs, full of all ſorts of ravenous wild Beaſts, and no leſs repleniſhed with pleaſant and muſical Birds. It is now inhabited by *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Greeks*, *Jacobites*, *Georgians*, *Maronites*, and *Neſtorians*. 5. *Anti-Libanus*, oppoſite to the former, and for that ſo call'd, a rich, but little Valley only being interpoſed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring, or Fountain, the Hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it ſelf. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges, or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excurſion of it, call'd *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives ſome hint, in which both paſs for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into theſe ſix parts, *viz.* 1. *Phœnicia*. 2. *Paleſtine*. 3. *Syria* ſpecially ſo call'd. 4. *Comagena*. 5. *Palmyrene*; and 6. *Cœlo-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But *Paleſtine* coming under a more diſtinct conſideration, we ſhall now ſpeak only of the reſt.

1. *PHOENICIA.*

PHoenicia is bounded on the Eaſt and South, with *Paleſtine*; on the North with *Syria*, properly and ſpecially ſo call'd; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So call'd by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-Trees* therein growing, the word Φοινίκη in that Language ſignfying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the ſpecial *Cogniſance*, or Enſign of this Country; as the *Olive-branch*, and *Cony* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* of *Ægypt*, being peculiar to thoſe Countries. And in an old Coin of the Emperor *Veſpaſian*'s, ſtamped for a memorial of his conqueſt of *Judæa*, the Impreſs is a Woman ſitting in a ſad and melancholick poſture, at the back of a *Palm-Tree*, with theſe two words, *Judæa Capta*, inſcribed thereon; in which, no queſtion may be made, but that the deſolate Woman ſignifieth the Land of *Judæa*, and the Palm *Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being ſeated immediately on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus firſt call'd by the *Grecians* only, the *Latins* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themſelves, and the People of *Iſrael* their next Neighbours, they are call'd *Canaanites*, or the Poſterity of *Canaan*, five of whoſe Sons, *viz.* *Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here; the other ſix inhabiting more towards the South and Eaſt, in the Land of *Paleſtine*. For further evidence hereof we may add theſe Reaſons: Firſt, that the ſame Woman which in St. *Matthew*'s Goſpel, *Chap.* 15. 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by St. *Mark*, Chap. 7. 26, call'd a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, Where mention is made in the Book of *Joſhua*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well underſtood the Hiſtory and Language of their Country) call them Βασιλεῖς τῆς φοινίκης, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, The *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all diſpute a *Tyrian*, or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would anſwer that they were *Channei*; meaning, (as St. *Auguſtine*, that Countryman, doth expound their words) that they were originally *Canaanites*, of the ſtock of *Canaan*. And laſtly, From the Language of it, which anciently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitiſh*, or the Language of *Canaan*; ſpoken both here, and in *Paleſtine* alſo, before that Country was poſſeſſed by the Houſe of *Jacob*; as appears plainly by thoſe names by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were call'd, when, and before the *Iſraelites* came firſt to dwell amongſt them, which are meerly *Hebrew*. And ſo much, as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* alſo, who in the entrance of his Book inſcribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may enſue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* Tongue; *Cujus* Phœnicia *lingua dialecta fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* Language was a *Dialect* only.

The Country of it ſelf not great, extended in a good length, from the further ſide of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Paleſtine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: But withal ſo narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-Coaſt, and therefore very rightly call'd *Terrarum anguſtiſſima*, by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increaſe of Trade, (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural Commodities which the Land afforded; yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furniſhed with Oyl, Wheat, and the beſt ſort of *Balm*, and moſt excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being deſigned for the ſeat of *Aſher*, of whom *Moſes* propheſied, *Deut.* 33. 24. *that he ſhould dip his foot in Oyl.* So that the Country generally, was well-condition'd, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than ſuch a ſpan of Earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acclivis monti Libano* Phœnicia *Regio, plena gratiarum & venuſtatis, urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris*, &c. *i. e.* Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lyeth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all Graces and Elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the moſt renowned for the fertility of their Soil, and the fame of their Atchievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reaſon of their *Maritime* ſituation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almoſt all the Ports of the then known World, and ſending more Colonies abroad upon foreign *Plantations*, than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenuous People, ſaid to have been the firſt *Navigators*, the firſt builders of Ships, the firſt inventers of Letters, (of which hereafter more on ſome other occaſion) and the firſt Authors of *Arithmetick*, the firſt that brought *Aſtronomy* to an Art or Method, and the firſt makers of Glaſs. Defamed in holy Scripture for their groſs *Idolatries*, by which they laid a Stumbling-block at the Feet of the *Iſraelites*; *Aſtaroth* (or *Aſtarte*) the Goddeſs of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or ſome other, I diſpute not here) being ſo highly prized amongſt them, that *Solomon* himſelf, when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Euſebius* telleth us, they ſacrificed ſome of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their Language they call'd *Moloch*: And in the inmoſt retreats of *Libanus* had a *Temple* to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of moſt filthy Luſts, intemperately uſing the natural Sex, and moſt unnaturally abuſing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Chriſtian* Faith prevail ſo far, as to extinguiſh theſe ungodly Rites, till *Conſtantine* finally deſtroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the ſhame and infamy. St. *Auſtin* addeth, that they did proſtitute their Daughters unto *Venus* before they married them; and it is moſt likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being ſo near Neighbours, and ſubject for a time to the ſame Princes alſo, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in ſo narrow a Region but what are common unto others, and ſhall there be ſpoken of. Moſt proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now call'd *Canus*,) ſo named moſt probably from *Adonis*, the Darling of *Venus*, whoſe Rites are here performed with as much ſolemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obſequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great howlings and lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River uſually ſtreameth Blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*,) to give the better colour to their Superſtitions. But the truth is, that this *redneſs* of the water ariſeth only from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the Stream a great quantity of *Minium*, or *red Earth*, from the ſides of thoſe Hills, wherewith the waters are diſcoloured. Such uſe can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the Eyes, and captivate the Underſtandings of beſotted People.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Libanus*, ſpoken of before, which hath here its firſt advance, or riſing. 2. *Carmel*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmoſt part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Paleſtine*. Waſhed on the North-ſide with the Brook *Chiſon*, on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea; ſteep of Aſcent, and of indifferent Altitude; abounding with ſeveral ſorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and ſtored with Herbs both Medicinable, and ſweet of ſmell. The Retreat ſometimes of *Elias* when he fled from *Jezabel*; whoſe Habitation here, after his deceaſe, was converted to a *Jewiſh* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Iſrael*) did that Prophet aſſemble the Prieſts of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous Experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* Follies, cauſed them to be cut in pieces on the Banks of the River *Chiſon* near adjoyning to it. Upon this viſible declaring of the Power and Preſence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew perſwaded that *Oracles* were there given by God, by *Suetonius* call'd the God *Carmelus*. Where ſpeaking of *Veſpaſian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judæam*, Carmeli Dei *Oracula conſulentem ita confirmavere ſortes*, &c. That conſulting in *Judæa* with the *Oracle* of the God *Carmelus*, he was aſſured that whatſoever he undertook ſhould ſucceed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friars Carmelites*, as Succeſſors unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Elijah*, had their names from hence: The Ruins of whoſe *Monaſtery* are ſtill to be ſeen, with a Temple dedicated to the Bleſſed *Virgin*; and under that a *Cave*, or *Chappel*, ſaid to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Ptolomais*, now nothing but a ruin of what it hath been, but formerly of great Strength and Conſequence. Named *Acre* at the firſt, a Refuge for the *Perſian* Kings in their Wars againſt *Ægypt*. Enlarged, or rather new built by *Ptolomy*, the firſt of that Race, by whom call'd *Ptolomais*, which name ſtill continued, though *Claudius Cæſar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it call'd *Colonia Claudia*. After the Conqueſt of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its firſt name, and was call'd *Acon*, or *Acre*; both names ſtill remaining in vulgar Speech, as that of *Ptolomais* amongſt *Latin* Writers. Situate in the flouriſh of it on a flat, or level, in form of a triangular Shield; on two ſides neighboured by the Sea, which comes up cloſe to it; on the third looking towards the *Champain*: environed with a double Wall, to each Wall a Ditch, fortified on the outſide with Towers and Bulwarks, within the Walls ſo ſtrongly houſed, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortreſſes, and not ordained for private Dwellings. In the midſt of the City was one Tower of great Strength and Beauty, which had ſometimes been the Temple of *Beelzebub*, and was therefore call'd the *Caſtle of Flies*; on the top whereof was maintain'd a perpetual Light, like the *Pharos* of *Ægypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to ſuch Mariners as made towards this Port. Took from the *Chriſtians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wreſted by the *Turks* with the reſt of *Syria*. It became *Chriſtian* again, *Anno* 1004, in the Reign of *Baldwin* the firſt, Brother of the Famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, by the help of the *Genoeſe*; who for their pains had the third part of the City aſſigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, in 1187, and from him taken again by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, under the conduct of *Philip* of *France*, and *Richard* the Firſt of *England*, An. 1191, it continued in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, notably defended by the *Hoſpitalers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. When beſieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though loſt by Inches; and the *Turks* fearing leſt the *Chriſtians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground, demoliſhing the large Walls and Arches of it, which lie like maſſy Rocks on their old Foundations. Memorable in thoſe times for the brave Service here done by the Chriſtians of the Weſtern parts; of which none more renowned than thoſe of our *Richard* the Firſt, and *Edward* the Firſt. This latter here treacherouſly wounded by an Infidel, with a poyſoned Knife, the Venom whereof could by no means be aſſwaged, till his moſt vertuous Wife (herein propoſing a moſt rare Example of conjugal Affection) ſucked it out with her Mouth. And for the former, he became ſo terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would ſay *Peace, King* Richard, *is coming*; and when their Horſes ſtarted, they would ſpur them, ſaying, *What you Jades, do you think that King* Richard *is here?* By the *Mammalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for Habitation rather than Defence; not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have ſo many, but for the Haven adjoyning; which though a ſmall Bay, and of very ill Anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Weſtern World, trading here for their Cotten-Wools, with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furniſhed. I have ſtaid the longer in this place, by reaſon of the great Fame and Importance of it, as being the laſt Hold which the Chriſtians had of all their Conqueſts; with the loſs whereof, they laid aſide all thoughts of thoſe *Holy Wars*. 2. *Tyre*, ſeated in a rocky Iſland, about ſeventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of Form, as well by Art as Nature impregnably fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Iſa.* Chap. 23. ver. 12. call'd the *Daughter of Sidon*; but by them built upon an high Hill, the Ruins whereof, by the name of *Palatyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining ſtill. Removed unto the Iſlands by *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rocky ſituation of it, (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latins*, though known to them alſo by the name of *Sara*, (the *Tyrian Purple* being by *Virgil*, and ſome others of the ancient Poets, call'd *Sarrarum Oſtrum*) and now at laſt returned to its firſt original Name, vulgarly at this day call'd *Sar*. *Joſephus* in the 8 *Lib.* of the *Ant.* c. 2. ſaith *Tyre* was built 240 years before *Solomon*'s Temple, which is to be underſtood of the ſecond *Tyre* built in the Sea; which laſt *Petavius* parallels with the year of the *Julian* Period 3702, *An. Mundi* 2938; ſo that *Tyre* was built in 2698, in the times of *Gideon*. A City in elder times of great Trade and Wealth; the Prophet *Iſa.* Chap. 27. *ver.* 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of thoſe times both for Learning and Manufactures, ſpecially for the dying of *Purple*, firſt here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* ſaid, by a very accident; the Dog of *Hercules* (or if not his, ſome Dog or other) whoſe Lips by eating of the Fiſh call'd *Conchylis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reaſon of the Wealth and Pleaſures, her deſtruction was fore-ſignify'd by the holy Prophets, accompliſhed in God's own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who with great Induſtry and Toil joyn'd it to the Continent. But his Works being demoliſhed by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after ſeventy years again re-edified; and having flouriſhed after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the *Great* was again demoliſhed, to whoſe indefatigable perſeverance nothing was impoſſible. For having filled the Channel with the Stones and Rubbiſh of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge Beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a paſſage for his Army; and having once approached the Walls, ſo over-topped them with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at laſt he made himſelf Maſter of it, putting to the Sword all ſuch as reſiſted, and cauſing two thouſand of them to be hanged in cold Blood, all along the Shore, for a terror to others. This Rendition of the Town was divined by the *Southſayers*, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a Dream which he had not long before: For dreaming that he had diſported himſelf with *Satyrs*, the Diviners only making of one word two, found that Σάτυρος was no more than Σὰ Τύρος that is, *Tua Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her Riches and Beauties, ſhe became a Confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their Fortunes; endowed by them with the Privileges of their City, for her great Fidelity. Made in the beſt times of *Chriſtianity* the *Metropolitan* See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Biſhop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Biſhops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year Six hundred and thirty ſix, and having groaned under that yoak for the ſpace of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the laſt regained by *Guarimund*, Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*, in the Reign of the ſecond *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their aſſiſtance to it, *An.* 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine* in 1187; but finally brought under the *Turkiſh* Thraldom, *An.* 1289, (or as others ſay in 1292.) as it ſtill continueth. Now nothing but an heap of Ruins; but the very Ruins of it of ſo fair a Proſpect, as ſtriketh both Pity and Amazement into the Beholders, ſhewing them an exemplary Pattern of our human Frailty. Subject at the preſent to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the beſt of the *Levant*, but of no great trading. 3. *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* call'd *Sarphath*, ſituate on the Sea-Coaſt betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in Holy Writ for the Miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raiſing the poor Widow's Son; in Heathen Writers for the pureſt *Wines*, little inferior unto thoſe of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*: Of which, thus the Poet,

Vina mihi non ſunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quæque Sareptano *palmite miſſa bibas.*

In *Engliſh* thus:

I have no *Chian* or *Falernian* Wines,
Nor thoſe of *Gazas*, or *Sareptas* Vines.

4. *Sidon*, the ancienteſt City of all *Phœnicia*, and the moſt Northern of all thoſe which were aſſigned for the Portion of the Sons of *Aſſer*; beyond which the Country of *Phœnicia* having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-Coaſt, beginneth to open towards the Eaſt in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once cloſed up from the reſt of *Syria* with a very ſtrong Wall, long ſince demoliſhed. It was ſo call'd from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who firſt planted here; not (as ſome ſay) from *Sida* the Daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof; this City being mention'd in the Book of *Joſhua*, when no ſuch *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soil, defended with the Sea on one ſide, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*, from whence deſcended thoſe many Springs with which they watered and enriched their moſt pleaſant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are ſaid to be the firſt makers of *Cryſtal Glaſs*, the Materials of the Work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fuſible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Workmen, both for Stone and Timber, in their

ſeveral Buildings of the Temple. The People hereof ſo flouriſhing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zachariah, chap.* 9. *v.* 2. calleth them *the Wiſe Sidonians.* A City which at ſeveral times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heatheniſm*, *Tyre* being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when inſtructed in the *Chriſtian* Faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother Church. This City was taken by the *Saracens* in the Year of *Chriſt* 636, by the *Weſtern Chriſtians* under *Baldwin* in the Year 1103, rebuilt by St. *Lewis* King of *France* in 1250, and finally retaken by the *Saracens* in 1289. The City in thoſe times very ſtrong both by *Art* and *Nature*, having on the North-ſide a Fort or *Citadel* mounted on an inacceſſible Rock, and environed on all ſides by the Sea; which when it was brought under the command of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-ſide of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks*, with the reſt of this Country, from the Chriſtians, and ruined by thoſe often interchanges of Fortune, it only ſheweth now ſome marks of the Ancient greatneſs; the preſent *Sidon* ſtanding ſomewhat *Weſt* of the old, and having little worth a particular deſcription, in reſpect of what it was in her Ancient Glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or ſerving at the beſt for Gallies; with a poor *Blockhouſe*, rather for ſhew than ſervice: the Walls of no greater ſtrength, and as little beauty, and the Buildings ordinary; but that the *Moſque*, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are ſomewhat fairer than the reſt: yet gives a Title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greateſt Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5. *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergeſhi*, the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new Name from *Berith*, a *Phœnician* Idol herein worſhipped; and now called *Barutti*. Deſtroyed by *Tryphon* in the Wars of the *Syrians* againſt the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the Name of *Julia Felix*, *Auguſtus* giving it the Priviledges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified: and of no mean eſteem in the time of the Chriſtians, when made an Epiſcopal See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a Place of no great ſtrength, not aimed at by every new Invader, it hath ſped better than the reſt of theſe Cities (though ſtronger than this) retaining ſtill her being, though not all her beauties; well ſtored with Merchandize, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call St. *George*'s, in which there is a Caſtle, and in that an Oratory of the ſame Name alſo: All ſacred to St. *George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the Dragon, and thereby delivered a King's Daughter; but what King's I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblis*, ſometimes the Habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and thence called *Hevæa*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, Father and Grandfather of *Adonis* by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already ſpoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of ſuch eſteem in the Primitive Times of Chriſtianity, that it was made a Biſhop's See; deſolate and of no repute ſince it loſt that Honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7. *Orthoſia*, called alſo *Antaradus*, becauſe oppoſite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract; but in After-Ages called *Tortoſa*, and by that Name well known in the Hiſtories of the Holy Wars, undertaken by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*: To whom it made ſuch ſtout and notable reſiſtance, that though beſieged on all ſides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, ſitting down before it) yet after Three Months hard ſiege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themſelves with ſpoiling the adjoining Country. 8. *Tripolis*, ſeated in a rich and delightful Plain, more fruitful than can be imagined; one of which Fruits they call by the Name of *Ammazza Franchi*, i.e. *Kill Frank*, becauſe the *Weſtern Chriſtians* whom they call by the Name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is ſaid to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis* no leſs than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town it ſtandeth about two Miles from the Sea, at the Foot of Mount *Libanus*; ſo called becauſe built by the joint Purſes of three Cities; that is to ſay, *Tyrus*, *Sydon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Epiſcopal Sees, belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Tyre* in the Primitive Times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal account by the time that the *Weſtern Chriſtians* warred in the *Holy Land*: When conquer'd by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their Empire, which were *Jeruſalem* for *Paleſtine*, *Edeſſa* for *Comagena*, or *Meſopotamia*; *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed at the firſt taking of it, to the cuſtody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe* in *France*; whoſe Poſterity, whilſt it laſted, had from hence the Title of Earls of *Tripolis*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath ſped better than any of thoſe parts, retaining ſtill as much in ſtrength and beauty as ever it had, if not grown greater by the ruin of all the reſt. Situate two Miles from the Sea, as before is ſaid; but not above half a Mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the *Weſt* ſide of it: Compaſſed with a Wall, and fortified with ſeven Towers, of which the Fourth is commonly call'd the Tower of *Love*, becauſe built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in Bed with a *Turkiſh* Woman, for which he had forfeited his Life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring Bank of Sand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Prophecy which ſaith, *It ſhall be quite choaked*: On both ſides of it many Storehouſes for the Merchant to ſtow his Goods in, and Shops to ſell them: the way from hence unto the City, having on both ſides very pleaſant Gardens, more curiouſly kept, than uſually amongſt the *Turks*. The Town it ſelf ſtretched out in length from *South* to *North*, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleaſant Springs into the Chief of their Gardens: in which, and in thoſe towards the Haven, and on other ſides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great ſtore of Silkworms, ſelling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their Buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the *Eaſt*-ſide of the City, are built two Bridges; and on the *South*-ſide a ſtrong Caſtle mounted on an Hill, built by the *French* when they had the cuſtody hereof: now Carriſoned for the *Grand Signior* with two hundred *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the moſt part dwelling in this Town, and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither ſome forty Years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced, and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phœnicians* were deſcended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being deſcendants of that Stock, they were at the firſt governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their Families, whom they honoured (as moſt Nations did) with the Title of Kings. But moſt of the *Canaanitiſh* Kings being overcome and ſlain by *Joſhua*, *Agenor* a ſtout and prudent man, one of thoſe many Kings, which commanded in thoſe parts of the Country, ſeeing how impoſſible it was to reſiſt that Enemy, borrowed ſome Aid from *Egypt*, where he had his Breeding, to make good the

Sea-Coaſts of his Country; in which the *Philiſtims*, who interpoſed upon thoſe Coaſts betwixt him and *Ægypt*, concurred alſo with him. By which aſſiſtance, and by the fortifying of *Sydon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace* (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Country that were then in being, he did not only preſerve his own Eſtate from the preſent danger, but left it ſo aſſured to the Kings ſucceeding, that neither *Solomon*, nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Iſrael*, durſt attempt upon them. To *Agenor* ſucceeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his Elder Brother, going into *Greece* in ſearch of his Siſter *Europa*, raviſhed by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his Death) from whom, as ſome conceive, this Country had the Name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my ſelf for another reaſon of this Name, which I like much better, yet I ſhall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*, who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were ſuch Giantly men) which muſt firſt be contracted *in Beanack*, then by the *Grecians* turn'd into *Pheanac*, and at laſt into *Phœnix*. Such farfetch'd and extorted Originations never pleaſe my Fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old receiv'd Opinions touching the firſt Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant Reaſon to perſuade me otherwiſe, than ſtrain my ſelf ſo far for a new Invention, or hearken unto thoſe that do. But for what cauſe ſoever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is, that they were a very active and induſtrious People, trading in moſt parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage* in *Africk*, were of their Foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bochartus*, there was no Iſland or Sea-Coaſt in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *Britiſh* Ocean, wherein they did not keep ſome Factory, or erect ſome *Colony*. What Kings ſucceeded *Phœnix* in a conſtant and continued courſe, I can no where find. Moſt like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince; and that beſides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were ſome others who called themſelves Kings of *Phœnicia* alſo, as well as they. Of which ſort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pigmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did alſo *Belus*, who gave ſome part of that Iſle to *Teucer*, as is ſaid before. There is alſo found mention of one *Phaſis*, a *Phœnician* King, at ſuch time as the *Græcians* conquer'd *Troy*. After him none, till the ſubjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramneſtes*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in ſucceeding times, being Tributaries to the *Perſian*, and no abſolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preſerve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre* came in a ſhort time to be of very great repute, and to poſſeſs themſelves of the Coaſts of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby, and by the benefit of their Trade and Shipping, they grew rich and powerful, and of great conſideration in Affairs of the World. The Names and Hiſtory of whom I ſhall here ſubjoin, in this enſuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *TYRE*.

A.M.

1 *Abibalus*, as *Joſephus*, *Abemalus*, as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the Son of *Syrach* mentioned, *Eccleſ.* 46. 18.

2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Euſebius* ſaith, compelled to pay Tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Pſal.* 83. 7.

2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, Confederate with *David*, to whom he ſent Cedars, with Carpenters and Maſons, towards his Buildings in *Jeruſalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebuſites*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the Temple; much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955 4 *Baleaſtartus*, or *Bazorus*, ſucceeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962 5 *Abdaſtartus*, Son of *Baleaſtartus*, ſlain by the four Sons of his own Nurſe, having reigned nine Years; the eldeſt of which four did for the ſpace of Twelve Years uſurp the Kingdom.

2983 6 *Aſtartus*, Brother of *Abdaſtartus*, recovered the Kingdom to his Houſe, out of the hands of the *Uſurpers*. 12.

2995 7 *Aſtorinus*, or *Athorinus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the Younger Brother of *Aſtartus*. 9.

3004 8 *Phelles*, the Brother of theſe Three Kings, and youngeſt Son of *Baleaſtartus*, reigned eight Months only.

9 *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *King*. 16. 13. Son of *Aſtorinus*, ſlew his Uncle *Phelles*, and ſo regained his Father's Throne; before which he was the *High Prieſt* of the Goddeſs *Aſtaroth*, or *Aſtarta*, (a Dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezebel*, the Wife of *Ahab*, ſo often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Son of *Ethbaal*. 6.

3043 11 *Mettimus*, by ſome called *Matginus*, Son of *Badezar*, and the Father of *Eliſa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the Son of *Mettimus*, who ſlew *Sicheus* the Husband of his Siſter *Eliſa*, to get his riches, but yet was cozened of his prey: his Siſter *Eliſa* accompanied with her Brother *Barca* (the Founder of the Noble *Barcine* Family, of which *Annibal* was, and her Siſter *Anna*, flying into *Africk*; where ſhe built the renowned City of *Carthage*. The Names of his Succeſſors we find not till we come to

13 *Elulæus*, deſcended from a Son of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salamanaſſer*, the *Aſſyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.

14 *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as *Daniel*, and to know all ſecrets, as ſaith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *Chap.* 28. *v.* 1, 2. And yet not wiſe enough to preſerve his Kingdom from *Nabuchadonoſor*; who after a Siege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and ſubjected it unto his Empire.

15 *Baal*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Ethbaal* the Second, but a *Tributary* to the *Babylonians*.

After whoſe Death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by ſuch Titular Kings only as were ſent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sydon* did recover breath in the Fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unſetledneſs of the *Perſian*; yet being of the *Perſian* Faction, and having dependance on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore depoſed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*; in the taking whereof he had ſpent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Aſia*.

After this time *Phœnicia* being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the Fortune of the whole, ſubject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the Houſe of *Saleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; ſubject to the *Conſtantinopolitans* till the fatal Year 636. when ſubdued by the *Saracens*.

racens. Succeſſively conquered by the *Turks*, *Chriſtians*, and after their expulſion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the reſt of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the firſt, united to the *Turkiſh* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Druſians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have ſpoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath* the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or Princes ; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who ſo reſolutely reſiſted *Ibrahim Baſſa*, *Anno* 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or reſidence at *Andirene*, a ſtrong place ſituate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he ſent to make his peace unto the abovenamed *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuſes, 20 Packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a ſecond time he preſented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuſes, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Bufles, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By theſe rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the preſent *Emir* of *Sidon* ; who ſince the year 1600. hath reduced almoſt all the Countries belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire ; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Soffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his ſeat of reſidence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, Mount *Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This preſent *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long ſince driven out of his Countrey by the *Turk*, and forced to fly to *Florence* : but he again recovered his own, laid ſiege to *Damaſcus*, and cauſed a notable Rebellion in *Aſia* ; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having poſſeſſed himſelf of the City and Caſtle of *Damaſcus*, prepared for the taking of *Hieruſalem* alſo ; threatning to make the Chriſtians once more Maſters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he ſped afterward, and whether his Son, as ſtout and valiant as himſelf, hath ſince his death ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, I am not able to ſay : having of late heard nothing of them.

SYRIA PROPRIA.

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* eſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Palmyrene* ; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* ; on the North, with *Cilicia* ; on the South with *Phœnicia*, and ſome part of *Cælo-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and ſworn Enemy to *Adadezer* King of *Aram-Sobah* : who hearing of the great diſcomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, ſent his Son *Joram*, or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Preſents to him, as well to congratulate his ſucceſs, as to be aſſured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in theſe parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Paleſtine* (which we ſhall meet withal in the courſe of this work) either built by him or his Poſterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am perſuaded to believe by theſe following reaſons, *viz.* 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoyned together, as in *Iſa.* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, *viz.* *Where are the gods of* Hamath *and* Arphad ? 2 *Kings* 18. 34. *The Kings of* Hamath, *and the King of* Arphad, *Iſa.* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Iſland over-againſt the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Countrey ſo called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus* ; by which this Iſle was known unto them. This River is ſmall, and ariſeth from mount *Libanus*, and falleth into the Sea between *Tripoli* the South, and the *Orentes* the North, but nearer *Tripoli* ; and it ſeparated *Syria Seleucidis* from *Cælo-Syria*, as *Strabo* ſaith, *lib.* 16*th* ; and the Iſland at *Avad* is a Rock of Seven Stadias (almoſt one *Engliſh* mile) in compaſs, ſurrounded by the Sea, and nobly built with Houſes of great heigth in his time ; it lay ſeven miles from the Shoar and had no freſh water but what fell from Heaven, or was fetched from the Continent. This City was built by the *Sidonians*, and was of old a diſtinct Kingdom ; and was very conſiderable afterwards though ſubject to the Kings of *Perſia*, *Greece* and the *Romans*, but is now utterly periſhed. 2*ly.* By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the Eaſt, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes uſe to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the moſt part were in open War. Of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10. and 1 *Chro.* 8. 9, 10. 3*dly.* From the authority of St. *Hierôm*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, *Chap.* 6. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria* :) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from ſome other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4*thly.* from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like paſſage in *Joſephus* the Hiſtoriographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hieruſalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Priſoner to *Nebuchadnezzar*, being then at *Riblath*, 2 *King.* 2. 6. to *Riblath in the Land of Hamath*, *ver.* 21. where the Poor Prince firſt ſaw his Children ſlain before his face, and then miſerably deprived of ſight, that he might not ſee his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Joſephus* where this ſad Tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* or (*Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq. l.* 10. *c.* 10. And if we ask Saint *Hierom* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc* Antiochiam *vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On theſe grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited ; though there were other Towns and Territories of the ſame name alſo.

The Countrey is naturally fertile ; the hedges on the high-way ſides affording very good fruits, and the adjoyning fields affording to the Paſſenger the ſhade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally ſo, it would not be much helped by Art or Induſtry, as being very meanly peopled, and thoſe few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their ſheep are commonly fair and fat, but ſo overladed in the tail, both with fleſh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no ſmall difficulty. *Pliny* obſerves it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good ſtore of wool upon them, *Natur. Hiſt. l.* 8. *c.* 48. and Modern Travellers report that the Tails of theſe ſheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and ſometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath alſo been affirmed of the ſheep of *Paleſtine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the Reaſon why the rumps and tails of ſheep (and of no beaſt elſe) were ordained to be offered up in ſacrifice, of which *Lev.* 3. 9. But beſides the ſtore of Wool which they have from the ſheep, they have alſo great plenty of Cotten Wool, which groweth there abundantly ; with the ſeeds whereof they ſow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The ſtalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as rough as a Bean ; the head round and bearded, in the ſize and ſhape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a ſtone : which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white ſoft *Bombaſt*, intermixed with ſeeds ; which parted with an inſtrument, they keep the ſeeds for another ſowing, and ſell the Wool unto the Merchant : a greater quantity thereof iſſuing from that little ſhell, than can be imagined by thoſe that have not ſeen it.

The people heretofore were very induſtrious eſpecially about their Gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increaſe of their Herbs, and Plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But withal they were obſerved to be very gluttonous, ſpending whole days and nights in feaſting; great ſcoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and ſubtle in their dealings, not eaſily to be truſted but on good ſecurity: and ſo were the *Phœnicians*, their next neighbours alſo. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* ſpeaketh of, Σύροι πρὸς φοίνικας, *Syri contra Phœnices*, uſed by them when two crafty Knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted alſo to be ſuperſtitious, great Worſhippers of the Goddeſs *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Goddeſs, whatſoever ſhe was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a Womaniſh and Effeminate Nation, prone unto tears, and ſuch as on the death of their Friends would hide themſelves in caves from the ſight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconſtant, lovers of Plays and publick Paſtimes, and eaſily ſtirred up into Innovations. But at this time, they are almoſt beaten out of all theſe humours, having been ſo often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown ſervilely officious to them that govern them: not without cauſe, defective in that part of induſtry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we muſt obſerve, that this Character of the people, and that of the Countrey belong not to this part alone, excluſively of thoſe which follow; but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phœnicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it ſelf. The whole by *Ptolomy* divided, beſides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cœlo-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and Subdiviſions, as 1 *Pieria*. 2 *Caſiotis*, from the hills adjoyning. 3 *Seleucis*. 4 *Apimene*. 5. *Laodicene*. 6. *Cyrrheſtica*. 7 *Chalcidice*. And 8 *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he muſters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of ſome note, moſt of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of ſuch places as antient were, or at this preſent are, of moſt obſervation and importance in the courſe of Story: with reference notwithſtanding to the ſubdiviſions made by *Ptolomy*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrrheſtica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Caſiotis*, and the Territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria-Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

Firſt then to begin with thoſe Cities which lye moſt towards the Eaſt, we have in *Cyrreſtica*, 1 *Zeugma*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the paſſage of *Alexander* the *Great*, who there paſſed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. The City is now periſhed, but the Ruins of a Bridge built here in after times by the *Romans* are ſtill viſible. *Pliny* ſaith on the other ſide of the River lay *Apamia*, the Capital of *Meſopotamia*. 2 *Barrœa*; ſuppoſed by ſome both antient and modern Writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*; but the poſition of the place agreeth not with that ſuppoſition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Coſmograpkers*, in the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and the 38 of *Latitude*: whereas *Berrœa* is aſſigned by *Ptolomy*, to the 36 degree of *Latitude*, and the 71 of *Longitude*. Beſides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is ſituate, keepeth it ſelf almoſt on an even courſe in the *Latitude* of 37, between 20 and 30 minutes over: which is more by a degree and a half than the ſight aſſigned unto *Berrœa*. *Ptolomy* placeth it on the River *Singas* and makes it to run from S. W. to N. E. but it is probable however, *Aleppo* ſtands much more to the North, and that it ſprung out of the Ruins of *Berrœa*. 3 *Cybros*, as in the *Latin* Copies of *Ptolomy*, miſtook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrrheſtica*. 3 *Heraclea*, near which *Minerva* had a Temple; in which, as in that ſacred to her in *Laodicea*, they uſed once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a Sacrifice, but afterwards on the ſight of that groſs impiety, changed it to an *Hart*. 5 *Regia*, now *Rugia*, two days journey from *Antioch*, took by the Chriſtians in the beginning of the Wars for the *Holy Land*. 6 *Hierapolis*, of great renown in thoſe dark times of Ignorance and Idolatry for the *Syrian Goddeſs* therein worſhipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy City*: being formerly by the *Grecians* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the firſt ſeats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhat*, and from him denominated. The *Goddeſs* ſo eſteemed of in thoſe wretched times, that from all parts, *Aſſyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and coſtly offerings. *Nero* himſelf, who ſcoffed at all Religions elſe, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midſt of the City, compaſſed with a double wall, about the heighth of 300 fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of ſuch a fragrant and ſweet-ſmelling wood, that the cloaths of them which came thither retained the ſcent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places incloſed for Oxen, and Beaſts of ſacrifice; and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their ſacred fiſhes: the Prieſts attending here for their ſeveral Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, beſides many more ſubſervient Miniſters. The tricks and juglings of theſe Prieſts to deceive the People, he that liſt to ſee, may find them copiouſly deſcribed in the *Metamorphoſis* of *Apuleius*: which changing but the names and times, may ſerve for a relation of thoſe gulleries and Arts of *Leger-demain* which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practiſed in the Church of *Rome*. 7 *Chaliban*, whence the parts adjoyning were called *Chalybanotis*; conceived by *Poſtellus* and ſome others to be *Chalepium*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground; this City having one degree leſs of Northern Latitude, than *Barrœa* had. 8 *Barbariſſus*, in the ſame ſubdiviſion, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9. *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwiſe memorable. 10. *Telmediſſa*, another Town of the ſame diviſion, and as little famous. 11 *Seleucia*, ſo named from the Founder of it, the firſt Eaſtern Monarch of that Race, and the greateſt Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, ſixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochius*, ſix by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his firſt Wiſe; beſides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Seleucis*. 12 *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoyning is called *Laodicene*: built by him in the place where formerly ſtood the City *Rhamantus*, ſo called from a certain Shepherd, who being ſtruck with a flaſh of lightning, cryed out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to ſay, *Deus ab excelſo*; before which time it had been named *Leuca Acte*, from the whiteneſs of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is ſituate: the Countrey round about commended anciently for the beſt Wines, and choice of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Apamea*, ſo named in honour of *Apamia*, the Wiſe of *Seleucus*; which together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucia* before mentioned, having the ſame Founder, and maintaining a ſtrict League of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Siſters. From this the Countrey near is called *Apamene*. 14 *Emeſa*, (now *Hamſe*) the Epiſcopal See of *Euſebius*, hence called *Emeſens*, who flouriſhed in the time of *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine*: in whoſe name are extant certain Homilies. juſtly conceived to be of a later date. The City ſeated in a ſpacious and fruitful Plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant and chearful Riverets: once of great note, as may eaſily be conjectured from the walls hereof which are ſtill perfect and entire, built of poliſhed Stone, and of very large circuit; but the Dwelling-Houſes ſo decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy of obſervation. *M. Thevenot*, p. 1. p 223. gives this account of its preſent State: It is a pretty Town, the Walls whereof are of Black and White Stones, intermixed and ſtrengthened with 26 Round Towers. It hath 6 Gates, 5 Churches, the principal of which is very great and noble, which was built by St. *Helen*, the Mother of *Conſtantine the Great*, and continued in the *Chriſtians* hands till within 160 Years, but is now a Moſque, *&c.* This is now the only Town in that part of *Syria* as is honoured by a *Sangiack* under the *Baſha* of *Tripoli.* 15 *Epiphania*, in the Cantred or ſubdiviſion of *Caſiotis*; called at firſt *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the Founder of it; and upon that account miſtaken by St. *Hierome* for another Town of the ſame Name, in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; ſo different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we ſhall ſhew hereafter when we come to *Paleſtine*) that they can by no means be the ſame. But that old Town being gone to ruin, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphama*; obeyed herein as *Joſephus* telleth us by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* ſtill called it *Amatha*, as in former times, *Antiq. l.* 1. *c.* 7. 16 *Lariſſa*, which ſtill preſerveth its old Name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, eſpecially for the death of *Baldwin* the firſt, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1118. 17 *Gebal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancient Writers, ſituate on the *South* of *Laodicea*, from which Twelve Miles diſtant; mentioned *Pſal.* 83. as a Confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumciſed Nations, in their hatred and deſigns againſt the *Iſraelites*; at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Wars.* 18 *Albaria*, diſtant Two Days march from *Antioch*, remembred alſo in the Wars of the *Holy Land.* 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-Founders of *Tripolis*, ſituate in a rocky Iſland, of a Mile in compaſs, directly oppoſite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and diſtant from the Continent about Twenty *Stadia's.* So called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that Name in the Prophet *Ezek.* 27. 8, 11. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, containing not this Iſland only, but ſome part of the Continent; eſpecially about *Antaradus* (ſo called becauſe built over againſt it) ſituate on the Northern Banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Phœnicia.* 30 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; ſo named of *Daphne*, one of the Miſtreſſes of *Apollo*, who was here worſhipped by the name of *Apollo Daphnæus*, and had here his *Oracle* and his *Groves*, with other the Additaments appertaining unto thoſe Idolatries; as much eſteemed of, but more ſumptuous than thoſe of *Delphos.* The Grove about Ten Miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypreſſes*, and other Trees, ſo tall and cloſe to one another, that they ſuffered not the Sun to enter in his greateſt heats. The Ground perpetually covered with the choiceſt Tapiſtry of Nature, watered with many a pleaſant ſtream, derived from the *Caſtalian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the moſt excellent Fruits both for Taſte and Tincture, to which the Wind and Air participating, and the ſweetneſs of the place did add a moſt delightful influence.

A place deviſed for Pleaſure, but abuſed to Luſt: he being held unworthy of the Name of a Man, who transformed not himſelf unto a Beaſt, or trod on this unholy Ground without his *Curtezan*; inſomuch as they which had a care of their Good Names, did forbear to haunt it. A full deſcription of it he that liſts to ſee, may find in the Third Book and Eighteenth Chapter of *Socrates*'s *Eccleſiaſtical* Hiſtory, who is copious in it. The Temple ſaid to have been built by *Seleucus* alſo, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperor; and therefore much reſorted to by *Julian the Apoſtata*, for that purpoſe alſo. But the Body of *Babylas the Martyr*, and Biſhop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the Command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cæſar* by *Conſtantius*, the Devil and his Oracles were both frighted away, as the Devil did himſelf confeſs to *Julian*; who being deſirous to learn here the ſucceſs of his intended Expedition into *Perſia*, received this Anſwer, That no *Oracle* could be given ſo long as thoſe Divine Bones were ſo near the Shrine. Nor was it long after before the *Idol* and the *Temple* were conſumed by a Fire from Heaven, as was avowed by thoſe who obſerved the Fall of it; though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Chriſtians*, and in revenge cauſed many of their Churches to be burned to Aſhes. 21 *Antioch*, ſituate in that part hereof which is called *Caſiotis*, firſt built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Aſia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finiſhed and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and ſlain him at the Battel of *Iſſus.* Built near the place, and partly out of the Ruins of an Ancient City, in the Second *Book* of *Kings* called *Riblah in the Land of Hamath*; *Hamath the Great*, in the ſixth of *Amos*; by *Joſephus* and the *Syrians*, *Rablata*; memorable in thoſe days for the Tragedies of *Jehoahas* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*, the firſt of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*, 2 *King.* 23. 33. the other of his Eyes and Children, by the Command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was ſaid before. In following Times it was by ſome *Greek* Writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearneſs of it to that *Grove*: as afterwards in the Times of *Chriſtianity*, by the Name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God; either from the many Miracles there done in the Primitive Time, or from the great improvement which the *Chriſtian Faith* did here receive, where the *Diſciples* firſt obtained the Name of *Chriſtians.* The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*; and in the flouriſh and beſt Fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary Reſidence of the *Præfect* or Governor of the Eaſtern Provinces; next, of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, who had not only the ſuperintendency over the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, tho that large enough, but alſo of the *Dioceſes* of *Ægypt*, *Aſia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending ſo his Juriſdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured alſo with the Reſidence of many of the *Roman* Emperors, eſpecially of *Verus* and *Falens*, who ſpent here the greateſt part of their Times; and from the firſt dawning of the *Goſpel*, with the Seat of the *Patriarch.* A Title of ſuch eminency in all Times of the Church, the ſecond in accompt to the See of *Rome* ('till *Conſtantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedency of it) that there are at this time no leſs than four great Prelates which pretend unto it; that is to ſay, the *True Patriarch*, governing the *Chriſtians* of thoſe parts, whom they call *Syrians*, or *Melchites*; the *Pſeudo-Patriarchs* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the great credit to their Schiſm, do aſſume this Title; and finally, a *Titular Patriarch* nominated by the *Pope*, who ſince the Time that the *Weſtern Chriſtians* were poſſeſſed of theſe *Eaſtern* Countries, hath aſſumed a Power unto himſelf of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hieruſalem*, and this City of *Antioch.*

The City ſeated on both ſides of the River *Orontes*, about Twelve Miles diſtant from the Shores of the *Medi-*

terranean; the River *Pharſar* paſſing on the *South*-ſide of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compaſſed with a double Wall, the outermoſt of which was of Stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and ſixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Caſtle at the *Eaſt*-end thereof; and on the other ſide defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoining a deep Lake coming out of the River *Pharſar*, before mentioned; adorned in former times with many ſumptuous Palaces and magnificent Temples anſwerable to the Reputation of ſo great a City; till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamalucks*, Men careleſs of all State and Beauty in their faireſt Cities, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Weſtern Chriſtians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a Siege of ſeven Months, *June* 3. *Anno* 1098. confirmed in their poſſeſſion by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very ſight hereof within few days after (*June* 28) obtained againſt *Corbanas*, Lieutenant to the *Perſian Sultan*; in which, with the loſs of Four Thouſand and Two Hundred of their own, they ſlew a Hundred Thouſand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a Noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarrentum*; who by practicing with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the Chief Towers thereof, afterwards called *St. George*'s Tower, was ſecretly let into the City, and ſo made way for all the reſt. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as ſome ſay, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his Son about Ten Years after; ſucceeded in this Principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great Renown in thoſe *Holy Wars*; which laſt unfortunately ſlain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the Year 1120. *Baldwin* the ſecond having revenged his death by a ſignal Victory, joined this Eſtate to the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. Betrayed above ſixty Years after this, that is to ſay, in the Year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Ægypt* and *Damaſcus*, and therewithal no fewer than Five and Twenty Cities which depended on the Fortunes of it: The Glories of this Famous City ſo declining after this laſt *Tragedy* (but whether laid deſolate of ſet purpoſe, or deſtroyed by the injury of the Time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the Sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own ſad Ruins, hardly preſerving the repute of a ſorry Village. Such is the inſtability of all Worldly Glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the ſame day with *Antioch*.

Ass for the Story of his Province, as a State diſtinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembred) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Iſles adjoining. Vaſſals in Time ſucceeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-Coaſts hereof, and conſequently had great Influence on the Inlands alſo. And it continued in this State till the *Aſſyrian* Kings began to turn their Forces Weſtward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglath Pileſer*, after the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*; or by *Salmanaſſer*, after the deſtruction of that of *Iſrael*. The proud but dreadful vaunt which *Sennacherib*, the Succeſſor of thoſe mighty Monarchs made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* ſhews clearly, that thoſe Kingdoms had been conquer'd not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanaſſer* or *Tiglath Pileſer*. Afterwards, in the ſtruglings betwixt the *Babylonians* and *Ægyptians*, for the chief Command, it was a while at the devotions of the King of *Ægypt*, it being at *Reblatha* in this Province, that *Jehoahaz* King of *Judah* was put into Bonds, by the Command of *Pharoah Necho*, as was ſaid before. But *Necho* being not long after vanquiſhed by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown, and after followed the ſame Fortunes with the reſt of *Syria*.

3 COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the *Eaſt* with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the *Weſt*, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divided from *Cilicia*; on the *North* with *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Minor*; on the *South* with *Palmyrene*. Called alſo *Euphratenſis* and *Euphrateſia*, when a *Roman* Province, by reaſon of its ſituation, bordering on the River.

The Reaſon of the Name I find not amongſt my Authors; but find that many Learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria* which the *Scriptures* call *Syria Maacah*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron. cap.* 19. *v.* 6. gainſayed by others, becauſe they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manaſſes*, but with no great reaſon as I take it. For being it is joined (in 1 *Chron.* 19. *v.* 6. above mentioned) in the ſame action with *Meſopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not ſo only, but placed between them in the Method of that Holy Penman, I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural ſituation of them. Which agreeth very well with the ſite of *Comagena*, having *Meſopotamia* on the *Eaſt*, and *Aram-Sobah* on the *South*. Nor is it any ſtronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; than if a man ſhould ſay, That there is no ſuch Province as *Mansfield* in *High-Germany*, becauſe there is a Town of that Name in *England*; or no ſuch place as *Savoy* amongſt the *Alpes*, becauſe there is a Houſe of that Name in *London*.

As for the People hereof, beſides what they have common with the reſt of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divination*, and for that cauſe derided thus in the Sixth *Satyr* of *Juvenal*.

Spondet amatorem tenerum vel divitis orbi
Teſtamentum ingens, calidæ pulmone Columbæ
Tractato, Armenius *vel* Comagenus *Aruſpex.*
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli,
Interdum & Pueri. Faciat quod deferat ipſe.

Thus Engliſhed by my honoured Friend
Sir *Robert Stapylton*.

A childleſs rich man's Legacy, or young Love,
Are found i'th' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Soothſayers; they look into
A dead Chick's breaſt, the ſame the *Armenians* do,
They view the Entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Child perhaps: They do it, and then preach.

Chief places of this part. 1 *Samoſata*, the *Metropolis* or Head City of it, when a *Roman* Province, ſituate near the Banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a Bridge for paſſage into *Meſopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the Birth-place of *Lucian*, that prophane Scoffer of *Chriſtianity*, though otherwiſe a man of quick Wit, and of great Abilities: as alſo of *Paulus Samoſatenus*, *Patriarch* of *Antioch*, condemned of *Hereſie* in a Council holden in his own City, *Anno* 273. (by the great and moſt Learned Biſhops of that Age, there aſſembled together) for teaching, That our Saviour was no other than a Natural Man; but neither God, nor the Son of God, as the *Scriptures* teſtifie. Now call'd *Scempſat* by the *Turks*. 2 *Germanicia* (by ſome called *Germanicopolis*) on the other ſide of the Country near the Mountain *Amanus*; no leſs unfortunate than the former, in being the Birth-place of *Neſtorius*, *Patriarch* of *Conſtantinople*, who troubling the Peace of the Church with *Heterodoxies*, and Impertinent Niceties about the Bleſſed Mother of *Chriſt*, as alſo about the Nature and Perſon of *Chriſt* himſelf, was thereupon condemned of

Hereſie in the Council of *Epheſus*, *Anno* 435. In former times called *Adata*, as ſome write *Adapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Cæſar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus*, teſtified by this Inſcription extant in *Onuphrius* viz. *COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, SACRA AUGUSTA FOELIX.* 3 *Singa*, ſo called from the River upon which it is ſituate. 4. *Antiochia penes Taurum*, ſo called becauſe ſeated at the foot of that Mountain, to differ it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5. *Pinara*, one of the Chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6. *Doliche*, a ſmall Town, but made an Epiſcopal See in the beſt times of the Church, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councils of *Antioch* and *Conſtantinople*, in which there is ſome mention of the Biſhops of it. 7 *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Countrey, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *King*. 17. 24. It was thus called, as ſome ſay, from *Halep*, which in the Language of thoſe parts ſignifieth Milk, afforded liberally by the Rich Paſtures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the firſt Letter of the *Hebrew* Alphabet, becauſe the firſt in eſtimation of the Cities of *Syria*: Moſt probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, who did here many notable Exploits, and amongſt others, in or near the Ruins of ſome old Town of theſe parts, not yet agreed on (in caſe it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the Banks of the River *Singas*, which riſing out of the Hill *Pierius*, with many windings and turnings, runneth through *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. All our Engliſh Merchants who have lived in this City, ſay the River ends in a Bog or Moraſs about ten Miles below this City: But *Knowles* in his *Turkiſh* Hiſtory *pag.* 357. agrees exactly with what is ſaid above; and the Maps of *Syria* make the River fall into the *Euphrates*. Deſtroyed by *Haalon* King of the *Tartars* at ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reaſon of the commodious ſituation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the World. Situate in the midſt betwixt *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turky* on the one ſide, and the *Perſian* Territories on the other: it was made choice of for the Staple of the Eaſtern Commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then brought hither by Caravans by Land. A City of great Trade at preſent, the *Engliſh* Merchants (amongſt others which frequent the ſame) having here three Houſes for the Stowage and diſpoſing of their Commodities, and a chief Officer or *Superintendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Conſul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the Trade hereof in the former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to thoſe Eaſtern Countries, ſince followed by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and other Nations. The building of it low, but of one Story high (as in moſt Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaiſt'red to walk upon; and with Arches before their doors or Houſes: as well to paſs dry under them in time of Rain, as to ſhew their Wares. Pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Gardens, with the ſweet ſmells whereof very much refreſhed; the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*; ſafe rather in the remoteneſs of it from any Enemy, than the ſtrength of the place, as being nothing leſs than well fortified. Near one of the Gates they ſhew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *George*'s (whom of all the *Chriſtian* Saints they only worſhip) before which they maintain a Lamp which burns continually. Monſieur *Tavernier*, *pag.* the *57th* of his Travels ſaith, it is not known what was the Ancient name of it; but it fell into the hands of the *Sarazens* in the 15th year of the *Hegyra*. *A. C.* 637. as all the *Arabian* Writers agree. It ſtands upon 4 Hills, the higheſt of which is in the middle covered with a Caſtle of Freeſtone, and is about 600 Paces in circuit, but of no defence, though it has a Moat 6 or 7 Fathom deep, half of which is filled with naſty Water, the reſt dry. The City is about 3 miles in compaſs, well watered, and ſuppoſed to contain 250000 Souls, whereof about 40000 are Chriſtians. And the *Baſſa* is one of the greateſt in the Empire of the *Turks*, his Revenue 817772 Aſpers a year; he has under him nine Sangiacks, and five Caſtles. Mr. *Knowles* ſuppoſeth it to have ſprung out of the ruins of *Hieropolis*. *Gabriel Sionita* makes the compaſs of this City ſix Miles, Water'd and Ditched but not ſtrong. It is at this day, ſaith he, (who in 1619 Tranſlated and Printed the *Nubian* Geographer in Latin) a ſplendid rich City, better Traded than in former times, and next *Conſtantinople* and *Grand Cairo*, the beſt City in the *Ottoman* Empire, and the Miſtreſs of the Eaſt. 8 *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli*, and *Aleppo*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *King*. *chap.* 17. 12. A City of a large circuit, pleaſantly ſeated on two Hills, which give it a fair proſpect over ſix of the neighbouring Villages; a thing not to be boaſted of, as the World now goeth, by the many the *Syrian* Cities. On a third Hill once ſtood a Caſtle, now decayed, ruinous, beneath it a fair River which runs gently by it; environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees, and very good fruits. 9 *Chalmodora*, ſeated by *Ptolomy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruins now remaining, unleſs the name be changed to 10 *Byrrha*, as perhaps it may be: that being made by *Ptolomy*, the moſt Northern Town of *Comagena*; this the utmoſt Town which the *Ægyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Perſia*. Memorable for an old Ceremony here uſed by thoſe *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themſelves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Ægypt*, till in this place in ſolemn pomp in the ſight of their Army, they had forced their Horſe into the River, and made him drink of the waters of it: teſtifying by that Ceremony, as well the extent of their Dominions, as their readineſs to defend the ſame againſt all Invaders. A Ceremony performed with great State by *Camſon Gaurus*, in the War betwixt him and *Selimus* the firſt. But for all this he loſt the field, and his life to boot in the fight near *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his Victory, but opened him a fair way to the conqueſt of *Ægypt*, which ſoon after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11 *Hena*, and 12 *Ivah*, with their ſeveral Territories, mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Iſa.* 37. 13. and 2 *King* 18. 34. it being probable, that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the *Jews* that dwell there ſay it was, that then the other two joyned together with it, muſt be hereabouts, though we find no tract of them in the old *Geographers*.

And if they were (as it ſeems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times, than the Kings of *Maacha*; unleſs perhaps it may be ſaid that the Kingdom of *Maacab* (or of *Aram-Maacab*) being broken in pieces, theſe petit States aroſe from the ruins of it. Of little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, whether entire or ſubdivided into parcels; but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* againſt *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confeſs (as one who lay more out of the danger than the reſt of the *Syrian* Confederates did) but ſufficient to engage him in the quarrel with them. Nor find we any thing after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Hena*, *Ivah* and *Sepharvaim* (who ſhared the greateſt part amongſt them) being ſwallowed up by the *Aſſyrians* (as the fore-mentioned Texts do expreſly ſay) ſome Colonies of the People hereof were ſent by *Salmanaſſer* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, to plant the deſolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, as appeareth plainly in 2 *King* 17. 24. A courſe in which the Conqueror dealt exceeding wiſely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Country, which otherwiſe might have been apt enough to revolt again; and ſtrengthning therewithal their Conqueſt in the Land of *Iſrael*, which otherwiſe had lain open to the next Invader, and yielded little or no profit to the publick Treaſury. More politick in this than the *Babylonians* in the like diſſolution and deſtruction of the Kingdom of *Judah*. After this time it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the laſt King hereof was ſubdued by the *Romans*. At what time all the reſt of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the poſſeſſion of *Antiochus*, Son of that *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Euſebes*, whom *Tigranes* had ſpoiled of his eſtates, was left unto him by the Conquerors with the Title of King. Continuing in his Line till the death of another *Antiochus*, the laſt King hereof, when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Cæſar*, as is ſaid by *Tacitus*: *Qu. Servæus* being ſent hither as the firſt *Roman Prætor* for the government of it; though *Sueton*, doth refer it to the times of *Veſpaſian*.

Tigranes was overcome by *Lucullus* in the year of *Rome* 684. The *Antiochus* here mentioned died about the year 770, and *Tiberius* thereupon ſent *Germanicus* into *Aſia*. It became a Kingdom again and was finally reduced into a Province in the year of *Rome* 826 by *Veſpaſian*.

4 *PALMYRENE*.

P*ALMYRENE* is bounded on the Eaſt, by the River *Euphrates*; on the Weſt, by *Syria* properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Cœlo-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deſerta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*: called *Syria Secunda*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the *Medicinal* waters ſpringing in many places of it. But before it had any of theſe names, it was in the Scriptures called *Arem-Sobah*, whereof *Adad-ezar* was King in the time of *David*, as we read 2 *Sam*. 8. 3. and 1 *Chron*. 18. 3.

The Country deſtitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, ſave that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furniſhed with thoſe hot Springs good for many Diſeaſes, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus*, lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum nuſquam viſitur flumen, at in locis plurimis aquæ ſuapte natura calentes emergunt, ad uſum aptæ multiplicium medelarum*. So he: The ſenſe whereof we had before.

Places of moſt obſervation, are 1 *Palmyra*, ſeated in a deſart and ſandy Plain one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderneſs*, mention of which is made 1 *Kings* 9. 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being ſuppoſed to be that City which is there called *Tadmar*, or *Tamar* in the *Vulgar Latin*. The cauſe for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as ſituate in the borders of either Empire; not fully ſetled in the *Roman*, till that they had ſubdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old name in ſhort prevailing above the new. 2 *Gezer*. 3 *Bethhoron* the upper. And 4 *Bethhoron* the nether, ſaid to be fenced Cities, with *Walls*, *Gates*, and *Bars*, 2 *Chron* 8. 4. And 5 *Baalath*; four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowledge, or called by new names in the time of *Ptolomy*, who ſaith nothing of them. 6 *Adada*, built as the name doth intimate, by ſome of the *Adads* Kings of this Countrey, or of *Damaſcus*, to which laſt made ſubject. 7 *Sura*, more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia Firma Sura*; which ſheweth that it was either repaired, or made a Colony by the Emperor *Veſpaſian*, whoſe fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Epiſcopal See alſo in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Council of *Conſtantinople*. 8 *Alamath*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawful for me to *criticize* upon my Author, I ſhould conceive to be *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is called *Hamath-Sobah*, 2 *Chron*. 8. 3. againſt which *Solomon* prevailed: the miſtake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha*, being not uneaſy in the *tranſcripts*. Confirmed herein by that paſſage in 2 *Chron*. 18. 3. where it is ſaid, that *David* ſmote *Hadad-ezar* King of *Sobah* unto *Hamath*, *as he went to eſtabliſh his Dominion by the River Euphrates*: By which it ſeemeth that *Hamath* ſtood upon that River, as the *Camatha* or *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* is ſaid to do. And if it were the ſame, as I think it was, I ſhould conceive it to be the chief Seat of thoſe Kings. and the principal City of this Kingdom: the word *Sobath*, being added to it, not only for diſtinctions ſake, but in way of eminency: But if the judicious Reader approve not this criticiſm, I ſhould next think that this *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* were that *Ælam*, or *Helaus*, next unto which *David* diſcomfited that great Army of the *Meſopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam*. 10. 16, 17. 9. *Raſapha*, a Town of note in the time of *Ptolomy*; but of greater in the Holy Scripture, where it it is repreſented to us by the name of *Reſeph*, *Iſa*. 3. 20. *Reſeph Civitas Syriæ*, as Saint *Hierom* hath it: and if a Town of *Syria*, then moſt like this. 10 *Betah*, and 11 *Berothai*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War againſt *Hadad-ezar*, 2 *Sam*. 8. 8. the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Barathene* of *Ptolomy*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia* the *Deſart*, to which it ſeems it was allotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the reſt, was once a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobah*, or of *Aram-Sobah*. The firſt King thereof, whoſe name occurs in Holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Cotemporary of *Saul* King of *Iſrael*, by whom diſcomfited in battel, as is ſaid, 1 *Sam*. 14. 47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command (as is ſaid 2 *Sam*. 10. 19.) conceived himſelf a fit match for *David*, and thereupon oppoſed his paſſage, *as he went to recover his border at the River Euphrates*. In which Action though he loſt a thouſand Chariots, and twenty thouſand Foot, and ſeven hundred Horſe, yet would he not ſo end the War: but firſt with the *Syrians* of *Damaſcus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their Confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Meſopotamians*, renewed the Quarrel. But being diſcomfited alſo in this laſt enterprize with the loſs of forty thouſand and ſeven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damaſcus*. The ſtory of this War we have in 2 *Sam*. *ch*. 8. *v*. 10, in 1 *Chron*. *ch*. 18. and 1 *King*. 11. 23, 24. yet were not the Kings of *Damaſcus* ſo well ſetled in it, but that *David* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Betah* and *Berothai*, and other pieces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Zobath* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the beſt Towns of it built by him to aſſure his Conqueſt. But the Kingdom of *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succeſſion, the Kingdom of *Zobah* fell unto thoſe of *Damaſcus*: and ſo continued till *Damaſcus* it ſelf was conquered by the Kings of *Aſſyria*: unleſs perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the ſecond is ſaid to have ſubdued (together with *Damaſcus* it ſelf) to the Crown of *Iſrael*, 2 *King*. 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Zobah*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the Affairs of this Country, till the Time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperor: during whoſe Reign, among the reſt who *cantoned* that Empire betwixt themſelves (commonly called the Thirty ty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and virtue aſſumed the Imperial Habit, and took unto him the *command* of theſe parts of *Syria*, together with *Meſopotamia*, and ſome other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*; againſt whom he had ſo good an hand, that he diſcomfited him in Battle, ſeiz'd upon his Treaſures, and took many of his Nobles, and moſt of his Concubines. For which great Acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after ſlain by *Mæonius* his Couſin German. Who by that Murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that Name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a moſt Maſculine Lady, not only preſerved the Principality of *Palmyrene* for the uſe of her Children; but took upon her both the *Purple Habit*, and the command of his Army: which ſhe managed with great wiſdom and gallantry, the reſt of the Time of *Gallienus*, all the Reigns of *Claudius* and *Quintillius*, his Two next Succeſſors. But vanquiſhed and took Priſoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happineſs to unite the broken Limbs of that Empire into as ſtrong a body as ever formerly) ſhe was led in Triumph through *Rome*. The Terror of her Name, and the unuſualneſs of the Sight, ſo generally heightning the expectation; *Ut ea ſpecie nihil unquam eſſet pompabilius*, ſaith *Trebellius Pollio*; That never any Shew was eſteemed ſo glorious. A Lady of ſo ſtrong a Vertue, and of ſuch command upon her ſelf, that ſhe is ſaid never to have made uſe of her Husband's Company when ſhe perceived her ſelf with Child. After this nothing ſingular in the Story of *Palmyrene*. But when all the reſt of *Syria* was ſubdued by the Chriſtians of the Weſt, this Province and the next only was made good againſt them by the *Turkiſh* Sultans of *Damaſcus*.

COELO-SYRIA.

COELO-SYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deſerta*; on the Weſt with the *Paleſtine*; on the *North* with *Palmyrene*, and ſome part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interpoſition of Mount *Libanus*; on the *South* with *Ituræa*, and *Arabia Deſerta* alſo.

This is the *Syria* ſo much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, called by the *Greeks*, *Cælo-Syria*, i. e. *Syria Cava*, becauſe partly ſituate in the hollow Vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and ſometimes alſo *Syro-Phenicia*, from the intermixture of thoſe people; as the *Phœnicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africk*, were called *Libo-Phenices*. By the *Romans* when made a diſtinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phœnice Libani*, or *Phœnicia Libanenſis*, to difference it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they call *Maritima*. But before all this by the *Hebrews* named *Aram-Damaſek*. *Syria Damaſcena* in the *Latin*, from *Damaſcus* the chief City of it: unleſs perhaps we ſhould rather ſay, that *Arem-Damaſek* contained only that which lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, the reſt being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Paleſtine* and *Arabia Deſerta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof are 1 *Abana*, and 2 *Pharfar*, the Rivers of *Damaſcus*, as the *Scripture* calleth them, 2 *King*. 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, ſpoken of already; the other that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Chryſorrhoas*, or the Golden Flood; which riſing in the Hills of this Country, paſſeth by *Damaſcus*, and ſo together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Alſadamus*, by the *Phœnicians* called *Syrion*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the *Eaſt-point* of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly *Southwards*, ſhutting up on that ſide the Land of *Iſrael*, whereof more in *Paleſtine*. 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the *South* parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deſerta*.

Towns of moſt conſideration in it: 1 *Heliopolis*, ſo called from an Image of the Sun there worſhipped in the Time of *Paganiſm*; now *Bellebec*, or (as ſome ſay) *Balbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eaſtward towards *Damaſcus*, which gave the Title of a King to *Ptolemy Mænæus*, and his Son *Lyſanias*, the Kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ituræa* in *Paleſtine*. But that Family being either expired or grown out of Favour, and *Abila* with *Ituræa* otherwiſe diſpoſed of; the Title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and Territory was given to *Herod*, Brother of *Agrippa*, the firſt, King of *Jewry*. Erroneouſly ſuppoſed by ſome Learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called *Chalcidice* takes denomination; that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolemy* a degree and a half more Eaſt than *Damaſcus*, and Two degrees more towards the *North*; whereas this *Chalcis* lieth on the *Weſt* of that City, in the ſhades of *Libanus*, and in the very ſame degree of *Northern Latitude*. 3 *Abila*, ſeated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis* from whence the Country round about it is called *Abalene*; given to *Lyſanias*, the Son of the former *Lyſanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, mentioned *Luke* 3. 1. with thoſe other Princes which ſhared *Paleſtine* amongſt them. Not that he was the Son of *Herod*, as anciently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late Times ſome very induſtrious men have been of opinion; but partly becauſe the Cities of the *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to thoſe of the Tribe of *Napthalim* (though never conquered or poſſeſſed by them) and ſo to be accounted a part of *Paleſtine*; and partly becauſe the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when *St. Luke* wrote that *Goſpel*, was poſſeſſed together with the reſt by King *Agrippa*. Reſtored (as it ſeemeth) to the former Family, after his deceaſe; for known it was by the name of *Abila Liſaniæ* in the Time of *Ptolemy*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the Victory which *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained near unto it, againſt *Alexander* King of *Jewry*, the Kingdom of *Syria* then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that Name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7 *Gadara*; a City mention'd by *Pliny*, *Lib*. 5, 6, 8. It ſtands upon the River *Hieromare* in *Manaſſes*, upon a Mountain, at the foot of which riſe Hot Springs. *Alexander Janæus*, King of the *Jews* took and ruined this City, *Joſeph*. 13. Ant. 19. *Pompey* rebuilt it, and *Gabinus* made it the 2d in Honour to *Jeruſalem*, *Joſeph*. Ant. 14. c. 11. 8 *Scythopolis*. This City was anciently called *Bethſan*, and *Nyſa*, and *Sandes* upon the River *Jordan*, at the *South* End of the Lake or Sea of *Galilee*. The *Philiſtians* hung on the Walls of this City the Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons. And the Inhabitants of it were no leſs cruel to the *Jews* in the *Roman* War than their Anceſtors had ever been, as *Joſephus* tells in the Hiſtory of his own Life. It is now a poor deſolate Village, but ſhews Ruins which teſtifie it was once a Rich Noble well-built Pile, by the Marble Pillars found amongſt the Rubbiſh. 9 *Geraſa*; and 10 *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolemy* as Cities of *Cælo-Syria*; but of right belonging unto *Paleſtine*, where we mean to take notice of them. 11 *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and anciently of ſuch eſteem, that the whole Country of *Damaſcus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5. 12 *Damaſcus*, ſituate in a large Plain environed with Hills, and watered with the River *Cryſorrhoas*, which with a great noiſe deſcendeth from the Mountains, and ſo abundantly ſerveth the City, that not only moſt of the Houſes have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have ſome Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enrich'd with plenty of moſt excellent Wines (the Vines hereof bearing Grapes all the Year long) and great ſtore of Wheat; as their Orchards with variety of moſt delicate Fruits: our *Damaſcenus*, (or *Pruna Damaſcena*, as the *Latins* call them) coming firſt from hence; as alſo our *Damask* Roſes. but infinite ſhort of their natural Sweetneſs, by the Tranſplantation. A place ſo ſurfeiting of Delights, ſo girt about with Odoriferous and curious Gardens, that the Vile Impoſtor *Mahomet* would never be perſuaded to come into it, for fear (as himſelf was uſed to ſay) leſt being raviſhed with the ineffable Pleaſures of it, he ſhould forget the Buſineſs he was ſent about, and make there his Paradice. But *Muhavias*, one of his Succeſſors, having no ſuch ſcruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the moſt part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiaſer* the Twentieth *Caliph*, about an Hundred Years after this Removal: The Regal Seat before that Time being at *Mecca*, *Cuſa*, or ſome other of the beſt Towns of *Arabia Fœlix*. The Chief Buildings of it, of late Times (till deſtroyed by the *Tartars*) were a ſtrong Caſtle, in the Opinion of thoſe Times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamarlane*, whom nothing was able to withſtand: and as Majeſtical a Church, garniſhed with Forty ſumptuous Porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanthorns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the ſaid *Tamarlane* moſt cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto the Ground. Repaired by the *Mamulucks* of *Ægypt* when Lords of *Syria*; it hath ſince flouriſhed in Trade, the people being induſtrious, and celebrated for moſt excellent Artizans; the branching of Satins, and fine Linnen, which we call by the Name of *Damasks*, being amongſt many others, one of their Inventions. Renowned in the *Old Teſtament* for the Kings hereof, and the Birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham*'s Steward (ſo honourably ancient was this City;) and in the New, for the Converſion of St. *Paul*, who firſt preached the *Goſpel* in this place, and here ſo narrowly eſcaped the Snares of his Enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the Houſe in which he was, by the help of a *Basket*.

But Ancient and Honourable though this City of *Damaſcus* was, we find nothing of the Story of it till the Time of *David*; the Kings thereof until thoſe Days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobah*. The firſt Exploit aſcribed unto them in the *Holy Scripture*, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-Ezar*, upon his firſt Defeat by *David*; in which Action having loſt 22000 Men, they were ſo broken, that they did not only ſuffer *David* to put Gariſons in the beſt Cities of *Damaſcus*, but patiently became his Servants, and brought Preſents to him, 2 *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The Name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in *Scripture*, is by *Joſephus* affirmed out of *Nicolaus Damaſcenus*, to have been *Adad* (a Name much cheriſhed and aſſumed by the Kings Succeſſors) who keeping conſtant to the party of *Adad-ezar* in his following Wars, was at laſt ſlain with him, in that great diſcomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in 2 *Sam. cap.* 10. *v.* 18. In which Text the *Scripture* telleth us nothing of the death of thoſe Kings, that being ſupplied to us by *Joſephus* out of their Records; who alſo added, That *Rezin*, one of the Chief Commanders of *Adad-ezar*, taking his advantage, not only uſurped his Maſter's Kingdom, but made himſelf Maſter of the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* alſo. From this Time forward the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the Tradition of *Joſephus* only, but founded plainly on the *Scriptures*, of which ſee 1 *King.* 11. *v.* 23, 24. the *Scriptures* after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the Name of Kings of *Syria*) but of thoſe that reigned in *Damaſcus*; who in ſhort time had ſwallowed up the petit Kingdoms of *Geſſur*, *Iſh-Tok*, *Rehob*, beſides that of *Sobah* before mentioned.

The KINGS of SYRIA or DAMASCUS.

1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobah*, in whoſe Quarrel he was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *David*, A. M. 2903.

2 *Rezin*, of whom the *Scripture* ſaith, in the 2*d* of *Chron.* That when *David* ſlew them of *Sobah*, *he fled from* Adad-ezar *his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to* Damaſcus, *and dwelt therein, and reigned in* Damaſcus.

2930 3 *Adad* II. an *Idumæan*, ſuppoſed to be of the Family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Ægypt*, where he married *Taphnes* the Queen's Siſter; and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as ſome write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damaſcus*, and reigned there as King.

4 *Hezion*, Succeſſor unto *Adad*.

5 *Tabrimon*, the Son of *Hezion*, as is ſaid 2 *King.* 15. 18.

6 *Ben-hadad*, the Son of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Aſa* King of *Judah*, to aid him in his Wars againſt *Baaſha* of *Iſrael*.

7 *Ben-hadad* II. Son of the former, twice invaded *Iſrael* in the Reign of *Achab*, but both times notably repulſed; the firſt time by the Sally of 700 Men, at the Siege of *Samaria*; the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect, he was taken Priſoner, and his Army routed.

8 *Hazael*, Captain of the Hoſt to *Ben-hadad*, anointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Eliſha*, whom God appointed ſo to do, that by his hands he might avenge himſelf on *Ben-hadad*, whom *Hazael* ſlew; but he proved as ill a Neighbour to the Kings of *Iſrael*, as thoſe before him. He attempted upon *Judah* alſo in the Time of *Joas*, but bribed with the Treaſures of the Temple, he withdrew his Forces.

9 *Ben-hadad* III. Son of *Hazael*, diſcomfited in three ſet Battels, by *Joas* King of *Iſrael*.

10 *Ben-hadad* IV. Son of *Ben-hadad* the Third.

11 *Ben-hadad* V. Son of *Ben-hadad* the Fourth.

12 *Ben-hadad* VI. Son of *Ben-hadad* the Fifth, in the Time of one of which Three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the Son of *Joas* King of *Iſrael* ſubdued both *Chamath*, and *Damaſcus*; of which ſee 2 *King.* 14. *v.* 18.

13 *Rezin* II. Son of *Ben-hadad* the ſixth, and the laſt King of *Damaſcus*, who joining with *Pekah* King of *Iſrael*, againſt *Ahaz* King of *Judah*, enforced him to call unto his aid *Tiglath Pileſar*, King of *Aſſyria*; by whom *Rezin* was taken and beheaded, and the City of *Damaſcus* won; the Kingdom of *Syria* by that means united to the *Aſſyrian* Empire. *A. M.* 3210.

After this Time, the *Syrians* continued ſubject to the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Perſians*, became a part of their Eſtate: remaining ſo till the firſt Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, fought near *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. The Victory wherein falling to the *Macedonians*, gave him without more trouble than the Siege of *Tyre*, the poſſeſſion of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*. He dying not long after his Conqueſt of *Perſia*. This Country lay as it were at ſtake betwixt *Ptolemy* King of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* the Chief Lord of *Aſia*; but the poſſeſſion of it, together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Empire, in both *Aſias*, fell in the concluſion to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, for his many great and ſignal Victories ſirnamed *Nicanor*; a man ſtrangely preferred. For being at the firſt Governor of *Chaldæa* only, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and to forſake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadful to all the *Macedonian* Captains; and to fly into *Ægypt*, where he became *Ptolemy*'s Admiral. After which *Ptolemy* fighting at a pitch'd Field with *Demetrius* Son to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him, and having won the Battel, gave him aid and Licenſe to recover his former Government.

Seleucus, well beloved of the People, ſoon made himſelf Maſter, not of *Chaldæa* only, but of all the *Perſian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being ſeconded by his good Friends *Ptolemy*, *Caſſander*, and *Lyſimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipſus* in *Ionia*, where *Antigonus* himſelf was ſlain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Aſia*, from whence paſſing over into *Europe*, he vanquiſhed and ſlew *Lyſimachus*: Seven Months after which Victory he was ſlain by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, whoſe Patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the laſt Saviour of all *Alexander*'s Princes, and the only Poſſeſſor of all the Dominions which his Maſter had, by the way of Conqueſt, *Ægypt* excepted. His Succeſſors, although they were Lords of all *Aſia*; yet ſince in *Syria* they kept their reſidence, to the end that they might the better furniſh themſelves with Soldiers out of *Greece* upon all occaſions, as we ſaid before, they were commonly called the Kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatneſs of Eſtate and Power, which *Seleucus* left them; though a being full-bodied Tree, and of ſeveral Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many Branches, and many a ſad blow at the very Root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the Fourth of this Houſe, *Arſaces*, a Noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire lying on that ſide of *Euphrates*; and erected the ſo much celebrated *Parthian* Kingdom, whereof more in *Perſia*. And in the Reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, ſo called for his Victories in *Ægypt*, *Judæa*, and *Babylonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Aſian* Provinces on this ſide Mount *Taurus*, not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made War againſt *Ptolemy Philopater* King of *Ægypt*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection; but ſtirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* agaiſt them; invaded *Lyſimachia*, and ſome other parts of *Europe*, in defiance of them, and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their moſt mortal Enemies into his Dominion, governing his Councels by the Influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that Ambition and Avarice, to add to their Fame and Empire by the overthrow of ſo great a Prince, did perſuade much with them. So that the Point being brought to a ready iſſue, they pleaded it on both ſides in the Battel of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia*, to which *Antiochus* brought an Army of 300000 Foot, and as many Armed *Chariots*, beſides ſtore of *Elephants*, if the *Roman* Writers be not over laviſh in their Reports. But rejecting the advice of *Annibal*, and committing his Affairs wholly to *Evil Counſellors*, he was vanquiſhed by no more than Four *Legions* of Enemies, and for his Peace compelled to quit all his *Aſian* Provinces on that ſide of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 *Talents* in ready Money for the Charge of the War. The reſt of his Eſtate they were content he ſhould enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile ceſſiſſet* (as *Florus* handſomly puts it on him) becauſe he had ſo eaſily relinquiſhed that. Afterwards in the Civil Broils among themſelves, about the Succeſſion of the Kingdom, *Alexander* King of the *Jews* took from them many of their beſt Towns in *Paleſtine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Anthedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocorura*, almoſt all *Samaria*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Scybttopolis*, *Gadara*, and many other ſtrong Towns in *Cœlo-Syria*. Finally, when they had conſumed almoſt all the Royal Race, and changed their Kings no leſs than ten times in Forty Years (a ſure ſign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to caſt themſelves upon *Tigranes*, the King of *Armenia*, a puiſſant and ſucceſful Prince, till ingaged in the Quarrel of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; by whom ſtripped of all his Eſtates on this ſide *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himſelf with his own *Armenia*, leaving *Syria* to the abſolute diſpoſal of *Pompey*, who preſently reduced it to the form of a Province. This ſaid, we have not much more to do with the Houſe of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their Names, and Times of their ſeveral Governments, till we draw towards the laſt end of

The *MACEDONIAN* KINGS of *SYRIA*.

A. M.	
3654	1 *Seleucus Nicanor*, the firſt King of this Houſe. 31.
3685	2 *Antiochus*, ſirnamed *Soter*, or the *Saviour*; memorable for nothing ſo much, as marrying with *Stratonice* his Father's Wiſe, in his Father's life time.
3704	3 *Antiochus* II. by his flatterring Courtiers ſirnamed *Theos*, or the God; but being poyſoned by his Wiſe, he proved a Mortal.
3719	4 *Seleucus* II. ſirnamed by the like flattery *Callinicus*, or Fair Conqueror, becauſe ſhamefully beaten by the *Parthians*.
3739	5 *Seleuuus* III. called for the like reaſon *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunderer*; the eldeſt Son of *Callicicus*.
3742	6 *Antiochus* III. ſirnamed *Magnus*, the younger Son of *Callinicus*, a Prince that imbraced many great Actions, and was fortunate in his Succeſs beyond *Euphrates*: he plagued the *Jews*, but loſt all *Aſia Minor* unto the *Romans*.
3778	7 *Seleucus* IV. called *Philopater*, the Son of *Antiochus*, who firſt began to caſt his Eye upon the Riches of the Temple at *Hieruſalem*.
3790	8 *Antiochus* IV. ſirnamed *Epiphanes*, or the *Illuſtrius*, but more truly *Epimanes*, or the *Mad*. The great Scourge of the *Jews*; Brother of *Seleucus Philopater*, with whom beginneth the Story of the firſt Book of the *Maccabees*.
3802	9 *Antiochus* V. called by the Name of *Eupator*, the Son of *Epiphanes*; who by *Lyſius* his Captain tyrannized over the poor *Judæans*, for the little time that he reigned; as did alſo,
3804	10 *Demetrius*, ſirnamed *Soter*, Son of *Seleucus Philopater*; by the hands of *Nicanor*: having poſſeſſed himſelf of the Diadem, by the death of *Eupater*, ſlain in his favour by the Soldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards depoſed for a time by *Alexander Bala*, pretending himſelf to be the Son of *Eupater*, ſupported herein by the *Antiochians*.
3814	11 *Alexander Bala*, diſcomfited in his firſt Battel by *Demetrius*, whom he ſlew and vanquiſhed in the ſecond; married *Cleopatra* Daughter of *Ptolemy Philometor*, by whoſe aid he was victorious. But a Quarrel breaking out between them, *Ptolomy* invaded *Syria*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned King of it; *Alexander* being ſlain by ſome of his Soldiers.
3819	12 *Demetrius* II. ſirnamed *Nicanor*, Son of *Demetrius* the firſt, recovered his Father's Kingdom, a Friend of the *Maccabees*, but ſo cruel to his own People, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by *Tryphon* General of his Armies.
3821	13 *Antiochus* VI. ſirnamed *Entheus*, the Son of *Alexander* and *Cleopatra*, advanced unto the Throne by *Tryphon*, and after ſlain by him to make way for himſelf unto the Diadem.
3824	14 *Tryphon*, called alſo *Diodorus*, having driven out *Demetrius*, and ſlain *Antiochus*, made himſelf King.
3827	15 *Antiochus* VII. ſirnamed *Sedes*, Brother of *Demetrius*, having overcome and ſlain *Tryphon*, ſucceeded him in the Eſtate; for a while victorious againſt the *Parthians*, but after-

wards overcome and ſlain by them. After whoſe Death *Demetrius Nicanor* (having lived in *Parthia* ſince the loſs of his Kingdom) was reſtored again unto the Throne; which having held about Four Years, he was again diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by

3843 16 *Alexander* II. ſirnamed *Zebenna*, an *Egyptian* of mean Birth, ſet up by *Ptolomy Euergetes*, and pretending himſelf to be the adopted Son of *Antiochus*, afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by

3845 17 *Antiochus* VIII. From the crookedneſs of his Noſe ſirnamed *Gryphus*, Son of *Demetrius*, aided herein by the *Ægyptians*, with whom reconciled; having reigned about Eight years in peace; embroiled him in War with his half Brother *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Cyzicenus*; which with variable ſucceſſes on both ſides, continued till the time of his Death, having reigned 29 Years in all.

3874 18 *Seleucus* V. Son of *Antiochus Gryphus*, in the beginning of his Reign overcame and ſlew his Uncle *Cyzicenus*; but being vanquiſhed by *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Euſebes*, or *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Cyzicenus*, he fled into *Cilicia*, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 *Antiochus* IX. ſirnamed *Euſebes*, having firſt vanquiſhed *Seleucus*, and afterwards *Antiochus*, another of the Sons of *Gryphus*, was crowned King of *Syria*; but ſlain not long after in the *Perſian* Wars.

20 *Philip*, and *Demetrius* III. ſirnamed *Eucærus*, younger Sons of *Gryphus*, jointly King of *Syria*; but reigning in their ſeveral parts. Of which *Demetrius* intending to diſſeize his Brother, was himſelf vanquiſhed, and forced to fly into *Parthia*, leaving the whole Kingdom unto *Philip*. During which amongſt themſelves *Syria* was invaded, and in part conquered by *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, and *Alexander* King of the *Jews*.

3882 21 *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, during theſe Diſſentions was by the *Syrians* choſen King, that by his Power they might be freed from the *Jews* and *Arabians*: the moſt puiſſant Prince that reigned in *Syria*, ſince the Time of *Antioch the Great*, as being King of *Syria* by Election, of *Armenia* by Succeſſion, of *Media* by Conqueſt. But engaging himſelf with *Mithridates*, (whoſe Daughter he had married) againſt the *Romans*, was vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*: who with the loſs of five *Romans* only, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have ſlain of his Enemies above 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*, he yielded himſelf to *Pompey* (who being appointed *Lucullus*'s Succeſſor, deprived him of the Honour of ending that War) and retaining to himſelf *Armenia* only, he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*, 3890, having reigned 18 Years.

The *Chronology* and *Succeſſion* of the Kings of *Syria* is ſo perplexed, that I cannot but think a ſhort *Table* repreſenting the Differences of ſome of our more Celebrated *Chronologers* will be very uſeful and inſtructive to the Reader.

	Anni	*Helvicus.*	*Iſaacſon* agrees with *Helvicus* in the Beginning and End.			3. *Foy. Vaillant.*		*A.M.*	*Seleucian Era.*
1 *Seleucus Nicanor*	30	3638		30	3638	1 *Seleucus* I. Νικατωρ	30	3638	1
2 *Antiochus Soter*	20	3668				2 *Antiochus* I. Σωτηρ	20	3667	31
3 *Antiochus Theos*	15	3689				3 *Antiochus* II. Θεος	15	3688	51
4 *Seleucus Callinicus*	20	3704				4 *Seleucus* II. Καλλινικος	20	3703	66
5 *Seleucus Ceraunus*	3	3724				5 *Seleucus* III. Κεραυνος	3	3723	86
6 *Antiochus Magnus*	37	3726				6 *Antiochus* III. *Magnus*	37	3726	89
7 *Seleucus Philopator*	12	3763				7 *Seleucus* IV. Φιλοπα.	11	3763	126
8 *Antiochus Epiphanes*	12	3775				8 *Antiochus* IV. Επιφαν.	12	3774	137
9 *Antiochus Eupator*	2	3786				9 *Antiochus* V. Ευπατ.	11	3786	149
10 *Demetrius Soter*	11	3788				10 *Demetrius* I. Σωτηρ	11	3788	151
11 *Alexander Epiphanes*	6	3798	*Alexander Epiphanes*	6	3800	11 *Alexander* I.	5	3799	162
12 *Demetrius Nicanor*	8	3804	*Demetrius Nicator*	4	3805	12 *Demetrius* II.		3803	167
Antiochus Entheos, and *Tripho*	5	3809	*Antiochus Entheos*		3807	13 *Antiochus* VI.		3804	168
			Tryphon		3808	14 *Tryphon*		3806	170
13 *Antiochus Sedetes* 6	10	3811	*Antiochus Sedetes*		3809	15 *Antiochus* VII.		3831	175
14 *Demetrius Nicanor* 11	4	3821	*Demetrius* reſtored	3	3821	16 *Alexander* II.		3821	184
15 *Antiochus Gryphus* 12	29	3826	*Alexander Zebenna*		3824	17 *Seleucus* V.			186
16 *Antiochus Cyzicenus* 18			*Antiochus Gryphus*		3826	18 *Antiochus* VIII. *Grypus*	30	3827	190
Seleucus Son of *Gryphus*, *Antonius Euſebes*			*Antiochus Cyzicenus*, contemporary with *Grypus*,		3833	19 *Antiochus* IX. *Cyzicen*	17	3835	199
						20 *Seleucus* VI. *Epiphan.*	2	3853	216
17 *Philipus* the laſt of this Line of the *Seleucidæ*,	2	3862	*Seleucus* Son of *Grypus*		3855	21 *Antiochus* X.		3855	218
			Philip alone		3861	22 *Antiochus* XI.			219
			Tigranes		3863	23 *Philippus*			219
18 *Tigranes* the *Armenian*	10	3863	The End of the Kingdom		3881	24 *Demetrius* III. *Gripi, F*			221
The End of the Kingdom of *Syria*		3881				25 *Antiochus* XII.			226
						26 *Tigranes*	18	3866	229
						27 *Antiochus* XIII.			
						Syria reduced into the Form of a Province.		3887	250

And tho *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Son of *Euſebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for a Reſtitution to the Throne of his Anceſtors, yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying, That he would not truſt the Country into ſuch weak hands as were not able to defend it againſt the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like Invaders; and ſo reduced it preſently to the Form of a Province. The Government of this Country under theſe new Lords, was accounted to be one of the greateſt Honours of the Empire; the *Præfect* hereof having almoſt Regal Juriſdiction over all the Regions on this ſide *Euphrates*, with a ſuperintendency over *Ægypt*. *Niger*, the concurrent of *Severus*, was *Præfect* here; and on the ſtrength hereof preſumed on that competition. So alſo was *Caſſius Syrus*, who being a Native of this Country, and well beloved by reaſon of his moderate and plauſible demeanour, had almoſt tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this Occaſion it was enacted by the Senate, That no man hereafter ſhould have any Military or Legal Command in the Province where he was born; leſt perhaps ſupported by the natural propenſion of the People to one of their own Nation, and heartned by the power of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himſelf, which was common to the Senate and People of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and paſſed but from one Province only, *Phœnicia* being taken alſo into the accompt; which made the *Antiochians* ſo proud and inſolent, that *Adrian*, in his Time intended to ſubduct *Phœnicia* from it, *Ne tot civitatum Metropolis* Antiochia *diceretur* (ſaith *Gallicanus*) That *Antioch* might not be the chief of ſo many Cities. But what he lived not to accompliſh, was performed by *Conſtantine*, by whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it ſelf divided into Four diſtinct Provinces, as was ſhewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City; but all ſubordinate to the Command of the *Comes*, or *Præfect* of the *Eaſt*, as he to the Command of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, the greateſt Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often ſpoken already.

For the defence hereof as well againſt all Foreign Invaſions, as the Inſurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconſtant People) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay Four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For ſo many *Mutianus* had here in the Time of *Galba*; and by the ſtrength and reputation of thoſe Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Veſpaſian*. And tho the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors to whoſe ſhare it fell, in the diviſion of the Empire, rather increaſed than diminiſhed any part of this ſtrength, yet when the Fatal Time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haumer* their Third *Caliph*, *Anno* 636. poſſeſſed themſelves of it, *Heraclius* then reigning in *Conſtantinople*. And it continued in their Power till *Tangolipix* the *Turk*, having conquered *Perſia*, and the Provinces on that ſide of *Euphrates*, paſſed over the River into *Syria*, and made himſelf Maſter of a great part of that alſo. A Quarrel falling out betwixt him and the neareſt Kinſmen, and thereby a great ſtop made in their furtheſt Progreſs, was thus compoſed by the Mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, in the Time of *Axon* his Succeſſor. To *Cutlu Moſes* was aſſigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed againſt the *Chriſtians*, with Regal Power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or ſubordination to the *Perſian* Sultan; of whoſe ſucceſſes and affairs hath been ſpoken elſewhere. To *Melich* and *Ducat*, two others of his diſcontented Kinſmen, but all of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and thoſe parts of *Syria*, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-Coaſts of *Paleſtine*; to be held in fee and vaſſalage of the Crown of *Perſia*. To theſe Two Brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkiſh* Kingdom in *Syria*; who, with their Succeſſors, by reaſon that here they held their Reſidence, cauſed themſelves to be called.

The *TURKISH* KINGS of *DAMASCUS*.

1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Kings of *Damaſcus*, by the Gift of *Axon*, the ſecond Sultan of the *Turks*, in *Perſia*, added to their Dominions all the reſt of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and ſome neighbouring Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

2 N.N. Sultan of *Damaſcus*, at ſuch times as the *Chriſtians* of the *Weſt* won the *Holy Land*; againſt whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damaſcus*; and in a ſet Battel diſcomfited and ſlew *Roger* the *Norman* Prince of *Antioch*.

1146 3 *Noradine*, (the Son of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-Law to the former King, ſucceeded him in the Eſtate. A Noble Prince, memorable amongſt other things for a gallant Anſwer made to his Commanders, when they perſuaded him to take the Advantage on the Death of *Baldwin* the Third, and to invade *Hieruſalem* whilſt the *Chriſtians* were buſie in ſolemnizing his Funerals. *Not ſo* (ſaith he) *Compaſſion and Regard is to be had of the juſt ſorrow of thoſe Chriſtians, who have loſt ſuch a King, as could not be equalled in the World.*

1175 4 *Melechſala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reaſon of his Youth, by his Nobles, and Soldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom diſpoſſeſſed firſt, and after vanquiſhed.

1176 5 *Saladine*, the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Ægypt*, having vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the Conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechſala*, to reſtore that Prince to his Eſtate, remained King of *Damaſcus*: and by the puiſſance of his Armies, recovered from the *Chriſtians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* alſo.

1199 6 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzel*, the eldeſt Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Damaſcus*; which he exchanged for that of *Ægypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, The ſecond Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded upon this exchange in the Realm of *Damaſcus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine*, The Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarouſly murthered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngeſt called *Saphradine* eſcaping only, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left *Sultan* of *Damaſcus*; to which all *Syria* and *Paleſtine* were then made *Provincials*. But the Treacheries and Murthers of *Saphradine* crying loud for Vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar*, in the Year 1262. having taken the King of *Damaſcus* Priſoner (but whether *Corradine*, or ſome other, I am not able to ſay) brought him before the Walls of the City, threatning to kill him in the ſight of the People, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refuſing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by aſſault: the Kingdom taken by the Conquerors, conferred upon *Agab* the Son of *Haalon*. And ſo ended the *Selzuccian* Family of the Kings of *Damaſcus* in the perſon of *Corradine*, or the Son of *Corradine*, moſt miſerably murthered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Ægypt* 17 Years before, in the perſon of *Melechſela*, and *Elmutan*, the Son of *Meledine*, as villanouſly depoſed and murthered by the *Mamalucks*. So ſlippery is the Foundation of thoſe Kingdoms that are laid in Blood.

Nor did this Kingdom hold long in the Hands of the *Tartars*, recovered from them in ſhort time by the *Mamalucks*, then Kings of *Ægypt*; from them once more regained by the Furious *Tamarlane*: who in the Year 1400 beſieged *Damaſcus* with an Army of 1200000 Men, (if the number be not miſtaken, and one Cypher added more than ſhould) in purſuit whereof he filled up the Ditches with his Priſoners, put all the People to the Sword; and with great Art raiſed three Towers as a Trophy of his Victory, built with the Heads of thoſe whom he had ſo ſlaughtered. A Man ſo ſtrangely made up of Vice and Vertues, that it is hard to ſay which had the predominancy. But the violence of this

Tempeſt being overblown, the *Mamalucks*, from whom he had alſo conquered the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damaſcus*, continuing in their Power till the Year 1516, when *Selimus* the Firſt diſcomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Ægyptian Sultan* in the Fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the News whereof the Citizens of *Damaſcus*, fearing the ſpoil of their rich City, then of very great Trading, ſet open their Gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their Example. By means whereof, without any more Blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next Year of *Ægypt* alſo, by the Vanquiſhment and Death of *Tonombeius* who ſucceeded *Campſon*: So rooting out the Name and Government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding thoſe rich Kingdoms to the *Turkiſh* Empire.

And ſo much for *Syria*.

MOUNT HERMON.

IN our Paſſage out of *Cælo-Syria* into *Paleſtine*, we muſt croſs *Mount Hermon*; a ledge of Hills; which beginning at the *Eaſt* Point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly *South*: in different places, and by ſeveral Nations called by divers Names. By *Ptolemy* called *Alſadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*, by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; and by that Name remembred in the Book of *Pſalms*. But *Alſadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Cælo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deſerta*, they are called by *Moſes* and the Scriptures *Hermon*, part of the Kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Baſan*, as is ſaid *Joſhua*, *Chap*. 12. 6. *Syrian*, by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut*. 3. 9. Running further after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead*, or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitæ*, after the Name of the Region along which they paſs, and are conceived to be the higheſt part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And ſo we are to underſtand the Words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, ſaying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to ſay, That as the Head is the higheſt part of a man; ſo theſe Hills, or this part of them, was the higheſt of all the Branches, or Spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that Heap of Stone which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a Witneſs of the Covenant which was made betwixt them, *Gen*. 31. 27. the Word ſignifying in the Original, *An Heap of Witneſſes*. And *Laban* ſaid, *This Heap is a Witneſs betwixt me and thee this Day: therefore was the name of it called Galeed*, ver. 28. By theſe Hills, and the main Body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the Weſt, the Land of *Paleſtine* is ſo ſhut up on every ſide, that no Fortreſs can be ſtronger by Wit or Art, than that Country by Nature: the Paſſages in ſome parts ſo narrow, as hardly to afford paſſage for a ſingle perſon. *Clauditur undique montibus hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concurſu Torrentium, inde artis & implexis anfractibus ſic contractis, ut per anguſtos colles vix pateat tranſitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almoſt forgot to add, That that part of theſe Hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the Name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut*. 4. 48. where it is ſaid, That the *Iſraelites poſſeſſed the Land from* Aroer *on the Bank of the River* Arnon, *even to Mount* Sihon, which is *Hermon*. As alſo, That one of the higheſt Tops or Summits of it, had the Name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the Fourth of the *Canticles*; by ſome miſtaken for *Amanus*, a Branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Leſſer *Aſia*, with which *Solomon* had but ſmall or no acquaintance. And ſo having cleared our ſelves of ſo much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we paſs over to *Paleſtine*: where we ſhall meet with it again, (or rather with the Weſtern Parts and Branches of it) under the Names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

OF PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Hills laſt mentioned, by which parted from *Cœlo-Syria*, and *Arabia Deſerta*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and ſome part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*; which divides it from *Syria*, and the reſt of *Phœnicia*; and on the South with ſome part of *Arabia Petræa*.

It was firſt called *Paleſtine* from the *Philiſtims*, the moſt potent Nation of thoſe parts. A name firſt found in the Hiſtory of *Herodotus*, but generally uſed in times ſucceeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adæquate name of the whole Countrey, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more reſtrained, and properly belonging to ſo much hereof, as was in poſſeſſion of the Tribes of *Iſrael*. And of this ſort, are 1 *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, ſo called from *Canaan* the ſon of *Cham*, by whom firſt peopled after the Flood. 2 The *Land of Promiſe*, becauſe by God promiſed to *Abraham*, and his ſeed, for an habitation. 3 *Iſrael*, from the *Iſraelites* or ſons of *Jacob*, whoſe ſirname was *Iſrael*. 4 *Judæa*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt prevalent of the Tribes of *Iſrael*. And 5 *Terra Sancta*, or the *Holy Land*, becauſe the ſubject of the greateſt part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accompliſhed by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithſtanding we muſt know, that though theſe names do many times by a *Synechdoche*, expreſs the whole Countrey of *Paleſtine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Iſraelites* were ever Maſters of of the whole: except only in the time of *David*, and of ſome of the *Maccabæan* Princes, as alſo in ſome part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the great fortune to command it totally.

But being the moſt conſiderable people of it were the Tribes of *Iſrael*; we will look firſt upon the Countrey People under that capacity. And for ſo much hereof as was held by them, it is ſituate between the 3*d*. and 4*th*. Climates; the longeſt day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but 200 miles and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of ſuch a fruitful ſoil, that before the coming in of the *Iſraelites* it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, ſo extremely populous, that *David* numbred a Million and 300000 fighting men, beſides thoſe of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulneſs hereof more ſhortly.

As for the People they were by compoſition of a middle ſtature, but ſtrong of body: in their beſt times a murmuring and ſtiff-necked generation, never well pleaſed either with God or Man, with their Prieſts or Princes, ſeldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much conſtant to themſelves: So crippled in their goings betwixt Superſtitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly: Idolatrous above meaſure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as Superſtitious and ſevere, in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worſhip of Idols. No *Medium* on either ſide, but extream in both. Divided anciently into theſe four ranks, that is to ſay, 1 *Jews*, 2 *Helleniſts*, 3 *Proſelytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a Right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of theſe the firſt called *Jews*, from *Judah* the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the Son of *Selah*, grand-ſon of *Sem*, and one of the Anceſtors of *Abraham*, were ſuch as naturally deſcended of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, and lived for the moſt part in their own Countrey; adhering to the Law of *Moſes*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Teſtament, from the Book of *Geneſis* to the Book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called alſo *Iſraelites*, becauſe deſcended from the loyns of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Iſrael*, for his great honor. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Salmanaſſer* to an endleſs captivity: and two Tribes (with the remainder of the reſt) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Iſraelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* aſſumed, as more proper to them. Theſe read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Helleniſts*, were ſuch as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived diſperſed in moſt Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; called by that name (we may *Engliſh* it, the *Græcizing Jews*) becauſe they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* or *Septuagint*'s Tranſlation; and performed all publick Offices in that language alſo. In other things as *ſuperſtitious* in their Sabbath, as tenacious of their *Circumciſion* and others of the Rites and Ceremonies of the Law of *Moſes*, as the *Jews* of *Paleſtine*: and for that reaſon, ſcorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongſt whom they lived; *Credat Judeus apella*, ſaith one of their Poets, relating to their circumciſing; *Recutitaque Sabbata palles*, ſaith another of them, with ſcorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cæteris mortalibus contrarii*, ſaith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or Acts of worſhip.

3. The *Proſelytes* were ſuch, as not being *Jews* by birth, or deſcent of Parentage, conformed themſelves unto their cuſtoms, and deſired to be admitted to their Religion. And theſe were all of two ſorts, the one called, *Proſelyti Portæ*; and the other, *Proſelyti fœderis*. The firſt of theſe, admitted by the *Jews* to the worſhip of God, and inſtructed in the hopes of life to come, were only tyed to thoſe Precepts which the *Hebrew* Doctors call the *Precepts of the ſons of Noah*: but were neither circumciſed nor otherwiſe conform to the Law of *Moſes*. Which Precepts of the ſons of *Noah*, ſo called, becauſe ſuppoſed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were ſeven in number: that is to ſay, 1 That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2 That they bleſſed and magnified the Name of God. 3 That they worſhipped not any falſe Gods, but to abſtain from Idolatry. 4 To refrain from all unlawful luſts and copulations. 5 To keep themſelves from theft and robbery. 6 And from ſhedding blood. And 7 Not to eat the Fleſh or Member of any Beaſt, taken from it when it was alive; by which all cruelty was forbidden. Theſe, though they were admitted to the worſhip of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet becauſe of their Uncircumciſion, they were not ſuffered to converſe with the *Jews*, nor to come into the ſame Court of the

Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart aſſigned them in the worſhip of God, which was called *Atrium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermoſt of all. The other *Proſelytes*, which was called *Proſelyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumciſion, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Jews*; priviledged as they were, to worſhip in the *Inner-Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their Race or Parentage. Theſe laſt in the New Teſtament called ſimply *Proſelytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of Σεβόμενοι, or the *worſhipping Gentiles*, of which ſee *Act*. 16. *v*. 14. & *ch*. 17. *v*. 4, 17. & *ch*. 18 *v*. 4. &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they poſſeſſed a great part of this Countrey, which the *Proſelytes* did not; yet were not ſo much *Jews* as they. But of theſe more anon, when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themſelves, they are divided alſo into ſeveral Sects; as *viz*. 1 *Eſſeni*, 2 the *Sadduces*, 3 the *Scribes*, 4 the *Phariſees*, 5 the *Herodians*, and 6 the *Gaulonites*, or *Galilæans*. The *Eſſenes*, or *Eſſeni*, derive their name as ſome conceive, from *Aſca*, which ſignifieth *facere*, to do, becauſe they laboured with their hands: as others ſay, from *Aſa*, which ſignifieth Θεραπεύειν, or to *cure diſeaſes*, becauſe they were much given to the Study and Practice of *Phyſick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The firſt time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before Chriſt's Nativity; then mentioned by *Joſephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. lib*. 13. *cap*. 9. A *Pythagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from thoſe old *Philoſophers*, profeſſing as they did, 1 Community of Goods, 2 Abſtaining even from lawful pleaſures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Aſcribing the conduct of Affairs to *fate* or *deſtiny*, And 6 Uſing only inanimate or unbloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but theſe the principal: *forbidding Marriage* not being common to the *Sect*, but only to ſome few amongſt them. And though we find no mention of them in the *New Teſtament*, the *Sect* in thoſe times being ſmall and inconſiderable; yet it is thought that St. *Paul* alludeth to their *Tenets*: as where he adviſeth *Timothy* to make uſe of *Wine*, and glanceth upon thoſe who prohibited *Marriage*, 1 *Tim*. 4. 3. or condemned others in the uſe of *Meat* and *Drink*, *Coloſſ*. 2. 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monaſteries*, or *Colledges*, and in every one had their Σεμνεῖον, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their Fellowſhips or Society, unleſs he brought all he had into their common Treaſury; and not then neither under a three years *Probationerſhip*. More of them he that liſteth to ſee, may ſatisfy himſelf in that Tract of *Philo*, intituled *De vita contemplativa*, where he moſt copiouſly deſcribeth their *Inſtitutes* and courſe of life, miſtakingly applied by *Euſebius* to the *Primitive Chriſtians*, as if that Tract had purpoſely been compoſed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, and is thought to be the firſt Founder of them; or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word ſignifying *Juſtice*; the men pretending to be ſo exact and ſtrict *Juſtitiaries*, as if they would juſtify themſelves before God's Tribunal. The occaſion of the Sect or Hereſie (for both it was) ſaid to ariſe from a miſtake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, who teaching, That we ought not to ſerve God, as Servants do their Maſters, for the hope of Reward, occaſioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no Reward nor Recompence for a Godly Life; and conſequently, no *Reſurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. Theſe were the moſt capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act*. 23. 6, 8. *Matth*. 22. 3. *Luk*. 20. 20, 27, &c. But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the Holy Scripture; aſcribing nothing unto Fate or Predeſtination, but all things altogether to a man's free-will; 2 Teaching the Soul to be annihilated at the hour of death; 3 Rejecting all Traditions; and 4 Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moſes*. In moſt of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes*, and *Phariſees*, but joyning with them both in oppoſing Chriſt: and though like *Sampſon*'s Foxes they looked divers ways, and were tyed together by their Tails only; yet in thoſe Tails they carried Firebrands to deſtroy God's Harveſt, and had done it, if they had been able.

3. But indeed the *Phariſees* were the men, who were the Maſter-wits in the Arts of Miſchief, *Homines robuſtioris impietatis*, in the Father's words. Fellows of ſuch a perfect and concocted Malice, that they were almoſt able to poſſeſs the Devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to ſeparate. *Separatiſts* we may rightly call them: For they were firſt ἀφωρισμένοι εἰς τὸν νόμον, ſeparated to the Study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpoſe at the feet of *Gamiliel*: And 2dly, ἀφωρισμένοι εἰς τὴν ἁγιοσύνην, ſeparated from the reſt of Mankind, by a more ſtrict profeſſion of ſanctity, as the *Phariſee* boaſted of himſelf, that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might ſo ſeem unto ſimple men, they did thirdly ſeparate themſelves from the Society and Converſation of others not ſo pure as themſelves, whom they called *Populum terræ*, or the Sons of the Earth, upbraiding Chriſt that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more than ſo, uſed a particular kind of Habit, and had a Garb unto themſelves which no others had; uſing it for a by-word amongſt themſelves, that *Veſtes* Populi terræ, *ſunt conculcatio Phariſæorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and ſevere than others; ſo did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader ſize than others did: which, by the way, were *ſcrolls of Parchment* bound about their Heads, and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandments of God; fooliſhly ſo interpreting the words of *Deut*. *And they ſhall be as frontlets between thine eyes*, &c. *c*. 6. *v*. 8. They began at the ſame time with the *Sadduces*, which was about 300 years before Chriſt's Nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, beſides thoſe ſpecified above, which were alſo practicable, they maintained, 1 A *Pythagorean Metempſychoſis*, affirming that the Soul of a Righteous man paſſed from one into another at the time of his death: from whence the divers opinions touching Chriſt our Saviour, *Mat*. 6. 14. are ſuppoſed to ſpring; as if his Body had been animated with the Soul of *Elias*, *John* the *Baptiſt*, *Jeremy*, or ſome other Prophet. 2 They adhered ſo tenaciouſly to unwritten Traditions, that in compariſon of them they Neglected the written Law, as either inſufficient or impertinent: And 3 aſcribed ſo much ſanctity unto frequent waſhings, eſpecially when they came from Market, *Mark* 7. 4. (where poſſibly they might meet with ſome unclean perſons) and before their ſitting down to Meat, *Mat*. 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and waſh, the *Phariſee* would rather chuſe to waſh than drink, though he died for thirſt. More of them he that liſt to ſee, may find it copiouſly ſet down in the four and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretenſions to ſo great a *ſanctity*, and ſome other Arts they had to abuſe the People, they grew ſo ſtrong, and had ſuch ſtore of followers and dependants on them, that they became formidable in ſhort time to their Kings and Princes. Inſomuch that *Alexandra* durſt not enter on the Government in her Childrens nonage, as *Joſephus* telleth us, *Antiq. lib*. 13. *cap*. 23. until ſhe had permitted

all things unto their diſpoſing ; ϗ μηδὲν δίχα τ' ἐκείνων γνώμης, &c. and promiſed to do nothing without their advice. And this ſhe did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whoſe Government, as ſhe found by too ſad experience had in many things proved unſucceſsful, διὰ τούτους ὑβρίζεσθαι παρ' αὐτοῦ, becauſe ſhe had put ſome ſcorns upon them, and otherwiſe offended that prevailing Faction. A Faction ſo predominant amongſt the People, ſaith the ſame *Joſephus*, *Antiq. lib.* 19. *cap.* 18 ὡς ϗ κατὰ βασιλέως τι λέγοντες, ϗ κατ' Ἀρχιερέως, &c. that whatſoever they pleaſed to ſpread abroad, either of the *High Prieſt*, or the King himſelf, how falſe or ſcandalous ſoever, it was received for truth without more diſpute, or any inquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Phariſees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of *Religion* in the *Jewiſh* Church ; but as the names of two oppoſite Factions in the Civil State. The firſt were ſuch who depending upon *Herod*'s Fortune, as he did on the pleaſure of the *Roman* Emperors, ſollicited the paying of Tribute to the *Romans* ; and earneſtly preſſed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more endeared to his Maſters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatneſs and Eſtate of *Herod*, than the proſperity and liberty of their Native Countrey. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome amongſt them ſeeing the Magnificence of *Herod*'s Palace, and experimentally knowing his Proweſs, might fancy him to be the *Meſſiah* ſo long looked for, and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Oppoſite unto theſe, were thoſe called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-Faction*, the other the *Faction* of the *Countrey*, or common people :) ſo named from one *Judas* a *Gaulonite*, as *Joſephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth ; a *Galilean*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Act.* 5.37. from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Jews* were practiſed with to deny this Tribute, telling them that it was a manifeſt token of their ſervitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven : drawing them finally on this ground into open Arms, in which Actions he and his Adherents periſhed, and were brought to nothing. Moſt of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had ſome Diſciples in *Hieruſalem* and *Samaria* alſo : and of theſe *Galilæans* were thoſe poor men, whoſe blood *Pilate* is ſaid *to mingle with their Sacrifices*, Luk. 13. 1.

The Language of this People, by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the ſame which *Abraham* found in the Land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither ; as hath been ſhewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Uſed by them conſtantly till their ſubjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Countrey, and conforming themſelves to the Speech and Dialect of it ; they came at laſt to ſpeak a kind of broken Language, neither true *Chaldæan*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it ; but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugation : being the ſame with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after ſeventy years, had ſo far loſt the knowledge of their Mother-Tongue, that they were not able to underſtand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing : inſomuch that he was forced to imploy ſome learned in that Tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* ſo often mentioned in the New Teſtament, muſt refer their original : there being no ſuch Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the Feaſt of Tabernacles. For this cauſe they were called *Scribes of the Law*, Ezra 7. 6. *Doctors of the Law*, Luk. 5. 17. and ſimply by the name of *Lawyers*, Luk. 7. 30. as men whoſe office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the People. Theſe we may beſt reſemble to the Canoniſts in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity-Reader in ſome School or College : and grew to ſuch great eſtimation in the *Jewiſh* State, that it was hard to ſay at laſt whether the *Phariſees* or they were the better men. For what the *Phariſees* gained on the common people by pretence of Sanctity, theſe got more juſtifiably by their zeal to the written Word, which they endeavoured to preſerve from the common dangers both of corruption and contempt. And though I look on thoſe men eſpecially, as the name of a Function, not a Sect ; yet being they held ſo cloſe to the *Phariſees*, and concurred with them in moſt of their Superſtitions, as appeareth *Mat.* 23. I conſider them as a ſtrong and potent Faction, of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of *Religion*, the People of this Land were priviledged above all others, had they had the grace to make good uſe of it : the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Goſpel preached amongſt them by God the Son, and that Goſpel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous Operations of the Holy Ghoſt. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a ſubordination of Prieſts and Levites to their ſeveral Heads ; the Prieſts divided by King *David* into twenty four Ranks or *Claſſes*, each *Claſſis* ſerving in their turns at the Holy Temple : the Chiefs or Heads of which ſeveral *Claſſes*, made but that Body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or Chief Prieſts, ſo often mentioned in the Writings of the Holy Evangeliſts. Over all which there was one Supreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotem*, or the High Prieſt, deſcended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of Avarice and Reaſon of State made the Office ſaleable. And becauſe poſſibly the High Prieſt might be under ſome *pollution*, and ſo uncapable by Law to perform his Office, he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to diſcharge it for him. Of which ſort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or ſecond Prieſt to *Semiah*, mentioned *Jer.* 52. 24. And of this ſort is *Annas* thought by ſome to have been to *Caiaphas* ; and for that cauſe the title of High-Prieſt to be given to both, *Luk.* 3. 2. though others think that *Annas* was High-Prieſt in right, and the other in fact ; the one being depoſed by the *Romans*, and the other ſuper-induced into the place. In time of *Chriſtianity* they were governed as in other Churches, by a ſubordination of Prieſts to Biſhops. The firſt Biſhop ſaid to be St. *James*, the Son of *Alphæus*, commonly called the *Lord's Brother* ; affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apoſtles, in his Epiſtle *ad Trallianos* ; by *Egeſippus*, who lived in the Apoſtles times, as St. *Hierom* and *Euſebius* cite him ; as alſo by *Clemens* of *Alexandria* cited by *Euſebius*, *Hiſt. l.* 7. *c.* 14. by *Cyril* of *Hieruſalem Catechiſm* 4. and 14. *Epiphanius*, *Hæreſ.* 78. n. 7. St. *Ambroſe* in *Gal.* 1. St. *Chryſoſt.* on the laſt of St. *John*'s Goſpel ; St. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of *Eccleſiaſtical* Writers ; St. *Auguſtine cont. Creſcon. l.* 2. *c.* 37. To whom there may be added the joynt conſent of 289 Prelates aſſembled in the ſixth General Council holden at *Conſtantinople*, affirming *James* the *Lord's Brother* to be the firſt Biſhop of *Hieruſalem* : all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word *Biſhop* in that ſenſe, in which it generally paſſed for the times they lived in. His Succeſſors ſubject at the firſt to the Biſhop of *Cæſarea*, as their *Metropolitan* ; though priviledged in their own Dioceſe, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our Redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Biſhop of *Hieruſalem* ſhould have as well the juriſdiction as the name of a *Patriarch* ; the three *Paleſtines* (for *Conſtantine* had before divided it into ſo many Provinces) being ſubducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So ſtood it in elder times, but now by the incroachment of

Mahometaniſm the *Chriſtian Faith* is obſcured, and the beauty of it ſo eclipſed, that were it not for ſome *Sects* of *Chriſtians* dwelling in *Mount Sinai*, and about *Hieruſalem*, it might be ſaid without any manifeſt untruth, to be quite extinguiſhed. The Biſhop of *Jeruſalem*, and the Church there ſetled, were in the *Apoſtles* Times looked on as the Head and Fountain of the *Chriſtian Faith*, and *Jeruſalem* as the *Metropolis* and Royal City of *Judea*. But when *Jeruſalem* was utterly deſtroyed by *Titus*, Son of *Veſpaſian*, *Cæſarea* became the head City of *Judæa*, and conſequently the Biſhop of *Jeruſalem* became ſubject to the Biſhop of *Cæſarea*, and continued ſo till he recovered a part of his former Power and Authority by the Decrees of Succeeding Councils.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be deſcribed more fully and ſignificantly, than *Moſes* hath done it to our hands, in *Deut.* 8. where it is ſaid to be *A Land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and Depths, that ſpring out of the Valleys and Hills; a Land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomegranates; of Oyl-Olive, and Honey: a Land, wherein was Bread, without ſcarceneſs; a Land whoſe Stones were as Iron, and out of whoſe Hills one may dig Braſs.* An ample commendation; and yet in ſome ſort ſhort of the Fertility of this flouriſhing Country, which did not only conſiſt in the choice and plenty, but the perpetuity of its Fruits; it being on Record in the Epiſtles of the Emperor *Julian* (ſirnamed the *Apoſtate*) that the Fig-Trees and other Fruit-Trees herein, were ſeldom or never without Fruits, the old not fully falling off, till the new come on. Which his Report, if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour ſo well as to flatter the Country for his ſake) we have then an Anſwer to the Difficulty, which hath ſo much perplexed all Commentators of Former Times; and that is, Why our Saviour ſhould curſe the Fig-tree for not bearing Fruit, when the Text ſaith, That *the time of Fruits was not yet come*, Mark 14. 13. For tho the Time for new Fruits was not yet come (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find ſome of the old, and failing of his expectation, lay that Curſe upon it. Nor is this ſolution of the Doubt diſcountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and Condition of the Country, as it ſtands at preſent; naturally adorned with beautiful Mountains, and luxurious Valleys, the Rock affording excellent Waters, and the Air never pinched with Colds, nor ſcorched with Heats. And tho either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or ſome Curſe laid upon the Land, far ſhort of that Fertility with which once it flouriſhed; yet ſtill *Figs, Olives, Pomegranates, Palm-trees*, are here very frequently to be ſeen, ſome ſtore of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradiſe*, which they preſerve upon the Trees all the Year long (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* ſpoken of before) as well furniſhed with *Honey* and *Sugar-Canes*, and alſo with *Goats, Swine, Hares, Quails*, and *Partridges*: but peſtered ſo in many places with *Rats* and *Mice*, that if it were not for certain *Birds* which feed upon them, it were not poſſible for the People to have any Harveſt. *Balm* they had anciently, not now. Nor any *Nuts, Pears, Plums*, or *Cherries*, but what are brought hither from *Damaſcus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Chiſon*, the *Chorſæus* of *Ptolemy*, which riſeth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel* in *Phœnicia*. 2 *Cedron*, a *Torrent* rather than a River, paſſing betwixt *Hieruſalem* and the Mount of *Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable Actions, than many others, of a greater both name and courſe. For over this Brook did *David* paſs when he fled from *Abſalom*; and over this our Saviour, the Son of *David*, paſſed when he went to his Paſſion. On the Banks hereof did *Aſa* the King of *Judah* burn his Mother'ſ Idols, 1 *King.* 15. as *Joſiah* did the Veſſels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *King.* 23. 3 *Zared*. And 4 *Naphthea*, which ariſing out of the Hills of the Tribe of *Judah*, have their fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Arnon*, which hath his Spring in the Hills ſo called, and endeth his courſe in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6 *Jaboc*, oft mentioned in the *Scriptures*; which iſſuing out of the *Mountains* of *Galaad*, And 7 *Hermon*, which ſpringing from the Hills ſo named, loſe themſelves in *Jordan*. 8 *Jordan*, ſo called from *Jor* and *Dan*, two neighbouring Fountains, out of which he ſeems to take his ſource; tho they do alſo fetch their Spring from *Phiala*, a round deep Well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about Twenty Four Miles from theſe Fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole* under ground. A River of more fame, than length, breadth, or depth, running from *North* to *South*, almoſt in a ſtrait line to the *Dead* Sea, where he endeth his courſe; not navigably deep, nor above 10 Yards in breadth, where broadeſt; ſhadowed on both ſides with *Poplars, Tamarisk-trees*, and *Reeds* of many ſeveral ſorts, of ſome of which the *Arabians* make Darts and *Javelins*, of others *Arrows*, and ſome again they faſhion into Pens to write with. Paſſing along it maketh two Lakes, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the Ancients called *Samachonitis*, dry for the moſt part in Summer, and then covered with Shrubs and Sedge, not mentioned in the Holy *Scriptures*: The other in the Lower *Galilee*, about an 100 Furlongs in length, and about Forty in breadth; called the *Sea of Galilee* from the Country: The *Lake of Tyberias*, from a City of that Name on the Banks thereof, and for the like cauſe called alſo the *Lake of Geneſareth*. And here it is to be obſerved, that the River paſſeth thorough this Lake with ſo ſwift a courſe, that it preſerves it ſelf diſtinct from the Waters of it both in Taſte and Colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long ſpace in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their Falls. Finally, having run thorough the Plains of *Hiericho*, it finiſheth its courſe at laſt in the *Mare mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the Name of a *Sea*, becauſe ſalt and large, ſeventy Miles long, and ſixteen broad; furniſhing with Salt the whole Land of *Jewry*, but called the *Dead Sea*, either becauſe it had no viſible efflux into the *Ocean*, nor is it at all increaſed with the Waters of this River, and many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or becauſe no living Creature is nouriſhed in it, ſuffocated with the *Bituminous* ſavour which it ſendeth forth, from the abundance of which Matter it is alſo called *Lacus Aſphaltites*. Nigh hereunto ſtood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, with three others more, whence the Valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, deſtroyed for their Abominations by a Fire from Heaven: now fruitful in ſhew only, but not in ſubſtance; the Fruits here growing, being very fair unto the Eye, *Sed levi tactu preſſa in vagum fatiſcunt pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into Aſhes, as *Solinus* hath it. *Janſonius* ſaith, *Jordan* is the greateſt River in *Paleſtine*, which ariſing from Two Fountains is united in one Stream beneath *Cæſarea Philippi*, thence paſſing to *Seleucia*, it forms the *Lake of Meron*, ſo watering *Hazoreth Gentium*, and paſſing between *Corazim* to the *Eaſt*, and *Capernaum* to the *Weſt*, into the *Lake of Tiberius*, or *Sea of Galilee*; it paſſeth by *Salem*, *Bethabara*, and *Livias*, into the *Dead Sea*, where it changeth its Waters into Salt. The Fiſh either return back, or die in this Sea. The River having at laſt forced its way through this Lake, is ſwallowed up by an horrible Whirlpit or Abyſs. The whole length of the River is about 100 Miles. Monſieur *Thevenot* who ſaw it, ſaith it is about half as broad at *Jerico* as the *Seine* is at *Paris*, very rapid, and the Waters of it thick, and paſſing through Fat Lands, full of Fiſh, and on both ſides ſhaded with pleaſant Woods.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, beſides *Anti-Libanus* and *Mount Hermon*, ſpoken of already, which be only borderers, are 1 *Mount Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently *The Holy Hill of Sion*. 2 *Mount Moriah*, famous for the intended Sacrifice of *Iſaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3 *Mount Calvary*, on which CHRIST ſuffered, ſuppoſed to be the Burial-place of our Father *Adam.* 4 *Mount Tabor,* on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5 *Mount Olivet,* from which he aſcended into Heaven. 6 *Mount Garizim,* whereon ſtood the *Samaritan*'s Temple, their ordinary place of Worſhip, mentioned *John* 4. 20. 7 The *Mountains of Saron,* ſtretching with intermixed Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean,* not far from *Tyre,* there ending in a White Cliff, and for that cauſe called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleaſantly enriched with the fragrant ſmells of Roſemary, Sweet Marjoram, Hyſſop, Bayes, and other Odoriferous Plants which do grow there naturally; but for all that, deſtitute of any other Inhabitants than Leopards, Boars, Jaccals, and ſuch Savage Creatures. 8 The *Mountains of Gilboa,* the higheſt on the Weſt of *Jordan*; as 9 thoſe of *Baſan,* celebrated for their height in the Book of *Pſalms.* And 10 thoſe of *Abarim* on the Eaſt-ſide of it: From one of the Summits of which laſt, called *Nebo,* by ſome Writers *Piſgah,* the Lord gave *Moſes* a Survey of the *Land of Promiſe.*

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Paleſtine,* it hath had divers diviſions, according to the quality of the People, or the will of thoſe who have been formerly Maſters of it. Divided firſt betwixt the *Philiſtines, Perezites, Hittites, Jebuſites,* and others of the Sons of *Canaan,* on this ſide *Jordan*; the *Moabites, Ammonites, Midianites,* and *Amorites,* dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob,* it was divided into the Twelve Tribes, of 1 *Judah,* 2 *Benjamin,* 3 *Simeon,* 4 *Dan,* 5 *Aſer,* 6 *Nepthali,* 7 *Zabulon,* 8 *Iſſachar,* 9 *Gad,* 10 *Reuben,* 11 *Ephraim,* and 12 *Manaſſeth.* When that great Breach was made by *Jeroboam,* in the Kingdom of *David,* it was broken into the Two Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Iſrael*; of which the firſt contained only the Two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin,* the latter comprehending the other Ten. When the *Iſraelites* were led captive into *Aſſyria,* and a new ſet of People planted in their rooms, thoſe new-comers from *Samaria,* their Capital City, had the Name of *Samaritans*: and when the men of *Judah* were releaſed of their long Captivity, and came back from *Babylon,* they took to themſelves the Name of *Jews.* After which Time, the whole Country of *Paleſtine,* anciently poſſeſſed or ſubdued by the Seed of *Abraham,* was divided into 1 *Peræa,* 2 *Ituræa,* 3 *Galilee,* 4 *Samaria,* 5 *Judæa,* and 6 *Idumæa.* When conquered by the *Romans,* all theſe were joined into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria,* or at leaſt ſubordinate. But *Conſtantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himſelf, and caſt it into three Provinces, *viz.* 1 *Paleſtina Prima,* 2 *Paleſtina Secunda,* and 3 *Paleſtina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the firſt being *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*; of the Second, *Samaria*; of the Third *Hieruſalem.* But this Diviſion of *Conſtantine*'s growing out of uſe, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning firſt with thoſe parts hereof which lay on the other ſide of *Jordan,* becauſe firſt conquered and poſſeſſed by the Houſe of *Iſrael*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the reſt; and coming round to *Idumæa,* which laſt of theſe Provinces was added to the State of *Jury.* In the *Chorography* whereof, I muſt confeſs my ſelf a Debtor to Sir *Walter Rawleigh,* whoſe Induſtry herein hath ſaved me a great deal of ſearch, tho ſome times I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I ſee occaſion.

1 PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Paleſtine* which lieth betwixt the River *Jordan,* and the *Mountains of Arnon,* (which divide *Paleſtine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) Eaſt and Weſt; and reacheth from *Pella* in the *North,* to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petræa,* in the *South.* By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Ægypt,* who deſcribes it thus: *Peræa* Judæa *pars eſt ulterior,* Arabiæ, *&* Ægypto *proxima, aſperis diſperſa montibus, & à cæteris* Judæis, Jordane *amne diſcreta*: *Peræa* (ſaith he) is the furtheſt part of *Judæa,* neighbouring *Arabia* and *Ægypt,* interſperſed with rough and craggy Mountains, and parted from the reſt of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan.* So called from the *Greek* Word πέρα, in regard of the ſituation of it on the other ſide of that River; and not improperly might be rendred by *Tranſ-Jordana.* Bleſſed with a rich Soil, and large Fields beſet with divers Trees, eſpecially of Olives, Vines, and Palms. The Habitation in Times paſt of the *Midianites, Moabites,* and *Ammonites,* as alſo of the Two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben.* Of all which I ſhall ſpeak in order, beginning with the *Midianites,* and the Children of *Lot,* as the firſt Occupants hereof; upon the knowledge of whoſe Affairs, the State and Story of the *Iſraelites* hath ſo much dependance.

And firſt the *MIDIANITES* inhabited on the *South-Eaſt* of the *Dead Sea,* at the very entrance of the Country; deſcended from one or more of the five Sons of *Madian,* the Son of *Abraham* by *Keturah,* mentioned *Gen.* 25. 4. who leaving the reſt of their Brethren to ſeek themſelves new Habitations, more towards the Banks of the *Red Sea,* and the Deſarts of *Arabia Petræa*; continued near unto the place of *Abraham*'s Dwelling: and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in Blood and Marriages, came in ſhort time to loſe all the knowledge of the True God, and to worſhip Idols, as the reſt of their Neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1 *Recome,* built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites,* which was ſlain by *Joſhua,* afterwards called *Selah,* 2 *King.* 14. 7. accounted at that Time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Iſmaelites* or *Arabians,* and by them called *Hogar.* Beſt known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans,* by the Name of *Petra,* and by that Name we ſhall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia.* 2 *Midian,* on the Banks of the *Dead Sea,* the ordinary Reſidence of their Princes, abſolute of themſelves at firſt, as in other places; but at the Time when *Moſes* and *Joſhua* led the people into their Poſſeſſions, ſubjected unto *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*; whoſe Dukes their five Kings and Princes are ſaid to be, *Joſh.* 13. 21. A People whom the *Iſraelites* had neither Commiſſion or Intent to make War upon, if they had not cauſleſly provoked them, at the requeſt of the *Moabites,* by ſending amongſt them (as *Balaam* the Falſe Prophet had adviſed) the moſt beautiful of all their Women, not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worſhip of their Idols alſo. A miſchievous and ſucceſsful Plot, but alike dangerous to both parties; God ſending a fierce Plague amongſt the *Iſraelites,* which coſt them the Lives of 24000 perſons; beſides ſuch as periſhed by the Sword; and giving a Command to *Moſes,* to avenge him of the *Midianites,* who had ſo provoked him. On which Commiſſion *Moſes* called out 12000 Men, and ſent them under *Phineas* againſt the *Midianites*; by whom all their Princes were ſlain, their Cities and goodly Caſtles burnt with Fire, their Men, Women and Male-children put unto the Sword, as is related in the One and Thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numbers*; yet notwithſtanding this great ſlaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barak* the Judge of *Iſrael,* did for the ſpace of Four Years ſo afflict that People, that they were fain to hide themſelves in the *Caves and ſtrong-holds of the Mountains,* as is ſaid, *Judg.* 6. 2. their Enemies having left them neither Sheep, Oxen, or Aſs, or any Suſtenance at all, *v.* 4. But *Gideon* being raiſed up by God for their deliverance, encountred with their four Kings, and put them to flight; of which four *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and ſlain by the *Ephramites* at the Paſſage of *Jordan*; *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* taken by *Gideon* himſelf, and executed by his own Hand, as the Story telleth us. In this War there are ſaid to have periſhed of this People and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 perſons, by which ſo weakned, that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any Action of importance; their Name and Country being firſt incorporated into that of the *Edomites*, and after into that of the *Iſmaelites*, and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petræa*.

2 The *MOABITES* poſſeſſed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the *South*, as far as to *Eſebon* in the *North*, on both ſides of the River *Arnon*; having *Jordan* on the *Weſt*, and the Hills of *Abarin* on the *Eaſt*. Poſſeſſed at the firſt by the *Emmins*, a Race of Giants, whoſe chief City was *Sheneth Kiriathaim.* But theſe being vanquiſhed and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, of which ſee *Gen.* 14. 5. their Forlorn Seats were taken up by the *Moabites*, deſcended from *Moab*, one of the Sons of *Lot*; who lived here in great proſperity till the Time of *Vaheb*, Grand-Father unto *Balac*, the Son of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the *North* of the River *Sahoc*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the *North* Bound or Border of it. In which eſtate it ſtood in the Time of *Moſes*.

Chief Cities of it at that Time, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal Seat of *Balac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolemy*. 2 *Diblatham*, deſtroyed with the reſt of *Moab*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is ſaid *Jer.* 48. 22. 3 *Gallim*, the Principality of *Phalti* the Son of *Laiſh*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, 1 *Sam.* 25. 44. 4 *Muthana*, and 5 *Nathaliel*, thorough which the *Iſraelites* paſſed after they had left the Well called *Beer.* 6 *Bamath*, where *Moſes* was encamped when he ſent to *Sehon* to demand a paſſage through his Country, *Numb.* 21. 19, &c. 7 *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the Time of his Troubles under *Saul.* 8 *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not medled with by *Moſes* in his march this way, the Lord himſelf forbidding him to touch upon it, or diſtreſs it, becauſe it had been given by him for an Inheritance to the Children of *Lot*, *Deut.* 2. 9. Which prohibition was not only for this place particularly; (though this particularly there mentioned) but for all the Lands and Territories then in their poſſeſſion. 9 *Kir-haſareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane Fact of *Meſha* the *Moabitiſh* King, who being beſieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom*, without hope of eſcape, ſacrificed his own Eldeſt Son on the Wall thereof; which ſo moved the Kings of *Judah* and *Edom*, that they forſook the King of *Iſrael* whoſe the quarrel was. So the Siege was raiſed, 2 *King.* 3. 17.

Now as *Moſes* did not at the preſent diſobey God's Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; ſo neither did the *Moabites* on their part provoke him to any Hoſtile Act, giving him a free and open paſſage in his march for *Canaan*; out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were ſubdued, they ſhould be put into poſſeſſion of their loſt Eſtates. And tho they were deceived of that expectation, the *Iſraelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the Spoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a poſſeſſion to the Tribe of *Reuben*; yet durſt they not do any thing in the way of Arms, but ſent for *Balaam* the Falſe Prophet, to caſt them by his Curſes and Incantations into ſome Diſeaſes, whereby their ſtrength and courage might be taken from them. *Balac* the Son of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the Name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Amalek*, overmaſtered *Iſrael*, and for the ſpace of 18 Years tyrannized amongſt them; when ſlain in his own Houſe, and afterwards 10000 of his People by the hands of *Ehud.* But this Indignity was in the Times ſucceeding revenged by *Saul* in ſome part, who made War upon them; but more by *David*, who ſubdued them, and made them Tributaries: and not ſo only, but ſubjected them to the vileſt Offices, as is intimated in that Form of Speech, *Moab is my Waſh-pot*, *Pſal* 60. 8. Taking their opportunity, they withdrew themſelves from the Houſe of *David*, and put themſelves under the command of the Kings of *Iſrael*, to whom they paid for Tribute in the Time of *Ahab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their Fleeces on: but quickly weary of thoſe payments, and revolting from the Houſe of *Ahab* alſo, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquiſhed, *Meſha* their King was fain to ſhut himſelf up in *Kir-haſareth*, as was ſaid before. After this joining with the *Ammonites* and the *Idumæans*, or Sons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and ſignal Victory, without Blow or Battel: The *Ammonites* firſt ſetting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another till they were almoſt all deſtroyed, 2 *Chron.* 20. 23. From this Time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered ſome part of their former Dwellings, when that Two Tribes and a half on the Eaſt of *Jordan* were carried away captive by *Tiglath-Pileſer*. Poſſeſſed hereof, and of other their habitations, till the Reign of *Zedekias* King of *Judah*; when vanquiſhed, with the reſt of theſe Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Aſſyrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar.* Nor find we any mention of them in the Ages following; the Name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of uſe: The *South* parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petræa*, as the Eaſt parts were to that of *Arabia Deſerta*; and all the reſt, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, ſwallowed up in the general Name of *Paleſtinians.*

3 The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the *North-Eaſt* of the River *Arnon*, and poſſeſſed all that Tract from *Arnon*, on the head of the River, to the City of *Rabbah*; and on both ſides of the River *Jaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the ſame. The Seat in elder Times of the *Rephaims*, and *Zanzummims*, a Giant-like Race of Men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquiſhed alſo, as the others, by *Chedorlaomer*; *Aſhtaroth* and *Heth* being then the principal of their Habitations. Succeeded too in their deſolate and forſaken Dwellings, by the Children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; both Houſes running the ſame Fortune: Theſe *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the beſt part of their Country on the *South* ſide of *Jaboc*, by *Og* King of *Baſan*; as the *Moabites*, at the ſame time, of theirs by *Sehon.* A Monument of which ſubjection was the Bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabba*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be ſeen when *Moſes* had ſubdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth in *Deut.* 3.

Chief Cities at ſuch Time as the *Iſraelites* firſt conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were 1 *Rabbah*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Baſan*, as is ſaid before; but again quitted as it ſeemeth on the coming of *Moſes*, that he might be better able to keep the Field. Memorable in ſucceeding Times for the death of *Uriah*, ſlain here by a deſign of *David*'s when beſieged by *Joab.* Who having brought it to Terms of yielding, ſent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place ſo defenſible, environed in a manner with the River *Jaboc*, and therefore called the *City of Waters*, 2 *Sam.* 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, King of *Ægypt*, who having made himſelf Maſter of thoſe parts of *Arabia* which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the ſituation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia.* 2 *Dathema*, ſuppoſed to be *Rithma*, by the Learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb.* 33. 18. (the *Hebrew* Letters *D* and *A* being much alike) a place of great ſtrength among the *Ammonites.* 3 *Minneth*, in the *South* Border, and 4 *Abel-vinearum* in the *Eaſt* Border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the purſuit of that People when ſubdued by *Jepthe.* 5 *Mitſpa*, ſometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, and at that Time honoured with the reſidence of *Jepthe*; but afterwards recovered by the Children of *Ammon*: in whoſe hands it was when utterly deſtroyed and burnt by *Judas Macchabeus*, 1 *Mac.* 5. 35.

535. 6 *Magod*, and 7 *Bſor*, Two other ſtrong places of the *Ammonites*, there alſo mentioned; but ſaid to be in the *Region* of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this ſide of the Mountains was at that Time called.

As for thoſe *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Iſrael* as they paſſed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor being provoked by them, to any Acts of Hoſtility. Afterwards not well pleaſed that they were not reſtored to the poſſeſſion of thoſe Lands which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Baſan*, (conferred by the Decree of *Moſes* on the Tribe of *Gad*) they joined with the *Midianites* in their Expedition. But worſted by the puiſſance and Good Fortune of *Gideon*; they lay ſtill a while, till ſtirred up by ſome ſecret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that ſinful and Idolatrous People, who by worſhipping the Gods of the *Heathen*, had provoked him to anger. Proſperous in it for a Time, till his Wrath was pacified; who having made uſe of them to chaſtiſe his people, delivered up his Rod to be burnt by *Jepthe*, vanquiſhed and driven home by him with a very great ſlaughter. Not ſo much cruſhed by the unſucceſsfulneſs of this Attempt, but that in the Time of *Saul* they brake out again, and beſieged *Jabeſh Gilead*; *Nabaſh*, a Cruel Tyrant being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loſs of every Man's Right eye; to the end that uſing to carry a great Target on their Left Arms, wherewith the Eye on that ſide was wholly ſhadowed, they might by this means be diſabled from all future Service. But *Saul* came time enough to ſave them from that Shame and loſs; from that cauſe ſo offenſive to *Nabaſh*, that to deſpight him, he ſhewed Friendſhip to *David* in the Time of his Trouble. A courteſie which *David* was ſo mindful of, that he ſent Ambaſſadors to *Hanun* the Son of *Nabaſh*, to make acknowledgment of it, and to confirm the Amity which he had with his Father; but found ſo ill requital from him, that inſtead of Thanks and kind acceptance, his Meſſengers were deſpightfully handled, their Beards half ſhaven, and their Garments cut off by the Knee: Incenſed therewith he ſent *Joab* againſt them, by whom the Country was laid waſte, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their King's Crown weighing a Talent of Gold, ſet on *David*'s Head, and all the Priſoners executed with great ſeverity, ſome of them being caſt into Lime-kilns, and the reſt torn in pieces with Saws and Harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the Reign of *Jehoſaphat*, againſt whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open War, but fell by one anothers Swords, as was ſaid before. Not well recovered of this Blow, they were ſubdued and made Tributaries by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and ſo continued in the Time of *Joatham* his Son; who ſo increaſed the Tribute laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to an Hundred Talents of Silver, Ten Thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this Leſſon how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet Neighbours, or obedient Subjects, tho much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greateſt part of their Ancient Dwellings, on the removal of the Two Tribes and an half, on the *Eaſt* of *Jordan*, to the Land of *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Pileſer*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King was ſo ſtrict a Confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Country, *Iſmael*, one of the Blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was ſent by *Baulis* to ſlay him. But he paid dear for his Attempt, his Country being ſhortly after conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the Name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Grecians* when they came to Lord it over them, to thoſe of *Geleaditis* and *Philadelphia*, according to the new Name of their principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and Hills adjoining.

4 The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the Eldeſt of *Jacob*'s Sons by *Leah*; of whom in the firſt Muſter which was made of them at *Mount Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the ſecond Muſter, when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their Dwelling was on the *Eaſt* of that Famous River, having the *Gadites* on the *North*, the *Deſart Arabia* on the *Eaſt*, and the Land of *Moab* on the *South*, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of moſt obſervation here, *Abel-Sittim*, ſeated in that part of the Country which was called the *Plains of Moab*; the laſt incamping place of *Moſes*: afterwards by the *Jews* called ſimply *Sittim*: Memorable for the Wood ſo often mentioned in the *Scriptures*, of which the *Ark of the Lord* was made. In after-times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, n iſtook by ſome for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lyſanias* was *Tetrarch*: That Town and Territory, as *Joſephus* doth affirm expreſly, being ſituate amongſt the Spurs and Branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Bethaborah*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moſes* made his laſt and moſt Divine Exhortations to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Macherus*, the ſtrongeſt In-land City and Caſtle in thoſe parts of the World, ſtanding aloft upon a Mountain every way unacceſſible: firſt fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, as a Frontier Town againſt the *Arabians*; and afterwards demoliſhed by *Gabinius*, one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenants, in the War againſt *Ariſtobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the Death of *John Baptiſt*, where murthered by the Command of *Herod the Tetrarch of Galilee*, and Lord of this Country of *Peræa*. It ſtood on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*. 4 *Laſa*, or *Leſhah*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirrhoe*, by reaſon of the Fair Fountains riſing from the Hills adjoining, out of which iſſue Springs both of hot and cold Waters, as alſo bitter and ſweet; all which ſoon after joined into one ſtream, make a wholſome *Bath*, eſpecially for *Convulſions* and contraction of Sinews. 5 *Medeba*, upon the River *Arnon*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*, 1 *Chron.* 19. 7. In the Time of the *Greeks* laid with ſome other Towns of this Tract unto *Cælo-Syria*; but in the declining Times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jewry* by *Alexander*, the ſecond King of the Race of the *Maccabees*; and finally, with eleven others in thoſe parts, delivered by *Antipater* the Father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the ſide of *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Alexander*, whoſe Cauſe *Antipater* moſt favoured. 6 *Boſor*, or *Bozra*, a City of Refuge, and one of thoſe that were aſſigned unto the *Levites* on that ſide of the Water. Seated near the *Dead Sea*. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod*, in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Cæſar*, upon the River *Jordan*; different from that which the *Geographers* call 8 *Libias* (tho by ſome confounded) the ſame with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut.* 1. 1. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, ſeated near *Arnon*, giving name unto the adjoining Deſart, from whence *Moſes* ſent his Ambaſſage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10 *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the Worſhippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balac* to curſe the *Iſraelites*. 11 *Heſhbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. In the *North* Border of this Tribe. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Joſh.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes paſſed dry-foot over *Jordan*, oppoſite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the *Mountain Nebo*, from which *Moſes* took a view of the Land of *Canaan*; an Hill as it ſeemeth of Two Tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Jericho* is called *Piſgah*: That which looketh towards *Moab* being called *Hur*. Here is alſo a high Hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worſhipped alſo, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5 The *GADITES* were ſo called from *Gad* the ſeventh Son of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom were found at the firſt Muſter when they came out of *Ægypt*, Forty Five Thouſand, Five Hundred and Fifty fighting men; and at the ſecond, when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, Forty Five Thouſand bearing Arms. Their ſituation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the *South*, and the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* upon the *North*; the River *Jordan* on the *Weſt*, and the *Mountains of Arnon* on the *Eaſt*; by which laſt parted from the Dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of moſt obſervation, 1 *Aroer*, on the Banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2 *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the Time of *Joſhua*, and of no ſmall account in the Time of *St. Hierom*. 3 *Beth-nimaab*, of which *Eſay* propheſied, That the Waters thereof ſhould be dryed up; ſeated upon the *Arnon* alſo. 4 *Nattoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-baram*, mentioned by *Jiſhua*, *chap.* 13. *ver.* 27. by *Joſephus* called *Betaramptha*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the Wife of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, tranſlated into the *Julian* Family; who alſo laid unto it Fourteen Villages, to make it of the greater Power and Juriſdiction. 6 *Beth-ezob*, by *Joſephus* called *Vetezabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the Siege of *Hieruſalem*, when deſtroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by Famine to eat her own Son. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* ſet up there in his paſſage from *Meſopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: The People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon*, as he followed the chaſe of *Zebah* and *Zalmunna*, were by him miſerably tortured at his return, under a *Tribulum* or *Threſhing-Car*, wherewith he tore their Fleſh, and bruiſed their Bodies. 8 *Jahzor*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon*, King of the *Amorites*; firſt taken by *Moſes*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Iſa.* 16. 8.) then poſſeſſed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Macchabæus*, 1 *Mac.* 5. 8. 9 *Mahanaim* ſo called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen.* 32. 2.) as ready to defend him againſt all his Enemies the Word in the Original importing a *double Army*. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore made by *Abner* the Seat Royal of *Iſhboſheth*, the Son of *Saul*, during the War he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the Rebellion of his Son *Abſolom*. 10 *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, ſo faithful to *David* in that War. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, ſo called from the ſituation of it near the *Mountains of Gilead*; a Town of ſpecial note in the Book of God; particularly, for the Pacification here made betwixt *Jacob* and *Laban*; for the Death of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*, who loſt his Life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally, for the Election of *Jehu* to the Crown of *Iſrael*. Anointed at the Siege hereof by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12 *Penuel*, ſo called from the interview which the Lord pleaſed to beſtow there on his Servant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Meſopotamia*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. the Word ſignifying the place of the *Face* or *Viſion* of *God*; defaced by *Gideon* for their churliſh uſage of him, when he craved relief of them againſt the *Midianites*; to whom, together with the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, the whole Territory appertaining to theſe Two Tribes did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Baſan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of thoſe Kings to the hands of *Moſes*; by whom aſſigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, for their Habitation. Continuing theirs till the Fatal Period of the Kingdom of *Iſrael* began to approach; at what Time theſe Two Tribes, with the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* lying on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Pileſer*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their Ancient Dwellings. Of which poſſeſſed, till their ſubverſion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the Name of *Peræa*, for the Reaſon formerly delivered. And being won piece-meal by the *Maccabeans*, came with the reſt of the Kingdom of *Judah*, to the poſſeſſion of *Herod the Great*; by whom bequeathed at his Death unto *Herod Antipas*, one of his Sons, who held, together with both *Galilees*, under the Name of *Tetrarch of Galilee* and *Peræa*, as *Joſephus*; or of *Galilee* only, as *St. Luke*; who being dead, it was beſtowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

2 ITURÆA.

ITURÆA hath on the *Eaſt* and *North*, *Cælo-Syria*; on the *Weſt*, the River *Jordan*; and on the *South*, *Peræa*. So called from *Ietur* one of the Sons of *Iſmael*, ſeated in this Tract; tho loſt by his Poſterity to the *Amorites* one of the moſt powerful Tribes amongſt the *Canaanites*; and by them made the Patrimony of the Kings of *Baſan*. The Race of which Kings ending in *Og*, the wealthieſt and beſt parts hereof, were given by *Moſes* to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*; ſuch parts of it as lay towards *Damaſcus* being ſeized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it ſelf, called the Kingdom of *Geſſur*; and the more mountainous and unpleaſant left to the firſt Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Geſſur*, and thoſe of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, ſhifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Grecians*; the name of *Ituræa* revived again, and grew into very good eſteem: The *Ituræuns* being reputed for good Soldiers, eſpecially at his Bow and Arrows; of which thus the *Poet* in his *Georgicks*, lib. 2.

——— Ituræas *taxi torquentur in Arcus.*
Of the beſt Ewe that can be had
The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the Times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonites* and *Ituræa*, ſpecially ſo called: This laſt again being ſubdivided into *Batanæa*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*. For whereas it is ſaid in *St. Luke's Goſpel*, That *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch of Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Joſephus*, That for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panæas*; it muſt needs be that the Four laſt mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by *St. Luke* is comprehended in the Name of *Ituræa*; diſtinct from that of *Trachonitis*, tho a part thereof. Inhabited in the Time of *Joſephus*, as in thoſe of *Joſhua* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the more mountainous and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was aſſigned them in the Time of *Moſes*; the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of Ground, but far inferior to it for Wealth and Fruitfulneſs; not well inhabited where beſt, and in ſome places which are deſart and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but Wild Fruits. Such was it in the Time of *Joſephus*, and not bettered ſince.

1 *TRACHONITIS* is that mountainous and hilly Country, which beginning at the Borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the *Mountains of Gilead*, extendeth it ſelf *Northwards* as far as *Libanus*: The Hills in thoſe parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syrion*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Græcians*, for the craggedneſs and roughneſs of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The People miſchievouſly bent and much given to *Witchcraft*. as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanam regionem incolunt* Ituræi & Arabes, *malefici omnes*. So he, or his Tranſlator rather, for I have not the Original by me. Where by *Arabians* he meaneth thoſe of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the ſame with *Ituræa*, tho differing from it as the *Cotſwold* Countries do from the reſt of *Glouceſterſhire*, or as a part doth from the whole, becauſe united by that name into one Eſtate, at the Time

he lived in. *Solet &* Trachonitis Ituræa *nomine appellari*, ſaith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general conſent of the ancient Writers. A people generally addicted to ſpoil and robbery, living eſpecially on the ſpoil of thoſe Merchants which traded to and from *Damaſcus*: Till with ſome difficulty reſtrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Auguſtus Cæſar* had beſtowed the Country, to the end that by ſtrong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Joſephus* are thus deſcribed. “The *Trachonites* (ſaith he) have neither Towns, nor Lands, nor Heritage, nor any other poſſeſſions, but only certain Retreats and Caves under the Ground, where they lived like Beaſts: And having made abundant proviſion of Water and Victuals, were able to hold out a long time againſt any Aſſailant. For the doors of their Caves were made ſo narrow, that they could be entred but by one at once; and the way to them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not poſſibly to be found out but by the help of a Guide: The whole Country naturally conſiſting of craggy Rocks. The paſſages of the Caves once entred, they were found to be very large and ſpacious; ſufficient to contain great multitudes of thoſe Thieviſh people; who when they had not opportunity to ſpoil their Neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedneſs; being ſo accuſtomed to theft, that they could not live otherwiſe. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of ſome body of Thieves or Out-laws, which poſſeſſed themſelves of the ſtreights of the Mountains, and from thence Iſſued to aſſault and ſpoil the Paſſengers. For it is afterwards expreſſed, that revolting upon the news of *Herod*'s death, and committing new outrages; they no ſooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themſelves unto a ſtrong Caſtle in *Arabia*, where they encreaſed to the number of 1000 perſons, ſo that there is no queſtion to be made at all, but they had Villages and Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongſt thoſe Mountainers which *Joſephus* ſpeaks of. And amongſt thoſe, I reckon, 1 *Gerra*, 2 *Elere*, 3 *Nelaxa*, 4 *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolomy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: More towards the Eaſt than well agreeth with the poſition of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the Weſt than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Ituræa*, by him aſcribed. Hither alſo I refer the City of 5 *Tiſhbe*, the Country of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*. 6 *Tob*, where *Jepthtbe* lived in exile, when oppreſſed by his Brethren, till the neceſſities of his Country called him to the publick Government. 7 *Hippus*, at the foot of thoſe Mountains, reckoned amongſt the Cities of *Cœlo-Syria*, differing in Soil as well as Etymology from another of the ſame name in *Batanea*: This being ſo named from the Mountain *Hippus*, under which it ſtandeth; that from a Gariſon of Horſe there placed, as ſhall there be ſhewn. 8 *Bathira*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colony of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to ſuppreſs the Inſolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this thieviſh people, accuſtomed (as before is ſaid) unto ſpoil and rapine.

2 *BATANEA* is that part of *Ituræa* which anciently made up the beſt and greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Baſan*, whence it had this name: The changing of *S.* to *T.* as *Aſſyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being uſual among the *Greeks*. But that Kingdom being brought to an end by *Moſes*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, ſo called of *Manaſſes* the Son of *Joſeph*; of whom there were found at the firſt muſter near Mount *Sinai*, 32200 Men able to bear Arms; which though conſumed in the Deſarts, yet were they of ſuch a ſwift increaſe, that they were found 52700 fighting Men of them, when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that ſide of the River ſtretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Geſſur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto *Jordan*, Eaſt and Weſt, was exceeding fertile: Repleniſhed with all ſorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodlieſt Woods in that part of the World; the Oaks of *Baſan* being celebrated in the Holy Scriptures.

It had in it ſixty fenced Cities when firſt conquered by thoſe of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1 *Pella*, formerly called *Butis*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus*, the great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birthplace of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his Greatneſs and whole Eſtate. Deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus*, King of the *Jews*, becauſe not willing to admit of the Law of *Moſes*; it was afterwards reſtored by *Pompey* to its former luſtre. Memorable in Church ſtory for the Admonition or Premoniſhment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Chriſtians dwelling at *Hieruſalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that ſo they might eſcape that deſtruction, which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. It ſtands on the River *Jaboc*, between it and Mount *Hermon*. 2 *Edrey*, the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Baſan*. 3 *Carnaim*, on the Banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabæus*, who ſet fire on the Temple of the Idols there, and burnt therein all ſuch as fled thither for Sanctuary. 4 *Ephron*, a ſtrong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the ſame *Judas Maccabæus*, for refuſing to give a paſſage to his Army. 5 *Jabeſh Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that *Adjunct*; memorable in the Scriptures for the ſiege of *Nahaſh* King of the *Ammonites*, the raiſing of that ſiege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the People towards him again, in taking down, embalming, and the entombing the bodies of him and his Sons, which the *Philiſtins* had moſt deſpitefully hanged on the Walls of *Bethſan*. 6 *Aſtaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times: The Seat of the *Rephaims*, a Giant-like Race of Men, of whom deſcended *Og* of *Baſan*; from whence the Country adjoyning had the name of the *Land of Giants*. *Aſtaroth*, the Goddeſs of the *Sidonians*, had here her Worſhippers. 7 *Gaulon* ſometimes poſſeſſed by Og of *Baſan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of ſuch eſteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North-part of *Baſanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, ſo often mentioned by *Joſephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, ſpoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8 *Gamala* in the lower *Gaulonitis*, ſo called becauſe the Hill upon which it ſtood was faſhioned like the back of a Camel: Invincibly ſituate, ſtrengthned both by Art and Nature; and at laſt with ſo great difficulty and hazard of *Veſpaſian*'s perſon, ſtormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, ſpared neither Women nor Children; inſomuch that all the Inhabitants periſhed, except ſome few Women which had hid themſelves. 9 *Gadara*, after Ten Months ſiege, taken and deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five ſeats of Juſtice for the whole Country of *Paleſtine*: The other Four being *Hieruſalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sephorah*. 10 *Geraſa*, or *Gergeſa*, the chief City of the *Gergeſites*, the people whereof on the loſs of their Swine intreated our Saviour to depart out of their Coaſt, as St. *Matthew* hath it. St. *Luke*, and St. *Mark* aſcribe it to the people of *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangeliſts at odds in their Relation; but becauſe they were two neighbouring Cities, and their Fields lay in common *pour cauſe de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phraſe it; and ſo the ſtory might be common to both alike. 11 *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from a Gariſon of Horſe there placed by *Herod*, not far from the Mountain *Hippus*, as ſome ſuppoſe;

poſe which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12 *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa* in the Southern border of his Eſtate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*; to ingratiate himſelf with *Julia*, the Wife of *Tiberius Cæſar*. 13 *Abel*, by *Joſephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for diſtinctions ſake: Where *Sheba* that grand Rebel beſieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into ſome danger, had his Head cut off, and thrown over the Wall, at the perſuaſion of a wiſe Woman of the Town. So the Rebellion ended, and the City was ſaved.

North of *Baſanitis*, or *Batanea*, lieth the Kingdom of GESSUR, by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hauran*, a Chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *chap.* 16. 18. A Kingdom ſpoken of by *Moſes* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*, *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Joſhua* as the Northern Border of the Kingdom of *Baſan*, *Chap.* 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria*, becauſe held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A Kingdom though of no great Territory, yet of ſome conſideration in the Eye of the World; *David* eſteeming the Alliance of the Kings hereof of ſome uſe unto him; and therefore marrying *Maacha* the Daughter of *Tolmai*, King of *Geſſur*, by whom he had *Abſalom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abſalom* fled on the killing of *Ammon*, abiding here three years as the ſtory telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at leaſt not very much diſtant from it was the petit Kingdom of *Isk-tob*, which ſent 12000 Men to the aid of the *Ammonites* againſt *David*: And not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobah*, that of *Beth-Rehob*, Confederate in the ſame War alſo with the other *Syrians*; mention whereof is made in the ſecond Book of *Samuel*, *Chap.* 10. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to thoſe North parts of *Ituræa*, is of no great certainty, and as little conſequence. For after this their greateſt and laſt exploit we hear no more news of them; ſwallowed up not long after (as it ſeems) by the Kings of *Damaſcus*.

To return therefore into *Geſſur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Paleſtine*, the places of moſt obſervation in it, were 1 *Geſſur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2 *Mahacath*, or *Macuti*, as ſome call it, conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. But of this we have already ſpoken in *Comagena*. 3 *Cauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *Chap.* 47. whence theſe Northern parts of *Paleſtine* were called *Auranites*. 4 *Chatſar-Heven*, there mentioned by that Prophet alſo. 5 *Us*, near the Borders of *Damaſcus*, the firſt Habitation of *Us* the Son of *Aram*, and Grand child of *Sem*, by whoſe name ſo called: Suppoſed to be the Founder of *Damaſcus* alſo, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts ſhould be the Land of *Has* enobled by the dwelling and ſtory of *Job*. 6 *Sueta*, mentioned by *Bochardus*, and by ſome conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad*, ſirnamed the *Shuebite*, one of *Job's* three Friends, mentioned in that ſtory: But both of him, and *Job* himſelf, and the Land of *Hus*, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great ſtrength and uſe, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the ſecond, by digging with incredible labour through the very Rock upon which it was ſeated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that ſide of *Jordan* were led captive into *Aſſyria*, and the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* ſubverted by *Tiglath Pileſer*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Perſian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which Houſe it was conquered (or at leaſt the greateſt part thereof) by *Alexander* the Second, King of the *Jews*, of the Race of the *Maccabees*; but loſt again for the moſt part in the time of *Hircanus* the Son of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Chalcis*; poſſeſſed hy *Ptolomy* the Son of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herod's* greatneſs; who dying left it to *Lyſanias* his eldeſt Son, murdered about ſeven years after by *Marc. Antony*, on the ſuggeſtions of *Cleopatra*, who preſently ſeized on his Eſtates. But *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, having left the Stage, *Lyſanias* a Son of the murthered Prince entereth next upon it, by the permiſſion of *Auguſtus*. During whoſe time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and Territory of *Paneas*, farming his Demeſnes, and paying a very great Rent for them; not only ſuffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infeſt the Merchants of *Damaſcus*, but received part of the booty with them. *Auguſtus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Country of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, before created King of *Jewry*; that by his puiſſance and power he might quell thoſe Robbers, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lyſanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoyning Territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herod's* good fortune end in this. For preſently on the Death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Auguſtus* gave him alſo the Diſtrict of *Paneas* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Galilee*,) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lyſanias*, made up the *Tetrarchy* of *Philip* his youngeſt Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500 *l.* of *Engliſh* Money. On *Philip's* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula* conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his Son *Ariſtobulus*; whom he had alſo dignified with the Title of King: After whoſe death, and the deash of *Agrippa Minor*, who next ſucceeded, his Eſtate's eſcheated to the *Romans*, and have ſince had the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

3 GALILEE.

GALILEE is Bounded on the Eaſt with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the Sea-coaſt of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called as ſome ſay, from *Gelileth*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying as much as *borders*; becauſe the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*. On the Weſt it has the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North *Libanus*; on the Eaſt *Jordan*; and on the South the Sea of *Galilee*, and the River *Chiſon*, and it was divided into the upper *Galilee* which lay to the North and is call'd *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*; and the Lower which lay South. In which our Saviour ſpent the greateſt part of his life, and wrought moſt of his wonderful Works.

The Countrey not ſo large as that on the other ſide of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of it ſelf, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and ſo well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waſte ground to be found in it. Thick ſet with Cities, Towns, and Villages, in the time of *Joſephus*, and thoſe ſo populous and rich, that the ſmalleſt Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel, if reported rightly, and not miſtaken in the tranſcripts. The people from their childhood very ſtout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury; which ſeconded by their vaſt and almoſt incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of imployment when ſubdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewiſh* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was ſomething in them of the ancient *Iſraelite*; and that they were not merely of an *Aſſyrian*, either ſtock or ſpirit; but intermixt with ſuch remainders of the Tribes as had ſaved themſelves, either by flying to the Mountains or hiding themſelves in Caves and Deſarts, or otherwiſe were inconſiderable for ſtrength and numbers; in the great tranſplantation of them made by *Salmanaſſar*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their ſpeech or language, which was the ſame with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwiſe from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *Engliſh* doth from that which is ſpoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the Damoſel had with St. *Peter*, in the High-Prieſt's Hall; in which ſhe plainly underſtood him, but ſo, that ſhe pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Tranſplantation* been ſo univerſal, as ſome think it was, and that both ſick and ſound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Aſſyrians* to fill up their places; it muſt needs be that thoſe New-comers would have planted their own language there, as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britans*, on this ſide of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this ſide of *Jordan*, eſpecially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or ſubjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was anciently into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Higher* ſo called from its ſituation more amongſt the Mountains, had alſo the name of *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*; and that either becauſe it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the reſt of the *Jews*; or becauſe a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cauſe ſoever it was called ſo firſt, certain it is, it held this name unto the laſt; known by it in the time of the Apoſtles, as appeareth by St. *Matthew*'s Goſpel, *Chap.* 4. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is ſituate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our bleſſed Saviour, whom *Julian* the *Apoſtate* called for this cauſe, in ſcorn, the *Galilean*: as for the ſame, the Diſciples generally had the name of *Galileans* impoſed upon them, till that of Chriſtian, (being a name of their own chuſing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greateſt part of both, known in the New Teſtament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to ſay, 1 *Cæſarea Philippi*. 2 *Aſer*. 3 *Cedes-Nephthalim*. 4 *Sephet*. 5 *Chorazim*. 6 *Capernaum*. 7 *Bethſaida*. 8 *Jotopata*. 9 *Tiberias*. And 10 *Scythopolis*. By which accompt it ſtretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, Eaſt and Weſt; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a ſquare of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, the whole *Galilee* was ſo diſpoſed of, that *Aſer*, *Nepthali*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulun*, and *Iſſachar* in the Lower: according to which diſtribution we will now deſcribe them.

1. The Tribe of *NAPTHALI*, was ſo called from *NAPTHALI* the ſixth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at their firſt muſter were found 53400 fighting men, and at the ſecond 44540 able to bear Arms. The Land allotted to them, lay on the Weſt ſide of the River *Jordan*, oppoſite unto the Northern parts of *Ituræa*; where before we left: having on the Weſt, the Tribe of *Aſer*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which Tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of thoſe which were with-holden by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accompted of as belonging to *Cœlo-Syria*; where they have been ſpoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-Eaſt part hereof, confronting the moſt Northern parts of *Ituræa*, as before was ſaid; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, beſides many other of leſs note. And it ſeemed deſtined to this Tribe by ſome old Preſage; the Eaſtern Fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Chedorlaomer* and his aſſociates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a poſſeſſion in it. Of which ſee *Gen.* 14. 14. The Town of moment firſt called *Leſhem*, by ſome Writers *Laiſh*: afterwards ſubject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon ſtrength thereof made good againſt thoſe of *Napthali*; but taken by ſome adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is ſaid, *Joſh.* 19. 47. That finding their own Countrey too little for them, *they went up and fought againſt* Leſhem *which they took, and called* DAN. Accompted after this exploit, the utmoſt bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being meaſured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beerſheba* in the South LXVII *German* miles, or 268 *Engliſh* miles: remarkable for one of the Golden Calves which was placed here by *Jeroboam*, and for the two ſpring heads of *Jordan*, riſing near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans* it was called *Paneas*, from a Fountain adjoyning of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before was ſaid, was given by *Auguſtus Cæſar* unto *Herod* the Great: and by him at his deceaſe to *Philip* his youngeſt Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Ituræa* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæſarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæſar*; partly to preſerve the memory of his own name: and partly to diſtinguiſh it from another *Cæſarea* ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*: and being ſo repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name, *Mat.* 16. 13. when St. *Peter* made that confeſſion or acknowledgment of his Lord and Maſter, *That he was* CHRIST *the Son of the living God*. By King *Agrippa*, who ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, in honour of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæſarea Paneæ* in the time of *Ptolomy*; and ſimply *Paneas*, as before, in the time of St. *Hierom*. Of this *Cæſarea* was that Woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the Hem of his Garment: who in a pious gratitude of ſo great a mercy, erected two Statues in this place, repreſenting *CHRIST*, and her ſelf kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the Apoſtate, by whoſe command it was caſt down, and a Statue of his own ſet up in the place thereof, miraculouſly deſtroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long before, an Epiſcopal See. Of leſs note there were. 1 *Haleb*, and 2 *Reccath*, both ſituate in the confines of it. And not far off the ſtrong Town and Caſtle of 3 *Magdala*, (the habitation as ſome ſay of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Phariſees* deſired a ſign of our Saviour CHRIST, as is ſaid *Mat.* 15. 39. & 16. 1. the ſame, or ſome place near unto it, being by St. *Mark* (reporting the ſame part of the Story) called *Dalmanutha*, *Chap.* 8. 10, 11. But whether this Caſtle did anciently belong to theſe *Danites*, or to thoſe of *Napthali*, or to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of thoſe which were in the poſſeſſion of the Tribe of *NAPTHALI*, the Cities of moſt eminent obſervation were, 1 *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvouz* of 24 *Canaaniſh* Kings in the War with *Joſhua*; by whom it was taken notwithſtanding, and burnt to aſhes. But being afterwards rebuilt, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who ſo grievouſly for the ſpace of 20 years, afflicted *Iſrael*; till vanquiſhed by

Deborah and *Barak*. Deſtroyed in that War, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in ſo good eſtate in our Saviour's time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*; it being ſo ſtill, but known by the name of *Antiopia*. 2 *Capernaum*, ſeated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Countrey it was accompted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whoſe preſence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitans*. Some marks of its former greatneſs it retained when St. *Hierom* lived, who confeſſeth it to be a Town of ſome good capacity, but ſo decayed in the time of *Breidenbach* and *Brochardus*, that it conſiſted but of ſix poor Fiſhermens houſes. 3 *Hamath*, ſo called from *Hamathi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in theſe parts; a Town of ſuch eſteem in the elder times that it was reckoned to be one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Introitum Hamath*, or the *entrance of Hamath*; as *Numb.* 34 8. *Joſh.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 3, &c. Miſtaken by St. *Hierom* for another of the ſame name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I ſay he is miſtaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eaſtward than *Cæſarea Philippi*, the moſt Eaſtern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the moſt Northern City of all *Paleſtine*. The ground of this miſtake we have ſeen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damaſcus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Iſrael*, by *Jeroboam* the ſecond Son of *Joas*: and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and ſome others of this tract) unto *Cœlo-Syria*. 4 *Kadeſh*, to difference it from others of the ſame name, called *Kadeſh-Napthalim*, high ſeated on the top of an Hill, as is ſaid, *Joſh.* 20. 7. the King whereof being taken and ſlain by *Joſhua*, it was made one of the Cities of Refuge, and given to the *Levites*. Moſt memorable for the Birth of *Barak*, who diſcomfited *Siſera*, Lieutenant of the Hoſt of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Jewiſh* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Epiſcopal See in the firſt ages of Chriſtianity. 5 *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Dauphnis*, a little Reviret, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as ſome ſay (but I think erroneouſly) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Priſoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who cauſed his children to be ſlain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that ſay it, the Scene of this Tragedy being by *Joſephus* laid in *Riblatha* (or *Riblath*) a City of *Syria*; the ſame which in ſucceeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Joſephus*, who for ſo long was Governor of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be ſo ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Countrey. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greateſt Towns in the Tribe of *Napthali*, ſhould be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; eſpecially for ſo long a time, as he is ſaid to have attended in that place, the ſucceſs of his forces then before *Hieruſalem*; and the diſpoſal of the State when the Town was taken. 6 *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, ſtrongly if not impregnably ſeated; one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes of the Weſtern Chriſtians, as it was after their expulſion of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence waſted and ſubdued all the neighbouring Countrey, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Countrey only but of all the Eaſt, in which the *Jews* (who poſſeſſed a third part of this Town) have any ſhew or ſhadow of a Common-Wealth. 7 *Bethſhemeth*, mentioned *Joſh.* 19. 38 made tributary unto thoſe of this Tribe; though otherwiſe poſſeſſed by the *Canaanites* who held out againſt them. 8 *Carthan*, or *Kiriathaim*, ſituate near the Mountain, which in following times was called *Mons Chriſti* becauſe much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apoſtles, as is ſaid *Mark* 3. 12. and where he made alſo that Divine Sermon, recited in the 5. 6. and 7. Chapters of St. *Matthew*'s Goſpel. 9 *Maſcoloth*, a place of a great ſtrength, but forced by *Bacchides*, General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Cinnereth*, a ſtrong City, after called *Geneſareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is ſometimes called the Lake of *Genneſareth*, as *Luke* 5. 1. &c.

2. The Tribe of *ASER*, was ſo called from *Aſer*, the eighth Son of *Jacob*, begotten of *Zilpah* the Handmaid of *Leah*; of whom at their firſt Muſter when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41500 perſons able to bear arms, all above twenty years of age, and at the ſecond Muſter when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increaſe. The portion of the Land alloted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great ſtore of Balſom; extending from the Coaſt of *Sidon*, to *Ptolomais*, thirty miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eaſtward to the Tribe of *Nepthali*, ſome twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolomais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command; yet had they in this narrow compaſs many beautiful Cities and Towns of note; which they were quietly poſſeſſed of, till their ſubjugation by the King of *Aſſyria*.

The principal of thoſe, and others which have ſince been founded, 1 *Aphek*, memorable for the great ſlaughter there made of the *Syrians* when beſieged by *Ben-hadad*; of whom 100000 were ſlain by the *Iſraelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of a Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* amongſt the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe: one of thoſe twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refuſal peopled by the *Iſraelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards rebuilt and ſtrongly fortified by *Herod* the Great. 3 *Giſcala*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence; the birth-place of *John* or *Jehocanan*, one of the three ſeditious in *Hieruſalem* when beſieged by *Titus*, where he did more miſchief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Maſters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being rebuilt by the authority of *Joſephus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon compoſition. 4. *Cana*, for diſtinction ſake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that Woman, whoſe Daughter Chriſt delivered of an evil Spirit; called by St. *Matthew* a Woman of *Canaan*, *chap.* 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by St. *Mark*, *chap.* 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the Race of *Canaan*, as was ſaid before. 5 *Hethlan*, or *Cethlan*, the furtheſt City of the North; as 6 *Miſſal*, or *Maſheal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aſer*. Of later Date there are 7 *Thoron*, a ſtrong piece, built by the *Chriſtians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the Excurſions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and giving Name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of which being Conſtable to King *Baldwin* the Third, lieth buried in the Chapel adjoyning to it, a curious piece of Workmanſhip, and dedicated by the Name of the Bleſſed Virgin. 8 *Belford*, ſo named from the ſtrength and beauty of it; ſeated on the high Grounds near the River *Naar*, and memorable for the great repulſe which *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raiſe his Siege with diſhonour and loſs, on the coming of the *Chriſtians* Armies. Some other Forts here are of the ſame Erection, as 9 *Montfort*, and 10 *Mount Royal* (or *Caſtrium Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended againſt the Infidels.

Elutherus, a ſmall River which ſpringing from *Mount Libanus*, waſheth *Hamath*, *Cana Major*, *Beifort* and *Holma*, falls into the *Mediterranean*, *North* of *Tyre*. Near this River ſtood *Caſtrum Novum*, built by one *Humfry de Torono*, which being beſieged by the *Great Saladin*, he was ſo frighted by the death of one of his Favourites ſlain by an Arrow before it, that he raiſed the Siege, and left the Caſtle.

3 The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was ſo called from *Zabulon* the Tenth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah* ; of whom there muſtered near Mount *Sinai* 57400 able Men ; and 65000 at their ſecond Muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aſer* and *Naphthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the Lake of *Tiberias* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Joknebam*, the King whereof was ſlain by *Joſhua*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the *City of Men* ; a ſtately and magnificent City, till burnt to the Ground by *Ceſtius* a *Roman* Preſident. 3 *Cana-minor*, ſo called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aſer*, the birth-place of *Nathaniel*, and as ſome ſay, of *Simon Zelotes* : Memorable for the Marriage at which our Saviour wrought his firſt Miracle, of turning Water into Wine : Called in *St. John*'s *Goſpel*, *Cana of Galilee*. 4 *Berſabe*, ſtanding in the Border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Joſephus* againſt the *Romans*. 5 *Dothan*, where *Joſeph* found his Brethren as they fed their Flocks ; and where the *Prophet Eliſha* ſtrook blind the *Syrians*, who beſieged him in it. 6 *Bethſaida*, ſituate on the *Sea of Galilee*, one of the Ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the Birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip* ; but moſt renowned for the Miracles and Preaching of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a ſmall Village, ſeated in a Vale betwixt two Hills, not far from *Ptolemais*, or *Acon* ; upon one of which Two Hills it was formerly built, where ſtill are to be ſeen the Ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Chriſtians* ; it being in the flouriſhing Times of *Chriſtianity* an Arch-biſhop's See. Of great eſteem for being, if not the Birth-place, yet the Habitation of the Virgin *Mary* ; who was here ſaluted with thoſe joyful Tidings by an Angel, as ſhe ſate in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is ſaid in the Popiſh Legends, That it was after the Virgin's Death had in great reverence by the *Chriſtians*, and remained in this Town till the *Holy-Land* was ſubdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, *Anno* 1291. Then moſt miraculouſly tranſported into *Sclavonia* ; but that place being unworthy of the Virgin's Divine Preſence, 'twas by the Angels carried over into the Sea-Coaſts of *Italy*, *Anno* 1294. That place alſo being infeſted with Thieves and Pirates, the Angels removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her Miracles were quickly divulged ; inſomuch that *Paul* the ſecond built a moſt ſtately Church over this Chamber, and *Xiſtus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our Famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our Bleſſed Saviour ſpend a great part of his Life before his Baptiſm ; from whence both he and his Diſciples had for many years the name of *Nazarites*. 8 *Jotopata*, ſtrongly ſeated on the top of a Mountain near the Lake of *Genneſareth*, fortified by *Joſephus* in the War with the *Romans*, but after a long Siege taken by *Veſpatian*, and in it *Joſephus* the Hiſtorian, Chief Governor of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raiſed out of the ground by *Herod the Tetrarch*, and named thus in Honour of *Tiberius Cæſar*. Situate in a Fruitful Soil on the edge of the Lake, which afterwards took the name of the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*: This City being held to be the greateſt of the *Lower-Galilee*, and the *Metropolis* of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called *St. Matthew* from the Receipts of the Cuſtom-Houſe ; and near unto it that he raiſed the Daughter of *Jairus*. The *Nubian Geographer* aſſureth us it was in the Twelfth Century the greateſt City on the River *Jordan*, and that it ſtood ſomething further from *Tyre* than from *Ptolemais*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, ſeated on an high Hill, and of very great ſtrength, as appears by the Story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like ſtrength, but forced by *Titus* ; who in the fury of the ſtorm ſlew in it above 15000 Perſons, and carried away with him 2000 Priſoners. 12 *Sephoris*, or *Sippora*, the Habitation of *Joachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the Bleſſed Virgin ; fortified with ſtrong Walls by *Herod the Tetrarch*, who made it his Regal-Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that Time, it had been made by *Gabinius*, one of the five *Juridical Reſorts* for the *Paleſtinians* : after that not without great difficulty forced by *Veſpaſian* ; and is nothing now but a Caſtle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Reſidence, for the moſt part of the *Turkiſh Sanziak* who hath the Government of this Province ; and lately, if not ſtill, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon* ; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziak* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is *Mount Tabor*, famous for the Transfiguration of our *Saviour* ; for a ſumptuous Chappel built on the Top of the Hill in memory of it, by the Empreſs *Helen*, Mother of *Conſtantine the Great* : and for the Fountain of the Brook *Chiſon*, which preſently divided into Two Streams runneth Eaſtward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias* ; and Weſtward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is ſo called from *Iſſachar* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the firſt Muſter 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the ſecond Muſter. Their Lot, in the partition of the Land amongſt the Tribes, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on this ſide *Jordan*, *North* and *South* ; extending from that River to the *Mid-land Sea*. A Territory not ſo well repleniſhed with ſtrong and eminent Cities, as was that before ; nor yielding ſo much matter of obſervation in the courſe of Buſineſs.

Thoſe of moſt note in it, 1 *Tarichæa*, on the ſide of the *Lake*, about 8 Miles from *Tiberias*, of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature ; as witneſſed the notable reſiſtance which *Veſpaſian* found when he beſieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible ſlaughter. 2 *Ciſhion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called alſo *Jarmuth*, another City of the *Levites* ; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Weſtward, and the City of *Jezreel* towards the Eaſt. 4 *En-hadda*, near which *Saul* being diſcomfited by the *Philiſtims*, ſlew himſelf for grief ; or elſe for fear of falling into the hands of thoſe mercileſs Enemies, againſt whom he had ſo often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chiſon* ; where *CHRIST* raiſed to life the Widow's Son. 6 *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, on the Banks of the ſame River alſo. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the Witch with whom *Saul* conſulted ; and the diſcomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who periſhed at *Endor*, and *became as the Dung of the Earth*, ſaith the Royal Pſalmiſt. 8 *Dabarath*, one of the *Cities of Refuge*. 9 *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the Two Thieves, which ſo greatly infeſted *Galilee* in the Time of *Herod*. And of a later date, the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* (*Caſtrum Peregrinorum* in *Latin* Writers) built by *Raymund* Earl of *Tholouſe*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the ſecurity of ſuch as travelled to the *Holy-Land*, and for long time the Magazine or Store-houſe of the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, now called *Tortora*. Situate on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near a ſpacious Bay ; on the *North*-ſide whereof *Mount-Carmel*, deſcribed already.

As for thoſe *Galileans* which ſucceed in the place of theſe Tribes, they were for the moſt part originally ſuch as were ſent hither by *Salmanaſſar* to inhabit there when the *Iſraelites* were led away into endleſs Thraldom ; but intermixed with ſome Remainders of the Ten Tribes, as was ſaid before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the ſame Extraction, with the reſt of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much deſpiſed by the *Jews* (as witneſſeth that ſcornful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: Tho theſe as Orthodox in Religion as the *Jews* themſelves. In which ſo zealouſly affected, that neither Threats nor Force could make them offer Sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperors, whom they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and Liberty, brought under the Command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabæans*, and with the reſt of that Kingdom beſtowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* ſirnamed *Antipas*, the ſecond of his Sons then living with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he joined till the Death of our Saviour; and on his deprivation (being baniſhed to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperor *Caligula*) beſtowed upon *Agrippa* his Brother's Son, the firſt King of the *Jews* ſo named. Under him, and his Son *Agrippa* the ſecond, it continued till the general Revolt of the Jewiſh Nation. Subjected by the Sword of *Titus* to the Power of the *Romans*, it hath ſince followed the ſame Fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

4 *SAMARIA.*

S*AMARIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the *North* with *Galilee*; and on the *South* with *Judæa*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it: of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably compoſed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for Tillage, and full of Trees, yielding variety of Fruits: watered both with the Dew of Heaven, and many Freſh Springs which the Earth affordeth it; occaſioning thereby abundance of Graſs, and conſequently of Milch-Beaſts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no leſs populous; but now famed for neither.

The People for the moſt part were originally the deſcendents of thoſe *Aſſyrians* whom *Salmanaſſar* ſent hither to poſſeſs the Dwellings of the Captive *Iſraelites*. *Gentiles* at firſt, till better inſtructed by the *Lyons* whom God ſent amongſt them, and after by the Prieſt ſent hither by the Kings of *Aſſyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moſes*, and out of them learned *the manner of the God of the Land*, 2 *King*. 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the reſt of the ſacred Canon; and no ſtrict Obſervers of this neither. And tho at firſt they ſo embraced the Worſhip of God, as that they ſtill adhered to the gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Aſhimach*, *Nibbas*, *Tartak*, and the reſt of that Rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. yet they were ſoon taken off from thoſe Impieties, and became zealous in the Worſhip of one only God; erroneous chiefly in the place which was deſtined to it. The wicked Policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, was as natural to them, as if they could not have poſſeſſed his Eſtates without it; and therefore would not ſuffer their People to go up to *Hieruſalem* to worſhip, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predeceſſors, that they erected no Golden Calves in *Dan* and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: Tho to divert the People from the *Temple of God*, they would have a *Temple* of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as ſacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. Schiſmatical enough in this, but not Idolatrous and Schiſmatical too as the others were; yet ſo conceited of themſelves, and their own Perfections, that they imagined themſelves defiled by any Company but their own. If therefore they had viſited any of their Neighbour Nations, at their return they uſed to ſprinkle themſelves with Urine; But if by negligence, or the neceſſity of Buſineſs, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themſelves, Cloaths and all, in the next Fountain. But in this the *Jews* cried quittance with them, not ſo much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other ſide, with all the bitterneſs of reproach and hatred. *There are two manner of People* (ſaith the Son of *Sirach*) *which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that ſit on the Mountains of* Samaria, *the* Philiſtims, *and the fooliſh People that dwell at* Sichem, *Ecclus*. 50. And this continued to the Times of our Bleſſed Saviour, whom when the *Jews* endeavoured to reproach with their heavieſt Calumnies, they could find out none ſo great, as to ſay, That he was a *Samaritan*, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converſe with Devils and Familiar Spirits.

Of theſe there were ſome Sects alſo, as amongſt the *Jews*. 1 The *Doſitheans*, ſo called from *Doſitheus* or *Doſthai*, ſuppoſed to be the firſt Prieſt who was ſent thither by the King of *Aſſyria*: agreeing with the *Jews* in Circumciſion, and the *Sabbath*, and the Doctrine of the Reſurrection, (in which laſt they differed from the common *Samaritan*, who was a *Sadducee* in that Point) but differing from them in ſome Points of a ſignal conſequence. For they rejected the Writings of all the *Prophets*, as not θεόπνευστοὶ inſpired by the Holy Ghoſt; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoræans*; abſtained from Marriage like the *Eſſenes*; and in the Point of *Sabbath*-keeping out-went the *Phariſees*; it being reſolved upon amongſt them, That in what Poſture ſoever a Man was found on the *Sabbath-day* Morning, in the ſame he was to continue without alteration the whole Day after. 2 The *Selvians*, ſo called from *Sebva*, or *Sebviah*, one of the Companions of that *Doſthai*; who tho they kept all the Publick Feſtivals, as the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the ſame Time: Transferring the *Paſſover* to *Auguſt*, the *Pentecoſt* to *Autumn*, and the Feaſt of *Tabernacles* to the Time of the *Paſſover*; not ſuffered for that cauſe to worſhip in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3 The *Gortheni*, who kept the ſame Feſtivals, and obſerved the ſame Times of thoſe Solemnities, as the Law required; but kept only one of the Seven Days of thoſe great Feſtivals, and laid by the reſt, as Days of ordinary Labour. In other Points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who tho at firſt poſſeſſed of all the Land belonging to the Ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, were yet reduced at laſt to a narrower compaſs; ſhut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judæa*, within the Ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on this ſide of the Water.

1 The half Tribe of *MANASSES* on this ſide of *Jordan*, was ſituate betwixt *Iſſachar* on the *North*, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the *South*; extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the Banks of that River. In which the places of moſt conſequence and conſideration, 1 *Bethſan*, environed almoſt with the Land of *Iſſachar*, ſituate near the Banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to ſtreighten and be like it ſelf, having been almoſt loſt in the Sea of *Galilee*; firſt called *Niſa*, and ſo called by *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Founder of it, in memory of his Nurſe there buried; but the Children of *Manaſſes* not being able to expel the Natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-ſan*, or the *Houſe of an Enemy*. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded thoſe parts of *Aſia*, and compelled ſome of the *Jews* to ſerve them againſt the reſt (whom notwithſtanding their good Service they put all to the Sword) they new-built this City: Called therefore by the *Græcians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cælo-Syria*. Memorable in the *Old-Teſtament* for the hanging of the dead Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the Walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philiſtims*; in the Time of our Saviour, for being the greateſt of all the *Decapolitan* Region; as afterwards in the flouriſhing Times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the See of an Arch Biſhop: now nothing but a deſolate Village, and an heap of Rubbiſh, out of which many goodly Pillars, and

other pieces of excellent Marble, are often digged. 2 *Terzah*, uſed by the Kings of *Iſrael* for their Regal Seat, till the building of *Samaria*, and the removal of it thither. 3 *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabatena*, was afterwards made one of the *Toparchies* of *Judæa*. 4 *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Baſtard *Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone, which a Woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to ſlay him, that it might not be ſaid he periſhed by the hands of a Woman. 5 *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there ſtood an Altar conſecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*: and not far off the Fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* ſlew 70 of his Brethren. An Heatheniſh Cruelty, and at this day practiced amongſt the *Turks*. 6 *Aſophon*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolemy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the *Jews*: which Victory he uſed with ſo great Barbarity, that he ſlew all the Women as he paſſed along, and cauſed young Childen to be ſod in Caldrons. 7 *Bezek*, The City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*, whoſe Story (touched upon before) ſee at large in *Judges*, *chap.* 1. By *Joſephus* it is called *Bala*, and ſeems to be the place in which *Saul* aſſembled the chief ſtrength of *Iſrael* and *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jabeſh-Gilead*, then diſtreſſed by the *Ammonites*. 8 *Jezreel*, the Royal City of *Ahab*, and the Kings of his Race, ſituate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*: ſo near unto the Borders of *Iſſachar*, that ſome have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in Sacred Story for the ſtoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezebel*, and the breaking of *Jezebel*'s neck by the Command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the Plains adjoining, called the Valleys or Plains of *Jezreel* (but by the Name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 10.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*: Famous for the great and many Battels which have been fought in it; as namely, of *Gideon* againſt the *Midianites*, of *Saul* againſt the *Philiſtims*, of *Ahab* againſt the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* againſt *Jehoram*; and finally of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Saracens*. 9 *Megiddo*, unfortunately obſervable for the death of the good King *Joſiah*, ſlain hereabouts in a Battel againſt *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*; and before that of *Ahaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoyning, when purſued by *Jehu*. 10 *Dora*, or *Dor* as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Caſtle of Pilgrims in the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. A very ſtrong and powerful City, and therefore choſe by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having firſt treacherouſly taken, and barbarouſly murthered *Jonathan* the *Maccabæan*, after he had received 200 Talents for his Ranſom; and no leſs villanouſly ſlain *Antiochus* the ſixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Maſter whom he ſucceeded in his Throne, was by *Antiochus* the ſeventh, with an Army of 120000 foot and 8000 horſe, beſieged in this City, and moſt deſervedly put to death. 11 *Cæſarea*, anciently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new-built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large Theatre and Amphitheatre, both of poliſhed Marble, with a fair and capacious Haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Druſus Cæſar*, Son-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, he cauſed one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Druſus*, the City it ſelf to be called *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*. The ſtatelineſs and magnificence of which City (when firſt built by *Herod*) he that liſts to ſee may find the ſame deſcribed at large by *Joſephus* the *Jew*, in the 15th Book of *Antiq. cap.* 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by St. *Peter*: Here did *Paul* plead in defence of Chriſtianity before *Feſtus* then the *Roman* Preſident: and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was ſmitten by an Angel, and devoured by Worms, after his Rhetorical Oration, which his *Paraſites* called the *voice of God, and not of man*. The Metropolis of all *Paleſtine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Paleſtina prima*, when by *Conſtantine*, or ſome of his Succeſſors, cantoned into three: the firſt Biſhop hereof being ſaid to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint *Peter* here initiated in the Faith of CHRIST. *Pliny* ſaith this City was call'd *Apollonia*, *Veſpaſian* gave it the Title of *Flavia Colonia*. 12 *Antipatris*, another City of *Herod*'s building, in the place where *Kapharſalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had ſometimes ſtood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabæus* overthrow a part of *Nicanor*'s Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Obadiah* the Steward of *Ahab* hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preſerved againſt the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally to this City it was that Saint *Paul* was conveyed by the command of *Lyſias* to ſave him from the *Jews*, who lay in wait to deſtroy him. *Act.* 23.31. This place is built in one of the moſt fruitful ſpots of Earth in *Paleſtine*, and was conſiderably ſtrong in the time of the Holy War, that *Godfrey* the firſt King of *Jeruſalem* could not take it, but *Baldwin* his Succeſſor however Conquered it. 13 *Alexandrium* a ſtrong Caſtle in the Southern border of this Tribe, which *Alexander* the Son of *Ariſtobulus* fortified againſt the *Romans*, but was at laſt forced to yield it up and the Caſtle was demoliſhed. *Ariſtobulus* eſcaping from *Rome* would have rebuilt it but was forbidden by *Gabinus*. *Herod* rebuilt it and left his Wife *Mariamna* in it when he went to *Auguſtus* to *Rhodes*. *Janſonius*.

2. The Tribe of EPHRAIM was ſo called from *Ephraim*, the ſecond and youngeſt Son of *Joſeph*; of whom were muſtered in the Deſarts 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*; where their Lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South, extending from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1 *Saron* on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley which reacheth from *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*, as far as *Joppa*. 2 *Lydda*, upon the ſame ſhores, where Saint *Peter* (*virtute Chriſti, non ſua*) cured *Æneas* of the Palſey. By the Gentiles it was called *Diſopolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the Chriſtians, in the time of the Holy Wars, it had the name of Saint *George*'s; partly from a magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Juſtinian* there erected to the honour of that bleſſed Martyr; but principally from an opinion which they had amongſt them, that he ſuffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded on miſtakes, firſt of a *Cænotaphium*, or an empty Monument erected in this City to preſerve his memory, for the Grave in which he was interred; the other, in taking the word *Paſſio*, uſed in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his ſuffering, which is meant only of the Story or Celebration. But howſoever they entituled it by the name of Saint *George*'s, as was ſaid before, and made it on that account alſo an Epiſcopal See. 3 *Ramatha*, or *Arimathea*, a City of the *Levites*, ſuppoſed to be the dwelling of *Joſeph*, who begged of *Pilate* the Body of CHRIST. 4 *Helon*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo; by ſome placed, and perhaps more fitly, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. 5 *Themnath-Cares*, given by the *Iſraelites* to *Joſhua*, who enlarged the ſame, and made it a ſtrong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the Nine *Worthies* of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Prefectures* of *Judea*, by the name of *Thamnitica*. 6 *Adaſa*, or *Adarſa*, where *Judas Maccabæus* with 3000 *Jews* overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7 *Jeſleti*, called otherwiſe *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *David*'s Guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8 *Silo*, ſituate on the top of a lofty Mountain; the receptacle of the Ark, till taken and carried thence by the *Philiſtims.* 9 *Michmaſh*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, ſituate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hieruſalem*, now called *Byra.* 10 *Naioth*, where *Saul* propheſied. 11 *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyſias.* 12 *Pirbathon*, on the Mountain *Amelec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Iſrael.* 13 *Sichem*, called alſo *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who defloured *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cauſe deſtroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground: a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damaſcus*: yet notwithſtanding theſe blows, it was of good eſteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days,and converted many. Memorable for *Jacob*'s Well, which was very near it;more for his neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the bleſſings were to be read to the people (of which ſee *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Joſh.* 8. 23) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the uſe of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the coſt and charge of *Sanballat*, a great Prince amongſt them. Who having married his daughter to *Manaſſes*, brother of *Jaddus* the High Prieſt of the *Jews*, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the ſentence of Excommunication, which he was involved in for that Match, promiſed him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple anſwerable to that of *Hieruſalem*, and make him the High Prieſt thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not ſtood above two hundred years, when deſtroyed by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*; the place remaining notwithſtanding a place of worſhip, as appeareth *John* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem*, or *Sichor*, it was by the *Græcians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperor *Veſpaſian*, who cauſed it to be called *Flavia Cæſarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Juſtin Martyr.* 14 *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron* (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coaſt) whence it had the name. A ſtately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brochardus*, who had traced the ancient Ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hieruſalem.* Deſtroyeed by the *Aſſyrians* when they carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod* the *Great* who was pleaſed with the ſituation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more ſtately manner than before; as appeareth by the great ſtore of goodly Marble Pillars, and other carved Stones, in great abundance found amongſt the rubbiſh: and having rebuilt it to his mind, incloſed it with a ſtrong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*, he cauſed it to be called *Sebaſte.* Memorable after this new erection for the Sepulchre of *John Baptiſt*, and being made the *Metropolis* of *Paleſtina Secunda*, (by conſequence an Archbiſhop's See) now nothing but a few Cottages filled with *Græcian* Monks.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themſelves (ſo called from this their principal City) leſs ſubject to the viciſſitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Deſcended for the moſt part from the *Aſſyrians*, and ſuch other Nations as were ſent thither to fill up the empty places of the captive Tribes: but called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, either becauſe moſt of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Perſia*, as *Joſephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzeſtan*; or elſe by way of ſcorn, for *Chuſites*, as being of the Poſterity of the accurſed *Cham*, by *Chus* his ſon. Having imbraced the Law of *Moſes*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the obſervation of the ſaid *Joſephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any proſperity, then they called them *Couſins*, and would be of the ſame Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were ſtrangers which came thither out of foreign Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that Character. For when *Alexander* the *Great* had granted the *Jews* a releaſe of the ſeventh years Tribute, the *Samaritans* deſiring the like exemption, pleaded for themſelves 'Εβραῖοι μὲν εἶναι &c. that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleaſed the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites.* But when *Antiochus* raged againſt them with fire and ſword, the *Samaritans* ſent Letters to him, diſclaiming all relation to thoſe of *Judah*, and challenging their deſcent from the *Medes* and *Perſians.* Nor were they content only to diſclaim all kindred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any perſecution roſe againſt them for the Law of God; but did them alſo all ill Offices, and joyned with their Enemies to their deſtruction: eſpecially after the *Jews* had refuſed to admit of their aſſiſtance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindered with great malice, and no leſs perverſeneſs. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at laſt prevail, the whole Nation being ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*, who deſtroyed their Schiſmatical Temple alſo, and levelled *Samaria* it ſelf to the very ground. After this, ſubject to the *Jews*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of moſt of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compaſs than they were in formerly: but ſtill ſo hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appeaſe that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to ſeek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman* Empire, by the name of *Paleſtina Secunda*; ſucceſſively ſubject with the reſt to the *Perſians*, *Sarazens*, and *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it.

5 *JUDÆA.*

JUDÆA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean*; on the North with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumæa.* So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Judæa* to this part of the Country.

The Soil of the ſame nature with that of *Samaria*, before deſcribed; but that it is more ſwelled with Hills, and more ſtored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we ſhall ſay no more, as to the general character and deſcription of it; but look on the particular parts as it ſtood divided betwixt the *Philiſtims*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah* and *Benjamin.*

And firſt, the *PHILISTIMS* commanded all the Sea coaſts from the South of *Phænicia*, to the North of *Idumæa*; or from the *Caſtle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Iſraelites*, they held no more than ſix Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoyning to them: but thoſe ſo populous and ſtrong, that by their own power, and the aſſiſtance of the *Edomites*, and the reſt of their Neighbours, not well affected to the Tribes, they kept them under terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we ſum up the ſtory and ſucceſſes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us ſurvey the Country which was holden by them, notwithſtanding all that could be done againſt them by the Kings of *Iſrael*: And therein we ſhall find worth our obſervation, 1 *Geth*, or *Gath*, the Birth place of the huge Giant *Goliah*, ſlain by *David*; as alſo of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, ſlain by *David*'s Worthies. Deſtroyed by *David*, or rather ſlighted and diſmantled, it was rebuilt by *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philiſtims* there Gariſoned but ill Neighbours to him, and finally laid waſte by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in St. *Hierom's* time; till in theſe laſt ages *Fulk* the King of *Hieruſalem* erected there a new Caſtle, from the ancient ruins. From hence, as I conceive, the Idol *Dagon*, ſo much worſhipped by theſe *Philiſtims*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is ſaid by many. 2 *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably againſt the *Danites* and *Judæans*. Much ſpoken of in the Holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worſhip of *Belzebub*, that is to ſay, the *Lord of Flies*: ſo called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the Idolatries committed to him, or becauſe of that great multitude of Flies which attended his Sacrifices, whereof ſome ſay, the Temple of *Hieruſalem* was wholly free. But whatſoever he was, or for what cauſe ſo named, certain it is that he was here had in ſpecial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the god of *Accaron*: and thither *Ahaziah* the King of *Iſrael* ſent his Meſſenger, to enquire of this Idol, concerning his health. 3 *Aſhod*, (by the *Græcians* called *Azotus*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the Ark of the Lord was brought; that Idol falling down before it, as not able to ſtand upright when the Ark ſo near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabæus* overcome and ſlain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after the Town it ſelf was taken by *Jonathan* the Brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the ſword, and burnt all ſuch as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very Idol, conſumed in the ſame fire with the Idolaters. Rebuilt by *Gabinius* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Chriſtianity* it was made an Epiſcopal See; and continued a fair Village till the days of St. *Hierom*. 4 *Aſcalon*, on the Sea ſide alſo, ſaid to be built by *Aſcalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war againſt the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and ſtrongeſt Cities of the *Philiſtims*, of great note amongſt the Gentiles for a Temple dedicated to *Derceto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worſhipped in the form of a Mermaid: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the Father of *Antipater*, and Grand-father of *Herod* the *Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*) is ſaid to have ſerved as the Prieſt. It had in the firſt times of Chriſtianity an Epiſcopal See; and in the courſe of the Holy Wars was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the firſt. 5 *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Beſor*; a fair and ſtrong Town, formerly called *Aſſa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the Heathens; or elſe it was ſo called by the *Perſians*, in regard that *Cambyſes* here laid up the Treaſure which he had provided for the War of *Ægypt*, the word *Gaza* in the *Perſian* Language ſignifying treaſures. Of which *Cambyſes* it is ſaid by *Pomponius Mela*, *Cum armis* Ægyptum *peteret, huc belli opes & pecuniam invehi curavit.* After which it was made the Receipt of Treaſury, in which the *Perſians* laid the Tribute of the Weſtern Provinces, whence all riches had in time the name of *Gazæ*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it againſt the *Philiſtims*, he again deſerted it. Deſtroyed by *Alexander* the *Great*, and rebuilt again, it made notable reſiſtance againſt the *Maccabees*; till at laſt forced by *Simon* the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place ſo well that he intended to have made it his place of reſidence: not ſo decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*. And it is ſtill the beſt of all this Coaſt, built on an hill encompaſſed with rich and pleaſant Vallies; the buildings low and mean, as in other places: but ſome of them adorned with Pillars of fair *Parian* Marble digged out of the remaining ruins. 6 *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it ſelf by *Conſtantine*, by whom called *Conſtantia*: but reſtored again by *Julian* unto thoſe of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

Theſe were the chief places holden by the *Philiſtims*, a ſtrong and Giant-like race of men, ſuch as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*. Originally deſcended from *Caſlubim* and *Capthorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the Son of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common conſent of ancient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jer.* 47. 4. and *Amos.* 9. 7. Theſe being ſetled firſt in the borders of *Ægypt* and *Idumæa*, where the *Caſlubim* gave name unto the Province of *Caſiotis*, and the Mountain *Caſius*; proceeded Northwards and ſubdued the *Avim*, a *Canaanitiſh* people, planting themſelves in their habitations, as is ſaid expreſly *Deut.* 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Iſaac* went down to *Gerar*. Governed at firſt by one King, whom they called always by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Ægyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; ſometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but ſtill united in the times of approaching dangers. Too ſtrong to be ſubdued by the Tribes of *Iſrael*, they made head againſt them, and maſtered them at ſeveral times, for above 150 years, tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Sampſon* and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquiſhed the *Iſraelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they diſcomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarouſly on the walls of *Bethſan*. But *David*, a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many ſet battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the ſtrongeſt Towns they had; and by that means ſo weakned them, that they durſt not ſtir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troubleſome in the days of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Ita* and *Amcia*, two of their ſtrong Forts, took and razed, and the Town of *Gath* again diſmantled. In the time of the Idolatrous *Achaſz*, aſſociating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the deſtruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethſemes*, *Ajalon*, *Timnah*, and ſome other Towns; carried away many Priſoners, and ſlew much People: But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them, the greateſt part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithſtanding, they recovered to ſo great eſteem, that the whole Countrey had from them the name of *Paleſtine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they loſt both their power and reputation, paſſing in common eſtimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the time ſucceeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN* is ſo called from *Dan* the fifth Son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the Hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were muſtered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the ſecond muſter, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North, *Simeon* on the South, the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the Eaſt, and the *Mediterranean* on the Weſt.

Places of moſt note in it, 1 *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the only Haven to *Judæa* in foregoing times: the Town where *Jonah* took ſhip to flee unto *Tarſhiſh*, where *Peter* raiſed *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the houſe of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a Viſion taught the converſion of the Gentiles. This City they report to have been built before the flood. And here they ſay reigned *Cepheus*, whoſe Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perſeus* delivered from a Sea-monſter, ſome of whoſe bones the people uſed to ſhew to ſtrangers, even to the flouriſhing of the *Romans*. Juſt as our Citizens of *Coventry* and

Warwick ſhew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunſmear* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, ſlain by *Guy* Earl of *Warwick.* In the time of the *Maccabees* it was gariſoned by the *Syrians,* who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and ſtrength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas,* and ſuch as did eſcape the fire, fell upon the ſword. Twice taken by the *Romans,* and the ſecond time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers by King *Lewis* of *France,* in the year 1250. the Holy Wars then drawing to their final end. Now nothing ſtanding of it but two little Turrets where are certain Harquebuſſes for defence of the Haven, none of the beſt; defended from the South and Weſt-winds with eminent Rocks, but expoſed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unſafe than the open Seas when enraged by Tempeſts. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottens only, and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2 *Rama,* by the *Moors* called *Remulà,* ſituate in a ſandy plain, on the riſing of a little Hill; built of Free-ſtone, but the ſtreets thereof narrow, and the houſes contemptible. More beautiful in the ruins of ſome Chriſtian Churches, and a Monaſtery built by *Philip* the *Good* of *Burgundy,* where the Houſe of *Nicodemus* ſtood, than in any of the remaining Edifices. 3 *Jamnia,* near *Joppa,* where *Judas* burnt the reſt of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was ſeen to *Hieruſalem,* 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolomy,* and in the times of Chriſtianity an Epiſcopal See; now not diſcernable in the ruins. 4 *Cedar* or *Cedron,* fortified againſt the *Jews* by *Cendebæas* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus,* who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees.* 5 *Modin,* a ſmall Town, but honoured with the birth and ſepulchre of thoſe *Maccabæans;* the Sepulchre being ſeven Marble Pillars of ſo great an height, that they ſerved as a mark for Seamen. 6 *Gibbethon,* in the Country called *Makats,* a City of the *Levites,* but afterwards poſſeſſed by the *Philiſtims,* at the ſiege whereof *Nadab,* the Son of *Jeroboam* King of *Iſrael,* was ſlain by *Baaſha,* who ſucceeded; and *Omri* choſen King on the death of *Zimri.* 7 *Cariathiarim,* where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the houſe of *Aminadab;* that is to ſay, from the ſending it home by the *Philiſtims,* till brought to *Hieruſalem* by *David.* 8. *Bethſemes,* to which the Ark was brought by a yoak of Kine, turned looſe by the *Philiſtims:* for irreverent looking into which there were ſlain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 perſons of this City. 9 *Tſarah,* near which is a Fountain, called the Fountain of *Ethiopia,* becauſe *Phillip* there baptized the *Ethiopian* Eunuch. 10 *Caſpin,* taken with great ſlaughter by *Judas Maccabeus.* 11 *Lachis,* remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah.* 12 *Ajalon,* a City of the *Levites* alſo, touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim;* in the borders whereof we find it ſituated; and therefore by ſome Authors reckoned to the ſame Tribe, and by ſome to the other, in the Valley whereof the Moon is ſaid to have ſtood ſtill at the prayers of *Joſhua,* as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon:* the motion of the Heavens being ſtaid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites.* To this Tribe alſo belongeth the Town and Territory of *Dan,* or *Leſham,* afterwards called *Cæſarea Philippi,* in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM,* whereof we have there ſpoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was ſo called from *Simeon* the ſecond Son of *Jacob* by his firſt Wife *Leah:* of whom were found at the firſt muſter 59300 able men, and but 22200 at the ſecond muſter when they came into *Canaan.* Where they enjoyed but a ſmall Territory to themſelves, their Lot falling amongſt the *Philliſtims,* whom they were not able to expel; and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah,* where they were permitted to enjoy ſome Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards in the reign of King *Hezekiah,* ſome of them poſſeſſed themſelves of *Gedar,* belonging to the Children of *Ham;* and others paſſing South-wards into *Idumæa,* ſmote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the Mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themſelves and their children, many of them undertook the Office of Scribes or Scriveners, and diſperſed themſelves amongſt the reſt of the Tribes, teaching their children to write, and giving themſelves to the employment of Publick Notaries. God herein veriſying the Curſe which *Jacob* had denounced on *Simeon,* that he *ſhould be divided and ſcattered in* Iſrael. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by Lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the Eaſt, and the *Philiſtims* upon the Weſt.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Gerar,* the Royal ſeat of the two *Abimelechs,* Kings of the *Philiſtims,* with whom *Abraham* and *Iſaac* had to do; and probably of ſome other of their Kings and Princes, till ſubdued by the *Iſraelites.* Situate in the South border of *Canaan,* not far from the Wilderneſs of *Beerſheba,* but in a very healthful air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times ſucceeding. 2 *Siceleg,* or *Ziglag,* belonging to the *Philiſtims* till the time of *David,* to whom given by *Achiſh* King of *Gath,* for his place of retreat, when perſecuted by *Saul,* from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages; ſacked by the *Amalekites,* but the booty recovered from them ſpeedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David.* 3 *Haim,* a City of the *Levites.* 4 *Cariah-Sepher,* that is to ſay the *City of Books,* ſeated within the bounds of *Simeon,* but belonging to *Judah:* which ſome hold to be the Univerſity or Academy of old *Paleſtine.* A City of the *Levites* alſo, and at firſt poſſeſſed by the Sons of *Anak,* or men of a Gigantine ſtature, but taken by *Othniel* the Son of *Kenan;* on the promiſe and encouragement which was given by *Caleb,* that whoſoever took it ſhould have his Daughter *Achſah* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir,* Judg. 1. 11. known in the time of St. *Hierom* by the name of *Daema.* 5 *Chorma,* conceived by ſome to be that place mentioned *Num.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* purſued thoſe of *Iſrael.* 6 *Beerſheba,* or *Puteus juramenti;* ſo called of the Well of waters, and the Oath which was there ſworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech,* Gen. 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the Grove which *Abraham* there planted, the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when ſhe was caſt out of *Abraham's* houſe with her young Son *Iſmael;* and the dwelling of *Iſaac,* for which cauſe called the city of *Iſaac.* Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan,* the length whereof is often meaſured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan;* and for that cauſe well fortified by the Weſtern Chriſtians, when they were poſſeſſed of this Country; as ſtanding on the borders of *Idumæa,* and the Deſarts of *Arabia,* in the way from *Ægypt.*

4. The Tribe of *JUDAH* was ſo called from *Judah* the fourth Son of *Jacob,* by his Wife *Leah:* of whom there were numbred at the firſt general muſter taken near Mount *Sinai,* 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan.* The greateſt Tribe, and therefore anſwerably fitted with the largeſt Territory, bordering on the *Dead Sea,* Eaſt; upon *Simeon* Weſt; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwiſe unable to contain or feed thoſe infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary Providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* muſtering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the reſt of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Soveraignty over all the others; the Scepter, the Legiſlative power, and the World's *Meſſiah* being all promiſed to them.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Arad*, ſituate in the entrance of *Judæa*, in the way from the Wilderneſs of *Edom*. 2 *Hebron*, one of the ancienteſt Cities of *Canaan*; the Seat of the Gyants, called *Anakim*, or the Sons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* ſignifieth a Chain worn for Ornament, and it ſeemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the Spoils of his Enemies, wore a Chain of Gold, leaving both the cuſtom and name to his Poſterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman* Hiſtories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a Burial-place for his Dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was firſt Buried, and after her four of the Patriarchs. Adjoyning to this Town is the Plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham*, the Father of the Faithful, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited from Heaven by God in the ſhape of a Man. *Caleb* took this Town from the *Philiſtims* in the Conqueſt of the Land of *Canaan*, and it was after aſſigned to the *Levites*. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hieruſalem*; to this place came the Tribes to Anoint him King over *Iſrael*; and hither came *Abſalom*, under the pretence of paying his Vows, to Uſurp the Kingdom of his Father. 3 *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and alſo of that Woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her Mouth, perſwaded the King to call *Abſalom* from Exile. In the Wilderneſs of this *Tecoa* there Aſſembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Judah*. But the Lord being appeaſed by the publick Faſt, proclaimed, and kept by *Jehoſaphat* and the People, ſow'd Diſſentions among them: So that *the Children of* Ammon *and* Moab *ſtood up againſt the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *utterly to ſlay and deſtroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *every one help'd to deſtroy one another.* 4 *Cerioth*, or *Carioth*, the Birth-place of *Judas*, hence ſirnamed *Iſcariot* (or the Man of *Carioth*) who Betray'd our Saviour. 5 *Jether*, or *Jatter*, in the North Border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City anciently of the *Levites*, and called in St. *Jerom*'s time, *Jethira*, and then altogether repleniſhed with *Chriſtians*, now nothing but the Name remaining. 6 *Mareſa*, the Native Soil of the Prophet *Micah*, near whereunto firſt *Aſa* King of *Judah* diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Tera* the *Arabian*, or *Ethiopian*, conſiſting of above a Million of Men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabæus*. 7 *Emaus* (after call'd *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the ſaid *Gorgias*; for our Redeemer's ſhewing himſelf after his Reſurrection to *Cleophas* and another of his Diſciples; and for the hot Baths hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Paleſtine*. The Soveraign Virtue of which Waters *Sozomen*, a Chriſtian, attributes to the waſhing of Chriſt's Feet in them, as he paſſed by at that time; but *Joſephus* a *Jew*, aſcribes (as is moſt likely) unto natural cauſes. 8 *Haſor*, or *Chatſor*, one of the Frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9 *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an Ancient and Magnificent City, taken, and deſtroyed by *Joſhua*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* ſometimes hid himſelf when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the Aſſaults of the *Philiſtims*. 11 *Eleutheropolis*, or the *Free City*, not far from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judah*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and much remembred by St. *Hierom*. 12 *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joſhua* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Aſſociaets, whom he diſcomfited in the Cauſe and Quarrel of the *Gibeonites*; moleſted by them for ſubmitting to their Common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great ſtrength; preſuming upon which, it Revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had Revolted from him. 13 *Beth-Sur*, or (*Beth-Sora*) that is to ſay, the *Houſe* on the *Rock*, ſo called from the ſituation on a Rocky Hill, one of the ſtrongeſt places of *Judah*: Fortified firſt by *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabæus*; and finally made impregnable by his Brother *Simeon*. 14 *Adoram*, Bordering on the *Dead Sea*, Beautified alſo by *Rehoboam*. 15 *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took its name from the words of *Lot*, alledging that it was but a little one, *Gen.* 19. 20. as the word *Tſohor* doth import, in whoſe eſcape it was preſerved, being otherwiſe one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto Deſtruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gomorah*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the ſame time deſtroyed by Fire and Brimſtone. 16 *Maſſada*, frequently mentioned by *Joſephus* as a place of great ſtrength both by art and nature, and as it is by him deſcribed (in the ſeventh Book *de Bello Jud. Cap.* 28.) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his Troubles) the place of Refuge, in which he diſpoſed of *Mariamne* his betrothed Wife, her Mother *Alexandra*, with divers Honourable Ladies; and where they were preſerved in ſafety againſt all his Enemies, till he came Armed with Power from *Rome*, to diſlodge their Forces, which was done accordingly. Firſt built by *Jonathan* the Brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, as a ſure place of Refuge againſt the *Syrians*; and afterwards ſo eſteemed by *Herod* for the reaſon above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it, with all the requiſite additions of Strength and Beauty, but built within the verge thereof a Magnificent Palace. The whole environed with a Wall of 7 Furlongs compaſs, 12 cubits high, and 8 cubits broad, built of white Stone, and ſituate on a high Mountain called *Collis Achillæ*, waſhed on the Eaſt ſide by the *Dead Sea*, or *Lacus Aſphaltites*, and by that ſecured; on the other ſides fenced with ſuch deep Ditches that it was a terror to any man to look down into them: beſides which natural ſituation, it was Fortifi'd by *Herod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein as in a place impregnable and inacceſſible, a Magazine of Arms and all warlike furniture for an Army of 10000 men, all ſorts of Victuals to ſuſtain them, and ground enough within the walls to yield Corn ſufficient, when time and a long Siege ſhould conſume thoſe victuals. A place of ſuch ſtrength, and ſo great concernment, that it held out againſt the *Romans* (when *Veſpaſian* and his Son *Titus* managed that great War) after all the reſt of *Judæa* had been Conquered by them. 17 *Libna*, a ſtrong City ſeated in a corner of *Judah*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City Revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time the *Edomites* did, and continued a Free State, even as *long* as *Judah* continued a Kingdom. 18 *Ziph* in the Wilderneſs, wherein *David* hid himſelf from the Fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* purſu'd him, *David* came into his Camp (the Watch being all aſleep) and took thence his Spear and a Cruſe of Oyl, and departed. *Abiſhai* indeed would fain have killed him: But *David*, tho' he knew that *Samuel* had by God's Command *Abdicated Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himſelf was appointed in his ſtead would not touch him; but left him to the Judgment of the Lord, whoſe Anointed he was. 19 *Bethlehem* (or to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name of *Zabulon* ſo called) *Bethlehem-Judah*. This City or Town was called *Ephrata*, from the Wife of *Caleb*, and was the Birth-place of *David*, and where Chriſt was born; and the *Innocents* ſuffered for him before he had ſuffered for them. In this general maſſacre of young Children, a Son of *Herod*'s, which was at Nurſe, was alſo ſlain; which being told unto *Auguſtus*, he reply'd, *He had rather be* Herod'*s Swine than his Son*. His Swine being ſafe in regard the *Jews* were forbidden Hog-meat; but his Sons frequently made away upon Fears and Jealouſies. A Town for this cauſe had in great reſpect by the Primitive *Chriſtians*, Beautified by *Helen* with a ſtately Temple, which yet ſtanding entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by St. *Hierom*) with ſome goodly Monaſteries, in one of which the Body of that Father lieth; and by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, with a See Epiſcopal. On the Frontier of this Country towards the *Philiſtims*, was that ſtrong Caſtle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*, ſeated on a Hill, the Aſcent into which was made with 200 ſteps of Marble, exceeding fair and large. In this Country alſo are the Hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the Lap of *Saul*'s Garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balſamum* or *Opobalſamum*, the trees of which were by *Cleopatra* (at ſuch time as ſhe Governed *Mark Antony* and the Eaſt) ſent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Ægypt*; and *Herod*, who durſt not deny them, plucked them up by the roots and ſent them to her.

5. The Tribe of BENJAMIN, took name from the twelfth and youngeſt Son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his beſt beloved Wife, who died in that Child-birth: Of which at the firſt Muſter, near unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbred 35000 able men; and at the ſecond Muſter, when they entred the *Promiſed Land*, there were found of them fit for Arms 45600 perſons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the Folly of the Men of *Gibeah*, all *Iſrael* Arming againſt it as one man. For beſides thoſe that periſhed in the former Battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the Sword: the fury of the Conquerors after that great Victory ſparing neither Man nor Beaſt, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities alſo which they came unto. So great an havock was there made of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this diſpleaſure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for thoſe young men who had eſcaped; The other Tribes having bound themſelves by a ſolemn Oath, not to beſtow their Daughters on them: inſomuch that they were fain to provide themſelves Wives of the Daughters of *Jabeſh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manaſſites* beyond *Jordan*, whom they took by Aſſault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole Story ſee at large in the Book of *Judges*, *chap.* 19, 20, 21.

The Territories of this Tribe, lay betwixt thoſe of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead Sea* to the Eaſt, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Weſtward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, 1 *Maccab.* 9. 73. 2. *Miſpah*, famous in being the ordinary place of Aſſembly for the whole Body of the People, in matters of War and Peace: as alſo in that ſtanding in the midſt of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the Seat of Juſtice, to which *Samuel* went yearly to give Judgment to the People. 3. *Gebah*, the North Border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Iſrael*. 4. *Gebeah*, the Country of *Saul*, the firſt King; where the abuſing of the *Levite*'s Wife by the young men of this Town, had almoſt rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Iſrael*. 5. *Ai*, a great and ſtrong City, in the Siege of which, the *Iſraelites* wdre firſt diſcomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had ſtoln the accurſed thing, the Camp was purged, *Joſtua* by a Warlike Stratagem Surprized it. 6. *Gibeon*, the Mother-City of the *Gibeonites*, who preſaging the unreſiſtable Victories of the *Iſraelites*, came to the Camp of *Joſhua*, and by a wile obtained Peace of him and the People: employed by them in hewing Wood and drawing Water for the uſe of the Tabernacle, after the Fraud was made known unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezra* 4. 3. from *Nathan*, which ſignifies *to give*, becauſe they were given to the Service of the Tabernacle firſt, of the Temple after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, ſlew ſome of them, for which Fact the Lord cauſed a Famine on the Land; which could not be taken away till ſeven of *Saul*'s Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This Famine did God ſend, becauſe in killing thoſe poor *Gibconites*, the Oath was broken which *Joſhua* and the Princes ſwore concerning them. In defence of thoſe *Gibeonites* it was that *Joſhua* waged War againſt the Kings of the *Canaanites*, and ſtay'd the motion of the Sun by his fervent Prayers. 7. *Jericho*, deſtroyed by the ſound of Rams-horns, was not only levelled by *Joſhua* to the ground, but a Curſe inflicted on him that ſhould attempt the re-building of it. This Curſe notwithſtanding, at the time when *Ahab* Reigned in *Iſrael*. (which was about five hundred years after the Ruin of it) *Hiel* a *Bethelite*, delighted with the pleaſantneſs of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Joſhua*) as he laid the Foundation of the Walls, he loſt his Eldeſt Son; and when he had finiſhed it, and was ſetting up the Gates thereof, he loſt alſo the younger. It may be *Hiel*, when he began this Work, minded not the Prophecy, it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Joſhua* not ſo much to proceed from the Spirit of Prophecy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being ſpoken in way of wiſh, or execration. And it is poſſible, it may be, he choſe rather to build the Eternity of his Name on ſo pleaſant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain Lives and Iſſues of two young men. *Veſpaſian* took, and ruined this City, *Anno Chriſti* 68. and *Adrian* the Emperor rebuilt it. *Brocardus* found here only eight houſes in his time, but *Thevenot* found thirty or forty Inhabited by the *Arabians*. 8. *Anathoth*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the Patrimony of *Abiathar* the High-Prieſt, ſent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when depoſed from his Office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called, 1 *Sam.* 22. 19. the City of the *Prieſts*, deſtroyed by *Saul*, for the Relief which *Abimelech* the High-Prieſt had given to *David*; the Ark of the Lord then reſiding there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the Bank of *Jordan*, where *Joſhua* did firſt eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his firſt *Paſſeover*; where he Circumciſed ſuch of the People as were born during their wandring in the Wilderneſs; and nigh to which he ſet up twelve Stones for a Memorial to Poſterity that the Waters of *Jordan* did there divide themſelves, to give paſſage to the twelve Tribes of *Iſrael*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalakites* was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*; and here *Samuel* once every year adminiſtred Juſtice to the People. For being ſeated in the midſt of the Land of *Iſrael*, betwixt North and South, and on the Eaſt ſide of the Countrey near the Banks of *Jordan*, it ſerved very fitly for that purpoſe: as *Miſpah* alſo did, which ſtood in the ſame diſtance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but ſituate towards the Weſt Sea, near the Land of the *Philiſtims*: uſed therefore interchangeably for the eaſe of the People. 11. *Bethel*, at the firſt called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the Viſion which *Jacob* ſaw here, at going towards *Meſopotamia*, as is ſaid, *Gen.* 28. 19. It ſignified the Houſe of God, and was therefore choſen by *Jeroboam*, for the ſetting up of one of his golden Calves; though there (as the Prophet ſaid) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the *Houſe of Vanity*, Hoſ. 3. 15. & 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes, and the Southern Border of that Kingdom on the Coaſt of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a Member of his Kingdom, till the deſtruction of it by the *Chaldæans*. Called with the reſt of thoſe parts, in the time of the *Maccabees*, by the name of *Aphærema*, which ſignifieth a thing taken away; becauſe taken away from the ten Tribes, to which once it belonged, 1 *Mac.* 11. 34. where it is ſaid to have been taken from the Country of *Samaria*, and added unto the Borders of *Judæa*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and ſaid to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South Border of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*; and therefore ſtrongly Fortify'd by *Baaſha*, in the time of *Aſa* King of *Judah*. 13. *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14 *Lod*, and 15 *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity, Deſtroyed in the Wars with the Kings of *Aſſyria*, and afterwards re-built by *Simon* the *Maccabæan*.

But the chief Glory of this Tribe, and of all the reſt, and not ſo only, but of all the whole World beſides, was the famous City of *Hieruſalem*; ſeated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be aſcended with ſteep and difficult aſcents (except towards the North) environ'd on all other ſides alſo with ſome neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the midſt of an Amphitheatre. It conſiſted in the time of its greateſt flouriſh, of four parts, ſeparated by their ſeveral walls, as if ſeveral Cities; we may call them, the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, ſeated upon their ſeveral hills. Of theſe, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautifi'd with the houſes of many of the Prophets, as in our Saviour's time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Chriſtians*: the weſtern part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod*, (a wicked, but magnificent Prince) for coſt exceſſive, and for ſtrength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fiſh-ponds, places deviſed for pleaſures, beſides thoſe for exerciſe. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it. That on the South-Eaſt of the Wall, fifty cubits high, of excellent workmanſhip, called *Mariamne*'s Tower, in memory of his beloved but inſolent Wife, raſhly Murder'd by him. Oppoſite to which, on the South-weſt corner, ſtood the Tower of *Phaſeolus*, ſo called by the name of his Brother, ſeventy cubits high, and in form reſembling that ſo much celebrated *Ægyptian Pharos*: and on the North Wall, on a high hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the reſt in heighth by fourteen Cubits, and having on the top two Spires: in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear friends, ſlain in his Service in the Wars.

2. On the South ſide ſtood that part which was call'd the *Old City*, poſſeſſed, if not built by the *Jebuſites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, becauſe taken by him; who thereon built a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, the Royal Court and Manſion of the Kings ſucceeding. In the Weſt part hereof ſtood the Tower of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæſar*, compoſed of Marble; and every where enterlay'd with Gold; and not far off, the Houſe of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conſpirators led our Saviour to receive his Trial.

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, becauſe it had more in it of the *Valley*, was alſo called the *Daughter of Sion*, becauſe built after it, and did in Majeſty and Greatneſs exceed the Mother. For therein, upon Mount *Moriah*, ſtood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Ægypt*; and that which he founded for himſelf, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the Temple. Weſt hereof, on a lofty Rock overlooking the City, ſtood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabæans*, Re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa*, (tho' of *Herod*'s Race) and not far off the Theatre of *Herod*'s Building, adorned with admirable Pictures, expreſſing the many Victories and Triumps of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In this part alſo ſtood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a Citadel built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, but razed by *Simon* one of the *Maccabæan* Brethers, becauſe it overtopped the Temple; the Houſe of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganiſm* to *Judaiſm*, had here her dwelling, and here died and finally, *Herod*'s Amphitheatre, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained ſometimes with ſuch ſhews and ſpectacles as were in uſe among the *Romans*. And in this part alſo, on a high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple ſtood the *Tower of Baris*, whereon the ſame *Herod* built a ſtrong and impregnable Citadel, in honour of *Marc-Antony*, whoſe Creature he firſt was, called by the name of *Antonias*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them fifty cubits high, and the other ſeventy; afterwards Garriſon'd by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Temple, might take occaſion to Rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the City of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the reſt; inhabited by none but mechanicall perſons, and the meaneſt Tradeſmen, but after encompaſſed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderful Circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the ſame Rock, as *Joſephus* an eye-witneſs writeth, 60 foot deep, and no leſs than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. Firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Melchiſedeck* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebuſites themſelves*, ſay others: by whomſoever built, called at firſt *Jebuſalem*, afterwards *Jeruſalem*, with the change of one Letter only: enlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the Houſe of *David*, to the Magnificence and Greatneſs before deſcribed, till it attained unto the compaſs of 60 furlongs, or ſeven miles and a half. Unconquer'd for the firſt four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Iſrael*; and when *David* attempted it, the People preſumed ſo much on the ſtrength of the place, that they told him in the way of Scorn, that *the Blind and the Lame* which they had among them (as the Text is generally expounded) ſhould defend it againſt him. But as I think, the late Learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Chriſt*'s *Church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, That the *Jebuſites* by the *Blind and Lame* (as they knew well what the *Iſraelites* called *Blind and Lame*) did underſtand thoſe Tutelar Idols, on whoſe protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning muſt be this, Thoſe gods whom you of *Iſrael* call *Blind and Lame*, ſhall defend our Walls. Why elſe ſhould *David* ſay, (had they meant it literally) that his Soul hated the *Lame and the Blind*? 2 Sam. 5. 8. or why ſhould the people of *Iſrael* be ſo uncharitable as to ſay, That the *Blind and Lame ſhould not come into the Houſe* (or the Temple of God) were it meant no otherwiſe? but notwithſtanding theſe vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that Fortunate and Couragious Leader, and made the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the Materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 Workmen, which wrought by 10000 every Month; 70000 Labourers, which carried Burdens; 80000 Quarry-men, that hewed Stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overſeers of the Work, no leſs than 3300 men. The deſcription of this ſtately Fabrick, we have in the firſt of *Kings*, *Chap.* 6 7. In the Year of the World 2350, it was deſtroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hieruſalem*: re-built again after the return from the Captivity; but with ſuch oppoſition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their Swords in the other, to repulſe, if need were, thoſe Malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not anſwerable to the Magnificence of the former; ſo that the Prophet *Haggai* had good occaſion to ſay to the People, *chap.* 1. *ver.* 3. *Who is left among you that ſaw this Houſe in her firſt Glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in compariſon of it?* Nor fell it ſhort thereof only in the outward Structure, but ſome inward Additaments: For it wanted, 1. The *Pot* of *Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moſes* to lay up before the *Teſtimony for a Memorial*, Exod. 16. 32, &c. 2. The *Rod* of *Aaron*, which only Budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Iſrael*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the *Teſtimony*, for a token againſt *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, Numb. 17. 10. 3. The *Ark* of the *Covenant*, the making whereof we have, *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the Oracle, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 Kings 6. 19. 4. The *two Tables* *of the Law*, writ by God's own finger, and by *Moſes* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5 *The fire of Sacrifice*, which came down from Heaven, mentioned, *Lev.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Prieſt was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This ſecond Temple, partly becauſe it was grown Ruinous, partly becauſe it ſeemed not Magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jews*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* pulled down, and ſet up another in the place; making it not much inferiour (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far ſuperior to the other *Immenſæ oppulentiæ Templum*, as *Tacitus* moſt truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did ſometimes vouchſafe his preſence.

But here we are to underſtand, that by the Temple it is not meant the Fabrick only, or the Houſe it ſelf, but alſo all thoſe ſeveral Courts with which encompaſſed, being four in number. That is to ſay, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the Prieſt's Court, which was next unto the Temple; wherein ſtood the Brazen Altar for the daily Sacrifice, and the Laver for the waſhing of the Prieſts and the Sacrifice alſo: into which Court might none enter but the Prieſts alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium Populi*, or the Peoples Court, ſeparated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the People did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to ſay their Prayers, and to make payment of their Vows. In the middle of this Court did *Solomon* make a Brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Succeſſors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his Porch built before the Temple, were many Porches built about it for the People to repair in Rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomon*'s Porch, whereof ſee *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that ſtood *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the Womens Court, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; in which ſtood the Treaſury, or poor Man's Box, mentioned in St. *Luke*'s Goſpel, Chap. 21. from whence this whole Court had ſometimes the name of Treaſury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is ſaid, that *theſe words ſpake* JESUS *in the Treaſury*, that is to ſay, in the Womens Court, where the Treaſury or Alms-box ſtood. Betwixt theſe laſt was an aſcent of 15 ſteps, on which the Levites uſed to ſing thoſe 15 Pſalms, which do immediately follow the 119 Pſalm; upon each ſtep one: from whence they had the name of *Pſalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica Graduum*, *i. e.* the Pſalm or Songs of Degrees. And ſo far all was counted *Holy Ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural Jews, or Circumciſed Proſelytes, whom they called *Proſelyti fœderis*, as before was ſaid; or ſuch of the other Sex (not natural Jeweſſes) who having received all outward initiations, had bound themſelves unto the obſervation of the Law of *Moſes*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and laſt Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the Court of the *Gentiles*, deſigned for the uſe of thoſe *Gentiles* whom they called *Proſelytæ Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the Precepts given to the Sons of *Noah*; for in that, as unſanctified ground (tho' counted part of the Temple alſo) did they permit a Market of Sheep and Oxen, the Sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of Money-changers, for the Oblations of the People: ſtabling the poor Gentiles among their Cattel, and ranking them with the worſt of them. And out of this Temple, or *Court of the Temple* did CHRIST our Saviour caſt the *Buyers and Sellers*, and overthrew the *Tables of the Money-changers*; aſſerting it to its primitive original uſe, which was to be an houſe of *Prayer for all Nations*. This laſt Court ſeparate the other by a wall of three Cubits high, adorned with certain pillars of equal diſtance, bearing this Inſcription, Μηδένα ἀλλόφυλον ἐντὸς τȣ̃ Ἁγίȣ παριέναι, *i. e. Let no Alien* (or one that is no Jew) *enter into the Holy Place*: And to this Wall it is that the Apoſtle alludeth, ſaying, *He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us*, *i. e.* between the Jews and Gentiles) *making one of twain*, *Epheſ.* [illegible] 14, 15. inferring hereupon, that *the Gentiles are no more Strangers and Foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the Houſhold of God*, v. 9.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continu'd in the Glories of which *Herod* brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally deſtroyed by *Titus* the Son of *Veſpaſian*, in the 69*th* year of Chriſt's Nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrown by Earthquakes and Thunderbolts from Heaven; neither of them ever ſince Repaired, tho' much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two Miracles evidently ſheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the Jewiſh Ceremonies and Heathen Idolatries, that ſo the Kingdom of his Son might be all in all. For this Deſtruction of the Temple of *Jeruſalem* I may call a Miracle, in regard it was done againſt the command of *Titus*; who was not only careful to preſerve it, before his Soldiers had put fire to it, but did all that poſſibly might be to quench it. His reaſon was, Ῥωμαίων γὰρ ἔσεσθαι τὴν βλάβην, as *Joſephus* hath it, becauſe thereof would redound ſo highly to the prejudice of the *Roman* Empire, in being deprived of ſuch a Glorious and Magnificent Structure. But do he what he could with his utmoſt Induſtry, there was no quenching of it till it was conſumed. And it adds ſomewhat to the maavel, that this ſhould happen on the 10*th* day of *Auguſt*, on which day the firſt Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I ſhall not be accounted Superſtitious for this obſervation) to ſee how happy or unfortunate, one or the ſame day had been ſound unto divers perſons. In the Wars betwixt the *French* and *Spaniards* for the Realm of *Naples*, *Friday* was obſerved to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonſalvo*; he having on that day given the *French* many notable overthrows. *Wedneſday* is ſaid to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* V. for on that day he was born; on the ſame made a Monk; on that day created General of his Order; on the ſame day made a Cardinal, then choſen to be Pope; and finally, on the ſame inaugurated. To *Henry* VII. of *England*, *Saturday* was obſerved to be very Fortunate in all his Actions; as was the 24*th* of *February* unto *Charles* V. on what day ſoever, for on that he came into the World, and in that he took the King *Francis* Priſoner at the Battel of *Pavie*; and on the ſame received the Imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or Saturday, it was taken by *Pompey*, on the ſame day by *Herod*, and on that alſo by *Titus*.

But go we forward to *Hieruſalem* as now it ſtandeth, it lay in Rubbiſh and unbuilt (after the Deſtruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not ſo much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of *Julian*, that politick Enemy of the Church; who, to diminiſh the infinite number of Chriſtians by the increaſe of the Jews, began again to build this Temple. But no ſooner were the Foundations laid, but a terrible Earthquake caſt them up again; and Fire from Heaven conſumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other Materials. As for the City it ſelf after the Deſolation in it which was made by *Titus*, it was Re-edified by the Emperor *Ælius Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drove thence the *Jews*, and gave it to the *Chriſtians*. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this, Mount *Calvery* is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other ſide, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of *Herod*, and the Soil where the *New City* ſtood, are left out of this: the Ruins of the other ſtill remaining viſible, to ſhew the ancient greatneſs and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it ſtands at preſent, it is now only famous for the Temple of the Sepulchre built by *Helena* (whom moſt report to have been Daughter to *Coylus* a Britiſh King) Mother to *Conſtantine* the Great. Much ado had the good Lady to find the place where the Lord's Body had been laid; for the Jews and Heathens had raiſed great hillocks on the place, and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the Earth digged away, ſhe found three Croſſes, whereon our Bleſſed Saviour, and the two Thieves had Suffered. To know which of thoſe was the right Croſs, they were all carried to a Woman who had been long viſited with Sickneſs, and now lay at the point of Death. The Croſſes of the two Thieves did the weak Woman no good, but as ſoon as they laid her on the Croſs on which the Lord Died, ſhe leaped up, and was reſtored to her former health: The occaſion of the Feſtival on the third of *May*, by the *Latins* called *Inventio ſanctæ Crucis*. This Temple of the Sepulchre, even at the firſt building, was highly reverenced and eſteemed by the Chriſtians of theſe parts. And even until our days, it is much reſorted to, both by Pilgrims from all the parts of the *Romiſh* Church, who fondly and ſuperſtitiouſly hope to merit by their Journey: And alſo by divers Gentlemen of the Reformed Churches, who Travel hitherwards, partly for Curioſity, partly for love to the Antiquity of the Place, and partly becauſe their generous Spirits imitate the Heaven, and delight in Motion. Whoſoever is admitted to the ſight of this Sepulchre, payeth 9 Crowns to the *Turkiſh* Officers; ſo that this Tribute only is worth to the *Grand Seignior*, eighty thouſand Ducats yearly. The other Building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of Flint-ſtones, low, and but one Roof high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with Battlements of a yard in heighth to preſerve them from falling, the under-rooms no better than Vaults, where they repoſe themſelves in the heat of the day. Some Houſes near the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches toward the Street; where Paſſengers may walk dry in a ſhower of Rain; but not many ſuch, nor any thing but the Ruins left of the ancient Buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to thoſe that take a Survey thereof from ſome Hills adjoyning, where the Ruins are not well diſcerned from the ſtanding Edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleaſing Proſpect. And as the place is, ſuch is the people, inhabited for the moſt part by Artizans of the meaneſt quality, gathered together of the ſcum of divers Nations: the greateſt part conſiſting of *Moors* and *Arabians*; a few poor Chriſtians, of all the Oriental Sects, which dwell there for Devotion; and ſome *Turks*, who, for the profit which they make of Chriſtians, are content to ſtay in it. Inſomuch that when *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of ſome of theſe raſcally people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him ſay, that *he ſaw Duke* Robert *carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.*

Come we now to the Tribe of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a Tribe, becauſe not planted cloſe together as the other were, nor had whole Provinces to themſelves, but mingled and diſperſed among the reſt of the People; having forty eight Cities aſſigned them for their Habitation, proportionably taken out of the other Tribes. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly, that they being ſet apart for his Service, might be at hand in every place to inſtruct the People; and partly to fulfil the Prophecy which he had ſpoken by *Jacob*, who had fore-ſignified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he ſhould *be divided in* Jacob, *and ſcattered in* Iſrael.

The like fortune he had propheſied of *Simeon* alſo, of the accompliſhment whereof, ſo far as it referred to him, and the diſperſion of this Tribe, we have ſpoken before. Now to make up the number of the twelve Tribes, *Joſeph* was divided into *Ephraim* and *Manaſſes*; and the *Levites* were reckon'd to belong unto that Tribe, within whoſe Territory that City which they dwelt in, ſtood. Their Maintenance was from the Tenths or Tithes, the Firſt-fruits, Offerings, and Sacrifices of the People: and as it is in *Joſhua* 11. 17. *The Prieſthood of the Lord was their Inheritance.* There were of them four kinds: 1. *Punies* or *Tyrones*, which from their Childhood till the five and twentieth year of their Age, learn'd the duty of their Offices: 2. *Graduates*, λυταὶ, which having ſpent four years in the ſtudy of the Law, were able to anſwer and oppoſe in it. 3. *Licentiates*, προλυταὶ, who did actually exerciſe the Prieſtly Function. And 4. *Doctors* (*Rabbins* they us'd to call them) who were the higheſt in Degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is ſaid) the Tithes, Firſt-fruits, and Offerings of all the reſt of the people, beſides the 48 Cities aſſigned for their Habitation: which laſt, with the ſeveral Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the ſpace of two thouſand Cubits, ſeem to have been a greater proportion of it ſelf, than any of the other Tribes, with reference to the ſmall number of *Levites*) had in their poſſeſſions. Then for the Tithes, there was not only a full tenth ſet out of all kinds of increaſe, but ſuch an impoſition laid upon all ſorts of Grain, as came to more than a ſixth part of the Crop it ſelf, For, firſt, out of 6000 Buſhels (and ſo accordingly in all after that proportion) a ſixtieth part at leaſt, (and that they termed the *Therumah*, or the *evil eye*, or the *niggards* Firſt-fruits) was to be ſet forth as the Firſt-fruits of the Threſhing-floor, which was an hundred in the total. Out of the reſidue being five thouſand and nine hundred buſhels, the firſt Tithe paid unto the *Levites* came to five hundred and ninety buſhels; and of the reſidue, being five thouſand three hundred and thirty buſhels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the ſecond Tithe unto the Prieſt, which Miniſtred in the Holy Temple; yet ſo, that ſuch as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto *Hieruſalem*, muſt pay the price thereof at the Prieſt's own eſtimate. Laying which ſeveral ſums together, it appears demonſtrably, that of ſix thouſand buſhels (*& ſic cæteris*) there will accrue one thouſand two hundred ſeventy and one buſhels to the Prieſts and Levites; and but four thouſand ſeven hundred ſeventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a ſixth part, as was ſaid before. Then had they the firſt-born of Mankind, and all unclean beaſts, redeemed at a certain rate; the firſt fruits of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the firſt-fruits of the Dough; and of the firſtlings of clean beaſts (their blood being ſprinkled upon the Altar, and the fat offered for a burnt-offering) the fleſh remained unto the Prieſts. They had alſo the meat-offerings, the ſin-offerings, the treſpaſs-offerings, the ſhake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the ſhew-bread, as alſo of all Euchariſtical Sacrifices the breaſt and the ſhoulder; of others the ſhoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the skin, beſides the free gifts of the People, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the reſt of the Tribes, tho' they had no whole Country allotted to them, as others had. And ſo much for ſuch parts of the Land of *Paleſtine* as were poſſeſſed in part, or wholly by the Sons of *Jacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Eſau*.

6. *IDUMÆA.*

IDUMÆA, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the Eaſt and South, with *Arabia Petrea*; on the North with *Judæa*, on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Eſau*, whoſe name is *Edom*, Gen. 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, v. 43. by whom it was planted and poſſeſſed; or as others ſay, from the *Idumæi*, a People of *Arabia*; who in a Mutiny being forc'd to forſake their Country, came and ſetled here. The firſt the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that.

The Country towards the Sea-ſide very fat and fruitful; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded Balm, not now: but ſtill it hath ſome ſtore of Palm-trees, for which much celebrated by ſome Writers of ancient times, as *Arbuſto Palmarum dives Idume*, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vaſt Deſarts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many Wells there for the uſe of the Natives, yet to them only are they known, and not obvious at all to the eyes of ſtrangers, no not upon the ſtricteſt ſearch that can be imagined. But all places are not ſo well furniſhed, as appeareth by the ſad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Deſarts of this Country, againſt the *Moabitas*, finding herein no Water for Man or Beaſt: inſomuch that the King of *Iſrael* ſaid, *Alas, that the Lord hath called theſe three Kings together, to deliver them into the hands of Moab*, 2 Kings 3. 10. Not otherwiſe delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God ſending them the next Day an abundance of Water, without Wind or Rain, or any other viſible Means.

The People anciently rude and barbarous, greedy of change in government, eaſily ſtirred to inſurrections, and in love with tumults. Profeſſed Enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Jewiſh* Religion, they were at the beſt but falſe Friends; and in the Siege of *Hieruſalem* by *Titus*, did them more miſchief than the *Romans*. At this time ſubject to the *Turks*, and differ not much in life and cuſtom from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where ſo little Waters. One Lake it had, though poſſibly it hath been better, had they been without it, now ſmall, and every Day growing leſs; the paſſage being long ſince barred, which it had to the Sea. Anciently, though then narrow, it was two hundred Furlongs, or five and twenty Miles long: bordered on each ſide by Hills of Sand, which born by the Winds into the Water did ſo thicken the ſame, that it was not eaſie to be diſcerned from the dry Land; inſomuch as whole Armies have been ſwallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latins*: The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Syrbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Teveſo*, by the Natives *Bayreme*; the utmoſt bound of *Paleſtine*, where it joyneth on *Ægypt*.

The chief Mountains of it, are, 1 Mount *Seir*, the firſt habitation of *Eſau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan*, to make room for *Jacob*, as is ſaid, *Gen.* 36. 7, 8. Not called ſo, unleſs by Anticipation (a thing not unlawful in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Eſau* thither; the word *Seir* ſignifying hairy or briſled, ſuch as *Eſau* is deſcribed to be *Gen.* 27 11. To this St. *Hierom* doth accord, deriving the name *Seir* from *Eſau*, *Sumpto ab Autore nomine*. His Reaſon is, *Seir quippe interpretatur hiſpidus & piloſus qualis Eſau fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Iſaiah*, *chap.* 21. For the ſame Cauſe, is the whole Country of *Edom*, ſometimes called Mount *Seir* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20. 10. 23 The ſecond Hill of note is that called *Caſſius*, not far from the Lake of *Syrbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of Sand; formerly famous for a Temple of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great; who being baſely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharſalia* by *Julius Cæſar*) by the command of *Ptolomy* the younger, King of *Ægypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Achillus* who then governed his Counſels) by the piety of a private Soldier was here interred in an obſcure and homely, but honeſt Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified, and made more ſuitable to the Man, by the Emperor *Adrian*. The Piety of the Soldier not a whit the leſs for the coſt of the Emperor; in whoſe name *Lucan* had beſtowed this Epitaph, on that firſt Monument.

Hic ſitus Eſt Magnus, *placet hoc, Fortuna Sepulchrum*
Dicere Pompeii; *quo condi maluit illum,*
Quam terra caruiſſe Socer.

Which may be Engliſhed to this purpoſe.

Here *Magnus* lies, ſuch Fortune is thy doom,
That this vile Earth ſhould be great *Pompey*'s Tomb.
In which even *Cæſar*'s ſelf would rather have
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a Grave.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Dinhabath*, the City of *Bela*, the firſt King of *Edom*. 2 *Anith*, the City of *Hadad*. And 3 *Pan*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32, 35, 39. 4 *Berzamna*, placed here by *Ptolomy*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame with *Beerſheba* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, the utmoſt border Southwards of the Land of *Canaan*, of which more there. 5 *Caparorſa*. 6 *Gammararis*. And 7 *Elaſa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolomy*; which ſheweth them to be of ſome conſideration in thoſe times, though now forgotten with the former. 8 *Anthedon*, on the South ſide of the River *Beſor*, oppoſite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, which is ſituate on the Northern Bank. A Port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Jews*, re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa*, the Favorite and Son-in-Law to *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 9 *Roſſa*, a Fort of conſequence, not far from *Maſſada*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judæa*; taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Caſtle. 10 *Raphia*, on the *Mediterranean-Sea* next *Anthedon*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolomy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Magnus*. 11 *Rhinocurura*, ſo called from a miſhap which befel the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their Noſes. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this time *Pharamica*. Memorable for an old but ill grounded Tradition, that here the World was divided by Lots, betwixt the Poſterity of *Noah*: and ſo conſiderable in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, that it was ſo ſtrongly fortified by *Baldwin* the firſt, to obſtruct the paſſage of ſuch Forces as uſually came out of *Ægypt*, to aid the *Turks*. 12 *Oſtracine*, now *Stagioni*, on the Sea-ſide beneath *Anthedon*, and that part of the Country which from Mount *Caſius* hath the name of *Caſiotis*, aſcribed by *Ptolomy* to *Ægypt*: but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Syrbon*, more properly belonging to *Paleſtina*. But moſt of theſe being now buried in their Ruins, there are left none but a few Caſtles and ſcattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the moſt part by *Arabians*, the Caſtles gariſoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the Road of *Ægypt*, are 13 *Hammones*, a ſmall Caſtle not far from *Gaza*, uſed chiefly for a Toll-booth, to receive cuſtom of ſuch Merchants as paſs that way. 14 *Hariſa*, a ſmall Caſtle alſo, ſerving ſpecially for the ſame uſe; but ſtronger, and of more importance, becauſe near the Sea, from which not above two Miles diſtant; and for that cauſe garriſoned with an hundred Soldiers: Environed with a few Houſes, by reaſon of the commodity of the Water, which is ſweet and wholeſome; elſe little better than a Deſart. 15 *Catio*, another Caſtle or rather Toll-booth, with a Gariſon of about ſixty Soldiers in it, ſeated in a place ſo deſart and unfruitful, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few ſtarved Palm-trees. The Water which they have there, ſo bad and brackiſh, though eſteemed good enough for the common Soldiers, that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 16 *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-ſhore, about twelve Miles diſtant, and the laſt upon this Coaſt towards *Ægypt*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, *the Horites that dwelt in Mount Seir*, as we read in *Geneſis* 14. 6. that is to ſay, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called Mount *Seir*. But whether it was ſo called from *Eſau*'s dwelling here, as is ſaid before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 20. as perhaps they may probably be ſuppoſed, need not now come into diſpute. Broken by *Chedorlaomer*, and his Aſſociates, they were the more eaſily ſubdued by *Eſau*, who leaving the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, *Gen.* 6. 7, 8. becauſe thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel, came into this Country; and having *deſtroyed the Horites from before them*, ſucceeded in their Habitations, *and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day*, *Deut* 2. 22. 'Tis true, we find *Eſau* in Mount *Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Jacob* at his firſt coming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent Meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his Brother, unto the Land of *Seir*, the Country of *Edom*, *Gen.* 32. 3. And hence a Queſtion hath been moved, How *Eſau* dwelling there before *Jacob*'s coming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and ſome others, anſwer, That at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lye on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and Mount *Hermon*, by which *Jacob* muſt needs paſs in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians*, or *Phœnicians*, in the Ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites*, at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moſes* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a Mount *Seir* with him whitherſoever he went; it doth expreſly differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in occaſion, and the time of his ſetling there: the Victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten, when *Moſes* with the Children of *Iſrael* came into theſe Parts; which was at the leaſt 200 Years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf to the Land of *Edom*. And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* Marriages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*, departed from thence, and ſojourned in the South Parts amongſt the *Horites* of Mount *Seir*; that thither *Jacob* ſent his Meſſengers, to make Peace between them; that the Reconciliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his Children, Cattel, and the reſt of his ſubſtance, fixed himſelf again near the Houſe of his Father: and finally, That on *Iſaac*'s Death, finding his Family increaſed, his Herds and Flocks augmented, and the reſt of his ſubſtance alſo doubled by the death of his Father, he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling, and ſo removed once more to *Edom*. A thing not needful to be done, had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract, conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe Mountains and the City of *Hebron*, in which *Iſaac* dwelt; nigh to which *Jacob* alſo had ſet up his dwelling.

But on what ground ſoever *Eſau* left the poſſeſſion of the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, certain it is, he did it not without ſome ſtrong Impulſions from the Spirit of God, by whom the poſſeſſion of that Land was deſigned for *Jacob*, to whom the Bleſſing and the Birth-right had been both preferred. And though *Eſau* over-ruled by Almighty God, ſeemed to have forgotten all Diſpleaſure againſt his Brother; yet the Quarrel begun by them in the Womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violently in the time of their Poſterity. Inſomuch that *Moſes* could by no means obtain a Paſſage through *Edom* into the *Promiſed-Land*, though he ſought it by fair Addreſſes, and preſſed it by all thoſe Motives and Inducements, which a wiſe and an underſtanding Man could have ſet before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, ſeemed to pretend nothing but the ſafety of himſelf and the People; both which he might have hazarded (in all human Reaſon) by opening the Cloſures of his Mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is poſſible there might be as much of Stomach, as worldly Policy; and that as well the buying of the Birth-right for ſo ſlight a trifle, as the getting of the Bleſſing by ſuch fraudulent Means, might not be forgotten. For he not only denied them Paſſage, and ſent word expreſly they ſhould not go thorow; but came againſt them with much People and a ſtrong Band, as is ſaid, *Numb.* 20. 20. But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their Deſtiny, or make the Word of God to be ineffectual; by which it hath been ſignified, when they were yet in their Mother's Womb, that the Elder *ſhould ſerve the* Younger. Nor verified in *Eſau*'s Perſon; for *Jacob* called him his *Lord Eſau*, profeſſed himſelf to be his Servant, and willingly ſubmitted to his Superiority; but in the iſſues of them both: then ſpecially when *David* had ſubdued the *Edomites*, and made them Homagers and Vaſſals to the Crown of *Judah*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 14. Nor is leſs intimated in thoſe words of the 60 *Pſalm*, where it is ſaid, *Over Edom will I caſt my ſhooe*; it being a cuſtom of old times to fling their Shooes upon a Country conquered, or deſigned for Conqueſt, *Projectio calceamenti ſuper Regionem aliquam, denotat ſubjicere*, as my Author hath it. And in Alluſion unto this, there is a Story in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the Iſles ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Murchard* a King in *Ireland*, commanding him on the next *Chriſtmas-day* to carry openly the Shooes of King *Magnus* upon his Shoulders; in teſtimony, ſaith the Story, that he was his Vaſſal. The caſting of the Shooe on a Conquered Country, or the treading of it under Feet, another Ceremony of this nature, mentioned, *Deut.* 33. 29. do come both to one, and ſignifie that Vaſſalage or Bondage, which ſuch a captivated Country was reduced unto.

But on the other ſide, there was another part of the Heavenly Oracle, which made for *Edom*. *Iſaac* had ſignified to *Eſau*, that though the Bleſſing given to *Jacob* could not be revoked, and that he muſt content himſelf with being a Servant to his Brother for a certain ſeaſon: yet there ſhould one Day come a time, in which he ſhould not only break that Yoak from off his Neck, but obtain the Dominion over him, *Gen.* 27. 40. The firſt part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the Kings of *Judah*, in the time of *Joram*, or *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoſaphat*: and inſtead of a Vice-Roy ſent unto them from the Court of *Hieruſalem*, ſet up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the Houſe of *David*. For though *Joram* made War preſently upon them, and got the Victory; yet he did not proſecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their ſtrong Holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got Honour enough in the Eye of the World by being Maſter of the Field; or ſhewing his Abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring againſt him. The like Error was committed by *Amaziah*, who by a vaſt Army of 300000 fighting Men, did no greater Wonders than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left Gariſons in any of their defenſible Places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latter part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater*, an *Idumæan*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, his Son, and their Succeſſors; who in the decrepit age of the Houſe of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jews*, and Lorded over them with inſolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate Paſſage of their State and Story. It ſeemeth that at firſt they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of thoſe ſeveral Families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as Ambition and Power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquiſhed or awed the reſt, took to himſelf the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their ſeveral Cities in which they reigned, ſeem to have been choſen by Election; or otherwiſe to come in by ſtrong Hand, as the Sword could carry it. The names of which are thus ſet down in the Book of *Geneſis*.

The KINGS of EDOM.

1 *Bela*, the Son of *Beer*.
2 *Jobab*, the Son of *Zerah*.
3 *Haſham*, of the Land of *Temani*.
4 *Hadad*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred againſt the *Midianites*, and vanquiſhed them in the Fields of *Moab*, *Gen.* 36. 35.
5 *Samlah*, or *Maſrekah*.
6 *Saul*, of *Rehoboth*, by the River *Euphrates*.
7 *Bahal-Hanan*, the Son of *Achbor*.
8 *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whoſe death the Heads of the ſeveral Families reſumed the Government again; ruling over their own Tribes, without any one Sovereign or Supreme. And all theſe Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Iſrael*, *Gen.* 36. 31. that is to ſay, before any form of Supreme Government was eſtabliſhed amongſt them in the Perſon of *Moſes*, called by the name of a King in the Book of *Deuter.* chap. 35. v. 5. But this diſtracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at ſuch a time as the Children of *Iſrael* came out of *Ægypt*: for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moſes* ſent Meſſengers from *Kadeſh*, to deſire a paſſage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their Paſſes, *Moſes* forbore to force his way, though the neareſt for him: partly becauſe he had no mind to ſpend theſe Forces in fighting with Hills and Deſarts, which were deſigned for the Conqueſt of another Country; but principally, becauſe God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take ſo much as a Foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no ſuch obligation, having vanquiſhed the *Syrians*, and other Nations round about him, followed his Fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Gariſons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites became his Servants*. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or Vice-Roy (as is ſaid before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; in whoſe Reign they revolted, as before was ſaid. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that ſo the Word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simeonites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting Paſture for their Cattel, and room for themſelves, ſeized on the Parts that lay neareſt to them, deſtroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their Habitations; becauſe there was paſture for their Flocks, 1 *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural Antipathy which was between them, no People were more miſchievouſly bent againſt *Judah* than theſe *Edomites* were: no Men ſo forward of themſelves, to aſſiſt *Nebuchadonezer* againſt *Hieruſalem*; none that ſo vehemently cried, *Down with it, down unto the ground*; none half ſo ready to ſet Fire unto the Holy Temple. But they got little by this Service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldom following cloſe upon that of *Judah*, with whom made fellow-Subjects to the *Chaldæans*; as afterwards to the *Perſians*, and Kings of *Syria*, of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of that Houſe, ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabæan* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be circumciſed, and to receive the Law of *Moſes*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Jewiſh* Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithſtanding, and that the ſetting of that Crown on the Head of *Herod* and his Houſe, being originally *Idumæans*, might in all reaſon have extinguiſhed their invererate Malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians* they would needs aid the *Romans* againſt them alſo: putting themſelves into *Hieruſalem*, when beſieged by *Titus*, only of purpoſe to betray it; joyning with the ſeditious there, doing more miſchief in the City than the Enemy had done without: and finally, ſetting fire to the ſecond Temple, as they had done unto the firſt. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the ſame Fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

Having thus gone thorow with the Story of thoſe neighbouring Nations which encompaſſed *Canaan*, it will be ſeaſonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* firſt, and after on the Houſe of *Jacob*, who poſſeſſed their Country. Firſt for the *Canaanites*, they deſcended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his eleven Sons were here ſettled immediately after the Confuſion of *Babel*. Of thoſe twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phœnicia*, and the Coaſts of *Syria*; that is to ſay, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, and *Hamathi*: the other ſeven in thoſe parts which we now call *Paleſtine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Amorites*, and *Ituræans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of thoſe ſeven came thoſe ſeven Nations, which by God's appointment were totally to be rooted out, *viz.* the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Jebuſites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeſhites*, and the *Perizzites*. But from which of the Sons of *Canaan* theſe laſt deſcended, is not agreed on; unleſs perhaps they were deſcended of the *Sinites* (not otherwiſe reckoned in this Muſter) and got the name of *Perizzites* on ſome new occaſion. Governed at firſt by the chiefeſt of their ſeveral Families, with the names of Kings; the number of which increaſed, as their Families were ſubdivided into ſmaller Branches: inſomuch as *Joſhua* founded 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only, beſides what might deſcend from thoſe who were ſettled in *Phœnicia*, and the Borders of *Syria*. The moſt potent of theſe Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebuſites* and the *Canaanites* properly ſo called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only enlarged their Borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the Reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the ſame time at their ſeveral parts, had thruſt the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites*, and *Moabites* out of moſt of their Countries; and ſo reſtored the ſame again to the Race of the *Emmims* and *Zanzummims* (of which Line *Og* and the Kings of *Baſan* were) who had been diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Sons of *Lot*. Theſe vanquiſhed in the time of *Moſes*, and their Habitations aſſigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half Tribe of *Manaſſes*. The *Canaanites* properly ſo called, as they were the firſt which fought with the Houſe of *Jacob*; ſo they were the laſt of all theſe People that contended with them. The firſt fought with them under the conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more ſafe and prudent to encounter the Enemy in another Man's Country, than to expect them in his own, gave Battel unto *Moſes* in the Deſarts of *Moab*; and having cut off ſome of the out-parts of his Army, and taken a few Priſoners, he went home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they make their ſecond on ſet, went to work more reſolutely; and taking a time when the Iniquities of that People cried aloud for vengeance, ſo prevailed againſt them, that he tyrannized over them for the ſpace of twenty Years. After which time his Army being diſcomfited by *Barack*, in the time of *Debora*, *Siſera*, his great Captain, ſlain by *Jael* the Wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and moſt of his Cities taken and poſſeſſed by the *Iſraelites*, he periſhed himſelf in the cloſe of that War; for it is ſaid, That they prevailed againſt *Jabin the King of Canaan, till they had deſtroyed him*, Judg 4. 24. As for the *Jebuſites*, they were grown ſo formidable (at the time of the coming of the *Hebrews*) to the reſt of their Neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged, that he had cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the Crums which fell under his Table. But being vanquiſhed by *Judah*, he was ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf by *Judah* and *Simeon*, and carried to *Hieruſalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Jebuſites*, and the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf the Fortreſs of Mount *Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Jebuſites* held that Fortreſs till the time of *David*; yet being they were only on the defenſive ſide, and made no open War againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the laſt which did contend with them for the chief Command.

The *Canaanites*, thus Conquered and for the moſt part worn out of the Country, the *Iſraelites* Succeeded in their Poſſeſſions; according to the promiſe of God, made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Iſaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moſes* and *Joſhua*, by the Congregation of the Elders, as appears by many paſſages in the Book of *Judges*; the Judges (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the ordinary Magiſtrates, but raiſed up occaſionally by God for ſome ſpecial purpoſe, according to the exigence of their Affairs, carrying in this a likeneſs unto the Dictators in the State of *Rome*. So that the Government at firſt was an *Ariſtocracy*; though to ſay truth, it was rather a *Theocracy*, as the Fathers call it; that is to ſay, a Government wherein God preſided more immediately than in other Nations. And thereupon when the People cried out to *Samuel* to have a King, God ſaid unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the People, for they have not Rejected thee, but they have Rejected Me, that I ſhould not Reign over them*, 1 Sam. 8. 7. God was their King, and he had Mightily Reigned over them ſince they came out of *Ægypt*; but they deſired to have *a King like other Nations*, to go in and out before them, and to Fight their Battels; a King whom they might ſee with their Bodily Eyes, and converſe with him in ſuch manner as the People did, which dwelt round about them. And ſo came in the Monarchy of Kingly Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*: the firſt a *Benjamite*, the ſecond of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had foretold at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his People ſhould be veſted in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole Houſe of *Iſrael*; the Kingdom after *Solomon*'s Death, being rent in twain; Ten of the Twelve Tribes Revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and ſo much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simeon* as lay intermingled with, and in the Tribe of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who, miſguided by ſome Evil Counſellors which were about him, had given occaſion to the Breach. A Breach that could never be Solder'd or made up again, notwithſtanding the fair Opportunities which were after offered of Uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*, (for ſo the two Kingdoms were diſtinguiſhed in the time of *Joas*, and re-joyning *Iſrael* to *Judah*, in the time of *Aſa*. The opportunity offered to *Aſa* King of *Judah*, for regaining the Revolted Tribes, was the Confuſions which in his time had fallen out among them, by ſeveral Factions; each challenging the Privilege of making a King unto it ſelf: *Nadab* the Son of *Jeroboam* being Slain by *Baaſha*, *Ela* the Son of *Baaſha* Murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* Depoſed by *Omri* the Father of *Ahab*, and *Tibni*, a Competitor againſt *Omri* alſo. During which time, as the People muſt needs ſuffer many great Oppreſſions, which might make them think of their Allegiance to the Houſe of *David*: So could not *Aſa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his beſt uſe of them) of working on that divided Kingdom, and reducing it back unto this Houſe. But there were two Reaſons which prevailed more againſt this re-union than any that could be preſented to invite them to it. Firſt, the Imperiouſneſs and Arbitrary Government of the Kings of *Judah*, putting to Death without formality of Law, thoſe that had diſpleaſed them, as in the caſe of *Shimei*, *Joab*, and *Adonijah*, in the days of *Solomon*; and raiſing on the Subjects what Sums they pleaſed, though more for Oſtentation of their own Magnificence, than the Neceſſities of the State. Of which Exactions *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon* was ſo far from promiſing a Releaſe, or ſome Mitigation at leaſt, that he threatned to make them more than double to what they had been formerly: And how knew they but that *Aſa*, and all ſuch as deſcended from him might be of the ſame Temper alſo, and act according to thoſe Principles which their Fathers left 'em? Whereas the Kings of *Iſrael* holding by no other Title than the Love of their People, and the Moderate and Regular Form of their Government over them, had put their mouths into ſuch a taſt of the Sweets of Liberty, and made them ſo much Maſters of their own, both Lives and Fortunes, that *Naboth* durſt deny his Vineyard to *Ahab*, though offering full compenſation for it; and *Ahab* durſt not queſtion the Life of *Naboth*, but by Suborning Witneſſes to accuſe him of Blaſphemy. So that the preſent Confuſions under which they ſuffered, by the Change and Violent Death of ſo many Kings one after another, being only Temporary, and not likely to continue long, were no perſwaſions unto them to accept of *Aſa*, and much leſs to offer themſelves unto him, who conceived all Adverſity to be far more tolerable than the weighty Scepter of that Houſe. And there was ſomething alſo of preceding Profit, which ſwayed the buſineſs. The People were obliged by the Law of *Moſes* to make three chargeable Journeys yearly to *Hieruſalem*, to Worſhip there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double Tenth yearly out of their Eſtate (beſides Offerings and other Caſualties) to the Prieſts and Levites. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly Policy, fearing theſe frequent Journeys unto *Hieruſalem* might be an occaſion of reducing them to the Houſe of *David*, releaſed them of that Charge and Trouble, by ſetting up a new Form of Worſhip, erecting Golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*; and leaving every Man unto the liberty of his own Opinion, ſo it tended not to the Eſtabliſhment of the old Religion. And on the other ſide, the *Levites* which dwelt amongſt them, and received their Tithes, not willing to conform to theſe new Impieties, and finding that their Miniſtry was no longer uſeful, withdrew themſelves into the Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the ancient places of their Habitations: by means whereof, the people were releaſed of thoſe payments alſo. If they returned again to their old Obedience, and accepted *Aſa* for their King, they muſt return again alſo to their old Religion; the Golden Calves of their own imaginations and inventions, muſt no more be Worſhipped: and (which no doubt prevailed moſt on the common People, who like that Religion beſt that coſts them nothing) the ancient payments to the Prieſts and Levites muſt come up again. Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to ſuffer yet a little longer, to pleaſe themſelves in expectation of more ſetled times; and ſo no falling off to *Aſa*, tho' as Moderate and Religious a Prince as they could have wiſhed for, had they had power of faſhioning a King to their own deſires. Now as this opportunity of re-joyning *Iſrael* unto *Judah*, proved unſucceſsful unto *Aſa*; ſo did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehoahaz*, and Grand-Child of *Jehu* King of *Iſrael*, who being provok'd by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made War upon him; and not only diſcomfited him without Battel, and took him Priſoner without Blows, but led him Captive to the very Walls of *Hieruſalem*; and by his Authority got the Gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this Honour (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Iſrael*) he cauſed 400 Cubits of the Wall to be broken down; through which Breach he entred Triumphantly in his Chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entred, Sacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*; and this the loſs of it. For the People, otherwiſe like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whoſe Noble Acts they had heard much ſpeech, were ſo exaſperated by theſe raſh and unſeaſonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the Holy Altars were not ſafe from; and as a Covetous and Ungovern'd Tyrant, not able to concoct the fulneſs of his own Proſperities. If he were thus unſatiable in his Covetouſneſs, and unſupportable in his Pride when he was a Candidate for their Kingdom; when in all common Prudence he would have ſought their Love, and inſinuated into their good Opinions, by eaſing them of former Taxes, and ſhewing them fair hopes of his moderate Government: what muſt they look for when their Towns were filled with Gariſons, *Hieruſalem* ſtuffed with Armed Troops, and all the Princes of the Houſe of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from Bondage, Deſtroy'd or Baniſhed, or otherwiſe made unable to afford them Succours? Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to riſe up as one Man againſt him, and let him ſee, that neither their Army was ſo ſcattered, nor themſelves ſo cow'd, but that they durſt adventure it to a farther Tryal. The fear of which made *Joas* ſenſible of the loſs of his Opportunity: and ſo content with Hoſtages for his ſafe Retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his Victory, than the Spoil and Honour. And that this poſſibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the ſucceſs of the Affair to a farther hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the Story of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this; *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the Gates of *Florence* to *Charles* VIII, then in his paſſage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entreth it Triumphantly, as a Conquer'd City, Armed in compleat manner, and his Lance on his Thigh; his whole Army with him. Many inſolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to Fight in defence of their Liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his March towards *Naples*, propounds Conditions in Writing: but ſo Intolerable, that *Peter Cappony*, one of the Chief Citizens, catching the Papers out of the King's Secretary's hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you* (ſaith he) *Sound your Trumpets, we will Ring our Bells, and ſee what will follow.* Which ſtout and peremptory dealing did ſo daunt the *French*, that they condeſcended upon very eaſie Terms to abandon the City, and reſtore all the places appertaining unto their Eſtate, which were then in his power. The like conſideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an inraged Multitude in the Streets of a City, where he could make no uſe of his Horſe; and where he might be more galled with Women and Children, throwing Stones or Darts out of their Windows, and from the tops of their Houſes, than with an Armed Enemy in the open Field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the Book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebes*, and forced all the Men and Women into the Caſtle, was ſlain there by a piece of a Milſtone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hands of a Woman.

To proceed further in the Story of theſe ſeveral Kings or recapitulate the ſummf their principal Actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unneceſſary: The Scripture being in the hands of all ſorts of Perſons, in which their Actions and Succeſſions are at large contained. So that I only ſhall ſubjoyn their names, with the time of their Reigns, and the year of the World in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the reſt unto the induſtry and ſearch of the Chriſtian Reader, of whoſe acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no queſtion. This only I premiſe as concerning the *Judges*, That the time of their continuance in that Authority, is not to be meaſured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Succeſſor, as in that of the Kings: theſe being occaſionally raiſed by Almighty God, for ſome preſent Service, and no ſtanding or eſtabliſhed Magiſtrates; except *Moſes* and *Joſhua* only, who held the Government during Life, and managed it as abſolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the *HEBREWS*.

A. M.		
2454	1.	*Moſes*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Ægypt*. 40.
2494.	2.	*Joſhua*, an *Ephramite*, who ſetled them in the Land of *Canaan*. 33.
2526.	3.	*Othniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Meſopotamians*.
2530.	4.	*Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who Reſcued them from the hand of *Eglon*, King of *Moab*.
2610	5.	*Deborah* the Propheteſs, and *Barack* the *Naphthalite*, who diſcomfited the Hoſt of *Jabin*, King of the *Canaanites*.
2650	6.	*Gideon*, a *Manaſſite*, who Ranſom'd them from the Power of the *Midianites*. 40.
2690	7.	*Abimelech*, the baſe Son of *Gideon*. 3.
2693	8.	*Tola*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. 23.
2716	9.	*Jaire*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
2760	10.	*Jepthah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the People were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.
2766	11.	*Ibſan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2773	12.	*Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2783	13	*Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
2790	14.	*Sampſon*, a *Danite*, the avenger of the People upon the *Philiſtims*.
2809	15.	*Eli*, the High-Prieſt, in whoſe time the Ark was taken by the *Philiſtims*.
2849	16.	*Samuel* the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*; in the latter end of whoſe Government, the People being weary of the Command of their former Rulers, deſired to have a King to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the *HEBREWS*.

A. M.		
2878	1	*Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the firſt King of the *Hebrews*, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17.
2890	2	*David*, the Son of *Jeſſe*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt Victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930	3.	*Solomon* the Son of *David*, Renowned for Building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterwards divided.

The Years from the Entrance into *Canaan*.	The IXth. TABLE of *Ludovicus Capellas's Chronologia Sacra.* Containing the Hiſtory of the Bible, from the entring of the Children of *Iſrael* into the Land of *Canaan* to the Death of *Solomon*, and the Diviſion of the Kingdom between the Ten Tribes, and that of *Judah*.	From the going up out of *Egypt*.	The Years of the Judges.	The Years of the World.
1	The Entrance of the Children of *Iſrael* into *Canaan*.	41		2549
6	The War for the Conqueſt of *Canaan* laſted ſix years.	46	6	2554
7	The Diviſion of the Land amongſt the Tribes took up one year.	47	1	2555
15	The Oppreſſion of the Children of *Iſrael* by *Cuſham*, K. of *Meſopotamia*.	55	8	2563
55	The death of *Othniel*, the firſt of the Judges.	95	40	2603
73	The Oppreſſion by *Eglon* King of *Moab*.	113	18.	2621
153	The Death of *Ehud* the ſecond of the Judges.	193	80	2701
	Shamgar.			
173	The Oppreſſion by *Jabin* King of *Canaan*.	213	20	2721
213	The Death of *Debora* and *Barack*.	253	40	2761
220	The Oppreſſion by *Midian*.	260	7	2768
260	The Death of *Gideon*.	300	40	2808
263	The Death of *Abimelech* the Son of *Gideon*.	303	3	2811
286	The Death of *Tholah*.	326	23	2834
308	The Death of *Jair*.	348	22	2856
326	The Oppreſſion by the Children of *Ammon*.	366	18	2874
332	The Death of *Jeptha*.	372	6	2880
339	The Death of *Ibzan*.	379	7	2887
349	The Death of *Elon*.	389	10	2897
357	The Death of *Abdon*.	397	8	2905
397	The Oppreſſion of the *Philiſtims*.	437	40	2945
417	The Death of *Sampſon*.	457	20	2965
497	The Death of *Samuel* and *Saul*.	537	40	3045
537	The Death of *David*.	577	40	3085
577	The Death of *Solomon*.	617	40	3125
540	The Temple was begun to be Built in the 3*d.* Year of the Reign of	580	7	3088
547	*Solomon* and was finiſhed in the IXth.			3096

JUDAH and *ISRAEL.*

The Kings of *JUDAH.*

A. M.

2971 1. *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon*, the firſt King of *Judah*. 17.

2988 2. *Abijah* the Son of *Rehoboam*. 3.

2991 3. *Aſa*, the Son of *Abijah*, diſcomfited the numerous Army of *Zera*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian King*.

3031 4. *Jehoſaphat*, the Son of *Aſa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Eccleſiaſtical and Civil, 35.

3056 5. *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoſaphat*, 8.

3064 6. *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Jehoram* by *Athalia* his Wife, the Siſter of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*. 1.

3065 7. *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Siſter of *Ahab*, having deſtroyed the Regal Race of the Houſe of *David*, uſurped the Kingdom for ſeven years.

3072 8. *Joaſh*, the only ſurviving Heir of the Houſe of *David*, reſtored by *Jehoiadah* the Prieſt, to the Throne of his Anceſtors. 40.

3112 9. *Amaziah*, the Son of *Joaſh*, vanquiſhed by *Joaſh* King of *Iſrael*, and a breach forced through the walls of *Hieruſalem*. 29.

3141 10. *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah*, called alſo *Uzziah*; ſmote with a Leproſie by the Lord. 52.

3192 11. *Jotham*, the Son of *Uzziah*, or *Azariah*. 16.

3208 12. *Ahaz*, the Son of *Jothan*, in whoſe time, and on whoſe occaſion the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* was Ruined by *Tiglath Pileſer* King of *Aſſyria*, and the Tribes on the farther ſide of *Jordan* led into Captivity. 16.

3224. 13. *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Ahaz*, a Religious Prince; in whoſe time the Kingdom of

The Kings of *ISRAEL.*

A. M.

2971 1. *Jeroboam*, the Son of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the firſt King of *Iſrael*. 22.

2993 2. *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam*. 2.

2995 3. *Baaſha*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*, having ſlain Nadab, Reigned in his ſtead. 24.

3019 4. *Ela*, the Son of *Baaſha*. 2.

3021 5. *Zimri*, a King of ſeven days only, the Murderer of *Ela*, and his own Executioner.

6 *Omri*, the Captain of the Hoſt, who removed the Regal Seat from *Tirza* to *Samaria*. 8.

3029 7. *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and Husband of *Jezebel*, a *Phœnician* Princeſs.

3051 8. *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2.

3053 9. *Jehoram*, the Brother of *Ahaziah*. 12.

3065 10. *Jehu*, the Captain of the Hoſt, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Jehoram*, Reigning in his ſtead. 28

3093 11. *Jehoahas*, the Son of *Jehu*. 17.

3110 12. *Joaſh*, the Son of *Jehoahaz*. 16.

3126 13. *Jeroboam*, II. the Son of *Joaſh*. 41.

3178 14. *Zachariah*, the Son of *Jeroboam* the IId. after an *Interregnum* of eleven years, Succeeded in the Throne of his Father: ſlain at the end of ſix Months by

15. *Shallum*, who at the Months end was ſlain by

3178 16 *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.

3188 17 *Pekahiah*, the Son of *Menahem*, ſlain by

3190 18 *Pekah*, the Son of *Remaliah*; ſerved in the ſame kind, after a Reign of Twenty Years, by

3210 19 *Hoſeah*, the Son of *Ela*; in the 5th Year of whoſe Reign, and the 18th Year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmanaſſer* King of *Aſſyria*, having by a Siege of Three Years carried the City of *Samaria*, deſtroyed the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, and led the greateſt part of the people into Captivity.

the Ten Tribes was deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians*, and that of *Aſſyria* by the *Babylonians*.

3253 14. *Manaſſes*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, reſtored Idolatry, and put to death the Prophet *Iſaiah*, for oppoſing his irreligious courſes. 55.

3308 15. *Amon*, the Son of *Manaſſes*, and as bad as he was, ſlain by a Conſpiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but Two Years only.

3310 16 *Joſia*, the Son of *Amon*, a right godly King; unfortunately ſlain by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*, at the Battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17 *Jehoahas*, the Son of *Joſia*, a King of Three Months only; depoſed and ſent Priſoner by *Pharaoh Necho*, to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, ſince called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehoiakim*, the Son of *Joſia*, and half Brother of *Jehoahaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his Name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Jehoiachim*, or *Jechoniah*, the Son of *Jehoiakim*, at the end of three Months led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the Great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Joſiah*, and Brother by the whole blood of *Jehoahaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehoiachin*, or *Jechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling againſt his Benefactor, contrary to the Counſel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Priſoner in the Eleventh Year of his Reign, *Hieruſalem* deſtroyed, the Temple ruinated, and the People carried captive to the Land of *Babylon*, *A. M.* 3362. where they lived in Exile 70 years. Which Time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Perſians* gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple: Which Work being finiſhed, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah* and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again ſetled in ſome part of their old Poſſeſſions, they were after governed by their *High-Prieſts*, and the *Council of their Elders*, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the *High-Prieſt* bearing the chief ſtroke, and being looked on as a Man of the greateſt Power. And therefore I will here ſubjoin the Catalogue of ſo many of them as governed the Affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the Time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the Eſtate hereof both as *Prieſts* and *Princes*, till their Subjection by the *Romans*.

The *High-Prieſts* of the *JEWS* after the Captivity.

A. M.

3427 1 *Joſhua*, The *High-Prieſt* at the Time of the Return, aſſiſtant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the Temple, which he lived not to finiſh; tho continuing (as ſome ſay) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the Names of his Succeſſors being loſt, the whole Time is aſcribed to him.

3530 2 *Jehoiakim*, ſaid to be the Son of *Joſhua*, in whoſe Time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah* the Temple was finiſhed, and the Worſhip of God reſtored.

3580 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.

3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertain'd *Alexander the Great* coming to *Hieruſalem*, (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manaſſes*, for whoſe ſake, and on whoſe occaſion, the Temple on *Mount Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.

3630 5 *Onias* ſucceeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by Election of the People.

3651 6 *Simon*, ſirnamed *Juſtus*. 9.

3660 7 *Eleazer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.

3692 8 *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleazer* and *Simon*.

3718 9 *Onias* II. 14.

3732 10 *Simon* II. 10.

3742 11 *Onias* III. the Son of *Simon* the 2d.

3787 12 *Jaſon*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.

3789 13 *Menelaus* II. the Brother of *Jaſon*, in whoſe Time the Temple was prophaned by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.

3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whoſe Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country and Religion, by whom ſucceeded in the Office of *High-Prieſt*, after his deceaſe. Among theſe none of greater note than *Jaddus*, *High-Prieſt* at ſuch time as *Alexander the Great* having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hieruſalem*, and was encountred by this *Jaddus* in his Prieſtly Veſtments, aſſuring him in the Name of the Moſt High God, and making it demonſtrable from the Propheſie of *Daniel*, That he ſhould proſper in his Enterprize againſt the *Perſians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, becauſe (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his Chief Commander) he had once at *Diu*, a City of *Macedon*, ſeen in a Dream or Viſion ſuch a perſon as *Jaddus* was, ſo habited, and profeſſing the ſame One God; by whom he was encouraged to purſue the Action which he had in hand with aſſurance of Victory. And upon this the Jews were ſo much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with Freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own Time: For ſhortly after his deceaſe, they were on both ſides plagued by the Kings of *Ægypt* and *Syria*, who ranſacked their Cities, ſlaughtered their People, made havock of their Goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of Forbidden Meats, and offer Sacrifice unto Idols. At the laſt God raiſed up *Mattathias* (deſcended from *Aſmoneus* a Prieſt of the Rank of *Joarib*) and his five Sons, to reſiſt theſe Inſolencies; who in the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the protection of the people, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows; inſomuch that the Jews made choice of *Judas* ſirnamed *Maccabæus* (the Eldeſt of the five Brethren) for their Prince or Governor.

The *ASMONEAN* Princes of *JEWRY*.

A. M.

3799 1 *Judas Maccabæus*, the Third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the Nine Worthies, vanquiſhed three great and puiſſant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Liſias*, Men of great renown, being Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.

3805 2 *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, vanquiſhed the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable Exploits and Deeds of Arms, was tracherouſly murthered by *Tryphon*, aſpiring at that time to the *Syrian Diadem*.

3823 3 *Simon* the Elder, Brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, ſubdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppe*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judæa* of the *Syrians*; perfidiouſly ſlain in the courſe of his Fortune, by his Son-in-law *Ptolemy*. 8.

3831 4 *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the Third Son of *Simon* (his two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolemy*) ſucceeded in the Government. He deſtroyed the Temple on *Mount Garizim*, conquered all *Samaria*, and ſubdued the *Idumæans*, compelled them to be Circumciſed; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to his Eldeſt Son *Ariſtobulus*.

The *ASMONÆAN* Kings of *JUDAH*.

A. M.

3862 1 *Ariſtobulus*, cauſed himſelf to be Crowned, and was the firſt King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he ſtarved his Mother, and ſlew *Antigonus* his Brother.

3863 2 *Alexander*, the Brother of *Ariſtobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Jury* by the conqueſt of *Ituræa*, and ſome parts of *Syria*; but was withal ſo great a Tyrant, that he cauſeleſly ſlew of his own Subjects fifty thouſand in Battel; and commanded 800 of his principal Enemies to be hanged before his face. He left behind him Two Sons, *Hyrcanus*, who was at laſt ſlain by *Herod* after all his Troubles, leaving no Iſſue Male behind him; and *Ariſtobulus* the Father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon: Of which Two, *Alexander* was the Father of another *Ariſtobulus*, the moſt beautiful Prince of all his Time, and of *Mariamne* the Wife of *Herod*, by whoſe command they were moſt villanouſly murthered.

3890 3 *Alexandra*, by ſome called *Salome*, the Wife of *Alexander*, and following the Counſel of her Husband at the time of his Death, committed herſelf and her Children into the hands of the *Phariſees*, then in great power and credit amongſt the people; by means whereof ſhe procured an honourable Burial for her Husband, obtained the Kingdom for herſelf, and finally left it to her Children, whoſe diſagreements cauſed the ruin of this Famous Family.

3899 4 *Ariſtobulus* II. The Younger Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having preſently after the death of his Mother poſſeſs'd himſelf of the greateſt part of the Forts and Caſtles, by the Forced conſent of *Hircanus* his Elder Brother, ſucceeded in the Kingdom and High-Prieſthood alſo; both which he held with great trouble and oppoſition both from his Brother and the *Romans*, whom moſt imprudently they called in to decide the Controverſy: by *Pompey* ſent Priſoner unto *Rome* (with *Alexander* and *Antigonus* his two Sons) he eſcaped thence, and raiſed a new Army for the recovery of this Kingdom; but being forced to yield himſelf to *Gabinius* one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenants, he was ſent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Priſon, having reigned Three Years and Six Months.

3903 5 *Hircanus* II. a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made *High-Prieſt* in the firſt Year of his Mother's Reign, but diſpoſſeſs'd of that Dignity by *Ariſtobulus* his younger Brother. Reſtored again by the Favour of *Pompey*, he was again diſturb'd in his Poſſeſſion by *Alexander* the Eldeſt Son of *Ariſtobulus*; who eſcaping out of *Rome*, had raiſed ſome Forces; and began to diſpute the Forces with him; but was ſoon after diſcomfited by *Gabinius* afore-mentioned, and ſlain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey*'s Captains. After the Death of *Ariſtobulus*, which happen'd in the year 3903. *Hircanus* was look'd on by the people, not only as their *High-prieſt*, but as their Prince and King, commonly called ſo by *Joſephus* in the courſe of his Hiſtory. His Affairs managed for the moſt part by *Antipater* (an *Idumæan* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his conſtant and moſt Faithful Friend in all his Troubles, who governed the Eſtate with great care and prudence. But he being made away by Poiſon, *Antigonus* the younger Son of *Ariſtobulus*, ſet on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the *Parthians* to make it good; by whoſe aid, having treacherouſly inſnared *Hircanus*, he cut off his Ears (to make him uncapable of the Prieſthood for the time to come) and ſent him Priſoner to *Babylon*; taking upon himſelf the Title of King, though never acknowledged for ſuch by the Jewiſh Nation. But long he did not pleaſe himſelf with that Title neither, for being beſieged in *Jeruſalem* by *Herod*, then newly created King of the *Jews* by the *Roman* Senate, and by him taken Priſoner in the Sack of that City, he was ſent in Bonds to *Mark Anthony*, and by him beheaded. As for *Hircanus* the Rightful Prince of his Country, he remained Priſoner for a time amongſt the *Parthians*, till hearing of the Death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whoſe greatneſs he had laid the firſt Foundation, and was by him in fine wickedly murthered.

The *Idumæan* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M.

3940 1 *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, ſirnamed the Great, Son to *Antipater* the *Idumæan*, was by the power of *Mark Anthony* created, and by *Auguſtus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater Splendor than ever it had been in ſince the Time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the *Scepter being now departed from* Judah, the Lord CHRIST was born.

A. Chriſti.

6 2 *Archelaus*, Eldeſt Son of *Herod* at the time of his death, ſucceeded with the Title of King; but in truth and reality poſſeſſed only a *Tetrarchy*, or Fourth Part of the Kingdom, though the beſt and largeſt of the Four, containing *Judæa*, *Samaria*, and *Idumæa*. The reſt of *Herod*'s Kingdom was divided into Three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchy* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, given to *Herod Antipas*: Secondly, That of *Ituræa*, given to *Philip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*: And Thirdly, That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lyſanias*. Baniſhed into *France*, his *Tetrarchy* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate* at our Saviour's Paſſion.

16 3 *Herod* II. ſirnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch of Galilee* and *Petræa*, on the Baniſhment of *Archelaus*, ſucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his *Tetrarchy*; and at laſt followed him in his Baniſhment alſo. This is he who murthered *John Baptiſt*, and in whoſe Time CHRIST ſuffer'd.

40 4 *Herod* III. ſirnamed *Agrippa*; in honour of *Agrippa* the Son-in-law, and moſt Truſty Favourite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, Nephew to *Herod the Great*, by his Son *Ariſtobulus* begotten on *Mariamne* of the Race of the *Aſmonees*, was by *Caligula* firſt inveſted in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the Title of King; and next, in that of *Antipas* alſo; and finally by *Claudius*, in that alſo of *Lyſanias*, ſome part of the *Tetrarchy* of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the Man that murthered *James*, and

imprisoned *Peter*; and in the end was ſtricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.

47 5 *Agrippa Minor*, Son of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom St. *Paul* pleaded in defence of the Goſpel; and the laſt which had the Title of King of the *Jews*: For in his Time the City of *Hieruſalem* was deſtroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, *Anno* 69.

For the fuller clearing the Intricate Succeſſions of the ſeveral Princes which Reigned in and over *Jeruſalem* and the *Jewiſh* Nation, till the Final End of that State and People under *Veſpaſian*, I have added from *Ludovicus Capella* the following TABLES; which commence with the Death of *Solomon*, and the Diviſion of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, and end with the Deſolation of *Jeruſalem*.

The of the World	Year coming out of Egypt	Places of *Scripture.*	Kings of *Judah.*	Reigns.	When they began to Reign.	Life	Places of *Scripture.*	Kings of *Iſrael.*	Reigns.	When they began to Reign.
		1 *Kings*					1 *Kings*			
3126	618	14. 21.	*Rehoboam*	17	1 Of *Jerob.*	41	14. 20.	*Jeroboam* I.	22	*Rehoboam* I.
3143	635	15. 2.	*Abija*	3	18					
3146	638	15. 9.	*Aſa*	41	20					
3147	639						15. 25.	*Nadab*	2	2 of *Aſa*
3148	640						15. 33.	*Baaſha*	24	3
3171	663						16. 8.	*Elah*	2	26
3172	664						16. 15.	*Zimri*	7 D.	27
3173	665						16. 21.	*Omri* and *Tibni*	3	27
3175	668						23.	*Omri* alone	12	
3183	675						16. 29.	*Ahab*	22	38
3187	679	22. 41.	*Jehoſaphat*	25	4 of *Ahab*	36				
3203	695						22. 51.	*Ahaziah*	2	17 *Jehoſoph.*
3205	697	2 *Kings*					2 *King.* 3. 1.	*Joram*	12	18
3209	701	8. 16.	*Joram*	8	5 of *Joram*	32				
3216	708	8. 25.	*Ahaziah*	1	12	22				
3217	709	11. 13.	*Athaliah*	6			10. 3.	*Jehu*	28	
3223	715	12. 1.	*Jehoas, Soas*	40	7 of *Jehu*	7				
3245	737						13. 1.	*Jehoahaz*	17	23 of *Joas*
3259	751						13. 10.	*Joaſh, Joas*	16	37
3261	752	14. 1.	*Amaziah*	29	2 of *Joas*	25				
3274	766			12			14. 23.	*Jeroboam* II.	41	15 of *Amazia*
3301	753	15. 1.	*Azaria*	52	27 *Jeroboam*	16				
3315	808							*Interregnum*	12	
3337	830						15. 8.	*Zachariah*	6 M.	38 of *Azari.*
3338	831						15. 13.	*Shallum*	1 M.	39
3550	842						15. 17.	*Menahem*	10 Y.	39
3552	844						15. 23.	*Pekahiah*	2	50
3553	845	15. 32.	*Jotham*	16	2 of *Pekah*	25	15. 27.	*Pekah*	20	52
3369	861	16. 1.	*Ahaz*	16	17	22				
3372	864						17. 1	*Hoſhea*	9	12 of *Ahas.*
3375	868	18. 1.	*Ezechias*	29	3 of *Hoſhea*	25				
3380	872	17. 6.	*Samaria* taken							
3404	896	21. 1.	*Manaſſes*	55		12				
3459	951	21. 19.	*Amon*	2		2				
3461	953	22. 1.	*Joſiah*	31		8				
3492	984	23. 31.	*Jehoaz*	3 M.		23				
3493	985	23. 36.	*Jehoiakim*	11		25				
3504	996	24. 8.	*Jehoiachin*	3 M.		18				
3505	997	17.	*Zedechias*	11		21				
3515	1007	25. 2.	*Jeruſalem* taken, and the Temple burnt.							

The End of this Kingdom.

A. M.

A.M.	*Reges Babiloniæ.*	
3496	*Nebuchodonozor*	44
3540	*Evilmerodach*	2
3543	*Balſhazer*	4
3547	*Darius* the *Mede.*	27
	PERSIANS.	
3574	*Cyrus* the *Perſian*	3
3576	*Cambyſes*	7
	A Magus 7 Months	
3584	*Darius Hyſtaſpis*	21
3640	*Artaxerxes Longima.*	41
3681	*Darius Nothus*	19
3700	*Artaxerxes Mnemon*	43
3743	*Ochus*	23
3766	*Arſes*	2
3768	*Darius Codomanus-*	7
3774	Conquered by *Alexander the Great*	
	GREEKS.	
3781	*Ptolemæus Lagi. F.*	39
3820	*Ptolemæus Philadel.*	38
3858	*Ptolemæus Euergetes*	24
3882	*Ptolemæus Philopat.*	19
3901	*Ptolemæus Epiphanes*	23
3924	*Ptolemæus Philometor*	30
	Aſmonæan Princes.	
3954	*Jonathan*, B. of *Jud.*	9
3963	*Simon*, Brother of *Jon.*	8
3971	*John Hircanus-*	30
4001	*Ariſtobulus*	1
4002	*Alexander Jannæus*	26
4028	*Alexandra* his Widow-	9
4037	*Ariſtobulus*, Son of *Alex.*	6
4043	*Hyrcanus cum Antipatro.*	23
4066	*Herod* the Great	37
4103	*Chriſt* Born	1
	Anni Chriſti.	
4103	*Archelaus*	10
4113	*Coponius* Preſident	13
4117	*Antonius Rufus*	15
4118	*Auguſtus* Dies	16
	Tiberius ſucceeds (2-	
4131	*Pilatus* Preſident	29
4135	*Chriſt* Crucified	33
4138	*Caius Caligula* (4)	38
4143	*Claudius* (14)	41
4156	*Claudius Nero* (13)	54
	Galba, *Otho*, and *Vitelius* Two Years	
4171	*Veſpaſian*	68
4172	*Jeruſalem* Deſtroyed	69
4173	*Capella* ſaith	70

And here it is to be obſerved, that when *Salmanaſſar* had ſubdued and captivated the Ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, he ſent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that ſo fruitful and well-ſituate a part of his Empire might yield its Juſt Tribute, and not lie open to the Fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it ſeemeth) ſo much Policy or Providence as thoſe whom they counted barbarous; having laid the Country deſolate, left it unfurniſhed of new Colonies; whereby the *Perſians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entring the *Roman* Empire at this door, have ſucceſſively driven the *Romans* out of the whole Houſe. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakned, and almoſt utterly rooted out the *Jewiſh* Nation, we will relate ſome of their particular *Maſſacres*, which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than juſtly deſerved by themſelves; they wiſhing tho' (I ſuppoſe) not deſiring, that the Innocent Blood of our Saviour ſhould *be on them and their Children.* Firſt then the Inhabitants of *Cæſaria* ſlew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and ſuch as fled were took and Impriſoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Judæa.* To Revenge this Slaughter, the *Jews* ſet upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmiſh 13000 of them were ſlain. The People of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the Sword; they of *Damaſcus,* 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* Captain, ſlew in *Aſcalon,* 10000 of them, and *Ceſtius* another Captain, 8040 perſons. Now to come to the Wars here managed by *Veſpaſian*; This *Veſpaſian* in the Siege of *Aphaca*, ſlew and took Priſoner 17130 perſons; in *Samaria* 11600 perſons; In *Jotopata*, 42200 perſons; In *Joppa*, ſo many killed and drowned themſelves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the reſt ſo totally periſh'd, that there remained none to carry tidings to *Hieruſalem* of the loſs of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were ſlain and made Captives, 45000 perſons, beſides thoſe which were given to the King *Agrippa.* In *Gamala* there periſhed 90000, and none left alive but only two Women; In *Gaſcala,* 5000 Men died by the Sword; In the City of *Gadera* there were ſlain 32200, beſides an infinite number which had drowned themſelves. In *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Famine; the worſer Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in Privies and Sinks, and 9700 taken Priſoners; inſomuch that 30 *Jews* were ſold for a penny. So punctually was the *Divine Juſtice* in *retaliating* to this wretched people, according to the meaſure of their Iniquities that they who bought their Saviour for 30 *pence*, ſhould be ſold at thirty for a penny in the open Market.

Now that *Jeruſalem* was able to contain ſuch a number of People, is evident, in that when *Ceſtius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the *High-Prieſt* did at his requeſt, number the People which came thither to eat the *Paſchal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand living Souls, all ſound and purified: For to Lepers, or Men having a flux of Seed, or Women in their Monthly Terms, or to Strangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid Siege to the City, it was in the Feaſt of the *Paſſeover*, when moſt of the People were there aſſembled; God (as it were) having thus Impriſoned them. All theſe Maſſacres, beſides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were ſlain in the fields and Villages, which drown'd themſelves, and which were privily made away, amounting all to almoſt 2000000 of people hapned in the compaſs of four years; beginning at the 12*th.* of *Nero*, and ending at the 2*d.* of *Veſpaſian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miſerable people having ſtirred two notable Rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the laſt under *Adrian* the Emperor, were generally baniſhed their Native Country, and never again permitted to Inhabit it, otherwiſe than as ſtrangers. After this diſſolution the *Jews* were diſperſed all over the World, and eſpecially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell; yet they found every where ſo little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous Mulcts and Ranſoms, they were at laſt thruſt out of moſt of the Kingdoms of *Europe* alſo. They were Baniſh'd out of *England* by *Edward* I. *Anno* 1290. Out of *France* by *Philip* the *Fair*, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*. 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the Fifth, 1539. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romiſh* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in moſt Cities of *Italy*, eſpecially *Rome* it ſelf, where are no leſs than 15000 or 20000 of them; and alſo in the

Pope's Country of *Avignon*. The reaſon why they are permitted to live thus under the Pope's Noſe, is pretended to be an expectation of their Converſion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reaſon being the benefit hence ariſing to his Holineſs's Coffers; the hopes of their Converſion being very ſmall, and the means leſs. For beſides the ſcandal, *Datum & acceptum*, by the *Papiſts* fond worſhipping of Images, ſo peremptorily contrary to the firſt Table of the Law: They are not permitted to ſee any Book of Chriſtian Religion, no not ſo much as the New Teſtament. And (which worketh much upon Men of their metal) becauſe at their Converſion they muſt quit all their Goods unto the Church, as being ill-gotten, and by conſequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptiſm they promiſe to renounce. They have alſo a Synagogue at *Amſterdam*, and are pretty thick ſpread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who, notwithſtanding ſo hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they uſed to ſay in the deteſtation of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unleſs he be firſt baptized. And though their multitudes be ſo great both in *Theſſalonica* and *Conſtantinople*, that it is conceiv'd they do amount to the number of 160000 perſons; yet they are not only contemned but hated: But there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous aſſembly of the Common People, and conſtantly every *Eaſter*, whereſoever they be, in danger of death. Inſomuch that if a *Jew* do but ſtir out of doors betwixt *Maundy-Thurſday* at Noon, and *Eaſter-Eve* at Night, the *Chriſtians* of the Eaſt, amongſt whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be ſure to ſtone them; becauſe at that time, they buffetted, derided, and in fine, crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* Dominions, becauſe imployed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhauncing the publick Tributes which they exact with all ſeverity that may be, and improve unto the moſt. And no leſs hated in all parts of the *Chriſtian* World, as Enemies to the *Croſs of CHRIST*: ſo unreclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaiſm*, and ſo abhorring from the converſation of other Men; that it is not poſſible they ſhould reap any other harveſt, than contempt and ſcorn from thoſe amongſt whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief; They are a People which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; eſpecially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and uſed like Slaves, yet never ſhew ſo much as an angry Countenance. A Nation which will thrive whereſoever they come, but moſt by *Uſury* and *Brokage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and thoſe once forfeited, never more redeemable. The beſt of both *Sexes* ſaid to have an unſavoury rankneſs, not incident (if not cauſed by ſluttiſhneſs) to other People: From whom as different in their habits, as in their *Religion*. And as for that, they retain ſtill *Circumciſion*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many Ceremonies not preſcribed by the Law, nor obſerved by the Ancients: Placing a void Chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be preſent, though unſeen at the Solemnity. And upon this they are ſo beſotted, that they conceive the Female Sex uncapable of eternal life, becauſe not capable of *Circumciſion*; and therefore uſe to name them with no other Ceremony, than at ſix weeks end to have ſome young Wenches lift up the Cradle with the Child in it; which ſhe that ſtandeth at the Head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* ſo extreamly doting, that they have added to the *Superſtitions* left them by the *Phariſees*: And herein they are ſo preciſe, that if a *Jew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the Evening fall ſo ſhort of his Journeys end, that it amounts to more than to 2000 Cubits, or ſix Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* Journey, there muſt he ſit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a Wood, or Field, or the High-way ſide, without fear of Wind or Weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for Meat or Drink: *Periculo latronum prædonumque omni, penuriâ item omni cibi potûſque neglectis*, as *Buxtorfius* hath it. And ſo far have they gone in deſpight of Chriſt, as to declare it unlawful to lift the *Ox or Aſs out of a Ditch*; permitted in the ſtricteſt times of *Phariſaical* rigor. So pertinacious in retaining the *difference of meats and drinks*, that they will by no means ſit at the Table with other Men, and ſo preciſe in the dreſſing of it, that they will eat of no fleſh but of their own killing only; and that too with ſuch cautions and reſervations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or diſlocated, they will ſell the whole Beaſt to the *Chriſtians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring Chriſtians. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not ſo much out of diſlike of that Liquor, for they are generally good Fellows, and love their bellies, as for fear the Wine ſhould be baptized: a Ceremony much uſed in the Eaſtern Parts. Of the coming of their *Meſſiah* ſo full of hopes, that there is no great Warriour ſtirring, but they look upon him as the Man; till ſome ſad Tragedy or other, which they ſuffer under that perſwaſion, makes them ſee their Error: promiſing to themſelves whenſoever he cometh, a Reſtitution of their Kingdom: and ſuch felicities therein, in the literal Sence of ſome Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more *myſtical* and ſacred meaning. That in good time (but God's, not theirs) they ſhall be made partakers of the ſeveral bleſſings which thoſe Texts do ſpeak of, is both the hope and wiſh of all pious Men; who cannot chuſe but grieve to behold the *natural branches*, ſo long diſmembred and cut off from the *tree of life*. And this they neither hope nor wiſh for but on ſome fair grounds, preſented to them by St. *Paul*: who ſaid expreſly, that when the *fulneſs of the* Gentiles *is once come in, that then all* Iſrael *ſhall be ſaved, Rom.* 11.25,26. The words are ſo plainly poſitive that they need no Commentary. Or if they did, we have the general conſent of the Ancients, beſides the conſtant current of moſt modern Writers; who cheriſh the glad hopes of their *Converſion to the Goſpel*, which the Apoſtle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanaſius*, *Hierom*, *Auguſtine*, *Chryſoſtome*, for the Primitive Times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times ſucceeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for thoſe of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the *Reformed* Churches; beſides divers others of great note, ſo expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much, which he that doth deſire to ſee, may find with the Expoſitions of moſt *Chriſtian* Writers in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, Entituled, *De generali & noviſſima* Judæorum *vocatione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I ſhall take theſe words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that paſſage of St. *Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita* Judæi *perierunt ut nulla de illorum ſalute ſpes ſuperſit*; The *Jews* (ſaith he) are not ſo wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there ſtill remains ſome hopes of their Salvation. Of their *Salvation* then by the Goſpel of *Chriſt*, when the *fulneſs of the Gentiles* is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their Reſtitution to their *temporal* Kingdom, is a farther Queſtion; and not ſo clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be ſomewhat in that Book which may ſeem to intimate it. That the opinion of being reſtored by the *Meſſiah*, to that Temporal Power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongſt *Chriſt's Diſciples*, as the reſt of the *Jews*, is, I take it, clear enough in the holy Goſpel. In ſuch a Kingdom, and no other, did the two Sons of *Zebedee* deſire to ſit on both hands of their Maſter; and the ſame was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeared by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke* 25. 21. that *Chriſt ſhould have reſtored unto them. We thought*, ſaid he, that this would have proved the Man, that ſhould have *redeemed Iſrael*. Redeemed *Iſrael*? From what? from Sin and Satan, or the Curſe and

Bondage of the Law? not ſo, Ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τοῦ ζύγου τῆς δουλείας, but from the Yoke of Vaſſallage, which the *Romans* had ſo lately impoſed on them, ſay the Fathers rightly. Touching the ſame it was that they moved him, ſaying, *Lord, wilt thou at this time reſtore again the Kingdom of Iſrael?* *Acts* 1. 6. In anſwer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the *thing*, nor tells them that they never muſt expect ſuch a *Reſtauration*; but only puts them off as unto the *time*, and bids them reſt themſelves on the pleaſure of God the Father, in whoſe Hands the diſpoſing of all *Kingdoms* was: *It is not for you*, (ſaith he) *to know the times and ſeaſons, which the Father hath in his own power*, ver. 7. By which anſwer (as it ſeems to me) there is a poſſibility of reſtoring them to their *Kingdom* alſo; though not in the τὸ νῦν at that very inſtant when they were moſt deſirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a Secret, which the Father hath reſerved to himſelf alone.

But leaving theſe Speculations of a Reſtitution of the Throne of *Iſrael*, and the great Power and Priviledges it may then enjoy, let us look back on the Eſtate in which it flouriſhed in the former times, when the Forces and Revenue of it were at the higheſt. And firſt for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is ſaid, 2 *Chron.* 9. 13.) to 600 *Talents* of Gold, beſides the Benefits of his *Cuſtoms* and *Impoſitions*, which cometh to 2997000 Pounds of yearly income. A vaſt Sum for ſuch a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them at leſs, if they were not greater in the time of *David*; of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22. 14. That he left to *Solomon* 100000 *Talents* of Gold, and 1000000 *Talents* of Silver towards the building of the Temple, beſides 3000 *Talents* of Gold, and 7000 *Talents* of Silver, formerly depoſited for that purpoſe, as is ſaid 1 *Chron.* 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jews Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at 4500 Pound, and a *Talent* of Silver at 375 Pound, will amount in our Mony to 840125000 Pounds. So vaſt a Sum, that it had been ſufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other Materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and induſtrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in thoſe places we are to underſtand a far leſſer Sum than the ordinary *Hebrew Talents*: which whether it doth there ſignifie a *Sicle* only, which is half a Crown of *Engliſh* Money, as *Eupolemus*, cited by *Euſebius*, was of opinion; or that every *Talent* of Gold came to three Golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five Shillings of *Engliſh* Money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomaſticon*, I am not able to determine: But meaſuring it by the laſt eſtimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two Millions and two hundred ninety and five thouſand Pounds: a vaſt Sum for a King to leave in ready Money, which was always exerciſed in War. And though I do not find expreſly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto, after the diviſion: yet by one circumſtance I find them to be very great. For it is written 2 *Kings* 18. 14. that the yearly *Tribute* impoſed upon *Hezekiah*, by the King of *Aſſyria*, was three hundred *Talents* of Silver, and thirty *Talents* of Gold: amounting (according to the ordinary *Hebrew Talent*, which queſtionleſs is there intended) to two hundred forty ſeven thouſand and five hundred Pounds of *Engliſh* Money: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* muſt be thrice as much, above that Tribute; elſe the *Aſſyrian* had not left him a ſubſiſtence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this Crown were leſs to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*; conſidering his vaſt Expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeaſurable donatives beſtowed upon *Auguſtus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death: not parallel'd by any King before or ſince, though of a more large and more ample Territory than he ſtood poſſeſſed of.

What Forces the Kings of the *Hebrews* were able to bring into the Field, may be beſt eſtimated by the Muſter which *David* made, when he numbred the People; the enrolment of ſuch as were able to bear Arms, and fit for Service, coming in all to five hundred thouſand fighting Men, in *Judah* only, and eight hundred thouſand Men in the Tribes of *Iſrael*. 'Tis true that *David* never brought into the Field ſo vaſt a Multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and War denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almoſt the whole number brought into the Field: that is to ſay, 800 thouſand on the ſide of *Jeroboam* the *King* of *Iſrael*, and four hundred thouſand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that ſmall Kingdom, *Aſa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zarah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thouſand Men, which was more than the enrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for ſo ſmall a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above Belief; had not that God who ſaid to *Abraham*, that his *Seed ſhould be as the Stars of Heaven for multitude*, been able to have made it good.

As for the Story and Affairs of this Country ſince the time of *Adrian*, the *Jews* being all expelled their native Soyl, and *Chriſtianity* in fine prevailing over all thoſe Parts, it was inhabited as the reſt of the Empire was, by Men of that *Religion* only, in this Country ſo advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Conſtantine*, is reported to have built in it no leſs than two hundred Temples and Monaſteries, in places of moſt note for the Miracles of *Chriſt* our Saviour, or the dwelling of ſome of his *Diſciples*. In the Year 615. the *Perſians*, under the Conduct of *Choſroes* their King, became Maſters of it; and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Hieruſalem* alſo: expelled thence by the valour and good Fortune of the Emperour *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Croſs* on which *Chriſt* ſuffered, out of the Hands of the *Pagans*, carried it with as great a Triumph into *Conſtantinople*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hieruſalem*; occaſioning thereby the annual Feſtival on the fourth of *September*, called *Holy-Croſs Day*, or *Exaltatio Sanctæ Crucis*. But this Glory and Rejoycing did not long continue: For within twenty Years after the recovery of this City from the Power of the *Perſians*, it was again conquered and ſubdued by *Homar*, or *Aumar*, *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, *Anno* 637. Under this Yoke the captivated *Chriſtians* had long ſuffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the Tyranny, the *Turks* about the Year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their ſtead. Twenty Years did the *Chriſtians* languiſh under this Oppreſſion, when one *Peter* an *Hermite*, travelling for Devotion to the *Holy-Land*, and being an Eye-witneſs of the Miſeries under which they groaned; at his return, made his Addreſſes to Pope *Urban* the ſecond, acquainting him with the ſad conditions of the poor *Chriſtians* in thoſe Countries. A *Council* thereupon is called at *Clermont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to imploy the *Chriſtian* Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home,) did ſo effectually advance and endear the buſineſs, that no fewer than three hundred thouſand fighting Men, under ſeveral Leaders, undertook the Service. And it proſpered ſo well with them in the firſt beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Aſia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and moſt of the ſtrong Towns of *Syria*, they incamped before *Hieruſalem*, and in ſhort time took it, *Anno* 1099. after it had been four hundred Years and upwards in the Power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered with the Title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *William* the *Conquerour*: but he upon hopes of the Kingdom of *England*, refuſed that honour; never proſpering, as it was obſerved, after that refuſal. *Godfry* of *Bovillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, had the next offer of it. which with a Religious Joy he accepted of; though on the Day of his inauguration he refuſed the Crown:

affirming that it was not fit for a *Chriſtian* Prince to wear in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World wore a *Crown of Thorns.*

The Kings of *Hieruſalem.*

1099 1 *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrain.*

1100 2 *Baldwin* of *Lorrain*, Brother of *Godfrey*, won *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria.*

1118 3 *Baldwin* II. ſirnamed of *Bruges*, Couſin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the former Kings, overcame the Sultan of *Damaſcus*; and enlarged his Kingdom by the addition of *Tyre.*

1131 4 *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Milliſcent* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the ſecond ſucceeded after his Deceaſe; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horſe.

1142 5 *Baldwin* III. Son of *Fulk* and *Milleſcent*, fortified *Gaza* againſt the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*; and recovered *Paneade* from the King of *Damaſcus.*

1164 6 *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the third, ſo diſtreſſed the great *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom ſlain, and his Kingdom transferred on *Saracon* the *Turkiſh* General.

1174 7 *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* in a Fight near *Aſcalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.

1185 8 *Baldwin* V. Son of *Sybil* the Siſter of *Baldwin* the fourth by *William* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poyſoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months, to make way for her ſecond Husband, called

1185 9 *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the laſt King of *Hieruſalem*, that had the poſſeſſion of the City: During whoſe time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Egypt* won that Kingdom, *Anno* 1187. which his Succeſſors defended againſt all invaſions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the firſt, Emperor of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Ægypt*, to his Empire. When *Hieruſalem* was taken by the *Chriſtians*, it is ſaid that the *German* Emperor's name was *Fredericus*; the Pope's *Urbanus*; the *Hieroſolymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and that ſo alſo were they called, when the *Chriſtians* again loſt it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the Life of *Henry* the Second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not ſee.

After the taking of *Hieruſalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Chriſtians* retired their Forces into ſome of the other Towns of the *Holy Land*; which they made good againſt the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of theſe Three Kings following, *viz.*

10 *Conrade* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, Husband of *Iſabel* the Daughter of *Almericus*, King of *Hieruſalem.*

11 *Henry* Earl of *Compagne*, ſecond Husband of *Iſabel.*

12 *John di Brenne*, Husband of *Mary*, or *Toland*, as ſome call her, Daughter of *Conrade* and *Iſabel*, the laſt *Chriſtian* King that ever had poſſeſſion in *Syria* or *Paleſtine*: Inhabited ever ſince by *Moors* and *Arabians*; few *Chriſtians*, and not many *Turks* but ſuch as be in Gariſons only. *Toland* the Daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was Wiſe to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her Right intitled himſelf King of *Hieruſalem*: And ſo now do the Kings of *Spain*, as Heirs unto, and Poſſeſſors of the Kingdom of *Naples.* Concerning which Title, it would not be amiſs to inſert this Story. When the Wars in Q. *Elizabeth*'s time were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were *Commiſſioners* of both ſides appointed to Treat of Peace. They met at a Town of the *French* King's; and firſt it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiations ſhould be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *Engliſh* Commiſſioners a ſhrewd gird, propoſed the *French* Tongue as moſt fit; it being a Language which the *Spaniards* were all skilled in: And for theſe Gentlemen of *England*, I ſuppoſe (ſaith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the Language of their fellow-Subjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *England.* Nay in faith my Maſters, replied Doctor *Dale* (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Maſters of Requeſts) the *French* Tongue is too vulgar for a buſineſs of this ſecrecy and importance, eſpecially in a *French* Town: We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the Language of *Hieruſalem*, whereof your Maſter is King; and I ſuppoſe you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French.* And thus much for this Title.

The Arms of the Chriſtian Kings in *Hieruſalem* was *Luna*, a Croſs Croſſet croſſed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hieruſalem Croſs.* But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot ſee how any eſtimate may be made hereof, in regard they ſubſiſted not by their own proper ſtrength, but by the Purſes and the Forces of the *Weſtern* Chriſtians, more or leſs active in that Service, as zeal, or emulation, or deſire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after the Recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, were,

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, ſaid to be inſtituted originally by Queen *Helena.* The Mother of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed firſt built: But more truly, by *Philip* King of *France*, *Anno* 1099. at ſuch time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks.* Their Arms the ſame with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, repreſenting the five Wounds of our Saviour CHRIST. At the firſt conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Fortune; now ſaleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a Convent of *Franciſcans* doth reſide near that Temple.

2. Of *St. John of Hieruſalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, *Anno* 1114. and confirmed by Pope *Paſchalis* the ſecond. Their Badge or Cognizance is a white Croſs of eight points. Their duty, to defend the *Holy-Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and ſuccour *Chriſtian* Princes againſt the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage and Extraction; and grew in time to ſuch infinite Riches, eſpecially after the ſuppreſſion of the *Templars* (moſt of whoſe Lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the ſeveral parts of *Chriſtendom*, no fewer than 20000 Mannors; and of ſuch Reputation in all *Chriſtian* Kingdoms, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accounted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminiſhed, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Proteſtant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*, who on that change ſeized on all the Lands of this Order in their ſeveral Countries; and either kept them to themſelves, or diſpoſed them to others as they pleaſed. Of theſe we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reſide: advertiſing only at the preſent, that their firſt *Great Maſter*, was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the laſt that had his reſidence in the *Holy-Land*, one *John de Villiers*, in whoſe time being driven out of *Paleſtine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret*, *Anno* 1309. to the Iſle of *Rhodes*; Out of which expelled by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at laſt by the magnificence of *Charles* the Fifth, *Anno* 1530. they were ſetled in *Malta*: And there we ſhall ſpeak further of them.

3. Of the *Templars*, inſtituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*, *Anno* 1113. and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius.* Their Enſign was a *Red Croſs*, in token that they ſhould ſhed their blood to defend *Chriſt's* Temple. They were buried *croſs legged*, and wore on their backs the Figure of

the Croſs, for which they were by the common people called Croſs-backs, or Crouch-backs, and by corruption Crook-backs. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaſter*, ſecond Son to our *Henry* the Third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the Fourth a fooliſh occaſion to feign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was deſcended) was indeed the Eldeſt Son of King *Henry* the Third; but for his *crookedneſs* and deformity, his younger Brother was preferred to the Crown before him. Theſe Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their ſubordinate Governors, in which they poſſeſſed no leſs than 16000 Lordſhips: The greatneſs of which Revenue was not the leaſt Cauſe of diſſolving the Order. For *Philip* the Fair, King of *France*, had a plot to inveſt one of his Sons with the title of *King of Hieruſalem*, and hoped to procure of the *Pope* the Revenue of this Order, to be laid unto that Kingdom, for ſupport of the Title; which he thought he might the better do, becauſe *Clement* the Fifth then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had transferred his Seat from *Rome* to *Avignion*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being diſſolved, the Lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hoſpitallers*, or of St. *John*. The Crimes objected againſt this Order were, Firſt, Their Revolt from their profeſſed Obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, who was their Viſitor: Secondly, Their unſpeakable Pride: And Thirdly, Their Sins againſt Nature. The Houſe of our Law-Students in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief Houſe of the Knights of this Order in *England*; and was by the Knights of St. *John*, whoſe principal Manſion was in *Smithfield*, ſold unto the Students of the Law, for the yearly Rent of 10*l.* about the middle of the Reign of *Edward* the Third

Theſe Three Orders Mr. *Selden* (and deſervedly) putteth not in his *Titles of Honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiſs a Woman; honorary Knighthood, and the Love of Ladies, going together like Virtue and Reward. Thus much for *Paleſtine*.

OF ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the Eaſt *Chaldæa*, and the Bay or *Gulph* of *Perſia*; on the Weſt, *Paleſtine*, ſome part of *Ægypt*, and the whole courſe of the *Red-Sea*; on the North the River *Euphrates*, with ſome parts of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; and on the South the main Southern Ocean. But at ſome times the name extended ſomewhat farther. *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tygranes*: And *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greateſt part alſo of *Meſopotamia*; becauſe ſituate on the Weſt of the River *Tigris*, and conſequently the Weſtern part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, as the word *Ereb* doth import, from whence ſome derive the *Etymon*, and name hereof. Which notwithſtanding, in the general eſteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the Name, there be ſome that derive it from *Arabus*, a ſuppoſed Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*; others from three ſuppoſititious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand-ſons of *Cham*, who is fabled to have ſent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deſerta*; *Petreius*, into *Arabia Petræa*; and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Fœlix*, the dwelling-place of the *Sabæans*. And for this trim conceit we are beholden to the *Beroſus* of *Friar Annius*. More probable is their conjecture who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, ſignifying *Black*; by reaſon of the ſwarth or tawny complexion of the Inhabitants who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witneſs hath informed us of them; on the ſame reaſon as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the moſt likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which ſignifieth in the *Hebrew*, a Thief or Robber, ſuch as the *Arabians* in all Ages have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*: *In the ways thou haſt ſate for them, as an Arabian in the Wilderneſs*, as our *Engliſh* reads it: *Tanquam Latro inſidians in ſolitudine*, ſaith the Vulgar Latin, *Jer.* 32. St. *Hierom*, though he render it *quaſi Latro*, as the Vulgar doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, That the word doth alſo ſignify an *Arabian, quæ gens latrociniis dedita uſque hodie incurſat Paleſtinæ, fines, &c.* which being addicted to Theft and Robbery, do to this day (ſaith he) infeſt the Coaſts of *Paleſtine* which border near them, and lay in wait for thoſe which had any occaſion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the Obſervation of *Martin del Rio*; *Adeo latrociniis infames ſunt, ut Hebræis Arabs latronem, denotat, ſicut Chananæus Mercatorem, Chaldæus Mathematicum*; i. e. So infamous were they for their Theft and frequent Robberies, that it was familiar with the *Jews* to call a Thief by the name *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to ſignify a Merchant, or to uſe the word *Chaldæan* for a *Mathematician*. In the ſame ſenſe they came in the ſucceeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak*, or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which ſignifieth to ſteal; whereof more anon: No otherwiſe than one of the *American* Iſlands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Inſula Latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thieviſhneſs of the Inhabitants, who had ſtolen his Cock-boat.

I have ſtaid the longer on the Name, becauſe it doth expreſs ſo much of the Character of the People alſo; living for the moſt part upon Spoil and Robbery, as all that travel that way know by ſad experience. Of mean ſtatures, raw-boned, tawny or ſwarth-complexioned, having feminine voices; of ſwift but noiſeleſs gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no ſet-dwellings (except only in *Arabia Fœlix*) living in Tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of Paſturage, and hope of Booty: for this laſt cauſe hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countries, and having robbed, retire with a marvellous ſpeed; Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpoſe, a Beaſt of moſt incredible ſwiftneſs, ſatisfied with little Food, though without Water to it, and will eaſily carry a Man an hundred Miles a day, without any refreſhing. Nor are ſuch Horſes as they have, though but poor and lean, of leſs ſpeed, or leſs patient of travel; whom they feed twice a day with the Milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to out-go an *Oſtrich*. As now, ſo formerly, all Horſemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and ſpoil than to deal with Soldiers; as riding ſtark naked, and truſting rather to the ſwiftneſs of their Horſes, than any other reſiſtance, where they were oppoſed.

Their Language is the *Arabick*, ſo called from this Country, but not proper to this Country only; Spoken in all places where *Mahometaniſm* hath got any footing: The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick Offices of their Religion performed in it, and the Tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the *Latin*: But made the natural Language in *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, the three *Arabias*, *Ægypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdom of *Morocco*. A great extent, but ſhort of that which ſome give to it, who will have it ſpoken in two parts of the whole habitable World.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by S. *Paul*, of whoſe being in *Arabia*, after his Converſion he telleth us, *Gal.* 1. 17. to which the coming in of the *Sara-*

cens, gave a great increaſe, in the time of *Mavia* their Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian* I. *Moſes*, a Man of exemplary Piety, and famed for many Miracles, being created their firſt Biſhop; after more generally propagated over all the Country, by the King *Alamandarus*, *Anaſtaſius* then Reigning in the Eaſt. But long it had not been received, when ſupplanted by *Mahometaniſm*, which had its firſt beginning here; and hath ſo univerſally overſpread the whole face hereof, that now there are no Chriſtians left in all the Country, except only in *Eltor*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Fœlix*, in *Arabia Petræa*, the chief City of *Arabia Petræa*, and in two ſmall Monaſteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of ſo unequal and *heterogeneous* compoſition, that no general character can be given of it: and therefore we muſt look upon it as it ſtands divided into, 1 *Arabia Deſerta*. 2 *Arabia Petræa*. 3 *Arabia Fœlix*. And 4 the *Arabick* Iſlands.

1. *ARABIA DESERTA.*

ARABIA DESERTA (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the Eaſt with *Babylonia*; on the Weſt with parts of *Paleſtine* and *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Meſopotamia*, from which laſt it is parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by ſome parts of *Petræa*, and *Arabia Fœlix*.

It hath the name of *Deſerta*, from the vaſt Deſarts which are in it, and the deſolation thereof; call'd alſo by *Ariſtides*, *Aſpera*, from the roughneſs; by *Servius*, *inferior*, or the lower, in regard of the ſituation of it more towards the River; by *Lucian*, from the frequent Bottoms and Vallies in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the blackneſs or ſwarthineſs of the People, the word in *Hebrew* ſignifying as much as Sun-burnt; whence the People are by ſome Writers called *Kedereni*, and by *Pliny*, *Cedræi*.

But the common and moſt uſual name of it, is *Arabia Deſerta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a ſandy Country, full of vaſt Deſarts; in which all ſuch as Travel, uſe to carry their proviſions with them, and to guide themſelves in their Journey by the courſe of the Stars, tho' in ſome parts which lie near *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Fœlix*, it hath ſome few Towns, and thoſe reſorted to by Merchants. But this is only in thoſe parts; the reſidue of the Country being ſo deſolate and waſte, that one who had travelled in it, doth deſcribe it to be ſo wild a place, *Ut nec homines nec beſtiæ videantur, nec aves; imo, nec arbores, nec gramen aliquod, ſed non niſi montes ſaxoſi, attiſſimi, aſperrimi*: A Country, ſaith *Guilandinus Melchior*, where are found neither Men, nor Beaſts, no not ſo much as Birds or Trees, nor Graſs; nor Paſture, but only Stony, High, and moſt craggy Mountains.

The People for the moſt part uſed to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, Pſal. 120. v. 5. which they removed from place to place, as the Paſture for their Cattel failed them, taking no other care for houſes, than the boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of Weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scænitæ*, or Men dwelling in Tents; in which reſpect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians Kedarim*, from the like courſe of life which theſe *Kedareni* or *Arabians* lived: but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* alſo, where they uſe the ſame kind of living: Of whom more anon.

Yet notwithſtanding moſt memorable is this Country in Sacred Story, both for the dwelling-place of *Job* and the habitation of thoſe Wiſe-men, who came out of the Eaſt unto *Hieruſalem*, to Worſhip *Chriſt*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an Inhabitant here, appeareth by the ſituation of his dwelling, being in the Eaſt, as is ſaid in the ſtory of him, *cha.* 1. *v.* 3. that is to ſay, the Country lying Eaſt to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called ſimply by the name of the *Eaſt*, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Children of the Eaſt*, are meant expreſly the Inhabitants of *Arabia the Deſart*, who together with the *Midianites* and *Amalekites* oppreſſed thoſe of *Iſrael*. 2. By the ill neighbourhood which he found from the *Sabæans*, who inhabited in this part alſo; and of the *Chaldæans*, mentioned *v.* 17. the next Borderers to it: and 3. By the inconſequences which needs muſt follow, if we place him, as ſome do, in the Land of *Us*, near unto *Damaſcus*. For how improbable muſt it be for the *Sabæans*, of the *Red Sea*, or the *Perſian Gulf*, or the *Chaldæans* dwelling on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Job*'s Cattel, grazing near *Damaſcus*, the Countries being disjoyn'd by ſuch vaſt Deſarts, and huge Mountains, that it is impoſſible for any Strangers to paſs them, eſpecially with any numbers of Cattel, in reſpect of thoſe large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extream want of Water in all that paſſage? And how impoſſible muſt we think it, that the Penman of the Story of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the Holy Ghoſt, ſhould be ſo miſtaken as to place *Job*'s dwelling in the Eaſt, if the Land of *Us*, wherein he dwelt, bordered on *Damaſcus*, which lay not on the E. but on the N. of *Canaan*? A City called *Us*, or *Uz*, there was ſituate near *Damaſcus*, ſo called from *Us*, the Son of *Aram*, *Gen.* 10. 23. A Land of *Us* alſo among the *Edomites*, ſpoke of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *c.* 4. *v.* 21. ſo called from *Uz*, one of the Poſterity of *Eſau*, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 28. And finally a Land of *Us*, or *Uz*, ſo called from *Hus* the Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*, mentioned, *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that ſituate in this Tract, the Habitation and Poſſeſſion of that Righteous Man: The Country hereabouts being called *Auſitis*, and the People *Auſitæ*; tho' by miſtaking in the Tranſcripts, we find them named, 'Ασίτας or *Æſitæ*; in the fifth of *Ptolomy*. The like I ſay alſo of the Wiſe men, or *Magi*, who came to *Jeruſalem*, from the Eaſt, That they dwelt in this Country, where the ſaid *Ptolomy* placeth the City of *Saba*; according unto that fore-ſignified by the Royal *Pſalmiſt*, That *the Kings of* Arabia *and* Saba *ſhould bring their Gifts*, *Pſal.* 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the ſituation of the Country, lying Eaſt of *Canaan*; the Authority of thoſe Fathers who lived neareſt to the time of our Saviour's Birth, *Juſtin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the teſtimony of *Guilandinus Melchior* above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the People hereof, that they came neither out of *Meſopotamia*, or *Arabia Fœlix*, as many wiſe men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Deſart*, which City (ſaith he) when my ſelf was there, was, as I judge, called *Semiſcaſac*.

Cities of note in a Country ſo deſart and uninhabited, we muſt look for few; yet ſome there are, Inhabited by a more civil ſort of People, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to thoſe only who live roming and robbing up and down. *Ptolomy* gives the name of forty Cities and Villages in it (*Civitates & vicos* ſaith the *Latin*) the memory of moſt of which is now utterly periſhed. Thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1 *Sabe* or *Saba*, the Habitation of the *Sabæans* who pillaged *Job*; ſo called from *Sheba*, the Grandſon of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned, *Gen.* 25. 3. of whom, and of the reſt of that Line, it is ſaid, in ver. 6. of that chap. that *Abraham gave them Gifts, and ſent them away from* Iſaac, *Eaſtward, unto the Eaſt Country*, now called *Semiſcaſac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *Theman*, which poſſibly may be the Country of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the Viſitants of *Job*. As 3 *Shuah*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence ſirnamed the *Shubite*. 4 *Therſacas*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5 *Zagmais*, near the *Perſian* Gulf, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from *Miſhma*, the fourth Son of *Iſmael*. 6 *Phunton*, the 36*th*. 7 *Oboth*, the 37*th* Manſion of the Children of *Iſrael*. 8 *Rheganna*, another of thoſe named by *Ptolomy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of Note now being, more than *Semaſcaſac* before-named, I find nothing certain.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Conſtat, were the Poſterity of *Huz*, the Son of *Nachor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Ketturah*; of whoſe being ſetled in theſe parts, we had before good Teſtimony from the Book of God: and intermix'd with them lived ſome of the Deſcendants of *Iſmael* alſo. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their Original from *Adbeel* the Third, and the *Raubeni* from *Miſhmai* the fifth Son of *Iſmael*, as ſome ſay they do, I ſee no reaſon but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar*, the ſecond Son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the People of it. From them deſcended the Tribes or Nations ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, that is to ſay, the *Orcheni*, *Chaucabeni*, *Auſite*, *Maſoni*, *Materni*, and *Agræi*, beſides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already ſpecified. But being a disjointed People, not under any ſetled form of Government, not poſſeſſed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the Conquering, in regard of their Penury; or elſe Unconquerable, in reſpect of their Country, impaſſable for great Armies, by reaſon of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying ſo near to the *Chaldæans*, they followed the Fortunes of that Mighty Monarchy: Subjects unto it whilſt it ſtood, and after Tributaries unto thoſe who ſucceſſively poſſeſſed themſelves of the Supream Power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at Wealth as well as Honour in their Expedition: nor otherwiſe Subject to the *Turk* at this preſent time, than as they make uſe of him and his Protection in their frequent Robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire, becauſe the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

2. ARABIA PETRÆA.

ARABIA PETRÆA (now called *Baraab* and *Barthalaba*) hath on the Eaſt *Arabia Deſerta*, and part of *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*; on the Weſt the Iſthmus which joyneth *Africa* to *Aſia*, and part of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North *Paleſtine*; and on the South a long Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the Rockineſs of the Soil thereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called alſo by *Æthicus Sicaria*, but I know not why; by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally Tranſlated *Ethiopia*; by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia ſecunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the firſt. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathæa*, which Name it had from *Nabiaoth*, the Eldeſt of the Twelve Sons of *Iſmael*; though properly that name belongeth only to thoſe parts of it which lay next *Judæa*: Fruitful, though joyning to the Deſarts: and thus remembred by the Poet, as an Eaſtern Country.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabathæaque regna receſſit.
Eurus unto the Eaſt did fly,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Country much of the ſame Nature with the other, but in ſome parts thereof more fertile, if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flouriſhing with variety of Trade and Traffick. But for the moſt part full of untravellable Deſarts, except to thoſe which carry their Proviſions with them for fear of ſtarving, and go in great Companies, or *Caravans* for fear of Robbing: and yet much Travelled by Merchants who Traffick into *Ægypt* and *Babylonia*; the Commodities whereof they lay on Camels, which are the Ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas the Deſarts. For upon one of the Camels, they will lay ordinarily 600 and ſometimes 1000 pound weight: yet not afford him Water above once in four days, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occaſion. So that the Camel carrying ſo great a burden, and ſeldom fewer than 500 going in one Voyage, the Merchant, if he eſcapeth Robbing, makes a rich return. Of theſe Deſarts the moſt memorable are thoſe of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the *Iſraelites* ſo long wandred, not beautified with Graſs, nor adorn'd with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furniſhed with Water, but by Rain or Miracle.

The People of it for the moſt part, deſcended of the Sons of *Chus* and *Iſmael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*, deſcending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalakites*, deſcended probably from *Amalek*, the Grandſon of *Eſau*, mentioned *Gen.* 3. 6. but all united at laſt in the name of *Saracens*. This name derived, as ſome think, from *Sarra*, ſignifying a Deſart, and *Saken*, which ſignifieth to Inhabit, becauſe they live for the moſt part in theſe Deſart places: as others ſay, from *Sarak*, ſignifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This laſt moſt ſuitable to their nature, and beſt liked by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab Elſarack*, i. e. λῃστικοὶ νομαδικοὶ, *quod rapinis victitent*. So he, in his ſecond Book de *Emend. Tem.* A People not reckoned in the former time till made remarkable by their Conqueſt of a great part of the World, but always counted Warlike and Martial Men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*. ‘The ‘*Saracens* (ſaith he) whom we are neither to wiſh for ‘our Friends nor Enemies, are a Martial People half ‘naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Caſſocks, ‘ranging up and down on Camels and ſwift Horſes, as ‘well in peace as troubleſome times. Not uſed unto ‘the Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage; they wander from one place to another, without ‘houſe or home, or any conſtant dwelling place, or the ‘uſe of Laws; nor can they long endure the ſame, ‘either Air or Soil, the manner of their living being ‘always flitting like ravenous Kites; which if they ‘chance to ſpy a prey, ſnatch it up in their flight: or if ‘they chance to faſten on it as it lieth on the ground, ‘they make no long ſtay. Their food is chiefly upon ‘Veniſon, and ſtore of Milk, herbs which they gather ‘from the ground, and Birds which they get by Fowling; but altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their ‘Wives they only hire for a time, though for a ſhew of ‘Matrimony they preſent their Husbands with a Spear ‘and a Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with ‘them when they pleaſe. Both Sexes moſt extremely ‘given to Carnal Luſts, the Women as rambling as the ‘Men, Married in one place, and brought to bed in ‘another; leaving their Children where they fall, without more care of them. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1 that called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which paſſing through this Country endeth his Courſe in the *Red-Sea*. 2 *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent of Ægypt*, which riſing in this Country, and paſſing by the Borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better ſtored, and thoſe of eminent obſervation, as 1 Mount *Sinai* famous in all Ages for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monaſtery of *Maronites* on the Top thereof. The Hill ſo high, that both ſhores of the *Red-Sea* may be thence ſeen; but eaſie of aſcent, by reaſon of ſteps cut out of the Rock: which notwithſtanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monaſtery made an Epiſcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Biſhop thereof, to the Arch-Duke *Charles*, *Anno* 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had ſold all their Land, and that himſelf and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy veſſels, and take up Money on Uſury. Here is alſo a *Meſque*, or *Meſquit* of *Turks*, who reſort in Pilgrimage to this Hill as well as the Chriſtians. 2 Mount *Horeb*, where the *Iſraelites* worſhipped the molten Calf, about a mile and a half diſtant from Mount *Sinai*, but not ſo high: on the top of which is a Church alſo; and a Monaſtery of *Colories* or *Greek* Monks, at the bottom, exceeding Hoſpitable to Strangers, whom they entertain of free-coſt and cheerfully ſhew them all the places worth obſervation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy* called *Melany*, or the Black Mountains; the laſt now called *Oreb*. 3 Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at firſt called *Recem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Sela*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Beſt known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Sela*, before-mentioned, which ſignifies the ſame with the *Latin Petra*. A City of great note and ſtrength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-beel*; but in vain Beſieged by *Scaurus*, a *Roman* General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perſwaſion of *Antipater*, to take a Sum of Money and Raiſe the Siege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* ſpeed much better at it, his Soldiers being ſtill beat off in all their Aſſaults, the very next man to him ſlain with a Dart and himſelf forced to caſt away his Imperial Habit, and flie for his life; the Heavens themſelves, if *Dion* (who is never ſparing of the like Prodigies) may be believed, fighting againſt the *Romans* with Thunder and Lightning, Whirl-winds and Tempeſts, as often as they made any approaches to it: But in the end Subdued with the reſt of the Country. In ſuch eſteem, by reaſon of the ſtrength of it, by the Soldans of *Ægypt*, that they kept here their choiceſt Treaſures; and in the courſe of the Holy Wars, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Chriſtians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Paleſtine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor*, before-mentioned, the Town is ſituate. The Metropolis of the Province when firſt under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latin* Biſhop, when the Chriſtians of the Weſt were the Lords thereof. 2 *Boſra*, ſaid to have been built by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, becauſe by him repaired, when decayed and Ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This laſt moſt certain, and for ſuch teſtified by this ancient Inſcription, in an ancient Coin, *COL. BOSTRAIN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ.* Memorable alſo for the Birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexander*'s next Succeſſors, by whom it was cauſed for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the Metropolitan Dignity removed hither from *Petra* ſomewhat before the time of *Juſtinian*, but by whom I find not; and for being the Epiſcopal See of *Titus* (hence ſirnamed) *Boſtrenus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the Apoſtate. A City of as great Antiquity as the moſt that be, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is ſtill remaining, and well known by the name of *Buſſereth*. 3 *Elama*, on a Bay of the *Red-Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elamiticus*. 4 *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderneſs of *Paran* ſeems to take its name 5 *Berenice*, ſo called from ſome of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-geber*, one of the Stations or Encampings of the Children of *Iſrael*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary Harbour for his Ships, which Sailed to *Ophir* in the *Eaſt-Indies*. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalakites*, giving name to the Wilderneſs or Deſart of *Sur*, coming cloſe up to it: remarkable for the firſt Encampings of the Tribes of *Iſrael* after their miraculous paſſage over the *Red-Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalakites*, whom he ſmote from *Havilah* to this place. 7 *Havilah*, ſo called from *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, being the fartheſt border of theſe *Amalekites*, and *Iſmaelites*, on the Gulf of *Perſia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8 *Madian*, ſo called of *Madian*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Ketura*, ſituate towards the *Red Sea* alſo; the City of *Jethro*, whoſe Daughter *Zipporah* was the Wife of *Moſes*; who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by God's ſecret Providence directed hither: that keeping the Flocks of *Jethro* in the Deſarts adjoyning, he might acquaint himſelf with the ways and paſſages through which he was after to lead the Houſe of *Iſrael*. 9 *Rephaim*, the Encamping place of *Moſes*, where he diſcomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the ſaid *Jethro* came to him with his Wife and Children, adviſing him to eaſe himſelf of ſome part of that burden, which the Government of ſo great a People would elſe bring upon him. 10 *Kadeſh-barnea*, the ſtation of the Tribes, when the ſpies which were ſent to diſcover the Land of *Canaan* returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Propheteſs. And 11 *Thara*, no leſs memorable for the Mutiny and Puniſhment of *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembred, *Num.* 33. 27. But others will have 12 *Mackheloth*, mentioned *v.* 25. of that Chapter, to be the ſtage of that action, the Scriptures being ſilent in this particular. The reſt of their Encamping places, being moſt of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpoſe, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do alſo ſome of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Ptolomy*, as Cities of this Province, but ſpoken of already in our Deſcription of *Paleſtine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Midianites*, the *Iſmaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiſcuouſly together, are ſometimes uſed for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joſeph* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites* and *Iſmaelites*, *Gen.* 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moſes*, who queſtionleſs was a Daughter of *Midian*, being by *Miriam* and *Aaron* called an *Ethiopian* or *Chuſite*, as in way of Reproach, *Num.* 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and ſuch as had ſome ſpecial engagement with or againſt the Children of *Iſrael*, we will conſider them by themſelves, till we have brought them into one Body, by the name of *Chuſites*, *Æthiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the ſame.

And firſt the *MADIANITES* were ſuch of the Poſterity of *Madian*, the Son of *Abraham* by *Ketura*, who preſerving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themſelves from all communion with the Idolatrous *Canaanites*, at ſuch time as the reſt of their brethren did aſſociate with them; and ſetled themſelves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good Offices to the Children of *Iſrael*, as they paſſed through their Country. Of theſe the *Kenites* were a Branch, as appeareth, *Judg.* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Prieſt of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: ſome of which turned *Proſelytes* and dwelt with the *Iſraelites* in *Canaan*; of which Race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who ſlew *Siſera*, was undoubtedly one. The reſt, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former Courteſies) to withdraw themſelves from them; leſt they ſhould periſh with them in the ſame deſtruction. Afterwards we hear little of either People, loſing their name in the greater Nation of the *Iſraelites*, with whom intermingled, or paſſing with them in the ſame common notion of *Arabians*, *Chuſites*, or *Ethiopians*.

Secondly, nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; deſcended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grandſon of *Eſau* (though I deny not but there are ſome reaſons to be urged againſt that opinion) and planted on the backs of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or Out-work. A people miſchievouſly bent againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Eſau* their Fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently ſet on at *Rephidim*, when they ſuppoſed them ſpent and wearied with their flight from *Ægypt*. And though diſcomfited in that Battel, yet they continued in their malice againſt the Tribes, joyning firſt with the *Canaanites* againſt them when they were in their March; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well ſetled in their new Poſſeſſion. A provocation ſo ill taken by the Lord of Hoſts, becauſe unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his reſolution from the time of the Battel of *Rephidim* to put *out the Remembrance of* Amalek *from under Heaven, Exod.* 17. 14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Iſrael* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to ſet upon them, and to ſlay both Man and Woman, Infant and Suckling, yea, their Sheep and Cattle. But ſome of them eſcaped this ſlaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ranſacked; but being by him followed on the firſt Intelligence, they were eaſily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their Malice yet ſurvived their Power; and what they could not do by their Forces, they endeavoured to effect by joyning with the *Ammonites, Moabites*, and other Enemies of *David*, in their Wars againſt him. And this was *ultimam conam*, one of the laſt flaſhes of their dying light; nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times ſucceeding, moſt of the Nation being worn out, and thoſe few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof alſo diſpoſſeſſed by the *Simeonites*, during the Reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, the *ISMAELITES*, deſcending from *Iſmael* the Son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, ſpread themſelves over a great part of theſe three *Arabia*'s: all of them either Thieves or Merchants; Trading to *Ægypt* in Spicery, and Balm, and Myrrh, or Robbing thoſe which Traded in the like Commodities. Called alſo *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5. 10. *Pſal.* 83. 6, &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient Writers. A People for the moſt part of a vagabond and roguiſh life, more given to Spoil than any honeſt courſe of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be Armed againſt them; ſo verifying the prediction which was given to *Iſmael*, that he ſhould be a wild Man, *having his hand againſt every man, and every man's hand againſt him.* S. *Hierom* ſo conceives that Prophecy to have been accompliſhed. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens* (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were moſt generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made ſuch foul havock in the World, and were eſteemed the common Enemies of all civil Nations. Never ſo governable in their beſt and moſt orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one Body with the *Chuſites*, and the reſt of thoſe Nations: and then no further, than it ſtood with their luſt or liking.

Fourthly, As for the *Chuſites*, tho' they permitted the Nations above-ſpecified, to inhabit in thoſe Deſarts and waſt places, which themſelves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of moſt power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deſerta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the Old Teſtament by the name of *Ethiopia*, firſt by the Septuagint, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latine*, the Vulgar Tranſlation of the Bible, and almoſt all the other Tranſlations at this day extant. And rendred right enough at firſt, as in all times ſince, tho' by ſome miſtaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* than that in *Affrick*, have transferred thither all thoſe Actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The Septuagint, no doubt, were not ſo ignorant of the Affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Maſters. And he that looks into the Hiſtory of *Herodotus*, who liv'd 150 years before that Tranſlation, will find, that by the *Grecians* they were called *Ethiopians* and called ſo queſtionleſs from the ſelf ſame reaſon; that is to ſay, the ſwarthineſs, or Sun-burntneſs of their Complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Affrick* were. that name being framed from the *Greek* word, Αἴθω, ſignifying to burn; and Ὄψ, a Countenance, by reaſon of their tawny and Sunburnt Countenances. For, ſpeaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, ‘Ἀραβίων δὲ καὶ Αἰθιόπων τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου οἰκημένων ἦρχε ‘Ἀρσάμης, &c. *Arſames* (ſaith he) was Captain of the ‘*Arabians* (he meaneth the *Troglidites*) and *Ethiopians* ‘which are beyond *Ægypt*: but the Eaſtern *Ethiopians* ‘were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from ‘the other in the ſtructure of their Bodies, but their ‘hair and voice only; the Eaſtern *Ethiopians* wearing ‘their hair ſmooth, thoſe of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops* ‘*of Aſia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops of* ‘*Africa* were arrayed with the Skins of Beaſts. Here then we have an *Aſian Ethiopia* in the Time of *Herodotus*; the ſame acknowledged by *Pauſanias* an old *Greek* Writer, and by *Philoſtratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: The firſt amongſt the *Seres*, in the *North of Aſia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the *Eaſt*. Nor doth *Æthicus*, one of the old *Coſmographers*, publiſhed by *Simlerus*, ſhoot more near the Mark, who ſpeaking of the River *Tigris*, ſaith, That it burieth it ſelf, and runneth under the Ground in *Ethiopia*. Which though *Simler* doth interpret of theſe parts of *Arabia*; yet queſtionleſs that Author meaneth it of the Country about *Mount Taurus*, where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having paſſed under thoſe vaſt Mountains, riſeth up again.

But what need further ſearch be made to find out the ſituation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out ſo plainly in the Holy Scriptures? For when it is ſaid of *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moſes*, that ſhe was an *Ethiopian* Woman, *Numb.* 12. 1. who is well known to have been a Native of this Country; and when it is ſaid in 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. *That the Lord ſtirred up againſt Jehoram the Spirit of the Philiſtims, and of the Arabians that were near the Ethiopians*; it muſt needs be that the *Ethiopia* there ſpoken of, muſt be conterminous to the reſt of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Country wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the Mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *That he would lay waſte the Land of Egypt, from the Tower of Syene, even unto the Borders of Ethiopia, Cap.* 29. 10. that is to ſay, from one end thereof unto the other, it followeth neceſſarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, muſt be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Cuſh*, as the bound of *Ægypt* moſt remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all Geographers acknowledge to be in the extreme South parts thereof towards the Cataracts of *Nilus*. For to expound it, as ſome do, of *Æthiopia* in *Africk*, on the Borders whereof *Syene* ſtood; and ſtood ſo indifferently betwixt it and *Ægypt*, that *Stephanus*, an Ancient Writer, makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture ſpeak plain Nonſenſe: As plain as if a Man ſhould ſay, That the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the Sword hath ranged over all *England*, from *Barwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Æthiopia* of the Old Teſtament to be near the *Philiſtims* on the one ſide, and the Land of *Ægypt* on the other; ſo may we find it to be bounded alſo on the *Eaſt*, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: The River *Gihon*, which is ſaid to compaſs the whole Land of *Æthiopia*, (or the Land of *Cuſh*) *Gen.* 2. 13. being no other than a Branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the Tranſlation of the Septuagint in reading *Chuſites*, or the Land of *Chus* by *Æthiopia*, needs no ſuch alteration or emendation as ſome men ſuppoſe. The Miſtakes (whereof there have been many) which riſe from hence, not being to be charged on them, or on their Tranſlation, but on the Ignorance of the Reader, or Error of ſuch Expoſitors, who dreaming of no other *Æthiopia* than of that in *Africk*, have made the Scripture,

ture ſpeak of ſuch things as it never means, and carried theſe *Chuſites* into the *African Æthiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be ſaid, that the Poſterity of *Chus*, being ſtraitned in their own Poſſeſſions, or willing to ſeek new Adventures, might have croſſed over the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but ſeven Miles broad where narroweſt) and mingling with the Sons of *Ludim* on the other ſide, might either give the Name of *Æthiopians* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forward with the ſtory, the firſt great action attributed to theſe *Chuſites*, or *Arabian Ethiops*, incorporated with the reſt of thoſe mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerah* the King hereof, againſt *Aſa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a Million, and 300 Chariots of War (the greateſt Army ever read of in unqueſtioned ſtory) but for all that diſcomfited by the Lord of Hoſts, on the Prayers of *Aſa*; and all the Spoil of that huge Army carried unto *Hieruſalem*. After this, *Tirhakah*, another of theſe *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Aſſyrian* Kingdom might prove unto him, prepared a puiſſant Army againſt *Senacherib*, then beſieging *Libna*, threatning the Conqueſt of all *Judah*, and invading *Ægypt*: upon the news of whoſe approach, *Senacherib*'s Forces, which were even upon the gaining of *Peluſium*. the Gate of *Egypt*, were fain to diſlodge and provide for their ſafety. For tho' *Herodotus* calls *Senacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Aſſyria*, yet was he Maſter only of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Iſrael*, being no more than ſome few Cities of *Petræa*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called ſo only in reſpect of thoſe parts of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*, which were ſometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is ſaid. What part they after took in the great War betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Ægypt*, is not hard to ſay. For beſides that the ſame Reaſons of State, obliging them to ſide with the *Ægyptian*, were ſtill in force; their giving *Necho* leave to paſs thro' their Country with his Army, to invade the *Babylonians* on the Banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirhakah* and *Zera* were Kings of this *Aſian*, and not the *African Ethiopia*, is moſt clear and evident; partly in regard the Kings of *Ægypt* would never ſuffer ſuch huge Armies to paſs through the whole length of their Dominions: but principally becauſe 'tis ſaid in the holy Scriptures, that *Aſa* having overthrown that vaſt Army of *Zerah*, ſmote all the Cities about *Gerar*, which formerly had belonged unto theſe *Philiſtims*, but were then poſſeſſed by theſe *Chuſites* and their Aſſociates. After this, either as Confederates, or Subjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his War on *Greece*: and like enough it was that in *Alexander*'s March from *Ægypt* towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted to him, as did all the other Countreys through which he paſſed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, ſent *Athenæus* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an Ambuſh was diſcomfited by them; *Demetrius* the Son of *Antigonus* thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to ſue for Peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* Race in *Syria*, we find them Governed by Kings of their own, moſt of them called by the name of *Aretas*, of which one was of ſpecial note in the declining Fortunes of the *Selucidans*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Country; and being a ſtickler in the Wars of *Jewry*, in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth King of the Race of the *Maccabees*, to whom, at the requeſt of *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on thoſe hopes was poſſeſſed of *Medaba*, and other Towns of good Importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jewry*, to which, as parts of *Ituræa*, and anciently poſſeſſed by the Tribes of *Iſrael*, he might make ſome claim. Another there was of the ſame name, and of no leſs power, whom we find to have been Warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the Battel of *Actium*, and for the moſt part Vanquiſhed by him; and finally a third of more power than either, mentioned by S. *Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damaſcus*. In the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Fortunes, the King hereof having firſt aided *Mithridates* and *Tygranes* in the War againſt 'em, ſubmitted themſelves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to them than *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* alſo, being then in *Judæa*. Firſt vanquiſhed by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Auguſtus*; but the Victory not improved to an abſolute Conqueſt, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his perſonal preſence, and partly by the Valour and good Fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquiſhed, and brought into the Form of a *Roman* Province: But ſo, that they had Kings of their own, (Vaſſals and *Feudataries* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the riſe of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3. *ARABIA FELIX.*

ARABIA FELIX, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Perſian*; on the Weſt, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North with a long Ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Deſerta* and *Petræa*; and on the South with the boundleſs Ocean. Environ'd on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impaſſable Mountains; in Situation and Figure much reſembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the Fertility and happy condition of it, being eſteemed the moſt fruitful and pleaſant Country in all *Aſia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balſamum*, *Frankincenſe*, *Gold*, and *Precious Stones*: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincenſe*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a ſtory, that when *Alexander* in his Adoleſcenſy or Boyage, was Sacrificing to the Gods, and caſt into the Fire with both Hands, great ſtore of *Frankincenſe* and *Myrrhe*, *Leonidas* his Governor, bid him be more ſparing of thoſe precious and dear Commodities, till he was Maſter of the Country in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembring, when he had brought almoſt all the Eaſt under his Obedience, he ſent unto *Leonidas* a Ship Laden with *Frankincenſe*. bidding him from thenceforth to ſerve the Gods more Liberally. But as well for the reaſon of this adjunct, as a more perfect Character and Deſcription of it, take this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who deſcribes it thus: ‘On the Eaſt and South hereof ‘(ſaith he) are the happy *Arabians*: ſo called becauſe ſo ‘Rich in Corn; as well as plenteous in Cattel, Vines, ‘and Odoriferous Spices of all kinds; ſhut up betwixt ‘the *Red Sea*, and the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo acquainted ‘with all Bleſſings, which either Element can afford: ‘well furniſh'd with Roads and quiet Harbours for Ship‘ping, the Towns of Trade and Merchandize ſtanding ‘very thick; the retiring Houſes of the Kings paſſing neat ‘and ſumptuous. Beſides moſt wholſom Fountains of ‘medicinal waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers ‘very clear and pure, and a temperature of Air, exceed‘ing healthy; ſo that whoſoever conſidereth all things ‘aright, may well conclude, that there is nothing want‘ing to the accompliſhment of its felicity in the higheſt ‘degree. So *Ammianus Marcellinus*. To which we need add nothing more to ſet forth its happineſs, than that *Danæus* in his Comment on St. *Auguſtin*'s *Enchiridion ad Laurentium*, is perſwaded that it was the *local* place of *Paradiſe*. *Dicitur* (ſaith he) *Paradiſi terreſtris Regio pars quædam eſſe* Arabiæ, *quæ nunc dicitur* Fœlix. What is here ſaid of the Fertility and happy ſtate of *Arabia Fœlix*, is not found true in any tolerable degree by the latter Travellers. Nor doth it ſeem poſſible to have ever been otherwiſe. All that part of it that lies between *Nageran*, *Oman*, *Sochar*, and *Babarim* for thirty two days Journey in the middle of *Arabia Fælix* is Sandy, Mountainous, deſolate, and for want of Water very difficult to paſs over, ſaith the *Nubian* Geographer: The people on the *Eaſtern* Coaſt about *Maſcate* are very poor, even to extremity; and if the reſt be like them, it is one of the unhappieſt Countries in the World. *Tavernier*, p. 94. All that Part that lies towards the *Red-Sea*, on the *Weſt* ſide as far as *Mecca* is found by the Caravans ſo wretchedly barren, that every Year they are forced to carry their Proviſions with them, or the moſt part of the Paſſengers would ſtarve in the Journey; ſo that all the Fertility of this large Country is confined to the *S. W.* Angle of this Country, which by the Map will appear the beſt watered with Rivers; and perhaps, to the Countries watered by thoſe Rivers, which are by no means ſufficient to maintain the Inhabitants, the Middle Spaces between theſe Rivers being either Sandy Deſarts, or Mountainous. So *Spain* by the Ancients celebrated as a Country of wonderful Fertility, but not found ſo in this Age, but as to the far greateſt part of it very barren, and not conceivable how it could ever be otherwiſe.

Now I think it is not probable the Ancients were ſo much deceived, or willingly deceived us in theſe Accounts, but rather that either the Earth by long uſage is exhauſted to that degree, that it can never be repaired; or elſe that the people of theſe latter Ages are leſs induſtrious than their Anceſtors. A Fruitful Country may become uninhabitable by the neglect of it, for want of draining, ſtubbing, and clearing, as a great part of *Ægypt*, *Campania di Roma* and *Syria* have, which were the beſt peopled parts of the Old World, but are now deſolate.

Again, A Barren Country being filled with Induſtrious people, every Inch of it by great labour and induſtry is made like a Garden, to produce what the Earth could never yield without that Extraordinary Culture; yet Travellers do commonly celebrate the Fertility of it, if they find it full of Fruits, without conſidering what it is in its own Nature, nor how much pains the People have ſpent to make it ſuch. On the contrary, in *America*, where the Lands have lyen untilled ever ſince the Creation of the World, covered with Woods and Buſhes (the firſt State of *Spain* and *Arabia*) there is very little or no Barren Lands: The Graſs that grow, rotting for the moſt part on the Earth, cover it with a Coat of Muck of a conſiderable thickneſs, but when our Planters have for ſome time tilled it, and taken off that firſt Luſtre, it is by no Art to be reduced to its former Fertility. *Arabia* about the Seventh and Eighth Century conquered ſo many Countries, that the far greateſt part of the Inhabitants of it were drawn out in Armies and Colonies into *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Perſia* and *Paleſtine*; the Remainder that ſtayed in it for ſome Ages, lived on the naturally Fruitful Lands, and in the mean time loſt much of the Induſtry and Agriculture of their Anceſtors; ſo the Earth not being perfectly deſolate, as *America* upon the Matter is, nor well tilled, has put on quite another Face than it appeared with to the Ancients. The Reader may pardon this Digreſſion, becauſe it will raiſe ſome uſeful Thoughts in him, and ſhew the danger of following Ancient Accounts, without conſidering the Preſent State of Countries. But it hath other Names beſides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themſelves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ayaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that Tongue ſignifieth the *South*, or *Southern* Region. By *Virgil* it is nam'd *Panchaia quaſi tota dehiſcens*, becauſe of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the Sands thereof, though by him much extolled alſo for its plenty of *Frankincenſe*.

Totaque thuriferis Panchaia *pinguis arena*.
Famed are the whole *Panchaian* Lands,
For Rich and Incenſe-bearing Sands.

The people anciently, though more civil than the reſt of the *Arabians*, had yet many ſtrange and barbarous Cuſtoms. Adultery amongſt them was puniſhed with Death as in other places; but only he was held an Adulterer, which enjoyed any that was not his own Kinſwoman, be ſhe his Siſter or his Mother; and ſo they kept themſelves in their own Families; Community of Wives or Women was eſteemed no Crime. And of this there is a Tale in *Strabo*, that the King of this Country had fifteen Sons, and but one Daughter, who according to the Cuſtoms hereof was the Common Wife of all her Brethren; every of which had a Staff of like making, which when he went in unto his Siſter he did leave at the Door; and by ſo doing did forbid entrance unto the reſt, till it were removed. The young Lady, wearied with a continual exceſs of Dalliance, ſecretly procured a Staff like unto the reſt, which when ſhe was deſirous to prohibit their acceſſes to her, ſhe left at her Chamber-door; and by that means did many times enjoy her deſired privacy. At laſt it hapned that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Siſter's Lodgings, where finding a Staff before the Door, and knowing that he had his Brethren in one place together, he accuſed her of Adultery: But the Truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and their Viſits afterwards reſtrained. Of Dead Bodies they took no care, not ſo much as of their Chiefs or Princes; but left them to the cuſtody of the next Dunghill. They bragged much of their deſcent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all Sciences and Arts, as diſparagements to ſo great Nobility. Commendable only in the keeping of their Faith and Promiſes, and in that moſt punctual. Much of the ſame Condition are the preſent Inhabitants, ſave that leſs faithful in their Contracts. And by their Law reſtrained from medling with the Wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themſelves to the grazing of Cattel, and the reſt to Merchandize, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day all Mechanical Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongſt them, of which but few, and thoſe diſpoſed of in Gariſons: boaſting of their Nobility, and glorying in nothing more than their greateſt ſhame; namely, that the Falſe Prophet *Mahomet* was their Countryman; whoſe Impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Country, ſome account the *Phœnix*, which growing old burneth her ſelf in a Neſt of Spices, and from thence a Young one ingengred, one of them only at a time; which after a life of five or ſix hundred Years, thus reneweth her Kind. But this Tradition, queſtioned in Former Times by *Pliny* and ſome others, is now proved a Fiction; contrary both unto Divinity and Natural Reaſon: Though ſome of the Fathers made uſe of it as an Argument to prove the Reſurrection againſt the *Gentiles*, by whom the Tradition was believed. More common, but of no leſs obſervation, is the *Oſtrich*, a Bird which ſwalloweth all it findeth, be it Stones or Iron. They delight chiefly in the Deſarts, in the Sands whereof they lay their Eggs, and then forgetting where they left them, ſit on thoſe they meet next. In that reſpect accounted for a ſimple Fowl, tho otherwiſe of Wit enough to preſerve themſelves; keeping in Flocks, and oftentimes with their Fearful Skreeches affrighting Paſſengers, to whom they do appear afar off like a Troop of Horſemen. Their Wings, too little for their Bodies, ſerve them not for flight, but to run more ſpeedily; and by that means not eaſily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their skins, which the People ſell unto the Merchant with their Feathers on them. Nor of leſs note is the *Frankincenſe*, though of common uſe; almoſt peculiar to this Country, and here but to thoſe parts thereof which were formerly poſſeſſed by the *Sabæi*: the wood out of which the Gum proceedeth, being about 100 Miles long and fifty broad; gathered only in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Country is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the Principal whereof are ſaid by *Ptolomy* to be 1 *Betius*, 2 *Prion*, 3 *Harman*, 4 *Lar*; but the Modern names thereof I find not. Many fair Lakes and ſtore of large capacious Bays on each coaſt of the Sea. 1 *Sinus Elaniticus*, 2 *Sachalites*, 3 *Leanites*, 4 *Sinus Magorum*, 5 *Sinus Jebthyphagorum*, 6 *Meſſanites*, 7 *Sacer Sinus*, or the Holy Bay; and 8 the Road or Naval Station called *Neogilla*. Mountains of moſt Note; 1 Thoſe which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf. 2 *Cabubuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf* of *Arabia*, 3 *Hippus*, 4 *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence ſo denominated, 5 *Climax*, 6 The Mountains called *Didymi*, &c.

Towns of note in ancient time it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongſt thoſe many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea begirting it for the ſpace of 3000 Miles and upwards. Of moſt Importance and Obſervation in thoſe times were, 1 *Zebrum*, 2 *Badeo*, 3 *Rhabana*, 4 *Carman*, 5 *Manambis*, 6 *Sabæ*. The *Nubian* Geographer ſaith, in his time it was called *Mareb*, but was then Ruined; of this City ſaith he, was *Belcquis* the Wife of *Solomon*: this City ſtood on the Brink of the Ocean, but about five days Journey North, 7 *Ave*; The Royal Seats of ſo many ſeveral Kingdoms, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the Title of *Regia*. Then there are, 1 *Maocoſmos*, 2 *Meara*, 3 *Negara*, 4 *Sabbatha*, 5 *Mapha*, and 6 *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of ſome ſeveral Nations. Amongſt the Ports he reckoneth, 1 *Soſippus*, 2 *Trulla*, 3 *Tretos*, 4 *Cryptus*, 5 *Itamos*, and 6 *Moſcha*. Among the moſt noted Empories or Towns of Traffick, 1 *Muſa*, 2 *Oceanus*, 3 *Arabia*, 4 *Cane*. Beſides which, there are ſome which do preſerve the memory of their firſt Plantations, as 1 *Saphta*, upon the *Perſian* Gulf, ſo from *Sabta*, the firſt Son of *Chus*. 2 *Rhegama*, or *Regma* (as the *Greek* Copies of *Ptolomy* have it) ſo named from *Regma* or *Raama* the Sixth Son; on the ſame Gulf alſo, 3 *Sabe*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*. And 4 *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, ſo named from *Sheba* the eldeſt Son of the ſame *Chus*, from which the Rich and Potent Nation of the *Sabæans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we ſhall take more particular notice of ſome that follow. 1 *Muſa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the *Red Sea*, frequented anciently by the *Ethiopian* and *Ægyptian* Merchants, who there laded their Ships with *Frankincenſe*, *Myrrhe*, *Spices*, and other commodities of this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, Corn, Wine, Ointments, Purple Dies, &c. 2 *Saba*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabæans*, particularly of that Queen ſo memorized in holy Scripture: called in the Old Teſtament the Queen of *Saba*; from her Country and Place of Dwelling; In the New Teſtament the *Queen of the South*, becauſe of the Southern Situation of it in reſpect of *Judæa*: ſaid there to come from the furtheſt parts of the World, becauſe there was no part of the World which lay South to the Country of the *Sabæans*, over which ſhe Reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agatharcides* to be ὡς κάλλιςον τῶν κατ᾽ τὴν Ἀραβίαν, the moſt beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the Rich and Potent Nation of the *Sabæans*: Rich in all the Excellencies of Nature, eſpecially in *Frankincenſe*, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a Wood of about 100 Miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this ſweet Gum appropriated ſolely to it. Sabæi Arabum *propter thura clariſſimi*; as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis eſt thurea virga* Sabæis, as it is in *Virgil*: and finally, — *Thuriferos, fœlicia regna*, Sabæos, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called alſo *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in ſome ancient Writers, 3 *Saphar*, more towards the *Perſian* Gulf, on the South ſide of the Mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeritæ*; Adorned in times of Chriſtianity with a beautiful Temple, 4 *Sabatha*, or *Sabota*; as *Pliny* calleth it, ſeated about the midſt of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty Hill, from whence it had a gallant Proſpect on the Fields adjoyning: anciently large and populous, and ſtrongly Fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the Walls; the Principal Conſecrated unto *Sabis*, the God of their Nation, to whom they Offered the Tythe of their *Frankincenſe*, *ubi decimas Deo quem* Sabin *vocant*, *menſura non pondere capiunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But theſe, and almoſt all the reſt being grown out of knowledge, there have riſen in their rooms, 1 *Egra*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*, near the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Agra*, by the *Arabians* themſelves *Algiar*: The Port-Town to *Medina*, from which, about three days Journey diſtant, 2 *Jathrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the way betwixt *Algiar* and *Medina*, the Birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom Fortified with a Mud-wall, as his firſt place of retreat in the beginning of his Fortunes, 3 *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talnabi*, corruptly for *Medinathalnabi*, that is to ſay, the City of the Prophet, ſo called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile Impoſtor, which is there to be ſeen; although not in ſuch an Iron Coffin, or drawn up to the Roof of the Temple, by vertue of an Adamant there placed, as ſome deliver. The Town ſituate in a deſolate and Barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petræa*, but of great Trade, Rich, and well Inhabited: The Sepulchre of that falſe Prophet drawing thither a continual reſort of Pilgrims. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 Lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb encloſed with an Iron Grate, but of no Magnificence or Beauty: covered with a Carpet of green Velvet, which is ſent hither yearly by the *Grand Signior*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable ſhreds or pieces, and ſold for Relicks by the Prieſts (to ſuch as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. About ſixty Miles Eaſt from *Medina*, lies the City of *Taief*, or *Taref*, which, ſaith the *Nubian* Geographer, *Pag.* 47. though ſmall, is very populous, ſeated in a well watered Soil, and abounding in Fruits, and eſpecially Grapes, which are dried and Tranſported to *Medina*; from hence is brought moſt of the Diet eaten at *Medina*. It ſtands upon Mount *Ghazuan*, which is the higheſt, coldeſt, and moſt fruitful Mountain in all *Arabia*, 4 *Cufa*, the ordinary Reſidence of the firſt *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperial Seat to *Damaſcus* in *Syria*; and after that the uſual place of meeting for Conſultation in Affairs of State, relating to the Peace of this Country, and ſafety of this People; as Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortus Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Perſian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*, 5 *Meccha*, ſuppoſed to be the *Macbara* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate in the like barren Soil, 270 miles from *Medina*, but of far greater Reſort and Traffick: The whole wealth in a manner of this Country, together with the Commodities of *Perſia* and *India*, being firſt brought hither, and from hence on Camels backs tranſported into *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and other parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire. Unwalled, and either for that cauſe, or for concealment of their Fopperies from the eyes of the Chriſtians, it is made death for any Chriſtian to come within five miles of it. Utterly deſtitute of water, but what they keep in Ciſterns, from one ſhower of Rain to another, or elſe brought thither with great charge; otherwiſe pleaſantly ſeated, Rich, and containing about 6000 Families: Every year viſited with three *Caravans*, or Troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damaſcus*, and *Grand Cayre*; who having done their Buſineſs and Devotions there, go afterwards in Pilgrimage to *Medina* alſo, to the great enriching of both places, 6 *Ziden*, the Haven-Town to *Meccha*, from which diſtant about forty miles, ſituate on the *Red Sea*, in a Sandy Soil, unwalled, and much expoſed to Wind and Weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great reſort. 7 *Zebit*, now the Metropolis of the Country, ſituate about half a days Journey from the *Red-Sea*, in a large Plain, between too Mountains; a Riveret of the ſame name paſſing by it: well Traded for Sugars, Spice and Fruits: The ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, by whom taken not long after. This City is called by the *Nubian* Geographer, *Zabid*, and *Zebid*, and is placed twenty days Journey from *Mecca*, p. 50. He ſaith it is a vaſt, rich, populous City, and the Center of the Trade of *Ethiopia*, *Ægypt*, and *China*, p. 24. It ſtands fifty miles from the *Red Sea*, 132 from *Saana* to the *S. W.* In a temperate Air and a fruitful Soil. 8 *Eltor*, a Port-Town of this Country, and the only Town where the Chriſtians are ſuffered to Inhabit. 9 *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, near the Streights called *Babel Mandel*; ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing in ſituation with the famous Empory by him him called *Arabia*. The faireſt Town of the whole *Peninſula*, of great ſtrength, both by Art and Nature, well Traded, and well Fortified, having a large capacious Haven, ſeldom without good ſtore of Shipping, and containing to the number of 6000 Perſons. Once a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, but Treacherouſly Surprized by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1538. and therewith all the reſt of the Country: made afterwards the Seat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebet*, are ſuppoſed to be no fewer than 3000 *Timariots*. The *Turks* were not long Maſters of *Aden* before the *Arabians* Revolted, and put themſelves under the Protection of the King of *Mocba*, a City on the ſame Gulf, more to the North. The *Nubian* Geographer ſaith it was in his time a ſmall, but a Celebrated City, being a Port much frequented by the Ships which Sail'd on the *Red Sea* and the Ocean, and a kind of Center of the Eaſtern and Weſtern Trade. On the back of it, but at a diſtance lay a Mountain which reached to the ſaid Seas, and had only two Paſſages, one to the Eaſt and the other to the Weſt. 10 *Oran*, The Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11 *Thema*, or *Theman*, the ſame, I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, ſituate more within the Land: affirmed by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, ſirnamed *Teudelenſis*, to be a Town of fifteen miles ſquare, but to have within the walls thereof a great quantity of Ground for Tillage. 12 *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Country. 13 *Hor*, on the Point, or Promontory, called *Chorodemus*, a Gariſon not long ſince of the Kings of *Ormus*, 14 *Muskabat*, on the *Perſian* Gulf near the point of Land called *Cape Rozelgate*: oppoſite to *Surrat* in the *Eaſt-India*, and poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who have Fortified it with a well-built Caſtle, for the defence of their Ships and Frigots, which frequent thoſe Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Perſians*, many of the Inhabitants wherof were ſince ſetled here. *Tavernier*, part 2. p. 16. of his Travels South, ſaith, The City of *Maſcate*, or *Muſcate*, is ſeated at the foot of a Mountain by the Sea-ſide; and has three Rocks at the entrance of the Harbour, which make the Acceſs very difficult, and beſides, in Summer, the heat is ſcarce to be endured: whilſt this was in the Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueze*, it was the fourth Government depending on the Vice-Roy of *Goa*, and afforded a great Revenue, *Ibid.* p. 75. But one *Aceph-Ben-Ali*, Prince of *Norennae* (a ſmall Province, but the moſt fruitful in all *Arabia*) beat the *Portugueze* out of *Maſcate*, and afterwards call'd himſelf King of that City. *Ibid.* part 2. p. 145. 15 *Hardranuit*, which was ſmall, and produced ſome *Aloes*, but inferiour to that of *Zocotora*. 16 *Merbat*, a Mountain and City, famed and much reſorted to for *Frankincenſe*; of old *Sabea*. 17 *Sanaa*, a City ſeated twenty days Journey from *Mecca* to the South Eaſt, which is one of the greateſt and moſt populous Cities of *Arabia*, as *Nubienſis* ſaith, p. 25. Seated in a Temperate Air, and a Fruitful Soil; 104 miles from *Aden*, to the N.E. 132 miles from *Zibet*. 18 *Saada*, a City in *Arabia Fœlix*, between *Zibet* to the S.W. and *Sanaa* to the N.E. twenty days Journey from *Mecca*. 19 *Sobar*, the Capital of *Oman*, upon the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf, 450 miles from *Muskabat*, or *Muskabat* to the S. E. In ancient times Ships went from this Port to *China*, *Nubi.* page 53. Of the Affairs of this Country we ſhall ſpeak anon; having firſt took a brief view of the Iſlands which belong unto it.

4. The ARABICK ISLANDS.

THE *ISLANDS* which lie round about the Shores of *Arabia Fœlix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are diſperſed either in the 1 *Red Sea*, 2 *Southern Sea*, or 3 the Gulf of *Perſia*.

I. The *RED SEA* (called alſo by the Ancients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern Ocean, which interpoſeth it ſelf betwixt *Ægypt* on the Weſt; *Arabia Fœlix*, and ſome parts of *Petræa*, on the Eaſt; the North Eaſt bound of it touching upon *Idumea*, or the Coaſt of *Edom*, Extended in length from the Town of *Sues*, anciently called *Arſinoe*, in the bottom of it, to the Streights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the ſpace of one thouſand four hundred miles: in breadth, for the moſt part, but one hundred, but in ſome places almoſt two; the Streights themſelves not being above a mile and an half, anciently Chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is ſaid by *Strabo*; but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and unquiet Sea, full of Sands and Shelves; inſomuch as they who paſs in and out, are fain to make uſe of Pilots which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the Channel. Sufficiently famous in all Times and Stories for the Miraculous paſſage of the Children of *Iſrael*, and the drowning *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*. *Thevenot* in his Travels, *page* 1. *chap.* 33. obſerves, that this Sea is called in Hebrew, the Sea of *Ruſhes*, by the *Arabs*, *Buſhrel Cal-zein*, from *Clyſma*, an old Town now Ruined. That it Ebbs and Flows like the Ocean. That before the diſcovery of the *Cape of Good Hope*, it was much frequented, but now very little, as being narrow and dangerous. The *Geographia Nubienſis* obſerves that the *Zenguitæ*, which lay between the Kingdom of *Abaſcia* or *Ethiopia* to the South, and *Ægypt* to the North, had *Iman* (*Arabia Fœlix*) to the North, and that the *Red Sea* was here 600 miles broad, whereas more Northward, *Thevenot* obſerves it was not above eight miles over. The *Nubian* Geographer, page 3. calls it *Zogor*, makes it ſixty miles long, and twelve broad and ſaith, though it has no living Creature in it, the Water being hot and Putrid, yet ſmall Ships paſſed upon it.

It took the name of the *Red Sea*, as ſome conceived from the Redneſs of the Sands; as others have deliver'd from the Redneſs of the Waters: but latter obſervations have diſcovered the weakneſs and abſurdity of theſe *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured here as in other places. By the *Græcians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that Tongue ſignifieth *Red* alſo, not from the colour, either of the Sands or Waters, but from one *Erythras*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Perſeus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eaſtern Shores hereof. And theſe come nearer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, becauſe it took beginning on the Coaſts of that Country: which word in the *Hebrew* ſignifying *Red*, as appeareth, *Gen.* 25. 30. firſt given as a nick-name to *Eſau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latins.* Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reaſon of the name to few.

Of the great Traffick which was anciently driven up this Sea, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *Ægypt*, on the other ſide of it. Look we now on the Iſlands which belong to *Arabia*; as they all generally do; known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of, 1 *Adani*, 2 *Æni*, 3 *Are*, 4 *Cardamin*, 5 *Combuſta*, 6 *Damanum*, 7 *Hieracum*, or the *Iſle of Hawks*, 8 *Maliaci*, 9 *Polybii*, 10 *Socratis*, 11 *Timagenis*, and 12 *Zigana.* But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing ſo doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almoſt all of them to be ſmall, deſolate, or but meanly Inhabited, deſcribed by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeneſs, ſaid to be an 125 miles long, tho' but twelve broad, called *Dalaqiia*, with a City in it of that name, where they gather Pearls. 2. Then there is *Camaran*, moſt extremely hot, of moſt note for the many ſpoils there made by the *Portugals.* 3 *Xamoa*, the Earth whereof is ſaid to be *Red* (perhaps to countenance the vulgar Tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the Sands or Shores) and the King a *Moor.* 4 The *Samaritan Iſland*, ſpoken of by *Scaliger*, Inhabited by a remainder of that People, who as ſoon as they ſaw any Stranger Land upon their Coaſts, would moſt Religiouſly deſire him not to touch them. Such other Iſlands as lie upon the oppoſite ſhores, and ſeem to appertain unto *Ethiopia* ſhall find their place in our Deſcrption of the *African* Iſlands.

II. The *SOUTHERN OCEAN*, comprehendeth that vaſt Body of Waters, which from the Eaſtern Banks of both *Ethiopia*'s, Coaſt along on the South of *Arabia Fœlix*, and ſo directly Eaſtward, to the furtheſt *India*: In this regard called by ſome Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Auſtrale*, from the ſituation; and by ſome alſo *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they ſuppoſe) Reigning hereabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, but to all the Sea-Coaſts alſo, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the Coaſts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum.*

In this vaſt Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Iſlands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, *viz.* two Iſlands by the name of *Inſulæ Agathoclis*, 2 Three more by the name of *Cocconati*, 3. *Dioſcoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioſcurias*, with a City of the ſame name in it. 4 Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*, by the name of *Zenobii*, 5 *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before-mentioned, being a great Hill planted with Trees, 6 *Serapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Ægyptian* Idol. None of them now of any Credit, nor formerly of any great Note, the two laſt excepted. The *Nubian* Geographer informs us that near the Streights of *BabelMandel*, lies the Iſle of *Socotora*, or *Zocotora*, great, large, and beautiful, and affording beautiful trees, and amongſt them the beſt *Aloes*; which Iſland he ſaith, was by *Alexander* the Great, Peopled with *Grecians*, and in his time, the XII. Century, was poſſeſſed by none but Chriſtians. He ſaith the leaves of theſe Trees are gathered in *July*, and the juice being forced out of them, it is in *Auguſt* expoſed to the heat of the Sun in Braſs pots till 'tis turn'd into that ſubſtance in which we ſee and uſe it. *Paris*, 1619. *4to. pag.* 25. 5 *Chartan.* 6 *Martan*, both Celebrated very much by the ſame for their Amber, and Oyſter, a ſhell-fiſh, of which the *Arabians* made Diſhes.

III. On the Eaſt ſide of *Arabia Fœlix*, betwixt it and *Perſia*, lieth another large Arm of the Southern Ocean, anciently called *Sinus Perſicus*, or the *Bay of Perſia*, now *Golfo di Elkatiffe.* A Turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or claſhing of which two great Waters, make it ſo unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*) 1 *Tylus*, which *Arianus* ſets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian* Seas, affirming it to be well ſtored with Vines and Olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophraſtus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place miſtaken) affording good Materials for Shipping. 2 *Apphana*, 3 *Tharo*, 4 *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To theſe ſome late Travellers have adjoyn'd two others, if not ſome of the former, under theſe new names, that is to ſay, 5 *Bayren.* This Iſland is written *Bakron*, *Baharon*, and though ſeated on the Coaſt of *Arabia*, is ſubject to the King of *Perſia.* The Waters in the Iſland are ſo ſalt, that they can be drunk by none but the Natives, ſo that the Iſland would be wholly deſerted but for the Pearl-Fiſhery, which maintains the *Perſian* Garriſon in it, *Tavernier* part 2. page 145. And 6 *Conſiar*, where they take the beſt Pearls in the World, in Beds of Oiſters. Other Iſlands of this Bay (if any) belong to *Perſia*; where, if occaſion ſo require, we ſhall ſpeak more of them.

To return therefore to the Main Land of *Arabia Fœlix.* The firſt Inhabitants thereof were the Sons of *Chus*, and the Families which they brought with them. Their Memories preſerved in the names of ſome of the chief Towns and Nations till the days of *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and ſome other of the Ancient Writers, Divided afterwards into the ſeveral Tribes or Septs of the *Caſſanitæ*, *Cinædocolpitæ*, *Homeritæ*, *Adramitæ*, *Eleſari*, *Sachalitæ*, *Anaritæ*, *Gerræi*, *Ægæi*, *Sabæi*, *Minæi*, *Leanitæ*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each Governed ſeperately, and apart by their ſeveral Chiefs; whom they Honoured as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which ſpoken of by *Juſtine*, named *Hierotimus*, is ſaid to be the Father of 500 Children. Eaſie to have been overcome, becauſe ſo divided, if any potent Neighbour had attempted the Conqueſt of them: as it is wondrous ſtrange they did not, conſidering the Richneſs of the Country, and the many temptations which they had to invite them to it. More worthily deſerving the name of *Fœlix*, in that never Conquered, than in all the other Rarities and Delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deſign'd for the Seat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the Conqueſt of it, having finiſhed his War againſt the *Perſians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, tho' once *Auguſtus* did attempt it; employing in that Action *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Egypt*: One *Sames* being then King of thoſe parts which lay neareſt to him. The *Romans* at their firſt entry found no reſiſtance: but when by the extraordinary heat of the Air, and drinking ſalt waters, they began to grow ſickly and diſeaſed, the *Arabians* fell luſtily upon them, and made them return back both with loſs and ſhame. After this nothing done by the *Romans* to diſturb their quiet; nor much done by the Chriſtians to advance their Glories: the whole divided into almoſt as many Religions, as Principalities and Eſtates. Moſt of them Gentiles, but Circumciſed, as the *Iſmaelites*, and other *Arabians*, had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and ſome ſtore of *Chriſtians*, but thoſe divided alſo into Sects and Factions. And in this ſtate it ſtood, when *Mahomet* firſt began to broach his blaſphemous dotage. By Birth of *Jathrip*, an obſcure Village then not far from *Medina*: His Father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous Pagan; his Mother named *Hemina*, as perverſe a *Jeweſs.* Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him Education, nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, ſold him at ſixteen years of Age to the *Iſmaelites*; by whom expoſed to ſale in the open Markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalif*, a wealthy

Merchant. By him imployed at firſt in Drudgery, and ſervile Offices, till noting his great Wit, and fitneſs for better Services, he at laſt uſed him as his Factor: ſending him with his Camels and Loads of Merchandize into *Syria*, *Perſia*, *Ægypt*, and other Places, wherein he did behave himſelf with ſuch dexterity, that he much encreaſed his Maſters Wealth, and his own eſtimation. Of Perſon he is ſaid to be low, and withal ſcald-headed, but otherwiſe comely to the eye, and of good Aſpect. Much troubled with the Falling-Sickneſs, which Infirmity he made good uſe of afterwards, affirming that thoſe Fits were nothing but Heavenly Raptures, in which he did converſe with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is ſaid to have been alſo well skill'd in Magick, by which he taught a white Pidgeon to feed at his Ear, which he gave out to be the Holy Ghoſt, by whom he was inſtructed in the Law which he was to publiſh: but this not till afterwards. By Sorceries, comelineſs of Perſon, and the great knowledge which he had in his Maſter's Buſineſs, he gained ſo far on the Affections of his Miſtreſs, that on the Death of *Abdalmutalif*, ſhe made him her Husband. Poſſeſſed of all his Maſters Wealth, he affected Eaſe; and being till then of no Religion, or at beſt a Pagan; he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Neſtorian* Monk, who flying out of *Syria* for fear of Puniſhment (the Hereſies of *Neſtorius* being newly both revived and Cenſured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the Houſe of *Abdulmutalif*, the Maſter of *Mahomet*. By his perſwaſions, who found him a fit Inſtrument for the Devil to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of Hammering out a new Religion which might unite all Parties in ſome common Principles, and bring the *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles*, (into which the World was then divided) under one Profeſſion. Reſolved on this, he retired himſelf unto a Cave not far from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but Meditations: *Sergius* in the mean time ſounding in the ears of the People, both his Parts and Piety. The People being thus prepared to behold the *Pageant*, out comes the Principal Actor with ſome parts of his *Alcoran* (pleaſing enough to ſenſual minds) which he profeſſed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclaimed Liberty to all Slaves and Servants, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the natural Liberty of Mankind was moſt dearly tendered: which drew unto him ſuch a Rabble of unruly People, that without Fear or Oppoſition, he diſperſed his Doctrines, reducing them at laſt to a Book or Method.

The Book of this Religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to ſay, the Collection of Precepts: the Original whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book ſo highly reverenc'd by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the Cover of of, *Let none touch this but he that is claan.* The Body of it (as it now ſtandeth) was compoſed by *Oſman* the fourth *Caliph*, who ſeeing the *Saracens* daily enclining to divers Hereſies by reaſon of ſome falſe Copies of *Mahomet*'s Law, and that the Empire by the ſame means was likely to fall into Civil Diſſention; by the help of his Wife, who was *Mahomet*'s Daughter, he got a ſight of all *Mahomet*'s Papers, which he reduced into four Volumes, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expreſly upon pain of death, That that Book, and that only, ſhould be received as Canonical through his Dominion. The whole Body of it is but an Expoſition and Gloſs on the eight Commandments.

1. *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one only God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet.* They hold *Abraham* to be the Friend of God; *Moſes* the Meſſenger of God; and *Chriſt*, the Breath of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the Holy Ghoſt, affirming, that the Virgin *Mary* grew with Child of him by ſmelling to a Roſe, and was delivered of him at her Breaſts. They deny the Myſtery of the *Trinity*; but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*, whoſe Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his Pilgrimage to *Mecca* doth not, coming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have Merited, or bettered himſelf any thing by his Journey.

2. *Every man muſt marry to encreaſe the Sectaries of* Mahomet. Four Wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubines as he will; between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference, either in Affection or Apparel; but that his Wives only can enjoy his Sabbaths Benevolence. The Women are not admitted in the time of their Lives to come into their Churches; nor after death to Paradiſe: And whereas in moſt or all other Countries, Fathers give ſome Portions with their Daughters, the *Mahometans* give Money for their Wives, which being once paid, the Contract is Regiſtred in the *Cadie*'s Book; and this is all their Formality of Marriage. More of this Theme we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *Turkomania*, and among the *Turks*.

3. *Every one muſt give of his Wealth to the Poor.* Hence you ſhall have ſome buy Slaves, and then manumit them; buy Birds, and then let them fly. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe Bond-ſlaves, build Caves or Lodgings in the ways for the relief of Paſſengers, repair Bridges, and mend High-ways. But their moſt ordinary Alms conſiſt in Sacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which, when the Solemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the Tithe or Tenth part of their gettings in the year foregoing: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly find any Beggars among them.

4. *Every one muſt make his Prayers five times a day.* When they pray, they turn their Bodies towards *Mecca*, but their Faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their Devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-riſing; the ſecond at noon-day; the third at three of the clock afternoon; the fourth, at Sun-ſetting; the fifth and laſt before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers kept a bawling in the Steeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no Bells) for the People to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come, muſt, when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their Devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5. *Every one muſt keep a Lent one Month in a year.* This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This Faſt is only intended in the day time, the Law giving leave to Frolick it in the night as they beſt pleaſe, for they abſtain from Wine and Swines fleſh; prohibited in their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their Lent.

6. *Be Obedient to thy Parents.* Which Law is the moſt neglected of any in all the *Alcoran*; never any Children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7. *Thou ſhalt not kill.* And this they keep inviolated among themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their Fury. And as if by this Law the actual ſhedding of Blood only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their offenders, worſe than Death it ſelf. As firſt, the *Strappado*, which is hanging of them by the Arms drawn backwards, when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which unjoynteth all their Back and Arms. Secondly, they uſe to h[illegible] their heels, and with a great Cudgel to give the[illegible] or four hundred blows on the ſoles of their feet. [illegible]ly, It is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbet or Tower, full of hooks, and cutting the Rope, to let them fall down again; and by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8 *Do unto others as thou wouldſt be done unto thy ſelf.* To thoſe that keep theſe Laws he promiſeth Paradiſe, a place of all Delights, adorned with flowry Fields, watered with Chriſtaline Rivers, beautified with Trees of Gold, under whoſe cool ſhade they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous Virgins, whoſe Manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The Men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty, nor the Women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their Virginities renewed, as faſt as loſt.

Friday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to diſtinguiſh his Followers from the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the Days enſuing; but principally, becauſe he was on that Day proclaimed King or Emperor, and ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines-fleſh are the principal things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from the laſt whereof they all unanimouſly refrain; but on the firſt they are ſo ſotted, that when they come at it, they ſeldom go home again unled; inſomuch that all the Wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown about the Streets, and Death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them, That every one ſhould be ſaved by his own Religion; him only excepted, that revolted from the *Alcoran* unto another Law; but ſo, that under the Notion of Religion, he means only ſuch as worſhip the one and only God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of Salvation. And he taught too, That at the end of the World, all Men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion ſhould go into Paradiſe; the *Jews* under the Banner of *Moſes*; the *Chriſtians* under the Banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the Banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no Man therefore to abjure the Faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they find zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new *Proſelytes*, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are Motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, That it is better for a Man that would enjoy Liberty of Conſcience, to live in the Countries profeſſing *Mahometaniſm* than Papiſtry: for in the one he ſhall never be free from the bloody Inquiſition; in the other he is never moleſted, if he meddle not with their Law, their Women, or their Slaves.

The Opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding of a Horn, not all fleſh only, but the Angels themſelves ſhall die, that the Earth with an Earthquake ſhall be kneaded together like a lump of Dough; that a ſecond blaſt of the ſame Horn, ſhall after forty Days reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be the Captain or Ringleader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of Dogs and Swine; that they ſhall paſs over the Bridge of Juſtice laden with their Sins in Satchels; that the greater Sinners ſhall fall into Hell, the leſſer into Purgatory only; with a thouſand the like Fopperies: which it is needleſs to add here, conſidering that the *Alcaron* it ſelf is now extant in *Engliſh*, and every one that liſts may read it. A thing ſo full of *Tautologies*, Incoherencies, and ſuch groſs Abſurdities of ſo impure and carnal mixture, that he muſt lay aſide the uſe of his natural Reaſon, who is taken by it, if Force, Ambition, or want of a Chriſtian Education do not lead him on. For if we ſeriouſly look into the cauſes of the deplorable encreaſe and long continuance of this Religion, we ſhall find them to be chiefly theſe. 1 The greatneſs of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*, who [illegible] compelled the conquered Nations to receive their [illegible] 2 The great Zeal and Diligence of the *Arabians* [illegible]ſelves, who being a numerous People, and much given to Merchandize, have poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Sea-Coaſts of *Africk*, from the Streights of *Babel Mandel*, almoſt as far as to the *Cape of good Hope*; of all the Iſlands in thoſe Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the Coaſts of *India*: in all which they have ſetled their Religion alſo, as a thing inſeperable from their Nation. 3. A peremptory reſtraint of all diſputation in any point of Religion, whatſoever it be. 4 The ſuppreſſing of Philoſophy, and the ſtudy of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might eaſily detect the groſsneſs of their Superſtitions. 5 The ſenſual liberty allowed of having variety of Wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6 The promiſe of the like ſenſual Pleaſures in the other World, with which a ſenſe not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the moſt part uſe to be more affected, than with the ſpeculative hope of ſpiritual happineſs. 7 The forbidding of *Printing* and printed Books, by which the People might come to ſee the verity and purity of the *Chriſtian* Faith; the falſhood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. Theſe laſt not uſeful or at leaſt not able to induce belief, if the firſt had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Arms was the ſtrongeſt Argument by which *Mahomet* himſelf confirmed, and his Succeſſors in their times have ſince propagated and diſperſed his Doctrine. Strengthned by the reſort of that *raſcal Rabble*, which repaired to him, he aſſaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulſed at firſt with loſs of Men, and a wound in his Face, by which ſome of his foreteeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new *Religion*, if not recovered by his Soldiers for a further miſchief. At the next Onſet he prevailed, the Battel being fought near a place called *Bedez*, ſituate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof ſo ſtartled the *Phylarchiæ*, or Nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their Powers againſt him, and ſped ſo well in the beginning of the War, that they drove him forcibly from their Territories; which not long after he ſubdued, and ſet his chief ſeat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their Computation of Years (as we from CHRIST's Nativity) which they call the *Hegyra*, which beginneth about the Year of our Redemption 617. (The *Hegyra*, as to all Chronological Accounts begins in the Year of Chriſt 622, which ſome not obſerving, have cauſed a Difference of 5 Years in reducing the Years of the *Hegyra*, to the Year of Chriſt.) Concerning which time, I cannot but obſerve that *Mahomet* compelled deviliſh Doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Boniface* the third aſſumed his *Antichriſtian* Title, beginning his unlimitted Supremacy nigh about the ſame Year. It was called the *Hegyra*, from the *Arabick Hegirathi*, which by the Learned in that Tongue, is rendered by διωγμὸς ὑπὲρ τῆς θρησκείας i. e. *the Perſecution raiſed about Religion*. *Joſeph Scaliger* in his firſt Edition of his moſt glorious Work *De emendatione temporum*, caſteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Æra fugæ* or *perſecutionis*, but *Æra Hagaranæ*; becauſe forſooth the *Arabians* were by ſome called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzzel'd *Joſeph*, with all his Reading, to ſhew unto us any *Æpochæ* or *Æra*, which is taken from the Name of a Nation. And therefore other Reaſon he giveth us none but this; *Nos autem ſcimus vocem illam primogeniâ ſignificatione ab* Hagarenis, *non à fuga duci*. But time and oppoſition, at the laſt reclaimed him from his Error: and in the ſecond Edition of his Work, he is content to follow the common opinion of thoſe Men, whom in the firſt he whiſtled off with the famous *appellation* of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, it hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperor, joyned themſelves unto him. They had long been diſpleaſed with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exaſperated by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, when they ſerved in his Wars againſt the *Perſian*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he *had more ſtore of Steel than Gold*: but then they wanted a fit head to reſort unto. Now ſerving *Heraclius* in the ſame War, they were uſed by his Officers in the ſame ill manner. Asking

ing their pay, the Treaſurer of the Army made them this churliſh anſwer, that *there was ſcarce Money enough to pay the* Roman *and* Grecian *Soldiers, and muſt thoſe Dogs be ſo importunate for their Wages*? Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themſelves to him: who ſtrengthned by ther Forces, and the coming in of the reſt of their Country men ſoon brought the three *Arabias* under his Subjection. To which, having defeated the Emperor's Forces ſent againſt him, he added ſome parts of *Syria* and *Ægypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died frantick and diſtempered, in the ſeventieth year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his Impoſtures, of which he had ſpent thirteen at *Medina*, and the reſt at *Mecca*. His dead Body being kept four days in expectation of a Reſurrection, which he promiſed to perform at the end of three; grown full of ſtench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there Interred: his Succeſſors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that Religion after his deceaſe, which they derided in his life; and calling themſelves *Caliphs* and *Vicars* General to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we haſten; made intricate, not more by their own *confuſions*, than by the difference of thoſe names by which they are preſented to us by ſeveral Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Caliphs* or Emperors of the *Saracens*.

A. C.	*A. H.*		
622	5	1	*Mahomet* the Impoſtor, of whom before.
632	15	2	*Ebubezer*, or *Uquebar*, *Mahomet*'s Father-in-law, and one of his great Captains, ſupplanted *Ali*, to whom the Empire was deſigned by the Will of *Mahomet*; and took unto himſelf the name of *Caliph*. 2.
634	17	3	*Haumar*, the ſecond of *Mahomet*'s Great Captains, having the Command of the Army under *Ebubezer*, Succeeded him in the Eſtate, and added to it *Perſia*, *Ægypt*, *Paleſtine*, with great part of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*. 12.
647	30	4	*Oſman*, the third of *Mahomet*'s Great Captains, Husband of *Zeineb*, his ſecond Daughter; Succeeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire. Diſtreſſed by the Faction of *Hali*, and Beſieged in his own Houſe, he ſlew himſelf in the eighty ſeventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
657	40	5	*Hali* the Kinſman, and next Heir of *Mahomet*, and the Husband of *Fatime* his Eldeſt Daughter, Succeded on the death of *Oſman*: Murdered by the procurement of *Muhavias*, near *Cufa*, in *Arabia Fœlix*.
660	43	6	*Muhavias*, having murdered *Hali* his Son *Haſem*, or *Oſſan*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Haſem*, the twelfth only eſcaping with Life, (from whom deſcended the Family of the *Alaveci*, and the *Perſian Sophies*) aſſumed the Government as rightful Succeſſor to *Oſman*, whoſe Widow, the Daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to Wife. He Conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Aſia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.
681	64	7	*Gizid*, the Son of *Mahuvias*, more skilled in Poetry than in Arms.
		8	*Habdalla* and *Marvan*, Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at laſt by *Marvan*.
685	68	9	*Abimelech*, the Son of *Marvan* Eſtabliſh'd the begun Conqueſts of *Armenia* and *Meſopotamia*. 22.
707	90	10	*Ulider Ulit*, under whom the *Saracens*, or *Moors*, firſt Conquered *Spain*. 9.
716	99	11	*Zulcimin*, Brother to *Ulit*, whoſe Captain *Mulſamus* Beſieged *Conſtantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his Men conſumed with the Plague. 3.
719	102	12	*Homar*, or *Haumar* II. Son of *Ulidor Ulit*. 2.
721	104	13	*Izid*, or *Gizid* II. the Brother of *Haumar*, with whom, during his Life, he was Joynt-*Caliph*, and after his deceaſe, enjoyed it wholly to himſelf.
725	107	14	*Evelid*, by ſome called *Iſcham*, in whoſe time *Charles Martel* made ſuch havock of the *Moors* in *France*, *Anno* 734. their General then named *Abderamen*. 18.
743	125	15	*Gizid* III. the Son of *Gizid* II.
744	126	16	*Hyces*, by ſome called *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Gizid* III. ſlain by *Marvan*.
745	127	17	*Marvan* II. the laſt of the Houſe of *Benhumeya*, ſlain by *Abdallo* of the houſe of *Fatime* and *Hali*.
752	134	18	*Abdalla*, of the Houſe of *Alaveci* or *Alabeci*, deſcended from *Hali* and *Fatime*, the eldeſt Daughter of *Mahomet*; called alſo the Family of *Abas*, becauſe of their deſcent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
756	138	19	*Abdalla* II.
		20	*Mahomet* II ſirnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdet*, made from that time the conſtant Seat of his Succeſſors till their fatal Period.
777	156	21	*Mahadi*. 9.
786	168	22	*Muſa*, or *Moyſes*. 1.
787	169	23	*Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empreſs of *Conſtantinople*, to pay him Tribute. 23.
810	193	24	*Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.
825	198	25	*Abdalla* III. who took, and ſpoiled *Crete*, and overthew the *Greeks*; he alſo ſpoiled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*. 17.
832	215	26	*Mahomet* IV. waſted *Italy*, burnt the Suburbs of *Rome*, and haraſſed the forenamed Iſlands. 40.

Others reckon theſe *Caliphs* to have Succeeded *Mahomet* the Second.

815	198	25	*Mamon*. 12.
827	210	26	*Mutetziam*. 8.
835	218	27	*Watek*. 4.
839	222	28	*Methucal*. 12.
851	234	29	*Montacer*. 1.
852	352	30	*Abul Hamet*. 6.
858	241	31	*Almatez*. 4.
863	245	39	*Motadi Bila*. 7.

After whoſe death, the *Ægyptians* withdrew themſelves from their Obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and choſe one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and thoſe of the *Mahumetan* Religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, ſubmitted themſelves. Of the *Ægyptian Caliphs*, when we come into that Country. Take now with you the names only of the *Syrian* and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for Story of them I find little or none, the Power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the ſeveral Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an Airy Title, the ſhadow of that Mighty Tree, which formerly had ſpread it ſelf over moſt part of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the Diviſion.

A. C.	*A. H.*			
870	251	1	*Mutemah.*	21.
891	273	2	*Mutezad.*	8.
897	281	3	*Muchtapi.*	8.
907	389	4	*Mutchtedar.*	24.
931	313	5	*Elkaber.*	1.
932	314	6	*Ratze.*	7.
939	321	7	*Muctade.*	4.
943	325	8	*Muſteraphe.*	2.
947	324	9	*Macia*, and *Taia.*	44.
989	361	10	*Kadar.*	41.
1030	412	11	*Kaim.*	5.
1035	417	12	*Muctadi.*	60.
1095	477	13	*Muſtetaber.*	22.
1117	499	14	*Muſteraſchad.*	18.
1135	517	15	*Raſchied.*	25.
1160	542	16	*Muſteneged.*	9.
1169	551	17	*Muſtazi.*	10.
1179	561	18	*Narzi.*	39.
1218	597	19	*Taber.*	
		20	*Muſtenatzar.*	

1255 638 21 *Muſtatzem*, the laſt *Caliph*, or High Prieſt of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the account of a Prince or Emperor; or looked upon as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: ſtarved in his Caſtle of *Bagdet*, and his whole Poſterity rooted out by *Allan*, or *Haallon* the *Tartar*, in the firſt year of his Reign. Yet there is ſtill remaining a Carkaſs of the old Body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whoſe hands the neighbour Princes uſe to receive their *Diadems* and Regalities: for ſo we find that *Solyman* the *magnificent* after his Conqueſt of *Chaldea*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*, to have been by one of theſe poor titular *Caliſs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*. *Anno* 1513.

This unweildy Body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline, loſing to the Kings of *Oviedo* and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoeſe*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally moſt of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haalon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, ſtarved *Muſtatzem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his Poſterity, (as before was ſaid:) and *Sarracon* the firſt *Turkiſh* King of *Ægypt*, brained the laſt *Ægyptian Caliph* with his Horſeman's Mace; leaving not one of Iſſue or Kindred Surviving. The Office of the *Caliphs* as to matters which concern their irreligion, (and the ſupreme determination of the doubts and controverſies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Mufty*, or Chief Prieſt of the *Turkiſh Mahometans*.

As *Mars* ſhewed himſelf a friend unto thoſe *Saracens* in their Wars and Triumphs; ſo alſo did *Phœbus* pour down no leſs Cœleſtial Influence on ſuch as addicted themſelves to Scholarſhip. *Bagdet* in *Chaldæa*, *Cairoan*, *Feſs*, *Morocco* in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Univerſities: out of which came the Philoſophers, *Avicene*, and *Averroes*; the *Phyſicians*, *Rheſis*, and *Meſue*; the *Geographers*, *Leo* and *Abilfada*; and almoſt all the *Textuaries* and profound Writers (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Albumazar*, &c.) in *Aſtrology*, from whom a great part of our *Aſtronomical* and *Aſtrological* Terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Iſland, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdom of *Feſs* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it ſelf, the very firſt Seat of their Power, acknowledging a ſubjection to the *Turkiſh* Empire. For firſt *Petræa* and *Deſerta*, being ſubdued by the *Turks*, when they Conquer'd *Perſia*, or otherwiſe following the Fortunes of the preſent Victor, were afterwards accounted of as Subject unto the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees diſſeized the *Selzuccian* Family. And as the Vaſſals of that Crown, tho' but Subjects at will, they more moleſted *Selimus* in his March towards *Ægypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their Night-alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mamalucks*, in the Field againſt him. But *Ægypt* being Subdu'd, and the *Mamalucks* utterly deſtroyed, ſome of their *Chiefs* being gained by Money, and the reſt by promiſe of Preferment; the whole Nation of theſe wild *Arabs* ſwore *Allegiance* to him: continuing in account as Subject unto his Succeſſors, but in effect doing what they liſt; Governed as formerly by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Chriſtians*. And as for *Fælix*, it continued alſo in a *free condition*, in reſpect of any foreign Power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the Year 1538. *Solyman Baſſa*, Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Fleet againſt the *Portugals*, who had diverted the Trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwiſe given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, by aiding the *Perſians*, went with a ſtrong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Iſland of *Eaſt-India*, then in their poſſeſſion. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the beſt Traded Ports of *Arabia Fælix*, invited the King thereof aboard, moſt Treacherouſly hanged him, and ſurprized the City, which has ſince Revolted. The like he alſo did to the King of *Ziber*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got poſſeſſion of all the Coaſts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* ſtill continue Maſters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of no power at all; not ſuffered to Travel up and down without a Paſs from ſome of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be ſet on by the Natives, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Iſle of *Ormus*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was firſt builded: and ſo continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1622. who ſince the taking of that Iſle by the King of *Perſia*, hold *Muskabat*, and ſome other pieces upon this Continent. The reſidue of the Country Cantoned among a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before Ambition taught them to devour one another. The *Turks* have now not one Foot of Land in the Happy *Arabia*, as I have ſhewn above from *Tavernier*.

And ſo much for *ARABIA*.

6 *CHALDEA*

6 *CHALDEA.* 7 *ASSYRIA.*

8 *MESOPOTAMIA.*

THeſe Provinces, which properly and originally conſtituted the *Aſſyrian* Empire, I have joined together in the Title, becauſe united in the Story and Affairs thereof; though ſeverally to be conſider'd in the Deſcription and *Chorography* of them.

6 *CHALDEA.*

CHALDEA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Suſiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; on the Weſt, with *Arabia Deſerta*; on the *North*, with *Meſopotamia*; and on the *South*, with the *Perſian* Bay, and the reſt of *Deſerta*: Originally called *Chaſdim* from *Cheſed* the Fourth Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*. *Cheſed quoque quartus eſt, à quo Chaſdim, id eſt, Chaldæi poſtea vocati ſunt*, as St. *Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* ſhould derive their Name from *Cheſed*, being a People long before *Cheſed*'s Birth, I am not able to determine: unleſs he taught them the firſt Principles of the Art of *Aſtronomy*; or was the Author of ſome ſignal Benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the Chief City of it; and at this Day by *Bellonius*, *Azania*; by the *Arabians*, *Kelden*; by the *Turks*, *Curdiſtan*.

But the Name of *Chaldea* ſometimes went beyond thoſe Bounds, taking in ſome part alſo of *Meſopotamia*, as appeareth by that paſſage of St. *Stepehen*, ſaying, *Acts* 7. 2, 3, 4. That *the God of glory appeared to our Father* Abraham, *when he was in* Meſopotamia, *before he dwelt in* Charran; *and ſaid unto him, Get thee out of this Country, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I ſhall ſhew thee. Then he came out of the Land of the* Chaldees, *and dwelt in* Charran, *&c.* Where clearly that part of *Meſopotamia*, which lay next unto *Aſſyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the Name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I deſire the Reader to take notice of, becauſe I muſt make uſe of this Obſervation in another place.

The Country by *Herodotus* ſaid to be ſo fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily *two hundred*, and in ſome places *three hundred fold*; the Blades of Wheat and Barley being (as he affirmeth) Four Fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is ſaid of the *Babylonians*, *That they mowed their Corn twice, and ſeeded it a third time, or elſe it would be nothing but Blades; and yet ſo, that the worſt of their Land yielded fifty, and their beſt an hundred-fold increaſe.* Nor is the nature of the Soil ſo alter'd in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have obſerved) it would in all likelihood attain to its firſt Fertility, if it were order'd with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be ſaid as to the Natural Fruitfulneſs and Delights of this Country, than that it pleaſed God Almighty to make choice of ſome part hereof for the *Terreſtial Paradiſe* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his firſt Creation? For there that *Paradiſe*, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have ſtood. Yet amongſt all ſorts of Writers we find different Opinions. Some make *Paradiſe* to be a place of Pleaſure, and the Four Rivers to be the Four Cardinal Vertues; but theſe Allegories on the Scripture are unwarrantable. Others place it in the Air, under the Circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, riſe up again in thoſe places where they are now found: But this is ſo vain a Foppery, that I will not honour it with a Confutation. Such as make *Paradiſe* local, are divided alſo into Three Ranks (for I omit the reſt) whereof ſome place it under the *Æquator*; but this agreeth not with the Bounds preſcribed by the Holy Ghoſt. Some conceive the Four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradiſe* was the whole World; but this cannot be: For then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradiſe*, it muſt alſo follow that he was driven out of the World, which were moſt abſurd. Thoſe of the ſoundeſt Judgments place it here, in an Iſland which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and ſome Branches running from them both: The uppermoſt of which is called *Piſon*, (falſly rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or that part of the Land of *Havilah* which is now called *Chuſeſtan*, or *Suſiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; and the lowermoſt is named *Gihon*, (improperly by ſome tranſlated *Nilus*) which compaſſeth the *Eaſt* parts of *Arabia Petræa*, by the *Septuagint* for the Reaſons above-mentioned, rendred *Æthiopia*. And this agreeth both with the Poſition of this Country and the courſe of thoſe Rivers: For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* Text called *Hiddekel* and *Perah*) do here join their Streams, is confeſſed on all ſides. Then as for *Piſon*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolemy*, called *Baſilius*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piſo-Tigris*, or *Paſi Tigris*, *Pervenit ad fluvium, Paſitigrin incolæ vocant*, as his own Words are. A little Stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Chavelei*, or *Chaulaſei*, or *Chaulotæi*, (for by theſe ſeveral Names they are called amongſt the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* and *Arabian* People) poureth it ſelf into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Perſia*. And finally for *Gihon* by *Ptolemy*, called *Maarſares*, and by others *Marſyrus*, it is no other than a Branch of *Euphates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Æthiopia Aſiatica*, take which Name you will, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extreamly fruitful, yet in ſome places was it covered with a ſlimy matter, which the overflowing of the Waters, and the nature of the Soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Uſed by them in their Buildings, inſtead of Mortar, than which more durable and binding; and therefore choſen for the Cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen.* 11. 3. Some alſo tell of a Cliff, which opening ſendeth out ſuch a ſtink, that it killeth Birds as they fly over it; and others, of a like open place near a Town called *Ait*, which continually throweth out Boiling Pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoining Fields; and that herewith the people uſe to pitch their Boats. But this in ſome places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was ſaid.

The people anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-ſaying and Divinations, and noleſs noted for being Authors of the firſt Idolatry that ever was practiſed in the World. Induced unto the laſt perhaps by the Power of their Kings, who would needs confer Divine Honours upon ſome of their Anceſtors. But to the firſt inclined by their own Diſpoſition, and the ſituation of their Country, yielding a fair ſenſible Horizon (for the Rational is alike in all places, both in Hills and Vallies) and conſequently profitable to the obſervation of the riſing and ſetting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Veſpertine*, as the Artiſts phraſe it. Whereunto may be added the length of Life in thoſe elder times, furniſhing them with the greater meaſure of experience, concerning the diſtinct Motions of each ſeveral Orb, and the full period of the courſes of each ſeveral Planet. Certain it is that they grew ſo noted in this Art, that at the laſt every *Aſtrologaſter*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldæan*. *Geneis nomine ad eos homines tranſlato, qui ſeſe illius ſapientiæ ſpecie venditabant*, as *Beza* has obſerved in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the People thus flouted by the *Satyriſt*,

Chaldæis ſed major erit fiducia quicquid
Dixerit Aſtrologus, credent à fonte relatum
Ammonis, &c.

That is to ſay,

Jove's Oracles no greater credit have,
Than Sooth-ſayings of a *Chaldee* cozening Knave.

The Language which was ſpoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldæan* Tongue; of great Antiquity, and ſanctified by the Holy Ghoſt, ſome Chapters of the Prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not underſtand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18 26. deſiring *Rabſhekah* to ſpeak to them in the *Chaldee* Tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his Blaſphemies. A further proof may be, That a Man may have ſome knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this preſent day. But whatſoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongſt them, during the Captivity: out of whoſe long commerce with them, both Nations loſt their proper Languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriac*. Of this we ſpake before, when we were in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*. And this is now the natural Language of this Country, and its Neighbour *Aſſyria*; but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: Not vulgarly ſpoken elſewhere, for ought I can find; but uſed by many others in their Sacred Offices, by whom not commonly underſtood. For in this Language, all the Sects of the Eaſtern Chriſtians do aſſociate their Publick Liturgies; that is to ſay, the *Neſtorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who uſe the *Greek* Liturgy, amongſt the Sectaries.) The like do alſo the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, the *Cophties* or Chriſtians of *Ægypt*, and the poor remainder of the Chriſtians in the Iſle of *Zocataria*, an Iſland on the Coaſt of *Africk*. Uſed to thoſe Liturgies, when the Language was more underſtood amongſt them; though now worn out of vulgar knowledge, by the overſpreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkiſh* Conqueſt. In which the Prelates of theſe Churches having fallen into the great Error of the Church of *Rome*: And without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the vulgar Tongues of thoſe ſeveral Nations, which are united under them in one Opinion, keep up a Language in their Liturgies which they underſtand not; as if the capacities of the People could be ſooner raiſed to the underſtanding of an unknown Language, than the publick Liturgies be fitted unto their Capacities. The ancient Piety of the Church, and the modern Languages of God's People, are not inconſiſtent; though out of private ends ſome have taught us otherwiſe. But I fear this error (as ſome others) will not be ſo eaſily remedied, as apprehended. From the Tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, paſs we to the Religion it ſelf, whoſe Sacred Offices are ſo celebrated.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached in this Country by Saint *Peter*, of whoſe being in *Babylon* (the chief City hereof) himſelf aſſureth us in the laſt words almoſt of his firſt Epiſtle: And other buſineſs he had none here, but to preach the Goſpel. Much proſecuted by the *Perſians* (who were then poſſeſſed of theſe parts) it prevailed at laſt; Chriſtianity growing up the faſter for the cutting down. The Patriarchal See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, Succeſſor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatneſs, if not alſo in name; the Biſhop thereof, by order of the *Nicene* Council, had the Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction of thoſe parts, with the name of Catholick; and the next place in Seſſion, at all publick Aſſemblies of the Church, next after the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*. And beſides this, the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas* acknowledge him for their Primate or Metropolitan; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch *Muzal*. At this preſent here are ſome remainders of Chriſtianity, part of them *Jacobites*, but the moſt *Neſtorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have ſpoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our paſſage forwards: So that without more delay, we may take a view of their principal places. And in the firſt place, we meet with *Babel*, in the *Hebrew* ſignifying Confuſion, famous for Confuſion of Languages, which here happened. For immediately after the Univerſal Deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, perſuaded the People to ſecure themſelves from the like after-claps, by building ſome ſtupendious Edifice, which might reſiſt the fury of a ſecond Deluge. This Counſel was generally embraced, *Heber* only and his Family, as Tradition goeth, contradicting ſuch an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majeſty, 5146 paces from the ground; having its baſis and circumference equal to the height. The paſſage to go up, went winding about the outſide, and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for Horſes, Carts, and the like means of Carriage, to meet and turn: But Lodging for Man and Beaſt, and, as *Verſtegan* reporteth, Graſs and Corn-fields for their nouriſhment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, ſent amongſt them (who before were of one Language) a confuſion of Tongues; which hindred the proceedings of this Building, one being not able to underſtand what his fellow called for.

2 *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the ancienteſt City in the World on this ſide of the Flood; firſt built by *Nimrod*, in the place deſtinated to the raiſing of the Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: Afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, one of his Succeſſors; and finally, much encreaſed both in bulk and beauty by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himſelf the whole glory of it, ſaying in his Pride, *Is not this the great Babel that I have builded?* *Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and ſtate, accounted one of the Worlds nine Wonders, and deſervedly too.

The compaſs of the Walls 365 furlongs (or 46 miles) according to the number of the days in the year; in height fifty Cubits, and of ſo great breadth, that Carts and Carriages might meet on the top of them; finiſhed in one year, by the hands of 200000 Workmen, employed daily in it. Situate on both ſides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a ſumptuous Bridge, and at each end of that Bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified alſo with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Penſile Gardens*, made with great Charge, and born up with moſt ſtately Arches. In a word, ſo great and vaſt it was, that *Ariſtotle* ſaith, That it ought rather to be called a Country than a City: Adding withal, That when the Town was taken, it was three days before the furtheſt part of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town muſt be underſtood of the ſurprize hereof by the *Medes* and *Perſians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his Marginal Notes upon the Politicks of that Author, hath moſt vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every Street, which made it be ſo long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken Feaſt, in the time whereof it was ſurpriſed, I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as ſhe was ordering her Hair: whereupon leaving her head half dreſſed, ſhe went and Beſieged it; never ordering the reſt of her Hair, till ſhe had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophon*'s *Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite through the Town, round about whoſe Banks the Politick Prince cut many deep Channels; into which when the *Babylonians* were ſecurely merry at a general Feaſt, he ſuddenly drained and emptied the River, conveyed his own Forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel, and in a little time made himſelf Maſter of it. From the *Perſians* it Revolted in the Reign of *Darius Hyſtaſpes*, and that Suſtenance might not be wanting to the Men of War, they ſtrangled the moſt part of the Women, being thought in Actions of this quality, not ſo much as neceſſary evils. When they had for twenty Months ſo reſolutely defended the Town, that the *Perſians* had leſs hope than ever of prevailing; *Zophyrus*, one of *Darius*'s Captains, mangling his Body, and disfiguring his Face, by cutting off his Noſe and Ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the Tyranny of his King. They crediting his Words, and knowing his Proweſs, committed the Charge of the whole Army unto him, as a Man to whom ſuch Barbarous uſage had made the King irreconcileable. But he taking the beſt opportunity, delivered both the Town and Soldiers into the hands of his Sovereign; which made *Darius* often ſay, that he had rather have one *Zophyrus* than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander* the Great, after whoſe death the *Grecian* Captains, regardful rather of their own Ambitions, than the common Loyaly, divided the Empire among themſelves; leaving the Body of the King eight days unburied. A wonderful change of Fortune, that he, who living, thought the World too ſmall for his Valour, being dead, ſhould find no place big enough for his Body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the Glories and Magnificence hereof began to decline; leſſened unto a fourth part in the time of *Quintus Curtius* the Hiſtorian; *in ſolitudinem redacta*, reduced to Deſolation in the days of *Pliny*; and being turned into a Park, in which the Kings of *Perſia* did uſe to hunt, in the time of St. *Hierom*. That wondrous change occaſioned partly by the injury of the time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of *Seleucia*.

Leonard Rauwolf, a Phyſician of *Auſperg*, or *Ausberg* in *Germany*, who ſaw the Ruins of this City in the year 1574. thus deſcribes its preſent ſtate: By a ſmall Village on the *Euphrates*, called *Eulogo*, or *Felugo*, is the ſeat of the old *Babylon*, a day and half Journey from *Bagdet*; the Lands about it are ſo dry and deſolate that one might juſtly doubt of the fertility of it, and the greatneſs of this City, if the vaſt Ruins ſtill to be ſeen did not Baniſh all Suſpition. There are ſtill to be ſeen ſome Arches of a Bridge over the River which is near half a mile broad, and exceeding deep: Theſe Arches are built with Brick, and wonderfully compacted. A quarter of a mile beneath the Village in the Plains is the Ruins of a Caſtle, and beyond that the Ruins of the Tower of *Babel*, half a *German* mile in compaſs, which is now the ſafe retreat of Serpents and Venomous Creatures, and amongſt them of a *Lizard* with three heads, called by the *Perſians Eglo*, and ſaid to be very Venemous. A little above the fall of the *Tigris* into the *Euphrates*, is a City now called *Trax*, but formerly *Apamea*. All that Travel over theſe Plains will find vaſt numbers of the Ruins of very Ancient, Great, and Tall Buildings, Arched Towers and ſuch like Buildings of wonderful Architecture, which being now for a long time deſerted by all men, are in part ſunk down into heaps of Stone, and in part are yet ſtanding. There is only one Tower, which is called *Daniel*'s Tower, ſtill perfect, and inhabited by a Family: From it may be ſeen all the Ruins of this vaſt City which lie about it, and ſufficiently prove the truth of what Ancient Writers have ſaid of the greatneſs of this City, by their vaſt extent. So vaſt a *Carkaſs as this, ſhews the Mortality of all Human things.* Thus far that Author. The Tower of *Babel* was built on the Weſt ſide of the *Tigris* about eight miles above *Bagdat*, and is now a ſmall Mountain without any entrance, becauſe it was built at firſt with Bricks only dried in the Sun, each of which is half a yard thick, and three quarters long, between every Courſe lies a Matt of Canes, as ſound as if they had been laid there but the laſt year. *Hackluit*'s Travels, Tom. 2. p. 25. and 269. It is very probable theſe Ruins belong rather to *Seleucia* than *Babylon*, by their being ſeated upon the *Tigris*, and ſo near to the City of *Bagdat*, whereas *Babylon* ſtood upon the *Euphrates*, 300 *ſtadia's* from *Seleucia* to the N. W. or, as *Pliny* ſaith, ninety miles, which City is placed at the conjunction of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, where *Feleugo* is now placed; and it is probable none of the latter Travellers have gone near it, they paſſing to and fro upon the River, and not croſs the Country where the old *Babylon* ſtood.

3. *Seleucia*, the ſecond City of note in all this Country, ſituate in a place more commodious and healthy, near the meeting of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and about forty miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 perſons for the Peopling of it. Nor did this new City Rob the old only of its power and greatneſs, but alſo of its very name; being called *Babylon* in ſome of the ancient Authors, Βαβύλων περσικὴ πόλις, Μητρόπολις Ζελευκία καλουμένη, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the Primitive times of Chriſtianity, the Biſhop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldeans*; with a ſuperintendency over the *Chriſtians* of *India* alſo, as before was ſaid. But this Supplanter was in time brought to ruin alſo. And

4. *Bagdad*, a new City raiſed from the Ruins of it: built near the Foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bugiafer* the 20th *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as ſome write) of eighteen Millions of Crowns; which, becauſe of the many Gardens contained in it, had the name of *Bagdad*, the word ſo ſignifying in the *Arabick* Tongue. Firſt Built upon the Weſtern Bank of the River *Tigris*, near to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other ſide of the River, by *Muſtetahar*, the 45th *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, becauſe leſs ſubject to the Inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned ſtill for the ſame City, as if built by *Bugiafer*: by whom being made the Seat of his Royal Reſidence (whoſe Succeſſors were from hence called the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*) it flouriſh'd in great Pride and Splendor, till taken and ſacked by *Allan*, or *Haalon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, who here ſtarved *Muſteatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole Poſterity; as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town reviv'd again, tho' the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great Wealth and Traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was, both for Beauty and Bigneſs; being not above ſeven miles in compaſs, and having nothing in the Buildings to be juſtly bragg'd of: The *Nubian* Geographer, Page 204. ſaith, in his time it was a great City, built at firſt on the weſt ſide of the *Tigris* by *Almanſur*, and when he wanted Room on that ſide for his Friends to build on (which is nothing likely) he removed his Army to the other ſide of the River; ſo that the City after this became very great. The *Arabians* call it *Dar-Aſſalam*, the City of Peace. *Almanſur* the *Caliph* begun this City in the year of the *Hegyra* 144. *A. C.* 761. He had removed the Regal Seat firſt from *Medina* to *Cufa*; but being provoked by an Inſurrection of the Inhabitants of that City

againſt him, he removed the Second time, and Built *Bagdat* in a round form, and compaſſed with a double Wall, and placed his own Seat, a Caſtle in the middle of of it. In the year of the *Hegyra* 369. *A. C.* 979. it was ſo Ruined by the Contentions between the *Califs*, that *Adado Daula*, the then *Calif* Re-built the City, Adorning it with new Moſques, Market-places, and cleanſing the River, and he alſo beſtowed great Revenues on the Reader of their *Alchoran*. In the Year, 656. *A. C.* 1258. the *Tartars* took this City, and ſpent ſeven days in the Plunder of it.

In the Year 1563. It was a ſmall City, but very Populous, and a great Trade, being a throughfare to *Perſia*, *Turkey*, and *Arabia*; on the Weſt ſide over againſt it, there was then a fair Suburb joyned to it by a Bridge of Boats chained together; at this time it was under the *Turks*, and it was thought to be two *Engliſh* miles in compaſs, and the *Tygris* by a Sluice might be brought round about the Walls, as Mr. *Hackluit* obſerves. *Tom.* 2. *p.* 214. 251, 269. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with the reſt of the Country, it became Subject to the *Turks* in 1524; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks*; about the year 1638 In which changes it can be no marvel, that ſhe hath loſt much of her former ſplendor. Maintained eſpecially at the preſent by the Trade of *Aleppo*, to which, beſides ſuch Goods as go up the Water, there paſs yearly many Caravans, or Troops of Merchants, each of them having in it ſome hundreds (if not thouſands) of Camels laden with Commodities. For whoſe ſafe Lodgings, as they paſs, (the ways being generally ill provided for Travellers in thoſe Eaſtern Countries) there are ſome Houſes of Receipt built at the publick Charge, or by ſome ſpecial Benefactor, to preſerve his Memory: moſt of them ſtrong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the Dominions of the *Perſians*, they call *Caravane Rawes*; in the *Turkiſh*, *Canes*. And for communicating the ſucceſs of their buſineſs unto the place from whence they came, they make uſe of Pigeons, which is done in this manner. When the Hen-pigeon ſitteth, or hath any young, they take the Cock, and ſet him in an open Cage; whom when they travelled a days Journey, they let go at liberty, and he ſtraight flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occaſion to ſend any Advertiſement, they tie a Letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by ſome of the Houſe, advertiſed thereby of the Eſtate of the Caravan. The like is alſo uſed betwixt *Ormus* and *Balſora*. But of this enough.

5. *Cteſiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whoſe fall it roſe; occaſioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, ſpeaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the Building of *Seleucia* ſo near unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, Cteſiphontem *juxta tertium ab ea lapidem condidere* Parthi. Firſt Built, ſaith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*; afterwards Beautified and Walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royal of the *Perſian Kingdom*. Many times Beſieged and Aſſaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but moſt commonly without Succeſs: and among others by *Julian* the Apoſtate, that bitter enemy of the Goſpel, who here breathed out his Soul to Satan in theſe dying words, *Viciſti tandem Galilæe*. But *Vardanes* (whoſoever he was) cannot of right be called the firſt Founder of it, who raiſed it rather from the Rubbiſh of an old Foundation: this City being the ſame with that which *Moſes* calleth *Calne*, and *Ezekiel* *Canneh*, *Gen.* 11. and *Ezek.* 27. 23. and therefore rightly ſaid by *Pliny*, to be Built in *Chalonitide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6. *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made near it, to receive the overflowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwiſe might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compaſs 1280 Furlongs, or 160 Miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vaſt and expenceful work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it ſelf was up and in full Proſperity.

7. *Apamia*, A City of *Seleucus*'s foundation alſo, ſituate at the fall of *Piſon* into the River *Tygris*.

8. *Vologeſia*, placed by *Ptolomy* among the Cities of *Chaldæa*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Aſſyria*: Built or Repaired by one of the *Vologeſes*, Kings of *Perſia*, and from him denominated.

9. *Borſippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, memorable for the great Victory which *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch obtained here againſt *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus* (of which more anon) whom having vanquiſhed, he pardoned him (as he ſaith) his life, and gave him the Government of *Carmania*.

10. *Balſora*, a Port-Town to *Babylon*, ſituate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Perſicus*, and conſequently of great Wealth and Trading: the Riches of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and ſome parts of *India*, being landed here, and ſo carried to *Babylon*, and thence up the Water to *Aleppo*. Suppoſed to be the City of *Theredon*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*; Built or Repair'd by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long ſince taken from the *Turk* by *Abas*, the *Perſian*. After the King of *Perſia* in 1622. had taken *Ormus*, the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Portugueſe* came to this place, and ſetled their Factories here: Before this time it was ſubject to the *Turk*. *Frederick Venetus* in 1563. finding it in their hands, and in probability it was won about the ſame time with *Bagdat*, *viz.* 1524. about two Leagues from the City are the Ruins of the ancient City *Theredon*, or *Teredon*; the preſent Pile ſtands half a league from the *Euphrates*, and the Tyde runs up beyond it as far as the Fort of *Gorno*. It Revolted from the *Turks* ſome time ſince, and *Abbas* King of *Perſia* attempted the Conqueſt of it after he had taken *Ormus*, and *Amurath* after he had taken *Bagdat*; but the *Arabians*, with the aſſiſtance of the *Europeans* prevented them from gaining it. *Huſſen Emir* (Prince of *Balſora* in 1652. made it a free Port for all the World, and Governed it with great Order and Juſtice, ſo that it was thronged with all Nations, and was a Center of Trade between the *Indies* and the reſt of *Aſia*: and the Weſt and North as far as *Smyrna*, *Conſtantinople*, and *Moſcow*. He took but four *per Cent*, and yet was able to lay up three millions of Livres in a year, his principal gain ariſing from *Arabian* Horſes, Camels, Dates, and Money remitted. The *Chriſtians* of St. *John* are very numerous here, amounting to about 25000 Families, but degenerated for want of the Scriptures, which the *Mahometans* have taken from them: The ill effects of which are excellently deſcribed by *Tavernier*, Book 2. Chap. 8. *Avicenna*, the great *Arabian* Phyſician was born here in *Anno Chriſti* 980. and died at *Hamada*, aged 58 years. The *Europeans* import Spice, Drugs, and export Wheat, Rice, Drugs, and Horſes: About the year 1570, it was one *Engliſh* mile in compaſs, and was walled with Bricks dried in the Sun; in 1583 the *Turks* had 500 Janizaries in Gariſon in it, but their chief Strength was in thirty well provided Gallies, Armed with Ordnance. From *Ormus* it lies 600 miles. See *Haclait*. *Tom.* 2. pag. 215. 251, 270.

7. *ASSYRIA.*

ASSYRIA is bounded on the East with *Media*, from which parted by the Mountain called *Coatras*; on the Weſt with *Meſopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South with *Suſiana*; and on the North, with ſome part of *Turkomania*: So called from *Aſſur* the Son of *Sem*, by whom firſt Inhabited. But having long ſince loſt that name, as to vulgar ſpeech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinſa*; by *Mercator*, *Sorb*; by the *Turks*, *Arzerum*.

The Country very plain and level, exceeding fruitful, and abounding in Rivers. For beſides *Tigris*, which waſheth one whole ſide thereof, *Ptolomy* aſſigneth to this Country the Rivers of 2 *Lycus*, 3 *Cyprus*, 4 *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increaſing, with their tributary Streams, the greatneſs of *Tigris*.

The People were anciently great Warriours, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the Eaſt; extending their Dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; inſomuch that not the People of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almoſt of this ſpacious Empire, had the name of *Aſſyrians*. The utmoſt Bounds of the *Aſſyrian* Empire to the Weſt was Mount *Taurus*, the leſſer *Aſia* being Subdued after the fall of that Empire, by *Cyrus* the Great: yet in *Syria*, *Paleſtine* and *Ægypt*, it reached weſtward to the *Mediterranean* Sea. The Men for all this exceeding Formal in their Habit, wearing long Robes whch trailed on the very ground, their Hair long, their Hats or Caps Pyramydal, like the *Perſian* Miters; not ſtirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, Rings on their Fingers, and a Scepter in their Hands: and very frequent in their waſhings, eſpecially after Copulation. As for the Women, it was an Ancient Cuſtom with them to expoſe the Faireſt unto Sale in the open Market; and with the Money given for thoſe, to put off ſuch as were deformed, and not ſo amiable. And hence, perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this Leſſon, of giving leſs Portions with ſuch Daughters as will ſell themſelves; but greaſing the fat Sow (as the ſaying is) withthe addition of ſome hundreds; which made the merry fellow ſay, *That the Money were a good match if the Wench were away.*

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took ſuch deep root in that Plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithſtanding the cruel Perſecution raiſed againſt it, by the Kings of *Perſia*: who when they ſaw there was no means to deſtroy it by Violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with Hereſie. And to that end, as alſo to revenge himſelf upon the Emperor *Heraclius*, as Great Champion of the Orthodox Belief againſt *Neſtorianiſm*, *Choſroes* the great King of *Perſia*, inforced all the *Chriſtians* of his Empire unto thoſe Opinions, which he knew that the Emperor condemned; permitting none who were counted Catholicks within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to inſtruct them otherwiſe (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Perſian* Empire) *Neſtorianiſm* prevailed ſo far, that it extended over all the Countries Eaſt of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongſt the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own Patriarch, who reſideth at *Muſul*, now the chief City of this Country; and honoured by his People with the Title of *Jacelich*, miſtaken or pronounced amiſs for Catholick: an attribute given anciently to all Orthodox Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Neſtorians*, were, 1 That there were two Perſons in our Saviour, as well as two Natures; but confeſſing that CHRIST from the firſt inſtant of his Conception, was both God and Man: 2 That the *Bleſſed Virgin* ought not to be called Θεοτόκος or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be *the Mother of God the Son.* 3 That *Neſtorius* condemned for theſe Opinions in the third and fourth General Councils, was an holy Man; for whoſe ſake they condemned Saint *Cyril* his profeſſed *Antagoniſt*, and all thoſe Councils wherein any Cenſure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough (their rejecting Epiſcopal Confirmation excepted only,) As 1. In celebrating the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper with leavened Bread. 2. Communicating in both kinds. 3. Enjoyning no neceſſity of *Auricular* Confeſſion. 4. Contracting Marriages in the ſecond Degree of Conſanguinity. 5. Permitting ſecond and third Marriages unto Men in Orders, after the Death of their firſt Wives. 6. Not praying before the Croſs, nor giving religious Worſhip to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for theſe *Neſtorian* Sectaries, if ſo named aright, conſidering the qualifications added unto their Opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Noſtranes*: the greateſt Sect of *Chriſtians* in all the Eaſt.

The ſolemnities which theſe Chriſtians uſe in contracting Marriage, becauſe not very uſual, I will here relate: Their Wives they never ſee till the Day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her Parents for her. Agreed upon the Buſineſs, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the Bridegroom and his Friends ſtanding on the one ſide; the Bride and her kindred, on the other. When there, the *Caſſiſe*, or Church man biddeth the Bridegroom to put his Hand thorow the hole into the Partition, and to take his Bride by the Hand, which he doeth accordingly: the Mother of the Bride, with a ſharp pointed Inſtrument, made of purpoſe, pricking the Bridegroom's Hand all over, with ſufficient eagerneſs. If when he feeleth the ſmart, he lets go her Hand, they take it for a Sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her faſt, and wring her Hand till ſhe cry again, they take it for a very good *Omen*, and are glad they have ſo well beſtowed her. After the Marriage is conſummate, if a Male-child be born unto them, the Father loſeth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldeſt Son: ſo as if the Father's name be *Moſes* and his Son's name *Joſeph*, the Father is no more called *Moſes* but *Abba Joſeph*, or the Father of *Joſeph*. So highly did they reverence Marriage, and the Fruit thereof, Poſterity.

It was anciently divided into theſe ſix parts, 1 *Arraphachitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; ſo called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the Plantation of *Arphaxad* the Son of *Sem*. 2 *Adiabene*, bordering on *Meſopotamia*, ſo called, *quaſi* Ἀδιάβατος or inacceſſible: becauſe fenced with ſuch unfordable Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, that there was no eaſie coming to it, Διὰ δυσχερείαν τὴν διάβασιν, as it is in *Suidas*: or rather for *Adiavena*, from *Diavas* and *Adiavas*, the chief Rivers of it (the ſame which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus* and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3 *Calacine*, and *Sitacine* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5 *Arbelites*, and 6 *Apolloniates*, from *Apolonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Aſſyria* brought unto our Hand, 1 *Calach*, one of thoſe four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Aſſur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and one of them to which the ten Tribes were tranſplanted by *Salmanaſſar* 2 *Kings*, 17. 6. and 18. 11. of ſuch eſteem in thoſe elder Days, that *Calacine* as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* moſt rightly calleth it, did take name from hence. 2 *Sittace*, ſituate about two Miles from the Banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Suſa*. A City when it gave name to the parts adjoyning, both great and populous; well ſeated in a fruitful Soyl, and well ſhaded with Trees of ſeveral ſorts; ſuppoſed by the ſituation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the firſt four Cities of *Nimrod*'s Kingdom. 3 *Arbela*, on the Banks of the River *Caprus*, built as ſome ſay by *Belus* (or *Belochus*) *Priſchus* an *Aſſyrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth Κυπαρισσῶνα, or *Cupreſſum*, conceived by ſome to be the place where *Noah* framed the Ark. 4 *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* Conqueſt, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwiſe obſervable, but for giving the name of *Appolaniates* to the Country adjacent. Add unto theſe, 5 *Gaugamela*, ſituate in the middle ſpace betwixt *Lycus*, and *Caprus*, memorable for the laſt and greateſt Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Perſia*, who had he made good the Eaſtern Banks of the River *Tigris*, might eaſily have hindred the *Macedonians* from coming over the River being ſo extreamly ſwift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to paſs it, but by linking their Hands and Arms together, and making one entire Body to oppoſe the Current; and therewithal of ſo great depth, that the Footmen were fain to hold their Bows and

Arrows over their Heads, to keep them from being moiſtned and made unſerviceable. But having miſerably loſt this Opportunity by the Cowardiſe of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this Paſs, he was inforced to venture all upon a Battel; drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 Horſe, 200000 Foot, in their account who ſpeak leaſt of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million,) oppoſed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 Foot, and 7000 Horſe of his *Europæans*; but theſe victoriouſly ſucceſsful: 40000 of the *Perſians* ſlain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* ſpeaks of 90000) with the loſs of 300 *Macedonians* only, as is ſaid by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable Victory, a mountain near the place of the Battel, which by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo*, and ſome other Ancients. 6 *Rehoboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is ſaid to have built in *Aſſur*; by ſome ſuppoſed to be *Birrha*; an ancient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering ſo near unto *Meſopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7 *Rheſen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrod*'s building, ſeated by *Moſes* between *Calach* and *Ninive*, *Gen.* 10. 12. and there commended for a great City. Which Character with the ſite hereof, have induced ſome learned Men to think it to be the ſame which by *Xenophon* called *Lariſſa*; ſeated by him on the River *Tigris* much about this place, and ſaid to be a City of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſs, that it was no leſs than two *Paraſangs*, or four Miles in compaſs: the Walls in height a hundred Foot, twenty five in breadth; ſo ſtrongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who beſieged it, could never have taken it, if a caſual Eclipſe of the Sun had not diſcouraged the Defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Lariſſa* for another of the principal Cities. 8 *Ninive*, by the *Greeks* and *Latins* called *Ninus*; firſt built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the Example of *Cain* whoſe Steps he followed; of whom is ſaid, that *he built a City, and called it after the name of his Son* Enoch, *Gen.* 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by ſome aſcribed to *Aſſur*, grounding themſelves on that of *Moſes*, *Gen.* 10. 11. *Out of that Land went forth* Aſſur, *and built* Ninive, *&c.* But I like better of their Judgment, who take *Aſſur* in this place for the name of the Country, and not of the Man; making the Text to ſpeak of *Nimrod*, and to ſay of him, *Et egreſſus eſt in* Aſſur, *&c.* that is to ſay, *And he went forth to* Aſſur *or the Land of* Aſſyria, *and there built* Ninive, Rhehoboth, and the reſt there named. A City ſo inlarged by ſome of the ſucceeding Kings, that it came at laſt to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compaſs 480 Furlongs or 60 Miles; and therefore ſaid in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three Days Journey in Circuit, as indeed it was: accompting 20 Miles for a Days Journey, according to the common eſtimate of thoſe elder times; as alſo of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, in the times ſucceeding. Nor was that of leſs Strength than Greatneſs, the Walls an hundred Foot high, and ſo broad that three Carts might go abreſt on the top thereof: and the whole Walls 1150 Turrets, each of 200 Foot in height: So ſtrong, that it was thought to have been impregnable, eſpecially becauſe of an ancient Prophecy, which ſignified that the Town ſhould never be taken, till the River became an Enemy to it. A Prophecy which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the Seat of his War againſt *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in Arms againſt him; who having beſieged it three Years without hope of Succeſs, at laſt the River overflowing, carried before it twenty Furlongs of the Wall. Which accident ſo terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himſelf in the midſt of his Treaſures, and left the Town to the Beſiegers. Threatned Deſtruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it eſcaped then upon Repentance. But the People going on in their wicked Courſes, it was deſtroyed by *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an incouragement to the *Aſſyrians* to rebel againſt him, as formerly againſt ſome of his Predeceſſors: and ſo deſtroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as himſelf affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, ὡς μηδὲ ὅπου ποτὲ γέγονεν ὁρᾶσθαι λοιπόν, that one could ſcarce diſcern in what place it ſtood. 9 *Moſul* at this time, and for long ſince, the chief of *Aſſyria*; ſeated on the *Tigris*, and raiſed out of the Ruins of *Ninive*: of moſt note for being the ordinary abiding Place of the *Neſtorian* Patriarch, who either in this City itſelf, or the Monaſtery of St. *Hermes* near adjoyning to it, hath his conſtant Reſidence. The *Neſtorians* in this City ſo conſiderable, both in Power and number, that though it be in the Hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Perſians*; yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Chriſtian Churches*, and at leaſt 40000 Souls. A *Sect* ſo maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Biſhop*) for the greatneſs of the Juriſdiction which this Patriarch hath, that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, ſet up an *Anti-Patriarch* againſt him, to whom he gave the Title of the *Catholick* of *Muſal* alſo; to whom the *Neſtorians* dwelling in the Northern Parts of *Meſopotamia*, (if ſome Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do ſubmit themſelves. *Moſul* makes a great ſhew without the Walls, which are of Free-ſtone, but within it is nothing but Ruins, yet it has many Chriſtian Inhabitants, and there is a conſiderable Trade driven in it. The City is not built on the ſame ſide of the *Tigris* the old *Nineve* was; the whole Province is called now by the name of this City, and is Governed by *Turkiſh Baſha*, *Tavernier*, p. 71. 10 *Arzeri* of greater ſtrength than *Moſul*, though of leſs antiquity than repute; from which the whole Province of *Aſſyria* is now called *Arzirum*. And, 11 *Scheberuzal*, at this time of the greateſt note, as being the ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*; who hath 10000 *Timariots*, under his Command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any ſervice, as occaſion is.

8 MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Tigris*, by whom parted from *Aſſyria*; on the Weſt, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia Deſerta*, from which laſt it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* alſo.

In the Scripture it is called moſt commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culta*; but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it; *Aram* or *Syria*, becauſe inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culta*, from the fruitfulneſs and riches of it, exceedingly plentifully ſtored both with Corn and Wine, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for the Life of Man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Meſopotamia Fœlix*. The Southern Parts hereof being barren and full of Deſarts, not having any herbage in them, οὐδὲ ἄλλο δένδρον, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongſt ſome of the ancient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*, partly becauſe ſo like in nature to *Arabia Deſerta*, and partly being planted with *Arabian Colonies*. The name which comprehends both Parts is ſometimes *Syria Tranſ-fluvialis*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*,) of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Aram Narahajim*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Meſopotamia*, or the Country in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the Eaſt, and *Euphrates* on the Weſt and South; the River *Chaboras* or *Aloras*, paſſing alſo through it. The *Latins* generally call it by the ſame name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priſcian* only to ſhew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medamna*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbech*.

As is the Country, ſuch the People, the moſt *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to ſtand by themſelves, but ſtill requiring the addition of ſome neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing

thing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Country. Beholden for their Name in the *North* to *Syria*; in the *South* to *Arabia*: the *Chaldeans* alſo putting in for a ſhare, and challenging thoſe parts which lie next *Aſſyria*, to belong to them. Their Language anciently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Country ſucceſſively ſubjected to the *Babylonians*, *Aſſyrians*, *Medes* and *Perſians*. From them firſt Conquered by the *Romans*, under the Conduct of *Pompey*; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Trajan*; more fully ſetled and confirm'd by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Perſians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themſelves on the Stage of Action, but when once God ſhewed his Mighty Power in their many weakneſſes; and raiſed them up to be a Scourge to the Houſe of *Iſrael*, of which ſee *Judges* 3. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadezar*, King of *Syria Zobah*, in his War againſt *David*; by whom moſt ſhamefully defeated, 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 18. Yet notwithſtanding memorable in the Book of God, for the Birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the Birth of his Children, in that reſpect affording an *Original* to the *Hebrew* Nation.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt Preached here by S. *Thaddæus*, one of the ſeventy Diſciples; *Anno* 43. upon this occaſion. *Abgarus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edeſſa*, one of the chief Cities of this Country, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the Fame of *JESUS*, beſeeched him by a ſpecial Meſſage to come and help him: whereunto our *Saviour* made this Anſwer, *That he could not viſit him in perſon, the things he was to do, whilſt upon the Earth, being to be performed only in the Land of* Canaan; *but that he would take care of his health in convenient time.* Accordingly, not long after his *Aſcenſion*, St. *Thomas* the Apoſtle, by immediate Revelation from our Saviour, ſent *Thaddæus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Goſpel Preached, and many of the Nation Converted to it: the Acts whereof together with the Copies of the ſeveral Letters from *Abgarus* to *Chriſt*, and from *Chriſt* to him, preſerved in the *Archives* of *Edeſſa*, were by *Euſebius* Tranſlated out of the *Syriack*, and inſerted into the Body of his *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 14. Once planted, it found good encreaſe, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (ſo called from his Birth and abode in *Syria*) took upon him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the Unity of Natures in Chriſt our Saviour. Whoſe followers finding the *Patriarchs* of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the moſt part further off; ſetling themſelves in *Babylonia*, and *Meſopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers, Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are alſo ſubject, who takes unto himſelf the Title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is ſucceſſively called *Ignatius*, as is the undoubted Succeſſor of that Saint and Martyr; ſuperiour in that regard to the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*, who is alſo a *Jacobite*. The Patriarchal See, fix'd in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, near the City of *Merdin*; but the Reſidence of the Patriarchs for the moſt part, at *Caramit*. The number of *Chriſtians* under his Obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced ſince unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, diſtinct from all other *Chriſtians* is, 1 The acknowledgment but of one Nature, one Will, and one Operation, (as there is but one Perſon) in Chriſt our Saviour. 2. In ſigning their Children before Baptiſm, in the Face or Arm, with the ſign of the Croſs imprinted with a burning Iron. 3. Retaining *Circumciſion*, and uſing it in both Sexes. 4 Affirming the Angels to conſiſt of two Subſtances, Fire, and Light. And 5. Honouring the Memory of *Dioſcorus* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syrus*, condemned by the Ancient Councils. The Points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*:

1. Not enjoyning the People the neceſſity of *Confeſſion* to a Prieſt, before they admit them to Communicate.

2. Not admitting *Purgatory*, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt* in both kinds.

4. Allowing the Marriage of Prieſts; And

5. Teaching that the Souls of Men deceaſed, are not admitted preſently to the *Viſion* of *God*, but remain ſomewhere in the Earth, to expect Chriſt's coming. In which laſt, (ſetting aſide the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; ſo to the firſt (touching the unity of Natures in our Saviour Chriſt) they have of late added ſuch qualifications, as poſſibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe.

Chief Rivers of this Country (beſides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1 *Chaboras*, which riſing in Mount *Maſius*, paſſing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; as alſo doth 2 *Singarus*, by *Pliny* called *Maſca*, ariſing out of the Mountain *Syngarus*; which is but the more Weſtern part of the ſaid Mount *Maſius*. Which names of *Maſca*, *Maſius*, and the *Maſieni*, (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) ſhew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place *Maſch*, or *Meſech*, one of the Sons of *Aram*, in theſe parts of the Country.

It was divided anciently into, 1 *Anthemaſia*. 2 *Chalſitis*. 3 *Caulanitis*. 4 *Accabene*. 5 *Ancorabitis*. And 6 *Ingine*: each part containing ſeveral Cities or Towns of note. Theſe ſix when Conquered by the *Romans*, reduced unto two Provinces only, *viz.* 1 *Meſopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Maſius*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2 *Oſrhoene*, on the North: This laſt ſo named from one *Oſrhoes*, the Prince, or Governor of theſe parts in the time of the *Perſians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief place of the whole is, 1 *Edeſſa*, the Metropolis of *Oſrhoene*, ſituate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth through the midſt of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the ſtory of *Abgarus*, before related, among Church Hiſtorians: and in the *Roman* Hiſtories, for the death of the Emperor *Caracalla*, ſlain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his Guard. The occaſion this. The Emperor conſcious to himſelf of his own unworthineſs, imployed one *Maternianus* to enquire among the Magicians in the Empire, who was moſt likely to Succeed him: by whom accordingly advertiſed that *Macrinus* was to be the Man; The Letters being brought to *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the reſt of the Pacquet to the hands of *Macrinus*, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperor's Perſon) that he might open them, and ſignifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leiſure. Finding by this the danger in which he ſtood, he reſolved to ſtrike the firſt blow; and to that end entruſted *Martialis*, one of his Centurions, with the Execution; by whom the Emperor was here killed as he withdrew himſelf. *Levandæ veſicæ gratiâ*, as my Author hath it. So impoſſible a thing it is to avoid ones Deſtiny; ſo vain a thing for any Prince to think of deſtroying his Succeſſor; and therefore it was very well ſaid to *Nero*, in the times of his Tyranny, *Omnes licet occideris, Succeſſorem tuum occidere non potes*, that though he cauſed all the Men of Eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Succeſſor would ſurvive him, and eſcape the blow. But to return unto *Edeſſa*, in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrarchies* of the weſtern Chriſtians, when they firſt Conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*: the two firſt Governours or *Tetrarchs*, ſucceſſively Succeeding *Godfry* of *Bouillon* in the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. But in the year 1142. It was again recovered by *Sanguin* the *Turk*, Father of

Noradine Sultan of *Damaſcus*; and by the loſs thereof, no fewer then three Arch-Biſhopricks withdrawn from the Obedience of the See of *Antioch.*

Eraſſa. The *Greeks* Re-built this City, and called it *Callirrhoe* from the fair Streams about it, or the Fountains in it. In the *Roman* times it was called *Juſtinopolis*: It is now called *Rhoa, Orpha, Urpha*, and *Urfa.* It is by St. *Jerome* ſaid to be the *Erech*, or Ὀρεχ, Built by *Nimrod, Gen.* 10. in *Abraham*'s time called *Haran*, or *Charan*; rebuilt by *Seleucus* King of *Aſſyria, A. M.* 3653. Taken by the *Saracens* firſt, *Anno Chriſti* 637. loſt to the *Turks* in 1142. or as ſome others ſay, in 1150. This City was the Seat of *Zenobia*, one of the moſt famous Queens that has lived ſince the Creation; it is after all a great City at this day, and the Capital of *Diarbeck*, or *Meſopotamia.*

2. *Cologenbar*, another ſtrong piece adjoining, Beſieged on the taking of *Edeſſa*, by the ſame *Sanguin*, who was here ſtabbed in a drunken quarrel by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort ſaved for that time.

3. *Niſibus*, ſituate ſomewhat to the Eaſt of Mount *Maſius*, called alſo *Antiochia Migdoniæ*, from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth through it, and afterwards *Conſtantia*, from *Conſtantius* the Son of *Conſtantine.* A City of great note in thoſe elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Meſopotamia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called: which being Beſieged by *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*, (*Conſtantius* Ruling in the Eaſt) and in no ſmall danger to be loſt, was gallantly defended by *James*, the then Biſhop of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not only, *Epiſcopum Civitatis, ſed Principem & Ducem*, not the Biſhop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 31. So little inconſiſtency was there found in thoſe early days, betwixt the *Epiſcopal* Function and Civil Buſineſs, that the Biſhops were not interdicted from the Acts of War, when the neceſſities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after moſt unworthily delivered to the ſaid *Sapores*, by the Emperor *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in ſhort time, the loſs of the Province. It is at this day a conſiderable City, and an Arch-Biſhop's See, and the Capital of a *Turkiſh* Prefecture, called a *Sanguiack*, and now call'd *Nesbin* by the *Turks.*

4 *Ur*, Seated on the Eaſt of *Niſibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and ſo placed by *Ammianus* who had Travelled this Country; conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur of the Chadees, Gen.* 11.28. either becauſe the *Chaldees* were in thoſe days poſſeſſed of the place, or becauſe the name of *Chaldæa* did comprehend alſo thoſe parts of this Country which lay towards *Tigris*, as was ſhewn before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Meſopotamia*, was rather ſituate in this Coaſt where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, then betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldæa* and the *Perſian* Gulf, where moſt Writers place it, may appear probable for the reaſons which are here ſubjoyned. 1 Becauſe it is ſaid *Joſhua*, Chap. 24. 12. That *Terah* the *Father of Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt *on the other ſide of the Flood*; that is to ſay, on the further ſide of the River *Euphrates* and that to ἀπ' ἀρχῆς as the *Septuagint*; *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*, in the firſt beginning. Which cannot be underſtood of any *Ur*, placed on, or near the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, thoſe being on this ſide of that River. 2 Becauſe all the reſt of *Abraham*'s Anceſtors from *Phaleg* downward, were ſeated in the Northern parts of *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*; and it were ſtrange that *Terah* ſhould be planted ſo far from the reſt of his Kindred. 3 Becauſe from *Ur* in *Meſopotamia*, near the Banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*; whereas if he had dwelt (as ſome ſay he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, his way had been directly Weſt thro' *Arabia Deſerta*, and not to have Travelled with his Family ſo far North as *Haran*, and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, croſſing *Euphrates* twice with his Herds and Cattel. 5 *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove, when he went from *Ur*; and from which *Abraham* did remove, when he went towards *Canaan*, ſo named in memory of *Haran* the Son of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Craſſus*, that wealthy *Roman.* Whoſe Eſtate (beſides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three Months Corn diſtributed amongſt the Poor) amounted to 7100 Talents which comes in our Mony to one Million 331250*l.* But all his Wealth could not preſerve him from the Slaughter, ſlain near this City with the routing of his Army alſo, by *Herodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

> —— —— *miſerando funere Craſſus*
> *Aſſyrias Latio maculavit ſanguine Carros.*
> Which may be *Engliſhed* to this purpoſe,
> By a defeat lamented *Craſſus* ſtains
> With *Roman* blood the *Aſſyrian Carras* Plains.

Called the *Aſſyrian Carre* by Poetical licence, becauſe the *Aſſyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no leſs memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the Moon, Worſhipped here (but in no place elſe) under both *Sexes*: ſome honouring it as a Female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the ſhape and dreſs of a Man, and called *Deus Lunus.* But with this Fortune and Succeſs, as ſaith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam fœmineo nomine putabat nuncupandum, is mulieribus ſemper inſerviat*: that they who Worſhipped it in the form of a *Woman*, ſhould be always ſubject to their Wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui vero Marem Deum crederet, is Uxori dominetur*: but he that Worſhipped it as a Man, ſhould preſerve the Maſtery. 6 *Amida*, near the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Meſopotamia*, when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*; much beautified by *Conſtantius* Son of *Conſtantine*, by whom named *Conſtantia.* But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great ſtrength, as a Frontier Town againſt the *Perſians*, and by them much aimed at. Honoured of late times with the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Chriſtians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cauſe alſo made the dwelling of the *Pſeudo-Patriarch* of the *Neſtorians* (or *Noſtranes*) of the Popes Erection; and the chief Seat alſo of the *Baſſa* or other Officer, governing this Country for the *Turks*, by whom called *Caramit*, or *Rara Amida*, that is to ſay, *Amida the Black*, becauſe it was Walled with black ſtone. This City is called *Diarbequir* as well as *Caramit*, by the *Turks*, and from it the whole Province is called *Diarbech.* It is ſituate (ſaith a late Traveller, who ſaw it) on the right ſide of the *Tigris*, upon a riſing ground, and is encompaſſed with double walls, ſtrengthned with ſixty Towers. It has three Gates, one of which has an Inſcription in Greek and Latin, with the name of *Conſtantine* in it; It has two or three fair Piazza's and a beautiful Moſque, which was once a *Chriſtian* Church. The Soil about it is good, yielding Bread and Rich Wine in abundance, and very cheap. The City is well Peopled, having in it about 20000 *Chriſtians.* The Baſſa of this place is one of the *Viſiers*, and is able to bring 20000 Horſe into the Field. *Anno Chriſti* 359, the *Romans* received near this place a great Defeat from *Sapores*, King of *Perſia*, who took this City from *Conſtantius* (and *Julian*, Rebelling ſoon after againſt him) forced him to a diſhonourable Peace, in the year 361. which was the laſt year of *Conſtantius*'s Reign, *Tavernier*, page 104. The Turkiſh Governour a *Beglerbeg*, has a Revenue of 1200660 Aſpers. *Rycaut*, page 52. 7 *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaborus* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*, mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arrianus*;

and by *Ptolemy* miſtakingly called *Pharga*; the Seat or firſt Plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abraham*'s Anceſtors. *Serug*, another of them, giving name to 8 *Sarug*, about a days Journey off from *Haran*, ſpoken of by ſome latter Writers. 9 *Syngara*, on the River ſo named, a fortified City in the times of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *Lib.* 20. 10 *Bezabde*, mentioned by the ſame Author, by whom ſaid to have been a very ſtrong Fort, ſeated on a pretty high Hill, and bending towards the Banks of *Tigris*, before whoſe Times it had anciently been called *Phænicha*. Both theſe places were taken by *Sapores* King of *Perſia*, in the Year 360. 11 *Verta*, ſuppoſed to have been the work of *Alexander the Great*, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unacceſſible; in vain beſieged by *Sapores* the *Perſian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The ſame perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolemy*. 12 *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, is the *Patriarchal* See of the *Jacobite* Sectaries. The Cities of this Province that are now in being are recorded thus by *Tavernier*, p. 142. *Bir.* 2 *Car-emir* or *Caramit*, and *Diarbequir*. 3 *Ourfa*. 4 *Moſul*. 5 *Gezire*, and 6 *Merdin*. *Bir* is in probability the ſame with *Virta* or *Birtha*; above it is ſeated on the Eaſt ſide of the *Euphrates*, and Paſſengers croſs to it in Ferry-Boats. The Inhabitants call it *Berygeon*; it is large, and built on the Brow of an Hill; below upon the River ſtands a Caſtle, which has one Tower that ſcowrs the River with 8 or 9 *Culverins*; in the higheſt part ſtands another Caſtle, in which the Governor reſides, who is an *Aga*, and has under him a Gariſon of 200 *Janizaries*, and 400 *Spahies*: The City is ſmall and ill built, but it has plenty of Bread, Wine, and Fiſh; *Tavernier*, p. 67. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. p. 213, 251. *Ourfa* is deſcribed in *Edeſſa*; *Moſul* is placed above by our Author in *Aſſyria*. *Gezire* is a ſmall City, 20 Miles N. of *Nesbin*, built upon an Iſland in the *Tigris*, over which there is a Fair Bridge of Boats, and it is under a Beggar Prince of its own: Their beſt Trade is Galls and Tobacco, which grow in vaſt quantities in the Plains of *Taurus*, from whence it is brought to this City, and ſo tranſported thence into *Turky*. Theſe Two Merchandizes make this City exceeding Rich. 6 *Merdin* lies in the Confines of the Greater *Armenia*, 20 *German* Miles from *Caramit* to the *Eaſt*; it is a little City built on a Mountain well walled, having a Fair Fountain repleniſhed from the Caſtle, which ſtands on the *North* ſide of the City; on a Commanding Ground in it lives a Baſha, who has under him a Gariſon of 200 *Spahies*, and 400 *Janizaries*, *Tavernier*, p. 69. The *Nubian Geographer* reckoneth 7 *Cuſa*, as a City of this Province, which is by others aſcribed to *Chaldæa*; this was anciently a great and a populous City, and was the Reſidence of the *Caliph*, before they built *Bagdat*, renowned alſo and much frequented by the *Perſians*, becauſe *Ali* the Son-in-Law of *Mahomet* was buried here, who is their Patron, and to whom they made Pilgrimages yearly; but the latter Kings of *Perſia* have turned their Devotion another way, to avoid paying Tribute to the *Turks*, by which the City is become very ſmall and poor, and almoſt deſolate, it wanting Proviſions and good Water, *Tavernier* pag. 62. The firſt Inhabitants of theſe Countries, though united from the firſt beginning under the ſame Princes and Form of Government, came from ſeveral Families; all the Three Sons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the Poſterity of *Chus* the Son of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*; with whom *Cheſed* the Son of *Nachor*, of the Houſe of *Sem*, intermingling Families; or being the Author of their Language, or of ſome other ſignal Benefit, gave to them the Name of *Caſdim*, whence came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, and thoſe of *Arphaxad*'s Poſterity, intermingled with the Sons of *Maſh* the Son of *Aram*, came the *Meſopotamians* and *Aſſyrians*. And that *Japhet* alſo and his Children may put in for a part, the Neighbourhood of the *Medes* and *Albaneſe* deſcended from him, makes it ſomewhat probable.

But whatſoever Parents they deſcended from, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, made ſo bold with them, as to bring them under his Command; planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Calne*; in *Aſſyria*, *Ninive*, *Rehſem* and *Calach*; and finally *Rehoboth* (if that were *Birtha*, as ſome think it was) in *Meſopotamia*. By theſe ſtrong Forts he curbed the Native, and aſſured his Power; being the firſt that altered the Paternal Form of Government, and drew unto himſelf the Government of ſeveral Nations, not having any dependance upon one another. The Foundation thus laid by him, his Succeſſors ſoon raiſed the Building to a wondrous height, advancing the *Aſſyrian* Empire from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River *Indus*, and that too in a ſhorter time than could be imagined, but that the World was then divided into petit States, not cemented together with the ligaments of Power and Policy. For tho there be little found of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*, but that he ſpent moſt part of his time in draining the Marſhes, and making firm Ground of thoſe vaſt Fens which lay near to *Babylon*, which were Works of Peace; yet by thoſe and the like Works of Peace, he ſo ſetled his Affairs at home, that he gave his Son *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad; who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greateſt and moſt powerful of all that Line, extending his Dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caſpian Sea* to the *Southern* Ocean. His Succeſſors we ſhall find in the following Catalogue of

The *Aſſyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.

1798 1 *Nimrod*, called by ſome *Saturnus Babylonius*, the Son of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the firſt who altered the Paternal Government, and uſurped Dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperial City.

1845 2 *Belus* or *Jupiter Babylonius*, the Son of *Nimrod*, whoſe Image was worſhipped by the old Idolaters under the Name of *Bell* and *Baal*. 62.

1907 3 *Ninus*, the Son of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Perſian* Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.

1959 4 *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, ſubdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* alſo, ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain by their King *Staurobates*. Of this great Lady it is ſaid, That ſhe was born in *Acalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and expoſed to the Fury of Wild Beaſts. But being born not to die ſo ingloriouſly, ſhe was brought up by Shepherds, and at full age preſented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in Marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the Wars, ſhe fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her Perſon and Spirit, took her to his Bed. This bred in him a greater Affection towards her, ſo that he granted her at her Requeſt the Command of the Empire for Five Days; making a *Decree*, That her Will in all things ſhould be punctually performed: Which Boon being gotten, ſhe put on the Royal Robes, and (as ſome Writers do report) commanded the King to be ſlain. Having thus gotten the Empire, ſhe exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army conſiſting of one hundred thouſand Chariots of War, Three Millions of Foot, and half a Million of Horſe. A Woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her inſatiable Luſt : in which, if the *Greek* Writers ſay true (as we have no reaſon to believe it of ſo gallant a Woman) ſhe was very guilty.

2001 5 *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.
2039 6 *Arias* 30.
2069 7 *Arabius* 40.
2109 8 *Belus* II. 30.
2139 9 *Amamitrites*.
2177 10 *Belochus Priſcus* 35.
2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called alſo *Balæus* 52.
2264 12 *Altades* 32.
2296 13 *Mamitus* 30.
2356 14 *Mancaleus* 30.
2326 15 *Spherus* 20.
2376 16 *Mancaleus* II. 30.
2406 17 *Sparetus* 40.
2446 18 *Aſcatades* 40.
2486 19 *Amintes* 45.
2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45.
2556 21 *Bellopares* 30.
2586 22 *Lamprides* 22.
2618 23 *Saſares* 20.
2638 24 *Lampares* 20.
2668 25 *Panmas* 45.
2713 26 *Scromas* 19.
2732 27 *Mitreus* 27.
2759 28 *Tatanes* 32.
2791 29 *Tautes* 40.
2831 30 *Tineus* 30.
2861 31 *Dercillus* 40.
2901 32 *Eupales* 38.
2939 33 *Loaſthines* 45.
2984 34 *Pyrithiades* 30.
3014 35 *Ophrateus* 20.
3084 36 *Ophraganeus* 50.
3084 37 *Aſcraſapes* 24.
3126 38 *Sardanapalus*, by *Euſebius* called *Tonoſcoes*, the laſt King of this Race. Of which, being 38 in all, there is ſcarce any thing remaining but the very names, regiſtred in this order by *Beroſus*, or rather by Frier *Annius* a Monk of *Viterbium* in *Tuſcany*, who hath thruſt upon the World the Fancies of his own Brain, under the Name of that Ancient Hiſtorian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son ; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants ſubdued the *Arians*, *Bactrians* and *Caſpians*, but was otherwiſe a man of effeminate and unkingly Carriage: And therefore is conceived to be the Elder *Bacchus*, ſo much celebrated amongſt the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the Second, who recovered that Country which afterwards was called *Judæa*, to the *Aſſyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predeceſſor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the Sword of *Abraham*,) and ſubdued many other Nations.

3. *Belochus Priſcus*, the Tenth King, who by ſome Writers is ſaid to be the Author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auſpicium* : For of Sooth-ſaying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auſpicium*, *quaſi Aviſpicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the Right Hand or on the Left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *Avi ſiniſtrâ*, good luck, becauſe in giving, the Right Hand is oppoſite to the Receivers Left) or from the number of Birds, whence *Romulus* had promiſed to him the Empire before his Brother, becauſe he had ſeen the double number of Vultures ; or laſtly, from the nature of them: whence the ſame *Romulus*, ſeeing the *Vultures*, was (ſaith *Florus*) *ſpei plenus urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi ſanguini & prædæ aſſuetæ aves pollicebantur*.

2. *Aruſpicium*, *ab Aras inſpiciendo*, in which the *Sooth-ſayers* obſerved whether the Beaſt to be ſacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of natural Colour, exulcerate *&c.* or whether any part were wanting. All Hiſtories afford variety of Examples in this kind ; I need give no particular Inſtance. A kind of *Divination* ſaid to be practiſed firſt by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians*; inſtructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this Myſtery, and ſo vaniſhed.

3. *Tripudium*, ſo called *quaſi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or ſhaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future ſucceſſes, by the rebounding of Crumbs caſt unto Chickens. We have an Inſtance of this in the Life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being ſeditiouſly buſie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was forewarned by the keeper of his Chickens to deſiſt from that Enterprize; becauſe when he had thrown the Crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the ſame without eating went back again; which was taken for a ſign of Ill-luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been good : But *Tiberius* ſlighting the Advertiſement, and purſuing his Deſign, was the ſame day ſlain.

4. *Augurium*, ſo called *ab avium garritu*, was a Prediction from the chirping and chattering of Birds ; as alſo from the Sound and Voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occaſion. In which latter kind the death of *Cæſar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his Houſe; and the poyſoning of *Germanicus* by the ſounding of a Trumpet of its own accord. In the former, an Owl ſcreeching in the Senate-houſe, was deemed ominous to *Auguſtus* ; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his Houſe with great noiſe and clamour, was judged to be fatal to that great Favourite ; and ſo it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the Thirteenth King, who revived again the ancient Diſcipline, corrupted by the ſlothfulneſs and effeminacy of his Predeceſſors, and by the terror of his Name awed the *Ægyptians*.

5. *Aſcades*, the Eighteenth King, more abſolute in *Syria* and the Weſtern Parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapaluus*, the laſt King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern ſo great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conſpire againſt him. By whom, aſſociated by *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was beſieged in the City of *Ninive* ; and there reduced unto ſuch Extremities, that gathering his Treaſures all together, he burnt himſelf and them in one Funeral Pile. *Eo ſolum facto virum imitatus*, as is ſaid by *Juſtin*. The Treaſure which he is ſaid to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thouſand Millions of Talents of Silver ; which in our *Engliſh* Money comes to Twenty Thouſand and Five Hundred Millions of Pounds. A Maſs of Money, which as it muſt be long in gathering, ſo probably it had not ſeen the Sun in many Years, and therefore grown ruſty, might require a Fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his Life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*. It may be in ſpight unto his Enemies, and it is poſſible it might be in policy, that ſo great a Treaſure not falling to the poſſeſſion of his Foes, might ſo much the more diſable them from making reſiſtance againſt, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Succeſſors. For it is of all things moſt fooliſh, both to loſe our Treaſure, and with it to enrich our Adverſaries. On which conſideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian* Fleet at *Gades*, and the *Genoeſe* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their Lading might not come into the poſſeſſion of their Enemies, the *Engliſh* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, and *Perſia*, with the confining Provinces ; *Belochus* ſtrengthened himſelf in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Aſſyria*.

The new Kings of *Aſſyria*, and *Chaldæa.*

A. M.

3146 1 *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new Monarchy, or Race of Monarchs.

3194 2 *Phul Aſſur*, deſtroyed *Galilee*, and ſubdued the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*; the ſame who is called *Tiglath Pileſer* in the Holy Scriptures.

3217 3 *Salmanaſſar*, who Deſtroyed *Samaria*, and Ruined the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonaſſar* of the Chronologers.

3227 4 *Senacherib*, whoſe Blaſphemous Hoſt was vanquiſhed by Angels from Heaven, and he himſelf murdered by his two Sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7.

3233 5 *Aſſarbaddon*, who Revenging his Father's Death on his Brothers, was Depoſed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*. 10.

3243 6 *Merodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, Succeeded his Maſter in the Throne, conceived by ſome, to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*; by others, to be alſo the ſame King who by his Captain *Holofernes* did ſo plague *Judæa*.

3283 7 *Ben. Merodach*, the Son of *Merodach Baladan*. 21.

3304 8 *Nabopullaſſar*, who vanquiſhed *Pharoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*. 25.

3339 9 *Nabuchodonoſor* the great, by ſome called the *Hercules* of the *Eaſt*, who Conquered *Ægypt* in the life of his Father; with whom he Reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyned alſo with *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*, in ſubverting the proud City of *Ninive*; and in the eighteenth year of his Reign deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*, and carried the People Captive unto *Babylon*. But in the laſt ſeven years of his Reign he was ſo Diſtracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beaſts of the Field; according to the Word of God ſpoken by *Daniel*, Chap. 4. during which time his Son *Evilmerodach*, his Daughter *Niccoris*, with *Nigliſſat* her Husband, and *Laboraſoradach* their Son, Governed his Empire as Protectors; and therefore are by ſome reckoned as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his Senſes, was again reſtored unto the Throne; and died, when he had Reigned in all forty four years.

3383 10 *Evilmerodach*, the Son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, ſlain by *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*. 26.

3409 11 *Balthaſſar*, Son of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabonidus* of *Beroſus*) a Prince of a diſſolute and cruel Nature, was in the latter end of his Reign Aſſailed by *Cyaxares* the Son of *Aſtyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darrius Medus*) and by *Cyrus* the *Perſian*: by whom he was ſlain in the ſeventeenth year of his Reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Perſians*.

A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Belthaſſar*, is the common opinion. But *Joſephus Scaliger* in his learned and induſtrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be ſlain in a Tumult by his own People: who Elected into the Empire a Noble-man of the *Medes*, called in Prophane Stories, *Nabonidus*, in Divine, *Darius Medus*; who after a 17 years Reign was ſlain by *Cyrus* King of the *Perſians*. But by the leave of ſo worthy a Man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced (*Chap.* 27.) *That all Nations ſhould ſerv* Nebuchadnezzar, *and his Son, and his Son's Son*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of ſtrange Blood, and ſo the Nations were not to ſerve him: and in *Balthaſſar*, the ſon's ſon of *Nebuchadnezzar*, was this word accompliſhed. Bu let us examine his Argument, and withall the ſcoffs which very prodigally he beſtoweth on ſuch as maintain the contary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of Chronologers: *boni & diligentes viri*: good ſimple meaning men; *& addunt alia nihil veriora*; are his firſt Complements. *Ut igitur quod Chronologorum eſt, omnes recipiſcant*, &c. therefore that they may repent their ever being Chronologers, he bringeth in *Beroſus*, cited by *Joſephus*, in his firſt Book againſt *Appion*. But *Beroſus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he ſaith the Kingdom of *Balthaſſar* was by the People delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him ſay, a Noble-man of the *Medes*; neither can the Authority of *Beroſus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who, in *Chap.* 6. telleth *Balthaſſar*, that his Kingdom ſhould be *divided among the Medes and Perſians*. His ſecond Argument is drawn from the nature of the word, ἀναδέξατο ϗ Δαρεῖος ὁ Μήδης ἀναδέξατο τὴν ἀρχὴν, as it is in the ſame Chap. *and* Darius *the* Mede *took the Empire*, by which word *took*, is implied (ſaith he) not a forcible Invaſion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we anſwer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his Army conſiſting of *Medes* and *Perſians*, who according to the Word of God, had taken it from *Balthaſſar*, *Darius* being then abſent. *Quid ſi probavero* (ſaith he) *eum cognominatum fuiſſe Medum?* He hath yet one trick more than all theſe; and *Medus* muſt not be the National name, but the ſir-name of *Darius*; which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megaſthenes*, cited by *Euſebius*, in his work *De Præparatione Evangelica*, where he is called Μήδης, συναίτιος ἔςαι Μήδης, &c. an argument of all others the moſt ſlight and trivial. For beſides that Μήδης may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and beſides that it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is diametrically oppoſite to another place of the ſame *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter, where he is called, *Darius, of the Seed of the Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, queſtionleſs he was the ſame with *Balthaſſar*. For beſides that *Joſephus* and *Beroſus* attribute to either of them the Reign of 17 Years, the ſame *Joſephus* (who might beſt know the truth in this caſe) telleth us that *Balthaſſar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Naboandel*, a name not ſo great a ſtranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaliger's Darius*, or *Herodotus's Labinitus*. But in this we muſt pardon *Joſeph*. Scorn and Contradiction was a part of his Eſſence. For had he not been in ſome things ſingular, in all peremptory, he had neither been a *Scaliger*, nor the Son of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joſeph*. to the ſingularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the *Aſſyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this Subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of ſo great an Empire. Succeſſively enſlaved by the *Medes*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Perſians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Perſians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now ſubject: never endeavouring to aſſert in the way of War, or Oppoſition, either their ancient Reputation, or their native Liberties; but ſuffering themſelves to be won, loſt, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelſome Maſters; as if they had no Title to their own Country, but were born to follow the Fortunes of all Pretenders. The reaſon of which is principally to be aſcribed to the form of Government uſed amongſt the *Perſians*. Which was ſo deſpotical and abſolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the People Conquered by them in the nature of Slaves, not ſuffering any to grow great in a ſtate of Inheritance, or to enjoy any place of

Power and Profit under them in the Conquered Provinces, but at the pleaſure of the Prince; as it is now uſed among the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the Great Men having no Alliance among themſelves, and as few Dependants among the People, were never able to make head againſt the Conqueror; but in the fall of the preſent Prince fell, together with him: it being a good Rule of *Machiavel*, that where the Ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in Alliances with themſelves, and well reſpected by the common and inferior People; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other ſide, where the Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of Slaves, there both the Conqueſt will be eaſie, and ſoon aſſured. For to what purpoſe ſhould the Subjects reſiſt the Conqueror, or ſtand any longer to their King, than he ſtands to himſelf, when they are ſure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens than they were accuſtomed to before, and have withal a flattering hope, that their new Maſters may be gentler to them than their former were? It fares no otherwiſe with them than with *Eſop*'s Aſs, which refuſed to take the opportunity of an eſcape from the hands of the Enemy, by which he was taken, becauſe he knew it was not poſſible they ſhould lay more load upon his back than his old Maſter made him bear. To which Condition the *Chaldeans* and *Aſſyrians* being brought by the *Perſians*, and never accuſtomed to the taſte of a better Fortune, have followed the ſame Succeſſes as the *Perſians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another: the particular account of whoſe eſtate we ſhall find in *Perſia*; taking this only for the cloſe, That when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had diſcomfited *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*, *Caramit*, *Merdin*, and the reſt, both in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, ſubmitted to him without any reſiſtance, and received his Gariſons. And for a confirmation of his eſtate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* (who by an old Prerogative had the Nomination, or Confirmation, at the leaſt, of the Kings of *Aſſyria*, and the Sultans of *Ægypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Enſigns, *An.* 1534. incorporating by that means thoſe Regions into his Eſtates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdat* to Command in Chief, and divers *Sanziacks* in their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And tho' the *Perſian* Kings have ſince taken and are ſtill poſſeſſed of ſome places of Importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the ſaid Inveſtiture, and the long poſſeſſion following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Perſian*, tho' ſome pieces of it be poſſeſſed by the *Turks*.

MOUNT TAURUS.

MOUNT TAURUS is a conſtant and continual Ridge of Hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian Seas*; running through the whole length of *Aſia*, from Weſt to Eaſt, and dividing it, as the *Æquator* doth the *Globe*, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriac* and *Chaldean* ſignifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high Mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reaſon of its greatneſs and continued length: yet ſo, that it had other names alſo in ſome parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it paſſed, and on which it bordered. The Courſe whereof is thus ſet down by Sir *Walter Rawleigh*: premiſing only, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Aſia Minor*, near the *Mediterranean*. ‘These Mountains (ſaith he) which ſunder *Cilicia* from the reſt of *Aſia* the leſs, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Amanus*. On the Eaſt ſide of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it ſelf a way through it.) it ſometimes reſumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolomy*'s three firſt Tables of *Aſia*, and ſometimes taketh the name of *Niphathes*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, ſo long as they bound *Armenia* from *Meſopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath alſo cut them aſunder, they continue the name of *Niphathes* altogether, until they ſeparate *Aſſyria* and *Media*, but then they call themſelves *Coatras*: altho' between the upper and lower *Media*, they appear not always, but are ſeen diſcontinued, and broke in pieces: ſuch parts of it as are found in the middle of that Country, being called *Orantes*; thoſe which lie more towards the Eaſt being named *Coronus*, out of the Southern parts whereof iſſueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the ancient *Perſia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eaſtward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians*, their proper Countries; and afterwards change themſelves into the Mountains of *Seriphi*, out of which riſeth the River *Maurgus*. And now beginning to draw towards the end of their Courſe, they firſt make themſelves the South Borders of *Bactria*, and are then known by the name of *Parapamiſus*; and after take unto themſelves the name of *Caucaſius*, where the famous Rivers, *Indus*, *Hydaſpis*, and *Zaraedrus*, have their firſt beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imaus*; whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and 37 Degrees of Latitude, and the 140 Degree of Longitude: known by no other name than this, till finally they terminate their Courſe in the *Indian* Seas. So far, and to this purpoſe, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient Writers could trace the courſe of this Mountain, no further than the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet latter Obſervations follow it to the Wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucaſus* being not known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Naugrecot*. But this is to be underſtood only of the main Body of theſe Mountains, which hold on in an even courſe from Weſt to Eaſt; not of thoſe Spurs and Branches of it, which ſhoot either to the North, or South: ſuch as are the *Anti-Taurus* in ſome parts of the *leſſer Aſia*; the *Gordiæan* Hills, and the *Montes Moſchici*, with thoſe which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Pariardri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which ſheweth it ſelf on the North-eaſt of *Aſſyria*, with divers others.

In ſuch a continual Courſe of Mountains it muſt needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not eaſily ſubdued, nor ſo ſoon reduced unto civility as ſuch who were poſſeſſed of Places leſs defenſible, and fitter for commerce and traffic with the reſt of Mankind. And they continued in theſe late times, the laſt which were brought under by the *Turk* and *Perſians*, the mightieſt

eſt Monarchs of thoſe Parts ; though bordering on, or totally environed with their Dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance : one towards the Weſt, where it cloſeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major* ; the other towards the Eaſt, ſeparating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to deſcribe them by, we will call the firſt the Kingdom of *Aladeules*, and the laſt the Kingdom of *Bahaman* ; according to the names of the two laſt Kings.

1 The Kingdom of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it ſelf as far towards the Eaſt, as to the Banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Meſopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a People naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing than their want of all things ; who as Men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themſelves by *Husbandry* : and therefore gave themſelves to *grazing*, breeding on their Paſtures ſome ſtore of Horſe and Camels which they ſold to others, but eſpecially maintaining themſelves and their Families by hunting and ſtealing. Suppoſed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the *leſſer Aſia*, which by long and continual Wars in the former Ages, were forced to forſake their dwellings, and for ſafety of their Lives to fly to theſe unpeopled and deſolate Mountains. Where ſearching every Hill and Dale, and following the Opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildeſt *Temperature* of the Air, and moſt chearful Aſpect of the Sun, they built in many places poor Villages, and afterwards ſome better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, ſo called as it is conceived from the River *Marſias*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Cælen*, paſſeth by the ſame, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates* : Near unto the Confines of this Kingdom, lies the ancient City, now call'd *Orpha*, of old *Edeſſa*, as is ſuppoſed, becauſe as yet there remain certain Monuments in Latin Letters, erected by *Baldwin* King of *Jeruſalem*, and Brother of *Godfrey* the firſt King of the Weſtern Chriſtians, who is ſaid to have taken *Edeſſa*, and there to have Reigned. Not far from thence is alſo the ancient City of *Amida*, now call'd *Carimida*, ſeated between the two great Rivers of *Euphrates* and *Tigris* in *Meſopotamia*, now called *Diarbech*. *Knowles*. So that this ſmall Kingdom lies on the North of *Meſopotamia*, in the Confines of *Armenia*.

When it was made a Kingdom firſt, it is hard to ſay, the Kings hereof being mean and inconſiderable in the eye of the World, not worth the conquering ; and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories : nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himſelf with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The laſt was *Aladeules*, ſo much ſpoken of in the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by ſome Writers to have been the Author of ſuch a *Paradiſe*, as we ſhall find deſcribed when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Perſia* ; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him moſt really and truly known, in the Stories of the former times, was the ſtout Oppoſition which he made againſt the *Turks*, in their Wars with *Perſia*. He had before given no ſmall check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in his conqueſt of the *Caramanian* Kingdom ; and no leſs troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his *Perſian* Wars, impeaching what he could the greatneſs of the *Ottoman* Family : Fought with by *Selymus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of Courage, till betrayed by *Alis Beg*, General of his Horſe, and ſeeing his Army terrified by the ſhot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flie. But being at laſt taken, and put to Death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a *Turkiſh* Province, *Anno* 1515. and ſo continueth to this Day. *Knowles* his *Turkiſh* Hiſtory, p. 353.

2 The Kingdom of *BAHAMAN* was ſituate more towards the Eaſt amongſt the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was ſaid. The Mountains in thoſe parts ſo high, that Travellers at the end of a two Days Journey, may diſcern the *middle Region* of the Air to be beneath them : exceeding troubleſome to aſcend, about 50 Miles in height when once got to the top, but more dangerous by reaſon of the Rocks and *Precipices*, in the going down : full of inhoſpitable Streights, and ſo cold and barren, that were not *Soveraignty* a temptation above all Reſiſtance, no Man would take upon him the command of ſo poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it ſparkle in the Night, like the Hill *Veſuvius*, in *Italy*, by means whereof here are many *Hot-Bathes*, three of them walled about, two open ; to which reſort unſound and decrepit People, in very great Multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary Road or Paſs betwixt *Omael*, the laſt Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Damoan* the firſt of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Reyna*, where he had a Caſtle ſo built upon the beſt Advantages of Art and Nature, that it ſeemed invincible ; adorned above with Gardens, Flowers, and moſt pleaſant Fruits ; and furniſhed beneath with a Rivulet of pureſt Water, which pleaſantly paſſing thorow the Caſtle, fell into the *Valleys*. A Caſtle of ſo large a Circuit, that beſides the King's Family or Court, it was able to admit a Gariſon of 10000 Men.

The laſt King hereof was the foreſaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long deſcent of Royal Anceſtors, comparing for antiquity with the *Perſian Sophies* : who though ill-neighboured on both ſides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Perſia* on the other ; yet had they with great Fortune, Policy, and Valour, maintained their *Royalites* againſt all Pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Perſian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a Quarrel with *Bahaman* ; pretending that by the opportunity of his ſituation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his Progreſs towards the *Hyrcanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which riſing from Mount *Taurus*, watered and enriched his *Perſian* Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected ; yet it was cauſe enough of Quarrel that he might ſo do : and therefore is beſieged in his Caſtle of *Reyna*, with an Army of 30000 Men. Finding no poſſibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Perſians* proceeds by *Treachery*, invites the old King into his Camp under Colour of Parley, and by this means drew his two Sons out of the Caſtle to the *Parley* alſo. Whom having got into his Power, he firſt cauſed their Heads to be cut off ; and after making uſe of their Seals and Signets, obtains a ſurrender of the place, and with it the poſſeſſion of this mountainous Kingdom, *Anno* 1601. or thereabouts, united ever ſince to the Crown of *Perſia*. This Relation is tranſcribed from Mr. *Herbert's Travels* into *Perſia*, Pag. 108.

OF TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Media*, and the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*, who from hence made their firſt Expedition for the Conqueſt of *Perſia*, and after ſpread themſelves over all thoſe parts of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, now in their Poſſeſſion. A Country which conſiſteth of four ſeveral Provinces, each Province having to its ſelf its particular Story; and therefore we muſt look upon it, as it is now divided into thoſe four Parts, that is to ſay, 1 *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and ſpecially ſo called; 2 *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3 *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4 *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1 *ARMENIA MAJOR*.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Media*, and ſome part of the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the *leſſer Aſia*; on the North, with *Colchis* or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Meſopotamia*, and ſome part of *Aſſyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Aram Mini*, or the *Minni of Syria*: but as others ſay, *quaſi Har Mini*, that is to ſay *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini*, or *Minni*, being a Region of this Tract, mentioned by *Jeremy* the Prophet, *Chap.* 51. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat* and *Askenaz*, which ſhew the ſituation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* which addd to it for diſtinction ſake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the firſt ſeat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themſelves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Country in the moſt part overſpread with Hills, Branches of thoſe huge Mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful Valleys, liberally furniſhed with Cattel, and good ſtore of Fruits, though much ſubject to deep Snows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better eſtimated than by the frankneſs of *Tigranes*, once King hereof: Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not only very readily laid down that Sum; but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Soldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every *Colonel* a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added ſome part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his Eſtate; yet thoſe being new Acqueſts, and not fully ſetled, were not much likely, for the preſent, to enrich his Coffers: new conquered Provinces being for the moſt part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The People are generally great bodied, of comely perſonage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, but careleſs of honour got by War; merry, deſirous to be at eaſe, and apt to be ſoothed. The Women tall, but homely, of a manly look, moſt of them skilful at their Bow, or ſome other weapon. Their Families for the moſt part great, the Father and all his Poſterity to the third and fourth Generation, living under a Roof; after whoſe Death the eldeſt, whether Son or Brother, hath the chiefeſt Rule. In diet and cloathing all alike, and in moſt Places they are ſaid to be very induſtrious; painful in Tillage, and well ſeen in *Manufactures*, eſpecially rich *Tapiſtries*, *Grograins*, and watered *Chamlets*: with which they traffick into moſt Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahomtans*; priviledged, as they ſay, by a *Charter under Mahomet*'s own Hand, above other *Chriſtians*, and upon that occaſion more diſperſed in the Eaſtern Countries than any Nation in the World, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a Language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not only uſed amongſt them in common talk, but in ſacred Offices: the Scriptures being tranſlated into that Language alſo; and that, as the People do affirm, by the hand of St. *Chryſoſtom*, at ſuch time as (on the ſolicitation of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, his moſt eager Enemy) he was confined to the leſſer *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Arcadius*: to whom alſo they aſcribe the invention of the *Armenian Character*, or Letters ſtill in uſe amongſt them.

They received the *Chriſtian* Faith by the preaching of St. *Bartholomew*, and were anciently of the juriſdiction of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Dioceſe*; which together with the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the *Council* of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchat*. But falling into the Opinion of *Eutyches*, touching one nature only in *CHRIST* our Saviour, they withdrew themſelves long ſince from the Communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater deteſtation than all other Chriſtians, and choſe two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other Opinions which they hold beſides thoſe of *Eutyches* (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe;) and thoſe wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1 Denying *Purgatory*, and Prayers for the Dead. 2 Admitting none to be made *Prieſts* except thoſe that be married. 3 Denying the Body of Chriſt to be really under the *Species* of Bread and Wine. And 4 *Rebaptizing* ſuch as come to their *Communion* from the *Latin* Churches; Are theſe that follow, in which they differ alſo from moſt Churches elſe, *viz.* 1 In receiving *Infants* to the *Lord's Table*, immediately after *Baptiſm*. 2 In abſtaining from *unclean* Beaſts. 3 In faſting on *Chriſtmas*-Day. And 4 In holding their Children over the Fire, as a neceſſary Circumſtance in *Baptiſm*; becauſe *John the Baptiſt* told the People which followed him, that *CHRIST* would Baptize them with the *Holy Ghoſt*, *and with Fire*; in which place he meaneth not *material Fire*, but the lively Purgation of the *Holy Ghoſt*, according to the nature of Fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two *Patriarchs*; whereof the one hath under his *juriſdiction* this *Turcomania*, comprehending 150000 Families, beſides very many *Monaſteries*: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the Leſſer, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The firſt reſiding anciently in *Sebaſtia*, the *Metropolis* of the greater *Armenia*; the ſecond originally at *Melitene*, the *Metropolis* of *Armenia Minor*; but of late at *Sis*, a ſmall City, not far from *Tarſus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the Title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30 Biſhops.

Chief Rivers of this Country, 1 *Araxes*, which riſing out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, firſt runneth Eaſtward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it ſelf towards the *North*: and after a long Courſe is divided in-

into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caſpian* Sea, the other into, 2 *Cyrus*, another great River of this Country. The Fountain of this laſt in Mount *Caucaſus* in the furtheſt North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with, 3 *Cambyſes*, another great River of theſe parts; and ſo together haſten to the *Caſpian* alſo. 4 *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the Garden of *Eden*, hath its Fountain in the hills, which they call *Niphates*, as it is ſaid by *Strabo.* A River of great length and ſwiftneſs. For having forc'd it ſelf a paſſage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the Weſt of *Meſopotamia*, with a ſtream ſo violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* to *Birrah*, a Town on the North-weſt of *Meſopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are fain to come back again by Land, ſelling thoſe Boats for eight Crowns which they bought for fifty at *Bir*; it is gathered firſt into one great ſtream, being above that City divided into ſo many branches that it is called the River with a thouſand heads, but it being here as big as the *Thames* at *Lambeth*, it is here firſt called the *Euphrates.* *Hackluit* Tom. 2. Page 269. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldæa*, it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greateſt Branch of it paſſeth through the City of *Babylon* and ſo into the *Perſian* Gulf, the reſt of it being cut into many Channels, for fear it ſhould overflow and drown the Country, are quite loſt in the Lakes of *Chaldæa.* 5 *Tigris*, a ſwifter ſtream than that whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* Tongue ſignifying an *Arrow*. A River of ſo ſtrong a courſe, that it paſſeth through the Lake *Thonilis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an eaſie paſſage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* born up with *Goat-ſkins*, blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their Voyage thither. It is called *Hiddekel*, in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradiſe*; ſituate in an Iſland made by the embracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their ſeveral branches, riſing originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis* in *Armenia Major*, where now we are. It is preſently almoſt ſwallowed by the gaping Earth; and paſſing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compaſſing the Eaſt parts of *Meſopotamia*, which it divides from *Aſſyria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its firſt and ſecond Birth thus the Poet *Lucan*,

At Tigrin *ſubito tellus abſorbet hiatu,*
Occultoſque tegit curſus; rurſuſque renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to ſay,

Tigris, ſoon ſwallowed by the thirſty Earth,
Finds there a Burial where it had its Birth:
But breaking out at a new Spring, vouchſafes
With the Salt Sea to mix its ſweeter waves.

At *Curna*, a Caſtle ſeated on a Point of Land, the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* joyn. The River in this place is nine *Engliſh* Miles broad; and ſo high the Tides of the Ocean reach, and it is Navigable both ways with eaſe. The overflowing of the River makes the Country produce plenty of Corn, Rice, Pulſe, and Dates. *Hackluit* Tom. 2. Page 270.

Mountains of moſt note, are. 1 *Abos*, glorying in the Fountains of the great River *Araxes.* 2 *Periardes*, or *Periarges*, as *Ptolemy*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or ſpur of the great Mountain *Taurus.* 3 *Udaceſpes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4 Some part of *Anti-Taurus.* 5 The Mountains called *Montes Moſchici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea, which name they took from *Meſech*, or *Moſoch* the Son of *Japhet*, preſerving the remembrance of his Planting there. 6 *Niphates*, one of the Spurs of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is ſaid to iſſue. 7 The *Gordiæan* Mountains, conceived by many Learned Men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof, called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is moſt generally affirmed to reſt. Affirmed by many ancient Writers of the Chriſtian Church, and countenanced not only by *Joſephus* and ſome others of the Elder Hiſtorians; but by the *Septuagint* themſelves: who in the 37th Chapter of *Iſa.* v. 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia.* And be it ſo, let *Ararat* be *Armenia*, and conſequently the Mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark reſted on the *Gordiæan* Mountains, or any other of this Country, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can ſee, that the Garden of *Eden* muſt be looked for in *Armenia* alſo, becauſe ſituate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Thoſe Rivers have indeed their Fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compaſs not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long courſe they encounter each other in the ſpacious Plains of *Babylonia.* And ſo thoſe Mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, becauſe there firſt grown to a diſcernable and ſuper-eminent height above all the Mountains of thoſe parts, became not the reſting place of the Ark, till after a further courſe towards the Eaſt, they were grown to their fulleſt height; which is in thoſe parts of it betwixt *Scythia* and *Perſia*, which are called Mount *Caucaſus*: not that Mount *Caucaſus* which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is ſaid to riſe; but that which lieth on the Eaſt ſide of the *Caſpian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do croſs each other. But of this elſewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the Principal wherof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordiæan* Mountains, called in ſome Writers, *Cordiæi*; from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiena*, but moſt commonly called *Corduene*, Bordering on *Aſſyria.* The Kingdom once of *Zarbienus*, who ſiding with *Lucullus* againſt *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* Murdered with his Wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a ſtately and Magnificent Funeral. 2. The Second Province of note is called *Cotacene*: near the *Montes Moſchici.* 3 *Toſarene* Bordering on the River *Cyrus.* 4 *Colthene*, on the Banks of *Araxes.* 5 *Sophene*, near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*: miſtook by ſome induſtrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Baſiſine*, on the North-weſt, near the Springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each I find no where ſpecified.

Thoſe of moſt conſequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of moſt eſteem in thoſe times, and the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its firſt Foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perſwaſion of *Annibal*, whilſt he abode in his Country: who liking the ſituation of the place, drew on it the Model of a ſtrong and gallant City, according to which Platform it was preſently built, taken, and ſacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former ſplendor. In the middle Ages called *Eſechia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*, *Choim*; if not Built rather out of the Ruins of it. A City memorable for two great Battels near unto it; the firſt between *Lucullus* on the one ſide, againſt *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were Victors: the ſecond between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*, and *Hyſmael* the *Perſian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were Conquerors, *Anno* 1514. A Victory which he bought with the loſs of 30000 of his beſt Men, and ſuch a Terror to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it the only day of Doom. The Field adjoyning to the Town wherein this Cruel Battel was fought, called the *Chalderan Fields.* *Coy*, *Coim*, *Choim*, which is here ſaid to have ſprung out of the Ruins of *Artaxata*, is an obſcure place, not mentioned to my knowledge in any Traveller, or Map, whilſt others ſay, *Teflis*, or *Macchivan*, or one of them was the Ancient *Artaxata.* That ancient

City was however, ſeated for certain upon the *Araxes*, a River of *Armenia*. 2 *Sebaſtia*, now *Suaſſia*, ſeated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the Mountain *Taurus*; the Reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their firſt ſeparation from the See of *Conſtantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: ſo named in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*. But of late diveſted of that Dignity, the *Patriarchal* See, by reaſon of the fierce Wars raging in this Country, betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monaſtery of *Eomeazin*, near the City of *Ervan* in *Perſia*; in the Dominions of which King, theſe *Armenian Chriſtians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelphelins*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not firſt Founded by *Tigranes* above-mentioned; by whom repleniſhed with People of ſeveral Nations, whoſe Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Peaſant, who ſent not ſomewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great reſiſtance, thoſe ſeveral Nations not agreeing amongſt themſelves; and therein beſides other Treaſure, no leſs then 8000 Talents in ready Money. The City ſituate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Niceſorius*. 4 *Arſamoſata*, by *Pliny*, called *Arſimote*, on the Banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Cholna*, ſo called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul*, the Son of *Aram*, one of the firſt Planters of this Country. 6 *Baraza*, by the Emperor *Leo* much Enlarged and Beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Arſarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8 *Theodoſiopolis*, built on the foundation of ſome of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodoſius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible City hereof, when poſſeſſed by the *Romans*. 10 *Clamaſſum*, a ſtrong Town on the Banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the firſt in his way towards *Perſia*, and therewith *livery & ſeiſin* of the reſt of this Country, ſince wholly Conquered by his Succeſſors. 11 *Chars*, not far from the ſame River alſo, ſuppoſed to be the *Chorſa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long ſince the Ruins only; but in three weeks ſo Repaired and Fortified by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1579. that it is thought to be Impregnable. 12 *Theſpia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Theſpitis*, and to the Region called *Theſpites*, but now not in being. 13 *Armining* now of greateſt name, and eſteemed the Metropolis of this Country: ſituate in that part of the Lake of *Vaſtan* (the *Martiana palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Country: and by that well fortified: the only City of *Armenia* poſſeſſed by the *Perſians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 14 *Van*, both for natural ſituation, and the works of Art, accounted by the *Turks* for their ſtrongeſt Bulwark in theſe parts againſt the *Perſians*; and for that cauſe well Gariſoned, and as well Munitioned.

The Principal Cities in it at this day are *Erivan*, or *Irvan*. 2 *Nacchivan*. 3 *Zulpha* (now Ruined) and 4 *Van*. 1 *Erivan* is a great City, but ill built, ſeated in a Plain between two Rivers. This City is ſuppoſed to be the ancient *Artaxata*, being ſeated as that was, between the *Araxes* and Mount *Ararat*: This City has been taken by the *Turks* and *Perſians* as the Fortune of the War favoured them, but in 1635. it was finnally united to *Perſia*, Sir *John Chardin* page 245. *Tavernier* page 13. 2 *Nacchivan* lies 21 Leagues from *Erivan* to the South; it contains about 2000 houſes, and has had many more, which are now rebuilding, it is now under the *Perſian* King, but has been miſerably haraſſed by the *Turks*, *Chardin* page 345. *Van*, in 1664. was a great City, ſeated on a Lake of the ſame name, and has in it a ſtrong Fortreſs, or Caſtle, ſeated on a Mountain which is in the hands of the *Turks*; in 1636. it was Beſieged by the *Perſians* but without effect, *Tavern* page 106. *Zulpha* was laid deſolate by *Abbas* King of *Perſia*, aud the Inhabitants removed to *Hiſphan*, where they built a great Suburb of that name; but the old City is ſince began to be rebuilt and repeopled with a few *Armenians*.

This Country was firſt planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Meſech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies poſſeſſed the ſame: the one leaving the remainder of his name in the *Montes Moſchici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colthene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholabatene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as ſoon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the Third from *Nimrod*, finding *Barzanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his Superiority, and to aid him in his Wars againſt *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of moſt note in times ſucceeding, (for we have no conſtant Catalogue of them) were 1 *Araxes*, who being Warred on by the *Perſians*, was promiſed Victory by the Oracle, on the Sacrifice of his two fair Daughters. Willing to ſatisfie the Gods, and yet ſpare his Children, he Sacrificed two of the daughters of *Mieſalcus*, a Noble-man of this Country: by whom in Revenge hereof his own daughters were ſlain, and himſelf ſo cloſely followed, that ſwimming the River then called *Holmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; ſpoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the moſt mighty King that ever Reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his Prowes, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Aſia Minor*, the whole Countries of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*: but ſiding with *Mithridates*, whoſe daughter he had Married, againſt the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two great Battels, and outed of the greateſt part of his Dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had ſucceeded *Lucullus* in Command of the Army, and truſting more to his goodneſs than a Wiſe Man would, he put himſelf into his power: by whom condemned in a great ſum of Money for the Charge of the War, and ſtripped of all the reſt of his Eſtates, he was ſuffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it ſelf, and the leſſer *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of ſome practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried Priſoner into *Rome*, and his Country brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavaſdes*, circumvented by *Marc-Antony*, who led him Priſoner to *Rome*, but (*catenis ne quid honori ejus deeſſet aureis*, as the Hiſtorian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his great honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And tho' 5. *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Succeſſors held it but as Vaſſals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and ſometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this Eſtate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Dioceſe*) who adding *Meſopotamia* alſo unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eaſtern border of his Empire, which *Auguſtus* thought fit to limit with the Banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being Governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan*'s time, in the Reign of *Conſtantius*, *Julian*, and the Emperors following, whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Juſtinian* the ſecond, (he began his Empire *Anno* 687.) when Subdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperor, but ſoon loſt again, it continued ſubject to the *Saracens* till the breaking in of the *Turks*, *An.* 844. of whom more anon. The greateſt part of the *Turks* emptying themſelves into *Perſia*, and other Countries which they took from the Eaſtern Emperors; the Chriſtians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom Governed, till again Subdu'd by *Occadan*, or *Heccata* the Son of *Cingis*, the firſt *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make ſo abſolute a Conqueſt of it, as to extinguiſh either Chriſtianity or the Race of the Kings, *Haithon*, ſirnamed *Armenius*, Reigning after this, and going in Perſon to *Mongo*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own Chronicles, in the Reign of K. *Richard* the Second, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to ſue for aid againſt the *Turks*; by whom then diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtates, by *Uſſan Caſſanes*, one of the Princes of this Country, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdom, and ſo continued till the year 1515. when Conquered by *Selimus* the Firſt, and by him made a part of the Turkiſh Empire; more fully ſetled and aſſured in the Reign of *Amurath* the Third, who by cauſing many Forts and Gariſons to be planted in it, made the Conqueſt Abſolute.

The Arms of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, Governed by Princes of its own of the Chriſtian Faith, were *Gules*, three heads of a Buck, *Argent* Crowned, *Or*.

2. *COLCHIS. MENGRELIA.*

COLCHIS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Iberia*; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenſes*; on the North with *Tartary*, from which parted by thoſe vaſt Hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucaſi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which ſeparated by the *Montes Moſchici*.

The reaſon of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the Original of the Name and Nation from *Caſlubim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, the *Etymology* of the name being too much wreſted, and *Ægypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in thoſe early days; tho' poſſibly in times ſucceeding, the *Ægyptians* hearing by the *Greeks*, of the Wealth of the Country, might ſend Colonies of their People thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*..

The Country ſaid to be vey fruitful, if the care of the Husbandman were not wanting. Their Vines they plant at the feet of great Trees, which twining about the Arms thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits riſing from the Earth, they uſed of late times to furniſh the Store-houſes of their Kings, for want of ready Money to fill his Coffers, their Tributes being paid in ſuch Commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of Gold, found in the ſands of their Rivers iſſuing from the *Caucaſian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; χρυσοφοροῦσι δ' ἐκ τοῦ Καυκάσου πολλαὶ πηγαὶ ψῆγμα ἀσφαλὲς, Many of their Springs ſaith he, which come out of *Caucaſus*, carry veins of Gold. The like ſaith *Strabo* alſo, and ſome other Ancients With which, and out of their Rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were ſo well furniſhed with thoſe Metals, that the Furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now ſo deſtitute of both, that the People for want of money to buy and ſell with, are enforced to barter their Commodities, and change one for another.

The People at the preſent very Rude and Barbarous; ſo inhumane and void of natural affection, that they ſell their Children to the *Turks*. The better ſort of them much given to Belly-chear, dancing, and ſinging looſe Sonnets of Love and Dalliance; uſing much Wine in their entertainments, which the more their Gueſts drink, the better welcome; enflamed wherewith they offer them for a Cooler, their Wives or Siſters, with charge to yield them all content, eſteeming it no ſmall credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the Women much averſe from the entertainment, whether to pleaſe themſelves or obey their Husbands, let them tell that can.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted in the time of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, by whoſe perſwaſion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Conſtantinople*, became a Chriſtian; and being Baptized, was returned back into his Country with the Title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Perſia* much offended at it, proclaim'd War againſt him; which hindred the farther progreſs of the Goſpel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two Reverend Men, were by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* employed in this Service; which they ſucceſsfully effected. In that regard they hold to the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the juriſdiction of that Patriarch, to whom conform in moſt dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a diſtinct Language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate Divine Offices in the *Greek* Tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of 'em underſtand any better than the vulgar Papiſts of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany* do the Latin Service. Whether it be that they have no Learned Men among them, either to Tranſlate their old *Liturgy*, or to compoſe a new; or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that Ignorance is the beſt Mother of Devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Hippus*, 2 *Cyanæus*, 3 *Chæriſtus*, all riſing out of the *Caucaſian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*, 4 *Phaſis*, the principal of all, riſing out of the *Montes Moſchici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there call'd *Boas*. Navigable with ſmaller Veſſels a great way up into the Country, and with great Ships eighteen miles from the Sea. Memorable among the Ancients for the Landing of the *Argonauts* in the mouth thereof; and thoſe delicate Fowl called from hence *Phaſides*, or *Phaſiani* (*Pheſants*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this Expedition of the *Argonauts*, being the moſt remarkable action in thoſe elder ages of the World, when Piracies and Depredations were accounted for *Heroical* Virtues; 'twas no other than the adventure of ſome Noble *Græcians*, for the Gold of *Colchos*. The Age wherein it happen'd, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Iſrael*. The chief Adventurers, *Jaſon*, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Caſtor* and *Pollux* the Sons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus*, the Sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulyſſes*, *Amphiarus* the Sooth-ſayer, *Hercules*, *Theſeus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. Theſe moved with the great noiſe of the Wealth of *Colchos*, and the Riches of King *Æetes*, then therein Reigning, reſolved upon a Voyage thither, Embarqued in a Ship called *Argo*, (whence the name of *Argonauts*) whereof one *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Paſſing the *Helleſpont*, *Propontick*, and *Thraſian Boſphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and ſtrange Adventures (which ſuch *Knights Errants* could not chuſe but encounter with) they Landed in the River *Phaſis*, and came to the King's Court, and there were kindly entertained But finding the Kings Treaſures to be too well guarded to be took by force (ſaid by the Poets to be kept by a Dragon always waking) they practiſed with *Medea*, the daughter of *Æetes*, to aſſiſt them in robbing her Father. Who being in Love with *Jaſon*, on promiſe of Marriage with him aſſented to it: by whoſe Artifices (which the Poets call Magical Charms) the Guardians being circumvented, and the Treaſure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, embark'd again, and after a long and tedious voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the ſubſtance of the Story; which being the greateſt and moſt notable voyage which the *Græcians*, in thoſe early days had undertaken, occaſioned the Poets to advance it to the higheſt pitch, and to diſguiſe it with many Fictions, and ingenious Fancies: but not without ſome ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the deſign.) For the Rivers as before was ſaid, having Golden Sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have) it was the cuſtom of the People to lay many Fleeces of Wool in the deſcent of thoſe Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, tho' the Water paſſed through; which *Strabo* witneſſeth to be true.

But leaving theſe Adventurers to purſue their Fortunes, let us go forward to ſurvey the *Colchian* Cities; the principal whereof, 1 *Dioſcurias*, a Town of great wealth and Trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two *Spartans* the Charioteers of *Caſtor* and *Pollux* and ſo named in honour of their Maſters, whom the *Greeks* call Διόσκουροι: which two *Spartans* paſſing further Eaſt, were afterwards the Founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of ſuch reſort by Merchants from moſt parts of the World, that here were ſpoken 300 different Languages; inſomuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* ſaith, were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters for diſpatch of Buſineſs, and Negociating with the Merchants 2 *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3 *Siganeum*, near the mouth of the River *Cyanæus*: as is alſo 4 *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Ægyptian* Colony, planted here by *Seſoſtrus* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without ſucceſs, the Conqueſt of *Colchis*. 5 *Neapolis*, ſo called from the newneſs or foundation of it, when that name was given. 6 *Phaſis*, ſo call'd from the River upon which it is ſituate, retaining both the ſite and name to this very day: the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phaſſum*. 7 *Alvati*, a well Fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy* 8 *Mecheleſſus*. 9 *Syrace*. 10 *Zadris*. 11 *Zurium*, *&c.* not much obſervable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country, moſt probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the Poſterity of *Hul*, or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*, to whom in tract of time ſome Colonies out of *Ægypt*, (a Sea-faring People) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoyn themſelves: the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from ſome part of his Army left there by *Seſoſtris*) being ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-ſpring of the *Ægyptians*. The moſt ancient of their Kings was *Æetes*, ſpoken of before; who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his Step-dame *Ino*, with great ſtore of Treaſure, occaſioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colckos*, diſguiſed under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of moſt note after him, *Selauces*, and *Eſubopes*, who firſt diſovered the rich Mines of Gold and Silver; of which Metals they made all their *Utenſils*, even the Beams of their Chambers. The fame whereof drew thither *Seſoſtris*, the great King of *Ægypt*, who being vanquiſhed in the Field, was fain to lay aſide all thoſe hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Ægypt* in worſe ſtate than he came, but that he left behind him an *Ægyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*, which after occaſioned others of that Country to repair hither alſo. Living in peace and unmoleſted from this time forwards, they were unhappily engaged by *Tygranes* of *Armenia*, to ſide with him againſt the *Romans*; and in his overthrow gave ſuch advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to ſubmit himſelf to *Pompey*, to diſmiſs his Forces, leave his faſtneſſes, and finally to redeem his peace, by ſending him a Bedſtead of pureſt Gold, and many other rich Preſents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents, and received hence ſome annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Diſtreſſed between the *Perſians* and *Conſtantinopolitans*, they had much ado to ſtand upright; tho' betwixt both they kept themſelves in a kind of Liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Perſians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neighbours. But at the laſt, *An.* 1579. *Amurath* III. to make the ſafer paſſage for his Forces into *Georgia*, ſent *Uluzales* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea, who coming up the River *Phaſis*, took the City of *Faſſum*, Fortified it, and laid ſo certain a Foundation of future Conqueſt, that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demoliſh ſome of his Fortifications; yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Faſſum* made the Seat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, as it ſtill continueth.

Colchis is at this day called *Mengrelia*, and is divided as ſome ſay, into three ſmall Kingdoms of *Royolets*, viz. *Imaretta*, the King of which is the true Sovereign of the whole Country, the ſecond is *Mengrelia*, properly ſo called, and the third *Guriel*; to which ſome others have added *Abaſſa*, or *Avogaſſa*. They are Chriſtians by Profeſſion, but ſo ignorant, that their Biſhops and Clergy have loſt the true form of Baptiſm. The Kings, Great Men, and Biſhops ſell their People to the *Turks* and *Perſians* for Slaves, which, with the perpetual Wars among themſelves, and with their Neighbours, have reduc'd them to the moſt diſmal ſtate of Poverty and Deſolation that can be imagined. Sir *John Chardin*, who was amongſt them is of opinion, the reaſon why the *Turks* will not (as they eaſily might) make a Conqueſt of theſe People, is becauſe they find more advantage to keep it as a Nurſery of Slaves, than once for all to Subdue them. For the Bounds and Dimenſions of theſe ſmall Kingdoms the Reader may better have recourſe to my *Geographical Dictionary*, or *Lexicon*, than to ſwell this Book with things of that nature, which are ſcarce worth his time, *Tavernier* page 125. 126. *Arch-Angel*, *Lambert*, and Sir *John Chardin* have given large Accounts of the Manners, and Government of the *Mengrelians*, but I have none of them at preſent by me.

3 IBERIA.

IBERIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Albania*; on the Weſt, with *Colchos*; on the North, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moſchici*; by the firſt Mountains parted from *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and by the laſt from *Armenia Major*.

It was ſo called from the River *Iberus*, which running through it, falleth at laſt into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*; and that as ſome ſay, from St. *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr, whom here they have in great Reverence, as their tutelar Saint and Patron; as others ſay, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Biſhop, by whoſe Preaching they were brought unto *Chriſtianity*, and ſome again will have them called properly *Gordiæans*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their near neighbourhood to thoſe Mountains: But the moſt probable Opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongſt other of the *Caſpian* Nations. Tho' to ſay truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth ſomewhat farther than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending alſo that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Country of *Albania*, if I gueſs aright.

The Country, for the greateſt part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets; and in that regard Unconquerable for the difficulty of the Mountainous paſſages: yet notwithſtanding it is very fruitful in many places, having many fertile Plains, and wealthy Valleys, well watered, and of greater increaſe to the Huſbandman, if he be not wanting to himſelf in care and induſtry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike Nation, and us'd to ſet as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had ſlain enemies in his life: as alſo that thoſe of the ſame Tribe or Family had all things common, he being the Ruler which was eldeſt: and that ſome of them did derive themſelves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cauſe never Marrying out of their Kindred. The preſent *Georgians* very Warlike, ſtrong of Body, and valorous in Fight, for a long time defended themſelves and

Country from the *Turks* and *Perſians*, with great prudence making uſe of the one againſt the other; But over-powred by the vaſt multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have loſt many of their beſt Forts, and much of their Liberty.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted in the time of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, by means of a Chriſtian Captive Woman (ſuch extraordinary ways doth God find out to promote his Goſpel) who being of a moſt devout Life, and exemplary Piety, had by her Prayers to CHRIST reſtored a young Child to health, which was thought paſt cure: and healed the Queen hereof of a deſperate malady, when no help of *Phyſick* would prevail. Whereupon the King ſent Ambaſſadors to *Conſtantine*, deſiring Miniſters and Preachers to be ſent to *Iberia*, to inſtruct the People in the Faith, which was done accordingly. Since that time Chriſtianity hath flouriſhed in this Country without interruption; though by *Mahometans* and *Pagans*, on all ſides encompaſſed: agreeable in doctrinal Points to the Church of *Greece*, whoſe *Rituals* alſo the People do to this Day follow. Not Subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* only: who hath under him about 18 Biſhops, and reſideth for the moſt part, in St. *Katherine*'s Monaſtery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principal Paſtor, *Mahometaniſm* hath got ſome footing, and *Jeſuitiſm* began to creep in amongſt them. The occaſion of which laſt was this.

About the Year 1614. the *Perſians* making an inroad into this Country, took the City of *Cremen*, and therein *Cetaba*, the Mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her Captive into *Perſia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they moſt cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jeſuits* then travelling in thoſe Countries, and willing out of that ſad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholick Cauſe, cut off the Head of a dead Man whom they found in the way, anointed it with Oyl and Odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and ſignified unto the Prince, that they had with them the Head of the bleſſed Martyr *Cetaba*: deſiring leave to live in ſome Monaſtery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This eaſily believed, and granted, the Head was placed with great honour in the Church of St. *George* at *Aberdall*; much reſort to it from all parts by diſeaſed Perſons, whom if paſt cure, the *Jeſuits* ſent home again, preſcribing them in the way of preparation a long time of Repentance; if curable by outwards means which they applied, the cure was preſently aſcribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proſelytes* to themſelves; and had no ſmall hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to ſubmit himſelf to the Pope, as the *Vicar of* CHRIST. When in the heat of all their Glories, a Letter cometh from *Maacla*, a Lady attendant on the Princeſs, (but then living in *Perſia*, as a Slave or Bondmaid) ſignifying that her Maſter by her perſwaſion, had got into his power the Body of his Mother *Cetaba*; which he might ranſom if he pleaſed: two Travellers withal, who came out of *Perſia* with the *Jeſuits*, reporting what they ſee them do with the Dead Man's Head. By which means the *Impoſture* being diſcover'd, the Body of the Queen was ſent for, the falſe *Relique* was caſt out of the Church, and the falſer *Jeſuits* into Priſon, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy*, or any of our modern Writers, but what are touched upon before, except only the River of *Iberus* ſpoken of already, from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general ſo deſtitute of Waters, that *Pompey* in his March this way againſt the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 Bladders filled with Water for the uſe of his Army.

Places of moſt antiquity and importance in it, 1 *Artaxiſſa*, 2 *Vaſada*, 3 *Lubium*, 4 *Armaſtica*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this laſt by *Pliny* called *Harmaſtis*. 5 *Cremen*, the chief City now poſſeſſed by the *Georgians*. 6 *Cachete*, honoured with a fair Church, the moſt beautiful of all the Country, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7 *Triala*, where are to be ſeen the ruins of a large City and many Churches; by what name anciently called, I find not. 8 *Altuncala*, or the *Golden Caſtle*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Georgian* Princes, ſince the time of the Wars betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*, 9 *Archichelech*, a ſtrong Caſtle taken by *Solyman*, the *Magnificent* in his Wars againſt *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and ever ſince holden by the *Turks*. 10. *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forſaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Muſtapha*, General of *Amurath* the third, againſt the *Perſians*: who liking the ſituation of it cauſed it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred Pieces of Ordnance, and left therein a Garriſon of 6000 Soldiers. Sir *John Chardin*, pag. 208. who ſaw it lately, ſaith, It was then in the hands of the *Perſians*, being ſeated at the bottom of a Mountain, upon the River *Cur*, *Khur*, *Cyrus*, encompaſſed on all ſides, but the *South*, with a ſtrong and beautiful Wall, and the *South* ſide is ſecured by the River. It has 14 Chriſtian Churches, but never a Moſque, becauſe the Chriſtians will not endure it; and the *Perſians* are too wiſe to exaſperate their Frontier People, who can with eaſe call in the *Turks* to revenge the Injuries of their Religion. The Biſhop's See and Palace is now in this City. This City is well peopled, and full of Strangers, on the account of Trade. It was twice taken by the *Turks*, *viz.* under *Iſhmael* II. and *Solyman* his Son. When or how it was recover'd by the *Perſians*, I have not yet read. *Teflis* is from *Scamactri* 8 Leagues, as *Struys* ſaith, p. 249. 11 *Lori*, diſtant from *Teflis* about two Days Journey of a Carrier's Pace, ſtrengthned with a lofty Caſtle, environed with deep Ditches, and a thick Wall, amounting to a Mile in compaſs. Seized on by *Ferat Baſſa*, the Succeſſor of *Muſtapha*, who repaired the Walls, planted thereon 200 ſmall Pieces of Ordnance, and Gariſoned it with 7000 *Turks* for Defence thereof. 12 *Tomanis*, a ſhort Days march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both, full of rich Fields and Paſtures, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel. Nigh unto which the ſaid *Ferat* raiſed a new Fortreſs, for the better command of the Streights and Paſſages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and ſo to *Teflis*, (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the Wall whereof being 1700 Yards in compaſs, he cauſed to be planted with 200 Pieces of Artillery, and with incredible Diligence cut down a thick Wood which lay before it, which otherwiſe would have been a receptacle of Thieves, or Enemies. 13 *Gliſca*, 14 *Baſcapan*, poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But poſſibly moſt of theſe ſtrong-holds now poſſeſſed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, tho' within the Country of the *Georgians*; the name not being limited to *Iberias*, as was ſaid before. I do not find that any of them are now extant; and it is probable, as they were built by the *Turks* to ſecure the poſſeſſion of this Country againſt the *Perſians*, ſo they were all deſtroyed by the latter, after *Teflis* fell into their hands, which I reckon was in the Reign of *Sha Abbas*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were ſuch who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*, from whom this People at the firſt, as *Joſephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the Nations in it of moſt note were the *Tibareni*, *Moſynæci*, *Chalybes*, and of leſs eſteem, the *Biſeries*, *Sapires*, *Macrones*, &c. united at the laſt in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* ſpeaketh, the principal of all this Country. Too fruitful of increaſe for ſo narrow a dwelling, ſome of them put themſelves to ſeek their Fortunes; when after long wandring they fell upon the Coaſt of *Spain* next the *Pyrenees*, where they ſtaid themſelves; giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country; Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes*, King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid againſt the *Romans*, they came in accordingly; and in his Fall diſcomfited by *Lucullus* in three ſeveral Battels, were fain to ſtand upon their guard as well as they could: firſt holding fair with *Pompey*, who ſucceeded *Lucullus* in his charge; but breaking out again on a new Temptation, they were encountred by him: In which Battel 9000 of their Men being ſlain, and 10000 taken, they were conſtrained to ſue for Peace; not otherwiſe to be obtained till *Attaces*, the King of theſe *Iberians*, gave his Sons for Pledges. After this *Feudataries* to the *Roman* and *Græcian* Emperors, till the fatal Inundation of the *Saracens* had ſo weakned that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more ſubjection to thoſe of *Conſtantinople*, till *Conſtantinople* it ſelf became the Imperial Seat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whoſe Quarrels with the *Perſian Sophies*, this Country began to ſuffer a new Invaſion; ſome Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his March or Paſſage againſt *Tamas*. Afterwards in the Time of *Amurath* the Third, who ſet his Mind moſt eagerly on the War with *Perſia*, a great part of it was ſubdued by *Muſtapha*, the *Turkiſh* General: who inviting the Widow Princeſs and her Two Sons to come to his Tent, ſent the young Princeſs to *Conſtantinople*; and by that means had opportunity to aſſure his purpoſes. And though the *Perſians* did their beſt to aſſiſt the *Georgians*, yet proved they but a kind of miſerable Comforters, as much puniſhing or plaguing this poor Country with their Aids, as the *Turks* by their Armies: So that now it ſtands divided betwixt the *Grand Seigneur*, and its Natural Princes, the *Georgian* Princes holding the greateſt part, but the *Turks* being in poſſeſſion of the ſtrongeſt Holds; kept by them under colour of ſecuring their way to *Perſia*; for which this Country is indeed but unhappily ſeated. The *Turks* are now intirely beaten out.

4.

ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the *Eaſt* with the *Caſpian Sea*; on the *Weſt* with *Iberia*; on the *North*, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; on the *South*, with the *Moſchici*: So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Suiria* but reckoned in theſe laſt Ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Country of ſo rich a Soil, that without the leaſt labour of the Husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her ſtore; and where it is but once ſown, will yield two or three Reapings. But being Ill Husbands on it in former Times, they occaſioned *Strabo* to give them this Note for a remembrance. That they *needed not the uſe of the Sea, who knew no better how to make uſe of the Land.* The People anciently ſo ſimple, that they could not reckon above One Hundred; ignorant of Weights, Meaſures, and the uſe of Money. Old Age they had in high eſteem, but held it utterly unlawful to make ſpeech of the Dead. And of theſe *Pliny* doth report, *That they were gray-headed from their very Youth, and could ſee as well by Night as by Day*: The verity of which laſt may be ſomewhat queſtionable. But withal, they are affirmed to have been a ſtout and couragious People, ſtrong Bodies, patient of Toil and Labour, as they are at this Day. And well the men may be couragious and ſtout, when the Women are ſo truly maſculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted Credit, That they were exerciſed in Arms and Martial Feats, as if deſcended lineally from the Ancient *Amazons*, whom *Plutarch* placed in this Tract; reporting ſome of them to be aiding to theſe *Albanians*, in their War with *Pompey*: which poſſibly might be no other than ſome of the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Soana*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of theſe parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2 *Cæſius*. 3 *Gerrus*. 4 *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this People. 5 *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) ſpoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Country; becauſe herein it hath its Spring, and the greateſt part of its courſe alſo. For riſing out of the Mountain *Caucaſus*, which ſhuts up this Province on the *North*, it paſſeth thorow the midſt of it, till it come to the Borders of *Armenia*, where it beginneth to bend more towards the Eaſt; and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, beſides many others of leſs note, falleth with twelve Mouths into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. This River was a long time the Boundary between the *Turks* and *Perſians*. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: The *Montes Moſchici* on the *South*, and *Caucaſus* upon the *North*, being rather common boundaries betwixt ſeveral Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the laſt the *Iberians*, and theſe *Albanians*, be in ſome Writers called *Caucaſiæ Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very Names: 1 *Chabata*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Inſignis Albaniæ urbs*, the moſt noted City of this Country. 2 *Albana*, ſo called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was ſeated. 3 *Teleba*. 4 *Namechia*. 5 *Thelbis*. 6 *Getara*, near unto the Influx of the River *Cyrus*. How theſe are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to ſay. The chief now being, and worthy to be ſo accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, ſituate near the *Caſpian Sea*; from which to *Teflis*, a City ſpoken of before, remain the Foundations of a high and thick Wall; affirmed to have been built by *Alexander the Great*, to defend theſe Parts againſt the irruptions of the Northern unconquered Nations. The Town invironed with two Walls, and ſo defended by difficult and narrow paſſages of the Rocks, that it is not eaſily acceſſible; but taken for all that, by *Muſta-*

Muſtapha the *Turkiſh* General, *Anno* 1577. and made the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*: Conceived to be the *Caucaſiæ Portæ* of the Ancients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the Title of *Ingens naturæ miraculum*: By *Egeſippus*, for the ſtrength of it, called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word ſignifying in their Language, *A Gate of Iron.* This City is now under the King of *Perſia*: Mr. *Jenkenſon*, who ſaw it in 1562, ſaith it is an old City, ſeated on an Hill call'd *Caſtow*, walled with very high, and thick Free-ſtone Walls; *Hackluit*, p. 1. p. 345. *Struys* a *Dutchman*, who ſaw it in 1670, ſaith, *It lies ſtretched from* East *to* West *about two* Engliſh *miles*, *the* Caſpian *Sea waſhing its Walls*, *and was then the furtheſt City the* Perſians *had on this ſide*, *and their Frontier againſt the* Ruſs *and* Tartar, *pag.* 225. It had then a Gariſon of 1200 *Perſians*, but was going to decay, the lower Ward next the Sea being all turned to Gardens; the middle Ward inhabited by none but *Perſians*, and a few *Jews*, who dealt moſtly in Slaves. The Upper-Ward was a Fortreſs furniſhed with Braſs Cannon. Thus far, and much more that Author hath concerning this old and almoſt ruined City. The other places of this Tract are either of no account and eſtimation, or elſe are ſpecified before amongſt the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whoſe Country this is now a part: yet we may add, 2 *Sabran*, upon the Borders of *Media.* 3 *Sancta Maria*, *North* of *Derbent*; both of them on, or near the Banks of the *Caſpian Sea.*

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country ſeem to have been of the Plantation of *Gecher* the Son of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whoſe Memory was long preſerved in the City of *Getara*, before mentioned: So called by him, or ſome of his Poſterity in remembrance of him. The people living ſomewhat out of the Common Road, were little troubled with Invaders from Foreign Parts; neither the *Perſians* nor *Macedonians* looking ſo far *North.* Nor poſſibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not engaged themſelves with *Tigranes* firſt, and afterwards with *Mithridates*: Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to ſue for Peace. But finding that the *Iberians* alſo had took up Arms, they engaged again; levying an Army of 12000 Horſe, and 90000 Foot, in which *Oroezes* their King, with his Brother *Coſis*, were in perſon preſent. And though they had made good the Banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the moſt part only with Skins of Beaſts, they made but ſmall reſiſtance againſt the *Romans*: notwithſtanding the gallant charge of *Coſis*, who aſſaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be ſlain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving Pledges unto *Pompey* for their Good Behaviour, we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the Time of *Trajan*; who having conquered and reduced *Armenia Major* to the Form of a Province, reſolved to ſhew his Power to theſe Neighbouring Nations: and to that end impoſed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis* and *Iberia*, do their Homage to him. In Times ſucceeding no News of them; either becauſe remote from the Stage of Action, or ſerving under the command of ſome greater Nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata*, the *Cham* of *Tartary*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia* they were a while ſubject to that Empire: and paſſing in ſucceeding times by the name of *Georgians*, did partake of the ſame Fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turk*, who by reaſon of the ſtrong footing which he hath gotten amongſt them is become a dreadful Neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief. They are altogether ſubject to the *Perſians*, and not at all to the *Turks.*

Thus having taken a ſurvey of all the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, both in *Europe* and *Aſia*, and touched upon the means by which they are poſſeſſed of *Ægypt*, whereunto all the reſt of their hold in *Africk*, ſerves but for an acceſſory, we will now look upon the Story of this People, their firſt original, the great ſucceſs of their Affairs, the Princes under whoſe command they have made theſe Conqueſts: Which having done, we will proceed to a Deſcription of the Perſons, Manners and Conditions of the *Turks* themſelves, their power and policy, with other things conſiderable in ſo great an Empire.

And firſt for the Original of the *Turkiſh* Nation, they were moſt probably the Deſcendants of thoſe *Turſcæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Mæotis.* Of whom thus *Mela*, ſpeaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people, *Juxtà* Thyrſagetæ, Turcæque, *vaſtas ſylvas occupant*, *aluntur que venando*, &c. Next unto them (ſaith he) live the *Thyrſagetæ*, and the *Turcæ*, poſſeſſed of vaſt Woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and deſart Country with continual Rocks, as far as to the *Arympheians.* And *Pliny* muſtering up the Barbarous Nations of thoſe parts, joins the *Tuſſagetæ* (or *Thyrſagetæ*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympheians*, as *Mela* doth, *uſque ad ſolitudines ſaltuoſis vallibus aſperas*, ſpreading themſelves unto the rough Deſarts and woody Valleys: Not known by action (tho by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the ſecond, who began his Empire *Anno* 577. when preſſing hard on the *Avares*, a Neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forſake their Seats, and paſs into *Europe*; where they made themſelves Maſters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary.* In the Time of *Heraclius*, we find them, with other Barbarous Nations, at the Siege of *Conſtantinople*, in 619, but under the command of the *Perſians.* After which they began to ſet up for themſelves, and in the Year 763, made a Road into thoſe Countries which we laſt deſcribed; and loading themſelves with Prey and Booty, re-

returned

turned home again. But liking better of theſe Parts than their own Poor Dwellings, in the Year 844. they brake once more thorough the *Caſpian* Streights; and paſſing through *Iberia*, ſeized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themſelves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*: In which wide and ſpacious Country they roamed up and down, without any certain Habitation, removing their Herds and Families from one place to another, as they had formerly been uſed to do in the Fens of *Mæotis*; and as the *Tartars* and Wild *Arabs* do until this day. And ſo they lived a poor and contemptible Nation, till *Mahomet* the *Sultan of Perſia*, rebelling againſt his Lord and Maſter, the *Caliph of Babylon*, called in theſe *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a ſignal Victory. The Victory obtained, the *Turks* deſire their Wages and a fair diſmiſſion; but could ſpeed in neither, the *Sultan* being loath to part with ſuch a neceſſary miſchief till his Affairs were better ſetled; and therefore ſhutting up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix* their principal Leader, they began to ſpoil and waſte the Country; a multitude of needy People, and ſome of the diſcontented Soldiers coming daily to them. Aſſaulted by the *Perſians*, in the firſt Battel they not only got a notable Victory, but ſuch ſtore of Armour, Horſes, and other neceſſaries, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having overthrown and ſlain in the ſecond Fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed *Sultan*, or King of *Perſia*, in the year 1030, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongſt the *Turks* two moſt noted Tribes; the *Selzuccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selzuccian*, *Tangrolipix, Cutlu Moſes, Melech* and *Ducat* were the Heads; of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family was ſetled in the Throne of *Perſia*: *Cutlu Moſes*, furniſhed with an Army againſt the Chriſtians, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of *Aſia Minor*: *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Couſin the *Perſian Sultan*, were veſted into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, with their ſeveral Territories. But the Line of *Tangrolipix* and the reſt being all wore out, as hath been ſhewn in our Deſcription of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*, the man of moſt Nobility amongſt the *Turks*, was *Ottoman* the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a ſmall Territory in the Realm of *Perſia*. Which *Solyman* flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Perſia*, was drowned in croſſing the River *Euphrates*, as he paſſed with his few Subjects towards *Aſia Minor*, the beſt place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the Chief-ſhip of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son, who obtained of the laſt *Aladine* of the *Selzuccian* Family, the Village of *Saguta* in *Bythinia*, for himſelf and his ſmall handful of people. To him ſucceeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the Year 1280. who to revenge ſome Injuries done unto his People by the improvident Chriſtians, took from them Caſtle after Caſtle; and in the end poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Græcian* Emperors. Emboldned with ſuch great Succeſſes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the Second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himſelf the Title of *Sultan*, *Anno* 1300. from which before he had abſtained. To this time, and theſe ſmall beginnings we muſt reduce the firſt foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increaſed unto its preſent greatneſs by the courage and good fortune of theſe Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

1300 1 *Ottoman*, or *Oſman* the Son of *Ethrogul*, the firſt *Turkiſh Sultan* of this Line, added to his ſmall Territory the greateſt part of *Phrygia*, *Bythinia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*. 28.

1328 2 *Orchanes*, took the City of *Pruſa*, and made it his Reſidence; and was the firſt that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other pieces.

1350 3 *Amurath*, won the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, the ſtrong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was ſlain by a Common Soldier in the Fields of *Coſſova*. 23.

1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himſelf Maſter of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himſelf in an Iron Cage, in which the Inſolent Conqueror uſed to carry him. 26.

1402 5 *Solyman*, The Eldeſt Son of *Bajazet*, ſucceeded in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Europe*; but paſſing with an Army into *Aſia*, for the recovery of thoſe parts thereof uſurped by *Mahomet* his youngeſt Brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head againſt *Muſa Bajazet* his Third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diverſion) who having there vanquiſhed and ſlain him, *Anno* 1406. ſucceeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.

1404 6 *Mahomet*, the youngeſt Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, firſt wreſted from his Brother *Iſa* (*Bajazet*'s ſecond Son then living) the City of *Pruſa*, with the Dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himſelf the Title of King or *Sultan*, by degrees recovered all which his Father had loſt unto the *Tartars*. Afterwards making uſe of *Muſa*, for the ſupplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him preſently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquiſhed and ſlew him, about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own Perſon the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more abſolute Conqueſt of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the reſt of *Macedon*. 17.

1416 7 *Amurath* II. ſubdued from the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Theſſaly*, *Epirus*; he ſhaked the State of *Hungary*, and died before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1450 8 *Mahomet* II. ſirnamed *the Great*, and firſt Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the Two Empires of *Conſtantinople* and *Trabezond*, Twelve Kingdoms, and Two Hundred Cities. 31.

1481 9 *Bajazet* II. ſubdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.

1512 10 *Selimus*, having poyſoned his Father, ſubverted the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Paleſtine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the Yoak of the *Turks*. 7.

1519 11 *Solyman* II. ſirnamed the *Magnificent*, ſurprized *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*, with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*. 48.

1567 12 *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperor, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians* the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdom of *Tunis* and *Algiers*. 8.

1575 13 *Amurath* III. took from the diſagreeing *Perſian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the Fort *Guarino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1595 14 *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been loſt, if he had purſued his Victory at the Battel of *Kereſteure*. Never but then in any Battel, and then ſo frighted, that he durſt never ſee the face of an Army afterwards.

1603 15 *Achmet*, who the better to enjoy his pleaſures, made Peace with the *German* Emperor, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618 16 *Muſtapha*, Brother to *Achmet* ſucceeded, which is a Novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Seigneur's* common Policy to ſtrangle all the younger Brothers: howſoever this *Muſtapha* was preſerved either, becauſe *Achmet* being once a younger Brother, took pity on him, or becauſe he had no iſſue of his own Body, and ſo was not permitted to kill him.

1618 17 *Oſman*, or *Ottoman* II. Succeeded his Uncle *Muſtapha*; and being unſucceſsful in his War againſt *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* ſlain in an uproar, and *Muſtapha* again reſtored: yet long enjoyed he not his Throne; for the ſame hand that raiſed him, plucked him down again, and ſeated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623 18 *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Oſman*, of the age of 13 years, Succeeded on the ſecond Depoſition of his Uncle *Muſtapha*; who proved a ſtout and Maſculine Prince, and bent himſelf to the reviving of the ancient Diſcipline. To the great good of *Chriſtendom*, he ſpent his Stomach on the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.

1640 19 *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Morat*, preſerv'd by the *Sultaneſs* his Mother in his Brother's life; and by her power depoſed again for interdicting her the Court. He ſpent a great part of his Reign in the War of *Crete*, againſt the *Venetians*; but without any great ſucceſs.

1648 20 *Mahomet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vaſt Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greateſt part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Iſles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in *Europe*; of all the Iſles, and Provinces which we have hitherto deſcribed in *Aſia*; and in *Africk* of all *Ægypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suachem* and *Erocco*. Nor is their ſtile inferior to ſo vaſt an Empire, *Solyman* thus ſtiling himſelf in his Letter to *Villerius* Great Maſter of the *Rhodes*, at ſuch time as he intended to Invade that Iſland: *i. e.* Solyman *King of Kings, Lord of Lords, moſt high Emperor of* Conſtantinople *and* Trabezond, *the moſt mighty King of* Perſia, Syria, Arabia, and the Holy Land; *Lord of* Europe, Aſia, and Africa; *Prince of* Mecca *and* Aleppo, *Ruler of* Jeruſalem, *and Sovereign Lord of all the Seas and Iſles thereof.*

1687 21 *Solyman* III. Brother of *Mahomet* the IV. Aſcended this Throne by the means of a Tumult in the Army, *Novemb.* 8. 1687. *Mahomet* IV. was a Prince that was guilty of as few, and as tolerable Vices as any of his Predeceſſors. He was neither exceſſively Ambitious or Covetous, and to all his Subjects he was Mild and Merciful, but he was a ſoft and Effeminate Prince, and delighted more in Hunting than in War, or the trouble of a State-Council; ſo that his Government was for the moſt part managed by his Prime Viſiers, in which the Son Succeeded the Father, contrary to the Maxims and Uſage of this Government. In the Year 1682. this Prince was engaged in a War with the Emperor of *Germany*, and ſent an Army of 100000 Men to Beſiege *Vienna* in 1683. which was Baffled, and loſt all their Tents, Cannon, and Ammunition, and ſoon after *Gran*; the next year the Emperor Beſieg'd *New-Hauſel*, but could not take it. In 1684 *Buda* was Beſieged, but not Taken; In 1685 *New-hauſel* Beſieged again, and Taken; in 1686 *Buda* alſo was Taken after a ſecond Siege, and a great part of *Hungary* with it. The next Year the *Turks* loſt to the *Germans*, the Battel of *Mohatz*: And in the mean time, they had loſt to the *Venetians* the greateſt part of the *Morea*, ſo they fell into a general Deſpondency and Diſſatisfaction, and nothing would ſerve 'em but the Depoſing their Prince, who had angred God and their Prophet, by breaking his Faith with the Emperor of *Germany*; and tho' *Mahomet* had a Son at Age to Succeed him, yet they ſet up *Solyman* his Brother, who was then about 45 years old, tall, and of a ſtrong Complexion: He had lived 40 years in Priſon, and converſed more with Books than Men, or Buſineſs; ſo that he had never yet appeared at the Head of an Army; nor have their Affairs been at all bettered by this Change, but they have ſince his Reign loſt the remainder of *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Servia*, *Tranſylvani*, *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*, and might have been driven over the *Boſphorus* into *Aſia*, if *Lewis* XIV. of *France*, in the Year 1688 had not began a War upon the *German* Empire to ſave this.

1691 22 *Achmet* II. Succeeded his Brother, being ſet up by the *French* Faction at *Conſtantinople*, out of a double deſign, the firſt of which is, that the Great Men might under him Govern as they pleaſed, he being a Perſon utterly uncapable of being the Governor of his People; the Second is, That the *French* Party might carry on the War againſt the *Germans*, how much ſoever it tended to the Ruin of the *Ottoman* Empire. The Depoſed Sultan was expoſed dead, the 4th of *January* 1692 and 93. and immediately after, the ſame day, ſent away to *Conſtantinople* to be Buried. The Factions and Diſcontents running high at that time, becauſe the War was continued, and the preſent Sultan having a Son Born this Summer, 'tis probable this Death was not Natural, and will be attended by other Tragick Deaths of his Children.

1695 23 *Muſtapha*, Son of *Mahomet* IV. Succeeded *Achmet* his Uncle, who died, as was ſaid, of a Dropſie at *Adrianople*, *January* 6. 1694, 95. in the 33*d.* of his Age. He is reported to have left an Infant Son of about an year old, who was of neceſſity to be ſet aſide; There had been ſo much wrong done to *Mahomet* IV. and to his Family, (for he was a Good and Gracious Prince, and Reigned with more Clemency than any of his Predeceſſors) that the Great Men feared nothing more than to fall under that Branch of this Royal Family again; but now both the Brothers were thus quickly gone, there was a neceſſity for it: And he began his Reign with the Death of moſt of the Enemies of his Family; and then in Perſon took the Field againſt the Emperor, and had good Succeſs in his firſt Campaign, which may be ſuppoſed to have much revived the drooping and dejected Minds of his Subjects, who by a long Series of Misfortunes were reduced to a mighty ebb of Valour. The truth of this Conjecture time will ſhew, it being now not one full year ſince he aſcended that Throne.

The Succeſſion of the *Ottoman* Houſe, according to *Du Freſne*'s Pedigree.

1300 *Oſman*, or *Ottoman*. 29.
1328 *Urchan*, or *Orchan*. 32.
1359 *Murat*, or *Aurath*. 32.
1391 *Bajazet*, he was taken by *Tamerlane*, the 29*th.* of *July* 1402. and died in 1403.
1402 *Solyman* ſeven years.
Muſa
Muchemet.
1402 *Muſa* Slain in 1413 by his Brother
1413 *Muchemet*, or *Mahomet*, he Reigned eight years alone, and died in 1421.
1421 *Murat* II. Died *Feb.* 11. 1451. Reigned 31.
1451 *Muchemet* II. Took *Conſtantinople*, *May* 29. 1459. Died *May* 3. 1481.
1481 *Bajazet* II. 31.
1512 *Selim.* 8.
1520 *Soleiman.* 46.
1566 *Selim* II. 8.
1574 *Murat* III. 20.
1595 *Muchemet* III.
1603 *Achmet* 14.
1617 *Oſman*, who was ſtrangled by *Muſtapha* his Uncle, *May* 20. 1622.
1622 *Muſtapha* I.
1623 *Murat* IV. 16.
1640 *Ibrahim*, Brother of *Murat*.
1649 *Muchemet* IV. Depoſed.
1687 *Solyman*, Brother of *Muchemet*, died *June* 22.
1691 *Achmet* II. (Brother of *Muchemet* then living) he died, *January* 6.
1695 *Muſtapha* II. Son of *Mahomet* IV.

As for the Perſons of the *Turks*, they are generally well Complexioned, of good ſtature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things ſuperfluous; Hot and Venereous, Servile to their Prince, and Zealous in their Religion. They nouriſh no hair upon their heads, except it be a tuft on the top of their Crowns, by which they think that *Mahomet* will ſnatch them up into Paradiſe at the day of Judgment. For which reaſon they keep on of all ſides, tho' never ſo poor, accounting it an opprobrious thing to ſee any men uncover their heads; ſaying, when they diſlike of any thing which they ſee, or hear, *I had as lief thou hadſt ſhewn me thy bare skull.* In their familiar Salutation they lay their hands on their Boſoms, and a little incline their Bodies; but when they accoſt a Perſon of Rank, they bow almoſt to the ground, and kiſs the hem of his Garment. Walking up and down they never uſe, and much wonder at the often walking of Chriſtians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory Exerciſe with his Companion, a *Turk* demanded of him whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloiſter, why come you downwards? if to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief Recreation, which they alſo follow with much lazineſs, ſitting on Carpets in the ſhade, and ſending ſome of their Slaves to fetch their Arrows. They prefer, as they paſs the ſtreets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made Maſter of his Sword with whom they walk. As they ſhave their Heads, ſo they wear their Beards long, as a ſign of Freedom; but their Slaves keep theirs ſhaven and cloſe cut.

The Women are of ſmall ſtature, for the moſt part ruddy, clear, and ſmooth as the poliſh'd Ivory; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the Baths: of a very good Complexion, ſeldom going abroad, and then Maſqued; Laſcivious within doors, pleaſing in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted moſt Beautiful which have the greateſt eyes, and are of the blackeſt hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four Wives, and as many Slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending Woman being drowned, and the Man diſmembred. Theſe Women live in great awe and reſpect of their Husband, never ſitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into ſome Room. If their Husband hath been abroad, at his coming in they all riſe from the ſtools whereon they ſate, kiſs his hand, and make an obeyſance, and ſtand as long as he is in preſence. The Children which they have, they carry not in their Arms, as we do, but aſtride on their ſhoulders; they live immured from the ſight of the World: and permit not their Male Children, no not their own Sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their Husbands they cannot be divorced, but on ſpecial occaſion: but the Husbands may put away their Wives, or give them to their Slaves, when, and as often as they liſt. Far better is it with the Siſters or Daughters of the *Sultan*; to whom, when her Father or Brother beſtoweth her on one of the *Baſſaes*, he giveth her a Dagger, ſaying, *I give thee this Man to be thy Slave or Bedfellow; if he be not Loving, Obedient, and Dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this* Canzharre *or Dagger, to cut off his head.* When they are Married, their Husbands come not to Bed unto them, till they are ſent for, and then alſo they creep in at the Beds-feet. That ever any of their Ladies made uſe of their Daggers, I could never Read. Only I find, that *Luizus Baſſa*, the chief Man of the Empire next the *Sultan* himſelf, and of him very much beloved, having given his Wife, which was Siſter to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, a box on the Ear, was on complaint by her made, thruſt from all his Honours, Baniſhed into *Macedon*; and had doubtleſs been ſlain, if the Emperor's Love, and his own Merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the *Sultan*'s Daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* only, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they ſhould be apt to harbour ſome aſpiring thoughts.

The better ſort of the *Turks* uſe the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the Vulgar ſpeak the *Turkiſh* Language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Perſians*, their words of State; from the *Arabick* their words of Religion; from the *Græcians* their words or terms of War; and from the *Italians*, their terms of Navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were firſt initiated into *Mahometaniſm*, when they got the Sovereignty of the *Perſian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1 The *Saffi*, or *Novices*. 2 The *Calſi*, or Readers. 3 The *Hogi*, or writers of Books; for Printing they uſe not. 4 The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5 The *Caddi*, whereof there is at leaſt one in every City to judge of Offences. 6 The *Mudroſſi*, who uſe to overſee the *Caddis*. 7 The *Medlis*, or Principal Church-Governor under the *Mufti*. 8 The *Cadeleſcais*, whereof there are only three; one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Ægypt* and *Syria*; and theſe ſit with the *Baſſaes* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal Suits. 9 The *Mufti*, whoſe Sentence in Law and Religion is uncontroulable. He abaſeth not himſelf to ſit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more Reverence to the Emperor, than he doth to him.

His Forces are either for the Sea or the Land. His Sea-forces are great in regard of his ſpacious Sea-coaſts, vaſt Woods, and number of Subjects. He never ſuffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he ſhewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his only Veſſels, which being unable to cope with Ships of any bigneſs, were not only the occaſion of that overthrow, but alſo have heartned the *Florentine*, with ſix great Ships of War only, to ſwagger in the Seas; ſo that for more ſafety, the Tribute of *Egypt* is of late ſent to *Conſtantinople* by Land. The Captain *Baſſa*, or Admiral, notwithſtanding, with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progreſs about the Seas and Sea-Towns, to annoy the Enemy, ſuppreſs Pirates, collect his Tributes, and to redreſs the Abuſes committed in the Maritime Towns, belonging to the Admiralty. Which Annual Circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*. This Defect in the *Turkiſh* Navigation has loſt him the Empire of the Sea, and will (by God's Bleſſing) in a ſhort time deprive him of all his Iſlands, and in probability of *Europe* too. The *Turks* have a Superſtitious Proverb, *That God has given them the Empire of the Land, which is ſtable and fixed; and the Chriſtians the Empire of the Sea, which is fluid and inconſtant:* And this is perhaps the Principal Reaſon why they never built any great Ships, or ſince the Battel of *Lepanto* endeavoured to recover the Dominion of the Seas.

Their Land-forces are either Horſe or Foot. They which ſerve on Horſe-back are either the *Spahi* or *Aſapi*; theſe latter ſerving to weary the Enemies, and dull their Swords with their Multitudes; of whoſe Bodies the *Janizaries* uſe to make Mounts, whereon to aſſault the Wall of a beſieged Town; and are by them ſo contemned, that a *Janizary* once ſold two of them for a Sheeps-head: As for the *Spahi*, they, till they are inrolled into Pay, are of the ſame Original and Education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the ſame name, *Azamoglans*. Their Pay is ten Aſpers a day. The *Turk* is able, and doth maintain 15000 Horſe at little or no coſt, which no other Prince can do with 14 Millions of Gold. For whereſoever any parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men, whom they call *Timariots*. Theſe are to pay unto the Emperor certain Rents; and at their own charges to ſend to his Wars ſo many Horſe, excellently appointed for the Field: And which is the chief point of their Service, to keep in awe the Subjects in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, diſperſed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no ſooner ſtir, but theſe will be aſſembled, and fall upon them. Theſe *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 357000 have their abode in *Europe*, and 402000 in *Aſia* and *Africa*. Were it not for theſe *Timariots*, as the *Turks* ſaying is, no Graſs would grow where the *Grand Seigneurs* Horſe hath once ſet his Hoof; for if the care of manuring the Ground were committed to the Peaſants, and not to Military men, the greateſt part of this Empire would grow waſte and deſolate. Theſe *Timariots* were inſtituted by *Ottoman*, the firſt *Turkiſh* King of this Family; and a curſe by him laid on them that ſhould annihilate the Inſtitution. The name is derived from the *Turkiſh* word *Timay*, ſignifying a ſtipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by original being Chriſtians, are choſen by the *Turkiſh* Officers every five Years, out of his *Europæan* Dominions; and ſo diſtributed abroad to learn the Language, Cuſtoms, and Religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their ſtrength, will, or diſpoſition, placed in divers Chambers. They of the firſt Chamber are preferred, ſome to be *Chiauſies*, ſuch as go on Embaſſies, and execute Judgments; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governors of Cities; ſome to be *Baſſaes*, or Commanders of Horſemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs*, (*id eſt*, Lord of Lords) to command the reſt in general. They of the other Chambers are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Soldiers of the Guard; to whoſe Faith and Truſt the care of the Emperor's Perſon is committed. The tithing of theſe young Springals is, as we have ſaid every fifth Year; and oftner ſometimes, as occaſions ſerve. By which means he not only diſarmeth his own Subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any ſtir or innovation in his Empire: but ſpoileth all the Provinces he moſt feareth, of the Flower, Sinew, and Strength of their People; choice being made of the ſtrongeſt Youths only, and fitteſt for War. Theſe, before they are inrolled in pay, are called *Azamoglans*, and behave themſelves with much ſubmiſſiveneſs towards their Seniors and Governors: but when once they are honoured with the Title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtineſs. Till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their Sons be accounted any other than a natural *Turk*, (whom of all the reſt they account the baſeſt) the eldeſt only excepted: To whom this Priviledge was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 16000 are always reſident in *Conſtantinople*. In this City they are diverſly employed, being as Conſtables to ſee the Peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to ſee to the Weights and Meaſures; as Officers, to arreſt Common Offenders; as Warders, to look to the Gates, and guard the Houſes of Ambaſſadors, and to travel with Strangers for their more ſafety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their Pay is but five *Aſpers* a day, and two Gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, or 100 men being their greateſt preferment: yet are they very obſequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferior to the meaneſt *Baſſa*, tho in power perhaps above the chiefeſt. For the crafty *Turks* join not Power and Authority; and if they obſerve the *Janizaries* to love and reſpect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of Life and Office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1365. their greateſt Eſtabliſher, *Amurath* the ſecond: The name ſignifieth young Soldiers.

Now concerning theſe *Janizaries*, we will farther conſider, 1. The ſway they bear in deſigning the Succeſſor. 2. Their Inſolency towards the Emperor and his Officers. 3. Their Behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne. And 4. Their Puniſhments.

1. Concerning the firſt, I never find any particular ſway the *Janizaries* carried, in the deſignation of their Emperor, till the death of *Mahomet the Great*: when the *Baſſaes* having choſen *Corcut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Tho' I am not ignorant that when this *Mahomet* ſucceeded in the Throne, the Joyful Acclamations made by the Soldiers, was accounted the chiefeſt ſign of his ſecure and perpetuated Eſtabliſhment. But the chief Inſtance of their Power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the Firſt, who being but the Seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferr'd by them before his Brethren in his Father's Life-time; but by their Aids alſo he ſeverally maſtered them, and in the end poiſoned his Father. To omit other Examples, even of late, *Anno* 1622. they ſlew the young Emperor *Oſman*, drew his Uncle *Muſtapha* out of Priſon, and eſtabliſhed him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the firſt Example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the Reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Baſſa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperor, *They would teach him, like a Drunkard, a Beaſt, and a Raſcal as he was, to uſe his Great Place and Calling with more Sobriety and Diſcretion.* Not long after, conceiving further diſpleaſure againſt the ſaid *Bajazet*, they ſhook their Weapons againſt him, and refuſed to take him into the midſt amongſt them; and were not, without great and vile ſubmiſſion on his part, appeaſed. Againſt *Selimus* the firſt they alſo mutined; when being reſolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better purſuit of his Victories againſt the *Perſian*, he was by them forced to turn home unto *Conſtantinople*. Againſt *Solyman* they mutined ſo violently, that they compelled him to diſplace *Ruſtan*, his chief *Baſſa* or Favorite. Againſt *Amurath* the Third, for placing over them a new *Aga*, they ſo ſtrongly oppoſed themſelves, that firſt they ſet fire on

Conſtantinople, and burnt therein beſides Shops, and Warehouſes, twenty five great Inns, ſeven Temples, and 15000 Houſes: and in the end conſtrained him to give them money, and to yield alſo into their hands two of his chief Counſellors, by them ſuppoſed to be their Adverſaries, whom they drew about the ſtreets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622. above-named) in the year 1600. they grew ſo diſcontented with *Mahomet* the third, that they not only threatned to deſtroy the Principal Officers of the Court, and the baniſhment of the *Sultaneſs* his Mother, but the depoſing of himſelf alſo.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the cuſtom of theſe *Janizaries*, between the Death of an Old Emperor, and the beginning of a New, to commit divers Inſolencies; as the rifling of the Houſes of the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Baſſaes*, and principal men about the Court, whom they ſuſpected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outragious miſchiefs. Of theſe we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the ſecond, and *Mahomet* the *Great*: at which laſt time the Merchants at *Conſtantinople*, being natural *Turks*, eſcaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Baſſa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This ſpoil they took for ſo certain a due, that if they were diſappointed of it, they would preſently raiſe Commotions both in Court, Field and City; unleſs ſome preſent ſatisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmet* diſtributed among them two millions and a half of Ducats, *Selimus* the firſt, two millions; others made an increaſe of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the ſecond, diſtributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* only, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty: and the *Great Baſſaes* were rapped about the Pate with their Cavaliers, for perſuading them to quietneſs. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious Liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was uſually committed, the Death of the old Emperor was with all ſecrecy concealed, till the arrival of the new. To omit others, I will inſtance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the firſt, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the Siege of *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, which was ſo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Baſſa* the ſpace of twenty days; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Conſtantinople*, and came alſo to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately ſtrangled the Phyſicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his Death; commanded the Soldiers to go on in their Siege; and divers times ſhewed them the Emperor ſitting in his Horſe-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he uſed to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead Body, ſitting ſtill in the ſame manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the Firſt, the *Baſſaes* of the Court called their *Divanoes* as formerly they uſed; gave order for the levying of an Army, as if ſome War were intended; and the King's Phyſicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him ſtill in cure. But the Penſioners and *Janizaries* miſdoubting the matter, with all eagerneſs deſired to ſee him; which when the *Baſſaes* durſt not deny, they appointed the next day for their viſit. The next day, the body was apparelled in Royal Large Robes; placed in a Chair at the end of a long Gallery, and a little Boy cunningly ſet behind him, to move the Kings hand to his head as if he ſhould ſtroke his beard, as his manner was; which ſigns of life and ſtrength the Soldiers ſeeing, held themſelves contented and ſo was his death concealed the ſpace of 41 days.

4. As for the laſt, Theſe inſolent and unſufferable pranks committed ſo commonly by theſe maſterful ſlaves, ſo exceedingly ſtomached *Bajazet* the ſecond, that he ſecretly purpoſed with himſelf, for curing ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to uſe a deſperate remedy; which was to kill and deſtroy ſuddenly all the *Janizaries*. It is like that this *Bajazet*, being a Scholar, had read how *Conſtantine* the *Great* had caſſed the *Prætorian* Soldiers, and deſtroyed their Camp, as men that were the cauſes of all the ſtirs in his Empire, and whoſe pride was come to an intolerable height: and having the ſame cauſe to deſtroy his *Janizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much eaſe and ſafety as the other did. But they having notice of the Plot, for the time continued ſo united and linked together, that he durſt not then attempt it; and afterwards ſiding with his Son *Selimus*, caſt him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durſt puniſh them openly; but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is ſent privately in the night-time to *Pera* over againſt *Conſtantinople*: where by the way he is drowned, and a Piece of Ordnance ſhot of, to ſignifie the performing of the *Sultans* command. Since our Author wrote, there ſeems to have been a formed but ſecret deſign carried on to ſoften and by degrees bring under the *Janizaries*; to this end the Children of the *Janizaries* and natural *Turks* are more often taken up than thoſe of the *Chriſtians*: And theſe are better uſed, and having Relations and Friends, make uſe of them to raiſe themſelves the ſooner. So that Perſonal worth and valour is now leſs regarded and encouraged: There is alſo a *Feud* kept up between the *Spahi*'s and the *Janizaries* which has occaſioned great ſlaughters on both ſides: In the Siege of *Candia*, vaſt numbers of the *Janizaries* periſhed, and as it was thought by the deſign of the *Sultan* and *Prime-Vizier*. And in this War in *Hungary* vaſt numbers of the *Janizaries* have periſhed, ſo that they have been ſupplyed as they could be had out of the *Turks*, brought up in a quite different way, ſo that the *Janizaries* that now are, have nothing but the name and pay of the old *Janizaries*; yet they are ſtill as mutinous and inſolent as before, but growing into contempt at home and abroad, and perhaps with them will fall the *Turkiſh* or *Ottoman* Empire.

Now for the Emperors themſelves, we will conſider them in matters of Pleaſure, in matters of Ceremony, and in matters of State; the laſt being conſiderable in three main points, which are, the murdering of their Brethren, the removing of their Sons, their Revenue; and therein a touch of their Government. To theſe we will add, what apparent *ſymptoms* may be obſerved to prognoſticate the ſtanding, decreaſing, and increaſing of this puiſſant Monarchy.

For the firſt, he hath not ſo few as 500 (ſometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themſelves, all Slaves born of Chriſtian Parents, and indeed the Rareſt Beauties of his Empire. When he [illegible] diſpoſed to take his pleaſure with any of them, they are all ranked in a Gallery; and ſhe is by the *Aga* of the Women prepared for his Bed, to whom he giveth his Handkerchief. She that beareth him the firſt Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultaneſs*, (Queen-Mother we may call her.) neither can he make any of them free, unleſs he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his Women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are ſtrictly looked to, and liberally provided for, and not ſeldom are beſtowed by the ſucceeding *Sultan*, on his Great *Baſſaes*, and ſuch as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by Women and Eunuchs; theſe being not gelded only, but deprived of all their Genitals, and ſupplying the uſes of Nature with a Silver Quill; which inhuman cuſtom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the ſecond, becauſe he had ſeen a Gelding cover a Mare.

2. Theſe Ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the moſt part the building of a *Moſche* only to help to the Salvation of their Souls; or towards them by others, which are moſt apparent in the entertainment of Ambaſſadors. For when ſuch come to his preſence, they are led between two of his Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both ſides whereof the *Baſſaes* ſit with admirable ſilence, reſembling rather *Statues* than (men) they bow themſelves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breaſt, but never unco-

vering their heads, (which as was noted before) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts toward a Prince ſo glorious. The reaſon why they are thus brought in between two, is ſaid to be for their greater honour, but is indeed a fear they have, leſt the *Grand Seigneur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embaſſie, ſhould be ſtabbed. Which warineſs they have uſed, ever ſince the time that *Miles Cobelitz*, a *Servian*, ſcrambling from among the ſlain at the battle of *Caſſova*, and being admitted to the ſpeech of *Amurath* the firſt, the Author of that overthrow, ſtabbed him into the belly with his Dagger.

3. Amongſt all the Jars and Diſcontents that be, none have been with more Unkindneſs begun, or more Eagerneſs proſecuted, than thoſe of Brothers; and that not only in private Families, but in the ſtems of Princes, the multitude of Pretenders being the Original of moſt *Civil Wars*. To prevent theſe publick Emotions, the Emperors of *Habaſſia* uſe to immure up all their younger Children in the Hill *Amara*; the *Perſians* do put out the Eyes of their younger Brothers, and the *Turks* do murder them. Strange and horrid courſes, whereby to avoid the fear of a War in the State, they ſtir up a War in their own Bowels. The firſt amongſt the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the firſt, on his Brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he ſtrangled with a bow-ſtring: this being the only inſtrument of their *Fratricide*, becauſe thereby none of the blood royal of *Ottoman* is ſpilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the *Great* cauſed his young Brother, then at nurſe, to dye the death; and was not without much ado perſuaded from being the Executioner himſelf. *Amurath* the third, cauſed his five Brethren to be at once ſtrangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this courſe they imagine their own Eſtate to be infinitely ſecured, as knowing that *Muſtapha* a younger Son, ſtirred a Rebellion againſt *Amurath*; and *Zemes*, againſt *Bajazet*, both the ſecond of thoſe names: that *Solyman*, *Muſa*, and *Iſa*, ſeverally afflicted *Mahomet* the firſt; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*, the firſt of theſe names alſo. But yet they will not know, that nothing ſooner putteth their younger Brothers into theſe acts of Hoſtility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural Death: whereas were they but ſure of Life, and a Liberal and Princely Maintenance, it is more than probable, they would reſt content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithſtanding their barbarous Policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *Counterfeits* have heretofore much diſturbed the quiet of their Predeceſſors: for thus we find *Amurath* the ſecond to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Muſtapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet* then late deceaſed; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of ſedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm ſo often troubled with theſe *Mock-Kings*, as *England*: a counterfeit *Richard* the Second, being made in the time of *Henry* the Fourth; a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the Sixth; a counterfeit Duke of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the Seventh; and a counterfeit *Edward* the Sixth, under Queen *Mary*. To prevent theſe walking Spirits, *Mahomet* the Third laid out the dead Bodies of his Father and nineteen Brethren, as a common Spectacle for all that paſſed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Seigneur Muſtapha* miraculouſly eſcaped the Bow-ſtring twice; 1 When his Brother *Achmet*, and 2 When *Oſman* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the firſt in this Empire that ever did ſucceed in the collateral Line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the ſecond on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the Fourth, his elder Brother. And in 1687, *Solyman*; in 1691 *Achmet* Brothers of *Mahomet* the Fourth, ſucceeded in the Life of their Brother, who has Children of his own, which is likely in a ſhort time to embroil that Empire in a Civil War.

4 The removing of the young Princes is done for three Reaſons: 1. To wean them from the pleaſures of the Court. 2. To train them up in Arms, and inure them to hardneſs. 3. And principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are eſpecially jealous. The common places deſtinated to this Princely exile, are *Amaſia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magneſia*, in *Lydia*; and ſuch like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old *Sultans* by ſuch a great diſtance think themſelves ſecure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons Actions, and have intelligence of almoſt every particular thought, the leaſt ſuſpicion being cauſe ſufficient to deſtroy them. So we find *Muſtapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulleſt branch that ever ſprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been ſhamefully ſtrangled by the command of his Father: upon a rumour only of a Marriage, which he was ſaid to have negotiated with the *Perſian* King's Daughter. When theſe Princes are once ſetled in the Government, it is a crime meriting no leſs puniſhment than death to depart thence and come unto *Conſtantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unleſs they are by their Fathers ſent for. Of this we have a Tragical Example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the ſecond: who deſiring to ſee the faſhion of his Fathers Court, left *Magneſia*, to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a Sea-faring man to *Conſtantinople*, and having obtained his deſire, he returned to his charge. This ſtrange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variouſly interpreted, ſtirred ſuch jealouſies in the ſuſpicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him ſecretly poiſoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it conſiſteth either in money received, or money ſaved. The money ſaved, is firſt by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the ſpoil of the Enemy. And ſecondly by the *Timariots*, who nouriſh and bring into the Field more Horſe than any Prince in Chriſtendom can keep (as we have already ſaid) for 14 Millions of Gold. The mony received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of Sultanies, which is nothing in reſpect of ſo great an Empire. The chief reaſon whereof is the tyrannical government of the *Turk*, which deterrs men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their eſtates; as knowing all their gettings to lye at the *Grand Seigneurs* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is incredible. For beſides that no Embaſſador cometh before him empty-handed; no man is Maſter of his own wealth, farther than it ſtands with the Emperors liking: ſo that his great *Baſſaes* are but as ſpunges, to ſuck up riches till their Coffers ſwell; and then to be ſqueezed into his Treaſury. Theſe men, as he advanceth without envy, ſo can he deſtroy without danger: no man here hoping for partakers, if he ſhould reſiſt, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the deſired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperor's Coffers, who giveth only what he pleaſeth to the Children of the deceaſed. Theſe *Baſſaes* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanoes*, or Law-Courts, where juſtice hath been adminiſtred formerly with great integrity but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that ſuch as miſcarry in their right, ſhall without delay know what to truſt to: and the *Baſſaes* upon complaint to the Emperor, are ſure to die for it. Over theſe *Baſſaes* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Baſſa*, or Preſident of the Council) preſide two *Beglerbegs*, one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the preſent ſtate of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increaſe;

which judgment they ground upon good reaſons, whereof theſe are the chief.

1. The Body is grown too monſtrous for the Head, the *Sultans* ſince the death of *Solyman* never accompanying their Armies in perſon (except *Morat*, or *Amurath* the Fourth) but rioting and waſting their Bodies and Treaſures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principal ſtrength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp; corrupted with eaſe and liberty, drowned in prohibited Wines, enfeebled with the continual converſe of Women, and fallen from their former auſterity of diſcipline.

3. They have of late given no increaſe unto their Dominions; and as in the paths of virtue, *Non progredi eſt regredi*, ſo in Empires, by violence gotten, when they ceaſe to be augmented, they begin to be diminiſhed.

4. Rebellions have in theſe latter times been in this Empire ſtrangely raiſed, and mightily ſupported; which Commotions the former *Sultans* were never acquainted with.

5. The greatneſs of this Empire is ſuch, that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightineſs of it ſelf, ſo that it muſt in a manner needs decline, *Pondere preſſa ſuo*, overburthened with its own mightineſs. For as in a natural body, a Surfeit killeth more than faſting; ſo in the Body Politick alſo, too much extent of Empire doth ſooner draw on a ruin, than either too little, or a mediocrity. There lies ſome objections to this Fifth Reaſon, becauſe the *Aſſyrian*, *Perſian*, and *Roman* Empire were much greater than the *Ottoman* ever was; and the *Macedonian*, tho divided into Four Parts, did yet ſubſiſt many Ages after it began to decline. But there is one thing to be ſaid of this *Ottoman* Empire, that is not true of any of the reſt; *The Dominions of it are much too great for the People*. The *Turks* have deſtroyed more rich and populous Cities, after they were poſſeſſed of them, and have deſolated more fruitful Provinces than any Government that ever was before them in the World; ſo that their Dominions being great and far diſtended, they are not able to find people to occupy, or Soldiers to defend them; and this is the true Reaſon the *Germans* and *Venetians* have had ſuch prodigious ſucceſs againſt them in the preſent War.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Seigneur*, whoſe bravery of mind is ever ſuſpected by their Fathers, are nurſed up (contrary ſometimes to their natural Inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth always after ſubject them to the ſoftneſs and baſeneſs of Libidinous Pleaſures.

7. They have loſt much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very Name did carry with it; inſomuch that not the *Venetians* only have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withſtood their greateſt Forces for the ſpace of 200 years by land; the *Polonians* forced them to diſhonourable retreat and compoſition; but the poor Prince of *Tranſylvania* did divers times diſcomfit them, with the death of many of their *Baſſaes*: The *Florentine* with ſix Ships only, intercepteth their Trade; and the poor *Emir of Sidon* held it out againſt them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court, all Peace and War, all Counſels and Informations, all Injuries and Favours being now made ſaleable. And

9. It is viſible and apparent, that their Empire was long ſince at the higheſt: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non poteſt, recidit*, as *Vellius* hath it, When an Empire can aſcend no higher, by the ordinary courſe of nature it muſt have a fall. All theſe are more than probable Prognoſticks of a ſinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater than any of theſe, that is to ſay, the preſent State of Affairs. The young Emperor *Mahomet* the Fourth, now reigning is but a weak Staff to ſupport ſo vaſt an Empire, conſidering not only the infinite caſualties, to which children are naturally ſubject; but the dangers which he may juſtly fear from a Rebellious Soldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the Murther of one Emperor, and the depoſition of two, have made themſelves ſo formidable, but withal ſo odious in the ſight of the Imperial Houſe, that there is no way left to ſave them from a merited Vengeance, but to tranſlate the Empire to ſome other Family; tho by the rooting out of this. Which whenſoever it ſhall happen, either by the natural death or unnatural deſtruction of the preſent *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* Race, which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by Miracle. Suppoſing then the Line of *Ottoman* to fail (as it is moſt probable that it will) what will become of this vaſt Empire? Three there will be to offer at it, *viz.* the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Baſſaes*. And firſt the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a compoſition, made by his Anceſtors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* Family; which is, that he ſupplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, when their occaſions ſo require, ſhould on the failer of the Heirs Males ſucceed in this Empire. Beſides which, he may hope for no ſmall ſuccours, not only from the reſt of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himſelf, to recover his Eſtate herein, if with-holden from him; thereby to add to the preſent greatneſs and renown of the *Tartars*, the acceſs of ſuch a ſpacious Empire. 2. The *Baſſaes* may conceive no ſmall poſſibilities of dividing this great Empire among themſelves, partly by the Example of *Alexander*'s Captains, who after their Maſter's death (there being yet ſome of the Blood-Royal remaining) parted amongſt themſelves not only the new gotten Provinces which they had conquered from the *Perſians*, but even the Kingdom of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an Example in their own Hiſtories; by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the ſecond, *Caraman*, *Sarachan*, *Cnidin*, *Caraſus*, and the reſt of the more powerful Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdom in the *Leſſer Aſia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governors in their ſeveral Provinces, and having ſo many Bands of Soldiers under their command, which may eaſily inveſt them as Proprietaries in thoſe Eſtates, of which they have already ſuch a fair poſſeſſion. And ſo we find the *Sultans*, or Provincial Governors, or the *Caliphs of Babylon* to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may alſo build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the Enterprize, have the example of the *Prætorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more Politick and better compacted than this is;) who out of their own Company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperors, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppoſe them in it. But above all Examples, that of the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt* doth make faireſt for them; who were born of Chriſtian Parents, as theſe are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as theſe are; purpoſely entertained and inured to the Wars, to take from the natural Subjects the uſe of Arms, as theſe are; men of approved Valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom againſt the Chriſtians, as theſe are; and then why may they not be like them in this laſt attempt, for ſitting in their Maſters Throne, as theſe *Mamalucks* did? Add hereunto, that they are already (in a manner) poſſeſſed of *Conſtantinople*, the head Town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men moſt like to carry it, unleſs the Princes of Chriſtendom laying aſide private malice, join all in Arms to ſtrip this proud Peacock of his Feathers: and (upon ſo bleſſed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of Iron, this inſolent and burthenſome Monarchy: A thing rather to be deſired than expected. But this by way of ſuppoſition, and as in a Dream, I awake again. See *Bernier*, p. 72, 73, 74. foretelling the ruin of this and the other Two *Mahometan* Empires, *Perſia* and *Indoſtan*.

The Enſign of this Empire (or Arms of it) is the *Croiſſant*, or Half-Moon; but how Blazoned I cannot tell you; nor are the Learned yet reſolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them from the Eaſtern Gentiles, who worſhipped the Moon under both Sexes, as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them with the other *Mahometans*; and they derive it from a pretended Miracle of *Mahome*; who to ſhew his Power, is ſaid to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have reſtored her whole again to the Heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Seigneur* at the winning of *Conſtantinople*; *Ut ſignum victæ gentis penes quam Orientis imperium eſſet.* And of this mind is *Juſtus Lypſius*, induced thereto as it ſeemeth, by the figure of the *Croiſſant*, born in ſome old *Byzantine* Coins. A pretty plauſible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may paſs as currant as the Money.

And thus much I thought convenient to inſert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural diſpoſitions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: This being as the only Province which retaineth their Name; ſo both the firſt they were poſſeſſed of, and the laſt which they have fully conquered of all their Dominions. Which ſaid, we muſt here take our leave of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and once again of the *Roman* alſo, of which the River *Tigris* and the *Caſpian Sea* were the utmoſt bounds; not meeting again with either of them, unleſs by accident (or ſome unprofitable expeditions) till we come to *Ægypt*, and there we ſhall hear farther of them.

The Reverend Dr. *Heylin* wrote thus of the *Turkiſh* Empire about the Year 1647, or 48. at which time their Fortunes were rather at a ſtand than declining; yet he and other Politicians did even then foreſee their approaching Ruin: Since that time their good and evil Fortunes have promoted the Fall of it to that degree, that it is indeed a Miracle if ever this Empire recover what it hath loſt. And it is now my buſineſs to ſhew by what ſtep this is come upon them within a little more than forty years.

Sultan Mahomet the IV. was at the time of his Father's death a Child but of ſeven years of age; the government and tuition of him was thereupon put into the hands of his Mother: This was ſo ill reſented by *Kioſem* his Grandmother, who had been the Betrayer and Murtherer of his Father, that ſhe formed a Party againſt him in his Infancy: which being defeated by *Kuperlee*, the then *Prime Viſier*, *Kioſem* was put to death, and he eſtabliſhed in his Throne. The Infancy of this Prince, and the Merit of this Action ſo fixed *Kuperlee*, that he enjoyed the Office to his Death, and left it to his Son after him, which never happen'd before. This great Man finding the *Spahies* and *Janizaries* at deadly enmity, and his Maſter young, employed the one againſt the other to ruin all he ſuſpected, and in the mean time bred the Prince in a ſoft effeminate manner to ſecure his own Greatneſs: The conſequence of which was, that he became a luxurious and unwarlike Prince, given wholly up to his Pleaſure.

The War of *Candia* had been begun in the Life of *Sultan Ibrahim* his Father in the year 1645. and tho the greateſt part of the Iſland was then reduced, yet *Canea* held out, and the *Venetians* being Maſters at Sea, not only relieved it with eaſe, but ſtopped up the Paſſage of the *Archipelago*, frequently took the Succours ſent to the Iſland from the Continent, and defended the Town till the year 1669. In this Siege the *Prime Vizier* ſpent the *Janizaries* ſo very freely, that it was generally ſaid, he deſigned the ruin of the whole Order. But however this Siege manifeſtly brought a Conſumption on the *Ottoman* Empire, or at leaſt diſcovered it.

In the year 1663, there broke out a War between the Emperor of *Germany* and the *Sultan*, and tho the *Turks* took *New-Hauſel* that year, yet the next at the Paſſage of the *Raab* they received ſo great a defeat, that they were glad to come to a Peace with the Emperor upon his own Terms, having loſt the flower of their Army by an Accident, more being drowned than were ſlain by the Sword, a rainy night having made the River unpaſſable.

In the year 1673, the *Poles* obtained a great and ſignal Victory over the *Turks* on their own ſide of the *Neiſter*, in which there periſhed 20000 of their beſt men, and amongſt them 5500 *Janizaries*, and they loſt 2000 Purſes of Silver, 25000 Wagons of Proviſions, and Ammunition, and all their Cannon and Baggage: This humbled the Pride of the *Turks*, and taught the *Poles* to deſpiſe them.

Being thus prepared for Ruin, in the year 1683, they began a War upon *Germany* with the ſiege of *Vienna*; in which they were finally baff'd, after they had loſt in the Siege 48544 Men, beſides what were loſt in the Battel and three days ſiege after this; all their Tents, Cannon, and Ammunition: After this they have had one continued Chain of Misfortunes, all *Hungary*, almoſt *Tranſilvania*, *Sclavonia*, the *Morea*, a great part of *Dalmatia* are loſt, and tho they have recovered *Servia*, yet is their Poſſeſſion very precarious and uncertain, and ſo many of their own Subjects are revolted from them, as in a few years will be able to maintain a great part of the War againſt them.

They have loſt three great Battels ſince, at *Strigonium*, *Mohatz*, and *Salankement*; they have depoſed their *Sultan* without any cauſe but that of his Misfortunes, and ſet up Two Brothers one after the other, that were bred in Priſons till they were above forty years of age, and by conſequence are never capable of being made fit for Government: They have ſuffered the *French* to get ſuch a footing in their Court and Counſels, as will in all probability ruin them if the War goes on, or a Peace ſhould follow: They have in a tumultuous way ruined all their rich, great and valiant men that have eſcaped the Swords of their Enemies: They are divided into irreconcilable Factions in the Army, Court and Cities, ſo that which way ſoever a man turns his Eyes, he can ſee nothing but ſymptoms of Ruin.

In this ſtate of Affairs nothing was ſo much their intereſt, as to have made a Peace in 90, 91, and 92. but the *French* by their Intriegues have prevented it, tho the whole body of the Nation ſee how much it is their Intereſt: So that they ſeek Peace moſt ardently, and it flees from them, whilſt they only fight to enrich their Enemies, and deſolate and undo their own people.

May God of his Infinite Goodneſs put an end to this Curſed Empire, which have do[illegible] more miſchief to Mankind, and laid more Countries deſ[illegible] than all that ever went before it.

And thus muc[illegible] *URCOMANIA.*

OF

OF

MEDIA and PERSIA.

THeſe I have joyned together alſo, becauſe the affairs thereof have been ſo united, in making up the ſecond of the four great Monarchies, and running the ſame Fortunes ever ſince: that they are hardly to be parted in courſe of Story, tho' each muſt have unto it ſelf a diſtinct *Chorography*. Firſt then we begin with *Media*.

MEDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Parthia*, and ſome part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; on the Weſt with *Armenia Major*, and ſome part of *Aſſyria*; on the North with the *Caſpian-Sea*, and thoſe parts of *Armenia Major*, which now paſs in the account of *Georgia*; and on the South with *Perſia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom firſt Planted and Poſſeſſed, after that general diſperſion made at *Babel*, known by this name among the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time *Sheirvan* by the *Turks* and *Perſians*: the word ſignifying in the Language of this Country, a *Milky Plain*.

The Country of a large extent, and of ſo different nature, as one would think it not the ſame. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea, very cold and comfortleſs: So Barren, that for the moſt part they make their Bread of dried *Almonds*, and their Drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and thoſe but of Apples; nor any droves of tame Cattel, as in other places, their Food being generally on Veniſon, or the Fleſh of wild Beaſts took in Hunting. But on the South ſide of the *Taurus*, the Soil is very rich, and the Country pleaſant, plentiful both of Corn and Wine, and all things neceſſary; full of fat Paſtures, ſome of them ſo large in compaſs, that 50000 Horſes do graze upon them. *Mandeſlo* in his Travels, page 10. obſerveth that moſt of the Maps that have yet (in 1638) been made at *Perſia* are very defective, becauſe they put the *Caſpian* Sea too high to the North, and conſequently allow it a greater breadth from North to South than it really hath, for they put the City of *Reſht* in 41 degree, whereas it lies in 37. and *Gameron*, or *Gambroon* in 25. which lies in 27. So that between them is but ten degrees, whereas *Botero* allows it eighteen degrees.

The People anciently great Warriors, as thoſe who Ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themſelves and their own Virtue, the foundation of the ſecond Monarchy. But being not long after incorporated into the ſame Empire with the *Perſians*, have not only ever ſince followed the ſame fortunes with them, but participate of their [illegible] alſo: and therefore we ſhall hear more of [illegible]ter, when we come to *Perſia*. *Poligamy* anciently [illegible] them, ſo far from being eſteemed a ſin, or an inconvenience, that it was a puniſhment for the common *Villager* to have leſs than ſeven Wives; or [illegible] Woman, [illegible] of Noble Birth, fewer than five Husbands. In their Wars they uſe commonly to envenom their Arrows with an Oyl or Liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Naphta*, whereof there is great plenty, both here, in *Perſia*, and *Aſſyria*. The Oyl call'd *Oleum Mediacum*, from this People only, becauſe their invention; and by them moſt miſchievouſly uſed. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being ſhot from a ſlacker Bow, (for a ſwift and ſtrong motion took away its virtue) did burn the fleſh wherein it faſten'd, with ſo ſo great a violence, that nothing but duſt could mitigate the fury of it; water increaſing rather than diminiſhing that malignant flame.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was firſt here planted by S. *Thomas*, but never had the happineſs to be ſo univerſally embraced, as in other places; always oppoſed and ſuppreſſed, either by Paganiſm, in the time of the old *Perſian* Kings: or by *Mahometaniſm*, ſince the firſt Conqueſt of this Country by the Power of the *Saracens*. Some *Chriſtians* yet there be among them, either of the *Armenian*, or *Neſtorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Perſian* Empire) the ſpecialties of whoſe Religion have been elſewhere ſpoke of. Here live alſo very many *Jews*, indulged the free exerciſe of their Religion: many which are deſcendants of thoſe Tribes which were tranſplanted hither by *Salmanaſſer*. But the Religion generally embraced and contenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Perſian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do alſo ſpeak, tho' they had a Language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite*, or *Perſian*, as apeareth *Acts* 2. 9. where they are reckoned as diſtinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1 *Orontes*. 2 *Coronus*. 3 *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Aſſyria*. 4 *Jaſonium*. 5 *Lagoas*, all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the disjoynted branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his courſe beſides.

Out of theſe flow their principal Rivers. 1 *Amandus*, 2 *Stratæ*, and 3 *Carindas*, of greateſt eminence in this Country, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwiſe of no great account or obſervation. 4 *Canac*, the divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis*, (by the *Perſians Vaſthlan*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, ſituate in the confines of *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fiſh whereof dried by the Sun and Wind, and ſold into divers other Countries, the People of theſe parts raiſe a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many Provinces, the principal of which, 1 *Tropatene*. 2 *Charomithrene*. 3 *Darites*. 4 *Marciane*. 5 *Amariaci*. And 6 *Syro-Media*. Theſe and the reſt reduced to two in the latter reckonings, *viz*. *Atropatia*, and 2 *Media Major*.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governor of theſe parts in the time of *Darius*, the laſt *Perſian* Monarch, who ſo Valiantly held out againſt the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A Barren, Cold, and Unhoſpitable Country, as before deſcribed; and for that cauſe allotted for the dwelling of many of the Captive *Iſraelites*, brought hither by *Salmanaſſer* when he Conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found ſo great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the *Jew* reckoned no fewer than 50000 of 'em in one City only, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of 'em were tranſplanted hither, appeareth by that paſſage, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is ſaid, that they were placed in *Halah* and *Habor*, by the River of *Gozan*, and *in the Cities of the* Medes. Now *Halah* or *Chalah* ſeems moſt probably to be that Region of *Aſſyria* which

Ptolemy calleth *Chalatene*, in the North of that Country, towards *Media*, *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Country from *Aſſyria*, in which Mountainous tract there was in thoſe times a City of the ſame name alſo. Betwixt which City and the Banks of the *Caſpian* Sea, I find in *Ptolomy* the City of *Gauzania*, in the 40th. and 40 min. of the Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footſteps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whoſe Banks it was moſt likely to be ſeated.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Hamadum*, by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, called *Madai*, repleniſhed in his time with Families of the Captive *Iſraelites*. 2 *Gauzania*, another dwelling of thoſe Tribes ſpoken of before. 3 *Mandagarſis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 *Gelan*, inhabited by *Gelæ* of the Ancients, whom the *Greeks* call *Caduſii*. 5 *Bochu*, more towards the *Caſpian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6 *Eres*, a place of great ſtrength, but poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and made the Reſidence of ſome of their Principal Officers: Taken by *Muſtapha* General of the *Turkiſh* Forces, in the time of *Amurath* the Third, and by him Fortified as the Gate and Entrance of this Country. 7 *Sumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Oſman Baſſa*, at the ſame, *Anno* 1578, and made the Reſidence of a *Beglerbeg*, *Anno* 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyrnopolis* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Perſians* called *Cyrekbata*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch, by whom Built or Beautified. Remarkable at the preſent for a Pillar of Flint-ſtones interwoven with the heads of many of the *Perſian* Nobility, moſt Barbarouſly ſlain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a Terror to others. *Scamachi*, or *Sumachi*, *Samachi*, *Syropolis*, is ſo handſomly ſeated in a Valley, that it is not viſible till one is within Canon-ſhot of it. It is called by the *Perſians*, *Circumbate*, and by the *Arabians*, *Chycleth*: In former times this was a place of ſome Strength, but in the Wars of *Sebac-Abbas* King of *Perſia*, it was Diſmantled and made a Village, to prevent the *Turks* from Neaſting again in it, yet the Wall on the North ſide is ſtill ſtanding too, it has a Mote, but eaſily to be paſſed, and five Gates, which are ſhut every night, though to no purpoſe. The ſtreets are narrow, and the Buildings low, conſiſting of Clay, Twigs, daubed over, and Planks, yet it hath a rich Market ſtored with Silks, Cottons, Furs, Cloath of Gold and Silver, Tapeſtry, &c. It was rebuilt in 1670. being entirely ruined by an Earthquake in 1667, (this ſhews the true reaſon why the Houſes are no better): *Struyis* page 238. *Olearius* ſaith, it had once 5000 houſes, but was deſtroyed by the *Turks*: The *Perſians* Re-built it. in 1637. it had about 900 Houſes, page 222. In the Year 1573. before it fell into the *Turks* hands it was the faireſt City in all *Perſia*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 1. pag. 347.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* ſpecially ſo called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Ancients for one of the goodlieſt Countries in all *Aſia*: the Fields (ſaith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatneſs and fertility very rich, and no leſs pleaſant for freſh Springs and clear veins of Water, where one may ſee plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horſes, which they call *Niſæi*, Mounted by as Valiant and Generous Riders, who with great Jollity uſe to go unto the Wars, and Charge Furiouſly upon the Enemy. The Men commended by *Polybius* (κατὰ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1 *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus*, in a War made againſt the *Medes*, who had then Rebelled, taking an affection to the place, cauſed Water-courſes to be made to it from the further ſide of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a paſſage through the Hills, with great charge and labour. Deſtroyed by the injury of Time, it was re-edified by *Deioces* the 6th King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*, Succeſſor unto *Alexander* in his *Aſian* Conqueſts. For Beauty and Magnificence little inferior to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before deſcribed. In compaſs 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* Miles. The Walls thereof affirmed in the Book of *Judith* to be 70 Cubits high, 50 Cubits broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 Cubits higher; all built of hewn and poliſh'd ſtone, each ſtone being ſix Cubits in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be underſtood only of the innermoſt Wall, there being ſeven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each diſtinguiſhed by the colour of their ſeveral Pinnacles, which gave unto the eye a moſt gallant Proſpect. From which variety of Colours, it is thought to have the name of *Agbatha*, or *Agbathana*. In former times the ordinary Reſidence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*, in the heat of Summer; as *Suſa* (the chief City of *Suſiana*) in the cold of Winter: The Royal Palace being about a Mile in compaſs, was built with all the Coſt and Cunning that a ſtately Manſion did require: Some of the Beams thereof of Silver, and the reſt of Cedar; but thoſe of Cedar ſtrengthned with Plates of Gold. Said by *Joſephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*, which muſt be underſtood no otherwiſe in the truth of Story, than that he overſaw the Work-men, or contrived the Model, appointed to that Office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the Building of the ſame is aſcribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* Race, it became a Ruin. 2 *Tauris*, ſituate in or near the Place of *Ecbatana*, out of whoſe Rubbiſh it was Built. Diſtant 150 miles from the *Caſpian* Sea, under the ſhadow of *Orontes*, now call'd *Baronta*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and ſpacious *Campagn*, in compaſs about ſix miles, and beautified on the South-weſt with a large and pleaſant Garden, the work of *Sultan Tamas*, who reſided here often: the Buildings for the moſt part of Brick, with flat Roofs, (as generally in the Eaſt) well Peopled, as containing 200000 perſons of all Sorts and Sects. Of great Trading, till Subdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, *viz.* by *Selimus* I. *Anno* 1514. by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1530. and by *Oſman Baſſa*, General of *Amurath* III. 1585. But this laſt finding it too chargeable always to be Gariſoned, and not otherwiſe Tenable but by Force, pulled down the Walls, and built a large and capacious Citadel: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Perſia*, and Father of *Sultan Sopky*, *Anno* 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. Sir *John Chardin* eſtimates the Inhabitants of *Taurus* now to be 550000 Souls, page 352. *Tavernier* page 20. *Minadoi*, page 311. 3 *Arſatia*, ſo named by *Ptolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by ſome of the *Parthian* Race. Ruined long ſince, but more beautifully revived than ever in the preſent. 4 *Casbin*, raiſed from the Ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the Banks of a little River, which ſerveth it for houſhold uſes, but not for Traffick. Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*; partly invited thereunto by the richneſs of the Soil, and the commodiouſneſs of the Place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compaſs about ſeven miles, beautified with a large Market-place, many ſtately Moſques, and the Sultan's Palace: this laſt adjoyning to the firſt, convenient enough, but neither of great State nor Beauty. In 1585 *Abbas* King of *Perſia* removed the Royal Seat to *Hiſphaan*, which together with the unhealthfulneſs of the Air, in Summer for want of Sinks to carry away the filth, makes the City decline; yet Sir *John Chardin* eſtimated the Houſes to be 12000, and the Inhabitants 100000. page 378.

Tavernier page 26. *Hackluit*, tom. 1. pag. 398. *Struys*, page 304. See the Lexicon *Geographicum.* 5 *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the Book of *Tobit*, ſo called from *Reu*, or *Ragau* the ſon of *Phaleg*, the Founder of it: ſituate near the ſpacious Plain, ſo memorable for the great breed of Horſes ſpoken of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plain of Rages.* Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and ſo ſtands in *Ptolomy.* 6 *Naſſivan*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Artaſata*, more probably the *Naſuana*, of the ancient Writers: A place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Perſian* Wars. 7 *Ardoville*, on or near the Banks of the great Lake *Argis*, ſpoken of before: The Birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the firſt Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the Burial-place of *Sultan Hyſmael*, the firſt *Perſian Sultan* of that Line. 8 *Sultania*, about ſix days Journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually cover'd with Snow, may be ſeen far off: Founded by *Alyaptu*, the Eighth King of the Sixth or *Tartarian* Dynaſty, and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Perſian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But Ruinated by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former ſplendor, but the Moſques, or Temples (one of them the faireſt in the Eaſt) which the *Tartars* ſpared. 9 *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, ſituate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleaſant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environ'd with a Wall of greater circuit than the City. 10 *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Caſbin.* 11 *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 Houſes, not here conſiderable, but for the ſignification of the name; which is ſaid to ſignifie a *Second Plantation*: And being ſituate at the foot of ſo high a Mountain, occaſioned ſome of the *Jews* to think that the Ark reſted not far off, as perhaps it did. 12 *Marant*, in the extremity of the Country, but of leſſer note.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the Poſterity of *Madai*, as before was ſaid; *Ragau* the Son of *Phaleg* taking up thoſe parts, which lay next *Aſſyria.* Divided in long tract of Time into ſeveral Tribes, as the *Caduſii*, *Amariacli*, *Margaſi*, *Sagartii*, *Debryces*, *Tapyri*, and ſome others. Governed by Kings immediately from the firſt Plantation; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and ſlain by *Ninus* the Grand-ſon of *Nimrod.* After this made ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, their Kings were only Titular, at the beſt, but Homagers, perhaps no better than Provincial Governors under that great Monarchy. Of moſt eſteem among 'em was that *Arſæus*, who with an Army of 800000 Men (if the number be not miſtaken) encountred the *Caduſii*, by whom Diſcomfited, and Slain. But the *Caduſii* ſo broken, that they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Perſians*, and ſo continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the laſt of theſe Provincials, and the firſt Monarch of the *Medes.* He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to ſee his Lord and Maſter in a Womans Dreſs, Spinning among his Concubines, and otherwiſe behaving himſelf in a Brutiſh manner; which ſo moved him, that he reſolved to be no longer ſubject to ſo vile a Monſter. Communicating his thoughts unto *Belochus*, Governor of *Babylon*, and well ſeen in *Aſtrology*, he was encouraged to proceed; and ſped ſo well, that having made themſelves Maſters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City, (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them ſhrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Eſtates. To *Belochus* fell *Aſſyria* and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the Weſt of *Tigris*: To *Arbaces*, *Media*, and the reſt, which now make up the Kingdom of *Perſia.* But being a mild Prince, and deſirous by fair and gentle means to aſſure his Empire, he confirmed the *Perſian Satrapaes* in their former Governments; reſerving nothing to himſelf but a *Titular Sovereignty.* Of whom and his Succeſſors more, when we have taken in the reſt of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is Bounded on the Eaſt with *India*; on the Weſt with *Media*, *Aſſyria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North with *Tartary*; on the South, with the Main Ocean. So called from *Perſis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave Law to all the reſt: as that is ſaid to do from *Perſæus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirm'd by the *Grecians* to have Conquer'd theſe Eaſtern Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Iſidore*, Perſæ *populi à* Perſeo *Rege ſunt vocati, qui à* Græcis *in* Aſiam *tranſiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoq; bello perdomuit, & victor nomen ſubactæ Genti impoſuit.* In the Scripture it is conſtantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the Son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Perſians* had ſubdued *Babylon*, and transferred the Supreme Monarchy to themſelves, we find this People called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Perſian* ſeems to come) the word *Paras* (or *Pharas*) ſignifying as much as Horſeman. Given therefore to this Nation, as 'tis ſuppoſed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of *Horſemanſhip*, but ſet forth a Law, that it ſhould be a Reproach to any man to go on foot, *Sive multum ſive parum itineris eſſet conficiendum*, whether the Journey that he had to go were long or little. Called ſometimes alſo *Achæmenides*, from *Achæmenides* the Son of *Perſes*, one of the firſt known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot* Achæmeniis *armantur* Suſa *Sagittis*) they occur in the ſecond of *Propertius.* Where by *Achæmeniæ Sagittæ*, he means *Perſian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, ſtretched out in length from the 82*d.* degree of Longitude, to the 120, being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23*d* degree of Northern Latitude, to the 43*d.* being 20 more. According unto which poſition, with reference to the Heavenly Bodies, we ſhall find it ſeated under the third, fourth, fifth, and ſixth Climates: the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almoſt three quarters, and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts moſt Northwards.

The Country not alike in all places, as it is impoſſible it ſhould in ſo great a compaſs. But generally it is of a pure and wholeſome air, the high hills ſhading it on the one ſide from the heat of the *Clime* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sun, wherewith encompaſſed, cheriſhing a great part thereof. And ſo it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*; *Regio non alia in tota Aſia ſalubrior habetur; temperatum Cœlum; hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & ombroſum, quod æſtus levat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modico tempore terras fovet.* Then for the Earth, it is by reaſon of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and Sandy, in many places deſtitute of Water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by conſequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatneſs of it: Men loving to Inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the uſe of Water. Which notwithſtanding, it is furniſhed with all neceſſaries both for life and pleaſure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as ſhall be ſhewed in the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces.

The People anciently were train'd up to the Wars, but chiefly unto Archery, from their very Childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleaſed; they never ſaw the Children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age ſent unto their Fathers, they were taught preſently to handle the Bow and Arrows. Upon this ground we find the Bow of *Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the Quiver of *Elam* by the Prophet *Iſaiah*, chap. 22. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or moſt uſed among them. They were good Horſemen alſo, and well skill'd at their Dart and Slings, till wealth and eaſe, and the pride of ſo great an Empire made them wholly feminine: depriving them of thoſe abilities both of Mind and Body, wherein they did excel moſt Nations in their harder times. In all their Fortunes very obſequious, if not ſervile, to their Kings and Princes; in whoſe preſence it was a crime to ſpit: but to deny obedience unto his Commands an offence ſo heinous,as was not to be puniſhed with leſs than the loſs of Life, and want of Burial. In this obſervance of their Kings,follow'd,if not outſtripp'd,by the modern *Perſian*. A Race of Men affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitiſſimi*, the moſt Meek or Patient of the World, eſpecially compared with thoſe of the ſame Religion,the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of Learning, as the *Turks*, but ſtudious, many of them in *Phyſick* and *Aſtrology*; moſt of the better ſort much delighted in Poetry,which they give their minds to. For the moſt part addicted to Hoſpitality, Magnificent in Expence, Lordly in their Complements, Fantaſtical in their Apparel, Maintainers of Nobility, and deſirous of Peace. Such as apply themſelves to Trades, and Mechanick Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloath of Gold: thoſe which betake themſelves to War, proving very good Soldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their coſt, who by their long Wars againſt them have got nothing but blows. The Women ſaid to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the ſequeſtrations of Pleaſure.

Their Religion at the firſt was *Paganiſm*, wherein directed principally by the Prieſts or *Magi*, Men of a ſtrict, auſtere life, forbidding outward Ornaments, and the uſe of Gold; making the Ground their Bed, and the Herbs their Food; their whole time ſpent in Offering to the gods the Prayers and Sacrifices of the People, as if they only might be heard; or elſe in Divinations, and foretelling of things to come; from whence the name of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and Nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not only *Philoſophy*, lovers of Wiſdom; but *Philothei*, the lovers of God. Of ſuch eſteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Perſian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the Diſcipline of the *Magi*: and of ſuch power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of thoſe *Magi*, on the Death of *Cambyſes* poſſeſſed himſelf of the *Perſian* Monarchy. In a word, ſuch as the *Druids* were to the *Galls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnoſophiſts*, or *Brachmans*, to the ancient *Indians*, and the *Chaldeans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the ſame, if not of greater ſway in Affairs of Moment, were the *Perſian Magi*. And *Perſians* they muſt be, if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Country being to be admitted of that Society; tho' by a Metaphor, applied to the Profeſſors of the ſame Arts, tho' of other Countries, as thoſe which came from the Eaſt to Worſhip Chriſt, are by St. *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat.* 2. 1.) though they came from *Arabia*.

The People then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and beſides other gods which the *Gentiles* Worſhipped, they were great Idolaters of the Fire; which they offer'd Sacrifice unto in time of Peace,and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Deity* in the time of War. At what time (eſpecially if the King were there in Perſon) it was born in the very Front of their Army, attended on by their Prieſts, and followed by a Train of Boys, all cloathed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the days of the year. In this Equipage, with a great deal of Pomp beſides, did *Darius* ſet forwards to Fight with *Alexander*, at the Battel of *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. A Superſtition derived from them to the *Medes* and *Aſſyrians*,their next neighbouring Nations,and not extinguiſhed to this day in ſome parts of this Country; in which many of theſe *Fire-worſhippers* are ſtill remaining. But from a god, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Uſher*, and to attend on Kings, and perſons of greateſt Eminence: uſed to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of State. Inſomuch that *Commodus*, though fallen out with his Siſter *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithſtanding to enjoy her Seat in the publick Theatre, καὶ πῦρ προπομπεύειν αὐτῷ, a fire to be born before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt planted in the Provinces of the *Perſian* Kingdom, by St. *Thomas* the Apoſtle, and held in all points anſwerable to thoſe of the Catholick Church,till *Sapores* to deſpite the Emperor *Heraclius*, a right Orthodox Prince, Commanded that all the Chriſtians in his Dominions ſhould Conform themſelves to the Opinions and Tendries of the *Neſtorian* Sect, by that means univerſally ſpread over all theſe Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled ſome *Armenian* Chriſtians,who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Country was made the ſeat of a long and miſerable War betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Turk*; but found not here ſo ſafe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being ſlain by *Abbas* the late *Perſian Sultan*, on a ſuſpicion that they went about to reconcile themſelves to the Pope of *Rome*, (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year 1609. Which notwithſtanding (ſo miſerable a condition do theſe Chriſtians live in) he ſuffered two Convents of *Auguſtine* and *Carmelite* Friars,to be ſetled at the ſame time, even in *Spaw-hawn* it ſelf, and many *Jeſuits* to live peaceably up and down the Country, which ſerve for little elſe than to give Intelligence. The Fury of *Abbas* King of *Perſia* was temporary as to the *Armenians*; towards the latter end of his Reign, obſerving the great advantages that attended a Foreign Trade, he imployed ſome of his own *Perſians* that way, but they proved prodigal, and ſpent the Stocks he had truſted them with out of his Treaſury; then he encouraged his *Armenian* Subjects, and they proving more Prudent and Fortunate, are become the Richeſt, and the greateſt Traders of all the Eaſtern Countries, and ſend their Factors and Merchandizes into *Tartary*, *Indoſtan*, *Turkey*, *Ruſſia*, and as far Weſt as *England* and *Holland*. The vaſt Riches they bring to the Crown and People of *Perſia*, make them now beloved by all Parties, and they live more ſplendidly and happily than any of the other Subjects of that Kingdom, enjoying the free Exerciſe of their Religion, adorning their Churches with great Bravery, of which they have ten at *Zulpha*, and two at *Iſpahan*, the Capital of *Perſia*, of which the firſt is a great and Magnificent Suburb, Inhabited by none but *Armenians*. In this place lives their Patriarch in a ſplendid manner, and many of their Feſtivals are ſo Magnificently celebrated, that the Kings of *Perſia* have been pleaſed to honour them with their Preſence, and ſend them beſides a conſiderable Sum of Money towards the expence. This Suburb is about four *Engliſh* Miles ſquare; the Houſes are better built than thoſe of the *Perſians*, and their Children inherit Lands; ſo that they are the Freeſt, Richeſt, and moſt reſpected Subjects of *Perſia*. *Struys*, page 325. *Tavernier* Lib. 4. Chap. 7. The latter ſaith they have fifteen, or ſixteen Churches at *Zulpha*. Here are alſo many *Jews* diſperſed over all the Provinces of this Empire, allowed their Synagogues, and publick places of Aſſembly. But the Religion publickly Authorized and Countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, impoſed on this Country by the *Saracens*, when by them Subdued: differing in ſome points from the *Turks*, eſpecially about the true Succeſſion of that falſe Seducer (of whom more anon;), the cauſe of the long Wars betwixt thoſe Nations.

As for the *Perſian* Language, it is very Ancient, ſuppoſed to be as old as the Confuſion of *Babel*; ſome words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Perſian* Court, have been made uſe of in ſome parts of the Holy Scripture. A Tongue which ſtill hath left ſome remainders of it, in the Language of the Modern *Perſian*, (as thoſe of judgment in this Tongue have delivered to us) notwithſtanding ſo long tract of time, and the Conqueſt of this Country by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not ſpoken only in this Country, nor limited within the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; but uſed alſo in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mogul*, and ſome parts of *Zagathay*; and were not *vulgar* unto all, ſtudied and underſtood by perſons of more eminent ſort, as the *Latin* by the Gentry of theſe *Weſtern* parts. Inſomuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the *Eaſt* without an *Interpreter*.

Rivers in the *South* parts there are but few, as before was ſaid, and thoſe few not navigable; by conſequence of little note or eſtimation. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1. *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Suſiana*, emptying it ſelf into *Sinus Perſicus*: a River of ſo pure a Stream, that the great *Perſian* Kings would drink of no other Water. The *Northern* parts more plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, as having in it the famous Rivers of 2 *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongſt the Ancients, becauſe it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caſpian* Sea, to which it haſtneth from *Mount Taurus*: and ſo doth alſo 3 *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to theſe great Neighbours. A River which the *Perſians* have ſeldom paſſed to enlarge their Dominions, but they received ſome notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invaſion of *Perſia*, they were ſhamefully beat back again by *Hyſmael Sophy*. Nor is it leſs memorable in old ſtories, for the famous paſſage of *Alexander* over it, in purſuit of the Murtherers of *Darius*. For having followed *Beſſus* to the Banks of this River, and not knowing how to paſs over his Men, there being neither Ships upon it, nor Timber near at hand to build them, he cauſed a great number of Bags and Bladders to be ſtuffed with ſtraw, and ſo in Three Days tranſported his Army. So that I may truly ſay with his own Hiſtorian, *Unum id Conſilium quod neceſſitas ſuggeſſerat, iniit*; neceſſity is the beſt Author of fine Inventions. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which riſing out of the ſame mountainous Tract (as the Two laſt mentioned) after a long courſe above ground in the open light, hideth himſelf again for the ſpace of 38 Miles, and then breaketh out at a new Fountain, and falleth into 5 *Rhadaga*, another chief River of thoſe parts. And this *Alexander the Great* found to be true, by caſting Two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the ſtream were carried under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its riſe again. 6. *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Ancients I am not able to ſay, but of great note amongſt Modern Travellers, for the fall thereof into the Sea: ſo ſteep and ſtrong, that the people are ſaid to ſacrifice or banquet under the Fall thereof, the ſtream ſo violently ſhooting over their Heads that it never wetteth them.

Mountains of moſt note, are thoſe which paſs by the name of *Taurus*; which having left *Medi* on the *Weſt*, paſſeth thorough the *Northern* Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamiſus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Seriphian* hills, *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*; whereof more, as occaſion ſerveth, in their proper places.

It is divided into the particular Provinces of 1 *Suſiana*, 2 *Perſis*, 3 *Ormus*, 4 *Carmania*, 5 *Gedroſia*, 6 *Drangiana*, 7 *Arachoſia*, 8 *Paropamiſus*, 9 *Aria*, 10 *Darthia*, 11 *Hyrcania*, 12 *Margiana*, 13 *Bactria*. Which we will ſeverally ſurvey in the *Chorography* and ſtory, till we have joined them all together in the *Perſian* Monarchy; and then purſue the Hiſtory as conjunct and faſhioned into the Body of one Empire.

1. *SUSIANA.* CUSISTAN.

SUSIANA is bounded on the *Eaſt*, with *Perſis*; on the *Weſt*, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; on the *North*, with *Aſſyria*; on the *South*, with a Branch of the River *Tigris*, and ſome part of the *Gulf* of *Perſia*.

It was ſo called *quaſi Cuſiana*, or the Land of the *Cuſites*, from *Chus* the eldeſt Son of *Ham*, and the Grandſon of *Noah*, by whoſe Son *Havilah* it was firſt peopled; and therefore called in *Scripture*, *The Land of Havilah*; this being that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to encompaſs, in the Book of *Geneſis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that Land of *Havilah* lay on both ſides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Country of *Suſiana* doth not) and was the *Eaſtern* Bound of the *Iſmaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in thoſe parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is ſaid in 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. to *have ſmitten the Amalekites from Sur to Havilah*, that is to ſay, from the *Red Sea* to the *Gulf* of *Perſia*, it muſt be underſtood of *Havilah* in the firſt extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the *Eaſt Indies* (ſo called from a Son of *Jocktan*,) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the *Eaſt* ſide of *Euphrates*, and is that *Suſiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was ſo great a Traveller as to ſee the *Indies*; or of ſuch puiſſance as to force a paſſage through the Countries of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being loſt, that of *Cuſiana* or *Suſiana* did ſtill remain; preſerved to this day in that of *Chuſeſtan*, by which now called.

The Country memorable in the *Scriptures* for *Gold*, *Bdellium*, and the *Onix-ſtone*; which doth abundantly ſet forth the richneſs and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other Two nothing need be ſaid) about the bigneſs of an *Olive*, yielding a certain *Gum* very ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter of taſte; which in time hardneth to a Pearl, as *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided anciently into many particular Regions, or at leaſt known by ſeveral Names in its ſeveral Quarters. For where it bordereth upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Cabandone*, where it toucheth upon *Perſis*; where it confined on the *Elymæans*, it had the name of *Ciſſiæ*; and near the Wall or Ditch called *Vallum Paſini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered beſides *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before ſpoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes* and *Maſæus*; with that Branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolemy* calleth *Baſilæus*, *Curtius*, *Paſi-Tigris*, and the *Scriptures*, *Piſon*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Aracca*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*, the ſame which the *Scriptures* call *Erech*, and one of the Four which *Nimrod* built in the firſt beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Naphta* (of which the *Medians* made their Oyl ſpoken of before) a bituminous Liquor, eaſily taking fire, but not eaſily quenched. Of which thus the *Poet*;

> *Ardet* Areccæis *aut unda perhoſpita Campis.*

Where by *unda perhoſpita*, he meaneth that *bituminous* Liquor called *Naphta*, iſſuing from the Fields of *Erech*, as the Learned *Salmaſius* hath obſerved in his Notes on *Solinus*. 2 *Suſa*, The *Shuſan* of the Book of *Heſter*, and *Nehemia*; honoured with the reſidence of the *Perſian* Monarchs in Winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Ulai*. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, ſlain by the *Theſſalians* in the *Trojan* Wars: the Walls whereof, as *Caſſiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howſoever, it was doubtleſs a magnificent City, and of infinite Wealth, *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of

Gold uncoined, beſides Silver Wedges, and Jewels of ineſtimable value. Memorable for the great Feaſt here made by *Ahaſuerus*, of 183 days continuance for his Lords and Princes; imitated by the *Perſian Sultans* to this very day; who with a Royal Feaſt of the like continuance do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruin, and perhaps not that. *Herbert, pag.* 140. ſaith, it is now called *Valdac*, and that it lies upon the River *Choſes*, which falls into the *Perſian Gulf* near *Balſora*: In what Eſtate it is he ſaith not, only he intimates, that it is an heap of Ruins. The *Choſes* or *Choazpes* was of ſuch eſteem, the Kings of *Perſia* would drink no other Water: With its *Meanders* it encompaſſed *Suſhan*, ſaith that Gent. 3. *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elimai*, by *Ptolemy* (unleſs his Copies be corrupted) miſtakingly called *Eldimæi*. Situate on the Banks of *Euleus* alſo, near the Border of *Perſis* (the Nation of the *Elamites*, or *Elymæi* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great note anciently for a ſumptuous Temple of *Diana* ſacrilegiouſly ranſacked by *Antiochus*, of which ſee 1 *Mac.* 6 2. and of ſuch wealth, by reaſon of the concourſe of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentiſſimum*, a moſt opulent City. 4. *Sela*, on the Banks of *Eulæus* alſo; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongſt the moſt eminent of this Province: ſo named from *Selah*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who firſt planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Suſa* is aſcribed by *Euſtathius*, in his *Hexameron*, Σαλὰ ἀφ' οὗ Σουσανοὶ, are that Author's Words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Coſſæi*, whom *Ptolemy* placeth in this Tract, is referred by *Euſebius*. 5. *Tarſtana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice only of the chiefeſt,) the ſame no doubt which *Ptolemy* calls *Tariana*, and joins next to *Sela*. 6. *Agra*, upon the Banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of theſe, but what is to be found in the Ancient Writers; now hardly viſible in their Ruins. The Towns of moſt note now remaining, being 7 *Jaaroone*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Jews*, of which here are no fewer than a thouſand Families; ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of thoſe whom *Salmanaſſer* tranſplanted out of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*. 8. *Saum*. 9. *Caſa*, of which little memorable.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chuſites* of the Houſe of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footſtep of whoſe name we have in the *Chavilæi*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this Tract; by other Writers called the *Chaulotæi & Chaulaſii*, as before was noted, with whom were joined in the firſt plantings of this Country, the *Coſſæi* and the *Suſiani*, deſcended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elimæi*, the Poſterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the Two laſt Nations long and frequent Wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* compoſed the differences, by making both ſubject to their Empire. After this nothing memorable in the ſtory of it, till the tranſplanting of the Ten Tribes into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Iſraelites* were removed hither; (ſo many of this Nation were ſent out (with others) to poſſeſs themſelves of the void places of thoſe *Tribes*. Called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, becauſe the moſt conſiderable number of them came from this Province. called in the *Scriptures*, *Cuſh*, by *Joſephus*, *Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Perſia*, as indeed it was, the Time when he lived conſidered; different only in the Dialect or Form of Speech: That Country which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cuth* by the *Caldeans*; by the *Perſians*, *Cuzeſtan*; that Name continuing to this Day.

2. PERSIS.

PERSIS hath on the *Eaſt*, *Carmania*; on the *Weſt*, *Suſiana*; on the *North*, *Mediana*; and on the *South* ſome part of the *Perſian* Bay, or *Sinus Perſicus*, which took name from hence. The reaſon of the Name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both Name and Law to the reſt of this Empire. It had anciently been call'd *Cephene*, but now moſt commonly by the Name of *Fars*, or *Pharſiſtan*; more near to *Pharas*, the old Name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts hereof as lie towards the *North* are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either Fruit or Corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Thoſe parts which lie towards the *Perſian Gulf*, of as bad a nature, tho of different quality; ſandy and hot, and beareth little Fruit but *Dates*, and few Trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lieth a rich and pleaſant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great ſtore of Roſes, of Roſe-water conſequently: wherewith, and with thoſe Skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occaſion, they uſe to furniſh all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the *Character* of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well ſtored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are, 1 *Bagradas* which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2 *Rhogomanes*, by ſome called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whoſe Banks ſtood the renowned *Perſepolis*. 3 *Orontes*, dividing *Perſis* from *Suſiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4 *Briſoana*, ending its courſe in the ſame Sea alſo.

Mountains of note I find not any, but thoſe which part this Region from *Suſiana*: Not known by any ſpecial name (for ought I can find;) but of ſufficient note for the difficult paſſages out of one Country into the other, called *Pylæ Perſidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Perſian*, againſt *Alexander* the *Great*; who was here very handſomely beaten, and forced to ſave himſelf by a cloſe retreat. And tho *Alexander* was ſhewed a By-path afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* e're he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard Leſſon, that if thoſe who kept the ſtraits of *Cilicia*, and the Banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like reſiſtance, he had not bought the *Perſian* Monarchy in ſo cheap a Market.

It was divided anciently into 1 *Paræticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2 *Mardiene*, joining on the *Gulf* or *Bay* of *Perſia*. 3 *Miſdia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the ſeveral Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their ſeveral Cities. The chief whereof 1 *Auſinza*, ſeated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Briſoana*. 2 *Jonacapolis*, on the ſame Bay alſo, near the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3 *Axima*, more within the Land, now called *Lanſilla*. 4 *Marraſium*. 5 *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as ſome Copies have it. 6 *Paſarracha*, in the *Greek* Text of *Ptolemy* called *Paſacgada*, and *Paſagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch; which violated by a Soldier of *Alexander*'s, in hope of finding ſome rich Booty, he met with nothing but this modeſt Inſcription, *Cyrus ego ſum qui* Perſicum *regnum conſtitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invideas, quo corpus meum obtegitur*. The Sacrilegious Soldier, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7 *Perſepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the Eaſt, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*; ſituate near the Banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the moſt part of *Cypres* Wood, the Walls of the Houſes being made of *Marble*, digged out of an adjoining Mountain: Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large deſcribes it, to be the richeſt and goodlieſt City in all the World. And well we may believe him for the richneſs of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready Money for his own ſhare, after the Soldiers had made what Spoil they liſted of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unſpeakable value. But the chief Beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on a Hill, environ'd with a treble wall, the firſt of 16 Cubits height, the ſecond of 30, the third of 60, all of them of black poliſhed Marble, with ſtately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and near a moſt goodly Proſpect. Nor was the inſide of leſs Beauty than the outſide of Majeſty: the Roof thereof ſhining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly compoſed of Gold, and the richeſt Pearls. But Rich and Stately tho' it were, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of the Eaſtern World, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit conſumed with fire, at the inſtigation of *Lais* that infamous Strumpet; as in revenge for ſo many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Perſians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecians* Wars. And though *Alexander* in his ſober ſenſe did repent him of it, and gave order that it ſhould be re-edified; yet did it never riſe to its former height, the Conqueror dying ſhortly after, and that purpoſe with him. So Ruined in the Age of *Quin. Cur.* (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*) that he profeſſeth, *veſtigium ejus non inveniri niſi* Araxes *amnis oſtenderet*, that no footſteps of it had been found, if not ſhewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whoſe Banks it ſtood But by the fall thereof roſe, 8 *Shiras*, now the chif City of this Province, ſituate in a fair large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleaſantly ſeated; in compaſs about nine miles, well Built, and Beautified with fair Gardens and Magnificent Moſques: two of which larger than the reſt, are made more eminent by the addition of two Spires or Steeples covered with a painting of Gold and *Azure*; the Fabricks for the moſt part of *Moſaick* work, as light alſo by night as day; by reaſon of a thouſand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is ſaid by a Modern Traveller) which for *good Wine, pretty Women, pleaſant Fruits, and a gallant People*, may hold compariſon with the beſt in *Perſia. Herbert*, page 60, 65. The whole Deſcription is from the ſaid Author, but abridged. See alſo *Struys*, page 336. 9 *Moyown*, on the North Eaſt of *Shiras*, delightfully ſituate among the Woods and fruitful Paſtures, and Bleſſed not only with good Wine, but wholeſome Waters; of which laſt, few parts of *Perſia* have much cauſe to Brag. 10 *Bannaraw*, on the South-weſt of *Shiras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the Ruins of an ancient Caſtle, ſituate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11 *Goyaam*, a Town of a thouſand Houſes. 12 *Berry*, of no great bigneſs, but of moſt eſteem, by reaſon of a fair *Moſquo*, a School for the *Arabick* Tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their falſe Prophets; of which the *Perſians*, beſides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The firſt Inhabitants here were of the Poſterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and ſuch who under his Conduct were ſetled here; called from hence *Elamites*, in the uſual ſtyle of Holy Scriptures; by the *Greeks* and *Latins*, *Elymæi* who ſpreading themſelves into *Suſiana*, and by degrees alſo into other Provinces, became ſo conſiderable, that the name of *Elamites* and *Elam* were of great Renown: having a Language to themſelves, diſtinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Acts* 2. and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoyning Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where *Suſa* is ſaid to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Perſia*, hath been ſhewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of *Meſabatæ*, *Rapſii*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzæi*, *Megores*, and *Stabæi*, were at firſt under the Command of their own Princes only: among which *Chedorlaomer* is of greateſt fame; who having the conduct of ſome *Adventurers* of this Nation, Aſſociated himſelf with *Amraphel* the Leader of ſome *Aſſyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Aſſyria* invaded *Paleſtine*, ſubdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* Priſoner, and in the end were overthrown by the Forces of *Abraham*. Of no Note after this Expedition, till the time of *Perſes* the Father of *Achæmenes*, who being *Provincial* Governor of theſe Countries under *Sardanapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the War againſt him: and by the Victory, got for himſelf the Dominion over thoſe Eſtates, which he had Ruled for the *Aſſyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the Supreme Lords. Whoſe Succeſſors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus:

The KINGS of *PERSIS*.

1. *Perſes*, from whom perhaps the name of *Perſis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perſeus* the Son of *Danae*, or the Son of *Perſeus* by *Andromeda*.

2. *Achemenes*, from whom the *Perſians* had the name of *Achæmenii*, and the Succeeding Kings were called *Achæmenides*.

3. *Cambyſes*, in ſome places of *Herodotus*, called alſo *Darius*.

4. *Cyrus*, from whoſe ſecond Son named *Teiſpeus*, deſcended that *Darius*, the Son of *Hiſtapſis*, one of the ſeven *Perſian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the preſent Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.

5. *Cambyſes* II. the ſon of *Cyrus*.

6. *Cyrus*, II. ſirnamed the *Great*, ſon of *Cambyſes*, and of *Mandane* the Daughter of *Aſtyages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and tranſlated thereby the Supreme Power to the *Medes* and *Perſians*. Of which more hereafter.

3. *CARMANIA. KHERMAN.*

CARMANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Gedroſia*, and ſome part of *Aria*; on the Weſt, with part of *Perſis*, and the Gulf of *Perſia*, from hence call'd alſo by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North with *Parthia*, and on the South with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief People of it; but the reaſon of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrman*; thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by ſome *Dulcinde*.

The Country for the moſt part barren, and but ill Inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being truly ſuch; a Wilderneſs or very Deſart, having in it neither Town nor Village, but ſome ſcattered Houſes, and thoſe but ill provided of food and neceſſaries, full of unprofitable Sands, deſtitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea Coaſt of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themſelves into it; yet are they not the Richer by it, the Shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers ſmall; ſo that they neither have good Port, nor ſafe coming to it. The beſt Commodities hereof (beſides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrh*, *Arſenic*, ſome few Mines of Silver, more of Braſs and Iron, and good ſtore of Alabaſter. The Inhabitants hereof were anciently called *Ichthyophagi*, becauſe they lived wholly upon Fiſh, the Country yielding little elſe for the life of Man. Carmani *ſine veſte, ac fruge, ſine peccore ac ſedibus, piſcium cute ſe velant, carne veſcuntur, præter capita toto corpore hir ſuti.* The *Carmans* (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*,) have neither Fruits nor Raiment, nor Houſe nor Cattel; but Cloath themſelves with the Skins, and feed themſelves with the fleſh of Fiſhes; hairy, not only their heads, but over all their Bodies alſo. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* muſt be out in his Informations, who telleth us of theſe very *Carmans*, that their Country, though far leſs than that of *Arabia Fœlix*, and far more obſcure, was as well repleniſhed with Rivers; and for fertility of Soil not inferior to it. But we muſt underſtand the one of the beſt parts of *Carmania*, the other of *Deſerta* only.

Amongſt the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the reſt, he mentioneth. 1 *Saganis.* 2 *Sagareus*, and 3 *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers, or the ſame under divers names, being 1 *Dara*, 2 *Andanius*, 3 *Cathrarpis*, 4 *Achindana*, 5 *Salarus*, (the *Zagareus*, as I take it, of *Ammianus*) 6 *Caudriaces*, 7 *Soramba*, and 8 *Samidace*, moſt of them falling into the Gulf of *Perſia*, few Navigable, or of any uſe in the way of Trading.

Mountains of moſt note, 1 that called *Semiramis*, from ſome exploit of that great Lady; 2 *Strongilus*, ſo named from the roundneſs of it; and 3 a continu'd ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Gedroſia*:

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Cantharis*, 2 *Agris*, 3 *Tiſa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities; 4 *Cirza*, and 5 *Bocabarta*, two Port Towns; 6 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conqueror, who here, or hereabouts, kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7 *Portoſpana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortoſpana*, and by him reckoned among the faireſt and richeſt of all the Country. 8 *Armuza* (or *Armuzium*, as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the ſhore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoyning, and to the noble Iſle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9 *Ganbroone*, not long ſince a poor Village; but ſince the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles diſtant) grown a Populous Town, conſiſting at leaſt of 1000 houſes. The goodneſs of this Port hath ſince the Reduction of *Ormus* raiſed it to a City of great Trade. The *Dutch*, *Engliſh*, *Arabian*, and *Perſian* Merchants meet and Trade here for Stuffs, Velvet, Taffata, Raw Silk, &c. It is ſeated upon the *Perſian* Gulf, in the Latitude of 27. between two good Caſtles, and at the entrance of the Haven there is a ſquare Redoubt, with four pieces of Canon upon it, the Fortifications of the Caſtles are Antique, with round Baſtions, but well furniſhed with Cannon. The Haven is convenient, affording good Anchorage at five or ſix Fathom Water. The Streets are narrow, irregular, and not kept clean. The Air is hot and unwholeſome, the Winds turn round every day. It Rains very ſeldom here, as in 32. not in three years before, ſo that they have neither Graſs nor Herbs, but what they nouriſh in the Gardens, by watering them three times a day, *Mondeſlo*, page 10. *Keſmiſh*, a ſmall Iſland ſupplies them with Fruits and Fiſh, plentiful and Cheap, but their greateſt want is of Spring-water, which they fetch two Leagues from the City. *Shiras* Wine is ſcarce and very dear, brought hither only in Bottels. *Mondeſlo* was here in 1638. *Herbert*, page 48. This Town in Winter is well Inhabited by the *Perſians*, *Indians*, *Arabs*, and *Jews*, and by the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Portugueze*, but in Summer they flye away to avoid the intolerable heat. *Struys*, page 349. has the Proſpect of this Town. The *Engliſh* ought to have half the Cuſtoms, but in 38 had but the tenth, which in 71 were worth 40000 l. *per Ann.* but then they conſented to take 3000 l. *per An.* 10 *Jaſques*, at the opening of the *Perſian* Gulf, into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capo di Jaſques*. 11 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or Mother-City of the Province, in former times of good eſteem; and now of paſſing good repute both for Cloath of Gold, and the making of the beſt Scymitars. A Weapon, (whereſoever made) of ſuch value among the *Mahometans*, and ſo eſteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of the Navy at the Battel of *Corfu*, *Anno* 1574. moſt of them who were taken Priſoners threw their Scymiters into the Sea, for fear the Chriſtians ſhould be Maſters of ſuch excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Perſis*, ſeated in a barren and inhoſpitable Country, full of huge heaps of Sand, both looſe and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind ſetteth, into Plains and Mountains: without Graſs, Water, Herbs, or any other neceſſaries for the uſe of Travellers; the City being ſerved with Rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in Ciſterns. The City notwithſtanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long ſince to the number of 5000 Houſes: of which the greateſt part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: Now moſt remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces ſquare, a goodly Moſque, adorned with *Moſaick* work, and a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on the top of an Hill, furniſhed with great plenty of Ordnance, brought hither from *Ormus*. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no ſubjection to the *Perſian Sophies*, till Conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn*, Duke of *Shiras*, who ſent hence as much Treaſure as was ſaid to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole Poſterity, *Anno* 1604. or thereabouts. *Herbert*, page 52. *Tavernier* page 253. *Struys*, page 346. 13 *Tecoa*, or *Dea-chow*, a Town of the Juriſdicton of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge Wall cut out of a ſolid Rock by incredible Labour, which ſerved formerly both for a Boundary and Defence of that Sandy Kingdom againſt the *Perſians*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the Poſterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the Coaſt of *Arabia-Fœlix*, where they were firſt planted, paſſed over into *Sophta* (from them ſo named) an Iſland of the *Perſian Gulf*, and afterwards into the Main Land of *Carmania*, where they Built, and gave name unto the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in ſome tract of time into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sozotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadræ*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Paſagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of Story; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander*, being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who firſt Conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually Feaſting with his Friends, on a Scaffold drawn with eight Horſes; his Companions following in their Chariots: Some adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and green Boughs; themſelves wearing Garlands on their Heads, and carrying their carouſing Cups in their Hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler ſeen: all their Armour was Cups, Barrels, and Flagons; their Skirmiſhing, Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minſtrels, playing on their Flutes; by Women Dancing, Boys Shouting, all playing the drunken Fools moſt naturally. Thus March'd they through the Country of *Carmania*, in as great diſſoluteneſs as if *BACCHUS* himſelf had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for ſeven whole days this ſottiſhneſs continued. So that *Curtius* well obſerveth, *Si quid victis ſaltem adverſus comeſſantes animi fuiſſet, mille hercule viri, modo & ſobrii, ſeptem dierum crapulâ graves in ſuo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a

Thouſand *Perſians*, ſober and well provided, had their Hearts been anſwerable to ſo good an opportunity, might have deſtroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the Honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

4.

ORMUZ.

ORMUZ, not ſo much memorable for the greatneſs, as the Wealth, and the conveniency of the ſituation of it, is an Iſland ſituate in the entrance of the *Perſian Gulf*: Commanding not long ſince, over ſome part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and ſome few Towns of *Arabia Fælix*, and moſt of the Iſlands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to ſpeak of the Iſle it ſelf, we muſt take a brief ſurvey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Perſicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the *Gulf* or *Bay* of *Perſia*, ſo famous, ſo full of Iſlands, and ſo much frequented (I uſe the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the ſame which *Ptolemy* calls *Armuza*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Fælix*, which the Inhabitants calls *Maces*, the Paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that one may very eaſily ſee to the oppoſite ſhore. The Strait once paſſed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it ſelf, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balſora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfals is loſt in the Sea. The whole *Gulf* meaſured by the Shores, of *Orbicular* form, in compaſs 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian* Miles) in all the Coaſts and ſides whereof the Villages and Towns ſtand exceeding thick, affording frequent paſſage to and fro for Shipping: So far, and to this purpoſe he. To which deſcription of his, ſo exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much but the change of Names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkeriſſe*, and the Entrances thereunto the Streights of *Balſora*; theſe laſt ſo called becauſe they opened the way to the Town of *Balſora*, the moſt noted Empory of thoſe parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Iſles hereof, beſides thoſe on the *Arabian* Shore, of which we have already ſpoken, are 1 *Taxiana*, on the Coaſt of *Suſiana*. 2 *Tabiana*. 3 *Sophtha*. And 4 *Alexandria*, or the Iſle of *Alexander*, on the Shores of *Perſis*. Of which that which is called *Soptha*, ſeems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the oppoſite ſhore of *Arabia Fælix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Saphta*, which we find in *Ptolomy*: And finally joyning to *Carmania*, there are the Iſlands called, 5 *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Miltus*; and 6 *Vorochtha*, ſituate at the very mouth of the Streights, now called *Ormus*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuza*, in *Carmania*, near adjoyning to it, and unto which it did in former times belong. 7 *Kiſmich* three Leagues from *Gambroon*, fifteen Leagues long, and three broad. It is ſo Fertile that it ſupplies *Gambroon* with all ſorts of Fruits, Grapes, Damaſens, Oranges, Lemons, Melons, Cucumbers, &c. in great plenty, and cheaper than in any other part of *Perſia*. *Mandeſlo*, page 11.

This Iſland ſituate as is ſaid, at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, is in compaſs about thirty miles, ſtony, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all neceſſaries except Salt wherewith their very Rocks are covered, and of Salt-ſtones many Houſes built. So deſtitute of all things fitting for the Life of Man, that the Inhabitants had all their Victuals, even the very Water which they drank, from ſome of the adjoining Countries. The Air ſo hot in time of Summer, that the people reſt themſelves in Caves covered over with Wood, where they ſtand or ſit in Water up to the Chin; and have Loop-holes in the Tops of their Houſes to let in the Wind. Which notwithſtanding, in regard of the ſituation, it was of late one of the richeſt Empories in all the World; the Wealth of *Perſia* and *Eaſt-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by Water to the River *Euphrates*, and ſo by Boats, or on Camels Backs to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence diſperſed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to ſome beyond.

The people hereof in their Perſons, Habit, and Religion, participate ſomewhat of the *Arabians*, but moſt of the *Perſians*. *Mahometans* for the moſt part, of the *Sophian* Sect: The reſt, but few in number, of the *Chriſtian*; to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gaſper*, a *Portugal Jeſuit*, ſince the ſettling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the ſame name with the Iſland, founded ſome ſeven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranku*, deſcended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Fælix*: who, with many Families of the *Sabæans*, paſſed over the Streights into *Carmania*, and the Iſles adjoyning, and liking the ſituation of this Iſland, built this City in it, which he called *Ormus*, or *Armuzium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory upon which it lieth. The City ſeated at one end of the Iſle; about two Miles in compaſs, well built, and adorned with a fair Market-place, ſome Churches, and a well fortified Caſtle, furniſhed with all neceſſaries to maintain a Siege. By reaſon of its wealth and reſort of Merchants, grown to ſuch eſteem, that it gave occaſion to this *Diſtich*;

Si terrarum Orbis quaqua patet annulus eſſet,
Illius Ormuſium *gemma decuſque foret.*

That is to ſay,
Were all the World a Ring, this Iſle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the ſtone.

It was firſt under its own King, whoſe Dominion extended alſo into ſome part of the Continent on either ſide, and over all the reſt of the Iſlands within the Gulf. *Teixera* writes, That in the 10*th*. Age, *Saach Mahomet*, the Son of an *Arabian* King having reduced all the Provinces upon the *Perſian* Gulf, as far as *Balſara* under him, he paſſed over into this Iſland, and laid the foundation of this City; *Schabadin Mahomet* the XI. King of *Ormus* died in 1278. and *Seyfadin* Reigned there when the *Portugueſe* took it. *Mandeſlo*, page 13. His Revenue of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was Diſcovered, under the Conduct of *Albukerque*, *Anno*. 1506. Who having Fortified ſome part of it for their own Defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandize*, ſo inriched the ſame, that the Revenues of thoſe Kings (though *Vaſſals* and *Tributaries* to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flouriſhing ſtate it ſtood till the year 1622. when *Abbas* the *Sultan* of *Perſia* having received ſome affront at the hands of the *Portugueze*; or deſirous to remove the Trade of *Ormus* to ſome Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoli Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay Siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 Men. Who ſeeing no hopes of maſtering it by his Land-Forces only, furniſhed himſelf with the Ships and Cannon of ſome *Engliſh* Merchants, to whom he promiſed many things, which he never performed. For being once Maſter of the City, he deſtroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the Wealth thereof to his own Treaſury of *Shiras*, the Materials of the Houſes to *Gombroon*, ſpoken of before: the *Portugueze* and *Chriſtian* Natives paſſing over into *Muskahat*, in *Arabia Fælix*. Since which time though the *Engliſh* Captains that ventured in it, were diſappointed of the ſpoil which they did expect; yet ſo much honour hath been given by the King of *Perſia* to the *Engliſh* Nation, that their *Agent* who reſideth at *Gombroon*, takes Cuſtom of all Stangers which do Traffick thither. To the Year 1671. theſe Cuſtoms were worth 40000 *l. per An.* and duly paid to the *Engliſh Eaſt India Company*: That Year the Company being involved in a War with the Great *Mogul* of *Indoſtan*, they conſented to take 3000 *l. per An.* in lieu of theſe Cuſtoms; which I ſuppoſe will never be removed again; this was all they got by that *Indian* War.

5.

GEDROSIA. CIRCAN.

GEDROSIA is Bounded on the Weſt, with *Carmania*; on the Eaſt, with *Cambaia*, or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the Main *Indian* Ocean; on the North with *Drangiana*, and *Arachoſia*. The Reaſon of the Name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Geſt*; by *Caſtaldus*, *Circan*.

The Country Deſolate and Barren, like the worſt part of *Carmania*, much deſtitute of freſh water, and covered over with looſe Sands, dangerous to the Natives and Stranger both. Some Rain they have, but not ſufficient to allay the Heat and Drought which they ſuffer under; and yet by reaſon of that heat it affordeth in ſome places *Nard* and *Myrrh*, with ſome other Spices. Some Brooks here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the Hills do ſomewhat qualify the indiſpoſition of the Soil, and make it Habitable; The chief of which was called *Arbius* anciently; the Chief Mountain, *Bætius*.

Towns of moſt Name in it, 1 *Rhagiana*, Honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2 a Port, or Harbour called *Mulierum Portus*, or the *Haven of Women*. 3 *Arbis*, upon the Banks of the River *Arbius*, preſented to us alſo by the name of a City. 4 *Muſarna*, the chief of *Muſarnæ*, a Chief Tribe of this Country. 5 *Parſis*, or rather, *Eaſis*, as the *Greek* Text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6 *Geſt*, the chief City at the preſent; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Maſarnæ*, Bordering on *Arachoſia*, the *Parſiræ*, towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamnæ* on the Borders of *India*, and the *Orbitæ*, or *Arbituri*, on the ſhores of the Ocean. The Country of no note in preceding times, till made Famous by the Follies of *Alexander*: who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conqueſt of *India*, would needs make a fruitleſs Voyage to ſee the Ocean. And having ſatisfied himſelf with the ſight of that Furious Element (as if his very ſeeing it had ſufficiently Subdued it to him) landed his Army on this Coaſt. Where in his March, for want of Victuals, Water, and other Neceſſaries, he loſt more Men in the vaſt and uncomfortable Deſart of this Country, than in all the Military Services he had put them to; the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting unto 15000 Horſe, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiſcretion.

6.

DRANGIANA. SIGISTAN.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedroſia*; on the North and Weſt Bounded with *Aria*; on the Eaſt, with *Arochoſia*. So called from *Drangius*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the Modern name thereof being *Sigeſtan*, from *Sige*, the now principal City.

The Country very Hilly, and ſo cloſed with Mountains, that the River above-named is ſcarce able to force its paſſage thorough them. Of no great Beauty to Invite, or Reward a Conqueror, yet with the reſt, brought under the great *Perſian* Monarchs; the Fortunes of which Crown they have always followed: So meanly planted, that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of Name; the chief whereof, 1 *Ariaſpe*, miſtook perhaps for *Agriaſpe*, and if ſo, then the Mother City of the *Agriaſpæ*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2 *Propthaſia*, by ſome of the Ancients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province; much boaſted of by the old Inhabitants hereof, who had ſeen no better, (as Country Villagers uſe to brag of the next Market-Town) and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be Rich, and of high Renown, the quality of the place conſidered. Still of ſome note among the Natives, by whom called *Siſtan*. 3 *Arivada*. 4 *Pharaza*, of which nothing memorable. 5 *Sige*, now of Credit in this Country, from hence called *Sigeſtan*. 6 *Timocani*. 7 *Mulebet*, the chief ſeat of the Kingdom of *Aladine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fools-Paradiſe* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batrii*, and the *Daraudæ*, from which laſt, the greateſt of the two, the Country might perhaps be called Originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Daradiana*, and at laſt corrupted eaſily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this only as a conjectural. They were called alſo by ſome Writers by the name of *Arabians*; and that, as *Ammianus* thinks, becauſe they deſcended from that People: but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabius*, which parteth this Country from *Gedroſia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wiſe to forſake their own Country, and go ſo far, to get ſo little by the Bargain. Together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces, ſubdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Country, happed on the diſcovery of the Treaſon intended againſt him by *Philotas* the Son of *Parmenio*, the moſt Renowned of all his Captains. After this, little memorable till theſe latter days, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine*, a Seditious *Perſian*, Lord of the Valley of *Mulebet*, ſpoken of before; who there made a *terreſtrial Paradiſe*, which he promiſed to all his *Partizans*; but the Company growing too great for the ſafety of the Kingdom, they were quickly diſperſed; and *Aladine*, with his *Fools-Paradiſe*, both taken away together, *Ann.* 1262. Some attribute this Fiction of *Paradiſe*, to *Aladeules*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*, Vanquiſhed by *Selim* I. The whole Story is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine* Inhabited a Valley in this Country, the entrance into which he Fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the Luſty Youths, and *Beautiful Maidens* of the adjoyning Provinces. The Women were confined to their Chambers, the Men to Priſon, where having endured much Sorrow, they were ſeverally caſt into dead ſleeps, and conveyed to the Women: by whom they were entertained with all the Pleaſures Youth and Luſt could deſire, or a ſenſual mind effect. Having enjoyed this happineſs a whole day, they were in a like ſleep conveyed to their Irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradiſe*, and that he could ſeat them there Eternally, if they durſt hazard themſelves in his Quarrels. This when they had ſworn to do, they were deſtinated to the Maſſacre of ſuch Princes as were like to prove his bad Neighbours; and they accordingly did Execution. But neither he, nor *Aladeules*, were the firſt who trained up their followers in the Arts of Murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of thoſe times call the *Old Man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the Mountainous parts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence ſending his Diſciples on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Weſtern Princes whom he ſtood in fear of, during the courſe of the *Holy Wars*. For out of his School came thoſe Wretches who Murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions, and deſperately ſlew *Gonrade* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the Market place at *Tyre*; and with like careleſneſs of their own lives, dangerouſly wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) ſitting in his Tent. Theſe the *Italians* call *Aſſaſſines* (whence the word to *Aſſaſſinate*) imitating thereby a deſperate *Cut-throat*, but the reaſon of that name is not yet agreed on: miſtakingly by ſome *Latin* Writers of the darker times, called *Arſacidæ*, and their Commander *Rex Arſacidarum*, as if deſcended from *Arſaces*, the Founder of the *Arſacidan* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

7.

ARACHOSIA. CABUL.

ARACHOSIA hath on the Weſt, *Drangiana*; on the Eaſt, a Branch of the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedroſia*; and *Paropamiſus*, on the North. So called from *Arachoſia*, the chief City of it; but now beſt known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at preſent.

Of the Country I find little ſpoken, but that it is watered with a Branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with ſome nameleſs River which falleth into it. By the overflowings whereof is made a Lake, which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoſcrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*; after the name of *Arachotos* the chief Town of it, near to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whoſe names and ſituation we find in *Ptolomy*, but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principal, 1. *Arachotos*, on the Lake ſo named, ſaid to be built by *Semiramis* in her March towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2 *Alexandria*, or (for diſtinctions ſake) *Alexandria Arachoſiæ*, the work of *Alexander* the *Great*, in his like March againſt the *Indians*: Built at the foot of one of the Branches of Mount *Taurus*, ſhooting towards the South, and Peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Soldiers, far ſpent with Age, and with the Travel of the Wars, whom he left there to inhabit it, his Army being here recruited with the Forces that had Served under *Parmenio*, conſiſting of 12000 *Grecians* and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. *Tavernier*, who ſaw this City, ſaith it is a large City, very well Fortified, and is the place to which the *Usbeck Tartars* Yearly bring about 60000 Horſes to be ſold. It lies 110 Leagues from *Candahar* to the North Eaſt, and 125 from *Ateck*, part 2. page 44. 3 *Arbaca*, ſeeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*; but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to ſay. 4 *Choaſpa*, near ſome River of that name, as I conjecture; there being beſides *Choaſpes* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name alſo in *India*: and probably another hereabouts to give name to this Town. 5 *Phoclis*. 6 *Sigara*. 7 *Dammana*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8 *Sin*, now a Town of Name among them, but not much obſervable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetæ*, call'd alſo *Arimaſpæ*, and *Euergetæ*, a powerful Nation of themſelves, brought under the Command of *Alexander* by means of *Ammenides*, ſometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governor. And beſides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitæ*, and the *Eoritæ*; which three made up the main Body of the *Aricoſians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and Command of *Menon*. Following after this the Fortunes of the *Perſian* Empire, they changed their Maſters as that did, till the coming of the *Tartars*. Since that time Governed for the moſt part, by a King of their own, eſpecially ſince that dividing of the Kingdom of *Perſia* amongſt *Tamerlane*'s Children. Some of which held it as a diſtinct Eſtate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conqueſt of ſome parts of *India*, they took unto themſelves the name of the *Great Mogul*: Now Lords, not only of this Country, but of the greateſt part of *India* on this ſide of *Ganges*; of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *India*; that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8.

PAROPAMISUS. CANDAHAR. SABLESTAN.

PAROPAMISUS is bounded on the South with *Arachoſia*; on the North with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main Body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called *Paropamiſus*, by the name of the Country: on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *India*; on the Weſt, with *Aria*. So called *quaſi Paropaneſus*, from the reſemblance which it hath to an Iſland, begirt on all ſides almoſt with Rivers: In which reſpect by *Ptolomy* called *Propaniſus*, and not *Paropamiſus*; by which laſt name the *Latins* for the moſt part call it; ſome of them *Paropamiſſus*, with a double *ſſ*. But that name being loſt long ſince, it is now by ſome called *Dache*, by others *Candabor*, but moſt commonly *Sableſtan*.

The Country Mountainous and Hilly, here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great heighth, and exceeding Barren; the Valleys indifferent Fruitful, but ſo overſhadowed with thoſe Hills, that the cleareſt day in ſome places ſeems but like a twilight. The People as obſcure as their Country, ſcarce known to any of their Neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the Barbarous Nations neareſt to them eſteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreſte kominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime inconditum*, as it is in *Curtius*.

Rivers of moſt note herein, 1 *Oxus*, (of which before) which riſing out of Mount *Caucaſus*, paſſeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2 *Dargamanis*. 3 *Coacus*, both owing their Original to ſome of the branches of Mount *Taurus*. Which chain of Hills beginning hereabouts to draw towards their height, are towards the Weſt called *Paroetes*, where they give being to the River *Dargamanis*, before-named: more Eaſtward they have the name of *Paropamiſus*, and *Caucaſus*, they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Perſian* Territories do encounter each other. The Hills in that place mounted to ſo great an height, that from the tops thereof, the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the riſing and ſetting of which are from hence eaſily diſcerned. Made memorable by the Fable of *Prometheus*, who is ſaid to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *Vinctum Promethea fuiſſe antiquitas tradit*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have ſtoln fire from Heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which Preſumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucaſus*, where a Vulture continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of Story, or their gueſs at leaſt, who make ſome ſtory the ground of every Fable, *Prometheus* being a very wiſe man, inſtructed the dead and claiey carcaſſes of others in Wiſdom; and that being very deſirous to learn the nature of the Stars, (which is the fire he ſtole from Heaven,) he made the higheſt part of Mount *Caucaſus* his Study: where the inward care he had to accompliſh his deſire, might juſtly have been compared to a Vulture gnawing on his Entrails; and of this Opinion

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Naulibis*, and 2 *Orteſtpana*, both named by *Ptolomy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the moſt famous of this Country. But in what their fame conſiſted I cannot find. 3 *Parſiana*. 4. *Gazaca*. 5 *Doroacana*. 6 *Bagarda*, all named by *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 7 *Candahar*, now the Metropolis of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reaſon of the ſituation of it on the Borders of *India*; in that reſpect, giving to the whole Country the name of *Candahar*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdom, and uſed among the many Titles in the *Style Imperial*. Nothing conſiderable of it in the Courſe of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Perſian* Monarchs, it followed the Fortune of the reſt till theſe latter times; when the *Perſians* being overlaid by the *Tartars*, it became ſubject to ſome Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, Reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the ſame Extraction. Finding thoſe Kings intent on the Conqueſt of *India*, they freed themſelves from all Subjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts; when the laſt King, unable to defend himſelf againſt *Abduxa*, King of the *Usbeques* (a *Tartarian* People, but Subject in ſome ſort to the Crown of *Perſia*) ſurrendred his Kingdom to *Echebar* the *Great Mongul* (deſcended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whoſe Dominions border cloſe upon it. Recovered to the *Perſian* Crown by *Mirza* the Son of *Abas*, and the Father of *Sophy* the now *Sultan*; a Prince of much Gallantry, but of more Misfortunes: the *Perſian Sophies*, ſince that Conqueſt, uſing the Title of King of *Candahar* in the Regal Style. This City and Kingdom ſubmitted to the King of *Perſia*, upon Condition their Governor ſhould always be of the Royal Family. In the Year 1651. *Sha Gehan*, the *Great Mogul* ſent his Eldeſt Son with an Army of 300000 Men to Beſiege this City, the greateſt part of which Army periſhed in the Expedition, yet he could not take the City. The two following years it was again Beſieged by them with the ſame ill Succeſs; and ever ſince it has remain'd in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Perſia*. *Tavernier* lib. 5. cap. 24. where the curious Reader may ſee a Plat of this remote City. *Bernier*, in his Hiſtory of *Indoſtan*, page 57. calls it, *That Strong and Important Place, which is the Capital of the Noble, and Rich Kingdom of* Kandahar, *which yields a great Revenue to the Prince that hath it. Vide* page 113.

9. *ARIA. ERI.*

ARIA is Bounded on the Eaſt with *Parapamiſus*; on the Weſt, with *Parthia*; on the North with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which laſt parted by the Mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, eſpecially by the *Grecians*, till changed (as they ſay) into *Media*, on the coming thither of *Medea*. For ſo *Pauſanias*, among others, Παραγενομένη δὲ εἰς, τὴν λεγομένην ποτὲ Ἀρίαν, τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἔδωκε τὸ ὄνομα καλεῖσθαι Μήδους ἀπ' αὐτῆς, *i. e.* coming into the Country then called *Aria*, ſhe cauſed it after her own name to be called *Media*; but the name of *Aria* was not loſt, tho' it were removed; remaining proper to this Country till theſe later Ages, now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Country much ſubject unto heats, environed with Deſarts, Heaths, and Foreſts; yet near the Mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have ſome fruitful Champagns, bearing very good fruits, and among others, a ſtrong Wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taſt and colour above 80 years. They have alſo here a Drug ſomewhat like to *Myrrh*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a Lake of the ſame name; the Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamiſus*, and the fall thereof in the ſaid Lake: the waters of it firſt increaſed by a nameleſs Stream, falling from the Mountains, called *Seriphi*, being that part of *Taurus* which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well Inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Thoſe of moſt conſequence, 1 *Aria*, on the Banks of the River *Arias*, the Seat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* ſpeaketh of in this Tract, but whether they received this name from the Province, or beſtowed their own name upon it, I determine not. 2 *Bataxa*. 3 *Sotera*. 4 *Orbitana*. 5 *Sarmigana*. 6 *Artacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*. 7 *Niſibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*. 8 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians* for the better awing of the Country, which by ſome former Rebellions had been troubleſome to him. But theſe, and moſt of thoſe remembred by *Ptolomy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of ſpecial note, 9 *Heri*, or *Eri*, ſeated not far from the place of the ancient *Aria*, but much ſuperior to it in ſtrength and greatneſs. Said by *Maginus* to be in compaſs 13 miles, and ſo plentifully ſtored with Roſes, that the Inhabitants of the Country call it the City of Roſes. Naturally of a ſtrong ſituation, compaſſed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that moſt puiſſant *Tartar*, by whom either Founded or Repaired. The truth is, the City is built on an Iſland in the midſt of the River, and ſo muſt be of difficult acceſs. The Province of *Heri* is a part of that of *Coraſſan* and is not named in the Maps of *Perſia*. This City is famous for Tapiſtry, and is much frequented by the *Indian* Merchants, who paſs through it in their Journeys by Land to *Perſia*. *Olearius* in his Travels. It is ſeated in the Lat. of 36. 20. 10 *Saſuar*, a place of good importance, and the ſecond in eſteem next to *Heri* it ſelf.

The old Inhabitants were the *Maſdarami*, *Niſæi*, *Aſtareni*, the *Caſſirotæ*, *Obares*, *Drachamæ*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united altogether in the name of *Arians*, by that name ſubject to the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by *Alexander*. Againſt whom, when they had Rebelled, and were worſted by him, they were compelled to betake themſelves to the ſtrength of a Cave, ſeated upon the top of an inacceſſible Rock, and with ſmall Force eaſily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impoſſible. For piling up a great Maſs of Timber equal to the mouth of the Cave, when the Wind ſerved opportunely, he put fire unto it, and by that means ſo filled the Cave with fire and ſmoak that ſome of them were ſtifled, ſome half burnt, and the reſt forced to yield to the Victor's mercy. Nor was this the only action of note during that Rebellion, tho' it was the greateſt. The Common Soldiers alſo had this honour in it: *Sarlibarzanes*, a *Perſian*, whom *Alexander* had truſted with the Command of this Province, had drawn them unto this Revolt, and became their Head. Who, to expreſs his Courage in the ſight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudeſt He of the *Macedonians*, to a ſingle Combat. The Challenge chearfully accepted by one *Eriguis*, one of the moſt aged in the Army: and ſaying aloud, *Oſtendam quales milites* Alexander *habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebel, and at the ſecond *venew* ſlew him. The *Arians* after this trial of their diſabilities, remained in quiet, taking the ſame Fortunes as the reſt of the *Perſians* did in their change of Maſters. Of late by *Mahomet Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Perſia*, and given to *Sultan Abas* his ſecond Son; who took unto himſelf in his Fathers lifetime the Title of the King of *Heri*. But coming to the Crown by the Murder of his elder Brother, and the Death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the Regal Diadem; but kept it as a diſtinct Title in the Royal Style.

10. *PARTHIA.* HIERACH.

PARTHIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Aria*; on the Weſt, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients, was call'd *Deſerta*: The reaſon of the Name we ſhall ſee anon. But that Name being laid aſide, it is now called *Arach*.

The Country walled, as it were, round with Mountains, and in moſt parts overgrown with Woods: by which defended from thoſe heats to which otherwiſe it would be ſubject; it produceth many things of neceſſary uſe for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and exceſs. In other places where the ſhade of the Wood is wanting, the whole Country is in a manner but a *Sandy Deſart*, dangerous to Travellers, and impaſſible even with the help of *Guides*; the Sands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all Tracts of a beaten way. For which cauſe there be certain Caſtles at each three Miles end, built at the King's charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Paſſengers; and Cauſeys of many Miles in length, in ſome other places, for their better travelling; the Sands of each ſide of them ſo looſe and light that if a man ſhould fall aſide, he were loſt remedileſs.

The people anciently were very couragious and ſtout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withal of a *Scythian* Extract and Original; exceeding ſpare of Diet, and good reaſon for it, the Countrey not affording any ſuperfluities; but otherwiſe much given to pleaſures, allowing themſelves plurality of Wives and Concubines. Good Horſemen, and to that ſo uſed, that they conſulted of all Buſineſs, both private and publick, when they were on horſe-back. Such lovers of the Wars, that they accounted no man happy after his deceaſe, but who died in Battel; eſteeming of all others but as Fools or Cowards. Their Soldiers for the moſt part Slaves, whom they trained up unto their weapons and to manage horſes: inſomuch as of 50000 horſe which the *Parthian* King had in the Field againſt *Marcus Antonius*; there were not above 800 *Free men*. But their greateſt Fame conſiſted in the handling of their *Bow* and *Arrows*, eſteemed the beſt *Archers* in the World, and not undeſervedly; having the art of ſhooting backwards, and making their Retreat or Flight more terrible than their Chaſe or Onſet. Whence that of *Seneca*;

> *Terga converſi metuenda* Parthi.
> The *Parthians* flight
> Doth moſt affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiouſly deſcribed by *Lucan* thus:

> *Pugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmæque fugaces,*
> *Et melior ceſſiſſe loco quam pellere miles.*
> *Illita terra dolis, nec* Martem *comminus unquam*
> *Auſa pati virtus, ſed longe tendere nervos.*

Which I find thus *Engliſhed* to my hand;

> Light Skirmiſh, fleeing War, and ſcattered bands,
> And better Soldiers when they run away,
> Than to cut off an Enemy that ſtands.
> Their crafty *Gall-thraps* on the Ground they lay,
> Nor dares their courage come to down right-blows,
> But fight beſt fartheſt off, moſt truſting to their Bows.

From hence it was that *M. Craſſus*, in his Expedition againſt them, being told by an Aſtrologer, *That his Enterprize would prove unproſperous, by reaſon of ſome* Ill Aſpect *which he had found in* Scorpio; *Tuſh man* (ſaid he) *I fear not* Scorpio, *but* Sagittarius. And to theſe Warlike Exerciſes of Horſe and Archery, the Temper of the Air and Soil gave no ſmall advantages; the dry air ſeaſoning their Bow ſtrings, and their large Fields affording them ſufficient Room to train their Horſes. *Cælum enim quod ſiccum eſt, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana eſt, & ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be underſtood not of *Parthia* only, but the whole Country of *Perſia*; ſubject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to theſe *Parthians*, the *Engliſh* have been looked on formerly, as the ableſt Bow-men; having gotten by their *Bow* and *Arrows* as many notable Victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time, *Archery* both here and elſewhere, is quite laid aſide, the Gun ſilencing all offenſive Weapons; how juſtly I determine not. The Point hath been long ſince debated betwixt Sir *John Smith*, and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great Wits appearing upon either ſide; and the ſum of their ſeveral Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds*, in his Judicious Obſervations upon *Cæſar*'s *Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his ſatisfaction. All I ſhall ſay is only this, That Victories as great as any in thoſe Elder Days, have been obtained with far leſs Bloodſhed, ſince the Gun came up, than in any of the Times before it.

The Religion of this people hath ſuffered under the ſame changes with the reſt of *Perſia*, but they have a Language of their own, mixt of *Medes* and *Scythian*. For which beſides the Teſtimony of human Authors, we have the Authority of *Scriptures*; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes* are named as Nations of a ſeveral Language, or a different *Dialect* at the leaſt, *Acts* 2.

Rivers of note I find not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus*, part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Maſdoramus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the Hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Deſarts of Carmania*. So that for want of ſuch known Landmarks, the finding out of their ancient Cities would be very difficult, if any learned *Antiquary* ſhould undertake it.

The Country anciently more populous, the Towns and Villages thicker ſet than they be at the preſent, many Cities, and 2000 Villages having been overthrown with *Earthquakes*. In *Ptolemy* we find the Names of 25 of the Cities, diſtributed into the Four Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camiſene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene*, bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring *Carmania*. The principal of which, and of thoſe that are now in being, 1 *Genonia*. 2 *Charax*. 3 *Artacana*. 4 *Apamia*, which by the Name ſeems to have been of the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5 *Dardamana*. 6 *Syndaga*. 7 *Paſacarta*. 8 *Hecatompyle*, the Royal City, ſo called from the number of an hundred Gates in the Walls thereof, by which we may conjecture at the ancient greatneſs: The *Parthians*, which had ſeen no greater, calling it by the glorious Name of *Half the World*. 9. *Hiſpaan*, commonly called *Saphan*, or *Spawhawn*, raiſed out of the Ruins of *Hecatompyle*; and as that was, the Regal City for theſe parts. In compaſs about nine Miles, of figure round, and ſeated in the midſt of a large and capacious Plain; beautified with many pleaſant Gardens, goodly Bathes, and handſome *Moſques*. But the greateſt glory of it lieth in the Market place of *Median*, quadrangular in form, but the ſides unequal; cloiſtered about, and well ſtored with Merchandize of all ſorts, but Druggs eſpecially: The Court or *Quadrangle*, ſerving for Horſe-races, and other warlike Exerciſes which are done on horſe-back. On the Weſt ſide a Magnificent *Moſque*, built of White Marble five Yards high, and the reſt above that of Brick; curiouſly interwoven with *Arabick* Poeſies. In the midſt a fair Conduit, wherewith they purify themſelves when they go to their Prayers. On another ſide the *Royal Palace*, wrought in the Front with *Antique* Works; the Floors on the inſide covered with rich *Perſian* Carpets, and the Roofs chargeably emboſſed with Gold and Azure. *Herbert*, p. 82. Others make it eight *German* Miles in compaſs, and to contain 18000 Houſes, and 500000 Inhabitants; the Walls of it are ill built, ill kept, and out of repair. It has Gardens of Twenty Acres of Ground, which makes the City much greater than it would otherwiſe be. See *Olearius* and *Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, pag. 143. *Struys*, pag. 315. *Lat.* 32. 26.

10 *Jelphea*, on the other ſide of the River on which *Spawhawn* is Seated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly Inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Chriſtians, from hence called *Jelphelines*; who live here in great freedom, both for Perſon and Conſcience, but that their *Poll-mony* is tax'd at an higher rate. 11 *Croom* a right pleaſant and healthy City, well Built, of large Streets, and ſeated on the Banks of a ſmall, but delightful River, iſſuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, near to which it ſtandeth. Conſiſting at the preſent of 2000 Families, but anciently, as may be gathered from ſome Ruins, of far greater compaſs. Much honoured by the *Perſians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet*, from whom the *Sophian* Sect and Princes do derive their Pedigree. 12 *Caſham*, a Rich and pleaſant City, about ſixty miles from *Spawhawn*, well built, and Peopled by a number of *Artizans*; who for the making of Silks, Satins, and Cloath of Gold, are in great eſteem. Beautified amongſt other things with a ſtately and magnificent *Caravans-Raw*, built by Sultan *Abbas*, for the reception of Strangers, whether Merchants or other Travellers, but fit to entertain any Prince of *Aſia*. The City of no great Age, the work either of *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Perſia*, in the year 1470. or at the higheſt of *Caſſam*, the Son *Axan*, and Grandſon of *Tangrolipix*, the firſt *Turk* here Reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13 *Tawgebawt*, where the *Perſian* Kings have a houſe of Pleaſure, of no great receipt, but for the coſt and ornaments of it, and the delectableneſs of the Gardens adjoyning to it, not yielding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Eccboes*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not fellowed in the world; eſpecially conſidering that it ſtandeth in the middle of a Sandy Deſart.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation Baniſhed their own Country, and glad to plant themſelves in this barren Region; calling themſelves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their Language ſignifieth as much as *Exiles*. A People ſo obſcure and poor, either not knowing, or not caring for the uſe of Money, that none of *Alexander*'s great Captains would vouchſafe to be their Governor; but let it lie as an Appendix of *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been ſubject; till one *Philip*, a man of ſmall regard, took the place upon him. Falling at laſt, with the reſt of *Alexander*'s *Aſian* Purchaſes, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was Governed by the Lieutenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of that Houſe. During whoſe Reign, *Arſaces* a Noble *Parthian*, provoked by ſome Indignities, ſlew the Governor, and took the Eſtate upon himſelf; perſwading all the reſt of the Provinces to do the like: and thrived ſo well in his deſign, that he not only gained the Kingdom of *Parthia*, but united to it all the Provinces lying on the Eaſt of *Euphrates*. Of whom and his Succeſſors, more in the ſtory of *Perſia*. After this nothing ſingular which concerns this Province, but that as this *Arſaces* did recover the *Perſian* Liberty from the Power of the *Greeks*; ſo *Gempſas*, one of the Sultans of this Province alſo, redeemed (tho' but for a little time) this *Parthia* and the parts adjoyning, from the Yoke of the *Tartars*, as ſhall be ſhewn in proſecution of the *Perſian* Hiſtory.

II. *HYRCANIA. DIARGUMENT. MESENDRAM. CORCUM.*

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caſpian* Sea; on the Eaſt, with *Margiana*; and on the Weſt with *Atropatia*, or *Atropatene*, (as *Ammianus* calleth it) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interpoſition of *Coronus*, part of the main Body of Mount *Taurus*. The way through which, ſaid by the *Perſians* to be cut out at one blow, by the Scymiter of *Mortis Hali*, their ſecond *Mahomet*, is not above forty yards in breadth, in the broadeſt parts of it; the hills on both ſides towring to the very Clouds: With ſmall ſtrength eaſily defended againſt mighty Armies, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the Ancients called *Portæ Caſpiæ*, before deſcribed.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcana*; a large and ſpacious Foreſt betwixt it and *Scythia*; ſometimes called *Caſpia* alſo, from the *Caſpii*, a chief People of it: Of whom it is reported, That when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they uſed to ſhut them up, and ſtarve them; as being then no longer uſeful to the Commonwealth. But both thoſe Names growing out of uſe, it is by *Mercator* called *Diargument*; by ſome late Travellers *Mozendram*; by ſome others, *Corcam*.

Thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the South, are ſaid to yield abundance of Wheat, Wines, Figs, and Fruit: thoſe toward the *Caſpian* Sea, as plentiful of Graſs and Paſture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but continual Foreſts; and thoſe ſo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no ſmall difficulty to find paſſage through them. Full, as moſt other Foreſts are in thoſe Eaſtern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*, *Tigers*: Theſe laſt of ſuch an horrible fierceneſs, that it grew into a Common Proverb uſed of cruel Men, that they had ſucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger, *Hyrcanæque admorunt ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Country: 1 *Zioberis*, ſpoken of before. 2 *Maxera* or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*. And 3 *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caſpian* and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caſpii* and *Hyrcani* bordering next to it; now from the Town of *Bochu* in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochu*. Faſhioned in an *Oval* Form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from Eaſt to Weſt. Stormy and troubleſome, by reaſon of thoſe many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoining: Which notwithſtanding, it hath no viſible commerce with the *Ocean*, nor doth it at any time overflow its Banks, finding ſome paſſage under ground to diſcharge it ſelf of thoſe vaſt ſtreams of water, which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Moſcovite* Merchants; who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) ſail over it, and land at *Farabant*, or ſome other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for Silks. Some Iſlands here are in it, but not many, or of any great Fame; but only that they ſerved the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* Tempeſt under *Tamerlane*; as the Iſles of *Venice* did to the *Italians*, at the coming of *Attila*. This Sea doth neither Ebb nor Flow, as all thoſe Seas do that have Communication with the Ocean. It hath in a manner never a ſafe Harbor: *Manguſlave* on the *Tartarian* Shoar, is yet the beſt. It is generally very ſhallow, and full of Flats, which make it Tempeſtuous and Dangerous. In many places the Water is freſh, and in others as ſalt as our Seas. See *Olearius*, *Hackluit*. *To.* 1. *Page* 243. 328. 334. *Struys*. The *Nubian Geographer*, p. 6. *Bohun*'s *Geographical Dictionary* in *Hyrcania*. *Herbert* 95.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Hyrcania*, once the *Metropolis* of the Province, and ſo called by *Ptolomy*; ſtill extant, but of leſs eſteem, and ſtill called *Hyrcan*. 2. *Tambrace*, in old times of the greateſt ſtrength, and moſt defenſible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the War againſt *Arſaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of thoſe Countries then revolted from him. 3 *Adrapſa*. 4 *Maſaca*. 5 *Anaroſa*. Of which we find the names, amongſt others, in the ancient Writers. 6 *Aſharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a ſpacious Plain, containing about 2000 Houſes; and now of moſt reputation of all this Province, by the long reſidence therein of *Abas*, the late *Perſian* Sultan, who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abaſſabaut*. The furniture whereof beſides coſtly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at ſuch time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Ambaſſador, is ſaid to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at twenty millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels: ſuch a vaſt ſum to be expended on the Furniture of one Palace only, being beyond the poſſibility of the Revenue of the *Perſian* Sophies; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. *Herbert*'s Travels, page 94. This Embaſſie was made in the year 1626, and 27. and *Tho. Herbert* Eſq; was one of his Retinue, and wrote a Relation of his Voyage, which was Printed in 1634. And out of it Dr. *Heylin* took the greateſt part of what he has concerning *Perſia*. It was reprinted lately with Additions, by the Author, who was then ſaid to be living, but I have not ſeen this ſecond impreſſion; but all my Quotations refer to the firſt Edition. 7 *Farabant*, on a Navigable Arm of the *Caſpian* Sea; for Beauty, Wealth, and Greatneſs, of moſt note in this Country. Well Traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, eſpecially by the *Ruſſian* Merchants, as before is ſaid, whoſe Ships come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Aſtrachan* but ten days Sail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal Manſion of the Kings, and a ſpacious Market-place. *Herbert* page 96, page 105. All the other places here mentioned are in the following pages. 8 *Chiacoporo*, near the Sea alſo, but on the Banks of a River; the water whereof is ſaid for eleven months to be freſh and ſweet, and for the 12th month very ſalt. 9 *Barfruſhdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furniſhed with wood and water. 10 *Omoal*, a Town of about 3000 houſes, ſeated on the North ſide of *Taurus* in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil; reſorted by the People of ſo many Nations, that ſeven Languages are there commonly ſpoken. Once Larger, as appeareth by ſome Ruins, than it is at the preſent; by ſome conceived to be the *Nabarca* of the Ancients, honoured in thoſe times with an Oracle. 11 *Strava*, a Town of great Traffick, for Raw Silks eſpecially. 12 *Meſandra*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoyning to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Caſpii*, were the *Maxeræ*, *Aſtabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arſitenſes*, united in the name of *Hyrcans*, in the time of the *Perſians*; and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Againſt whom they ſo defended themſelves by tying the boughs and twigs of their trees together, that it was impoſſible for him to come at them, till with incredible pains and labour he had cauſed their Woods to be cut down: at ſight whereof the People, who ſuppoſed the King had too much other Buſineſs, and of more importance, than to put himſelf unto that trouble, did ſubmit unto him. Falling to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, they were the firſt People that were gained by *Arſaces*, and joyn'd with him in recovering their former Liberty; tho' they got nothing by the Bargain but the change of their Maſter. In all times ſince they have been looked upon as Members of the *Perſian* Empire, till the Conqueſt of it by the *Tartars*; in the diſtractions of whoſe great Empire after *Tamerlane*'s death, it fell to ſome Princes of his Houſe, who Governed here under the Vaſſalage and Protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathy*. Recovered not long ſince to their old Obedience by Sultan *Abas*; who for the better ſettling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat-Royal from *Spawhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin*, to *Aſharaffe*, then a ſmall Town, now the chief of this Country.

12. MARGIANA. TREMIGEN. JESELBAS.

MARGIANA is bounded on the Weſt with *Hyrcania*; on the Eaſt, with *Bactria*; on the North with part of *Tartary*, from which ſevered by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs through the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*, and *Jeſelbas*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in moſt places of it full of Sandy Deſarts. But where it is watred with the Rivers *Arias* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, ſtretching it ſelf into a large and ſpacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compaſſed with a Wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*; more memorable for the huge ſtocks of Vines which are ſaid to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and ſometimes bearing bunches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it where the Vine will grow. And if the Ark reſted on the top of Mount *Caucaſus*, as it is moſt probable it did; why may not this be ſome of the remainder of that firſt Vineyard which was Planted by *Noah*, when he deſcended from theſe Mountains, as is affirmed by the conſtant tradition of the People which inhabit here?

The People mixt of *Scythian* and *Perſian* breed, partaking of the fierceneſs of the one, and the behaviour of the other; conform unto the *Perſians* in Religion, Language and Apparel; diſtinguiſhed from them in the colour of their Turbants only, which are commonly green, and therefore by the *Perſians* called *Jeſelbas*, or *Green-caps*: the Turbants of the *Perſians* being always red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which riſing out of the foot of the Mountains, and paſſing through the midſt of the Province, receiveth into its Channel the River, 2 *Arias* haſting out of *Aria*; and ſo together loſe themſelves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*: out of the joynt ſtreams of which ſeveral Rivers, is made a large Lake, now called *Sabacamber*, but anciently, *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Alexandria* or *Alexandria Margianæ*, for diſtinction ſake; one of the ſix Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next, *Antiochia*, from *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*, by whom Fortified with a very ſtrong Wall. It is now called *Indion*, and eſteemed the chief of the Country. 2 *Jaſonium*, ſeated on the confluence of *Margus*, with a nameleſs River, iſſuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3 *Nigæa*, as the printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but miſtook for *Niſſa*, or *Nyſæa*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhæa*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Maran*, near which *Iſmael*, the firſt of the *Sophian* Race, diſcomfited the Forces of *Saba*, *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old inhabitants hereof were the *Maſſagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbiccæ* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the Eaſt. United by the name of *Margians*, they were ſubdued by the Kings of *Perſia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to to his Empire; who to aſſure himſelf hereof built ſix Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the Eaſt; all ſituate on the tops of hills, and built at ſuch convenient nearneſs that they might afford Succour to each other, as occaſion ſerved. After this nothing ſingular in the Story of them, involved in the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Perſia*, till *Perſia* was Conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, tho' the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Gempſas* the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Perſia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are ſtill Subject to them.

13. BACTRIA. CHORASIN.

BACTRIA or BACTRIANA, is bovnded on the Weſt with *Margiana*, on the Eaſt and North with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamiſus*, from which parted by the hills ſo named, and the mountain *Caucaſus*. It took this name from *Bactria*, the chief City of it, and is now called *Choraſſin*, but by ſome named *Batter*.

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the moſt part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all ſorts of Fruits, excepting Olives, Rich Metals, and ſome precious Stones; as *Emeralds*, *Chryſolites*, and *Jacinths*. Plenty of Paſtures there be alſo, well ſtored with Cattel, and thoſe of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greateſt part hereof to the South and Weſt, is nothing but a ſandy Deſart; and by reaſon that the ſands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be diſcerned: Inſomuch as Travellers reſt all day, and take their Journey in the night, that they may guide themſelves by the courſe of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being loſt or buried, whilſt alive, in that ſandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puiſſant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Aſſyrians*, nor with leſs by the *Perſians*; always in Arms, cruel, and reſembling the *Scythians*, whoſe near Neighbours they were: And (which may very well paſs for their greateſt vertue) *Multum à* Perſarum *luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Perſian* Luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents; whom when old, they caſt unto their Dogs, kept for that purpoſe, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or Burial Dogs. The Women gorgeous in Apparel, and proud of Geſture, but prodigal of their Bodies to their meaneſt Slaves. The Men to this day do retain their ancient ſtoutneſs; but hard beſet betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Tartars*, who ſeverally pretend a Dominion over them.

No Province of the *Perſian* Empire hath ſo many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Artamis*, and 2 *Zariaſpes*, mingling ſtreams together; as do alſo, 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*, all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a Boundary betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have ſpoken already.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the Metropolis, or the chief City of it, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and ſtill keeps the dignity of the *Metropolitan*: The Seat of the Chief Prieſt or Biſhop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country alſo doth now belong) having here his Reſidence, in Power and Reputation equal to the King himſelf. Well fortified, and ſtored with all military Proviſions: The Birth-place (as *Maginus* ſaith) in theſe latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philoſopher and Phyſician; and in the firſt Ages, of *Zoroaſter* the more learned *Aſtrologer*. *Boghar* (ſaith Mr. *Jenkenſon*, a famous *Engliſh* Merchant and Traveller, who was in this City in 1558.) is ſeated in a low Land, ſurrounded with an high Wall of Earth, in which are divers Gates; It is great, but the Houſes are moſtly built with Earth, except the Temples, and ſome few houſes which are of ſtone. There is a ſmall River paſſeth through it, but the Waters are not wholeſome. It was heretofore under the *Perſian*, but when he was here, it was Subject to a *Tartarian* Prince, who was at cruel Wars with the *Perſians*, becauſe they wear hair on the upper Lip, which the *Tartars* count a great Sin, and for it call the *Perſians*, *Caphers*, i. e. *Hereticks*. The King was very poor, and a great Tyrant, and ſeldom, or never Reigned above two or three years before he was ſlain, or driven out. Heretofore (ſaith he) there was great reſort to this City by the *Caravans* of *India*, *Perſia*, *Balgh*, *Ruſſia*, and *Cathaia*, and whilſt he was there, there came ſome Merchants from *Bengala* with Linnen and Cottons. It is from *Cathaia*, nine Months Journey by Land. Lat. 39. 10. The King of *Samarcand* Beſieged this City ſoon after this Gentleman left it, *Hackluit* Tom. 1. page 331. This City in the Maps is called *Bochara*, and the Trade of it at that time was wholly Ruined. 2 *Eubuſmi*, once the Regal Seat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy*, with the Title of *Regia*. 3 *Zariſpe*, or *Chariſpe*, the chief City of the *Chariſpæ*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: theſe two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5 *Eucratidia*, Built, or Repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being meerly *Greek*, doth ſeem to intimate. 6 *Alicodra*, as ancient as the reſt, but of no great note in the courſe of buſineſs. 7 *Iſtigias*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of thoſe before ſpoken of: Superior to *Bochor* in Elegancy, State, and Greatneſs, though not in Dignity; and held by ſome to be the pleaſanteſt of the Eaſt.

This Country was as ſoon peopled as any ſince the general *Deluge*. It had not elſe been poſſible that *Zoroaſter*, King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him aſſaulted, ſhould bring into the Field an Army of 400000 Men, of this, and perhaps ſome other of the Neighbouring Provinces, as moſt credible Writers ſay he did. Encountring *Ninus*, with this Army he prevailed at firſt, and ſlew of the *Aſſyrians* near an hundred thouſand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his Forces, invaded him a ſecond time with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe (the greateſt on Record in all Ages ſince that time, except that of *Semiramis*:) with which he overcame *Zorcaſter*, ſlew him in the Field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaſter* is aſcribed the invention of *Aſtronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being ſtudied before the Flood, (if *Seth*'s Pillars mentioned by *Joſephus*, be of any credit:) And therefore probably no otherwiſe to be aſcribed to *Zoroaſter*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or becauſe he firſt committed that unto writing, which he had received by *Tradition*; or becauſe he brought thoſe confuſed Notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being ſlain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the Wife of *Menon*, (but on the merit of that ſervice made the Wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became ſubject unto the *Aſſyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Beſſus* a falſe and cruel Traytor, did command this Province: And having villanouſly ſlain *Darius*, his Lord and Maſter, aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Perſia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes*, one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruel death: The *Bactrians* became ſubject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Selucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that ſtate; one *Theodarus*, who formerly had the Government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himſelf the Title of King, and the Poſſeſſion of the Country, about the ſame time that *Arſaces* and the *Parthians* made the like Revolt. Wreſted from his Poſterity by one *Euthydemus*, the Recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cauſe put to the trial of a Battel. In which, tho' *Antiochus* had the better, and ſhewed more perſonal Valour in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a compoſition, and left to *Euthydemus*, both the Crown and the Country. Made not long after an acceſſion to the *Parthian* Kingdom, it continued part thereof whilſt that Kingdom ſtood; and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief Tribes or Nations of it, the *Salataræ*, and *Zariaſpæ* towards the North; the *Contani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, ſaid to be *gens magna*; the *Scordæ*, *Savadii*, *Maricæ*, *Tambizi*, *Amariſpæ*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Perſian* State, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the new Pretenders, and at this time ſo neutral betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averſe from the *Perſian* Government, ſince the alteration of Religion made there by *Hyſmael*, and the reſt of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: theſe *Bactrians* being of the old Race of *Mahometans*, which adhered to *Haumar*, *Oſman*, and *Abubecher*, as the true Succeſſors of their falſe Prophet, and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* Faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of thoſe ſeveral Provinces, which conſtitute the *Perſian* Empire, and ſhewn by what means they were firſt united into one Eſtate, we muſt next look upon the names and actions of thoſe mighty Monarchs, who have ſucceſſively, and from time to time enjoyed the Soveraignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diadem for himſelf, we have ſhewn before: And we have ſhewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the ſeveral Provinces (which in the diviſion made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his ſhare) in the propriety and command of thoſe Countries which before they held. Nothing reſerved unto himſelf, and his Poſterity, but the Title only; and perhaps ſome acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he leſs liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the reſt of the Provinces; which turning to licentiouſneſs was ſo hurtful to them, that they were glad at laſt of that wholeſome ſeverity, which *Deioces*, a more Lordly King, began to exerciſe: who taking to himſelf a guard, building the Royal City of *Ecbatana*, and fortifying ſome other places of importance, firſt brought the people under the command of Law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the firſt King of the *Medes*.

KINGS of the *MEDES*.

A. M.

3146 1 *Arbaces*, at firſt Governor of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Aſſyrian*; but joyning with *Belochus*, overcame his Maſter, and was the firſt Founder of the *Median* Monarchy. 28.

3174 2 *Mandanes*, the ſon of *Arbaces*. 50.

3224 3 *Siſarmus*. 30.

3254 4 *Medidus*, by ſome called *Artyras*. 25.

3279 5 *Cadicceus*, whom ſome call *Arbianes*. 13.

3292 6 *Deioces*, the Founder of *Ecbatana*, and the *Legiſlator* of the *Medes*, whom he firſt brought under the command of Law and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the Reins ſo looſe on the Necks of the people, that they ſeemed to Reign by Courteſy only; and had no more Authority amongſt their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vaſſals. 40.

3303 7 *Phraortes*, a Man of great Proweſs and Fortune: He made all *Aſia* ſtand in fear, and compelled the *Perſians* to be his Tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.

3331 8 *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Parthians*. The King was ſo overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the Reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*, that he was little better than their Rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he Plotted their final Extirpation, and committed his Deſign to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a Banquet; where having well Liquored them, and put 'em all to the Sword, the baſer ſort willlingly returned homewards. 40.

3371 9 *Aſtyages* the Son of *Cyaxares*, who having Married his Daughter *Mandane* to *Cambyſes*, the Tributary King of *Perſia*, dreamed that ſhe had made as much water as drowned all *Aſia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble-men, to ſee the Child kill'd; but he loathing ſo cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the King's Commandment, to *Mithridates* the King's Herdſman. He preſerved the Life of the young Infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whoſe Fortune at laſt lifted him up to the Kingdom of *Perſia*: when abhorring his Grandfather for that intended Cruelty, he both bereſt him of his Kingdom, and confined him [illegible] *Hyrcania*, when he had Reigned thirty five years, *A. M.* 3406. 35.

3406 10 *Cyaxares* II. In the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, Son to *Aſtyages*, at the Age of 52 years Succeeded his Father. For *Cyrus*, pretending no quarrel to his Uncle who had never wronged him, left him the Kingdom of *Media*, and took unto himſelf the Sovereignty of *Perſia*, which before was Tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this Diviſion of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annals* (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was alſo agreed on, that *Cyrus* ſhould take the Daughter and only Child of *Cyaxares* to Wife; that they ſhould both joyn together in ſubduing their Neighbours; that whatſoever they won, ſhould belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his Life; and that *Cyrus* ſhould be his Heir. In the twentieth year of their ſeveral Reigns, they took *Babylon*, ſlew *Baltazar*, and deſtroyed the Empire of the *Chaldeans*. This Action the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof St. *Hierom* alledgeth three Reaſons: 1. *Ordo ætatis*. 2. *Regni*. 3. *Propinquitatis*. 1. *Darius* was the Elder. 2. The Empire of the *Medes* was more famous than that of the *Perſians*; and 3 the Uncle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may add to theſe three, the compoſition above-mentioned, made between theſe Princes, at the beginning of their Reigns on the death of *Aſtyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the Victory only to *Cyrus*, and that on three Reaſons alſo. The *Perſians* deſirous to magnify *Cyrus* their own Country-man, gave him all the Glory of the Action; and from the *Perſians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was only imployed in the Siege, (*Darius* then being abſent) and by his Valour and Conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldæans* Ruined. And Thirdly *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great Victory; ſo that before remote Nations had taken notice of the Conqueſt, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Joſephus* only in the 12*th* Chapter of his 10*th* Book, cutteth the thread even between theſe two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius*, with *Cyrus* his Ally, deſtroyed the Eſtate of the *Babylonians*. Ἐπι τοῦτον (Ναβοανδηλον) στρατεύουσι κῦρος τε. ὁ περσῶν βασιλεῦς, καὶ δαρεῖος ὁ μηδῶν, καὶ πολιορκουμένω αυτω, &c. That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel* is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifeſt. For *Joſephus* in the place above-cited, telleth us, Ὃς ἦν Ἀστυάγου υἱὸς καὶ ἕτερον παρὰ τοῖς ἕλλησιν ἐκαλεῖτο ὄνομα That he was *Aſtyages*'s Son, and is otherwiſe called by the *Greeks*: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Aſtyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joſeph Scaliger* in ſpight of Reaſon, and the whole World of Chronologers, would thruſt upon this *Darius Medus*, we have already refelled it: tho we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calviſius*, two moſt worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, ſo alſo in this particular Error: But to proceed unto the courſe of the *Perſian* Hiſtory; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* Succeeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated into that of the *Perſians*, (as it hath ever ſince continued) if not Subject to it.

The firſt *Dynaſty*, or Race of the *Perſian* Monarchs, of the Houſe of *Achemænes*.

Note that *Helvicus*, and *Iſaackſon* place the beginning of *Cyrus*, *A. M.* 3391. Sir *John Marſham*, in 3402.

3406 1 *Cyrus*, who having vanquiſhed *Aſtyages*, united to the Empire of *Perſia* the whole Kingdom of *Media*; the Countries of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, ſome part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces poſſeſſed by the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Monarchs. After which Victories, he was ſlain by *Tomyris*, a Queen of the *Scythians*, as ſome Writers ſay; others affirming, that he eſcaped alive (but wounded) out of the Battle, died in his own Kingdom, and was buried at *Paſagarda*, a Town of *Perſis*. This *Cyrus* is Magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Æneas* by *Virgil*, and *Ulyſſes* by *Homer*. Before the time of this Prince, no part of the *leſſer Aſia* was Subject to the Eaſtern Empire; and by conſequence, it was very little known to the *Greeks*; but this Conqueſt of *Phrygia* and *Lydia* made them better inform themſelves of the ſame, which hapning juſt as the Sacred Hiſtory of the Bible was upon a concluſion; The *Greeks* took up and continued the Hiſtory; and but for this, that part of the Hiſtory of the World had in all probability been loſt. 29.

3434 2 *Cambyſes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, Subdued *Pſammiticus* King of *Egypt*, which Country he united to his Empire. Having a mind to Marry his own Siſter, he was told by his Lawyers, that they knew no Law which admitted ſuch Marriages; but that there was a Law, that the *Perſian* Kings might do what they liſted. This King was a very bloody Tyrant. 7.

The *Interregnum* of the Magi.

Cambyſes, at his Expedition into *Ægypt*, conſtituted *Patizithes*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his abſence. He hearing of the King's death, conferred the Kingdom on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the People believe that he was the Brother of *Cambyſes*: a matter of no difficulty, conſidering how retirement from the publick view, was a chief point of the *Perſian* Majeſty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be ſlain, or ſuſpecting the overmuch retiredneſs of the new King, began to ſearch out the matter. *Otanes* had a Daughter, which was one of the King's Concubines: Her he commanded when the King took next his pleaſure with her, to feel whether he had any ears; for *Cambyſes* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the ears of this *Magus*. This commandment ſhe obeying, found out the falſhood. The *Seven Princes* informed of this Impoſtor, joyned together, and ſlew this *Pſeudo-Smerdis*, in the 8*th* Month of his Reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themſelves, that the *Seven Princes*, meeting on the Palace-green, ſhould acknowledge him for King, whoſe Horſe before the riſing of the Sun firſt Neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the Horſe-keeper of *Darius*, the Son of *Hyſtaſpes*, brought his Maſter's Horſe into the Green, together with a Mare, which the Horſe then Covered. In the Morning the Princes met; and *Darius*'s Horſe knowing the place, and longing for his Mare, Neighed Luſtily: on which the Princes preſently acknowledged *Darius* for their King.

The Reſtoring of the Kingdom.

3443 3 *Darius Hyſtaſpis*, one of the ſeven *Perſian* Princes, deſcended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Perſians*, thus Elected King, took *Babylon* (which had Revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopyrus*, and over-ran all *Aſia*, and ſome part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the Battel of *Marathon*. 36.

3479 4 *Xerxes*, to Revenge the Overthrow of *Marathon*, attempted to ſubdue the *Greeks*, by whom he was overthrown in the Naval Battel of *Salamis*; and that Famous and Honourable Exploit of the *Grecians*, at *Thermopylæ*. 21.

3500 5 *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who ſent *Eſdras* to Re-build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themiſtocles*, being Baniſhed from *Athens*. This alſo was he, as ſome would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahaſuerus*, the Husband of *Heſter*; tho others chuſe rather to place that Story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.

3544 6 *Darius* II. Sirnamed *Nothus*, in whoſe time the *Ægyptians* Revolted, and choſe a King of their own. 19.

3563 7 *Artaxerxes* II. from the greatneſs of his Memory ſirnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with an handful of his *Grecians*, through moſt of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they ſhewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how eaſie a Conqueſt they might make of that Mighty Empire. 36.

3599 8 *Ochus*, A great Tyrant, but a Valiant Prince, recovered *Ægypt*, ſubued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and ſome part of *India*, and was at laſt ſlain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber. 26.

3625 9 *Arſes*, the Son of *Ochus*, moſt Villanouſly Murdered by the ſame Eunuch, for fear he ſhould Revenge the Death of his Father. 4.

3629 10 *Darius* III. Governor of *Armenia*, and Couſin-german of *Ochus*, before his coming to the Crown, named *Codomanus*, by the means of the ſaid *Bagoas* made ſole Monarch of *Perſia*: But being Vanquiſhed by *Alexander* the *Great*, in the three Battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Perſians* was transferred to the *Grecians*, A. M. 3635. 6.

The certain Revenues of this Great Monarchy, ſeem to have been 14560 Talents; for ſo much the laſt *Darius* received yearly. But what the caſual and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not eaſie to ſay; tho' manifeſt it is, and demonſtrable by many ſtrong and evident reaſons, that they far exceeded the *certain*. For firſt, the *Perſian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces. Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the Ranſom of his Mother and two Daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treaſury of *Damaſcus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Suſa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoin'd; in that of *Paſagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Perſepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; beſides the infinite Riches of the Treaſury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly ſpecified: an huge and moſt unſpeakable ſum; Fourthly, in that the Gold and Riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, ſent from *Perſia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (beſides which, every Captain and Common Soldier had provided and laid up for his own Maintenance) loaded ten thouſand Mules, and five thouſand Camels.

For the fixing in one View the True Succeſſion of the *Eaſtern* Princes, I ſhall here tranſcribe the *Canon* or *Catalogue* of the Kings of *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and *Perſia*, according to Mr. *Dodwell*'s Copy, which is the moſt Ancient Collection, and Fountain of all True *Chronology*.

	The KINGS of *ASSYRIA*	Reigned	Nabonaſſ. Æra.	Helv. A.M. 3204.
1	*Nabonaſſar*	14	14	
2	*Nadius*	2	16	
	Chinzirus and *Porus*	5	21	
3	*Jugaius*	5	26	
4	*Mardocempadus*	12	38	
5	*Arcianus*	5	43	
	The First Interregnum.	2	45	
6	*Belibus*	3	48	
7	*Apranadius*	6	54	
8	*Rigebelus*	1	55	
9	*Meſeſſimordack*	4	59	
	The Second Interregnum.	8	67	
10	*Aſſaradin*	13	80	
11	*Saoſdouchin*	20	100	
12	*Chuniladan*	22	122	
13	*Nabopolaſſar*	21	143	
14	*Nabocolaſſar. Nabuchodon*	43	186	
15	*Iloaroudam. Evilmerodach*	2	188	
16	*Niricaſſolaſſar*	4	192	
17	*Nabonad*	17	209	
	***PERSIAN* KINGS**			
1	*Cyrus*	9	218	
2	*Cambyſes*	7	226	
3	*Darius* I.	36	262	
4	*Zerxes*	22	284	
5	*Artaxerxes* I.	41	325	(24)
6	*Darius* II.	19	343	
7	*Artaxerxes* II.	46	389	
8	*Ochus*	21	401	
9	*Arogus*	12	412	(13)
10	*Darius* III.	4	416	
	***MACEDONIAN* KINGS.**			
	Alexander the Great	8	424	
	Philip Son of *Aridæus*	7	431	
	Alexander II.	12	443	

The reſt of the Kings in this Table belong to *Ægypt*; where it ſhall be continued. This being the moſt Valuable Piece of Antiquity now extant, as to *Chronology*.

After this overthrow of the *Perſian* Monarchy, the *Perſian* Nation lay obſcure 535 years, *viz.* from the 3635 year of the World, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Succeſſors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arſacidan* Kings of *Parthia*. Μετὰ γὰρ Δαρεῖον, *&c.* as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had loſt his Kingdom to *Alexander* the "*Macedonian*, and after the Victor himſelf was dead "alſo, the more potent Captains divided *Aſia* among "them: But Diſcords often ariſing, and the *Macedonians* puiſſance, by theſe often Broils, not ſmally bro- "ken. *Arſaces*, one of the *Parthian* Nobility, perſwa- "ded the Barbarous people of the *Eaſt*, and among them "the *Perſians*, to caſt off the *Greek* Yoke, and ſtand for "their Liberty: he himſelf taking upon him the Title "of King, and inveſting himſelf with a Diadem, *A.M.* "3718. The *Perſians*, by this Revolt got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the Tyranny, but the *Tyrant* only: Theſe *Parthian* Princes Lording it with as high an Inſolency as ever the old *Perſian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria* did before. From this *Arſaces*, all the reſt of his Succeſſors, and thoſe too of the Family of *Artabanus*, or ſecond Race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cæſar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their uſual Style was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that Style with Arrogance and Inſolence enough, *Vologeſes* thus inſcribed his Letters to *Veſpaſian* the *Roman* Emperor, *viz.* *Arſaces, Rex Regum, Flavio Veſpaſiano*: giving himſelf the Title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Veſpaſian* without taking notice of the *Parthian*'s Pride, returned his Anſwer to him with this Superſcription, *Fl. Veſpaſianus Regi Regum Arſacidi*: whether with more ſcorn or modeſty, it is hard to ſay. They alſo called themſelves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefeſt gods they worſhipped. Great Princes queſtionleſs they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the World beſides: whoſe Names and Acts occur in theſe following Catalogues of

2. *The* Arſacidan *or* Parthian *Race of the Kings of* Perſia.

A. M.		
3718	1	*Arſaces*, the Founder of the *Parthian* Family.
3741	2	*Mithridates*, or *Arſaces* the ſecond, aſſaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without ſucceſs.

3761 3 *Pampatius.*
3773 4 *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius.*
3783 5 *Mithridates* II. Brother of *Phraartes*, ſubdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates.*
6 *Phraartes* II. ſlain in a War againſt the *Scythians.*
3857 7 *Artabanus*, Unkle to *Phraartes* the ſecond.
8 *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus.*
9 *Mithridates* III. Brother of *Pacorus.*

3903 10 *Horodes*, Brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and cauſed to be ſlain in his own ſight. He alſo vanquiſhed *M. Craſſus*, and ſlew 20000 *Romans*; and becauſe *Craſſus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he cauſed Molten Gold to be poured down his Throat. A miſerable death, but in reſpect of the Divine Providence, a moſt juſt revenge upon him for his Sacriledge, in robbing the Temple of *Hieruſalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians.* The overthrow, and the diſgrace which thereby happened to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompenced by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony the Triumvir*, who ſlew great numbers of them in a pitched Field, and amongſt others, *Pacorus* the King's Son: The day of the Battel being the ſame in which *Craſſus* had before been vanquiſhed. After this Victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the firſt *Triumph* that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have ſhrewdly ſhaken it at the leaſt, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that ſervice. Finally, *Horodes* was ſlain by his Son *Phraartes.*

11 *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the Murther of his own Father and many of his Brethren doth clearly evidence. Againſt him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an abſolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, ſcarce ſix returning home in ſafety. This King ſubmitted himſelf and Kingdom unto *Auguſtus*, reſtoring the *Roman* Enſigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Craſſus.* The only Mark of the *Parthians* Subjection was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperors of *Rome*; which alſo was of no long continuance.

12 *Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the Third, whom he ſlew and ſucceeded.

13 *Horodes* II. Son of *Phraartes* the Fourth, ſlain in a conſpiracy.

14 *Vonon*, ſubſtituted in the place of *Horodes*, but outed by

15 *Tiridates*, who was alſo diſpoſſeſſed of his life and Kingdom by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the Two laſt Kings, becauſe they either had received the Kingdom, or at leaſt the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperors. Which *Artabanus*, tho deſcended either from a Female, or ſome of the Collateral Line of the former Family; yet being not direct Heir thereof, he is looked on as a ſtranger to the Blood of the *Arſacidæ* the Family of *Arſaces*, giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which Family we have the names of Twelve Kings ſucceſſively reigning. The moſt conſiderable of them being *Choſroes*, the eighth King of this Line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Perſian* Crown, by *Sapores* the ninth King of the next *Perſian* Dynaſty. But for thoſe Twelve Kings of this Houſe, they are theſe.

The Third Dynaſty of the Kings of *Perſia*, and the ſecond of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanus.*
2 *Bardanes.*
3 *Goteres.*
4 *Vonones.*
5 *Vologeſes.*
6 *Artabanus* II.
7 *Pacorus.*
8 *Choſroes.*
9 *Parmaſpates.*
10 *Vologeſes* II.
11 *Vologeſes* III.

12 *Artabanus* III. The laſt King of this new Race of the *Parthians*, whoſe overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the firſt *Perſian* King of the fourth *Dynaſty*, occaſioned the Tranſlation of the Diadem to the natural *Perſians*; after it had continued in Two *Parthian* Families, for the ſpace of 470 years. Which Tranſlation, as it was wrought by the unreſiſtable power of God, who only hath the diſpoſing of Crowns and Scepters; ſo in the way of ſecond cauſes it may be principally referred to the Barbarous Maſſacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor; who having negotiated a Marriage with the Daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to ſolemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choiceſt of his Soldiers, and other Subjects, in Triumphal Ornaments. Which honourable Train was no ſooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Soldiers (on a Watch-word given) to put them all to the Sword, the King himſelf hardly eſcaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* ſucceeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* ſet upon him to revenge that ſlaughter. But underſtanding after a long fight of three days continuance, that *Macrinus* had ſlain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him; but were ſo weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Perſians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation the Regal Power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Perſian*, (his Name perhaps ſuggeſting ſome high Thoughts unto him) did ſo well husband the opportunity, that he ſlew *Artabanus* the laſt King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the Royal Seat into *Perſia*. Yet was not this ſo eaſily effected, the *Parthians* notwithſtanding their former loſſes, maintaining another cruel Fight for three days together: ſo difficult was it to vanquiſh that Nation when their Forces were broken; impoſſible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this ſucceſs, ſent a peremptory Embaſſy to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperor, to have all the Provinces of *Aſia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Perſian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not ſo eaſily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to ſuppreſs ſo inſolent an Enemy, marched towards *Perſia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Enemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the firſt was to march into *Media*, the ſecond into *Perſia*, the third himſelf led in the Midway between both, to ſuccour both, or be ſuccoured by both, as occaſion required. But his device ſucceeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Perſians* broken, he with much danger and haſt retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Perſian* Kingdom; the eſtabliſhment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquiſhed, and taken Priſoner by *Sapores*, the ſecond King of this Race. So that now the name of the *Perſian* grew ſo terrible to the *Romans*, that *Conſtantine the Great* tranſplanted many of the Colonies and Gariſons of the *North-weſt* parts of the Empire, into the *Eaſt*, to keep the *Perſian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed alſo the Seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople.* And thus having ſhewn the Beginning and Eſtabliſhment, the Foundation and Building of the new Kingdom of the *Perſians*, take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, until they once more loſt the Soveraignty of their own Nation, and became Slaves again to more barbarous Maſters.

The Fourth *Dynaſty*, or Race of the *Perſian* Kings.

228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
243 2 *Sapores* 31.
274 3 *Ormiſdates* 1.
275 4 *Vararanes* 3.
278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
294 6 *Vararanes* III.
294 7 *Narſes* 7.
302 8 *Miſdates* 7.
310 9 *Sapores* II. 70.
380 10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.
391 11 *Sapores* III. 5.
396 12 *Vararanes* IV. 10.
406 13 *Iſdigertes* 21.
427 14 *Vararanes* V. 20.
447 15 *Vararanes* VI. 17.
464 16 *Perozes* 20.
484 17 *Valens* 4.
488 18 *Cabades*, diſpoſſeſſed by
499 19 *Lambaſes* 4.
503 20 *Cabades*, again reſtored.
533 21 *Coſroes Magnus* 48.
581 22 *Hormiſda* 8.
589 23 *Coſroes* II. 39.
628 24 *Siroës* 1.
629 25 *Adheſir*.
26 *Sarbatus*.
27 *Barnarius*.

630 28 *Hormiſda* II the 28th and laſt King of the Race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynaſty*: of whom beſides the Two firſt Kings, whoſe Acts are ſpoken of before, the moſt remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the ſecond, in whoſe Time *Carus* the Emperor paſſing over *Euphrates*, and laying ſiege to *Cteſiphon*, was there ſlain by a Thunderbolt. 2 *Narſes*, the Son of *Vararanes*, who firſt diſcomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæſars*, in the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to Lacquey it by the Emperor's Chariot in his Purple Robes, was ſo highly ſhamed, that to recover his credit he ſet upon *Narſes* once again, routed him, and took Priſoners his Wives and Children. 3 *Sapores* the ſecond, the Son of *Miſdates*, who began his Reign before his Birth. For his Father dying without Iſſue, left his Wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having ſignified by their Art to be a Male, the *Perſian* Princes cauſed the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be ſet upon his Mother's Belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puiſſant Prince he proved, holding continual War with *Conſtantine*, and his Succeſſors till the death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the beſt parts of *Meſopotamia*: but withal a great Perſecutor of the *Chriſtians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are ſaid to have ſuffered in his time. 4 *Iſdigertes*, a Prince ſo eſteemed of by *Arcadius*, the *Eaſtern* Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodoſius*: which Truſt he royally performed, and was a great Friend unto the *Chriſtians* in his own Dominions. 5 *Cabades*, firſt outed of his Kingdom by *Zamaſpes*, and reſtored again, was the firſt *Perſian* King who permitted the free exerciſe of the *Chriſtian Religion*. He ſlew *Zeliobes*, a King of the *Huns*, coming to his Aid againſt the *Romans*, becauſe he had before promiſed to aſſiſt the Emperor; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his Eſtate. 6 *Coſroes* the Son of *Cabades*, ſirnamed the *Great*, a conſtant Enemy to the *Romans*; from whom he conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and ſacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the War brought home to his own door, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperor, and his own Countries in a flame, he took ſuch thought of it, that he died of a Fever. 7 *Coſroes* the Second, as great an Enemy to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf; moſt of it recover'd by *Heraclius*: in deſpight of whom he cauſed all the *Chriſtians* in his Kingdom to turn *Neſtorians*. 8 *Hormiſda* the ſecond, the laſt of the *Dynaſty*, who being firſt weakned by Civil and Domeſtick diſſentions, was vanquiſhed by *Haumar* and his *Saracens*, *Anno* 634. burying ſo the Glory of this Renowned Nation in the Grave of Oblivion, or at leaſt Subjection.

The *Saracenical Caliphs*, having added this Kingdom to their large Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*; not one Supreme for the whole Kingdom, but ſeveral Governors or *Sultans* for each ſeveral Province: called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Mouzenabar*, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themſelves, and warring upon one another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph* or Lord in chief. During which buſtles it ſo hapned, that *Mahomet*, the *Sultan* of *Perſia* (ſo called becauſe he was the chief in Command and Power) picking a quarrel with his Neighbour the *Sultan of Babylon*, (*Piſaſirus* he is called in ſome *Chriſtian* Writers, by whom taken or miſtaken for the *Caliph* himſelf) made War upon him. But finding him countenanced and ſupported by the power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then poſſeſſed of ſome part of *Armenia Major*, to come to his aid: by whoſe means he overthrew the *Caliph*'s Forces, and might have got the Sovereignty of *Perſia* unto himſelf, if he had uſed his Victory and his Friends with any tolerable diſcretion. But denying to pay theſe *Turks* their Wages, and ſend them home, he occaſioned them to make head againſt him, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom being once in Arms, ſeveral diſcontented perſons of the natural *Perſians*, did unite themſelves. Encouraged with which addition, and being furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, and other neceſſaries, by the ſpoil of the Country, they gave battel to the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having vanquiſhed and ſlain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint conſent of both Armies is made King of *Perſia*, the Founder of

The Fifth Dynaſty, *or the* Turkiſh *Race of the Kings of* Perſia.

1030 1 *Tangrolipix*, of whom ſufficiently before.

2 *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cutlu Moſes*; his near Kinſman was ſent with great Forces againſt the *Chriſtians*; whom he diſpoſſeſſed of a great part of *Aſia Minor*.

3 *Balak*, *Sultan of Perſia*, in the beginning of the Wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*; againſt whom he is reported to have ſent his Forces. Of whoſe Succeſſors I find nothing till the Time of

1198 4 *Caſſanes*, The laſt *King* or *Sultan* of the *Turks*, vanquiſhed in the year 1202. by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axan*, or his next Succeſſor, the *Turks* loſt the Sovereignty of *Perſia*, tho they kept the poſſeſſion of ſome parts of it; the Sovereignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs of Babylon*: and that it was ſo held by both, till the *Tartars* diſpoſſeſſed the one, and deſtroyed the whole Progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the Opinion of *Benjamin Tudelenſis*, a Learned *Jew*, which had travelled moſt part of the *Eaſt*, to whoſe Judgment herein I ſubſcribe as moſt ſound and rational.

The ſixth *Dynaſty*, or the *Tartarian Race* of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1260 1 *Haalon*, or *Ulah-Kubkan*, by *Occata* the great *Cham*, made King of *Perſia*; exterminated the whole Race of the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*.

1266 2 *Habkakaibon*, the Son of *Haalon*.

1282 3 *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton* called *Tangador*, who made himſelf a *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*, the Brother of *Habkakaibon*.

1284 4 *Argon-Khon*, the eldeſt Son of *Habkakaibon*.

1292 5 *Geniotukhon*, Brother of *Argon-Khon*.

1295 6 *Badukhon*, the Uncle of the laſt, of which three there is little memorable.

1296 7 *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial See.

1305 8 *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is ſaid to have been the Founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the Brother of *Gazun*.

1317 9 *Abuſaid*, Son of *Alyaptu*, the laſt of the Race of *Haalon*, that Reigned in *Perſia*. After whoſe death, *Anno* 1337. (being the 736th of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more Potent Princes of the *Tartars* ſeized on the ſeveral Parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himſelf King of that Part or Province which he was Poſſeſſed of. And amongſt them *Gempſus* the *Sultan* or *Souldan* of *Parthia*, (tho' a *Perſian* born) put in for a ſhare, and made himſelf Maſter of his own Province, and ſome parts adjoyning: made on that Ground by ſome of our Chriſtian Writers (who very imperfectly have tranſmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the ſole King of *Perſia*. In this Confuſion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind, driving all before him, compoſed the differences, by getting all unto himſelf. But as Philoſophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; ſo the courſe of Buſineſs, and the ſucceſs of Actions may inſtruct us alſo, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the Command of a Proſperous Army, is not ſo well aſſured to the Victor, but that the fury of the War once paſt, it may return again to its former Liberty, or open a more eaſie paſſage to ſome new Invader. And ſo it fared with the Conqueſts and Succeſſes of *Tamerlane*, whoſe Iſſue quickly loſt this Kingdom, and almoſt all the reſt of his other Purchaſes: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in Cantoning his Eſtates among his Children; and partly by the weakneſs of his Succeſſors in the Realm of *Perſia*, this Kingdom did relapſe immediately to the ſame confuſions in which he found it; having almoſt as many Sovereign Kings as Provinces Moſt of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the Houſe of *Tamerlane*, and thoſe who afterwards Succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Perſia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynaſty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithſtanding the great and proſperous ſucceſſes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Perſia*, (and well enough content with that:) ſuch as they were, we find them in this order following.

1405 10. *Mirza Charock*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded by his appointment in the Realm of *Perſia*.

1447 11 *Oleghbegh*, Son of *Mirza Charock*, vanquiſhed and ſlain by his own Son.

1450 12 *Abdalatiſe*, ſlain not long after by his Soldiers.

1451 13 *Abdulla* the Son of *Oleghbegh*, and Brother of *Abdalatiſe*, vanquiſhed by

1453 14 *Abuſaid* II. deſcended from *Moroncha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded on the death of *Abdulla*.

1461 15 *Zeuzes*, whom ſome call *Jooncha*, others, *Malaonchres*, diſcomfited and ſlain in Battel by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, *Anno* 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The ſeventh *Dynaſty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1472 1 *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, by ſome called *Aſymbeyus*, by others more truly *Ozem-Azambeck*, was the Son of *Tracbeton*, one of thoſe poor *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* Princes, diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* the Firſt, and reſtored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his Neighbours, he was warned to deſiſt by *Zeuzes*, laſt *Perſian* King; with whom encountring in a pitch'd Field, he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.

1478 2 *Jacub*, the ſecond Son of *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and repulſed the *Mamalucks* out of *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, which they had Invaded. He was after Poyſoned by his Wiſe.

1490 3 *Julavar*, A Kinſman of *Jacub*'s ſucceeded him in the Eſtate; which he held only three years, and then left it to

1493 4 *Baiſinger*, A Prince of the ſame Blood; who living in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacub*, had conſpired his death. 2.

1495 5 *Ruſtan*, Aſſaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* Faction, who then began to be of power.

1498 6 *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the laſt King of this *Turcoman*, or *Armenian* Race; firſt vanquiſhed *Secaider* at the Battel of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and ſlain by *Hyſmael* the ſon of *Aider*, on the quarrel and occaſion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impoſtor, and firſt Emperor of the *Saracens*, by his Laſt Will and Teſtament, bequeathed the ſucceſſion of that Eſtate to *Hali* his near Kinſman, and Husband of *Fatima* his eldeſt daughter. But *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Oſman*, three powerful men, and the chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, ſucceſſively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, ſupplanted firſt, and afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Muhavias*, a great Man of War, who ſucceeded in it: and to ſecure himſelf therein, ſlew *Haſem* or *Oſſen*, the ſon of *Hali*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Oſſan* XII. called *Muſa Ceredine*, eſcaping with life. From him deſcended lineally one *Guine*, the Lord of *Ardoville* in *Media*; who conſidering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the eſtabliſhing of that high honour in his own Family, as the right heirs to it. A man of ſo great reputation among the People, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conqueſt of *Perſia*, thought it no diſhonour to his greatneſs to beſtow a friendly viſit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his Son, called *Aider*, who afterwards for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word ſo ſignifying in that Language: who alſo prov'd of ſuch eſteem and power with all ſorts of men, that *Uſſan Caſſanes*, the firſt King of the *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* Race, thought fit to make him Husband to one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the Son of *Uſſan*, and ſome of his Succeſſors, ſeeing him grow unto ſuch power and eſtimation with the common People; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depreſs him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the caſe then ſtood, practiſed to add unto his Party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiſs in their Religion; and grew ſo powerful in the end, that he gave Battel unto *Ruſtan* and *Alamat*, the two laſt Kings of the former Race. But *Alamat* having got the Victory, cauſed him to be ſlain; and delivered *Hyſmael* and *Solyman* his two Sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual Priſon. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious diſpoſition, afforded them not only liberty, but alſo good education: inſomuch that *Hyſmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook Revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and ſlain King *Alamat*, and his Son *Elvan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King or *Shaugh* of *Perſia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali* and himſelf the true Succeſſors of *Mahomet*, but condemning *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Oſman*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schiſmaticks*.

Hence proceeded the Bloody Wars, which to the *Perſians* loſs, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Perſians* burning whatſoever Book or Monument they find concerning thoſe three; and the *Turks* holding it more Meritorious to kill one *Perſian* than ſeventy *Chriſtians*: *Surius* in his Commentaries, writing purpoſely of the acts of *Hyſmael*, ſaith, that the *Jews* on ſome fond conceit, were perſwaded that he was the *Meſſia* they had ſo long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being a Prince that more vexed and grieved 'em.

The 8th *Dynaſty*, or *Sophian* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1505 1 *Hyſmael Sophi*, the Founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the Firſt, in the *Calderan* Fields. 20. The Father of this Prince was one *Aidar*, a *Cheik*, or *Lawyer*, and this *Iſmael Sophi* was the 3*d.* Son of *Aidar*, and became King of *Perſia* by the Conqueſt of *Azimont* his Maſter near *Tauris*

1525 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyſmael*, vanquiſhed by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldæa*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with ſome part of *Media*. 53.

1578 3 *Aider*, the 2*d* Son of *Tamas* obtain'd the Kingdom, Impriſoning his Elder Brother; but his Cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona* his own Siſter, having only Reigned fifteen days.

4 *Hyſmael* II. Eldeſt Son of *Tamas*, reſtored unto his Father's Throne; but Murdered with the privity of his Siſter alſo, who found him of too rough a nature for her to Govern; having Reigned near two years.

1579 5 *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced to the Throne by his Siſter's Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his firſt entrance cauſed her to be Beheaded for the former Murders. During his time, not fully ſetled in the State, *Amurath* III. by his Lieutenants won from him almoſt all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.

1585 6 *Abas*, the 2*d* Son of *Mahomet*, having Treacherouſly practiſed the death of *Mirza*, his elder Brother, ſucceeded his Father, recovered almoſt all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candahor*, and *Hircania*, to the Crown of *Perſia*. This Prince, by the help of the *Engliſh* won the ſtrong City of *Ormus* from the *Portugueſe*, in the Year 1622. After which he opened a Trade to all Nations by Sea and Land into his Kingdom, which has at once enriched and ſoftned this once Martial Nation.

1628 7 *Sophy*, the Nephew of *Abus* by his Son *Mirza*. (whoſe eyes he cauſed to be put out on a falſe ſuſpicion) at the Age of fifteen years ſucceeded: committed by his Grandfather during his Minority, to the Protection of *Emangoli*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shiras*. A Prince, who ſince he came to Age hath had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in the time of *Abas*. In the Year 1638. the *Turks* won the City of *Bagdat*, ſoon after which there was a Peace made between the *Turks* and *Perſians*, which has laſted ever ſince.

1642 8 *Sha Abas* II.

1666 9 *Sha Sephi*, or *Sophi* II. The now Reigning King of *Perſia*. Theſe two laſt Princes have had no Wars with the *Turks*, and have been ſo Bridled by the *Moguls* on the other ſide, that they have not attempted to recover *Bagdat* from the *Turks*, but have like the *Turks*, degenerated into a ſoft, effeminate Sloth, which hath in a great degree unmanned this once fierce Nation.

The Government of theſe *Perſian* Kings, tho' it be *Deſpotical* and Severe, hath a great deal leſs of the Tyrant in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: theſe cheriſhing their Brethren, maintaining Nobility among them, and incouraging Induſtry; which makes them to be better ſerved than the *Turk*, or *Tartar*: to both whom they are far inferior both in Power and Treaſure. Their Officers of State, and Men of principal Imployment, for the moſt part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the Eaſt:) ſuch perſons being thought moſt truſty, becauſe abſtracted from the obligations of Wife and Children, they ſtudy more the Princes Service than their own advantages. Their Forces conſiſt moſt of Horſe, to which they are inclined more generally, than to ſerve on Foot, and yet the greateſt Body of Horſe which they have brought at any time into the Field, came not to above 30000; but thoſe well furniſhed and appointed; maintain'd on Lordſhips and Eſtates after the manner of the *Turkiſh Timariots*. The Foot Soldiers of his own Countries but poor and raw, and very ſeldom ſtand their ground; that defect being for the moſt part ſupplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconveniency of which being found by Sultan *Abas*, he ſerved himſelf of Children bought of *Chriſtian* Parents near the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian* Sultans had their *Mamalucks*,) whom they call by the name of *Cozal-Baſſas*, or *Red-Caps* ſo nam'd from the colour of their Turbants; trained up by them in their Religion and Warlike Diſcipline, as the *Turks* their *Janizaries*; yet far inferior to the *Turks*, againſt whom if they have prevailed ſince the time of *Abas*, they may aſcribe the greateſt part of their good fortune to thoſe Diviſions and Rebellions, which in theſe late times have been frequent in the *Turkiſh* Empire. And as for their Sea-Forces, they are inconſiderable. For tho' they have large Sea-coaſts both on the *Perſian* Bay, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the *Southern* Ocean; yet are they very poor in Shipping: ſuffering the *Muſcovite* to ingroſs the Trade of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the Southern Ocean; as formerly that alſo of the *Perſian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hiſmael* the firſt *Sophy*, were exceeding great: inſomuch that *Tamas* his Succeſſor, to ingratiate himſelf with all ſorts of People, releaſed them of all kinds of Cuſtoms impoſed on Merchandiſe, either imported, or exported. And this amounted to 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a Million and 800000 Crowns of annual income, which notwithſtanding, his Revenue was computed at 4 or 5000000 of Crowns yearly; raiſed out of *Demain* Lands, the *tenth* of Fruits, the profit of Mines, and the Fine paid by every Subject when he ſets up Shop. But *Tamas* finding this not ſufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his Money, and thereby for the preſent, his Revenue alſo. Since that they have been much impaired by the Conqueſt made on them by the *Turks*, who got from them ſo much Land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*; and yielded to the *Grand Seignoir* one Million of yearly income: whether improved again to their former height, I cannot determine. *Tavernier*, a great man, that Travell'd through theſe Countries, obſerves, that the *Turks*, *Perſians*, and *Moguls* having taken all propriety from their Subjects, they muſt all three, ſooner or later fall to Ruin and Deſolation, p. 73. 'Tis certain that the *Turks* have deſolated all their *Aſiatick* Provinces to that degree, that they are able to contribute little to the preſervation of themſelves, or the reſt of his Dominions; but are over-run by the wild *Arabs*, who pay him little or no Tribute, and not much Service, but Rob and Spoil his Subjects almoſt as far as the *Archipelago*; whereas in the *Roman*'s time, they ſcarce ever entred into *Syria* or *Paleſtine*, but were forc'd to lurk in their own Deſarts, tho' they ſometimes made Incurſions into theſe, then Richer and more Populous Countries. It may be ſuppoſed that *Perſia* and *Indoſtan*, but eſpecially the latter, are equally depopulated, and by conſequence prepared for Ruin, according to that *French* Gentleman's obſervation, tho' by other means, of which I ſhall give an account in *Indoſtan*. *Perſia* is however the beſt Peopled of the three, and in the beſt ſtate, but they are ſtrangely unmann'd by a long Peace with all their Neighbours, for they have had in a manner no War ſince that of *Candahar* in 1651. In which *Abas* II. defeated an Army of *Moguls* of 300000 men. This loſs has ever ſince been a curb upon that Nation: and *Mahomet* IV. the laſt Grand Seigneur of the *Turks*, was an unwarlike Prince that never engaged againſt the *Perſians*; ſo that this Nation hath moſtly apply'd themſelves to Manufactures and Husbandry; are now become very Populous and Rich, beyond the *Turks*, or the People of *Indoſtan*.

And ſo much for *Perſia*.

OF TARTARY.

TARTARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *China*, the *Oriental* Ocean, and the Streights of *Anian*, (if ſuch Streights there be) by which parted from *America*, or rather from the *Terra de Jeſſai*, or *Jeſſo*, diſcovered by the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company in the Years 1652. and 1653. which is not certainly known, whether it is a Part of *America*, or a Part of *Aſia*, or a Part of another Continent, towards the *North* Pole, of vaſt extent; Parts of which have been diſcovered in the Latitude of 59. and bend to the N. E. on the back of *Iſeland*, where it has been diſcovered in the Lat. of 64. and 65. and in the Lat. of 75. and in the Lat of 77. and ſo Northward to 80 degrees, over againſt the *North* Cape of *Finmark*, and may probably be ſuppoſed to ſurround the *Samoieds*, and here ſhoot it ſelf to the Southward again, a part of which *Japan* is ſuppoſed to be; and more to the Weſtward the *Terra de Jeſſai*, which was found to lie in the Latitude of 50. in the Years abovesaid. It is commonly called *Greenland* by the *Engliſh*, *Spitzberg* by the *Dutch*, but may more properly be called the *North* Continent, equal to any of the other Parts of the World; and disjoyned from *Aſia* and *America* as well as from *Europe*. See *Iſaaci Voſſii variæ Obſervationes*, pag. 187. *Lond.* 1685. *4to.* On the Weſt with *Ruſſia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and on the South with part of *China*, from which ſeparated by a mighty Wall, ſome part of *India*, the River *Oxus* parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Perſian* Provinces; the *Caſpian* Sea, which ſeparates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucaſian* Mountains interpoſing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puiſſant and mighty People now poſſeſſed hereof; the reaſon of whoſe Name we ſhall ſhew hereafter.

It containeth all thoſe great and ſpacious Provinces, which the Ancients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, the greateſt part of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*: extending it ſelf the whole length of *Aſia*, from the River *Tanais*, to the *Eaſtern* Ocean; taking in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, and ſome other parts of *Europe* alſo. So that if we meaſure it by Miles, it is ſaid to contain 5400 from Eaſt to Weſt, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkiſh* Empire, but of leſs fertility and accompt.

In meaſuring by the way of Degrees, it reacheth from the 50 Degree of *Longitude*, to the 195, which is 145 Degrees from Weſt to Eaſt: and from the 40*th* Degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 8*th*, which is within 10 Degrees of the *Pole* it ſelf. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the fixth *Clime*, where the longeſt day in Summer is 15 hours, till they ceaſe meaſuring by *Climates*, the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts hereof, being full ſix months; and in the Winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under ſuch different *Meridians*, and ſuch diſtant *Climes*, muſt needs be ſuch, as no general *Character* can be given of it; and therefore we ſhall defer that, with the names of the Rivers and chief Mountains, to the deſcription of the ſeveral and particular Provinces. But for the People, being much of the ſame nature in every part, we may take the meaſure of them here. Affirmed to be of ſquare Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noſes, ugly countenances, ſwart of complexion, not ſo much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural ſluttiſhneſs. Barbarous everv where in behaviour, eſpecially in thoſe parts which they call *Aſiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withal very ſtrong of body, ſwift of foot, vigilant in time of ſervice, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The Women ſuitable to the Men, ſcorning or wanting Ornaments to ſet themſelves out; or when they do, they ſeldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or ſuch precious *Gew-gaws*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was ſaid; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of Revenge; firſt letting out their Blood, which they receive into *Cups*, and uſe it as Wine unto the feaſt. Though ſwift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen; about whoſe necks, as about Horſes, when they travel, they uſe little Bells, with which *Muſick* they are much delighted. Their *ſpeech*, even in their common talk, is a kind of *whining*, and their ſinging little better than the *howling* of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwaſhed hands, the dirt and greaſe about their fingers ſerving as a ſauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink uſe Mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the courſeſt ſtuff, and reaching no lower than the knee; and if they go to the charge of Furs, contrary to the cuſtom of other People, they wear the hairy ſide outwards, and the Skin next their own bodies; only to ſhew the richneſs of their Apparel. And yet ſo proud in this beggery, that they account the *Chriſtians* but as Dogs, contemn all the reſt of the world, and think their *Cham* the only conſiderable Prince; by whoſe name they *ſwear*, as by their Gods.

In matter of *Religion* it is hard to ſay, whether *Mahometaniſm* or *Paganiſm*, be of moſt extent: ſome parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, ſome wholly *Mahometan*, and ſome mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the *elder* houſe, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongſt them, 'till the year 1246.

And yet theſe have not ſo prevailed, as to extinguiſh the remainders of *Chriſtianity*, of which there are amongſt them many ſeveral *Churches*. The *Chriſtian* Faith firſt planted amongſt the *Scythians*, by the Preaching of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Philip*, two of the Apoſtles. Overgrown in theſe latter Ages by the Sect of *Neſtorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to inſtruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, beſides the *Circaſſian* Chriſtians, of whom more anon, there are in the moſt remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdoms of that *Religion*; as namely that of *Tenduc*, then the chief of all: beſides ſome numbers of them in *Tanguth*, *Cauchinteles*, *Caſſar*, *Samarchan*, *Karthim*, *Suchair*, *Ergimul*, and *Caraiam*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who ſurveyed theſe parts about the year 1270. they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not ſo diminiſhed ſince the Conqueſt of thoſe Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a conſiderable number, eſpecially in *Cathay* it ſelf: where they are ſaid to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambalu*, (the principal City of that Empire) and he to be ſo honoured by the *Great Cham*, that for a time they received their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, ſaid to be the off-ſpring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanaſſar* led away Captive; and that eſpecially for three reaſons. The firſt is, that the word *Tartari*, by which name (ſaith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, ſignifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* Tongues, a Remnant. But unto this it is anſwered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as ſome; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they firſt dwelt, as moſt think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* word רהוהר ſignifie a *Remnant*, yet can it not properly be applied to the *Tartars*; who ſo infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof hereof, that this people uſe *Circumciſion*, the Character of the *Jewiſh* Nation. And hereunto it is Replyed, that *Circumciſion* was common to many People, beſides the *Jews*, as to the *Ægyptians*, *Æthiopians*, *&c.* and that rather as a National Cuſtom, than a Religious Ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *Circumciſion*, before they received *Mahometaniſm*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this Opinion, a place of *Eſdras*, *cap.* 13. *lib.* 2. where it is ſaid, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep God's Statutes) paſſed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Country called *Arſareth*. To refell which, thoſe of the contrary Opinion find no better courſe, than by ſhewing the impoſſibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was firſt known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, obſerved not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewiſh* Religion: and ſo the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep God's Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite Weſt from *Aſſyria*, and thoſe places to which *Salmanaſſar* tranſplanted the *Iſraelites*; and ſo it could not be paſſed over in a journey towards the North. And thirdly, it is very improbable, that the Ten Tribes ſhould either be ſo ſimple, as to leave *Aſſyria*, where they were peaceably ſettled, or ſo Valiant as to force a paſſage through thoſe Countries of *Scythia*, which neither *Perſians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans*, were able to withſtand in the beſt of their Fortunes.

To let paſs therefore all imaginations of a Foreign Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who preſſed by want, or otherwiſe oppreſſed by the King of *Tenduc*, unto whom they were ſubject, Armed themſelves againſt him, obtained a memorable Victory, and ſettled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, *Anno* 1202. After which, growing of more power, and inlarging their Dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations; as *Mahomet* did thoſe of the three *Arabia's*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many ſeveral Tribes of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many greet and ſignal Victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212, within very little of which time they had made themſelves Maſters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greateſt glories. But being of a haſty growth, it decayed as ſuddenly; the greateſt part of their *Europæan* purchaſes, being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Muſcovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*, as their acqueſts in *Aſia*, and *Africk*, by the *Turks* and *Perſians*. Yet ſtill are they poſſeſſed of ſo large a Territory, that were they not diſtracted into ſeveral States; or did thoſe ſeveral States depend upon one *Supreme*, that one *Supreme* might very eaſily give Law unto all his Neighbours, and make the *Turks* and *Perſians* Tributaries, as in former times. The Curious Reader that would willingly farther inform himſelf of this People, may have recourſe to Mr. *Hackluyt's* Collection of Voyages, *Tom.* 1. where he will find the Voyage of *Joannes de Plano Carpini*, ſent Ambaſſador to them in 1246. *pag.* 21. And that *William de Rubruquis* a *Minor* Fryer ſent to them in 1253. *pag.* 71. Of late years the *Great Cham* has Conquerd *China*, and his Dominions extend from the *Chinean Ocean* to the River *Obb*; where he is bounded to the Weſt by the *Great Duke* of *Ruſſia*, of which I ſhall ſpeak more in *China*. But laying aſide theſe ſpeculations of what they might do, if united under one command, let us now look upon them as they are divided into theſe five parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Tartaria Precopenſis*, 2. *Aſiatica*, 3. *Antiqua*, 4. *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. *TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.*

Chrim-Tartars.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the Weſt, with the River *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nieper*, by which laſt parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with *Ruſſia*; and on the South, with ſome part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the Name of *Precopenſis* from *Precopia*, a chief Town thereof. By ſome called *Tartaria Minor*, to diſtinguiſh it from the greater body of that People: the Inhabitants hereof moſt commonly paſſing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Cham* or Emperour doth reſide moſt uſually. The Country by them now poſſeſſed, part anciently of *Sarmatia Europæa*, was Inhabited by a Warlike Nation, called the *Tauri*: from whom thoſe parts hereof which lye betwixt the Empire of *Ruſſia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Boryſthenes*, were called *Tauro-Scythia*; that which ſhooteth out into the Sea, encompaſſed with the *Euxine* on the one ſide, and *Palus Mæotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Cherſoneſus*. In the Deſcription whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with ſome part of *Aſia*, to lay together the Eſtate of the *Ruſſian* Empire: ſo now to ſatisfie for that treſpaſs, I ſhall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the diſcourſe and affairs of *Tartary*.

The whole Country plentiful of Fruits, and the Soil indifferently diſpoſed to Tillage and Grazing, though more accuſtomed unto the laſt: the people more delighting in their Herds of Cattel, than in the fulneſs of their Garners. Camels, Horſe, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great ſtore of delicate Fowl, and abundance of Fiſh, bred in the large Fens of *Mæotis*: and in their Foreſts plenty of all ſorts of Veniſon. Which *Character* as it belongeth generally to all the Country, ſo moſt eſpecially to the *Cherſoneſe*, or Demy-Iſland. United to the main Land with ſo narrow an *Iſthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow; from whence ſome ſay they had the name of *Precopenſes*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, ſignifying a deep Trench, or digging through. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Bleſt with a very temperate Air, and a gentle Winter: which beginning with the laſt of *December*, ends the firſt of *March*. Never extreme; and when the froſts are at the ſharpeſt, but of ſhort continuance. Divided in the midſt with a Chain of Hills, extended from the Eaſt to the Weſt; the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the ſame complexion and compoſition as the reſt of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their Diet, Roots, Cheeſe, Garlick; and of the poorer ſort, for the moſt part Horſe-fleſh, (none but the better ſort preſuming upon Beef or Veniſon, though of both abundance) which they eat without Bread, or any thing elſe: and therefore when they go to the Wars, every Souldier takes two Horſes with him, the one to ſerve upon, and the other to kill: And yet for all this havock which they make of Horſe-fleſh, there are few years in which they ſell not 40 or 50 thouſand in the Fairs of *Moſco.* Towns they build none, ſcarce willing to maintain thoſe which were built to their hands. Nor have they (except men of Trades and *Manufactures*) any ſtanding houſes; removing up and down with their droves of Cattel, moving their houſes with them (which they build on wheels) from one place to another. Of Money they make no eſteem, preferring Braſs and Steel before other Metals; becauſe more uſeful to them for Swords and Knives. Good Souldiers for the moſt part, eſpecially at the *Bow* and *Arrows*; to which ſo accuſtomed from their Childhood, that they can ſhoot as readily backward as forward. Trained alſo of late times to the *Harquebuſe*, well skilled in handling the *Turkiſh Scymeters*, and their Horſemen's Staves. Not to be vanquiſhed but by death, as men that are reſolved rather to die than be taken *Priſoners:* and if Victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (eſpecially young Boys and Girls, whom they ſell to the *Turks*) than upon any other booty or ſpoils of War.

The *Religion* moſt embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, mingled with ſome of their old Principles of *Chriſtianity*: for they confeſs that CHRIST ſhall be the *Judge both of the quick and dead* in the day of Judgment; and puniſh thoſe that ſpeak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Chriſtians* than other *Mahometans*; which makes great ſtore of *Grecian* and *Armenian* Chriſtians to dwell amongſt them. The Language which they ſpeak is their own *Tartatrian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick* and *Turkiſh* Tongues, and when they write, they uſe either *Chaldean*, or *Arabian* Characters. See Sir *John Chardin. pag.* 67.

Rivers of moſt note in it, are 1. *Boryſthenes*, and 2. *Tanais*, which though they have their ſpring-heads in the Empire of *Ruſſia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the firſt in the *Euxine*, in the 57th, the other into *Palus Mæotis* in the 67th degree of *Longitude*; by which we may conjecture ſomewhat of the length of the Country. 3. *Hipanes.* 4. *Carcimitis*, falling into the *Euxine.* 5. *Agaris*, and 6. *Byces*, which loſe themſelves in the Fens of *Mæotis*; as do alſo 7. *Paſiaſcus*, 8. *Gerus.* 9. *Lycus*, from the main Land; and 10. *Iſtrianus* from the *Taurican Cherſoneſe.* By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling into the *Aſian* ſide, the Lake or Fens of *Mæotis* are of great extent, in compaſs at leaſt a thouſand Miles; well ſtored with Fiſh, and ſtill retaining ſomewhat of ſweetneſs of thoſe many Rivers which are emptied into it. So called from the *Mæote*, who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof; and giving name to all excellent kind of Fiſh which were called *Mæotides* by the Ancients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zababe*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the Sea of *Tanais*, and ſometimes alſo *Mer Bianco*, or the white Sea, to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reaſons formerly delivered. Paſſing directly towards the South, it is ſtreightned by a narrow-Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24 in length, called anciently by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*; *Boſphorus*, becauſe Oxen did uſe to ſwim over; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who poſſeſſed the adjoyning Countrey on the *Aſian* ſide: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*, from the City *Capha* near unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Voſpero*, more near the Original. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Mæotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine*, according to that of *Lucan.*

Quaque Fretum currens Mæotidas *egerit undas.*
Where the *Mæotick* Pool at laſt
Thorow a narrow Streight makes haſt.

Chief Cities of it at preſent, 1. *Capha*, or *Caffa*, in the *Cherſoneſe*, not far from the Streight, called hence *Stretto de Caffa*; a flouriſhing Empory, and furniſhed with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North ſide of *Conſtantinople*, engroſſed into their own hands the whole Trade of the *Euxine.* Taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, *Anno* 1475. it became ſubject to the *Turks*, and drew into that thraldom all the Southern parts of the *Cherſoneſe*, which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greateſt part of its former luſtre, the *Chriſtian* Churches being deſtroyed, the Towers and publick buildings razed; the houſes of *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautiful, deſtroyed and ruined: yet ſtill the principal of this *Biland*, or Demy-Iſland; and anciently better known by the name of *Theodoſia*, and by that name remembred in *Ammianus.* Sir *John Chardin*, who ſaw this City, ſaith it is a great Town built at the foot of a ſmall hill upon the Sea Shoar, ſtretching *N.* and *S.* and having ſtrong walls which end in the Sea both ways; ſo that it appeareth at Sea in the form of an half Moon. On the South it hath a Caſtle which is the Seat of the *Turkiſh Baſha.* It is thought to have 4000 Houſes, 800 of which are Inhabited by Chriſtians. The Lands about it are dry and ſandy, and the Water not good, but the Air is very pure, proviſions are very cheap, but the fruits unpleaſant. He ſaw in 40 days whileſt he was here 400 Sail of Ships go out and come in. Their Trade conſiſts in Salt-Fiſh, Corn, Butter, and Cheeſe, all of it driven by the *Turks* and *Jews.* The *Venetians* in 1672. were denied a Trade here. *Chardin, pag.* 67. *Tavernier, pag.* 113. and 115. 2. *Precoph*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*; a Town and Caſtle ſituate in or near the place, where ſtood the *Eupateria* of the Ancients, called alſo *Pompeiopolis*, *Heraclea*, *Achillis Curſus*, and *Iſthmus*, and ſo commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of *Mæotis*, as *Corinth* betwixt the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas. This City is built on the neck of Land which joyns the *Peninſula* to the Continent, and is the Bulwark to all the reſt; and therefore the *Ruſs* have often attempted to gain it, but they could never get up to it by reaſon of the great diſtance, and deſolate Lands between them and this Town; ſo that the Summer is ſpent before their Armies can march ſo far; I have not yet met with any Traveller that hath given any account of the preſent ſtate of it. 3. *Corſunum*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Ptolomy*, anciently a *Greek Colony*; and then accounted for the chief of the whole *Peninſula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by reaſon of the Haven which was ſafe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins teſtifie. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari-Germanum*, or the *Yellow Tower*, the ſoyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *German* or *Crim*, the ancient Seat of the *Chams*, or Princes of theſe *Tartars*; and at that time the faireſt and greateſt of this *Biland*: Scituate in the midſt hereof, and fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, for the height of the Walls, and depth of the ditch eſteemed impregnable: ſuppoſed to be the *Taphræ* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Ptolomy*: Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by ſome *Roman* Emperour, and ſo moſt likely to be *Trajan*, the firſt that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Danubius*, and the *Euxine*: Scituate in the very Center of the *Peninſula*, equally diſtant from *Perecop* and *Caffa*; *Baudrand* ſaith, upon what authority I know not, that it is very ſmall now, and not much better than a Village: what the Reverend Author ſaith of the ſcituation of this place belongs to *Perecop.* 5. *Panticapæum*, ſcituate on the very *Boſphorus*, and now called *Voſpero* by the Natives: the ancienteſt City of this *Peninſula*, and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greek* Colonies, which were planted in it. 9. *Tanas*, the *Tanais* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients, becauſe ſcituate on the mouth of that River; or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, diſtant from one another a degree of *Longitude.* A Town of great Trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all thoſe Countries, which border on the *Euxine* Sea: but ſubject to the *Turks*, who have there a Garriſon, and by them called *Azac* and *Aſoph*; it has a large Haven, and a ſtrong Caſtle which ſtands upon the River; in the year 1569, when the *Turks* went to the Siege of *Aſtracan*, the heavy Cannon were ſent by Sea to this City, and were intercepted by the *Ruſs* before they came to the Camp at *Aſtracan*; which ruined the *Turkiſh* deſign and Army. *Guagninus* Hiſt. *Poland.* In 1638 it was taken by the *Ruſs*, and upon a falſe accuſation it coſt *Cyrillus Lucaris*, then Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, his Life. The *Ruſs* enjoyed it quietly till 1641, when it was beſieged with the loſs of 11000 *Turks* and not taken: The next year the *Turks* returned with a greater Army and Fleet, and the *Czar* of *Ruſſia* refuſing to aid his own *Coſſacks*, then poſſeſſed of the Town, it was pillaged, burnt, diſmantled, and left an heap of Rubbiſh before the *Turks* came up, and ſo then retired. The *Turks* immediately fell to the repair of it. It is, ſaith my Author, built on the ſide of an hill, in form four ſquare, 1200 paces about, fortified with ancient Walls, flanked with capacious Towers, and having a Caſtle in the middle on the waterſide, which divideth the City into two parts; but the Garriſon was not above 400 men when it was taken from the *Turks*. Heretofore it was a well-traded Mart, but was then an unregarded Frontier. Sir *Paul Rycaut*'s continuation of the *Turkiſh* Hiſtory, *pag.* 35.52. and 53.7. *Ingermenum*; ſcituate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Caſtle of ſtone; under which there is a Church, with great Charge and Art cut of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decayed and ruinous. 8. *Jamboli*, by ſome called *Belachium*. 9. *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutum*. 10. *Circum*; all boaſting of their ſeveral Caſtles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*, ſcituate near the influx of the great River *Boryſthenes*, into the Bay of *Carcimitis*, and ſo moſt like to be built in the place of that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Olbia*; *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*: Honoured of late times (ſince the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the reſidence of the *Great Cham*: from whence theſe *Tartars* are by ſome called *Olſenenſes*. This is (ſaith *Gaugninus*) at this day a City, and has a Caſtle Garriſon'd by the *Turks*, tho' the *Precopenſian Tartars* inhabit the City. Whether it be the *Axiate* of *Ptolomy* I know not; but the preſent Pile was certainly built by *Vitoldus* Duke of *Lithuania*, a Colony of his Subjects planted in it. Thus far he. Near this City, in 1644, the *Poles* gave the *Tartars* a great overthrow. It lies 40 *Poliſh* miles from *Perecop* to the Weſt. 12. *Metropolis*, as *Ptolomy*, or rather *Melit opilis*, as *Pliny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Mileſians*, not far from *Olbia*. Beſides all which, and many others mentioned by the ancient Writers, of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the *Great Cham* in Summer time makes a moveable City, built upon *Wheel-houſes*, and tranſported from one place to another, as occaſion ſerveth; which houſes at every ſtation are orderly diſpoſed of into Streets and Lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carts.

The reaſon why there is ſo few Towns or Cities in *Tartary*, is from that Nation's way of living; they rove about a large and ſpacious Country, and imploy themſelves in nothing but War, Rapine, feeding Cattle, which is their only Treaſure; and Fiſhing. They will curſe their Children in their Anger, *May you live in one place till the ſtench of your Dung comes up into your Noſtrils.* No part of the Country is ſettled or divided to any man, but lies all in common to the whole Nation. They have no Manufactures, no Trade, but for Horſes and Slaves; and they ſell not only what they take in War, but their own Children, and what they can ſteal from their Neighbour *Clans*. They have no Husbandry, ſow no Corn, eat no Bread, wear nothing but skins of beaſts, and a courſe Cloath which they make themſelves, and imploy a great part of it in coverings for their Tents. They never built any one of the Towns or Cities in their Country, but they in the *Peninſula* were built by the *Greeks* and *Genoeſe*, and thoſe on the *Nieper* by the *Lithuanians*. When Chriſtianity prevailed amongſt the old *Scythians* ſome Towns and Cities were built, but about the year 1200 the irruption of the *Tartars* ruined all. So that what the Reverend Dr. *Heylin* ſaith of the Towns and Cities in *Tartary*, is tranſcribed from ancient Hiſtories, and is not true of them at this day. *Caffa*, *Azac* or *Aſoph*, and *Ocſacow*, are kept up by the *Turks* and not by the *Tartars*, who might have theſe Towns if they would, but they do not deſire them. The *Ruſs* have prevailed greatly againſt the *Tartars* by nothing more than the building Forts and ſtrong holds in their Country; and from thence making incurſions on them, till they forced them to ſubmit, and then by degrees Civilizing them. The *Ruſs* Nation have an infinite number of theſe *Tartar* Slaves in all places; and one of the beſt things that can poſſibly be done for the *Engliſh*, in the great ſcarcity of People brought upon us by our weſtern Plantations, were to paſs firſt an Act of Parliament, for the reviving *Vilenage*, and the enjoying them and their Children; and then the entering into a Treaty with the *Czar* of *Ruſſia*, for a liberty to export them. The reaſon why I mention this here, is becauſe they are an hardy people, and are fitter for our cold Climate than the *Negroes*; and might in a ſhort time be taught to till our Lands, and they would be cheaper fed and maintained every way than our *Engliſh* can be, and be more at command: and by mixing them with *Negroes* we might in a few years have a great plenty of Servants, and our own people might be imployed in Navigation, Manufactures, and the governing and overſeeing theſe Servants; and without this our Nation will be deſolated, and our Husbandry, and conſequently our Nobilty and our Gentry, will be ruin'd. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* Race; for by that name elder Writers call not only the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both ſides of *Imaus*; but even the *Sauromatæ* or *Sarmatians* alſo; and thoſe not only of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, bordering next unto them; but even ſuch *Europœan* Nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Iſther*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And ſo they are affirmed to be by *Ptolomy* himſelf; though otherwiſe more exact than any, in diſtinguiſhing *Sarmatia Europæa* from *Aſiatica*, and *Aſiatica* from the *Scythians*. For ſpeaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, inhabiting on the *Palus Mæotis*, he ranks them thus, Καὶ παρ᾽ ὅλην τὴν πλευρὰν τῆς Μαιώτιδος, &c. *i. e.* and all along the Coaſts of *Mæotis*, dwell the *Jazyges* (diſtinct from thoſe called *Metanaſtæ*) and the *Rhoxolani*; and more within the Land, the *Hamaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Cherſoneſe* it ſelf, dwell the ancient *Tauri*, ſubdivided into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi* and *Arinchi*; by the ſaid *Ptolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro Scythæ*. To none but theſe, of all the *Europæan Sarmatians*, doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been thoſe *Scythians*, againſt whom *Darius* King of *Perſia* made his fruitleſs war. Picking a quarrel with this People, becauſe their King had denied to give him one of his Daughters to Wife; or to revenge, as others more probably ſay, the inrode which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Aſia*, he drew together an Army of 700 thouſand. Paſſing over the *Thracian Boſphorus*, he came at laſt to the banks of *Iſther*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the paſſage of his men cauſed a Bridge to be built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots, commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houſes. This done, he marched towards his Enemies, who ſtill fled before him, leading him into the moſt deſart and unhabitable parts of their Country, and when they had brought him into a ſtreight, ſent Embaſſadours to him with a *Bird*, a *Mouſe*, a *Frog*, and an handfull of Arrows; willing the *Perſians*, if they could, to expound that *Riddle*. *Darius*, willing to hope the beſt of his deſign, conjectured that the *Scythians* did ſubmit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, *Hieroglyphically* ſignified in their Preſent: But *Gobrias*, one of their ſeven *Princes*, made this Expoſition, That if the *Perſians* could not fly like a *Bird* thorow the Air, or like a *Mouſe* creep under the Earth, or like a *Frog* ſwim over the Water, they could by no means eſcape the *Scythian* Arrows. And to ſay truth this *Commentary* beſt agreed with the *Text*. For theſe *Scythians* following cloſe upon him, or rather driving him before, and vexing him with continual skirmiſhes, forced him to make ſuch haſte to get over the River, that he loſt 80000 of his men in fight and flight. This was the only memorable Action of theſe *Europæan Scythians* in thoſe elder ages: more memorable in the times ſucceeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is ſaid of theſe *Tauri*, or *Tauro Scythæ*, that for the pleaſing of their Gods, eſpecially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orſiloche*, they uſed to ſacrifice all ſuch ſtrangers as they could lay hands on; and with their heads moſt barbarouſly adorned the Walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Chriſtian* Advocates of the Primitive times did much uſe to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the Sacrifices of *Diana Taurica*, (ſo named from hence) as inconſiſtent with the nature of a God or goodneſs; moſt rightly giving them this brand or cenſure, that they were not *Sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præſtat profanus eſſe quam ſic religioſus.* Better it was to be no Religion, than of one ſo cruel.

But to go forwards with the ſtory, In the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unleſs it were that the Emperour *Trajan* (as *Florus* ſeems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*: Which if he did, he added by that action ſomewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman Empire*: this people being never reckoned amongſt the Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their infeſting the *Roman* Territories (as the other barbarous Nations did:) except they paſſed in the account of the *Goths*, *Alani*, *Hunns*, *Avares*, or other of the *Scythian*, or *Sarmatian* People; by which the Majeſty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Perſians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with eaſe effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jocchata*, or *Hoccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Roydo*, one of their moſt renowned Commanders, ſubdued all theſe parts; together with *Ruſſia* on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungaria*, on the Eaſt. Subject at firſt to the Command of the great *Cham* of *Cathaia*, as the reſt of the *Tartarians* were. In the Year 1250 the *Tartars* firſt entered the *Taurick Cherſoneſe*. In 1252 they took *Caffa* from the *Genoeſe*. *William de Rubruquis*, who in 1253 croſſed *Tartary*, found this *Cherſoneſe*, call'd then *Gaſſaria*, or *Caſſaria*, that is *Cæſaria*; there was then in it three Cities, that on the *Weſt* ſide was then called *Kerſona*, now *Caſſovia* or *Caſlovia*; where he pretends St. *Clement* ſuffered Martyrdom; and over againſt it he ſaw an Iſland in the Sea, in which was a Church pretended to be built by Angels. In the middle, on the *South Cape*, was the ſecond City called *Soldia*, over againſt *Sinope* in the leſſer *Aſia*; and this was the great Port for the *Turkiſh* Merchants from the leſſer *Aſia*. On the *Eaſt* ſide, was *Matriga*, where the *Tanais* falls into the *Euxine* by a Mouth 12 Miles over. The great Ditch on the *North* ſide was then cut, and all the Plain Country without the *Cherſoneſe* was inhabited, before the Invaſion of the *Tartars*, by a *Scythian* Nation, called the *Comani*, who forced the Cities in this part to pay them a yearly Tribute. The *Tartars* drove ſo vaſt a number of theſe *Comanians* into the *Cherſoneſe* before them when they invaded it, that the Living eat the Dead, (as a Merchant told him who ſaw it with his Eyes) preying upon the raw Carcaſſes like Dogs. *Will. de Rub.* Cap. 1. This War proved in the end the total Extirpation of the *Comanians*, who all Periſhed by Hunger, the Sword, and Sickneſs, or were made Slaves by the *Tartars*. Theſe *Tartars* came at laſt to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, deſcended from the aforeſaid *Bathu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at laſt of ſo great power, by conquering the *Aſiatick Tartars* which lay neareſt to them, that *Mahomet* the *Great* thought fit to keep them down before grown too ſtrong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha* then poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, made himſelf Maſter of the greateſt part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*, and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the firſt, who had married a Daughter of this *Crim Tartar*, (for ſo they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men againſt his Father, the *Turks* and theſe *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief Conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* ſhould aid the *Turk* upon all occaſions, with 60000 Horſe, if it were required; that they ſhall not make War with any of their neighbours, (except the *Muſcovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they ſhall pay yearly to the *Grand Seignior* in the way of Tribute 300 Chriſtians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or depoſition of his Predeceſſor, ſhall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that eſtate; that in reward of theſe ſervices, the *Crim Tartar* ſhall have yearly from the *Grand Seignior* 5500 *Ducats*, in the way of Penſion; and ſucceed finally in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if ever the male Iſſue of the Houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, againſt the *Perſians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? and that with great and puiſſant Armies; the great *Cham* ſometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects, (leaving but one man in an houſe to attend their Cattel;) and ſometimes adding 50000 *Circaſſians*, and others of the *Aſian Tartars*. And for the *Muſcovite*, whom he is left at liberty to aſſault by this *Capitulation*, he hath had ſo hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571 they pierced as far as to the City of *Moſco*, and ſet fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City, built moſt of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 Miles in compaſs, within the ſpace of four hours burnt the greateſt part of it; and therein no fewer than 800000 of all ſorts of people. A quarrel not to be compoſed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdom of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*, which the *Ruſs* poſſeſſeth; but even to *Moſcovy* it ſelf, as hath there been ſhewn. Nothing ſo punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worſt his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his Slave or *Vaſſal*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling with *Mahomet* the *Crim Tartar*, for a deſign to intercept *Oſman-Baſſa* in his way from *Perſia* to *Conſtantinople*, authorized the ſaid *Oſman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by ſome of his own Councellors (corrupted with *Turkiſh* Gold) were ſtrangled with a Bowſtring; *Iſlan* a Brother of the *Crims*, firſt ſworn a *Vaſſal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of ſucceeding in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould fail, hath been already taken into conſideration, in our diſcourſe upon that ſubject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to ſay; his Subjects having little Money, and living moſt upon the bartery of their Cattel. But beſides what he hath in Lands or Cuſtoms, and the 5500 *Ducats* which he receiveth yearly from the *Turk*, he hath the *tenth* of all the ſpoils which are got in the Wars, and a *Checkine* for every Captive, for ſome two or three (whoſoever taketh them) according unto their Eſtates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horſe, we have ſeen already; as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other neceſſaries, he is ſuppllied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth ſometimes eſpouſe his quarrels:) by whoſe aſſiſtance they have brought the *Muſcovites* to ſome extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Seignior*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori*, (whom *Amurath* the third commended to the Crown of *Poland*) ſent Embaſſadours to negotiate his Election to that Kingdom; and to induce them thereunto promiſed them in his Letters, amongſt other things, that their *Pope* ſhould be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Horſe-fleſh*. His Embaſſie entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deſerved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Precopenſis*, and the Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which laſt parted by the River *Spane*, which falleth into the *Caſpian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from Eaſt to Weſt; on the North, with the *Scythic* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucaſian* Mountains, and ſome part of the *Caſpian*.

It took this name from the many *Deſarts* which are in it; and is called alſo *Aſiatica*, to difference it from *Precopenſis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or becauſe it taketh up the whole continent of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolomy*, except ſome part hereof incorporated to the *Ruſſian* Empire.

The Country of it ſelf ſufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and induſtrious people, would yield large increaſe: as appears by the ill-husbandry of the *Tartars*, who ſow nothing on it but *Mill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receiving very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Chriſtians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (ſo they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank Paſture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the Graſs faileth them; which maketh it ſo full of *Deſarts*, and ſo empty of Towns as to deſerve the name of *Tartaria Deſerta*.

The People or Inhabitants of it are of ſeveral ſorts, derived from three ſeveral Originals, and diſpoſed of in three ſeveral parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zagathay*, and there we ſhall hear further of them. 2. The *Circaſſians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the moſt part *Chriſtians*; and, 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. Theſe again ſubdivided into ſeveral Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the moſt conſiderable are, 1. The *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. The *Zavolhenſes*, 3. The *Thumunenſes*, 4. The *Kirgeſſii*; beſides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Ruſſia*, where deſcribed already; and others of inferiour note, not here conſiderable.

But before we come to ſpeak with theſe people in their ſeveral places, we muſt firſt look upon the whole Country, as preſented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*; bounded by *Ptolomy* as before, ſave that it did extend more Weſtwards; and was unknown to him, in the Northern parts of it: now poſſeſſed by the *Moſcovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty ſeveral Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good eſtimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of ſome of the principal of them, we ſhall have them preſently.

Rivers of moſt note in it, 1. *Mardbius*, 2. *Rombitis*, the Greater, and, 3. the leſs; 4. *Antecus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Pſathis*, 7. *Theſyris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Mæotic* Fens. 10. *Vidonis*, 11. *Alnata*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their tributes to the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of theſe the principal is *Rha*, by the modern Latines called *Volgo*; by the *Tartars*, *Edi*; riſing in *Ruſſia*, not far from the City of *Moſco*, (where we have deſcribed it.) Moſt memorable, beſides the ſeventy Mouths or Channels, wherein it openeth into the *Caſpian*, for a *Medicinable* and wholeſome root growing on both ſides thereof; which the Phyſicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for Diſtinction ſake, *Rha-Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this laſt being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolomy*, riſing out of the Lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigneſs like the Sea, and full of many little Iſlands (moſt of them inhabited.) Which River at its firſt parting from this Lake, is ſaid to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing ſtill bigger and bigger, emptieth it ſelf at laſt in the *Northern* Ocean: the preſent boundary betwixt the *Ruſſian*, and the People in the North of this Country. The *Ruſs* ſay this River is 80 *Verſts* or *Ruſſia* Miles over, a great diſtance from the Sea. *Hackluit*. Tom. 1. pag. 593. If this is true (for I much ſuſpect it, none of our People having ever ſeen it) then it is the greateſt River by far in the World, which is not at all probable. It is now accounted the North Eaſtern boundary of *Europe* and *Aſia*, and is certainly the boundary between the *Ruſs* and the *Great Cham* of *Tartary*, whoſe Dominions reach from hence to the *Chinian* Ocean in the Eaſt, including all the Countries in that ſpace, with *China* it ſelf.

Principal Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River iſſuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caſpian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceraunii*, lying in the furtheſt parts hereof (then known to my Author) to the North and Eaſt. 4. *Caucaſus*, or *Caucaſii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caſpian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Aſiatica* from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*; A chain of Hills of which *Ariſtotle* ſaith, *Acumine & latitudine omnium maximi, &c.* that for heighth and breadth they are the greateſt of the Eaſt; the tops whereof are lightned by the Sun beams in midnight till almoſt day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not paſſable for horſe or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* ſhore) but at one place only, called *Sarmatiæ Pylæ*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucaſiæ Portæ*, from the Hills adjoyning. Situate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caſpian* Sea: but that ſo intricate and narrow, that very ſmall force may keep it againſt ſtrong Armies. *Riphei Montes*, on the *Weſt* between *Ruſſia*, and the *Samoieds*, now call'd *Petzora*, and by the *Ruſs* call'd *Zienmoipoias*, that is, the *Girdle of the World*. The tops of it are always naked, and covered with Snow; yet on the ſides grow *Cedar* Trees, and it affords the blackeſt Sables in the World. Theſe are the *Hyperborean* Mountains ſo celebrated of old. So high they are, that ſome *Ruſs* ſpent ſeventeen days in aſcending it, and yet never gained the top; ſo that they that go to the Province of *Petzora* beyond it, go by *Uſtiga*, *Dwina*, and *Permia*, 250 *Poliſh* Miles about. *Guagninus*. They ſtretch from *North* to *South*, a vaſt length. So carefully did Almighty God in his Heavenly Providence, ſhut up this fierce and barbarous People, from the reſt of Mankind, by ſuch unfordable Waters, and unpaſſable Mountains: not to be freed out of this Priſon, till he thought good to uſe them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the puniſhment of ſinful and impenitent Nations. This ſaid, we will conſider thoſe particular Nations, which before we named, and are now poſſeſſed of it in their ſeveral places.

1. Oppoſite to the *Precopenſes* lie the CIRCASSIANS, extended from the *Cimmerian Boſphorus* and the Fens of *Mæotis*, towards the Eaſtern ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea for the ſpace of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name impoſed on them by the *Tartars*, whereas, before they were called by *Pliny*, *Zigæ*, by ſome Writers, *Zichy*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolomy*.

The Country is very fitly ſeated for Trade and Merchandiſe, as having a fair and large Sea-coaſt, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of thoſe ſpoken of before, paſſing thorow theſe Tracts:) and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Synda*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and ſpecified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. *Ptolomy*, *Lib.* 9. *Cap.* 1. But theſe conveniences not much looked after by the preſent Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the Wars, than to Trades, or *Merchandiſe*. A Stout and Military People, trained to their Weapons from their Childhood, and ſold as ſoon as trained to it by unnatural Parents. For from theſe parts did the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt* fetch their firſt *Original*; and from hence ſupply themſelves with a perpetual *Seminary* of Slaves and Souldiers, raiſed by degrees unto the higheſt dignities of that ſlaviſh Empire; And from theſe parts the *Perſian Sophies* are ſupplied with their *Cozzel-Baſſas*, diſciplined and inſtructed by them like the *Turkiſh Janizaries.*

The *Chriſtian* Faith was here planted in the year 860. or thereabouts, by the Miniſtry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiuril*) and *Methodius*; employed in that ſervice by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople.* In which reſpect their Churches are of the *Greek* Communion, conforming thereto in Rites and Doctrine, and of the juriſdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practical.* For it is ordinary with theſe half *Chriſtians*, not to baptize their Children till eight years old; to hear divine Service ſtanding without their Churches, into which they very ſeldom enter (eſpecially the Gentlemen) till the fortieth, or (as ſome ſay) the ſixtieth year of their age: dividing the whole courſe of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old age (when they can no longer commit thoſe vilanies) to the difficult buſineſs of repentance. *Tavernier*, a *French* Gentleman, gives a large account of the Country, Manners and Religion of this barbarous Nation: The Country, ſaith he, is pleaſant, and full of variety; abounding in Springs and Rivers, yet it hath no Fiſh. It has delicate Flowers, Strawberrys, and a vaſt plenty of Tree-fruits, eaſily produced: Cattle in abundance, and Race-horſes; Goats, and Sheep, whoſe wool is equal to that of *Spain*, which they ſell to the *Ruſs*. They have no Corn but Barly, and Millet; but they have Veniſon and Fowl in vaſt plenty. They are very Thieviſh, preying in the Night one upon another, and are neither Chriſtians nor *Mahometans*; all their Religion conſiſting in certain Ceremonies. There is neither City nor Fort in all their Country, but certain Villages all round, and with a round Piazza in the middle. *Pag.* 128, 129. *Guagninus* gives them the character of a ſtrong and valiant Nation, who truſting to the mountains about them, do eaſily defend themſelves againſt the incurſions of the *Turks*. They have a peculiar Language, profeſs Chriſtianity after the *Ruſs* manner, and have their Divine Offices in the *Sclavonian* Tongue. They are great Pyrats upon the *Palus Mæotis* and the *Euxine*, to the dammage of the *Turks.*

Places of moſt obſervation amongſt the ancients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, ſo called from the *Cimmreii*, once the chief People of theſe parts, of whom more anon; ſcituate on the very ſhore of the *Boſphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well traded Empory; ſcituate on a little Iſland raiſed out of the Sea, by the care and induſtry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3. *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* ſirnamed *Apaturia* (which name ſhe gave unto this place;) becauſe (ſaith *Strabo*) when the Giants aſſaulted her, ſhe craved help of *Hercules*, who ſlew them all one after another. 4. *Geruſa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*, the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called St. *George's*. 5. *Oenuntia*, near the mouth of the River *Theſyris*. 6. *Araza*, more within the Land, which with 7. *Ampſacis*, hath the name of a City alſo. The names of their chief Havens we have ſeen before. But few of theſe, or any other mentioned by the Ancient Authors, being now viſible in their ruins: the chief of thoſe which are now extant, are 1. *Locoppa*, 2. *Conioce*; but of no great note. The beſt deſcription of this Coaſt is that in *Ptolomy*, it being much more frequented, and better known in his time than in ours. The reaſon of which is, the *Turks* ſhutting up the Navagation of the *Euxine*, againſt all other Nations but their own.

The People anciently, though divided into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Thirſagatæ*, *Zigæ*, *Turcæ*, the *Huns*, *Avares*, and *Mæotæ*, all noted Nations; beſides the *Coaxtræ*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambæ*, *Pſelii*, and others as obſcure as they, were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which thoſe ſeveral Tribes concentred. Deſcended in the right of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, firſt planted in the Mountainous places of *Albania*: his Poſterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themſelves in the Mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, ſome of them paſſed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whoſe time it was extant: and others in ſome Tract of Time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themſelves in theſe parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Boſphorus*, and generally to all the people deſcended of them. From theſe particularly, as the ſtout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedegree; ſo from theſe and the Children of *Meſoch*, *Magog* and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Aſia*, the *Moſcovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puiſſant Nations, and all involved promiſcuouſly in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable Expedition, which they made into *Medea* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Leſſer Aſia*: the *Cimmerians* by themſelves alone, or by them as principal; the reſt of theſe *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Diſtreſſed with want, or to diſburden their ſmall Country of ſuperfluous multitudes, theſe *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulaſſar*, or *Salmanaſſar*, King of *Aſſyria*, communicating their deſign with the reſt of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the courſe of the *Euxine* Sea, and paſſing thorow the Country of *Colchis*, firſt ſeized on ſome parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia.* Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their Carriages, and the weakeſt of their Train with ſufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they poſſeſſed themſelves of *Sardis*, the Royal City; and after of the reſt of the Country, or the moſt part of it, *Ardes* the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withſtand them. Both ſides being wearied with long War, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like caſe betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the Grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the buſineſs: aſſigning to the *Cimmerians* all thoſe parts of his Dominions, which lay beyond the River *Halys*; and ſettling his *Lydians* in the reſt. By this tranſaction there were ſo good correſpondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares* King of the *Medes*, invaded the Country of theſe *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invaſion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*, *Halyattes* did eſpouſe the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and blood, they became one People; or at leaſt paſſed not under the accompt of ſtrangers, or the name of *Aliens.* Such end had this moſt notable expedition of theſe *Cimmerians*; not much remembred after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many Petty-Princes, but all aſſociated with *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*: that King being ſo great amongſt them, that his Son *Machares* having married into ſome of their Families, was made King of *Boſphorus.* But *Machares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in ſucceeding times, till the invaſion of the *Tartars*; by whom ſubdued, they acknowledge at firſt the great *Cham* for their Soveraign Lord; whoſe power declining, they have ſucceſſively been ſubject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Muſcovite*; but moſt commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their neareſt neighbour, and moſt able to hurt them. And him they furniſhed on command with 50000 horſe for the *Grand Seignior's* Service. Yet ſo that they ſupply the *Perſians* with his *Cazzel-Baſſas*, and ſometimes ſerve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Suiſſers*, by their ſeveral *Commonalties*: yet ſo, that every *Commonalty* hath ſome principal man (which the *Suiſſers* have not)

not) whom they call *Morſeys*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt theſe and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greateſt *Hords* or *Tribes* of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called **Horda Magna*. Of theſe the *Crims*, or *Precopenſes* were a *Caſtling* only; proceeding out of this great Swarm or neſt of Hornets, though afterwards they became their Maſters. Of the Country or the People, we ſay nothing here, having ſufficiently ſpoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, ſituate on the River *Volga*, and from thence ſo named: *Volgar* and *Bolgar* differing but little in *Orthography*, and not much in ſound.

This Country, as I take it by the ſituation, ſhould be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether ſo called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted allegiance: or that he had made any *Conqueſt* there; or from ſome other Prince of the ſame name, I determine not. And in this Tract were thoſe two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri*, in whoſe time they ſtood without defacement: there being *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanais*, occurring in the ſame Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occaſioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in purſuit of the *Scythian* Wars, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the courſe of his Actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*; diſtant from *Tanais* no leſs than 2000 miles.

This Tribe firſt governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in the year 1506 ſubdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made ſubject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Baſilius* the great *Duke* of *Moſcovy*, who thereupon aſſumed the Title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Succeſſors ſtill preſerve, with the Town it ſelf: well garriſoned to keep open the whole courſe of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great Trade of the *Caſpian* Sea. But for the main body of this people they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a Limb of the ſame body with him; and are ſubject unto his Commands: though by reaſon of their neighbourhood to the *Moſcovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themſelves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. Eaſt of the *Zavolbenſes*, on the other ſide of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, ſpreading as far the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caſpian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompted the beſt men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruel than the reſt; void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the uſe of Corn. *Horſe-fleſh* and *Mares-milk* their beſt diet: the fleſh either roaſted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at the Saddle-bow. And with ſuch cheer (nor worſe nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinſon* and other *Engliſh* men in their travels to the *Caſpian*, from the River *Volga*. This Mr. *Jenkinſon* lived in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*; And this and all his other more remarkable Voyages are in Mr. *Hackluit's* 1. Vol. of Engliſh Travels. Their chief Town, if poſſibly it deſerve that name, is called *Scharayirzick*, the Reſidence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Selliſture*, where the ſaid *Jenkinſon* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by ſeveral *Morſeys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their ſeveral *Clans*: agreeing well enough together againſt the *Moſcovite*; whom they infeſt with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continual Garriſons, at *Caſan*, *Aſtrachan*, and *Viatka*. Their Wars for the moſt part only *Prædatory*, rather to get ſome preſent booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their Dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and ſent home with Preſents. The *Great Duke* is ſo good a Stateſman, as to think the expenſe of Money cheaper than that of Blood; eſpecially when he hath to deal with ſuch an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of conſequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and conſequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morſeys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayirzick* was the chief: to whoſe direction and appointment (eſpecially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly ſubmit themſelves.

4. Betwixt the *Nagaians*, and the *Circaſſians*, lie thoſe Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, ſpreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*; but intermixt with the *Heſelites*, and *Baſchurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of leſs power. Their life, for the moſt part in continual motion, removing with their Wives and Families from one place to another; and governing themſelves in their removes, by the ſight of the *Pole-ſtar*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number; not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they ſtink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or ſweetened, before they return back to the ſame Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Prieſts*, by whom ſanctified and beſprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a moſt ſweet *Confection*, but good enough for them that deſire no better. And yet with theſe the *Moſcovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to ſend them every year ſome Preſents for fear they ſhould joyn with the *Nagaians*: or otherwiſe diſturb him in his *Caſpian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of theſe *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolbenſes*, and the Territory of *Viatka* in the Empire of *Ruſſia*. A Warlike People, and living near a dangerous neighbour; for which cauſe they do not ſtraggle ſo abroad in petit companies as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the moſt part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil ſo befools them, that he ſuffereth them to raiſe Tempeſts; and ſometimes, by *Diabolical* illuſions, to defeat their Enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deſerta*, which ſtill continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the Great *Cham* of *Cathay* (if ſuch *Cham* there be.) And unto theſe we may adjoyn the *Molgomozans*, all *Gentiles*, and the moſt barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and ſuch other vermine as would be poyſon unto any but ſuch *Molgomozans*, who are more poyſonous than thoſe Creatures.

Theſe *Hords*, together with the Kingdoms of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*, and ſuch of the *Ruſſian* Provinces as lie on the Eaſt of *Tanais*, and the River of *Duina*, make up that Country which anciently paſſed under the name of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: inhabited originally by the Deſcendants of *Gomer*, *Meſech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the Sons of *Japhet*, ſpreading themſelves more Northwards as they grew in numbers out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimnitæ*, *Agaritæ*, *Merdi*, *Canapſeni*, *Chænides*, *Baſilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: theſe laſt ſo called from their eating of Horſes, which diet they have left unto their Succeſſors. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they paſſed commonly by that name; and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Aſia* the *Greater*, at ſuch time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Aſia Minor*. For paſſing without oppoſition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been eaſily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were incountered (but victorious) by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*: Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, aſſayed it by cunning; and firſt perſwaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of Prey and Preſents, they marched towards *Ægypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Pſamniticus* the *Ægyptian* King, who heard of their coming; and thought it beſt to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his great coſt. Outvying the *Median* (as of the two the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treaſures, and ſo ſent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that People and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their Tributes, and uſing all kind of Inſolences: till in the end, *Cyaxares*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Phraartes*, acquainting ſome of his moſt faithful Subjects with his deſign, cauſed the better part of them to be plentifully feaſted, made them drunk, and ſlew them; recovering thereby the poſſeſſion of his whole Eſtate. Afterwards imitated by the *Engliſh* in their *Hock-Tide* ſlaughter. Such of them as eſcaped this blow, and were not willing to be ſubject to the Kings of *Media*, (as many of them were) were ſuffered to return home by the ſame way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their Wives and their Slaves, the ſtory whereof we had when we were in *Ruſſia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the ſtories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unleſs thoſe *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Thaleſtris*, when ſhe beſtowed a viſit on *Alexander*, were rather of theſe *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of thoſe of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the nearneſs of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found them, inducing me to this opinion. But poſſible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that ſome of theſe *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the ſucceſſes of the *Huns*, *Avares*, and other barbarous Nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might joyn themſelves unto them, and make up their numbers: thoſe Nations being elſe too ſmall to compound ſuch Armies, as by them were brought into the field againſt the *Romans*, without ſuch like helps. What their Eſtate had been, ſince ſubdued by the *Tartars*, hath been ſhewn already.

3. *ZAGATHAY.*

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick*, or *Frozen Ocean*; on the Weſt, with *Tartaria Deſerta*, from which ſeparated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Perſia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum* of the ancient Writers.

The Country ſpreading out ſo far, on all ſides, as before appeareth, comprehendeth all thoſe Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called, 1. The Country of the *Sacæ*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3. *Zagathay*, ſpecially ſo called, and 4. *Turcheſtan*, included anciently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra Incognita*, which *Ptolemy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a ſurvey of all which Particulars, we ſhall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACÆ*, or the Country of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Mountain *Imaus*; on the Weſt, with *Sogdiana*; on the North with *Zagathay*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their name I find not.

The Country anciently either barren, or ill manured; full of vaſt Foreſts, wide Deſarts, and the like unhabitable places, few or no Cities in it, and not many Villages (*Civitates autem non habent* as my Author hath it, *Ptol. lib. 6. c. 13.*) the People living moſt part in Caves, or otherwiſe wandring up and down with their droves of Cattel; called for that reaſon *Nomades* by ſome ancient Writers. The name not proper to theſe only, but common to all thoſe who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Lydia* and *Numidia* in *Africk*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (λιθινὸς πύργος, in the *Greek*) or the Caſtle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the moſt part by *Camels*, or travellable only with thoſe Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was anciently into many Tribes, the *Caratæ*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Maſſagetæ*, and *Gomedæ*, near the hills called *Aſcatanas*; the *Bylcæ*, and *Grynæi*, more within the Country. All joyned in one by the name of *Sacæ*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progreſs into *Armenia* (to which they had an eaſie paſſage by the Northern Banks of the *Caſpian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacaſena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there ſlain by the *Perſians* in the midſt of their Feaſtings, they left there alſo ſome reſemblance of their name, in an annual Feſtival called *Sacæ*; celebrated by the *Perſians*, in memorial of their good ſucceſs in the War againſt them. Such as ſtaid here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, did ſo good ſervice to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of theſe *Sacæ*, is ſaid to have reſcued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwiſe he had been ſlain, or taken Priſoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were ſubdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian* and *Sogdian* Wars; who hereabouts, by *Cobortanes* a noble *Perſian*, was preſented with a Bevy of Beautiful Ladies; one of the which was that *Barſine*, whom he made his Wife, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polyſperchon* and his Faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or ſuffered; as they have been made by the opinion or miſtake of others, who building *Caſtles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Anceſtors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, *quaſi Sacæ ſones*, or the Sons of the *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of theſe *Sacæ*, when they left theſe parts, muſt be great, or little. If little how can we conceive it poſſible, they ſhould force their way through thoſe valiant Nations of both *Sarmatia's*, who to the laſt maintained their Liberties and Eſtate againſt the *Romans*? If great enough to force their paſſage (for ſtout and provident Nations uſe not to give paſſage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it poſſible they ſhould be ſhut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*? The *Saxons* then, whatſoever they were, were no Sons of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elſewhere ſhewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the Eaſt, the *Sacæ*; on the North and Weſt, *Zagathay* ſpecially ſo called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themſelves a ſpur or branch of the Mountain *Caucaſus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in Paſturage, becauſe very well watred. For beſides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The Principal of which, 1. *Dymus*, and 2. *Araxates* both navigable, and capable of very good Ships; both alſo running down the hills with a headlong courſe, and paſſing through the Champion Country, empty themſelves at laſt in the Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolemy* ſaith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of moſt conſideration are. 1. *Drepſa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this People. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus Darapſa*, ſituate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the ſame River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Maruca*, on the ſame River alſo. 4. *Alexandria*, called for diſtinction ſake, *Alexandria Oxianæ*, which name declareth both the founder and the ſituation.

5. *Alexandria*, for the ſame cauſe of diſtinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either becauſe the laſt City which he built in theſe parts: or becauſe it lay furtheſt off on the borders of the *Scythians*, againſt whoſe invaſions or irruption it was ſaid to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyroſchata*, more memorable, and not leſs ancient than any of thoſe named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus* to fortifie his borders againſt the *Scythians*. It held out againſt the great *Macedonian*, a long time; and he himſelf coming nigher to the Walls than diſcretion would permit an ordinary General, had ſuch a blow on the neck with a Stone, that he fell to the ground, his Eyes ſwimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for ſlain: but reviving he took the Town by a Mine, and levell'd it with the ground, in revenge of ſo great a danger.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydracæ*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cheroſmii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jaſii*, and *Tachri*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepſianii* in the Eaſt parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whoſe chief City was *Drepſa*: deſcended from their ſeveral roots but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own perſon, as before was ſaid; at the ſolicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Perſian*, it rebelled again. Who being ſuppreſſed, and the Country in ſome meaſure quieted, *Arimazes*, a Native of the Province, renewed the War. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of ſuch notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 3000 of his youngeſt and moſt active men, on the promiſe of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noiſe to ſhew themſelves at the back of the Enemy: Which having performed with the loſs of 30 of their company, *Alexander* ſent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*; to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he ſaw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was ſcourged and crucified for his labour. So neceſſary in the Art of warfare is a piece of wit. After this time, it ran the ſame alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Perſians* did, till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom ſtill ſubject.

3. *ZAGATHAY* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cathay*; on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Aſtracan*, and part of the *Caſpian Sea*; on the North, with the Country of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the ancients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the firſt Prince hereof ſince the time of the *Tartars*.

Theſe *Tartars* are planted by *Hondius* on the North of the *Caſpian Sea*, on the Weſt of *Turcheſtan*. It is probable this whole deſcription of the *Aſiatick Tartary* is taken from *Paulus Venetus*, whoſe Itinerary I have not ſeen, but it is certain it will not agree with the preſent ſtate, or diviſions of theſe Nations. *Hondius* placeth here the *Kalmuchi Tartars*, which ſignifieth *unſhaven*. Nothing is more uſual than for theſe wandering Nations to change their ſeats.

The Country reaſonably fruitful, but not ſo rich in the natural temper of the ſoyl, as the induſtriouſneſs of the People, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*, ſtudious of good Letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skill'd in *Manufactures*, and very ſeldom without the confluence of Foreign Merchants. Populous, and well ſtored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handſome dwelling and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Cheſel*, the principal of all this Country; great of it ſelf, but made much greater by the waters of, 2. *Daix*, another River of good note, riſing out of the Mountain called *Noroſus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with thoſe ſtreams they are diſchannelled in the *Caſpian* Sea. 3. *Jartus*, 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whoſe names I find not in my Authors, deſcending from the Mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many: As *viz.* 1. *Noroſus*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Aſpiſii*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The Mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward ſtill. 5. Thoſe called *Anaræi*, beſides 6. *Imaus*, of moſt name, but common unto *Cathay*, as well as to *Zagathay*, and there we ſhall hear further of it.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Aſpabota*, the only Town aſcribed by *Ptolomy* to this Country, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaſpia*, of leſs antiquity, but of greater eſtimation at the preſent time, ſcituate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caſpian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of foreign Countries, chiefly from *India* and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, *Samarchand*, ancient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy* (why I know not) amongſt the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North ſide of *Oxus*, and conſequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Beſſus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) againſt the *Macedonian* Army; by which beſieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being ſlain, with ſome of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* eſcaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was ſlain by his own Wife, and his head preſented to the Conquerour. Here was it alſo that *Alexander*, being then Maſter of the Town, in a drunken fit ſlew his dear friend *Clitus*; who at the battel of *Granicus* had ſaved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the Seat-Royal of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the ſpoils and treaſures he got in the Wars; there being brought hither from *Damaſcus* only (and by that one inſtance we may gueſs at the reſt) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choiceſt movables. Still the chief Reſidence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far ſhort of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of ſuch great name as the Regal *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth: ſcituate ſomewhat in the midland, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvous* of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raiſed againſt the *Turks*, conſiſting in the total of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggeſt. *Maranus*, from which place the ſaid *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

Theſe *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though ſubject to him at the firſt, and have ſo been ever ſince the time of *Zaicham* or *Batbu*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* ſucceeded *Og*, by ſome called *Zain Cham*; (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather ſtudied to preſerve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fierce and more warlike nature, made the firſt proof of his valour and good fortune againſt the *Moſcovite* (for ſpoyling a City which had put it ſelf under his protection) whom he overthrew with the ſlaughter of 25000 Foot, and 15000 of his Horſe. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gino Cham*, the Great Emperour of the *Tartars* gave him to Wife his only Daughter, and therewithal declared him his Heir apparent. Encouraged and enabled with this advancement, he firſt brake down the Wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battel, and impoſed on him the ſum of 300000 Crowns of yearly Tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the Forces of *China*, he advanced forwards againſt *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatneſs of whoſe growing Empire he began to be jealous. Paſſing along the left hand ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea, and ſo through *Albania*, and the reſt of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at laſt into *Aſia Minor*, where near the City of *Sebaſtia*, he encountred with *Bajacet*, vanquiſhed him, ſlew 200000 of his men, and carried him away Captive in an Iron Cage; Reſtored thoſe Princes diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* unto their Eſtates, and taking to himſelf all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Anatolia*, he beſtowed a private viſit on *Conſtantinople*; which ſeen, he marched towards *Syria*, ſubdued both that Province and the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, then poſſeſſed by the *Mamalucks*; viſited *Hieruſalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia* and *Aſſyria*. And taking *Perſia* in his way impatronized himſelf of that Kingdom alſo; and ſuch Parts of *India*, as either lay near *Perſia*, or his own Dominions; now made the *Soveraign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdoms in both *Aſia's*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Ægypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at laſt to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of ſtrong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them ſuch rayes of Majeſty, that ordinary men could ſcarce endure to look upon them. His Hair long, contrary to the cuſtom of the *Mahometans*, (for the moſt part ſhaven on their heads) for which he pretended a deſcent from *Sampſon*. Perfect in the *Arabian* Learning, and a lover of all Learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheiſm*, and a great friend to the *Chriſtians*. More fortunate in the conquering of ſo many Kingdoms, than in laying any ſure foundation to maintain his conqueſt. For by holding his Seat-Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and others the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governours; and by parcelling his Eſtates amongſt his Children, and Kindred, this mighty flood which had ſo quickly overflown both *Aſia's*, returned in very little time within its own proper and original banks. Even *Zagathay* it ſelf divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the *Lord in chief*) the moſt conſiderable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unſettledneſs of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Perſia*; but inſtead of recovering that Kingdom into the Power of the *Tartars*, he loſt ſome Provinces of his own: *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and ſome part of *Bactria*, being ſince ſubdued by *Abas* the late *Sultan*. Nothing ſince memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*. The great *Moguls* or Kings of *Indoſtan* in the *Eaſt Indies*, derive themſelves from this fortunate Prince *Tamerlane*. I have not been ſo fortunate as to ſee any late Traveller, that hath been in theſe remote parts of *Tartary*.

4. *TVRCHESTAN* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Zagathay*, ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, with the River *Zoane*, parting it from *Deſerta*; on the North, with thoſe deſarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth under the name of *Terra incognita*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from the *Turks*; ſome of which people when they left their firſt Seats near the Fens of *Mæotis*, ſettled in this Country, and here ſtill continue. This poſition is impoſſible, according to the preſent ſtate of the *Tartars*, *Hondius* placeth it on the South of *Zagathay*, having *Sogdiana* to the Weſt, *Imaus* to the Eaſt, and *Tagaliſtan* to the South; *Baudrand* placeth *Indoſtan* on the South, and ſaith it is now called the Kingdom of *Thibet*, or *Tobat*, but withal adds, that moſt of the modern *Geographers* are of opinion, that there is no ſuch Province as *Turcheſtan*, to be ſure there is none ſuch on the North of the *Caſpian* Sea, between *Zagathay* and the Kingdom of *Aſtrachan*, which is all of it now poſſeſſed by *Nogay Tartars*, as appeareth by all Travellers that way.

The Country as deſart and ill planted as the reſt of *Tartary*, not ſo much out of any defect in the ſoil it ſelf, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks*, yet do compoſe themſelves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than that place affords them paſturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greateſt treaſure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the fleſh.

Amongſt the Rivers of moſt note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the poſition of it in the 91 degree of Longitude, ſeems to be of this Tract. It riſeth out of the Mountains called *Montes Rhymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardock*, not known by that name amongſt the ancients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to ſay. Shaping its courſe towards the North, and weary of ſo cold a Clime, and ſuch barbarous people, after a long and ſwift courſe of a thouſand miles, it hideth it ſelf under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loſeth it ſelf for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongſt a people which delight not in ſettled Houſes, were a labour loſt: yet ſome I find aſcribed unto them; the principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*. Then there is 3. *Cruſtina*, ſituate on or near the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the Company of *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Ruſſians* ſayling to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayan Tartars* travelling to it by Land. By theſe two Nations more peopled, to maintain their Traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themſelves, in whoſe Land it ſtandeth.

Theſe *Turcomans* are of the Poſterity of ſome of thoſe *Turcæ*, who wanting Room, or otherwiſe oppreſſed with want, forſook their ancient dwelling near the Fens of *Mæotis*, and the Coaſts of the *Euxine* Sea, to ſeek new ſeats, *Anno* 844. That their whole body ſettled here, and from hence made their conqueſt of *Perſia*, as ſome very induſtrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the *Sultan* of *Perſia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix* and thoſe Mercenary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory, and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his Service, it is ſaid he ſhut up the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The ſhutting up of which River, and fortifying againſt them all the paſſages and bridges of it, had not ſerved his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place, for then he muſt have manned againſt them the River *Oxus*, and ſuch as lay betwixt them and him in the common road. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the Eaſt ſide of the River *Volga* would undertake the foarding of that dangerous and violent Water, and force themſelves away thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers than 3000 men, which was the whole ſtrength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted but that they came firſt into *Perſia* out of *Thurcomania*, and not out of *Turcheſtan*: and probable enough, that when they firſt left their own abode, and came into the Northweſt ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea, they might there divide themſelves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and paſſing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and thoſe parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The reſidue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and croſſing the *Volga*, where they found the paſſage moſt eaſie for them, ſettled themſelves in theſe parts of *Scythia* which they found leſs peopled, now from them named *Turcheſtan*. Some of which hearing of the good ſucceſs of their Country-men in the Conqueſt of *Perſia*, might afterward joyn with them to aſſure that purchaſe. Governed ſince their firſt coming hither, by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them Tributaries and Vaſſals of the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently paſſed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accounted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*, hath on the South *Turcheſtan*, and part of *Zagathay*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean, and bounded on the Weſt with the River *Ob*, on the Eaſt with *Imaus*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samoyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black-haired, naturally *Beardleſs*, and not to be diſcerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer-skins*, or *Seil-skins*, with the hairy ſide outwards; (nothing more wiſe in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of houſe or dwelling; the leader of each company their Prieſt, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their removes is to offer Sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and moſt of them *Witches*; eſpecially ſuch as live moſt towards the Eaſt, and furtheſt off from the *Muſcovite*, who many times deſtroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes* and *Sables*, wherewith theſe Idols are ſet forth to the publick view: but beſtow on them greater heats in a good Fire, into which they commonly uſe to caſt them. The *Samoyeds* or *Self-eaters*, are not bounded on the Weſt by the River *Ob*, but extend to the *Riphæan* Mountains, and beyond them to the River *Petzora*. The Provinces of *Obdora* and *Siberia* in *Ruſſia* being part of their Country, as appeareth by *Burrows*, who met with them on the Eaſt of *Nova Zembla* in 1556. The *Dutch* in 1595. *Hackluit*, *Tom.* 1. *pag.* 279. *Olearius* his Travels. All that part of their Country that lieth on the Weſt of the River *Ob*, is ſubject to the *Ruſs*, and Chriſtianity was began to be ſettled here in 1618, *Guagninus*. That part on the Eaſt is ſubject to the King of *China*. The *Samoyeds* are by the Climate they live under, forced to a different way of living from that of the other *Tartars*, for they do not live a roving kind of Life, but dig Vaults in the Sides of the Hills, in which they live all the Winter, with paſſages from one Vault to another for their mutual Comfort and Aſſiſtance; each of which habitations hath an hole in the top which lets out the Smoke, and lets in the Air: for as for light they have none, but that of the Moon. This vaſt Country became Subject to the *Ruſs*, by the means of the *Zaporoge Coſſaks* that inhabited beyond the *Boriſthenes*, for they having been ſubdued by the *Ruſs*, and not being willing to live under their *Conquerors*, went to *Caſan*, and from thence to *Irtibs*, a River which falls into the *Zobol*, in which place they built a City, and called it *Zobol*, and extended their Dominions to the River *Ob*, which is properly called *Siberia*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language ſignifieth the North; yet the few Commodities they have for the ſubſiſtance of life, and the neceſſity of vending their *Sable Martins*, obliged them to ſubmit afterwards to the *Ruſs*, who have ſince filled, civilized, and aſſured theſe Provinces, by ſending thither their Malefactors of State, and alſo the Officers of the Army, and the *Boyars* who have not behaved themſelves well. The *Zaporoge Coſſaks* have ſince, by their Hunting after *Sables*, diſcovered beyond the *Ob* the River *Szilka*, which has a great City called *Nero-zinki*, 2. *Argus*, that falls into the River *Yamour*, beyond this to the South Eaſt, (as I underſtand it) lies the Lake *Dalay*, one Weeks journey beyond *Nero-zinki*, and there you meet with the Subjects of the King of *China*, who have manured all the Lands about that Lake. Out of this Lake ſpringeth the ſecond River, which is fairer and Navigable to the *Yamour*. Father *Avril's Travels into China*. Upon the *Yamour* is a Fort built by the *Ruſs* lately, and called *Albazin*, three Weeks journey from *Pekin*, and three Months from *Moſcow*, which occaſioned a War between the *Ruſs* and the King of *China*, each claiming the *Pearls* in the River, and the Hunting the *Martins* on the Land. This cauſed the ſending frequent Embaſſies to *China*, by which the *Ruſs* have much more diſcovered the paſſages to *China* by Land, than otherwiſe they could have done, and opened a Trade between theſe Nations. The firſt of theſe Ambaſſadors, was *Knez Theodore Jacowitz*, who went from *Zobolks* to *Pekin* in 1653.

Theſe *Zagathayan* Provinces, with thoſe of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before deſcribed, made that part of *Scythia*, which anciently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, this *Scythia* was reſtrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended only *Turcheſtan* and the *Special Zagathay*, Inhabited, beſides the ſeveral Nations dwelling in the four *Perſian* Provinces, by many fierce and ſavage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanoeſi*, *Saubeni*, and *Maſſæi*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectoſages*, and *Aſiotæ*, near the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxartæ* on the banks of the River ſo called, and the *Mologene*, not far off; the *Zaratæ*, and *Saſones*, near the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galactophagi*, or Milk-eaters, more towards the Eaſt; the *Taporæi*, and the *Sychi*, by the hills ſo named: and many others not material to be here remembred. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom firſt ſubdued.

And now we are at laſt come to *Scythia*, truly ſo named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Aſiatica* being called ſo only by way of participation and reſemblance; becauſe the Inhabitants thereof had ſo much in them of the manners and conditions of theſe natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to ſpeak ſomething of them, their Name, Antiquity, Diſpoſitions, Cuſtoms, and the moſt memorable Actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of ſtory.

Firſt, for the name, the *Græcian* Fables have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monſter, half Woman, half Viper. The *Grammarians* ἀπὸ τ̃ σκύζεϑαι, ſignifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is ſaid of the *Jewiſh Puritans*, who *faſted to be ſeen of men*, Σκυθρωποὶ ἀφανίζουσι, that they looked with a ſower, ſevere, and disfigured Countenance. *Geropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, ſignifying to ſhoot: agreeable enough to the cuſtom and exerciſe of the *Scythians*, who are obſerved by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* ſignifieth the ſame in the ancient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the Tongue of the *Scythians*, will not ſo eaſily appear.

Letting that paſs therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of theſe *Scythian* Nations: and we ſhall find it to be great, if not greateſt of all. *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima.* That the *Scythians* were of all others, the moſt ancient people, was received for an *Oracle*, in the elder ages of the world: and ſo reſolved by way of Verdict, when the great Controverſie touching the *Antiquity* of thoſe Nations, was to be determined, betwixt the *Ægyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath paſſed with ſuch a general approbation, that it is not now to be diſputed. In which regard I am ſo far of the judgment of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of the Mount *Caucaſus* (on which the *Ark* is thought moſt probably to have reſted) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the Weſt, or ſet themſelves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had elſe no doubt heard ſomewhat amongſt the Antiquaries, of the ſettling of ſome of thoſe *Adventurers* in theſe Northern Regions; when giving off that enterpriſe, and falling upon new Plantations, they either went themſelves, or ſent forth their *Colonies* into all places of the World. But of any ſuch Plantations, *ne gry quidem*, not one word ſay they. Nor can it probably be ſuppoſed that *Zoroaſter*, the King of *Bactria*, could have raiſed 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though ſome of the adjoyning Provinces were took into the reckoning) in thoſe early days, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the great *Aſſyrian*; had the *Bactrians*, and the reſt of theſe *Scythian* Nations, been but a *Caſtling* as it were of ſome ſecond ſwarm, and not *co-æval* with the reſt. But beſides theſe preſumptions we have other proofs: *viz.* An old and conſtant tradition on this ſide the Mountains,

tains, that the greateſt *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of *Noah's* planting; and, 2. the affirmation of *Portius Cato*, (though one of the Writers of Frier *Annius*) *in Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in theſe parts of *Scythia*, ſo called from *Sabatius Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whoſe Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of ſtrong preſumption, if not demonſtrably concludent, that theſe people were of the firſt Plantation which was made after the Flood; before the reſt of the world was peopled by the *Confuſion* of *Languages*: *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*, could not elſe hold good.

As for their diſpoſitions, and natural inclinations, they are ſaid by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Juſtine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aſpera*, “A Nation patient of labours and fierce in War; of bodily ſtrength immenſe and vaſt; yet ſo much Maſters of their affections, that they made no further uſe of their greateſt victories than the augmentation of their fame. Theft they eſteemed the greateſt crime, and that they puniſhed ſo ſeverely, that their flocks and herds might and did ſafely wander from one place to another, without fear of ſtealing. In them they placed their greateſt wealth, feeding themſelves with the Milk thereof, and making their Rayment of the Skin. Silver and Gold they contemned as much as it was coveted by others; there being no deſire of Riches where there was no uſe. *Meum*, and *Tuum*, thoſe common *Barretours*, and Authors of debate amongſt other men, were not known amongſt them: and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any incloſures, nor troubled themſelves with the care of building. But putting their Wives and Children upon Wains, or Waggons, covered with Hides againſt the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer ſtaying upon one than they found graſs and herbage to ſuſtain their Cattel. So juſt in all their actions that they needed not the reſtraint of Laws; and had attained to ſuch an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of Learning and Philoſophy, was to theſe ſo natural, that the ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their welfare as the knowledge of Virtue. Such are the ancient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being ſuch, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world, who had wealth at will, ſhould make war upon them; amongſt whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conqueror. Yet either on deſire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were firſt invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch: who quarreling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Maſſagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both ſides of the River *Oxus*, diſcomfited her Army, and ſlew her Son *Spargapiſes*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a ſecond battel obtained the Victory, and took *Cyrus* priſoner, is ſaid to have cut off his head, and caſt it into a boul of blood, with this ſcornful taunt, *Satia te ſanguine quem ſitiiſti*, Now drink thy fill of blood, for which thou haſt ſo thirſted. But others tell us otherwiſe of the ſucceſs of this fight. By whom it is reported that the Horſe of *Cyrus* being diſordered on the ſight of ſome *Elephants*, which came from *India* to her aid, and himſelf dangerouſly wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacans*, (who of a conquered enemy was become his confederate:) by whom he was reſcued, and by the 20000 freſh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day, though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are ſaid to begin the War, as loath to be behind-hand with him; arming themſelves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, ſo near their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulſed, and wiſe enough to ſuffer what they could not hinder, they ſued for peace, and had it granted; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*: a matter of more conſequence than theſe *Scythian* brables. With *Alexander's* Succeſſors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Perſian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race; the *Parthians* being their *Allies*, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well obſerved by the *Hiſtorian*, *Romanorum arma audivere magis quam ſenſere*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it. Remaining undiſturbed in their honeſt poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obſcure and beggarly people brake out of their *Priſon*, and carried the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find ſome of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be ſuppoſed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the ſame place, or over the ſame Nations; or that they ſucceeded one another. Howſoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this liſt of

The Kings of *Scythia*.

1 *Scythes*.
2 *Napis*.
3 *Phitra*.
4 *Sagillus*.
5 *Targitana*.
6 *Plinus*.
7 *Scholypethus*.
8 *Panaxagora*.
9 *Tanais*.
10 *Indathyrſus*.
11 *Saulius*.
12 *Spargapiſes*;
13 *Tomyris*;
14 *Aripethes*.
15 *Seiles*.
16 *Octimaſdes*.
17 *Lanthinus*, the laſt of all thoſe *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the Government of theſe warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not ſay that ever any one King did command the whole people generally; each *Tribe* or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for thoſe Kings, if ſuch Kings there were, (as for ſome of them I durſt not venture to ſwear the contrary) they muſt be ſuch as in their ſeveral Countries were of greateſt fame, moſt taken notice of in the world, or imployed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces; and ſo conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation: as *Caſſibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by ſome Writers ſaid to be the King of the *Brittains*; becauſe he had the conduct of their forces againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

4. CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the Weſt with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus*; on the Eaſt with the *Oriental* Sea, and ſome part of *China*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South with part of *India*. So called from the *proper* or *ſpecial Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2 *Altay*, the Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*.

In probability this part of *Tartary* hath no boundary to the North, but the Frozen Sea, except it be to the North Eaſt, which is utterly unknown, but ſaid by the *Tartars* to be ſeparated by the Sea from all other Lands. The *Ruſs* affirm, that *Nova Zembla* is the moſt northern Cape of *Tartary*, and that from thence the Coaſt on the Eaſt ſide tends towards the South. The *Chinians* alſo in their Maps ſay, that from their Wall to the Sea is but fourteen days Journey. The Country of the *Samoyedi* teſtifie the ſame thing, for the farther they travel towards the Eaſt, the more warm and temperate they find the Air, which is a ſign the Sea is not far from them.

And beſides, the *Ruſs* have obſerved there are great Rivers, large Cities, and plenty of all things pertaining to the life of man; which is not poſſible, if there were great Continents, or ſpaces of Lands between them and the Sea. *Voſſius de navigatione ad Indos*, pag. 191. This *Nova Zembla* is in probability the *Promontorium Tabinum* of *Pliny* and the Ancients, tho' placed by the Geographers in this part of *Tartary*. The Southern Boundary of this part of *Tartary*, is *China*: and very little of it, if any part bounds on the Eaſt *Indies*, or *Indoſtan*. It will appear hereafter in the account of the Rivers, that to the North Eaſt, *Tartary* is waſhed by the Ocean, which as it comes nearer to *China*, inclines more to the South.

1. *CATHAY*, more properly and eſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *China*; on the Weſt, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which parted from *Zagathay*; on the North, with *Alta*; and on the South, with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chatæ*, an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Ceres*, and the reſt of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Cuſtom of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be meaſured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*; who placeth *Auzacia*, the moſt Weſtern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Longitude* of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and moſt Eaſtern City of *Cerica* in the *Longitude* of 177 degrees and 15 Minutes; as on the other ſide he placeth *Seta* the moſt Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Latitude* of 35 degrees, and 20 minutes; and *Damna* the moſt Northern Town of *Serica* in the *Latitude* of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which accompt, ſuppoſing theſe four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Country, it muſt extend from North to South 960 miles and ſomwhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from Eaſt to Weſt in the length thereof; which as it ſheweth the dimenſions and extent of it to be very great, ſo it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertitlity; the Weſt parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and conſequently not very fruitful, as being overgrown in moſt places with the ſpurs and branches of *Imaus*. But in thoſe parts thereof which lie towards the Eaſt, it is ſaid to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk and Musk; Great ſtore of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-Barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have alſo very great Herds of *Camels*, of whoſe hair they make thoſe ſtuffs which are hence called *Camelets* or *Chamlets*; and ſuch an infinite breed of Horſes, as beſides thoſe which they reſerve for their own uſe, they furniſh the whole Realm of *China* with ſuch multitudes of them, that at one time there were ſent no fewer than 80000 for a preſent to the King of that Realm by the Princes of theſe Weſtern *Tartars*, as the *Chinois* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bellum Tartaricum*, affirmeth himſelf to have been an eye-witneſs, and to his credit I refer it, that the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their Milk. Some of their Rivers are reported alſo to yield *Golden Sands*; but whether it be ſo or not, certain it is, that it is ſo well provided of all things both for neceſſary uſe, and the pleaſures of life, that it is thought to be inferiour to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not ſo temperate, as in many places; the Summer-times extreamly hot, and in Winter miſerably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here ſo terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no leſs violent than the thunder, do ſomtimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horſes; but ſeldom bring with them any ſtorm of rain: the greateſt ſhowers which they have hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, ſtrong of body, quick of action, fearleſs of the greateſt dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean ſtature, little eyes, ſharp ſight, and thin beards. Induſtrious they are in ſeveral *Manufactures*; of a good wit for diſpatch of buſineſs: more honourable than the reſt of the *Tartars*, as loving to dreſs themſelves gorgeouſly, to fair ſumptuouſly (if there be occaſion) to live in handſome houſes, and to frequent the moſt populous and beſt-traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you will, together with the greateſt part of their Arts and Manufactures, they firſt learned of the *Chineſe*, during the time that the *Chinois* lived as Subjects under the great *Cham*, and the Nations had continual entercourſe with one another. They account not any for a Wife till ſhe bear them Children, nor till then do they meddle wth their Dowries; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperour, even to *adoration*: not ſuffering any Stranger to come in his preſence, except he be firſt *purged*: if any otherwiſe preſume, it is preſent death.

The *Religion* publickly allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*; but ſo that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moſes*, and obſerve many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they ſhould receive the *Chriſtian* Faith; and they found ſome inclinations in the People, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *Superſtition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many Wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleſhly luſts, they conformed to that; Yet ſo, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it ſelf (I mean *Cathay* ſtrictly ſo called) and ſome *Chriſtians* alſo; the ſtate of whoſe affairs we have ſhewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole. 1. *Polyſanga*, which falling into the Eaſtern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great ſtore of Merchandiſe. 2. *Caromoram*, ſo broad and deep that no bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quiam*, one of the greateſt in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in moſt places ſix miles, in many eight, and in ſome ten. 4. *Quiautu*, about half a mile over, and well ſtored with Fiſh: of all which we ſhall ſpeak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are alſo very many *Lakes*, both large, and uſeful; as, 1. the *Lake* of *Caniclu*, in which are ſaid to be ſo many Pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fiſh for them; which is therefore interdicted (without ſpecial licenſe) upon pain of death. 2. The Lake of *Carami*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and ſo full of fiſh, as might ſuffice for all the Country, did they love to eat of it. The Mountains we ſhall climb over in their ſeveral places. Amongſt the Rivers belonging now to this Country, the firſt is, 1. *Geneſſa*, Eaſt of the *Obb*, a great River, but full of *Poroki*, or *Cataracts*, nine of which hinder it from being Navigated. 2. *Lena*, great, but full of Rocks, and not Navigable. 3. *Argus*, a great and navigable River, which falls into, 4. *Yamour*, which is now the conteſted boundary between *China* and *Ruſia*. It falls into the Sea of *Japan*; and tho' great, has ſo many *Sea Bul-Ruſhes*, (or rather Canes;) as big as a man can graſp with his Arms: and therefore not navigable, as the *Ruſs* pretend. This proveth that this River is much more to the South, than any of the other three before mentioned; it having leſs ire, and ſuch great Reeds, which grow not in cold Countries ſo very great. The moſt Eaſtern River of all, is *Chingala*, which has a good pearl Fiſhery. Whether theſe are the ſame Rivers with thoſe mentioned by the Author above, but under other names, or other Rivers, I cannot determine: but this proves that the Coaſt of *Tartary* turneth to the South beyond *Nova Zembla*, and is not joyned to the Coaſt of *America*. Father *Aviril*'s Travels towards *China*. The River *Lena*, ſaith *Mouchim Poukim*, *Vayvode* of *Smolensko*, who had lived here, emptieth it ſelf into another, called, 6. *Kawoina*, at the mouth of which, in the Frozen Sea, is a ſpecious well-peopled Iſland; the Inhabitants of which, he ſuppoſeth paſſed upon the floating Ice into *America*.

Principal Cities of the whole at this preſent time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are, 1. *Cambalu*, ſuppoſed to be the *Iſſedon Serica* of the ancients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans* which made the notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* the firſt King of the *Tartars*, in his firſt attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards, in regard of the pleaſantneſs of the ſcituation and extream fertility of the ſoyl, the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified, had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to ſay, the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the ſame ſenſe as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pequin*, ſignifying in that Language the Court or *City of the King*. Built of Free-ſtone, and ſcituate in the midſt of the Country, as the heart and center to the reſt. It is ſeated on the River *Polyſanga*, honoured with the great *Cham's* reſidence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all ſorts. Beſides other Merchandiſes there are every year 10000 Carts loaded with Silk ſent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compaſs 28 miles beſides the Suburbs, in which, beſides other Inhabitants of all ſorts, are ſaid to be 50000 Aſtrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2. *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a fourſquare figure, every ſide extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whoſe ſides are ſix miles long, and within that another of four miles ſquare, which is the Palace it ſelf; betwen thoſe ſeveral Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fiſh-ponds, places for all manner of exerciſe, and Parks, Foreſts, and Chaſes for all manner of Game. 3. *Caraio*, where the Women are ſaid to gild their Teeth. 4. *Gonza*, a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monaſteries. 5. *Careanſu* near which there groweth an herb called *China-Cathay*, of admirable effect againſt many Deſeaſes; and ſo eſteemed of by the Natives, that they value an ounce of this at a ſack of *Rhubarb*. 6. *Segni*, the reſidence of a *Neſtorian* Biſhop.

Having thus took as good a view of the preſent face of this Country, as the time affords us, we will next look upon it in thoſe integral parts, of which it ſpecially conſiſteth, comprehending (as before was intimated) thoſe two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1. *Serica*, and 2. *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, according to thoſe Bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. *SERICA*, hath on the Eaſt, ſome part of *China*; on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and ſome part of the Country then inhabited by the ancient *Sinæ*; on the North, *Alta*; on the Weſt, *Scythia* beyond the Mountains of *Imaus*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in theſe remote Countries, which theſe latter Ages have afforded, is fain to ſhut it up on the North and Eaſt with a *Terra Incognita*. At the preſent it is called *CATHAY*, and that moſt probably from the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* People, who ſubduing the old Inhabitants, became Maſters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very induſtrious in their times, and amongſt other things in the making of *Silks*, (made of a fine wooll growing on their leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great eſteem amongſt the *Romans*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico* Matrona *tranſluceat*; being far fetched and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they induſtrious only, but chaſt and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongſt them. They eat not any unclean fleſh, nor uſed the company of their Wives either after conception, or during their Menſtrual Purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietneſs and mildneſs of their diſpoſition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good compoſure. Men of few words, but very juſt in all which they ſaid or did. Governed by a Common Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the uſe of the State.

If you will take the Characters both of the Country and people from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. “First of the Country, that it is plentiful and large, circled about with a chain of Mountains, the two famous Rivers *Oechardes*, and *Banthiſis*, with a ſtill and ſlow ſtream running thorow the middle of the incloſed Plain, ſpeciouſly ſtretched out to the ſides of the *precipices*: in one place large and open, in another lying flat and low with an eaſie deſcent; in which regard they have abundance of Corn, ſtore of Cattel, and plenty of Orchards. The temperature of the Air pleaſant and wholſome, the conſtitution of the weather clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds moſt commodious, and the Woods with a pritty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with much ſprinkling of water, ſoftening that which the Trees bring forth like a kind of *Fleece*, kemb a moſt fine and tender matter, which they ſpin into *Silk*, ſerving in former times for the Nobility and Gentry, now become common to thoſe alſo of inferiour rank. Then for the People, he ſaith, that they are a frugal Nation, lovers of quiet, not troubleſome unto their Neighbours, without the uſe of Arms, and the knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, and ſo far from covetouſneſs, or curioſities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *Silks*, without much beating of the price, they let them have ſuch things as are bred amongſt them, without looking after the Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did over-act the *Panegyriſt* (as I ſee no reaſon why he ſhould) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and Mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Caſii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the Eaſt. 3. The *Annibæ*, environing a great part of the Country. 4. The *Aſmaræi*, 5. and thoſe called *Serici*, near the City *Sera*. 6 *Tagurus*. 7. *Ennodorus*, and 8. *Ottorocorus*: but all of them probably the ſpurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imaus*; but by what names now called it is hard to ſay; and no leſs hard to ſay how to accommodate the names of the Rivers ſpoken of before, to thoſe which we find mentioned in the ancient Writers; the principal of which (all flowing out of theſe great Mountains) are, 1. *Oechardes*, by *Pliny* called *Cambris*, riſing out of the *Montes Auzăcii*; 2. *Pſitara*, iſſuing out of the *Aſmiri*. 3. *Bautiſus*, whoſe Fountain is in the *Montes Caſii*. And 4. *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongſt them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and people. 2. *Ottorocora*, near the hills ſo called; whence it had the name. 3 *Iſſedon*, for diſtinction ſake called *Iſſedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Iſſedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Iſſedones gens magna*, one of the greateſt Nations in all the Country, as it was ſaid by *Ptolomy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* (which before I ſpake of) in his firſt attempts upon this Country. 4. *Oroſana*, 5. *Droſache*, 6. *Daxata*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about Nine more being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we find nothing but the names, and therefore I ſhall paſs them over without further mention.

But here it is obſerved, 1. That *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and ſome of the Towns or Cities of it, ſuch a Northernly Latitude (ranging the furtheſt parts thereof in the ſame *parallel* with the Iſle of *Thyle*) as cannot poſſibly agree with that fertility of ſoyl, and delightful temper of the Air, which is given to *Serica*. 2. That he tells us of a *Promontory* called *Tabyn*, ſcituate *in extrema Terræ*, in the extremities of the Country between North and Eaſt, which I cannot but extreamly wonder at, conſidering that he ſhuts up this Country on the Eaſt and North with a *Terra Incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendering it thereby uncapable of any ſuch *Promontory*. This is miſplaced, and belongs to *Ruſſia*, as I ſaid before. 3. That ſome of our late Writers, both in their Table and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambalu* ſo far towards the North, as very ill agreeth with that pleaſantneſs and ſweetneſs of ſituation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. The Author of the laſt relation of *China* Father *Magelhanes*, has proved that *Pekin* in *China* is the *Cambalu* of *Paulus Venetus*; which if our Author had kown, he would more confidently have averr'd that *China* was the *Serica* of the Ancients, tho' the City ſo called might not be *Pekin*; but ſome City more Southerly Seated, and towards the Weſtern boundary of *China*; and as I believe, as high as *Thibet* or *Cochin-China*, which was then a part of *China* and ſubject to it. But as we may eaſily pardon theſe miſtakes of *Ptolemy* in places ſo far diſtant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; ſo we may as eaſily pardon theſe of the latter times, who grounding on the authority of ſo eminent an Author, have in ſome things been miſguided by him: it hapning very many times (which I find ſomewhere mentioned on the like occaſion) *Magnos errores, magnorum virorum authoritate, tranſmiſſos*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their authors.

There is no place in all this Eaſtern part of the World ſo likely to be the *Serica* of the ancients, as *China*; tho' being very far diſtant from them, they might very eaſily miſtake in the poſition of it. This Country alſo abounds in Silk and Cotton, one of which was the *Serica* of the Ancients. The Caravans have alſo in all times of peace, paſſed from *Perſia* to *China* by land, the beginning of which Trade is not known. The Kingdom of *Thibet* which lies between *Cathay* towards the North, *China* to the Eaſt, *Indoſtan* to the South, and *Imaus* to the Weſt, is ſaid to be very Rich by *Tavernier Part* 2. *Pag.* 156. And much more conveniently Seated to be the *Serica* of the Ancients than any part of *Tartary*. But by reaſon of the vaſt Mountains between it and *Indoſtan*, *China* and *Mawaralnahar*, it is little more known than by the name. This however ſhews *Tartary* doth not reach ſo far to the South as *Indoſtan*. This Kingdom of *Thibet* ſhews alſo there can be no *Scythia extra Imaum*, but what is comprehended in the former deſcription or in this Kingdom, which immediately Butts upon *India*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in thoſe parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are ſaid to have been *Anthropophagi*, or Men-eaters, moſt probably a *Scythian* Nation, that Cuſtom being ſo abhorrent from the mildneſs of the *Serican* temper. Or elſe we muſt correct the Copies of *Ptolemy*, by the Hiſtory of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who inſtead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the ſelfſame Tract. The other nations not diſtained with the like Reproaches, are the *Sizyges*, and *Anabi* not far off from the *Auzacian* Mountains; the *Pialæ* near the River *Oecardes*, the *Geranæi*, *Rhabbanæi*, their neareſt neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the Eaſt, the *Batæ* and *Ottocororæ* more towards the South. Theſe with the reſidue, Governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the ſervice of the Common-Wealth, as was ſaid before. And more than this, we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad with their Wives, and having little ſpeech with Strangers, when they come amongſt them. Being vanquiſhed by the *Chætæ*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took the of name *CATHAY* (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till ſubdued by the *Tartars*, againſt whom they made ſuch ſtout reſiſtance, being beſieged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted ſtones to caſt out of their Engines, they ſupplyed that want with molten Silver; and held it out ſo long, that *Cingis* finding Victuals to grow ſhort in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man ſhould be eaten. But at laſt being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens Maſſacr'd, and their King or Emperour (as ſome call him) ſlain; after whoſe death, and not before, *Cingis* aſſumed the Title of the *Cham*, or Emperour. The reſidue of their Story we ſhall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM, was bounded on the *Eaſt* with *Serica*; on the *Weſt* with *Imaus*; on the *South*, with *India extra Gangem*; and on the *North*, with the Countreys comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolemy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia*, becauſe planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the *Weſt* ſide of that Mountain, neareſt unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Countrey, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it ſtandeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Auzacii*, and *Caſii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imaus* joyntly to both the *Scythia*'s, which it divided anciently the one from the other; though now this laſt be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, becauſe the *Tartars* on both ſides of it profeſs themſelves ſubject to that *Cham*. This is the moſt famous Mountain in the *Eaſt* of *Aſia*, beginning at the ſhores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean, and extending thence directly *Southwards* unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the *Southern* or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *greater Aſia* into *Eaſt* and *Weſt*, as *Taurus* doth into *North* and *South*, which Mountain it croſſeth in right Angles, about the *Longitude* of 140, as before was ſaid. That part hereof which lyeth on the *South* of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*; of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *India*. That on the *North* of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was anciently moſt memorable for dividing the vaſt Countries of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a diviſion much obſerved by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of ſome of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; moſt generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by ſome called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hill ſo named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranæi*. 3. *Sæta*. 4. *Iſſedon Scythica*, ſo called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. Theſe with the reſt, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolemy*, inhabited by the *Abii Hippophagi*, or Horſe-eaters, a diet ſtill uſed by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2. The *Iſſedones*, who are ſaid by *Pomponius Mela* to make carouſing-cups of their Fathers heads, firſt trimmed and gilded. 3. The *Cauranæi*, and 4. The *Chatæ*, who being (as it ſeemeth) the moſt potent Nation, cauſed all the reſt to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name alſo to the conquered *Seres*. Beſides the poſſeſſions of which Tribes, there were alſo the Regions of *Achaſſa*, *Cuſia*, and *Auzuatis*; theſe laſt ſo called from the Mountains upon which they ſtand More than this, we have not to ſay of this Country by the name of *Scythia*; there being nothing memorable of it in the courſe of Story, or worth the obſervation in the way of Chorography. See the notes above.

ALTAY is bounded on the *South*, with *Cathay*, eſpecially ſo called, and part of *China*; on the *North*, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the *Weſt* with the great Mountain *Imaus*, and on the Eaſt, with the Nations or Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Alta*.

The Country utterly unknown to the Ancient Writers, and not much canvaſſed or travelled by our Modern Pens. In which reſpect I ſhall now trouble my ſelf no further, than by giving a brief touch upon the ſeveral parts of it. Of which the moſt that can be ſaid, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not ſomething in them of further uſe. Now for theſe Provinces, the Principal of them are, 1. *Caſcar*, 2. *Cheſmur*, 3. *Lop*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Caindu*, 7. *Caraxan*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Ergimul*, 10. *Tanguth*.

1. CASCAR, bordering on the *North-Weſt* of *China*, a *Mahometan* Country, but admitting of ſome Chriſtians alſo; the largeſt Kingdom in all *Altay* except *Tanguth* only, and furniſhed with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and note, the Principal whereof are, 1. *Hiachan*, the Royal City of this Country, a Mart famous for concourſe of Merchants, and variety of Merchandizes. 2. *Cialie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom ſo named, but ſubject to the King of *Caſcar*, who in the year 1603 was called *Mahomet Cham*, a Prince of credit in thoſe parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the King of *Tanguth*. The People generally rude and barbarous, in ſo much that ſome parts here of both Sexes do indulge themſelves this mutual privilege, that if the Husband or the Wife be abſent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again. This account ſeems taken from the Voyage of *Benedict Goez* a *Portugueze Jeſuit*, ſent from *Indoſtan* in 1603 to *China* by Land, he arrived there in 1605, but died before he reached *Pekin*, being poyſoned as was ſuſpected. It is this year Printed at the end of Father *Avil's* Travels towards *China*.

2. CHESMVR, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Inchanters*, cauſing the dumb *Idols* to ſpeak, the winds to riſe, and the Sun to be darkned. For ſtudying which *Black Arts* (if they come to them by ſtudy) they have many *Monaſteries*, in which their *Hermites* or *Monaſticks* live a ſtrict kind of life, and are very abſtemious.

3. LOP, memorable for a great Deſart of thirty days journey; ſo true a *Deſart*, that whoſoever doth not mean to be ſtarved, muſt carry all his Victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the evil Spirits uſing to call men by their names, and make them go aſtray from their Company, where they periſh with Famine, or are devoured with wild Beaſts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. CAMVL, an Idolatrous Country, the People whereof accounted it a great honour to them to have their Wives and Siſters at the pleaſure of ſuch as they entertained. From which bruitiſh Cuſtom when reſtrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at the three years end to be reſtored again to their former liberty; proteſting they could never thrive, ſince they left that Cuſtom. Which deſire of theirs was at laſt granted, and is ſtill in uſe.

5. TAINFV, more civil than the reſt, the People being very induſtrious, and good Artificers; making the moſt part of the Arms which are uſed by the *Cham*; and ſome alſo which they ſell to Merchants.

6. CAINDV, with a Town in it of the ſame name, of great reſort by Merchants (ſuch as we commonly call *Pettit Chapmen*) for *Womens Veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Barks of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their ſhameleſneſs, the Women of this Tract being proſtituted to every Traveller.

7. CARAZAN, inhabited by a Barbarous and Savage people, who in the day-time live in Dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and ſome of them ten paces long, and ten ſpans in thickneſs) they are much infeſted, and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an uſe that when any ſtranger cometh into their Houſes, of an handſome ſhape, to kill him in the night, not out of deſire of Spoil, or to eat his body; but that the ſoul of ſuch a comely body might remain amongſt them.

8. CARDANDAN, near *Carazan*, and as Savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their Bodies, which they count for the greateſt Ornament. In caſe of Sickneſs they ſend not to the *Phyſitian* but the next *Inchanters*, who taking Counſel of the Devil, apply ſome remedy; or if they think the man paſt cure they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help, and ſo put him off.

9. ERGIMVL, poſſeſſed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with ſome *Mahometans*, and *Neſtorian* Chriſtians. In which Country they have certain Bulls as big as Elephants, with mains of fine white hair, like Silk, ſome of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine, engender a Race of ſtrong and laborious Beaſts, not inferiour in that kind to Oxen. Here is alſo found a Beaſt of an exquiſite ſhape, but not bigger than a Goat, which at every Full Moon hath a ſwelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun, proveth to be the beſt Musk in the World.

10. TANGVTH, the greateſt and moſt potent of all the reſt, bordering on the North of *Cathay*, eſpecially ſo called, and (like that) inhabited by an induſtrious and laborious people, among whom the art of Printing is ſaid to have been extant a thouſand years. Bleſſed heretofore with a great increaſe of Chriſtianity; but now the *Gentiles* or Idolaters make the greateſt part, with ſome *Mahometans* amongſt them. And for the ſerving of thoſe Idols, they have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of Chriſtian Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 perſons: but alſo many fair Monaſteries for the uſe of their *Votaries* and *Recluſes*. They are poſſeſſed of many Towns, moſt of them well fortified, and planted with good ſtore of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sachian*, bordering on the *Deſart* of *Lop*, inhabited by ſome of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they firſt uſed the Art of printing. 2. *Campian*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother-City of this Country; where the Chriſtians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair Churches: now over numbered by the *Gentiles*, who have here many Monaſteries for the uſe of their *Idols*, and many Religious Perſons dedicated to their Service only. Who though they live more honeſtly than the reſt of their Order, and hold it an impiety to tempt a Woman to the act of Luſt; yet if the Woman make the offer, they hold it no ſmall ſin to refuſe her courteſie: 3. *Sauta*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as being five days journey from the one and ſix days journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this King's Dominions. 4. *Succuir* ſituate amongſt Mountains cloathed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the World; but ſo neglected by the Natives, that did not the Foreign Merchants bring it into requeſt, they would ſcorn to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, made ſubject afterwards with *Tanguth*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the great *Cham* of *Tartary*. But the fury of this *Tartarian* Tempeſt, being over-blown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover their ancient Royalty, but by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of the moſt part of the reſt of *Altay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* alſo, being looked on at the preſent as the greateſt and moſt Puiſſant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imaus*, and the Eaſtern *Tartar*, to the deſcription of whoſe Countries we next proceed.

The Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, are bounded on the Weſt with *Altay*, on the Eaſt with the *Oriental Ocean*, on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, and on the South with *China*; ſo called from their Eaſtern ſituation, in regard of thoſe of *Cathay* and *Altay*, which by the *Chineſes* are called commonly the *Weſtern Tartars*.

The Country not very frutiful, becauſe ill cultivated, ſo that the chief Commodities which they ſend abroad are the Root called *Ginſem*, ſo much eſteemed amongſt the *Chineſes*, and all ſorts of precious skins, as thoſe of *Caſtor*, *Martron* and *Zibellins*; and alſo Horſe-hair, of which the *Chineſes* make their Nets, and the men (tho' madly) uſe it in tying up their hair, as the handſomeſt dreſs they can appear in. With theſe Commodities they traffick into *Leaotong*, a Province of the North-Eaſt of *China*, (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandize being thence diſperſed into all parts of the Kingdom. The people are generally of broad faces, their colour white, but their noſe is not ſo flat, nor their eyes ſo little as the *Chineſes* are, ſparing of ſpeech, and ſomewhat penſive, but neither ſo unſociable as their neighbours of *China*, or ſo barbarous and rude as the *Tartars* of *Europe*. They ſhave both the head and the beard, reſerving only the Muſtachoes which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuft, which being curiouſly woven and plated they let hang down careleſly below their ſhoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garniſhed round with ſome precious skins three fingers broad, of *Caſtor* or *Zibellin*, and ſerveth to defend their Temples, Ears, and Foreheads from Colds and other Tempeſts. That which appears above the skin being covered over either with curious red Silk, or elſe with black and purple Horſe-hair, which they dye and dreſs moſt curiouſly; ſo as their appurtenances being handſomly joyned together make the Cap commodious and handſom. Their Garments are long Robes falling down to the very foot, but their Sleeves are not ſo long and large as the *Chineſes* uſe but rather ſuch as are uſed in *Poland* and *Hungary*, only with this difference, that they faſhion the extremity of the Sleeve ever like a Horſe's hoof. At their girdle there hangs on either ſide two handkerchiefs to wipe their face and hands, beſides there hangs a knife for all neceſſary uſes; with two Purſes, in which they carry Tobacco, or ſuch like Commodities. On their left ſide they hang their Scymeters, but ſo as the point goeth before, and the handle behind; and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the Scabbard with the other. They ſeldom wear ſhoes, and no Spurs to their Boots, which they make either of Silk or Horſe-skin very neatly dreſſed; but they often uſe fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they uſe Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of War they are very nimble, never carrying any Baggage with them, nor taking care for Proviſion, but filling themſelves with what they find; yet commonly they eat Fleſh, though half waſhed or half boyled: and if they find none, they fall upon their Horſes and Camels. The Earth covered with their Horſe-cloaths is their Bed, for they care not for Houſes and Chambers; but if they are forced to dwell in Houſes, their Horſes muſt lodge with them, and they muſt have many holes beaten in the walls to let in the air; but yet their Tents are moſt beautiful, which they fix and remove with ſuch art and dexterity, as they never retard the ſpeedy march of an Army.

They Inhabit amongſt many other Provinces, thoſe of *Sumabania*, *Tanaiu*, *Gupi*, *Niulban*, and *Niuche*; of which I am able to ſay nothing in the way of *Chorography*, or of the four firſt in the way of Hiſtory; only I find that thoſe of *Niulban* were aiding to the King of *Niuche*, in the Conqueſt of *China*: and of the *Gupi*, it is written, that they are ſo called, by reaſon they make their Coats of defence or Breaſt-plates of Fiſhes Skins, which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable. None of which Nations count themſelves originally of *Tartarian* Race. Yet either terrified by the noiſe of their great ſucceſſes, or willing to partake of ſome part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Wars on that ſide of *Imaus*, but were contented to take their very name upon them. Never invaded nor ſubdued till the time of *Hombu* King of *China*, who having driven the *Weſtern Tartars*, then Lording it over that Kingdom, from one part of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themſelves unto thoſe parts and Provinces of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom and Province of *Niuche*, where the War followed after them alſo, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to begg their Peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into ſeven Hords or Tribes, and Governed for a long time by their ſeveral Chiefs, they became at laſt united into one Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Niuche*, *Anno* 1550 or thereabouts. Oppreſſed by the Prefects of *Leaotong*, in the way of their Trade, and ſuffering amongſt many other indignities the death of their King, whom thoſe Prefects had intrapped and murdered, they make complaint of theſe outrages to the King of *China*, and finding no remedy at his hands put themſelves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leaotong*, take the City of *Leaotong*, and having beſieged the King himſef in the Royal or Imperial City of *Pekin*, they returned home (finding no hope of taking it at that time) with the ſpoil and plunder of all thoſe parts through which they marched. The War thus firſt begun was managed for many years with great loſs on both ſides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eaſtern parts of the Province of *Leaotong*, and the honour of having ſhewed themſelves twice more at the Walls of *Pekin*, till in the year 1644. being invited into *China* by *Vſangueius* to ſupport the then failing fortune of the Royal Family; they husbanded the opportunity ſo well, as to make themſelves the abſolute Maſters of that mighty Kingdom. The whole ſtory and Succeſſes of this notable action, we ſhall ſum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of

The KINGS of *NIVCHE*, or Eaſt *Tartary*

1550	1, 2	*N. N.* advanced unto this Kingdom after the reducing of the Seven Hords into one main Body, and Father of the King ſucceeding, who was ſlain at laſt by the treachery of the Prefects of *Leaotong*, as before was ſaid. The Annals of *China* ſay that in 1597, theſe *Eaſtern Tartars* being united, the *Weſtern Tartars* entered into a League with *Xin Zum* King of *China*, againſt them.
1616	3	*Theienmingus*, who to revenge his Father's death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leaotong*, braved the great Emperour at the Walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himſelf with the ſpoils of the Country returned home again.
1627	4	*Theienzungus*, the Son of *Theienmingus*, followed the War with the ſame Fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches than in Power and Patrimony.
1636	5	*Zungteus*, the Son of *Theienzungus*, ſecretly brought up amongſt the *Chineſes*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that People, but their weakneſſes alſo; and conſequently was the better prepared to lay the Foundation of that greatneſs to which the *Tartars* have attained by the Conqueſt of it. Called into *China* by *Vſangueius*, as before is ſaid; he poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Pekin*, and though he died as ſoon as he was Maſter of that City only: yet left he ſuch Inſtructions to his Brothers, and the reſt of his Council, that very eaſily and ſpeedily they poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Kingdom.
1644	6	*Xunchius* the Son of the former, of the Age of nine years only, at the death of his Father; the management of his affairs both for War and Peace being committed to his Uncle's, but chiefly unto *Amavangus* the eldeſt of them, by whom ſo prudently conducted, that within the ſpace of four years he was quietly ſettled in that Throne, all oppoſition and pretenders to the Royal Succeſſion, being beaten down, of which more hereafter
1661	7	*Cham Hi*, Son of the former *Xunchi*, Succeeded his Father being then but eight years of Age, and is ſuppoſed to be now living; he perfected the Conqueſt of *China* in the year 1680, Reigns over all the *Tatrars* from *Imaus* and the Banks of the River *Obb*, and is one of the moſt Potent Princes in the World.

5. TARTARIA ANTIQVA.

TARTARIA ANTIQVA, hath on the South, *Altay*, and the Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*; on the Weſt and North, the main *Scythick Ocean*, on the Eaſt, the Straights of *Anian*, (if ſuch Straights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, becauſe the firſt habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or Goal, made their firſt eruptions, and have ſince overgrown ſo much of *Aſia*.

The Country cold and comfortleſs, as lying under the Polar Circle, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but ſuch as can live no where elſe: yet heretofore a receptacle of many Chriſtians (though thoſe of the *Neſtorian* Sect) who here injoyed that liberty of their Religion which the *Perſian* and *Sarazens* denyed them in more pleaſing Countries. It containeth many Regions, ſome not conſiderable. Thoſe of moſt note are 1. *Thebet*, 2. *Tabor*, 3 *Tenduc*, 4. *Barbu*, 5. *Anian*, and 6. *Tartar*

THEBET, a Fenny Region, and full of Woods, rich in Coral, which they find on the Sea-ſhore, and uſe it inſtead of Money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abaſie*, or Pope of this Idolatrous People; much reverenced, and having in his power the diſpoſing of all Offices, which concern the Service of their Idols. They have alſo good ſtore of Musk, and abundance of wild Beaſts which are bred in their Foreſts: but no beaſts wilder than the People, who in times paſt (if not at the preſent alſo) uſed to bury their Parents in their own Bowels, and to make drinking cups of their Sculls; for fear leaſt in the midſt of their jollity they ſhould forget their Progenitors. Yet not more Barbarous than Immodeſt; it being contrary to their Cuſtom to take a Wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers uſe to Proſtitute their Daughters to the Merchant Strangers, who having had their pleaſures of them, gratifie them with a Jewel, or ſome other preſent, which they wear on their Wedding-day; ſhe being the moſt acceptable Bride to her Husband who bringeth the greateſt Dowry with her of thoſe baſe rewards. It contained once ſeveral petty Kindoms, (Homagers to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid deſolate by the *Tartars*. I ſuſpect this is the famous Kingdom of *Thibet* or *Tobat* deſcribed above, and placed here too far to the North; whereas in truth it abutts upon *Indoſtan* to the South, and is divided from it by the *Emodi Montes*, now called *Mogbati* and *Delanguer*, being a part of *Taurus*.

2. *TABOR*, once a diſtinct Kingdom alſo. One of the Kings thereof in the Year 1540, came to the Courts of *Charles* the Fifth, and *Francis* the firſt; where he found Princely Enterainment. But upon proof that he was a Factor for the Jews, and ſecretly ſollicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles* he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. *TENVC*, A Populous Kingdom of it ſelf, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all theſe North-Eaſt parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Chriſtians in Religion, till the Conqueſt of it by the *Tartars* though according to the *Neſtorian* tendries: but now *Mahometans* for the moſt part, with ſome remainders, and but few of Chriſtianity. Divided into many large and ſpacious Provinces, as *Chincintales*. *Cerguth*, *Egrigaia*, *Cerchaus*, and others of leſs note; ſo called according to the names of their Principal Towns, or having ſome Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Thoſe of moſt note in *Tenduo* it ſelf, 1. *Coras*, the ordinary Sepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, and ſince that alſo. 2. *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was firſt honoured with the title of King, the Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the Office of Prieſts, were anciently called by the name of *Preſbyter Johannes*, or *Preſter John*: a Title now erroneouſly conferred by ſome on the Emperour of the *Abaſſines*, or *Ethiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joſeph Scalager*, a man of ſuch infinite reading, ſhould be ſo deceived: and by the authority of his judgment deceive ſo many. For finding that there was a *Preſbyter Johannes*, in the North of *Aſia*, and hearing vulgarly that Title given to him in *Afirick*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abaſſine* Emperour was formerly of ſo great power, as to extend his Empire over *India*, and the North of *Aſia*; and in this laſt for the aſſurance of his Conqueſts to hold his reſidence. A monſtrous and undefenſible fancy! For beſides that, all Hiſtories, even thoſe of the *Abaſſines* themſelves, are ſilent in it: how improbable is it, that a King Reigning in the heart of *Africk*, ſhould ſubdue the moſt remote parts of *Aſia*, and there keep his Court, ſo many great States and moſt Puiſſant Nations being interpoſed; or that ſo memorable an exploit ſhould be buried in ſilence, and found in no Record but in *Scaliger's* Head! Beſides it is well known, and generally granted, that *Presbyter John* of *Aſia*, was by Sect a Neſtorian; but he that is called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the Jacobites: and further, that the Chriſtians of *Æthiopia* are Circumciſed, which never was reported of thoſe of *Aſia*.

Letting this paſs therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin Cham*, the King thereof. After whoſe death a certain *Neſtorian* Shepherd (that is to ſay, the Maſter of great Flocks of Sheep) being Governor of the *Taymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himſelf the Title of King of *Tenduc*, whom they called by the name of *Preſt John* or *Prince John* (the ſame word in their Language as in the *Hebrew*, ſignifieth both Prieſt and Prince.) Dying he bequeathed his Eſtate and Flocks to his Brother *Unt-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater Sheep-Maſter than he; whoſe Flocks ranged over all the Paſtures of the *Moles*, or *Mongul Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen days Journey off, whom he had in ſubjection: the Title of *Preſt John* or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the Dignity and Royal Eſtate. And though afterward this *Untcham* was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, yet his Poſterity for a long time were ſuffered to enjoy the Title of Kings and *Presbyters*: (but Vaſſals and Homagers to the great *Cham*) the great *Chams*, in regard of their Nobility and Royal parentage, beſtowing their Daughters on them in Marriage; as is ſaid by *William de Rubruquiis*, who Travelled in theſe Countries, *Anno* 1253, the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Untcham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *BARGV*. on the extreme North-Weſt, bordering on both thoſe ſides the cold *Scythick* Ocean, ſituate under the North-Star; of the ſame nature, both for the Soil and People, as that of the *Tartars*. And,

5. *ANIAN*, on the North-Eaſt, oppoſite unto it, giving name unto the Straights of *Anian* lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which Straights (if any ſuch Straights there be) the *Tartars*, and ſome others of theſe Northern Nations, are thought to have paſſed over, and to plant that Country. This is made the more probable by our Country-Men's obſervation, that the farther they go to the North-Weſt in *America*, the more the People reſemble the *Samoyedes* in Cuſtoms, and Language: beſides theſe moſt northern Nations have neither Horſe, Cows or Sheep; and none of theſe Creatures were found in any part of *America*, till the *Europeans* tranſported them thither. *Mochim Poukim*, the *Vayvode* of *Smolensko*, who had lived many years in *Siberia* as Intendant of the Chancery in that Government, reporteth that beyond the *Obb* to the Eaſt, was the River *Lena*, which falleth into the *Kawoina*,; at the mouth of which is a great populous *Iſland*, the inhabitants of which hunt upon the Ice about it in the *Frozen Sea*, for a Fiſh called *Behemot*, affording Excellent Ivory; they being often ſurprized by a Thaw are carried away (ſaid he) I know not whether; but I believe to the moſt Northern parts of *America*, which is not far diſtant. And I am confirmed in this, becauſe the moſt *Northern Americans* have the

ſame Phyſiogmony as thoſe unfortunate Iſlanders that are thus carried away. Father *Avril's* Travels towards *China*, *Pag.* 177. Who ſaith he had it from the *Vayvod's* mouth in 1686. So that all Nations hereabout, do agree that *Tartary* is ſurrounded by the Sea to the North and Eaſt; and that *America* is not very far from it; and conſequently that there is ſuch a Straight as this of *Anian*, which muſt lye very remote towards the North to anſwer to the River *Lena*; and it is likely this great Iſland is the Southern Boundary of this remote *Fretum*, which is not yet diſcovered.

TARTARY, is ſo called of the great River *Tartar*, the Principal of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the Tartars; this being their original Country, where they lived like Beaſts, having neither Faith, nor Letters, nor Habitation, nor the uſe of Arms, nor any Reputation amongſt their Neighbours. In matters of Religion, the worſt ſort of Gentiles, Worſhipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth; to which they offered in the Morning faſting, the firſt of their meats and drinks.

Their Idols made of Felt, and placed on both ſides of the doors of their Tents or Booths, as the preſervers of their Cattel, and the Authors of Milk. Divided into five Clans or Tribes, denominating ſo many Towns and Territories in which they dwelt, that is to ſay, 1. *Mongui*, 2. *Yeka Mongul*, (or the great *Mongul*,) 3. *Sammongul*, or the *Water-Mongul*, 4. *Marcat*, 5. *Motret*: each of them Governed by its Chief as commonly it is amongſt Barbarous Nations; though all thoſe Chiefs are ſubordinate to ſome higher power. Oppreſſed by *Vncham*, or *Vntcham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Paſtures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joynt conſent they removed ſomewhat farther off, and denied their Tribute. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Yeka Monguls*, and ſo well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publiſhing abroad amongſt the credulous people, that an Armed man appeared to him in his ſleep, with a white Horſe, and ſaid, *O Cangius* or *Cingis*, *it is the Will of immortal God, that thou be Governour of the* Tartars, *and free them from bondage and paying Tribute*; he found a general belief, eſpecially amongſt thoſe of his own Clan, who joyning themſelves to him, followed him as their Ring-leader, in all his actions. Thus backed and ſtrengthned, he made War againſt the *Sammonguls*, ſlew their Commander, aud ſubdued them: and by their help ſuccesfully aſſaulted the *Mercates*, and *Metrits*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed. And having thus ſubdued all the Clans of the *Tartars*, and added the Eſtates of *Thebet* and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the conſent of the ſeven Princes, or Chiefs of their Clans, (*Thebet* and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a Seat of a piece of Felt, (the beſt Throne they had or could afford) and ſaluted King with as great Reverence and Solemnity as their State could yield. And firſt to make Tryal of his Power, and their Obedience, he commanded the ſeven Chiefs, or Princes to ſurrender their Places, and each of them to cut off the Head of his eldeſt Son; which was done accordingly. Had *John* of *Leyden* been a Scholar, as he was but a Butcher, I ſhould think he had ſtudied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Aſſured by this of their Fidelity and Obedience, he ſet upon the *Naymans*, a People of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himſelf fit for ſome great Alliance, he ſent to *Vncham*, and demanded one of his Daughters for his Wife; which *Vncham* with ſome threats, but more ſcorn, denying, he marched againſt him, ſlew him in the Field, and poſſeſſed his Daughter, and with her alſo his Eſtate. Proud with this good ſucceſs, and incouraged by ſo great an increaſe of Power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that alſo the authority of an Heavenly Viſion, in the name of the *Immortal God*: in which attempt, diſcomfited at firſt with a very great overthrow, but at laſt Victorious; conquering the ſeveral Nations of it one by one, till in the end he brought the War to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at laſt he took, and therewithal the Title of *Cham* or Emperour. Continuing this Dignity for the ſpace of ſix years, and every year adding ſomewhat to his Dominions, he was at laſt wounded in the Knee at the Caſtle of *Thaygin*; of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the beſt account I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the Original of this ſpreading Nation, and the deſcription of the Country, of their firſt Habitation. They that have Chriſtned ſome of the moſt Northern part of it, by the names of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Naphthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more Credit have ſupplyd thoſe vacant places which they knew not otherwiſe how to fill, with the Pictures of wild Beaſts, or monſtrous Fiſhes; which might well enough have pleaſed the Eye, without betraying the Judgment of the looker on. Of his ſucceſſors I am able to make no certain Catalogue: their names being doubtfully delivered, and the Succeſſion much confounded amongſt our Writers: the names of the *Provincial Sultans* being many times impoſed upon us inſtead of thoſe of the *Chams* themſelves. But we will wade through thoſe difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of Story will direct me: firſt adding (what ſhould have been before remembered) that it is Recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned Battel with *Vncham*, conſulted with his Diviners and Aſtrologers of the Succeſs. They taking a green Reed, cleft it aſunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Vncham* on the other: and placed them not far aſunder. Then fell they to reading their Charms and Conjurations, and the Reeds fell a fighting in the ſight of the whole Army, *Cingis*'s Reed overcome the other: whereby they foretold the joyful news of the Victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly happened. And this was the firſt ſtep, by which this baſe and beggerly Nation began to mount unto the Chair of Empire and Soveraignty; whereas before they lived like Beaſts, having neither Letters, nor Faith, nor Dwelling, nor Reputation, nor Valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was ſaid.

The Great CHAMS of the *TARTARS*.

A. C.

1162 1. *Cingis*, *Cingius*, *Zingis* or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he ſubdued *Tenduc*, and *Cathaia*, changing the name of *Scythians* and *Scythia*, to *Tartarians* and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168 2. *Jocuthan Cham*, or *Hoccata*, ſucceeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was firſt known in *Europe*, *Anno* 1212. in which year they drove the *Poleſockies* from the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Bathu* of *Roido*, he ſubdued *Moſcovia*, or *Ruſſia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*; waſted *Hungaria*, *Boſnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains took *Perſia* fron the *Turks*.

3. *Zaincham*, *Bathu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, and *Aſia* the leſs.

4. *Gino Cham*, whoſe Daughter conveyed the Empire unto her Husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.

1370 5. *Tamur-Cutlu*, *Tamir Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great Tyrant, but withal an excellent Soldier. It is thought, that he ſubdued more Provinces in his life time, than the the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whoſe Acts we have ſpoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongſt his Children, as *Perſia* to *Merza Charock* his fourth Son, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldeſt Son) and ſo to others.

1405 6. *Lutrochin*, the ſecond Son of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded in *Cathay* though the eldeſt was at firſt proclaimed, which his Father had before prognoſticated: who when his Sons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautochus*, who was the eldeſt but lifting up the Chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the ſecond. He lived not long, ſucceeded by

7. *Allan*, who added little to his Eſtate.
8. *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* Hiſtory) went for aid againſt the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*. By whoſe perſwaſion the ſaid *Mango Cham* is ſaid to have been Chriſtned, with all his Houſhold, and many Nobles of both Sexes.
9. *Cublay Cham*, the Son of *Mango*,
10. *Tamor Cham*, the Nephew of *Cublay* by his Son *Cingis*.
11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540 or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are who have ſince reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable Acts have been done among them. The great diſtance of Countries, and difficulty of the Journey, have hindred further diſcoveries. For the Great *Cham*, and his next Neighbour the King of *China*, will neither ſuffer any of their Subjects to Travel abroad, nor permit any Foreigners to view their Dominions, or enter into them; unleſs their Ambaſſadors or Merchants, and thoſe but ſparingly, and under very great reſtraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; ſaving that in theſe latter times the *Jeſuits* have found ſome footing in *China*, by whom notwithſtanding, we have received little or no Intelligence in matters which concern this Country.

The Government is Tyrannical, the Great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his tongue (beſides which, they have almoſt no Laws) conſiſteth the Power of life or death. He is called by the ſimple vulgar, *the ſhadow of Spirits, and Son of the Immortal God*: and by himſelf is reputed to be the Monarch of the whole World. For this cauſe, every day as ſoon as he hath dined, he cauſeth his Trumpets to be ſounded; by that ſign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the Earth to go to Dinner. A fine dream of Univerſal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the ſeven chief Princes Aſſemble to Crown his Son; whom they place on a black courſe Cloath: telling him if he live well, Heaven ſhall be his reward; if ill, he ſhall not have ſo much as a corner of that black Cloath to reſt his body on: then they put the Crown upon his Head, and kiſſing his feet, ſwear unto him Fealty and Homage. And at the Funeral of theſe great Monarchs, they uſe to kill ſome of his *Guard-Soldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay, ſaying unto them, *Ite & domino noſtro ſervite in alia vita. Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obſequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer then 10000 were ſlain on this occaſion.

Theſe *Chams* are for the moſt part ſevere Juſticers, and puniſh almoſt every ſmall fact with ſudden death; but Theft eſpecially: inſomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a Pail of Milk from a Woman's head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the Woman's out-cry was apprehended, and cut aſunder with a ſword; ſo that the Blood and Milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* puniſhed with leſs than death, and ſo ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their firſt Emperour. A wiſer man than poſſibly could be expected from ſo rude a Country, and of ſo little Breeding in the knowledg of Books or Buſineſs; the *Tartars* being utterly without the uſe of Letters, till the Conqueſt of the *Huyri*, a *Cathayan* Nation but of Chriſtian Faith.

What Forces the *Great Chams*, in the heighth of their Power, were able to draw into the Field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, conſiſting of 1200000 Horſe and Foot, as was ſaid before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we ſhall find them not inferior to the greateſt Princes, For *Cutlay Cham*, long after the diviſion of this great Eſtate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the Field againſt *Naian* his Uncle, and one *Caiadan*, who had then Rebelled, an Army of 100000 Foot, and 360000 Horſe: there being 500000 Horſe on the other ſide; which made almoſt a Million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, and thoſe of *Turcheſtan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the firſt is ſaid have been able to raiſe 300000 Horſe, and the laſt an hundred thouſand more. For ſtanding Forces, he maintains 12000 Horſe, diſtributed amongſt four Captains, for the Guard of his Perſon; beſides which he has great Forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occaſion be; ſo that he need not fear any outward Invaſion, and much leſs any home-bred Rebellions. But on the other ſide, admitting this for truth which before is ſaid, we find him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are expoſed moſt commonly to the Invaſions and affronts of ſuch as are ſtrong in Shipping: For either the *Eaſtern Tartars* interpoſed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is Land-locked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-Eaſt parts of this long Country, where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*; it is ſo far off, and ſo much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his Power and not much to his Purſe.

Of the Revenues of the *Cham*, I can make no eſtimate, but may conclude them to be what he liſt himſelf: he being the abſolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of Wooll, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattel. So then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver which is brought into the Country: which he cauſeth to be melted, and preſerved in his Treaſury: Impoſing on his people inſtead of Money, in ſome places Cockle-ſhells; in other a black Coin, made of the Bark of Trees, with his ſtamp upon it. And beſides this he hath to himſelf the whole Trade of Pearl-Fiſhing, which no body upon pain of death dare fiſh for, but by leave from him. So that his Treaſure is conceived to be very Rich, though his Annual Income be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have proſecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors, yet muſt confeſs I am not very well ſatisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it ſelf; it being rather my opinion, That there is no ſuch man at this preſent time as a Great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Soveraign Power and Juriſdiction over all the other members of that vaſt body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countries did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or elſe were ſeized on by the *Viſi Chams*, or Governors of the ſeveral Provinces. For firſt I conſider it is as impoſſible that there ſhould be ſuch a mighty Monarch, of ſuch abſolute authority, ſuch an infinite power, and ſuch unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the ſpace of an hundred years and more, we ſhould hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not ſo much as of their names, eſpecially in an active Age; and when this great building of the World hath ſuch Caſements in it. For it muſt needs ſeem ſtrange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinſon* who paſſed into *Perſia* by the *Caſpian Sea*, nor Sir *Robert Sburley* who ſpent much time in the *Perſian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dodmore Cotton* (the firſt Ambaſſador to the great *Mogul*, the other to the *Perſian Sophy*) ſhould tell us any thing of this Prince, if ſuch Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Country, ſhould bring us home no tidings of him; or the *Jeſuits* with all their diligence ſhould not find him out. Secondly, I conſider it as a thing improbable, that if there were any ſuch mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, ſo near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he ſhould permit the beggerly Nations of the *Eaſtern Tartars* to Conquer that Rich and mighty Empire in ſo ſhort a time; he in the mean ſeaſon ſitting ſtill as a dull ſpectator, neither conſidering his own danger, nor putting in for a ſhare of ſo great a Booty. Thirdly, I obſerve that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xunchius* the great King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a Daughter of the King of *Tanguth*, the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or *Weſtern Tartars*, by which name the *Chineſes* call all the *Tartars* Inhabiting the vaſt Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, eſpecially ſo called, (as being Weſtward of themſelves, and the *Eaſtern Tartars*) which Title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durſt have aſſumed unto himſelf, if there had been any ſuch great *Cham* then reigning in *Cathay*, and reſiding in *Cambalu*, as our Authors ſpeak of. And fourthly, I obſerve it as a matter probable, That as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precopenſes*, or *European Tartars* ſubmitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whoſe Succeſſors, they do ſtill continue: and much of the *Aſiatick Tartary* being ſubdued by the *Moſcovites*, the Neighbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by Hords or Tribes; that ſo the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees poſſeſs themſelves of the greateſt part of *Altay*, if not of ſome part of the *Proper Cathay* alſo. And therefore that ſome of the laſt great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other than the Kings of *Tanguth*, or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any were) remaineth the Succeſſion of the Houſe of *Cingis*. *Gabriel Magehanes* or *Magellan*, in his Hiſtory of *China*, Printed at *London* in 1688, ſpends his firſt Chapter to prove, that *China* is the ſame Country with that which *Paulus Venetus* calleth *Cataio*; He finds all the Cities, Rivers, and Towns mentioned by that *Venetian* Author, in *Cataio* in *China*; but the names are varied according to the *Tartars* dialect, *Pag.* 3. *The* Moſcovites *as I was informed* (ſaith he) *call China by the name of* Kirai *in imitatation of the* Tartars. *The Kingdom of* China Malaha, *(ſuppoſed to be the* Uſbeck Tartars) *the Inhabitants of which are* Mahometans, *and which Border on the Province of* Xenſi. *The Kingdom of* Tumet *or* Tibet, *which inviron a good part of* Xenſici *and* Xanſi, *and that of* Uſangue, *(to the Eaſt of* Tibet*) Bordering upon* Suchuin; *having corrupted the word* Kita, *call it* Katai; *and the Merchants that come from* Indoſtan *and other parts of the* Indies, *call it* Cataio. This Author lived in *China* from 1640 to 1677, when he died at *Pe-Xim*; which puts it paſt all doubt that *China* is *Cathay* ſo much ſought after.

From theſe Premiſſes I conclude, that all which hath before been ſpoken touching the great Power, Authority, and Revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, muſt either be referred unto the times of their greateſt glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much diſmembred; or elſe relate, with ſome qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But theſe my obſervations and conſiderations, with the concluſion iſſuing from them, I willingly ſubmit unto better Judgments.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *Niuche*, which in the *China* Language ſignifies the *Eaſtern Tartars*, entered above, *Pag.* 777 of this Book, ſhews that this Kingdom was in 1550, divided into 7 Hords, each of which had its Chief, which about the year 1596, were all united under one head; whoſe name is not expreſſed in the Annals of *China*. Hereupon, *Xi Zum* then King of *China*, made a League with the *Weſtern Tartars*, who in former years had much infeſted *China* againſt this new Family, which was then become terrible to both: This ſhews that there was then no *Cham* at *Cambalu*, which is in *Eaſt Tartary*, before that time, and that the *Weſtern Tartars*, were before this more conſiderable than the *Eaſtern*. Annals of *China*, *Pag* 89. And in the year 1683, the preſent King of *China* made a Progreſs with a great Army into the *Weſtern Tartary*, none of the Chiefs of the Hords daring to oppoſe him; the Bounds of his Empire extending as I have ſaid already, to *Ruſſia* and the Mountain of *Imaus*, the Kingdom of *Thibet*, and the *Chinian Ocean*; ſo that there is now no *Cham* of *Tartary* but the King of *China*, who ſucceeded *Xunchi* his Father in the year 1661, and was then a Child of about eight years of Age; and whether he is ſtill living is uncertain. It is very much to be remarked, that the *Weſtern Tartars* ſubmitted without any conteſt or War to this Family; tho' they were more Powerful than the *Eaſtern Tartars* when the War of *China* began; which ſhews they were not united under any one Prince or Head: and tho' they were able to invade and vex *China*, which was a weak tho' populous Nation, yet they never durſt reſiſt this victorious Prince. So that what the Reverend Doctor *Heylin* ſaith is true, *viz.* That the *Chams* of *Tartary* derived of *Cingis*, were long ſince extinct.

And thus much for *TARTARY*.

OF
CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the North, with *Altay*, and the *Eaſtern Tartars*, from which ſeparated by a continual Chain of Hills, part of thoſe of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built, as they ſay, by *Tzianzon*, the 117th King hereof; on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the Eaſt, with the Oriental Ocean; and on the Weſt with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; *viz.* with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Thibet*, and the *Weſtern Tartars*; the two latter of which are no part of *India*: from which no otherwiſe ſeparated than by ſuch natural Bounds and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern Parts thereof were utterly unknown unto the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latines*; but for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Country which *Ptolemy* call *Sinæ*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name the whole Country is called at preſent by our modern *Latiniſts*; and from whence that of *China* ſeems to be derived, by *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the Natives *Taine*, and *Tabinco*: which laſt ſignifies no other than a Realm; or by way of Excellence, the Realm. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzinin*; and the Inhabitants call themſelves by the name of *Tangis*.

There is no part of this Country that was at all known to the Ancients, by the name of *Sinæ*; that Country they called by that name, abutting to the Weſt, upon the Bay called *Sinus Magnus* in *Ptolemy*, and now the Gulf of *Bengala*, and was no other than the Kingdom of *Pegu*, or *Siam*; to the Eaſt of which are the Kingdoms of *Cauchin-China*, and *Tonkin*, all of them without the bounds of *China*, as now it ſtands; tho' the two Eaſt are ſaid to have been parts of *China*, yet the other two were never any part of it. It is notwithſtanding probable, the preſent name *China* is derived from the ancient name of *Sinæ*, but miſplaced.

It is ſaid to contain in circuit 69516 *Diez* of *China* meaſure, which reduced to our *European* meaſure, will make a compaſs in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the Borders of *India*, to the moſt *Northern* Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that ſay ſo, ſpeak at random. For beſides that 1800 Leagues in length muſt needs carry a greater compaſs than 3000 Leagues, they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no ſober Man will grant. And anſwerable to this vaſt compaſs, it is ſaid alſo to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greateſt Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waſte ground, or full of unhabitable Deſarts, as in other Places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all to lay down in this *Diagram* following.

The Provinces, Cities and Towns in *China*.

	Prov.	Cit.	Towns.
1	*Canton*	37	190
2	*Foquien*	33	99
3	*Olam*	90	130
4	*Siſnam*	44	150
5	*Tolenchia*	51	155
6	*Canſay*	24	122
7	*Minchian*	25	29
8	*Ochian*	19	74
9	*Honan*	20	102
10	*Pagnia*	47	150
11	*Taitan*	47	78
12	*Quinchen*	45	113
13	*Chagnian*	43	94
14	*Suſnam*	41	105
15	*Quinſay*	31	114

By which it doth appear, that in theſe fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and beſides them 1154 Caſtles, 4200 Towns unwalled; and ſuch an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country ſeems to be but one City only. But here we are to underſtand, that theſe great Provinces are divided into many leſſer, and ſome of them preſented to us (in late ſtories) under other names, according to the Languages and Appellations of thoſe ſeveral nations, which either have recourſe unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with leſs doubt or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* it ſelf is called by ſo many ſeveral names, as before was ſhewn.

It reacheth from the 130th to the 160th Degree of Longitude: and from the Tropick of *Cancer*, to the 53d Degree of Latitude. So that it lieth under all the Climes from the third to the ninth, incluſively: the longeſt Summer's day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours, and forty minutes; increaſed in the moſt Northern parts, to ſixteen hours, and three quarters. Enjoying by this ſite an Air ſomewhat of the hotteſt, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie under the Tropick; but withal very ſound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choiceſt fruits.

The true extent of this great Country is from twenty two to forty Degrees of *North* Latitude, as appeareth by the lateſt and beſt Maps. So that our Reverend Author by miſinformation extends it 13 Degrees towards the *North* further than it lies. Father *Magelhanes* ſaith it lies under 23 Degrees from *North* to *South*, from the Fortreſs of *Cai Pim*, placed on the Frontiers of the Province of *Pekim* in 41 Degree of Lat. to the Meridional Point of the Iſland of *Hai-Nan*, in 18 Degr. of Elevation and to the South of the Province of *Quamtum*: So that the length of it, at 60 *Italian* Miles to a Degree, is 1360 *Italian* Miles; and the breadth, from *Nim Po* in the *Kiam* to *Lean Po* in *Suchuen*, in a ſtraight line from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, is 1020 *Italian* Miles.

The Country is very rich and fertile, inſomuch that in many places they have two, and in ſome three Harveſts in a year: well cultivated, and ſowed with all manner of Grain, and planted with the beſt kind of Fruits; which do not only come to a ſpeedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of theſe Weſtern parts. The like is alſo ſaid of their Pearls and Bezoar; fairer and of greater virtue than thoſe of *America*, or any other part of the World beſides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of Metals, Fruits, Cattel, Sugar, Honey, Rhubarb, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, *medicinal wood*, called *China wood*, by the name of the Country, Musk, and Salt; the Cuſtom for which laſt in one City only, which is that of *Cantan*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth alſo an *Herb*, out of which they preſs a delicate juyce, which doth not only ſerve them inſtead of Wine, but preſerveth their health, and freeth them from many of thoſe inconvencies which the immoderate uſe of Wine doth breed to others. Such ſtore of Poultry of all ſorts, but of Ducks eſpecially, that in the Town of *Cantan* only before-mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The People are for the moſt part of ſwarth Complexion, but more or leſs according to their nearneſs to the heat of the Sun, ſhort-noſed, black-eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their Garments very long, with long looſe ſleeves, and their hair much longer than their neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their hair exceeding ſhort, and their cloaths much cloſer; to which two Faſhions ſo addicted, that more of them took up Arms for their Hair and Habit (when required to conform in thoſe particulars to the will of the Conqueror) than had done either for their King, or their common Liberty. So much delighted with their own Faſhion and compoſure, that as the *Negroes* uſe to paint the Devil white, as a colour contrary to their own; ſo when theſe *Chinois* uſe to draw the Picture of a deformed Perſon, they ſet him forth in a ſhort Coat, broad Eyes, long Noſe, and a buſhy Beard. They are much given unto their Bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately; drink their Drink hot, and eat their Meat with two ſticks of Ivory, Ebony, or the like, not touching their Meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The uſe of Silver-Forks with us, by ſome of our ſpruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence into *England*. Their Marriages they celebrate moſt commonly in the *New Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: In which ſolemnity they ſpare for no coſt or charge, Muſick and Stage-plays, and good chear many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural induſtry, and their proficiency in Manufactures and Mechanick Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his Father's Occupation: which Law, preventing the roving about of idle people, and exciting in each breaſt an emulation in every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving Alms they are bountiful to the maimed, and lame; but reject the blind, as being ſufficiently able to get ſuſtenance for themſelves by corporal labour, as grinding of Corn, *&c.* They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing* before it was known in *Europe*, but Print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand to the left; but from the top of the leaf downward to the bottom. *Guns* alſo have been uſed among them time out of mind; whence they are ſo well conceited of themſelves, that they uſe to ſay, They themſelves have two eyes, the *Europeans* one, and the reſt of the People of the World not one. A pretty flouriſh of ſelf-praiſing. Now that Guns were in uſe in theſe

Eaſtern Countries, and conſequently alſo amongſt them, even when *Bacchus* made his Expedition into *India*, (which was ſome three or four years before, or after the departure of *Iſrael* out of *Ægypt*) as Sir *Walter Raleigh* ſeemeth to affirm: becauſe *Philoſtratus*, in the life of *Apollonius Tyaneus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of the *Oxydracæ* by Thunder and Lightning; which he interpreteth to be *Cannon*. But certainly himſelf in another place of his moſt excellent Book, acknowledgeth this *Philoſtratus* to have written fabulouſly; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit ſo contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Beſides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of Thunder and Lightning from Heaven *Severus* diſcomfited *Peſcennius Niger*; and by the ſame means was himſelf repulſed from the Walls of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as eaſily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordinance in his Camp; as the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Guttenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good Inventions, like good wits, do ſometime, jump, I dare not determine: ſure I am that he firſt taught it in *Europe*; and as ſome ſay, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland* it was firſt ſaid to be practiſed, and at *Mentz* perfected. Now whereas it is by ſome doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not, I muſt not herein be both a Judge and a Party; but muſt leave the deciſion of the point to men unintereſſed. Only this I dare boldly ſay, that this moſt excellent Invention has been much abuſed, and proſtituted to the luſt of every fooliſh and idle paper-blurrer: The Treaſury of Learning being never ſo full, and yet never more empty; over-charged ſo with the froth and ſcum of fooliſh and unneceſſary Diſcourſes. In which (though all Nations have their ſhare therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accounted the moſt blame-worthy: who not content to ſcatter their *poor conceptions* amongſt themſelves, and Print them in their own Tongue only (as our *Engliſh Paper-blurrers* do) publiſh them in the *Latin* to the eye of others, and ſend them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Reader's eye, nor the Printer's hand. *Scriptorum plus eſt hodie quam muſcarum olim cum caletur maximè*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the preſent.

But not to dive too deep into this Diſpute, the People, as before was ſaid, are good *Artificers*, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *Porcellan* Diſhes, curious Carvings, and the fine painted Works which we have in Tables, Leather, Stuffs, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much eaſe and pleaſure, they are not much given unto the wars, which make them the more eaſie prey to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, whoſe very name hath bred more terrors in them, than their Arms or Conqueſts. Inſomuch that when *Uſanguieus* requeſted Aid of *Zungteus* King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, againſt *Lycunſtzus*, and his rabble of Rogues, which ſacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himſelf in the Throne Imperial; the *Tartarian* having but few men in readineſs, adviſed him to array a good part of his own Soldiers with the Arms and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the Terror of that ſight he might obtain the cheaper and more certain Victory; which prudent Counſel was purſued, and it proved accordingly. As the *Lacedemonian* Government was more fitted for War than Peace, which was the great deſign of the Founder of it; ſo the *China* Government was fitted for Peace, and not for War: The ſtrict Government of the People, and ſevere Puniſhment of the leaſt breach of Peace, added to the ſoftneſs of the Climate, very much tending to the ſoftning and effeminating of the Inhabitants. The building the great Wall againſt the *Tartars*, was alſo an impolitick contrivance; rendring the *Tartars* more terrible to the *Chinians*, by this over-great care to keep them out; and ſoftning the *China* people, and making them overmuch ſecure: Whereas it had been better to have left that part open, that by perpetual Incurſions the People of *China* might have been taught the uſe of their Arms, and hardned to War: Nor was it to be thought ſuch a Wall could be defended, when a conſiderable Body of the *Tartars* ſhould at any time attack it in any one place. What they want in Courage, they ſupply with Wit, being ſaid to be a politick and judicious people; but withal very jealous of their women, and great Tyrants over them; not ſuffering them to go abroad, or ſit down at the Table if any Stranger be invited, unleſs he be ſome very near Kinſman. A Tyranny or Reſtraint which the poor Women give no cauſe for, being ſaid to be very honeſt and much reſerved; not ſo much as ſhewing themſelves at a window for fear of offence: And if they uſe painting as moſt of them do, it is rather to preſerve themſelves in the good affections of their Husbands, than for any other lewd reſpects. For the moſt part of a fair Hair, whereof very curious, binding it about their heads with Ribbands of Silk, and garniſhed with Pearls and precious Stones. Neat in their dreſs, and very coſtly in their apparel, with reference to their eſtates, and the degree of their Husbands; the richer ſort wearing Sattin ſtrip'd with Gold, and interlac'd with very rich Jewels, the poorer in Serge, and razed Velvets. They have moſt of them little Feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cauſe bind them up hard from their very Infancy; which they endure patiently though it be very painful, becauſe a ſmall Foot is accounted for ſo great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceeded not ſo much from their own curioſity, as from the jealouſie of the men, who have brought it in, to the end that they ſhould not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with ſo ill a grace, and ſo little eaſe, they ſhould have no deſire to ſtir much abroad. A Cuſtom ſo ancient and received, that it hath got the force of Law; and if any Mother ſhould do otherwiſe in breeding their Daughters, they would undergo ſome cenſure or mark of Infamy. If a deſire to ſee their Parents get them the Freedom of a Viſit, they are carried to them in cloſe Chairs, and attended by ſo many waiters, that it is not poſſible for any man either to ſee them, or hold any diſcourſe with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Country containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it ſeems to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we conſider the ſpaciouſneſs of the Country. 2. The ſecret goodneſs of the Stars, and temperature of the Air. 3. The abundance of all things neceſſary to life. 4. That it is not lawful for the King to make any wars, but meerly defenſive, and ſo they enjoy perpetual peace. 5. That it is not lawful for any *Chinois* to go out of the Country. And, 6. That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elſewhere. For the Ships do reſemble a City, in which they buy, ſell, are born, and die. And on the ſeveral Rivers which water the Walls of *Nanquin*, and *Pequin*, for no leſs than 300 Leagues, the Ships are ſaid to be ſo thick ranked, that it ſeemeth to be a continual Street.

The People hereof in matters of Religion, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the Creation; *viz.* That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzon*, and *Panzina*, whoſe Poſterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickedneſs being deſtroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzam*, who had two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloath him in his beſt Apparel, all perfumed, ſet him in his beſt Chair, and there all his neareſt Kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is coffin'd, they place him in a room richly furniſhed, and ſet by him a Table full of viands and good cheer, with Candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which Ceremonies, we find, how whilſt the Funeral was preparing for *Francis* the *French* King, his Statne apparelled in Royal Robes, with the Crown, Scepter, *&c.* was laid on his Bed; whither Dinner and Supper was daily ſerved in, with the like State and Solemnity as when he was living.

But to return again to my dead *Chinois*, when he has lain as is above ſaid, fifteen days, he is carried forth to his Funeral, the place whereof is in the Fields; for to be buried within the Walls were a thing of all others the moſt wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a proceſſion, come; they burn his body, and with it Men, Cattel, and other proviſion, for his attendance and ſuſtenance in the other world: as they uſe in the Funerals of *Tartary*. As great Idolaters as any, ſacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the ſame reaſon as the moſt ignorant ſort of the Gentiles do; becauſe forſooth he is a wicked and miſchievous Creature, and would otherwiſe hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkneſs there apreareth ſome light, whereby we may perceive that Chriſtianity had ſome footing here, in times foregoing; for they believe that God is an immortal Spirit, that by him the firſt Man was made of nothing; that the Soul dieth not with the Body, but is capable of reward and puniſhment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which leſt they ſhould be thought to be only ſome remainders of the light of nature, (the learned Men amongſt the Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having ſo much Divinity as this, without the Goſpel) we may here add, that the Idol moſt generally worſhipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another; ſignifying as themſelves affirm, that they have all but one will, which makes ſome think they had been anciently inſtructed in the Doctrine of the Holy Trinity. They have alſo the Pictures of a very fair Woman holding a Child in her Arms, who, as they ſay, was the Daughter of ſome great King; and that ſhe was delivered of that Infant when ſhe was a Virgin. And as ſome add, they have portraitures of the Faſhion, and with the marks or Cahracters of the twelve Apoſtles, (as uſually painted in ſome part of the Chriſtian Church:) of whom they are able to ſay nothing but that they were great Philoſophers who lived vertuouſly here, and were therefore made Angels in Heaven. And finally they hold that there is a great number of Saints, or Men eſtated in an eminent degree of happineſs, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, induſtry or valour, or lived an auſtere life without wronging any man: or otherwiſe deſerved nobly of the Common-Wealth, as the Authors of ſome ſignal benefit unto their Country. Theſe I conceive to be ſome evident remainders of Chriſtianity, or the Remembrances rather of that Chriſtianity which formerly was known amongſt them: firſt planted here (as may be probably collected) by St. *Thomas*, or ſome of his Diſciples; an Ancient *Breviary* or *Liturgy* of the *Indian* Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is ſaid, *Per D.* Thomam *regnum cælorum volavit, & aſcendit ad Sinas: i. e.* That by St. *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was preached unto thoſe of *China*. Some Characters here were alſo of it, in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated and not viſible but in theſe defacements: And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jeſuits* (commendably induſtrious in the propagation of the Chriſtian Faith) not without great danger to themſelves, have endeavoured, and in part effected, their Converſion. For though they have gained but few Proſelytes, (in regard of thoſe infinite numbers of People which are ſaid to live here) yet ſome Converts they have made amongſt them; and thereby ſown thoſe ſeeds of that ſaving Truth, (though mingled with ſome Tares of their own) which may in time increaſe and ſpread over all the Country. For at the preſent they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea-Towns, but alſo in many mid-land Cities, and in ſome alſo very far diſtant from the Sea; in all which, they have both Churches for their followers, and Cells or Monaſteries for themſelves; and finally have gained ſo far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by Authority Royal; but have alſo gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldeſt Son of *Jungly* the laſt declared Emperour of the *Chineſes*, which eldeſt Son they have Baptized (and be it an happy Omen for the good of Chriſtendom) by the name of *Conſtantine*. This Prince by the *Chineſes* is called *Tumlie*, he was elected in the year 1644; his Mother, Wife, and eldeſt Son, were by his permiſſion all Baptized by *Andrew Coffler* a *Jeſuit*; the Son was called *Conſtantine*, and it was hoped he would have proved a *Conſtantine*. But in the year 1661, *Tumlie* the Father was driven into the Kingdom of *Pegu*, and the *Tartar* ſent a threatning Letter to the King of *Pegu*, if he did not deliver up this Prince; thereupon the King of *Pegu*, put him and all his Family into the hands of the *Tartar*, who ordered *Tumlie* to be preſently Hanged; with him ended the whole Race of the Family *Mim*; and by this laſt effort, an end was put to the Wars of *China*, and the preſent hopes of the *Jeſuits* to Eſtabliſh a King of their Religion.

In truth the Religion they would ſettle here, is nothing leſs than Chriſtian, they Paint our Saviour like a *China*-Philoſopher, conceal the whole Hiſtory of his Crucifixion becauſe the *Chinians* are offended with it; and ſuffer their Converts to Sacrifice in the Idol-Temples with the unconverted; they have drawn up a new Goſpel after their own fancy for them, and conceal from them the true Goſpels: So that the other Orders that have gon thither, have loudly declaimed againſt them for Preaching this mungrel Chriſtianity; which I doubt not, will have the ſame end with that of *Japan*, where the ſame things were put in Practice by them. This Order, though they pretend very much to the ſpreading of Chriſtianity, never did ſo; nor I believe never will where they have not the Sword to back their Attempt; their whole deſign being to enrich themſelves, and enlarge the Pope's Kingdom, rather than truly to ſeek the Salvation of Souls. This perhaps was not ſo well known when our Author wrote as it is now; books of this nature ſince that time, have been Printed at *Paris*, and other places, ſome of which I have ſeen.

Hills of great note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolemy*, in his deſcription of the Country called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the obſervation of Modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be ſo plain and level, and ſo unſwelled with Hills at all, that they have Carts and Coaches driven with Sails as ordinarily as drawn with Horſes, in theſe parts. Not the leſs deſtitute of Rivers for this want of Mountains, *Ptolemy* naming in it, 1, *Aſpthara*, 2. *Senus*, 3. *Ambaſtus*, and 4. *Cotiaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Country only. But becauſe the Country of the *Sinæ*, of which *Ptolemy* ſpeaks, makes but a South part of this great Country, and the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*, paſs into it alſo, it is poſſible enough, that we may find them all amongſt the chief Rivers of this Country, whenſoever we ſhall come to have a more perfect Chorography hereof than former times have given us. In the mean ſeaſon we may know, that the names by which the principal Rivers are now called, are 1. *Talo*, which riſing in the North-Eaſt parts of the Country, and paſſing by the Southern Skirts of *Leaotong*, falleth into the Ocean over againſt the Iſland of *Corea*, making a little Iſlet at the Influx of it; fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle called *Xaingbai*, to ſecure that entrance. 2. *Croceus*, which ariſing in the Weſt-Borders hereof, firſt bendeth its courſe to the North-Eaſt, watering the City of *Kaiangchan*, and after paſſeth directly Eaſtward, till it falls at laſt into the *Talo*. 3. *Polaſanga*, which iſſuing out of ſome of the branches of Mount *Imaus*, firſt paſſeth by the great City of *Cambalu*, and falls at laſt into the mighty Lake of *Quinſay*, and finally again contracted to its proper Channel, doth either loſe it ſelf in the Eaſtern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4. *Cacamacan*, another of theſe great Rivers which falleth into the *Lake* of *Quinſay*, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the *Cathayan Tartars* call by the name of *Caramoram*. 5. *Kiang*, (or *Quiam*, as the *Tartars* call it) which having its original from Mount *Imaus*, and paſſing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Country, which divideth (like an Æquator) into North and South, watering therein the ſtately Cities of *Nanquin* and *Caiſung*, where it is no leſs than 4. miles broad, encreaſing more and more in breadth by the falling in of other principal Rivers, till it come at laſt to be ten miles over, and caſting up ſuch Mountains of Water, that the *Chineſes* call it not undeſervedly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6. *Cianthang*, the ſame (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quiantu*, which riſing out of ſome other ſpurs or branches of the Mount *Imaus*, falleth at laſt into this Country, and paſſing by the goodly City of *Hangcheu* on the North, and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its courſe at laſt in the Eaſtern Ocean. 7. *Queio*, a River of the Southern parts, but not much obſervable. Here are alſo many great Lakes, not inferiour to ſome Seas in bigneſs; ſo plentiful in Fiſh, as if they contended with the ſoil, which ſhould be moſt profitable: and yet ſo ſwelled with winds (though the winds many times blow ſtrongly) that both upon theſe Lakes, and on the Rivers and Sea-Coaſts they paſs up and down in ſmall Barks, with no other Sail than a Bough ſet up an end in the midſt of them; by the help whereof they make good ſpeed in their Navigations. Nor do theſe Lakes or Rivers uſe to overflow their banks, or endammage the Country: but when they do, it brings ſome fatal ruine with it; as in the year 1527, when the Lake of *Sancy* breaking out, overwhelmed ſeven Cities, many Towns and Villages, and Country People, almoſt infinite numbers.

Towns of moſt note amongſt the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Branna*, and 2. *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*; 3. *Aſpithra*, 4. *Acbatara*, more within the Land; but all four under ſome degree of Northern Latitude. 5. *Thiue* the Metropolis of the Country, by ſome called *Sinæ*; 6. *Sarata*, 7. *Catoranagara*; theſe on the South ſide of the Line. But in this *Ptolemy* was miſtaken; it being found by the more certain obſervations of our later Writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the Æquinoctial; and ſo not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a Southern Latitude. Here was alſo a large Bay called *Sinarum Sinus*, a Promontory named *Notium*, in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the Æquinox. More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to ſay, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are preſented to our view in the modern *China*, it hath been ſaid, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities; and thoſe ſo uniformly built, ſo conformable one to another, that they differ not in form and faſhion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia*, mentioned by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem ſitus omnibus; eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; ſo near reſembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Moſt of their Cities have the benefit of ſome navigable River, near which they ſtand: the waters whereof ſerve them both for Navigation, and domeſtick uſes. Two great Streets croſſing one another in the very midſt, ſo broad that ten horſemen may ride a-breaſt in the narroweſt of them; ſo ſtraight, that a Man ſtanding in the middle may ſee either end; each end being ſhut up with a Gate of great ſtrength and beauty; and thoſe Gates fortified and ſtrengthened with thick plates of Iron. Generally greater and more ſtately than thoſe of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy, which the Magnificent Churches, and more ſumptuous buildings for the diſpatch of publick buſineſſes, in theſe parts abound with. Their private houſes for the moſt part are ſo low, and deſtitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of Architecture. Nor are their Cities built only for reſort or trade, but for ſtrength and ſafety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the Walls of Brick or Stone, ſtrong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places; and every night the Gates not only locked, but ſealed; not to be opened till unſealed by the principal Magiſtrate. So like they are to one another, that we may ſay with *Ovid* on the like occaſion;

——*Facies non omnibus una,*
Nec diverſa tamen, qualem decet eſſe ſororum.

Which I find thus Engliſhed by Sir *G. Sands*.

Amongſt them all no two appear the ſame,
Nor differed more than Siſters well became.

But not to reſt our ſelves on this general Character, let us take a more particular view of ſome of the principal. And in that liſt we find, 1. *Quinſay*, called *Suntien* by the Natives, ſituated ſomewhat towards the South, on the Weſtern borders of this Kingdom, where it confineth on *Cathay*; of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the midſt of it a Lake of thirty miles compaſs; in which Lake were two goodly Iſlands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all neceſſaries, either for Majeſty or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feaſts, and the Marriages of the better ſort. The Lake nouriſhed with divers Rivers, the chief being *Poliſango*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers, 12000 Bridges are ſaid to have lifted up their ſtately heads: and under whoſe immenſe Arches, great Ships with Sails ſpread abroad, and top and top-gallant, might and did uſually paſs. It is alſo ſaid to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles aſunder, and every one in form *Quadrangular*, the ſides thereof half a mile in length. Here were ſaid alſo to be twelve Companies of Tradeſmen or Artiſans, each Company having 12000 Shops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatſoever it was in former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and ſince to *Nanquin* and *Pequin* by the Princes of the Houſe of *Hombu*, and partly the fury of Wars, and partly by the violence of Earthquakes, it hath loſt no ſmall part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2. *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of Sugar there made. 3. *Nanquin*, ſeated 9 Leagues from the Sea, on the great River *Kiang*, whereon ride for the moſt part no fewer than 10000 of the King's Ships, beſides ſuch as belong to private Men. The Town is in compaſs 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and ſtately Gates. The Streets in length two Leagues wide, and paved; the number of houſes is about 200000; ſo that it may equal four of the faireſt Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Pequin* or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Province ſo named, (being one of the four Northern Provinces which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually reſideth; and that either becauſe the Air hereof is more healthful and pleaſant, than any of the other, or becauſe it lieth near unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetual War: ſo that from hence the dangers which may by their Invaſions happen unto the Country, may with more convenience be either prevented, or reſiſted. The City ſaid to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Soldiers, and Magiſtrates, occaſioned by the King's abode. Environed on the South with two walls, of ſo great breadth, that twelve Horſe-men may run a-breaſt upon them; on the North with one Wall only, but that ſo ſtrong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little anoyance on that ſide as they do on the other. But the greateſt Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compaſſed about with a triple Wall, the outwardmoſt of which would well environ a large City; within which ſpace, beſides the many Lodgings for *Eunuchs*, and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleaſure, large in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*; firſt built by ſome of the *Tartar* Kings of this Country, in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Cathay*; honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the *Chams* themſelves, which as it gave unto the City the name of *Pequin*, that is to ſay, the Court or City of the King, in the Language of *China*; ſo gave it occaſion unto ſome Writers, to make this and *Cambalu* the ſame; both names being of the ſame ſignification, though in divers Languages. 5. *Cantan*, ſuppoſed to be the *Cattigara* of *Ptolemy*, by the *Chinois* called *Quamchen*, the leaſt of the Metropolitan Cities of this Country, but beautified with many Triumphant Arches, a Navigable River, large Streets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep Trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and ſeated in ſo rich a ſoil, both for Fowl and Cattel, that here are ſaid to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 12000 Ducks, beſides a proportionable quantity of other Victuals. If this be one of the leaſt of their Metropolitans what may we fancy of the greateſt? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy Trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it ſelf, but at night excluded, and forced to find Lodging in the Suburbs. By reaſon of which reſtraint they have ſettled their Mart at *Macao*, the Port-Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many Families; the Town being almoſt wholly Peopled by them. 6. *Leaotong*, the chief City of *Leaotong*, (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the firſt Town taken by the *Eaſtern Tartars* in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themſelves an entrance into all the reſt. 7, *Ninguiven*, made the Metropolis of *Leaotong* after the taking of *Leaotong* by the *Eaſtern Tartars*. 8. *Sigan*, or *Singan*, the chief City of *Xenſi*, another of the four Northern Provinces and honoured ſometimes with the King's reſidence. 9. *Xaoking*, on the South ſide of the River *Cientbang* one of the faireſt Cities of *China* ſo environed with ſweet waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, ſurrounding it in a Boat; conſiſting in large and fair Streets, paved on both ſides with white ſquare ſtones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whoſe ſides are garniſhed with the like ornament; and of the ſame ſtone there is alſo built many fair Bridges, and Triumphant Arches; the Houſes being all of the ſame ſtone alſo, which render it the neateſt (though not the biggeſt) City in this mighty Kingdom. 10. *Sucheau*, about two days journey from the Sea, ſeated in Marſhes like *Venice*, but more commodiouſly, becauſe thoſe Marſhes are of freſh water: the Streets and Houſes founded upon Piles of *Pine-Tree*, with many Bridges, and conveniences for Paſſage both by Land and Water. Well Traded, as the fitteſt *Center* for diſperſion of Merchandize from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of Ships, almoſt denying Faith to the Eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here aſſembled. So Infinitely rich, that the ſmall Region whereof it is the Head, containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King of yearly income. 11. *Hamſeu*, or *Hangcheu*, on the North ſide of the River *Cientbang*, out of which furniſhed with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the Metropolis of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea; in compaſs leſs than *Nanquin*, but better builded: no places in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other Pleaſures; but all imployed for Shops, Houſes, and other Edifices. So beautified with Triumphant Arches, erected to the honour of deſerving Magiſtrates, that in one Street there are 300 of great maſs, of workmanſhip. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-ſides of the Channels watering every Street, beſet with Trees of ſhade, and moſt excellent Fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high Mountain, which gives the Eye a gallant proſpect into every Street. And not far off a pleaſant Lake of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the Lake it ſelf even cloathed with Veſſels of all ſorts, on which the Citizens uſed to feaſt, and entertain their idle time with Plays and Spectacles. Two Cities ſo repleniſhed with all kinds of Pleaſures; that the *Chinois* uſe it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamſu hum*, that is to ſay, Look what the Hall or Preſence-Chamber is in Heaven, that *Hamſeu* and *Sucheau* are on Earth. 12. *Fochea*, beautified amongſt many other ſttately Structures, with a magnificent Tower erected on forty Marble-Pillars, of great elegancy, coſt and bigneſs, every Pillar being forty ſpans in height, and twelve in breadth: not to be parallel'd as ſome ſay, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13. *Lochiau*, in which are 70000 Families. 14. *Colans*, famous for the beſt Porcellane. 15. *Scianhay*, by ſome called *Thiencin*, a ſtation to which an incredible number of Ships reſort, both by Sea and River, from all parts of the Kingdom; ſeated within 24 hours ſail of the Iſle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a ſtrong Garriſon, and a Navy. Situate in a pleaſant and wholeſome Soil, the whole Country ſo ſet forth with Trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So Populous, that it containeth 40000 Houſeholds, moſt of which get ther livelihood by weaving Cottons, it being ſuppoſed that there are 200000 Perſons which attend that Manufacture. 16. *Chinchiamſu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a paſſage to *Sucheau*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cauſe ſo clogged with Ships in time of Winter, that the paſſage is ſtopped with the multitudes of them. 17. *Zuancheu*, a moſt rich and beautiful City, environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land to which Ships or Boats may have acceſs. 18. *Caiton*, or *Caifung*, ſeated upon the River *Giang*, a City once of three Leagues in compaſs, whoſe Harbour was ſeldom without 500 Ships and ſometimes honoured with the Seat or Reſidence of the Kings themſelves; moſt miſerably deſtroyed *Anno* 1642, by *Zunchinius* the late King of this Country, who breaking down the Dams and Sluces to let in the River, for the diſlodging of ſome Thieves and Out-laws, who had then beſieged it; gave it ſo great and forcible a paſſage towards the Town, that it bare down the greateſt part of the Houſes of it, and therein drowned above 300000 of the natural Citizens; before which time the Metropolis or chief City of the Province of *Honan*. 19. *Kaingcheu*, on the South ſide of the River *Croceus*, the richeſt and the faireſt City in this part of the Country, commodiouſly ſeated to command that River, 20. *Chaiking*, the head City of the Province of *Quamtung*, for the ſtrength and conveniency of its ſituation thought fitteſt for the Seat of *Jungly*, the laſt declared Emperour of the *Chineſes* againſt the *Tartars*. 21. *Queilin*, the chief City of the Province of *Quangſi*. 22. *Taitung*, the Metropolis or chief City of *Xanſi* or *Canſay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not elſe obſervable for any thing I find of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23. *Manchange*, a chief City of the Province of *Kianſi*, of which little memorable; and leſs of, 24. *Cegiron*, but that it is like unto the reſt in form and ſtructure.

Beſides the Provinces before-mentioned there are three others not directly under the Dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to ſay, 1. The Province of *Suchuen*, 2. The Iſland of *Corea*, 3. The Iſland of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Sucheau*, lyeth on the South-Weſt of this Kingdom, of the ſame nature both for Soil and Air with the reſt of *China*, but poſſeſſed by a more warlike people; the Women here being trained up to feats of Arms, and ſo well practiſed on their weapons; that when the Queen hereof went to the Aid of the Emperour *Vanley* againſt the *Tartars*, *Anno* 1618, ſhe took with her a ſmall Army of 3000 women: performing actions not unworthy the braveſt men: The chief City hereof is called *Cingru*, of great capacity, and ſo exceeding populous withall, that *Changhienchungus* (that moſt barbarous Tyrant) cauſed no fewer than 600000 of them (men, women, and children, all indifferently) to be ſlaughtered in one day before his face. The whole Country Governed for a long time by its own Kings of the

ſame *Taimingian* Race with the Kings of *China*, from whom having received their inveſtiture, they were afterwards of abſolute Authority over their own Subjects, who acknowledg no other King but him. And in this ſtate it did continue till the year 1644, when *Chanbienchungus*, whom before I named, entering into this Country with his rabble of Rogues, made a Conqueſt of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we ſpake of: diſpeopled the great City of *Cingtu*, butchered at one time twenty thouſand Prieſts, at another time eighteen thouſand Students; and finally committed ſuch unſpeakable outrages, that the *Tartars* in meer pity to that wretched People, ſent an Army againſt him, by which he was vanquiſhed, and ſlain; this Province thereupon ſubmitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is a Peninſula of the Eaſtern Ocean, not far from the North-Eaſt of *China*, over againſt the fall of the River *Yalo*. The quality of the ſoil, the demenſions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The People far more warlike than thoſe of *China*, by reaſon of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Japonites*, with whom they have always either open Wars, or uncertain Peace. Invaded by thoſe Iſlanders and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Country to the King of *China*, who having repulſed the Invaders, reſtored their Country freely to them, without laying any other Impoſition on them than of love and gratitude, which obligations thoſe of *Corea*, have diſcharged moſt fully. For when *Vanley*, the late Emperour of *China*, was firſt invaded by the *Tartars*, they ſent unto his aid twelve thouſand men well Armed and Exerciſed in the Wars; increaſing their ſupplies in the time of *Theinkius*, who next but one ſucceeded *Vanley*. Drawing the whole ſtorm upon themſelves by thoſe friendly aids, they were accordingly aſſiſted by the King of *China*, whoſe Forces came ſo ſeaſonably in the heat of Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the *Peninſula*, but with ſuch incredible loſs on all ſides, that few or none eſcaped of the Army of *China*, ſeventy thouſand of the *Coreans* ſlain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thouſand of their men behind them; after this they were unmoleſted, till the fatal and final Conqueſt of the Kingdom of *China*; when ſeeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no poſſibility of reſiſtance, they ſubmitted to them, about the year 1648, upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of perſonal danger, or fear of publick deſolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Iſland of the ſame Seas, on the South of *Corea*, oppoſite to the City of *Nympus*, in the main Land of *China*; an Iſland which being heretofore a dwelling-place of poor Clowns and Fiſhermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Lu. Regulus*, choſen by a party of his own to ſucceed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withſtanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himſelf into this Iſland with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the natural *Chineſes*, who choſe rather to forſake their Country, than to conform in Hair and Habit to the will of the *Tartars*; inſomuch that there are now found in this Iſland threeſcore and ten Cities, with a ſtrong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for ſome happy occaſion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The Ancient Inhabitants of the *Sinæ*, in the time of *Ptolemy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini* bordering a Mountain of that name, and th[illegible]nly one remembred in all this Country: more Southward, the *Acadræ*, and *Aſpithræ*, towards the Sea *Anabaſtæ*, and *Ichthyophagi* (theſe laſt ſo called from living wholly upon Fiſh.) United into one body by the name of *Sinæ*, and known by that name to the Romans, in the time of *Ptolemy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the Weſt with *India extra Gangem*, and on the Eaſt and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the leaſt part of the Modern *China*; *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the North-Weſt of it, and the main Ocean waſhing it on the Eaſt and South; yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late *Latine* Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinenſium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they ſtretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolemy*, and whether they ſubdued the Eaſtern and more Northern Nations, or were Conquered by them, it were hard to ſay; nor is it eaſie to reſolve, from what original theſe and the reſt of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythes*: or that it was primitively planted by ſome of the Poſterity of *Noah*, before the enterpriſe of *Babel*: which laſt may probably be concluded from the extreme populouſneſs of the Country, the many magnificent Cities, their Induſtry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their Neighbours, more ignorant in thoſe things than themſelves. And hereunto the Chronicles of *China* ſeem to give ſome ground, which tell us of three hundred and forty Kings, which for the ſpace of four thouſand years have therein reigned. For as their Chronicles inform us, (if they may be credited) the Country being without Rule or ſettled Government, was firſt reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Son of *Ezolem*; by whom the people were inſtructed in *Phyſick*, *Aſtrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or ſawing Timber, added the uſe of Ships and Houſes, and many other the effects of Mechanical hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of the Commanders, ſubdued a great part of the Country, he drew them into Towns and Villages, diſtributed them into Offices, and ſeveral Trades, diſpoſing thoſe of the ſame Trade into Streets by themſelves; and commanding that no man without leave from himſelf, or his Officers, ſhould follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He preſcribed them alſo the faſhion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well eſtabliſhed unto his Poſterity. Of this Race there are ſaid to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years.

The laſt of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being illneighboured by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is ſaid to have built that vaſt Wall ſpoken of before: extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a ſtrong Rampart or Bulwark, continually garriſoned, and well furniſhed with all warlike neceſſaries. He being ſlain by ſome of his Subjects, burdened and waſted with his work, the Race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchoſan* ſucceeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his Line it continued under 25 Kings, but ſhrewdly ſhaken towards the cloſe by a Civil War, betwixt *Truntbey*, the 23 of his Houſe, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well ſettled under *Quiontey*, the lateſt of this Houſe when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other faction, ſet upon him and ſlew him. And ſo the Majeſty of the Blood Royal being trod under foot, the Crown was alſo toſſed from one hand to another, and made a Prey unto the ſtrongeſt: there being of the Race of this *Tzobu* eight Kings, Reigning ſixty two years; Of the Race of *Dian*, five Kings, who Reigned thirty one; of the Race of *Tzoy*, three only who Reigned thirty ſeven; of the Race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years, and eight there were who Reigned 120 years, of the Houſe of *Tautzom*. Of other upſtart Families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings alſo, who Governed only for the ſpace of ſixty ſix years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himſelf from *Vitey*, the firſt King of the Country, obtained the Kingdom which he and ſeventeen of his Poſterity, for the ſpace of 320 years, Governed with much Peace and Honour. *Forfar*, the laſt King of that Royal Family, foretold by Prophecy that he ſhould be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had *an* *hundred Eyes*, neglected the *Advertiſement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreable to that Prediction, when vanquiſhed by *Chiſan-baan* (which word ſignifieth *an hundred Eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Uſan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but Feudatary and Vaſſal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was Governed for the ſpace of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham* and dependants on him: the *Chams* themſelves many times paſſing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleaſures or affairs did invite them to it, which occaſioned ſuch a continual entercourſe betwixt thoſe of *China* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated ever ſince that time of the manners and cuſtoms of each other. But here it is to be obſerved, That the *Tartars* ſpent almoſt as much time in the Conqueſt of *China*, as they did in the poſſeſſion of it; the war being firſt begun *Anno* 1206, finiſhed 1268, the *Tartars* being totally routed when they had Reigned here 90 years only, that is to ſay, *Anno* 1358 or thereabouts. For then happened that a mean Perſon called *Hugh*, conſidering with himſelf the diſcontentedneſs of the *Chineſes* under ſo long Bondage, the Luxury of the *Tartars* effeminated with the pleaſures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Gino Cham*, then Reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raiſed to himſelf ſo ſtrong a Party, that in a ſhort time he drave the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themſelves to thoſe parts of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Nieuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the Weſt, he not only recover'd back to *China* ſuch parts thereof as had been laid unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable Neighbour to the *Cham* himſelf; Advanced for this great Service to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269, he took unto himſelf the name of *Hungus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which ſignifieth as much as the *Famous Warrier*, and gave unto his Children and their Poſterity, the name of the *Taingian* Family; which they ſtill continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamberlane* muſtereth up his Forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the Field 350000 Horſe and Foot, yet nothing could reſiſt the powerful Genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained here a ſignal Victory with the death of 60000 *Chineſes*: but wiſely moderating his proſperity; and mainly bent upon his War againſt the *Turks*, he thought it his beſt and ſafeſt way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own, impoſing on him a Fine of 300000 Crowns in ready money, a certain annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions, which as they were pleaſing to the Victor, ſo they were not deſtructive to the vanquiſhed. By means hereof it came to paſs, that ſuch a long communication in affairs of State, having paſſed between *China* and *Cathay* (thoſe of *China* in old times Lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chineſes*) there grew a great reſemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is ſaid, which circumſtances layed together, may afford ſome reaſon why in ſome Writers, eaſily miſguided by ſuch probabilities, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the ſame. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in old times only over part of *Scythia*, but alſo over part of *India*, and ſome of the *Oriental* Iſlands. But the Princes of the Houſe of *Hombu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their deſires, abandoned all the Acceſſories and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto not only by their own moderation, but by ſome misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempeſts, loſt no fewer than 260 of their Ships and Gallies, reſolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the Seas, which had uſed them ſo unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loſs of 800 Ships, near unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Iſlands from obedience unto them, and contented themſelves with the bounds which Nature had beſtowed on them. And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example: For when the People of *Corea*, a ſmall Iſland abutting on the Confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*, they ſubmitted themſelves unto the King of *China*; who having repulſed the Enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, preſently re-delivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and Liberty. A rare fact of a contented people, which whether it ſavoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the ſpace of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this Line, ſucceeded his elder Brother, unfortunately ſlain with a fall from a Horſe, Reported for a Prince of good diſpoſition, great judgment, and a ſevere Juſticiary. This *Boneg* (otherwiſe called *Vanley*) begun his Reign, 1573. Governing this Kingdom in great proſperity and glory for the ſpace of 40 years and upwards; when cauſing the Chriſtian Subjects and the *Jeſuits* their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Juſtice to the *Eaſtern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leaotong*, he drew that People into Arms, as if marked out for Executioners of Divine diſpleaſure. Stript by them in the year 1618, of a part of *Leaotong*, and braved by their Forces within ſight of *Peking*, he contracted ſome melancholick Diſtempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichangus*, who having held it but four months, left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinckius*, a Valiant Prince and fortunate againſt the *Tartars*, but of ſhort continuance. For dying in the year 1627, he was ſucceeded in that Kingdom by his Brother *Zunchinius*, a Prince of contrary diſpoſition, cruelly bent, a great Oppreſſor of his Subjects, and for theſe cauſes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, than for love of him) until the year 1640 or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppreſſed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, ariſe in eight Companies of Armies, which growing wanton by ſucceſs, and warring upon one another, they are at laſt reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to ſay, *Lycungzus* and *Changhienchungus*.

Theſe two being come no an agreement took their ſeveral ways, the laſt of them falling into *Suchuen*, whoſe villanies and deſerved deſtruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641, beſieged *Chifang*, the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great ſtrength, but far greater riches; on the ruin whereof by the King's improvidence, and his ſubduing the whole Province of *Xenſi*, he took to himſelf the Title of King, and would be called *Lycungzus* the *Proſperous*; and not long after eaſing the people of the Taxes which the avaricious King had impoſed upon them, putting the Tax-maſters to death, and gaining upon all ſorts of men by his courteous uſage, he took unto himſelf the name of Emperour. *Zunchinius* ſucceeds his Brother, hindred by Factions in the Court, from ſending ſeaſonable Forces againſt the Rebels, who paſſing over the great River *Croceus* without any reſiſtance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperour ſeeing to way to eſcape their hands, hanged himſelf in his own Orchard, *Anno* 1644; his example therein followed by the Empreſs and his principal Servants. The body of the Emperour cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magiſtrates murdered, and that great City ſacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Xenſi* by *Uſangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaotong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge thoſe Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the Wealth and Treaſure which the Emperours of the *Taimingian* Family had amaſſed together in the ſpace of 260 years and upwards. *Zungteus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking*, died preſently after, leaving his Son at nine years old to ſucceed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully diſcharged the truſt repoſed in them; infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occaſion, and thoſe not only of the Eaſtern but the Weſtern Nations.

By theſe the Infant-King was proclaimed Emperour of *China*, by the name of *Xaunchius*, ſtyling the new Imperial Family by the name of *Tailing*, the eldeſt of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of affairs.

Uſangueius by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Xenſi*, out of which he ſhortly drove the Rebels, and poſſeſſed himſelf of it; *Lycungzus* being either killed in the fight, or elſe otherwiſe loſt. *Hunquangus* Nephew to *Vanley*, and Couſin German to *Zunchinius*, elected Emperour by the *Chineſes* of the Southern parts, is oppoſed herein by one that pretended himſelf to be the eldeſt Son of *Zunchinius*; which diviſion gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces, and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperour being ſhortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Walls of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count moſt noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinius* diſcovered, and ſerved in the ſame ſort alſo. And though *Loangus* firſt, and afterwards *Jungley* and *Lu. Regulus*, were choſen and dedeclared Emperours by their ſeveral parties, *Anno* 1648. Yet nothing could prevail againſt the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Loangus* being forced to put himſelf into their power, *Jungley* to fly into the Mountains, and *Lu. Regulus* to ſecure himſelf in the Iſle of *Cheuxan*.

What hath ſucceeded ſince that year, future times will ſhew.

The Reverend Author has given an imperfect account of the progreſs of the *Tartarian* War, from the year 1644, to 1648, which from the Annals of *China* I ſhall farther enlarge.

Uſanquei perceiving when it was too late, that he had imprudently called in Lions to curb the inſolences of the *China*-Dogs, took upon him by the permiſſion of the *Tartar* King, the Title and Honour of King of *Xenſi*; and had for his Seat the City *Singnan*, which a little before had been ruined by *Li* a Rebel *Chinian*. The *Tartar* having by this time, made himſelf maſter of all the Northern Provinces, proceeded to the Conqueſt of the Southern. In 1645, *Humquan* the Nephew of *Vanley*, was proclaimed King of *China* at *Nan-kim*, but was ſoon after taken priſoner with his Son *Zumchim*, and ſent to *Peking*, where they were both Hanged. From thence the *Tartar* goes to *Chekiam*, where he found *Lavam* Preſident, who wiſely refuſed the Title of King of *China* when it was offered him: When the *Tartar* came before this City, he kneeled upon the wall and ſubmitted to them without any reſiſtance, ſaying, *He willingly Sacrificed himſelf for the ſafety of his people.*

In the Province of *Fokien*, *Vanley* the Nephew of *Lumvu*, had been proclaimed King, but upon the coming of the *Tartars*, the Province was reduced without reſiſtance, and he was put to death. *Chimchilum*, a Native of this Province was then Admiral of *China*, who had before been Servant to the *Portugueſe* at *Macao*, and was by them Baptized by the name of *Nicholas*; from ſmall beginnings by a Trade with the *Spaniards* and *Hollanders*, he became very rich, and turn'd Pirate, pretendingly ſubmitting with his Fleet, firſt to *Zumvu*, and after he was ſlain to the *Tartar*, who gave him a Government to blind him; and ſo ſurpriz'd him by ſending for him to Court: *Queſim* his Son eſcaped their hands, and took upon him the Command of his Father's Fleet, and would never after truſt the *Tartar* more.

In the mean time the *Tartar* proceeded to the Conqueſt of *Quantum*, and *Quamſi*, the two moſt Southern Provinces, in which he met with little reſiſtance except in *Quamſi*, where *Kiu Thomas* was Preſident, and *Chin Lucas* (both Chriſtians) was his General; and they had got together a great Army, with which they fought and beat the *Tartar* Army. After this Victory, they elected *Yumlie*, of the Family of *Vanley*, King of *China*, who ſettled at *Chaokin* a City of *Quantum*. This Prince ſuffered his Son and Wife to be Baptized as is ſaid above. Hereupon *Vam* a Prieſt, and *Zueſim* the Admiral, recovered the greateſt part of *Fokien*, and *Kin* Governour of *Kiamſi*, revolted from the *Tartar* at the ſame time.

And in the North, *Ho* and *Kiam*, two other *Chineſes* took Arms againſt the *Tartars*, and got great Armies together. *Ho* took many Cities in *Xenſi*, and beſieged without ſucceſs the Metropolis. And *Kiam* had in the ſame Province under him, 140000 Horſe, and more Foot, and he beat the *Tartar* in two ſet Battels, ſo that they durſt fight him no more in open field; but by Craft, Strategems, Gold, Promiſes, Delays and Treachery, they at laſt prevailed againſt him, and in four years recovered again, all the South Provinces. On the Weſt of *China* in the Province of *Suchuen*, *Chambienchum* got together a parcel of Rogues, and over-run the Provinces of *Huquam*, *Honan*, *Nankim* and *Kiamſi*; and at laſt ſpent the dreggs of his fury upon *Suchuen*: He murdered the Governour of it; would deſtroy whole Streets for the offence of one of the Inhabitants, yet at the ſame time he pretended to be a great friend to the Chriſtians. In the year 1646, he ſlew all the Inhabitants of *Chimtu* the Capital of *Xenſi*, and did ſo many other Barbarous Actions, that the *Tartar* ſent a ſmall party againſt him who ſlew him, he being hated by all men for his exorbitant cruelty; whereupon, the People of *Suchuen* ſubmitted to the *Tartar* as to their deliverer. By this time that Prince, was maſter of all the Northern and Weſtern Provinces, only four of the Southern Provinces *viz.* *Chekiam*, *Fokien*, *Quantum* and *Quanſi*, were under *Yumlie* the laſt of the *Chinian* Kings: The *Tartar* ſat down before the Metropolis of *Quantum*, and after a year's Siege took it, the 24th of *November*, 1650; in the ſeventh year of *Yumlie's* Reign, in which there periſhed 100000 *Chinians*: From thence he went againſt *Chaokin* his Royal City, but *Yumlie* diſtruſting his Forces, fled firſt into *Quamſi*, and from thence fled to the King of *Pegu*. This year *Xunchi*, the *Tartar* King of *China*, being fourteen years of Age, and married to a Daughter of the King of the *Weſt Tartars*, upon the death of *Amavam* his Guardian, took upon him the Government of that Kingdom. He ſettled the Laws, Letters, and Cuſtoms of *China*, with ſome ſmall changes, retained the ſix Supreme Courts, putting in an equal number of *Chinians* and *Tartars*; committing the Civil Government to the *Chinians*, and the military to the *Tartars*. In 1661, *Quiſim* the Admiral, beat the *Hollanders* out of *Formoſa*, but hearing the next year the *Hollanders* had made a League with the *Tartars* againſt him, he died of deſpair and rage. *Yumlie* having fled into *Pegu*, as is aboveſaid, continued there till 1661, and then upon the threatening Letters of the *Tartar*, was delivered up by the King of *Pegu* with all his Kindred, and hanged by the *Tartars*.

The ſame year, *Xunchi* the *Tartar* King of *China*, died of the Small-pox, and *Cambi* his Son, a Child of leſs than eight years of age ſucceeded him. The firſt twelve years of his Reign were very peaceable, but in 1673, a new war broke out; *Uſanquei*, who had called in the *Tartars* and was now Vice-Roy of *Yunnan*, refuſed to come to the Court without a guard of 80000 men; hereupon a War enſued, and he ſoon poſſeſſed himſelf of *Suchuen*, *Queicheu* and half *Huquam*. In 1675, the Vice-Roys of *Fokien* and *Quantum*, revolted, with them joyned the Inhabitants of *Formoſa*, and there had been an end of the *Tartar Kingdom* if they had all united againſt him; but the Prince of *Fokien* fell upon the Governour of *Quantum* and a war followed between them, till the *Tartar* came down againſt both, and put an end to it by their ruin. But *Uſanquis* held out ſtill and defended his Province againſt the *Tartars*, till the year 1679, in which he died, and *Humboa* his Son was made King in his ſtead; who in the year 1681, was reduced by the *Tartar* to that neceſſity, that he hang'd himſelf to avoid falling into his hands. Thus ended the *Tartar* War in *China*, which was began in 1616, and laſted 65 years, and had never in all probability had this effect, if the *Chinians* by their own diviſions, animoſities and Imprudence had not promoted the Conqueſt of their Country.

In the year 1682, *Cam-Hi* the preſent *Tartar* King of *China*, being now the peacable poſſeſſor of the whole Kingdom of *China*, reſolved to viſit his paternal Kingdom, and made a Royal progreſs into *Eaſt Tartary* with an Army of 70000 men; and the next year he went into *Weſt Tartary* in the ſame manner, and forty of the Princes there ſubmitted to him quietly, and became his Subjects: an account of both theſe Journeys were written by one *Verbieſt* a *Jeſuit*, who was in both theſe Expeditions. This potent Prince (if ſtill living) Reigns over *China*, and all the *Tartars* beyond *Imaus*, to the borders of *Ruſſia*; which ſufficiently ſhews there is no other great *Cham* of *Tartary* beſides he.

A CATALOGUE of the KINGS of *CHINA*.

Before Christ.		
2697	1	*Hoam Ti*, the Founder of their Monarchy, was Elected at twelve years of Age, Reigned 100 years.
2597	2	*Xao Hago*, 84.
1517	3	*Chuin Hio*, 78.
1457	4	*Ti Co*, 70.
1397	5	*Yao*, 100. This Prince was their Law-giver, the author of their Calendar, and inſtituter of the ſix Courts of Juſtice.
1297	6	*Xun* began his Reign under *Yao* but he Reigned alone 50.
1217	7	*Ta Yu Chuenhio* the Nephew of *Xun*, was the Founder of a new Family, which under ſeventeen Kings, Reigned 458 years. He Reigned 20.
	8	*Ti Ki*, 9.
	9	*Tai Cam*, 29.
	10	*Chum Cam*, 13.
1157	11	*Ti Siam* 27.
	12	*Hanzo*, an Uſurper 40.
1097	13	*Xao Cam* of the former Houſe, 22.
	14	*Ti Xu*, 17.
	15	*Ti Hoa*, 26.
	16	*Ti Main*, 18.
	17	*Ti Sie*, 16.
	18	*Ti Pu Kiam*, 59.
1977	19	*Ti Kium*, 21.
	20	*Ti Kin*, 21.
1857	22	*Ti Pu Xiam*, 13.
	23	*Ti Cao*, 11.
	24	*Ti Fa*.
	25	*Kie*, 13. This proved ſo bad a Prince, that he was deſerted by all his Subjects and died in Exile.
1797	26	*Chimtam* the Nephew of *Hoamti*. was Elected at 87 years of Age, and founded the Family of *Xam*, which laſted 644, under 28 Kings. he Reigned 13.
	27	*Tai Kia*, 33. Grand-Child of *Chimtam*.
1737	28	*Vo Tim*. 29.
	29	*Tai Kem*, 25.
	30	*Siao Kia*, 17.
1677	31	*Yum Ki*, 12.
	32	*Tai Vu*, 75.
	33	*Chum Tim*, 13.
	34	*Vai Cin*, 15.
	35	*Ho Tan Kia*, 9.
	36	*Zu Ye*, 19.
	37	*Zu Sin*, 16.
	38	*Vo Kia*, 25,
1497	39	*Zu Tim*, 32.
1437	40	*Nan Kem*, 25.
	41	*Yam Kia*, 7.
	42	*Puon Kem*, 28.
	43	*Siao Sin*, 21.
1377	44	*Siao Ye*, 28.
	45	*Vu Tim*, 59.
	46	*Zu Kem*, 7.
	47	*Zu Kiu*, .
	48	*Lin Sin*, 6.
	49	*Kem Tim*, 21.
	50	*Un Ye*, 4.
1197	51	*Tai Tim*, 3.
	52	*Ti Ye*, 37.
	53	*Cheu*, 33.
1137	54	*Vu Vam*, 7. The founder of the Family of *Cheu*, which laſted 878 years, under 35 Kings. He came old to the Crown and Reigned 7.
	55	*Chim Vam*, 37.
	56	*Cam Vam*, 26.
	57	*Chao Vaus*, 51.
1077	58	*Chao Vam* 2. 51.
1017	59	*Mo Vam*, 55. This was the firſt Prince that began a War with the *Tartars*.
	60	*Cum Vam*, 12.
	61	*Ye Vam*, 25.
	62	*Hiao Vam*, 15.
897	63	*Y Vam*, 16.
	64	*Li Vam*, 51. Died in Exile, having forbidden his People to ſpeak to one another, which they obſerved three years.
837	65	*Siven Vam*, 46.
	66	*Yeu Vam*, 11. He made the ſecond War upon the *Weſt Tartars*, in which he was ſlain.
777	67	*Pim Vam*, 51.
	68	*Huo Vam*, 23.
717	69	*Chuam Vam*, 15.
	70	*Li Vam*, 5.
	71	*Hoei Vam*, 52.
	72	*Siam Vam*, 33.
	73	*Kim Vam*, 6.
	74	*Quam Vam*, 21.
597	75	*Kien Vam*, 14.
	76	*Lim Vam*, 27.
	77	*Kim Vam*, 25.
537	78	*Kim Vam*, 2. 44.
477	79	*Yuen Vam*, 7,
	80	*Chin Tim Vam*, 28.
	81	*Cao Vam*, 15.
	82	*Guei Lie Vam*, 24.
417	83	*Ngan Vam*, 26.
	84	*Lie Vam*, 7.
	85	*Hien Vam*, 48.
357	86	*Xin Cin Vam*, 6.
	87	*Nan Vam*, 59.
	88	*Cheu Kiun*, 7.
	89	*Chuam Siam Vam*, Reigned but three days, yet he Founded the Family of *Cin*, which laſted 43 years under four Kings.
237	90	*Xi Hoam Ti*, 37. A warlike Prince, ſubdued ſix Kingdoms, and ſent his Fleets to *Bengala*. In the 24th year of his Reign, he founded the famous Wall againſt the *Tartars*.
	91	*Uluxi*, 2. Son of the former. 3.
	92	*Im Vam*, 45. days.
	93	*Cao Zu* or *Lieupam*, Founded the fifth Family called *Han*, which laſted 426 years, under 25 Kings. 12.
	94	*Hoei Ti*, 7.
	95	*Quie Hea* a Woman, Uſurped and Reigned eight years.
	96	*Ven Ti*, Son of the Founder. 23.
	97	*Kim Ti*, 17.
	98	*Vu Ti*, 54.
	99	*Chao Ti*, 13.
	100	*Siven Ti*, 25.
57	101	*Yuen Ti*,16.
	102	*Chim Ti*, 26.

102 *Hiao Ngai Ti*, 6. } In the end of the one, and the beginning of the other's Reign, was our Bleſſed Saviour Born.
103 *Hiao Pim Ti*, 13 }

Anno Chriſti.

58 104 *Hiao Pim Ti*, 5. He was murdered by *Vam Mam* his General.
105 *Ju Zu Ym*, 3. Depoſed by the ſame Traytor *Vam Mam*, 14, and then was ſlain.
106 *Hoai Yam Vam*, of the Family of *Kim Ti*, 2.
107 *Quam Vu Ti*, 33. Elected from the Plough, yet he proved an Excellent Prince.
108 *Mim Ti*, 18.
64 109 *Cham Ti*, 13.
110 *Ho Ti*, 17.
111 *Xam Ti*, 1.
112 *Nigan Ti*, 19.
124 113 *Xun Ti*, 19.
114 *Chum Ti*, 1.
115 *Che Ti*, 1.
116 *Huon Ti*, 12.
117 *Lum Ti*, 22. Of the Houſe of *Cham Ti*.
118 *Hien Ti*, 31.
119 *Chao Lie Vam*, of the Line of *Xim Ti*, the Founder of the Houſe of *Hen Han*, 3.
120 *Hen Ti*, 41.
121 *Xi Zu Vu Ti*, 25. Founder of the Family of *Cin*, which under 15 Kings Reigned 135.
122 *Hoei Ti*, 17.
304 123 *Hoai Ti*, 6. The twentieth Son of the Founder.
124 *Mim Ti*, 4. A Grand-Child of the Founder.
125 *Yuen Ti*, 6.
126 *Mim Ti*, 3.
127 *Chim Ti*, 17.
128 *Cam Ti*, 2.
139 *Mo Ti*, 17.
130 *Ngai Ti*, 4. Son of *Chim Ti*.
131 *Ti Ye*, 5.
132 *Kien Ven Ti*, 2.
133 *Vu Ti*, 24.
134 *Ngan Ti*, 22.
135 *Cum Ti*, 2.
136 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, 2. Called alſo *Lieu Vu*, the Founder of the eighth Family called *Sum*, which under eight Kings ſtood 59 years.
424 137 *Xao Ti*, 1. Depoſed and murdered.
138 *Ven Ti*, 30.
149 *Vu Ti*, 11.
140 *Fi Ti*, 1.
141 *Mim Ti*, 8.
142 *Zam Ngu Vam*, 4.
143 *Xun Ti*, 2.
144 *Xao Ti*, 4.
145 *Vu Ti*, 11.
494 146 *Mim Ti*, 5.
147 *Hoen Heu* 2.
148 *Ho Ti*, 1.
149 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, The murderer of two Kings and ſix Princes; Founded the Family of *Leam*, which under four Kings laſted 55 years, of which he Reigned 48.
550 150 *Kien Veu Ti*, 2. } All Sons of the Founder.
151 *Tuen Ti*, 3. }
152 *Kim Ti*, 2 }
153 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, called alſo *Chim Pa Sien*, Founder of the Family of *Chin*, of which five Kings Reigned 33 years, and he Reigned but 8.
154 *Ven Ti*, ſeventh Brother of the Founder.
155 *Lim Hai Vam*, 2.
156 *Sivem Ti*, 14. Nephew to the Founder.
157 *Cham Chim Cum*, 7.
158 *Cao Zu Ven Ti*, called alſo *Yam Kien*, Founder of the Family of *Suy*, which under three Kings, laſted 29 years, of which he Reigned 15.
604 159 *Yam Ti*, Second Son of the Founder, and the murderer of his Father, and Brother. 13.
160 *Cum Ti*, 1.
161 *Xin Eao Ti*, Founder of the Family of *Tam*, which under 20 Kings, laſted 289 years; of which he Reigned 9.
162 *Tai Zum*, 23. A wiſe and good Prince, who was the Eſtabliſher of this Family.
163 *Cao Zum*, 34.
Veu Heu, a Woman, 21. Not numbered.
164 *Chum Zum*, 5. Son of *Cao Zum*.
165 *Juy Zum*, 2. Son of *Cao Zum*.
166 *Hiven Zum* 44. The Reſtorer of his Family.
167 *So Zum*, 6.
168 *Tii Zum*, 17.
169 *Te Zum*, 25.
795 170 *Xun Zum*, 1.
171 *Hien Zum*, 15.
172 *Mo Zum*, 4.
173 *Kim Zum*, 2.
847 174 *Sinem Zum*, 13. Nephew of *Hien Zum*, Elected againſt a Son of *Ven Zum* and proved a wiſe man.
175 *Y Zum*, 14.
176 *Hi Zum*, 15.
177 *Cao Zum*, 16.
904 178 *Chao Sinen Zum*, 2.
189 *Tai Zu*, 6.
180 *Mo Ti*, 10.
181 *Chuam Zum*, 3.
182 *Mim Zum*, 8.
183 *Min Zum*, 1.
184 *Fi Ti* or *Lovam*, 1.
185 *Cao Zu*, the Father in Law of *Mim Zum*, Uſurped the Throne and Founded the Family of *Heu Cin*, which laſted but eleven years, of which he Reigned 7.
186 *Ci Vam*, 4.
187 *Cao Zu*, Founder of the Family of *Heu Han* which laſted but four years. 2.
188 *Yn Ti*, 2.
199 *Tai Zu*, Founder of the Family of *Heu Cheu*, nine years under three Kings, of which he Reigned 3.
190 *Xi Cum*, 6.
191 *Cum Ti*, a few Months.
161 192 *Tai Zu*, 17 years, The Founder of the Family of *Heu Cheu*, in which 18 Kings Reigned 319 years. This was one of their beſt Princes and Head of the Happieſt Families.
193 *Tai Zum*, 21.
194 *Chin Zum*, 25. In his time the *Tartar War* began,
195 *Gin Zum*, 41.
196 *Yum Zum*, 4.
197 *Xin Zum*, 18.
198 *Che Zum*. 15.
1100 199 *Hoei Zum*, 25.
200 *Kin Zum*. 1.
201 *Cao Zum*, 36. This Prince ſubmitted to the *Tartars*, and own'd himſelf their Subject.
202 *Hiao Zum*, 27
203 *Qumn Zum*, 5.
204 *Nim Zum*, 30. In his time, about the year 1204, the *Weſt Tartars* fell under the Family of *Yuen*, which 32 years after Conquered *China*.
1225 205 *Li Zum*, 40. This Prince joined with the *Weſtern Tartars* to ruin the *Eaſtern*, and at laſt effected it; to the ruin of *China*.
1264 206 *Tu Zum*, 10. *A Luxurious* Prince, who hereby provoked his Subjects, to join with the *Tartars* againſt him.

208 *Cum Zum*, 2.
209 *Tuan Zum*, 2.
210 *Ti Pim*, 2.
The Sons of *Tu Zum*, all Children; the laſt was thrown by his Mother into the Sea, and the Kingdom poſſeſſed by the *Tartar*.

The Monarchy of *China* had ſubſiſted under nineteen Families 4222 years, when it was now firſt forced to ſubmit to the Yoke of a Foreign Prince. The King of the *Weſt Tartars*, who yet by the Sincerity, Faith, Love and Beneficence, that he and his Succeſſors ſhewed to the *Chinians*, (tho' a Conquered Nation) ſo obliged and won them that they call his Race *Xim Chao*, the holy Government to this day.

1281 211 *Xi Zu*, 15. The Son of *Tai Zu* King of *Tartary*, and Founder of the Family of *Yven*, which under nine Kings laſted 89 years. This was a brave, prudent, valiant King, and a great Lover of Learning.

212 *Chim Cum*, or *Zum*, 13.

213 *Vu Zum*, 4.

214 *Gin Zum*, 9.

215 *Ym Zi*, 3. The Son of *Chim Zum*.

216 *Tai Tim*, 5.

217 *Mim Zum*, 1.

218 *Ven Zum*, 3.

219 *Xun Ti Ti*, 35, a good natured but Luxurious Prince, ſo that one *Chu* a Servant of the *Bonzi's*, gathered a Band of Thieves and beat the effeminate *Tartars* in every place.

1370 220 *Tai Zu*, or *Cheu*, 31. The Conquerour of the *Tartars*, and Founder of the Family of *Chau*, which under ſixteen Kings laſted 276 years.

221 *Xin Vu Ti*, 4. Grand-Child of *Tai Zu*.

222 *Chim Zu*, alias *Yum Lo* Son of the Founder, 13.

223 *Gin Zum*, 1.

1426 224 *Siven Zum* or *Te*, 10.

225 *Ym Zum*, 14. He led an Army againſt the *Tartars* beyond the Wall, was beaten and and carried Captive into *Tartary* where he died.

226 *Kim Ti*, or *Tay*, 7. a Child of two years of Age.

1457 227 *Ym Zum*, 8.

1465 228 *Hien Zum*, 23.

1488 229 *Hiao Zum* 18.

1506 230 *Vu Zum*, 16. This Prince would have gon to War in Perſon againſt the *Tartars*, and was diſſwaded by his Council. The *Tartars* in his laſt year invaded *China*, and put him upon thoughts of leaving the North-parts, which was alſo oppoſed by his great Men.

1522 231 *Xi Zum*, 45. He was but 13 when he began to Reign; in the 29. year of his Reign, (1551.) the *Tartar* brought an Army of 60000 to *Pekin*, which was beaten by the *Chineſes*. The next Year after, he ſent an Embaſſy to excuſe the Inroad, and deſire leave to ſend his Horſes to *China* for ſale as before; which was at firſt granted and then revoked. After this various Rebellions happened in the Provinces of *China*; the King neglecting all things and not minding his Kingdom.

1561 232 *Mo Zum*, 6. A good Prince but impatient of Advice.

1573 233 *Xin Zum*, 48. A wiſe Prince, very juſt and merciful. The ſecond year of his Reign the *Tartar* was beaten in *Leao-tum*, by *Chin* the Prince or Governour of that Province. In 1597. the *Eaſt Tartars* being become terrible, a Peace was made with the *Weſtern Tartars*, againſt them. In 1616, The *Eaſtern Tartars* began the War againſt *China*, which ended in its Ruin. In 1617, They again invaded *China*, and gained a great Victory, 50000 *Chinians* being ſlain in that Battel. This King is often called *Van Lie*.

234 *Quam Zum*, Reigned but one Month.

1620 235 *Hi Zum*, 7. He was ſucceſful againſt the *Tartars*, but ruined by the inſurrections of his own Subjects.

1628 236 *Hoai Zum*, or *Zum Chim*, 17. In his time the War of *China* with the *Tartar*, and with the Rebels in Arms againſt him, grew greater. In 1642, *Lie* one of the Rebels took the Palace of *Pekin* by *Treachery*, and and forced this poor King to hang himſelf. *Uſanquie*, General of the Army againſt the *Tartar*, joyned with them to revenge this Death of his Maſter.

1644 237 *Xun Chi*, the firſt of the preſent *Tartar* Kings of *China*; his Father dying in the Expedition and never being inthroned.

1662 238 *Cam Hi*, the perfecter of the Conqueſt of *China*, and preſent King for ought that is known.

A TABLE of the XXII Families that have Reigned in *CHINA*.

		Kings	Years
I	*Hia.*	17	458
II	*Xam.*	28	644
III	*Cheu.*	35	873
IIII	*Cin.*	3	43
V	*Han.*	27	426
VI	*Heu Han.*	2	44
VII	*Cin.*	15	155
VIII	*Sum.*	7	59
IX	*Ci.*	5	23
X	*Leam.*	4	55
XI	*Chin.*	5	33
XII	*Suy.*	3	29
XIII	*Tam.*	29	289
XIV	*Heu Leam.*	2	16
XV	*Heu Tam.*	4	13
XVI	*Hen Cin.*	2	11
XVII	*Hen Han.*	2	4
XVIII	*Hen Cheu.*	3	9
XIX	*Sum.*	18	319
XX	*Yuen.*	9	89
XXI	*Mim.*	21	276
XXII	*Cim.*	2	40

From *Chin* the eleventh Family this Country took the name of *China*; and at this day is called *Chin* in *Indoſtan*.

The Government of this Kingdom is meerly Tyrannical; there being no other Lord but the King, no Title of dignity or Nobility ever known amongſt them; nor Toll or Duty paid unto any but him: the younger Princes of the Blood being maintained by Stipends, and annual Penſions, large enough to ſupport their Trains; but without any Lands or Tenants, for fear of drawing on them any great dependances. The King alone is the general Land-lord, and him the Subjects do not only reverence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the King's Portraiture made of Gold, which is always covered with a Vail: and at every new-moon, the Magiſtrates and other inferiour Officers uſe to kneel before it, as if it were the King himſelf. By theſe and other Artifices of like contrivement, the Common people are kept in ſuch awe and fear, that they are rather Slaves than Subjects: calling their King *the Lamp of the World, and Son of the everlaſting ſun*, without whoſe light they were able to ſee nothing.

In every Province, except *Pequin* and *Tolenchia* only. he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Roys*, maintained by liberal ſtipends from the publick Treaſury: but thoſe he governeth by himſelf. Some Laws they have, and thoſe affirmed to have been written 2000 years ſince, as is like enough they were. So ſtrongly do they ſavour of the ignorance and *Atheiſm* of the darkeſt times: the manner of life by them allowed, moſt obſcene and ſhameleſs; their *Idolatries* moſt groſs and palpable; their *Exorciſms* ridiculous, and the proſtitutions of their *Virgins* moſt abominable; and the variety of ſenſual prophanations, to an Illuminated mind moſt baſe and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their courſe of life (notwithſtanding the brags which they make of themſelves) but their Arts and Induſtry.

The *Forces* which this King is able to draw into the Field muſt needs be infinite, conſidering that incredible number of Subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people, *Italy* with the Iſles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above ſeven millions; and the Kingdom of *England* about four; this Country only is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies muſt be ſo much greater, than can be ordinarily raiſed out of thoſe Countries. But becauſe it may be thought that his Subjects, though more in number, may be leſs trained to the wars than thoſe of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by ſuch as have taken an eſtimate of the Forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continual readineſs. And by that eſtimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557. (though a time of peace) there were diſperſed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horſe. Which notwithſtanding it may be ſaid, and not unfitly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongſt ſuch multitudes of Men, but few good Soldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before obſerved of them in their general *Character*. Nor is he leſs powerful for *Sea-ſervice*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his Coaſts, in continual attendance, and many more ready to ſet out when there is occaſion: inſomuch that the *Chinois* uſe to ſay in the way of a *Proverb*. That their King is able to make a Bridge of Ships from *China* to *Malaca*, which are 500 Leagues aſunder. Some of theſe Ships (whereof the King hath above a thouſand of his own, beſides thoſe of his Subjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Soldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded anſwerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raiſe greater forces than any, from his own eſtates; ſo doth he alſo *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs doth require it of him: his ordinary ſtint being 300000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, without which compleat number (not only in the *muſter-rolls*, but in bodies of Men) he vouchſafes not to go into the field.

Anſwerable unto theſe great *Levies* of Men, muſt be his *Revenue*: which they who have travelled in this ſearch, if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, (as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 123 millions of Crowns, anſwered unto him out of the profits of the *Mines* of Gold, Silver, and other Metals: the *tenth* of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; *tolls* impoſed on that unſpeakable quantity of Merchandize, which paſſeth on ſo many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *Cuſtoms* taken of all thoſe rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the *Gabel* laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdom. Out of which ſum, the payment of his Fleet diſcharged, the entertainment of his Soldiers ſatisfied, and his Court defrayed, there remaineth forty millions of Crowns *de claro* to be diſpoſed of, either in his treaſury or private pleaſures, or the works of magnificence and oſtentation.

And thus far alſo according to the general current of received opinions have I followed the deſcriptions and affairs of *China*, as a diſtinct Country from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reaſons which might incline us to believe them to be one and the ſame; for firſt it is alledged in favour of this opinion, That it is neither new nor ſtrange, for one and the ſame Country, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of ſeveral Nations; that Country which we call *Germany*, being by the Natives called *Dutch-land*, not long ſince known moſt commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales*, being by the *French* called *Galles*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; thoſe mountainous people which the *Romans* know by the name of *Rhœti*, being by ſome of our Northern *Latiniſts* called *Confœderati Cani*, *Campi Camini* by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Grauntpuntnor* by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Griſons* by the *French*, which four laſt names do carry all the ſame ſenſe and ſignification, though in different words; that *China* it ſelf, is by the Natives called *Tabinco*, *Tzynin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglag*; that as it cannot be inforced from the like diverſity of appellations, that *Almany*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-land*, make three ſeveral Countries, (*& ſic de cæteris*) ſo neither can it be concluded on the ſame grounds, that *China* and *Cathay* make two ſeveral Empires. In the next place it is alledged, That ſince by later Voyages and Navigations, this mighty Kingdom hath been diſcovered and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*, the name and *Empire* of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge. For proof whereof they bring in the *Itinerary* of *Benedictus à Goes*, a *Jeſuit*, who in the year 1605, croſſing from the North-eaſt parts of *Perſia* to the Realm of *China*, and naming all the ſeveral Countries and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*; nor any ſuch Prince as the Great *Cham* thereof: telling us alſo that *Martin Martinius*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entituled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Imaus*, under the general Name and Notion of Weſtern *Tartars*, not taking notice of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongſt them, than the King of *Tanguth*; and that *Ramuſio* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth ſome conference which he had with *Chaggimemet* a *Perſian* Merchant, who told him, That he had ſeen *Campion* and *Succuir* Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Demercan*, which muſt be underſtood of *Cathay* in the general Notion, as it comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imaus*; it being well known that *Campion* and *Succuir* are two Cities of *Taguth*, and not of the *proper Cathay*, or *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called. In the third rank of proofs they inſtance in the ſimilitudes or reſemblances betwixt both Countries, and both People, which are ſo great and viſible in the temperature of Air, fertility of Soil, and pleaſantneſs of Situation, in Cuſtoms, in Ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Indentity, or ſameneſs with them; which ſameneſs or identity they do alſo find in *Pequin* the chief City of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the ſuppoſed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the ſame ſenſe and ſignification, though of divers ſounds; for *Pequin* ſignifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* Language, and *Cambalu* ſignifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the Language of *Tartary*. The like they alſo have obſerved of the Royal Palaces, adjoyning to the ſaid two Cities, ſo like in the vaſt greatneſs and extent of the outer Walls, the Parks and Foreſts intermingled, the magnificent form and ſtructure of the inner Palaces, with all the reſt of the particulars before-recited, that a Man might very well conclude them to be one and the ſame; adding withall that ſuch an immenſe, and unparallel'd a work, as the great *Cham*'s Palace called *Xaindu*, muſt needs require more hands and a longer time than the great *Chams* (conſidering their continual Wars, and little intervals of leiſure) could beſtow upon it. But their four head-proofs, which ſeem indeed to be the ſtrongeſt, they derive firſt from the Teſtimony of *Benedict à Goes* above-mentioned, who without taking notice of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*, in ſo long Journey, telleth us that at *Ciales* a City of the Kingdom of *Caſcar*, and not far from *China*, he was firſt informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the ſame. 2. From the Teſtimony of an old *Mahòmetan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Meccha* by *Labor* (the Royal Seat and City of the great *Mongul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu*, the chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thouſand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a mighty Prince, and having a ſtrength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malaca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into the Country by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the ſtory may agree in all particulars) muſt needs be one of the loudeſt lies that ever came from the Mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a Pilgrim either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called, no acceſs thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring thoſe Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malaca*, which the Pilgrim dreamt of. 3. A clear Teſtimony of ſome other *Mahometans* repairing to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Ambaſſadors, or as both together; by whom the *Jeſuits* there living were informed, That the Dominions of the *Perſian*, and the great *Mongul*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name but *China* only. And 4. from the aſſeveration of *Pontogia* another *Jeſuit*, who in his Letters dated from *Pequin*, much blamed our ordinary Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*; whereas (ſaith he) *China*, or *Sania* is *Cathay* as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*; which two laſt evidences coming from the Pen of one who had lived many years in *China*; and not conducing any way to the advancement of the Catholick Cauſe, muſt needs be thought to carry ſome great credit and authority with them.

Theſe reaſons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we muſt then act *Penelope's* part, unravelling all the Web which before was woven; *Atque iterum in lanas omne redibit opus*, in the Poet's Language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole piece as poſſibly we can, I ſhall thus proceed. Firſt then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called, was an aggregate body, containing many ſeveral Kingdoms, and diſtinct Eſtates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependants on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France* beſides the Kings of *France* themſelves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Soiſſons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, an Earl of *Champagne*, an Earl of *Tholouſe*, all abſolute and uncontrollable in their own Eſtates. And then the Kingdom of *Tanguth*, which he placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, muſt be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demercan*, whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, muſt be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only, and no more than ſo. 2. it muſt be taken for granted, That the *Tartars* having Conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that People, ſubdued *China* alſo, cauſed all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the ſame Latitude and Parallels with it, and much of the ſame nature and complexion, both for Soil and Air; giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sinæ*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by ſome Authors to the Country generally: and having thus extended the Name and Territory of *Cathay*, upon the firſt foundation of their greatneſs, they fixed their Regal Seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the ſame ſenſe and ſignification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the firſt place the *French* Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (Eaſt-*France* it was moſt commonly called) to the greateſt part of *Germany*, then Conquered by them; the *Caſtilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Caſtile* on every ſide, as they got ground upon the *Moors*, till it became the largeſt Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Sicily*, having Conquered the Eaſtern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the farther *Sicily* and himſelf to be Crowned King of both, by the name of King of both *Sicilies*. And in the ſecond place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany* are by the *French* called Dukes *De Deux ponts*, by the late *Latine Writers Duces Bipontani*, all in the ſame ſenſe and ſignification; the Town of *Shertzogen Boſch* is by the *French* called *Bois le Duc*, by the *Latine* Writers *Sylva Ducis*: And here at home, the Military Towns or Stations of *Lectodurum*, *Colonia*, *Præſidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Portus Magnus* were turned by the Conquering *Saxons* (the former ſignifications being ſtill retained) into *Bedford*, *Colcheſter*, *Warwick*, *Stoncham* and *Portsmuch*, commonly now called *Portsmouth*; *Caſtrum Alatum* into *Edenburg* by the *Picts* or unconquered *Britains*. 3. We may take it for a truth unqueſtioned, That *Hombu* having expulſed the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed the Royal Seat at *Nanquin*, on the South ſide of the River *Kiang* (tho' paying both Fine and Tribute to Victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlane's* engagements beyond the Mountains and the Cantonizing of that great Empire amongſt his Children, expell them out of the North parts alſo; his Succeſſors thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from henceforth known again by its true, proper and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Jeruſalem*, commanded to be called *Ælia* by the Emperour *Adrian*, and *London* named *Auguſta Trinobantum* by ſome other of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to their old names again, as ſoon as that authority failed which impoſed the new. And 4. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might ſtill retain the name of *Cathay*, and being moſt traded to by the *Perſian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be beſt known by that name in their ſeveral Countries; ſo by dividing this great Empire into ſo many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samercand*, on the other ſide of the Mountains, erecting many new Eſtates out of the ancient Prefectures, and the Governments of *Cathay* it ſelf, and parcelling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Caſcar*, and ſuch other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themſelves in thoſe opportunities, the true *Cathay* might loſe that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to thoſe parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, and *Hungars*, loſt thoſe names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which ſtill remain unto thoſe Countries that were Conquered by them. Theſe reaſons and conſiderations I willingly ſubmit to the Reader's Judgment, being my ſelf ſo great a *Sceptick* in this point, that I dare determine nothing poſitively on either ſide. It is enough that I have laid the Cauſe open without partiality, or byaſſing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the Evidence.

OF

INDIA.

INDIA, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Oriental Ocean, and ſome part of *China*, or as ſome others ſay, with a great Country called *Mangi*, which is only the South part of *China*, (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the Weſt, with the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, with ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divideth it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the neareſt of eſteem and note in all the Country, towards theſe parts of the World.

It is conceived to be the largeſt Country, of any one name in the World, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of ſuch a great extent on the Sea-Coaſts of it, that it was as much as a Ship could ſail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of Longitude, and from the *Æquator* to the 44th degree of Northern Latitude. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the firſt, to the end of the ſixth *Clime*: the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts moſt North, fifteen hours and a half. *India* is bounded to the North by *China*, *Thibet* and the *Uſbeck Tartars*, and is ſeparated from them by one continued Ridge of Mountains, of great heigth and difficult paſſage, called in *Ptolemy Ottorocoras Mons*; and is indeed a branch of the *Taurus* placed by him in 35 degrees of North-Eaſt, and by the latter Travellers in 36; where it lies moſt to the North between *Thibet* and *Indoſtan*. This Mountain is now called *Delanguer* in the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Siam*, and agaiſt *Tunkin* it runs more to the South.

Concerning the monſtrous Fables which the Ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to ſay, that as the Poets uſed of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with ſtrange Fictions, and prodigious *Metamorphoſes*; or as our modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the World, fill up thoſe unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain deſcription with ſtrange Pictures and uncouth ſhapes of Beaſts and Trees ſo alſo the Writers in former Ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with ſuch impoſſible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the Fables of Men with Dog's heads, of Men with one leg only, yet of great ſwiftneſs; of ſuch as live by ſcent; of Men that had but one eye and that in their foreheads; and of others, whoſe ears did reach unto the Ground. It is reported alſo that this people by eating a Dragon's heart and liver, attain to the underſtanding of the Languages of Beaſts; that they they can make themſelves when they liſt, inviſible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other Rain, and the like. But theſe relations, and the reſt of this ſtrain, I doubt not but the underſtanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem tranſcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare auſus ſum quæ dubito, nec ſubducere ſuſtineo quæ accepi*; I may perhaps relate ſome things which I do not credit, but ſhall not let them paſs without ſome cenſures, that ſo I may neither impoſe any thing on the Reader's belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducible to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it than it doth deſerve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the Air, two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double encreaſe, bleſt with all things which are either neceſſary to the life of Man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious Stones; with Spices of all ſorts, and Civets; with the beſt medicinable Drugs; Metals of all kinds, extept *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all ſorts of Cattel, except Horſes: Somewhat defective alſo in Wheat and Vines, that ſo this Country might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed alſo for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants. Theſe laſt more ſavouring of reaſon and humane ingenuity, or elſe more tractable and docile, than any brute Creature whatſoever. Of this we have a fair inſtance in the Story of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* ſat upon, finding his Maſter ſtrong and luſty, ruſhed boldly into the thickeſt of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himſelf out of Battel, kneeled down, and into his Trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his Maſter. The greatneſs of the Creature makes it yet more admirable that either he ſhould have Soul enough of his own, to actuate ſo vaſt a Body; or being of ſuch ſtrength and bigneſs, ſhould ſubmit himſelf to the inſtructions of another: ſome of theſe *Indian* Elephants, as *Ælianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high and as many long; and in breadth or thickneſs about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford leſs plenty or variety, than we find on ſhore, yielding abundance of the richeſt and faireſt Pearls, huge ſholes of fiſh, and amongſt them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that Land-monſter the Elephant. For though the ordinary dimenſion of the Whale be but 46 *Cubits* in length, and eight in thickneſs; yet *Nearchus* in *Arrianus* is ſaid to have meaſured one, in theſe *Indian* Seas which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to ſay any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who ſpeaketh of ſome *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threeſcore foot, or four Acres long.

The People are of five ſorts, and as many Religions; that is to ſay the natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2. *Moors* or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Country: 3. *Jews* ſcattered and diſperſed (as in other places) into all parts of it. 4. *Tartars*, in thoſe Parts and Provinces which are under the Great *Mogul*. And 5. *Portugueſes*, who have many Colonies and Factories in the Ports and Iſlands, but brag as if they had made a Conqueſt of all the Country. Which notwithſtanding, conſidering that the natural *Indians* are by far the greateſt number, we muſt relate to them only in the Character which is made of this People. Affirmed to be of tall ſtature, ſtrong of body, and of Complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: Of manners civil and ingenious, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common ſort but meanly clad, for the moſt part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their ſhame. But thoſe of greater Eſtates and

Fortunes (as they have amongſt them many Ancient and Noble Families) obſerve a Majeſty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparrel; ſweetning the laſt with Oils and perfumes, and adorning themſelves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no Fleſh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey and other things without life.

The Women not of much fairer Complexion than the Men, yet of lovely Countenances, wear their hair long and looſe, but covered with a thin Vail of *Calicut-Lawn.* Their Ears hung with many Rings, ſo great and heavy, that they are torn and ſtretched to much diſproportion: their Noſes alſo ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their Eſtate and Quality. Servilely obſequious to their husbands, whoſe affections they divide amongſt them without jar or jealouſie: the Men allowed here, as in all the Eaſt, the uſe of many Wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and marry as often as they liſt. In which they have too great a privilege above the Women, who after the deceaſe of their common husband, do either burn in the ſame flame with him, or elſe are forced to doom themſelves to perpetual Widowhood. But of this we may ſpeak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt planted in theſe Countries by St. *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of Chriſtianity take denomination; and unto whom the Records and Monuments of that Church do aſcribe their converſion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the *Chaldaick* Tongue, and tranſlated into *Latine* by Father *John Maria Campanin* a *Jeſuit*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis*, &c. *i. e.* by St. *Thomas* the errors of Idolatry vaniſhed out of the *Indies*; by St. *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of Baptiſm, and the Adoption of Sons; by St. *Thomas*, they believed and confeſſed the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghoſt; by St. *Thomas*, they kept the Faith received of one God: And finally by St. *Thomas*, the ſplendor of ſaving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they ſay, intombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coaſt of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I diſpute not here. But this plantation of the Goſpel by the hand of St. *Thomas*, was not univerſal over all the Country, but in ſome Parts and Provinces only: or elſe was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heatheniſm*. For in the Reign of *Conſtantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the farther ſide of the River *Ganges* (for ſo I underſtand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the Miniſtery of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having ſpent the greateſt part of his time amongſt them, was employed in that ſervice, and conſecrated the firſt Biſhop (for thoſe Churches) by the great *Athanaſius* of *Alexandria*. But being the Foundation of this building was laid by St. *Thomas*, the remainder of Chriſtians here, aſcribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Chriſtians of* St. *Thomas*. Governed orginally by their own Biſhops, ſubordinate to an Arch-Biſhop of their own alſo, reſiding at *Guagamale* fifteen miles from *Cochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Country; who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Muſal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by theſe Chriſtians of *India* he is ſtill termed. The number of the Chriſtians computed at 15 or 16 thouſand Families; or at 70000 perſons in the accompt of others; inhabiting for the moſt part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſtretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*, The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*. 1. Their adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Euchariſt in bread ſeaſoned with Salt; 2. Adminiſtring in both kinds, but uſing inſtead of Wine (which is ſcarce, or not at all to be had in this Country) the juyce of Raiſins ſoftened in water over night, and ſo preſſed forth; 3. Not baptizing Children untill 40 days old except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Croſs; 5. Allowing one marriage to their Prieſts, but debarring the ſecond; 6. In painting God with three heads on one body to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the uſe of *extreme Unction*; And 8. not acknowledging the Pope's Supremacy; but beſides theſe remainders of thoſe ancient Chriſtians, there are ſome others now of late of a new plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jeſuits*, though not with ſuch ſucceſs here, as they found in *China*; many of the Inhabitants partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the power of the great *Mongul*, having embraced *Mahometaniſm*; and being conſequently leſs inclinable to admit the Goſpel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Gentiliſm*. Yet have they made ſuch good progreſs in it, that *Echebar* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the uſe of the Chriſtians in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jeſuits* the Education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And poſſibly they might have made a great increaſe of Chriſtians before this time, had they not been oppoſed therein by *Sultan Curroon*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding in the Reign of his Father, and no great favourer of them ſince. Inſomuch that hearing a *Jeſuit*, called *Franciſco Carſi*, report unto his Father, how miraculouſly a wooden Croſs of his had eſcaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire preſently made, and the ſame Croſs to be thrown into it, upon theſe conditions, that if the Croſs conſumed not, his Father and himſelf would become Chriſtians; but if it did, the *Jeſuit* ſhould be burned in the ſame fire with it. A fiery tryal which the poor *Jeſuit* had much ado to put off, and preſerve his credit. Howſoever by their practiſing amongſt the old Chriſtians, they have gained one point of very great conſequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599, by the ſollicitation of the *Jeſuits* and others, the *Indian Chriſtians* renounced their obedience to the *Patriarch* at *Muſal*, and ſubmitted their Churches to the Juriſdiction of the Pope of *Rome*, in a National *Synod* held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Arch-Biſhop of *Goa* the Primate of the *Portugals* in thoſe Parts; not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Roman* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and refined by the ſaid Arch-Biſhop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But theſe comparatively to the reſt, come not to an handful, the main Body of the People wallowing in their *Gentiliſm*, and ſtill retaining many of thoſe ancient Cuſtoms, which they uſed of old: as *viz.* 1. Not knowing their Wives after they had born them two Children; nor keeping them, if after five years Cohabitation they can raiſe no Iſſue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 3. Rewarding none for any Military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands, the head of an Enemy: 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or Sickneſs. To theſe they have added others of a later invention. perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to ſpeak anon. Their Prieſts or Learned Men in the time of old were called *Brachmans*, from one *Brachman* the preſcriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom inſtructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philoſophy*; ſome of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnoſophiſts*; who were to them as the *Chaldæi* to the *Aſſyrians*, the *Magi* to the *Perſians*; and the *Druids* to the ancient *Britains*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the moſt part an auſtere and ſolitary life, in Caves and deſarts, feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abſtaining from all carnal pleaſures; but that time paſt, they may indulge themſelves more liberty, and admit the company of Women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Prieſts. Of theſe the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country ſurprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many ſtrange queſtions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himſelf confeſſed) ſome not unſatisfying, though ſtrange, anſwers. To theſe *Gymnoſophyſts*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now ſucceed, both in place and authority; but differ from them moſt extremely in point of Learning, and the civilities of their lives: theſe *Bramines* being the moſt impure, libidinous, and ſenſual beaſts in all the Country; priviledged with the firſt night's lodging of every Bride, which when ſatiated with their filthy luſt, they ſell, or traffick with, to ſtrangers, ſerving as *Stallions* to old Men, and as *Panders* to young: ſo fleſhed in wickedneſs, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a Man but the voice and ſhape. *Mahometaniſm* is alſo entertained in a great part of the Country; firſt brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Perſians*, unto whom conterminous; but much increaſed by the Victories of the great *Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath cauſed it to be propagated in moſt Parts of his large Dominions. The *Gymnoſophiſts* of *India* are ſtill extant as appeareth by *Tavernier* who gives us the Icons of theſe mad Philoſophers, for ſuch they muſt appear to any ſober Man.

Mountains of moſt note in it, beſides *Caucaſus*, and ſome other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Perſian* Empires, 1 *Sardonyx*, full of Mines of thoſe precious Stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2 *Vindius*, 3 *Bittigo*, 4 *Adiſathras*. 5 Thoſe called *Apocopi*, and 6 Thoſe named *Orodii*. And on the further ſide of *Ganges*. 7 *Bepyrrhus*. 8 *Mæandrus*. 9 Thoſe called *Damuſi*, and 10 *Semanthinus*; part of this laſt extending alſo unto *China*. All of them very fruitfull in the production of Mines, and Rivers ,as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Ptolemy* called *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern Part of the great Mountain *Imaus* ſpoken of before; extended from Mount *Caucaſus*, where it croſſeth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comary*, a known Promontory of *Indoſtan*, or the hither *India* (which it divideth into Eaſt and Weſt) for the ſpace of 400 Leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Poſtellus*, a Learned Writer to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the tenth Chapter of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sons of *Joktan*, *Gen.* 10. 30. With probability enough, for ought I can ſee; the Sons of *Joktan* being ſettled in theſe Parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire which lie neareſt to them. And ſo far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Poſtell*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephur*, that it is *Mons Indiæ*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of which grounding on St *Hierom*, who expreſly ſaith, *Sophera Mons Orientis in* India, *juxta quam habitaverunt filii* Joctan. *i. e.* That *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the Eaſt in *India*; near to which dwelt the Sons of *Joktan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we ſhould transfer it into *America*, as I ſee ſome do, and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*; which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence, as ſome will have it, to the Straights of *Magellan*. Which ſhould we grant, we muſt not look for *Joktan*, or the Sons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Fœlix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eaſtern Parts of *Aſia*, where moſt probably they may be found; but we muſt croſs the vaſt Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; beſides, that granting this for true, we muſt allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moſes*, which no Author that I ever met with, did ſo much as dream of.

Rivers of moſt note are, 1 *Indus*, which ariſeth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Paropamiſus*, the Moderns, *Naugrocot*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a courſe of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at ſeven Mouths, that is to ſay, 1 *Sagappa*, being the moſt Weſtern; 2 *Sinthum*, 3 *Aureum*, 4 *Cariphi*, 5 *Sappara*, 6 *Sabalaſſa*, 7 *Lonibare*, the moſt Eaſtward. But five of thoſe being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country and that ſo celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who ſailed down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage holding above five months, of which there is ſaid to have paſſed no day wherein he ſailed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2 *Ganges*, which riſeth, as ſome ſay, from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is firſt collected into a Lake or Pool, (ſuppoſed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it paſſeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers: In the narroweſt place of eight miles breadth, in the broadeſt 20, ſeldom ſo ſhallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great channels it falleth at laſt into the Sea; the firſt of which moſt towards the Weſt, is called *Cambyſum*, 2 *Magnum*, 3 *Camberychus*, 4 *Pſeudoſtomum*, and 5 that which lieth fartheſt towards the Eaſt, called *Autiboli*. This River erroneouſly ſuppoſed to be that *Piſon* which watered *Paradiſe*: and to increaſe the reputation of the error we find it countenanced by *Joſephus*, and other no leſs eminent names; and alſo backed by ſome traditions of the people which inhabit near it. By whom it is affirmed, That one of the *Bengalan* Kings ſent Men up the River, who came at laſt to a pleaſant place, bleſt with a fragrant Earth, ſweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth ſo poſſeſs them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangaſagie*, ſuch as are weary of this world uſe to caſt themſelves into the Current, and are preſently devoured by a Fiſh, called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to find a quick paſſage to *Paradiſe*. The occaſion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from thoſe words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Piſon*, that it compaſſed the Land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River muſt be *Piſon*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For beſides *Havilah* the Son of *Jocktan*, planted in ſome part of *India*, there was another *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, ſettled in the Land of *Havilah* or *Chuſiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this laſt indeed watered by the River *Piſon* and the firſt by *Ganges*; too far aſunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or miſtaken one for another. But no leſs famous, becauſe none of thoſe which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*; perhaps of greater fame than any of thoſe which did. For to this River do the ſuperſtitious *Indians* make their ſolemn pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they ſhall be ſure of their Eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people aſcribe the fertility of the Countries adjoyning, as the *Ægyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this preſent is, divided into two main parts, (each ſubdivided into many particular Provinces) *viz.* 1. *India intra Gangem.* 2. *India extra Gangem.* Of each of which we will firſt take a brief ſurvey, with reference to the ſtate and ſtory of it in preceeding times; and then conſider them with reference to the preſent Age.

1. INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea; and after that, with that large and ſpacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, *Arachoſia*, *Gedroſia*, Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas; on the North, where it is the broadeſt, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a ſharp Point or Promontory, by *Ptolemy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being ſituate on the ſide of *Ganges*; by the Moderns, *Indoſtan*.

The Country of the ſame nature formerly, as it is at the preſent, not altered but by changing of the Channels of *Indus*; which being ſhifted by an *Earth-quake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a ſandy Deſart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and inriching all the Land which it overfloweth. The people of thoſe elder times much like the *Scythians*, eſpecially in their courſe of life, living without Cities, Temples, or Houſes, in their movable Tents; their food the bark of a Tree, called *Tala*, which ſerved for bread; and the fleſh of Bucks, Does, and other Veniſon, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them Free-men, and no Slaves to be found among them. Leſs warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they; the very women contending eagerly amongſt themſelves, who ſhould accompany their Huſband (one Huſband having many Wives) to his Funeral-Pile. Of which thus St. *Hierom*, *Hæ igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio ſumma certantium eſt ac teſtimonium caſtitatis, dignam morte cenſeri.* A Cuſtom ſtill retained amongſt them; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaſpes*, by *Ptolemy* (and by him only) called *Bidaſpes*, one of the furtheſt bounds of *Alexander*'s Conqueſts. 2. *Suaſtus*, 3. *Coa*, 4. *Aceſines*, very memorable in the Geſts of *Alexander*. 5. *Saudabilis*, 6. *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains and all falling (*Hydaſpes* with three other Rivers firſt received into it) into the great bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Sorabius*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragonus*, iſſuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adiſathris*. 13. *Tindis*, from the Hill called *Uxentius*: and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of leſs note. By what names called at the preſent, I determine not; nor find I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtleſs to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Cebcha*, 3. *Rha*, 4. *Chenon*, 5. *Rebeth*, all Tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harunda*, 8. *Chamehl*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with ſuch others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name to us, ſhall occaſionally be touched on in that which followeth. Beſides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Geſts of *Alexander*, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleaſant, ſhaded on every ſide with Woods memorable for the great refreſhment which it gave to *Alexander's* Army, when even pined with thirſt.

The Country ſo exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolemy*, that it affordeth him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the World. Of which 1. *Cotiara*, 2. *Nigana*, 3. *Sageda*, 4. *Raraſia*, 5. *Maſopelle*, and 6. *Pitandra*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the Head-Cities of their ſeveral and reſpective Nations. 7. *Ozenes*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Palibothra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocura*, 13. *Carata*, 14. *Madura*, 15. *Ortbura*, and 16. *Malanga*, mentioned, as the Royal Seats of ſeveral Princes, by the name of *Regiæ*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyddis*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Cunula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River ſo called, 22. *Palura*, on the ſhores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 23, *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambyſum*, 24. *Tilegramocum*, marked out above the reſt with the name of *Civitates* (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not ſo diſtinguiſhed. And finally, 25. *Monogſaſſum*, 26. *Simylla*, near a Promontory of the ſame name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maziris*, 29. *Elanchorum*, 30. *Colchi*, 31, *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34 *Melange*, 35. *Maliarpha*, 36. *Contaciſſyla*, 37. *Noſygne*, 38. *Barygaza*, ſpecified as the moſt noted and celebrious Empories; beſides 39. *Canthynus*, 40. *Stathmus*, and 41 a Road oppoſite to *Chryſas*, two Commodious *Stations* or Roads for ſhipping. The names and ſituation of theſe Places is the moſt we find of them, which makes me paſs them over with a bare recital, only to ſhew how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my Author.

Of leſs name, but of more note in the courſe of ſtory, 1. *Nyſa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conqueſt, and called thus by the name of his *Nurſe*, to preſerve her memory, his Mother dying in Child-birth of him. Repleniſhed by him with his ſick and wounded Soldiers, whoſe Poſterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who ſpared the City and People for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worſhipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Bays, Vines and Ivy; whoſe ſhady branches covered the Roof of it. In the midſt thereof an Image, with all the Inſtruments belonging to a plentiful *Vintage*; all of Gold or Silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala*, as *Ptolemy* calleth it, ſeated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaſpes*, in the Region called *Verſa*; and built moſt probably by *Taxiles*, a puiſſant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sun*, and therein with an Ivory-Image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statue of *Alexander*, and the Portraiture of King *Porus* made of Copper. The floor of *Moſaical* work pouldered with Pearls, the Walls of red marble interlaid with Gold, which made it ſhine afar off, like a flaſh of Lightning. 3. *Nagara*, called alſo *Dionyſiopolis* in memory of *Bacchus*, who was alſo called *Dionyſius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornus*, and *Avernus* by *Strabo*; ſo ſtrongly ſeated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, (imitating and therein out-going the Acts of *Hercules*) aſſault it with the greater force and at laſt he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaſpes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus*, his beloved Horſe, which had ſerved him in all the courſe of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his Foundations, ſo called by the name of his Dog whom he dearly loved, 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his Foundations alſo. 8. *Mazage*, on the Weſt of *Indus*, one of the firſt Towns of *India*, taken by the *Macedonians*, though garriſoned within, and environed without with an Hoſt of 300000 Men: but yielded after ſome reſiſtance, with the uſe of her own body, by *Cleophe* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Nora*, a ſtrong City on the ſame ſide of *Indus*, taken by *Polyſperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the ſame River, taken by *Alexander* in the courſe of his Navagation down that Sea of waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought againſt him with poyſoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolemy* (afterward King of *Ægypt*) was dangerouſly wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had ſeen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11, *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydriceans*; at the Siege whereof *Alexander* is ſaid to be the firſt that ſcaled the Walls, and the laſt that could do ſo, the Ladder breaking as ſoon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was by the Soldiers deſired to leap down amongſt them: he in a daring bravado leaped into the Town among his Enemies; where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old Tree at his back to defend him behind. In this poſture he is ſaid to have mantained the fight a long time, againſt all the Soldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the reſt to be more mannerly, till being wearied and dangerouſly wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this caſe *Leonatus*, *Peuceſtes*, and ſome other of his Captains came to aſſiſt him; who defended their dying Maſter, till the whole Army entred the Town, and put all the people to the ſword, in revenge of their King, whoſe life they had little hope to enjoy: though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this ſtory, ranging it in the ſame Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel del Phæbo*, *Roſicleer*, *Beliamis*, *Amadis*, and the reſt of the rabble of *Knights Errant*. Neither is this the firſt time that *Curtius* hath diſgraced the ſoundneſs of

Alexander's

Alexander's Judgment, and the truth of his Actions with the like idle and impoſſible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he ſaith it was *multò magis ad temeritatis quàm de gloria famam*. And 12. *Nicæa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Aceſines*, in memory of his many great and ſignal Victories. Not far from which, finding how willing his Soldiers were to paſs farther Eaſt, he purpoſed to leave behind him ſome monument of his great Exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongſt the *Indians*. And to that end he cauſed the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the Cabbins to be made bigger than ſufficed for his Men to lodge in; the Mangers to be ſet higher than his Horſes could reach; *Armour* and *Bitts* for horſes of too great a ſize (made not for uſe, but oſtentation of his might) to be ſcattered up and down the Camp, for the Savage People to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongſt knowing Men, but ſuſpicion that his Actions were intended leſs memorable, than they are reported to have been; ſince he ſo vainly laboured to have them thought greater indeed than they were.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Indo-Scythæ* inhabiting on the North-Weſt of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadam*, *Piratæ*, *Limeryces*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvari*, *Oxydracæ*, *Molli*, and *Lambatæ*; the *Gandaritles*, or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caſpiræi*, under the ſhades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Muſicani*, *Chatziæi*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bittigi*, *Chadramotitæ*, *Pezuari*, *Adiſathri*, *Mandalæ*, *Drylphitæ*, *Sabaræ*, and *Pandioni*, with many others, to the number of 122 ſeveral Nations, if *Magaſthenes* be not out in this reckoning, too many and too impertinent to be muſtered here.

Originally deſcended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left the Eaſtern parts to go towards the unfortunate Valley of *Shinaar*. We could not elſe have found this Country ſo full of people in the days of *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of ſeveral Nations, to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Cteſias* and *Diodorus Siculus*, who reports it from him, be of any credit; but certainly the greateſt Army that ever was raiſed) was encountred by *Staurobates*, a King of *India*, with greater force made up of natural *Indians* only; by whom ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than ſome one of thoſe Colonies, which were ſent from *BABEL*; or rather a ſecond or third Swarm of thoſe former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the firſt *Adventurers*: For that any of the firſt *Adventurers*, who were preſent at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled ſo far Eaſt, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the ſearch of their Plantations. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, That the plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be ſaid for certain: Yet if I might have liberty to expreſs my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe, That all the Eaſtern parts of *Perſia*, with *China* and both the *India's*, were peopled by ſuch of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the reſt to the Vally of *Shinaar*. For otherwiſe I can ſee no reaſon, that the Poſterity of *Japhet* ſhould plant the greateſt part of the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof; and that the Sons of *Cham* ſhould ſpread themſelves over *Babylonia*, *Palæſtina*, the three *Arabia's*, and the whole Continent of *Africk*: the Poſterity of *Sem* being ſhut up in a corner; the greater *Aſia*, hardly ſo big as ſome one of the Provinces, taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the Sons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in theſe Eaſtern Countries; ſpreading themſelves this way as they grew in numbers, before the reſt of the *Adventurers* went to ſeek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that Country was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to ſpare for ſome ſecond comers (eſpecially deſcending from the ſame root with them) I doubt not to place here all the Sons of *Jocktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatſarmaveih*, *Saba*, and *Abimail*, who left here ſome Tract or Monument of themſelves, as hath been ſhewn at large in our *GENERAL PREFACE*; and as concerning *Ophir*, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our ſtory, the next who made any invaſion on this Country, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Ægyptius*, not much more fortunate than ſhe: the Forces of *Bacchus* being defeated and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by Arms, they effected by Arts. *Bacchus* inſtructing them in the uſe of *Wine*, Oil, Sacrifices and the Art of *Architecture*, and Drawing them into Towns and Cities; for that cauſe honoured as a GOD. To *Hercules* they aſcribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a Daughter of his called *PANDÆA*: the memory of both preſerved in Statues and Pillars erected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full Conqueſt of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of 120000 fighting Men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Magazæ*, a People of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, poſſeſſed himſelf both of her Perſon and Eſtate; on whom he begat a Son called *Alexander* who is ſaid to have ſucceeded in her Dominions. Being paſſed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by ſome called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince whoſe Kingdom is affirmed to be bigger than *Ægypt*, ſubmitted of his own accord: offering his ſervice and aſſiſtance to promote his Conqueſt, and preſenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcome, but his mony not ſo much as looked on; the *Macedonian* being ſo far from fingering of this *Indian* Gold, that he gave him a thouſand Talents of his own Treaſure. Encouraged by this Royal dealing *Abiajares*, another puiſſant Prince of the oppoſite Faction unto *Taxiles*, ſubmitted alſo, and was as graciouſly received. *Porus*, whoſe Kingdom lay on the other ſide of *Hydaſpes*, would not be ſo Conquered and therefore muſtereth up his Forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquiſhed at laſt, not without much difficulty, he was made a Priſoner to the Victor, who honouring the Man for his brave reſiſtance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom, with a great enlargement. The Conqueror had a great deſire to go farther Eaſt, but the Soldiers would not be perſwaded: ſufficiently taught by *Porus* what they were to look for, if the *Indians* ſhould unite their Forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve Altars, as high as Towers; where he obſerved many ſolemn Games and Sacrifices: and having Sacrificed to *Hydaſpe*, *Indus* and *Aceſines* he ſailed down *Indus* towards the Southern Ocean; which ſeen at a diſtance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he dyed.

After his death, *Eumenes* raiſed ſome part of his Forces hence, but the *Macedonians* being plunged in a Civil War, one *Adracottus* ſtirred up the *Indians* to recover their freedoms, making himſelf at firſt their Captain, but at laſt their King. Poſſeſſed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountred by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: againſt whom he brought an Army of 600000 fighting Men. Frighted therewith, *Seleucus* made Peace with him, and contracted a Solemn League betwixt them, continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongſt their Poſterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the Great and *Saphagæſenus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Adracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was preſented with 150 *Elephants*, and the promiſe of ſome Treaſure to be ſent after him. By the Poſterity of *Adracottus* was the Kingdom held, till the proſperity and full height of the *ROMAN* Empire. The Power whereof though they rather knew by report than tryal, yet was it not amiſs to entertain a potent, though a remote State, in terms of amity. Therefore they ſent Ambaſſadors unto *Auguſtus*, who preſented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which Beaſts, ſaith *Dion*, till then, the *Roman* People had never ſeen) and which was moſt pleaſing, a little Boy born without Arms, who with his feet could bend a Bow, ſhoot and play on wind-Inſtruments as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperour had a great deſire to ſee this Country, but was diverted from that purpoſe by matters of more neceſſary importance to the ſtate of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antoninus* the *Roman* Emperour, they ſent a ſolemn Embaſſie unto him, making him Umpire in ſome Controverſies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Ambaſſadors it is probable that *Ptolemy* the *Geographer* who then lived, might receive his informations of the Eſtate of this Country. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his expedition againſt the *Perſians*, deſiring his Friendſhip and Alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewn already. After theſe times by little and little, Hiſtories have in a manner been ſilent concerning the affairs hereof; but for ſome Conqueſts made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdet*. For notwithſtanding that there was continual Traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh* and *Indian* Merchants for Spices, and the other Commodities of this Region: yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Country, becauſe they entred not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Samarchand*, being as it were the common Empory. Neither did the *Ægyptians* at all enter *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iſland, even as now the *Chinois* make ſome of the *Philippine*, the Staple of their Trade with the *Spaniards*, whom they Licence not to come into the Continent among them. But our modern Travellers and Navigators have withdrawn this mask of obſcurity, and ſhewed her lively portraiture in as lively Colours. One of the firſt who brake the Ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompted at his coming back for the greateſt *Fabler* in the World: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kings, and the wealth of their Countries, and the many rarities which he found amongſt them. But better thought of by our Neighbours, he obtained a Monument in a Convent at *Liege* (where he ended the long courſe of his Life and Travels, 1372) The Friers of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honourable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honourable memorial of his excellency. Many of his Relations ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Country, by the new way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, *Anno* 1499, or thereabouts. For ſo it happened, that the *Portugals* having diſcovered all the Coaſts of *Africk*, as far as *Cape Verd*, by the encouragement and at the charge of *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, began to think upon ſome way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich Trade of that Country. To which end it was firſt thought, that *Pedro de Cannanilla*, and *Alphonſo de Padua*, ſhould make a journey into the Eaſt Parts, to learn the certainty of the Spice-trade, and make report of ſuch other Commodities as theſe Countries yielded. Being come at laſt by long journeys to the City of *Calicut*, and having ſatisfied themſelves in the enquiry which they came about, they prepare for their return to *Portugal*. *Padua* dying in the journey, and *Cannanilla*, tho' detained by the *Habaſſine* Emperour (commonly, but corruptly, called *Preſter John*) ſends home a full relation of his ſucceſſes; inflamed with which, King *John* the ſecond ſends out *Bartholomew Diaz*, *Anno* 1487, to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having ſailed as far as the *Cape of good Hope*, without giving end to the adventure, returned back to *Portugal*. Undertaken with better fortune 10 years after, at the command of King *Emanuel* by *Vaſquez de Gama*, above mentioned; who doubling the Cape, and ſailing Northward, all along the ſhores of *Africk*, as far as the Kingdom of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both Pilots and inſtructions to bring him to *Calicut*, where he found all true which *Cannanilla* had before reported. Full of good news at the end of 26 Months from his firſt ſetting out, he returns to *Liſbon*, received for the preſent with joy and triumph, and about two years after (that is to ſay 1502,) furniſhed with 13 Ships and three Caravals, he ſets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the ſame year with 5 Ships more, by which great ſtrength he made himſelf Maſter of ſome Ports; and by that means laid the Foundation of that great Command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in theſe Eaſtern Countries. Seconded in this great enterprize by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by ſuch of the *European* Nations as had the benefit and trade of the Weſtern Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Caſtilians*, or *Spaniards*, being ſtrong in Shipping, bent not themſelves to the diſcovery of theſe wealthy Countries? it may be anſwered, 1. That they were buſied at the ſame time in the diſcovery and Conqueſt of the *New World*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no leſs profitable Booty than this of *India*. 2. The Commodities of this Country, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were ſold to them at far cheaper rates, than they could have fetched them in their own bottoms. 3. And chiefly becauſe by the definitive ſentence of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, both the *Caſtilians*, and the *Portugals*, were ſo limited in their Navigations, that the *Caſtilians* might not intermeddle in the Eaſtern, nor the *Portugals* in the diſcovery or Conqueſt of the Weſtern Parts, beyond the bounds which he had ſet to thoſe ſeveral Nations before-mentioned; and by ſome latter obſervations we have been informed, That in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof ſome few have ſtill their own natural Kings, the reſt all ſubject to the power of the Great *Mongul*, contracted into a leſſer number by joyning many leſſer Territories into one Diviſion. We ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them into five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their Travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties (moſt of them being Men of trades and ignorance) that tho' they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with, yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were, or to what part the ſeveral Towns, through which they paſſed did of right belong. So that our paſſage through theſe Countries (having ſuch blind guides to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howſoever, I deſire him to bear me company, whilſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Dulſinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Delly*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Cambaia*, 8 *Decan*, 9. *Canara*, 10 *Malabar*, 11. *Narſinga*, 12. *Oriſtan*, 13. *Botanter*, 14. *Pantenaw*, and 15. *Bengala*.

The *Perſians* and *Arabians*, call all *India* by the name of *Indoſtan*. It reacheth on the Weſt, from the River *Indus*, or *Sindo*, as far as the *Ganges*, in the Eaſt; on the Weſtern border it hath a Port called *Guader*, in 25 Degrees Latitude, (which I find in none of the Maps, but I ſuppoſe it to be *Goadel*.) On the Eaſt it hath the Kingdom of *Mavy*; on the North, *Caucaſus*, and Great *Tartary*; and on the South, *Decan*, and the Gulf of *Bengala*, with the *Arabian* or *Indian* Ocean. The extent of it from Eaſt to Weſt, is 600 Leagues, from North to South, 700 *French* Leagues; the South lying in 20 D. Latitude, the North border at 43. This is to be underſtood of *Cabul*, which is the moſt Northern Town in *Indoſtan*, and lyeth to the North-Weſt of that Kingdom, but I believe is placed 2 degrees too much to the North. That part of *Indoſtan* which is next to *Perſia*, was of old called *Carmania*, and now by the *Perſians Sindo Diul*; by Dr. *Heylin Dulſinda*; it ſhould be *Diul-Sindo* from *Diul*, which ſtands on the Weſtern Branch of the *Indus* towards *Perſia*. It is divided into 37 great Provinces, which were heretofore ſo many Kingdoms. *viz*. *Candahar*, now belonging to to *Perſia*; but in 1638, under the *Mongul*. 2 *Kaul*, 3. *Multan*, 4. *Hacs-chan*, 5. *Bachar*, 6. *Tatta*, 7. *Soret*, 8. *Iſelmeer*, 9. *Attach*, 10. *Pang-ab*, 11. *Chiſmer*, 12. *Bankiſch*, 13 *Jengapar*, 14. *Jenba*, 15. *Delly*, 16. *Bando*, 17. *Malway*, 18. *Chitor*, 19, *Guſuratta*, 20. *Candiſch*, 21. *Berar*, 22. *Gualer*, or *Dulſinda*; 23. *Agra*, 24. *Sambet*, 25. *Bakor*, 26. *Narvar*, 27. *Nagracut*, 28. *Siba*, 29. *Kakares*, 30. *Gor*, 31. *Pitan*, 32. *Kanduana*, 33. *Porena*, 34 *Jewal*, 35. *Menat*, 36. *Voeſa*, 37. *Bengala*. *Texira*, names *Vtrat*, but ſaith not where-abouts it is ſeated. The *Portugueſes* call *Guſuratta*, *Cambaya*. *Mandeſlo's* Travels into *Indoſtan*, from *Pag*. 18. to 21.

1. *DVLSINDA. GVADEL. GVALER*

DVLSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, and *Arachoſia*, two *Perſian* Provinces, but for the moſt part under the command of the Great *Mongul*; on the North with *Caucaſus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; or rather from the Kingdom of *Candahar*, which is now a part of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, being yielded to that Crown by the *Mongul*, in 1653, after a bloody War of three years continuance, *Tavernier*: on the South, with the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean. So that it taketh up all the Weſtern parts of this Eſtate, which lye upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*; from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probably it is that it took its name: and therefore I have written it with an *ſ*, *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* with a *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good rea ſon, for any thing that I am able to underſtand.

The Country, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, more temperate, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India*. The Seat in ancient times, of the *Muzages* and *Indo-Scythæ*, when ſubdued by *Alexander*. Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdoms, and ſmaller Provinces; denominated for the moſt part, from the principal Towns aud Cities of them, as in other places. This Country, lyeth between 25, and 30 Degrees of Latitude, and therefore the temperature of the Air is not to be aſcribed to its Northern ſituation; I rather ſuſpect it is exceeding hot, as all thoſe parts of *Perſia* that lye in the ſame Latitude, and are of the ſame nature are; and the Mountains to the North of it, muſt of neceſſity make it ſuch.

Amongſt which thoſe of the moſt eſteem, are 1. *Caximir*, *Caſcimur*, or *Cheſmur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*; who in a pleaſant Iſland, (in the midſt of a great and deep Lake, about three Leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Labor* partly the better to aſſure this new conquered Kingdom; but principally becauſe his Palace of *Labor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treaſure, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſituate in the moſt healthy Country of all *India*, encompaſſed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with Snow, the reſt a delicate, goodly Plain diverſified with Paſtures, Woods and Cornfields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers, even to admiration. The Air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, and the ſnowy Mountains very cool and temperate. The Soil abundantly productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines, which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulberry-Tree, which ſeemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdom ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mongul*, about the year 1597: their own diſſenſions more conducing to that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. This City and Kingdom, is placed at the foot of the *Taurus*, to the North of *Labor*; and on the Eaſt of the *Indus*, a vaſt diſtance from the Province of *Dulcinda*, or *Dulſinda*; it ſtands near the Fountain of this River, in the Latitude of 38 or thereabouts. 2. *Roree*, a Fort of the *Monguls* towards *Paropamiſus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which people it properly belongeth: Garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſian*, (for *Paropamiſus*, now called *Cabul*, is his ancient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the people from the ſpoil of the Thieves, who always hang about the Mountains. 3. In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Segiſtan*, the chief City, as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; ſituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5. *Multan*, a great and ancient City and the chief of a Kingdom on the South of *Caximir* or *Chuſmur*; and about three *French* Leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorough-fair of the *Caravans* in the way from *Labor* to *Spahan*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Perſia*) forced to a bide there divers days, ſometimes ten or twelve to enrich the Town; which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this device; famed moſt eſpecially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of Horn, excellently glewed and put together; the Arrows of ſmall Canes or Reeds, both of them ſet off by rich Paint and Varniſh. They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *Eaſt India* beſides. There is another Town or Kingdom of or near this name on the other ſide of the River *Indus*, of which we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. 6. *Duckee*, a Fort or Garriſon, ſitutate in the Straights of the Mountains to ſecure the *Caravans*, and protect other Paſſengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in theſe Hill-Countries, the out-parts of this Empire. *Dulcinda*, the Capital City of this Province, (if any ſuch there be in *Indoſtan*) is ſeated upon the River that goeth to *Patanis*, to the Weſt of *Ilment*, and is a part of *Carmania Deſerta*, or at the leaſt bordereth upon it. So that I ſee no reaſon why the Cities he ſets down, ſhould be reckoned as a part of this Province.

2. *PENGAB.*

OPpoſite to *Dulſinda*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South lieth the Country, or diviſion rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *PENGAB*: bounded on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulſinda*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Mandao*; on the North, and Eaſt, with thoſe many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanier*. The *Perſians* and *Indoſtans*, call the River *Indus Pang-ab*, that is to ſay, five waters, becauſe ſo many Rivers come into it, before it unites into one great Channel. The firſt is *Bugat* or *Begut*, which riſeth near *Kabul*. 2. *Chanab*, which riſeth in *Caſſamier*, fifteen daies journey North of *Labor*, the 3. *Ravy*, or *Rave*, which runs by *Labor*. 4. *Via*, and the 5. *Oſvia* or *Sindo*, come from a great diſtance and meet near *Bakar*; which lieth at an equal diſtance from *Labor*. *Mandeslo*, *Pag*. 18. This is one of the moſt fruitful Provinces in *Indoſtan*, being Seated within, and Watered by all theſe five Rivers, and *Labor* is the Capital City of it.

The reaſon of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambatæ*, *Caſpiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sauſtene*: ſubdued by *Alexander* in his Expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Aceſines* and *Hydaſpis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their ſource. So that it ſeemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Labor*, on the Eaſtern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the faireſt and moſt ancient City in both the *Indies*; of moſt eſteem for wealth and greatneſs. In compaſs about ſixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Reſidence of the Great *Mongul*; till on the burning of his Palace, ſpoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caſcimir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at laſt to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldeſt Son, or Heir apparent, ſent hither for avoiding all occaſion of Factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding Trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in theſe parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence tranſported into *Perſia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principal Town of *Arachoſia*; and ſo to *Spahan*, the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are ſold, by reaſon of ſo long and chargeable a journey, for exceſſive rates. It is ſaid that 12000 Camels at the leaſt, paſs every year thorough it with their lading; beſides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormus*, till that Town was Taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great maſs of Treaſure which a late Governor hereof did leave behind him. At whoſe death *Echebar* the *Mongul* (for the *Mongul* is the Heir General unto all Mens Wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coyned, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoyned, and ſome ſtore of Jewels; beſides Horſes, Elephants, Houſehold-furniture, and other goods almoſt invaluable. The Caſtle of *Lahor* being very ſtrong, retains its ancient Beauty with part of the Royal Palace; the reſt of it is much decayed both in Extent and Beauty. The Houſes are higher than thoſe of *Agra* and *Delly*, but not ſo well peopled; the River is alſo gone off from it as well as the Court, which has made it much leſs in compaſs, yet it has five or ſix Streets ſtill, two of which are above a League long. *Tavernier* part 2. *p.* 45. *Bernier. p.* 123.

2. *Sultan-puare*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good eſteem. 3 *Athec*, in the common Road from *Lahor* to *China*; reported in the deſcription of the Travels of *Benedictus à Goes*, a *Portugal Jeſuit*, to be a month's journey from *Lahor*, and yet in the ſame Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province muſt be large, or his journeys ſhort: or if not true, we muſt remember that we had it from the Pen of a *Jeſuit*. And yet as great as this Province or Diviſion is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of conſideration, which may be ſaid with confidence to belong unto it; unleſs perhaps we may reduce under this Diviſion the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*; of which laſt the chief City is called *Bucorſuccor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not elſe obſervable.

3. MANDAO.

THE Kingdom of *MANDAO*, is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*, on the Eaſt, with *Delly*; and on the Weſt, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more Mountainous and rugged than the reſt of theſe Provinces, by reaſon of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imaus*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The Men, as moſt of thoſe who live in ſuch Mountainous Tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the reſt of the *Indians*: the Women here anciently as valiant as the Men in other places: riding aſtride, and practiſed in the Arts of Horſemanſhip, for that cauſe called *Amazons*; ſome of which are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. Inſomuch as it is written in the ſtories hereof, that the King of this Country not long ſince going to the wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thouſand Women all well mounted and prepared for ſervice.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Mandao*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Mandavo*, (the *Mandu* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, ſaid to be 30 miles in compaſs; yet ſo well fortified and furniſhed with all manner of neceſſaries for defence and reſiſtance, that it held out twelve years againſt *Mirumudius*, or *Merhamed* the *Great Mongul*, who then beſieged it. Surrendred at the laſt, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battel fought before it betwixt the ſaid *Merhamed* then coming to the relief thereof, and *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, who had then diſtreſſed it: in which *Badurius* loſt his Tents and Treaſures, and was fain to fly diſguiſed unto *Diu*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2 *Moltan*, which being miſtaken for another Town, of or near the ſame name, on the Weſtern ſide of the *Indus*, is by ſome Writers, ſaid to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it ſelf, but of no great note: the Women whereof, though not ſo good ſoldiers as their Anceſtors of the Female Sex, yet to come as near them as they can, uſe boots and ſpurs when they take a journey, and ſo fitted ſet aſtride the ſaddle. This and the former are the ſame; it is ſtill a great City, and makes vaſt quantities of *Calico*, but the length of the Carriage of them to *Surat* has much abated the Trade of it. *Tavernier*. p. 2. pag. 43. 3 *Scernus* on the River ſo called of more antiquity than greatneſs, as is alſo, 4 *Polymbothie*, the *Polibothrâ* of *Ptolemy* and others of the ancient Writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothei* (by *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Praſii*) a people of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf of great power and wealth, till *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this alſo. *Galgee*, then King of *Mandao*, finding himſelf too weak for ſo ſtrong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Miramudius* according to the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*, then reigning in *Chambul* or *Arachoſia*, and poſſeſſed of ſome parts of *India* alſo ſince the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own Subjects, ſome mercenary *Perſians*, and a great body of *Zagathaian Tartars*, from whom originally deſcended, came in accordingly: diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Badurius*, conſiſting of 150000 Horſe and 500000 foot, in two ſet battels; the firſt at *Doceti*, the next at *Mandao*, and following his blow, poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Kingdom of *Cambaia*. But not content with that ſucceſs, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whoſe aid he came; beſieged him in his principal City, which at laſt he won, and therewith all the Kingdom alſo: the wretched King ſhewing hereby both a fair evidence and example to ſucceeding Ages, that the eaſieſt way for a Prince to ruine his own Eſtate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Foreign power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as eaſily thruſt out, as he hath brought them in.

4. DELLY.

DELLY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Mandao*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Botantur*; on the North, with the Eaſtern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eaſtern parts alſo of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from *Delly*, the chief City of it, by ſome called *Delin*. The Provinces of this great Kingdom, and thoſe of *Ruſſia*, are not like our Counties and the Provinces in the populous Kingdoms, where the whole Country is peopl'd and divided by exact bounds; but here the Principal Cities have Governours ſent to them, who reſide in them and Adminiſter juſtice to the People: by which means the parts about the Cities are reaſonably well inhabited, thoſe that lye more remote are in a manner deſolate; partly by the Nature of the Country, and partly for want of protecting the People from the inſults of thieves and wicked Men: So that the ſhewing the ſituation of the principal City, is ſufficient to ſhew where the Province lies that depends upon it, without pretending exactly to bound it, which for the moſt part is impoſſible and needleſs. This Note is founded upon *Tavernier*, but I have not that Book now by me to quote the Page.

The Country, beſides what is common to it with the reſt of *India*, is ſaid to be more abundantly ſtored than any other part of it, with Horſes, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing ſingular, Except it be that many of them taking more delight in thievery than honeſt trades, live for the moſt part upon ſpoil; but thoſe eſpecially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being ſuch of the Nobility or better ſort, who ſince the Conqueſt of their Country by the *Great Mongul*, have lived like *Out-laws* on the Mountains. Of the ſame temper with the *Resbutes* in Cambaia, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulſinda*; who rather than ſubmit themſelves to a Foreign yoke, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chuſe to forſake their proper dwellings, and all honeſt ways and means of living.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Delly*, a City not only honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the great *Monguls*, who from hence paſs in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongſt their moſt knowing Subjects; but beautified with many Sepulchres of their ancient Kings, whoſe Funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deſerted of late times, by the *Great Mongul*, moving their Courts from place to place; as they enlarged their Empire, and encreaſed their Conqueſts: yet ſtill a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the ſame, and have their houſes of pleaſure and retirement into it. This City is ſuppoſed to be the Seat of that *Porus* who made himſelf famous in the invaſion of *Alexander the Great*, by his reſiſtance; for the Proof of which, the *Indians* do now ſhew an *Obelisk*, or *Pyramid* of ſtone, which by its unknown Characters ſeems to be of great Antiquity, and which is ſaid by them to have been built by *Alexander* the Great, after the defeat of *Porus*. The City is ſeated on the River *Gemna*, which runs Eaſt by *Agra*, and falls into the *Ganges*; The fortreſs is half a League in compaſs, with round Towers at the diſtance of every ten Battlements, and the Ditches are full of Water, wharfed with ſtone and it has lovely Gardens round about it; this having been the Court or Royal Palace of the *Monguls*. The Town has no Ditches, but is defended with Walls filled up with Earth behind, and Towers. The Air is more temperate than that of *Agra*. *Tavernier*, *Part*. 2*d*. *Pag*. 45.2. *Tremel*, upon the Weſtern ſide of the River *Mandao*; but not much obſervable. 3. *Doceti*, memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the Forces of *Badurius*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Country Governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at laſt conquered by ſome *Moors*, or *Saracens* coming from *Perſia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to ſo great power and wealth, that *Sanoſaradine* a *Mahometan*, one of their deſcendents, dreamt of no leſs than the Conqueſt of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Aſia* alſo. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) ſubdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes which made head againſt him; he pierced at laſt into *Canora*, now called *Decan*, and conquering a great part of it, returned back to *Delly*. The purſuit of his Victories he left unto one *Abdeſſa* his Lieutenant there, who added the reſt of that Country to his Maſter's Territories, but kept the poſſeſſion to himſelf; confirmed therein by *Sanoſaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanoſaradine* dying in a War againſt the *Perſians*, left for his Succeſſor a Son ſo unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other Maſters, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithſtanding of ſufficient power to preſerve it ſelf, from any of their equal neighbours, till the riſing of the great *Monguls*: whoſe puiſſance being unable to withſtand, it ſubmitted at the laſt to *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, the ſecond Emperour of this Line: who to aſſure himſelf of the peoples loyalty, and conqueſts, ſettled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next proſperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. *AGRA*.

THE Realm of *AGRA* is bounded on the North, with *Delly* and *Mandao*; on the South, with *Sanga* and *Cambaia*; on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambaia*; on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan* or *Orixa*, ſo call'd from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of late times of the Great *Monguls*.

The Country ſaid to be the beſt and moſt pleaſant of *India*, plentifull in all things, and ſuch a delicate even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be ſeen. Well watered as with other Rivers, ſo moſt eſpecially with thoſe of *Tamlico* and *Jemena*; which laſt runneth thorough the midſt of it, North and South; or rather from the North-weſt to the South eaſt, from whence bending more directly Eaſtwards, it falleth at laſt into the *Ganges*, or that which is ſuppoſed to be *Ganges*; for the head of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the moſt part *Gentiles*, *Mahometaniſm* coming in with the *Great Mongul*; and generally inclining ſomewhat to the *Pythagorean* Sect. For ſuch as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena*, neither eat fleſh nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they eſteem ſo ſacred, that thereof they uſually make their Temple, and ſay their Prayers therein, but naked (in which poſture they both dreſs their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being impoſed by them as penance, and ſo conceived.

Places of moſt eſteem herein, 1 *Fattipore* or *Fettibarri*, on the Weſt ſide of the River, a very fair and goodly City once beautified with a Royal Palace here built by *Echebar* (after the removal of his Court from *Caſcimer*) with many ſpacious Gardens belonging to it; but much decayed, ſince the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which moſt of the ſtones are carried, and no ſmall quantity of Corn ſowed within the Walls. 2 *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferiour to *Labor* for wealth and greatneſs, but far more populous: the conſtant reſidence of the Court here in theſe latter times, drawing to it great reſort of all ſorts of people. By ſome ſuppoſed to be the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*, but ſuch a ſuppoſition as is built on no better ground, than ſome reſemblance of the names. For *Ptolemy*'s *Nagara* is by him placed on the Weſtern ſide of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33, whereas this *Agra* ſtandeth on the Eaſt of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it loſeth in antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdom, till *Echebar* the *Mongul* ſubdued it, *Anno* 1598, in his paſſage from *Labor* to *Decan*. But it loſt nothing by the hand: for *Echebar* delighted in the ſituation of it (and that withall it ſtood in the middle of his Kingdoms) made it the Seat-Royal of his Empire; fixt there, for the moſt part ever ſince: by means whereof exceedingly increaſed in wealth, beauty and greatneſs; the very Caſtle in which the *Mongul* uſually reſideth, being two miles in compaſs, environed with moſt high and unſcaleable Walls, and fortified with great ſtore of Ordinance. The whole ſpace betwixt it and *Fattipore*, being 18 miles, beautified with many *Mahometan* Temples, and with one alſo built by *Echebar*, for the uſe of ſuch Chriſtians as had been gained unto the faith, by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuits*. For the ſupply hereof with Victuals, and other neceſſary Proviſions, and the ſecurity of ſuch as reſort unto it, affirmed to be a continual market: and all the interval from hence to the Town of *Labor* (from which diſtant 400 miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rows of Trees on both ſides of the ways, moſt of them bearing a kind of Mulberry; and at every ten miles end, houſes erected by the King or ſome of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regal City, for preſerving their own memory, and the ſafe lodging of Paſſengers, in danger otherwiſe by night, of Theives and Cut-throats. The true *Latitude* of *Agra*, is 27. 31. It is ſeated in a Sandy Soil, and very Hot, yet it is now the biggeſt City in *Indoſtan*; tho' the *Moguls* have removed their Palace to *Gehan Abad*, which in probability, in a ſhort time will waſte it, as it has ever done all other Capital Cities. It has no Walls, nor are the Streets built in any order, or adorned with any fine buildings as *Tavernier* pretends: For our Countryman who ſaw it in 1584, ſaith, it was populous, built with Stone, and divided into large and fair Streets, having a large River running by it. The Prince that built the City, was then living in it, ſo that the Reverend Author is certainly miſtaken as to the date of it. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. *Pag*. 254. 3. *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Caſtle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about; fortified with 50 Pieces of Ordinance, and thought impregnable; for that cauſe made a Priſon for great Perſons. Here are alſo two Hoſpitals for ſuch Captains (and Captains only) as are maimed in the Wars. 4. *Biani*, twelve courſe or 18 miles from *Battipore*; the moſt noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve mills. Which *Indico* (by the way) groweth on a ſmall ſhrub like our Gooſberry-buſhes, bearing ſeed like Cabbage-ſeed: which being cut down are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a Vault to be troden with Oxen from the ſtalks; and being ground ſmall and fine at the mills, is laſt of all boiled in Furnaces, refined and ſorted, and ſold to the Merchants.

To this diviſion alſo, we may reduce the Kingdom of *Gwaliar* ſo called of *Gwaliar* the chief City, where the *Mogul* hath a very rich Treaſury of Gold and Silver; kept in a ſtrong Caſtle, wherein his Priſoners are ſecured likewiſe; and for thoſe reaſons, contnually guarded by a ſtrong Company of ſtout and well appointed Soldiers.

THE Emperours of *INDOSTAN*, commonly called the *Moguls*. *Tavernier*, *Part*. 2. *Pag*. 106.

1 1370 *Tamer-Leng*, that is to ſay, the *Lame Prince*, becauſe one of his Legs was ſhorter than the other; was the moſt Potent Prince that has Reigned for many Ages in the Eaſt; he died in the year 1405, and lies buried at *Samarchand*, in the Country of the *Uzbegg-Tartars* the place of his Nativity.

2 1405 *Miram Cha*, the Son of *Tamer-Leng*.

3 1411 *Sultan Mahomet*, Son of *Miram Cha*.

4 *Sultan Mirza*, Son of *Mahomet*.

5 *Hameth Sheck*, the Son of the *Sultan* aboveſaid.

6 *Sultan Babur*, *i. e.* the Valiant Prince; the firſt *Mogul* that was of great power in *India*. he died in the year 1532.

7 1532 *Homajon*, *i. e.* the Happy Son of *Sultan Babur*.

8 1552 *Abdul*, *Feta*, *Gelal Eddin*, *Mahomet*, commonly called *Akuba*, that is the Great. He Reigned 54 years.

9 1605 *Sultan Selim*, otherwiſe called *Jehan-guir Patſha*, that is the Victorious Emperour of the World. He had 4 Sons, *Sultan Koſrou*, 2. *Sultan Kourom*, 3. *Sultan Perviez*, and 4. *Cha Daniel*, oppoſed by *Sultan Kourom*, and died of Grief.

10 1627 *Sultan Kourom*, the 2. Son, ſucceeded him and was called *Cha Jehan*. This Prince built a City which he called by his own name, *Jehan-Abad*, and removed the Seat of the Empire from *Agra*. He was a Prince of great Goodneſs and Juſtice, and Governed his Empire for 40 years, more like a Father than a Prince. He had theſe 4 Sons, 1. *Dara-cha*, a good prince. 2. *Sultan Suja*, 3. *Aureng Zeb*, 4. *Morad Bakche*: falling Sick in the year 1659, the ſecond and fourth Son entered into a War againſt the eldeſt, who by the Father's order was proclaimed King; and the third joined with the fourth, but made himſelf Maſter of all, and kept his Father a Priſoner, Revenging the Rebellion of this Prince againſt *Jehan-guir* his Father, and *Sultan Boulaki* his elder Brother's Son; who for ſome time Reigned after his Grand-father. He died in confinement in the year 1666.

11 1659 *Aureng Zeb*, is an Ambitious Diſſembling Prince, and outwitted both his Father and all his Brothers, and much enlarged his Dominions; he laid a Foundation alſo for the Conqueſt of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, by the Marriage of the ſecond Daughter of that King, to *Mahmoud* his Eldeſt Son. He took Priſoner, and beheaded *Dara-cha* his Eldeſt Brother, and then he cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed King of *Indoſtan*, the 20. of *October* 1660, tho' he was ſuch in effect long before. *Mahomet* his Eldeſt Son had a great hand in all his Wars, and of him too, he at laſt became jealous, and put him with *Morad Bakche*, and *Soliman Chekour* his Eldeſt Brother's Son, into the Fort of *Goualeor*, the 30. of *January* 1661. *Sultan Suja* his remaining Brother, periſhed in the *Deſarts* of *Arakau*; his Father died in the end of the year 1666. To gain the Crown he pretended to have a deſign to cauſe the Law of *Mahomet* to be more exactly obſerved, which had been much neglected in the Reigns of *Sha Jehan* his Father, and *Gehan-guir* his Grandfather; and to ſhew himſelf Zealous for the Law, he turned *Faquir* or *Derwich*, that is a Poor Volunteer: under which pretence of Piety, he cunningly made way to the Empire. He is a follower of the Sect of *Sounnis* or *Turkiſh Mahometiſm*, to which he forceth his very *Perſian* Soldiers to conform. *Tavernier*, *Part* 2. *Pag*. 159.

Mr. *Herbert* in his Travels, thus ſets down the Great *Moguls*, *Pag*. 30. 1. *Tamberlaine*, 2. *Alancham*, 3. *Barcham*, 4. *Emanpaxda*, 5. *Shaugh Mahumed*, 6. *Adabar*, 7. *Mahumed Selabdyn* Sirnamed *Ekbar*, 8. *Jangheer*, Sirnamed *Shaw Selym*. 9. *Blokie*, ſlain preſently after his Coronation. 10. *Courrone*, Sirnamed *Shaw Jehan*, this happened in *October* in 1627, the Author being then in *Surat*-Road

The CATALOGUE of the *Moguls*, from Dr. *Pocock*'s Supplement to the Compendium of the *Dynaſties*.

1 1284 *Argun*, the Founder of the *Mogolian* Empire. He Reigned 7 Years.

2 1291 *Caicbtu* in *Texira Ganjatu*, he Reigned but 4 Years.

3 1294 *Baidu*, Son of *Targihi*, he Reigned but 8 Months.

4 1294 *Kazan*, Son of *Argun* the Founder; he imbraced *Mahometiſm*, and took the name of *Mahomet*. In 1299, he took *Damaſcus*. He Reigned 18 Years.

5 1303 *Giyatho-ddin*, *Chodobandah*, *Mahomet*, the Son *Argun*, the Son of *Abga* the Brother of the former ſucceeded, call'd alſo *Al Jaitu*, and *Alyaptu*. He died in *Soltania* built by him.

6 1316 *Abu Said Bahadur Chan*, a Child of 11 years of Age, was the laſt of this Family; he died in 1335; upon which this Kingdom of the *Tartars*

Tartars, was divided into Factions and deſtroyed

1 1368 *Timur Lenc*, commonly called *Tam*- Lame Prince) a Prince of gre- *merlanes* (the Reigned 36 Years. His S- at renown; he known to us, tho' ve- Succeſſors are not of *Aſia*. -ry great in the midſt

2 1404 *Chalil Son M*- Founde- -*ran Sabi*, Son of *Tamerlanes*,

3 1411 *Shab* [illegible] of the *Moguls* of *Indoſtan*.

4 [illegible] *Ruch*, *Badhadur*, *Soltan*, Son of *Tamerlanes*, Brother of *Chalil*, Reigned 43 years.

[illegible]446 *Ala'adaulab Mirza*, Son of *Baiſen Kari*, Son of *Shab Ruch*, Seized *Choraſan* and Reigned there.

5 1448 *Olug Beg*, a Son of *Shab Ruch*, diſpoſſeſſed the former.

6 1449 *Abdo'llatiph Mirza*, Son of *Olug Beg*.

7 1454 { *Mirza Abdollab*, Son of *Abraham*, Son of *Shab Ruch*, ſucceeded in *Samarchand*, *Mahomet Mirza*, Son of *Baigenkari*, Son of *Shab Ruch*, was ſlain by

8 1454 *Baber Mirza*, in 1451, this Prince after the death of his elder Brothers, continued the Succeſſion.

9 1456 *Abu Said*, a Grand-Son of *Tamerlanes*.

10 1468 *Hoſain Mirza*.

11 1505 *Mobafer* and *Badio'zzaman Mirza*, Sons of *Sultan Hozain*.

12 1509 *Abal*, *Mahan*, *Mirza*, the laſt of *Tamerlans*'s Poſterity in *Choraſan*, *Bactria*.

6. SANGA.

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the Eaſt Parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South, and Weſt, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the Weſt, by the Mountain *Gate*; and on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*. The reaſon of the name I find not: this Country being too far South to be ſo called from *Sangalaſſa*, a Town of chief note near the Fountains of *Indus*; where Placed by *Arianus*, lib. 5.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Azimere* or *Agimer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every courſe (each courſe a mile and a half) a fair Pillar erected, and at every tenth courſe a fair *Seraglio*, (ſuch as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellers. All built by *Echebar* who wanting Children, is ſaid to have gon in Pilgrimage on foot from *Agra* to *Azimere*, ſaying his Prayers at the end of every courſe, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdom of it ſelf, or the chief of that Kingdom. Situate in the middle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia* and *Agra* ſpoken of before; and moſt magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the paſſage is ſo narrow and ſo well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of Art and Nature, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12 miles in compaſs, beautified with many good buildings both publick and private; but once more glorious than now it is; here being to be ſeen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houſes, either demoliſhed by the Wars, or ſuffered to decay by the great *Monguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity than themſelves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold the old. The greatneſs and antiquity of it have made ſome Men think, that it was the Royal Seat of *Porus*. Others affirm the ſame of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdom of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not ſo far South. Governed not long ſince by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more fair than valiant, who revolting from *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, to whom ſhe formerly had paid Tribute, was diſpoſſeſſed of the Town of *Citor*, where ſhe had fortified her ſelf with 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: the People in a deſperate reſolution, laying all their Treaſure on a heap [illegible], which they burnt together with themſelves; in which flame it is ſaid that their periſhed 70000 Perſons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his Victory, for not long after both the City and a great part of the Country was conquered by the Great *Mongul*; the mountainous parts hereof being held againſt him by *Ramee*, the Son or Succeſſor of Queen *Crementina*: till ſeeing himſelf deſtitute of all better helps, he put himſelf into the hands of one of the Sons of the late *Sultan*, by whom reconciled to his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province and in the reſt before mentioned; and thoſe of good eſteem perhaps amongſt the Natives: but of no obſervation or importance in the courſe of buſineſs. Under this name we may alſo comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagracil*, ſo called of the chief City of it, and that moſt memorable for a rich and ſumptuous Chappel, cieled and paved with Plate of pure Silver, moſt curiouſly imboſſed over-head in ſeveral figures, which they keep exceeding bright, with often rubbing and continual burniſhing. *Malway*, another of theſe Kingdoms, for it is a near neighbour to *Citor*, may be Placed here alſo, affirmed to be a fruitful Province and the chief City of it, to be called *Rantipore*.

7. CAMBAIA.

CAMBAIA hath on the Eaſt, *Delly*, and part of *Mandao*; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, *Dulſinda*, and the reſt of *Mandao*, on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*. It lieth on both ſides of the *Indus*; and is ſo called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into 1. *Sinda*, 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambaia*, eſpecially ſo called.

1. SINDA, (by ſome called the Kingdom of *Tutta*, from *Tutta* the chief City of it) hath on the Eaſt, the River *Indus*, by which ſeparated from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulſinda*; on the Weſt, part of *Gedroſia* and *Guadel*; and on the South, the *Indian* Ocean, coaſting along the Weſtern banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Schind*, as was ſaid before. And for this reaſon, as I take it, the Weſtern part of *India* lying North of this took the name of *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a *c*) as moſt commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile; but in ſome places nothing but a ſandy Deſart, inhabited for the moſt part by wild Aſſes, Foxes, Deer, and ſome wilder beaſts; but none ſo wild as the *Cælies*, a robbing Nation, ſo numerous withal, that they ſometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they paſs that way; notwithſtanding the many Forts and Caſtles built of purpoſe to ſecure thoſe paſſages.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Tutta* (*Gutu Negar Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great Trade but moſt frequented by the *Portugals*, who here receive ſuch *Indian* Commodities as come down the water from *Labor*, returning Pepper in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2 *Lawribander*, at the mouth of the out-let of *Indus*, three days journey from *Tutta*, the Port-Town unto which it is, notwithſtanding that diſtance. Suppoſed to be ſituate in or near the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his Navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, becauſe free from Worms; which at *Surat*, and at other Havens on theſe Seas, ſo infeſt the Ships, that without much coſt and care beſtowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3 *Caiwalla*, memorable for the *Towers*, as given by *Echebar* the *Mongul* to a company of Women and their poſterity for ever, to bring up their Daughters to dancing, and more wanton exerciſes. 4. *Redempoor*, a great Town with a ſtrong Caſtle, ſeated on the edge of the *Deſarts*: thorough which thoſe that are to paſs uſe here to provide themſelves of water and other neceſſaries for their journey. 5. *Naraquemire*, a pretty Town on the further ſide of the Deſarts, eſteemed a *Paradiſe* by ſuch as have paſſed thorough thoſe uncomfortable and dangerous Sands, for the ſpace of ten or twelve days journey. 6 *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*, the Center in which all lines meet; and from whence diſtances of all Towns of *Sinda* are accuſtomably meaſured.

The Country anciently ſubject to the King of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the *Great Mongul*: but the people for the moſt part ſo untamed and maſterleſs that except in ſome of the greater Towns, they pay no *Tribute*; and in ſome places, even within half a day's journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledg no King, but rob and ſpare whom they Pleaſe. If at any time the *Mongul* ſends a force againſt them, (as he doth ſometimes) they fire their houſes, made like a *Bee-Hive* of Straw and Morter, which are ſoon rebuilded, and retire themſelves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongſt many ill ones: When they have robbed a *Traveller*, took mony of him in the way of Toll or Cuſtom for his Paſſage by them, they will conduct him honeſtly to the end of the Deſarts, leſt any ſhould rob him but themſelves.

2. *GVZARATE* hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South the main Ocean, and *Cambaia*; *Chitor* to the Eaſt; and *Tutta* to the Weſt, with the *Indus*.

The ſoil of the ſame temper and fertility with that of *Cambaia*, eſpecially so called; and there we ſhall ſpeak further of it: The Common people whom they call *Guzarates*, of the ſame diſpoſition generally with the reſt of the *Indians*: but the greateſt part of the Country is poſſeſſed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. Who when their Country was ſubdued by the *Moors* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains or Faſtneſſes of it, ſtanding upon their guard; and were never yet ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though poſſeſſed of the Sea-ſhores, and moſt Towns of conſequence, are fain to leave the In-land parts and open Countries to the power of the *Out-laws*; who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain rates, Their Arms moſt commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Lance; well horſed and reſolute in any thing they undertake; which made one of the *Monguls* ſay of them, *That no Men in the world knew to dye, but they*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Diu* in a *Peninſula* looking towards *Perſia*, but on the Eaſt ſide thereof near the mouth of *Indus*. Poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, and by them fortified with ſtrong and impregnable Cittadels, built with the leave and liking of King *Bedurius*; thereby to buy their aid againſt *Merhamed* the *Mongul*, who had newly vanquiſhed him. A matter of ſuch conſequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Botelius*, confined to *India* for ſome crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that ſervice to obtain his pardon) to carry the firſt news of it in a ſmall Veſſel, not above 18 foot long, and about 6 foot broad (the beſt which for the preſent could be provided:) Which with great courage he performed, and through that large, wide, and tempeſttuous Ocean came in ſafety with his news to *Lisbon*, to the great joy of the King; but greater admiration of all ſorts of people. Scarce ſettled in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged by *Solyman Baſſa* Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537. offended with the *Portugals* for aiding the King of *Perſia*; more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had ſo ill ſucceſs, that having aſſaulted it in vain with his Land-Forces, he was fain to raiſe his ſiege in ſuch haſte and tumult, that he left his great Ord'nance behind him. 2 *Sauran*, a Town and Caſtle of the *Resbutes*, ſpoken of before, and by them held againſt the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3 *Boldra*, a very fair and beautifull City, but of no great compaſs. 4 *Ardovat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5 *Madabat*, by ſome called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatneſs the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *London*, well walled, and ſituate on a Plain near the River-ſide: ſeldom without Merchants of all Religions, *Jews*, *Gentiles*, *Chriſtians*, *Moors*, ſome of all and neither. *Amadabath*, the Metropolis of *Guzurat*, lies in the Latitude of 23. 32. 18 Leagues from *Cambaia* to the South; and 45 from *Surat*, to the North upon a ſmall River, comprehending with its Suburbs and the Villages about it, which are a part of it, 7 Leagues in compaſs; the Streets are very broad, and the publick and private buildings are very magnificent. There is not any Nation or Merchandize in *Aſia*, which may not be met with in this City; and which much improves the Trade of it, there is nothing paid for Exportation or Inportation: It hath Juriſdiction over 25 great Towns and 2998 Villages, which yield yearly ſix Millions of Crowns, all expended again upon the Garriſon. There are ſo many Gardens about this City, and ſo many Trees in it, that the whole City looks like a Garden at a diſtance. *Mandeſlo, Pag.* 29. 6 *Sparinga*, 7 *Periano*, 8 *Skerkeſſe*, this laſt remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*; fair, and well kept, and viſited from all parts of the Kingdom.

Nothing couſiderable in this part of the Country as to point of ſtory, but what is common to them with the reſt of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Rasbooches* ſtill remain unconquered. Poſſeſſed not only of the Hills and Mountains, but of ſome ſtrong holds; and governed by the heads of their *Caſts* or Tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour*, in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Soveraign: conceiving it to be ſome abaſement of their own authority, if they admit him as an Umpire to compoſe their differences, which they ſometimes do.

3. *CAMBAIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North, *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*; on the Eaſt, *Surat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the weſt, the maiu Ocean, with ſome part of *Guzarate*. It ſtandeth on the Eaſt ſides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-ſhore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia*, the cheif City of it.

The Country ſaid to be the moſt fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all ſorts, and choiceſt fruits: of Silk and Cotton ſo great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty Ships with thoſe commodities. In the mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onyx*-ſtone, which are called *Cornelines*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongſt the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great beaſt, twice as big as a Bull, having on their ſnouts a little horn, and the Hide ſo hard, as no Man can pierce it with a thruſt, which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much uſed by the *Monguls* in a war of conſequence; to ſupply which defect he furniſheth himſelf with Soldiers out of *Perſia*, of which his ſtanding-bands conſiſt; moſt of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation alſo. More given to Merchandize than War, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitfull withall) as any people in the World: treacherous in their truſt, proud in their carriage, bloudy upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of Letters, but well practiſed in *Mechanical* Arts. In matters of Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, not knowing, or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctual in their own heatheniſh ſuperſtitions. The *Bannians* in this Country, being natural *Indians*, nuſled in Paganiſm, and ſo wedded to their old Idolatries, that no perſwaſions can prevail with them, make the greateſt number; and ſeem to be all *Pythagoreans* in ſome opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath bloud or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantoons and ſuch natural fruits: paying a large *Revenue* yearly to the *Great Mongul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongſt them. And becauſe that new opininos ſhould not grow amongſt them, they marry in their own *Tribes* only, and never out of their own *Trades*; ſecure thereby as they conceive from all *innovations*.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Cambaia*, three miles in compaſs, one of the neateſt and beſt built of all the Eaſt. So populous withal, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families; and is therefore called the *Cairo* of the *Indies*. Of moſt eſteem in all this Kingdom (though far leſs than *Madabat*) to which it doth impart its name. *Cambaia*, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, and a noble Port; lying in a very great Bay of the ſame name. This Kingdom is now ſubject to the great *Mogul*: the City lies in Longitude 105, Latitude 22, 30. This is one of the greateſt, the richeſt and beſt traded Cities in the *Eaſt Indies*; ſeated in a fruitful ſoil and full of people: *It is walled with a fair Wall of free-ſtone, and hath very large houſes, with ſtraight and broad Streets; it is greater than* Surat, *being 16 Leagues in compaſs, and hath 3 Baſars or Market-Places, and 4 noble Tanks or Ciſterns, able to find the Inhabitants water all the year; tho' there is 7 Fathom water in the Haven of this City at a high water, yet at low water the Ships lye dry in the Sand and Mud which cover the bottom of it: the Inhabitants are partly* Heathens *and partly Mahometans; and in 1638, the* Engliſh *had here a Factory, as* Mandelſlo *acquaints us, from whom the latter part of this Deſcription is taken.* The Province belonging to it, has the ſame name, and is bounded to the Eaſt, by *Mandao*; to the Weſt, by *Gedroſia*; and to the South, by the *Indidian* Ocean. It is a great, rich and fruitful Province; the Inhabitants *Moors*, *Perſians* and *Bannyans*. *Herbert*, *Pag*. 42. *Mahometans* and *Pagans* as to their Religion. It is the moſt Populous Kingdom in *Indoſtan*, and the Capital City is 3 miles in compaſs, and thought to contain 800000 Men. In 1423, it was conquered by an *Arabian* Prince, whoſe Poſterity in the 3d Deſcent were conquered by the *Mogul*. 2. *Baracho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of a hill, with a fair River underneath it; well walled and noted for the beſt *Calicuts* (a kind of Linnen-Cloath ſo called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was firſt made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. *Mandeſlo*, *Pag*. 26. calls this City *Broitſchia*, placing it in 21. 56. Latitude, 12 Leagues from *Surat* to the North, and 8 from the Sea, upon a pretty high Mountain with a River at the foot of it, having Walls of free-ſtone ſo well built that it may be numbered amongſt the ſtrongeſt Places in the *Indies*: It has a good Garriſon for its Defence, and is ſaith he, ſufficiently well peopled; and alſo its Suburbs; but there live in it few perſons of Quality, moſt of the Inhabitants being Cotton-weavers. 3. *Swalley*, ſtill more to the South, and about a mile from the Sea-ſhore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the Shps ride that trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops, fortified with a Caſtle of ſtone, well ſtored with Ordinance. The Houſes for the moſt part of Sun-dryed Bricks, very large and laſting: built with flat Roofs, but Battlemented on all ſides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and Lemmons, enterlaced with Rivulets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *Engliſh* Merchants, who have here their Preſident, and a magnificent Houſe for their reception, and Staple of their Commodities. *Surat* is ſeated in the Latitude of 21. 42. upon the River *Tapta*, which riſeth near *Barampour*, and four Leagues beneath this City falls into the Sea. The City is four ſquare, and one of its ſides is waſhed by the River, for which cauſe it is not Walled, but the three ſides to the Landward have a good Rampart of Stone, and a Caſtle of free-ſtone. The Trade of this City was brought to what it is by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who ſettled their Factories here, and made it thereby one of rhe beſt Traded Ports in the *Indies*. The *Engliſh* Preſident of this Factory, was then the principal of all the *Engliſh* Trading in the *Eaſt Indies*. *Mandeſlo*, *Pag*. 23. *Thevenot*, *Part*. 3. *Pag*. 15. *Tavernier*, *Part*. 2. *Pag*. 109. *Bernier*, *Pag*. 58. 5 *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indico*, of the matter and making whereof we have ſpoke already, when we were at *Biani*, a Town, or City of the Kingdom, or Diviſion of *Agra*; as memorable for that Commodity as this *Neriand*, or any other of *India*. 6 *Daman*, upon the Sea-ſide over againſt *Diu*; and poſſeſſed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautifull and pleaſant Town, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle at the North end of it, of white chalky ſtone, well planted with ord'nance: oppoſite whereunto on the South ſide of the Town, a goodly Church, edged on the top with white. Which with the houſes for the moſt part of the ſame colour alſo, afford a pleaſant proſpect to the Sailers by. 7. *Campanels*, ſituate on the top of an high Mountain, and environed with a ſeven-fold wall, once the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8 *Dacaitote*, a place of ſuch ſtrength, that the *Great Monguls* could never get it by force. Surrendred at laſt upon compoſition, conditioned they ſhould ſtill be governed by a King of their own. 9 *Netherby*, a great Market of Brazen ware, Beaſts, and Armour. 10 *Bandare*, 11 *Tanai*, &c. 12. *Brodra*, a City 27 Leagues North from *Surat*, upon a little River called *Waſſet*, which was lately built by *Raſia Ghie*, Son of *Sultan Mahomet* the laſt King of *Guzarate*. It is fortified with good Walls and Baſtions, after the old way; and hath 5 Gates. It hath under it 210 Villages, and a Garriſon ſent thither by the *Mogul*. I am doubtful whether this be not *Boldra* mentioned above in *Guzerat*. *Mandeſlo*, *Pag*. 27.

This Kingdom taking in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts hereof is extremely populous; ſaid to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accuſtomed to, or unfit for wars. Anciently governed by Kings of their own, it was firſt ſubdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, *Anno* 1423. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*; who having forced the *Resbutes* or Naturals of the Country to betake themſelves to the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him ſucceeded his Son *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was ſupplied by his Son *Badurius*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* alſo. His Army for that war conſiſted of 500000 Foot, 150000 Horſe, 1000 great Pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons loaded with Powder and Shot, and as many Wain-loads of Gold and Silver to pay his Army. But being diſcomfited in two great Battels by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgoe* the *Mandoan* King had called in to his aid, he ſhaved his beard, and fled in a diſguiſe to *Diu*, then poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; whom he licenſed in that diſtreſs to build the Cittadel; ſlain afterwards by a mean Mariner, at his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had Viſited on Ship-board. And though *Mamudius* his ſucceſior endeavoured to free his Kingdom from both pretenders, yet weakned with the loſs of ſo great an Army, he was not able to effect it. Firſt driven from *Diu*, which he had beſieged both by Sea and Land, to his great diſhonour; and after vanquiſhed in battel by *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkeffe*, the ancient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdom; which by that victory fell to the Great *Monguls*, who have ſince enjoyed it.

4. DECAN.

DECAN is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with the *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Malabar* and *Canara*. The reaſon of the ſame we ſhall have anon.

It lyeth along the Sea-Coaſt for the ſpace of 250 miles betwixt *Aliga* and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending Eaſt, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thruſting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and thoſe Mountains till it meet with *Cambaia*. The Soil much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *India*, but not ſo flouriſhing as *Cambaia*. The people for the moſt part *Mahometans*, which Religion was firſt planted there by the conqueſts of *Sanoſaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without ſome intermixture of their ancient *Gentiliſm*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat-

Royal of *Mamudza*, once ſole King of this Country; who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his Prefects, or ſubordinate Governours, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reſide therein certain months in the year: each one to leave a Son there in perpetual Hoſtage. Situate in the moſt Northern parts of the Country more near the borders of *Delly*: from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make ſure of this place, as moſt in danger. 2. *Viſapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Indalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was diſmembred into ſeveral Kingdoms. 3 *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flouriſhing City, once the chief Seat of *Niſalamoccus* or *Nizalmoxa*, another of the Kings hereof, after that diviſion. 4. *Decan*, ſo called by the name of the Province; of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompaſſed with an high wall, and kept by a ſtrong Garriſon, becauſe of the great ſtore of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The Town ſo wealthy, that the people generally are attired in Silks, or the pureſt *Tiffany*. 5. *Sintacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea-port Town alſo, ſituate in a little but moſt pleaſant Iſland, called *Ticuarinum*, fifteen miles in compaſs; oppoſite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandavo*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleaſantneſs of ſituation, one of moſt note in all this Country. Poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arſenal*, and Harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they command theſe Seas. So ſtrongly fortified withal, that though beleaguered by *Indalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 Horſe, 6000 Elephants, and 250 Pieces of Ordinance, *Anno* 1573, yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient ſituation and ſtrength thereof, the ordinary reſidence of the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, who hath here his Council, Chancellour, and other Officers, for the Government of ſuch parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as alſo of the Arch-Biſhop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-Biſhop of *Goa*. 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* alſo, and by them well fortified: inſomuch that *Niſamalocco* aſſaulting it at the very ſame time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Balaguate*, in the Up-lands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name; *Baia* in the *Perſian* Language ſignifying a top or ſummit of a Mountain, and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief Seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of thoſe parts of *Decan* which are Subject to the Great *Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the midſt of a ſpacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great Trading; in bigneſs equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mongul* without any reſiſtance, *Anno* 1600. *Miram* then the King thereof forſaking it, and betaking himſelf to, 10. *Syca*, a ſtrong hold both by Art and nature; ſituate on the top of an Hill, which is in compaſs five Leagues, and environed with a triple Wall: furniſhed with Victuals, and all other neceſſary Proviſions, ſufficient to maintain 60000 Men many years; 3000 great Pieces of Ordinance planted on the Walls. Beſieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting Men, he held out againſt him; till overcome by promiſes of fair correſpondence, drawn out of his hold (ſome of his Counſellors being bribed to perſwade him to it) he was detained by the *Mongul*, and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes, yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Royal Family, accuſtomably kept therein when the Throne was full; which vacant, the next Heir was taken thence to ſucceed unto it. Of the ſame nature as it ſeemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Æthiopia*, or the *Abaſſine* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a People called *Venazarari*, by Religion Gentiles; and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Noſaradine* a *Mahometan*, and King of *Delly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the hill-Countries poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of it, compelling them to ſubmit to his Religion. The reſidue hereof ſubdued by *Abdeſſa*, whom *Sa Noſaradine* left here to purſue the War; was by him Governed with great Juſtice for 20 years, when dying he left his Government to his Son *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Succeſſour of *Sa Noſaradine* in his Father's Regency, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* ſoon finding that the young King was of no great ſpirit, not only refuſed to pay the Tribute impoſed on him, but took unto himſelf the title of King of *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a mongrel body of *Chriſtians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Cuſtoms or Religion; the word *Decan* ſignifying in that Tongue, as much as an illegitimate Brood, or a body of Baſtards. Out of theſe he made choice of twelve (others ſay eighteen) whom he appointed Governours of ſo many Provinces: not daring to truſt any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that theſe Slaves, ſo promoted by him, would be more ſubject to command. But here his ſilly hopes deceived him. For theſe Slaves either governed by their Maſter's example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Noſaradine*; or preſuming on their own ſtrength, and ſome Foreign Aids, left to their Maſter nothing but an empty Title; each one becoming abſolute in his ſeveral Province. Nor did his Succeſſours for any long time enjoy that Title; *Daquem*, the laſt of them being taken at *Bider* his chief City, and thereupon the name of King uſurped by every one of theſe petty Tyrants; reduced at laſt into fewer heads. Such of them as were left, became conſiderable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raiſed by *Indalcan* for the Siege of *Goa*. But in the end, diſtreſſed on the one ſide by the *Portugals* who embarred their Trade, and invaded on the other ſide by the Great *Mongul* with moſt puiſſant Armies; *Melic* entituled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine ſubdued by *Echebar* about the year 1600. Againſt whom and his Succeſſours, tho' the *Venazarari* ſtill hold out as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amdanager*, perhaps alſo ſome other petty Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country, the reſidue of theſe *Roytelets*, and petty Princes (if any of them be remaining) being Homagers or Vaſſals to him. Againſt whoſe farther Progreſs to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* ſo greedily aimed at, the puiſſant Kings of *Narſinga*, and thoſe of *Malabar* have oppoſed their power; whoſe Kingdoms and Eſtates we muſt next ſurvey, before we take a view of thoſe other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9. CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof formerly it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga* from which ſeparated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the Weſt, with the Ocean. The reaſon of the name I find not, nor is it much worth the ſearching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coaſt, with many capacious Harbours in it, which cannot but add much to the Wealth thereof; as liberally furniſhed in the in-land parts with Rice, Figgs, and Sugars: but deſtitute of Wheat, Pulſe, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the People either not knowing, or not regarding the uſe of bread; but living on ſuch fruits as the Earth produceth of it ſelf, without the charge or care of the Husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the reſt of the *Indians*: their Religion for the moſt part *Paganiſh*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it; 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2. *Onor*, a Port-Town of good note; ſometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Batcalia*; ſituate in the richeſt part of all this Country; never poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalor*, a Town of great Wealth and Trade; fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, once deſtroyed by the *Portugueſes*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narſinga*, who is of this Country. 5. *Mayendre*, more within the Land. And ſo is alſo, 6. *Liſpor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7. *Salſette*, in a *Peninſula* of 20 miles compaſs, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and ſubject with the whole *Peninſula* to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now ſubject to the King of *Narſinga*, but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara* comprehending in thoſe times all that Country alſo, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Noſaradine* and *Abdeſſa*, and by *Mamudza*, cantoned into many *Prefectures*; this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narſingan*, who taking his advantages in the Minority of one of their Princes, became Maſter of it. And when *Idalcan* (for I take that not ſo much for the name of a Man, as a Title of dignity) queſtioned his Title to it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdom of *Decan*; *Chriſamorao* then King of *Narſinga*, brought a powerful Advocate to defend his right; that is to ſay, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horſe; and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four Men in it; with which ſtrong Argument the *Idalcan* being confuted in the Schools of War, with much difficulty ſaved himſelf though he loſt his cauſe; the *Narſingan* ever ſince continuing quiet in the poſſeſſion of this Country, except only ſome of the Sea-Towns in the power of the *Portugals*; who in the year 1567, deſtroyed in thoſe few places by them poſſeſſed, no fewer than 200 of their Idol-Temples, with many of their *Pagodes*, or Idols in them; converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raiſed from the ſeveral Ports which they hold herein, to the maintainance of a College of *Jeſuits* in *Salſette*, and other Religious Houſes founded by them, in their other Cities.

10. *MALABAR.*

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the Eaſt, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narſinga* South-Eaſt; on the Weſt and South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. On the Coaſt whereof, it doth extend for the ſpace of 300 miles; that is to ſay, from the River *Gangeraco* to the Cape *Commari*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolemy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing anſwerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadeſt, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conus*.

The Country more populous for the bigneſs, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful ſoil; well watered and indented with many Creeks: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in Rice, and all manner of Spice, as Ginger, Cinnamon, *Caſſia*, Pepper, and moſt excellent Fruits. Amongſt their Trees there is one whoſe name my Author ſpeaks, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only Wood for fewel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oil, fine Cloath, and Cordage; another Tree, which beareth Cotton, Cyprus or Cobweb-lawn, of the Leaves whereof they make a fine ſtuff like to *Sattin* or *Taffatie*. They have alſo great ſtore of Apes and Monkeys, Parrots, Paraquettos, and other Creatures not known in theſe parts but from thence: not to ſay any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian* Neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reaſon that the Air is ſo ſweet and temperate.

The People are of a coal-black colour (differing therein from the reſt of the *Indians*, ſwarthy and complexioned like the *Olive*) well-limb'd, wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an handkerchief wrought with Gold and Silver; and about their middle a cloth which hangeth down to conceal their nakedneſs. Of manners treacherous and bloudy, more properly to be termed deſperate than ſtout and valiant; and for more ſurety in their Wars, they uſe poyſoned Arrows, as they do alſo in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, and more beſotted generally on their Idolatries, than the reſt of theſe Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worſhip, ſeated upon a brazen Throne, and Crowned with a rich Diadem; from his Head iſſue out four horns; from his Mouth four tusks; his Eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his Noſe flat and ugly, his Viſage terrible; his hands like claws, his Legs and Thighs like thoſe of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure than they do their God. Unto this *Pagode* or his *Prieſt*, they offer the Virginity of all their Daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a Bodkin of Gold or Silver, upon which the Bride (married moſt commonly at ten or twelve years of Age) is forcibly ſet; the ſharpneſs of it being ſuch, that it forceth out the bloud in great abundance: and if ſhe prove with Child that year, it is ſaid to be of his begetting, and more eſteemed. Others with more humanity, inſtead of torturing their Daughters on this wretched Idol (parallel almoſt to the offering of their Sons to *Moloch* amongſt the *Syrians*) preſent them to the *Bramin*, or *Idol-Prieſt*, to be deflowred the firſt night of the Wedding: and without one of theſe two handſels no Man is ſuffered to enjoy the uſe of his Wiſe, not their Kings themſelves. More privileged yet than many Women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themſelves with their Husband's bodies; but may have many husbands either ſucceſſively or at once, as they liſt themſelves: and if at once, ſhe ſends her Children to that Husband (as we know who did) who ſhe thinks to have the beſt right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we ſaid before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be *Cantoned* into many Kingdoms. Divided at preſent, and long ſince into thoſe of 1. *Cononor*, 2. *Calicut*, 3. *Cranganor*, 4. *Cochin*, 5. *Cai-Colam*, 6. *Coulan*, and 7. *Travancor*.

CONONOR joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southwards on the ſhore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1. *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built and beautified with a very fair Haven no more ſafe than ſpacious, capacious of the greateſt Veſſels, and for that cauſe much frequented by Foreign Merchants; but eſpecially by the *Portugals*, who for the aſſuring of their Trade have here a Cittadel, erected and well garriſoned with the King's conſent. 2. *Cota*, not far from *Gangeraco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*. 3. *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicut*. 4. *Marabia*, 5. *Tramopatan*, 6. *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much obſervable.

2. CALICUT, South from *Cononor*, extended on the Sea-ſhore 25 Leagues, and ſituate in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2. *Tanor*, a retiring-place of the Kings. 3. *Partangale*, 4. *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5. *Chale*, a ſtrong place, once in the hands of the *Portugueſes*; but in the year 1601, recovered by the King of *Calicut*, who had beſieged it with an Army of 90000 Men. 6. *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicut*. 7. *Calicut*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea, three miles and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houſes, but ſtanding ſome of them far aſunder; mean and low-built, few of them exceeding the height of a Man on horſeback; the ſoil being ſo hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cauſe unwalled. Inſomuch that Merchants houſes are here valued but at 20 Crowns, thoſe of the common ſort at no more than ten. Which notwithſtanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Perſians*,

Syrians, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; theſe laſt from the furtheſt parts of *Cathay* (taking *Cathay* in that general ſenſe as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartars*, between mount *Imaus*, and the Eaſtern Ocean) being 6000 miles diſtant from it, inſomuch that it is ſaid by ſome of the *Spaniſh* Writers, that when *Vaſques de Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of the way to the Eaſt Countries by the *Cape of Good Hope*, firſt arrived in this Haven in 1498; he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all ſorts, but without Anchors and the Compaſs, few of them fit for Sea-fight, not able to ſail (in regard they had not the uſe of the Compaſs) but by four winds only. The common Staple in thoſe times of all *Indian* Merchandize, till diſtracted into ſeveral Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more induſtrious and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the Shore, for a very ſtrong Caſtle; by which they command the Haven, and receive Cuſtom of all Merchandize going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicut*, he beſieged it with 100000 Men, and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole Winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but firſt demoliſhed it to the ground, that it might not be made uſeful to thoſe of *Calicut*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no leſs wantonneſs; the Men here uſing to exchange Wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the Women ſpending their whole time in adorning themſelves with Rings and Jewels about their Ears, Necks, Leggs, Arms, and upon their Breaſts, though going naked for the moſt part, one would think that a little dreſſing might ſuffice them. If covered it is only with a Smock of *Calicut*, a kind of Linnen-cloth here made, and from hence ſo called: and that not uſed but by thoſe of the better ſort.

3. *CRANGANOR* lieth on the South of *Calicut*, a ſmall Kingdom, and affording little worth the ſpeaking of; but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of thoſe old Chriſtians, whom they call *Chriſtians* of St. *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be ſo full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and expoſed to publick ſcorn both by the Idolaters and *Mahometans*, amongſt whom they live. The City rich, commodiouſly built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with its crooked ſtreams the moſt part of the Country, makes it fat and flouriſhing.

4. *COCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the ſhore for the ſpace of 40 Leagues; and therein many Chriſtians of the firſt Plantation, beſides ſome *Converts* made of latter times by the *Jeſuits*. Towns of moſt note herein, 1. *Augamale*, the Arch-biſhop's See of thoſe ancient Chriſtians, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2. *Cochin*, a Biſhop's See, but of later erection and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almoſt encompaſſed like a *Demy Iſland*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very ſafe and ſpacious; as alſo by the friendſhip of the *Portugal* Nation. By whoſe power and favour they have not only freed themſelves from the King of *Calicut*, to whom before they did acknowledge ſome ſubjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick alſo: this King permitting them to erect a Caſtle on the Haven, to ſecure their trade, which the other on good reaſons of State forced them to deſtroy. The King hereof in ſome reſpect ſuperiour unto that of *Calicut*, who is a *Vaſſal* to him: this King being the Pope or chief Biſhop, as it were of all the *Bramines*: for which cauſe reverenced by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of theſe Weſtern parts) who look upon him as the head of their *ſuperſtition*, and pay him many annual duties.

4. *CALCOLAM* is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithſtanding, the King hereof is not ſo rich as his other neighbours. Here live alſo many of the old *Chriſtians*, taking name from St. *Thomas*: but thoſe ſo deſtitute of Prieſts and Miniſters to inſtruct them in the Principles of Chriſtianity, that once in three years there came ſome formerly from the *Patriarch* of *Muzal* in *Aſſyria*, to baptize their Children. Better I hope provided for in theſe latter daies, ſince their emboſoming and reconcilement to the Church of *Rome*. Their chief Town of the ſame name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven in the faſhion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, but ſince that re-edified. Of leſs note there are many both Towns and Villages, but ſuch as do deſerve here no particular mention.

6. *COVLAN* upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the ſhores, is ſaid to be deſtitute of Corn, but plentiful of Pepper, and moſt ſorts of Spices. So ſtored with Horſes, and fit Riders to ſerve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horſe in continual readineſs either for invaſion or defence. This Kingdom as the reſt before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulan* 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a member of that Kingdom; of great reſort by foreign Merchants, by reaſon of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary ſeat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Prieſt* of the *Bramines*, till moved to *Cochin*; and held to be the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of all *Malabar*, the reſt being thought to be but *Colonies* of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many Chriſtians, as well of the original foundation of Chriſtianity, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jeſuits*.

7. *TRAVANCOR*, called alſo *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdom of *Coulan*, to the Cape of *Comari*, and turning towards the Eaſt, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in the Kingdom of *Biſnagar* or *Narſinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all ſides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the Weſt Seas unto the Eaſt, about 90 miles. The Country as the reſt before, inhabited by many with the name of *Chriſtians*, if they may be called ſo who want *Sacraments*: the condition of theſe *Thomæan Chriſtians* in former times being ſo unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jeſuits*, (if the *Jeſuits* may be believed from whom we have it) they had ſeen no Prieſt, nor other Miniſter of the Goſpel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of thoſe many others of leſs note I ſhall make no mention) are, 1. *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the Head-City of a Signiory, but held of the King of *Trancanor*, as their next and immediate Lord; though all thoſe Kings are alſo *Feudataries* of the Crown of *Narſinga*. And were that the worſt *Tenure* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worſe conſequence which attendeth theſe beſotted Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of twelve years continuance, and then endeth in a ſad *Cataſtrophe*. For at the end of thoſe twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the Idol above-mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapeſtry; and in the ſight of all his People, gathered together to behold this ſtrange ſolemnity, cutteth off his noſe, ears, lips, and other parts, which he caſts towards the Idol, and in concluſion cuts his own throat for his final Sacrifice: his deſigned Succeſſor being preſent at this bloudy Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was Scepter bought at ſo dear a rate. For though all Crowns be lined with thorns, yet here the pomps of Soveraignty are leſs laſting than in other places; the entrance full of fears and the end of horrors.

Theſe Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into theſe ſeven by *Sarama Pereimal*, the ſole Monarch. He by the ſollicitations of ſome *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein ſo devout, that he reſolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his daies. At his departure he divided his Eſtates into theſe ſeven parts, diſtributing them amongſt the neareſt of his

Kindred; aſſigning unto him of *Coulan* the preheminence in ſacred matters: and the Imperial dignity unto him of *Calicut*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to ſay, *Chief Emperour*, or as ſome write, a God on Earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *Coindge*; the reſt to be ſubordinate, if not ſubject to him. From *Pereimal's* ſetting forwards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the Chriſtians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Heſts were punctually obſerved. But the Kingdom of *Calicut* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themſelves from that ſubjection; and in the end to caſt off all relation to him, and to his Prerogatives. Yet ſtill he is eſteemed of more Power and Majeſty than any of the reſt of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; firſt in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from moſt parts of the World in this Port of *Calicut*, the Cuſtoms and Impoſts upon which muſt needs be of exceeding value; and ſecondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are ſaid to equal ſome Kings in *Africk*; and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini faciant, audent cum talia Fures?
And if the Man ſuch Riches have,
Then what muſt he that keeps the Knave?

What Forces he is able to raiſe may be fully ſeen by that which hath been ſaid before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 Men beſieging and taking in the Forts of *Chalen*, with another of 100000 beleaguering the Caſtle which the *Portugals* had built near the City of *Calicut*. And when the ſaid *Portugals* ſtirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head againſt him, he fell upon them ſuddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Soldiers, and 200 good Veſſels of War for his Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the reſt of theſe petty Kings to their old acknowledgements, but that ſome of them to avoid the danger, have put themſelves under the *Vaſſalage*, or protection at the leaſt, of the Great *Mongul*; others by ſuffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Eſtates againſt this pretender. His Forces conſiſt moſt of Foot, Horſe being unſerviceable in theſe Countries, by reaſon of the many Rivers which interlace it, and theſe Foot are compounded moſt of Gentry, which they there call *Nairos*, train'd up to their Weapons when they are but ſeven years of Age; every one to that Weapon which he moſt delighteth in, which makes them very expert and nimble at them; much privileged for that cauſe by the Laws of the Country, and ſo eſteemed by the King, that out of them his Siſters chuſe what Men they pleaſe to their Husbands, ſome of them by that means being made the Fathers of the ſucceeding King.

Nothing elſe memorable touching the affairs of *Calicut*, but the way of ſucceſſion to the Kingdom; the Crown deſcending upon none of the King's Children, but on the Son of his eldeſt Siſter, or neareſt Kinſwoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath always the maidenhead of his Queens and that ſome of theſe Stallions are continually allowed to keep them Company, it is preſumed, or very probably ſuppoſed, that the Queen's Children are the *Bramines* and not the King's.

8. NARSINGA.

NARSINGA, is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the Weſt, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Oriſſan* or *Orixa*; on the Eaſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narſinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Reſidence of the King.

The Country is ſaid to be in length 600 miles, or as ſome ſay, of as much extent as can be travelled in ſix months; plentiful in the ſame Commodities which the reſt of *India* doth afford, except Pepper and ſome other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not ſo well furniſhed with Rivers as ſome other places: which want is liberally ſupplyed by water falling from the Mountains and received into Trenches, Meers, and Lakes, which do wonderfully cool, moſten and enrich the Land, cauſing the Corn and Cattel to proſper above all imagination. Moſt deſtitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year paſſeth without rain they fall into ſuch extremities, that they are fain to ſell their Children.

The People as to Religion, *Gentiles*, ſo worſhipping one God as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they joyn the Devil or their *Pagodes* in Commiſſion with him; whereto induced by the perſwaſion of their beaſtly *Bramines*, who thereout ſuck no ſmall advantage. Some Chriſtians there are intermixt of the old Plantation; eſpecially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*; but not ſo well inſtructed in the Principles of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*; nor to diſſwade them from the uſe of ſome *Heatheniſh* Cuſtoms though barbarous, inhumane, and againſt all reaſon; nor uſed in any place but amongſt the *Indians*. Amongſt which I reckon for moſt ſavage, the forcing of poor Women to burn themſelves with their Husband's bodies; the Women's Kindred, not the Husband's, thruſting them on theſe hard conditions; who reckon it a diſgrace to their Family, if ſhe ſhould refuſe. And becauſe they will be ſure not to have that infamy ſtick upon them, they have ordered that the Woman who ſhall ſo refuſe, muſt ſhave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be ſuffered to eat, drink or ſleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miſerable than the Flames which they ſeek to ſhun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greadineſs, and to contend which ſhall be foremoſt; ſhe being thought to have been moſt loving during his life, who is now moſt willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her ſelf to his *Manes*, at the Funeral Pile: whereunto thus alluded the Poet:

Et certamen habent, lethi, quæ viva ſequatur
Conjugium; pudor eſt non licuiſſe mori,
Ardent victrices, & præbent pectora flammæ;
Imponuntque ſuis ora peruſta viris,
A ſhame it's not to die; they therefore ſtrive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive,
The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breaſt;
And her burnt face doth on her husband reſt.

Chief Cities of this Country, 1. *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancor*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to thoſe of *Narſinga*; the people whereabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of Chriſtians, who live for the moſt part by fiſhing for Pearl; which they ſell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalian* Merchants. 2. *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Maſulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vaſſal to the Kings of *Narſinga*. In the year 1686, a *Monk* from *Hiſpahan* in *Perſia*, gave an account that *Sultan Moazem*, Son of *Aurengzeb* Great *Mogul* or King of *Indoſtan*, had beaten the King of *Golconda*, and had made a Peace with him upon payment of double tribute. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 253.

Golconda, ſaith Mr. *Fitch* an *Engliſhman*, is a fair pleaſant Town, the Houſes built with Brick and Timber, having plenty of Fruit and Water, but the Air is very hot. The Kingdom more frequently called *Orixa*, is very great, and lyes extended for the ſpace of 260 *French* Leagues upon the Bay of *Bengala*, and takes the name of *Golconda*, from the Capital City of [illegible] which lyes between the River *Ganga*, and the Mountains of *Balagua*; and is a great and noble City, and lyes 60 Leagues from the [illegible] of *Maſulipatam* to the North; and ſo from the neareſt Coaſt of the Ocean to the Weſt by 24 from *Surat* to the Eaſt. The other Cities are *Con[illegible]zipatan*, *Canagara*, *Orixa*, *Maſulipatam*, *Narſingapatan*, and *Maliapura* or St. *Thomas*. This Prince is lord of the moſt powerful in the *Indies*. It is a pleaſant Country to travel in, by reaſon of the Rice and Corn, and the many lovely reſervatories. Mounſieur *Thevenot*, in his Travels, aſſures us, That *Golconda* is only a Caſtle, where the King of *Orixa* reſides; and that the City is called *Bagnagar*, and is a great and a populous, rich, and well traded City, in Southern Latitude, 17. 10. Adorned with many noble Structures and fine Gardens, tho' the common People live in low Thatch'd ill contrived Hutts. The Caſtle of *Golconda* ſtands 2 miles Weſt of *Bagnagar*, upon an hill riſing like a Sugar-loaf, ſecured by a Ditch which is very deep, and a Wall made of ſtones 3 foot in length and breadth: The Ditches are filled with fair and good water, and beſides this Wall it has five round Towers, with a great many Cannon mounted, both on the Wall and Towers for the defence of the Place. The Prince of this Country is a *Mahometan*, and is Tributary to the Great *Mogul*: he has vaſt Revenues being the Proprieter of all the Lands in his Kingdom, and his Tolls yield him a great ſum of mony. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Chap. 10. Agrees with the former as to the fertility and plenty of this Kingdom. He ſaith farther, *Bagnagar* ſignifies the Garden of *Nagar*, the Wife of one of the late Kings who prevailed with him to build this City; yet *Aurengzeb* ſacked it afterwards, which occaſioned the removal of the Court to Fort-*Golconda*. This City lyes in 16, 58 Latitude; the Country about it is flat, but near the City are certain Rocks like thoſe of *Fountain-Bleau*; a great River waſheth the walls on the South-Weſt, which after (at *Maſlipatan)* falls into the Bay of *Bengala*. This City is little leſs than *Orleans*, and has beautiful houſes, and a delicate Stone-Bridge, with a Suburb beyond it a League in length, called *Ereng-abad*, in which live all the Handicrafts-men, and meaner people, the City being reſerved for the Nobility, Officers, of the Court, Juſtice and Army. Our Author exactly deſcribes it, but I muſt be ſhort. This City lyes 329 Leagues from *Surat* to the Eaſt; and 100 from *Maſlipatan* to the North-Weſt. The preſent King of *Golconda*, is *Koutob Cha*, who zealouſly maintains the Sect of *Chiais*, or *Perſian Mahometans*. *Tavernier* Part 2. Pag. 159. For the reaſons why the Great *Mogul* has not reduced the Kingdom of *Golconda* to an intire ſubjection, See *Bernier*, Pag. 59 .60. 3. *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seats-Royal of the King. 4. *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feaſt here celebrated, in honour of *Pereimal* (once ſole King of *Malabar*) reckoned for a Saint at leaſt in theſe parts of *India*: and the offerings at which accuſtomably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5. *Chadambaram*, the Mother-City of thoſe *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Pereimal*; who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all conſumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimal's* head. 6. *Madura*, honoured with the reſidence of the *Chochananda*, or the chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; ſo numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thouſand. *Madura*, a City in the *Eaſt Indies*, in the Promontory of *Malabar*, which is great and populous; it was heretofore under the King of *Biſnagar*, but is now together with the Country in which it ſtands, ſubject to a Prince of its own, who is yet a kind of ſubject to the King of *Biſnagar*. It lyes between *Malabar* to the Weſt; and the Gulf of *Manar*, which parts *Malabar* from *Ceylon* to the Eaſt, and he is Soveraign of this Coaſt and draws a conſiderable Revenue from it. The Seat alſo of one of the three *Naicbi*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narſinga*; the other two reſiding at, 7. *Gingi*, and 8. *Tanajor*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not elſe obſervable. *Gingi*, a great City which gives name to a Province. This was heretofore under the Kings of *Biſnagar*, but has now a Prince of its own: it is very ſtrong and has a Caſtle built upon a Rock. The Province or Kingdom of *Gingi*, has *Biſnagar* to the North; the Gulf of *Bengala* on the Eaſt; the Mountains of *Malabar*, on the Weſt, and the Kingdom of *Tanjaor* to the South.

Tanjaor, a City in the *Eaſt Indies*, which was formerly ſubject to the King of *Biſnagar*, but has now a Prince of its own, who is yet a Tributary to the former. It yes 60 miles from the Coaſt of *Choromandel* to the Weſt. 9. *Maliapur*, called alſo St. *Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apoſtle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whoſe Poſterity in other things like unto other Men, are ſaid to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephant's*: a puniſhment inflicted on the whole Generation for the ſin of their Anceſtors. How true this is I cannot ſay, but ſure I am that *Dorotheus* ſaith, That he reſted at *Calamina*, where he was ſlain with a Dart. However the *Portugals*, to make ſome uſe of the old Tradition, removed ſome bones from this place, which were ſaid to be his, and enſhrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much viſited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great inriching. The City once ſo large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the uſe of divers Nations which reſorted thither. In theſe latter daies deſolate and forlorn, inhabited only by ſome old Chriſtians, till the *Portugueſes* began to people it with new Colonies. 10. *Choromandel*, giving name to a large Sea-Coaſt, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11. *Caſta*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the Woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Country, but buried quick in the ſame grave with him. 12. *Negapatan*, in the ſame Region, inhabited for the moſt part by St. *Thomas-Chriſtians*. *Negapatau*, now under the *Dutch*, formerly under the *Portugueſes*. This City is 72 miles from the Iſland of *Zeilan*, on the Eaſt of *Malabar*, and is very great and full peopled, with *Portugueſes* and Chriſtians of the Country converted by them, yet there are ſome *Gentiles*. The Trade here is not great, being only Rice aud Bombaſt; but the Country has plenty of Proviſions. The City belonged to a Lord of *Biſnagar*, who treated the *Portugueſes* very well; but in 1565, plundered all their houſes for denying him ſome *Arabian* Horſes he ſent for. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 226. 13. *Tarnaſſari*, once the chief City of a Kingdom ſo called, the King whereof was able to bring into the Field 100000 Horſe and Foot, and 100 Armed Elephants, but now ſubject to the King of *Narſinga*. The people black, but ſo out of love with their own colour, that they willingly proſtitute their Wives or Daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14. *Biſnagar*, this Kingdom is bounded on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Decan* and *Cuneam*; on the Eaſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the Weſt, with the *Indian* Sea; and on the South, with the Kingdoms of *Malabar*, and *Singa*: it is ſometimes called the Kingdom of *Narſinga*. The City that gives name to this vaſt Kingdom, lyes almoſt in 15 Degrees of North Latitude and 107 of Longitude; on the Eaſtern ſide of a long chain of Mountains, that divide this Promontory from the North to the South; it lyes 45 Leagues Weſt from the ſhores of the Bay of *Bengala*; and 35 from *Narſinga* to the Weſt. This Kingdom is by the late Travellers and *Indians*, called *Karnateck*, or *Caratica*; and is at this day poſſeſſed by a *Raja*, who is deſcended from the potent *Ramras*, Lord of all the *Peninſula*, from whom the Kings of *Decan*, *Viſapour*, and *Golconda*, about 200 years firſt revolted. *Bernier's*, Hiſtory of the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, Pag. 59. This was once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is ſometimes called the King of *Biſnagar*. It was in thoſe times 24 miles in compaſs, with nine Gates in it, (amongſt others) continually guarded with Soldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elſewhere equalled. In the year 1565, ſacked by four *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joynt Forces had invaded this Kingdom; it became deſolate and forſaken; and the Court removed to *Penegordo*, eight daies journey within the Land (*Biſnagar* being ſeated on the borders of *Decan*) but long it had not ſtaid there when removed to 16. *Narſinga*, where it hath ſince been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himſelf by the name of that City where he reſideth for the preſent.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to ſay, theſe Eaſtern parts not being known at all till theſe later times, nor well known in theſe. About the year 1550 their King then Reigning, was impriſoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who ſhewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the Power and Government amongſt themſelves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like reſtraint, ; *Romaragio* the firſt Captain aſcended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Eſtate, and *Bengabe* commanded the Army. But theſe Uſurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565, *Timaragio* the Survivour took the charge of all; whoſe Son, to make himſelf ſure of the Kingdom, murdered his impriſoned Soveraign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the ſucceſſion, till ſettled in the Perſon of *Chriſmarao*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only reſtore peace and quiet to *Narſinga* it ſelf, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Indalcan*, who had before endangered his Eſtate therein. Of the great Army which he led againſt this *Indalcan*, we have ſpoke already; adding here only, that before he went upon this enterprize (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he ſacrificed in nine daies 2036 Beaſts to the Country-Idols, the fleſh whereof he cauſed to be diſtributed amongſt the Poor. Routed at firſt, and being perſwaded by ſome about him to go out of the field, he is ſaid to have made this noble Anſwer *That he had rather the* Indalcan *ſhould boaſt that he had ſlain him, than vanquiſhed him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickeſt of his Enemies, and well followed by the valianteſt of his Friends, he obtained the Victory. But this vaſt Army of 600000 Foot, 30000 Horſe, 537 Elephants with neceſſaries anſwerable to ſuch infinite multitudes, ſpeaks only what he can do on extreme neceſſity, or when he had ſome long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better meaſured by their Standing-Forces, than by neceſſitated Levies. And herein this Prince comes not much ſhort of his greateſt Neighbours: his Standing-Bands conſiſting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, that ſerve on foot; 20000 Horſe, who are either *Perſians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readineſs; his Foot defrayed out of his Revenues, his Horſe maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands diſtributed amongſt his Captains (ſome of which are ſaid to have a million of Crowns *per annum*) to furniſh him with theſe ſtable Bands of Horſes and Elephants.

As for his Revenue, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the reſt the expence of his houſhold, and the entertainment of his Foot. This Sum amaſſed together out of the Lands, Mines, and Foreſts of the Country, which are wholly his; and the waters of ſome Rivers (ſold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth, the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the Mines, Foreſts and one third of the Lands he retaineth to himſelf; the other two being divided amongſt his Captains. So that it is no marvel if ſo rich a Country yield him ſuch an income, conſidering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it ſhould yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with *Delly*, and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*; ſo called from *Oriſſa*, the chief City of it. This is the name of a City, a Province, and a Kingdom; that here deſcribed, is the Province of *Oriſtan*: which when the *Mogul* conquered it was a diſtinct Kingdom.

The Country hath plenty of Rice, Cloath of Cotton, and a fine ſtuff like Silk, made of graſs, and there called *Yerva*; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Mirabolans*, and other Commodities here growing, they uſe to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Oriſſa* only. The people ſo well governed, or ſo hating theft, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a Man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the ſame Temper and Religion with the reſt of the *Indians* ſubject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moiſten and refreſh it; but none ſo beneficial to the Kings hereof as the River *Guenga* (of old called *Chaberis*) the Waters whereof eſteemed ſacred by the Kings of *Calicut* and *Narſinga*, and much uſed by them in their ſacrifices and ſuperſtitious purgations, are wholly engroſſed by this King, who ſelleth them to thoſe Princes at exceſſive rates. Beſides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-Coaſt, of 350 miles in length; that is to ſay, from *Cape Guaderino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narſinga*, to *Cape Leogora* in the Eaſt, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, becauſe not ſo well provided of Commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far leſs Territory.

Towns of moſt note herein, 1. *Oriſſa*, on the Sea-ſide or not far from it, the beſt traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be aſcribed, as the Head-City of the Country. 2. *Cateoba*, ſix daies journey within the Land, the ordinary reſidence of their Kings before it was ſubdued by the Great *Monguls*. 3. *Angeli*, a well frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laded with *Indian* Wares. 4. *Bacolli* or *Bacola*, more within the Land, and once the Head-City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat fleſh, or to kill any beaſt. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deſerves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom, but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, ſubdued not many years ſince by the King of *Patanaw*; and both grown weaker by that War, with *Echebar* the Great *Mongul*.

10. BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all thoſe petty Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-Eaſt of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oriſtan* and *Patanaw*; on the Weſt, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengab*; on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the Eaſt, the Famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Bottia*, the principal City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of theſe ſmall Kingdoms.

The Country great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be ſeen five daies journey off, in which are ſaid to dwell a People with ears of a Span long or more, whom otherwiſe thoſe of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In thoſe parts which are next *Pengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more inclined to the *Olive*-colour. Their Garments they wear cloſe to their bodies, ſo ſtraight that one cannot ſee a pleat or wrinkle; and thoſe they never put off by night nor day whilſt they are able to hang on: nor do they waſh at any time, for fear of defiling ſo pure a Creature as the Water. Contented with one Wife (deſerved to be held a miracle in theſe Eaſtern parts) and yet cohabit not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *South-ſayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whoſe direction (firſt conſulting his books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongſt them. The principal, 1. *Bottia* the *Metropolis* of it. 2. *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 3. *Kukares*; the ſecond Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as being over-run by the branches of mount *Caucaſus*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by ſome called *Negariet*, their Staples for the ſale of their Cloath (moſt of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinois*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who reſort frequently to thoſe Markets. This is a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, the Kings whereof are called *Dermain*, but Vaſſals to the Great *Mongul*. And ſo is he of, 3. *Couche*, another Kingdom of this Tract, frontiering upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; ſo called from *Cauche* the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reaſon it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good Paſtures by that means, and thoſe well ſtored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Dear, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build Hoſpitals for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them, their ſmall money being *Almonds*.

4. *GOVREN*, the moſt Northern Realm in this general diviſion, ſo called of *Gor*, or *Goren*, the chief Town of it. The Country in ſome parts mountainous, out of which ſpringeth the River *Sicilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the reſt a kind of a Deſart or unpeopled Country, joyneth cloſe to *Couche*, in which are few Villages, graſs (or Reeds rather) longer than a Man, and therein many *Buffs*, *Tigers*, and other wild Beaſts; none wilder than the Thievs, who frequent the Wilderneſſes.

In this Tract alſo are the Kingdoms of 5. *RAME*, and 6. *RECON*, joyning upon *Zagathay*, or inclining towards it; poſſeſſed by the *Mongul-Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Feudataries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachoſia*, who commanded in the North-Eaſt of *Perſia*, and theſe North parts of *India*; and from thoſe places drew his Army or the greateſt part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*. Here is alſo the Kingdom of, 7. *TIPPVRA*, naturally fenced with Hills and Mountains, and by that means hitherto defended againſt the *Mongul-Tartars*, their bad Neighbours, with whom they have continual Wars. But of theſe Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be ſaid; and that little of no certain knowledge, thoſe parts being hitherto ſo untravelled, that they may paſs in the account of a *Terra Incognita*. Moſt of theſe petty Kingdoms are become ſo far Tributaries to the Great *Mogul*, that their *Raja's*, or Princes, ſerve in their Armies for pay; and attend his Court: but if he oppreſs them in any inſtance, then they revolt; and in all the Civil Wars of *Indoſtan*, they are able to turn the ballance, by joyning with which of the Parties they think fit. This has made that Kingdom very unquiet, and often has endangered the ruin of it.

11. *PATANAW.*

PATANE or *PATANAW*, is bounded on the North, with the Realm of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt, with *Ganges*; on the Weſt, with *Oriſtan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom of this name in the farther *India*: but whether it were ſo called becauſe a Colony of this; or from ſome reſemblances in the nature of the ſeveral Countries, or from the ſignification of the word in the *Indian* Language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that tho' they have the ſame name, yet they are under ſeveral Governments, and ſituate in far diſtant places: no otherwiſe agreeing than in ſome reſemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnſhire*.

The Country yieldeth viens of Gold, which they dig out of the Pits, and waſh away the earth from it in great Balls. The people tall, and of ſlender making, many of them old: great praters, and as great diſſemblers. The Women are ſo decked with Silver and Copper, eſpecially about the feet, that they are not able to indure a ſhoe. Both Sexes uſe much waſhing in the open Rivers, and that too intermixt together in their natural nakedneſs; eſpecially ſuch as live near the banks of the River *Jamena* (eſteemed more holy than the reſt) which from *Agra* paſſing thorough this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Patane*, a large Town and a long one, built with very broad ſtreets; but the Houſes very mean and poor, made at the beſt of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The Metropolis of this Kingdom, becauſe the ancienteſt, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Banaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the *Gentiles* from remote Countries uſe to come in Pilgrimage, to bath themſelves in the Holy Waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flouriſhing, and beautified on the Road with handſom Villages. 3. *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of the Country; not yet ſubdued by the Great *Monguls*. 4. *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jeſuits*, when blamed by them for the worſhip of ſo many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the Law of God and nature; For cauſing them to rehearſe the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more againſt thoſe Commandments in worſhipping ſo many *Pagodes*, than they themſelves in worſhipping ſo many *Saints*. 3. *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanaw*, ſince aſcribed to *Bengala*. 4 *Satagam*, which lyes at the mouth of the *Ganges*, ſeated in an Iſland, in the Latitude of 29. in the Map of *Indoſtan*; this place is 100 miles from the Sea, yet they row to it in 18 hours, by force of the Tide, which is very great: but this is done only with ſmall Barks, the Ships go only to *Butor*. It is a reaſonable fair City, abounding with all things, and in 1568, was under the King of *Patane*, but was about that time conquered by the Great *Mogul*. This City was built by the *Moors*, or *Arabians*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 230. In the latter Maps, it is placed in 24 Latitude. 5. *Hugueli*, where the *Portugueſes* live, is one League from this Place, and is in the Latitude of 23. Ibid. Pag. 257.

The People of this Country properly called *Pataneans*, but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in theſe parts of *India*: Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Beburxa*, the *Mongul-Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grandfather of *Echebar*. Their laſt King being ſlain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Ariſtocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their Succeſſours attempted *Oriſtan*, and added that alſo to their Eſtate, but they could not long make good their fortunes, ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made ſubject to him. Three of them *viz.* the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Ciandecan*, and he whom they call *Mauſadalim*, retain as yet, (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganiſm* as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometiſm*, have vaſſalled themſelves to the Great *Mongul*, now the Lord *Paramount* of the Country.

12. *BENGALA.*

BENGALA is bounded on the North, with *Patanaw*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Pegu* on the South and Weſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country ſtored with all things neceſſary to the life of Man; great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and long Pepper. Such abundance of Silk and Cotton, and of fleſh and fiſh, that it is impoſſible that any Country ſhould exceed it in thoſe commodities. And which crowns all, bleſt with ſo temperate and ſweet an air, that it draws thither people of all ſorts to inhabit it. Here is alſo amongſt other rarities, a Tree called *Moſes*, which beareth ſo delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* ſin. The Riches, Fertility, and Beauty of this Kingdom, are preferred before thoſe of *Ægypt*; and indeed of the whole Earth, by *Tavernier*, and *Bernier*, who had ſeen it. Pag. 140. This Kingdom in time paſt hath been as it were in the power of the *Moors*, [*Arabians*] yet there are great numbers of *Pagans* or Idolaters. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2, Pag 231. At this time it was for the moſt part under the *Mogul*; as Ægypt was taken for the product of the *Nile*, ſo it is thought *Bengala* is of the *Ganges*, ſee *Ganges*. The greateſt and beſt part of it is a knot of River-Iſlands, made by the *Ganges* and ſome other Rivers, which from the Kingdom of *Pegu*, paſs through this of *Bengala*, into the Ocean. This together with the heat of the Climate, is the true cauſe of the fertility of this Country. There is at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* in South *America*, a Country exactly like this, but not equal to it, by reaſon it wants culture and inhabitants, ſufficient to improve and adorn it; and perhaps all the advantages of this, are owing to the *Arabians*, the great builders of Cities and improvers of this part of the World, before the arrival of the *Portugueſes* here.

The natural Inhabitants for the moſt part are of a white complexion, like the *Europæans*, ſubtil of wit, and of a curious diſpoſition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not ſomewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with ſome ſmattering in *Philoſophy*, *Phyſick*, and *Aſtrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked as in others of theſe *Indian* Provinces, but cloathed in a ſhirt or ſmock reaching to their feet, with ſome upper Garment over that. The Women of an ill name for their unchaſtity, tho' *Adultery* he puniſhed with cutting off of their noſes. Neat, if not curious and too coſtly in this one cuſtom, that they never ſeeth meat twice in the ſame Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In Religion for the moſt part *Mahometans*, eſpecially on the Sea-ſhores, which lay moſt open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometaniſm* was here planted many Ages ſince.

Of Rivers we need take no care, having ſpoken of the *Ganges*; that with its many channels may abundantly ſerve to water ſo ſmall a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now to the Cities. The principal whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, ſituate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the moſt beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by Pilgrimages, by reaſon of the holineſs and divine operations aſcribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not viſited by three or four hundred thouſand Pilgrims. 2. *Gouro*, the Seat Royal of the ancient Kings. 3. *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and ſituate in thoſe times on the banks of *Ganges*; but now by the changing of the channel (occaſioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a League off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6. *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Government. Places like the *Aſylum*, which was built by *Romulus*; whereunto ſuch as dare not ſtay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities, uſe to make their reſort; privileged here to live in all kind of licentiouſneſs.

Here is alſo in the South parts of this Province, or adjoyning to it, the City and Kingdom of *Arachan*; lying, along the banks of *Ganges*, but ſo remote from the Sea that it is 50 miles diſtant from the neareſt branch of it. Wealthy and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, ſo wallowing in wealth and ſenſual pleaſures, that he had in this City, and the parts adjoyning twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglio's*, all ſtowed with Women for his luſt. Now ſubject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are ſome ſmall Iſlands in the Gulf of *Bengala* which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Bazacata*, now called *Baſſe*. 2. *Baraſſæ* of which name there are five in *Ptolemy*, three of them, by *Mercator* ſaid to be *Mindanoa*, *Cailon*, and *Subut*. 3. Two called the Iſlands of *Good Fortune*, by him placed under the *Æquator*, and ſaid to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as alſo were three more which he calls, 4. *Sadadibæ*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Inſulæ Satyrorum*, or the Iſles of *Satyrs*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like Satyrs. And 6. thoſe called *Maniolæ*, in number ten, (now *Iſlas de Pracel*) reported by *Ptolemy* to be ſo ſtored with *Adamant*-ſtones, that they violently drew to them any Ships or Veſſels which had Iron in them; for which cauſe they who uſed theſe Seas faſtned the planks of their Ships with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no ſuch matter, unleſs perhaps it may be in the exploits of Sir *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with ſuch an Iſland, in the courſe of his *Errantrie*. This ſtory was invented to give a reaſon, why no Iron was uſed in the Ships that were imployed on this Coaſt; as very little or none was before the *Portugueſes* came thither. This is mentioned in *Hackluit's* Voyages, very frequently and alone by this very Author; and in all probability was the cuſtom in *Ptolemy's* time.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of a different conſtitution from the reſt of the Kingdoms of theſe parts. Not Governed by a Family of Succeſſive Princes, deſcended from the Stem of a Royal Anceſtry, as others are. Chance or neceſſity, had brought thither many *Habaſſines*, or *Ethiopians*, who made a Conqueſt of the Country; and choſe a King out of themſelves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal Honour to the *Habaſſine* Nation, they procured thence yearly, thirty thouſand Slaves, whom they trained up unto the wars; advanced unto the higheſt commands in Civil and Military Service; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Soveraign; as the *Mamalucks* in the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, whom herein they followed. By ſome *Arabians* trading with them, they came in time to admit *Mahometaniſm*, amongſt them; on the Sea-coaſts eſpecially. Diſpoſſeſſed firſt of ſome part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Pataneans*, when driven to ſeek new dwellings by *Baburxa* the *Mongul Tartar*: and of their whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the reſt of his Eſtate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this ſide *Ganges*, (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narſinga* being but a *Parentheſis* in the conſtruction of this ſentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his deſcent from the *Mongul-Tartars*, one of the five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almoſt all the Greater and Leſſer *Aſia* unto his Eſtates, left *Perſia*, with the parts of *India* which lay neareſt to it on the North, to *Myrza Charork*, his fourth Son. But his Iſſue failing in *Abdula*, the fourth of that Line, thoſe Eſtates fell to *Abuſaid*, deſcended from *Maromcha* the third Son of *Tamerlane*: Whoſe Son and Succeſſour called *Zeuzes*, by ſome *Malaoncres*, being diſſeized of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*; the rights of all, with the poſſeſſion of *Arachoſia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamiſus* (now *Candahor* or *Sableſtan*) together with ſo much of *India* as was held by thoſe Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger Sons of *Abuſaid*: whoſe Poſterity laying hold on ſuch opportunities as were offered to them, have made themſelves Maſters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whoſe Succeſſours and their atchievments we ſhall here preſent.

THE Great *Monguls*.

1473 1 *Hamed*, the Son of *Abuſaid*, of the Race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conqueſt of *Perſia* by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, ſucceeded in *Cabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* ſubject to the *Tartars*

1500 2

1500 2 *Babor* or *Baburxa*, in danger to be diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the neighbouring *Usbeques*, living upon the borders of *Perſia*, *Tartary* and *India*, whom at laſt he quieted; enlarging his Dominions by the Conqueſts of ſome Part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532 3 *Hamoyen*, the Son of *Babor* or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Amanpaxda* vanquiſhed by the *Parthians* or *Pataneans*, and their Confederates, craved aid of *Thomas*, the ſecond *Perſian* Monarch of this Line, on promiſe to conform to the *Sophian* Sect: and by that aid confirmed and ſettled his affairs; but held himſelf to the principles of Irreligion.

4 *Merhamed* or *Miramudius*, Son of *Emanpaxda* called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao* againſt *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquiſhed the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields; and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao* and *Balaſſia*, with ſome other Provinces.

5 *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.

1550 6 *Mahomet Selabden*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the moſt fortunate and victorious Prince of all his Family, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Caximer*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Oriſſa*, *Bengala*, *Patanaw* and divers others of leſs note.

1605 7 *Selim*, ſirnamed *Jangheere*, the Son of *Echebar* 2. who added nothing that I hear of, to his Father's Conqueſts.

1627 8 *Blockie*, the Grand-child of *Selim* by his eldeſt Son, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but ſhortly after made away by *Aſaph Chawn*, ſo to make room for,

1627 9 *Curroon*, the third Son of *Selim* or *Jangheere* or *Cha Jehan*, and Son-in-law unto *Aſaph Chawn*; having by his own Miniſters, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood; ſucceeded to the Eſtates, and was Crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, ſtill living for ought I hear to the contrary.

1659 10 *Aurenge-Zeb*, younger Son of *Cha Jehan*, taking advantage of a Sickneſs his Father fell into, depoſed him, and entering a war with his elder Brother, beat him in the field and ſo obtained the Kingdom. He kept his Father in reſtraint to the day of his death, but with great reſpect and civility. He has been a Prince of great action and ſucceſs, and has added to the Kingdom ſeveral Provinces, on the South ſide, being a warlike and cunning Prince. He his ſtill living for ought that I know.

Above in the Kingdom of *Agra*, I have added ſeveral Catalogues of theſe Princes, differing from this here, and from each other; ſo that I cannot reconcile them: the Reader if curious, may turn back to them.

To look a little on theſe Princes, their Eſtate and Power; in matters of Religion they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long ſince embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally deſcended. But not ſo ſcrupulous or preciſe in that profeſſion, as to endeavour the ſuppreſſing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his Son *Jangheere*, being ſo inclined unto Chriſtianity, that they permitted the *Jeſuits* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it ſelf, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his Dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, That being doubtful what Religion to adhere unto, he cauſed thirty Infants to be ſo brought up, that neither their Nurſes nor any body elſe ſhould ſpeak unto them; reſolving to addict himſelf to the Religion of that Country, whoſe Language ſhould be ſpoken by them, as moſt agreeable to nature; and he did accordingly. For as thoſe Children ſpake no Language, ſo was he poſitive and reſolved in no Religion; able to ſee the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the ſtrictneſs of Chriſtianity. And tho' *Selim* who ſucceeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects declared himſelf for that Religion; yet his affairs being once ſettled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as neutral as his Father; *Sultan Curroon* now Reigning, (in 1648) is of the ſame neutrality, and 'tis well he is ſo; there being no Religion ſo impure and bloudy, which he would not diſhonour by his own ungraciouſneſs.

The Language ſpoken by theſe Princes, and their natural ſubjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is ſaid by ſome to be the *Turkiſh*. But I think rather, that it is ſome Language near it, than the very ſame: And that the Language which they ſpeak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* People) differ but in *Dialect*, a ſprinkling of the *Perſian* intermixt amongſt them. A mixture not to be denied in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the intercourſe which their Subjects of thoſe parts have with theſe of *India*; and that the greateſt part of their Soldiers, Officers, and Commanders are ſupplyed from thence.

Their Government is abſolute, if not Tyrannical, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every Man's eſtate which is worth the having: the Perſons and Purſes of his Subjects at his ſole diſpoſing; ſo that he may amaſs what Treaſures, and raiſe what Forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Miniſters ſhall ſuggeſt unto him. Firſt, for his Treaſures, it is conceived that his Revenue doth amount yearly to fifty millions of Crowns; and there are reaſons to perſwade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the World, the Impoſt upon which, is of infinite value; beſides the vaſt ſums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countries whatſoever, which hold traffick here; their Commodities not being to be parted with but for ready Coyn. The whole Land being all his, he eſtates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himſelf, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleaſure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themſelves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole Eſtate of the Tenant by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him in courſe; the Wife and Children of the deceaſed being fairly dealt with, if he content himſelf with the perſonal eſtate, and leave the Land to them to begin a-new; for inſtance of thoſe huge ſums which in ſo rich a Country may be had this way, it is ſaid, that when the Vice-Roy of *Lahoa* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three millions of Gold, beſides Silver, Jewels, Horſes, Elephants, Furniture and Goods almoſt invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the Great *Mongul* ſeized of his into his hands 3300 pound-weight of Gold, beſides Plate, and Jewels. Beſides theſe means of heaping up Treaſure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the Preſents given by all ſorts of Suiters, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his preſence which comes empty-handed. Finally if *Badurius*, who was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of Gold and Silver to pay his Army; and after his loſs of all that treaſure, advanced upon the ſudden the ſum of 600000 Crowns, which he ſent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to ſuccour him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite Treaſures muſt we think his Prince to be Maſter of, who hath more than four times the eſtate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times?

By the like Parallel we may conjecture ſomewhat at his *Forces* alſo; *Badurius* the *Cambaian* brought into the field againſt *Merbamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 Pieces of braſs-Ord'nance, of which were 4 *Baſilisks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with Powder and Shot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of ſo much a greater Eſtate than he, but that his *Levies* may be raiſed proportionably to ſo great Dominions? But becauſe poſſibly *Badurius* did extend himſelf to the utmoſt of his power, and having loſt two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wiſe Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any ſuch hazards on the loſs of a Battel can in an inſtant raiſe 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horſe, and Foot proportionable; and yet have ſtock enough for an *After-game*, if that he ſhould chance to loſe the firſt. But it is ſeldom that he hath advanced to ſo high a *Muſter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an hundred thouſand Men, and a thouſand Elephants for fight; though poſſibly of all ſorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in times of *Progreſs*, it is ſaid that his followers of all ſorts amount unto two hundred thouſand; and that his Tents do uſually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithſtanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a ſtand, ſince the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rasbooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puiſſant Rebels in other parts of his dominions, hold out ſtill againſt him; ſome of them being ſaid to command as much Land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readineſs 20000 horſe, and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature, or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to Men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

There are two Reaſons why this Vaſt and Rich Empire has, of Late, Grown no more; the Firſt of theſe is owing to the Climate: The *Tartars*, when they made the firſt Conqueſt, were an hardy and a valiant Nation, but their Children that Succeeded them, are, in time by the Climate, ſoftned, and become almoſt as Effeminate as the *Indians* they have Conquered; ſo that theſe Princes are forced to call in mercenary Forces from the *Perſians* and *Tartars*, to Keep what they now have, which muſt, in Policy, be few in Proportion; and the children of theſe too, in a ſhort time degenerate and become meer *Indians*.

The Second Reaſon is, becauſe the Conqueſt at firſt was too Rapid; the *Moguls* did not clear the Way as they went, but left ſeveral Potent *Raja's* or Princes in the Mountains, in the Body of the Empire, who maintain their Poſſeſſion to this Day, and tho' Tributaries, are yet not ſo far Subject, but they can defend themſelves if they are injured, and divide the Empire, when they find a fit opportunity: Which the Conteſts and Civil Wars, commonly happening at the Death of every Regent Prince, gives them occaſion to do; the Succeſſion not being ſo regulated, but that the Brothers that Survive, do commonly fight for the Throne: This is the cauſe of Great Slaughters of Men, and diſpirits and Weakneth the Empire very much: It is obſervable alſo, That moſt Princes that believe their Empires ſo Strong as to be in no danger of their Neighbours, do thereupon betake themſelves to an eaſy, luxurious life; and Laying aſide all thoughts of Enlarging their Dominions, ſpend their Time and Thoughts in Pleaſures, till after a while, they and their Subjects being rendered ſoft and unmanly, they become a Prey to ſome Potent hardy Foreigner, or ſome Daring Rebel at home.

——— Luxuria Senior Armis
Incubuit victumque ulciſcitur orbem.

Aurange Zeb, the Preſent King of *Indoſtan*, being unfortunate in his firſt Wars againſt *Perſia*, in his Father's life-time hath ſince Imployed all his Forces againſt the Inhabitants of *Cape Malabar*, with no great Succeſs, tho' ſome ſay he has lately forced the King of *Golconda* to become Tributary to him after a War of 30 years, which is not much, conſidering the inequality between the Forces of theſe two Princes. He is now very old, and no great matters are to be expected till he go off the Stage to make way for a younger Prince.

2. INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is that part of the great *Continent* of *India*, which lieth on the further ſide of the River *Ganges*, from the ſpring or fountain of it, whereſoever it be, to the fall thereof into the Sea by the fifth and laſt mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this ſide of that River: From hence extended Eaſtward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in thoſe elder times ſo renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it hath the name of *The Silver-Region*, and another of *The Golden Cherſoneſe*: this laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition, in the elder times, as thoſe who did inhabit on the hither ſide of the *Ganges*; not ſo well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reaſon of the remoteneſs of their ſituation; nor ſo well diſcovered at the preſent. So that the beſt accompt we ſhall be able to give of it (though that lame enough) will not be ſo exact and punctual as of that before; with reference either to the ſtate hereof in the times of the Ancients, or the affairs of it in theſe days.

Mountains of moſt note in it, 1 *Bepyrrus*, 2 *Mæandrus*, 3 *Semianthinus*; and 4 thoſe called *Damaſi*, touched upon before, in our general diſcourſe of *India*. Out of which, and from other ſprings, flow theſe following Rivers, 1 *Catabeda*, 2 *Borſanna*, 3 *Sadus*, 4 *Temala*, 5 *Boſynga*, 6 *Chryſaoras*, 7 *Polandas*, 8 *Attabas*, theſe three laſt in the part hereof called the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, 9 *Daonas*, and tenth *Dorias*, riſing out of the Mountains called *Damaſi*. Others there are whoſe names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now diſtinguiſhed it is hard to ſay. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Cirtatha*, 3 *Taſale*, 4 *Tagma*, and 5 *Malthuras*, have the name of being the *Metropolis* of their ſeveral Nations, *Triglyphon* only honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are ſaid to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of ſome petty Prince. After theſe, 1 *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*. 2 *Samba*, 3 *Sabara*, 4 *Coly*, 5 *Zabæ*, and 6 *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7 *Baracura*, 8 *Berabonna*, 9 *Behynga*, 10 *Tacola*, 11 *Sabana*, and 12 *Thibonobaſtus*, are marked out for the moſt noted *Empories*, or Towns of Trade: the memory of *Sabana* being ſtill preſerved in the Frith of *Sabaon*, betwixt this *Cherſoneſe* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by thoſe ſpecial Adjuncts, of which, 1 *Cocconagora*, and 2 *Balonea*, in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. 3 *Rhandamarcotta*, in the Midlands. 4 *Pentapolis*; near the mouth of *Ganges*, called *Antibolum*; 5 *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6 *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Marandæ*, may be ſome of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Marandæ* laſt ſpoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangæni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacoræi*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrrus*; as the *Tiladæ* on *Mæandrus*; and the *Aninachæ* and *Cabocæ*, near the hills called *Damaſi*. The *Baſadæ*, ſaid to be crooked, ſhort, and thick; but of a chearful aſpect, and clear complexion: of which compoſition alſo the Inhabitants of the *Golden Cherſoneſe* were obſerved to be: the *Barræ* and *Cudutæ*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Leſtori*, a thieviſh and pyratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of ſo hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow.

Theſe with the reſt too many to be here recited, iſſue in moſt likelyhood of *Chavilah* and *Saba* the Sons of *Jocktan*; of whom we find ſo many footſteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco*, *Siam*, *Sabana Emporia*. *Sobanus Fluvius*; and in the Countries now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavelan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient ſtories, or of the power of any of their former Kings, but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the moſt powerful King of all thoſe Countries) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to try Maſteries with him; yet his Soldiers were ſo terrified with it (remembring the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no perſwaſions could prevail with them to go further Eaſtward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unleſs the converſion of the *Indians* in the time of *Conſtantine*, may be applyed to thoſe on that ſide of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the latter obſervations and diſcoveries of it we find it (as moſt barbarous Countries elſe till reduced to order) diſmembred and ſubdivided into many Eſtates; almoſt as many Realms as Cities, and diſtinct governments amongſt them, as Tribes and Nations. Moſt of them Gentiles in Religion, with whom the name of Chriſt and Chriſtianity not ſo much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jeſuits* thither; who have not only obtained leave but ſome invitations, for the promoting of the *Goſpel*. And for *Mahometaniſm*, though it had got ſome footing on the Seacoaſts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, lying moſt convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and thoſe towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as little heard of as *Chriſtianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the reſt who are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are thoſe, 1 *Brama* or *Barma*, 2 *Cauchin-China*, 3 *Camboia*, 4 *Jangoma*, 5 *Siam*, and 6 *Pegu*.

1. BRAMA.

THE Kingdoms of BRAMA or BARMA have on the Weſt, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*: on the Eaſt, *Cauchin-China*, and *China*; and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, poſſeſſed for many Ages paſt of theſe North-Weſt Countreys. By the tranſpoſing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Country of theſe *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the neareſt of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the ſpace of 150 Leagues, but far more from Weſt to Eaſt: watered with many great remarkable Rivers, iſſuing from the Lake *Chiama*, which though 600 miles from the Sea, and emptying it ſelf continually into ſo many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compaſs, and is nevertheleſs full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and commodiouſneſs of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Ægypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithſtanding, there are in it many huge Foreſts, in the Weſt eſpecially; and therein many Lions, Tigers, Ounces, Serpents and other Creatures of a miſchievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdom of 1 *Calam*, 2 *Prom*, 3 *Melinta*, 4 *Miranda*, 5 *Bacan*, 6 *Tangu*, 7 *Ava*, and 8 *Brama*.

Of 1 *MELINTAY*, and 2 *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the reſt, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the firſt riſing of his fortunes becoming the foundation of his following greatneſs. Of 3 *BACAM*, it is ſaid, that it is plentifully enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver. In 4 *CAVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-ſteeps of the name of *Cavilah* the Son of *Jocktan*. Of the reſt more is to be ſaid, but not much.

5. *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdom is exceeding populous, and ſtored with a warlike people. Given by the ſecond King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger Son; who being by his Father commanded to the ſiege of *Marmolan*, which had then revolted, not only did decline the ſervice, but rebelled againſt him, and by the ſtrength of this ſmall Kingdom held it out three years. But ſeeing his Father's fortunes in a manner deſperate, he repented of his diſobedience, and went unto his aid with an Army of 50000 Men of his natural Subjects. Treacherouſly poyſoned on the way by his chiefeſt Counſellour, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms, ſo called from the chief Town thereof: formerly ſubject with the reſt to the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their ſeveral Vice-Roys. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to ſet up for himſelf; and husbanded his affairs ſo well, that he became ſole Lord of the *Bramain* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the reſt in this part of *India*. Not long enjoy'd by his Succeſſour, when diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by one whom he married to his Siſter; and made governour of this very Province. In which he bore himſelf ſo ſtiffly, that being ſent for by his King to aid him againſt ſome of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he anſwered that he would ſend one half; to ſend all being unreaſonable. Incenſed with which denial, the King armed againſt him; but he put the Leaders to the ſword, and ſeized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and deſpairing of reconcilement, he took upon himſelf the Title of King of *Tangu*; and to ſecure himſelf therein joyned with the King of *Arrachan* againſt his Soveraign: whom he moſt barbarouſly ſlew (after he had put himſelf into his hands) with his Wife and Children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villainy, ſubdued not long after, with the reſt of theſe *Indian* Princes, by the of King *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of theſe Kingdoms, and one of the Plantations of *Cavilah* alſo, is liberally furniſhed with all things neceſſary for the life of Man. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Rubies*, which they dig out of the Mountains, a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of Horſes and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*; which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built; iſſuing out of the Lake of *Chiamor*, or *Chimai*, and communicates the ſame to the whole Province. Subject for many Ages paſt to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is ſaid; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling againſt the Son and Succeſſour of his Benefactor, and by him ſlain in ſingle Combat, this Kingdom was conferred on a Son of the Conquerour. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother, and one who grew at laſt unto ſo great power, that in the buſtle or combuſtions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he ſurprized or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given to the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*, ſlew all the Soldiers, and ſpitted *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the diſperſed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himſelf a good bargain by it; if the ſudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not ſpoiled his markets.

8. *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the moſt Southern of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatarie* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no accompt when the *Portugals* came firſt acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of moſt renown. For ſitting ſtill when all the reſt of their neighbours were embroyled in wars, they gathered ſo much power and ſtrength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof obſerving how the Forces of his neighbouring Princes were conſumed, and their Treaſures waſted, levied an Army of 300000 fighting Men, 40000 Elephants, with all things ſuitable. And with this power ſubdued the

Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of theſe parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of it making in a little time all the leſſer Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they ſtill continue.

2. *CAUCHIN-CHINA.*

C*AUCHIN-CHINA* is bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Eaſt, with part of the great Realm of *China*; on the North, extending towards *Tartary*; on the South bordering on *Camboia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great ſtore of Silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other ſtuffs. It affordeth alſo plenty of *Porcellane* earth which being made up into Cups, Diſhes and other Utenſils of houſhold, is ſold by the name of *China-ware*; well counterfeited of late amongſt us, by putting a white cruſt on our *Potters* earth, as neat for uſe and ſhew as the natural *China*.

The people very ſtout and warlike, eſpecially for Foot-ſervice; though they have many horſes here, and thoſe fit for War. Well practiſed on their *Pieces* alſo, on which they ſpend great ſtore of powder, but not ſo much in War, as in Sports and Triumphs: yet making much more than they ſpend, earth in ſome parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, eſpecially to the making of Powder, Silks, and *Procellane*, which they ſell to the *Chineſes*. *Idolaters* for the moſt part as are thoſe of *China*, whoſe Characters and Language they alſo uſe: but ſo that there appear ſome inclinations unto Chriſtianity, in many of them; who have erected many *Croſſes*, and do admit the Pictures of our *Bleſſed Virgin*, and the final Judgment. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progreſs in the Goſpel, if they had met with better Teachers than thoſe *Laymens* Books.

The chief City hereof is called *Cauchin-China* by the name of the Province, ſituate on a River coming out of *China*, and paſſing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided in three Provinces, and as many Kings; over which one *Paramount*: *Cauchin-China*, was, in Ancient Times, ſubject to the Kings of *China*, but it Revolted ſome Ages Since, and is now Subject to a Prince that is able to wage War with *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Iſland called *Ainao*, ten miles from the Land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fiſhing for *Pearls*. The *Portugals* hold in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces of *Cauchin-China*: *Alexander de Rhodes*, a French Jeſuit, has lately given a Large Account of this Country.

3. *CAMBOIA.*

C*AMBOIA* is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*, on the Eaſt and South, with the Ocean; on the Weſt with part of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia*, the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* ſpecially ſo called. This Kingdom is almoſt equally divided by a vaſt River which in *July*, or *Auguſt* overflows all the Country, as the *Nile* doth *Egypt*: The King of this Country is a great Friend to the *Portugueſes*, as he of *Siam* is to the *Dutch*. Upon the moſt Eaſtern Branch (for there are Three of the River mentioned before) ſtands *Cambodia*, the Principal City, built upon a riſing Ground to prevent the yearly Deluges. This Kingdom is extreme Fruitful, but not Potent, The King not being able to bring above 25 or 30000 Men into the Field. It was first diſcovered by *Alphonſo d'Albuquerque*, in the year 1511, as *Mandeſlo* ſaith. About the year 1550, The King of *Camboia* was Slain by the *Portugueſes* under the Walls of *Diu*; his Captains Divided the Kingdom, and fell to Civil-Wars amongſt them themſelves, till the King of *Indoſtan*, the Great *Mogul*, conquered it, *Hackluit* T. 2. p. 217. *Cambodia* lies in Long. 135. 00 Lat. 10. 35.

1. *CHAMPA*, the northern part hereof, bordereth on *Cauchin-china*; and is liberally provided of all neceſſaries: beſides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the Wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in Silver, much uſed in *Bathes*, and at the Funerals of great Perſons. This a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject with the reſt to the King of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is ſituate near the Sea-ſide, and of a very good traffick.

2. *CAMBOIA* ſpecially ſo called, lyeth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well ſtored with Elephants and *Rhinocerots*, which laſt the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth alſo great plenty of Sweet-wood, which they call *Calamba*; as precious and as much eſteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the ſame, or ſome *Species* of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Fleſh, and Fiſh; well watered with the River *Mecon* which iſſuing out of *China*, and having received many leſſer ſtreams falleth firſt into a great Lake of 200 miles compaſs, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean: making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Iſlands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Ægypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*) the Inhabitants at thoſe times betaking themſelves to their upper Rooms, and paſſing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be ſtrong and warlike; though more inclined to Merchandize and Navigation, than to deeds of Arms. *Idolaters* of the worſt kind, eſteeming Men and Beaſts of a like condition in regard of any future Judgment: of late beginning to ſet up, and adore the *Croſs*, which is (it ſeems) the firſt *Principle* of *Religion* in which the *Friers* are wont to inſtruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet by theſe new Teachers, from burning the Women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, uſed only here; but voluntarily to expreſs their loves, not upon conſtraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1 *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before it was deſtroyed; where it hath its fall into the Sea. Well traded, as the Staple for all this Country the Commodities whereof are brought hither, and here ſold to the Merchants. 2 *Cudurmuch*, twelve Leagues from *Camboia*, on the ſame River alſo. 3. *Toul* on the Sea-ſide in the very South-weſt Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once abſolute, and at their own diſpoſing, till invaded by a vaſt Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being ſlain, and his forces weakned, his Son and Succeſſour was conſtrained to become a *Vaſſal* to the Crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loſs of his Eſtate, when the Kingdom was made ſubject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applyed himſelf unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninſula* (part of his Dominions) extending three Leagues into the Sea; and ſent to the *Jeſuits* for ſome of their *Society* to live and preach amongſt the people. Not able for all theſe honeſt Policies to preſerve himſelf from being made a *Feudatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4. *JANGOMA.*

J*ANGOMA*, or the Country of *LAOS*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Mecon*; on the Weſt, with the River *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for there are three of them in all) being thoſe of *Levea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joyned together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people.

ple. A mighty Nation and ſtout, by Religion *Gentiles*, naked from the middle upwards, and truſſing up their hair like a Cap. Their Country very rich and level but very ill neighboured by the *Gueoni* (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name of *Gangigu*) who poſſeſs the Mountains; whence falling in great companies to hunt for Men, whom they kill and eat they commit cruel butcheries amongſt them. Inſomuch as this people, not able to defend themſelves againſt their fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is ſaid that they can make a Million of Men) were fain to put themſelves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except thoſe three which give name to the ſeveral Provinces, and thoſe of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the moſt part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber, or elſe upon the Rivers in Boats and Shallops as the *Tartarians* of the Deſarts in their Carts or Wheel-houſes. One of their Rivers (commonly called the River of *Laos*) ſaid to extend 400 Leagues within the Land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its courſe, and flow back ſtrongly towards its Fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they ſubmitted to the Patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other than they liſted: though for their ſakes, that King engaged himſelf in a War againſt the *Cannibals*, their moſt deadly Enemies, accompanied with 25000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of thoſe *Cannibals*, (of whom otherwiſe they had been devoured) in the year 1578. they deſcended the River in great multithdes, to the number of 200000; and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*: but they made an unproſperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Camboia* loſt his life in the Battel, yet he gave them ſuch a fatal Blow, that they were almoſt all ſlain, drowned, or captivated in the fight. Weakned wherewith they became an eaſiy prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he firſt made himſelf ſole Maſter of this part of *India*. Who giving to his Brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldeſt Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, conferred this Country, with the Title of King of *Jangoma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a Daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole Empire, was eaſily perſwaded by the *Talapies*, (ſo they call their Prieſts) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*, by whom that King was ſlain, and his Kingdom waſted. How he ſped afterwards I find not: But probable it is, that he ſubmitted with the reſt to the King of *Barma*.

5. *SIAM.*

SIAM is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, ſave that it toucheth on the Eaſt, with a part of *Camboia*; and on the Weſt with a Point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all thoſe Kingdoms which paſs under this name as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length than breadth, ſtretcheth it ſelf Southwards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninſula* or *Demy-Iſland*, called anciently *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe*: one of the five famous *Cherſoneſes* or *Peninſula's* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* near *Propontis*, the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* in the North of *Germany*; now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the Golden, ſuperadded to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, (and therefore not improbably thought by ſome to be *Solomon's Ophir*) ſtill famous with the reſt of the Countries of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tin, and other Metals; great quantity of Pepper ſent yearly thence, with ſtore of Elephants, and Horſes. The whole Country very fat and fertile, well ſtored with Rice, Corn, Graſs and all other neceſſaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleaſures, if not to Luxury; delighted much in Muſick and rich Apparrel: and ſuch as ſtand much upon their honour. For their inſtruction in good Letters they have Publick Schools, where their own Laws, and the myſteries of their own Religion are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in ſtrange Tongues underſtood by none but by the Learned. To Tillage they can frame themſelves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical* Arts, which they put over to their Slaves. In Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, worſhipping the four Elements amongſt other Gods; to each of which as they are ſeverally affected, ſo are their bodies to be diſpoſed of: either burnt, buried, hanged or drowned, after their deceaſe; as in their lives they were moſt devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Chriſtians here alſo in and about the parts poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, but more *Mahometans*; who poſſeſſing 200 Leagues of the Sea-coaſts of this Country, have planted that Religion in moſt parts of the Country now by them poſſeſſed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms ſome of little note; Thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Malaca*, 2. *Patane*, 3. *Jor*, 4. *Muantay*, and 5. *Siam*, properly and eſpecially ſo called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Patane* are poſſeſſed by the *Arabians*, or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA*, taketh up the South part of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolemy* calleth *Malanconia*, in the extreme South point hereof, near unto *Sabana*, then a noted Empory for the ſpace of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Muſicana*, or built very near it; from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Muſicana Terra*. The City ſeated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here ſaid to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the nearneſs of it to the *Line*, (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof and all the Territory belonging to it, is very unwholſome; and for that cauſe the Country but meanly populous. In compaſs it is ſaid to be 20 miles; of great wealth, becauſe of almoſt infinite trading; for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls and Precious Stones, the moſt noted Empory of the Eaſt. Inſomuch that it is ſaid by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more Ships than any one City in the World; more by far ſince the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The People (as in all this Tract) of an Aſh-colour with long hair hanging over their faces, bloudy and murderous; eſpecially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note, in a place ſo unhealthy, except, 2. *Sincapura*, ſituate Eaſt from *Malaca*, near the Promontory of old called *Magnum*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Zabæ* of *Ptolemy*: and that more probably, than that it ſhould be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at leaſt 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Cherſoneſe*. But whatſoever it was called in the former times, it was in theſe late Ages the Mother of *Malaca*; the greateſt part of the Trade and People being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the beſt frequented Empory in theſe parts of the Eaſt. 3. *Palo Zambilan*, 120 miles on the Weſt of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coaſting about the Southern Cape (now called *Lape Liampo*) we have a Sea-ſhore of 270 miles, as before was ſaid. No other habita- of any reckoning, but a few Sheds upon the ſhore for the uſe of Fiſher-men, and ſome ſcattered Villages in the Land: the People dwelling moſt on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258, became a Kingdom of it ſelf; founded by *Paramiſera*, and ſome other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the Tyranny of their own King, came into this Country; where they were lovingly received by *Sangeſinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite* in *Sincapura*. Him they perfidiouſly ſlew, and inveſted *Paramiſera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to ſeek a new dwelling; and after two or three removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now ſtandeth: which City, pleaſed with the commodiouſneſs of the ſituation, he is ſaid to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in a ſhort time removed hither alſo, which ſo increaſed the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moors*, who began to plant themſelves on the ſhores adjoyning and receiving withal the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to caſt off all ſubjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Succeſſour of *Paramiſera* had ſubmitted his new raiſed Kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incenſed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500, ſent out a Navy of 200 Sail to diſtreſs it by Sea; and an Army of 30000 Men and 400 Elephants to beſiege it by Land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by tempeſts, and the inſolencies of ſome of his Soldiers, the *Portugals* in the year 1511 under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, had poſſeſſed themſelves of it, who built there a Fortreſs and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the Son of the expelled King (whoſe name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Eſtate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor*, and *Achen* (two neighbourirg Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have ſeverally and ſucceſſively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they ſtill keep it in defiance of all oppoſition which hath been hitherto made againſt them. This City ſtands on the Weſtern ſhore, in Longitude 127, 25. Latitude 03, 40. and was ſubject to the King of *Ihor*, till the *Portugals* in the year 1511, took it from him under *Alphonſo Albuquerque*: and in the year 1640, the *Dutch* took it from them, after a Siege of ſix months. It is a celebrated Mart, and has a large Haven, and a ſtrong Caſtle, and a River of the ſame name with the City but lying a mile from it to the South-Eaſt. This was the ſecond Government depending on the Vice-Roy of *Goa*, by reaſon of the Cuſtoms paid here by all the Ships which went to the Eaſt. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 75. The *Hollanders* can now hardly get enough to pay the charge of their Garriſon which is here kept, 1660.

2. North unto that of *Malaca*, lyeth the Kingdom of *YOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*, ſo called of *Jor* or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the moſt part by *Moors*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometaniſm* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country alſo. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of ſo much power, that joyning his Land-Forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he beſieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it; in which when taken by *Paul de Lima* by the defeat of this King, were found 900 Pieces of Braſs-Ordinance. After this picking a quarrel with the King of *Pahan*, he burnt his Houſes, Barns, Proviſions, and the Suburbs of his City it ſelf; but in the courſe of his affairs was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Iſle of *Sumatra*) his old Confederate; who after 29 days ſiege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom I am not able to reſolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the *Lord* in *chief*.

3. More Northward yet lyeth the Kingdom of *PATHANE*, denominated from *Patane*, the chief City of it: but different from *Patane* in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-ſhire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincoln-ſhire*, as hath been fully ſhewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and compoſed together; the *Meſquit* only (moſt of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of brick. The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, inſomuch that in this ſmall City there are ſpoken three Languages, *viz.* the *Chineſe*, uſed by that people; the *Malayan*, (or Language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this ſmall Crown is *Feudatary*. Built of ſuch light ſtuff and combuſtible matter, it muſt needs be in great danger of fire; and was moſt miſerably burnt in the year 1613, by ſome *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of ſome of their fellows: at which time the whole City was conſumed with fire, the *Meſquit* the Queen's Court and ſome few Houſes, excepted only. The Country, Governed of late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories*, in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that diſmal fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Pahan*, who had married her Siſter, and reigned in a little Iſland not far off, ſhe ſent againſt him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 Men; by which compelled to correſpond with her deſires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4 The Kingdom of *Siam*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, is ſituate on the main land (the reſt before deſcribed being in the *Cherſoneſe*) betwixt *Camboia* on the Eaſt, *Pegu* on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Muantay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it 1. *Socotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of metal 80 ſpans in height, raiſed by one of the Kings; it being the cuſtom of this Country, that every King at his firſt coming to the Crown, is to build a Temple; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2. *Quedoa*, renowned for the beſt Pepper, and for that cauſe very much frequented by foreign Merchants. It is ſeated upon the Promontory of *Malaca*, over againſt *Sumatra*. Longitude 125, 31. Latitude 5. 50. It has an excellent port, and a very great Trade, being the Capital of a Kingdom of the ſame name which was ſubject to the King of *Siam*; but has now a Prince of its own. 3. *Tavay*, upon the Sea-Coaſt where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence meaſuring along the ſhores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Cherſoneſe* in this account) we have a Sea-Coaſt of the length of 600 Leagues. 4. *Lugor*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, near that little *Iſthmus*, which joyneth the *Cherſoneſe* to the Land; from whence to *Malaca*, is 600 miles ſail all along the Coaſt. 5. *Calantan*, the Head-City of a little Kingdom but ſubject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6. *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Mecam*, for Trade and Merchandize. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that beſides the Natives, here are ſaid to be thirty thouſand houſeholds of *Arabians*. The houſes of it high-built by reaſon of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every houſe a Boat for the uſe of the Family. Thoſe of the poorer ſort dwell in little ſheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the beſt convenience of their Markets: and yet ſo ſtrong, that being beſieged by the *Tanguan* Conquerour, then King of *Pegu*, *Anno* 1567, with an Army of fourteen hundred thouſand fighting Men, for the ſpace of 20 months together, it reſolutely held good againſt him: not gained at laſt by Force, but Treaſon; one of the Gates being ſet open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Chriſtianity; but hitheto ſo ill inſtructed in the Principles of it, that they maintain amongſt many other ſtrange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the World ſhall be conſumed with fire; and that under the aſhes of it ſhall remain two Eggs, out of which ſhall come one Man and one Woman, who ſhall people the World anew. *Siam* and the Foreſts are no leſs peſtered with Lions, Tigers, Rhiniocerots, Apes, and Serpents. The Rivers are large but full of Cataracts and and Crocodiles of a monſtrous bigneſs, that devour Men if

they be not very careful; but the water is wholſom, and makes the Earth very fruitful. *Siam* the Capital City is 3 Leagues in circuit, ſeated on a River-Iſland. The Inhabitants are all Slaves to the King or the great Men. The King is one of the richeſt Princes of the Eaſt; but a Tributary to *China*, which borders on him to the North-Eaſt: He and all his Subjects are *Pagans*. It is thought there are above 200000 *Bonzas* or Prieſts in this Nation, wonderfully reverenced by the King himſelf, but if they prove Traitors to him, he makes no ſcruple to execute them. In the year 1665, Father *Thomas* a *Neapolitan Jeſuit*, taught them to fortifie *Siam* after the modern way, for which he was much honoured by the King and had a Houſe given him in the City. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Cap. 18. Lib. 3. It has five Wall'd Towns, *India* &c. The Soil of it is very fertile as to Rice and other Corn, and nouriſhes plenty of wild and tame Beaſts; the Inhabitants are great lovers of Mechanick Arts; the meaneſt Man has Land of his own, that he cultivates with great induſtry. All the Kings furniture is ſolid Gold. This Kingdom has Mines of Gold and Silver; Lead and Pewter, and Braſil-wood. The Soldiery has no pay from this rich King, but an allowance of Rice for their diet, and are indeed no other than his Slaves, and treated accordingly in times of Peace. The common people are Rich and Gawdy in Apparrel, and very chaſte in their behaviour tho' *Pagans*, eſpecially the married Parties; but they allow *Polygamy* and *Divorces*. They protect all Nations that come thither, *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *Portugals* and *Moors*, equally with their own people; which encreaſe the Strength, Arts and Wealth of this Nation. *Struy's*.

The City of *Siam*, *Odia*, *Udia*, the vaſt Capital of the Kingdom of *Siam*, is ſeated on the Eaſt ſide of the River *Menna*, 3 Leagues from the *Indian* Ocean in the Latitude of 15.00. in a large Plain; and doth every day grow greater. Some think it was anciently called *Samarada*; there is a branch of the River runs through the City, *Baudrand*. In 1567, the King of *Pegu* came before this City with an Army of a million and 400000 Men, and beſieged it 21 months, and then took it with the loſs of 500000 of his Men, one of the Gates being betrayed to him in the night. I was then in *Pegu*, and ſaw the King return with the ſpoils of that City. Mr. *Frederick* an *Italian*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 229, 259.

5. *MUANTAY*, the laſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*, memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udia*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*; and the uſual reſidence of thoſe Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the Wars, and in continual readineſs for preſent ſervice. For tho' this King be Lord of nine ſeveral Kingdoms, yet he uſeth none of them in his Wars but the natural *Siamites* and thoſe of this City, and the reſt of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is ſaid that for the uſe of this City only (being ſeated like *Venice* upon many little Iſlands, not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 Skiffs or Shallops, ſerving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable. But being beleaguered by the *Tanguan* or *Bramin* Conquerour, with 1000000 fighting Men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this, if every Man had but caſt a ſhovel full of earth upon it) it was won at laſt.

The Government of theſe Kings of *Siam*, was abſolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being ſole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husband-men, during life or pleaſure, but never paſſed over unto any the right of inheritance. And theſe he grants unto his Subjects, beſides rents in money upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horſe, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horſe, and 250000 Foot, for preſent ſervice; beſides far greater numbers out of the reſidue of his people, if occaſion be. And for his ordinary Guard he was ſaid to keep 6000 Soldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beaſts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the War. By reaſon of ſo great a power he became Maſter of the Realms of *Camboya* and *Campa*; held thoſe of *Malaca*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vaſſals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Laos*, under his Protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his *City* of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poyſoned himſelf upon the news, his Son becoming *Tributary* to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vitious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of ſo worthy a Father; by whom he was beſieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting Men. Unable to reſiſt his Army if he had preſently declared ſuch a reſolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promiſes of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*;) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country, for 120 miles about: by which ſudden and violent inundation and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there periſhed all of this great Army except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite*, *Anno* 1600, beſieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon; and dying in the year 1605, left his Eſtate unto his Brother. Whoſe Son ſucceeding ſettled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *Engliſh* Merchants, *Anno* 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the Soveraignty of *Pegu*, then deſtroyed and waſted, if the violent and unreſiſtable coming of the King of *Barma* had not croſſed him in it: to whom now ſubject with the reſt of the *Indian* Princes on that ſide of the River.

6. *PEGV.*

PEGV is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Jangoma* and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Weſt and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City. as that by the name of the River upon which it ſtandeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Eſtates of 1 *Verma*, 2 *Machin*, 3 *Orachan*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a ſmall Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and ſo denominated from *Verma* the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moors* and *Mahometans*, which can be ſaid of no other of theſe *Indian* Kingdoms.

The people black, naked above the Waſte, and covered beneath it only with a Vail of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war, right valiant. This laſt apparent by the long and frequent Wars which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in concluſion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, ſo called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of theſe *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of ſmall eſteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweet-wood, by the *Latines* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the Natives *Calamba*, ſo much in uſe for Funerals and Bathes, (as was ſaid before) held alſo by the *Indians* for a ſoveraign and unparallel'd *Medecine* againſt many dangerous diſeaſes; great quantities hereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchants. One of the firſt Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Barma*, (upon whom it borderth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Arrachan*, lieth on the Weſt of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*, environed round with Mountains, and impaſſable Woods. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, *Anno* 1608. 2 *Sundiva*, ſituate in an Iſland unto which it giveth name, ſix Leagues off from the Continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1602. And from them taken by this King about two years after; and made a member of his Kingdom.

The Iſland 30 Leagues in compaſs, very ſtrong, fruitful, and the Town well fortified. 3 *Arrachan*, the Head-City, which gives name to all, diſtant from the Sea 45 miles, but ſeated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the Ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Deſolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, beſieged the Second *Peguan* King in the Caſtle of *Mecao*; and had betwixt them the whole Pillage of that wealthy City, together with the Poſſeſſion of the beſt Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph, leading with him the *White Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, ſumptuouſly adorned; the Brother and two Sons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A ſolemn and magnificent entry. The better to aſſure himſelf of his new Dominions, this King beſtowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Siriangh* on the River *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ranſom, they brake out into open Wars. In the purſuit whereof, after many loſſes, the King recovered from them the Iſle of *Sundiva*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 Sail (of which 75 were of ſo great burden, as to carry every one twelve Pieces of Ord'nance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 great Pieces, beſieged the Fortreſs: aſſiſted in that action alſo by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his deſign, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613. as before is ſaid, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom by the King of *Barma*: of whoſe great riſe, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan* were the firſt foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richeſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the Weſt. The ſoil ſo fertile, that it yieldeth three Harveſts in a year; and ſent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich alſo in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steal, Braſs, Silver, Gold and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Foreſts well ſtored with Harts, Boars, and *Buffles*; ſtore of Pines and Palms: the Woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and ſhrubs either *Medicinal* or *Odoriferous*. The principal City of it called alſo *Martavan*, ſituate on a Haven open at all times of the year and not choaked with Sands, as uſually other Havens are in the *Indian Winter*: of great trading, much ſplendour, and a temperate air. Faithful unto the laſt to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were ſubject; and in that conſtancy they twice repulſed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the moſt part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* cauſed two of his cowardly Captains to be caſt into a Caldron of ſcalding Oyl; and at the third Aſſault became Maſter of it. *Bannalaius* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themſelves in the Woods and Deſarts. This City is ſtyled *Martavan*, in *Hackluit* T. 2. p. 232. Where is the Hiſtory of a notable Tumult made by the *Portugueſes* in 1567. The Kingdom, belonging to it, lyes between that of *Pegu* to the *North*; and *Ligor*, a Promontory of the Kingdom of *Siam* to the *South*.

5. *PEGU*, the moſt Predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Creſcent* or Half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on the coaſt from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*, the next Town o *Siam*, for the ſpace of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little leſs in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the midſt of it, and gives this name alſo unto *Pegu* the moſt noted City.

The Soil hereof exceeding fruitful, by reaſon of the annual overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth alſo many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) ſtore of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parrots, which ſpeak plainer, & are much fairer than in any place elſe.

The people of mean ſtature, ſomewhat corpulent, and naturally beardleſs. If any ſtraggling hair thruſt forth, they always carry Pincers with them to pull them out. Nimble and ſtrong, but not very fit for War; ſpending too much of their ſtrength in the love of Women, to whom moſt paſſionately addicted. They black their teeth becauſe they ſay that dogs teeth are white; and wear no cloaths but on their heads and about their nakedneſs. Said by the *Jews* to be deſcended from ſome of the *Tribes* of *Iſrael*, confined hither by *Solomon*; but by the *Peguans* themſelves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China-woman*, which were ſaved here upon a Shipwrack. By *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable Worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every World: more *Orthodox*, in aſſigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceaſed, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and Pleaſures, if they had not added a third alſo for *ſatisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Coſmi*, ſeated in a Territory full of Woods, as thoſe Woods of Tigers, Wild Boars, Apes, and Parrots; the houſes made of *Canes*, which ſerve here for Timber, (ſome of them being as big as Hogſheads) covered over with Thatch. 2 *Jocabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3. *Dian*, on the ſame River alſo, where they make Barks or Veſſels as big as *Galleaſſes*; which ſerve both for Trade and Habitation. 4 *Coilon*, a City four ſquare, and each ſquare four miles. 5 *Lanagon*, a pleaſant Town, and full of *Palm*-trees. 6 *Dala*, in which were the King's Stables for his ordinary Elephants; his four *White Elephants* (for ſo many he had) being always kept about the Court, not ſeen abroad, but in great ſolemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold; and no leſs honoured by the people, than the King himſelf: called therefore King of the *White Elephants* by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silvanpede*, where many victualling Barks are made to ſerve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Meccao*, where they uſe to unload ſuch goods, as are to paſs by Land to *Pegu*. Neighboured by the ſtrongeſt Caſtle in all this Kingdom, and therefore choſen by the King for his place of Retreat, when diſtreſſed by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*. To the laſt of which making choice to yield up his Perſon, with his Wife and Children, becauſe he had marryed him to his Siſter, he was by him perfidiouſly and baſely murdered. 9 *Siriang*, a ſtrong plece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thouſand ſix hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good againſt him, and the King of *Tangu* his aſſociate for the ſpace of thirteen years together, was at laſt forced to yield himſelf Priſoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of theſe parts, great, ſtrong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the *New* by the King and his Nobility. The Houſes made of Wood but covered with Tiles: a *Coco-Tree* before every houſe yielding a comfortable ſhade, and a pleaſant ſhew. The ſtreets as ſtraight as any line and ſo broad that ten or twelve Men may ride a-breaſt in the narroweſt of them. In figures ſquare, each ſquare having five Gates, beſides many Turrets, all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with Walls of ſtone environed on all ſides with great Ditches; and in the midſt the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, moſt ſumptuouſly gilded; but eſpecially the Temple or *Idol-chappel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver. *Pegu* is in truth Two Cities, The Old and the New but the firſt is the Place of Trade: The City is not great, but the Suburbs are vaſt, and is built with Reeds and covered with Leaves, and ſo very Subject to Fires. In the New City is the Royal Palace which was built in 1568. It is a great City, very plain and Flat, four Square, Secured by Walls and a Ditch full of Water. It hath 20 Gates, but no Draw-Bridges:

The Streets are the Faireſt I ever ſaw, and ſtraight as a Line from Gate to Gate, and as broad as 10 or 12 Men may ride a-breaſt, planted on both ſides with *Indian*-Nuts. The Houſes are of Wood, covered with Tiles; the place is in the middle like a Caſtle, but built with Wood, Gilded, Ditched, Walled, and Moated round, *Hackluit.* T. 2. p. 234.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* was, Once, a moſt Potent Empire, but is now much diminiſhed: It lies between the Kingdom of *Tungking* to the *Eaſt*, and that of *Arrachan* to the *Weſt*. About the Year 1567. One, who was in this Kingdom, aſſures us the King of *Pegu* beſieged *Siam* with an Army of a Million and 400000 Men, and took it after 21 Months. He had then Vaſt Treaſures of Gold and Silver, Mines of Rubies, Sapphires, Spinels; and he had 26 Crowned Kings, that were his Vaſſals. *Hackluit.* T. 2. p. 236. The Goods exported hence are Gold, Silver, Benjamin, Long-Pepper, Lead, Lacca, Rice, Wine, Sugar, p. 239. This Gentleman who gives the Account, was here in 1569. *Hackluit* Tom. 2. p. 258.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleaſure as the World could yield: his Empire not extending only over theſe Kingdoms now deſcribed, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramines* alſo; which he governed by his ſeveral *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happineſs too great to continue long. For in the year 1567 the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his Faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entred into rebellion; and ſlaying the Nobles of the Land, uſurped that Kingdom. After this he ſubdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramines*, and therefore taking to himſelf the Title of the King of *Brama*, becauſe his frame and fortunes took their riſe from his victories over them. Following the courſe of his ſucceſſes he firſt aſſayled the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulſed with loſs. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and ſubdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the ſiege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying, he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grand-ſons; the Kingdom of *Jangoma* to a younger Son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, to his eldeſt Son, a Prince of a vicious and tyrannical nature: and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they diſobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both ſides, the people, to defend their liberty; the King, to preſerve his Royalty. During theſe civil diſcords, the titular King of *Siam*, whoſe late overthrow was not yet fully digeſted, came violently into the Country of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Graſs, and Fruits; killing Man, Woman, and Child: and having ſatisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This ſpoil of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unſupportable Famine, which conſumed all the Inhabitants of this flouriſhing Kingdom, except ſuch whom the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preſerved *Anno* 1568. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the ſtronger preyed upon the weaker; not onely devouring their more fleſhy parts, but their entrals alſo: nay they broke up the skulls of ſuch as they had ſlain, and ſucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his beſt advantage out of his neighbour's affliction; though made his Brother-in-law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For juſtly fearing the diſpleaſure of his angry Prince, to whoſe aid he had refuſed to come, when ſent for by him, he joyned himſelf with the King of *Arrachan*, beſieged his Lord and Soveraign in the Fort of *Mecao*. Brought to extremities the unfortunate Prince, thought beſt to put himſelf into the hands of his Brother of *Tangu*, who aſſaulted and entred *Pegu*: where he found as much Treaſure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horſes, as he could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villainouſly murdered the King, Queen, and their Children and departed; leaving the gleaning of his ſpoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who, *Anno*, 1600. was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Barma* having with an Army of an hundred thouſand fighting Men, and forty thouſand Elephants, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*; drove the King thereof from *PEGU*: where he hath built a moſt magnificent Palace, and is now the ſole Monarch of the Twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-ſettled eſtate, we cannot yet underſtand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces; Merchants, whoſe inquiſitiveneſs into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full ſatisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statiſts* are not permitted to obſerve; and ſuch of the Natives as could give us the moſt light, are not ſuffered to travel. Onely we may conjecture by the great wealth of thoſe ſeveral Princes, and the vaſt Armies by them raiſed in their ſeveral Territories, That his *Annual Revenues*, *Caſualties*, and united Forces muſt be almoſt infinite.

And ſo much for *INDIA*.

OF The Oriental Iſlands.

THE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, ſo called from their ſituation in the *Oriental*, or Eaſtern Seas, may be divided into the Iſlands of 1 *Japan*; 2 the *Philippinæ*, and Iſles adjoyning; 3 the Iſlands of *Bantam*; 4 the *Moluccoes*; 5 thoſe called *Sinda*, or the *Celebes*; 6 *Borneo*; 7 *Java*; 8 *Sumatra*; 9 *Ceilan*; and 10 certain others of leſs note.

1. *JAPAN.*

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Iſlands, ſeparated by ſmall Gulfs, Straights, and Turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66 in all; others aſcribe that number to ſo many Kingdoms, into which theſe Iſlands (be they in number more or leſs) uſe to be divided. But whatſoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of account, to which the ſeveral petty Kingdoms are now reduced, that is to ſay, 1 *Japan* ſpecially ſo called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferiour note. 2 *Ximo* which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are thoſe of *Bungo* and *Figen*. 3 *Xicoum*; which comprehendeth four only of theſe petty *Seigniories*.

JAPAN, the chief of all theſe Iſlands, to which the reſidue may be accounted of but as *Appurtenances*, is ſituate over againſt the Straights of *Anian* (if ſuch Straights there be) towards which it looketh to the North: diſtant from new *Spain* on the Eaſt 150 Leagues, or 450 *Engliſh* miles and 60 Leagues from *Cantan* a Province of *China* oppoſite to it on the Weſt. On the South it hath the vaſt Ocean,and thoſe infinite ſholes of Iſlands which are called the *Philippinæ*, and the Iſles neighbouring upon them.Extending in length from Weſt to Eaſt 200 Leagues,but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in ſome places not above 10 Leagues over, and in the broadeſt part but 30.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but a very healthy air, if not too much ſubject to cold, yet in ſome places they have Wheat ripe in the Month of *May*; but their Rice, which is their Principle ſuſtenance, they gather not before *September*. The ſurface of the Earth, cloathed with Woods and Foreſts, in which ſome *Cedars* of ſo tall and large a body,that one of them onely is ſufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it ſtored with divers Metals, and amongſt others with ſuch inexhauſtible Mines of Gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth ſome of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time with ſheets of Gold, as ours in *Europe* are with Lead. But I find no ſuch matter in our latter Travellers. Their Fields and Meadows full of cattel, and hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their Fens much viſited by wild Ducks, as their houſe-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails and Pullets.

The people for the moſt part of good underſtanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and ſubtil in their dealings. Of body vigorous and ſtrong, accuſtomed to bear Arms until 60 years old.Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads ſhaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of ſuffering wrong, but can withal diſſemble their reſentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no Man for his poverty, ſo it come not by his own unthriftineſs, for which cauſe they deteſt all kinds of *gaming*, as the ways of ill husbandry; and generally abhor *Slander*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feaſts in black; their teeth they colour black alſo, to make them beautiful:they mount on the right ſide of the horſe, and ſit (as we are uſed to riſe) when they entertain. In *Phyſick* they eat ſalt things, ſharp, and raw; and in their *ſalutations they put off their ſhoes*. The very *Antipodes* of our World in cuſtoms though not in ſight, and the true Type or Figure of the *old Engliſh Puritan*, oppoſite to the *Papiſts* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that oppoſition. In other things they do much reſemble thoſe of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: waſhing their Infant-children in the neareſt River, as ſoon as born, and putting off their ſhoes when they go to meat.

The People have but one *Language*, but ſo intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it ſeems rather to be many Languages than one. They have long uſed the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough, they might have from *China*:the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and ſignifie not onely Letters, but ſome whole Words alſo. In matters of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honour to wild beaſts, and the Stags of the Foreſts: but ſpecially worſhipping ſome of their deceaſed Prieſts and Princes; by the names of *Fotoques* and *Cames*; to the firſt of which they uſe to pray for goods of the other World,and to the laſt for *Temporal* bleſſings. Their Prieſts they call by the name of *Bonzes*, ſettled in goodly *Convents*,and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the Providence of God, and the immortality of the Soul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuits*, *Chriſtianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with ſuch a large increaſe as their Letters called *Epiſtolæ Japanicæ* have been pleaſed to tell us, I am ſomewhat doubtful. They tell us there of ſome Kings of theſe Iſlands, whom they have converted and baptized, that within 50 miles of *Meaco* they had 50 Churches, 200 at the leaſt in all, and that in the year 1587. the number of their Converts were two hundred thouſand. Of this, if the one half be true, we have great cauſe to praiſe God for it, and to give them the commendation of their pains and induſtry; not letting paſs the memory of the firſt *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the firſt foundation of this *Society*, (imployed in this buſineſs by *Ignatius*, the firſt founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

It lyes 36. Degrees North, from the Line, the Country is hilly and Subject to great Snows and is much colder and Poorer than *Portugal*, and yet it has plenty of Silver-Mines; the People are civil, courteous and very honeſt in their Dealings, very proud, and very poor *Hackluit*, T. 2. p. 2. p. 80. The Cities in it are *Meaco*, *Cangoxima*, *Coia*, *Negru*, *Homi*, *Frænoi*, and *Blandu*. 16. p. 81. It is ſuppoſed to be an Iſland of 150 German miles in Length and Seventy in breadth. The Inhabitants are all under One Prince, Heathen Idolaters, and the Sworn Enemies of Chriſtianity, which had begun to take ſome rooting amongſt them, by the Preaching of the *Portugueſes* but was extirpated by fire, and Sword, and the bloodieſt perſecution that ever was practiſed amongſt Men. The *Dutch* who Trade here are ſecured with the utmoſt caution, that they may not Surprize any part of the Shore, or build any Fort, or do any other Act,whereby they may ſettle themſelves, nor will they permit them to ſee any more of the Country than one ſmall *Peninſula*, or of the Inhabitants than thoſe they are to Trade with; and for a long time they would not permit them to Land, or buy or Sell till they had renounced their Chriſtianty. This Iſland lyes 60 Leagues from *Cantan* a Province of *China* to the *Eaſt*. The Country is Mountainous and generally barren, but yet mantains a vaſt number of Cattel; yet the Inhabitants know not how to make either *Butter* or *Cheeſe*. This Iſland which was totally unknown to the Ancients, was firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota* a *Portugueſe* in 1542.The *Jeſuits* in 1556.Sent *Xavier* to Preach here, and at firſt they had great Succeſs; inſomuch that in the year 1587. they pretended to have gained over 200000 converts. But this Laſted not long, for about the year 1629,they began ſo dreadful a perſecution, as is no where to be met with, and theſe New converts being not well grounded in their New Religion *Apoſtatized* ſo faſt, that in 20 years there were very few Chriſtians to be found, and perhaps at this time there are none. This Country lyes in 35 Degrees of Lat. and the Principal City of it is *Meaco*,though the Emperour of late reſided at *Jendo*. On the coaſt of this Iſland are found excellent Pearl, but they are not much ſought for becauſe the Natives regard no *Jewels*. Tavern. p. 2. p. 145. This Empire conſiſts of ſeveral Iſlands Seated North-Eaſt, of *China* and yields the greateſt quantity of Gold of any Kingdom in *Aſia*. 16. p. 156. This which has been repreſented as one Iſland is indeed a knot of Iſles, *Niphon*, *Ximo*, or *Sayock* and *Xicock*, being 3 diſtinct Kingdoms. *Niphon*, is divided into 5 Provinces (*viz*) *Jamaſoit Jetſeſſen*, *Quanto* and *Ochio*. The Capital City is *Yeddo* which is now 3 Leagues long and as many broad, very populous and cloſe built; the Summer is very hot and the Winter is as cold;Whirlwinds and Earth-Quakes are ſo common that they are not feared. The Country is barren by default of the Natives, rather than by the Nature of the Soil. The Air is healthful, the waters good, the Natives fair and well bodied, very hardy and valiant by nature and Cuſtom. In great Towns the moſt of them can write and read. Their houſes are built with Timber moſtly, and covered within with fine Matts; which are their beds, Couches and Tables. Of old 300 or 400 years ſince it was all Subject to one Prince, now divided into 66 Kingdoms; the cauſe of Endleſs Wars *Hackluit*. T: 2. p. 2. p. 82.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Iſland be generally well watered,more memorable for two Mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figenoiama*, is ſaid to tranſcend the clouds in height; the other (but without a name) uſeth to caſt forth dreadful flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*: on the top whereof the *Devil*, environed with a white and ſhining cloud, doth ſometimes ſhew himſelf unto ſuch of his *Votaries*, as live about this hill an abſtemious life, like the ancient *Hermites*.

Chief Cities of the whole Iſlands, 1 *Meaco*, ſeated in *Japan* and the chief of that Iſland, formerly 21 miles in compaſs, but now by reaſon of their wars, ſcarce a third part of it: The ordinary reſidence of the *Triumviri*, or three principal Magiſtrates, which ſway the affairs of all theſe Iſlands: of whom the firſt, entituled *Zazo*, hath the chief care in *ſacred* matters; the ſecond named *Voo*, doth preſide in *Civil*; and the third, called *Cabacama*, manageth the concernments of *Peace* and *War*. At this time it is uſed for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*, that people not permitting Merchants to come amongſt them, but bring to this place their Merchandize, as the common *Staple*; where they are ſure to meet Chapmen to buy it of them. Here is alſo a Royal and and Princely Palace in which their Kings formerly Lived and a good Haven and is ſtill very great and Populous, but yet it is much diminiſhed ſince the Court went to reſide at *Iſdo* 125 miles from this City to the Weſt. This City is ſaid at this day to contain above a 100000 houſes and is now the Seat of the *Dairi* a Prince deſcended of a very ancient and venerable houſe, but now Subject to the Kings of *Niphon*, who acknowledgeth his Right and Marries his Daughter if he has one. 2 *Oſſacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richeſt in all the Eaſt; of ſo great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is ſaid to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3 *Fenoiama* or *Fegenoiama*, at the foot of the hill ſo called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An Univerſity of *Bonzes*, for whoſe convenience and ſtudy, one of the Kings of *Japan* is ſaid to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain 3800 *Convents*, and to endow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. Theſe Colleges or Convents now reduced to 800 only: but ſtill the Univerſity of ſuch fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the King's Son, or his neareſt kinſman. 4. *Banoum*, another of their Univerſities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongo*, the chief of all that Province, in which the *Jeſuits* have a College; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* Language, and the *Europæans* that of *Japan*. 6 *Coia*, the Sepulture of their Princes, or ſome part of them: it being anciently ordained, That if their whole bodies be not here interred, they muſt at leaſt ſend one of their Teeth. 7. *Fiongo*, about 18 Leagues from *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga*, one of the Kings of this Iſland, who lived *Anno* 1550. that which he left, terribly ſcattered by an *Earth-quake*, *Anno* 1596. moſt of the ruines of it ſince conſumed by fire. 8 *Amangaſaqui* five Leagues from the Sea. 9 *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10 *Edoo*, much fairer than that, and the chief Seat of one of their Kings. 11 *Firando*, a Seat-Royal alſo of ſome other King, where in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* eſtabliſhed for the *Engliſh* Merchants. 12 *Ochinoſamanus*, one of their moſt noted Havens. 13 *Toſa*, or *Touſa*, giving name to one of the Iſlands.

Theſe Iſlands utterly unknown to the Ancients, were firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota* a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; and I cannot chooſe but wonder at it: The ſituation of it ſo far diſtant from that of the *Cherſoneſe*, that either *Mercator* muſt be groſly out in his conjecture; or *Ptolemy* as much miſtaken in his informations; which no Man hitherto can juſtly accuſe him of. But paſſing by the improbability of *Mercator's* fancy, we are to know, that in former times theſe Iſlands were ſubject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and reverenced with great affection: which government continued, as themſelves report, 1600 years in great State and Majeſty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (ſo they call their King) addicting himſelf wholly unto pleaſures, and laying the burden of Government upon other Mens ſhoulders; his Deputies, or other inferiour Officers, uſurped *Regal* power, plumed themſelves with the Eagle's Feathers uſed in their ſtyle the name of *Jucatas*, or Kings, and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi* to their Lord and Soveraign. His Iſſue to this day do enjoy that Title, but little elſe: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royal Seat, hardly allowing him ſufficient means to find himſelf Victuals and Apparrel; but otherwiſe befooling him with as glorious Titles, as if he were poſſeſſed ſtill of his ancient power. Only they let him execute the place of an *Herald*, in giving Arms, and ſettling Dignities and Honours; which brings him in the greateſt profit he hath to truſt to. Of all theſe Kings, he who can make himſelf Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and eſteemed Soveraign of the reſt. Which height of dignity, *Nabunanga*, before mentioned, in this time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and ſince him *Taicoſuma*: that Soveraignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command moſt of theſe ſmall Kingdoms, tranſported the vanquiſhed Kings, and the chief of their Nobles out of one Country into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and among ſtrange Subjects, they ſhould remain without means to revolt againſt him: a merciful and prudent courſe. Having reduced into his power at leaſt 50 of theſe petty Kingdoms, he divided the greateſt part of the conquered Territories amongſt his own faithful friends and followers; binding them to ſupply him with certain numbers of Men upon all occaſions. By which, and other politick courſes he ſo ſettled himſelf in thoſe Eſtates, that *Taicoſuma* his Son ſucceeded without oppoſition; who, had he lived, would have aboliſhed the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himſelf, as he had the power; ſollicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Fereiciſama* his Son ſucceeded, and may be ſtill alive for ought I can learn.

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to ſay. I gueſs them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reſerveth to himſelf from his own Demeſne. The ſtore of Gold and precious Stones which theſe Iſlands yeild, being wholly his, muſt needs add much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is ſaid, That *Faxiba* was able to raiſe ſo good an Army out of the Eſtate demiſed by him to his faithful followers, that he reſolved once on the Conqueſt of *China*: and to that end cauſed Timber to be felled for 2000 Veſſels for the tranſporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, 'tis probable enough he might have ſhaken that great Kingdom, the *Japonois* being ſo much the better Soldiers, that a ſmall party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chineſes*. The fear whereof made the King of *China*, after his deceaſe, correſpond ſo fairly with his Succeſſour.

2. The *PHILIPPINÆ*, and Iſles adjoyning.

SOuth of *Japan*, lyeth a great fry of Iſlands, which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ*, in honour of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*; in whoſe time diſcovered by *Legaſpi*, a *Spaniſh* Captain, *Anno* 1564. Strangely miſtaken by *Mercator* for the *Baruſſa* of *Ptolemy*, thoſe being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Æquator*, theſe ſituate on the Eaſt of *China*, in 13 or 14 degrees of Northern Latitude: thoſe being onely five in number, theſe reckoned at above ten thouſand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, eſpecially in the mid-land parts; that on the ſhores ſomewhat inclining unto heat. The ſoil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for neceſſity and delight; that is to ſay, Rice, Pulſe, Wax, Honey, Sugar-Canes, many pleaſant Fruits, the faireſt Figs of all the World, plenty of Fiſh, variety of Birds and Beaſts, as well wild as tame, great ſtore of Cotton-Wooll, ſome Mines of Gold, and of other Metals great abundance.

Of all theſe Iſlands there are onely forty in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Aſia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*, becauſe diſcovered by *Legaſpi* at the inſtigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velaſco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In theſe forty Iſlands there are thought to be at leaſt a million of people, ſubject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jeſuits* unto Chriſtianity. Of theſe the principal in account are, I. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compaſs 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, ſeated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Manilla*: in which reſides the Deputy or Lieutenant-Governour for all theſe Iſlands, and the Biſhop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of thoſe Churches. It lyes between Longitude 145. and 150. and 14. and 20. North Latitude. II. *MINDANAO*, 380 Leagues in compaſs; in which are many good Towns, as 1 *Cailon*, 2 *Pavados*, 3 *Subut*, 4 *Dapiro*, and ſome others. This is one of the greateſt of the *Philippine* Iſlands, which was heretofore under the Dominion of the *Spaniards* but has now revolted from them; it is in length from *Eaſt* to *Weſt* 400 *Spaniſh* miles, and lies in Longitude, 150 and Latitude between 5 and 10. The Principal City lyes on the *South Weſt* ſide of the Iſland and is of the ſame Name. III. *TANDAIR*, more fruitful than any of the reſt, and of good extent, 160 Leagues in Circuit, more ſpecially called *Philippina* becauſe firſt diſcovered and ſo named. IV. *PALLOHAN*, as much miſtaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolemy*.

Theſe with the reſt were ſubject in former times to the Kings of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquiſhment the people fell into Civil Wars, every Man getting what he could for himſelf and the ſtronger preying on the weaker: which factions and diviſions gave great help to the *Spaniard*, in the Conqueſt of thoſe few which are under their power. Iſlands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought; and therefore furniſhed by them at their firſt Plantations with Bulls, Kine, Horſes, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reaſonably abound with. For beſides the abundance of victuals, and ſome plenty of Gold, which they find therein, the ſituation is very fit to ſubdue the reſt of the neighbouring Iſlands to ſettle the commerce betwixt *China* and *Mexico*; to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Iſlands of this Sea, and thoſe of *America*; and finally, to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometaniſm* any further Eaſtwards.

Not far from theſe, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the Weſt is another great heap of Rocks & Iſlands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furniſhed with very choice fruits, and other neceſſaries; and peopled with a ſtout and warlike breed of Men, well skilled in *Archery*, The chief whereof have the names of 1 *Lequin Major*, 2 *Lequin Minor*, 3 *Hermoſa*, 4 *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable, but that *Hermoſa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formoſa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New-Holland*; becauſe not long ſince taken, planted and ſtrongly fortified by ſome Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are thoſe called 5 *Ciumbabon*, in which is ſaid to be a *Plant-animal* or ſenſible tree. 6 *Mattan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, ſlain there in a battel with the Natives, in favour of the King of 7 *Sebat*, an adjoyning Iſland; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained: and whom by his perſwaſions he had gained to the Chriſtian Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honour of *Charles* Emperour and King of *Spain*, under whom he ſerved in this Preſent voyage. But long this miſcreant King (*Hamabar* he was called before his Baptiſm) continued not in this good opinion; treacherouſly killing *John de Sarran* chief *Pilot* of *Magellanus*'s ſmall Navy, with about 70 of his Men, and probably relapſing to his former *Gentiliſm*.

3. The Iſles of *BANDAN*.

THE Iſles of *BANDAN* are in number ſeven that is to ſay 1 *Mira*, 2 *Roſolargium*, 3 *Aii*, 4 *Rom*, 5 *Nerra*, 6 *Gannape*, the laſt of all, continually burning; and for that cauſe deſerted of its Inhabitants: 7 *Bandan*, bigger than any of the reſt, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines* in the ſeventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all theſe parts; for which cauſe never without the concourſe of foreign Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*: and of late times from theſe Northern Countries of *Europe* alſo. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermoſt part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it ſelf, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*, and over that the fruit it ſelf, as it is in Peaches, *Malacotoons*, and ſuch fruits as thoſe. *Banda* lieth in the *Southern* Latitude 5. to the *South-Eaſt*, of *Amboina*.

The People barbarous & rude, ſlothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confuſedly together without rule or order. Some of them ſtill continue in their ancient *Paganiſm*; but the greateſt part are thought to be *Mahometans*: in which *Religion* very zealous, and ſo devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly buſineſſes, till they have viſited the *Moſquits*, and done their devotions. A ſhame or pattern ſhall I ſay in this, unto many *Chriſtians*: All of them bloody and revengful, but yet ſo far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy; that they uſe to bury it with ſweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1 *Nera*, and 2 *Lontore*, joyned in a League againſt the reſt; (the quarrel riſing from the cutting down of certain trees) proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loſs of their common liberty. Subject in ſhew to the King of *Botone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own diſpoſing. They had not elſe entred into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not onely ſettle four *Factories* there; but for the ſecurity of their Trade, and to awe the Natives, they have built three Forts. They had alſo turned one of their *Moſquits* to a *Fortreſs*; whereat the people were ſo incenſed that they promiſed liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it, who falling deſperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every Man of them. The *Engliſh* Merchants have ſome trading alſo in theſe Iſlands, more acceptable than the other; becauſe not ſo inſolent, and grounding their poſſeſſion on a better title: the people of *Lantore*, voluntarily ſubmitting themſelves to the protection of King *James*, the firſt Monarch of the *Britiſh* Iſlands, and to this uſe giving poſſeſſion of their Country to Captain *Robert Hayes*, *Novem.* 24. 1620. The like done at the ſame time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Roſingen*, two other Iſlands; which, if they be not the ſame with thoſe of *Mira*, and *Roſalargium* ſpoken of before, are probably ſome leſſer Iſlands, neighbouring to *Poleron* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter:

There is not far off another Iſland, not in this account, called *Timor*, ſituate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Iſlands which lie round about it: but not elſe obſervable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES*.

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many; the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being ſaid to have Dominion over 70 Iſlands: but the *determinate* number of them I do no where find. Situate on both ſides of the *Æquator*, and conſequently of an hot and intemperate air: the ſoil ſo dry and ſpongious, that it ſucketh up the greateſt ſhower of Rain that falls amongſt them before it can paſs into the Sea. Not very well furniſhed with neceſſaries for the life of Man; but that defect ſupplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Maſtick*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of theſe Iſlands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding bloſſoms, firſt white, then green, (at which time they yield the pleaſanteſt ſmell in the world) and laſt of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature ſo extreme hot, that if a Pail of water ſhould onely ſtand in the room, in which they are cleanſed and ſorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unſpun Silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the moſt part *Idolaters*, intermixt with ſome *Mahometans* dwelling on the ſhores; and of late time with *Chriſtians* in their ſeveral *Factories*. Of ſeveral *Originals*, and different Languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedneſs. Few of them cloathed, nor much caring to hide their ſhame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modeſt and civil Nations; pity ſuch ill conditions ſhould be lodged in ſuch handſome bodies: the people being ſaid to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for ſtrength and valour not followed by any of them. About the year of Chriſt 1013 The *Chinian* Empire being then in a flouriſhing State, firſt became Maſters of theſe Iſlands, but not without blood and Treaſure: about 60 years after they were expelled by the Inhabitants of *Molucca*; after which Succeeded the *Perſians*, mixed with *Arabians* and by the latter they were called the *Molucca* Iſles. The Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* knew nothing of theſe Iſlands though they had Spices from them, brought in by the *Indian* and *Arabian* Merchants, by the Way of the Red Sea. In latter times they were brought by *Perſia* to the *Caſpian* and *Euxine* Seas, and from thence diſperſed over Chriſtendom by the *Genoueſes* and *Venetians*. After the *Turks* prevailed in *Aſia*, the Trade was again turned by the way of Grand *Cairo* and *Alexandria*. But after the *Portugueſes* by many Diſcoveries had opened their way to the *Eaſt-Indies* about the year 1512; they firſt arrived in theſe Iſlands, and cut off all Trade between the *Arabians* and theſe Iſlands, by which the *Sultan* of *Ægypt* Loſt 8000 *Ducats* by the year. The *Spaniards* firſt came hither under *Ferdinando Magelhaens* about the year 1520; whereupon enſued a conteſt between *Charles* the 5th and *John* 3d King of *Portugal*, concerning the Dominion of theſe Iſlands, and *Charles* reſigned his Right to *John* for 200000 Ducats. About the year 1579 the *Engliſh* under *Drake* began to diſturb the *Portugueſes* here. About 1599, the *Hollanders* began to ſend Numerous and ſtrong Fleets into theſe Seas; by which, and the great Wars, and changes which have ſince happened in *Spain* and *Portugal* they have intirely poſſeſſed themſelves of theſe Iſlands. The Earth in them is extremely dry and Porey like a Pumice-Stone, and drinks up not only the Rain as faſt as it falls, but all thoſe Springs and Rivers too which fall from the hills before they can reach the Sea; and in many places it ſends out fire and Smoak. The Plains are covered with ſand and Shells, ſo that except Spice it ſcarce affords any thing uſeful to the Life of Man.

Of all the Iſlands which paſs under this name, there are not above five or ſix of any reckoning: that is to ſay, 1 *Terenate*, is the chief of the 5 *Molucca*-Iſlands now in the Hands of the *Hollanders*, tho' it has a King of its own who reſides in the Town of *Malay*. The *Dutch* have ſome Forts in this Iſland to aſſure its poſſeſſion. 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Macir*, 4 *Rachian*, 5 *Machin*, and 6 *Botone*: None of them above ſix Leagues in compaſs, many not ſo much; the whole cluſter of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 Leagues in the Circumference: yet of ſuch conſequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Veſpucius*, and *Ferdinand Magellanus* the firſt employed by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, the other by *Charles* the Emperour, and King of *Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the reſt, *Machin* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; ſo hath *Botone* alſo, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently ſome title and authority over thoſe of *Bandon*, *Macir*, and *Machin*, which are ſubject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion; and ſaid to be the Lord of 70 Iſlands. This the moſt puiſſant Member of this ſcattered body; and for that cauſe moſt aimed at by all Competitors; the *Spaniards* having here one Fortreſs, and the *Hollanders* three. Both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they conſume and waſte in the wars betwixt them; but of the two the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other ſtomached and deſpiſed for their *ſordid* dealings. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory of *Chorography* of them, but that they were diſcovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles* the Fifth, who employed him in it, *Anno* 1519. and that there is in *Terenate* a Prodigious Mountain, in height above the Clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it ſeems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and dark ſmoak, it ſends forth continually. Reckoned by ſome amongſt theſe Iſlands, but howſoever neigbouring near them, are thoſe of *Polerone* and *Poolaway*; the firſt more plentiful of Cloves, the ſecond more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Kings of *England*: for *Polerone*, by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief Men of the Country, was ſurrendred into the power of King *James* I. the poſſeſſion of it being given for his Majeſty's uſe to Captain *Courtop*, *Decemb.* 23. *Anno* 1616. no other Nation at that time having any intereſt in it, or Pretenſions to it: which notwithſtanding it was not long after ſeized on by the inſolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to reſtore it upon compoſition, cut down all the *Clove-Trees*, ſo to deprive the *Engliſh* of the benefit of them. *Poolaway* made the like ſurrender at the ſame time alſo, declared by ſetting up the *Engliſh* Colours on the top of their Caſtle, giving to *Courtop* a green *turf* (whereby as by Livery and Seiſin) to take poſſeſſion of the Country, promiſing the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*; and that they ſhould ſell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to thoſe of the *Engliſh* Nation. The like done at or near the ſame time, by *Wayre* and *Roſingen*, two other Iſlands of theſe Seas; which if they be not thoſe two of *Bandon*, pointed at before, muſt needs be brought within the number of this ſcattered Company.

5. The *SINDÆ* or *SELEBES*.

NEar the *Moluccoes*, and almoſt intermingled with them, are a ſet of Iſlands which *Ptolemy* calleth *SINDÆ*; and the Moderns *SELEBES*; many in *tale*, but not above four of any *weight*; that is to ſay, 1 *SELEBES*, 2 *Gilolo*, 3 *Amboina*, 4 *Macaſſar*; of which the two firſt are ſituate under the *Æquator*, and the laſt ſomewhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolemy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; inſomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes* did uſe to ſend their condemned Perſons into theſe Iſlands, there to be devoured. Which ſaid in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lye before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the reſt, and hath under it many leſſer Iſlands, is large and rich. The ſoil thereof exceeding fertile, the People tall and comely, and of colour, not ſo much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late; governed by many Kings or petty Princes, the cauſe of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity; and for that cauſe much hated by their heatheniſh Subjects, who thereupon rebelled againſt them. It is ſituate Weſt of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Chriſtian Kings: but poſſibly not ſo called

until their converſion; the proper name thereof being *Cian.* 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terolli* in the North Parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called alſo *Batachina*, is one of thoſe Iſlands which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro.* Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*: By that account (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater then *Zeilon* it is in compaſs, tho' of leſs reputation: That being Governed by its own Princes; This ſubject for the moſt part to the King of *Terenate.* Situate Eaſt of the *Molucco's*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well ſtored with wild Hens; and on the ſhores provided of a kind of Shell-fiſh, which in taſte much reſembleth Mutton. A Tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the ſap or juice of it they compoſe a pleaſant drink, which ſerveth them inſtead of Wine. The Air intemperately hot, the people well proportioned, but rude and ſavage; ſome of them *Gentiles*, ſome *Mahometans*, of which laſt Religion is their King. The chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batachina.* (whence the new name unto the Iſland) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Æquator*, and the third of the *Sindæ* hath many Iſlands of leſs note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compaſs about five hundred miles, ſaid by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which muſt be underſtood with reference to ſome kinds of Grain. For otherwiſe it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Lemmons, Oranges, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits, and very plentiful of *Cloves*; which laſt, as it makes ſome to reckon it amongſt the *Moluccoes*; ſo may it be the reaſon why the Iſland is defective in ſuch fruits as require much moiſture: the *Clove* being of ſo hot a temper as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moiſture of the Earth, which is near unto it. This Iſland lyes Weſt of *Bandao* 24 Leagues, and very near the Line.

The people much given to Piracy, wherewith they do infeſt all the neighbouring Iſlands, defamed for *Cannibals* or Man-eaters: it being here a conſtant Cuſtom, that when their Parents are grown old, or ſick of any incurable Diſeaſe, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboina*, by the name of the Iſland. Firſt taken by the *Portugals*, and by them ſecured with a ſtrong Fortreſs: during whoſe power here, the *Jeſuits*, who had in their ſeveral Reſidences, converted many to Chriſtianity. But in the year 1605, the Iſland and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugal* Forces, poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Received by the Natives at their firſt coming with joy and Triumph: but they got little by the change, as they found ſoon after; their new Maſters being more burdenſom and inſufferable, than the old had been. For claiming it by the right of Conqueſt, they think they may oppreſs the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingroſs all trade unto themſelves as the true Proprietaries. Infamous even amongſt the rude and ſavage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity, executed upon ſome of the *Engliſh* (the greateſt Patrons under God which they have in the World) whom in the year 1618, they moſt cruelly tortured; and moſt wickedly murdered; under colour of ſome Plot to betray their Fortreſs: but in plain truth for no other reaſon but becauſe they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. Weſt of *Amboina* and South-Weſt of *Selebes*, lyeth the fourth of theſe Iſlands, called *MACASSAR*; ſaid to contain from Eaſt to Weſt 600 miles: It is extended from North to South, 200 *French* Leagues; and is 100 broad. There are in it ſix Kingdoms; *Macaſſar*, *Cion*, *Sanguin*, *Cauripana*, *Getigan and Supara.* The two principal Cities are *Macaſſar*, and *Bantachia.* The South parts of this Iſland are much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, which latter of late in 1669, have ſeverely treated the King of *Macaſſar*, whoſe Dominions lye in the South part of the Iſland, and comprehend the far greateſt part of it. This Iſland lyes between the *Moluccoes* the Eaſt, and *Borneo* to the Weſt; and is ſometimes aſcribed to the former. The Line cutteth the Northern part of it. The Inhabitants of it heretofore went naked and eat Man's-fleſh; and had all the Criminals of the *Molucco's* ſent over to them for that purpoſe, but they are now much civiliz'd. There is Gold found in the Rivers mix'd with the Sand. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 156. The heats are exceſſive in the day, but the night is cooler. The Capital City is of the ſame name, and is ſeated on the moſt Southern Point. The King is a *Mahometan*, and will not ſuffer his Subjects to turn Chriſtians; yet the *Portugueſes* in 1656 got leave to build a fair Church in *Macaſſar*; but the next year it was deſtroyed. The *Hollander* in 1658, ſent an Embaſſy to *China*, which being oppoſed by the *Jeſuits* there, they revenged this quarrel on the *Jeſuits* and *Portugueſes* in *Macaſſar* in 1660; which they effected by burning all their Ships, and forced the King to expel the *Portugueſes* out of his Dominions. This Prince's name was *Sumbaco*, who was alſo forced to give 200 Loaves of Gold to redeem the Royal Fort, which the *Dutch Fleet* had taken. It is but lately that this Prince became a *Mahometan. Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 191. Plentiful of Rice, Fleſh, Fiſh, Salt, and Cotton-Wooll; not deſtitute of Gold and Pearls, and well ſtored with *Sandar* (*Sandalum* it is called in Latine) a medicinal Wood, growing like a Nut-tree; of ſeveral colours, white, red, yellow, but red the beſt: the fruit in make like a Cherry, but of no eſteem. In ſome parts overgrown with wood, in which certain *fiery Flies* make nightly ſuch ſhining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the moſt part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coaſts with ſome *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Senderem*, the King's Seat, ſituate near a large Lake very commodiouſly for Traffick. 2. *Macaſſar*, an *Engliſh* Factory, ſo called according to the name of the Iſland.

Near to theſe Iſlands, and ſomewhat North to *Batachina*, are ſome other Iſles, plentiful of all things neceſſary for the life of Man; but inhabited by a thieviſh and Piratical people: the principal of which, 1. *Terrao*, 2. *Sanguin*, 3. *Solor*, 4. *Moratay*; in which laſt they eat *Battata* Roots inſtead of bread; beſides ſome others of leſs note. Moſt of the people *Gentiles*, except thoſe of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Chriſtian Faith, by ſome of the *Jeſuits*, hath brought many of his Subjects to the ſame Religion.

6. *BORNEO*

WEſt of theſe *Selebes*, lyeth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatneſs, than any hitherto deſcribed, in theſe *Indian* Seas. In compaſs after their account who ſpeak moſt ſparingly, 2200 miles; but as ſome ſay, no leſs than three months ſail about. Situate under the *Æquator*, which parteth the Dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus*: oppoſite on the North to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the Eaſt, to *Selebes* on the Weſt, unto the Iſle of *Sumatra.* The Inhabitants of this Iſland are ſo curious to have a lawful Heir upon the Throne, that the Husband not being certain the Children which he has by his Wife are his own, but ſhe is certain they are hers, therefore they rather chuſe to be Governed by a Woman to whom they give the Title of Queen; her Husband being only her Subject, and having no power but what ſhe gives him. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 140. In this Iſland there is a River called *Succadan*, in the Sand of which are found *Diamonds*, but the Queen will not ſuffer them to be exported. Whether this Cuſtom of being always Governed by a Queen is taken up ſince this Author wrote, or that there is more Kingdoms than he reckons in this Iſland is not known to me.

but ſome years ſince there was in our Gazette a famous controverſie mentioned between one of theſe Soveraign Queens and her Rival, who pretended to be the true Heireſs,and that the Reigning Queen was a Counterfeit;this came to a civil War, and ſeveral Battels were fought between them. It may be here obſerved, That all theſe female Kingdoms are in the hot Countries, and ſeem to be an effect of the Raging Luſt of the Men, who overvaluing the ſoft Sex not onely call them, but really make them their Miſtreſſes; whereas our furious Lovers can very hardly ſubmit to the Goddeſſes they adore for any long time: in Ancient times many parts of *Ethiopia*, and *Arabia Fœlix* were ever Governed by *Women*, ſome of which are mentioned in the Sacred Scripture.

The Country ſaid to be provided naturally of all things neceſſary; yet ſaid withal to be unfurniſhed of Aſſes, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except onely Horſes, and theſe but ſmall of ſtature neither: the greateſt riches of it being *Campbire*, *Agarick*, and ſome Mines of *Adamants*; erroneouſly conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Inſula bonæ Fortunæ*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; that being ſeated oppoſite to the outlets of *Ganges*, in the Latitude of a hundred forty five Degrees,and fifteen Minutes; this Eaſtward ſome degrees of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, and conſequently twenty Degrees diſtant at the leaſt from that Iſland in *Ptolemy*.

The people generally more white than the reſt of the *Indians*; of good wits, and approved integrity,though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two *Religions*; the King of *Borneo* and his ſubjects being all *Mahometans*, thoſe of *Laus* ſtill remaining in their ancient *Gentiliſm*. Theſe think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; aſcribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* eſpecially; whom they ſalute at his firſt riſing with great Reverence,ſaying certain Verſes. Their publick buſineſſes are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counſellers* of *State* meet, and aſcend ſome tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* riſe, and then go to the *Senate-Houſe*. The ſame Apparrel generally of both *Religions*; but thin, by reaſon of the great heat of the Air: a ſhirt of Silk; or of Calicoe, or ſome ſuch ſlight ſtuff, worn more for modeſty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo*, ſituate in the North-Weſt part of the Iſland near a goodly Bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and ſeated as that is, on *Piles*; the building ſumptuous, of hewed ſtones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town ſo large as to contain 25000 Families. 2 *Taiopura*, 3 *Tamaoratas*, 4 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 5 *Sadana*, a Factory of *Engliſh*. 6 *Lavi* on a large Bay in the South-Eaſt part of the Iſland, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 7 *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*,and directly oppoſite to *Borneo*: that being ſeated on the North-Weſt, and this on the South-Eaſt of the Iſland. Betwixt theſe two Kings is the whole divided; but ſo that he of *Borneo* hath the greateſt part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be ſpoken with, but by the mouth of ſome of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace ſerved by no other Attendants,than *Maids* or *Women*: A manifeſt token of their Effeminacy.

7. *JAVA.*

OPpoſite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Iſles of *JAVA*, two in number; both ſituate South of the *Æquator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly diſtinguiſhed into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the leſſer *Java*.

1. *JAVA MAJOR*, the More Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is ſaid to be in compaſs 2000 miles; and that by them who reckon elſewhere *Borneo* f[illegible] the biggeſt of theſe Seas. But the truth is, That the Sou[illegible] parts of this Iſland not being perfectly diſcovered, make the admeaſurement thereof to be very uncertain, Conceived moſt properly to be the *Abadiu* of *Ptolemy*, the moſt Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eighth degree of *Southern* Latitude: ſaid by him to afford much Gold and Silver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other neceſſaries; and finally, that the name did ſignifie κειθῆς νῆσον or the Iſland of Barley. All which agreeth punctually with the preſent Iſland, the word *Jabad*, ſignifying a kind of grain much like our *Barley*; and *Diu* in the *Perſian* and *Indian* Tongues ſignifying an Iſland. And ſo in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Iſland of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it,it is ſaid to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* eſpecially; fleſh of all ſorts, ſalted and ſent from hence into other Countries; great ſtore of Fowl, both wild and tame, plenty of Gold, ſome precious ſtones, and the beſt kind of Braſs; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger,Cinnamon,and ſome other Spices. In a word, ſo befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a leſſer Volume. But withal it is much expoſed to ſtorms and tempeſts, from which ſeldom free.

This Iſland lyes 200 Leagues in Length. On the *Weſt* it has *Sumatra* another Iſland, on the *Eaſt* it has ſome other ſmall Iſles; on the *South* the vaſt Ocean Plays full upon it, and on the *North* it has the Iſland of *Borneo* at the diſtance of 45 *German* miles. In the year 1331. *Odericus* a Frier minor was in this Iſland, and calls it *Java*; though he gives other names to all the other places he was in, than they now have. He ſaith it was in circuit 3000 miles, divided into 8 Kingdoms, but all ſubject to one Supreme Prince, full of People and one of the Richeſt Kingdoms in the World; the Palace Royal being paved with Bricks of Gold and Silver checquered. And that this Prince always beat the *Tartars* when they invaded him *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 45. This Frier I believe was the firſt *European* that Pierced into *India*, and came back. It is divided into 9 Kingdoms the greateſt of which is the Kingdom of *Bantam*. The whole Iſland produceth great quantities of Spice, and is on that account much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*; which laſt had heretofore only the Fort or City of *Batavia* in this Iſland, and not contented with this neither, about the year 1684 Joyning with a Son of the King of *Bantam*, who was then in Rebellion againſt his Father, upon pretence of aſſiſting of him; they Seized the City of *Bantam*, and kept the old King a Priſoner in the Caſtle of *Bantam*. But finding there were ſeveral attempts to reſtore him to his former Poſſeſſion, in the year 1686, the young King by the Advice of the *Dutch* removed his Captive Father to *Batavia*. The *Dutch* have yet left the Son to Govern the Kingdom as a vaſſal to them, they regarding nothing but the trade and City; and the *Engliſh* have errected another Factory in the other parts of the Iſland, that in *Bantam* being Seized by the *Hollanders*. It lyes between 130. and 140 Longitude, and 5 and 10 of the *Southern* Latitude.

The people of a middle ſtature,corpulent,and of broad Faces, moſt of them naked,or covered onely with a ſlight ſilken ſtuff, and that no lower than the knee; accounted the moſt *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their deſcent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careleſs of their words; to which ſo uſed, that they count it not amongſt their *Faults*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promiſe with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he anſwered, That *his tongue was not made of bone*. Cruel they are alſo ſaid to be, and implacable, if once offended: accuſtomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends; accounting no burial ſo honourable, nor obſequy ſo applauſive. This alſo a cuſtom amongſt many of the reſt of the *Indians*, and ſo hath it been ever ſince the beginning of the *Perſian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hyſtaſpes* underſtanding of this cuſtom, and withal knowing how the *Græcians* uſe to burn their dead; ſent to the *Greeks*; that it was his pleaſure they ſhould eat the bodies of their dead: But they uſed all means of perſwaſion and intreaty, not to be forced to ſo brutiſh and barbarous a cuſtom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themſelves to the faſhion of the *Græcians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impoſſible it is for a cuſtom either to be ſuddenly left off, or to ſeem undecent and inconvenient if once thoroughly ſettled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their ſeveral Kings, whereof in this Iſland there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family. Zealous in their Religion whatſoever it be, as appears by the ſad ſtory of the Daughter of the King of *Balambua*, murdered by her Husband the King of *Paſſarva*, the ſecond night after her Wedding, with all her Attendants; becauſe they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in ſome common *Principles* they agree well enough, puniſhing *Adultery* with death; in which caſe the Woman chooſeth her neareſt Kinſman for her *Executioner*: but otherwiſe ſpending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentiliſm* is the more diffuſed, becauſe moſt ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very ſwift growth, and of a great increaſe for ſo ſhort a time.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Panarucan*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1686. broke forth exceedingly, oppreſſed infinite numbers of Men, and caſt great ſtones into the City for three days together. This lyes 30 miles from *Paſſarva* to the *Eaſt*, and 45 from *Balambuan* to the North, on the Eaſt ſide of the Iſland. 2 *Jortam*, a Town of a 1000 Houſholds, the Inhabitants whereof are Gentiles, and have their Temples in the Woods: the Chief-Prieſt of whoſe ſuperſtition hath his dwelling here of great authority and power over all the Iſland. There is alſo a River of the ſame name. 3 *Ballambua*, 4 *Paſſarva*, 5 *Taban*, 6 *Matara*, This is a great City on the South-ſide of the Iſle of *Java*, one hundred Leagues from *Bantam* to the Eaſt, 120 from *Ballambuan* and only 40 from *Japara*. This is the Capital of a Kingdom of the ſame name, which is of great extent from Eaſt to Weſt, and was once the Capital City of the whole Iſland of *Java*; Longitude 135. 40 South Latitude 8. 20. 7 *Daunia*, 8 *Taggal*, 9 *Surrabea*, 10 *Gatabaon*; the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings: ſome of them alſo furniſhed with convenient Havens. 12 *BANTAM*, the ſeat alſo of a King, but of moſt trade in all the Iſland, ſeldom without the company of *Engliſh*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principal *Factory* of the *Engliſh* in all the *Indies*, though they have many beſides this. The Town unwholſomly ſeated in a mooriſh ground, and much ſubject to fire. This City is ſeated at the foot of an hill 18 Leagues from the City of *Batavia* towards the Weſt, upon a Narrow Paſſage called the ſtraights of *Bantam* and was at firſt ſubject to the Emperour of *Japar* Prince of *Java*, but rebelled againſt his Maſter and was therein upholden by the *Hollanders*, who reap the Advantage of Joyning with one of theſe Princes againſt the other, as occaſion ſerves till they can ruin both, as in effect they have ruined the King of *Bantam*. This City ſtands right over againſt the Iſland of *Sumatra*. It has a very good harbour belonging to it, called the Sound, and was much frequented by the *European* Merchants, eſpecially the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*: the Kingdom of *Jacatra* was ſubject to this Prince, and he had often made War with the *Dutch*, and had reaſonable good Succeſs in it; till about the year 1684. a Son of the King of *Bantam*, rebelling againſt his Father, called the *Dutch* to his Aſſiſtance, by which means the *Dutch* poſſeſſed themſelves of *Bantam*, Seized the *Engliſh* Factory and their effects, and made themſelves ſole Maſters of that Trade; the Controverſy between them and the *Engliſh* not being determined to this day. 12 *Sunda*, ſituate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13 *Agracan*, a convenient Port. Here was alſo in the time of *Ptolemy* a Town called 1 *Argyropolis* or the Silver-City, long ago deſtroyed. And now here is, 15 *Sura*, a new Town in the Territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by ſome of the Subjects of the King of *Paſſarva*; who being oppreſſed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a conſtant Succeſſion, adopting ſome of the other *Javans* into their *Society*, as they find their number to diminiſh.

16 *Jacatra* one of the Royal Cities of *Java* which had a King of its own when the *Engliſh* firſt came thither; the *Engliſh* took the Town from the King, burnt it and built a Fort in the place where it ſtood; but in the year 1619. the *Dutch* by treachery Surprized this Fort, cut off the *Engliſh*, and have ſince built the Capital City of their Trade in the *Eaſt-Indies* in the ſame Place and called it *Batavia*; by this means they are become the Maſters of the Iſland of *Java* to a great Degree.

Of the ſtory of this Iſland I can ſay but little. Divided into many petty and inconſiderate Kingdoms; and thoſe divided too by Mountains, croſſing the Iſland in the middle from Weſt to Eaſt, which cut off all commerce and correſpondence betwixt one another. Some of theſe Kings *Mahometans*, ſome Gentiles, as before was ſaid; all ſubject or homagers at leaſt to one of the Kings of the Gentiles, who hath his dwelling in the midſt of the Iſland. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richeſt, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greateſt Territory; whoſe Family after long war and blood-ſhed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is ſaid to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Paſſarva*. Theſe Kings much reverenced by their ſubjects, and ſo well obeyed, that whatſoever they command, is done, be it never ſo dangerous.

2. *JAVA MINOR*, ſituate on the South of the other, is ſaid to be 2000 miles in compaſs, and to be very near the firm Lands of *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not ſo much on certain knowledge as uncertain conjecture) to be of the ſame nature and condition with the greater *Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and deareſt friends; and to worſhip all day whatſoever they ſaw firſt in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, diſtinguiſhed by the names of their principal Towns. Six whereof he had ſeen, which are theſe that follow. 1 *Felech*, where the Townſmen were *Moors*, and the Peaſants *Gentiles*. 2 *Baſma*, which did acknowledge the Great *Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any *tribute*. 3 *Samara*, where none of the North-ſtars could be ſeen. 4 *Sambri*, in which ſome Men were ſaid to have tails like Dogs. 5 *Fanfur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will ſink like Iron; of which they uſe to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6 *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it uſe to eat their neareſt Kinſmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, becauſe uſed by others.

To theſe two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwiſe of ſo wateriſh and moiſt a Soil, that Men and Cattel uſe to go knee-deep when they ſow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the Eaſt the ſame *Java* the Iſland *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigneſs, ſuppoſed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Bulls*, *Buffles*, Goats, Horſes, Swine, many kind of fruits, and ſome ſtore of metals.

8. *SVMATRA.*

SVMATRA lieth on the North of the greater *Java*, betwixt it and the *Straight* of *Sincapura*, the moſt Southern Town of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. The *Straight* in that place ſo ſtraight and narrow, not above a Musket-ſhot in breadth, that ſome conceive this Iſland to have been formerly joyned unto it by ſome little *Iſthmus*; ſince worn away by the violence and working of the Sea; and that this Iſland, and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Cherſoneſe*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. More probably by far than that we ſhould run after it to the Iſle of *Japan*, ſituate on the Eaſt of *China*, ſo far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, is ſaid by ſome to be 900, by others but 700 miles, the breadth 200, and the whole compaſs 2100. Strangely affirmed by ſome Writers to be the biggeſt of all the Eaſt; who yet aſſign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Æquator*, which divideth it into two parts very near an equality: that on the North-ſide reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-ſide but to ſeven degrees from the Line it ſelf. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and a night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by conſequence muſt be very hot, but withal unwholſome: not ſo much in regard of the extreme heats, as by reaſon of the groſs vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers which are found to be in it; and the thick Woods which intercept the free courſe of a purging wind. The Soil not capable of ſuch grain as in other places, except Rice, and *Millet* (for I know not otherwiſe how to render the *Latine*, *Millium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Caſſia*, in great abundance. It affordeth alſo great plenty of Wax and Honey, ſtore of Silks and Cottons, rich Mines, not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals, but of Gold ſuch quantity, that ſome conceive this Iſland to be *Solomon*'s *Ophir*. And if *Pedrucka Siric*, one of the Kings of this Iſland, in a Letter Written to King *James* I. did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that Letter it appeareth, That all the furnitures of his houſe, and trappings of his Elephants and Horſes, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituled himſelf in his *Regal Style*. The Gold is thus found: After the Rainy Seaſon, when the Torrents are Waſted, they find veins of Gold in the Flints, which the Waters waſh down from the Mountains, which lye Towards the North-Eaſt, but it is very Courſe: Tavernier p. 2. p. 156.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years ſince, at what time by the diligence of ſome *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Iſland, *Mahometaniſm* began to ſpread upon the Coaſts. But in the In-land parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* ſtill, and ſtill retain amongſt them their old barbarous cuſtoms. The moſt loving Men unto their Enemies that were ever known; for otherwiſe they would never eat them. Having eaten, they uſe their skulls inſtead of Money, which they exchange or barter for ſuch neceſſaries, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthieſt Man amongſt them, who hath moſt of this coyn. Thoſe of the other Religion, though in moſt points and cuſtoms they agree with the reſt of the *Mahometans*, have this one ſingular to themſelves: which is, that once every year on a certain day, they go ſolemnly unto their *Moſquits* to ſee if *Mahomet* be come, leading a ſpare horſe for him to ride upon: which (miſſing him) is mounted at their coming back, by the beſt Man in the company. Of any great Progreſs that Chriſtianity hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been ſaid before, but their names I find not. Here are alſo many Mountains, and thoſe great and high; that of moſt note called *Balalvanus*, ſaid to burn continually, out of which, or not far off do ariſe two Fountains, of which the one is ſaid to run pure Oyl, and the other the beſt *Balſamum*: which I bind no Man to believe, but ſuch as have ſeen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom, beautified with the Regal Palace, to which they paſs thorough ſeven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermoſt; thoſe three continually guarded with Women expert at their weapons and uſing both Swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his Perſon. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture coſtly, the Walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask* and ſometimes with cloth of Gold. The King of this City is in League with the *Dutch*, who export from hence many rich Commodities and rich Spice. 2 *Pediar*, 3 *Pacom*, 4 *Cambar*, 5 *Menantabo*, 6 *Aura*, and 7 *Andragide*, the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings. 8 *Paſſaman*, a Town of great Trade, but ſituate in a Mooriſh and unhealthy place; found ſo experimentally by too many of the *Engliſh*, who have there their Factory. 9 *Priamon*, and 10 *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not ſo commodious in their Havens as is that of *Paſſaman*: theſe three Towns ſtanding in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the ſtory of this Country is, That the *Portugals* when they firſt came hither, found in it nine and twenty Kings; reduced ſince to a ſmaller number. For *Abraham* ſometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians*, ſubdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who ſucceeded him, being once a *Fiſherman*, and grown famous for his exploits at Sea, was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinſwomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him truſted with the protection of his Son and Heir: of whom inſtead of a Protector he became a murderer, and uſurped the State unto himſelf. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdom of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manucabo*: and almoſt all the reſt on the North part of the Iſland. In this King's time, the *Engliſh* were firſt ſettled in their Factory there: Grown old (a hundred years at the leaſt) he was impriſoned by his eldeſt Son, impatient of a longer ſtay, alledging that his age had made him unfit for Government *Anno* 1604. The name of the new King *Sultan Pedrucka Siric*, who in his Letter to King *James* I. ſpoken of before, ſtyles himſelf the ſole King of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags than truth, or elſe becauſe the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priaman*, and *Baronſe*, being conquered by him, all the reſt were become his *Tributaries*. Aſſociated with the Forces of the King of *Jor*, or *Johor*, who had married his Siſter, he beſieged *Malaca*, and diſtreſſed it; but being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his diſpleaſure upon his *Confederate*, and ſubdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (ſome other petty Prince near *Jor*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613. brought Priſoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is abſolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without *form of Law*. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no ſtranger can have *Ingreſs* into his Dominions, or free *Egreſs* out of them. Nor is admittance to his preſence granted unto any whom he firſt ſends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be ſtrong both by Sea and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120 or if need be 200 Gallies and *Frigots* fit for any ſervice, moſt of which carry *Demy-Cannon*, Culverin, Sakar, Minion, and other the like Ord'nance of Braſs: So great a Maſterof his Subjects, that in 21 daies he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues*, I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this King's Gold, I cannot but take notice of ſome Iſlands on the Weſt of *Sumatra*, called *Aureæ Inſulæ*, or the *Golden Iſlands*; the chief of which named *Andramania*, is poſſeſſed by *Canibals*, or *Man-eaters*. Oppoſite unto which on the Eaſt-ſide of this Iſland, are thoſe called *Linga*, *Binta*, and *Bintam*: which laſt is ſaid to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for ſhipping, The houſes built of Stone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even theſe ſorry Iſlands love to have a King of their own, as the far greateſt part of the Earth doth; this moſt Ancient form of Government having ſpread it ſelf with Mankind round the Globe) whoſe houſe more eminently ſeated, is more handſomely covered.

9. ZEILAN.

WEſt of *Sumatra*, ſomewhat inclining to the North, is the Iſland of *ZEILAN*, ten degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*, and near adjoyning to the Promontory in the hither *India* which *Ptolemy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only, the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the ſituation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the ancient Writers. *Ortelius* and moſt other intelligent Men of theſe latter times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator* who hath carried the *Golden Cherſoneſe* to the Iſle of *Japan*, and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which laſt I muſt confeſs he hath many Partners) will have this Iſland to be that which *Ptolemy* calls *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more Weſt than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Iſle in former times ſeems to have been joyned. This Iſland produceth Spice in great abundance, which has drawn the *Dutch* to ſettle here, and they have poſſeſſed themſelves of *Columbo* and *Negombo*, which belonged before to the *Portugueſes*. There is lately publiſh'd an exact account of this Iſland in *Engliſh*, by a Perſon who lived there many years. For *Zeilan* ſee *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 225. eſpecially for the *Cinnamon*-Tree.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, That this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, we will a little look on the ſtate of that Iſland, with reference to the times when thoſe Authors lived. By *Ptolemy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of Metals. By *Pliny*, That the Gold is purer, and the Gems rarer than any in *India*; that there were alſo Groves of Palm-trees, and great ſtore of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian*, and ſome others; watered with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, *viz.* 1 *Soana*, 2 *Azanus*, 3 *Baracus*, 4 *Gandes*, 5 *Phaſis*: the Hills in many places having a full proſpect over the adjoyning Valley; the chief of which were *Malea*, and thoſe called *Calthi*; the Vallies perpetually enriched with the choiceſt fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigneſs, and ſtored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magrammum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*, 1 *Margana*, 2 *Jogana*, 3 *Sindocanda*, 4 *Hodoca*, 5 *Nabartha*, 6 *Dogana*, 7 *Dionyſiopolis*, 8 *Bocana*, 9 *Abaratha*, 10 *Pſocurum*, 11 *Nagadiba*; and 12 *Anubingara*, have the name of Cities, 13 *Meduttum*, and 14 *Talacorum*, noted for the Towns of Traffick. 15 *Priapæ*, 16 *Mardus*, 17 *Rhizala*, 18 *Spatana*, and 19 that of the *Sun*, for commodious Havens. 20 *Anurogrammum*, being honoured with the title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is ſaid by *Ptolemy* to have been firſt called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Inſula*, and finally in his time *Salice*, and the People *Salæ*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* ſeems to be derived.

To take a view of it at the preſent, I find it ſaid to be of an *Oval* from, divided from the main Land by a narrow Channel; the Heavens refreſhing it with their Dews, the Air with a fragrant freſhneſs, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains: the Earth diverſified into lofty hills, and lowly valleys; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels; her outward Coat of the pleaſanteſt colour, ſtored with whole Woods of *Cinnamon*, beſides *Fruits*, *Lemmons*, *Oranges*, &c. bettering thoſe of *Spain*. Of *Fowls* and *Beaſts* great plenty both wild and tame: and the beſt breed of Elephants in all the World. Deſtitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which ſupplied with a pleaſant drink made of the juyce of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and ſo preſervative of life, that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word, ſo abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradiſe*, and take upon them to find out ſome of *Adam*'s footings, left for a memorial in ſome parts of it. And to confirm them in their Errour, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be ſeven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* aſcended into Heaven; for that cauſe viſited by the *Moors* or *Arabians* with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the moſt part are tall and ſtraight of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto eaſe and pleaſures; So queaſie ſtomached that the pooreſt of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they ſtretch out with *Jewels* to their very Shoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all Metals, one of them making a *Crucifix* of ſuch exquiſite workmanſhip, that it ſeemed to give life to the dead; and was ſent by the Archbiſhop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rareſt *Jewel* which had ever graced his Royal *Cabinet*. They are alſo very active, and well skilled in *Juggling*, both Men and Women, travelling thorough *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horſes*, by which they get themſelves both delight and money. In the matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, eſpecially the Natives, whom they call *Cingalas*, that live in the In-lands; the Sea-coaſts (as in other Iſlands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No Chriſtians that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of moſt repute amongſt them, 1 *Candie*, the ſeat of one of their Kings, ſuppoſed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolemy*, memorable for the *Statute* of their ſuppoſed *Adam*, moſt artificially wrought, of five or ſix Fathoms high, *Symmetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which they conceive to have amongſt them. 2 *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compaſs 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the Spires thereof ſo gilded, that when the Sun ſhines, Men are not able to look upon them. 3 *Janaſipatan* 4 *Triqui Lemale*, (ſuppoſed to be the *Tarichi* of *Ptolemy*) 5 *Batecolom*, 6 *Vilaſſem*, 7 *Tanamaca*, 8 *Laula*, 9 *Galle*, the ſeats of many of their Kings; 10 *Nagarita*, conceived to be the *Nigari*; as 11 *Agena*, the *Iogana* of *Ptolemy*; 12 *Colmuchi*, the ſeat Royal of the chief King of this Iſland, ſituate on a capacious Bay on the South-weſt of it; and of moſt trade in all this Country: many great Ships laden with Cinnamon, Gems, Elephants, and other *Indian* Commodities going yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built with the King's leave at firſt, to ſecure their trading; but ſince uſed by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compel him to pay Tribute. now Poſſeſſed by the *Hollander*.

This Country firſt diſcovered to be an Iſland by *Oneſicritus*, Admiral of *Alexander*'s Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolemy* inhabited by ſeveral Nations. The principal of which were the *Galthi*, and *Muduttæ* dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani* and *Nanigeri* in the South; the *Sindocandæ* in the Weſt, and the *Tarachi* in the Eaſt, the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi*, *Magabdi*, *Soani*, *Semni*. But little or nothing is ſaid of them in the way of ſtory, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of birds, and could ſpeak to two at once, as if double-tongued; that they were very ſtudious of Aſtrology, and worſhipped the Sun and the Hoſt of Heaven; that ſome of their Ambaſſadours coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*, *Solem à læva oriri mirati ſunt &c.* admired to ſee the Sun riſe on the wrong ſide of them; and finally, that the King was choſen by the people with reſpect had to his age and clemency; who being inthroned, appointed thirty Judges to adminiſter Juſtice to the Subject, without the Major part of whom, ſentence of Death was to paſs on no Man. In following times this Monarchy (for ſuch it was in the time of thoſe Authors) was broken into many Pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their firſt coming hither, all

Homagers or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that, this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his Barber, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while uſurped the Monarchy to himſelf. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, ſix of them (as I have ſomewhere read, but remember not where) put themſelves under the protection of the Great *Mongul*, and became his Feudataries.

Near hereunto on the Coaſts of *Malabar*, are the Iſlands which they call *Maldivæ*, many in number, but ſo called from the principal of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and well-traded Empory, where the King reſideth: Not very plentiful of neceſſaries for the uſe of Man, did not the *Palm* alone ſupply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an induſtrious and ſober people, who make themſelves long Garments of Silk or Flax, brought from other places, wherewith more modeſtly adorned than the reſt of the *Indians*: and by their Fiſhing draw up ſhells of ſuch mingled colours, that they ſerve amongſt the *Siamites* inſtead of money.

10. ISLANDS of leſs note.

BEſides theſe Iſlands repreſented to us by their ſeveral names, and ſome that have nothing but their names to take notice of; there are many thouſands of leſs note which we find in groſs: theſe *Indian* Seas being ſo prodigiouſly full of Iſlands, that it is almoſt impoſſible to believe there ſhould be ſuch multitudes; but utterly impoſſible to credit what is told of us of them: Some of the moſt remarkable of them we have touched upon, as Acceſſories or Appurtenances to ſome greater Iſlands. The reſt we ſhall preſent onely in the general Muſter, together with a taſte of ſome of thoſe ſtrange reports, with which ſome Men have fouled their Papers, and abuſed their Readers. Of the *Philippines* there are ſaid to be 11000, though but 40 of them in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over againſt *China*, is another *Frie* of them, affirmed by Mariners to be no fewer than 7448; and (as if nature had delighted to diſport her ſelf by ſowing Iſlands in theſe Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 127000, all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are ſtill groaning under the burden of Heatheniſm. Theſe *Iſlands* ſtand ſo nigh unto one another, that they ſeem onely to ſuch as are afar off, to be all but one firm Land; but whoſoever alſo paſſeth between them, may with his hands touch the Boughs of the Trees on the one ſide, and on the other. Of theſe and the other *Indian* Iſlands, Travellers relate many incredible Fables, *viz.* That there are Hogs that have two teeth growing out of their ſnouts, and as many behind their ears, of a ſpan and a half long; a Tree whoſe Weſtern part is rank poiſon; and the Eaſtern part an excellent preſervative againſt it. They tell us alſo of a Fruit, that whoſoever eateth, ſhall for the ſpace of twelve hours be out of his Wits; and of a Stone, on which whoſoever ſitteth, ſhall ſuddenly have a rupture in his body. We are told alſo, That hereabouts are taken Tortoiſes of that bigneſs that ten Men might ſit and dine within one of the ſhells; and that there is a Tree, which all the day-time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-ſet, is full of them. All huge and monſtrous lyes, and not fit for credit. *Galuano* reporteth alſo, That in ſome of theſe Iſlands there is a Fruit, of which if a Woman that is with child eat, her Child will preſently move; that there is a River plentifully ſtored with Fiſh, whoſe water is yet ſo hot, that it doth immediately ſcald off any skin of the Beaſt that is caſt into it; that ſome of the Men have tails; and moſt of their Swine horns; that they have Oyſters which they call braſs, the ſhells whereof are of ſo large compaſs, that they Chriſten Children in them; that in the Sea there are ſtones which grow and increaſe like Fiſh, of which the beſt Lime is made: that there is a bird called *Monicodiata*, which having no feet is in a continual motion; and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs and hatch her young ones. I bid no Man to believe theſe Relations: for my part I ſay with *Horace*,

> *Quodcunque oſtendis mihi ſic, incredulus odi.*
> Whatever thus thou tell'ſt me, I
> Will always hate it as a lye.

And ſo much for theſe EASTERN ISLANDS.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

IN *the firſt place the Reader is to be advertiſed that Fol. I have adventured to prove the* Aalmatha *of* Ptolemy *to be the* Chamath, *or* Hamath-Sobab, *of the Holy Scriptures; The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will eaſily find out the ſcope and meaning. Yet if this ſhall not be approved of, I ſhould then think it to be that* Elam *or* Helam *where* David *diſcomfited the Army of the* Meſopotamians; *mention whereof is made* 2 Sam. 10. 16, 17. *In the next place he is to know, that Fol. within the compaſs of five lines, the Victory which* Aſa *King of* Judah *obtained againſt the numerons Army of Æthiopians, is twice repeated: in the firſt place aſcribed to* Jethir, *in the next to* Mareſha, *(though the other alſo have good Authors) let that of* Jethir *be ſupplied in this manner following.* 5. Jethit *or* Jetthir, *in the North Border of this Tribe towards* Eleutheropolis: *a City anciently of the* Levites, *in St.* Hierom*'s time called by the name of* Jethira, *and then repleniſhed altogether with* Chriſtians: *now nothing but the name remaining.* 6. Mareſa, *&c. And finally, whereas* Ajalon *p. is placed in the Tribe of* Ephraim, *and p. in the Tribe of* Dan; *the reaſon is, becauſe being ſituate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by ſome Writers aſcribed to* Dan, *and by others to* Ephraim. *The like alſo may be ſaid of* Michpas, *mentioned alſo in two Tribes according as it is diſpoſed of by ſeveral Authors.*

A
TABLE
Of the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the Chief *Towns* and *Cities* Mentioned in this Book.

	Long.	Lat.
A		
Achem	132.30	3.40
Aden	82.0	13 50
Agra	118 10	44.0
Aleppo	72.30	38.0
Amboina	162.50	4.20*A*
Amedabat	169.50	23.10
Antioch	72.30	39.0
Apamea	61.30	43.40
Arachan	129.10	10.24
Ardovat	140.50	25.0
Arminig	76.	44
Avaa	142.30	27.50
Amaſtro	66.30	44.30
B		
Babylon	82.20	33.0
Baccu	88.50	42.
Balſora	82.40	31.10
Banda	164.0	4.50*A*
Baticalla	111.30	12.40
Bengala	125.10	21.20
Bethlehem	65.45	31.50
Biſnagar	114.20	14.10
Bulgar	88.30	54.46
C		
Cabul	212.20	31.0
Candu	137.30	47.40
Calecut	112.40	10.30
Cambalu	161.10	51.40
Camboia	342.20	11.40
Campion	148.0	57.30
Cananor	112.50	11.0
Candahor	110.40	33.40
Capha	68.50	48.0
Calamines	149.0	9.0
Cauchin-China	140.30	20.0
Cranganor	113.0	9.40
Ceraſo	73.0	44.40
Choromandel	115.20	22.30
Cheſmur	115.10	3.0
Chianfu	147.30	27.30
Chirman	98.30	27.30
Cincapura	136.43	1.20
Cochin	114.0	9.40
Colmucho	117.30	6.40
Comori	115.10	7.20
Coulan	114.30	7.10
Cantan	149.	25.
Chaul	109.40	17.30
D		
Damaſcus	74.30	35.0
Decan	113.20	44.0
Delly	114.0	19.10
Derbent	84.53	42.20
Diu	108.0	20.30
Dornate	137.50	7,50
E		
Epheſus	60.30	39.40
Eres	87.40	40.50
Ergimul	150.0	58.20
F		
Famaguſta	69.20	30.30
Faſſo	57.50	45.40
G		
Gabara	80.50	30.10
Gaza	70.50	29.10
Geſt	107.30	20.30
Gilolo	161.30	1.10
Goa	112.20	14.30
H		
Heri	99.53	30.0
Hormar	165.25	35.10
Hieruſalem	72.20	33.0
I		
Jeſdi	94.40	32.0
Indio	105.40	38.0
Jericho	73.	33.0
Joppa	71.30	34.0
Iſtigias	110.30	39.40
L		
Laquin Major	165.0	28.0
Liompo	160.20	34.40
Lop	134.20	53.0
M		
Macao	140.10	23.20
Mathan	160.40	0.30

Matin

	Long.	Lat
Macin	85. 30	25. 50
Malaca	136. 30	2. 50
Maldiva	113. 0	3. 0
Malsapar	118. 0	13. 20
Mamora	155. 40	0. 40
Mandao	121. 0	25. 0
Mangaler	112. 0	11. 30
Martavan,	134. 30	17. 10
Meccha	73. 30	25. 0
Medina Talnabi	73. 0	27. 30
Meaco	170. 30	37. 0
Mindanas	160. 40	7. 0
Moltan	114. 20	24. 30
Multan	109. 50	29. 20
Mongul	159. 29	60. 40
Muſbal	84. 0	34. 50
N		
Nagulan	97. 0	53. 30
Naim	94. 10	33. 40
Neyman	140. 0	65. 10
Narſinga	119. 0	18. 0
Nazareth	72. 40	34. 10
Nicomedis	63. 10	44. 20
Niſabul	102. 10	38. 40
Nice	57. 41	40.
Nineve	82. 36	60.
O		
Odia	138. 30	12. 0
Onor	111. 40	19. 10
Orixa	118. 40	20. 40
Ormus	91. 20	27. 30
Oxiana	107. 41	20.
P		
Pacem	132. 0	4. 0
Pedir	131. 10	4. 0
Pegu	135. 0	20. 10
Ptolemais	66. 40	29. 40
Perſepolis	90. 40	30. 40
Patane	138. 10	6. 50
Q		
Quaiſfu	144. 40	42. 30
Quinſa	153. 0	40. 0
R		
Rhabana	196. 30	47. 0

	Long.	Lat.
Rhodes	61. 40	37. 20
Rages	79. 10	28. 0
Regis	82. 10	36. 0
S		
Sableſtan	114. 0	30. 0
Sarmachan	130. 0	47. 0
Samaria	72. 20	33. 40
Sciro	57. 30	41. 10
Siam	139. 10	14. 30
Sidon	72. 10	36. 30
Sind	109. 30	27. 0
Siras	90. 40	30. 40
Smyrna	60. 20	40. 30
Sigeſtan	205. 0	31. 0
Sultania	92. 40	37. 20
Succuit	143. 10	56. 0
Sunda	138. 86	40. *A*
Suſis	73. 40	48.
Scarpanto	62. 10	36. 0
T		
Tangu	152. 0	63. 0
Talcan	85. 0	47. 0
Tarnaſſur	119. 40	17. 10
Tarſus	71. 20	40. 0
Tauris	90. 30	38. 10
Tenduc	168. 30	67. 30
Thebet	138. 50	44. 0
Trapezond	74. 30	44. 4
Tripolis	72. 20	37. 0
Troy	59. 0	42. 30
Tyre	72. 10	38. 3
Tidore	160. 40	0.
V		
Van	86. 30	36. 50
Varma	130. 20	20. 10
X		
Xandu	168. 40	55. 40
Xara	130. 0	17. 0
Z		
Zagaſpi	101. 20	42. 30
Zama	74. 40	11. 40
Zibit	70. 0	22. 20

The End of the Third Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AFRICA:
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

Ultra hos (Æthiopes) *monſtroſæ gentium facies: Aliæ ſine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta ora ſunt modicoque tantùm foramine calamis avenarum paſtus hauriunt: Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem ſermonis utentes nutibus, manibuſque.*

PTOLEM. GEOG. lib. I. cap. 5.

Conſtat per ipſas temporum traditiones, quaſdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam perveniſſe: quaſdam verò non tales, ac fertur, eſſe, &c. neceſſe ergo eſt ut ibi noviſſimis temporis noſtri traditionibus penitùs quaſi adhæreamus.

LONDON:
Printed in the year 1702.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AFRICA:
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

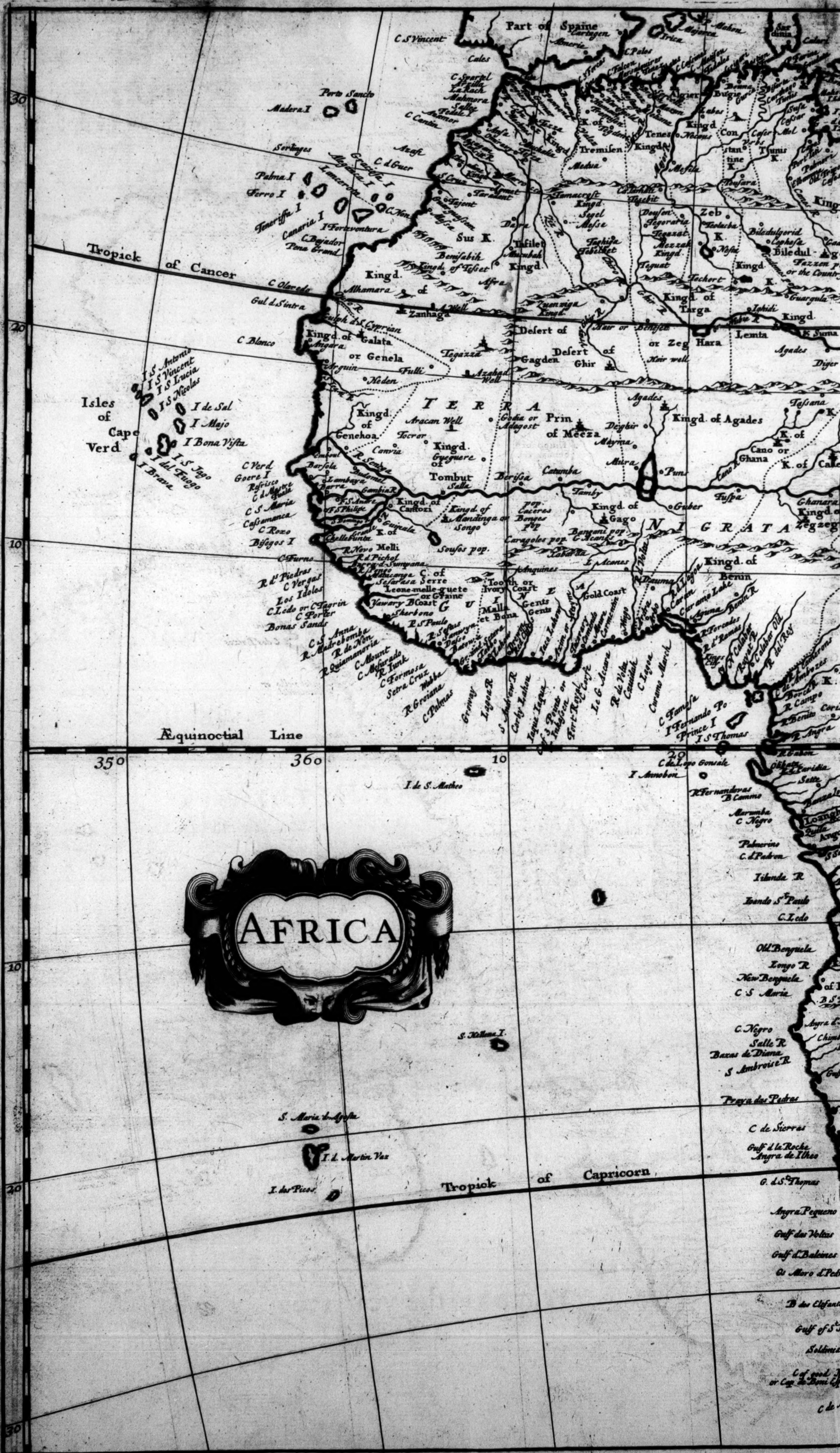
C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

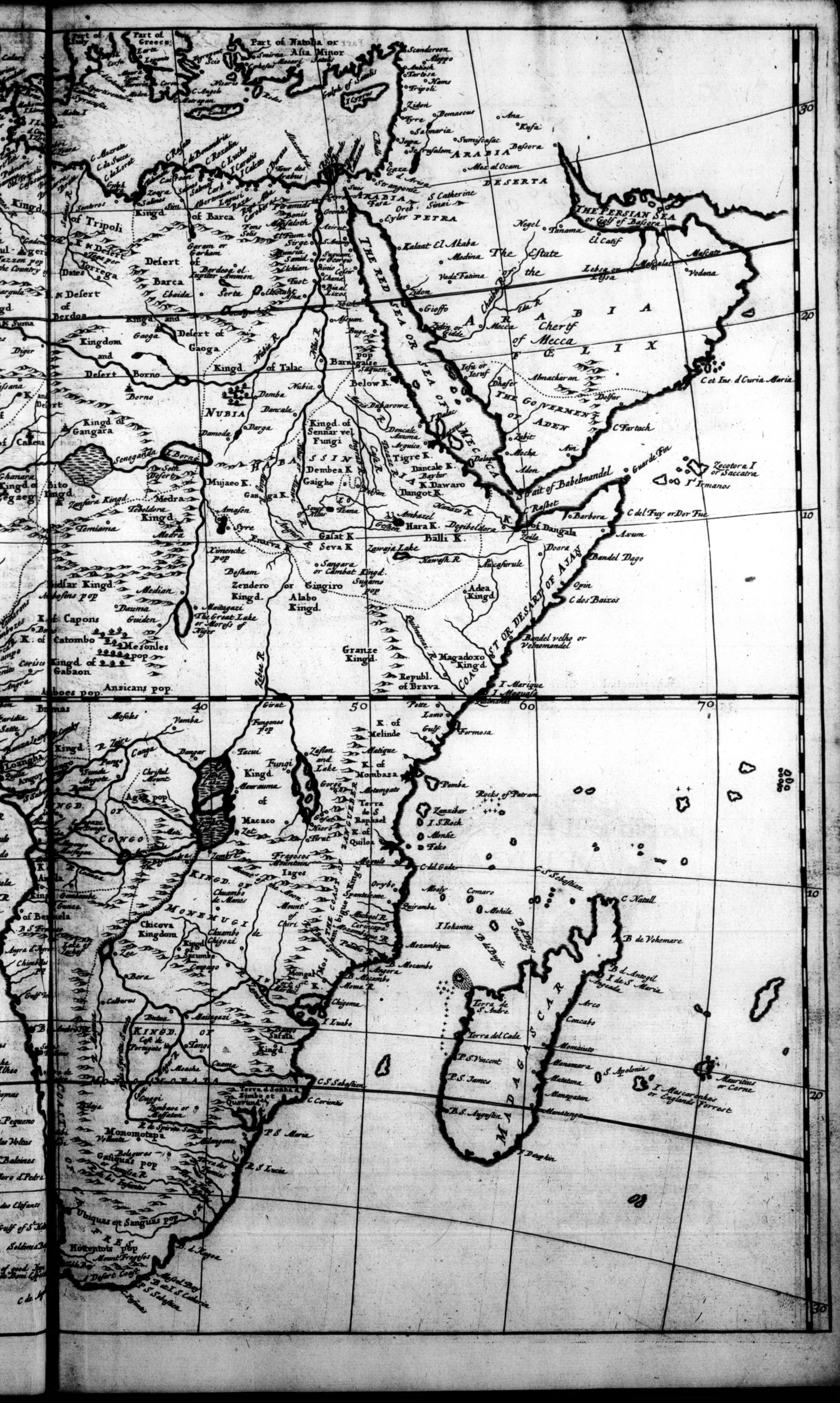
Ultra hos (Æthiopes) monſtroſæ gentium facies: Aliæ ſine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent vultus: Aliis concreta ora ſunt modicoque tantùm foramine calamis avenarum potus hauriunt: Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem ſermonis utentes nutibus, motibuſque.

PTOLEM. GEOG. lib. 1. cap. 5.

Conſtat per ipſas temporum traditiones, quaſdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam perveniſſe: quaſdam verò non tales, ac feruntur, eſſe, &c. neceſſe ergo eſt ut ubi noviſſimis temporis noſtri traditionibus penitùs quaſi adhæreamus.

LONDON:
Printed in the year 1702.


AFRICA
Part of Spaine
Cartagen
Almeria
C. S. Vincent
Cales
C. Palos
C. Spartel
Mahmora
Sallee
C. Cantin
Porto Sancto
Madera I
Sorlinges
Azafi
C. d Guer
Gratiosa I
Alegranza I
Lanzerota
Palma I
Ferro I
Teneriffa I
Canaria I
C. Non
I. Forteventura
C. Bojador
Pena Grand
Tropick of Cancer
C. Olcrede
Gul. d. Sintra
C. Blanco
Fez
Tremisen
Kingd.
Tenes
Algier
Bugie
Con stan tine K.
Tunis K.
Mesila
Taradant
Sus K.
Dara
Tafilet
Tegorarin
Tegazat
Mezzab Kingd.
Teguat
Zeb K.
Biledulgerid
Fazzen
Kingd. of Tesset
Kingd. Zanhaga
Kingd. of Galata or Genela
Kingd. of Angara
Tegazza
Azahad Well
Desert of Gagden
Desert of Ghir
Kingd. of Targa
Hara
Lemta
Agades
Kingd. of Agades
Arguin
Hoden
Fulli
TERRA NIGRATA
Aracan Well
Kingd. of Genehoa
Tocror
Canvia
Kingd. Gueguere of Tombut
Prin of Mecza
Berissa
Catumba
Guber
Kingd. of Gago
Pun
Kingd. of Mandinga or Songo
Kingd. of Cantozi
Isles of Cape Verd
I. S. Antonio
I. S. Vincent
I. S. Lucia
I. S. Nicolas
I. de Sal
I. Majo
I. Bona Vista
I. S. Jago
I. del Fuego
I. Brava
C. Verd
Goere I
Rifrisco
C. S. Maria
Casamanca
C. Rozo
Bisegos I
C. Furno
Rio de Piedras
C. Verga
Los Idolos
C. Ledo or C. Tagrin
C. Porter
Bonas Sands
C. S. Anna
R. Madrebomba
R. de Non
R. Quiamanoria
C. Mount
C. Mesurado
R. Iunk
C. Formosa
Setra Cruz
Wabba
R. Groiana
C. Palmas
Sierra Leone
Melli
Tooth or Ivory Coast
Gold Coast
GUINEA
Kingd. of Benin
Ardra
R. Forcados
R. d Ramos
R. del Rey
Calabar
I. Fernando Po
Prince I
I. S. Thomas
Æquinoctial Line
35°
36°
10
20
30
I. de S. Matheo
I. Annobon
C. de Lopo Gonsalo
R. Gabon
Loango
Angola
C. Negro
Palmerino
C. d Padron
Ilanda R.
Ioando S. Paulo
C. Ledo
Old Benguela
Longo R.
New Benguela
C. S. Maria
C. Negro
Salle R.
Baxas de Diana
S. Ambroise R.
S. Helena I.
Praya das Pedras
C. de Sierras
Gulf d la Roche
Angra de Ilheo
S. Maria de Agosta
I. d. Martin Vaz
I. dos Picos
Tropick of Capricorn
G. d S. Thomas
Angra Pequeno
Gulf das Voltas
Gulf d Baleines
B. dos Elefantes
Gulf of S. Helena
Saldania
C. of good Hope or Cap. de Boni Esp.


Part of Natolia or Asia Minor
Part of Greece
Smirna
Scio
Rodes
Cyprus
Gulph of Satalia
Scanderoon
Aleppo
Antioch
Tortosa
Hams
Tripoli
Zidon
Tyre
Damascus
Samaria
Joppa
Jerusalem
Gaza
Ana
Kufa
Sumisfasac
Basora
ARABIA
DESERTA
Mox al Ocam
Tour des Arabes
Strangonte
ARABIA PETRA
S Catherine
Oreb Sinai
Suez
Cylor
THE PERSIAN SEA or Gulf of Basora
Negel
Tanama
El Catif
Mascate
Vodana
Lebsa or Lasa
Mosgalat
Kalaat El Akaba
Medina
The Estate of the
Cherif of Mecca
Vadi Fatima
Zidon
Gioffo
Zidin or Gidde
Mecca
ARABIA FELIX
Iesu or Iesuf
Dhafer
Almacharon
THE GOVERMENT OF ADEN
Dolfar
C Fartach
Zabit
Mocha
Adon
Aiu
C et Ins. d Curia Maria
THE RED SEA OR SEA OF MECCA
Dalaca
Strait of Babelmandel
Guarde Fin
Zocotora I or Saccatra
Is Irmanos
C del Fuy or Dor Fui
Rasbet
Barbora
Dangala
Zeila
Axum
Doara
Bandel Dago
Opin
C dos Baixos
COAST OR DESART OF AJAN
Bandel velho or Velhomandel
Magadoxo Kingd
Republ. of Brava
I Marigue
I Manuata
Quilmanci
Kingd of Tripoli
Desert of Barca
Kingd of Barca
Desert of Berdoa
Kingd and Desert of Gaoga
Kingdom and Desert Borno
Borno
Kingd of Talac
Nubia R
Nile R
Barnagasse
Saquen
Below K.
Nubia
Dakarowa
Kingd. of Sennar vel Fungi
Dembea K
Gaighe
Tigre K.
Dancale K.
K. Dawaro
Dangot K.
Amhazel
Hara K.
Balli K.
Gasat K
Seva K
Zawaja Lake
Nawesh R
Sangara or Cambat Kingd.
Gingiro
Alabo Kingd.
Adea Kingd
NUBIA
Demba
Dancala
Darga
Damoda
Kingd of Gangara
Senegand
Dr Born
Mujaeo K.
Medra Kingd.
Amasen
Syre
Zendero Kingd.
Median
Bisham
Maitagazi
The Great Lake or Morass of Niger
Kingd of Gabaon
Catombo
Mesonles pop
Anzicans pop
Granze Kingd.
Zebee R
40
50
60
70
30
20
10
Girat
Fungenes pop
Vamba
Dongar
Tacui
Fungi Kingd
Mauruma of Macaco
Zaflan Lake
K. of Melinde
Matique
K. of Mombaza
Patte
Lamo
Formosa
Pemba
Zanzibar
I. S. Rock
Monfie
Rocks of Patram
Terra de S Raphael
K. of Quiloa
C del Gado
Mosely
Comaro
Mohila
I Johanna
Quiramba
Mozambique
Mocambo
Angora
Moma R
Chigoma
I Luabo
C S Sebastian
C Natall
B de Vohemare
B d. Antogil
I de S Maria
Arco
Concabo
Terra de S. Andre
Terra del Cada
P. S. Vincent
P. S. James
B. S. Augustin
MADAGASCAR
Manamara
Matatana
Mansiatan
Manstonga
I Dauphin
S. Apolonia
Mauritius or Cerne
I. Mascarenhas or Englands Forrest
Congo
Loango
Angoy
KINGD. OF CONGO
Christal Mount
KINGD. OF CHUAMBO de Manes
MONEMUGI
Chicova Kingdom
Chuambo Chigozi
Kingd of Sacumbe
Fragosos Mountains
Iages
Mount of Chiri
THE COAST OF ZANGUEBAR
KINGD. OF Cost de Portugues
Monomotapa
Mount Fragosos
Zimbaoe or Massapa
Sabia
Sofala Kingd.
C. Corientes
P S Maria
R S Lucia
Hottentots pop
Ubiquas et Sanguas pop
B. d. Lagoa
CAFRES
Gulf of S Helena
Soldania B
C de good Hope
B. de Bon Esperance
Mossel Bay
P S Sebastian
C das Agulhas
Desert Coast
Kingd of Bengela
B S Felipe
Angra d Angra
Gulf of

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY

OF

AFRICK.

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

OF *AFRICK*.

A*FRICK* is bounded on the Eaſt by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Aſia*; on the Weſt by the main *Atlantick* Ocean, interpoſing betwixt it and *America*; on the North by the *Mediterranean* Sea, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*: and on the South, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean, ſeparating it from *Terra Auſtralis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the reſt of the World, except *Aſia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Iſthmus*, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great deſign which *Cleopatra* the laſt Queen of *Ægypt* had upon it, which in brief was this. When *Mark Anthony* was encountered by *Auguſtus* in the Naval Battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the ſucceſs, fled through the midſt of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her Guard. Being come to the North part of this *Iſthmus*, ſhe gathered together all her portable Treaſures, and intended to hoiſt her Shipping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*, from whence ſhe had purpoſed to take Sail, and together with her Sweet-heart *Anthony*, and ſome other choiceſt Friends, to ſeek out ſome other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*. But from this, *Anthony* who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at laſt diſſwade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reverſed; the *Baſis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Straight of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Aſia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian* Miles, the *Conus* of it very narrow. But from the *Conus* or *Pyris* to the moſt Northern part of the *Baſis*, it extendeth it ſelf the ſpace of 4155 Miles, being much leſs than *Aſia*, and far bigger than *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called moſt commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Ethiopians*, *Alkebulam*; by the *Indians*, *Beſecath*. But the moſt noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Joſephus* out of *Cleodenus* and *Polyhiſtor* deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher* one of the Nephews of *Abraham* by *Midian* the Son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians* (by whom it is called *Iſrechea*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, ſignifying *to divide*; becauſe more viſibly divided both from their own Country, and the reſt of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the *Greek* Fablers fetch it from one *Afer*, a companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*. Some fetch it out of *Aphar* an *Hebrew* word, ſignifying *Duſt*, agreeable to its ſandy and duſty Soil. *Feſtus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privativum*, and the Greek word φρίκη, which imports a country void of cold, as ſuitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is ſaid to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn, which mollified into *Feric*, came at laſt to *Africa*, that is to ſay, a *Country plentiful in Corn*. Which Etymology of his may receive ſome countenance from that great plenty of Corn which was bred in this Country: eſpecially in thoſe parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the *Hebrew Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I ſhould prefer the *Etymon* of *Feſtus* before any other, unleſs we might be ſure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we ſhould ſeek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in ſome elder Writers, i. e. *Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eſchatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonia*, *Heſperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps ſome others, it is enough to our deſign to take notice of them.

It is ſituate for the moſt part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* croſſing it almoſt in the very midſt: and for that cauſe ſuppoſed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with ſuch ſtrange people, as hardly did deſerve to be counted Men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, gueſſing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by ſuch ſtrange Brutes as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2. The *Sciapodæ*, who with the ſhadow of their foot could and did hide themſelves from the heat of the Sun; 3 The *Gamoſaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the uſe of Weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the ſight of Men; 4. The *Blemyæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Breaſts; 5. The *Æripani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be Men, but the ſhape and making of their bodies. Theſe people (as they thought) poſſeſſed ſome ſmall portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the reſt they knew not, or conceived to the unhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late diſcoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in moſt parts to be well inhabited, and the coolneſs of the nights, the miſts, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

Quodque die Solis vehementi excanduit æſtu,
Humida nox reficit, paribuſque refrigerat horis.

That is to ſay,
What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,
And doth as much refreſh with moiſt'ning Dews.

For notwithſtanding that it be in ſome places full of ſandy deſarts, a diſeaſe incident to ſome parts of *Arabia*, *Perſia* and other Countries of a more Northerly ſituation: yet it is ſaid by ſome, who ſpeak it upon knowledge, that the greateſt part of thoſe Regions which lie under the Line, or near it, (both in *America* and here) have ſo many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, ſuch abundance of Cedars, and other ſtately Trees of ſhade, ſo many ſorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with bloſſoms; as may make them hold compariſon with any others, ſuppoſed to be of a more temperate ſituation.

But as was ſaid before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore ſpoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-ſay. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* imployed by that State, diſcovered much of the Weſtern Shores of this great *Peninſula*, yet he ventured not ſo much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either ſuppreſſed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to purſue thoſe Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but ſince tranſlated into *Greek*, and publiſhed at *Baſil* by *Sigiſmund Gelenius Anno* 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that ſome *Phænicians* in the days of *Pharaoh Necho*, paſſing down the *Red-Sea*, ſhould ſail about the Coaſts of *Africk* to the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and ſo return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what thoſe Ages diſbelieved or eſteemed impoſſible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, ſince firſt performed by *Vaſquez de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1647 being 80 years after or thereabout, from the time that the *Portugals* firſt attempted the diſcovery and circumnavigation of the Coaſts of *Africk*, which at the laſt, to the no ſmall glory of their Nation, was accompliſhed by them. For ſo it happened, that having extended their Dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coaſt and fit for Shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors* that dwelt in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their beſt Towns which lay along upon the Shores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good ſucceſs, *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, reſolved to ſpend his purſe and credit upon new diſcoveries. And to that purpoſe, having had ſome conference with ſome Perſons of knowledge and experience in Coſmography, he draweth together the beſt Men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means, and his own good fortune, he firſt diſcovers the Iſle of *Madera*, *An.* 1420. This Iſland lyes on the Weſtern Shore of *Africa* called *Madeira* by the *Partugueſes* of old *Cene Atlantica*. This Iſland being in the Latitude of 32 was firſt found by an Engliſh-man, whoſe name was *Macham* in the year 1344. This Man was left here by the Ship with a few Men and in an open boat, made of one Tree arrived in *Barbary* and was by the *Moors* preſented to *Peter* the Fourth King of *Arragon* as a Wonder. In 1395 *Henry* King of *Caſtile* ſent ſome Ships the Second time to find out this Iſland, and the *Canaries*, which, it ſeems Succeeded; for in 1417. *Moſnier Reuben de Bracamont* a *French* Gentleman, was ſent to Conquer *Canaria*. *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 2. p. 1. Its Latitude is 32. T. 2. p. 2. p. 7. Its principal City is called *Funchal*, which is a Biſhop's See, and has a fair harbour for Ships, with a Strong Fort. This Iſland yields plenty of Wine, and Sugars which are tranſported abroad, and *Peaches*, *Melons*, *Oranges*, *Lemmons*, *Pomegranates*, *Citrons*, *Figs* and Garden-Herbs; but it yields little Corn, which is brought for the moſt part, from *France* or *Tenerif*. It is in Circuit about 30 Leagues. 16. p. 7. *Madera* from *Palma*, one of the *Canaries* is 57 Leagues to the South-Eaſt. It was diſcovered by the *Portugueſes* in the year 1419.and called by this name, from its plenty of Wood. Its Length is 25 Leagues, its Circuit 60. The principal Town is *Funchal*. It lyes in 32 Degrees Latitude and Longitude 360. It is prodigiouſly fruitful, but eſpecially in Sugar, and *Mather*, a dying Stuff, and Wines, the Slips whereof were brought from Candy. The birds were at firſt ſo Ignorant, as to ſuffer themſelves to be taken up, but have ſince learned to fear Mankind. It has plenty of water, and of all other things needful for the Life of Man. Though an *Engliſh*-man is ſaid to have firſt Landed here in the year 1344. yet the *Portugueſes* were the firſt that peopled this Iſland and ſtill poſſeſs it: when they firſt found it, it was one great Wood, and to clear it they put fire to it,which raged, ſo horribly at firſt, that they were forc'd to go to Sea to avoid its fury; but then the Aſhes contributed exceedingly to its Fertility, but that is long ſince fail'd and is now returned to its Natural ſtrength, which is ſufficient to maintain a vaſt number of Inhabitants. *Funchal* is an Archbiſhop's See and the reſidence of the Governour. This is the greateſt Iſland in the *Atlantick* Ocean, ſaith Mr. *Pory*, as being in compaſs 160 Miles: beſides Plenty of Springs, it has 8 ſmall Rivers which make it as fruitful and pleaſant as a Garden, and every thing it produceth is extraordinary good in its kind. But its Principal Commodities are Sugars, Wines and Cedar-cheſts. The Biſhop of *Funchal* had a Revenue of 8000 *Ducats*. The Iſle of *Holy Port*, *Anno* 1428. The Iſlands of *Cape Verd*, *Anno* 1440. Theſe Iſlands are the moſt Weſtern part of *Africa* in 14 Degrees of Latitude. This Cape is called by *Ptolemy Arſinarium*, and is one of the moſt famous Head-Lands in *Africa*; it is imbraced by the Branches of the Niger; the South branch is called *Gambra*, *Gambea*, and the North Branch *Senega*, *Sanega*, *Pory* p. 43. Juſt upon this Cape is a knot of Seven ſmall Iſlands utterly deſtitute of Inhabitants and called the *Barbacene*; for the greater Iſlands ſee the Iſlands of *Cape Verde*. This *Cape* was firſt diſcovered by *Alovis de Cadomoſta*, a *Venetian* for the *Portugueſes* in 1455.They are 9 in number the greateſt St. *Jago* is 70 miles Long, the *Portugueſes* have built a Town upon it by a pleaſant River which contains 500 families. The Maritime parts of the Land of*Guinea Anno* 1452. This is a large Country upon the Shores of the Ocean, between *Maguleta* to the Weſt, from which it is ſeparated by the *Cape* of *Palmes* and the Kingdom of *Ben* to the Eaſt, from which it is divided by the River *de la Volta* and it is divided into *La coſte d'or* which lyes Eaſt between the Rivers *Aſien*, by which it is parted from the former: on the *Coſte d'or* are many Caſtles belonging to the *Engliſh*, *Sweeds*, *Danes*, and *Hollanders*; this Country was diſcovered in the year 1365 by the *French* as is pretended. *Baudrand.* But in the diſmal Wars between the *Engliſh* and *French* under *Charles* VI. and VII. they were forced to omit the Proſecution of this Navigation. *Hoffman.* But it is much more probable and better *Atteſted*, that it was diſcovered in the year 1452 or 1475. by *Henry Duke* of *Viſeo* as above. But then the *Spaniards* in 1477 purſued this diſcovery and till 1479 excluded the firſt diſcoverer. In 1482 *John* II King of *Portugal* ſent Ambaſſadours to *Edward* the IV King of *England* to deſire, That a Fleet prepared by *John Tintam* and *William Fabian* 2 *Engliſh* Men to trade to *Guinea* might be Stopp'd and not ſuffered to paſs. *Hackluit.* T. 2. p. 2. p. 2. They regaining the trade in the Iſland of St. *George* built the ſtrong Town or Fort of *Mina* in 1486. to Secure their Trade there for the future, and to command all the reſt of this Coaſt; and this was the firſt place built by the *Europeans* on this Coaſt; theſe Countries ſeem to be thoſe which the *Nubian Geographer* p. 8. 9. calls *Lamlem*. Which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to thoſe great diſcoveries which after followed; that glorious Prince deceaſed in a good old age, *Anno.* 1463. leaving this Character behind him, That he was the firſt that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; diſcontinued after his deceaſe above 20 years, it was reſumed again by King *John* the ſecond of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con Anno* 1486. diſcovered the Realms of *Angola* and *Congo*, with the Iſle of St. *George*, and thereupon reſolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compaſſing the whole Coaſt of *Africk*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*; in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diez*, who paſſing beyond *Cape Verd*, diſcovered firſt the *Princes* Iſland, and ſailing from thence Southward to the furtheſt Promontory (ſince called the *Cape of good Hope*) returned home again; either diſcouraged by croſs Winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableneſs of his Mariners, or by all together. The Man to whom the honour of this Enterpriſe was reſerved, was that *Vaſquez de Gama* above-mentioned, employed in this ſervice by King *Emanuel*, *Anno* 1597. who having in his way diſcovered the Iſlands of St. *James*, and St. *Helen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diez* durſt not paſs, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena Eſperanza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*; becauſe of the good hope it gave him of finding the deſired way to the Trade of *India*: and having ſo doubled this *Cape*, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his courſe on towards the North, till he diſcovered the Countries of *Quiloa*, *Moſambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which laſt he contracted an eſpecial friendſhip, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Calicut* in *Eaſt-India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour he returned to *Lisbon*, *Anno* 1500. The deſign followed the next year by *Alvarez Caprale*, furniſhed with 12 ſhips and 1500 Soldiers; but he being caſt upon the Coaſts of *Braſil*, and diverting wholly in a manner on the diſcovery of that large Country, it was purſued the next year with greater ſtrength, by *Vaſquez*, and his Brother *Stephen*; afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation; and finally by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and Merchants almoſt of every Country, which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better inſtructed in the particulars of it than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire, and ſome parts adjoyning upon *Egypt*, more than the ſtrange beaſts and more ſtrange reports which they had from hence; occaſioning hereby the By-word, *Africa ſemper aliquid apportat novi.*

Touching the ſtate of Chriſtianity in this great Continent, it is very weak; moſt of thoſe Regions which Chriſtian Religion had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometaniſm* having ſince regained from Chriſtianity: Inſomuch that not only the North part of *Africk* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Goſpel once ſo exceedingly flouriſhed, that three hundred Catholick Biſhops were at one time baniſhed thence by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*; is at this preſent utterly void of Chriſtians, (except ſome few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*:) but even in all this vaſt Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely Chriſtian, but the Kingdom of *Habaſſia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the Chriſtians are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and ſome few Towns upon thoſe Coaſts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have thoſe Nations gotten by our late diſcoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godlineſs*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or diſperſed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly ſo called, *Egyptians*, *Habaſſines*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and ſome *European* Chriſtians only in their Forts and Garriſons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns where Trading is ſtirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coaſts bordering on the Red-Sea; but wandering in great hords or companies all about the Country with their Wives and Children: the *Habaſſines* and *Egyptians* in their ſeveral Kingdoms: The *Africans* again ſubdivided into *Moors* and *Caferes*; of whom the *Moors*, are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Caferes* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, not diſcovered anciently in their wonted *Gentiliſm*. Accordingly, the Languages herein ſpoken are different alſo. 1. The *Portugal* or *Spaniſh* being uſed by the *Europeans*; 2. The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3. The *Arabick* by thoſe of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habaſſine*, and 5. the *Egyptian* in thoſe Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble Language*, ſuppoſed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with ſome *Arabian* words, and ſpoken generally in *Morocco*, and ſo amongſt ſome of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, neareſt to Mount *Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungai*, uſed in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubeo*, ſpoken by thoſe of *Æthiopia inferior*, and ſuch of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the ſtate of the *Roman* Empire, it contained only the *Dioceſs* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Dioceſs of *Spain*. The Dioceſs of *Egypt* ſubdivided into the Provinces of 1. *Libya ſuperior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Auguſtanica*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Ægyptus*, eſpecially ſo called, diſtinguiſhed by other Names in the *Nicene* Council: That of 1. *Africk Tripolitana*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Zeugitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifenſis* the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Dioceſs of *Spain*. The reſt of this *Peninſula*, as they never conquered, ſo it never was much taken into conſideration. But being more perfectly diſcovered now than in former times, (though not ſo perfectly, as that I can be able to promiſe an exact account of it) it is divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts. 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africk*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the ſame with thoſe of the Ancient *Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Æthiopia ſuperior*, and 7. *Æthiopia inferior*. Such of the Iſlands as do not properly belong unto any of theſe, ſhall make up the eighth. In the deſcriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plantations*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and poſſeſſed before all the reſidue.

Africa, one of the four principal Parts of the Earth, was ſo called by the *Grecians*, becauſe it never feels almoſt any cold; it is bounded on the North by the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the Weſt and South, by the Ocean; and on the Eaſt, by the *Arabian* Gulph and the Red Sea; being only joined to *Aſia* by a Neck of Land twenty five Miles over; ſo that it is, perhaps, the greateſt *Peninſula* in all the World; its breadth from *Cape Verde* [*Heſperium*] to *Cape Guarda* (*Aromata*) at the Mouth of the Red Sea, is 600 *German* Miles; from *Cape Bona* on the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the *Cape* of *Good Hope*, is 68 Degrees, 16 Minutes, or 1160 *German* Miles; in the *Hebrew* Tongue it is called *Phul*, *Pul*, *Phut* and *Put*, *Eſa.* 66. 19. *Neh.* 3. 9. From the *Mediterranean* Sea to the *Line*, it carries the breadth of 60 Degrees in Longitude, and 35 in Latitude, but beyond the *Line*, it runs into a triangular form, and ends in a *Cape* called the *Cape of Good Hope*, becauſe the *Portugueſes* hoped for the doubling this *Cape*, to find a Paſſage by Sea to the *Eaſt-Indies*, as it came to paſs. It was anciently known no further, than to the Mountains of the Moon, 'till the *Portugueſes*, of late, diſcover'd the Southern Parts.

Africa is, by *Leo Africanus*, divided into theſe Parts, *Barbary*, *Biledulgerida*, *Sarra* and *Nigritia*, or the Land of *Negroes*; but as for *Æthiopia*, he will not allow it any part of *Africa*; and all that part of *Egypt* which lies on the Eaſt of the Nile, he aſcribes to *Aſia*. The Original People of *Africa* are divided into five Tribes, who have yet but one Language, called by them *Aquel-amarig*, the noble Tongue; it is different from all others, but has ſome Words in common with the *Arabian*, which makes ſome ſay, they are derived of the *Sabæans*: The Negroes have that's called *Sungay*, ſpoken in *Galata*, *Tombuto*, *Guinea Melli* and *Gago*. 2. *Guber* in *Guber*, *Cano*, *Caſena*, *Perzegreg*, and *Guangara*. 3. *Barno*. 4. *Nubia*, which is of great Affinity with the *Chaldean*, *Arabian*, and *Egyptian* Tongues. The Sea-Towns on the *Mediterranean* ſpeak corrupt *Arabick*: The reſt of *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid* and *Sarra* ſpeak the natural *African*. The *Africans* that inhabit the Sea-Coaſt, had been long ſubject to the *Romans*, and had learned their Tongue; and the *Arabians* coming in amongſt them, they became one Nation, mixed in Language and Blood, p. 10. In the Year of Chriſt 637, the *Mahometans* firſt entred *Egypt* under *Omar*. In 650 they went to the Conqueſt of *Barbary*; which, in 699 became wholly ſubject to them. In 710 they fell upon *Numidia* and *Libya*; in 973, they paſſed into *Nigritia*; in 1067, they entred on the lower *Æthiopia*; by all which ſteps they have ſpread their Faith over all the North part of *Africa* to *Guinea*.

Africa, properly ſo called, *Africa propria*, is a part of that which afterwards was reckoned amongſt the parts of the World; and in truth, but a ſmall part of that which is now called *Barbary*. On the Weſt it was bounded with the River *Ampſaga*, which divided it from *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*; on the North by the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the Eaſt by the *Aræ Philenorum* or *Cyreniaca*, and on the South by *Libya Zenguitana*: This was one of the moſt fruitful places in all the then known World, and had *Carthage*, one of the moſt celebrated Cities for its capital City. A Buſhel of Seed has in this Province yielded at the Harveſt 150 Buſhels: ſo that *Titus* called it, *Altricem Orbis terrarum*, the Nurſe of the World; and *Salvianus*, *Animam Reipublicæ Romanæ*, *the Soul of the Roman Empire*: The People of it were a Crafty, Perfidious, Wrangling, Drunken, Luſtful, and Impudent ſort of Men, as *Salvianus* ſaith, *Lib.* 7. *de Providentia*.

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the Eaſt with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the Weſt with *Barbaria*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia ſuperior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire.

This Country in the Holy Scripture is called *Miſraim*, from *Miſraim* the Son of *Chus*, and Grandſon of *Cham*, by whom firſt planted after the Flood; the Footſteps of which Name do remain among the *Arabians*, who ſtill call it *Miſre*. Named in the ſame regard in the Book of *Pſalms*, *the Land of Ham*; a Name retained in ſome of the ſacred Offices of the Old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witneſſeth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chamia* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the firſt Stock of their Nation. In prophane Authors it hath had the ſeveral Names of 1. *Aeria*, from the ſerenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, waſhing two ſides of it; 4. *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges*, a ſuppoſed King thereof; 4. *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the Soil; 5. *Oſiria*, from their God *Oſiris*, here in high eſteem; 6. and finally, it was called *Ægyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the reſt, either from *Ægyptus* the Brother of *Danaus*, once King hereof (in the Stories of his Nation better known by the name of *Rameſes*;) or from *Ægyptus*, the old Name of the River *Nilus*, by whoſe annual overflowings made both rich and famous; and of the Soil and Rubbiſh which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was, by ſome, ſuppoſed to have been raiſed into firm Land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in ſome Writers by the Name of *Nili donum*, or the Gift of *Nilus*. Yet ſome there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aiguphtus*, and that derived from *Ai coptus*, which ſignifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*, that being ſuppoſed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And ſome again will have the Name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Egyptians* call themſelves to this very day.

Egypt is called by the Inhabitants, *Chibili*; by the *Arabians*, *Bardamaſſer*; by the *Turks*, *Miſir*, which is very near the Hebrew *Miſraim*; by the *Italians* and *Spaniards*, *L'Egitto*; by the *Germans*, *Egypten*; being the firſt, the moſt fruitful, moſt ancient, and moſt celebrated Kingdom of all *Africa*: On the North it has the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the Eaſt, *Arabia Deſerta*, and the Red Sea; on the South, *Æthiopia*; and on the Weſt, *Cyrene*, and the Deſarts of *Libya*: *Nubienſis Geographia*, p. 96. bounds *Egypt* thus; on the South it has *Nubia*; on the North the Sea of *Damaſcus*; on the Eaſt the Red Sea, and on the Weſt, *Alvahat*, by others, called *Elfocat*, p. 97. He ſaith, It extends in length, from *Aſuan* to the *Mediterranean*, 25 Days Journey, which is about 655 Engliſh Miles, and is in Breadth, eight Days Journey, or 200 Miles. *Leo Africanus*, pag. 296 bounds *Egypt* to the Weſt, upon the Deſarts of *Barca*, *Numidia*, and *Libya*; to the Eaſt on the Deſarts between it and the Red Sea; to the North on the *Mediterranean*; and to the South on the People of *Bugiba*, and the Nile; from North to South it is 400 Miles, from Eaſt to Weſt 50; being narrow towards the South, but broader at the North end upon the *Mediterranean* Sea. The River *Nile* running the whole length of it, and towards the *Mediterranean* Sea, dividing and ſpreading it ſelf into many Branches, is the only cauſe of its Fertility, by overflowing it every Year in the Month of *June*. Monſieur *Thevenot*, who travelled *Egypt*, ſaith, *In my Voyage from* Roſetto *to Cairo, I obſerved that all the Lands upon the ſide of the* Nile *are excellently good; and really* Egypt *may be ſtyled an earthly Paradiſe, but inhabited by Devils; the Inhabitants being ſo wicked and ſo poor, that they will kill a Man for a Penny.* Travels, Part 1. p. 127. *Gabriel Sioneta de Urbibus Orientalium*, p. 26. ſaith, *Egypt* is fruitful in *Caſſia*, Sugar-Canes, Wheat, and all other ſorts of Grain, ſo that in many places it reaps two moſt plentiful Crops in a Year: Hay they mow four times a year; and for Peaſe, Beans, and other Garden-Fruits, they grow all the Year round. Tho' they have ſeldom any Rain, yet they do not want it; all ſorts of Fruits are plentiful but Grapes: ſo that for want of Wine, they, of old, generally drank Beer, but they had excellent Grapes for their eating. *Cluverius* ſaith, From the City of *Peluſium* to the Cataracts of the *Nile*, it is 150 Miles; from the ſame place to *Conza* in the Weſt, is 100 Miles broad; but then in ſome places towards the South, (as Mr. *Sandys* ſaith) above *Grand Cairo*, it is for a long tract confined between Mountains; in many places ſcarce Four, and in few above Eight Miles broad; but then he extends it from North to South, 560 Miles, and in breadth 140 *Engliſh* Miles at the North End. This Country maintained its Liberty under Princes of its own, 'till God gave them into the Hands of *Nebuchadonozor*, in the Year of the World 3365, 5 Years after the Ruin of *Jeruſalem* by the ſame Prince. Yet that Empire lying far off, and ſhaken by inteſtine Diviſions, they recovered their Liberty again: *Cambyſes* reduced them a ſecond time, *Anno Mundi*, 3425: *Xerxes* conquered them in the Year 3473, and yet *Artaxerxes Ochus* was neceſſitated to reduce them again; for they had ſet up Princes of their own, and had beat his Generals, who were ſent to reduce them: ſo he went in Perſon, and having driven their King into *Æthiopia*, he levelled their ſtrongeſt Fortifications, and made them ſo weak and helpleſs, that they have been in ſervitude ever ſince. This Prince began his Reign in 3587, and reigned 23 Years, and Conquer'd them in 3602. Next, *Alexander* the *Great* became their Maſter in the Year 3620, to whom they moſt willingly ſubmitted, out of a Deteſtation of the *Perſian* Government. *Ptolemy*, the Son of *Lagus* began his Reign over them in 3626; and *Cleopatra*, the laſt of his Poſterity, deſtroyed her ſelf to avoid Captivity, Eighteen Years before the Birth of our Saviour; from thenceforward they were under the *Romans*. In the Year of *Chriſt*, 616, *Choſroes*, King of *Perſia*, ſubdued *Egypt*, and kept it 'till the Year 623, when he was overthrown, and had 50000 of his Army taken Priſoners in *Armenia* by *Heraclius* the Emperor: This wretched Nation, weary of the *Greek* Government, called in, at length, *Haymaria* the 3d. of the *Saracen Califfs*, and by his help caſt out the *Greek* Garriſons about the Year 637. *Leo Africanus*, p. 298, ſaith, It was done under the Reign of *Homar*, the Second *Califf*, who cunningly pretended *to ſuffer all*

Men to enjoy their own Religion, and deſir'd nothing of them but Tribute; but this laſted no longer than 'till he had eſtabliſhed himſelf, and there are now no true *Egyptians*, but a few Chriſtians ſtill remaining, the reſt of that Nation having embraced the *Mahometan* Faith, and mingled with the *Arabians* and *Moors*; thus was *Liberty* of *Conſcience* made the Pretence of extirpating the Chriſtian Religion in *Egypt*. In the Year 933 there was a diſtinct *Califf* of *Cairo* ſet up againſt the *Califf* of *Bagdat*. The *Saracens* began the Conqueſt of *Egypt* in 637, and in 640, they took the City of *Alexandria*, and puſhed their Conqueſt as far as the *Atlantick* Ocean, on this ſide of the *Mediterranean* Sea. In 1163, another Race of theſe ſucceeded, called the *Turkiſh* Kings, or *Califfs*, which ended in 1245. *Leo Africanus* placeth this Revolution about 1276, under *Saladine* the 11th. whilſt the Chriſtians were in poſſeſſion of the Holy Land, when the *Mamalucks* or Slaves of that Race depoſed their Maſters, and erected an elective Kingdom out of their own Body; the Prince of that Nation being for many Ages choſen out of a number of Men, whoſe Beginning was always in ſlavery, and Profeſſion of War; they were in ſome ſort the *Janizaries* of that Age. *Leo Africanus* ſaith, *Saladine* was the Inventer of this ſort of *Militia*, conſiſting of *Circaſſian* Slaves, and that they continued 150 Years under his Poſterity, and then it failing, they elected one of their own Number to ſucceed him. *Tonombeius* 11, was the laſt of all theſe Princes, who, in 1517, was forced to ſubmit to the prevailing Valour and Fortune of *Selymus*, one of the *Ottoman* Princes; under which Family, that Nation ſtill groans. And now let any Man but compare the Ancient and the preſent Maps of *Egypt*, and his Eyes will ſhew him in one Minute, the difference between the Ancient and the later Governments. *Euſebius* cited by *Hornius de Antiqua Geographia*, p. 6. ſaith, There were more Cities in *Egypt* than in all the World beſides. *Pliny*, That there were 20000 in the Reign of *Amaſius*; and *Diodorus Siculus*, That in his time, there were in *Egypt*, then extant, 3000 Cities; but *Ortelius* could no where find above 300 mentioned by Name in any Ancient Author, which are all ſaid to be repreſented in *Janſonius* his Map of the Old *Egypt*. The fruitful and populous Land of *Egypt*, that was of old, over-ſpread with Cities and Towns, being now almoſt deſolate, and all its ancient Glory, Magnificence, Riches and People, being buried in Rubbiſh and Ruines: Names of Places that have no Inhabitants, or the Pictures of Beaſts and Antiquities, are almoſt all that is to be found here; *Grand Cairo*, *Alexandria*, *Roſetta*, and *Damiata*, are the only conſiderable places which are left; and Chriſtianity is almoſt extirpated here, as well as it is in *Barbary*. It is obſerved of the incomparable Lands of this Country, That within leſs than 80 Years, more than the Tenth part of it is loſt; no People being to be found that will maintain the ſame againſt the *Nile* and the Sands, *Bernier*, p. 71. *Leo Africanus*, p. 296. This Province is moſt fruitful in Corn and Graſs, and a Level Plain, adorned with lovely green Meadows; the People are of a ſwarthy brown Colour, but the Citizens are White, and they are of an honeſt, chearful, and liberal Diſpoſition, ſince the *Mahometans* were Lords of it. It is divided into 3 Parts or Provinces; that part which lies between *Cairo* and *Roſetto* on the Weſt of the *Nile*, is called the Shoar of *Errif*; from *Cairo* to *Bugiba*, Southward, it is called *Sabid*, the *firm Land*; all that lies on the Eaſtern ſide of the *Nile*, from *Cairo* to *Damietta* and *Teneſſe*, is called *Bechiria* or *Maremma*: *Sabid* excelleth in Corn, Cattel, Fowl and Flax: *Maremma* aboundeth with Cotton and Sugar, but then the Inhabitants of *Errif* and *Maremma* are far more civil than the People of *Sabid*, becauſe they have greater intercourſe with the Merchants of *Europe*, *Barbary*, and *Aſia*; but thoſe of *Sabid* trade with none but the *Æthiopians*. The Air of this Country, eſpecially in Summer, is exceeding hot and unwholeſome, and it raineth very ſeldome, and when it doth, it occaſioneth many Diſeaſes. At *Cairo* there die ſometimes 12000 in a Day of the *Plague*, and the *French Pox* is very frequent; about the beginning of *April* is their Harveſt, and in the middle of *June* the Inundation of the *Nile* beginneth, *ibid.* 299. In ancient times, the Inhabitants of *Egypt* were innumerable for Multitude; *Diodorus* eſtimated them at 750 Millions, beſides the Inhabitants of *Alexandria*, which were 300000 Free-men. It was an Ingenious, Sagacious, and Learned Nation too, capable of learning any thing, but at the ſame time it was a Furious, Light, Inconſtant, Faithleſs, Inſolent, and a moſt wicked People; boaſting without Modeſty, Delicate and Luxurious; Lazy, Effeminate, Luſtful, Avaritious, and ever progging for their Pleaſures, and Money to maintain them; apt to Tumult and Rebel upon the leaſt Provocation, but ſoon vanquiſhed; for they were fitter to begin a War than to end it with advantage. Laſtly, they were Superſtitious above all other Nations; nay, ſome of the things they Worſhipped are out of Modeſty, not to be named; there was ſcarce a City in *Egypt* that did not worſhip ſome Beaſt or other, and it was made too a Subject of mortal Feuds amongſt them, becauſe they eat thoſe very things their Neighbours adored, as it was impoſſible to avoid it.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Aſna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 *Italian* Miles in breadth (excluſively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Roſetta* unto *Damiata*, or from the moſt Weſterly branch of *Nilus* to the fartheſt Eaſt, 160 of the ſame Miles; to which the adding of thoſe two Provinces makes a great acceſſion: Situate under the ſecond and fifth *Climates*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 13 Hours and a half.

By reaſon of this Southerly ſituation of it, the Air is here very hot and offenſive, ſo that to avoid the inſupportable Heats thereof, and to have the benefit of ſome freſh Wind, the Inhabitants are accuſtomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they uſe to ſolace and refreſh themſelves. The Soil made fruitful by the overflowings of *Nilus* (whereof more anon) is ſo exceeding plentiful of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum Populi Romani*, the Granary or Store-houſe of the People of *Rome*; which City it did annually furniſh with four Months Proviſion, inſomuch that it was ſaid by *Pliny*, That the greatneſs of the *Roman* Empire could not long continue, without the Corn and Wealth of *Egypt*; the Plenty or Famine of that City, depending wholly on this Country. It abounds alſo with rich Paſtures, in which they feed great ſtore of Camels, Horſes, Aſſes, Oxen, Sheep and Goats, greater of growth than uſually in moſt places elſe; and by reaſon of the mooriſhneſs of the Country, they have great ſtore of Fowls. Of Poultry they have alſo good numbers about their Houſes, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the ſitting of the Hen, but by the heat of Furnaces or Ovens; in which their Eggs are orderly laid in Dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is alſo liberally furniſhed with great plenty of Metals, ſome precious Stones, good Wines, and the choiceſt Fruits, as Lemmons, Oranges, Pomegranates, Citrons, Figgs, Cherries, and ſuch as theſe, excellent both for Taſte, and Colour. Of Palm-trees alſo great abundance; of which though we have ſpoke before, yet we ſhall here more fully declare the nature and ſtrange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thruſt forth Cods full of Seed, but the Female is onely fruitful, and that not, except growing by the Male, and having his Seeds mixt with hers. The pith of theſe Trees is an excellent Sallad, better than an *Artichoke*, which in taſte it very much reſembleth. Of the Branches they make Bedſteads, Lattices, &c. of the Leaves, Baskets, Mats, Pans, &c. of the outward husks of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Bruſhes. The Fruit it bears beſt known by the name of Dates, are in taſte like Figs: And finally, it is ſaid to yield whatſoever is neceſſary to the Life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never ſo ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the Burden, but ſtill to reſiſt the heavineſs of it, and to endeavour to lift and raiſe it ſelf the more upwards. For this Cauſe planted in Church-Yards in the Eaſtern Countries, as an Emblem of the Reſurrection: In ſtead whereof we uſe the Ewe-Tree in theſe cold Regions. For the ſame reaſon given to *Conquerours* as a Token of Victory; it being the Emblem or Hieroglyphick of a Soldier's Life. Hence, figuratively uſed for Precedency, as *Huic equidem conſilio Palmam do*, in *Terence*; ſometimes for the Victory it ſelf, as *Non auferent tamen hanc Palmam*, in *Pliny*; & *Plurimarum Palmarum homo*, for a Man that had won many Prizes in the *Fence-School*, as in *Tully pro Roſcio*: More naturally for the ſign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*;

——Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

That is to ſay;

The *Palm*, of Victory a ſign,
Equals Men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Country lie in the ſame Clime with *Barbary*, are not Black, but Tawny, or Olive-Coloured, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to weep and mourn over the Bodies of their dead, daubed over with Dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having embalmed them, to lay them in ſome inward Room of their Houſes: The Men to keep themſelves at home, for the Houſehold-Buſineſs, the Women to follow Merchandize and Affairs abroad; the Men to carry Burdens upon their Heads, and the Women theirs upon their Shoulders; *Antipodes* in theſe laſt to moſt other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious People, the firſt Inventers of Geometry, Arithmetick, Phyſick, as alſo of Aſtronomy, Necromancy, and Sorcery. They firſt taught the uſe of Letters to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accuſtomed at the firſt, to expreſs their Conceits in the ſhape of Birds, Beaſts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which, two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity*, they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: For a *Year*, they painted a Snake, with his Tail in his Mouth, to ſhew how one Year ſucceeding another, kept the World ſtill in an endleſs Circle. For a *Month*, they painted a Palm-tree, becauſe at every new Moon it ſendeth forth a new Branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he ſoareth ſo high, as that he governeth the leſſer Birds. For *Integrity* of life, they painted Fire and Water, both becauſe theſe Elements are in themſelves moſt pure, and becauſe all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was abominable to the Gods, they painted a Fiſh, becauſe in their Sacrifices the Prieſts never uſed them; and the like. From this manner of expreſſing one's ſelf, the Invention of Letters is thought to have had its Original (though learnt by them no queſtion of the Children of *Iſrael* when they lived among them;) the Hiſtory whereof take briefly, and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Ægyptii, &c.* "The *Egyptians* firſt of all expreſſed "the Conceptions of the Mind, by the ſhapes of "Beaſts, and the moſt ancient Monuments of Man's "memory, are ſeen graven in ſtones; and they ſay, "that they are the firſt Inventers of Letters. Then "the *Phœnicians*, becauſe they were ſtrong at Sea, "brought them into *Greece*, and ſo they had the glory "of that which they received from others: For there "goeth a report, That *Cadmus* ſailing thither in a "*Phœnician* Ship, was the Inventer of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and "rude. Some report, That *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or "*Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Grecian*, did "find out ſixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan* "War; and that afterwards *Simonides* added the reſt. "But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines* of *Evander* the "*Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the firſt Inventers of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: Yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-Maſters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with ſafety maintain, having *Lucan* in conſent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices *primi (famæ ſi creditur) auſi*
Manſuram rudibus vocem ſignare figuris.

Phœnicians (firſt if fame may credit have)
Dar'd in rude Characters our words ingrave.

Of this Mind alſo is *Iſidore* of *Sevil*, in the firſt Book of *Originations*, who alſo addeth, That for that cauſe the Fronts of Books, and the Titles of Chapters were written in *Red Letters*, as it is by ſome ſtill in uſe. *Hinc eſt quod &* Phœnicio colore *librorum capita deſcribantur, quia ab ipſis literæ initium habuere, cap. 3.* As for the leſs vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exerciſed *States-man* hath peculiar to himſelf, they were firſt invented by *Julius Cæſar*, when he firſt began to think of the *Roman* Monarchy, and were uſed by him in his Letters to his more private and tried Friends, that if by Misfortune they ſhould be intercepted, the contents of them ſhould not be underſtood; ὅπως ἄδηλα τοῖς πολλοῖς τὰ γραφόμενα: *Ne obvia literarum lectio cuivis eſſet. Auguſtus*, one of the greateſt *Politicians* of the World, had another kind of obſcure Writing; for in his Letters of more ſecrecy and importance, he always uſed τὸ δεύτερον ἀεὶ στοιχεῖον, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the Alphabet, for that which in ordinary Writing he ſhould have uſed. As for *Brachygraphy*, or the Art of Writing by ſhort *Characters*, ſo uſeful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is ſpoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenas*, that great Favourite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*; and favourer of Learning, did firſt invent them; *ad celeritatem ſcribendi*, for the ſpeedier diſpatch of Writings; καὶ πρῶτος σημεῖα γραμμάτων τινὰ (they are the very words of my Author) πρὸς τάχος ἐξεῦρε. *Iſidore*, in the ſecond Chapter of this Book above mentioned, aſcribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or *Free-man* of his *Mæcenas*; and to *Tertius Perſannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this Invention. Yet had all they their chief Light in it from *Tullius Tito*, a *Free-man* of *Cicero's*; who had undertaken and compaſſed it in the *Prepoſitions*, but went no further. At the laſt it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into Order and Method; the whole Volume of his contractions conſiſting of 5000 Words. *Deinde* Seneca *contractu omnium digeſtoque & aucto numero, opus effecit in quinque millia.*

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old *Egyptians*, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philoſophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their Forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer*, their Poetical Fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flouriſhed 1. *Ariſtarchus*, the Famous and Learned Grammarian; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and Searcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Maſter of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, ſirnamed *Calceuteres*, for his indefatigable Induſtry in ſeveral Sciences; 5. *Manetho*, an old Hiſtorian, of whom we have nothing but ſome fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Hiſtorian of a later date, whoſe Works are extant in part. 7. *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8. *Cl. Ptolemæus* the Geographer, 9. *Achilles Tatius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philoſopher *Mercurius*, ſirnamed *Triſmegiſtus*. And after their Converſion to the Faith of Chriſt, 1. *Pantenus*, the firſt Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen*, and 3. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the Univerſality of Learning; 4. *Dionyſius*, 5. *Athanaſius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Biſhops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their ſeveral times.

This notwithſtanding, their Religion before the embracing of *Chriſtianity*, was the worſt of *Gentiliſm*; theſe People not onely worſhipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, Creatures of greateſt Uſe and Glory; nor only ſacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the reſt of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their ſeveral times of ſome publick Benefit to Mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine Honours to Crocodiles, Snakes, Serpents, Garlick, Leeks, and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the Chriſtian Fathers, ſo moſt deſervedly expoſed unto publick ſcorn, by the Pens of the Poets.

Porrum & cæpe nefas violare, & lædere morſu;
Felices populi, quibus hæc naſcuntur in Hortis
Numina!—— Quis neſcit qualia demens
Ægyptus portenta *colat*, &c.

Which may be rendred to this purpoſe;

To bite an Onion *or a* Leek, *is more*
Than deadly ſin, the Numen *they adore.*
Grows in their Gardens. *And who do not know,*
What monſtrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt *go?*

But the God moſt eſteemed by them, and by all ſorts of the *Egyptians* the moſt adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Ox, with a white Star in his forehead, the *Effigies* of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his Tail. But it ſeems his Godſhip was not ſo much reſpected by Strangers. For *Cambyſes* when he Conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his Sword through the Thigh, and cauſed all his Prieſts to be ſcourged. And *Auguſtus* being here, would not vouchſafe to ſee him, ſaying, Θεὸν ἀλλ' ȣ̓ ϗ βȣ̃ς προσκυνεῖν εἴωθα; that the God, and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the Object of his Devotions. A Speech moſt truly worthy ſo brave an Emperour.

But it is time we ſhould proceed to a ſurvey of theſe *Egyptians*, as they ſtand at the preſent, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predeceſſours; nothing but ignorance and Barbariſm to be found amongſt them. For ſuch as have obſerved the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Anceſtors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, cowardly, cruel; addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatſoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other Men, more obſervant than faithful; of a Wit much inclining to craftineſs, and very eager on their Profit. Of a mean ſtature, tawny of Complexion, and ſpare of Body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themſelves to Merchandize, grow rich by trading, reaſonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in Dreſs and Faſhion. Thoſe in the Countrey, who betake themſelves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a ſavage and naſty People, cruſted over with Dirt, and ſtinking of ſmoak; fit company for none but thoſe of their own condition. Nothing now left amongſt them of the Arts of their Anceſtors, but an affection which they have unto Divinations; to Fortune-telling great Pretenders; by which and ſome cheating-Tricks, in which very well practiſed, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and ſo get their livelyhood; occaſioning the Vagabonds and Stragglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the ſame falſe Arts, to aſſume their Names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an Hochpotch or Medly of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptians* making up the leaſt part of the reckoning.

The Women of the ſame Complexion with the Men, but well formed and Featured, did not they too much affect a ſeeming corpulency; which if they cannot get in Fleſh, they will have in Cloaths. Very fruitful in Child-bearing, and quick of diſpatch when they are in labour: Some of them having three or four Children at a Birth; thoſe that are born in the eighth Month living to good Age, and not in danger of Death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their Faces with black *Cypreſs* beſpotted with red; their Arms and Ankles garniſhed with Bracelets and Hoops of Gold, Silver, or ſome other Metal. Thoſe in the Country for a Vail, uſe ſome dirty Clout, having Holes only for their Eyes, which little is too much to ſee and abſtain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the cuſtom in all places elſe, the Women uſe to make water ſtanding, and the Men couring on their knees.

The Chriſtian Faith was here firſt planted by St. *Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the firſt Biſhop of *Alexandria*. His Succeſſours, 'till the time of *Heraclius* and *Dionyſius*, choſen continually out of the *Presbytery* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Juriſdiction ſettled by a Canon of the Council at *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole Dioceſs of *Egypt* (taking the word *Dioceſs* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt* ſpecially ſo called; to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Thebais*, *Maræotica* and *Ammoniaca*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebais* and *Maræotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Churches became ſubject to this *Patriarch* alſo, and do acknowledge to this day ſome relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens* and the ſubjugation of this Country, Chriſtianity fell here into great decay; languiſhing ſo ſenſibly ſince thoſe times, eſpecially ſince the Conqueſt of it by the *Turks*: That whereas *Bochardus* in his time reckoned three hundred Thouſand Chriſtians; in the laſt eſtimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty Thouſand. This ſmall remainder of them, commonly called *Cophti*, either from the Greek word κόπτω *Scindo*, becauſe they retained the uſe of Circumciſion with their Chriſtianity; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reſide; or finally by Abbreviation from *Ægopthi*, corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National Name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithſtanding in ſome particulars, in ſome from all Chriſtian Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The Points moſt proper to them, 1. Uſing Circumciſion with their Baptiſm, but rather as a National than Religious cuſtom; though in that ſenſe alſo laid aſide, as is ſaid by ſome, by the perſwaſion of ſome Legates from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Cairo*, *Anno* 1583. 2*dly*. Conferring all ſacred Orders under the Prieſthood, on Infants immediately after Baptiſm; their Parents, till they come to ſixteen years of age performing what they promiſed in their behalf, *viz.* Charity, faſting on Wedneſday and Friday, and four Lents of the year. 3*dly*. Reputing Baptiſm not to be of any efficacy, except miniſtred by the Prieſt in the open Church, in what extremity ſoever. 4*thly*. And yet not baptizing any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the *interim*. 5*thly*. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt*, as ſoon as Chriſtned. 6*ly*. Contracting Marriages even in the ſecond degree of Conſanguinity, without diſpenſation. 7*thly*. Obſerving not the Lord's day, nor any of the *Feſtivals*, except only in *Cities*. 8*thly*. And in their Liturgies, reading the Goſpel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*. 1. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Lord's Supper* under both kinds. 2*dly*. Adminiſtring in leavened Bread. 3*dly*. Admitting neither *Extreme Vnction*, nor the uſe of the *Euchariſt*, to thoſe that are ſick. 4*thly*. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead. 5*thly*. Nor uſing Elevation in the Act of Adminiſtring. And 6*thly*. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for Heretical, and eſteeming no better of the *Latine*, than they do of the *Jews*. In theſe Opinions they continue hitherto againſt all *Opponents* and Perſwaſions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the ſixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath regiſtred an Ambaſſage from *Marcus* the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8, wherein he is ſaid to have ſubmitted himſelf and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further ſearch made, it was found but a *Cheat*, diviſed to hold up the Reputation of a ſinking cauſe. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* ſtill adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practice and ſollicitation of ſome buſie *Friers*, have been drawn to be of the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, and to uſe her *Liturgies*.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, ſome were the Works of Nature, and ſome of induſtry and magnificence. Of this laſt kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramids*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their ſeveral kinds, the envy of the Ages paſt, and the aſtoniſhment to the preſent. Look we firſt on the *Pyramids*, many in number, three more celebrated, and one the principal of all; ſituate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Weſtern Banks of *Nilus*. This laſt, the chief of the World's Seven Wonders, ſquare at the bottom, is ſuppoſed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every Square 300 ſingle Paces in length, aſcended by 255 Steps, each Step above three Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top conſiſting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for Sixty Men to ſtand upon. No Stone ſo little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the reſt for others of thoſe mighty Princes) who imployed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 366000 Men continually working on it. The Charges which they put him to, in no other Food than Garlick, Radiſhes, and Onions, being computed at a thouſand and eight hundred Talents. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is ſaid to be the Work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finiſh her Father's Undertaking, and raiſe her own unto the height, by the proſtitution of her Body, requiring but one Stone towards the Work from each one of her Cuſtomers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Joſephus*, and ſuppoſed by many good Divines, That the Drudgery put upon the *Iſraelites* did concern theſe *Pyramids*: The Materials of theſe Works being Stone; their Employment Brick. But paſt all doubt, advanced by thoſe conſiderate Princes upon good advice, and not for oſtentation only of their Power and Glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to ſucceeding Ages, but for the preſent kept the Subject from ſloth and idleneſs; who being a People prone unto Innovations, were otherwiſe like enough to have fed that ſin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

As for the *Labyrinth*, it was built by *Pſamniticus* on the Banks of the River *Nilus*, ſituate on the South of the *Pyramids*, and North of *Arſinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compaſs of one continued Wall a thouſand Houſes and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, ſometimes one over another; and all in a manner invious to ſuch as were not acquainted with them: The Building more under ground than above: The Marble-ſtones laid with ſuch Art, that neither Wood nor Cement was imployed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers ſo diſpoſed, that the Doors upon their opening did give a Report no leſs terrible than a crack of Thunder. The main entrance all of white Marble, adorned with ſtately Columns, and moſt curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Stairs of 90 Steps conducted into a gallant *Portico*, ſupported with Pillars of *Theban* ſtone, which was the entrance into a fair and ſpacious Hall (the place of their general Conventions) all of poliſhed Marble, ſet out with the Statues of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus*, in the *Cretan* Labyrinth; though that fell as ſhort of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferiour unto *Pſamniticus* in Power and Riches.

Next unto theſe, I place the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Iſland oppoſite unto *Alexandria*, once a Mile diſtant from the Land, but joined to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occaſion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea, uſed to exact ſome Tribute or Acknowledgment out of every Iſland within thoſe Seas, and conſequently out of this. Their Ambaſſadors ſending unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, ſhe detained with her ſeven days, under colour of celebrating ſome ſolemn Feſtivals; and in the mean time, by making huge Dams and Banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and ſpeed; united the Iſland to the ſhore; which finiſhed, ſhe ſent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty Jeer, telling them, That *they were to take Toll of the Iſlands, and not of the Continent*. A Work of great Rarity and Magnificence, both for the bigneſs of it, taking up ſeven furlongs of Ground, and for that cauſe called *Heptaſtadium*; and that incredible ſpeed wherewith it was finiſhed. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latin*, *Pharos*, by the Name of the Iſland; it was built by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailers, (the Seas upon that Coaſt being very unſafe, and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deſervedly eſteemed another of the World's ſeven Wonders; the other five being, 1. the *Mauſolæum*, 2. the Temple of *Epheſus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*. This Watch-Tower, or *Pharos* was of wonderful height, aſcended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein Lights burned nightly, as a direction to ſuch as ſailed by Sea. The *Materials* were white Marble; the Chief Architect *Soſtratus* of *Gnidos*, who ingraved on the Work this Inſcription: Soſtratus *of* Gnidos, *the Son of* Dexiphanes, *to the Gods Protectors, for the ſafeguard of Sailers.* This Inſcription he covered with *Plaiſter*, and thereon ingraved the Name and Title of the King, the Founder: To the end that the King's Name being ſoon waſted and waſhed away, his own which was written in Marble, might be eternized to Poſterity as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæſar* purſuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having diſcontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Soldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor, aſſaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolemy*'s Servants, *Cæſar* himſelf being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the Skirmiſh, he haſted to the *Pharos*, meaning to ſuccour his Navy in Perſon: But the *Egyptians* making towards him on all ſides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and ſwim for his Life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he ſometimes ducked, yet held he ſtill his left hand above the Water, and in it divers Books, which he carried ſafe unto his Ships, and animating his Men, got the Victory. It is ſaid that *Egypt* hath only two Doors, the one by Land, which is the ſtrong Tower of *Peleuſium* or *Damiata*; the other by Water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota* Egyptus *maritimo acceſſu*, Pharo; *pedeſtri verò*, Peluſio, *velut clauſtris munita exiſtimatur*, ſaith *Opius*.

Amongſt the Rarities of Nature, we may reckon thoſe ſtrange Beaſts and Fiſhes, proper almoſt unto this Country, *i. e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horſe) the *Ibis*, the *Aſp*, and many ſeveral ſorts of Serpents. To ſpeak of which particularly were a Work more proper to a Natural Hiſtory, than a *Geographical*. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* than all the reſt, cannot be parted with in ſilence: A Creature of a ſtrange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger than that of a *Turkey*, and increaſing to the length of thirty Foot; his Tail as long as all the reſt of his Body, with which he is accuſtomed to inchain his Prey, and draw it into the River; his Feet armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales; his Mouth ſo wide (of which he only moveth the upper Jaw) that he is able to ſwallow a Heifer; equally uſed to both Elements, but better ſighted in the Water than on the Land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and ſuch as uſually flies from thoſe that dare ſet upon him; and eaſily vanquiſhed by the *Dolphin*, which ſwimming under the Water woundeth him in the belly, where aſſaultable only. Whether ſo eaſily deſtroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping into his Mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers ſay, hath of late been queſtioned.

Of leſs diſpute, but not leſs Rarity in Nature, are theſe that follow: 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do ſometimes happen to diſſolve upon them, it bringeth on their Bodies innumerable Sores, and ſtrange Diſeaſes. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are ſaid to follow on the ſame. Of which it is thus ſaid by *Lucan*;

Terra ſuis contenta bonis, non indiga Mercis,
Aut Jovis, *in ſolo tanta eſt fiducia* Nilo:

The Earth, content with its own Wealth, doth crave
No Foreign Mart, *nor* Jove *himſelf; they have*
Their hope alone in Nilus fruitful Wave.

The *Nile*, is a vaſt River in *Africa*, which ariſeth from two Fountains in the higher *Ethiopia* in the *Abiſſins* Empire, in a Country called *Sacabala*, amongſt high Mountains, and being enlarged by the *Gema Kelti* and *Branti*, it paſſeth through the South part of the Lake of *Dambea*, to the greateſt *Cataracts*; before it enters *Nubia*, it takes in the River *Meleg*, and afterwards the *Tacaſe*, a great River at *Jalac*; and entring and traverſing the Upper *Egypt*, Four Miles beneath Grand *Cairo*, where it is one Mile over; it divides firſt into two, and after into more Branches, which anciently made the number of ſeven, but are now reduced to four; the reſt being ſtopped up by the Sands of the *Mediterranean* Sea, and thoſe brought down by the River; as *William*, Archbiſhop of *Tyre*, upon exact ſearch, averrs in the 19th Book *de Bell. Sac.* c. 33, who was in *Egypt* in the Year 1167. The *Mahometan* Princes, who have been many Ages Lords of *Egypt*, taking no care to keep them open. The Eaſtern Branch falls into the *Mediterranean* Sea by *Damiata*, and was of old called *Os Peluſiacum*; the Weſtern was then named *Canopus*, and falls into the ſame Sea below *Roſetto*; theſe two make the *Delta* an Iſland, which is the richeſt portion of Land in *Egypt*, and there are two other Outlets between theſe, but poor in Waters ſaith Mr. *Sandys*. This *Nile*, from the 15th day of *June*, ſwelleth above its Banks, for the ſpace of 40 days, and in as many more, gathereth its Waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen *Cubits*, then the Earth is deficient in her abundance of increaſe, for want of moiſture: and if the Waters ſurmount the ſuperficies of the Earth, more than ſeventeen Cubits, then like a drunken Man, it cannot produce its natural operation; as having his Stomack (as it were) overlaid and ſurcharged with too much Liquor; but if the Mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all houſed before the 20th of *May*. During this Inundation, they keep their Beaſts and Cattel on the tops of ſuch little Hills, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Induſtry of Man hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decreaſe of the Waters; and on theſe Hills alſo ſtand moſt of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood like ſo many Iſlands; and holding a Commerce and continual Traffick by the entercourſe of Boats and Shallops, by which they tranſport their Marketable Commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus overflow the Country, it is not only the fore-runner to a following Dearth, but prognoſticateth ſome inſuing miſchief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the teſtimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us, That in the 10th and 11th years of *Cleopatra*, the River increaſed not at all; that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of thoſe two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweet-heart *Antonius*. A ſecond Commodity which ariſeth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is health, which it bringeth with it in moſt parts of the Country; the Plague which oftentimes miſerably rageth upon the firſt day of the Flood, abating inſtantly; inſomuch that whereas 500 may die of that Diſeaſe in the City of *Cairo* but the day before, there dyeth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River is, That keeping its Waters united in a Body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further than any part of it can be ſeen from the ſhore. Add unto theſe, the many living Creatures which the ſlime thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural Chanel; whereof *Ovid* thus;

Sic ubi deſeruit madidos Septemfluus *agros*
Nilus, *& antiquo ſua flumina reddidit alvo,*
Plurima Cultores verſis Animalia *glebis*
Inveniunt.

Which I *Engliſh* thus:

So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile *the fields forſakes,*
And to his ancient Channel him betakes;
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the Mud that's left behind.

Amongſt which Creatures ſo engendred, are ſaid to be ſuch innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furniſh this Country with a proportionable number of Storks, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague* of *Frogs* would come a ſecond time upon them to their utter deſtruction.

On the Banks of this River alſo grew thoſe ſedgy Weeds called *Papyri*, of which, Paper was made in former times, which I reckon amongſt the Rarities of *Egypt* alſo, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moiſtening them with the glutinous Waters of the River, they preſſed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of which Invention, Books being eaſier to be tranſcribed and preſerved than formerly, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*; and underſtanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, ſtrove to exceed him in that kind of Magnificence, prohibiteed the carrying of it out of *Egypt.* Hereupon *Attalus* invented the uſe of Parchments, made of the Skins of Calves and Sheep; from the Materials called *Membranæ*, and *Pergamena* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cauſe, that in a ſhort time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of uſe; in place whereof ſucceeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authors of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the uſe of theſe Papers and Parchments were firſt made known, I obſerve three ways of Writing amongſt the Ancients, (I hope I ſhall be pardoned this ſhort digreſſion.) 1. On the inward ſide of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Latine* called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri.* 2. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latins* occaſion to call a Book *Codex.* 3. They uſed to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to ſignifie; from whence a Letter-Carrier was named *Tabellarius*; the Inſtrument wherewith they wrote, was a ſharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a Word now ſignifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of Phraſe which any Man uſeth; as *Negligens ſtylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus ſtylus*, in *Cicero.* I ſhould have alſo noted, That they uſed ſometimes to write in *Leaves*; that the *Sibyls* Oracles being ſo written and ſcattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the Phraſe of a *Leaf of Paper.* But of this Argument enough.

Now to theſe Rarities of Nature, and Magnificent induſtry, moſt of them near the River *Nile*, or relating to it, we are to add another of far greater moment, and ſuch as plainly ſeemeth to be ſupernatural, which is, That above five Miles from the City of *Cairo*, there is a place, in which, on every *Good Friday* yearly, there appear the Heads, Legs, and Arms of Men riſing out of the Ground, to a very great number; which if any Man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will ſhrink again into the Earth. Suppoſed by ſome to be an *Impoſture* of ſome *Water-men* only; who ſtick them over-night in the Sands, and keeping them ſecret to themſelves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thouſands of People to behold the ſight. But *Stephen Dupleis*, a ſober and diſcerning Man in the Opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwiſe of it; affirming ſoberly, That he was an Eye-witneſs of the Wonder, that he had touched divers of theſe riſing Members; and that (as he was once ſo doing to the Head of a Child) a Man of *Cairo* cryed out unto him, *Kali, Kali, ants metaraſde*; that is to ſay, *Hold! hold, you know not what you do.* A ſtrange Fore-runner (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Reſurrection* of the whole Body, preſented yearly, in the riſing of theſe ſeveral Parts.

Monſieur *Thevenot* begins the encreaſe of the *Nile*, *May* 16 or 20, and ſaith the Publication is made *June* 28 or 29; and he ſaith, *They give me no Account of its encreaſe beyond* September *the* 24th. Though it often ſwells about the beginning of *October*, and that it gradually abates till the Month of *May.* He gives alſo this Account of the Head of the *Nile*, from the Report of an *Æthiopian* Ambaſſador he met at *Grand Cairo.* The head of *Nile* is a Spring that ſwells out of the Ground in a large Plain called *Ovembromma* in the Province of *Ago*, which caſts up the Waters very high, the Well being twelve days Journey from *Gouthar*, the Capital of *Æthiopia*; and theſe Waters running on, paſs by ſeven Cataracts before they enter into *Egypt*; and he ſaith, There are no Mountains near its Head by three Weeks Journey. If the River doth not riſe Sixteen Foot, a Famine follows for want of Water; if it ſwells to twenty four, there is a Dearth, becauſe the Seed-time is loſt.

Bernier, p. 44. Gives this Account of the Head of the *Nile*, from an *Æthiopian* Ambaſſador in the *Mogul's* Court. It iſſueth out of the Earth by two Springs in the Province of *Agaus*, which form a Lake of about 30 or 40 Paces long, and iſſueth thence a conſiderable River, but is ſoon augmented by other Springs. It circles about, and forms almoſt an Iſland, and then tumbles from ſteep Rocks into a great Lake in the Province of *Dambea*, three Days Journey from *Gondar*, &c. See *Bernier*, pag. 143. The *Nubian* Geographer, p. 16. makes the *Nile* to ſpring from the Mountains of the Moon, where I have repreſented his Notion of its riſe; ent'ring *Nubia*, it waſheth *Cuſa*, *Ghalva*, *Dancala*, and *llack*, Cities of *Nubia*, and then precipitates it ſelf from Mount *Gianadel* down into *Egypt*, ſo that no Boat can paſs farther that way, p. 17. There are two falls of the *Nile*, one at *llack* in *Numidia*, and the other above *Aſſuan* into *Egypt*, which are twelve Days Journey each from the other; this is darkly expreſſed by the *Nubian*, but clearly in *Ptolemy*, who calls the moſt Southern, the great *Cataract*, and the other the leſſer, which he placeth above *Syene*, now *Aſſuan*; for the encreaſes of the *Nile*, ſee *Foſſat.* *Leo Africanus*, p. 335. Obſerveth, That the *Crocodiles*, in this River, are more deſtructive to Men, ſince the *Mahometans* became Maſters of *Egypt*, than they were under the *Egyptians* and the *Romans*, and above *Cairo* than beneath it; and he cannot find out the Reaſons of it, which is nothing but the Deſolations they have made in *Egypt*, which encourageth theſe Dragons to deſtroy Men. He aſcribes the ſwelling of the *Nile* to the Rains that fall in

Æthiopia in *May*. In his time the Fountains of the *Nile* were not known to the *Æthiopians* themſelves. This Author wrote in the Year 1526, and had travelled over a great part of *Africa* : *Gabriel Sionata* obſerves in his piece *de Urbibus Orientalium*, p. 27. That the Waters of the *Nile* being only retained in Panns 3 Days, and expoſed to the heat of the Sun, turns to a pure white Salt ; ſo that the Land of *Egypt* has an inexhauſtible Supply of that which is ſo needful to the Life of Man, and at ſmall Charges. This Author was a *Syrian* by Birth, and wrote in the Year 1619. The Waters of the *Nile* are thick and muddy, but being expoſed to ſettle a ſmall time, they become clean, perſpicuous, and ſo ſweet and pleaſant, that they excel all other Waters for ſmoothneſs and pleaſantneſs.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increaſe of Wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth ; let us next look on the *Red Sea*, and the Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of Trading. A Sea whereof we have ſpoken already, as to the reaſon of the Name, the extent thereof, and the ſeveral Iſlands contained in it, and therefore ſhall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous paſſage of the *Iſraelites* through it as upon dry Land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh Cenchres* and all his People, at large commemorated in the Books of Holy Scriptures ; as alſo for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*, and thence by the *Venetians* diſperſed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Aſia*. *Nub*. p. 4. Mr. *Pory*, the Tranſlater of *Leo Africanus* a Learned Man, obſerves, That the middle of this Sea is ſafely Navigable by Day or Night, it being clear, and 25 or 50 Fathoms deep, but the Eaſtern and Weſtern Shores are ſo full of Rocks, Shoals, and ſmall Iſlands, that it is impoſſible to paſs them but by Day-light, and with moſt expert Pilots, who are taken in at the Iſle of *Babel-Mandel* ; he ſaith alſo, This Sea has little Fiſh, and the Shores have no green Graſs, Herbs or Weeds, (Pag. 8.) in which he is contradicted by others ; the Ancient Kings of *Egypt* barr'd the entrance of this Sea againſt the *Africans*, by drawing a Chain from *Arabia* to *Babel-Mandel*, and from the Weſt ſide of that Iſland again to *Egypt*, as he obſerves out of *Strabo*. And that the *Turk* at this Day, will ſuffer no Ship to paſs upon this Sea but his own, as far as they can help it, the *Portugals* having provoked him to this by their Depredations on this Sea. The *Hebrews* call this Sea *Jamſuph*, and *Exodus* 15. 22, it is called *Mare Algoſum*. Its Waves are agitated by great Ebbs and Flows, whence ſome have had the Impudence to ſay, The *Iſraelites* paſſed at low Water ; and that the *Egyptians* were drowned by the return of the Tide. *Hornius Antiq. Geo.* p. 11.

I ſuppoſe I ſhall not do amiſs to ſet down Hiſtorically out of *Galuano*, a Relation of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received ſo great Commodity. *Know then* ſaith he) *that* Ptolemy Philadelphus, 277 *years before the* Incarnation, *was the firſt that ſet on foot this Navigation :* Coſir, (*of old called* Myos, Hormos) *on the Sea-ſide, being the ordinary Haven out of which they hoiſed Sail for* India ; *and into which they returned full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveighed to* Coptus, *and ſo down the* Nile *to* Alexandria, *by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich ; inſomuch that the Cuſtom-Houſe there yielded* Ptol. Auletes 7 Millions *and an half of Gold yearly. The* Romans *being Lords of* Egypt, *enhanſed the Cuſtoms to double that Sum : They ſent into* India *every Year (as* Pliny *witneſſed)* 120 *Ships, whoſe Lading was worth* 120000 *Crowns ; and there was made in return of every Crown* 100. *When the* Vandals, Lombards, Goths, *and* Moors, *had torn in pieces the* Roman *Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to ceaſe. At laſt, perceiving the inconvenience, they began a-new ; conveying the* Indian *Commodities partly by Land, partly by Water, unto* Capha *in* Taurica Cherſoneſus, *belonging to the* Genoeſes. *Next,* Trapezond *was made the Mart-Town, then* Sarmachand *in* Zagathay, *where the* Indian, Turkiſh, *and* Perſian *Merchants meet to barter Wares ; the* Turks *conveying their Merchandizes to* Damaſcus, Barutti, *and* Aleppo ; *from whence the* Venetians *tranſported it to* Venice, *making that the common* Emporium *of* Chriſtendom. *Once again,* viz. *Anno* 1300, *the* Soldans *of* Egypt *reſtored the Paſſage by the* Red-Sea, *which having continued more than* 200 *years ; is now diſcontinued by the* Portugals, Spaniard, Engliſh *and* Dutch, *which bring them to their ſeveral Homes by the backſide of* Africk : *So that not only the Traffick of* Alexandria *is almoſt decayed, and the Riches of the* Venetians *much diminiſhed ; but the Drugs aud Spices have loſt much of their Virtue, as impaired by too much moiſture in ſo long a Voyage.* So much ſaith he, touching the Courſe and Alteration of this Trading ; to which I ſhall take leave to add, That for the better and more quick return of ſuch Commodities as were uſually brought into this Sea ; ſome of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, paſſable by Ships of greateſt Burden ; the Marks of whoſe proud Attempts are remaining ſtill ; *Seſoſtris* was the firſt who deſigned the Work, having before with good ſucceſs cut many Trenches from the River, and ſome Navigable, into many places of the Country ; by which, unprofitable Mariſhes were drained, the Country ſtrengthened, Trade made eaſie, and the People better furniſhed with water than in former times : *Darius* the great *Perſian* Monarch, ſeconded the ſame *Project* ; ſo did one of the *Ptolemies* : The like is ſaid of a Capricious *Portugal* in theſe latter times. But they all gave it over on the ſame Conſideration, which was a fear, leſt by letting in the *Red-Sea*, they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a ſecond Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Aſia Minor* which lay neareſt to them ; that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the Flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to underſtand, That all which hitherto hath been ſpoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* ſtrictly, and ſpecially ſo called ; containing only ſo much of the Country of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channel of the River *Nilus* ; and not to all that Tract of Ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea* and the Borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the Compaſs of the Kingdom of *Egypt* ; much leſs as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* alſo, though now accounted Members of that Body, and anciently Parts or Provinces of the Dioceſs of it. For *Egypt*, in the largeſt Senſe and acception of the Word, may be, and generally is divided into theſe three Parts, *viz.* 1. *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the Borders of *Idumæa* to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Weſtward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum* ; and on the Borders of *Æthiopia Superior* from the ſaid *Red-Sea*, to the Country of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya* or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly ſo called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Libya* to the greater *Syrtis* ; where it bordered with that part of the *African Dioceſs*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this firſt acception of it, we ſhall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities; which done, we ſhall deſcribe the other in their proper Places; and then unite them all in general Story.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many; there were no living elſe for the People in the time of the overflowing of the River. The principal of them, 1. Thoſe called *Montes Libyci*, lying in a long Chain on the Weſt of *Nilus*. 2. *Alabaſtrinus*; 3. *Prophyritus*; 4. *Trogius*; 5. *Baſanitus* on the Eaſt thereof. Betwixt theſe Hills the Courſe of the River is ſo hemmed in on both ſides, that at the upper part of the Stream, where it firſt entreth into *Egypt*, the ſpace betwixt the Mountains, is not above four Miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Cairo* to thirty ſeven; then opening wider and wider, 'till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increaſe in breadth. On theſe and other of the Mountains and leſſer Hills, ſtand moſt part of the Towns and Receptacles of the Country-People in the time of the Flood, riſing when leaſt, to fifteen *Cubits*, or ſeven Yards and an half.

Rivers of Note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being ſufficient of it ſelf to enrich this Country, which otherwiſe would be nothing but a *Sandy Deſart*. The head thereof not in the *Mountains of the Moon*, as was once ſuppoſed, but in the Lake *Zembre* in *Æthiopia interior*; paſſing from thence through the *higher Æthiopia*, or *Habaſſine* Empire, till it falls at laſt into this Country; and running in one continual *Channel* (excepting where it brancheth into little Iſlands, as it ſometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into ſeven great ſtreams, opening into the Sea with ſo many mouths. Namely; 1. *Heracleoticum*; 2. *Bolviticum*; 3. *Schaniticum*; 4. *Patinicum*; 5. *Mendicum*; 6. *Caniticum*; 7. *Peluſiacum*. The firſt and laſt of theſe Currents (which are the only two now left) being far diſtant from the other, and growing into one at the firſt point of the River's diviſion, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*; becauſe to ſuch as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it reſembleth that Letter in the *Greek Alphabet*. Now becauſe *Nilus* ſo runneth in its certain Channels, that the People have no other Water to make uſe of for all neceſſities; there are many By-trenches, and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the Care and Munificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the People, who know almoſt no other Drink than the Waters thereof, and indeed they need not; the Waters of this River being of ſuch excellent, both Taſte and Virtue, that when *Peſcennius Niger* ſaw his Soldiers murmur for want of Wine; *What* (ſaid he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the Water of* Nile *to drink*?

But beſides the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the People are ſupplied with that Commodity by Lakes and artificial *Channels*, which ſerve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Morter for their Buildings, and other ſuch inferiour uſes; ſometimes perhaps for Drink for the poorer ſort, who cannot be conveniently furniſhed with the Waters of the *Nile*. Amongſt the Trenches (which were many, as before was ſaid) thoſe of moſt eſtimation were the Works of *Ptolemy*, and the Emperour *Trajan*; the firſt falling into that Branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Iſle called *Heracleotis*; the other into the main body of it not far from *Cairo*. Theſe two, by reaſon of the many freſh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors: And betwixt theſe was ſeated the Land of *Goſhen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea* on the Eaſt and Weſt. The chief of Note amongſt the Lakes, were thoſe called, 1. *Marcotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Arapotes*, and *Maira*, by *Ptolemy*; all which names are nrw loſt, and changed into that of *Lago di Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Laccus* ſuppoſed to be the ſame which in the Book of *Maccabees* is called *Aſphar*, 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moeris*, now called *Bucharia*, more memorable than the reſt. In compaſs 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep; in the midſt whereof were two *Pyramids*, 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fiſh of this Lake for one ſix months in the year, is ſaid to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the King's Exchequer; for the other ſix, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolemæus* doth diſcharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts only. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extreme branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it reſembleth to him who ſtanding on the Sea-ſhore, could take a view of it, as before was ſaid. 2. That called *Thebais* from *Thebæ*, the principal City of it comprehending all the reſt of the courſe of the River, ſhut up on both ſides with the Mountains ſpoken of before. But this diviſion leaving out all thoſe parts hereof, which lay on the Eaſt-ſide towards the *Arabian Gulf*, and on the Weſt, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds*, or Diſtricts, by them called *Nomi*; increaſing in the time of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, to 46; *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20. more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Dioceſs* of the Empire; it was divided into four Provinces (not reckoning *Marmarica* and *Cyrene* into the accompt) that is to ſay, 1. *Egyptus*, ſpecially ſo called, containing all the *Delta*, and the Diſtrict or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Auguſtanica*, ſo called from *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on the Eaſt of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petræa*. 3. *Arcadia*, ſo called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whoſe time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both ſides of the River from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4. *Thebais*, extending on both ſides of the River, from the borders of *Libya Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous* unto *Æthiopia*: Divided otherwiſe by ſome into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Æthiopia* to the City of *Antinous*; *Mediam*, ſtretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the reſt. But at this time, that part hereof which lieth on the South and Eaſt of *Cairo* is called *Sand* or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharoahs*, becauſe neareſt unto *Æthiopia*, their moſt puiſſant Neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Cairo*, *Roſetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Erriſia*, wherein the *Ptolemean* Princes did moſt reſide; becauſe moſt convenient for receiving Supplies of Men from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Cairo* to *Teneſe* and *Damiata* is now called *Maremna*, in which the *Mamalucks* anciently made the ſeat of their Empire; becauſe more neighbouring to the Chriſtians, whom they ſtood in fear of, as likelieſt to invade them upon that ſide. The Preſent Viſier or Governour of *Egypt* and all the latter *Mamalucks* reſided at *Grand Cairo*, from the times the Weſtern Chriſtians were driven out of the Holy Land, which is ſeated in that part of *Egypt*, where the Ancient Kings of *Egypt* reſided, and the firſt, of the *Saracen Califfs*; becauſe it was then more convenient for the correſponding with *Arabia*, from whence they came, and which was then moſtly under them. The *Mamalucks* removed thither upon the taking *Damiata* by the Weſtern Chriſtians as being a place of greater Security; the *Turks* have continued there becauſe perhaps they found it the capital City when they Conquered *Egypt*, and alſo as being near the center of that Kingdom, and laſtly becauſe they regard not trade or Commerce nor are Maſters at Sea, as the *Ptolemie*'s were in a good degree; thus Reaſon of State, fancy, and humour have often changed the Seats of Empires and Kingdoms, by which Great Cities have been ruined and laid deſolate, and others have Sprung up and Grown conſiderable; as may be ſeen in *Egypt* and every where, if their ſtories were as well known as this is. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, no fewer than 20000 Cities; but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I ſhould much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus*, it is ſaid that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius* on a diligent ſearch, finds 300 only.

Thoſe of moſt note in the Province of *Auguſtanica*, 1. *Peluſium*, the moſt Eaſtern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, ſituate on the moſt Eaſtern Channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Peluſiacum*; by *Ammianus* ſaid to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himſelf in the Lake adjoyning, for the murder of his Brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to thoſe who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Auguſtanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, and the Epiſcopal Seat of St. *Iſidore*, ſurnamed *Peluſiotes*, whoſe eloquent and pious Epiſtles are ſtill extant. Out of the ruines hereof (if not the ſame under another Title) aroſe, 2 *Damiata*. A city upon one of the moſt eaſtern Mouths of the *Nile*; it was anciently called *Tamiata*, and is now called by the *Arabians*, *Damiat*: memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the Chriſtian Armies; none more than that under *John de Brenne*, the Titulary King of *Jeruſalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, Anno 1220. During which (being of 10 months continuance) the Famine and the Peſtilence ſo extremely raged, that the Town in a manner was diſpeopled, before the Beſiegers knew any thing of their Condition: 'till in the end two venturous Soldiers admiring the Silence and Solitude of ſo great a City, in a bravado ſcal'd the Walls, but found no Man to make reſiſtance. The next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every Houſe, and every corner of the Streets, whole heaps of dead Bodies, none to give them burial: A lamentable and ruthful ſpectacle. It was taken by the Chriſtians in the year 1218, but in 1221 they were forced to reſtore it, being involved in ſuch miſeries by the Waters that were ſet looſe upon them, that they muſt otherwiſe have periſhed: after this it was taken by *Lewis* the 10th in the year 1249; but that Prince being afterwards taken Priſoner by the *Sultan* the 5th of *April* 1250, in a Battel at *Faramia* together with *Charles* and *Alphonſus* his two Brothers, was again forced to reſtore it at his Ranſome; after which the *Saracens* burnt it. This is an *Arch-Biſhop's* See and under the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria* Longitude 63. 25. Latitude. 31. 10. The *Nubian Geographer* (ſaith p. 103.) That *Damiata* is placed ſome diſtance from the *Mediterranean* Sea, and there is a branch derived to it from that Branch which falls into the Lake of *Tennis*, which is the moſt Eaſtern Branch of all, and begins below *Tucba*, from which *Damiata* ſtands as our Author proves 91 miles to the North-Weſt, *Nubian Geogr.* p. 104. The Writers of the holy War who lived in the ſame time with the fore-cited Author, ſay that when *Almarick* King of *Jeruſalem* attacked it the firſt time, it was encompaſſed with three brick-Walls and was ſo ſtrong that though he took and deſtroyed *Peluſium* in 1667, yet he could not force *Damiata*: That when it was afterwards taken after a long ſiege, it was thought a wonder; for they found in it, vaſt Treaſures of Gold, Silver, Jewels and rich Merchandize till they grew Weary of Spoils, and reſtored it to the *Soldan*. And when *Lewis* King of *France* took it, It was defaced by fire and was yielded without any Defence, and reſtored by him as eaſily for his Ranſome; ſo that the City was burnt before he took it. This City Stands 25 miles more to the Weſt than *Peluſium* and upon the two Branches of the *Nile*. *Damiata* is an Ancient City environed with Walls containing 5 miles in compaſs, and but of Small ſtrength: It is Governed by a Sanjac without other Company but his houſhold. It is a delightful City abounding in Fine Gardens and fair Fountains. *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 200. This account given by one that ſaw it about 1566. 3. *Heros* or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian Iſthmus*, at the very bottom of the *Gulf*; remarkable for the firſt interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joſeph*, after his firſt coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the *City of the Sun*, now called *Betſames*; in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Aſenath* (whom *Pharoah* married unto *Joſeph*) was Prieſt or Prince; as is ſaid, *Gen.* 14. 45. Given (as *Joſephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the Sons of *Jacob*; by conſequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameſes* or *Goſhen*: and memorable in time ſucceeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the conſent of *Ptolemy* ſurnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Prieſt, then diſpoſſeſſed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much eſteemed by the *Helleniſts*, or *Grecizing Jews*; and though Schiſmatical at the beſt, in its firſt original, yet not Schiſmatical and Idolatrous too, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. This Temple is like that of *Jeruſalem* and built in the Reign of *Ptolemy Philometor*, about the year of the World 3780 which remained till the time of *Veſpaſian* 350 years after. In this place it is ſuppoſed, Our Saviour Lived when he was carried in Infancy into *Egypt*. This City ſtood upon the Eaſt-ſide of the *Nile* 45 *Engliſh* miles from *Memphis* to the Eaſt, 120 Miles from *Peluſium* to the South and the ſame diſtance from *Cliſma* to the North-Weſt; *Ptolemy*. Longitude. 62. 30. Latitude. 29. 50. In this place the Balſame was firſt planted when brought from *Jericho*, removed to *Grand Cairo*, and from thence to *Mecca*. 5. *Bubaſtis*, ſomewhat more North than *Heliopolis*, by ſome of the Ancients callad *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeſeth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Zioth*: ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the *Notitia* called *Caſtra Judæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganiſm*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. This old City was ruined intirely by *Nebuchadnezzar* the victorious *Aſſyrian* Monarch, about the year of the World 3380 (for the certain time is not Known) as was foretold by *Jeremiah Chap.* 44. *Ezekiel* 29. 30. *Jeremiah* 43. 46. *Nahum* 3. 6. *Arſinoe*, on the ſhore of the *Red-Sea*, ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*; Siſter of *Philadelphus*, and Wife to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatris*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*, now better known by the name of *Sues*. Of great Commerce and Trading in the time of the *Ptolemies*, now almoſt abandoned; and would be utterly deſerted, were it not made the ſtation of the *Turkiſh* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*; which being framed at *Cairo* of ſuch Timber as is brought thither by Sea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and ſometimes from the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea; are again taken into pieces, carried from *Cairo* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceived to be the ſame which in former times was called *Baal-Zephon* (of which ſee *Exod.* 14. 9.) the laſt incamping-place of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, who from hence paſſed through the *Red-Sea* upon dry Land. 7, *Gleba Rubra*, by the

Greeks called *Hiera Bolus*, and ſometimes *Erythra Bolus* alſo, more near the *Latin*; the redneſs of the ſoil giving name unto it; ſituate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a Misfortune that befell it than any thing elſe; purpoſely burnt by *Amenophes* the fifth, upon this occaſion: Being blind, he was aſſured by ſome of his Wizzards, that if he waſhed his Eyes with the Urine of a Woman, who had never known any but her own Husband, he ſhould be reſtored unto his Sight; after a long ſearch and many vain tryals, he met with one whoſe Water cured him, whom he took to Wife; and cauſing all the reſt whom he had made tryal of, to be brought together to this Town, he ſet fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the Women there aſſembled; which Tale, if true, is little to the honour of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of moſt note and obſervation in the Province of *Egypt*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called; are 1. *Alexandria*, ſituate Weſtward of the *Delta*, overagainſt the Iſle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; with which on the one ſide, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended, the Work of *Alexander* the Great, and by him peopled with *Greeks* immediately after his Conqueſt of *Egypt*; the Regal Seat of the *Ptolemies*, whilſt *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom; and afterwards the Metropolis of it, when a *Roman* Dioceſs. It was built *Anno Mundi*, 3618, that is 330 years before Chriſt, in the form of a *Macedonian Chlamys*, or Cloak, in the ſpace of ſeventeen days, as *Juſtin* ſaith, *Lib.* 11. the Walls then extending to a Compaſs of ſix Miles (*Italian*) and he gave it his own Name. It grew hereupon, to be the biggeſt City next to *Rome* in all the World, and was once 30 *Stadia's* long, and 10 broad, and had 15 *Italian Miles* in compaſs, *Joſeph.* 11. *de Bell.* 16. *r.* 11. Yet the moſt remarkable thing it had was its Haven, ſo ſecured that it had a difficult acceſs in the moſt ſerene Weather. The entrance was narrow, and made winding by concealed Work in the Water; to the left hand it had an artificial Mole, to the right, the Iſland called the *Pharus*, from a Light-Houſe-Tower placed on it, which might be ſeen 300 *Stadia's* off at Sea. In the Year 3920, *Auguſtus Cæſar* took it the ſecond time, and made *Egypt* a Province of his Empire; yet it continued, even then, the *Metropolis* of *Egypt*, and *Strabo* Lib. 13. ſaith, It ſupplied four Months Corn to *Rome*, and paid more Tribute in one Month, than *Jeruſalem* in a whole Year; Its Inhabitants being then 300000 Free-men, as *Diodorus* ſaith. St. *Mark* planted the Goſpel here, and watered it with his Blood, when he had preached twenty Years: It was conſidered much more than now it is, before the building of Grand *Cairo*: It is inhabited by about two thouſand Souls, which are too few for ſo vaſt a City; accordingly much of it is nothing but Ruins. The *Pharos*, once an Iſle, is now joyned to the City, and a Fort built upon it by the *Turks*, with a Garriſon for the ſecurity of the Port. The firſt Conqueſt the *Saracens* made of *Egypt*, was in the Year of Chriſt (as they ſay) 641; but this City was taken in 641, ſo that Invaſion was made ſooner. This City was taken by *Amrus* the *Moor*, after a Siege of Thirteen Months: it was retaken from them in the times of the Holy War, *Anno Chriſti* 1167, but it fell ſoon after into their Hands again. At the ſame time, with the *Nubian* Geographer, lived *William*, Archbiſhop of *Tyre*. And he, lib. 19. *de Bell. Sacro*, ſaith, *Almararick*, King of *Jeruſalem*, had this City delivered up to him in the Year 1167, after a long and tedious Siege. It was then a very Potent and Rich City, but more accuſtomed to Merchandize than War, and had but a ſmall Garriſon of *Turks*, who diſtruſted the Citizens, and were hated by them; when the Chriſtians entred the City, the Inhabitants admired, That ſo *great a Multitude of Citizens and Strangers, who had done their utmoſt to defend it, had yet been kept within the Walls, and reduced to ſuch neceſſities, as they had ſuffer'd by ſo ſmall an Army; there being not above* 500 *Horſe, and* 4 *or* 5000 *Foot that were in the City*; *Leo Africanus. John Plano Carpini*, ſaith: About the Year 1246, it was beſieged by the *Tartars*, but what was the Event, he then knew not, *Hackluit.* Tom. 1. The Buildings of which this City now conſiſts, are mean and few, erected on the Ruines of the former, in that part which is next the Haven, the reſt being Deſolate; the Walls are almoſt quadrangular, and have Four Gates; they have neither Tillage nor Paſture, but upon the Lake, and that is little, and ill Husbanded, all the reſt is Deſart. The Haven is now ſo unſafe, that 22 Ships periſhed in it the Night before our Author enter'd it, by a North-Wind, *Sandys* Travels, *p.* 90. This City is an old decayed thing, having been a fair one in Ancient time, near two *Engliſh* Miles in length, being all vaulted under for preſerving freſh Water, when the *Nile* overflows in *September*: The Fields about it yield plenty of good Corn; the Port is ſecured by two ſtrong Caſtles, and the City by a third, all well planted with Cannon; this was the ſtate of it in 1586, *Hackluit*, To. 2. p. 281. It hath 3 Gates, 100 Churches and Moſques, but the part deſerted is ſix times greater than that inhabited, *ib. p.* 284. Adorned Anciently with many ſtately Buildings; of which moſt memorable, the *Serapium*, (or Temple of their God *Serapis*,) for ſumptuous workmanſhip, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferiour to none but the *Roman* Capitol; and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had ſtored it with 700000 Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*. A City of great Trading, and infinite Riches, μέγιϛον ἐμπόριον τῆς οἰκυμένης the greateſt Empory of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens ſo abounded in all Licentiouſneſs both of Life and Speech, that they ſpared not the Emperour himſelf, if he came in their way; but they paid dearly for their Folly. For *Caracalla*, not ſo patient of a Contumely as ſome wiſer Princes, having felt the Laſhes of their Tongues when he was amongſt them, aſſembled all the Youth of the City, as if out of them he would have choſen ſome to attend his Perſon; and ſuddenly gave command to his Soldiers, to put them all to the Sword: A ſlaughter ſo great and univerſal, that the River *Nilus*, coloured with the Blood of the ſlain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red-Sea*. In this City, *Anno* 180. *Pantænus* read both Divinity and Philoſophy to all ſuch as would come to hear him: Which, as it is conceived to give the firſt hint to the inſtituting of Univerſities in the reſt of Chriſtendom; ſo from that ſmall beginning the Schools of *Alexandria* grew ſo great and eminent; that *Nazianzen* calleth them Παντοίας παιδεύσεως ἐργαϛήριον, the Shop, or Workhouſe, as it were, of all kinds of Learning: Much ſhort of what it was, even in point of Trading, eſpecially ſince the diverſion of the Spice-Trade from the Bay of *Arabia*, and utterly diveſted of thoſe Beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the preſent by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Chriſtian Cophties*; more for ſome little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleaſure in the place; Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable onely for the houſe of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the moſt part in *Cairo*) and a Church in which St. *Mark* their firſt Biſhop was ſaid to be buried. 2. *Canopus* ſituate Eaſt of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; ſo called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having ſuffered ſhipwrack upon this Coaſt, was there interred by his Maſter. A Town ſo branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beaſtlineſs, and Luxury, that as *Seneca* very well obſerved, he that avoided the viciouſneſs and debauchery of it, could not ſcape the infamy: the very place adminiſtring matter for ſuſpicion. 3. *Roſetta*, on the ſame branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whoſe ruines it aroſe; built by a Slave of one of the *Egyptian Califfs*; unwalled, and deſtitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all ſorts of Commodities, and well frequented by the Merchants. The *Nubian Geographer*, pag. 106, Sets this city which he always calls *Raſcid* 95 Miles from *Malig*, which is 98 Miles from *Sciantaf*, where the *Nile* is firſt divided and that is from *Grand Cairo* 50 Miles. So that this City is 243 Miles from *Grand Cairo*, and from *Alexandria* it is 60 Miles towards the Eaſt; wherein he agrees with *Mounſieur Thevenot*. *Leo Africanus* placeth it upon the Eaſt ſide of the *Nile*, 3 miles from the *Mediterranean* Sea. It has very many beautiful houſes on the *Nile*, and a fair Market-place. It has alſo a harbour will hold about 4 Barks. It has no walls, the grounds about it yield plenty of Dates and Rice; the inhabitants civil to ſtrangers. Our Author was here when *Selim* the *Grand Seigniour* returned to it from taking *Alexandria*, that is in 1517. Thus far *Leo* p. 303. 4. *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of ſome eminent Victory, and probably of the Conqueſt of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town ſtanding within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Aphrodites* and *Aphroditopolis*, ſo called from *Venus*, who was here worſhipped: ſituate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the ſame branches of the River alſo: whence that *Nomus* or Diviſion had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7. *Plinthine*, on the ſea-ſide; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the Land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Mareotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called alſo *Heptanomus*, becauſe it contained ſeven of the *Nomi* or Diviſions, into which *Egypt* was diſtributed by the *Macedonians*, the places of moſt note were and are, 1. *Memphis*, on the Weſtern banks of *Nile*, not far from the ſharp point of the *Delta*; where the River firſt begins to divide it ſelf; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharoahs*: by one of which who removed the Seat-Royal from *Thebæ* hither, it is ſaid to be built, and called thus by the name of his Daughter. In compaſs, when it flouriſhed about 20 miles; great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongſt others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, *Serapis*, beſet with *Sphynxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of ſome monſtrous Reſemblances, ſufficient to ſhew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramids* before deſcribed, ſtood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, ſaying.

Barbara Pyramidum ſileat miracula Memphis.

Let barbarous Memphis *brag no more*
Of her Pyramids, *as before.*

The Prieſts of this place were ſo much celebrated for their Learning, that *Plato* and *Pythagoras* went to hear them; yet they were noted, to be exceſſive Superſtitious: In St. *Hierom's* time they worſhipped here a Braſs-Bull as a God, *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod* took this City, which was afterwards called *Babylon*, now *Grand Cairo*, and of whoſe greatneſs Strange incredible things are related in our times, as that it is twice as big as *Paris*; but in Truth it is equal to *Rome*, 11 Miles in Compaſs, and much more Populous; as *Lend. Romanus de Navigat.* Lib. 1. C. 1. ſaith, *Selim* took this City and added it to his Dominions, in the year 1515. it is now ſenſibly decayed as to its Greatneſs; in the year 1566 it was 18 miles in compaſs, and ſo populous, that it could receive no more, and they were then building new Houſes about it, *Hackluit*. Tom. 2. pag. 200. In 1586 It had 2400 Moſques *ibid.* 287. *Leo Africanus* makes it much greater as to the number of the Inhabitants, and Populous Suburbs, when it was Conquered by the *Turks*, pag. 316. *Eng*. But in the preſent age it is reduced to 8 miles in compaſs, and nothing near ſo populous as it was then; yet it is ſtill by far the moſt populous City in *Egypt*, the reſt being by the oppreſſion of the *Turks* brought almoſt to nothing; the Wealth of *Egypt* being perpetually drained away and carried to *Conſtantinople*, from whence it never returns back again; and this I look upon to be the true reaſon why *Egypt* and its Cities have been more Ruined by the *Turks*, in leſs than 200 years, than by all the *Mahometan* Princes that poſſeſſed it 800 years before that time.

2. *Babylon*, called for diſtinction's-ſake, *Babylon Ægyptiorum*, built on the other ſide of the River, and ſomewhat more unto the North: ſaid to be founded by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch, the firſt that made this Kingdom ſtoop to the yoke of a Foreigner; and by him peopled with ſome *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans* tranſplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruines; amongſt which, many of the Chriſtian Temples and Monaſteries do lie there in rubbiſh; the Caſtle whereof ſerved long after for the Garriſon of three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by ſome to be the *Babylon* mentioned by Saint *Peter*, in his firſt Epiſtle Chap. *ult*. which the following words, *and Mark my Son*, (Saint *Mark* being the firſt Biſhop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apoſtle of *Egypt*) may make ſomewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I diſpute not now. Out of the ruines of this City aroſe 3. *Cairo*, now, and for many Ages paſt, the chief of this Country: raiſed from the aſhes of old *Babylon* by the *Califfs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamalucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compaſs not above eight miles; but full of Streets, the number of which ſaid to be 18000, every one of them fortified with a Great Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every ſeveral ſtreet an impregnable Fortreſs. Found ſo by *Selymus* the firſt, when he conquered *Egypt*, who ſpent three days in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publick, eſpecially the *Moſques*, beyond thought magnificent. Viſited every ſeventh year with a dreadful Peſtilence; yet ſtill ſo populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thouſand in a day, or three hundred thouſand within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards, both within the City and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleaſant Lake; but made more pleaſant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual ſolace and delights. Fortified at the South-end with a Stately Caſtle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck-Sultans*) ſituate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country alſo: ſo large, that it ſeemeth a City of it ſelf: immured with high walls, divided into many partitions of ſeveral Courts, in times paſt the places of exerciſe; and entred by doors of Iron. Deſtroyed for the moſt part by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to ſome rebellion; or envying the *Mamalucks* the glory of having been the Maſters of ſo

brave a Manſion. That which is left, now ſerving for the habitation of the *Turkiſh Baſſa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Metared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Cairo*; the ſoil whereof is ſaid to be ſo rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with Sand or Gravel, ſo moderating the extreme rankneſs of it. 5. *Arſinoe*, on the Weſt-ſide of the *Nile*, and ſomewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before deſcribed; called alſo (to difference it from another of the ſame name on the ſhore of the *Red-Sea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monſter. 6. *Nilopolis* or *Nili Civitas*; in the Iſland called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River; moſt memorable for being the Epiſcopal Seat of *Chæremeon*, a right Godly Prelate; of whom ſee *Euſebius* in the 6. Book, and 34. Chapter of his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory. 7. *Troia* on the Eaſtern ſtream which makes that Iſland not much obſervable, but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying near unto it; out of which were digged the Stones which made the Pyramids. 8. *Cinopolis* in a little Iſland upon the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercury*; called alſo *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antinous*, now *Antius* founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his eſpecial Favourite; the moſt Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionyſias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, ſituate on the South end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Diviſion called *Oaſias parva*. 12. *Clyſma*, upon the ſhores of the *Gulf*, a *Roman* Garriſon.

Cities of moſt note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greateſt of this part. 2. *Ptolemais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolemies*, and the goodlieſt City of this Province, ſucceeding unto *Thebæ* both in power and greatneſs. 3. *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, ſix days Journey from *Cairo*, going up the water; but by what name called amongſt the Ancients, I do no where find. Affirmed (erroneouſly, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, when they fled with CHRIST our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now ſomewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the Mother of *Conſtantine*. This City much reſorted to (on the ſtrength of this Tradition only) by many aged Chriſtian *Cophties*, who deſire to die there. 4. *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the Banks of the River. 5. *Tentyra*, in a little Iſle ſo called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The Inhabitants whereof were the only Men who durſt encounter the *Crocodile*; a Creature of a terrible Name, but a cowardly Nature; of which it is ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, That it aſſaulteth thoſe that flie from it, and flieth from thoſe who do aſſault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is ſaid by the Apoſtle *James* 4. 7. that if he be *riſiſted, he will flie from us*; Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Eſt Leo, ſi fugias; ſit ſtat, quaſi Muſca recedit.

Give ground, a Lion he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or Water-courſe, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other ſide of the River; in old times, a moſt noted *Empory* for *Indian* and *Arabian* Wares; from whence not only the Chriſtians of this Country are thought to have the name of *Cop[illegible]ties*; but the whole Country to be originally called *Æ[illegible]yptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the Land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebæ* the reſidence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Buſiris*, in compaſs 140 furlongs, or 17 Miles and an half; called alſo *Hecatompylæ*, from the number of an hundred Gates, which were ſaid to be in it. So beautified with Coloſſes, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought μηδεμίαν τῶν ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον οὕτω κεκοσμῆσθαι to be the *None-ſuch* of the World. Decayed on the removing of the Court to *Memphis*; it became a ruine ſo long ſince, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*, as he telleth us, ſaying,

Atque vetus Thebe *centum jacet obruta portis.*

Old Thebe *yielding to the Fates,*
Lies buried with his hundred Gates.

8. *Abydus*, now called *Abutick*, once the Seat-Royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*; renowned for the Temple of *Oſiris*, more for the Statue of *Memnon*, which, though made of ſtone, did at the riſing of the Sun yield a vocal ſound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the Banks of *Nile*, neighboured by *Chrophi* and *Mophi*, two ſharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Leſſer Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we ſhall ſpeak more fully in *Æthiopia*. The City ſeated in an Iſland of the River *Nile*, on the Borders of *Æthiopia ſub Ægypto*, (as the Ancients called it) known unto *Ptolemy* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Eccleſiaſtical Writers by that of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heatheniſm for the Town and Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein ſtood the *Nilometrium* or ſtanding-Pillars, by which they did obſerve the increaſe of the River; removed ſince to the Caſtle of *Michias*, two Miles from *Cairo*: in times of Chriſtianity, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabeniſiotæ*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Aſina*) a little North of *Elephantis*, ſituate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by ſome Aſtronomers; which when the Sun entred the Sign, was wholly enlightned with his Beams, without any Shadow, ſo perpendicularly did the body of it ſtand over the Pit. This the laſt City of *Egypt* towards *Æthiopia*.

And now I ſhall proceed according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*; but being that *Libya* and *Cyrene*, are now accounted Members of it; the Fortunes whereof they have alſo followed in all or moſt of the mutations of State and Government; I ſhall firſt take a view of them as the Limbs of this Body, and ſhew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2. *MARMARICA*.

2. *LIBYA* or *MARMARICA*, hath on the Eaſt, *Egypt*, properly ſo called; on the Weſt, *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the Mediterranean Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libycum*, and ſometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, ſome part of *Æthiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old *Greek* word λίβος ſignifying Black, agreeable to the Complexion of the People, which is black and ſwarthy; λίβυς, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, ſaith a learned Writer; or poſſible enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word ſignifying Thirſt; as ſuitable unto the nature of the Soil, which is dry and ſandy, in which reſpect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from theſe Coaſts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*, and the Promontory in *Sicily* oppoſite unto it, that of *Lilybæum*. It was alſo called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaridæ*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolemy* in *Cyrene*; and ſometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The Country for the moſt part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; inſomuch as *Alexander* paſſing thorough part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the ſpace of four days, ſaw neither Man, Beaſt, Bird, Tree, nor River; covered over in moſt places with a thick light Sand, which the Winds remove up and down continually, turning Valleys into Hills, and Hills into Valleys. Found by *Cambyſes* to his coſt, who as baſely eſteeming of the Gods as he did of his Subjects, ſent part of his Army into this Country to deſtroy the Temple above mentioned; but in the paſſage towards that prohibited place, Fifty thouſand of them were overwhelmed and ſmothered in a Storm of Sand; the reſt with much ado eſcaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya ſitiens*, thirſty *Libya*, (——*per calidas* Libyæ ſitientis *arenas*) in that verſe of *Lucan*.

The People, Neighbours unto *Egypt*, and conſequenty much of the ſame condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they were called *Adyrnachidæ*) to be govern'd by the like Laws and Cuſtoms as the *Egyptians were*; but do differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black; of Conſtitution, lean and dry, and inclining to Melancholy; angry on every little occaſion, very litigious and eager Proſecuters of their Dues. By an old Obſervation among themſelves, they abſtained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obſtinate in denying their accuſtomed *Tributes*, that he who could not ſhew the Marks of his Sufferings for it, either *Black* or *Blew*, was accounted no body: And ſo reſolved to conceal any thing diſgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his Name. At this time little differing in Perſon, Temper, or Condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes* intermixt amongſt them.

Converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*, with, or not long after the reſt of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whoſe Juriſdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*; to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occaſionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*, who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils*, had diſturbed the Church. His *Hereſie* condemned in that famous Council; but his Perſon, by the Divine Juſtice of God, reſerved to a more remarkable puniſhment: Being ſent for by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to make a Recantation of his former *Hereſies*, he firſt writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he had in his Boſom; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had Written; which Words the Emperour referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in the Boſom. But God would not be ſo cozened, though the Emperour was. For as he paſſed in Triumph through the Streets of *Conſtantinople*, he drew aſide into a private Houſe of Eaſe, where he voided his Guts in the Draught, and ſent his Soul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his Body.

Not more infamous for the Birth of this *Miſcreant*, who denied the *Divinity* of *Chriſt*; than famous for the Birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence ſirnamed *Libyca*, by whom the ſame had been fore-ſhewn. Which *Sibyls* ſeem to have taken denomination from Διὸς βουλαὶ, i. e. *Jovis conſiliorum conſciæ*. They were in number Ten, *viz.* 1, *Perſica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Samia*, 6. *Helleſpontiaca*, 7. *Tiburtina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythræa*, and 10. *Cumana*; which laſt is affirmed to have written the Nine Books of *Sibyls*. They were all preſented by an Old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay ſo great a Sum of Money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the Old Woman burnt three of them, requiring as much Money for the other ſix as for all; which being denied, ſhe alſo burnt another three, asking as much for the three remaining as for the reſt; which *Superbus*, amazed, gave, and the old Trot vaniſhed. Theſe Books contained manifeſt Tokens of the Kingdom of Chriſt, his Name, his Birth and Death. They were burned by the Arch-Traytor *Stilico*. So that thoſe Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the moſt part only ſuch as had been extracted out of other Writings, where their Authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Caſaubon*, and ſome other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *piæ fraudes*; compoſed of purpoſe by the Fathers of the *Primitive* Times, to win credit to the Faith of CHRIST; yet dare I not ſo far diſparage thoſe moſt godly Men, as to believe they would ſupport ſo ſtrong an Edifice with ſo weak a Prop, or borrow help from Falſehood to evict a Truth. Or if they durſt have been ſo imprdently venturous, how eaſie had it been for their learned Adverſaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the reſt of more eminent note, to have detected the Impoſture, and ſilenced the Chriſtian *Advocates* with reproach and ſcorn? But of this enough here, more at large elſewhere.

Rivers of Note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Country ſo full of *Sands*, there be any at all: Some Lakes I meet with in my Authors; the principal of which, 1. *Laccus*, 2. *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linxamo*, 3. *Clæertus*; ſufficient to preſerve their few Cattel from the taint of thirſt. The Mountains of moſt note, 1. thoſe called *Anogambri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this laſt extended Weſt and Eaſt, in a ſtraight Line from the 51 degree of *Longitude*, to the 53. 3. *Aliphus*, 4. *Ogdomus*, 5. *Timodes*, 6. *Alpis*; not much obſervable, but that they ſerve for *Land-marks* to diſcover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of moſt eſteem in former times, 1. *Batrachus*, by ſome called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town, 2. *Phthia*; and 3. *Aniſiſphyra*, two Port-Towns alſo. 4. *Tetrapyrgia*, ſo called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolemy*, 5. *Meſuchis*, more within the Land, 6. *Mazacilla*, another Mid-land Town. 7. *Chæreola*, mentioned amongſt the chief Cities of this Tract by *Ammianus*, 8. *Paratonium*, now *Porto-raſſa*, which with *Peluſium* are by *Florus* called the two *Horns* of *Egypt*; which whoſoever held faſt, would be ſure to maſter it. By ſome old Writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, ſeated very near it. So anciently honoured with an *Oracle*, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is ſaid to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Perſeus* and *Hercules*, touching their Adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great; but the Oracle by that time had learnt to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the Son of that God whom he came to worſhip. The Temple ſeated in the middle of a vaſt ſandy *Deſart*, environ'd with a pleaſant and delightful Grove, about ſix Miles or more in circuit; watered with wholſome Springs, refreſhed with a temperate Air, and ſhaded with Fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their Leaves a perpetual Spring. Fortified with a Triple Wall, within the firſt whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings; within the ſecond a *Seraglio* for his Women; in the third, Lodgings for the Officers at Court: The *Oracle* fitly placed (ſo the *Prieſts* would have it) near the Seraglio of the Ladies; before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the Oblations were firſt waſhed, then offered. A place of great repute in *ſacred* and *civil* eſtimate; all the adjoining Country taking hence the Name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that Name reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9. *Antiphra*, on the Eaſt border of it towards *Alexandria*. 10. *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolemais*, by the Name of one of the *Ptolemies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of ſuch account, that from hence the whole Country had the Name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcæi*, (——*Lateque furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Libyrarchæ* and *Baſſachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniatæ* and *Proſaditæ*, in the midland parts; the *Libyægyptii*, bordering neareſt unto *Egypt*, with the People whereof ſo intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one Name and Nation. Others there were of leſs, or as little note, but all deſcended properly of *Naphtuhim*, the Son of *Miſraim*; from whom the Name of *Neptune*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, ſeems to be derived; yet ſo that *Lebabin* his Brother muſt come in for a ſhare; the Founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the ſame original with thoſe of *Egypt*, they followed the ſame Fortunes alſo, till the times of the *Ptolemies*; by whom ſometimes given for portion with the Title of a Kingdom to their younger Children. By the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Apion*, the laſt King hereof, a Baſtard-Son of *Ptolemy* ſirnamed *Euergetes* the ſeventh King of that Houſe; bequeathed unto the Senate and People of *Rome*. By whom firſt ſuffered to live under them, as a *Free-ſtate*, till the Conqueſt of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and ſo accordingly deſcribed by *Ptolemy*; where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniaca* occur amongſt the *Nomi*, or Diviſions of it. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of that Dioceſs, and govern'd by a Lord-Preſident, under the *Præfectus Auguſtalis*, or ſupreme Commander of the Emperors.

2. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Marmarica*; on the Weſt, with *Africa propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and ſome part of the *Mediterranean*, and the greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the Deſarts of *Libya*.

It took this Name from *Cyrene*, the chief City of it, from whence ſometimes alſo called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and ſome other *Roman* Writers, it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, *viz.* 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Ptolemais*, 3. *Arſinoe*, 4. *Darnice*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the ſame Reaſon *Libya Pentapolis*, the Name of *Libya* extending over many of theſe *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the preſent, it paſſeth with that laſt deſcribed by the Name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the greater *Syrtis* unto *Egypt*, is no leſs than 1300 Miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts deſolate and barren, ſtored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the People living up and down in ſcatter'd Houſes, and at ſuch a diſtance, as if it were in ſo many Iſlands. Deſtitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping; if any fell, it was dried up preſently by the Sands. But within fifteen Miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful and well inhabited.

The People in old times were ſaid to have been utterly ignorant of buying and ſelling, of fraud and ſtealing, not knowing, or not caring for the Uſe of Money; content with little, not ſuperfluous in their Cloaths or Buildings; their Houſes for the moſt part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Oſier-Twigs. Much alter'd in the firſt part of their Character, ſince the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieving Nation, given wholly to Robbery and Spoil. So lazy that they will not Manure or Till their Land, but provide themſelves with Corn from *Sicily*; laying their Children to pawn for it, 'till by their Thieving they can raiſe a ſufficient Sum to diſcharge the Debt.

One only River I find in it, but of Fame enough to ſerve for many; by *Ptolemy* called *Luthon*, by *Pliny*, *Lethon*; by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its firſt Original, it riſeth up again about *Berenice*; feigned therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create forgetfulneſs in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the Dead to remember nothing. Thence the occaſion of the fancy. Some Lakes I find alſo in it, whereof one occaſioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more neceſſary) near *Paliurus*. With Mountains better ſtored (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1. Thoſe called *Herculis Arenæ*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country Eaſt and Weſt, 2. *Bucolicus*, on the South of thoſe: And, 3. *Volpus*, a long ridge of Hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the Eaſt parts near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the Weſt of that; once of ſuch power, that it contended with *Carthage* for ſome preheminencies: Then the chief Lady of this Tract, which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Eratoſthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviour*'s Croſs. 3. *Ptolemais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arſinoe*; built or repaired by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*; the Epiſcopal City of *Syneſius*, a learned and a religious Biſhop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epiſtles extant. 4. *Arſinoe*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Lathon*; ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, the Siſter of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magus*, once King of this Country. 5. *Berenice*, on the Weſtern Bank of the ſaid River, ſo called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the ſame nature) the Daughter of *Magus*: The furtheſt Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the greater *Syrtis*. This laſt a Quick-ſand very dangerous to Mariners, in compaſs 635 Miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Paliurus*, more within the Land, but on the Borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungiſari*, by *Ptolemy* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules* near the *Greater Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Heſperides* of their Golden Apples. Thoſe *Heſperides* ſaid to be *Ægle*, *Arethuſa*, and *Heſperethuſa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*. Their Orchard placed by *Ptolemy*, betwixt this Tower and *Palieurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantick* Iſlands; by *Virgil* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and poſſibly in all alike. 9. *Zemythus*, 10. *Acabis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Feſſan*, of greateſt name now, though ſcarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Asbetæ* on the Eaſt, the *Barcitæ* near the *Greater Syrtis*, the *Macatutæ* and *Leganici* near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably deſcended from *Naphtubim* the Son of *Mizraim*, of whom there ſtill remain ſome Foot-ſteps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus*, by ſome miſtakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Grecians* ſaid to be the Son of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Ariſtæus*; who being ſent out to ſeek their Fortunes, *Ariſtæus* fell into the Iſland named *Cæos*; and *Aptuchus*, or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them firſt planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*, ſeems to come from *Naptubim*; moſt highly worſhipped by this People, becauſe he firſt taught them τὴν τῶν ἁρμάτων χαλιζευξιν, the Art of training Horſes to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyrenians* afterwards grew ſo expert, that they could drive their Chariots in a Round or Circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the ſelf-ſame tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan*, landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and founded it in ſo good a courſe of Life and Diſcipline, that in ſhort time it came to have Dominion over the moſt part of this Country; and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apryes* King of *Egypt*, they ſued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their aſſiſtance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themſelves, they craved aid of *Ptolemy* the firſt of that Race, by whom they were finally ſubdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a Son of his laſt Wife by a former Husband, whom he had married to *Arſinoe*, one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice*, the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*. Alieneatd from which Crown again, for the preferment of ſome of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolemies*, the laſt King hereof, to the People of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by whom united in one Government with the Iſle of *Crete*; but made a Province of it ſelf by the following Emperors, never ſince ſeparated from the fortune and Affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we haſten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the queſtion in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythians*, being not eaſily decided. Whether it were ſo Ancient, as the *Egyptians* ſay, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, That they had the Memory and Story of 13000 years, and a Succeſſion of 330 Kings in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, who was contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if underſtood of *Solary* Years, meaſured by the Courſe of the Sun, muſt not be allowed of; becauſe it maketh them many thouſand Years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunary*, which is moſt agreeable unto the Account of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their Years by Months; it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and ſo fall anſwerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and thoſe of twenty four or twenty five ſeveral *Dynaſties*, the matter is not ſo ſoon made up. For either thoſe Kings muſt not be all Kings or ſupreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their ſeveral *Regents* or *Vicegerents*, armed with Regal power; and thoſe *Dynaſties* not the ſucceſſion of ſo many Regal Families, but of their Subſtitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live ſucceſſively under one ſupreme; or elſe we muſt needs look on *Egypt* as diſtracted in thoſe times into ſeveral Kingdoms, amongſt the Princes of thoſe *Dynaſties*, before remembred; or finally, we muſt look for ſome of thoſe Kings and Princes before the Flood; by either of theſe ways, the buſineſs may be well agreed. For if that moſt of them were but the names of ſeveral *Regents*, (as probably enough it is) there might be many ſuch in the Reign of one King; according to the King's fancy, the merit of particular Perſons, or the neceſſities of State: Changes of great Officers, eſpecially if grown too great, are not new nor ſtrange. If they were all Kings, or ſupreme Rulers, (as it is alſo probable) we find not any one thing of moment to perſwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their ſeveral parts (as in other Countries in thoſe times) 'till the greater had devoured the leſs. Or if they were the Names of ſuch ſovereign Princes, as had the ſole Command of *Egypt* before the Flood, (as ſome think they were) they might amount in all to ſo great a number, and ſo many *Dynaſties*; the Iniquity of thoſe times, the ambition of great Perſons, and conſequently the ſhort lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That *Egypt*, and moſt part of the World, was peopled before the Flood, hath been already proved in our general Preface: If peopled, then without queſtion under ſome Form of Government: The names of which Governours (call them Kings or Rulers, or what elſe you pleaſe) might be preſerved in *Egypt* on Pillars of Braſs or Stone; or otherwiſe tranſmitted by Tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this Country was firſt planted after the *Confuſion of Babel*. But that old Stock of Kings and People being deſtroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* ſucceeded next in their deſolate Dwellings; yet ſo that the Poſterity of *Chus* and *Lebabin*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their ſhares therein. From the firſt of which deſcended the Inhabitants of thoſe parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: In which reſpect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or diviſions bordering on the *Iſthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*; but the People dwelling on thoſe ſhores, were called *Arabes*, divided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-ægyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together, inhabiting in *Maræotica*, and the Weſtern parts. But though theſe People were derived from ſeveral Anceſtors, they made one Nation in the total; ſubject to *Mizraim* as their Chief, and after his deceaſe, unto his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may obſerve, That in *Cham*, our greateſt Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*: *Mizraim* they gueſs to be *Oſiris*, the great God of *Egypt*. To him ſucceeded *Typhon*, not by right of Blood, but by Uſurpation; who diſpoſſeſſed by *Lebabim*, the Brother ef *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Ægyptius*) the Kingdom was reſtored to *Orus*, the the Son of *Oſiris*. During the time of theſe few Princes, happened all thoſe things which were recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the firſt going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Oſiris*, to the advancement of *Joſeph* in the Reign of *Orus*, in which there paſſed the 15, 16, and 17

Dynaſties of Regal Vice-Roys; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to thoſe mighty Princes. The Kings themſelves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar Names; as afterwards their Succeſſors here had the name of *Ptolemy*, and the *Roman* Emperors, that of *Cæſar*. Few of them famous in the Stories of other Nations, or of renown for their Atchievments and Exploits abroad; contenting themſelves with the Revenues of their own Dominions, and ſpending the ſurpluſage thereof in building Cities, draining the Marſhes of the *Nile*, or other works of Oſtentation and Magnificence. Only *Seſoſtris* is of fame for his undertakings, though when he had caſt up his Accompt, he got nothing by them; of whom it is reported, That being a King of great Wealth and Puiſſance, he had brought under ſubjection all his neighbouring Princes whom he compelled in turns to draw his Chariot. It happened that one of theſe unfortunate Princes caſt his Eye many times on the Coach-wheel, and being by *Seſoſtris* demanded the cauſe of his ſo doing, he replyed, *That the falling of that Spoke loweſt, which but juſt before was the higheſt in the Wheel, put him in mind of the inſtability of Fortune.* The King deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be ſo drawn in his Chariot. He was alſo the firſt that encountred the *Scythians* in Battel; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army againſt them. The *Scythians* much marvelled, that a King of ſuch great Revenues would wage War againſt a Nation ſo poor, with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquiſhed, a perpetual Infamy and Diſgrace. For their parts they reſolved to meet him as an Enemy, whoſe overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were diſcomfited, and purſued even to their own Doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythian* could not enter the Country, becauſe of the Fenns, with whoſe paſſage they were unacquainted; and ſo they returned. Which ſaid, without troubling our ſelves with their many *Dynaſties*, we will lay down the Succeſſion of their Kings, as well as we can; the diſagreement of Hiſtorians and Chronologers, touching this Succeſſion, being irreconcilable.

THE

PHARAOHS, or KINGS of *EGYPT* of *Egyptian* Race.

A. M.		
	1	*Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, by the *Grecians* called *Oſiris*: In whoſe time *Abraham* went into *Egypt*.
	2	*Typhon*, an Uſurper.
	3	*Orus*, the Son of *Oſiris*, reſtored unto the Kingdom by his Unkle *Lebabim*; the Advancer of *Joſeph*.
2207	4	*Amaſis*, *Themoſis*, or *Amos*, in whoſe time *Jacob* went down into *Egypt*. 25.
2233	5	*Cheborn*. 12.
2245	6	*Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*. 21.
2266	7	*Amærſis*, the Siſter of *Amenophthis*. 22.
2288	8	*Mephres*. 12.
2300	9	*Meſphormutheſis*. 25.
2325	10	*Thamoſis*, or *Thuthmoſis*. 10.
2335	11	*Amenophthis* II. ſuppoſed to be *Memnon* and the Vocal Statue. 31.
2366	12	*Orus* II. the *Buſiris* of the *Grecians*, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the Male-children of *Iſrael* to be ſlain. 37.
2403	13	*Acencheres*, by ſome called *Thermutis*, the Daughter of *Amenophthis* the ſecond, and afterwards the Wife of *Orus*; who preſerved *Moſes*, and ſurvived her Husband. 13.
2416	14	*Rathoſis*, the Son of *Orus*. 6.
2422	15	*Acencheres* II. 12.
2449	16	*Cenchres*, by ſome called *Arenaſis*; *Bocchoris* by others; drowned in the *Red-Sea*, with his Horſes and Chariots. 16.
2453	17	*Acherres*. 8.
2462	18	*Cherres*. 10.
2472	19	*Armais*, by the *Grecians* called *Danaus*, whoſe fifty Daughters being married to the fifty Sons of his Brother *Ægyptus*, murdered their Husbands; for which cauſe *Danaus*, being forced out of *Egypt*, paſſed into *Greece*, where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Grecians* the name of *Danai*.
2575	20	*Rameſes*, ſirnamed *Ægyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
2580	21	*Amenophthis* III. 10.
2590	22	*Sethos*, or *Seſothis*. 55.
2645	23	*Rhapſaces*, or *Ranſes*. 66.
2711	24	*Amenophthis* IV. 40.
2751	25	*Rameſes* II. 26.
2777	26	*Thuoris* 7. After whoſe death ſucceeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Dioſpolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the ſpace of 177 years. Their Names we find not, but that one of the lateſt of them, whoſe Daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
2961	39	*Smendes*, the *Siſac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Seſoſtris* of *Herodotus*, and others of the ancient Writers, of whom ſufficiently before.
2987	40	*Pſeucenes*, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*, Founder of the vaſt *Pyramis* before deſcribed. 41.
3028	41	*Nepher-Cherres*. 4.
3032	42	*Amenophthis* V. 9.
3041	43	*Opſochon*, the *Aſychis* of *Herodotus*.
3047	44	*Pſamuchos*. 9.
3056	45	*Pſeucenes* II. 14.
3070	46	*Seſonchis*. 21.
3091	47	*Uſorthon*. 15.
3106	48	*Takellotis*. 13.
3119	49	*Patubaſtis*. 40.
3159	50	*Oſerchon*, the ſecond *Hercules Ægyptius*, as ſome will have it. 8.
3167	51	*Pſamnis*. 15.
3185	52	*Bochoris*, called by the name of *So*, 2 *Kings* 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Æthiopia*. 44.
3229	53	*Sabacon* King of *Æthiopia*. 8.
3238	54	*Sevacus* Son of *Sabacon*, 14.
3252	55	*Taracon*, falſly ſuppoſed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures. 10.
3270	56	*Stephinates*. 7.
3277	57	*Niclupſes*, after whoſe death followed an Ariſtocracy of 12 Princes, who having governed 15 years, were diveſted of their Authority by one of their own number, called
3288	58	*Pſammiticus*, who firſt made the *Grecians* acquainted with *Egypt*, whom he invited to his aid againſt the *Syrians*; the Founder of the famous *Labyrinth* before mentioned, and no leſs memorable for his prudent preventing of the *Scythians* from breaking into his Country; of which we ſpake before, when we were in *Tartaria*. 54.
3335	59	*Necho*, who ſlew *Joſiah* at the battel of *Megiddo*. 25.
3360	60	*Pſamnis* II. 44.
3366	61	*Apries*, called *Hophra*, Jer. 44. ſubdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and depoſed by *Amaſis*, 25.
3391	62	*Amaſis* II. 44.
3435	63	*Pſamnitas* or *Pſamniticus* II. a King of ſix months only; vanquiſhed by *Cambyſes* the ſecond Monarch of *Perſia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius*, the ſixth King of the *Medes* and *Perſians*: in the 2*d*. year of whoſe Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of it ſelf, as in former times.
3555	64	*Amyrteus*, the firſt King after the Revolt. 6.
3561	65	*Nepherites*, 6.
3567	66	*Achoris*, 12.
3579	67	*Pſamnites* III. 1.
3580	68	*Nepherites* II. a King of two Months only.
	69	*Nectanebos*. 18.
3598	70	*Teos* or *Tachos*, depoſed by

3600

3600 71 *Nectanebos* II. the laſt King of the natural *Egyptian* Race, that ever govern'd *Egypt* by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the Reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus*, the eighth Emperour of *Perſia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without Blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him, during his Life, the yearly value of 6000 Talents. After his Death, this Kingdom fell to the ſhare of *Ptolemæus* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the ſubſequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolemies*.

The Second DYNASTY, or the PTOLEMEAN Kings of *Egypt*.

A. M.

3461 1 PTolemy, one of *Alexander*'s Captains, reputed the Son of *Lagus*; but ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, half-brother to *Alexander*, 40.

3681 2 *Ptol. Philadelphus*, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700000 Volumes, and cauſed the 72 Interpreters to tranſlate the Bible.

3717 3 *Ptol. Euergetes* the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquiſhed *Seleucus Callinicus* King of *Syria*, and probably had ſubdued the Kingdom, if not called back by Domeſtick diſſenſions, 26.

3743 4 *Ptol. Philopator*, a cruel, voluptuous and inceſtuous Prince, cruelly ſlew *Cleomenes* the laſt King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for relief, in the time of his exile, 17.

3760 5 *Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the age of five years ſucceeded his Father; protected by the *Romans*, againſt *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom, 28.

3784 6 *Ptol. Philometor*, the Son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the Daughter of *Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* alſo: Cauſed himſelf to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquiſh'd it, 35.

3829 7 *Ptol. Euergetes* II. for his deformity called *Phyſcon*, the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that ſpent the greateſt part of his Reign in a cauſeleſs War againſt *Cleopatra*, his Wife and Siſter, 29.

3858 8 *Ptol. Lathurgus* reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate for the ſpace of ten years; after her death was ſole Lord of *Egypt*. His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Aſſociate, in the time of his deprivation, and paſſing in the accompt of the Kings of *Egypt*.

3892 9 *Ptol. Auletes*, the Son of *Lathurus*, ſirnamed alſo *Dionyſius*, whoſe Brother being ſettled by him in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, was moſt unjuſtly ſtripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: And he himſelf outed of *Egypt* by his own Subjects, but reſtored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.

3922 10 *Ptol. Dionyſius*, called alſo *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Siſter, ſucceeded *Auletes* in the Throne, which they held together by the ſpace of three Years. In the laſt of which, *Pompey* was barbarouſly ſlain on the Shores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Achillas* the young King's Governour; and the young King himſelf unfortunately ſlain in the *Alexandrian* Tumult againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

3925 11 *Cleopatra*, the Wife and Siſter of *Dionyſius*, reſtored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Cæſar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her Wit and Beauty. After which ſhe governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own ſole Right, with great Pomp and Splendour: When being imbarked in the Bed and Fortunes of *Marc Anthony*, ſhe killed her ſelf not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battel of *Actium*, that ſhe might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

Theſe *Ptolemean* Princes of *Egypt*, were for the moſt part, in Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquiſhed; neither Prince having cauſe to boaſt of his Bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whoſe Life and Love with *Marcus Antonius*, I will not now relate, this Country fell to the ſhare of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*, no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; it being a Maxim of State, not to ſuffer Men of great Houſes to come into that Country, whoſe revolt might endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*: For beſides the natural ſituation of the place, very defenſible; and beſides the abundance of Mony with which it was ſtored; this Country alone furniſhed the City of *Rome* with Corn for four Months yearly. Whence *Veſpaſian* being choſen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his Concurrent *Vitellius*, haſtened hither; to this end only, that detaining the ordinary proviſion of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his Devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externæ opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Hiſtorian hath obſerved. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperour's ſole *Peculiar*: Aferwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioceſs* of it ſelf, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the diviſion of the Empire allotted to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, whoſe Government being thought to be inſupportable by this wanton People, they called in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garriſons were caſt out, and the Country made ſubject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards weary of them alſo, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards, we ſhall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one reſiding at *Cairo*, in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk* did ſubmit themſelves: The other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the reſt, at leaſt as to the Supreme Title, and ſome chief Prerogatives; though the main power was *cantoned* and diſpoſed of among their Sultans.

The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of *EGYPT*.

A. C.	*A.H.*		
870	247	1	A *Achmades*, or *Achmat*, 10.
880	257	2	*Tolen*, 3.
883	260	3	*Hamaria*, 29.
903	280	4	*Abarun*, ſlain by *Muſtaphi*, the Caliph of *Babylon*, 37.
940	317	5	*Achid Muhamid*, the Son of *Tangi*, 3.
943	320	6	*Abigud*, the Son of *Achid*, 27.
970	347	7	*Meaz*, *Ledin*, *Illabi*, of the race of *Phatime* and *Hali*, 5.
975	352	8	*Aziz*, the Son of *Meaz*, 21.
996	373	9	*Elhachain*, 23.
1019	396	10	*Etaber Leazizdin Illabi*, 16.
1035	412	11	*Muſteratzer Billabi*, 60.
1096	472	12	*Muſteale*, 5.
1100	477	13	*Elamir Babacan Illabi*, 35.
1135	512	14	*Elhapit Ladin Illabi*.
		15	*Etzabar*.
		16	*Elphaiz*.
		17	*Etzar Ledin Illabi*, the Son of *Elphaiz*, the laſt *Caliph*, or King of *Egypt*, of the Race of *Phatime*; the *Turks* ſucceeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning whom we are to know, That *Elphaiz* the Father of *Etzar*, being over-power'd by *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Damaſcus*; which he received under the Conduct of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and ſtout Commander; who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of *Almericus*, but got the whole Kingdom to himſelf; daſhing out the Brains of *Elphaiz* with his Horſe-man's Mace. And though *Etzar* his Son aſſumed for a while the Title of *Caliph*; yet the deſtruction of himſelf, and the whole *Phatimean* Family rooted out by *Sarracon*, ſoon put an end to that Claim, and left the Kingdom in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Sultans.

THE

THE FOURTH

DYNASTY, or the Race of the *TURKISH* KINGS or CALIPHS of *EGYPT*.

1163 1 *Aſereddin*, ſirnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracon*, by the Chriſtian Writers; the firſt of the *Turks* that reigned in *Egypt*; of the Noble Family of *Aiub*.

1186 2 *Zeli-heddin*, called *Saladine* by the Chriſtian Writers; the Son (or as ſome ſay, the Nephew,) of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his Eſtate by the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*, under whoſe Juriſdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schiſmaticks. He obtained alſo the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, conquered *Meſopotamia* and *Paleſtine*; and in the year 1190. regained the City of *Hieruſalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to ſucceeding Ages, nor to glorifie him in the Kingdom of Heaven, but the ſaving Knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.

1199 3 *Elaziz*, the ſecond Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother *Eladel* for the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*.

4 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Chriſtian Writers called *Meledine*, ſucceeded upon this exchange in the Kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Chriſtians* without the loſs of a Man, at the ſiege of *Cairo*, by letting looſe the Sluces of *Nilus*, which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleaſure.

1210 5 *Elchamul*.

1237 6 *Melech Aſſalach*, by the Chriſtian Writers called *Melechſala*, the Son of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9th of *France*; and going with that King towards *Damiata*, was ſlain by the Soldiers of his Guard, called *Mamalucks*.

1242 7 *Elmutan*, the Son of *Melech Aſſalach*, ſucceeded for a time in his Father's Throne. But the *Mamalucks* being reſolved to obtain the Kingdom for themſelves, inforced him to flie to a Tower of Wood, which they ſet on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran cloſe by it) was there drowned, and the *Mamalucks* ſettled in the Kingdom, *An.* 1245.

The *Mamalucks* were the Off-ſpring of a People on the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circaſſians*; whom *Melechſala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the ſecond hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Maſters of thoſe Countreys, to ſupply the want of Valour in the idle and effeminate People of *Egypt*, and out of them ſelected a choice Band of Men for the Guard of his Perſon: No *Jew* or *Mahometan*'s Son could be admitted into this Order; they knowing their ſtrength, and finding their opportunity, treacherouſly ſlew *Melechſala* their Lord and Maſter; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turcoman* by Nation, and therefore by moſt Chriſtian Writers called *Tarquimeneius*, (one of their own number) a Man of great Spirit and Valour, to ſucceed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the Hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own Sons to enjoy the name and priviledge of *Mamalucks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circaſſian* Slaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be inſtructed in the *Egyptian* Language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for Employment, they were taught the Diſcipline of War, and by degrees advanced into the higheſt Offices of Power and Truſt, as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkiſh* Empire: In choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were precedented by thoſe of *Egypt*; ſo it is poſſible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkiſh* Empire, as the *Mamalucks* did in the *Egyptian*. So unſafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the ſole guard of his Perſon, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of ſuch, whom not the ſenſe of a natural Duty, but the hopes of Profit or Preferment may make uſeful to him. For thus we find, That *Conſtantinus*, a King of the *Britains*, was murdered by his Guard of *Picts*: Moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of thoſe whom they entruſted, either with the guard of their Perſons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no Man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Eſtates of *Italy* have been brought into the extremeſt dangers, by truſting too much to the Honeſty of mercenary Soldiers and Commanders. Take we for inſtance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picennio*, who with his Followers firſt took pay of *Ferdinand* the firſt of *Naples*; left him to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John* Duke of *Calabria*, the Son of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, whom he alſo forſook in his greateſt need. The like we find of *Franciſco Sforza*, firſt entertained by the Duke of *Milan*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the pay of the State of *Milan*, made uſe of their own Army to ſubdue that City. Nor can I ſpeak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza*'s Dukes of *Milan*, and with whom not, (to ſay the truth) that ever truſted or employed them?

Now as it is unſafe for a Prince to commit the cuſtody of his Perſon, or the defence of his Eſtates to the Faith of Foreigners; ſo it is dangerous to him to call in ſuch Aids, and to commit his Fortunes either wholly or principally, unto their Fidelity. A moderate ſupply of Men, Money, or Munition from a Confederate King, is, I confeſs, in moſt caſes convenient, in ſome neceſſary: As well to ſave their Natives from the Sword, as to try a Friend, and intereſt an Ally in the ſame Cauſe. But to invite ſo great a number of Succours, as from Helpers may become Maſters, and oppreſs the People whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have ſuffered Shipwrack, and which a good *Pilot* of the State ſhould with all care avoid; for as in the ſickneſs of the Body *natural*, it is hurtful to a Man's Health and Life to take more *Phyſick* than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digeſt or put out again; ſo in the Body Politick, it is a perilous matter to receive more Succours, than what(after they have done the Deed they were ſent for) we may either with conveniency reward and ſettle with us, or at liberty Expel. Of all ſurfeits, this of Foreign ſupplies is moſt incurable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing elſe true, is in this caſe Oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily perſwaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all Examples, were infinite and tedious; to infer ſome pleaſing to the Reader; and to illuſtrate the Point not unneceſſary. To begin with former times, *Philip* of *Macedon*, called into *Greece* to aſſiſt the *Thebans* againſt the *Phocians*, brought all that Country, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans*, by aiding the *Sicilians* againſt the *Carthaginians*, poſſeſſed themſelves of that flouriſhing Iſland; by aſſiſting the *Hedui* againſt the *Sequani*, maſtered *Gallia*; by ſuccouring *Androgeus* againſt *Caſſibelan*, ſeized on *Britain*; by ſiding with the *Ætolians* againſt *Perſeus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the ſame courſe what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thruſt out of all; the *Iriſh* called in the *Engliſh*, by whom they were in proceſs of time totally ſubdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mongul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. Theſe Foreign Supplies are invited, or let into a Country, commonly in four caſes. Firſt, when ſome one Man upon Diſcontent, or deſire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Country: Upon which Motives, *Narſes* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*; the one to be revenged on the Empreſs *Sophia*, who had deſpightfully reviled him, the other to revenge himſelf on King *Roderick*, who raviſhed his Daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cauſe againſt a ſtronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy*, being oppreſſed by the Faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the Fifth to paſs into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining Cauſe againſt *Henry* the *4th*. Thirdly, when an Ambitious Prince makes uſe of a Foreign Power, to uſurp upon the Rights of another Man. And for that cauſe *Ludowick Sforza* perſwaded *Charles* the *8th*. to undertake the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himſelf the Dukedom of *Milan*. Fourthly, when a King over-burdened by a foreign or domeſtick Force, which he is not able to reſiſt, requires the help of a foreign Friend: In which caſe, *Plus à medico quam à morbo mali*, the Phyſick proves many times worſe than the Diſeaſe. For thus the Kings of *Naples* of the Houſe of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, the Couſin-German once removed of the King then being; and the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withſtand the Forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: By which means, both thoſe Kingdoms were made a prey to their foreign Friends, and by avoiding *Scylla*, fell into *Charybdis*. Nay, many times it ſo happeneth, that theſe Foreign Succours joyn in deſign with thoſe, againſt whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And ſo we find, That the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking of the *Franks*, or *French*, joyned with them in a common League againſt the *Romans*, whom they diſpoſſeſſed at laſt of all that Country. Only amongſt ſo many Examples to this purpoſe, we find the *Low-Countrymen* to have proſpered by theſe Foreign Aids; who by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, ranſomed themſelves from that Yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the Integrity and Honeſty of the *Engliſh* Nation; although it be as true withal, that the *Engliſh* never had ſuch an Army there, as to be able to ſubdue them. But give me ſuch another inſtance, I will quit the Cauſe: For the ſame *Low-Countrymen* found it otherwiſe with the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Henry* the *3d.* of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governour-General, permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his Authority, or their own Moneys were able to raiſe: who was no ſooner ſettled in that command, but he made it his chief buſineſs to ſeize upon their ſtrongeſt Holds, and to be a more abſolute Prince amongſt them, than ever the *Spaniards* or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, That theſe foreign Succours are the laſt to be tryed, and the leaſt to be truſted, of any remedies in State. It is wonderful that a thing ſo often tried and ſo well known, ſhould be ſo ſtubbornly purſued by the *Jacobite* Faction now in *England*, who for four Years together are reſtleſly plotting to bring the *French* Forces into *England*, under pretence of reſtoring *James* the Second, after he had fled thither, with an apparent intention to return with a *French* Army to Conquer this Nation, and extirpate the *Engliſh* Liberties and the Proteſtant Religion; the iſſue of which, if it ſhould ſucceed, by the juſt judgment of God on a proud and ſinful Nation, would be the deſolating theſe Kingdoms, the Deſtruction of the Royal Family, for which theſe Men pretend a wonderful Love, and in the end, reduce the late King, together with theſe Kingdoms, under the Vaſſalage of the moſt formidable Natural Enemy of our Nation. Theſe conſequences being ſo viſible, it is a wonderful thing any *Engliſh Proteſtant* can be ſo infatuated as to be guilty of it; but when Men are thoroughly incenſed againſt each other, their Paſſions ſo blind their Reaſons, that they often chuſe a certain Ruin, to involve thoſe they too much hate in the ſame with them. This Reflection might perhaps have been omitted here, but that I was willing to leave a Teſtimony to Poſterity, of my deteſtation of their Folly; and for the Confuſion alſo of another Faction, who, after all that is poſſible to be written, done, or ſaid by me to the contrary, have ſo lately attempted to ruin me on that Pretence, and for the preſent, in a great Degree have effected the ſame. But it is now more than time to return to the *Mamalucks*; and in them to

THE FIFTH

DYNASTY of the *EGYPTIAN* KINGS, or the Race of the *MAMALUCKS*.

A. Ch.

1255 1 TUrquimenius, who being promoted to the Kingdom, releaſed King *Lewis*, whom *Melechſala* his Predeceſſor had taken Priſoner, but performed not half the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by ſome called *Elmutabaz*) taking advantage of the Miſeries of the *Turks*, then diſtreſſed by the *Tartars*, ſeized on the the greateſt part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*.

1260 3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun Conqueſts of *Clothes*, and took from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much ſpoil.

4 *Melechſait*, or *Melechſares*, reſtored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the 3*d.* of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1286 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the diſſenting *Chriſtians* the ſtrong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sydon*; all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more ſerviceable to the Affairs of the *Chriſtians*.

1291 6 *Araphus*, or *Euſtrephus*, by birth a *German*, releaſed *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Priſoner 26 years. He rooted the *Chriſtians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolemais* the laſt Town they there held: and ſo razed it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechneſar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was diſcomfited by *Caſſanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loſs of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Caſſanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*; for which Service he was afterwards made *Sultan* of *Egypt*.

8 *Melechadel*, who I ſuppoſe to be that *Sultan* that govern'd *Egypt* when *Tamberlane* with unreſiſtible violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any conſtant and continued *ſeries* (which I dare rely on) of his Succeſſors in this Kingdom, till I come to

9 *Melechaella*, or *Melechnaſar*, who in the year 1423, ſubdued the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.

1465 10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a profeſſed Enemy of *Bajazet* 2*d.* the 8*th.* King of the *Ottomans*.

1498 11 *Mahomet*, the Son of *Cathbeyus*, depoſed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the Kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being againſt their uſual cuſtom, that the Son ſhould ſucceed his Father, in the name and privileges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499 12 *Campſon Chiarſeſius*, ſucceeded on the depoſing of *Mahomet*.

13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campſon*, and not long after was depoſed by

1500 14 *Tonombeius*, outed of his Eſtate by the joynt conſent of the *Mamalucks*, ſo to make way for *Campſon Gaurus*.

1501 5 *Campſon* II. ſirnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the diſordered and factious Eſtate both of Court and Country; and for the ſpace of 16 years govern'd very proſperouſly, But ſiding at the laſt with *Hyſmael* the *Perſian Sophy*, againſt *Selimus* the firſt of that name, the 3*d* Emperour, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himſelf ſlain in battel.

1517 16 *Tonombeius* II. ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus*, both in his Kingdom and Misfortunes; vanquiſhed in his firſt year by the ſaid *Selimus* the firſt, *An.* 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was uſed to ſay, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his* Gemoglans, *or young Soldiers.* So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, as it ſtill continueth.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they muſt be, beyond the proportion of belief, or elſe they could never have been Maſters of ſuch ſufficient Treaſure to finiſh thoſe vaſt Structures which they undertook. Twelve thouſand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolemies*; which of our Money makes the Sum of two *Millions*, and 347750 pounds. Which Sum *Auguſtus Cæſar* (appropriating this Province to himſelf) is ſaid to have doubled; but whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the reſt in Corn I determine not. Certain it is, That there was yearly ſhipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, every Meaſure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to ſeven Millions, and an hundred forty thouſand of our *Engliſh* Buſhels; ſold by him, or diſtributed *gratis* amongſt the Poor, as he ſaw occaſion. So that there might be very well ſome abatement in Mony, conſidering that the Corn amounted to ſo great a Sum. Nor were they much leſs, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Country. For *Campſon Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no leſs than Ten Millions of *Duckats* at one clap amongſt his Soldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and partly through the diſcontinuance of the uſual Traffick through the *Red-Sea*, receive no more than Three *Millions* of Crowns; one of which is hoarded in his own Coffers; the ſecond is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Baſhaw*, for ſupport of this Charge; the third is diſtributed among his Garriſon-Soldiers, and ſuch of them as by Land guard his own Million to *Conſtantinople*, for by Sea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few Ships Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

I have taken the pains exactly to compare the ſtate of *Egypt* as it was in the Year 1515, when it was Conquered by the *Turks*, repreſented very well by *Leo Africanus*, who was then in this Kingdom, with the ſtate it is now in by the Report of *Sandy's*, *Thevenot*, and others who have lately travelled in it. And the difference is ſo very great, that to a Man who has not well conſidered both, it will ſeem incredible. A great part of the Trade of the *Eaſt-Indies* till that time came through *Egypt*, which has ſince been entirely cut off by the *Portugueſes*, *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*. 2. The *Mamalucks* reſided in *Egypt*, and ſpent what they took amongſt the People that paid it, but the *Turks* tranſport one third part every year to *Conſtantinople*, from whence it never returneth. 3. The *Baſſa's* in their turns too ſend great Preſents every year to the Port, to make them Friends; the conſequences of which is, Firſt, That the People being reduced to the utmoſt degree of Poverty, tho' the Country is ſo warm that they bring up their Children naked, yet they are not able to find them Food ſufficient, and to enable them to till the Land, and to repair their mean Cottages: So that every year the People decreaſe, and the ſame Taxes being paid by the Remainder, it operates upon *Egypt* in the manner of a quick Conſumption, and this good Land eats up its Inhabitants: Of about 100 great Cities and Towns there were in 1515 in *Egypt*, there are now not above 4 or 5 that are conſiderable, and not ſo many People perhaps now in all *Egypt* as was then in *Grand Cairo*; ſo that not only the Riches and Revenues of *Egypt* are waſted to almoſt nothing, but the ſtrength too. Some may object, that the Poſſeſſion is thereby the more ſecured, as it is indeed againſt the Natives; and if it were wholly deſolate, would be yet more ſecured than now it is, but of what uſe is a deſolate Country to the Owner? Yet after all, the People of *Egypt* have a property in their Lands, which none of the *Turkiſh* Subjects beſides have. From hence it will appear, Firſt, That oppreſſing any People is impolitick, becauſe it deſtroys the Fund, and prevents the Sowing that Seed which ſhou'd raiſe the Increaſe. 2. It weakens the Poſſeſſion, by diſheartning and diminiſhing the Hands that ſhould defend as well as till the Earth. 3. It in time renders the thing not worth the poſſeſſing. 4. It infallibly in time makes way for a new Conqueſt, and planting the Country with a new ſet of Men: I wiſh theſe Conſiderations may be ſeriouſly weighed with Reſpect to *Ireland*, and our *Weſtern* Plantations, but eſpecially the firſt of theſe, which depends intirely upon the Number and ſtrength of the *Engliſh* that inhabit there; and if they be few and poor, will be ſubject to the Inſults of the Natives, who are the implacable Enemies of the *Engliſh*. The want of giving due encouragement to the Trade and Commerce of *Ireland*, has kept the *Engliſh* ſo much under, and diſcourag'd others from going thither, that it hath in all times been the occaſion of great Devaſtations by War and Maſſacre, and at one time or other may be the Loſs of the Iſland, to the endangering firſt our Trade, and then our ſafety; becauſe for want of People, we are not now ſo able as heretofore, to re-people and re-conquer that Nation. And without doubt, ſhould any potent Neighbour Attack *Egypt*, the *Turks* would be driven out much more eaſily than they at firſt got it; but it is the felicity of the *Grand Seignior*, That he has no conſiderable bordering Prince on that ſide of his Empire.

And ſo much for *Egypt*.

Folio 877 follows this.

OF

BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cyrenaica*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and ſome part of the *Atlantick* alſo; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*; by which ſeparated from *Libya inferior*, or the Deſarts of *Libya*.

It containeth in it the whole Dioceſe of *Africk*, and part of the Dioceſe of *Spain*; ſubject in former times to the Common-wealth of *Carthage*, and the Great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninſula*, and afterwards extended it over all the reſt of the Country, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the ſubjugation of it by the *Saracens*: by whom called *BARBARY*, either from *Barbar*, ſignifying in their Language an uncertain murmur, ſuch as the Speech of the *Africans* ſeemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, ſignifying a *Deſart*, which doubled, made up firſt *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is ſituate under the Third and Fourth Climates: ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the parts moſt South, amounted to thirteen Hours three quarters, increaſed in the moſt Northern parts to fourteen Hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the greater *Syrtis*, for the ſpace of 1500 Miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narroweſt 100 Miles; but towards the *Straits*, where the broadeſt, almoſt three Hundred.

Leo Africanus excludes the Kingdom of *Barca* out of it, which he calls the beſt and moſt celebrated part of *Africa*, inhabited by a Brown Civil People, who are Governed by excellent Laws. *Pag.* 23. he ſaith, The *Arabians* which inhabit *Barbary* are much more wealthy than thoſe of *Biledulgerid*; which appears in their rich Cloaths and Tents. Their Horſe are better ſhaped, more corpulent, but not ſo ſwift as the other; they have plenty of Corn, and innumerable Droves of Cattel; yet after all, they are more moroſe and covetous than the Inhabitants of the Deſarts.

The Country, in ſuch parts as lye neareſt to the *Mediterranean*, is full of Hills covered with Woods, and ſtored with plenty of Wild Beaſts; provided reaſonably well of moſt ſorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inſomuch that moſt of the Inhabitants live of Barley Bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champion Country, watred with many pleaſant Rivers iſſuing from that Mountain, and liberally furniſhed with Cherries, Figs, Pears, Plums, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oil, Honey, Sugar; ſome Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineneſs no where to be better'd. Here are alſo beſides, large Herds of Cattel, ſome Elephants, Lions, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like ſavage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horſes good ſtore, excellent both for Strength and Beauty. But taking it in the beſt parts, it falleth extremely ſhort of that infinite fertility, which is aſcribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For beſides the miracle of 500 Ears of Corn growing on the ſtalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, That not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a Man might ſee a great Date-tree overſhadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pomegranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Peaſe, Wheat, and Herbs, all growing and flouriſhing at one time. It is affirmed alſo by the ſame Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that ſome Fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a piece of Ground of Four Cubits ſquare was uſually Rented out at ſo many *Denarii*: by which Account, (as the Learned *Budæus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground muſt be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman Seſtertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparallel'd increaſe of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The People are of a duſkiſh Colour, but inclining to Blackneſs: much of the ſame nature with the *Arabians*, by whoſe numerous Families formerly they were overſpread, but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of Body, well ſkill'd in Horſemanſhip, but impatient of Labour, covetous of Honour, inconſtant, crafty, and unfaithful: Studious in matters of their Law, and in ſome of the Liberal Sciences, eſpecially Philoſophy and the Mathematicks, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers. They are alſo ſaid to be ſtately of Gate, exceeding diſtruſtful, in their Hate implacable, and jealous of their Women beyond all compare. The Women of a comely Body, and well Featured, beautiful in Blackneſs, of delicate ſoft Skins, and in their Habit and Apparel beyond meaſure ſumptuous; ſo dreſt, to make themſelves more amiable in the Eyes of their Husbands; for otherwiſe not permitted to ſtir abroad, and ſeldom to ſee any body but thoſe of their own Houſes.

The Language ſpoke at the preſent in moſt of the Maritime Towns, except thoſe of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* Tongue. In thoſe two Kingdoms, and moſt part of the Country Villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the ancient Languages of the Country: the *Punick* ſpoken in all places, where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any Power; the *African* (whatſoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not ſubject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder, which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it ſpread ſo far as to extinguiſh or ſuppreſs the old natural Tongues: and in the Colonies themſelves ſo much degenerated in a ſhort time, ſo barbarouſly and imperfectly ſpoken; that a Siſter of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to ſee her Brother, ſpoke it ſo incongruouſly, that the Emperor was aſhamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of *St. Auguſtine*, an *African* Biſhop, were Preached in *Latin*, becauſe Preached in *Hippo* his Epiſcopal See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confeſſeth, that he was ſometimes fain to uſe ſuch words as were not *Latin*, to be the better underſtood of his Congregation.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt planted in that part hereof which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Epanetus*, one of the 70 Diſciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopſis*, affirmed to be the firſt Biſhop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by S. *Simon* the Apoſtle, ſurnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphraſtes* addeth, that S. *Simon Peter* Preached here alſo, when by the Decree of *Claudius Cæſar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Creſcens* his Diſciple to promote the work. But by whomſoever planted firſt, it found good increaſe, and was ſo propagated in ſhort time over all this Country, that in the year 250, or before, there were in it above 90 Biſhops; for ſo many were aſſembled in the Synod of *Labeſitum*: and in the year 398. when the Faction of the *Donatiſts* was of greateſt Power, we find no fewer than 214 Catholick Biſhops met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an Argument of the great increaſe of Chriſtianity in thoſe parts of *Africa*; ſo it ſhews alſo, that the Church was in ill Condition; ſo overpower'd by the violence of that mighty Faction, who had at leaſt 270 Biſhops of their own Opinion, that the Orthodox party was neceſſitated to increaſe the number of Biſhops, for fear of being over-ballanced by the contrary ſide, if ever the difference ſhould come to be examined in a publick Meeting. Theſe Biſhops ranked into ſix Claſſes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Biſhops of each Province ſubject to their own Metropolitan, who in this Dioceſe (contrary to the uſage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them ſubordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally inveſted with Patriarchal Juriſdiction over all theſe parts. *Latius fuſa eſt noſtra Previncia; habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas ſibi cohærentes*, are S. *Cyprian*'s words. Which ſhew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better Geographer, than an Hiſtorian or Divine. He would not elſe have told us in ſuch poſitive terms, that thoſe of *Barbary* remained in their old Idolatry, till 250 years before *Mahomet*'s Birth; at what time they received the Goſpel, and not before. But the good Man miſtook the reviving of the Orthodox Faith in the time of *Juſtinian*, after it had been long ſuppreſſed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* Faction (who at one time baniſhed hence 300 Catholick Biſhops) for the firſt planting of the Goſpel, otherwiſe not to be excuſed. But after this *Revivor* it held not long, when ſuppreſſed by the *Saracens*, and ſo ſuppreſſed, that except it be in ſome few Towns poſſeſſed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of Chriſtianity to be diſcerned in all this Country; *Mahometaniſm* being elſewhere univerſally embraced amongſt them.

Here was a moſt flouriſhing Church till the 5*th*. Century, in the beginning of which the *Vandals* then *Arians* entred it, and brought in their Hereſie with them: but that which more effectually contributed to the ruine of Chriſtianity here, was the Conqueſt of it by the *Moors*, in the year 669. One *Hucba* a famous General, whom *Oſmen* the third Caliph of the *Saracens* employed to that purpoſe, finally expelled the *Romans* in 699. and ever ſince they have poſſeſſed it; who being the moſt enraged Enemies of Chriſtianity that ever profeſſed the *Mahometan* Law, have ſo far extirpated Chriſtianity, that there is very few, if any of the Inhabitants of this vaſt Tract of Land which profeſs it.

Amongſt the Men of moſt note for Soldiery, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon, 1. *Amilcar* the *Carth*[illegible]*an*, and his three Sons: 2. *Annibal*: 3. *Aſdrubal*: and 4. *Mago*; Men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Maſiniſſa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Cotemporaries: and in the following times, 6. *Septimius Severus* the *Roman* Emperor. Amongſt thoſe addicted to the Muſes, thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Terence*: 2. *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the World afforded Men of more eminent note, nor better deſerving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Victorinus Afer*, 7. *Optatus Milevitanus*, 8. *Victor Uticenſis*, 9. *Fulgentius*, 10. *Primaſius*. And above all, the moſt Learned and Divine S. *Auguſtine*; a Man of ſuch admirable Abilities, and indefatigable Induſtry, ſo conſtant a Defender of all Orthodox Doctrines againſt the Hereticks of thoſe times, that he deſervedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country beſides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it ſelf) 1. *Phorca*, 2. *Heptadelphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor in Mauritania Tingitana*; 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garas*, 6. *Madethubadus*, and 7. thoſe called *Gariphi*, in *Cæſarienſis*; 8. *Thambes*, 9. *Mampſarus*, 10. *Uſaletus*, *and* 11. *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may ſpeak more, if occaſion be, in our Deſcription of the Provinces in which they are.

And for the Rivers of moſt Note, though none of any long courſe in ſo narrow a Country; we have in *Tingitana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. Another of the ſame name, and the ſame *exit* alſo, but far more to the North, towards the *Strait* of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Melochath*, mollified by *Saluſt* the Hiſtorian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Namidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Malva*, the boundary at this day betwixt the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phthuth*, of more Fame than any, of which more anon: In *Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Naſabath*, 7. *Siſaris*, and *Sorbetos*: In *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunis*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which iſſuing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth in the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9. *Triton*, which iſſuing out of the Hill called *Uſaletus*, and making the great Fenn called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its courſe alſo into the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greateſt in all this Tract, which riſing out of Mount *Atlas*, firſt runneth towards the Eaſt, and then receiving from the Hill called *Mampſarus* the addition of another Stream, paſſeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his Courſe.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and Landmarks, I ſhould now proceed to the Deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces hereof, as in other places. But becauſe each part almoſt hath had for theſe latter times its particular Hiſtory, and that it is divided at the preſent into ſeveral Governments, and under the Command of ſeveral Princes: I will here lay down ſo much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before ſuch diviſion; and afterwards purſue the Hiſtory and Chorography of the ſeveral parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was firſt Peopled by *Phut* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother *Miſraim* well ſetled in the Land of *Egypt*; paſſed towards the Weſt; and leaving *Lebabim* his Nephew betwixt him and *Mizraim*, poſſeſſed himſelf of all the reſt from the greater *Syrtis* to the *Ocean*. Remainders of whoſe name we find in the River *Phut* (by *Ptolomy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, ſave that it ſavoureth more of the *African* roughneſs) near which *Joſephus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: ſeconded herein by S. *Hierom*, who ſpeaking of this *Regio Phutenſis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phthuth* is placed by *Ptolemy*) voucheth in general terms the teſtimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latin*. So that of this there is no queſtion to be made. Such Nations as deſcended of this Plantation, ſhall be hereafter ſpoke of in their ſeveral Provinces. Governed at firſt by the Chiefs of their ſeveral Families; but in the end, reduced under the Command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two firſt, Natives of this Country, of the Race of *Phut*: the laſt deſcended alſo of the Seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the Conqueſt of their Country by the Children of *Iſrael*, forced to ſeek new Dwellings, and having ſtore of Ships to tranſplant themſelves and their Families; ſetled in the Maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa*, properly ſo called. For, that the People of thoſe parts, though loſt into other Names and Families, were anciently of a *Canaanitiſh* or *Phœnician* Race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearneſs of their Language, the *Punick* or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* Tongue, differing only in the Dialect and Pronunciation. Secondly, by the name *Pœni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3*ly*, By this Teſtimony of *S. Auguſtine*, who telleth us in the Comment on S. *Paul*'s Epiſtle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finiſhed by him; *Interrogati Ruſtici noſtri quid ſint, reſpondent*, Punici *Chanani*; that is to ſay, That when any of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himſelf was one) were asked what they were, they anſwered, *Canaanites*. 4*ly*. We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyſes* had totally Conquer'd *Egypt*, intending a War againſt the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it ſeemeth) of ſome power:

But the *Phœnicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyſes* then had, abſolutely denied to be employed in that Service; they being ſprung from the ſame Tree that the *Carthaginians* were. 5*ly*, We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholaſticus*) how on two Marble-Pillars, ſituate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tangier*, there was in the *Phœnician* Language and Character engraved *Nos fugimus à facie* Joſhuah *prædonis filii* Nave; that is to ſay, *We flie from the face of that Robber* Joſhuah *the Son of* Nun. The Settling of this People there, was a great Incitement queſtionleſs unto *Dido* to come thither alſo: who feared as much danger from her Brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whoſe hands had been imbrued in the blood of her Husband, as the others did from the Sword of *Joſhuah*. Gathering together all her Treaſures, which were very great, accompanied with her Brother *Barca*, and her Siſter *Anna*, ſhe ſet ſail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after ſtood the City of *Carthage*, ſhe obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigneſs than ſhe could compaſs round with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrſa*, which at firſt it had. Firſt founded in, or about the year of the World 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomon*'s Temple, 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the deſtruction of *Troy*. By which account (I note this only by the way) it is impoſſible that *Dido*, or *Eliſa* (for by both theſe names we find her called) ſhould ever ſee the Face of *Æneas*, unleſs it were in Picture, or Imagination; and therefore as impoſſible ſhe ſhould either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her ſelf on her being forſaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with moſt ſorts of men. Hereunto conſenteth *Auſonius*, who honouring the Statue of his abuſed Princeſs with an *Epigram* of 18 Verſes, among others, gives us theſe four.

Invida cur in me ſtimulaſti Muſa Maronem,
Fingeret ut noſtræ damna pudicitiæ?
Vos magis Hiſtoricis (*Lectores*) *credite de me*,
Quam qui furta deum, concubituſque canunt.

Why did'ſt thou ſtir up *Virgil*, envious *Muſe*,
Falſly my name and honour to abuſe?
Of me let *Hiſtories* be heard, not thoſe,
Who to the World *Jove*'s thefts and luſts expoſe.

Credible it is, *Æneas* being driven on the Coaſt of *Africk*, was by ſome Prince there courteouſly entertained, as a Man whoſe fame had been his *Harbinger*: but why the ſtory ſhould be faſtned on *Dido*, I ſee not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her ſelf, gave occaſion to the Poet to feign, that it was for the love of *Æneas*; whereas, it was indeed to avoid the luſt and fury of *Jarbas*, a potent King of the *Getuli*, a powerful Nation, neighbouring thoſe Parts of *Africa* in which *Carthage* ſtood, who violently deſired to have his Pleaſure on her.

Some (ſays the Learned *Voſſius*) aſcribe to *Carthage* a Circuit of 360 *Stadia* which makes it equal to *Babylon*, whereas *Strabo* gives only that dimenſion to the Peninſula it was built in. *Livy* ſaith it was 22 miles in Circuit when it was deſtroyed by the *Romans*, which is but little above the fourth part of the Peninſula: So much it was diminiſhed by length of Time and her Wars in *Sicily* with the *Romans*, and other Nations, and alſo by her Domeſtick Troubles; by all which it was reduced to what *Livy* found it at the Deſolation of it. I am confident, the greateſt heighth of the Proſperity and Power of this City was before the *Trojan* Wars, and that Queen *Dido* only brought hither an Additional Colony, which may be proved by *Appianus Alexandrinus*, who placeth it 500 years before the Sacking of *Troy*: And by the Voyage of *Hanon* without the Streights, which in part is ſtill extant, which was made ſoon after the *Trojan* War, to find new Seats for the over-ſwollen Inhabitants of this City upon the Ocean: So that *Carthage* was older than the New *Tyre*, from whence Queen *Dido* came, and was a Colony of the Ancient *Tyre*; and the *Burſa* ſhe built was only an Addition to the old City. *Voſſius de magnitudine Urbium*, *Cap.* 11. See *Bochart. De Phœnicum Coloniis*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 24. *p.* 511, 12, 13, 410. In all Probability it was one of the moſt ancient Plantations the *Canaanites* made on this Coaſt ſoon after the Conqueſt of *Caanan* by *Joſhua*, though it got not the Reputation of a City till ſome Ages after, as is uſual.

But to proceed, This City thus founded in a Place commodious for Trade and Merchandice, in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire Mercenary Soldiers (of which the Needy *Mauritanians* and *Numidians* did afford good ſtore) they Conquered all the Sea Coaſts from *Cyrene* to the Streights of *Hercules* (now called the Streights of *Gibraltar*:) and ſo much alſo towards the South as was worth the Conquering. Within which ſpace poſſeſſed of 300 Cities; grown to ſuch height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongſt them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania* were at their devotion: They began to caſt their Eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Iſland, lying near unto their Coaſts; which queſtionleſs they had poſſeſſed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatneſs, and fearing their Neighbourhood had not took upon them the defence of the *Mamertines*, and under that pretence got ſome footing in it. The end of this War, after many brave Exploits on both ſides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*; their abandoning all the Iſlands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 Talents, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And ſuch end had the firſt *Punick* War, managed for the moſt part in *Sicily*. During which time, and the firſt War there, managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it ſelf was twice invaded, firſt by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuſe*, (or ſo commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General, but with no other great ſucceſs than the Spoil of the Country. The ſecond followed not long after, but the Scene was altered; begun in *Spain*, proſecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, deſcended from *Barca* the Brother of *Dido* or *Eliſa*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increaſed his Reputation and Experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes* into *Italy* it ſelf; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and ſlew ſome of their Conſuls: So proſperous in the Battel of *Cannæ*, where the whole ſtrength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good Fortune, and made uſe of his Victory, he might within four or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the Forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently tranſlated the War to *Carthage*. The iſſue was, that on the loſs of the Battel of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were neceſſitated to ſubmit themſelves to the will of the Conqueror; that is to ſay, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Galleys, excepting ten; to make no War without leave of the *Romans*; to pay for the Charges of the War 10000 Talents; and ſuch other extremities. So ended the ſecond *Punick* War, *A.U.C.* 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occaſioned by thoſe of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the People of *Rome*, who would not think themſelves ſafe whilſt that City ſtood; and therefore ſent another *Scipio* to lay Siege unto it. By whom, after a long and ſtout Reſiſtance, it was at laſt taken and deſtroyed. The Treaſure which was found in it, notwithſtanding their former Loſſes, and the low eſtate it was reduced to, beſides what was conſumed by Fire, and reſerved by the Soldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of Silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thouſand Pounds of our *Engliſh* Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the reſt of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed againſt her, and aided the *Romans* in theſe Wars; yet they ſoon found their own Fortunes buried in the ſelf-ſame Grave. Subverted one after another, as occaſion was, they became all ſubject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Eſtates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of theſe were reckoned ſeven in all, that is to ſay, 1 *Africa Propria*, called alſo *Zeugitana*, and *Proconſularis*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Sitifenſis*, and 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the laſt (I know not why) was laid to the Dioceſe of *Spain*, called therefore *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, by ſome elder Writers; the other ſix made up the Dioceſe of *Africk*, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till ſubdued by the *Vandals*, a *German* Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory ſtill retained there in the ſtile of thoſe Princes, who call themſelves *Duces Vandalorum*, and in the Confederacy of the *Hanſe-Towns*, called by ſome *Latin* Writers *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great Power and Numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a Part of theſe) one of the Five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th Year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul* by the treacherous Practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Weſtern Empire; and after an abode of three years, paſſed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi* and *Alani*, their Aſſociates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them alſo: So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperor's Vice-gerent in *Africa*; who ſtomaching to ſee his Office beſtowed on *Caſtinus*, an unworthy Man, and his Enemy, betrayed the Country to theſe *Vandals*, in the laſt year of the Life and Reign of *Gundericus*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the reſt of the Nation, to which induced by their Neighbourhood and Acquaintance with the *Goths*: Which *Hereſie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Chriſtians*, ſo they continued in it till their Extirpation.

The *Vandal* Kings of *AFRICA*.

A.C.

412 1. *Gundericus*, who firſt invaded *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Africk*, 16.

428 2. *Genſericus*, who at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and ſacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for fourteen days he gave to his Soldiers; but at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterwards married, he did not burnt it. This *Eudoxia* was Wiſe to the Weſtern Emperor *Valentinian*; who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the Wiſe of one *Maximus*, he cunningly ſlipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his Finger, and by that token ſent for the Lady to the Court, and when ſhe was come, raviſhed her. To revenge this diſgrace, *Maximus* ſlew *Valentinian*, made himſelf Emperor, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his Wiſe. But ſhe ſtomaching a Match ſo unequal to her high Birth, and having ſome incling of her Husband's death ſent for *Genſericus* into *Italy*. This *Genſericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.

476 3. *Honoricus* Son of *Genſericus*. 7.

484 4. *Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo*, the Brother of *Honoricus*. 15.

499 5. *Tranſimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.

523 6. *Hildericus*, the Son of *Honoricus*, depoſed by

530 7. *Gilimir*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Deſcendents of *Genſericus*; overcome by *Beliſarius* a worthy and politick Leader, whom the Emperor *Juſtinian* employed in that Service.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals* (having continued in *Spain* and *Africa* 146 years) by the Valour of *Beliſarius*. Who after this good Service was employed by *Juſtinian* againſt the *Goths*, then reigning in *Italy*; againſt whom he proceeded very fortunately: But being, on I know not what Envy, called to *Conſtantinople*, his Eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his Bread at the Gate of the Temple of St. *Sophia*. A bad Reward for ſo good a Servant. But to go on, *Juſtinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conqueſt, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly ſubject; and increaſing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it ſelf. Appointing his *Præfectus Prætorio Africæ* to reſide in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his Charge; which he then alſo raiſed to a *Conſular* Province, having in former times been *Proconſular* only. But long it held not in this ſtate; for in the year 647. the *Romans* were finally expulſed by *Hucba* a famous Leader; whom *Oſmen*, the third Caliph of the *Saracens*, had deſigned to this Service. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the *Saracenical* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the Caliphs growing leſs and leſs, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himſelf; this Country was diſtracted in many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at laſt reduced to four of moſt conſideration: That is to ſay, the Kingdom of 1. *Tunis*, 2. *Tremeſen* or *Algiers*, 3. *Feſſe*, and 4. *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *Hiſtory* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the Fifth place, the Iſles of *Barbary*.

1. *TUNIS*.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latin* called *Regnum Tunitanum*) hath on the Eaſt, *Cyrene*; on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Algiers* or *Tremeſen*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis*, the chief City of it; extended all along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean* for the ſpace of 800 miles, or thereabout, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The Country towards the Eaſt, barren and deſtitute of water; but in the Weſtern parts, ſufficiently plentiful of Corn and other Fruits, and generally well ſet with Trees. The People more patient of labour than the reſt of *Barbary*, and for that cauſe perhaps more healthy; but queſtionleſs of ſo good conſtitution, that they live commonly to great age, unleſs a violent Death prevent them; and are not much afraid of Sickneſs, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as ſome call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called ſince *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the preſent *Numidia*, lying on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countreys, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, were, 1. *Audas*, 2. *Buzara*, 3. *Cinna*, 4. *Dias*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5. *Gillius*, by ſome named *Gigion*, and 6. thoſe called *Thiziki*. Rivers of moſt eſteem with them, though not much with others, beſides thoſe mentioned before. 1. *Ampſage*, now called *Collo*, and by ſome *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremeſen*; 2. *Catuda*, 3. *Cymphut*, iſſuing from the Hills called *Zucbabarus*, and falling into the Sea, not far from *Tripolis*.

Beſides which, there were ſome great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1. *Hipponites*, near Mount *Cinnia*; 2. The Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was ſaid to have ſhewed her ſelf the Inventreſs of Spining and of Oyl, and for that much worſhipped by this people; 3. *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not ſo famous as the former, becauſe not honoured by a Goddeſs.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Africa* eſpecially ſo called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampſage* to the leſſer *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the leſſer *Syrtis* to the greater; 3. *Numidia*, lying on the Weſt of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*: And 4. *Byzacena*, ſo called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the Territory whereof ſo extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were ſent to *Rome* in the time of *Auguſtus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one ſtalk. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of memory, it is divided at the preſent into the Provinces of 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Conſtantina*, 5. *Bugia*. This King in the year of the *Hegyra* 915. (*A. C.* 537. was overthrown by the *Africans* on his Southern Borders whoſe Prince became very famous and Puiſſant. on this Score *Leo Af. p.* 27.)

1. *EZZAB*, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A ſmall Reigon, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*:) their wealth not riſing from the Commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little elſe beſides *Dates* and *Olives*, but from ſuch Merchandiſe which they buy of the *Venetians*, and ſell to the *Numidians*. The richeſt, thoſe of *Meſrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath ſome, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Meſurata*, 2. *Sibeoa*, both upon the Sea; of which the firſt gives name unto that little Province ſpoken of before. Of more note in former times was *Phileni Villa*, ſituate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory than called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoyning *Altars* called *Phileni Aræ*, errected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occaſion. Some Controverſies being grown betwixt thoſe of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two Men at a ſet hour ſhould be ſent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meet-ſtone* of their ſeveral Territories. The *Phileni*, two Brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were ſo quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenſes* before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenians* much enraged, put them to this choice, either to go ſo much back again, or to die in the place. This laſt accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preſervation of whoſe name and honour to ſucceeding Ages, the greateful *Carthaginians* did erect theſe *Altars*.

2. Weſt of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*,, which together with *Ezzab*, made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley, but more commodiouſly ſeated in regard of the Sea, which is here more ſafe for Navigation; the former lying wholly on the *greater Syrtis*. Cheif Towns hereof, 1. *Leptis Magna*, ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from another, but of leſs note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, ſituate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of ſo great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2. *Euphranta*, called alſo *Pyrgos Euphranta*, from ſome ſtrong Tower in it on the Weſtern bank of the *greater Syrtis*. 3. *Cinſturna*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Cyniphus*. 4. *Cabis*, the utmoſt City of this Province Weſtward; the ſame which *Ptolemy* calls *Tacapa*, ſituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the *leſſer Syrtis*. This City has a River derived to it from a Lake behind it; and a Port, though of no great uſe becauſe expoſed to all Winds which makes the River though Small, of the greater Value, the Tides filling it and bringing up thoſe Ships it will bear; from this City the *Syrtis Minor*, is now called *Golfo de Caps*. It lyes 70 miles from *Safucos* to the Eaſt and two Stations from *Cairuan* to the South Eaſt and 20 miles from *TUNIS*. South Eaſt the Lake is called *Tritonis* in *Ptolemy*, and is ſaid to be hot and to cure the Leproſy. *Leo Africanus p.* 256. makes it a Strong Roman Town &c. 5. *Sabratha*; and 6. *Heva*; not elſe obſervable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from thoſe three Cities before mentioned. A City of great Name and Riches, till deſtroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colledges, and Hoſpitals; and flouriſhing in much Wealth and Luſtre, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject to the King of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genoeſe* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them ſold to the King of *Feſſe*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navarr*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, the firſt Monarch of *Spain*: whoſe Nephew *Charles* the 5*th*. conferred it on the Knights of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: Whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Baſa* General of *Selimus* the Second, diſpoſſeſſed by force, *An.* 1551. In 1559 the Chriſtians attempted to regain it without Succeſs. And ſince that it is Govern'd like a Comon Wealth. It lies over againſt the Iſle of *Malta*, and is the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* for theſe *African* Provinces; and made an uſual Retreat for Pyrates, who inſeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to the Coaſts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Chriſtian* Countries. The *Nubian* Geographer (*pag.* 88) ſaith, *Tripolis* is a Strong City, walled with White Stone, and adorned with beautifull Streets. *Roger* King of *Sicily* took this City from the *Moors* in the year of the *Hegyra* 540 *A. C.* 1157. who carried the Women into Captivity, and Slew all the Males: From *Tripoli* to *Sort* Eaſtward is 230 miles Engliſh, *Leo Africanus p.* 259. The Old *Tripolis* was built by the *Romans* and taken by the *Moors* in the time of the Cailif *Homar* after a Siege of 6 Months. The New *Tripolis* is encompaſſed with an high and beautiful Wall, but of no great Strength; the Houſes are better than thoſe of *TUNIS*, they have none but Ciſtern Water, the City ſtanding in a Sandy Soil, which yet yeilds Dates, but Corn is dear. To the North it had better Lands, which are now eaten up by the Sea. Between this and *Alexandria* there is no place of Note, which makes the *Venetians* Trade with this Port. It was Subject to the King of *TUNIS*; after this it was taken by the *Genoueſe*, and ſold to *Habdul Mumen* King of *Feſſe*, and not long after became free again, and continued under Princes of its own till it was taken by *Pedro de Navarra* for *Ferdinand* King of Spain as aboveſaid.

3. The Province of *TUNIS* lying Weſtward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up ſo much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Byzacena*; and ſo much of the *Roman Africk*, as lyeth on the Eaſt of the River called *Guadilharbar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the ancient Writers. The Country anciently ſo fruitful, that it yeilded uſually an Increaſe of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, beſides the teſtimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may ſerve ſufficiently. Now indigent, and ſo unprovided of all Grain for the uſe of their Families, that they are fain to furniſh themſelves of other places: The people not daring to manure or ſow their Land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into theſe parts, and ſpoil what they meet with. The *Arabians* here mentioned are the Wandering *Arabs*, a Nation that will fix no where, but moving from Place to Place with their Wives and Children, Flocks and Herds, prey upon the Subſtance and Labours of the Settled *Moors*, who are of the Same Nation Language and Religion; which neceſſitates the Republick of *Argiers* to keep an Army allways on foot againſt them.

Leo Africanus, pag. 7. 6. ſaith they were firſt ſuffered to paſs the *Nile* in the year of the *Hegira* 400. by a Cailif of *Grand Cairo*, becauſe one of his Sultans had rebelled againſt him, and with drawn *Alcaira* and almoſt all *Barbary* from his Obedience. This People has ever ſince been the Plague of all the *Moors*, and perhaps may at laſt prove the bane of that Nation; as they have ruined all *Paleſtine* and *Syria* in the *Turkiſh* Empire, and ſpread further into the Leſſer *Aſia* every year, to the Ruine of the Tillage, Trade, Traveling and Commerce of that Country: They are a lazy, thieviſh and unprofitable People, depending upon their Cattle and what they can ſteal for a Subſiſtence.

Places of moſt note in it, in the elder times, 1. *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumyſtus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*; by conſequence, in the times of *Chriſtianity*, an Archbiſhop's See: walled and repaired by the Emperour *Juſtinian*, and by his Command called *Juſtiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his Battel with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagara*, memorable for the great Battel betwixt the two renowned *Generals* of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd ſince their own times, nor in thoſe before them; in which the great Controverſie between thoſe Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* ſhewed his ſingular Judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in Horſe, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage*, conſtrained to fight in a place of diſadvantage, he could do no marvels: The *Romans*, with the loſs of no more than 1500 of their own Men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the Fight and Chaſe. 4. *Salera*, the firſt place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greateſt Ships; much ſpoken of in the Wars of *Carthage*, and memorable for the Death of *Cato* (hence ſurnamed *Utican*) who here ſlew himſelf, for fear of falling into the Hands of *Cæſar*. It is now called *Biſerta*. This City, in the *Nubian Geographer, p.* 87. is called *Benezert*, who ſaith it is a Maritim City of very great Strength, but Leſs than *Suſa*, and that it lyes a days Journey from *TUNIS* (by Sea.) On the Eaſt of it lyes a Lake of the ſame Name, 16 Miles long and 8 broad, which paſſeth into the Sea by a Mouth it has; and this ſerves inſtead of a Haven to the Town. On the Weſt of the Town the River *Bagrada* or *Megrada* falls into the Sea, ſo that it ſeems to be naturally a place of Strength, and ſeated for Trade. From it to *Tabarca* by Sea is 70 miles, by Land about 58 to the Weſtward. *Leo Africanus pag.* 244. ſaith it is alſo called *Benzart* and was founded by the *Africans* 35 miles from *TUNIS*, but in his time was meanly Inhabited by a beggarly people, who were Fiſhers in that Lake mentioned by *Nubiencis* (between which and the River it ſtands, having the River on the Weſt and the Lake on the Eaſt) but the King of *TUNIS* and the *Arabians* ſo vexed the Inhabitants with their Exactions, that it fell into this wretched State *pag.* 244. In the Map of *Carthage* this place is exactly repreſented by *Mercator*. 6. *Byzacium*, ſeated in a liberal and fruitful Soil, as was ſhewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Ruſpinum*, made by *Cæſar* the ſeat of his War in *Africk*, againſt the Sons and Faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times ſucceeding, for being the Epiſcopal See of St. *Fulgentius*. 8. *Thyſtrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of *Gordians*: Of which the Father in this City was ſaluted Emperour by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperour, whoſe *Procurator* they had ſlain in a tumult: But his party being diſcomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximinus* ſent againſt him, and his Son killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the News, he here hanged himſelf. 9. *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held it out longeſt for the Mercenaries, in their deſperate Rebelion againſt the *Carthaginians*; by which the Eſtate of that great City was in danger of Ruine at the end of the firſt *Punick* War. 10 *Carthage*, once the Lady and Miſtreſs of *Africk*, called by the *Grecians* Καρχηδὼν, built by Queen *Dido* a *Tyrian* Princeſs, *Anno. Mundi* 3725. 72 years after *Rome* was founded, 874 years before the Birth of our Saviour; ſituate in the bottom of a ſafe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one ſide only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Iſthmus*, about two miles and an half in breadth, in compaſs 24 miles but meaſuring by the outward Wall, it was 45. for without the Wall of the City it ſelf there were three Walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under-ground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horſe, and all their Provender, and Lodging in thoſe out ſtreets for the *Riders* of the ſaid Horſe, and for 20000 Foot beſides, which never came within the City to annoy or peſter it. On the South-ſide ſtood the Caſtle called *Byrſa*; which took up two miles and an half in compaſs: Firſt built by *Dido*, on that ground which ſhe obtained of the *Libians*, when ſhe got leave to buy only ſo much Land of them, as ſhe could compaſs round about with an Oxes Hide. In that the ſumptuous Temple of their ancient Deities, *Juno*, *Appollo*, *Æſculapius*, *Belus*. On the Weſt ſide a ſtanding Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by ſo narrow a paſſage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a ſtately *Arſenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the Foundation and Affairs of this mighty City we have ſpoke already. The Government of it firſt by Kings, thoſe *abſolute* enough at firſt, afterwards limited by the *Senate*; and finally made meerly *titular* by the Power of the people: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Ariſtotle*, in the Second of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the ſecond *Punick* War, when they were at the greateſt, extended on the Sea-coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streights*, and unto the River *Iberus*, for the ſpace of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* anſwerable, and readily brought in, by reaſon of their infinite Trading. Which made the *Roman* People think themſelves unſafe, whilſt this City ſtood. Reſolved on the deſtruction of it, they ſent againſt it *L. Martius*, and *M. Manlius*, their two *Conſuls*, with a puiſſant Army: To whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the Preſervation of the City it ſelf, which was faithfully promiſed. But when they had withal givin up the Sons of their Principal Men to be ſent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told, *That a City conſiſted not in Walls, but in Laws and Government*. Theſe, with the Corporation, ſhould remain as formerly; the Town to be removed Ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was reſolved to abide the utmoſt: but they wanted Neceſſaries for Reſiſtance. That want ſupplied for want of Iron to make Arms with Gold and Silver; the Houſes pulled down to furniſh them with Timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the Hair of their Heads, to make Ropes and Cordage, 25000 Women liſted to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a ſecond *Scipio* is ſent thither to diſpach the Work; by whom at laſt the Town was taken, and for 17 days together conſumed with fire: The Queen and multitudes of the People burning themſelves in the Temple of *Æſculapius*, becauſe they would not fall into the Hands of the *Romans*. Re-edified by *Julius Cæſar*, and made a Colony, it recovered ſome part of her former luſtre; but ſo, that her chief Glory was rather to be ſought for in her ancient, than her preſent Fortunes. *Populi Romani* Colonia, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax æmula, & priorum excidio rerum, quam ope præſentium clarior*, was her Character in the times of *Pomponius Mela*. But in the laſt eſtate, accompted for the *Metropolis* of the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, the Reſidence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Biſhpos under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* ſtood. Deſtroyed in the ſucceeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the Reputation of a City of no mean Importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9*th*. and thereupon deſerted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languiſh, and was at laſt reduced to nothing but a few ſcattered Houſes, not above five and twenty Shops, one Temple; all the reſt a Ruine. So truly ſaid the ancient Poet:

Sic patet exemplis Oppida poſſe mori.
Thus by Examples do we ſee,
That Towns may die as well as we.

It ſuſtained 3 ſharp Wars with *Rome*; the firſt of which laſted 24 years, the Second 18. and had ended in the Ruine of *Rome* if the *Carthaginians* had but ſupplyed their Generall effectually, and in time; the third laſted 3 years, and ended in the Total Subverſion of this City, *Anno Mundi* 3803. Yet it was made a *Roman Colony*, and rebuilt under the *Gracchi* 25 years after the Ruine of it, and was, as *Vell. Paterculus* affirms, the firſt Colony the *Romans* ſent out of *Italy*. After this, it flouriſhed greatly. and the Primate of this City had 125. Suffragan Biſhops under him, *Anno Criſti* 432. It was taken by the *Vandals* from which time it was their Royal Seat, till the year 533. it was recovered to the *Roman* Empire Under *Juſtinian*. In 617 it was taken and Sackt by *Coſroes* King of *Perſia*, who came through *Egypt* as far as this City. About 632 this City fell into the hands of the *Saracens*, who made it Tributary only; before the year 684 they took it again, and treated the Inhabitants barbarouſly. About 690 *Juſtinian* 2 recovered it again from them. About 703 the *Saracens* returned the third time and made a perfect Conqueſt of it; ſince which they have enjoyed it to the total Ruine of Chriſtianity. *Boniface* Earle of *Corſica* being deſerted by his Chriſtian Neighbours, and driven out by the *Saracens* in 830. landed in *Africa* between *Carthage* and *Utica*, and fought 4 Proſperous Battels againſt them; by which he forced them to recall their Forces out of *Sicily*. In 1030. the *Piſans* took this City from the *Saracens*, or as others ſuppoſe rather *TUNIS*, ho it is called *Carthage*; and in the year 1269 it was retaken by *Lewis* the Ninth. In *Camden*'s Letters, *pag*. 378. mention is made of *Alphonſus Comte de A'la* who died under the Walls of *Carthage* in the Kingdom of *Tunis* in *September* 1270. which Words are graven upon his Tomb-ſtone at St. *Denis*, the ſame year the King of *France* died here (*viz.*) 24 of *Auguſt*. After his Death they went to the Seige of *Tunis*, which is called in the Inſcription *Carthage*: Here they had no good Succeſs by reaſon of a Plague in the Army, but were forced to take Money of the King of *Tunis*, and return as they came. So that *Carthage* was then extant, but an open place; and *Tunis* was called alſo *Carthage*, becauſe built out of the Ruines of it. In the Life of St *Lewis*, *Paulus Emilius* ſaith the Caſtle was taken before the City, and by the Mariners whilſt the Garriſon of *Carthage* made a Sally, ſo that then it ſeemed to be a place of ſome Strength. Yet he calls *Tunis* a *nobler City than Carthage, and the King's Seat.* Mr. *Eveſham* an *Engliſh* Man, ſaw this City in 1586. It was narrow and long; *for yet there is to be ſeen* ſaith he *a Street* 3 Engliſh *Miles long*. But the reſt was then Deſolate and uninhabited *Hackl. T.* 2 *page* 282.

Of chief note at the preſent, 1. *Tunis*, ſuppoſed to be the *Themiſa*, or *Thumiſa* of *Ptolemy*; of ſmall accompt till the laſt deſtruction of *Carthage*, by whoſe fall it roſe. Situate not far from the Ruines of that famous City, in compaſs above five miles; and in that compaſs ſaid to contain 10000 Houſholds. Of great Traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly from *Genoa* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the Seiges and Succeſſes of two of our *Engliſh* Princes; that namely, of King *Edward* the Firſt, in his Fathers time; and that of *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Derby*: by both which (though the laſt ſerved only under the Command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Compoſition; *Lewis* the 9*th*. commonly called St. *Lewis*, dying at the Firſt Siege of it. 2. *Goletta*, a ſtrong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a demy-Iſland, divided from the main Land by two narrow paſſages, but ſo that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty, by *Charles* the 5*th*. *Anno*. 1535. together with the *Turkiſh* Navy riding in the Lake faſt by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An*. 1574. 3. *Cairoan*, built by *Hucbas*, who firſt conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*, in a ſandy Deſart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any of the Sea, to ſecure himſelf from any Invaſion, which the commodiouſneſs of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the Firſt Founder of it, with an admirable Temple raiſed on Pillars of Marble: who placed alſo in it a Colledge of Prieſts, and made it the chief Reſidence of his Poſterity for the ſpace of 170 years, who reigned here under the great Caliphs as the Sultans of *Africk*. Deſtroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424*th*. year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and ſtill of ſuch eſteem amongſt theſe *Mahometans*, that their chief Men are brought hither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the Prayers of thoſe *Prieſts* to find a ſhorter way to Heaven, than in other places. This was intended only a Retreat for that Nation to ſtore up the Spoils of *Africa*; to that end it was ſurrounded with impregnable Walls: This was in the year of Chriſt 991. when this General led 80000 Men to the Conqueſt of *Africa*; after which he made the *Arabs* conquer Spain. It is ſeated in a Sandy Plain which beareth neither Corn nor Trees, but has plenty of Water from Mount *Gueſlet*, 12 miles from it. For a great while it was the Seat of the *Arabian* Learning in *Africa*. Afterwards it was ſackd, and could never recover its ancient ſplendour, being only now inhabited by Tanners, and ſubject to the Kings of *TUNIS*. It can have no trade, but with difficulty; and therefore it is not to be wonder'd it was ſo eaſily at once deſtroyed. A Court may raiſe, but it is Trade that muſt preſerve A City, when the other is removed.

4. More Weſtward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, ſo called from *Conſtantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Guadilbarbar*, to *Conſtantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the ſame with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolemy*: The Soyl hereof ſaid to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great ſtore of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Oriſius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the Eaſt; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Weſtern Bank of *Rubricatus*; Both *Roman* Colonies, but this laſt moſt famous, in being the *Epiſcopal* See of renowned St. *Auguſtine*. 3. *Bona*, the Birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about a hundred miles from the Sea; but ſituate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: ſo Rich and Fertile, that the Town flouriſheth to this day; adorned with a ſumptuous *Moſque*, and never without the Company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunis* and the Iſle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits, and Butter. It is ſeated on the Weſt of *TUNIS* 216 miles on the South of Mount *Jadogh*, which was taken by the *Saracens*, *Anno Chriſti* 1165. *Nubiencis* 88. and ſeems to have been the laſt place that held out againſt the *Moors*, in their Conqueſt of *Barbary*. Mount *Jadogh* is very high, and affords Mines of *Iron*. The Sea *Charts* place *Bona* 45 Leagues Weſt of *TUNIS*, and 35 from *Sardinia* to the South. It was taken by *Hutmen* the Third, Calif of the *Saracens* (between 644 and 654.) and utterly deſtroyed; and what now ſtands, was built out of the Ruines of *Hippo*, 2 miles diſtant. It contains now 300 Families, who live in mean Houſes: They are ingenious, and have ſome Trade for Linnen, which they carry into *Numidia*; their greateſt Want is good Water, for they have none but what falls from Heaven and is reſerved

ſerved in Ciſterns. They have Coral, but know not how to get it, which turns to the Advantage of the *Genoueſe*, *Leo Africanus pag* 241. It is ſtrong, and has a large Haven, *Baudrand.* 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans.* 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the ſame nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culcua*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Conſtantina* by the *Latins*, and moſt Nations elſe, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate near a Mountain of the ſame name, near the edge of *Bugia.* An ancient City, but containing ſtill 8000 Families; many ſumptous Buildings, amongſt which a large Temple, two Colledges, and three or four Monaſteries: Frequently viſited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief Commodities Wool, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and ſome ſorts of Fruits, which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandiſe. The City for the moſt part fenced about with high craggy Rocks; and where thoſe want, with ſtrong Walls, of a great height, and moſt exquiſite workmanſhip, declaring the Antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal* Arch, not far from the City, and ſome *Hot Baths*, after the manner of the *Romans.* This City is called by *Nubiencis*, *Coſantina.* It ſtands upon the River *Ladogh* which runs Round the Walls as a Ring. It had only 2 Gates, *Mila* on the Weſt, and *Alcantara* to the Eaſt: The River having fetch'd a Compaſs to ſecure this City, runs to the North. *Leo Africanus* obſerveth the Wall is ſtrongeſt to the North, the reſt being ſecured by Rocks as well as the River, and is the Mart for the *Numidian* Trade. In his time it was under the King of *Tunis*, but had been before a diſtinct Kingdom. *Leo Afr. pag* 238. It is now ſubject to the City of *Argiers.*

5. Moſt Weſtward lieth the Province of BUGIA, extended from Mount *Conſtantine* to the River *Ampſa*, now called *Chollo*, or *Seſ-Gemar*: which, with ſo much of *Conſtantina*, as lieth on the Weſt ſide of *Rubricatus*, made up that province which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia.* The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half ſo much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *Sed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat Soyl, plentiful both in Fruits and Corn, but moſt fit for Paſturage, to which the people were ſo addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houſes, (inſtead whereof they uſed the *Hold* of a ſhip with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Paſtures failed them From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπὸ τȣ̃ νέμειν, ſignifying to feed or graze. The people of good metal, ſwift of Foot, and well skilled in Horſemanſhip: but better in the Onſet, & to give a Charge, than in ſtanding to it; ſuch as the wild *Arabians* are now ſaid to be. So here was anciently a people like to them, but fixed I ſuppoſe before they entred *Africa*, to renew that ſort or way of Living, which is one of the worſt Mankind can betake them to.

Chief Towns hereof (beſides *Thuburnica*, *Culena*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, ſpoken of before, belonging to *Numidia* though not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by ſome conceived to have been the *Thebuacha* of *Ptolemy*, now the chief City of this Province, adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome Monaſteries and Colledges for Students in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for relief of the Poor; fenced alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle. Secured by ſtrength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulneſs of the ſituation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton, working much miſchief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at Sea; till taught more modeſty by *Peter* of *Navarr* a *Spaniſh* Captain *An.* 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. This City was retaken by the *Turks* and is now under the *Algerines.* In 1671. Sr. *Edward Sprague*, an *Engliſh* Admiral, took and burnt under the Guns of this Caſtle 9 of the beſt Men of War the *Algerines* had; who thereupon cut of the Head of their King, and made a Peace with us much to the Advantage of *England.* *Geo Nubienſis p.* 82. ſaith it is ſeated upon a Rock at the foot of Mount *Amaſium* to the South; That it was employed for an Arſenal to build Ships, having plenty of Timber and Mines of *Iron.* He calls it *Begiaya.* The Inhabitants were always at War with the *Spaniards*, who took it at laſt without any Reſiſtance, and ſackd it 6 years after. *Barbaroſſa* endeavoured to retake the Forts the *Spaniards* had built in 1508 but was beaten off with great Loſs. 2. *Chollo*, upon the Sea-ſide, the *Chollophus Magna* (as I take it) of *Ptolemy*; reported for a wealthy City. 3. *Nicaus*, ſeated towards Mount *Atlas* in a pleaſant and delightful Country: which though interſperſed with many Hills, yet being thoſe Hills are cloathed with Woods, yield them good ſtore of Goats and Horſes, and feed the Vallies with freſh Springs, which do iſſue from them; they rather add than detract any thing from the pleaſures of it. 4. *Madaura*, by ſome called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius.* 5. *Tunudromum*, another of the *Romon* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a *Roman* Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Syphax* King of the *Maſæſyli*, within whoſe Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Amſaga*, and memorable for the Tragedy of *Sophoniſby*, the Daughter of *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*; a Lady of moſt exquiſite beauty, and yet carried more Charms in her Tongue than in her Eyes. Eſpouſed firſt unto *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon the Reaſon of State, married unto *Syphax*; who being took Priſoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, beſtowed her ſelf on her firſt Lover: But *Scipio* fearing leſt that marriage might withdraw *Maſiniſſa* from the *Roman* party, cauſed the Lady to be ſeized on; which *Maſiniſſa* not being otherwiſe able to prevent or remedy, ſent her a Cup of Poyſon, which ſhe drank, and died.

Of theſe *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; employed by this laſt City in all their Wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicily.* Siding at laſt with *Scipio* againſt that State, they did good Service to the *Romans* in the weakning and deſtruction of that City, whoſe fall they did not long ſurvive: Firſt conquered in the War of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the ſucceſſion of them, follow in this Order.

The

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1. G*Ala* the Father of *Maſiniſſa*.
2. *Deſalces*, the Brother of *Gala*, according to the Law of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King, (like the Law of *Taniſtry* in *Ireland*) ſucceeded *Gala*.
3. *N. N.* a Son of *Deſalces*, in the abſence of *Maſiniſſa* then ſerving under the *Carthaginians* in the Wars of *Spain*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne: Slain not long after by a Rebel.
4. *Maſiniſſa*, Son of *Gala*, recovered the Kingdom of his Father; but again outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Maſiniſſa*, touching *Sophonisba* there was deadly Feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom aſſociated againſt *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greateſt part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A profeſſed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruine whereof he lived to ſee) till the time of his death, being then Ninety years of age.
5. *Micipſa*, the Son of *Maſiniſſa*, of whom nothing memorable.
6. *Jugurth*, the Son of *Maſtanabalus*, one of the brethren of *Micipſa*, having wickedly made away the two Sons of *Micipſa*, uſurped the Kingdom, and manifeſtly withſtood the *Romans*, whoſe attempts ſometimes by force, ſometimes by ſubtilty, but chiefly by Money and Bribes, he overthrew and made fruſtrate: *Et fuit in Jugurtha* (ſaith *Florus*) *quod poſt Annibalem timeretur*. At laſt being broken by *Metellus*, vanquiſhed by *Marius*, and by *Bocchus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*, he was by *Marius* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver wedges, 5775 pounds weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the cuſtom of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the Riches and Money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treaſury.
7. *Hiempſal*, Son of *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Father's Treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*; Relieved *Marius* in his Exile.
8. *Hiarbas*, another of the *Maurian* Faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquiſhed and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla*'s Captains.
9. *Hiempſal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.
10. *Juba*, the Son of *Hiempſal* the Second, who ſiding with *Pompey* againſt *Cæſar* in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cæſar*'s Lieutenants; *Curio* himſelf ſlain, his whole Army routed, ſuch as were taken priſoners murdered in cold Blood. But being diſcomfited by *Cæſar*, after *Pompey*'s death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which, the Nations of moſt Note were the *Nigitimi*, on the Eaſtern parts of the *Mediterranean*; the *Machini*, near the leſſer *Syrtis*; the *Lybiæ-Phœnices*, and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Jonii*, *Nuvatræ* and *Certeſii*, taking up all the Sea-coaſts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of theſe, not ſo much conſiderable; None of them to be ſtaid upon, but the *Lybiæ-Phœnices*, a mixt People of the old *Libyans*, and new *Phœnicians*, as the *Liby-Egyptii* were of the ſaid *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them ſo defaced by the violent Inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is ſcarce any tract, or footſteps in all the Country. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at firſt ſubject to the Caliph of Grand *Cairo*, and after that to the Sultan of *Cairoan*; after the ſpoil whereof by the *Arabians*, ſubdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the diſtractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by ſome one of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almoheads*, who took unto himſelf the Title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his Chief Seat. By him tranſmitted unto his Poſterity, till the days of our Grandfathers; when *Muleaſſes*, one of the youngeſt Sons of *Sultan Mahomet*, having firſt murdered *Maimon* his eldeſt Brother, and put out the Eyes of 20 of the reſt, uſurped the Soveraignty. *Roſetta*, the only one of thoſe Princes who eſcaped this Maſſacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deſerted, was fain to put himſelf into the hand of *Barbaroſſa*, King of *Algiers*, and Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Navy; by whom he was carried to *Conſtantinople*, and ſo preſented to *Solyman*, who under colour of reſtoring him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himſelf; outed thereof not long after by *Charles* the Fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaſſes*. *An*. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Sovereignty, when his Eyes were alſo put out by his own Son *Amyda*, and ſo commited to cloſe Priſon: Nor did *Amyda* enjoy it long, diſpoſſeſſed by *Abdamelech* his Father's Brother. To *Abdamelech Mahomet* his Son ſucceeded; who being a Child, and his Affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Miniſters of State, gave opportunity to *Amyda* to regain the Kingdom, During which broils the *Turks* again recovered footing, poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of the Country, and forced *Amyda* into exile, who flying to Don *John of Auſtria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invited him to the Conqueſt of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for Don *John* having ſubdued the Kingdom, conferred the ſame on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amyda*, and carried *Amyda* in Bonds to the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long; for the next year the *Turks* beſieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the ſtrong Fort of *Goletta*, with all the other Forts and Holds of that Kingdom, made ever ſince a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire; the poor King being carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople* at the end of the War, which was in the year 1574. and the laſt of *Selimus* the Second. This Kingdom is at this day ſubject to the Republick of *Algiers*; but when, or how Conquer'd, I cannot Aſſign. Till the year 1642. that State was ſubject to the *Port*, or *Ottoman* Family, and then freed it ſelf; and as I ſuppoſe, took Poſſeſſion of this Province.

2. *TREMESEN*, or *ALGIERS*.

THE Kingdom of *TREMESEN* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Amſaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, from which ſeparated by the River of *Malutha*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremeſen*, or *Teleuſine*, the chief City of it. Called alſo the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City ſo named, ſometimes the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

In the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*: *Mauritania*, becauſe of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæſarienſis* from *Cæſarea* the chief City of it, as that ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on whom the King hereof depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Maſæſyli*, one of the moſt powerful Nations in all this Tract, over whom Reigned *Syphax* before-mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo*, *Maſæſylia*, with good Propriety; and corruptedly, *Maſſylia*.

The Kingdom extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt, for the ſpace of 380 Miles, but of breadth not anſwerable; is generally of the ſame nature (as to the Soil and Air) with the reſt of *Barbary*: ſufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts; but meanly peopled, by reaſon of the continual ſpoils made by the *Arabians*, who poſſeſs the Deſarts; and the Cities of it much waſted by continual Wars. Nor have the People any peculiar Character, but what belongeth to others of theſe *Africans* alſo.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Guagyda*, inconveniently ſeated, as paying their accuſtomed Tributes to the King of *Tremeſen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here ſo numerous and powerful, that the Kings themſelves of this ſmall Kingdom were fain to buy their Peace of them at exceſſive Rates. 2. *Tigedent*, ſometimes famous, and abounding with Men of Learning; now almoſt forſaken, by reaſon of the ill neighborhood of theſe *Arabians*. 3. *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the moſt part by Weavers. 4. *Breſch*, the Inhabitans whereof uſe to paint a black Croſs on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their Hands. The reaſon of which Cuſtom they are ignorant of, but ſome conceive it to be a remembrance of their Chriſtianity. 5. *Ned-Roma* built, as the People do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an Epitome, or Abridgment of that mighty City, to which it is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance; and that imported by the name, which ſignifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*, perhaps the ſame which *Ptolemy* calleth *Novum Oppidum*, or the New Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Batha*, once a great City, ſince decay'd by Wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infeſting with their Gallies the Coaſts of *Spain*; till taken for *Ferdinand* the Catholick by *Peter* of *Navarr*, *An.* 1506. It was taken in the year 1509. by the Cardinal of *Ximenes* for the *Spaniards*, in whoſe hands it ſtill is. *Natalis Comes*, upon occaſion of a Siege which it ſuffered in the year 1556. from the *Moors*, ſaith its antient Name was *Buyza*, Populous and great, ſeated over againſt *Barcelona* in *Spain* (but it lies above three Degrees more to the Weſt) and not far from the Streights of *Gibralter* (that is 300 *Italian* Miles to the Eaſt) that it lies extended on the ſhoars of the *Mediterranean* Sea. There was but 2000 Men in Garriſon then in the Town, and they were attacked by 12000 *Turks*, yet they defended the Place with that Bravery, that the *Turk* was forced to draw off with great Shame and Loſs. In 1687. the *Spaniards* ſent thither a greater Garriſon than formerly it had. *Nubienſis p.* 80. placeth it three Stations from *Tremeſen* to the North; he calls it *Vabaran*, and ſays it ſtood near the Sea, and fortified with ſtrong earthen Works (*Propugnacula Terrea*) that had ſpacious Streets, many Trades, and much Merchandiſe, and ſtood over againſt *Almaria* in *Spain*, the Sea between them being two Days Journey (35 Leagues) and in his time the Sea-coaſts of *Spain* had their Corn from hence; at its Gates the Harbour was unſafe, but two Miles off it had both a large and ſafe one; and that a River from the Continent gave Drink to the Inhabitants. Thus far *Nub. p.* 80. It ſtands, ſaith he, *p.* 81. 204 Miles from *Tenes* (30 Leagues *Eng.*) to the Weſt. *Leo Africanus, p.*225. calls it a great and populous Town that had once 6000 Families, and was built by the *Africans*. Its diſtance from *Tremiſen* is 140 Miles, well built as to its Moſques, Colledges, Baths, Inns, *&c.* encompaſſed with high and ſtrong Walls, a Plain on one ſide, and Mountains on the other: It Trades with *Venice*, *Genoua* and *Spain*, and the Inhabitants were free from the King of *Tremiſen*, and lived much by Pyracy, which filled them with Chriſtian Slaves: This provoked *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* to ſend an Army againſt it, who took it *A. C.* 1507. with great ſlaughter of the Inhabitants; the King ſending no Relief: Since which time Peopled and Poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: in vain beſieged by the *Turks*, *An.* 1562. 8 *Maſalquiver*, a fair and ſpacious Haven on the ſame Sea alſo, and taken by the ſaid *Peter* of *Navarr* about the ſame time. 9. *Hareſgol*, in former times of much eſteem amongſt the *Moors*; but being deſtroyed by the King or Sultan of *Cairoan*, it bequeathed its Greatneſs unto *Tremeſen*, which after grew into Renown. 10. *Tremeſen*, once Adorned with many beautiful Moſques, and five ſumptuous Colledges, curiouſly wrought with *Moſaick* work: ſo Populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families; and ſo well fortified, that it held out ſeven Years againſt *Joſeph* the Great King of *Feſſe*: nor taken after that, though they were very much weakned by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* his Son and Succeſſor, under a Siege of 30 Months. By thoſe, and the ſucceeding Troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in Strength and Beauty. The *Nubian* Geographer ſaith, it ſtands nine Days Journey from *Feſſe*, and is compaſſed with very ſtrong and antient Walls: the City was parted alſo within by a Wall. On the South, at ſome diſtance ſtood Mount *Sachratain*, and out of it ſprung a Fountain which turned ſome Mills. Upon this River ſtand Monaſteries, Oratories, and other Religious Houſes, *&c.* 11. *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, ſometimes Kings of this Country. 12. *Arſenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after ſuch time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæſarea*, in Honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whoſe Feudataries the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as ſome ſay, in honour of *Claudius Cæſar*; by whom made a Colony: the Metropolis of it alſo when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæſarienſis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now ſtands, which ſeemeth to have riſen out of the Ruins of it. 14. *Saldæ*, a *Roman* Colony, alſo, out of whoſe Ruins roſe *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, ſituate near the Sea, in the form of a Triangle, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor ſafe from the North Winds, which do much annoy it. The Buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, Baths, and Moſques, exceeding ſumptuous; every Trade having a ſeveral Place, or Street by it ſelf: but that which is the greateſt grace of it, is the ſituation of the Houſes ſtanding in even Streets one above another, upon the riſing of a ſteep Hill; ſo that the Windows of one Street, or row of Houſing, do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a moſt pleaſant proſpect. A City, not ſo large as ſtrong; and not ſo ſtrong as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retreating place of the *Turkiſh* Pyrates, who domineer ſo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent thoſe Seas. Famous alſo for the Shipwrack which *Charles* the Fifth here ſuffered who beſieged this Town, loſt in the Haven of it at one Tempeſt, beſides an infinite number of Karvals and ſmall Boats, divers ſtrong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; ſuch a number of gallant Horſes, that in *Spain* the Race of Horſes for Service had like to have been loſt for ever; and above half his Men. It long enjoyed the benefit of Proprietary Princes, (but Homagers, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremeſen*,) till ſuch time as *Selimes* and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the firſt, and that an irrepairable Breach in the Government. So *Selimes* to ſtrengthen his ſide, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbaroſſa*, a noble Pyrate; who taking his beſt advantage, ſlew the disjointed Brethren, and ſetled himſelf in the Kingdom: which he had ſcarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa* his Brother, *An.* 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was ſo renowned for Martial Proweſs, that *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made him Lord High-Admiral of his Fleet: Which Office, when to the prejudice of Chriſtendom he had fortunately, and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremeſen* being made ſubject to the *Turk* much about that time. This Kingdom and City continued ſubject to the *Turks* to the year 1642. and then taking the opportunity of their *Baſſa*'s abſence, they ſlew him, and Revolted from the *Turks*; the Port has ſince ſent them *Baſſa*'s, and they receive them, but they ſit not in the *Divan* (Senate) nor have any Authority over them: Thereupon they choſe a *Dey* or Governor. Between 1642, and 1672. there were Thirteen of theſe Officers, and but one had died in his Bed, and all the reſt were murther'd by the Tumults of this City: He has under him a Lieutenant without the City for the Commanding the Land Army, and an *Aga* within for the Government of the City. The Divan formerly 1000 Perſons is now reduced to 48. which has made the Government much more eaſie and peaceable. In 1688. *Lewis* 14. of *France* ſent 48 Gallies to Bomb this City, which more provoked than hurt the Inhabitants: and the Year after he made a diſhonourable Peace with them. *Marmolius*, in his *Africa*, obſerveth, That this is now the richeſt and moſt ſplendid City in *Africk*; it having many noble ſplendid Palaces, that were built by the Admirals and other Renegado Chriſtians, who have grown Rich by their Pyracies. This Author wrote about 1636. I ſuſpect the Caſe is much alter'd, the *Engliſh* having twice deſtroyed their Fleets ſince that time. The *Engliſh* or *Dutch* might eaſily Ruine this City, but it's ſaid to be their Intereſt to preſerve it, becauſe thereby they have a great ſhare in the Trade of the *Mediterranean* Sea; which would be taken from them by the ſmall Veſſels of other Nations, if this Town by preying upon their Ships did not prevent it. 16. *Tetuan.* And 17. *Sargel*, ſituate Weſtward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpiditani*, *Taladuſii*, *Thaluſſii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chittuæ*, and others of as little note; the moſt predominant Nation being the *Maſæſyli*, over whom (and in that over all the reſt) Reigned *Syphax*, ſpoken of before, unfortunately famous for his Tragical Love to *Sophoniſba*: For whoſe ſake, ſiding with the *Carthaginians* againſt the *Romans*, he was vanquiſhed and ſent Pris'ner to *Rome*; his Kingdom given to *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his Line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then beſtowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whoſe Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperour *Claudius*; won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of theſe laſt, while they ſtood and flouriſhed: But growing into many Diſtractions, and every Sultan, or Provincial Governour ſhifting for himſelf, it became a Kingdom, under the Stile and Title of the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*. The Majeſty of it much impaired by *Abulthaſen* or *Albohacen* King of *Feſſe*, who brought it not long after under his Command. Recovering after ſome ſhort time its former Liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and ſo continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the Hatred of his People, becauſe by his ſupine Neglect the *Spaniards* had ſurprized and taken *Oran* and *Maſalquivet*, their two beſt Havens, made an eaſie paſſage for his Brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal Diadem. *Abuzeiden* ſcarce well ſetled, loſt it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa*, *An.* 1515. and he to *Charles* the Fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was reſtored, becoming Homager and Tributary to the Crown of *Spain*. But his Succeſſor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spaniſh* Servitude, put himſelf under the Protection of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his deceaſe, he left the poſſeſſion of his Kingdom alſo: ever ſince ſubject to the *Turks*: whoſe *Beglerbeg*, or Supreme Officer for theſe *African* Provinces, reſides for the moſt part in *Algiers*, and hath 4000 *Timariots* under his Command, which continued to 1640, as is ſaid above.

3. *FESSE* and *MOROCCO*.

THeſe Kingdoms I have joined in Title, becauſe united for the moſt part in the Story and Affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Eſtate under the *Xeriffs* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of Hiſtory, though of a different Conſideration in the way of Chorography.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly ſo called; divided antiently into *Tingitana* and *Sitifenſis*; *Cæſarienſis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Maſæſyli* and the reſt of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accounted any part thereof till the death of *Jugurth*; when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in regard of his Treaſon, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name was firſt given; the word *Tania*, ſignifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britania*, *Luſitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps ſome others; and the name of *Mauri* given them ἀπὸ τȣ̃ Μαυρȣ̃ which ſignifieth amongſt other things obſcure or black, by reaſon of the darkneſs of their Complexion. Accounted in their times an hardy, but a bloudy People; careleſs of Life, fearleſs of Death; implacable if once offended, their thirſt of Revenge not to be quenched but by Blood. *Mauri ſunt genus hominum ſuâpte natura cædis avidiſſimum, nihilque non facile audens, & deſperatis ſimile, contemptu, viz. mortis & periculorum.* A Character given of them in *Herodian*'s time; and it holds good ſtill, notwithſtanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the ſame Nation with them, and paſſing by the ſame name in the Writers of the middle time. *Poſt hæc Mauri totam Hiſpaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam, &c. Dominio ſuo mancipârunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to underſtand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas minor*, ſo called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is ſeven degrees more North, but ſhooteth as that doth, with a Point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2 *Durdus* extended alſo into *Cæſarienſis*. 3. *Diur*. 4. *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Sala*. 2. *Salur*. 3. *Zilia*. 4. *Phuth*. 5. *Diur*. 6. *Cuſa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: The laſt the ſame, as I conjecture, which our Modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the reſt, we muſt find amongſt them. 1. *Sifelmel*. 2. *Teuſiſt*. 3. *Niſſis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans* were the *Metagonitæ*, near the Straits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoining Promontory, the *Succoſii Verbicæ*, *Nectibæres*, *Vacuatæ*, *Voli*; and on the Eaſt ſide the *Mauruſii*: Theſe laſt participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Latines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Mauruſii*: The Etymology as before. Their deſcent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*: whoſe memory preſerved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Canaanites*, of the ſame extraction, ſerved but as an Acceſſory. From thoſe two Fountains ſprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings: the moſt conſiderable of which, when firſt known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his Friend and Son-in-law, into the hands of the *Romans*; gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Maſæſyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempſal* one of his Sons was not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Eſtates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax* and *Maſiniſſa*, united by this means in the Perſon of *Juba*, one of his Poſterity, the moſt potent Prince of all theſe parts: who falling in the *African* War againſt *Julius Cæſar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Criſ-*

pus Saluſtus, the Roman Hiſtorian, being made the firſt Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Amſagus*, he gave to *Bocchus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but deſcended of the old Regal Family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* againſt *Auguſtus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other ſide, diſpoſſeſſed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Feſſe*) in which confirmed for his good Service, by the Conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown Famous for his Eminent Learning, was of a Priſoner made a Prince: inveſted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his Father, except *Numidia*: and by the Bounty of *Auguſtus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the Marriage of *Selene*, Daughter of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*. After whoſe death, and the death of *Ptolemy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, *viz. Cæſarienſis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampſaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Weſtern Ocean. This laſt divided into *Tingitana* and *Sitifenſis*, (the River now called *Omirabili* being the Boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: who leaving *Sitifenſis* to the Dioceſe of *Africk*, laid *Tingitana* (why, I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*, they became Members of thoſe Empires; in the declining of the laſt, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, to the Deſcription and Hiſtory whereof, we now proceed.

3. *MOROCCO.*

THE Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the Eaſt, the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, ſo called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it, in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifenſis*, from *Sitiphis*, in thoſe times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country ſaid to be fruitful of all things neceſſary to life, pleaſing to the ſight, and ſweet to ſmell to; particularly, well ſtored with Grain and Pulſe, plentiful of Oyl, Hony, and Sugar, liberally furniſhed with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all ſorts of Fruits: exceedingly well ſtocked with Cattel, but with Goats eſpecially; whoſe Skins afford a very excellent kind of Cordovan Leather, and their Fleece Materials for the fineſt Chamlets, which are here made in moſt of their Cities The whole Country divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts *viz* 1. *Guzzula*, 2. *Sus*, 3. *Morocco*, ſpecially ſo called. 4. *Hea*, 5. *Haſcora*, 6. *Duccala*, and 7. *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the moſt Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the Eaſt, ſome part of *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, *Sus* or *Suſa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the Territory of *Morocco*, and the reſt of *Suſa*. The Country rich in Mines of Braſs, Iron and other Metals; of which are made many *Utenſils* for domeſtick uſes, exported hence into other places; for which they return Linen Wollen and Horſes.

The People barbarous and rude, not eaſily acknowledging Subjection to the Kings of *Morocco*, and at continual Wars amongſt themſelves, except only for two months in the year; which being the time of their publik Marts, and then much viſited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aſide their private quarrels, and chearfully entertain ſuch Merchants as repair unto them. They have neither King nor Governour, but every one is his own Captain and Commander, and conſequently ever imbroil'd with Wars at home. Once a year they have a Fair, where Merchants of all Countries do reſort: and during this time they make a Truce, and appoint Officers to do Juſtice and keep the Peace. *Leo Africanus p.* 80. Tho' this was the State of the Country in that time, yet it may be preſumed very different now and perfectly conquered by the Kings of *Feſſe* who were then beginning to do it. He wrote in 1515. or thereabouts. Walled Towns here are not any, but ſome very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1. *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagreſſa*, not far off, but on the other ſide of the water towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*, 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of theſe nothing memorable.

2. Weſt of *Guzzula* lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, ſo called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold Mines, the cauſe of continual Wars amongſt the people: well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the Inhabitants know neither how to boil or purifie; and on the Sea-ſhores furniſhed with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eaſie rate. *Nubienſis p.* 75 ſaith it hath plenty of excellent Fruits. Between *Taradant* and *Tejuying*, its 2 greateſt Towns, is a days Journey through Vineyards, Gardens, and Orchards, which makes it very pleaſant. To the North by a Ledge of Mountains it is divided from *Morocco*, which extend from the *Atlantick Ocean* to Mount *Atlas*, and are called *Serra de Quique*. *Taradante* is called *Sus*. In the *Nubian* Geographer's time it was independent and diſtinct. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Cape D'Aguer*, on a Promontory ſo called; a place of ſo great Importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet*, then King of *Sus*, (after of *Morocco* alſo) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Tagavaſt*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greateſt in the Province, and ſituate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*; containing 8000 Families, walled with Stone, ſeated 60 miles from the Ocean to the Eaſt, and 50 from the *Atlas* South; built by the *Africans*. The Inhabitants are at War among themſelves and employ the Wild *Arabs* (their mortall Enemies) as their *Auxiliaries*. Corn and Cattle is plenty, but the Wool corſe; yet they make Cloth of it, and ſend it to *Tombuto*. 3. *Teijent*, ſituate in a ſpacious Plain alſo, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*, divided into three parts, each a mile from the other, which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. This City was built by the *Africans*; it yeilds plenty of Corn, Grapes, Sugar, Figs, Peaches, and Gold: it contains 4000 Families, who only trade with Gold and Iron. Their Leather is excellent. The Inhabitants are rude, firce and warlike. In Civil Caſes they have Judges; but Murder is revenged by Conſpiracies againſt the Murderer, or Baniſhment for 7 years. The Jews here are many, and pay no Tribute. It is ſeated on the *Sus*, South of *Meſſa*. 4. *Meſſa*, or *Maſſa*, ſeated at the Influx of the ſaid River on the Promontory called *Cape Gillon*; three Towns in one; not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land; as ſeated, in a barren and unpleaſing Soil; remarkable for a fair Temple, the Beams and Rafters of which are made of the Bones of *Whales*, which uſually are left dead on the ſhore. 5. *Taradant*, a large Town built by the *Africans*, before the conqueſt of this Country by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: The Reſidence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Feſſe*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: The whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 Families. This City is governed as a Common Wealth by its Nobility, who govern by turns 6 Months. The Inhabitants being at War with the wandering *Arabs*, who inhabit the Deſarts on the South ſide of their City, in the year of the *Hegyra* 920. they yeilded to the *Seriffo*, or Prince of *Morocco*, for Protection. This *Seriffo* was a *Mahometan* Prince, ſet up by the Inhabitants of *SUS* about that time againſt the *Portugueſe*, having before been their General. From *Tedſa* to *Tarodant* is 30 miles to the Weſt. *Leo Africanus*. 6. *Tedza*, more within the Land, bigger than *Taradant*; but leſs wealthy; the chief Ornament

of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furniſhed with Prieſts and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchiſa*, where it ſnoweth at all ſeaſons of the year, and yet the people go extream thin in the ſharpeſt Winter. Nothing elſe memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriff* made himſelf King of *Morocco*, it had the Title of a Kingdom; and gave the Title of King to *Mahomet* the Second *Xeriff*, made King of *Taradant*, or *Sus*, before he diſpoſſeſſed his Brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, ſpecially ſo called, the moſt fruitfull and beſt peopled Part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth and pleaſures; the very Hills thereof as fruitful as the Valleys in other places. To which Fertility of the Soil, the Rivers, 1. *Tenſift*, and 2. *Aſifinuad*, give no ſmall advantage. This River *Tenſift*, ſaith *Nubieuſis*, riſing from that part of the *Atlas*, and running Weſt, takes in the *Niftis*, the *Sifibuel*, and the *Aghmat*; paſſeth within 3 miles of *Morocco*; 100 miles beneath which, it falls into the *Atlantick Ocean*. *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 326. ſaith, near *Morocco* there is a Bridge over this River of 15 Arches, thought the beſt of the *African* Buildings: But *Abu Dubius* laſt *Calif* of *Morocco*, broke three of the Arches, to hinder the Paſſage of *Jacob* the Firſt, King of *Fſſe*, but it had not that effect. This is thought the *Aſama* of *Ptolemy*, though much defaced by frequent Incurſions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly ſpoiled this Country. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Aſifinuad*. 2. *Elgiumba*, a ſmall, but ancient Town on the River *Siſſeva*, 3. *Teſraſt*, a ſmall Town upon *Aſifinuad*, 4. *Imizizmi*, ſituate on a Rock, ſpacious and ſeated near the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzula*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town, but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tenſift*; all ruined, except this Fort, and ſome ſcattered houſes: Formerly ſecond unto none but *Morocco* (from which diſtant 24 miles) the Hills and Valleys about it adorned with pleaſant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields ſo fertile, that they yield a fifty-fold increaſe. 7. *Secſina*, where they have ſnow at all times in the year. 8. *Temnella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in Opinion from the reſt of the *Mahometan* Sects; and ſo well grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Oppoſites* to a Diſputation. 9. *Hantera*, very full of *Jews*, 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, ſituate in or near the place where once ſtood the *Bocanum Hemerum* of *Ptolemy*. Once reckoned amongſt the greateſt Cities of the World, at what time it was ſaid to contain 100000 Families: Since ſo defaced and waſted by the Depredations of the *Arabians*, and the Removal of the Seat-Royal to *Feſſe*, when that Kingdom was in the Aſcendent, that it is hardly a third part ſo great as formerly. The Founder of it, *Joſeph*, ſurnamed *Teleſinus*, the ſecond King of the Houſe of the *Amoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his Succeſſors. The principal Buildings in it, are the Church and the Caſtle: The Church or *Moſque*, one of the greateſt in the World, adorned with many ſumptous Pillars brought out of *Spain*; when the *Moors* had the poſſeſſion of that Country; and beautified with a ſtately Steeple, in compaſs at the bottom an hundred yards, and of ſo great height, that the Hills of *Azati* (one of the Branches of the leſſer *Atlas*) being 130 miles diſtant, may be thence eaſily diſcerned: The Caſtle very large and ſtrong, on a Tower whereof ſtands three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Ducats: Which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into Money, but all deſiſted in regard of ſome croſs accident or other which befell them in it; inſomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with Spirits. The *Nubian* Geographer *p.* 76. ſaith, this City was built by *Joſeph*, King of *Taſeſin*, in the year of the *Hegyra* 470 *Ann. C.* 1187. which was in the Century he lived in, That the Ground it was built on, he bought of the Inhabitants of *Aghmat Varicha*, a City at the foot of *Mount Atlas*, 12 miles to the South. It ſtands in a Plain: the Water for their Gardens is drawn by a wheel out of a Well. This City was then a mile ſquare; and about 3 miles from the City ran the River *Tanſift*, which tho' not great was yet never dry. He ſaith in that Plain there was but one ſmall Hill, called *Aigilin*, which afforded the City Quarries of Stone for their Buildings. This is one of the greateſt Cities in the World, ſaith *Leo Afr. p.* 68. In *Hali*'s time, the Son of *Joſeph*, it had 100000 Familes, 24 Gates, and a Stone Wall very ſtrong and thick. It is ſeated 6 miles from *Tenſift*; Not one third part of the City was inhabited in his time, the reſt filld up with Ruines which made its paſſage difficult. It was built in the year 424. In 516 it was taken by a Rebel Prince, whoſe Poſterity Reigned till the year 668. when thoſe of the Tribe of *Marin* ruled till 785. whoſe Seat was at *Feſſe*; and *Morocco* was mannaged by *Viceroys* ever after. There is in it a Vaſt ſtrong Caſtle, built all of Marble, as big as a ſmall City: the greateſt part of this noble Caſtle is now deſolate, with its Gardens and Park, and the former uſed for a Dungfeild to the City.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further ſide of *Tenſift* and *Aſifinuad*, is the Province of *HEA*: *Hea* is bounded on the Weſt and North with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the South with *Mount Atlas*, which ſeparates it from *SUS*; and on the Eaſt with the *Eſfivale*, which falls into the *Tenſift*. It is uneven, Mountainious and Rocky, but well Watered, Rich and Populous. Their Fruit is ſcarce; no Corn but Barly, Milk not plenty, but much Honey. *Leo Africanus*. Rough, Mountainous, and Woody, yet watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and would be plentiful enough in all Commodities, if the Induſtry of the People were not wanting to it. A ſort of People little better than meerly Barbarous; without all *Artiſts*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except ſome *Chyrurgeons*, whom they keep to *Circumciſe* their Children; and ſome few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their Food a Pap, made of Barlymeal, which in ſtead of Spoons, they claw with their Fingers; the Ground they eat on, ſerving for Table, Stools and Napkins: At endleſs feud with one another; yet ſo kind to Strangers, that in one of their cheif Towns, called *Tedneſt*, the Gentlemen uſed to caſt lots who ſhould entertain them: A Town of good eſteem in former time, ſituate in a large plain on the River *Tenſift*; but in the year 1514 almoſt wholly abandoned, upon a rumor, that the *Arabians* had a purpoſe to ſell it to the *Portugals*. 2. *Teculeth*, ſeated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 Families, ſome Hoſpitals and a beautiful *Moſque*; in the year 1514. deſtroyed by the *Portugals*. 3. *Tenent*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4. *Elmuriden*, a ſtrong place, as the name importeth, the word ſignifying the *Diſciples Fort*; ſo called becauſe a certain *Heretick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yeilds great plenty) retired hither with his *Diſciples*; fortified it, and defended it againſt the King of *Morrocco*. 5. *Iguillinguiguil*, ſeated on the top of all, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African Moors*) againſt the *Arabians*. 6. *Teſethne*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great Shipping. It is ſeated on the North ſide of Mount *Atlas* 3 days Journey from *Meſſa* (N.) in the Province of *Sus*. It conſiſts of about 600 Families. The *Portugal* Merchants frequent it for Goat Skins and Wax. It was built by the *Africans* and the Wall of it of Stone and Brick. The Inhabitants are now *Mahometans*, who have Judges for their Civil Cauſes, but revenge Murders by the next of Kin by way of Retaliation; but if the Murderer eſcapes he is Baniſht 7 years, and returns and pays a fine, and is then acquitted, *Leo Africanus*. 7. *Tagles*; a den of Thieves and Cut-Throats. 8. *Teſegdelt*, as courteous and as civil, as the other barbarous; at the Gates whereof a Guard is ſet for entertainment of Strangers; whom, if

they have no Acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in ſome Gentleman's Houſe, where it coſts them nothing but Thanks, and ſome kind Acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, ſtands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. Of three days journey long, about two in breadth; thruſting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which ſome of the Ancients called *Ulagium*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*, but by the *Christians* of *Europe*, called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Moors*, *Gebelelhudic*. This and *Tedles* were Inhabited by the *Arabian* Family called *Etheg*, which was the moſt Noble in *Arabia*, and maintained their Poſſeſſion againſt the Kings of *Portugal* and *Feſſe* with 100000 Men, moſt Horſe. This Family, ſaith *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 14. being aſſaulted by the King of *Portugal*, who took *Aſafi* and *Feſſe*, and divided into Factions at home; a Famine following, forced them to yield Slaves to the *Portugueſe* for Bread, and ſo exported or deſtroyed, *ib.p.*24. Populous enough, the quality of the Men conſidered; ignorant both of Letters and all Good Manners: Yet not ſo populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their beſt Towns on the Sea-coaſts, and deſtroyed the reſt. Amongſt theſe, 1. *Aſafi*, at the foot of the Hill ſo called; ſurpriſed by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Store-houſe for their Merchandiſe. *Leo Africanus p.*82. ſaith it was built by the *Africans*, and contain'd 4000 Famies, but Rude and Barbarous. The Soil is fertile, but they know not how to improve it. The *Portugueſe*, by the Diſorders of theſe People, took advantage, pretending fear of their Lives, fortified their Factory, and furniſhed it with Ammunition and Cannon, and then picking a Quarrel with a Townſman ſlew him, and after it 150 Townſmen who ſhould have revenged his Death. The King of *Portugal* thereupon ſent an Army of 5000 Men, who joining to them the *Arabians*, conquered the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and burnt and laid deſolate the moſt populous and flouriſhing Cities in it. 2. *Azame*, ſeated at the Mouth of the River *Ommirobili*, the furtheſt Town of this Kingdom towards that of *Feſſe*; the People whereof were extreamly addicted unto *Sodomy*, till ſubdued by the *Portugueſe*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the Metropolis of this Province, but now for fear of thoſe Invaders, in a manner deſolated. It ſtands upon the *Atlantick* Ocean, between *Aſafi* to the South, and *Tit* to the North, on the South ſide of a Bay made by Cape *Cantin*, *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 85. *Ortelius*. 4. *Conte*, of the Foundation of the *Goths*. 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. 6. *Subeit*. 7. *Teneracoſt*. 8. *Centpuis*. 9. *Terga*. 10. *Culahuan*; all ſacked and ruined by the ſame People, when they took *Azomor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is ſaid, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* paſſing through this Province with an Army, to repreſs theſe Inſolencies, at every Altar (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and ſaid unto this effect: *Lord, thou knoweſt that the cauſe of my coming into this wild Place, is only to free this people of* Duccala *from the rebellious and wicked* Arabians, *and their cruel enemies the* Chriſtians; *which purpoſe, if thou doſt not approve of, let the puniſhment fall upon my Perſon, but not upon my Followers, who deſerve it not.* With greater Piety than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eaſtward of *Duccala*, along the Banks of *Ommirobili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful Country, intermixt of rich Fields and pleaſant Gardens: furniſhed with moſt ſorts of choiceſt Fruits; and amongſt others, Grapes of ſuch extraordinary greatneſs, that they are ſaid to be as big as a Pullets Eggs. Good ſtore of Honey it hath alſo, and ſome Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil People than any of the reſt, and conſequently more deſerving ſo rich a Soil, *Leo Africanus p.* 90, 91. This Province and Town was ſubdued to the King of *Feſſe* in the 15th Century, after which the Inhabitants lived in greater Peace, *p.* 92. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Ezo*, an old Town, ſituate on a lofty Mountain. 2. *Elvinina*, of a later erection. 3. *Almedine*, conquered for the King of *Feſſe* by a Merchant, whoſe Paramour the Prince or Governor hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleaſant but little Valley, but begirt with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers. 4. *Togodaſt*, on the top of an Hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More Eaſt, between *Haſcora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the Eaſt with the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the North, with that of *Feſſe*, from which laſt parted by the River *Servi* which on the North-Eaſt border of it meets with *Ommirobili*. The whole Province in form Triangular, of no great length or breadth, but ſufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigneſs. Some Towns it hath, and thoſe not meanly populous for ſo ſmall a Province; the Chief whereof, 1. *Teſza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Moſques; the Walls of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Teſza*, whence the Name of the Town. 2. *Eſza*, ſeated on the River *Ommirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*; which riſing out of *Atlas Minor*, and paſſing by *Teſza* laſt mentioned, doth here loſe its Name. 3. *Chythite*, renowed for the ſtout reſiſtance which it hath made from time to time againſt thoſe of *Feſſe*. 4. *Ethaid*, abounding in all ſorts of Victual.

Theſe Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infeſted miſerably while it remained ſubject to the Kings of *Feſſe*, by the *Portugals* on the one ſide, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which laſt People, we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk* they contented themſelves with the Command, and left unto the Natives the Poſſeſſion of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whoſe courſe of Life they were well acquainted) to paſs over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the laſt of the Succeſſors of *Hucha* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having ſubdued the reſt of *Africk*, and added it unto his Eſtate, paſſed forward into *Egypt*, which he had conquered alſo; aſſuming to himſelf the Title of Caliph: But in his abſence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africk*, rebelled againſt him; and acknowledging the Caliph of *Bagdet* for his Lawful Lord, received of him for his good Service, the Kingdom of *Africa*. *Elcain* thus diſpoſſeſſed of *Africk*, deſpairing to recover his loſt Eſtate, and yet not willing that it ſhould be uſeful unto his Enemies, licenſed the *Arabians*, for a Ducat a Man, to paſs over the *Nile* with their Tents and Families. On which Agreement, almoſt half the Tribes of *Arabia Deſerta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they ſacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the reſt of the principal Cities; Tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till reſtrained at laſt by *Joſeph* the Founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they loſt their unlimited Empire, yet they ſtill ſwarm like *Locuſts* over all the Country, and neither apply themſelves to Tillage, or building Houſes, or any civil courſe of Life; nor ſuffer thoſe to Live in quiet, who would otherwiſe Manure and Improve the Country. The reſt of the Story of theſe Kingdoms we ſhall have anon, when we have taken a Survey of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*.

4. *FESSE*.

THE Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South with the Realm of *Morocco*; on the North, with part of the *Atlantick* and *Mediterranean*; on the Eaſt, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Feſſe*, the chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, ſo called from the City of *Tingus* (now *Tangier*) then of greateſt note. Called alſo *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, becauſe a part of that *Dioceſe*: And by ſome (*Pliny* amongſt others) *Bogudiana*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cæſar*; by others *Ampeluſia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in ſome places of the coldeſt: but very unequally diſpoſed of in reſpect of the Earth; here being in it many Deſarts and large Forreſts, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the eſtimate in the groſs, it may be ſaid to be a rich and flouriſhing Country, hardly inferior unto any. Its Soil yields Corn, Cattle, and Fruit in great plenty, yet it is meanly Peopled as to the Plains and Valleys, *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 116. The particularities of which are to be conſidered in the *Characters* of the ſeveral Provinces, into which it now ſtands divided, that is to ſay, 1. *Temeſna*, 2. *Feſſe*, eſpecially ſo called, 3. *Elchaus*, or *Chaus*, 4. *Garet*, 5. *Aſgara*, 6. *Erriffe*, and 7 *Habat*.

1. *TEMESNA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*; on the Weſt, the Ocean; extended in length from Weſt to Eaſt 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A Champain Country, very level; and once ſo populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Caſtles; moſt of them ruined by the Wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater deſtroyer of the two. The principal of thoſe remaining, 1. *Teyeger*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor People, and a few Smiths compelled to live there for the making of Iron Inſtruments to manure the Land. 2. *Thagia*, on the courſe of the ſaid River; much viſited by thoſe of *Feſſe*, for the Sepulchre of an Holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Feſſans* going thither in *Pilgrimage* with ſuch numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that their Tents ſeem ſufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Adendum*, more towards the Sea, but on a ſmall River called *Guirla*; well walled, and fenced on one ſide by a Lake or Poll. 4. *Amſa*, on the ſhore of the *Atlantick*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *Engliſh* and *Portugals*, by which laſt deſtroyed. 5. *Munſor*, deſtroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*. 6. *Nuchaida*, ſituate in ſo fertile and rich a Soil, that the Inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of Shoes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the Wall. 7. *Rabut*, or *Rubut*, built by *Manſor*, or *Almanſor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burugrug*; and by him made one of the beſt Peopled Towns in *Africk*: built after the Model of *Morocco*, but now ſo waſted that there are not in it above 500 Families; moſt of the Ground within the Walls being turned into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara* on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolemy*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mobmora*, in the ſame tract alſo, once poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Feſſe*, for want of good Intelligence betwixt them and the *Caſtilians*. 10. *Salla*, the *Sala* of *Ptolemy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, or ordinary Maps by miſtaking, *Cale*; at the Mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almanſor* (who is here interred) with a ſtately Palace, a goodly Hoſpital, a fair Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in *Moſaick* works; intended for the Burial-place of his Poſterity. A Town much traded formerly by the Chriſtian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Gulph of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, *An.* 1287. and within ten days loſt again; and of late times made a Neſt of Pirates, as dangerous to thoſe which ſailed in the Ocean, as the Pirates of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whoſe Inſolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to ſuppreſs for want of Shipping, deſired the Aid of his Majeſty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*; by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and beſieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at laſt compelled to yield; the Works thereof diſmantled, the Pirates executed, and 300 Chriſtian Captives ſent unto his Majeſty, to be by him reſtored to their former Liberty; to the great Honour of his Majeſty, and the *Engliſh* Nation, *An.* 1632. The *Nubian* Geoprapher ſaith, it ſtands nine days Journey from *Morocco* to the North; and that the old Town ſtood two miles more remote from the Sea, than the preſent *Sale* doth. The preſent new Town is ſeated on ſo ſteep a Rock, that from the Sea it is not approachable; the Soil is barren, yet the City is beautiful, and wants nothing, the Ships importing into its River whatever it needs. This City ſtands 12 miles from *Fadhala*, another Sea-port to the North, 85 from *Aſaphi* or *Aſafi*, (now C. *Cantin*) the old Boundary of the Known World to the South, *p.* 76. The River of *Sale* is called *Rebata*, and is one of the greateſt in that Kingdom. The Ships that come there are not ſecure till entred into the River, the Road being too much expoſed to all Winds. *Leo African. p.* 116. calls it *Sella*, and ſaith it was built by the *Romans*, ſack'd by the *Goths*, and rebuilt by *Tarick* the Celebrated *Arabian* Captain; the Buildings repreſenting a Majeſtick Antiquity, Splendid and Coſtly, frequented much by the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Genoueſe*: This was the ſtate of it in the Times of *Leo Africanus*. After it came into the Hands of the King of *Feſſe* it was kept in order for ſome time, but then relapſing into the former Trade of Piracy; this Town has been a grievous Plague to our Trade on the Ocean, and eſpecially to our Plantation Trades, many of which Ships it takes, and makes our People Slaves. Some have attempted to renew the Trade which we had anciently here; but the Ships have been ſeized after they were Laden, and the Men made Slaves; this Nation being become ſo barbarous, that they do not underſtand the Benefit of a Trade. The Reader may be Admoniſhed here, that all the Deſcriptions are taken from *Leo Africanus*; and ſo great a Change for the Worſe, has ſince that time been brought upon the Country, that there is ſcarce any one Place in the Country which is not in a worſe Condition than it was then.

As for the Fortunes of this Province, they have been ſomewhat different from the reſt of this Kingdom: trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, whoſe Eſtate they very much endangered; ſending an Army of 50000 Men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being diſcomfited, by *Joſeph* Sirnamed *Telephinus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he waſted with great Cruelty for ten Months together; conſuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repeopled afterwards by *Almanſor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about Fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province conſequently reduced into ſome good order.

2. Weſtward of *Temeſna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; Extended in length from the River *Burugrug* to the River *Inavis*, for the ſpace of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well ſtored with Cattel, and exceeding Populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better ſort of Towns in other places; but contrary to the Cuſtom of other Countries, better inhabited on the Hills than among the Vallies; the People making choice of the Mountains for their Habitation, as places of Defence and Safety, but Husbanding the Vallies which lie neareſt to them. This Cuſtom of Inhabiting the Mountains and Tilling the Valleys, depended upon two Reaſons; 1. The Heats of the Valleys in the Summer time: 2. The Security the Mountains afford againſt the Wandering *Arabs*, or any other Enemy that ſhall aſſault them, to which theſe Countries have been heretofore much Expoſed; for I have not of late heard any mention of the Wild *Arabs*, and therefore I believe they have been wholly driven out of this Part by the late Kings of *Feſſe*. Places of moſt conſideration in it. 1. *Macarmeda*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly Plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Wall. This Town lies 20 miles

Eaſt of *Feſſe* upon the Bank of a beautiful River, antiently Strong, Rich, and Populous; but in *Leo Africanus* his time wholly laid Deſolate by the Wars, *p.* 166. 2. *Gualili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the firſt Founder of *Feſſe*. 3. *Peitra Roſſa*, where they have ſome Lions ſo tame, that they will gather up Bones in the Streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lions to ſo ſtrange a cowardiſe, that they will run away at the voice of a Child; whence a *Bravohadochio* is called proverbially a Lion of *Agla*. 5. *Pharao*, by reaſon of the name thought by the vulgar to be founded by ſome King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inſcriptions therein found, declare it to have been ſome work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Feſſe*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, ſuppoſed to be the *Valubilis* of *Ptolemy*, but much enlarged and beautified by ſome new Acceſſions. Situate for the moſt part upon little Hillocks, and watered by a pleaſant and gentle River (derived by Aquæducts and Conducts into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Feſſe*, conceived by ſome learned Men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the firſt Planter of the *African* Nations. A City ſo beautiful and well ſeated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their Dalliance. The Founder or enlarger of it, one of the Race of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the Eaſt ſide of the River; that on the Weſt ſide, being the work of one of his Sons: both ſo increaſing, that at laſt they were joyned together. To theſe the Suburbs being added, have made a Third. The whole called *Feſſe*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word ſignifying Gold; whereof great quantity was found when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 28000 Houſholds, and 700 *Moſchees*, or *Saracenical* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne*, or *Carnven*, being a mile and a half in compaſs. It hath 31 Gates, great and high, the Roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick Store-houſes of the Town. About the Walls are Pulpits of divers ſorts, wherein the Maſters of their Law read unto the People ſuch things, as they think to pertain to their Salvation. The Revenue hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents; for ſo it was, *An.* 1526. when *Leo Afr.* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, incloſed with a ſtrong Wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 Streets. There is alſo a Colledge called *Amoradoc*, a moſt curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloyſters, of admirable Beauty, ſupported with eight ſquare Pillars of divers colours; the Roof curiouſly carved, the Arches of *Moſaique* work of Gold and Azure; the Gates of Braſs, fair wrought; and the Doors of the private Chambers of Inlayed work. This Colledge did coſt the Founder King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen*, 580000 Crowns. Here are finally ſaid to be in it many Hoſpirals, little inferior to the Colledges in Building and Beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred Hot Baths well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bathe themſelves: And beſides theſe, 200 Inns, built three Stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the Doors for their Gueſts to walk in.

3. Eaſtward of the Territory of *Feſſe*, lieth the Province of GHAUS, extended in length from the River *Gurngrut*, or *Gurnguigarn*, by which parted from *Tremeſen* and *Feſſe*, to the borders of *Tremeſen*, for the ſpace of 190 Miles, and 170 Miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom; but meanly populous for the bigneſs, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to proſecute their Quarrels, than to Trade or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Tedza*, *Tezza*, *Teza*, This City is five Miles from Mount *Atlas*, fifty from *Feſſe* to the South: and a hundred and thirty from the *Ocean* to the Eaſt, and from the *Mediterranean* a hundred and ſeventy; of old, it had about five thouſand Families, and was ſtately built, eſpecially the Palaces Colledges, and Temples: A ſmall River ariſeth out of the *Atlas*, which heretofore paſſed through the *Moſque*, but diverted to the great damage of the Inhabitants, when they quarrell'd with their Neighbours; ſo that they have been forced to uſe Ciſtern Water: The Inhabitants are more Liberal and Civil than thoſe of *Feſſe*. It has a bigger Temple, three Colledges, and divers Baths, fruitful Fields, and learned and rich Inhabitants; and about 500 Families of *Jews*, who make the beſt Wine in *Africa*. In the Caſtle reſides the Governor, who is the King of *Feſſe* his ſecond Son and to defend it from the wild *Arabs* the King often viſits it; the Juriſdiction is very large which belongs to it, and extends over divers Mountains. Thus far *Leo Africanus*, who ſaw it. *p.* 104, 105. 2. *Ham Liſnan*, a Town built in the more Mountainous parts of the Country, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worſhipped; to which at certain times Men and Women reſorted in the night; where, after their Devotion's ended, and the Candles put out, every Man lay with the Woman he firſt touched; the exact Platform of the *Family of Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falſly, charged on the *Primitive Chriſtians*. In both theſe Towns Men of the ſame Trade have a Street by themſelves. *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 200. *Turerto* was the Capital of it, whoſe Walls are Marble; and it had once Three thouſand Families in it. The preſent Capital City is *Teza Tedza*. 3. *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much obſervable. This City was built by the *Africans* on an exceeding high Mountain, from the top of which fall Springs that ſupply the Town; the Aſcent is five Miles to it by crooked winding ways; it hath Gardens on each ſide of a ſmall River; the Corn is not ſufficient for the Inhabitants, but what comes from *Tezza* or *Tedza*; being only conſidered as a Fortreſs by the old Kings of the *Marni* Family, where they ſubſiſted when driven out of *Feſſe*, and vanquiſhed by the *Arabians* and *Feſſians* in War. Theſe Kings were *Moſe*, *Ibnu*, *Chamu*, *Acmed*, *Mahumet*, who in the year 1495. repelled the King of *Feſſe*, and ſlew 3000 of his Army; and that King made a Peace with him, and Married his Daughter to *Mahumet* his Son who was King of this City in the year 1526. *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 202. 4. *Turert*, ſeated on the top of an Hill, in the midſt of a Plain, but compaſſed about with Deſarts. 5. *Beni Jeſſeten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greateſt Bravery and Wealth conſiſteth: the Women here wearing Iron Rings for Ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6. *Texargui*, ſubject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adaggia*, the moſt Eaſtern Town of all the Region; ſituate in a *Peninſula* made by the confluence of *Muluſo* and *Malva*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which riſing out of a great Lake in the Woods of the Mountains *Seligus*, and receiving many leſſer Waters, with a large and Navigable Stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northward of *Chaus* lieth the Region called GARET, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching Eaſt and Weſt, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremeſen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Errif* and *Aſcara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but 20. The Soil in moſt places dry and deſart, like the Sands of *Numidia*; eſpecially all along the Banks of the *Malva*; near unto which from the *Mediterraneum* to *Chaus*, it is wholly deſart and unpeopled, not well Inhabited in the moſt fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains; the worſe for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, poſſeſſed of 1. *Cheſuſa*, and 2. *Medela*, two chief Tows hereof. 3. *Pennim de Veles*, by ſome called *Velez de Gomeza*, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains, built by the *Africans* or *Gorbs*; but now in the poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards* alſo. 4. *Jaſſerin*, ſituate on the Sea alſo, founded by the *Mahometans*

metans of the *Marine* Family. 5. *Tezzora*, ſtanding on an Hill, to which there is but one paſſage only.

5. Weſtward of *Garet* lieth *ASCARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: ſhut up on the South-Eaſt ſide with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which laſt runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix*, by *Ptolemy*. The Air hereof very temperate, and the Soil as fertile; ſupplying with the overplus of its Commodities the Mountainous parts of *Feſſe*, and the Deſarts of *Garet*. Theſe Deſarts are a part of the ſaid Province, and begin Northward from the *Mediterranean* Sea, and run South to the Deſart of *Chauz*. Weſt it hath the Mountain of *Guardan*; and Eaſt the River *Mulvia*; it's 60 Miles in length, and 30 in breadth; there is no Water, but the River; full of wild Beaſts; but in Summer the *Arabians* take up the parts about the River, and the *Bataliſæ*, a fierce People in War with the wild *Arabs*, poſſeſs great numbers of Horſes, Camels, and other Cattle, and fight for Paſture with them, *Leo Africanus, p.* 200. Once full of Towns, till ruined and deſtroyed by the Wars. A Monument whereof, 1. *Giumba*, built by the Ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2. *Larace*, in *Latine Lariſſa*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolemy*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furniſhed with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; Gariſon'd when poſſeſſed by the *Moors* with 300 light Horſe, and 300 *Harcabuſiers*; but better fortified than before, ſince poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, into whoſe hands it was put by *Muley-Sheek* King of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*, when worſted by *Muley-Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the Civil Wars betwixt them. This Town was lately taken from the *Spaniards* by the *Moors*, I think in 1689. 3. *Cuſar Elcabir*, given by *Almanſor* to a poor Fiſher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he loſt his Company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a ſtately Hoſpital.

6. On the North of *Aſcara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT*, coaſting along the *Atlantick* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 Miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of neceſſaries, and very well Peopled; the Mountains, which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times repleniſhed with many Cities, both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans* and old *African Moors*, now much diminiſhed by the Wars. Thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Azaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by ancient Privilege granted by the King of *Feſſe*, were licenced to drink Wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Guarga*, about 35 Leagues from *Feſſe*; and Gariſon'd with 400 Horſe for fear of the *Portugals*, who ſometimes make their excurſions thither. 2. *Baſra*, once a Walled Town, and the Walls ſtill ſtanding, but very little or no Town in them; it lies 30 Miles diſtant from *Sala* Eaſtwards, and not far from the confines of the Province [illegible] *Aſgar*. *Leo Africanus, p.* 177. ſaith it is ſeated between two Mountains, 80 Miles from *Feſſe*, and has its name from a City ſo called in *Arabia*; it did once contain 2000 Families, and ſtrongly Walled, but became Deſolate by the Wars, when the Family of *Idris* failed. 3. *Homar*, ſometimes well Peopled, but now little Inhabited, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coaſt. 4. *Banirenda*, in a manner deſerted for the ſame reaſon. 5. *Alcazaer*, to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name, called *Alcazer Guer*, taken, together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier*, by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Portugal*, *An.* 1470, nigh to which Town the three Kings, *Sebaſtian* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet* and *Abdelmelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were ſlain in a day. There was alſo ſlain at the ſame time, the great *Engliſh* Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *An.* 1570. where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that end furniſhed with 800 Soldiers, paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his Holineſs created Marquis of *Lemſter*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viſcount *Aarraugh*, and Baron of *Roſs*. Thus furniſhed, he began his Journey towards *Ireland*, *An.* 1578. but hearing of theſe Wars, and deſirous to make a party in them, he loſt all his Honour with his Life. 6. *Arzilla*, a Sea-Town, 70 Miles diſtant from the *Streits*, now poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; This is a great City built by the *Romans*, on the Coaſt of the Ocean, 140 Miles from *Feſſe*, N. W. *An.* C. 685. it was taken by the *Moors*. In the year 905. the *Saxons* took it, and totally deſtroyed and laid it waſte many Years. In 1473. The *Portugueſe* ſurprized it. It ſeems to be retaken by the *Moors* in 1512, *Leo Af. p.* 177. 7. *Tangier*, a great Town, and very ancient, diſtant from the *Streits* about 30 Miles, belonging to the *Portugals* alſo. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their firſt coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Joſhua*; teſtified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we ſpoke of: and from that name cauſed all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitana*; made afterwards a Colony by the Emperor *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and outlived the new. Near to this Town, it is ſaid, that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus* a monſtrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was a high Mountain called *Abyla*, oppoſite to which in the Coaſt of *Spain* was another called *Calpe*, on which the ſaid *Hercules* placed his ſo famous Pillars; it ſtands at the mouth of the *Streits* of *Gibralter*, towards the *Atlantick* Ocean, 32 Miles from *Ceuta*, to the W. and a days journey from *Arzilla* to the N. *Nub. p.* 150. placeth it in the *4th.* Climate. *Leo Africanus, p.* 179. maketh it a *Roman* work (he knowing nothing of the more ancient Stories) he placeth it from *Feſſe* 150 Miles: it was won by the *Moors* about the year 685. with *Arzilla*. The fields about it are fruitful; it was well Peopled, till *Arzilla*, in the year 1473. was taken by the *Portugueſe*; when being deſerted by the Inhabitants, the *Portugueſe* took Poſſeſſion of it without oppoſition; from which time they kept it, and was antiently an Arch-Biſhop's See. In the year 1662. the *Portugueſe* put it into the hands of the *Engliſh*; and *Charles* II. having been at an immenſe Charge upon the Haven, and outworks of it, after it had proſperouſly repelled ſeveral Attacks of the *Moors* in 1663, 1664, and 1682. in the year 1683, the Lord *Dartmouth* was ordered to blow up all the Forts and Works, and the Mole to be ſlighted, and the Gariſon withdrew into *England*; the Benefit being not equal to the Charge of keeping it. Thus one of the oldeſt Cities in the World was deſtroyed in a few days. 8. *Septa* or *Seuta*, ſituate on or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the Title of an Earl to *Julian*, who firſt brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned Men; taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *Engliſh*, *An.* 1415. and now in the poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Eſtates of *Portugal*, which in the late Revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. This lies on the Eaſtern point of the *Streits* of *Gibralter*, over againſt the City of *Gibralter* in *Spain*, from which it ſtands eight *French* Leagues to the South, being ſeated upon a Peninſula, and ſurrounded on all ſides by the Sea, except that to the W. The *Nubian* Geo. calls this place *Inſula Viridis*, the *Green Iſland*; and that againſt it the *Iſle of Tarif*, and he calls it *Sabta*, as *Leo* doth *Septa*; and the latter ſaith the *Portugueſe* call it *Seupta*: The *Nubian* placeth it 18 Miles from *Gibralter*. (Tarif) *It is built on Seven Hills, ſtretching from Eaſt to Weſt: to the Weſt about a Mile it hath fruitful Grounds, affording ſuch plenty of Fruit as furniſhes diſtant places: This Place is called* Beliunes, *and by reaſon of the fertility of the Soil, and quantity of Springs, 'tis mighty pleaſant.* *Leo Afr.* in his 3 Book, ſaith, it was *Roman* Building. *An.* C. 709. the *Saracens* took it, and in 1435. it was taken by the *Portugueſe* from them: now it

is in the hands of the *Spaniards*, and ſtrongly Fortiſy'd and Gariſon'd. *Bunon*. 9. *Julia Conſtantia*, ſo called, and made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 10. *Laxus*, a *Roman* Colony of the Plantation of *Claudius*, in old times ſaid to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old Geographers have placed the Habitation of *Geryon*, as proper a Gentleman as himſelf, in a ſmall Iſland of the *Streits*, called *Geryonis Inſula*, and by ſome *Erythia*.

7. Eaſtward of *Habat* is the Province of *ERRIF*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nochor*, (ſuppoſed to be the *Melochath* of the ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A Mountainous and cold Country in reſpect of the reſt of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Foreſts; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without ſome Herds of Goats, though otherwiſe not well ſtored with Cattel. In Length 140 Miles, in Breadth 40 only; inhabited by a race of valiant Men, but exceſſive *Drunkards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages. The Chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very ſtrong Town and of great importance, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*: in vain Beſieged by *Abdalla* the firſt, with an Army of 200000 Men, *An.* 1562. 2. *Mezemme*, ſeated on a Mountain. 3. *Beni Jerſo*, of like ſituation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Profeſſors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an Univerſity; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Deſtroyed, together with the Library of it, by ſome wicked Tyrant, *An.* 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats, 4 *Terga*. 5. *Togaſſa*. 6. *Gebbe*, of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of theſe two Kingdoms, we muſt next look upon them alſo in the general Story, from the time of the *Saracenical* Conqueſt; firſt let into this Country by the Treaſon of *Julian*, and for a while ſubject to the great Caliph, or Succeſſor of *Mahomet*: Afterwards to the King, or Caliph, of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, theſe Provinces, with the reſt, were afflicted by them till the riſing of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*; begun in the Perſon of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly called the Family of *Alaveci*; who perſecuted by the oppoſite Faction, fled into *Maurttania*; where he grew into ſuch Reputation, that in ſhort time he got both Swords into his Hands. Dying about the 185th. year of the *Hegira*, he left his Power unto his Son, of the ſame name with his Father, the firſt Founder of *Feſſe*. Oppoſite whereunto on the other ſide of the Water, one of his Sons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raiſing by that means a Faction in the Houſe of *Idrus*, which occaſioned the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alaveci* for the ſpace of 270 Years. The Eſtate hereof firſt weakned by *Abu Teſin*, or *Texiſien*, of the Houſe of the *Almoravides* or *Lautunes*, and ſo weakened, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joſeph Aben*, *Teiſin*, or *Telephine* his Son and Succeſſor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to ſuppreſs that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 30000 of their Subjects, brake down the Walls which parted the Two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and ſo made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the diſſention of the *Saracens* there amongſt themſelves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom unto his Dominions, held by his Succeſſors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: The Catalogue of which Princes, called the *Houſe* or Family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings or *Miramomolims* of *MOROCCO*.

A.Ch. 068. 1. TEiſin, *Texien*, or *Telephine*, the firſt of the *Almoravides* that Reigned in *Africk*.

2. *Joſeph*, ſurnamed *Teleſinus*, the Son of *Teiſin*, founded *Morocco*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Feſſe*; and added the Eſtate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, *An.* 1091.

3. *Hali*, the Son of *Joſeph*.

4. *Albo-Halis*, the Son of *Hali*, ſuppoſed to be the Publiſher of the Works now extant in the name of *Avicenna*, compiled at his Command by ſome of the moſt learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquiſhed and ſlain by

5. *Addelmon*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the firſt of the *Almohades*, of obſcure Parentage, but raiſed to ſo great Power by the practiſes of *Almohade*, a jugling Prophet of thoſe times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of *Almoravides* both in *Spain*, and *Africk*, *An.* 1150. to which he alſo added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.

6. *Joſeph* II. or *Aben Joſeph*, the Son of *Abdelmon*.

7. *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, ſurnamed *Almanſor*, a puiſſant and prudent Prince, of whom much before: Son of *Joſeph* II.

8. *Mahomet* ſurnamed *Enaſur*, or the *Green*, the Brother of *Almanſor*. Diſcomfited by the Chriſtians of *Spain*, at the Battle of *Sierra Morena*, *An.* 1214. loſt his Dominions, there being ſlain in this Battel 200000 of the *Moors*, as ſome Writers ſay; who added, that the *Spaniards* for two days together burnt no other Fuel but the Pikes, Launces and Arrows of their ſlaughtered Enemies, yet could not conſume the one half of them.

9. *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enaſer*, by his Son *Buxaf*: ſlain at the Siege of *Tremezezir*, a Caſtle of *Tremeſin*, which was held againſt him.

10. *Almorcada*, a Kinſman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his Eſtate, and ſlain by *Budebuz*, of the ſame Houſe of the *Almohades*.

11. *Budebuz*, the laſt of the Houſe of the *Almohades*, ſetled in his Eſtate by the Aid and Valour of *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*; the new King of *Feſſe*: but dealing faithleſly and ungratefully with him, he was Warred on by the ſaid *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, vanquiſhed and ſlain in Battel; the Sovereignty by that means tranſlated unto thoſe of the *Marine* Family, *An.* 1270. or thereabouts.

But before [illegible] do proceed further with this *Marine* Family, I muſt again look back upon *Mahomet Enaſer*, whom I conceive (the computation of the time being ſo agreeable) to be the *Admiralius Murmelius*, mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, *An.* 1214. is ſaid to have ſent ſuch a degenerous and unchriſtian Ambaſſage. Which ſtrange name of *Admiralius Murmelius*, was by that good Writer unhappily ſtumbled at inſtead of *Miramomolin*) which alſo is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to ſay, *Princeps Fidelium*;) An Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongſt them. The Story this; King *John* being overlaid by his Barons Wars, and the Invaſions of the *French*, ſent Ambaſſadors to this great Prince (then Ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid againſt them; offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withal the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Ambaſſadors, that he had lately read the Book of *Paul's* Epiſtles; which he liked ſo well, that were he now to chooſe a Religion, he would have embraced Chriſtianity before any other: But every Man (ſaith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greateſt thing which he diſliked in that Apoſtle, being (as he ſaid) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born: This ſaid, he called unto him *Robert* of *London*, Clerk, one of the Ambaſſadors (a Man ill choſe for ſuch an Errand, if the Tale be true) of whom he demanded the Form of the *Engliſh* Government, the Situation and Wealth of the Country, the Manners of the People, the Life and Perſon of the King; in which being ſatisfied, he grew into ſuch a diſlike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the Subſtance of the Story in *Matthew Paris*: But you muſt know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of Men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy; and therefore this Relation is not to paſs for Goſpel.

But whatſoever opinion King *John* might have of the Power of this King, to whom 'tis poſſible enough he might ſend for Aid, certain it is, that he was grown ſo low in his Reputation, after the loſs of that great Battel in *Sierra Morena*, that not only the *Spaniſh* Moors withdrew their Obedience from him (as a Prince unable to ſupport them) but thoſe of *Africk* did revolt alſo from the Crown of *Morocco* (extreamly weakned by that blow) after his deceaſe: For *Gomoranca Aben Zein* of the houſe of *Abdaluad*, ſeized upon *Tremeſen*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Succeſſor; as *Bucar Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family, (deſcended from a Chriſtian Stock) did the like at *Feſſe*. Setled in his Eſtate by the Vanquiſhment of *Almorcada* the *Miramomolim*, he left it to *Hiaja* his Son, under the Governance and Protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*. But the young Prince dying ſhortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle; who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) diſpoſſed *Almorcada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: And afterwards having juſt cauſe of Quarrel againſt this *Budebuz*, invaded his Dominions, overcame and ſlew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from *Morocco* to *Feſſe*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their Reſidence in *Feſſe*, as the firſt Seat of their Power; *Morocco* being govern'd by an under-King, the reſt of the Provinces of that Kingdom Cantoned into ſeveral States; the Sea coaſts in ſome tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confuſions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500. and ſomewhat after. Three only were of note in the courſe of Buſineſs, that is to ſay, 1. *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, the Advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the Eſtabliſher thereof in that of *Feſſe*, and of great power and influence in the Affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algazir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance: ſlain treacherouſly by one of his familiar Friends, at the Siege of *Tremeſen*. 2. *Aben-Joſeph* the Second, a younger Son of the firſt *Joſeph* (the Iſſue of *Bucalo* his elder Brother being quite extinct) ſucceeded after *Abortane*, the ſixth of the *Marine* Family in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremeſen*, if not diverted by the Revolt of *Albpali* his eldeſt Son, continually in Arms againſt him. 3. *Alboucen*, the Son of this *Aben-Joſeph*, and the eighth of the *Marine* Family, who after a Siege of 30 Months took the City of *Tremeſen*, and with that the Kingdom. But not ſo fortunate in his Wars againſt the Chriſtian Kings of *Spain*; againſt whom he led an Army of 400000 Foot, and 70000 Horſe, with all other neceſſaries: but vanquiſhed by the two Kings of *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, with far leſſer Forces; (their Army conſiſting but of 25000 Foot, and 14000 Horſe) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*, An. 1340. Depoſed ſoon after his return, by his Son *Alboanen*, who loſt all which his Father and the firſt of the *Aben-Joſephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining, even in *Africk* it ſelf: the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and the greateſt part of the now Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themſelves from their Obedience in the Eaſt parts of *Barbary*, as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the Weſt. The Kingdom of the *Marines* thus approaching near its fatal Period, it fortuned about the year 1508. that *Mahomet Ben-Amet*, a Native of *Dara*, in the farther *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*, pretending a Deſcent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, cauſed himſelf to be called *Xeriff*, the Name by which the Kindred and Succeſſors of that *Impoſtor* uſe to call themſelves; and being a poor Hermite only (with which Mountebanks, and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this People have from time to time been extreamly fooled) plotted to make his Sons the Chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he ſent them in Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, whence they returned with ſuch an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe*, made *Amet* the ſecond of them Governor of the famous College of *Amadorach*; the youngeſt called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldeſt named *Abdel*, ſtaying at home with his Father, to expect the iſſue; ſlain afterwards in the War undertaken by the other two againſt the *Portugals*. In thoſe days the *Portugals* grievouſly infeſted the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repreſs whoſe Inſolencies, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commiſſion, though much oppoſed therein by *Muley* the King's Brother, who told him how unſafe it was to truſt to an armed Hypocriſie; Aſſuring him, That if they once came unto any Power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raiſe) it would not be eaſie to ſuppreſs them. But this good Counſel was rejected, and the War went forward. Furniſhed with an Army, they diſcomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* Forces under King *Emanuel*, compell'd that King to abandon all his footing there; they ſubdue *Duccala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poiſon the tributary King, and ſalute *Amet* King thereof, by the Name of the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, inveſting *Mahomet*, the other Brother, in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the Career of their Succeſſes died the King of *Feſſe*; and *Amet* his Succeſſor, an Improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam* Tutors in their new Eſtates, conditioned they ſhould hold of him as the Lord in Chief, and pay him the accuſtomed Tributes.

The *Xeriffs* of *MOROCCO.*

A.C. 1. AMET denied both Tribute and Superiority to the King of *Feſſe*, whom he overthrew in a ſet Field; and was after vanquiſhed and diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdom, (upon ſome quarrel breaking out) by his Brother *Mahomet*.

1544. 2. *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Feſſe* unto it alſo by the vanquiſhment of *Amet* the King thereof; ſlain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.

1557. 3. *Abdalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*.

1572. 4. *Abdalla* II. Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he ſlew ten, *Hamet* being ſpared by reaſon of his ſuppoſed ſimplicity, and *Abdelmelech* eſcaping to the *Turks*.

5. *Mahomet* II. Son of *Abdalla* the Second, expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*, who, together with the two Competitors, were ſlain in one day at the Battel of *Alcazar Guer*, *Anno* 1578.

1578. 6. *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* II. who added parts of *Libya* and *Numidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*, not abſolutely ſubdued before.

1603. 7. *Muley Sheck*, the eldeſt Son of *Hamet*, oppoſed in his Succeſſion by *Boferes* and *Sidan*, his two younger Brethren, in which War he died; as did alſo *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheck* had regained *Morocco*.

1607. 8. *Sidan* the third Son of *Hamet*, immediately on the Death of his Father, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed King of *Feſſe* (where he was with his Father when he died) and having won *Morocco* from *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheck*, became Maſter of that Kingdom alſo. Stripped afterwards of *Feſſe* and *Morocco* both, by the oppoſite Factions, diſtreſſed by *Hamet Ben-Abdela* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himſelf; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like Hypocriſie, who ſeemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Eſtate, by whoſe aſſiſtance he was once more poſſeſſed of *Morocco*. Theſe Tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to ſome degree of Peace and Quietneſs, (though never abſolutely reduced under his Command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pyrates neſt themſelves in *Salla*, a Port-Town of the Realm of *Feſſe*; creating thence great Miſchief to him both by Sea and Land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countries, whoſe Buſineſs led them towards thoſe Seas. Unable to ſuppreſs them for want of Shipping, he craved Aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whoſe aſſiſtance he became Maſter of the Port, deſtroyed the Pyrates, and ſent Three hundred Chriſtian Captives for a preſent to His Sacred Majeſty, *An.* 1632. Nor ſtaid he here; but aiming at the general Good of Trade and Mankind, he ſent a Letter to His Majeſty, to lend him the like Aid againſt thoſe of *Algiers*, who did as much infeſt the *Mediterranean*, as the Pyrates, of *Salla* did the Ocean. The Tenor of which Letter, as ſavouring of more Piety than could be poſſibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the Honour of His Sacred Majeſty, I have here ſubjoined.

The Letter of the King of *MOROCCO* to the King of *ENGLAND*.

WHen theſe our Letters ſhall be ſo happy as to come to your Majeſty's ſight, I wiſh the Spirit of the righteous God may ſo direct your Mind, that you may joyfully embrace the Meſſage I ſend, preſenting to you the means of exalting the Majeſty of God, and your own Reward amongſt Men. The Regal power allotted to us makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of thoſe People whom we govern: So that obſerving the Duties we owe to God, we deliver Bleſſings to the World, in providing for the Publick Good of our States, we magniſie the Honour of God, like the Cæleſtial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet ſerve only to the Beneſit of the World. It is the excellency of our Office, to be Inſtruments, whereby happineſs is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me, Sir, This is not to inſtruct, (for I know I ſpeak to one of a more clear and quick ſight than my ſelf) but I ſpeak this, becauſe God hath pleaſed to grant me a happy Victory over ſome part of thoſe rebellious Pyrates, that have ſo long moleſted the peaceful Trade of Europe; *and hath preſented further occaſion to root out the Generation of thoſe who have been ſo pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, ſince it hath pleaſed God to be ſo auſpicious to our beginnings in the Conqueſt of* Salla, *that we might join and proceed in hope of like ſucceſs in the War againſt* Tunis, Algier, *and other Places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane Villanies of thoſe who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whilſt we interrupt the Corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we ſhall gloriſie the great God, and perform a Duty that will ſhine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may ſee and reverence: A Work that ſhall aſcend as ſweet as the Perfume of the moſt precious Odours, in the Noſtrils of the Lord; A Work grateful and happy to Man: A Work whoſe Memory ſhall be reverenced ſo long as there ſhall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and Magnanimous Spirits; that ſhall laſt as long as there be any remaining amongſt Men that love and honour the Piety and Virtue of Noble Minds. This Action I here willingly preſent to you, whoſe Piety and Virtues equal the Greatneſs of your Power, that we, who are Servants to the Great and Mighty* GOD, *may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action preſents unto us. Now becauſe the Iſlands which you govern have been ever famous for the Unconquered Strength of their Shipping, I have ſent this my truſty Servant and Ambaſſador, to know whether in your Princely wiſdom you ſhall think ſit to aſſiſt me with ſuch Forces by Sea, as ſhall be anſwerable to thoſe I provide by Land: which if you pleaſe to grant, I doubt not but the* Lord of Hoſts *will protect and aſſiſt thoſe that Fight in ſo glorious a Cauſe. Nor ought you to think this ſtrange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and Accord of Nations, ſhould exhort to a War. Your great Prophet* CHRIST JESUS *was the* Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, *as well as the* Lord and Giver of Peace: *Which may ſigniſie unto you, that he which is a Lover and Maintainer of Peace, muſt always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of Blood, muſt arrive to Tranquillity. This made* JAMES *your Father of Glorious Memory, ſo happily renowned amongſt all Nations. It was the moſt noble Fame of your Princely Virtues, which reſounds to the utmoſt Corners of the Earth, that perſwaded me to invite you to partake of that Bleſſing, wherein I boaſt my ſelf moſt happy. I wiſh* GOD *may heap the Riches of his Bleſſing on you, increaſe your Happineſs with your Days, and hereafter Perpetuate the Greatneſs of your Name in Ages.*

Such was the Letter of that King; whoſe motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the deſign. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purpoſes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire; before the late diſtractions made it leſs conſiderable. And firſt for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffs* are the abſolute Lords of the whole Eſtate, and of his Subjects Goods and Bodies. The tenth and firſt Fruits of all ſorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of courſe; though many times contented in the name of the firſt fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head, whether Male or Female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandiſe he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impoſt alſo upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is ſole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great Sums by the ſale of thoſe Offices. And in the levying of ſuch Taxes as are extraordinary, he uſeth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate ſomewhat of his Due, may think themſelves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the firſt, at the ſiege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, An. 1562. had no leſs then 200000 Men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the Battel of *Alcazar Guez*, againſt King *Sebaſtian*, had 40000 Horſe, and 80000 Foot, beſides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being ſuppoſed that he might have raiſed 30000 Horſe more (notwithſtanding the ſtrong part which was made againſt him) had he thought it neceſſary. It is ſaid alſo that *Abdalla* kept in conſtant pay 60000 Horſe of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of *Feſſe*: out of which he called 5000 of the beſt and ableſt for the guard of his Perſon, well mounted, and as richly furniſhed. Beſides theſe he hath Bodies of Horſe in continual readineſs, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Penſions given amongſt the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the Mountains, and up and down in the Skirts of this Country, is furniſhed at his need with Supplies from them. Well ſtored with Ammunition alſo, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gunpowder laid up monthly in his famous *Arſenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to ſtay long (not above 3 Months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Proviſions are conſumed, to diſſolve and ſcatter. I can give no account of the Prince ſince the time in which the Author Wrote.

The ISLES of *BARBARY.*

THE ISLES of *BARBARY*, which make up the fifth and laſt part thereof, are ſituate near the *African* ſhores of the *Mediterranean*, aſſigned by *Ptolemy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number ſixteen: 1. *Hydras*, 2. *Calathe*, 3. *Draconitis*, now called *Chelbi*, 4. *Ægymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Ægynarus*, and now *Guietta*, 5. *Laruneſia*, now *Mollium*, 6. *Lapeduſa*, now *Lampedoſa*, 7. *Meſyrus*, 8. *Pontia*, 9. *Gaia*; all of little note. 10. *Inſula Glauconis*, with a City of the ſame name in it, now called *Goza*, and ſubject to the Knights of *Malta*; 11. *Æthuſa*, by ſome called *Æguſa*, and conſequently miſtaken for *Ægater*, which lieth near *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow: *Viz.*

1. *COSTRA*, now called *Pantalaria*, equally diſtant from *Africk* and the Iſle of *Sicily*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the moſt part, and full of black kind of Stone, the Soil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-Wooll; well ſtored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horſes. The People Poor; by Religion *Chriſtians*, and ſubject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both Sexes, and in their ſpeech and habit coming near the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on the Sea ſide in the Northern part of it; defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. Near this Iſland the 13 of *July* 1586. there was a Sea-fight between 5 *Engliſh* Ships and 11 *Spaniſh* Gallies and 2 Frigats, in which the *Spaniards* were ſufficiently beaten: but theſe 5 *Engliſh*, being *Turky* Merchants heavy Laden, there was none of them taken. This was the firſt Fleet the *Turky* Company (then incorporated) ſent into the *Mediterranean* Sea; before this time they traded with ſingle Ships. This Fight laſted 5 hours; yet the *Engliſh* loſt but 2 Men and one Wounded. *Hackl. T. 2. p.* 288.

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, ſituate near the Coaſt of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the leſſer *Syrtis*: in length twenty five miles, in breadth half as much, but in ſome places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furniſh (as they did) the wants of *Cæſar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magno frumenti numero* Cercinæ *invento, naves onerarias, quarum ibi ſatis magna copia, complet, atque in caſtra ad* Cæſarem *mittit*, are the words of the Hiſtory. It hath a Town of the ſame name. Of no great note in way of Story, but for an handſome piece of Wit here ſhewed by *Annibal*; who flying from *Carthage*, met here ſome Merchants of that City, who had there ſome Shipping in the Haven; and ſtanding in ſome doubt, leſt by their diſcovery of his flight, he might be purſued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailers, and borrowed all their Sails to ſet up a Tent for their Entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them aſleep, he made on for *Aſia*; ſecure enough not to be purſued, until out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by ſome *Gerbe*, is ſituate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the Main Land by a narrow Ford. The Iſland full of Bogs and Mariſhes, without other Water, and in the midſt of it ſomewhat hilly; indifferently fruitful, yeilding Dates, Olives, Barly, Mill, and the like Commodities; inhabited by 30000 Men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but ſimply apparelled: it had in it anciently two Cities, 1. *Meninx*, which ſometimes gave name unto the Iſland, called *Meninx* by ſome elder Writers. 2 *Gerrapolis*; both now deſtroyed: inſtead whereof there is now one of more note than the reſt, called by the ſame name with the Iſland, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. Subject unto the Turks, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Iſland taken by the *Chriſtian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did ſubmit himſelf, conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Oſtriches, four Sparrow-Hawks, and four Faulcons. But the *Chriſtians* were ſcarce warm in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged in the Caſtle by *Pial Baſſa*, to whom after ſome extremities they were fain to yeild; there periſhing in this unfortunate Action, by Sword, Famine, and Sickneſs, 15000 *Chriſtians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is diſtant about five miles from the Iſle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the Fifth. The Iſland 30 miles in compaſs, well watered, and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents, and all venomous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here, brought from other places. The People *Chriſtians*, but they ſpeak the ſame Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the ſame name with the Iſland, beautified with a capacious Haven, lying betwixt the Weſt and South, and ſtrongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls into endleſs Thraldome.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Iſlands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Iſle of *Sicil*; diſtant from this laſt about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about 60 miles, in lenghth 20, and in breadth 12. Situate in the Begining of the fourth *Clime*, and eight *Parallel*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolemy* and other Writers, but alſo in the Book of the *Acts*, in the Story of St. *Paul*'s Shipwreck; this being the place where he and all his company were caſt on Land; in memory whereof was built a little Chappel in the place of his Landing. So called moſt probably, ἀπὸ τοῦ μέλιτος, from the abundance of Honey which it yielded in former times; *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 meaſures of Honey, and ſtore of *Melitenſian* Raiments; *Jam non quæro unde* 400 *amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum* Melitenſium *Veſtium*, ſaith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the ſame place for both; this Iſland being a near Neighbour of *Sicil*, which *Verres* governed then as Prætor. Nor is it ſtrange, that an Iſland of the Coaſt of *Africk*, and uſing for the moſt part the *Phœnician* or *Punick* Language, ſhould borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming hither from the Iſle of *Sicil*, and inhabiting here, and the whole Iſland ſometimes ſubject to the power of *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the moſt part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is ſituate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by conſequence of no great fertility, the want of which is ſupplied with the plenties of *Sicil*. Yet have they here no ſmall ſtore of Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent Fruits, both for taſte and colour. They have alſo great abundance of Cotton-Wool (*Goſſypium* the *Latiniſts* call it) which they ſow as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wooll, hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commodity of this Wool, and the Cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Iſland in great eſteem; thinking themſelves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*. Monſieur *Thevenot*, ſays this Iſland lyes low, and is only a white ſoft Rock, fit for building and Lime, but yeilds too ſoon to the South Eaſt Winds that eat it away. The Earth on the Rock is little and ſtony, yet its product is excellent Mellons, Figs and Grapes: Their Cottons they plant, and thrive well; but their Corn comes from *Sicily*. In Summer the heat is not to be endured, and the *Musketoes*, flies, at Night as inſufferable. A Serene wholſom Air and no Winter. By Order of the Viceroy of *Naples* in 1590 a Calculation was made, and they found in the Bourg, the Old Town, *Valetta*, the Iſle of St. *Michael*, and 36 *Villa* Iſles 27000 Men, beſides the Knights and their Servants. The Natives ſpeak the *Arabian* Tongue; but the *Italian* is very Comon. It has 2 great and ſafe Havens, opening to the Eaſt North Eaſt, which are ſecured by Caſtles and ſtrong Forts. *Tavern p.* 78. It has an Arſenal, in which are Arms for 20000 Men, kept in good Order. In the year 1692 his Iſland and *Sicily* ſuffered ſo much by an Earthquake, both at the ſame time, that it was feared they would be both deſtroyed. This happened *January* 11. *N. S.*

The natural Inhabitants of it are ſaid to be churliſh and uncivil; of the *African* Language and Complexion, but Followers of the Church of *Rome*, the *Religion* whereof theſe Knights are ſworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, ſuppoſed to be 20000, poſſeſſed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1. *Malta*, ſo called by the name of the Iſland, in the middle of which it is ſituate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the ſtrength and ſafety of the Iſland lying in the defence of the Shores and Havens. 2. St. *Hermes*, a ſtrong Caſtle at the point of a long *Languet*, or Tongue of Rock, thruſting out betwixt the two beſt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1565. but at no cheaper rate than 2000 ſhot of Cannon, and the loſs of 10000 of their Men. 3. *Valete*, ſituate on the ſame Languet, not far from the Caſtle of St. *Hermes*, (or rather lying cloſe unto it) extended the whole breadth of the ſaid Languet, from the one Sea to the other; and ſo commanding both the Havens. Built ſince the departure of the *Turks*, impregnably fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valette* the Great Maſter, who ſo gallantly repulſed their Fury. In this Town the *Great Maſter* hath his Palace, and the Knights their ſeveral *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handſome Buildings. 4. *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eaſtern Haven; at the extremity of which Promontory in a demy-Iſland ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of 5. St. *Angelo*, built on a Rock, oppoſite to *Vallete*, on the other ſide of the Haven, and found impregnable by the *Turks*; who in vain beſieged it. 6. *Iſola*, a ſmall City, and better deſerving the name of a Town, ſituate in another Promontory on the South of the other, defended on the Weſt-ſide by a ſtrong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the Eaſt-ſide by the impregnable Caſtle of St. *Michael*; in vain aſſaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill ſucceſs at the Seige hereof, gave over the Enterprize, and ſailed home.

The People of this Iſland orginially were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with ſome *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicil*, as before was ſaid. For the moſt part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till ſubdued by the *Saracens*: by the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the Fifth given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificient*, *An.* 1522. Theſe Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be reſident in the Iſland. The other 500 are diſperſed through *Chriſtendom*, at their ſeveral Seminaries in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any Summons are to make their perſonal Appearance. Theſe Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number ſeven, *viz.* one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Caſtile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which, they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the ſuppreſſion of it by *Henry* the Eighth; yet they have ſome one or other, to whom they give the Title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the original and riches of theſe Knights, we have ſpoken when we were in *Paleſtine*; now a word or two only of their places, and the Election of their *Great Maſter*. None are admitted into the Order, but ſuch as can bring a Teſtimony of their *Gentry* for ſix Deſcents; and when the Ceremonies of their admiſſion (which are many) are performed, they ſwear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiors*, to live upon the Revenues of their Order only, and withal to live chaſtly. Of theſe there be 16 of great Authority (*Counſellors of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Croſſes*; out of whom the Officers of their order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*. &c. are choſen: and who, together with the *Maſter*, puniſh ſuch as are convict of any Crime, 1. by degrading him, 2. by ſtrangling him; and 3. by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Maſter* is dead, they ſuffer no Veſſel to go out of this Iſland till another be *Elected*, leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their *Election*; which is performed in this manner: The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*: theſe 16 from amongſt themſelves chooſe eight; theſe eight chooſe a Knight, a Prieſt, and a Frier-ſervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Croſſes*, elect the *Great Maſter*. The *Great Maſter* being thus choſen, is ſtiled (though but a Frier) *The moſt Illuſtrious and moſt Reverend Prince, The Lord Frier* N. N. *Great Maſter of the Hoſpital of St.* John of Jeruſalem, *Prince of*

Malta, Gaules, *and* Goza. Far different, I aſſure you, from that of the firſt Maſters of this Order, who called themſelves only *Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hoſpital of* Jeruſalem; or that of the Maſter of the *Templers*, who was only entituled, *The humble Miniſter of the poor Knights of the Temple.*

This Iſland is conceived to yield to the *Great Maſter* the yearly Rent of 1000 *Ducats*, the greateſt part whereof ariſeth out of *Cotton-Wool*: beſides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Eſtate, the tenth part of the Prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thouſands of Crowns yearly out of the Treaſure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the beſt *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the ſcouring of the Seas and ſecuring of their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Soldiers, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordnance, with which they make Excurſions many times to the Coaſts of *Greece.*

And ſo much for *BARBARY.*

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we muſt paſs over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of Hills of exceeding great height, and of no ſmall length. So high, that the top, or *Summit* of it, is above the Clouds, at leaſt ſo high, that the eye of Man is not able to diſcern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen* Atlas (*ſaith* Herodotus) *ita ſublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non poſſint.* Yet notwithſtanding, it is always covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of aſcent, by reaſon of the ſharp and craggy *Precipices*, which occur in many places of it; the reſt were plainer and more even, of ſuch wonderous ſteepneſs, that the *Precipices* of the Rocks ſeem the ſafer way. Full of thick Woods, and yeilding to the Countries on the North-ſide of it, the greateſt part of the Rivers which refreſh and moiſten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of ſuch ſelf-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, graffed, or inoculated by the hand of Man. The beginning of it on the ſhores of the Weſtern Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick Ocean*; in the 26 Degree and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and paſſing on directly Eſtward, draw near unto the Borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmerica*, or the *Roman Libya*, only interpoſing. It is now called *Anchiſa*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas*, from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; feigned by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Perſeus*, and the head of *Meduſa.* Of the Daughters of this King, their golden Fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Heſperides*, we have ſpoke already, though ſome remove the place of their habitation more into the Weſt (then by us diſpoſed of) and others into certain Iſlands of the *Weſtern* Ocean, which we ſhall meet withal hereafter. He was ſaid to have been a Man of ſuch wonderous height, that the Heavens reſted on his Shoulders; of which, when weary, he diſcharged his burthen on the Shoulders of *Hercules.* The ground of the fiction is either taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof ſeemeth to touch the Sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Aſtronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; in which Knowledge he inſtructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* deſcription of it, take it thus from *Virgil*:

——*Jamq; volans apicem & latera ardua cernit*
Atlantis *duri, Cœlum qui virtice fulcit*;
Atlantis, *cinctum aſſidue cui nubibus atris*
Piniferum caput, & vento pulſatur & imbri.
Nix humeros infuſa tegit, tum flumina mento
Præcipitant ſenis, & glaci riget horrida barba.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

Then flying, he the top and ſides deſcries
Of *Atlas*, whoſe proud head ſupports the Skies.
Atlas, whoſe Piny head with Clouds incloſ'd,
Is to the Storms of Wind and Rain expoſ'd.
Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'er-grown.

The *Nubian* Geographer *p.* 75 tells us Near *the Riſe of this Mountain it is called* Mount Dara, *which exceeds moſt of the Mountains in the World in Height, Fertility, Length and plenty of its Caſtles and other Buildings. It begins from the Weſt* Ocean *in the borders of the Kingdom of SUS to the South, and running Eaſt as far as* Tripoli; *where it ends: the moſt Eaſtern part of it being called* Naſſua. *There is upon this Mountain above 70 Caſtles and Strong-holds, The moſt unacceſſible of which is* Tanimal. This Mountain begins at *Cape de Non*, or *Nao*, in 28. 40 Lat. between the Deſarts of *Zanhaga* to the South and *Teſſet* to the North; and running Eaſt to almoſt 15 Degrees of Long. it turns North Eaſt as far as the Borders of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, ſeparating *Teſſet*, *Sus* and *Morocco* on the Weſt, from *Biledulgerid* to the Eaſt at 29 Degrees of Latitude, it turns North-Eaſt and divides *Barbary* to the North from *Biledulgerid* to the South: and tho' about *Tripoli* it takes the Name of *Servia*, yet it continues its Courſe by various Turnings to the Red Sea, parting *Nubia* from *Egypt*, where the *Nile* croſſeth it. It is called *Giandel*, and ends at *Bugia* on the Red Sea; yet the Author's account of its ending at *Tripolis* is not to be blamed, becauſe there it grows very low, and thoſe that begin there turn South till they meet with *Mount Seluba*, which runs parallel with Mount *Atlas* at the South of *Biledulgerid* till it Joyns with thoſe that encompaſs the Kingdom of *Gagoa* on the Weſt, South and Eaſt, and encompaſſing *Nubia* on the North Weſt, and North, they paſs South Eaſt to *Bugia*; the *Nile* cutting them above *Aſuan* in *Egypt.* It is ſtill inhabited by the old Natural *Africans*, who ſpeak their old Tongue and tho' they are Tributaries to the *Arabians*, are ſtill under their own Princes; and ſome are perfectly free, and continue in the *Pagan Idoliatry* of their *Anceſtors*: this is alſo true of the other Mountainious Countries *Leo p.* 26: They worſhip the *Sun* and Fire, which have had ſtately Temples where the fires were never ſuffered to go out: They alſo worſhip'd each a diſtinct Planet. Mount *Atlas* beginneth at the *Atlantick*, and rangeth Eaſt to the Borders of *Egypt*, about 190 miles, at its greateſt diſtance from the *Mediteranean* Sea, *p.* 30: They are exceeding cold and baren, and yeild but little Corn; they are covered alſo with Woods replemiſhd with wild Beaſts, and produce moſt of the Rivers, that water the North of *Africa*, whoſe Springs in Summer are very cold. The North ſides of it are covered with ſuch deep Snows, that if they continue there too long in the Winter, they deſtroy both Men and Beaſt; but in the Summer they yeild good Paſture, *p.* 29. 31. The Winter on it begins in *October* and ends in *Aprill.*

Of LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is boundeth on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenaica*; on the Eaſt, with *Libya Marmarica*, interpoſed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reaſon of the name we have ſeen before, given to this Country in regard of its countiguouſneſs and reſemblance to the other *Libya*; or elſe becauſe deſcended from the Children of *Lehabim*, by which that Country was firſt planted. For of King *Lybs*, or Queen *Libya* (the Daughter of *Epachus*, and *Caſſiopa*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I ſhall take no notice. Diſtinguiſhed from the other by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main Land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritime* Country.

Of the nature of the Soil and People we ſhall ſpeak anon, when we come to take a view of its ſeveral parts. Look we on it now as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*, when though not ſo well travelled, or diſcovered, as in theſe laſt times; yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and ſituation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our late Writers have preſented to us. The Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Salathus*, 2. *Chuſarus*, 3. *Ophiodus*, 4. *Noius*, 5. *Maſſa*, 6. *Sobus*, 7. *Daradus*, 8. *Stachiris*, and 9. *Mathiſolus*; all of them paying tribute to the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of moſt note, 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salatus*, 2. *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*, 3. *Ryſſadius*, from whence *Stachiris*, 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of which more anon) whence *Maſſitholus*, and Mount *Capus*; out of which *Daradus* have there firſt Originals. Then there are, 5. Mount *Uſurgala*, and 6. Mount *Girgiris*, from the firſt of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the laſt that of *Cynyphus* do derive there waters: and Paſſing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which theſe Mountains ſeem to be ſome diſmembred Limbs) croſs the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themſelves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Beſides theſe, more within the Land we find the famous Rivers of *Gir* and *Niger*, of which the firſt maketh the two great Lakes of *Nubia* and *Cheloindas*: the ſecond thoſe as great, or greater, called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Libya*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country ſo well watered as this ſeems to be, our Modern Writers ſhould complain of ſuch want of water: as if there were neither Spring, nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moiſten and refreſh the Earth, but the Dews of Heaven, or ſome Pits of ſalt and brakiſh water, not worth the taſting. *Ptolemy* muſt either be miſtaken, which I hardly think; or our late *Travellers* not ſo punctual in their Obſervations, which I rather credit: or elſe the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenatum vaſtitatibus diſperduntur*, muſt be dried up and ſwallowed in theſe ſandy Deſarts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath happened ſome later Conflagration than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

> *Hinc facta eſt Libya, raptis humoribus æſtu,*
> *Arida.* ———————————

Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendereth;

> A Sandy Deſart *Libya* then became,
> Her full veins emptied by the thirſty flame.

Places of note and name in thoſe elder times, 1. *Salathus*, on the River ſo named, 2. *Bagaxi*, 3. *Jarzitha*, and 4. *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of Cities, 5. *Gamara*, 6. *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of their ſeveral Nations. Then there were two Havens of ſome good eſteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphoſius*, beſides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of theſe on the banks of the River *Niger*) whoſe names and ſituation do occur in *Ptolemy*, which ſhews the Country not to be ſo unhabitable and void of People, as was pretended by ſome other (but leſs diligent) Writers.

Nations of moſt note in it in the former times, were 1. the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a reſolute and unconquerered people, *Genus inſuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*. 2. the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and ſpacious Territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*, ſuppoſed to be the moſt remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the Eaſt; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet; 3. the *Pyrrhæi*, an *Ethiopick* Nation on the South of the River *Gir*; 4. the *Nigritæ*, originally *Ethiophians*, alſo inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*, 5. the *Odranguli*, of the ſame original extraction, poſſeſſing the Country between the Mountains *Capha* and *Thala*; 6. the *Perorſori*, dwelling near the Hills called *Deorum Currus*; 7. the *Meinaci*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8. the *Nabæ*, on the Weſt of *Vallis Garamantica*; 9. the *Derbici*, dwelling on the Weſt of the Hill *Aranga*; and 10. the *Pſylli*, placed by *Ptolemy* amongſt the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*, but ſo near the Borders of this Country, and ſo far from the Civilities of thoſe Nations which converſed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*, that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a Nature ſo venomous, that they could poyſon a Snake. Inſomuch, that when their Wives were delivered; they would throw their Children amongſt a bed of Serpents, ſuppoſing that child to be born of an *adulterate* bed, the very ſmell of whoſe Body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poyſonous Vermine. Others there were of leſs note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of ſmall fame, and therefore not material to be here inſerted; thoſe of moſt note, the *Africerones*, (whom ſome Authors call the *Gampſaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greateſt as it ſeems of thoſe leſſer Nations. None of them of much note in the way of Story, except they were theſe *Libyans*, which are ſo famous in *Herodotus*, for an Expedition they made againſt the *South-Wind*. For when this Wind, blowing abroad the Hills and Deſarts of Sand, had dried up thoſe many pools and waters they had among them; they to revenge this injury, by common conſent armed themſelves, and went to fight againſt him. But they took not the *South-Wind* unprepared. For he muſtered up his forces, and encountred them with ſuch a brave volley of Sand, that he overwhelm'd and ſlew them all. A better Friend was the North-Wind to the Citizens of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having ſcattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dioniſius* prepared againſt them, he was by the Common-Council made free of their City. That part of *Cæſar*'s War which was managed here, we ſhall herafter meet with on another occaſion.

Thus having took a view of the ſtate of this Country, as it ſtood of old; we will next look upon it in its preſent condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1. *Biledulgerid* or *Numidia*; 2. *Libya Deſerta*, or *Sarra*; and 3. a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But becauſe the greateſt part of this laſt Country is to come under another Accompt; we will here only take the two firſt into conſideration.

1. NUMIDIA.

1. NUMIDIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Egypt*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, which parteth it from *Barbary* and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deſerta*.

It was thus firſt called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whoſe deſcription of all *Africk* we are much beholding; becauſe of that reſemblance which the People of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the Cuſtom of the *Nomades*, living without Houſes, under their Wagons and Carts, as *Lucan* teſtifieth of them, thus:

Nulla domus, plauſtris habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvectare Penates.

They dwell in Wains not Houſes; and do ſtray
Through Fields, and with them lead their Gods each
 way.

And worthily may they owe their Names to them, from whom they borrow ſo much of their Nature, for the People to this day ſpend their lives in Hunting, and ſtay but three or four days in a place, as long as the Graſs will ſerve the Camels. This is the cauſe why this Country is ſo ill Peopled, the Towns ſo ſmall in themſelves, and ſo remote from others. An example hereof is *Teffer*, a great City in their eſteem, which yet containeth but 400 Houſholds and hath no Neighbours within 300 Miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with Dates, whence it is called *Dactylorum Regio*, and in the *Arabick*, *Biledulgerid*, which ſignifieth alſo a *Date-region*. Theſe Dates (to ſpeak properly) the Fruit of the Palm-trees, uſually growing in hot Countries, of which ſome are Male, ſome Female; the firſt bringing forth only Flowers, the other Fruit: and yet the Male ſo beneficial to the increaſe of the Dates, that unleſs a Flowred Bough of the Male be ingrafted into the Female, the Dates never prove good, in caſe they bear any Dates at all, as before was noted. This Fruit is the chief Diet of the People; but this ſweet Meat hath ſower Sauce. for it commonly rotteth their Teeth betimes. As for the Stones of theſe Dates, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow Fat and yield ſtore of Milk. The Air hereof of ſo ſound a nature, that if a Man be troubled with the *French Diſeaſe*, he ſhall there, without any courſe of Phyſick find a preſent Remedy: The capital City lies 500 *Engliſh* Miles to the South Weſt from *Tunis*, and ſomething more from *Algiers* to the South Eaſt. *Ortelius.* *Leo Africanus* ſaith, it was called by the Antients, *Numidia*; and that the *Arabians* gave it the new name. It beginneth Eaſt at *Elocat*, a Hundred Miles Weſt of *Egypt*; to the Weſt he bordereth it to the *Atlantick* Ocean, including *Teſſet* in it. The natural Inhabitants of this Country are ſaid to be a baſe and vile People, Thieves, Murderers, Treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding moſt commonly on Dates, Barley and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Feſtival days. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in moſt part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) Ingenious, Liberal and Civil. The Garments of theſe *Numidians*, of the coarſeſt Cloth, ſo ſhort, that they cover not half the Body: the richer ſort, diſtinguiſhed by a Jacket of *Blew Cotton* with wide Sleeves Their Steeds are Camels, which they ride on without Stirrops or ſo much as a Saddle, a Leather thruſt through an hole made in the Noſe of the Camel, ſerves them for a Bridle; and to ſave the charge of Spurs, they make uſe of a Goad. Their Religion *Mahometiſm*, to which perverted (Chriſtianity having once had ſome footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi* and other People of thoſe parts then ſubdued by the *Saracens*; who held them for a Nation of ſo little reckoning, that no Man of account amongſt them would deſcend ſo low as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the Chiefs or Heads of their ſeveral *Clans*. They are jealous of their Women to an implacable Rage, and will never marry a Whore. *Leo Afric. p.* 20. Thoſe that live on the borders of *Tremeſen* and *Tunis*, being in the Pay of thoſe Kings, are more rich and noble than the reſt, but as Thieviſh as they, addicted much to Poetry, and fond of their Women, who Paint to attract more their Love and Regard. *Leo, p.* 24. The Soil of this Country is generally Sandy. The *Moors* began the Conqueſt of this Country in the year of Chriſt 710.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and poſſibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolemy*. The reſt which are mentioned in that Author, riſing out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding theſe barren Wilderneſſes to afford them the readieſt Channels, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands, and are either ſwallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirſty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the laſt for Thirſt in the midſt of the Deſarts.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a diſtinction into better and worſe) 1. *DARA*; more cultivated than the reſt, becauſe of the River running thorow it, whence it hath its name: 250 Miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of ſo different a nature from all the reſt, that here the Country People have ſome ſcattered Villages, the better ſort their ſeveral Caſtles. 2. *PESCARA*, ſo called from the chief Town of it: exceedingly infeſted with Scorpions; the ſting whereof is preſent death. 3. *FIGHIG*, ſo called from the chief Town alſo; inhabited by an induſtrious and witty People (in reſpect of the reſt) ſome of which betake themſelves to Merchandiſe; ſome to the ſtudy of the Law, which they ſtudy at *Feſſe*, and grow rich upon it. 4. *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited better than any except *Dora*; as having in it 50 Caſtles or Gentlemens Houſes, and 100 Villages. The People wealthy, in regard of the great Trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good Husbands in manuring their Land, on which they are forced to lay much Soil; and will therefore lett ſome of it Rent-free to Strangers, reſerving only the dung of themſelves and their Cattel. 5. *BILEDULGERID*, ſpecially ſo called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but deſtiture of Corn, by reaſon of the extream drineſs of the Soil: and yet hath in it many Towns of good Note among them. of leſs Note, 6. *Teſſet.* This City lies towards the *Atlantick* Ocean, containing (ſaith *Leo Africanus*) 400 Families, and ſeated 300 Miles from any habitable place; it was anciently Built by the *Numidians* in the borders of *Lybia* (*Nigritia*) and Walled with Bricks dried in the Sun in a Sandy Plain, which yields ſome Dates, Mill-Seed and Barley, on which they live and pay Tribute to the wandring *Arabs*. They Trade into the *Negro* Countries, *Guzula*. They are Black and Unlearned, and inured betimes to hard Labour, *Ibid. p.* 266. *Engliſh.* 7. *Segelmeſs* This City is regardable for its greatneſs and number of Inhabitants, and as a Center of Trade, having delightful Gardens and beautiful Meadows. It has no Caſtle, but is full of Houſes, all built upon a River full of Water, which ſwells in the Summer as the *Nile* doth, and makes the Fields as fruitful as *Egypt*. *Nub. p.* 74. The name of the River is *Zis*, which ſpringing from Mount *Atlas*, Waters many conſiderable places above and below *Segelmeſſe*: the reaſon of its increaſe is the melting of the Snow on *Mount Atlas* in the Summer. But then *Segelmeſſa* ſtands in a Land of Rivers; to the Eaſt falls the *Gir*, and two other ſmall Rivers; to the Weſt the *Dara*, and two more that have no Names; all which to the South of it unite their Streams in the *Gir*. From *Segelmeſſa* to *Aghamat Varichæ* is almoſt eight days journey: To *Dara* is three days journey Weſt. *Nub. p.* 78. ſays it is 13 days journey from *Feſſe*, which ſtands to the N. W. beyond the *Atlas*. In the year of the *Hegyra*, Five hundred and thirty, the *Marubetens* travelled from *Grand Cairo* to *Segelmeſſa*, through the frightful Deſarts of *America* in 41 days, though they found no Water in three or four days ſometimes. *Nub. p.* 160. This Voyage was performed in the year of Chriſt 1147. *Leo Africanus p.* 269. The Province ſtretcheth from N. to S. by the River *Zis* 120 Miles. On the W. it hath *Dara*, on the N. *Feſſe* and *Tunis*, on the E. *Tegorain*, and on the S. *Lybia*, now *Nigritia*. The Inhabitants are moſtly barbarous *Africans*. It was ſubject to the King of *Feſſe*, and after to its own

Princes; the laſt of which being ſlain in a Rebellion, the City of *Segelmeſſa* was deſtroyed, and is now deſolate. Some ſuppoſe it built by the *Romans*; the *Africans* call it *Bieri*: It ſtood upon a Plain, and was environ'd with a high and ſtrong Wall, part of which is ſtill remaining. The *Moors* ſack'd the old City, and then rebuilt it, and it grew rich by the *Negro* Trade. The Air is temperate, but unhealthful in Winter. 8 *Zeb.* 9. *Tebelbeti.* And 10 *Feſſen*, ſo called from the chiefeſt of theſe Towns and Villages.

Towns of moſt Note, both now and in former times, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, 1. *Timugedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the Birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three Sons, the Founders of the *Xeriffian* Empire. 2. *Taffilette*, in the ſaid Province, to which place *Mahomet* the ſecond of theſe Sons, and ſecond King of *Morocco*, of that Family, confined his elder Brother *Amet*, having took him Priſoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Teffet*, a great Town of 400 Houſes, but ſo poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 Miles of it; but of that before. 4. *Techort*, the Inhabitants whereof are very courteous to Srangers whom they entertain at Free coſt; and chuſe rather to Marry their Daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. This City was built by the *Numidians* upon a Hill, near a River, over which it hath a Draw-bridge. On three ſides the Walls are Freeſtone, and a Rock on the fourth; it ſtands Five hundred Miles from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the S. and Three hundred from *Tegoram* to the S. E. and may contain Two thouſand five hundred Families. The Houſes are built with Brick dried in the Sun, but the Temples more ſtately. They exchange Dates for Corn with *Conſtantina.* 'Twas then ſubject to the King of *Tunis*, and paid 50000 Ducats Tribute a year: But the Governour Levied 130000. *Leo Af. p.* 275. 5. *Eboacab*, the moſt Eaſtern Town in all this Country, diſtant about 100 Miles from the Borders of *Egypt.* 6. *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or Fountains of the Sun: The Water whereof being Luke-warm at the Sun-riſing, cooled more and more till Noon, and was then very cold, and ſo continued until Midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural Antipathy with the Sun, hotteſt when that was fartheſt off, and cold when neareſt. 7. *Maſuche*, ſeated on a Rock, Gariſon'd by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius* in the proſecution of that War. 8. *Cupſa*, the chief City of all this Tract, ſaid to be built by *Hercules*; but queſtionleſs of very great ſtrength; *Anguibus areniſque vallata*, made inacceſſible (ſaith the Hiſtorian) by the thick Sands, and a multitude of Serpents which were harboured in them; but eaſily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly deſtroyed by *Cæſar* in his War againſt *Juba*.

It ſeems by this, that thoſe People neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the diſpoſal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing; and ſo they have been alſo in theſe later times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of Wiſdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698, but within Twelve years (*An.* 710.) they ſubdued this Country, and planted their Religion in it, though not themſelves. Nor was *Amet*, the firſt *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, warm in that Eſtate, when he thought it beſt for him to ſecure himſelf in it by the Conqueſt of this: to whoſe Succeſſors, the Chiefs of the Tribes hereof render ſome acknowledgments.

2. *LIBYA DESERTA.*

2. LIBYA DESERTA, is bounded on the North with *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*; towards the South with the Land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the Weſt with *Gulata*, another Province of theſe *Negroes*, interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reaſon of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deſerta* was added upon very good reaſons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to expreſs the barren and ſandy condition of it; in which reſpect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, ſignifying in their Language a rude and uninhabitable Deſart, as this Country is ſo truly ſuch, that Men may travel in it eight days together without finding Water, or ſeeing any Tree, and no Graſs at all. The Water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding Brackiſh; and many times thoſe Pits ſo covered with the Sands, that Men die for Thirſt: the Merchants therefore carrying their Water with them on the backs of Camels; which if it fail, they kill their Camels, and drink a Water which they wring out of their Guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as theſe Deſarts be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Feſſe* and *Tremeſen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombutum*, in the Land of *Negroes*. *Leo p.* 34. ſaith, it Raineth in the middle of *October*, and continueth till *February*; during all which time they have wonderful plenty of Graſs and Milk, and great Lakes of Water; and therefore they travel in, or ſoon after thoſe times of Rain, to the Land of *Negroes*, through theſe Deſarts.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in Shape or Qualities; but if a worſe Quality, it muſt be the *Libyan.* They did once worſhip a God called *Paſaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then ſet at liberty, to ſay theſe words, *viz. Paſaphon is a great God*; which the ſimple People hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine Honours. Converted at laſt to the Chriſtian Faith, they remained a while in the profeſſion of the Goſpel: Exterminated by the *Saracens*, about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former Conqueſts, planted their Superſtitions in this Country alſo.

This Country is divided, (as others into Provinces) into five great Deſarts, to which thoſe of leſs Note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata*, (interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick* Ocean) and extending Eaſtward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the Land of *Negroes*; ſo deſtitute of Water, that there is one Pit only at the end of each hundred Mile, brackiſh and unwholſome; and in the Deſarts of *Azaoa* and *Araoan*, which are parts of this, but one in 150 or 200 Miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eaſtward, to the Deſart of *Targa*: bounded on the North with *Segelmeſs* and *Tebelbaty*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the Deſart, and *Ghir* and *Guber.* So void of Water, (eſpecially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in Nine days Travel there is not ſo much as one drop to be ſeen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eaſtward to the Deſart of *Ighidi*, and reaching from *Tegerarin* in the North, to the Deſart of *Agadez* in the South; the beſt Conditioned part of all this Country, well Watered, of a temperate Air, and a Soil reaſonably Fruitful. In length from North to South 300 Miles, and liberally ſtored with Manna, which they gather into little Veſſels, and carry to *Agadez* to ſell; mingled in Water, or with Pottage, it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feaſts, as a ſpecial Dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extended from the Deſarts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea.*

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia.* Of theſe two there is little to be ſaid in ſeveral, but that this laſt was lately diſcovered by one *Hmar*, a guide to a Caravan of Merchants; who blinded with the Sands, wandered out of his way, and cauſing Sand to be given him at every Twenty Miles end, found by the ſmell at laſt, that they begun to draw nigh ſome inhabited place; and told them of it Forty Miles before they came to it.

Cities of Note we hope for none, where we find no Water. Of ſuch as go for Cities here, the moſt conſiderable, 1. *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, reſembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being Twenty days diſtant from any Habitation, and conſequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the *South-Wind*, which doth ſo drive the Sands upon them, that it cauſeth many of them to loſe their ſight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known reſting place, and a great refreſhment to the *Merchant* in the midſt of theſe Deſarts. 3. *Guargata*, on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot *Water*; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4. *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it ſerveth for a Stage or *baiting-place* to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are ſaid to be others at the extremities or ends of each ſeveral *Deſart*; the *Havens* of ſuch men as *ſail* in thoſe Sandy *Seas*; but not elſe obſervable.

Nor is there much, if any thing obſervable of them in the way of *Story*, but that not looked after by any of the great *Conquerors*, either *Greeks* or *Romans*, much of the Country poſſeſſed by *Arabian* Colonies, (men fit enough to plant in ſuch barbarous Nations) at ſuch time as the *Saracens* planted their *Religion* here. The Government of the Country ſince, as it was before, by the Chiefs of their ſeveral *Clans* or *Families*; who as they know no Law themſelves, ſo do the people ſhew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, differing but little from brute Beaſts, more than in ſhape and ſpeech. The vaſt greatneſs of theſe Deſarts, and the Barbarity of its Inhabitants, were the Cauſes that the Ancients knew of no People beyond them to the South; ſo that this is the Boundary of All the old *Geography*; what lies further that way having been ſince diſcovered by the *Arabians* and the *Portugueze*.

And ſo much for *LIBIA INTERIOR*.

OF

TERRA NIGRITARUM.

TERRA NIGRITARUM, or THE LAND OF NEGROES, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Æthiopia Superior*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the North, with *Libya Deſerta*; and on the South, with the *Æthiopick Ocean* and part of *Æthiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolemy*, and they ſo named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

This Vaſt Tract of Land extending from Eaſt to Weſt on both ſides of the *Niger*, and upon the Rivers that fall into it to the North and South, is bounded by Deſolate Sandy Deſarts, uninhabited for want of Water, which is not to be found but at great diſtances, once in 5, 6 or 14 days Journey, and therefore carried by the *Caravans* from Place to Place. *Nubienſis, p.* 7. There are no Fruits to be found in it but Dates, which are brought by the Inhabitants of *Vareelan* from *Segelmeſſa*, or *Zab*. On the Banks of the *Niger* there grow *Indian* Reeds or Canes, and Woods of *Ebony, Box, Sallows, Tamariſk, &c.* of great extent, in which the *Negroes* and their Cattle Shelter themſelves in the heat of the day from the Scorchings of the Sun. In theſe Woods are alſo Lyons, Leopards, Deer, Hares, white Weeſels, and Hedgehogs: And the *Niger* affords excellent Fiſh of ſeverall ſorts. Bows and Arrows, and Clubs of Ebony are their Arms, which they uſe with great Dexterity and Courage: Their Bows and Arrows are made of Reeds; their Houſes are built of Earth and ſmall Timbers, and their Bravery lies in Necklaces and Bracelets, and going almoſt naked by the exceſſive heat of the Country. Near the Cities they plant Onions, Gourds, and Mellons, which grow to great Bulk; they have little Corn, beſides *Guinea* Wheat, of which they make their Drink; and Camels Fleſh and Fiſh is their beſt Fleſh-Meat. *Nubienſis p.* 9. *Leo Africanus, p.* 2. bounds this Country Eaſt on *Egypt* or *Gagoa*, Weſt on *Gualata* and the *Atlantick* Ocean. The truth is, the Ocean runs in from 5 to 35 Degrees of Longitude, and was then the utmoſt Bound they heard of by the Merchants of *Tombuto*; for in Truth it extends much further even to the River *Zaire*.

The Country very hot, by reaſon of its ſituation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in ſome places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie within the compaſs of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: abundantly well ſtored both with Corn, Cattel and Garden-ware for the uſe of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and thoſe Woods well furniſhed with Elephants and other Beaſts, both wild and tame. Their greateſt wants (but ſuch a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-Trees*, few of which they have; and thoſe they have, bear one kind of Fruit only, which is like the Cheſnut, but ſomewhat bitterer Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greateſt welfare conſiſting in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In ſome parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and ſilver; very fine and pure: ſo that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of diſcovering *New Worlds*, as much as *Wealth*, they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the moſt part ſo rude and barbarous, that they ſeem'd to want that uſe of Reaſon which is peculiar unto Man; of little Wit, and deſtitute of all Arts and Sciences; prone to Luxury, and for the greateſt part Idolaters, though not without ſome ſmall admixture of *Mahometans*. When the *Portugals* firſt ſailed into theſe Coaſts, the People hereof took the Ships for great Birds with white Wings: and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were caſually painted on the Beaks of the Ships were the Eyes by which they ſaw how to direct themſelves in their courſe. *Guns* ſeemed to them, for their hideous noiſe, to be the work of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perſwaded but that they were the work of *God's own Hand*. The very *Nobles* (if ſo noble a name may without offence be given to ſuch blockiſh people) are ſo dull and ſtupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to Civil Society: and yet ſo reverent to their *King*, that when they are in his preſence, they never look him in the face, but ſit flat on their buttocks, with their elbows on their knee, and their hands on their faces. They uſe to anoint their hair with the fat of Fiſhes, which makes them ſtink more wretchedly than they would do otherwiſe. Of Complexion they are for the moſt part Cole black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South ſide of the River *Sanaga* they are only Tawny: the *Blacks* ſo much in love with their own Complexion, that they uſe to paint the Devil *White*; which I find thus verſified:

The Land of Negroes *is not far from thence,*
Never extended to th' Atlantick *Main*;
Wherein the Black Prince *keeps his reſidence,*
Attended by his Jetty-coloured Train:
Who in their Native Beauty moſt delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil White.

They have tried all *Religions*, but agree in none. *Idolaters* at the firſt, as other the Deſcendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is ſaid, that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occaſion of it I do nowhere find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the laſt, *Chriſtianity* prevailed in ſome Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. *Mahometiſm* began to get ground amongſt them, by the diligence and zeal of ſome of the Preachers of that Law: the firſt who were ſeduced that way, being thoſe of *Melli*: after which *Tombuto*, and then *Gaulata*, were infected with the ſame poyſon alſo. In the end, all the reſt of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, ſome part of *Nubia*, and the Coaſts of the *Atlantick* Ocean which continue in their ancient *Gentiliſm*; *Chriſtianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if ſtill there remaining) and ſome few Garriſons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different *Religions*, ſo are they alſo of ſeveral *Languages*; thoſe of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutum*, *Melli*, and *Gugonti*, ſpeaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guberio*, *Canontes*, *Chæſenæ*, and *Gangretes*, &c. that called *Guber*: *Gualata*, a language of its own: and thoſe of *Nubia*, one reſembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldæan* and *Egyptain*.

Mountains of moſt note in it, in the former times, were thoſe of 1. *Arvaltes*, and 2. *Arangus*, and 3. that called *Deorum Currus*; this laſt ſuppoſed to be the ſame which is now called *Puntæ de Lopes Gonſales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Promontory*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; diſcerned afar off by the Sailers and the Country people, as well by reaſon of its height, reaching to the Clouds, as the continual Lightnings and Thunders which do iſſue thence.

Rivers of moſt note, beſides *Nile*, which watereth it on the Eaſt, 1. *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riſeth out of the Lake of *Guoga*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolemy* calleth *Lacum Chelonidem*. And if ſo, then muſt this be the River *Gir*; of which he ſaith, that having fallen into that *Lake*, and there ſwallowed up, it thence Produced another River, whoſe name he telleth not; little inferiour unto *Nilus*, for the length of its courſe, the variety of ſtrange Creatures which are bred therein, or the diſtinction which it maketh in the face of this Country; the People on the one ſide of it being Black, on the other Tawny; the Soil on the one ſide very barren, on the other fruitful: In the end, having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantick* by two great *Outlets*. 2. *Niger*, a River better known to *Ptolemy* by name than nature; now found to have its riſe from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Æquinoctial*; whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himſelf under ground for the ſpace of 60 miles together: when riſing up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his courſe directly Weſtward; and taking in many leſs *Channels*, he teareth the Earth into many Iſlands, and at laſt falleth into the Sea. Of as long courſe, and the ſame wondrous nature as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of *June* it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the ſpace of 40 days together; and in ſo many more, recollecteth his Waters into their proper *Channels*: the whole Country being indebted to theſe Inundations for its Fertility, which otherwiſe could be but ſmall, ſince the drineſs of the Soil can afford no *Exhalations*, whereby Clouds may be generated, and the Earth refreſhed with moiſtures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolemy*, 1. *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2. *Panagra*, 3. *Malachath*, 4. *Anygath*, 5. *Thumondacana*, 6. *Suluce*, and others, to the number of 17 in all; ſituate all along the courſe of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the ſituation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and People being quite defaced, we muſt look upon it now as it ſtandeth divided at this time into ſeveral Kingdoms, 25 at the leaſt in all, (ſome ſay many more) the chief of which are theſe that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, a large Tract of Ground on the *Weſtern Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blance* to the River *Carnuga*, ſandy and barren, but reaſonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanbagi*, were accounted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized ſince the *Portugals* and other *Chriſtian* Nations began to trade there; of middle ſtature, complexioned between black and aſh-colour; great liars, very treacherous, poor, and parſimonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, 1. *Porta di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2. *Porto del Riſcatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occaſionly by the *Portugueze*, at their firſt coming thither. 3. *Arquin*, a ſtrong Fortreſs of the *Portugals*, ſituate on or near the Promontory now called *Cape Blanco*; and giving name unto ſome Iſlands, five or ſix in number, lying near unto it, called the Iſles of *Arquin*; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the *Azanbays*, but of no great note. Theſe Coaſts diſcovered firſt by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1452. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the firſt, or by his encouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, diſtant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Anteroſa* being interpoſed) is but a ſmall Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with ſome Territories of ground and petty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitful only in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulſe; but of theſe two laſt no great abundance. This was ever the Principall Nation of the *Negroes*, and the Seat of their Prince, till the Trade in after-times was removed from *Gualata* to *Tombuto*; the King of which laſt conquered *Gualata* in *Leo's* time. The Inhabitants Cole-Black, hoſpitable towards Strangers to their power, but poor and miſerable, without Laws, ſettled form of Government, Gentry and Judges. Their King paid Tribute to the King of *Tombuto*, *Leo Africanus p.* 285.

3. *AGADEZ*, bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Deſarts* of *Lybia*; the people of it generally given to grazing; their houſes made of green Boughs, which upon every change of Paſture they carry with them upon the Backs of *Oxen*. So that we are to look for few Towns amongſt them, but theſe movable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the moſt part by *Merchants Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremeſen*. The Town well walled, the Houſes of a better building than the Country promiſeth; the people civiler, and more fair conditioned than the reſt of the *Negroes*; ſeated commodiouſly on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correſpondence with the Ocean alſo. The City is moſtly Inhabited by *Barbary*, and other Merchants, who Trade between that place, *Cano*, and *Borno*. The Subjects of the King of this City are wont frequently to depoſe him, and ſet up another: This Kingdom pays the King of *Tombuto* 150000 Ducats Tribute, *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 290. It lies on the North of the *Niger*, between *Tombuto* to the Weſt, and *Cano* to the Eaſt, *Guber* to the South, and *Zuinziga* to the North.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this ſide of the River *Canaga*, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in ſome parts Deſart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons and Pomegranates, with good ſtore of *Cotton-Wooll*. Well watered, beſides that great River, with ſome leſſer Streams. Sufficiently populous, and ſtored with good Towns and

Villages, the Habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen, as the chief Town called *Cano* is of wealthy Merchants. This is the Seat-Royal of their King, a Tributary alſo unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a Wall, built of a Chalk-ſtone, as moſt part of the Houſes are.

5. *CASENA*, on the Eaſt of *Cano*, but leſs fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vaſt Woods, and the Soil untractable, affording only Mill and Barly, but of that good plenty. The People as Black as any Coal, with great Noſes, and moſt prominent Lips. They had a King, who was ſlain by the Victorious *Iſchia* King of *Tombuto. Leo Afric. p.* 291. Their Houſes very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbering more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other ſide of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean; as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolemy* named *Arſinarium*, is now called *Cape-Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Paſtures, goodly Trees, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulſe, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with Lakes and Rivers. No tame Beaſts about their Fields, but Goats, Cows, and Oxen; of Lions, Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The People extream black, much given to Lying, Treacherous, very full of Talk, exceſſively Venerous, and extreamly Jealous. A King they have, but ſuch a one as holdeth but by Courteſie only, having no certain Rents or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles. The Name of this Country is Communicated to that Branch of the *Niger* which here falls into the Ocean. At the Mouth it is a Mile broad; *John Berros*, a *Spaniard*, aſſerts, that it ſprings out of the Lake of *Gagoa*, but *Nub.* who knew more than he of it, proves clearly that it ariſeth in *Ethiopia* with the *Nile*, and ſhews what People lived upon it from the Ocean to *Numidia*. The Weſtern Ocean runs up into it 60 Leagues, but it is peſtered with Banks of Sand and Gravel, ſo that it cannot be ſailed on. About 150 Leagues from its Mouth, it has a Cataract or great Fall from the Rocks; ſo that a Man may walk dry under the Stream of it. From the 15th of *June*, this and the *Gamba* overflow for 40 Days as the *Nile* doth, and the ſame time decreaſing, which makes the Land between them wonderfully Fruitful, even like to *Egypt*; yet it will not Ripen Wheat, Rice, Barley, or Grapes, but wants no Pulſe or Millet, and *Guinea*-Wheat, a wonderful Grain. It Rains every day at Noon between the latter End of *October* and *July*, with frequent Thunder and Lightning. This River is the moſt Northern Bounds of the *Negroes. Pory.* The ſame with the *Niger. Hackl. T.* 2. *Part* 2. *p.*17.

7. *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBEA*, a ſmall Kingdom on the River ſo named, but bordering in ſome places on the *Atlantick*. In thoſe Parts very Pleaſant, the Trees always flouriſhing, the Air very hot; in other Parts of the ſame Nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good ſtore of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Deſtitute of Salt, but what they buy of Foreign Merchants at exceſſive Rates; and ſmall ſtore of Horſes. Well watered by a Branch alſo of the River *Niger*, and many Wells of purpoſe made to receive ſuch Waters as by Artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The People courteous, rich, and pleaſant, ſpending whole days and nights in Singing and Dancing. Their Food, Fleſh, Butter, Milk, and Fiſh, which they mingle together, and make it neither Toothſome nor Wholeſome. The chief Towns, 1. *Tombuto*, which gives Name to this Kingdom, ſituate about 12 Miles from a Branch of the *Niger*, and 400 *French* Leagues from *Morocco* to the South; and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610th year of their *Hegira*, *Anno Chriſti* 1201. The Houſes all of Mud and Thatch, except one fair Church, and the King's Palace, both of Lime and Stone; built by a *Granada* Mooriſh Architect. It weaveth Linnen and Cotton, and hath ſome Cloth brought out of *Europe*. It is inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great Trade betwixt this and *Feſſe*, and are become very Rich. They want nothing but Salt, which is very Dear, being brought from *Tagaza*, 500 miles through the Deſarts. The King is the Richeſt Prince in *Africa*, and has 3000 Horſe and a great Body of Foot in Pay: Their Horſe come from *Barbary*. The King's Hatred to the Jews, ſuffers none of them to Trade there; they prize the Books and Learned Men that come from *Barbary*, highly. They uſe Gold for Money, but without any Stamp, *Leo African. p.* 287. *Cabra* is the Port of this City, upon the *Niger*. In later Times, the Kingdom of *Tombuto* was conquered by the King of *Gago*. About the year 1590. it was conquered by the King of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*, who ſent one *Alcaide-Hamode*, a Moor, for that end, with 1700 Men, the greateſt part of which periſhed in the Deſarts for want of Water; yet they that eſcaped took *Gago* and *Tombuto*, and forced the latter to pay 60 Quintals of Gold for a yearly Tribute: In 1594 there came from hence to *Morocco* 30 Mules laden with Gold, and the King was ſending 300 Men and a Viceroy, which were thought enough to conquer all the Lands of the *Negroes*, they having nothing to defend themſelves but poiſoned Poles and Arrows; ſo that a handful of the *Moors* beat an innumerable Number of them, as *Daſſel* an *Engliſh* Man wrote into *England. Hackl. p.* 192. *T.*2. 2. *Gago*, the Reſidence of the King, large, without Walls, the Buildings very poor and mean, except ſuch as belong unto the King, or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their Wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſive Dear. The Town about 400 miles diſtant from *Tombuto*, ſituate in a fruitful Country, for Rice, Fruits, and Fleſh, and well repleniſhed with freſh Water. They have a Market for Slaves, which are ſold at 15 Ducats apiece if young. The King in Perſon decideth Controverſies between his Subjects. The Trade here is wonderful great, a *Barbary* Horſe is ſold for 10 Ducats, and an Ell of Scarlet for 30. and Salt much dearer. The People of this Kingdom are either Shepherds or Husbandmen, who in Winter wear Beaſts Skins, and in Summer go Naked. Very Ignorant and Unlearned, not one in 100 miles being able to Write or Read, and they pay exceſſive Taxes to the King, *Leo African. p.*289. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building than the other two. This is the Port of *Tombuto* upon the *Niger*, ſeated 12 miles from it, where all that paſs to *Guinea* and *Melli*, imbark, and to which many *Negroes* reſort for Trade. The King of *Tombuto* has here a Judge to end all Controverſies. The Town is large, but the People are ſilly, by reaſon of their mixing Fiſh, Fleſh, Milk, and Butter, in their Diet; which is alſo uſed at *Tombuto*, *Leo African. p.* 288.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the Eaſt of *Tombutum*, is a ſpacious and fruitful Province, ſituate all along on a Branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, eſpecially in Corn, Cattel, and Cotton-Wool: The People generally very wealthy; of greater Wit, Civility, and Induſtry, than the reſt of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 600 Families; furniſhed with many Temples, Prieſts, and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which thoſe of this Country did firſt unhappily admit of. This the Seat-Royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto Strangers; but Homagers and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA*, ſituate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but ſo, that it bordereth in one place on the Ocean alſo; is a wealthy Country; but hath neither Town or Caſtle in it, except that wherein the King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal alſo to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the Reſidence alſo of their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants; of which the Prieſts and Doctors are apparell'd in white, but all the reſt in black or blue Cotton. The People have great Traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*, and though made very rich by the overflowings of the *Niger*, and the

wealth of the Country, they have great ſtore of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and ſelling at Home they uſe Iron-Money. This Country was called by the Ancients *Autolatæ*, *Ichthyophagi*, and by *Pliny*, *Autoles*. The Coaſters at this day live moſtly of Fiſh; the reſt eat Lizards, or any other Vermin. During the Summer they keep in all Day, and Travel and Labour in the Night, to avoid the ſcorching of the Sun; ſo little fond of their Children, that they ſell them for Slaves, believing them more happy elſewhere. They have no Trees, and little Corn, which is often devoured by the *Locuſts*, which ſwarm here. The People on the contrary kill and dry them for Food, which is the common practice of all Countries they afflict, *Pory p.* 42. *Leo Africanus, p.* 286. ſaith, This Nation from North to South, was 500 miles; and from Eaſt to Weſt, on the *Niger* 250. It yeilds, Barly, Rice, Cattel, Fiſh, and Cotton in abundance: no Fruit but Dates. This Kingdom gave the Name of *Guinea* to that which lies more South, when it came to be diſcovered by the *Portugueſe*.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the Eaſt of the former Provinces; of the ſame length, and naturally well fenced with lofty Mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick ſet with Villages, in which dwell their Husbandmen and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all ſorts of Cattel, as alſo great quantities of Rice and Pulſe: the People very Induſtrious and good Artificers. Their Principal Town is called *Guber* alſo, a Town of 6000 Families; the uſual Reſidence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in Manufactures.

12. *GIALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The People whereof are of ſuch admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an Horſe when he is in his full Gallop, ſtand in the Saddle when he runneth faſteſt, turn themſelves about upon his Back, and ſuddenly down. Of their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin*, one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil Wars, in the year 1489. went for Aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his Converſion to the *Chriſtian* Faith. But being ſhamefully murdered by *Petro de Vaz*, the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Chriſtianity* in theſe Parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-coaſt Country, extended from *Sierra Leona* (ſo called from the Lyon-like roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the 10th Degree of *Longitude*, to the Borders of *Benin* in the 30th. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this Name the whole Sea-coaſt of *Africk* from Cape *Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Anteroſa*, to *Angola* and *Congo*, incluſively, in the Lower *Æthiopia*. But take it in the proper Senſe, as before-limited, and we ſhall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barly, Cotton-Wool, and a ſort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegneta*, and we *Guinea-Pepper*, of double the Efficacy of the Pepper which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be ſold by the King of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian*-trade ſhould be diſcontinued. Well ſtored with Sheep and Poultry, and of Dates good plenty. All other Fruits which they want, or care for, are brought hither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut, doth afford a moſt excellent Liquor, more pleaſant, ſtrong, and nouriſhing than the choiceſt Wines, which they drink of in their great Feaſts, even to Drunkenneſs. The People of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their Habit as their Manners; yet amongſt many barbarous Cuſtoms they have one moſt commendable, which is the breeding of their Maidens. When Marriageable, they place them in a houſe ſevered from the reſt of their Cities, like a Cloyſter or Monaſtery, where for a ſpace they are trained up by ſome old Man of beſt Eſtimation. At the Years end they are brought out well Apparrelled, with Muſick and Dances; where the young Men pleaſe themſelves in the Choice of their Wives: for whom having bargained with their Parents, they ſatisfie the old Man for his Care and Pains in their Education. They keep one day of Reſt weekly, but therein differ from all Nations of the World beſides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tueſday*. Diſtracted into as many Kingdoms as great Tribes or Families; the Kings thereof ſubordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a Subjection to the King of *Mandinga*. The Multitude of their Kings is the Occaſion of frequent and very often unjuſt Wars amongſt them, and all the Priſoners they take they ſell to the *European* Merchants for Slaves; and ſome times make Wars for no other cauſe but to take their Neighbours Subjects, and ſell them for Merchandizes, who for the moſt part revenge the Injury in the ſame manner, and ſell the Priſoners to the ſame Ship that bought of the Agreſſor; ſo that it is a wonder the Country is not laid deſolate. Places of moſt Note, 1. *Songus*, the Principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 Leagues diſtant from the Cape of *Palmes*. 2. *Budomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom ſo called. 3. *Uxoo*, in the Centre of all the Country. 4. *Mina*, a ſtrong hold of the *Portugals*, ſituate near the Cape called *Cabo de trois pontas*, the Three Pointed Cape; named ſometimes alſo *St. George de Mina*, by the Name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the Mines of Gold, which they hoped to find there: By which, and by the Fort of *Arquin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negroes*, they command all the Countries, which they call by the Name of *Guinea*. This Town was not built until the Year 1486. in the beginning of the Reign of *John* the Second, though the Diſcovery of theſe Coaſts had been made before, *Anno* 1452. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, Son of *John* the Firſt. By whoſe Encouragement the *Portugueze* did firſt employ themſelves in Foreign Diſcoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this Interval, the *Portugals* being more covetous of new Diſcoveries, than of fortifying and ſecuring the Old, gave opportunity to the *Caſtilians* to look after this Country, who having took a view of it in the year 1477. purſued the Enterprize the next year with a Fleet of 35 Ships, under the Command of *Petro de Cobides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold; but in the year 1479. by an Agreement or Capitulation between thoſe Princes, the Trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon diſcovering the Iſle of *St. George*, and finding it a fit Place to ſecure and command the reſt, built in it the ſtrong Fort or Caſtle of *Mina*, which before we ſpoke of. This Caſtle was firſt built, as is pretended, by the *French*, in 1383. but being forced to leave it, the *Portugueze*, in 1482. built another in the ſame Place, which continued in their hands till the year 1637. when the *Hollanders* took it from them: By this Caſtle in 1556. was a great Town, called by the *Negroes Dondou*. The Caſtle ſtands about five Leagues to the Eaſt of the Cape *de Tres pontas*. *Hackl. To.* 2. *Part* 2. *p.* 38.

14. *BENIN* lieth directly Eaſt of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it; the King whereof is ſaid to have 600 Wives, with all which twice a Year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuſe not the Name) have moſt of them 80 Wives, ſome more; He that is Pooreſt 10 or 12, and the more the merrier. The People hereof do cut and raze their Skins with three Lines drawn to the Navil, eſteeming it neceſſary to Salvation. They uſe all, both Men and Women, to go Naked till they are Married; and then to be Cloathed only from the Waſte to the Knees; ſo that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in theſe Parts, he had in ſome meaſure had his deſire: For he, among other ſtrange Plots in his *Utopian* Commonwealth, telleth us, how it is the Cuſtom for ſome Reverend Old Sire to bring in Naked the young Man, and ſome Hoary Old Matron to preſent Naked the young Woman, between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, ſaith he, in buying a Horſe, the Chapman not only vieweth his Naked Carcaſs, but taketh off all his Trappings and Saddle, leſt under

them ſome Blain or Ulcer might be hidden: Why then in chuſing of a Wiſe ſhould we take one, of whom we ſee no more than the Face, (*unius Palmæ ſpatium*) and perhaps ſcarce that? The Learned and Ingenious Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he diſlike of Marriages made upon ſuch Uncertainties, yet he would have this Diſcovery made by ſome Friends of the Parties, not by them themſelves; it being, as he ſaith, very inconvenient, that after a plain and familiar Sight of each others Perſon, there ſhould be a Refuſal on either ſide. But theſe new Projects I refer to your modeſt Cenſures.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well-peopled Country, but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the ſame Name with the Country, where the King reſideth, which is ſomewhat better than the reſt, well Traded and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of ſo great Revenues, that he keepeth ſeven thouſand Archers, and five hundred Horſe in continual pay; but Homager and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*. To the South is a Nation rich in Gold, but they were then much laid at by the King of *Tombuto*, which hindred their Trade; but the King of *Gagoa* lent him Aſſiſtance againſt the King of *Borneo*, who preſſed him at the ſame time, *Leo African. p.* 292. Their Slaves carry their Goods.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Country on the Weſt of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Diſtinguiſhed equally in a manner into Hills and Valleys: the Hills inhabited by Neat-herds and Shepherds, breeding great Flocks and Herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other Fruits to us unknown; the Valleys repleniſhed with many Market-Towns, and as full of Corn. The People are of no Religion, but live like Beaſts; without Propriety ſo much as in their Wives, or Children: Nor are they differenced by Names, as in other Places, but by ſome Mark upon their Bodies: Which though it ſeem ſtrange to us of this preſent Age, yet was it thus in part with our *Saxon Anceſtors*. Whence have we elſe the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Grey*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or that of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curl*, *Criſp*, and others, but from ſuch Originals? Not to ſay any thing of the names of Trades and Occupations, ſo familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borneo*, where the King reſideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay 3000 Horſe, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is ſaid to have no other Revenue, than what he getteth by ſtrong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, thoſe Kings muſt needs be good Warriours, and have great ſucceſs in their Undertakings: It being alſo ſaid of theſe Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Horſes, all the Diſhes, Cups, and Platters, which they eat or drink in, yea the very Chains for his Dogs, were of the fineſt Gold.

17. *GAOGA* lieth betwixt *Borneo*, and the Deſarts of *Nubia*: the Country almoſt ſquare, each ſide thereof extended 500 miles. The People ignorant, rude, uncivil, but eſpecially thoſe which dwell in the Mountains; their Houſes built moſt of Boughs and Leaſs, which once dry, eaſily take Fire; but the beſt is, they are ſoon repaired: their greateſt wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep moſt tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into ſubjection by a *Negro* Slave, who having ſlain his Maſter, by the help of his Wealth grew ſtrong enough to incroach on his Neighbours; and ſelling ſuch Captives as he took for Horſes of *Egypt*, became King of *Gaoga*; his Son, Brother, and Grandſon ſucceeded him. The Name of the laſt was *Homara*, who made a League with the Soldan of *Egypt*. He was a great Lover of the *Mahometans*, and they failed not to bring him rich Preſents, which he returned in greater and more valuable Acknowledgments, *Leo African. p.* 294. and in fine, very gracious with the *Mamaluck* Sultans. His Succeſſors have ſince ſo enlarged their Territories, that they are ſecond unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the Weſt *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eaſtward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire. So called from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and potent People of this Tract, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; the great Lake anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A diſtinct People from thoſe of the ſame name, dwelling on the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Avalites*, who from the ſhortneſs of their Stature paſſed in account for *Pygmies*: Νύϐαι Πυγμαῖοι, ſaith *Heſychius* an old Grammarian; theſe being a ſtrong and potent Nation, and well skilled in Wars. Inſomuch, as *Cyriachus*, once a King hereof, underſtanding of ſome preſſures laid upon the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, is ſaid to have raiſed 100000 Horſe for their Aid and Succour; but by the perſwaſions of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Country was wholly Chriſtian, and had been ſo from the very days of the Apoſtles; but are now fallen off again to their former Idolatries, or become Mahometans, for want of Miniſters to inſtruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the Writer of the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory, that at his being in the Court of the *Abaſſine* Emperor, there came Ambaſſadors out of *Nubia*, to intreat a ſupply of Paſtors to inſtruct their Nation, and repair Chriſtianity amongſt them; but were Unchriſtianly rejected. The *Nubian* Geographer, *p.* 15. *Part* 4. of the firſt Climate, ſaith, In this Country is alſo ſeen the Separation of the two *Niles*, which from the South do paſs through our Country, paſſing Northward: Upon the Banks of the Eaſtern *Nile* are moſt of the Cities of *Egypt* built, or within its Iſland. The Weſtern *Nile* (the *Niger*) flows from the Eaſt to the moſt Weſtern part of *Africa*, and upon that Branch of the *Nile* are all or at leaſt the principal Places of *Nigritia*. This Kingdom lies extended ſo far upon the *Nile* from North to South, that it cannot be Travelled by the Banks of the *Nile* in leſs than two Months. *Nub. p.* 17. The Reaſon is, the vaſt windings of the *Nile* in *Nubia*. This Kingdom is bounded to the North by the Mountain *Genbita*, to the Eaſt and South it had in his time *Æthiopia*, or *Habaſcia*, and on the Weſt *Vantara*, and towards the North the Kingdom of *Tagua*; but *Æthiopia* is reduced ſince into a much leſs compaſs; all its Northern Provinces from *Bugia* to Port *Ercoco* or *Arkiko* having defected from it, and that Port too being now in the hands of the *Turks*.

Here is a Poiſon in this Country, of which the Tenth part of a Grain will diſpatch a Man in a quarter of an Hour, and is ſold for Ten Ducats an Ounce: the Cuſtom for which unto the King, is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to ſay, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; ſome ſtore of Gold, and other Metals. The Country naturally Sandy, but well refreſhed with Lakes and Rivers which do much enrich it, inſomuch as the People generally are very wealthy, and manage a great Trade with the Merchants of *Cairo* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 Families, but their Houſes built of nothing but Thatch and Mortar. In other parts, eſpecially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages, few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, beſides theſe in *Guinea* but of leſſer Note; as 19. *BITO.* 20. *TEMIANO.* 21. *ZEGZEG.* This Kingdom lies on the S. of the *Niger*, bounded to the W. by *Guber*, to the E. by *Zanfara*, to the N. by *Caſana*, and to the S. by *Benin*; ſome parts of it are plain, and the reſt Mountainous: the firſt of it are exceſſive hot, and the later are very cold. The Fields are well Watered and Fruitful, and the People Trade much with the neighbour Nations; they had a King who was conquered, and ſlain by the King of *Tombuto*, *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 292. 22. *ZANFARA.* This Kingdom is bounded to the W. by *Zegzeg*, to the N. by *Gangara*, cut off by the *Niger*, to the S. by *Benin* and *Biafara*; the People are baſe and rude, and exceſſive black: To this place *Iſchia* the victorious *Mahometan* King of *Tombuto*, puſhed his Conqueſts, *Leo Africanus*, *p.* 292. This Kingdom borders to the Eaſt. on *Nubia*. 23. *GOTHAN.* 24. *MEDRA.* This Kingdom lies in the middle of *Africa*, between 5 and 10 Degrees of N. Lat. The People of which are abominable Sorcerers. *Pory.* 25. *DAUM.* This ſmall City and Kingdom lies on the Eaſtern ſide of *Guinea*, in *Africa*, having the Kingdom of *Arda* to the S. and *Guber* to the N. Of which there is nothing to be ſpoken, but of their Poverty or Riches, Bleſſings or Curſes, common to them with the reſt of theſe Nations, and therefore I purpoſely omit them.

The Country, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Lybia Interior*, inhabited beſides the *Nubæ*, and *Nigritæ* ſpoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the Hill *Arvater*, the *Aroncæ*, near the Hill *Arangus*, the *Agarginæ*, *Xylinces*, and *Alchalinces*, *Æthiopick* Nations. Nor much conſiderable in the buſineſs of former times; not much diſcovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a Superſtitious Zeal to propagate their Sect, firſt opened the way into theſe Countries; the People then living like brute Beaſts, without King, Law, or any form of Government, ſcarce knowing how to ſow their Lands, clad in the Skins of as very Beaſts as themſelves, and challenging no propriety in Wives or Children. Firſt conquered by *Joſeph* King of *Morocco* of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *Five Nations* of *Lybia Deſerta*, who divided them into Fifteen parts, every one of thoſe five Nations poſſeſſing three of them. One of the Kings of theſe *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being ſlain by *Abuaci Iſchia*, General of his Forces, and the reſt terrified with that blow, *Anno* 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long loſt Liberty, and inſtituted divers Kings of their own. Amongſt them, *Iſchia* was moſt deſervedly made King of *Tombutum*, who managing his Affair ſo well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfara*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenæoa*, *Gamben*, and *Caſena*, which he made his Tributaries. So that his Succeſſors are now the greateſt of thoſe five Kings, who have the ſupream Power over all the reſt. But yet before the end of that Century, his Succeſſors were again reduced under the obedience of the Kings of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*; and I believe this Kingdom is ſtill ſubject to them, and Governed by a Vice-Roy. This Conqueſt happened in 1590. *Hackluit. To.* 2. *p.* 192. The other four, 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realm of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*; 2. the King of *Borneo*, the only one that is deſcended of the *Libyan* Race, in greatneſs of Command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. the King of *Gualata*, whoſe Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein Abſolute and Supream; and 4. the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the reſt of theſe Provinces.

But becauſe the greateſt Power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who poſſibly enough may in ſhort time bring all the reſt under his Command, we will take a more particular view of his Eſtate, affirmed to be the richeſt Prince in theſe parts of *Africk*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, ſome of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him, they kneel on both their Knees, and bowing their Heads unto the ground, caſt Sand over their Shoulders and upon their Head, going forward ſtill upon their Knees. His Court he keeps in a Royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horſe, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bows and empoiſoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to Trade in his Kingdoms, and confiſcateth the Goods of all ſuch of his Subjects as hold Traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law; and liberal in ſtipends to the Doctors and Profeſſors of it. Of greater Power than any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Haboſſine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had ſome hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire ſix Months Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*, yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being ſince that time in as eminent Power, as ever in any times before. I think the Slaves lately returned from *Barbary*, do ſay, that at this day *Tombuto* doth pay Tribute and ſubmit to a Governour ſent by the King of *Morocco*; but I have none of their Relations now by me.

And ſo much for *TERRA NIGRATARUM*.

OF
ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Red Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the Weſt with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia* in the Land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with *Egypt*, and *Libya Marmarica*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was firſt called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words Αἴθω, ſignifying to burn, and ὤψ a *Countenance*; becauſe the violent Heats of the Sun had ſo ſcorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The Additions of *Sub Egypto*, *Superior* and *Inferior*, ſerve only to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lyeth further off from *Egypt*, on the outſide of this. It is called alſo *Regnum Abyſſinorum*, from the *Abaſeni*, or *Abyſſini*, a People of *Arabia Felix*; who paſſed over the *Red Sea*, (not above ſeven Miles broad in the narroweſt place) came and ſetled here. And in the Scripture it is ſtiled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the Son of *Mizraim*, who firſt planted it, as hath been proved by many ſtrong and concluded Arguments in our *General Preface*.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South Parallel of ſeven Degrees, where it meeteth with ſome part of the other *Æthiopia*, to the Northern end of the Iſle of *Meroe*, ſituate under the fifth *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this accompt it fall ſhort of the dimenſions aſſigned by ſome, who extended it from one Tropick unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no leſs than 1500 Miles; the breadth about half as much: the whole circumference amounting to 4300 Miles. Yet ſo, that all this vaſt Tract of Ground is not to be underſtood of that part of the Country which is under the Command of the *Abaſſine* Emperour, commonly, but miſtakenly called *Preſter John*: but of the whole Country of *Æthiopia*, as before limited and extended, containing beſides his Eſtate, the Kingdom of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two laſt are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*. The Iſle of *Meroe* in the

North is poſſeſſed by *Mahometans*, the moſt bitter Enemies of this King: all on the Weſt of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-eaſt of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an Idolatrous and Man-eating Nation, ſubject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coaſts of the *Red Sea*, as well within the *Streigths* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the Port of *Erocco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no ſubjection unto his Commands, but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adea*, before-mentioned.

But taking in the largeſt ſignification and extent hereof (according unto which we muſt here deſcribe it) it comprehendeth the three Countries called antiently *Æthiopia ſub Egypto*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera.* Of theſe, the two laſt are by ſome reckoned but as parts of the firſt; though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For paſt all doubt the *Troglodites* were originally an *Arabian* People, ſo called *quia* τρώγλας *ſubeunt*, from their living in Caves and Dens, in which reſpect their part of this Country had the name of *Arabia Trogloditica*, in *Dioſcorides*, and ſome others of Ancient Writers. Of theſe it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Maſters of any Wealth, and their Speech was rather a gnaſhing of the Teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nullarum opum Domini ſunt* Trogloditæ, *ſtrident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their Houſes, they were (ſaith he) no better than Caves, and their Food than Serpents. With whom concurreth *Pliny* alſo for their dwelling in Caves, and conſequently for the reaſon of the name, ſaying poſitively *Trogloditæ ſpeluncas excavant*, called for the ſame reaſon in the Holy Scripture, 2 *Chron*, 12. 3. by the name of *Succhæi*, the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not only ſignifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and ſo Tranſlated *Pſal.* 10. *v.* 9. and *Job* 38. *v.* 40. As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the Southern parts in the time of *Ptolemy*, it took that name from the abundance of Cinnamon, which was then growing in it; now not a Tree of it to be found in all this Country, as the *Portugals*, who have look'd narrowly for it, have affirm'd unto us Shipp'd at *Moſylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolemy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence tranſported into *Egypt*, and other Countries, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *Portus Moſylitus quo* Cinnamomus *devehitur*: the Spice in ſome Authors being called *Moſulum*, by the name of the Town. ἄριστον ϗ τὸ λεγόμενον Μόσυλον, τὸ ἀπὸ Μοσύλου πόλεως. Of Cinnamon the beſt is that which is call'd *Moſulon*, becauſe brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, ſaith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract *de Facultatibus Ciborum.* As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner Bark of a Tree as big as an Olive, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three Years is renewed, and ſtripped off again. Some think it came firſt from the *Sinæ*, or the Country which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was ſo called, *quaſi Sina Amomum*, the *Amomum* of the *Sinæ*: *Amomum* being the name of a ſweet Perfume growing in *Aſſyria* and *Armenia*: But then it ſhould be written *Cinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*; yet to give the greater credit to the former Opinion, they of *Ormus* called it *Bar-Chinæ*, or the Wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it ſelf; the People of it in old times were ſaid to have been great Aſtrologers; the firſt Ordainers alſo of Sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were alſo noted to be very good Archers, and to draw the longeſt and ſtrongeſt Bows of any Nation: the *Perſian* Bow (though thoſe the greateſt of all *Aſia*) being only three Cubits long; but theſe of *Æthiopia* four. *Utuntur etiam* Æthiopes *quatuor Cubitorum arcubus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is ſaid alſo by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their Arrows ſmall, but ſtrong, for the moſt part poiſoned; *Æthiopum geminata venenis vulnera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to ſpend our time too much upon theſe particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two ſtrange things of this Country: 1. That the Air and Ground are ſo parching hot, that the People not only dare not go out of doors without Shooes but that they roaſt their Meat alſo by ſetting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a *Lake* whoſe Waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding Salt and unpleaſing; but at all other times moſt ſweet and delicate to the Palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, laid together, is but meanly populous, the diſtemperature of the Climate, and the dry barrenneſs of the ground, not admitting a mulitude. For this cauſe *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a Leopard's Skin, the diſtance of whoſe Spots ſheweth the diſperſedneſs of the Towns and Habitations in thoſe torrid Countries. A Country ſcarce in Wheat, but ſufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barley, Beans, Peaſe, and the like: they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all ſorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally there is no Country under Heaven fitter for increaſe of Plants, and living Creatures, if Induſtry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are deſtitute of many neceſſary things, which otherwiſe the natural Commodities of the Country would ſupply them with. For they have here great ſtore of Flax, but make no Cloth; plenty of Vines, yet make no Wine, except it be to ſerve the Palaces of the King and Patriarch; abundance of Sugar-Canes, and Mines of Iron, but know not how to make uſe of either unto any advantage: Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig Channels or Trenches, to derive their Waters to the reſt of the Land which want them, thoſe Rivers almoſt choaked with Fiſh, their Woods crammed with Veniſon, which they trouble not themſelves to catch.

By this we may conjecture ſomewhat of the People alſo; Lazy, and given unto their eaſe; ill cloathed, and not much better houſed; extreamly inclined to Barbariſm, deſtitute of all Learning; not to be credited unleſs they ſwear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a Smith equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting only their King himſelf, who is always of a white complexion; a wonderful Prerogative, if true. This Blackneſs of their Bodies, by the Poet, attributed to the burning of the World by *Phaeton*.

Sanguine tum credunt in corpora ſumma vocato,
Æthiopum *populos nigrum traxiſſe colorem.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* thus,

Their Blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The *Æthiopians* grew ſo black and ſwart.

But the true cauſe hereof, whatſoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt made known in this Country by the Eunuch of Queen *Candice*, who was Baptized by *Philip* the Evangeliſt, and one of the Seven; more generally embraced by the Pains and Preaching of S. *Matthew* the Apoſtle hereof, but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the Reign of *Abraham*, *Anno* 470. who in his Life entituled himſelf the Defender and Propagator of the Religion of *CHRIST*, and after his Death was generally Honoured as a Saint. Suppreſſed in part by the coming in of the *Abaſſines* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more univerſally received than in former times, in the Reign of *David* King of the *Axumite Æthiopians*; who in a War againſt *Dunmus* King of the *Homerites* in *Arabia Felix*, ſolemnly vowed to the God of the *Chriſtians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the Victory; and ſo accordingly he did, ſending his Ambaſſadors to the Emperor *Juſtinian*, for ſome Biſhops and other learned Men to inſtruct his People. The particulars of thoſe Opinions wherewith they have ſince corrupted the Purity of the true Religion, I find thus Regiſtred. 1. They uſe to Circumciſe their

Children, both Males and Females. 2. They baptize the Males 40. and the Females 18 days after their *Circumciſion.* 3. After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to ſpit till Sun-ſet. 4. They profeſs but *one Nature* and *one Will* in CHRIST. 5. They accept only the three firſt General Councils. 6. Their *Prieſts* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg. 7. They *baptize* themſelves every *Epiphany* day in *Lakes* and *Ponds*, becauſe that day they ſuppoſe *Chriſt* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan.* 8. They eat not of thoſe Beaſts, which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean.* 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewiſh Sabbath*, equally ſolemn with the *Lords Day.* 10. They adminiſter the *Euchariſt* to Infants preſently after Baptiſm. 11. They teach that the Reaſonable Soul of Man is deriv'd from their Parents by *ſeminal Propagations.* 12. That Infants *dying unbaptized*, are ſanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Euchariſt* received by the Mother after her *Conception.* And finally, they ſhew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they ſay, by the Apoſtles at *Jeruſalem* for that purpoſe; the Contents whereof they obſerve moſt ſolemnly. Theſe are the moſt material Points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique* Church: And there are other Points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, *viz.* 1. Adminiſtring in *both kinds.* 2. Without either *Elevation*, or *Reſervation.* 3. Rejecting maſſie Images; and 4. *Extreme* Unction. 5. Allowing the firſt marriages to their Prieſts and Biſhops. And 6. In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*; who to the buſineſs of theſe Churches is a very ſtranger, and ſo hath been from the very firſt foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and tranſlated into *Latine* by *Piſanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna* as they called him) of theſe *Abaſſine* Churches, was in thoſe times ſubordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacy by the Fathers, which there were aſſembled; and conſtantly ever ſince approved and practiſed by theſe Churches; in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriarch, by an ancient priviledge belongeth the ſeventh place in the *Seſſions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbiſhop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interpoſing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem.* Elected by the *Abaſſine* Monks of S. *Anthony*'s Order remaining in *Jeruſalem*, and confirmed by the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*, (of which Order, and of whoſe Juriſdiction he muſt always be) he is ſent into this Country to take his Charge; where in ſome points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal Privilege with the Emperour himſelf; and in *Spiritual*, hath the ſole Power of excommunicating an obſtinate Sinner. All other *Eccleſiaſtical* Dignities, from the Biſhoprick to the loweſt Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour only.

The Principal Mountains of it, in the former time, had the names of 1. *Prinotus*, 2. *Iſius*, 3. *Monodactylus*, 4. *Gaurus*, and 5. *Mons Satyrorum*; all of them in that part which was called *Trogloditica*: 6. *Garbale*, 7. *Elephas*, and 8. *Maſte*; in the Iſle of *Meroe*: the reſt of the Country flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Aſtapus*, (now *Albanni*) ariſing out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena.* 2. *Aſtaborus*, now *Tacaſſie*; both falling into the River *Nilus.* 3. *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whoſe Spring unprofitably ſought for in the elder times, is now ſaid to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiophia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*; whence paſſing through ſpacious *Deſarts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at laſt entreth into this. Here in ſome places ſtrugling amongſt broken Rocks, and leſs free paſſages, he falleth with ſuch a wonderful noiſe into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Perſians* near one of theſe *Cataracts*, (ſo they call thoſe huge falls of his) were ſo dulled and deafned with the noiſe, that they were fain to abandon their Habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring People, but the very Hills do ſeem to tremble at the noiſe it maketh. Of which thus the Poet.

Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albeſcit fluctibus amnis.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words;

The noiſe the mountains ſhakes, who roar for ſpite,
To ſee th' unvanquiſh'd Waves cloath'd all in white.

Of the *Cataracts* here are two moſt noted: the one called *Cateractes Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Philæ*, and *Pſelcis*, *Æthiopian* Cities; the other called *Cateractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the laſt City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongſt the Hills. And yet as terrible as theſe Falls are ſuppoſed to be, one may divers times ſee the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two perſons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long toſſed in the water, a great diſtance off, as if they had been ſhot out of an *Engine.* Nor is he of ſuch quiet paſſage in the open Countreys, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels, to receive his Waters; which if not curbed and leſſened by ſuch ways as theſe, might by ſome ſudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in reſpect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for a long time to the *Abaſſine* Emperours an annual Tribute: Which when the *Great Turk*, ſuppoſing it a needleſs charge, had once denyed; this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams: whereby the water fell ſo violently and ſo faſt into *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not only glad to continue Tribute, but to give them great Sums of Money to make up their Works. But others ſay, that this Acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptain* Kings, not ſo much for keeping up the Waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abaſſine* Emperours ſhould divert the Stream, and ſo deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are alſo ſaid to be ſome *Lakes* of that poyſonous nature, that whoſoever drinketh of them doth either immediately fall mad, or elſe is troubled for long time with continual *drowſineſs*, of which thus *Ovid.*

Æthiopeſque Lacus; quos ſiquis faucibus hauſit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate ſoporem.

Which may be paraphraſed in theſe Words:

Who doth not know the Æthiopian *Lake?*
Of which whoever drinks, his thirſt to ſlake,
Either grows mad, *or doth his ſoul oppreſs*
With an unheard of drowſineſs.

To look upon the State as it ſtood in the former times we find in it beſides the *Lakes* and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bays; that is to ſay, 1. *Sinus Adulicus*, 2. *Sinus Avalites*, and 3. *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two laſt neighboured by the now Countreys of *Adel* and *Melinde.* Havens of note and Rodes for ſhipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1. *Bathus*, or the deep Haven; 2. *Dioſcorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; 3. *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*; 4. *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Goſpel-Port*, or the Port of good News; and 5. *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the ſame near adjoyning to it. For other Promontories which in ſo long a tract of Sea muſt needs be many; the Principal were, 1. *Baſium*, 2. *Mnemium*, 3. *Dimetris*, 4. *Aſpis*, 5. *Ara Ameris*, 6. *Colobon*, 7. the Promontory of *Satun*, 8. *Moſylon*, with a noted Empory of the ſame name; 9. *Aromata* near another well frequented Empory of the ſame name alſo; and 10. that of *Noticornu.* Then for the Towns of greateſt Trading, beſides thoſe laſt mentioned, we have, 1. *Avalites*, 2. *Malao*, 3. *Mundi*, 4. *Cube*, and 5. *Acane* in the Bay of *Avalites*, 6. *Opone*, in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7. *Eſſina*, on the South of the *Æquinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongſt many others, the names of 1. *Epitherias*, by *Ptolemy* called *Ptolemais Ferarum*. 2. *Adulis*; and 3. *Avalites*; giving names unto their ſeveral Bays. 4. *Rapta*, the *Metropolis* of that part of this Country which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the ſhores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is ſituate, ſo they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*. 5. *Meroe*, the chief City of the Iſle ſo called; 6. *Sabath*, in the Bay of *Adulis*, which poſſibly might be ſome Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*. 7. *Coloe*, by *Pliny* called *Tolen*, not far from the great *Lake* ſo named. 8. *Cambuſis*, by *Ptolemy*, called *Cambyſis Ærarum*, from ſome Treaſures laid up here by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian*, in his invaſion of this Country. 9. *Auxumi*, the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a moſt potent people of theſe parts, and the Seat-Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings. 10. *Napata*, as *Ptolemy*; but by moſt others called *Tanape*: of old the reſidence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, ſacked and ruined by *Petronius*, Preſident of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predeceſſor, I believe, of her whoſe *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranſacked and waſted *Egypt* with Fire and Sword; *Petronius*, Lieutenant to *Auguſtus*, drave them home, harraſſed the whole Country, put this City to the ſpoil; and to prevent the like Inroads, fortified the Frontiers of his *Province*. 11. *Philæ*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, Garriſoned, by the *Romans* till the time of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned. Of ſome of theſe, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter, in the ſurvey of ſome of theſe particular Provinces, into which this Country ſtands divided at this preſent time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are ſaid to make up 70 Kingdoms; moſt of them ſubject to the *Abaſſine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1. *Gaugere*, 2. *Tigremaon*, 3. *Angote*, 4. *Amma*, 5. *Damut*, 6. *Goijami*, 7. *Bagamedrum*, 8. *Barnagaſſum*, 9. *Adel*, 10. *Adea*, 11. *Danſali*, 12. *Dobas*, 13. *Fatigar*, 14. *Xoa*, 15. *Barus*. Concerning which I muſt premiſe, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times diſagreeing, ſometimes falſe: So that I muſt profeſs my ſelf to be leſs ſatisfied in the deſcription of this Country, than in any of the reſt which have gone before. Such as it is, I here preſent it to the Reader.

1. GUAGERE.

GUAGERE containeth only the Iſland of *Meroe*, an Iſland of much note and fame among the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Aſtaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Country. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125. abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, Ivory, Precious Stones, and an excellent kind of *Mineral* Salt. Well ſtored with moſt ſorts of Beaſts, both tame and wild, and of the laſt ſort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants, and Dragons. All the latter Travellers, to a Man, are agreed, that the *Nile* makes no Iſland, in *Æthiopia*, or *Nubia*.

The people are of the ſame nature and complexion with the reſt: *Mahometans* by Religion, and the profeſſed Enemies of the *Abaſſine* Emperour; againſt whom they do not only defend themſelves, by the advantages and benefit of their ſituation, but confederating with the *Turks* and *Arabians*, fall many times with great Forces into his Dominions. It is ſaid by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Iſland, that twice a year, *viz.* when the Sun is in the 16 degree of *Taurus*, and the 14 of *Leo*, they have the Sun ſo perpendicular above their heads, that he caſts no ſhadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 120 years of Age; and therefore called *Macrobii* by the old *Greek* Writers. The Women ſaid to be of ſuch great breſts in the former times, that they did ſuckle their children over their ſhoulders (as ſome Women are now ſaid to do near the *Cape of good Hope*:) the Dug being bigger than the Child. Of which thus *Juvenal*.

In Meroe *craſſo majorem Infante mamillam.*

In *Meroe* the Mothers Pap
Is bigger than the child in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof. 1. *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Iſland, but took the ſame from *Meroe*, a ſiſter of *Cambyſes* King of *Perſia*; or as *Euſebius* ſaith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Chenephris*, a King of *Egypt*. *Joſephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whoſe miſtake it hath been made the *Regal* City of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joſeph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion ſo received amongſt theſe Iſlanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have reſtored the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City ſaid by ſome to contain about 5000 houſes, great and ſumptuous; the ſtreets thereof to be large and ſpacious, with Galleries on each ſide before the doors of their houſes, where Men walk ſafe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (beſides other of inferiour note) built of *Alabaſter* and *Jaſper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to thoſe Gates of *Cedar*, curiouſly wrought; the ways which lead unto them, for the ſpace of two leagues, beſet with Palms, Orange trees, Cedars, Cypreſſes, and others no leſs uſeful both for ſhade and Fruit. In the place where the four ſtreets going from the Gates, do croſs each other, a goodly Arch erected upon ſtately pillars, fairly wrought and gilded, with the Statue of St. *Mathew* made of braſs, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is ſaid to be by ſome. Others think there is no ſuch City; it may be not ſo beautiful, as ſome have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2. *Sacholche*. 3. *Darorum Vicus*. 4. *Eſer*; of which we have little but the name.

This Iſland was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being choſen for their King, who excelled the reſt in ſtrength, perſon, or in ſtock of Cattel; but thoſe Kings ſo ſubject to their *Prieſts*, that by a Meſſenger, or *Herald*, they were ſentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it ſtood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his Armed Soldiers, ſlew all theſe *Prieſts*; and freed himſelf and his Succeſſors from ſo great a *Slavery*: afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopbia*; honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of thoſe Kings, and memorable in thoſe times for the *Table* of the *Sun*; which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furniſhed with variety of roaſted meat, ſet there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it ſeemeth with this coſtly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, becauſe aſcribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occaſioned by the Inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Iſland was ſeized on by that people, and hath been ever ſince kept by them; together with the reſt of the Country, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained, as ſome write, the Kingdoms of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *Jaſculum*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now diſmembred from it: not much obſervable, but for being a thorow-fare to great Troops of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lent* paſs by them out of the *Abaſſine* Dominions, to the *Sepulchre* and other like places in and near *Jeruſalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the North *Guagere* and the River *Marabo*, by which laſt parted from *Barnagaſſo*; on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the Weſt, *Nilus*. On the Eaſt it is ſaid to extend to the *Red Sea*, but the Sea-parts thereof poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and the adjoining Coaſt by the *Moors* and *Arabians*; the In-Land parts promiſcuouſly inhabited, eſpecially more towards the Sea, by *Chriſtians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferior Regions, the Principal whereof, 1. *Sabian*, 2. *Torrates*, 3. *Balgada*, ſo called perhaps from the chief Towns of them; and 4. *Tigrai*, the moſt large and ample of all theſe ſubordinate Provinces; as containing in it 17 great Tracts under ſo many Lieutenants, which rule all Affairs both of Peace and War. The People black of colour, deformed of ſhape, in condition miſerable, of principles wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet ſo, that with a little digging they find Water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Caſſumo*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolemy* calleth *Auxume*; *Stephanus*, *Axomites*; *Procopius*, *Auzomide*; by all of them eſteemed the Metropolitan City of *Æthiopia*, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings. In witneſs whereof are many ancient Buildings yet remaining, ſome Pillars which reſemble the *Egyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanſhip, 60 foot high, and full of Characters, or Letters engraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the moſt potent Nation of this Country, had their Name from hence; more probably conceived to be the Regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other in the Kingdom; and ſtill affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperors. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: Some in a Royal Palace near the Lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570. by ſome *European* Architects ſent hither by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*; and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a Royal Progreſs from one Place to another; which *wandering Court*, or *moving City* is ſaid to be no leſs than ten miles in compaſs, when the Pavilions which belong to it, are diſpoſed of into Rank and Order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an Homager and Tributary to the *Abaſſine* Emperor; to whom he payeth yearly 200 Horſes of the beſt *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of Silks, great ſtore of Cotton-Wooll, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

3. ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North with *Tigremaon*, on the Weſt with *Nilus*, on the South with the Kingdom of *Amara*, on the Eaſt with *Dancaly*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extreamly Fertile, productive of the choiceſt Fruits, and great Herds of Cattel. This Kingdom or Province lies in the middle of *Æthiopia*, environed with ſteep and impaſſible Mountains, like an *Amphitheatre*, in which are kept all the Children of the Royal Family, till one of them is called to the Throne. The People eat but once in 24 hours, and for the moſt part make that Meal in the Night; their Diet raw Veniſon, or ſmoaked Beef: the Money moſt in uſe amongſt them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which cuſtom of uſing Salt, Pepper, and the like, inſtead of Money, was in former times amongſt moſt People the only Bartery, or way of Exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus*'s Golden Armour was valued at an 100 Kine, and *Diomedes*'s Armour at 10 only. Afterward in Juſtice *Commutative*, it was deemed convenient to have ſome common Meaſure or Standard, or valuation of the Equality or Inequality of Goods; the Invention of which, the *Jews* attributed to *Cain*; the *Græcians* to *Hermodice* the Wiſe of *Midas*; the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or νύμισμα from νόμος, becauſe it was ordained by the Law: *Pecunia*, either becauſe in elder times the chief of their Wealth conſiſted in Cattel, as now among the *Iriſh*; or from a *Cow* (*Pecus*) which was ſtamped on it: and *Moneta*, *à Monendo*, as *Suidas* ſaith, becauſe when the *Romans* ſtood in need of Money, *Juno monebat*, *Juno* admoniſhed them, that they ſhould uſe Juſtice, and there ſhould be no want of Money. To this Goddeſs, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worſhipped it in the Figure of a Woman, holding a Pair of Scales in one hand, and *Cornucopia* in the other; by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatneſs of her Power conſidered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much ſpoken of the Country in the way of Story; nor meet I with the Names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unleſs that 1. *Angote* it ſelf; as alſo 2. *Abugana*, 3. *Giannamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may poſſibly be ſo called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damus*; on the Weſt it ſtretcheth towards the *Nile*; and on the Eaſt, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Country very Plain and Champaign, little ſwelled with Hills, ſufficiently Fruitful, and well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattle. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, ſituate in the midſt of the Empire, and though not much diſtant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet, bleſſed with ſuch a temperate Air, ſuch a fruitful Soil, ſuch raviſhing pleaſures of all ſorts, that ſome have taken (but miſtaken) it for the Place of *Paradiſe*: So ſtrangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Humane Induſtry have joined their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greateſt Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, ſituate in a large and delightful Plain: the bottom of the Hill in Circuit 90 miles, and a days journey high; the Rock ſo ſmooth and even (but leſſer and leſſer towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly poliſhed; the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the Light; ſo eaſie of aſcent, that one may ride up with great pleaſure; and in the midſt of the Aſcent a ſpacious Hall, as it were to reſt in: the top it ſelf is a large Plain 20 Leagues in circuit, compaſſed with an high Wall, to the end that neither Man nor Beaſt fall down upon any chance; beautified towards the South with a riſing Hill, out of which iſſueth a ſweet Spring, which watering the ſeveral Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it ſelf into a Lake for the uſe of Cattle: the Plain enriched with all ſorts, both of Fruit and Grain; adorned with two mignificent Monaſteries, in each of which are found 1500 Knights of the Order of St. *Anthony*, a Religious Militia; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger Sons of the Emperor are continually incloſed, to avoid Sedition. They enjoy there whatſoever is fit for delight, or Princely Education; and from hence ſome one of them, who is moſt hopeful, or beſt liked, is again brought out, if the Emperor die Son-leſs, to be made Succeſſor. This Mountain hath but one Aſcent up, as before was ſaid, which is impregnably fortified; and was deſtinate to this uſe, *Anno* 460. or thereabouts, by the Emperor *Abraham Philip*, adviſed hereunto, as he gave out, by an Heavenly Viſion. In one of theſe Palaces is a famous Library, wherein are ſaid to be many Books, which with us are either in part or totally loſt; as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the Myſteries which eſcaped the Flood, being by him engraven on Pillars; the whole Works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore tranſlated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* Tongue (when having plundered all the moſt famous Libraries of the Eaſt and Weſt, they burnt the Originals, out of a Plot to make that Language as Renowned, and as generally Studied, (as the *Greek* or *Latin*) are ſaid by ſome good fortune to be here preſerved.

5. DAMUT.

DAMUT hath on the North, *Amara*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*; and on the Eaſt, the great Lake of *Barcena*, and ſome part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior.* The Country plentifully furniſhed with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all ſorts. For none more famed than for their Slaves, ſold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Perſia*, *India*; and much eſteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in Buſineſs, but eſpecially for their Fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this Cauſe placed in Offices of great Truſt and Power, by many of the *Eaſtern* Princes; who uſing a Tyrannical form of Government, and not daring to truſt the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto Places of Court, or Council, do for the moſt part arm theſe Slaves, and truſt them alſo with the Conduct of their chief Affairs. A Truſt, in which they never falſified, or failed in a true Diſcharge, but when preſuming on their Power, and thoſe Advantages which ſo great a Truſt and Power had preſented to them, they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*, and kept it many years in a Succeſſion of the *Abaſſine* Slaves, wherewith they ſtill made up their numbers, till outed not long ſince by the Great Mogul.

The Oxen of this Country are ſaid to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns ſo large, that they ſerve as Tankards to carry, and as Barrels to keep either Wine or Water. Here is alſo ſaid to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, faſhioned like an Horſe, but no bigger than an Aſs; but we muſt think theſe *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinocerots*, or elſe we ſhall very much miſtake the truth of the Matter. And for the People (to go them both over once again) they are for the moſt part, *Gentiles*; ſome *Chriſtians* intermixt amongſt them, who have ſundry Monaſteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Couche*, ſaid to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*; a *Mountain all of Gold*, if the Fryars ſay true. The People *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long ſince gained to the Chriſtian *Faith*; into which he was Baptized by the Abbot, or chief Governour of the Monaſteries, on the Hill *Amara*; *Gradeus* the Emperor being his Godfather, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an Hill of great height, and very difficult aſcent; from the top whereof they uſe to caſt headlong ſuch of the Nobility, as by the Emperor's Sentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom, or their Principality, I am not able to reſolve, unleſs, 1. *Damut*, and 2. *Couche* may be two, and the two moſt Eminent, as giving name to thoſe Eſtates.

6. GOIAMY.

GOIAMY hath on the North, *Damut*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South and Eaſt, ſome Provinces of the other *Æthiopia.* The Country in the North parts full of Deſarts and Rocky Mountains, in the reſidue plentifully furniſhed with all things neceſſary. Great ſtore of Gold they find, but droſſy; the People not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loath here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way, for fear of drawing the *Turks* and *Arabians* to partake of the Booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather Torrents, which come tumbling down the Hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noiſe, not much inferior to a Clap of Thunder: And amongſt other Lakes, two of ſpecial Note, which for their greatneſs ſeem to be Seas; in which, as ſome report, *Mermaids* and *Tritons*, or Men-fiſhes, uſe to ſhew themſelves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilus* do ariſe; and both true alike. But paſt all doubt the *Abaſſines* themſelves are of this opinion; and therefore in the ſtile of *Negaz*, (ſo they call their Emperor) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this Addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus.* Deceived alike in their Opinion touching this Particular, the Springs or Fountains of that River being further South: though poſſibly having loſt himſelf in theſe vaſt Lakes, and iſſuing hence into a more contracted Channel, he may be ſaid to have a ſecond Birth from hence, though not the firſt. And theſe I take to be the Lakes which were diſcovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero.* Who following the deſign of ſome other great Potentates, *Seſoſtrus*, *Cambyſes*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in diſcovering the true Original of this famous River, employed the *Centurions* in that Service; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are ſaid to have come at laſt unto certain great Mariſhes (moſt probably the lower and ſedgy parts of theſe Lakes now mentioned) of whoſe extent the Inhabitants themſelves were ignorant, not poſſible to be diſcovered any farther, the Weeds having ſo overgrown the Water, that there was no further paſſage to be made by Boat, and leſs by Wading. This Kingdom is ſurrounded on all ſides by the *Nile*, which riſeth in the Weſtern part, and paſſing through that vaſt Lake called *Dembæ* or *Tzana*, runs round this whole Kingdom; yet the North parts in which are the Fountains of the *Nile*, are barren and deſolate, full of Mountains; the reſt is wonderful Fruitful and has great plenty of Gold. *Pory.*

Betwixt this Country and *Damut*, which we laſt paſſed through, is ſaid to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whoſe Queen knoweth no Man, and by the reſt honoured as a Goddeſs. Theſe they ſay, were firſt inſtituted by the Queen of *Saba*; as true, as that which ſome have added of the *Phœnix* viſible in this Country; of *Griffons*, and of Fowls ſo big, that they make a ſhadow like a Cloud. Which ſtrange reports I have here added, to ſupply the defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with ſo much as the naked names; as undiſcovered Places in our Maps and Charts, are filled up with Monſters.

7. BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or SAGAMEDRUM, (for I find both names) lieth on the Weſt of *Goiamy*, betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus*; and keeping all along the Courſe of that River, as far as *Guagere*, or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern Point of *Barnagaſſo*; ſome do extend it alſo beyond that Iſland, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themſelves. The greateſt Province of this Empire it may probably be, *Cæteris hujus Æthiopiæ ampliſſimum*, as they ſay it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it muſt be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Country plentiful in Mines of the pureſt Silver, which they cannot draw thence but by Fire, which makes it run like long rods, or ropes of Metal. And yet as large and as wealthy as they ſay it is, I am more to ſeek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the Deſarts of *Libya*, or the Sands of *Arabia.* Merchants and Travellers for the moſt part go no further than the Sea-coaſts of the Country, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the In-Lands; and of the Natives, ſuch as have travelled abroad in other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant Men, know little more of their own Empire than the Place they lived in: Or probably their beſt Cities not containing above 2000 houſes, few of them ſo many, and thoſe patched up of Thatch, Dirt and Hurdles, (unleſs ſome of the Nobility or Wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no greater Reaſon to ſpeak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of ſuch ſorry Places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of moſt, or all the In land Towns in this large Eſtate.

8. BARNAGASSO.

BARNAGNES, or BARNAGASSUM, hath on the Weſt, *Guagere*, or the Iſle of *Meroe*; on the South-weſt, as ſome ſay, a Point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the Eaſt, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it ſtretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jaſculum* and *Sua*, poſſeſſed by the *Mahometans*, being interpoſed. This is the moſt Northern Province of *Abaſſinia*; it is bounded on the South by the Kingdom of *Dangala* and *Tigre*; on the Weſt by the *Nile*, which ſeparates it from *Nubia*; on the North by *Balour*; and on the Eaſt by the *Red-Sea*, upon which it hath the Port of *Ercow* or *Arkiko*, which is now in the *Turks* hands. This was the beſt known part of that Kingdom, by reaſon it lay upon the *Red-Sea*, and much frequented by the *Portugueſe* in the laſt Century. *Bar*, in their Tongue is the Sea, and *Naguz*, a King or Kingdom, as this the only Province of that Empire that lies upon the Ocean. *Pory*. The *Turks* firſt invaded this Province in the year 1558. and forced the Governor to pay 1000 Ounces of Gold for his Peace every Year.

The Country very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well ſtored with pleaſant Rivulets, beſides the Neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea*, on the one ſide *Nile*, and *Abanhi* on the other. Remarkable for a Mountain in the Weſtern part of it, which being ſpacious in the beginning, growing ſtrait by little and little, and then enlargeth it ſelf again to a League in Circuit. On the top thereof a Royal Palace, a Church, a Monaſtery, and two very large Ciſterns, with a piece of Ground able to entertain and keep 500 Men. To be aſcended one way only, and that but to a certain Mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by Force, by reaſon of the Impoſſibility of Aſcent; not by long Siege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields Proviſion enough to maintain it ſelf. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province againſt *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth beſides *Barnagaſſo* it ſelf, the two Provinces of *Canfila* and *Daſile*; though rather ſubject to the Governor or Vice-Roy of it, than Parts and Numbers of the ſame. Towns of moſt moment in the whole, 1. *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by ſome to be the Colony of *Ptolemy*, the Reſidence of the Vice-Roy, ſituate on a pleaſant River, ſtor'd with Fiſh. 2. *Zameta*, honoured ſometimes alſo with the Vice-Roy's preſence; but rather as a retiring Place in times of leiſure, than a Town of ſtrength. 3. *Suachen*, ſituate in an Iſland of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richeſt Cities of the Eaſtern parts, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, ſecured by Nature from all Storms, of ſmooth Tides, ſure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great Ships of Burden. Situate in a little Iſland, the whole Circumference whereof it taketh up; inſomuch, that Veſſels of all ſorts, both within the Haven, and without, do uſually unlade themſelves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-Beaks ſerve for Bridges. A wealthy and well-traded Town, both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-Land parts of the *Abaſſine* Empire, the Mountains open a ſafe Paſſage for the carriage and recarriage of their Commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long ſince, with all the reſt of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the Seat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, or *Baſſa*; whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abyſſia*; as if by the Poſſeſſion of this ſmall part of the Empire, they would entitle the Grand Signior unto all the reſt. It is now the principal Port in the *Red-Sea*, and the Baſſa with 3000 Soldiers reſides in it, and Governs thoſe Provinces they have conquered upon the *Abaſſinians*. *Pory*, *p.* 16. The Town conceived by ſome to be that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Oſtium Sebaſticum*, or rather *Sebaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolemais Ferarum*, or the *Epitherias*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the ancient Writers. And ſome again will have it to be the *Succhæ* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are all called *Suchæi* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whoſe part of the Country it is ſeated, and to which name it hath ſome reſemblance. 4. *Biſam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monaſtery ſituate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every ſide; in which live 3000 Monks, eating by three and three together, in a common Refectory: this being the Chief of ſix others in the Province of *Barnagaſſo*, the fartheſt not above 30 miles diſtant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, beſides the Tythes of all the Mountain in which it ſtandeth (fruitful and rich, and at leaſt 30 miles in compaſs) they have many good Farms at the Foot of the ſaid Mountain, and an hundred ſmall Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raiſe yearly great proviſion of Corn, and above 2000 head of Cattel, their Revenues out of *Tigremaon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hoſpitality, in regard their Novices or young Monks are ſent abroad to earn their Living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the Husbandry of the Houſe: the Elder only being found at the charge of the Monaſtery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5. *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a Paſſage openeth through the Streights of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolemy*, the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, or at their command. From *Suachen* to this Place all along the Coaſt, is one Wood of Shrubby-Trees of ſmall value. 6. *Santa*. 7. *Giabel*. 8. *Laccari*. And 9. *Abarach*; theſe four laſt in the Province of *Daſila*.

This Country at the preſent, and for long time paſt, is ſubject both to the Great *Neguz*, or the *Preſtigian* of *Æthiopia*, and the Grand Signior of the *Turks*; naturally Subject to the one, and Tributary to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagaſſius*, by the name of his Province; a Vaſſal and an Homager to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly Tribute of 150 of the beſt breed of Horſes, beſides ſome quantities of Silk, and ſome other Commodities: but ſo ill-neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay alſo to the *Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa* reſident at *Suchen*, 1000 Ounces of Gold yearly for a Compoſition. For the *Turks* having by the Conqueſt of *Egypt* made themſelves Maſters of thoſe Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mamuluck* Sultans; within ſhort time (*viz. An.* 1558.) poſſeſſed themſelves alſo of the Town of *Suachen*, and the Parts adjoining; made it the Reſidence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſas*, and gave him the Title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*, as before was ſaid: forgot by the induſtrious Collector of the *Turkiſh Hiſtory*, in his Enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſas* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after, all the reſt of the Sea-Coaſts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after ſome ſhort breathing made a farther Inroad; in which they did ſo waſte the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagaſſian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this Compoſition.

9. DANGALI, and 10. DOBAZ.

SOuth and South-Eaſt of *Barnogaſſo*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI* and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans*, or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual Enmity with the *Abaſſine* Emperours, and both of like nature, in regard of the Soil and People.

DANGALI hath on the North, *Barnagaſſo*; on the South, ſome part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the Eaſt, the *Red Sea*, or *Gulf* of *Arabia*; on the Weſt, *Dobas* before-mentioned. It taketh up ſome part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Straits of *Babel-Mandel*; and without thoſe Straits, the greateſt part of that ſpacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Avaliticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Moſylon*, (neighboured by a noted *Empory* of the ſame name) now the Cape of *Docono*; near unto which the Sea makes a little Gulf; and ſuddenly ſtraitneth it ſelf again; ſo as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve Leagues broad. And in this Channel are five or ſix Iſlands, which hinder the paſſage; ſo as Sailers muſt have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie near thoſe Iſlands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Bebul* or *Babel*, which gives name to the Straits of *Babel-Mandel*, a narrow *Frith*, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* or *Indian* Ocean. 2. *Vella*, a well frequented Port, conceived to be the ſame which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolemy*. 3. *Zagnani*; and 4. *Zana*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*. 5. *Docono*, near the Cape ſo called, and therefore probably the *Moſylon* of the ancient Writers. 6. *Dangali*, not far from the Sea ſide, which gives name to the Kingdom. The City of *Dangali* is ſeated on the Weſtern Bank of the *Nile*, between *Cuſa* to the South and *Ghalva* to the North, five days journey from the latter; *Nub. p.* 17. It conſiſts alſo of 10000 Houſes, as *Alvarez* a *Spaniard* reports, who travell'd *Nubia* in theſe latter times. *Leo Africanus, p.* 295. confirms this Report of *Alvarez*, as to the number of Houſes, and adds, that they are built with Chalk, and covered with Thatch: The Townſmen are Rich, and a Civil People, and drive a great Trade with *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*: all the reſt of their Towns are Villages and Hamlets. Thus far *Leo*, who wrote about the year 1526. Nothing elſe memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-weſt of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the Weſt to the borders of *Angote*. The Country large, containing Twelve, or as ſome ſay, Twenty four ſeveral Prefectures. Of ſo good Paſturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater ſize than in any other places, and thoſe for number not eaſily matched in all this Empire. The People ſuch profeſſed Enemies of the *Chriſtian* Faith, that they ſuffer not any Man to Marry, till he hath killed Twelve *Chriſtians*. Some reckon them for Tributaries to the *Prete*, or *Neguz*; but it is only when they liſt; ſo far from being Contributioners towards the ſupport of his Eſtate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their Towns, 1. *Dobas*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom. 2. *Bally*, upon the ſame River on which *Dobas* ſtandeth, but more near the head.

11. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North with ſome parts of *Dangali* and the *Red Sea*; on the South, with *Adea*; on the Eaſt, with the *Red Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; on the Weſt, with *Fatigar*: extended on the Sea-Coaſt from the Cape of *Docono*, to the Cape of *Guardafu*; conceived moſt probably to be the *Acomata* of *Ptolemy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Fleſh, Honey, Wax, Corn Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of thoſe Sheep of ſuch burdenſome Fleeces, that their Tails weigh 25 pounds. Some Kine they have, which have Horns like a Stag: others but one Horn only, and that in the Forehead, about a Foot and an half long, but bending backwards The People inhabiting on the Sea coaſts are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion: thoſe towards the In-land Countries, of the old *Æthiopick* Race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Zeila*, a noted Port-Town, ſituate in or near the place where *Ptolemy* placeth *Avalites*: ſtored with variety of Merchandice, and yielding ſome repreſentation of Antiquity in the building therof, being Lime and Stone; Materials not much uſed amongſt them in theſe latter times. Of great Beauty and Eſteem, till they ear 1516. when ſacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time the moſt noted Empory of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* Trade. This City in the time of the *Nubian* Geographer (the 12*th*. Century) was called *Zalegh*, and was the principal Port of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*, but then a ſmall Place, yet very Populous; moſt of the Ships that ſailed on the *Red Sea*, and Traded with that Kingdom unlading at this Port, *Nub p.* 20. 2. *Barbora*, ſeated on the ſame Sea-coaſt, well frequented by Merchants; and poſſibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolemy*, neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call Mount *Fellez*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea-Towns near the Cape of *Guardafu*, ſuppoſed to be the *Acane* of the Ancient Writers. 4. *Aſſam*. 5. *Selir*. and 6. *Bidar*, on the Sea-coaſts alſo. 7. *Arar*, the Principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country, formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to ſo great ſtrength and reputation, that the Kings hereof have freed themſelves from all ſigns of Subjection to that Crown, and think themſelves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradogma*, or *Gradameth*, who Reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Neguz* was ſo overlaid, and his Country ſo deſtroyed by continual Incurſions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himſelf into the heart of his Eſtates, and crave Aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their aſſiſtance, and the help of their Shot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third Battel he was vanquiſhed, and in the fourth, *Anno* 1559. ſlain upon the place. This King, accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual Wars againſt the *Chriſtians*, did ſo eſtabliſh the Affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it ſo well ſettled unto his Succeſſors, that the *Abaſſine* Emperor hath ever ſince left it out of his Titles; though many other of thoſe ſmall Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial* Stile, in which he hath as little Power as he hath in this. It is ſaid alſo, That in the Battel wherein *Claudius* was ſlain, and his Army routed, conſiſting of 60000 Foot, 5000 Horſe of his own Subjects, beſides the *Portugals*, the King of *Adel* got into his poſſeſſion the greateſt maſs of Coin and Treaſure that was ever ſeen. A Victory obtained as well by Policy as Force: the *Abaſſines* being ſeldom fought with, or their Country waſted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the ſtrict obſervance of their *Lenten* Faſt, they were grown ſo weak, that they were not able to diſcharge their domeſtick buſineſs, and therefore moſt unable to reſiſt a prevailing Enemy. In the 12*th* Century, the *Nubian* Geographer found this Kingdom ſubject to the King of *Æthipia*, but poſſeſs'd by *Pagans*, whoſe whole Religion conſiſted in erecting Pillars of Stone, and anointing them with the Fat of Fiſhes, and then worſhiping them. *Nub. p.* 27. The *Arabians* came in after this time, and ſending what People they took in their Wars into *Arabia* to be ſold for Slaves, obtained great Supplies from thence to carry on the War; the *Portugueſe* for a time ſupported; them but after their return, the King of *Æthiopia* was beaten, as is above related.

12. ADEA.

ADEA, or ABEX as ſome call it, hath on the North the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South, and Weſt, ſome parts of the *Abaſſine* Empire; on the Eaſt, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joineth with *Adel*, along the greateſt part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reaſon of which name, hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, ſhaded with Woods and ſpacious Foreſts, and thoſe Woods liberally furniſhed both with Fruits and Cattle; the Champion Country not leſs fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other neceſſaries, beſides a great ſtore of Horſes. The People of an Olive colour, in ſome places more inclined to Black: not cloathed, but from the Girdle downward: nor very well armed in the time of War, but with poiſoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original Extraction, whoſe Language they retain with ſome little difference in pronunciation.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Adea*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, becauſe of the old Reſidence of Kings. 2. *Carfur*, upon the Sea-Coaſt, ſometimes called *Opone*, then a noted Empory, and ſituate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Azun*. and 4. *Zazelle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eſſina* and *Tonica* of the Ancient Writers. 5. *Magadazo*, a petit Kingdom of it ſelf; a wealthy and well Traded Town, ſituate in a fruitful and delightful Soil, and Neighbourhood, by a ſafe and capacious Haven: much Traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Adere* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaia* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* Commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abaſſine* Slaves, which laſt they value as the chiefeſt Merchandice which this Country yieldeth. Firſt built by ſome *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza* their Mortal Enemy, under the Conduct of ſeven Brethren, came into theſe parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was ſaid; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-Coaſts of both *Æthiopia*'s, as far as to the *Cape Des Corrintes*, which is ſomewhat to the South of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times Vaſſals to the *Abaſſine* Emperour, to whom they paid a yearly Tribute; this Kingdom ſtill remaining amongſt his Titles: but ſince the taking of *Magadazo*, made ſo obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Eſtate of the *Abaſſine* in it is but meerly titular. In former times this was the Capital of the *Arabian* Colonies yet was taken by the *Portugueſe*. It is Strong, Rich, and Populous, and is not mentioned by the *Nubian* Geographer, who ſpeaks of *Melinda*. *Pory*.

13. FATIGAR, and 14. XOA.

FATIGAR hath on the Eaſt *Adel*, and ſome part of *Adea*; on the Weſt, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, ſufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furniſhed with pleaſant and delicious Fruits. Moſt memorable for a *Lake* of twelve miles in compaſs, on the top of a Mountain, well ſtored with Fiſh: from whence, and from the reſt of the Mountain, iſſue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoyning. The chief Town hereof (if any one be better than another) I conceive to be a *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or ſo called from it.

Weſtward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of XOA, bordering Weſt on *Amara*: Southward upon *Damut*; furniſhed with great ſtore of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any conſideration. Nothing obſervable in the Hiſtory or deſcription of it, but that together with *Fatigar*, and others of the Mid-land Provinces, it hath continued conſtant in obedience to the *Abaſſine* Emperours, notwithſtanding all thoſe Miſadventures which have happened to that Empire in theſe latter days. Mr. *Pory* bordereth it on the Weſt with *Ambara*, but on that ſide it hath *Gozame*; on the North, *Walaka*; on the Eaſt, *Fatigar* and *Galla*; and the laſt and beſt Map is called *Shoa*. It conſiſteth in Mountains and deep Vallies.

15. BARUS.

ON the South Eaſt of *Adea*, lieth the Province of BARUS, extended Eaſtward to ſome part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Weſtern Point upon that of *Fatigar*. The Soil and People much of the ſame condition with the reſt of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Chriſtians* for the generality in the Mid-land parts. Thoſe *Chriſtians* ſubject (as the reſt) to the *Abaſſine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of ſtrength or conſideration in all the Country; thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Brava*, once a free Town and governed after the manner of a Common-wealth, by Twelve Aldermen or Common-Counſellors, deſcended from the ſeven *Arabian* Brethren, by whom firſt built; the Founders of *Magadora* alſo, as before was ſaid. But now, together with 2. *Pate*. and 3. *Gogia*, all upon the Sea, made ſubject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken, under the Conduct of *Triſtram de Cugua*.

Beſides theſe, there are many other Kingdoms muſtered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the ſwelling vanity whereof, we ſhall ſee anon) but of ſo little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, and ſo obſcure in the eſteem of ſuch as have ſpoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to find their names; and having found their names, to bid you not to ſeek for more; there being nothing elſe in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the Body aggregated of thoſe ſeveral Members, it was firſt planted, as is noted and proved elſewhere, by *Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the firſt Ages of time, but by an Error of *Joſephus*: who giving too much credit to ſome *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the Reputation of the *Jews* to the higheſt pitch, telleth us a Story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moſes*; the City of *Meroe* beſieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands by *Tharbis*, the Daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married unto him. All this not only queſtioned but rejected by diſcerning Men, as a *Jewiſh* Fable, that hath no Ground to ſtand upon in true Antiquity. With little better Fortune, and as little Truth, do the *Æthiopians* tell the Story of their own Original. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, firſt reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom ſucceeded his Son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*; that from the Death of *Dedan*, till the Reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the People lived in Caves and Holes digged under the Ground; as did the *Troglodites*, an ancient Nation of this Country, in the times long after: That *Arac* firſt built the City of *Aruma*, and by that Pattern taught them the uſe of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend, is the Story of *Maqueda*, a Queen hereof, and fourth from *Aruch*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Teſtaments, for the Royal Viſit which ſhe beſtowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when ſhe was in the Court, ſhe was delivered of a Son, whom ſhe cauſed to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*; and at the age of 20 years to be ſent to his Father: By whom inſtructed in the Law, and circumciſed, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Country, with

Azarias, the Son of *Zadok* the Prieſt, who had ſtollen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen reſigned the Empire to her Son. His Succeſſors afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the ſubſtance of the *Legend*, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Goſpel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been ſhewn already, as alſo what abſurdities muſt needs ariſe from ſuppoſing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore moſt probable it is, that this Country was firſt peopled by the Children of *Ludim*, as before was ſaid. To whom the *Abaſſines* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added; and in ſome tract of time be of ſuch great power as to put their name upon the Country. For that the *Abaſſines* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephanus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranius* (an ancienter Author than himſelf) hath told us this, 'Αϐασηνοὶ ἔθνος 'Αραϐίας. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and *Lexicographer*, hath, as he thinks decided the Controverſie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cauſe hath fitted us with this pretty *Criticiſm*, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, muſt be rendered *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controverſie; it being evidently clear that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally ſettled in *Arabia*, as hath here been ſhewn; though I deny not, but that ſome of the poſterity of *Chus* in thoſe elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abaſſine* Nations) might either out of too much Populoſity, or deſire of Change, croſs over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up ſuch part of this Country as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled: with whom conjunct at laſt, both in name and government. And for *Maqueda* (ſuppoſing that to be her name) ſhe was doubtleſs Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*, not of the *Æthiopians* in the Waſte of *Africk*: For beſides the longſomneſs of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this *Lady*, would never have ſuffer'd *Egypt* to have lain in quiet, whilſt *Seſac* the King thereof made war upon *Reboboam*, the Son of *Soloman* alſo, and ſo by conſequence his half Brother. But to leave theſe uncertain Fables, the firſt action of moment which we meet with in unqueſtioned Story, touching thoſe *Æthiopians*, is that which hap'ned betwixt them and *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Perſia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto *Egypt* alſo. Upon this Reſolution he ſent Embaſſadors to that King to ſearch into the Paſſages of his Country, and diſcover his ſtrengths; and by them ſent a Tun of Wine, ſome Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of ſweet Ointments to preſent him with. Which Preſents being tendered to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the Purple Robe, as too ſlight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be Bonds or Fetters, and openly laugh'd at them, as too weak to hold in a Priſoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleaſed, and ſorrowed that his Country yielded no ſuch Liquor. But underſtanding well enough what his Viſit aimed at, he gave the Embaſſadors at their parting (amongſt other Gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and ſtrength; requiring them to tell their Maſter, That until every *Perſian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Perſian*, as before was noted) it would be no ſafe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cauſe to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* ſo contented minds, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vaſt Mountains, we find them not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Auguſtus*: who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governor of that Province, brought to ſuch conformity, that ſhe was fain to ſue for Peace, and to purchaſe it with the loſs of ſome part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, *Philæ* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garriſon by the *Romans*, and the Seat of their *Deputy* for theſe parts: held by them till the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned, becauſe the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: inſomuch as *Juſtinian* ſent unto *Heliſtheus*, as *Junius* his Succeſſor did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Country; to crave their brotherly aſſiſtance againſt the *Perſians*.

Of their Converſion to the Faith in the Reign of a ſecond *Candace*, (unleſs as *Pliny* thinketh, *Candace* was the general Name of all their Queens) we have ſpoken already. To which the *Æthiophians* add, that after the baptizing of their firſt *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) by the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperours ſucceeding had the name of *Philip*; till the Religious life of *John*, a Contemporary of the Emperour *Conſtans*, honoured as a Saint after his deceaſe, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John*, prefixed that of *Presbyter*, becauſe (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal Office*; *Rex idem hominum, Divumq; Sacerdos*; the very *Anius* of the Poet. And this ſo commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Preſter John*, and his Eſtate, the Empire of *Preſter John*, with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive that this vulgar name of *Preſter John*, is but a corruption, or miſtaken for *Pretagian* (or *Precious John*) and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no leſs. And yet I more incline to thoſe, who finding that the word *Preſtegan* ſignifieth an *Apoſtle*, in the *Perſian* Tongue; and *Preſtegani*, an *Apoſtolical* Man; do thereupon infer, that the title of *Fadeſcha Preſtigiani*, an *Apoſtolick King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxy* of his Belief. Which not being underſtood by ſome, inſtead of *Preſtegian* they have made *Prieſt John* in Latin *Preſbyter Johannes*: as by a like miſtake, one *Pregent*, or *Pregian*, (as the *French* pronounce it) Commander of ſome Gallies under *Lewis* the XII. was by the *Engliſh* of thoſe times called *Prior John*. *Preſtegian* then, not *Prieſt John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern *French*, who uſually leave out *ſ* before a *Conſonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the preſent, ſhrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks* and *Arabians*; Of which the firſt have taken from him all his Country, from the Iſle of *Meroe* unto *Egypt*, with all the Sea-coaſts of *Barnagaſſo*; the latter as much encroaching on them, on the reſt of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they ſuffered more than the Kings of *Adel*, who have divers times laid waſt their Country, diſcomfited ſome of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558 ſlain their King in battel: not cured of thoſe wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who ſucceeded *Claudius* that was ſlain in battel, was ſo far from being able to revenge the death of his Predeceſſor, that being ſuſpected to incline to *Mahometaniſm*, he was defeated by the under-King of *Barnagaſſo*. Since which time they have ſo languiſhed by inteſtine diſſenſions, that though *Alexander* the Third (if there were ever ſuch a King, which I find much doubted) is ſaid to have ſettled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*, and that ſome ſtrange ſucceſſes have been ſince reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Eſtate hereof hath been ſo imbroiled in Civil Wars, and ſo many of their Emperours ſucceſſively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakned, and the Country made a prey to impuiſſant Enemies. For in the year 1603. the Emperour *Meleb Godad*, who ſucceeded in the Throne by the Depoſition and Impriſonment of his Predeceſſor, (under colour of Baſtardy) was not long after ſlain by one *Zezelekens*: and *James* or *Jacob*, advanced unto the Empire:

pire: *James* not long after vanquiſhed and ſlain in the fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazinoſius* (contractedly by ſome called *Suſneas*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for ſafety. What became of the two Eldeſt, I have no where ſound. The youngeſt, called Z*aga Criſtos*, after many hazardous Wandrings and Accidents, arriv'd at laſt into *Italy*, and thence he came to *Paris*, *Anno* 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being reſtored to the Throne of his Fathers; for *Sazinoſius*, or *Suſneas*, immediately upon the Victory, had poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Empire; though for a time ſo terribly diſquieted with Treaſons and Conſpiracies, that in the year 1607. he was fain to ſue for aid to the King of *Spain* and tender a ſubmiſſion of the *Abaſſine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the Spirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not ſo eaſily be laid down, (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within a few years after (that is to ſay, about the year 1628.) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel ſtarting up, who ſollowed by an Army of 50000, had queſtionleſs diſpoſſeſſed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and diſcomfited beyond expectation. For it happened, that one *Vermeile*, a *Frenchman*, a Jeweller by Trade but exerciſed in the Wars of *Holland*, underſtanding that the *Abaſſine* Empreſs was much delighted with the Rarities and Jewels of *France*, found means to conveigh himſelf into the Court; where underſtanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels, in the Arts of War, he got leave to have the diſciplining or training of 8000 Men; with which ſmall Army, he utterly diſcomfitted and routed that vaſt body of Rebels, and was thereupon deſervedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the laſt News of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being *An.* 1634. in which that Victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of ſome new Commotions, *An.* 1648. the particulars and truth whereof, muſt be ſought elſewhere. In the year 1686. an Account was given from *Hiſphahan*, the Capital of *Perſia*, by a *Romiſh* Monk, that *Negus Jaſſick Adiam Saguid* had ſucceeded *John De Baſilides*, Grandchild of *Suſneos*, in the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; and that the *Galeas* diſquieting him, he had reſolved to lead all his Forces againſt him: This, ſaid he, is all the Changes that have happened there in Church or State ſince 1631. By which it is plain, what Princes have Reigned Since, and that they are the Deſcendents of the laſt King mentioned by the Author.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe diſaſters, theſe later Emperors have ſtill preſerved their Majeſty among their Subjects whom they hold in Servitude enough, though they keep not ſuch a diſtance as in ſormer Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and uſed to ſhew himſelf but thrice in a year, *viz.* on *Criſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Holyrood-day*: by which retiredneſs it was thought that he made his preſence more acceptable; ſome holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majeſty of a King, than to make himſelf too common an object for the eye of the Vulgar. The like kind of ſtate was once kept by thoſe Kings of *France* of the firſt *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themſelves from all publick Affairs, uſed only to ſhew themſelves (as we have already ſaid) on *May-day*. A greater retiredneſs than this, was that which *Velleday* Queen of the *Teuſteri*, (a people of the *Rhine*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have uſed; for when the reſt of the *Germans* then in Arms, ſent Ambaſſadors to her to inform her of their Victory againſt the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to ſpeak to her, or to ſee her; *Arcebanter aſpectu, quo venerationis plus ineſſet.* Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince *Tiberius* uſed, when the *German* Legions mutined; for he deigned not himſelf to ſee them pacified, but ſent his Son; the reaſon was, *quin majeſtati major è longinquo reverentia.* And no doubt, the ſame keeping of diſtance ſwayed much with him, when he forſook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Gaprea*: though I deny not, but a propenſion to follow his *unnatural* pleaſures the more ſecurely, together with his deformities on his face, had alſo their powers upon his reſolution.

The Title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither ſo great or mighty in power as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of* GOD, *the Pillar of Faith, ſprung from the Stock of* Judah, *the Son of* David, *the Son of* Soloman, *the Son of the Column of* Sion, *the Son of the Seed of* Jacob, *the Son of the hand of* Mary, *the Son of* Nahu *after the fleſh, the Son of St.* Peter *&* Paul *after the Spirit; Emperour of the Higher and Leſſer* Æthiopia, *and of the moſt mighty Kingdoms, Dominions and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Caſſares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, *where are the fountains of* Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremaon, Sabaim, *the birth-place of the Queen of* Saba, Barnagaſſum; *and Lord of all the Regions under the Confines of* Egypt.

It ſeemeth by this Title, that theſe *Æthiopian* Emperors, however the truth of Story goeth, conceive themſelves to be ſprung from *Solomon* and *Maqueda*, (or *Nizaule*, as *Joſeph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by ſome reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the ſame with thoſe of the Tribe of *Judah*, which are a *Lyon Rampant* in a Field *Or*: and that the *Motto* of them is to this effect, *viz.* *The Lyon of the Tribe of* Judah *ſhall overcome.* But *Bara*, an expert Herauld, giveth this Prince no ſuch Coat-Armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a Croſs Portate *Mars*, charged with a Crucifix *Sol*, between two Scourges of the Second. And yet not altogether to diſcredit the old Tradition ſo generally received amongſt them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abaſſines* came into *Æthiopia*, ſome of the *Sabeans* their next Neighbours, came along for company, and amongſt them ſome of the *Royal Race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with ſome of which, by reaſon of their great Nobility, ſome of the *Abaſſine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impoſſibility, but that *Solomon* (conſidering his courſe of life) might get a Son upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus deſcended.

As for the Government of theſe Emperours, it is abſolutely *Regal*, or to ſay better, perfectly *Deſpotical*: the people being treated by them more like Slaves than Subjects; taking away *Seigniories*, and giving them unto whom he pleaſeth, the deprived party not daring to expreſs the leaſt diſcontent. By them ſo reverenced, that it was anciently a cuſtom, if the King were *blind*, or *lame*, or *maimed*, for the Subject to inflict on his own Body the like *impreſſion*: ſtill had in ſo much honour by the greateſt Subject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their Fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they paſs by, though he be not in it. He on the other ſide ſeldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand; his ſace then covered with a piece of *Watchet-Taffata*, which he liſteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his *Forces* and *Revenues*, ſome of our late Obſervators ſpeak nothing but wonders. Some ſay his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea* to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some, that he is of ſo great Riches, that he is able to purchaſe a *moyety* of all the world if it were to be ſold; others, that he is able to raiſe for preſent ſervice a Million of Men. And he himſelf is ſaid to have offered to the *Portugals* one Million of Money, and another of Men, if they would imploy it in a War againſt the *Infidels*. But notwithſtanding theſe great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be ſuch a *Miracle* as ſome of theſe reports have made him. For they that ſpeak moſt knowingly of his *Revenue*, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being diſcharged, he cofferеth up but three Millions of Crowns *per annum*; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of War and Trouble, will be eaſily waſted, or brought into a narrower compaſs. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, beſides the Crown-Lands, or *Demain Imperial*, he layeth ſome *Tax* or other upon every houſe, receiveth the *Tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines; and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaſeth to chuſe, ſo it be not that in which the Lords themſelves inhabit.

This, though it be no great *Intrado*, conſidering the large extent of his *Dominions*, and *Form* of his *Government*; yet it is greater in *proportion* than his *Forces*, are. For notwithſtanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag of raiſing a Million of Men for preſent ſervice; it is well known, that he was never able to advance half that number in his greateſt neceſſity; and amongſt thoſe whom he can raiſe, there are but few who can deſerve the name of Soldiers. For the People being poor and beggarly, and brought up in a ſervile and baſe condition, are naturally deſtitute of that courage and alacrity of Spirit which ſhould be in Men profeſſing *Arms*, or fit for Noble Undertakings, and are beſides, on certain *Jealouſies* of State, ſo diſuſed from War, that they know not how to uſe their Weapons, when there is occaſion. So that for my part, I conſider him a ſa weak and *Impuiſſant* Prince, of no Authority or Influence out of his *Dominions*; nor able to defend himſelf from the continual *Incurſions* of his Neighbours (ſome of them mean and petit Princes) which lie neareſt to him. *Landlocked* on every ſide from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon *Northward* by the *Turks*; confronted on the Weſt by the King of *Borneo*, who poſſeſſeth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the Eaſt, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, ſometimes a *Vaſſal* of his own; and on the South with the *Gallæ*, a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waſte before them whereſoever they come; and finally in the latter time by his own Subjects. Injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief ſtay of this Eſtate, is an *Order of Knighthood*, entituled by the name of St. *Anthony*, to which every Father that is of the degree of a Gentleman, is to deſtinate one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the eldeſt; and out of theſe they cull about 12000 Horſe, which are to be the ſtanding Guard of the Emperour's perſon: their Oath is, to defend the Frontiers of the Empire, to preſerve Religion, and to make head againſt the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religous*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*, where they have two *Monaſteries*, as well for the training up of theſe Knights in the time of their Youth, as their *retirement* when grown old, and diſcharged from Service: When the *Portugueſe* in the laſt Century ſent Succours to *Claudius* the then Emperor, tho' the Main body returned, ſome part ſtaid behind, and were married to the Women of *Æthiopia*; and their Poſterity has ſince encreaſed to many thouſands, and are trained up as Foot-men to the uſe of Fire-Arms; for which they are accounted the beſt part of the Forces of this Kingdom, and have lands and Good Privileges allowed to them for their Support and Encouragement.

The Arms of this Empire we have ſeen before.

And ſo much for *ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR*.

OF

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

Æ*THIOPIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Red Sea*, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulph of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the Weſt, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North, with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *Higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean, parting it from the Southern undiſcovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reaſon before delivered; *Inferior* was added for diſtinction ſake, becauſe ſome what of a lower ſituation than the other is. By *Ptolemy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, becauſe lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge, than the nearer did: and by late Writers, for the contrary reaſon, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, becauſe ſituate without and beyond the other. Mr. *Pory* thus bounds it: On the North it has the great River *Zaire* and the *Upper Æthiopia*, and on the other ſides it is encompaſſed with the Ocean, ſtretching it ſelf Northwards to the entrance of the *Red Sea*, and bounding the *Upper Æthiopia* Eaſt, Weſt, and South; and divided into the Kingdoms of *Congo*, *Monotapia*, the Coaſt of *Cafares*, *Zanguebar*, and *Adel*, with many other ſmaller Kingdoms. by which Deſcription, he brings it more to the North than our Author doth, who takes *Adel* and *Adea* into the *Upper Æthiopia*.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolemy*'s *Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia ſub Ægypto*, and all thoſe Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Country ſo little diſcovered in thoſe elder times, that we find mention only of ſome eminent Mountains, as 1. *Ganchis*, 2. *Lon*, 3. *Ziphia*, 4. *Barditus*, 5. *Moſchii*; one only Region known by name, called *Agiſimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The People not diſtinguiſhed here as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; ſome of them being called *Anthropophagi*, from their eating of Men; and others *Ichthyophagi*, from their living on fiſh. Of theſe, the firſt inhabited on the Eaſtern ſhores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*, the principal of which had the name of *Rapſii*: the laſt on the ſhores of the Weſtern Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called alſo from their Weſtern Situation, by the name of *Heſperii*. Nothing elſe told us of theſe parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the Lakes or Fens of *Nilus* were occaſioned by the great abundance of Snow, which fell from the *Mountains of the Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinocerots*, Tygers, Elephants, but theſe laſt all white.

Such was the face of this Country in thoſe elder days. The Character of it at the preſent, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *Mountainous* in the Weſt, *Sandy* in the midſt, and *Deſart* towards the Eaſt. But for the ſeveral qualities of the ſoil, and people being of very different tempers; we ſhall give the better deſcription of them in their ſeveral *Incloſures*, then as preſented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of moſt reckoning in it; the princiapl of their Mountains are, 1. thoſe called *Cantaberes* in the Province of *Angola*, abounding in excellent Silver

Mines; 2. *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopia*'s, now found to belong to this alone. A Chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*; full of ſharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and ſavage people: the Vallies underneath of ſo great a *depth*, that they ſeem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, ſo much renowned for giving birth to the greateſt Rivers of the World; though it ſelf but 50 miles in compaſs. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1. *Nilus*, which paſſing through ſome part of this Country and traverſing the whole length of the *Abaſſine* and Egyptain Empires, endeth its long courſe in the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Zaire*, the greateſt of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Ancients; which running Weſtward through the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the leſſer Streams of 1. *Vamba*, 2. *Barbela*, 3. *Coanza*, 4. *Lelunda*, makes many Iſlands in his way, and, at the laſt by a mouth of 28 miles wideneſs, diſgorgeth his full ſtomach in the Weſtern Ocean. 3. *Cuama*, which making his paſſage towards the Eaſt, and much increaſed by the addition of ſix great Rivers, after a long courſe of 700 miles (in all which it is Navigable) loſeth it ſelf in the *Indian*, or *Arabian* Ocean. And 4. *Fluvius Spiritus ſancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which ſhaping a Courſe oppoſite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in concluſion in the Southern Seas. It is divided moſt properly into theſe four parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Zanguebar*, 2. *Monomotapa*, 3. *Cafraria*, 4. *Manicongo*. Some alſo add the Country of *Aian*, ſubdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. But theſe we have aſcribed with better reaſon to the other *Æthiopia*, within the Bounds whereof they are wholly ſituate.

It may be obſerved here once for all, that in all the barbarous Nations round the Globe, we meet with *Man Eaters* or *Cannibals*; the Reaſons of which I conceive are two; firſt, their Barbarous Feirceneſs againſt their Enemies, ſo that not content to Kill them, they afterwards Eat them too: It being obſerved, the *Americans* eat none but their Enemies, tho' ſome Nations have been obſerved to eat the Dead Bodies of their Friends out of Reſpect and Love: Secondly; their Improvidence in making due and timely Proviſions for Famines and Times of great Scarcity; ſo that when ſuch ſeaſons happen, they are ſoon reduced to eat one the other, or Starve. And it is probable this Cuſtom aroſe at firſt from one of theſe Cauſes, tho' it might afterwards be carried on out of pure Ferity and Rudeneſs. The Civiler Nations abhor this as the utmoſt Barbarity; whereas they ought rather to Conſider, that ſome few Ages ſince, it was the Cuſtom of the Countries they now inhabit; and ſo they ought rather to Pitty and Reduce theſe Poor *Barbarians* to better Manners, than to hate them for it.

1. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Red Sea*, or the *Indian* Ocean, on the Weſt with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with the *Higher Æthiopia* only; on the South with *Monomotapa*. The reaſon of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agiſimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in ſo much of the other alſo as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms, of *Adel* and *Adea*. The Country on both ſides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoyning Bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*, and was much famed in thoſe Elder Times for the beſt ſort of *Myrrh*: the *Myrrha Troglodytica*, and *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being uſed for the ſame by ſome of the Ancients, becauſe the *Troglodites*, and the people of this *Barbaria* joyned on one another. Here was alſo in thoſe elder times a good Race of Ginger, of which ſaith *Dioſcorides*, Μάκερ φλοιὸς ἐϛὶ κομιζόμενος ἐκ τῆς Βαρβαρίας, That it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbaria*. Where by the way, the *Scholiaſts* upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12. Book, have been much miſtaken; of which the firſt takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for ſome part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh, that the *Myrrha* of theſe parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the droſſineſs and coarſneſs of it, as if ſo called only becauſe unrefined. The Principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River, ſeated not far from the Sea; and by reaſon of the great Trade of it, eſteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolemy*. A noted Promontory of the ſame name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withal ſo full of Woods and Foreſts, that for want of paſſage for the Wind, the Air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obſtruction) exceeding peſtilent. The People of Complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-Coaſts; in the Inland-parts *Idolaters*; extreamly given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the Waſte, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beaſts or ſome ſuch mingled colour ſtuff, as the *Scottiſh Plad*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-coaſts, uſe to adventure on the Seas in little Veſſels, ſow'd together with leathern thongs, and calked with Gum; having no other Sails in them than the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as ſlight making as thoſe uſed anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

Primum cana ſalix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; cæſoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum ſuperenatat Amnem.

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

The moiſtned Oſier *of the hoary Willow*
Is woven firſt into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks Hides; *upon the Billow*
Of a Proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Melinde*, 2. *Bombaza*, 3. *Quiloa*, 4. *Moſambique*, 5. *Sofala*, all along the Coaſts, 6. *Moenbemage*, 7. *Corova*, 8. *Calen*, 9. *Anzuga*, 10. *Monzabo*, 11. *Badin*, 12. *Mombra*, 13. *Mombizo*, 14. *Embroe*, and 15. *Marcaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine laſt, not being perfectly diſcovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we ſhall now be ſilent. But the firſt ſix lying upon the Shores, or near it, and conſequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like Adventurers, ſhall be ſurveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the higher *Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: ſo named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well Walled, and ſeated in a fruitful and delightful Soil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Fleſh, Lemons, Citrons, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; but not well furniſhed with Corn, the greateſt part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia*, a Province of *India*. The Houſes built of Lime and Stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-Coaſts of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; thoſe of the In-lands, which are of the Original Natives, for the moſt part *Heathens*. Moſt of them of an Olive colour, but inclining to White; the Women generally of as white Complexion as in other places; but they have ſome black People alſo: and all of them more civil in their Habit, Courſe of Life, and Entertainment in their Houſes, than the reſt of this Country. Great Friends to the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever ſince the kind Entertainment

which they gave to *Vaſques de Gama*; whom they furniſhed with Pilots to direct in his way to *India*, when firſt diſcovered by that People, *Anno* 1497. They have an Iron Mine which they work to great advantage, *Nubienſis*, *p.* 27. This City ſtands ſix days Sail South of *Berva*, now *Brava*, and two North of *Monbaza*. *Pory* ſaith, the Kingdom ſtretcheth into the Land 100 Miles; the Capital City is ſtrong and very rich. From *Chaul* the *Portugueze* Trade along the Coaſt of *Melinda* in *Æthiopia*, within the Land of *Cafraria*. On that Coaſt are many good Harbours, kept by the *Moors* (*Arabians.*) Thither they bring corſe Bombaſt, and carry back Slaves, Ivory, and ſome Amber and Gold. *Hackl. T.* 2. *p.* 242. This was in 1569.

Note here, that all the Cities on the Eaſt of *Africa*, beyond Cape *Guarda Fuy* to the South, were built by the *Arabians*, who from the 12*th* Century, drove a great Trade here, and the moſt of them are mentioned by the *Nubian* Geoprapher, by the ſame Names they now have.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of theſe petit Kingdoms, of the ſame nature for the temper of the Soil and People that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, ſituate from *Melinde* about 70 Miles, in a little Iſland of 12 Miles compaſs; but of good influence on ſome part of the Continent alſo. The Iſle and City ſaid to have ſome reſemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a League in circuit, environed with a Wall, and fortified with a Caſtle; built by the *Portugueſe*, and a fine Sea-Port or Haven, the Streets thereof very narrow but well built, moſt of the Houſes being Brick, and the Moſques capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are moſt of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Chriſtians*. For which cauſe, and upon ſome diſcourteſies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vaſques de Gama*, *An.* 1500. but abandoned again by reaſon of the unhealthy Air, not wall agreeing with the conſtitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg*, and five *Turkiſh* Gallies, the better to enable themſelves againſt the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and ruinated by *Thomas de Catigno*, ſent thither *Anno* 1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy reſiding in *Goa*, there being taken at that time (beſides the ſpoil of the City) all the *Turkiſh* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many leſſer Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the *Turks* and Citizens as eſcaped the ſlaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themſelves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a Man-eating People, who had before beſieged the City; and gathering up ſuch gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the Principal Citizens as they could get into their hands: 2. *Ampaza*, the ſecond Town of Note, was taken by the *Portugals* about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleaſant, the Inhabitants for the moſt part of *Arabian* Anceſtry; of Complexion near unto a White: their Women comely, ſumptuous in Attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their Houſes, which are generally well built, and richly furniſhed. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whoſe Honour they are very tender) the People of this *Quiloa* are ſaid to have a ſtrange Cuſtom amongſt them, more to be mention'd for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the ſowing up of the private paſſages of Nature in their Female Children, leaving only a ſmall vent for their Urine. Thus ſowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be Married. And ſhe that is by her Husband found to want this ſign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of Ignominy ſent back to her Parents, and by them as diſgracefully received.

It took this name from *Quiloa*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate in a little Iſland, but near the Shore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, oppoſite to the mouth of the River *Coava*, by ſome called *Quiola*, which my Author erroneouſly ſaith, ſpringeth from the ſame Lake with the *Nile*, in a freſh and cool Air, and ſurrounded with Trees always Green, and a fruitful Country, yielding plenty of Victuals; firſt built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the Son of *Sultan Hiſchen*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, becauſe their Mothers were *Perſians*, and his an *Abaſſine*, ſought new Adventures in theſe parts, and bought this Iſland. His Succeſſors grown Rich and Powerful by the Trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land; and ſo Adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom; that for Sumptuous and Magnificent Buildings, there were few like it in thoſe parts. Proud of their many good Succeſſes, they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom, under the Conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama*, *An.* 1500. the City it ſelf was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave ſome Fortreſſes erected by them in convenient Places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a Quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Country; whom in the year 1505. they Depoſed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under the colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* roſe in Arms, diſplaced their new King, demoliſhed their Fortifications, and ſent them to learn better moderation in their proſperous Fortunes. *An.* 1509. it was taken by *Francis Almaida*, the *Portugal* Viceroy of *Africa*. The buſineſs coming after to a Compoſition, the *Quiloan* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold, paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in Peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble. The *Portugueſe* built a Fort on the City Iſland, which is ſince demoliſhed by order of the King of *Portugal*. *Pory.* The Inhabitants are *Moors*, Tall of Stature, and Contemptible as to Courage. The Iſland has plenty of Rice, Millet, Cattle, Woods, Palm-trees, Lemons, Oranges, and Sugar-Canes, which cannot improve.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*. So called of *Moſambique* the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland, the principal of three; oppoſite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Praſſam*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*, and by him made the furtheſt known place of all this Coaſt. In the Iſland there are ſaid to be Sheep, whoſe Tails are 25 pound weight, as in other places of theſe Countries, and ſome parts of *Syria*; Hens, black in Feathers, Fleſh, and Bone; and if ſodden, make the Water as black as Ink, but yet ſweeter in Taſte than any other. Of Pork good ſtore, the more, becauſe the People are for the moſt part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The In-land parts more barren, but very populous; ſo ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* firſt came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they ſold Fifteen Kine, and then fell out among themſelves, who ſhould have the Bell. The Town conveniently ſeated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, in the hand of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, uſe to call in here, and fit themſelves with all things neceſſary to purſue their Voyage. A Town of ſo great Wealth and Trading, that the Captain of the Caſtle in the time of his Government (which continueth only for Three years) is ſaid to lay up 300000 Ducats for his lawful Gains, out of that Gold that cometh from *Sofala*; a Gain ſo great, that at the end of his Three years, he is to ſerve for three years more at ſome place or other of the *Eaſt Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return into his Native Country. Such of that Nation as are ſuffer'd to inhabit here, are enjoyned to be Married, to the end the Iſland ſhould be well Peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwiſe perhaps might have few elſe in it but the Gariſon-Soldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants. This City is ſeated in a low Fenny Ground, in an unwholſom Air, but for the ſecurity of the Haven, defended by a ſtrong Fort, and for the plenty of Victuals and Trade, it was frequented beyond moſt of the Ports of this Ocean, eſpecially whilſt the *Eaſt-India* Trade was in the hands of the *Portugueſe*. On the Coaſt of *Melinda* the King of *Portugal* hath the Caſtle of *Moſambique* which is of as great

Importance as any Caſtle that he hath in all his *Indies*, *Hackl. T. 2 p.* 242.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Moſambique*, from which, parted by the River *Cuama*, the greateſt River of thoſe parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Manica*, by which ſeparated from *Monomotapa*: So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoyning. Both Town and Iſland ſubject unto the Power of th *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to ſecure the Factory by them here erected, one of the richeſt in the World; the People bringing in hither great quantity of Gold, of which they have moſt plentiful Mines; which they exchange with them for their Cloth and other Commodities. It is ſuppoſed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two Millions yearly. The ſuppoſition ſo agreeable to all other circumſtances, that little queſtion need be made of the truth thereof. Inſomuch as this Country for its abundance of Gold and Ivory, is by ſome thought to be that Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* ſent: And of this Opinion *Ortelius* in his *Theſaurus* was the firſt Author; but in my Mind, upon no probable conjecture, and againſt very ſtrong preſumption. For firſt, *Ophir* the Son of *Joctan*, of whom mention is made *Gen.* 29. *verſe* 10. and from whom the Land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name, is in the next verſe ſaid to have planted in the Eaſt; whereas this *Sofala* is ſituate South-Weſt from *Chaldea*, in which the confuſion of Tongues, and diſperſing of the People began. And Secondly, it is impoſſible for the Navy of *Solomon*, which lay at *Ezion-Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have ſpent three years in coming hither and returning: which we find to have been the uſual time of finiſhing the Voyage to *Ophir*, 1 *Kings*, 10. *Ophir* then is ſome part of *India*; but whether it were the Iſland of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Moluccoes*, or the Land of *Malaca*, called by the Ancients *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I dare not determine; conſidering what worthy Men maintain theſe ſeveral Opinions. *Nubienſis, p.* 30. mentions this Country, and ſaith, in his time it had theſe Mines of Gold, and the Cities of *Hantema*, *Dandema*, *Saiona*, the Princes Reſidence, *Bocha* and *Gaſta*. The Gold of this Country was the beſt in the World. This was the moſt Southern part then known on the Eaſtern part of *Africa*; it lying 21 Degrees beyond the Line on the Weſtern Coaſt; they knew nothing beyond the Southern Mouth of the *Niger*, which lies in 11 Degrees of Northern Lat. The King is a *Moor*, and a Tributary to the Crown of *Portugal*, not being able to oppoſe the King of *Monotapia* without that Dependance. Before the *Portugueſe*, the *Moors* of *Magadoxo* and *Quiloa* had this rich Trade. *Pory.*

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only Inland Province of any note, hath on the Eaſt *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*; on the Weſt, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, ſome part of the Dominions of the *Abaſſine* Emperors; on the South, *Moſambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the People uſe it not for Money; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and Taffataes, with which they uſe to cloath themſelves from the Girdle downwards. Inſtead of Money they make uſe of Red Counters, much reſembling Glaſs. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are alſo ſubject a wild and cruel People, called *Agag*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zembre*, and the Banks of the *Nilus*; diſperſed about the Fields in their homely Cottages, black Cannibals, and of an horrible Aſpect; more horrible than otherwiſe they would be, by drawing Lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron Inſtrument, and forcing their Eye-lids to turn backwards. By the aſſiſtance of this People, the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preſerved his Eſtate againſt the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themſelves by ſome of their own Leaders did ſo diſtreſs the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a ſmall Iſland, where he hardly eſcaped a violent and untimely death, moſt of his People being ſtarved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the reſt of theſe Provinces, we can ſay but little; and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the moſt part from one another, both in Speech and Behaviour; each Village under a ſeveral King, and each in a continual Quarrel with its next neighbours; whom, if they ovecome, they eat. At leaſure times they live by Hunting, and the fleſh of Elephants. And amongſt theſe, but more upon the borders of the *Abaſſine* Empire, I place the *Gallæ*; a Nationleſs Nation as it were, without Houſe or Dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom ſome call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be, who watching their advantages, and joined together in ſome Arts of doing miſchief, have made of late ſuch Deſolations in the Country of *Preſtor-John*. It is very remarkable, that the Coaſt of *Africa* was known to *Moſambique* in *Ptolemy*'s time, and but to *Sofala* in all the times that followed, till the *Portugueſe* doubled the *Cape* of *Good-hope*, and ſo came from the South to meet and ſtop the further progreſs of theſe *Mahometans*.

2. MONOMOTAPA.

MONOMOTAPA, BENOMOTANA, or BENOMOTAXA (for by all theſe names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which, and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt and South, by the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, by which ſeparated from *Cafraria*; and on the Eaſt by the main Ocean. So that is almoſt an Iſland; ſaid to contain in compaſs 750 *Spaniſh* Leagues, or 3250 *Italian* Miles. It contains in it 25 Kingdoms, which are all governed by Kings, ſubject to the Emperor of *Monotapia*. The principal City is of the ſame name.

The Air hereof is ſaid to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleaſant, yet full of Foreſts. Well watered, beſides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1. *Panami*, 2. *Luanga*, 3. *Arruga*, 4. *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their ſands. By means whereof it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great ſtore of Paſturage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beaſts very large and great, ſuch ſtore of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reaſon, but to make Merchandice of their Teeth: Their Gold-Mines, great and ſmall, reckoned to 3000; ſome in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*; the places where the Mines are, known without further art in the diſcovery of them by the dryneſs and barrenneſs of the Soil; as if Nature could not hord up Gold in her ſpacious Boſome, but ſhe muſt needs be barren of all good Works. This Gold is the pureſt in all *Africa*, dug out of the Earth with eaſe, lying not above three Foot deep, and in ſome deſart places, the People find great pieces of Gold upon the ſurface of the Earth, ſome of which weigh an Ounce. The *Portugueſe* have ſeated in this Kingdom upon the River *Sene* at *Sofala*, and ſome of them have 5000 *Cafres* to their Slaves, with which they make War, upon ſlight occaſion; the Governour of *Mozambique* furniſhing them with Calico's, Arms, &c. at his own Rates. *Tavernier, p.* 2. *p.* 156. *Pory* in his Introduction to *Leo Africanus* gives a large Account of this mighty Empire; which he ſaith, is ſupported principally by *Amazons*, or *Female Warriours*, *p.* 32.

The People are of mean ſtature, and black complexions; but ſtrong and active, couragious, and of ſuch footmanſhip that they out-run Horſes. Their apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make or buy from ſome other place: their Diet Fleſh, Fiſh, Rice, Mill; and an Oil called *Suſiman*. Their Religion Paganiſm for the moſt part; yet they worſhip not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Mozimo*; and ſeem not much averſe from the

Chriſtian Faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They puniſh nothing more ſeverely than *Witchcraft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the Puniſhment of *Delinquents* they uſe no Priſons, but execute them as ſoon as apprehended; which is the Reaſon that the Vulgar have no Doors to their Houſes, that being a Privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the firſt the Principal, and her Children only to be Heirs: The Women here very much reſpected (as a ſecond *England*) the Emperor himſelf, if he meeteth any of them in the Streets, he giveth them the Way. They are not to be Married till their *Menſtrua*, or Natural Purgations teſtifie their Ability for Conception; and therefore they Solemnize the firſt *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feaſt.

Provinces of moſt note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of his Empire are.

1. *MATUCA*, rich in the Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botongbi*; who though they dwell between the Line and the Tropick, have in the Winter ſuch deep Snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not ſpeedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrinetes*, (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latins*) wealthy in fat Paſtures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her inexhauſtible Mines of Gold. Memorable for a large, and in thoſe times an impregnable Fortreſs, built formerly by ſome Foreign Prince to ſecure the Mines; of ſquare Stone, and every Stone of marvellous greatneſs, without any ſign of Cement or other Mortar; the Walls hereof 25 ſpans thick, but the height not anſwerable; over the Gate certain Characters written, which the moſt Learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of ſome of the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Emperors, when their Power and Empire was at the higheſt. By the Inhabitants who conceive it to be a work beyond Humane Power, it is thought to have been built by Devils; but by thoſe who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, aſcribed to *Solomon*, though ſituate 510 miles more Weſtward than *Sofala*, by their own account. The Air here very cold, by reaſon of the ſharp blaſts coming from the *Pole-Antartick*; ſo much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other ſewel, but what they make themſelves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QUITICUI*, both furniſhed with Gold alſo in their Mines aud Rivers, but not ſo pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet ſuch as ſerves their turn ſo well, as to ſpoil all induſtry: the People here being very careleſs in providing neceſſaries, which they preſume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHABAN*, Governed by a King of its own, but Vaſſal and Tributary to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, the King whereof in the year 1560. was Chriſtened by *Gonſalvo Silveria* a *Spaniſh Jeſuite*, by the Name of *Conſtantine*; his Queen baptized by the Name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further Progreſs of Chriſtianity. Touching 6. *Matana*, 7. *Melemba*, 8. *Buinbcbe*, 9. *Berteca*, and 10. *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their Names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the Houſes being here ſo thin, that from the Border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is ſaid, there is no ſign of any Building either old or new. The Principal of thoſe that be, 1. *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhamban*, and the Seat-royal of thoſe Kings: Memorable for the Baptiſm of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2. *Simbus*, ſuppoſed to be ſo called from the *Agiſymba* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torra*, or *Banet*; diſtant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighboured by the Remains or Ruins of the old Fortreſs before deſcribed. 3. *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperor makes his uſual reſidence; giving this Name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himſelf, whom they call *Bonomotaxa*, or *Monomotapata*, the word in their Language ſignifying a King or Emperor.

The King hereof, accounted one of the greateſt of *Africk*, hath under his command, beſides the Provinces deſcribed, ſome part of *Cafraria*. Of great Riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which ſo abundantly ſupply all the Royal occaſions, that he exacteth no kind of Tribute from his Subjects, but ſome certain days Service in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Preſents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitudes of Men conſidered; but weak, for want of Skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern Service; the Arms they moſt uſe being only Darts and Targets. For which cauſe, (and in regard the People of the ſubject Kingdoms are ſo prone to Rebellions, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the Tributary Kings as Hoſtages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wageth Mercenary Soldiers of other Nations, whom he diſtributeth abroad in his ſeveral Provinces; and amongſt theſe it is affirmed, that he hath a ſtrong Battalion of *Amazons*, a Warlke Race of Women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts of *Zanzibar*, compared by ſome for their Fidelity and Proweſs, to the *Turkiſh* Janizaries. And yet, not truſting wholly to the Faith of theſe Mercenaries, it is ſaid that he keeps 200 Maſtives for the Guard of his Perſon. Much reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is ſerved upon the Knee; and when he Cougheth or Drinketh, all thoſe that are about him make ſuch a ſhout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from moſt Nations elſe, which is, That ſuch as are admitted into his Preſence, are bound to Sit down in token of Reverence; to Stand before him, being a ſign of the greateſt Dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced Chriſtianity in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonſalvo* the Jeſuit, by the Name of *Sebaſtian*, that being the Name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards, on the ſuggeſtions of ſome *Arabians* then in great place about him, having cauſed the Jeſuit to be ſlain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 Men, under the Conduct of *Franciſco Barretio*; to whom he offered very honourable amends for the Injury done: But *Barretio* having in hope ſwallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any Peaceable Agreement; but referred the Buſineſs to a Battel; in which being overcome himſelf, and his whole Forces not long after conſumed by Sickneſs, the hopes of Chriſtianity, and the *Portugals* Intereſt in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. *CAFRARIA.*

CAFRARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; on the South and Weſt, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to ſome parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafras*, which in the *Arabian* Tongue ſignifieth an *Heretick*; a Name by them given to Chriſtians, Heathens, and thoſe of their own Religion alſo, which differ in Opinion from them; but given to this Region by ſome late Writers, becauſe deſtitute of another name.

The Country, for ſo much of it as hath been diſcovered, is ſaid to be full of great Herds of Cattel and Flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, Antilopes, Baboons, Foxes, Hares, Oſtriches, Pelicans, Herons, Geeſe, Ducks, Pheſants, Partridges; in a word, all things neceſſary for the Life of Man, were it ſomewhat better ſtored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally ſtored with Woods and Foreſts: the Hills thereof intermixt with graſſy Vallies, that pity 'tis ſo beautiful and rich a Country ſhould be inhabited by ſo barbarous and rude a People;

ple, who being utterly unprovided of Towns and Houſes, live in Woods like Beaſts. Of colour Black, thick Lips, flat Noſes, long ſhaped Heads, and moſt monſtrous Ears, extended far beneath their Shoulders, by hanging in them Iron chains, Glaſs, Bullets, Bells, and ſuch ponderous baubles. Theſe Ornaments common to both Sexes, who alſo uſe (for their greater beauty) moſt hideouſly to ſlaſh themſelves in all parts of their Bodies, even their very Bellies; as if no lace could better ſort with their Naked skins; with which only, except ſome flap of an Hide or other Leather to hide their Privaties, they are here apparelled.

Their beſt Habits for the moſt part are the Hides of Beaſts, undreſſed, unfaſhioned, juſt as they tear them from the Fleſh; but when they cloath themſelves with Sheep skins, they have ſo much wit as to wear their Fleece next their Bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expoſe (with no ſmall Pride and Glory) to the open view. Their Voice ſo inarticulate, that it is hard to be diſtinguiſhed into Words and Syllables; which being compared with that brutiſhneſs, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to ſay, whether the People generally may be thought to be Men in the Skins of Beaſts, or Beaſts created in the likeneſs and ſhape of Men. But they make a greater uſe of their Cattel, than for Garments only, their raw Fleſh ſerving them for Food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleanſed, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countries. Gold here ſo vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Braſs, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in ſuch ſenſleſs diſproportion, as rendreth Braſs and Iron the more excellent Metals.

But amongſt all the ſeveral Nations which inhabit this moſt flouriſhing Country, none are more barbarous than thoſe whom they call the *Imbians*, they call themſelves *Hottentots*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of Good Hope*; tall, ſquare, and ſtrong, addicted always to War and Rapine, and feeding on the Fleſh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whoſe death they haſten for the Shambles; the Sculls of whom they uſe for their drinking Cups. *Tavernier*, *Part* 2. *p.*204 ſaith, the Mother cuts out the right Stone of every Male as ſoon as it is born. They know nothing of Gold or Silver; God or Religion: neither Men nor Women are aſhamed to ſhew their Nakedneſs, for indeed they are but a ſort of Humane Beaſts; yet after all they have ſome Knowledge in Simples, and cured ſeveral *Dutchmen* of deſperate old Sores, with Herbs. They ſell their Cattel for *Aquavitæ*, Tobacco, Chryſtal, and Agat-Beads, and old Iron. In all this he agrees exactly with Mr. *Herbert*, who was in theſe Parts. Their Weapons are poiſoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry Fire before them, menacing thereby to Roaſt or Boil all ſuch as they overcome. Their King (if ſuch a ſacred Name become ſuch an impious Monſter) they account for Lord of all the Earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the Deſtruction of Men, but ſhooteth his poiſoned Arrows againſt Heaven it ſelf, as often as the Rain or Heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inroad into *Zanzibar*, laid deſolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they beſieged, ſacked, and devoured the People of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our deſcription of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, ſcarce ſo much as Houſes; and thoſe ſo mean, that they deſerve not to be ſo called: except it be ſome Sheds on the Sea-ſides, for the uſe of Sailors. Of moſt note in it, is *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or ſixteen Leagues on the North-Weſt from the *Cape of Good Hope*; not ſo much noted for the Buildings adjoining to it (if there be any ſuch) as the Bay it ſelf; environed on all ſides with a pleaſant Country, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleaſing to the Senſe, but very Medicinal for many Diſeaſes, eſpecially for thoſe that are troubled with the *Scorbute*, (or *Scurvy*, as we uſe to call it) the Hills adjoining ſtored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cows, though leſs in ſize than thoſe in theſe Northern parts; great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eaſtern Voyages; for here ſuch as are to ſail towards the *Indies*, uſe to take in freſh Water, and make proviſion of things neceſſary for ſo long a Voyage. I have heard that ſome of our *Engliſh* Ships in their return from the *Eaſt-Indies*, ſeized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on Ship board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end, that having learned the *Engliſh* Tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Eſtate and Affairs of this Country. One of theſe which was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, (for the other died upon the way) was dieted and cloathed according to the *Engliſh* faſhion, gratified alſo with braſs Rings, Beads, and ſuch other things, by which they thought they might moſt gain upon him to affect the change of his Condition. But *Home is home, though it be but homely*, as the ſaying is. For this poor wretch having learned ſo much *Engliſh* as to bemoan his Miſfortunes, would throw himſelf upon the Ground, and cry out with great anguiſh and vexation of ſpirit, *Goore home go, Soldania go, Goore home go*; out of which unquietneſs of humour, when they could not get him, they ſent him back in the next Ships which were bound to the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he ſaw any Ship with *Engliſh* Colours, he would joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his Neck (as their Cuſtom is) and readily perform all good Offices towards them; yet ſo, that it was found withal, that by diſcovering to the Natives how low eſteem the *Engliſh* had of Braſs and Iron, they thenceforth raiſed the Value of thoſe richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for ſuch ſorry trifles, as have been ſpoken of before.

But that which is of moſt conſideration in all this Country, is the Cape it ſelf; diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the Conduct of *Bortholomew Diaz*, in their firſt *Indian* Undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempeſts which he found about it, was firſt called *Tormentoſa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the Cape, and thereby finding good hopes of a proſperous Voyage, they cauſed it to be called, *Cabo di Buena Speranza*, or the *Cape of Good Hope*: *Vaſques di Gama*, the firſt Diſcoverer of this way to the Wealth of *India*, being then their Admiral, *Anno* 1497. The Diſcovery was firſt deſigned to be made in the year 1484. but much time was ſpent in procuring from the Pope a Grant of all the Lands and Trade they ſhould find: And when they began the Enterprize, it was ſome years before they reached to this Cape. It conſiſteth of three great Points of head-lands, of which that which is neareſt us, is the *Cape of Good Hope*; the middlemoſt hath the Name of *Cabo Falſo*, becauſe miſtaken for the other, by ſome of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Guglia*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reaſon of thoſe ſharp Points which ſhoot towards the Sea. On the top of the Cape, is a large and pleaſing Plain, adorned with great variety of Flowers, and covered with a Carpet of Graſs: it is called the *Table of the Cape*, and yieldeth a large proſpect over the Sea on all ſides. The Sea here is very rough and tempeſtuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spaniſh* Captain being ſore vexed with a Storm, expoſtulated with GOD, why he ſuffered his *Good Catholicks* to endure ſuch Torments; and permitted the *Engliſh Hereticks*, and Blaſphemers, to paſs ſo eaſily.

The Country is not ſubjected to any one Prince, the Natives being governed by the Chiefs of their ſeveral *Clans*; nor find I hitherto that either *Portugals* or *Spaniards*, have took poſſeſſion of any one Part of it, in the Name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the beſt

Title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom Poſſeſſion was taken of it in the Reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Aſcent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his begat any good Title, or whether the Title of a Country lying ſo far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Stateſmen*.

4. MANICONGO.

MANICONGO is bounded on the South with *Cafraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moon*; on the Weſt with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the Eaſt with *Zanzibar*, and ſome part of the *Abaſſine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the Principal of thoſe many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof ſo temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inſomuch, as the People do not uſe to Change their Garments, or to make more Fire than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the Nights ſo equal to the Days: that for the greateſt part of the year there is little difference; the Country being ſituate under the *Æquator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot notwithſtanding in the heats of Summer, by reaſon of the cool Winds which then blow continually; and the great Dews, which falling in the Night make ſome compenſation for the extream fervour of the Day. The Soil ſo exceeding fruitful in the Production of Herbs, Plants, Fruits, and ſuch ſtore of Paſturage, that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares, and Coneys: Elephants of that bigneſs, that their Teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of ſo vaſt a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; Tygers too, which deſtroy Man and Beaſt: Not to ſay any thing of their Fowl, both wild and tame, which they have in great abundance.

The People of mean Stature, black of Complexion, thick Lips, and having the Apple of the Eye of divers colours, which makes them ghaſtly to behold; ſtrong and long lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In Religion for the moſt part Heathens, ſome worſhipping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurſe of all things; and ſome again, wild Beaſts and Serpents. So populous, that without any ſenſible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is ſuppoſed that they ſell 28000 Slaves to the *Portugals* yearly: by whom they are ſent into *Braſil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houſes. The *Chriſtian* Faith admitted in ſome few of their Provinces, but eſpecially in that of *Congo*; where firſt preached, in the Reign of *John* II. King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Suſa*; who having converted and baptized the King's Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed ſo far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Goſpel*. Received there by the People with ſuch infinite joy, that when their firſt Biſhop came to live amongſt them, they cauſed the Ways from the Sea-ſide to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fiſh, Veniſon, and other Neceſſaries, to teſtifie their Rejoycings in that happy Change. And though many of the Subjects, in the other Provinces were Baptized accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after ſome ſmall trial of it, they relapſed to their former *Heatheniſm*; either unable, or not willing to conform to ſo ſtrict a Rule. Mr. *Pory* ſaith, in the 15th Century, the *Agags Giachi*'s or *Galla*'s, a barbarous, wandering, naked People, of great Valour, invaded this Kingdom, overthrew the King in ſeveral Battels, who was called Don *Alvaro*, and forced him to fly to the *Iſle of Horſes*, in the River *Zaire*, where he fell into an incurable Dropſie, and his People in vaſt numbers died by Famine; ſo that for Bread they were forced to ſell their Wives and Children for Slaves to the *Portugueſe*. This was the occaſion of the dividing and ruining that once ſo potent a Kingdom. Eaſt and Weſt it ſtretcheth from the Ocean to *Aquelunda*, and from 2 to 13 South Latitude; the breadth from Eaſt to Weſt is 600 miles, according to its more ancient bounds, but now it lies between 4 and 10 Degrees. *St. Salvador*, the principal City, and the Reſidence of the King, (who is a *Chriſtian*) ſtands in *Pemba*. *Phillippa Pigafetta* wrote an account of the Kingdom of *Congo*, tranſlated into *Engliſh* by *Abraham Hartwell*, and is the Fountain of what can be ſaid of this Kingdom. *Pory*, *p.* 41.

Principal Rivers of this Country. 1. *Bengo*, 2. *Coanza*, 3. *Dande*, 4. *Barbela*, 5. *Ambrezi*, 6. *Loza*, 7. *Zaire*. This laſt the greateſt of them all, if not of all *Africk* alſo: Of which though we have ſpoke already, we ſhall add this here, That it falleth into the *Æthiopick* Sea with ſo great a Violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen ſometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural ſweetneſs; not intermingled nor corrupted with the ſalt Sea-waters. Nor can the People ſail above five miles againſt the Stream, by reaſon of the Cataracts, or huge Falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than thoſe of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of moſt note, they are, 1. *Sierra complida*, or the long Mountain; 2. *Mons Cryſtalli*, or the *Chryſtalline* Mountain, ſo called from the abundance of *Cryſtal*, which is found therein; 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of exceſſive height; 4. *Montes Sal-Nitri*, ſo called from their abounding in that kind of Mineral; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general Muſter in the Stile Imperial; wherein their King calleth himſelf King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Samdi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Matana*, *Quiſoma*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congemes*, *Amozale*, *Languelungi*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zoanghi*. Many of theſe not ſo well diſcovered, as to afford us any Matter fit for our Diſcourſe; the Principal of thoſe that be, are,

1. ANGOLA, bounded on the South with *Cafraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of *Silver* and moſt excellent *Copper*; ſome ſtore of Kine and Horſes brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their Tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a ſpecial Ornament) than keep for any other uſe; their chiefeſt Diet being Dogs, which they fat for the Shambles; and to that Dainty ſo affected, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give 20 Slaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture ſomewhat at the Nature of the People, who, beſides this, are ſaid to be much given to *Sorcery* and *Divinations* by the flight of Birds; Skilful in Medicinal Herbs and Poyſons, and by familiarity with the *Devil* able to tell things to come. Permitted, as moſt *Pagans* are, to have as many Wives as they will; who with the reſt of the Women, whether Maids, or Widows, uſe at the firſt ſight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare Bums in defiance of her, as the Cauſe of their troubleſome Purgations.

In this Country are the Mountains called *Cantabaries*, rich in Mines of Silver; but thoſe Mines not ſuffered to be digged, for fear of drawing ſome unneceſſary War upon them: ſo that they uſe Glaſs Beads for Money, and therewith alſo do adorn the Perſons of greateſt Eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal Reſidence of their Kings; but not elſe obſervable.

This Country was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Dieggo Can*, *Anno* 1476. the King hereof at that time *Vaſſal* unto him of *Congo*, and ſo continued till that King did embrace the Goſpel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have ſince ſubſiſted of themſelves without ſuch dependance. At firſt they held good correſpondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: but after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many as they found in *Cabazza*, *An.* 1578. under colour of ſome pretended treaſon. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of theſe parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming ſuch people as he had, with two Gallies and ſome other Veſſels, paſſed up the River of *Coanza*, waſting the Country on both ſides. Againſt whom the King of *Angola* raiſed an Army of a *Million* of men (as ſome Writers tell us:) but amongſt thoſe multitudes of Men, there were ſo few Soldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with ſome of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, *An.* 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expreſſed ſome good affections unto *Chriſtianity*; ſending unto the King of *Congo* for ſome *Prieſts* to inſtruct him in it, but obtained them not; the ſtate of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a ſtrong Fort, ſituate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only ſecure their Trade but command a great part of the Country, till diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the treachery and falſhood of the *Hollanders*, *An.* 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themſelves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Ceſſation from all Hoſtility with them was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after, a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles wereof it was conditioned, that this peace ſhould not begin in the *Eaſt-India*, till the end of the year, nor in *Braſil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themſelves Maſters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold on; who following theſe inſtructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Caſtles as their Special Friends, which preſently they poſſeſſed themſelves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to ſeek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Iſle of St. *Thomas*.

To this King belong alſo the two Provinces of *Matana* and *Quiſoma*, though both uſed in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the firſt lying towards the Sea, is ſaid to be of a wholeſom air, and a fertile ſoil; outwardly furniſhed with fruits, and inwardly with mines of *Cryſtal* and others metals; but not very rich, for want of ſome convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great *Lake* called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*; but tributary at that time to the King of *Conga*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke by reaſon of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars againſt him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Coanza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*; on the Eaſt, *Pemba*; on the Weſt, the *Æthiopick* or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Country rich in *Mines* of Silver, well ſtored with Beaſts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongſt the Birds, *Parrots* both green and grey, and many which are taught to ſing; not much inferior for their muſick to the Birds of the *Canaries*. Amongſt the Beaſts of moſt note, is that called the *Zebra*, ſhaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly ſo ſtreaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and thoſe ſtreaks ſo naturally ſet in ſuch even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a moſt pleaſing object. But wild, and of ſo ſwift a foot, that *velox ut Zebra*, to be *as ſwift as a Zebra*, is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Portugals*. The Men ſo ſtrong, that it is ſaid of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or ſtrike a ſlave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Veſſel of wine, weighing 325 Pound weight, containing the fourth part of a Butt; and hold it ſo till it quite be drawn out. It containeth in it many *Seigniories*, moſt of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1. S. *Paul*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Loanda*; inhabited for the moſt part by *Portugal* Families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is ſituate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the Weſt, *Bamba*; on the Eaſt, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*, Eſteemed to be the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Country of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beſet with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always, green. The Water of ſo good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholeſom, and earth as fruitful; productive of all ſorts of grain, but ſpecially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *muſtard-ſeed*, but bigger, which they grind in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm* ſince the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Phyſician*, *Chirurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently cloathed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained ſtill by the *Villagers* and poorer ſort, in ſome part of the Country. Their chief City formerly had the name of *Banza*, ſo called, becauſe the King's Court (as the word doth ſignifie) but ſince the receiving of the *Goſpel* it is called S. *Saviours*: diſtant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (ſince it became *Chriſtian*) with a Biſhop's See, and a fair *Cathedral*, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers and Ornaments accuſtomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it ſelf ſituate on the ſide of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a ſpacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compaſs, full of Villages, Burroughs, and ſcattered Houſes; which are thought to have 100000 perſons, moſt of them *Portugals* and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the Weſt and South, *Pemba*; on the Eaſt, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and thoſe called *Salnitri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and People there is nothing ſingular to be ſaid, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more Military, and better furniſhed for the Wars, than the reſt of theſe Provinces: neceſſitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and ſavage people, dwelling about the ſpurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jagges* or *Giacchi*. Theſe naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Sierra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous part of this Region, under the Conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are ſince grown into a people, and become a terrour to their Neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans fleſh, which they prefer before that of Beeves or Mutton; not yet ſo qualified by the change of their Country, as to build Houſes, ſow or plant, or to breed up Cattel; finding it far the eaſier life, to maintain themſelves by the labour and ſpoil of others. And which is yet moſt ſtrange of all, though they have each of them many Wives, ten or twenty apiece, yet they have no Children, but ſtrangle them as ſoon as born, leſt they ſhould be an hinderance to their often wandrings. But as *Pliny* once ſaid of the *Eſſeni*, *Gens æterna eſt in qua nemo naſcitur*; ſo we may alſo ſay of theſe, that they do not want ſucceſſion, though they breed no Children: ſelecting out of their Captives and ſtollen Children, ſome of either Sex, (but

neither ſteal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new poſterity. Againſt theſe *Monſters* thoſe of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwiſe able to defend themſelves, their Wives and Children, from their hands and teeth: inſomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggeſt, is able to raiſe 70000 Men, well armed, and fit for any ſervice. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Lelanda*; and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, who is always of the *Blood Royal*, honoured ſometimes with ſitting at the King's own Table, which none elſe may do; and of ſo great authority in all *Conſultations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO* is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the Eaſt, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which cloſe up this Country: on the North with *Sunda*: and on the Weſt, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little ſingular; of the Country, leſs. Neighboured on the North-Eaſt towards *Sierra de Cryſtal*, with the *Languelungi*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Æthiopes Heſperii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*: a barbarous Nation, but of ſo conſiderable power, that they are found amongſt the reſt in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it, called *Pango*, is ſeated on the Weſtern Bank of the River *Barbele*, the ordinary Reſidence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. *SUNDA* is bounded on the South with *Batta*: on the North with the great River *Zaire*: on the Eaſt with *Barbele*: and on the Weſt with part of *Songo*. The Country, rich in ſeveral Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, becauſe it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives and Armour; well furniſhed alſo with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great eſteem among Foreign Merchants. This is the beſt *Region* of this *Kingdom*, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*: not much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicateth to the whole.

7. *SONGO* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Batta* and *Anzichana*: on the Weſt with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean: on the North with the Kingdom of *Loanga*: and on the South with the River *Ambrizi*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both ſides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here ſo turbulent and broad, and ſo full of *Iſlands*, that the one part of it hath little or no Commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Country; in which is nothing ſingular for the Soil or People.

8. *ANZICHANA* hath on the Weſt, part of *Songo* and *Loango*, extended thence unto the Eaſt, as far almoſt as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North, ſome part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it; the crueleſt *Cannibals* in the World: for they do not only eat their Ememies, but their Friends and Kinſfolk. And that they may be ſure not to want theſe Dainties, they have *Shambles* of Mans fleſh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withal, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when ſold joint by joint, than if ſold alive; they will cut them out, and ſell them ſo upon the *Shambles*. Yet with theſe barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be ſo cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will diſcharge 28 Arrows (for ſo many do their *Quivers* hold) before the firſt of them falls to the ground: and of ſo great fidelity to their Maſters, and to thoſe which truſt them, that they will rather chuſe to be killed, then either to abuſe their truſt, or betray their Maſters: for that cauſe more eſteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the ſame, and that only, worthy of ſo good a Country; ſaid to be rich in Mines, of Copper, and very plentiful of *Sanders* both red and gray, which tempered with *Vinegar*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy againſt the *Pox*; as the ſmoak thereof againſt the *Head-ach*. Towns they have none, or none at leaſt of any reckoning, which deſerve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the Eaſt *Anzichana*; on the Weſt the *Æthiopick* or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guinea*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*; from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Country very hot, as lying under the *Line*, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more ſtored with Elephants, than any other of theſe parts; ſtretching in length 200 miles within the Land and for the moſt part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramaes*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accuſtomed (as the *Anziqui* and others of the Barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumciſion*. Governed by a King of their own, once ſubject to the King of *Congo*: but of late time, both he and the King of *Anziqui* (for they are alſo under the command of one *Soveraign* Prince) have freed themſelves from that ſubjection; though ſtill the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Penga*, the Haven to the reſt. 2. *Morumba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the reſt, apparel themſelves with the leaves of *Palm-Trees*; but not ſo well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleanſed and purged, draw a fine long thred, of which they make Velvets, Damasks, Sattins, Taffataes, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom ſeated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Iſlands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, ſituate over againſt the Town of S *Paul*, in the Province of *Bamba*, ſaid to be firſt made out of the ſands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, caſt into an heap, and at laſt made into an Iſland. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the ſame name with the Iſland, poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. The Iſland deſtitute of Rivers, but ſo well furniſhed with Waters, that every where within leſs than half a yard digging, they find ſweet and good Waters, ſo contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be ſalt and brackiſh; when it floweth towards the Iſland, then moſt freſh and ſweet. But moſt remarkable is this Iſland for the *Cockle fiſhing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the ſands, in baskets, and part them from the ſand, as they lye on the ſhore; the *ſhells* of which being naturally diſtinguiſhed into divers colours, ſerve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, inſtead of Money; which is a matter of ſuch moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Iſland for no other reaſon, but to take care about this fiſhing.

Beſides this, there are many Iſlands in the River of *Zaire*, now ſubject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars againſt them, fighting in Boats which they made of the Bodies of a Tree, by them called *Liconde*. The Tree ſo big, that two or three Men or more are not able to fathom it: inſomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largeſt of them, able to contain 200 Men. Upon the ſhores of theſe Iſlands, and in other of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have ſo great numbers of *Anchovies*, that in Winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of thoſe ſeveral Members, and of the reſt expreſſed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: ſo called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Chan*, *An.* 1486. at what time theſe Kings were at the greateſt: called by their Subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the Word *Mani*, ſignifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated ſince to the Kingdom alſo. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath ſince happned in this Kingdom, may beſt be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *CONGO*.

1486. 1. *John*, not ſo called till converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*; and then *Baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the Second King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. in whoſe Reign this diſcovery and *Converſion* happened.

2. *Alphonſo*, eldeſt Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Chriſtian* Faith, and for that oppoſed by *Panſe Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very ſmall Army, zealouſly invocating the aſſiſtance of *Jeſus*, he is ſaid to have vanquiſhed. A Prince, who, during his long Reign of 50 years, did ſeriouſly promote the *Goſpel*, and cauſed all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furniſhed in convenient places.

3. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonſo*, in whoſe time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the *Cathedral* Church of S. *Croſſe*, in the Town of S. *Saviours*.

4. *Franciſco*, the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.

5. *Diego*, or *James*, one of the Kinſmen of *Franciſco*, in whoſe time *Religion* growing into diſcredit, by the ſcandalous lives of ſome of the *Secular Clergy*; *John* the Third, King of *Portugal*, ſent four *Jeſuits* thither; who are ſaid to have converted in five Months 5000 Perſons, and to build three Churches.

6. *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a ſharp War touching the Succeſſion, in which were ſlain all the *Portugals* of S. *Saviours*, except the *Prieſts*, at laſt ſucceeded: not long after ſlain in battel againſt the *Anziques*.

7. *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagges* or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himſelf, together with the *Portugal* Prieſts, to an Iſland of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till reſtored to his Crown by the Aid of *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*, after by Famine he had loſt almoſt all his company.

8. *Alvares* II. Son of *Alverez* the firſt, who much ſolicited *Sebaſtian* and *Henry*, Kings of *Portugal*, to ſend him a new ſupply of Preachers; the old ſtore being waſted in the Iſlands of *Zaire*.

9. *Alvarez* III. Son to *Alvarez* the Second, not being born in Lawful Wedlock, was oppoſed by one of his Siſters and a younger Brother, both of Lawful birth; whom he overthrew, *Anno* 1587. and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe Kings of *Congo*, I am able to ſay nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great Power and Riches. His *Riches* viſible by the great Treaſures which he draweth from the *Mines* of Silver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the Trade of *Cockle-ſhells*, the only Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himſelf; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants Teeth; the Preſents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not eaſie to ſay what he layeth up yearly, becauſe he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as moſt Princes have, yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furniſhed with all things as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his *Forces*, they conſiſt moſt in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and uſed to the Wars, would make him formidable to the reſt of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no Garriſons or Towns of War, but muſt truſt, if once invaded, unto *Caſtles of Bones*; yet he doth reſt ſecure enough from all Fear of Danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raiſe againſt his *Rebels*, or any of his invading Neighbours, 400000 Men out of *Bamba* only, all armed according to their Manner, and 70000 Men at leaſt, well exerciſed in Wars againſt the *Jagges*, from the Province of *Batta*: beſides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in Baſe *Sol*: which Coat was taken by *Alphonſo*, the ſecond King in this Catalogue, becauſe in the Battel which he fought againſt *Panſe Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers ſaw (or ſuppoſed they ſaw) ſuch a number of ſhining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And ſo much for *ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR*.

OF
The ISLES of AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Iſles of *AFRICK*, we muſt obſerve another courſe than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Aſia*: theſe Iſlands not belonging to any part of the Continent, nor under the Command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the Accompt of whoſe Eſtates they might be conſidered; but being all of them Independent and *ſui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themſelves apart. In our *Chorography* of which and the Stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to Travel; beginning firſt with thoſe that lie in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and ſo proceeding by the *Cape* of *Good Hope*, through the Main *Atlantick* Ocean, to the Streits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the ſhorter paſſage into *America*, and there σὺν Θεῷ ϗ ταῖς Μούσαις conclude our Journey. Theſe then we will conſider either joint or ſeparate, as delivered to us by the names of 1. The *Æthiopick Iſlands*. 2. *Socotara*. 3. *Madagaſcar*. 4. *Mohelia*. 5. *Mauritius*. 6. St. *Hellens*. 7. *Aſcenſion*. 8. St. *Thomas*. 9. The *Prince's Iſland*. 10. The *Iſland of Annobon*. 11. The *Gorgades*, or Iſlands of *Cape Virde*. 12. The *Canaries*, or the *Fortunate Iſlands*. 13. *Madera*. 14. The Iſland of *Holy Port*; and 15. The *Heſperides*. Of all which, the four firſt only are diſperſed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*; all the reſt ſcattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this ſide of the famous Promontory, called the *Cape of Good Hope*.

1. *The ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.*

1. THE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, ſo called, becauſe they lie upon the Coaſt of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all thoſe which lie on the further ſide of the *Cape of Good Hope*, or ſcattered, or diſperſed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by thoſe names theſe mighty Oriental Seas, are moſt commonly known) of which we have ſpoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore ſhall ſay nothing here which concerns the ſame; but for the Iſlands of thoſe Seas, ſuch as we comprehend here under the Name and Notion of *Æthiopick Iſlands*, which were only known unto the Ancients, they are more in number than in weight; ſome of them ſituate within the Streits of the *Red Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*, others without thoſe Streits, in the open *Ocean*.

1. Of thoſe within the Streits, not reckoning ſuch as lie upon the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already ſpoken; there is 1. *Aſtarte*, or *Aſtrata*, now called *Caiuſſa*. 2. *Ara Palladis*, ſo called from ſome Altar of that Goddeſs which was there erected. 3. *Gypſeris*, by *Pliny* called *Cypris*, but *Gypſis* in *Juſtinian*'s Code, renowned in former time for its plenty of Metals. 4. *Macaria*, or the *Fortunate Iſland*, ſo called from the fertility and pleaſures of it. 5. *Orneon*, or the *Iſle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6. *Daphnis*, by *Ptolemy* called *Daphnine*, oppoſite to a famous Port-Town of the ſame name in the Continent. 7. *Bacchias*, ſo called from *Bacchus*, unto whom conſecrated. 8. *Anti-Bacchias*, ſo named becauſe oppoſite to it. 9. *Acanthine*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be now called *Anghotina*. 10. *Inſula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the ſame which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Streits*, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the *Streits* of *Babel Mandel*. 11. *Iſidis Inſula*, memorable for a Temple Dedicated to the Goddeſs *Iſis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Iſidis*; the ſame which is now called *Paſcua*, as *Bel Foreſt* thinketh. 12. *Mundi*, an Iſland in the Bay of *Avalites*, oppoſite to a noted Empory of the ſame name on the ſhores of that Bay. Beſides all which, we find in *Ptolemy* two Iſlands by the name of *Thriſitides*; two more called *Chelonitides*, or *Cathratæ*, two others paſſing by the name of *Gomadeo*; together with the Iſles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Inſula Magorum*: which make up One and twenty in all. but of no Note or Obſervation in the courſe of Buſineſs, or the conduct of humane Affairs.

Thoſe of moſt Note in the open Ocean, which ſtill preſerveth the name of the *Red Sea*, and is ſometimes called the *Indian*, ſometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but four in number, that is to ſay, 1. *Myrica*, by the Tranſlator of *Ptolemy* called *Myrſiaca*; 2, 3. Two Iſlands called by the name of *Menan*, a Degree more Northwards than the other: and 4. *Amicuſia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Inſula*, as called by *Ptolemy*, the moſt North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the moſt noted Iſland of this Sea. I know that many Learned Men will have this Iſland to be that, which *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients call *Dioſcoridis*: but becauſe *Dioſcoridis*, by all thoſe Ancients, is made to be an Iſland of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Iſle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our beſt Modern Geographers, that *Socotara* lieth over againſt *Cape Guardafu*, (the *Aromata* of *Ptolemy*, as before is ſaid) from which diſtant not above 30 Leagues: which ſite and diſtance ſort well with *Amicuſia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Dioſcoridis*, *Amicuſia* being placed but two Degrees on the Eaſt of that Promontory, in the Longitude of 85. whereas *Dioſcoridis* is ſituate from it almoſt four Degrees in the Longitude of 86. and 40 Minutes; beſides as great, or greater difference in their ſeveral Latitudes. So that ſuppoſing for granted that *Socotara* is that Iſland which was anciently called *Amacuſia*; and having cleared my way ſo far, I now proceed to the Deſcription and Affairs thereof.

2. *SOCOTARA.*

2. SOCOTARA, the greateſt Iſland of theſe Shores, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, againſt *Cape Guardafu*, from which diſtant about 30 Leagues, *Abadalenry* a ſmall Iſland lying in the midſt, that is to ſay, 15 Leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the Iſland. The length hereof 60 Miles, 25 in breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height; the top of which are for the moſt part covered with Sands. *Mandeſlo* ſaith it is ſeated 21. 40′ Lat. and is 25 Leagues long, and but 10 broad, indifferently well Peopled, and ſtill ſubject to the King of *Arabia*, under whom Governed by a Sultan. The Inhabitants are Lean, of a dark Complexion, and very Laborious, and Temperate. *p.* 15. The Principal Town is *Tamary*; The Iſland extreamly vexed with Winds, and moleſted with Drineſs, inſomuch as it is deſtitute of moſt things neceſſary for the life of Man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but ſome ſmall quantity of Mill, Dates, and ſome kind of Fruits. Provided notwithſtanding of ſome good Paſtures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furniſhed with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons Blood*; which is a Red Gum iſſuing from the Bark of a Tree; and the beſt Aloes in the World, from hence called

Aloes Socotrina. The *Nubian* Geographer makes this one of the moſt Fruitful and Beautiful Iſlands in the World, and ſaith this Aloes is fetched from the Leaf of a Tree, gathered in *July*, and the Juice expoſed in Braſs Pots to the Sun in *Auguſt*. The Inhabitants in his time were all *Chriſtians* and *Greeks*, and, as he fancied, brought thither by *Alexander the Great*, after his Conqueſt of *India*, to gratifie *Ariſtotle* his Maſter. It lies, ſaith he, (*p.* 22.) two Days Sail from the Continent of *Arabia Felix*, over againſt *Haſee*, a City of *Hadramut*, *p.* 23. This Iſland is of great extent, fruitful as to Trees, but eſpecially the Aloes Tree. The North-Weſt part of it the Continent of *Arabia*; and therefore it is eſteemed a part of *Arabia* on the *African* Shore. *Melinda* and *Monbaza* lie over againſt this Iſland. *Nub. p.* 23. By which it is plain he had a very falſe Notion of this Coaſt of *Africa*; for *Socotara* lies neareſt to the *Cape Guardafu*, on the Coaſt of *Africa*, 60 *Engliſh* Miles from the Coaſt of *Arabia*; and not 40 from the Coaſt of *Africa*: and *Melinda* lies 12 Degrees more to the South, and 330 Miles more to the Weſt. Mr. *Pory* makes it 60 Miles long, and 20 broad, divided with a high ridge of Mountains, ſubject to moſt terrible Winds, and now deſtitute of Victuals, by reaſon of the Sloth and Ignorance of the Inhabitants; for it hath no Wheat, Rice, Wine, nor Honey; but hath a ſmall quantity of Millet, and in its Vallies ſome Fruits and Paſture, and is only frequented for its Alloes. The *Portugueſe* have in it the ſmall Towns of *Coro* and *Benin*, in which the King of *Fartac* in *Arabia* had a Caſtle, which they took, and after abandoned.

The People of an Aſh-colour, very rude and barbarous; their Bread for the moſt part of Dates; the reſt of their Food being Milk and Butter; their Hair long, and their Cloathing only enough to hide their Nakedneſs. The Women as good Soldiers as the Men, and countenancing, or occaſioning the Tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*; and the better Husbands of the two, governing all Affairs both within and without. All of them by profeſſion *Chriſtians*, who have an ancient Church Walled about, with three Doors and three Allies, governed by a Biſhop of their own, with ſome few Prieſts; but ignorant enough of all things which concern Religion. More generally Circumciſed than Chriſtened, though both uſed among them. *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abaſſines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worſhipers of the Croſs, which they always hang about their Necks. So pertinaciouſly addicted unto Magick, and therein ſo expert, that they bring incredible things to paſs; not to be weaned from thoſe Black Arts, though the Biſhop Excommunicate all ſuch as uſe them. They hold Opinion, That S. *Thomas* ſuffered Shipwrack upon their Coaſt, as he ſailed towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to Land, was turned into a Church; but it appeareth neither by their Life, or Doctrines, that any Apoſtolical Man hath ſet foot amongſt them. They have no uſe of Navigation or Traffick, and wear coarſe Cloth or Skins of Beaſts: they fight with Bowes and ill Swords. They are proudly conceited of their Nobility, but very Ignorant and Poor. *Theſe are the Relicks of the old* Greek *Colony, mentioned by* Nubienſis, *who have forgot whence they came.* They live for the moſt part in Caves or Cabins, of no other ſtuff than the Boughs of Trees; ſo that we are to look for few Towns among them. The Principal, 1. *Socotara*, giving name to the Iſland, the place of the King's Reſidence, and a Biſhop's See. 2. *Tamarind*, and 3. *Deliſha*, two Port Towns, and reaſonably well Traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4. *Coro*, and 5. *Benin*, two other Ports, poſſeſſed and Garriſoned by the *Portugals*. The King thereof a Vaſſal to the King of *Fartac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*: in Habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: attended on when the Relater was there, *Anno* 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes only, yet thoſe all in the Iſland. An Author Printed at the end of *Leo Africanus* in *Engliſh*, ſaith, This Iſland was conquered by the King of *Fartac* in 1482. from whoſe Dominion they were freed by *Triſtan d'Acune* a *Portugueſe*, twenty years after; but the *Portugueſe* deſerted them ſoon after.

Nigh hereunto are two Iſlands, (thoſe poſſibly which *Ptolemy* calleth *Menan*) the one inhabited by Men only, and the other by Women, who do meet at their accuſtomed times to preſerve their kind, but make no long ſtay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the conſtitution of the other Sex. The other Iſlands of theſe Coaſts, ſcattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolemy*) as 1. *Don Garcia*. 2. *The Three Brethren*. 3. *S. Brandon*. 4. *Francis* 5. *Maſcadenna*. 6. *Comoro*. And many others of as ſmall note, are not worth the ſpeaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. MADAGASCAR, the greateſt Iſland in the World, is ſituate over againſt *Moſambique* in *Æthiopia Inferior*, ſuppoſed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolemy*, the only Iſland by him named on the Coaſt of that Country; but by the *Portugals* called the Iſle of St. *Lawrence*, becauſe diſcovered by them on the day of that Saint, *An.* 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 Miles (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compaſs: the middle part hereof oppoſite to the Promontory, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Praſſum*, now the point of *Moſambique*, from which diſtant 170 Miles: in reference to the Heavenly Bodies, ſituate from the 17*th* Degree of Southern Latitude, to the 26*th*.

The Country plentiful of all things neceſſary for the Life of Man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-Wooll, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Lemons, and other cooling Fruits, ſome ſtore of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from thoſe of *India*, Red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and ſome Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to ſay any thing of their Beefs and Muttons, ſo large and good, and ſo good cheap, that for a Two-penny Bead, or ſome ſuch trifle: they will ſell Beefs and Sheep of good taſte and bigneſs; ſuch numbers of Elephants, that they ſend thence yearly great ſtore of Ivory. And amongſt other rare Fruits, they have plenty of thoſe which they call Cocos, or Coconuts: a kind of Date as big as a Cabbage; the Liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, taſts like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two Men: and like *Good Ale*, it affords not only Meat and Drink, but Cloathing; as alſo Furniture for their Houſes, Tackle for their Ships, Fewel for the Fire, and Timber for Building; the body of the Tree being ſtrait and high, and towards the top diverſified into many Branches. A Country far too good for ſo bad a People. For they, as Travellers report, and moſt Writers teſtifie, are Treacherous, Inhoſpitable, Ignorant both of Prayers and Feſtivals; deſtitute both of the diſtinction of Time into years and Months, not knowing any proper Names for the days of the Week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked, except their Privities, which they cover with Cotton; *Idoloters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the Shores, commendable only for their Hate to *Poligamy*, and reſtraining themſelves to one Wife; the defiling of the Marriage-Bed, ſeverely puniſhed: but otherwiſe ſo eager upon Copulation, that their Boys, at the age of twelve Years, and their Girls at Ten, think they ſtay too long if they keep their Virginities any longer: ſome of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin ſo early, *ut nunquam meminerint ſe Virgines fuiſſe*, that they remember not the time when they loſt their Maidenheads. Of colour they are Black, and of ſtrong Compoſition; their Breaſts and Faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the Wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good Archers. Amongſt them there are ſome White People, ſaid to come from *China*. They are large of Stature, and exceeding Black, much addicted to Fiſhing, great Eaters, and Nature has accordingly provided them plenty of Cattel, Fiſh, Fowl, Fruits, and whatever is neceſſary for the Life of Man, which they uſe without Labour or Care, regarding neither Silver nor Gold, nor any thing elſe but Beads and Bracelets for Ornament, and Muſick and Dancing for their Recreation. *Nubienſis, p.* 28. calls this Iſland *Saranda*, and ſaith it is 1200 miles in Circuit, yielding Camphor, Sugar, and Millet; the Sea yields Pearls, and the Land Spice: this Author wrote in the 12th Century. *P.* 31. he calls it *Sarandib*, and ſaith, it is 80 Leagues ſquare, having a vaſt high Mountain, called *Rahon*, and it afforded the *Jacinth*, and in the Valley the *Diamond* is found, and many Spices and Perfumes, as *Lignum Aloes, &c.* In its Rivers are found the Beryl, and on its Shores, Pearls. The King's Reſidence is at *Aghena*, who has 16 Councellors, four *Chriſtians*, four *Mahometans*, four *Jews*, and four *Pagans, &c.* who profeſſed all ſorts of Learning. There is no City in it. See *Pory, p.* 49. who maketh it 400 miles in compaſs, and bigger than *Italy*. The Inland Inhabitants are *Negroes*, but on the Coaſt live *Arabians*, and in ſome places *Chineſe*: As to the Fertility, he agrees with the reſt, and adds to its Commodities Silver. *Struys. p.* 15. adds Medicinal Balſams, Oyles, Roots, coarſe Gold, and the beſt Steel in the World.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their Names I find not: and at the Mouths of thoſe Rivers ſome convenient Havens, into which they admit the Foreign Merchants, but ſuffer none to come on Land; which the Merchant hath no cauſe to be ſorry for, finding himſelf not ſafe on Shipboard from their treacherous Practices; ſo that we can give but ſmall account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their Names; as, *viz.* 1. St. *Auguſtines*, on a fair Bay in the South-weſt point. 2. *Gangomar*, in the North-eſt of it. 3. *Antaboſta*. 4. *Point-Antogil*. 5. *Santo Jacobo*. 6. *Matatana*. 7. *Angoda*. 8. *Herendo*. 9. *Andro-arco*. And 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, ſo entituled by ſome zealous *Romaniſts*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got ſome footing in this Iſland.

This Iſland known but very imperfectly in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many ſtrange things of it; but none more ſtrange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of ſuch incredible ſtrength and bigneſs, that it could ſnatch up an Elephant as eaſily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Diſcovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506. as before was ſaid; and ſince frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further, touching the Eſtate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four Parts, under ſo many Kings, each of them in continual Wars againſt one another, but well enough agreed to defend themſelves againſt the coming in of Strangers. Yet, as ſome ſay, they would be well enough content with an *Engliſh* Plantation: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more Courteous than the *Portugals*, and not ſo Covetous as the *Dutch*; or elſe by the Strength of our Shipping, and the Reputation of our Intereſt in it, to keep off all others. The *French* have of late ſettled ſome Colonies on the Southern Shore; and *Stephen Flacourt*, a *Frenchman*, has given a large account of this Iſland.

4. *MOHELIA, and* 5. *MAURITIUS Iſland.*

ADjoining to *Madagaſcar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Iſlands; and ſome on the North-weſt we have, 1. *Meottey*. 2. *Chamroe*. 3. *Mohelia*, and 4. *Joanna* Iſland, on the Eaſt. 5. The Iſland of *Mauritius*; and 6. *England's Forreſt*. Of theſe *Mauritius* is the greateſt, but *Mohelia* the beſt Inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA*, ſituate on the Northweſt of *Madagaſcar*, is about 23 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, Coco-Nuts, Limons, Oranges, Pom-Citrons, Pulſe, Sugar-Canes, ſtore of Fiſh taken on the Shores, and other Neceſſaries. It is of great uſe to Ships that ſail for *India*, the *Red-Sea*, and *Perſia*. The People of complexion Black, of compoſition Large and Strong; Courageous, Affable, leſs Treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagaſcar*. Of the ſame Language and Religion with thoſe of *Arabia*, from whence they ſeem to have deſcended; but by reaſon of their Commerce and Intercourſe with the *Portugals*, they ſpeak that Tongue alſo. The Women of the like complexion; to amend which, and ſeem more lovely, they Pink their Arms and Faces in ſeveral ſhapes. Both Sexes no otherwiſe Apparelled than their Natural Garments, with ſome *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their Shame.

Their Religion that of *Mahomet*, as before is ſaid; their *Prieſts* in great Eſteem among them; ſo their *Temples* alſo: which they keep clean and neatly matted; not ſuffering any Man to enter with his Shoes on his Feet. Their chief Town *Merianguea*, at the Weſt-end of the Iſle, ſtrong and well Garriſoned: Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the laſt Kings leaving two Daughters, the one married to a Native, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the Eaſt of *Madagaſcar*, is the Iſle of *MAURITIUS*, ſo called by the *Hollanders*, in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whoſe time they firſt ſet footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by ſome *Cygnæa*. In compaſs about 100 miles; well ſtored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, moſt ſorts of Fiſh: and liberally endowed with all the Bleſſings of Nature, ſweet Waters, moſt delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any uſe both of Food and Building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the beſt Coal-black: Yet altogether deſtitute of humane Inhabitants; inſomuch as we may ſay of this, as the Poet of the World, before Man was made;

> *Sanctius his Animal, mentiſque capacius altæ,*
> *Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari in cætera poſſet.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

> *But yet the* Chief, *with ſupream Power poſſeſt,*
> *Was wanting, he that ſhould* command *the reſt.*

In the Year 1640. the *Hollanders* began to ſupply this Defect, by a Colony they ſent thither to inhabit it; for the Defence of which they built a Fort.

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and
The Iſles therein.

HAving thus looked upon ſuch Iſlands as lie upon the Eaſtern ſide of *Africk* in the *Indian* Ocean, let us come homeward by the *Cape of Good Hope*, into the main *Atlantick*, the greateſt body of Waters which is given to us by one name in any of our Coſmographers, either old or new: a Name peculiar to that part of the Weſtern Ocean, which lieth between the Streights of *Gibralter*, and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* ſheweth it ſelf with a cloudy top; and gives name to the Seas adjoining, but generally communicated to all that vaſt Region of Waters which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk* on the one ſide, and the New World, or *America* on the other ſide: Extended further by *Strabo*, and ſome other of the ancient Writers; who not knowing any thing of the interpoſition of *America*, carry the Name of the *Atlantick* to the Shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this on the Eaſt and South. *Macrobius* goeth farther in it, affirming poſitively, *omnem terram, quæ à nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundi*, that the whole Habitable World (ſo far as it was then known and Peopled) was compaſſed round about with the *Atlantick* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus*: alſo by *Ariſtotle* in his Book *De mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though ſome parts hereof, which waſh the Weſtern Shores of *Æthiopia Inferior*, be called the *Æthiopick* Ocean; yet that it doth derogate no more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that ſome parts of the *Mediterranean* ſhould be called *Mare Siculum*, *Sardoum*, *Tyrrhenum*, *Criticum*, according to the ſhores of thoſe ſeveral places which it paſſeth by; which having ſaid in general of the Sea it ſelf, according to our method in other places, we next proceed unto the reſt of the *African* Iſlands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea and this ſide of *Africa*.

6. *St.* HELENS; and 7. *The Iſles of* ASCENSION.

AND the firſt Iſle we meet with in this ſide of *Africk* is, 6. The Iſle of *St. Helens*, ſituate on the Weſt of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly Latitude, no other Iſland interpoſing betwixt *Madagaſcar* and it, except thoſe of Don *Alvarez*, and of *Triſtram de Acugna*, near the Cape it ſelf; but of ſo little note, as not worth the Naming. The Iſland very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with ſo ſteep an Aſcent, that the Mariners have amongſt them a merry Saying, that *a Man may chuſe whether he will break his Heart going up, or his Neck going down.*

It was thus called, becauſe diſcovered by the *Portugals* on St. *Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor ſince; the King of *Spain* ſuffering none to dwell there, becauſe it had been an unlawful *Receptacle* for Uncuſtomed Goods; whereby he loſt exceedingly both in Power and Profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the firſt Diſcovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as alſo with Figs, Limons, Oranges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the Year long, intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refreſh themſelves, and beſtow their Sick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Uſed for the ſame purpoſe by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, who ſo domineer about the Iſland, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their Property, if they ſee any Shipping in the Road. No Buildings in it, but the Ruines of a little Chapel, deſtroyed by the *Hollanders*; and ſome fragments of a little Village begun by ſome *Portugal* Mariners, but demoliſhed by the King of *Spain*.

St. Helen was firſt Diſcovered by *Joannes de Nova* a *Portugueſe*, on St. *Helen*'s day, in 1502. It is 13 miles in compaſs, Mountanous, but Fruitful, and abounding with many things of great uſe to the Life of Man. It has four Valleys and many Springs, eſpecially towards the North End. For a long time it lay in common to the uſe of all that ſailed to the *Eaſt-Indies*, but ſince the Year 1660. the *Engliſh Eaſt-India Company* ſettled a Colony in it to ſecure it; the *Hollanders* having done the ſame at the *Cape of Good Hope*, which was another Place of Refreſhment.

7. Northweſt from hence is the Iſle of *Aſcenſion*, ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on *Aſcenſion-Day*, by *Triſtiano d'Acuna*, a *Portugueſe*, in the Year, 1508. but not inhabited, nor any uſe at all made of it for ought I can find. Of the ſame bigneſs with *St. Helens*, 30 miles in compaſs, and about 790 *Engliſh* miles diſtant from it.

8. *St.* THOMAS, 9. *The* PRINCES *Iſland, and* 10. *The Iſle of* ANNIBON.

8. THE Iſland of *St.* THOMAS, is ſituate directly under the *Æquator*; of Orbicular Form, the Diameter being 60 miles, by conſequence the Perimeter or Compaſs 180. and juſt ſo many from the Shore of the Realm of *Congo*. The Land of this Iſland lies very high; upon the Weſt-ſide you ſhall ſee a very high Pike, which is very ſmall and ſtreight, as if it were the Steeple of a Church, which Pike is directly under the Line; at the South-end towards the Weſt, lies a ſmall Iſland a mile from the great Iſland. *Hackluit*. It was found the 23d of *December*, 1405. by a *Portugueſe*, and Dedicated to St. *Thomas*, becauſe found on that Day. At the firſt Diſcovery nothing but a continual Forreſt, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*: theſe laſt brought hither from the oppoſite Continent; with whom the Air agrees ſo well, that they attain generally to 110 years of Age, few of the *Portugals* unto 50. The Air ſo vehemently hot, that it ſorteth not with the Conſtitution of the *Europeans*.

The Country deſtitute of Wheat, which if ſown here turneth all to Blade, and brings forth no Ear: nor will any Fruits here proſper, that have any ſtone in them: but ſo abundant in *Sugar-Canes*, and well ſtored with Sugars, that 40 Ships are hence loaded yearly with that one Commodity; for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houſes, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in ſome 300. which belong to the Works. Six days in ſeven theſe Slaves work for their Maſters, and the ſeventh for themſelves; which they ſpend in ſowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Proviſions. Where, by the way theſe Sugar-works, or *Ingenios*, are a late Invention; the Boiling and Baking of Sugar (as it is now uſed) not being above 200 years old; and the Refining of it more new than that. Firſt found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our Fathers, who is ſaid to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his Son a Knight; who, (though he was no Knight of the Poſt) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of Boiling and Refining Sugars, our Anceſtors not having ſuch luxurious Palates, ſometimes made uſe of rough Sugar, as it came from the Canes; but moſt commonly pleaſed themſelves with Honey, more wholeſom becauſe more natural than theſe forced Inventions. But to proceed in the Deſcription of this Iſland; in the midſt thereof is ſaid to be a wooden Mountain, over-ſhadowed continually with Clouds; which ſo moiſten the Trees that grow there in great abundance, that from thence falleth a ſufficient quantity of waters to refreſh their Fields, and feed their Sugar-Canes, notwithſtanding the extream heat of the Clime and Air.

The *Religion* here allowed of, is the *Chriſtian* only, firſt preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a Biſhop, his Title, the Biſhop of *St. Thomas*; but his Charge extendeth alſo over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal City of it hath the Name of *Pavoaſan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, conſiſting of 700 Families, or about that number; ſituate on a fine River, and a pleaſant Haven: ſeldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for Sugars, Wheat, Wine, Cheeſe, Hides, and other Things, more neceſſary than thoſe Sugars for the Life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders*, in the year 1599. but again recovered, or abandoned in 1641. and ſince poſſeſſed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by Fraud and Falſhood, at the ſame time, and by the ſame diſhoneſt Arts by which they made themſelves Maſters of the Caſtle of *Angola*, before-mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambaſſador preſented this injurious dealing to the States of *Holland*, yet all the Anſwer he could get at the preſent, was, That their People had done nothing but what was juſtified by that Clauſe of the Article, that both ſides might take and keep whatſoever they could within ſuch a time: and though the Ambaſſador replied very rationally in behalf of his Country, and preſſed the Reſtitution both of this Iſland, and that Caſtle, by all honeſt Arguments, yet he could then get no reaſon from them: The *Portugueſe* finding that Arguments would not prevail, entered the Iſland with Force, and in ſhort time drove out the *Hollanders*; and have ever ſince peaceably enjoyed it, the exact time of which action I cannot now aſſign.

9. The **PRINCE's ISLAND**, (*Inſula Principis* in the *Latin*) ſo called, for that the Revenues of it were alloted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is ſituate in three Degrees of the Northern Latitude, on the Weſtern Coaſts of *Africa*, 120 miles from *St. Thomas* to the North-Eaſt, and ſomething leſs from *Africa*, The Country very Fruitful for the bigneſs of it; but not much obſervable, except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerchagen*, *Anno* 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a *Prince*'s Iſland, by a *Meſs* of *Chaplains*, *viz.* 1. the Iſles of St. *Matthew*, 2. St. *Croſs*, 3. St. *Paul*, and 4. St. *Conception*; and waited on by ſeven Servants (ſo many Iſlands near *Cape Verd*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But becauſe the former four yield no matter of *Hiſtory*, and theſe laſt ſeven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having ſaid thus much of them, to have ſaid enough.

10. South-weſt hereof, but on the other ſide of the Line, lieth the Iſle of *Annobon*, (*Inſula Annoboni*, as the *Latines* call it.) So named, becauſe diſcovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fiſhing all along the Coaſts of it; but that fiſhing made unſafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are ſaid to be about the ſhores in great abundance.

11. *The GORGADES, or the Iſles of CAPE VERD.*

11. THE *GORGADES*, or the Iſlands of *Cape Verd*, (*Inſulæ Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are nine in number; called by the laſt name, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their Names, 1. Saint *Anthony*. 2. Saint *Vincent*. 3. *Buenaviſta*. 4. Saint *Lucies*. 5. *Inſula Salis*, the Iſle of Salt. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Iſle of *Fire*. 7. Saint *Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. Saint *Jago*. Some add to theſe a tenth, called *Brava*. Diſcovered all in the year 1440. by a *Genoeſe* called *Antonio de Noli*, imployed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry* Duke of *Viſo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* of *Portugal*, the firſt of that name. Of the moſt, little to be ſaid. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, St. *Jago*. 1. *Majo*, is of moſt repute for a *Lake* of two Leagues long; the Waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is ſo called from the flakes of fire which it ſends forth uſually; and fell ſo thick upon the Ship of Sir *Anthony Sherley*, when he took the Iſland, *Anno* 1596. that one might have writ his name in the aſhes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all, St. *Jago*, yet but 7 miles long: Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleaſant Valleys and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; ſituate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, *Anno* 1596. This place was yeilded without any Defence: when the *Engliſh* came to rifle it, they found no Gold, but ſtore of Meal, Wine, and Oyle; but the Men falling into *Calentures* after 14 dayes ſtay, he left it, and Set Sail for *America*: This Fleet conſiſted of 21 Ships, and had on board 2300 Men in all. *Camden. Hackluit T.* 3. *p.* 536.

This Town lies in a low valley, in form of a Triangle, having on the Eaſt and Weſt ſides 2. Rocky Mountains or Cliffs, as it were hanging over it; on the Tops of which are Fortifications. On the South ſide of the Town is the Main Sea, on the North is a Valley lying between the 2 Mountains, which growing Narrower next the Town, is not above 12 ſcore over. In the Midſt of this Valley runs a Rivulet of freſh Water, which near the Sea makes a Pond or Pool to Water the Ships: The Valley from the Town-ward openeth broader, and is fill'd with Gardens, Orchards and Vineyards; full of Limons, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, Cocho-Nuts, Plantains, Potato-Roots, Cucumers, Onyons, Garlick, *&c.*

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almoſt forgotten. Given to thoſe Iſlands, as ſuppoſed (but I cannot ſee upon what Grounds) to be the ſeat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation or dwelling place of *Meduſa* and her two fair Siſters. This *Meduſa*, ſaid or rather fabled by the Poets to have been a Woman of great beauty; who either for ſuffering her body to be abuſed by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her ſelf before *Palas*, had by the ſaid Goddeſs, her hair turned into *Snakes*, and this property annexed unto them; That whoſoever looked on her, ſhould be turned into *Stones*: which quality was retained after ſhe was ſlain, and beheaded by *Perſeus*. Thus and far more fabulouſly the Poets. The Hiſtorians (for as ſome think, *omnis fabula fundatur in hiſtoria*) relate how this *Meduſa* was indeed a Lady of ſuch exceeding beauty, that all Men that ſaw her were amazed; and of ſuch a wiſe and ſubtile brain, that for that cauſe only Men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in wealth, and by *Piracy* moleſting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perſeus*, who in a ſingle combat ſlew her. *Perſeus* when he plucked off her Helmet, admiring that beauty which he had deſtroyed, cut off her Head, and carried it unto *Greece*: where the People beyond meaſure wondred at the rare compoſure of her Face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore ſaid to have by her head been metamorphoſed into Stones. *Pauſanias* in his *Corinthiacks* ſo reports the Story.

12. *THE CANARIES.*

THE *CANARIES* are in number ſeven, ſituate over againſt the Coaſt of *Libya Interior*; ſo called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and other of the ancient Writers, they were called *Inſulæ Fortunatæ*, the Fortunate Iſlands: and amongſt them of greateſt note, for being made the fixed place of the firſt Meridian, removed ſince to St. *Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But thoſe Ancients knew but ſix of them by name, and in the naming of thoſe ſix do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are ſaid to be 1. *Ombrio*, 2 *Junonia Major*, 3. *Junonia Minor*, 4. *Capraria*, 5. *Nivaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. By *Ptolemy* thus reckoned, 1. *Aproſitus*, 2. *Hera*, (or *Junonia*,) 3. *Pluitania*, 4. *Caſperia*, 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Pincuria*. Where we may note alſo to our purpoſe, that though theſe Authors diſagree in all the reſt of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Tranſlator unto *Ptolemy*'s *Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which ſheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary* Iſlands unto all the reſt. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their Fruitfulneſs, and other Excellencies; in which reſpects ſeveral Countries in thoſe times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canary*. 2. *Palma*. 3. *Tenariffe*. 4. *Gomero*. 5. *Ferro*. 6. *Lanſarote*. And 7. *Fuerte Ventura*.

1. *CANARIA*, or *Canaria Magna*, becauſe the biggeſt of the Cluſter, is ſaid to be 90 miles in compaſs, and to contain 9000 Perſons: plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which and of their Cheeſe and the skins of Beaſts, they raiſe great profit: but from nothing more than from their Woad (whereof they have very great abundance) uſed by the Clothier for the well-colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of theſe Iſlands which bear this name, come the fine ſinging-Birds, called *Canary-Birds*; and ſo do alſo thoſe rich Wines, (the Fruit of the *Rheniſh-Grape* tranſplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A ſort of Wine, if not ſophiſticated and abuſed, which is ſaid to fume leſs into

to the head, pleaſe the palate more, and better help the natural weakneſs of a cold ſtomach (if moderately and diſcreetly uſed) than any other Wines whatſoever. Brought hence in ſuch abundance to ſupply our luxury, that no leſs than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* only. By Adulteration ſo much diſhonoured now, that they, are not enquired after. *George Clifford, Earl of Comberland*, in the year 1598, put out a Fleet of 11 Ships at his own Charge; he took *Lancerata* and *Borequena*, and *Porto Ricco*, in which he inintended to have ſettled a Colony of *Engliſh*, but was forced to give over the Deſign by a Sickneſs amongſt his Men. *Camden.* The Firſt diſcoverer was *Lewis de Cerda*; but they were not attempted to be Conquered till the year 1393. *Bracamontius*, a *French* Gentleman, in the year 1405, began another Conqueſt by Grant from *Henry* III. King of *Caſtile*. [The old People that were found here abhord the Killing of a Beaſt as diſhonourable, and therefore impoſed it on their Priſoners] *Herbert. p.* 3. They were attempted by the *French* in 1417, and Conquered by the *Spaniards* in 1418. *Hackluit T.* 2. *p.* 2.

La cividad di las Palmas, Palmarum civitas, the principal City of the Iſland of *Canaria*: This City is the Capital of all the *Canary-Iſlands*, and to it there lies an Appeal from all the other Cities and Iſlands; It hath alſo a Beautiful Cathedral-Church, with all the Dignities thereunto belonging. The City is Beautifull, and the Citizens gallant in their Apparel: After the greateſt Rain a Man may go clean here in a Velvet Slipper, becauſe the Ground is a Sand. The Air is very Temperate, without extream heat or cold. This Account was given by *Nichols*, an *Engliſh* Man, who lived here 7 years, *Hackl. T.* 2. *P.* 2. *p.* 3.

2. *PALMA*, one of the leaſt in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and Sugars; abundantly well ſtored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheeſe; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spaniſh Fleets* as they paſs to *America*. This Iſland, together with *Canary* and *Tenariffe*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Biſhops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a *Dominican* Frier; whoſe works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, ſhew him to have been a moderate and learned Man, and Maſter of a perfect *Ciceronean* ſtile. This Iſland was Conquered by the *Spaniards* in 1491. The Principal Town of which is *Santa Cruz de la Palma*. The reſidue of the Iſlands are of the Dioceſe of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, ſomewhat leſs than the *Grand Canary*, but of the ſame fertility and condition with it, is moſt remarkable for a Mountain of ſo great an height, that it may be ſeen 90 Leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 Miles high, others 15 Leagues, and ſome advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough moſt of our Travellers and Geographers hold it to be the higheſt in the whole World. The Form *Pyramidal*, in ſhape agreeing to thoſe Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Egyptian Pyramides*. The top whereof ending in a ſharp point, called the *Pike* of *Tenariffe*, is ſaid to be ſeldom without Snow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*. This Iſland is about 48 *Spaniſh* Leagues in Circumference, Fruitfull, Populous, and Rich, and has been ſubject to the *Spaniards* ever ſince the year 1496. The Antients called it formerly *Nivaria*. The Principal Towns in it are St. *Croce* and *Laguna*, to which belong an excellent *Haven*, into which *Blake*, an *Engliſh* Admiral, Entered *April* 20. 1657. notwithſtanding a Caſtle, and 7 Forts, and 16 great *Galeons*, all well Mann'd, and provided with Canon and Amunition, which threatned his inevitable Ruine, and in 6 hours time he beat the *Spaniards* out of their Ships and Forts too, and put the Engliſh in Poſſeſſion of this Vaſt Treaſure, (it being a *Weſt-India* Fleet;) and Burnt all thoſe *Spaniſh* Ships which they found there. This Iſland is remarkable for having been made the firſt *Meridian* by many of the later Geographer's. *Tenariffe* is ſeated 27. 30. from the Equator to the North, and is 17 South Leagues in length: The Land lies all very high; but the Pike in the midſt is 45 *Engliſh* Miles Perpendicular; out of which oftentimes flameth a Fire of Brimſtone; at the top it is halfe a mile broad, and form'd like a Caldron, that is, a Concave: Within 2 miles of the top it is nothing but Aſhes and Pumice Stones; beneath that, all the year covered with Snow. Something lower grow Vaſt Trees that rot not in the Water; beneath theſe are Woods of Bay-Trees for 10 or 12. miles, very pleaſant to be travelled through, being full of Melodious Birds. It yeilds more Corn than any of the reſt in this Knot, and beſides yeilds all that the reſt do. It has a fair City called *Santa Cruz*, ſtanding 3 Leagues from the Sea. The other Towns are *Larotava*, *Rialeio* and *Garachio*. Before the Conqueſt of this ſmall Iſland, there Reigned 7 Kings in it, who dwelt in Caves, and were all cloathed in Goatskins. *Canaria*, *Tenariffe*, and *Palma*, Pay the King of *Spain* for Cuſtoms 50000 Ducats *per Annum*; and the Biſhop 12000. *Nichols*, an *Engliſh* Man, who lived here 7. years. *Hackl. T.* 2. *P.* 2. *p.* 5.

4. *HIERO*, or *FERRI Inſula*, ſo called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by ſome thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aproſitus* of *Ptolemy*; and ſome again more probably the *Ombrio* of *Pliny*, if this and *Ptolemies Pluitalia* be not one and the ſame, as for my part I think they be. And it might poſſibly have thoſe names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe it hath in it no freſh Waters but what they do receive in ſhowers and preſerve in Ciſterns: it being added by later Writers (which the Ancients knew not) that theſe ſhowers do daily fall upon them from the *leaves* of a Tree, which always covered with a Cloud doth diſtill theſe Waters; preſerved in a large Ciſtern underneath the Tree, for the uſe of Man and Beaſt throughout the Iſland. It is about 6 Leagues in Compaſs, and belongs to the Earl of *Gomera*; it yeilds *Orchel* and Goats Fleſh, and has but one Vineyard planted by one *Hill*, of *Taunton* in *England*, amongſt the Rocks. It has only one Ciſtern of Water at the foot of an Olive-Tree in the midſt of the Iſland, which yet is ſufficient for the Inhabitants, and their Cattle. *Hackl. T.* 2. *P.* 2. *p.* 6.

5. *GOMERA*, now as civil and well cultivated as any of the reſt, was the moſt barbarous of all, when firſt diſcovered: it being here and here only, the ordinary ſign and evidence of their *Hoſpitality*, to let their friends lie with their Wives, and receive theirs in teſtimony of reciprocal kindneſs: for which cauſe here, as in ſome places of the *Indies*, the Siſter's Son did ſue accuſtomably to inherit. This Iſland is about 22 Leagues in Compaſs, and has a Town of the ſame Name, and a large Haven: This is ſuppoſed to be that which the Ancients called *Theode*. It ſtandeth on the Weſt of *Tenariffe*, and is but 8 Leagues long: The Proprietor of it is an *Earl*. The harbour is ſo good, that the *Spaniſh Weſt-India* Fleet of ten ſtop here for Refreſhments. It yeilds *Corn*, *Fruit*, *Wine*, and *Sugar*, *Hackl. T.* 2. *P.* 2. *p.* 6.

6. *LANSAROTE*, the firſt of thoſe Iſlands which was made ſubject to the Crown of *Caſtile*, diſcovered by ſome adventurous *Biſcains*, *An.* 1393. by whom ſpoiled and pillaged; and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality brought away Priſoners into *Spain*. On this diſcovery the Kings of *Caſtile* challenged a propriety in all theſe Iſlands; of which more anon. In this of *Lanſaroto* there was an Epiſcopal Sea erected by Pope *Martin* the fifth, removed unto the Iſle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the Catholick. This Iſland, as appeareth by the above cited relation in the laſt Century, was an Earldom belonging to the Family of *Herrera*; who alſo was poſſeſſed of *Fuerteventura*. The Latitude of it is 26. 00. and the length 12 Leagues.

7. *FUERTE VENTURA*, of the ſame Nature with the reſt, ſuppoſed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Caſperia* of *Ptolemy*; but not elſe obſervable. Near unto theſe, but not within the name and notion of

the *Fortunate* or *Canary* Iſles, are certain others of leſs note, that is to ſay, 1. *Gratioſa.* 2. *St. Clara.* 3. *Roca.* 4. *Lobos.* 5. *Alegranco*; and 6. *Infierno*, ſmall and of no account, nor yielding any matter of Obſervation. This Iſland is 15 Leagues long, and 10 broad, and ſtands 50 Leagues from Cape *de Guer* in *Africa*, to the Weſt; 24 from *Canary* to the Eaſt; in the Latitude of 27. 00. It yields plenty of Wheat, Barley, Beef, Goats, and Orchel, but very little Wine. *Hackluit.*

The knowledge of theſe Iſlands being loſt with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiſcovered till the Year 1330. or thereabouts, when an *Engliſh*, or as ſome ſay, a *French* Ship, diſtreſſed by Tempeſt, did in that Miſfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the Reign of King *Alphonſo* the Fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was deſigned for the Conqueſt of them: who being repulſed at *Gomera*, *Anno* 1334. gave the Enterprize over, though on this Ground the *Portugals* build their firſt claim unto theſe Iſlands. But the News ſpreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the Sixth thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphonſo de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, by the old Name of the *Fortunate-Iſlands*; and to aſſiſt him in the Conqueſt, cauſed Levies of Soldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the Ears of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadors in the Pope's Court, they feared that ſome tranſport had been made of the *Britiſh* Iſlands, (than which they thought that none could better deſerve the Name of the *Fortunate-Iſlands*) and in all haſte diſpatched a Poſt to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the Danger.

The People at the time of this firſt Diſcovery, were ſo rude and ignorant, that they did eat their Fleſh raw for want of Fire; and tilled or rather turned up the Earth with the Horns of Oxen for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron; their Beards they ſhaved with a ſharp Flint, and committed the Care of their Children to the Nurſing of Goats. To kill a Beaſt was conceived to be the baſeſt Office that could poſſibly be put on them, and therefore commonly impoſed on Priſoners and condemned Perſons; who being thus made the common *Slaughter-men*, were to live ſeparate from the reſt. Their Government by Kings, in each Iſland one; whom at their Deaths, they ſet up naked in a Cave, propped againſt the Wall with a Staff in his Hand, and a Veſſel of Milk faſt by him, the better to enable him for his Journey to the other World, and leaving him in the Grave with theſe ſolemn Words, *Depart in peace, O thou bleſſed Soul.* The like Funeral they beſtow alſo on the Chief of their Nobles. Yet was not the Government in thoſe times ſo purely Regal, but that they had a Common Council (as it were) out of all the Iſlands, conſiſting of 130 Perſons; who did not only direct in Civil Matters, but in Sacred alſo, preſcribing to the People both their Faith and Worſhip; and for their Pains were privileged with the firſt Nights Lodging with every Bride, which the Huſband was to offer to ſome one of them. The Natural Inhabitants are ſaid then to have been of a good and mild Diſpoſition, and that they all agreed in the Acknowledging one GOD the Creator of the World, and in nothing elſe. They were cloathed in Goat-ſkins and lived in Caves; they eat Dogs-fleſh to this day.

But to return unto the Story; nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in purſuance of the Pope's Donation, it happened in the year 1393. that ſome Adventurers of *Biſcay*, ſetting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to ſeek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongſt theſe Iſlands. And having pillaged *Lanſarote*, as before was ſaid, and obſerved the number, greatneſs, and ſituation of all the reſt, returned into *Spain* with great ſtore of Wax, Hides, and other Commodities, with which thoſe Iſlands did abound: extreamly welcome to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Caſtile*, and did intend from that time forwards to poſſeſs himſelf of them. By *Katharine* one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the Minority of *John* the Second, the Conqueſt of them was committed to *John* of *Betancourt*, an adventurous *Frenchman*, (conditioned he ſhould hold them under the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Caſtile*) by whom four of the Iſlands were ſubdued, though he himſelf periſhed in the Action, *Anno* 1417. Young *Betancourt* the Son, not being able to ſubdue *Canary*, to which moſt of the Iſlanders had retired, fortified himſelf as well as he could in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*, and took unto himſelf the Title of King; which he left not long after to one *Menault*; in whoſe time the Iſlands under his command received the Goſpel, and had a See Epiſcopal in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*. But this new King making Money by the Sale of his Subjects, (as well of the new *Chriſtians*, as of the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Caſtile*; and *Pedro Barvade Campos* with three Ships of War, was ſent againſt him; with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Caſtile*, he ſold his Intereſt in theſe Iſlands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who, by the wealth and power of that City made good his Purchaſe, and left it unto his Succeſſors. But we muſt know, that the Poſterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four leſſer Iſlands only; *Canary* it ſelf, *Tenariffe*, and the Iſles of *Palmes*, being under the Command of their own Kings: And ſo continued till the Reign of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, who in the year 1483. under the Conduct of *Alphonſo* of *Mexica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two Noble Captains, became Maſter of them; and tranſlated the Epiſcopal See from *Lanſarote* to the great *Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim theſe Iſlands in right of the firſt Diſcovery, yet the Poſſeſſion hath gone always with the Crown of *Caſtile*. Divided at the preſent into two Eſtates, (but the one ſubordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lanſarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of ſome private Subjects; thoſe which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte Ventura*, are ſaid to yield yearly to the King 50000 Ducats; the Seat of Juſtice being fixed in the Iſle of *Canaria*, unto which all the reſt reſort as they have occaſion.

13. *MADERA*, *and* 14. HOLY-PORT.

13. MADERA, the greateſt Iſland of the *Atlantick*, is ſituate in the Latitude of 32. over againſt the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compaſs 140 miles, ſome add 20 more. So called of the Wilderneſs of Trees there growing when firſt diſcovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latins* call *Materia*, and we *Engliſh* *Timber*: with which the Iſle was ſo overgrown, that the beſt way to clear it, and make it habitable, was by conſuming them with Fire; which raged ſo horribly for the time, that the People employed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refreſh themſelves. But the *Huſbandry* was well beſtowed, the Aſhes making ſo good compoſt to enrich the Soil, (as burning the Turf of barren Lands and ploughing the Aſhes of it, on ſome Grounds with us) that at the firſt it yielded Sixty-fold increaſe. And though the firſt virtue of that Experiment be long ſince decayed, yet ſtill it yieldeth Thirty-fold in moſt places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant uſed in Dying Cloath, which is hence called *Mader*; and of Sugar-canes in ſuch a wonderful manner, that for a time the Fifths of the Sugars herein made, amounted yearly to 60000 *Arrobes*; now not half ſo much. The Iſle wonderfully fruitful alſo of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choiceſt Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more Grapes than Leaves, and Cluſters of two, three, and four ſpans long. The Hills well ſtored with Goats, the Plains with numerous herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thruſhes, Pigeons; theſe laſt ſo ignorant of the Injury which Man might do them, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would ſuffer themſelves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

This Iſland was firſt found by an *Engliſhman*, whoſe name was *Machan* in the year 1344. The Man was left here by the Ship with a few Men, and in an open Boat made of one Tree, arrived in *Barbary*, and was by the *Moors* preſented to *Peter* the Fourth, King of *Arragon*, as a Wonder. In 1395. *Henry* King of *Caſtile* ſent ſome Ships the ſecond time to find out this Iſland and the *Canaries*, which it ſeems ſucceeded, for in 1417. Monſieur *Ruben de Bracamont*, a *French* Gentleman, was ſent to conquer *Canaria. Hackl. T.* 2. *Part* 2. *p.* 1. —— In 1419. it was again diſcovered by the *Portugueſe*, and called by this Name for its plenty of Wood. Its length is 25 Leagues, its circuit 60. And though it is ſaid an *Engliſhman* firſt Landed here, yet the *Portugueſe* firſt Peopled this Iſland, and ſtill Poſſeſs it.

The whole Iſland in all parts well watered, having, beſides many pleaſant Springs, eight handſome Rivulets, wherewith the Earth, refreſhed and moiſtned, yields the ſweeter Herbage; which otherwiſe by reaſon of the Heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be ſo nouriſhing. The chief City of it hath the Name of *Fouchial*, the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Seat of Juſtice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many Learned Men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times diſcovered by one *Machan*, an *Engliſhman*, who was caſt upon it by a Tempeſt, *Anno* 1344. (as has been ſaid above) who burying there his Wife, or ſome other Woman which he had in his company, writ on her Tomb his name, and coming thither, with the Cauſe thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occaſion to look farther after it. Deſolate and Unpeopled at the firſt Diſcovery, now exceeding Populous; and of no ſmall advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which firſt united, *An.* 1420. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry*, before-mentioned. Every thing it produceth is extraordinary good in its kind, but its principal Commodities are Sugars and Wines, and Cedar Cheſts: The Biſhop of *Toucha* had a Revenue of 8000 Ducats. This is a fair City, which has a good Port, and a ſtrong Caſtle for its defence; and the Cathedral is very Magnificent. It has a great plenty of good Wines, which are laden here moſtly for *America*. It has alſo another conſiderable Sea-port Town call'd *Machio*. *Hackl. T.* 2. *Part* 2. *p.* 519. but misfigured, for it ſhould be 7.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Iſle of *HOLY-PORT*, is diſtant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coaſts of *Mauritania Tangitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolemy*. So called, becauſe diſcovered by ſome *Portugal* Mariners (by the Direction and Encouragement of the ſaid Prince *Henry*) on *Allhallows*-day *Anno* 1428. Deſolate and unhabited at the firſt Diſcovery, but now very well Peopled. In compaſs about 15 miles; well ſtored with Corn and Fruits, great ſhoals of Fiſh upon their Shores, plenty enough of Beeves and Goats; but ſuch abundance of Coneys (bred of one Doe-Coney brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no leſs peſtered with them in theſe later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; inſomuch that they were out of hope to withſtand the Miſchief, or repair the Damages ſuſtained by them. A little Iſland not far off, breedeth nothing elſe.

The chief Town of it *Porto Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, ſeated on a convenient Rode, but a ſorry Haven, was taken by Sir *Amias Preſton*, in our Wars with *Spain*, *Anno* 1596. but being ſacked and ſpoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was ſaid, and reckoned for the moſt remote Colony which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Weſtern Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be Unnavigable, (proved otherwiſe by *Hanno*'s voyage) choaked with Mud and Weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Æthiopum populos alit ultima Cerne*) by *Feſtus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

15. *The HESPERIDES.*

The *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are ſaid to be two in number, ſituate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets, for giving a ſafe and pleaſant Habitation to the Daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the Name of *Heſperedes* alſo;) the curious Gardens by them planted, and the Golden Apples of it which were kept by the Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Hiſtorians* remove theſe Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already ſpoken of. Which, notwithſtanding, it is granted, that there were anciently ſome Iſlands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and ſaid to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the ſame which *Plutarch* in the Life of *Sertorius* calleth *Inſulæ Atlanticæ*, and deſcribes them thus: Αἱ δύο μὲν εἰσὶ, λέπτῳ παντάπασι πορθμῷ διαιρούμεναι, &c.
‘ They are (ſaith he) two Iſlands parted by a narrow
‘ Strait of the Sea, diſtant from the main Land of *Africk*
‘ 10000 Furlongs (which in our Account cometh to
‘ 1250 miles) called alſo the Iſles of *Bleſſed Souls*, and the
‘ *Fartunate Iſlands*. They have Rain there very ſeldom,
‘ but a fine ſweet Dew, which makes their Earth ex-
‘ ceeding fruitful both for Tillage and planting Fruits,
‘ which ſometimes grow without any care or labour of the
‘ Husbandman; ſufficient by their plenty and ſweetneſs
‘ to maintain the People; much given to Eaſe, and hardly
‘ troubling themſelves with any Buſineſs. The Air for
‘ the moſt part very temperate, never extream in any
‘ changes of the Seaſon; the rigour of the Northern and
‘ Eaſtern Winds, being by ſo long a paſſage thither very
‘ much abated; as on the other ſide the Weſtern and
‘ South-Eaſtern Winds, do much refreſh it with ſuch Miſts
‘ as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the
‘ People. A Place ſo generally ſweet, that the barbarous
‘ People in it have a conſtant and approved Opinion, that
‘ theſe ſhould be the *Elyſian-Fields*, the Seats of the Bleſſed
‘ Souls departed, deſcribed by *Homer*: with the report
‘ whereof *Sertorius* was ſo highly taken, that he intended
‘ to have given over the purſuit of the Civil Wars, and
‘ there to ſpend the reſt of his days in Peace and Happi-
‘ neſs; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, Men accu-
‘ ſtomed unto Spoil and Rapine had not took him off.
So far, and to this purpoſe *Plutarch*. But what theſe Iſlands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great diſtance from the Coaſt of *Africk* they cannot be the *Fortunate Iſlands* ſpoken of before) I cannot eaſily determine: unleſs we ſhould conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Iſlands of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola* on the Coaſts of *America*; to the Story and Chorography whereof we are now to haſten.

AOZORES.

The *AOZORES* is a knot of Iſlands ſeated in the *Atlantick* Ocean, to the North-Weſt of the *Canary* Iſlands in the Latitunde of 40. and are in number nine, *viz. Tercera*, *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*, *St. George*, *Pico*, *Faial*, *Flores*, *Corvo*, and *Gratioſa*. They are now under the Crown of *Portugal*; and it may be queſtioned whether they belong to *Europe*, *Africa*, or *America*: Though I think it is better to place them here, than totally to omit them. They were firſt diſcovered by a *Flandrian*, in the year 1449. The Soil is ſaid to be Stony, but wonderfully Fruitful, and affording excellent Beeves. In the year 1597. the *Engliſh* under the command of the Earl of *Eſſex*, took and burnt the Town of *Faial*, and might have taken more of them, but that they came thither to wait for the *Spaniſh Weſt-India* Fleet, which eſcaping into the Harbour of *Tercera*, the Principal of theſe Iſlands, eſcaped from them, but however, they took three of their beſt Ships.

And ſo much for the Iſles of *AFRICK*.

A *TABLE* of the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the Principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

	Long.		*Lat.*		
A					
A Gadez	39	20	25	30	
Alexandria	67	0	31	20	
Algiers	33	0	35	20	
Amara	63	30	5	0	*A.*
Angola	45	10	7	0	*A.*
Aſna	66	30	25		
Azamor	18	30	32	40	
Atquin	11	10	20	0	
Adrimetum					
B					
Babel Mandel	80	01	12	50	
Bagamedrum	62	36	6	0	
Barca	62				
Benin	41	0	7	40	
Bona	37	10	35	40	
Borneo	44	30	17	10	
Brava	74	30	0	30	
Budomel	10	20	14	30	
Bugia	34	30	35	10	
Babylon Egypt					
C					
Caire	67	30	30	0	
Cyrene	53	30	32	0	
Canaria	9	30	27	20	
Carthage					
Cirta					
D					
Damiata	60	0	32	40	
Damut	51	0	11	20	
Dancali	65	0	17	30	
Dara	66	50	12	0	
Docono	78	20	12	30	
F					
Fatigar	74	0	2	40	*A.*
Feſſe	21	50	32	50	
Fierro	6	20	26	30	
Forte ventura	11	0	28	0	
Fouchial	8	10	31	30	
G					
Gamba	64	49	70	30	*A.*
Gouga	55	0	22	0	
Goyami	57	0	14	0	*A.*
Gualata	13	30	23	30	
Guber	29	20	10	40	
H					
Holy Port	10	0	32	30	
L					
Lanſarote	11	40	29	30	
M					
Madagaſcar	77	0	19	0	*A.*
Midazo	46	0	5	10	
Malta	46	0	45	30	
Manicongo	47	20	7	0	*A.*
Morocco	20	0	30	30	
Melinde	71	20	3	20	*A.*
Meroe	68	20	16	15	
Mezzata	47	40	30	40	
Mina	28	50	6	20	
Mombaza	72	0	4	50	*A.*
Moſambique	70	20	14	40	
Memphis					
N					
Nubia	60	0	17	40	
O					
Oran	29	40	35	0	
P.					
Palma	6	20	28	0	
Paſcar	59	40	1	20	*A.*
Q					
Quiloa	69	50	8	56	
R					
Rameſes	68	30	30	30	
S					
Sabaim	68	20	8	40	
Septa	22	0	35	40	
Suachim	72	40	18	40	
Sus	27	30			
T					
Tangier	30	50	35	0	
Tefethne	16	10	30	0	
Tegnit	27	40	28	10	
Teient	17	0	30	30	
Tenariffe	8	10	27	30	
Theſſet	20	0	29	10	
Teleſſine	29	0	34	10	
Tigremaon	65	0	6	0	
Tombuto.	20	50	15	0	
Tunis	40	0	36	0	
Thebes in Egypt					
V					
Vella	77	0	13	0	
Utica					
Z					
Zacatera	88	0	12	50	
Zegreg	36	40	14	40	
Zeila	80	0	11	20	
Zigec	45	50	40	50	
Zimbaus	59	0	25	20	*A.*

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AMERICA,
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſlands of it.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

MATTH. XXIV. XIV.

Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni in univerſo orbe, teſtimonium omnibus Gentibus: & tunc veniet conſummatio.

S. *Hieronym.* in locum.

Signum Dominici adventus eſt Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus ſit excuſabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

LONDON:
Printed in the Year, MDCCII.

An Advertiſement to the READER, concerning *AMERICA* in General.

HE *that Travelleth any Part of* America, *not inhabited by the* Europeans, *ſhall find a World very like to that we lived in, in or near the times of* Abraham *the* Patriarch, *about Three hundred years after the Flood. The Lands lie in Common to the Natives and all Comers, though ſome few ſmall parcels are Sown, yet the Tiller claims no right in them when he has reaped his Crop once. Their Petty Kings do indeed frequently ſell their Kingdoms, but that in effect is only the taking Money for withdrawing and going farther up the Country; for he is ſure never to want Land for his Subjects, becauſe the Country is vaſtly bigger than the Inhabitants, who are very few in proportion to its Greatneſs and Fertility.*

Thoſe Parts that are fit for Trees are all covered with Woods full of vaſt large Trees, with very few Buſhes or Shrubs under them; ſo that it is in moſt Places eaſie and pleaſant Travelling under the ſhady old Trees. Thoſe Parts that lie next the Rivers and Lakes are full of Bogs and Quagmires, that were never Drained nor Improved any way. The ſandy and barren Grounds that have neither of theſe, are rare in North America, *but more frequent in South* America. *There is another ſort of Lands that bear rich Graſs, but neither Trees nor Buſhes, a vaſt Tract of which lyeth to the S.W. of* Virginia, *the Bounds of which to the S. and W. are unknown, and theſe though one would think the eaſieſt to fit for Humane habitation, are yet ſaid not be inhabited, perhaps only becauſe not frequented by the Deer, which the* Indians *ever follow and live upon a great part of the Year. The Springs of Water alſo not breaking out ſo frequently upon the Earth, and the* Indians *having neither Art nor Patience to* Dig *for them into the Bowels of the Earth.*

Cities and Towns built with Timber, Brick or Stone, they have none; their Villages are encompaſſed with whole Trees ſet in the Ground like Palliſadoes, and the Houſes within them are built like the old tents of Boughs and Poles, and covered with Straw or Leaves to ſecure them from the Injury of the Weather: And being thus Mean, they as lightly eſteem them, and do leave or burn them without regret; yet they will defend their Towns for the Security of their Lives, rather than for any Value they have for them. So that a Man may ſay, the Indians *rather* are, *than are ſettled in the Land.*

Sometimes whole Nations change their Seats, and go at once to very diſtant places, Hunting as they go for a Subſiſtance; and they that have come after the firſt Diſcoverers, have found thoſe places Deſolate, which the other found full of Inhabitants. This will ſhew, that we have done them no Injury by Settling amongſt them; we, rather than they, bring the prime Occupants, and they only Sojourners in the Land: we have bought however of them the moſt part of the Lands we have, and have purchaſed little with our Swords, but when they have made War upon us.

But then as to the Inhabitants, they are infinitely more Barbarous than the Inhabitauts of Canaan *were in the times of* Abraham. *They have none or very few tame Cattel of any ſort, ſuch as Cows, Horſes, Sheep, Goats or Hogs, except what we have carried to them, which is a good Argument to prove they are deſcended from the* Samoydes, *or very Northern* Tartars *of* Aſia, *who by reaſon of the exceſſive Colds, have no Cattel but a ſort of Deer, which will not live in warmer Countries, and ſo failed them when they came to turn towards the South. They have no Manufactures, Arts or Sciences, a bad Government, under Petty Princes, and a worſe Religion, conſiſting moſtly in Worſhipping the Sun, and the Devil; and Managed by Witches, Conjurers, and Wizards, who pretend to raiſe the Devil, to be informed by him of what they deſire to know: All that they pretend to claim any Propriety in, is, their Wives and Children, and what they carry about them; only their Kings have a Propriety in their Subjects.*

Hence we may obſerve, that Learning and Arts, Religion and Government, are not the Productions of Time, and that they came not into the World by humane Invention, as many have averr'd; for theſe People are of a greater ſtanding than thoſe ancient Heroes that ſo mightily Adorned and Improved the Ages in which they lived, and Civilized us as their Inventions came forward. Letters, Hiſtory, and Philoſophy, are Things of which they have no Notion; nor ſhould we ever have had any, if God had not inſpired the firſt Inventers of Letters. The whole World might have been to this Day, as Barbarous and Ignorant as they now are, if the Divine Providence had not drawn it out of its Chaos *of Moral, as well as Material Confuſion; and therefore it ſeems he has diſcovered them to us in theſe latter Ages, that we may Civilize theſe Nations, and fit them for the Reception of* Chriſtianity, *of which they could otherwiſe never have heard.*

The Spaniards *entred with Armed Forces, and with an handful of Men Conquered two moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms in a ſmall time: It is true, their Fire-Arms, Horſe, and Diſcipline, were vaſt Advantages againſt a naked number of* Indians; *yet the bare diſproportion of Number, without the Divine Aſſiſtance, would certainly have caſt the Victory on the ſide of the* Indians, *as any rational Man muſt grant that conſidereth it well. The* Engliſh *and* French *went the way of Treaty, and ſettled as Planters by leave of the Inhabitants, who were very Numerous, and might at firſt eaſily have deſtroyed them; but their Numbers are ſo diminiſhed by the Small Pox, Brandy, and their mutual Feuds, that the* Engliſh *are now much more Stronger and more Numerous than they be; ſo that they are forced to remove higher up into the Country, which affords the* Engliſh *Means and Opportunity to gather Strength and Improve the Country, which would otherwiſe have been Difficult, if not Impoſſible.*

Tho' Spain *and* England *have for the Preſent very much encreaſed their Trade and Riches, by the Diſcovery and Plantation of* America, *yet it is diſputable, whether in the End it will not turn to their greater Damage than Advantage. As to* Spain, *it hath ſo very much exhauſted the People of that Kingdom already, that the Poſſeſſion of it is not now kept without great Difficulty; and yet the Conſumption goes on daily; and were the Paſſage to the* Indies *a little more Open and Cheap, very many more would paſs thither, and* Spain *would fall under the Sword of the next Invader, for want of Hands to defend it: Nor is* Spain *conſiderably enriched by theſe Treaſures of* America, *they* *being yearly drawn out again by the neighbour Nations, which ſupply* Spain *with Neceſſaries.*

The Depopulation of Spain *is moſtly attributed to the Baniſhment of the* Moors *and their Wars abroad, and theſe had their ſhare in it; but the* American *Plantations ſeem to have had a principal Share in it; vaſt numbers of* Spaniards *every year being invited thither to partake of its Riches, who ſeldom or never return back again; ſo that the reſt that are left behind, being hereby made more uneaſie, do deſire alſo to paſs thither: And if ever* Spain *be vigorouſly Attacked, it will be the leſs manfully Defended, becauſe they have this Empire in* America *to retreat to at the worſt. But, however this Depopulation came upon* Spain *at firſt, nothing is more certain, than that* America *has very much encreaſed it: So that as far as a Man may judge of future things, the Poſſeſſion of* Spain *will paſs in a few Generations to another People, or at leaſt it will become an Acceſſion to ſome other Crown.*

England *began its Plantations near* 100 *Years after* Spain, *and conſequently the Effects of it are not yet ſo viſible as in the other Kingdom; but the People of* England *are ſenſibly waſted already, and it has a very ill Effect upon the Tillage and Husbandry of* England *in all the Southern Parts, and upon the Soldiery; ſo that the Armies that have hitherto been raiſed in* England *cannot now be had: This Scarcity grows greater every Year, and will be the Cauſe of many more Families removing to theſe Plantations than have hitherto gone, which muſt have a very ill effect upon us at long run.*

It is the Nature of Mankind to deſire to live where they may ſubſiſt moſt eaſily, eſpecially if any ways pent. So if any Tenant, Shopkeeper, or Tradeſman, find his Trade fail, his Debts too great, or his Condition uneaſie, away he goes to the Plantations with as much as he can carry off, and within a while the Wife and Children follow, and ſometimes many others of their Acquaintance and Relations. The Planters draw over as many as is poſſible to ſerve them, very few of which ever return to us again; ſo that one way or other ſome thouſands are drawn over, and ſettled there every Year: This leſſens the People of England, *and rendereth them that ſtay more uneaſie, and by conſequence diſpoſeth them to follow the other.*

Hands are the Father, and Lands the Mother of all Wealth; as Hands grow ſcarcer, ſo they grow dearer, and Lands cheaper: As our People grow leſs, ſo leſs is ſpent in Meat, Drink, and Apparel, and that is another Cauſe of the fall of Lands; ſo that as the Trade of England *grows by the Plantations, the Lands of* England *fall, the Gentry and Nobility ſink, and the Security and Strength of* England *abateth. As the Merchant groweth hereby much richer than the old Families, ſo they grow more inſolent, and deſirous of a Charge in the Government to bring the other under them, or at leaſt to a Level with them.*

We neither can nor ought to think of forcing theſe Planters to return back to us; nor is it our intereſt, or juſt, to oppreſs them, by over-charging the Goods that go thither or come from thence; but as they are ever dreining out our People, we ought to be as careful to ſupply that Conſumption for our own ſecurity, and encourage Marriage amongſt our meaner People, and the Settlement of Strangers amongſt us by introducing a more eaſie way of Naturalization than that by Act of Parliament now in uſe.

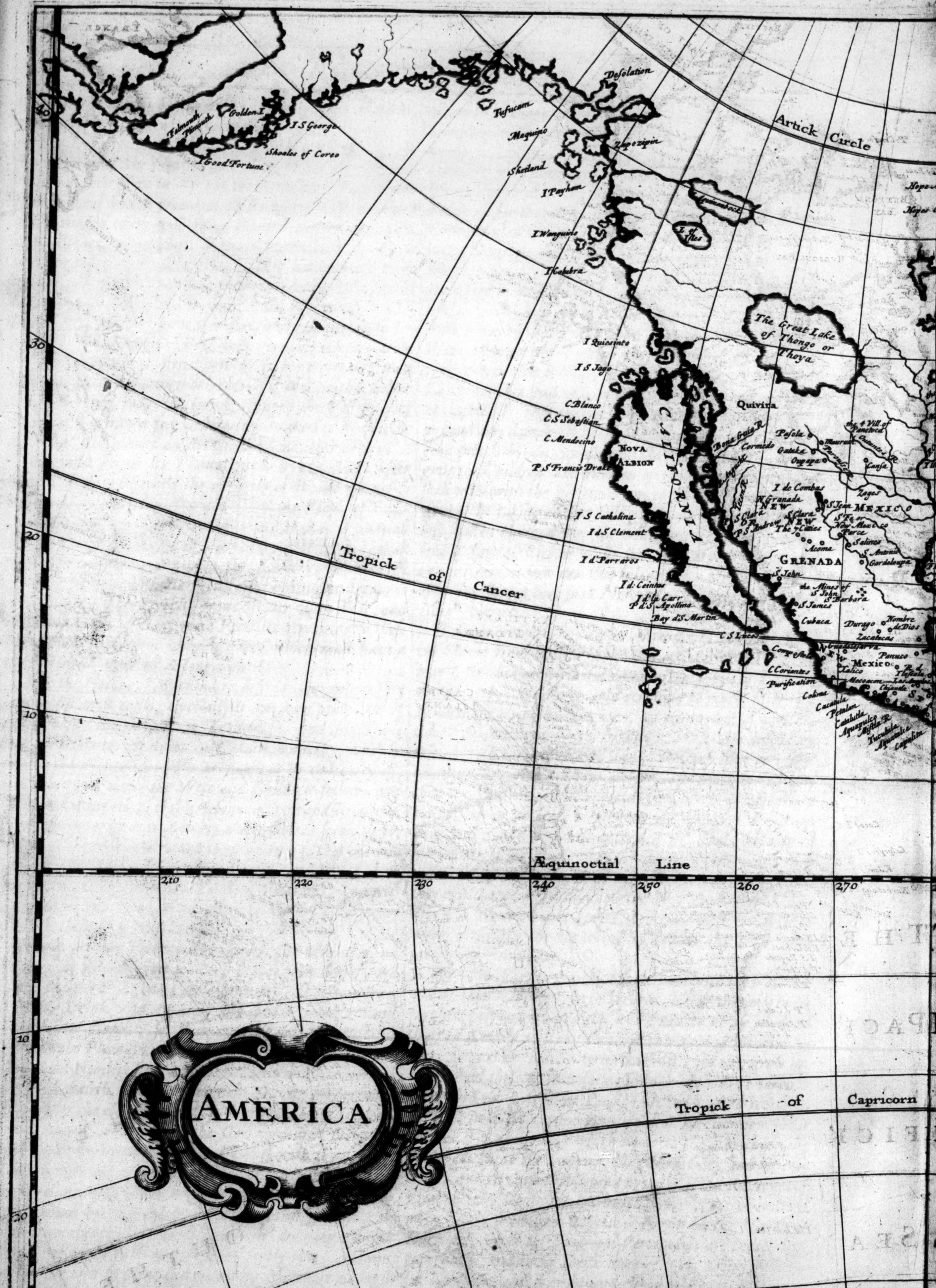
Next to that of inviting and encouraging Strangers to ſettle amongſt us, by allowing them equal Privileges with the Engliſh, *the taking Care for* Negro *and* Tartar *Servants to manage our Husbandry, is of great uſe. The bringing in* Negroes *for Footmen and for Women-Servants in* London *is become pretty frequent and common, but there were never any of them employed to Agriculture here in* England, *as in truth they ſeem to be ſomewhat of the Tendereſt for that Work in our cold Climate; but the* Negro *Children born here might do very well, eſpecially the* Mulatto-Negroes, *half white half black, many of which ſort are born amongſt us, tho' we do not yet diſtinguiſh them. But there is one thing of abſolute Neceſſity before this can be done, which is to revive the Laws of Villenage, and ſettle a way of Governing them, like that practiſed in our Plantations, without which they will be of no uſe to us. And when that is done, that it be made a Part of the Law, that they ſhall be Servants, tho' Baptized, as much as before, ſo that they may be admitted to Chriſtianity without any damage to their Maſters, as is practiſed with good ſucceſs by the* Spaniards *and* Portugueſe; *and to give the Children and Women of the white Women that ſhall mix with the* Negro *Men, to the Maſter of the* Negroes, *he taking care to bring them up; and that no Pariſh ſhall be charged with the Maintenance of any* Negro, *Old or Young, Sick or Well, but to be always maintained by the Families to which they belong, with a ſevere Penalty upon any Perſon that ſhall Harbour or Entertain any other Man's* Negro.

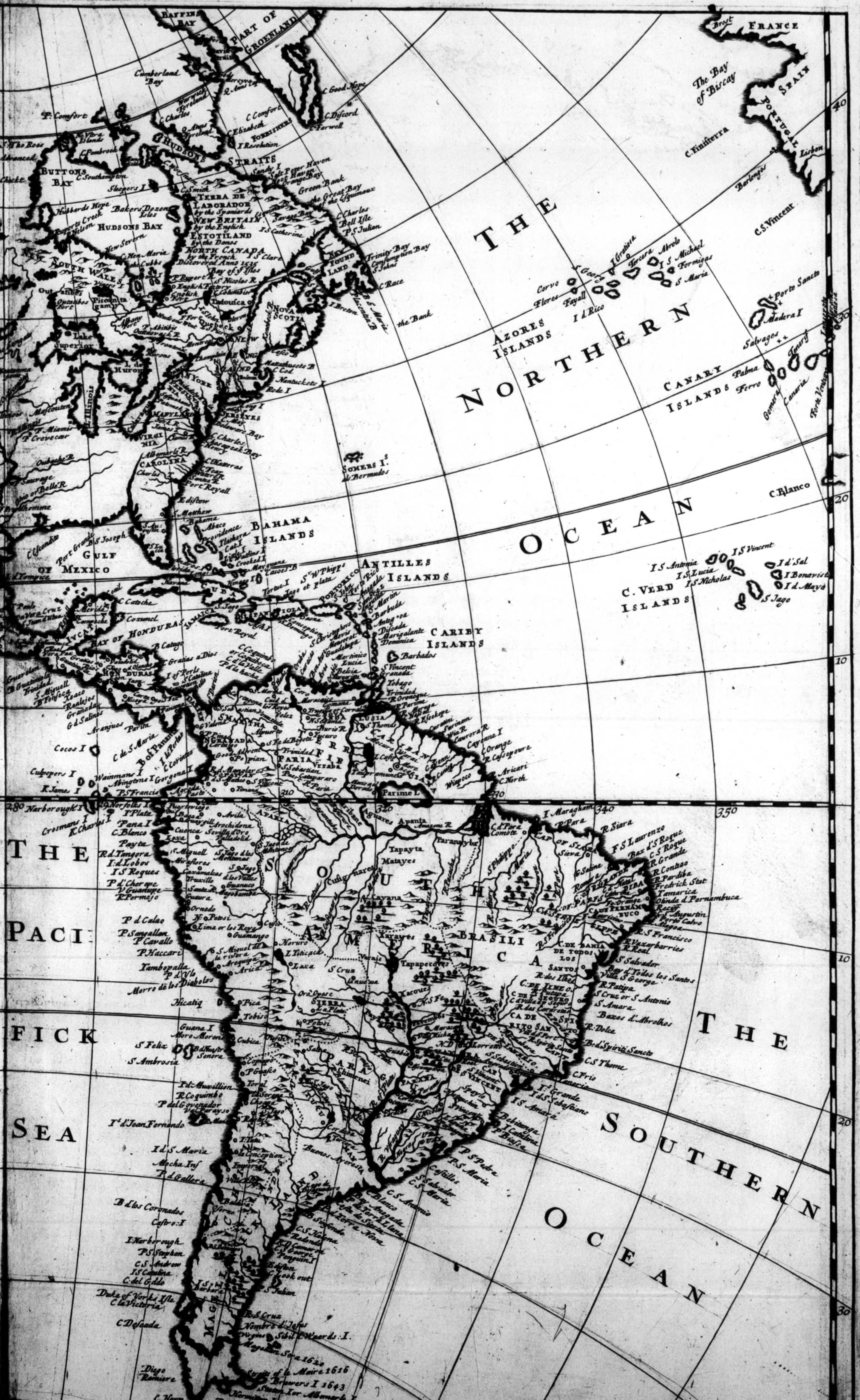
I do not certainly know whether we might not have Tartar *Slaves from* Ruſſia *by the Bay of* Archangel; *if we may (for they are plentiful enough there) by the Laws of the Country, then they would certainly be much fitter for Husbandry than the* Negroes, *as coming out of a wilder Country, and brought up hardily: Theſe alſo might be mixed with our* Negroes, *and a Race of Men be raiſed between them of a different Colour, and much more hardy than the* Engliſh, *which would very much contribute to the raiſing or at leaſt keeping up the value of Land in* England; *and as theſe encreaſed we ſhould be able to ſpare more of our People to Navigation, Trades, and Manufactures; and when the Foundation were once well laid they would encreaſe, and abate the Now exorbitant Prices given to Servants and Day-Labourers, which is treble to what it was in the beginning of* James *the Firſt, and encreaſing every Day.*

We have Wars in America *ſometimes with the Natives, and if their Children were brought hither they might be taught Husbandry here, tho' there can be no uſe made of them in* America, *becauſe they will run away to the wild* Americans *rather than Serve the* Engliſh *when they grow up.*

Without theſe or ſome ſuch effectual Methods be taken to make good the Loſs of our People to America *and* Ireland, *we ſhall in a ſhort time pay very dear for our now great Advantages of Trade, which tends to the Enriching the Merchant, but to the Impoveriſhing the Gentry and the Nobility, and all thoſe that depend upon the Land Revenues of* England; *a Conſideration which ſhould never be omitted when Trade is under a Debate: For to ſay the Nation is Enriched, when the Principal Parts of it are indeed Impoveriſhed, and never think more of it, is a very wonderful Deluſion, and may be underſtood when it is a little more felt.*

Much more might have been ſaid; but I conſider ſome things are only to be hinted to awaken the Thoughts of Men, and not to be followed too far; of which ſort perhaps this is one, which for the good of my Country I thought I was bound not wholly to omit.


AMERICA
Artick Circle
Tropick of Cancer
Æquinoctial Line
Tropick of Capricorn
40
30
20
10
10
20
30
210
220
230
240
250
260
270
Falmouth
Plimouth
Golden I
I S George
Shoales of Coreo
I Good Fortune
Tufucam
Desolation
Maquino
Zopozipin
Shetland
I Payhem
I Wanguino
I Calabra
I of Isles
The Great Lake of Thongo or Thoya
I Quiesinto
I S Jago
C Blanco
C S Sebastian
C Mendocino
NOVA ALBION
P S Francis Drake
CALIFORNIA
Quivira
Bona Guia R
Cormedo
Pasola
Gataka
Oupapa
Maurum
Parousse R
the 4 Vill of Panetoca
Cansa
Zages
I de Combas
N Granada
NEW
S Jean
MEXICO
S Clara
P S Andrew
S Clara
NEW
The 7 Citties
S Fe or New Mexico
Parce
Salines
Acoma
S Antonio
Gardoloupa
GRENADA
S John
I S Cathalina
I d S Clement
I d' Parraros
I d: Ceintos
I d' la Carr
P d S Apollina
Bay d S Martin
C S Lucas
the Mines of S John
S Barbara
S James
Cubaca
Durago
Nombre de Dios
Zacatecas
Compostela
Guadalajarva
NEW
Panuco
Mexico
Xalico
C Coriantes
Purification
Colima
Mecoacon
Chiaude
Cacatula
Petulan
Catabitla
Aquapulco
Mistla R
Tucubala
Aquatulco
Capalita
Hopes
Hopes


THE NORTHERN OCEAN
THE PACIFICK SEA
THE SOUTHERN OCEAN
SOUTH AMERICA
BAFFINS BAY
PART OF GROENLAND
FRANCE
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
The Bay of Biscay
C. Finisterra
Lisbon
Barlenges
C. S. Vincent
Cumberland Bay
C. Good Hope
C. Discord
Farwell
C. Comfort
FORBISHERS
I. Resolution
HUDSONS STRAITS
BUTTONS BAY
HUDSONS BAY
Bakers Dozen Isles
TERRA DE LABORADOR
NEW BRITAIN
ESTOTILAND
NORTH CANADA
SOUTH WALES
Green Bank
the Great Bay of the Esquimaux
C. Charles
Bell Isle
P. S. Julien
NEW FOUND LAND
Trinity Bay
Consumption Bay
C. Race
the Bank
NOVA SCOTIA
C. Breton
Quebeck
Lake Superior
Huron
Illinois
NEW ENGLAND
NEW YORK
C. Cod
Nantucket I.
Rode I.
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
CAROLINA
C. Charles
C. Hatteras
Somers I.s
al. Bermudos
AZORES ISLANDS
Corvo
Flores
Fayall
S. George
I. Graciosa
Tercera
S. Michael
Formigas
S. Maria
Porto Sancto
Madera I.
Salvages
CANARY ISLANDS
Palma
Ferro
Gomera
Canaria
Tenerif
Port Ventura
C. Blanco
C. VERD ISLANDS
I. S. Antonia
I. S. Vincent
I. S. Lucia
I. S. Nicholas
I. d'Sal
I. Bonavista
I. d. Mayo
S. Jago
BAHAMA ISLANDS
GULF OF MEXICO
C. Florida
ANTILLES ISLANDS
PORTORICO
CUBA
JAMAICA
HISPANIOLA
CARIBY ISLANDS
Barbados
Barbuda
Antegoa
Guadalupe
Dominica
Martinico
S. Lucia
S. Vincent
Granada
Tobago
Trinidad
BAY OF HONDURAS
HONDURAS
YUCATAN
C. Catoche
C. Gratias a Dios
Cocos I.
Culpepers I.
Wainmans I.
Abingtons I.
Narborough I.
Crosmans I.
K. Charles I.
P. S. Francis
Gorgona I.
B. of Panama
Cayenne I.
C. North
Parime L.
Amazon R.
Maragnan
GUIANA
BRASILI
PARAGUAY
C. S. Augustin
Pernambuca
S. Salvador
Bay of Todos los Santos
Bazos d'Abrolhos
C. Frio
S. Sebastian
P. Plata
Pana I.
C. Blancos
Payta
Lima or los Reyes
P. d. Calao
Arica
Morro de los Diabolos
Potosi
S. Felix
S. Ambrosia
Id. Juan Fernando
I. d. S. Maria
Mocha Ins.
Buenos Ayres
R. Plata
C. S. Antonio
B. d'los Coronados
Castro I.
I. Narborough
P. S. Stephen
C. S. Andrew
C. del Gado
Duke of Yorks Isle
C. la Victoria
C. Desada
P. S. Julian
C. Blanco
Look out
B. S. Cruz
Nombre d'Jesus
Sibil de Weerds I.
Magellan Str.
Str. le Maire 1616
Diego Ramirez
Str. Brower's I. 1643
Staten Lar. Albemarle I.
C. Horne
Barnevelts I.
280
290
300
310
320
330
340
350
40
30
20
10
10
20
30

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iles thereof.

OF *AMERICA*.

A*MERICA*, the fourth and laſt part of the World, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Atlantick* Ocean and the *Vergivian* Seas, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Noordt*; on the Weſt, with the *Pacifick Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Aſia*; on the South, with ſome part of *Terra Auſtralus Incognita*, from which ſeparated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magelan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not ſo well diſcovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Iſland* or *Continent*.

It is called by ſome, and that moſt aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: *New* for the Late Diſcovery; and *World*, for the vaſt greatneſs of it. The moſt uſual, and yet ſomewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; becauſe *Americus Veſpuſius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, diſcovered a great part of the Continent of it. But ſince the firſt light he had to find out thoſe Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who firſt led the way; and that *Sebaſtian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Veſpuſius* never ſaw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebaſtiana*, or *Cabotia*. The moſt improper name of all, and yet not much leſs uſed than that of *America*, is the *Weſt-Indies*: *Weſt*, in regard of the Weſtern ſituation of it from theſe parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as miſtook for ſome part of *India*, at the firſt Diſcovery, or elſe becauſe the Sea-Men uſe to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Preſumptions, than demonſtrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Diſcoveries, Their Reaſons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of theſe parts of the World which are oppoſite to us. But unto this it may be anſwered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongſt the Ancients was by Suppoſition, at the beſt by Demonſtration only, and not in fact: or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is ſaid that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, diſcovered a great Iſland in the Weſtern Ocean, and after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which ſome conceive to be *Hanno* himſelf) informs us that he ſailed not Weſtward, but more towards the South: and therefore this *Great Iſland*, whatſoever it was. (whether *Madera*, or ſome one of the *Fortunate Iſlands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3, It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* ſpeaks of a great Iſland of the *Atlantick* Ocean, *Libyam & Africam adequans*, (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Libya* and *Africk*, properly ſo called: which he confeſſeth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore poſſibly never extant but in ſome Mens fancies. 4. That

Ariſtotle in the Book *de mundo* (if that Book be his) ſpeaks of an Iſland very fruitful, and full of Navigable Rivers, diſcovered by the *Carthaginians* and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Iſland being affirmed by that Author to be *Multorum dierum itinere à* Gadibus *remota*, hath made ſome Men conceive it to be this *America*, or ſome of the great Iſlands of it. As if it might not as well be one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*, or ſome other of the Iſlands in the Road of *Hanno*'s Voyage. Certain I am, that one of the beſt Friends the *Phœnicans* have, who would not gladly loſe ſuch an opportunity of ennobling their peformances in Navigation, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no ſuch place as is there deſcribed by that Author, whoſoever he were. 5. Some have produced theſe Verſes of *Seneca*, to infer a knowledge of this Country amongſt the Ancients, *viz.*

Venient annis ſecula ſeris,
Quibus Oceanus *vincula rerum*
Laxet, & ingens pateat Tellus,
Novoſque Tiphys *detegat Orbes,*
Nec ſit Terris ultima Thule.

Which we may *Engliſh* in theſe words:

In the laſt days an age ſhall come
Wherein the all-devouring Foam
Shall loſe it's former bounds, and ſhew
Another *Continent* to view.
New Worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A ſecond *Tiphys* ſhall reveal;
And frozen *Thule* ſhall no more
Be of the Earth the fartheſt Shore.

But this Argument can bring no neceſſary, nor ſo much as a probable inference, of any ſuch Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* ſhewing as well the continual dangers as the poſſible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were, more Lands diſcovered then thoſe formerly known. 6. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is ſaid in the holy Scriptures to have ſent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there alſo ſaid to be the ſtation where his Navy lay, was ſituate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had ſent this way, his ſhipping muſt have lain at *Joppa*, or ſome other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence ſet forwards through the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and ſo plainly Weſtward. 7. Finally in the Hiſtory of *Wales*, writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the Son of *Owen Gwinedth*, Prince of *Wales*, of purpoſe to decline engaging in a *Civil War* raiſed in that Eſtate, in the year 1170. put himſelf to Sea, and after a long courſe of Navigation came into this Country: where after he had left his Men, and fortified ſome places of advantage in it, he returned home for more Supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the reſt of that Nation. To which ſome add, that there is ſtill ſome ſmattering of the *Welch* or *Britiſh* tongue to be found amongſt them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Pengwin*, and the like: in which regard ſome ſorry States-men went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Sovereignty of theſe Countries. Others more wiſe, diſſwaded from that vain Ambition, conſidering that *Welch-men*, as well as others, might be caſt upon theſe parts by force of Tempeſt, and eaſily implant ſome few words of their own among the People there inhabiting. And though I muſt needs ſay for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they ſay, then thoſe which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Iſlands of *Ariſtotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Diſcoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet I am not ſo far convinced of the truth thereof, the uſe of the Mariners Compaſs being not ſo ancient, (without which, ſuch a Voyage could not be performed) but that I may conclude with more ſatisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer ſaid once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*, Britania *qualis ſit, qualeſque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur; quippe jam diu clauſam aperit ecce Principum maximus*, (he means *Claudius Cæſar*) *nec indomitarum modo ſed & incognitarum ante ſe Gentium Victor*: ſo may we ſay of *America*, on theſe late Diſcoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do and ſhall know more certainly then in former times; ſince thoſe puiſſant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almoſt all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquiſhed, but even unknown Nations. For God remembring the promiſe of his Son, that his Goſpel before the end of the World ſhould be preached to all Nations, ſtirred up one *Chriſtopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nervy* in the Seigniory of *Genoa*, to be the Inſtrument for finding out thoſe parts of the World, to which the Sound of the Goſpel had not yet arrived. Who being a Man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not perſwade himſelf (the motion of the Sun conſidered) but that there was another *World* to which that Glorious Planet did impart both his Light and Heat, when he went from us. This *World* he purpoſed to ſeek after, and opening his deſign to the State of *Genoa*, *Anno* 1486. was by them rejected. On his repulſe, he ſent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned infortunately into the hands of Pirates, by them detained a long while, but at laſt inlarged. As ſoon as he was ſet at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Propoſition found ſuch a chearful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Chriſtopher Columbus* was ſent for to come thither alſo. But GOD had otherwiſe diſpoſed his rich purchaſe. For *Chriſtopher*, not knowing of his Brother's impriſonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his Service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his deſires known at the Court of *Caſtile*: where after many delays, and ſix years attendance on the buſineſs, he was at laſt furniſhed with three Ships only, and thoſe not for Conqueſt, but Diſcovery. With this ſmall ſtrength he ſailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could ſee no Land, ſo that the diſcontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; and partly out of ſcorn to be under the Command of a Stranger, partly deſirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Juſt at that time it happned that *Columbus* did diſcern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearneſs proceeded from ſome nigh habitable place, reſtrained the time of their expectation within the compaſs of three days, paſſing his word to return again, if they did not ſee Land within that time. Towards the end of the third day, one of the Company, called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deſerves to have his name recorded, being no otherwiſe rewarded for ſuch joyful News) deſcried Fire, an evident Argument that they drew near unto ſome ſhore. The place diſcovered was an Iſland on the Coaſt of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guahanami*; by *Columbus* S. *Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucaios*. Landing his Men, and cauſing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Croſs thereof; which he erected near the place where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took poſſeſſion of this *NEW WORLD* for the Kings of *Spain*, *October* 11. *Anno* 1492. Afterwards he diſcovered and took Poſſeſſion of *Hiſpaniola*, and with much Treaſure and Content returned towards *Spain*. Preferred for this good Service by the Kings themſelves, firſt to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms with this Inſcription, *For Caſtile and Leon* Columbus *hath gotten a NEW WORLD*; and in concluſion unto the Title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Iſle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Diſcovery being ſent to

Pope *Alex.* 6. by the Kings of *Caſtile*, he very liberally beſtowed upon them all thoſe Countreys which they already had, or ſhould afterwards diſcover in the Weſtern World; adviſing them to uſe their Diligence and Endeavors for converting theſe people to the Faith: which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbas* being furniſh'd with 18 Ships for more Diſcoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governor of the Countries diſcovered by him, they took along with them one *Buyl*, a *Benedictine* Monk, as the Pope's Vicar Gener. accompanied with the learned Clerks which were to be aſſiſtants to him in the converting of that People to the Chriſtian Faith. In this ſecond Voyage he diſcovered the Iſlands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the *Town* of *Iſabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hiſpaniola*; from whence, for ſome Severities uſed againſt the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was ſent Priſoner into *Caſtile*, but very honourably entertained, and abſolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third Voyage, in which he diſcovered the Countreys of *Paria* and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Iſlands of *Cubagna* and *Margarita*, with many other Iſlands, Capes, and Provinces, which ſhall be touched upon particularly in their ſeveral places. In the year 1500 he began his 4th. and laſt Voyage, in the courſe whereof coming to *Hiſpaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicolas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it: after which, ſcouring along the Seacoaſts as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former Diſcoveries, he returned back to *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about ſix years after (that is to ſay, *Anno.* 1506.) he departed this Life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this *Epitaph* on his Tomb, bald in it ſelf, and otherwiſe exceeding ſhort of ſo great a Merit. Of which I muſt tell you by the way, that the *Philip* whom the *Verſifier* (I do not ſay the Poet) called *Philippus Hiſpanus*, ſhould rather have been called *Philippus Auſtriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, ſole Daughter and Heir of the King of *Spain*, and after the Death of *Iſabella* ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*: or elſe, the *Epitaph* muſt be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above twenty years after. Now for this *Epitaph*, ſuch as it is, it is this that followeth:

Criſtophorus *genuit quem* Genoa *clara* Columbus,
(*Numine percuſſus quo neſcio*) *primus in altum*
Deſcendens Pelagus, Solem verſuſque cadentem
Directo curſu, noſtro hactenus addita Mundo
Littora detexi, Hiſpano paritura Philippo;
Addenda hinc aliis plura & majora relinquens.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe Words:

I *Chriſtopher Columbus*, whom the Land
Of *Genoa* firſt brought forth, firſt took in hand,
I know not by what Deity incited,
To ſcour the Weſtern ſeas, and was delighted
To ſeek for Countreys never known before.
Crown'd with Succeſs, I firſt deſcry'd the Shore
Of the *NEW WORLD*, then deſtin'd to ſuſtain
The future Yoke of *Philip* Lord of *Spain*.
And yet I greater matters left behind,
For men of more Means, and a Braver Mind.

Dying, he left two Sons behind him, of which the youngeſt, called *Ferdinand*, died unmarried; the eldeſt, called *Diego*, ſucceeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Mary* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it ſeemeth) no Iſſue by her, he ſpent the greateſt part of his Eſtate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, ſpoken of before, which he furniſhed with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal Revenue to maintain the ſame. But though his family be extinct, yet his Fame ſhall live, renowned to all poſterities, as the firſt diſcoverer of this new world, and conſequently the greateſt and moſt fortunate Advancer of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy; though in his life time ſo maligned by moſt part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla*, being ſent into thoſe Parts for redreſs of Grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Priſoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only ſtick after his death to deprive him of the honour of this Diſcovery, (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whoſe Charts and Deſcriptions he had ſeen) but in his life would often ſay that it was a matter of no ſuch difficulty to have found theſe Countries; and that if he had not done it when he did, ſome body elſe might have done it for him. Whoſe Peeviſhneſs he confuted by this modeſt Artifice, deſiring ſome of them, who inſolently enough had contended with him touching this Diſcovery, to make an Egg ſtand firmly upon one of its ends: Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruiſing one end of it, made it ſtand upright; letting them ſee without any farther reprehenſion, how eaſie it was to do that thing which we ſee another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was ſeconded by *John Cabot* a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in the year 1497. diſcovered all the North-Eaſt Coaſts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *New-found-Land*, and *Terra di Laborador* in the North, cauſing the Royelets to turn Homagers to that King, and the Crown of *England*. Next after him ſucceeded *Americus Veſpuſius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, *Anno*, 1501. on a deſign of finding out a nearer way to the *Molucca's* than by the *Cape of good hope*, who though he paſſed not farther than the Cape of S. *Auguſtines* in *Braſil*, without ſo much as having a ſight of the Great River *de la plata*, which waſheth the South Parts of that Country; yet from him (to the great Injury and Neglect of the firſt Diſcoverers) the Continent or Main Land of this Country hath the name of *America*; by which it is ſtill known, and moſt commonly called. Followed herein by divers Private Adventurers and Undertakers out of all Parts of *Europe* bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the firſt that compaſſed the whole World, and found the South Paſſage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake* and *Cavendiſh* of *England*. *Frobiſher* and *Davis* attempted a Diſcovery of the North-weſt Paſſage: *Willoubby* and *Burroughs* of the North-eaſt. So that, according to that elegant ſaying of the learned *Verulam* in his *Advancement of Learning*, this Great Building, the World, *had never thorough Light made in it, till theſe our days*; by which, as almoſt all parts of Learning, ſo in eſpecial this of Navigation, and by conſequence of Coſmography alſo, hath obtained an incredible Proficiency in theſe later times.

For in the Infancy and firſt Ages of the World, (pardon me, I beſeech you, this ſhort but not unprofitable Digreſſion) Men lived at home, neither intent upon any forreign Merchandiſe, nor inquiſitive after the Lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours; or in the Language of the Poet,

Nondum cæſa ſuis, peregrinum ut viſeret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidas Pinus, *deſcenderat undas.*

The Pine left not the Hills on which it ſtood,
To ſeek ſtrange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had inſtructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preſervation of himſelf and his Children from the general Deluge, the Poſterity which deſcended from him, had thereby a Pattern for the making of Ships and other Veſſels (perfected in more length of time)

time) whereby to make the Waters paſſable, and maintain a neceſſary intercourſe betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers, which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of Shipping to ſundry Men, according to ſuch Informations or Traditions as they had received: *Strabo*, to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus*, to *Neptune*, who was therefore called *The God of the Seas*; and *Tibullus*, to the People of *Tyre*, (a Town indeed of great wealth and Traffick, and the moſt famous Empory of the elder times) ſaying,

> *Prima Ratem ventis credere docta* Tyrus.

> The *Tyrians* firſt the Art did find
> To make Ships Travel with the Wind.

And queſtionleſs the *Tyrians* and the reſt of the *Phœnicians*, enjoying a large Sea-coaſt, and many ſafe and capacious Havens, being in theſe times moſt ſtrong at Sea, and making ſo many fortunate Navigations into moſt parts of the then known World, might give the Poet ſome good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians* the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of Navigation; tho' being an ingenious People, they did add much to it. For whereas the firſt Veſſels were either made of the body of ſome great Tree, made hollow by the Art of Man, or elſe of divers rods or twigs faſhioned into a Boat, and covered with the Skins of Beaſts, (which we have ſpoken of before, when we were in *Sanguebar*, and which are ſtill in uſe amongſt theſe *Americans*) the *Phœnicians* brought them firſt into ſtrength and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, when he fled from his Brother *Rameſes*, the uſe of Shipping was firſt brought amongſt the *Grecians*, who before that time knew no other way of croſſing the narrow Seas, but on Beams or Raſters tied to one another, *Nave primus ab Egypto* Danaus *advenit; ante enim Ratibus navigabatur*, as it is in *Pliny*: where we may ſee the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis* and *Navis*; though now both be uſed indifferently for all ſorts of Shipping. Amongſt the *Grecians*, thoſe of *Crete* were the ableſt Seamen; which gave occaſion to *Ariſtotle* to call *Crete* the *Lady of the Sea*; and to *Strabo*, to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were moſt conſiderable in this kind, and by the benefit of their Shipping much diſtreſſed the *Romans*. But ſo it hapned (as all things do and muſt concur to God's publick Purpoſes in the alteration of Eſtates) that a Tempeſt ſeparating a *Quinqueremis*, or Gally of five banks of Oars, from the reſt of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, caſt it on Shore of *Italy*; by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Shipwrights, ſoon became Maſters of the Sea. That *France* and *Spain* were taught the uſe of Shipping by the *Greeks* and *Phœnicians*, is a thing paſt queſtioning; *Marſeilles* in the one being a *Phocean*, and *Cades* in the other a *Tirian* Colony. As for the *Belgians* and the *Britans*, it is probable that they firſt learnt it of the *Romans*, (thô formerly they had ſome way to tranſport themſelves from one Shore to the other) for *Cæſar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all viſited by foreign Merchants. And the ſame *Cæſar* found the Seas betwixt *France* and *Britain* ſo ill furniſhed with Veſſels, that he was fain to make Ships to tranſport his Army: *Singulari militum ſtudio circiter ſexcentas & duodetriginta Naves invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greateſt height which it had in thoſe days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Veſſels, and the Tackle unto them belonging. That the *Phœnicians* firſt invented open Veſſels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been ſaid before, and unto them alſo is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two banks of Oars upon a ſide; which kind of Veſſels grew ſo large in the courſe of time, that *Ptolemy Philopater* is ſaid to have made a Gally of Fifty Banks. Great Ships of Burthen called *Circerus*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock-boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphas*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Lyburnians*; Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigats or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phaſeli*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the Invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phaſelis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*. As for Tackle, the *Bæotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalus*, and his Son *Icarus*, the Maſts and Sails: which gave occaſion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made Wings to their Bodies; and that *Icarus* ſoaring too high, melted the Wax which faſtened his Wings unto his Shoulders, and thereby periſhed: the Truth being, that preſuming too much on this new Invention, he ran himſelf upon a Rock, and was caſt away. For *Hippagines*, Veſſels for Tranſporting of Horſe, we are indebted to the *Salimanians*; for Grapling-hooks, to *Anacharſis*; for Anchors to the *Tuſcans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Tiphys*, the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*, who noting, that a Kite when ſhe flew, guided her whole Body by her Tail, effected that in the devices of Art, which he had obſerved in the Works of Nature. By theſe helps ſome great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greateſt, thoſe of *Jaſon*, *Ulyſſes*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon* and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of theſe, *Jaſon* and his Companions ſailed in the Ship called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulyſſes*, through the *Mediterranean* only; ſmall Gullets, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander*'s Journey, ſo famous, and accounted then ſo hazardous, was but ſailing down the River *Indus*, and four hundred Furlongs into the Ocean. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent that they went with great leiſure, and crawled cloſe the Shore-ſide: otherwiſe it had been impoſſible to have conſumed three whole Years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the uſual times of theſe Voyages, as appeareth in 1 *Kings* 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the moſt potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean* were the *Genoeſe* and *Venetians*; in the Ocean, the *Engliſh* and the *Hanſ-Towns*, neither of which attempted any great Diſcoveries.

But in the year 1300, one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples* found out the Compaſs, or *Pyxis Nautica*, conſiſting of 8 Winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: and not long after, the People of *Bruges* and *Antwerp* perfected this excellent invention, adding 24 other ſubordinate Winds or Points. By means of this excellent Inſtrument, and withal, by the good ſucceſs of *Columbus*, the *Portugals* Eaſtward, the *Spaniards* Weſtward, and the *Engliſh* Northward, have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impoſſible to have been performed, and had been fooliſhly undertaken when that Help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by ſome Learned Men to prove the uſe of the Mariner's Compaſs to be far more Ancient than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and induſtrious Man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* Tongue than the Philology of the *Greeks* and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* (the moſt famous Sea-men of old times:) but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the Cauſe. Nor is it poſſible that ſuch an excellent Invention, ſo beneficial to the common Good of all Mahkind, ſhould have been forgotten and diſcontinued for the ſpace of more than 2000 Years, if ever the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* had been Maſters of it; who could not poſſibly conceal it (had they been ſo minded) from the common Mariners, or they not have communicated it for Gain, or deſire of Glory, to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, under whom ſucceſſively they lived. As little moment do I find in ſome other Arguments; as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the Ancient Writers, or the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, ſhould be by them intended of the Mariner's Compaſs. For plainly the *Verſoria* of *Plautus* is no other than that piece of Tackle which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*; by which they uſe to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every Wind. And ſo much doth appear by the Poet himſelf, in the Comedy which he calls *Mercator*, ſaying, *Hinc ventus nunc ſecundus eſt, cape modo Verſoriam.* So called from *Verſo, to turn often*, or from *Verſum*, the firſt *Supine* of *Verto*: Whence *Velum vertere* is a common Phraſe amongſt the *Latins*, uſed for the ſhifting of the Sail as the Wind doth vary. As for the Load ſtone, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, Ἡράκλεια λίθος by the *Greeks*: not becauſe *Hercules Tirius* whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had firſt found out the virtue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh, but becauſe firſt found near *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*; Κέκληται δ' οὕτως ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείας τῆς ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλεως, ſaith *Heſychius*, the old Grammarian. Called for the ſame reaſon *Magnes*, by the Writers both *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe firſt found in the Territory of *Magneſia* a City of *Lydia* alſo, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us of the *Greeks*, Ἡράκλειαν λίθον τινὲς τὴν Μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωσαν, διὰ τὸ τὴν Ἡράκλειαν τῆς Μαγνησίας εἶναι, Heraclium *Lapidem quidam* Magneſiam *rediderunt, quia* Heraclea *pars eſt* Magneſiæ. Called for the very ſame reaſon *Lydius Lapis* alſo, but by them known only as a Touchſtone. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latins*.

Quem Magneta *vocant patrio de nomine* Graii,
Magnetum *quia ſit patriis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the *Greeks* do *Magnes* name,
Becauſe it from *Magneſia* came.

But I have rambled farther than I did intend, drawn by the virtue of the Load ſtone too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*, where the *Spaniards* at their firſt arrival found the People without all manner of Apparel, not skilled in Agriculture; making their Bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca*; a Root wherein is a venomous Liquor, not inferior to the moſt deadly Poiſons; but having firſt ſqueezed out this juice, and after dried and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worſhipped the Deviliſh Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of Cotton-wool, like our Childrens Babies; to which they did great Reverence, as ſuppoſing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them: and to blind them the more, the Devil would cauſe theſe Puppets to ſeem to move, and to make a noiſe. They ſtood alſo in ſo great fear of them, that they durſt not diſpleaſe them: for if their Wills were not fulfilled, the Devil ſtrait executed vengeance upon ſome of their Children; ſo holding this infatuated People in perpetual Thraldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not ſeen, that they thought the Chriſtians to be Immortal: wondring exceedingly at the Sails, Maſts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themſelves knowing no Ships or other Veſſels, but huge Troughs made of ſome great bodied Tree. But this Opinion of the Chriſtians Immortality (in the ſenſe they meant it) did not long continue, for having taken ſome of them, they held their Heads under the Water till they had quite choaked them; by which they knew them to be mortal, like other Men. Quite deſtitute of all good Learning, they reckoned their time by a confuſed Obſervation of the courſe of the Moon: and ſtrangely admired to ſee the *Spaniards* know the Health and Affairs of one another, only by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honeſt nature, for the moſt part they were found to be; loving and kind in their Entertainments, and apt to do good Offices, both private and publick, according to their Underſtandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond ſome certain Hill (but they knew not where) thoſe which lived honeſtly and juſtly, or offered up their Lives in defence of their Country, ſhould find a place of everlaſting Peace and Happineſs. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls Immortality, and of ſome *Ubi* for the future Reception of it, that we find ſome Tract or other of it in moſt barbarous Nations. And as for Gold and Silver, which the new come Chriſtians ſo Adored, they eſteemed them no otherwiſe than as droſs: though many times they Adorned themſelves therewith for the colour's ſake: as they did alſo with Shells, Feathers, and the like fine Gew-gaws.

Of Complexion, moſt of theſe *Americans* were reaſonably Fair and Clear, little inclining unto Blackneſs: notwithſtanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the ſame parallel with *Æthiopia, Lybia*, and the Land of *Negroes*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as ſome imagine) the cauſe of that Blackneſs, though accidentally it may turn the Skin into ſuch a colour; as we ſee in many Country Laſſes, even in colder Climates, whoſe Faces are continually expoſed to the Sun and Weather. Others more Wiſe in their own Conceits, (but in no bodies elſe) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be Black of Colour; contrary both to Senſe and Reaſon, Experience and true natural Philoſophy being both againſt it. And ſome will have this Blackneſs laid as a Curſe on *Cham*, (from whoſe Poſterity the *African* Nations do derive themſelves) becauſe, forſooth, he had carnal knowledge of his Wife when they were in the Ark: a Fancy as ridiculous as the other falſe. So that we muſt refer it wholly to God's ſecret pleaſure; though poſſibly enough the Curſe of God on *Cham* and on his Poſterity (though for ſome cauſe unknown to us) hath an Influence on it.

Touching the Original of this People, it is moſt probable that they deſcend from the *Tartars*; for which there are ſome Arguments of ſpecial weight. For firſt, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning and Civilities of it. And Secondly, that they came not from *Africk*; in regard they have no Black Men amongſt them, except ſome few which dwell on the Sea-Coaſts over againſt *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negroes*, from whence they are ſuppoſed to have been brought hither by ſome Tempeſt or other. Thirdly, that they have not the leaſt token or ſhew of the Arts and Induſtry of *China, India*, or any civil Region on that ſide of *Aſia*. The affirmative Arguments prove firſt, That they came from *Aſia*, next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Aſia*, is more than manifeſt, in that the Weſt ſide of the Country towards *Aſia*, is far more populous then the Eaſt towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reaſon aſſigned, than that theſe parts were firſt inhabited, and that from hence the reſt was Peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this People, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are moſt like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the Weſt ſide of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet disjoyned by a very ſmall Streight, as may be perceived by all our Maps and Charts, as alſo in the Deſcription of theſe Countries: ſo that there is thence into theſe Countries a very quick and eaſie paſſage. And fourthly, The People of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America*, is the neareſt unto *Tartary*, are ſaid to follow, in the whole courſe of their Life, the Seaſons and beſt Paſturing of their Cattel, juſt like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident Argument of their Original Deſcent.

But from what Root ſoever they did firſt deſcend, certain it is, that they had ſettled here many Ages ſince, and overſpread all the parts and quarters of this ſpacious Continent; there being no place which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found deſolate or waſte, and without

Inhabitants. But their numbers are much diminiſhed ſince theſe late Diſcoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves moſt inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like Sheep appointed for the Slaughter, or otherwiſe conſuming them in their Mines and Works of Drudgery. And had not *Charles* the Fifth ordained with moſt Chriſtian Prudence, that the Natives ſhould not be compelled to work in the Mines againſt their Will, but that the *Spaniards* ſhould provide themſelves of Slaves elſewhere; the Natives in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of Chriſtianity and the Goſpel. For ſo exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their firſt coming thither, that *Hathny*, a Nobleman amongſt them, being perſuaded to embrace the *Chriſtian* Faith, demanded firſt what he ſhould get by being of that Religion? and was anſwered, That he ſhould get Heaven, and the Joys thereof: Then would he know what place was deſtinate to ſuch as died unbaptized; and was anſwered, That they went to Hell, and the torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of theſe two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to Heaven, he renounced his Baptiſm: proteſting that he would rather go to Hell with the Unbaptized, *than to live in Heaven with ſo cruel a People.* The reſt were driven unto the Font, like ſo many Horſes to the watering place, and received into the Church of *Chriſt* without any Inſtruction: inſomuch, that one old Frier (as himſelf confeſſed to *Charles* the Fifth) had Chriſtened 70000 of them, and another of that rank 300000; never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Chriſtian* Faith, or points of Religious Converſation, (except it were to be obedient to their Paſtors and Teachers.) Yet here I muſt confeſs, (for I am loth to defraud any Man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of Chriſtianity: the number of *Chriſtians* in this Country being thought by ſome Learned Men of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all thoſe of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps conſtrained at firſt unto it as a new Religion, and of a ſtricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and Education it is now grown more plauſible and familiar to them. The Church hereof is governed by the four Archbiſhops of 1. *Mexico*. 2. *Lima*, 3. S. *Foy*. and 4. *Dominico*, who have under them 25 Suffragan Biſhops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this new World came firſt acquainted with the Old, *Iſabel* Queen of *Caſtile* would not permit any of her Husband *Ferdinando*'s Subjects to be planted here, *viz. Aragonians* or *Valentinians*; but licenſed the *Caſtilians*, *Andaluzians*, *Biſcainers*, and the reſt of her own People only, envying the Wealth hereof to the reſt. When ſhe was dead, *Ferdinando* Licenſed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But ſuch a rich Prize could not ſo warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *Engliſh*, and now of late the *Low Country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniard*'s Harveſt; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of ſo wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any Rival or Competitor the Poſſeſſion (I cannot ſay the Love) of a Country ſo abundantly fruitful. For though ſome of the Kings of *Spain* have been uſed to ſay, that they loved the *Eaſt-Indies* as their Miſtreſs only, in whoſe favour they could patiently enough endure a Rival; but eſteemed *America* as their Wife, in whoſe Love they could not brook a Competitor without a foul Diſhonour: yet by his leave, (or without it rather) ſome of his Neighbours have made bold with his Wife in theſe later times, though in the Affections of his Miſtriſs they have greater Intereſt. But theſe Attempts of the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* have been an occaſion of great ſtrength to the whole Country. For wheras in our firſt Wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coaſts almoſt naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and proſperous Voyage to theſe parts: the *Spaniards*, upon ſight of that weakneſs and diſadvantage, ſo ſtrongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the Reign of that Queen we were not able to accompliſh that with great and Publick Forces, which before had been performed by ſmall and Private. Which cauſed our Captains and Adventurers, ſailing oftentimes in their Deſigns upon the Continent, to take up their Market on the Seas in the return of *Spaniſh* Navies, as they yet do.

This new World is very fruitful of Spices, Fruits, and ſuch Creatures which the Old World never knew; ſtocked with ſuch ſtore of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* ſince the firſt Diſcovery) that the *Spaniards* kill Thouſands of them yearly for their Tallow and Hides only; bleſt with ſuch abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* not regarding it, greedily exchanged for Hammers, Knives, Axes, and the like Tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of Fire. Other particularities ſhall be ſpecified in the particular Deſcriptions of the ſeveral Countries. I ſhall now only take a brief view of ſuch of their Beaſts and Fowls as either this Old World did not know, or knew not in ſuch ſhapes and qualities as are there preſented. Their Lions leſs in greatneſs than thoſe in *Africa*, are ſaid to be of colour gray, and ſo nimble as to climb Trees; their Dogs ſnowted like Foxes, but deprived of that property which the Logicians call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not Bark; their Hogs with Talons ſharp as Razors, and the Navil of their Bodies on the ridge of their Backs: their Stags and Deer without Horns; their Sheep (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Raiment, but accuſtomed to the carrying of Burthens, ſome of 150 pound weight. Amongſt ſuch ſtrong Beaſts as this Old World knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whoſe name I find not) whoſe fore-part reſembleth a Fox, the hinder-part an Ape, except the Feet only, which are like a Man's: beneath her Belly a receptacle like a Purſe, where ſhe keeps her young till they be able to ſhift for themſelves; never coming thence but when they Suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a Barbed Horſe, ſeeming to be Armed all over, and that with artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do ſhut and open. The *Vicugue* reſembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the Fleece whereof they make Ruggs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the Belly find the Bezoar, ſometimes two or three, a ſovereign Antidote againſt Poiſons, and venemous Diſeaſes. A kind of Hare, reſembling a Want in his Feet, and a Cat in his Tail; under whoſe Chin nature hath faſtned a little Bag, which ſhe hath alſo taught him to uſe as a Store-houſe; for in this, having filled his Belly, he preſerveth the remnant of his Proviſion. The *Pigritia*, a little Beaſt, (not ſo named for nought) which in fourteen Days cannot go ſo far as a Man may eaſily throw a Stone. Then for their Birds, they have them there in ſuch variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly repreſent in Feathers whatſoever they ſee drawn with Pencils: inſomuch as a Figure of St. *Francis* made of Feathers was preſented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whoſe Eye could not diſcern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made tryal with his Fingers. One called the *Timinejo*, of all Colours, ſo little, that it ſeems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-flie, the Mouth thereof no bigger than the Eye of a Needle, yet yieldeth not to the Nightingale in the ſweetneſs of its Note and Muſick; the Bird and Neſt, put into Gold Scales not weighing above 24 Grains, yet beautified with Feathers of ſo many Colours, eſpecially in the Neck and Breaſt, that the *Indians* make great uſe of them in their Feather-pictures. Others as big as theſe are little. The *Condores* of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſs, that they will fall upon a Sheep or Calfe, open it and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their Fruits and Plants, more proper unto natural Hiſtory than to this Diſcourſe; and many Medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the conſideration of the learned Herbaliſts. I am *too much a fool to be a Phyſicyan*, and thereſore will not deal in ſuch things as are out of my Element. Yet ſomewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral Provinces into which this *New World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninſula*'s; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana* from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, ſuppoſed (for the moſt Northern parts of it are not yet diſcovered) to contain 13000 Miles in compaſs. That towards the South hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru* the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned to be 17000 *Italian* Miles. The *Iſthmus* which joineth theſe two together is very long, but narrow; in ſome places not above twelve Miles from Sea to Sea, in many not above ſeventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the *Streight of Darien*, from a River of that name called *Peruana* near unto the *Iſthmus*; and is ſo ſmall a Ligament for ſo great a Body, that ſome have thought of turning theſe two *Peninſula*'s into perfect Iſlands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a Navigable Canal through this ſmall *Iſthmus*, ſo to ſhorten their common Voyages to *China* and the *Molucca*'s. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly, becauſe if he ſhould employ the *Americans* in the work, he ſhould loſe thoſe few of them which his People have ſuffered to live; partly, becauſe the Slaves which they yearly buy out of *Africa* do but ſuffice for the Mines and Sugar-houſes; but principally, leſt the paſſage by the *Cape of Good Hope* being left, thoſe Seas might become a Receptacle of Pirates. Which doubtleſs was a very prudent and politick Conſideration. Many times I have read of the like Attempts begun, but never of any finiſhed. *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Perſia*, one of the *Ptolemies*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a Paſſage from the *Red Sea* to the *Mediterranean*. So had *Cæſar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Iſthmus*. Another of the ſame nature had *Charles* the Great, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*: the like had *Lucius Verus*, to join the *Rhene* and the *Rhoſne*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* alſo, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Chanel from the *Caſpian* to the *Euxine* Sea, an impoſſible project. But neither he nor any of the reſt could finiſh theſe works: God, it ſeemeth, being not pleaſed with ſuch proud and haughty Enterprizes. And yet perhaps the want of Treaſure hath not been the leaſt cauſe why the like Projects have not proceeded: beſides the dreadful Noiſes and Apparitions, which (as we have already ſaid) continually affrighted the Workmen.

Not leſs obſervable than this great, but unſucceſsfull Deſign of cutting a paſſage through the *Iſthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but alike ſucceſsleſs Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Engliſhman*, in a paſſage over it by Land. This Man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, arriving in a ſmall Bark, with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Dios*, the chiefeſt Town of all the *Iſthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company, guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the *South Sea*, went to the Iſle of *Pearls*, where he ſtayed ten Days; intercepted in two *Spaniſh* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that ſide) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in ſafety to the Land. And thô by the mutiny of ſome of his own company, he neither returned into his own Country, nor unto his Ship: yet it is an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other, and by the *Spaniſh* Writers Recorded with much Admiration.

But to return to the Diviſion of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this *Streight* uniteth; *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninſula*, may be moſt properly divided into the Continent, and Iſlands; the Continent again into the ſeveral Provinces of 1 *Eſtotiland*, 2. *Nova Francia*, 3. *Virginia*, 4. *Florida*, 5. *California*, 6. *Nova Gallicia*, 7. *Nova Hiſpania*, 8. *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many Subdiviſions and leſſer Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninſula*, taking in ſome part of the *Iſthmus*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1. *Caſtella Aurea*, 2. *Nova Granada*, 3. *Peru*, 4. *Chile*, 5. *Paraguay*, 6. *Braſil*, 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their ſeveral Members, Parts, and particular Regions. The Iſlands which belong to both, diſperſed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mar del Zur*; where there is not any one of Note, but 1. Thoſe called *Los Ladrones*, and 2. The Iſlands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Noordt*, reduced unto, 3. the *Caribes*, 4. *Porto Rico*, 5. *Hiſpaniola*, 6. *Cuba*, and 7. *Jamaica*: in the Survey of which Particulars we will begin with thoſe which lie on the North-East of this great Continent, not poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; and paſſing through the Plantations of ſuch other Nations as have any footing in the ſame, come by degrees to the Eſtates of the King of *Spain*, that we may lay them all together without interruption: beginning with *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern Part, and that which (as ſome ſay) was diſcovered firſt.

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend thoſe Regions of *Mexicana* which lie moſt towards the North and Eaſt, hath on the Eaſt the main Ocean; on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the Weſt, ſome unknown Tract not yet diſcovered; and on the North, a Bay or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudſon*'s *Streights*, and called ſo from *Henry Hudſon* an *Engliſh* Man, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick paſſage to *Cathay* and *China* than had been formerly diſcovered. It comprehends, 1. *Eſtotiland*, ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *New-found-Land*, and 4. the Iſles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And firſt *ESTOTILAND*, ſpecially ſo called, is the moſt Northern Region on the Eaſt ſide of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudſon*'s *Streights* on the North, and *Terra Corterialis* on the South. This is a part of *Canada*, and is now comonly called *New Britain*, and *Terra Laboratoris.* The Soil, ſufficiently enriched with natural Endowments, is ſaid to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals: but I doubt it lyeth too much North for Gold, whatſoever it may do for Braſs and Iron. The People rude and void of goodneſs; naked, notwithſtanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the care, to cover their Bodies with the Skins of thoſe Beaſts, which they kill by Hunting, though their Bellies teach them to keep life by the Fleſh thereof: ſaid by the firſt Diſcoverers to ſow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Greenland*; as alſo to have many Cities and Caſtles, ſome Temples conſecrated to their Idols, where they firſt ſacrificed Men, and after eat them. The Language which they ſpeak is expreſſed in Characters of their own; but ſome knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue there hath been amongſt them, and *Latin* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, underſtood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the firſt Diſcoverers, who were certain Fiſhermen of *Freezland*, caſt by a Tempeſt on this coaſt about the year 1350. almoſt 200 Years before *Columbus* his Diſcovery. Six of them only got on Land, where all died ſave one; who after a long wandring from one Prince's Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof, called *Zichumi*, being a great Adventurer in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Diſcovery and Conqueſt of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio* Zeni, two noble Gentleman of *Venice*, who deſiring to ſee the Faſhions of the World, furniſhed a Ship at their own Charges, and paſſing the Straits of *Gibraltar* held their courſe Northward, with an intent to ſee *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by Tempeſt on this Iſland, *Ann.* 1380, they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly proſperous in a War againſt thoſe of *Norway*; who liked *Nicolo* ſo well, that he gave him a command in his Navy, and under his good conduct won many Iſlands, diſcovered *Greenland*, and provided for the Conqueſt of *Eſtotiland* alſo. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the buſineſs was purſued by his Brother *Antonio*, the King in Perſon making one in the Undertaking: who liked the Country ſo well, being once poſſeſſed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to ſpend the reſt of his days, ſent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the moſt of his People.

This is the ſubſtance of the Story of the firſt Diſcovery, publiſhed long ſince by one *Franciſco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been conſidered of as they might have been, we had not ſo long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the world. But whether it were that their Reports were eſteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Diſcovery; there was nothing done in purſuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Country, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite loſt again, till theſe later days. *John Skolvo*, a *Polonian*, in the year 1456. about 86 years after the firſt Diſcovery, ſailing paſt *Norway*, *Greenland*, and *Freezland*, and entring into the *Streights* beyond the *Artick* Circle, arrived at this Country. *Hofman.* Said, in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well ſtored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreſhing; the Haven where they landed to be called *Cape Trin*; the People to be of ſmall Stature, fearful, and to hide themſelves in Caves at the ſight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain always burning, or caſting ſmoak; together with a certain Spring, whence iſſued a water as black as Pitch, but no ſuch Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the Fiſhermen ſpake of, are now to be found. The Country Weſt from *Freezland* 1000 miles. This Relation ſeems altogether fabulous, thô ſomething of it may poſſibly be true; but there hath not of late been any Foot-ſteps of Learning or Arts found in theſe parts of *America*. Nor is it at all probable they were ever cultivated, or that in thoſe early times there was a Voyage made to them.

To give you the Face of it as it ſtands at the preſent, it is ſaid to be well cultivated, fruitful of all Neceſſaries for the life of Man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold; watered with four Rivers, which riſing out of an high Mountain in the midſt of the Country, diſperſe themſelves over all parts of it. The people ſaid to be more ingenious, of better judgments, and more skilled in moſt Mechanick Arts, than the reſt of the *Americans* were at the firſt Diſcovery; which argueth ſome more Civil people to have been formerly amongſt them. Their Garments of the Skins of Beaſts, or Sea-Calves, with which alſo they covered the out-ſide of their Boats, to keep out the Water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of *Cape Trin* be ſtill remaining, I am not able to diſcover; this Country lying ſtill for the moſt part hidden in a Northern Miſt. All we can ſay is, that ſome *Engliſh* names have been impoſed of late on ſome Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern Shores hereof towards *Hudſon*'s Streights, by *Hudſon* and ſuch others of the *Engliſh* Nation who purſued that Enterpriſe. Of which ſort are Prince *Henry*'s *Foreland*, towards the Eaſt, almoſt at the entries of thoſe Streights; and then proceeding towards the Weſt, Cape *Charles*, *Kings Foreland*; and laſt of all Cape *Walſingham*, at the end thereof where theſe Streights open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudſon*'s *Bay*. But of theſe more particularly in another Place, where we endeavour the Diſcovery of ſuch parts of the World as are yet unknown, and ſo within the compaſs of a *Terra Incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Eſtotiland*; on the South *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Caſpar Corterialis*; who in the year 1500

left his name unto it. It is called alſo *Terra di Laborodoro*, both from the pains required of the Husbandman, and the great Recompence which it gives him: in the ſame ſenſe as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples* is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the *French*, who ſucceeded in the Poſſeſſion hereof after the *Spaniard* had forſook it, it was called *New Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural Country.

The people, at the firſt coming of *Corterialis*, were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, ſwift of Foot, and very good Archers: their cloathing of Beaſts-skins; their Habitations Caves, or ſome ſorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganiſm*, or none; their Directions Soothſaying. Not ſo forgetful of the Law which Nature had Planted in them, as not to know the neceſſary uſe of marriage; but extreamly jealous. Better conditioned at the Preſent than in former times, by their near neighbourhood to the *French*, and commerce with Foreigners: affirmed to be very well diſpoſed, to feed moſt generally on fiſh, and to adorn themſelves with Bracelets of Braſs, or Silver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Breſt*, 2. *Sancta Maria*, 3. *Capo Marzo*; of which, little memorable.

The Country firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot*, before mentioned: who in the year 1497. at the Charges and Encouragement of King *Henry* 7. ſetting Sail from *Briſtol*, firſt made the Diſcovery of theſe parts as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Eſtotiland* within the compaſs alſo of his Diſcoveries.) The Land which he firſt ſaw he called *Prima Viſta*; an Iſland lying before it he called *S. John*'s, becauſe diſcovered on the day of S. *John Baptiſt*. They found upon the Country plenty of White Bears, Stags greater than ours, Scut-fiſhes of a yard long, and ſuch ſtore of Cod-fiſh (which the Inhabitants called *Bacalaos*) that their multitudes ſometimes ſtayed his Ships: hence the occaſion of their name. Returning home; he found great Preparations for War in *Scotland*; ſo that nothing elſe was done in this Diſcovery by the *Engliſh* Nation. But three years after, *Caſpar Corterialis* a *Portugueze*, ſetting ſail from *Lisbon*, fell upon theſe parts of *Cabot*'s Diſcoveries, which ſince bear his name; from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanſhip, left there moſt probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of; drowned in the Sea, or ſlain by the Savages on the Land as was his Brother *Michael* in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French*, having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, caſt an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Breſt* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted port in *Little Bretaigne*:) but whether they ſettled any Colony in it, or only did reſort unto it in the way of Trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latins* call it) is a great Iſland, lying on the South of *Corterialis*, from which parted by a Frith, or Streight, called *Golfe des Caſteaux*. So called from the late diſcovery of it, when diſcovered firſt, though it be ſome ſcores of years ago: as *Wickham*'s Colledge in *Oxford* hath the name of *New Colledge*, though founded divers years paſt; becauſe it was the Neweſt when that Name was given.

The dimenſions of the Country I have no where met with: But for the quality hereof, it is ſaid to be better inhabited in the North-parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for Habitation. Furniſhed upon the Sea-Coaſts with abundance of Cod-fiſh, as alſo with Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oyſters, and Muſcles, with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Roſes, ſown with Peaſe, planted with ſtately Trees, and otherwiſe diverſified both for Pleaſure and Profit: the Air hereof never very extream, more Temperate in the depth of Winter than with us in *England*, the Brooks being never ſo frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and thoſe little Froſts but ſeldom holding three Nights together. The People of reaſonable Stature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardleſs, their Faces coloured with Oker; their Houſes, poles ſet round meeting together in the top, and covered over with Skins, an Hearth, or Fire place in the midſt: their Boats of Bark, twenty Foot long and four in breadth, not weighing above 100 Pounds weight; every of which will carry four Men, and is by them carried to all the places of their Removes.

Places of moſt Importance in it, are the ſeveral Havens (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, than any one Iſland of the World for the bigneſs of it:) not beautified with Towns or Buildings but yielding very ſafe ſtations to the greateſt Ships. The chief whereof, 1. *Rennoſa*, or *Roigneuſe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-eaſt Angle of the Iſland: of much reſort for Fiſhing, from ſeveral Countreys. 2. *Portus Formoſus*; or *Fair-Haven*, three Miles North of the other; capable of great Ships, and bearing into the main Land above 40 Miles: ſituate in the Latitude of 40, and 40 Minutes. 3. *Thornbay*, by the *Portugals* named *Enſeada Grande*. 4. *Trinity Bay*, on the North of Cape *S. Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Bahaide de la Conception*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narroweſt place; yet ſafe withall, and of very good Anchorage. 5. *Bona Viſta*, the name of a Port and promontory. 6. *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanch*, (as the *French* call it) ſafe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-eaſt Angle of the Iſland, is no Port of Note. Then on the South ſide of the Iſland, and the Weſt of *Cape de Raz*, is 7. *Port Treſpaſſez*, 8. *Port Preſenza*, and 9. *Port des Baſques* (or the *Biſcains* Haven;) and on the Weſt ſide, having doubled the *Cape de Ray*, in the South-weſt Angle of the Iſland, there is 10. *S. George*'s *Bay*: All of them ſafe, capacious, and of great reſort. The Weſtern ſide of *New-found-land*, and a part of the South, is now in the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, who have made Setlements upon it, and built ſome Forts to defend them from the Inſults of their Enemies. Theſe Plantations were begun by Sr. *George Calvert*, Kt. Principal Secretary of State, and afterwards Lord *Baltimore*, who obtained A Patent in 1623. for a part of this Iſland, by the Name of the Province of *Avalon*; and afterwards he tranſported himſelf and Family thither, and ſettled a Plantation there, building a ſtately Houſe and Fort at *Ferryland*, from whom, at his Death, it deſcended to *Cecile* Lord *Baltimore*, who was reinveſted in it by *Charles* the II. after his Reſtoration. There are many other Setlements beſides this along the Coaſt, but under what Form of Government, is not known to me. The *Engliſh* live altogether by Fiſhing, which they ſell to thoſe that come thither, and have all other Neceſſaries in Exchange for their Fiſh. The Country next the Shore is generally Barren and Rocky; and they having but few hands as yet, they can buy their Corn of the *New-England* Men cheaper than they can raiſe it themſelves: They that have ſetled here, being moſtly Men, and wanting Women, have not as yet much encreaſed the Number of the people; So that only the Shore is inhabited, and a few Cattle fed on the Land for their uſe; but doubtleſs higher up into the Land there is better and more fruitfull Lands, and a great Advantage might be made of it, if a good Governour were ſent thither to Unite the people for their own Defence, and Settle Plantations in the Inland Parts of the Iſland. On the South Weſt part of it, the *French* have ſome Settlements Towards *Canada*, which were attempted by the *Engliſh*, but without any good Succeſs, ſince the preſent War began, about 1690. The well ſetling this Iſland in our hands would be a thing of mighty Conſequence to the *Britiſh* Monarchy, and our Weſtern Plantations much of the Felicity of them depending on the preſerving this Fiſhery, without which they can hardly ſubſiſt. The moſt that have of late ſettled here are broken Seamen, as I am informed, who live here out of pure neceſſity, and take no care for a Poſterity, or to plant or build, or any way Improve the Country: Beſides, it is probable, the Lord *Barltimore*, when he took his Patent for *Mary-land*, left this Iſland, though I cannot affirm it is ſo.

4. Before the Iſland, at the diſtance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lyeth a long bank or ridge of Ground, extended in length many hundred Leagues, in breadth 24 Leagues where broadeſt, in other palces but ſixteen; and all about it certain Iſlands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAOS*, (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitude of Cod-fiſh (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which ſwarmed hereabouts ſo numerous, that they hindred the paſſage of his Ships, as before was noted, and lay in ſuch Shoals upon the coaſts, that the Bears caught them with their Claws, and drew them on Land. The Governmet at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the moſt formal expreſſions of Duty and Reverence uſed to rub their Noſes, or ſtroke their Foreheads: which if the King obſerved, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had ſo adored him, he turned his head to his left Shoulder, as a mark of Favour.

The firſt Diſcoverers of this Country (but not known then to be an Iſland) were the two *Cabots*, *John* and his Son *Sebaſtian*, employed herein by *Henry* the 7. 1497. as before was noted. The buſineſs being laid aſide at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot* two of *Briſtol*; who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, aſcribed to themſelves the Diſcovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the Enterprize, which was done *Anno* 1527, but with ill ſucceſs. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britains* of *France* had reſorted to it, and changed the names which by the *Engliſh* had been given to the Bays and Promontories. But the *Engliſh* would not ſo relinquiſh their pretenſions to the premier Seiſin. And therefore in the year 1583, Sir *Humphery Gilbert* took poſſeſſion of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, interdicted all other Nations the uſe of Fiſhing, and intended to have ſettled there an *Engliſh* Colony. But being wrecked in his return, the ſending of the Colony was diſcontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Briſtol*, who moſt ſucceſsfully performed it; the Colony ſo proſpering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, of their own ſowing, ſome probability of Metals, a certainty of Sables, Musks, and other precious Commodities, beſides their Fiſhing; though that the great occaſion of their ſettling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fiſh all about the Coaſts, that ordinarily our Men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours ſpace, which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*. The Peaſe and Wheat that were Sown here by the firſt Planters, yeilded great Encreaſe, though the Soil is fleet, and at the bottom a meer Rock. It has plenty of Fiſh Fowl, Deer, Deals, and Cedars. On the Weſt and North ſides they found afterwards ſome barbarous People, which did reſemble thoſe of the oppoſite Country. The length from Eaſt to Weſt is 400 miles; from North to South, about the ſame length. The firſt Diſcoverers thought it to be ſcarce habitable, by reaſon of the cold. *Laet*. *Hackluit*.

OF CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean: the Countreys lying on the Weſt either not yet diſcovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greateſt, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninſula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiſcovered parts of this Northern Tract: ſometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and preſently reduced to a narrower Chanel, with many great Windings and Reaches in it. Having emboſomed almoſt all the reſt of the Rivers of this Country, it emptieth it ſelf into the Great Bay of S. *Lawrence*, over againſt the Iſle of *Aſſumption*, being at the Mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep. There is to the Weſt of *Virginia*, beyond the *Apalathean* Mountains, a vaſt lake of many Leagues in compaſs, out of which ſpring this great River which Runeth towards the North, and Another which runeth to the South; and the *French* ſay it falls into the Gulf of *Mexico*, through *Florida*.

It is alſo called *Nova Francia*, from the *French*, who following the Tract of *Cabot* and *Corterialis*, made a further Diſcovery of theſe parts, and planted ſeveral Colonies in them. The Buſineſs firſt undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, Anno 1534. received here gladly by the Natives with Singing, Dancing, and expreſſing much ſign of Joy: purſued by *Monſieur Roberval*, ſent thither in the year 1542, by King *Francis* the firſt, not only to diſcover the Country, but to plant ſome part of it, who built there a fair Fortreſs for his greater ſafety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their ſeveral times.

The nature of the Soil, and People, we ſhall beſt diſcover in the ſeveral parts of it, each differing from one another, and ſo not eaſily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole. 1. *Canada*, of which before. 2. *Pemtegonet*, or *Norumbegue*, as ſome call it, of which more hereafter. 3. *Quimbeque*, falling into the Ocean as the others do. 4. *Ribo S. Johan*, ending its courſe in a large Bay called, *Bay Francoiſe*, interpoſed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the reſt of this Country. 5. *Les Trois Riviers*, which riſing far North, and paſſing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*. 6, *Saguenay*, of the ſame Original, Courſe, and Fall. A River of ſo ſtrong a Current, that it ſuffereth not the Sea to flow up its Chanel; ſo deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards, and having receiv'd many leſſer ſtreams, loſeth it ſelf at laſt, where the other doth.

It containeth in it ſeveral Regions, 1. *Nova Francia* ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Nova Scotia*, 3. *Norumbegua*, and 4. the *Iſles* adjoyning.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA*, ſpecially ſo named, is ſituate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River of *Canada*, towards the Eaſt; but on both ſides of it, in the Weſtern and more In-land parts. The Country is naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, Martens, and Foxes, whoſe Fleſh the People did eat raw, (till more civilized) having firſt dried it either in the Smoke or Sun, as they do their Fiſh. They have alſo ſtore of Coneys, Fowl, and Fiſh great plenty; one Fiſh more memorable than the reſt, which they call *Adothuel*, whoſe Body and Head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greateſt Jewels are their Chains of *Eſurgnie*; a Shell-fiſh of the whiteſt colour, excellent for the ſtanching of Blood; which they faſhion into Beads and Bracelets, and ſo wear, or ſell them. Not very plentiful of Fruits, or fit for Tillage, yet it breedeth ſome Corn; of Pulſe good plenty. The Air more cold than in other Countries of like height, partly by reaſon of the greatneſs of the River, which being wholly of freſh Water, and ſo large withal, chilleth the Air on both ſides of it; partly becauſe of the abundance of Ice, and thoſe hills of Snow which the North-wind paſſeth over in the way to this Country. The true reaſon why theſe Countries are colder than thoſe of *Europe* in the ſame Latitude, can be ſuppoſed to be only from the Vaſtneſs of the Land towards that Quarter, which is the reaſon why the North-Eaſt wind with us is the Coldeſt, and the North-Weſt with them; the North-Eaſt on the contrary, coming to them off the Ocean, is very Temperate; nor have our People in *New-England* or *Newfoundland* complained of the Cold after they had built Houſes, and provided Neceſſaries againſt the hardſhip of the Winter, which was only grievous to them who firſt Planted here, when they were deſtitute of Neceſſaries.

The People, when the *French* firſt diſcovered them, were very rude and barbarous; few of them furniſhed with Houſes, but removing from one place to another, as their Food decayed; and carrying all their Goods with them (a thing eaſily done) upon thoſe removes. Such as lived toward the Sea, or the greater Rivers, ſomewhat better houſed. For in the day-time they fiſh in their Boats, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them up ſide down, ſleep under them. As ill Apparelled as Houſed, for they went all Naked, except a little piece of Skin before their Privities. Some of them had their Heads quite ſhaven, excepting one buſh of Hair on the top of the Crown, which they ſuffered to grow to the length of an Horſes Tail, tied up with Leather-ſtrings in a knot. Each Man allowed his two or three Wives apiece; and they ſo conſtant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themſelves continually in a *mourning habit*, a Vizard, as it were, made of Greaſe and Coal-duſt, which they ſpread over all their Bodies. The Women labour more than the Men, both in Fiſhing and Husbandry; digging the Ground inſtead of ploughing, with certain pieces of Wood, where they ſow their *Maiz*, (a Plant of which they make their Bread in moſt parts of *America*.) Idolaters in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are moſt of them at this day: the *French* and others which have planted in theſe Northern parts having added little more unto Chriſtianity, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midſt of this darkneſs they ſaw ſo much light, as to believe that when they died they went immediately to the Stars; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleaſant Fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the Immortality of the Soul, and that there was ſome place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in Figure, compaſſed about with three Courſe of Timber Ramparts, one within the other; ſharp at the top about two Rods high, with one Gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great Houſes, in the midſt of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their Fire on. Each Family retire to their own Room; all things elſe are poſſeſſed in common. *Hackl. T.* 3. *p.* 220, 21. Situate far within the Land, about ſix or ſeven Leagues from the Banks of the River *Canada*, in the moſt pleaſant part of the Country; and therefore made the Seat of their King, whom they highly reverenc'd, and carried him on their Shoulders ſitting on a Carpet of Skins. 2. *Stadac*, or *Standacone*; and 3. *Quebecque*, which the *French* call *St. Croix*, on the Courſe of the ſame River alſo; this laſt a Colony of the *French*, and at this time the Capital Plantation they have on the River, moſt of their other Settlements being ruined by the *Engliſh*; but this defended it ſelf, and in 1693. was in their Hands 4. *Tadonſac*, a ſafe but ſmall Haven, not capable of above 20 Ships, at the mouth of the *Saguſna*. It is ſeated upon the Bay of *St. Lawrence*, where it receives the River *Saguen* a 100 miles from *Quebec* to the South-Eaſt. 5. *Franco-Roy*, a Caſtle built by *Monſieur Roberval*, when he came firſt into this Country. 6. *St. Lewis*, deſigned for a *French* Colony by *Monſieur de Champlain*, *Anno* 1611. but never came to great effect: yet ſo much *Champlain* got by the Undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Iſlands) in the Lands of the *Uroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it ſelf at the laſt.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA*, containeth that part of the Countries of *Canada*, or *Nova-Francia*, which the *French* call *Accadie* or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninſula* or Demy-Iſland;) with ſo much of the main Land as lieth between the River *Canada*. and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoiſe*, from the River of *St. Croix* upon the Weſt, to the Iſle of *Aſſumption* on the Eaſt. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of theſe Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord Secretary of *Scotland*, and by King *Charles*, for his approved Fidelity, moſt deſervedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear date *Anno* 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their Holds here by Sir *Sam. Argal*, Governor of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themſelves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Courſe of that River. And in purſuance of this Grant, the ſaid Sir *William Alexander*, in the year 1622. ſent a Colony hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Country, cauſed the *Peninſula*, lying on this ſide of the *Bay Francoiſe*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*; that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names alſo unto moſt of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accompliſhment of which Buſineſs, he obtained alſo a Patent for the advancing a certain number of Perſons to the Hereditary Dignity of Baronets, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, diſtinguiſhed from others by a Ribon of *Orange-Tawny*, the Money raiſed upon which Patent was to be wholly employed towards this Plantation. But being unable with thoſe helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burthens for a private Perſon) or willing to employ his Money to more profit, he ſold *Port-Royal* to the *French* and after diſcontinued his Endeavours in it.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Accadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the Bay *Francoiſe*; once made a Colony of the *French*, by Monſieur *de Monts*, *An.* 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when deſtroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal*, then Governor of the *Engliſh* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reaſon that the Jeſuits, whoſe Neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to neſt there. Sold ſince again unto the *French*, as before is ſaid, by whom ſtill poſſeſſed. This was taken by the *Engliſh*, but reſtored to the *French* by the Treaty of *Breda*, in the year 1667. It ſtands at the bottom of the Bay of *France*, and has a ſafe and large Harbour. 2. *S. Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*; 3. *Gaſpe*, a noted Port in *New Alexandria*, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Aſſumption*. 4. *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the ſame Coaſt alſo.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the South Weſt of it *Nova Scotia*; on the North Weſt of it *New-England*. The Air is of a good temper, the Soil fruitful, and the People indifferently civil; all of them, as well Men as Women, painting their Faces. The Men are much affected to Hunting, and therefore never give their Daughters to any, unleſs he be well skill'd in that Game alſo. The Women here are very Chaſte, and ſo well love their Husbands, that if at any time they chance to be ſlain, the Widows will neither marry, nor eat fleſh, till the Death of their Husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for nimbleneſs, ſometimes ſtark naked. The Sea upon the Coaſts ſo ſhallow, and ſo full of Sands, that it is very ill ſailing all along theſe Shores. The Towns or Habitations rather, ſo differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniard*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet moſt have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegue*, or *Arampec*, as the Natives call it; ſaid to be a large, populous and well-built Town, and to be ſituate on a fair and capacious River of the ſame name alſo. But later obſervations tell us, there is no ſuch matter; that the River which the firſt Relations did intend, is called *Pempegouet*, neither large nor pleaſant; and that the Place by them meant is called *Agguncia*, ſo far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the Barks of Trees, or the Skins of Beaſts. Howſoever, I have let it ſtand on the firſt reports, it being poſſible enough that Town might fall into decay, deſerted on the coming of ſo many ſeveral Pretenders, and that the Sheds or Cabins which the laſt Men ſpeak of may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoining unto theſe Countries of *Canada*, are ſeveral Iſlands, not joined in any common name, but yet deſerving ſome conſideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the Iſle of *Aſſumption*, ſituate in the very mouth of the River, was firſt diſcovered by *Jaques Cartiar*, *Anno* 1534. in length 35 Leagues, ſeven or eight in breadth. The Iſland very plain and level, of a fruitful Soil, beautified with Trees of ſeveral ſorts, repleniſhed with great plenty both of Fowl and Fiſh, and furniſhed with convenient Roads, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEÆ*, a frie of little Iſlands in the great Gulf of St. *Lawrence*, on the South of *Natiſcotec*, firſt found out or frequented by the Citizens of *St. Malo* in *Bretaigne*, *Anno* 1590. of great reſort for the *Morſe-fiſhing*, uſed upon the Coaſts, which is here ſo gainful, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. Theſe *Morſes* (take this by the way) are a kind of Sea-Horſes, or Sea-Oxen; with two Teeth of a Foot long, growing downward out of the upper Jaw; ſold dearer than Ivory, becauſe eſteemed a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poiſons. They have alſo four Feet, no Ears, the Horns about half an Ell in length; the Skin, when dreſſed twice as thick as that of a Bull; their Fleſh, when young, as ſweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the Bellies of five of them, there is made uſually an Hogſhead of Train-oil, as good as that of the Whale. 3. *BRION*, a ſmall Iſland on the South of *Rameæ*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich Soil, fit Paſturage, well ſhaded with tall and lofty Trees; and neighboured by a ſmaller Iſland called *Iſle Blanche*, of the like Fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Inſula Britonum*) ſo named from *Jaques Briton* a *Frenchman*, in the time of *Francis* the Firſt, called alſo the Iſland of *St. Lawrence*, is ſituate on the South-Eaſt of the Iſle of *Brion*: in form Triangular, in compaſs about 80 Leagues; pleaſant and fruitful, though for the moſt part ſwell'd with Hills. Deſtitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the Sea, well ſtored with Shell-fiſh; and in the midſt thereof a great Lake full of little Iſlands; the Woods repleniſhed with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a Bird called *Penguin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did ſometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Air too cold for them, they again deſerted it. The chief Haven is by the *Engliſh* called now *Newport*; by the *French*, *Port aux Anglois*, from the great reſort of the *Engliſh* to it, in regard of their Fiſhing. 5. *ISLE DE SABEL*, by the *French* ſo called, from the Sands which lie high about it; diſtant from the *Briton Iſle* about 30 Leagues to the South; 15 Leagues in compaſs, but more long than broad, and of unſafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the ſafety of the Place, attempted twice by the *French* and once by the *Portugals*; but without ſucceſs. 6. Others of leſs note, as *Menego*, and *Les Iſles des Olſeaux*, I paſs over purpoſely, there being nothing, or but little to be ſpoken of them.

So it appears by this Account, that though the *French* have given the Name of *Nova Francia*, to all theſe Countries; yet they never had the honour of the firſt Diſcovery, wherein the *Engliſh* and *Portugueſe* had precedency of them: nor are poſſeſſed of any conſiderable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large ſhare; the *Engliſh* Maſters of the beſt Ports, and all the Iſlands of the Country in the hands of the Savages. Of theſe ſome great and powerful Nations over-ſway the reſt. The chief whereof are the *Yroquois*, on the North-Eaſt of *Norumbegua*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Alboumequins*, and the *Nebicerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Etechimins* of *Accadie* and *New Alexandria*; the *Montagnets*, and the *Antogovantans*, on the Banks of the *Canada*. All of them ſtout and hardy People, falſe of their Words, treacherous in their Practices, and mercileſs in their Revenges. So well acquainted with the Factions and Diviſions of *Europe*, that they know how to make uſe of one Nation againſt another; and by that means to keep themſelves in their firſt Eſtate, without being ſubject to any. So that the footing which the *Engliſh*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtain'd amongſt them, ſerves rather to ſecure themſelves in the way of their Trading, than to entitle them unto any Poſſeſſion and Command in the Country: the *French* being ſhut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Accadie*; and the *Engliſh* being only *Tenants at the Will* of the Natives, for ſuch conveniency of Fiſhing as they have in the adjoining Iſlands.

This ſeems to have been the true ſtate of theſe *French* Plantations, when our Author wrote about the year 1648. or ſooner; but *Lewis* XIV. the preſent King of *France*, having wonderfully encreaſed the *French* Navigation on the Ocean, (ſo that they have lately twice Engaged the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleets united) he ſet his Heart upon the *Newfoundland* Fiſhery, as a Nurſery for his young Seamen; and to that end ſent plentiful Colonies to *Quebecque*, and other Places, ſupplied them largely with Ammunition and Proviſions, and ſent good Soldiers to comand there, who have puſhed on their Affairs with that good Succeſs, that they have reduced all the Inhabitants of this Country under their Obedience, or forced them to retire; they have aſcended the River of *Canada* to the great Lakes out of which it ſpringeth, and found another River which falls into the Bay of *Mexico*; and they have built Forts upon theſe Rivers and Lakes, and thereby ſtopt the Trade our Colonies of *New-York* and *New England* had before with the Natives of *Canada*, for Beaver and other Furs. And ſince this War about 1689 or 90. they raiſed conſiderable numbers of the Natives, and fell upon our *New-England* Plantations; but were happily repulſed with great loſs, and the viſit was returned them the next Year by the *New-England* Men, with an Army by Land and a Fleet by Sea; which had an unproſperous effect by the difficulty of timing their approach, ſo as to meet there both at once; by which means *Quebecque* eſcaped, and the *French* for the preſent maintain their Poſſeſſion. All theſe Advantages the *French* gained upon us during our Civil Wars, by the care of Cardinal *Mazarine* and Monſieur *Colbert*, which after the Reſtauration of *Charles* II. by the Negligence of that Prince, were improved ſo as to be a terror to our Weſtern Plantations, and at laſt to *England* too. The firſt ſtep to the Redreſs of which, is, to beat them out of their Plantations in *Newfoundland*, and then to ſend a ſtrong

Colony or two, well furniſhed with Ammunition and Neceſſaries to build Forts and Houſes to inhabit in, and to till the Country: And laſtly, to ſend every year a competent Number of light Frigots, to ſecure the Fiſhery there, and ſuccour our Planted Colonies.

Theſe Colonies ought not to be ſuch as our Southern were, ſettled in ſcattered Houſes about the Country; but old Soldiers drawn out of our Armies, and ſent under good Commanders, with their Wives and Families to fill the Country, and to raiſe a Poſterity to ſucceed them, after the manner of the *Roman* Colonies; and the Country being Cold, and not likely to yield any great encouragement, (though it will doubtleſs in a ſhort time maintain the Inhabitants, and at laſt enrich them by their Trade with their Fiſh) they muſt at firſt be ſent and be maintained at the Charge of the Crown, which will be a Reward to thoſe that have well ſerved the Crown; and turn at length to the ſecurity of *England*, and of our Plantations in *America*, and bring the *French* Navigation on the Ocean to an end: And will, after all, be an excellent Nurſery of Seamen to Strengthen our Nation at Home and Abroad too.

OF VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North, *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the Eaſt, *Mare del Noort*; the Weſtern boundaries not known, or not well diſcovered. It is now bounded on the South by *Carolina*, a Plantation taken out of *Florida*; on the Eaſt by the *Virgivian* Ocean; on the North by *Mary Land*; and on the Weſt by Mountains and a vaſt Tract of undiſcovered Lands; having the *Apatatean* Mountains on that ſide, by which it is ſeparated from *Canada*; in our times much better diſcovered by the *French*. Out of theſe Mountains ariſe all the Rivers that water *Virginia*, and have their courſe towards the Eaſt, into the *Virgivian* Ocean, whereas theſe on the, other ſide fall to the North and South, and ſo into the Bay of *St. Lawrence*, and the Gulf of *Mexico*, as the *French* report. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that Virgin Monarch; when diſcovered (to any purpoſe) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1584. By the Natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that Name, one of the Chief in all the Country.

The Inland parts hereof are mountainous and barren, but more healthful; full of thick Woods, a Receptacle for wild Beaſts, and wilder Savages. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful; as will appear by the Survey of its ſeveral Provinces; premiſing firſt, that *Virginia* in the full Latitude thereof extendeth from the 34 degree, where it joins with *Florida*, unto the 44. where it quartereth on *Norumbegua*.

The firſt Diſcovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *Anno* 1497. did firſt entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Deſign after ſeconded by Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings or Princes hereof, who did Homage to King *Henry* VIII. then ſitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Weſtminſter*: but nothing farther done in purſuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a Noble *Florentine*, at the Encouragement and Charge of King *Francis* the Firſt, *Anno* 1524. diſcovered more of the Country than *Cabot* did; yet the *French*, too much in love with the Pleaſures of *France*, or intangled in Civil Wars amongſt themſelves, looked no farther after it: Inſomuch, that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-diſcovered, by the Charges and Direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then *Captain of the Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1584: who ſending Maſter *Philip Amadas*, and Maſter *Arthur Barlow* upon this Employment, did by them take poſſeſſion of it in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Name, in honour of whom he cauſed it to be called *Virginia*. He ſent hither a Colony, under the Conduct of the Noble Sir *Richard Greenvile*; who not ſupplied with Neceſſaries for their Subſiſtence, returned home again. Sir *Francis Drake* in the year 1585 came hither, after he had rifled *St. Iago*, *St. Domingo*, *Carthagena*, &c. found this Colony placed here in 1584. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and then Governed by one Mr. *Radulf Lane*, who came away with *Drake*, the Fleet being diſperſed by a Tempeſt that ſhould have relieved them: They at their return brought *Tobacco* into *England*, which before was never ſeen in this Iſland. In the year 1587. a ſecond Colony is ſent hither, but as ſucceſsleſs as the firſt; the Buſineſs being undertaken only on a private Purſe, not owned as the Intereſt of the State, or of publick Moment, till the year 1606. For the third Plantation, See *Johnſtonius*, ſee *Laert. p.* 64. In the mean time, the North parts of this Country being more perfectly diſcovered by Captain *Bartholomew Goſnold*, *Anno* 1602. it was again planted in the year 1607. by Sir *John Popham*; and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to ſay, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into theſe three Parts, 1. *New-England*, 2. *Novum Belgium*, 3. *Virginia*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. To which the Iſles of the *Bermudas* ſhall come in for a Fourth.

NEW ENGLAND hath on the North Eaſt *Norumbegua*; and on the South-Weſt, *Novum Belgium*, now called *New York*. So called by the Adventurers by whom firſt planted, not ſo much becauſe oppoſite to *Nova Albion*, as ſome Men conceive, as an intimation of the like adjuncts of Diſtinction given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like. It was diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, under *Engliſh* Colours, in 1497. entered upon for the *Engliſh* by Mr. *Philip Amadas* in 1584. It lies in 40. and 41 degrees of North Latitude, 70 miles upon the Ocean, which affords it plenty of Harbour. The Air is healthful but the Weather very uncertain. It was firſt begun to be planted in 1606. In 1610. one *Robinſon* an Independant Preacher ſtruck in with the Deſign, and much promoted that Plantation. In the year 1629. there was a conſiderable Addition made to this Colony; ſo that till the year 1636. they flouriſhed, and very much encreaſed in Buildings and Trade; but this year the *Nazaganſet Indians*, which are the moſt Warlike and Fierce, began a War upon them, which in the next year was ſo well revenged by the *Engliſh*, that this whole *Horde* was deſtroyed. Theſe *Indians* in Speech, Shape, Habit, and Manners are ſo very like the *Samoieds*, or the North-Eaſt *Tartars* bordering upon *Ruſſia*, that it cannot be doubted but that they are deſcended from them; which will give an eaſie Account of the Origine of the *American* Nations, if it were a little better enquired into.

The Country ſituate in the middle of the Temperate Zone, betwixt the degrees of 41 and 44. equally diſtant from the Artick Circle and the Tropick of *Cancer*; by conſequence, naturally of the ſame degree of heat with

France or *Italy*. But by reaſon of the thick Miſts which ariſe from the Seas adjoining, thoſe Heats ſo moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *Engliſh* body. The Soil not only fruitful of ſuch Commodities as grow there naturally, but alſo of all ſorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great ſtore of Woods and Trees, both for Fruit and Building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fiſh upon the Shores; and as for Turkies, Partridges, Swans, Geeſe, Cranes, Ducks, Pidgeons, ſuch a full variety, as ſerves not only for Neceſſity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of moſt note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many ſorts of Fiſh, ſome Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Maſts, Cables, Timber fit for Shipping: in a word, whatſoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might at better rates, and with far leſs trouble, be ſupplied from hence; at leaſt if we believe the Relations of it, publiſhed in the year 1622. This Colony is very ſtrong; and they have built ſeven great Towns, the chief of which is *Boſton*, which in 1670. had 50 ſail of Ships belonging to it. Till the Reign of King *James* the II. they would never ſubmit to any Governour ſent from *England*, but live like a free State. But a *Quo Warranto* being ſent againſt them in the year 1683. by His late Majeſty, they ſubmitted to *Henry Cranfield* Eſq; and in 1686 accepted Sir *Edward Andrews*, as Governour for King *James*.

The People for the moſt part well enough diſpoſed, if not roughly handled; hoſpitable, and more civil than the reſt of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *Engliſh*, at their firſt ſetling there, *Anno* 1608. they would uſe to ſay, that *King* James *was a good King, and his* God *a good* God, *but their* Tanto *naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil Spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every Moon, and therefore they worſhipped him for fear. Which notwithſtanding, I find not any great increaſe of Chriſtianity among the Natives: our *Engliſh* Undertakers thinking it ſufficient, if *they and their houſes ſerve the Lord*, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched People, which hitherto have *ſate in darkneſs and the ſhadow of death*, notwithſtanding thoſe New Lights which have ſhined amongſt them. And as for thoſe New-comers which have planted there, all *Engliſh*, though ſome immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what ſtrain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib*. 3. *cap*. 8. where he obſerveth, *Primos hoſce* Colonos, *uti & illos qui poſtea acceſſerunt, potiſſimum aut omnino fuiſſe ex eorum hominum Secta, quos in Anglia* Browniſtas & Puritanos *vocant, quales non pauci & in* Belgium *ſuperioribus annis ſe receperunt, & hinc ad ſocios ſunt profecti*. They were (ſaith he) either for the moſt part, or altogether, of that Sect which in *England* are called *Browniſts* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themſelves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to join with their Brethren in *New England*. When our Author wrote, it was early days with this Plantation: But ſince that time they have Tranſlated the Bible into the Language of the Natives, and converted many of them. I wiſh the Epiſcopal Clergy in the other Plantations would reflect upon the Drs. Reproach, and Amend as they have done; eſpecially in relation to the *Negroes* in our own Plantations which might eaſily be converted to Chriſtianity, (if their Maſters pleaſed.)

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Tameſcot*, where our Men found Oyſters of nine Inches long. 2. *Nanſick*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this Tract. 3. *Sagahadock*, of moſt Note, and deſervedly too, a Mile and half broad at the Mouth or Influx, and ſo upwards for the ſpace of a days journey, where it maketh a large Lake three days journey broad, with ſix Iſlands in it; nouriſhed with two large Channels, the one from the North-Eaſt, the other from the North-Weſt, each of them riſing from a Lake; the leaſt of which being four days journey long, two broad, the other doubleth it. The River which points to the North-Weſt, falls into the River of *Canada*, 40 *German* Miles above *Quebeque*. In which place, if a good Gariſon were planted in a ſtrong Fort, and well ſupply'd with Ammunition, it might eaſily hold a correſpondence with *New England*, by the Lake, and ſecure the Trade of *Furs* with the Natives; and alſo be a curb upon the *French* Plantations on that River; and without this Caution, they will in time (if they have not already) do the ſame thing; to the great annoyance and impoveriſhing of *New-England*. Of leſs note, 4. *Apanawapesk*, 5. *Rantaſſec*, 6. *Aſhamahaga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-ſide is full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, inſomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the ſpace of 70 Miles above twenty Havens, ſome of them capable of 500 or 1000 Sail; moſt of them ſheltered from the fury of Winds and Sea, by the interpoſition of ſome Iſlands, of which about 200 lye upon that Coaſt. In the ſpace of 70 Miles he reckoneth 40 Villages of the Barbarous People; the chief of which, are, 1. *Macadacut*, 2. *Segocket*, 3. *Pemmaquid*, 4. *Nuſconcus*, 5. *Kennebeque*, &c. all being called by the name of ſome Brook or Water, upon which they were ſeated. Since added by the *Engliſh*, 1. St. *George*'s *Fort*, the firſt Plantation of the *Engliſh*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagahadoc*, in a Demi-Iſland, *Anno* 1607. 2. *New-Plimouth*, ſeated in a large and capacious Bay; at the firſt Building (*Anno* 1620.) conſiſting of Nineteen Families only, but in ſhort time improved to an handſom Town: which as it was the firſt Town, ſo it was the Church which was ſetled there, modelled arcording to the form of Mr. *Robinſon*'s Church in *Holland* (that notorious *Separatiſt*,) and after made a pattern to the reſt of theſe Churches: each Abſolute and Independent in it ſelf, without ſubordination unto any Superiour. For my part, I behold Epiſcopacy as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Chriſt*. But if there were no other Pretenders to it than *Presbytery* and *Independency*, I ſhould as ſoon look for the Scepter and Throne of *Chriſt* (as they pleaſe to phraſe it) in the *Coordination* of *New England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the *Kirk* of *Scotland*. 3. *Briſtow*, upon the Seaſide alſo, but more North than *Plymouth*. 4. *Barnſtaple*, ſo called with reference to a noted Sea-Town of that name in *Devonſhire*; as 5. *Boſton*, with like reference to as noted a Sea-port in *Lincolnſhire*, which is now the Capital of this whole Plantation, a very large and ſpacious Town, ſeated on the Sea-ſhore, at the bottom of a large Bay; well inhabited by Merchants and Tradeſmen, who drive a good Trade with *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, the *Caribee-Iſlands*, *England* and *Ireland*, by exchange of Commodities. It is a place of good Strength, founded upon three Hills, on which are raiſed Fortifications, with Cannon mounted, and well-guarded. To this Town alſo belongs a conſiderable Fleet of Ships, employed firſt in Fiſhing at *Newfoundland*, and on their own Coaſt, and then compounding a freight with Corn and the other Commodities, they paſs to our Southern Plantations, which are wholly from hence ſupplied with Victuals for their Negro Servants; it being to be had cheaper than they can raiſe it. The beſt of their Fiſh they Sell or Tranſport to the *Portugueſe* and *Spain*; and the Sugars of *Barbadoes*, to the *Engliſh* Merchants; and oftentimes they themſelves Tranſport them to *England*. This Plantation has ever pretended to be more free than any of the reſt of our Weſtern Plantations, and will not be Governed by the Acts of the Parliament of *England*, as the reſt are, but have ſet up a Mint of their own, and Trade whither they pleaſe in their own Ships; and although they Reverence the Crown of *England*, and ſo Trade not with its Enemies, yet they in the two laſt Reigns did ſcarce acknowledge themſelves to be Subjects, till their Charter was taken away, and a Governour ſent to them, on whom they wreaked their Fury at the Revolution: This, thô true of the whole, is moſtly applicable to *New Boſton*, which about 20 years ſince, had about 50 Sail of ſtout Merchat Ships; and now (in 1692.)

are much more in number without doubt, if not diminiſhed by the preſent War. 6. *Quilipiack*, on the Bay of *Maſſachuſets*, a Town of an old Name, but a new Plantation. The other Towns are, 7. *Charles Town*, between the Rivers *Charles* and *Miſtick*. 8. *Dorcheſter*. 9. *Cambridge*, conſiſting of ſeveral Streets and two Colledges, and divers fair well built Houſes; the firſt Univerſity opened in our Weſtern Plantations. 10. *Reading*, commodiouſly ſeated above a great Pond, and well inhabited, having one Mill for Corn, and another for Timber. 11. *Salem*, pleaſantly placed between two Rivers: and about 30 or more other Towns, all of *Engliſh* names, as *Briſtol*, *Dover*, *&c.* which ſhews the Populouſneſs and Riches of this Plantation above the reſt, which have but one or two Towns apiece; none of which are equal to *Boſton*.

This part of *Virginia*, firſt diſcovered by Captain *Goſnold*, *Anno* 1602. and the next year more perfectly ſurveyed by ſome of *Briſtol*, was by King *James*, *Anno* 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be Planted and diſpoſed of for the Publick: Sir *John Popham*, then Chief Juſtice of the *Common-Pleas*, being one of the chief alſo in that Commiſſion. By his encouragement, and principally at his Charge, a Colony was ſent thither, *Anno* 1607. under the Preſidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Fortreſs of *St. George* at the mouth of *Sagahadoc*. But the Preſident dying the next year, and not long after him the Chief Juſtice alſo; the Colony deſpairing of good Succeſs, returned home again. Succeſleſly again attempted, *Anno* 1614. the Undertakers were reſolved to make farther trial of their fortune; and in the year 1626. ſent out eight Ships more: but it never ſetled into form till the year 1630. When by the building of *New Plymouth*, and ſome encouragements ſent thither to bring others on, it grew in very ſhort time to ſo ſwift a growth, that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New England* had the like Foundation; both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus novarum rerum cupida confluxit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; reſorted to by ſuch of the Neighbouring Nations as longed for Innovations in Church and State.

NOVUM BELGIUM, or *NIEU-NEDERLANT*, hath on the North-Eaſt *New-England*; on the South-Weſt, *Virginia*, ſpecially ſo called. This part of *Virginia* is now erected into another Plantation, diſtinct from *Virginia*, and called by the name of *Mary land*. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it, *Anno* 1614. the Country being then void, and conſequently open to the next Pretender, according to that Maxim in the Civil Laws, *quæ nullius ſunt in bonis, dantur occupanti*. And yet they had ſome better Title than a bare Intruſion, having bought *Hudſon*'s Charts and Maps, and otherwiſe contented him for the Charge and Pains of his Diſcovery, *Anno* 1609. of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38 Degree and a half to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both Air and Soil: fruitful of thoſe things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord; abundance of wild Grapes, Nuts, and Trees of great height and bulk for Shipping; plenty of Herbage, ſtore of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the People did their part, ſuch encreaſe of *Maize* (a Plant of which they make their Bread) as ſhewed their Care and Induſtry to be well beſtowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furniſhed (within their command) with Wheat and other ſorts of Grain; as alſo with Flax, Hemp, and ſuch other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods repleniſhed with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the Rivers not inferiour to any in Sturgeons, Salmons, and other the beſt ſort of Fiſh which can ſwim in the Water.

The People, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the ſame diſpoſition with the other Savages; clad in Beaſts-Skins, for the moſt part without certain Dwellings; dwelling together many Families of them under one poor Roof made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the Bark of Trees. Their Houſhold-ſtuff a Tobacco-pipe, a wooden Diſh, and a Hatchet made of a broad Flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of Fiſhes. Their Religion Idolatry, or worſe; their chief God the Devil whom they worſhip under the name of *Menetto*; but with leſs Pomp and Ceremony than is uſed in *Africk*. Of Manners, fearful and ſuſpicious, (not without cauſe) wonderfully greedy of revenge, but, if well uſed, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithful unto thoſe who truſt them; conceived to be inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of thoſe who had ſtudied Godlineſs more than Gain.

Rivers of Note they have not many. That want is ſupplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coaſt. The Principal of thoſe that be, 1. *Manhattes*, by ſome called *Naſſovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt River*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-port*, ſo called by *Cornelius May*, the Maſter of a Ship of *Holland*, at their firſt Plantation: another Channel of it, which from the noiſe thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it ſelf againſt an Iſland called the *Iſle of Nuts*. The River about Fifteen or Sixteen Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof affordeth a ſafe Road for Shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Zuid River*, ſo called, becauſe more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not ſo well diſcovered.

Towns here are few, either of the old or new Plantations. The natural Inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of thoſe Tribes under one Roof, as before was ſaid; but thoſe Families ſo remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a ſcattered Village. Nor do I find, that either the *Hollanders* or the *Engliſh* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to Building: the Title of the *Dutch* being ſubject unto ſome Diſputes; and the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh* not confirmed and ſettled. *Hudſon* an *Engliſhman* had ſpent ſome time in the Diſcovery of this Country, and given his Name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, *Anno* 1609. as before is ſaid, compounded for his Charts and Maps, and whatſoever he could challenge in the Right and Succeſs of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new Habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia* ſpecially ſo called, (having diſpoſſeſſed the *French* of that part of *Canada* now called *Nova Scotia*, *Anno* 1613.) diſputed the Poſſeſſion with them; alledging that *Hudſon*, under whoſe Sale they claim'd that Country, being an *Engliſhman*, and Licenſed to diſcover thoſe Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or diſmember it (being but a part of Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour ſubmits himſelf and his Plantation to his Majeſty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for and under him. But a new Governour being ſent from *Amſterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes, but began to fortifie himſelf, and entitle thoſe of *Amſterdam* to a juſt Propriety To which end he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new Names on all the Bays and Rivers of it, and Poſſeſſed himſelf of a little Iſland near that Branch of the *Noordt* River which themſelves called *Hell-Gate*: where he laid the Foundation of a Town called *New Amſterdam*; and built a Fortreſs by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he Gariſon'd, and Planted with five pieces of Canon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him repreſented to the *States of Holland*, it was declared by the ſaid *States*, in a publick Inſtrument, that they were no ways intereſſed in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *Weſt-Indian* Company of *Amſterdam*; and ſo referred it wholly to His Majeſty's pleaſure. Which being declared, a Commiſſion was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to Plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*; the like not long after to Sir *Edmond Ploydon*, for Planting and poſſeſſing the more Northern parts, which lie towards *New England*, by the name of *New Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then ſeem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there for the Sum of 2500*l.* yet taking advantage of the Troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raiſed their Demands to a greater height, but furniſhed the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to uſe their Weapons. A moſt miſchievous and wicked Act, not only tending to the damage and diſcouragement of the preſent Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Chriſtians out of all theſe Countries. But the beſt is, they were the firſt that ſmarted by it. The Savages thus armed and trained, fell foul upon them, deſtroying their Farm Houſes, and forcing them to betake themſelves to their Forts and Faſtneſſes. What hath been ſince done, (for the giving of new names to ſome of the old Places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *Engliſh*, I can hardly ſay; but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpoſe, till it be made a work of more publick Intereſt.

In the year 1664. there being then a War between *Charles* the II. and the *Dutch*; that Prince ſent over four Commiſſioners to reduce the Colony; who marching with 300 Red Coats to *Manhades*, or *New Amſterdam*, the 29*th.* of *Auguſt*, turned out their Governour, and all the reſt, but thoſe that would ſwear Allegiance to the King of *England*, who were ſuffered wiſely to enjoy their Houſes and Lands as before. Thirteen days after, Sir *Robert Car* took the Fort and Town of *Aurania*, now called *Albany*: Twelve days after that, *Araſapha*, now *Delaware*, by which the *Engliſh* became Maſters of three handſome Towns, and as many Forts. The Province was thereupon given to *James* then Duke of *York*; and from his Title, with the principal place, it was called *New York*. It is ſeated very conveniently for Trade, Security, and Pleaſure, in a ſmall Iſland called *Manhatau*, made ſo by *Hudſon*'s River, which ſevereth it from the *Long Iſland*, which River is two Leagues broad, and Navigable above 100 Miles up into the Country. It contained then about 500 well built Houſes, with *Dutch* Brick, the meaneſt not valued under 100*l.* To the Land-ward it had a thick Wall, and at the entrance of the River a good Fort, now called *Charles Fort*. And for Civil Government it was Incorporated, and Governed by a Mayor, Aldermen, Sheriff, and Juſtices of the Peace: The Inhabitants *Engliſh* and *Dutch*; they had a conſiderable Trade with the *Indians* for Elkes, Deer, Bears, Beaver, Otter, Racoon Skins; for Veniſon and Wild Fowl in the Winter; and for Fiſh in Summer. The Iſland is Fourteen Miles long, and Two broad, ſtretching Eaſt and Weſt, and the Town is at the Weſt end next the Sea. Upon the ſame River 100 Miles higher ſtands *New Albany*, a place of conſiderable Trade with the *Indians*: between them, on both ſides of the River is as good Corn as the World affords.

The Province of *MARY-LAND* is ſituate between the Degrees of 37 and 50 m. and 40 of North Latitude, and is bounded on the North by *Penſylvania*, *New England*, and *New York*; on the Eaſt by the *Atlantick* Ocean and *Delaware Bay*; and on the Weſt by *Virginia*, parted from it by the River *Parowmeck*. The Bay of *Cheſopeak* admitteth Ships 200 Miles up the Country. The Rivers are 1. *Patowmeck*, 2. *Patukent*, 3. *Severn*, or *Ann Arundel*; 4. *Sacque Sahanough* on the Eaſt ſide of the Bay: on the Weſt 5. *Nautecoke*, 6. *Pocomoke*. The Air is very healthful, and agreeable to the *Engliſh* now the Woods are fell'd; the Air temperate, the Breezes from the Sea cooling its Heats, and the Winter being of no great duration; the Soil is Rich, and much of the ſame nature with *Virginia*; the chief Trade of it being Tobacco, more eſteemed by Foreigners than the *Virginians*. The Lord *Baltimore*, the Proprietor of it, has erected a Mint; and there is a competent ſtore of Foreign Coin beſides this. There have ſome years ſince, been 100 Ships loaden in one year, by this and the neighbour Plantations. The Principal Town is St. *Marys*, where the Courts Sit, and Juſtice is Adminiſtred according to Laws enacted by the common Conſent. It is divided into Ten Counties; *Cecil*, *Dorcheſter*, *Kent*, *Somerſet*, and *Talbot*, Eaſt of the Bay, *Ann Arundell*, *Baltimore*, *Calvert*, *Charles*, and *St. Marys* on the Weſt of it: The Inhabitants about five years ſince, being eſtimated to be 16000 Perſons, and they have begun to build *Calverton*, *Herrington*, and *Harvey Town*: St. *Marys* is ſeated on the River of St. *George*, and is beautified with many well built Houſes, and is the chief Scale of Trade for that Province.

Since our Author wrote, there has been a new Plantation by *Charles* II. in 1681. granted to *Pen* a Quaker, by the name of *Penſylvania*, bounded on the Eaſt by the River *Delaware*, 12 Miles diſtance from *Newcaſtle*; So it is bounded on the North by *New York*; on the Eaſt by *New Jerſey*; on the South by *Mary-land*, and on the Weſt by undiſcovered Countries, extending to 43 Degrees of North Lat. and ſettled upon the ſaid *William Pen*, and his Heirs for ever. The Proprietor has divided it into ſix Counties, called *Philadelphia*, from the capital City begun by him to be built, *Buckingham Cheſter*, *Newcaſtle*, *Kent* and *Suſſex*. *Philadelphia* is ſeated between two Navigable Rivers, *Delaware* and *Skulkill*, having two Fronts upon the Water, each a Mile; the latter is Navigable 100 Miles up by Boats, falling from the North-Eaſt into the River *Delaware*. In the year 1685 there were 600 Houſes built in this City, the Foundation of which was laid in 82. This Plantation, thô ſo lately ſetled, is become very numerous, and in a thriving condition; but then the beginning it with the Building of this great Town, before the Country was cleared, and the Trade ſettled, was obſerved to have an ill effect upon many of the Builders, who being run in Debt, were afterwards forced to ſell their Houſes to others; the Builders for the moſt part enjoying a very little while the benefit of their own Labours and Expences.

Eaſt and *Weſt JERSEY* lye between 39 and 41 Degrees of Latitude between the River *Delaware* to the South, and *Hudſon* to the North, having the *Vergivian* Ocean to the Eaſt. The chief Towns are *Shrewsbury*, *Middletown*, *Burgin*, *Newark*, *Elizabeth-Town*, *Woodbridge* and *Piſcataway*. It has plenty of Springs, Rivolets, In-land Rivers and Creeks; and the Up-lands yield plentiful crops of *Engliſh* Grain of all ſorts, beſides *Indian* Corn, Flax and Hemp, which the Inhabitants began ſome years ſince to manufacture. It hath plenty of our *European* Cattle ſent thither, and of Furs, Whale-Oil and Whale-Fins for a Trade. This Country was at firſt granted to the Lord *Barclay*, and Sir *George Carteret*, who are called in my Author, the late Proprietors thereof; there was then no Town in it.

New Jerſey, between both theſe and *New York* River, and was granted to Sir *Edward Billing*; the Principal Town in it is *Burlington*, which was then newly begun, about 1680.

3. *VIRGINIA*, ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North-Eaſt, *Nieu-Nederlandt*; on the South-Weſt, *Florida*: the name reſtrained to this part only, ſince the two laſt Plantations, which before was common to the whole. (Since our Author's time, by other Settlements *Jerſey* is Planted between it and *New-York*, then *New-Netherland*, to the Weſt *Maryland*, and to the South *Carolina*, is taken out of *Florida* and added to our Plantations.) The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. Degree of Northern Latitude: and by conſequence the Air is inclined unto Heats, if not refreſhed and moderated by a conſtant gale of Eaſtern Winds, which they call the *Brieze*, and the Blaſts driving on it from the open Seas. Diverſified moſt pleaſantly into Hills and Valleys; the Mountains cloathed with Woods, and the Fields with Fruits. The Soil ſo fruitful, that an Acre of Land well

ordered, will return 200 Buſhels (25 Quarters) of Corn. Said alſo to be rich in veins of Allom, as alſo Pitch, Turpentine, ſtore of Cedars, Grapes, Oil, plenty of ſweet Gums, ſeveral ſorts of Plants for the Dyer's uſe, ſome Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber Trees almoſt infinite numbers; as alſo great abundance of Cattle, Fiſh, Fowl, Fruit, and of Maiz no ſcarcity. Some Chryſtal is found amongſt the Mountains, on the Shore ſome Pearls. Nothing deficient either in the Soil, or Air, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for ſo large a Country, and thoſe as different in Size as in Speech or Manners. Some of them whom they call *Saſques-hanoxi*, of ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that in compariſon of the *Engliſh* they ſeemed as Giants; clad with the Skins of Bears and Wolves in ſo ſtrange a manner, that the Head of the Beaſt hung before their Breaſts inſtead of a Jewel; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other ſide, whom they call *Wigcocomoci*, of ſo low a ſtature, that in relation to the other they appear as *Pygmies*. But generally they are all of tall ſtature, well limbed, for the moſt part without Beards, and the one half of the Head kept ſhaven; cloathed in looſe Mantles, made of the Skins of Deer, with an Apron of the ſame to hide their nakedneſs; the reſt of their Bodies painted over with figures of Serpents, or of ſome other Creature of as horrid ſhape. Strong and acuſtomed to the Cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconſtant, crafty, and ſomewhat more induſtrious than the reſt of the Savages, but given to anger and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worſhip all things, (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, *&c.* So that it may be ſaid of them, as once *Lactantius* ſaid of the ancient *Romans*, (did not the ignorance of theſe poor Wretches render them excuſable, and make them fitter Objects for our Prayers and Pity, than our Scorn) *Digniſſimi homines qui Deos ſuos ſemper haberent præſentes.* One Devil-God above all the reſt, (they call him *Oke*) whom they worſhip, as themſelves confeſs, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from theſe horrible and groſs Idolatries by the long neighbourhood of the *Engliſh*; accuſed in that reſpect moſt juſtly by thoſe of *Rome.*

No Country for the bigneſs of it can be better wateted, or yeild fairer Rivers. The principal of which are 1. *Powhatan*, (ſo called by the name of that petit *Royelet* whoſe Territory it paſſeth through) which having run a courſe of an hundred miles, and navigable all that way by ſmaller Veſſels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad, 2. *Apamatuck*, 3. *Nanſamund*, and 4. *Chikahamania*; all Tributaries to *Powhatan*. 6. *Pamamuke*, fourteen miles more North then *Powhatan*, but of leſſer note. 6. *Topahanock*, navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomeke*, paſſable by Boat 140 miles, and ſix or ſeven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; encreaſed by many leſſer ſtreams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well ſtored with Fiſh. 8. *Pautunxut*, of a ſhorter Race, but a deeper Channel, than moſt of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choice of Fiſh than the others are.

The Air of *Virginia*, is pleaſant and wholeſom, except in the Low-lands and Marſhes; But then it is ſubject to violent Changes, eſpecially when the North weſt Winds blow, (which is Common to it, with all the Countries on this Coaſt to the North of *Virginia*) which coming from the Mountains that are always covered with Snow (the *Apalatean* Hills) are violently cold. It abounds with all things uſefull to the Life of Man, except *Wine* and *Oyl*, which perhaps too may be raiſed, when it is more thoroughly planted, if Advatage be taken of the Poſition of Grounds expoſed to the South Eaſt Sun, and ſecured againſt the North Weſt Wind.

Along the Banks of the Rivers dwell their ſeveral Tribes, ſcarce any one of which make up an hundred Men, (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30, and ſome not ſo many. Their habitations, not containing above ten or twelve houſes apiece, but in thoſe houſes ſundry particular Families, are for the moſt part covered with the Barks of Trees; ſo placed that the common Market place ſtandeth in their midſt, at an equal diſtance; the houſes of the *Werovances*, (or the Chiefs of their Tribes) and that which ſerveth them for a Temple, being ſomewhat finer than the reſt. And of theſe habitations ſome are preſented to us by the names, of 1. *Ooanock*, by the *Engliſh* called the *blind Town*. 2. *Pemeoke*. 3. *Shycoake*, ſaid by my Author to be *Civitas ampla*, a large City; but we muſt underſtand him with Relation to the reſt of this Country. 4. *Chowanoak*. 5. *Secatan*. 6. *Mattaken*. 7 *Weopomioke*. 8. *Pyſhoconock*, ſaid to be inhabited by none but Women. 9. *Chipano*. 10. *Muſcamunge*, both upon the Sea: moſt of them called by the name of thoſe ſeveral Tribes which inhabit them.

This Country was firſt Granted by the Illuſtrious Queen *Elizabeth* to her Favourite Sir *Walter Raleigh* Kt. the Patent bearing date the 25th of *March*, in the 26th of her Reign, 1584. By which it was granted to him and his Heirs and Aſſigns forever: And accordingly the 27th of *April*, the ſame year, he ſent Mr. *Philip Amadas*, and Mr. *Arthur Barlow*, with too Barks, to take Poſſeſſion of it, as they did for him the 13th of *July* following, in the Iſland of *Wokoxen* on the Coaſt of *Carolina*. They only took Poſſeſſion then, and immediately after returned, obſerving that *Virginia* was then called by the *Indian* Inhabitants *Wingandacoa*: The next year, 1585. Sir *Walter* ſent Sir *Richard Greenvil* with 7 Sail of Ships, and with him Mr. *Ralph Lane*, Mr. *Thomas Candiſh*, Mr. *John Arundel*, Mr. *Raymond*, Mr. *Stukeley*, Mr. *Bremiger*, Mr. *Vincent*, and Mr. *John Clark*. In this Voyage was left 150 Men, who remained there all that year under the Command of Mr. *Philip Amadas*: Theſe Men returned the next year with Sir *Francis Drake* for want of Victuals, the Natives being combin'd againſt them. Sir *Walter* ſent Supplies the ſame year; but they were gone before that Ship arrived. In 1587 he ſent another Colony of 150 under the Command of *John White* in 3. Ships, which remained there; but what came of it afterwards, I know not; for the next Expedition was in 1590. and then they were not ſeen, nor any account brought of them. *Hackluit*. In the year 1603. Diverſe Perſons who had purchaſed Sir *Walter*'s Patent, made a Voyage thither, and diſcovered *Whitſon*'s *Bay* in 41. but theſe made no great Progreſs, till Sir *John Popham*, in 1606. who ſent a Colony under Captain *James Davis*, whoſe firſt Settlement was at *Sagabadock*, where they built St. *George's Fort*: ſoon after which, *James Town* was begun.

In reference to the *Engliſh* and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-ſide of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thruſting it ſelf a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before metioned, is by the Natives called *Cheſepoack*, and yieldeth the only ſafe entrance into this part of the Country: the *Capes* thereof for that cauſe fortified by the *Engliſh*: that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of moſt note, which have been either ſince built, or frequented by them, 1 *James Town*, (*Jacobipolis*) ſo named in honour of King *James*, on the South-ſide of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikahamania*: firſt founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and ſome Ordnance planted on the Works. 2. *Henries Town*, (*Henricopolis*) ſo named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldeſt Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18. miles from *James-Town*. 3. *Dales-gift*, ſo called, becauſe built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, *Anno.* 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*, 5. *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Cheſepoack*, very much traded by the *Engliſh.*

6. *Wicocomoco*, the chief Town of *Powhatan*, one of the Royeleſs of this Country; much courted by the *Engliſh* at their firſt ſettling here, and a long time after; a Crown being ſent him by King *James*, with many other rich Preſents, the better to ſweeten and oblige him: but for all that, he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The ſum of the affairs of this laſt Plantation is, that the buſineſs being reſumed in the year 1606. and a Commiſſion granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work, they fell in hand, by the Counſel and Incouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James-Town* (having firſt fortified *Cape-Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. Theſe, being almoſt conſumed by Famine and other miſeries, were the next year recruited with 120 more, brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having caſually conſumed their Houſes, once again diſcouraged them. But the Houſes, being re edified, and a Church added to the Houſes by the induſtry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flouriſh, and encreaſe in reputation among the Savages, eſpecially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Powhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 Perſons, (and of them 200 expert Soldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition neceſſary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit Kings, Tributaries, and Contributioners to the *Engliſh*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, ſent thither with 9 ſhips and 500 Men, loſt a great part of their numbers in the Iſle of *Bermudaz*: the reſt not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ſhips more, *An.* 1610. But falling into a deſperate ſickneſs, and come home to *England*, he recommended the Eſtate of the *Engliſh* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furniſhed them with Men, Cattel, and other neceſſaries; after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and ſome heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry* Earl of *Southamton*, the Affairs here began to ſettle in a proſperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the Savages falling on them (fearing no ſuch treachery) kill'd 340 of their Men; and had then alſo ſurpriz'd *James Town*, if one of the Savages who had received the Chriſtian Faith, had not diſcovered their Intention. In the year 1623 a Complaint was made againſt the Proprietors of this Plantation, and thereupon their Patent was declared void, and leave given to all *Engliſh* Men that would to trade thither, which perhaps tended more to the Security of the Plantation, than the former way. Since that, recovered of that Blow, it went happily forwards, and might by this time have been raiſed to ſome Power and Greatneſs, if the *Engliſh*, by diverting on ſome by-Plantations, and by imploying indigent and neceſſitous Perſons in ſo great a work, had not diſcouraged the deſign. For certainty one might ſay of this Plantation, as the Scripture doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few or none were ſent unto it (except the principals) but ſuch as *were in diſtreſs or debt*, or ſome way or other *diſcontented*; Men never likely to advance and purſue a buſineſs of ſuch publick Intereſt. Commendable howſoever in this particular, (though perhaps that Commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themſelves conſtantly to thoſe *Forms of Worſhip* which were eſtabliſhed and obſerved in the Church of *England*.

To Erect and ſettle a Plantation at the diſtance that *Virginia* lieth, muſt be very difficult at all times; but it was made more difficult by the Troubles that enſued under the Reign of *Charles* the II. yet after the Colony was once ſo far ſettled as to ſubſiſt and plant *Tobacco*, the Trade went on with it, and they ſpread their Conqueſt and cleared and planted the Country apace; ſo that the Country became divided into theſe Counties; *Carotuck*, *Charles*, *Gloueeſter*, *Hartford*, *Henrico*, *James*, *New Kent*, *Lancaſter*, *Middleſex*, *Nanſemund*, *Lower Norfolk*, *Northamton*, *Northumberland*, *Rappahanock*, *Surrey*, *Warwick*, *Weſtmorland*, *Weight*, and *York*. In each of theſe Counties are held Petty Courts once a Month for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, from which there lieth an Appeal to the Quarter-Seſſion held at *James Town*.

The Number of the *Engliſh* Inhabiting this Country about 1680. was eſtimated at 40000. and they may now be near double, by reaſon of the Numbers that have ſince gone thither, or are born and grow up in the place; the Inhabitants encreaſing here much faſter than in *England*, partly by reaſon of the Warmneſs of the Country, ſo that they become Marriageable ſooner, and partly by reaſon of the great facility they find in bringing up and providing for their Children, by reaſon of the uncultivated Lands about them.

The Natives, which were very numerous when the *Engliſh* ſettled amongſt them, have been ſo waſted without any War by the ſmall Pox, and Brandy, and other ſuch ſtrong Liquors brought in uſe amongſt them by the *Engliſh*, (of which liquors they are great Admirers) that there is now very few left; and thoſe that are, are in no Condition to conteſt with the *Engliſh*. At firſt the *Engliſh* were forced to labour themſelves, to plant and clear their own Ground; but now they have trained up *Negroes* to work, and they are only their Governours and Directors; and the Children of theſe *Negroes* born there, prove much better, and more uſefull than their parents, being born in a ſtate of ſervitude, and accuſtomed to Labour from their Childhood, which the other were not. As the *Engliſh* encreaſe, ſo they begin to furniſh themſelves with Neceſſaries for Clothes and Linnen, *&c.* by the Product of the Country, and to depend leſs upon *England* for Supplies: So that many of the more Ancient Families live in a State and Equipage equal to that of the beſt Gentry in *England*; and for Plenty, and the Number of their Attendants, much above them; they having all that is neceſſary to the life of Man, or the pleaſure of it, in great abundance; only they want Metals, and have not introduced that Plenty of Gold and Silver in the way of Trade (which is moſtly by Truck or Barter) which we have.

Whilſt I am writing this, Their Majeſties have conſented to the opening an Univerſity in this Country for the Education of their Childeren, and have granted a part of the Royal Revenue to that purpoſe.

I have never heard of any War that has been between this Colony and the Inhabitants. It is to be wiſhed, that ſome of the Inhabitants would ſend over better Inſtructions, that what is wanting of the Hiſtory of this or any of our other Plantations might be preſerved; particularly, what became of the Colony ſent hither in 1587. and whether it ſubſiſted till 1607. when the final Settlement began?

As for the Natives of the whole, they were divided, as was ſaid, into ſeveral Tribes, every Tribe under the command of their ſeveral Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little Power, knew well enough how to keep their State unto their Subjects, and to ſhew it alſo unto Strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleaſed to give Audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the reſt of the *Engliſh* ſent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, embroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of Skins like an *Iriſh* Mantle: at his head and feet an handſome young Woman; on each ſide of the room twenty others, with their necks and ſhoulders painted red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads: his principal Men ſitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithſtanding this great State, (and great it was indeed for ſuch petit Princes) he and the reſt became ſo ſubject to the *Engliſh*, that in *Smith*'s time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but at his command would ſend their Slaves and Subjects to *James-Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the Colony. And it is probable enough that thoſe of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation, (as followed with the *ſtronger Zeal*, and carried on by the united purſes of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence alſo amongſt the Natives, though I find it not expreſſed in ſo many particulars.

To the South of *Virginia* is another Plantation, now ſettled and called *CAROLINA*, from *Charles* the II. late King of *England*, extending from the Latitude of 36 to 29. which is its moſt Southern Bounds. It was in this Part of *America* that all the Colonies ſent by Sir *Walter Raleigh* endeavoured to ſettle; *Wokokon*, *Roanoak*, and *Oran*, being all within theſe Bounds; and this was the Country he gave the Name of *Virginia* to; that which now beareth the Name, being diſcovered afterwards in 1606 or 1607. It was granted in 1663 to *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albermarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkely*, *Antho.* Lord *Aſhly*, after Earl of *Shaftsbury*, Sir *George Cartret* and Sir *John Coleton* Knights and Baronets, and Sir *William Berkley* Kt. And they ſettled 2 Colonies, one at *Albermarle* River, and the other at *Aſhly* River, in the lat. of 32. This of *Albermarle* was ſettled in *April*, 1670. upon a point of land 7 miles from the fall of *Aſhly* River: in 1680 was built the Port Town, and called *Charles-Town* which in 1685 had about 200 Houſes, and was growing dayly, many of the Inhabitants of our Sugar-Iſlands retiring to this Town and Plantation before its Foundation were well laid. There rode before this Town at one time 16 Sail of large Ships. It ſuffereth nothing by the North Eaſt Wind, and is as to heat and cold much more temperate than *Virginia*. This Country is capable of all manner of Improvements, as well yeilding the ſame with the torrid Zone, as thoſe of *England*, by reaſon of their ſhort Winter, and the Land being of great Fertility, and wonderfully watered, there is nothing comes amiſs to it. The firſt *Engliſh* that went thither found ſuch plenty of Grapes, that there was few Trees or Shrubs without Vines about them, of which, the Country has 5. ſeveral ſorts, and care has been ſince taken to Plant the Rheniſh, *Canary*, *Claret*, *Muskat*, *Madera* and *Spaniſh* Grape; of all which, there were long ſince Compleat Vineyards. The Oyle Olive thrives here too wonderfully; as alſo Cotton, Indigo, Silk, Ginger, Tobacco, Flax, and Hemp; and Sugar they may have when they pleaſe. The Inhabitants they found there are of a mild nature, and neither able nor diſpoſed to hurt the *Engliſh*; they being few in Number, and diſunited amongſt themſelves by their Broils.

4. The Iſles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number, (ſome ſay 400 at the leaſt) are ſituate directly Eaſt from *Virgina*, from which they are diſtant 500 *Engliſh* miles; 3300 of the ſame miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, by whom firſt diſcovered. Called alſo the *Summer Iſlands*, from the Shipwreck of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coaſt; ſo much delighted with the ſadneſs of the miſadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to ſettle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatneſs than all the reſt, to which the name is now moſt properly aſcribed, is ſituate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes: Well ſtored, when firſt diſcovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers Fruits, Mulberies, *Palmites*, Cedars; as alſo of Silk-worms, Pearls, and Amber, and ſuch rich Commodities; of Fowl ſo infinite an abundance, that our men took a thouſand of one ſort as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very ſound and healthy, found by experience (the beſt argument in ſuch a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *Engliſh*-man; yet terribly expoſed to Tempeſts of Rain, Thunder and Lightning. For which, and for the many Shipwrecks hap'ning on the Coaſts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be ſaid to own it, the Mariners have pleaſed to call it the *Iſland of Devils*. The Soil affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harveſts yearly: that which is ſowed in *March* being cut in *July*; and that which is ſowed in *Auguſt* being mowed in *December*. No venomous Creature to be found in all the Iſland, or will live brought hither. And beſides theſe Commodities, of ſo ſafe a being, ſo fenced about with Rocks and Iſlets, that without knowledge of the paſſages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with ſuch knowledge there is entrance for the greateſt Ships. The *Engliſh* have ſince added to theſe ſtrengths of nature ſuch additional helps, by Block-houſes, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of Impregnable.

It was firſt diſcovered (but rather accidentally than upon deſign) by *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a Propoſition made in the Council of *Spain*, for ſettling a Plantation in it, as a place not to be avoided by the *Spaniſh* Fleets, in their return from the Bay of *Maxico*, by the *Streights* of *Bahama*. And the King gave One *Ferdinando Camelo*, a *Portugueſe*, large Privileges to encourage him to plant here; but the deſign miſcarried. In the year 1593. *Barboter*, a *French Pilot*, ſuffered Shipwreck, 26 of his Men eſcaping on Shore, amongſt whom was *Henry May* an *Engliſhman*. Neglected notwithſtanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, ſent to *Virginia* with ſome Companies of *Engliſh* by the Lord *De la Ware*, *Anno* 1609. Who being ſhipwrecked on this Coaſt, had the opportunity to ſurvey the Iſland, which he ſo well liked, that he endeavoured a Plantation in it at his coming home. *Anno* 1612. the firſt Colony was ſent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordnance. *Anno* 1616. a new ſupply is ſent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themſelves to ſowing Corn, ſetting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and Planting that gainful weed Tobacco. *Anno* 1619. the buſineſs is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and Men of Honour being intereſted in it; Captain *Butler* ſent thither with 500 men; the Iſle divided into *Tribes* or *Cantreds*, to each *Tribe* a *Burrough*; the whole reduced to a ſetted Government both in *Church* and *State*, according to the Law of *England*. After this all things ſo ſucceded, that in the the year 1623. here were ſaid to be three thouſand *Engliſh*, ten Forts, and in thoſe Forts fifty pieces of Ordnance; their numbers ſince encreaſing daily, both by Children born within the Iſland, and Supplies. from *England*. In the year 1685. the Inhabitants were eſtimated at about 5000. ſo that this ſmall Knot of Iſlands began to diſburthen it ſelf into *Carolina*, which lies in the ſame Climate, and is as good and as ſoft an Air. The long life and health of the Inhabitants is a great cauſe of their encreaſe; but then the Iſle being ſmall, the Trade is not great, ſo that Men rather live than get much in it; which to Men of more Active Spirits is a great cauſe of their Removing to people other places that want them.

OF

OF

FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-Eaſt with *Virginia*; on the Eaſt with *Mare del Noordt*; on the South, and ſome part of the Weſt, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the reſt of the Weſt, with part of *New-Gallicia*, and ſome Countries hitherto not diſcovered. Extended from the River of *Palms* in the 25 degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34. which evidently ſpeaketh it for a Country of large Dimenſions.

It was firſt diſcovered by the *Engliſh* under the Conduct of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, *Anno* 1479. afterwards better ſearched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took poſſeſſion of it in the name of that King, *Anno* 1527. and by him called *Florida*: either becauſe he landed there upon *Palm-Sunday*, which the *Spaniards* called *Paſcua di Flores*, or *Paſcha Florida*; or elſe *quia Florida erat Regio*, by reaſon of that freſh Verdure and flouriſhing Eſtate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is ſaid to be called *Jaquaſa*.

This Country lying paralled to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, is ſaid to be of the ſame temper both for Air and Soil, but that is abundantly more Fruitful; the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of Maize, (the natural Bread-corn of the Country) which they ſow twice a year: *viz. March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in ſome publick Barns, and thence diſtribute it to the Neceſſities of particular perſons. Well ſtored with ſeveral ſorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Cheſnuts, Grapes and Plums, of both excellent taſte and colour: Beaſts wild and tame, of all kinds which theſe Countries yield; and of like ſorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forreſts full of the largeſt Oaks, and the loftieſt Cedars; ſome Cypreſs Trees and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Pavame*, and the *French* name *Saſſafras*, the Bark whereof is Medicinal againſt ſome Diſeaſes; and another Tree which we call *Eſquine*, affirmed to be a Sovereign and preſent Remedy for the *French* Diſeaſe. It is alſo ſaid to be enriched with ſome Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the Natives, till the coming of the *Spaniards* and *French* put a price upon them; and to have in it Emeralds of great worth and beauty, with many Turquoiſes and Pearls. Others report, that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongſt them came from ſome Ships which had been wrecked upon thoſe Coaſts: contrary whereunto it is ſaid by the Natives, that in the Hills which they call *Apaletæi*, there are found great Veins of a reddiſh Metal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to ſearch into them.

The people are of an Olive colour, great ſtature, and well proportioned; naked except their Privities, which they hide with the Skins of Stags: their Arms and Knees ſtained with divers paintings, not to be waſhed off; their Hair black, and hanging down as low as their Thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of Diſſimulation. So ſtomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge; inſomuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty alſo, and very Intelligent, as appeareth by the Anſwer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them, *Anno* 1594. For when he went to perſwade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law, *Not ſo*, replied a *Floridan*; *for God never bad thee to kill and ſlay, and work all kind of miſchief againſt us*. The Women, when their Husbands are dead, uſe to cut off their Hair cloſe to their Ears, and ſtrew it on his Sepulcher, and cannot marry again till their Hair be grown long enough to cover their ſhoulders. *Hermophradites* are here alſo in great plenty, whom they uſe as Beaſts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a groſs belief of the Souls Immortality, but are otherwiſe Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chiefeſt, thoſe called *Apalatæi*, before-mentioned, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of moſt note; 1. *Rio Secco*. 2. *Rio Grande*. 3. *Serrevahi*. The two firſt named ſo by the *Spaniards*, and the laſt by the Natives. 4. *Garunna*. 5. *Ligeris*. 6. *Axona*. 7. *Sequana*; and 8. *Charente*; ſo called by the *French*, according to the names of the beſt Rivers in *France*: both *French* and *Spaniards* having had ſeverally and ſucceſſively the poſſeſſion of it. Here are alſo 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers. 10. *Rio de Nieves*, or the River of Snow: And 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular deſcription of theſe Rivers, their Riſe, Courſe, and Greatneſs, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River called *Porte Riale*, reckon'd the chiefeſt of this Country; the Mouth whereof is three miles broad where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the Weſt, and the other pointing to the North. Some of theſe Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles; a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water. The *French* of latter times, in their Diſcoveries of *Canada*, and the great River and Lakes thereof, found one River which ran to the South; they enter'd and purſued the ſame ſo far, that they concluded it fell into the Bay of *Mexico*: But they going down, the ſame only in Boats, and not many in Number durſt not purſue it too far, leſt they ſhould fall into the hands of the *Spaniards*, or never be able to get back again.

The Country, not ſo well diſcovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly diſtributed into ſeveral Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their firſt Diſcovery. The principal of theſe they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avanares*, and *Malicones*, the *Suſolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not uſual unto us of *Europe*; though theſe more paſſable than many which have gone before; mollified perhaps by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and not preſented to us in their natural roughneſs: all governed by their *Paracouſſi*, or ſeveral Chiefs, and thoſe at deadly Feuds and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panuca*, *Avanares*, *Abarduoſia*, *Joguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their Site nor Bounds; except it be that *Panuca* lieth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and ſpacious Bay of the *Holy Ghoſt*; and *Calos* near the Cape called *Cabo di Florida*. Others diſtinguiſh it by the names of the ſeveral Roylets; which varying with the change of the Perſon, makes that diviſion to be very variable and uncertain alſo. But it is generally agreed, that the *Peninſula* which pointeth on the Iſle of *Cuba* hath the name of *Tegeſta*, or *Florida* ſpecially ſo called; the name of *Florida* being firſt given by *John Ponce* unto this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the reſt of this Country. A Demy-Iſland, ſtretching in length from the South to the North, 100 Leagues; in breadth, where broadeſt, 30 Leagues, and in ſome places 20 only. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Iſle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and three goodly Bays, the chief whereof, that intituled to *S. Joſeph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole invironed about, ſave where it is joyned unto the Continent, with Bars of Sands, and ſcattered Iſlands, which ſerve unto it as the Out-works to ſome notable Fortreſs.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Hellens*, on or near a Promontory ſo named, where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*, once fortified and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, but not long ſince abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charles*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*; and ſo called in honour of *Charles* the Ninth, in whoſe time the Conqueſt of this Country was undertaken; but ruined by the *Spaniard*, in the War between them. 3. *Port Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining I am not able to ſay. More in the Land (for theſe lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalche*, ſuppoſed to be a place of great conſideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the Wealth thereof; (but found to be a ſmall Town, of but 40 Cottages) and therefore firſt attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their Invaſion of this Country under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaez*, *Anno* 1528. Recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalche*, where the Savages gave the *Spaniards* a ſharp Encounter, and ſlew many of them; but being vanquiſhed at the laſt, they forſook the Town, of it ſelf not tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwalled Town, but conſiſting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houſes) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acuera*. 7. *Oſachile*, the chief Seat of the King ſo called. And 8. *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitacuchus*: both taken by the *Spaniards* at the ſame time alſo. 9. *S. Matthews*, on the Eaſtern ſhore of the Demy-Iſland above-mentioned, poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. *S. Auguſtines* on the ſame ſhore, but more South than the other, ſituate at the mouth of a ſmall River ſo named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a ſtrong Caſtle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1585. there being found in the Fort of *S. John*, in which the ſtrength of the Town conſiſted, 28 Braſs Pieces, and 20000 Florens in ready Money, for the pay of the Garriſon. Repaired afterwards more ſtrongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have alſo Garriſons in two other places of this Country, *viz* *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*; but I cannot ſay diſtinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country is of one kind only, though managed by ſeveral perſons: the Supream Power reſiding in the Chiefs of their ſeveral Tribes; at ſuch continual Enmity with one another, that they very ſeldom joyn together in any Counſels wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the preſent *Floridans*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britains*; *Nec quicquam adverſus validiſſimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non conſulebant*; the not communicating of their Counſels haſtned on their Bondage. Yet in the Government of theſe Chiefs there was ſomewhat of the Parliamentary way uſed with us in *Europe*: For as in all matters of Concernment thoſe Chiefs adviſed with their Council; ſo if it were a buſineſs which concerned the Publik, their Prieſts and others of moſt note for Gravity and Wiſdom were admitted to the Conſultation. But being ſeverally too weak for a ſtrong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themſelves, they made themſelves an eaſie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*. *Et ſic dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*; by truſting to their ſingle Forces, they were all ſubdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce*, a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, ſetting ſail with three Ships from the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Peninſula* before deſcribed; and for that cauſe, or from the flouriſhing Verdure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more than ſcour along upon the Coaſts, and give new names to ſuch of the Promontories and Rivers as he had diſcovered; and having only a ſlight Skirmiſh with ſome of the Savages, returned back again. The buſineſs eight years after was again revived by *Vaſques de Ayllon*, who ſetting ſail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hiſpaniola*, attained unto the North-eaſt parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of S. Hellen, and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherouſly inſlaved ſome of the Natives, (whom he had invited to a Feaſt) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the King's Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiouſneſs could not proſper: For in the year 1524. coming with his Ships upon this Coaſt, one of them periſhed on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more uſe of theſe Diſcoveries, than wickedly to inrich themſevles by ſtealing men, whom as wikedly they ſold for Slaves. Nor had the Voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, *Anno* 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a band of 400 Foot, and 80 Horſe. For having took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of his Sovereign *Charles* the Fifth, finding ſome hopes of great Treaſures to be had at *Apalche*, (diſtant above a Months Journey from the place of his Landing) he would needs march thither. In which Action, though he got that and ſome other Towns, yet he loſt himſelf, few of his men returning ſafe into their Country, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitleſs, but more famous, was the Enterprize of *Hernandes à Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horſe, and 90 Foot, over-ran a great part of the Country, and brought many of the petit Princes under the Command of *Spain*. But making only a depredatory War of it, to inrich himſelf, and waſte the Country, without ſettling any Colony, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings, the Action ended with his Life, which he loſt by a Fever: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had ſpared, under the Conduct of *Ludovico Muſcoſo di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties. The *Spaniards* having ſuch ill Succeſs in their Martial Expeditions in the year 1549. they ſent ſome Prieſts to convert theſe thus exaſperated Nations, which were all cut in pieces by the *Natives*.

And ſo the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; ſent on this Voyage by *Gaſper Coligni*, Admiral of *France*, *Anno* 1562. under the Conduct of *Ribault*; who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Peninſula*, gave the firſt Promontory which he touched at, the name of *Cape François*; and after running Northward along that Coaſt, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garonne*, and others of moſt note in his own Country. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto Royal*, he there built a little Fortreſs, which he called *Fort-Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep poſſeſſion, and returned for *France*; his Soldiers following not long after, as well as they could; deſtitute of Supplies from home, and not able with ſo ſmall a number to command them there. The Action reinforced about two years after, under the Conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage: by whom ſome farther progreſs was made in this Undertaking, and a little Town built on the Banks of the River *Maio* (ſo called by *Ribault*, becauſe in that

Month diſcovered by him) which he named *Charles Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latin*. But a Mutiny happening amongſt his Men, and ſome Complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* ſent again to purſue the Enterprize; who entring on his Charge in *Auguſt*, *Anno* 1565. was preſently ſet on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his Ships forced violently upon the Rocks, the new Town ſacked, the Colony put unto the Sword, very few eſcaping: *Ribault* himſelf murthered in cold blood by the Enemy, after Faith given him for his Life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were ſlain in this Action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new Civil War, and loath to engage himſelf againſt the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the Charge of *Dominicus Gurgius*, a private Perſon, out of an honeſt Zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous Cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raiſed two Caſtles more on the Banks of the *Maio*, which they had furniſhed with ſuch pieces as they took from the *French*, and Garriſon'd with 400 Soldiers; yet giving a courageous Onſet, by the Aid of the Savages, (to whom the Name and Neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demoliſhed the Works, and hanged all ſuch of the Soldiers as the Sword had ſpared, and ſo returned into *France*; where, inſtead of Honour and Reward for ſo great a Service, he was in danger of loſing both his Life and Fortunes, compelled to lurk among his Friends till the Times were changed. The *Spaniard*, after this, to keep ſome kind of Poſſeſſion, though not finding in it Riches anſwerable to their greedy deſires, fortified *St. Matthews* and *St. Auguſtines*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the Demy-Iſland, with the Caſtles of *St. Philip*, and *St. Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-Eaſt; thinking himſelf ſo ſtrong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no Foreign Forces durſt appear on that ſide of the Country. So that it ſeems he plays the Part of *Æſop*'s Dog in the Manger, neither reſolved to plant there himſelf, nor willing that any others ſhould.

All this Care of the *Spaniards* has, however, been of no effect; for as the *Engliſh* under *Sebaſtian Cabot* were the firſt Diſcoverers of this Tract of Land; ſo the Providence of God has reſerved the Poſſeſſion of it to them: And they ſince 1663. have ſettled a ſtrong and a thriving Colony in that very Part, upon the ſame Rivers the *French* before endeavoured to ſettle on, and have called it CAROLINA, from *Charles* II. And conſidering we are in Poſſeſſion of all the Countries to the North of it, it was good Prudence to ſecure this Part, leſt a powerful Nation ſhould prevent us, and give us ſome Diſturbance in it. But that which is of a more concernment to our Plantations, is the ſearching of the Rivers on the Weſt-ſide of the *Apalatean* Hills, which has not as yet been much minded by the *Engliſh*. I have been informed by ſome of good credit that have been in *Carolina*, That theſe Mountains are not continued to ſo far as *Carolina*, but on the back of that Country all is Level and Plain, divided by Rivers which all fall to the South into the Bay of *Mexico*. The ſearching out the Truth of this, is a thing of great Conſequence; but eſpecially the finding the River *Colbert*, which would ſettle an eaſie Communication between *Jamaica* and theſe Northern Plantations; for the building a Town and Fort at the Mouth of this River, would afford means for our Plantations to ſend Corn and Proviſions of all ſorts to *Jamaica*, much more eaſily and ſafely than can be done the way of the long Sea; the Torrent of the Streights of *Bahama* forcing all Ships that go to the South to fetch a great compaſs to gain it; but if it were once ſent down this River into the Bay of *Mexico*, it would be a ſhort and an eaſie Paſſage to *Jamaica*. But this being a work of time, need be no farther inſiſted on here.

Having thus taken a Survey of the Main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a View of ſuch Iſlands as lie diſperſed up and down in the Seas adjoining; called by one general name LUCAIOS, or LUCALIÆ INSULÆ, many in number, but reducible to theſe three Heads, *viz.* 1. *The Tortugas.* 2. *The Martyres.* And 3. *The Lucaios*, ſpecially ſo called.

1. The TORTUGAS are Seven or Eight little Iſlands, lying on a heap at the South-weſt point of the *Peninſula*, called the Cape of *Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; diſtant from the Port of *Havana*, in the Iſle of *Cuba* (oppoſite unto which they lie) about ſix Leagues. Well known among the Sailors, becauſe much avoided, or rather avoided becauſe known; the danger of their Company making their farther Acquaintance ſhunned.

2. The MARTYRES, called alſo the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather than Iſlands, covered with a white Sand, and full of Buſhes; the middlemoſt of the three the greateſt: Situate over againſt the South-Eaſt Promontory of the ſaid *Peninſula*, called from hence *Cabeca de los Martyres*; or, *The Cape of Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his firſt Diſcovery of this Country, becauſe they ſeemed afar off to have ſome reſemblance to Men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the Martyrs were in the Primitive times. Infamous for the many Shipwrecks which have ſince there happened; but of great obſervation amongſt Sea-faring-men, becauſe they know by leaving theſe Rocks or Iſlands on the Left hand of them, that they are already entred in the Streights.

3. The LUCAIOS, ſpecially ſo called, lie diſperſed on the Eaſt of the *Peninſula*, many in number, and ſo called from *Lucaioneque*, the greateſt and moſt Northern of them; ſituate in the 27 degree of Latitude; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not ſo big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaioneque* and the *Peninſula*; in length 13 Leagues, and 8 in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent Current interpoſing betwixt it and the Demy-Iſland, called the Streights of *Bahama*; yet not ſo ſtreight, but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of ſo forcible a Courſe, that many times neither Wind nor Oars can prevail againſt it. 3. *Guanahani*, the moſt Famous of all theſe Iſlands, becauſe the firſt that was diſcovered by *Columbus*, *Thurſday*, the 11th of *October*, 1492. being then almoſt out of hope of proceeding any farther; who thereupon cauſed it to be called *St. Saviours*, becauſe his finding it that Day ſaved his Life, the *Spaniards* having otherwiſe reſolved to have ſlain him. Well ſhaded at that time with Trees; full of freſh Springs, and very plentiful of Cotton; now overgrown with Shrubs and Buſhes. It is one of the *Lucaios*, between *Florida* and *Hiſpaniola*, between *Guanima* to the North, and *Triangula* to the South: It has a ſafe and large Haven. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus*, when firſt diſcovered, called, *St. Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and Quick-ſands, but otherwiſe of a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, full of delicate Springs. Others there are, to the number of 24. or thereabouts, whoſe Names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very Names, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is ſaid, that they obeyed their King ſo ſtrictly, (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the ſame; though he gave no reaſon but his Will. The Women of ſo perfect Beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forſook their own Countries to enjoy their Loves: their Shape and Beauty the more diſcernable, in regard not ſuffered to wear any thing till their Purgations; nor after that, but Nets of Cotton filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long ſince, there are neither Men nor Women to be found in any of them; the People being long ſince waſted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*, or conſumed by Famine and Diſeaſes, or otherwiſe made away in Priſons, and by ſeveral Torments, to the number of a Million and two hundred thouſand, as ſome have told us. And ſo we paſs unto the other ſide of thoſe Northern Countries, oppoſite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the Main Land of *Florida*; that when we fall into the Countries now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this Work be finiſhed, except it be to take a Progreſs into ſome of the Iſlands, which cannot otherwiſe be viſited, but by ſuch a Start.

The ſecuring to our ſelves the Poſſeſſion and the Trade of theſe Plantations on the Continent, is of ſo great Uſe, Strength, and Advantage to the *Engliſh* Nation, now ſo great a Body of our People are ſettled there, that there is nothing of greater Conſequence to us. The *Tobacco's*, and other Goods brought from *Virginia*, *Mary-Land*, and *New-York*, do not only ſerve theſe three Kingdoms, but the Remainder of it is tranſported by the *Dutch* to all the Kingdoms on the *Baltick* Sea, and to *Ruſſia*; out of which there ſprings to *England*, in conjunction with our Sugar Trade, a Ballance to all our Trades with *Germany* and *Holland*; ſo that though the *Spaniards* much wondered that our *Engliſh* ſhould ſo much pleaſe themſelves with the planting that Stinking Weed, yet Experience has taught us, that the Riches ariſing from our Trade, are a far greater Advantage to us than their Mines of *Potoſi* are to them, which have deſtroyed ſo many of their People, and made *Spain* ſo Poor and Lazy, that as faſt as it is Imported it is carried away again by their Neighbours for meer Neceſſaries, very little of it remaining with them. The Corn and other Proviſions of *New-England*, *New-York*, and *New-Jerſey*, are of ſo great uſe to our Plantations on the Bay of *Mexico*, that they are not able to ſubſiſt without them, as was ſeen in this preſent War, upon an Interruption of that Trade: But as long as the *French* are poſſeſſed of the River *Canada*, they are on our Backs, and all the Nations we have driven up before us are at their Service, to return under their Command, and deſtroy us: So that the Securing to our ſelves the Trade of thoſe Rivers, is a thing of abſolute Neceſſity for our own Safety. The common Objection againſt things of this Nature, is the Charge and Difficulty of maintaining ſuch remote Garriſons or Plantations; but as to the Charge, the Trade will in a ſhort time pay that; many Nations that now know not the Uſe of Clothes being by this means brought to know and uſe them, and by degrees they will be alſo taught to manure their Ground too.

To ſhew this by an Example; the *Germans* and *Britains*, when the *Romans* came amongſt them, were as Barbarous as the Northern *Americans* are now; but having from them learned the uſe of Tilling their Ground and Cloathing themſelves; they became as Civil and Polite as the *Romans* themſelves, and at laſt their Maſters. The *Indians* do now drive a Trade with the *French* and *Engliſh*, for Beaver, and other Furs and Skins; and that brings them into a liking of our Commodities, which is a Foundation for a larger Trade, where before none was ever driven; and this in time will ſpread till it reach the *Mar del Zur*: So that if our Colonies be but maintained and ſupplied for a few years, they will at length maintain themſelves, as the *Hanſe-Towns* did in *Germany*, which were at firſt either *Roman* or *French* Garriſons fixed there, to Civilize the People, and Secure the Peace of Conquered Countries.

OF CALIFORNIA.

CALIFORNIA, in the large and general acception of it, containeth all thoſe Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the Weſt-ſide of that Northern *Peninſula*, beyond *Nova Gallicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the ſtricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other ſide of a long and ſpacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largeſt ſenſe, it hath on the Weſt *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and ſo on to thoſe undiſcovered Parts which lie fartheſt North, to the Streights of *Anian*. So witneſſeth *John de Laet. Lib. 6. Cap. 11. CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum Novæ Hiſpaniæ atque Galliciæ ad Occidentem objicitur, ad extremos Americæ Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo Anian vocant.* Limited in the ſtricter ſenſe and acceptation of it to an Iſland (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the Weſt hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the Chorography and Story of it, we muſt divide it into the Continent, and the Iſland: the Continent ſubdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*: the Iſland into 3. *California*, ſpecially ſo called; and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And firſt, The Continent of this Part which we call *California*, hath on the Eaſt ſome parts of *Nova Gallicia*; and beſides that, thoſe vaſt and undiſcovered Countries which lie on the Weſt-ſide of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the oppoſite Shore: Bounded on the North with the unknown Parts of this *Mexicava*; on the North-weſt, with the Streights of *Anian*, if ſuch Streights there be; on the Weſt, with the Sea interpoſing betwixt it and the Iſland, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South and South-weſt, with the reſt of *Nova Gallicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noordt*: A River which riſing in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, firſt parteth *Tiguez*, a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*; and after a long courſe falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Diviſion. Divided, as before was ſaid, into the two great Provinces of, 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the moſt Northern parts of this ſide of *America*, is ſaid to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many Houſes, nor much ſtore of People; quite deſtitute of Fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for Man's Life but the Fleſh of Beaſts, which they eat raw, and ſwallow down in great bits without any chewing. The Men apparelled in Bulls Skins from the Head to the Feet; the Women, though in a cold Country, with no other Garment than their Hair, which they wear ſo long, that it ſerveth them inſtead of a Veil to hide their Nakedneſs. They live in Hoords and Companies, like the Hoords of the *Tartars*, not having any certain dwellings, (except ſome chief Men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomades*. Near Neighbours unto *Tartary*, (from whence (not being much diſtant from it) it is ſuppoſed that the Inhabitants firſt came, and from hence by degrees Peopled all *America*. This has in all times been ſo far confirmed by the Obſervation and Experience of all thoſe that have travelled in the North part of *America*, either upon the *Mar del Zur*, or upon the *Virgivian* Ocean, that it may be ſet down for a certain Truth. I have above ſet down the Opinion of a *Ruſs* Commander, that *Tartary* afforded the ſtock that Peopled *America*. One *Stockwell*, an *Engliſhman*, was taken Captive the 19th of *September*, 1677. by the *Indians* of *Canada*, and by them carried Priſoner to *Quebeck*. “ This Country (ſaith he) “ is inhabited by divers ſorts of People, who are judged “ to be of the *Tartars*, called *Samoieds*, being divided “ into Tribes; their Speech is a Dialect of the *Tartars*; “ their Habit, before the *Engliſh* came amongſt them, “ was the Skins of wild Beaſts dreſſed with the Hair on, “ and drawn with Lines into ſeveral Works. In Winter they wear Snow Shoes faſtned to their Feet, made “ like a large Racket for Tennis play; but now they “ wear Trading Cloth bought of the *Engliſh*. All theſe “ are *Samoied* Cuſtoms: And he obſerveth, the farther one goes to the North, the more the *Indians* reſemble the *Samoied Tartars* in Language, Religion, Cloathing, Diet, and their way of Living; and amongſt them that there are Man-eaters, as the *Samoieds* were about 1550. tho' they are now much civilized by the *Ruſs*. The Obſervation that the *Indians* wore Skins for Clothes before the *Engliſh* came amongſt them, and ſince a ſort of Cloth called *Trade-Cloth*, is a ſufficient Inſtance how much the Trade of the World might be enlarged. *America* is of vaſt extent between *California* on the Weſt, and *New-England* on the Eaſt; all the Nations inhabiting this Country, and all that lieth more to the North, go Naked, or only Cloathed in Skins of Beaſts; but as the Trade goes on, may by degrees be brought to covet and wear our Cloth. Thus about 200 Years ago the *Ruſs* made all their Cloaths of Skins of Beaſts, but by Trade and Commerce have been brought to wear Cloth.

The Country being full of Herbage, breeds great ſtore of Cattel, differing not much in bigneſs from thoſe of *Europe*, but that they have a high Bunch betwixt their Shoulders; briſtled upon the Back like Boars, with ſomewhat which reſembleth the Mane in Horſes, and the Beard in Goats; their Legs ſhort, and clad with Fetlocks, their Horns ſhort, but ſharp: the whole Beaſt of an Aſpect ſo horrid, that a Horſe will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in theſe Beaſts lie all their Riches, theſe being to theſe People, as we ſay with us of our Ale to Drunkards, Meat, Drink, and Cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houſes, or at leaſt the covering of them; their Bones, Bodkins; their Hair, Thread; their Sinews, Ropes; their Horns, Maws and Bladders, Veſſels; their Dung, Fire; their Calves-skins, Budgets to draw and keep Water; their Blood, Drink; and their Fleſh, Meat. There is thought to be ſome Traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither; for when *Vaſquez de Coronado* conquered it, he ſaw in the farther Sea certain Ships, not of common making, which ſeemed to be well laden, and did bear in their Prows the Figure of Pelicans; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of theſe two. I know, ſome place this Country more within the Land; and others are ſo far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it cloſe unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coaſt, upon good Authority, though I deny not but that ſome Parts hereof may be more remote. Or elſe to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; That the Maritime parts being known by other Names, the In-lands might retain more ſpecially the Name of *Quivira*, as we have ſeen in many other Countries before deſcribed.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, becauſe I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Scio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tiguez*, which I look upon as the Maritime Parts of the ſame one Country, but better Peopled and frequented than the Iſlands are, becauſe lying in the way of Traffick. The principal Towns of which Provinces are, 1. *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a ſmall Town, but ſituate in a ſtrong and defenſible Place, about which grows ſome ſtore of Cotton, which from the Place the Natives call by the Name of *Acuco*. 2. *Tiguez*, on the Banks of a River ſo called; inhabited by a ſtout and courageous People; who being reſolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when beſieged by *Vaſquez de Coronado*, after they had held out above ſix Weeks, laid all their Houſhold-ſtuff and Treaſure in an heap together, which they ſet on fire; and taking their Wives and Children into the midſt of their Ranks, made a deſperate Sally on the Enemy. A Reſolution worthy a better Fortune, moſt of them being ſlain in the Fight, and the reſt trod under the Horſes Feet, or drowned in paſſing over the River. Yet would not thoſe few which were left give up the Town, till it was fired about their Ears, and no longer Tenable; the *Spaniards* buying this Victory (notwithſtanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loſs of moſt of their Horſes, the death of ſeven of their Men, and the wounding of 80. 3. *Cicuick*, a ſmall Borough, but the Chief of that Province, four days journey from *Tiguez*; from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, ſpecially ſo called, being 90 miles; hath in it neither Stone nor Tree, nor any Land-mark; inſomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of Cow-dung to ſerve for their direction in their coming back.

The firſt diſcovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, who deſirous to get Wealth and Honour by ſome new Adventures, employed in the Diſcovery of theſe Northern parts Fryer *Marco de Niſa*. By him, and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was ſome light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but ſo diſguiſed in Lies, and wrapt up in Fictions, that that Light was little more than Darkneſs. Yet by that glimmering, *Franciſco Vaſquez di Coronado*, in the year 1540. undertook the Buſineſs; and ſped ſo well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tiguez*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a farther journey by the report of the Savages, (who deſired to haſten him out of their Country) telling him of the Wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*, a Bearded Man (thoſe of this Country wearing none) of a white Complexion, and one who in his Chapel worſhipped a Croſs, and the Queen of Heaven: On went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince, Maſter of no more Treaſure than a Brazen Plate hanging on his Breaſt, and without any ſuch Sign of Chriſtianity as they did expect. So fruſtrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their Labour for their Pains, and the Honour of a new Diſcovery, with the loſs of many of their Men, they returned to *Mexico*, *Anno* 1542. Some Fryars made bold to ſtay behind, but were all ſlain by the People of *Quivira*, except only one, who like *Job*'s Meſſenger was left to carry the News of the Murther; the *Spaniards* never after looking into theſe cold Countries, where nothing elſe was to be gotten but Blows and Hunger.

2. CIBOLA hath on the North *Quivira*; on the South and South-eaſt parts, *New Gallicia*; from which divided by the River called *Rio del Noordt*, as before was ſaid; the Weſt-ſide of it waſhed with the *Mar Vermiglio*, interpoſed betwixt it, and the Iſland of *California*, ſpecially ſo called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The Air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much ſubject in the Winter to Froſts and Snows. The Country for the moſt part level, rarely ſwelled with Hills, but thoſe very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any Fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly ſupplied both with Fewel and Timber. Plenty of Maize, and ſmall white Peaſe, which they make their Bread of; great ſtore of Veniſon, but they kill it only for the Skin; ſome quantities of Sheep, known for ſuch by their Fleeces only, but otherwiſe as big each of them as an Horſe, or Oxe, ſome of their Horns weighing Fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tygers, ſo great a number, that they have more than enough for themſelves, and could well ſpare them to their Neighbours.

The People generally well Limbed, and tall of Stature, ingenious in reſpect of ſome other Savages; and though Naked except their Privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet thoſe Mantles wrought in divers colours; which, with ſome quantity of Cotton which they have amongſt them, (none of it growing in their Country) ſhew them to be an induſtrious Nation, and to maintain a courſe of Trade with ſome of their Neighbours. A farther Argument of which, is thoſe painted Skins which they have from *Cicuick*, or ſome other Country which lies towards the Ocean, my Author telling, that they travel for them eight days journey towards the North: And probably enough, may be ſome of thoſe Commodities which the Inhabitants of the Maritime Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are ſuppoſed to Traffick, as before was ſaid. Like induſtry is noted in the Women alſo, one of which will grind and knead more Maize in a Day, than the Women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the reſt of the Savages.

This Country was firſt made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of Frier *Marco de Niſa*, employed on new Diſcoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was ſaid. Leaving *Couliacan*, the moſt Northern Province of *Nova Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious Deſart four days journey long; at the end of which he met ſome People, who told him of a pleaſant Country four days journey farther; unto which he went. And ſtaying at a place called *Vacapa*, he diſpatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to ſearch towards the North, by whom he was advertiſed after four days abſence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a Months journey thence; wherein was ſeven great Cities, under the Government of one Princeſs, the Houſes of which were built of Stone, many Stories high, the Lintels of their Doors adorned with *Turquoiſes*; with many other ſtrange Reports of their Markets, Multitudes and Riches. But neither the Fryer nor the *Negro* had the hap to ſee it; the *Negro* being killed on the very Borders, and the Fryer ſo terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and ſatisfie the Vice-Roy with ſome handſom Fiction, than put himſelf upon the danger of a farther journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Report which the *Negro* ſent him; gave to the Deſarts in his way the names of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac*, and *Marata*; aſcribed unto this laſt a great City called *Abacu*, once well inhabited, but at that time deſtroyed by Wars; to the other a more Civil and well-cloathed People than in other places. Inflamed with which Reports, *Vaſquez de Coronado* undertook the Action, but found the Fryer to be a Fryer; nothing of moment true in all his Relations: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found only in the Fryer's Brains; *Tonteac* to be nothing but a great Lake, on whoſe Banks had once been many Cottages now conſumed by Wars. And as for the ſeven Cities of ſuch Wealth and Bigneſs, he found them to be ſeven poor Boroughs, all ſituate within the compaſs of four Leagues; which made up that ſo famous Kingdom which the Fryer dreamt of. The biggeſt of them held about 500 Cottages; the reſt of them not above half that number. One of them, leſt he might be ſaid to return without doing ſomething, he beſieged and took, but found it ſuch an hot piece of ſervice, that he was twice beaten down with Stones as he ſcaled the Rampiers: but having taken it at the laſt, he found in it great plenty of *Maize* to refreſh his Army, and cauſed the Town, (conſiſting of 200 Houſes, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for ſome reſemblance which it had to that City in *Spain*. Such as have ſince endeavoured the diſcovery of theſe North-weſt parts, and ſailed along the Shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of ſome Points or Promontories, known in the Maps by the names of 1. *Porto de S. Clara*, not far from the Mouth or Influx of *Rio del Noordt*. 2. *Las Plaias*. 3. *S. Michael*. 4. *Rio de Teron*. 5. *Laques del Oro*, bordering on *Quivira*. And 6. *Roy Cornado*, on the Eaſt of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira*, ſpecially ſo called, lieth a Country, which the ſaid *Vaſquez* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Hueux*; on the Banks whereof, for the ſpace of 20 Leagues, ſtand 15 Burroughs well built, and furniſhed with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out lied the Fryer) as in other cold but more civil Countreys, againſt the extremities of Winter. This Region, ſtretching ſeven days journey to the River of *Cicuick*, I reckon to belong to the North-eaſt parts of *Cibola*: As I do alſo the fruitful Valley of *Arbia de Corazones*, which they paſſed in their way hither from *Couliacan*; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticala*, and the Valley of *Nueſtra Senora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts, of it: not knowing otherwiſe what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Iſland, the other general part of this Diviſion, parted from *Cibola* and New *Gallicia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Virmiglio*, and by ſome the Gulf of *California*; environed on all other parts by the Main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22 degree of Northern Latitude to the 42, but the breadth not anſwerable. The moſt Northern point hereof called *Cabo Blance*, of which little memorable. The moſt Southern, called the Cape of S. *Lucas*, remarkable for the great Prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendiſh*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, *Anno* 1587. Suppoſed in former times to have been joyned in the Northern parts of it, above the Latitude of 27, to the reſt of the Continent; and ſo deſcribed in moſt of our later Maps, till the year 1626. and after that in the Chart or Map of *John de Late*, *Anno* 1633. which I wonder at; himſelf affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Iſland, *lib.* 6. [illegible] 1. and that he had ſeen a fair Map in Parchme[illegible] very fair and ancient Draught, *Quæ* Californiam, *in ingentis Inſulæ modum à Continente divideret*, in which it was expreſſed for a ſpacious Iſland, *lib.* 6. *cap.* 17. The reaſon of the Error was, that thoſe who firſt endeavoured the diſcovery of it, ſailing up the Sea of *Mer Virmiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North, till it ſeemed to be no bigger than ſome mighty River; but that of ſuch a violent Current, that no Boat was able to paſs upwards with Wind or Oar, unleſs haled up with Cords by the ſtrength of Men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*, known by that name, and continued in that Opinion of being a River, till the year 1620. or thereabouts. At what time ſome Adventurers beating on theſe Coaſts, fell accidentally upon a ſtreight, but violent paſſage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a ſtrong Current into *Mer Vermiglio*, diſcovering by that accident, that the Waters falling into that Sea, was not a River, as formerly had been ſuppoſed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by conſequence, that this part of *California* was not a Demi-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, but a perfect Iſland. And looking on it as an Iſland, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *California*, ſpecially ſo called.

And firſt, 3. CALIFORNIA, ſpecially ſo called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Country, though ſo near to *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and though diſcovered ſo long ſince, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting Men for new Plantations, or finding ſmall encouragements here to invite them to it. Furniſhed on the Sea-coaſts with great plenty both of Fiſh and Fowl, which they find in great Iſlands of Weeds floating on the Seas; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beaſt haired like a Goat, and with Teats like a Cow, but otherwiſe reſemling Deer, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it are ſaid to caſt Fire-aſhes, which the *Spaniards* for that reaſon call *Cacofogo*. The People are numerous and thick ſet, inſomuch that on the Banks of the ſuppoſed River of *Bona Guia* were numbred three and twenty Nations all of ſeveral Languages. In their Perſons like the reſt of the Savages, but of different Dreſſes. Some of them painting their Faces all over, ſome half way only, others with painted Vizards, reſembling Faces: Holes in their Noſtrils for their Pendant; the tips of their Ears loaded, if not over-loaded with the bones of Fiſhes hanging at them; a Girdle about their Waſte, to which they faſten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail: the Women uſing the like Bunches before them alſo. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they moſt affectionately worſhip as the cauſe of the increſe of their Fruits and Plants. Joined in Commiſſion with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to worſhip a wooden Croſs (the more irrational Idolatry of the two) which he cauſed to be erected at his coming away; with inſtructions to kneel before it every Morning, at the firſt riſing of the Sun: ſo teaching them to worſhip their two Idols at once, or tranſlate their Devotions from the Sun, a Creature of God to a plain wooden Croſs (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a Carpenter. It is alſo told us of this People, that each Family is ordered by the Father of it, without other Government: yet ſo well managed, that they allowed but one Wife to a Man, and puniſhed Adultery with death: The Maids not ſuffered to converſe or talk with Men before their Marriage, but to abide at home and work: the Widows not to Marry again, till they had mourned at leaſt half a year for the death of their Husbands: Matters more ſavouring an *Utopian* Commonwealth, than a *Californian.*

Places of moſt obſervation in it; 1. The Capes of St. *Clara*, and St. *Lucas*: the firſt on the South-eaſt point of the Iſland, towards new *Gallicia*; the other on the South-Weſt towards *Aſia.* 2. St. *Croſſes*, (*Sinus* St. *Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the Cape of *St. Clara*; ſo called, becauſe diſcovered upon *Holy-Rood* day. 3. *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; ſo named, becauſe the Shore ſhewed in little Hillocks, without Graſs or Shrub s; the *Spaniſh* word ſignifying as much. 4. *Cabo Boxu*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other ſide may be eaſily ſeen) in the Latitude of 29. 5. St- *Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Iſland of the ſame name, with ſome Cottages in it. 6. St. *Thome*, an Iſland of 25 Leagues in compaſs, at the mouth of the Gulf; riſing towards the South in an high Mountain, under which is a convenient Road for Shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 Fathoms. Then on the other ſide towards the Sea, we have 7. St. *Abad*, a convenient Haven, ſurrounded with a Country which ſeemed Rich and Pleaſant. 8. *Cape Trinidado*, a Promontory well known to Seamen. 9. *Cape de Cedro*, ſo called from the Cedars growing near it; in the Latitude of 28 and 15 Minutes; with an Iſland not far off of the ſame name alſo.. 10. *Cape Enganno*, in the Latitude of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, ſo named from the multitude of Boats (by themſelves called *Canoes*) which the People uſed four degrees more Northward than that Cape. And 12. *Cabo de Galera*, ſo named from the reſemblance which it had to an Hat, in the Latitude of 36. But theſe two are placed by *John de Laet* within the Country of *Scyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira.* Underſtand here, that theſe are only the names of Places, not of Towns nor Villages (for whether there be any ſuch I am yet unſatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers, and Iſlands on both fides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The firſt diſcovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez*, (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534, furniſhed out two Ships from the Haven of St. *Jago*, on the Weſtern Shores of *Hiſpania Nova*, to ſearch theſe Seas: who making ſome ſmall progreſs in it, encouraged him the next year to purſue it in Perſon; and paſſing up the Gulf, as high as to the River of St. *Peter*, and St. *Paul*, (ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on the *29th.* of *June*, the Annual Feaſt of thoſe Apoſtles) for want of Victuals and other neceſſary Proviſions, he returned back again. The buſineſs having ſlept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Franciſco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before; who did not only ſearch to the bottom of the Gulf, but having throughly canvaſſed all the Eaſtern Shores, he turned his courſe, and made as fortunate a Diſcovery alſo of the Weſtern Coaſts. Landing, he took poſſeſſion of the Country, with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place ſet up a Croſs to ſerve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando de Alarcon*, who diſcovered many Leagues up the courſe of the ſuppoſed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Naguacatus*, one of the Chiefs of their Clans or Tribes, did ſubmit unto him: advancing ſo far towards the North, that at the laſt he heard news of *Cibola*; but was unprovided at that time for a Journey thither. And on the other ſide, *Roderico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coaſting along the Weſtern Shores of this Country, diſcovered two ſmall Iſlands beyond *Cape Galera*; the one of which he called St. *Luke*'s, and the other the Iſland of *Poſſeſſion*, and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was Gold and Silver, and hungry Honour yielding but a poor Subſiſtence; the farther ſearch of theſe Countreys was quite laid aſide, almoſt as little know now, as before *Columbus* firſt ſet ſail upon new Diſcoveries. About the year 1680. The *Spaniards* ſent a Colony to ſettle at the South end of *California*, who could give no great Account of the Place, more than the Cuſtoms and Manners of the People, of which enough has been ſaid by the Author.

4. *NOVA ALBION*, formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but ſome part of this Iſland; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and ſo Northwards as far as to *Cape Blanco*, as they call it now. Diſcovered bo Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, *Anno* 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England* his own Country, which was once called *Albion.*

The Country is abundantly repleniſhed with Herds of Deer, grazing upon the Hills by Thouſands: as alſo with a kind of Conies, in their Feet ſomewhat like a Want, and on each ſide a Sack, where they keep ſuch Victuals as they cannot eat. The Fleſh of theſe Conies ſerves the People for Food; and of their Skins the Kings or Chief of their ſeveral Tribes make their Royal Robes. The Men go quite naked, the Women with a piece of Matt inſtead of an Apron; Chaſte, and Obedient to their Husbands. Their Houſes made of Turf and Oſier, ſo wrought together, as ſerves to keep them from the cold: in the midſt whereof they have an Hearth where they make Fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bulruſhes. What Towns they have, or whether they have any or not, and by what Names called, if they have any, muſt be referred to a farther Diſcovery; there being nothing to that purpoſe delivered hitherto. And yet not ſeated ſo far North, but that it may be capable of a farther Light, if any *Noble Undertakers* would adventure on it.

The *Engliſh* were no ſooner landed, but the Inhabitants preſented themſelves before the General with Preſents of Feathers, and Cauls of Network made of Bull-ruſhes; which he received, and requited with great Humanity. The news of their arrival being carried farther, one of their Kings thought fit to beſtow a viſit on them: A Perſon of a goodly ſtature, attired in Cony-Skins, with many Tall Men attending on him, one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged Three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of Bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniouſly compoſed. After him followed many of the common ſort, every one having his Face painted white, black, and ſome other Colours; and every one with ſome Preſent or other in their Hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the General's Preſence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not underſtood: and that being ended, the King cauſed the Crown to be put upon the General's Head, and the three Chains about his Neck; the common People offering Sacrifices about the Field in great Solemnity. Not to be interdicted thoſe Superſtitions, though the *Engliſh* (whom they took for Gods) ſeemed to be offended at them. Finally, after much kindneſs expreſſed on both ſides, the General promiſing in the name of the Queen of *England* to take them into his Protection, he cauſed a Pillar to be erected in the Place; on which he faſtned the Arms of *England*, the Queen's Name, and his own; and ſo returned unto his Ships; but the Country lying ſo far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the *Engliſh* Nation, but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at laſt quite left out of the Maps or Carts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po. de Franciſco Draco*, being left unto us to preſerve his Memory. And though we have cauſed the name of *Nova Albion* to be reſtored unto the Maps, as it was before; yet we muſt let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much Propriety, but more hopes of Profit and Advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Oppoſite to *Cape Blanco*, and the extream North parts of *America*, the ſuppoſed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the *Streights* of *Anian*, which are thought by ſome to part *America* from *Aſia*, do derive their Name, is conceived to lie. Suppoſed, and ſuppoſed only, for not certainly known: the very being of ſuch a Kingdom, and ſuch *Streights*, being much ſuſpected.

OF

OF

NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the Eaſt and South with *Nova Hiſpania*, or *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with *Mer Vermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countries beyond it on the North-Eaſt not fully diſcovered hitherto. So called becauſe of ſome reſemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for diſtinction-ſake.

It is ſituate between the 18 and 20 degrees of the Northern Latitude, which meaſured from the Port of the *Nativity*; (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the moſt Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 Leagues; the breadth hereof, for ſo much as is poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, being but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biſcay*, and *Nova Mexicana*, into the Account, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof is generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat than cold; many times ſubject unto Thunders, and great Storms of Rain, in *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*, and at all times to Earthquakes; in the reſt of the year the Air is ſerene, but for the moſt part of ſo ſound a Conſtitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious Diſeaſes ſeldom known amongſt them. The Ground by conſequence ſomewhat of the drieſt, if not moiſtened with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently, and no way Marſhy; about *Chriſtmas* 'tis ſubject to gentle Froſts, but very healthful. And whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat, (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their ſtings do very often plague the People, and raiſe Bliſters on their Bodies as big as Walnuts.

The Country more mountainous than plain, and in moſt parts ſandy. Quarries of Stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other Stone of value. Good ſtore of Mines of Braſs and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongſt all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The Soil ſo rich, that it yields 60 Meaſures of Wheat for one; and for one of Maize, above two hundred: The Rivers plentiful of Fiſh, and the Woods of Beaſts: Great ſtore of Bees without ſtings, which make their Honey in the Foreſts without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, Malacatons, and other *Europæan* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive; of which the laſt is moſt an end undermined by Emmets; and the firſt thruſts out ſuch a Harveſt of Leaves, occaſioned by the natural rankneſs of the ground, that they ſeldom come to their perfection. But this in time will be effectually cured as theſe Trees come to maturity, thoſe Trees which natural grow very faſt, not bearing Fruit till they have done growing This was obſerved of the Olives of *Greece* alſo when they were firſt planted there, but afterwards the depauperating the Soil cured it.

The People are wavering and inconſtant, apt upon any diſcontent to forſake their Houſes, betake themſelves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their ancient Barbariſm; crafty, and docile even in matters, which concern Religion; but ſlothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to Singing, Dancing, and ſometimes to Drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themſelves to the cares of Husbandry. When the *Spaniards* ſettled here they were exceeding wild and fierce, and not eaſily reduced from eating Man's fleſh. Of Stature reaſonable tall; their Garments for the moſt part a Shirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, faſtned with two Buckles about their ſhoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatneſs of their ſeveral Tribes: Thoſe Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who ſucceed hereditarily; but ſubject to the Judges, and other Officers, of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themſelves generally to Merchandize, and the ſearch of Metals; ſome few to Husbandry and Grazing, but make not the beſt uſe which they might of the Country: For tho' here be great plenty both of Sugar-Canes and of Cochineel, yet they neglect to refine the one, or to attend the ordering of the other, finding perhaps an eaſier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of moſt note in all this Country is that betwixt *Guadalaiara* and *Zacatecas*; a League in height, but of ſuch a Precipice withal, that no Horſe nor Cattle can aſcend it: their other Hills rocky, but cloathed with Woods full of vaſt Pines, large Oaks, and great ſtore of Wolves. The River of moſt name is that called *Bazania*, which, riſing out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hiſpania*, falls down a Cataract about four Leagues from *Guadalaiara* of ten Fathoms deep, and ſo tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place Fordable, nor having any paſſage over it but on Reeds and Rafts, on which the Paſſenger ſitteth with his commodities, his Horſe ſwimming by; not ſafe at any time, and at moſt times dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 20, ſome of 12 Leagues compaſs, environed with rich Paſtures on every ſide. Thoſe of leſs note ſhall be remembred in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of, 1. *Cinaloa*. 2. *Couliacan*. 3 *Xaliſco*. And, 4. *Gudalaiara*, on the Weſtern Shores. 5. *Zacatecas*. 6. *New Biſcay*. 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all theſe ſomewhat ſhall be ſaid, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA* is the moſt Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the Weſt with the ſuppoſed River of *Buena Guia*, and ſome part of the Bay of *California*; on the Eaſt, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepeſcuan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South with *Couliacan*.

The Air for the moſt part clear and healthy, the Soil fat and fruitful, productive of Maize, Pulſe, a ſort of long Peaſe, which the *Latines* call *Phaſeoli*, but we have no Proper *Engliſh* name for; of which abundantly plentiful. Great ſtore of Cotton-wooll, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1. *Petatlan*. 2. *Tamochala*. 3. *Paſchua*. 4. *Yaquim*; of no long courſe, all of them riſing from the Hills of *Tepecſitan*, and thoſe but 36 Leagues diſtant from the Sea-ſhores. By reaſon of theſe Rivers, here are very rich Paſtures, which breed great ſtore of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattle.

The People are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by an hand-breadth, warlike and ſtrong; not conquered by the *Spaniard* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poiſoned Arrows, with great maſſy Clubs. Their Garments for the moſt part of Cotton-wooll; their Hair nouriſhed to a great length, which the Men tie up in a Knot, but the Women ſuffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes, at the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Cloaths at all, but to hide their ſhame; moſt miſerable poor; worſhippers of the Sun, and not a few Cannibals amongſt them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Philip* and *Jacob*, ſituate on the Bank of a River, about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note. 2. S. *Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, Planted here long ſince, and re-inforced by a Supply brought thither in the year 1554, by *Franciſco de Tharra*; ſcarce able to defend themſelves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon diſturb them with a freſh alarm. Beſides theſe, here are only ſome ſcattered Villages, and thoſe not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they firſt made themſelves Maſters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1542. People every-where ſubmitting without any reſiſtance; or, if they gathered to an Head, ſoon diſperſed again. For what could naked Men do againſt an Army?

2. *COULIACAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coaſting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the Weſt, and part of *New Biſcay* on the Eaſt, and the *Purple* Sea to the South and Weſt, within the Juriſdiction of the Governour of *Guadalaxara*; the Country well provided of Fruits, inferiour unto none for all ſorts of Proviſions, and not without ſome Mines of Silver found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio des Mucheras*, or the River of Women, in the North part of the Province; ſo called, becauſe the *Spaniards* found there more Women than Men, occaſioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both ſides whereof are very well Peopled. 3. *Piaſtla*, more towards *Xaliſco*.

The People not much different from the reſt of *Gallicia*; ſave that their Women were more handſome, both for Dreſs and Perſonage; all cloathed in Garments of Cotton Wooll, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the Men not free from the ſin of *Sodom*. Their Houſes neatly thatched with Straw, and over the Lintels of the Doors ſome Paintings, as ſhameleſs as the very fouleſt of *Aretine's* Poſtures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted to their coſt with Silver, which they are compelled to dig and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piaſtla*, on the River ſo called, about a days Journey from the Sea, well built, and artificially contrived in reſpect of others; never recovered of that blow that it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conqueſt of this Country waſted all before them. 2. *Quinola* near *Rio de Mucheras*. 3. *Quatrabarrios*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, becauſe it conſiſted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough, which from a Lion there found had this new name alſo. 5. *Couliacan*, on a River ſo named, once the chief of this Province. 6. S. *Michael*, on the River of Women, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25, but afterwards deſerted, or removed rather to a fitter Place, and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flouriſhing and wealthy Soil both of Corn and Paſturage. The whole Country conquered by the *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1531, under *Nonnez de Guzman*, moſt barbarouſly burning down the Towns, and deſtroying the People; as if they came not to ſubdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as ſome Writers call it, hath on the North *Couliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſt, the large Bay of *California*: So called from *Xaliſco*, the chief Town of it, when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for Maize, which it yields good ſtore of, but not often. Herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greateſt want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two moſt fruitful, and better Peopled, having in it ſtore of Wax and Honey, with ſome Mines of Silver. The People formerly Man-eaters, and much given to quarrel; from which reformed ſince their Converſion to the Goſpel. Tenacious ſtill of one of their ancient Cuſtoms, which is, to carry the ſmalleſt Burthen upon their Shoulders, and not under their Arms; which to do, they think very much miſ-becoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *St. Sebaſtians*. 2. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*; and the great and famous River of *Barania*, ſpoken of before. Upon the Banks of which are ſituate their moſt principal Towns, *viz.* 1. *Xaliſco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards Sierre de Xaliſco*, thruſting it ſelf into the Bay of *California*, over-againſt the Iſlands called *The Three Maries*; the City taken and deſtroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1530. 2. *Compoſtella*, now the chief City of the Country, and a Biſhop's See, founded by the ſaid *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1531, when he had fully conquered the Country; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in ſo ill a place, and ſo bad an Air, deſtitute both of Food for Men, and Graſs for Horſes, as plainly ſhewing him to have better judgment in Souldiery than in Architecture. This City is 100 Miles from *Guadlajara* to the Weſt, and not far from the South Sea. In 1570, the Biſhop removed his See from this City to *Guadlajara*, by reaſon of the great Thunder and Lightning. 3. *Purification*, a ſmall Borough on the Sea-ſide, and in the extremity of this Country towards *Nova Hiſpania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. *S. Sebaſtian* in *Chiametla*, on the River ſo called, firſt built by *Franciſco de Tharra* above-mentioned; who having found hereabouts ſome rich Mines of Silver, brought hither in the year 1554, a new *Spaniſh* Colony, and building Houſes for his Miners in convenient places, occaſioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the Weſt *Xiliſco*; on the Eaſt and South, by *Mechoan*, a Province of *Nova Hiſpania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*, well watered with the River *Barania*, which runneth through the midſt thereof, ſome of his by-ſtreams moiſtening the other parts. The Country very wealthy in Mines of Silver, plentiful of Maize, and fortunate in the production of Wheat, and ſuch other Fruits as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but moſt peculiar unto theſe.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Guadalaiara*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Caſtile*, and giving name unto the Province, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Barania*, or ſome branch thereof, in a ſweet Air, and a moſt rich and pleaſing Soil; there founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1531, when he had perfected his Conqueſt: better adviſed in the choice of the place, then in that of *Compoſtella* before-mentioned. A City of ſo good eſteem, that it paſſeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the Reſidence of the Kings Treaſurers, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Compoſtella*, *Anno* 1570, and the Seat of the Parliament or Courts of Juſtice, of this Province. Beautified on this laſt occaſion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciſcans*, and another of *Auguſtine* Friers. It is 40 Leagues diſtant from the South Sea, and 80 from *Mexico* to the Weſt. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the ſaid *Nonnez* in that part of this Country which is called *Tepique*; but not elſe obſervable. 3. *Santo Maria de los Lagos*, built by the ſame Founder, 30 Leagues on the Eaſt of *Guadalaiara*; and the beſt defence of all this Province againſt the *Chichimicas*, a barbarous and untamed People on the North and Eaſt parts of this Country, who harbouring themſelves in the thickeſt of the Woods, and ſome unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly deſtroy, if they were not thus repreſſed.

5. ZACATECAS is bounded on the South with *Guadalaiara*; on the North, with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Calucan*, and ſome part of *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country is of a different nature. In the Weſt parts, called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of Silver (no one Province more) but deſtitute of Wheat, Maize, Water, and all other Proviſions; as if it were deſigned for ſome wealthier Miſer, who could live upon the ſight of Treaſure. The Eaſtern parts, properly called *Uxitipa*, not ſo well furniſhed with Silver, but moſt abundantly provided with all ſorts of Fruits; their Woods repleniſhed with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving Entertainment to ſome Bird or other: In a word, nothing wanting in it either for Neceſſity or Pleaſure. Of the People I find nothing ſingular, but that they are affirmed to be more induſtrious than the moſt of their Neighbours; whether by force or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their Silver-Mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecas*, neighboured by moſt wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadalaiara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciſcans*. 2. *S. Martins*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were firſt opened by *Franciſco de Tharra*, before-mentioned; who with many Slaves, and all things neceſſary for a War, was ſent upon that Errand by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Viceroy of *Mexico*, *Anno* 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colony of 400 *Spaniards*, beſides Women and Children. 3. S. Lukes, and, 4. *De Avinnon*, built amongſt Mines as wealthy as thoſe before, by the ſame *De Tharra*: As alſo was, 5. *Erena* a ſmall Town, but of the ſame Eſtate for Silver, diſtant from *Zacatecas* 25 Leagues towards the North-weſt. 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the moſt Northern parts of this Country, 68 Leagues from *Guadalaiara*, the foundation of the ſame *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the Natives, and quieted them, after ſome Rebellions, by gentle uſage, built this Town in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil; and having got the Government of the Countries which he had diſcovered, drew hither ſo many of the *Spaniards*, and chief Men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of ſome ſilver Mines, that it became the chief and beſt peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the Valley of *Guadiana*, about 8 Leagues diſtant from *Nombre di Dios*, Peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards*, conducted thither by *Alfonſo Pachico*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this Treaſure. 8. *Xeres de Frontera*, firſt built for the repreſſing of ſome of the Savages, who uſe to infeſt the Borders towards *Guadalaiara*, during the Regency of the Marqueſs of *Villa Maurique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for UXITIPA, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, ſubdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1529, at that time Governour of that Province; diſmembred from it ſince the Conqueſt of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the Prefecture of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it is called S. *Lewis*, built in a pleaſant Valley by the ſaid *Pachico*, and by him Peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*; the Town not diſtant from *Panuco* above 20 Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAIA*, or *New Biſcay*, hath on the South *Los Zacatecas*; on the Weſt, *Cinaloa*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countries towards the Eaſt not diſcovered hitherto. So called by *Franciſco de Tharra*, by whom firſt ſubdued, from the near Neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which it hath been always ſince reckoned for a part.

The Country is ſubject in the Winter to great Froſts and Snows; but notwithſtanding, well provided of all things neceſſary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of Silver. They have alſo ſome of Lead, which ſerve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; uſed to this purpoſe not alone in theſe Mines of *New Biſcay*, but in thoſe alſo of *New Spain*. The People reſolute and ſtout, not conquered at the firſt Attempt, nor won ſo much by Force, as by fair Perſwaſions.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *S. Barbara*, and, 2. *S. John's*, about three Leagues diſtant; built only for the benefit of the Mines adjoyning. 3. *Ende*, the fartheſt Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colony was there planted (by reaſon of the adjoyning Mines) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did alſo fortify it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Diſtant from *S. Barbara* and *S. John's* about 20 Leagues, and 120 Leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by 70 Leagues at leaſt, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*, are ſaid to be thoſe four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Cienegas*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country was firſt ſubdued by *Franciſco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango*, in the North parts of *Los Zacatecas*, and aſſured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130 Horſe for the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the firſt more with hunger and thirſt, than with any oppoſition of the Inhabitants; inſomuch, that they were fain to eat their Horſes: and afterwards, by the Rebellion of the Natives, who killed the greateſt part of ſuch Horſes as were left uneaten. But not diſcourag'd herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his Paſſage through the Woods by the Swords of his Soldiers, he prevailed at laſt; and having ſettled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinaloa*, which he alſo conquered, and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. John's*, as was ſaid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA* is bounded on the South with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Quivira*; the Countries on the North and Eaſt, not diſcovered hitherto, tho' ſome extend it Eaſtwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that, none can tell; the Relations of this Country being ſo uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare ſay nothing poſitively of the Soil or People, but much leſs of the Towns and Cities which are ſaid to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom diſcovered and ſubdued.

For firſt, they tell us of the People, that they are of great Stature, and that like enough; but not ſo probable that they have the Art of dreſſing Chamois, and other Leather, as well as the beſt Leather-dreſſer in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shooes and Boots ſo well ſowed and ſoaled, that no Shooe-maker in all St. *Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the Houſes well-built of Lime and Stone, ſome of them four Stories, and in moſt of them Stoves for the Winter-ſeaſon. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly, they tell us of a Town called, 1. *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is ſaid to contain eight Market-places, and all the Houſes to be plaiſtered and painted in moſt curious manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that is ſituate on the

the top of a Rock, a great Town yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of ſtairs, but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well fortified by Nature, (they ſay true in that, if any things are true which they tell us of it) and all their Water kept in Ciſterns, (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Conibas*, on a Lake ſo called, the City ſeven leagues long, two broad; (a ſecond *Ninive)* but the Houſes ſcatteringly built amongſt Hills and Gardens, which take up a great deal of the Room: Inhabited by a People of ſuch ſtrength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and ſo went away. Much of this ſtuff I could afford you, but by this taſte we may conjecture of the reſt of the Feaſt.

The Country was firſt diſcovered by *Auguſtino Royoz*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, *Anno* 1580. who out of zeal to plant the Goſpel in the North, accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the Savages, the Souldiers play'd the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram*, a Frier of the ſame Order (from whoſe mouth we muſt have the former Fictions) deſirous to preſerve the Lives of his Fellows which ſtaid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Native of *Corduba*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in ſuch an holy Cauſe: who raiſing a Band of 150 Horſe, accompanied with many Slaves and Beaſts of Carriage, undertook the buſineſs. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Paſnugates*, *Toboſi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrahumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many others as hard names, which he paſſed through in his way. But coming at the laſt to a great River which he called *Del Noerdt*, there he made a ſtand; cauſed the Country on both ſides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, ſituate in the 37 degree of Northern Latitude, and diſtant from *Old Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name ſince changed to that of *S. Foy*, but ſtill the Metropolis of that Province, the Reſidence of the Governour, and a pretty Garriſon, conſiſting of 250 *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, *viz.* 2. *Socorro*, ſo called by the *Spaniards*, becauſe that of Succour & Relief they found there for their half-ſtarved Bodies. 3. *Senecu*, 4. *Pilabo*, and 5. *Seviletta*; old Towns, but new Chriſtened by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Goſpel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6. *St. Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599. by *John de Onnate*, who with an Army of five thouſand followed the ſame way which *Eſpeio* went, and having got a great deal of Treaſure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the moſt I dare rely on for this Country. And this hath no ſuch Wonders in it, but what an eaſie Faith may give credit to: Though I had rather believe the Frier's whole Relations, then go thither to diſprove any Part thereof.

OF NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the Weſt, with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North with the reſt of *New Gallicia*, ſome part of *Florida*, and the Gulf; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-Sea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which the Kings of *Spain* call themſelves *Reges Hiſpaniarum*, in the plural number. It contains all that ſpace of Land between the North and the South Sea, and between the *Terra firma*, and the ſtreight of *Panama* to the Eaſt, and *Florida* to the Weſt; which by the *Indians* was called **Anahuac**; that is, the Land by the Water.

It extendeth from the 15 degree of Latitude to the 26 excluſively, *i.e.* meaſuring it on the Eaſt-ſide by the Bay of *Mexico* to the North of *Panuco*; but ſix degrees leſs meaſuring it on the Weſt-ſide to the Port of *Navidad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our account by Miles, it is in bredth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spaniſh* Leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other ſide. The length hereof, from the Eaſt point of *Jucatan*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 40 leagues; which is juſt double to the bredth.

The Air exceeding temperate, though ſituate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*, the heats thereof much qualified by thoſe cooling Blaſts which fan it from the Sea on three ſides of it; and by thoſe frequent Showers which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the hotteſt ſeaſons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhauſtible Mines of Gold and Silver, ſome of Braſs and Iron, plenty of *Coco*-Nuts, of which we have ſpoken before; great ſtore of *Caſſia*; ſuch a wonderful increaſe of *Cochineel*, that 5670 Arrobas of it (each Arroba containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure) have been ſhipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Cochineel* groweth on a ſmall Tree or ſhrub having very thick Leaves, which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the Seed whereof ariſeth a ſmall Worm, at firſt no bigger than a Flea, and the greateſt not much bigger than our common Lady-Cows, which they much reſemble; which feeding on the Leaves, and over-ſpreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the Natives twice a year, ſtifled with Aſhes, or with Water, (but this laſt the beſt) dried to a powder in the ſhade, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. Here is alſo great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulſe of all ſorts, and of all ſuch Plants and Roots as we ſet in gardens for the Kitchen; Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Malacatons, Figs, and Cherries, even to ſuperfluity; Apples and Pears in leſs abundance; few Grapes, and thoſe few they have, not fit for Wine; plenty of *Maize*, and other Plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beaſts wild and tame of all ſorts, and of each no ſcarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but ſome in one, ſome in another, according to the conſtitution of the Soil and Air: which is ſo different in this Country, that in ſuch parts hereof as are hot and dry their Seed-time is in *April* or *May*, their harveſt in *October*; but in ſuch places of it as are low and moiſt, they ſow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harveſts in a year, and yet but one. This Kingdom had Kings of its own, from the year 1322 to 1520; about two years before which time, *Francis Cortez*, a *Spaniard*, entred this Kingdom with 11 Ships and 550 Men; by help of which, he Sack'd the Town of *Pontonchon*, and defeated by his Cannon and Horſe 40000 naked *Indians*, who came to revenge this Injury; by which he got ſuch Footing in that Kingdom, that in the year 1531 he took the City of *Mexico*, *Auguſt* the 13th, and put an end to this *Indian* Empire.

The People more ingenious than the reſt of the Savages, exquiſite at ſome Mechanick Arts, eſpecially in the making of their Feather-Pictures; and ſo induſtrious withal, ſo patient both of Thirſt and Hunger, that they will ſet at it an whole day without meat or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way to ſee in which poſture it will beſt fit the place intended to it. No better Goldſmiths in the World, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals; curious in painting upon Cotten whatſoever was preſented to the Eye. But yet ſo barbarous withal, that they thought the Gods were pleaſed with the blood of men, which ſometimes they ſacrificed unto them. So ignorant, that when they firſt ſaw the *Spaniards* on Horſe-back, they thought the Horſe and Man to have been one Creature; and would ask what the Horſes ſaid, when they heard them neigh. So careleſs of the worth of Gold, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glaſs Beads, little Bells, and ſuch petit Trifles. But whatſoever they once were, is not now material: The *Spaniards* having made ſuch havock of this wretched People, that in 17 years they deſtroyed above ſix millions of them, roaſting ſome, plucking out the Eyes of others, conſuming them in their Mines, and mercileſly caſting them amongſt wild Beaſts, where they were devoured. As for thoſe who do remain, beſides their own natural ingenioſities, they have ſince learned the Civilities and Arts of *Europe*. What elſe concerns this Soil and People, we ſhall ſhew more particularly, if we find it neceſſary in their proper places.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Country, (though there be many Plants in it of a ſingular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Metl*, ſaid to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dreſs, as we do our Vines. It hath in it 40 kind of leaves fit for ſeveral uſes. For when they be tender, they make of them Conſerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoes, Girdles, and Cordage: upon them there grow certain Prickles ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that the People uſe them inſtead of Saws. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juice like Syrup; which, if you ſeeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar: they may make alſo Wine and Vinegar of it. The Bark of it roaſted maketh a good Plaiſter for Hurts and Sores; and from the higheſt of the Boughs comes a kind of Gum; which is a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poyſons.

Nor is it a leſs Rarity, though leſs uſeful to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the Fires of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country called *Propocampeche*, (ſituate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Ætna*: and another in the Province of *Gauxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of red Pitch, and the other of black; a fit reſemblance of thoſe Fountains of Fire and Brimſtone. Though they have many other Mountains yet theſe are moſt Memorable. The *Vulcano's* diſperſed here and there on the Globes of the Earth, are of great uſe to Mankind, becauſe they ſpend and vent thoſe fiery Vapours and Exhalations; which gathering in the Cavern's below, are the cauſe of Earthquakes; and but theſe Vents, would be much more frequent and deſtructive than now they are. And of this we have had both ancient and late Examples in the Countries that are better known to us. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watery Commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length or greatneſs, but Panuco only, of which more preſently. The want thereof ſupplied by ſome famous Lakes, and the Neighbourhood of the Gulf of *Mexico*. Amongſt the Lake, the principal are thoſe of *Mexico*, (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatneſs hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greateſt beauty in the Gulf of *Mexico*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of the World: in form compleatly Circular, in compaſs no leſs then 9000 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninſula's* of *Florida* and *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*. Two only paſſages in and out: the one betwixt the point of *Jucutan* and the Iſle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent Current entreth; the other betwixt the ſaid Iſland and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an Exit: the Sea ſo beady in the midſt, and yet ſafe enough that Ships are not to ſail in it directly forwards, but muſt bend either towards the North or South, as their Journey lieth. Upon this Gulf the King of *Spain* hath always ſome Ships in readineſs, by which he more aſſureth his Eſtates in this part of *America*, than by all his Garriſons. As indeed without a Fleet of Ships, it is utterly impoſſible to guard theſe Paſſes; they being about 40 Engliſh Leagues broad, nor perhaps with a Fleet, becauſe the Current both in and out is ſo Rapid; ſo that few *Buccaneers* of late times have been able to confute all the pretended ſtrength of theſe Paſſes; and to ſhew all that will venture at it, may paſs there without reſtraint: But it is here as in the *Ocean*, the ſlow Sailer, and weaker Fleet muſt yield to the ſtronger. The *Spaniſh* Ships when ſuch attack; when otherwiſe are in their turn forced to retreat. This weakneſs of the *Spaniards* in the *Bay* of *Mexico*, is grown upon them ſince the Author wrote; and therefore is not ſo much to to be attributed to him as a fault, as to the change of the times. The Reader may by the way obſerve, he Divides this great Boſome of the Ocean, encompaſſed to the Eaſt with Iſlands; and to the South, Weſt, and North, with the Continent of *America* into two great Gulfs or Bays, That of *Mexico* to the North; and that of *Hondura* to the South; called alſo by the *Spaniards*, *Mar del Nora*; in which lieth *Jamaica*, now in a great degree the Miſtreſs of it.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mechuacan*, 3. *Mexicana*, 4. *Tlaſcala*, 5. *Guaxaca*, 6. *Jucutan*. Some others of leſs note but reduced to theſe.

1. *PANUCO*, the moſt Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by ſome called *Guaſtecan*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the Weſt with *Uxitapa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in new *Gallicia*; on the North with *Florida* and ſome Countries not yet diſcovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the South-weſt, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which riſing out of the Hills of *Tepecſuan*, bordering upon *Cinaloa* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biſcay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, paſſeth through the middle of this Country, and ſo at laſt into the Gulf.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 Leagues, and the bredth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitful Soil, and not without ſome Mines of Gold; once very populous till in the year 1522, diſpeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War againſt them. The other called *Chila*, leſs fruitful, but poſſibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a ſtout couragious nature, and truſting overmuch to their Fens and Faſtneſſes, they put the *Spaniards* to ſuch trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerors, to ſecure themſelves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out, and deſtroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palms*, inclined to barrenneſs, and unpleaſant, but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither. 1. *Las Caxas*; 2. *Ixicuyan*; 3. *Nachapatan*, 4. *Taquinite*;

quinite, 5. *Tuzeteca*, deſolate and laid waſte by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of moſt note now. 6. *Tanebipa*, and 7. *Tameclipa*, two ſmall Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palms*, (for ſo I call it) inhabited by the Natives only. 8. *S. Kallap*, another ſmall Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few Chriſtians with a Convent of *Auguſtinian* Friers: ſacked by the Savages in the year 1571. 9. *Tampice*, or *S. Lewis de Tampice*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* ſituate on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but ſo barred with Sands, that no Ship of great burthen can make uſe of it: the River otherwiſe ſo deep that Veſſels of 500 Tun might ſail 60 Leagues at leaſt in it againſt the Stream. 10 *S Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern ſide of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65 Leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight Leagues; now the Metropolis, and Town of greateſt Trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had ſtood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him deſtroyed. Oppoſite hereunto, on the other ſide of the River lie great ſtore of Salt-Pits, out of which the people of this Town raiſe their greateſt profit. In the year 1572. it had but Ten Chriſtian Inhabitants, and one Prieſt; and was much oppreſſed by the moſt Numerous *Indians*. 11. *S. Jago de los Valles*, or *S. James* in the Vallies, 25 Leagues Weſtward (but inclining to the South withal) from *S. Stevan del Puerto*; ſituate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: To the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards*, as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair poſſeſſions, to defend thoſe parts (then being the borders of his Eſtates) againſt the Savages.

This Country firſt attempted by *Franciſco Garaio*, but the Conqueſt of it finiſhed by *Cortez*, as before is ſaid: each ſtriving, as it ſeemeth, who ſhould moſt deface it, and be enrolled for the greateſt Man-ſlayer of the two. But having carried on the courſe of their Victories almoſt as far as to the River of *Palms*, they deſiſted there; either becauſe already glutted with humane Blood, or that the conqueſt of thoſe parts would not quit the charge. Inſomuch as in all that Country, from the River of *Palms* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the Gulf of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of ground ſecure enough, becauſe it lieth all along that Gulf, that no other Nation can poſſeſs it. How much ſoever of Probability this might ſeem to *Engliſh* men to have, when this Author Wrote, *viz.* 1630. yet ſince that by the great Trade and perpetual Navigation which we have to *Jamaica* and *Barbadoes*, it is known now, that the *Spaniards* cannot hinder the ſetting of *Colonies* upon the Coaſt of *Florida*: as I believe, it is not their Intereſt to do it: And we are already poſſeſſed of the right of the Countries, out of which theſe Rivers ariſe to 29 degrees of Latitude; which will alſo include the falls of a great many of them, as parts of *Carolina*.

2. *MECHOACHAN* hath on the North-Eaſt *Panuco*; on the Eaſt, *Mexicana*, on the South part of *Tlaſcala*; on the weſt, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xaliſco* in *New Gallicia*. So called from the abundance of Fiſh, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language ſignifying *Locum Piſcoſum*, or a Country of Fiſh.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coaſt is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana* but ſixty only. The length I find not yet agreed on. Bleſt with an Air ſo ſound and ſweet, that ſick Folks come hither out of other Countries to recover their Health. Well ſtored with Rivers, ſome Lakes, innumerable Springs of Running Water, and here and there ſome hot Baths iſſuing from the Rocks. The Soil ſo plentifully productive of all ſorts of Grain, (even to admiration) that in ſome parts hereof four meaſures of Seed have brought forth 600 meaſures of the ſame Grain in the following Harveſt. Well wooded, and by reaſon of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Paſtures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America* for Medicinal Herbs and Plants, of every ſoveraign nature for the Good of Mankind. It affordeth alſo ſtore of Amber, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and ſuch other things as chiefly ſerve for Pomp and Pleaſure.

The People tall of Stature, but ſtrong and active; of a good Wit, and skilled in many excellent Manufactures. They ſpeak four Languages of their own, but that moſt generally uſed is by the *Spaniards* called the *Taraſcuan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet moſt of them ſpeak the *Spaniſh* alſo. More pliant to the Manners and Apparel of that Nation, than the reſt of *New Spain*, (the *Mexicans* excepted only;) and ſo inclinable to the Goſpel, that they are almoſt all gained from their old Idolatries. Inſomuch that the whole Country being divided into fifty Pariſhes, every Pariſh hath its ſeveral Prieſts and inferiour Miniſters, who in the Language of the place, do inſtruct the people in which they preach to them, and hear their Confeſſions; beſides many Convents of *Dominicans* and of *Auguſtine* Friers.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns or Burroughs, beſides ſcattering Villages; ninety of which have Free Schools in them, and almoſt every one a Spittle for relief of the Sick. The Principal thereof, 1. *Zinzoutza*, the Seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the firſt Times of Chriſtianity in this Country made a Biſhop's See, till removed to *Paſcuar*. The firſt Biſhop *Vaſquez de Quiroga*, 2. *Paſcuar*, of no great note at preſent, but that the Biſhops See was removed thither becauſe nearer to *Mexico*; from which diſtant 47 Leagues. 3. *Valladolid*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Biſhop's See, removed hither from *Paſcuar*, and here finally ſetled in a Fair Cathedral, *Anno* 1544. ſituate near a large Lake, (ſaid to be bigger than that of *Mexico*) which doth not only afford the City great ſtore of Fiſh, but yieldeth them the opportunity of ſeveral pleaſures, which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. The Fiſh that is taken here, is ſold to the Provinces near the Lake, to the great enriching the Inhabitants. *Laet.* p.268. 4. *S. Michael*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which diſtant about 40 Leagues) to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*. Firſt built by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the People of this Province from the *Chichimechas*, a barbarous and hitherto an unconquered People, who terribly moleſt the Nations upon whom they border. 5. *S. Philips*, built at the ſame time by the ſaid *Velaſco*. 6. *Conception de Saylaa*, 17 Leagues from *Valladolid*, 35 from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, *Anno* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers in their Journeys Northwards. 7. *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from *S. Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea we have, 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Gallicia*, two miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 Houſes, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and ſafe Road for Shipping, (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it ſeldom without the company of Sailers. 9. *Natividad* (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly ſet ſail to the *Philippine* Iſlands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendiſh* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10. *S. Jago*, (or *S. Jago de Buena Speranza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the Shores whereof are ſaid to be full of Pearls. 11. *Colima*, ten Leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other; built in the year 1522. by *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatula*, by the *Spaniards* called *Conception*; ſituate on the Banks of a large (but nameleſs) River, which riſing about the City of *Tlaſcala*, paſſeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards*, hither was a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject nor ſubordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were moſt of the Princes of theſe parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with Stakes of Wood like a Palizado, to hinder any ſudden Incurſion of the *Mexican* Forces. The laſt King, called *Tangayvan Bimbyeha*, ſubmitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, *Anno* 1522. and willingly offered himſelf to Baptiſm. But the *Spaniards* were not pleaſed with either, becauſe deprived thereby of the ſpoil of the Country. But at laſt, *Nonnez de Guzman*, then Preſident of the Courts of Juſtice in *Mexico*, picked a Quarrel with him, accuſed him falſly (as is ſaid by the very *Spaniards*) of ſome practiſes againſt his King, burnt him alive with moſt barbarous and unheard-of Cruelty, and ſo confiſcated his Eſtate.

3. *MEXICANA* is bound on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*, and ſome part of *Nova Gallicia*; on the South, with *Tlaſcala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the Chief City, not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in bredth from North to South, meaſuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower, in the midland parts hardly above ſixty; and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur* not above ſeventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other; that is to ſay, from the Point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantln*, on the Gulf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulca* on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of Miles I do no where find. But meaſuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 22, and allowing ſomething for the ſlope, we may conclude it to be much of the ſame length as it is in bredth, that is to ſay, about one hundred and thirty Leagues.

The Country is inferiour to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of Gold and Silver, but far exceeding it both in the Mechanical and Ingenious Arts which are here Profeſſed, and in the abundance of Fruits and Cattle: of which laſt here is ſuch ſtore, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himſelf. Fiſh is here alſo in great plenty; that only which is drawn out of the Lake whereon *Mexico* ſtandeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yearly to the King's Exchequer. The People for the moſt part witty and induſtrious, full of Valour and Courage: good Handicraftsmen, if they ſtoop ſo low as to Trades and Manufactures; rich Merchants, if they give themſelves to more gainful Traffick; and hardy Souldiers, if trained up and employed in ſervice. Their Ancient Arms were Slings and Arrows; ſince the coming of the *Spaniards* practiſed on the *Harquebuſe*. In a word, what was ſaid before of *New Spain* in general, as to the Soil and People of it moſt appliable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlaſcala*. 2. *Citala*, and 3. *Mitla*, both running Eaſtward towards the Gulf. 4. *Papagaio*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair Bridge over it. 5. *Las Balſas*, of a violent Courſe and in bigneſs equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; paſſable only by a Bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very ſtrongly joyned together. 6. The River of *S. Francis*, both large and ſwift, but in ſome parts fordable. Mountains of note I find not any which require a more particular conſideration; and ſo paſs them over the more eaſily.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Mexico*, the Seat of an Archbiſhop, and of the *Spaniſh* Vice-Roy, who hath the power to make Laws and Ordinances, to give Directions, and determine Controverſies; unleſs it be in ſuch great Cauſes which are thought fit to be referr'd to the Council of *Spain*. This City was firſt ſituate in the Lakes and Iſlands, like *Venice*; every where interlaced with the pleaſant Currents of Freſh and Sea-Waters; and carrying a face of more Civil Government then any of *America*, though nothing if compared with *Europe*. The Inhabitants pretend it was built in the year 1322; but the *Spaniards* by the Current and Thread of their Story, ſay, it was built in Year 902. It was many Ages ſince, the Royal Seats of the Kings of *Mexico*, and had then a great and ſplendid Palace, called in their Tongue the **Tepac**. But the Town being *Auguſt* 13. 1521. deſtroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land on the edge of the Lake, and bordering on a large and ſpacious Plain; and made the Capital of all his Conqueſts. Streets are great ſtreight and beautiful. Its Churches Magnificent, and its publick buildings Noble. It has an *Aqueduct* three Miles long, and many Monaſteries. *John de Turre Cremata*, our Country Man Mr. *Gage*, and ſome others, have given large Accounts of this Noble City, which is the greateſt in *America*. It has no Walls, Forts, Baſtions, nor any Cannon, or defence whatſoever, but what the number of its Inhabitants afford, which is a part of the *Spaniſh* Jealouſie, for fear a *Vice-roy* ſhould ſet up for himſelf. In the Year 1527. *Pope Clement* the VII. made it a Biſhops See. In the Year 1547 *Paul* the III. made it an Arch-Biſhops See; in which Year *Cortez* the Conqueror of it Di'd. In 1551 it was made a Univerſity by *Charles* the V. The Plain on which it bordereth is ſaid to be 70 Leagues in compaſs, environed with high Hills, on the tops whereof the Snow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great Lakes, the leaſt of them forty miles in circuit, the one ſalt, and the other freſh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the ſalt Lake ſtandeth the City of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns and ſtately Houſes: on which Lake alſo 5000 Whearies are continually plying. The Town in compaſs is ſix miles, and containeth 6000 Houſes of *Spaniards*, and 60000 *Indians*. It is a by-word, That at *Mexico* there are four fair things; *viz.* The Women, the Apparel, the Houſes, and the Streets. Here is alſo a Printing-Houſe, an Univerſity, and a Mint, the Cathedral Church, Ten Convents of Nuns, ſeveral Houſes of *Jeſuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Orders; ſome Colledges, many Spittles and Hoſpitals, and other publick buildings of great ſtate and beauty. By the Natives it was ancienly call'd *Temiſtitan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occaſion, of which more hereafter. Moſt miſerably endammaged by the breaking in of the Waters, *September* the 21. *Anno* 1629. which ſwelled ſo high, that they not only overwhelmed the meaner Houſes, but the Vice-Roy's Palace; drowned many thouſands of the People, and deſtroyed the Houſhold-ſtuff of the reſt. Occaſioned by the Avarice of the Kings Miniſters, who had inverted the Money to their private uſe, which ſhould have fortified the Banks. But being a rich and wealthy City it ſoon recovered of that Blow, attained in ſhort time to ſuch infinite Riches, that generally the Merchants, Trades-Men and Artificers, do brave it in a greater State and more ſplendid Equipage than any People under Heaven of the like condition. In the Year 1555. *Thompſon*, an *Engliſh* Man, eſtimated the Inhabitants that were *Spaniards* at 1500 Families; but the *Indians* in the Surburbs were then thought to be above 300000 Souls. It is ſeated 65 Leagues from the North Sea, and 75 from the South Sea. It was then increaſing, being ſeated in a temperate Air, and a Fruitful Soil, and abounding with all things needful to the Life of Man, at cheap rates. *Hackluit*, *To.* 3. p. 454. In 1572 the Families were eſtimated at 50000; about 6000 of which were *Spaniards*. *ib.* 463. It is very ſubject to Earthquakes, well Watered, and enjoying plenty of all things. There is no way to the City bnt over three Cauſeways on the North, Weſt, and South ſides, the latter of which is the longeſt. There are alſo two Lakes of Water, called by the name of this City; one of which is freſh water, and Seven Leagues long, and Six broad; the other is ſalt Water, and is 40 Leagues in Compaſs.

When *Cortez* rebuilt this City, there were 100000 Houſes rebuilt moſtly by the *Indians*, in the latter end of the former Century, there were 4000 *Spaniſh* Inhabitants, and 30000 *Indians*; but in the Year 1625, the *Spaniards* were eſtimated at, between 30 and 40000, and the *Indians* are ſo conſumed by hard uſage, and the work of the Lake, that they were not thought above 2000 mere *Indians*, and 1000 *Mectizos*. It is the greateſt and one of the richeſt Cities in the World; enjoying a vaſt Trade on the South Sea to *China*; and the Eaſt *Indies*, and on the *Atlantick* to *Europe*, but then it is the weakeſt, all Arms are forgotten, and the *Spaniards* live ſo ſecurely, that there is neither Gate, nor Wall, Bulwark, Platform, Tower, Armory, Ammonition, or Ordnance, to ſecure it from a Domeſtick or a Forreign Eenemy, but they rely on the Protection of St. *John de Ulbuack* their Patron St. for all, as Mr. *Gage* aſſureth us who ſaw it. It has however about 15000 Coaches for Pleaſure, and a Magazine of Wealth, that will both tempt a Conquerour and reward him too. 2 *Tezcuco*, ſituate on the ſame Lake, but ſix Leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*; and for the beauty of the Streets, and elegancy of the Houſes, not inferiour to any. Served with freſh Water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and Conduits, though ſeated on the brink of a ſalt Lake 3 *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the Lake, like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuella*; a City of 2000 Houſholds: the way unto it over a Cauſey made of Flints, half a League long, and about twenty Spans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the Lake, and half without, with many Ponds of freſh Water, and a beautiful Fountain. A City of 10000 Houſholds, ſix Leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5. *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000, and 6. *Cuyocan*, one of 6000 Families; both upon the Lake: beautified in the Times of their Paganiſm with many Temples, ſo gorgeouſly ſet out to the Eye, that a far off they ſeemed of Silver; moſt of them now converted into Monaſteries and Religious Houſes. 7. *Chulula*, the faireſt of all the Lake, ſcarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for ſtate and bigneſs: ſaid to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with ſo many Temples, that their Turrets equalled the number of the days of the year. The People ſo addicted unto their Idolatries & ſo barbarous in their bloody and beaſtly Sacrifices, that no fewer then 6000 Infants of both Sexes were yearly murthered on their Altars. 8. *Meſtitland*, ſeated on an high Hill, begirt about with moſt pleaſant Groves and ſhady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in; ſituate 14 Leagues or two days Journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*, the Highway on both ſides ſet with fruitful Trees, to the great comfort and refreſhment of the way-faring Men. 9. *Clantinoleper*, twenty Leagues from *Meſtitlan*, a Mannor to which 40000 of the Natives do owe Suit and Service. 10. *Antepeque*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marqueſs of *Valla*, and ſeated in the moſt delicious place of all *New-Spain*. 11. *Acachicha*, on the North-eaſt of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the Gulf, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12 *Acapulco*, an Haven-Town of the South-ſea, ſituate on a ſafe & capacious Bay, at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient Stations & Docks for Shipping: ſo that it is accounted the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas. At the bottom of it towards the Weſt ſtands the Town and Caſtle, the Caſtle opportunely ſeated on a little Foreland, both to command the Town and ſecure the Port: well walled, and fortified with four very ſtrong bulwarks, on which are planted good ſtore of Ordnance; the Garriſons conſiſting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: ſtrengthned the rather in regard of the uſual intercourſe which is betwixt this Port and the *Phillippine* Iſlands. When an *Engliſh* Man Travelled this Road in 1603. the Town was not great. The *Dutch* entered this Port in 1615. 1624. and forced the *Spaniards* to a Compoſition, *Laet*.

The original Inhabitants of this Country (as far at leaſt as their Records are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the moſt rude and barbarous Savages of theſe parts, together with the *Ottomies*, ſomewhat more civil than the reſt, but yet rude enough. By theſe poſſeſſed till about the year 902, as it is conjectured from their Annals, when vanquiſhed and diſſeized by ſome new Comers, whom they called by one Name *Navatlacos*: iſſuing, as it is conceived, from thoſe parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, *Anno* 720, or thereabouts, but lingring in their March, and waſting all the Countries as they lay before them. Of theſe there were ſeven Tribes in all, *i. e.* the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalcæ*, the *Tepanecæ*, the *Culvæ*, the *Tlaſluici*, the *Tlaſcalcetæ*; all of them ſetled in theſe parts, and the five firſt about the Lake, before the coming in of the ſeventh Tribe, which was that of the *Mexicans*, ſo called from *Mexi*, their chief Captain; who much delighted with the ſituation and conveniencies of *Temiſtian*, then a ruined Town, cauſed it to be re-built, and beautified by the name of *Mexico*. This Town from that time forwards was reputed the Head City of their Common-wealth; the ſix Tribes governing in common, or the Chiefs rather of thoſe Tribes in the names of the whole, after an Ariſtocratical manner. But weary at the laſt of this equal power, which the prevalency of ſome Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans* one of the weakeſt of the Tribes, oppreſſed by the reſt, reſolved to ſeparate themſelves, and to commit the ordering of their Affairs to a King of their own at firſt elected by themſelves, but afterwards, when once they had conquered moſt of the other Tribes, the choice was entruſted unto ſix, one for every Tribe, (the *Tlaſcaltceæ*, which was the ſeventh of their Tribes, and the Founders of *Tlaſcala*, governing themſelves long before as a State apart: Who in their choice had an eſpecial eye on thoſe which were ſtrong and active, and fit for Military imployments; the People holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their King, if once they were reputed Cowards. The Polity and Inſtitutes of this *Mexican* Kingdom I forbear to write of, farther then as they lie before me in way of their Story, digeſted by the Government and ſucceſſion of their ſeveral Kings, whoſe names and actions do occur in the following Catalogue of

A. Ch.	The Kings of *MEXICO*.
1322	1. *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the Kings of *Couliacan*, but of the *Mexican* blood by the Fathers ſide, elected for the firſt King; who joyned *Couliacan* and *Tongancam* unto his Eſtate, and ſetled that Kingdom at his death in the way of election.
1373	2. *Vizovitzli*, Son of *Acamapitzli*, ſubdued the Tribe of the *Suchimilchi*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.
1394	3. *Huizilibuiel*, Son of *Vizovitzli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalcæ* and *Culvæ*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.
1415	4. *Chimalpupuca*, Son of *Huizilibuiel*, won the Town of *Tequixſuiac*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalcæ* under his Command.
1425	5. *Iſchoalt*, Brother of *Huizilibuiel*, by the Valour of his Couſin *Tlacaellec*, freed himſelf from the yoke of the *Tepanecæ*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before that been Tributaries, and added their Dominions unto his Eſtate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whoſe death the Electors by a joynt conſent choſe *Tlacaellec* for their King

King, as a man of whoſe Vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refuſed it, ſaying, that it was more convenient for the Common wealth that another ſhould be King, and that he ſhould execute that which was for the neceſſity of the State, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the Publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refuſal they made choice of *Motecuma* the firſt.

1438 6. *Motecuma*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpupuca*, brought in the Cuſtom of uſing no other Sacrifices at their Coronations, but of ſuch Priſoners as the new King ſhould firſt take in the Wars. By the Valour and good Fortune of *Tlacaellec* he ſubdued ſo many of the Nations (whoſe names I hold unneceſſary to be here repeated) that he extended his Eſtate from one Sea to the other.

1467 7. *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Iſchoalt* by his Son *Tecozomoeliqueto*, enlarged his Empire by the Conqueſt of *Tetentepeque* 200 miles from *Mexico*, to fit himſelf with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlatelulco*, who rebelled againſt him, to ſo hard a ſtreight, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.

1479 8. *Ticoicatzi*, the Son of *Axayacaci*, added twelve Cities with their Territories to the *Mexican* Empire.

1484 9. *Abuczozin*, Brother of *Ticoicatzi*, extended his borders to *Guatimala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*, and brought thither a Channel of freſh Water.

1502 10. *Motecuma* II. Son of *Axayacaci*, before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no Plebeian ſhould bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was ſubdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* ſtand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medeline*, a Town of *Eſtremadura*, 1485. and in the nineteenth year of his Age imployed himſelf in the Trade and buſineſs of *America*; for the improvement of his Fortunes, *Anno* 1511. he went as Clerk unto the Treaſurer for the Iſle of *Cuba*; where he husbanded his affairs ſo well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in ſhort time he was able to put in 2000 *Caſtellans* for his ſtock, as Partner with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be a Partner with *James Valeſques*, in the Diſcovery of *Tabaſco* and the parts near *Jucutan*, *Anno* 1518. And now reſolved to venture all his ſtock both of Friends and Money, he furniſhed himſelf with eleven Ships, and with 550 Men, ſet ſail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Iſland of *Acuſamil*, (now called *Sancta Crux*) and ſailing up the River of *Tabaſco*, ſacked the Town of *Pontonchon*, the Inhabitants refuſing to ſell him Victuals. After this by the help of his Horſe and Ordnance, he diſcomfited 40000 of the naked Savages, gathered together to revenge themſelves for the ſack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vaſſallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Weſtward he ſhould meet with ſome Mines of Gold, he turned his courſe for the Haven of S. *John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*: who underſtanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of ſo great an Emperour, (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by ſpecial Meſſengers) ſent him many rich Preſents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the ſight hereof, he reſolved to go unto the place where ſuch Treaſures were, took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fifth King of *Spain* and Emperour, and building there the Town *de la Vera Crux*, left in it a 150 of his men. Attended by no more than 400 Foot, 15 Horſe, and ſix pieces of Ordnance, he purſued his Enterpriſe; by practice gained unto him thoſe of *Zempoallan* and *Tlaſcala*; whom he underſtood to be ill-affected to *Motecuma*: aſſiſted with whoſe Forces he paſſed on for *Mexico*, ſacked the Town of *Cholollа* (a Town of 40000 Houſholds) in his March: kindly received into *Mexico* by the frighted King, whom he cauſed to acknowledge himſelf a Vaſſal to *Spain*, and to preſent him, in the name of a Tribute, with ſo much Treaſure as amounted to 160000 Caſtellans of Gold. A Quarrel growing not long after, *Motecuma*, the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult; and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of *Tlaſcalans*, and a Recruit of more *Spaniards* (ſent thither on a Deſign againſt him) he made up an Army of 100000 Savages, 900 *Spaniſh* Foot, 80 Horſe, 17 pieces of Ordnance; and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 13 Galliots, and 6000 Canoes or Boats, laid ſiege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three months, the City is taken ſacked and burnt *Auguſt* 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hand of the *Spaniards*, by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private Adventure; endowed for that good ſervice by *Charles* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Tecoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair Eſtates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the Title of Marqueſs of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are ſaid to have worn a Crown reſembling that which is now uſed by the Dukes of *Venice*. His Coronation was held with great Pomp, but moſt bloody Sacrifices. His Revenues thought to be almoſt infinite, raiſed out of all Commodities, and paid in kind, whether Natural, or Artificial only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens Labour, and ſharing with them in their wealth: ſome paying in Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls apiece; ſome Diadems, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turquois*-ſtones, Golden Targets, rich Feather-Pictures, &c. not to ſay any thing of matters of inferiour value. All which in ſuch a wealthy and large Eſtate, muſt needs afford him a Revenue equal to the greateſt Monarch. And for the encouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of Knighthood, (or at leaſt ſuch diſtinctions of perſonal merit as had reſemblance to ſuch orders:) the firſt diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Riband*, the ſecond called the *Lion* or *Tiger Knight*, and the third the *Grey Knight*: all priviledged amongſt other things to be cloathed in Cotton, wear Breeches, to adorn themſelves with Gold and Silver, and to have Veſſals gilt or painted; high points, and not permitted unto any elſe. But it is time that I proceed to the reſt of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred leagues; the breadth along the Shores of the Gulf reckoned 80 Leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of Maize which they make their Bread of; the word in that Language ſignifying *Locum Panis*, or the Place of Bread, the ſame with *Bethleham* in the *Hebrew*.

The Country is very plentiful both of Corn and Cattel, full of rich Paſtures, and wonderfully ſtored with Maize; Level and Plain, except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large Chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for thoſe fair and pleaſant Rivers wherewith it is watered. The principal of which, 1. *Ri de Grijalva*, ſo called from *John de Grijalva*, who firſt diſcovered it; imployed herein by *James Valaſques*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempoal*, ſo called from the Town of *Zempoallan*, about which it riſeth. 3. *Zabuate*, which makes it way through the Chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the Gulf. 4. *Rio di Zacatula*, a River of the longeſt courſe in all this Province; riſing near *Tlaſcala*, and falling many leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The people much of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mexico*, though upon jealouſies of State their moſt bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good uſe to advance their Conqueſts on that Kingdom.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Tlaſcala* it ſelf, which gave name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a Common-wealth, according to the Democratical Models. Situate in a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, and in the middle of a large, but pleaſant Plain, 60 miles in compaſs. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants, now ſcarce 50000. It had four Streets, (or rather Quarters) each of them governed by a Captain in time of War: and in the midſt a Market place ſo fair and ſpacious, that 30000 perſons might aſſemble in it to buy and ſell, or for any other buſineſs. The Inhabitants of this City, being the ancient Enemies of the *Mexicans*, joyned with *Cortez*, and enabled him to take *Mexico*, and he obtained from *Charles* the V. that they ſhould never pay any Tribute, except to the King of *Spain*; which was a Sheaf of Wheat for every Perſon, which amounteth to above 13000 Buſhels the Year. The *Spaniards* have fixed here a Biſhops See, and extended the bounds of the Dioceſs from Sea to Sea 100 Leagues. This City is a very great Mart of Cattle, Cochineel, and all *Indian* and *Spaniſh* Merchandiſe. But the Biſhops See in the year 1550, was removed to *Puebla de los Angelos*. 2. *Pueblos de los Angelos*, (the City of Angels) but moſt commonly *Angelos*: built by *Sebaſtian Remirez*, Anno 1531. in the way from *Vera Crux* to the City of *Mexico*, from which laſt 22 leagues diſtant. A Biſhop's See, and thought to contain in it 1500 Families, in 1555. it conſiſted of about 600 *Spaniſh* Families, being ſeated in a pleaſant and a fruitful Soile. 5. *Hackluit To.* 3. *p.* 453. In 1568. it had 1000 *Spaniſh* Inhabitants. This City was built by the *Spaniards* after the Conqueſt of *New-Spain*, *ib.* 456. It lies four Leagues North from *Taxala*. *ib.* 3. *Zempoallan*, on the River ſo named, the Inhabitants whereof did great ſervice to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his Conqueſt of *Mexico*. 4. *Napuluca*, of great reſort for a Fair of Cattle; and ſuch a kind of Court for ordering the Trade thereof, as we call the *Pie powders*. 5. *Guaxocingo*, a pleaſant and well-peopled Town, ſituate at the foot of the burning Mountain, before mentioned, by the aſhes and embers whereof the Fields are many times annoyed. 6. *Segura*, or *Segula de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the Conqueſt of *Mexico*, with fair ſtreets and handſom Houſes; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. This Town lies in the Road from *Vera Cruz* to *Mexico*; conſiſting of about 2000 Inhabitants; part *Spaniards*, part *Indians*. It was called before *Tepeacac*. The Inhabitants being all ſlain by *Cortez*, for Sacrificing Twelve of his Men, and eating their Fleſh. It is plenitfully ſupplied with all neceſſaries and yields plenty of Grapes; but the *Spaniards* will ſuffer no Wine to be made, to keep the *Indians* in ſubjection to *Spain*, *Gage*. *Laet.* placeth it *Lat.* 11. 48. 7. *Vera Crux*, the firſt Town built in this Country by the ſaid *Cortez*, now a Biſhops See: ſituate near unto the Gulf, and a great Thorough-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which it is diſtant about 60 Leagues. Seated upon a Plain, and waſhed on the South by a River, on the Eaſt by the Sea. In 1555. it had about 300. Families, and was only uſed as a Store-houſe, for the Goods paſſing to and fro between *Mexico* and *Spain*. The Air being very unwholeſom, and ſubject to burning Agues, and other Diſtempers, ſo that many of the Seamen died here. *Hackluit T.* 3. *p.* 453. *Vera Cruz*, is the ſame with *Villa Rica* 16. *p.* 455. It is only Inhabited from the end of *Auguſt* to the beginning of *April*, for the diſcharging and loading of the Goods; and then all the Merchants retire to *Xalapa*, or ſome other more healthful place, ſo that none of that Nation are delivered in the Town. This has kept it ſmall and poor, though the greateſt Wealth paſſes through it of any place in the World, *Ibid.* 456. 8. S. *John de Ulloa*, the moſt noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer againſt the fury both of Winds and Sea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quick-ſands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both ſides of the entrance. This lyes in the Gulf of *Mexico* in the North *Lat.* of 18. 30. in a ſmall Iſland, but in an unwholeſom Air. The entrance of the Harbour is by three Channels; the beſt of which lyeth to the North. This Harbour is the beſt they have, but very much expoſed to the violence of the North Wind, ſo that many Ships periſh in it. The *Spaniards* had here no Defence, till *John Hawkins* an *Engliſh* Captain took it, upon which in 1572 they built a ſtrong Fort here to preſerve the Town. Five Leagues from the North lyes *Vera Cruz*, *Hackluit T.* 2. *p.* 462. 9. *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, Ann. 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: ſo called in memory of a Town of the ſame name in *Eſtremadura*, in which he was born: ſituate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlaſcalans* were originally one of the ſeven Tribes which drave the *Chichimeca's* out of their poſſeſſions: and either finding no room left for them on the banks of the Lake, or elſe willing to ſubſiſt alone, withdrew themſelves from the reſt, founded the City of *Tlaſcala*, and there erected a Democratical Eſtate. Stomached for this by the other Tribes, and many times invaded by thoſe of *Mexico*, after they had ſubdu'd the reſt, they ſtill maintained themſelves againſt all Attempts; and in the end aſſiſted *Cortez* in the deſtruction of that Kingdom they ſo deadly hated. Priviledged for that reaſon by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of Tribute, (except it be a Sheaf of Wheat for every perſon) and ſuffered to live under his Protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, is ſaid to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 15000 of the Natives, beſides *Spaniſh* Colonies, diſtributed into 36 Claſſes or Rural Deanries for Eccleſiaſtical Government, in which are thought to be 30 Convents and Religious Houſes.

5. GUAXACA, is bounded on the Weſt with *Tlaſcala*, on the Eaſt with *Jucutan* and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*. Extended on the South-ſea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to 50 only: in bredth from Sea to Sea, where it bordereth on *Tlaſcala*; 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca*, once the Chief Town of theſe parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof is very ſound and ſweet, and the Soil as fruitful; plentiful not only of thoſe Commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country, but of ſuch quantities of Silks, and ſtore of Mulberries, that if the Natives paid their Tithes as the *Spaniards* do, that very Revenue, would ſuffice to endow five Biſhopricks, as good as that which they have already. Scarce any River of this Country but hath Sands of Gold: ſuch plenty of *Cochineel*, (a rich Grain uſed in dying Scarlets, of which before) as alſo of *Caſſia*, Gold, Silver, and other Metals; that if the People did but add ſome induſtry to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richeſt men in all *America*. But being naturally ſlothful, and impatient of labour, they loſe all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we uſe to ſay. Docile enough, and ſo indulgent unto thoſe who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 Convents of *Dominican* Friers, beſides other Schools: theſe laſt conceived the greater number.

It is ſubdivided into many particular Provinces, (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*;) as 1. *Miſteca*, 2. *Tutopeque*, 3. *Zapoteca*, 4. *Guazacoalco*, 5. *Gueztaxatla*, and the 6. *Vale of Guaxaca*, this laſt moſt memorable, in that it gave the Title of *Marqueſs de Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. It is a Biſhops See, fair and beautiful: ſeated 60 Leagues from *Mexico* to the South in a pleaſant Valley. It has no manner of Defence, but is an open Town, like the reſt of their Inland Towns. And in 1626. it had about 2000 Inhabitants. The Air is temperate; the Soile very rich; and it enjoys ſo commodious a Trade, both with the South Sea, and the *Atlantick* Ocean, by the Port of St. *John de Ulbuack*, that no City was then in a more thriving State. Mr. *Gage* who ſaw this Town in 1626. was ſo pleaſed with it, that he would fain have lived here if he might. Towns of moſt obſervation, 1. *Teozopotlan*, once the chief Town of *Zapoteca*; and the ſeat of their King. 2. *Cuortlavaca*, of great note for a Labyrinth nor far off, hewen out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3 *Antequera*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a ſtately City and beautified with a fair Cathedral; as that is with Marble pillars of great height and thickneſs. It is 80 Leagues from *Mexico*; which in 1535 was made a Biſhops See, under the Arch Biſhop of *Mexico*, by Pope *Paul* the III. It ſtands in the Road that leads from *Chiapa* to *Guatimala*, on a ſmall River that ariſeth near *Cimitlan*. Once it was inhabited by 500 *Spaniſh* Families, as *Herrexa* ſaid: but *Chilton* an *Engliſh* Man in the year 1570. found not above 50 *Spaniſh* Families, and the reſt *Indians*, *Laet. p.* 262. 4. S. *Illifonſo* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5. S. *Jago*, in the Valley of *Nexapa*, ſeated upon a lofty Hill. 6. *Del Spiritu Santo*, diſtant about three leagues from the ſhores of the Gulf, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*, Anno 1526. It was built by *Cortez*, in the year 1522. to curb the Barbarous *Indian* Nations in thoſe parts. 7 *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South Sea, much uſed by thoſe which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern Seas. By conſequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpoſe both by *Drake* and *Cavendiſh*, in their Voyages about the World. This Town lyes upon the *Mar del Zur*; and has a very good Harbour. In the year 1587. it was taken by *Tho. Cavendiſh* without reſiſtance; though it had then 100 Houſes, and burnt down to the Ground, *Lat.* 15. 40. North of the Line. It has a Church and a Cuſtom-houſe, and is one of the moſt conſiderable Towns in New *Spain*. 8. *Tacoantepeque*, a Port of the ſame Sea alſo, but of far leſs Note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to Tribute, beſides Women and Perſons under Age; not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a Demi-Iſland, is faſtened to the Continent only where it meeteth with *Guaxaca*, the fartheſt point of it oppoſite to the Iſle of *Cuba*. Diſcovered firſt by *Fernandes de Cordova*, imployed therein by *Don Chriſtopher Morante*, *Anno* 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as ſome conceit it, from *Joctan* the ſon of *Heber*, who they think came out of the Eaſt, where the Scripture placeth him, (*Gen.* 10. 30.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the Language of the Country ſignifieth, *What ſay you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither asked the name of the place, the Savages, not underſtanding what they meant, replied, *Jucutan*, that is, *What ſay you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compaſs of it, taking the Province of *Tabaſco* into the account, is ſaid to be 900 miles, or 300 Leagues. The Air hot, and the Country deſtitute of Rivers; not otherwiſe provided of Water but by Pits and Trenches, which abundantly ſupply that want. Sufficiently barren, the Soil not bearing Wheat, or any *European* Fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of Gold or Silver, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who muſt either live by Trades and Labour or elſe beg their Bread. Nothing remarkable in the Country, but that here ſeemed to be ſome remnants of Chriſtianity at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither: the people conſtantly obſerving a kind of Baptiſm, which they call in their own Language a *ſecond birth*, expreſſing by that word a Regeneration; not ſuffering any one to marry until ſo initiated. And poſſible enough it is, that this may be the Country upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by ſome good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he ſhould make any ſuch ſecond Voyage hither as is ſaid in their Chronicles, I by no means grant. There is vaſt Foundations of Stone buildings; though they have no Iron, nor any other Metals whatſoever. They never contracted Matrimony before they were Baptized, and faſted three days before admitted to it: but they had nothing of Chriſtianity beſides this Ceremony, without any Form of words; ſo that it was nothing but a ſhadow of Baptiſm. They have now a plenty of *European* Cattle brought in by the *Spaniards*. Mountains running from Eaſt to Weſt divide it into two parts, the North part is very Populous, becauſe better watered, and cold by the *Brizes*; but thoſe that live on the Mountains are moſt healthful and live longeſt.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Merida*, almoſt in the Navel of it, ſituate in the 20 degrees of Latitude, the ordinary ſeat of the Governour, and the See of a Biſhop: diſtant from the Sea on each ſide about twelve Leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have ſome reſemblance. 2. *Valladolid*, 30 Leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a moſt ſumptuous Monaſtery of *Franciſcan* Friers. 4. *Campeche*, (or *Franciſco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) ſituate on the Shore of the Gulf. A Town, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houſes, and beautified with ſuch Monuments of Art and Induſtry, as ſhewed there was ſomewhat in this People which was not barbarous: ſince that more obſervable for being ſuddenly ſurpriſed by *Parker*, an *Engliſh* Captain, *An.* 1596, who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many Priſoners; beſides a great Ship full of Gold, Silver, and other the like precious Commodities, deſigned for the King of *Spain*'s own uſe. 4. *Tabaſco*, ſituate in the beſt part of this Country, ſo different from all the reſt, that it is made by ſome a diſtinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nueſtra Sennora de la Victoria*, moſt commonly *Victoria* only; and that in memory of the firſt fortunate Victory which *Cortez* had upon this People, arming themſelves againſt him for the Sacking of *Pontonchan*. *Laet.* bounds it thus, To the Eaſt ſaith he, it hath *Tucatan*, of which it is a diſtrict, to the Weſt *Guazocoalio*; to the South the Mountains of *Chiapa*, and *Vera Paz*; and to the North the Gulf of *Mexico*; on this ſide it is 40 Leagues, and as much from North to South: but it is Triangular and not Square. The Soil is plain and Marſhy, full of Lakes and other Rivers, in which are plenty of Fiſh, and ſome very large. It has alſo great Woods. The Air is very moiſt, and ſubject for Nine Months to great and frequent Rains, which with the heat generates many Gnats and other troubleſome Inſects: but then it has plenty of Cattle, Maize, and Coco-Nuts, Vines, Figs, and Oranges, Planted here by the Natives, but brought from *Spain*, &c. The Inhabitants were very numerous, but now they are much abated. The *Spaniards* live only in *Tabaſco*, which is from *Cividad Real* 70 Leagues to the Eaſt; from *Mexico* 160. to the South Eaſt. It ſtands upon a branch of the River **Grialva** 8 Fathom deep, into which many other Rivers and Torrents do fall. 5. *Pontonchan*, ſacked by *Cortez*, for denying to ſupply him with Victuals. 6. *Salamanca*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coaſt of this Country lie many Iſlands, *viz.* 1. *La Zarza*, 2. *Deſconoſcida*, 3. *Triangulus*, 4. *Vermeia*, 5. *Los Negrillos*, 6. *Los Alacranes*; all within the Gulf. Without it, 7. *Zaratan*, 8. *Pantoia*, 9. *Lamany*, 10. *De Mucheres*, or the Iſle of Women, 11. *Cozamul*, by ſome called *Acuſamul*. This laſt the biggeſt, is 15 Leagues long, 5 broad; and the moſt remarkable, as being the uſual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their Diſcoveries of this Country from the Iſle of *Cuba*. For here firſt landed *Ferdinando de Corduba*, An. 1517. who paſſing over to *Jucutan* (but four Leagues diſtant) brought back nothing but Stripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the ſame purſuit; who paſſing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxaca*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, who coaſting about the Demi-Iſland, landed near *Tabaſco*, and there firſt handſelled his good fortune with a notable victory. Yet neither the Iſland nor *Peninſula* were diſcovered perfectly till the year 1527. when both were ſubdued by *Franciſco de Madteio* to the Crown of *Spain*. The Iſland is now called *Sancta Crux*.

The Inhabitants have two Cuſtoms, *viz.* That of Humane Sacrifices, and that of Governing themſelves in the Form of a Common wealth or Ariſtocraſie; which ſtrongly perſwade me that they are a *Phœnician* or *Carthagenian* Colony; which is in part Confirmed by their Tradition, that they are *Advene*, and Conquerours of the Province. Their Buildings, Cities, Living, every thing ſhew they are of a very different Original from the reſt of the *Americans*. And it is allſo reported ſome Books were found in their Temples, not underſtood by them, and burnt by the *Spaniards* only for that cauſe. Now though their Tranſmigration is pleaſed too near our times to be of that Nation; yet that may well have happened for want of Chronologie, and Books to preſerve the Memory of it, and keep up the true diſtance of time; the length of the time may alſo have very much changed their Language, from what it originally was. However, this may be, no man can ſhew any place on the Globe where Humane Sacrifices, and a Common-wealth has been found, (this excepted) but it is apparent, the *Phœnician* Colonies had been there, and I think no other Reaſon can be aſſigned why theſe had both contrary to the Practiſes of all the reſt of *America* but this.

OF GUATIMALA.

GUATIMALA, is bounded on the North by *Jucutan* and the *Gulf* of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, (or the South-eaſt rather) with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 Leagues in length, upon the Coaſt of *Mare del Zur*; but meaſuring by a ſtrait line, not above 240. the breadth thereof 140 leagues where broadeſt; in moſt places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the Courts of Juſtice. It yields plenty of Maize, Wheat, Cotton, and Coco-Nuts, which is their principal Merchandize. This Country was Conquered by *Petro Alvaredo* a *Spaniard* in the year 1524, *Laet. p.* 332.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from thoſe before) we will conſider in the View of thoſe ſeveral parts into which this Country is divided. The Principal whereof, 1. *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatimala*, ſpecially ſo called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Nicaragua*, 6. *Veragua*. The reſt of leſs note eaſily reduced to theſe.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the Weſt *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur* on the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much leſs in breadth; and anciently inhabited by four Nations all of ſeveral Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or Fruits, though Pot-hearbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and Lentiles; yet Vines and other richer Fruits ſeldom come to good. Wood-Vines they have, which yield a very pleaſant Pulp, and, if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their Trees moſt of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the Cypreſs; whole Woods of Walnuts, but the Nut not ſo big as thoſe of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield Roſin, ſome ſuch precious Gums as in other places are not uſual; and ſome there are whoſe leaves being dried unto a powder, afford a ſoveraign Plaiſter for exulcerate Sores. And they have need too often to make uſe of theſe Plaiſters, the Country being full of Snakes and other venomous Creatures, (ſome of the Snakes no leſs then 20 foot in length) whoſe poiſon being ſtrong and deadly, doth require ſuch help. Of the People nothing ſingular that I have met with, but that they are more muſical and exact in Painting than the reſt of the Natives.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Cividad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenſes*, at the foot of an Hill; ſituate in a round Plain, encompaſſed about with Mountains like an Ampitheatre; afterwards made a Biſhops See, and Priviledged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by ſuch City-Magiſtrates as they call *Alcaldes*. 2. *Chiapa*, in a Vale adjoyning; before the building of the others of moſt note in this Province, yet ſtill before it in regard of its ſituation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and Maize, than all the reſt of the Country. 3. *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoaques*, Poſſeſſed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monaſtery of *Dominican* Friers. 4 *Capanavatzla*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Quelenes* held in this Tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the ſame *Dominicans*. 5. S. *Bartholomews*, another Town in the Territory of the ſame *Quelenes*: near which is ſaid to be a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which if any man caſt a ſtone, though never ſo little, there preſently followeth a loud and fearful noiſe like a clap of Thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaradi* when he was Governour of theſe parts; the Chief Town of a little Province called *Soconuſco*, 7. *Caſapualca*, a ſmall Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the Fields adjoyning, the Waters whereof are noted to riſe and fall as the Ocean doth flow or ebb, and at equal diſtances of time. Of thirteen Townſhips which the

Zeltales were poſſeſſed, I find no one named ; though painted all of them, and ſet forth to the Eye of the Traveller, with *Cochineel*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon the Rarities of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though ſomewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns Wood to Stones : of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Taſixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry , of another in the ſame *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never ſo little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all ; and ſo ſucceſſively by turns : and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many leſſer ſtreams, is ſwallowed up near a Village of the *Chiapenſes*, called *Olztutan*, never after ſeen. None of them famed for Golden Sands, as are thoſe of *Guaxaca* ; though it be thought there be ſome Veins of Gold and Silver, but hitherto neglected for want of Slaves to work in the Mines.

2. *VERAPAZ*, is bounded on the Weſt with *Chiapa* ; on the Eaſt with *Guatimala* and *Hondurus* ; on the North, with *Jucutan* ; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soconuſco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Veræ Pacis*, by the *Spaniards Verapaz* ; becauſe not conquered by the Sword, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain* by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The Country is 30 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which ſo hinder the free paſſage of the Wind, and the Air hereof is very ſhowry : inſomuch that for nine months in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reaſon of this moiſture much annoyed with *Moſquits*, a kind of Gnats very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwiſe (as with Fiſh and other neceſſaries) they were well provided. It has alſo plenty of Corn and Cattle enough, but no Wheat, Reeds like Trees, and imployed as Timber in building ; Flowers, and Bees ſome of which have no Stings. No Mines of Gold or Silver diſcovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. In ſtead whereof ſome of their Trees drop a kind of Amber, which they call *Liquid Amber* , ſome *Maſtick*, and ſome other Gums : they have alſo many Medicinal Woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China-Wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and comformable to the *Spaniſh* Government, except the *Lecandones* and *Pachuteci*, ſome Remainders of the ancient Savages ; who keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto retained both their native Freedom and their old Idolatries. No Towns herein poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. They are for the moſt part Chriſtians ; and inhabit two third parts of the Country ; the reſt is left to the Barbarous Nations about them. The *Dominicans* have one Monaſtery. The Inhabitants are very poor, as wanting Cotton and ſome other things, and having little or no Trade with any of their Neighbours, *Laet*. The principal of theſe is S. *Auguſtines*, not ſo much memorable in it ſelf, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains from which the Rain deſcending turns into Alabaſter, naturally faſhioned into Pillars and other Pourtraitures, into which alſo many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body make a handſome River, able almoſt at the firſt appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they alſo have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce* : but of ſo little a uſe and trading, that I find no name for it, unleſs it ſhould be that *Yxtapa* which *Herrera* ſpeaks of, by whom it is placed in *Guatimala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Weſt with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa* ; on the Eaſt, with *Nicaragua* ; on the North, with *Hondurus* ; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacifick* Ocean. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the ſhores of *Mare del Zur* not above ſeventeen. But reckoning in *Yzalcos*, *Chaluteca*, and S. *Saviours*, three adjoyning Regions, by ſome made Provinces diſtinct, the dimenſions of it muſt be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country is Mountainous, but withal very full of Rivers, by conſequence commodious both for Fiſhing and Hunting, Fruitful of Wheat, Maize and other Proviſions, but thoſe Fruits not laſting. Not ſo much ſubject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with Winds. Full of Rich Paſtures, and thoſe Paſtures of great Herds of Cattle : good ſtore of Cotton-wool, ſome *Balſamum*, and other medicinal liquors ; alſo of the beſt Sulpher, and many Apothecaries Drugs, which I have no skill of. The People puſillanimous, and fearful, greater proficients in Chriſtianity and Civility than moſt of the Savages, but ſo that it is thought they would relapſe again to their ancient Paganiſm, and revive again their old barbarous Cuſtoms, if not held in by the bridle of Fear and the curb of Power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinſters.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a courſe but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable half the way, which falleth into the *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of S. *Saviours* ; which hath its riſe from a great Lake, and his fall into the ſame Sea alſo. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Lake near the Village of *Yſtepeque*, of the Waters whereof are made both Sulphur and Allum. And here is ſaid to be a *Volcana*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being ſpent, yet the ſad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them : another not far off which ſtill caſts out ſmoak.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Guatimala*, or S. *Jago de Guatimala*, ſo called by the *Spaniard* : the chief Town of the Province, ſituate on a little River betwixt both *Volcano's*, but one of which moſt terribly waſted, *Anno* 1541, when the Widow of *Alvaredo*, the Conquerour of it periſhed with many other. But being re-edified, it hath ſince exceedingly flouriſhed, by reaſon of the Biſhops See, the Reſidence of the Governour, and the Courts of Juſtice. In 1570. *Chilton* found here but 60 *Spaniards*, though *Herrera* ſaith, there were in his time 600. From the middle of *May* to that of *November*, there is no paſſage by this place to *Mexico*, by reaſon of the Rain. In 1634. Mr. *Gage* who lived here, ſaith there was about 5000 Families, beſides an *Indian* Suburb, and the Trade very great by both the Oceans and by Land, with *Mexico* and *Guaxaca*, &c. p. 274. *Guatimala* ſtands 14 Leagues within the Land from the South-Sea, and is very rich by reaſon of the Gold paſſing through it from *Veragua*. *Chilton* in *Hackluit*. *T.* 3. *p.* 457. 2. S. *Salvadar*, 40 leagues Eaſtwards from *Guatimala*, by the Natives called *Guzculan* ; ſituate on the River *Guacapa*, ſeven Leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compaſs. From the line towards the North, it is 13. 00 ; from the *South Sea* 7 Leagues ; the Port being *Acaxutla*. The Fields about it are very Fruitful, and the Air temperate and healthful. *Chilton* found here in 1570. but 60 *Spaniſh* Inhabitants, *Laet. p.* 335. 3. *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the ſame River, the Port Town to S. *Saviours*. Here all the Ships of *New-Spain* come every year to load and unload. 4. S. *Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samſonate*, the moſt noted Empory of this Country ; the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain* and thoſe of *Peru*. 5. S. *Michaels*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonſeca*, which ſerves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xeres de la Fontera*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chulutecan*, (by which it was formerly known) ſituate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-eaſt of the Bay of *Fonſeca*. That Bay ſo named in honour of *Roderico Fonſeca*, Biſhop of *Bruges*, and Preſident of the Council for the *Indies*, *Anno* 1532. by *Giles Gonſales de Avila*, who firſt diſcovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Iſlands, four of them inhabited, and plentifully furniſhed with Wood, Water and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South *Guatimala*, ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*; on the North and Eaſt, the Sea called *Mare del Noordt*: on the South-eaſt, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatimala* ſpecially ſo called. In length from Eaſt to Weſt by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras*, impoſed upon it from the depth of the Sea about the principal Head land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Country is either Hills or Valleys, little Champain in it; fruitful of Maize and Wheat, and of very rich Paſturage; made ſo by the conſtant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michalemas*, which do not only ſoil their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hungara*, 2 *Chamalucon*, 3. *Ulna*; all neighbouring by fertile Fields & pleaſant meadows. Some Mines of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet diſcovered; the people being ſo ſlothful and given to idleneſs, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not eaſily entreated to toil for others, but where neceſſity and a ſtrong hand do compel them to it. The Inhabitants are thin, the *Spaniards* deſtroying in a few years, at leaſt two Millions of People, as *Barthol de las Cſas* informed *Charles* the *5th*.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Valladolid*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues diſtant from the Sea, ſituate in a pleaſant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamaluton*; and honoured with a Biſhops See, fixed here about the year 1558 but built near the place where once *Franciſco de Monteio*, Governour of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530, or as others 1539. by the name of S. *Maria de Commyagna*. And in 1558 the Biſhops See was removed hither from *Truxillo*. The Inhabitants have endeavoured to turn the Current of the Trade of *Lima* in *Peru*, from *Panama* to this Place, as ſhorter, ſafer, and more healthful than the former; however this Town ſtands in the ſhorteſt cut between the Ports of *Fonſeca* on the *Mar del Zur*, and that of *Cavallos*, on the Bay of *Mexico*, between which there is but 53 Leagues, yet at laſt there were other difficulties that could not be removed, that prevented the deſign. 2. *Gracios de Dios*, 30 leagues Weſtward of *Valladolid*, built by *Gabriel de Rojas*, Anno 1530. to be a place of defence for thoſe who worked in the Mines againſt the Savages. But finding himſelf unable to make it good he defaced and left it. Reedified again in (1536) by *Gonſalvo de Alveredo*, and ſince well inhabited. 3. S. *Peters*, eleven leagues diſtant from the Port of *Cavallas*, but ſeated in a moſt healthy Air; and therefore made the dwelling-place of the Farmers of the Kings Cuſtoms, who have their houſes in this Town, and follow their buſineſs in the other, as occaſion is. 4. *Porto de Cavellos*, ſo called from ſome Horſes thrown overboard in a violent Tempeſt: the moſt noted Haven of theſe parts, and ſtrong by natural ſituation, but ſo ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Chriſtopher Newport*, *Anno* 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deſerted on thoſe ſpoils, and not ſince inhabited. 5. S. *Thomas de Caſtille*, 11 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally ſtrong and fortified according to the Rules of Art; to which, as to a place of more ſtrength and ſafety, *Alphonſo Briado de Caſtilla*, Preſident of the Seſſions of *Guatimala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Traxillo*, ſeated on the riſing of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) diſtant from *Cavallos*. 40 leagues to the Eaſt and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolid*; ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1576. Not far hence towards the North-eaſt lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from hence the ſhore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay, called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7. S. *George de Olanco*, ſo named from the Valley *Olancho*, in which it is ſeated; a Valley noted heretofore for ſome Golden Sands, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then ſaid to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*; on the Eaſt with *Mar del Noordt* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mar del Zur*; on the Weſt, with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salſedo*, who firſt ſubdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither would not be ſo loſt. It extends from Eaſt to Weſt 50 Leagues, from North to South 80.

The Country is deſtitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Coſta Rica*, reckoned a Province of it ſelf. The want hereof is ſupplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the *Lake of Nicaragua*, 120 Leagues in compaſs, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the Banks of which ſtands many pleaſant Villages and ſingle Houſes. A Lake well ſtored with Fiſh, but as full of Crocodiles: and having made its way by a mighty Cataract, emptieth it ſelf into the Sea about four Leagues off. Not very rich in Corn (moſt of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well ſtored with Cattle: levil and plain, and ſhadowed with frequent Trees; one amongſt others of that nature that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth preſently. Affirmed to be as full of Parrots as *England* of Crows; ſtored with great plenty of Cotton Wool, and abundance of Sugar-Canes. In a word ſo pleaſing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mahomet*'s *Paradiſe*.

The People for the moſt part ſpeak the *Spaniſh* Tongue, and willingly conform themſelves to the *Spaniſh* Garb, both of behaviour and apparrel: well weaned from their old barbarous Cuſtoms, retained only by ſome Mountaineers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good Stature, and of Colour indifferent white. They had before they received Chriſtianity a ſetled and politick form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a man's killing of his Father, ſo had this people none for the killer of a King; both of them conceiting that men were not ſo unnatural as to commit ſuch Crimes. A Thief they judge not to death, but adjudged him to be a Slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his Service he made ſatisfaction. A courſe more merciful and not leſs juſt then the loſs of Life. Conſidering the want of Men, we now have, and the great Depopulation of our Country, by our Plantations and Wars, more neceſſary to be put in Practiſe by us than by our Anceſtors, who ſaw the *Engliſh* Nation over Peopled, when they ſetled thoſe Laws which we now practice, in a quite different ſtate of things. But if it be thought inconvenient to retain them in *England*, let Tranſportation to the *Weſt-Indies*, Abjuration, *&c.* be the Judgment, and not Death, till they be taken in the ſame Fact after Tranſportation.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, ſituate on the Lake aforeſaid, the Reſidence of the Governour, and the Biſhop's See; built in Sandy Soil, and begirt with Woods. Here reſides the Governour of the Province; in which are about 12000 *Indians*, who pay a yearly Tribute to the *Spaniards*. The North eaſt is a burning Mountain, which continually throweth up burnt Stones and Sulphur. It was once thought very convenient for Managing the Trade between *Peru*, and *Europe*, by means of the Lake, and a River which falls into the Bay of *Hondura* as St. *Juan*, from which it ſtands but 70 Leagues to the Weſt. This City (ſaith Mr. *Gage* who ſaw it in 1637) is very curiouſly built: The chief delight of the Inhabitants, conſiſting in their fine Houſes, and in the abundance of all things for the Life of Man, more than in Riches, which are more plentiful in the other parts of *America*. 2. *Granada*, on the ſame Lake, ſixteen Leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and ſtrong Caſtles, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*; the City ſeated in a liberal and wealthy Soil, well furniſhed with Sugar-Canes; for the refining of which here are many Work-houſes, which they call *Ingenio's*. 3. *Segovia*, diſtant from the former about 30 Leagues, rich in Veins of Silver. 4. *Jane*, (all called according to the names of ſome Towns in *Spain*) ſituate at the end of the Lake aforeſaid; from whence by a long and narrow Chanel, it diſembogueth into the Sea near the Port of S. *John*, 5. *Realio*, about a league diſtant from the Port of *Poſſeſſion*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the moſt part by Shipwrights and Mariners. 6. *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof ſtandeth, 7. *Avarines* alſo. 8. *Cartago*, 40 Leagues from *Nicoia*, equally diſtant from both Seas, each of which hath a convenient Port: this Town is the Principal of that part which is called *Coſta Rica*. Mr. *Gage* placeth it twenty Leagues from each Sea. In 1637 he found here many rich Merchants, and about 400 *Spaniſh* Families, two Abbies, 1. Nunnery, and a Biſhop's See. The City was indeed ſmall, but in a growing condition, it having a good trade with *Panama*, and *Porto Bello*, The City as he obſerved was ſeldom mentioned by the *Spaniſh* Writers, Page 426.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the Weſt *Coſta Rica*; on the Eaſt, bounded with the Diſtrict of *Panama*; waſhed on both the other ſides by the Sea: extended 50 Leagues in length from Weſt to Eaſt; not above 25, where narroweſt, from one Sea to the other. It is the moſt Eaſtern Province in the Circuit of *Guatimala*, having on the North the Bay of *Mexico*, and on the South, the South Sea. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greateſt note in it at the firſt Diſcovery.

The Soil hereof is Mountainous and exceeding Barren, not fit for Tillage, and leſs uſeful in feeding Cattle; ſufficiently provided of Maize and Pot-hearbs, but elſe of little neceſſary for the Life of man, unleſs the People could eat Silver, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but eſpecially of Gold, here are ſuch never-periſhing Mines, that the *Spaniards* think them able to ſupply all Wants, and cure all Diſeaſes. Once being asked what made them ſo greedy of that Metal, it was anſwered, *That they were much troubled with Grief of Heart, for which Gold was a moſt ſovereign Medicine*. And as the Country, ſuch the People, hardy, couragious, and warlike, and ſuch as bear the *Spaniſh* Yoke with great impatience: the ſtouteſt and moſt untamable People being bred moſt commonly in Mountains and woody Countreys. *Chriſtopher Columbus* diſcovered this Province in the Year 1502; when the Inhabitants gave the *Spaniards* the value of 90 Marks in Gold for 36 Braſs Bells, and ſaid there was much Gold in the next Province: which ſimplicity of theirs, was the occaſion of a much greater Calamity, than their Ignorant bargain for thoſe Bells; but that the Chriſtianity the *Spaniards* brought thither, will make good all their Temporal Loſſes.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Yebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purpoſed to have ſetled a *Spaniſh* Colony, for the better tranſporting of his Gold. But finding that the Channel, on the ceaſing of ſome Rain which had fallen before, was become ſo ſhallow, that no Ship could go in or out, he gave over that purpoſe. 3. *La Trinidad*. 4. *La Conception*; all falling into *Mare del Noordt*. Their Chief Towns, 1. *Conception*, upon the mouth of that River, the Seat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the Banks of that River near the Port of *Belen*, and ſix Leagues Eaſtwards of *La Conception*. 3. S. *Foy*, (*Oppidum* S. *Fidei*) twelve Leagues from *Conception* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt and caſt their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the Shores of *Mare del Zur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the Weſt of *Carlos*. Each ſeated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bay lie a Frie of Iſlands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongſt them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, S. *Marie*, S. *Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the continent to work in the Mines.

This Country oweth its firſt diſcovery unto divers men, according to the ſeveral members and diviſions of it. The laſt in order being the firſt that was diſcovered, but the laſt that was conquered had the honour to be viſited by *Columbus* himſelf. Who driving up and down theſe Coaſts in the year 1502, hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he cauſed to be called *Belen*, where, hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him, as was ſaid before, and finding nothing fit to ſuſtain his men; he bent himſelf, though unwilling, to a farther ſearch. He had before touched upon *Honduras* alſo, but I find not that he Landed on it: the ſetling of theſe Countrys being deſtinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, having fully quieted and compoſed the affairs of *Mexico*, reſolved to make his Maſter Lord of the reſt of *America*; and to that end ſent out his Officers and Commanders into ſeveral Parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he ſubdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Chriſtopher de Olid*; *Veragua* and *Nicaragua* by *Gonſalvo de Corduba*. But fearing leſt the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he reſolved to viſit them in Perſon. Attended by a choice Band of 150 Horſe, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in *October* 1524, and held on his Progreſs as far as to *Truxillo*; where finding that *Gonſales de Cordova* had ſo Plaid his Game, as there was no neceſſity of going farther, he made a ſtand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in *April* 1526. he came home to *Mexico*: with whoſe return we conclude alſo our Survey of the Northern *Peninſula*, containing all *America Septentrionales*, or *Mexicana*.

And ſo much for *MEXICANA*.

OF
PERUANA

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninſula's*, into which the vaſt Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now ſtand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reverſed; more anſwerable thereunto than *Africk*, though that be ſo reſembled. Joyned to the other by a ſtrait and narrow *Iſthmus*, called the *Streights of Darien*, whereof we ſhall have opportunity to ſpeak moreanon: which looks but like a Stone miſlaid in ſo great a Building; or the firſt ſtep by which we are to climb the top as in other *Pyramids*.

The name is derived from *Piru*, the chief Province of it: theCircumnavigation ſaid to be 1700. miles. Nothing elſe to be ſaid in the general, but what will ſerve more fitly for particular Places; except it be the deſcription of ſome prime Mountains and Principal Rivers, which being of two long a courſe to be reckoned unto any one Particular Province, may more properly deſerve place here. Of theſe chief are, 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons:* called by the firſt name from *Franciſco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who firſt diſcovered it; in the year 1541. by the ſecond, from the *Amazons*, a kind of ſtout and warlike Women who are ſaid to have inhabited on the Banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the fall of the North Sea, or *Mare del Noordt.* A River of ſo long a courſe, that the ſaid *Orellana* is reported to have ſailed in it 5000 miles, the ſeveral windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of ſo violent a Current, that it is ſaid to keep its natural taſt and Colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accounted 60 leagues from one Point to the other. It is one of the biggeſt Rivers of the World, and riſeth near *Quitum* a City of *Peru*, out of two Marſhes, which lye within two Leagues of each other at the foot of the Mountains of *Cordillera*; then running to the Eaſt, and being augmented by the ſtreams of *Coca Napo*, and others, it paſſeth the Province of *Canela* and *Pacamor*, where it receives the River *Xauxa*, or *Maranio*, ſo paſſing many other Provinces: after a Courſe of 1200 Leagues, it falls in the North Ocean between *Braſile* and *Guiana*. The Mouth of it is very large, being 80 Leagues over, and full of Iſlands. *Peter Toxerira*, a *Spaniard* has made a very exact deſcription of it, having in the year 1639 ſpent 10 Months in Surveying it. This relation was Tranſlated into *French*, in the year 1682. and Printed at *Paris*. The *Spaniards* being then poſſeſſed of *Braſile*, and having heard that the Head of this River was in *Peru*. They deſigned by this River to tranſport their Rich *Cargo's* of Plate from that Kingdom to *Para* in *Braſile*, whereby they might be better ſecured from the *Holland* and *Engliſh* Ships. The firſt diſcovery was by *Pizaro* and *Oralan* in 1539. the latter of which was loſt in the expedition, as was *P. Orſua* in 1560. in the ſame Attempt, and two Jeſuits in 1606. In 1634 *Coello* Governour of *Para* failed in the Deſign; but two Monks came down from *Quito*, a Province of *Peru* to *Braſile*, which occaſioned this Diſcovery. The Governour of *Braſile* ſending *Texeira*, after this with an Army up the River in Boats, which in one year arrived at *Quito*, and returned in another. This River runs from Weſt to Eaſt 1356 *Spaniſh* Leagues. It is never above 5 Degrees from the Line to the South, for 600 Leagues, it is 30 or 40 Leagues over: abounding with Fiſh, and Fruitful Countries on its Banks. The Air is more Temperate and healthful than *Peru*, by reaſon of the high and Snowy Hills; and it has plenty of Trees for building; and it paſſeth by 150 Nations, in about 4000 Leagues. By the *Indians* this great River is called *Tobo* and *Para*, as indeed they call all Rivers, Lakes, and Seas, by the Laſt Name; by the *Spaniards*, *Las Amazonas*, *Orellana*, and by miſtake *Oronoque*. They all agree the out let is very great, 50 or 60 Leagues over. It is very ſwift and rowls down a vaſt quantity of Water to the Ocean, ſo that it makes it freſh many Leagues from the Land. My Author ſays, the Principal Outlet is known both to the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, who have frequented it on the account of the Trade with the Natives; but then they Induſtriouſly conceal it: And that he met with an *Engliſh* Man, who ſaid he had been 300 Miles up this River, and had at laſt fallen into a vaſt Lake, the Waters of which were very Green, and not Potable; and alſo met one *Indian* Town of 300 Houſes, and about 1000 Souls, *Laet. Liber* 17. *ch.* 3. This great Lake ſeems to me *Parima*. In the year 1598. the *Dutch* being Prohibited all Trade with the *Spaniſh* Dominions, began to trade to the parts of *America* waſhed by this River. They fell this firſt year into that Branch of this River, which was afterwards planted by the *Portugueſe*, and called *Para*. In the following Years the *Zealanders* viewed this River, and built two Forts upon it, which they call *Naſſaw* and *Orange*, the firſt 20 Miles from the Continent, in a River Iſland, and 80 from the Mouth of the River; and the ſecond 7 Miles lower. The *Engliſh* and *Iriſh*, did the like about the ſame time; but all theſe Colonies were deſtroyed by that of *Para*, *ib. p.* 634. 2. *Orenoque*, Navigable 1000 miles by Ships of burthen, and 2000 miles by Boats and Pinnaces. Having received into it an Hundred Rivers, it openeth into the ſame Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Iſlands, (ſome equal to the Iſle of *Weight*:) the moſt remote of thoſe Channels 300 miles diſtant from one another. By ſome it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the Diſcovery and Deſcription of it; or rather in diſcovering it ſo far as to be able to deſcribe it. *Orenoque*, this River is called alſo *Vyapari*, and Springs from the Eaſt ſide of the Mountains of *Popayan* or *New Granada*, and entreth the Ocean over againſt the Iſland of St. *Trinidu*, yet is confounded with *Merbgnan*, *Laet. p.* 608. This Noble River was in all probability diſcovered by *Columbus* in his third Expedition in 1498. In 1499 by *Veſpicus Americus*, and in 1500 by *Pinzonius*, but none of theſe entered and ſearched it, till *Didaco de Ordes*, in 1531 obtained a Commiſſion from *Charles* the V. to Conquer this part of South *America*; he entered the River, but was ſoon oppreſt with want of Proviſions: yet he Wintered here and endeavoured (but without ſucceſs) to fix a Colony, for he was Deſerted by all his Souldiers. The moſt Southern Outlet is a 100 Leagues from the moſt Northern, and altogether make 300 *Engliſh* Miles; ſo that it is much greater than that of the *Amazons*. 3. *Maragnon*, of a longer courſe than any of the other, affirmed to meaſure at the leaſt 6000 miles from his firſt riſing to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea to be leſs than 70 leagues from one ſide to the other. More properly to be called a *Sea*, than many of thoſe great Lakes, or largeſt Bays, which uſually enjoy that name. *Maragan*, *Marnnon*, *Marahanon*, is a River of *Braſil* in the South *Latit*. 2. 30. by which it muſt be by the River *Amazons*, the ſame name is given to *Orenoque*.; both which are already deſcribed, and to *la Plata*, which followeth. *Abevil* a French man in 1612. publiſhed an Account of this part of *Braſil*; in which he ſaith, there is an Iſland 25 Miles over in the mouth of this River. In the Bay made by this River and Iſland, there fall three fine Rivers, *Mounin*, *Toboucouri*, *Miarii*. Theſe Rivers are very great and rapid, and the Sands alſo on the Eaſt ſide of the River conſidered, it is of difficult Acceſs. It has upon it 27 Villages, each conſiſting of 2. 3. 5. or ſix hundred *Indians*. The Air upon it is *Serene*, and neither ſubject to too much heat or cold. When the Sun returneth from the Winter Solſtices, it raineth here 40 days, which is their Winter; and in the Summer, the Eaſtern Brizes blow from Sun riſing to Sun ſetting, and are moſt ſtrong at Noon. The Country about it has Plenty of Springs, and is ſo fertile, that tho it is never ſpared nor helped, yet it brings forth plenty of Maze. The Merchandize to be met with upon this River are *Saffron*, *Cotton*, *Balſum*, *Tobacco*, *Pepper*, Dying-ſtuff, *Sugar* might be had here too if it were planted. *Laet*. pag. 620. from *Abevil*.

4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a leſs courſe then the other, but equal [illegible] moſt in the World beſides: In length from its fir[illegible]ountain 2000 miles, in breadth at his fall into the Sea about 60 leagues; and of ſo violent a Stream, that the Sea for many leagues together altereth not the taſt of it. All theſe, as they do end their race in the *Atlantick*, ſo they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at leſt ſome ſpur or branch of that body. The *Americans* call this River **Paranaguazu**, by the *Engliſh* and *French* the River of *Plate*. It ariſeth in *Paragua*, above the Lake *de Los Xarates*, and running a Vaſt Courſe to the South, and ſeparating *Paragua* from *Chaco* beneath the City *de Buenos Ayres*. It entereth the Sea of *Paraguay* by a Mouth of Sixty *Engliſh* Miles in Breadth, or 40 *Spaniſh* Leagues; this River was firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, ſent to that end by *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*; And he it was that firſt gave it the name of *Rio de la Plata*, in which he ſailed ſix Score Leagues. *Hackluit* T. 3. p. 9. c. 7. After *Cabot* the next diſcoverer was *John Diaz*, *a Portugueſe* in 1513. or as ſome ſay, 1515. he Periſhing by the treachery of the Inhabitants upon it. In 1526. *John Cabots* Expedition is placed. In 1527. that of *Didacus Carcias* who found *Cabot* ſtill here. In 1535. *Petro Mendoza* was ſent of purpoſe to diſcover it more throughly with 800 men in 11 Ships, and he built *Buenos Ayres* upon it. In 1540. *Arvarez Nunnez* perfected the Diſcovery of it. The mouth is 32 *Spaniſh* Leagues over, and within it is 10 Leagues.

But before we venture farther on more particulars, we are to tell you of theſe *Andes*, that they are the greateſt and moſt noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timama*, a Town of *Popayan*, in the new Realm of *Granada*, and thence extends Southwards to the Streights of *Magellan*, for the ſpace of a 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narroweſt; and of ſo vaſt an height withal, that they are ſaid to be higher then the *Alps*, or the head of *Caucaſus*, or any of the moſt noted Mountains in other parts of the World. They are much of the ſame height, and are ſeldom above 20, 30, or 40 Leagues from the *Pacifick* Ocean. There are many of them which burn perpetually towards *Chili*. Not eaſie of aſcent, but in certain Paths, by reaſon of the thick and unpaſſable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof, which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other ſide, or by what People it is neighboured, is not yet diſcovered:) barren and cragged too withal, but ſo full of venomous Beaſts and Poiſonous Serpents, that they are ſaid to have deſtroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and ſavage as the place, and as little hoſpitable. The moſt noted Mountain of *America*, as before was ſaid, and indeed the greateſt of the World. Of fame ſufficient of themſelves, not to be greatned by the addition of impoſible Figments, or improbable Fictions. Amongſt which laſt I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius*, a right learned man, who will have theſe Mountains to be that which the *Scripture* called by the name of *Sephar*, *Gen*. 10. 30. and there affirmed to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sons of *Jockton*: the vanity and inconſequences of which ſtrange conceit we have already noted when we were in *India*, *Laet*. p. 483.

Proceed we now unto the particular Deſcriptions of this great *Peninſula*, comprehending thoſe large and wealthy Countries which are known to us by the names of 1. *Caſtella Aurea*. 2. The New Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paraguay*. 6. *Braſil*. 7. *Guiana*; and 8. *Paria*, with their ſeveral Iſlands. Such other Iſles as fall not properly and naturally under ſome of theſe, muſt be referred unto the general Head of the *American* Iſlands, in the cloſe of all.

OF CASTELLA del ORO.

CASTELLA *del* ORO, *Golden Caſtile*, (*Aurea Caſtella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the Eaſt and North with *Mare del Noordt*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*, and ſome part of *Veragua*; on the South, with the new Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Caſtile*, with reference to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, under the Favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was firſt diſcovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for diſtinction ſake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the firſt diſcoverers found in it. It is alſo called *Terra Firma*, becauſe one of the firſt parts of *Firm Land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before diſcovered nothing but ſome Iſlands only.

The Soil and People being of ſuch ſeveral Tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will conſider both apart in the ſeveral Provinces of, 1. *Panama*. 2. *Darien*. 3 *Nova Andaluzia*. 4. S. *Martha*, and 5. the litle Province *De la Hacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the Diſtrict of *Panama*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Uraba* or *Darien*, by which parted from the Land of this large *Peninſula*; on the Weſt, with *Varagua*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*; waſhed on both the other ſides with the Sea. So called of *Panama*, the Town of moſt eſteem herein, and the Juridical reſort of *Caſtilla Aurea*.

It taketh up the narroweſt part of the Streight or *Iſthmus*, which joyns both *Peninſula's* together: not above

7 or 8 leagues over in the narroweſt place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto bello*, if meaſured by a ſtreight line from one Town to the other ; though 18 leagues according to the courſe of the Road betwixt them, which by reaſon of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of ſome attempts to dig a Channel through this *Iſthmus* to let one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by Land, we have ſpoken already.

The Air hereof is foggy, but exceeding hot, and conſequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November* : the Soil either Mountainous and barren, or low and miry ; naturally ſo unfit for Grain, that it yeildeth nothing but maize, and that but ſparingly ; better for Paſturage, in regard of its Plenty of Graſs, and the goodneſs of it : ſo full of Swine at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither, that they thought they never ſhould deſtroy them ; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatſoever they were formerly is not now material ; moſt of the old ſtock are rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room ; ſo that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almoſt deſolated or forſaken.

The Country, as before was ſaid, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers; the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Legartos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noordt*, betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Porto Belno.* This River lies between the South and North of *America*, upon which the Merchandies bound for *Panama* and *Peru* do paſs, ſo far as is Navigable. 2. *Sardinilla.* 3. *Sardina.* 4. *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of Snakes, and 5. *Rio de[illegible]omagre* ; all falling into the ſame Sea. Then on the other ſide. 6. *Ghepo*, whoſe Sand in former times yielded plenty of Gold. 7. *Rio de las Balſas*, on the Banks whereof groweth great ſtore of Timber for the building of Ships. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it ſelf into the Bay of Saint *Michael.*

Towns of moſt note, 1. *S. Philip*, ſeated on a ſafe and ſtrong Haven, called *Porto bello* : built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the ſecond, but by the Councel of *John Baptiſta Antonelli*, to be the Staple of the Trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama* ; partly in regard of the unhealthineſs of *Nombre de Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly, becauſe that Town was found to have lain too open to the Invaſions of the *Engliſh.* Fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles; (on each ſide of the Haven one ;) but for all that ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. This City was alſo ſince taken and plundered by the Buccaniers. It lyes five Leagues from *Nombre de Dios* to the W. Lat 9.20. The Harbour is Large and very good, having good Anchoring and freſh water 6 Fathoms near the ſhore, and 12 in the middle. There falls into the Sea here 12 Small Rivers or Brooks of water. There is about it plenty of Timber and of ſtones to balleſt the ſhips with. Within this Harbour is a Small Creek ſafe from all winds, 500 yards Square, and 4 fathom one Quarter Deep. A Ship may go out with any wind but a Weſtern, which doth ſeldom blow. To the South it has a good Scituation, for a City well watered and encompaſſed with ground fit for Tillage. This Account was given (by *Baptiſta*) to the King of *Spain*, *Anno* 1587. *Hackl.* T. 3. p. 552, 553. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently ſeated in the upper Sea for a Town of Trade ; and for that Reaſon made the Staple of ſuch Commodities as were trucked betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*, which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there ſhipped for *Peru* ; or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by Land brought unto this place, and here ſhipped for *Spain.* It took this name by *Didaco Niqueſa*, a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, who having been diſtreſſed by Tempeſts was driven in here, and bid his men go on ſhore *en Nombre de Dios* in the name of God. *Nombre de Dios* was taken firſt by Sir *Francis Drake* in 1572. It was after this neglected and not much regarded, *Baptiſta Antonio* finding but 30 Houſes when he came to Survey it : The badneſs of the Air and Port, and Water, and Situation, all conſpiring to the Demoliſhing of it, *Gage*'s Travels page 170, 180. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word it is called *Theonyma.* Of great Trade once on the occaſion before mentioned : but in the year 1614. the Trade was removed unto *Porto Bello*, by the counſel of *Antonelli* before named ; and ſome years after that, the Inhabitants alſo. To haſten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake* ſerved exceeding fitly, who took it in his Second Voyage into *America*, in the year 1572, and plundered it. It was in part neglected afterwards, and in the year 1614. the King of *Spain* ordered it to be pulled down, and the Town of *Porto Bello* to be built with the ſame Timber ; which was accordingly performed by *Peter Arias*, *Gages* Travels p. 170. 180. It is Seated in an unhealthful Marſhy Ground, the Harbour bad, and the water not good, being Subject to the Violence of the North and Eaſt Wind, the Haven Fleet unſafe, and exceeding troubleſome, and the way to *Panama* very bad. *Hackluit* T. 3. p. 551. Before the Town was half built, the *Engliſh* took *Nombre de Dios*, and deſtroyed it in 1601. in Sir *Francis Drakes* laſt Expedition, in which he died near this City, *Gage's*, p. 170. *Laet.* p. 153. The former of theſe obſerved the Haven to be very ſtrong, having two Caſtles at the Mouth, and one in the bottom. 3. *Acla*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Sea alſo, but on the South-eaſt of [illegible]*bre de Dios.* 4. *Nata*, or S. *Jago de Nata*, ſituate on [illegible] lower Sea, on the Borders of *Veragua*, about 30 leagues on the Weſt of *Panama.* 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Caſtella Aurea*, the Reſidence of the Governour and the Courts of Juſtice, honoured with a Biſhops See, a Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Lima*, and beautified with three fair Monaſteries, and a Colledge of Jeſuits, Seated in the 9. degree of Northern Latitude ; and ſo near the Sea, that the waves come cloſe unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain* and *Peru* paſſed every year ; yet not containing above 350 Houſes : the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. It was built by *Petrus Ario* for the reception of the effects brought from *Peru*, as *Nombre de Dios* was on the oppoſite ſide of the *Iſthmus*, for thoſe brought from *Spain.* It was honoured with the Birth-day of a Modern Saint, *Roſe* of *Panama*, whoſe Sanctity was ſo conſpicuous, that the Gnats and Flyes in her Cell obſerved and reverenced it, as Father *Oliva*, the late General of the Jeſuits, informs us in her Life. But alas ! This Saint has not been able to protect the Town from another ſort of Flies, for *January* 25. 1671. it was plundered by the *French*, and in 1686. by Captain *Lawrence* a **Buccaneer.** This city is Govern'd by a Preſident and Six Judges, and a Court of Chancery. It hath more Strength towards the Sea than any other Port I had ſeen, having Ordinance Planted for its Defence, but the Houſes and Churches are built of Timber and Boards for want of Stone and Lime.. The heat here is extraordinary great, Fiſh, Fruits, and Herbage for Sallads, is more plentiful than Fleſh. The *Spaniards* are very Looſe and Libidinous. The *Moors* being the objects of their Luſt, and by it made very rich and Gallant. It is held to be one of the Richeſt Places in *America*, having by Land and the River *Chiagre*, Commerce with the No. Sea, and by the Sou. Sea Trading with *Peru*, *Eaſt India*, *Mexico* and *Honduras.* It conſiſteth of about 5000 Inhabitants, and has 8 Monaſteries. Every Ebb the Sea falls from it 2 or 3 miles, but leaves a ſtinking Mud behind it, which makes the Air unhealthful, *Gages* Travels 80. p. 442. It has 5000 Inhabitants and eight Monaſteries. 6. S. *Crux la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes*, brought out of *Guinea.*

This Province was the firſt of thoſe on the *Firm Land* which were diſcovered by *Columbus.* But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Iſland lying on the Shore near

Porto bello, which he cauſed to be called *Los Baſtimentos*; becauſe being caſt hereon by chance, he found good ſtore of Maiz and other Proviſions, called *Baſtimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Iſlands of this Province are thoſe which *Columbus* never ſaw, called the *Iſlands of Pearls*, ſituate in the Southern Sea, oppoſite to *Panama*, from which diſtant 17 leagues, or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the reſt of them rather Rocks then Iſlands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the Pearls there found; fairer then thoſe of *Margarita* and *Cubagna*, ſo much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their cruelty and covetouſneſs they unpeopled the Iſlands, and deſtroyed the Pearls. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and ſome Slaves of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Maſters Cattle in the Fields and Paſtures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North the diſtrict of *Panama*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the Eaſt, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; and on the Weſt, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country is of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: ſo happy in the production of Melons, and ſuch other Fruits, that within twenty days after they are ſown they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth Grapes and other Fruits; either Natural hereunto, or brought either from *Enrope*. A Tree here is called *Hovo*, not elſewhere known; the ſhade of which is conceived to be ſo wholſom, that the *Spaniards* ſeek them out to ſleep under them. Out of the Bloſſoms of it they diſtil a perfumed Water; of the Bark a Bath or Lavatary, good for the opening of the pores, and redreſs of Wearineſs; and from the Roots they draw a Liquor, which they uſe to drink of. Of Beaſts and Fouls great Plenty, whether wild or tame; and ſome of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name. A clear Water, and much drank of, but of a ſlow courſe and a narrow Channel, able to bear no bigger Veſſels then thoſe of one piece of wood, uſed among the Savages, we may call them Troughs. But with this ſlow courſe it falleth at laſt into the Gulf of *Uraba*, a large arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is ſaid to be eight Leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themſelves into the Gulf of *Uraba*. 4. *Corobaci*, on the ſame ſide of the Country alſo. 5. *Beru*, a River of the South Sea, not much obſervable, but that ſome have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Peru* from thence.

Towns of moſt note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the Gulf of *Uraba*; oftentimes ſo unhealthy by the Miſts which do thence ariſe, that the Inhabitants uſe to ſend their ſick people to the freſh Air of *Corobary* to revive their Spirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antique*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Enciſus* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, *Anno* 1510. and grew ſo ſuddenly into Wealth and Reputation, that within four years it was made an Epiſcopal See. But being built too near the banks of *Darien*, in a mooriſh and unhealthy place, both the Epiſcopal See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forſaken by themſelves, or deſtroyed by the Savages; ſo that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the Gulf of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but ſome few ſcattered houſes in all that Tract, for the uſe of the Natives; who formerly made their Neſts like Birds on the tops of Trees. 2. *Bixu*. 3. *Los Angadeſos*; two ſmall Villages on the other ſide of the Country, poſſeſſed by the Savages. Beſides theſe, and ſome ſorry Sheds here and there diſperſed, all the reſt is a deſart. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a diſtinct Province, the Government hereof hath of late been devolved on the Prefect of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUZIA* hath on the Weſt the River *Darien*, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, the *New Realm of Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluzia*, a Province of *Spain*. Called alſo by ſome Writers *Carthagina*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length, from the Gulf of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 10 leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of Woods, but in thoſe Woods great ſtore of Roſin; Gums and ſome kinds of Balſams. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Tree, which whoſoever toucheth, is in danger of poiſoning. The Soil, by reaſon of the abundance of Rain which falls upon it, very moiſt and ſpewy; inſomuch that few of our *European* Fruits have proſpered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming found great ſtore of Treaſure. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the Dead, not found in Mines, nor digged for, as in other places: ſuch being the Reputation of that Territory in former time, that the Nations far and near did carry the Bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantities of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and ſtout, whilſt they were a people. But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrows before fully conquered, they have been ſo conſumed and waſted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de los Redas*, and 2. *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zedu*, which paſſing through the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean over againſt the Iſland *Fuerte*. 4. S. *Martha*, of long courſe and much eſtimation. For riſing in the moſt Southern parts of the *New Realm of Granada*, near the *Equinoctial*, it paſſeth through the whole length of that Kingdom, and at laſt mingleth its ſtream with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the Natives it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, thoſe of moſt note are a continual ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cordellera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy and difficult of aſcent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 Leagues, but the length uncertain, the fartheſt ends of them towards the South not diſcovered hitherto.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, ſituate in a Sandy *Peninſula*, ten degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*: well built, and for the bigneſs of it, of great Wealth and State; conſiſting of 500 Houſes, or thereabout, but thoſe neat and handſome. To the South it hath a Moraſs, ſo that is it approached by a Cauſey of 250 Paces Length, well built, and a Biſhops See, ſubject to the Arch Biſhop of *Granada*. Beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monaſteries, and one of the beſt Havens of all *America*. This city was founded in the year 1532. by *Petro Heredia*, well fortified on both ſides; ſince the taking of it by *Sir Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by Aſſault, and carried thence, beſides ineſtimable ſums of money, 240 Braſs pieces of Ordnance. The *Engliſh* Landed five miles from the City and Marched directly to it, the *Spaniards* having Sufficient time to provide for their Security by Sea and Land. And as to the firſt they defended themſelves ſo well, that *Drake* could not break into the Harbour with his Ships by Sea, nor the General by Land, till the Sea retiring opened him a way into it. The *Spaniards* then fled and were forced to pay 110000 Ducats to redeem the City from fire, which was forthwith divided among the Soldiers and Seamen; the reſt of the Prey was little, becauſe the Inhabitants had ſent away all that was Valuable to other Places. Yet the Terror of this expedition dwells ſtill among the Inhabitants, as Mr. *Gage* ſaith in his Travels. This was alſo the firſt place the *Spaniards* Walled in the *Weſt Indies*. In 1587. it had then 450 *Spaniſh* Families, and moſt of the houſes were built with Stone, being vaſtly traded by all the other Plantations of the *Spaniards* in *America*. About this time the *Spaniards* firſt fortified it, and in the year 1630. it was encreaſed to 4000 *Spaniards* and 14000 *Negroes*, and the beſt Mart in *America*; encompaſſed with a Wall 18foot high above the Level, and guarded with Baſtions, and filled up with Earth, and Arm'd with 70 Braſs Guns. See *Hackluit* To 3.p.549. 2. *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called Saint *Jago*, 12 Miles from *Carthagenia*: memorable for the moſt ſovereign Balſom of all theſe parts, called the Balſom of *Tolu*; little inferiour, if at all, to the Balſom of *Egypt*. This Balm or Balſom is in my belief, the ſame with the Balm of *Giliad* and *Jericho* in latter times, found only in *Egypt*, and ſaid to be now alſo found at *Mecca* in *Arabia*; The form of the Plant being the ſame, as appeareth by a Compariſon of the diſcription of it in the Authors that have wrote of both. 3. *Mopox*, or *Santa Cruz de Mopox*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalena*. 4. *Baranca de Melambo*, on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*, ſix Leagues from the Ocean, where ſuch Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm of Granada* uſe to be unſhipped, and carried by Lighter or ſmall Boats up the River. 5. *Sebaſtia de Buenaviſta*, built by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, *Anno* 1508. in the firſt Attempt upon this Country; ſituate on a riſing ground, near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a League and half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30 Leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. S. MARTHA hath on the Weſt *Nova Andaluzia*; on the Eaſt, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North the main Ocean; on the South the *New Realm of Granada*: about 70 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from S. *Martha* the chief City of it.

The Country is Mountainous and barren, not fit for Paſturage or Tillage; productive notwithſtanding of Limons, Oranges, Pomegranates, and ſuch other Fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The Air on the Sea coaſts very hot and ſcalding, and in the mid-land parts as cold, becauſe of the Neighbourhood of ſome Mountains always covered with Snow. The principal of thoſe Mountains, a long ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievedas*, or the Snowy Mountains; diſcernable by the Mariners 30 Leagues at Sea, by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Valley of that name beneath them, the Inhabitants whereof, by the Advantage of thoſe hills, have hitherto preſerved their liberty againſt the *Spaniards*. The reſt, though ſubject to the *Spaniards*, have their ſeveral Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant ill natur'd people; made worſe perhaps then indeed they are, by reaſon of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whoſe Government they live under with great unwillingneſs.

Chief Rivers of this Province are, 1. *Rio Grande de la Magdalena*, ; which hath its Fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm of Granada*, not far from the *Æquator*, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and S. *Martha*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; where dividing it ſelf, it maketh an Iſland of five Leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; diſcernable for ten Leagues ſpace, from the reſt of the main by the taſt and colour of the Water. This River is Navigable above 100 Leagues up into the Continent of *America*, ſo that by it the Marchandize of *Europe* is carried to *Granada*, and the Treaſures of the latter are in three weeks brought down to the *Atlantick* Ocean, into which this River falls with a vaſt Mouth 26 Leagues Eaſt of *Cartagenia Nueva*, ſo that it maintains its current 10 Leagues into the Ocean, and by reaſon of the *Vortices* made by the Conteſt between the River and the Ocean, it is dangerous falling into it. There is an Iſland in the Mouth of this River Five Leagues long, and half a League broad. The *Hollanders* do all affirm it has three mouths where it falls into the Ocean. *Laet*. p. 369. The Mouth lyes in the *Lat*. of 12.40. from the Line to the North. Its head is near the City *Popayan* in the *Andes*, and waſheth firſt *Cati*, from the head to the fall 400 Leagues, and is Navigable to St. *Fe de Bogota*. This River is more properly St. *Martha* than *Magdalena*; and my Author in his Maps calls it ſo, but in his Deſcription calls *Magdalena*, *Cauca*, both which Rivers unite at *Mopex*. 2. *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*; as doth alſo 3. *Cæſar*, by the Natives called *Pompatan*; which having its Fountain near the *City of Kings*, in the Vail of *Upar*, paſſeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. *Auymas*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Weſtward for the Space of 70 Leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalen*, as before is ſaid, near the Foreſt of *Alpuerte*. 5. *Bubia*. 6. *Piras*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*. 9. *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of moſt obſervation. 1. S. *Martha*, ſituate on the Shores of the Ocean, in the latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes: neighboured by a ſafe and convenient Haven, defended from the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an Epiſcopal See. Small, and ill built when it was at the beſt; nor well recovered of the Spoil it ſuffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1595. and by Sir *Anthony Shirly*, the next year after. and in 1630 by the *Dutch Admiral Adrian James Patre*. In 1626. the Governour gave an account, that the Inhabitants were poor, few, and not well united among themſelves. 2. *Tenariffe*, on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 Leagues from S. *Martha*. 3. *Tenalameque* by the *Spaniards* called *Villas de las Palmas*, 20 Leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the City of Kings, ſituate in the Vail of *Upar*, on the Banks of a deep and violent River called *Guateperi*, which not far off falleth into the *Cæſar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tairona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the ſame Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furniſhed with Veins of Braſs, as it is with ſtones. 6. *Ocanman*, on the Weſtern Reach of the River *Cæſar*, equally diſtant from its Confluence with *Ayumas*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5, RIO DE LA HACHA is the name of a little Province lying on the North-eaſt of S. *Martha*, environed on two ſides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the Eaſt) with large and ſpacious Arm of the Sea called *Golfo de Venezuela*, the extremities hereof North Weſt, called *Cabo la Vela*; on the North eaſt, *Cabo di Coquibocca*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a ſmall Town, conſiſting of no more than an hundred Houſes, but big enough to give name to ſo ſmall a Province; built on a little Hill about a Mile from the Sea: the Haven inconvenient, and expoſed to the Northern Winds, but the Soil about very rich, fruitful of all ſuch Plants as are brought from *Spain*, well ſtored with Veins of Gold, excellent Salt wiches, and ſome Gems of great worth and virtue. Diſtant 8 Leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18 Leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: ſurprized and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, ſix Leagues on the Eaſt of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the moſt part by ſuch as get their living by Pearl-fiſhing. 3. *Topia*, five Leagues from *La Hacha*, and almoſt as much from the Sea: the fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca* were terribly waſted by the *Engliſh* in the year aforeſaid, becauſe the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 Ducats not to burn that Town, would not ſtand to his Bargain.

Theſe Countries, diſcovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was ſaid, were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two ſeveral men, employed in the ſubduing of their ſeveral parts, *Anno* 1518. To *Didaco Niqueſa* was allotted the Government and Conqueſt of thoſe parts hereof, which lie on the Weſt of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Prefectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of

Caſtella de Oro; and to *Alfonſo Oidea*, all that lay on the Eaſt of that Gulf, by the name of *Nova Andaluzia.* But theſe two finiſhed not the work, though the firſt began it: *Enciſus* diſcovering farther on the River of *Darien* than *Niqueſa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the beſt of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Prefectures of *S. Martha*, and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and ſubdued by the *Spaniard*) being added to it. One of their laſt Kings which held out againſt the *Spaniard* was called *Abibeia*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree, (as moſt of his Subjects had their Houſes;) from which when *Franciſco de Vaſquez*, a *Spaniſh* Captain could by no other Rhetorick win him to deſcend, he laid his Axe to the Root and began to fell it: which ſeen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his Life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

OF NOVA GRANADA.

N*OVA GRANADA*, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet diſcovered, ſhut up with vaſt Hills, and impaſſable Mountains, except only in thoſe Parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lyeth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gmſalvo Ximenez*, the firſt Diſcoverer; in the year 1536. who being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it: It lying very remote from the Sea, upon the River of St. *Magdalena*; and in about two years it was reduced.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in Breadth; reckoning *Popayana* for a part of it, though by ſome made a diſtinct Government. So that we may divide the whole into theſe two parts, 1. *Granada* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Weſt; and 2. *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, ſpecially ſo called, hath an Air for the moſt part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and ſhortneſs of days. It lying three or four Degrees from the Line to the North. The Country is full of Woods, but of great fertility, well ſtored with Corn and Paſturage, many Herds of Cattle, ſome Veins of Gold, and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of Emeralds: and amongſt their Woods, that called *Guaiacum*, medicinable for the *French* Diſeaſe, grows in great abundance. The People are tall and ſtrong of Body, not very induſtrious, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in Songs and Dances; and very Barbarous, which the *Spaniards* had not reduced in 1630. The Women of a white and more clear Complexion than any of their Neighbours, and more handſomely habited, apparelled in black or Parti-coloured Mantles girt about their middles, their Hair tied up, and covered moſt an end with Chaplets intermixt with Flowers and artificially compoſed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but thoſe of *S. Martha* and S. *Magdalen*, deſcribed before: nor any diſtinction of it into ſeveral Provinces; but by the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colymæ*, and *Muſi*, by which the Savages were diſtinguiſhed when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the Principal of their Towns are by ſome deſcribed.

Towns then of greateſt note, 1. S. *Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy* the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Seat of the Governour. Built by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada*, at the foot of the Mountains, upon the River *Pati*; not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the Banks of which they uſed to ſacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, beſides thoſe of the Natives; and ſituate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. The Arch-Biſhop has three Suffragans, *Cartagenia*, St. *Martha*, and *Popyana*. It yields plenty of Cattle, Corn, and Fowls, for the ſubſiſtance of the Inhabitants, but not much Gold or Silver. 2. S. *Michael*, 12 Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Toycama*, in the Territory of the *Panches*, a barbarous and Man-eating People, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Maſters of the richeſt part of all the Country. The Town is about 15 Leagues from S. *Foy*, towards the North-eaſt; and ſeated on the Banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is ſwallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela* in the Country of the *Muſi* and *Colimæ*, two warlike Nations; ſituate on the Banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither; but deſerted by them not long after, for fear of the Savages, though the want of Proviſions was pretended. 5. *Trinidado*, on the ſame River, but ſomewhat lower, and more remote from the Savages, by them notwithſtanding much anoyed: the Fields thereof full of Veins of Cryſtal, Emeraulds, Adamants, and Chalcedonies. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the ſame Territory of the *Muſi* and *Colymæ*, *Anno* 1572. 7. *Tunia*, ſo called according to the name of the Tribe or Province in which it is ſituate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might ſerve for a Retreat and Fortreſs againſt the Savages; now a well traded Empory, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impreſs 280 Horſe for preſent ſervice. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from S. *Foy*, towards the North-eaſt, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattle. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the fartheſt Town of all this Province, on the North-eaſt towards *Venezuela*: as 10. *S. John de los Planos*, or *S. John* upon the Plains, is in the South-eaſt, 50 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and ſeated in a corner full of Veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA*, lieth on the Weſt of *New Granada* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called; from which it is parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country: on the North bounded with *Nova Andaluzia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the Weſt; on the South by *Peru*: Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the leaſt; and from the River to the Sea betwixt 30 and 40. The Capital City is *Popayan*, ſeated near the riſe of the River St. *Martha*, 140 Leagues from the South Sea to the Eaſt.

The Country over-cloy'd with Rain, yields but little Maize, leſs Wheat, and almoſt no Cattle; though in ſome places richer then it is in others. The People anciently Man-eaters, and as rude as any; now more induſtrious and affable than the other *Americans*, eſpecially

ally about *Popayan*, where the Soil is alſo better tempered then in other places. The Rivers of moſt note, beſide that of S. *Martha*, which we have ſpoken of already, and ſome leſſer ſtreams which fall into it are, 1. *Rio de S. Juan.* 2. *Rio de Cedros.* 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greateſt note, 1. *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, in the year 1537; ſituate on a nameleſs, but pleaſant River, in the midſt of a Plain, of great Wealth and healthy Air, in two degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, and the See of a Biſhop, under the Arch-Biſhop *de Santa de Tè Bogota*. The Building fair unto the Eye, but ſlight; excepting the Cathedral, and a Monaſtery of the Friers called *De Mercede*, which are ſtrong and laſting. The Air is Temperate and healthful, but too much ſubject to Rain, Thunder and Lightning. It has plenty of Corn, Cattle, Fruits, and Herbs, and a double Harveſt every Year. The *Indians* are more civil, Induſtrious, and Ingenious than moſt of the other *Indians*: The Houſes are large, but mean as to the matter of them. 2. *Antiocha*, (or *Sancta fides de Antiocha*) on the borders of *Nova Andaluzia*, 100 Leagues diſtant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve Leagues diſtant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Martha*, it ſelf. 4. *Patia*, in a pleaſant Valley on the banks of a ſmall River, but of excellent water. 5. *S. Anne*, in the *Cantred* of *Anzerman*, by which name it is ſometimes called: built on a little Hill betwixt two ſweet Rivers, and compaſſed round about with a Grove of moſt pleaſant Fruits. 6. S. *Jago de Arma*; the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Arma*; ſituate on a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwiſe unprovided of all manner of neceſſaries; fifty Leagues to the North-eaſt of *Popayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 Leagues from S. *Jago de Arma*; ſeated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, ſeven Leagues from the River of S. *Martha*. 8. *Cali*, a League from that River, but on the Banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vaſt and mighty Mountain, at whoſe feet it ſtandeth; there built by *Sebaſtian de Betalcazar*, the firſt Diſcoverer of this Country. 9. *Bonaventure*, on a Bay ſo called in the Southern Ocean; a ſmall Town, but of great uſe for the ready conveyance of the Commodities of *New-Spain* unto *Popayan*, and to other Towns of this Province. 10. *Timana*, 80 Leagues from *Popayan* towards the Eaſt, at the foot of that vaſt ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as to the Streights of *Magellan*. 11. S. *Juan de Paſto*, ſituate in a pleaſant Valley, but one degree from the *Æquator*. 12. *Sebaſtian de la Plata*, ſo called from its Silver Mines in the South-eaſt confines of the Province. 13. *Almagra*, on the ſide of a Plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren Soil, were not Gold a Supplements of all wants, which there is found in ſome abundance.

To this Province belong alſo ſome Iſlands in the Southern Ocean: that is to ſay, 1. The Iſle of *Palmes*, South of the Cape of *Corientes*, ſo called from the abundance of Palms which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, oppoſite to the mouth or Outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Iſland of three Leagues in compaſs; the Hills ſo high, the Valleys ſo extreamly low, the Sun ſo little ſeen amongſt them, and the Woods ſo dark, that ſome hath likened it to Hell. Not much obſervable, but that it did afford a lurking-place unto *Franci Pizarro* in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulſed from landing on that Coaſt. 3. *Eel-Gallo*, a ſmall Iſland, not a League in Circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two Prefectures, but both ſubordinate to the Juridical Reſort in the City of S, *Foy de Bagota*, is indebted for its firſt Diſcovery to two ſeveral perſons, *Granada* ſpecially ſo called was firſt diſccvered by *Gonſalvo Ximenez de Queſado*, employed therein by *Ferdinando de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Iſland*, *Anno* 1536. who paſſing up the River of *Magdalen* without Moleſtation (more then the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Foreſts) as far as the *Cantred* of *Bagota*, was there encountered by that King, whom he eaſily vanquiſhed, and waſting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treaſure. The reſidue of thoſe Petit Princes, which then Governed in their ſeveral Tribes, either ſubmitted to him without oppoſition, or elſe were vanquiſhed at the firſt riſing. Having diſcovered and ſubdued every ſeveral Province, and miſerably murthered *Sangipa* the laſt King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made uſe in ſubduing the *Panches*, he cauſed it to be called the *New Realm of Granada*, for the reaſon formerly laid down: and ſumming up the Spoils he had gotten in this eaſie War, he found them to amount to 1800 Emralds, 191294 *Pezoes* of the fineſt Gold, 35000 of a coarſer and inferior Allay. In his return, he heard the news of *Sebaſtian de Betalcazar*'s marching on the other ſide of the River of S. *Martha*; who having at the ſame time diſcovered and ſubdued the Province of *Popayan*, was beating out his way towards the North Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Franciſco Pizarro*, the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having ſecured all the Country to the very Sea, reſolved to open a way homewards through thoſe Regions which lay betwixt his own Province and *Mare del Noordt*. And this did he reſolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Countrey, full of Gold, was in that Tract poſſeſſed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two petit Princes, but yet the greateſt in thoſe parts. Encountred in his march by the Royelets of *Patia* and *Paſto*, he ſoon made them weary, and retire themſelves into the Woods and impaſſible Mountains; and paſſing ſlowly on, came at laſt to *Popayan*. Where, though the Savages entertained him with ſome frequent Skirmiſhes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to poſſeſs themſelves of their beſt Towns, and to build others in ſuch place as they thought convenient. But this was after the firſt Conqueſt, according to the coming over of ſucceeding Colonies. The firſt Conqueſt being finiſhed *Anno* 1536, when the *New Realm of Granada* was ſubdued by *Xemenez*.

OF

OF PERU.

PERU is bounded on the Eaſt with that vaſt ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the weſt with *Mare del Zur*; on the the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the firſt of Note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occaſioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 Leagues, but the breadth not equal. In ſome Places 100 Leagues broad, in others 60, in the reſt but 40; more or leſs, according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of ſo different a nature from one another, as if they were far diſtant both in Site and Soil. Theſe parts are, the Plains, the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes*; the Plains extend on the Sea-ſhore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Valleys; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, compoſed of both. Each part ſtretcheth out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the Plains from the Sea-Shore to the Hill Countries, for the moſt part ten Leagues broad, in ſome places more; the Hill-Countries 20 Leagues in breadth where narroweſt, and as much the *Andes*. In the Plains it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the Hill Countries it raineth from *September* to *April*, being after that fair weather. In the Hill-Country the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the Plains their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day; be frozen in the morning at his ſetting forth, and ſcorched with heat before he come to his journeys end. Some other differences there are: as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forreſts, whereas the Hill-Countries are bare and naked; the Plains, where there are ſtore of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea beſides, ſandy and dry, and in moſt places deſtitute both of Fruits and Corn: in ſome parts of the Hill-Countries, where there are no Rivers, and Rain but ſeldom, plenty of Roots, Maize, Fruits, and all other neceſſaries. In the Plains there never bloweth any but the Southerly Wind, though it bring no Rain with it; and in the Hills Winds from every Coaſt, and of every nature; ſome bringing Rain, ſome Snow, ſome claps of Thunder, and other fair Weather at the Heels of them. Inſomuch that it is obſerved, that ſuch of the Inhabitants of the Plains as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find ſuch pain in the Head and Stomach, as Freſh water Souldiers when firſt Sea-ſick.

Not to purſue theſe differences any further in the ſeveral parts, we will look upon the whole in groſs; which we ſhall find but meanly furniſhed for the bigneſs, with thoſe Commodities which ſo large a Country might afford; inſomuch as many of the people live moſt on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not ſuch quantities of Maize (the ordinary Bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to ſerve their multitudes. Nor find I, that the Cattle of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increaſe. Inſtead of which they have in their Woods and Paſtures infinite numbers of Beaſts, ſomewhat like wild Goats (which they call *Vicagnes*) and great ſtore of a kind of ſheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for Fleece and burthen; as big as a ſmall breed of Horſes, but in taſt as pleaſing as our Mutton and no leſs nouriſhing. A Creature ſo well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himſelf over-loaded, no blows or violence ſhall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be leſſened, and of ſo cheap a Diet, that he is content with very little, and ſometimes paſſeth three whole days without any water. The Camels of theſe parts are not much unlike them.

This, as it is by ſome accounted for a Creature proper to this Country only, (though in that miſtaken) ſo may it paſs among the Rarities hereof: many of which it hath both in Beaſts and Plants, and inanimate Bodies alſo. Among their Plants they have a Fig-tree, the North-part whereof, looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its fruits in the Summer only, the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deſervedly do account the *Coca* for a Wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried and formed into Lozenges, (or little Pellets) are exceeding uſeful in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they ſatisfie both hunger and thirſt, and preſerve a man in ſtrength, and his Spirits in vigour, and generally are eſteemed of ſuch ſoverain uſe, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the leaves of this Tree, are ſold yearly at the Mines of *Potoſi* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cuſco* would yield 12 pence or 18 pence apiece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a ſick perſon, will inſtantly diſcover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the preſſing of it in his hand he look merry and chearful, it is an aſſured ſign of his Recovery: as on the other ſide, of Death if ſad and troubled. Amongſt their Beaſts, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*; of which it is obſerved, that the Males ſtand Sentinel on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Valleys; and if they ſee any men coming towards them, they ſet out their throats, to give their Females notice of ſome danger near; whom, when they come up to them, they put in the Front of the Retreat, interpoſing their own bodies betwixt them and their Enemy. Nor want they Rarities of Nature even in things inanimate: here being ſaid to be a round Lake near the Mines of *Potoſi*, whoſe water is ſo hot, tho' the Country it ſelf be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themſelves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks; there being in the midſt thereof a boiling of above twenty foot ſquare. A Lake which never doth decreaſe, tho' they have drawn a great ſtream from it to ſerve their Metal-Mills.

More profitable, though leſs rare, are thoſe Metals which thoſe Mills are made for; and not leſs profitable, one of thoſe Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cauſe, and the reſemblance which it hath to Henbane in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane of Peru* by *Gerard*, and from other of our Modern Herbaliſts. A Plant, which (though in ſome reſpect, being moderately taken, it may be ſerviceable for Phyſick, yet) beſides the conſumption of the purſe, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate vain and phantaſtical abuſe of this ſtinking Weed, corrupteth the natural ſweetneſs of the breath, ſtupifieth the Brain, and indeed is ſo prejudicial to the general eſteem of our Country-men, that one ſaith of of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui huic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degeneraſſe videntur.* The two chief Virtues aſcribed unto it (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort Digreſſion) are, That it voideth Rheum, and is found to be a ſoveraign Antidote againſt *Lues Venerea*, that loathſom diſeaſe of the *French* Pox. For this laſt, like enough it is, that ſo unclean a Diſeaſe may be helped with ſuch an unſavoury Medicine. But for the firſt, it may perhaps conſiſt more in Opinion than truth or reality; the Rheum, which it is ſaid to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the preſent. We may as well conclude, that Bottled Ale is good for the breaking of wind, (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the ſame Wind which it ſelf conveyed into the ſtomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times grown a good fellow, and fallen from a Phyſician to a Compliment. An Humour which had never ſpread ſo far amongſt us, if the ſame means of prevention had been uſed by the Chriſtian Magiſtrates, as was by *Morat Baſſa* amongſt the *Turks*; who commanded a Pipe to be thruſt through the noſe of a *Turk*, whom he found taking Tobacco, and him to be carried in deriſion all about *Conſtantinople*. It is obſerved, that the taking of Tobacco, was firſt brought into *England* by the Mariners of Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1585. and that it happened not unfitly, in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate uſe of Drinking, which our *Low-Country* Soldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, *An.* 1582. before which time, the *Engliſh* of all Northern people were deemed to be moſt free from that Swiniſh vice, wherein it is to be feared, that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken ſo exceſſively by both theſe Nations, that I may juſtly ſay with a learned *Fleming*, *Herbæ ejus, non dicam uſus, ſed abuſus, non modo in* Anglia, *ſed in* Belgio, *& alibi, inſanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greateſt Riches of this Country is moſt out of ſight, hid in the bowels of the Earth, but found in thoſe never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver, more eminently abounding in this own Province than in all *America*. For inſtance, whereof we may take the Silver-Mines of *Potoſi*, diſcovered in the year 1545. the fifth of which, payable into the King's Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 111 Milions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at ſix ſhillings and ſix-pence; and yet a third part of the whole was diſcharged of that Payment. By this one we may gueſs ſomewhat of the reſt, as by the proportion of one member the Demenſions of the whole Body may be probably aimed at: unleſs the riches of theſe Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by ſome knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and ſome other very learned men, That this *Peru* is that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon's* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chronicles*, *lib* 2. *cap.* 3. *verſ.* 6. *That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim.* A fancy not of ſo ſandy a Foundation as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof, not only *Spain* but all *Europe* alſo is better furniſhed with Gold and Silver than ever formerly. For in the firſt Ages of the World, our Anceſtors, the *Britans*, (I muſt digreſs here once again) had no other money than Iron Rings and braſs-Rings, which they uſed for Inſtruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the moſt uſual materials of their Coin was moſt times Braſs, and ſometimes Leather. *Corum formâ publicâ percuſſum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which laſt ſort we find, that *Frederick* the Emperour made uſe at the Seige of *Millain*, and the *Engliſh* in the time of the Barons Wars. And why not ſo? conſidering that no longer ſince than in the year 1574. the *Hollanders* being then reduced to ſome Extremities made money of Paſt-board. But this happeneth only in caſes of Neceſſity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in ſuch abundance as in latter times) been the chief Inſtruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, and queſtionleſs will ſo continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the ſecond Book of his *Utopia*, preferred Iron before Gold, becauſe more neceſſary for all uſes; *Ut ſine quo non magis quàm ſine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt; telling us, how the *Utopians* uſe to employ thoſe Metals in making Chamber pots and Veſſels of more unclean neceſſities, eating and drinking for the moſt part in Glaſs or Earth. He telleth us alſo, how they make Chains and Fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious Slaves and Malefactors; how they puniſh infamous perſons by putting Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and Chains of Gold about their Necks: how they adorn their little Children with precious Jewels, which Gayeties, when they come to Age, and ſee them worn by none but ſuch little Children, they uſe to caſt away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys, leave off without conſtraint, their Babies, Cobnuts and other *Crepundia*. He farther tells us, how the Ambaſſadours of the *Anemolii*, (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongſt them richly aud glorioſly attired, were took for Slaves, by reaſon of their Golden Chains, and the meaneſt of their followers thought to be the Ambaſſadours: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been Children ſtill: and how the people laughed at their Chains of Gold, as being too weak to ſhackle ſuch ſturdy Fellows. Now though it pleaſed that wiſe State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongſt them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any eſteem which themſelves had of it; but therewith to provide themſelves of foreign Aids, and pay their Armies, when the neceſſities of their affairs, or other reaſon of State did require the ſame. How this Device would ſort with the humours of thoſe People whom *Lucian* anciently did fable, and ſome of latter times more really do fancy, to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to ſay, as having hitherto had no commerce nor correſpondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though poſſibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to ſort well enough with their condition. Certain I am, this ſublunary World of ours, will never brook it. And ſo I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which thoſe and the reſt of the *New World* have furniſhed the Old World withal, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cauſe of the dearneſs of all Commodities at the preſent times, compared unto the cheapneſs of the times foregoing. For where much is, there will be greater prices given than in other places. And yet there want not ſome that add alſo other cauſes of the high prices of our days, *viz.* Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and craft-men, Tranſportation of Grain, pleaſure of great Perſonages, the exceſs of private men, and the like: but theſe laſt I rather take to be Con-cauſes, the firſt being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil* hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the exceſſive abundance of τὰ νόμῳ μόνον ὄντα, things which conſiſt meerly on the conſtitution of men, draweth neceſſarily τὰ φύσει ὄντα, thoſe things which Nature requireth, to an higher Rate in the Market. *Captâ ab* Auguſto Alexandriâ, (ſaith *Oroſius*) Roma *in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quàm antehac rerum venalium pretia ſtatuerentur.* As for that Queſtion, Whether of the wo Kingdoms be happier, that which ſupplieth it ſelf with Money by Traffick and the works of Art, or that which is ſupplyed by Mines growing as the gift of Nature; I find it by this Tale in part reſolved. Two Merchants, departing from *Spain* to get Gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buying *Moors* to dig and delve with, the other fraughteth his Veſſel with Sheep; and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, ſet his Slaves to work; and the other happening in graſſy Ground, put his Sheep to grazing. The Slaves grown cold and hungry, call for Food and Cloathing; which the Sheep-maſter by the increaſe of his ſtock had in great abundance: ſo that what the one got in Gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and wealth, he gladly gave unto the other in Exchange or Bartery, for the continual ſupply of Victuals, Cloaths, and other Neceſſaries for himſelf and his Servants. In the end the Mines being exhauſted, and all the money thence ariſing exchanged with the Shepherd, for ſuch Neceſſaries as his Wants required; home comes the Shepherd, in great Triumph, with abundance of Wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his Travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in concluſion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the Second, and outvied him (as it were) in wealth and Treaſure; notwithſtanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicania*, *Guinea*, ſome in *Spain* and *Italy*, and theſe of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occaſion unto this Diſcourſe, or Digreſſion rather. Before the *Spaniards* reduced it, this Kingdom was Civilized by the *Ynca's*, who had reduced them from their barbarous Rites and Cuſtoms, to a more regular form of Government. They had no Humane Sacrifices like the *Mexicans*, and deteſted their Cuſtom of eating Mans Fleſh. They were all cloathed with Garments made of Cotton or Hair, and had the Art of Spinning and Weaving, which was managed, for the moſt part, by the Men within doors, whilſt their Women took care of their Agriculture, and all their outward buſineſs.

It is now time to take a view of the People alſo, affirmed to be (for the moſt part) of great ſimplicity, yet ſome of them (thoſe eſpecially which lie near the *Æquator*) to be great diſſemblers, and never to diſcover their conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing ſuch Weapons as they had been uſed to, and fearleſs of Death: the rather promted to this laſt, by an old opinion held amongſt them, that in the other world they ſhall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great perſon, who was attended on in his life, they uſe to kill and bury with him one or more of his Servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living, much like the *Jews*, but not in Habit; conforming therein to the other Savages, but that thoſe cover their upper parts with ſome decent Garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only near the *Æquator*; both Sexes elſewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one faſhion over all the Country, except the dreſſing of their Heads, wherein ſcarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his Faſhion to himſelf. The Women leſs eſteemed here than in other places, treated as Slaves, and ſometimes cruelly beaten upon ſlight occaſions: the men (as S. *Paul* ſaith of the ancient Gentiles) *leaving the natural uſe of the Woman, and burning in their luſt towards one another.* For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that *recompence which was meet.* Thoſe on the Sea Coaſt lived moſtly in the open Air, under Shady Trees, or houſes covered with a Mat and a little Earth, becauſe it never Rains. The Mountaineers lived in houſes covered with Turfs, and were more Induſtrious, Ingenious, Valiant and Active: their Women were White, of better Education, and very uſeful to the Men, in aſſiſting them in the Tillage of the Earth; their worſhip was moſtly paid to the *Sun*, as to the Miniſter of the great God, and they thought the *Moon* was his Wife, but they did not worſhip her. They had one Temple dedicated to God, but many very magnificent Piles to the Sun; and they had an Imperfect Notion of Heaven and Hell, and the Immortality of the Soul, and of the Rewards and Puniſhments in another Life.

Laet. lib. 10. c. 1.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. St. *Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over againſt the Iſle of *Puna*, on the further ſide of the *Æquator*; an Iſland of twelve Leagues in compaſs, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guagaquil*, of a longer courſe than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur*, on the South of *Tombez*, over againſt the Iſle of *Lobos*. No Iſland after this of note upon all this Coaſt. If any come in our way which runneth towards the Eaſt, we ſhall meet with them in view of the ſeveral Provinces; and ſo we ſhall with the Hills or Mountains which are moſt conſiderable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to loſe themſelves; in Compaſs 80 Leagues, and uſually Navigable with Ships and Barks. The Waters of it not ſo ſalt as thoſe of the Sea, but ſo thick, that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many Habitations as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair Water-courſe or River it paſſeth into a leſs Lake, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence moſt probably findeth a way into the Sea, or elſe is ſwallowed in the bowels of that thirſty earth: but the firſt more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Juridical Reſorts; *viz.* of 1. *Quito.* 2. *Lima*: and 3. *Charchos*; each having under it many ſeveral and ſubordinate Provinces, too many and of too ſmall note to be here conſidered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greateſt reckoning: 1. *Quito.* 2. *Los Quixos.* 3. *Lima.* 4. *Cuſco.* 5. *Charchos*: and 6. *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the mid-lands; to which the Iſlands of it ſhall be joyned in the cloſe of all.

1. QUITO, is bounded on the North with *Popayan*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacifick Ocean; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the Eaſt, with that of *Los Quixos.* So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the firſt Diviſion. It had at firſt Kings of it own, but before the arrival of the *Spaniards*, was conquered by the King of *Peru*, and together with it fell under the Dominion of *Spain*.

2. The Soil is as fertile, and as fit for the Fruit of *Europe* as any other in *Peru*: well ſtored with Cattle, eſpecially the *Paco's* or *Peruvian* Sheep; and plentifully furniſhed both with Fiſh and Fowl. In many parts great ſtore of Nitre, of which they make moſt approved good Gunpowder; and in ſome Rivers, eſpecially that of S. *Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The People generally induſtrious, eſpecially in making of Cloath of Cotton, equal almoſt to ſilks for fineneſs: of conſtitution ſtrong, and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and ſuch other Vices; with which they are ſo much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Chriſtian Faith, not willingly reclaimed from their ancient Barbariſm. Extreamly puniſhed with the Pox, an hereditary Diſeaſe amongſt them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins ſo infected with it, that neither Tobacco, *Guaiacum*, nor *Sarſaparilla*, all which this Country doth afford, in a great abundance, is able to preſerve them from it.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Carangues*, a large and ſumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings, ſo named, becauſe ſituate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloudy, and a man-eating People; ſubdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightieſt of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withal killing many of his Miniſters and Garriſon Soldiers, they were upon a ſecond Conqueſt brought to the Banks of a great Lake, into which 20000 of them being killed were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called *Yaguarcocha*, or the lake of blood. 2. *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferiour to the other; yet giving name unto the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Reſort, and once the Regal Seat of its proper Kings, (till made Subject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the Ruines of whoſe

Palace are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called S. *Franciſco*, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Equinoctial*; well fortified, and as well furniſhed with Ammunition: inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, beſides the Natives. The Streets thereof ſtrait and broad; the Buildings decent: the principal of which, the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Juſtice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a Flaming Mountain, or *Volcano*; which in the year 1560. caſt out ſuch abundance of Cinders, that if Rain had not happened beyond expectation, had made great ſpoil upon the place. Its See is under the Arch-Biſhop of *Limas*, and ſtands in the fruitful Valley, at the foot of a Mountain called *Volcano Pinta*, near *Machangara* and *Machangavilla*, two Rivers almoſt under the Line, 256 *Spaniſh* Leagues from *Lima* to the North, and ſix from the *Pacifick* Ocean to the Eaſt. In 1586. there was an Univerſity opened here. The Soil ſeems barren, yet yields Corn, Fruits, and Cattle plentifully. The Poſition is pleaſant, the Temperature of the Air like that of *Spain*. The natural Inhabitants are more Civil and Induſtrious than thoſe of the greater part of *Peru*. In my Author's time it was inhabited by 500 *Spaniſh* Families, ſome *Portugals*, and ſome other *European* Nations. *Laet.* p. 512. 4. *Tacunga*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5. *Rhiobamba*, in the Territory of the *Puruaſii*, 40 Leagues from that: each of them honoured with another of thoſe ancient Palaces. 6. *Thomebamba*, neighboured by another of the King's Palaces, but more magnificent than the former, ſituate in the Country of the *Canaries*, amongſt whom anciently the Women tilled the Land, and did all without doors, whilſt the men ſtaid at home and ſpun, and attended Houſewifery. 7. *Cuenca*, 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, ſituate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, and Veins of Sulphur. 8. *Loxa*, Sometimes called *Zarza*, ſixteen Leagues Southward of *Cuenca*, ſituate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley called *Cuxibamba*, between two fine Rivulets. The Citizens well furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, but not otherwiſe wealthy. This place is free from Serpents and all troubleſom Inſects. The Air is healthful, but rather hot than cool, ſubject to Rains from *March* to *Auguſt*, but never ſaw any Snow. It has plenty of Oak and Cedar Timbers, and fine Springs of Water, Maize and Wheat, Cattle, Fiſh and Fowl. The Natives of it encreaſe much, and willingly embrace the Chriſtian Religion, *Laet.* p. 418. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the Eaſt of *Loxa*: and 10. *Jaen*, 35 from that, both ſituate in the Province of *Quichimayo*, and both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea-coaſts there are, 11. *Portus Vetus*, (*Puerto Veio*, as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-ſide, but in ſo ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the firſt Towns of this Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monſtrous Giant, whoſe Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12 *Mantu*, the Port-Town to *Porto Veio*, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt *Panama* and *Peru*; the Town it ſelf ſituate in a rich Vein of Emeralds. 13. *Guayaquil*, or S. *Jago de Guayaquil*, called alſo *Gulata*; ſeated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*, a noted and much frequented Empory. 14. *Caſtro* a Colony of *Spaniards*, planted *Anno* 1568. in that part of this Country which they call *Provincia de los Eſmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayan*. 15. S. *Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation. 16. *Payta*, a ſmall Town, but neighboured by the ſafeſt and moſt frequented Haven of all this Country, as guarded from the Wind by the Cape of S. *Hellens* on the North, and *Punta Piurina* on the South, two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt, *Anno* 1587. by Captain *Cavendiſh*; who at the ſame time alſo pillaged the Iſle of *Puna*, the moſt noted Iſland of this Tract, ſituate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was ſaid before. Fruitful of all things neceſſary to the life of man; Parrots for pleaſure; *Sarſaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times ſo ſtout and warlike, that they Maintained a long War with thoſe of *Tombez*, till in the end, compoſed by the mediation of the King of *Peru*, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as ſince their embracing of the Goſpel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2. LOS QUIXOS lieth on the Eaſt of *Quito*, and the Weſt of *El Dorado* (one of the *Cantreds* of *Guiana*, ſo called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the Soil and People from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is ſomewhat the more barren, and leſs ſtored with thoſe rich Metals which the *Spaniards* come for. This was firſt diſcovered in the year 1557. The *Spaniards* have only four Colonies in it. The people have alſo a diſtinct Tongue of their own, though they both underſtand and ſpeak the *Peruvian* Language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Batza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the firſt Diſcovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 Leagues from *Quito* towards the Eaſt, now the Seat of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, 20 Leagues on the South-Eaſt of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; ſo called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the Eaſt of this Province lieth the *Cantred* of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockiſh and ignorant people, and deſtitute of all things neceſſary for the comforts of Life. Moſt mercileſly tormented, and caſt to Dogs, to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, becauſe they could not ſhew him the readieſt way to ſome richer Country than their own; this being the moſt barren Region of that part of *Peru* which they call *La Sierra*, or the Hill-Countries. More Eaſtward yet in that part which they call the *Andes*, lie the *Cantreds* of the *Bracomori*, commonly called *Judan de Salinis*, by the name of the firſt Diſcoverer of it. A Country not inferiour unto many for the quantity of Gold; ſuperiour to any for the pureneſs of it. Chief Towns of which, 1. *Valladolid*. 2. *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Combinama*; 3. S. *Jago de las Montanas*, (or S. *James* of the Mountains:) all *Spaniſh* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis à Loiola*, once the Pro-Prefect of the Province, by whom firſt throughly ſubdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3. LIMA, called alſo LOS REYES, is bounded on the North with *Quito*; on the South, with *Charcas*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Colloa*, and the Province of *Cuſco*. So named from *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the ſixth to the ſixteenth degree of Southern Latitude: or meaſuring from the Promontory *del Agujah* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 Leagues. The Soil is of the ſame nature with that of *Quito*, but more diſtributed into Valleys, and better peopled.

Places of moſt obſervations, 1 *Miraflores*, in the Valley of *Zana*, 110 leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about 5 leagues diſtant from the Sea; on which it had an Haven belonging to it called *Chencepen*. The Town is well ſeated, and inhabited by a wealthy People, made ſuch by the abundance of Sugar-canes in the neighbouring Valley. 2. *Truxillo*, in the rich and flouriſhing Valey of *Chimo*, on the banks of a ſmall but pleaſant River, and about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large but unſafe Haven, which they call *El Azzecife de Trigillo*. The Town it ſelf ſituate in the ſeventh degree and 30 minutes of Southern Latitude; well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards*, beſides the Natives, and beautified with four Convents of ſeveral Orders. The *Spaniards* have planted here Vines, Fig-trees, Oranges, Wheat, and all other *Spaniſh* Fruits; ſo that they have a Plenty of Proviſions; its *Lat* is 7. 30. to the South 80 Leagues from *Lima* to the North. It was was then one of the principall Cities of *Peru*, containing 500 houſes, four Monaſteries, and having in the Neighbourhood 50000 *Indians* that paid Tribute to the *Citizens*. This Tribute is more properly a rent; within two Leagues of the City, it has a Port upon the South Sea, which is not ſafe, yet much frequented about the year 1630. *Laet* p. 428. 3. *La Parilla*, in the Valley of the *Santa*, in which it ſtandeth, and by which it is furniſhed with a ſafe and convenient Road for Shipping: 20 Leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of Silver, not long ſince diſcovered. 4. *Armedo*, ſeated amongſt Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten Leagues North of *Lima*. 5. *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Cividad de Los Reyes*, or the *City of Kings*, ſituate in the Valley of *Lima*, the moſt fruitful part of all *Peru*, in the Latitude of Twelve Degrees and an Half. Built with much Art, for all the chief ſtreets anſwer to the Market-place; ſcarce any private Houſe which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with ſweet Fields and moſt pleaſant Gardens. The Founder of it *Franciſco Pizarro*, who laid the firſt ſtone on *Twelfth-day*, (which the *Spaniards* call the *Feaſt of Kings*) whence it had the name, *Anno* 1553. A Town of greater Wealth than Bigneſs, the Riches of *Peru* paſſing yearly through it, well houſed, whether we reſpect the private or publick Edifices: the Cathedral Church made after the Model of that of *Sevil*; the Convents of Religious Orders, the Courts of Juſtice, and the Palaces of the Archbiſhop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly Buildings; the Cathedral Church ſo well endow'd that the Revenues of the Archbiſhop do amount yearly to 30000 Ducats, beſides what belongeth to the Canons and other Miniſters. The Air is ſo temperate, that there is no Need of Fire, and yet the heats are not troubleſome, which are greateſt in *December*, *January*, *February*, and *March*, their Vintage is in *Aprill*: From *May* to *September* is their Winter, which is very cloudy, yet it never Rains; but a ſmall dew falls, that makes the Earth very fruitful. This is their moſt pleaſant ſeaſon, and that which yeilds them all ſorts of Fruit. The Valley of *Lima* is watered by three Rivers, and beautified by a Vaſt number of Farms, yeilding plenty of Sugar, Figgs, Vines, and Fleſh; the Ocean affords it equal plenty of Fiſh. The City is ſeat on the South ſide of a Vaſt River, covered by a ſtone Bridge. It has ſix Pariſh Churches, fifteen Monaſteries, four Hoſpitals; each Houſe has an *Aquaduct*, a *Court*, and moſt of them have *Gardens*, but low and ill built. The City is without doubt very rich, the Viceroy enjoying a Revenue of 400000 Ducats. The Prebends 5 or 6000. It is alſo the General Mart of ſouth *America*, and almoſt the only Port on the South Sea; hither is firſt brought all the Gold and Silver of *Peru* and *Chile*, and all the *European* Merchandize from *Panama* with thoſe of *New Spain*; from hence many millions of Gold and Silver is ſent every year to *Panama* for *Europe*. The City is altogether open without any Wall, Garriſon, or Watch, by Day or Night, only the Gardens about it are Secured by a Bank of Earth. The *Spaniards* of both Sexes were thought (about 1630.) to be 5000, the *Negroes* 40000. The Viceroy had two Troops of Horſe, and eight Companies of foot, who were paid by the King of *Spain*, but the foot were not, but the Citizens were Armed for their Security, *Laet*. p. 432. The 20th of *October*, 1687. this City was intirely Ruined by an Earthquake, not one houſe eſcaping and 1000. of the Inhabitants periſhed by the Sea, and falls of Houſes. 6. *Collao*, the Haven Town to *Lima*, from which two Leagues diſtant; a Town of 600 Families, for the moſt part Seamen: every Houſe having ſome Cellar in it for the ſtowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, *&c.* for the uſe of Mariners; beſides thoſe publick Ware houſes for the ſeveral Commodities which paſs from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579. when ſacked and ſpoiled of infinite Treaſures by Sir *Franc*^{is} *Drake*; ſince that time ſtrengthened by two Bulwarks and a Wall of Earth, with 30 peices of Braſs Ordnance planted on the Works. In 1624. the *Dutch* took the Iſland over againſt the Port, and fortified it; but they could never take *Callao*. Yet of 50 Ships they found there, they burnt 30. The go every Year a ſmall Fleet from hence to *America* in *March*, for the Plate brought from *Potoſi*, which with the reſt of the Treaſures of this Kingdom in *May* is ſent to *Panama*. In the Earthquake of 1687. this ſuffered as much as *Lima*, the Ocean caſting the Ship a League on Land, and Drowning infinite numbers of the Inhabitants on the Shore. 7. *Packacama*, in the Valley ſo called, but four Leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000 Ducats of Gold and Silver; not reckoning thoſe infinite Treaſures which the Souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8. *Guarco*, a a Colony of 300 *Spaniards*, ſixteen Leagues on the South of *Pachacama*, environed with the beſt Fields for Weat in all *Peru*. 9. *Valvarde* in a Valley of the ſame name; ſo called from the perpetual Greenneſs of it; beſt furniſhed with Vines, and thoſe affording the beſt Wines of all this Country. A large Town, conſiſting of 500 *Spaniards*, beſides Women and Children, and other Inhabitants of the Country, well Traded, conſidering its diſtance from the Sea, (*Puerto Quemado*, the Haven to it being Six Leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, and Hoſpital, three Frieries, and the handſomeſt Women of theſe parts, diſtant from *Lima* 35 leagues. The Air is pure and healthful, the Women the moſt beautiful in *Peru*; The Governour was nominated by the King of *Spain*. It ſtands 35 Leagues from *Lima* to the South, *Laet*. p. 436. 10. *Caſtro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolococha*, 60 leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the pureſt Silver, digged out of a dry and barren Hill, always covered with Snow; and ſtanding in ſo ſharp an Air, that the *Spaniſh* Women will not be delivered in it, but are carried farther off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that Vein of Tobacco, which our Good fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Varreinas*. 11. *Arequipa*, in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120 Leagues from *Lima*, a pleaſing and deligthful Town; which ſituate at the Foot of a flaming Mountain, (from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a freſh and temperate Air, and a Soil always flouriſhing. The Silver of *Plata* and *Potoſi* paſſeth through this Town, and is Shipped for *Panama*, as an Haven belonging to it, ſituate at the Mouth of the River *Chile*, (upon which *Arequipa* ſtandeth) but diſtant from the Town about 14 Leagues. This City lieth 150 Leagues from *Potoſi*, a long and a difficult Paſſage, and yet for a great while the Silver was brought hither that was to be ſhipped for *Spain*; but it is now carried to *Arica*, which is much nearer. In the Year 1572. this City was almoſt wholly ruined by an Earthquake, and in 1600. a *Volcano* near it raged ſo horribly, that the Noiſe was heard to *Lima*, and the Aſhes of it ſpoiled all the Fruit in *Peru* that year. If this One Mountain had that dreadful Effect, what will follow when all the Combuſtible Matter in the Bowels of the Earth, ſhall at once be fired at the Command of the great Former of it? This is a Biſhops See, under the Archbiſhop of *Cuſco*, and it is Governed by a *Corrigidore*. The *Indians* of theſe parts are much deſtroyed by the *Spaniards*, *Laet*. p. 439. 12. *Caxamalca*, more within the Land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal Palace of the Kings of *Peru*; memorable for the impriſonment and murther of *Atibilaba*, or *Athnalpa*, the laſt King of this Country, vanquiſhed nor far of by *Franciſco Pizarro*. 13. *Cachapoyaro*, in the *Cantred* ſo called; the beſt inhabited of any one *Cantred* of thoſe parts, ſuppoſed to contain in it 20000 of the natural inhabitants, which pay Duties to the King of *Spain*; and ſo eſteemed for beautiful Women, that from hence the

Kings were anciently furniſhed with their Concubines. 14. *Leon de Guanaco*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it ſtandeth) a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich ſweet and very pleaſantly ſeated: beautified heretofore with a moſt magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with ſome Religious Houſes, a College of *Jeſuites*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midand Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purpoſely paſſed over.

4 *CUSCO*, comprehendeth, as the chief of all thoſe ſeveral Provinces of the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes* which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Bleſt with a ſweet and temperate Air, not over ſcalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the diſtempers of the Evening Miſts: the Country full of freſh Rivers, notable good Paſturage, and great Herds of Cattle; well ſtored with *Coco*, which is gathered here in ſome abundance, and moſt excellent Veniſon.

Places of moſt repute in it, 1. *Bombon*, in the ſame Latitude with *Lima*, neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chincha cocha*, ten Leagues in compaſs, begirt about with pleaſant Hills, and built upon with many rich and as pleaſant Villages: out of which runneth the River *Marannon*, one of the greateſt of theſe parts, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to end his courſe in *Mare del Noordt*. 2. *Parcos*, once beautified with a regal Palace, ſeated on the top of a little hill, and begirt about with craggy Mountains. 3. *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Juan de la Vittoria*, ſituate under the 13. degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of a freſh and pleaſing Stream, well built, the Houſes being all of Stone, and tiled or ſlated; three Churches one of them a Cathedral, beſides divers Convents. 4. *Bicar*, ſuppoſed to be built in the very Centre of *Peru*; where ſtill remain the ruines of a ſumptuous Palace. 5. *Guancabelica*, a new Town, or but newly raiſed into eſteem, ſuppoſed to contain at the preſent 2000 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the Natives. Increaſed, ſince the year 1566, from a beggarly Village to this greatneſs, by the Mines of Quick-ſilver then diſcovered: Mines of ſuch Riches, that the Kings part out of them amounted yearly to above 40000 *Pezoes*, which is about 130000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that Mineral being found ſo neceſſary for the purifying and ſpeedy extraction of their Gol, dthat it is not ſaid without cauſe by the Chymiſts, that *Quick-ſilver gives the matter to* Gold, *and Sulphur the form*. 6. *Cuſco*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130 Leagues on the Eaſt of *Lima*, and ſituate in a rugged and unequal Soil, begirt with Mountains, but on both ſides of a pleaſant and commodious River. Once the Seat-Royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of the Nobility to build here a Palace for their continual abode. Still of moſt credit in this Country, both for beauty and bigneſs, and the multitude of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 3000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 of the Natives, beſides Women and Children. The Palace of the King, advanced on a loſty Mountain, was held to be a work of ſo great a magnificence, built of ſuch huge and maſſie Stones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of Devils than of Men. Now miſerably defaced, moſt of the Stones being tumbled down to build private Houſes in the City: ſome of the Churches raiſed alſo by the ruines of it, and amongſt them perhaps both the Biſhop's Palace and Cathedral, whoſe annual Rents are eſtimated at 20000 Ducats. Yet did not this vaſt Building yield more luſtre to the City of *Cuſco*, than a ſpacious Market-place, the Centre in which thoſe Highways did meet together, which the *Ingas* had cauſed to be made croſs the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with moſt incredible charge and pains for the uſe of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. The principal Temple was Dedicated to the Sun, and was a rich and magnificent Pile on the *Area*, of which the Monaſtery of St. *Dominick* is now built, which is of great Fame and extent. When the *Spaniards* came into *America*, they ſound never a Town but *Cuſco*, that had the form of a City, nor is it any wonder that it was the Richeſt City in *Peru*, ſince it was the Royal City, to which the Treaſure of ſo many and ſo diſtant Provinces were brought, which the *Spaniards* found lodged in many Vaults, amounting to an Immenſe Sum in Silver and Gold. It has now four Monaſteries, four Churches, and many Hoſpitals: The Air is cold but very Healthful, and the City has all things neceſſary in great abundance. In the midſt of the City is a Fountain that yields the pureſt white Salt, though 140 Leagues from the Sea, *Laet.* p. 450. *Cuſco* was built by *Iuca Manco Capac*, the firſt King of *Peru*, 400 years before the Arrival of the *Spaniards* in *America*, *ibid* 469. 7. *S. Franciſco de la Vittoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spaniſh* Colony, and about 20 Leagues from *Cuſco*. 8. *S. Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caravayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the pureſt Gold, whence it had the name; a Colony of *Spaniards* alſo. Beyond the *Andes* lie ſome Countrys, much famed for Wealth; the Diſcovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes with loſs, not ſeldom with ſome hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without ſucceſs. It ſeems a mighty wonder that the *Spaniards* ſhould not follow the courſe of the Rivers that in this Kingdom cut the *Andes*, and fall certainly into the *Atlantick* Ocean, for though they may poſſibly meet with *Cataracks*, or great falls, yet ſuppoſing their Boats are ſmall, they may there drag them over the Land, and with greater facility Travel down a ſtream 1000 Miles, than up the ſtream 500, or on the dry Land 200; and beſides their Boats will carry their Proviſions as well as men, which are moſt likely to be wanting in ſuch long Journeys, amongſt Barbarous Nations. We are told two Prieſts by Boat came down from *Peru*, to the mouth of the River of *Amazons*; and that a *Spaniſh* General went up the ſame River to *Peru*; which ſhews, this is not a meer Speculation; but the *Mulato* or *American Spaniards* are much leſs Couragious and Active than their Anceſtors, and having vaſt ſpaces of Rich unpeopled Lands, have no Temptation for the preſent to ſeek for new Conqueſts. Theſe are in part alſo the Reaſons why the *Engliſh* have not ſearched the Rivers on the Weſt ſide of the *Apalatean* Hills, dividing *Carolina*, *Virginia*, and *New England*, from *Canada*: though the diſcovery of the falls of theſe Rivers, eſpecially if any of them paſs into the Bay of *Mexico*, would be of equal Advantage to the *Engliſh*, that theſe would be to the *Spaniards*.

5. *COLLAO* lieth on the South of thoſe Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of *Cuſco*; having on the Weſt the reſt of *Lima*; on the South, *Los Charcos*; on the Eaſt, thoſe unknown Countrys beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the Eaſt and Weſt by two Mountainous Ridges, which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cuſco*, do there divide themſelves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Country is plain and full of Rivers, well ſtored with rich Paſtures, and thoſe Paſtures with great Herds of Cattle, barren of Corn, and not well furniſhed with Maize; inſtead whereof they make their bread of a Root called *Popa*, dried in the Sun and bruiſed to powder: of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potoſi*. Yet notwithſtanding this great want, it is thought to be the moſt Populous part of all *Peru*: the ſoundneſs and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populoſity of a Country, as the richneſs and plenties of the Soil. The People are alſo of a clearer and more ſolid Judgment than the reſt of *Peru*, and ſo well skilled in the obſervation of the Courſe of the Moon, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the Year diſtinguiſhed into Months, Weeks, Days, for each of which they had a proper and ſignificant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places of greateſt note in it, 1. *Chuquinga*, naturally ſtrong and almoſt inacceſſible, environed either with unfordable Waters, or impaſſable Mountains; one Cauſey only leading to it, which for the ſpace of three Leagues, is ſaid to be capable but of one at once. 2. *Ayavire*, ennobled with many fair and coſtly Buildings; eſpecially with Monuments of the dead, which exceed the reſt both in coſt and number: for that cauſe by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulturas*: The Inhabitants of this Tract were much waſted by the Civil Wrrs which the *Spaniards* had among themſelves. 3. *Hatuncolla*, the Metropolis or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth ſignifie: not far from which the famous River *Caravaya*, famous for the abundance of Gold in the ſands thereof, hath its firſt original. 4. *Chiquita*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Banks of the Lake of *Titieaca*: a Town of ſo great Trade and Riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediately by the King; his place being eſtimated at the worth of 50000 Ducats yearly. 5. *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; ſuppoſed to be the moſt ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now moſt remarkable for the Ruines of certain great and ſtupendious Buildings, ſome of the ſtones whereof are ſaid to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and ſix in thickneſs; not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this people had not till of late) but by ſome ſtrange Arts. 6. *De la Paz*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*, by the *Spaniards* called alſo *Pueblo Nuevo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiabo*, according to the name of the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth, is ſituate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of Wind and Weather, but over-looking a large Plain of great fertility, well watered, and well wooded both for Fruits and Fewel. 7. *Chilane*, 8. *Acos*, 9. *Pomata*, 10. *Cepita*: and ſome others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima* and *Collao*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*, on the Eaſt, with ſome Countreys not well diſcovered, interpoſed betwixt it and the Province of *Kio de la Plata*. This is alſo called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Country extendeth in length from North to South but 300 Leagues, but meaſuring by the Sea-ſhores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn or Cattle, though in many places furniſhed with good Paſture-grounds; but for the inexhauſtable Mines of Gold and Silver; not to be equalled in *Peru*. Of theſe the principal are thoſe of *Porco* and *Potoſi*, but theſe laſt the chief: out of which comes that Maſs of Silver which yieldeth the King ſo much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The Mine 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do deſcend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 ſteps, ſome of the workmen ſee not the Sun for many months together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them, and many die in the works for want of Air. For the refining of this Silver there are 52 Engines of Silver Mills, upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, beſides many which they turn with Horſes. The Poets words never more literally verified then in theſe deep Mines, where ſpeaking of the Iron Age, he deſcribes it thus.

Nec tantum ſegetes alimentaque debita dives
Poſcebatur humus, ſed itum eſt in vicera terræ;
Quaſque recondiderat Stygiiſque *admoverat Umbris,*
Effodiunter opes, irritamenta malorum,

Which I find thus rendred by *George Sandys*:

Nor with rich Earth's juſt nouriſhments content,
For Treaſures they her ſecret Entrails rent.
That powerful evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid and wrapt in *Stygian* Shades.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Plata*, ſo called from the rich Mines of Silver found in Mount *Porco* near adjoyning; well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but ſearched into again by *Franciſco Pizarro*, who (is is thought) might have raiſed hence 200000 Ducats of yearly Incomes, if hopes of greater at *Potoſi* had not took him off. The Town is commodiouſly ſeated in a fruitful Soil in the 19. degree of Latitude, and 180 Leagues diſtant from the City of *Cuſco*, honoured with the ſeat of the Governour and the Courts of Juſtice, and beautified (beſides many Religious Houſes) with a fair Cathedral, the See of the beſt endowed Biſhoprick in all *Peru*; his Revenues being eſtimated at 8000 Ducats of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chuquiſaca*. This was built by the *Spaniards* in the Valley of *Chuquiſica*, 165. *Spaniſh* Leagues from *Cuſco* to the South, ſome ſay, and 18 from *Potoſi*, and 110 from the *Pacifick* Ocean. The Country about it yields Wheat, Barly, Grapes, and Fruit in plenty. The Air Temperate, but inclining to Cold. *Potoſi* lyes in the ſame Latitude, 18 Leagues from it to the Weſt, and much colder and barren alſo. It is very Populous, and beſides the Cathedral, ſeveral Monaſteries. The old Kings of *Peru*, imployed many People in their digging and refining Silver in a Mountain called *Parco*, or *Porco*, from which was fetched that vaſt Treaſure the *Spaniards* found in *Peru* when they Conquered it. And *Piſarus* began to work theſe Mines again, but the diſcovery of the Richer Veins of *Potoſi* put a ſtop to theſe. The *Spaniards* are eſtimated at 800, the *Indians* at 60000, but to be underſtood of the Dioceſs and not of the City, *Laet. p.* 161. 2. *Oropeſa*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Viceroy here, in the rich and pleaſant Valley called *Cochabamba*, Anno 1565. 3. *Potoſi*, neighboured by thoſe wealthy Mines already mentioned. Diſcovered firſt in the year 1545, before which time this Town was but a ſorry Village; now the beſt peopled and frequented in all the Province: ſaid to be conſtantly inhabited by four or five thouſand *Spaniards*, many more of the Natives: not ſo few as 30000 workmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: beſides the infinite reſort of Merchants in purſuit of Profit, and idle Gallants, who come hither for their luſts and pleaſures. Situate in the 21. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, in a cold and very barren Soil; yet plentifully furniſhed with all commodities both for Neceſſity and delight. For as the money is, ſo is the Market always. The *Spaniards* call it the Imperial City of *Potoſi*. Its *Lat.* is 20. 40. to the South. About the year 1630. it had between four and 6000 *Spaniſh* Inhabitants. It was then governed by a *Spaniſh Corrigidore*, ſent away every third year from *Spain* by the King, who had 10000 Ducats allowed him, and immenſe Emoluments or Perquiſites which he carved to himſelf beſides. The Monaſteries are Numerous and very rich, the Fields about it are cold, barren, and bare, nothing but Oats, which ſcarce ever ripen, but are cut and given for Forrage in the Blade; yet after all, there is nothing wanting here, that can ſerve the Needs and Pleaſures of the Inhabitants. The City is two Leagues in compaſs, and far the greateſt City in *Peru*. 4. *Miſque*, a ſmall Town, but one which furniſheth *Potoſi* with good plenty of Wine: as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarixa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, is a ſmall Town, but the moſt noted Haven of this Country, in the Latitude of 19 degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potoſi*, and as much from *La Plata* to the South Eaſt; the wealth whereof brought hither on the backs of their Sheep, is here ſhipped for *Lima*. The truth hereof was experienced by Sir *Francis Drake*, who ſeized here on three *Spaniſh* Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound apiece. Mr. *Tho. Cavendiſh* our Country man, who viſited it in the year 1587. ſaith, it lies in 18. Deg. 31. *Lat.* and he having but a few Men, he durſt not attempt it, but he took two Ships in the Port. The *Dutch* in 1599.

ſailed to this Port, and found it to be rather a ſafe Road, than a Haven. It being well defended from the North, Eaſt and South winds,but not from the Weſt,nor of eaſy and ſafe Approach. The Gold and Silver is brought hither from *Potoſi* by *Peru* Sheep, guarded by a few *Indians* and *Spaniards*, who came hither in *March* or *April*; and here they Ship the Plate, which in *May* goes to *Lima*. In the beginning of this Century,the *Spaniards* firſt Fortified this place, being driven to it by the Depredations of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. The Town is Governed by a *Corrigidore*; Nominated once in ſix Years by the King of *Spain*. When Sir *Francis Drake* was here, the Town conſiſted but of 20 Houſes; afterwards it aroſe to 100, *Laet*. p. 465, 66. This Town ſtands as *Accoſta* ſaith, 70 Leagues from *Potoſi*, or as others 80. *Oliverner Vander Noordt* placeth it *Lat*.. 18. 40. *Drake* and moſt others 18. 30. or 31. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this coaſt, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for Habitation, accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* Story, which we ſhall ſum up with as much brevity as we can. The people were generally governed by the chief of their Tribes, as in all Countrys elſe, where neither the Arms of Foreiners, nor the Ambition of ſome few of the Natives had diminiſhed any thing of their natural Rights. * Not ſubject to any one Supreme till theſe latter times; the *Igas* or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatneſs but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the firſt ſo ſmall, that it was not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs, ſituate in that part of the Country where the City of *Cuſco* now ſtandeth. Oppoſed at their firſt Encroachments by the *Cannares*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themſelves by a piece of Wit; giving it out, that their Family had not only been the Seminary from which Mankind came, but the Authors of that Religion alſo which was then in uſe; particularly that the whole World had been deſtroyed by a Flood, except only ſeven, (ſo far they hit upon the truth) which ſeven had hid themſelves in a Cave, called *Paticambo* where having lived in ſafety till the fury of the Water had been aſſwaged, they came abroad at laſt and re-peopled the Country; that *Viracocha*, the Creature and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how and with what Rites he would be worſhipped, and which Rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; and finally, that the ſame *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the chief of their Family, aſſuring him,that he would aid him with inviſible Forces againſt all their Enemies. This Tale ſoon gained belief amongſt thoſe *Barbarians*, and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas* who by that Aid became victorious. This is ſuppoſed to have happen'd 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flouriſhing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Country,which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoyning Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Ægiptians Pharaoh*, the *Tartars Cham*; the word *Inga*, ſignifying and Emperor, as *Capa Ingas* (by which they ſometimes called them) the only Emperours. Much reverenced by their Subjects, and ſo faithfully ſerved, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of Treaſon: Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to endear their Subjects, and keep them out of leiſure to foment new Factions. The way of indearment, by the fair and ſatisfactory diſtribution of the ſpoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the firſt unto the ſervice of the Gods; the ſecond for the maintenance of the King. his Court, and Nobles; the third,to the relief of the common people. A diſtribution far more equal than that of *Licurgus*,or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cauſe of Wars,they kept the people buſied in the works of Magnificence; as building Palaces in every one of the conquered Provinces, which ſerved not only as Forts to aſſure the Conqueſt,but were imployed as Store-houſes to lay up Proviſions, diſtributed amongſt the People in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, ſo of chiefeſt uſe,was the Croſs ways they made over all the Country,the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains,extending 500 Leagues in length, a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Egypt*.For they were forced to raiſe the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flatteſt Plains; to cut through ſome Rocks,and underprop others, that were ruinous; to make even ſuch ways as were uneaſie, and ſupport the Precipies; and in the Plains to vanquiſh ſo many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a Sandy Country muſt needs carry with it. Kept to theſe Tasks, the people had no leiſure to think of Practiſes; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they ſaw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Caciques*, (ſo they called the Nobility) the *Inga* did not only command them to reſide in *Cuſco*, to be aſſured of their perſons; but cauſed them to ſend their Children to be brought up there, that they might ſerve as Hoſtages for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered alſo,that all ſuch as repaired to *Cuſco*,the Imperial City; ſhould be attired according to his own Country faſhion; ſo to prevent thoſe Leagues and Aſſociation which otherwiſe, without any note or obſervation,might be made amongſt them. Many ſuch Politick Inſtitutions were by them deviſed, which had little of the Barbarous in them; and clearly ſhewed that there were other Nations which had Eyes in their Heads beſides thoſe of *China*. What elſe concerns the Story of them, offereth it ſelf in the following Catalogue of

* This is found from Pole to Pole round the Globe in all unconquered Countrys, and ſprung from an Ancient Cuſtom of Fathers of Families, governing their own Families whileſt they Lived; and dividing them at their Deaths as they thought fit, till ſome found the miſchief of it, and kept the Government to one Son intirely.

The Kings of *PERU*.

1. *Mango Capac*, deſcended of the chief of the firſt ſeven Families, the firſt who laid the foundation of this puiſſant Monarchy: he ſubdued the *Cannares*, and built the City of *Cuſco*.

2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldeſt Son of *Mango*, ſubdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chancara*.

3. *Lonque-Yupanqui*, the Son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquito*, *Ayavire*, the *Canus*, and the Inhabitants about *Titicaca*: the firſt Advancer of the ſervice of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many Viſits.

4. *Moyta-Capac*, the Son of *Yupanqui*, ſubdued all the reſt of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chuquiapa*, and a great part of the *Charcas*.

5. *Capac-Yupanqui*, or *Yapanque* II. the Son of *Mayta*, enlarged his Kingdom Weſtward unto *Mare del Zur*.

6. *Rocea* II. of *Yncha Rocha*, eldeſt Son of *Yupanqui* the ſecond enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the Conqueſt of the great Province of *Antabuyallam*, and many others.

7. *Jabuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocha* the ſecond, added to his Eſtates (by the Valour of his Brother *Mayta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tacaman*. Deſpoſed by the practice of his Son.

8. *Viracocha*, the Son of *Huacac*, having ſetled and enlarged his Empire, raiſed many great and ſtately Works, and amongſt others many *Aqueducts* of great uſe, but charge. For fear of him, *Hancohuala*, King of the *Chuncas*,with many thouſands of his people, forſook their Country.

9. *Pachatutec-Yncha*, ſon of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the Conqueſt of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes* and South-ſea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.

10. *Yupanqui* III. or *Yncha-Ynpanchi*, ſon of *Pachacutec*, ſubdued the *Chonches* and *Moxes* with ſome part of *Chile*.

11. *Yupanqui* IV. or *Tapac Yncha Yupanqui*, Son of *Yupanqui* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.

12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Guaynacapac*, ſon of *Yupanqui* the fourth, the moſt mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*, and is ſuppoſed to be the Founder of thoſe two great Roads ſpoken of before.

13. *Huaſcar*, or *Guaſcar-Yncha*, the eldeſt Son of *Guaynacapac*, after a Reign of five years depoſed and ſlain by his Brother.

14. *Athualpa* or *Atubaliba*, the third Son of *Guaynacapa*, by the Daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*; into which Kingdom he ſucceeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with ſuch power, that he overcame him, and ſo gained the Kingdom. Vanquiſhed afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battle of *Caxamalca* he was taken Priſoner. And though he gave him a ranſom for his Life and Liberty, an Houſe Piled up on all ſides with Gold and Silver, valued (as ſome ſay) at ten Millions of Crowns, yet they perfidiouſly ſlew him.

15. *Mango Capac* II. the ſecond ſon of *Guaynacapac*, ſubſtituted by *Pizarro* in his Brothers Throne, after many viciſſitudes of Fortune, was at laſt ſlain in the City of *Cuſco*; and ſo the Kingdom of the *Ingas* began and ended in a Prince of the ſame name, as it happened formerly to ſome other Eſtates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who ſubdued this moſt potent and flouriſhing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spaniſh* Empire. And we ſhall find that he was born at *Truſiglio* a Village of *Navar*, and by the poor Whore his Mother laid in the Church-Porch, and ſo left to God's Providence: by whoſe direction (there being none found that would give him the Breaſt) he was nouriſhed for certain days by ſucking a Sow. At laſt one *Gonſales* a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurſe, and when he was ſomewhat grown, ſet him to keep his Swine: ſome of which being ſtrayed, the Boy durſt not for fear return home, but betook himſelf to his heels, ran unto *Sevil* and there ſhipped himſelf for *America*; where he attended *Alfonſo de Oieda*, in the diſcovery of the Countries beyond the Gulf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his Voyage to the South-ſea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the Conqueſt of *Panama*. Grown rich by theſe Adventures, he aſſociated himſelf with *Diego de Almagro* and *Ferdinando Loques* a rich Prieſt; who betwixt them raiſed 220 Soldiers, and in the year 1525. went to ſeek their Fortunes on thoſe Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before diſcovered. After divers Repulſes at his landing, and ſome hardſhips which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took ſome of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the Wealth of the Country; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commiſſion for the Conqueſt of it; excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furniſhed and landed in *Peru* again, at ſuch time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom, and taking part with the Faction of *Guaſcar*, marched againſt *Atubaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a Parley, then to fight a Battle. *Pizarro* taking this Advantage, picked a Quarrel with him, and ſuddenly charged upon him with his Horſe and Ordnance, ſlaying his Guard without reſiſtance; and coming near the Kings perſon, (who was then carried on mens ſhoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Priſoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 8000 Caſtelans, and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 Marks (every Mark weighing eight ounces) of his Houſhold Plate; and in the ſpoil of *Caxamalca*, almoſt infinite Riches. This, with the Kings ranſom, came to ſo great a ſum, that beſides the fifth part which *Pizarro* ſent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themſelves, every Footman had 7200 Ducats, and every Horſman twice as much, for their part of the Spoil; beſides what they had got in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miſerable King, their Priſoner, hath been ſhewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleaſed with their proceedings; few of the greateſt undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro*, in reward of ſo great a Service, was made the firſt Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and created Marqueſs of *Anatilla*: yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief Companion, who had raiſed a ſtrong Faction in that State, he was after ſlain at *Lima* by ſome of that Faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befel all the reſt: his Brother *John* ſlain by the *Peruvians*: *Martin* in *Lima* with himſelf; *Ferdinando* ſecretly made away in priſon; and finally *Conſales* the fourth Brother, with the Son of *Almagro*, ſeverally executed for their Treaſons and Inſurrections, which they had acted in this Country againſt their King. So little Joy doth Wealth ill gotten bring along with it to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whoſe ſtrange birth, fortunes and misfortunes in the courſe of his Life, are to be paralleled only with the like of *Sinan*, a great Baſſa in the Court of *Selimus* the firſt; who being born of a baſe Parentage, as he (being a Child) was ſleeping in the Shade, had his Genitals bitten off by a Sow. The *Turkiſh* Officers which uſually provided young Boys for the Service of the Grand Segniour, being in *Epirus*, (for that was *Sinan*'s Country) and hearing of this ſo extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the ſecond, and his Son *Selimus*, he ſo exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief Baſſa of the Court; and ſo well deſerved it, that he was accounted *Selimus*'s right hand; and was indeed the man to whoſe Valour eſpecially the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*: in which Kingdom then not fully ſetled he was alſo ſlain.

But to return to *Peru*. No queſtion but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For, though we find no particular muſters which they made of their men, or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field, yet by their great Succeſſes and many Victories we may conclude them to be Maſters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of Conduct. Nor can we otherwiſe conjecture at the greatneſs of their yearly income, but by the greatneſs of their Treaſure; ſo infinite and almoſt incredible, that all the Veſſels of the Kings Houſe, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver: Statues of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the reſemblances in proportion and bigneſs of all the Beaſts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fiſhes, which were found in that Kingdom of the pureſt Gold: Ropes, Budgets, Throughs, Cheſts, all of Gold or Silver; Billets of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billets of Wood cut out for the fire; three Houſes full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, beſides infinite other Treaſures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew ſo wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horſe, 60 Crowns for a ſmall Veſſel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shoes; conſuming all upon their luſts, and ſacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

OF CHILE.

CHILE is bounded on the North with the Deſart of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in Length, interpoſing betwixt it and *Peru*; on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the ſtreights of *Magallan*; and on the Eaſt, as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantick*; the Countries lying on the Eaſt betwixt it and *Paraguay* not well diſcovered. When the *Spaniards* entred the New World, it was firſt diſcovered by them in 1535. This Province reacheth from the Valley of *Copiapo* in 26 Degrees of South *Lat.* to the Mouth of the Streights of *Magellan* 500 Leagues, but it is no where broader from Eaſt to Weſt, than 40. 50. or at moſt 90 Leagues; ſo that is has vaſt Provinces that no *Spaniards* ever entred into; but *Chile* properly ſo called, is nevertheleſs but a ſmall part of this, and in Length from North to South, but 300 Leagues, in breadth but 25.

This Country lieth wholly beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*, by conſequence in the temperate Zone, extended in length, from the borders of *Peru* to the mouth of the Streights, 500 Leagues; but the breadth varible and uncertain. Called *Chile* from the word *Chil*, (which in more Tongues then ours doth ſignifie as much as Cold) from the extream coldneſs of the Air and Clime; ſo vehement here in our Summer Solſtice, that many times both the Horſes and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardned like a piece of Marble.

The Soil hereof in the Midland parts Mountainous and unfruitful; towards the ſea-ſide level, fertile, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: Productive of Maize, Wheat, and moſt excellent Paſturage: Plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, ſtore of Cattle, and Wines enough for the uſe of the People; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* proſpering here exceedingly; as do alſo all the Fruits and Plants, which are ſent from thence into this Country. The People very tall and warlike, ſome of them of a Gigantick ſtature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with his greatneſs, where not much provoked. Their Garments of the Skins of Beaſts, their Arms, Bow and Arrows: white of Complexion, but as hirſute and ſhaggy-haired as the reſt of the Savages. They are white, but have low foreheads, they went naked alſo heretofore, but now have learned to Spin and Weave Cloaths for their uſe; by reaſon of the perpetual Wars with the *Spaniards*; the Country is not very well Peopled. It was firſt entred by the *Andes* in 1534. from *Charca*, but they found the Paſſages by Land over the *Andes*, and through the Deſart of *Atacama* which parts it from *Peru*, and is a 100 Leagues over, ſo dangerous, that the *Spaniards* have ſince gone ever by the South Sea. This Province is ſubject to the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and has one Governour, two Biſhops, and 11 Towns Inhabited by *Spaniards*. The People of *Chili* in 1552. ſlew *Valdiva* the conqueror of this Country, and have ſince ſo improved in the Art of War, that they equal the *Spaniards*, and have forced them to deſert moſt of the Towns they had built amongſt them. They have learned to fight in order, fortified their Camps, form Weapons both of Defence and Offence, and fear not to fight their Enemies in the Field,. and yet upon occaſion can lay their Ambuſcades with Great Art and good ſucceſs, *Laet*. In the Year 1599. they took and deſtroyed *Valdivia*, *Imperiale*, *Angol*, and *Santa crux*, *Chile* and *Conception*.

Rivers of Note there are not any, but what will fall within the view of its ſeveral Provinces. Divided Commonly into 1. *Chile*, eſpecially ſo called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. CHILE ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the North with the Deſart of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magallanica*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the Eaſt, with ſome unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reaſon of the name, together with the nature of the ſoil and people, we have ſeen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Coquimbo*. 3. *La Ligua*. 4. *Topocalma*, 5. *Cacapool*, 6. *Canten*, all falling into *Mare del Zur*. And beſides theſe, a nameleſs, but more famous River, which in the day-time runneth with a violent Current, and in the night hath no Water at all. The reaſon of it is, becauſe this River, having no conſtant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains, which in the heat of the day, melted into water, is precipitately carried into the Sea: but congealed in the coldneſs of the night, yields no Water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Copayabo*, giving name to a fertile Valley in the moſt Northern Tract hereof, and neighboured by a ſmall, but commodious Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea ſide; not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whoſe banks it is ſeated, there built by *Baldivia*, the Conquerour and firſt Governour of this Province, *Anno* 1544. The Territory round about it is rich in Mines of Gold: The Town it ſelf of 200 Houſes, but ſo well Peopled, that at the landing of ſome of the *Engliſh*, under Captain *Drake*, they preſently ſent out 300 Horſe and 200 Foot to compel them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. The Fields about it are watered by a ſmall River, which makes it exceeding Fruitful, tho it ſeldom rains above three or four times in a year. 3. S. *Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 Houſes in it) becauſe the Reſidence of the Governour and the Courts of Juſtice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and ſome Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers; ſituate in the 34. degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topacalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val Paraiſa*, the beſt and moſt noted of this Country; out of which the *Engliſh* under *Drake* took a *Spaniſh* Ship, and therein 25000 *Pezoes* of the Pureſt Gold, beſides other Commodities. The Country about it is very fruitful, and full of Inhabitants, there being as it is ſaid 80000 *Indians* in this Dioceſs. 4. *Conception*, 70 Leagues on the South of S. *Jago*, ſituate on the Shores of the large and capacious Bay, (by the Natives called *Penco*) by it and the Mountains on all ſides ſo ſtrongly fenced, that the Governour, when diſtreſſed by the Savages, (as ſometimes they are) retireth hither for ſafety. Well fortified in ſuch places as are acceſſible, and garriſoned with 500 Soldiers, beſides the Townſmen. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iſle of S. *Mary*, ſo near the Shore, that it ſeems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea:fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultrey ; but the people ſo in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Auraccoa*, (ſo I think they call it) a ſtrong Fortreſs in the Country of the *Auracans*, the moſt Potent Nation of theſe parts ; who weary of the *Spaniſh* Yoke, revolted againſt *Baldiva*, overcame him in a ſet fight, and at laſt killed him : this Place being thereupon forſaken, and of no more uſe. 6. *De los Confines*, built by *Baldiva* in the borders of the Country of thoſe *Auracans*, to ſerve for a defence to the Mines of O*ngol* near adjoyning : diſtant from the Sea ſhore about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Nueva de los Infantes*. 7. *Imperiale* in the 38 degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, ſituate on the banks of the River *Cauten* ; an Epiſcopal See, and the beſt Fortreſs of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1551, and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, becauſe they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood on the doors of their houſes ; a Monument perhaps of ſome *Germans* who had here been ſhipwrackt. The *Indians* the next year after the conqueſt of this Town, ſlew *Baldiva*, and reduced the Town to ſuch ſtreights, that it has not been able to grow to any greatneſs. A Town of ſo great Wealth and Power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a War betwixt them and the *Auracans*, ſpoken of before, they are ſaid to have brought into the Field 300000 men. The Soil about it is fruitful in corn, and Wine, and Paſture ; the River bears boats, the Biſhop of it is the ſecond in *Chili*, and has about 800000 *Indians* in it under his Care. It has good Mines of Gold, but for want of Slaves, and by reaſon of the Wars, they are not wrought, *Laet* p. 492. In the Year 1600. It was taken by the *Indians*, after a Years Siege by Famine, when the moſt part of the Inhabitants were deſtroyed by Hunger and other Miſeries, they burnt the Town, and deſolated the Country about it, and then went to the Siege of *Soſorna*. They took in this War *Valdiva*, *Angol*. *&c.* before mentioned, after which they became ſo confident of their Strength, that they fight the *Spaniards* without fear, and after their own method, and with their own Weapons, revenging in ſome ſort the wrongs done to the other *Indians* their Country Men, whom the *Spaniards* had moſt Inhumanely Murdered without Cauſe or Meaſure, *Laet*. p. 500. S. *Villa Rica* another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16 Leagues on the South-Eaſt of *Imperiale*, and 25 Leagues from the Shore of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldiva*, the the moſt noted Town of all theſe parts, ſituate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, or thereabouts : adorned with a ſafe and capacious Haven, and neighboured by Mines of Gold of ſuch infinite Riches, that *Baldiva* (by whom built for defence of thoſe Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each ſingle Workman 25000 Crowns a man, and ſometimes more. Sacked by the Savages *Anno* 1599 ; ſince repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Oſorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilve*, (or *Ancud*, as the Savages call it ;) ſituate in a barren ſoil, but well ſtored with Gold, and thought to be more populous then *Baldivia* it ſelf. This City lies 70 Leagues South of *Conception*, ſeven from the Ocean, 42 D. from the Line South. It has about it 200000 *Indian* Subjects, who are Imployed in Weaving Linen and Wollen, *Laet*. p. 494. In the Year 1600. the *Indians* beſieged this Place, and had certainly taken it, had it not been relieved by a ſupply under *Francis de Campo*, who was ſent from *Peru*, for they had then taken *Valdiva*, *Imperiale*, and *la Conception*, and three other Towns, p. 499. 11. *Caſtro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44 : built in a large and fruitful Iſland of the Bay of *Ancud*, ſaid to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal : in ſome parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12. S. *Juan de la Frontera* on the farther ſide of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong alſo certain Iſlands lying on the coaſts and ſhores hereof, 1. S. *Maries*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Paſturage, ſufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the deſcendents of thoſe *Americans* who fled hither to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their Liberty againſt that Nation : of which they are ſo jealous, that they would not ſuffer the *Engliſh* under *Drake* and *Cavendiſh* to land amongſt them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or ſome Friends of theirs. 4. *Caſtro*, which we have ſpoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata* : on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streights of *Magellan* ; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur* : on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Noordt*, or the Main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom firſt diſcovered : of whom we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Streights 300 Leagues ; in breadth, from one Sea to the other, where broadeſt, above 400 Leagues, in ſome but 90 only, and in others leſs, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The Inland parts of the Country not yet diſcovered : thoſe on the Sea ſide obſerved to be rocky and unfruitful, expoſed for the moſt part of the year to ſuch bitter colds, that the Snow lyes always on the Mountains. The People ſaid to be tall of Stature, and ſome of them of a Gigantick bigneſs, reported to be ten or eleven foot high : and by the *Spaniards* for that reaſon are called *Patagons*. Both great and leſs ſufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurniſhed of any Houſes, notwithſtanding the rigour of the Cold.

No Houſes doth imply no Towns, and therefore we muſt look for none in ſo rude a Country, as hath not hitherto converſed with more civil Nations. So that the moſt that we can do is to coaſt the Shores, and ſee what names of Ports or Promontories we can find therein. And firſt upon the Sea coaſts-towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and ſo deſcending) 1. the Promontory called *Cabo de las Iſlas*. 2. The Port or Haven of *S. Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Neuſtra Sennora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Anchon Sinſalida*, on the Banks of a ſemi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Iſlands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of Victory, ſituate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the Streights ; ſo called from the name of the Ship, in which ſome of *Magallan*'s Soldiers did firſt compaſs the World. For *Ferdinand Magallan*, a noble *Portugal*, and well skilled in Navigation, at the Perſwaſion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon ſome diſcontents received in the Court of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*) he had made offer of his Service, undertook the finding out (if Poſſible) a ſhorter cut to the *Molucca*'s then diſcovered formerly. In the year 1520. he began his Voyage, his Fleet conſiſting but of five ſhips, whereof that called S. *Antonio* forſook him in ſome great diſpleaſure, and returned to *Spain* ; another of them being loſt not long after in a ſtorm. Keeping along the Coaſt to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October*, he fell upon the Cape of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of the Streight, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon; and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of theſe Narrow Seas, ſince called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entred into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreſhed himſelf in a little Iſland called *Juvaganava*, he paſſed unto that alſo but not far from the *Philippines* : the Prince whereof, called *Hamabar*, he perſwaded to become a Chriſtian, baptizing him by the name of *Charles* : and finally engaging in a Quarrel of his againſt the King of *Mautan*, or *Mattan*, an adjoyning Iſland, he was there unfortunately ſlain, *Anno* 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men, being treacherouſly ſlain by *Hamabar*, the other three ſhips departed with no more then 115 men aboard them; which put them to a neceſſity of burning one of their ſhips, that they might have men enough to make good the others. With theſe two Ships they came at laſt to the *Molucca*'s, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themſelves, that called the *Trinity*, under Captain *Spinoſa*, deſigned for *Panama* in *New Spain*, but from thence driven back by contrary Winds to the Iſle of *Tidore*, was ſeized on and ſpoiled by *Anthonio Brito*, a Captain commanding there a ſmall Navy of the King of *Portugal*. The other ſhip, which by a happy Omen was called *Victoria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebaſtian del Cano*, after a very long and dangerous Voyage, wherein it was thought that he had ſailed at the leaſt 14000 Leagues, returned to *Spain* in ſafety, and brought the welcom news of their good Succeſs.

We uſe to ſay that Sir *Francis Drake* was the firſt that ſailed round about the World: which may be true in a qualified ſenſe, *viz.* that he was the firſt Captain or man of note that atchieved this enterprize, *Magallanus* periſhing in the midſt of it: and therefore he is reported to have given for his Device a Globe, with this Motto, *Tu primus circumdediſti me.* This Navigation was begun *Anno* 1577. and in two years and a half, with great viciſſitude of fortune finiſhed. Concerning which his famous Voyage, a Poet then living directed to him this Epigram,

Drake, *pererrati novit quem terminus Orbis,*
Quemque ſimul mundi vidit uterque Polus,
Si taceant homines, facient te Sydera notum,
Sol *neſcit comitis non memor eſſe ſui.*

Drake, whom th' encompaſs'd Earth ſo fully knew,
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view;
Should men forget thee, *Sol* could not forbear
To Chronicle his fellow Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, theſe *Magellan* Streights, are in the 52. degree, and are by Mr. *John Davis*, who profeſſeth to know every Creek in them, thus deſcribed. “For 14 Leagues within the Cape of S. *Mary* lieth the firſt Streight, where it ebbeth and floweth with a violent ſwiftneſs, the Streight not being fully half a mile broad, and the firſt fall into it very dangerous and doubtful. Three Leagues this Streight continueth, when it openeth into a Sea eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which lieth the ſecond Streight, right West-South-Weſt from the firſt, a perilous and unpleaſant Paſſage, three Leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This Streight openeth it ſelf into another *Sea*, which is extended even to the *Cape of Victory*; where is the Streight properly called the Streight of *Magellan*; a place of that nature, that which may ſoever a man bend his courſe, he ſhall be ſure to have the Wind againſt him. The length hereof is 40 Leagues; the breadth in ſome places two Leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, ſo no hope of Anchorage; the courſe of the Water full of turnings and changing, withal ſo violent, that when a Ship is once entred, there is no returning. On both ſides of it are high Mountains continually covered with ſnow, from which proceed thoſe Counter-winds which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place aſſuredly not pleaſing to view, and very hazardous to paſs. So far, and to this purpoſe Mr. *Davis*.

But to proceed: the way thus opened was travelled not long after, *Anno* 1525, by *Garcias de Loyaſa*: next in the year 1534, by *Simon de Alcazavo*, and four years after by three ſhips of the Biſhop of *Placenſa* in *Spain*: but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thro', till undertaken and Performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1577. or as others *Auguſt* 20th. 1578. and he found the ſame full of *Iſlands*, ſhut in with high Mountains, and the Havens cold and Snowy, *Camden*; after which it grew more familiar amongſt the Sea-men. In the year 1587 on the ſeventh of *January*, *Thomas Cavendiſh* arrived here, and found the entrance in 52 Degrees of South Latitude. The *Spaniards* had then built upon it a City called *King Phillips* City, with four Forts, and he ſent 400 men to ſecure the Paſſage, but they never thrived, and in two years time were reduced to twenty three, the Town left deſolate: The *Engliſh* call it *Port Famine*, *Hackluit*, part. 3. p. 806. Howſoever, we are ſo much Debtors to the Attempts of others, as that we owe to them the moſt part of the names of thoſe Bays and Promontories which they diſcovered in the ſearch: though many of them be ſince new named by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*. Thoſe of moſt note, Proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, are 1. *Cabo de Quada*, 2. *Cape Gallant*, 3. *Cordes Bay*, 4. *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Conus* of this great *Pyramis*. 5. *Porto Famine*, 6. A little Iſle called *Elizabeths Iſland*, and at the exit of the Streight in *Mare del Noordt*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending northwards towards the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the Main Ocean, 1. *Ria de la Cruz*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*, where *Magallan* ſtaid all *September*, and the greateſt part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to diſcover farther, 2. The Bay of S. *Juhan*, out of which he ſet ſail for this Adventure about the latter end of *Auguſt*, leaving there two of his Companions Condemned of Mutiny. 3. The Port of *Deſire*. 4 A large Promontory, called the Cape of S. *George*. 5 The out lets of a fair River named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6. A goodly Haven, entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amagada*. 9. The Promontory called the Cape of S. *Andrews*. And 10 the River of *S. Anne*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the moſt that I can ſay touching *Magallanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points, and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we ſee) but a *Nomenclator*; it muſt be better peopled and more diſcovered before it can afford Diſcourſe of more variety. All we can add is, that the paſſage back again from *Mare del Zur*, to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found ſo ſafe and eaſie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted firſt by *Ladrilliro* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Gracia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*, and attempted only; performed not long after the Voyage of *Sir Francis Drake* by *D. Pedro Sarmienta*, employed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no leſs danger; ſo much, that few have ſince endeavoured to return that way.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to underſtand that it was firſt diſcovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro*'s chief Friends and Aſſociates. But he having other deſigns in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himſelf, and to out *Pizarro*, did diſcover it only; the Conqueſt of it being reſerved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the ſetling of his Affairs by the death of *Almagro* had employed in that action. He going Soldier-like to work, not only did ſubdue the People; but, as he gained ground, built ſome Fortreſs, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done, about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more ſtubborn and untractable people than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who, quickly weary of the Yoke, beſieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himſelf, coming with too ſmall a power to relieve his people, vanquiſhed and ſlew him in the Field. Some add, that they poured Gold into his Throat: (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done *Craſſus*) bidding him *ſatiate himſelf with that which he ſo much thirſted after.* After this blow given in the year 1551. the Savages recovered the rich Valleys of *Auranco Tucapel*, and *Purene*, which they keep from them to this day. The Towns of *Los Confines* and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of thoſe Valleys, were deſerted alſo. Nor ſtaid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599, (having provided themſelves of 200 Corſlets and ſeventy Muſquets) they break out again, ſurpriſed and ſacked the Town of *Baldivia* forced *Imperiale*,

periale, after a whole years Siege to ſurrender without any Conditions, and in the year 1604. took *Oſorno* by Famine. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had poſſeſſed amongſt them, they had taken nine: ſome of them ſince recovered, but the moſt demoliſhed. As ill it thrived with them in *Magallanica*, where *Pedro de Sermiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command thoſe Streights, *Anno* 1584. The one he ſetled near the mouth of the Streight, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jeſus*, and left therein 150 of his men: the other he intended on the narroweſt place of the Streight, to be called *Cividad del Rey Philip*, which he reſolved to fortifie and Plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there other of his men, promiſing to relieve them ſhortly with all things neceſſary. But ſuch was his unhappy fate, that after many ſhipwrecks and diſappointments which befel unto him in the purſuit of his Deſign, he was at laſt taken by the *Engliſh*, under the command of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who was there in perſon; and his two Colonies, for want of timely Succors, either ſtarved at home, or eaten by the Savages, as they ranged the Country.

And ſo much for *CHILE*.

OF PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South with *Magellanica*; on the Eaſt, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North with *Braſil*; on the Weſt, with ſome unknown Countrys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River of *Paraguay*, which ſignifieth the River of *Feathers* (one of the greateſt of the World) which runneth through it; the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great ſtore of Silver they expected from it. It is divided into ſeven Counties, which yet has not many *Spaniſh* Colonies ſetled in it, yet it has one Biſhop.

The Country (for ſo much as hath been diſcovered) is ſaid to be of a fruitful ſoil, capable of Wheat, and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the Cattle encreaſe leſs which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horſes multiplying in a wonderful manner. Well ſtored with Sugar-Canes, and not unfurniſhed of Mines both of Braſs and Iron, ſome Veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of Amethyſts. Of Staggs great plenty, and of Monkies almoſt infinite numbers; not to ſay any thing of Lyons, Tigers and ſuch hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing ſaid but what hath been obſerved of other Savages.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whoſe courſe we have deſcribed already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, ſo called from the chief Town, by which it runneth. 3. *Zarcaranna*, which riſeth in the Country of the *Diagnitas*, and falling into a Lake at the end of his courſe, doth from thence paſs into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Eſtero*, which riſing in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and paſſing through two great Lakes, meets with 5. the *Bermeio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* near the Town of *S. Foy*. 6. *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potoſi*, in the Povince of *Charcos*, but his fall in the ſame River with thoſe before. Then on the North ſide of that River there is, 7. that of *S. Saviour*, or *S. Salvidor*; as the *Spaniards* call it. 8. *Rio Nigro*, or the Black River, of a longer courſe, but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9. *Yquaan*, and 10. ſeveral others, whoſe united Streams make the great River *Parana*, the ſecond River of eſteem in all this Country, but ſwallowed in that of *Plata*. Beſides theſe, 11. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*, 2. *Tucuman*, and 3. S. *Crux de Sierra*. The reſt not conquered by the *Spaniards*, or not well diſcovered cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both ſides of that River, aſcending many Leagues up the Water, but not extended much upon either ſide. The reaſon of the name, the quality of the Soil and People, we have ſeen before.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Cividad de la Trinidad*, ſeated on the Southern Bank of the River of *Plata*, there built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Deſerted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabeſo de Vacca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally, in the year 1582, re-edified and planted with a new Colony; after which laſt ſettlement it has ever been Inhabited. Situate on the riſing of a little Hill, in the 34 degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the mouth of the River, having *La Plata* to the North, and another River to the South, on an advanced Ground. Fortified with a Mud-wall and a little Caſtle, with ſome pieces of Ordnance: yet neither large nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. To this place the King of *Spain* was perſwaded to bring his Silver from *Potoſi*, but found it not convenient, by reaſon of the Vicinity of the *Portugals* in *Braſile*. *Potoſi* is 400 Leagues from this City to the Weſt, but good eaſy Paſſage, by the perpetual fall of the Rivers this way. 2. S. *Fe*, or S. *Fides*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the ſame ſide of the Water, near the confluence of it with the River *Eſtero*: of the ſame bigneſs as the other, but ſomewhat richer; the people here being given to Cloathing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Braſilians* for Sugar, Rice, and other neceſſary commodities. 3. *Nueſtra Sennora del Aſſumption*, but commonly *Aſſumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth thereof 300 Leagues diſtant: ſituate in the Latitude of 25, and almoſt in the midſt betwixt *Peru* and *Braſil*, well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. This is a Biſhops See, under the Arch-Biſhop *de La Plata*. The Country about it is very pleaſant and Fruitful, and the Air ſo temperate, that the Trees are ever green, *Laet. p.* 529. Inhabited by three ſorts of men: firſt, natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accounted 400 Families. 2. the *Meſtizo's* begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the Natives, and 3. *Mulatto's*, born of the *Spaniards* and *Negroe's*: of which two laſt here are thought to be many thouſands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Ytupuam*, in the midſt whereof is an huge Rock above 100 Fathom high above the Water. 4. *Cividad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called alſo *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Aſſumption*, ſituate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitful Soil but a ſickly Air; for which cauſe, and the frequent Inſurrection of the Savages, but meanly peopled. 5. S. *Anne*, on the banks of the ſame River *Parana*, 6. S. *Salvador*, on a River of the ſame name. Beſides theſe, there are up the River above *Aſſumption* three noted Ports. 7. *Puerto de Guaybiamo*, 8. *Puerto de la Candalaria*, and 9. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for diſperſing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to ſay. The laſt ſave one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolos*, and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the Savages.

2. *TUCUMAN* lyeth on the Weſt of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the confines of *Chile*, through which they made their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Noordt*; the exact bounds hereof to the North and South not yet reſolved on. This Province is 300 Leagues broad, and 200 long, and has eight ſmall *Spaniſh* Cities in it.

The Country, for ſo much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, is well manured and fruitful, that towards *Magalanica* barren, untilled, and not well diſcovered. No Veins of Gold or Silver in it, though ſituate in a temperate and agreeable air. Watered by the two Rivers of 1. *Salado*, ſo called from the brackiſhneſs and Saltneſs of it; and 2. *Del Eſtero*, ſpoken of before, ſo named, becauſe ſometimes it breaketh out of his Banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*. It is inhabited by three *Indian* Tribes, the *Tucumans*, *Juries*, and *Diaguits*. The *Spaniards* poſſeſs St. *Jago del Eſterio*, *St Micheal*, *Talavera*, *Corduba*, and *Sala*, the firſt of theſe was by the *Indians* called *Varco*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Jago del Eſtero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*, the principal of that ſmall Province, honoured with a Biſhop's See and the Seat of the Governour, and diſtant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. This place ſaith a *Flandrian* that ſaw it, ſtands 80 Leagues from *Corduba*, the Fields about it are covered with Woods, and not very fruitful, ſince the River hath failed to overflow them as before; ſo that the City has not ſo great a number of Inhabitants for want of Proviſions; the *Indians* too are much diminiſhed in number, and do daily decreaſe by reaſon of the cruel uſuage of the *Spaniards*, who execute their Authority over them with Rigour, and waſt them with immoderate labour, in gathering, beating, and ſpinning Cotton; beating them till they dye very often under their hands, for not performing the Task enjoyned them, *Laet.* p. 535. 2. S. *Michael de Tucuman*, ſeated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful ſoil both for Corn and Paſturage, diſtant 28 Leagues from S. *Jago*. 3. *Talavera* or *Nueſtra Sennora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Eſteco*; ſituate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful ſoil, and inhabited by an induſtrious People, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton wools, which grow hereabout in great abundance, with which they drive a great Trade, at the Mines of *Potoſi*, from hence diſtant but 140 Leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for Trade, as being equally diſtant from S. *Juan de la Frontera*, in the Prefecture of *Chile*, and *S. Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*. 50 Leagues from each, and ſeated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Ayres*, much travelled conſequently by thoſe who go from *Peru* to *Braſil* or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Corduba*; built at ſuch time as *Garcias de Mendoza*, Son of the Marqueſs of *Cannete*, and Vice roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Beſides theſe, 7. *Morata*, 8. *Chocinoca*. 9. *Socochа*, and 10. *Calabimna*; Townſhips belonging to the Natives.

3. S. *CRUX DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquitos* and *Cheriguanes*, two Tribes of the Savages. By ſome accounted to *Peru*, becauſe under the Juridical Reſort of *Charcos*, but ſo far diſtant from the neareſt bounds of that Province, (100 *Spaniſh* Leagues at leaſt) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly ſeated.

The Soil is abundantly productive of Maize and Wines, plenty of moſt ſorts of *American* Fruits, which I can give no *Engliſh* name to; a kind of Palm, of whoſe Trunk they make great ſtore of Meal, of good taſte and nouriſhment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the Fruits of *Europe*, which ripen ſlowly, and ſoon die. So deſtitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make uſe of Rain-water preſerved in pits: the cauſe of no ſmall Wants, and of many great Murthers; the people either dying for thirſt; or killing one another for ſome water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Santa Crux*, ſituate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but ſituate in an open Field, enlarging it ſelf into many Plains and thirſty Valleys; neighboured by a Brook or Torrent, breaking from the Rocks, which four Leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth ſupply the Town with fiſh. 2. *Baranca*, 60 Leagues from the Mines of *Potoſi*. 3. *Tomina*, 4. *Lagunilla*, and 5. *Tarixa*, three Forts erected for defence of this Province againſt the Incurſions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6. *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but ſacked and diſpeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice-roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nueflo de chaves*, who in the year 1548. firſt diſcovered thoſe parts, was treacherouſly ſlain by one of the Savages.

The principal Nations of this Country, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurvis*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both ſides of the River of *Plata*; the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnites*, in the *Cantred* of *Tucuman*: more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chuneſſes*, *Xaqueſſes*, *Xacoaes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerful Nations, hitherto unconquered. The firſt Diſcovery of this Country is aſcribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spaniſh* Adventurer; who in the year 1515. paſſing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 40 minutes, and unadviſedly landing with too ſmall a power, was there unfortunately ſlain. The Deſign was after proſecuted by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, *Anno* 1526. who ſailed againſt the ſtream as high as the River *Parana*; at the reception of which, the great River, called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortreſs called *Fort Cabbot*, and 30 Leagues more up the River that called S. *Anne*, (both long ſince ruined) where *Diego Garcias*, a *Portugal*, found him in the year next following. In the year 1535, the buſineſs was reſumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*, and ſent *John de Ayolos* to diſcover Northwards; of whoſe unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully ſetled till the year 1540, when *Alvarez Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabeſa de Vacca*, made a more full diſcovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing ſince done for the farther planting of the Country, though ſome places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little Gold and Silver, and conſequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

And ſo much for *PARAGUAY*.

OF BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounden on the Eaſt with *Mare del Noordt*, or the main *Atlantick* ; on the Weſt, with ſome undiſcovered Countries lying betwixt it and the *Andes* ; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon* ; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reaſon of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called Braſil-wood, which was found amongſt them ; as the famous Iſle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of Cypreſſes.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 39 Degree of Southern Latitude ; or meaſuring it by miles, it is ſaid to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes* : which muſt be underſtood with reference to the whole extent of it ; for otherwiſe all that which is poſſeſſed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Braſil* is ſo ſhort of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they poſſeſs nothing but the ſea-coaſts, and ſome few Leagues (comparatively) within the Land ; the greateſt part of it being ſo far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been diſcovered. This part came under the Dominion of the *Portugeſſe* in the Year 1503. though the *Spaniards* claim it. *Ferrera* pretends this Country was firſt diſcovered by the *Spaniards*, by one *Jean Pinzone*, and after that by *Didaco de Lepe*, in the Year 1500 ; about the ſame time *Catabus* a *Portugeſſe* ſailing to the *Eaſt Indies*, and running too much to the Weſt by accident, fell upon this oppoſite Shore, and called it *Santa Cruz*, but the World have ſince new named it, from the Plenty of *Braſil Wood* here found. It is much hotter and moiſter then *Peru*, ſubject to great Rains, Snow, Clouds, and the Earth is covered with great Woods, ſo that it is unhealthful, full of Serpents, and troubleſome Inſects; others ſay on the contrary, it is a pleaſant healthful Country, and cooled by the Brizes from the Ocean, which they call here the Tropick winds. The Soil is ſtrangely fertile, and yields Sugar canes in great plenty. It yields nothing fit for cloathing but Cotton, and is much of it maſhy, and in Winter, (*i. e.* from *March* to *Auguſt*) very wet and troubleſome to travel. Yet ſome of the Inhabitants have lived to 90 or 100 Years of Age. The Rayes of the Moon in this Country are obſerved to be hurtful. Both the Males and Females of the barbarous Nations go ſtart naked, without any ſhame.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Foreſts, diverſified into Hills and Plains always pleaſant and green. The Air for the moſt part ſound and wholeſome, by reaſon of the freſh Winds which do reign amongſt them ; there being all along the Coaſts certain quick Winds riſing from the South about two hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants ; yet in regard it is ſomewhat moiſt, it is held to be more agreeable to old men then to young. The ſoil is in moſt parts very fruitful, were it not too much cloyed with Rain: but howſoever liberally provided of Sugar canes, (no one Country more) for the refining of which they have their *Ingenios*, (as they call them) or Sugar-houſes, in moſt parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thouſand ſlaves, brought hither yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other Maritime parts of *Africk*. A Trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Braſil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar ; every *Arrobe* containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure : Here is alſo infinite quantities of that red Wood uſed in dying cloth; which we commonly call Braſil-wood ; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not :) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greatneſs, that whole Families live on an arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the moſt of our Villages. In other Commodities, common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular inſtance.

This vaſt Trade of *Sugars* is ſince our Authors time in a great degree abated, for that during the War between the *Hollanders* and *Portugeſſe* in *Braſil*, about the time of our Wars in *England*, moſt of the Sugar Plantations were deſtroyed, and the *Portugueſſe* being alſo engaged in a War with *Spain*, which laſted till 1669. or there abouts, and ſo could not attend to the Improving and peopling this Country : In the mean time the *Engliſh* in *Barbado*'s and *Jamaica* ſo well imployed their times, that they not only ſupplied *England* with Sugars, which before we bought of the *Portugueſſe* ; but we became able to ſupply *Holland*, which in effect is all this Northern part of the World. So that our Sugar Trade is one of the beſt Trades we have belonging to us, and ought moſt diligently to be cultivated. *Liſbon* having thus loſt the advantage of the Spice Trade before to the *Hollanders*, and of the Sugar Trade to the *Engliſh*, Shrunk in its riches and Splendor, and with it *Braſil* alſo, which now languiſheth, and is the unenvied Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſſe*, and ſerves to little other uſe, than to exhauſt that Kingdoms People, and to fit it for a Conqueſt, when it and *Spain* ſhall be a little more weakned.

Amongſt the Rarities hereof are reckoned, 1. the Plant called *Copiba*, the Bark of which being cut doth ſend out a Balm, the ſovereign virtue whereof is ſo well known to the very Beaſts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they reſort unto it for their Cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida* or *Viva*, which roughly touched will cloſe their Leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of ſight. 3. A kind of Wheat in the Valley near unto *S. Sebaſtian*, which is continually growing, and always ripe ; or never wholly ripe, becauſe always growing, for when one Ear doth grain, another doth Bloom ; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The Ox-fiſh, with Eyes, and Eye-lids, two Arms a Cubet long, and at each an hand with five Fingers and Nails, as in a Man ; under the Arms two Teats, inwards like a Cow, in every Female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All-Saints* which had the Face of an Ape, the Foot of a Lion, and all the reſt of a Man ; of ſuch a terrible Aſpect, that the Soldier who ſhot him fell down dead. But this I rather look on as an Aberration of Nature, then a Rarity in her. 6. Beaſts of ſuch ſtrange ſhapes, and ſuch ſeveral kinds, that it may be ſaid of *Braſil* as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid appertat novi*, every day ſome new object of Admiration.

The People here are endowed with a pretty underſtanding ; as may ſeem by him who tartly blamed the Covetouſneſs of the *Spaniards*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold, and holding up a Wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Chriſtians*. But in moſt places they are barbarous, the Men and Women go ſtark naked, and on high Feſtivals days hang Jewels in their Lips. Theſe Feſtival days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry over the roaſted body of a fat Man, whom they cut in Collops called *Boucon*, and eat with great greedineſs and much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of benefits. The Men Cruel without meaſure, and the Women infinitely laſcivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reaſon of which one being demanded, made anſwer, becauſe they had amongſt them neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will ſtay under Water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great Pain, and preſently go about their buſineſs belonging to good Houſewives: the good man (according to the faſhion of our kinder ſorts of Husbands in *England*, who are ſaid to *breed their Wives Children*) being ſick in their ſtead, and keeping their Bed; ſo far that he hath Broath made him, is viſited by his Goſſips, or Neighbours, and hath Junkets ſent to comfort him. And amongſt theſe there are ſome Rarities, if not monſtroſities in nature: it being ſaid of thoſe which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like Beaſts, ſuch as *Orſon* is feigned to have been in the old Romance, and propably ſo ingendred; alſo that the *Guaymares* diſbowel women with Child, and roaſt the Children; and finally, that the Savage Nation of *Camucuiara* have their Paps almoſt down unto their Knees, which they tie about their waſte when they run, or go faſter then ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that be a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, then proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way as we croſs the Country, we ſhall not paſs them over with out ſome remembrance. And ſo proceed we to the Diviſion of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other places, but into Prefectures, or Captainſhips, as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we ſhall ſeverally touch on as we trace the Coaſt, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto that of *Guiana*; that is to ſay,

1. The Captainſhip of St. *VINCENT*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the moſt civil people of all *Braſil*; Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good Ships of burden, but diſtant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more then 120 Houſes, yet the beſt of this Prefecture; beautified with a Pariſh Church, and two Convents of Friers. Taken and held two months by Sir *Tho. Cavendiſh*, Anno 1591; ſince that environed with a Wall and fortified with two Caſtles. 2. S. *Vincents*, better built, but not ſo well fitted with an Haven, of about 70 Hoſes, and 100 Inhabitants. This is the moſt Southern Town in all *Braſil*, inhabited by the *Portugueſe*. It lyes in the Southern Latitude of 23. 50. or as my Author ſaith, in another place, 24. It is an Elegant fine Town, but little, and is ſeated upon a Bay that will not admit a great Ship. They had great commerce with the *Carrigi*, a civil *Indian* Nation, but in 1596. they ſurprized a part of them, ſince which time this Prefecture never thrived. This ſhews the time of this Plantation, *Laet.* p. 578. 3 *Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of leſſer Veſſels. 5. S. *Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleaſant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River *Iniambis*, a Town of about a 100 houſes, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of Jeſuites; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. S. *Philips*, a ſmall Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to enlarge it ſelf, and paſſing thence falleth at laſt into the River *Parana*, one of the greateſt Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, ſo called, becauſe entred into that month by *John Dias de Solis*, Anno 1515, neglected by the *Portugals*, it was ſiezed on by the *French*, under the conduct of *Villigagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Caſtillon*, a great friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended for a place of Refuge, (as *New England* afterwards for the like) but within three years after their firſt coming hither (*An.* 1558) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the ſword. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, ſo named in honour of *Gaſpar Colligni*, (commonly called *Caſtillon*) by whoſe encouragement it was founded. Situate on a Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. S. *Sebaſtians*, built at the mouth of the ſame Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French* and fortified it with four ſtrong Bulwarks. This is now a Biſhop See, under the Archbiſhop of St. *Salvador*, and built on the South ſhore of the River *Janeiro*, *Latitude*. 23.15. two miles from the Ocean, between the years 1558. and 1618. upon a circular Bay, upon a level ground, but ſurrounded by riſing Hills, and not having above 10 or 12 houſes a breaſt. [At the time of the laſt date, it had no Paved Streets, no Gates, no Walls, but it had then four Forts.] It took this name from *Sebaſtian*, then King of *Portugal*, the Founder of it. In 1580. the *French* who had firſt planted here in 1555. returned, and endeavoured to take it but in vain, *Laet.* p. 583. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, diſtant 12 Leagues Weſtward from the mouth of the Bay; not long ſince made a *Portugal* Colony. Beſides theſe, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Braſilians*, in which are ſaid to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. Of the *HOLY GHOST*, (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the moſt fertile Provinces of all *Braſil*; well ſtored with Cotton-wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of Fiſh. The only Town of note in it is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church Dedicated to *S. Francis*, a Monaſtery of Benedictines, and a Colledge of Jeſuites: the chief conveniency, a ſafe and commodious Haven, capable of the greateſt Veſſels. This ſtands 60 *Spaniſh* Leagues from the River *Januario*, to the North, and 50 from *Porto Seguro* to the South, 20 Degrees from the Line to the South; Braſilwood and Cotton is very plenty, but not much Sugar. The Prefecture belonging to it, is thought the moſt fruitful Country in *Braſil*. The *Indians* of it are called the *Margajates*, at firſt bitter Enemies to the *Portugueſe*, but now are good Friends and Allies. It ſtands on the Right hand of the River, three Leagues from the Main Ocean, and had three Monaſteries, *Laet.* p. 585.

4. Of *PORTO SEGURO*, *The ſecure Haven*, ſo called by *Capralis*, who firſt diſcovered it, when being toſſed at ſea by a terrible Tempeſt, he had here refreſhed himſelf. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity then Fame, of more fame then bigneſs, as not containing fully 200 Families. It lyes 50 Leagues from *Spiritu Santo* to the North. 16. 30. from the Line to the South; It ſtands upon a high white Rock. Before our Authors time, the *Indians* had ruined this Town, ſo that but few lived here, and with great difficulty, *Laet.* p. 585. This ſhewed the weakneſs of the *Portugueſe* in theſe parts, which was owing in great part to their Vaſſalage under the Crown of *Spain*, which as it afforded them an entrance into *Spaniſh Indies*, where Gold and Silver was more plentifully, ſo it deprived *Braſil* of its neceſſary ſupplys in the Infancy of its Plantations. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other, a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Averia* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3 *Santo Amaro*, or S. *Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which uſe here were five *Ingenias* or Sugar Engines: deſerted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Savages, againſt whom they'd not power enough to make good the place, and the Sugars deſtroyed of purpoſe, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the Iſles ſo named, from certain Iſlands lying againſt the Bay, on which the principal Town is ſeated, called alſo *Ilheos*, or the Iſland, (with like Analogy as a Town of good note in *Flanders*

hath the name of *Inſula* or *Liſle*:) the Town conſiſting of about 150 or 200 Families, ſituate on a little River, but neighboured by a great Lake of 12 Leagues in compaſs, (out of which that River doth ariſe) full of a great, but wholeſome Fiſh, which they call *Monatos*, ſome of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony was much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of Savages, more ſavage then any of their Fellows, who being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, which they had utterly deſtroyed, if ſome of *S. George*'s Reliques, as the Jeſuites tell us (but I bind no man to believe it) ſent by their General from *Rome*, Anno 1581, had not ſtayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. Of *TODOS LOSSANTOS*, or *All Saints*, ſo called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth, in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Iſlands; but flouriſhing and pleaſant, and well ſtored with Cotton-wool. A Bay in which are many ſafe ſtations, and Roads for ſhipping, and therefore of great uſe and conſequence in thoſe furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy enterprize of *Peter Hyens*, a *Dutch man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*, who in the year 1627, ſeized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, conſiſting of 26 ſail of ſhips, (four of them being Men of War) all lying under the Protection of the Forts and Caſtles, built for the ſafety of that Bay. For thruſting in amongſt them with his one Ship only (the reſt not being able to follow) he ſo laid about him, that having ſunk the Vice Admiral, he took all the reſt, conditioning only for their lives, notwithſtanding all the ſhot which was made againſt him from the ſhips and Caſtles, and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the ſhore. This ſeems to have been the firſt attempt the *Hollanders* made upon *Braſil*, which was carried on with great ſucceſs, till the Crown of *Portugal* fell on the head of *John Diake* of *Braganza* in 1640. After which they began by degrees to recover this Country from the *Hollanders*, but with great difficulty. Chief Towns hereof, 1 S. *Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the Northſide of the Bay by *Thomas de Souſa*, adorned with many Churches and Religious Houſes, and fortified (beſides the Wall) with three ſtrong Caſtles; the one called S. *Anthony*, the other S. *Philip*, and the third *Tapeſipe*. Yet not ſo ſtrong by reaſon of ſome Hills adjoyning which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and ſince loſt again. This in 1630 was the moſt populous City in *Braſil*. In 1676 it was made an Archbiſhops See, by the Pope *Innocent* XI. It had once 40 Sugar Mills, and a very rich Trade; when the *Hollanders* were finally Beaten out, I cannot now expreſly aſſign. 2. *Parripe*, more within the Land, four Leagues from S. *Saviours*, 3. *Seregippe del Rey*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River, but amongſt many rich paſtures, and ſome Veins of Silver.

7. Of FERNAMBUCK one of the richeſt Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of Braſil wood which is brought hence yearly for the Diers, in all this Country; but deſtitute of Corn and moſt other neceſſaries, with which ſupplyed from the *Canaries*, and ſometimes from *Portugal*. *Portugal* is not able without the aſſiſtance of *France* to Supply it ſelf with Corn in our days, and this Tobacco Trade is loſt to *England*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Braſil*, containing above 2000 perſons; not reckoning in the Church-men, nor taking the great number of Slaves which they keep for their Sugar-works into the account: for whoſe uſe they have here eight Parochial Churches, five Religious Houſes, and ſome Hoſpitals. Situate near the Sea-ſide, but on ſo uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a regular fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well-built Caſtle, and that well planted with Braſs-pieces. Which notwithſtanding, in the year 1595, the Caſtle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they uſe to ſtow all their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *James Lancaſter*, and ſome few of the *Engliſh*, who having tarried in the Haven above a Month, brought home with him eight of his own Ships, four *French men*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance, all laden with the choiceſt Marchandiſe of *Braſil* and *India*. 2. *Amatta de Braſil*, ten Miles from *Olinda*, the inhabitants whereof live by ſelling the Braſil-wood. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1629. but afterwards Deſerted, *Laet*. 3. S. *Laurenzo*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled, 4. *Pincur*, upon a River ſo named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of S. *Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garaſu*, about five Leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the moſt part by poor and Mechanical perſons, till the year 1632, when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This Prefecture, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque*, (a great Houſe in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* United, the Town of *Olinda* being taken by them in the year 1629, the Port and all the Avennes unto it ſo ſtrongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it. The *Dutch* have not now one foot of Land in *Braſil*, which ſaid once for all.

8. Of *TAMARACA*, ſo called from an Iſland of that name, diſtant about five miles from *Olinda*, of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a ſtrong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and ſo blocked it up, that it hath ſince been of no uſe to the *Spaniards*. This is the leaſt Prefecture in *Braſil*, but withal the ancienteſt; extended three Leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Monſanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly when entire, thirty thouſand Ducats. But his Rents are much diminiſhed, if not quite inverted, ſince the loſs of the Haven.

9. Of *PARAIBA*, ſo called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of moſt note herein, on the Banks whereof ſtandeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the ſea, about three Leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good Ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long ſince by 500 *Portugals*, beſides Slaves and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to ſtand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loſs of *Olinda*; but more ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any works within the Land. A Caſtle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were poſſeſſed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoyning Haven, called *Port Francois*, but outed by the *Portugal*, *Anno* 1585, who have ſince held their footing in it, but are in fear of the *Hollanders*; eſpecially ſince their taking of a little Iſland lying over againſt them, called the Iſle of *Noronba*.

10. Of RIOGRANDE, ſo called from the River *Poteingi*, (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a Prefecture till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next Pretender, ſome of the *French* began to fix here, *Anno* 1597. but the King of *Spain*, not willing to have any ſuch Neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba* to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the Savages beginning to riſe up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to ſeek aid from him of *Frenambuck*; by whoſe help having ſlain five thouſand, and took three thouſand of them, the reſt became Vaſſals to the *Portugals*, who built here an impregnable Caſtle, (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned, and furniſhed with Ammunition and all other Neceſſaries; very few *Portugals*, except thoſe of the Garriſon, being yet come over.

11. Of *SIARA*, a late Prefecture alſo, in which the *Portugals* have no more then a Caſtle, with a dozen

Houſes, or thereabouts, beſides that of the Governour djoyning to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara* but of no great note, and capable but of little Veſſels. Of ſome Trade in regard of the Chryſtal, Cotton-wool, and ſome precious ſtones found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and purſue their conqueſt, here being great plenty of Sugar Canes, but no Works to make it.

12. Of *MARAGNON*, an Iſland lying in the mouth of the great River ſo called, in the fartheſt parts of *Braſil* Northwards, and many Leagues diſtant from *Siara*, the laſt of their Prefectures; the Country intervening not yet diſcovered, or otherwiſe made known unto us, then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coaſt. An Iſland of a fruitful ſoil, if pains and Husbandry were not wanting; affording naturally Maize, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the Savages uſe for Bread; good ſtore of Cotton-wools, Saffron, Braſil-wood; and the beſt Tobacco; and in ſome places Balm and Amber. Watered with many freſh Rivers and pleaſant ſprings; well wooded both for Timber and Fewel; and, in a word, bleſſed with ſo temperate an Air, (though ſo near the *Equator*) that no place can be more commodious for the Life of Man. The people ſtrong of body, healthy and long liv'd, without any baldneſs, induſtrious in their Feather works and Manufactures of Cotton; the Women curious in ordering their Hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old, and ſometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their Marriage, and then apparelled only from their Waſt to their Knees.

The Villages hereof poſſeſſed by their Natives, conſiſted but of four great Houſes; each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in breadth, ſo placed as they reſembled a quadrangular Cloyſter; and in each Houſe ſo many Houſholds, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves*, (for ſo they called them) contained three hundred perſons, and ſome twice that number. Of theſe were twenty ſeven in all, whoſe names I hold impertinent to be muſtered here, the total eſtimate of the people when the *French* came thither amounting to 12000 Souls. For the *French* trading in this Iſland, and carrying themſelves courteouſly amongſt the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if ſent over to them, by whoſe Aid they might free themſelves from all other Pretenders; and being inſtructed in the Goſpel, accordingly a Colony and four *Capuchin* Friers are ſent over to them, *Anno* 1612. ſome Savages gained unto the Faith, and a ſtrong Caſtle, called S. *Lewis*, commodiouſly built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance, the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not reſted there, when diſſeized by the *Portugals*, ſent thither under the conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, Anno 1614. Who to the Caſtle of S. *Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added thoſe of *S. Mary*, and S. *Francis*, planted two Villages in the Iſland by the names of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Jago*, and ever ſince have held it without moleſtation.

13. Of *PARA*, the moſt Northern Prefecture of *Braſil* towards *Guiana*; ſo called from the River of *Para*, (ſuppoſed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it is two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen fathom deep: on the Banks, whereof (but on an higher grownd then the reſt) the *Portugals* have built the Caſtle of *Para*, in form quadrangular, and well-walled, except towards the River. This River is vaſt, but very much incumbred with *Shoals*; *Nauclerus*, *Euſitanus*, placeth it in the Southern Latitude 02,30. The *Portugueſe* built a Town called St. *James*, I ſuppoſe this is that which is called *Para*, from the River, *Laet*. p. 606. This River is nothing but the South Branch or outlet of the great River of *Amazons*, as is averred by this Author, p. 630. and 634. The *Indians* in theſe parts call all Rivers Lakes, the Sea and Ocean by the Name of *Para*, *ib*. 16. 630. The Country thereabouts being inhabited by 300 *Portugueſe*, beſides the Garriſon.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one Supreme. Divided into many Tribes, and each Tribe Governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. Theſe Tribes ſo many, and the Muſter of their names ſo uſeleſs, that I now forbear it. In this eſtate they lived when diſcovered firſt; but by whom firſt diſcovered will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get ſome colour of a Title for the Crown of *Caſtile*, aſcribe to *John Pinſone* and *Diego de Lope*, two of their own Country, who, as they ſay, had landed on it in the year 1500 before the coming of *Capralis*, though the ſame year alſo. The *Portugals* attribute the Diſcovery of it to *Pedro Alverez de Capralis*, ſent by their King *Emanuel* to the *Eaſt-Indies*; who being driven over hither from the Coaſt of *Guiana*, took poſſeſſion of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a Croſs, giving the name of *Sanctæ Crucis*, or the Holy Croſs, to this new diſcovery. That name changed afterwards to *Braſil*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongſt them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Veſpuſius*, a noble *Florentine*, Anno 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503, were by *Emanuel* imployed in a farther Diſcovery. Who ſpeeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals*, did accordingly ſend over ſome Plantations thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged; the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth (by whom the whole undiſcovered World was divided betwixt thoſe two Kings) it ſeemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Caſtile*. Enjoyed by this *Emanuel*, and the Kings ſucceeding, till the death of *Sebaſtian*, (which *Sebaſtian* the Jeſuites look on as the Founder of all the Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* ſince the death of *Henry*, (whoſe Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being ſo prudently jealous of their Intereſt in it, that they would not ſuffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongſt them. By them poſſeſſed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean for ſo much of the Country as they had ſubdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part, and got the Prefectures of *Fernambuck* and *Todos los Santos* (or the Bay) by the right of War. The reſt with all the other members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, ſubmitting unto *John* the fourth, of the Houſe of *Braganza*, whom the *Portugueſe* had made their King, *Anno* 1639.

The *Portugueſe* having thus freed themſelves from the Yoke of *Spain*, their next care was to recover *Braſil* from the Intruſion of the *Hollanders*, which they in part effected, during the time of our Civil War, and perfected it in or about the time of our firſt *Dutch* War; which hindered the *Hollanders* from ſending the ſupplies that were neceſſary to ſupport their conqueſt. But the War going on between *Portugal* and *Spain* till 1669. the *Portugueſe* were not in a capacity to make the beſt Advantage of their good ſucceſs, ſo that the *Engliſh* in the mean time gat the main of the Sugar and Tobacco Trade, and ſupplyed the North parts of the World, beſides theſe with Cotton, Indigo, Wool, and many other Commodities we had before from hence. This was the greateſt Blow that *Portugal* has received, and never to be retrieved, till by our Imprudence we deſtroy our own Trade, and diſcourage our Plantations from going on with them, or force them to ſomething which is worſe. The Crown of *Portugal* ſeems to me to have committed two great Errours in relation to this Planting this Country; the firſt was the Planting by the way of Force or Conqueſt: Their Kingdom being ſmall and exhauſted by their *Eaſt-Indian* Garriſons and Settlements in *Africa*, was not able to ſpare any conſiderable quantity of Men, for the reducing and keeping ſo long a Coaſt as this is, againſt ſuch numerous and valiant Men, as the *Braſilians* are; And which made it worſe, was, that it was not the

Crown of *Portugal* that was immediately concerned, but certain private Adventurers of the Nobility of that Kingdom, who were not able to do it ſo effectually, as the Crown might have done it, but ſpent the Subjects of that ſmall Kingdom to no very great and good effect! The ſecond Error was the Graſping at ſo much, and making the Settlement ſo far diſtant from each other, that they were not able to Succour each other. Had all the *Portugueſſe* in *Braſil* been ſettled together, in a ſmaller compaſs of ground, they might have deſpiſed the Natives, and any foraigner that could have attacked them at that diſtance; but being ſo diſperſed, and ſo few in Number, they fell a prey to both. If the War with *England* had not diverted the *Dutch* Supplys, it is more then probable, they would have driven the *Portugueſſe* at length out of *Braſil*. So before that, if the the *French* civil Wars had not hindered *Caſtilion*, the Admiral of *France*, from ſending Reinforcements in due time, and proportion to them, he had ſent thither, they would have fixed here in the deſpite of the *Portugueſſe*.

Portugal alſo by this means loſt her own liberty, and was reduced under the Vaſſalage of *Spain*, for want of Men to defend the Country; and had not *Spain*, been more exhauſted by the Plantations in *America*, Baniſhment of the *Mores*, and the tedious *Netherland* War, *Portugal* had never been able to recover out of this *Vaſſalage*; So that whilſt they conquered in *America*, they were Conquered in *Europe*: this will alſo in fine be the Fate of *Spain* too, tho being a Greater Kingdom, it may ſubſiſt for ſome time.

And ſo much for **BRASIL.**

OF GUIANA.

GUIANA is bound on the Eaſt with the main-*Atlantick*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather ſome undiſcovered Countries interpoſed betwixt them; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South, with that of the *Amazons*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs it be ſo called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon. It is yet ſaid to have had this name given it, becauſe it lieth in the ſame Latitude with *Guiana* in *Africa*, and is not much unlike it in other Circumſtances; but we may be ſure of this, it had its name from the other.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the Line, extended from the fourth degree of Southern to the eighth of Northern Latitude. The Air notwithſtanding this ſituation under the *Æquator*, is affirm'd to be temperate, the Eaſtern winds (which they call the *Briezes*) conſtantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extream heats thereof by their cooler blaſts. The Country towards the Sea-ſide flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and ſwelled with Hills: in all places ſo adorned with Natures Tapeſtry, the boughs and branches of the Trees never uncloathed or left naked, (Fruits either ripe or green growing ſtill upon them) that no Country in the World could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we ſhall ſee anon, when the particular parts hereof come into diſcourſe.

Of the People it is ſaid in general, that they have amongſt them no ſetled Government, and though they acknowledge ſome Superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they pleaſe. Adultery and murther which are only puniſhable, are not otherwiſe expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer ſort have two or three Wives, and ſometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any farther Ceremony or Formalities of Law, they beat out their Brains. Their Wives, eſpecially the elder, they uſe for Servants; and he which hath moſt ſuch is the greateſt man. Without Religion, or any notion of a Godhead; not ſo far onwards on the way to the worſhip of the true God as to be Idolaters: for though Idolatry be miſtaken in the proper Object, it ſuppoſeth a Deity; and they who have this principal that there is a God, have learned one and not the leaſt, of the points of their Catechiſm. Their Accounts amongſt themſelves they keep with a bundle of ſticks, which they diminiſh or increaſe according to the times of their Contract. Their Funerals they ſolemnize with a Feaſt, but with ſuch diverſity in the deportment of both Sexes, that while the Women houl extreamly, the men perform the Obſequies with ſinging and exceſſive drinking; the one as improper for a Feaſt, as the other for a Funeral.

Rivers of moſt note in it, beſides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. the River of *Amazons*, and thoſe rather Boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3. *Arrawary*. 4. *Conawene*. 5. *Caſpurough*, or *Caſſipure*; all falling into the ſame main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the laſt riſing out of the Lake of the *Arachoſi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five ſpans deep. 6. *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia*, This River is 4. 40. from the Line to the North, beautiful and of a long Courſe, of a Fruitful Soil, and very broad at its fall. *L. Keymis* found a large ſafe Haven, made by ſome Iſlands at the mouth of it, *Laet. p.* 639. 8. *Cajane*. 9. *Marwine*, this is a vaſt River, and is 5. 45. from the Line to the North, and one *German* mile at the mouth over, and very deep. *Harcourt*, in 1608. ſailed up this River, and was kindly treated by the *Indian Ryoletts*; about 20 Leagues from the mouth he found Cataracts very difficult in paſſing. The Soil about this River is low, and of a Red Colour, and not ſo fruitful towards the Sea. Nigher up ſeven or eight Miles, it riſeth higher into Hills, but elſe like the former, *Laet. p.* 646. 10. *Eſſequabe*, a River of twenty days journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque*, or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into theſe four parts:

1. *Rio de las Amazones*, or the River of *Amazones*. 2. *Wiapoco*, or *Guiana* ſpecially ſo called. 3. *Orenoque*. And 4. The Iſles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the Tract of that famous River. The Soil is in ſome places dry and barren, in others fertile and Productive of the choiceſt Fruits, full of large Woods, and in thoſe Woods moſt ſort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongſt others of moſt note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the

Totocke, a Tree of great Bulk, and as great a Fruit; this laſt as big as a mans head, and ſo hard withal, that when the Fruit grows ripe and Ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an Helmet, or ſome ſuch ſhelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their Brains. The kernels of it, for the moſt part ten or twelve in number, have the taſt of Almonds, and are ſaid to be provocative in point of Venery. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue ſecke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to ſay, Eat *Totocke* if thou wouldſt be potent in the acts of *Venus*. Here are alſo Sugar-Canes in ſome places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taſt whereof is ſaid to be like Strawberries, Claret Wine, and Sugar.

The Principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Yaoes*, *Cuckettuay*, *Pattecui*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackehanes*, dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons* and *Arowians*, poſſeſſed of the Iſlands. Towns of note I have met with none amongſt them, though every houſe (moſt of them 140 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the leaſt an hundred perſons) might paſs ſufficiently for a Village. Yet they are ſafer houſed then ſo, for otherwiſe their Houſes would afford them but little comfort in the overflowings of the River which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themſelves to the tops of Trees, and there remain like Birds, with their ſeveral Families, till the Waters be drawn in again, and the Earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find ſome of theſe their dwellings called by proper Names: as, 1. *Matarem.* 2. *Roakery.* 3. *Anorcaprock.* 4. *Haaman.* 5. *Womians*: and 6. *Cogemymne.* But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this River and the parts adjoyning was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonſales Pizarro*, whom his Brother *Franciſco* Pizarro, then Vice-roy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noiſe of ſome rich Countrys beyond the *Andes*, he raiſed ſufficient Forces, and paſſed over thoſe Mountains, where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and ſent this *Orellana* to bring in Proviſions. But the River which he chanced into was ſo ſwift of courſe, that he was not able to go back; and was therefore of neceſſity to obey his fortune in following the courſe of that ſtrong water. Paſſing along by divers deſolate and unpeopled places, he came at laſt into a Country planted and inhabited; where he firſt heard of the *Amazons*, (by whoſe Savages called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people. And in the end, having ſpent his time in paſſing down this River from the beginning of *January*, to the end of *Auguſt* 1540. he came at laſt into the Sea, and getting into the Iſle of *Cubagna*, ſailed into *Spain*. The courſe of this Voyage down the Water, he eſtimated at 1800 Leagues, (or 5400. *Engliſh* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his paſſage, as himſelf affirmed; only ſome maſculine Women ſhewed themſelves intermixt with the Men, to oppoſe his landing; and in ſome places he found Men with long Hair like Women: either of which might make theſe parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got Commiſſion for the Conqueſt of the Countries by him diſcovered; and in the year 1549 he betook himſelf unto the ſervice. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at leaſt, he could never hit upon the Channel which brought him down, though he attempted often. Which ill ſucceſs, with the conſideration of his loſs both in Fame and Fortunes, brought him to his Grave; having got nothing but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery, and the leave of his name to that famous River, ſince called *Orellana*. The Enterprize was purſued, but with like ſucceſs, by one *Pedro de Orſna*, Anno 1560, after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact Diſcovery, and ſeveral begun ſome Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the other; their Quarters being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were ſufficiently fortified to make any reſiſtance.

2. WIAPOCO, or GUIANA ſpecially ſo called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both ſides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of long Courſe, but not paſſible up the Stream above 16 miles, by reaſon of the Cataract or great fall from the higher Ground: in breadth betwixt that Cataract and the *Æſtuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Æſtuarium*, or Influx, a whole mile at leaſt, and there about two Fathoms deep. This great River is four Degrees 30. Minutes from the Line to the North, it falls into a Bay three miles over, but within it is both fleeter and narrower. In the year 1608. *Harcourt* an *Engliſh* man, left 10 *Engliſh* men, and one *German*, with the *Indians* that live upon this River, and lived there three years, and but ſix of them died in that time, and that by Miſfortunes rather than Diſeaſes. *Laet.* p. 637.

The Country on both ſides of this River very rich and fertile; ſo natural for Tobacco, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. Sugar-canes grow here naturally without any planting, and on the Shrubs great ſtore of Cotton, and the Dye by ſome called *Orellana*. Plenty of Veniſon in their Woods, and of Fiſh in their Rivers: their Fields well ſtored with Beaſts, which themſelves call *Moyres*; in ſhape and uſe reſembling Kine, but without any Horns. The people generally of a modeſt and ingenuous countenance, naked, but would wear cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them, (one would think this might be ſaid of all the naked nations, but it cannot, many of them being hardly, and with great difficulty to be brought to Change this Cuſtom, and that not ſuddenly neither) Their Bread is made of a Plant called *Caſſavi*, of which alſo being dried and chewed, and then ſtrained through a Wicker Veſſel, they make a kind of Drink, in colour like new Ale, but not ſo well taſted, and of leſs continuance. The greateſt part of their Food is Fiſh, which they intoxicate with a ſtrong ſcented Wood, and ſo take them up as they lie floating on the top of the Water. Much troubled with a Worm like a Flea, (by the *Spaniards* called *Niguas*) which get under the nails of their Toes, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no leſs torture to the Patient, without ſpeedy prevention. No better Remedy found out, then to pour Wax melted hot on the place affected; which being pulled off when its cold, draws the Vermin with it, ſometimes 800 at a pull. The women have ſuch eaſie child birth, that they are delivered without help, and preſently bring the Child to his Father, (for they have ſo much natural Modeſty, as to withdraw from company upon that occaſion) who waſheth it with water, and painteth it with ſeveral colours, and ſo returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleaſant and goodly ſtreams. The names of ſome of them on both ſides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long courſe, a goodly River all the way, and at the Mouth thereof to be large and broad, which paſſing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth degree and 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may poſſibly occaſion both the whole and this part more eſpecially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W. Guiana.* Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana*, I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need farther ſearch be made after leſſer Rivers, (which will offer themſelves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to paſs over like a Sea for bigneſs, (*Magnum, famoſum, & vaſtum, inſtar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Yaos* or *Jaos* called *Rapanowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimen*; ſituate about a days journey from the River *Eſſequebo*, and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado*, (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in

Coin, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was ſaid to be in it. The greateſt City, as ſome ſay, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordas*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican* Wars, and by him condemned for a Mutiny, put into a boat alone without any Victual, and ſo caſt off to ſeek his Fortune, affirmed at his return; that being taken by ſome of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then reſiding at *Manoa*, he entred the City at high-noon, travelled all the reſt of that day, and the next alſo until night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he ſaith that he was led blind-fold all the way: And therefore poſſibly enough this City might be no ſuch Miracle as the ſtory makes it; *Don Diego* being either abuſed by the Reports of the Savages, or willing to abuſe the World with ſuch empty Fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *Engliſh* have ſeverally ſought, and that with incredible diligence, to find out this City; yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be ſaid in the Poets Language,

——*Et quod non invenis uſquam,*
Eſſe putas nuſquam————————i. e.
That which is no where to be found,
Think not to be above the Ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his Relations of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being, forſooth, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba*, the laſt King of *Peru*, at the Conqueſt of that Kingdom, with many thouſands of his Followers, came into this Country, and ſubduing the *Caribes*, erected here a ſecond *Peruvian* Monarchy. For beſides that *Atabaliba* had no Brethren but *Guaſcar* and *Mango*, who both died in *Peru*, how improbable muſt it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing ſo well the thirſt of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either ſuffer him to return and diſcloſe the Secrets of his State, or ſend him away loaded with Gold, as tis' ſaid he did? Who ſheweth his Treaſure to a Thief, doth deſerve to loſe it. And therefore letting paſs theſe dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us deſcend to places of leſs Magnificence, but of greater Reality. Amongſt which I reckon, 1. *Caripo*, moſt memorable for a Colony of *Engliſh* planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, Anno. 1608. ſituate on the banks of the *Wiapoco*, near the Mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock ſo difficult of acceſs, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air ſo ſound and anſwerable to the conſtitution of an *Engliſh* body, that of 30, which were left there for three years together, there died but ſix, and thoſe ſix rather by misfortune, and ſome Croſs accident, then by any Diſeaſes. 2. *Gomeribo*, on the top of an Hill, near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiapoco*; poſſeſſed a while by ſome *Hollanders*, but ſoon deſerted. 3. *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Merwinen*. 4. *Crewinay*, on the other ſide of the ſame River, poſſeſſed by the *Caribes*. The King of the firſt (for each Tribe had its ſeveral Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to Strangers; of the latter, *Minapa*. 5. *Tamparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River; and 6. *Moreſhego*, four days journey from the other: both poſſeſſed by the *Carabes*. The King or *Cacique* of thoſe laſt, at Captain *Harcourt*'s being there, (of which time we ſpeak) was named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of Buff.

The principal Families of this part, beſides the *Yaos* or *Jaos*, and the *Maraons*, ſpoken of before, who poſſeſs almoſt all the Sea Coaſts of this Country, are ſaid to be the *Arwaccæ*, the *Sopayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracouri*; of different Languages and Cuſtoms, though near neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Iſland of *Trinidado*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, poſſeſſed themſelves of the Sea ſhores and the parts adjoyning: each Tribe or Family being Governed by its ſeveral Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had ſome footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their ſhort ſtay amongſt them, then to make the people diſaffected to the *Engliſh*, of whoſe pretenſions to theſe parts and deſigns to plant them, they had good intelligence. And ſo much was confeſſed by ſome of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance how much the *Engliſh* were abuſed in thoſe Miſ-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604, Captain *Charles Leigh* ſet ſail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an Houſe and Garden, and his Aid craved againſt the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*, and cauſed the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his Life, and that ſhortly after, he dying in his return on ſhip board. The deſign went forwards notwithſtanding, and in the year 1608. an *Engliſh* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new poſſeſſion taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned, the Country farther ſearched into by that noble Gentleman, then ever formerly by any or by many ſince. After three years, the Colony, wanting fit Supplies returned home again; the Plantation never ſince purſued though by ſome projected. Yet ſo far are theſe Savages beholden to the *Engliſh* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there againſt the *Caribes*, ſo at their going off they taught them the uſe of Arms, and put them into a poſture of defence, enabling them thereby to preſerve themſelves againſt all their enemies.

3. *ORENOQUE*, or the Province of the River *Orenoque*, comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and towards the banks of that famous River, of which we have already ſpoken. The Country is very rich and pleaſant, conſiſting of large Plains many miles in compaſs, adorned with the Embroidery of Flowers and unknown Plants, exceeding pleaſant to the Eye; and ſometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furniſhed with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally ſtored with Fiſh, and the Forreſts both with Beaſts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, not *Peru* it ſelf, ſaid to be comparable to it for abundance of Treaſure. Some alſo add a whole Mountain of Cryſtal to be ſeen afar off from *Winecaporo*; and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities then elſewhere in all *Peruana*; but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *Engliſh* could never ſee them, though they diligently ſearched into moſt parts of the Country.

The People, as of ſeveral Nations, ſo of ſeveral Natures. The *Capury* and *Macureos*, for the moſt part Carpenters, live by making *Caanos* or Boats, which they ſell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidado* for Tobacco, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dieth, they make great lamentation; and after the Fleſh is putrified and fallen from the Bones, they take up the Skeleton, and hang it up in the Houſe where he dwelt, decking his skull with Feathers of all colours, and hanging Gold Plates about the bones of his Arms and Thighs. Of the *Tivitivas*, dwelling upon ſome of the Northern Branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant people, and to have the moſt manly and moſt deliberate ſpeech of any Nation in the World. A people which eat of nothing that is ſet or ſown; the Children of Dame Nature, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art or Induſtry; uſing the tops of the *Palmito* Tree for Bread; Fiſh, Deer, and Swines-fleſh for the reſt of their ſuſtenance. The *Aſſaway*, *Saymæ*, *Wickeri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with ſmoother Hair; and to uſe Arrows dipt in ſo ſtrange a poiſon, as doth not only bring death, but death with moſt unſpeakable torments, eſpecially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwacæ*, of this Tract I find nothing ſingular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their Wives and neareſt of the Kindred beat their Bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink, like Spice.

Places of moſt importance in it (for to ſpeak any thing particularly of thoſe many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque* were an endleſs labour) are, 1. *Comolaha*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but ſomewhat diſtant, in which they keep ſome annual Fairs for the ſale of Women. One of our *Engliſh men*, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1595, affirmeth that he bought eight of them (the eldeſt not above eighteen) for a half-peny red hafted Knife, which he brought from *England*. But withal tells us, for his credit, that he gave them to ſome Savages of his acquaintance. 2. *Morequito*, a known Port upon ſome branch of the *Orenoque*; of much uſe to the *Engliſh* in their firſt Diſcovery of theſe parts. 3. *Winecaporo*, ſo called from whence was ſhewed an high Hill, ſaid to be of Criſtal, but ſo far off, that it was thought better to believe them then to go and ſee. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which, falling down this Cataract on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noiſe, as if a thouſand Bells were knocked one againſt another. And poſſible enough it is, that this great fall of Water diſcerned far off may (with the help of Sun-ſhine) carry ſome reſemblance of a Cryſtaline Mountain. 4. S. *Thome*, ſituate on the main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 Houſes, ſtretched out in length for half a mile, but ſlightly built; a Pariſh Church in the midſt of it, and at the Weſt end a Convent of *Franciſcan* Friers. The only Town of all *Guiana* poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till againſt the laſt coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617. but taken by him at that time, and ſince that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1629; though by both quitted, not long after it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The ſeveral Nations of this Tract have been named before; diſcovered firſt by *Diego de Ordas*, Anno 1531. furniſhed with a Patent for the Conqueſt of it by *Charles* the Fifth. But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwiſe not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*, effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, Anno 1533, and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded farther then the others *Anno* 1536. and finally by *Gonſalvo Ximines de Queſada*, and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune: who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the ſearch of *Guiana*, fell caſually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly diſcovered till the year 1595, in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Priſoner this *Antonio Berreo*; and learning of him the ſucceſs of his Expedition, reſolved upon the Undertaking; and ſearched ſo far into the Country by the courſe of this River that ſome have ſince called it *Raliana*. The buſineſs was followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Laurence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that Service, who at his coming found the Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houſes of the Savages had been laid together like a Town, and all the Natives, who wiſhed well to the *Engliſh*, diſperſed and ſcattered. So that without any other affect of his journey, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he firſt diſcovered) he ſet ſail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *Engliſh* ſhould be planted there, and ſome proportionable force ſent over to make good the Action, but the motion was upon good advice rejected, firſt in regard of the diſtance of it from the main body of our ſtrength; and ſecondly, becauſe the *Spaniards*, bordering near upon it, might eaſily deſtroy a ſmall force, and make the enterprize diſhonourable to the *Engliſh* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of honourable Achievements. It was permitted notwithſtanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh* and *Harcourt*, before ſpoken of. But they, not being able to go through with ſo great a buſineſs, let it fall again. And ſo it reſted till the laſt unfortunate Voyages of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licenſed by Commiſſion under the Great Seal to ſearch into ſome Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A deſign followed with great hopes by the Undertakers, moſt of them being perſons of Honour, and well attended: but ſo unfortunate in the iſſue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of *S. Thome* he loſt his own Son, and a great part of his Forces, and after his return) not able with the reſidue to make good his ground againſt the enemy) was executed on a former Attainder in the old Palace of *Weſtminſter*, Octob. 29. Anno 1918. Of whom I cannot chuſe but note what is ſaid by *Camden Clarencieux* in his Annals: *Vir erat nunquam ſatis laudato ſtudio & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem* Angliæ *gloriam promovendi.* And ſo I leave him to his reſt in the Bed of Peace.

4. The *ISLANDS* which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either ſcattered on the ſhore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers; ſome of them not inhabited, others of no name, and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Iſle of 1. *Trinidado*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of ſome eſteem: which though ſomewhat farther off from the ſhores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidado* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* paſs but for one Prefecture, or Provincial Government, we ſhall deſcribe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDADO*, or *Inſula* S. *Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque*, over againſt *Paria*, from which ſeperated by a Frith, or Streight, by *Columbus*, who firſt diſcovered it; called *Bocca del Drago*, or the Dragons mouth, becauſe of the dangerouſneſs of the paſſage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth degree of Northern Latitude; the moſt Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North Eaſt, *Punta de Gallera*. The Frith, or Streight but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the Interpoſition of four or five little Iſlands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for ſhipping into the Gulf called the *Gulf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth 18. Of a Cloudy and unhealthy Air, but a fertile ſoil, abundantly well ſtored with ſuch Commodities, as are of the Natural growth of *America*, viz. Maize, Sugar-canes, Cotton-wool, and the beſt kind of Tobacco, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidado*. Here is alſo a ſufficiency of Fruits and Cattle for the uſe of the Natives; and here and there ſome Veins of Gold, and other Metals: ſuch ſtore of Pitch, that innumerable Ships might be laden with it, but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of ſhips, becauſe it ſoftneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth is by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with the other *Americans*, diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral Tribes, but moſt of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forſook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called S. *Joſephs*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the Iſland, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Caroue*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Governour, who hath under him beſides this Iſland the Provinces of *Guiana*, and *El Dorado*, (for ſo goes his Titles) yet a ſmall Town, conſiſting but of 40 Houſes when it was taken, *Anno* 1597. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; or as others 1595. He obſerved the North part was barren and Mountainous. The reſt was very fruitful in *Maize*, *Sugar Canes*, and ſuch other things as are common in this Climate. I ſuppoſe, ſaith my Author, it is not much encreaſed, ſince the *Spaniards* minding here nothing but the Planting of Tobacco. It has much mineral pitch, but of no uſe, becauſe it melts with the heat of the Sun, *Laet.* p. 661. *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Priſoner, who furniſhed his taker with many Notions (and ſome meerly fabulous) towards the Diſcovery of *Guiana.*

This Iſland, firſt diſcovered by *Chriſtopher Columbus,* in his third Voyage, *Anno* 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad,* it may be with ſome reference to the form hereof,, ſhooting into the Sea with three points or Promontories. Nothing elſe memorable in the fortunes and ſtory of it, but what is touched upon before. *Oviedo* a *Spaniard* ſaith, the South Cape of it lyes in nine Degrees of Latitude, and the North in 10, the *Dutch* ſay 10. 30. and the South 9. 30. It lyes from *Hiſpaniola* 200 Leagues South, from *Domingo, Margarita,* and *Cubaga* 40. In length it is 50 Leagues, in breadth 30. in form it is *Triangular.*

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North eaſt of *La Trinidad,* from which it is eight miles diſtant: full of ſafe Harbours for the bigneſs, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well ſtored with Woods: amongſt which ſome *Palmito* Trees, ſome like that of the Braſil-wood, others not elſe where to be found. Of Fowl and Fiſh ſufficient to maintain it ſelf. Now called *New Walcheren,* with reference to an Iſland of that name in *Zealand,* by ſome of the *Low Country men,* who begin to plant there. As the *Hollanders* obſerve it lyes in the North Latitude of 11. 16. The Eaſt ſide of it lyes very high and has two ſmaller Iſlands, and ſome Rocks lie near the Creeks in it are very fit for the riding of ſhips. Its length is from North to South. The Soil is fruitful, and the Air very Pleaſant. The beſt Harbours are on the Weſt ſide of the Iſland. *Laet.* ſaith, the *Dutch* were in poſſeſſion of the Iſland ſome years before he wrote, and from them he had an exact account, p. 666. His Deſcription of *America* was finiſhed in 1633. This Iſland in the year 1673. was plundred by the *Engliſh* under Sir *Tobias Bridges,* and they carried away 400 Priſoners, and as many *Negroes.* In 1677. the *French* being deſirous to expel the *Dutch,* ſent the Count *D'Eſtree,* with ten Ships which entered *Klips* Bay, and for ſeveral days engaged a Fleet of eight *Dutch* Ships lying under the Command of *James Binkins* a *Dutch Man,* who ſo well defended the Iſland, that though the *French* pretended they deſtroyed the Fort the *Dutch* had built, yet the *French* were forced to draw off and leave the *Dutch* Maſters of the Iſland. It is in length 32 miles, and in breadth about 11. This Iſland was Granted by *Charles* the ſecond to *James Duke of Courland,* his Heirs and Succeſſors only, to be peopled with *Engliſh* and *Courlanders,* who imployed one Maſter *John Pointz* in that affair, but with what effect I know not, but it being in the hands of the *Hollanders* in 1677. it is probable they retook the Iſland, or that it was returned to them by the Treaty of Peace, the Articles of which I have not now by me.

And ſo much for *GUIANA.*

OF PARIA.

PARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Guiana,* and the Iſlands in the mouth of the *Orenoque;* on the Weſt, with the Gulf or Bay of *Venezuela,* and part of the new Realm of *Granada*, on the North, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean, or *Mare del Noordt*; the Countrys lying on the South not diſcovered hitherto.

It took this name from a miſtake of the *Spaniards,* (as *Peru* and *Jucatan* on the like) who asking, as as all men do the names of thoſe new Regions which they diſcovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were anſwered *Paria,* that is to ſay, high Hills or Mountains, (for here begins the ridge of Mountains, which are thence continued for the Space of 3600 miles, to the ſtreights of *Magallan*:) and ſo hath it ever ſince held the name of *Paria.* By ſome writers it is called *Nova Andaluzia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the Soil and People being very different, will be more properly conſidered in the ſeveral parts. The whole divided into the Continent and the Iſlands, which, with their ſub-diviſions may be branched into theſe particulars, *viz.* 1. *Cumana,* 2. *Venezuela,* 3. S. *Margarita.* 4. *Cubagna*; and fifthly the leſſer Iſlands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the Eaſt the Gulf of *Paria,* and the River *Orenoque*; on the Weſt, *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana,* one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof ſome *Dominican* Friers (who firſt ſet footing in this Country) built themſelves a Monaſtery; that name being communicated afterwards unto all the reſt of this Tract.

It is extended Eaſt and Weſt to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof, from North to South, ſaid to be 400. But there is little of it known, and leſs of it planted by the *Europeans*; except ſome places near the ſea: there being no part of all *America,* the diſcription whereof hath come ſo imperfectly to our hands, as it hath of this. For except it be the names of ſome Bays or Promontories, and of two or three moſt noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our conſiderations.

The Country, for ſo much as hath been diſcovered, neither rich nor pleaſant; and conſequently the leſs looked after: covered with ſhrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable Briers and Buſhes. Heretofore famed for Pearl-fiſhing all along the Coaſt: from the Gulf of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela,* called therefore *Coſta de las Perlas*; but that gainful Trade hath long ſince failed. Now only of eſteem for a Vein of moſt excellent Salt, found near the Promontory of *Araya,* and the Bay of *Cariaco,* gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and never diminiſhing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontory bordering on the Frith called *Bocco del Drago,* the Title or Appellation of Cape *Salinas.* Of ſome ſtrange Creatures in this Country, as the Beaſt called *Capa,* the ſoles of whoſe Feet are like a Shooe, a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants or Piſmires, Parrots and Bats of more then ordinary greatneſs, I forbear to ſpeak.

Of the people I find nothing ſingular, except it be, that having plenty of good Fruits, and of Fiſh and Fleſh, they uſe themſelves to a far worſe diet, feeding on Horſe Leeches, Bats, Spiders, Graſhoppers, Worms, Lice, and ſuch other Vermin; In other things they ſeem to have a mixture of an ill Cuſtom uſed amongſt the Savages of *Aſia, Africa* and *America*; as multitudes of wives, proſtituting theſe Wives for the firſt Nights *Lodging* to the *Piacos* or Prieſts, and for any after, to their Gueſts; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting ſtrange colours on their Bodies inſtead of Garments; high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accuſtomed to the uſe of poiſoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes Blood and other mixtures. In one thing only differing from the reſt of their neighbours, which is, the ſencing of their Grounds or Orchards with a Cotton thred, as high as ones Girdle, and an opinion which they have, that whoſoever breaketh it, or goes over or under it, ſhall die immediately; more ſafe in that perſwaſion than by brazen Walls. The Women tilled the Earth, and planted all their Proviſions, whilſt the Men were imployed in War and hunting. The Women went naked, and expoſed themſelves to all Men till they were married; but after this wear ſome ſlight thing to cover their Nakedneſs, and were more reſerved, *Laet.* p. 672. The *Spaniards* were ſo cruel to this People, that in 1513. the Monks of St. *Dominick* interceded with the King of *Spain*, to have the civilizing of them, which was granted by *Charles* the fifth.

River of moſt note, though of little, 1. *Rio de Canoas*, 2. *Rio de Neveri*, 3. *Cumana de Bardoneir*. The chief Havens or Roads for ſhipping, 1. *Moxino*, 2. S. *Foy*, and 3. that called *Commenagot*. The places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Cumana*, a Colony of *Spaniards* on the Bank of the river of that name, but diſtant about two miles from the ſea, on which it hath a ſafe and convenient Harbour: the Town ſo hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be ſeen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governour's Houſe, ſeated upon the top of a loſty Mountain. 2. S. *Jago*, a ſtrong Fortreſs built by the *Spaniard* for-defence of the ſalt Lake, by *Salinas*, in the year 1622, on ſome intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpoſe to rake them from him; fortified to the Rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Braſs. 3. S. *Michael de Neveri*, on the River ſo called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the Natives.

The Country firſt was diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, but the poſſeſſion of it was firſt taken by two *Dominicans*, who out of a Religious zeal to plant the Goſpel in theſe parts, founded themſelves a little Cell in the place were the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *Anno* 1513. and doubtleſs had ſped very well in their holy purpoſe, if ſome covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherouſly ſeized upon one of the Chiefs of their Tribes; and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spaniſh* bondage. For this the poor Monks ſuffered death, I may call it martyrdom, which was revenged by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after ſlain by the Savages, who alſo at the ſame time deſtroy'd two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Fryers, which had been founded in the year 1518. A Second force ſent hither under *Gonſalvo de Ocampo*, waſted a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs ſome of his people. But that ſtrength being withdrawn or defeated alſo, *Diego de Caſtellon* is ſent over by the Council reſident in *Hiſpaniola*, to ſecure the poſſeſſion of the Country; by whom the *Caſtle* firſt, and after the *Burrough* of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conqueſt; but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Caſtle of S. *Michael de Neveri*, by *Hierom* of *Ortal*, and the Diſcovery of ſome of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the ſea-ſide, by *Antonio Sedenno*. Anno 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Regiſtring of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounden on the Eaſt with *Cumana*; on the Weſt, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, one of the firſt Diſcoverers of it, *Anno* 1599. becauſe he found a Burrough of ſome of the Savages ſituate in the midſt of the waters, to which was no paſſage but by Boat: the word importune as much as *Little Venice*. It was firſt attempted to be conquered in 1528. by the *Germans*. On the Eaſt it is bound by the *Maracapana*, and to the Weſt by *Cape de la Veba*, in Length 200 Leagues. There was ſcarce a year after this to that of 1553. but there was an expedition made by the *Germans* or *Spaniards* for the Conqueſt or diſcovery of this large Province, as is related by *Laet. lib.* 18. *cap.* 8, 9, 10. to the North it has the Bay of *Mexico*, and to the South *Orenoque* and the Provinces upon it.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt 130 Leagues; in breadth where broadeſt about 80. The Soil ſo plentiful of all ſorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Country ſo replenished with all kind of Cattle, and excellent Paſtures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granary*. Such ſtore there goeth from hence of Wheaten Meal, Bisket, Cheeſe, Hogs-fleſh, Oxhides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deſerves that Title. Here is alſo very great plenty of Fiſh, wild Beaſts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals: beſide an infinite deal of *Sarſaparilla* ſent to *Europe* yearly. The people are of the ſame Nature and Diſpoſition with thoſe of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and ſwim, as well as the men to Till the Land; and look to the buſineſs of the houſe, whilſt the men hunt or fiſh to bring in Proviſion. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameleſs enough till married, after more reſerved; tho' rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modeſty.

Rivers of note I meet with none, inſtead of which are many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief that called *Golfo triſte*, from ſome Shipwracks, or the like misfortune happened to the Namer of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro* or *Venezuela*, large and capacious, which by the Frith or Streight of half a League over, receiveth the Tribute of 3. The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nueſtra Sennora*, or our Ladies Lake, in compaſs about eighty Leagues; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the Savages, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Maracapana*, the fartheſt Port upon the Eaſt, and one of the beſt on all this Coaſt, in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagna* had once a Garriſon, under colour of defending the Country againſt the Savages, but in plain truth to uſe it for an opportunity to ſeize upon their perſons, and carry them away for Slaves. Thoſe parts are hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the moſt Weſtern Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, ſituate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees, built on the Sea; where it hath an Haven on each ſide; the one capacious, but not ſafe, the other ſafe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a ſweet and healthy Air, and neighboured by the richeſt ſoil of all the Country, it had been long the ordinary ſeat of the Governour, and the See of a Biſhop, (Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*.) Once ſuddenly ſurprized by the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1595. and burnt to aſhes, but as ſuddenly repaired again, 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Caravalleda*, 80 Leagues from *Coro* towards the Eaſt, ſeated upon the ſea near an unſafe Haven, and defended from aſſault by the Caſtle of *Caracas*; ſo called from the name of the Tribe in which it ſtandeth. Near unto which the Hills ariſe to ſo great an height, that they ſeem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariff*, ſo much talked of. 4. S. *Jago de Leon*, in the ſame Tribe of *Caracas*, taken by the *Engliſh* in the ſame year. This lyes ſeven Leagues from the Bay of *Mexico*, ſeventy from *Coro* to the Eaſt, and four from *Caravaleda*. It is ſeated in a fruitful plain, having a Ridge of high Mountains between it and the Sea, *Laet.* p. 682. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25 Leagues from S. *Jago de Leon*, and from *Goro* 60. 6. *New Xeres* lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xeres*; ſituate on the Banks of *Baraquicemiti*,the moſt noted River of this Tract. This City was built by the *Germans*,about the year 1552. near Mount St. *Pedro*, and afterwards for the unhealthful ſight of it, removed to the aforementioned River,which falls into the *Orenoque*. It ſtands 80 Leagues from *Coro*, to the South Eaſt Latitude 7. 40. About it live many *Indian* Nations, of different Languages. The Soil is barren, but feeds vaſt quantities of wild Beaſts, and the Rivers equally plenty of Fiſh; The Mountains near it have plenty of Gold, which occaſioned the building this City, but they want Servants to work the Mines. The Cattle the *Spaniards* brought hither have encreaſed wonderfully, but the *Indians* that were Numerous then, are ſince waſted to nothing, *Laet* p. 683. 8. *Tucayo* in the Valley ſo called; not very large,but plentifully loaded with rich ſugar canes, for which ſome ſugar-works or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9. *Truxillo*,or *Mueſtra Sennara de la Paz*, 18 leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*,on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a Factory for the Sale of their Wares. 10 *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake it ſelf; not elſe obſervable but for the Multitude of Tigers which do haunt about it.

This Country, diſcovered by *Columbus*,and named by *Alfonſo de Oeida*, as before is ſaid, was firſt pretended to, for Neighbourhood ſake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Ampnez*, by order from the Council reſident at *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*, was employed in the Diſcovery of it,*Anno* 1527. But *Charles* the Fifth, having taken up great ſums of mony of the *Velſeri*, a wealthy Family of *Augſpurg*,pawned this Country to them, by whom *Ambroſius Alſinger* was ſent with 400 Foot,and 80 Horſe to take poſſeſſion. But he and his ſucceſſors in that Employment not minding ſo much the Conqueſt as the ſpoil of the Country, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the buſineſs once again; and in the year 1545.ſent over one *John de Caravayal*, who treading in the ſteps of the *Germans*, or rather out-going them in all ſorts of rapine, was outed on a ſecond Order by one *John Perez de Toloſa*,by whom the Province was reduced into ſome good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*,began to mutiny; but their deſign was diſcovered, and themſelves all ſlain,Peace and contentment following after all theſe Troubles, the Country was in little time ſo throughly Planted, and the Natives ſo encouraged in their ſeveral Tribes,that notwithſtanding the deſtructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*,here were reckoned not long ſince above 100000 of the Savages;not numbring thoſe above 50,or under 18 years of age;who,by an order of the Council of *Spain* for theſe parts of *America*,are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*, from the main Land, whereof it is diſtant above ſeven Leagues. So called from the abundance of Pearls which the *Spaniards* found at the firſt diſcovery, which the *Latiniſts* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it ſignifie no other than the vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were alſo ſtore of thoſe of the greater eſtimate,ſuch as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphraſis* called *Uniones*, becauſe they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indiſcreti*, ſaith *Pliny*; *unde nomen* Unionum *ſcilicet* Romanæ *impoſuere deliciæ*.

The Iſle is affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length,and ſix in breadth,ſituate under the 11 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Well ſtored with Pearls upon the Shores, when firſt diſcovered;but even then, when moſt plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, ſhe had not water of her own to quench her thirſt,compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwiſe plentiful enough both of Maize and Fruits. The people obſequiouſly ſervile to their Lords the *Spaniards*, ſo long accuſtomed unto Bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Monpater*,in the Eaſt Corner of the Iſland;a Fort of the *Spaniards*,built for ſecuring their rich Trade of Pearl-fiſhing,and to defend their Ships which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the Houſe of the Governour. 2. *El valle de Santa Luzia*, two leagues from the Sea, a *Spaniſh* Colony. 3. *Makanao*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Iſland,firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, *Anno* 1498. grew ſuddenly into great eſteem,by reaſon of the rich Pearl-fiſhing which they found on the Shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were ſo ready to betray their Treaſures, (of which themſelves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more Liberties from the King,than the reſt of the Savages. Inſomuch that the *Spaniards* either could not,or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for Pearl; but bought *Negroe* Slaves from *Guiane* and the Coaſt of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times ſeven or eight fathom deep,to bring up the ſhells in which that Treaſure was included: where many of them were drowned, and ſome maimed with Sharks and other Fiſhes. But that rich Trade is much diminiſhed of late if it fail not quite. The cauſe thereof to be imputed to the unſatiable Avarice of the *Spaniards*,ſo greedy upon Pearl,that they deſtroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatſoever they could meet with,for a little preſent profit,loſt the hopes of the future. The Iſland is ſince leſs famous,and not much frequented. Viſited to its coſt in the year 1601. by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500 *l.* in Pearls for the ranſom of Priſoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coaſt of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes* to be ſold for Slaves. Mr. *Gage* ſaith, it wants Corn, Graſs, Trees, and Water; but the great abundance of Pearl and other Jewels, make amends for all theſe wants; there is alſo many rich Merchants,who have 30, 40, or 50 *Negro* Slaves to fiſh for Pearls; but then he ſays, that he has known at ſometimes a Tun of Wine given for a Tun of Water, which ſhews either that they have no River, or ſometimes died p. 174. This Gentleman was at *Carthagena* in 1637. and might eaſily inform himſelf of the ſtate of this Iſland. This Iſland ſaith *Laet* (p. 667) lies in length fifteen Leagues, in breadth ſix and ſeven from the Continent of *America*. is from *Trinidad* 20 to the Weſt. The middle of the Iſland is eleven Degrees from the Line. It has no Potable Waters, but what is brought from the Continent, but very fruitful in Maize, Paſturage, and Fruit Trees. The *Hollanders* however report it to be unfruitful. The Pearl fiſhery alſo began to fail then, it being a very difficult and a dangerous Work for the *Negroes* to go down into five or ſix Fathom into the Water, to force the Oyſters from the Rocks. In 1626. the *Holland* Admiral took the Principal Fort in this Iſland. The Natives are more numerous, and better uſed in this Iſland than in the other *Spaniſh* Conqueſt,becauſe they willingly ſubmitted to the *Spaniards*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Iſland lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the firſt diſtant but one League, from the other ſix; it ſelf in compaſs about three. Rich on the Shores by the abundance of Pearls which were found about them,but very beggerly on the land. Deſtitute both of Graſs and Water, by conſequence of Cattle alſo, except only Conies, and but few of thoſe. So that like many a Gallant, who ſpend all upon the Back,and nothing upon the Belly, ſhe had her out ſide laced with Pearls,but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and Water brought them out of other Countrys,and their Fruits too, if they deſired to have any;here being very few Trees,and thoſe moſt of *Guaiacum*. But ſo abundant in this treaſure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 Ducats yearly out of this poor Iſland.

In this reſpect it was preſently reſorted to and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony,which they call *New Cadiz*, and grew in ſhort time unto ſo great power, that they made themſelves Maſters of the

Port of *Maracapana* in *Venezuela*, one of the beſt upon thoſe Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the Savages of *Cumana* had deſtroyed the Convents of *Franciſcans* on the oppoſite ſhore, they cowardly forſook the Iſlands, and fled to *Hiſpaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the Conduct of *James de Caſtellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and ſtrong then ever formerly. In great eſteem as long as the Pearl fiſhing did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet ſtill the Iſland doth deſerve ſome conſideration, for a Fountain on the Eaſt part of it near unto the Sea continuing, though the Pearls be gone; which yieldeth a Bituminous ſubſtance like Oil, medicinable for Diſeaſes, and is found two or three Leagues off floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of mankind, and more eaſily found, then the Pearls which ſunk unto the bottom, and maintained our Pride. The *Spaniards* in 1521. built in it *Novo Cadiz*; the *Indians* deſtroyed it, but it was rebuilt and flouriſhed more after it than before, *Laet. p.* 669.

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Iſland called *Coche*, 3 miles in compaſs, but ſo abundantly ſtored with Pearls, that it hath been worth in that one commodity, for ſome Months together, above a thouſand pounds a month of our Engliſh money. Firſt peopled upon that occaſion, *Anno* 1529. but the occaſion failing, the Plantation ended, the Iſle being now unpeopled as not worth the looking after.

5. The LESSER ISLANDS of this Prefecture, or Provincial Government lie all along upon the Coaſt of *Venezuela*, from Eaſt to Weſt. The Principal of which, 1. *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the Weſt of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding ſuch good ſtore of Salt, that three or four Ships are laded with it every year. Well furniſhed with Goats and *Guaiacum*, but not elſe conſiderable; except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the uſe of Mariners. It is ſo ſeated, that in a clear day, both *Margarita* and the Continent of *America* may be ſeen; the greateſt part eſpecially to the Eaſt is Rocky and barren, by the Shore it has ſome Woods, but the Shores are Marſhy and uſeleſs, *Laet.* p. 686. 2. *Catelina*, by the *Engliſh* called *The Iſle of Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Aſſociation*; both which, being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beaſts, were poſſeſſed by them about the year 1629, at ſuch time as there was open War between *England* and *Spain*. After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the Peace enſuing, they were granted by King *Charles*, by his Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England*, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Succeſſors, who for the ſpace of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Iſlands being planted by them with their ſeveral Colonies, and all things neceſſary to maintain and enrich the ſame. This Iſland is ſeated on the South of *Jamaica*, 130 Leagues South Weſt of Cape *Falcon*, 60 from *Panama* to the North. It is not now reckoned amongſt our Plantations, the Inhabitants being probably removed to *Jamaica* for more ſafety. The *Bucaniers* hereupon took poſſeſſion of it, and built a very large Town, peopled with a lawleſs ſort of Men, of all gatherings, who grew in a ſhort time very rich, but none of them taking any care to fortify the Place, or furniſh it with Arms or Ammunition; The *Spaniſh* Fleet ſurpriſing the Town, put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt it to the Ground, the Crown of *England* not regarding it. The Town was however rebuilt and in a thriving condition, when in 1692. the *French* the ſecond time deſtroyed it. This ſheweth a neceſſity of Government, for the Preſervation of Mankind, which how rich ſoever, would ſoon periſh for want of ſome to take care of the Publick defence and ſafety, which private men are neither able nor willing to do. The Right of it having been ſo long in the Crown of *England*, it ſeems worthy of more regard by reaſon of its ſituation; And might eaſily be made a ſtaple or Port, for the furniſhing the *Spaniards* with *Negroes*. 3. *Bonaire*, oppoſite to the Bay of *Golfo triſte*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; well furniſhed with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattle brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with ſome Savages out of *Hiſpaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Chriſtened, and ſent thither ſome *Spaniards* with their Governour intermixt amongſt them. The Iſland 16 miles in compaſs; not fruitful naturally, but in Trees, which are great and numerous. The Shores of this Iſland are rugged, and the Land high, and the Sea to the South Weſt ſo deep, that they tie the Ships to the Trees for want of Anchorage. It was taken from the *Dutch* by the *Buccaniers* in 1686, it lyes on the Eaſtern Shore of *America*, in 12 degrees of Latitude. 4. *Curacaos*, nine miles on the Weſt of *Bonaire*, and as many in compaſs; of a more fertile ſoil by far, and of very rich Paſtures. The people are given to Grazing, make good ſtore of Cheeſe, tranſporting it thence to other places; the Iſland having toward the North a convenient Harbour. 5. *Aruba*, on the North-Eaſt of *Curacaos*, from which nine miles diſtant, in compaſs not above five miles, for the moſt part level. One Hill it hath (amongſt ſome others) faſhioned like a Sugar-loaf, Inhabited by few Savages, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Iſlands on this Coaſt, as 1. the *Toſtigos*, lying Eaſtward of *Margarita*, 2. *Blancha*, which lyes twelve Degrees from the Line to the North as others ſay, 48. 40. Leagues from *Granada* to the South-Weſt. In compaſs ſix *German* miles, the Weſt ſide *Campagne*, the Eaſt Woody and full of ſweet ſhrubs, under the greater Trees. The Soil is barren and Rocky, and deſtitute of Water, excepting Rain. The Woods filled with Thorny plants, yet the Plains are covered with a Graſs Knee deep, on which the Goats thrive ſo well, that they are encreaſed to thouſands. There live neither *Spaniards* nor *Indians* upon it, but the former go to hunt the Goats, and the *Hollanders* for that and Salt, *Laet* .p. 686. 3. *Orchilla*, This Iſland lyes in the Gulf of *Mexico*, 15 Leagues from *Tortuga* to the North-Weſt, and 19 from *La Blanca* to the South-weſt Latitude 11. 15. others 11 30. and ſome 11. 50. The middle the trueſt; it is divided by the Waves of the Sea into ſeveral parts the moſt of it is plain. But it has ſome Mountains to the North-eaſt Angle of it. The Sea ſo deep on the South, that a great Ship may lay her ſides to the Shores, but on the North and Eaſt are the moſt Trees. It has Fountains of freſh Water, but no Birds, Beaſts, or Men to inhabit it, *Laet.* p. 687. 4. *Rocca*, This Iſland lyes ſix Leagues from *Orchilla* to the Southweſt, 12. 04 Latitude. The name imports rather a knot of Rocks than an Iſland, yet cloathed with Trees five Leagues from Eaſt to Weſt, in breadth three. The Continent of *America* is not eaſily ſeen from it, to the North it has a ſmall Iſland, which is a very high Mountain, ſo white, that it is ſeen at a great diſtance. The ſouth ſide of it has ſo deep a Sea, that no bottom can be found. It has neither Birds nor Beaſts, the ſoil being rocky, and for the moſt part level with the Sea, *Laet.* p. 687. and 5. the Iſle *des Aves*, or of Birds, interpoſed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*, ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, few ſtored with any living Creature for the uſe of Men, and none of them at all with men to manure and dreſs them. I paſs over here, and ſo proceed from theſe Iſlands of the Province of *Paria*, to thoſe which are ſubordinate to the Council of St. *Domingo*, and make a Province of themſelves. But firſt we muſt go back, and bring up ſome of the Iſlands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And ſo much of *PARIA*

Of

Of the American Iſlands:

And firſt of thoſe which are in

MARE del ZUR.

THE *AMERICAN* ISLANDS ſcattered up and down the Shores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into thoſe of *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacifick Ocean, and thoſe of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noordt*. The firſt ſo called by *Magellanus*, the firſt Diſcoverer, who paſſing through thoſe troubleſom and tempeſtuous Streights, which now bear his name, found ſuch a change upon his coming into the main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (*quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, ſaith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it ; by the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the ſame regard : Called alſo the Southern Ocean, becauſe of its ſituation on the South-ſide of *America*, in reference to ſome part of the Gulf of *Mexico*, and the Streights of *Anian*.

Not known unto the *Spaniards* till diſcovered by *Nonnius Vaſquez de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or petty Kings of the Country about *Nombre de Dios* ; who ſeeing the *Spaniards* ſo greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirſt ſhould be ſatisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the oppoſite ſhore ; this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure : who diſcovering farther on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the reſt that followed, to the Golden Treaſure of *Peru*. He was executed notwithſtanding this good ſervice, by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within a ſhort time after. But the more full diſcovery of it is to be aſcribed unto *Magellanus*, and ſome latter Adventurers, though the *Spaniards* got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the Southern Sea was unknown to any but themſelves, they conveyed their Gold and Treaſures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loſs or charge, and thought their Ports upon that Shore to be unacceſſible : But after the way unto this ſea was found out by *Magellanus, Drake, Cavendiſh*, and the reſt of our *Engliſh* Adventurers, did ſo ſcour theſe Coaſts, that they left them neither Port nor ſhip which they did not ranſack; as hath been evidenced before in ſome particulars.

As for the Iſlands of this ſea, they lie moſt of them ſo near the Shores, as if placed there by Nature, to ſerve as Outworks to defend the Continent. Many in tale, but few of conſideration; and of thoſe few, ſome of the chief have been deſcribed already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The reſidue, which lie too far off to come under ſuch conſideration, muſt be mentioned here ; and thoſe reduced to theſe two Heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, 2. The Iſlands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Iſlands ſituate betwixt the main land of *America* and the *Philippine* Iſlands, in the Longitude of 185. and the 4. Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus*, who firſt diſcovered them, becauſe of the Thieviſhneſs of the Inhabitants, (*Inſulæ Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had ſtoln his Cock-boat, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue ſtill both their name and nature. Found ſuch by *Cavendiſh* and *Noort* in their ſeveral Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying Iron, (a commodity which they highly prize) but either cloſely or openly ſtealing whatſoever they met with. The People tall of ſtature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extreamly active, and good Divers, continuing a long time under the Water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; inſomuch that the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, caſt five pieces of Iron into the ſea, all fetched out by one of them. The Women as good at it as the Men. Both Sexes given to filthy and promiſcuous Luſts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their Incontinency, the Pox having eating up both their Lips and their Noſes.

Their Religion is worſhipping the Devil, whoſe Images they have in Wood on the head of their Boats ; the Chapple and the Saints fit for ſuch Devotions. But for the nature of theſe Iſlands, and what ſubjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to ſeek. But like enough they yield as little as ſome others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The *Iſlands* of *John Fernandes* are two in number. So called from *John Fernandes*, the firſt Diſcoverer, *Anno* 1574; each of five or ſix miles in compaſs, and about 300 miles diſtant from the ſhores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of Southern Latitude ; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and thoſe woods repleniſhed with Goats, but their fleſh not ſavoury as in other places. Some ſtore of Sanders there is in them, and of Palms no ſcarcity. Plenty of Fiſh upon the ſhores, for which cauſe viſited ſometimes by the *Spaniards* lying in *Peru* ; and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for ſhipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they paſs this way. None elſe of note in all this ſea, but ſuch as lie upon the Shores of their ſeveral Provinces ; which we have looked upon already. And therefore paſſing through the Streights, and coming up unto the Iſlands of *Paria*, where before we left, we will now look on thoſe of *Mare del Noordt*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which waſheth the Shores of this New World (the reaſon of which Names we have ſeen before) ſubordinate to the Council or Goverment of S. Domingo. *viz.* 1. the *Caribes*, 2. *Porto Rico*, 3. *Hiſpaniola*, 4. *Cuba*, and 5. *Jamaica*. The reſt are already ſpoken of in their proper places.

1. The *CARIBES*.

THe *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal Iſlands*, are in number many ; 27 of them known by their proper names, the reſt of leſs note, (tho ſome of theſe of little enough) not yet ſo diſtinguiſhed. Called thus in general, becauſe inhabited by *Cannibals*, and man-eating people (at their diſcovery) as the word *Caribes* imports. They lie extended like a Bow from the Coaſt of *Paria* unto the Iſle of *Rico Porto* : of different temper, as muſt needs be in ſuch variety, and therefore not within the compaſs of *a general Character*. Some of the principal we ſhall conſider more diſtinctly ; and for the reſt, its enough to name them, or elſe we will paſs them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the neareſt of this crew to the Main

Land of *Cumana*, is ſituate in the Latitude of 12Degrees and 11 Minutes, in form like a Creſcent or a half Moon, the two horns not a mile aſunder, the whole length but ſix, ſhaded all over with thick woods, but notwithſtanding of a rich and fruitful ſoil. A Haven in it of good uſe, but no Town of note. The people of the ſame ill condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it ; moſt miſchievouſly intended when they ſeem moſt kind, and then moſt to be avoided.

2. S. *VINCENT*,18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of ſo bleſſed a ſoil, that it brings forth abundance of Sugar-canes, without charge to the Husbandman ; watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and full of ſafe and convenient Bays for the uſe of Mariners. In figure Circular : the Diameter being ſix miles over ; the circle by conſequence 18. the people but of mean ſtature, ſlothful, and ſtudious only for the Belly: their love to which, makes them adventure in their ſmall boats, hewn out of the body of a tree, to paſs into the Continent,and return again without the help of a Compaſs, tho diſtant from it,at the neareſt, above 30 miles. Its Latitude 16. 00. 24 miles long, 18 broad. It has many Mountains with fruitful Valleys between them, well watered with Rivers, and bleſſed with ſeveral convenient Harbours and Bays for Ships. The *Engliſh* have ſome Settlement upon it, but the *Caribeans* are the more powerful, who have in it fair pleaſſant Villages,in which they dwell without the leaſt Diſturbance ; and though they are jealous of our Ships,yet they Trade freely with them for Iron Wares. the *Engliſh* imploy themſelves in making Sugars.

3. *BARBADOS*, on the North-eaſt of St. *Vincent*,in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 20 Minutes,of an Oval form, 18 miles in compaſs. The ſoil in ſhew like that of *England*, but far more fruitful. On the Eaſt-ſide thruſting out it ſelf with Points and Angles, which yields ſome Bays, but full of Quick ſands, and unſafe for ſhipping ; on the South furniſhed with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of Fruits or Cattle, till made a Colony of the *Engliſh*, who brought hither from their own Country Swine and Kine, Oranges and the like from others. The chief Commodity hitherto made of this Plantation comes by the planting of Tobacco, and by a kind of courſe Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which muſt be quickly ſpent, or it will melt to nothing. Were they in ſtock and not forced to make a quick return of their commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation is ſaid to be worth all the reſt which are made by the *Engliſh*, who (as I take it) are the ſole Colony in the Iſland ; but at the courteſie of the *Spaniard*, without whoſe leave and liking not of force to hold it. This might be the ſtate of it in 1648.but is not ſo now. The *Engliſh* ſaid to inhabit here are above 50000, beſides the *Negroes*. The firſt diſcovery of this Iſland to the *Engliſh* was by Sir *William Curteen*, in the Reign of *James* the firſt, but it was then wholly Deſolate. In 1627. the *Engliſh* planted it, but driven at firſt to great extremities, becauſe Ships came very rarely and ſlowly thither from *England* ; afterwards its Reputation and Wealth encreaſed, by raiſing *Tobacco*, *Indico*, *Cotton Wool*, *Tuſtick-Wood*, and *Sugar* Trade. And this Colony which for a long time ſubſiſted by the Courteſie or negligence of the *Spaniards*, grew ſo ſtrong and numerous, that all their after Attempts ſignified nothing. Their Sugars which were at firſt coarſe, and would quickly melt, if not ſpent, are now improved to a great perfection. This Iſland is not well watered, with Rivers or freſh ſprings, yet lying low, they want not that Element, being ſupplyed by Pools, Ponds, and Ceſterns. It is very fruitful, and enjoys a perpetual Summer ; Hot but cooled by the Breizes of wind which riſe with the Sun, and blow freſher as the Sun gets higher. The chief Town of this Iſland is Saint *Michaels*, ſituate at the bottom of *Carliſle Bay*, in the Southern part of the Iſland ; where Ships have a very ſecure Harbour. In the year 1690. on the fifth of *April* an Earthquake happened in theſe Iſlands, which did great miſchief in *Nevis*, *Antego*, *Montſerrat*, *Martinoque*. The ſtone buildings and Brick being generally caſt down and deſtroyed. It was felt in the *Barbados*, but no manner of hurt done to Men or Beaſts. The Sloops paſſing at Sea between S. *Lucia* and *Martineco* felt it at Sea, the Agitation of the Water being ſo violent,that they thought themſelves on Rocks or Shelves, their Veſſels ſhaking as if they would fall in pieces.Others paſſing by an uninhabited Rock or Iſland, called *Redunda*, found the Earthquake ſo violent there, that a great part of that Rocky Iſland ſplit and tumbled into the Sea, making a Noiſe like many Cannons, and a Cloud of Duſt aſcending into the Air at the fall. By this it appears all the *Carribbe* Iſlands are united by ſubterraneous Vaults to each others, and it is probable, they were at firſt one Chain of Mountains, drowned ſome Ages ſince by the Ocean, when only theſe higher parts eſcaped.

4. *MANTININO MARTINIQUO*, on the North-weſt of the *Barbados*,by the *S*avages called *Mandaninam*, with little difference. Every where ſwelled with Hills, of which three are moſt eminent for height; one of them, which way ſoever a man looks upon it, carrying the reſemblance of an Hat. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian, with none but women ; afterward with a more fierce and barbarous people than the reſt of theſe Iſlands:but neither men or women to be ſeen of late : whether deſtroyed, or removed farther from the ſhores,for fear of their deſtruction, is a thing uncertain.*Martiniquo* has for a conſiderable time been a *French* Plantation, well inhabited and improved ; but it is ſaid the *French* are now driven out by the *Engliſh*, which time muſt diſcover.

5. *DOMINICA*, ſeated on the North of *Mantinino* 12 leagues in length ; exceeding fruitful of Tobacco, which they ſell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other inſtruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of hot water,and a commodious Haven at the Weſt-ſide of it,into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever, *Cannibals* or Man eaters to this very day. At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man truſty,but where they cannot hurt,or dare not. Both Sexes wear their hair long,and colour their bodies over with Oaker. Yet bloody and barbarous, though they be, they are Ruled by a King of their own, diſtinguiſhed from the reſt in his dreſs or habit, whom they moſt readily obey. *Dominica*, This Iſland was diſcovered firſt by the *Spaniards* on a Sunday, and thence ſo called. It lyes in Longitude 322. Latitude 14. 35. North-weſt of *Barbados*. The *Engliſh* ſay the Latitude 15. 30 and 12 Leagues long, eight broad. It has a convenient Harbour on the Weſt, the middle is Mountainous ; the *Engliſh* have now planted it with Tobacco in part, but the *Caribeans* being mixed with them, the Colony doth not thrive as it might do otherwiſe.

6. *DESEADA*, or the Land of *Deſire*, on the North-eaſt of *Dominica*, diſcovered by *Columbus* in his ſecond Voyage,naked of Trees, and at the firſt ſight afar off, not unlike a Galley.Of great uſe to the *Spaniards*,who always take it in their way to the *Canaries* to theſe parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like uſe do they make of 7.The Iſland of *GUARDALUPE*, parellel to this,but directly Weſtward:at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* uſe to take freſh water, and there diſperſe themſelves to their ſeveral Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in moſt parts of the ſea adjoyning. North-eaſt from hence lieth *GUARDALUPE* is now at leaſt in part peopled by the *French*, who are better thought of, and more kindly uſed by the *Caribeans* than the *Engliſh*.

8. S.*Marin del Antigua*,commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by ſome miſtakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as many in breadth, difficult of acceſs,and deſtitute of freſh water; but well replenished with Woods

and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *Engliſh*, who do ſtill poſſeſs it.

9 S. CHRISTOPHERS, on the North-weſt of *Guardalupe*, in the Latitude of 17 Degrees and 20 Minutes. The length ſix miles, the breadth in many places four, and in ſome but two; much ſwell'd with Hills, and towards the Eaſt provided of ſeveral Salt wiches. The *French* and *Engliſh* had ſometime in it ſeveral Colonies, by whom the Natives were deſtroyed, or otherwiſe compelled to forſake their dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of ſome manifeſt Treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the ſole poſſeſſion; ejected by *Fredrick de Toledo*, as he paſſed this way with his Navy; though ſuffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief Employment and commodity lies in their Tobacco, by ſome much commended. This Iſland is 75 miles in Circuit, and planted by *French* and *Engliſh*, *Deſnambuck* for the *French*, and Sir *Thomas Warner* for the *Engliſh*, taking poſſeſſion of this Iſland, the ſame day, in the year 1625, being done by Mutual agreement of the two Nations. In 1629. *Don Frederick de Toledo*, had orders from the *Spaniards* to force the *Engliſh* and *French* out of the Iſland, with a Navy of 24 great Ships. The *French* were forced to retire for a time, the *Engliſh* eluded the ſtorm, by an accommodation; and the *French* returning ſoon after reſettled here. The *Engliſh* being conſtantly and plentifully ſupplyed from *London*, are in the better condition, but the *French* were a long time too much neglected by their Country Men; and this contributed very much to the forcing them then to ſubmit to the hard Uſage of the *Spaniards*. The *Engliſh* are more in number than the *French*; but then the *French* to counterballance this have four Forts, and the *Engliſh* but two, one of which commands the great Haven, and the other a deſcent not far from *Point de Sable*; and to prevent differences between the two Nations, each of 'em have a Guard upon the Frontiers of their Diviſions, which is renewed every day. It is one of the moſt delightful Iſlands in the World, ſwelling in the midſt into high Mountains, which afford upon the deſcents ſeveral Stages, which are planted one above the other, the higher enjoying the pleaſure of the proſpect of the lower, which are all made more lovely by Rows of Trees always Green, and fair Houſes covered with glazed Slate. The ſoile is Light and ſandy, and is apt to produce all ſorts of Fruits, as *Sugar*, *Tobacco*, *Cotton*, and *Ginger*; and wants not Springs and ſome hot waters fit for natural Baths. *Chriſtopher Columbus* firſt diſcovered this Iſland, and called it by his own Chriſtian name, to preſerve the memory of it. The *Engliſh* have ſo encreaſed here, that they have ſent Colonies from thence to *Barbados*, *Monſerrat*, *Antego*, and *Barbadoes*. The *French* have built a Town of good bigneſs call *le Baſſe Terre*, the Houſes of it are Bricks, Freeſtone, and Timber, which is well Inhabited by Tradeſmen and Merchants. In 1692. the *French* were beaten out, and the Iſland reduced intirely under the *Engliſh*. Joyning hereto, or but a league from it at the moſt, is,

10. The Iſle of *NEVIS*, which is affirmed to be five leagues in compaſs, well wooded, and as pleaſantly watered; inſomuch as the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Dominica* uſed to come hither for their pleaſures but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for ſome Baths or Hot-waters, found out by the *Engliſh*, who, in the year 1628. placed a Colony in it. But whether ſubſiſting of it ſelf, or a part of their Plantation in S. *Chriſtophers*, I am yet to learn.

Nevis, this Iſland lyes in 17. 19 North Latitude, and is 18 miles in compaſs, in the midſt of it it has one high Mountain, but of eaſy Aſcent, and covered with Trees to the top. In 1628. the *Engliſh* planted here, and in 1680. they were thought 4000 Men, and traded in *Sugar*, *Cotton*, *Ginger*, and *Tobacco* &c. It has three Churches for the Service of God, and a ſtrong Fort for their ſecurity. The Soile is indifferent fruitful, and feedeth plenty of Deer, and Game for Hunting. In the year 1689. this Iſland ſent out S'r *Timothy Thornhil* with 500 Men, who burnt the *French* Iſlands of S. *Bartholemew*, St. *Martins*, *Mary Gallanto*; in this Expedition they took 700 Priſoners, beſides *Negroes*, and plundered to the value of 80000 Pounds. Then they had 1200 Men well armed, and their Fort lines and Breaſt Works in ſo good order, that they did not fear any attempt of the *French*. It has *Barbados* to the Weſt, S. *Chriſtophers* to the North, and *Antego* to the South-eaſt. On Sunday the ſixth of *April* 1690. about five in the Evening, there was for ſome few Minutes heard a ſtrange hollow noiſe, which was thought to proceed from the great Mountain in the middle of this Iſland, to the admiration of all People; but immediately after, to their greater Amazement, began a mighty Earthquake with that violence, that almoſt all the Brick and ſtone Buildings in *Charles* Town (the principal City) were in an inſtant levelled with the Ground, and the Timber Houſes were ſhook, ſo that every one made what haſt they could to get out of them. In the Streets the Ground in ſeveral places clove a foot aſunder, and hot ſtinking water Spouted out of the Earth a great height, the Sea left the Land about three quarters of a Mile, ſo that large Fiſh lay bare upon the Sand, but the water preſently returned again. There were ſeveral leſſer retreats of the Ocean followed this. The Earth in many places broke open, and ſome thouſand of great Trees fell into it, which were ſeen no more. It was very fierce in St. *Chriſtophers*, *Antego* and *Monſerrat*, and *Barbados* had a feeling of it. Between this and the 30th of that Month there were ſeveral Smaller Earthquakes. This ſhewes that there is a Communication under the Water between all the *Carribbe* Iſlands, which ſeem at firſt to be a Ridge of Mountains, ſurrounded ſince by the Ocean, and ſo turned into Iſlands, So that Earthquakes will often happen.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North-weſt of S. *Chriſtophers*, and the South-eaſt of *Porto Rico*, from which laſt diſtant 15 Leagues Woody and Mountainous, not well provided of freſh waters; but on the weſt-ſide furniſhed with a ſafe and commodious Road, under the covert of the Mountains. Amongſt their fruits are ſome that reſemble a green Apple, which taſted, ſo inflames the Tongue, that for 24 hours it ſwelleth in ſo great extremity, as makes it altogether uſeleſs; but after that by little and little it abates again. The like happeneth alſo to the Face, if waſhed before Sun riſing with their Fen-waters, which are very frequent in this Iſland; after the riſing of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *Engliſh* alſo, but of latter ſtanding than thoſe of S. *Chriſtophers* and *Barbados*. This was either a miſinformation, or that Colony is ſince cut off, or withdrawn to ſome other place, for there is now no Plantation of *Engliſh* on that Iſland.

Some of the principal of the reſt are. 1. *Anguilla* 2 *Barbada*, 3. S *Bartholemews*. 4. S *Lucies*, 5. S. *Martins*, 6. *Monſerrat*, 7. *Rotunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgogorda*, and 10. *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: Of which *Anguila*, ſo called from its ſhape, ſtands in the Latitude 18 21 in length 10 Leagues, in Breadth three. Inhabited by about 300 *Engliſh*, and live moſtly by *Tobacco*. 2. *Barbada* is 15 Miles long, poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, and though very fertile, yet of no great account; being too much Expoſed to the incurſions of the *Caribeans* of *Dominica*, who kill and deſtroy all they can Catch, and carry away the Women and the Children, together with the ſpoile and plunder. No nation but the *Engliſh* would bare this ſo long, when one Summer well followed with Doggs and Men, would in fair probability Deſtroy all the *Caribeans*, in any one of theſe Iſlands. 3. *Monſerat* is ten miles long, and 9 broad, ſtands in the 17 degree of Northern Latitude, moſtly Mountainous, but the valleys are very fruitful, chiefly inhabited by *Iriſh*, but with a mixture of ſome *Engliſh*, in all about 700. S. *Martins*, S. *Bartholemews*, and *Mary Gallanta*, were all hitherto poſſeſſed by the *French*, but have been Plundered and ruined by the *Engliſh* in this War. The reſt are either deſolate, or poſſeſſed by the *Caribeans* which is full as bad; the reſt, though known by ſeveral names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nations of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did uſually hunt for men, as men for Beaſts, roving as far as *Porto Rico*, to ſeek after their prey; and what they caught was ſure to go to the pot, in the worſe ſenſe too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Iſle of *Guardalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reſerved to be eaten, and in their houſes divers Veſſels filled with Man's fleſh, and ſome upon the Spit ready to be roaſted. Nor had they laid aſide this Diet till after the year 1564 but how long I know not: For at that time a *Spaniſh* ſhip coming to water at the Iſle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the Land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Iſlands have been of late times well cleared of thoſe Monſters; ſome of them brought unto better order, but the moſt deſtroyed, as the common enemies of Mankind; the Iſlands where they dwelt being either totally deſerted, or taken up by *Europeans*, and their ſeveral Colonies.

The ſevere revenges the *Engliſh*, *French* and *Spaniards*, have taken of them for this Barbarity, have in ſome degree cured it, ſo that they pretend not to eat any of the *Europeans* when they have ſlain them, but it is to be feared they eat the Women and Children they carry away. They pretend in excuſe the Devil forced them to this courſe, which is a good reaſon they ſhould be either neceſſitated to leave it, or be extirpated from off the face of the Earth; at leaſt all the Men and Women to the Children of tender years, who may be better educated in Servitude. Some pretend this is not poſſible, by reaſon of the difficulty of entering their Country, but fire or Sword will pierce thro' all, and their poiſoned Arrows, are ſmall defence againſt our Cannon and Muskets. Their rage is ſo great againſt the *Engliſh*, that nothing will appeaſe them, and therefore we ought to purſue them till they ſubmit and yeild to mercy, which might be done in a ſhort time, if it were well followed.

2. PORTO RICO and MONICO.

PORTO RICO lieth on the North-weſt of *Sancta Crux*, from which it is diſtant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hiſpaniola*; 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Peria*, and not much leſs from the Cape of *Coquibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Caſtella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it, but was called by *Columbus* at the firſt Diſcovery S. *Johannis Inſula*, or the Iſle of S. *John*, by the Natives *Boriguen*.

It is ſituate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude, in form quadranuglar, but of a greater length than breadth, ſuch as the Geometricians call *oblongam*: the length hereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air hereof is very pleaſant and temperate, not ſcorched with furious Heat in Summer, nor made offenſive by the fall of continual Rains; expoſed ſometimes (chiefly in *Auguſt* and *September*) to the troubleſomneſs of ſudden tempeſts, called *Hurricanoes*. The ſoil is indifferently fruitful, though ſomewhat Mountainous: here being (beſides other Hills of inferiour note) a Ridge of high Hills which run croſs the Country, from the one end unto the other. Their chief Commodities are Sugar-canes, Ginger, *Caſſia*, and great ſtore of Hides: the *Europeans* Cattle having ſo abundantly increaſed, that they kill thouſands for their Skins, leaving the fleſh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some Mines here were of Gold and Silver, but conſumed long ſince. And ſo are all the Natives alſo; of whom, in reſpect, it is impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Iſland, 1. *Cairobon*, 2. *Boyaman*; of divers Fountains, and of ſeveral and divided Courſes. 3. *Luyſa*, and 4. *Toa*; two Rivers growing out of one, The Spring of that one is in the Mountains of *Guayamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, it afterwards divides it ſelf into thoſe two ſtreams. 5. *Guiano*, 6. *Arezibò*, 7. *Guadiabo*, of leſſer note; but all of them, as well as all the reſt before, concluding in ſome ſafe and capacious Haven.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico*, the chief Town, built in a little Iſland, on the North-ſide of the greater, but joined unto it with huge Piles at vaſt expences, by the command of *Philip* the firſt, *Anno* 1504. well built, with large Streets and convenient Houſes, according to the Model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral; the Biſhop one of the Suffragans of the Archbiſhop of S. *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*. The Town unwalled, but fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles; the one of which ſecures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loſs of 40 or 50 men, by Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1595. but taken two years after by *George* Earl of *Cumberland*, who had a purpoſe to have peopled it with an *Engliſh* Colony. The Hiſtory of this Expedition is thus delivered to us, by our Great Annaliſt *George Clifford* Earl of *Cumberland*, who this year put out a Fleet of 11 Ships, at his own Charges, with which he prevented the ſending a Fleet to the *Eaſt Indies*, or receiving One from the Weſt; he took *Lancerata* in the *Canaries*, and then paſſing on, took this Port, though it had a Garriſon of 400 Soldiers, beſides Inhabitants to defend it. Obſerving that the *Spaniards* looked upon it, as one of the Keys to the *Indies* he reſolved to keep it, and refuſed a good ranſom which was profered him for the Town. But finding his Men dye very faſt, the Air not agreeing with them, he was forced to return home. Diſcouraged from it by the death of 400 of his Men, by change of Air, and ſome intemperance of Diet, he ſet ſail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Iſland but the diſfurniſhing it of 70 pieces of Ordnance, and ſome part of their Treaſure, which he brought home with him. Which was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1625. when they burnt the City, but could never take the Caſtle. This Iſland lyes eight Leagues from *Hiſpaniola* to the Eaſt. 2. S. *Germans*, in the Weſtern part of the Iſland but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Iſland, now both unfortified and ſmall. 3. *Arezibo*, on the River ſo called. 4. *Luyaſa*, the moſt noted Port of the Eaſtern parts, ſituate on the mouth of the River ſo named.

Eaſtward hereof, betwixt it and *Hiſpaniola*, lies the Iſland of *Mona* (might not this, think we, be ſo called by *Modoc ap Owen Gwinedth*, of whom before?) three leagues in compaſs; Rocky, and of a brackiſh Earth, but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and ſuch kind of Fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off but more towards the Weſt, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *Engliſh* call it; where they found ſuch infinite ſtore of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almoſt deaf with the very noiſe; their Eggs ſo thick upon the ground that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly paſs forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Iſland of S. *Johns*, it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his ſecond Voyage, *Anno* 1493. but firſt inhabited by *John Ponce* of *Leon*, *Anno* 1510. who being courteouſly entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Iſland, which he called *Capparra*. The Colony ten years after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to S. *Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Iſland upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it ſince hath fixed. The Iſland very populous for the bigneſs of it when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives were long ago conſumed by ſeveral Butcheries; and, as ſome write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* are in all the Country. What elſe concerns the Story of it, we have ſeen before.

2. HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA lieth on the Weſt of *Porto Rico*, the diſtance we have ſeen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haity*, and by ſome *Quſquoa*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hiſpaniola*, or *Little Spain*, and of late times begineth to be called S. *Domingo*, from the chief Town of it

The form thereof is Triangular, extended in a ſharp Angle, called *Cabo del Enganno*, towards *Porto Rico*; the Weſtern end faſhioned like a Bay or Semicircle; the Northern point of which is named S.*Nicholas*, the Southern *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in ſome places 60, in ſome but 30. thence growing leſs and leſs, till it come unto the Eaſtern Angle; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infeſted with Morning heats; but cooler in the afternoon, by the conſtant blowing of a Sea-Gale, which they there commonly call *Virſon*.

The Country is for the moſt part beautiful and flouriſhing; the Trees always in their Summer livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual ſpring. In many places ſwell'd with high Craggy Mountains, whence the name of *Haity*, that word ſo ſignifying in the natural Language of the Natives. Of ſuch an excellent Herbage, that the Cattle brought hither out of *Spain*, have increaſed almoſt beyond Arithmetick; grown wild for want of proper owners, and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forreſt, though only to rob them of their skins. The ſoile ſo fertile, that in the ſpace of 16 days, Herbs and Roots will grow ripe and fit to be eaten. So plentifully ſtored with Ginger and Sugar-canes, that in the year 1587 there were ſhipped hence 17500 pound weight of Ginger, and 900 Cheſts of refined Sugar: an evident argument of the richneſs and fertility of it. A farther proof hereof may be, 1. The rich Mines of Gold, in which they uſed to find Gold without mixture of droſs or other Metals. 2. The great increaſe of Sugar, one Cane here filling 20. ſometimes 30 meaſures. 3. The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in ſome places to an hundredfold. But the Mines were long ago exhauſted, inſomuch as the Inhabitants are fain to uſe braſs money: but inſtead of thoſe of Gold, they have found out others of Braſs and Iron, and ſome few of Silver; but not much ſearched into of late for want of Workmen.

The reaſon of that want is to be aſcribed unto the Covetouſneſs and cruelty of the *Spaniſh* Nation: who, out of an unſatiable thirſt for Gold, conſumed the people in their Mines; and out of the like thirſt for Blood, killed ſo many of them, that in few years they deſtroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably ſuppoſed, that had not *Charles* the Fifth reſtrained them by a penal Edict, from compelling the Natives againſt their wills to thoſe works of ſervitude, there had not been one Native left in this Iſland, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such as are left are ſaid to be of a low ſtature, of black hair, and a Complexion ſomewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in Manners, Habit, or Religion, from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of moſt note are, 1. *Ozama*, on whoſe Banks ſtands *Domingo* the chief Town of the Iſlands, capable of the greateſt ſhips to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua* which paſſing through the rich Paſtures, or making the Paſtures rich by its ſecret virtue, runneth towards the Weſt: as do alſo, 3. *Yaquimo*, 4. *Nizao*, and 5 *Neyba*, 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary courſe to the other three. 7. *Yaqui*, or *Jacbo*, which fall into the Northern ſeas. 8. *Nicayagu*, 9. *Cocitemico*, 10. *Xanique*. Theſe three laſt famous heretofore for their ſands of Gold. Some ſpeak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers which are found in this Country; two parts of which vaſt number had their Golden ſands. A thing ſo far beyond the charity of the ſtrongeſt Faith, (though reported by a Grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-courſe, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided when the *Spaniards* firſt came amongſt them into ſeveral Provinces or Kingdoms: as 1. *Higuey*, 2. *Jacuagnia*, *Samana*, in the Eaſtern parts: 4. *Yaquimo*, 5. *Boaruco*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the South; and 7. *Guababu*, and 8. *Cabaya*, in the Weſt; and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold, 10. *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbus*, and 11. *Maguana* in the Centre of the Iſland, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greateſt power of any of thoſe petit Royelets. Another diviſion of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all riſing from one Mountain in the midſt of the Iſland, into four Diviſions; 1. the River *Jacbo*, running towards the North, 2. *Nubiba*, haſtning to the South. 3. *Yuna*, or *Junna*, towards the Eaſt, and 4. *Hatibonico*, to the Weſt. But theſe diviſions being long ſince grown out of uſe, we will ſurvey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. S. *Domingos*, firſt built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1494, on the Eaſt Bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1504) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Iſland, to the oppoſite ſhore. Upon occaſion of an Earthquake that deſtroyed moſt of the Houſes, but was not to the beſt advantage, it now wanting water, and being expoſed to the Vapours of the Rivers at the Sun riſing, which makes it leſs healthful. This City is ſituate in a pleaſant Country, among Rich Paſtures, and neighboured with a ſafe and capacious Haven: the houſes elegantly built, moſt of them of ſtone, and the whole well walled; beſide the Caſtle at the Weſt end of the Peer to defend the Haven; enriched by the Reſidence of the Governour, the Courts of Juſtice, the See of an Archbiſhop, and (beſides many Convents and Religious Houſes) an Hoſpital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Eſteemed of greateſt trade and concourſe of Merchants, till the taking of *Mexico* and the diſcovery of *Peru*; ſince that time ſenſibly decaying, and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greateſt part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Nigroes*, *Mulattoes*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586. took it by force, and held it for the ſpace of a month, burning the greateſt part of the Houſes, and ſuffering the reſt to be redeemed at a certain price. The *Engliſh* General arrived here the firſt of *January*; 150 *Spaniſh* Horſe endeavoured to have ſtopped his March, but being driven away by the ſmall ſhot, he entred the Town with them; the Inhabitants at the ſame time running out at the North Gate, they found the City too big for them to pretend to Man, and therefore they took a part out, and cut it off from the reſt. The Inhabitants would not redeem the City at firſt, but when a great part of it was burnt, then they were forced to pay 25000 Crowns to redeem the reſt from Ruine. The reſt of the Prey, the Cannon, Meal, and Sugar excepted, was worth very little; They found under the King of *Spains* Arms, this inſcription, **Non Sufficit Orbis.** The Money in common uſe was Braſs, and the Utenſils moſt of *China*, and but little of Plate. *Camden* very narrowly eſcaped the vaſſilage of the *Engliſh*, once more in the year 1655. under *Pen* and *Venables*, who landed an Army of about 20000 Men on the Iſland. The *Spaniards* forſook the Town, and the *Engliſh* had taken it without reſiſtance, if they had not come on ſhore too far from it, but in this time the Enemy recollecting themſelves, got into the Town and defended it ſo well, that the *Engliſh* were forced to leave the Iſland, after which they took *Jamaica*. 2. S. *Salvador*, 68 Leagues to the Eaſt of *Domingo*. 3. *Jaguana*, called alſo *Sancta Maria del Porto*, from a ſafe and beautiful Haven adjoyning to it; ſituate in the Weſt part of the Iſland: of no great bigneſs, conſiſting of no more then 150 Houſes when it was at the greateſt; but made much leſs by Captain *Newport*, who, in the year 1591, burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cotuy*, in the North of the Iſland, oppoſite to *Sancta Domingo*, from which it is diſtant almoſt ſixty Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great eſteem for its Mines of Gold. 5. *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, for whoſe ſake afterwards adorned with a See Epiſcopal. 6. *Puerto de la Plata*, 48 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern ſhore, there built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by him alſo fortified, the ſecond Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Iſland. 7. *Azua*, now called *Compoſtella*, a noted Haven, and reſorted to for Sugars, which it yields abundantly.

This Iſland was firſt diſcovered by *Columbus*, (for I believe not that it was any of the Fortunate Iſlands, which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the firſt Voyage which he made, conducted hither by ſome of the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Cuba*. Landing and gaining rhe good will of the Savages by gentle uſage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques*, to build a Fortreſs in his Country, which he called *Navidad* or *Natsvidad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep poſſeſſion: whom he found both maſtered and murthered at his coming back. Being now better furniſhed for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Iſabella*, (in honour of *Iſabella* Queen of *Caſtile*) near the Mines of *Ciabo*; which afterwards was deſerted alſo, and the Colony removed unto S. *Domingo*: the *Spaniards* ſending one Colony after another, till at laſt their number was increaſed to 14000. beſides Women and Children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite cruelties, and exhauſted the riches of their Country with as infinite Covetouſneſs, they betook themſelves to freſher Quarters, abandoning the Iſland to devour the Continent. Once the Iſlanders rebelled and fortified themſelves in the Province of *Baoruco*; a place ſo naturally ſtrong, that there was little need of the Helps of Art. Not brought to leave that Faſtneſs but on ſuch Conditions as made the *Spaniard* leſs inſolent, and themſelves leſs Slaves.

4. *CUBA.*

CUBA lieth on the Weſt of *Hiſpaniola*, from which parted by a Frith, or narrow Channel, interpoſed betwixt the two Capes of S. *Nicholas*, and that of *Mexico*, backed on the North with a Frie of *Iſlands* called the *Lucaios*, and ſome part of the *Peninſala* of *Florida*; extended towards the Eaſt to the extream point or Foreland of *Jucatan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which diſtant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Iſle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay, from Cape *Maxie* towards *Hiſpaniola*, to the Cape of S. *Anthony*, 230 leagues; in breadth where broadeſt hardly 40, and but 15 in others. For the fertility of the ſoil contending with *Hiſpaniola* for the pre-eminence; but in the temperature of the Air a great deal before it. It being covered with woods of Cedar and other Trees, which makes it more eaſy for the Traveller, the ſhade abating the heat of the Sun. Liberally ſtored with Ginger, *Caſſia*, Maſtick, Aloes, Cinamon, and Sugar, (not reckoning ſuch commodities as are common unto this with others) beſides great plenty of Fleſh and Fiſh, and of Fowl no ſcarcity. The Gold more droſſie in the Mine then in *Hiſpaniola*, but the Braſs more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but thoſe Mountains clad with divers Trees, ſome of which drop the pureſt Roſin, and the Hills ſending to the Valleys many notable Rivers, that do all abound in Gold Sand, and in ſhort, it wants nothing but Inhabitants, the *Spaniards* having left it for the Lucre of getting more Gold on the Continent. Theſe Rivers are peſtered with many ſorts of Serpents, not ſo much out of any ill condition of the ſoil and air, as by an old ſuperſtition of the Savages, in former times not ſuffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Diſh reſerved for the higher powers) not able afterwards to deſtroy them, when it would have been ſuffered.

What other Savage Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they ſhould not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the firſt Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Iſland, addreſſed himſelf unto *Columbus* at his firſt coming hither, adviſing him to uſe his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the ſouls of men have two journies when they leave this world, the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel perſon; the other delectable and pleaſant, for the men of Peace. It is ſaid alſo of them, they knew not the uſe of mony, nor underſtood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*; Tenants in common to the Bleſſings which the Earth brought forth, and Coheirs of Nature

Amongſt the Rarities of this Iſland, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy ſubſtance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the calking of ſhips. Secondly a navagable river (but the name not told us) the waters of which were ſo hot, that a man could not indure to hold his hand in them. They tell us alſo, thirdly, of a Vally 15 leagues from S. *Jago*, which produced ſtones exactly round, as if made for pleaſure; but yet meerly natural. But theſe are no greater rarities than in other places, nor altogether ſo great as in *Hiſpaniola*. In which they tell us of a fair river whoſe waters are ſalt, and yet none but freſh ſtreams fall into it. Of another Lake (three leagues in compaſs) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of theſe ſo ſtrange or rare as the *Cucayo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or Beetle; the eyes and whings whereof, when opened, give ſo great a light in the darkeſt places, that a man may ſee to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle. This Iſland was infinitely peopled when the *Spaniards* diſcovered it; but they have deſtroyed all the Inhabitants, and not able yet to people it themſelves, ſo that the greateſt part of it is Deſolate. This *Hiſpaniola* and *Jamaica* were the firſt places of *America* which *Columbus* diſcovered in the year 1492. There are ſix Cities in this Iſland, the principal S. *Jago* on the South ſide, and *Havana* a noble and well fortified Sea port on the North ſide, which is under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Cante*, much annoyed with Crocodiles, (a Beaſt not common in theſe Iſlands, nor elſewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to ſuch as repoſe themſelves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Arimao*, which disburdeneth it ſelf near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Rio di Porcos*, full of Rocks and Quick-ſands at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Eſcondida*, paſſing betwixt *Havana* and the Port of *Marcanas*. 5. *Marien*, and 6. *Tanne*, of leſs note. Beſides theſe there is *Xagua*, a ſafe Station and Road for Shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and ſpacious when once entred; above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all ſides from the Winds, that Ships lie here in ſafety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there be as uſeful though not ſo conſiderable. The *Dutch* traded ſafely to *Cuba* tell the year 1606. when the *Spaniſh*, after a ſevere Proclamation fell upon them with a Fleet, and a bloody fight enſued, in which the *Spaniards* prevailed, but not without great loſs,

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1. S. *Jago*, in the South part of the Iſland, ſituate about two Leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the moſt noted Port of all theſe Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velaſquis*, Anno 1514; afterward made a Biſhop's See: beautified with a Cathedral, ſome Religious Houſes: once not inferiour unto any for numbers of people; though now few enough, a *Caracao*, 30 Leagues on the Eaſt of S. *Jago*; the ſame foundation as the other, and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben*-wood. 3. S. *Salvador*, by ſome called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it ſtandeth; built by *Velaſco* in the moſt pleaſant and richeſt part of all the Iſland, but not ſo fitly as the other for Trade and Merchandiſe. S. *Porto del Principe*, an Haven-town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous Liquor, ſpoken of before, which I conceive to be much of the ſame nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the Eaſt. 5. *Trinidad* another of *Velaſco's* foundations, nine or ten Leagues Eaſtward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forſaken, and meer nothing. 6. *Havana* in the North parts, oppoſite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; ſo ſtrongly ſituate and fortified both by nature and Art, that it ſeems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Caſtles; a greater then either oppoſite to the mouth of the Haven; all ſo commodiouſly built and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and ſcatter the greateſt Navy. Near one of them ſtandeth an high Tower, from the top whereof, notice is given unto the Guards of every Ship that cometh within view of the Watchmen. The beſt aſſurance not only of this Iſland but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of the Governour, and the greateſt Trade of all theſe Seas, the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf tarrying here for one another till all meet together, and ſetting ſail from thence by the Streights of *Bahama*, amongſt the Iſles of the *Lucaios*. This is the Harbour to which all the Fleets from *Spain* direct their Courſe; here they unlade their *European* Merchandizes, and here again they take in Plate and other Riches of the *Spaniſh Weſt Indies*, in order to their Tranſportation into *Europe*; ſo that it is one of the moſt frequented Ports in the Weſt *Indies*. And whilſt all this Wealth paſſeth too and fro through it, much muſt ſtick here, ſo that it is become very rich and populous, and the *Spaniards* to ſecure this Important place, have built a ſtrong Caſtle, and ſettled here a Governour, and a good Garriſon of *Spaniards*. It is able to receive and ſecure 1000 ſail of Ships, the ſhore defending them againſt the Sea, and the Mountains from the winds, without any Anchors. It has about 300 families of *Spaniards*, and many *Portugeſſe*. The Neighbouring Woods affords it plenty of Timber for Ships, and Houſes, but they have no Iron to furniſh and finiſh them, but what is brought from *Spain*. The time of the building this City is not mentioned, but was after S. *Jago*, and grew up inſenſibly, as that decay'd. A Fleet went hence for the diſcovery of *Florida* in the year 1539. In the Year 1568. *Chilton* an *Engliſh-man* ſaith, it was the chief Port the *Spaniards* had then in the *Indies*. The entrance of the Harbour is ſo narrow, that two Ships can hardly come in together; Yet it is ſix fathom Deep in that narrow place. In his time it had but 300 *Spaniſh* Inhabitants, and 60 Soldiers, who lived in the Caſtle, that was then newly built. *Hackluit*. T. 3. p. 458. Yet after all this caution, the *Buccaneers* in our time ſurprized theſe Caſtles, and the Town, and could have kept it, if our King would have conſented to it, to whom they ſent for Protection.

This Iſland was one of the firſt which was diſcovered by *Columbus*: who having almoſt tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, firſt fell upon the Iſland of *Guabanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the Name of *S. Saviours*. From thence he ſailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Iſland, which he cauſed to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*, at whoſe charge, and the encouragement of *Iſabella* his Heroick Queen, he purſued this enterprize. Landing, he asked the people if they knew *Cipango*, (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Iſle of *Japan*:) and they conceiving that he inquired after *Cabao*, (of great note for the richeſt Mines in *Hiſpaniola*) pointed towards *Haity*; ſome of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* was by this means laid aſide, and all the thoughts of *Spain* bent unto *Hiſpaniola*, where they found many Golden Provocations to invite their ſtay; till hungring after more Gold, and ſome new Plantations, they paſſed over hither, and in few years, by the prudent conduct of *Velaſco*, got ſuch footing in it, and made that footing good by ſo many Colonies, that their Title and poſſeſſion was beyond diſpute, and ſo continues to this day.

5. *JAMAICA.*

JAMAICA lieth on the South of *Cuba*, from which it is diſtant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more from *Hiſpaniola*. Diſcovered in the ſecond Voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named S. *Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 150; the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich ſoil, abundantly provided of all things neceſſary; well ſtocked with Cattle, and no leſs plentifully ſtored with moſt ſorts of Fruits, which either induſtry or Nature have ſupplyed it with. Great ſtore of Cotton-wool, and ſuch abundance of *Jucca*, (a Root whereof the Savages once made their Bread) that it was deemed the Granary of the neighbouring Iſland. And were it not diſfurniſhed of Convenient Ports, (which is all the want of it) it would be as much frequented by ſea-faring men, as any other in thoſe parts. Once very populous, now deſtitute of all the natural Inhabitants; this Iſland, and that of *Porto Rico*, loſing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniard's* Cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the Men, but deſtroyed Poſterity: the Women here and elſewhere, ſo abominating their ſad condition, that they ſtrangle their Children at the Birth, to the end they might not live to ſerve ſuch a Cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof, (for though it be well watered it hath no great Rivers,) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North part of the Iſland, beautified with a goodly Monaſtery; the Abbot whereof hath all Epiſcopal Juridiction, and is priviledged to wear a Mitre: in nothing more ennobled, than that *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian (to whoſe Decads all ſucceeding Ages are beholden for the Chorography and Hiſtory of theſe parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Mellilla*, a ſmall Town; but memorable for the unfortunate Shipwreck of *Columbus* on the Shores adjoyning. 3. *Oriſtan*, on the South of the Iſland, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil.* 4. *De la Vega*, now a Ruine only, once a *Spaniſh* Colony; and of great fame for giving the Title of *Dukes* to *Chriſtopher Columbus*, and his Brother *Bartholomew*. Since whoſe time nothing happened prejudicial to the ſtate of this Iſland, by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*, till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthony Sherly*, Anno 1596. In 1638. One *Jackſon* an *Engliſh* Man, with a Fleet of *Engliſh* Privateers, ſurprized and plundred S. *Jago*, and then left it to the *Spaniards* again. The time being come when the *Spaniards* were to pay for their ingratitude to *Columbus*, and their cruelty to the Natives (ſome millions of which they had barbarouſly murdered) the *Engliſh* under *Pen* and *Venables* landed here, about 20000 ſtrong, being moſt ruined Royaliſts, and Neceſſitous perſons, who had been undone by Our then Tyrant and the times, *May* 3. 1655. And the *Spaniards* being unable to reſiſt ſo great a Force, retired into the Woods, and other faſtneſſes, hoping to have retrieved what they thus left, by a Treaty, but it proved otherwiſe, for part of the *Engliſh* fell to plant, and the reſt to Privateer upon the *Spaniards*, by which they got Wealth; the fame of this ſo encreaſed, that many going over to them, it became in a few years a very powerful Colony, and is now able alone to manage a War againſt all the Forces the *Spaniards* have in the Weſt *Indies*. This Iſland is ſituate between 17. and 18 degrees of Northern Latitude, within the *Tropicks*, in the *Mare del Noordt* 140 Leagues. North of the main Continent of *America*, 15 South from *Cuba*, 20 Weſt from *Hiſpaniola*, 160 North from *Bello Porto*, and 140 from *Carthagene Nova*. It is of an Oval from 170 miles long, and 70 in breadth, and contains four or five Millions of Acres, 900000 of which were planted in the year 1675. In the middle of it there is a lofty chain of Mountains, which run the whole Length of the Iſle from Eaſt to Weſt, from which ſpring great plenty of pleaſant and uſeful Rivers, to the great refreſhment and convenience of the Inhabitants.

The Soil is very rich and fat, which is black and mixt with Clay, except in the South-weſt parts, where it is generally a more looſe Earth, but then it every where anſwers the Planters Care and Coſt. The Air is always ſerene and clear, and the Earth in her Summer Livery here being a perpetual Spring. It has frequent ſhowers of Rain, and conſtant cooling Breezes of Wind, which blow from the Eaſt, and the Dews which fall in the Night, quicken the Growth of what is planted; ſo that it is the moſt delightful temperate healthful pleaſant Iſland, of all thoſe in the *Weſt-Indies*, and will be extreamly conſiderable, when it comes once to be thoroughly peopled. *John de Laet.* ſaith, that for the Fertility of the Soil, the Pleaſantneſs of the Woods, and the Plenty of all things, it is equal to the beſt of the Iſlands about it, but by reaſon of the want of Ports, and difficult acceſs, infamous for Shipwrecks; otherwiſe it being ſeated in the midſt of the other Iſland, between them and the Continent, it would be the moſt uſeful of them all to ſail in the Bay of *Mexico*. Thus far he who wrote in 1633. Since that the *Engliſh* having obtained the Dominion of it, it is indeed more conſiderable, Strong, Rich, and Populous, than all the other Iſlands put together, and the moſt thriving Plantation we have in all the *Weſt-Indies*.

The *Engliſh* being poſſeſſed of the Iſland, began to build *Port Royal*, upon an excellent Harbour, on the South-ſide of the Iſland, very commodiouſly ſeated for Trade, but upon a looſe Sand, that neither yielded any firm foundation for the Houſes, nor ſo much as freſh water for the life of Man; yet it became very large and populous, containing above 1500 Houſes, and extending 12 miles in length upon the Harbour, and yet the Houſes were as well rented as thoſe in *London*. It became hereupon rich and well traded from all parts, and was every day encreaſing when in the year 1692. it was overtaken by one of the moſt dreadful Earthquakes that had been heard of, many of the Houſes and Inhabitants being ſwallowed up alive by the Earth. Since that the Town is removing to the oppoſite Shore of the Harbour, where they have better foundation for their Houſes, and many conveniences they had not before, though they will want ſome others.

This Town is a kind of Center of Trade, not only to the whole Iſland, but in ſome ſort to all the Countries and Iſlands upon the Gulf of *Mexico*; The Riches that thus flowed in upon them, corrupted their manners, and may juſtly be thought to have haſtened and encreaſed their calamities. The ſecuring and encouraging this Great *Emporum*, is of infinite uſe and conſequence to the Crown of *England*, there being no place to which a greater or more profitable Trade is driven.

Thus having took a ſhort ſurvey of the ſeveral parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government is committed chiefly to two great Vice-Roys; the one of *Nova Hiſpania*, who reſides at *Mexico*, the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*, the principal Citiy of thoſe Kingdoms. The firſt hath Juriſdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Guatimala*, *Caſtella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican* Iſlands; the other over thoſe of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such ſcattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to ſome of theſe. Of theſe the Vice-Roy of *Peru* is of greateſt power, becauſe he hath the nomination of all the Commanders and Officers within his Government; which in the other are reſerved to the King himſelf. But that of New *Spain* is counted for the better preferment, becauſe of its nearneſs unto *Spain*, (in reſpect of the other) the Beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and ordering the affairs of the ſeveral Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lieth no appeal: that is to ſay, 1. *Guadalaiara*, for *Gallicia Nova*: 2. *Mexico*, for *New Spain*: 3. S. *Domingo*, for the Province of the Iſlands: 4. *Guatimala*, for the Diviſion ſo named: 5. *Panama*, for *Caſtella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, 6. *Quitos*, 7. *Lima*, and 8. *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*, 9. *Imperiale*, for *Chile*; 10. S. *Fay*, for the *New Realm of Granada*. From theſe though no appeal do lie in matter of Juſtice; yet both from them and the two Vice-Roys, an appeal may lie in affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a ſtanding Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Council of the Indies*, conſiſting of a Preſident, eight Counſellours, two Proctors Fiſcal (which we call the Sollicitors general) and two Secretaries, beſides other Officers; to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of theſe Countries, to appoint the Vice-Roys, to diſpoſe of all the great Offices (except thoſe of the Government of *Peru*) and ſpiritual dignities, to appoint Viſiters to go into thoſe Provinces, for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the Grievances of the People, and to diſplace or puniſh as they find occaſion, but with the Kings privity and conſent.

As for the Eſtates of private men, they which hold Lands or Royalties from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life, (except it be the Marqueſs of *Valla* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*,) after their death returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldeſt ſon, or the next of blood; but ſo, that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make theſe Commanderies and Eſtates hereditary, and offered great ſums of mony for it, both to *Charles* the fifth, and *Philip* the ſecond, yet they could never get it done; the Kings moſt prudently conſidering, that theſe great Lords having the command of the Eſtates and Perſons of their ſeveral Vaſſals, would either grind them to powder without any remedy, or upon any Inquiſition into their proceedings take an occaſion to revolt. Both dangers of no ſmall importance; both by this uncertainty of their preſent Tenure exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King received hence, is ſaid to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: moſt of it riſing out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver: the reſt by Cuſtoms upon Manufactures and all ſorts of Merchandiſe, and the acknowledgments reſerved upon Lands and Royalties. But out of this there go great Exits; that is to ſay, to the two Vice Roys 12000 Ducats; to the Preſident and Officers of the Council of the Indies in *Spain*, 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the ſeveral Courts of Judicature very liberal Penſions; to every Archbiſhop and Biſhop, of which there are 29 in all, 2000 Ducats at the leaſt, and to ſome much more, to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges in maintaining Garriſons, and entertaining ſtanding Bands both of Horſe and Foot, in ſeveral parts of this Eſtate, and the continual keeping of a ſtrong Armada to conduct his Plate Fleets to *Spain*; there muſt be made a great abatement, and the ſum will bear it. For howſoever at the firſt his Revenue came from thence without any great charge, more then the keeping of a few Soldiers to awe the Savages; yet after he fell foul with *England*, and ſtartled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and ſecure his Ports, and to maintain a ſtrong Armada at the Sea, to convey his Treaſures. Before which time the *Engliſh* (as is inſtanced in ſeveral places) did ſo ſhare in his Harveſt, that they left him ſcarce enough to pay his workmen; which if they ſhould attempt again upon any Breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impoſible, to effect any other way, but by making themſelves too ſtrong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to ſupply his needs.

And ſo much for the *AMERICAN Iſlands*.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods Bleſſing) the *Known* Parts of the World, and ſailed through the moſt difficult Seas which embrace the ſame; we ſhould now man our Barque again, and try what Diſcovery we can make of the Parts *Unknown*, or not fully known to us as the others are.

——————*atqui*
Quò properas, mea cymba? redi, ſatis ardua ponti
Navimus: ecce Auſter *pluvias jam cogere nubes*
Incipit, hic tutum non eſt (mihi crede) morari.
Dum licet, in Portum tendamus, nubila clarum
Reddiderint ubi pulſa diem, revocabit ab alto
Nos Triton *Scopulo, atque iterum tentabimus Æquor.*

That is to ſay,
But whither goes my Bark? Return: for we
Have ſlic'd the Capering Brine enough: ſee, ſee,
The South wind 'gins to gather Clouds apace;
'Tis no ſafe tarrying in ſo fierce a place.
Whilſt thou haſt time, retire, thou wearied Bark,
Into ſafe Harbour; when the Clouds which dark
The World's Bright Eye ſhall be diſpell'd away,
And ſhining *Phœbus* make a lightſome day,
Triton's ſhrill Trump ſhall thee recal again,
From the ſafe Harbour to the foaming Main:
And we with all our Powers will boldly try
What of this *UNKNOWN WORLD* we can deſcry.

A TABLE of the Longitude and Latitude of the Chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

	Long.		*Lat.*	
Acapulco	276	0	18	0
Almeria	272	15	20	0
Ancon	321	0	6	20
Anegadas	296	0	50	0 A.
S. Anna Equitum	318	10	27	30 A.
Antigua	330	20	16	10
Antiochia	300	50	6	40
Arica	300	30	20	0 A.
Aſcenſion	353	20	18	50 A.
Aravalo	298	10	1	30
Acuzamil	289	30	19	0
S. Auguſtin	293	0	29	50
B				
Bahama	296	30	27	0
Barbados	322	0	13	0
Bovincas	296	50	15	50
C				
Campa	351	40	62	50
Cartagena	300	0	20	10
Carthago	299	30	3	10
Caxamalca	298	30	11	30 A.
Chaſſapiake	308	0	38	0
Chiaſmetlan	260	0	25	40
Chile	299	30	3	30
Colima	267	20	19	50
Collao	300	0	16	0 A.
Coquimbo	301	20	20	40
Corduba	316	20	33	0 A.
Coano	259	40	31	0
Couliacan	266	30	27	0
Cuſco	397	20	13	30 A.
D				
Darien	295	40	5	30
Deſſeada	320	[illegible]	15	20
Dominica	359	40	14	0
E. F.				
Eſtade	305	10	47	40
Farnambuck	351	40	8	20
G				
Gorgona	295	10	3	20
Granada	310	20	11	0
Guaiaquil	294	30	2	30 A
Guadalquabol	282	20	31	0
Guanape	294	50	8	10 A.
Guardalupe	319	20	15	20
Guatimala	303	0	24	20
H				
Hargnedo	310	30	54	0
Havana	292	10	20	0
Hochelaga	300	50	44	10
Hunedo	324	0	51	30
I				
Iubaqua	315	15	17	15
S. Iago	298	10	30	10
Iſabella	305	20	18	50
L				
Lempa	274	10	16	50
Lima	296	40	23	30
Loſai	293	30	9	50 A.
M				
Malagnana	306	0	23	40
Malones	279	40	13	40
Maracapana	312	10	8	0

	Long.		*Lat.*	
Margarita	314	10	10	50
Mexico	283	0	38	30
Martha	301	20	10	40
S. Michael	291	40	6	10
S. Michael	327	10	47	20
Mona	309	30	18	0
Monſerrat	319	10	15	40
Montroyal	301	0	45	40
Mopox	301	10	10	0
N				
Navaca	300	20	17	10
Nicoia	284	30	10	40
Nevis	318	40	16	20
Nombte di Dios	294	30	9	20
Norembega	215	40	43	40
P				
Paca	302	50	13	10 A.
Paito	290	30	5	10 A.
Panama	294	30	8	30
Panuco	270	10	22	20
Paſto	304	0	11	40 A.
Pina	296	20	3	0
Plata	305	0	9	50 A.
Popayan	297	20	1	50
Poſſeſſion	241	30	32	20
Potoſi	315	10	21	10 A.
Q				
Quicon	298	50	16	30 A.
Quinter	303	40	34	40 A.
Quito	293	10	10	0
Quivira	233	0	41	40
R				
Roca	311	0	11	10
Roquelay	314	10	50	0
S				
Saba	317	30	17	20
Salinas	321	40	52	0
S. Salvadore	321	10	5	0
Sante	294	40	9	30
Saona	309	0	16	50
Sorana	351	40	61	0
T				
Tabaco	322	10	10	40
Tarneco	270	15	24	40
Tavaſco	275	40	18	20
Teſtigos	316	10	11	0
Thomebamba	293	40	1	50 A.
Tiquiſana	305	20	16	0 A.
Tochipic	274	40	19	0
Tortuga	303	50	20	20
Totonteac	248	20	36	0
Trinidad	295	50	21	20
Tumbez	291	40	4	10 A.
V. W.				
Val paraiſe	300	0	33	0 A.
Vllao	242	10	30	30
Vraba	297	20	7	30
Vreos	301	0	14	50 A.
Woacan	307	30	34	0
Z				
Zacatula	269	4	20	0

A is the Mark of Southern Latitude

The end of the Second Part of the fourth Book

AN
APPENDIX
TO THE
FORMER WORK,
Endeavouring a Diſcovery of the
Unknown Parts of the World:
ESPECIALLY OF
Terra Auſtralis Incognita,
OR THE
SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

An Advertiſement to the Reader.

There is nothing of Greater Advantage to the World than the diſcovery of new Countries, and yet there is nothing goes on with more difficulty, for which many reaſons may be given ; but to make them throwly underſtood, they muſt be divided between Princes and Merchants, and thoſe that are common to both.

Our Princes have of late been ſo engaged in Wars, and other ſuch Avocations, that they have had no time or mony to ſpend in things of this nature, which are Works of Curioſity and Grandure, rather than of Neceſſity and Policy. Secondly, All the Nations that are famed for Navigation, have found the lately diſcovered Countries in *Africa* and *America*, have ſo exauſted their Countries of their Inhabitants, that they have no deſire to give a Temptation to more of them to leave their Kingdoms to their Ruine.

As to the Merchant, his deſign is profit, and nothing elſe, and theſe diſcovery Voyages will certainly for ſome time be driven to loſs, and when they are once found certain and profitable, then others that had no ſhare in the charge or hazard, will as certainly be putting in for their Sheirs of it, without any regard to the firſt Diſcoverer ; nor can this be prevented, without the Princes will grant them Charters, to reſtrain the Trading thither for ſome time.

Both Princes and Merchants do very hardly purſue thoſe things which they can never ſo Appropriate, as to exclude others from partaking with them in the thing found ; yet it cannot be denied, but the firſt Finder has always been well paid, but men are not ſatisfied with this, but envy all other men the leaſt advantage they may make from their labour and experience. And it is impoſſible to hinder this, without ſending potent Colonies, which in the preſent State of Affairs, are not to be ſpared out of any of our Mariſim Kingdoms or States.

Thus the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company having found the *Terra Jaſſi*, to the North of *Japan*, and the parts of the South Continent over againſt the Iſlands of the *Eaſt-Indies*, would never ſuffer either of them to be any further diſcovered or diſcourſed of, for fear the States of *Holland* ſhould Erect a new Company to Trade in this new diſcovery, and take from them ſome part of their profit : And the ſame humour without doubt poſſeſſed our *Eaſt-India* and *African* Companys, and kept from endeavouring a perfect diſcovery of this South Continent, and alſo from giving any good account of that which they Accidentally met with.

The beſt way to promote it is, to erect a Company for that purpoſe ; and in the mean time, let not any Man complain that there is want of Trade in the World, when it is apparent, that not one fourth part of that which is known is Traded to, and there is as much more to be diſcovered as is now known. Above half the North Hemiſphere, and all the South, being either not known, or not Traded to. And 'tis the cold Countries that want moſt things, and Conſequently do afford the beſt Trades. But in the South Continent there is both hot and cold Countries, and Men may take their choice as they think fit.

How much Trade may be enlarged by new diſcoveries, will appear to any man that compares the State of *England* as now it ſtands with what it was when *Julius Cæſar* entred the ſame Country, about fifty years before the Birth of our Saviour ; when the *Britans* went naked, and lived by hunting, and had no Towns but great Woods fenced in. Yet had the *Greeks* and *Phœnicians* been here before him, and taught them to fight in Chariots, and to make uſe of Iron for Weapons, and to till the Ground. The ſame obſervation will be made good in *Germany*, *Holland*, *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and all the parts upon the *Baltick* Sea, and more Northward.

Such as the *Romans* found theſe Northern Nations, ſuch were the *Greeks*, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, and *Africans* when the *Phœnicians* firſt diſcovered them, and ſent Colonies to civilize them ; and as civility and knowledge ſpread, ſo commerce followed, and being once began, it ſeldom or never fails to go on. And there is no doubt but the Company of *Hudſons* Bay, that Trades with the Northern *Americans*, is one of our beſt Companies, and doth deſerve the greateſt encouragement for that cauſe amongſt many other, becauſe they have opened a Trade where none was before, which will encreaſe and grow greater every year, as thoſe people came to learn the uſe of all our Manufactures, and to value them, and they will as certainly ſpread the knowledge of them to their Neighbour Nations, which will enlarge the Trade every year.

The great deſign of God has ever been the Civilizing mankind, and that of the Devil has ever been the making them more barbarous; and thoſe Men that promote that work of God, and behave themſelves well in it, ſhall find the effects of his favour, in the proſpering their affairs; but then they muſt deal civilly with the barbarous Nations, as far as is poſſible, bearing with their ſimplicity and folly, and uſe no Treachery or Cruelty againſt them, and further than is neceſſary to their own defence, as to the laſt, for the firſt is never neceſſary or uſeful.

An Appendix to the former work. Endeavouring a Diſcovery of the Unknown Parts of the World.

AND here we are upon a new and ſtrange Adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no deſire, ſo leſs Diſcourſe can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we muſt underſtand *leſs known*, or not well diſcovered ; and in that ſence we may as well endeavour to ſay ſomewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the Diſcovery. And to ſay truth, even in the known parts of the World there is much unknown ; as in the beſt and moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of the Earth, there is ſome waſt ground, either not cultivated at all, or not ſo well inhabited as the reſt of the Country. For beſides many vaſts Tracts of ground in the North and North-weſt parts of *Tartaria*, and as ſuch parts of *India* as lie North-wards towards *Delanguer Nancrocot* ; the Eaſt-parts *Caucaſus* and the Realms of *Cathay* it is conceived that the greateſt part of the Midlands of *Africk* are undiſcovered to this day, or the knowledge of them ſo imperfect, as comes near a Neſcience ; and for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders, (which are in part to be the Subject of this Enquiry) it is affirmed of the Midlands by *John de Laet*, (who hath made the moſt exact deſcription of it that ever was extant) *minima ſui parte perluſtratum eſſe*, that the leaſt part of them hath been diſcovered hitherto to any purpoſe. Leaving theſe therefore as before without farther ſearch, we will divide the *UNKNOWN WORLD* into theſe two parts : 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Auſtralis* : which with their ſubdiviſions we will now purſue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North ; and is to be conſidered in theſe three Notions. 1. As directly under the Pole, which for diſtinction ſake we will call *Orbis Arcticus* ; 2. as lying to the North-eaſt on the back of *Europe* and *Aſia* ; or 3. on the North-weſt on the back of *America*.

1 *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita* which lieth under or about the *Artick Pole* ; the ſituations and dimenſions of which being taken with the *Aſtrolabe* by an *Oxford* Frier, are by *Mercator* thus deſcribed out of the Itinerary of *James Cnoxe* of *Bois le due*, or the *Boſche*, a Town of *Brabant*.

“ Under the *Artick Pole* (ſaith he) is ſaid to be a “ black Rock of wondrous height, about 33 Leagues in “ compaſs, the Land adjoyning being torn by the ſea into four great Iſlands. For the Ocean violently break-“ ing through it, and diſgorging it ſelf by 19 Channels, ma-“ keth four *Euripi* or fierce Whirl-pools, by which the “ Waters are finally carried towards the North, and there “ ſwallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That *Euripus* “ or Whirl-pool which is made by the *Scythick* Ocean “ hath five Inlets, and by reaſon of his ſtreight paſſage “ and violent courſe is never frozen: the other on the back “ of *Greenland*, being 37 Leagues long, hath three In-“ lets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Be-“ tween theſe two there lieth an Iſland on the North of “ *Lappia* and *Biarmia*, inhabited, as they ſay, by *Pigmies*, “ the talleſt of them not above four foot high. A certain “ Scholar of *Oxford* reporteth, that theſe four *Euripi* “ are carried with ſuch furious violence towards ſome “ Gulf, in which they are finally ſwallowed up, that no “ ſhip is able with never ſo ſtrong a Gale to ſtem the “ Current, and yet that there is never ſo ſtrong a Wind “ as to blow a Windmill : The like is reported by *Giraldus Cambrenſis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hiberniæ*. So far and to this purpoſe he. But *Blundevil* our Countryman is of another opinion, (as indeed who not ?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman* Writers came hither to deſcribe this Promontory; or that the *Oxford* Frier, without the aſſiſtance of ſome cold Devil of the middle Region of the Air, (and conſequently able to endure all Weathers) could approach ſo near, as to meaſure theſe cold Countrys with his *Aſtrolabe*, or take the height of this black Rock with his *Jacob's* ſtaff. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucian's* Dialogues, then any ſerious Diſcourſe : we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTH WEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are thoſe which lie on the back of *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern Province of *America* : by which it hath been much indeavoured to find out a paſſage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go ſo far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Streights of *Magellan*. Attempted firſt by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, Anno 1497, at the charge of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*. But having diſcovered as far as to the 67. Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return ; when finding great preparations for a war with *Scotland*, that buſineſs for the preſent was laid aſide. Reſumed by *Gaſpar Corterialis* a *Portugal*, Anno 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525 ; but neither of them went ſo far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithſtanding would not ſo give over, but firſt with five Ships from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, ſent out by *Cortez*, purſued the enterprize : which proving as ſucceſsleſs as the former had been, occaſioned *Charles* the fifth then preparing for *Italy*, on the payment

of 35000 Ducats by King *John* the third, to ſuſpend the Proſecution of it. Followed with greater induſtry, but as bad ſucceſs, by Sir *Martin Frobiſher*, who made three Voyages for theſe parts, (the firſt of them in the year 1579) and brought home ſome of the Natives, a Sea Unicorns horn, (ſtill kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windſor* Caſtle) and a great deal of the Ore of that Country, found upon tryal, when in *England*, not to quit the Coſt. A great Promontory which he paſſed by he called Queen *Elizabeth's Foreland*, in whoſe name he took poſſeſſion of it; and the Sea running not far off he called *Frobiſher's Streights*. The Seas full ſet with Icy Iſlands, ſome of them half a mile about, and eighty Fathoms above Water; the People like the *Samoeds*, the worſt kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the deſign *Anno* 1585, at the encouragement of Sir *Francis Walſingham*, then principal Secretary of eſtate: and having in three Voyages diſcovered to the Latitude of 73, by reaſon of the many difficulties which he found in the enterpriſe, and the death of Mr. Secretary, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Eſtotiland* the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name it is ſtill called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudſon*, *Button*, *Baffin*, *Smith*; all *Engliſh*. The reſult of whoſe Endeavours was the finding of ſome cold Iſles and points of Land, which they named King *James* his *Cape*, Queen *Ann's Cape*, Prince *Henrie's Foreland*, *Saddle Iſland*, *Barren Iſland*, *Redgooſe Iſland*, *Diggs* his *Iſland*; all of them betwixt 80 and 81: and the impoſing on ſome paſſages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hackluyt's Headland*, *Smith's Bay*, *Hudſon's Streights*, *Maudlin's Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their Undertakings. Nothing atchieved of publick moment, but the Diſcovery of an Iſland called *Cherry Iſland* in the Latitude of 74. and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they cauſed to be called King *James* his *New Land*, moſt commonly *Greenland*; where they found many white Bears, with white, gray and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geeſe, and ſome other Proviſions. Sea Unicorns Horns, great ſtore of *Morſes*, (or Sea-Horſes) the Oil and Teeth whereof yield no ſmall Commodity. But moſt conſiderable for the Trade of Whale-fiſhing, which our men uſe yearly upon thoſe Coaſts; of whoſe Oil, Bones and Brain (this laſt ſuppoſed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now uſed as Medicinal) they raiſed very great profit.

3. The *NORTH EAST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are thoſe which lie on the North of *Ruſſia* and *Tartary*, by which the like paſſage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like ſucceſs. Endeavoured firſt by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the ſon of *John Cabot*, ſo often mentioned before, by him trained up in the Diſcovery of the North eaſt parts of *America*. His Employment failing here in *England*, he betook himſelf into the ſervice of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, Anno 1549, was by King *Edward* the ſixth made Grand Pilot of *England*, with an Annual Penſion of 166 *l.* 13 *s* 4 *d.* In the year 1553, he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Diſcovery of *Ruſſia* and the North-eaſt Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellour*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinſon*; and after proſecuted by *Pet* and *Jakman*. Some of which periſhed in the Action, and were frozen to death; their Ship being ſound the next year hemmed about with Ice, and a particular account of all things which had happened to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Rnſſia* (ſince that time made a common Voyage without dread or danger) and paſſing down the *Volga* to the *Caſpian* Sea, and by that to *Perſia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in ſome years after, tried their Fortune alſo, under the Conduct and Direction of one *William Barendſon* their chief Pilot; but went no farther then the *Engliſh* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they paſſed, as if they had been the firſt Diſcoverers, with Pride and Arrogance enough. Nothing ſince done of any note or conſideration for the opening of the North-eaſt paſſage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Countrys beyond that, but what we had many Ages ſince out of *Paulus Venetus*: ſo that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly diſcourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant Undertakings, yet when I look upon the natures of thoſe Shores and Seas, thoſe tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following, the Winds continually in the North, and the main Ocean paved with Ice ſo long together; I cannot chuſe but rank the hopes of theſe Northern Paſſages amongſt thoſe adventures which are only commendable for the difficulties preſented in them.

A great part of this attempt has miſcarried, by the ſuppoſal that *Wigats* Streight between *Nova Zembla* and *Ruſſia* was a thoroughfare lying in the Latitude of 70. and thereupon they have entred it, and been driven about by the Winds and Ice, till they have with great difficulty found the Way out again: *Charles* the ſecond thereupon ſent a Letter to the *Czar* of *Ruſſia* to have it examined by Land, and it was found *Nova Zembla* was Joyned to the Continent by a neck of Land on the Eaſt ſide, and that this Sea was nothing but a Lake. This is confirmed by the experience of our Mariners, who could never find any Tyde in that Sea. The *Dutch* on the contrary, who have kept the high Sea, have paſſed to 75. degrees of Latitude on the coaſt of *Nova Zembla*, and diſcovered *Spitzberg* to 81 degrees of Latitude, without any difficulty, of equal greatneſs. Now the greateſt height of *Nova Zembla* is but 75. Though there be ſome ſmall Iſlands on the Eaſt of that Cape, that reach to 80; ſo that the Cape of *Nova Zembla* may certainly be doubled, as has been found by experience. But in the next place, men fright themſelves with another vaſt promontory in *Tartary*, called by the Ancients *Cape Tabin*. For it is agreed by all, that after *Nova Zembla* is paſſed, the Shore bendeth to the South. To which I reply that *Nova Zembla* is their Cape *Tabin*, but placed by information too much to the Eaſt by *Ptolemy*, and that it is wonderful in thoſe dark Ages, they ſhould ever be able to gain the knowledge of it, and of the *Ryphæan* mountains, which butt upon it, beyond which they knew nothing, as neither did the *Ruſſians* till of late, they found a paſſage above it to the South, but called it the *Belt* or *Girdle* of the World, and thought it unpaſſible. So that upon the whole we may ſafely conclude, there is a paſſage beyond *Nova Zembla*, and that it is moſt probable, this is the moſt Northern Cape they can meet with; and conſequently that there is a paſſage this way to *China*. But if it ſhould be otherwiſe, there are certainly Inhabited Countries beyond it, in which a Trade might be raiſed that would be more profitable than any of our other Trades are, and would open a paſſage by ſome of the great Rivers beyond that Cape to *China*, which would afford a more profitable Trade than that upon the Sea Coaſt uſually is.

The way to diſcover this is, to ſend ſome Ships that ſhall Winter at *Arch Angel*, and ſet out in the opening of the Summer in *May* or *April* upon the diſcovery, and ſo paſs ſtreight away for the Cape of *Nova Zembla*, and in probability the Ship will be able to effect the diſcovery that Summer; if not the men muſt be furniſhed with proviſions and materials to build an houſe to ſubſiſt any-where, the want of which was the loſs of Sir *Hugh Willoby* on the Coaſt of *Lapland*.

To encourage this Diſcovery the more, there ought to be a Charter granted to a certain number of men, that they only ſhall uſe the paſſage by them ſo to be diſcovered for twenty, thirty, or forty years, as ſhall be thought fit, and to Trade by it to any part of the Eaſtern or Weſtern World, but not excluſive of others. The profit of this Diſcovery is ſo great and well known, that I need ſay nothing of it, the World being already well ſatisfied of it.

As for any paſſage by the Notth-weſt, it has been ſo well ſearched, that we may conclude it highly improbable, if not impoſſible.

There is two other ways beſides that I mentioned, to diſcover the North-eaſt Paſſage; one is to ſend ſome Marriners and Ship Carpenters by Land to the River *Obb*, and there to build a ſmall ſhip, and go down that River, but this will be found hard, for want of Iron Work. The other is to ſend a ſhip from the *Eaſt-Indies*, to ſearch the ſhores of the *Corea*, cutting North on *China*, and ſo to paſs North-eaſt as far is poſſible. This is more eaſy than the other, and perhaps more profitable; becauſe at the worſt, it will open a Trade between the hot and cold Countries on that ſide, which do moſt need each other, to the great profit of the Diſcoverer.

England is the Country in the World that is the moſt concerned to find this out, for a place to vent our cloaths and other manufactures, which are more ſaleable in the cold, than in the hot Countries.

But whatever be the Event of this, what I have added here, is all that has been diſcovered in theſe Northern parts of the world ſince the Author wrote, and has come to my Knowledge.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

With better hopes we may go forwards on the next Diſcovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Auſtralis*, or the Southern Continent, though hitherto *Incognita* alſo, almoſt as much unknown as the *Artick* Iſlands, which none but my good Frier of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned *Brerewood* to be as large as *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*: and that upon ſuch ſtrength of Reaſons, as cannot be eaſily overborn by any oppoſite. His Arguments in brief are theſe. 1. That as touching Latitude, ſome parts thereof come very near to the *Æquator*, if they come not alſo on this ſide of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at ſeveral diſtances, the whole continual courſe of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents the Land which lieth on the North-ſide of that Line, is four times at the leaſt as large as that which lieth South thereof; and therefore, ſince the Earth is equally poized on both ſides of the Centre, it muſt needs be that the Earth in anſwerable meaſure and proportion muſt advance it ſelf in ſome places above the Sea on the South-ſide of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By conſequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two Continents to countervail the North-parts of them, muſt of neceſſity be ſupplied in the Southern Continent.

To theſe two Reaſons, with the Readers leave I may here ſubjoyn a third from experience, all Marriners that in dubling the Cape of *Good Hope*, have by contrary winds been driven to 40 or 45 degrees of South Latitude, have by experience found the Southern Winds exceeding cold, though they were then in the height of *Spain*, or at moſt equal with the South parts of *France*; which proves, that thoſe Winds come off a vaſt Tract of Land to the Southward, and not very remote neither, for all Winds that come off the Land, are colder and more piercing than thoſe that come off the Sea.

The Country being ſo large, ſo free from the Incumbrances of Froſts and Ice and endleſs winter, I have oft marvelled with my ſelf, that no farther progreſs hath been made in Diſcovery of it: conſidering chiefly by the Sites and Poſition of the Country, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie neareſt *Aſia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elſe where, either of profit or pleaſure, but may there be found. Whether it be that there is ſome *Nil ultra* put to humane endeavours, or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the Goſpel, or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themſelves in new Diſcoveries, till the old be throughly planted and made ſure unto them; or that the Merchant, who in matters of this nature hath a powerful influence, thinks his hand full enough already, and being ſetled in ſo many and ſo wealthy Factories, will not adventure upon more: Which of all theſe, or whether all theſe together be the cauſe of the Stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that here is a large Field, enough for Covetouſneſs, Ambition, or deſire of Glory, to ſpend themſelves in, enough to ſatisfie the greateſt and moſt hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth and Worldly pleaſure; beſides the Gallantry and Merit of ſo brave an Action. Moſt which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the encoragement of the Vice-Roys of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the firſt of which we came acquainted with the Coaſt of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with thoſe Countrys called the *Iſlands* of *Solomon*, but whether Continent or Iſlands, not yet fully known.

And yet we muſt not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the Honour, who, paſſing through the Streights which now bear his name, diſcovered thoſe parts of it which, from the Fire thence ſeen, he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Iſland. Nor do the *Engliſh* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did was rather accidental then upon Deſign. For in the year 1593, Sir *Richard Hawkins*, being bound for the Streights of *Magellan*, was by a croſs wind driven on ſome parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins* his *Maiden land*; a Promontory of it ſhooting into the Sea with three Points he called *Point Tremontain*; and a pleaſant Iſle not far off by the name of *Fair Iſland*. Sailing along theſe Coaſts in the 50. Degree of Southern Latitude, for the ſpace of ſixty miles and upwards, he found the Country as he paſſed to be very pleaſant; and by the Fires which he ſaw in the night, to be well inhabited. By the like accident, *Anno* 1599, *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the Streights of *Magellan*, fell upon ſome Iſlands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees and forty Minutes, which he cauſed to be called *Sibald*'s Iſland. And beſides theſe, we owe to the *Portugals* the Diſcovery of ſuch parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the Eaſtern *Indies*, of which we have little but the names: as 1. *Pſittacorum Terra*, ſo called from the abundance of Parrots which they ſaw on the Coaſts over againſt the *Cape of good Hope*; 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and poſſeſſed by Idolaters, with the two Kingdoms of, 3. *Lucach*, and 4. *Maletur*; all three againſt the Iſles of *Java*, from which little diſtant.

But the greateſt light we have to ſee by into this dark buſineſs, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was ſaid. For in the year 1543, the Governour of *New Spain*, then being, ſent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccas*, who in that Voyage made a Diſcovery of a rich and flouriſhing Country, which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others ſince his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli*: and in the year 1563, *Caſtro* the Licentiate, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, ſent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopez*, *Garcia de Caſtro*, diſcovered the Iſlands of *Solomon*. To which if we ſubjoin the ſucceſs of the *Hollanders* in the diſcovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Land adjoyning, the beſt Deſcription we can make of this Southern Continent muſt be in the Chorography and Hiſtory of their Adventures; *viz.* 1. *Terra del Fogo*, 2 *Inſulæ Solomonis*, 3. *Nova Guinea*: beginning firſt with *Terra del Fogo*, becauſe neareſt to us.

1. *TERRA* DEL FUEGO lies on the other ſides of the Streights of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now diſcovered to be an Iſland by one *Jacob Maire* of *Amſterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Hoorn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15 of *June*, Anno 1615, and on the 19. of *January* following they fell even with the Streight of *Magellan*. On the 24. of the ſame month they had the ſight of another Streight, which ſeemed to ſeparate this

Terra del Fuego from the reſt of the Southern Continent; and on the 25 they entered into it. That part of the Land which (being entred into the Streights) they had on the Weſt, they called *Terra Mauritii de Naſſau* ; that on the Eaſt, *Statenland* ; the Streight it ſelf, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the Streight they found to be in 55 Degrees of Southern Latitude and 50 Minutes ; the water running into the North Sea with ſo violent an Eddy, *ut adverſum maris æſtum difficulter ſuperare poſſemus*, ſaith he who in the way of Journal or Ephemerides hath deſcribed the whole courſe of this Voyage. In the whole courſe thereof nothing ſo much obſervable (beſides the Diſcovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had loſt a Day, (as muſt needs happen unto ſuch as in ſo tedious a Voyage had travelled Weſtward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders* and the reſt of *Europe* ; though they had calculated the Days ſince their going out with all exactneſs. So that if there were any ſuch Morality in the Sabbath, as ſome men pretend, theſe men muſt either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the reſt of their Countrymen, or otherwiſe, to comply with them, muſt be guilty of the breach of the Sabbath all the reſt of their lives. But of this more at large elſewhere. To return therefore to this Streight : it is ſaid to be ſeven *Dutch* miles or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth ; plentiful of good Fiſh, eſpecially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inſerting of which Streight into the third Edition of my Microcoſm, I receiv'd a Letter at ſuch time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon* Anno 1625. ſubſcribed *G. B.* and a little under that, *Sub granda floridus*, which whether it were the Gentlemans Motto, or the Anagram of his name, I am not able to ſay, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his deſire were ſatisfied in the next Edition of that Work. For my encouragement wherein he gave me this direction following, “The news (ſaith he) of this *New Streight* com- “ing into *Spain*, it pleaſed the King, in the year 1618, “to ſend and ſearch whether the truth were anſwerable “unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader “then the other, and not above ſeven *Dutch* miles long, “he decreed, that being the more eaſie and compendious “way for Navigators, and leſs ſubject to dangers, his “Auxiliary Forces ſhould be ſent that way into the *East-* “*Indies* to defend the *Phillipine* and *Molucca* Iſlands, and “the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard “that every ſuch Voyage requireth twice as much time; “beſides the variety of Winds, and often change of the “Air, not only troubleſome, but full of diſeaſes, conſu- “meth the one half of the men before the return. “Whereas this way gaineth time (and, if need be, they “may diſpatch buſineſs in the Weſt as they travel into “the Eaſt) without any extraordinary danger or loſs of “men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter I find confirmed in a Relation of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de More*, Anno 1618, at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who preſently arm'd and furniſh'd eight tall Ships to ſend this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Molucca's*, under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelus de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience that even from our parts to the *Molucca's* through this *Fretum de Maire*, is but a paſſage of eight months, *ſine ulla inſigni navigantium clade*, ſaith the Narrator. But of this Streight enough to ſatisfie my unknown Well-wiſſers Requeſt, and inform my reader, being extreamly ſorry that the Gentleman was not pleaſed to impart his name, that ſo his memory might have lived in theſe Papers, if they themſelves be deſtinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the Soil, it is ſaid to be very full of Mountains ; but thoſe Hills apparalled with Woods, intermixt with Valleys ; the Valleys for the moſt part full of little Brooks, which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good paſturage ; the Sea-coaſts well provided with Bays and Roads, not unſafe for Shipping ; though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much ſubject to Tempeſts. As for the People, they are ſaid to be of a white Complexion ; but their Faces Arms and Thighs, coloured with a kind of Oker : of full Stature and well proportioned, their Hair black, which they wear long, to ſeem more terrible. The Men moſt generally naked, the Women only ſhaded on their ſecret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deſerve the name of Houſes: ſo that the moſt which we can do is to coaſt the Iſland. In which we find towards *Mare del Noordt*, 1 A large Arm of the Sea called *Entrado de S. Sebaſtian*. 2. The Cape of S. *Ives*. 3. *Mauritius* Land. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suſcio*, or the Cape of Good Succeſs. Oppoſite whereunto in another Iſland, is the Cape of S. *Bartholomews*, and betwixt them the Streight called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South-Sea*, as they call it, there are, 5. *Barnevelt*'s Iſland. 6. The Iſlands of S. *Ildefonſo* : 7. Cape *Horn*, on a fair Promontory, in the South-weſt *Ande*, which doubled, the Country goes along with a Streight Shore, on which I find ſome Bays and Capes, but no names unto them : till we come to the Weſtern entrances of the Streight of *Magellan*, oppoſite unto Cape *Victoria*, ſo often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Iſland of *Solomon*, are ſituate on the Weſt of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 Degrees on the South of the Æquinoctial. Diſcovered in the year 1567, by *Lopez Garcia de Caſtro*, ſent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countrys. By him thus named, in hope that man would be rather induced to inhabit in them ; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from theſe Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal, ſome of which 300 miles in compaſs, others 200, and others of them leſs, till we come to fifty, and beneath that none. All liberally furniſhed with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and ſome Veins of Gold. The chief of theſe eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, ſuppoſed to be the greateſt of them ; upon the Coaſt whereof the *Spaniards* ſailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and ſacked, becauſe the people of it, by a ſudden ſurprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. *S. Iſabella* 150 Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth ; the inhabitants ſome black, ſome white, ſome of brown Complexion. 3. S. *Nicholas*, 100 Leagues in compaſs, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but ſaid to be more witty then the other Savages. All of them ſituate betwixt the Streights of *Magellan* and the Iſlands of *Thieves* ; and yet not well agreed upon amongſt our Authors, whether to be accounted Iſlands, or a part of the Continent; the *Spaniards* having ſailed 700 Leagues on the Coaſt hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they paſs generally in account for Iſlands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them paſs ſo ſtill.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lieth beyond the Iſlands of *Solomon* in reſpect of us, proceeding, as we have begun, from the Land of Fire. Diſcovered, as before was ſaid, *Anno* 1543, by *Villa Lopos*, (*Herrera* attributes the Diſcovery of it to *Alvarez de Savedra*, and ſets it higher, in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I gueſs aright, by *Ferdinando de Quirs*, who being ſent with two Ships to make a more full Diſcovery of the Iſlands of *Solomon*, and taking his courſe about the height of the *Magellan* Streights, diſcovering a main Land coming up cloſe to the Æquinoctial, on the Coaſt whereof he ſailed 800 Leagues, till he found himſelf at laſt in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, diſcovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purpoſed to ſettle a Plantation, and to that end preſented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive, by the Site and Poſition of it, to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up cloſe as that doth to the Aquinoctial ; and after turning to the South towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maletur*.

And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I ſhall afford the Reader this Deſcription of it, out of his Memorials; in which it is ſoberly affirmed to be a Terreſtrial Paradiſe for Wealth and Pleaſure. The Country is plentiful of Fruits, *Coco*-nuts, Almonds of four ſorts, Pome-citrons, Dates, Sugar canes and Apples; plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with ſome Kine and Buffals. Nothing inferiour (as it ſeemeth) to *Guinea* in the Land of *Negroes*, and from thence ſo named. For as he ſaith, he ſaw amongſt them Silver and Pearls, and ſome told him of Gold; the Countrys on the Coaſt ſeeming to promiſe much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be wholeſom and temperate, the Sea-ſhores to be full of Bays, Havens, and the exits of Rivers, making ſhew of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, ſome white, ſome like the *Mullattos*, others like the *Negroes*; diverſified in Habit as well as Colour. Their Bread made of three ſorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their ſeveral Oratories and places of Burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in daily Wars with one another: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other Weapons, but all made of Wood. Of this Country, whatſoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took poſſeſſion in the name of the Catholick King, and ſet up both a Croſs and a Chappel in it; the Chappel dedicated to the Lady of *Loretto*.

The preciſe time of this Diſcovery I have not yet found, but that the time ſpent about it is by him affirmed to be fourteen years, to the no ſmall endamagement of his Health and Fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing elſe done by others in purſuance of his Propoſitions. Whether it were on any of the Reaſons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the Bays or Promontories as he paſſeth along; but he either took ſuch names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for ſuch names as were given before, (ſtill taking *Ferdinando Quir*'s new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called Cape *Harmoſa*, in the Eaſt parts hereof, near the Iſland of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Æquator*. 2. Another in the Weſtern part, but as near the *Equinox*, called *Point Primiro*. 3. A third in the firſt bending of the Coaſt towards the South, called *Capo de Buaen Deſeada*, or the Cape of *good Deſire*. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de* S. *Auguſtine*, on the Eaſt of Cape *Formoſo* towards the ſtreights. 7. The Rivers of S. *Peter*. 8. S. *Paul*. 9. S. *Andrew*, and 10 S. *James*, betwixt Cape *Formoſo* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of theſe laſt Diſcoveries, and the greateſt certainty we have of that little is nothing but a liſt of names without any thing obſervable in the ſtate and ſtory of the ſame, they may ſtill retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore try my Fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, or taking out Commiſſion for a new Diſcovery, will make a ſearch into this *Terra Auſtralis* for ſome other Regions, which muſt be found either here or no-where. The names of which are, 1. *Mundus alter & idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. New *Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. The *Painter's Wives Iſland*. 6. The Lands of *Chivalry*, and 7. *The New World in the Moon*.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ETIDEM*, Another world and yet the ſame, is a witty and ingenious Invention of a Learned Prelate, writ by him in his younger days, (but well enough becoming the auſterity of the graveſt Head) in which he diſtinguiſheth the Vices, Paſſions, Humours, and ill Affectious moſt commonly incident to mankind, into ſeveral Provinces; gives us the Character of each, as in the deſcription of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it: and ſets them forth to the Eye in ſuch lively Colours, that the Vicious man may ſee therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own Imperfections. The Scene of this Deſign is laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Auſtralis*, the *Decoram* happily preſerved in the whole Diſcovery; the ſtile acutely clear, in the invention ſingular. Of whom and his *New World* I ſhall give you that Eulogy which the Hiſtorian doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque poſt illum qui eum imitari poſſet, inventus eſt*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country firſt diſcovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellour of *England*, and by him made a Scene of a Common-wealth, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the Legiſlators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fanſied by *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Tully*, or any who have written the *Idea's* of a Form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have taken notice of already: *viz.* his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, by making of thoſe Metals, Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans, of Cloſe-ſtools, Chamber-pots and Veſſels of ſuch unclean uſe; by impoſing it as a penalty on infamous perſons, to wear Gold-rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as alſo his device to prevent miſtakes and diſlikes in Marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, ſome of them poſſible enough, but ſo unpracticable, ſo beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Common wealth, that we may reckon this device amongſt thoſe ſtrange Fancies, *que nuncquam antea ſpe concepta, nedum opere tentata erant*. The man indeed (conſidering the times he lived in) was of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place elſe.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Iſland of this Southern Continent diſcovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the Learned Viſcount of S. *Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas More's* Succeſſors in the place of Lord Chancellour, but far before him in the excellency and fecibility of his Invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Iſland of the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike inviſible. But for his falling into this Iſland, his deſcription of it, the City of *Benſalem*, and the manner of his reception there, ſuch handſome probabilities, and ſo fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the ſtate of the World it would ſeem a Reality. But above all things, the Inventions and Deſigns of *Solomon*'s Houſe; for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving Nature to the beſt advantages of Life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond compariſon. The man I muſt confeſs had his perſonal errors, (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded: *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtiſſimi*, as *Paterculus* once ſaid of *Piſo*, not one amongſt many thouſand (to purſue that Character) *qui aut otium validiùs diligat, aut faciliùs ſufficiat negotio*. A man of a moſt ſtrong Brain, and a Chymical Head, who, if he had been entertained with ſome liberal Salary, abſtracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature; and furniſhed with ſufficiency both of means and helps for the going on in his Deſign, would, I am confident, have given us ſuch a Body of Natural Philoſophy; and made it ſo ſubſervient to the publick good, that neither *Ariſtotle*, or *Theophraſtus* amongſt the Ancients, nor *Paracelſus*, or the reſt of our later Chymiſts would have been conſiderable.

4. *FAIRY-LAND* is another part of this *Terra Incognita*, the habitation of the Fairies, a pretty kind of little Fiends or pigmy Devils, but more inclined to ſport then miſchief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine Stories. A cleanlier and more innocent Cheat was never put upon poor ignorant People, by the Monks and Friers. Their habitation here or no where; though ſent occaſionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our Ports of the world. For not being reckoned amongſt the good Angels, nor having malice enough to make them Devils, (but ſuch a kind of midling Spirits as the Latines call *Lemures*, or *Larvæ*) we muſt find out ſome place for them, neither Heaven

not

nor Hell, and moſt likely this. Their Country never more ennobled then by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem called the *Fairy Queen.* Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greateſt perſons in her Court: but ſhadowed in ſuch lively colours, framed ſo exactly by the Rules of Poeſie, and preſenting ſuch *Idea*'s of all Moral goodneſs; that as there never was a Poem more artificial, ſo can no Ethical diſcourſe more faſhion and enflame the mind to the love of Virtue. *Inviſurum faciliùs aliquem quàm imitaturum*, ſhall be *Spencer*'s Motto; and ſo I leave him to his reſt.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLANDS*, is an Iſland of this Tract, mentioned by Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, in his *Hiſtory of the World.* Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, employed by his King in planting ſome Colonies on the Streights of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken Priſoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about ſome Iſland which the Maps preſented in thoſe Streights, and might have been of great uſe to him in his Undertaking. To which he merrily replyed, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Iſland*, ſaying, that whilſt the Painter drew that Map, his Wives ſitting by, *deſired him to put in one Country for her, that ſhe in her imagination might have an Iſland of her own.* His meaning was, that there was no ſuch Iſland as the Maps preſented. And I fear the Painter's Wife hath many Iſlands, and ſome Countries too upon the Continent in our common Maps, which are not really to be found on the ſtricteſt ſearch.

6. The *LANDS* of *CHIVALRY* are ſuch Iſlands, Provinces, and Kingdoms in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore muſt be ſought in this. A groſs abſurdity, but frequent in thoſe kind of Writers, who in deſcribing the Adventures of their Knights, in deſpight of Geography, (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries, which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the deſcription of many Iſlands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which as the ingenious Author of the Hiſtory of *Don Quixot* merrily obſerveth, are not to be found in all the Map. Of this ſort is the Iſle of *Adamants*, in Sir *Huon* of *Burdeaux*; the *Firm Land*, in the Hiſtory of *Amadis de Gaul*; the *Hidden Iſland*, and that of the Sage *Aliart*, in Sir *Palmerin* of *England*; the Iſlands of *Lindaraza*, and the *Deviliſh Fauno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra*, (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Anchiſiloria* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind, in the *Mirrour* of *knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleon*, and *Belianis* of *Greece*, *Pariſmus*, the *Romance of Romances*, and indeed whom not of all that Rabble, handſomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Iſland of Barataria*, of which the famous *Sanco Panco* was ſometime Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confeſs (for I have been a great Student in theſe Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good uſe to Children or young Boys in their Adoleſcency. For beſides that they divert the mind from worſe cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleaſure in them in the way of Reading, beget in him an habit of ſpeaking, and animate him many times to ſuch high conceptions, as really may make him fit for great Undertakings.

7. The *NEW WORLD IN THE MOON* was firſt of *Lucians* diſcovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conſcience, apoſtatizing from the Faith in which he was bred. *Ariſtophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcogia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the firſt who found out this *New World in the Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a conceited Character. But of late times, that World which he there fancyed, and propoſed but as a fancy only, is become a matter of a more ſerious Debate; and ſome have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the Moon, inhabited as this is by perſons of divers Languages, Cuſtoms, Polities and Religions? and more then ſo, ſome means and ways propoſed to Conſideration for maintaining an entercourſe and Commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other world is ſuppoſed to be? Certainly there are ſtronger hopes of finding a New world in this *Terra Auſtralis* then in the body of that Planet, and ſuch perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleaſure the later Diſcoveries of *America.*

But I am no diſcourager of Induſtry and Ingenuity, which I love and honour whereſoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been ſtarted upon leſs preſumptions. Nor would I be miſtook, as if in my purſuit of this *Terra Incognita* I put ſcorn on any of ſublimer thoughts, or that I would have any man ſo much in love with the preſent world, as not to look for another world in Heaven above. It is reported, that in ſome Controverſie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Moſcovy*, the King of *Poland* ſent the *Moſcovite* a curious Globe, repreſenting the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each ſeveral Sphere. To which the *Moſcovite* returned this unworthy anſwer, *Tu mihi* Cœlum *mittis, ut redde mihi Terras de quibus contendimus*; You ſend me Heaven, ſaith he, but that will not ſatisfie, unleſs you give me back thoſe Lands which are now in queſtion. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not loſe their part on earth for all Heaven it ſelf: whom I deſire, if any ſuch peruſe theſe Papers, to conſider, that as much as the moſt flouriſhing Country which is here deſcribed doth fall ſhort of that Paradiſe wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, ſo much, and infinitely more did that Earthly Paradiſe fall ſhort of the unſpeakable Glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful ſearch of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of God which are here preſented, and that viciſſitude of humane Affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to ſome ſerious thoughts of that mighty God who made all theſe Works, in whom is no ſhew nor *ſhadow of change* to whom be given all Glory both in this World, and that to come.

Quicquid enim Lunæ *gremio complectitur Orbis,*
Permutat variátque vices, trepidoque tumultu
Æſtuat, & nunquam ſentit pars una Quietem.
Nam ruit in ſeſe, & civili vulnere ſemper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alioque renaſcitur ore,
Rurſus ut intereat: ſic non eſt omnibus unum
Partibus Ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Aſtriferi, *& nitidi ſublimis Regio* Cœli
Immunis ſenii, & vultu immutabilis uno,
Perpetuum ſervant ſolida & ſincera tenorem.

The Verſes are G. *Buchanan*'s in his Book *De Sphæra*, which I thus Tranſlate, and therewithal conclude this Work.

The *World beneath the Moon* its ſhapes doth vary,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarry
Long in one ſtate, but with it ſelf doth jar,
Kills and is kill'd in endleſs Civil War.
Now form'd again, 'tis but to die; the frame
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the ſame.
But *that above the Spheres*, the Heavens on high,
In which GOD Reigns in glorious Majeſty,
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Always preſents it ſelf in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, ſed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

FINIS.

A *TABLE* of ſome Principal Things herein contained, not properly Reducible to the following *Index*.

A.

ABades, a ſtrange Beaſt, the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients, *lib.* 3. 807

Abaſenes, by whom converted, *l.* 4. 909 their Heterodoxies and Opinions, *ibid.*

Abilene, the Tetrarchy of *Lyſanias*, where it was, *l.* 3. 649, 664. why reckoned, *Luke* 3. amongſt the Portions of *Herod*'s Children, 649

Abydus, beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and in diſtreſs, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewiſe ſlew themſelves, *l.* 3. 610. betrayed ſince to the *Turks* by the Governors Daughter *ibid.*

Adamites, why ſo called, and what, *l.* 2. 395. by whom deſtroyed, *ibid.*

Adolphus II. Earl of *Berg*, ſhut up in an Iron Veſſel, and miſerably ſtung to death by Bees *l.* 2. 358

Adriatick-Sea, whence it had the name, *l.* 1. 101. the great extent thereof in ſome ancient Writers, *ib* married to the Duke of *Venice*, every *Holy Thurſday* *ibid.*

Advice of an old *Caſique* to *Columbus* *l.* 4. 1022

Æolus, why made the God of the Winds *l.* 1. 71.

Æs Corinthium, what it was, how highly prized, and how occaſioned *l.* 2. 526

Ætna, the violent burnings of it, *l.* 1. 68. and the cauſe thereof 69

Africa, whence it had the Name, *l.* 3. 842. the monſtrous things reported of it by ſome of the Ancients, *ibid.* the ſtate of Chriſtianity, how much decay'd, 843. the ſeveral Languages therein ſpoken, 844

Abgarus, Prince of *Edeſſa*, his Meſſage to our Saviour *l.* 3. 711

Albigenſes, what they were, and why ſo called, *l.* 1. 184. the ſum and ſubſtance of their Story *ibid.*

Alcoran, the Book of the *Mahometan* Law, why ſo called, *l.* 3. 701. how highly reverenced, *ibid.* the Doctrinals thereof, *&c.* reduced unto eight Commandments *ibid.*

Alfonſine Tables, by whom compiled, and the coſt beſtowed in the compiling of them *l.* 1. 221

Alluſion, of a *French* Gentleman, concerning the cauſe of their civil Broils *l.* 1. 147

Almans, from whence ſo called, *lib.* 2. 345; of what ſeveral Nations they conſiſted, 375. their Affairs and Story *ibid.*

Almodad, the Son of *Jocktan*, where moſt probably fixed 9

Aloes, a precious Wood, worth its weight in Silver, *l.* 3. 820. *Aloes Zocatrina*, from what place it comes *l.* 4. 929

Amara, a Mountain in *Æthiopia*, deſcribed *l.* 4. 912

Amazons, why ſo called, *l.* 3. 601 their dwelling-place, *ib.* the ſum and ſubſtance of their Affairs, *ibid.*

Amber, where it groweth, how gathered, and the Virtues of it, *l.* 2. 473

Amber liquid *l.* 4. 1081

America, not known to the Ancients, *l.* 4. 943. by whom firſt diſcovered, 944, 945, the People of it not ſo black as the *Africans*, 947. that they are deſcended of the *Tartars*, *ibid.* the eſtate of Chriſtianity in it, *ib.* the ingenuity of the People in their Feather Pictures 948

Amethyſt, a precious Stone, and the virtues of it *l.* 3. 603

Amianthus, a Stone whereof Cloth is made, *l.* 2. 552. which ſtained, is cleanſed by fire *ibid.*

Amphictyones, what they were, and of their Authority, *l.* 2. 532

Amphiſcii, why ſo called, and what they are in Geography 18

Amyclas ſilentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came, *l.* 1. 63

Amyris inſanit, an old Proverb, the meaning and occaſion of it *ibid.*

Anabaptiſt cuts off his Brother's Head, *l.* 1. 136, their furies and proceeding in the City of *Munſter*, *l.* 2. 420 their demands in the Inſurrection of the Boors 481

Anakim, the Name of a *Gigantine* race of Men, and why given unto them *l.* 3. 673

Ananim, the Father of the *Hamanientes*, an *African* People 10

'Αντλαειάζειν, an old By-word, and the meaning of it *l.* 2. 554

Anchorets, whence ſo called, *l.* 1. 96 buried whilſt alive *ib.*

Annals, what they are, and how they differ from Hiſtories 16

Anſwer, a feeling one of an *Engliſh* Captain to a ſcoffing demand of the *French*, *l.* 1. 147, a ſmart one of *Spinola* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, 56 of *Richard* I. to the Pope, writing for the Releaſment of the Biſhop of *Beauvois* 150, of Dr. *Dale* to the *Spaniſh* Commiſſioners *l.* 3. 690

Anticyram naviget, a Proverb, and to whom applicable *l.* 2. 531

Antipodes, what they are 18, the tenet touching them decided by ſome of the Ancients, *ib.* condemned of Hereſie in the darker times of the Church *ib.*

Antioch, the ſame with *Riblath*, *l.* 3. 643, its Story 645

Antœci, what they are in Geography 18

Antoninus's Army in diſtreſs, relieved by the prayers of Chriſtians, *l.* 2. 398

Apennage, what *l.* 1. 145

Archery, where moſt practiſed in elder times, *l.* 3. 746, the excellency of the *Engliſh* at it, *ib.* whether Guns or that to be preferr'd, *ib.* *Cezeremiſſi* good Archers *l.* 2. 460

Aram, the Son of *Sem*, the founder of the *Syrians*, 7. *l.* 3. 635, the large extent of that Name in Holy Scripture *ibid.*

Areopagites, what they were, and from whence ſo called, *l.* 2. 529

Argonauts, who they were, and whence ſo denominated, *l.* 3. 721 their Expedition into *Colchis*, *ibid.*

Argoſies, great Ships of burthen, whence they had their Name, *l.* 2. 493.

Ariamnes, a *Galatian*, feaſted the whole Nation for a Year together *l.* 3. 603.

Ariſtomenes, his ſtrange eſcape out of Priſon *l.* 2. 521

Ariſtotle, the precurſor of Chriſt, *in rebus naturalibus* 2, why he conceived the World to have been eternal *ibid.*

Arius the Heretick, his diſſimulation and death *l.* 4. 858

Ark of *Noah*, where made, *l.* 3. 709 in what place it reſted after the Flood 5, 6

Armadilla, a ſtrange Beaſt in *America*, the deſcription of it *l.* 4. 948

Armenians, in what points they differ from other Chriſtians, *l.* 3. 718 how and by whom their Church is governed *ibid.*

Arms, why firſt uſed *l.* 1. 50, by whom firſt quartered 210, why thoſe of *England* give place in the ſame *Eſcocheon* to the Arms of *France* 260

Arphaxad, the Father of the *Chaldeans* 7. firſt ſettled in the Region called *Arapactitis* *l.* 3. 709

Arroba, a *Spaniſh* Meaſure, the content thereof *l.* 4. 1072

Arviſian Wines much celebrated *l.* 3. 625, in what place they grow *ib.*

Arundel, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperor *Rodulphus*, and afterwards Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour* by King *James* *l.* 2. 483

Aſia, whence ſo called at firſt, *l.* 3. 595 the ſeveral notions of the word, and in what ſenſe uſed in holy Scripture 597, the ſtate of Chriſtianity in it 596, among whom divided *ibid.*

Aſkenaz the Son of *Gomer*, firſt ſetled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia minor*, 11. *l.* 3. 598, 609

Aſpendus Cithariſta, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 620

Aſſur, the Son of *Sem*, where planted 9. *l.* 3. 708. the *Aſſyrians* deſcended of him *ib.* why ſo eaſily conquered by all Invaders 715

Athens *l.*2. 527

Attala the *Hun*, why called *Flagellum Dei* *l.* 1. 177. his bloody end *ib.* his Coat of Arms *l.* 2. 488

Augur, and *Aruſpex*, how they differ, and whence they had their Names *l.* 3. 714

Auguſtine Confeſſion, why ſo called *l.* 2. 374. by whom, and where confirmed 377

St. *Auguſtine*'s tart reply to an Atheiſtical demand 1. the Order of *Fryers* by him founded, *l.* 1. 94.

Auguſtus, or an Eſſay of the Means and Counſels by which he reduc'd the Common-wealth of *Rome* to the ſtate of Monarchy *l.* 1. 35.

Avi ſiniſtra, what it meaneth, and the reaſon of it *l.* 3. 714

Aulæa, Tapeſtries, why ſo called, and by whom invented *l.* 3. 611

Auſtraſia, what Provinces it contained, when firſt made a Kingdom *l.*2. 370. the Story and Kings thereof *ibid.*

Auſtralis Incognita, the vaſt greatneſs of it *l.* 4. 1129. why not yet diſcovered *ibid.*

B

B*Abel*, the attempt only of ſome bold Adventurers, and not of all the Sons of *Noah* 13. the Languages occaſioned there not 72 in number, as by ſome ſuppoſed 6. the ſtupendious greatneſs of the Project *l.* 3. 706

Babylon *ibid.*

Bacchus, called *Mæonius*, why *l.* 3. 614

Baleares, why ſo called *l.* 1. 231

Baltick-Sea, why ſo called *l.* 2. 433 why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas *ibid*

Baths, not permitted by the Emperor *Adrian* to be uſed promiſcuouſly by both Sexes *l.* 1. 136. the inconvenience ariſing from that intermixture *ibid.*

Battle at Mutina, and the ſucceſs thereof *l.* 1. 122. between the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves *l.*2.458,461 of *Kereſture* 484. of *Lapento* 561. the laſt betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* King of *Perſia* *l.* 3. 709

Bdellium, mentioned *Gen.* 2. 12. what conceived to be *l.* 3. 738

Beaufort, why made the ſurname of the Children of *John* of *Gaunt* *l.* 1. 162

Bel and *Baal*, whence the Names derived *l.* 3. 713. why called *Belzebub* the Lord of Flies 671

Bellerophontis Literæ, a by-word, the occaſion of it *l.* 3. 617

Belgæ, the valianteſt of the *Gauls* in the time of *Cæſar*, and for what reaſons *l.* 2. 315, 316

Benedictines, or *Black Monks*, by whom inſtituted *l.* 1. 95. their habit and increaſe *ibid.*

Berrie, abundantly ſtored with Sheep *l.* 1. 168. *Charles* the 7th in deriſion called King of *Berrie* *ibid.*

Bezoar, the ſovereign nature of it *l.* 4. 948. found in the Belly of a Beaſt called the *Vicugue ibid.* that of *China* and the Eaſt more excellent than that of *America* *l.* 3. 783

Biſhop of Spalato, his Levity, Apoſtacy, and Death *l.* 2. 492

Biſhops coæval with Chriſtianity *l.* 1. 30, 140, 144, 244. *l.* 2. 432, 516. *l.* 3. 657. how, and why hated by the *Biſcaines* *l.* 1. 208. and the ill conſequences thereof *ibid.*

Black-Fryers, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded, and why ſo called *l.* 1. 95

Blind and *Lame*, mentioned 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. what moſt probably they were *l.* 3. 675

Bos in Lingua, a Proverb, the meaning and original of it *l.* 2. 527

Botelius his ſtrange adventure *l.* 3. 807

Brackmanes, what they were amongſt the *Indians* *l.* 3. 797. their authority and courſe of life *ib.* ſucceeded in the firſt by the modern *Bramines* *ibid.*

Brachygraphy, or the art of ſhort writing, by whom firſt invented *l.* 4. 847

Britain, from whence, the Name probably derived *l.* 1. 236. not from *Brutus*, *ibid.* that there was no ſuch Man, proved, *ib.* Southern Parts thereof called *England* 239. its Plenty and Ornaments briefly ſet forth *ibid.* plenty of Mines therein 241. and number of Parks *ibid.* its Seas ſtored with Fiſh, *ib.* quantity of Fleſh ſpent in one City thereof 242. Chriſtian Faith planted therein by whom 244. firſt peopled out of *Gaul* 249

Bucentaure *l.* 1. 120

Burgundians, why ſo called *l.* 1. 181 when firſt converted to the Faith, *ib.* their Affairs and Story *ib.*

Biſcainers, ſome of their Cuſtoms *l.* 1. 207

C

C*Æſar*, the Name at firſt of the *Roman* Emperors *l.* 1. 48. after of the deſigned Succeſſor, *ibid.* the unfortunate end of moſt of them, 49

Cæſar Borgia, Son of Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, after divers changes of Fortune, where ſlain *l.* 1. 204

Calais taken by the *Engliſh*, and retaken by the *French* *l.* 1. 154, 155

Cales, taken by the Earl of *Eſſex* *l.* 1. 213

Caliph, the Name of the Succeſſors of *Mahomet*, and the Succeſſion of them *l.* 3. 703

Caloires, what, and where ſeated, their number and manner of life *l.* 2. 542

Cambyſes his Preſent to the King of *Æthiopia*, with the King's Anſwer return'd *l.* 4. 917

Campi Catalaunici, where *l.* 1. 177

Canes ſepulchrales, what *l.* 3. 741

Capuam eſſe Cannas Annibali, a by-word, and the occaſion of it *l.* 1. 58.

Capuchin Friers, by whom firſt inſtituted, and why ſo called *l.* 1. 95

Cappadocians, generally ſo lewd, that they grew a by-word *l.* 3. 604. not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous *ibid.*

Caracalla the Emperor, ſlain by *Macrinus*, where, and upon what occaſion *l.* 3. 711

Capthorim, to be found in *Coptus*, a Town of *Egypt* 11. carried againſt all reaſon into *Cappadocia* *l.* 3. 605

Cardinals, by whom firſt ordain'd, *l.* 1. 88. the Election of the Popes aſſign'd to them only, and by whoſe authority 120

Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* *l.* 3. 639. miſtook by the *Gentiles* for a God *ibid.* the Fryers Carmelites thence named *ib.* & *l.* 1. 94

Carthuſian Monks, by whom inſtituted *l.* 1. 95. their ſtrict kind of Life *ibid.*

Caſlubim, more likely to be found in *Caſſiotis* than *Calchis* 11

Centaurs, the Fable of them, whence it took beginning *l.* 2. 539

Chaldæans, great Aſtrologers *l.* 3. 705 the Name communicated unto all who profeſſed that Art, *ibid.* ſo called from *Cheled*, the Son of *Nachor* 753

Charles the 8th of *Navarr*, his ſtrange death *l.* 1. 205

Chaos, or firſt Matter of the World, expreſſed by *Moſes* in the names of Heaven and Earth 3. how deſcribed by *Ovid* *ibid.*

Chatſermaveth, the Father of the *Chadromatites* an *Indian* People 9

Cherſoneſes, what they are, why ſo called, and how many of them *l.* 2. 428

Chimæra the Monſter, what it was, and how tamed by *Bellerophon*, *l.* 3. 617

Chorography, what it is, and how differeth from *Geography* 22

Chriſtians, where firſt ſo called, and with what ſolemnity *l.* 3. 636. extreamly hated by the *Gentiles*, *ibid.* their perſecutions and increaſe *ib.*

Chriſtmas Sports in *Twelf-tide*, by whom firſt inſtituted *l.* 1. 251

Chronologies, how they differ from Hiſtory 16. by whom beſt performed *ib.*

Chus, the Son of *Cham*, firſt planted in *Arabia* 9. *l.* 3. 695. his Poſterity the *Chuſites*) why called *Æthiopians* ibid. miſtaken for the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* *ib.*

Chuſites, why render'd *Æthiopians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles, *l.* 3. 695. the Tranſlation juſtified, and the miſtake laid on the Expoſitors, *ibid.* the Actions aſcribed unto them, not poſſible to be underſtood of the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* 696

Cimmerians, the Poſterity of *Gomer* 11. *l.* 1. 148. firſt ſettled in *Albania* and *Phrygia Major* ibid. and l.3.609.

gave Name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius* *l.* 2. 351. in *Europe* better known by the Name of *Cimbri*, the ſame with the *Cimmerians* *l.* 1. 180. the the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* named from them *l.* 2. 428. their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire, and overthrow by *Marius* *l.* 1. 178

Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea and Land Forces of the *Perſians* *l.* 3. 620

Cinnamon, what it is, where and how it groweth, and from whence ſo called *l.* 4. 909

Ciphers, or private Characters for Writing, by whom firſt invented, *l.* 4. 847

Circaſſians, where they dwell, their Opinions and Practice *l.* 3. 766

Ciſterſians, or *White Monks*, whence ſo called *l.* 1. 95. by whom ordained *ibid.*

Cities, by whom firſt built, and on what deſign 4. the cauſes of the greatneſs and magnificence of them *ibid.*

Citim, the Son of *Japhet*, firſt ſetled in the Iſle of *Cyprus* 12. *l.* 3. 632 his Poſterity ſpreading into *Macedonia* *l.* 2. 539, 542. from thence into *Ætolia*, and ſo into *Italy*, *l.* 1. 30

Climes, what they be, how many, and how diſtinguiſhed 18

Cloves, where they grow moſt plentifully, and the nature of them *l.* 3. 829

Coa, and *Veſtis Coa*, a light Garment much uſed by the Dames of *Rome* *l.* 3. 628. the *Coan* Wine (*Vinum Cos*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City 627

Coconuts, a moſt excellent Fruit, and of ſeveral uſes *l.* 4. 930

Cochinele, a precious Dye, how, and where it groweth, *l.* 4. 1072

Codrus, his love to his Country *l.* 2. 529

Colonies, why planted by the *Romans*, *l.* 1. 176. the number of them, and how diſtributed, *ib.* whether more uſeful than a Fortreſs *ibid.*

Colophonem addere, a Proverb, and from whence it came *l.* 3. 613

Coloſſus of *Rhodes* 629

Commentaries, what they properly are, and how they differ from Hiſtory 16

Conſtantine converted to the Faith, and on what occaſion *l.* 1. 49. his new modelling of the Empire 50. of which one of the chief ſubverters, *ib.* He cauſed the Pretorian Guards 49. his Donation forged 90

Conſtance, the Council there holden, *l.* 2. 373

Conſuls, when firſt ordained in *Rome*, *l.* 1. 32. who the firſt ſole Conſul, *ib.* when the Office ended 33

Cophti, the name of the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, whence to be derived *l.* 4. 848. their Tenets in matters of Religion, and Eſtate at the preſent, 849

Corybantes, the Prieſts of *Cybele* *l.* 2. 556

Coſmography defined 22. the general Latitude of the Notion *ibid.*

Cotys, his rare temper in maſtering and preventing paſſion *l.* 2. 545

Cotton Wooll, where it groweth, and how *l.* 3. 643. *l.* 4. 898. & *Paſſim alibi*

Council of *Trent* *l.* 2. 383

Creation of the World, and the Motives of it 1. how long ſince done, 2. the concurrence of each Perſon to it 3. the matter of it, and the method *ibid.*

Crete, things moſt obſervable there, *l.* 2. 557.

Cretenſe mendacium 556

Cretenſis neſcit Pelagus, a Proverb, the occaſion of it 557

Crocodiles, their monſtrous ſhape, and where moſt uſual *l.* 4. 850

Curetes, what they were, and from whence ſo called *l.* 2. 534

Cuſpinian's happy gueſs at the Arms of *Germany* 426

Cyprian Women, their Unchaſtity *l.* 3. 630. the Heroick Act of a *Cyprian* Lady 634

Cyzicum, beſieged in vain by *Mithridates*, *l.* 3. 610. its glorious Temple *ibid.*

D

DAys obſerved as lucky or unlucky unto divers Men *l.* 1. 82

Damaſcus, how ſituated, *l.* 3. 649

Damaſcen Plums, Damask Roſes, *ib.* and Damask Linnen, thence ſo called 650

Damiata beſieged and taken by the Chriſtians *l.* 4. 854

Darius his fruitleſs Wars againſt the *Scythians* *l.* 3. 764

David George, a monſtrous Heretick, and what his Tenets *l.* 2. 334

Dedan the Son of *Regma*, planted on the Shores of the *Perſian* Gulf 13

Delinquents, how to be proceeded with, *l.* 1. 60. gained more by favour than by rigour *ibid.*

Deſpot, the Title of Heir apparent in the Eaſtern Empire, *l.* 2. 505. communicated to inferiour Princes, *ib.* the Deſpots of *Raſcia*, of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria* *ib.*

Diaries, what they are, and how they differ from Hiſtory 16

Dictators, what they were in ſtate at *Rome*, *l.* 1. 34 a Catalogue of them, *ibid.*

Divination by Birds, and the kinds thereof *l.* 3. 714

Diocleſian depoſes himſelf, and follows the Trade of a Gardner *l.* 2. 492

Dodanim the Son of *Javan*, firſt ſetled in *Rhodes* 12. his Poſterity paſſing into *Epirus*, *l.* 3. 629. and there naming the *Dodanian* Grove, *l.* 2. 536

Dog-fiſh, how taken 336

Doſitheans, a *Samaritan* Sect, and their Superſtitions *l.* 3. 668

Drake, Sir Francis, how ſaid to be the firſt that ſailed about the World, and by whom followed *l.* 4. 1102

Drahimira, her cruelty, ſwallowed alive *l.* 2. 395

Druides, what they were, and from whence ſo called; their chief Seat in *France* and *Britain* *l.* 1. 284

Druſians, what they are, *l.* 3. 633. of their Power and Strength 643

E

E*Cco la Fico*, a Scoff uſed amongſt the *Italians* *l.* 1. 119

Edgar rowed over *Dee* by eight Kings *l.* 1. 262

Edward III. his claim unto the Crown of *France*, miſtaken in our common Chronicles, *l.* 1. 146. not prejudiced at all by the *Salique* Law, 147

Egypt peopled in probability before the Flood, ſome of the Dynaſties of their Kings to have been before it l. 4. 860

Elam, the Son of *Sem*, where planted 7. l. 3. 736

Election of Popes l. 1. 93. of the Dukes of *Venice* 105. of the *German* Emperors l. 2. 425. of the great Maſter of *Malta*, l. 4. 898 means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia* l. 2. 394

Electors of *Germany*, how many l. 2. 425. by whom ordained, *ibid.* their Officers, and how performed *ibid.*

Elephants, their vaſt greatneſs and docile nature l. 3. 796

Eliſha the Son of *Javan*, ſetled in *Elis* of *Peloponeſus*, 12. and after in the Iſles of *Greece* l. 2. 520. thence called the Iſles of *Eliſha*, *Ezek.* 27. 7. 15.

Emir of *Sidon*, what he is, l. 3. 641 his power and ſtrength 643

Endymionis ſomnum dormit, a Proverb, the occaſion of it l. 3. 616

Enemies to be licenſed flight l. 1. 169 how to be dealt withal when they are in our power 60

Enterviews betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient l. 1. 114

Epaminondas ſlain at *Mantinea*, l. 2. 521

Eſcurial l. 1. 220

Eſſeni, why ſo called, their Opinions and *Dogmata* l. 3 656

Etymologies, ridiculous of *Europe*, l. 1. 26 of the *Hugonots* 162. of the *Wallons* l. 2. 316. of the *Lombards* 485

Epheſus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* l. 3. 613

Epoche, what it is in account of time 16. the ſeveral *Epoches* in Story, *ibid.*

Eunuchi, why moſt employed by the Eaſtern Monarchs l. 3. 760

Europe, whence ſo called, l. 1. 26. the Original Languages ſtill in it 27

Exarch, what he was, and by whom ordained, l. 1. 77. his proper Territory *ibid.* the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them *ibid.*

F

F*Ides Attica*, a Proverb, the Original of it l. 2. 528

Fieds,

Fieds, a barbarous cuſtom among the *Scots*, l. 1. 268. abrogated by King *James* *ibid.*

Fig-Tree, why curſed by our Saviour l. 3. 658

Fire, worſhipped by the *Lituani*, l. 2. 470. and by the *Perſians*, l 3. 737 carried in ſtate before the *Romans*, *ibid.*

Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myas* l. 3. 612

Flight to be permitted an Enemy, and debarr'd a Soldier l. 1. 169

Formalities, of the Homage done by *Edward* III. to the *French* King, l. 1. 175. at the Degradation of Prieſts, l. 2. 373. at the Inveſtiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia*, 383. of *Maurice* Duke of *Saxony*, 413. of *Albert* Duke of *Pruſſia*, 475. of the Duke of *Muſcovy*, 564. at the admitting the new Duke of *Wurtzburg*, and interring the old 388. at the Marriages of the *Neſtorians*, l. 3. 709. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham*, 780. at the preſenting of Ambaſſadors to the *Grand Seignior*, 731 at the Funerals in *China* 784

Foreign Guards dangerous to a Princes Perſon, l. 4. 865. as foreign Aids unto a Kingdom, *ib.* on what occaſions uſually ſought, and when moſt neceſſary *ib.*

Fornication and Adultery puniſhed with Death l. 2. 481

Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they conſiſted, l. 1. 189. Their Actions and Atchievements, *ibid.* by whom converted to the Faith, and on what occaſion, 144. their Character, 143. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards*, 147 the vaſtneſs of their Empire, and the reaſons of the decay thereof, 189. The name of *Franks* given by the *Turks* to all Weſtern Chriſtians l. 3. 641

Frankincenſe, where it groweth, l. 3. 696. offered to the Gods, *ibid.* Frankincenſe growing out of the Earth l. 2. 398.

Franciſcans or *Grey Friers*, why ſo called, and by whom founded, by the *French* called Cordeliers l. 1. 95

Free Cities, what they are, how many, and in what Eſtates l. 2. 350

Friers, and their ſeveral Orders, l. 1. 94. and in what eſteem amongſt the People 96

Fruitfulneſs of *Rheſan*, l. 2. 459. and *Podolia* 471

G

Gabates, a Leprous kind of People, in what parts they dwell, l. 1. 174

Galileans, of what ſtock they were l. 3. 665. ſcorned by the *Jews*, 667 their zeal unto Religion, 668 our Saviour called a *Galilean* *ibid.*

Gallican Church, the power and privileges of it l. 1. 145

Gaulonites, what they were, for what cauſe named *Gualileans* l. 3. 657

Gentlemen of *Venice*, what they are, and in what eſteem l. 1. 105

Geography defin'd, 16. the benefit thereof 22

St. *George* the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr, l. 3. 604. his *Cenotbaphium* at *Lydda* in the *Holy Land*, 669 highly eſteemed among the *Turks*, 647. his Bank in *Genoa*, l. 1. 116 made Patron of the moſt Noble Order of the Garter 260

Germans, whence ſo named, l. 2. 345 how terrible at firſt to the *Romans*, 351. their original extraction, *ib.* poſſeſſed of the Weſtern Empire, the power of the Emperors impaired, and by what means now meerly titular 355

Geter, the Son of *Aram*, planted in *Albania* 8. l. 3. 725

Gipſies, from whence they have both their Names and Feats, l. 4. 848

Gomer, the Son of *Japhet*, firſt ſetled in *Albania*, alſo of his Poſterity, ſee *Cimmerians* 11. l. 2. 351

Gothes, their Original and firſt Seat, l. 2. 445. their Kings before they left the Eaſt, 447. their Succeſſes and Affairs in *Italy*, l. 1. 51. in *France*, 177. in *Spain* 202

Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome*, by which maliciouſly and unjuſtly perſecuted, *ibid.* their Language not of ſuch extent as in former times *l.* 2. 517

Guelfs and *Gibellines*, whence ſo called, and when, the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence, l. 1. 108. l. 2. 394

Guelphian Family, their Original, l. 2. 416

Guicciardine yielded by the Inquiſition, and the ſubſtance of him in that place l. 1. 90

Guns, where invented, and by whom, l. 2. 347. not uſed in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* l. 3. 784

Gyges, how he came to be King of *Lydia*, l. 3. 615. whence ſaid to have a Ring, by which made inviſible *ibid.*

H

H A Letter ominous to the State of *England* l. 2. 567

Hameth, or the Land of *Hamath*, l. 3. 643

Hanſe-Towns, why ſo called, how many, and of what power at Sea, l. 2. 350

Harpies, the Fable and the Moral, l. 2. 560

Hatto, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, devoured of Rats and Mice, l. 2. 363. So alſo *Popielus* Duke of *Poland*, 446

Havilah, the Son of *Chus*, firſt planted about *Babylonia*, 10. called thence the Land of *Havilah* in the ſecond of *Geneſis* l. 3. 738

Havilah, the Son of *Jocktan*, firſt ſeated in *India* 9. the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Chavilah*, ſo called from him l. 3. 819

Hebrew, not the primitive Language 14. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ibid.*

Hegira, the *Mahometan* Epoche 16. from whence ſo called l. 3. 702. the unſtedfaſtneſs of *Scaliger* about it *ibid.*

Helleniſts, what they were, and why ſo called l. 2. 516. l. 3. 655. in what differing from the other *Jews* *ibid.*

Hercynian Foreſt, the beginning and extent thereof l. 2. 351

Herodians, what they were, and from whence denominated l. 3. 657

Heteroſcii, what they are in *Geography*, and from whence ſo called 18

Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom firſt uſed l. 4. 847. ſome particulars of them *ibid.*

S. *Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born l. 2. 481. the Order of Monks by him inſtituted l. 1. 94.

Hiſtory defined 16. the neceſſary uſe of it, and to whom, how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. *ibid.*

Hock-tide Sports, the Original of them, and from whence ſo named l. 1. 257

Hollanders, their great Strength at Sea, l. 2. 333. the great benefit they make by fiſhing on the Coaſt of *England* l. 1. 241. l. 2. 317. their baſe cheat upon the *Engliſh* at *Polerone* l. 3. 829. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 830

Holy Oyl of *Rhemes*, in what ſtate attended, not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend l. 1. 153

Homer's Birth, how contended for l. 3. 613. where born, and why call'd *Mæonides* *ibid.*

Huanacu, a ſtrange Beaſt, and the nature of it l. 4. 1091

Hugonotos, whence ſo called, l. 1. 162 their great Power once, and preſent condition 144, 145

Hul, or *Chul*, the Son of *Aram*, in what parts firſt ſetled 7. l. 3. 720, 722

Hydrography what it is, and by whom beſt written 22

I

Jacobites, what they are, and where moſt numerous, *l.* 3. 711. their Opinions *ibid.*

Janizaries, their inſtitution and number, their Office and Power, their Inſolencies and Puniſhments, l. 3. 729, 730. the likelieſt Men to carry the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the Line of *Ottoman* ſhould fail 732

Japhet, how made partaker of the bleſſing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the literal ſence, and the myſtical l. 1. 26

Japyx, the name of the North-weſt wind, and why given unto it l. 1. 62

Jarech, the Son of *Jocktan*, more probably to be found in *Arachoſia*, than *Inſula Hieracum* 8, 9

Javan, the Son of *Japhet*, the Father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 12

Jealouſie, a predominant Paſſion amongſt the *Italians*, l. 1. 55. as alſo amongſt the *Moors* and *Spaniards*, 197. the *Engliſh* little ſubject to it, 240

Jeſuits, by whom firſt inſtituted l. 1. 95. their vow of *Miſſion ib.* grown formidable to the Pope 96. induſtrious in planting Chriſtianity in the barbarous Nations *l.* 3. 785. Chief Factors for the King of *Spain* l. 1. 200. They and the *Presbyterian* or *Puritan* Preachers the greateſt Incendiaries of Chriſtendom 96. expelled *Georgia*, on what occaſion l. 3. 723

Jetur, the Son of *Iſmael*, the Father of the *Itureans* l. 3. 662

Jews not ſuffered to land in *Cyprus* l. 3. 630. expulſed out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 687. in danger to be ſtoned every *Maunday-Thurſday* 688. The hopes and hinderance of their Converſion *ib.* the reſtitution of their Kingdom not denied by Chriſt *ibid.*

Iſlands, how cauſed, whether better ſeated than the Continent 17

Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where ſetled, l. 2. 365.

Imperial Cities 350

Indians, or *Chriſtians* of S. *Thomas*, what they hold in matters of Religion l. 3. 797. The ſubmiſſion of their Churches to the Pope *ibid.*

Indico, where and how it groweth l. 3. 805

Influence of the Heavenly Bodies on particular Countries 14

Inquiſition, when, and why ordained, the manner of proceeding in it, not admitted into many of the Papal Countries l. 1. 199

Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all Parties l. 2. 374.

Invention of Clocks and Watches l. 2. 316. of Pictures in Glaſs, and laying Colours in Oyl *ibid.* of Printing 334. of Guns 347. of Wild-Fire 564. of Battel-ax l. 3. 601. of Dice and Cheſs 613. of Tragedies 625. of Sail for Ships 626. of Arithmetick and Aſtrology 639. of Purple Dye 640. of Cryſtal Glaſs *ibid.* of Paſtorals, Hour-glaſſes, *&c.* l. 1. 68. of Comedies 69. of Mariners Compaſs 59. l. 4. 946. of Tackle for Ships, *ibid.* of Letters and Cyphers l. 4. 847. of Paper 851

Ireland, why never conquered till the reign of King *James* l. 1. 281.

Iriſh, their barbarous Cuſtoms 276.

Iſthmian Games l. 2. 526.

Iſrael and *Judah*, when divided, the reaſons why no more United, tho' ſome opportunities were offered l. 3. 681

Italians, derived from *Citim*, the Son of *Japhet*, ſo called from the *Ætolians*, by whom converted to the Faith l. 1. 36. their ſcandalous Lives, how puniſhed, and by what Inſtruments 52

Italy, the name at firſt of the Eaſt parts of the Country, only communicated after to the whole l. 1. 34. the Kings thereof, after the ruine of the Empire 54. abandoned by the Emperors, and for what reaſons 55

Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *Engliſh*, not miraculouſly ſent as the *French* pretend, what ſhe was indeed l. 2. 370.

Jocktan and his Poſterity ſetled originally in the Eaſt 10. l. 3. 798. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Fœlix* 8. greater of their tranſplanting into *America* l. 3. 798.

Julius Scaliger, his cenſure of *Heſiodus* controuled by *Velleius* l. 2. 531. his baſe Character of the *Engliſh* l. 1. 242

Joſeph Scaliger, his ſingularity about *Nabonidus*, and *Darius Medus* l. 3. 715. His unſtedfaſtneſs about the *Hegira* 702.

Julian the Apoſtate, where he died l. 3. 708

Judges of Hell, what, and who they were l. 2 553, 556. and why ſo accounted of *ibid.*

K

ΤΡία Καππὰ κάκιϛα, a Proverb, and of whom intended l. 2. 556

Καππαδὸκες & Καππαδόκιον τέρας proverbially uſed for a wicked Perſon l. 3. 604

Kings called an Ordinance of Man, and why, 4. who of them anciently anointed l. 1. 205. how they take precedency 260. not to uſe their People to the Wars l. 2. 342. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen*, 360, 361. Kings but for twelve Years, and then muſt ſacrifice themſelves l. 3. 811. Kings ſubject to Prieſts, where l 4. 911.

Kings-Evil, a Diſeaſe l. 1. 125. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* l. 1. 258.

Knighthood, vid. Orders.

L

L*Abyrinth* of *Egypt*, imitated by *Minos* in that of *Crete* l. 2. 557.

Lachrymæ Chriſti l. 1. 113. the Expreſſion of a *Dutch-man* thereon *ibid.*

Lady of *Loretto* her Legend l. 3. 667. the ſumptuoſity of her Temple l. 1. 80.

Lamiſſus thrown an Infant into the Fiſh pond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in the Court, and after choſen King of *Longobards* l. 2. 485.

Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence ſo called l. 1. 28. The *Latin* Tongue not the Language of *Italy* 29. The reaſons of the ſpreading and extent thereof *ibid.*

Lampſacus, how ſaved by *Anaximenes* when threatned by *Alexander* l. 3. 610, 611.

Laws of *Oleron* l. 1. 188

League between *France* and *Scotland* l. 1. 271. the condition thereof *ibid.*

Lehabim, the Father of the *Lybi Ægyptii* 10. l. 4. 932.

Lemmers, an infectious Beaſt, l. 2. 437.

Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the ſovereign Vertues of it l. 2. 551. how made and ordered *ibid.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ibid.*

Letters, the firſt Original and Hiſtory of them l. 4 847.

Levites, why ſcattered and divided among the Tribes l. 3. 677. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*

Libanon, a famous Mountain, why ſo named l. 3. 638. the length, courſe, and branches of it *ibid.*

Libertas Prophetandi, what, and where moſt in uſe l. 2. 466.

Liburni, the name of a light Veſſel l. 2. 495. and of ſuch Chairs as we call *Sedans*, *ibid.* and from whence ſo named *ibid.*

Lyons, its famous Mart l. 1. 183, 184. in it a Temple dedicated to *Auguſtus ibid.* before whoſe Altar Exerciſes inſtituted of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence *ibid.*

Lomi, a ſtrange Beaſt in *Bohemia*, l. 2. 394

Lombards, their Original and firſt Kings l. 2. 485. their Affairs in *Italy* l. 1. 52. the ſubverſion of their Kingdom there 53.

Lud, the Son of *Sem*, the Father of the *Lydians* in *Aſia minor* 9. l. 3. 613.

Ludim, the Son of *Mizraim*, the Father of the *Ethiopians* in *Africk* 10. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. *ibid.*

Luther, his Birth l. 2. 410. his firſt contention with the Pope 348. the ſucceſs and ſpreading of his Doctrine *ibid.* and by what means eſpecially 349. the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches 350. the condition of their Miniſters *ibid.* the Rites and Ceremonies not much different from thoſe in the Churches of *England* *ibid.*

Lyſanias, the Tetrarch of *Abylene*, whoſe Son he was l. 3. 649. why reckoned, *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ibid.*

M

M*Ackbeth*, his Story l. 1. [illegible]72.

Madai, the third Son of *Japhet*, the Father of the *Medes* 12. l. 3. 734

Magi, what they were in *Perſia*, their eſteem and power l. 3. 737.

Magnes, why uſed to ſignifie the Load-ſtone by the *Latin* Writers l. 4. 947.
Magog, the Son of *Japhet*, ſetled in *Syria propria*, and the borders of *Iberia* 12. l. 3. 644.
Mahomet, his Birth and Breeding, l. 3. 701. his deſign to coin a new Religion *ibid.* the cauſes of the great growth and increaſe thereof 702. his Succeſs and Victories *ibid.*
Maires of the Palace, their inſtitution and authority l. 1. 190. the Catalogue and Succeſſion of them *ibid.*
Malefactors flying to *Geneva*, how puniſhed l. 1. 132.
Man, why created unarmed and naked, the Image of God in him, what it doth conſiſt in 3
Manly Exerciſes allowed at *Geneva* on the Lord's day l. 1. 132.
Marcheta mulieris, a barbarous Cuſtom of the *Scots*, l. 1. 268. whence named, and by whom abrogated *ibid.*
Mares, why uſed to Battel among ſome of the Ancients l. 2. 511.
Margaret Counteſs of *Henneberg*, delivered at one Birth of 365 Children l. 2. 335
Mariners Compaſs, by whom firſt invented, and by whom perfected l. 1. 59. erroneouſly aſcribed to *Solomon* l. 4. 946
Morbnites, whence ſo called, their Tenets and places of dwelling, l. 3. 637. their reconciliation with the Pope but a matter of Complement *ibid.*
Marulla, her Valour in preſerving *Hæphestias* from being ſurpriz'd by the *Turks* l. 2. 551.
Maſſacres of the *Scythians* by the *Medes* l. 3. 750. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates* 602. of the *Danes* by the *Engliſh* l. 1. 257. of the *French* in *Sicily* l. 1. 72. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 144
Maſtick, what it is, where growing, and how gathered l. 3. 625.
Maſtiff Dogs, why called *Moloſſi* by the *Latins* l. 2. 536.
Mamalukes, their Inſtitution, Office, and Power l. 4. 865.
Meduſa, the Fable, and true Story thereof l. 4. 933
Melchites, what they are, and from whence denominated l. 3. 637.
Merced, an Order of Religious Perſons, their inſtitution and employment l. 1. 221.
Meſech, the Son of *Aram*, planted about *Mons Maſius* 9. l. 3. 720.
Meſech, or *Moſoch*, the Son of *Japhet*, ſetled among the *Montes Moſchici* in *Armenia major* 12. l. 3. 719
Meſha, and Mount *Sephir*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. in what place they were [illegible] 8
Meſſage of *Waldermal* K. of *Denmark*, to the Pope l. 2. 427.
Meſſene Servilior, a Proverb, the occaſion of it l. 2. 521
Minotaur, the Fable, and true Story of it l. 2. 557
Mithridates, the Author of the Antidote ſo named, the ſum and ſubſtance of his Story l. 3. 602.
Miramomoline, what the word doth ſignifie l. 4. 895. the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco* 894
Mizraim, the Son of *Cham*, the Father of the Nation of *Egypt* 10. l. 4. 845.
Monarchy, the neareſt form of Government to that of God 4. the Monarchs of *Spain* l. 1. 234. of the *Engliſh Saxons* 256. of the *Aſſyrians* l. 3. 713. of the *Medes* and *Perſians* 751.
Monaſtick Life, how accounted of in former times l. 1. 96. whether to be preferred before a ſociable *ibid.*
Money not only the inſtrument of exchange in ancient times l. 4. 912 by what names called, and why *ibid.* made ſometimes of Leather and Paſt-board 1092
Monks, their original and increaſe l. 1. 94. by whom firſt brought under certain Rules *ibid.* their ſeveral and particular Orders 94, 95.
Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars*, l. 3. 779. the Title of the great Emperors of *India* 816. their Catalogue and Succeſſion *ibid.*
Montmorency, the Family extinct l. 1. 151.
Moors, the luſt of *Roderick* occaſioned their coming into *Spain* l. 1. 203. and the luſt of *Magnutza* their Expulſion thence 209. forced to quit *Spain* 216
Morſes, or Sea-Horſes, the deſcription and uſe made of them l. 4. 954.
Moſaick Work, what it is l. 1. 103.
Muſcovites, by whom converted, and of what opinions in Religion l. 2. 455. from what original they come 462. their Government Tyrannical 464. the great Dukes Habit and Royal State *ibid*
Muſoli, or *Muſrones*, a ſtrange Beaſt l. 1. 115.
Muſick, the ſeveral ſorts and effect thereof l. 3. 608. uſed by the Primitive Chriſtians in God's publick Service *ibid.*
Myrtoum Mare, where it was, and from whence ſo named l. 3. 627
Myſiorum Poſtremus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 610.

N

Names fatal to ſome Kingdoms l. 2. 566.
Naptha, the nature of it, and where moſt uſed l. 3. 738.
Naphtuchim, Son of *Mizraim*, where firſt planted l. 4. 859. the name of *Neptune* by ſome ſaid to be thence derived *ibid.*
National Animoſities, to what cauſe aſcribed 14
Navigation, the original and ſtory of it l. 4. 945. what Nations moſt famous for it in former times, and who at preſent 946
Nemæan Games, by whom firſt inſtituted, and on what occaſion l. 2. 524.
Nethinims, what they were, and in what employed l. 3. 674.
Neſtorians, whence ſo called l. 3. 709. their Tenets in Religion *ibid.* Solemnities they uſe in contracting Marriage *ibid.* much hated of the Pope, and why 710.
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Kingdoms l. 3. 713
Ninive l. 3. 710.
Noah's ſeven Precepts, or the Precepts of the Sons of *Noah* l. 3. 655
Nomades, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated l. 3. 769.
Noradin's gallant anſwer made to his Commanders l. 3. 653
Normans, what they were originally l. 1. 159. their Actions and Atchievements *ibid.* when firſt fixt in *France* *ibid.*
North-Eaſt Paſſage, by whom attempted and purſued l. 4. 1028. of the *North-Weſt* Paſſage *ibid.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ibid.*
Nuns, why ſo called, and by whom firſt inſtituted *l.* 1. 96, their particular Orders *ibid.* of ill report for their unchaſtity *ibid.* Nunnery of *Valdrude* in *Hainalt* l. 2. 323.
Nutmegs, how they grow, and where moſt plentiful l. 3. 829.

O

Obits of the Saints kept as Feſtivals l. 2. 545.
Ocean, the collection of Waters 21. the cauſes of its ebbing and flowing *ibid.* the Etymology of the Name, and vaſt greatneſs of it l. 1. 227.
Offa's Dike 261.
Oleum Mediacum, ſee *Naptha*
Olympick Games, by whom firſt inſtituted and reſtored l. 2. 520. where held, and who were Judges of them *ibid.* all the Victors at one time of one City in *Italy* l. 1. 63.
Ὀνομαντία, a kind of Divination, an experiment of it l. 1. 52.
Ophir, not the Province of *Sophala* in *Ethiopia* l. 4. 922. where it rather was *ibid.*
Oracles, which moſt famous l. 2. 532. their ambiguity and decay *ibid.*
Oratorians, an Order of Religious Perſons, by whom firſt inſtituted, uſed for a counterpoiſe to the *Jeſuits* l. 1. 96.
Orders of Knighthood, of St. *Mark*, l. 1. 106. of the *Glorious Virgin* ib. of St. *Stephen* 111. of the *Blood of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt* 121. of the *Annuntiada* 130. of the *Creſcent* 164.

of the *Gennet* 194. of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers *ibid.* of the *Star* *ibid.* of St. *Michael ibid.* of the *Holy Ghoſt* ibid. of the *Lilly* 206. of *Merced* 221. of *Calatrava* 222. of St. *Jago* ibid. of *Alcantara* ib of *Avis* 227. of *Chriſt* ibid. of St. *Saviour* 233. of *Monteſa* ibid. of the *Round Table* 260. of the *Garter* ibid. of the *Bath* 261. of *Baronets* ibid. of St. *Andrew* 275. of *Nova Scotia* ibid. of the *Golden Fleece l.*2. 341. of the *Elephant* 443. of the *Marian*, or *Dutch Knights* 479. of the *Port-glaive* ibid. of the *Dragon* 488. of the *Sepulcher l.* 3. 690. of the *Templars* ibid. of St. *John* ibid. *Great Maſter*, how choſen, his Title *l.* 4. 898.

Oſtraciſm, what it was, whence called, and with whom in uſe l. 2. 528.

Oſtrich Feathers, why, and how long the cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* *l.* 1. 267.

Ovation, how differeth from a Triumph *l.* 1. 33. from whence ſo called *ibid* in what caſes granted *ibid.*

Ovid, why baniſhed into *Pontus*, *l.* 2. 510.

Oxenham, his adventurous Attempt *l.* 4. 949.

Oyſters grow on Trees *l.* 2. 495.

P

P*Aiſants* Slavery in *Livonia* *l.* 2. 467.

Palms, anciently uſed as a ſign of Victory, ſet by the Chriſtians in Church-yards, and for what reaſon *l.* 4. 846, 847. the rare nature of the Tree *ibid.* a further deſcription of it 901.

Pamphyli, what they were *l.* 1. 112.

Paper, where firſt invented, and why ſo called *l.* 4. 851.

Paradiſe, where it was indeed, the ſeveral Fancies and Opinions touching the particular *l.* 3. 705.

Paradiſe terreſtrial of *Aladine* 747.

Parchment, in *Latin Pergamena*, where invented firſt *l.* 3. 611.

Paris never taken by force, why *l.* 1. 152.

Paſiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought Hiſtorical *l.* 2. 556.

Pathruſim, firſt planted in the Land of *Pathros* 10.

Partition Wall, alluded to *Epheſ.* 2. 14. what, and where it was *l.* 3. 676.

Patriarchatus, a new Order deviſed by *Conſtantine*, and what it was *l.* 1. 51.

Pelethites, who, and why ſo called *l.* 3. 669.

Pellenæa veſtis, a by-word, and the meaning of it *l.* 2. 519.

Perſepolis *l.* 3. 739

Petaliſme, what it was, and where moſt in uſe *l.* 1. 70.

Peter-pence, by whom firſt granted to the Pope *l.* 1. 93.

Periſcii and *Periæci*, what they are in Geography 18

Phaleg, where probably firſt planted 8.

Phariſees, whence they had their name, *l.* 3. 656. their *Dogmata* and Authority amongſt the People *ib.*

Pharos *l.* 4. 849.

Phaſelus, whence ſo named *l.* 3. 617.

Phileni aræ *l.* 4. 881.

Philippicks given by *Tully* for the name of his Orations againſt *M. Anthony* *l.* 2. 533.

Phut, the Son of *Cham*, Father of the *Moors*, or *Mauritanians* 11. *l.* 4. 878

Phryges ſero ſapiunt *l.* 3. 608.

Picts, what they were, and the ſtory of them *l.* 1. 271.

Pigritia, a ſtrange Creature in *America* *l.* 4. 948.

Py'd Piper, the ſtory of him *l.* 2. 499.

Pigeons Letter Carriers *l.* 3. 708.

Pizarro, his Birth, Breeding, Riſe, and Death *l.* 4. 1099.

Pledging one another, why firſt uſed in *England* *l.* 1. 257.

Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell *l.* 2. 536.

Pompey's ſucceſsful War againſt the *Cilicians* *l.* 3. 621

Polycrates for long time Fortunate, dies miſerably *l.* 3. 626.

Pope, or *Papa*, what it ſignifieth *l.* 1. 86. common at firſt to other Biſhops *ibid.* the opportunities thoſe of *Rome* had to advance their Greatneſs 85. the means and ſteps by which they did attain to their Temporal Power 91. and ſtill keep the ſame, *ib.* how eaſie to be made Hereditary 92. their Forces and Revenue 93.

Portugals, their Character, their Antipathy to the *Caſtilians* *l.* 1. 222.

Portugals, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *ibid.*

Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat *l.* 4. 846.

Prediction of the *Moors* conquering *Spain* *l.* 1. 203.

Prætorian Guards, by whom inſtituted and by whom caſhiered *l.* 1. 49 their Power, the great Authority of their Captains 41.

Presbyter John, the name of the King of *Tenduc* *l.* 3. 779. erroneouſly aſcribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abaſſine* Emperor *ibid.* the ground of the Miſtake, and right Name of that Prince *l.* 4. 917.

Presbyterian Diſcipline, by whom firſt framed *l.* 1. 132. and how after propagated *ibid.* the introduction of it into the Seigniory of *Geneva* *ibid.* and the Realm of *Scotland* 269. why ſo importunately deſired by ſome in *England* *l.* 1. 245.

Prieſts of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance *l.* 3. 677. who they were, whom they called the Chief Prieſt 657. of the High-Prieſt, and when made a ſaleable Office *ibid.* how *Annas* and *Caiphas* were High Prieſts at the ſame time *ibid.* their Power and Succeſſion after the Captivity 684

Printing, where firſt invented, and by whom *l.* 2. 334. how much abuſed in theſe latter Times, ſaid to have been long uſed in *China* *l.* 3. 783.

Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vulture *l.* 3. 744.

Proteſtants, where firſt ſo called, and why *l.* 2. 348. the whole ſtory of them *ib.* the cauſes of the great increaſe of their Doctrines *ibid.* their principal overſight *ibid.*

Pſalms of *Degrees*, how many, and why ſo named *l.* 3. 670.

Pyramids of *Egypt*, their vaſt greatneſs, by whom built, and why *l.* 4. 849.

Q

Q*Uivira*, a ſtrange Beaſt there, which ſupplies them with moſt neceſſaries *l.* 4. 966.

R

R*Ain* falling turns to *Alabaſter* *l.* 4. 1081. Rain obtained by the Prayer of *Helena* *l.* 2. 559.

Rarities in *Arabia Felix* *l.* 3. 697. in *Egypt* *l.* 4. 849. in *America* 948. in *Nova Hiſpania* 1073. in *Chiapa* 1080. in *Peru* 1191. in *Braſil* 1105 in *Cuba* 1123

Red-Sea, whence it had the Name, how far extended by that Name *l.* 3. 699.

Regma, the Son of *Chus*, firſt planted on the Shores of the *Perſian* Gulf 10. *l.* 3. 698.

Religion, naturally ingraffed in the Heart of Man *l.* 1. 25. how it ſtandeth in relation to the parts of the World 25, 26.

Retiredneſs from the vulgar Eye uſed by divers Princes *l.* 4. 918.

Rex Romanorum, what he is, *l.* 2. 354. by whom, and for what cauſe ordained 426.

Richard the Firſt terrible to the *Turks* *l.* 3. 640. taketh *Cyprus* 633. is ſlain by a Shot from an *Arbaliſt* *l.* 1. 170. the Man that ſhot him ſet at liberty and rewarded *ibid.*

Riphah, the Son of *Gomer*, found in *Paphlagonia* 11.

Rivers, their uſe and conditions requiſite for Navigation 21, 22. the Banks of great Rivers how defenſible *l.* 3. 610.

Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth *l.* 3. 774.

Rhamnuſia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemeſis*, and what *Nemeſis* was *l.* 2. 527.

Rhene, the fountain and courſe thereof *l.* 2. 318. the ſeveral branches by which it falleth into the Ocean *ibid.*

Rochel *l.* 1. 171.

Rhodes, taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent *l.* 3. 629.

Rhodian Laws, the Rule in former times of all Marine Cauſes, and for how long they ſo continued *ibid.*

Rome, of what circuit in her Glory, and the number of its Inhabitants *l.* 1. 83. the extent of her Dominions 50. once made a Goddeſs, and by whom *l.* 3. 615. Her Revenues computed at 150 Millions of Crowns *l.* 1. 50. her Empire ſubverted by *Conſtantine*, and how *ibid.*

Roman Emperors, the Succeſſion of them *l.* 1. 48. cut off by violent Deaths till the time of *Conſtantine*, and the cauſe thereof 49. their negligence and degenerate ſloth 51.

Roſamond, Wife to *Albonius*, King of the *Lombards*, procures her Husband to be murdered, and why *l.* 1. 53. her Death *ibid.*

Roy d'yvidot, a *French* by-word, the meaning and occaſion of it *l.* 1. 108.

S

Sabbath-day not ſo moral as ſome pretend *l.* 4. 1130.

Sabeans of *Arabia Felix*, from what Race they came *l.* 3. 698.

Sacriledge, a Crime unpardonable even amongſt Heathens *l.* 2. 533.

Sadduces, whence they had their Name *l.* 3. 656. their Opinions and *Dogmata* *ibid.*

Salique Law, what it truly is, not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend, not at all was regarded by them, but to ſerve the turns of ſome Uſurpers, the inconveniences, and injuſtice of it *l.* 1. 145.

Salmacida ſpolia, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *l.* 3. 616.

Salvages lately found in *Spain* *l.* 1. 219.

Samia vaſa, what, and how highly prized *l.* 3. 626.

Samaritans, what they were, their Religion, Tenets, and Sects, how hated by the *Jews*, and why *l.* 3. 668.

Saracens, why ſo called *l.* 3. 691, 693. their Character in former times, *ib.* their reſort to *Mahomet* 702. their Succeſſes, Victories, and Caliphs 703.

Sardanapalus, an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treaſure *l.* 3. 714.

Sardonius Riſus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *l.* 1. 74.

Scanderberg, his Life and Story *l.* 2. 537. what became of his Body 538.

Scæva's Valour *l.* 2. 537.

Sclaves or *Sclavonians*, whence ſo called *l.* 2. 496. their Affairs and Story 497. given as a Name to Bond-men, on what occaſion 489

Schola Salerni, by whom written, and to whom dedicated *l.* 1. 59.

Scots, why ſo called *l.* 1. 268. their proceedings in their Reformation 270. their Kingdom held in Vaſſalage to the Crown of *England* 275.

Scribes, what they were, when inſtituted, and of what Authority *l.* 3. 657.

Scythians, their Original, Antiquity, and Atchievements *l.* 3. 772, 773. their Expedition into *Media*, and ſucceſs in *Lydia* 767.

Sebe, the Son of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe* 9.

Sebvians *l.* 3. 668.

Sela, the Son of *Arphaxad*, in what parts ſetled 8. *l.* 3. 739.

Seleucus, a great Builder *l.* 3. 644. his ſtrange riſe and fortunes 651.

Semiramis *l.* 3. 713.

Seminaries for the *Engliſh*, by whom firſt erected, and where *l.* 1. 153.

Seneca's happy Memory 198.

Seriphiæ Rana, an old Proverb, the occaſion and meaning of it *l.* 2. 554.

Serpents worſhipped by the *Samogites*, and *Lituani*, the barbarous Cuſtoms of thoſe People *l.* 2. 470.

Sforza, his ſtrange riſe and ſtory *l.* 1. 119.

Sheba, *Sabta*, and *Sabteca*, the Sons of *Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the Founders of the puiſſant Nation of the *Sabæans* 10. *l.* 3. 698.

Sybils, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt *l.* 4. 858. not counterfeit by the Fathers *ibid.*

Siculæ Gerræ l. 1. 68. *Veſperæ Siculæ* 72. *Siculi Tyranni* *ibid.*

Silks, why called *Serica* by the *Latins* *l.* 3. 775.

Silver and *Gold* where moſt plentiful *l.* 4. 1092. the rich Mines of *Potoſi* 1097. how vilified by the *Utopian* 1092. the cauſes of the darkneſs of things in our days *ibid.* not ſo advantagious to a State, as Trade and Merchandiſe 1093.

Simeon, the Son of *Jacob*, how diſperſed in *Iſrael*, as his Father propheſied *l.* 3. 672.

Solæciſmus, whence 621.

Solomon's Porch, mentioned *John* 10. 23. where, and what it was *l.* 3. 676.

Soothſaying, how many kinds thereof *l.* 3. 714

Soldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the moſt part, and why *l.* 2. 528.

Spa, Medicinal Waters, where, and for what moſt uſeful *l.* 2. 329.

Spaniards, from whence they do deſcend *l.* 1. 201. by whom converted to the Faith 198. the dependance of the Popes on the Crown thereof 200. their aim at the fifth Monarchy *ibid.* the greatneſs of their Empire, and weakneſs of it 225. *Spaniſh* Nobility very ſerviceable to their King, why 225, 226. the *Spaniards* cruelty towards the *Americans* *l.* 4. 948.

Squoachi, a thieviſh Beaſt *l.* 3. 621.

Sterling Money, why ſo called *l.* 1. 270.

Streights of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants *l.* 3. 621. the loſing of ſuch Paſſes of what fatal conſequence 610

Stukely, where and when ſlain *l.* 4. 893.

Styx, a River of *Greece*, the uſual Oath of the gods *l.* 2. 522.

Sugars, when, and by whom firſt refined *l.* 4. 932. what uſed inſtead thereof in elder times, *ibid.* the great quantities thereof ſent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Iſle of *S. Thomas* ibid. and from the Sugar-works in *Braſil* *l.* 4. 1005.

Syrian Language, what it was, and of what ingredients *l.* 3. 637, 657. when firſt made vulgar to the *Jews* ibid.

Syrian Goddeſs, what ſhe was *l.* 3. 644. her magnificent Temple *ibid.* the deceits and jugling of her Prieſts *ibid.*

Syrorum multa, olera Syri contra Phœnices, two Proverbs, and the meaning of them *ibid.*

T

Tails of Sheep (and of no Beaſt elſe) why uſed in Sacrifice *l.* 3. 643.

Tamerlane, his Birth and Parentage *l.* 3. 770. the ſum and ſubſtance of his Story *ibid.*

Tarſhiſh, the Son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarſus* in *Cilicia* 12. not in *Tarteſſus*, as ſome ſay *ibid.*

Tartarians, not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Iſrael* l. 3. 762. from whom moſt probably deſcended *ib.* their Affairs and Victories 779

Taxus, a Tree ſo called, *&c.* l. 1. 115.

Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former *l.* 3. 675. repaired and beautified by *Herod* 676. the ſeveral Courts about it *ibid.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ibid.* Temple of *Sophia* *l.* 2. 547.

Tenedia Securis, a By-word, the occaſion of it *l.* 3. 624.

Themiſtocles baniſhed by his Country, flies to, and is entertained by *Artaxerxes* *l.* 3. 612.

Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himſelf *l.* 3. 681.

Thyras, the Father of the *Thracians* 13. by ſome called *Thryacians* *l.* 2. 544.

Sir *Thomas Moor* no friend to the Friers *l.* 1. 96. his new Plot of wooing not approved of *l.* 4. 906. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Utopians* 1092.

Thracians, their Cuſtoms *l.* 2. 545.

Tigranes his frankneſs *l.* 3. 718.

Timariots, what they be, their inſtitution and number *l.* 3. 729.

Titus, Biſhop of *Crete* *l.* 2. 556.

Title of moſt *Chriſtian* King, why given unto the Kings of *France* *l.* 1. 190. of *Catholick* King to the King of *Spain* 234. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 259. of *Defenders of the Church* to the *Switzers* 138. of *Baſileus* to the Kings of *Bulgaria* l. 2. 511. of *Flagellum Dei* to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* l. 1. 177.

Tobacco, where moſt plentiful *l.* 4. 1091. why called the *Henbane of Peru* ibid. the fantaſtick uſe thereof condemned, and the Vertues aſcribed unto it examined *ibid.* by whom firſt brought into *England* *l.* 4. 1092

Togarma, or *Torgama*, the Son of *Gomer*, Founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 11.

Tholoſanum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occaſion of it *l.* 1. 177.

Tomineio, a Bird in *America* l. 4. 948.

Topography, what it is, how it differeth from Geography 22

Traffick, and the Story of it, more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *l.* 4. 1902.

Treaſon, how rewarded *l.* 2. 484.

Tragedies, by whom invented *l.* 3. 625.

Tree that withereth if touched *l.* 4. 1082. beneficial Trees in *India* *l.* 4. 930, 1087.

Triumphs, their Original and Majeſty, in what they differed from an *Ovation*, in what caſes denied a Conqueror, when diſcontinued and laid by *l.* 1. 33, 34.

Troy not beſieged ten Years together by the *Greeks*, and at laſt how taken *l.* 3. 608. *Fimbra*'s boaſt of taking *Troy* in eleven days tartly anſwered *ibid.*

Tubal, the Son of *Javan*, firſt planted in *Iberia* 12. the *Spaniards* how derived from him *l.* 3. 723.

Turks, their Original and Conqueſts *l.* 3. 725. their Kings and Emperors 726. their Perſons, Cuſtoms, and Religion, their Eſtate and Power 728, 729.

V

Vaivod, the meaning of the word *l.* 2. 500. the *Vaivods* of *Tranſilvania* ibid.

Vandals, their firſt Seat *l.* 4. 880. their Affairs, Story, and the Succeſſion of their Kings *ibid.*

Vaudois, the ſame with the *Waldenſes* *l.* 1. 184. their Life and Doctrines *ibid.*

Venus, whence called *Erycina* *l.* 1. 70. whence *Cytheræa* *l.* 2. 555. whence *Dea Cypri* *l.* 3. 630. whence *Paphia* 631. whence *Dea Cnidia* 616. the brutiſhneſs of the *Cypriots*, both Men and Women, in their Feaſts and Sacrifices *l.* 3. 630.

Verſoria in *Plautus*, what it is, not uſed there for the Mariners Compaſs, as by ſome ſuppoſed *l.* 4. 947.

Victory of *Annibal* at *Cannæ* *l.* 1. 61.

Vidames in *France*, how many and what they are *l.* 156.

Viengue, a ſtrange but profitable Beaſt among the *Americans*, and the nature of it *l.* 4. 948. the Bezoar found in the Belly of it *ibid.*

Vina Maſſica, whence ſo called, and of what eſteem *l.* 1. 59.

Virgil's Fable of *Dido* diſproved, and his *Æneas* ſuſpected *l.* 4. 879.

Ulyſſes travelled not ſo far as *Liſbon* *l.* 1. 223. the ſum and ſubſtance of his Story *l.* 2. 562.

Ur, the Birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Meſopotamia* l. 3. 712. that it was not in *Chaldæa*, as by moſt ſuppoſed *ibid.*

Uſury, the *Genoeſe* much addicted to it *l.* 1. 113. the ſaying of a Merry Fellow thereon *ibid.*

Uz, or *Hus*, the Country and Dwelling of *Job*, whereabout it was *l.* 3. 692.

W

Wallons, what they are, and why ſo called *l.* 1. 261. *l.* 2. 316

Whales, their dimenſions, and vaſt greatneſs *l.* 3. 796. how driven from the Coaſt of *Norway* *l.* 2. 437.

White-Friers, from whence ſo called, and by whom firſt inſtituted, called alſo *Carmelites*, and why *l.* 1. 95, 109.

Wolves deſtroyed in *England*, how *l.* 1. 241.

World, why created 1. how long ſince 2. peopled before the general Flood 4. Eaſt parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* 13. *l.* 3. 800. called *Coſmos* by the *Greeks*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*, for the beauties of it, unequally divided in reſpect of Religion *l.* 1. 25.

Writing, the Original of it *l.* 4. 847. and the ſeveral Forms *ibid.*

X

Xeriffe, why uſed for the Title of the Kings of *Morocco*, the Catalogue and Succeſſion of them *l.* 4. 895.

Xerxes, his numerous Army *l.* 2. 550.

Y.

Yeugh Tree, why planted in Church-Yards *l.* 4. 847.

Z.

Zaleucus his Laws *l.* 1. 63.

Zenobia, a moſt maſculine Lady her Story *l.* 3. 649.

Zopyrus, his Act *l.* 3. 707.

A Computation of the Foreign COINS herein mentioned, with the English.

	l.	s.	d.
Hebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Ægyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Seſtertium of Rome	7	16	3
A Shekel	00	2	6
Argenteus, Mat. 26. 15.	00	2	6
A Drachma	00	00	7ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	00	6	8
A French Crown	00	6	6
A Xeriffe	00	6	0
A Rix Dollar	00	4	8
A Floren	00	3	0
A Frank	00	2	0
A Liver	00	2	0
A Gulden	00	2	0
A Spaniſh Real	00	0	6
A Sous	00	0	1qob
A Turkiſh Aſper	00	0	1q
A Marividis	00	0	1q

An

An Alphabetical and Exact Table, wherein is ſet down the Names (Ancient and Modern) of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Iſlands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Foreſts, *&c. of any Remark in the whole World, as they are deſcribed and contained in theſe Four Books of the incomparable Coſmographer, Dr.* Heylyn.

A.

Lib. I.

A Ada *fl* 141
Aaz *fl* 134
Abbeville *u* 189
Abdera *u* 216
Abergaveny *u* 261
Aberdon *u* 270
Aberfraw *u* 264. 284
Abrincantes *p* 157
Abruzzo *pr* 59
Abule *u* 219
Abus *fl* 240
Acaſus *fl* 69
Acates *inſ* 64
Accipitrum *inſ.* 75
Aceſta *u* 71
Acolin *u* 166
Acuſiani *p* 182
D'Acques *u* 172
Adige *fl* 97
Adour *fl* 174
Adria *u* 80. 101
Adriaticum *mare* *Ib.*
Adros *inſ* 284
Addua *fl* 118
Ægates *inſ* 71
Ægilora *inſ* 110
Ægyde *u* 100
Æguſa *inſ* 71
Ælia Recina *u* 80
Æmilia *p* 117
Ænariæ *inſ* 64
Æoliæ *inſ* 71
Æqui *p* 82
Æthalia *inſ* 110
Ætna *m* 68
Agatha, Agde *u* 176
Agatenſes *p* 177
Agecolis *u* 249
Agen *u* 175
Agenois *p* 172
Agendicum *u* 153
Agnes *inſ.* 284
Agrigentum *u* 70
Agryllis *u* 73
Agyllinum *u* 107
Ajazze *u* 115
Aigre *fl* 165
Aiguepreſſe *u* 167
Aique Aquenſis *u* 123
Aix *u* 178
Alanſon *u* 159
Alatum *p* 270
Alax *fl* 63
Alba *u* 82. 123
Helviorum 177
Albania *p* 268. 271
St. Alban *u* 249. 256
Albemarle *u* 158
Albigeois *p* 176
Albion *inſ* 227
Albon *u* 129
Albert *p* 175
Alby *u. fl* 176
Alcala *de* Henares *u* 220
Alcantara *u* 214
Alcoraz *u* 220
Aldborow *u* 250
Alderney *inſ* 188
Alleria *u* 115
Aleth *u* 176
Aletium *u* 62
Alexia *u* 185
Alexandria *u* 118
Alfaques *inſ* 230
Alfatinia *u* 81
Algarve *p* 222
Algerize *u* 212
Alghes-Boſa *u* 74
Alhama *u* 215
Alicante *u* 227
Alize *u* 185
Allier *fl* 166
Allobroges *p* 125
Almanca *u* 217
Almeria *u* 216
Alpes *m* 125
Maritimæ *Ib.*
Cottiæ *Ib.*
Graiæ *Ib.*
Pœninæ *Ib.*
Lepontiæ *Ib.*
Rheticæ *Ib.*
Juliæ *Ib.*
Carnicæ *Ib.*
Alpaxaras *u* 201. 215
Altavilla *u* 63
Altemberg *u* 136
Altine *u* 99
Altomont *u* 64
Almaſi *u* 59
St. Amand *u* 166
Amballe *u* 160
Amballiates *p* *Ib.*
Ambiani *p* 154
Ambrun *u* 182
Amboiſe *u* 162
Amiens *u* 155
Ampurias *u* 229
Amelia *u* 81
Amycle *u* 63
Ana *fl* 220
Anacapræ *u* 64
Ancona *u* 80
Andaluzia *p* 211
Andegavia *u* 162
St. Andrea *u* 209
Andres *u* 155
Andes *p* 162
St. Andrews *inſ. u* 270
Anduiar *u* 209
Anemus *fl* 76
St. Angelo *m* 61
Angeruille *u* 164
Angiers *u* 162
Angleſey *pr* 263
Inſ 283
Anglia *R* 239
Angloleſme *p* 170
Angra *u* 224
L'Anguillado *inſ* 187
Angus *p* 271
Anguſtoritum *u* 169
Aniene *fl* 80
Anjou *p* 162
Ankor *fl* 250
Annandale *p* 271
Annunciada *u* 129
Anſenis *u* 160
Ante *fl* 158
Anteri *p* 280
Antiſiodorum *u* 185
Antibi, Antibolis *u* 179
Antiquera *u* 216
Antium *u* 82
Antrigonis *p* 207
Antrim *p* 278
Anxur *u* 83
Aoſt *u* 127
Apencenſes *p* 182
Apenzel *p* 135
Apoza *fl* 76
Aprutium *p* 59
Apulia *p* 29. 60
Peucetia 62
Daunia *Ib.*
Siticuloſa *p* *Ib.*
Aquæ Auguſtæ *u* 172
Calidæ *u* 249
Sextiæ *u* 178
Solis *u* 252
Bellæ *u* 128
Aquenſium *p* 172
Aquenſis *u* 150
Aquilaſtro *u* 74
Aquilegia *u. p* 99
Aquila *u* 59
Aquino *u* *Ib.*
Aquitain *p* 171
Aquitania *prima* 167
171
Aquitania *ſecunda* 169
171
Aragon *pr. fl* 231
Araris *fl* 184
Arauſia *u* 179
Arbia *fl* 109
Arbois *u* 186
L'Arche *fl* 128
Ardea *u* 61. 83
Ardoa *p* 133
Arduarius *l* 61
Arecomiſi *u* 177
Arelatum *u* 179
Arethuſa *fl* 69
Aretium *u* 108
Arezzo *u* *Ib.*
Arevacæ *p* 220
Arga *fl* 204
Argentario *m* 81
Argenton *u* 168
Argile *p* 271
Argow *p* 134
Argyrippa *pr* 61
Ariconium *u* 255
Arilla *u* 167
Arles *u* 178
Ariminum *u. fl* 76
Armacan *u* 184
Armagh *u* 278
Armaignac *p* 174
Armath *inſ* 284
Arme *inſ* 188
Armorica *p* 160
Arnon *fl* 168
Arnus *fl* 30
Aron *fl* 166
Arpinum *u* 59
Arq *u* 154
Arran *inſ* 345
Arſia *fl* 100
Artimeſia *fl* 110
Arthur *inſ.* 284
Arula *fl* 136
Arverni *p* 185
Arundel *u* 352
St. Aſaph *u* 263
Aſcoli *u* 61. 80
Aſculum *u* 61
Aſido Cæſariana *u* 212
Aſinaria *inſ* 75
Aſſiſſium *u* 81
Aſt *u* 123
Aſta *u* 212
Aſtorga *u* 209
Aſtigi *u* 212
Ateſte *u* 78. 99
Athanatos *inſ.* 285
Athenry *u* 279
Atheſis *fl* 97. 126
Athol *pr* 271
Athlone *u* 279
Atlanticum *mare* 196
Atrebarii *p* 249
Atticum *u* 164
Avaricum *u* 168
Aubigni *p* 206
Audematurum *u* 153
Aude *fl* 176
Aven *fl* 157
Avenio *u* 179
Averni *p* 186
Avernus *p* 58
Averſa *u* *Ib.*
Aufidus *fl* 57
Augubio *u* 79. 81
Augaunum *u* 133
Auguſta *u* 70
Auſciorum 174
Aſturica 209
Emerita 214
Firma 212
Prætoria *u* 127
Sueſſionum *u* 156
Taurinorum 127
Trinobantum 249
Aguſtani *p* 209
Aguſtodunum *u* 185
Aguſtoritum *u* 169
Avia *fl* 222
Avignon *u* 179
Avila *u. m* 219
Aviles *u* 209
Aumal *u m* 158
Auneau *u* 164
Avon *fl* 249
Aurance *fl* 176
Auranches *u* 157
Aurange *u* 179
Aurantius Saltus *m* 201
Aurelia *u* 164
Aurette *fl* 168
Auriacus *u* 179
Aurigni *inſ* 188
Aurney *inſ* *Ib.*
Auſcii *p.* 172
Auſonium *p* 28
Auſtraſia *p* 142
Auton *u* 185
Avergne *p* 166
Auvillar *u* 174
Aviduff *p* 277
Aux *u* 174
Auxerre *u* 153. 185
Auxitani *p* 229
Auzan *u* 174
Axelodunum *u* 255
Axophanos *fl* 75
Azores *inſ* 223

Lib. II.

Aa *fl* 321
Abantis *inſ* 551
Abdera *u* 545
Abnoba *m* 351
Abo *u* 449
Abra *fl* 418
Abrincum *u* 482
Abſorus *inſ* 495
Abſertides *inſ.* *Ib.*
Abſtod *u* 410
Abſyrtus *fl* 495
Acanthus *u* 542
Ac-Germen *u* 503
Acarnania *pr* 535
Acce-chiſar *u* 550
Ach *fl* 374
Achaia *pr* 527
Propria *pr* 519
Achelous *fl* 518. 534
Acheron *fl* 535
Achilleia *u* 503
Achrida *u* 510
Acre *u* *Ib.*
Acro-Corinthus *m* 526
Acronicus *l* 373
Actium *u* 536
Adenburg *u* 357
Adiſe *fl* 383
Adrianople *u* 515. 546
Adriaticum *mare* 518
Aduatica *p* 318. 332
Æas *fl* 518
Ædiſſa *u* 541
Ægæa *u* 552
Ægæum *u* 519
Mare 550
Ægiala *pr* 519. *inſ* 560
Ægilia *inſ* *Ib.*
Ægira *inſ* 519
Ægina *inſ* 553
Æmathia *pr* 538
Æmera *u* 524
Æmonia *pr* 539
Æmus *m* 515
Ænona *u* 494
Ænus *u* 545
Ænſtel *fl* 334
Æria *inſ* 550
Æſtrei *p* 538
Æſtus *fl* 387
Æth *u* 324
Æthria *inſ* 550
Ætolia *pr* 533
Aganzia *pr* 449
Agathyrſi *p* 462
Agernis *inſ* 434
Ageroe *inſ* 432
Aggerhuis *r. p* 437
Agiſtiman *u* 558
Agria *u* 484
Colonia Agrippina *u* 360
Alba *fl* 420
Alchſtadium *u* 394
Alomama *ſ* 541
Aire *u* 321
Aix, Aken *u* 357
Alaicmon *fl* 541
Alauni 462. 380
Alba Græca *u* 483
Julia 501
Regalis 483
Albania *pr* 537
Alberg *m* 432
Albis *fl* 351
Alborch *u* 432
Albona *u* 494
Albus *l* 456
Alcmer *u* 334
Alderburg *u* 363
Aleſius *u* 493
Aleta *u* 490
Algow *pr* 374
Alla *fl* 473
Allendorf *u* 418
Alloneſus *inſ* 551
Alluta *fl* 498. 504
Almanſi *pr* 345. 375
Almelo *u* 338
Almene *pr* 535
Almiſſa *u* 493
Almopes *p* 541
Almul *fl* 393
Aloſt *pr. u* 320
Alpes Juliæ *m* 377
Rheticæ 383
Suevi 375
Alpheus *fl* 520
Alſatia *pr* 367
Alſen *inſ* 434
Alze *fl* 326
Alſnutius *Ib.*
Alta Ripa, Altrip, *u* 368
Altiburgum *u. f* 423
Altemark *pr* 400
Altena *u* 358
Altenburg *u* 482
Altkirk *u* 368
Altomara *u* 557
Altorf *u* 394
Amadoci *m* 456
Amager *inſ* 434
Amagria *inſ* *Ib.*
Amalchium *mare* 438
Almance *u* 370
St. Amand *u* 321

Amberg

Amberg *u* 393
Ambidraunum *pr* 380
Ambilici *pr* *Ib.*
Ambiſontes *p* *Ib.*
Ambra *fl* 377
Ambracia *u* 536
Ambrones *p* 423
Amelungsbame *u* 415
Amerlander *pr* 423
Amesfort *u* 345
Amiſus *fl* 318. 345. 351
Ampelas *u* 542. 557
Amphaxatis *pr* 542
Amphilochia *pr* 535
Amphipolis *u* 541
Amphriſe *fl* 518
Amphyſia *u* 533
Amſterdam *u* 334
Amſtelodamum *u* *Ib.*
Amurgos *inſ* 555
Amycle *u* 522
Anactorium *u* 536
Anaphe *inſ* 555
Anarti *p* 500
Anchiola *u* 515
Anclan *u* 403
Andefort *u* 439
Andernach *u* 360
St. Andrews *inſ* 338
Andros *inſ* 553
Caſtello St. Angelo *u* 562
Angeloſtadium *u* 376
Angerburg *u* 474
Angerman *pr* 447
Angermond *u* 387
Anghien *u* 324
Angli *p* 428. 432
Angra *fl* 356
Angrivaria *pr* 420
Anhalt *pr* 409
Aniſus *p* 381
Annium *u* 500
Ansbach *pr. u* 389
Anſeling *u* 422
Anſlo *u* 437
Antandros *inſ* 553
Antenacum *u* 360
Antebari *u* 493
Antigonia *u* 36. 542
Antirrhium *c* 519
Antonina *u* 345
Antwerp *u* 331
Anticyra *u* 531
Aorſi *p* 471
Apia *p* 519
Apidanus *fl* 518
Apollonia *u* 538. 542. 546
Apſalus *u* 541
Apſus *fl* 537
Apulum *u* 500
Aquen *u* 357
Aquiſgranum *u* *Ib.*
Arrabon *u* 482
Aracthus *u fl* 534
Aranias Zeek *p* 500
Aravaſci *p* 484
Araxum *c* 519
Arbe *inſ. u* 496
Arbogel *u* 448
Arbon felix *u* 373
Arbor *u* *Ib.*
Arcadia *pr* 521
Archangel *u* 462
Arches *inſ* 550
Archingen *u* 390
Archipelago *u* 550
Van Arckel *p* 334
Arcueli *p* *Ib.*
Ardenne *u. p* 317. 319
326
Ardium *m* 490
Aredaro *u* 381
Aremberg *u* 421
Arenacum *u* 339
Arethuſa *u* 542
Argentoratum *u* 376
m 515
Argolis *p* 524
Argos *u* *Ib.*
Argaſtolis *u* 561
Argyro Caſtro *u* 536
Argoratum *u* 495
Arihuſen *u* 432
Aria *inſ* 545. *pr* 544
Arii *p* 476
Arlun *u* 326
Armenia *ſ* 540
Armentiers *u* 321
Armyden *u* 335
Arnhem *u* 339
Archetamii *p* 449
Aroe *inſ* 434. *u* 519
Aroſe *u* 448
Arras *u* 321
Arſchot *u* 330
Arſia *fl* 489
Arſus *fl* 546
Arthuſen *pr. u* 432
Artoys *pr. u* 321
Aruncis *u* 368
Arusberg *u* 358. 420
Arx Britannica *u* 335
Aſcandt *u* 409
Aſcens *u* 434
Aſciburgius *m* 398
Aſcræa *u* 531
Aſcruvium *u* 493
Aſilia *u* 467
Aſiocaſtron *u* 550
Aſloia *u* 437
Aſprocaſtron *u* 503
Aſopus *fl* 527
Aſſened *u* 320
Aſſorus *u* 542
Aſtragan *pr. u* 460
Aſtypale *inſ. u* 555
Athamanes *p* 534
Athaneum *u* *Ib.*
Athelin *pr* 449
Athens *u* 527
Atheſis *fl* 383
Athos *m* 542
Athyras *fl* 518. 545
Attica *pr* 527
Atrebates *p* 318. 321
Avares *p* 485
Avarini *p* 474
Audomarus *u* 321
Aveſenes ex Hainault, *u* 324
Aveſnes le ſec *Ib.*
Auf de Berne *u* 356
Augſt *u* 395
Augur *u* 356
Auguſta Tiberii 377
Auguſta Veromanduorum *u* 326
Auguſtow *u* 473
Aulis *u* 531
Aulon *u* 538
Aurićts *u* 422
Ausberg *u* 374
Auſtraſia *pr* 339. 352.
371
Auſtria *pr* 380
Awerback *u* 393
Axele *u* 320
Axenus *mare* 549
Axius *fl* 541
Axiopolis *u* 498
Axium *u* *Ib.*
Azorium *u* 540
Azuli *p* 484

Lib. III.

Abanah *fl* 649
Abaratha *u* 834
Abardal *u* 723
Abarim *m* 659
Abaſſebant *u* 747
Abel *u* 664
  Maacha *Ib.*
  Sittim *u* 661
  Vinearum 660
Abias *fl* 779
Abii *p* 776
Abela *u* 649
Abos *m* 718
Abuceni *p* 700
Abydos *u* 610
Acadræ *p* 788
Acamas *c* 630
Acarnea *u* 612
Acbaſſa *pr* 776
Accabene *p* 711
Acad *u* 709
Accarnon *u* 671
Aceſines *fl* 799
Achæmenides *p* 736
Achatara *u* 786
Achen *u* 833
Collis Acchillæ *m* 673
Achillis Curſus *u* 763
Achindana *fl* 741
Acon *u* 639
Acra *m* 675
Acre *u* 639
Acrabata *u* 669
Leuca Acte *u* 644
Adada *u* 648
Adam *u* 661
Adani *inſ* 700
Adapa *u* 647
Adara *u* *Ib.*
Adarſa *u* 669
Aden *u* 699
Adena *u* 622
Adiabene *pr* 709
Adiavas *fl* *Ib.*
Adida *u* 649
Adiſathri *m* 798. *p* 800
Adonis *fl* 639
Adopiſſus *u* 618
Adoram *u* 673
Adorne *u* 799
Adrama *u* 663
Adramitæ *p* 700
Adramittium *u* 611
Adrapſia *u* 747
Adraſtia *u* 611
Adrinſa *p* 708
Adubeni *p* 693
Æapolis *u* 722
Æchera *u* 637
Ægæi *p* 700
Ægæum *u* 602
Ægypti Torrens 693
Ælam *u* 648
Ælia *u* 676
Æni *inſ* 700
Æolis *pr* 611
Æroſa *inſ* 630
Æſcitæ *p* 692
Æſopus *fl* 607
Æthra *inſ* 628
Aganagora *u* 818
Agaris *fl* 763
Agaritæ *p* 768
Agathoclis *inſ* 700
Agbatha *u* 735
Agbathana *u* *Ib.*
Agemer *u* 806
Agena *u* 834
Agra *u* 739. *p u* 804
Agracan *u* 832
Agræii *p* 693
Agriaſpæ *p* 747
Agrinoma *u* 603
Agrippias *u* 678
Agris *u* 741
Agubeni *p* 693
Agwans *pr* 804
Ai *u* 674
Ajalon *u* 669. 672
Aiazzo *u. ſ* 622
Adinja *p* 609
Adinilli *Ib.*
Aii *p* 800 *inſ* 828
Aiano *inſ* 820
Alabanda *u* 615
Aladeules *p* 717
Alamatha *u* 648
Alani *p* 764 *inſ* 772
Alanoeſi *p* *Ib.*
Albania *pr* 724
Albana *u* *Ib.*
Albanus *fl* *Ib.*
Albaria *u* 644
Aleppo *u* *Ib.* 647
Alexandria *inſ* 742
Alexandria *u* 607. 622
741. 744. 745. 748
769.
Algiar *u* 698
Alicodra *u* 749
Aliga *fl* 808
Alitrophagi *p* 776
Alnata *fl* 766
Alſadamus *m* 649. 654
Altay *m* 596 *p* 776
Altuncala *u* 723
Alvati *u* 722
Alydda *u* 611
Amadabat *u* 807
Amagance *pr* 825
Amalec *m* 670
Amalekites *p* 694
Aman *u* 647
Amanus *m* 620. 654
Amandus *fl* 734
Amangaſaqui *u* 827
Amariace *p* 734
Amariacle *u* 736
Amaſia *u* 600
Amaſtris *u* *Ib.*
Amatha *u* 645
Amathyſia *inſ* 630. *p. u* 631
Amaverza *u* 622
Ambaſtus *fl* 785
Amboina *inſ. u* 829
Amdanager *p* 809
Amida *u* 712
Amiſta *m* 625
Amiſſus *u* 602
Ammonites *p* 660
Amorites *p* 680
Amnia *c* 671
Ampſacis *u* 767
Anabaſtæ *p* 870
Anabi *p* 776
Anactoria *u* 616
Anakims *p* 671
Anaræi *m* 770
Anaritæ *p* 700
Anaroſa *u* 747
Anathemuſa *inſ* 626
Anathoth *u* 674
Anatolia *pr* 596
Anchiola *u* 621
Ancorabites *p* 711
Ancyra *u* 603
Andanus *fl* 741
Andirene *u* 643
Andraca *u* 605
Andragide *u* 833
Andramania *inſ* *Ib.*
Andrapa *u* 603
Andrapus *u* 602
St. Andrea *c* 630. 635
Andraſia *u* 603
Angauri *u* *Ib.*
Angeli *u* 814
Anian *fretum pr* 779
Animachæ *p* 818
Anith *u* 678
Annibæ *m* 775
Antaradus *u* 641
Anthedon *u* 678
Anthemaſia *pr* 711
Anthropophagi *p* 776
Antiboli *fl* 798
Anticus *fl* 766
Antigonia *u* 599. 645
Antilibanus *m* 638
Antioch *u* 645
Antiochia *u* 1090
  Piſidiæ *u* 619
  Mygdoniæ 712
  Penes Taurum 647
Antiochiana *p* 605
Antiopia *u* 666
Antipatris *u* 669
Antitaurus *m* 604. 717
Anubingara *u* 834
Anurogrammum *u* *Ib.*
Aornus *u* 799
Apamia *u* 609. 644
Apamene 644
Apathurum *u* 767
Apanomera *pr* 626
Aphek *u* 666
Aphærema *u* 674
Aphraim *u* 667
Aphrodiſium *u* 632
Apollonia *u* 607. 611
709
Apocopi *m* 798
Apphana *inſ* 700
Arabia *pr* 691. *u* 698
  Deſerta 692
  Felix 696
  Petræa 769
Arabicus *ſ* 699
Arabiſſus *u* 606
Aracca *u* 738
Arach *pr* 746
Arachan *pr. u* 816
Arachoſia *pr. u* 744
Arachatos *u. l* *Ib.*
Arad *u* 673
Aradus *u* 641. 645. *inſ* 643
Aræ *p* 741
Aram *pr* 635
  Sobah 635. 648
  Damaſeck *p* 649
  Naharaim *p* 635
  Maachah 635. 647
Aramathea *u* 669
Ararat *m* 719
Aravari *p* 800
Aravena *pr* 606
Araxes *fl* 718
Araza *u* 767
Arbaca *u* 744
Arbela *u* 667
Arbelites *u* 709
Arbis *u* 747
Arbituri *p* *Ib.*
Arbius *fl* *Ib.*
Arceſſine *inſ* 629
Archelaus *u* 605
Archichelech *u* 723
Ardock *fl* 771
Ardovat *u* 888
Ardoville *u* 736
Are *u* 698. *inſ* 700
Arga *u* 698
Argadina *u* 748
Argari *u* 799
Argentea Regio 818
Argæus *m* 604
Argis *l* 734
Argus *fl* 774
Argyropolis *u* 832
Aria *pr. u. l. fl* 745
Ariaſpe *u* 747
Arimaſpæ *p* 744
Arinchi *p* 764
Arivada *u* 747
Armaſtica *u* 723
Armenia *major* 718
minor 606
Arminig *u* 720
Armuza *u* 742
Armuzum *u* *Ib.*
Arnon *fl m* 658
Aroer *u* 662
Arosbay *u* 832
Arphad *inſ* 643
Arrachan *pr. u* 823
Arſacia *u* 735
Arſarata *u* 720
Arſamoſata *u* *Ib.*
Arſimoto *u* *Ib.*
Arſinoe *u* 631
Arſione *u* 632
Arſitenſes *p* 748
Artacona *u* 746
Artacanda *u* 745
Artamis *fl* 749
Artaſata *u* 736
Artaxata *u* 719
Artaxiſſa *u* 723
Aru *p* 833
Arvad *inſ* 643
Arvari *p* 800
Arvis *m* 625
Arxata *u* 720
Arimphrani *p* 725
Arzerum *pr* 708. *u* 710
Aſcalon *u* 671
Aſcanius *fl. ſ. l* 598
Aſcania *p. i* 609
Aſcatanas *m* 769
Aſher *pr. u* 665
Aſharaffe *u* 747
Aſhdod *u* 671
Aſia *pr* 595
  Minor 597
  Proconſularis 612
  Propria 606
Aſiotæ *p* 772
Askenaz 718
Aſmiræi *m* 775
Aſophon *u* 669
Aſpabota *u* 770
Aſpendus *u* 620
Aſperia *inſ* 630

Aſpalites *l* 658
Aſpitii *m* 770
Aſpithra *u* 786. *p* 788
Aſpthara *fl* 785
Aſſa *u* 671
Aſſyria *pr* 708
Aſſus *u* 607
Aſtabeni *p* 748
Aſtareni *p* 745
Aſtaroth *u* 663
Aſterian *u* 624 *inſ* 628
Ataberia *inſ* 628
Athec *u* 803
Atropatia *pr* 734
Attabas *fl* 818
Attalia *u* 620
Ava *p. u. fl* 819
Avares *p* 767
Audima *pr* 631
Avernus *u* 799
Augamale *u* 811
Avim *pr* 671
Aura *u* 833
Auranitis *p* 664
Aureæ *inſ* 833
Aureum *fl* 798
Aureus Cherſoneſus 821
Auſinza *u* 739
Auſitis *pr* 692
Auſtrale *mare* 700
Auzatia *u* 776. *m* 775
Axima *u* 739
Aza *u* 602
Azae *u* 764
Azania *pr* 705
Azara *u* 770
Azannus *fl* 834
Azekah *u* 673
Azmere *u* 806
Azor *u* 665
Azotus *u* 671
Aſtracan *u* 768

Lib. IV.

St. Abad *ſ* 969
Abadalenry *inſ* 929
Abanni *fl* 914
Abarach *u* *Ib.*
Abarduoſia *pr* 962
Abaſeni *p* 908
Abex *pr. u* 916
Abibe *m* 1087
Abugana *pr. u* 912
Abundi *p* 925
Abutick *u* 857
Abydos *u* *Ib.*
Abyla *m* 893
Acabis *u* 860
Acachica *u* 1076
Acano *u* 911. 915
Acanthine *inſ* 939
Acapulco *u* 1076
Acatlan *u* 1704
Acaxutla 1081
Accadie *p* 953
Acla *u* 1086
Acoma *u* 1071
Acos *u* 1069
Acuco *u* 967
Acus *u* *Ib.*
Acuerra *pr* 964
Triſtiam de Acugna *u* 932
Acuſamil *inſ* 1080
Addaggia *u* 892
Adea *pr* 916
Adel *pr* 915
Adendum *u* 891
Adrumetum *u* 882
Adrumyſtus *u* *Ib.*
Adulacus *ſ* 910
Adulis *u* 911
Adyrmachidæ *pr* 859
Æginarius *inſ* 897
Ægyptus *R* 845
Æguſa *inſ* 897
Ægymnus *inſ* *Ib.*
Æeria *pr* 845
Æripani *p* 842
Ætheria *pr* 908
Æthiopia *ſuperior* *Ib.*
inferior 919
Æthiopicæ *inſ* 929
Æthuſa *inſ* 897
Africa *p* 841
Africerones *p* 900
Agadez *pr. u* 904
Agag *pr* 922
Agargynæ *p* 908
Agguncia *u* 954
Aggyſimba *pr u* 919. 923
Agla *u* 892
Agnet *u* 889
Agver *c. u* 888
Agvia *c* 1094
Aguatulco *p* 1079
Aiotuxetlan *pr* 1073
Alabaſtrinus *m* 853
Alacama *u* 1100
Alacranes *inſ* 1080
Alarbes *p* 891
Albion Nova 958. 969
Alboumequins *pr* 954
Alcazaer *u* 893
Alchalinſes *p* 908
Alagranco *inſ* 935
Alemdine *u* 890
Alexandria *u* 855
Nova *pr* 953
Algiers *pr. u* 885
Aliphus *m* 858
Alkebulam *pr* 842
Almagra *u* 1090
Alpis *m* 858
Alpuerte *u* 1088
All Saints *fl* 1107
Alvarez *inſ* 932
Amaro *pr. u. m* 912
Amari *l* 853
St. Amaro *u* 1106
Amatta *u* 1107
Amazones *pr* 923. 1109
fl 1084
Ambrezi *fl* 925
Amegada *ſ* 1102
America 943
Amicuſia *inſ* 929
Ammonia *pr. u* 858
Amozale *p* 925
Ampaza *u* 921
Ampeluſia *pr* 891
Ampſage *fl* 880
Amſa *u* 891
New Amſterdam *u* 957
Anades *fl* 1087
Anarcaprock *u* 1110
Anchiſa *m* 899
Ancon Sincalia *ſ* 1101
Ancud *ſ* *Ib.*
Nova Andaluſia *pr* 187
1113
Andes *m. i* 1085
St. Andrews *u* 1108
c 1102. *fl* 1131
Andro-arco *u* 931
Angedeſos *u* 1087
St. Angelo *u* 898
De los Angelos *u* 1078
Anghotina *inſ* 929
Port aux Anglois *u* 954
Angoda *u* 931
Angola *pr* 925
Angote *pr. u* 912
Angra des Reys *u* 106
Anguilla *inſ.* 1119
Anian *fret* 1068
Aniſiphyra *u* 858
St. Ann *u* 1090. 1104
1128
Annobon *inſ* 929. 933
Annogambri *m* 858
Antaboſta *u* 931
Antacon *l. u* 853
Ante *u* 964
Antego *inſ* 1118
Antigua *inſ* *Ib.*
Antepeque *u* 1076
Antequera *u* 1079
Ora Anteroſa *pr* 904
Antia *pr* 962
St. Anthonies *inſ* 933
Anthropophagi *p* 919
Antibacchias *inſ.* 929
Antiochia *u* 1090
Antiphila *u* 915
Antiphra *u* 859
Antipyrgus *u* 858
Antius *u* 857
Antinous *u* *Ib.*
Point Antogil *u* 931
Antolala *inſ* 936
Antonio de Cabo *u* 1107
Anygath *u* 904
Anzerman *pr* 1090
Anzichana *pr* 927
Anziqui *p* *Ib.*
Anzuga *pr* 920
Anzuichi *p* 925
Apaletei *m* 962
Apalchia *pr. u* *Ib.*
Apalchen *p. u* 955
Apamatuc *fl* 959
Apanawapesk *p* 956
Aproſitus *inſ* 933
Apollonia *u* 859
Aprodites *u* 856
Aproditopolis *u* *Ib.*
Aptuchi Fanum *u* 859
Aptungis *u* *Ib.*
Aqua Lunda *l* 926
Ara Amoris *c* 910
Palladis *inſ* 929
Aracoſi *l* 1109
Arampec *u* 954
Arangus *u* 904. 908
Araoan *deſ* 902
Arapotes *l* 853
Arar *u* 915
Araya *c* 1113
Arcadia *pr* 853. 856
Archidona *u* 1094
Orbis Arcticus *p* 1127
Arequippa *pr. u* 1095
Arezibæ *fl u* 1120
Arica *u* 1097
Arimao *fl* 1123
Arma *pr* 1090
Herculis *m* 859
Arnedo *u* 1095
Aroia de Corazon *p* 968
Aromota *c* 910
Aroncæ *pr* 908
Aroras *pr* 1111
Arowiani *p* 1110
Arquire *inſ. u* 904
Arrawary *fl* 1109
Arruga *fl* 922
Arſenaria *u* 886
Arſinarium *c* 905
Arſinoe *u* 854. 857
Arvales *m* 904
Aruba *inſ* 1116
Arwaccæ *p* 1111
Arzilla *u* 893
Asbetæ *p* 860
Aſcenſionis *inſ* 932
Aſgara *pr* 891
Aſhamahaga *fl* 956
Aſifinuad *fl* 889
Aſna *u* 857
Aſphar *l* 853
Aſpis *c* 910
Aſſam *u* 915
Aſſawy *p* 1111
Aſſociation *inſ* 1116
Aſſumption *inſ* 954
1003
Aſtaboras *fl* 910
Aſtapus *fl* *Ib.*
Aſtarre *inſ* 929
Aſtrara *inſ* *Ib.*
Atlantia *pr* 908
Atlanticæ *inſ* 936
Atlanticus Oceanus 931
Atlantis Nova *pr* 1131
Atlas *m* 899
Minor *m* 878
Attagovantani *p* 954
Avalites *u. ſ* 910, 911
915
Avanares *p* 962
Avarines *u* 1083
Avaris *pr* 854
Audes *m* 880. 883
Auguſtanica *pr* 853
St. Auguſtine *u* 931. 964
1081. *fl* 1131
Aves *inſ* 1116
Avila *u* 1094
De Avinno *u* 1071
Aulaga *l* 1093
Auracona *u* 1101
Auranco *pr* 1102
Terra Auſtralis *Incognita*
pr 1129
Auxumi *u* 911
Auzomide *u* 912
Axomites *u* *Ib.*
Axona *fl* 962
Ayavire *u* 1097
Ayay *inſ* 1119
Buenos Ayres *u. fl* 1103
Ayumas *fl* 1088
Azaggen *u* 893
Azaſi *u* 890
Azame *u* *Ib.*
Azanaghi *p* 904
Azanbays *p* *Ib.*
Azaoa *deſ* 902
Azar *m* 858
Azati *m* 889
Azua *u* 1123
Azun *u* 916
Azzeciſe *ſ* 1094

B.

Lib. I.

BAchano *u* 82
Bachilo *fl* 97
Badaios *u* 214
Baden ſuperior *u* 136
Bætica *u* 201
Bætis *fl* 201. 211
Bæturia *pr* 214
Baiæ *u* 58
Baieux *u* 157
Baiozaſſes *p* *Ib.*
Baiona *u* 210
Baize *ſ pr* 172
Balacuri *u* 283
Balbeſtro *u* 232
Baldus *m* 98
Balares *fl* 230
Balleum *u* 261
Balſa *u* 223
Baltimore *u* 280
Banatia *u* 271
Banchor *u* 263
Bancornaburg *u* *Ib.*
Bangor *u* *Ib.*
Banne *fl* 279
Bannoc *fl* 270
Bar *p* 153
St. Lucar de Batameda *u*
212
St. Barbara *u* 224
Barcelone *u* 228
Bardſey *inſ* 284
Barganey *u* 271
Barkſhire 249
Bari *p. u* 62
Barleduc *u* 153
Barlette *u* 62
Barrow *fl* 278
Barwick *u* 267
Barroys *p* 187
Baſa *u* 216
Baſſentus *fl* 57
Baſil *u* 136
St. Baſil *u* 172
Baſilicate *p* 63, 64
Baſſigni *pr* 153
Baſtia *u* 115
Baſtitanes *p* 228
Baſtuli *p* 214
Bath *u.* 252
Baugy *u* 162
Baule *u* 58
Bayonne *u* 172
Bazadas *u* *Ib.*
Bearn *pr* *Ib.*
St. Beat *u* 174
Beucairo *u* 180
Beaufort *u* 162
Beaujou *u* 166
Beaujoloys *p* *Ib.*
Beauine *u* 185
Beaumaris *u* 284
Beaumoire *u* 169
Beaudregard *u* 167
Beaupaire *u* 182
Beauvois *u* 150
Bebriacum *u* 98
Bedford *p* 246. 256
Bedii *p* 210
Begorre *p* 172
Beia *u* 223
Belcaſtro *u* 63
Bele *u* 129
Belgæ *p* 249
Belgica prima *pr* 149
Secunda 150
Bellay *u* 183
Belle Iſle 187
Belmont *u* 170
Belleville *u* 168
Bellinzana *u* 135
Belmont *u* 170
Bellocaſſi *p* 159
Beliovaſi *p* 150
Belſia *p* 164
Belzale *u* 123
Belzin *p* 157
Benacus *l* 97
Beneatnum *u* 172
Beneventum *u* 59
St. Bennet le Chaſteau *u*
168
Berehaven *u* 280
Bergamo *u* 99
Bergel *p* 140
Bergerac *u* 170
Berigonium *u* 271
Berks *pr* 240. 249
St. Bernard minor *m* 125
St. Bernardino *u* 140
St. Bernard *u* 174
Bern *p* 134. *u* 136
Berneo *u* 207
Bernicia *p* 254
Berry *pr* 168
Beſanſon *u* 186
Beſignan *u* 63
Beſone *u* 228
Beterenſes *p* 177
Beverly *u* 250
Bevio *u* 140
Beziers *u* 176
Biel *u* 135
Bieterſes *l* 134
Bigerones *p* 174
Bilbilis *u* 232
Bilbo *u* 207
Billon *u* 167
Bincheſter *u* 250
Birat *u* 170
Birgus *fl* 278
Biſcay *p* 206
Biſigli *u* 62
Bitonto *u* *Ib.*
Bituriges Cubi 168
Ubiſci 172
Liberi 168
Blackneſs *C* 155
Blackwater *fl* 277
Blanii *p* 280
Blanos *u* 229
Blaſcon *inſ* 187
Blavet *u. ſ* 160
Blaye *u* 171
Bloys *u* 164. *fl* 152
Boactus *fl* 107
Boanda *fl* 279
Bodenſee *l* 134
Bodetria *fretum* 267
Bochri *u* 230
Bocherum *u* *Ib.*
Bojane *u* 60
Boii *c* 68. 77. 117
Boiſſon *u* 170
Bolonia *u* 76
St. Boniface *u* 115
Bonium *u* 261
Bononia *u* 76
Borgo S. Sepulchro *u* 108
Borders *p* 267
Bormio *u* 141
Boſſa *u* 74
Boverton *u* 261
Bovium *u* *Ib.*
Bovianum *u* 60
Boullenberg *C* 155
Boullogne *u ib.* & 76
Boulognois *p* 155
Bourbon *p. u* 166
Bourdeaux *u* 172
Bourg *u* 183
Bourg ſur la mer *u* 171

Bourges *u* 168
Boutonne *fl* 171
Boyne *fl* 277
Boys de St. Pol 229
Vincennes *C* 152
Boiſſon *u* 170
Bozilia *u* 120
Bracaria Auguſta *u* 223
Bracciani *l* 107
Bracciano *u* 82
Brading *u* 285
Braga *u* 223
Bragane *u* *Ib.*
Braid Albin *u* 268
Branogenium *u* 250
Brecken *m* 262
Brecknock *p* 263
St. Bregoa *u* 174
St. Brieu *u* 160
Bremenium *u* 250
Bronta *fl* 97
Bronnorville *u* 150
Breſcia *u* 98
Breſſi *p* 182
Breſt *u* 160
Bretagne *pr* *Ib.*
Brianſon *u* 182
Bridg-Caſterton *u* 249
Brig *pr* 133
Brigantes *p* 249
Brignolis *u* 179
Brigantio *u* 182
Brionde *u* 167
St. Brioci fanum *u* 160
Brixellum *u* 122
Briſtol *u* 248
Britannia *primà & ſecunda* 250
Britannia *inſ* 227
Britannodunum *u* 270
Brous *la Galliard u* 170
Bruck *u* 136
Brunduſium *u* 62
Brune *f* 184
Brutii *p* 63
Brye *pr* 153
Buche *pr* 172
Buckingham *p. u* 246
Buolth *u* 261
Bugey *u* 183
Buguham *p* 271
Burgedala *u* 172
Burette *u* 171
Burgos *u* 219
Burgundy { Comit. 186
Ducat. 184
Regn. 180 }
Burgundia Transjurana 126
Burtina *u* 232
Buſontus *f* 64
Buſque *u* 128
Buthe *inſ* 283
La Butte du Mont *u* 188
Byrſa *f* 136

Lib. II.

Baba *m* 389
Baccharach *u* 364
Mar di Bachu 456
Baden *pr. u* 395
Badenwiller *u* 374
Badiſſinum *u* 399
Bæbii *p* 490
Bæotia *pr* 530
Balaton *l* 481
Ballenſtede *u* 409
Balſigorod *C* 457
Balthia *u* 433
Baltia *p* 435
Balticum mare 433
Bamberg *u* 389
Banhus *p* 437
Bapaulme *u* 321
Baphyrus *l* 541
Bard *fl* 476
Bardi *p* 548
Barleben *u* 411
Barth *u* 403
Bartonia *pr* 474
Bartize *fl* 403
La Baſſie *u* 322
Baſilia *pr* 435
Baſternæ *p* 507
Batavi *p* 318. 336
Batavodurum *u* 345
Bathune *u* 321
Bathynias *fl* 545
Bavaria *pr* 376
Bavaren *pr* *Ib.*
Bautzen *u* 399
Beaumont *u* 324
Beauvois *u* 323
Auf de Beaurne *u* 356
Becke *fl* 467
Beckem *u* 420
Beckhuſen *u* 423
Bedgoſt *u* 476
Bedſtede *u* 439
Befort *u* 368
Beggerhuis *p* 437
Behaimet *u* 351
Beirani *p* 400
Belgica *pr* 316
Prima & ſecunda *Ib.*
Belgium *pr* 315
Belgrado *u* 483
Beilſtein *u* 362
Belvedere *u. C* 558
Belzo *u* 472
Bemi *p* 394
Bender *u* 503
Benones *p* 399
Berea *u* 541
Berg *p* 357
Berga *u* 541
Bergen *u* 437
Op-Zome *u* 331
Bergio *pr* 449
Berkel *u* 339
Berken *u* 356
Berlin *u* 356. 400
Berlinck *u* *Ib.*
Bernberg *u* 90
Beſſarabia *pr* 503
Beſſimburg *u* 468
Beſſi *p* 503
Bethom *u* 399
Betuiwe *pr* 338
Beverland *inſ* 336
Beybas *l* 467
Bialo *fl* 476
Biana *u* 381
Biaolograd *u* 503
Biarmia *pr* 457
Bibrach *u* 374
Bideloyſiero *l* 456
Biela *pr* 458
Bielſco *u* 473
Biephi *p* 500
Bierulier *u* 320
Bieſcid *m* 480
Bigla *u* 470
Bihighn *u* 490
Bille *fl* 428
Billow *fl* *Ib.*
Bilſen *u* 328
Binche *u* 324
Bing *u* 360
Bingſt *u* 403
Bipontini *u* 364
Birkholm *inſ* 434
Birkara *u* 449
Biſchoffſtein *u* 363
Biſhopſtoffe *u* 378
Biſtrice *fl. u* 499
Bitterfelt *u* 406
Bium *u* 534
Black Sea 546
Towers 550
Blanch *fl* 323
Blaucoſtein *u* 358
Blangis *fl* 322
Blave *fl* 375
Bleking *pr* 435
Bleſcia *pr* *Ib.*
Blida *u* 510
Blokawes *u* 468
Bodenzee *l* 373
Bodenia *p* 449
Bodmin *C* 373
Bodnerſea 449
Bodobrica *u* 362
Bodon *u* 505
Bodum *inſ* 432
Bogens *u* 434
Bogh *fl* 467. 472
Bohemia *R* 394
Bohus *pr. fl* 437
Boiaria *pr* 376
Boiemi *p* 394
Boiodurum *u* 377
Boiohemum *u* 394
Boion *u* 534
Bolduc *u* 330
Bolgiano *u* 383
Bolſano *u* 383
Boko *fl u* 434
Bomel *u* 338
Bonifacio *u* 558
Bonn *u* 360
Bopſingen *u* 374
Boppart *u* 361
Boptingen *u* 374
Borbetomagus *u* 365
Borcholm *u* 468
Borcolm *u* 328
Boreoſtoma *fl* 498
Bornhem *u* 320
Bornholm *inſ. u* 434
Bortholm *u* 429
Borſule *u* 336
Boruſſi *p* 473
Boryſthenes *fl* 456
Boſcum Ducis *u* 330
Boſerlitz *u* 398
Boſnia *pr. fl* 490
Boſporus 549
Boſtizan *u* 519
Boſtonoch *u* 326
Bouchain *u* 323
Bouillon *pr. u* 329
Bouines *u* 325
Bouquenon *u* 370
Bourbourg *u* 320
Boxtehude *u* 421
Boys le Duc *u* 330
Brabant *pr* 330
Bracant *p* 320
Braclaw *u* 470
Bragingliac *u* 388
Bragodunum *u* 374
Brakel *u* 421
Brala *u* 420
Bramſted *u* 429
Brandenburg *pr* 400. 474
Brando *inſ* 434
Branionarium *u* 389
Branki *u* 460
Brailovia *u* 504
Braſſovia *u* 499
Bratuſpantium *u* 330
Braunsberg *u* 474
Brazia *inſ* 496
Breda *u* 331
Bredenberg *u* 429
Brederode *u* 334
Bredervode *u* 339
Bregen *fl* 375
Breme *pr u* 421
Breſlaw *u* 399
Breſt *pr* 470
Breſtys *pr* 476
Bretta *u* 388
Brewers Haven *u* 336
Brill *u* 335
Brin *u* 398
Brigartinus *l* 373
Arx Britannica *c* 335
Briſach *u* 374
Briſachus *u* *Ib.*
Briſgow *pr* *Ib.*
Brixawes *p* 375
Broick *u* 422
Brookhurſt *u* 339
Bros *u* 500
Brouci *p* 484
Bructeri *p* 318. 338. 440
Brug *fl* 319
Bruges *u* *Ib.*
Brunfells *u* 387
Brunsko *u* 473
Brunswick *pr. u* 415
Bruſch *fl* 367
Bruſſels *u* 331
Bruxella *u* *Ib.*
Bucareſta *u* 504
Bucha *u* 374
Bucorne *u* 373
Buda *u* 482
Buden *inſ* 403
Budina *u* 510
Budweis *u* 395
Bulgaria *pr* 509
Bullenſted *u* 409
Buran *pr. u* 339
Burglave *pr. inſ* 432
Burgundie *p* 355
Burich *u* 356
Burii *p* 399
Buris *u* 519
Burredentii *p* 500
Buthorum *u* 536
Buriada *pr* 423
Butringto *u* 536
Butzaw *u* 400
Buxtertrude *u* 421
Byblus *inſ* 554
Byzantium *u* 546

Lib. III.

Baaloth *u* 648
Babel *u* 706
Babel mandel fretum 699
Babylonia *pr* 705
Babylon *u* 706
Bacam *pr* 819
Bacolia *u* 814
Bactria *pr* 748
Badeo *u* 698
Bætius *m* 747
Baffo *u* 631
Bagarda *u* 745
Bagdat *u* 707
Bagoas *m* 745
Bagradas *fl* 739
Bahaman *pr* 717
Bala *u* 669
Balachium *u* 764
Balaguata *u* 809
Ballambua *u* 832
Balalvanus *m* 833
Balanga *u* 818
Balbec *u* 649
Ballebec *u* *Ib.*
Balonca *u* 818
Balſora *u* 708
Baily *inſ* 832
Bamath *u* 660
Bamath Baal *u* 661
Bandan *inſ* 828
Bandore *u* 808
Bannaras *u* 815
Bannaraw *u* 740
Banoam *u* 827
Bantam *u* 831
Baraab *pr* 693
Barachus *fl* 834
Baracura *u* 818
Baraſſe *inſ* 816
Barathene *u* 648
Barathrum *l* 678
Baraza *u* 720
Barbaniſſa *u* 601
Barbariſſus *u* 644
Bardaxema *u* 799
Barfruſhdee *u* 748
Bargu *p* 779
Baris *fl* 799
Barma *pr* 819
Barocho *u* 808
Baronſe *pr* 833
Baronta *fl* 735
Barræ *p* 818
Barſita *u* 708
Baruſſæ *inſ* 827
Barutti *u* 641
Barygaza *u* 799
Barthaliba *pr* 693
Baſadæ *p* 818
Baſan *m* 659
Baſcapan *u* 723
Baſcurides *p* 768
Baſilici *p* *Ib.*
Baſilius *fl* 738
Baſiſine *p* 719
Baſma *u* 832
Baſſe *inſ* 816
Bata *ſ. p* 766
Batachina *inſ* 830
Batana *u* 799
Batanea *pr* 663
Batax *u* 745
Bate *fl* 808
Batecolom *u* 834
Batchame *u* 830
Bathiras *u* 663
Baticalia *u* 809
Batri *p* 747
Batter *pr* 748
Bautiſus *fl* 775
Bayrema *l* 678
Bayren *inſ* 700
Bazacata *inſ* 816
Bebricia *pr* 598
Bebynga *u* 818
Beerſheba *u* 672
Beganna *u* 692
Bela *u* 673
Belfort *u* 666
Belgion *m* 596. *pr* 776
Bengala *ſ. p. u* 816
Benjamin *pr* 674
Bepirrhus *m* 818
Barabonna *u* *Ib.*
Berenice *u* 694
Beriara *p* 692
Beritus *u* 641
Berothæi *u* 648
Berrhæa *m* 644
Berry *u* 740
Berſabe *u* 667
Berzamna *u* 678
Beſor *fl* 671
Betah *u* 648
Betarampha *u* 662
Bethabora *u* 661
Bethel *u* 674
Bethezob *u* 662
Berharam *u* *Ib.*
Eden *pr* 649
Horon *u* 670
Bethlem *u* 673
Nimrah *u* 662
Rhehob *p* 664
Saida *u* 665. 667
San *u* 668
Shemeſh 666. 672
Sora *u* 673
Sur *u* *Ib.*
Bethulia *u* 667
Betius *fl u* 698
Bezabde *u* 713
Bezek *u* 669
Bianco *c* 659. *l* 763
Biani *u* 805
Biblis *u* 641
Bichend *u* 770
Bidaſpes *fl* 799
Bider *u* 808
Billezuga *u* 609
Bindimir *fl* 739
Binta *inſ* 833
Bintam *inſ* *Ib.*
Birrha *u* 710. 719
Biſeries *p* 723
Biſnagar *u* 813
Bithynia *pr* 598
Bitigi *p* 800
Bittigo *m* 596. 776. 798
Blacktower *u* 609
Blouſa *u* 637
Boas *fl* 721
Bocana *u* 834
Bochor *u* 749
Bochu *u* 735
Bodeus *fl* 631
Boldra *u* 807
Bolgar *u* 768
Boloſa *u* 637
Bongo *pr. u* 827
Borgi *p* 745
Borgylia *u* 616
Borneo *inſ. u* 830
Borſanna *fl* 818
Borſyppa *u* 708
Boryſthenes *fl* 763
Boſor *u* 661
Boſphorus *Cimmerius* 763
Thracius 597
Boſra *u* 694
Botanter *pr* 814
Botone *inſ* 828
Bottia *u* 814
Bozra *u* 661
Brama *u* 819

Bramna

Bramna *u* 786
Brampore *u* 809
Briſoana *fl* 739
Brodra *u* 808
Bucephalus *u* 799
Buchor *pr* 803
Bucorſuccor *u* *Ib.*
Bugiales *inſ* 629
Burſa *u* 599
Buſſereth *u* 694
Boſynga *fl* 818
Butis *u* 663
Byconi *pr* 603
Byces *fl* 763
Byclæ *p* 769
Byra *u* 670
Byrrha *u* 647

Lib. IV.

Baalzephon *u* 854
Babel *u* 915
Babel mandel *inſ* 929
Babiba *u* 900
Babylon Ægypt *u* 856
Bacalao *p. inſ* 952
Bacchias *inſ* 929
Badin *pr* 920
Baeza *u* 1094
Bagamedrum *p* 911
Bagaxi *u* 900
Bagota *pr* 1089
Bagradas *fl* 882
Bahama *inſ* 964
Baldivia *u* 1101
Balgada *pr. u* 912
Bally *u* 915
Balſa *fl* 1075
Bamba *pr. u* 926
Bangu *pr. u* 925
Banirendo *u* 893
Banza *u* 926
Baoruca *u* 1121
Baranco *u* 1088. 1104
Barania *fl* 1070
Baraquicemiti *fl* 1115
Barbacene *inſ* 933
Barbada *inſ* 1119
Barbados *inſ* 1118
S. Barbara *u* 1071. *fl* 1093
Barbaricus *ſ* 910. 920
Barbary *pr* 877
Barbela *fl* 920. 925
Barbora *u* 915
Barca *pr u* 858
Barce *pr. u* 859
Barcena *l* 910
Barcitæ *p* 860
Barditis *m* 919
Bardoneir *fl* 1114
Barceras *c* 1102
Barna *u* 914
Barnagaſſum *pr* 911
Barnagnes *pr* *Ib.*
Barnwelts *inſ* 1130
Barren *inſ* 1128
Barſtable *u* 956
St. Bartholomew *u* 1080
inſ 1119. *c* 1130
Barus *pr* 916
Baſnithus *m* 853
Baſſium *c* 910
Port le Baſques 951
Baſra *u* 893
Baſſachitæ *p* 859
Los Baſtimentos *inſ* 1087
Batha *u* 886
Bathus *u* 910
Batrachus *u* 858
Batta *pr u* 925
Bavagul *pr* 923
Bayamo *u* 1123
Bazania *fl* 1069
Bay Blanch *ſ* 951
Beach *pr* 1129
Bebul *u* 915
Belen *fl* 1183
Belgium Novum 955
Bengo *fl* 925
Beni Jeſro *u* 894
Jeſſeren *u* 892
Benin *pr* 906
Benomatana *p* 922
Berenice *u* 859
Bermeio *fl* 1003
Bermuda *u* 959
Bermudaz *inſ* 961
Beroa *u* 914
Bertecca *pr* 923
Beſecath *pr* 842
Betſames *u* 854
Bicar *u* 1096
Bidar *u* 915
Biledulgerid *pr* 901
Biſam *u* 914
Biſcała Nova *pr* 1071
Biſerta *u* 882
Bito *pr* 907
Blanca *inſ* 1091
Blance *c* 904. 968
Blanch *inſ* 954
Blanco *fl* 181
Blemyæ *p* 842
Blind Town *u* 959
Boaruco *pr* 1121
Bocanum *u* 889
Bogudiana *pr* 891
Bocadel Drago *fret* 1112
1113
Bolriticum *f* 853
Bolus Erithra *u* 855
Hiera *Ib.*
Bombaza *pr* 920
Bombon *u* 1096
Bona *u* 883
Bonæ ſpei *c* 924
Bonaire *inſ* 1116
Bona viſta *c* 951
Bonaventure *u* 1090
Bordea *deſ* 902
Borealis Terra Incognita
1127
Boreum *e* 859
Boriguen *inſ* 1120
Borneo *fl* 904. *u* 907
Bornum *pr* *Ib.*
Boro *pr* 923
Boſton *u* 956
Botongi *pr* 923
Boxo *c* 969
Boyaman *fl* 1120
Bracomori *p* 194
Bramas *p* 927
St. Brandon *inſ.* 930
Braſil *pr* 1105
Brava *u* 916. *inſ* 933
Terra de Brea *pr* 1112
Brech *u* 886
Breſt *u* 951
Briſtow *u* 956
Briton *inſ* 954
Brion *inſ* *Ib.*
Bubaſtis *u* 854
Bubia *fl* 1088
Bucolicus *m* 859
Budomel *c* 906
Buenaviſta *inſ* 933
Buenos ayres *fl. u* 1104
Bugia *pr. u* 884
Bumbebe *pr* 923
Burgo *u* 898
Burugrug *fl* 891
Buzara *m* 880
Buzes *pr* 859
Byrſa *u* 882
Byzacena *pr. u* *Ib.*

C.

Lib. I.

CAballinum *u* 185
Caballio *u* 180
Cabocagli *u* 70
Cabo de Cruz *c* 195
Cabo finis terræ *c* 211
Cabo Ortegal *c* *Ib.*
Cabrera *inſ* 230
Cadis *u* 213
Cadomum *u* 157
Cadurci *p* 170
Caen *u* 157
Caeri *u* 107
Caer Cubi *u* 284
Caerdigan *u* 261
Caer glowy *u* 248
Caer Laverack *u* 271
Caer-lion *u* 250
Carmarthen *p. u* 263
Caerſeont *u* 261
Cæſaria *inſ* 188. *u* 118
Auguſta *u* 332
Cæſaris Burgum *u* 158
Cæſarodunum *u* 162
Cæſaromagus *u* 150
Cagedo *fl* 231
Cagliare *c. u* 74
Cahors *u* 170
Cajeta *u* 57
Calabria *pr* 63
Inferior 64
Superior 63
Cala Gorina Horra } *u* 204
Cala Gorina Guris } *u* 204
Calais *u* 154
Calaris *u* 74
Calataiub *u* 232
Calatum *u* 250
Calatrava *u* 218. 222
Caledonia *pr* 271
Caletes *p* 159
Callota de Neſquin *u*
225
Calpe *m* 212
Calypſo *inſ* 64
Cam *fl* 254
Camalodunum *u* 249
Camargue *p* 179
Camboritum *u* 254
Cambridge *pr. u* 246. 248
254
Cameracaſtrenſis *u* 151
Camerine *u* 123
Campagna de Roma 82
Campania 29
Antiqua *p* 57
Nova *p* *Ib.*
Campaigne *p* 152
Campi Canini *p* 140
Campi Lapidei *p* 178
Campi Catalaunici *pr*
177
Can *fl* 254
Candale *u* *Ib.*
Cangani *p* 280
Cannæ *u* 61
Canus *m* 195
Canigo *m* *Ib.*
Cantabri *p* 207
Cantabriate *m* 201
Cantabricum Mare 196
Cantæ *p* 271
Canterbury *u* 249
Cantiani *p* *Ib.*
Cantiui *p* *Ib.*
Cantire *p* 271
Cantium *inſ* 285
Canuſium *u* 62
Cape de Iſtrie *u* 100
Capitinate *p* 61
Capori *p* 210
Capraria *inſ* 110
Capreæ *inſ* 64
Caprulæ *inſ* 102
Capuæ *u* 58
Caraceni *p* 59
Carara *u* 108
Carbantorigum *u* 271
Carcaſone *u* 176
Cardano *u* 230
Cardigan *pr* 262
Caribdis *ſ* 67
Cariofergus *u* 279
Cariſti *p* 207
Carinthia *pr* 125
Carlat *u* 167
Carlingford *u* 279
Carlile *u* 254
Carmanvogla *u* 128
Carmarden *pr* 262
Carnarvan *pr. u* 262
263
Carnicæ *m. p* 125
Carniola *pr* *Ib.*
Carnutes *p* 164
Caro *c* 68
Carpentani *p* 220
Carpentras *u* 180
Carpi *u* 77
Carick *p* 271
Carrion *fl* 209
Carteiæ *u* 212
Carthagena *u* 217
Carthaginenſis *p* 202
Carthema *u* 216
Caſal *u* 123
Caſerte *u* 59
Caſſiles *u* 280
Caſſiterides *inſ* 284
Caſtellani *p* 229
Caſtellona *u* 109
Caſtille *p* 219
Caſtillon *u* 183
Caſtlefrance *u* 99
Caſtles *c* 141
Caſtletown *u* 283
Caſtro *u* 62
Caſtro Giovanni *u* 70
Caſtrolda *u* 109
Caſtres *u* 151
Caſtro villare *u* 64
Caſtrum Alatum *u* 270
Heraldi *u* 169
Theodorici *u* 153
Caſtulo *u* 220
Caſtaon *u* *Ib.*
Caſtulonenſis ſaltus *m*
201
Catalonia *pr* 228
Catana *u* 71
Caterlough *p. u* 278
Catelauni *p* 152
St. Catharines *c* 129
Cathneſſe *pr* 271
Cattieuchlani *p* 249
Cavan *p* 278
Cavari *p* 182
Cavillon *u* 180
Cauci *p* 280
Caux *u* 158
Ceano *u* 59
Cel *l* 134
Celtiberia *p* 231
Celtica *pr* 214
Celto Galatia *p* 142
Cenomani *p* 77. 117
Cenomanſes *p* 163
Centum cellæ *u* 82
Centrones *p* 128
Cerdague *p* 229
Cerretani *p* 230
Cervia *u* 76
Cervillan *u* 217
Ceſſena *u* 76
Cex *u* 215
Chabannes *u* 170
Chabriers *u* 179
Chalday *inſ* 284
Chalaris *u* 73
Chalon *u* 152. 185
Chaluz *u* 170
Chambarie *u* 128
Champaigne *pr* 152
Chancelle *u* 166
Chantille *u* 151
Chapelle *u* 156
Charboniers *u* 129
Charente *fl* 169. 171
Charenton *u* 150
Charmis *u* 73
Charoiles *u* 185
Charroux *u* 166
Chartres *u* 164
Chaſteau Briant *u* 160
Dun *u* 164
Moron *u* 172
Neif *u* 170
Portian *u* 156
Roux *u* 168
Saraſin *u* 171
Thierry *u* 153
Chaſtelet *u* 157
Chaſtel Chalons *u* 229
Herald *u* 169
Jalone *u* 175
Neau *u* 174
Chaſtillon *u* 172
Chatham *u* 252
Chaumont *u* 153, 183
Chaune *u* 156
Chedlady *fl* 262
Chenil *fl* 212
Cher *fl* 168
Cherſunum *u* 115
Cheſter *u* 284
Cheviot *m* 267
Chianus *fl* 168
Chiarama *u* 141
Chiavenna *p* 140
Chicheſter *u* 252
Chientus *fl* 80
Chiltern *m* 239
Chioggia *inſ* 102
Chiuſi *u* 109
Chorges *u* 182
Chur *u* 140
Churburg *u* 158
Cilini *p* 210
Cimbri *p* 148
Cimmeni *p* *Ib.*
Cimmerius *m* 80
Cinia *fl* 228
Cinnium *u* 230
Circe *u* 83
Cirenceſter *u* 250
Ciſſanceſter *u* 252
Ciſteron *u* 179
Citeriorem *u* 223
Citta de Caſtella *u* 81
Citta del Chieta *u* 59
Cittadella *u* 230
Cita Nova *u* 100
Civita Vecchia *u* 82
Cividad de Auſtria *u*
100
Real *u* 209
Roderigo *u* 219
Claerac *u* 175
Clarecounty 279
Claſſi *u* 77
Clavenna *u* 141
Cleri *u* 164
Clermont *u* 150. 167
Clevenertal *u* 141
Clavius *fl* 169
Clin *fl* *Ib.*
Cliſſon *u* 160
Clonmel *u* 280
Clugni Monaſter 186
Cluſium *u* 107
Cluyd *fl* 263
Cluydſdale 270
Coctiæ *m* 125
Coignac *u* 170
Coim *u* 216
Coira *u* 140
Colcheſter *u* 253
Collebræ *u* 229
Coln *fl* 253
Colonnes *e* 64
Colonia London *u* 258
Colrane *pr* 278
Comachia *u* 77
Comacina *inſ* 118
Combraille *p* 166
Cominges *p* 174
Como *u* 118
Compeigns *u* 150
Compendium *u* *Ib.*
Complutum *u* 220
Compoltſchin *pr* 140
Compoſtella *u* 210
Conirela *inſ* 230
Concordia *a* 160
Concreſſant *u* 168
Condabora *u* 220
Condate *u* 160
Condivincinum *u* *Ib.*
Condon *u* 175
Conſulat *u* 170
Conflans *u* 129
Conil *u* 212
Conimbre *u* 223
Connacia *pr* 279
Connaught *pr* *Ib.*
Cononium *u* 261
Conwey *u* 262
Conquet *u* 160
Conſenſia *u* 64
Conſerani *p* 172
Conſerans *p. u* 174
Conſtance *l* 157
Conteſtani *p* 228
Contini *p* 271
Convenarum *p* 174
Cavenares *p* 172
Conwey *fl* 262

Corbeil *u* 151
Corbes *l* 277
Corbie *u* 156
Corcagia *u* 280
Corfinium *u* 60
Corinium *u* 250
Coriondi *p* 280
Corduba *pr. u* 211
Coritani *p* 249
Cornavii *p* 250
Cornet *c* 188
Cornubii *p* 271
Cornwal *p* 246
Corſica *inſ* 29, 115
Cortona *u* 108
Corve *fl* 263
Corvo *inſ* 225
Corunna *u* 210
Coſetani *p* 229
Coſmopolis *u* 110
Coſſa *u* *Ib.*
Coſſium *u* 172
Cotſwold *m* 239
Coventry *u* 255
Cournoville *pr* 160
Cowes *c* 285
Crathii *fl* 64
La Craux *pr* 178
Crecy *u* 155
Crema *u* 98
Cremera *fl* 82
Cremien *u* 182
Cremona *u* 118
Crevice *fl* 169
Creuſe *fl* 168
Croiſſie *u* 160
Croſſeto *u* 109
Crotona *u* 63
Crovy *u* 156
Cuenca *u* 220
Cullera *u* 228
Cuma *u* 58
Cumberland *pr* 246
Cunici *u* 230
Cunningham *pr* 271
Curi *fl* 184
Curia *u* 140
Cyclopes *p* 68
Cyclopum Scopuli *inſ* 71
Cyrnos *inſ* 115

Lib. II.

Cæſarea Lutra *u* 364
Calacrium *u* 510
Calberg *m* 415
Calcar *u* 356
Calcis *u* 534
Callipolis *u* 546
Calliſte *inſ* 555
Culmigeria *u* 474
Caliſtoma *fl* 498
Calucones *p* 375
Calydon *for.* 534
Cambray *pr. u* 324
Chaſteau Cambreſis *Ib.*
Cameracum *pr. u* *Ib.*
Camfere *u* 336
Camienciez *u* 472
Camin *u* 459
Canits *u* 399
Valde Compare *inſ* 562
Campen *u* 338
Campodunum *u* 374
Canche *fl* 322
Cancoentii *p* 500
Candaw *u* 468
Candt *r* 409
Candia *inſ. u* 555. 558
Canea *pr. u* *Ib.*
Caninofates *p* 336
Caniſia *u* 382
Capareus *u* 551
Saltus Carbonarius 323
Cardia *u* 546
Careſſus *u* 555
Cargapol *u* 462
Carinthia *pr* 382
Caryſto *u* 552
Carolſtadt *u* 363
Carmefunt *ſ* 437
Carni *p* 382
Carniola *pr* *Ib.*
Carnutum *u* 482
Carodunum *u* 476
Carpathii *m* 480
Carthea *u* 555
Carpen *u* 328
Caſan *pr. u* 460
Caſimiria *u* 476
Caſpium Mare 456
Caſſandria *u* 542
Caſſandt *inſ. u* 320
Caſſels *u* 418
Caſſiope *u* 536
Caſſovia *u* 482
Caſtegnaza *m* 515
Caſtel *u* 389. 393
Novo *u* 482. 493. 558
Caſter *u* 356
Argiro Caſtro *u* 536
Caſtrolin *u* 449
Catena Mundi *m* 515
Catharo *ſ. u* 493
Catti *p* 385. 419
Catzenebbogen *u* 385
Cauron *inſ* 553
Cazach *u* 491
Cebium *u* 504
Cecropria *u* 528
Celidnus *fl* 537
Cell *u* 415
Celeya *u* 382
Cenchrea *u* 525
Centauri *p* 539
Centron *u* 328
Ceos *inſ* 554
Cephalenia *inſ. u* 561
Cephalo *u* 554
Cephiſſus *fl* 518
Ceratus *u. fl* 557
Ceraunii *p* 496
Cereſi *u* 541
Cerenides *u* *Ib.*
Cerigo *inſ* 555
Ceronia *u* 531
Ceſſine *u* 399
Cecerigo *inſ* 560
Cetius *u* 351
Chabris *fl* 541
Chalcidice *p* 542
Chalcis *u* 534. 552
Chali *p* 432
Cham *u* 393
Chaminiſa *u* 519
Charani *p* 420
Chaonia *pr* 535
Charaſon *fl* 545
La Charbonniere *u* 318
Charitni *p* 390
Charlemont *u* 325
Charudes *p* 432
Charmes *u* 370
Chauſuarii *p* 408
Chatti *p* 418
Chauci *p* 416. 420
Chedini *p* 440
Chelmo *pr. u* 472
Cherona *u* 531
Cherſo *inſ* 495
Cheruſci *p* 412. 416
Cheſtin *c* 555
Chiarenza *u. c* 519
Chiers *fl* 326
Chilonite *c* 520
Chilonium *u* 429
Chimay *u* 323
Chiſamo *u* 558
Chriſtenburg *u* 435
Chriſtendorp *u* *Ib.*
Chriſtiana *u. ib. inſ* 560
Chriſtianopolis *u* 435
Chronack *u* 388
Chronus *fl* 467, 473
Chryſites *u* 542
Chryſonicum *u* 505, 506
Chuni *p* 484
Cia *inſ* 554
Ciabrus *fl* 498
Cibinium *u. fl* 499
Cicynethus *inſ* 551
Ciſland *inſ* 432
Cimarus *c* 555
Cimbri *p* 351
Cimeris *u* *Ib.*
Cimolis *inſ* 555
Cireus *fl* 552
Ciſamus *u* 558
Citeum *u* *Ib.*
Citheron *m* 531
Citium *u* 542
Clarewang *u* 368
Clagnefurt *u* 382
Claude *inſ* 555. 559
Claudiopolis *u* 500
Clauſenberg *Ib.*
Cleaveland *pr. u* 356
Cleve *Ib.*
Clivia *Ib.*
Clyſſa *u* 491
Cnemis *m* 533
Cobandi *p* 432
Coburg *u* 389
Cobolentz *u* 361
Cochina *u* 503
Cochino *u* 551
Cocytus *fl* 535
Codonania *inſ* 433
Coeten *u* 409
Cognamus *m* 381
Colambes *u* 505
Colberg *u* 403
Colen *pr. u* 360
Colchinium *u* 493
Colluga *u* 460
Colmagro *u* 461
Colmar *u* 446
De Cholachino *ſ* 552
Colocza *u* 484
Colonamich *u* 509
Colonia *u* 360
Agrippina *u* *Ib.*
Trajana 356
Colubra *fl* 506
Columbella *u* 505
Comara *inſ* 482
Comenolitati *p* 539
Comines *u* 320
Conadus *ſ* 433
Conde *u* 323
Condora *pr* 459
Confluentz *p* 361
Congel *u* 437
Connigeberg *u* 474
Conſtance *l. u* 373
Conſtantinople *u* 547
Conſtat *u* 390
Conteſſo *ſ* 541
Copenhagen *u* 433
Copperdale *pr* 447
Corbach *u* 418
Corcyra *inſ* 496. 561
Corfu *inſ* *Ib.*
Corelia *pr* 458
Corenberg *u* 459
Corinth *pr. u* 525
Corycus *u. c* 557
Cornah *u* 408
Corona *u* 499
Corone *ſ. u* 521
Corſira *u* 460
Cort Chine *u* 336
Cortina *u* 557
Coryphaſium *c* 521
Coſſova *u* 510
Coſtin *u* 403
Corthuſe *u* 399
Coub *u* 364
Covin *u* 505
Courtray *u* 320
Crabuts *pr* 490
Cracovia *u* 476
Cracow *u* *Ib.*
Crapack *m* 480
Cratova *u* 506
Cranenburg *u* 356
Cremia *u* 381
Crems *u* *Ib.*
Crempe *u. fl* 429
Cremſer *u* 398
Crenides *u* 541
Creſtonia *pr* 544
Creta *inſ* 555
Creticum Mare *Ib.*
Criſſa *u* 532
Croatia *pr* 490
Croia *u* 538
La Croix *m* 438
Cronaburg *u* 440
Cronach *u* 388
Cronenburg *c* 433
Cronſtad *u* 499
Croſſen *u* 399
Crunitznach *u* 364
Culemberg *p. u* 339. *m* 351
Culm *u* 474
Culmback *u* 408
Curetes *p* 534
Curiapegniana *u* 408
Curicum *u* 495
Curicta *inſ* *Ib.*
Curland *pr* 468
Curta *u* 482
Curſola *inſ. u* 496
Curſolari *inſ* 561
Cuſtrine *u* 400
Cyclades *inſ* 550
Cydonia *u* 557
Cynthinium *u* 534
Cynthus *m* 553
Cynus *u* 533
Cypariſſi *u* 521
Cyrra *u* 532
Cythera *inſ* 550
Cythnus *pr* 555
Cytia *u* 558
Cytinum *u* 534
Cyzicus *inſ* 550
Czandre *u* 506
Czeremiſſi *p* 461
Czernigo *u* 460
Czirko *u* 473
Czyk *p* 500

Lib. III.

Cabadinæ *p* 471
Cabandone *pr* 738
Cabira *u* 601
Cabecæ *p* 818
Caboras *m* 716
Cabuthuthra *m* 698
Cabul *pr. u* 744
Cacamacon *fl* 785
Cachete *u* 723
Caduſii *pr* 735
Cael *u* 812
Cælo-Syria *pr* 649
Cæſarea *u* 604. 669
Philippi *u* 665
Dio Cæſaria *u* 605
Flavia Cæſaria *u* 670
Cæſius *fl* 724
Caffa *u* 763
Caicolam *pr. u* 810
Caicus *fl* 598. 610
Caielon *u* 883
Caifung *u* 787
Cailon *u* 828. *inſ* 816
Cainaum *inſ* *Ib.*
Caindu *pr. u* 777
Caipumo *fl* 823
Caiton *u* 787
Calacte *u* 709
Calacine *p* *Ib.*
Calam *p* 819
Calamo *inſ* 627
Calautan *u* 822
Calba *u* 771
Calbis *fl* 598
Calcedon *u* *Ib.*
Calcadnus *fl* 621
Calicute *pr. u* 810
Caledoni caput 630
Callinice *u* 644
Callirrhoe *u* 661
Calne *u* 708
Calvarie *m* 658
Calwalla *u* 806
Camaran *inſ* 700
Cambaia *pr. u* 806
Cambalu *u* 774
Cambar *u* 833
Cambris *f* 775
Cambyſis *fl* 719
Cambyſum *fl* 798
Camelorum Regio 769
Camiſſene *pr* 746
Campæ *u* 605
Campanels *u* 808
Campion *u* 777
Camul *pr* *Ib.*
Cana *Major u.* 667
Minor *Ib.*
Canaan *pr* 638. 655
Canac *fl* 734
Canapſeni *p* 768
Canara *pr* 809
Candahor *pr. u* 744
Candari *p* 770
Candie *u* 834
Cane *u* 612
Caniclu *l* 774
Canis *fl* 639
Cannæ *u* 618. 708
Cantharis *u* 741
Canthymus *u* 799
Canton *u* 787
Capacote *u* 810
Caparorſa *u* 678
Capernaum *u* 665
Capitolias *u* 649
Cappadocia *pr. fl* 604
Secunda 605
Caput Calidoni *c* 630
Gentis *u* 719
Caracenſium *u* 620
Caracoras *u* 770
Carami *l* 774
Caramania *pr* 621
Caramit *u* 713
Carata *u* 799
Caraſia *pr* 608
Caratæ *p* 769
Carathra *u* 618
Carazan *pr* 777
Carabalia *pr.* 620
Carcimitis *fl* 763
Cardimine *inſ* 700
Cardandan *pr* 776
Careanfu *u* 775
Caria *p. inſ* 628
Cariathiarim *u* 672
Cariath Sephir *Ib.*
Carindas *fl* 734
Carioth *u* 673
Cariphi *fl* 798
Carman *u* 698
Carmania *u* 741. *pr* 746
Carmel *m* 639
Carnaim *u* 663
Caromaram *fl* 774
Carpaſiæ *inſ* 635
Carpaſſus *pr* 631
Carpathos *inſ. u* 628
Carpathium mare 595
Carpella *c* 741
Carræ *u* 712
Carthan *u* 666
Caſa *u* 739
Casbin *u* 735
Caſcar *pr* 776
Caſcimur *u* 802
Caſham *u* 747
Caſeii *m* 775
Caſilmach *fl* 598
Caſiotis *pr* 644
Caſius *m* 638
Caſluim *p* 671
Caſmer *fl* 638
Caſpia *pr* 747
Caſpiæ portæ *m* 596, 747
Caſpin *u* 672
Caſpiræi *p* 800
Caſpiria *pr* 802
Caſpium mare 724
Caſſanito *pr* 700
Caſſirotæ *p* 745
Caſta *u* 813
Caſtamona *u* 600
Caſtol Gera *u* 625
Caſtrum Peregrinorum 667
Novum *Ib.*
Regium 666
Catabeda *m* 818
Catamorea *p* 626
Catamul *fl* 799
Cataonia *pr* 605
Catarachus *fl* 620
Catehoa *u* 814
Cathay *pr* 773
Cathrarpis *fl* 741
Catigan *u* 816
Catio *u* 678
Catoranagara *u* 786
Cattabani *p* 700
De la Catti *c* 630

Cattigara u 787
Caucaſiæ portæ m 596
Caucaſus m 766. 769
Caudriaces fl 741
Cauchin-China p 820
Cavilan p 819
Caulanitis pr 711
Caximer u 802
Cayſtrus fl 598. 614
Cebcha fl 799
Cedes Nepthalim u 665
Cedrei p 692
Cedron u. fl 672
Cedar u Ib.
Ceila u 673
Ceilan inſ 825
Cene u 612
Cephene pr 739
Ceraſtis inſ 630
Ceraſus u 601
Ceraunii m 766
Cerceticus ſ Ib.
Cerchaus p 779
Cergiron u 787
Cerguth pr 779
Cerines p. u 631
Cerioth u 673
Ceſi inſ 629
Ceſtrus fl 620
Cethinia inſ 630
Cethlan u 666
Cetium u 631
Ceraunia u 632
Chabala u 805
Chabalaca u Ib.
Chaberis fl. u 799
Chaboras m 734
Chabor u 735
Chadambaram u 813
Chadid u 674
Chadramotitæ p 800
Chænides p 768
Chæriſtus fl 721
Chalanitide p 708
Chalatene pr 735
Chalcidice p 644
Chalcis u 644
Chalcitis p 710
Chaldea pr 596
Chale u 810
Chalmodora u 647
Chalyban u 644
Chalybanotis pr Ib.
Chalybes pr 723
Chamatha u 648
Chambel fl 799
Chamdagrin u 813
Champa p 820
Characene pr 738
Chara-chiſar u 609
Charadræ p 741
Charax u 746
Themnath Chares u 669
Chariſpe u 749
Charomithrene p 734
Charraccharta u 749
Chars u 720
Chaſdim pr 705
Chatæ p 774
Chatking u 787
Chathrarpis fl 741
Chatzarhevam u 664
Chatua u 810
Chatzar u 665
Chatziæi p 800
Chatzor u 673
Chaucabeni p 693
Chau elei
las p 739
lateni
Chaul u 809
Chelonophagi p 741
Chenon fl 799
Cheroſmii p 770
Cherſoneſus u 763
Aurea pr 821
Cheſmur pr 777
Cheuxan p 788
Chiacoporo u 748
Chiama l 819
Chimæra m 617
China pr 782
Chinchintales p 779
Chinchiamſu u 787
Chios inſ 625. u 626
Chiſon fl 638
Chiti c 630
Choaſpa u. fl 744
Cholna u 720
Choraſſin p 748
Chorazim u 665
Chorma u 672
Chorodamus c 699
Choromandel u 813
Chorſa u 720
Chorſeus fl 638
Chrindri p 748
Chryſopolis u 598
Chryſorrhoas fl 649
Chuſeſtan p 738
Cheſmur u 802
Chyrman pr. u 741
Cialie u 777
Cian u 830
Ciandecan u 855
Cianthang fl 786
Cidnus fl 621
Cilicia aſpera p 620
Cilicia pr Ib.
Ciliciæ portæ m Ib.
Cimmeris u 621
Cimmerii p 767
Cimmerium u. c Ib.
Cinædocolpitæ p 700
Cingtu u 787
Cinnereth u 666
Cypariſſa inſ 627
Circan pr 747
Circaſſiani p 766
Circum u 764
Cirtatha u 818
Ciſhion u 667
Ciſſia pr 738
Cithera u 631
Citium u Ib.
Citer u 806
Ciumbabon inſ 828
Clamanienſes p 605
Clamaſſum u 720
Clamur u 814
Clatos inſ 627
Claudiopolis u 620
Clazomene inſ. u 614
Clides c 630. inſ 635
Climachus u 602
Climax m 698
Cnidus u. c 616
Coa fl 799
Coacus fl 744
Coatras m 708. 716
Coamoni p 749
Coaxtræ p 767
Cocalia u 602
Cocconagora u 818
Cochin pr. u 810
Cogni u 617
Coia u 826
Coilon u 824
Coim r 719
Colans u 787
Colchi u 799
Colchis pr 721
Coli u 818
Collinia inſ 630
Colmuchi u 834
Colobraſſius u 620
Cologenber u 712
Colonia u 720
Colophon u 613
Coloſſa u 609. inſ 629
Colthene p 719
Columbo u 834
Comagena pr 646
Comana u 601. 605
Comari c 769. 798
Combuſta inſ 700
Comodæ p 769
Commaria *Extrema* c 798
Conapſoni p 768
Conſata u 603
Conica u Ib.
Conioce u 767
Connelia u 631
Cononor pr. u 810
Conſtantia u 632
Contaciſſyla u 799
Conſani p 749
Coos, Cous inſ 627
Copthorim p 671
Coras u 779
Coraz fl. m 766
Corcam p 747
Cordiæi m 719
Corduene pr Ib.
Cordyle u 602
Corea inſ 878
Coronyum c 630
Cornochiette Ib.
Coronus m 716. 734
Corſunum u 763
Cory c 810
Corydalla u 617
Corigaza u 818
Corymbia inſ 628
Coſmi u 824
Coſſæi p 739
Cota u 810
Cotacene p 719
Cotiaris fl 785
Cottiara u 799
Couche pr. u 815
Coul u 820
Coulan pr. u 811
Coy u 719
Cragas u. m 617
Cranganor pr. u 810
Crat u 694
Cremen u 723
Cremna u 619
Creſſa u 616
Cretopolis m 620
Crim u. pr 763
Croceus fl 785
Croom u 747
Cruſocus pr 631
Cruſtinæ u 771
Cryptus u 698
Cryſaoras fl 818
Cteſyphon u 708
Cucuſon u 606
Cudute p 818
Cufa u 713
Cuma u 612
Cunula u 799
Cupreſſitum u 709
Cuprus fl 709
Curdi p 636
Curdurmuch u 820
Curias c 630. u 632
Curroy p 820
Curſus Achillis u 763
Cuſia pr 776
Cuſh, Cuſha pr 738
Cuſiana pr Ib.
Cutheans p 670
Cyaneus fl 721
Cybros u 644
Cylendrine p 802
Cyprus inſ 630. fl 709
Cyreckbata u 735
Cyreſtica pr 644
Cyrnus fl 724
Cyropolis u 735
Cyroſchata u 770
Cyrrhus u 644
Cyrus fl 719. 724
Cyrza u 741
Cyzicus inſ. u 610

Lib. IV.

Cabaio inſ 1083
Cabambe m 925
Cabaya pr 1121
Cabazza u 925
Cabis u 881
Cabot u 1104
Cabra u 905
Cacango pr 925
Cacapool fl 1100
Cachapiaro u 1093
Cacofogo m 968
Cacoues p 1104
Cadiz nova u 1115
Cæſar fl 1088
Cæſarea u 886
Cafraria pr 923
Cajane fl 1109
Cairo u 856
Cairoan u 883
Cairobon inſ 1120
Cajuſſa inſ 929
Calabinda u 1104
Calathe inſ 897
Caledonia Nova pr 953
Calen u 920
Cali u 1090
Califormia pr 968
Calpe m 893
De los Camerones fl 1102
Cambylis u 911
Camoni p 962
Campeche u 1079
Camucuiara p 1106
Canada pr. fl 952
Canaga fl 904
Canagadi pr 962
Cananea u 1106
Canaries inſ 933
Canares p 1094
Canchis m 919
Candelaria u 1104
Canelam pr 1094
Canfila pr 914
Caniticum fl 853
Cano pr. u 904
Canoas fl 1114
Canopus u 855
Contabetes m. 919. 925
Canten fl 1100
Capanavatzla u 1080
Caparra u 1120
Capas m 900
Capha m Ib.
Capraria inſ 933
Capſa u 902
Capuri p 1111
Caput Currentium c 923
Caracas u 1114
Caramanta u 1090
Carangues u 1093
Caravalleda u 1114
Caravaya pr 1096
Carcares p 1104
Carfur u 916
Carohana inſ 897
Caritche ſ 1113
Carlos u 1083
Carone fl 1112
Carnuga fl 904
Caribes inſ 1117
Caripo u 1111
Carthage u 882. 1090
Cartago u 1083
Carthagena pr. u 1087
Caſapualca u 1080
Caſena pr 905
Caſperia inſ 933
Caſpurough fl 1109
Caſſipute fl Ib.
Caſſumo u 912
Caſteaux ſ 951
Caſtella aurea pr 1085
Caſtra Judæorum u 854
Caſtro u 1094. 1101
Cateractes major 910
minor 857
Catelina inſ 1116
Cathratæ inſ 929
Catuda fl 880
Porto de Cavallos u 1082
Cauca fl 1087
Caxamalca u 1095
Las Caxas u 1073
Caxumo u 912
Cazaze fl 1088
De Cedros c 969. fl 1090
Centpuis u 890
Cepita u 1097
Cercina inſ. u 897
Cerne inſ 931. 936
Chagre fl 1086
Chalce p 1076
Chalcaqui p 1003
Chaluteca pr 1081
Chamalucon fl 1082
Chamnoe inſ 931
Champlain l 953
Chancay p 1095
Chanes p 1104
Chapala l 1073
Chopen Chicti u 1090
Charcas pr 1093
Charente fl 962
Cape Charles c 950
Fort de Charles u 964
Golf de Chaſteaux ſ 951
Chaus pr 892
Chelbi inſ 897
Chelonidas l 900
Chelonidem l 904
Chelonitides inſ 1000
Chemia pr 845
Chepo fl 1086
Chereola u 858
Cheriguaria pr 1104
Cherry inſ 1128
Cheſepeacke u 959
Cheſuſa u 892
Chia u 1071
Chiametla pr 1070
Chiapa pr. u 1080
Chicahamania fl 959
Chichemeckas p 1704
Chichilticala p 968
Chila p 1704
Chile fl 1095. pr 1085
1100
Chilane u 1097
Chilve ſ 1101
Chimo pr 1094
Chinca Cocha l. 1096
Chiquiabo pr u 1097
Chiquitos pr 1104
Chipano u 959
Chitruæ p 887
Chivalry p 1131
Chocinoca u 1104
Chocolochocha pr 1095
Chollo u 884
Chollophus magnus u Ib.
Chontales p 1082
Chowanoake u 959
Chriſtalli m 925
St. Chriſtophers inſ 1119
Chulula u 1076
Chulutecan pr 1081
Chuneſſes p 1104
Chuquinga u 1097
Chuquiſaca u Ib.
Chuſarus fl 900
Chythite u 890
Le quatre Cienagas u 1071
Cibao pr 1121
Cibola pr 967
Cicuick p. u Ib.
Cicuick fl 968
Cinaloa pr 1069
Cinna m 880
Cinnaba m 878
Cinnamomifera pr 909
Cinſterna u 881
Cipango inſ 1123
Cirta u 884
Cirteſii p 885
Citala fl 1075
Cividad Real u 1080
Clantinolleper u 1076
St. Clara c 968, 969
Clari m 899
Clæertus l 858
Cleopatris u 854
Clyſma u 857
Coanza fl 920. 925
Coava fl 921
Chochabamba pr 1097
Choche inſ 1116
Cocite mico fl 1121
Cockruway p 1110
Cogemymne u Ib.
Colas p 962
Colima u 1094
Collao u. pr 1093
Collignia u 1106
Collo fl 880
Collobon c 910
Coloe u 911
De Collubros fl 1086
Colymæ p 1089
De Comagre fl 1086
Comapayras pr 1110
Commyagna u 1082
Comolaha pr 1112
Comoro inſ 930
Complida m 925
Compoſtella u 1070
1123
Conawerie fl 1109
St. Conception inſ 933

Conception *c* 951. *fl* 1083
u 1100
De Salaya *u* 1704
De la Vega 1121
Conchi *p* 1072
Confines *u* 1101
Congemes *p* 925
Congo *pr* *Ib.*
De Congos *fl* 1086
Conibas *u. l* 1072
Julia Conſtantia *u* 894
Conſtantina *pr. u. m* 881
Conte *u* 890
Copayabo *fl* 1100
Coptus *u* 857
Coquiboccoa *c* 1088
Coquimbo *fl* 1109
Arois de Corozones *pr* 968
Cordes 1102
Cordellera *u* 1087
Corduba *u* 1104
Nova Corduba *u* *Ib.*
Coro *u* 930. *fl* 1114
Corobaci *fl* 1087
Coronado *c* 968
Corova *pr* 920
Corrientes *c* 916. 1090
Corterialis terra 950
Coryphe *p* 842
Coſtarica *pr* 1082
Coſyra *inſ. u* 897
Cotuï *u* 1121
Couche *pr. u* 913
Couliacan *pr* 1069
Cozamul *inſ* 1080
Crewinay *p* 1111
Crocodilorum *u* 857
St. Croix *u* 953
Crophy rupes 857
St. Croſs *inſ* 933
Dela Crux *fl* 1102. *ſ* 968
St. Crux *inſ* 1180. *u* 1119
r 1088. *u* 1106
De Real *u* 1086
Sierra 1104
Vera Crux *u* 1078
Cuama *fl* 920
Cuamas *p* 1071
Cuba *inſ* 1123
Cubagna *inſ* 1113, 1114
Cube *u* 911
Cuechi *p* 925
Cucutina *u* 884
Cuenca *u* 1094
Cuertlavaca *u* 1079
Culahuan *u* 890
Culcua *u* 884
Culican *pr* 1070
Culvæ *p* 1076
Cumana *fl. pr. u* 1113
Cumbinama *u* 1094
Curacaos *inſ* 1116
Currentium caput *c* 923
Deorum Currus *m* 900
Cusa *fl* 887
Cusco *pr. u* 1093
Cuyocan *u* 1076
Cusar Elcabir *u* 893
Cygnea *inſ* 931
Cynphut *fl* 880
Cynophanes *p* 844
Cynopolis *u* 857
Cyptis *inſ* 939
Cyrene *pr. u* 859

D.

Lib. I.

DAques *u* 878
Dampii *p* 27
Dandillæ *u* [illegible]
Damnonii *pr* 29
Darby *pr* 346
Darien *inſ* 315
Darnii *p* 88
Darwent *fl* 266
St. Davids *u* 266
Dauphine *pr* 183
Dauphine *Ib.*
Daunia *pr* 65
Decatæ *p* 180

Decenſes *p* 182
Decenti *p* 113
Dedier *u* 153
Dedyme *inſ* 171
Dee *fl* 270
Deheubarth *p* 265
Deira *p* 255
Delvin *u* 278
Denbigh *pr* 262, 263
Denia *fl* 207. *u* 228
St. Dennis *u* 151
Dervogel *m* 149
Deſmond *pr* 279
Deva *fl* 262
Devana *u* 271
Devonſhire *pr* 246
Devania *u* 261
Dianium *m* 228
Die *u* 182
Die Furchen *p* 126
Diepe *u. fl* 158
Dijon *u* 184
Dimetæ *p* 261
Dinan *u* 160
Dinevour *fl* 264
St. Deſiderii fanum *u* 153
Diomedes *inſ* 64
Dion, *or* Diamum *u* *Ib.*
Dioſcores *inſ* *Ib.*
Diſerntis *u* 140
Dittani *p* 220
Dive *fl* 162
Divio *u* 185
Dobuni *p* 250
Doglian *u* 128
Dole *u* 186
St. Dominico *inſ* 64
Donne *fl* 270
Dorat *u* 170
Dorcheſter *u* 249. 253
Dorcinia *u* 250
Dordonne *fl* 148. 170
Dorſetſhire *pr* 246
Dorra *u* 224
Dove *fl* 184
Dover *u* 252
Douſenac *u* 170
Downe *pr* 278
Doux *fl* 186
Dragonago *inſ* 130
Dragonera *inſ* *Ib.*
Drepanum *u* 70
Dreux *u* 164
Drogheda *u* 278
Droſne *fl* 182
Druentus *fl* 16
Duarzo *fl* 207
Dublin *pr. u* 278
Dubris *u* 249. 252
Duerus *fl* 200. 219
Dumna *inſ* 282
Dumo *u* *Ib.*
Dunbritton *u* 270
Dundalk *u* 279
Dundee *u* 270
Dungal *u* 279
Dungannon *u* *Ib.*
Dunholm *u* 252
Dunk-Eran *u* 280
Dunois *p* 164
Dunſtable *u* 249
Dunwich *u* 254
Durance *fl* 179
Durham *u* 246
Duria *fl* 127
Durnovaria *u* 249
Durobrivis *u* 252
Durocorti *p.* 153
Duplis *u* 249
Durotriges *p* *Ib.*
Durovernium *u* *Ib.*

Lib. II.

Dachden *inſ* 498
Dacia *pr* 484. 498
Dagna *u* 538
Dalearle *fl* 444. *pr* 447
Dalem *u* 498
Dalliart *fl* 409
Dalmatia *pr* 494
Dalminium *u* 496
Dam *u* 392

Damalis *u* 550
Dammin *u* 405
Dampuillers *u* 326
Dandutii *p* 408
Danow *fl* 350
Danubius *fl* *Ib.*
Dantiſcum *u* 475
Dantzick *u* *Ib.*
Dardanelli *c* 550
Dardania *pr* 507
inſ 550
Darmſtadt *u* 418
Darſaw *u* 475
Daucianes *p* 436
Davi *p* 498. 503
Daulis *u* 532
Daurſii *p* 496
Dayna *u* 538
Darſovia *u* 475
Deborus *u* 537
Deckala *u* 449
Deſe *fl* 330
Delde *u* 338
Delf *u* 334
Delm *fl* 422
Delmenhorſt *u* 423
Delos *inſ. u* 553
Delphos *u* 532
Demetrias *u* 540
Dender *fl* 320. 323
Dendermond *u* 320
Denmark *R* 427
Dennere *fl* 330
Derbork *u* 434
Derbren *u* 468
Derpt *u* *Ib.*
Derii *p* 496
Derris *u* 542
Deſna *fl* 470
Deſſaw *u* 409
Deva *u* 500
Deventer *u* 338
Deuxponts *u* 364
Dia *inſ* 560
Dibra *u* 537
Dictæa *inſ* 557
Dicte *m* *Ib.*
Dictamum *u* *Ib.*
Dictinna *u* *Ib.*
St. Die *u* 370
Dieſt *u* 331
Dietz *u* 418
Dikilappe *p* 459
Diles *inſ* 553
Dille *fl* 331
Dillingbourg *u* 385
Dimenſii *p* 511
Dimula *fl* 421
Dinant *u* 328
Dinkelſpuel *u* 374
Dinigutia *u* 510
Dinogetia *u* 509
Dioclea *u* 493
Dionyſia *inſ* 554
Dionyſipolis *u* 510
Dipolis *inſ* 551
Diosteine *pr* 328
Dipnoſus *fons* 553
Dirſcaw *u* 475
Ditmarch *pr* 429
Dium *u* 534. 541
Divodurum *u* 370
Divotro *fl* 557
Dobelein *u* 468
Dobezin *pr* 476
Doccum *u* 336
Dodona *u* 535
Doesburg *u* 339
Dotecum *u* *Ib.*
Dofrine *m* 444
Doliche *u* 540
Dollaert *fl* 422
Dolonci *p* 548
Dolopes *p* 539
Don *fl* 454. 456
Donawert *u* 375
Donchiery *u* 326
Dort *u* 334
Dordrectum *u* *Ib.*
Doris *p. u* 534
Dorobiza *u* 491
Doroſtorum *u* 510
Dornick *u* 321
Dortmond *u* 358

Dove *u* 325
Doveland *inſ* 336
Douge *fl* 331
Doway *u* 321
Dray *fl* 381
Draun *fl* *Ib.*
Dravus *fl* 381. 481
Drebnicz *fl* 473
Drent *p* 338
Dreſden *u* 407
Driana *fl* 493
Drinus *fl* 489
Drimago *u* 510
Driopis *pr* 541
Droic *u* 473
Dromos *inſ* 550
Druſomagus *u* 374
Duacum *u* 321
Dubin *u* 468
Duerin *u* 356
Duerſted *u* 345
Dugublini *p* 416
Duiffele *u* 356
Duina *fl* 456
Duisberg *u* 356
Dinſlake *u* 358
Dunamund *u* 468
Dulichium *inſ* 562
Dulcigno *u* 493
Durazzo *u* 537
Duringen *pr* 407
Dunkirk *u* 320
Dunort *u* 422
Duringerwald *m. u* 408
Durlach *u* 391
Duro *fl* 368
Duſſel *fl* 356
Duſſeldorp *u* 357
Dwina *pr. u* 461
fl 456
Dyctynneum *c* 554
Dyme *u* 519
Dyrrachium *u* 492

Lib. III.

Dabarath *u* 667
Dacaitote *u* 808
Dache *pr* 744
Daema *u* 672
Dainta *u* 610
Daix *fl* 770
Dala *u* 824
Dalaque *inſ* 700
Dalmanutha *u* 665
Daman *u* 808
Damanum *inſ* 709
Damaſcus *u* 649
Aram. Damaſec. *p* 649
Damaſi *m* 818
Dammana *u* 744
Damoan *u* 736
Damuſi *m* 798
Dan *fl* 655, 658. *pr* 671
Danager *u* 809
Daonas *fl* 818
Daphne *u* 645
Daphnis *fl* 666
Dapiro *u* 828
Dara *fl* 741
Darandæ *p* 747
Dardamana *u* 746
Dardania *u* 607
Dargamanis *fl* 744
Daritis *pr* 734
Dathema *u* 660
Daunia *u* 832
Daxata *u* 775
Dea chow *u* 741
Debir *u* 673
Debrices *p* 736
Decan *p. u* 809
Decapolis *pr* 665
Delanguere *m* 716
Delly *pr. u* 803
Demerecan *u* 735
Derbe *u* 628
Derbent *u* 734
Diamma *fl* 799
Dian *u* 824
Dianga *u* 823
Diarbeck *pr* 718
Diargument *pr* 747

Diavas *fl* 709
Diablatham *u* 660
Didymi *m* 698
Dihon *u* 662
Dilop *fl* 598
St. Dimitri *u* 611
Dindyme *m* 609
Dinhabath *u* 678
Dio Cæſaria *u* 605
Dionyſiopolis *u* 834
Dioſcoris *inſ. u* 700
Dioſcurias *u* 722
Dioſpolis *u* 600. 669
Diu *u* 807
Doceti *u* 804
Dogana *u* 834
Doliche *u* 647
Don *fl* 762
Dora *u* 669
Dorias *fl* 818
Doris *pr* 616
Doroacana *u* 745
Doryleum *u* 608
Dothan *u* 667
Drachamæ *p* 745
Dragorian *u* 832
Drangiana *pr* 747
Drangius *fl* *Ib.*
Drepanum *c* 630. *u* 631
Drepſa *u* 769
Droſache *u* 775
Drylphitæ *p* 800
Dryuſa *inſ* 626
Duckec *caſt* 802
Dulſinda *pr* 801. 806
Dymus *fl* 769

Lib. IV.

Dactylorum *Regio* 901
Daſila *pr* 914
Ladies Dale *pr* 968
Daleſgift *u* 959
Damiata *u* 853
Damote *pr* 911
Damut *p. u* 913
Dande *fl* 925
Dangala *u* 907
Dangali *pr. u* 915
Daphnis *inſ* 929
Dara *fl. pr* 901
Daradus *fl* 900
Darien *u. pr. fl* 1087
Darorum Vicus *u* 911
Davis *fretum* 1128
Daum *pr* 908
De Arinnon *u* 1071
Debris *u* 902
Del Eſtero *u* 1104
Delgado *c* 1101
Delgumaba *u* 889
Deliſha *u* 930
Delo *c* 1107
Del Spiritu Santo *u* 1070
Delta *pr* 853
Deorum currus *m* 900
Derbici *p* *Ib.*
Deſconoſcida *inſ* 1080
Deſire *port* 1102
Deſeada *inſ* 1118. *c* 1131
Deyme *fl* 890
Diagnitas *pr* 1003
Diagnites *p* 1104
Don Diego *fl* 1088
Dimetris *c* 910
Diodori *inſ* 929
Dionyſius *u* 857
Dios *m* 880
Dioſcoridis *inſ* 929
Dioſcorium *portus u* 910
Dioſpolis *u* 857
Devils *inſ* 961
Diur *m. fl* 887
Dobas *pr. u* 915
Docono *c. u* *Ib.*
Dominica *inſ* 1118
Domingo *fl* 1107
St. Domingo *inſ. u* 1121
Doradæ *p* 1094
Draconitis *inſ* 897
Dubdu *u* 892
Ducala *p* 890
Dulce *ſ* 1081

Du-

Durango *u* 1071
Durdus *m* 887

E.

Lib. I.

EAſt Angles 254
Saxons 253
Eblana *u* 278
Ebora *u* 223
Eboracum *u* 250
Ebro *fl* 203
Ebrodunum *u* 182
Ebudæ *inſ* 283
Eburones *p* 158
Ebuſa *inſ*. *u* 230
Eccia *u* 212
Echni *inſ* 284
Ecque *fl* 179
Edri *inſ* 284
Eden *fl* 254
Edenburg *u* 270
Editani *p* 228
St. Edmundsbury 249
Egbaud *fl* 176
Egeſta *u* 71
Elba *inſ* 110
Elamites *p* 7
Elizabeth *fl* 188
Elvire *m* 215
Elwy *fl* 263
Elwyenſes *p* 262
Ely *inſ*. *u* 254
Auguſta Eremita *u* 214
Emonia *u* 100
Emporia *u* 229
Engaden *p* 140
England *R* 239
Engoliſmenſes *p* 170
Enlhy *or* Edri *inſ* 284
Enna *u* 70
Ephintia *l* 69
Epiacum *u* 250
Epidia *inſ* 283
Eporedia *u* 127
Equilina *inſ* 102
Erdini *p* 280
Eres *inſ* 187
Eresberg *c* 126
Ericoſæ *inſ* 71
Eridanus *fl* 30
Eryx *u* 70
Erotenus *fl* 97
Eſchalas *u* 183
Eſcurial *mon.* 220
Eskedale *pr* 271
Eſparrez *u* 172
Eſſex *pr* 246
Eſſiles *u* 182
Eſſons *fl* 151
Eſtampes *u* *Ib.*
Eſte *u* 99
Eſtella *u* 205
Eſterac *pr* 173
Eſtienne *u* 166
Eſtrang *u* 179
St. Evaſius *u* 123
Eubariades *p* 113
Eubonia *inſ* 283
Euganei *p* 100
Eugubium *u* 81
St. Euphemia *u* 64
Eunymos *inſ* 71
Eureux *u* 158. *fl* 164
Europe 25
Euſedale *pr* *u* 271
Ewe *u* 158
Ex *fl*. *u* 252
Exeter *u* *Ib.*
Extremadura *pr* 214
Eyn *fl* 279

Lib. II.

Ebelo *inſ* 434
Eburones *p* 318
Echedorus *fl* 541
Echinades *inſ* 561
Echinus *u* 536
Echinuſa *inſ* 555
Echterwald *u* 338
Edam *u* 335
Eder *fl* 418
Edil *fl* 456
Edonis *pr* 541
Egra *fl* 393
Egholm *inſ* 432
Egmond *u* 335
Egverden *u* 423
Egra *fl* 374. *u* 395
Einbeck *fl* 468
Eiſenberg *u* 418
Eiſhimp *fl* 400
Elatea *u* 532
Elb *fl* 351. 395. 497
Elbing *fl* 473. *u* 474
Elbogen *u* 395. 435
Elcebas *u* 368
Elcolm *u* 446
Elderſtad *u* 429
Eleuſis *u* 527
Eleuthera *u* 557
Elis *pr*. *u* 520
Ellemanberg *m* 432
Elſat Savern *u* 368
Elſatz *pr* 367
Elſinore *u* 433
Elſter *fl* 407
Elmenaw *fl* 415
Elyſia *pr* 476
Elzeburg *u* 446
Emathia *p* 541
Emathus *fl* 538
Embretſtein *u* 361
Embden *pr*. *u* 422
Ems *fl* 318. 351
Emmerick *u* 356
Enageræ *p* 449
Enchuiſen *u* 334
Endelo *inſ* 434
Engerne *pr* *u* 420
De Engia *fl* 524
Engie *inſ* 553
Enghien *u* 324
Engleberg *c* 368
Enguodine *u* 500
Eningia *u* 449
Enipeus *fl* 518
Ens *u* 381. *fl* 390
Enſehide *u* 338
Enſheim *u* 368
Enſiſheim *u* *Ib.*
Enskirck *u* 356
Entz *fl* 390
Eperies *u* 482
Ephira *u* 526
Epicaria *u* 537
Epicidnus *fl* 557
Epicnemidii *p* 533
Epidamnum *u* 537
Epidaurus *u* 522. 524
Epirus *pr* 535
Ercunealis *pr* 484
Erdenburg *u* 411
Erford *u* 408
Erdol *m* 481
Eribos *u* 552
Eribæa *u* 541
Erigon *fl* 518
Erineus *u* 534
Erithinus *inſ* 613
Erithreæ *u* 557
Ernace *u* 360
Erp *fl* 356
Erſpruch *u* 394
Eryſſa *u* 542
Eſca *fl*. *u* 416
Eſcheburg *c* 434
Eſchewege *u* 418
Don Eſchingen *u* 375
Eſen *u* 422
Eſlng *u* 382. 390
Eſpinal *u* 370
Eſſendia *u* 357
Eſtii *p* 469
Eſtiones *p* *Ib.*
Eſtiotis *pr* 541
Eſtland *pr* 467
Etchterwald *u* 318
Euantia *u* 533
Eubœa *inſ* 551
Euenus *fl* 534
Euonus *inſ* 551
Europus *u* 541
Eurotas *fl* 522
Euxinus Portus 544
Eyder *fl* 429. 431
Eyphalia *pr* 356
Eyſtet *u* 394
Ezfat *fl* *Ib.*

Lib. III.

Eaſis *u* 747
Ebuſmi *u* 749
Ecbatana *u* 735
Eden *u* 649
Edeſſe *u* 711
Edi *fl* 766
Edom *pr* 677
Edonis *u* 611
Edoo *u* 827
Edrey *u* 663
Egra *u* 698
Egregaia *pr* 779
Einegiol *u* 609
Elam *pr* 736
Elancorum *u* 799
Elaſa *u* 678
Elemæi *p* 739
Elea *u*. *ſ* 612
Elere *u* 663
Eleſari *p* 700
Eleutheropolis *u* 673
Eleutherus *fl* 638
St. Elier 626
Elincticus *ſ* 698
Eliſæi *p* 612
Elkatif *ſ* 700
Eltor *u* 106
Elymais *u* 739
Emaus *u* 673
Emeſa *u* 644
Emmims *p* 660
Enhadda *u* 667
Ennodorus *m* 775
Endor *u* 667
Eoritæ *p* 774
Epheſus *u* 613
Ephrà *u* 669
Ephraim *p* *Ib.*
Ephron *u* 663
Epictetus *pr*. *u* 607
Epiphania *u* 622. 645
Epiſcopio *u* 632
Erech *u* 738
Eres *u* 735
Erethræa *mare* 699
Ergimul *pr* 777
Eri *pr*. *u* 745
Erivan *u* 720
Erythra *u* 612
Erzyrum *u* 605
Eſechia *u* 719
Ethiopia *pr* 693
Ethrea *inſ* 628
Euchata *u* 602
Eucratidia *u* 749
Euergetæ *p* 744
Eulæus *fl* 738
Eupateria *u* 763
Euphrates *fl* 606. 705
Euphratenſis *pr* 646
Euphrateſia *pr* *Ib.*
Europus *u* 736
Eurymedon *fl* 620
Euxinum *mare* 597
Ezion-geber *u* 694

Lib. IV.

Eboacah *u* 902
Egypt *R* 845. 852
Cuſar Elcabat *u* 893
Elephantis *u* 910
Elephas *m* *Ib.*
Elgiumba *u* 889
El-habat *pr* 893
Elizabeth *inſ* 1102. & 1128
Elmedina *u* 890
Elmuriden *u* *Ib.*
Elvinina *u* *Ib.*
Embroe *pr* 920
Ende *u* 1071
Enganno *c* 969. 1121
New England *pr* 955
Englands Foreſt *inſ* 931
Enſeada grande *u* 951
Epitheras *u* 911. 914
Erena *u* 1071
Erythra Bolus *u* 855
Eroico *u* 914
Errifia *p* 853
Erithia *inſ* 894
Eſchatica *pr* 842
Eſcondida *fl* 1123
Eſer *u* 911
Eſſequeba *fl* 1109
Eſſina *u* 911. 916
Eſtero *fl* 1103
Eſtotiland *pr* 950
Eſza *u* 890
Etechimins *p* 954
Ethiad *u* 890
Evangeliourm portus *u* 910
Euphranta *u* 880
Ezo *u* 890
Ezzab *pr* 881

F.

Lib. I.

FAenza *u* 76
Fage *fl* 168
Figneres *u* 174
Fair Foreland *c* 279
Fair Iſle *inſ* 282
Falaiſe *u* 158
Falaris *u* 107
Faliſci *p* *Ib.*
Falkland *u* 270
Falmouth *u* 249. 252
Fano *u* 78
Fanum S. Brioſi *u* 160
Deſiderii 153
Fortunæ *u* 78
Reguli *u* 270
Farfarus *fl* 81
Farneſ *u* 82
Farneſſus *u* 230
Fauciana *inſ* 71
Faventia *u* 76
Favognana *inſ* 71
Fayal *inſ* 224
St. Felix *u* 83
Felſina *u* 76
Feltry *u* 99
La Fere *u* 156
Ferentani *p* 59
Feriols *u* 179
Ferneze *u* 82
Ferrara *pr*. *u* 77
Ferraria *c* 228
Fermanath *pr* 278
La Ferte *u* 164
Feſulæ *u* 107, 108
Fiennes *u* 155
Feurs *u* 166
Fidenates *p* 82
Fife *pr* 270, 271
Finali *u* 114
Fino *u* 113
Fiore *fl* 75
Auguſta Firmia *u* 212
Firmo *u* 80
Flaminia *pr* 76
Flannaticus Sinus 100
Flatholme *inſ* 284
Flavia Cæſarienſis *p* 250
Flaviobriga *u* 207
Flavionavie *u* 209
Flavium Brigantium *u* 210
La Fleſch *u* 162
Flint *pr* 263
Florence *pr*. *u* 108
Flores *inſ* 225
Floure *u* 167
Fluſſates *p* 172
Foglio *fl* 76
Foix *pr*. *u* 172, 173
Fontenay *u* 153
Fonterabla *u* 207
Forcelli *inſ* 76
Forlimpoli *u* 77
Formio *fl* 99, 100
Fornaces *fl* 97
De Foro *c* 67
Fortore *inſ* 61
Forreſt *pr* 166
Forum Cornelii *u* 76
Julii *pr* 100
Julium *u* 179
Livii *u* 76
Seguſianorum 166
Sempronii *u* 79
Foſſa Claudia *inſ* 101
Foſſæ-marianæ *fl* 179
Foſſigni *p* 128
Foſſombrune *u* 78
Fountainbleau *u* 151
Le Foure *u* 160
Foy *u* 175
France *R* 142. *inſ* 151
Francheville *u* 183
Franks *p* 189
Francolino *fl* 228
Fraxinetum *caſt* 124
French Country *pr* 186
Friburg *u* 135
Friuli *p* 97. 99
Fronſac *u* 172
Fronſadaze *p* *Ib.*
Frumentaria *inſ* 230
Fuentes *caſt* 141
Furcæ Caudinæ *fret* 60
Di Furken *m* 133
Furlii *u* 76
Fuxium *u* 173

Lib. II.

Fabiana *u* 381
Faborch *u* 434
De Fangd *u* 323
Falza *fl* 408
Falconora *inſ* 555
Falkenburg *u* 399
Falkenborch *u* 435
Falkenſtein *u* 383
Falſtre *inſ* 434
Faucities *m* 351
Fauvenne *pr* 326
Fauquemont *u* 328
Fazeling *u* 503
Fetch *fl* 368
Feder Zee *l* 374
Feichtelberg *m* 393
Femeren *inſ* 434
Fenuſchium *u* 500
Forrete *pr* 368
Fivekerken *u* 483
Figulo *c* 536
Fineca *u* 482
Fimera *inſ* 434
Finland *pr* 448
Finmarch *pr* *Ib.*
Finni *p* *Ib.*
Finiſh Sea 435
Fionia *inſ* 434
Fitchtel *u* 405
Flaccia *pr* 504
Flackgulph 335
Flanaticus *ſ* 489
Flandrina *pr* 319
Flanders *Ib.*
Flammengant *Ib.*
Gallicant 320
Imperial *Ib.*
Flanona *u* 494
Flavona *u* *Ib.*
Flensborch *u* 431
Floren *u* 325
Florenge *u* 329
Fluſhing *u* 335
Forechein 388
Foſſa Druſiana 339
Franconia 387
Frankenland *Ib.*
Franchemont *u* 328
Franekar *u* 336. 434
Frankenberg *u* 418
Frankendale *u* 374
Frankford *u* 389. 406
Frawenberg *u* 474
Fraxinum *u* 377
Fredeborch *u* 410
Fredericksberg *u* 433
Frederickſtadt *u* 437
Freezland *inſ*. *u* 439

Freiſtat *u* 381
Freiſach *u* 382
Frieſland Weſt 336
  Eaſt 422
Freſtad *u* 377
La Frette *u* 326
Friberg *u* 385
Friburg *u* 374. 407
Fridburg *u* 377
Fridland *u* 405
Friſchaffe *ſ* 474
Friſii *pr* 336
  Majores *p* 339
  Minores *p* 318
Friſing *u* 377
Friſlar *u* 418
Friſons *pr* 336
Fucciania *u* 503
Fuinen *inſ* 433
Fulda *u. fl* 418
Fulmina *fl* 504
Funium *u* 490
Furſtenburg *u* 375

Lib. III.

Famaguſta *pr. u* 632
Fanfur *u* 832
Farabant *u* 747
Fas *pr* 739
Farſiſtan *pr* Ib.
Faſſum *u* 722
Fatepore *u* 804
Favagoria *u* 600
Fauſtinopolis *u* 605
Felech *u* 832
Fenoiama *u* 827
Fernathis Rupes 627
Fettibari *u* 804
Figenoiama *m* 826. *u* 827
Fionga *u* Ib.
Firando *u* Ib.
Flavia Cæſaria *pr* 670
  Firma-ſura *u* 648
Flaviopolis *u* 600
Focheau 787
Good Fortune *inſ* 816

Lib. IV.

Fairland *inſ* 1129
  Haven 1128
Falſo *c* 924
Porto Famine 1102
Fanzara *u* 891
Fatigar *pr. u* 916
Ferarum Ptolemais *u* 911
Fernambuck *pr* 1107
John Fernandes *inſ* 1117
Fernandina *inſ* 1123
Ferro *inſ* 933
Fellez *c* 915
Feſſan *u* 860
Feſſe *pr. u* 891, 892
Feſſen *pr. u* 902
St. Fides *u* 1090. 1103
Fighig *pr. u* 901
Terra Firma *pr* 1085
De Flores *fl* 962
Florida *p* Ib
Del Fogo *inſ* 933
Fonduras *c* 1082
Fonſeca *ſ* Ib.
Formoſo *c* 1131
Portus Formoſus 951
Fortunatæ *inſ* 935
St. Foy *u* 1072. 1083
  1089. 1103
  Port 1114
Nova Francia 952
St. Francis *inſ* 930. *c* 951
  fl 1075. *u* 1108
St. Franciſco *u* 1096
Bay Francois *ſ* 952
  fl 1107
Franco *Roy c* 953
Frobiſhers *fretum* 1128
De Frontera *u* 1071. 1081
Froward *c* 1102
Terra de Fuego *inſ* 1129
Fuerte Ventura *inſ* 934
Fuerte *inſ* 1087

G.

Lib. I.

GAbales *p* 177
  Gabii *u* 83
Gada *fl* 219
Gadeni *p* 271
Gades *inſ* 212
Gaditanum *fretum* 213
Gaham *u* 255
St. Gall *u* 136
Gallaici *p* 225
Gallankter *u* 140
Gallatia *pr* 142
Gallego *fl* 231
Gallia *R* 142
  Braccata *pr* 149
  Celtica *pr* 164
  Ciſalpina *p* 148. 152
  Comata *pr* 149
  Togata *pr* 117
  Tranſalpina *p* 142
Gallicia *pr* 210
Gallinaria *inſ* 110
Gallipolis *u* 62
Gallipſo *inſ* 64
Galloway *p* 271. *u* 279
Gandia *u* 228
Gappe *u* 182
Garcia *fl* 98
De Garda *l* 97
Gardon *fl* 167
Garesbrook *u* 285
Garganus *m* 61
Gariglian *fl* 57
Garond *fl* 148. 171, 172
Garumna *fl* 148
Gaſcoigne *pr* 172
Gaſtinois *p* 151
Gauſonnæ *u* 249
Gebenna *m* 148
Gela *u* 68
Gelo *fl* 114
Genabum *u* 164
Geneva *u* 131
Genoa *u* 112
Genſer *l* 134
St. Georges *inſ. u* 224
Gergenti *u* 70
St. Germans *u* 151. 156
Gergovia *u* 167
Geſſoraicus portus *u* 155
Gez *fl* 174
Gibralter *u* 212
Gigari *p* 209
Giglio *inſ* 110
St. Gillis *u* 179
Giroune *u* 229
Girrii *p* 254
Glamorgan *p* 263
Glandeves *u* 178
Glanum *u* Ib.
Glaris *p* 135
Glaſco *u* 270
Glevum *u* 248
Gloceſter Ib. & 246
Glotta *fretum* 267
Gobannium *u* 261
Godmancheſter *u* 249
Godmandin *u* 255
Godmanham *u* Ib.
Golfo de Squillacy *ſ* 63
Gombes *p* 133
Gorgona *inſ* 110
Gothicana *p* 176
Govæum *prom* 160
La Grace *u* 179
Grada *inſ* 102
Graffignan *u* 77
Graiiæ *m* 125
Grampius *m* 269
Granada *pr. u* 215
Grant *fl* 254
Gratianopolis *u* 182
Gratioſa *inſ* 224
Graunpunter *pr* 140
Gray *u* 186
Grenade *u* 173
Grenoble *u* 182
Griſſinaudan *p* Ib.
Griſons *p* 140
Groine *u* 210
Guadalander *fl* 227
Guadalcanal *u* 214
Guadalquivir *fl* 212, 213
Guadalupe *u* 214
Guadarama *fl* 219
Guadiana *fl* 200
Guadix *u* 215
Guallena *u* 253
Gualne *u* 224
St. Guermier *u* 166
Guernica *u* 207
Guernſey *inſ* 188
Guetaria *u* Ib.
Guienne *pr* 172
Guilford *u* 252
Guipuſcoa *pr* 206
Guiſe *u* 156
Guiſes *p* 251
Guiſnes *p* 154, 155
Guiſors *u* 158
Guith *inſ* 285
Gurdis *p* 133
Gymnaſiæ *inſ* 231
Gyreſoem *u* 218

Lib. II.

Gabraſſe *c* 555
Gabreta *u* 351
Gadzick *u* 473
Galacrium *u* 510
Galatea *u* Ib.
Galacz *u* 504
Galindæ *p* 474
Gamelgard *u* 434
Gandavum *u* 319
Gardeleben 400
Gardlake *l* 370
Gariſcus *u* 541
Gaudos *u* 560
Gaulos *inſ* 559
Gaunt *u* 319
Gaurede *inſ. u* 335
Gaurigoth *pr* 449
Gebwiler *u* 368
Gedanum *u* 475
Geit *fl* 330
Geiſen *u* 418
Gela *u* 500
Gelderland *pr* 338
Geldres *u* 339
Gemand *u* 374. 388
Germerſheim *u* 364
Gemunder Zee *l* 381
Genappe *u* 332
Gengenbacke 374
Genechiſar *u* 550
Gennep *u* 356
St. Georgio *u* 504
Gepping *u* 390
Gerapetra *u* 558
Gerbrevillier *u* 370
Mons Gerhardi *u* 320
Germania *inferior* 315
  prima 316
  ſecunda Ib.
Germany 345
Gerno *inſ.* 432
Gera *fl* 408
Gerſpach *u* 391
Gertrudenberg *u* 331
Gervliet *u* 335
Geſeke *u* 420
Geſodunum *u* 381
Geſtricia *pr* 447
Gethern *u* 415
Ghent *u* 338
Giuſtandil *u* 510
Glacialis Oceanus *u* 438
Glatz *u* 399
Glogaw *u* Ib.
Gluckſtadt *u* 429
Gmund *u* 381
Gnoſus *u* 557
Goes *u* 336
Golberg *u* 446
Goldengen *u* 468
Gozo *u. inſ.* 560
Gomerini *p* 351. 428
Gomphy *u* 540
Gopia *l* 476
Gorchum *u* 334
Goritz *u* 382
Gorlitz *u* 399
Goſe *fl* 415
Goſlar *u* Ib.
Gotha *u* 408
Gothini *p* 399
Gothland *p. inſ* 445. 449
Gothones 446
Gotenburg *u* Ib.
Gotorp *c* 431
Gotzberg *u* 408
Goude *u* 334
Grabaw *u* 411
Gradiſkia *u* 490
Gran *u* 483
Grandmount *u* 320
Grandvic *ſ* 461
Granii *p* 449
Grans *u* 368
Grave *u* 331
Graveling *u* 319
Graven Hague *u* 335
Gravoſa *inſ* 495
Gratz *u* 381
Greece *pr* 516
Greenland *inſ* 439
Greichs Weiſſenburg *u* 483
Griet 356
Griethuſen *u* Ib.
Grienengen *u* 390
Griffenberg *u* 403
Grinbergen *u* 331
Griſons *p* 375
Gripſwald *u* 403
Grodeck *u* 472
Grodno *u* 470
Groining *pr u* 339
Grol *u* 339
Groneberg *u* 429
Gronsfelden *u* 393
Groyſholm *inſ* 432
Grubenhagen *u* 415
Grubin *u* 468
Grummenſtein *u* 408
Grumwald *u* 470
Guelderland *pr* 338
Gueſna *u* 476
Gulick *pr. u* 356
Gurck *u* 382
Gutæ *p* 436
Gyaros *inſ* 554
Gyrgio *pr* 500
Gythones *p* 474
Gyula *u* 484

Lib. III.

Gabala *u* 666
Gaber *u* 669
Gad *pr* 662
Gadara *u* 649. 663
Gades *c* 630
Galaad *m* 654
Galactophagi *p* 772
Galatia *pr* 603
  Salutaris *pr* 604
Galilee *pr* 664
  Gentium Ib.
Galle *u* 834
Gallim *u* 660
Gallo Græcia *pr* 603
Gamala *pr* 663
Galthi *p* 834
Gammararis *u* 678
Gandes *fl* 834
Gangarides *p* 818
Gangæni *p* Ib.
Gangeraco *fl* 810
Ganges *fl* 798
Gangra *u* 603
Gannape *inſ* 828
Garduacreta *pr* 605
Gargaz *u* 767
Garizim *m* 659
Garnace *u* 606
Gates *m* 798
Gath *u* 670
Gattabaon *u* 832
Gaulon *u* 663
Gauzania *u* 735
Gaza *u* 671
Gazaca *u* 745
Gebah *u* 674
Gebala *u* 645
Gedroſia *pr* 747
Geguamela *u* 709
Gelan *u* 735
Genech *pr* 606
Geneſſa *fl* 774
Geneſareth *u. l* 658. 666
Genonia *u* 746
Caput Gentis *u* 719
St. George 669. 767
Georgia *pr* 722
Caſtle Gera *u* 625
Geranæi *pr* 776
Gerar *u* 672
Geraſa *u* 649. 663
Gergeſits *p* 663. 680
Germanicia *u* 646
Germanicopolis *u* 642
Germanopolis *u* 603
Sari-Germanum *u* 763
  German Ib.
Gerra *u* 663
Gerri *p* 768
Gerrus *fl* 724
Gerus *fl* 763
Geruſa *u* 767
Geſſut *pr* 662. *u* 664
Geſt *pr. u* 747
Getarra *u* 724
Geth *u* 670
Gezer *u* 648
Gibbethon *u* 672
Gibeah *u* 674
Gibeon *u* Ib.
Gihon *fl* 695
Gilboa *m* 659
Gilead *m* 654
  Ramoth *u* 662
Gilgal *u* 674
Gilolo *inſ* 829
Gingi *u* 813
Giſcala *u* 666
Gliſca *u* 723
Goa *u* 809
Gochatta *u* 741
Golchonda *u* 812
Gomorrha *u* 658
Gonza *u* 775
Gordiæi *m* 719
Gordiene *pr* Ib.
Gordium *u* 609
Gorgos *fl* 709
Gorneas *u* 606
Gouren *pr. u* 815
Gouro *u* 816
Goyaam *u* 740
Gozalvia *u* 601
Gozan *fl* 734
Porto Grande *u* 816
Granicus *fl* 610
Grynæi *p* 769
Guadarino *c* 814
Guenga *fl* Ib.
Gueone *u* 821
Gunbroone *u* 741
Gupi *p* 778
Guttu-negar-tutta *u* 806
Guazarate *pr* Ib.
Gwaliare *pr. u* 805

Lib. IV.

Gamara *u* 900
Gachepo *u* 953
Gaia *inſ* 897
Gago *u* 905
De Galera *c* 969
Galeſco *pr* 1070
Gallicia Novo *p* 1069
Del Gallo *inſ* 124. *ſ* 104
Gambra Cambere *pr. fl* 905
Gamoſaphantis *pr* 842
Ganabra *ſ* 1106
Gangomar *u* 931
Gaoga *pr* 907
Garamantes *pr* 900
Garas *m* 878
Garaſu *u* 1107
Garbala *m* 910
Don Garcea *inſ* 930
Garet *pr* 892

Gari-

Gariphi *m* 878
Garunna *fl* 962
Gaſpe *u* 953
Gaudus *inſ* 897
Gaulos *inſ* *Ib.*
Gaudica *inſ* *Ib.*
Gaurus *m* 910
Gayza *fl* 1108
Gebbe *u* 894
Gebelelhudic *c* 890
St. George *fl* 951. *u* 956
c 1102
De Mina *u* 906
Olanco *u* 1082
St. Germans *u* 1120
Gerrapolis *u* 897
Geryonis *inſ* 894
Gevetland *u* 1080
Gezeir *u* 886
Gheneoa *pr* 905
Ghir *deſ* 902
Giabel *u* 914
Giacchi *p* 922
Gilofi *p* 906
Ginnamera *pr. u* 912
Gigion *m* 880
Gillius *m* *Ib.*
Gir *fl* 900
Gira *u* *Ib.*
Girgitis *m* *Ib.*
Giumba *u* 893
Glauconis *inſ* 897
Gleba rubra *u* 854
Goguden *deſ* 902
Gogia *u* 916
Goiamy *pr* 913
Goletta *fl* 883
Golfo trieto *ſ* 1114
Gomadeæ *inſ* 929
Gomara *m* 893
Veletz de Gomerena *u* 892
Gomero *inſ* 933
Gomeribo *u* 1111
Goniatæ *p* 859
Good Hape *c* 924
Virgo Gordæ *inſ* 1119
Gorgades *inſ* 933
Gorgona *inſ* 1090
Goſhen *p* 854
Gothan *pr* 908
Goza *u* 897
Granada *u* 1083
inſ 1117
Nova *pr* 1089
Grande *fl* 962. 1103
p 1107
De Grat *c* 951
Gratias de dios *u* 1082
Gratioſa *inſ* 935
Greenland *pr* 1128
Grijalva *f* 1077
Guadiabo *fl* 1120
Guacapa *fl* 1081
Guadalaira *pr* 1070
Guadalcanal *inſ* 1130
Guadallanguen *u* 1101
Guadalupe *inſ* 1119
Guadilharber *l* 881
Guagaquil *fl* 1093
Guagere *pr* 911
Guagyda *u* 886
Guahabu *pr* 1121
Guahannani *inſ* 1123
Gualata *pr* 904
Gualili *u* 892
Guamanga *u* 1096
Guanahani *inſ* 964
Guancabelica *u* 1096
Guangara *pr* 907
Guaniba *u* 1114
Guanica *u* 1120
Guanima *inſ* 964
Guanuca *pr* 1096
Guaranies *p* 1104
Guardafu *c* 929
Guarga *fl* 893
Guargata *u* 903
Guaſtecan *pr* 1073
Guatapori *fl* 1088
Guaiape *fl* 1082
Guarco *u* 1095
Guapay *fl* 1104
Guatimala *pr* 1080, 1081
Guatulco *u* 1079
Guaxaca *pr. u* 1078
Guaxanato *u* 1074
Guaxarapi *p* 1104
Guaxocingo *u* 1078
Guaya curoes *p* 1104
Guayamo *m* 1120
Guayngareo *u. l* 1704
Guayaquil *u* 1094
Guaybiamo *u* 1104
Guaymuri *p* 1107
Guayra *u* 1103
Guazacoalco *pr* 1079
Guber *deſ. p. u* 902. 906
Guevelthan *u* 1080
Gueztaxalta *pr* 1079
Guglia *c* 924
De Bona Guia *fl* 968
Guiana *p* 1109. *fl* 1120
Guietta *inſ* 897
Guinea *pr* 906
Nova *pr* 1130
Gulata *u* 1094
Guoga *l* 904
Gurguigarn *fl* 892
Gurngrut *fl* *Ib.*
Guxibamba *pr* 1094
Guzculan *u* 1081
Guzzula *pr. u* 888
Gypſeris *inſ* 929
Gypſus *inſ* *Ib.*

H.

Lib. I.

HAbſpurg *u* 136
Hagge *c* 181
Hagulſtade *u* 255
Halifax *u* *Ib.*
Hamme *c* 155
Han *u* 156
Harcourt *u* 158
Harflew *u* *Ib.*
Hartford *pr. u* 246. 253
Haſtings *u* 252
Haverford Weſt *u* 263
Havre de grace *u* 158
Hebuda *inſ* 283
Hebrides *inſ* 282
Hedui *p* 166
St. Helens *inſ* 284
Helna *u* 229
Helvii *p* 177
Heneti *p* 103
Heraclea *u* 68. *inſ* 102
Hercules *inſ* 75
Herculeum *fretum* 213
Hereford *pr* 246. *u* 255
Herudford *u* 253
Heruli *u* 128
Heſperia *pr* 196
Heth *inſ* 282
Hetruria *pr* 107
Heurepoix *pr* 150
Hexam *u* 255
Hextold *u* *Ib.*
Hey *u* 182. *inſ* 282
Hibernia *inſ* 276
Hiero *inſ* 71
Hieracum *inſ* 75
St. Hilary *u* 188
Himera *fl* 69
Hirpini *p* 59
Hiſpalis *u* 212
Hiſpania 196
Hiſtria *pr* 100
Holycroſs *u* 280
Holyhead *u* 284
Holy Iſland 285
St. Honoratus *inſ* 187
Honflew *u* 158
Hueſca *u* 232
Huine *fl* 163
Humana *u* 80
Humber *fl* 240
Huntington *pr* 246. *u* 255
Hurſt *c* 285
Hybla *u. m* 68
Hydra *fl* 99
Hydruntum *u* 62
Hypſa *fl* 69

Lib. II.

Habſay *u* 468
Habſel *u* *Ib.*
Haderſlave *u* 431
Hæmimontum *pr* 515
Hæmus *m* 507. 515. 539
Haffen *u* 433
Haffnia *u* *Ib.*
Haffenfort *u* 439
Hagenaw *u* 368
Hagenſcheis *m* 391
Hagenſhow *c* 434
Hague *u* 335
Hailbron *u* 390
Haidenheim *u* *Ib.*
Haimburg *m. u* 381
Haine *fl* 323
Hainault *pr* *Ib.*
Hall *u* 383
Halar *u* 439
Halberſtadt *u* 415
Hale *u* 408
Halenpot *u* 468
Halitz *u* 472
Halle *u* 323
Hallandia *p* 435
Hallin *pr* 449
Halmſtadt *u* 435
Hamburg *u* 429
Hamelen *m u* 415
Hammar *u* 437
Hammone *u* 358
Haneret *p* 432
Hania *fl* 323
Hannoia *pr* *Ib.*
Hannoiver *u* 415
Hannow *pr. u* 387
Hanſholm *inſ* 432
Harderwick *u* 339
Hardiſch *u* 398
Harland *pr* 467
Harlem *u* 334
Harlengen *u* 336
Harmanduri *pr* 407
Hartz *u* 408
Hartzholm *inſ* 432
Haſe *fl* 421
Haſford *u* 363
Haſle *u* 368
Haſſia *pr* 415
Hatteren *u* 358
Hattem *u* 339
Hatroan *u* 484
Havel *fl* 400
Havelburg *u* *Ib.*
Hebrus *fl* 545
Hecatompolis *p. inſ* 555
Hecle *m* 438
Hedinfort *u* 322
Hegow *pr* 373
Heidelberg *u* 364
Heininkſtede *u* 429
Helderung *u* 410
Helene *inſ* 555
Helga *m* 438
Helice *u* 519
Helicon *m* 530
Hellas *pr* 516
Hellenis *inſ* 434
Helleſpont 550
Helmſtat *u* 415
Helſemberg *u* 435
Helſingellac *u* 449
Helſingia *pr* 447
Helſingore *u* 433
Helverone *p* 476
Helvoldi *p* 400
Hemodes *inſ* 435
Henneberg *u* 389
Hennegow *pr* 323
Hepheſtias *u* 551
Heraclea *u* 541. 546
Herbipolis *u* 388
Herborne *u* 385
Hercynia *u* 394
Hermanduri *p* 407
Hermanſtadt *u* 499
Hermanopolis *u* *Ib.*
Hernmæa *c* 555
Herſpruch *u* 394
Heruli *p* 404
Hervorden *u* 421
Heſdin *u* 322
Heſſi *p* 418
Hetfeild *u* 415
Heuſden *u* 334
Hexholm *u* 459
Heydebui *u* 432
Heyſt *u* 332
Hiarnee *inſ* 432
Hielſo *u* 448
Hieraſus *fl* 498
Hierke *u* 329
Heildeſheim *u* 415
Hilgenes *inſ* 432
Hillinis *c* *Ib.*
Hildeloppen *u* 336
Hinſgagel *c* 434
Hiolm *inſ* 432
Hipanis *fl* 467
Hippium *pr* 524
Hippolite *u* 370
Hobenberg *u* 375
Hochberg *u* 374
Hoctſtad *u* 388
Hoffe *u* 408
Hoffen *u* 482
Hoey *u. fl* 328
Hohenberg *caſt* 375
Hohenloe *u* 489
Hogerland *pr* 474
Holland *pr* 333
Holm *u* 447
Holſtein *pr* 429
Homberg *u* 420
Honta *inſ* 422
Honte *inſ* 335
Hormia *u* 541
Horne *u* 335
Horpach *u* 489
Holela *l* 449
Huene *inſ* 434
Hulkenrade *pr* 358
Hulſt *u* 320
Hungary *R* 480
Hunni *p* 484
Huſem *u* 431
Huy *u. fl* 328
Hydruſa *inſ* 553
Hymettus *m* 527
Hypata *u* 540
Hyperborei *m* 456

Lib. III.

Habor *u* 734
Hadid *u* 674
Hadrianople *u* 648
Hadullan *u* 673
Hajacan *pr* 803
Haim *u* 672
Halah *u* 734
Haleb *u* 665
Halicarnaſſus *u* 616
Halis *fl* 603, 604
Hamadum *u* 735
Hamath *pr* 643. *u* 645
647. 666
Hamaxobii *p* 764
Hamones *c* 678
Hamſe *u* 644
Hamſeu *u* 787
Hangcheu *u* 786
Hapharaim *u* 667
Haran *u* 712
Hardranuit *u* 699
Hariſa *u* 678
Harman *fl* 698
Harmaſtis *u* 723
Harmozonta *prom* 742
Harunda *fl* 799
Haſor *u* 673
Hatchteth *u* 637
Havilah *u* 694
Havilah *pr* 738
Hauran *u* 664
Hazor *u* 665
Hebræi *p* 655
Hebron *u* 673
Hecatompylæ *u* 746
Helaus *u* 648
Helenopontus *pr* 601
Heliopolis *u* 621. 649
Helleniſtæ *p* 655
Helleſpontus *pr* 597. 608
Helon *u* 669
Hena *u* 647
Hendee *u* 805
Heneti *p* 603
Heniochi *p* 722
Heptacometæ *p* 603
Heraclea *u* 600. 622
644. 763
ad Latmum 616
Heri *u* 745
Hermanaſſi *u* 601
Hermione *m* 598
Hermon *m* 754. *fl* 654
Hermoſa *inſ* 828
Hermus *fl* 598. 614
Herodium *c* 673
Heſhbon *u* 661
Heſelites *pr* 768
Hethlan *u* 666
Hevæa *u* 641
Hiddekel *fl* 719
Hidero *fl* 738
Hieracum *inſ* 700
Hieragerme *u* 611
Hierapolis *u* 609. 644
Hieruſalem *u* 675
Hipanes *fl* 763
Hippici *m* 766
Hippocura *u* 799
Hippophagi *p* 768. 776
Hippus *m* 649. 698
u 649. 663. *fl* 721
Hiſpaan *u* 746
Hittites *pr* 680
Hivites *p* *Ib.*
Hodoca *u* 834
Hollandia Nova *inſ* 828
Homeritæ *p* 700
Honorius *pr* 603
Hophra *u* 669
Hor *u* 660, *m* 694
Horeb *m* 693
Horites *p* 678
Hur *m* 661
Hunns *p* 767
Hydaſpis *fl* 716. 799
Hydriacus *fl* 741
Hyperborei *p* 768
Hyrcania *p* 747

Lib. IV.

Haaman *u* 1110
Habat *p* 893
Hacha *fl. pr. u* 1088
Hackluits *c* 1128
Haity *inſ* 1120
Ham *pr* 845
Ham-Liſnan *u* 892
Hantera *u* 889
Hareſgol *u* 886
Haſcora *pr* 890
Hatibonico *fl* 1121
Hatuncolla *u* 1097
Havana *u* 1123
Hawkins's Mayden-Land 1129
Hea *pr* 889
Headland *c* 1128
St. Hellens *inſ* 932. *u* 964
c 1094
Heliopolis *u* 854
Hell-gate *inſ* 957
Hemerum *u* 889
Henries *c* *Ib.*
Henries Town *u* 959
Cape Henry *c* 950
Heptadelphus *m* 878
Heptanomus *pr* 856
Hera *inſ* 933
Herculis Arenæ *m* 859
Turris *u* *Ib.*
Herendo *u* 931
St. Hermes *c* 898
Hermopolis *u* 857
Hermoſo *c* 1131
Heroclioticum *pr* 852
fl 853
Heroes *u* 854
Herpiditani *p* 887
Heſperia *pr* 842
Heſperides *p* 936. *inſ* 844
Heſperii *p* 919

Heva *u* 881
Hiera Bolus *u* 855
Hiero *inſ* 934
Hierax *u* 856
Higuey *pr* 1121
Hippagreta *u* 882
Hippi *c* 881
Hipponitis *l* *Ib.*
Hippo Regius *u* 883
Hiſpania Nova *pr* 1072
Transfretana *pr* 880
Hiſpaniola *inſ* 1120
Hochelaga *u* 953
Hoden *u* 903
Holy Port *inſ* 936
Homar *u* 893
Hondura *pr* 1082
Good Hope *c* 924
Myos Hormos *u* 852
Horne *c* 1130
Huaden *u* 903
Hudſons *fretum* 950
1128
Hueux *fl* 968
Hungara *fl* 1082
Hydras *inſ* 897
Hypadis pleagus 929

J.

Lib. I.

JAcca *u* 232
Jaccetani *p* *Ib.*
St. Jacomo *u* 140
Jaen *u* 212
St. Jago *u* 210
Jamno *u* 230
Japydia *pr* 101
Japydes *p* 61, 62
Jargeau *u* 164
Iberia *pr* 196
Iberus *fl* 200
Iccius portus *u* 154
Iceni *pr* 249
Ichnuſa *inſ* 73
Idubeda *m* 201. 219
Jearne *fl* 172
Jernia *fl* 276
Jerſey *inſ* 188
Jeſulan *inſ* 102
Jet-how *inſ* 188
Ifere *fl* 182
Iglium *pr* 110
Ila *inſ* 283
Ilanter *u* 140
Ilienſes *p* 73
Ilerones *p* 229
Ilerda *u* 232
Illiceas *u* 227
Illiberis *u* 215. 229
Illipulus *m* 201
Illium *c* 154
Illiturgis *u* 212
Ilva *inſ* 110
Imola *u* 76
Incibilis *u* 227
Indigites *p* 229
Indre *fl* 168
Inis Pir *I* 284
Inganni *p* 113
Ingena *u* 157
Inn *fl* 134
Inſpruch *u* 126
Inſubres *p* 77. 117
Interamna *u* 59
Inurea *u* 127
St. John de Angeli *u* 171
Luz *u* 172
Mont *u* 188
Pied de port *u* 204
Town *u* 270
Joinville *u* 152
Iolaia *inſ* 73
Ionium mare 28
Jona *inſ* 283
Jour *m* 126. 148. 186
Jourdain *f* 73
Ipſwich *u* 254
Ireland *inſ* 276
Iſaurium *u* 250
Iſauris *ſ* 69

Iſcha Damoniorum 250
Silurum *u* *Ib.*
Iſchia *inſ* 64
Iſis *fl* 248
Iſle de Dieu *pr* 187
Iſaudum *u* 168
Iſtrad *fl* 263
Iſola Roſſa *inſ* 75
Iſtria *pr* 19
Cape de Iſtria *u* *Ib.*
Iſuvium *u* 81
Italy *pr* 28
Itchancheſter *u* 253
Judecha *I* 102
Ivernis *u* 280
Juga Aſturum *m* 201
Jubalda *m* *Ib.*
Juginnium *u* 81
Ividot *pr* 158
St. Julian *m* 71
Julia Lybica *u* 230
Julio-magus *u* 162
Juſtinopolis *u* 100
Juremont *p* 133
Jura *m* 148

Lib. II.

Jada *fl* 422
Jadelle *u* 423
Jadera *u* 494
De Jade *S* 422
Jagendorf *u* 398
Jaicza *u* 491
Jamais *u* 326
Japodes *p* 496
Jaromir *u* 395
Jaroſlaw *u* 457
Jaſſii *p* 484
Jaſſy *u* 503
Jatre *fl* 510
Javan *p* 536
Javarine *u* 482
Javarinum *u* *Ib.*
Jazyga *u* 491
Jazyges *p* 459
Metaniſtæ *pr* 480
Ibar *fl* 506
Icaria *fl* 439
Ida *m* 557
Idæa *inſ* 555
Idſtein *u* 385
Jegen *inſ* 432
Jene *u* 408
Jephapinolies 456
Jerdo *inſ* 434
Jervia *pr* 468
Jetzebo *u* 429
Jever *u* 422
Iglaw *u* 398
Iles *fl* 375
Ill *fl* 367
Illyricum Occid. *pr* 382
Illyris *pr* 489
Ilma *fl* 408
Ilmen *l* 456
Iſtrad *r* 377
Ilva *u* 439
Imbrus *inſ*. *u* 550
Ina *fl* 403
Inachus *fl* 518
Ingelheim *u* 364
Ingolſtadt *u* 377
Inn *fl* 408
Inſpruch *u* 383
Inſtadt *u* 377
Inſula *u* 321
Intuergi *p* 365. 390
Inurrium *u* 377
Ionium Mare 560
Ioſtphaly *p* 420
Ips *fl*. *u* 381
Iſara *fl* 376
Iſar *fl* 377
Iſeland *inſ* 438
Iſleben *u* 410
Iſſa *fl* 495
Iſſelmund *u* 334
Iſter *fl* 166
Ithaca *inſ* 562
Juch *fl* 461
Jugra *fl* 467
Jugria *u* 459

Juhar *u* *Ib.*
Juites *p* 407. 428
Juitland *pr* 431
Juliers *u* 356
Juliacum *u* *Ib.*
Julicum *I u* 403
Julio Bona *u* 381
Julis *u* 555
Ivois *u* 326
Juſtiniana prima 510
Secunda 506
Juvavia *u* 377
Juanagorod *u* 458
Iwanoweſero *l* 456

Lib. III.

Jarroone *u* 739
Jabadiu *inſ* 831
Jabeſh Gilead *u* 663
Jaboc *fl* 658
Jack-heel *u* 694
Jaffa *u* 671
Jahzor *u* 662
Jamboli *u* 764
Jamena *fl* 799. 804
Jamnia *u* 672
Janiſapapatan *u* 834
Jangoma *pr* 820
Janizarie *c* 624
Japan *inſ* 825
Japha *u* 667
Jarmuth *u* *Ib.*
Jartus *fl* 770
Jaſii *p* *Ib.*
Jaſonium *m*. *r* 734. 748
Jaſques *u*. *c* 741
Jatter *u* 673
Jathrib *u* 698
Jatrib *u* *Ib.*
Java *inſ* 831
Jaxartes *fl* 770
Jazyges *p* 764
Iberia *pr* 722
Iberus *fl* *Ib.*
Ibera *u* 602
Icaria *inſ* 627
Ichara *inſ* 700
Ichſiæſa *inſ* 627
Icthyophagi *p*. *S* 788
Iconium *u* 617
Ida *m* 607
Idalium *u*. *m* 632
Idumea *p* 677
Jebuſites *p* 680
Jefleti *u* 669
Jelphea *u* 747
Jehthyphagorum *S* 698
Jericho *u* 674
Jether *u* 673
Jews *p* 655
Jezreel *u* 669
Ileron *inſ* 627
Ilium *u* 607
Ilment *fl* 747
Imaus *m* 596. 716
India *pr* 796
intra Gangem 798
extra 818
Indicus Oceanus 760
Indo-Scythæ *p* 800
Indus *fl* 716. 798
Ingermentum *u* 764
Ingine *pr* 712
Joccabel *u* 824
Jogana *u* 834
Johor *pr*. *u* 822
Jokneham *u* 667
Jonacapolis *u* 739
Ionia *pr* 612
Joppa *u* 671
Jor *fl* 658. *p*. *u* 822
Jordan *fl* 658
minor *fl* 638
Jortam *u* 832
Jotopata *u* 667
Ipſus *u* 612
Iris *fl* 598. 604
Iſauria *pr*. *u* 620
Iſaurus *pr*. *u* *Ib.*
Iſcopolis *u* 601
Iſhmaelitæ *p* 694
Iſk-tob *pr* 664

Iſnichs *u* 599
Iſrael *p* 655
Iſſachar *p* 667
Iſſedon *u* 775
Iſſus *u* 622
Iſtigias *u* 749
Iſtrianus *fl* 763
Ita *c* 671
Itamos *u* 698
Iturea *p* 662
Ivah *u* 647
Judah *pr* 672
Judæa *pr* 659. 670
Julia fœlix *u* 641
Julias *u* 664
Juliopolis *u* 600. 609
Juſtiniana *u* 602

Lib. IV.

Jacho *fl* 1121
St. Jacobo *u* 931
Jacuagnia *p* 1121
Jaen *u* 1083. 1094
Jafferin *u* 892
Jagge *p* 922
St. Jago *inſ* 933. *c* 964
u 1704, 1079, 1088
1100, 1114, 1123
fl 1090, 1093.
St. Jago de Arma *u* 1090
del Eſterio 1104
de Guyaquil *u* 1094
de Leon *u* 1114
de Montanos *u* 1094
de Nata *u* 1086
de los Valles *u* 1074
Jaguana *u* 1121
St. James *fl* 1131
Jamaica *I* 1123
James *u* 959. *c* 1111
Janeiro *fl*. *p* 1106
January *fl*. *p* *Ib.*
Jaos *p* 1110
Jarzitha *u* 900
Jaſculum *p* 911
Java *I* 1129
Ichthiophagi *p* 919
Beni Jerſo *u* 894
Beni Jeſſeten *u* 892
Ighidi *deſert* 902
Iguillinguiguil *u* 889
Ilda *m* 888
Ilheos *I*. *u* 1106
St. Illefonſo *u* 1079. *I* 1130
Imbians *p* 921. 924
Imizizim *u* 889
Imperiale *u* 1101
Inavis *fl* 891
Les Infantes *u* 1101
Infierno *I* 935
Inhaban *p* 923
Iniambis *fl* 1106
Joanna *I* 931
Joguazia *p* 962
St. Johan *fl* 952
St. John *I* 1120. *u* 1072
St. John de Cinalon *u* 1070
de los Planos *u* 1089
de Ulloa *u* 1078
Iol *u* 886
Ionii *p* 885
St. Joſeph *u* 1112
Iſabella *u* 1123
Iſidis *I* 929
Iſius *m* 910
De las Iſlas *c* 1101
Iſola *u* 898
Iſtrechea *p* 842
Itange *u* 1106
St. Juan *fl* 1090
de Frontera *u* 1101
del Oro *u* 1096
de Paſto *u* 1090
de Salinas *p* 1094
de Victoria *u* 1096
Jucutan *p* 1078
St. Ives *c* 1130
Julia Certa *u* 884
Conſtantia *u* 894
Traducta *u* 893
St. Juhan *ſ* 1102

Junna *fl* 1121
Junonia *I* 933. 936
Juries *p* 1104
Juvaganava *I* 1101

K.

Lib. I.

KAlin *fl* 279
Kantiani *p* 249
Kemper Corentin *u* 160
Kendal *u* 254
Kennet *fl* 253
Kent *pr* 251
Kerry *pr* 279
Kerton *u* 252
Kildare *pr*. *u* 278
Kilkenny *pr*. *u* *Ib.*
Kings County *pr* *Ib.*
Kingſton *on* Thames *u* 252
Kinſale *u* 280
Kirckwal *u* 282
Knockfergus *u* 279
Kyle *p* 271

Lib. II.

Kinach *fl* 382
Kala *u* 408
Kaliſch *pr* 476
Kallo *u* 432
Kamme *fl* 460
Karnten *p* 382
Kele *u* 503
Kelhaim *u* 393
Keltorp *u* 434
Kemberg *u* 406
Kempenland *pr* 330
Kempten *u* 374
Kereſture *u* 484
Kerldbee *u* 449
Keromenzee *u* 471
Kertominde *u* 434
Kethim *pr* 539
Keykerks *u* 339
Keiſersberg *u* 368
Lautern *u* 364
Word *u* 357
Kexholm *u* 459
Kiburg *u* 374
Kien *inſ* 469
Kies *u* 468
Kimarorubath *u* 482
Kintrick *fl* 374
Kiovia, *or* Kiof *u* 470. 510
Kiratow *u* 506
Kiſdy *p* 500
Kitagorod *c* 457
Kittim *pr* 539
Klow *pr*. *u* 471
Knyſſim *u* 473
Koburg *u* 389
Kokenhauſe *u* 468
Kolding *u* 432
Komora *inſ* *u* 482
Koningsberg *u* 363. 437
474
Konengſtal *m* 364
Koping *u* 434
Koſcien *u* 476
Kotim *u* 503
Krain *pr* 382
Krivicue *m* 515
Kruſwick *u* 476
Kulph *fl* 490
Kyel *u* 429

Lib. III.

Kadeſh *u* 666
Barnea *u* 694
Kaingcheu *u* 787
Kapharſalama *u* 669
Kara Amida *u* 712
Kawoina *fl* 774
Kedar *pr* 692
Kedemeth *u* 661
Keila *u* 673

Keldan *pr* 705
Kenitæ *p* 694
Kiang *fl* 785
Kirgeſſi *p* 768
Kir-haſareth *u* 660
Kiriathaim *u* 666
Shenith Kiriathaim *u* 660
Kitay *l* 766
Kianſi *p* 787
Kukares 815

Lib. IV.

St. Kallop *u* 1704
Kennebeque *u* 956
Ketaugchan *u* 959
Kings Foreland 950

L.

Lib. I

LA Beauſe *pr* 164
Labernus *u* 280
Labinia *u* 98
Laboria *pr* 57
Labrelle *u* 183
La Breſſe *pr* *Ib.*
La Butte du mont *u* 188
Lacetani *p* 232
Lacinia *m* 64
Lacus verbanus 30
Ladoure *fl* 175
Læſtrigones *p* 68
La Fere *u* 156
La Fert *u* 164
La Flexh *u* 162
Lagiere *fl* 173
Lafanto *fl* 61
Lagenia *pr* 277
Lagos *u* 223
La Grace *u* 179
La March *p* 170
L'Amballe *u* 16
L'Amballiates *p* *Ib.*
Lambeſque *u* 154
Lameticus ſinus 64
Lamotte *u* 154
Lambous *fl* 166
Lancaſter *p* 246
Lanciano *u* 59
Lancinenſes *p* 209
Landa *u* 118
Landaffe *u* 262
Lanellum *inſ* 110
Langris *u* 153
Languedoc *pr* 176
Langued *p* *Ib.*
Languegotia *p* *Ib.*
L'Auguillade *inſ* 187
Lanuſi *inſ* 110
Laon *u* 156
Laodunum *u* *Ib.*
Lapidei Campi 178
La Plaia *u* 224
La Puy *u* 176
Laredo *u* 207
La Roch *p* 182
Lareina *fl* 99
Larius *l* 118
La Roche *u* 170
Larabechia *u* 207
Lactoraces *p* 172
Latium *pr* 82
Lavada *fl* 222
La val *u* 163
Lavant *fl* 252
Lavardin *u* 165
Lauda *u* 118
Laudun *u* 162
Lavinium *u* 82
Lavaro *pr* 57
Laure *fl* 168
Lauretania *u* 80
Lauron *u* 228
Laurigi *u* *Ib.*
Lauſanna *u* 136
Laxoal *u* 186
Leaſe *p* 278
Lebrelle *u* 183
Lecci *u* 62
Lectodurum *u* 174
Lectoure *u* *Ib.*
Le four *c* 160
St. Legier *u* 185
Legeris *or* Loyre *fl* 148
Legio *u* 209
Legio viceſima Victrix 246. *u* 249, 250
Legium Lepidi *u* 122
Leiceſter *pr* 255
Leighlin *u* 278
Leith *p* 270
Lemanus *l* 128
Lemavi *p* 210
Lemovices *p* 171
Lemſter *pr* 277
Lennox *l* 269. *p* 271
Lentini *u* 70
St. Leon *u* 79. *caſt.* *Ib.*
Leon *pr.* *u* 209
St. Pol de Leon *u* 160
Leontium *u* 68. 70
Lepontiæ *m* 125
Lerida *u* 232
Lerina *inſ* 187
Lerigi *u* 113
Lerma *u* 219
Leſcar *u* 172
Leſina *l* 61
Leſmore *u* 280
Leſtoracium *u* 174
Lethes *fl* 222
Letrim *m* 277. *pr.* *u* 279
Leuco Petra *c* 64
Leuin *fl* 270
Leuk *pr* 133
Lewis-Burg *u* 171
Lewis *inſ* 283
Leviſſa *inſ* *Ib.*
Lexovii *p* 158
Libnius *fl* 277
Libora *u* 218
Liburnum *u* 109
Libici *p* 128
Libouon *u* 172
Lichfield *u* 255
Liddeſdale *pr* 271
Lieran *fl* 176
Lift *fl* 277
Liga Cadi Dio *pr* 140
Ditture *Ib.*
Grifa *Ib.*
Ligni *u* 153
Ligorne *u* 109
Liguria *pr* 113
Liguſticæ *m* 125
Lilybeum *c* 68
Limachus *fl* 134
Limagne *fl.* *pr* 167
Limacum *fl* 99
Limerick *pr* 280
Limoges *u* 170
Limoſin *pr* *Ib.*
Limavi *p* 210
Lincoln *p* 246. *u* 255
Lindisfarn *inſ* 286
Lindum *u* 249, 271
Lingones *p* 152
Linlithquo *u* 271
Lionoys *p* 183
Lions *u* *Ib.*
Lipara *inſ.* *u* 71
Liris *fl* 30
Lisbon *u* 223
Liſieux *u* 158
Liſle *fl* 172
de Jourdain *u* 174
en Dodon *u* 174
Littleborough *u* 249
Lixentes *fl* 166
Llanes *u* 209
Llanvillin *u* 261
Lobregat *fl* 228
Locarna *u* 136
Loches *u* 162
Locknannier *m* 140
Locris *u* 63
Lodi *u* 118
Logia *l* 277
Logronno *u* 204
Loir *fl* 148
Lombardy *pr* 117
Lombes *u* 174
London *u* 247
Lon *fl* 254
London Derry *u* 279
Loncaſter *u* 254
Longford *u* 278
Longovicus *u* 254
Longueville *u* 158
Loquehabre *pr* 271
Lorca *u* 217
Lorette *u* 80
Lorn *p* 271
Lot *fl* 172
Lothien *pr* 270
L'ouche *fl* 184
Lough-eaugh *l* 277
Loventium *u* 261
Lough Erne *l* 277
Lough Foyle *l* *Ib.*
St. Loup *u* 150
Lourde *u* 174
Loxa *u* 216
Louth *pr* 278
St. Luca de Barameda *u* 212
Lucania *p* 63
Luceria *u* 61
Lucern *u* 134. 136
Lucca *u* 111
Luciferi forum *u* 212
Lucopibia *u* 271
Lucoteſia *u* 151
Lucon *u* 169
Lucus Auſturum *u* 209
Ludlow *u* 263
Lugano *pr* 135
Lugdunum *u* 184
Lugdunenſis Prima *p* 180
Secunda 157
Tertia 162
Quarta 150. 164
Lugudore *c* 74
Lulles *u* 170
Luna *u.* *m* 112. 223
Lunagiana *pr* 112
Lundy *inſ* 284
Luneburg *u* 128
Luparetha *u* 60
Luſignan *u* 169
Luſitania *pr* 201
Luſſon *u* 169
Lutetia *u* 151
Luzark *u* 150
Lymen *I* 284
Lymni *I* *Ib.*

Lib. II.

Labeates *l* 493
Lacedæmon *u* 522
Laconia *p* *Ib.*
Laden *u* 364
Ladenberg *u* *Ib.*
Ladoga *l* 456
Ladon *fl* 518
Laguſa *inſ* 555
Laholme *u* 435
Laibach *u.* *fl* 382
Laiz *u* 500
Lamia *u* 540
Lambock *u* 381
Lancitia *pr* 476
Landiſoron *u* 435
Landeſhuit *u* 377
Langeland *inſ* 434
Languſte *inſ* 495
Landrecy *u* 323
Landſperg *u* 376. 400
Lapithæ *p* 539
Lapland *pr* 448
Lapiones *pr* *Ib.*
Lappa *u* 558
Lariſſa *u* 540
Larta *u.* *ſ* 536
Laſthi *m* 557
Lau *u* 405
Laus *ſ* 537
Lawland *inſ* 433
Lawenburg *pr.* *u* 411
La Frette *u* 326
Lavamundt *u* 382
Lavand *fl* *Ib.*
Lavia *fl* 473
Lauben *u* 399
Laureacum *u* 381
Lauſnitz *pr* 399
Lauſtein *u* 363
Lauterne *u* 364
Lebadia *u* 531
Leere *u* 422
Lecheum *u* 525
Leck *fl* 334
Lecopolis *u* 472
Leeſt *u* 332
Leewarden *u* 336
Leewars *fl* *Ib.*
Leibnitz *u* 482
Leige *pr* 327. *u* 328
Leine *fl* 415
Lelegia *pr* 522
Lelow *u* 476
Lemburg *u* 472
Lembro *inſ.* *u* 551
Lemgow *u* 421
Lemnos *inſ* 550
Lenæus *inſ* 557
Lens *u* 322
Leoburgum *u* 411
Leodium *pr* 328
Leontari *u* 521
Leopolis *u* 411
Lepanto *ſ* 518. *u* 533
Lerdam *u* 334
Lerna *l* 522
Lettenland *pr* 468
Letoa *inſ* 560
Levadia *pr* 531
Leucas *u.* *inſ.* *c* 536
Leuci *p* 357. *u.* *m* 557
558
Leucoſia *inſ* 550
Leuctra *u* 522. 531
Levoni *p* 449
Ley *fl* 318
Leyden *u* 334
Lezina *inſ.* *u* 495
Libetris *m* 541
Liburnades *inſ* 495
Liburnia *pr* 489
Lica *fl* 473
Lichtal *u* 391
Lichteberg *u* 387
Liebenzel *u* 391
Liefland *pr* 467
Lignitz *u* 399
Lilea *u* 534
Lim *fl* 506
Limburg *pr* 327. *u* 328
Limens *fl* 557
Limene *inſ* 551
Limers *u* 358
Limford *ſ* 432
Lincopen *u* 446
Lindaw *u* 373
Linges *fl* 334
Linghen *u* 422
Linge *fl* 339
Linkaw *u* 470
Lintz *u* 360. 381
Liothida *pr* 449
Lippe *fl* 356. *p.* *u* 421. 482
Lipſique *u* 497
Lis *fl* 318. 321
Liſonzo *fl* 382
Liſſa *inſ* 495
Liſſus *u* 493
L'Iſle *u* 321
Litomiſſel *u* 395
Lituania *pr* 469
Livonia *pr* 467
Lochem *u* 339
Locris *pr* 533
Loduſe *u* 446
Lon *fl* 385
Londen *u* 429
Londenberg *u* 431
Longi-diduni *u* 404
Naſſi *u* *Ib.*
Longobardi *p* 412
Loni *u* 329
Lootz *u* 328
Lorrain *pr* 369
Los *inſ* 555
Loſinger *u* 448
Lotharingia *pr* 369
Louburg *u* 411
Louvaine *u* 331
Louch *fl* 368
Lozara *u* 473
Lubben *u* 399
Lubeck *u* 428
Lublin *u* 476
Luchtenberg *u.* *p* 393
Lucemburg *u* 326
Luceora *u* 471
Lugdunum Batavorum *u* 334
Luickland *pr* 328
Lumaigne *u* 329
Luna *u* 351
Lunden *u* 429. 435
Lunenberg *u.* *pr* 415
Lunſtod *c* 432
Luſatia *pr* 399
Luſen *fl* 444
Lautra *fl* 364
Cæſarea Lutra *u* *Ib.*
Luxemburg *pr.* *u* 326
Luske *u* 471
Lycoſtomos *u* 594
Lycus *fl* 375
Lyet *fl* 482
Lyſimachia *u* 546

Lib. III.

Laban *u* 661
Lachis *u* 672
Lagoas *m* 734
Lahor *u* 802
Laiſh *u* 665
Lambatæ *p* 800. 802
Lampſacus *u* 610
Lanagon *u* 834
Lange *inſ* 627
Lanos *fl* 775
Lanſilla *u* 739
Laodicea *u* 609. 614. 644
Laos *fl.* *pr* 820
Lapethia *pr* 631
Turris Lapidea *caſt* 769
Lapithus *fl* 631. *u* 632
Lar *fl* 698
Laranda *u* 618
Lariſſa *u* 645
Larry Joon *u* 737
Laſa *u* 661
Latmos *m* 615
Lavia *pr* 820
Laviana *p* 606
Laula *u* 834
Lawribander *u* 806
Leanitis *l* 700. *p* 698
Leaotang *u* 787
Letan *u* 661
Lebedus *u* 612
Lectium *c* 607
Ledronſis *u* 632
Legis *u* 616
Lena *fl* 774
Lenteinis *u* 632
Leogoræ *c* 814
Leontopolis *u* 602. 720
Lequin *I* 828
Leſbos *I* *u* 634
Leſcare *u* 632
Leſha *u* 661
Leſhem *u* 665
Leſtori *p* 818
Leuco-Acte *u* 644
Leuco-Syri *p* 602
Liampo *c* 821
Libanus *m* 637. 649
Libias *u* 661
Libna *u* 673
Libuſſa *u* 599
Limiſſa *p* 631
Limeryces *p* 800
Limycus *fl* 598
Lindun 628
Linga *l* 833
Liſpor *u* 810
Livias *u* 661
Lochiau *u* 787
Locopp *u* 767
Lod *u* 674
Lonibare *fl* 798
Lontoor *u* 828
Lop *p.* *u* 777
Lori *u* 733
Lubium *u* *Ib.*
Lugor *u* 822
Luſſon *I* 828

Ly-

Lycaonia *p* 617
Lycia *p* 616
Lycus *fl* 598. 631. 709
Lydda *u* 669
Lydia *p* 613
Lyrneſſus *u* 607
Lyſinnia *u* 619
Lyſtra *u* 617

Lib. IV.

Laboradora *p* 951
Lacca *p* 915
Laccari *u* 914
Laccus *l* 853. 858
Lacomedis *inſ* 858
Los Ladrones *I* 1117
Laganici *p* 860
Lagartos *fl* 1086
Laguna *u* 1115
Lagunilla *u* 1097, 1104
Lamanay *I* 1080
Lampedoſa *I* 897
Lampeduſay *I* *Ib.*
Languelongi *p* 927
Lanſerotti *I* 933
La Parilla *p* 1095
Laques del Oro *c* 968
Larace *u* 893
Lariſſa *u* *Ib.*
Laruneſia *I* 897
St. Lawrence *I* 930. *ſ* 952
St. Laurenzo *u* 1107
Laxus *u* 894
Lelanda *I* 927
Leluda *fl* 920
Lempas *fl* 1081
Lempta *deſ* 902
De ſierra Leona *c* 904
De los Leones *port* 1102
Leon *u* 1082. 1096. 1114
Leptis magna *u* 881
Lethe *fl* 859
Lethon *fl* *Ib.*
St. Lewis *u* 953. 1071
1108
Libia *pr* *l* 900
deſerta *p* 902
interior *p* 899
Libyægyptii *p* 859
Libyæ Phœnices *p* 885
Libyarchæ *p* 859
Lybicum *mare* 857
Lygeris *fl* 962
Ligua *fl* 1100
Lima *p* 1094
Linxamo *l* 858
El Leon *u* 1070
Ham Liſnan *u* 892
Lix *fl* 893
Lixa *u* *Ib.*
Loanda *I* 927
Loango *p* *Ib.*
Lobos *I* 935. 1093. *c* 1075
Loiola *u* 1094
Lon *m* 919
New London *u* 1104
De Lopes Gonzales *m* 904
Lorenzo *fl* 1130
Loſe *fl* 936
Lothophagites *I* 897
Loxa *u* 1094
Loza *fl* 935
Luanga *fl* 932
Lucach *p* 1139
Lucaios *I* 964
St. Lucas *c* 968
Luccus *fl* 893
St. Lucies *I* 933. 1119
Ludim *p* 908
Ludog *fl* 883
Lugo de nueſtra ſenora
l 1114
St. Luke's *u.* 953. 1071
l 969
Lunæ montes 930
Aque Lunda *c* 926
Lungifari *u* 859
Luyſa *fl.* *u* 1120
St. Luzia *u* 1115
Lybici *m* 853
Lybia *p* 857. 858

M.

Lib. I.

MArcera *u* 63
Macerata *u* 80
Macolcum *u* 280
Macra *fl* 106
Madrid *u* 220
Madrit *c* 152
Magia *pr* 135
Magiventum *u* 249
Magliano *u* 81
Magni *u* 261
Magra *fl* 113
Maguelone *inſ* 187
Mago *u* 230
Maidſtone *u* 252
Mailleſais *u* 169
Main *pr* 163
Mainland *inſ* 282
Maio *pr* 279
Majorca *inſ* 230
Maira *fl* 140
Mala *inſ* 283
Maleos *inſ* *Ib*
Malaca *u* 216
Malaga *u* *Ib.*
Malomoco *inſ* 101
Malans *u* 141
Malbourquer *u* 174
Maldon *u* 249
Maleventum *u* 59
Malfi *u* *Ib.*
Mallenzay *u* 164
St. Malo *u* 160
Malon *fl* 168
Man Manning *inſ* 283
Mancheſter *u* 250
Mandueſſedum *u* *Ib.*
Mans *u* 163
Mantelimar *u* 182
Mantua *u* 120
Maon *u* 230
Mar *pr* 271
Marans *u* 172
Marbogi *p* 207
Marca Anconitana *pr* 80
Firmiana *p* *Ib.*
Trevigiana *p* 97
St. Marceline *u* 182
March *pr* 271
Marchina *u* 212
Marchia *fl* 76
Mariana *u* 115
Marianus *m* 201
Marieburg *u* 278
Maridunum *u* 261. 263
St. Maries *inſ* 64. 284
u 263
Marignan *u* 118
Marman *u* 175
Marmoſtier *inſ* 187
Martha *fl* 106
Marn *fl* 152
Marſac *u* 170
De Marſan *u* 175
Marſelles *u* 179
Marſo *m.* *u* 59
Martinacht *u* 133
St. Martins *u* 188
Maſcon *u* 183
Maſcroſs *u* 173
Maſox *u* 140
Maſſa *m.* *u* 59. *p.* *u* 108
Maſſilienſes *p* 180
Matraval *u* 263
Matiſconum *u* 183
St. Maudits *caſt* 253
Maufredonia *u* 61
St. Maurice *u* 133. 166
inſ 284
Maurienne *u* 129
Maxacra *u* 216
Maxima Cæſarienſis *pr*
250
Sequanorum *p* 180. 186
Mayenne *fl* 162. *u* 163
Mazara *pr.* *u* 70
Mazieres *u* 157
Mearo *fl* 210
Meatæ *p* 271
Meaux *u* 152. 223
Media *pr* 278
Medilino *u* 214
Medina *u* 285
Cœli *u* 218
Sidonia *u* 212
Mediolanium *u* 118. 171
261
Medoc *pr* 172
Meduacus major & minor *fl* 97
Meduana *u* 163
Medulli *p* 128
Medway *fl* 240
Megaris *u* 69
Meinfield *u* 141
Meine *u* 179
Meiſac *u* 170
Meldi *p* 153
Melortæ *inſ* 110
Melodunum *u* 151
Melun *u* *Ib.*
Menai *fl* 263
Menapia *u.* *p* 280
Menavia *inſ* 283
Menaw *inſ* *Ib.*
Menew *u* 261
Mendip *m* 239
Mendriſio *pr* 135
Menteith *pr* 271
Mercaria *u* 120
Mercia *pr* 255
Merida *u* 214
Merindol *u* 179
Merioneth *pr* 263
Mereville *u* 170
Mernis *p* 271
Meſſana *inſ.* *u* 67, 68. 71
Meſſapia *pr* 62
Metaurus *fl* 79
Meth *pr* 277
Methaucum *inſ* 101
Metremo *fl* 79
St. Michaels *inſ* 224
Middleſex *pr* 249
Milaſe *u* 71
Mileſimo *u* 114
Milford *u* 263
Millan *p.* *u* 118
Millar *fl* 227
Milly *u* 151
Millengen *u* 134
Minius *fl* 201. 210
Minorca *inſ.* *u* 230
Minturni *u* 57
Miramont *u* 170
Miranda *u* 223
Mirande *u* 173
Mirandula *u* 122
Mirapenſe *u* 173
Mirepoix *u* *Ib.*
Miſenus *u* 58
Mineius *fl* 120
Moandus *fl* 279
Modena *u* 121
Modona *fl* 278
Modoceum *u* 118
Moia *u* 204
Molfette *u* 62
Molina *u* 220
Molinga *u* 278
Molins *u* 166
Molon *fl* 168
Momblane *u* 229
Mombrum *u* 182
Mona, Monabia *inſ* 283
Momonia *pr* 279
Mona *pr* 71
Monaco *u* 113
Monaghan *pr* 278
Moncada *u* 229
Monceaux *u* 153
Moncolibre *inſ* 230
Mondego *fl* 222
Mondeni *u* 127
St. Monhaud *u* 156
Monkcheſter *u* 254
Monmouth *pr.* *u* 263
Monoeda *inſ* 283
Monopolis *u* 62
Monſeguer *u* 172
Mons pepulanus *u* 176
Regis *u* 174
Montaigne *u* 166
Montalban *u* 171
Mont Alcino *u* 109
Argentorati *prom* 110
Argis *u* 151
St. Aubin *C* 188
Briſon *u* 166
Dedior *u* 153. 155
St. Deſiderii *u* *Ib.*
Montereau *u* *Ib.*
Montfalcon *u* 100. 168
Montfeltre *p* 79
Montferraut *u* 167
ferrat *p* 123
Monfort *u* 164
Montgibal *m* 68
Montgomery *pr* 263
Monthault *u* 173
Monticella *u* 122
Montleherry *u* 151
Montmelian *u* 129
Montmorency *pr* 151
Montonus *fl* 76
Mont Orgueil *caſt* 188
Montpellier *u* 176. *pr* 230
Montpenſier *u* 167
Montpulciane *u* 108
Montreal *u* 113. 204
Montriville *u* 155
Montrico *u* 207
Monſeguer *u* 172
Montſerrata *m* 229
Moregeau *u* 174
Moret *u* 151. 174
Morgetes *p* 68
Morini *p* 155
Moriton *u* 159
Morlais *u* 160
Morreal *u* 70
Mortaigne *u* 159
Morvedre *u* 228
Moſon *u* 232
Mounſter *pr* 279
Mown *pr* *Ib.*
Muliades *fl* 222
Mulſio *fl* 80
Munda *u* 215
Munow *fl* 263
Mur Murus *u* 140
Muralia *u* 217
Murat *u* 167
Murcia *pr* 217
Murgis *u* 216
Murian *inſ* 101
Murrey *pr* 271
Mutina *u* 122

Lib. II.

Macroneſus *inſ* 555
Macedonia *p* 539. 541
Salutaris *p* 538
Machlin *pr.* *u* 332
St. Macor *u* 558
Macris *inſ* 551
Macroniſco *inſ* 555
Macropolis *u* 510
Mædara *m* 557
Mænus *fl* 351. 363. 387
Mæſi *p* 507
Mæſianus *S* 437
Maes *fl* 318
Matſecke *u* 328
Maſtricht *u* 331
Magdeburg *pr.* *u* 411
Magiore *mare* 549
Maine *fl* 385. 387
Malchow *u* 405
Malea *c* 522
Maliacus *S* 540
Malk *u* 383
Malmoge *u* 435
Malo *c* 555
Malveſia *u* 522
Malviſin *u* 558
Mandras *u* *Ib.*
Manheim *u* 364. 393
Mansfelt *pr.* *u* 410
Mantegna *u* 521
Mantinea *u* *Ib.*
Marathon *u* 527
Marback *u* 390
Marche *pr* 358
Marke *pr* 358. *fl* 381. 398
Marcianopolis *u* 510
Marcodurum *u* 356
Marcomanni *p* 384. 398
Mariboane *u* 434
Marienburg *u* 323. 474
Marienwerder *u* *Ib.*
Mariſch *fl* 498
Mariza *fl* 546
Mark *p* 357. *fl* 381
Marmora *inſ* 550
Marobodurum *u* 395
Maron Campi *u* 484
Marous Zeck *pr* 500
Marpurg *u* 418
Marquiſatus Imperii *p*
331
Marſhow *u* 473
Marſi *p* 429
Marſigni *p* 399
Marſpurg *u* 382
Marſtrand *u* 437
Marta *fl* 370
Martane *fl* *Ib.*
Martenburg *u* 325
Martenwald *u* 376
Martiana *u* 351
St. Martins Dike *u* 336
Marville *p* 326
Marulius *fl* 498
Maſch *u* 490
Maſz-munſter *u* 368
Maſſovia *pr* 473
Matapan *c* 522
Mattiaci *p* 318. 336
Matzan *m* 481
Mawbeuge *u* 323
St. Maure *inſ.* *u.* *c* 536
Maxima Sequanorum *p*
316
Mazæi *p* 496
Mecklenburg *pr.* *u* 404
Medemlick *u* 335
Medieſus *u* 500
Medwiſh *u* *Ib.*
Mediomatrices *p* 370
Medon *u* 493, 520
Megalopolis *u* 521
Megaris *pr.* *u* 530
Megra *pr.* *u* *Ib.*
Meiſſen *p.* *u* 407
Melæna *inſ* 496
Melapus *m* 545
Melas *fl* *Ib.*
Meldorp *u* 429
Meler *fl* 444. *l* 448
Melida *inſ* 496
Melipotamos *fl* 557
Meliſſa *u* 524
Mellum *u* 423
Melos *inſ* 554
Melſingen *u* 418
Melving *u* 474
Memel *fl* 467. *u* 474
Memmingen *u* 374
Menapii *p* 318. 339
Menebria *u* 510
Mengerickhuſe *u* 418
Mentz *pr.* *u* 362
Meran *u* 383
Merheren *pr* 398
Merellus *u* 542
Merks *fl* 331
Meroden *u* 356
Merſburg *u* 407
Merſpurg *u* 373
Meſembria *u* 510
Meſſenia *pr.* *u* 520
Meſtro *fl* 545
Metaniſtæ *p* 484
Methon *u* 520
Metz *pr* 369
Meuſe *fl* *Ib.*
Meydenburg *u* 411
St. Michael *u* 462
Michlow *pr* 474
Micole *inſ* 555
Miconus *inſ* *Ib.*
Middelfar *u* 434
Midleburg *u* 335. 363
St. Miel *u* 370
Mieſlaw *pr* 471
Milberg *u* 391
Miletum *u* 557
Millenbach *u* 500
Milo *inſ.* *u* 554

Milopotamo *u* 558
Minden *u* 421
Minea *u* 557
Minoa *inſ* 554
Minsko *pr* 470
Mirabello *u* 558
Mirecour *u* 370
Miſceneck *u* 461
Miſnia *pr* 407
Mittaw *u* 468
Mlawa *u* 476
Mockern *u* 411
Modriſh *u* 490
Moeln *u* 411
Moenland *inſ* 434
Mœotis *pal* 503
Mogus *fl* 363
Moganus *fl* *Ib.*
Moguntiacum *u* *Ib.*
Moldavia *pr* 502
Molneck *u* 395
Moloſſia *pr* 536
Molycrea *u* 533
Mona *inſ* 469
Monachium *u* 376
Moncaſtrum *u* 503
Monheim *u* 393
Mons Regius *u* 363
Montmedi *u* 326
Montbelgard *pr. u* 368
Monteniſes *p* 357
De Monte ſacro *ſ* 541
Montfort *u* 345
Mont Gerard *u* 320
Mons *u* 323
Moravia *pr* 398
Morava *fl* 398. 506
Morea *pr* 519
Mordevit Tartars 461
Morini *p* 321
Morſee *pr* 432
Mors-munſter *u* 368
Morville *u* 326
Moruſus *fl* 500
Moſa *fl* 369
Moſaiski *p. u* 458
Moſco *u. fl* 457
Moſelle *fl* 351. 369
Moſophia *u* 527
Moſpach *u* 364
Moſtch *u* 490
La Mothe *u* 370
Mouchant *u* 320
Mountabor *u* 426
Mouſeturne *caſt* 363
Mouſon *u* 326
Muers *pr. u* 356
Muerte *fl* 369
Multavius *fl* 395
Mulhauſen *u* 368
Mulheim *u* 357
Mulhuiſen *u* 408
Mulmberg *u* 474
Mulsberg *u* 407
Munchen *u* 376
Mund *inſ* 434
Munderpe *u* 439
Munſter *u* 420
Munſterberg *u* 399
Munſter Eyphel *u* 356
Mur *fl* 381
Murgo *inſ* 555
Murſa *u* 483
Muſcovia *pr* 457
Muſeck *u* 328
Muſun-Court *u* 329
Mycenæ *u* 524
Mygdonia *p* 541
Myrina *u* 551
Myrmansby *mare* 438
Myrmidones *p* 539
Myrmidonia *inſ* 553
Myſia *pr* 506
  inferior 509

Lib. III.

Maachah *pr* 635. 647
Maarſares *fl* 705
Macao *u* 787
Macaria *u* 624. *inſ* 628
  630
Mocaſſas *inſ. u* 830
Maces *c* 742
Machærus *u* 661
Machian *inſ* 829
Machin *pr* 823
Macir *inſ* 829
Macris *inſ* 627
Macrones *p* 723
Macuti *u* 664
Madabat *u* 807
Madai *u* 734
Madoce *fret* 699
Madura *u* 799. 813
  inſ 832
Mæander *fl* 609. 612
Mæandrus *m* 818
Mæonia *pr* 613
Mæotis *l* 762
Magdala *u* 665
Magneſia *u* 614
Magnum *fl* 798. *c* 821
Magnus *ſ* 818
Magod *u* 661
Magog *u* 644
Magoram *ſ* 698
Rex Magos *inſ* 828
Magrummum *u* 834
Magydis *u* 620
Mahacath *u* 664
Mahanaim *u* 662
Main *u* 810
Maioma *u* 671
Makats *pr* *Ib.*
Makeloth *u* 694
Malabar *pr. u* 810
Malaca *pr. u* 821
Malanchonia *c* *Ib.*
Malanga *u* 799
Malano *u* 831
Malaxia *u* 606
Maldivæ *inſ* 835
Malea *m* 834
Maliaci *inſ* 700
Maliapaura *u* 812
Maliarpha *u* 799
Malli *p* 800
Malmiſtra *fl* 621
Punta malota *c* 630
Malthuras *u* 818
Malway *pr* 802
Mamre Campus 673
Manambis *u* 698
Manaſich *pr* 663. 668
Mancopia *u* 764
Manchange *u* 787
Mandagarſis *u* 735
Mandalæ *p* 800
Mandao *pr. fl. u* 803
Mangalor *u* 810
Mangi *p* 782
Mangutum *u* 764
Manilla *u* 828
Maniolæ *inſ* 816
Maocoſmus *u* 698
Mapha *u* *Ib.*
Marabia *u* 810
Marabius *fl* 766
Marachanda *u* 770
Maran *u* 748
Marandæ *p* 818
Maranus *u* 770
Marant *u* 736
Maras *u* 717
Marciane *pr* 734
Mardiene *pr* 739
Mardus *u* 834
Mare mortuum *l* 658
Mareſa *u* 673
Margana *u* 834
Margaſi *p* 736
Margana *pr* 748
Margus *fl* *Ib.*
St. Maria *u* 725
Mariana *p* 606
Maricæ *p* 749
Marraſium *u* 739
Marſyas *fl* 609. 638. 717
Martavan *pr. u* 824
Martiana *S* 720
Maruca *u* 769
Maſaca *u* 747
Maſdarami *p* 745
Maſdoramus *m* 746
Maſæus *fl* 738
Maſheal *u* 666
Maſoni *p* 693
Maſopelle *u* 799
Maſorum *pr* 631
Maſſada *u* 673
Maſſagetes *p* 748
Maſſæi *p* 772
Maſſycetes *p* 617
Matara *u* 832
Materni *p* 693
Mattan *inſ* 828
Maurgus *fl* 716
Maugi *p* 795
Maugat *fl* 811
Mayden Tower *c* 598
Mayendre *u* 810
Mazeræ *fl. p* 747
Mazeras *fl. p* *Ib.*
Mazaca *u* 604
Mazage *u* 799
Mazires *u* *Ib.*
Meaco *p. u* 824
Meara *u* 698
Meccao *u* 825
Mecka *u* 698. *c* 699
Mechara *u* 698
Mechleſſus *u* 722
Mecon *fl* 820
Medeba *u* 661
Media *pr* 596. 734
  Major *pr* 735
Medina *u* 698
Mediterraneum mare 597
Meduttum *u* 834
Megalopolis *u* 601
Megaloſſus *u* *Ib.*
Megarenſes *p* 598
Megiddo *u* 669
Megores *p* 740
Melamphylas *inſ* 626
Melampyrgos *u* 609
Meloage *u* 799
Melani *m* 694. 698
Melanthii *rupes* 627
Melas *fl* 598. 606
Melechia *c* 630
Melinde *u* 809
Melintay *p* 819
Melitene *pr. u* 606
Menam *fl* 822
Menat *pr* 802
Menantabo *u* 833
Menedemum *u* 620
Melitopolis *u* 764
Mengrelia *pr* 721
Menteſia *pr* 616
Mercat *pr* 779
Merdi *p* 768
Merdin *u* 713
Merope *inſ* 628
Meſabatæ *p* 740
Meſandre *u* 748
Meſopotamia *pr* 596. 710
Meſſal *u* 666
Meſſanites *ſ* 698
Meſſoria *pr* 631
Metapontus *p* 598. 600
Methymna *u* 624
Metropolis *u* 764
Mezendram *pr* 747
Michmas *u* 674
Midæum *u* 609
Midian *pr. u* 659
Midianites *p* *Ib.*
Milaſa *u* 616
Milyes *p* 619
Miletus *u* 616
Miltus *u* 742
Minæi *p* 700
Mindanao *inſ* 828. *u* 816
Mindus *u* 616
Mingia *pr* 740
Minneth *u* 660
Minyas *inſ* 629
Mira *inſ* 828
Miranda *pr* 819
Miſdia *p* 739
Miſpah *u* 660. 664
Mithridatis Regio 768
Mitſpa *u* 660
Mitylene *u* 625
Mizpah *u* 660
Moab *pr* *Ib.*
Modin *u* 672
Molgomazone *pr* 768
Mologene *p* 772
Moltan *u* 803
Moluccoes *inſ* 828
Monogſaſſum *u* 799
Mongul *p* 779
Mongui *p* *Ib.*
Mons Chriſti *m* 666
Montfort *u* *Ib.*
Mopſia *p* 620
Mopſueſtia *u* 622
Moratay *inſ* 830
Moriah *m* 658
Del Moro *inſ* 830
Moſcha *u* 698
Moſchici *m* 719
Moſynæci *p* 603
Moſul *u* 710. 713
Motret *p* 779
Mount-Royal *u* 666
Moyown *u* 740
Muantay *pr* 823
Muduttæ *p* 834
Mulebet *u* 743
Mulierum portus *u* *Ib.*
Multan *pr. u* 802
Muſa *u* 698. *ſ* *Ib.*
Muſarnæ *u* 747
Muſicana *pr* 800. *u* 821
Muſckahat *u* 699
Muſulipatan *pr* 812
Muthana *u* 660
Myas *u* 612
Mygdonia *pr. fl* 712
Mylias *pr* 617
Myra *u* *Ib.*
Myrina *u* 612
Myrtoum *mare* 627
Myſia *pr* 610
  Minor *pr* *Ib.*
  Helleſpontica *pr* *Ib.*
  Olympena *pr* *Ib.*

Lib. IV.

Macadacut *u* 956
Macaria *inſ* 929
Macarmede *u* 891
Macatutæ *p* 860
Maccurebi *p* 887
Machini *p* 885
Machomette *u* 882
Macrobii *p* 911
Macureos *pr* 1111
Madagaſcar *inſ* 930
Madaninam *inſ* 1118
Madaura *u* 884
Madera *inſ* 935
Medethubada *m* 878
Madrigal *u* 1090
Madutus *u* 884
Magaduza *u* 916
Magdalen *fl* 1087
Magellanica *p* 1101
Maggio *inſ* 933. *fl* 964
Maio *l* 933
Magnice *m* 922
Magnus *ſ* 919
Magnana *p* 1121
Magorum *I* 929
Mabmora *u* 891
Major *fl* 885
Makannow *u* 1115
Malachath *u* 994
Malacca *u* 1794
Malambo *pr* 1088
Malao *u* 911
Malchubii *p* 887
Maletur *p* 1129
Malirones *p* 962
Maltha *inſ. u* 897
Malvæ *p* 878. *inſ* 885
Malutha *fl* *Ib.*
Mampſarus *M* 878
Mandaninam *I* 1118
Mandinga *pr* 906
Mandrus *m* 900
Mangiano *fl* 922
Manhartes *fl* 957
Manicongo *pr* 920
Manoa *u* 1110
Mantinino *I* 1118
Mantu *u* 1094
Maquille *u* 892
Marabo *fl* 912
Maracapan *u* 1114
Maracaybo *I* *Ib.*
Maragnon *fl* 1084
  inſ 1108
Marannon *fl* 1196
Maraons *p* 1110
Marcanas *ſ* 1123
Marcaos *pr* 920
Maremna *pr* 853
Mareotis *l* *Ib.*
Margarita *inſ* 1115
Donna Maria *c* 1121
St. Maria *u* 951. 1088
  inſ 1063. 1100. 1108
  del Antigua *inſ* 1118
  Antiqua *u* 1087
  de los Lages *u* 1071
Maira *l* 853
  del Conception 964
Marianes *p* 962
Marien *p* 1121. *fl* 1122
Three Maries *inſ* 1070
Marmarica *p* 857
St. Martha *inſ* 1183 *fl* 1187
  p. u 1088
St. Martins *u* 1071. *fl* 1103
  inſ 1119
Martyrs *inſ* 964
Marwine *fl* 1109
Maryland *pr* 958
Cabo Marzo *u* 951
Maſæſylia *p* 885
Maſalquivir *u* 886
Maſeadenna *inſ* 930
Maſitholus *fl* 900
Maſſa *u* 888. *fl* 900
Maſſachuſets *ſ* 957
Maſſylia *pr* 949
Maſte *m* 910
Maſucha *u* 902
Matana *pr* 923. 926
Matared *u* 857
Matarem *u* 1110
Matatana *u* 931
St. Matthew *inſ* 933. *u* 964
Matinino *inſ* 1118
Mattaken *u* 959
Mattan *u* 1101
Matuca *pr* 923
Maudlins Sound *ſ* 1128
Mauriſi *p* 887
Mauri *p* *Ib.*
Mauritania *p* 888
  Cæſarienſis *pr* 885
Mauritius *inſ* 931
  de Naſſaw *pr.* 1130
Mautan *inſ* 1101
Mayos *p* 1111
Mayport *u* 957
Mayre *fretum* 1130
Mazacila *u* 858
Mazagon *u* 894
Mecha *inſ* 1101
Mechuacan *pr* 1073
Medela *u* 892
Medellin *u* 1078
Medini *p* 884
Medra *p* 908
Megalliancum *mare* 945
Meinaci *p* 900
Melampodes *p* 845
Melemba *p* 923
Melinde *pr. u* 910
Melite *inſ* 898
Melli *p. u* 908
Mellilla *u* 1123
Melochath *fl* 878. 894
Memnonium *u* 857
Memphis *u* 856
Menan *inſ* 939
Mendicum *fl* 853
Menego *inſ* 954
Menelaus *u* 858
Meninx *inſ. u* 897
Menuthias *inſ* 930
Meotri *inſ* 931
Merianguea *u* *Ib.*
Merida *u* 1079. 1089
Meroe *inſ. u* 911
Mervermiglio *fl* 1069
Meſtitlan *u* 1076
Meſtizoes *p* 1103
Meſuchis *u* 858

Meſſa *u* 888
Meſurata *u* 881
Meſyrus *inſ* 897
Metagonitæ *p. c* 887
Mette *u* 915
Mexicaltzingo *u* 1076
Mexicana *p* 1075
Nova *p* 1071
Mexico *u* 1075. *ſ* 1073
Mezemme *u* 894
St. Michael *u* 1070. 1074
1081. 1089. 1094. 1104
1114. *c* 968. *ſ* 1086
Michius *u* 857
Mina *u* 906
Miraflores *u* 1094
Miſque *u* 1097
Miſraim *p* 860
Miſteca *p* 1079
Mitla *fl* 1075
Mnemium *c* 910
Mohenhemage *p* 922
Moeris *l* 853. 857
Moghincats *fl* 921
Mohelia *inſ* 931
Mollium *inſ* 897
Mombaza *p. u* 921
Mombra *p* 920
Mona *inſ* 1120
Monetta *inſ* *Ib.*
Monica *inſ* *Ib.*
Monodactylus *m* 920
Monoemug *pr* 922
Monomotapa *pr* *Ib.*
Monpater *u* 1115
Montagnets *p* 954
Montſerrat *inſ* 1119
Port au Monton *u* 953
Monzabo *p.* 920
Mophi rubes 857
Mopox *u* 1088
Morata *u* 1104
Morequito *u* 1112
Moreſhigo *u* 1111
Morocco *p* 888. *u* 889
Morumba *u* 927
Moſambique *p. u* 921
Moſchi *m* 919
Moſylon *u. c* 910
Moxino *port* 1114
Moyemon *u* 1111
Mucheras *fl* 1070. *inſ* 1080
Mulatto's *p* 1103
Mulucha *fl* 878
Moluſo *fl* 892
Mundi *u* 911. *inſ* 929
Munia *u* 856
Munſor *u* 891
Maſcamunge *u* 959
Muſi *p* 1089
Mundus alter & idem *p* 1131
Myos Hormos *u* 852
Myron *inſ* 929
Myrica *inſ* *Ib.*
Myrſiaca *inſ* *Ib.*

N.

Lib. I.

NAgnatæ *p* 279. 280
Namonburger *l* 134
Nance *fl* 160
Nannetes *p* *Ib.*
Nantes *u* *Ib.*
Napres *u* 58
Napthia *l* 69
Nar *fl* 81
Narbonne *u* 176
Narbonnenſis *pr* 181
Prima 177
Secunda 178
Narnia *u* 81
Nariſco *fl* 99
Navarre *pr* 203
Navarreux *u* 204
Nauportus *fl* 100
Naxos *u* 68
Nazareth *u* 186
Nazarette *u* 171
Nayx *u* 185
Neæ *u* 68
Neara *fl* 81
Nebbia *u* 115
Negro *fl* 81
Nemauſium *u* 176
Nemours *u* 151
Neomagus *u* 249
Neptunum *u* 82
Nerac *u* 275
Nereum *c* 211
Neſtes *u* 174
Nevers *u* 165
Neury *fl* 278
Neorus *fl* *Ib.*
Neuidum *u* 129
Neuſtria *pr* 159
Newark on Trent *u* 249
Newburg *u* 284
Newcaſtle *u* 261
Newhaven *u* 158
Newport *u* 285
Newton *u* *Ib.*
Nicaſtro *u* 64
Nicea *u* 127
Nicoſia *u* 71
Niddeſdale *pr* 271
Niebla *u* 223
Nigre pellice *u* 171
Ninſius *fl* 120
Nirton *l* 269
Niſmes *u* 176
Nivernois *p* 165
Nivernium *u* *Ib.*
Nies *pr* 133
Nizze *p. u* 127
Nocera *u* 81
Nogent le Retrou *u* 158
Noironde *u* 166
Nola *u* 58. 114
Nontron *u* 170
Norba Cæſaria *u* 214
Norfolk *pr* 246
Normandy *pr* 157
North Elham *u* 254
Hampton *pr* 246. 249
Humberland *pr* *Ib.*
Norwich *pr* 248. 254
Nottingham *pr* 246. 255
Noto *p. u* 69. 70
Novantes *p* 271
Novara *u* 118
Novempopulonia *pr* 172
Noviodunum *u* 129. 156
Noyors *u* 185
Noyon *u* 156
Nuceria *u* 59. 81
Numantia *u* 219
Nun *u* 129
Nurſia *p. u* 81

Lib. II.

Nabus *fl* 393
Nadravia *pr* 474
Naerden *u* 334
Naf, Ny *fl* 458
Naharvali *p* 476
Naithones *p* 400
Namſio *inſ* 555
Namur *p. u* 325
Nancy *u* 369. 370
Napoli *ſ* 522. *u* 524
Naracuſtoma *fl* 498
Narento *fl* 489
Naron *fl* *Ib.*
Narew *u* 473
Nariſci *p* 394
Narva *u* 449. 458
Naſco *u* 434
Naſſaw *pr. u* 385
Natangia *pr* 474
Naumberg *u* 407
Naupactus *u* 533
Nauplia *u* 524
Nauportus *u* 382
Naxos *inſ* 554
Neapolis *u* 524
Neuf Chaſteau *u* 370
Neleus *fl* 552
Neccar *fl* 351. 390
Neglinna *fl* 457
Negropont *inſ. u* 552
Neimunſter *u* 429
Nemavia *u* 374
Nemea *u* 524
Nemetes *p* 365. 369
Neocaſtion *u* 550
Neomagus *u* 365
Nericia *p* 449
Neritos *u* 536
Nertereates *p* 408
Nervii *p* 318
Neſſum *u* 506
Neſſus *fl* 545
Netherlands *p* 315
Newborg *caſt* 434
Newburg *u* 393
Newhewſol *u* 182
Newkirk *u* 429
Newmarckt 382
Newnburg *u* 390
Newport *u* 320
Newſidle *u* 381
Newſol *u* 182
Newſtat *u* 364. 381
Nyborch *u* 434
Nibourg *u* *Ib.*
Nicalidi *u* 542
Niclasberg *u* 398
St. Nicholas *u* 370. *ſ* 461
462
Nicopen *u* 432. 448
Nicopolis *u* 510. 536. 546
Nicſia *inſ* 554
Nid *fl* 476
Nider *fl* 438
Nidroſia *u* *Ib.*
Niemen *fl* 467
Niepe *u* 317
Nieper *fl* 457
Nieſſe *u. fl* 399
Nieſter *fl* 467
Nigebol *u* 510
Niger *fl* 545
Nimmegen *u* 338
Nirſi *fl* 356
Niſſa *fl. u* 506
Niſus *fl* 518
Nitria *u* 482
Nivelle *u* 331
Niveſia *u* 360
Nogar *fl* 473
Nona *u* 594
Nonuen *u* 317
Norderborg *u* 434
Norden *u* 422
Nordenburg *u* 459. 474
Nordluidi *p* 437
Noreia *u* 382
Noricia *p* 382. 447
Noricum Mediterraneum *pr* 380. 490
Ripenſe *pr* 380
Noricum *u* 393
Norimberga *u* *Ib.*
Norlingen *u* 374
Normault *u* 317
Northern Sea 438
Northgoia *pr* 393
North-huiſen *u* 408
North-Schawben *pr* 374
Norway *R* 437
Novarino *u* 520
Novebarde *u* 505
Novograd *u* 506
Noveſium *u* 360
Novigrad *u* 590
Noviomagus *u* 338
Novogord *p u* 458. 460
Novogrod *p. u* *Ib.*
Nuremberg *u* 389. 393
Nuys *u* 360
Nyſtat *u* 434

Lib. III.

Naar *fl* 666
Nabarcha *u* 748
Nabartha *u* 834
Nabathæa *pr* 693
Nagadiba *u* 834
Nagara *u* 802
Nigarita *u* 834
Nagiri *u* *Ib.*
Nagracil *p. u* 806
Naim *u* 667
Naioth *u* 670
Namecbia *u* 724
Nanchang *u* 787
Nanigeri *p* 834
Nauquin *u* 787
Napæi *p* 764
Napththæa *fl* 658
Naphthali *p* 665
Naragonus *fl* 799
Narſinga *p* 812. *u* 813
Naſuana *u* 736
Naſſivan *u* *Ib.*
Nathaliel *u* 660
Natolia *p* 597
Natoroth *u* 662
Nava Claudiopolis *u* 603
Naugrocot *m* 716
Naulibis *u* 745
Naymans *p* 779
Nazareth *u* 667
Nazianzum *u* 605
Neapolis *u* 722
Nebo *m* 659. 661
Negapatan *u* 813
Negara *u* 698
Negariot *u* 815
Neicheia *u* 599
Nelaxa *u* 663
Neo-Cæſaria *u* 601
Neogilla *ſ* 698
Nera *u* 828
Neriand *u* 808
Neronia *u* 665
Nerra *inſ* 828
Netherby *u* 808
Nethinims *p* 674
Nibon *u* 830
Nicæa *u* 599. 800
Nicator *m* 710
Niceria *inſ* 627
Nicomedia *p* 598
Nicopolis *u* 606. 622
Nicoſia *pr. u* 632
Nieper *fl* 762
Nigama *u* 799
Nigæa *u* 748
Nihulhan *pr* 778
Nilus *fl* 705
Ninguiven *u* 787
Nimphæa *inſ* 628
Ninive *u* 710
Niphates *m* 719
Niſa *u* 668
Niſæi *p* 745
Niſibus *u* 712. 745
Niſſa *u* 748
Nitra *u* 779
Niuche *pr* 778
Nixaria *u* 601
Nob *u* 674
Noiacenſes *p* 768
Nomades *p* 769
Nora *u* 799
Noroſus *m* 770
Noſigue *u* 799
Notium *c* 786
Nuraquimere *u* 806
Nymphas *u* 788
Nyſa *u* 799
Nyſea *u* 748
Nyſſa *u* 605

Lib. IV.

Nabæ *p* 900
Nabathræ *p* 908
Nacapatan *u* 1073
Nadagara *u* 882
Nanſamund *fl* 959
Nanſic *fl* 1056
Napata *u* 911
Napuluca *u* 1078
Naſabath *fl* 878
Naſſovius *fl* 957
Nata *u* 1086
Natiſcotes *inſ* 954
Natividad *u* 1069. 1074
Navatlocoes *p* 1076
Navatræ *p* 885
Nebicerines *p* 954
Nictiberes *p* 887
Ned-Roma *u* 886
Needles *c* 924
Los Negrillos *inſ* 1080
Negro's *p* 906
Rio de Neives *fl* 962
Neveri *fl* 1114
Newfoundland *p* 951
Newport *u* 954
Nexapa *pr* 1079
Neiba *fl* 1121
Neyva-rioya *u* 1104
Nicaragua *fl* 1082
Nicæus *u* 884
Nicayagua *fl* 1121
Nicoia *u* 1083
St. Nicholas *inſ* 933
1130. *c* 1121
Nicopolis *u* 856
Nievados *m* 1088
Nieves *fl. inſ* 962. 1119
Niffis *fl* 887
Niger *fl* 900. 904
Nigira *u* *Ib.*
Nigitimi *p* 885
Nigritæ *p* 909. 903
Nigritis *pr. l* 900
Nigro *fl* 1077
Nigua *fl* 1121
Nilopolis *u* 857
Nilus *fl* 852. 920
Nivaria *inſ* 933
Nizao *fl* 1121
Nochor *fl* 894
Noius *fl* 900
Nomades *p* 884
Nombre de Dios *u* 1071
1086
de Jeſus *u* 1103
Nordt River 957. 967
Noranha *inſ* 1107
Norumbeque *fl* 952. *pr. u*
954
Noticoinu *c* 910
Novum oppidum *u* 886
Nubæ palus *l* 907
Nubia *l.* 900. *pr* 907
Nubiba *fl* 1121
Nuchaida *u* 891
Nueſtra ſennora *p* 968
1101. *l. u* 1114
Numidia *p* 884. 900
Nuſconcus *u* 956
Nuts *inſ* 957

O.

Lib. I.

OBches *u* 166
Oca *m* 219
Ocaſa *fl* 270
Ocaſo *c* 195
Occimianum *u* 123
Ocetis *inſ* 282
Ocriculum *u* 81
Octodurus *u* 133
Octopitæ *p* 261
Odechere *caſt* 223
Odier *fl* 211
Oenotris *pr* 64
Oiarco *c* 195
Oiſe *fl* 150
Olava *pr* 204
Olbia *u* 179
Oleron *u* 173. *inſ* 188
Oletana *u* 219
Olite *u* 204
Olivenza *u* 223
Ollius *fl* 118
Olyſcippa *u* 223
Onhar *fl* 228
Ooſtenrich *pr* 157
Ophalie *p* 278
Ophiuſa *inſ* 230
Orbe *fl* 176
Orbitello *u* 110
Orcades *inſ* 282
Orcney *inſ* *Ib.*
Ordovices *p* 261
Orenge *pr* 178
Oreſtagne *u* 74
Oretanie *p* 220
Orgeler *u* 186
Orgueil *caſt* 188
Orgon *u* 154
Orla *fl* 207

Oribuela *u* 227
Orius *u* 211
Orleanoyſe *p* 164
Orleans *u* *Ib.*
Orne *fl* 157
Oroſpeda *m* 201. 215
Ortegal *c* 211
Orthes *u* 172
Ortono *u* 59
Ortygia *inſ* 70
Orvietto *u* 83. 107
Oſa *fl* *Ib.*
Oſaniano *u* 123
Oſca *u* 232
Oſſiſmi *p* 160
Oſſonaba *u* 223
Oſſuna *u* 212
Oſſory *u* 278
Oſtia *u* 83
Terra d' Otranto *pr* 62
Ottadini *p* 249
Ottilana *pr* 176
Oviedo *pr. u* 209
D' Ourlans *u* 156
Ouſe *fl* 248
Oxford *u* 246. 248
Oxilii *p* 113
Oyſe *fl* 158

Lib. II.

Ob *fl* 459
Obdora *pr* *Ib.*
Obdoz *pr* *Ib.*
Oberhuſen *caſt* 337
Oberſax *pr.* 406
Oberweſel *u* 362
Obotriti *p* 405
Occa *fl* 456
Occazoma *u* 503
Ochenberg *m* 434
L'Ochrida *u* 510
Ock *fl* 460
Ocyne *fl* 456
Odenburg *m* 398
Oden Chaſteau *u* 370
Odenſee *u* 434
Odera *fl* 351. 398
Oderburg *u* 400
Odinpo *pr* 468
Oddewald *u* 437
Oenuſa *inſ* 521
Oeantia *u* 533
Oebalia *pr* 522
Oeland *inſ* 449
Oenipens *u* 383
Oenone *inſ* 553
Oenope *inſ* *Ib.*
Oenus *fl* 377
Oeſcus *u* 510
Oeta *m* 540
Offenback *u* 374
Okoniezkilies *for* 456
Oland *inſ* 432
Oldenburch *p. u* 423
Oldendorp *u* 415
Oldenſel *u* 338
Oldeſlo *u* 429
Oldhaven *u* 339
Olents *u* 399
Olenus *u* 519. 534
Oleza *fl* 382
Olibria *u* 546
Olinthus *u* *Ib.*
Olmunts *u* 398
Olnits *u* 408
Olyaros *inſ* 555
Olympia *u* 520
Olympus *m* 539
St. Omar *u* 321
Ombach *fl* 368
Ommelandts *pr* 339
Onacra *fl* 415
Onalsbach *pr. u* 389
Oncheſimus *u* 536
Ooſtphali *p* 420
Ooſt Zee 433
Openheim *u* 364
Ophiuſſa *inſ* 553
Oppolin *u* 399
Opuntii *p* 533
Opus *u* *Ib.*
Oratas *fl* 500
Orbay *pr* *Ib.*
Orbelus *m* 545
Orchemus *u* 536
Orchies *u* 321
Orchomenus *u* 531
Orebo *u* 448
Oreſtria *u* 521
Orozahow *u* 472
Orſey *u* 356
Ortygia *inſ* 553
Orum *caſt* 432
Oſcenbridge *u* 421
Oſeriates *p* 484
Oſero *inſ* 495
Oſel *inſ. u* 469
Oſilia *inſ* *Ib.*
Oſnaburg *u* 420
Oſſa *fl* 473. *m* 539
Oſſendorf *u* 421
Oſtend *u* 320
Oſtenreick *pr* 318. 381
Oſterberg *u* 400
Oſtergoe *u* 336
Oſterholme *u* 434
Oſterhout *pr* 331
Oſterwicke *pr* 330
Oſtholme *inſ* 432
Oſtrezow *u* 476
Oſtrich *p* 381
Oſtrinand *p* 323
Oſtrowitz *u* 490
Oſwitz *pr* 399
Oſyli *p* 462
Othingi *p* 449
Othonia *u* 434
Othrys *m* 439
Otrelberg *u* 474
Otterendorp 421
Otuver *pr* 461
Oudenard *u* 320
Oudwater *u* 334
Ovelgard *u* 423
Overyſſel *pr* 337
Ovilabis *u* 381
Ourbo *u* 448
Oxenford *u* 363
Oxholme *inſ* 432
Oyſtinger *pr* 423
Ozbelus *m* 498
Ozera *l* 459
Ozolæ *p* 533

Lib. III.

Ob *fl* 766
Obares *p* 745
Oboth *u* 692
Obroatis *u* 739
Ocerra *u* 771
Ochinoſamanus *u* 827
Ochus *fl* 738. *u* 749
Oczacovia *u* 764
Oczacow *u* *Ib.*
Odalla *u* 673
Odia *u* 823
Oebalia *pr* 617
Oechardes *fl* 775
Oenoanda *u* 617
Oenuntia *u* 767
Olandæ *p* 768
Olbanaſſa *u* 619
Olbia *u* 620
Olbiopopolis *u* 784
Olenus *u* 683
Olimpeni *p* 610
Olivet *m* 659
Olſanenſes *p* 784
Olympus *m* 610
Omoal *u* 748
Ono *u* 674
Onor *u* 809
Ophir *p* 821
Ophiula *inſ* 628
Oran *u* 699
Orbitæ *p* 743
Orbitana *u* 745
Orcheni *p* 693
Orebatis *u* 739
Oreb *m* 694
Organa *inſ* 700
Orientalis *pr* 596
Oriſſa *u* 814
Oriſtan *pr* *Ib.*
Orixa *pr* *Ib.*
Ormuz *inſ u* 742
Orodii *m* 798. 799
Oromandus *u* 606
Orontes *fl* 638. 645
m 734
Oroſana *u* 775
Orrachan *pr* 823
Orthoſia *u* 641
Orthura *u* 798
Ortoſpana *u* 745
Orymagdus *fl* 621
Oſrhoene *pr* 711
Oſſacay *u* 827
Oſtracine *u* 678
Ottomangruch *fl* 598
Ottorocorus *m u* 775
Oxiana *u l* 769
Oxus *fl* 738. 744
Oxydrace *pr* 770. 800
Ozenes *u* 799

Lib. IV.

Oaſis *pr* 857
Ocalis *u* 964
Ocanna *u* 1088
Ocataignini *p* 954
Oceanica *p* 842
Odranguli *p* 900
Ogdomus *m* 858
Ogdoni *p* 859
Ogygia *p* 845
Des Oiſeaux *inſ* 954
Olancho *u* 1082
Olinda *u* 1107
Olympia *p* 842
Ombryo *inſ* 933
St. Omers *u* 1106
Ommirabili *fl* 887. 890
On *u* 854
Ongol *m* 1101
Ooanoke *u* 959
Ophiodus *fl* 909
Ophir *pr* 922
Opone *u* 911
Ora anteroſa *pr* 904
Oran *u* 886
Orange *u* 957
Orchil la *inſ* 1116
Orbis Arcticus 1127
Ordalia *fl* 883
Orellana *fl* 1084
Orenóque *fl* *Ib.*
pr 1111
Oriſtan *u* 1123
Orneon *inſ* 929
St. Juan del Oro *c* 1096
Laques del Oro *u* 968
Oropeſa *u* 1097
Ortygia *p* 842
Oſachile *u* 964
Oſiria *p* 845
Oſorno *u* 1101
Oſtium Sabbaticum *u* 914
Ottavallu *u* 1093
Ottomies *p* 1076
Otzutan *u* 1081
Ozama *fl* 1121

P

Lib. I.

PAchinus *c* 68
Padua *u* 98
Padus *fl* 118. 126
Pæni *m* 125
Palamos *u* 229
Palentia *u* 230
Palenza *u* 209
Palermo *u* 70
Palia *fl* 107
Palicoro *l* 69
Paliſle *u* 166
Pallantia *u* 209. 230
Palma *u* 100. 230
Palmarde *inſ* 64
Pampelun *u* 204
Panaro *fl* 76
Pandataria *inſ* 64
Panormus *u* 70
Pap-Caſtle *u* 250
Papia *u* 118
Parenze *u* 100
Paris *u* 151
Pariſii *p* 150
Parma *u* 122
Parnieres *u* 172
Parthenope *u* 58
Parthois *p* 153
Paſſora *c* 68
Patrimonium Petri *p* 81
Pau *u* 173
Pavia *u* 118
St. Paul de Vences *u* 179
Pax Julia *u* 223
Peak *m* 239
Pedeleuco *l* 81
Peira Sancta *u* 109
Peligni *p* 59
Pelorus *c* 67
Pembroke *pr* 261
Pendennis *c* 253
Penkridge *u* 250
Penmarch *c* 160
Pennocrium *u* 250
Perch *pr* 158
Perigort *pr* 170
Periguex *u* *Ib.*
Peronne *u* 155
Perpignan *u* 229
Perpinianum *u* *Ib.*
Pert *u* 153
Prætenſis *ager* *Ib.*
Perth *u* 270
Perugia *u* 81
Peruſia *u* *Ib.*
Peſcara *fl* 57
Peſici *p* 209
Peſt *u* 64
Peſara *u* 79
Petavium *u* 98
Peturburg *u* 256
St. Peters Port *u* 188
Petilla *u* 63
Petrogorii *p* 170
Petuaria *u* 250
Petula *u* 120
Peucetia *pr* 62
Peuplement *u* 204
Phænicuſſa *inſ* 71
Phæniſſa *u* 231
Phaleria *u* 107
Phintanis *inſ* 75
Phocenſes *p* 176
Philips-Town *u* 278
Phiternus *fl* 61
Picardy *pr* 154
Picentini *p* 59
Pico *inſ* 224
Picentes *p* 80
Pictavia *p* 169
Picti *p* 271
Pictones *p* 169
Pied de Port *u* 204
Piemont *pr* 127
Pienza *u* 109
Pierre-Fort *u* 153
Pietas Julia *u* 100
Pignerolle *u* 128
Des Pinas *c* 209
Pintia *u* 219
Piombino *u* 109
Piguigni *u* 156
Piſa *p. u* 108
Piſaurum *u* 79
Piſea *fl* 75. 81
Piſſatello *fl* 76
Piſtoia *u* 108
Piſuerga *fl* 219
Pityodes *inſ* 230
Pityuſa *inſ* *Ib.*
Pizoria *u* 108
Placentia *u* 122
Placenza *u* 207
Planaſiæ *inſ* 110
Plinlimon *m* 262
Pliun *u* 100
Plura *u* 141
Plurs *u* *Ib.*
Plumbino *u* 109
Po *fl* 97. 126
Podienſis *u* 177
Poictiers *u* 169
Poictou *pr* *Ib.*
Poiſſy *u* 151
St. Pol de Leon *u* 160
Pola *u* 100
Poleſine *pr* 77
Polignano *p* 62
Poligni *u* 186
Polycaſtro *u* 64
Pomegues *inſ* 187
Pomonio *inſ* 282
Pompeiopolis *u* 204
Pont del Arch *u* 158
Pontana *u* 278
Pontevedre *u* 211
Ponthieu *pr* 155
Pontigni *u* 165
Pontia *inſ* 64
Pontius Pilate *m* 136
Pontoyſe *u* 158
Pontremuli *u* 113
Pontſture *u* 123
Populonia *p* 109
St. Porcin *u* 166
Portalegre *u* 223
Port Hercule *u* 110
  Telamon *u* *Ib.*
Porto *u* 82
  Berrato *u* 109
  Fertaria *u* 110
  Gruate *u* 100
  Longone *u* 110
  Real *u* 213
  Urechio *u* 115
Portugallia *R* 222
Portugaletre *u* 207
Portus Delphinus *u* 113
  Iccius *u* 154
  Romatinus *u* 100
  Syracuſanus *u* 115
Poſſidonia *u* 64
Potentiæ *fl* 80
Povegia *u* 102
Poville *pr* 61
Piana *pr* *Ib.*
Powiſland *pr* 263
Præcatini *u* 59
Præneſte *u* 83
Prato *u* 108
Praye *u* 224
Pettigower-berg *m* 141
Principate *pr* 59
Privernum *u* 83
Prochita *inſ* 64
Provence *pr* 178
Province *u* 153
Puglia *p* 59
Monte Pulciano *u* 108
Punta del Gada *u* 224
Puteolis *u* 58
Pyrenæi *m* 195
St. Patricks Purgatory *l* 277

Lib. II.

Pactia *inſ* 554
Paderborn *u* 421
Pæones *p* 484
Pægæ *u* 530
Pagarini *p* 471
Pagaſa *u* 540
Pagiopoli *u* 562
Pagiritæ *p* 462
Pago *inſ. u* 495
Palatinatus Inferior *pr* 363
  Rheni *pr* *Ib.*
  Superior *pr* 393
Pallene *u* 542
Pamportus *u* 382
Pangæus *m* 545
Paniaſus *fl* 537
Pannodacia *pr* 499
Pannonia *pr* 483
Panormus *u* 528. 536
542. 558
Paraſtlaba *u* 510
Paraxia *pr* 542
Parde *fl* 407
Pario *inſ* 554
Paros *inſ* *Ib.*
Parnaſſus *m* 531
Parocæcopolis *u* 541

Passaria *fl* 473
Passaw *u* 377
Passewang *u* 308
Patavia *u* 377
Patræ *u* 519
Patras *ſ* 518
St. Paul *p. u* 321
Pechora *pr. fl. u* 459
Peeland *p* 330
Pegæ *u* 530
Pegaſa *u* 540
Pegniana curia *u* 408
Peiruſtæ *p* 496
Pelaſgia *pr* 521. 541
Pelaſgiotis *pr* *Ib.*
Pella *u* *Ib.*
Pellene *u* 519
Pelion *m* 539
Pelodes *u* 536
Peloponneſus *pr* 518
Pence *fl* 498
Peneus *fl* 518
Peparinthus *u* 551
Pera *u* 546
Perinthus *u* *Ib.*
Permia *pr. u* 460
Pern *u* 321
Pernow *u* 468
Perſant *fl* 403
Perſtalaw *u* 510
Perſtlaba *u* *Ib.*
Peruli *p* 404
Peſt *u* 484
Petalia *pr* 542
Petaline *pr* *Ib.*
Petavia *u* 381
Petaw *u* *Ib.*
Petra Alba *u* 537
Petrella *u* *Ib.*
Petrocow *u* 476
Petrowya *u* 490
Petzora *pr. fl. u* 459
Pezechium *u* 510
Pfaffenhoſen *u* 387
Pfirt *u. pr* 368
Pfortheim *u* 391
Pfrient *u* 393
Pfullendorf *u* 374
Phæacia *inſ* 561
Phæcacia *inſ* 555
Phænice *u* 536
Pharſalis *u* 540
Pharus *inſ* 495
Phavonæ *p* 449
Phera *u* 519. 540
Phialia *u* 521
Phile *u* 527
Phillippe Ville *u* 323
Philippi *u* 540
Philippolis *u* 546
Philipsberg *u* 365
Philocandros *inſ* 555
Phini *p* 474
Phinopolis *u* 546
Phiræſi *p* 449
Phlegra *pr* 542
Phocis *pr* 531
Phocuſa *inſ* 555
Phrungudiones *p* 474
Phthyotis *pr* 541
Phulſinium *u* 495
Phunduſii *p* 432
Philace *u* 541
Phyſco *u* 542
Piarenzii *p* 511
Picardy Inferior *pr* 323
Picenſii *p* 507
Pieria *pr* 541
Pierſchille *inſ. u* 335
Pigiada *u* 524
Piguritium *u* 493
Pilſen *u* 595
Pimple *m* 541
Pindus *m* 535
Pinnegue *u* 461
Pinnenberg *u* 429
Piræus *u* 527
Piræthi *u* 506
Piſa *u* 520
Pittersdorp *u* 434
Pizina *fl. inſ* 511
Platea *u* 530
Platze *l* 481
Pleinfelt *u* 389
Plendoſtoma *fl* 498
Pleurona *pr. u* 534
Pliskow *u* 458
Pliſſes *fl* 407
Plockſko *pr. u* 476
Podlaſſia *pr* 473
Podolia *pr* 471
Pogonock *u* 382
Polada *u* 503
Poland *p* 466. 475
Polino *inſ* 555
Pollen *u* 383
Poln *fl* 454
Polotskie *pr* 470
Poltovoskie *u* 473
Polyegros *inſ* 555
Polyſtillo *u* 545
Pomeriana *pr* 403
Pomerella *pr* 403. 475
Pomeſania *u* 533
Pomortzi *p* 403
Pone *fl* *Ib.*
Ponsko *u* 471
Pons Sarvix *u* 362
Pondsberg *u* 317
Ponta Moſon *u* 370
Pontico *inſ* 551
Ponticum *mare* 549
Pontus *pr* 510
Populear *fl* 557
Porphyris *inſ* 555
Poſna *u* 476
Poſonium *u* 482
Potidæa *u* 542. 545
Potuvolo *u* 460
Pozevia *u* 458
Pozow *u* *Ib.*
Prague *u* 395
Praſobus *m* 515
Prailaba *u* 504
Pregel *fl* 473
Premiſten *u* 472
Presburg *u* 482
Prevalitana *pr* 538
Preveſa *u* 536
Prignitz *pr. u* 399
Priſden *u* 506
Proconneſus *inſ* 550
Proponticum *mare* *Ib.*
Propontis *fretum* *Ib.*
Prope of Flanders *pr* 320
Pruck *u* 381
Pruſſia *pr* 473
Pruth *fl* 504
Pſalts *caſt* 364
Pſiloriti *m* 557
Pſkow *pr. u* 458
Pſophis *u* 521
Puente *l* 449
Puellach *u* 390
Puſtozera *u* 459
Pydna *u* 541
Pylos *u* 520
Pyrene *fons* 526
Pyrrhæa *pr* 541
Pithæum *u* *Ib.*
Pythion *u* *Ib.*
Pythia *u* 531
Pytho *u* *Ib.*

Lib. III.

Pacatiana *pr* 609
Pacom *u* 833
Pactolus *fl* 614
Padan Aram *pr* 635
Pæſſa *inſ* 628
Pagnia *pr. u* 786
Palæmonium *u* 601
Palæpharphos *u* 631
Paleſcepſis *u* 611
Paleſtine *pr* 655
Paleſtina Secunda *pr* 670
Palibothra *u* 799. 803
Palmoſa *inſ* 627
Palmyra *u* 648
Palmyrene *pr* *Ib.*
Palohan *inſ* 828
Palo-Zambilan *u* 821
Palura *u* 799
Pamphylia *pr* 619
Pan *u* 678
Panarucan *u* 832
Panda *u* 769
Pandarana *u* 810
Pandioni *p* 800
Paneas *pr. u* 665
Panticapeum *u* 763
Paphia *inſ* 630. *u* 631
Pathos *inſ. u* 631
Paphlagonia *pr* 603
Paracanticene *pr* 746
Paradiſus *pr* 705
Paralais *u* 618
Parenti *p* 745
Parapomiſus *m* 716
Parapomiſus *pr* 745
Paras *pr* 736
Paraticene *pr* 739
Paravi *p* 812
Parchoatras *m* 746
Parfar *fl* 646
Pargyete *p* 744
Pariardi *m* 716
Pariedri *m* *Ib.*
Parium *u* 611
Parni *p* 748
Paro *u* 831
Paroetes *m* 744
Parſiana *u* 745
Parſiræ *p* 743
Parſis *u* *Ib.*
Partangale *u* 810
Parthemius *fl* 598
Parthia *pr* 746
Parthiene *pr* *Ib.*
Paſacarta *u* *Ib.*
Paſaigada *u* 739
Paſagrada *u* *Ib.*
Paſagardæ *p* 741
Paſarraca *u* 739
Paſiaſcus *fl* 763
Paſini vallum *fl* 738
Paſi-tygris *fl* *Ib.*
Paſſaman *u* 833
Paſſarva *u* 832
Patanaw *pr. u* 815
Patangale *u* 810
Patara *u* 617
Pathane *pr* 822
Patmos *inſ* 627
Patras *u* 617
Palura *u* 821
Pavados *u* 828
Pedir *u* 833
Pegia *pr* 606
Pegu *pr. fl. u* 823
Pelaſgia *inſ* 625
Pelethi *u* 669
Pella *u* 663
Pendalium *c* 630
Panegardo *u* 813
Pengab *pr* 801
Pentalia *pr* 631
Pentapolis *pr* 658. *u* 818
Penuel *u* 662
Peor *m* *Ib.*
Pequeno porto *u* 816
Pequin *u* 786
Perah *fl* 719
Perea *pr* 659
Pergamus *u* 606
Perga *u* 620
Periano *u* 807
Periardes *m* 719
Periardges *m* *Ib.*
Perigrinorum *caſt* 667
Perizits *p* 680
Peripatan *u* 810
Perſepolis *u* 739
Perſia *p* 736
Perſicus *S.* 693. 700. 742
Perſidis Pilæ *m* 739
Perſis *pr* *Ib.*
Peſinus *u* 609
Petra *u* 694
Petræcrum civitas 602
Pezuari *p* 800
Phabarena *u* 603
Phænica *u* 713
Phœnicia *pr* 638
  Lybanenſis *pr* 649
  Maritima *pr* *Ib.*
Syro-Phœnicia *pr* *Ib.*
Phaliga *u* 712
Phanagoria *u* 767
Phara *u* 694
Pharamica *u* 678
Pharan *deſ* 693
Pharas *pr* 736. 739
Pharnacia *u* 601
Pharphar *fl* 649
Pharſiſtan *pr* 739
Phaſelis *u* 617
Phaſis *fl. u* 721. 834
Phaſſum *u* 722
Phiara *u* 605
Philadelphia *u* 614. 649
Cæſarea Philippi *u* 665
Philippinæ *inſ* 827
Phillis *fl* 598
Phillium *u* 600
Philomenia *pr* 603
Philiſtins *p* 655. 670
Phocea *u* 612
Phoclis *u* 744
Phradag *u* 743
Phrygia major *pr* 608
  Minor *pr* 607
Phryx *fl* *Ib.*
Phuntan *u* 692
Phyllitæ *p* 800
Pialæ *p* 776
Pieria *m. pr* 638. 647
S. Piſano *c* 630
Pigrine *u* 626
Pilæ *c* 630
  Ciliciæ *m* 596. 621
  Perſidis *m* 739
  Sarmatiæ *m* 766
Pilgrims *caſt* 667
Pinara *u* 647
Pirathon *u* 670
Piretæ *p* 800
Piſgah *m* 659
Piſidia *pr* 619
Piſon *fl* 705
Piſo-tygris *fl* *Ib.*
Pitane *u. fl* 612
Pityndra *u* 799
Pityuſa *u* 611
Plutaneſſus *u* 619
Podalia *u* 617
Peduca *u* 799
Polandas *fl* 818
Polemonium *pr* 601
Poleroone *inſ* 829
Polindæ *p* 800
Polybii *inſ* 700
Polymbothy *u* 803
Polyſanga *fl* 774. 785
Polytimetas *pr* 770
Pompeyopolis *u* 603. 763
Pontus *pr* 596
  Cappadocius *pr* 601
  Galaticus *pr* 600
Polemoniacus *pr* 601
Poolaway *inſ* 829
Portæ Caſpiæ *m* 596
  Caucaſiæ *m* 596. 725. 766
  Ferreæ *caſt* 725
Porto Grande *u* 816
  Pequeno *u* *Ib.*
Portoſpana *u* 741
Poſſidium *inſ* 629
Pracel *inſ* 816
Prajanopolis *u* 611
Præpemiſſus *u* *Ib.*
Praſii *p* 803
Precopia *u* 763
Prepeti *u* 813
Priamon *u* 833
Priapæ *u* 834
Priene *u* 612
Prion *fl* 698
Prionotus *m* *Ib.*
Prom *p* 819
Propontis 597
Propthaſia *p* 743
Proſelinitæ *p* 603
Protoſeline *u* 611
Pruſa *u* 599
Pſathis *fl* 766
Pſellii *p* 767
Pſeudoſtomum *fl* 798
Pſitara *fl* 775
Pſocurum *u* 834
Pterium *u* 605
Ptolemais *u* 639
Punta Malota *c* 630
Pyramus *fl* 621

Lib. IV.

Pachacama *u* 1095
Pacificum *mare* 1117
Pæni *p* 878
Painters Wives *inſ* 1132
Palamim *fl* 1088
Paliurus *u* 859
Pallas *l* 881
Palma *inſ* 933. *u* 1089
Palmas *u* 1088. *inſ* 1090
Palms *fl* 1073
Pamanuke *fl* 959
Pampelone *u* 1089
Pan *inſ* 929
Panagra *u* 904
Panama *pr* 1085
Panami *fl* 922
Panches *p* 1090
Pango *pr. u* 927
Panopolis *u* 857
Pantoia *inſ* 1080
Pantilaria *inſ. u* 897
Panuca *pr* 962
Panuco *pr* 1073
Papagaio *fl* 1075
Papantla *pr* *Ib.*
Para *fl. pr* 1108
Paratonium *u* 858
Patagoti *p* 1111
Paraguay *fl. pr* 1103
Paraiba *fl. pr. u* 1107
Val Paraiſo *u* 1160
Parana *fl* 1103
Parcos *u* 1096
Paria *pr* 1113
Parilla *u* 1095
Parimen *l* 1110
Paripe *u* 1107
Parthenium *mare* 857
Paſcua *u* 929. *fl* 1069
Paſcuar *u* 1075
Paſnugates *p* 1072
St. Juan de Paſto *u* 1090
Patarabyes *p* 1072
Patawomeke *fl* 959
Pate *u* 916
Patia *u* 1090
Patinicum *fl* 853
Patecui *p* 1110
St. Paul *u* 926. 1106
  fl 1131
Pavoaſan *u* 932
Pawtunxut *fl* *Ib.*
Payta *u* 1094
De la Paz *u* 1097. 1115
Pearls *inſ* 1087
Peitra Roſſa *u* 892
Peluſiacum *fl* 853
Peluſium *u* 854
Pemba *pr* 925
Pemeoke *u* 959
Pemmaquid *u* 956
Pemtegonet *fl* 952
Penge *u* 1100
Pennon de veles *u* 892
Pentapolis *pr* 859
Pepantla *pr* 1076
De les perlas *pr* 1113
Pernabiacaba *m* 1106
Perorſori *m* 900
Peru *pr. fl* 1091
Peruana *pr* 1084
Peſcara *pr. u* 901
Petatlan *fl* 1069
St. Peter *fl* 1031. *u* 1082
Peublo neuvo *u* 1097
Pharao *u* 892
Philæni villa *u* 881
Philæ *u* 911
St. Philip *u* 964. 1074
  1086. 1106. 1107
St. Philip, *S.* Jacob *u* 1070
Philippina *u* 1083
Phorca *m* 878
Phthia *u* 858
Phthuth *fl* 878
Phut *pr* *Ib.*
Phuth *fl* 887
Piaſtla *fl* 1070
Piccinacoli *p* 1129
Pichen *pr* 1112

Pilabo *u* 1072
Pilcomayo *fl* 1103
Pincur *u. fl. inſ* 933. 1107
Piras *fl* 1088
Piura *u* 1094
De la Plata *fl* 1085
pr. fl 1103. *u* 1121
Las Plaias *c* 968, 969
Plata *u* 1097
Sebaſtian de la Plata *u* 1090
New Plimouth *u* 956
Plinthine *u* 856
Pluitania *inſ* 933
Point-Antogil *u* 931
Pomata *u* 1097
Pompatan *fl* 1088
Pontia *inſ* 897
Pontonchan *u* 1080
Popaiana *pr. u* 1089
Porco *m* 1097
Des Porcos *fl* 1123
Porphyrius *m* 853
Porto de Dio *u* 904
Des Baſques 951
Del Principe *u* 1122
Raſſa *u* 858
Rico *l* 1120
Del Riſcatto *u* 904
Seguro *u* 1106
Sancto *inſ. u* 936
Bello *u* 1086
Preſenza *u* 951
Royal *u* 953. 964. *fl Ib.*
Treſpaſſez *u* 951
Portus Dioſcurorum *u* 910
Evangeliorum *u* *Ib.*
Formoſus *u* 951
Magnus *ſ* 900
Perphoſius *u* *Ib.*
Vetus *u* 1094
Poſſeſſion *inſ* 969
Potamia *pr* 845
Poteingi *fl* 1107
Potoſi *p. u* 1097
Powhatan *fl* 959
Praſſum *c* 921
Prima Viſta *pr* 951
Primiro *c* 1131
Principis *inſ* 933
Prionotus *m* 910
Prophyritus *m* 853
Propocampeche *m* 1073
Proſaditæ *p* 859
Providence *inſ* 1116
Pſelcis *u* 910
Pſittacorum terra 1129
Pſylli *p* 900
Ptolemæus *fl* 853
Ptolemais *u* 857. 859
Ferarum *u* 911. 914
Puebla de los Angelos *u* 1078
Puebla de los Canoas *p* 969
Puna *inſ* 1094
Punta de Lopez Gonzales *m* 904
De Terra Plana *c* 1102
Purene *pr* *Ib.*
Purification *u* 1070
Purzaſii *p* 1094
Pyramids 849
Pyrrhæi *p* 900
Pyſhokonnock *u* 959

Q.

Lib. I.

QUeens County 278
Quercu *u* 170
Quevero Gulph 100
Quiers *u* 128
Quietus *fl* 100
Quingey *u* 186
Quinque-Pagici *p* 134
St. Quintain *u* 156

Lib. II.

Quadi *p* 38. 398
Quakenburg *u* 421
St. Quaranta *u* 536
Quedlenburg *u* 415
Quernero *ſ* 489. 494
Quernfort *u* 410
Quimininio *inſ* 555
Quinque Eccleſiæ *u* 483

Lib. III.

Quamchen *pr* 787
Quamtung *pr* *Ib.*
Quangſi *pr* *Ib.*
Queilin *u* *Ib.*
Queio *fl* 786
Quedoa *u* 822
Quiam *fl* 774. 785
Quiantu *fl* 774
Quilare *u* 811
Quinſay *l* 785. *u* 786

Lib. IV.

Quachimayo *pr* 1094
Quade *u* 1102
Quatrabarries *u* 1070
Quatre Canagas *u* 1071
Quebecque *u* 953
Quelenes *p* 1080
Quemado *ſ* 1095
Querandies *p* 1104
Quevenes *p* 962
Quilca *pr* 1095
Quillmanci *fl* 920
Quillipiack *u* 957
Quiloa *pr* 920. *u. fl* 921
Quimbaia *pr* 1090
Quimbeque *fl* 952
Quinola *u* 1070
Quiſoma *pr* 926
Quiſquoa *inſ* 1120
Quiticui *p* 923
Quito *pr. u* 1093
Quitones *p* 962
Quitlavaca *u* 1076
Quivira *pr* 966
Quixos *pr* 1094

R.

Lib. I.

RAcline *inſ* 283
Radnor *pr. u* 261
Raiz *pr* 160
Ramſey *inſ* 284
Rapaille *u* 128
Rappenſwyl *u* 135
Rarduvaure *m* 262
Ratiaſtum *u* 170
Ravellie *u* 128
Ravenna *u* 76
Rawren *pr* 133.
Reate *u* 81
Reite *u* *Ib.*
Recanati *u* 87
Recina *u* 80. *inſ* 283
Reculver *u* 252
Reading *u* 253
Ree *inſ* 188
Reggio *u* 122
RegioPedemontana *p* 127
Regni *p* 249
Reguli fanum *u* 270
Reinelle *fl* 157
Relanzon *fl* 219
Relaunos *fl* *Ib.*
Rhemes *u* 153
Renes *u* 160
Renfraw *u* 271
Renteria *u* 207
St. Reparata *u* 74
Retone *fl* 97
Retraicte *u* 171
Reule *u* 172
Rhæti *p* 140
Rhæge *u* 249
Rheba *u* 280
Rheban *u* 278
Rhedones *p* 160
Rhegium *u* 64
Rhemi *p* 152
Rhene *fl* 126
Rhethel *u* 156
Rhetice *p. m* 125
Rhetico *m* 141
Rhigia *u* 280
Rhigodunum *u* 250
Rhobogni *p* 280
Rhodes *u* 177
Rhoſne *fl* 148
Rhodanus *fl* *Ib.*
Rhutupæ *u* 249
Rialto *inſ* 102
Ribadeo *u* 211
Ribcheſter *u* 250
Rible-Cheſter *u* *Ib.*
Richlieu *u* 162
Rimine *u* 76
Rion *u* 167
Riojay *p* 204
Rippon *u* 255
Rippemont *u* 157
Riſano *fl* 100
Rivelli *u* 59
Robee *fl* 157
Rhoboghdium *u* 279
Rochelle *u* 171
Rocheſter *u* 252
Rochfalcon *u* 170
Rochfort *pr* 151
Roch ſur yon *u* 169
Cividad Roderigo *u* 219
Roffa *u* 252
Rohan *u* 160
Rome *u* 83, 84
Romandiola *pr* 76
St. Romberg *u* 166
Romons *u* 182
Romorantin *u* 164
Roncevallis *u* 204
Ronchus *fl* 76
Ronda *u* 215
Roſanna *u* 63
Roſas *u* 229
Roſcommon *pr. u* 279
Roſs *u* 271. *pr* 263
Roſillan *u* 182
Roſſur *u* 284
Rothomagum *u* 157
Rothſay *inſ* 283
Rotwel *u* 136
Rouſillon *pr* 230. *u* 331
Rouen *u* 157
Rovigno *u* 100
Rovergn *pr* 177
Roy *u* 155
Rubicon *fl* 76
Ruddiſdale *pr* 250
Ruel *caſt* 152
Rudra *u* 61
Ruffla *u* 140
Rupella *u* 171
Rus *u* 217
Ruſcinonenſis *pr* 230
Ruſſino *u* *Ib.*
Ruſſe *fl* 134
Ruſſin *u* 283
Rutene *p.* 177
Rutland *pr* 246
Rutuli *p* 83

Lib. II.

Rab *fl. u* 482
Raceburg *u* 411
Rachelſpurg *u* 381
Radiantis *fl* 387
Ragnitz *u* 474
Raguſi *inſ* 495
Raine *u* 377
Rammekins *caſt* 335
Ramme *u* *Ib.*
Raſcia *pr* 505
Ratacenſi *p* 500
Ratibor *u* 399
Ratisbona *u* 377
Ratzenberg *u* 405
Rava *pr* 476
Raveniczen *u* 506
Ravenſperg *pr. u* 421
Ravenſtein *pr* 358
Raveſtein *u* 331
Raumaricæ *p* 449
Rauraci *p* 369
Rauragnicii *p* 449
Rednitz *fl* 389
Rees *u* 356
Regen *fl* 377
Regensberg *u* *Ib.*
Regiacum *u* 321
Regimont *u* 474
Regius *mons u* 363
Richenbach *u* 399
Rempen *u* 334
Rensborg *u* 429
Renty *u* 321
Reſſel *u* 474
Rets *u* 381
Ruhen *fl* 467
Reuhon *fl* *Ib.*
Reudigni *p* 404
Reutling *u* 390
Rha *fl* 456
Rhæti *p* 351. 375
Rhætia Prima *pr* *Ib.*
Secunda *pr* 376. 378
Rhætiaria *u* 506
Rhetopolis *u* 377
Rhamnus *u* 527
Rheems *fl* 374. 390
Rheichesberg *u* 389
Rheineck *u* *Ib.*
Rhene *fl* 317. 350
inſ 553
Rhenen *u* 345. 420
Rhetimo *pr. u* 558
Rhezan *pr. u* 460
Rhineberg *u* 360
Rhium *c* 519
Rhizana *ſ* 493
Riſine *ſ* *Ib.*
Rod le Duke *u* 328
Rhodope *m. pr* 545
Rhodoſtolon *u* 510
Richecourt *u* 370
Richus *u* 434
Riexwald *u* 356
Riga *u* 468
Ringtlenſtein *u* 421
Rintelen *u* *Ib.*
Rip Ripen *u* 432
Riphæi *m* 456
Rivallia *u* 468
Rochfort *u* 329
Rotke de Match *u* 326
Roclite *m* 407
Rodemberg *u* 320
Roer *fl* 356
Roga *fl* 493
Romania *pr* 545
Roma nova *u* 547
Romberville *u* 370
Romerſwal *u* 336
Romoſo *inſ* 434
Roſchild *u* 433
Roſindale *pr* 331
Roſtock *u* 405
Rotelen *u* 391
Rotenberg *u* 365. 389
410. 416
Rottenby *u* 435
Rotterdam *u* 334
Rotwel *u* 375
Rouelle *fl* 323
Roxalani *p* 462. 472
Rubeacum *u* 368
Ruer *fl* 338
Rufac *u* 368
Rugard *caſt* 434
Rugen *inſ* 404
Rugii *p* *Ib.*
Ruguſci *p* 375
Rupel *fl* 320
Rupelmund *u* *Ib.*
Ruremond *u* 338
Ruſchow *u* 457
Ruſſia *pr* 454
Nigra *pr* 472
Ruſtringen *pr* 423
Ruſtow *u* 457
Rutheni *pr* 462

Lib. III.

Rabba *u* 660
Rabbat *u* *Ib.*
Rachian *inſ* 829
Radempore *u* 806
Raga *u* 736
Rages *u* *Ib.*
Rama *u* 672
Ramath *u* 674
Ramatha *u* 669
Rame *pr* 815
Ramoth *u* 662
Ramula *u* 672
Rantipore *u* 806
Raphaims *p* 660
Raphia *u* 678
Rapſii *p* 740
Raraſia *u* 799
Raubeni *p* 69
Rebat *pr* 80
Rebeth *fl* 799
Reblata *u* 645
Reccath *u* 665
Recem *u* 694
Recome *u* 659
Recon *pr* 815
Red-Sea 699
Regia *u* 644
Orientis *u* 739
Regius *fl* 705
Regma *u* 698
Aram-beth Rhehob *pr* 635
Rehoboth *u* 710
Reix magos *inſ* 828
Renith *u* 667
Rephaim *u* 694
Reſapha *u* 648
Reſeph *u* *Ib.*
Resbutes *p* 807
Reuben *p* 661
Rha *fl* 799
Rhabanah *u* 698. 786
Rhabanei *p* 776
Rhadaga *fl* 738
Rhagiana *u* 743
Rhalmathum *u* 660
Rhamantus *u* 644
Rhamnæ *p* 743
Rhandamacotta *u* 818
Rhea *u* 748
Rhegama *u* 698
Rheganna *u* 692
Rheſen *u* 710
Rhinococura *u* 678
fl 693
Rhizale *u* 834
Rhodes *inſ. u* 628.
Rhodia *u* 617
Rhodiopolis *u* *Ib.*
Rhogandini *p* 834
Rhogomants *fl* 739
Rhombites *fl* 766
Rhymnus *m. fl* 771
Rhyndacus *fl* 598
Riblah *u* 645. 666
Rithma *u* 660
Rogelim *u* 662
Rom *pr. inſ* 828
Rophitæ *p* 744
Rorre *u* 802
Roſalargitum *inſ* 828
Roſingen *inſ* *Ib.*
Rozelgate *c* 699
Rugia *u* 644
Ruſicare *u* 629
Ryna *u* 717

Lib. IV.

Rabut *u* 891
Raliana *fl* 1084
Ramada *u* 1088
Ramaſſoc *l* 956
Rameæ *inſ* 954
Rameſes *pr* 854
Rancheria *u* 1088
Raponowinin *l* 1110
Rapſii *p* 919
Rapta *fl. u. c* 911. 920
Raz *c* 951
Cividad Real *u* 1080

Realeio *u* 1083
Rebato *fl* 891
Redas *fl* 1087
Redgooſe *inſ* 1128
Rennoſa *port* 951
Los Reyes *u* 1095
Port 1101
Rhiobamba *u* 1094
Riblera *u* 933
Coſta Rica *pr* 1082
Villa Rica *u* 1101
Porto Rico *I. u* 1117
Del Rio *inſ* 1087
Ney ya Rioya *u* 1104
Porto del Riſcata *u* 904
Les troyes Rivieres *fl* 952
Roakery *u* 1110
Roca *inſ* 935
Rocca *inſ* 1116
Roigneuſe *port* 951
Ned Roma *u* 886
Roma Nova *u* 931
Roſetta *u* 856
Rotunda *inſ* 1119
Rubicatus *fl* 878
Rubra Gleba *u* 854
Rubricatus *fl* 883
Ruſpinum *u* 882
Rubut *u* 891
Ryſſadius *m* 900

S.

Lib. I.

SAbatinus *l* 107
Sabaudia *pr* 128
Sabinia *pr* 81
Sabrina *fl* 240
Sacrum Promontorium 223
Saguntum *u* 228
Sainctes *u* 171
Sainċterre *u* 182
Saineterræ *u* 173
Sainterre *pr* 155
Albans *u* 256
Amand *u* 166
Andrea *u* 209
Andre *u* 182
Andrews *l* 164. *u* 270
Angelo *m* 61
Aſaph *u* 263
Aubin *caſt* 188
Barbara *u* 224
Baſil *u* 172
Beat *u* 174
Bennet le Chaſteau *u* 166
Bernardino *u* 140
Bernard *u* 174
Boniface *u* 115
Bregoa *u* 174
Brieu *u* 160
Brioci *u* *Ib.*
Catherines *caſt* 129
Clode *u* 151
Claudius *u* *Ib.*
Crux *u* 225
St. Davids *u* 263
Dennis *u* 151
Dominico *inſ* 64
Deſier *u* 153
Doſiderii *u* *Ib.*
Edmundsbury *u* 249
Eſtienne *u* 166
Evaſius *u* 123
Euphemie *u* 64
Felix *u* 83
Florence *u* 115
Floure *u* 167
Gal *u* 136
George *u. inſ* 224
Germans *u* 166
Gillis *u* 179
Guermier *u* 166
Hellens *inſ* 284
Hilary *u* 188
Jacamo *u* 140
Jago *u* 210
John de Angelie 171
Luz *u* 172
Pied Port *u* 204
Mont *u* 188
Johnſtown 270
Julian *m* 71
Lawrence *m* 220
Legier *u* 185
Leon *u. caſt* 70
Loup *u* 150
Lucar de Barameda 212
Malo *u* 160
Marceline *u* 182
Maria *u* 213
Maries *inſ* 64. 284
u 224
Martins *u* 188
Maudits *c* 253
Maurice *u* 133. 166
inſ 284
Michael *inſ* 224
St. Monhaud *u* 156
Morits *u* 133
Palæi *u* 204
Paul de Vences *u* 179
Peters *inſ* 75
Peters port *u* 188
Hol de Leon *u* 160
Porcin *u* 166
Quintain *u* 156
Reperata *u* 74
Rimberg *u* 166
Rombert *u* *Ib.*
Saviours *u* 123
Sebaſtians *u* 224
Severine *u* 61
Stephens *u* 166
Vas *u* 123
Valeries *u* 158
Vincent *c* 223
Urbin *u* 153
Salaſci *p* 127
Salamanca *u* 219
Salduba *u* 232
Salentini *p* 62
Salerno *u* 59
Salii *pr* 125. 179
Sallinellus *fl* 57
Salines *u* 186
Salisbury *u* 248
Sallien *pr* 133
Salop *pr* 250
Salpe *u* 61
Salſulæ *u* 229
Salſus *u* *Ib.*
Salvi *u* 59
Saluzzes *p. u* 128
Samathan *u* 174
Samnitæ *p* 164
Samnites *p* 59
Samnium *u* *Ib.*
Samona *fl* 148
Samſon *inſ* 284
Sana *fl* 136
Sancetre *u* 168
Sandaliotis *inſ* 73
Sangueſſa *u* 204
Saniſera *u* 230
Santa Crux *u* 225
Santillana *u* 209
Santomė *p* 171
Saragoſſa *u* 232
Saraval *u* 99
Sarazal *u* 217
Sarca *fl* 97. 120
Sardaigne *pr* 230
Sardano *u* *Ib.*
Sardinia *inſ* 29. 73
Sarenaza *u* 113
Sargan *u* 135
Sark *inſ* 189
Sarlat *u* 170
Sarnia *inſ* 188
Sarſina *u* 76
Sarte *fl* 162
Sarum *u* 253
Saſſari *u* 74
Savardum *u* 173
Saubize *u* 172
Savillan *u* 128
Sault *fl* 152
Saumur *u* 162
Savona *u* 114
Savoy *pr* 127
Saxole *u* 77
Scabiliſcus *u* 223
Sceaful *m* 283
Scaffehauſen *u* 136
Shetland *inſ* 282
Scilleticus ſinus 63
Scilly *inſ* 284
Scombrarii *inſ* 230
Scone *u* 270
Scopuli Cyclopum *inſ* 71
Scotia minor *inſ* 276
Scotland *R* 268
Scultenna *fl* 76
Sealſy *u* 252
Secuſiani *p* 183
Sedani *p* 125
Sedunum *u* 133
Segalauni *p* 182
Segiſta *u* 71
Segiſana *u* 219
Segobriga *u* 227
Segontium *u* 261
Segorve *u* 227
Segovia *u. m* 219
Segre *u* 228
Seguria *fl* *Ib.*
Seguſiani *p* 166
Seile *fl* 179
Seine *fl* 148. 184
Selame *inſ* 284
Selgovæ *p* 271
Selinus *u* 68
Semur *u* 185
Semnones *p* 117
Sena Gallica *u* 79
Senones *p* 117. 152
Sens *p. u* *Ib.*
Senes *fl* 277
Senga *fl* 231
Sengal *u* 136
Seniſii *p* 180
Senlis *u* 150
Senogalle *u* 79
Sentica *u* 219
Sentinus *fl* 80
Sequana *fl* 148
Sequani *p* 186
Secirus *fl* 107
Setaval *u* 223
Serum *fl* 184
Seſſa *u* 58
Seſtri *u* 113
Severn *fl* 240
Seugne *fl* 171
Seuri *p* 210
Sex Sexicanum *u* 215
Shanon *fl* 277
Showre *fl* *Ib.*
Shrewsbury *u* 263
Sicania *p. I* 68
Sicilia *inſ* 29. 67
Sider *pr* 133
Sienna *u* 109
Sierra Morena 201
Novada *m* *Ib.*
Sigdiles *inſ* 284
Sigeſtorii *p* 180
Signenca *u* 220
Signi *u* 156
Silarus *fl* 57. 64
Silinges *p* 214
Silliers *u* 174
Silline *inſ* 284
Silures *inſ* *Ib.*
Silimnum *inſ* *Ib.*
Silvanectus *p. u* 150
Silvis *u* 223
Siluris *p. inſ* 261. 284
Silus *fl* 98
Sinnada *pr. u* 140
Sintra *u* 223
Sinueſſa *u* 58
Sion *u. p* 133
Sipontum *u* 61
Sitomagus *u* 249
Sitim *u* 133
Sevil *u* 212
Skye *inſ* 283
Slane *fl* 277
Slego *pr. u* 279
Snowdon *u* 262
Soana *u* 109
Soaſne *fl.* 148. 184
Sobrarb *p. u* 204
Sodoro *u* 283
Sologne *pr* 164
Solothurum *u* 136
Solothurn *u* *Ib.*
Some *fl* 148
Sondrio *u* 141
Soria *u* 219
Sorlings *inſ* 284
Solway *fret* 250. *fl* 267
Somerſet *pr* 246
Sorbiodunum *u* 248
Soubſterion *u* 170
Soulac *u* 171
Souldre *fl* 164
Souri *u* 168
Souvigne *u* 166
South-hampton *pr* 246
253
Southſex *pr* 255
Soyſſons *u* 156
Spain *R* 196
Spartimente *c* 64
Spey *fl* 270
Spoleto *u* 80
Squilacy *ſ* 63
Stafford *pr* 246
Stalla *u* 140
Stamford *u* 249
Steholm *inſ* 284
Sterling *pr. u* 270
Stœchades *inſ* 187
Stonar *u* 285
Strombolo *inſ* 71
Strada Romana *m* 125
Strathern *pr* 271
Strathnavern *pr* *Ib.*
Sture *fl* 123
Sublanco *u* 209
Sucron *fl u* 227. 228
Suiſſiones *p* 154
Suevi *p* 211
Suffolk *pr* 246
Suiſſe *u* 58
Sulchi *u* 73
Sulmo *u* 60
Sunderland *inſ* 285
Surrey *pr* 246
Surus *fl* 227
Suſco *inſ* 284
Suſe *u* 128
Suſſex *pr* 246
Sutherland *pr* 271
Switzerland *pr* 134
Sybaris *fl* 57. *u* 63
Sylla *rupes* 67
Syracuſa *u* 69

Lib. II.

Sabaria *u* 482
De monte Sacro *ſ* 541
Sachano *u. fl* 461
Sagan *u. fl* 461. *pr* 399
Saii *p* 548
Amand *u* 321
Andrews *inſ* 338
Die *u* 370
Georges-Arm *c* 546
Georgio *u* 504
Hippolite *u* 370
Hubert *u* 317
Macor *u* 558
St. Maure *u. inſ. c* 536
Michael *u* 462
Miel *u* 370
Nicholas *u* 370. *ſ* 462
Omar *u* 321
Paul *pr. u* 321
Thomas *u* 439
Truden *u* 328
Veit Viti *u* 382
Sala *fl* 351. 387. 407
Salamone *c* 555
Salamis *inſ* 552
Saland *pr* 338
Salaſſia *u* 522
Salatza *fl* 388
Salii *p* 338. 387
Salinæ *u* 500
Salona *u* 492
Saloniche *ſ* 542
Saltiza *fl* 515
Saltsbach *u* 393
Saltzburg *pr* 377. *u* 437
Saltus Carbonarius *pr* 323
Saltzach *fl* 377
Salutaris *pr* 544
Salza *fl* 351
Samandrachi *inſ. u* 550
Sambia *pr* 474
Sambre *fl* 323
Sameſcot *u* 439
Samman *u* 448
Samogitia *pr* 469
Samonium *c* 555
Samothrace *inſ* 550
Samotz Kaſelma *pr* 469
Samſoe *inſ* 432
Samus *fl* 505
Santen *u* 356
Santa Quaranta *u* 536
Santorini *inſ* 555
Sapæi *pr* 548
Sar *fl* 362. 369
Sapienza *inſ* 521
Sarbrucken *u* 362
Sardica *u* 546
Sardiotæ *p* 496
Sarentine *u* 405
Sarmatia Europæa *pr* 462
Sarmatici *m* 480
Saronicus *ſ* 518
Sarquino *inſ* 551
Savari *p* 471
Savarden *u* 370
Savia *fl pr* 480
Sauromatæ *p* 462
Sauſi *u* 329
Sauſin *u* 325
Savus *fl* 382. 481
Saxenfelt *u* *Ib.*
Saxenhauſen *u* 389
Saxenkobourg *u* *Ib.*
Saxony *pr* 406. 409
Scacinus *fl* 557
Scaffhauſen *u* 373
Scagen *u* 437
Scalavonia *pr* 474
Scaldis *fl* 318
Scalholt *u* 439
Scandia *pr* 435
Scandinaria *pr* *Ib.*
Scania *pr* *Ib.*
Scanzia *pr* *Ib.*
Scara *u* 446
Scardona *u* 495. *inſ* 496
Scardonici *m* 489
Scardus *m* 498. 541
Scarphia *u* 532
Schamlat *u* 420
Scanderborg *u* 432
Scharp *fl* 321
Scheld *fl* 319. 323
Schelink *inſ* 336
Scheyre *pr* 377
Schesburg *u* 500
Schin *u* 437
Schinuſa *inſ* 555
Schleſtad *u* 368. 389
Schleſi *pr* 398
Schneberg *u* 408
m 480
Schon *u* 437
Schonen *pr* 435
Schoonehoven *u* 334
Schorndorf *u* 390
Schowen *inſ* 336
Schwaben *pr* 373
Schwas *u* 383
Schweinfurt *u* 389
Scilleum *c* 554
Scirtari *p* 496
Scirtones *p* *Ib.*
Sclavi *p* 396
Sclavonia *pr* 489
Scluys *u* 320
Scodra *u* 493
Scombrus *m* 515
Sconhuffen *u* 393
Sconri *u* 520
Scopelos *inſ* 551
Scopi *u* 506
Scordiſci *p* 484
Scetuſa *u* 541
Scricfinnia *pr* 448
Scrieſſen *u* 364
Scriſſia *u* 495
Scupi *m* 506

Scutari *u* 493
Scwanica *u* 491
Scwartzenwald *m* 351
Scyathos *inſ* 551
Scyculi *p* 500
Scyros *inſ* 554
Scythia *pr* 544
Scythicum *mare* 438
Sehenburgen *pr* 499
Sebenico *u* 492
Sedan *pr. u* 326
Sedunum *pr. u* *Ib.*
Segeberg *u* 429
Seland *inſ* 433
Selborg *u* 469
Seleſtadium *u* 368
Seleucia *u* 541
Selimbria *u* 546
Selino *u* 558
Selle *fl* 369
Seltz *u* 368
Sem *fl* 460
Semigallia *pr* 468
Semunder *u* 506
Senderovia *u* *Ib.*
Sendomir *pr. u* 476
Senhunſen *u* 400
Senia *u* 494
Senones *p* 400
Senoy *inſ* 329
Sepſi *p* 500
Seriphus *inſ* 554
Serphone *inſ* *Ib.*
Septemcaſtrenſis *pr* 499
Servia *pr* *Ib.*
Seſtos *u* 546
Sethia *m* 557
Setira *u* 551
Sevaces *p* 380
Sevenwalden *p* 336
Severia *pr* 459
Severin *u* 505
Sevo *m* 467
Sfachia *u* 558
Sfetigrade *u* 537
Shertogenboſch *u* 330
Sibior *pr. u* 460
Sicambri *p* 318. 339
Sicenus *inſ* 555
Sicino *inſ* *Ib.*
Sicilia minor *inſ* 554
Siculota *p* 496
Sicum *u* 492
Sicwiarskey *u* 460
Sicyon *pr. u* 519
Sidrona *u* 482
Sidro *u* 561
Siphno *inſ* 555
Sigalons *p* 430
Sileſia *pr* 398
Siliſtria *u* 510
Silva ducis *u* 330
Simandria *u* 506
Simeren *u* 364
Singeticus *ſ* 541
Singidum *u* 484
Siniſtrum *mare* 549
Sinna *fl* 387
Siradia *pr* 476
Sirmiſh *u* 482
Sirmium *u* 490
Siſſaken *u* *Ib.*
Siſſeg *u* *Ib.*
Siſſia *u* *Ib.*
Siſſipolis *u* 546
Sitones *p* 449
Sittia *pr. u* 557
Skaringe liut *rupes* 432
Sleswick *pr. u* *Ib.*
Slobabo *u* 457
Smalandia *pr* 446
Smalcald *u* 408
Smolensko *pr. u* 457
Sneck *u* 336
Soeſt *u* 358
Soldin *u* 400
Solms *pr. u* 387
Soltwedel *u* 400
Somerſdike *inſ. u* 335
Sontino *u* 360
Sophia *u* 510
Sopron *u* 482
Sopronium *u* *Ib.*
Sorabi *p* 407. 506
Sora *u* 433
Sorund *u* 439
Sound *fretum* 433
Spa *u* 329
Spachia *m. u* 558
Spalato *u* 492
Spandaw *u* 400
Spanhem *pr* 366
Sparta *u* 522
Spenderobe *u* 506
Spira *u* 365
Spires *u* *Ib*
Spireoſtoma *fl* 498
Spital *u* 382
Sporades *inſ* 555
Spre *fl* 399
Sprenberg *u* *Ib.*
Stabul *u* *Ib.*
Stadt *u* 421
Stadium *u* *Ib.*
Staffanger *u* 438
Stagira *u* 542
Stagno *u* 493
Staliment *inſ* 551
Stampalia *inſ* 555
Standia *inſ* 560
Staphelſtein *u* 388
Stargard *u* 403. 405
Starodus *u* 460
Staveren *u* 336
Stauroneſus *u* 364
Stechaw *u* 381
Stecholm *u* 447
Steckfelt *u* 368
Steffansfelt *u* *Ib.*
Steenberg *p. u* 331
Stegoe *u* 434
Steinaw *u* 399
Stelluſa *u* 538
Steltium *u* 357
Stenay *u* 370
Steindal *u* 400
Stendorp *u* 429
Stephanopolis *u* 499
Sternberg *u* 405. 431
Stertius *fl* 504
Sterveſt *u* 409
Stetin *u* 403
Stiermark *pr* 381
Stiria *pr* *Ib.*
Stockholm *u* 447
Stode *u* 421
Stonibrigadum *u* 506
Stoniburg *u* *Ib.*
Stoer *fl. u* 429
Storemarch *pr* *Ib.*
Strackſland *u* 403
Strealen *u* 339
Straluberg *caſt* 364
De Strandt *inſ* 431
Strasburg *u* 367
Straten *u* 399
Stratonice *u* 542
Strengnes *u* 448
Stridon *u* 482
Strigman *u* *Ib.*
Strigonium *u* 483
Strimonicus *ſ* 542
Strimonii *p* 548
Striſſen *u* 471
Strivali *inſ* 560
Strophades *inſ* *Ib.*
Struma *fl* 411
Strybia *inſ* 555
Strymon *fl* 518. 541
Stubeopen *u* 434
Stul Weſenberg *u* 483
Stutgard *u* 390
Stymphalus *fl* 518. *u. l* 521
Styx *fl* *Ib.*
Suantes *p* 375
Suardones *p* 407
Subalingii *p* 430
Suconia *fl* 498
Sudavia *pr* 474
Sudermania *pr* 447
Sudetæ *m* 351. 408
Sudini *p* 474
Sueci *p* 444
Suentin *c* 429
Suevia *pr* 373
Suevicum *mare* 433
Suevi Lygii *p* 476
Suevus *fl* 399
Sugart *u* 403
Sdinborch *u* 434
Suiones *p* 449
Sulanes *p* 474
Sumium *u* 510
Sunneburg *u* 469
Sunderberg *u* 434
Sundt *fret* 433
Sungovia *pr* 368
Sungow *pr* *Ib.*
Sunneberg *u* 400
Suras *u* 473
Sure *fl* 460
Surick *u* *Ib.*
Surland *pr* 420
Suſatum *u* 358
Suſdali *u* 461
Suſenberg *u* 391
Swartzta *fl* 398
Swartzemburg *u* 389
Sweden *R* 447
Sweinitz *u* 399
Swethans *pr* 444
Swethidi *pr* *Ib.*
Swethland *pr* *Ib.*
Swiote *fl* 470
Swol *u* 338
Swerin *l* 405
Sybota *u* 536
Syoita *u* *Ib.*
Syderocapſa *u* 542
Syntica *pr* 541
Syphnus *inſ* 555

Lib. III.

Saba *u* 692
Sabæ *u* *Ib.*
Sabacamber *l* 748
Sabæi *p* 700
Sabalaſſa *fl* 798
Sabana *u* 818
Sabara *u* *Ib.*
Sabaræ *p* 800
Sabbatha *u* 698
Sabæ *u* *Ib.*
Sabis *u* 741
Sabota *u* 698
Sabran *u* 725
Sacæ *p* 761. 769
Sacer Sinus *ſ* 698
Sachalites *ſ* *Ib.*
Sachian *u* 777
Sada *u* 818
Sadadibæ *inſ* 816
Sadam *pr* 800
Sadus *fl* 818
Sæta *u* 776
Saffet *u* 667
Sadana *u* 831
Sagalaſſa *u* 619
Saganis *fl* 741
Sagappa *fl* 798
Sagareus *fl* 741
Sagartii *p* 736
Sagdana *inſ* 742
Sageda *u* 799
Sagua *u* 609
Salæ *p* 834
Salambria *u* 605
Salaminia *inſ* 630
Salamine *inſ* 632
Salamis *u* *Ib.*
Salarus *fl* 741
Salataræ *p* 749
Salchalite *p* 700
Saldino *fl* 638
Salice *inſ* 834
Salmacis *fl* 616
Salur *u* 799
Salutaris *pr* 609. 648. 672
Samachonitis *l* 658
Samara *u* 832
Samarchand *u* 770
Samaria *pr. u* 668. 670
Samaritan *inſ* 700
Samba *u* 818
Sambri *u* 832
Samia *u* 626
Samidace *fl* 741
Samir *m* 649. 654
Samocolchi *p* 768
Samos *inſ* 626
Samoſata *u* 646
Samoyeds *p* 766
Samrom *m* 670
Samus *u* 799
Sancey *l* 786
Sandabilis *inſ* 799
Sanga *pr* 806
Sangarius *fl* 598. 603
Sangari *fl* 598
Sari-Germanum *u* 763
Sanglai *pr* 782
Sanguin *inſ* 830
Saphan *u* 746
Saphar *u* 698
Saphet *u* 666
Saphta *u* 698
Sapires *p* 723
Sappara *fl* 798
Saraceni *p* 693
Sarata *u* 786
Sarcan *pr* 613
Sardis *u* 614
Sardonyx *m* 798
Sarepta *u* 640
Sargarenſene *pr* 605
Sarh *pr* 708
Sarmagana *u* 745
Sarmatiæ Pylæ *m* 766
Sarmatia *pr* *Ib.*
  Aſiatica *pr* 761
  Europæa *pr* *Ib.*
Saron *m* 659. *u* 669
Sarphath *u* 640
Sara *u* *Ib.*
Sarama *u* 807
Sarug 713
Saſones *p* 772
Saſvar *u* 745
Saragam *u* 815
Sataros *u* 617
Sattalia *u ſ* 620
Satyrorum *ſ inſ* 816
Savadii *p* 749
Saubeni *p* 772
Saum *u* 739
Sauran *u* 807
Sauromatæ *p* 764
Sauſtene *pr* 802
Sauta *u* 777
Sazotæ *p* 741
Scamander *fl* 598. 607
Scamandria *u* *Ib.*
Scandeloro *u* 622
Scanderone *u* *Ib.*
Scarayirzick *u* 768
Scarpanto *inſ. u* 628
Scheheruzal *u* 710
Scænitæ *p* 692
Scepſis *u* 611
Scernus *u. fl* 803
Schind *fl* 799
Scianhay *u* 787
Scimnitæ *p* 768
Scirtas *fl* 711
Scordæ *p* 749
Scordiſcus *m* 598. 606
Scutari *u* 598
Scythia *pr* 762
  Extra Imaum *pr* 774
  Intra Imaum *pr* 769
Scythopolis *u* 649. 665. 668
Sebaſtia *u* 670. 720
Sebaſtopolis *u* 612
Sebat *inſ* 828
Seboim *u* 673
Secanda *pr* 747
Seci *p* 768
Sede Aram *pr* 635
Segiſtan *u* 802
Segui *u* 775
Seir *m* 678
Sela *u* 694. 739
Selah *u* *Ib.*
Selebes *inſ* 829
Seleucia *u* 619, 620. 644. 707
Selge *u* 619
Selliſture *u* 768
Semanthinus *m* 818
Semantini *p. m* 788
Semia *pr* 595
Semiramis *m* 741
Semiſcaſach *u* 692
Semni *p* 834
Senderem *u* 830
Senaipate *u* 814
Senus *fl* 785
Sephar *m* 798
Sepharvaim *u* 647
Sephet *u* 665
Sephoris *u* 667
Sera *u* 775
Serapias *inſ* 700
Serica *pr. m* 775
Seriphi *m* 716. 745
Shamaki *u* 735
Sheirvan *pr* 734
Shenith Kiriathaim *u* 660
Sherrie *u* 637
Shiras *u* 740
Shuah *u* 692
Shuſhan *u* 738
Siam *pr* 821. 822
Sicaria *pr* 693
Siceleg *u* 672
Sichem *u* 670
Sichor *u* *Ib.*
Side *u* 620
Sidon *u* 640
Sigæum *u* 607
Sigan *u* 787
Singan *u* *Ib.*
Siganeam *u* 722
Sigara *u* 744
Sige *u* 743
Sigeſtan *u* *Ib.*
Sihon *m* 654
Silo *u* 669
Silvanpede *p* 824
Simeon *p* 672
Simergan *u* 814
Similla *u* 799
Simoeis *fl* 607
Simores *fl* *Ib.*
Simondi *inſ* 834
Sin *u* 693. 744
Sinæ *p* 782
Sinai *m* 693
Sinda *pr* 806. *u* 818
Sindæ *inſ* 829
Sincapura *u* 821
Sinchi *p* 764
Sindocanda *pr. u* 834
Singara *u* 713
Singas *fl. u* 638. 647
Sintacora *u* 809
Sinthum *fl* 798
Sio *u* 626
Sion *m* 658. *u* 675
Sipilas *m* 614
Sipparum *u* 708
Sipphora *u* 667
Sirace *u* 722
Sirbon *l* 678
Siriangh *caſt* 819. 824
Siripur *u* 815
Sirne *inſ* 629
Siſtan *u* 743
Sittacene *pr* 709
Sittim *u* 661
Sizyges *p* 876
Skerkeff *u* 807
Smyrna *u. ſ* 612
Soa *fl* 799
Soana *fl. pr* 834
Sobura *u* 799
Socani *p* 768
Socotai *u* 822
Socratis *inſ* 700
Sodom *u* 658
Sogdiana *pr* 761
Sogdii *m* *Ib.*
Solæ *u. pr* 621
Soli *u. pr* *Ib.*
Solor *inſ* 830
Solſette *u* 810
Solyma *u* 617
Sommongul *pr* 779
Sophene *pr* 719
Sophtha *inſ* 742
Sor *u* 640
Sora *u* 799
Sorabius *fl* *Ib.*
Soramba *fl* 741
Soringi *p* 800
Soſippus *u* 698
Sotera *u* 745

Sparinga u 807
Spawhawn u 746
Spatana u 834
Stabæi u 740
Stathmus u 799
Stomalimne u 628
Stragionl u 678
Stratæ fl 734
Strava u 748
Strongilus m 741
Suaſſia u 720
Suaſtus fl 799
Subleſtan pr 744
Subut inſ. u 816. 828
Succoth u 662
Succuir u 777
Sucheau u 787
Suchuen pr Ib.
Suente u 649
Sues u 699
Sueta u 664
Suiria pr 724
Sultane puare u 803
Sultania pr 736
Sumachia u Ib.
Sumahania pr 778
Sumatra inſ 832
Sun u 834
Sunda u 832
Sundiva u 823
Suntien u 786
Sur pr. u 640. u 694
Sura u 648
Surat u 808
Surrabia u 832
Surungo u 827
Suſa u 738
Suſiana pr Ib.
Suur u 606
Suzæi u 740
Swalley u 808
Sybaris u 722
Sychi m 770. p 772
Syeri p 744
Symada u 609
Synda ſ 766
Syndaga u 746
Syngarus fl. m 711
Synope u 600
Syra u 809
Syria pr 635
  Damaſcene pr 649
  Maacha pr 646
  Salutaris pr 648
  Secunda pr Ib.
  Transfluvialis pr 710
  Propria pr 643
Syrion m 649. 654
Syro-phœnicia pr 649

Lib. IV.

Saba u 911. inſ 1119
Sabian pr 912
Sabaiticum u 914
Sabaſticum u Ib.
Sabath u 911
De Sable inſ 954
Sabratha u 881
Sachimilci p 1076
Sacholche u 911
Sacque Sahanough fl 958
Saddle inſ 1128
Sagahadoc fl 956
Sagamedrum pr 913
Sagapola m 900
Saguenay fl 952
Saiet u 857
Sais u 856
De Sal fl 1070
Sala fl 878. 887. u 891
Salado fl 1104
Salamanca u 1080. 1088
Salathus fl. u 900
De Salaya u 1704
Saldæ u 886
Ben Salem u 1131
Salera u 882
Salina pr 1113
De Salinas pr 1094
Salis inſ 933
Salla u 891
Sal-nitri m 925
St. Salvador fl 1103
  u 1181. 1121. 1123
Salud pr 853
Salur fl 887
Samana pr 1121
Samovia pr 962
Samſonate u 1081
Samdi pr 925
Santa u 914
Santos u 1106
Todos los Sanctos pr. ſ 1107
Sapayoy p 1111
Sardina fl 1086
Sardinilla fl Ib.
Sargel u 887
Sarra pr 900
Saſques-hanaxi p 959
Sat Gemer fl 880
Satun c 910
Satyrorum m Ib.
Saud pr 853
St. Saviour u 926. pr 1081
  fl 1103
Saymæ p 1111
Scanderia u 855
Schaniticum fl 853
Scotia Nova pr 953
Scyapodæ p 842
St. Sebaſtian fl. u 1070
  u 1088. ſ 1106. 1130
  De la Plata u 1090
Secatan u 959
Secco fl 962
Secſina u 889
Segelmeſſe pr. u 901
Segocket u 956
Segovia u 1083. 1114
Segura u 1078
Seguro pr. u 1106
Seio pr 967
Seligus m 892
Selir u 915
Senega fl 904
Senecu u 1072
Nueſtra Sennora pr 1101
Septa u 893
Las Sepulturas u 1097
Sequana fl 962
Serapionis c 910
Seregippe u 1107
Serena u 1100
Serrevabi fl 962
Servi fl 890
Sevilette u 1072
Sevilla u 1123
  Del Oro u 1094
Seuta u 893
Shycoake u 959
Siara pr 1107
Sibald inſ 1129
Sibeoa u 881
Sibnit u 856
Sicca Venetia u 884
Sierra Complida m 925
  Leona c 904
  De Sol m 925
Sifelmel fl 887
Siga u 886
Signiti p 856
Simbus u 923
Sinſalida ſ 1101
Siſaris fl 878
Siſſeva fl 889
Sitifenſis pr 888
Sitiphis u Ib.
Smiths Bay ſ 1128
Sokus fl 900
Sococha u 1104
Soconuſco pr 1080
Socorra u 1072
Socotara inſ 929. u 930
Sofala pr. u 922
Soldania u 924
Solomonis inſ 1130
Songo pr. u 927
Sorbetos fl 878
Theon Soterum u 910
Souriquois pr 954
Spiritus Sancti fl 920. 962
  u 1070. 1079. 1106
Stachiris fl 900
Stadac u 953
Standacone u Ib.
Statenland pr 1130
St. Stephen port 1101
St. Stevan del puerto u 1074
Sua pr 911
Suachen u 914
Subeit u 890
Subu fl 891
Subur fl Ib.
Succhæ u 914
Succhæi p 909
Succoſii p 887
Sues u 854
Suluce u 904
Sumbrero inſ 1119
Summer inſ 961
Sun c 890
Sunda pr. u 927
De Surta ſ 881
Suſa fl. pr 888
De buen Suſcia c 1130
Suſolas pr 962
Syene u 857
Sylura l 881
Syrtis major 859. 881
  minor Ib.

T.

Lib. I.

TÆnarus fl 123
Tævina fl 219
Tafalla u 204
Taffe fl 263
Tagus fl 200
Tabora u 218
Talente c 184
Taluera de la Regna u 218
Talzali p 271
Tamia u Ib.
Tanaus u 141
Tankerville u 158
Taodunum u 270
Taracina u 83
Taraſcon u 180
Tardera fl 228
Tarentaiſe u 128
Tarentum u 63
Tariffa u 212
Taretta fl 69
Tarbe u 174
Tartas u 175
Tarragon u 228
Tarteſſus inſ. u 212
Tarraconenſis p 201
Tavenſis u 262
Tavila u 223
Taulon u 179
Taurini p 127
Tauroentium u 179
Tauromenium u 68
Tais Ty. fl 270
Techo fl 229
Tectoſages p 177
Teio u 141
Port Telamon u 109
Temd fl 263
Tenot fl 211
Teranum u 59
Tercera inſ 224
Tereus fl 69
Tergeſtum u. ſ 99
Ternay u 182
Terraciola u 109
Terra di Lavoro pr 57
  Otranto p 62
  Nova u 63
Thamiſis fl 240
Thanet inſ 285
Thelis fl 229
Thet fl 254
Thetford u Ib.
Tholone u 179
Tholouſa u 177
Thorney u 253
Thouars u 169
Thulenſel inſ 283
Thule inſ 282
Thurles u 280
Thraſymene l 82
Tibris fl 30
Tibur u 83
Ticinus fl. u 30. 82
Tieraſchie pr 156
Tiliaventum fl 99
Tine fl 240
Tingitana pr 202
Timavus fl 99
Tinnetio u 140
Tintzen u Ib.
Triphernum u 81
Tipperary pr 279
Tirconnel pr 278
Tir Oen pr Ib.
Tirol pr 126
Tividale pr 271
Tivoli u 83
Toam u 279
Todi u 81
Toledo pr. u 217
Toloſates p 177
Toloſa u 207
Toloſetre u Ib.
Torcella inſ. u 101
Torceſter u 249
Tormes fl 219
Torney fl 184
Toro u 209
Tordeſillas u 219
Tortoſa u 229
Tourein pr 162
Tournay u 155
Tours u 162
Tournus u 185
Tranſmontani p 209
Tranum u 62
Trapani u 70
Travaſede u 140
Travignano inſ 115
Tredagh u 278
Treguier u 160
Treniac u 170
Treiſſa fl 109
Tremitana inſ 64
Trent u 126. fl 240
Treport u 155
Treviſo u 97
Tricaſſes p 152
Tricaſſin u 182
Trieſte u 99
Trilencum u 211
Trim u 278
Trinacria inſ 67
Trinobants p 249
Tripontium u Ib.
Troya u 61. inſ 110
Trontus fl 57. 75
Troys u 153
Trude u 211
Tudela u 204
Tuderum u 81
Tueſis u 271
Tui u 211
Turduli p 214
Turdinati p Ib.
Turenne u 167
Turin u 127
Turones p 162
Turrita u 74
Turſaubica u 174
Turi u 164
Tuſcany pr 106
Tuſci p Ib.
Tuſculum u 83
Twedale pr 271
Tweed fl 240
Twomond pr. u 279
Tyrrhenium mare 82. 113
Tyvie fl 262

Lib. II.

Tabarnæ u 368
Tabor m. u 395
Tænaria m 522
Tænarus m Ib.
Tagurium inſ 495
Talautii p 538
Tanais fl 454. 456
Tangermond u 400
Tarchzal m 480
Tarnaw u 490
Tarono u 536
Mordwit Tartari p 461
Tatri m 480
Tauber fl 364
Taureſium u 506
Tauriſci p 500
Taurunum u 483
Taururum u Ib.
Taygetus m 519
Tegea u 521
Teina u 504
Teiſterbant p 357
Telchinia inſ 555
Toleboe inſ 561
Telga u 448
Teſſinkſtede u 429
Teltz fl 504
Temes fl 505
Temeſwar u 484
Tempe pr 539
Tenos inſ 553
Tentiburgium u 483
Tergoes u 336
Tergoviſta u 504
Termes fl 498
Terveſt c 468
Ternova u 510
Terpillus u 542
Tervana u 322
Tewin u Ib.
Tetrapolis inſ 561
Tetrapyrgom u 506
Teutoburgum u 356
Teutoni p 435
Texel inſ 335
Teya fl 381
Thalaſſia inſ 550
Thann u 368
Thaſſus inſ. u 550
Thearus fl 545
Themene u 558
Theonville u 326
Theon Trapeza inſ 555
Thera inſ Ib.
Theraſia inſ Ib.
Thermaicus ſ 541
Thermopylæ 530
Thermus u 534
Therouen u 321
Theſpia u. fl 530
Theſprotia pr 535
Theſſalonica u 542
Theſſaly pr 539
Theuſtad pr 449
Thinnias inſ 549
St. Thomas u 439
Thorda u 500
Thrace pr 544
Thronium u 533
Thulana u 522
Thule inſ 439
Thyamis fl 536
Thyland pr 432
Thyras pr 545
Thyſtad u 432
Tiberina u 377
Tibiſcus fl 481
Tibiſum u 510
Tiel u 338
Tilmont u 330
Tirangetæ p 408
Tieſs fl 481
Titius fl 492
Togrop u 434
Tokay u 482
Tolen inſ. u 336
Tolliacum u 360
Tomos u Ib.
Tonagra fl 400
Tongri p 318. 328
Tonsberg u 437
Tooma u 459
Torgow u 406
Torneſe u 520
Torono u 542
Toronaicus ſ 541
Toul u 370
Tournay u 321
Træzen u 524
Tragualla u 446
Tragurium u 495
Trahun Ib.
Trau Ib.
Trajana-Colonia u 356
Trajanopolis u 546
Trajectum u 345

Tranſal-

Tranſalbinos p 420
Tranſilvania pr 499
Tranſiſalana pr 345
Trave fl 428
Travemund u 428
Traun fl 378
Traunſheim u Ib.
Treider fl 468
Trelleberg u 435
Tremonia u 358
Trent u 383
Treſcortum u 504
Trevers pr 318. u 362
Triballi p 510
Tribel u 399
Tribochi p 369
Tribbeſees u 403
Trica u 540
Tricoritum u 527
Tricorneſii p 507
Tridentum u 383
Triers pr. u 362
Trieſſe fl 374
Trimontium u 546
Tripolis u 540
Triſtolus u 541
Tritæ u 519
Trock pr 470
Troglodytæ p 511
Trondheim pr. u Ib.
Trophonium antrum 531
Trotmanni p 358
Trulle fl 323
Trunden pr. u 438
Tſheerenburg pr. u 339
Tubero fl 387
Tubingen p 390
Tuen inſ 432
Tuent pr 338
Tuentana regio 358
Tuichberg u 356
Tuiſcia pr 446
Tuiſcones p 351
Tulla u 460
Tullum u 370
Tungres u 328
Tupatum u 468
Turcheim u 368
Turcilingi pr 408
Turingia pr Ib.
Turlach u 391
Turuntus fl 456
Tuſing inſ 434
Tuver pr u 461
Twentzen pr 358
Twiſche fl 418
Tychenberg u 428
Tychopolis u Ib.
Tycockzyn u 473
Tydſholm inſ 432
Tyna inſ 553
Tyras fl 467
Tyrinthia u 524
Tyriſſa u 541
Tyrol pr u 383

Lib. III.

Taban u 832
Tabiana inſ 742
Tabiene pr 746
Tabor m 659 pr 779
Tabyn c 775
Tachri p 770
Tacola u 818
Tacoræi p Ib.
Tadmar u 648
Taggal u 832
Tagma u 818
Tagurus m 775
Taine pr 782
Tainfu pr 776
Taiopura u 831
Taitung u 787
Talachbacora u 603
Talacorum u 834
Tamaoratas u 831
Tamaſſus u 632
Tambrace u 747
Tamar u 648
Tamlico fl 804
De la Tana l 763
Tanai u 808
Tainaior u 813
Tanais fl 762
Tanamaca u 834
Tanas u 763
Tandair inſ 828
Tangis pr 782
Tangu pr. u 819
Tanguth pr 777
Taniu pr 778
Tanium u 603
Tanor u 810
Taphi fl 799
Taphræ u 763
Taphros u Ib.
Taporæi pr 772
Taprobane inſ 834
Tapyri p 748
Tarichi u. pr 834
Tariana u 739
Tarichæa u 667
Tarnaſſari u 813
Tarſiana u 739
Tarſus u 621
Tartar fl 779
Tartaria pr 761
  Antiqua pr 779
  Deſerta pr 766
  Procopenſis pr 762
Taſale u 818
Tavay u 822
Tavium u 603
Tauri p 762
Taurica Cherſoneſus Ib.
Tauris u 735
Tauro Scythia pr 764
Taurus m 596. 617
Tawgebawt u 747
Taxda u 816
Taxiana inſ 742
Taxiala u 799
Taxilla u Ib.
Taybynco pr 782
Tecoa u 673
Tectoſages p 603. 772
Teflis u 723
Teleba u 724
Telmediſſa u 644
Telmeſus u 617
Temala fl 818
Tenduc pr 779
Tenedos inſ. u 624
Tenza pr 827
Teos u 612
Teraſſa u 622
Terebinth vallis 673
Terenate inſ 828
Termeſſus u 619
Terolli u 830
Terra Incognita 771
  Sancta 655
Terrao inſ 830
Terſia u 622
Terzah u 669
Tetrapolis inſ 628
Teveſa l 678
Thamnitica u 669
Tharo inſ 700
Thaygyn caſt 779
Thebes u 669
Thebet pr. u 779
Thelbis u 724
Thelpitis l 719
Theman u 692. 699
Themiſcyra pr. u 600
Themnath Chares u 669
Theodori u 625
Theodoſia u 763
Theodoſiopolis u 720
Theophanius fl 766
Theredon u 708
Thermæ u 603
Thermodon fl 598
Therſagetæ p 767
Tiſhbe u 663
Theſiris fl 766
Theſpia u 720
Thiatyra u 614
Thibonbaſtus u 818
Thiencin u 787
Thimi p 600
Thine u 786
Thobelli p 723
Thocari p 749
St. Thomas u 813
Thoaon u 666
Throani p 776
Thumenenſes p 766
Thumenſes p 768
Thyni p 598
Tibareni p 603
Tiberias u. l 665. 667
Tiberopolis u 609
Ticuarinum inſ 809
Tidor inſ 829
Tigado u 743
Tigranocerta u 720
Tigris fl 705. 719
Tilædæ pr 818
Tilegramocum u 799
Timagenis inſ 700
Timocani u 743
Timor inſ 828
Tina u. fl 799
Tindis fl Ib.
Tiphon fl 638
Tippura pr 815
Tiſa u 741
Tiſhbe u 663
Tmolus m 598. 614
Tob u 663
Toi pr 646
Toliboſti p 603
Toliſtobogi p Ib.
Tolius fl 631
Tomanis u 723
Toporus m 770
Toſa inſ. u 827
Toſarene pr 719
Tou pr 646
Touſa inſ. u 827
Black Tower 609
Maiden Tower 598
Trabezond u 601
Trachonitæ m. p 662
Trajanopolis u 607
Trajanus fl 693
Trallis u 615
Tramopatan u 810
Trancanor pr. u 811
Trapano c 630. u 631
Trapezus u 601
Travancor pr. u 811
Tremel u 804
Tremigen pr 748
Tremitus u 632
Trequi Lemale u 834
Tretos u 698
Triala u 723
Tribarra u 770
Trinachia inſ 628
Tripolis u 641
Troas pr. u 607
  Alexandria u Ib.
Trocmi p 603
Trogmi p Ib.
Trogyllium inſ. c 612
Tropatene pr 734
Troy u 607
Troyan u 736
Trulla u 698
Tryglyphon u 818
Tſarah u 672
Turcæ p 725. 767
Turcheſtan pr 771
Turcoman u 736
Turgana inſ 700
Tuſſagetæ p 725
Tutta pr. u 806
Tyana u 605
Tylus inſ 700
Tyddis u 799
Tyrambe pr 767
Tyre u 640
Tyina inſ 700
Tzinin pr 782
Tzor u 640

Lib. IV.

Tabaco inſ 1112
Tabaſco pr 1079
Tabenna u 857
Tabraca u 883
Tacapa u 881
Tacaſſi fl 910
Tacoantepeque u 1079
Tacunga u 1094
Tadonſac u 953
Tafflette u 902
Tafixa pr 1081
Tagavaſt u 888
Tagles u 889
Tairona m 1088
Tagreſſa u 888
Taladuſii p 887
Talavera u 1104
Tamochala fl 1069
Tamaraca inſ 1107
Tamarind u 930
Tameclipa u 1074
Tameſcot fl 956
Tampice u 1074
Tanaleque u 1088
Tanape u 911
Tanehipa u 1074
Tanger u 893
Tanne fl 1123
Tanparamunen u 1111
Tapeſipe u 1107
Taquinite u 1074
Taradant u 888
Tarapia pr 1097
Tarentines p 956
Targa deſert 902
Tarixa u 1104
Tarorequi inſ 1087
Tarrahumares p 1072
Tabelbeti p. u 902
Tebocrit u 886
Techort u 902
Tecoantipeque u 1077
Tecpatlan u 1080
Teculeth u 889
Tedles pr 888
Tedneft u 889
Tedza u 888
Tefethne u 889
Teffet u 902
Tegaſſa u 894
Tegaza u 903
Tegeſta pr 963
Tegorarin pr. u 901
Teijent u 888
Teleuſine u 885
Temeſna pr 891
Temiano pr 907
Temeſtian u 1076
Temnella u 889
Tenariffe inſ. u 1088
Tenent u 889
Teneracoſt u 890
Tenezze u 889
Tenſift fl 889
Tentyra inſ. u 857
Teozopotlan u 1079
Tepanecæ p 1076
Tepecſuan m 1069
Tepique pr 1070
Tepoanes p 1072
Terga u 890. 894
Teſegdelt u 889
Teſraſt u Ib.
Teſſet pr. u 901
Teſza u 890
Tetrapyrgia u 858
Tetuan u 887
Teyeger u 891
Tezcuco u 1076
Tezurgui u 892
Tezza u Ib.
Tezzora u 893
Thagia u 891
Thala m 900
Thaluſſii p 887
Thambes m 878
Thebais pr 853. 857
Thebe pr Ib.
Tharra pr 1070
Thebuacha u 884
Themiſa u 883
Theon-Soterum u 910
Thizibi m 880
Thomebamba u 1094
St. Thomas inſ 929. 932
  u 969. 1112
  De Caſtille u 1082
Thornbay ſ 951
Thriſitides inſ 929
Thuburnica u 884
Thumondacana u 904
Thumiſa u 883
Thyſtrus u 882
Tiaguanaco u 1097
Tic u 890
Tigedent u 886
Tigrai pr. u 912
Tigremaon pr Ib.
Tiguez pr. u. fl 967
Timana u 1090
Timbues p 1104
Timugedit u 902
Tingis u 893
Tingitana pr. 880. 890
Titicaca l 1093
Trivitivas pr 1111
Tlaſluici p 1076
Tlaſcalla pr. u 1073
Tlaſcaltecæ p 1076
Tmodes m 858
Toa fl 1120
Toberaum u 903
Toboſi p 1072
Tockianes p 1110
Todes Sanctos pr. ſ 1107
Togodoſt u 890
Tolen u 911
Tolu u 1088
Tombez fl 1093
Tombutum pr. u 905
Tomina u 1104
Tomoes p 1110
Tongum u 923
Tonica u 916
Tonteac l 968
Topia u 1088
Topocalma fl 1100
Toppahanoc fl 959
Tormentoſa c 924
Torra pr 923
Torartes p. u 912
Tortuga inſ 964. 1116
Toſtigos inſ Ib.
Toycam u 1089
Traducta Julia u 893
Tralan fl 855
Transfretana Hiſpania pr 890
Traxillo u 1082
Tremeſen pr 880. 885
  u 886
Tremontain c 1129
Trapadera fl 1087
Treſpaſſez port 951
Triangulus inſ 1080
Trin c 950
Trinidad u 1081. 1089
  1103. 1123. fl 1083.
  inſ 1112.
Trinidado c 969
Trinity Bay 951
Tripolis pr. u 881
Tripolitana pr 880
Triſtran de Acugna inſ 932
Triton fl 878
Troglodytæ p 909
Troia u 857
Trogius m 853
Trois pentas c 906
Truxillo 1094. 1115
Tucaian pr 968
Tucapel pr 1102
Tucuman u 1103. pr 1104
Tucayo u 1115
Tudela u 1089
Tunia pr. u Ib.
Tunis pr 880, 881. u 882
Tunudromum u 884
Turert u 892
Turopeque pr 1079
Tuzeteca u 1074

Q.

Lib. I.

VAccæi p 173. 220
  Vacomagi p 271
Vacontii p 125
Vademonius l 81
Vaga fl 262
Valadolid u 219

Val de Noro *pr* 69
Valence *u*. *fl* 182
Valenſes *p* 133
Valentia *pr* 227
Valentini *p* 182
Valeria *pr* 81
Valkenburg *u* 328
Vallage *pr* 153
Vallis Olitana 219
Telina *pr* 141
Valois *pr* 150
Valtoline *pr* 141
Vanduara *u* 271
Vannes *u* 160
Varanus *l* 61
Varduli *p* 207
Varennes Ganat *u* 166
Varo *fl* 179
Varus *fl* 113. 127
Vaſates *p* 172
Vaſcones *p* 205
Vaſconia *Ib.*
Vaſon *p*. *u* 180
Vaſle *fl* 153
Vaſſey *u* *Ib.*
Vauge *m* 148
Ubeda *u* 209
Uden *u* 100
Vectis *inſ* 285
Veda *inſ* 230
Veientes *p* 107
Vei *u* 82. 107
Velauni *p* 177
Veles Malaga *u* 215
Velibori *p* 280
Velinus *l* 81
Velitræ *u* 83
Vellica *u* 204
Venafre *u* 59
Venaſcine *pr* 179
Venaſque *u* 232
Vencienſes *p* 180
Vendoſme *u* 165
Venelocaſſi *p* 159
Veneris Templum *c* 195
Veneti *p* 160
Venetiæ *pr* 97. *u* 102
Venicnii *p* 280
Venieſſinus *pr* 179
Ventimiglio *u* 114
Vent-ceaſter *u* 253
Venta Belgarum *u* 249
Ventones *p* 220
Venoſa *u* 62
Venuſium *u* *Ib.*
Vera *u* 216
Veragri *p* 125
Verbanus *l* 30
Vercelli *u* 127
Verdun *u* 185
Verine *fl* 150
Verntines *p* 271
Verneville *u* 158
Vernelium *u* *Ib.*
Veromandois *p* 154. 156
Verona *u* 98
Verulamium *u* 249. 256
Veſcal *u* 186
Veſcontio *u* *Ib.*
Veſune *u* 170
Veſtini *p* 59
Veſulus *m* 126
Veſuvius *m* 59
Vezere *fl* 170
Viane *u* 204
Viarzon *u* 168
Victoria *u* 204
Vidoſa *fl* 207
Vienna *u* 182
Vienne *fl* 163. 169
Vienenſes *pr* 182
Vigilia *u* 62
Villa Faſtini *u* 249
Vilain *fl* 160
Ville Vova *u* 223
Vitioſa *u* 209
Villeboir *u* 170
Ville Franche *u* 128. 166
Vilſeneuſe *u* 175
Vilumbri *p* 81
Vincentia *u* 97
Vindelis *u* 249
Vinderius *u* 279
Vindinum *u* 163
Vindocinum *u* 165
Vinovium *u* 250
Virgivium *mare* 279
Virgao *u* 216
Vironne *u* 183
Viſcaia *pr* 207
Viterbo *u* 82
Vitrey *u* 153
Vitrum *u* 163
Viviers *u* 177
Ulſie *u* 166
Ultonia *pr* 278
Ulſter *pr* *Ib.*
Ulyſippo *u* 223
Umbri *pr* 80
Underwald *pr* 134
Vocontii *p* 182
Vodii *p* 280
Der Volgel *m* 140
Volca *u* 249
Volcæ *p* 177
Volſinius *l* 107
Volſci *p* 82
Volterra *u* 108
Volontii *p* 280
Vomanus *fl* 57
Urbin *u* 75. 79
Ure *fl* 248
Uten *pr* 134
Urgel *u* 229
Urconium *u* 250
Uterni *p* 280
Utina *u* 100
Ulcaniæ *inſ* 71
Uzarche *u* 170

Lib. II.

Vacia *u* 482
Vada *u* 339
Vagoth *pr* 449
Valachia *pr* 503
Valachria *inſ* 335
Valenciennes *u* 323
Valencourt *u* 325
Valeria *pr* 480. 490
Valerſleve *u* 411
Vallenhoven *u* 338
Vallona *u* 538
Valpo *u*. *l* 483
Vames *u* 449
Vandalia *pr* 432
Vandalis *fl* 467
Vangiones *p* 365
Vardæ *p* 496
Vardari *fl* 541
Varieca *fl* 492
Varini *p* 400
Varna *u* 510
Varta *u* 449
Vaſcie *u* 325
Vaſera *fl* 473
Vaſilkow *u* *Ib.*
Vaſzow *u* 472
Vaucoleur *u* 370
Vaudemont *u* *Ib.*
Vauge *m* 351. 368
Uberlingen *u* 373
Ubii *p* 360
Udden *u* 449
Udenheim *u* 365
Uduarheli *p* 500
Vecht *fl* 338
Vegia *inſ* 495
St. Veit *u* 432
Veldentz *u* 362
Velin *u* 468
Veluwe *pr* 338
Vendenis *u* 506
Venedi *p* 474
Venedicus *ſ* 433
Veneris *inſ* 554
Venetus *l* 373
Venlo *u* 338
Venſiſia *pr* 432
Venſyſſel *pr* *Ib.*
Ventza *u* 536
Venuzina *u* 510
Venuſium *u* 500
Verden *u* 416
Verdun *u* 370
Vere *u* 336
Verendia *pr* 446
Vermiand *pr* 447
Verodonenſes *p* 370
Veromandui *u* 326
Verma *u* 449
Veſalia *u* 356
Superior *u* 362
Veſtigard *u* 537
Vetera *u* 357
Veteravia *pr* 385
Vetzet *u* 504
Vexime *u* 446
Vexio *u* *Ib.*
Vianen *u* 334
Viborg *u* 449
Vidina *u* 506
Vidre *fl* 338
Vienna *u* 381
Villach *u* 382
Vilenskie *u* 470
Villengen *u* 375
Vilna *fl*. *pr*. *u* 470
Vendelici *p* 374. 376
Vils *fl* 390
Vindebona *u* 381
Vindis *fl* 376
Vindomanæ *u* 490
Vinundria *u* *Ib.*
Virland *pr* 467
Viridonenſes *p* 370
Virthungi *p* 390
Viſchore *fl* 460
Viſtorna *fl* *Ib.*
Viſtula *fl* 351
Viſurgis *fl* *Ib.*
Vitebſco *p* 470
Vites *p* 407
St. Viti *u* 382
Uladiſlaw *u* 476
Ulandæ *inſ* 449
Ulcinium *u* 493
Ulm *u* 375
Ulpianum *u* 506
Ulpia Trajana *u* 504
Ultrajectum *u* 345
Unixia *p* 449
Unna *u* 358
Una *fl* 490
Vobſco *u* 458
Vodena *u* 541
Vogeſus *m* 351
Voitland *pr* 407
Voitſperg *u* 381
Volga *fl*. *l* 456
Volhinia *pr* 471
Volocoluc *u* 458
Volodomir *u* 471
Vologda *u* 457
Voloy *fl* 369
Volks *pr* 458
Voorne *inſ* 335
Voſtiza *u* 519
Upland *pr* 447
Upſal *u* *Ib.*
Uranopolis *u* 434
Urenberg *u* *Ib.*
Uraſtiſlavia *u* 399
Uraſtiſlaus *Ib.*
Uredeberg *u* 422
Ureſe *u* 411
Uriejade *u* 423
Uſcudama *u* 546
Uſedom *inſ*. *u* 403
Uſted *u* 435
Uſting *u* 461
Utrecht *pr*. *u* 345

Lib. III.

Vallos *fl* 717
Vallum Paſini 738
Vardanes *fl* 766
Varſa *pr* 799
Vaſada *u* 723
Vaſilica *u* 625
Vaſſan *l* 720
Vaſtthlan *l* 734
Udaceſpes *m* 719
Udie *u* 823
Venazarari *p* 809
Ventane *u* 834
Verma *pr*. *u* 823
Vetezabra *u* 662
Vidonis *fl* 766
Vilaſſem *u* 834
Villa Nova *u* 629
Vindius *m* 798
Vitra *u* 713
Viſapore *u* 809
Ulai *fl* 738
Unguen *u* 786
Volanus *fl* 639
Volgo *fl* 766
Vologeſia *u* 708
Vorn *pr* 827
Voſpero *u* 763
Ur *u* 712
Us *u* 664
Uz *pr* 692

Lib. IV.

Vacapa *u* 967
Vacuatæ *p* 887
Valcanes *fl* 1131
Valentia Nova *u* 1114
Valette *u* 898
Vallidolid *u* 1074. 1079
1082. 1094
Val Paraiſo *u* 1100
Valvarde *pr* 1095
Vamba *fl* 920
La Vega *u* 1121. 1123
Vela *c* 1088
Velez de Gomenera *u* 892
Vella *u* 915
Veneria *u* 884
Fuerte Ventura *inſ* 933
Venezuela *u* 1076. *ſ* 1088
pr. *u* 1114
Vera Crux *u* 1078
Veragua *pr*. *fl* 1082
Verapaz *pr* 1080
Verbicæ *p* 887
Vermiglio *ſ* 968
Vermeia *inſ* 1080
Verreina *u* 1095
Vert *c* 905. *inſ* 933
Bona Viſta *c* 951
Vetus Portus *u* 1094
Victoria *u* 1079. 1096
St. Vincent *inſ* 933. 1118
pr. *u* 1106
Virginia *pr* 955. 957
Virginum *c* 1101
Viride *c* 905. *inſ* 933
Vitacuchus *u* 963
Ulagium *c* 890
St. *John de* Ulloa *u* 1078
Ulna *fl* 1082
Voli *pr* 887
Volpus *m* 859
Volubilis *u* 892
Upar *pr* 1088
Uraba *ſ* *Ib.*
Uroqueis *p* 953
Uſaletus *m* 878
Uſurgala *m* 900
Utica *u* 882
Utopia *u* 1131
Uxitipa *pr* 1071
Uxoo *u* 906
Uztacpalapa *u* 1076

W.

Lib. I

WAgenthal *u* 135
Waldſterſee *l* 134
Wales *pr* 263
Wallingford 249. 253
Walliſland *pr* 133
Warwick *pr* 250
Waterford *pr*. *u* 280
Weis *fl* 136
Weiſleford *pr* 278
Wells *u* 252
Weſtcheſter *u* 250
Weſtenreick *pr* 142
Weſtminſter *u* 253
Weſtmerland *pr* 246. 249
Weſtſex *pr* 252
Weſt-Saxons *pr* *Ib.*
Weſtraſia *pr* 142
Wexford *u* 278
Wey *fl* 252
Wheallop *caſt* 250
Withern *u* 271
Wiarron *u* 168
Wiccienſis *u* 262
Wiſleſpurg *p*. *u* 134
Wilton *u* 253
Wilts *pr* 249
Winchelſey *u* *Ib.*
Wincheſter *u* 253
Wight *inſ* 285
Windſor *u* 253
Windleſhores *u* *Ib.*
Wolds *m* 239
Worceſter *pr*. *u* 250
Wroxeter *u* *Ib.*

Lib. II.

Wackat *u* 490
Wadenborch *u* 420
Wael *fl* 318. 384
Waes *pr* 320
Wagiri *pr* 428
Wagerland *pr* *Ib.*
Wageningen *u* 339
Waidhoven *u* 381
Walburg *u* 446
Walcheren *inſ* 335
Waldecke *pr*. *u* 418
Woldſhut *u* 374
Walkenſtein *u* 381
Walpo *u* 483
Wangen *u* 374
Waradin *u* 500
Warboſoni *u* 491
Warburg *u* 421
Ward *inſ* 438
Wardhuis *caſt*. *u* *Ib.*
Warendorp *u* 421
Warfuga *fl* 459
Warlitz *u* 406
Warmia *pr* 474
Warn *fl* 405
Warnitz *fl* 374
Warſaw *u* 473. 476
Warta *fl* 467
Wartz *fl* 395
Waſſenaer *u* 335
Waſſenburg *u* 394
Watweil *u* 368
Ween *inſ* 433
Weiden *u* 393
Weill *u* 390
Weilborough *u* 385
Weimar *u* 408
Weiskorchem *u* 398
Weiſſenburg *u* 368. 406
500
Weiſſenſtein *u* 468
Wells *u* 381
Welſtre *u* 429
Wenden *u* 468
Wenſlie *pr* 432
Werb *u* 400
Wercianni *p* 484
Werden *u* 358
Werdt *u* 375. *fl* 376
Werret *l* 446
Werlingen *u* 374
Wernebeck *u* 468
Werſaw *u* 366
Werte *fl* 418
Weſdo *fl* 328
Weſenberg *u* 468
Weſer *fl* 351
Weſlax *u* 418
Weſterberg *u* 423
Weſtergoe *pr* 336
Weſtergoth *pr* 446
Weſterwald *pr* 420
Weſt France *pr* 352
Weſtmannia *pr* 447
Weſtphalen *pr* 420
Weſtphalia *pr* *Ib.*
Weſt-Frieſland *pr* 336
Weſtraſia *pr* 352
Weſtreich *pr* *Ib.*
Weteraw *pr* 385
Wetzelaer *u* 387
Weymar *u* 408

Wiathka *pr. u* 460
Wiborg *u* 449
Wiborch *pr. u* 432
Wichidaw *pr* 458
Wich *u* 403
Wien *u* 381
Wieper *fl. u* 410
Wiert *u* 331
Wihits *u* 490
Die Wilde *u* 470
Wildeſhut *u* 378
Wildſhuſen *u* 421
Wilini *p* 400
Wildung *u* 418
Willoughbies *inſ* 462
Wilſtre *u. fl* 429
Wiltberg *u* 390
Wimpſen *u* *Ib.*
Windaw *fl* 142
Windiſchland *pr* 490
Windiſch-gratz *u* *Ib.*
Wineta *u* 403
Winheim *u* 364
Winithi *p* 396
Winili *p* 546
Winocksberg *u* 320
Winsberg *u* 394
Winſheim *u* 389
Wirtenberg *pr. u* 390
Wisbad *u* 385
Wisby *u* 449
Wiſlicza *u* 476
Wiſmar *u* 404
Wittenberg *u* 406
Witterberg *u* 418
Wolfehaiten *u* 415
Wolfenbuttel *u* *Ib.*
Wolferſdike *inſ* 336
Wolgaſt *u* 403
Wolkonskie *u* 456
Wollin *inſ* 403
Wolmar *u* 468
Wolodomir *pr. u* 461
Wolſperg *u* 382
Worda *u* 408
Worms *u* 365
Wormſe *inſ* 468
Wormſted *u* 411
Worotine *pr. u* 461
Wortheim *u* 389
Wrangen *inſ* 468
Wruſten *u* 421
Wurtzburg *pr. u* 388
Wurtzgarten *m* 480
Wyeregen *inſ* 335

Lib. III.

Wayre *inſ* 829

Lib. IV.

Wackehanes *p* 1110
New Walcheren *u* 1113
Walſingham *c* 950
Weopomioke *u* 959
White-Bay 951
Wia *fl* 1109
Wiapoco *fl* *Ib.*
Wigcocomoci *pr* 959
u 960
Wikeri *p* 1111
Winecaporo *m. u* *Ib.*
Womians *u* 1110
World *in the Moon* 1132

X.

Lib. I

XAlon *fl* 232
Xaintoigne *pr* 171
Xantodurum *u* 168
Xelva *u* 227
Xeres *u* 212
Xucar *fl* *Ib.*

Lib. II.

Xylocaſtro *u* 519
Xylopolis *u* 542

Lib. III,

Xaindu *u* 775
Xamoa *inſ* 700
Xanthus *fl. u* 616
Xanſi *p* 787
Xaoking *u* *Ib.*
Xiocum *inſ* 825
Ximo *inſ* *Ib.*
Xbana *u* 603

Lib. IV.

Xacoaes *p* 1104
Xagua *ſ* 1123
Xaliſco *pr* 1070
Xanique *fl* 1121
Xaqueſſes *p* 1104
Xaragua *p* 1121
Xarayes *p* 1104
Xeres nova *u* 1114
De Frontera *u* 1071
1081
Xicalapa *fl* 1081
Xoa *pr* 916
Xylinces *p* 908

Y.

Lib. I.

YAre *fl* 254
Yarmouth *u* 285
Yenlade *fl* *Ib.*
Yeur *fl* 168
Yonne *fl* 152
York *pr* 246. *u* 248
Youghal *u* 280
Your *fl* 240
Yſſoire *u* 167
Yuica *inſ. u* 230

Lib. II.

Yas *u* 503
Ypres *u* 320
Yſſel *fl* 334
Yſſeldort *u* 339
Yſſelandt *u* 338
Yſſelſtein *u* 334
Yvois *u* 326

Lib. III.

Yalo *fl* 785
Yamour *fl* 774
Yaymans *p* 779
Yeka Mogul *pr* 780
Yor *pr* 822

Lib. IV.

Yaguarcocha *u* 1093
Yaos *pr* 1111
Yaqui *fl* 1121
Yaquim *fl* 1069
Yaquimo *fl. pr* 1121
Yebra *fl* 1083
Los Yopes *fl* 1075
Yaquaan *fl* 1103
Yroquois *p* 954
Yeſtepeque *u* 1081
Ytupuam *l* 1103
Yuna *fl* 1121
Yxicuyan *u* 1073
Yzalco *pr* 1081
Yztapa *ſ* *Ib.*

Z.

Lib. I.

ZAncle *u* 68
Zobla *u* 123
Zoelæ *p* 209
Zug *pr* 134
Zurich *pr. u. l* *Ib.*

Lib. II.

Zaberne *u* 368
Zabeſus *u* 500
Zacinthus *inſ* 560
Zant *inſ* 560
Zara *pr. u* 494. *inſ* 496
Zarmigethuſa *u* 504
Zarnovia *u* 505
Zator *u* 399
Zea *inſ* 554
Zecklar *pr* 500
Zegedin *u* 484
Zegna *u* 494
Zell *u* 374
Zeland *inſ* 335
Zembla nova *l* 462
Zenderin *u* 560
Zeng *u* 490
Zerbenic *u* 560
Zeringen *caſt* 374
Zeugma *u* 500
Zeukirk *u* 374
Zigeth *u* 493
Zilachi *u* 500
Zirickzee *u* 336
Ziton *ſ* 540
Zittaw *u* 399
Znaim *u* 398
Zogabria *u* 490
Zome *fl* 504
Zoroe *inſ* 434
Zorza *u* 504
Zucconia *u* 503
Zuider Sea 334
Zuidfen *pr* 339
Zulp *u* 360
Zunchi *c* 521
Zutphen *u* 339
Zweibrucken *u* 364
Zwinghe *fl* 421

Lib. III.

Zabæ *u* 818
Zabahe *l* 763
Zabaſpia *u* 770
Zabulon *pr. u* 667
Zadris *u* 722
Zagathai *pr* 769
Zagmais *u* 692
Zambilan *u* 823
Zamzummims *p* 660
Zaphet *u* 667
Zaradrus *fl* 799
Zaratæ *p* 772
Zared *fl* 658
Zariſpæ *u* 749
Zariaſpes *fl* *Ib.*
Zarval *u* 699
Zavolhenſes *p* 768
Zebit *fl. u* 699
Zebrum *u* 698
Zeilan *inſ* 834
Zela *u* 601
Zeman *u* 699
Zenobii *inſ* 104
Zephiriam *u* 602
Zephirium *c* 621. 630
Zeugma *u* 644
Ziden *u* 699
Zigæ *p* 767
Zigana *inſ* 700
Ziglag *u* 672
Zinchi *p* 767
Zioberis *fl* 738
Ziph *u* 673
Zoar *u* *Ib.*
Zuancheu *u* 186
Zulpha *fl* 606
Del Zur *mare* 595
Zurium *u* 722
Zychi *p* 766

Lib. IV.

Zacatecas *p. u* 1071
Zacatula *u* 1074. *fl* 1078
Zagnam *u* 915
Zahuate *fl* 1078
Zaire *fl* 920. 925
Zalaga *m* 893
Zale *u* 891
Zama *u* 882. 915
Zameta *u* 914
Zamora *u* 1094
Zanfara *pr* 907
Zanhaga *pr* 902
Zanguebar *pr* 920
Zanu *pr* 1094
Zanzibar *pr* 920
Zapoteca *pr* 1079
Zaratan *inſ* 1080
Zarbi *fl* 1089
Zacaranna *fl* 1103
Zaron *m* 893
Zarza *inſ* 1080
Zazelle *u* 916
Zeb *pr. u* 902
Zebaco *inſ* 1083
Zegzeg *pr* 907
Zeila *u* 915
Zeltales *p* 1081
Zembre *l* 920
Zemithus *u* 860
Zempoal *fl. u* 1078
Zena *pr* 1087
Zedu *fl* *Ib.*
Baal Zephon *u* 854
Zerby *inſ* 897
Zeugitana *pr* 880
Zilia *fl* 887
Zingis extrema *c* 916
Zinzoutza *u* 1074
Zioth *u* 854
Ziphia *m* 919
Zis *fl* 901
Zoanghi *p* 925
Zoaques *p* 1080
Zuchabarus *m* 880
Zuengia *deſert* 902
Zuid *fl* 957
Zuni *p* 967
Del Zur *mare* 1080. 1117

FINIS.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM